# **PVRCHAS**

# PILGRIMES.

FN FIVE BOOKES.

The first, Containing Peregrinations and Discoueries, in the remotest North and East parts of ASIA; called TAR-

The second, Peregrinations, Voyages, Discouries, of CHINA, TARIA, RYSSIA, and other the North and East parts of the World, by English-men and others.

The third, Voyages and Discoueries of the North parts of the World, by Land and Sea, in A s 1 A, E v R O P E; the Polare Regions, and in the North-west of MERICA.

The fourth, English Northerne Nauigations, and Discouries:
Relations of Greenland, Greenland, the North-west passage,
and other Arctike Regions, with later RVSSIAN
OCCWRENTS.

The fifth, Voyages and Tranels to and in the New World, called AMERICA: Relations of their Pagan Antiquities and of the Regions and Plantations in the North and South parts thereof, and of the Seas and Ilands as accent.

# The Third Part.

Unus Deus, Una Veritas.



LONDON

Printed by William Stansby for Henrie Fetherstone, and are to be sold at his shop in Pauls Church-yard at the signe of the Rose.



1.1

HONORABLEAND RIGHT REVEREND

FATHER IN

GOD:

Lord Bishop of LINCOLNE, Lord Keeper of the GREAT SEALE of

ENGLAND,&c.

Right Reverend and Honourable:



Hese PILGRIMS deliuering a Historie of the World in their owne Trauels by Sea and Land, not onely needed authoritie from the Admiraltie, but fearing suspition of Rict without warrantable assemblie, become humble Sutors for your Lordships fauour. So shall they in the approbation of both (to apply by a warrant of Ego dixi, dy estis, the Patriarchs
mystical Dreame to our Historical purpose)

Gen. 2, 12.

finde a Scala Cali to alcend from the ground where they are prostrate Petitioners, to the Princes Highnesse, whence authorised they may againe descend and become the Commons of Common Readers. Order requires a Medium betwixt Princely Height and his Lowlinesse, whose function is also tearmed Holy Orders, as further tying him to that equall inequalitie; wherein hee befeecheth your Lordihip as by speciall Office and in Proprietie to owne that which hee hath presumed to offer to the Prince in Capite., Quemadmodum sub optimo rege omnia. Rex imperio possidet, Domini dominio. Ad reges potestas

Senec Benefila. pertinet , ad fingulos proprietas.

Many are the reasons which moued the Author to obtude his PI L-GRIMS on your Lordship; because he is deeply obliged Yours for former fauours, euen then when you were initiated in the Mysteries of Honour (learning by feruice to Command) in the Discipline of that Honorable Worthy, Lord Chancellor E G E R TON! because some conceptions of this Worke were in your Honourable Iurisdiction of Westminster, whither lest some traduce Trauellers for Vagrants, they returne in hope of Sanctuarie, not so much trusting to the ancient Liberties. as to your Lordships liberall respect to literate endeauours : because these Trauellers adventuring the world, seeke like Iacob at his going and returne, a Reucrend Fathers Blessing and Confirmation. The Author likewise being called on for his promised Europe, submits himfelfe to your Lordinips Order, heere tendring of that debt, what hee is able, in readie payment. The worke it felfe also being a Librarie in this kind, presents it selfeto your Honour, the Founder of two famous Libraries; one in Westminster, (where the Stones & renued Fabrikes speake your Magnificence) the other in that famous Nurserie of Arts and Vertue Saint I OHN'S Colledge in Cambridge, which sometime knew you a hopefull Sonne, but now acknowledgeth your Lord hip a happie Father, where also the Author first conceived with this Trauelling Geniw, whereof (without trauelling) he hath trauelled euer fince. Learning, the Advancer of your Honour, hath fecured her welwillers not to bee rejected in whatfoeuer indeauours (Scribimus indocti, doctiq.) to advance Learning. The greatnesse of Nature to goodnesse of Nature, varietie of Estates to a prime Pillar of State, the Historie of Religions to a Religious Prelate, of Antiquities to an Antiquarie, cannot bee altogether vnwelcome ; that I mention not the dependance of London Ministers Liuings (fined by the Times iniquitie) on your Lordships equal Sentence. These Causes have moved; One hath inforced; these PIL-GRIMES are your Servants, fitly to called à Servando, faued by your August Co. Lordships hand when they were giving up the ghost, despairing through a fatall stroke of euer seeing light.

Most humbly therefore, sue vnto your Honour, these PILGRIMES for acknowledgement, esteeming your Lordships Name in fore-front a cognisance of blest Libertie and best Seruice; Now when Lanu sends many with gratefull emulations to present their acclamations of a New Yeste, presenting (a wordie rather then worthy Present) a World, yea, a New world, ingreat part one Age younger to mens knowledge then America, sometimes stiled by that Name. I had written other Causes of my addresse to your Honour, but dare not proceed to interrupt Others more weightie. In all humble eatnessmers before the now in this Festivals time, the Author with his PILGRIMES to sinde Hospitals.

DEDICATORIE.

tall entertainment, not at your Honours table, where Great affaires of Church and State are feasted (except some recreation some times permit) but with Schollers and Gentlemen in the Hall, which will welcome such Guests as your Lordship shall Countenance. So thall you encourage euer to pray for the increase of your Lordships happinesse

Happie Service of his MAIESTIE,

Your Lordships

most bounden\_,

SAMVEL PVRCHAS





# THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS AND PARAGRAPHS

IN THE SECOND BOOKE OF THE SECOND

PART OF PURCHAS HIS

CHAP. I.

CHAP. I.

CHAP. I.

CHAP. II.

Chinorite Friars, who the East parts of the World, Anno Dom. 1253. H. pag.I.

CHAP. II.

Tartarian and Northerne Relations written in Latin by the famous Frier Roger Bacon. H. p. 32 Relations of Vincentius Beluacensis, the moit of whith be received from Frier Simon de San-Roomand Committee, one of the foure Friers sent by Pope Innocent the four th to the Tartars: sering to the idulations of the four friends of the idulations of the four friends.

CHAP. III.

Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the
Historie of R. Wendouer, and Mat. Paris: with
certaine Epifiles of the same fubiet.

CHAP. IIII.

Pag. 60.

The first booke of Marcus Paulus Venetus, or of Master Marco Polo, a Gentleman of Venice, bis Vonages.

Q. 1. The voyages of Master Nicolo and M. Mastio, from Constantinople to the Great Can, and their comming home to Venice: their fecond voyage with the Authour and returne.

Q. 2. Observations of M. Polo, of Armenia, Turkie, Zorzania, Baldach, Persia, Chirmain, Cobniam, Ormus, Knaue-sooles paradise, and other Easterne parts in Asia, and Armenia the lesse.

§ 3. Of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaican, Scattem, two Balaxiam, Bafcia, Chefmur, Vochan, Samarchan, Carchan, Peym, the dreadfull Defart of Lop and Tanguth. pag. 73. dia.

b. 4. Of Carchoran, the originall, proceedings and exploits of the Tartars, of Priefs lohn and his differendants. Cultures of the Tartars. Of Bargu, Erginul, Xandu, the Cans Citie and Palace; of Muske: of Strange Sorcerers, and ansiers Monkets.

Q. 5. Of Cublai Can, his Raigne and Aits, Magnificent feafis and huntings, Court and Counfell. His Citic Cambalu and glorious Palace. Dag. 81.

d. 6. The Cans provisions for Embalfadours and for Poilt, against Dearth, for High-waser; for the Poor in Cambalu, for Africogers; Tattars Wime, Fuell, Religion, Opinions, Behaviour, Court-neatness: Polos proceeding from Cambalu weftward. of Pulisagan, Gouza, Tainfu, Pianfu, Thaigin, Caciansu, Quenzausu, Sindinsu, Thebeth, Caindu, Caraian, Carachan, Cardandan and Vociam.

d. 7. Of the Province of Mien and Bengala, how they were conquered to the Can: of Cangingu, Amu, Tholoman, Cintigui, and some other parts of Cataio. And of the Conquest of Manpic. page 93.

Q. 8. Of the Cities of Mangi (now called China) and the rarities thereof: the many wonders of Quinfai, the Palaces, Plesfares, Rites and Government, observed by the Natines, and the Tartars.

other Eusterne parts in Asia, and Armenia the less pag. 60. 9. The ships of India described, the stee of Light.

2. 9. 3. Of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaican, Scassen, Balaxiam, Bascia, Chesmur, Vochan, Samar-rities therein.

pag. 102.

dia. 10 Of the firme Land of the Greater Inpag. 104e CHAP CRA2. V.

The Historie of Ayton, or Anthonic the Ar- turne to Catalo. menian, of Affa, and Bectally touching the Tartarn, H.P.

of the Tastars : and of Cangius, or Cingis his his fact-look. o eginnings.

conqueles. Of cloccots and his three somes expe- 122, and description thereof. Bu disposition of inc designes of Gino Care; of Mangu Can, who estate and death was viffeed by the King of Armenia, and baorefed; of the expension of his brother Ha-

3. 3. Of Cobila Can the fift Emperour of the Tamatland of the warre with Barcha, and Tarturin our red with the Christians, Haciaons death. Miss of the Solican of Egypt. Of Abaya and other Commer and Sucre Cours of Haloon. D. . . .

4. 4. Of Argon the Sonne of Ataga, and Regares, his brother; of Baido, and of the explosis tagail; here abbremisted. H.P. of Cafan exercit the Soldan of Egypt, and a- i

4. Cafan dreth, Carbanda facceedeth; but neighbouring Regions. Apoliafie. The Anthors entrance into a Religious habit. Of Tamor Can the fixt Emperour, and of Chapar, Hochrai, and Carbanda, three other hubandrie of China; their contemps of the idle. Tartarian Kings. pag.12 (.

CHAP. VI.

CHAP. VII.

The Voyage of Nicolo di Conti a Venetian, so the Indies, Mangi, Cambalu and Quinfai, with some observations of those places.

#### CHAP. VIII.

Tamerian , touching bis Martiall travels , done into French by Ican du Bec, Abbat of Morti-

3. 1. Tamerlans birth and perfon, bu expedition against the Muscouite; bis marriage with the Cans danghter; bu over-throwing of Ca-

dition into China, entring the Wall, conquering 112.

the King, and at poling of the Countrey, and re-

3 2. The difference: between Tamerian and page 108. Baiazet the Turke: his returne to Samercand. 1. 1. Of the Ringdome of Cathay, and divers and Expedicion against Basazza; the battell, and other Produces of Alia, and of the first babetation cultione, bu Caping of Baiazet, and making him

3. A Encrease of Samarcand : Afaires of 4. 2. Of Changing Can his fecond vision and China: Faneral: of the Can; comming to Onin-

> Reports of Charge Memet & Perlian of Tabas m the Promince of Chatan , southmer his tranels and infernations in the Countres of the Great Can, vmo M. G. Baptilla Ramulio. caga: 64. C # 42. %

A Treatife of China, and the advantag 35rions, menten er Galbar da Cruz a Dominican Eriar, and dedicated to Sebaltian King of Por-Of Camboia and the Bramenes there; the pagetan confeet his going to China : Of China and the

> 3. 2. Cantan described; the publike and prisate buildings and government. The hipping and and provision for impotent poore.

4. 2. Of their mechanical Trades, Merchan-Tranels and Memorials of Sir John Mande- difes and Moneyes : their promisions of flesh and pag. 128. filb; the Perfors and attyre of Memand Women:

to s. Of their Louthies , Mandermes or Magiftrates, their creation, printledges, maintenance; pag-158. of Prifon: and Tortures; of the King and of Embastadours.

3. 5. Of the Portugall commerce with the Exercits of Albacen bu Arabike Historic of Chinois; of the senere Institute executed upon certaine Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Por-

4. 6. Of the Religion in China; difficultie of bringing in Christianitie. Terrible Earth-anakes and Tempelts in China. pag.1,5.

CHAP. XI. The relation of Galeotto Perera, a Gentleman 2. 2. Cataio, Cambalu; Tamerlans Expe- men of good credit, that lay prisoner in Chi-

The

#### The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the second Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. He beginning of English Discoueries towards the North, and North-east, by Sir Hugh Willoughby, Richard Chancellor, and others; of the Mulcouie Trade, as also

thorom divers Regions of Tartaria. Ships, fet forth under the charge of Sir Hugh Wil- | Wall. loughby, Knight, in which he dyed; and Musco-

nia was discouered by Captaine Chancellor. ibid. Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by Clement Adams, Schoole-mafter to the Queenes Henshmen, from the mouth of Captaine Chancellor.

The Copie of the Duke of Moscouic and Emperour of Ruffia his Letters, fent to King Edward Hifbitals and provisions for the Poore. The Kings the Sixth, by the hands of Richard Chancel-

D. 2. The first voyage made by Master Anthonie lenkinson, from the Citie of London, toward the Land of Russia, begun the twelfih of May, pag.232. in the yeere 1557.

2. 3. Notes taken out of another mans Relation of the same voyage, touching the Ruffian

4. The voyage of Master Anthony Ienkinfon, made from the Citie of Mosco in Ruffia, to the Citie of Boghar in Bactria, in the geere 1558. written by himselfe to the Merchants of London, of the Moscouie Companie.

2. 5. Advertisements and reports of the fixt voyage into the parts of Persia and Media, gathered out of fundrie Letters written by Chri-Ropher Borough; and more especially a voyage ouer the Caspian Sea, and their shipmracke and miseries there endured by the Ice. pag.243.

A Letter of Master Henrie Lane, to the worshipfull Master William Sanderson, contayning a briefe discourse of that which puffed in the North-east discouerie, for the space of three and shirtie yeeres.

CHAP. II. Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Eafterne parts of the World, taken out of Fernam Mendez Pinto his Peregrination.

1. Mendez his many miserable aduentures, bis france Expedition with Antonio de Faria; diners Coasts visited, Pirats tamed, miferies saf- The Answere of Don Pedro de Acunna, Gotered, glorie recouered.

2. 2. Antonio Faria his taking of Nouda a cheo in China.

Citie in China, triumpi at Liampoo; strange voyage to Calempluy, insferable thippurack. p. 258

0. 3. Their Shipwrack in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miferable wandrings of the rest to Nanquin : their imprisonment, fen-Voyages by Ruffia, oner the Caspian Sea, and sence and appeale to Pequin; rarities observed in those places and wayes; of the beginnings of b. I. The first voyage for discouerie with three the China Kingdome , and of their admirable

3. 4. Mindo Salt pits : Mines of Coretumbaga, Copper-workes ; Idolatrie and Christianities China Trades, and River Faires , their comming to Pequin, triall and fentence. Rarities of Pe-

\$. 5. Foure buildings incredibly admirable in Pequin, and divers of their Superstitions: their remenues and Court; their Sects.

d. 6. Their remoone to Quanfie, quarrels, miferies , Tartarian buge Armie , and loffe at the fiege of Pequim, reported. Quantie taken, and Nixianco : Mendez his explois. Their entertainment by the Tartar King , and going to Cauchinchina with his Embaffadours , with many Tartarian obsernations. CHAP. III.

Spanish plantation of the Philippinas , and what entercourse hath thence hapned betwixe them and the Chinois. Q. 1. Firft disconcrie of the Philippinas: writ-

ten by Friar Juan Gonzales de Mendoza. ibid. 4. 2. First plantation of the Philippinas, by Michael Lopez de Legaspi. d. s. of Limahon a China Robber and Reuer, by whose occasion the Spaniards fent into

d. 4. Friar Martin de Herrada , and other Spaniards entertainment in China, and their returne to the Philippinas.

Two Letters taken out of Barrolome Leonardo de Argenfola bis Treatife, called Conquista delas Islas Mahucas , printed at Madrid, 1609. pag. 336, 337. mentioning the comming of two English Ships to China : which feeme to be two This of the fleet of Beniamin Wood : The former written by the Visitor of Chincheo in China, vnto the Gouernour of the Philippinas, Don Pedro de Acunna. H. P.

pag:252. wornour of the Philippinas, to the Vifitor of Chinpag.310.

CHAP

The report of a Mahometan Merchant, which had beene in Cambalu : and the troublesome trauell of Benedictus Goes, a Portugali Iesuite, from Lahor to China by land, thorow the Tartars Countries. pag. 310.

CHAP. V. A generall collection and historicall representation of the lesuites entrance into lapon and

China, untill their admission in the Royall Citie of Nanquin.

d. 1. Of Francis Xauier, Melchior Nunnes, Valignanus, Ruggerius and Palius.

d. 2. Iaponian Embaffage to the Pope; Of Nabunanga and Quabacondono their gouernment ; Corai inuaded , Embaffage from China, Taicosamas Temple, and Ogoshosamas succes-

\$. 3. Ruggerius enters againe into China with Ricius, and is forced backe to Amacao; thence fent for againe by the Vice-roy. Sande and Almeida are fent to them, and enter the Countrey as farre as Cequion, and returne to Sciauchin.

d. 4. False brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin : erect a Seat at Xauceum. Monasterie of Nanhoa and other things of note in those parts. They alter their habit ; Voyage to Nanquin ; the Lake, Riners, I lols and other rarities.

d. 5. Nanquin described; Ricius expelled thence, be fetleth at Nancian, thence goeth to Nanquin againe, and to Pequin ; description of it, the way thither, the Kings Palace, and of Suceu, and Hamceu.

d. 6. Letters from Tather Longobard and Taifo. Ricius his enter .. inment at Nanquin and residence there. The Chinois unlearned lear-

CHAP. VI. A Letter of Father Diego de Pantoia, one of the Companie of IESVs, to Father Luys de Guzman , Prouinciall in the Prouince of Toledo : written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March, the yeere 1602. Ĥ.P.

Q. I. Difficulties of entring China, their dwelling as Nanquin, going from thence to Paquin, with Prefents for the King, troubles in the way by an Eunuch.

Q. 2. The King fends for them , is delighted of. with their Clocks and Pictures; they are fout up, after take a House, are admired for learning; Christianitie of Chinas

0. 2. The description of the Kingdome of China; of Catay and Musk; the disission into Pto-

uinces: Citses and Townes described. River. Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding. pag. 360.

d. a. Their moneyes, apparell, per fons, trades, wealth, learning, marriages, superstitions, rites, and opinions.

d. Their bad Souldierie and Artillerie Degrees priniledges honours and promotions of learning. Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing. The Mandarins commended.

d. 6. Of the government of China: Of the Mandarins ; the China complements and manifold nicities.

4. 7. Of their Women : Of the Tartars Conquest, acts and expulsion. The greatnesse of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queenes pag-375.

CHAP. VII. A discourse of the Kingdome of China, taken out of Ricius and Trigautius, contamino the

countrey, people, government, religion, rites, lects. characters, studies, arts, acts; and a Map of China added, drawne out of one there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof. pag. 380. d. 1. Of the name, lite, and greatnelle: the Tributaries, commoditie, arts , printing , feales, inke, pencill-pennes and fannes. 0. 2. Of their Characters and writing downe-

ward : their studies, Ethikes, Astrologie, Physike. authentike Authors , Degrees how taken both Philo(opbicall and Militarie.

0. 3. Of the Tartarian conquest; Of Humuu the Establisher of the present gouernment. The Reuenues. Magistrates in the Courts Royall. Prouinces, Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Visitations, Deprinations.

O. 4. Their manifold rites in Salutations, Entertainments, and other civilitie : to the King and Magistrates: Of Burials and Marriages, Birthdayes; their Men, Women, Names and Games, Habites-

d. S. Of their Superflitions, Cruelties, feares of Magistrates, of the Kings kindred, of Strangers and Souldiers. Their Deities and three Sects : Priefts, Nunnes, Monasteries, Legends,

Q. 6. Of ftrangers, and forraine Religions in

Q. 7. The Map of China, taken out of a China Map, printed with China Characters: illufirated with Notes, for the understanding there-

CHAP. VIII. A continuation of the lefuites Ads and observations in China till Ricius his death and some yeers after. Of Hanceu or Quinfay. An Extract of Monfarts tranell.

# The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the third Booke of the first part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Treatife of Russia and the adjoyning Regions , written by Doctor Giles Fletcher, Lord Ambaffadour from the late Queene, Euer-glorious Elizabeth, to Theodore then Emperour of Ruffia, A. D. 1588.

A briefe discouerie of the Northerne disconeries of Seas, Coasts, and Countries, delinered in order as they were hopefully begun, and have ever fince happily beene continued by the fingular induftrie and charge of the Worshipfull Societie of Mulcouia Merchants of London, with the ten Senerall Voyages of Captaine Thomas Edge the Authour.

Q. I. Greenland firft discourred by Sir Hugh Willoughby: the Voyages of Frobisher, Pet, and lackman , Dauis , the Dutch ; First Morfe and Whale-killing, with further discoueries.

2. 2. Dutch, Spanish , Danish difturbance; alfoby Hull men, and by a new Patent , with the Succeeding Successe and further disconcries sill this

pag.466.
3. The description of the scueral sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them : Whereto is added the description of Greenland. p.470. The description of Greenland.

CHAP. III. The first Nauigation of William Barents , 4lias Bernards , into the North Seas ; Written by Gerart de Veer.

CHAP. IIII. A briefe declaration of Barents his fecond Nanigation, made in Anno 1595 behind Norway, Muscouria, and Tartaria, written by Gerart de pag.478.

CHAP. V. The third verage Northward to the Kingdoms of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by Gerare de Veer.

Q. I. What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House. ibid.

D. 2. Their cold, comfortle fe, darke and dreadfull winter : she Sunnes absence, Moones light, Summes unexpected returne with miraculous feed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many many wonders. p. 492.

1. 3. Their preparation to goe from thence : they depart in a Boat and Scute both open , and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers

This was written by William Barentson in a loofe Paper , which was lent mee by the Reverend Peter Plantius in Amfterdam, March the feuen and twentieth, 1609. pag.518. CHAP. VI.

A Treatife of Iuer Boty a Gronlander translated out of the North language into High Dutch. H.

The Course from Island to Groneland. p. 520. CHAP. VII.

A description of the Countries of Siberia, Samoieda, and Tingoelia. Together with the lourneves leading unto the same Countries toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Molcouites.

8. 1. Discource of Siberia, and the subjecting of the same to the Ruffes.

0. 2. A briefe description of the Waves and Riwers, leading out of Molcouis toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoiedia, and Tingoefia, as they are daily frequented by the Ruffes : with further discoueries towards Tartaria and

2. 3. A Note of the travels of the Ruffes ouer Land, and by water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint Nicholas to Pechora, to Obi, to Yeniffe, and to the Riner Geta , even wnto the Frontiers of Cataia ; brought into England by Mafter Iohn Mericke, the English Agent for Moscouie, and translated out of the Russe by Richard Finch. H.

CHAP. VIII. A voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by William Gourdon of Hull, appointed chiefe Pis los, for discouerie to Ob, Oc. H. CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Richard Finch to the Right Wor-Stipfull Sir Thomas Smith , Gouernour ; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Ruffia : touching the former voyage, and other observations. H. pag. 534-

The names of the places that the Rulles Sayle by, from Pechorskoie Zauorot, to Mongozey: with the manner of their travell, and distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halling, and Rowing unto the Same. CHAP. X.

The Voyage of Mafter Iolias Logan to Pechoby Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the ra, and his wintering there, with Mafter William Puriglone, and Marmaduke Wilson. Anno 1611. H. pag.541.

Extradis taken out of two Letters of Tofias Lo- ket. pan from Pechora, to Master Hakluyt Prebend pag. 546. of Westminster.

CHAP. XI. A briefe relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and mintering there, began in the yeere 1611. Written William Purfeloue. H.

Other obfernations of the faid William Purf-

The travel from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situated thereupon, ouer Land. Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia,

Ougoria, and among the Tinguffies. pag. 552. Commedities for the Tinguffies. CHAP. XII.

Later observations of William Gourdon, in bis mintering at Puftozera, in the geeres 1614. and 1615. with a description of the Samoyeds life. H.

CHAR. XIII. Diners Voyages to Cheric Iland, in the geeres 1604, 1605, 1606, 1608, 1609. Written by Io. pag.556. nas Poole. H.

CHAP. XIIII. Diners Voyages and Northerne disconcries of that worthy trreconerable Disconerer Mafter Henrie Hudion. His Discouerie toward the North Pole, fet forth at the charge of certaine Worfhipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by John Playle one of the Companie, and parily by H. Hudion. H. CHAP. XV.

A fecond voyage or employment of Mafter Henrie Hudson, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-cast : written by him-

CHAP. XVI. The third verage of Mafter Hennic Hudson toward Noua Zembla, and at his returne, his passing from Farre Ilands, to New-found-Land, and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and fo to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River neere to fartie three degrees. Written by Robert Iuet of Lime-house. H. pag.581.

CHAP. XVII. An Abliract of the lournall of Mafter Henrie Hudlon, for the disconerie of the North-west paffage, begun the 17. of Aprill, 1610. ended with his daall. end, being treacheroufly exposed by some of the pag.596. times. Companie. H.

A larger discourse of the same voyage, and the successe thereof, written by Abacak Pric-

A Note found in the Deske of Thomas Widhouse, Student in the Mathematikes, be being one of them who was put into the Shakep. pag.600.

CHAP. XVIII.

The discoveries of M. M. Nicolo, and Amonio Zeni, gathered out of their Letters by Francisco Marcolino: whereto is added Quirino bis (hipporacke, H.P.

The Shipwracke of Master Piero Quirino, de-(cribed by Christophoro Fiorauanti, and Nicolo di Michiel, who were present there : here contracted. H. P. pag. 611.

CHAP. XIX. Ancient commerce betwixt England and Norway, and other Northerne Regions. pag.619.

CHAP. XX. A briefe Memorial of the great tranels by Sea and Land, of Master George Barkley, Merchant of London, in Europe, Afia, Africa, and America, and their Ilands. pag. 625.

CHAP. XXI.

Collections out of Martin Broniouins de Biezerfedea fent Ambassadeur from Stevhen Kine of Poland, to the Crim Tartar : Contagning & description of Tartaria, or Chersonesus Taurica and the Regions Subjett to the Perecop or Crim Tartars, with their Caffomes prinate and publike in peace and warre. CHAT. XXII.

Dithmar Blefkens bis Voyages, and Hillory of Island and Groenland. Pag. 643. of the Islanders Religion. The Life and Manners of the Islanders: ibid. Of the wonderfull flanding Pooles, Lakes and Founfaines in Mand.

Of the wonderfull Mountaines in Island pag. 648. Of the Riches of the Manders. pag.649. Of the Indgement of the Islanders. pag.650. of Groneland. .pag.651.

CHAP. XXIII. Extracts of Arngrim lonas, an Islander, bu Chrymogza or History of Island : publifhed Anno Dom. 1609. H.P.

d. 1. Of Island, the Situation, Difconerie, Plantation and Language. 0. 2. A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, Supposed to be Giants expelled

from Canaan. Of the Islanders Houfes, Fewell, Vid. 2. Of their Politie, and Religion in old The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the fourth Booke of the Second part of Parchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Voyage fet forth by the Right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, and the rest of the Musco-Lic Company, to Cherry lland: and for a further Discouerie to bee made towards the North. Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in a Ship called the Amitic, of burthen (euentie tunnes; in the which I Ionas Poole was Mafter, hauhaving foureteene Men and one Boy: Anno Dom.

A briefe note what Beafts, Fowles, and Fishes were feene in this land.

CHAP. II. A Commission for Ionas Poole our Servant, appointed Mafter of a fmall Barke called the Elizabeth, of fiftie tunnes burthen, for Discouery to the Northward of Greeneland, given the last day of May, 1610. H.P.

CHAP. III. Abriefe Declaration of this my Voyage of Discouery to Greeneland, and towards the West of it, as followeth : being fet forth by the right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith , Gonernour of the right Worlhipfull Company of new Trades, &c. written by lonas Poole. H.

CHAP. IIII. A Relation written by Ionas Poole of a Voyage to Greeneland, in the yeere 1612. with two Shippes, the one called the VV hale, the other the Seahorse, fet out by the right Worshipfull the Muscouic Merchants.H.

CHAP. V. A Journall of the Voyage made to Greeneland with fixe English Shippes and a Pinnaffe, in the yeere 1613. written by Mafter William Baffin. H.P.

CHAP. VI. A Vojege of Difconery to Greeneland, &c. An. 1614. written by Ro. Potherbye. H.P. pig.720. CHAP. VII.

A true report of a Votate. Anno 1615 for Difcoveries Seas, Lands, and llands, to the Worthwards; as it was performed by Robert Potherbie, in a Pinnaffe of twenty tunnes called the Richard of London. H.P.

A Letter of Robert Fotherby to Captain Edge written in Croffe-rode, Ialy 15.1615. pag 331. CHAP. VIII.

Divers other Voyages to Greenland, with Letters of thele which were there employed, communicated to me by Master William Heley, in the yeere 1617. angell, to Srr Thomas Smith, then Lord Embas-

1618.1619. 1620. 1621. 1623. A Letter of Master Robert Salmon to Mafter Sherwin. In Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, the 24. of luns 1618. A Letter of Wafter Th. Sherwin : Bell-found this 29. of lune, 1618.

A Letter of James Beuersham to Master Helev. From Faire-banen, the 12. of Iuly, 16ts. ibid. A Letter of John Chambers to W. Heley, Bel-

found, June 16. 1619. A Letter of I. Catcher to Mafter Heley from Faire-hauen. Laus Deo, this fewenteenth of Thine,

A Letter of Robert Salmon from Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, July 6. 1621.

Laus Deo in Faire-Hauen,the foure and twentieth of lune, 1623. Mafter Catchers Letter : the wine and twentieth of Tune 1623.

Captaine William Goodfards Letter E Bejfound this eight of luly, 1623. CHAP. IX.

The late changes and manifold alterations in Ruffia fince Iuan Vafilowich to this prefent, guthered out of many Letters and Obfernations of Engfish Embaffadours and other Travellers in those

d. 1. Of thereigne of Iuan, Pheodore bu fonne,

The most folemne and magnificent coronation of Pheodor Juanowich, Emperour of Ruffia, Or the tenth of lune, in the geere 1,84. frene and obfermed by Matter Ierom Horsey Gentleman, and ferwant to

2. 2. Occurrents of principal Note while happened in Ruffia, in the sime while the Honorable sir Thomas Smith remained there Embaffalout from his Maieflie.

3. 3. One pretending bim Pile to be Demetrils. with the Popes and Poles belpes attaineth the Reaffian Empire bu Arts, Alls Meriage, fauour to the Englith, and misfrable and. The Copie of a Letter sent from the Emperor De-

metry Euanowich, otherwife called Griffico O-

The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was fent from the Mosko, from the Emperour Demetry Euanowich, alias Gryfhea Otreapyoue by & Courtier named Gauaryla Samoylowich Salmanoue, who was fent downe to the Cafile of Arch-

The Copie of the Translation of a new Priviledge that was given to the Company, by the Emperour Demerry Euanowich, otherwise called Gryshca Otreapyoue, the which Priniledge was fent into

England over-land by Olyver Lyffet Merchant, and (eruant to the forefaid Company. The Copie of the translation of a Contract, made

by the Emperour Demetry Euanowich, otherwife called Gryscha Otreapyoue, and the daughter of the Palatine Sendamersko, chiefe Generall of Poland.

0. 4. The Copie of the Translation of a Letter fent from the new Emperour Vaffily Euanowich Shoskey to the Kings Maiesty by Master John Mericke. pag.765.

Captaine Margarets Letter to Master Mericke from Hamborough, Ian.29. 1612. pag.780. 4. 5. Of the miserable estate of Rullia after Swiskeys deportation, their election of the Kino of Polands Sonne, their Interregnum and popular eftate, and choosing at last of the present Emperour, with some remarkeable accidents in his

time.H.P. me.H.P. pag.782. Pacta inter Primarium Ducem Exercituum Regni Polonia, & inter Heroes Mofconia. p. 783. CHAP. X.

A briefe Copie of the points of the Contracts betweene she Emperours Maiestie and the Kings Maiestie of Sweden : in Stolbona the senen and twentieth of February, 1616. Снар. ХІ.

A Relation of two Russe Cossacks transiles, out of Siberia to Catay, and other Countries adionning thereunto. Alfo a Copie of the last Patent from the Mulcouite. A Copie of a Letter written to the Emperour from his Governours out of Sibe-

The Copie of the Altine Chars, or tolden Kings Letter to the Emperour of Russia. A Description of the Empires of Catay and La-

bin, and other Dominions as well inhabited as places of Pasture called Viulles and Hords, and of the great Riner Ob, and other Rivers and Land paffages. CHAP. XII.

Notes concerning the discovery of the River of Ob, taken out of a Roll, written in the Ruffian | yeere of our Lord 1616. tongue, which was attempted by the meanes of Antonie Marsh, a chiefe Factor for the Moscouic North-east, H.

pag.759. | couie Merchant, and Master Thomas Lundes touching a warme Sea to the South-east of the River Ob, and a Note of Francis Gaulle. H.P. p. 806. CHAP. XIII.

Discourries made by Englishmen to the Northwelt : Voyages of Sir Sebastian Cabot, Master Thorne, and other Ancients: and Master Weymouth.H.P.

The Voyage of Captaine George Weymouth. intended for the discovery of the North-west Passage toward China, with two flye Boates. pag. 809.

CHAP. XIV. lames Hall-bis Voyage forth of Denmarke for the discovery of Greenland, in the yeere 1604.abbreusased. H. pag.814.

CHAP. XV. The fecond Voyage of Mafter Iames Hall, forth of Denmarke into Greeneland, in the yeere 1606. contracted. H.

CHAP. XVI. The Voyage of Master Iohn Knight (which had beene at Greeneland once before 1605. Captaine of a Pinnaffe of the King of Denmarke) for the Discouery of the North-west passage, begunne the eighteenth of Aprill, 1606. H.

#### CHAP. XVII.

The fourth Voyage of Iames Hall to Groaneland, wherein he was fet forth by English Admenturers, Anno 1612 and flaine by a Greenelander. Written by William Baffin. H.

CHAP. XVIII. A true Relation of (uch things as happened in the fourth Voyage for the Discouerie of the Northwest Passage, performed in the yeare 1615, written by William Baffin. H. P. pag-836.

#### CHAP. XIX. .

A briefe and true Relation or Iournall, containing such accidents as happened in the fift Voyage, for the discovery of a passage in the North-west. (et forth at the charges of the right Worlhipfull Sir Thomas Smith Knight, Sir Dudly Digges Knight, Mafter Ichn Mostenholme Efquire, Mafter Alderman Iones, with others, in the good (hip called the Discouery of London; Robert Bileth Mafter, and my felfe Pilot , performed in the CHAP. XX

A briefe Discourse of the probability of a pas-Companyof England, 1584 with other notes of the lage to the Wellerne or South Sea, illustrated with pag. 804. sestimonies : and a briefe Treatife and Map by Ma-Thereport of Master Francis Cherry & Mof- fer Brigges. H.P. pag.848.

The

#### The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Fifth Booke of the second part of Purchas his

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Description of the west Indies, by Antonio de Herrera, bis Maiesties chiefe Chroni-La cler of the Indies, and his Chronicler of Castile. H. P.

The Presidents, Counsellors, Secretaries, and Attourners, which vosto this prefent day have ferned, and doe ferme in the supreme Councel of the Indies, from their first Discouerie.

The Gouernours and Vice-royes, which have gouerned untill this time, the Kingdomes of New-Spaine

CHAP. II. Observations gathered out of the First, Second, Third, and Fourth Bookes of Iolephus Acosta, a learned lefuite, touching the natural historie of the Heanens, Ayre, Water, and Earth, at the West Indies. Alfo of their Beafts, Fifhes, Fowles, Plants, and other remarkeable ravities of Nature. d. 1. Of the fashion and forme of Heauen, at the

new-found World, and of the Ayre and Winds. ibid. d. 2. Of the Ocean that innirons the Indies, and of the North and South Seas, their ebbing, flowing, Fifbes, fifbing, Lakes, Rivers, and Springs. pag. 928.

d. 3. Of the qualitie of the Land at the Indies in generall. Properties of Peru, and of new Spaine, and other parts: Of Vulcanes and Earth-

d. 4. Of Metals in the Indies, and especially of the Gold and Silver, and Quick-filver. pag.941. 0. 5. Of Emeralds, Pearles, Indian Bread, Trees,

Fruits. Flowers naturall, and carried thither from

0. 6. Of Beafts and Fowles in the In-Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and

Veni on. CHAP. III.

Extracts of Gonzalo Ferdinando de Ouiedo his Summarie and the generall Historic of the In-Of the Mynes of Gold, and the manner of working

Of the manner of fishing for Pearles. pag.972.

Of the familiaritie which certains of the Indians bane with the Deuill, and bow they receive answere of him of things to come , and other superstiti-

Of divers particular things, as Wormes, Serpents, Beasts, Fowles, Trees, &c.

Of Trees, Fruits, and Plants. pag.981. Of Reedes or Canes. pag.983.

Of venemous Apples, wherwish they poy (on their

Of Fishes, and of the manner of fishing. p.986. Of the increase and decrease (that is) riling and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Sea of Sur.

Of the Braight or narrow passage of the Land. lying betweene the North and South Sea, by the which Spices may much fooner and easilier be brought from the Ilands of Molucca into Spaine by the West Ocean, then by that way wherby the Portugals faile into the East India.

How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to the nature of the place where they are engendred or grow, and of the beasts salled Tigres.

Of the manners and sustames of the Indians of the Firme Land, and of their Women. pag.991. Of the chiefe Hands, Hispaniola and Cu-

CHAP. IIII. Mexican Antiquities gathered out of the writings of Iosephus Acosta a learned lesaite. pag. 1000. 0. 1. Of the ancient Inhabitants of new Spain,

and of the fixe Linages of the Nauatlacas. Of the Mexican Exodus, and adventures by the way: the foundation of Mexico, their first King and Tri-

d. 2. Of the second King Vitzilouitli; and of his successioners and their Acts votill the reigne of Motezuma their last King.

0. 3. Of the election of great Motezuma, the last King of Mexico: his pompe and manner of gouernment, prodigious fore warnings, of his ruine, and the Spanish conquest.

#### CHAP. V.

Of the ancient Superstitions of the Mexicans and Indians of America, gathered out of the fifth booke of Iosephus Acosta. pag.1026. CHAP. VI.

Civill Customes and Arts of the Indians taken out of Acostas 6. Booke. pag.1050. CHAP. VII.

The Historie of the Mexican Nation , described in pictures by the Mexican Author explained in the Mexican language; which exposition translated inpag. 975. | to Spanish, and thence into English, together with Ph. 19 2

d 1. The Mexican Chronicle. ibid. 6. 2. The second part of this Booke contayning the particular Tributes, which every Towne subdued payed unto the Lords of Mexi-

). 3. The third part of this Booke, contagneth the private behaviour in Marriages, education of Children, and Trades : with the Martiall, Ecclesiafticke, and Civill policie of the Mexican peopag. [ 102. CHAP. VIII.

Conquest of Mexico and New Spaine, by Hernando Cortes.

CHAP. IX.

Larger Relations of things most remarkeable obferued by the Spaniards at their first comming : Cholallas holies; Popocatepecs aftes. Mutezumas multiforme Magnificence and Maiestie. Mexican Citie and Temple, with other Antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis Lopez de Gomara. pag.1123.

The Hillcalled Popocatenec. Description of Mexico as it flourished in these pag.1121.

Other Mexican Antiquities, Letters, Numbers, Teeres, Dayes, Weekes, &c. Pag. 1135. Their reckoning by numbers.

#### The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the fixth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Briefe Relation of the fenerall Voyages, vndertaken and performed by the Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, in his owne person, or at his owne charge, and by his direction : collected out of the Relations and Iournals of credible persons Actors there-Dag. 1 141.

CHAP. II. The Voyage to Saint Iohn de Porto Rico, by the Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, ges. written by himfelfe. H. pag.1150.

CHAP. III. Alarge Relation of Port Ricco Voyage; written as is reported, by that learned man and reverend Dinine Doctor Eglambie, his Lordships Chaplaine and Attendant in that Expedion ; very much abbreviated. H.

d. I. The Ships employed in the Voyage and accidents on the Coasts of Spaine, in the Canaries, and the Nauigation thence to Domini-

0. 2. Description of Dominica and the Virgines. Their landing on Port Ricco, March, fights and taking the Towne.

2. 3. The Fort Mora befreged and taken. The Towne described : the Mines. Purpose to hold the place; altered by the death and sicknesse of mapag.1162.

A refolution, which they were to trust to.p. 1162. d. 4. Purpose of returne. Treatie with the Spaniards. His Lordhips departure. Description of

2. 5. Accidents by Sea in their way to the Azores and there. pag. 1174. CHAP. IIII.

The first Voyages made to divers parts of America by Englishmen, Sir Sebastian Cabor, Sir Thomas Pert : alfo of Sir Iohn Hawkins, and Sir Francis Drake, and many others : collected briefly out of Master Camden, Master Hakluit, and other Writers. A briefe Historie of Sir Francis Drakes Voya-

A briefe recitall or nomination of Sea-fights, o-

ther Englishmens Voyages related at large in the printed Workes of Mafter Hakluit. pag. 1186. CHAP. V.

The Relation of Peter Carder of Saint Verian in Cornwall, within feuen miles of Falmourh. which went with Sir Francis in his Vorage about the World, begun 1577. who with fewen others in an open Pinnasse or Shallop of fine tunnes, with eight O ares, was seperated from his Generall by foule weather in the South Sea, in October, Anno 1578. who returning by the Straites of Magellan toward Brafill, were all cast away, faue this one onely aforenamed, who came into England nine yeeres after miraculously, baning escaped many strange dangers, aswell among divers Sauages as Christi-CHAP. VI.

Master Thomas Candish bis Discourse of his fatall and defastrous Voyage towards the South Sea. with his many disaduentures in the Magellan the Iland, the Beafts, Fruits, Plants, &c. pag. 1168. Straits, and other places; written with his

3 341 8ter. H. CHAP. VII. TAL

The admirable adventures and strange fortunes of Master Anthonie Kniuet, which went with Malter Thomas Candilh in his fecond Voyage to he South Sea, 1591. H.P. Dig. 1201. the South Sea, 1591. H. P.

and after, till bee was taken by the Portuibid.

d. 2. Anthonie Krimet his comming to the R. of Ianero, and vlage amonest the Portugals, and Indians : bis diners Travels thorow diners Regions of those parts.

0.3. His frange travels with twelve Pormgals, whom the Sauages did eate. His life with the Canibals : and after that with the Portugals, from whom hee fleeth to Angola, is brought backe, and after manifold chances, is shipped to Lif-D. 4. The divers Nations of Sauages in Brafill,

and the adjoyning Regions : their dinerfities of Conditions, States, Rites, Creatures, and other thinges remarkeable, which the Author observed in his many yeeres manifold Peregrinations.

The Giants of Port Defire, and Inhabitants of Port Famine : alfo Angola, Congo, and Maffangana, and Angica, Countries of Afri-

D. 5. The description of diners Rivers, Ports, Harbours, Ilands of Brafill : for instruction of Naui-CHAP. VIII.

Relations of Mafter Thomas Turner who limed the best part of two yeeres in Brafill,&c. which I received of him in conference touching his

CHAP. IX. The taking of Saint Vincent and Puerto Bello, by Captaine William Parker of Plimouth, the fementh of February, 1601. CHAP. X.

Certaine Notes of a Voyage made by David Middleton into the West Indies with Captaine Michael Geare, Ann. Dom. 1601. H. pag. 1242. CHAP. XI.

The Description of the Ile of Trinidad, the rich

owne hand to Sir Triftram Gorges his Execu- Country of Quiana, and the mightie Einer of pag. 1192. Orenoco, written by Francis Sparrey, left there by Sir Walter Baileigh, 1505. and in the end taken by the Spaniards and fent Prifoner into Spaine. and after long Captinitie got into England by great pag. 1247.

CHAP. XII. Captaine Charles Leigh bis Voyage to Gufana, end plantation there. H.

> OR AP. XIFI. the inches

A true Relation of the traiterous Maffacre of the most part of threescore and leven English men Tet on Land out of a Ship of Sir Oliph Leagh, bound for Guiana, in Santa Lucia, an Iland of the West Indie, the three and twentieth of Auguff, written by Iohn Nicol. H. P. pag. 1255.

CHAP. XIIII.

The Relation of Master John Willon of Wanfreed in Effex, one of the last tenne that veturned into England from Wiapoco. in Guiana, 1606. H. CHAP. XV.

Part of a Treatife written by Mafter William Turner, Sonne to Doctor Turner of London & Phylitian, touching the former Koyage, H. pag. 1265

CHAP. XVI.

A Relation of a Voyage to Guiana performed by Robert Harcourt of Stanton Harcourts in the Countie of Oxford Elaure. The names of the Rivers falling into the Sea from Amazones, to Dessequebe, and of the Jenerall Nations inhabiting those Rivers. pag.1282.

CHAP. XVII.

A Relation of the habitation and other Obferuations of the River of Marwin, and the adjoyning Rivers from Brabiffe to the Amazones. p. 1286

CHAP. XVIII.

A Description and Discourrie of the River of Amazons, by William Davies Barber Surgeon of London. pag. 1287.

The

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Treatife of Brafill, written by a Portugall which had long lived there. H. pag. 1289. d. 1. Of the beginning and originall of the Indians of Brafill, and of their Customes, Relieions, and Ceremonies.

19 1 7 18

b. 2. Of their manner of killing and eating of Humane flesh : and of their creating Gentle-

Q. 3. Of the disersitie of Nations and Languages, and of the Soyle and Climate. pag. 1297. V. 4. Of the Beafts , Land-ferpents , and Fowles. pag. 1301.

Of Land-Inakes and Servents. pag.1303. Of the Fowles that are in the Land, and are thereon fullamed. 00 5. Of the Brafilian Trees for Fruit, Medi-

cine, and other vies ; and their Herbes of rare opepag. 1306. Of the Herbes that yeeld Fruit, and are ea-

pag.1309. water : alfo Shel-fifbes, Trees, and Fowles of the Sea : of Rivers and the Creatures which line therein ; and the Beufts and Plants brought thither out of Portugall.

Birds that doe feed, and are found in the Salt-

Fresh-water Snakes (and Creatures of the wa-

Of the Beafts, Trees and Herbes, that came from Portugall, and doe grow and breed in Bra-

CHAP. II. ... Articles touching the dutie of the Kings Maieflie our Lord, and to the common good of all the effate of Brasill. Written (as is thought) by the Anthor of the former Treatife. H.

#### CHAP. III.

Extracts out of the Historie of Iohn Lerius a Frenchman, who lined in Brafill with Monfieur and Plants of Brafill.

0. 2. Of the Warre, Battailes , Fortitude, and Weapons of the Barbarians : and of their Relidren, Policie, Hospitalitie, Difeases, Physitians, Funerals and Lamentations.

CHAP. IIII. The Travels of Hulderike Schnirdel in twentie yeeres space, from 1534. to 1554. abbreuiesed. H. P.

d. 1. His Voyage up the River of Plate, founds. tion of Townes, their expedition up the River of Parana and Parabol; the people of these

d. 2. Martin Eyollas made Generall. Gabreros comming : Scherues Voyage. Nunner his in-Solence. Diners people and accidents descri-

Q. 3. A long and troublefome March from ACfumption into Peru. The Authors returne. p. 1362

#### CHAP. V.

The Observations of Sir Richard Hawkins. Knight, in bu Voyage into the South Sea. An. Dom. 1593. once before published, now reviewed and corretted by a written Copie, illustrated with Notes. and in diners places abbreniated.

d. 1. What bappened in this Voyage before they came neere the Aquinoctiall Line, with divers accidensall Discourses viefull for Nauigators. pag. 1367

Q. 2. Considerations of Currents : the Scorbute : fire in Ships ; Fishes which attend them : Sea bawking and Hunting : their comming to Brafill and observations thereof.

d. 3. Tharltons treacherie : Disconerie of Land unknowne : Entrance of the Straits, accidents therein, and description thereof : Diners occasionall discourses for the furtherance of Marine and Naturall knowledge.

d. 4. Entrance into the South Sea ; Discouerie of the South parts of the Straits to bee but Ilands. pag. 1320. by Sir Francis Drake (which the Hollanders fcribe to Maire and Schouten.) Of the Iland Mocha, and the parts adjorning.

2. 5. The Vice-roy fends an Armado against the English ; which vieweth them and returneth : Villagagnon, Anno 1557. and 58.H.P. pag. 1325 is againe fet foortb : their fight ; the English Q. 1. Of the Beafts, and other lining Creatures, | yeeld upon composition : diners Martial discourpag.1398.

CHAP. VI. A briefe Note written by Master Iohn Ellis, one of the Captaines with Sir Richard Hawkins, is Q. 3. Of their Marriages, Education of Chil- his Voyage through the Strait of Magelan, begun the ninth of Aprill, 1593. concerning the faid Srait, and certaine places, on the Coast and Inland of pag.1415.

CHAP. VII. A briefe Relation of an Englishman which had beene thirteene yeeres Captine to the Spaniards in Peru, oc. H.

CHAP. VIII. The Relation of Alexandro Vrfino concerning the Coall of Terra Firma, and the fecrets of Peru, and Chili, where bee had lined foure and thirtie neeres. H.

CHAP. IX. Notes of the West Indies, gathered out of Pedro Ordonnes de Ceuallos, a Spanish Priest, his larger Observations.

#### CHAP. X.

Relation of the new discouerie in the South Sea, made by Pedro Fernandez Giros Portugez, 1600, with his Petitions to the King, one Englished, another in Spanish. pag.1422.

The Copie of a Petition presented to the King of Spaine, by Captaine Peter Ferdinand de Quir, souching the discouerie of the fourth part of the World, called Terra Australis Incognita : and of the great riches and fertilitie of the fame : Printed with licenfe in Sivill, An. 1610.

Nose of Australia del Espiritu Santo. written by Master Hakluyt. pag.1432.

#### CHAP. XI.

The Historic of Lopez Vaz a Portugali (taken by Captaine Withrington at the River of Plate, Anne 1586. with this discourse about bim) touching American places, discoueries and occurrents; CHAR. XII.

Briefe extracts translated out of Icrom Benzos three bookes of the New World touching the Spaniards craell handling of the Iudians, and the effetts thereof.

CHAP. XIII. Observations of things most remarkable, collested out of the first part of the Commentaries Royall, written by the Inca Garcilasso de la Vega, Na. turall of Co2co, in nine bookes ; Of the Originall. Lines, Conquefts, Lawes and Idolatries of the Incas, or ancient Kings of Peru.

#### CHAP. XIIII.

The suppliment of the Hiftorie of the Incas. briefly collected out of the Authors fecond part. or Generall Historie of Peru.

#### CHAP. XV.

Briefe Notes of Francis Pizarro his conquest of Peru, written by a Spanish Captaine therein employed. pag. 1489. CHAP. XVI.

The Conquest of Peru and Cusco, called New Castile, and directed to the Emperour by Francisco de Xeres, Secretarie to Captaine Francis Pizarro which conquered them. pag.1401.

#### CHAP. XVII.

Relations of occurrents in the Conquest of Peru after Fernand Pizarros departure, written at Xauxa, Iuly 15. 1534. by Pedro Sancho, Notarie Generall in the Kingdoms of New Castile, and Secretarie to the Gouernour Fr. Pizarro, fub (cribed by the faid Gonernour himselfe and others. and lent to his Maiestie. pag.1494

#### The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Eight Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

True Relation of Aluaro Nunez, called Capo di Vacca, concerning that which -happened to the Fleet in India, whereof Pamphilo Naruacz was Gouernour, from the reere 1527. Untill the veere 1526, who returned vato Siuill with three of his Companions onely: Translated out of Ramusio, and abbreniated. H.P. pag.1499.

Q. 1. Their Fleet; and admirall and unheard of

troubleforme paffages, incounters, difaftrous fucceffe, building Boates for returne.

d. 2. Mifery pursaes them at Sea, and betrayes them to the Indians : their milerable Lines and 0. 3. Their flight from the Indians to others.

wonderfull cures, backe and belly cares : their trauels therow the Country, and bungry aduentures. Diners peoples and their Customes. 4. They come to the South Sea, and tranell

Tempest : their entrance into Florida : the Lakes, | through a plentifull Countrey, till they meet with Spaniards:

#### The Contents of the eight Booke.

Spaniards; whose crueltie & manner of converting Sausges is related. pag. 1524.

Ferdinando de Soto bis Vezage to Florida, and Discourie of the Regions in that Constinents, with the Transles of the Spaniards four speece together therein, and the accidents which befell than: writtee by a Portugall of the Companie, and here contrasted.

§ 1. Sotos entrance into Florida, taking of Iohn Ortiz one of Naruaz his Companie, comming to Paracossis, and divers other Caciques, with accidents in the way.

§ 2. Sotos surster Discoveries in Florida,

and manifold Adventures till bee came to Tulla. pag. 1528.

Q. 3. His departure to Autiamque, Ortiz bu Death and disasters following: Soto takes thought and dyeth. Moscosco fucceedeth. They leave Florida, and arrive at Panuco. pag. 1550. CH AP. III.

Djuers expeditions from Mexico, and other parts of New Spaine and New Biskay, effectally to the more a wetberly parts of America, by duners Spainards in a hundred yeers space.

pag. 1556-

o. i. The Relation of Nunno di Gusman written to Charles the sift Emperous; translated out of Ramussios third Tome, and abridged.

v. 2. The Voyage of Frier Marco de Nica, Don Fr. Vasquez de Coronado, Don Antonio de Espeio, and diuers into New Mexico, and the adiopaing Coasts and Lands. pag. 1560.

6.3. Extracts out of certaine Letters of Father Martin Perez of the Societic of I Exvs, from the new Actiflon of the Province of Cinoloa, to the Fathers of Mexico, dated in the month of Detember, 1591. With a Letter added, written 160s. of later Differencies. H. pag. 1562.

A Letter written from Valladolid by Ludouicus Tribaldus Toletus, to Maffer Richard-Hakluyt, translated out of Latine, touching luan de Onate his Discoueres in New Mexico, sinehundred lesgues to the North from the Old Mexico. H. pag. 1567.

The Prologue of the Biflop Frier Bartholomicw de las Cafas, or Cafaus, to the most high and mightie Prince, Our Lord Don Philip Prince of Spaine.

pag 1568,

CHAP. IIII.

A briefe Nerration of the destruction of the
Indies by the Spaniards: written by a Frier Bartholmew de las Casas, a Spaniard, and Bissop of
Chiapa in America.

pag. 1.50.
Of the the of Hissoniola.

of the two iles Saint Iohn, & Iamayca p. 1573 of the Ile of Cuba. ibid.

Of Terra Firma, or the firme Land. pag. 1573
Of the Province of Nicaragua. pag. 1576.
Of New Spaine: pag. 1577.

of the Province and Realme of Guarima-

of New Spaine, and Panuco, and Xalifco. pag. 1580.

Of the Realme of Yucatan. pag. 1581.
Of the Province of Saint Martha. pag. 1583.
Of the Province of Carthagene. pag. 1584.

Of the Coast of Pearles, and of Paria, and of the ile of the Trinitie. ibid. Of the River Yuia pari. pag. 1587.

Of the River Yuia pari. pag. 1587.
Of the Realine of Venefuela. ibid.
Of the Provinces of the firme Land, or quarter that is called Florida.

is called Florida. pag. 1589.

Of the River of La plata. ibid.

of the mightie Realmes, and large Provinces of

Peru. ibid.

Of the new Realme of Granado. pag. 1591.

Part of a Letter written by one which faw things

Part of a Letter written by one which faw things mentioned.

Pag. 1596.

The summe of the Disputation betweene Frier

Barthokomew de las Cafas or Cafaus, and Do-Gor Sepulueda.

CHAR. V.

Notes of Voyages and Plantations of the French in the Northerne America: both in Florida and Canada. pag. 1603.

The Voyage of Samuel Champlaine of Brouage, made unto Canada, in the yeere 1603. dedicated to Charles de Montmorencie, dec. High Admitallof France. H. pag. 1605

CHAP. VII.

The Patent of the French King to Monstieur de
Monts, for the Inhabiting of the Countries of
La Cadia Canada, and other places, in New

The Voyage of Monsieur de Monts into New France, written by Marke Lescarbot. pag. 1620. CHAP. VIII.

Collections out of a French Booke, called Additions to Noua Francia; contayning the Accidents there, from the peer 1607.10 1611. pag. 1642. CHAP. IX.

The first Plantation of English Colonies in Virginia, briefly mentioned. pag. 1645.

CHAP. X.

The Relation of Captaine Gosnols Forage to the
North part of Virginia, begun the fix and twentieth
of March, Anno 42. Elizabetha Regina 16:2.
and delinered by Gabriel Archer, a Gentleman in

shefaid Voyage. H. pag. 164

Noses of the fame Popuse, Taken out of a Tractate written by lames Rolice vo 50 Walter Raileigh, and of Maces Propose to Virginia. pág-1651.

Cyar. XII.

A Voyage set out from the citie of Brittoll, at the charge of the chiefest New chants and inhabitants of after said critic with a final Ship and a Banke for the Discourt of the North part of Virginia; in the prevented, onder the command of mee Martin Pringe. H. pag. 16.4.

A Relation of the voryage made to Virginia, in of certaine m the Elizabeth of London, Barke of fifthe tunnes by hippened during Captaine Bartholmew Gilbert, in theyever 1603. which are relate written by Maffer Thomas Canner, a Gentleman and Prizes.

pag. 1647. of Barnards Inne, bis Compenion in the same Voy.

CHAP. XTII.
Extracts of Wright in Project practe An. 1604.
Extracts of Wright in Project practe An. 1604.
Extracts of Corpe Waymouth, in the Archangell. Set footb by the Right Honourable Henric Baste of South Hampton, and the Lord Thomas Artified, prostries by James Robert H.P. pag. 1659.
CHAP. XIIII.

The description of the lands of Azores, we the Flemith Ilands, taken out of Linkthoten, with certain conservents, and Englisheds. pag. 1667.
Of certain notable summemorable Acidents that happened during long continuance in Tercera? in

happened during my contravance in I crecta ? in which are related many English Fleets, Sea fights, and Prizes. pag 1672.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Ninth
Booke of the Second part of Purchas his
Plicarins.

The Art of the first Patent granted by bis Maieslie furphyfor the Plantaism of Virginia, Aprillibe
temb 1606.

CHAT. II.

The
furphyfurther further for the Portion of the Portion of

Observations gathered out of a Discourse of the Plantation of the Southerne Colonie in Virginia by the English, 1606. Wilken by that Homer able Genteman Master George Percy. H. pag. 1684.

The Description of Virginia by Captaine Iohn 18.
Smith, mlarged out of his written Notes. pag. 1691.
Of such himse which are naturall in Virginia, wand how they of them.
pag. 1694.

Of their planted Fruits in Virginia, and how they we show.

Of the watural Inhabitants of Virginia, and their Cultomes.

pag. 1697.

Of their Religion. pag. 1701-Of the manner of the Virginians Gonernment. pag. 1703.

CHAP. IIII.

The proceedings of the English Colonic in Virginia, taken faithfully out of the writings of Thomas Studley, Cape-Merchant, Anas Todkill, Dottor Russell, Nathaniel Powell, William Phetiplace, and Richard Pot, Richard Wiffin, Tho. Abbay, Tho. Hope; and fine enlarged out of the Writings of Captaine 10th Smith, principal Agent and Patient in these Virginian Occurrents, from the beginning of the Plantation 1606, till Anno 1610, Sembla debreutated.

The Proceedings and Accidents, with the found fupply.

CHAP. V.

A Letter of Master Gabriel Archer, touching the Voyage of the Fleet of Ships, which arrived at Virginia, without Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Summers, 1609. H. pag. 1733.

CHAP. VI.

A true reportorie of the wracke, and redemptione of hir Thomas Gates, Knight; wood, and from the lands of the Bermudas: the comming to Virginia, and the efface of that Colonie then, and after, under the Covernment of the Lord La Watt, suly 15,1610. written by Wil.Strachy. Efg. 14,19,1734

d. 2. Aftions and Occurrents whiles they contimucal in the llands: Rusens fent for Virginia; Dimers Mutinies; Painc executed: Two Pinnaces built. pag.1742-

Q. 3. Their departure from Bermuda and arriual in Virginia: Miferies there, departure and returne upon the Lord La Warres arraining. Incu-Towne described. P28, 1747.

Q. 4. The Lord La Wartes beginnings and proceedings in Iames Towne, Sir Thomas Gates feat into England; his and the Companies testimony of Virginia, and cause of the late miscries. pag. 1754. C. H. A. P. VII.

The Voyage of Captaine Samuell Argal, from

th

1610. H. CHAP. VIII.

A [bort Relation made by the Lord De la Warre. to the Lords and others of the Counfell of Virginia, touching his unexpected returne home, and afterwards delinered to the generall Assembly of the faid Companie, at a Court holden the 25. of June, 1611. Publified by anthority of the faid Counfell pag. 1762. CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Sir Samuell Argoll, touching bis Voyage to Virginia, and Actions there : Written to Mafter Nicholas Hawes. Iune, 1613. H. p. 1764.

CHAP. X. - Notes of Virginian Affaires in the government of Sir Thomas Dale and of Sir Thomas Gates, till Ann. 1614. taken out of Master Ralph Hamor (Secretarie to the Colonie) bis Booke. pag.1766. CHAP. XI.

A Letter of Sir Thomas Dale, and another of Master Whitakers, from lames Towne in Virginia lime 18. 1614. And a peece of a Tractate, written by the faid Master Whitakers from Virginia the reere before. pag. 1768.

To the R. and my most esteemed friend, M.D.M. at his boufe at F.Cb. in London.

Partof a Tractate written at Henrico in Virginia, by M. Alexander Whitaker, Minister to the Colonie there, which then governed by Sir Thomas Dale, 1612.

CHAP. XII. of the Lotterie : Sir Thomas Dales returne the Spaniards in Virginia. Of Pocahuntas and Tomocomo: Captaine Yerdley and Captaine Argoll (both fince Knighted) their Gouernment; the Lord La Warres Death, and other occurrents till Anno 1619.

CHAP. XIII. The estate of the Colonie, Anno 1620. and Mafler Dermers Letter to me from Virginia, touching his Voyage for the South Sea.

A Note of the Shipping, Men, and Provisions fent to Virginia, by the Treasurer and Companie, ta the yeere 1619. pag.1776.

A true Relation of a Sea-fight betweene two great and well appointed Spanish Ships, or Men of Warre; and an English fhip, called the Margaret and Iohn, or the Black Hodge, going for Virginia. pag. 1780 CHAP. XV.

Virginian affaires fince the yeere 1620. till this prefent 1624.

Q. I. A Note of the shipping. Men and provisions muda, and miffing the fame, his putting over toward fent and provided for Virginia, by the Right Honon-Sagadahoc and Cape Cod, and fo backe againe to rable Henry Earle of South-hampton, and the Companie, and other private Adventurers, in the yeere 1621. Cc. With other Occurrents then publihed by the Companie.

Ships and People. And for the benefit of the Plantations shele things following have beene here done this yeere. ibid. Other Occurrents of mote.

pag.1784. Q. 2. Newes from Virginia in Letters fent thence 1621. partly published by the Company, partly transcribed from the Originals, with Letters of his

Maiestie, and of the Companie touching Silkerkes.

Pag.1787.

His Maiesties gracious Letter to the Earle of

South hampton, Trefurer, and to the Connfell and Companie of Virginia here : commanding the present letting up of Silke-workes, and planting of Vines in Virginia.

d. 2. The barbarous Massacre committed by the Sauages on the English Planters, March the two and twentieth, 1621. after the English acpag. 1788. Q. 4. A Note of promissions necessarie for enery

Planter or personall Aduenturer to Virginia : and accidents since the Massacre. CHAP. XVI.

English Voyages to the Summer Hands : Henry Mays Shipwracke there 1592. The first Colons

A Copie of the Articles which Mafter R. More. Goner wour Deputie of the Summer Hands, propounded to the Company that were there with him to be subscribed unto, which both bee and they subscribed the fecond of August, in his House, Anno 1612. which about the same time bee fent into England, to the Worshipfull Companie of the Adnessu-

CHAP. XVII.

Relations of Summer Hands, taken out of Mafter Richard Norwood, bu Map and Notes added thereto, printed 1622. The Historic of the Creatures growing or lining therein, being inlarged out of Captaine Smiths written Relations. pag. 1796. CHAP. XVIII.

Extracts out of Captaine John Smiths Historie of Bermudas, or Summer Hands; touching the English ucts and occurrents there from the beginning of the Plantation.

CHAP. XIX.

Briefe intelligence from Virginia by Letters, a Supplement of French-Virginian occurrants, and pag. 1783. I their Supplantation by Sir Samuel Argal, inright of the English plantation. CHAL XX.

pag. 1805. | benefits which may grow to this Kingdome from American-English Plantations, and specially Virginias Verger : or a discourse showing the those of Virginia and Summer Hands. p. 1809.

#### The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the tenth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Briefe Relation of the disconcrie and plantation of New England: and of fundric Laccidents therein occurring, from the yeer of our Lord 1607. to this prefent 1622 published by the President and Connect , and dedicated to the Princes Highneffe, here abbreniated p. 1827. CHAP. II.

The verage of Master Henrie Challons, intended for the North plantation of Virginia, 1606. saken by the may, and ill vied by Spaniards: written by John Stoneman Pilot. H. CHAP. III.

Extracts of a Booke of Captaine Iohn Smith, printed 1622, called New Englands trialls, and continuing the storie thereof, with Motines to the businesse of fishing there.

An Abstract of Letters fent from the Colonie in New England, Inly fixteene, 1622. p. 1840.

CHAP. IIII.

A Relation or lournall of a plantation fetled at Plimoth in New England, and proceedings therof ; printed 1622. and here abbreniated. D.1842. CHAP. V.

Good newes from New England : or , a relation of things remarkable in that Plantation; written by E. Winflow and bere abbrenta-

liam Alexander Knight, for the plantation of New Scotland in America, and his proceedings therein; with a description of Mawoolien for better knowledge of those parts. pag.1871.

The description of the Country of Maw collien. discovered by the English, in the yeere 1602. 3,5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. H. pag. 1873.

The beginning of the Patent for New-foundland : and the plantation there made by the English, 1610. delinered in a Letter dated thence from M. Guy , to M. Slany : Alfo of the weather the three first winters, and of Captaine Weston: with other remarkable occurrents. H. pag. 1876.

Master Iohn Guy his Letter to Master Slany Treasurer, and to the Counsell of the New-foundland plantation.

To Master Iohn Slany Treasurer, and others of the Councell, and Companie of the New-foundland plantation, the 29. of Inly, 1612. pag. 1879. CHAP. VIII.

Captaine Richard Whitbournes voyages to New found land, and observations there, and thereof; taken out of his printed booke. p.1882. A Relation of New found-land. pag. 1884. CHAPP IX.

The names of diner's honourable persons and ohees, who have undertaken to helpe to aduance his Maiesties plansation in the New-found-land: written by the faid R.W. with extracts of cer-Nous Scotis. The King Patent, to Six Wil. + table Letter written from thence. pag. 1888.

### The fecond Part of the tenth Booke.

the Spaniards, by our English Debora, Queene Elizabeth , of glorious memorie : Her manifold delineries and victories. CHAP. XI.

The Popes Bull, the King of Spaines preparations, the Duke of Medinas Expedition, the Duke of the Coast of Andaluzia, and of this Armie of of Parmas Forces, for the invalion of England : diners Sea fights twixt the English and Spanish of the golden Fleece. Fleets, the Sea flight of the Spanish, and mife- The true relation of the successe of the Catholike

OHAF. X. The Special of the Special

Squadron of the Galeons of Portugall. p. 1808. Don Alonso Peres de Gusman, the good Dake pag. 1891. of Medina, Sidonia, Countie of Nebla . Marquelle of Casheshe in Africa. Lord of the Citie of Saint Lucar, Captaine Generall of the Occian Sea. his Maiefile, and Knight of the honorable Order

#### The Contents of the tenth Booke

Armie against their Enemies, by the Letters of the Post-master of Logrono of the fourth of September, and by Letters from Roan of the 31. of Angust, and by Letters from Paris of the Kings Emballadour there: wherein hee declareth the impriforment of Francis Drake, and other great Nobles | fer Hackluyt, and others. of England, and how the Queene is in the field with an Armie, and of a certaine mutinie which was amongst the Queenes Armie, with the successe of the faid Catholike Armie fince they entred in Whe Groyne, till they came on the Coast of England, with two Ballets compounded by Christouer Brano, a blindemen of Cordowa, printed with hisence by Gabriel Ramos Beigrano prin-1000 00

CHAP. XII. Generalls, written (as is thought) by Colonell An- rences. tonie Wingfield, imployed in the same voyage, ! formerly published by bis friend to whom it was advertisements touching his Maiesties care for written and here abbreniated.

CHAP. XIII.

I briefe and true report of the Honourable voyage unto Cadiz, 1596. of the overshrow of the Kings Fleet, and of the winning of the Citie, with other accidents, gathered out of Meteranus, Ma-

CHAP XIIII.

The verage to the Iles of Azores, under the conduct of the Right Honorable Earle of Effex,

D. 1. Therelation thereof by the faid and other Commissioners.

0. 2. A larger relation of the faid Iland vonage, written by Sir Arthur Gorges Knight, colle-cied in the Queenes ship called the Waft Spite, descourse of the Portugall voyage, Anno wherein he was then Captaine; with Marine and 1589. Sir John Norris and Sir Francis Drake Martiall discourses added according to the occur-

The Conclusion of the Worke, with some later





## Maps and Peeces cut in Brasse or VVood in the last ten Bookes.

▲ Merica	p.857	Lithuania	p.629
A America Meridionalis			p. 627
America Septentrionalis	p.853	Magellan Streight	р. <b>9со</b>
Map of the Artlike Pole	p.625	Mexican hieroglyph	ic. histor. cut
Borussia or Prussia	p.626	in 65. peeces	p.1067, &c.
Hondius bis Map of China		to 1117.	
Purchas bis Map of China	p.402	Moscouia_	p.778
Denmarke	p.622	Norwegia_	p.620
	p.1980	Polonia_	p.6jo
Florida	p.689	Rusia	p.220
Great Britaine and Ireland	p.1981	Nous Scotia	p.1874
Greenland		New Spaine	p.871
Vlphilas Gottick letters	p.658	Tartaria	P-234
Hispaniola	p.861	Taurica Chersonesus	p. 632
f stand	p.644	Virginia	p.1692





# PEREGRINATIONS AND DISCOVERIES, IN THE

REMOTEST NORTH AND EAST

PARTS OF ASIA, CALLED TARTARIA AND CHINA.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

The Iournall of Frier WILLIAM DERVBRYQVIS, a French-man, of the Order of the Minorite Friers, pnto the East parts of the World, Anno Dom, 1253.



O the most Excellent and most Christian Lord, Lewis, by Gods grace the Renowmed King of France, Frier William de Rubruk, \* the meanest of the Minorites \* Master Hak. Order, witheth health and continuall Triumph in had published

It is written in the Booke of Ecclesiasticus, concer. Author, but ning the Wiseman: He shall trauell into forreme Coun-worke being tries, and good and enil shall beetry in all thingin. The found in Bent very fame Action (my Lord and King) haue I acchie- Colledge Livery tame Action (my Lord and King) made I accine ued: howbeit, I with, that I haue done it like a wile brary in Comman, and not like a Foole. For many there bee, that fit to communify the community of the comm performe the same Action which a wife mandoth, not nicate it to the wifely but more vndifcreetly : of which number I feare World; tbeing

my felfe to bee one. Notwithstanding, howfoever I materpubli-haue done it, because you commanded mee, when I de-thanke, name of the parted from your Highnesse, to write all things vnto you, which I should see among the Tur-Language, I tars, and you wished meal o that I should not feare to write long Letters , I have done as your begin with the Maiestie enjoyned me : yet with feare and reverence, because I want words and Eloquence suf- Tartars, as befrient to write write 0 great a Maiellie. Bee't knowne therefore vitro your Sacred Maiellie, my. 2. write that in the year of our Lord 1353, about the Nones of May, we entired into the Sea of Pan. forth, Estate 110, which the Bulgarians call the great Sea. It contayneth in length (as I learned of certayne saity of Sea. 1). Merchants) one thouland and eight miles, and is in a manner, divided into two parts. About or Many be-60 the midit thereof are two Prounces, one towards the North, and another towards the South. came knowne the middle thereof are two Prominess, one towards the North, and another towards are follows.

The South Promines is called Sympolia, and it is the Castle and Port of the Soldan of Turkee by them.

Eccion 31.0.2.3. but the North Province is called of the Latmes, Gufaria: of the Greekes, which inhabit vpon (affaia, or the Sea shoare thereof, it is called Caffaria, that is to say, Cafaria. And there are certayne head-

lands stretching forth into the Sea towards Sympolis, Also, there are three hundred miles of di-

2

Soldaia.

Zita.

to Constantinople, in length and breadth is about feuen hundred miles ; and feuen hundred miles also from thence to the East, namely, to the Countrey of Hiberia, which is a Province of Georgia. At the Province of Gafaria or Cassaria, wee arrived, which Province is, in a manner, three square, having a Citie on the West part thereof called Kerfous, wherein Saint Clement suffered Martyrdome. And sayling before the said Citie, wee saw an Iland, in which a Church is faid to be built by the hands of Angels. But about the midft of the faid Prouince toward the South, as it were, vpon a sharpe Angle or Point, standeth a Citie called Soldaia, directly against Synopolis. And there doe all the Turkie Merchants, which Traffique into the North Countries, in their lourney outward, arrive, and as they returne home-ward also from Ruffia, IG and the faid Northerne Regions, into Turkie. The forefaid Merchants transport thither Ermines and gray Furres, with other rich and coffly Skinnes. Others carrie Clothes made of Cotton or Bombaft, and Silke, and divers kinds of Spices. But vpon the East part of the faid Province standeth a Citie called Matriga, where the River Tanais dischargeth his streames into the Sea of Pontus, the mouth whereof is twelve miles in breadth. For this River, before it entreth into the Sea of Pontus, maketha little Sea, which hath in breadth and length feuen hundred miles, and it it is in no place thereof aboue fixe paces deepe, whereupon great Veffels cannot faile ouer it. Howbeit the Merchants of Conflantinople, arriving at the foreiaid Citie of " Materta, fend their Barkes vinto the River of Tanais to buy dryed fishes, Sturgeons, Thoses, Barbils, and an infinite number of other fishes. The foresaid Province of Cassaria, is compassed in with 20 the Sea on three fides thereof : namely, on the Well-fide , where Kerfona , the Citie of Saint Clement is situate : on the South-side the Citie of Soldaia, whereat we arrived : on the East-side Maricandis, and there stands the Citie of Matriga, vpon the mouth of the River Tanais. Beyond the faid mouth standeth Zikia, which is not in subjection vinto the Tartars: also the people called Suem and Hibers, towards the East, who likewise are not under the Tartars Dominion. Moreouer, towards the South, standeth the Citie of Trapefunda, which hatha Gouernour proper to it felfe, named Guydo, being of the Linage of the Emperours of Constantinople, and is subject vnto the Tartars. Next vnto that is Synopolis, the Citie of the Soldan of Turkie, who likewise is in subjection vnto them. Next vnto these lyeth the Countrey of Vasacius, whose Sonne is called Aftar, of his Grand-father by the Mothers fide, who is not in fubication. All the 30 Land from the mouth of Tanais West-ward as farre as Danubius is under their Iurisdiction, Yea. beyond Danubins also, towards Constantinople, Valakia, which is the Land of Assaus, and Bulgaria minor, as farre as Solonia, doe all pay Tribute vnto them. And besides the Tribute impoled, they have also, of late yeares, exacted of every houshold an Axe, and all such Corne as they found lying on heapes. We arrived therefore at Soldain, the twelfth of the Kalends of June. And divers Merchants of Constantinople, which were arrived there before vs, reported that certayne Messengers were comming thither from the Holy Land, who were desirous to trauell vnto Sartach. Notwithstanding, I my selfe had publikely given out vpon Palme Sunday within the Church of Santta Sophia, that I was not your nor any other mans Meffenger, but that I travelled unto these Infidels according to the Rule of our Order. And being arrived, the faid Merchants 40 admonished me to take diligent heed what I spake : because they having reported mee to bee a Messenger, if I should say the contrary, that I were no Messenger, I could not have free passage granted vnto me. Then I spake after this manner vnto the Governours of the Citie, or rather vnto their Lieutenants, because the Gouernours themselves were gone to pay Tribute vnto Baatu, and were not as yet returned. We heard of your Lord Sartach (quoth I) in the Holy Land, that he was become a Christian : and the Christians were exceeding glad thereof, and especially the most Christian King of France, who is there now in Pilgrimage, and fighteth against the Saracens, to redeeme the holy places out of their hands : wherefore I am determined to goe vnto Sartach, and to deliuer vnto him the Letters of my Lord the King, wherein hee admonisheth him concerning the good and commoditie of all Christendome. And they received vs with 50 gladnesse, and gaue +s entertaynment in the Cathedrall Church. The Bishop of which Church was with Sarrach, who told me many good things concerning the faid Sarrach, which afterward I found to be nothing fo. Then put they vs to our choice, whether wee would have Carts and Oxen, or packe-horses to transport our Carriages. And the Merchants of Constantinople aduifed me, not to take Carts of the Citizens of Soldana, but to buy couered Carts of mine owne. (fuch as the Ruffians carry their Skinnes in) and to put all our Carriages, which I would daily take out, into them : because, if I should vie Horses, I must be constrayned at every baite to take downe my Carriages, and to lift them vp againe on fundry Horses backes : and besides , that I should ride a more gentle pace by the Oxendrawing the Carts. Wherefore, contenting my selfe with their euill counfell, I was trauelling vnto Sartach two monethes, which I could have done 60 in one, if I had gone by Horse. I brought with me from Constantinople (being by the Merchants aduised so to doe) pleasant Fruits, Muskadell Wine, and delicate Bisket bread to present vnto the Governours of Soldara, to the end I might obtayne free pallage : because they looke fauourably vpon no man which commeth with an empty hand. All which things I bestowed in one

CHAP.3. Great Lakes. Salt-piss, very benefisiall. Tartars boufes.

of my Carts (not finding the Gouernours of the Citie at home) for they told me, if I could carry them to Sartach, that they would be moit acceptable vnto him. Wee tooke our Journey therefore about the Kalends of June, with foure couered Carts of our owne, and with two other which we borrowed of them, wherein we carried our bedding to rest vpon in the night, and they allowed vs fine Horfes to ride vpon. For there were just fine perions in our company : namely, I my felfe and mine affociate Friet Bartholomen of Cremena, and Gofer the Bearer of thele Pre- na. fents, the man of God Tingemannus, and Nicolss my Servant, whom I bought at Constantinople, with some part of the Almes bestowed vpon me. Moreouer, they allowed vs two men, which draue our Carrs and gaue attendance vnto our Oxen and Horfes. There bee high Promontories 10 on the Sea thoare from Kerfona vinto the mouth of Tanais. Alio there are fortie Caft's between Kersona and Soldria, every one of which almost have their proper Languages: amongst whom

there were many Gother, who spake the Dutch Tongue. Beyond the laid Mountaynes towards the North, there is a most beautifull Wood growing on a Plaine full of Fountaynes and Freshets. And beyond the Wood there is a mightie plaine Champian, continuing fine dayes Iourney vnto the very extreamitie and borders of the faid Prouince North-ward, and there it is a narrow finefal. 13hms or neck Land, having Sea on the East and West fides thereof, insomuch that there is a Ditch made from one Sea vnto the other. In the same Plaine (before the Tartars sprang vp) were the Comanians wont to inhabit, who compelled the fore-laid Cities and Caffles to pay Tribute vnto them. But when the Tarsars came vpon them, the multitude of the Comanians

20 entred into the fore-faid Prouince, and fledall of them, even vnto the Sea shoare, beeing in such extreme Famine, that they which were aliue, were constrayned to eate up those which were dead : and (as a Merchant reported vnto me who faw it with his owne eyes) that the liuing men deuoured and tore with their teeth, the raw flesh of the dead, as Dogges would gnaw vpon Carrion. Towardes the Borders of the faid Prouince there bee many great Lakes: vpon the Bankes whereof are Salt-pits or Fountaynes, the water of which io ioone

as it entreth into the Lake , becommeth hard Salt like vnto Ice. And out of those Salt-pits Bases and Sartach have great Revenues: for they repayre thither out of all Ruffia, for Salt : and for each Cart loade they give two Webbes of Cotton, amounting to the value of halte an Tperpera. There come by Sea also many Shippes for Sale, which 30 pay Tribute enery one of them according to their burthen. The third day after wee were

departed out of the Precincts of Soldain, wee found the Tartars. Amongst whom beeing The Tartarian entred, me thought I was come into a new World. Whose life and manners I will describe vnto your Highneile aiwell as I can.

Hey haue in no place any fetled Citie to abide in, neither know they of the Celestiall Citie Chap. 2. to come. They have divided all Seythia among themselves , which stretcheth from the Ri- Of the Tanats, uer Danubius even vnto the rifing of the Sunne. And every of their Captaines, according to the and of their great or imall number of his people, knoweth the bounds of his Pastures, and where hee ought houses, to feed his Cattell Winter and Summer, Spring and Autumne. For in the Winter they descend

vnto the warme Regions South-ward. And in the Summer they afcend vnto the cold Regions North-ward. In Winter when Snow lyeth vpon the ground, they feed their Cattell vpon Paflures without water, because then they vie Snow in flead of water. Their houses wherein they fleepe, they ground vpon a round foundation of Wickers artificially wrought and compacted together : the Roofe whereof confifteth (in like fort) of Wickers, meeting about into one little Roundell, out of which Roundell ascendeth vpward a necke like vnto a Chimney, which they couer with white Felt, and oftentimes they lay Morter or white Earth vpon the faid Felt, with the powder of bones, that it may thine white. And fometimes also they couer it with blacke

Felt. The faid Felt on the necke of their house, they doe garnish ouer with beautifull varietie of Pictures. Before the deore likewise they hang a Felt curiously painted ouer. For they 50 spend all their coloured Felt, in painting Vines, Trees, Birds, and Beafts thereupon. The faid houses they make solarge, that they contayne thirtie foot in breadth. For measuring once the breadth betweene the wheele-ruts of one of their Carts , I found it to bee twentie feet ouer : and when the house was voon the Cart, it stretched ouer the wheeles on each fide fine feet at the leaft. I told two and twentie Oxen in one Teame, drawing an house vpon a Cart, eleuen in one order according to the breadth of the Cart, and eleuen more before them: the Axletree of the Cart was of an huge bigneffe like vnto the Mast of a Ship. And a fellow stood in the doore of the house, upon the fore-stall of the Cart driving forth the Oxen. Moreover, they make certayne foure fquare Baskets of imall flender Wickers as bigge as great Chefts: and after-

60 and make a doore in the fore-fide thereof. And then they couer the faid Chest or little House with black Felt, ubbelouer with Tallow or Sheeps Milke to keep the rain from foking through, which they deck likewise with printing or with feathers. And in such Chests they put their whole Houshold-stuffe and Treature. Also the same Chests they doe strongly binde vpon other Garts, which are drawne with Camels, to the end they may wade through Rivers. Neither doe they at any time take downe the faid Chefts from off their Carts. When they

ward, from one fide to another, they frame an hollow lidde or couer of fich like Wickers,

take downe their dwelling houses, they turne the doores alwayes to the South : and next of all they place the Carts laden with their Chefts, here and there, within halfe a frones cast of the House : insomuch that the House standeth betweene two rankes of Carts. as it were, betweene two Walles. The Matrones make for themselues most beautifull Carts. The benefit of which I am not able to describe vnto your Maiefly but by Pictures only : for I would right wila Painter in lingly haue painted all things for you, had my Skill beene ought in that Art. One rich Moal or firange Coun- Tartar hath two hundred, or one hundred fuch Carts with Chefts. Duke Baats hath fixteene Wives, every one of which hath one great house, besides other little houses, which they place behind the great one, being as it were Chambers for their Maidens to dwell in. And vnto every of the faid houses doe belong two hundred Carts. When they take their houses from off the IQ Carts, the principall Wife placeth her Court on the West Frontier, and so all the rest in their order : fo that the last Wife dwelleth vpon the East Frontier : and one of the faid Ladies Courts is diffant from another about a stones cast. Whereupon the Court of one rich Moal or Tartar will appeare like vnto a great Village, very few men abiding in the fame. One woman will guide twenty or thirty Carts at once, for their Countries are very plaine, and they binde the Carts with Camels or Oxen, one behind another. And there fits a Wench in the fore-most Cart driting the Oxen, and all the refidue follow on a like pace. When they chance to come at any bad passage, they let them loose, and guide them ouer one by one : for they goe a slow pace, as fait as a Lambe or an Oxe can walke.

Idols

Chap. 3. Haung taken downe their houses from off their Carts, and turning the doores South-ward, Of their Beds, Hahey place the bed of the Master of the house, at the North part thereof. The womens Puppets, Ima place is alwayes on the East-side, namely, on the left hand of the good man of the house sitting vpon his bed with his face South-wards : but the mens place is vpon the West-side , namely, at the right hand of their Master. Men when they enter into the house, will not in any case hang their Quiers on the womens side. Ouer the Masters head there is alwayes an Image, like a Puppet, made of Fealt, which they call the Masters Brother : and another ouer the head of the good Wife or Mistris, which they call her Brother, being fastened to the wall : and aboue betweene both of them, there is a little leane one, which is, as it were the keeper of the whole house. The good Wife or Mistris of the house placeth aloft at her beds feet, on the right hand, the 30 Skinne of a Kid Ruffed with Wooll or some other matter, and neere vnto that a little Image or Puppet looking towards the Maidens and women. Next vnto the doore also on the womens fide, there is another Image with a Cowes Vdder, for the women that milke the Kine, For it is the dutie of their women to milke Kine. On the other fide of the doore next vnto the men. there is another Image with the Vdder of a Mare, for the men which milke Mares. And when they come together to drinke and make merrie, they iprinkle part of their Drinke vpon the Image which is about the Matters head : afterward vpon other Images in order : then goetha Servant out of the house with a cup full of Drinke sprinkling it thrife towards the South, and bowing his knee at every time : and this is done for the honour of the Fire. Then performeth he the like Superfitious Idolatry towards the East, for the honour of the Ayre: and then to the West for the honour of the water: and lastly, to the North in the behalfe of the Dead. When the Master holdeth a cup in his hand to drinke, before hee tasteth thereof, hee powreth his part vpon the ground. If he drinketh fitting on Horse-backe, he powreth out part thereof vpon the necke or mane of his Horse before he himselfe drinketh. After the Seruant aforefaid hath so discharged his cups to the foure quarters of the World, hee returneth into the house : and two other Servants stand ready with two cups, and two basons, to carrie Drinke vnto their Master and his Wife, fitting together vpon a bed. And if hee hath more Wines then one, fhee with whom he slept the night before, fitteth by his side the day following : and all his other Wives must that day resort vnto the same house to drinke : and there is the Court holden for that day : the gifts also which are presented that day, are layd up in the Chests of the faid Wife. And upon 50 a bench stands a Vessell of Milke, or of other Drinke and drinking cups.

Chap. 4.

IN Winter time they make excellent drinke of Rice, of Mill, and of Honey, being well and high coloured like Wine. Also they have Wine brought vnto them from farre Countries. In dinkes, and Summer time they care not for any drinke, but Cosmos. And it standeth alwayes within the how they pro- entrance of his doore, and next vnto it stands a Minstrell with his Fiddle. I saw there no such noke one and Citernes and Vials as ours commonly bee, but many other Musicall Instruments which are not vied among vs. And when the Mafter of the house begins to drinke, one of his feruants crieth out with a loude voyce, Ha, and the Minstrell playes vpon his Fiddle. And when they make any great folemne feast, they all of them clap their hands, and dance to the noyse of Musicke, 60 the men before their Master, and the women before their Mistris. And when the Master hath like custome in drunke, then cryes out his feruant as before, and the Minstrell stayeth his Mulicke. Then drinke they all round both men and women, : and sometimes they carowse for the victorie very filthily and drunkenly. Also when they will prouoke any man, they pull him by the Eares to the drinke, and so lug and draw him strongly to stretch out his throat clapping their hands, and

dancing before him. Moreouer, when some of them will make great feathing and reloycing, one of the companie takes a full Cup, and two other stand, one on his right hand, and another on his left, and so they three come inging to the man who is to have the Cup reached vnto him, fill linging and dancing before him: and when he stretcheth forth his hand to receive the Cup, they leape fuddenly backe, returning againe as they did before, and so having deluded him thrice or four times by drawing backe the Cup, vntill he be merrie, and hath gotten a good appetite, then they give him the Cup, finging and dancing, and ftamping with their feet, vntill he hath done drinking.

Oncerning their food and victuals, be it knowne vnto your Highnedic, that they doe, with- Chap. q. out all difference or conception, eare all their dead Carions. And amongst so many droues Of their sood it cannot be, but some Cattell must needs die. Howbeit in Summer, so long as their Cosmos, and victuals. that is, their Mares milke lasteth, they care not for any food. And if they chance to have an Oxe or an Horse die, they drie the flesh thereof: for cutting it into thinne slices, and hanging Dryingof flesh it up against the Sunne and the wind, it is presently dried without Salt, and also without stench in the wind. or corruption. They make better Puddings of their Hories then of their Hogs, which they eate being new made : the reft of the flesh they reserve vntill Winter. They make of their Oxe skins great bladders or bags, which they doe wonderfully drie in the smoake. Of the hinder part of their Horsehides, they make very fine Sandals and Pantofles. They give wnto fiftie of 20 an hundred men, the fielh of one Ramme to eate. For they mince it in a bowle with Salt and an infinite ment, the man of a state of the most of the point of a Knife, or a little Forke which they make for the same purpose (such as we rie to take roafted Peares and Apples out of Wine they make for the same purpose (such as we rie to take roafted Peares and Apples out of Wine withall ) they reach vnto every one of the companie a morfell or twaine, according to the mulcitude of Guefts. The Mafter of the house, before the Rams flesh be distributed, first of all himfelfe taketh thereof, what he pleafeth. Also, if he giveth vnto any of the companie a speciall part, the receiver thereof mult eate it alone, and mult not impart ought thereof vnto any other. Not being able to eate it vp all, hee carries it with him, and delivers it vnto his boy, if hee be present, to keepe it: if not, hee puts it vp into his Saptargat, that is to say, his foure square Budget, which they vie to carrie about with them, for the fauing of all fuch prouision, & wherein they lay up their bones, when they have not time to graw them throughly, that they may

Heirdrinke, called Cosmos, which is Mares milke, is prepared after this manner. They Chap. 6.

30 burnish them afterward, to the end that no white of their food may come to nought.

I faften a long line vnto two posts standing firmly in the ground, and vnto the same line they How they tye the young Foales of those Mares, which they meane to milke. Then come the Dammes make their to fland by their Foales gently fuffering themselves to be milked. And if any of them be too drinke, called varuly, then one takes her Foale, and puts it under her, letting it fucke a while, and prefently carrying it away againe, there comes another man to milke the faid Mare. And having gotten a good quantitie of this Milke together (being as fweet as Cowes milke) while it is new they power into a great bladder or bag, and they beat the faid bag with a piece of wood made for the purpose, hauing a Club at the lower end like a mans head, which is hollow within : and so foone as they beat upon it, it begins to boyle like new Wine, and to be fowre and sharpe of taste, and they beate it in that manner till Butter come thereof. Then tafte they thereof, and being indifferently sharpethey drinke it : for it biteth a mans tongue like the Wine of Raspes, when it is drunke. After a man hath taken a draughe thereof, it leaueth behind it a tafte like the tafte of Almond-milke, and goeth downe very pleasantly, intoxicating weake braynes: also it caufeth wrine to be anoyded in great measure. Likewise Caracosmos, that is to say, Blacke Cosmos, Caracosmos for great Lords to drinke, they make on this manner. First, they beat the faid Milke so long till the thickest partithereof descend right downe to the bottome like the lees of white Wine, and that which is thinne and pure remayneth aboue, being like vnto Whay or white Mult. The faid less and dregs being very white, are given to feruants, and will cause them to sleepe exceedingly. That which is thinne and cleere their Matters drinke : and in very deede it is maruellous sweet and wholiome liquor. Duke Baats hath thirtie Cottages or Granges, within a Duke Baats. dayes journey of his abiding place : euery one of which serueth him daily with the Caracofmos of an hundred Mares milke, and so all of them together every day with the Milke of three Store of shoufand Mares, befides white Milke which other of his Subiects bring. For even as the Huf. Mares, and bandmen of Strie bestow the third part of their fruits, and carrie it vnto the Courts of their Mares mike. Lords, even so doe they their Mares milke every third day. Out of their Cowes milke they first churne Butter, boyling the which Butter vnto a perfect decoction, they put it into Rams skins, 60 which they referue for the same purpose. Neither doe they sale their Butter: and yet by reafon of the long feething, it putrifieth not : and they keepe it in store for Winter. The churnmilke which remayneth of the Butter, they let alone till it be as fowre as possibly it may be,

then they boyle it, and in boyling it is turned all into Curds, which Curds they drie in the Sun, making them as hard as the droffe of Iron: and this kind of food also they store up in Sachels

against Winter. In the Winter season when Milke fayleth them , they put the foresaid Curde (which they call Gry-ve) into a bladder, and powring hot water thereinto, they beat it luftily till they have resolved it into the said Water, which is thereby made exceedingly sowre, and that they drinke in flead of Milke. They are very scrupulous, and take diligent heed that they drinke not faire Water by it felie.

Reat Lords have Cottages or Granges towards the South, from whence their Tenants bring

with thicke water, and are therewithall contented. They will neither eate Mile with long 10

Athem Millet and Meale against Winter. The poorer fort prouide themselues of such pecel-

Chap.7. Or he beafts which they car faries, for the exchange of Rams, and of other bealts skins. The Tartars flaues fill their bellies of their parmen sand of their manner of hunting.

William L

tayles, nor any kind of Mife with short tayles. They have also certaine little beasis, called by them, Sogar, which he in a Caue twentie or thirtie of them together, all the whole Winter sleeping there for the space of fixe moneths; and these they take in great abundance. There are also a kind of Conies having long tayles like vnto Cats: and on the outfide of their tayles grow blacke and white haires. They have many other small beatls good to cat, which they know and discerne right well. I saw no Deere there, and but a few Hares, but a great number of Roes. I faw wild Alles in great abundance, which be like vnto Mules. Alfo I faw another kind of beaft, called Areak, having in all refemblance the bodie of a Ram, and crooked hornes, which are of fuch bignesse, that I could scarce lift up a paire of them with one hand : and of these hornes they make great drinking cups. They have Faulcons, Girfaulcons, and other Hawkes in great plentie: all which they carrie upon their right hands: and they put alwaies about their Faulcons 20 neckes a firing of Leather, which hangeth downe to the midft of their gorges, by the which firing, when they cast them off the filt at the game, with their left hand they bow downe the

vie the left f.ft. Another ftrange cuflome, which I leaue to bee fcanned by Falconers themfelues.

heads and breaks of the faid Hawkes, left they should be toffed vp and downe, and beaten with the wind, or left they should foare too high. Wherefore they get a great part of their victuals by hunting and hawking. Concerning their garments and attire, be it knowne vnto your Maiestie, that out of Caraya, and other Regions of the East, out of Persia also, and other Countries of to South , there are brought vnto them Stuffes of filke , Cloth of gold , and Cotton cloth. which they weare in time of Summer. But out of Ruffia, Movell , Bulgaria the greater , and Palcatir, that is, Hungaria the greater, and out of Kerfis (all which are Northerne Regions, and 10 full of Woods) and alto out of many other Couperies of the North, which are subject vnto them, the Inhabitants bring them rich and costly skins of divers forts (which I never faw in our Countries) wherewithall they are clad in Winter. And alwaies against Winter they make themselves two Gownes, one with the force inward to their skinne, and another with the force outward, to defend them from wind and show, which for the most part are made of Wolves skins, or Foxe skins, or elfe of Papions. And when they fit within the house, they have a finer Gowne to weare. The poorer fort make their upper Gowne of Dogs or of Goats skins, When they goe to hunt for wild beafts, there meets a great companie of them together, and emironing the place round about, where they are fire to find fome game, by little and little they ap-

proach on all files, till they have gotten the wild beafts into the midit, as it were into a circle, 40

and then they discharge their Arrowes at them. Also they make themselves Breeches of

skins. The rich Tarrars sometimes fure their Gownes with pelluce or silke shag, which is

exceeding foft, light, and warme. The poorer fort doe line their clothes with Cotton cloth.

which is made of the finest wooll they can picke out, and of the courser part of the faid wooll.

they make Felt to couer their houses, and their chifts, and for their hedding also. Of the same

wooll, being mixed with one third part of Horse haire, they make all their cordage. They make

for all which purposes they spend a great quantitie of their wooll. And thus much concerning

Great expense also of the faid Felt coverings for their stooles, and caps to defend their heads from the weather:

the attire of the men.

Chap.8. Of the fashion which the Tartars vie in cutting their haire, and ofthe attire of their women.

He men shaue a plot foure square vpon the crownes of their heads, and from the two formost corners they shaue, as it were, two scames downe to their temples : they shaue also their temples, and the hinder part of their head, enemants the mape of the necke: likewife they shaue the fore-part of their scalpe downe to their foreheads, and vpon their foreheads they leave a locke of haire reaching downe vnto their eye-browes : vpon the two hindermost corners of their heads, they have two lockes also, which they twine and braid into knots and fo bind and knit them under each eare one, Moreouer their womens garments differ not from their mens, fauing that they are somewhat longer. Byton the morrow after one of their women is married, flee shares her scalpe from the middest of her head downe to her forebead, and weares a wide garment like vnto the hood of a Nunne, yealarger and longer in all parts then 60 a Nunnes hood, beeing open before, and gire ento them under the right fide. For hetrein doe the Tartore differ from the Turkes: because the Turkes fasten their garments to their bodies on the left fide ; but the Tartare alwaies on the right fide. They have allo an ornament for their heads, which they call, Betta, beeing made of the barke of a Tree, or of some such other ligh-

ter matter as they can finde, which by teafon of the thicknesse and roundnesse thereof cannot he holden but in both hands together : and it hath a fquare sharpe spire rising from the top thereof, being more then a cubite in length, and fashioned like vnto a Pinacle. The faid Batta they couer all ouer with a piece of rich Silke, and it is hollow within : and vpon the midft of the faid spire or square top, they put a bunch of Quils, or of slender Canes a cubite long and more : and the faid bunch on the top thereof, they beautifie with Peacockes Feathers, and round about all the length thereof, with the Feathers of a Malards taile, and with precious stones alio. Great Ladies weare this kind of ornament upon their heads, binding it strongly with a certaine Hat or Coyfe, which hash a hole in the crowne, fit for the fpire to come through Io it and under the forefaid ornament they court the fiaires of their heads, which they gather up round together from the hinder part thereof to the growne; and fo lap them vp in a knot or bundell within the faid Borra; which afterward they bind fittingly vader their throats. Hereupon when a great company of such Gentlewomen ride together, and are belield a farre off, they feeme to be Souldiers with Helmets on their heads, carrying their Lances veright: for the faid Botta appeareth like an Helmet wieles Lance ouer it. All their Women fit on horfe-backe, befiriding their Horses like men : and they binde their hoods or gownes about their wastes with a sky-coloured Silke Skarte, and with another Skarfe they gird it about their breafts : and they binde alfo a piece of white Silke like a Mutier or Maske under their eyes, reaching downe unto their breails. Their Gentlewomen are exceeding fat, and the leffer their notes be, the faior rer they are elleemed : they dawbe ouer their fweet faces with greafe too shamefully : and they neuer lyein bed for their trauell of child-birth.

"He duties of Women are to drive Cares : to lay their houles upon Cares, and to take them Chap. o. downe sgaine; to milke Kine; to make Butter and Gry-ve, to dreffe skinnes, and to few Of the duties them, which they virally few with thread made of finewes, for they divide finewes in flender injoyned vate threads, and then twine them into one long thread. They make Sandals and Socks; and other Women, and Garments. Howbeit they neuer wash any apparell! for they lay, that God is then angry, and of their labors. that dreadfull thunder will enfue, if washed garments be hanged forth todry; yea, they beate and also of fuch as wash, and take their garments from them. They are wonderfully afraid of thunder : for their marri-30 in the time of thunder they thrust all strangers one of their houses, and then wrapping them. " ages. feliges in blacke Felt; they lye hidden therein, till the thunder be ouer-paft. They neuer walh their dilhes or bowles : yea, when their fielh is fodden, they wash the platter wherein it milt

be put, with scalding hot broath out of the pot, and then powre the faid broath into the por againe. They make Felt also, and couer their houses therewith. The dities of the Men are a to make Bowes and Arrowes, Stirrops, Bridles and Saddles : to build Houses and Carts, to keepe Horses, to milke Mares, to churrie Colmos and Mares Milke, and to make bags wherein to put it : they keepe Camels also, and lay burtlens upon the n. As for Sheepe and Goats, they tend and milke them, as well the Men as the Women. With Sheeps Milke thicked and falted, they dreffeand tan their Hides. When they will wash their hands or their heads, they fill their 40 mouthes full of Water, and spoweing it into their hands by little and little, they frrinkle their haire, and wash their heads therewith. As touching marriages, your Highnesse is to vinders and that no man can have a Wife among them till he hath bought her : whereupon fornetimes their Maids are very stale before they be married, for their Parents alwaies keepe them till they can fell them. They keepe the first and second degrees of Consanguinitie inquolable, as wee doe; but they have no regard of the degrees of Affinitie for they will marrie together, or by frecellion, two Sifters. Their Widowes marrie not at all, for this reason; because they believe that all who have ferred them in this life, shall doe them ferrice in the life to come also. Whereupon they are perfwaded, that every Widow after death shall returne wato her owne Husband. And here-hence arifeth an abominable and filthy custome among them; namely, that the Sonne marright iometimes all his Fathers Wives except his owne Mother For the Court or House of the

provide for all his Fathers Wines, because they are part of his Inheritance as well as his Fathers possessions. And then if he will, he vieth them for his owne Wives : for he thinkes it no infurie or difparagement vntohimfelfe, although they returne vnto his Father after death. Therfore when any man hath bargained with another for a Maid, the Father of the faid Damofell makes him a feast : in the means while she fleeth vnto some of her Kinsfolkes to hide her lefte. Then faith her Father vitto the Bridegroome: Loe, my Daughter is yours, take her where focuer you can finde ber. Then he and his friends feeke for her till they can find her, and having found her, he must take her by force and carry her (as it were) violently vnto his owne house.

50 Father or Mother, falleth by inheritance alwaies to the younger Sonne. Whereupon he is to

Oncerning their Lawes, or their Execution of Iustice, your Maiestie is to be advertised, Ot their exethat when two men fight, no third man dare intrude himfelfe to part them. Yea, the Fa- custon of luther dare not help his owne Sonne. But he that goes by the worst, must appeale vnto the Court fice and ludge of his Lord. And whofoeuer elfe offereth him any violence after appeale, is put to death. But thur deaths

he must goe presently without all delay : and he that bath suffered the iniury, carrieth him ( as it were ) captine. They punish no man with sentence of death , volesse he bee taken in the deed doing, or confesseth the same. But being accused by the multitude, they put him vnto extreame torture, to make him confesse the truth. They punish murther with death, and Carnall copulation also with any other beides his owne. By his owne, I meane his Wife or his Maid Servant, for he may vie his Slaue as hee lifteth himselfe. Hainous theft also or felony they punish with death. For a light theft, as namely, for stealing of a Ram, the partie (not being apprehended in the deed doing, but otherwise detected ) is cruelly beaten. And if the Executioner layes on an hundred strokes, hee must have an hundred staves; namely, for such as are beaten upon sentencegiuen in the Court. Also counterfeit Meffengers, because they feine themselues to be Mef- 10 fengers, when as indeed they are none at all, they punish with death. Sacrilegious persons they vie in like manner ( of which kind of Malefactors your Maiestie shall vnderstand more fully hereafter ) because they esteeme such to bee Witches. When any man dyeth, they lament and howle most pittifully for him: and the said Mourners are free from paying any tribute for one whole yeare after. Also, whosoeuer is present at the house where any one growne to mans estate lyeth dead, he must not enter into the Court of Manga-Can, till one whole yeare be expired. If it were a child deceased, hee must not enter into the faid Court till the next moneth after. Neere vnto the graue of the partie deceased, they alwairs leaue one Cottage. If any of their Nobles (being of the stocke of Chingis, who was their first Lord and Father) deceaseth, his Sepulchre is vnknowne. And alwaies about those places where they interre their Nobles, there is 20 one house of men to keepe the Sepulchres. I could not learne that they vie to hide Treasures in the graves of their dead. The Comanians build a great Toombe over their dead, and erect the Image of the dead partie thereupon, with his face towards the East, holding a drinking Cup in his hand before his Nauell. They erect also voon the Monuments of rich men, Pyramides, that is to fay; little sharpe houses or pinacles: and in some places I saw mightie Towers made of Bricke, in other places Pyramides made of stones, albeit there are no stones to be found thereabout. I saw one newly buried, in whose behalfe they hanged up sixteene Horse-hides, vnto each quarter of the world foure, betweene certaine high posts : and they set besides his Graue Cosmos for him to drinke, and flesh to eate: and yet they laid that he was baptized, I beheld other kinds of Sepulchres also towards the East: namely, large floores or pauements made of stone, some round, and some square, and then soure long stones pitched vpright, about the said pauement towards the foure Regions of the world. When any man is ficke, he lyeth in his bed, and causeth a signe to be set vpon his house, to signifie that there lyeth a sicke person there, to the end that no man may enter into the faid house : whereupon none at all visit any sicke partie but his feruant onely. Moreouer, when any one is ficke in their great Courts, they appoint Watch-men to fland round about the faid Court, who will not fuffer any person to enter within the Precincts thereof. For they feare leaft cuill spirits or winds should come together with the parties that enter in. They efteeme of Soothfayers, as of their Priefts.

Cb.p. 11. Of our first entrance among the Tartheir ingrati-

Nd being come amongst those barbarous people, me thought (as I faid before ) that I was 40 And being come amongst those paracous people, me thought (as I said being e) that I was
Aentred into a new world : for they came flocking about vs on horse-backe, after they had made ye a long time to awaite for them fitting in the shadow, under their blacke carts. The first question which they demanded, was, whether we had ever beene with them heretofore, or no? And giving them answere that we had not, they began impudently to beg our victuals from vs. And we gave them some of our Bisket and Wine, which wee had brought with vs from the Towns of Soldaia. And having drunke off one Flagon of our Wine, they demanded another; faving, That a man goeth not into the house with one foote. Howbeit we game them no more, excusing our selues that we had but a little. Then they asked vs, whence we came, and whither we were bound? I answered them with the words about mentioned: that wee had heard concerning Duke Sartach, that hee was become a Christian, and that vnto him our determination 60 was to travell, having your Maiesties Letters to deliver vnto him. They were very inquisitive to know whether I came of mine owne accord, or whither I were fent ! I answered, that no man compelled me to come, neither had I come, vnleffe I my felfe had beene willing : and that therefore I was come according to mine owne will, and to the will of my Superior, I tooke diligent heed neuer to fay that I was your Maiesties Embassadour. Then they asked what I had in my Carts; whether it were Gold or Silver, or rich Garments to carrie vnto Sartach? I anfwered, that Sarrach should see what we had brought, when we were once come vnto him, and that they had nothing to doe to aske such questions, but rather ought to conduct me vnto their Captaine, and that he, if he thought good, should cause me to be directed vnto Sartach : if not, that I would returne. For there was in the same Province one of Basts his Kinsmen, called Sca- 60 cati, vnto whom my Lord the Emperour of Constantinople had written Letters of request, to fuffer me to palle through his Territorie. With this answere of ours they were fatisfied, giving vs Horfes and Oxen, and two men to conduct vs. Howbeit, before they would allow vs the forefaid necessaries for our journey, they made vs to awaite a long while, begging our bread for

their young Brats, wondring at all things which they faw about our Seruants, as their Kniues, Gloues, Puries and Points, and defiring to have them. I excused my selfe that wee had a long way to trauell, and that we must in no wife so soone depriue our selves of things necessary, to finish so long a journey. Then they faid, that I was a very variet. True it is, that they tooke nothing by force from me : howbeit they will beg that which they fee very importunatly and shamelesly. And if a man bestow ought vpon them, it is but cold lost, for they are thanklesse wretches. They esteeme themselues Lords, and thinke that nothing should be denyed them by any man. If a man gives them nought, and afterwards stands in need of their service, they will do right nought for him. They gave vs of their Cowes Milke to drink, after the Butter was chur-10 ned out of it, being very fowre, which they call Apram. And fo we departed from them. And in very deed it feemed to me that we were escaped out of the hands of Diuels. On the morrow we were come vnto the Captaine. From the time wherein we departed from Soldaia, till wee arrived at the Court of Sartack, which was the space of two moneths, we never lay in House or Tent, but alwaies under the starry Canopie, and in the open Aire, or under our Carts. Neither yet faw we any Village, nor any mention of building where a Village had beene, but the graues of the Comanians, in great abundance. The fame evening our guide which had conducted vs, gave vs some Cosmos. After I had drunke thereof, I sweat most extreamely for the noueltic and strangenesse, because I neuer dranke of it before. Notwithstanding, me thought it was very sauory, as indeed it was.

N the morrow after we met with the Carts of Scacatai laden with houses, and me thought Chap. 12.

Other a mightie Citie came to meete me. I wondred also at the great multitude of huge Othe Court

Droues of Oxen, and Horses, and at the Flockes of Sheepe. I could see but a few men that gui- of Scacatai &

ded all these matters: whereupon I inquired how many men hee had vinder him, and they told frant drinke me that he had not aboue five hundred in all, the one halfe of which number we were come part, no Colmos. as they lay in another Lodging. Then the Servant which was our Guide told mee, that I must present somewhat vnto Scacatai: and so he caused vs to stay, going himselfe before to give notice of our comming. By this time it was past three of the clocke, and they vnladed their houfes neere vnto a certayne water: And there came vnto vs his Interpreter, who being aduertised 30 by ve that we were neuer there before, demanded some of our victuals, and wee yeelded vnto his request. Also hee required of vs some garment for a Reward, because hee was to interpret our Sayings vnto his Maiter. Howbeit, we excused our selues as well as we could. Then hee asked vs, what we would prefent vnto his Lord : And we tooke a flagon of Wine, and filled a Maund with Bisket, and a Platter with Apples and other Fruits. But he was not contented therewith, because we brought him not some rich garment. Notwithstanding, wee entred so into his prefence with feare and bashfulnesse. Hee face upon his bed holding a Citron in his hand, and his Wife fate by him: who (as I verily thinke) had cut and pared her Nose betweene the Eyes, that the might feeme to be more flat and faddle-nofed : for the had left her felfe no Nofe at all in that place, having anounted the very fame place with a blacke Oyntment, and her Eye-browes also: 40 which fight feemed most vgly in our Eyes. Then I rehearfed vnto him the fame words, which I had spoken in other places before. For it stood vs in hand to vse one and the same speech in all places. For we were well fore-warned of this circumstance by some which had been amongst A caucat right the Tartars, that we should never vary in our Tale. Then I befought him, that he would vouch- worthy the nofafe to accept that small gift at our hands, excusing my selfe that I was a Monke, and that it was tingagainst our profession to possesse Gold, or Silver, or precious Garments, and therefore that I had not any fuch thing to give him, howbeit he should receive some part of our victuals in stead of a bleffing. Hereupon he caused our Present to be received, and immediately distributed the same among his men, who were met together for the same purpose, to drinke and make merry. I deliuered also vnto him the Emperour of Constantinople his Letters (this was eight dayes after the 50 Feaft of Ascension) who sent them forth- with to Soldaia, to have them interpreted there: for they were written in Greeke, and he had none about him that was skilfull in the Greeke Tongue. He asked vs also whether we would drinke any Cosmos, that is to say, Mares Milke: (For those that are Christians among them, as namely, the Ruffians, Grecius, and Alamans, who keepe Superflitton, their owne Law very strictly, will in no case drinke thereof, yea, they account themselues no the Kingdome Christians after they have once drunke of it, and their Priests reconcile them vnto the Church, as means and if they had renounced the Christian Faith.) I gaue him answere, that wee had as yet sufficient of drinke. our owne to drinke, and that when our drinke fayled vs, we must be constrayned to drinke such as should bee given vnto vs. Hee enquired also what was contayned in our Letters, which your Maiestie sent vnto Sartach? I answered : that they were sealed up , and that there was nothing 60 contayned in them, but good and friendly words. And he asked what words wee would deliuer

vnto Sariach? I answered: the words of Christian Faith. Hee asked againe what these words

were? For he was very defirous to heare them. Then I expounded vnto him as well as I could,

by mine Interpreter, (who had no wit nor any otterance of speech) the Apossles Creed. Which

after hee had heard, holding his peace, he shooke his head. Then hee assigned vnto vs two men,

who should give attendance upon our solves, upon our Horses, and upon our Oxen. And hee caused vs to ride in his company, till the Messenger whom he had sent for the Interpretation of the Emperours Letters, was returned. And to wee trauelled in his company till the morrow after Pentecost.

tecoft or Whitfon Ecue. " Or, Akes.

Pon the Eruen of Pentecoft, there came vnto vs certayne Alamians, who are there called Acias, being Christians after the manner of the Greciams , ving Greeke Bookes and Grenion came vor cion Prietts: howbeit, they are not Schismatikes as the Gresians are, but without acception of persons, they honour all Christians. And they brought vnto vs fodden flesh, requesting vs to eat of their meate, and to pray for one of their company beeing dead. Then I faid, because it was 10 the Eeuen of fo great and to folemne a Feast Day , that wee would not eate any flesh for that sime. And I expounded vnto them the Solemnitie of the Laid Feaft, whereat they greatly reloyced : for they were ignorant of all things appertayning to Christian Religion , except only the Name of Christ. They and many other Christians, both Ruffians, and Hungarians demanded of vs, whether they might be faued or no, because they were constrayned to drinke Cosmos, and to eate the dead carkalles of fuch things, as were flaine by the Saracens, and other Infidels! Which even the Greeke and Ruffian Priests themselves also esteeme as things strangled or offered vnto Idols : because they were ignorant of the times of Fasting , neither could they have obserued them albeit they had knowne them. Then instructed I them aswell as I could and strengthened them in the Faith. As for the flesh which they had brought, wee referred it vntill the 20 feast day. For there was nothing to be fold among the Tartars for Gold and Silver, but onely for Cloath and Garments, of the which kind of Merchandize wee had none at all. When our Servants offered them any Coyne, called Tperpera, they rubbed it with their fingers, and put it vnto their nofes, to try by the smell whether it were Copper or no. Neither did they allow vs any food but Cowes Milke onely, which was very fowre and filthy. There was one thing most necessary greatly wanting vnto vs. For the water was so foule and muddy, by reason of their Horses, that it was not meete to be drunke. And but for certaine Bisket, which was by the goodnesse of God remaining vnto vs, we had vndoubtedly perished.

Cloth is the chiefe Mer-Tertarie.

Cb19. 14.

7 Pon the day of Pentecost there came unto vs a certaine Saracen, unto whom, as he talked with vs, we expounded the Christian Faith. Who (hearing of Gods benefits exhibited which find that vinto mankind, by the Incarnation of our Saujour Christ, and the Refurrection of the dead, and he would be the Ilaigement to come, and that in Baptime was a washing away of sinnes) laid, that hee would be baptized. But when wee prepared our felues to the baptizing of him, hee suddenly men whichfer- mounted on horfe-back, taying, that newould go home and confult with his wife what were best med to bee Lest to be done. And on the morrow after he told vs, that he durft in no cafe receive Baptisme, because then he should drinke no more Cosmos. For the Christians of that place affirme, that no true Christians ought to drinke thereof : and that without the faid liquor hee could not liue in that Defart. From which opinion, I could not for my liferemoue him. Wherefore be it knowne of a certaintie vnto your Highnesse, that they are much estranged from the Christian Faith, by 40 reason of that opinion which hath beene broached and confirmed among them by the Russiane, of whom there is a great multitude in that place. The same day Scacatai the Captaine aforesaid gaue vs one man to conduct vs to Sartach, and two other to guide vs vnto the next Lodging, which was distant from that place five dayes Iourney for Oxen to travell. They gave vnto vs alioa Goate for victuals, and a great many Bladders of Cowes Milke, and but a little Colmos. because it is of so great estimation among them. And so taking our Journey directly toward the North, mee thought that wee had passed through one of Hell gates. The Servants which conducted vs began to play the bold Theeues with vs , feeing vs take folittle heed vnto our felues. At length having lost much by there Theeuery, harme taught vs wishome. And then wee came vnto the extremitie of that Prouince, which is fortified with a Ditch from one Sea vnto ano- 10 ther : without the bounds whereof their Lodging was fit late. Into the which, to foone as wee had entred, all the Inhabitants there feemed vnto vs to be infected with Leprofie : for certayne base fellowes were placed there to receive Tribute of all such as tooke Salt out of the Salt-pits aforesaid. From that place they told vs that we must trauell fifteene dayes Journey, before we should find any other people. With them we dranke Cosmos, and gaue vnto them a basket full of Fruits and of Bisket. And they gaue vnto vs eight Oxen and one Goate, to fuflayne vs in fo great a Icumey, and I know not how many bladders of Milke. And fo changing our Oxen, we tooke our Journey which wee finished in tenne dayes, arriving at another Lodging : neither found we any water all that way, but onely in certayne Ditches made in the Valleyes, except two Rivers. And from the time wherein wee departed out of the forelaid Province of Gafaria, 60 we travelled directly East-ward, having a Sea on the South-fide of vs , and a waste Defart on the North, which Delart, in some places, reacheth twentiedayes Iourney in breadth, and there is neither Tree, Mountayne, nor Stone therein. And it is most excellent Pasture. Here the Comarians, which were called Capthac, were wont to feed their Cattell. Howbeit by the Duth-

Iourney.

men they are called Valani, and the Prouince it selic Valania. But Isidore calleth all that tract Valania of Land firetching from the River of Tanais to the Lake of Maosis, and so along as farre as Danabus, the Countrey of Alana. And the fame land continueth in length from Dambius vinto Tanais (which divideth Afia from Europe) for the space of two moneths journey, albeit a man Tanais (Winest annually 25). The Contains vie to ride; and it was all ouer inhabited by the Comanians, Thelength of called Capibac : yea, and beyond Tanais, as farre as the River of Edil, or Volga : the space betweene the two which Rivers is a great and long journey to bee travelled in ten daies. To the North of the same Prounce lyeth Russia, which is full of wood in all places, and stretcheth from Polonia Russia. and Hungaria, even to the River of Tanais : and it hath beene wasted all over by the Tantars, and

· Io as yet is daily wasted by them. Hey preferre the Saracens before the Ruffians, because they are Christians, and when they Chap. 1 c.

are able to give them no more gold nor filtuer, they drive them and their Children like flocks Of our officialof Sheepe into the wildernesse, confirming them to keepe their Cattell there. Beyond Russia ons which wee of Sheepe into the windermene, constraining mean to keepe time a state there. Beyond a nijab liyeth the Countrey of Pruffa, which the Dubde Knights of the order of Saint Mariet Hofpital of the Countre of Irrufalam, have of late wholly conquered and jubdued. And in very deede, they might easies the manner of the country of the constraints of the Country of the Coun ly win Ruffia, if they would put to their helping hand. For if the Tartars should but once know buriall, that the great Priest, that is to say, the Pope did cause the Ensigne of the Crosse to be displaied Profile. against them, they would flie all into their Defart and solitarie places. Wee therefore went on 20 towards the East, seeing nothing but Heauen and Earth, and sometimes the Sea on our right hand, called the Sea of Tanais, and the Sepulchres of the Comanians, which appeared vnto vs two leagues off, in which places they were wont to burie their kindred altogether. So long as we were travelling through the Defart, it went reasonably well with vs. For I cannot sufficiently expresse in words the irkesome and tedious troubles which I sustained, when I came at any

of their places of abode. For our Guide would have vs goe in vnto euery Captaine with a preor their places of access would not extend fo farre. For we were enery day eight persons of vs fent, and our expences would not extend fo farre.

fpending our way faring prouision, for the Tartars feruants would all of them eate of our victuals. We our felues were fine in number, and the fernants our Guides were three, two to drive mere our Cares, and one to conduct vs vnto Sartach. The fielh which they gaue vs was not sufficient 30 for vs; neither could we find any thing to be bought for our money. And as we fate vnder our Carts in the coole shadow, by reason of the extreame and vehement heate which was there at that time, they did fo importunately and shamelesly intrude themselues into our company, that they would even tread upon vs, to fee whatfoever things we had. Having lift at any time to eafe themselves, the filthie Lozels had not the manners to withdraw themselves farther from vs, then a Beane can be cast. Yea, like vile slovens they would lay their tailes in our presence, while they were yet talking with vs: many other things they committed, which were most tedious and loathiome vnto vs. But aboue all things it griened me to the very heart, that when I would vt. ter ought vnto them, which might tend to their edification, my foolish interpreter would say : you should not make me become a Preacher now; I tell you, I cannot nor I will not rehearse

40 any luch words. And true it was which he faid, for I perceived afterward, when I began to have a little smattering in the language, that when I spake one thing, hee would say quite another. whatfoeuer came next vnto his witleffe tongues end. Then feeing the danger I might incurre in speaking by such an Interpreter, I resolved much rather to hold my peace, and thus we travelled with great toile from lodging to lodging, till at the length, a few daies before the Feast of Saint Marie Magdalene, we atriued at the banke of the mightie River Tanais , which divideth Asia from Europa, euen as the River Nilus of Agypt difioyneth Afia from Africa. At the fame place where we arrived, Baatu and Sartach did caufe a certaine Cottage to be built vpon the Eafterne banke of the River, for a companie of Russians to dwell in, to the end, they might transport Ambaffadours and Merchants in Ferrie-boates ouer that part of the Riuer. First, they ferried 50 vs ouer, and then our Carts, putting one wheele into one Liter, and the other wheele into another

Liter, having bound both the Liters together, and fo they rowed them ouer. In this place our Guide played the foole most extreamely. For he imagining that the said Russians, dwelling in the Cottage, should have provided vs Horses, sent home the Beasts which wee brought with vs, in another Cart, that they might returne vnto their owne Masters. And when we demanded to have some beasts of them, they answered, that they had a priviledge from Baats, whereby they were bound to none other feruice, but onely to ferrie ouer Goers and Commers : and that they received great tribute of Merchants in regard thereof. Wee staied therefore by the said Rivers fule three daies. The first day they gaue vinto vs a great fresh Turbut : the second day they be-Howed Rye bread, and a little flesh woon vs, which the Purueyer of the Village had taken up at

60 every house for vs : and the third day dryed Fishes, which they have there in great aboundance. The faid River was even as broade in that place, as the River of Sein is at Paris. And before wee The breaden of came there, wee passed over many goodly waters, and full of Fish: howbeit the barbarous and Tomin. rude Tartars know not how to take them : neither doe they make any reckoning of any Fish, except it bee so great, that they may prey vpon the flesh thereof, as vpon the flesh of a Ram,

He is much de-

This River is the limit of the East part of Ruffia, and it springeth out of the Fonnes of Maotis, which Fennes fretch vnto the North Ocean. And it runneth Southward into a certaine great Sea leuen hundred miles about , before it falleth into the Sea called Pontus Euxmus. And all the Rivers which we passed over, ran with full streame into those quarters. The foresaid River hath great store of wood also growing vpon the West side thereof. Beyond this place the Tartars ginning of Au. afcend no farther vinto the North : for at that feafon of the yeere, about the first of August, they guft, the Tar- begin to returne backe vnto the South. And therefore there is another Cottage somewhat lower where Passengers are ferried ouer in Winter time, and in this place we were driven to great extremitie, by reason that we could get neither Horses, nor Oxen for any money. At length, afcer I had declared vnto them , that my comming was to labour for the common good of all 10 Christians, they lent vs Oxen and Men; howbeit wee our selues were faine to travell on foot. At this time they were reaping their Rye. Wheate prospereth not well in that soile. They have the feed of Millium in great abundance. The Ruffian women attire their heads like vnto our women. They embroider their Safegards or Gownes on the outfide, from their feet vnto their knees with partie-coloured or grey stuffe. The Russian men weare Caps like vnto the Dutch men. Also they weare voon their heads certaine sharpe and high-crowned Hats made of Felt, much like vnto a Sugar-loafe. Then transiled we three daies together, not finding any people. And when our felues and our Oxen were exceeding wearie and faint, not knowing how farte off we should find any Tartas, on the sudden there came two Horses running towards vs, which we tooke with great joy, and our Guide and Interpreter mounted vpon their backs, to fee how farre off they could descrie any people. At length, vpon the fourth day of our journey, having 20 found fome Inhabitants, we rejoyced like Sea faring men, which had escaped out of a dangerous Tempest, and had newly recoursed the Hauen. Then having taken fresh Horses, and Oxen, we paffed on from lodging to lodging, till at the last, vpon the second of the Kalends of August, we arrived at the habitation of Duke Sartach him felte.

He Region lying beyond Tanais, is a very goodly Countrey, having store of Rivers and

Woods toward the North part thereof. There are mightie huge Woods which two forts of

people doe inhabit. One of them is called Maxel, being meere Pagans, and without Law. They

with whom hee is first of all entertained, all the time of his abode among them. If any lyeth

with another mans wife, her husband, volleffe he be an eye-witnesse thereof, regardeth it not :

for they are not icalous ouer their wives. They have abundance of Hogs, and great store of Ho-

nie and Waxe, and divers forts of rich and costly Skins, and plentie of Faulcons. Next vnto them

are other people called Merclas, which the Latines call Merdan, and they are Saracens. Beyond

into a certaine Lake, containing in circuit the space of foure moneths travell, whereof I will

speake hereafter. The two foresaid Rivers , namely, Tanais and Etilia , otherwise called Volga,

towards the Northerne Regions, through the which we trauailed, are not diffant afunder about

ten daies iourney, but Southward they are divided a great space one from another. For Tanais

descendeth into the Sea of Pontsu: Etilsu maketh the foresaid Sea or Lake, with the helpe of

many other Rivers, which fall thereinto out of Persia. And wee had to the South of vs huge

high Mountaines, vpon the fides thereof towards the faid Defart, doe the people called Corgus,

and the Alam or Acas inhabit, who areas yet Christians, and wage warre against the Tartars.

Beyond them, next vnto the Sea or Lake of Etilsa, there are certaine Saracens called Lefei, who

Derbent, which Alexander built to exclude the barbarous Nations out of Persia. Concerning the

fituation whereof, your Maiestie shall understand more about the end of this Treatile: for I tra-

uailed in my returne by the very same place. Betweene the two foresid Rivers, in the Regions

through the which we passed, did the Comanians of old time inhabit, before they were our-

are in L. biection vnto the Tartars. Beyond thefe is Porta ferrea, or the Iron gate, now called 50

Chap. 16. Of the Domimion of Sartach, and of his have neither Townes nor Cities, but onely Cottages in the Woods. Their Lord and a great part 30 of themselves were put to the Sword in high Germanie. Whereupon they highly commend the The people of braue courage of the Almans, hoping as yet to be delinered out of the bondage of the Tartars, by their meanes. If any Merchant come vnto them, hee must prouide things necessary for him,

called Aterdas them is the River of Etilia, or Volga, which is the mightiest River that ever I saw. And it issue being Saracente eth from the North part of Bulgaria the greater, and so trending along Southward, disimboqueth 40

The circuit of the Capita Sca.

Chap. 17. Of the Court

run by the Tartars.

ANI wee found Sartach lying within three daies iourney of the Riuer Etdia: whose Court feemed vnto vs to be very great. For he himselfe had fix wives, and his clock ionne also of Satach, and had three wives : every one of which women hath a great house, and they have each one of them of satisfaction and three wines reactly one of which women that a great hold before named Cold, who is a man of the missing about two hundred Carts. Our guide went vinto a certaine Nefferieur named Cold, who is a man of the missing about two hundred Carts. Our guide went vinto a certaine Nefferieur named Cold, who is a man of the missing about two hundred Carts. of great authoritie in Sartachs Court. He made vs to goe very farre vnto the Lordsgate. For to Coint, the Nells they call him who hath the O.Fce of entertayning Amballadours. In the evening, Coint commanded vs to come vnto him. Then our Guide began to enquire what wee would prefent him withall, and was exceedingly offended, when hee faw that wee had nothing ready to prefent.

We stood before him, and he sate mainfically, having musick and dancing in his presence. Then Hoake vnto him in the words before recited, telling him for what purpole I was come vnto his Lord, and requesting to much fauour at his hands, as to bring our Letters vnto the fight of his Lord, I excuted my felfe also, that I was a Monke, not having, nor receiving, nor ving any gold, or filter, or any other precious thing, face onely our Bookes, and the Veitments wherein wee ferued God : and that this was the cause why I brought no present vato him, nor vato his Lord. For I that had abandoned mine owne goods, could not be a transporter of things for other men-Then he answered very courteously, that being a Monke, and so doing, I did well; for so I should obserue my vow : neither did himselfe stand in need of bught that we had , but rather was ready To to bestow upon vs such thangs as we our felues stood in need of ; and hee caused vs to sit downe, and to drinke of his Milke. And prefently after, hee requested vs to lay our denotions for him : and wee did fo. Hee enquired also who was the greatest Prince among the Francks? And I said. the Emperour, if he could enion his owne Dominions in quiet. No (quoth hee) but the King of France. For hee had heard of your Hignesse by Lord Baldmine of Henault. I found there also one of the Knights of the Temple who had beene in Cypras, and had made report of all things which he faw there. Then returned we visco our Lodging. And on the morrowaiwe fent him a flaggon of Mufcadell Wine (which had lafted verie well in fo long a Journey) and a boxe full of Bisket, which was most acceptable vnto him. And hee kept our Seruants with him for that Euening. The next morning hee commanded mee to come vnto the Court, and to bring 20 the Kings Letters and my Vestments, and Bookes with mee: because his Lord was defirous to fee them. Which we did accordingly, lading one Cart with our Bookes and Vestments, and another with Bisket, Wine, and Fruits. Then hee caufed all our Bookes and Vestments to bee layd forth. And there flood round about vs many Tartars, Christians, and Saracens on Horsebacke. At the fight whereof, hee demanded whether I would befrow all those things voon his Lord or no? Which faving made mee to tremble, and grieved mee full fore. Howbert, differns bling our griefe as well as we could, we shaped him this Answere : Sir, our humble request is, that our Lord your Maiter would vouchfate to accept our Bread, Wine, and Fruits, not as a Prefence because it is too meane, but as a Benediction, least we should come with an emptie hand before bim. And hee shall fee the Letters of my Souereigne Lord the King; and by them hee shall vn-30 derstand for what cause we are come vnto him , and then both our selues, and all that wee haue. shall stand to his courtesse: for our Vestments bee holy, and it is valawfull for any but Priests to touch them. Then he commanded vs to inueft our felues in the faid Garments, that we might goe before his Lord; and we did fo. Then I my felfe putting on our most precious Ornaments, tooke in mine armes a very faire Cushion, and the Bible which your Maiestie gave mee, and a most beautifull Pfalter, which the Queenes Grace bestowed youn mee, wherein there were goodly Pictures. Mine Affociate tooke a Miffall and a Croffe : and the Clerke having put on his Surplice, tooke a Cenfer in his hand. And so we came vnto the presence of his Lord; and they lifted up the Felt hanging before his doore, that hee might behold us. Then they caused the Clerke and the Interpreter thrice to bow the knee : but of vs they required no fuch fub-40 mission. And they diligently admonished vs to take heed, that in going in, and in comming out, wee touched not the threshold of the house, and requested vs to sing a Benediction for him. Then we entred in, finging Salue Regina. And within the entrance of the doore flood a bench with Cosmos, and drinking cups thereupon. And all his Wives were there affembled. Also the Moals or rich Tartars thrusting in with vs pressed vs fore. Then Coins carryed vnto his Lord the Cenfer with Incenfe, which hee beheld very diligently, holding it in his hand. Afterward he carryed the Pfalter vnto him, which he looked earneftly vpon, and his Wife also that fate befide him. After that he carryed the Bible : then Sarrach asked if the Gospell were contayned therein ? Yea (faid I) and all the holy Scriptures befides. He tooke the Croffe also in his hand, and demanded concerning the Image, whether it were the Image of Christ or no. I faid it was. The Neftorians and the Armenians doe neuer make the figure of Christ vpon their Croffes, No good con-50 Wherefore either they feeme not to thinke well of his Passion, or else they are ashamed of it. sequence. Then hee caused them that stood about vs, to stand aside, that hee might more fully behold our Ornaments. Afterward I delivered vnto him your Maiesties Letters, with the Translation

thereof into the Arabicke and Syriacke Languages. For I caused them to bee translated at Acon,

into the Character and Dialect of both the faid Tongues. And there were certayne Armenian Priefts, which had skill in the Turkib and Arabian Languages. The aforesaid Knight also of

the Order of the Temple had knowledge in the Syriake, Turkish, and Arabian Tongues. Then

wee departed forth , and put off our Vestments , and there came vnto vs certayne Scribes

together with the forelaid Coiat, and caused our Letters to bee interpreted. Which Letters be-60 ing heard, hee caused our Bread, Wine and Fruits to bee received. And hee permitted vs also to

carrie our Vestments and Bookes vnto our owne Lodging. This was done vpon the Feast of

S. Peter ad vincula.

Ch.1p.18. How they were giuen in

He next morning betimes came vnto vsa certayne Priest, who was brother vnto Coiat, I requelling to have our boxe of Chrisme, because Sarrach (as he faid) was detirous to see it: and fo we gaue it him. About Euentyde Coist fent for vs, faying : My Lord your King wrote good words vate my Lord and Matter Sartach. Howbeit there are certayne matters of difficultie in Fasher of Ser- them, concerning which he dare not determine ought, without the adulte and counfell of his Father. And therefore of accofficie you must depart vinto his Father, leaving behind you the two Carts, which you brought bither yefterday with Vestments and Bookes, in my custodie: because my Lord is defirous to take more dringent view thereof. I presently suspecting what mischiefe might enfue by his conetoufnesse, fail vnto him : Sir, we will not onely leave those with you, but the two other Caresalto, which we have in our posterion, will wee commit vince your 10 cuitodie. You shall not (quoth he) leave those behind you, but for the other two Carts first named, wee will farishe your request. I faid that this could not conueniently bee done : but needs we must leaue all with him. Then he asked, whether we meant to tarrie in the Land landwered : If you shroughly vaderstand the Letters of my Lord the King, you know that we are even so determined. Then he replyed, that we ought to bee patient and lowly : and so wee departed from him that Enening: On the morrow after he fent a Nefferian Priest for the Carts, and wee caufed all the foure Cares to be delinered. Then came the forelaid brother of Coine to meetvs, and separated all those things, which we had brought the day before vnto the Court, from the reft, namely, the Bookes and Vertments, and tooke them away with him. Howbeit Coist had commanded, that we should carrie those Vestments wish vs, which we wore in the presence of 20 Sartach, that we might put them on before Baatu, if need should require : but the faid Priest tooke them from vs by violence, faying : thou haft brought them vnto Sarrach, and wouldest thou carrie them vinto Baatus? And when I would have rendred a reason, hee answered : bee not too talkatine, but goe your wayes. Then I faw that there was no remedie but patience : for wee could have no accesse viso Sartach himfelfe, neither was there any other, that would doe ws Luftice. I was afraid alto in regard of the Interpreter, leaft he had spoken other things then I faid vnto han : for his will was good, that wee should have given away all that we had. There was yet one comfort remayning vnto mee : for when I once perceived their covetous intent, I conserved from among our Bookes the Bible, and the Sentences, and certayne other Bookes which I made foeciali account of. Howbeit, I durft not take away the Pfalter of my Souereigne 20 Ladie the Queene, because it.was too well knowne, by reason of the Golden Pictures therein. And so we returned with the two other Carts vnto our Lodging. Then came hee that was appointed to be our Guide vnto the Court of Baan, willing vs to take our Iourney in all postehalte: voto whom I faid, that I would in no case have the Carts to goe with me. Which thing he declared unto Coias. Then Coias commanded, that wee should leave them and our Servant with him. And we did as he commandeed. And so travelling directly East-ward towards Baathe third day we came to Etilia or Volga: the streames whereof when I beheld , I wondred from what Regions of the North fuch huge and mightie waters should descend, Before we were departed from Sartach, the forelaid Coist, with many other Scribes of the Court faid vnto vs: doe not make report that our Lord is a Christian, but a Mond. Because the name of a Christian 40 feemeth visto them to be the name of fome Nation. So great is their pride, that albeit they beleeue perhaps some things concerning Christ, yet will they not be called Christians, being defirous that their owne name, that is to lay, Moal should be exalted about all other names. Neither will they be called by the name of Tartars. For the Tartars were another Nation, as I was informed by them.

come as farre 25 Vag4.

The Tarters will be called Mont

Chap. 19. How Sartach, and Manga-Can, and Ken-Can doe reuerence vnto Christians. This Historie of Presbyter Ichn in the North-cast,is alleaged at dus Mercator in his generali

A T the fame time when the Frenchmon tooks Anioch, a certaine man named Con Can, had Dominion ouer the Northerne Regions, lying the teabouts. Con is a proper name: [Anis a name of authoritie or dignitie, which figmfieth a Diviner or Sooth-sayer. All Diviners are called Can among them. Whereupon their Princes are called Can, because that vnto them belongeth the gouernment of the people by Divination. We doe read also in the Hiltorie of Antiochia, that the Turkes fent for ayde against the Frenchmen, vnto the Kingdome of Con Can. For out of those parts the whole Nation of the Turkes first came. The said Con was of the Nation of Kara-Catay. Kara fignifieth blacke, and Catay is the name of a Countrey. So that Kara-Catay fignifieth the blacke Catay. This name was given to make a difference betweene the foresaid people, and the people of Catay inhabiting East-ward over against the Ocean Sea : concerning whom your Manettie shall understand more hereafter. These Catayans dwelt upon certayne Alpes, by the which I trauelled. And in a certaine plaine Countrey within those Alpes, there inhabited a Nostorian shepheard, being a mightie Gouernour ouer the people called Tay-From whence. man, which were Christians, following the Sect of Neftorius. After the death of Con Can, 60 the Turkes first the faid Nafforsan exalted himselfe to the Kingdome, and they called him King John, reporting ten times more of him then was true. For io the Nestorians which come out of those parts, AnOcean Sea. vie to doe. For they blaze abroad great rumours, and reports vpon inft nothing. Whereupon they gave out concerning Sartach, that he was become a Christian, and the like also they repor-

ted concerning Manga Can, and Ken Can mamely, because these Tartars make more account of Christians, then they doe of other people, and yet in very deed, themselves are no Christians. So likewife there went forth a great report concerning the faid King Iohn. Howbeit, when I trauelled along by his Territories, there was no man that knew any thing of him, but onely a few Nestorians. In his Pastures or Territories dwelleth Ken Can, at whose Court Frier The place of Andrew was. And I my felfe passed by it at my returne. This John had a Brother, being a Ken Kan his mightieman alfo, and a Shepheard like himfelfe, called Unt, and he inhabited beyond the aboad. mightieman allo, and a Snepheard rice nimited, cancer on, and the innabited of your con, or Alpes of Gara Caray, being diffant from his Brother lobn, the space of three weekes iourney. Vac Can. He was Lord oner a certaine Village, called Cara Garnin, having people also for his Subjects, The Village of

To named Crit, or Merkit, who were Christians of the Sect of Nestorius. But their Lord abando- cara carina. ning the worship of Christ, following after Idols, recaining with him Priests of the faid Idols, On & Merkit. who all of them are Worshippers of Deuils and Sorcerers. Beyond his Pastures, some tenne or fifteene dayes journey, were the Pattures of Moal, who were a poore and beggerly Nation; Moel in old without Gouernor, and without Law, except their Sooth-fayings, and their Daunations, vnto times beagerthe which deteftable fludies , all in those parts doe apply their minds. Neere vaco Moal were ly people. other poore people, called Tartars. The forelaid King John dyed without Iffue Male, and thereupon his Brother Une was greatly inriched; and caused himselfe to be named fan: and his Drones and Flockes raunged even vnto the Borders of Moal. About the fame time there was one Congis, a Blacke. Smith, among the people of Moal. This Congis stole as many Cattell from Congis 20 Vut Can, as he could poffibly get : infomuch, that the Shepheards of Vut complained vnto their Lord. Then provided he an Armie, and marched up into the Countrey of Moal, to feeke for the faid Cyngis. But Cyngis fled among the Tarears, and hid himselfie among it them. And Wast

having taken some spoiles both from Moul, and also from the Tarters, returned home. Then Spake Crogis vnto the Tarters, and vnto the people of Maal, faying : Sirs, because we are diffitute of a Gouernor and Captaine, you fee how our Neighbours doe oppresse vs. And the Tartars and Mosts appointed him to be their Chieftaine. Then having fectetly gathered together an Armie, bee brake in fuddenly vpon Um, and ottercame him, and Om fled into Catago. At the fame time was the Daughter of Vas taken, which Gingis married vnto one of his Sonnes, by whom the conceined, and brought forth the great Can, which now reigneth, called Mangu-Can. Mangu-Can. 30 Then Cyngis fent the Tartars before him in all places where he came: and thereupon was their name published and spread abroad : for in all places the people would cry out : Lat, the Tartars

come, the Tartars come. Howbeit, through continuall warres, they are now, all of them in a manner, confumed and brought to nought. Whereupon the Most indeuour what they canto extinguish the name of the Tartars, that they may exalt their owne name. The Countrey wherein they first inhabited, and where the Court of Cyngis Comas yet remaineth, is called Mancherule. But because Tartaria is the Region, about which they have obtained their Con- Mancherule. quefts, they efteeme that as their royall and chiefe Citie, and there for the most part doe they

elect their great Can.

Now, as concerning Sartach, whether hee believes in Christ or no, I know not. This I Chap. 20. deride and skoffe at Christians. He lyeth in the way of the Christians, as namely, of the Rufa fians, Hungari fians, the Valachians, the Bulgarians of Bulgaria the lefte, the Soldainnes, the Kerkis, and the Ale- and, and Aleni nians : who all of them palle by him, as they are going to the Court of his Father Baatu , to Callian Sez, carrie gifts : whereupon he is more in league with them. Howbeit, if the Saracens come, and bring greater gifts then they, they are dispatched fooner. He bath about him certaine Notice rian Priefts, who pray vpon their Beades, and fing their denotions. Also, there is another vitder Baatu, called Berta, who feedeth his Cattell toward Porta Ferrea, or Derbent, where lysth Os, Berta the pallage of all those Saracens which come out of Perfia, and out of Turke to goe vnto Bas ... in

50 tu, and passing by, they give rewards vnto him. And he professeth himselfe to be a Saracen, and will not permit Swines field to be eater in his Dominions. Howbeit, at the time of our returne, Basis commanded him to remooue himselfe from that place, and to inhabite vpon the East side of Volga: for he was vinwilling that the Saracens Messengers should passe by the faid Berta, because he faw it was not for his profit. For the space of foure daies while wee remained in the Court of Sartach, wee had not any victuals at all allowed vs., but once onely a little Cosmos. And in our sourney betweene him and his Father, wee translled in great fearer For certaine Russians, Hungarians, and Alanians, being Servants vnto the Tartars, (of whom they have great multitudes among them ) affemble themfelues twentie or thirtie in a company, and to fecretly in the night conveying themselves from home, they take Bowes and Ar-60 rowes with them, and whomforeer they finde in the night featin, they put him to death, hi-

ding themselves in the day time. And having tyred their Horses, they goe in the night vato a company of other Horses feeding in some Pasture, and change them for new, taking with them also one or two Horses beikles, to eate them when they stand in neede. Our guide therefore was fore atraid, leaft we should have met with such companions.

In this Journey we had dyed for Famine, had wee not carryed fome of our Bisket with vs. At length we came vnto the mightie River of E-ha, or Volga. For it is four times greater, then the River of Sein, and of a wonderfull depth : and istuing forth of Bulgaria the greater, it runneth into a certayne Lake or Sea, which of late they call the Hircan Sea, according to the name of a certaine Citie in Persia, standing upon the shoare thereof. Howbeit Isidare calleth it the Cafian Sea. For it hath the Cafpion Mountaynes and the Land of Perfia fituate on the South-fide shereof : and the Mountaynes of Musiber, that is to say, of the people called Assalting towards the East, which Mountaynes are conjoyned vnto the Caspian Mountaynes: But on the North-fide thereof lyech the fame Defart, wherein the Tartari doe now inhabit. Howbeit heretofore there dwelt certayne people called Changla. And on that fide it receiueth the ffreames 10 of Etilia, which River increaleth in Summer time, like vnto the River Nilss in Egypt. Vpon the West part thereof, it hath the Mountaynes of Alani, and Lefti, and Porta ferrea, or Derbent, and the Mountaynes of Georgia. This Sea therefore is compafled in on three fides with the Mountaynes, but on the North-fide with plaine ground. Frier Andrew in his Journey travelled round about two fides thereof, namely, the South and the East-fides ; and I my felfe about other two, that is to fay, the North-fide in going from Baatu to Mangu-Can, and in returning likewife and the West-side in comming home from Bastu into Syria. A man may travell round about it in foure moneths. And it is not true which Isdore reporteth, namely, that this Sea is a Bay or Gulfe comming forth of the Ocean: for it doth, in no part thereof, ioyne with the Ocean, but is emironed on all fides with Land.

Chap. 21. of Baats : and how we were enterrayned by The North Ocean,

Aftracas.

The descripti-

A Lebe Region extending from the West shoare of the foresaid Sea, where Alexanders
Iron gate, otherwise called the Citie of Derbent, is situate, and from the Mountaynes of Alania, all along by the Fennes of Mastis, whereinto the River of Tanais falleth, and to forth, to the North Ocean, was wont to be called Albania. Of which Countrey Isidore reporteth, that there bee Dogges of fuch an huge stature, and so fierce, that they are able in fight to match Birls, and tomaster Lions. Which is true, as I understand by divers, who told me, that there towards the North Ocean, they make their Dogges to draw in Carts like Oxen, by reason of their bignelle and strength. Moreover, vpon that part of Etilia where we arrived, there is a new Cottage built, wherein they have placed Tarters and Ruffians both together, to ferrie ouer, and transport McKengers going and comming, to and fro the Court of Basts. For Basts remayneth woon the farther fide towards the East. Neither ascendeth hee in Summer time more Northward then the foresaid place where we arrived, but was even then descending to the South. From Ianuary vntill August, both he and all other Tartair afcend by the banks of Rivers, towards cold He descended and Northerly Regions, and in August they begin to returne backe againe. Wee passed downe the Areame therefore in a Barke, from the forelaid Cottage vnto his Court. From the same place who the Villages of Bulgaria the greater, standing toward the North, it is fine dayes lourney.

I wonder what Deuill carried the Religion of Mahomet thither. For, from Derbent, which is vpon the extreme borders of Perfia, it is aboue thirtiedayes lourney to passe ouerthwart the Defart, and fo to ascend by the banke of Etilia, into the foresaid Countrey of Bulgaria. All 40 which way there is no Citie; but onely certayne Cottages neere vnto that place where Etilia falleth into the Sea. Those Bulgarians are most wicked Saracens, more earnestly professing the damnable Religion of Mabones, then any other Nation what socuer, Moreouer, when I first beheld the Court of Baau, I was aftonied at the fight chereof; for his Houles or Tents feemed as though they had beene some huge and mightie Citie, stretching out a great way in length, the people ranging vp and downe about it for the space of some three or source leagues. And even as the people of Ifrael knew every man, on which tide of the Tabernacle to pitch his Tent : even to every one of them knoweth right well, towards what fide of the Court hee ought to place his house Horda fignia one of them knowething in the Cart. Whereupon the Court is called in their Language Horda, firth the midth, when he takes it from off the Cart. Whereupon the Court is called in their Language Horda, which fignifieth, the midft : because the Gouernour or Chieftaine among them dwels alwayes 50 in the middeft of his people: except onely that directly towards the South no subject of interiour person placeth himselfe; because towards that Region the Court gates are set open ; but vnto the right hand, and the left hand they extend themselves as farre as they will, according to the conveniencie of places, to that they place not their houses directly opposite against the Court, At our arrivall wee were conducted vnto a Saracen, who provided not for vs any victuals at all. The day following, we were brought vnto the Court : and Baatu had caused a large Tent to bee erected, because his house or ordinary Tent could not contayne so many men and women as were affembled. Our Guide admonished vs not to speake, till Baatu had given vs commandement so to doe, and that then we should speake our minds briefly. Then Basis demanded whether your Maiellie had fent Ambasadors vnto him or no ! I answered, that your Maiestie had sent Messen 60 gers to Ken-Can: and that you would not have fent Mellengers vnto him, or Letters vnto Sartach, had not your Highnesse beene perswaded that they were become Christians : because you fent not vnto them for any feare, but onely for congratulation, and courtefies fake, in regard that you heard they were converted to Christianitie. Then led he vs vnto his Paullion : and we were

charged not to touch the cords of the Tent, which they account in flead of the threshold of the houle. There we itood in our habit bare-footed, and bare-headed, and were a great and ftrange spectacle in their eyes. For indeed Frier Iohn de Plano Carpini , had beene there before my com- 16hn de Plane ming: howbeit, because he was the Popes Messenger, he changed his habit that hee might not Carp.ni. be contemned. Then wee were brought into the very midft of the Tent, neither required they of vs to doe any reuerence by bowing our knees, as they vie to doe of other Messengers. Wee stood therefore before him for the space wherein a man might have rehearled the Plalme, Milereremei Dem: and there was great filence kept of all men. Baain himselfe sate vpon a feat long and broad like vnto a Bed, gilt all ouer, with three staires to ascend thereunto, and one of his Io Ladies sate beside him. The men there assembled, sate downe scattering, some on the right hand of the faid Lady, and some on the left. Those places on the one side which the women filled not up (for there were only the Wives of Baata) were supplyed by the men. Also, at the very entrance of the Tent, flood abench furnished with Cosmos, and with flately great cups of Siluer and Gold, being richly fet with Precious Stones. Basin beheld vs earnestly, and wee him: and he feemed to me to refemble in personage, Monsieur Iohn de Beaumont, whose soule resteth in peace. And he had a fresh ruddie colour in his countenance. At length hee commanded vs to fpeake. Then our Guide gaue vs direction, that we should bow our knees and speake. Wherevpon I bowed one knee as vnto a man : then he fignified that I should kneele vpon both knees:

and I did fo, being loth to contend about fuch circumstances. And againe, hee commanded me to

20 speake. Then I thinking of Prayer vnto God, because I kneeled on both my knees, beganne to pray on this wife : Sir, we befeech the Lord, from whom all good things doe proceed, and who hath given you there earthly benefits, that it would pleafe him hereafter to make you partaker of his heauenly bleffings: because the former without these are but vame and improfitable. And Ladded further. Be it knowne vnto you of a certaintie, that you shall not obtayne the loves of Heauen, vnleffe you become a Christian : for God faith, Whofoener beleeueth and is baptized, fhalbe (aned : but be that beleeneth not, shalbe condemned. At this word he modefly smiled : but the other Models began to clap their hands, and to dende vs. And of my filly Interpreter, of whom especially I should have received comfort in time of need, was himselfe abashed and veterly dashe out of countenance. Then, after filence made, I said vnto him, I came vnto your Sonne, because we 30 heard that he was become a Christian : and I brought vnto him Letters on the behalfe of my Sourreigne Lord the King of France: and your Sonne lent me hither vnto you. The cause of my comming therefore is best knowne vnto your selfe. Then he caused me to rise vp. And he en- The Lenters of quired your Maiesties Name, and my name, and the name of mine Associate and Interpreter, the French

and caused them all to be put downe in writing. He demanded likewise (because hee had beene King. informed, that you were departed out of your owne Countries with an Armie) against whom von waged warre ? I answered : against the Saracens, who had defiled the House of God at Ierulalem. He asked allo, whether your Highnesse had euer before that time fent any Messengers vnto him, or no ? To you Sir! (faid I) neuer. Then caused he vs to fit downe, and gaue vs of his Milke to drinke, which they account to be a great fauour, especially when any man is admitted 40 to drinke Colmos with him in his owne house. And as I fate looking downe voon the ground. he commanded me to lift vp my countenance, being defirous as yet to take more diligent view

of vs, or else perhaps for a kind of Superstitious observation. For they, esteeme it a signe of ill lucke, or a prognottication of euill vnto them, when any man fits in their prefence, holding downe his head, as if he were fad : especially, when hee leanes his cheeke or chin voon his hand. Then we departed forth, and immediately after came our Guide vnto vs, and conducting vs vnto our Lodging, faid vnto mee : Your Mafter the King requesteth that you may remayne in this Land, which request Basis cannot fatisfie without the knowledge and confent of Mangu-Can. Wherefore you, and your Interpreter must of necessitie goe vnto Mangu-Can, Howbeit your affociate, and the other man shall returne vnto the Court of Sartach, staying there for you, till you 50 come backe. Then began the man of God mine Interpreter to lament, esteeming himselse but a dead man. Mine Affociate also protested, that they should sooner chop off his head, then withdraw him out of my company. Moreouer, I my felfe faid, that without mine Affociate I could not goe : and that we flood in need of two Semants at the least, to attend upon us, because, it

one should chance to fall sick, we could not be without another. Then returning vnto the Court,

he told these Sayings vnto Baatn. And Baatn commanded, saying : let the two Priess and the

Interpreter goe together, but let the Clerke returne vnto Sartach. And comming againe vnto

vs, hee told vseuen fo. And when I would have spoken for the Clerke to have had him with vs. he faid : No more words: for Basts hath refolued, that fo it shall bee, and therefore I dare not goe vnto the Court any more. Gofes the Clerke had remayning of the Almes money be-60 flowed vpon him, twentie fixe Tperperus, and no more; ten whereof he kept for himfelfe and for the Lad, and fixteene hee gave vnto the man of God for vs. And thus were we parted a funder with teares: he returning vnto the Court of Sartach, and our felues remayning still in the same place.

7 Pon Affumption Euen our Clerke arrived at the Court of Sarrach. And on the morrow at-

Ch.sp. 22. Or our journcy towards the Court of Mangu-Can.

18

They trauell the banke of

Hungarians.

Or, Kangitte.

Chap. 23. Of the River of lagac : Or. Inc, and of diuers Regions or Nati-Ide, twelue daies journey from Volga. Pafcatir. The Hungarifrom the Bafcirdes.

Ualachians.

V ter, the Nestorian Priests were adorned with our Vestments in the presence of the faid Seriach. Then were our felues were conducted vnto another Hoft, who was appointed to prouide vs house-roome, victuals, and Hories. But because wee had not ought to bestow vpon him, hee did all things vntowardly for vs. Then wee rode on forward with Baats, defcending along by the bancke of Etiles, for the space of five weekes together: Somefuewcekes by times mine Affociate was fo extreamly hungry, that hee would tell mee in a manner weeping, that it fared with him as though hee had neuer eaten any thing in all his life before. There is a Faire or Market following the Court of Baatuat all times ; but it was so farre diflant from vs, that wee could not have recourse thereunto. For wee were constrained to Io walke on foote for want of Horses. At length certaine Hungarians ( who had sometime beene after a fort Clergie men ) found vs out : and one of them could as yet fing many Songs without booke, and was accounted of other Hungarians as a Prieft, and was fent for vnto the Funerals of his deceated Countrey-men. There was another of them also pretily well instructed in his Grammar: for he could understand the meaning of any thing that we spake, but could not an-(were vs. These Hungarians were a great comfort vnto vs. bringing vs Cosmos to drinke, vea. and sometimes fiesh for to eate also : who, when they requested to have some Bookes of vs., and I had not any to give them ( for indeed we had none but onely a Bible, and a Breuiary ) it grieued me exceedingly. And I faid vnto them : Bring me some Inke and Paper, and I will write for you fo long as we shall remaine here : and they did so. And I copied out for them Horas bea- 20 ta Virginis, and Officium defunctorum. Moreouer, vpon a certaine day, there was a Comanian that accompanied vs. faluting vs in Latine, and faying: Salvete Domini. Wondering thereat, and falleting him againe. I demanded of him, who had taught him that kind of falletation! He faid, that he was baptized in Hungaria by our Friers, and that of them he learned it. Hee faid moreover, that Baats had enquired many things of him concerning vs, and that he told him the effate of our Order. Afterward I faw Baats riding with his company, and all his Subjects that were housholders of Masters of families riding with him, and (in mine estimation) they were not fine hundred persons in all. At length about the end of Holy-rood, there came a certaine rich Moal vnto vs (whole Father was a Millenary, which is a great Office among them ) fay-Aiourney of ing, I am the man that must conduct you vnto Mangu-Can, and we have thither a journey of 30 four moneths four emoneths long to travell, and there is such extreame cold in those parts, that stones and trees doe even rive afunder in regard thereof. Therefore I would wish you throughly to adule your felues, whether you beable to indure it or no. Vnto whom I answered : I hope by Gods helpe, that we shall be able to brooke that which other men can indure. Then hee faid : if you cannot indure it, I will forfake you by the way. And I answered him: it were not inft dealing for you fo to do, for we go not thither vpon any bufineffe of our owne, but by reason that we are fent by our Lord. Wherefore, fithence we are committed vnto your charge, you ought in no wife to forfake vs. Then he faid; all shall be well. Afterward he caused vs to shew him all our garments : and whatfoeuer he deemed to bee leffe needfull for vs, he willed vs to leave it behind in the cullodie of our Hoft, On the morrow they brought vnto each of vs a furred Gowne, made all of Rams skinnes, with the Woollstill vpon them, and breeches of the same, and boots also or buskins according to their fashion, and shooes made of felt, and hoods also made of skins The fixteenth, after their manner. The fecond day after Holy-rood, we began to fet forward on our journey. of September, having three guides to direct vs : and we rode continually East-ward, till the feast of All-Saints. Throughout all that Region, and beyond also did the people of Changle inhabite, who were by Forty fix daies parentage discended from the Romans. Vpon the North fide of vs wee had Bulgaria the greater, and on the South, the foresaid Caspian Sea.

Having travelled twelve daies iourney from Etilia, we found a mightie River called Ingae:

Which River issuing out of the North, from the land of Pascatir, descended into the fore-50 faid Sea. The language of Pascatir, and of the Hungarians is all one, and they are all of them Shepheards, not having any Citres. And their Countrey bordereth vpon Bulgaria the greater. on the West frontier. From the North-East part of the said Countrey, there is no Citie at all. Out of the faid fore-named Region of Pascatir, proceeded the Hunnes of old time, who afterward were called Hungarians. Next vinto it is Bulgaria the greater. Isidore reporteth, concerning the people of this Nation, that with swift Horses they transfed the impregnable walls and bounds of Alex ander, (which, together with the Rockes of Caucasus, served to restraine those barbarous and blood-thirstie people from inuading the Regions of the South ) insomuch that they had tribute paid vnto them, as farre as Egypt. Likewise they wasted all Countries even vnto France. Whereupon they were more mightie then the Tartars as yet are, And vnto 60 them the Blacians, the Bulgarians, and the Vandals inyned themselves. For out of Bulgaria the greater, came those Bulgarians. Moreover, they which inhabite beyond Dambius, neere vnto Conftantinople, and not farre from Palcatir, are called Ilac, which (fauing the pronunciation ) is all one with Blac, (for the Tartars cannot pronounce the Letter B) from whom also discended

the people which inhabite the Land of Affani. For they are both of them called Ilac, (both thele and the other ) in the languages of the Ruffians, the Polonians, and the Bohemans. The Sclauonians speake all one language with the Vandals, all which banded themselves with the Humnes : and now for the most part, they write themselves vnto the Tartars : whom God hath raised up fro the wemost parts of the earth, according to that which the Lord faith: I will prouble Deut, 32.4.21. them to owny (namely such as keepe not his Law ) by a people, which is no people, and by a foolsh Na\_ Ram. 10.7.19. tion will I anger them. This prophecy is fulfilled, according to the literall fenfe thereof, vpon all Nations which observe not the Law of God. All this which I have written concerning the Land of Pafeair, was told me by certaine Friers Pradicants, which travelled thither before e-10 uer the Tartars came abroad. And from that time they were subdued vnto tileir neighbours the Bulgarians being Saracens, whereupon many of them proued Saracens also. Other matters concerning this people, may be knowne our of Chronicles. For it is manifest, that those Prouinces beyond Confiantinople, which are now called Bulgaria, Valachia, and Scianonia, were of old time Provinces belonging to the Greekes. Alfo Hungaria was heretofore called Parmonia. And wee cambean huge were riding ouer the Land of Congle, from the feast of Holy-rood, vatill the feast of All-Saints: plaine Coun travelling almost sucry day (according to mine estimation) as farre, as from Paris to Orleans, trey.

and foretimes farther, ar we were provided of Poil-horfes; for folie dates we had change of horfes twice or thrice maday. Sometimes we transfled two or three daies together, not finding any people, and then we were conftrained not to ride to fast. Of twentie or thirtie Horles we 20 had alwaies the worft, because we were Strangers: For enery one tooke their choice of the best Horfes before vs. They prouded me alwaies of a ffrong Horfe, because I was very corpulent and heavy ; but whether he ambled a gentle pale or no, I durit not make my question. Neither yet durit I complaine, although he trotted full fore. But every man must bee contented with his lot as it fell. Whereupon we were exceedingly troubled; for often times our Horles were tyred before we could come at any people. And then we were confirmined to beate and whip on our Horses, and to lay our Garments voon other emptie Horses : yea, and sometimes two of vs to

ride upon one Horie.

but onely in the second . In the morning they vied to give vs a little drinke, or some fod. Of the hunger den Millet to sup off. In the evening they bestowed fiesh vpon vs, as namely, a shoulder and and thirst, and bresit of Reans Mucton, and every man a measured quantitie of broath to drinke. When wee other midries, had fufficient of the fieth-broath, we were maruellously well refreshed. And it seemed to mee flained in our most sheafant, and most nourithing drinke. Every Saturday I remained falting vntill night, journed. without eating or drinking of ought. And when might came, I was constrained, to my great griefe and forrow, to eate fieth. Sometimes we were tame to eate fieth halfe fodden, or almost raw, and all for want of Fewell to feethe it withall; especially, when we lay in the fields, or were benighted before we came at our journeys end : because we could not then conveniently gather together the dung of Horsesor Oxen: for other fewell we found but seldome, except 40 perhaps a few thornes in some places. Likewise vpon the banckes of some Riners, there are woods growing here and there. Howbeit they are very rare. In the beginning our guide highly disdained vs, and it was tedious vneo him to conduct such base fellowes. Afterward, when Cerraine Rihe began to know vs somewhat better, he directed vs on our way by the Courts of rich Moals, uers and we were requested to pray for them. Wherefore, had I carried a good Interpreter with me, I should have had opportunitie to have done much good. The forefaid Chingis, who was the first great Can or Emperour of the Tartars, had foure Sonnes, of whom proceeded by naturall difcent many children, every one of which doeth at this day enion great possessions : and they are

daily multiplyed and dispersed ouer that hoge and vast Desart, which is in dimensions, like unto the Ocean Sea. Our guide therefore directed ve, as we were going on our journey, unto 50 many of their habitations. And they maruelled exceedingly, that wee would receive neither Gold nor Silver, nor precious and costly garments at their hands. They inquired also, concerning the great Pope, whether he was of fo lasting an age as they had heard? For there had gone a report among them, that hee was fine hundred yeares old. They inquired likewise of our Countries, whether there were abundance of Sheepe, Oxen, and Horses, or no? Concerning the Ocean Sea, they could not conceive of it, because it was without limits or bankes. Vpon Eight daies the Euen of the feath of All-Saints, wee for sooke the way leading towards the East, (because journy South-

the people were now defcended very much South ) and wee went on our journey by certaine ward. Ales, or Mountaines directly South-ward, for the space of eight daies together. In the fore- footfaid Defart I faw many Affes (which they call Colan) being rather like vnto Mules: thefe did High Moun-60 our guide and his companions chafe very eagerly : howbeit, they did but lofe their labour, for taines. the beafts were two swift for them. Vpon the seuenth day there appeared to the South of vs Manured

huge high Mountaynes, and we entred into a place which was well watered, and fresh as a Gar- grounds. den, and found Land tilled and manured. The eight day, after the feaft of All-Saints, wee arri- lage of the Saned at a certaine Towne of the Saracens, named Kenebat, the Gouernour whereof met our Guide ratens.

F honger and thirst, cold and wearinesse; there was no end. For they gaue vs no victuals, Chap. 24.

The feuenth day of No-

at the Townes end with Ale and Cups. For it is their manner at all Townes and Villages, fubiect vnto them, to meete the mellengers of Baatu and Mangu-Can with meate and drinke. At the same time of the yeere, they went upon the Ice in that Countrey. And before the feast of Saint Michael, we had froit in the Defart. I enquired the name of that Province : but being now in a strange Territorie, they could not tell mee the name thereof, but onely the name of a very small Citie in the same Prouince. And there descended a great River downe from the Moun-A great River, taynes, which watered the whole Region, according as the Inhabitants would give it passage, by making divers Chanels and Sluces : neither did this River exonerate it felfe into any Sea, but was swallowed up by an hideous Gulfe into the bowels of the earth, and it caused many Fennes

Many Lakes. Chap. 25.

and concer-

A Cottage.

The Moun-

citalas.

How Ban was put to death: ning the habitation of the Dutch men. taynes of Caneafus are extended vnto the The Citie of Talas, or Chin-Frier Andrew.

rics of Mangu-Certaine Alpes wherein the Cara Catayans inhabited. A mightie Ri-Ground tilled. Еднінь.

A Lake of fiftecne daies iourney in compaffe.

Contomanni.

or Lakes. Alfo I faw many Vines, and dranke of the Wine thereof. The day following, we came vnto another Cottage neere vnto the Mountaynes. And I enquired what Mountaynes they were, which I vnderftood to bee the Mountaines of Cancafin, which are stretched forth, and continued on both parts to the Sea, from the West vnto the East: and on the West part they are conjoyned vnto the foresaid Caspian Sea, where into the River of Volga dischargeth his streames. I enquired also of the Citie of Talas, wherein were certaine Duich men, seruants vnto one Buri, of whom Frier Andrew made mention. Concerning whom also I enquired very diligently in the Courts of Sartach and Basin. Howbeit I could haue no intelligence of them, but onely that their Lord and Mafter Bas was put to death vpon the occasion following: This Ban was not placed in good and fertile Pastures. And vpon a cer- 20 taine day being drunken, hee spake on this wife vnto his men. Am not I of the stocke and kindred of Chingis Can, as well as Baatu? (for in very deede he was brother or Nephew vnto Bagtu. ) Why then doe I not passe and repasse vpon the banke of Etilia, to feede my Cattell there. as freely as Baats himfelfe doth : Which speeches of his were reported vnto Baats. Whereupon Bassa wrote vnto his fernants to bring their Lord bound vnto him. And they did fo. Then Baats demanded of him whether he had spoken any such words : And he confessed that he had. Howbeit (because it is the Tarrars manner to pardon drunken men) he excused himselfe that he was drunken at the fame time. How durst thou (quoth Baats) once name mee in thy drunkennesse ! And with that hee caused his head to be chopt off. Concerning the foresaid Dutch men, I could not vnderstand ought, till I was come vnto the Court of Mangu-Can. And there I was 30 informed that Mangu-Can had removed them out of the intifdiction of Baatn, for the frace The Village of of a moneths iourney from Talas Eastward, vnto a certaine Village, called Bolac: where they are fet to dig gold, and to make armour. Whereupon I could neither goe nor come by them, I passed very neere the said Citie in going forth, as namely, within three daies iourney thereof : but I was ignorant that I did to : neither could I have turned out of my way, albeit I had knowne so much. From the foresaid Cottage we went directly Eastward, by the Mountaines aforesaid. And from that time we transalled among the people of Mangu-Can, who in all places fang and danced before our Guide, because he was the messenger of Baatu. For this curtesie they doe afford each to other : namely , the people of Mangu-Can receiving the messengers of Baatu in He entreth in manner aforesaid : and so likewise the people of Basis entertaining the messengers of Mangu- 40 to the Territo- Can. Notwithstanding, the people of Baatuare more surly and stout, and shew not so much curtefie vnto the subjects of Mangu-Can, as they doe vnto them. A few daies after we entered upon those Alpes where the Cara Catayans were wont to inhabit. And there we found a mightie Riner : infomuch that we were constrained to imbarke our selues, and to saile ouer it. Afterward we came into a certaine Valley, where I faw a Castle destroyed, the walls whereof were onely of mulde : and in that place the ground was tilled also. And there wee found a certaine Village, named Equius, wherein were Saracens, speaking the Persian language: howbeit they dwelt an huge distance from Persia. The day following , having passed over the foresaid Alpes, which descended from the great Mountaynes Southward, wee entred into a most beautifull Plaine, having high Mountaynes on our right hand, and on the left hand of vs a certaine Sea or 50 Lake, which containeth fitteene dates journey in circuit. All the foresaid Plaine is most commodiously watered with certaine Freshets, distilling from the said Mountaynes, all which doe fall into the Lake. In Summer time we returned by the North shoare of the faid Lake, and there were great Mountaines on that side also. Vpon the fore-named Plaine there were wont to bee great store of Villages : but for the most part they were all wasted, in regard of the fertile Paitures, that the Tartars might feede their Cattell there. We found one great Citie there, named Coilae, wherein was a Mart, and great store of Merchants frequenting it. In this Citie wee remained fifteene daies, staying for a certaine Scribe or Secretarie of Baats, who ought to have of Merchants. accompanied our Guide for the dispatching of certaine affaires in the Court of Mangu. All this Countrey was wont to bee called Organis: and the people thereof had their proper language, 60 and their peculiar kind of writing. But it was altogether inhabited of the people, called Contomanni. The Nestorians likewise in those parts vie the very same kind of language and writing, They are called Organa, because they were wont to bee most skilfull in playing vpon the Organs or Citherne, as it was reported vnto mee. Here first did I see worshippers of Idols , concerning whom, bee it knowne vnto your Maiestie, that there bee many sects of them in the East Countries.

He first fort of these Idolaters are called Ingures: whose Land bordereth vpon the foresaid Chap. 26. Landof Organum, within the faid Mountaines Eastward : and in all their Cities Nestorians How the Nestodoe inhabit together, and they are differred likewife rowards Perfe ; in the Cities of the Sara- riant, S ratent, cens. The Citizens of the forefaid Citic of Cailso had three Idol-temples; and I entred into and idoleses two of them, to behold their foolish superfittions. In the first of which, I found a man having a reisoned to where Croste painted with Inke vpon his hand, whereupon I supposed him to be a Christian; for he anfo (wered like a Christian ento all questions which I demanded of him. And I asked him, Why called layers therefore have you not the Crosse with the Image of lefu Christ thereupon ! And he answered, Idolusts, We have no fuch custome. Whereupon I coniectured that they were indeed Christians : bur, that for lacke of inflruction they omitted the forefaid ceremonic. For I faw there behind a certaine Cheft (which was vnto them in flead of an Altar, whereupon they fet Candles and Oblatione) an Image having wings, like vnto the Image of Saint Muhael, and other Images also, holding word with their fingers, as if they would bleffe some body. That evening I could not find any thing else. make and For the Saracens doe onely inuite men thither, but they will not have them speake of their Religion. And cherefore, when I enquired of the Saracens concerning fuch Ceremonies, they and the were offended thereat. On the morrow after were the Kalends, and the Saracens feast of Passes 20 uer. And changing mine Inne or lodging the fame day, I tooke vp mine aboade neere vinto another Idol Temple. For the Citizens of the faid Citie of Cailac doe curreoully inuite, and los singly entertaine all messengers, every man of them according to his abilitie and portion. And entruig into the foresaid Idol-temple, I found the Priests of the said Idols there. For alwaies at the Kalends they fet open their Temples, and the Priests adorne themselues, and offer up the peoples Oblations of Bread and Fruits. First therefore, I will describe vnto you those rices and ceremonies which are common vnto all their Idol-temples and then the superstitions of the forefaid Ingures, which be, as it were, a feot diftinguished from the reft. They doe all of them worthip towards the North, clapping their hands together, and proftrating themselves on their knees voon the earth, holding allo their foreheads in their hands. Whereupon the Nefferians of 30 those parts will in no case joyne their hands together in time of prayer : but they pray displaying their hands before their breafts. They extend their Temples in length Eaft and West; and you the North fide they build a Chamber, in manner of a Vestrie, for them selues to goe forth into. Or sometimes it is otherwise. If it be a foure square Temple, in the midft of the Temple towards the North fide thereof, they take in one Chamber in that place where the Quire should stand. And within the faid Chamber, they place a Chest long and broade like vnto a Table and behind the faid Cheft towards the South, it ands their principal Idoll : which I faw at Caratarum, and it was as big as the Idoll of Saint Christopher. Alfo a certaine Nestorium Priest, which Friet William had beene in Catay, laid that in that Countrey there is an Idoll of fo huge a bigneffe, that it may was at Catata be feenetwo daies journey before a man come at it. And fo they place other Idols round about \*\*\*\*. 40 the foresaid principall Idoll, being all of them finely gilt ouer with pure gold : and vpon the faid Cheft, which is in manner of a Table, they fee Candles and Oblations. The doores of their Temples are alwaies open , wards the South, contrary to the customes of the Saracens. They have also great Bels like vinto vs. And that is the cause (as I thinke) why the Christians of the East will in no case viegreat Bells. Notwithstanding, they are common among the Russians, and Greei-

A Li their Priefts had their heads and beards shauen quite ouer: and they are clad in Sasfron Chap. 27.
Coloured garments: and being once shauen, they leade an unmarried life from that time Of their Rem-A Scoloured garments; and being once toauen, they read any miniative into them together in one Cloifter or Couent, ples and Idols, forward; and they line an hundred or two hundred of them together in one Cloifter or Couent, and how they 50 Vpon those daies when they enter into their Temples, they place two long Formes therein: behaue themand fo fitting upon the faid Formes like Singing men in a Quire, namely, the one halfe of them felues in wordirectly ouer against the other, they have certaine bookes in their hands, which sometimes they shipping their lay downe by them upon the Formes : and their heads are bare follong as they remaine in the talk gods, Temple. And there they reade loftly vnto themselues, not vttering any voice at all. Whereupon comming in amongst them, at the time of their superstitious deuotions, and finding them all fitting mute, in manner aforesaid, Lattempted divers waies to prouoke them vnto speech, and yet could not by any meanes possible. They have with them also whithersoeuer they goe, a certaine ftring, with an hundred or two hundred Nut-fiels thereupon, much like to our bead-roll which wee carrie about with vs. And they doe alwaies vtter thele words: On mam Hall ani; 60 God thou knowest : as one of them expounded it voto me, And so often doe they expect a reward at Gods hands, as they pronounce these words in remembrance of God. Round about their Temple they doe alwaies make a faire Court, like vnto a Church-yard, which they enuiron with a good wall: and upon the South part thereof, they build a great Portall, wherein they fit and conferre together. And vpon the top of the faid Portall, they pitch a long Pole right vp, exal-

ans of Gafaria.

ting it, if they can, about all the whole Towns befides. And by the fame Pole all men may know that there stands the Temple of their Idols. These rites and ceremonies aforesaid, be common vnto all Idolaters in those parts. Going vpon a time towards the foresaid Idoll-temple, I found certaine Priests fitting in the outward Portall. And those which I saw, seemed vato mee, by their shauen beards, as if they had beene French men. They wore certaine ornaments upon their heads, made of Paper: The Priests of the foresaid Ingures doe vie such attire whithersoener they goe. They are alwaies in their Saffron coloured lackets, which bee very flraight, being laced or buttened from the bosome right downe, after the French fashion, and they have a Cloake your their left shoulder, descending before and behind under their right arme, like unto a Deacon carrying the houssel-box in time of Lent. Their letters or kind of writing the Tatters did receive: 10 So doe the . They begin to write at the top of their paper, drawing their lines right downe and so they people of this reade and multiply their lines from the left hand to the right. They doe vie certaine papers and navicto write, characters in their Magicall practices. Whereupon their Temples arefull of such short scrolls drawing their hanged round about them. Also Mangu-Can hath sent letters vnto your Maiestie, written in the ularly downe language of the Moals or Tartars, and in the forefaid hand or letter of the Ingures. They burne ward, and not their dead according to the ancient custome, and lay up the ashes in the top of a Pyramis. Now, as we doe, from after I had fate a while by the forelaid Priests, and entred into their Temple, and seene many of the right hand their Images, both great and small, I demanded of them what they believed concerning God? And they answered : Wee beleeve that the e is onely one God. And I demanded farther : Whether doe you beleeue that he is a Spirit, or some bodily subflance ? They faid : Wee beleeue that bee is a 20 Spirit. Then faid 1 : Doe you beleeve that God ever tooke mans nature vpon him : Then they answered; No. And againe I said : Sithence yee beleeue that hee is a Spirit, to what end doe you make fo many bodily Images to represent him : Sithence also you beleeve not that hee was made man : why doe you refemble him rather vnto the Image of a man then of any other creature! Then they answered, saying : we frame not those Images whereby to represent God. But when any rich man amongst vs, or his sonne, or his wife, or any of his friends deceaseth, he caufeth the Image of the dead partie to be made, and to be placed here : and we in remembrance of him doe reverence thereunto. Then I replyed . You doe thefe things onely for the friendfline and flatterie of men. No (faid they) but for their memorie. Then they demanded of mee, as it were in fcotting wife : Where is God? To whom I answered : Where is your foule ? they faid, In 30 our bodies. Then faid I, Is it not in every part of your bodie, ruling and guiding the whole bodie, and yet notwithstanding is not seene or perceived ! Even so God is every where, and ruleth all things, and yet is he inuitible, being understanding and wisedome it selfe. Then being desirous to fiane had some more conference with them, by reason that mine Interpreter was wearie. and notable to expresse my meaning, I was constrained to keepe silence. The Moals or Tartars are in this segard of their feet : namely, they believe that there is but one God : howbeit, they make Images of felt, in remembrance of their deceased friends, covering them with five most rich and costly garments, and putting them into one or two Carts, which Carts no man dare once touch and they are in the custodie of their Sooth fayers, who are their Priests, concerning whom, I will give your Highnesse more at large to understand hereafter. These Sooth-favers or 40 Diumers, doe alwaies attend vpon the Court of Mangu, and of other great personages. As for the poortr or meaner fort, they have them not, but fuch onely as are of the stocke and kindred of Chingis. And when they are to remoue or to take any journey, the faid Dininers goe before them , euen as the cloudie Pillar went before the Children of Ifrael. And they appoint ground where the Tents must be pitched, and first of all they take downe their owne houses: and after them the whole Court doth the like. Also vpon their festivall daies or Kalends, they take forth the foresaid Images, and place them in order, round or circle wife within the house. Then come the Moals or Tastars, and enter into the same house, bowing themselves before the said Images and worthin them. Moreouer, it is not lawfull for any stranger to enter into that house. For vpon a certaine time I my felfe would have gone in, but I was chidden full well for my labour. 50

Chap. 28. fundry Nations: and of certaine peoi ple which The Countrey of Presbyter Tangut-

To Vt the forefaid *Ingures* (who live among the Christians and Saracens) by their fundry diffor-Btations, as I suppose, have beene brought wnto this, to beleeue that there is but one onely God. And they dwelt in certaine Cities , which afterward were brought in subiection vnto Chingis Can : whereupon hee gaue his daughter in marriage vnto their King. Also the Citie of Garagarum it felfe, is in a manner within their Territorie, and the whole Country of King or Presbyter Iohn, and of his brother Vat, lyeth neere vato their Dominions : faung that they inhabit in certaine Pathures Northward, and the faid Ingures betweene the Mountaynes towards owne parents, the South, Whereupon it came to paffe, that the Moals received letters from them. And they are the Tastars principall Scribes; and all the Neftorians almost can skill of their Letters. Next 60 vnto them; betweene the foresaid Mountaynes Eastward, inhabiteth the Nation of Tanget, who are a most valiant people, and tooke Chingu in battell. But after the conclusion of a league, he was let at libertie by them, and afterward libblued them. Thele people of Tangut have Ox-StrangeOxen, en of great strength, with tailes like vnto Horses, and with long shag haire vpon their backs

CHAP, I. and belies. They have legs greater then other Oxen have, and they are exceeding fieres. There Oxen draw the great houses of the Moals: and their homes are slender, long, streight, and most sharpe pointed i infomuch that their owners are faine to cut off the ends of them. A Cow will not fuffer her selfe to be coupled vinto one of them, vinlesse they whalle or sing vinto her. They have allothe qualities of a Buffe : for if they fee a man cloathed in red, they runne vpon him immediately to killhim. Next vnto them are the people of Tebes, men which were wont to eate the carkailes of their deceated parents : that for pities take, they might make no other Sepulchre for them, then their owne bowels. Howbeit of late they have left off this cuffome, becaule that thereby they became abominable and odious vnto all other Nations. Notwithflan-Io ding, vnto this day they make fine Cups of the Skulls of their parents, to the end, that when

they drinke out of them, they may amiditall their iollities and delights, call their dead parents to remembrance. This was told mee by one that faw it. The faid people of Teber have great Abundance of plentie of gold in their Land, Whofoeuer therefore wanteth gold, diggeth til he hath found fome Sold. quantitie, and then taking fo much thereof as will ferue his turne, hee layeth vp the refidue within the earth : because, it ise should put it into his Chest or Store-house, he is of opinion that Within the earth. I faw some of those people, The autre of being very deformed creatures. In Tanger Haw lufty tall men, but browne and fware in colour interpreted the prople of The lugures are of a middle stature, like vinto our French men. Among the lugures is the original Tappas, and of and roote of the Turkib, and Comanian Languages. Next vnto Tebet are the people of Langa the tugura. 20 and Solangs, whole mellengers I faw in the Tarters Court. And they had brought more then Languages and solving the sucry one of which was drawne with fix Oxen. They bee little The propie of browne men like vnto Spaniards. Alfo they have lackets, like vnto the vpper Verintent of a Scharger clem-

Deacon, faning that the fleenes are fomewhat streighter, And they have Miters vpon their heads ble Spagietts like Bishops. But the fore-part of their Miter is not to hollow within as the hinder part neither is it sharpe pointed or cornered at the top : but there hang downe certaine square staps compa-Sted of a kind of Straw, which is made rough and ragged with extreame heate, and is so trimmed, that it glittereth in the Sunne-beames, like vnto a Glasse, or an Helmet well burnished. And about their Temples they have long bands of the foresaid matter, fastened vnto their Miters, which houer in the winde, as if two long hornes grew out of their heads. And when the 30 wind toffed them vp and downe too much, they tie them ouer the middest of their Miter, from

one Temple to another: and so they lie circle wife ouerthwart their heads. Moreouer, their principall meflenger comming vnto the Tartars Court, had a table of Elephants tooth about him, of a cubit in length, and a handfull in breadth, being very smoothe. And when sever he spake vnto A table of Elethe Emperor himselte, or vnto any other great personage, he alwaies beheld that table, as if hee phanes tooth, had found therein those things which hee spake : neither did hee cast his eyes to the right hand, nor to the lett, nor voon his face with whom he talked. Yea, going too and fro before his Lord, hee looketh no where but onely vpon his table. Beyond them (as I vnderstand of a certaintie) there are other people called Muc, having Villages, but no one particular man of them appro- The people priating any Cattell vnto himselfe. Notwithstanding, there are many slocks and droues of Cat-called Australia

40 tell in their Countrey, and no man appointed to keepe them. But when any one of the standeth in neede of any beart, hee ascendeth up vnto a hall, and there maketh a shoute, and all the Cattell which are within hearing of the noyle, come flocking about him, and fuffer themselues to be handled and taken, as if they were tame. And when any messenger or stranger commeth into their Countrey, they shut him vp into an house, ministring there things necessary vnto him, vntill his businesse be dispatched. For if any stranger should trauell through that Countrey, the Catttell would flie away at the very tent of him, and fo would become wilde. Beyond Mue is Great Cataga. great Cataga, the Inhabitants whereof (as I suppose) were of old time, called Seres. For from them are brought most excellent stuffes of silke. And this people is called Seres, of a certaine Towne in the fame Countrey. I was credibly informed, that in the faid Countrey, there is one

Towne having Walls of filter, and Bulwarkes or Towers of gold. There bee many Provinces \* From hence in that Land, the greater part whereof are not as yet fubdued vinto the Tartars. And the " Sea is topplyed by lyeth betweene them and India. These Catagans are men of a little flature, speaking mu-h Mader Hacialyeth betweene them and India. These Catayans are men or a little frature, speaking much irindustric(as through the nose. And this is generall, that all they of the East haue small eyes. They are exhibit through the nose. cellent workemen in every Art : and their Physicians are well skilled in the Vertues of Herbs, of a Manuand judge exactly of the Pulle; But vie no Vrinals, nor know any thing concerning Vrine. Icrips in Beanet This I faw, for there are many of them at Caracarum. And they are alwaies wont to bring vp Colledge in This I faw, for there are many of them at Caracterism. And they are alwais work to bruch tri-all their children in the fame trade whereof the father is. And therefore they pay fo much tri-the other part bute; for they give the Moalisans every day one thousand and five hundred Ceilines or Iascots: hechadour (Ialcot is a piece of filuer weighing ten Markes) that is to fay, every day fifteene thousand of an inter-60 Markes, befide filkes and certaine victuals, which they receive from thence, and other feet Cope of Markes, befide filkes and certaine victuals, which they receive from changes, and certaine victuals, which they doe them. All these Nations are betweene the Mountaynes of Cancasius, here. The Chapterine which they doe them.

ters disagree, as being (I thinke) rather some Transcribers duisson then the Authors. Yet baue I followed the numbers I found, euen where they are obscureft. The Friers Latin for some barbarous words and phrases, hath beene troublesome to translite. The worke I hold a lewell of Ansiquitie, now first entirely publike.

Idolury.

on the North fide of those Mountaines to the East Sea, on the South part of Scythia, which the Shepheards of Moal doe inhabit : All which are tributarie vnto them, and all given to Idolatry, and report many fables of a multitude of gods, and certaine Deified men, and make a pedigree of the gods as our Poets doe.

Neftarians. Carbay.

this day.

Nestorians.

ruption of

All Priefts.

lities of the

The Neftorians are mingled among them as Strangers; fo are the Saracens as farre as Cathar, The Nestorians inhabit fifteene Cities of Cathay, and have a Bishopricke there, in a Citie called Segin. But further, they are meere Idolaters. The Priests of the Idols of the faid Nations, have Segni a Citic of all broad yellow hoods. There are also among them (as I vnderstood) certaine Hermits living in the Woods and Mountaines, of an auftere and strange life. The Nestorians there know nothing, They are fo at for they say their Seruice, and haue holy Bookes in the Syrian tongue, which they know not. To The cuil qua-So that they fing as our Monkes doe, who are ignorant of Grammar; and hence it commeth. that they are wholly corrupted. They are great Viurers and Drunkards, and some of them al-Hence by corso who line among the Tartars, have many Wines, as the Tartars have. When they enter into the Church, they wash their lower parts, as the Saracens doe. They eate flesh on Friday of manners and the weeke, and hold their Feafts that day, after the manner of the Saracens. The Bishop comes ignorance of feldome into those Countries, perchance, scarfe once in fiftie yeares. Then they cause all their faith, seemeth little Children (which are Males ) to be made Priests, euen in the Cradell; so that all their men the Apoftacy of the greateft almost are Priests : and after this they marrie Wiues, which is directly against the decrees of part of Affato the Fathers : they are also Bigami, for the Priefts themselves, their first Wife being dead, marrie have happe-the Patiets, they are all Simonifts, for they give no holy thing freely. They are very carefull for their Wines and Children, whereby they apply themselves to gaine, and not to the sprea- 20 by Tartarian dine of the Faith. Whence it commeth to paste, while some of them bring vp some of the Noinuations and SaracenicalL bilities chil iren of Moal (although they teach them the Gospell, and the Articles of the \* Consider our Faith) yet by their euill life and couetousnesse, they drive them further from Christianitie; Author a Frier, Because the life of the Moallians, and Tuinians (who are Idolaters) is more harmelesse whose trauels then theirs.

we rather embrace, then (in such passages) his distinctie. They were later Fathers which made such Decrees, contrary to the Father of truth which ordained marriage in Lexies Priest-hood, and chose married men to the Apostleship: and forewarned of another Father. who with Doctrines of Deuils should prohibite meate and marriage, under colour of Priests chastitie, making the Temple stewes to carnall and spirituall whoredome,

Chap. 26. Of fuch things Nouemb. 30.

WE departed from the forefaid Citie of Cailae on Saint Andrewes day. And there wee found almost within three leagues, a whole Castle or Village of Nestrians. Entring as befell them, into their Church, we fang, Salne Regina, &c. with ioy, as lond as we could, because it was long departing from fince we had feene a Church. Departing thence, in three daies we came to the entrance of that Country of the Province, in the head of the foresaid Sea, which seemed to vs as tempethous as the Ocean, and we saw a great Hand therein. My Companions drew neere the shoare, and wet a Linnen cloath therein, to taste the Water, which was somewhat falt, but might bee drunke. There went a certaine Valley ouer against it, from betweene the great Mountaines, betweene South and East: and betweene the hils, was another certaine great Sea; and there ranne a River through that 40 Valley, from the other Sea into this. Where came fuch a continuall winde through the Valley. that men passe with great danger, least the wind carrie them into the Sea. Therefore wee left the Valley and went towards the North, to the great hilly Countries, couered with deepe Snow, which then lay vpon the Earth : fo that vpon Saint Nicholas day we beganne now to haften our journy much, and (because we found no people, but the land themselves (to wit) men appointed from daies journey to daies journey together, the Messengers together. Because in many places in the hilly Countries) the way is narrow, and there are but few fields, so that betweene day and night we met with two lani, whereupon of two daies journeys we made one. Extreme cold, and travelled more by night then by day. It was extreame cold there, so that they lent vs their Goats skins, turning the haire outward.

Decemb.6.

Decemb. 7.

A dangerous

The second Sunday of Aduent in the evening, we passed by a certaine place betweene very terrible Rockes : and our Guide sent vnto me, intreating me to speake some good words, wherewith the Deuils might be driven away; because in that passage, the Deuils themselves were wont fuddenly to carrie men away, so that it was not knowne what became of them. Sometimes they violently fnatched a Horse and left the man : sometimes they drew out a mans bowels, and left the emptie carkaffe vpon the Horse. And many such things did often fall out there. Then we lang with a loud voyce, (redo in Denn, &c. And by the Grace of God, wee passed through (with all our company) vnhurt. After that, they beganne to intreat me, that I would write them Papers to carrie on their heads : and I told them, I would teach them a word which they should carrie in their hearts, whereby their soules and bodies should be saued ener- 60 laitingly. But alwaies when I would teach them, I wanted an Interpreter : Yet I wrote them the Creede and the Lords Prayer; faying, Heere it is written whatloeuer a man ought to beleeue concerning God. Here also is that prayer, wherein we begge of God what soeuer is needfull for a man. Whereupon beleeue firmely that which is written here, although you cannot

understand it, and aske of God that he do that for you which is contained in this written Prayer : because with his owne mouth he taught it his friends, and I hope he will saue you. I could not doe any thing elfe, because it was very dangerous to speake the words of doctrine by such an Interpreter, nay almost impossible, because he was ignorant.

A Free this, wee entred into that plaine where the Court of Ken-Cham was, which was Chap. 27.

Wont to be the Countrey of the Naymans, who were the peculiar Subjects of Preferer Of the Country. Ishn: but at that time I faw not that Court , but in my returne. Yet heere I declare vnto you try of the Nagwhat befell his Ancestry, his Soone and Wives. Ken-Chambeing dead, Baatu defired that Man-befell the stock IO go should be Chan. But I could understand in certaintie of the death of Ken. Frier Andrew of Ken-chan his faid, that he dyed by a certaine medicine given him : and it was suspected that Bantu caused it some & wives. tobe made. Yet I heard otherwise, for he summoned Baats, to come and doe him homage. And B. ats. Basts tooke his journey speedily with great preparation; but he and his Seruants were much afraid, and fent one of his Brothers before, called Stiebin : who when he came to Ken, and should Stiebin and Ken waite upon his Cup, contention arifing betweene them, they flue one another. The Widow kill one anoof Suchin kept vs a whole day, to goe into her house and bleffe her, that is, pray for her. There-ther. fore Ken being dead, Mangu was chosen by the consent of Baatu. And was then chosen when Frier Andrew was there. Ken had a certaine Brother, called Siremon, who by the counfell of Kens Wife and her Vailals, went with great preparation towards Mangu, as if he meant to doe 20 him homage, and yet in truth he purposed to kill him, and destroy his whole Court. And when he was neere Mangu, within one or two daies journey, one of his Wagons remained broken in the way. While the Wagoner laboured to mend it, in the meane space came one of the Seruants of Mange, who helped him : he was so inquisitine of their journey, that the Wagoner reuealed vnto him what Siremon purposed to doe. Then turning out of the way, as if hee little regarding it, went vnto the herd of Horses, and tooke the best Horse hee could choose, and pofting night and day, came speedily to the Court of Manga, reporting vnto him what he had heard. Then Mangu quickly affembling all his subjects, caused foure rings of Armed men to

him, ( not suspecting his purpose had beene discourred ) and brought him to the Court with 30 all his followers. Who when Mangu lay the matter to his charge, strait-way confessed it. Then he and his eldeft Sonne Ken Chan were flaine, and three hundred of the Nobilitie of the Tarters with them. The Noble Women also were fent for, who were all beaten with burning fire-brands to make them confesse: and having confessed, were put to death. His youngest sonne Ken, who could not be capable or guiltie of the conspiracy, was left aliue : And his Fathers Palace was left vnto him, with all belonging vnto it, as well Men as Chattels: and we paffed by it in our returne. Nor durft my Guides turne in vnto it, neither going nor comming. For the Lady of the Nations fate there in heauinesse, and there was none to comfort her.

compasse his Court, that none might goe in or out : the rest he sent against Siremon, who tooke

Hen went wee vp agains into the high Countries, going alwaies towards the North. At Chap. 28. 40 I length on Saint Stephens day we entred into a great Plaine like the Sea, where there was not Of their comfo much as a Mole-hill. And the next day, on the feast of S. John the Euangelist, we came vito ming to the the Palace of that great Lord. But when we were neere it, within fine daies journey, our Hoft Courses Manwhere we lay, would have directed vs a way farre about, fo that wee should yet travaile more 2" chan. then fifteene daies. And this was the reason (as I vinderstood) that wee might goe by Okah Kerule Onam Kerule their proper Countrey, where the Court of Chingis-Chan is. Others faid, that he the proper did it for this purpose, that he might make the way longer, and might shew his power the more. Country of For so they are wont to deale with men comming from Countries not subject to them. And our the Tarion. Guide obtained with great difficultie, that we might go the right way. For they held vs vpon this from the morning till three of the clocke. In that way also, the Secretarie (whom we expe-

50 cted at Cailar) told me, that it was contained in the Letters which Bautn fent to Mangu-Chan, that wee required an Army and ayde of Sarrach against the Saracens. Then I began to wonder much, and to be greatly troubled: for I knew the Tenor of the Letters, and that no mention therof was made therein : faue that yee aduited him to be a friend to all Christians, and should exalt the Crosse, and be an enemy to all the enemies of the Crosse and because also the Interpreters were Armenians, of the greater Armenia, who greatly hated the Saracens; left perhaps they had interpreted any thing in eaill part to make the Saracens more odious and hatefull at their pleafure, I therefore held my peace, not speaking a word with them, or against them; for I feared to gainfay the words of Bastu, least I should incurre some false accusation without reasonable cause. We came therefore the foreland day vnto the faid Court. Our Guide had a great house appointed

60 him, and we three a little Cottage, wherein wee could scarfe lay our stuffe, make our beds, and haue a little fire. Many came to visit our Guide, and brought him drinke made of Rice, in long strait mouthed bottles, in the which I could difference no difference from the best Antifiedorensis an Wine, faue that it had not the fent of Wine. We were called, and straightly examined upon what businesse we came. I answered, that we heard of Sartach that he was a Christian : we came

therefore vnto him; the French King fent him a Packet by vs, he fent vs to Baate his Father: & his Father hath fent vs hither, hee should have written the cause, wherevpon they demanded whether we would make peace with them? I answered, he hath sent Letters vnto Sartach as a Christian : and if he had knowne, he were not a Christian, hee would neuer haue fent him Letters, to treate of peace: I say, he hath done you no wrong : if he had done any, why should you warte vpon him, or his people! he, willingly (as a suft man) would reforme himselfe, and defire peace. If yee without cause will make warre with him, or his Nation, we hope that God (who is iu(t) will helpe them. And they wondred, alwayes repeating, why came yee, seeing yee came not to make peace. For they are now so puffed vp with pride, that they thinke the whole World should delire to make peace with them. And truly, if I might bee suffered, I would preach to Warre against them to the vttermost of my power) throughout the whole World. But I would not plainly deliuer the cause of my comming, lest I should speake any thing against that which Bastu commanded. I told them therefore the whole cause of my comming thither, was

Decemb, 28.

The day following we were brought vnto the Court, and I thought I could goe bare-foot, as I did in our Countrey : whereupon, I layd afide my shooes. But such as come to the Court, alight farre from the house where the Great Chan is, as it were a Bow-shot off: where the Horses abide, and a Boy to keepe them. Whereupon, when wee alighted there, and our Guide went with vs to the house of the Great Chan, a Hungarian Boy was present there, who knew vs (to wit) our Order. And when the men came about vs, and beheld vs as Monsters, especially be- 20 caule we were bare-footed, and demanded whether we did not lacke our feet, because they supposed we should strait-way have lost them, that Hungarian told them the reason, shewing them the condition of our Order. Then the chiefe Secretary (who was a Neftorian and a Christian, by whose counsell and aduice almost all is done) came vnto vs, to see vs , and looked earneftly vpon vs. and called the Hungarian vnto him, of whom he demanded many Questions. Then we were willed to returne vnto our Lodging.

Chap. 29. Of a Christian chappell, and and continuance of the Winter. An Armenian

Their conference with the Armenian Monke.

Monkish Re-(ue)lation.

Nd when we returned, at the end of the Court towards the East, farre from the Court, as A much as a Croffe-bow could shoot at twice, I saw a house, vpon the which there was a little Croffe, then I reloyced much, supposing there was some Christianitie there. I went in boldly ot the conte-rence with 50- and found an Altar very well furnished, for there in a Golden cloth were the Images of Christ gias the coun- and the bleffed Virgin, and Saint Iohn Baptiff, and two Angels, the lineaments of their bodies and terfeit Armeni- garments diltinguished with Pearle, and a great filter Croffe having precious stones in the corners, and the middle thereof, and many other Embroyderings and a Candle burning with Oyle before the Altar, hauing eight Lights. And there fare an Armenian Monke, forme-what blacke and leane, clad with a rough hairen Coate to the middle legge, having vpon it a blacke Cloke of briftles, furred with spotted Skinnes, girt with Iron under his haire-cloth. Presently after wee entred in, before we faluted the Monke, falling flat vpon the ground, we fang, Aue Regina Calorum, co. and he rising, prayed with vs. Then faluting him, we fate by him having a little fire before him in a Pan. Therefore we told him the caute of our comming. And he began to comfort 40 vs much, faying, that we should boldly speake, because we were the Messengers of God, who is greater then all men. Afterwards he told vs of his comming, faying, he came thither a moneth before vs, and that he was a Heremite of the Territorie of Hiernfalem, and that the Lord appeared to him three times, commanding him to goe to the Prince of the Tartars : And when he deferred to goe, the third time God threatned him, and ouerthrew him vpon the ground, faying, he should dye, vnleffe he went; and that he told Mangu Chan, that if he would become a Chriftian, the whole World should be obedient vnto him; and the French and the Great Pope should obay him : and he aduised me to say the like vnto him. Then I answered, brother, I will willingly perswade him to become a Christian: (For I came for this purpose, to preach thus vnto all) I will promife him alfo, that the French, and the Pope will much rejoyce thereat, and account 50 him for a brother and a friend : but I will never promife, that they shall become his Servants, and pay him Tribute, as these other Nations; because in so doing I should speake against my conscience, then he held his peace. We went therefore together to our Lodging, which I found a cold Harbour ; and we had eaten nothing that day, fo we boyled a little fielh and Millet in the broth of flesh to sup. Our Guide and his companions were drunken at the Court: and little care was had of vs. At that time the Meffengers of Vafiace were there hard by vs, which weeknew not: And the men of the Court made vs rife in great hafte, at the dawning of the day. And I went bare-foot with them a little way, vnto the house of the faid Messengers. And they demanded of them, whether they knew vs. Then that Grecian Souldier calling our Order and my companion to remembrance, because he had feene him in the Court of Vastace, with Frier Thomas, our Mi- 60 S. Francis Dr. nitter, and all his fellowes, gaue great teltimony of vs. Then they demanded whether wee had peace or war with Vaftace? we have (faid I) nor war nor peace. And they demanded, how that might be. Because ((aid I) their Countries are far removed one from the others, and meddle net together. Then the Messenger of Vastace said wee had peace, giving mee a causar : so I held my tongue. That morning, my toes ends werefrozen, to that I could no longer goe bare-foot : for

der not Catholike; Uni. uerfally fit ing

# CH AP. I. Tuinians Idolsters, Respect of Priests, Description of Mangu Chan. 27

in those Countreyes the cold is extreame sharpe: and from the time when it beginneth to freeze it neuer ceaseth vntill May: nay, in the moneth of May it freezed eurry morning; Front vntill the but in the day time it thawed through the heate of the Sunne : but in the Winter it monethof neuer thawes, but the Ice continues with enery winde. And if there were any winde May. there in the Winter, as it is with vs, nothing could live there, but it is alwaies milde weather vntill Aprill, and then the winds arife, and at that time when wee were there (about Eafter) the cold arifing with the winde killed infinite creatures. In the Winter little fnow Eafter in the fell there; but about Eafter, which was in the latter end of Aprill , there fell fo great a linow; end of the end that all the streets of Caracarum were full; that they were fayne to carrie it out with their of Aprill, And that all the streets of Laracarum were sun; such that all the streets of the same, great Snew in Carts. Then they first brought vs (from the Court) Ramskin Coats, and Breeches of the same, the end of and Shooes, which my Companion and Interpreter received. But I thought I had no need of Aprill. them, because I supposed my Pelt-garment (which I brought from Basin) was sufficient for me.

Then the fift of Januarie we were brought vnto the Court : and there came Neftorian Priefts voto me, (I not knowing they were Christians) demanding which way we worthipped ? I faid, ento the East. And this they demanded because wee had shauen our beards by the aduice Shauing. of our Guide, that wee might appears before Chan according to the falhion of our Countrey : whereupon, they thought wee had beene Tuinians (to wit) Idolaters. They made vsalio expound out of the Bible. Then they demanded what reuerence wee would doe to Chan, whether after our owne fashion, or theirs! To whom I made answere. Wer age Priests, given to the Respect of 20 ferrice of God; Noblemen in our Countrey will not fuffer Priefts to bow their knees before Priefts

them, for the honour of God; neuerthelesse, wee will humble our selues to all men, for the Lords take. Wee came from a farre Countrey, If yee pleafe, wee will first fing prayles vnto God, who hath brought vs safe hither from afarre; and after, wee will doe what seuer pleaseth the Lord; with this exception, that he command vs nothing which may bee against the worthip and honour of God. Then they entring into the house, deliuered what wee had faid. So their Lord was contented. And they fet vs before the gate of the house , lifting vp the Felt which hung before the gate. And because it was Christmas wee began to fing, From the first Easterne Land,

A Solis ortus cardine, To furtheft Westerne Strand, Et v que Terra limitem, Let vs Christ land and sing Christum canamus Principem,

Bleit Virgins Sonne, our King. Nd when wee had tung this Hymne, they fearched our legs, and our botoms, and our armes, Chap. 20 Natum Maria Virgine. Awhether wee had Knines about vs. They made our Interpreter vngird himfelfe, and leaue Of the Admit-

his Girdle and his Knife, without in the custodie of a Doore-keeper. Then we came in. And in the entrance there stood a Bench with Cosmos, by the which they ge Char, and his make our Interpreter stand; and caused vs to sit vpon a Forme before the Ladies. The whole description, house within was hanged with Cloth of Gold : and on a certaine Hearth in the middle of the and their con-

house, there was a fire made of thornes and Wormewood roots (which grow there very bigge) ference with nouse, there was a nre made of thomes and with a spotted skin or Furre, bright, and this thim.

The description 40 ning like a Seales skin. Hee was a flat-noted man, of a middle flature, about the age of flue and tion of Mangu fortie yeeres: and a little pretie young woman (which was his wife) fate by him, and one of chan. his daughters, Crima by name, (a hard-fauoured woman) marriageable, with other little ones, fate next vnto them vpon a Bed. For that was the house of a certaine Christian Ladie, whom he dearely loued, by whom he had the forefaid daughter : and hee married that young wife befide : but yet the daughter was Mistresse of all that Court, which was her Mothers. Then he made them aske vs, what we would drinke, whether Wine, or Ceracina, that is, drinke made of Rice, or Caracolus, that is, cleere Cowes milke, or Ball, that is, Mede made of Honey : for they vie these foure kinds of Drinkes in the Winter. Then I answered, Sir, wee are not men who take pleasure in drinke. What pleaseth you shall contene vs. Then he commanded drinke Drinke of Rice of Rice to be given vs, cleere and lauoury, as white Wine: whereof I tafted a little for reue- ischere and of Rice to be guen vs, cleere and faudury, as write value. The Burlers: who gave him faudury, and rence of him. And our Interpreter (to our misfortune) stood by the Burlers: who gave him like to white much drinke, and hee was quickly drunke. Then Chan caused Falcons, and other birds to bee Wine. The

brought vnto him, which he tooke vpon his fift, and lookes vpon them; and after a long time Indians call it he commanded vs to speake. Then we were to bow the knees. And hee had his Interpreter, a Racke. certaine Nestorian, whom I knew not to bee a Christian ; and wee had our Interpreter, such an one as he was, who now also was drunke. Then I faid, Wee first gine thankes and praise to God, The Oration who hath brought us from so remoued parts of the World, to see Mangu Chan to whom God hath gi- of Frier Willi. who hath brought us from jo removed parts of the restudy to fee whath the chain to be used and die, that he chain. would grant him a long and a prosperous life. (For this they defire, that men pray for their lines.) Then I told him: Sir, Wee base beard of Sartach that he was a Christian; and the Christians who The like Let-Then I told him: Sir, Wee have heard of Sartach tout he was a Complian; but him, and our Lord and tersyou have to heard it, but hectally the French King, reioyced: wherefore wee came unto him, and our Lord and tersyou have

King hath fent him Letters by vs wherein were words of peace: and amongst other things, hee testifieth before 1.8.47. of us, who fe feruants wee are, and intreated him to suffer us to abide in his Countrey. For it is our for another office to teach men to line according to the Law of God. And hee fent us to Baatu his father: and Priar,

earth; We therefore intreat your Highnesse, to give us leave to continue in your Countrey to doe the seruice of God for you, your Wines and Children. Wee bane neither Gold nor Silner, nor precions stones to present unto you, but our selues, whom we present to serve, and pray unto God for you. At the leaft, give vs leave to continue while the cold be past. My Companion is so weake, that hee cannot by any meanes transile on Horse-backe without bazzard of his life. For my Companion willed The inswer of me, and advired me, to crave leave to stay. For we supposed we minst returne to Baatu, voiles of Manyu chan, bis speciall Grace be gaue vs leave to stay. Then he began to answer: Euen as the Sunne spreads Many chan, Ou percan Grace or game vs sense vs 1975, the the view of the percan bere: fo that wee base no movel vader his beamer sense, where, fo our power and Bastuse fixeds it effe enery where: fo that wee base no flood and deli needs of your Silver and Gold. Hitherto I vndetflood my Interpreter: but further, I could not 10 uered by a drunken Inter-drunken Inter-him selfe was drunke also, as I thought. Yet with this, (as it feemed to mee, hee ended his speach ) that he was displeased that we came first to Sartach, before wee came to him. Then feeing the defect of my Interpreter, I held my peace, this onely excepted, that I intreated his Highnesse hee would not be displeased, for that which I spoke of Gold and Silver; because I spoke it not that he had need of such things, or defired them, but because we would willingly honour him with temporall and spirituall things.

Then he made vs rife, and sit downe againe; and after some sew words, doing our dutie to him, we went out, and his Secretaries, and that Interpreter of his ( who had the bringing up of one of his Daughters ) went together with vs. And they began to bee very inquisitine of the 20 Kingdome of France, whether there were many Rams, Oxen and Horses there, as if presently they should enter and take all. And oftentimes I was faine to bridle my felfe much, in dissembling anger and indignation. And I answered, There are many good things there which yee shall see, if yee happen to come thither. Then they appointed vs one, who should have care of vs. And we went wnto the Monke : and when we came out againe, ready to goe to our lodging, the foresaid Interpreter came vnto vs; saying, Mangu Chan hath compassion on you, and gives you two moneths time to flay. Then the extreame cold will be past, and he fends to you : Here within ten daies iourney there is a good Citie, called Caracaram, if yee will go thither, he will cause necessarie things to be given you: but if yee will abide heere, yee may, and yee shall have necessaries : yet it will be a troublesome thing for you to follow the Court. And I answered : 30 The Lord preserve Mangu Chan, and grant him a good and long life. We have found this Monk heere, whom we thinke to be an holy man, and that by the good pleasure of God he came into peareth chi36. these parts, wherefore we would willingly stay with him, because wee are Monkes, and wee would pray together for the life of Chan. Then he held his peace and departed. And we went vnto our house, which we found very cold, and without any Fuell, as yet failing, and it was night. Then he, to whom we were recommended, prouided vs Fuell, and a little meate. Our Guide was now to returne to Baats, who defired a Carpet of vs , which (by his Commandement) we left in the Court of Bastu: which we gaue him, and he peaceably departed fo, kiffing our right hand, and confessing his fault, if he suffered vs to indure hunger and thirst vpon the

way. We pardoned him, crauing pardon of him and his whole Family, if we had given them 40

Chap. 31. Of Pafcha of Ments in Lotharingia, and Building in requeft.

any euill example.

. ar scar am ten daies journey

from the

Court of

Mangu Chan,

toward the

Certaine Woman of Mentz in Lotharingia, called Pascha, found vs, who made vs great A cheere, according to her power, who belong to the Court of that Lady, which was a Chriflian, of whom I spoke before: who told vs of her strange pouertie which she indured before chier the Gold- them is an excellent Art. Moreover, she told vs, that at Caracarum, there was a certaine Goldfmith, a Parif- fmith, called William, borne at Paris; whose furname was Bouchier, and his Fathers name Lam-They also rec- And he wrote me answere, that he could not that Moone, but the next, his worke should bee

she came to the Court; but now she was well to live, for she had a young Husband, a Ruterian, (by whom she had three very faire Children) who was skilfull in building, which amongst rence Bouchier, and the thinketh he hath a Brother yet vpon the Great Bridge, called Roger Bon- 50 chier. And the told me, that he had a certaine young man which he brought vp, whom hee accounted as his Son, who was an excellent Interpreter. But Mangu Chan deliuered to the forefaid Gold-smith, three hundred Iascots, that is, three thousand Markes, and fiftie Worke-men to make a piece of worke, so that she feared he could not fend his Sonne vnto me. For she heard some say vnto her in the Court, The men which came from your Countrey are good men, and Mangu Chan would willingly fpeak vnto them, but their Interpreter is nothing worth : therefore the was carefull for an Interpreter. Then I writ vnto the foresaid Gold-smith, certifying him of my comming hither, and requesting him, that if he could, he would fend me his sonne. konby Moones perfected, and then he would fend him vnto me. We stayed therefore with other Messengers. 62 And it is otherwise with Messengers in Baatu's Court, then in the Court of Mangu Chan. For in the Court of Baats, there is one Iani on the East fide, who receive thall such as come from the West, and so of other Countries of the world : But in the Court of Mangu, they are all together under one Iani, and they may fee and visit one another. In Baain's Court they know not

one another, and know not one of another, whether hee be a Messenger or no; because they know not one anothers lodging, nor fee one another but in the Court : and when one is called, Cracis aftrong perchance another is not called. For they goe not to the Court, valeffe they bee fent for. Wee fortreffe of the perchance another is not called, For they goe hat of the came in behalfe of the Soldan of Mons Templasian found there accitaine Christian of Damajon, who faid he came in behalfe of the Soldan of Mons the help Land. Regatis, and of Crac; who defired to become friend and tributarie to the Tartars.

HE yeare also before I came thither, there was a certaine Clerke of Acon, who called him- Chap. 22. telfe Ramund, but in truth his name was Theodolus; and he tooke his journey from Cyprus Of Theirdolus with Frier Andrew, and went with him into Perfia, and got him certaine Instruments of Amo. the Cleike of Ic ricus there in Perfia, who abode there after Frier Andrew. Frier Andrew returning, hee went des, how hee rows there in terms, who added there are the fauture. The fauture with being demanded wherefore is feward with his Inframenta, and came to Mangu Char ; who being demanded wherefore is feward with his Inframenta, and came to Mangu Char ; who being demanded wherefore is feward for the came, faid, That he was with a certaine holy Bishop, to whom the Lord feur Letters from hea and was imprison. pen, written in golden Characters, and commande him to fend them to the Emperour of the ned of V. Action Tarters, because he should bee Lord of the whole Earth, and that he should peri wade men to us. make peace with him. Then Mangu faid voto him; If thou hadd brought those Letters which Frier And con came from heaven, and the Letters of thy Lord, then hadily beene welcome. Then he answecame from neatien, and the Letters or tray Lord, then have been welcome. Then he aniwe prob by Perssa. red That he brough: Letters, but they were with other things of his, vpon a certaine wilde and Blashemous pampered Gelding, which escaping fled from him through the Woods and Mountaines, io flattery, that he had loft all. And it is very true, that many fuch chances often happen : wherefore a man

20 mult very warily hold his Horfe when he alighteth for necessitie. Then Mangu demanded the name of the Bishop. He said, he was called Odo. Whereupon he told him of Damascus, and Maiter William, who was Clerke of the Lord Legar. Then Chan demanded in whole Kingdome it was! To whom he made answer, That it was under a certaine King of the Frankes, called Moles : ( for he had heard of that which happened at Mallora; and he would have faid, that they were of your Servants) moreover, hee told Chan that the Saracens were betweene the Frankes and him, who hindred his way. But if the way had beene open, he would have fent Mellengers, and willingly have made peace with him. Then Mangu Chan asked him, If hee would bring his Meffengers to that King, and that Beftop ? He told him he would, and also to the Pope. Then Mangu caused an exceeding strong Bow to bee made, which two men could 3c scarle bend, and two Arrowes, whose heads were of Silver, full of holes, which sing when they are shot like a whittle. And he mioyned Moal whom hee should fend with the faid Theodolus; Thou shalt goe to that King of the Frankes, to whom this man shall bring thee, and thou shalt present him with these in my behalfe, And if he will have peace with vs, we will win ie the Countrey woon the Saracens, even home to him, and will grant him the rest of the Countrey vnto the West : If otherwise, bring backeth: Bow and Arrowes vnto vs, and tell him we shoot farre, and imite ftrongly with fuch Bowes. Then he caused Theodolus to goe forth, whose In-

this man, marke well the Waies, the Countries, and their Cafiles, Men and Munition. Then the young man blamed Theodolise, faving, He had done ill, in conducting the Meffengers of the Tarturs with him, for they went for no other cause, but to fpy. Then hee answered, That he would fet them on the Sea, that they thould not know whence they came, or which way to returne. Mangu gaue also vnto Moal his golden Ball, or Tablet, to wit, a plate of Gold of an hand. The Golden breadth, and halfe a cubit long, wherein his commandement is ingraien: Who to carrieth that; Tablet of the may command what he will, and it is done without delay. So then Theodolus came to Vastacius, the Tortors. determining to pafe over to the Pope, that he might deceme the Pope, as he had deceived Mangu Villacia King Chan. Then Valtacius demanded of him, whether he had Letters to the Pope, because he was a or Ponius. Meffenger, and should conduct the Meffengers of the Tartars? But, not being able to shew the Letters, he tooke him and spoiled him of all that her ha gotten, and cast him in prison. And Moal fell licke and dyed there. But Vastucius fent backe the golden Tablet to Maneu Chan, by Or, Erferant.

terpreter Master Williams Sonne was, and in his hearing, he tail vnto Meal. Thou shalt go with

50 the feruants of Moal : whom I met at Affaron in the entrance into Turkie, who told mee what happened to Theodolus. Such Colners runne through the world, whom the Moallians kill when Sergius an Arthey can take them. Now the Epiphany was at hand, and that Armenian Monke, Sergins by menian Monke, name, told me, That he should baptize Mangu Can vpon the Holy-day. I intreated him to labour by all meanes that I might be prefen; that I might beare withele that I faw it : and hee promifed he would.

THE feastifuall day came, and the Monke called me not, but at fixe of the clocke I was fent Or Marge I for to the Court, and I faw the Monke with the Priests returning from the Court with his Chens holyday, Croffe, and the Priests with the Censer and the Gospell. For that day Mangu Chan made a principall wife 60 feast. And his cuttome is, that vpon such daies as his Sooth-sayers doe appoint vnto him fea- and his client fliuali, or with the Nestorian Priests sometimes make Holy-daies, that then he holds his Court: some came to And upon such dates the Christians come first with their furniture, and pray for him and bleffe the Diane cohis Cup. They then departing, the Saracen Priefts come and doe the like. Next after them, remones of the Nelwiger. come the Idolatrous Priors and doe the fame. And the Monke told me, that he onely believes and or their

the fithy bewings

the Christians, yet will have all to pray for him; but he lyed, for he beleeueth none, as you shall hereafter heare, yet all follow his Court, as flyes doe Honey. And he giveth vnto all, and all men thinke they are his Familiars; and all prophetie prosperitie vnto him. Then wee sate before the Court a long space, and they brought vs Hesh to eate. To whom I made answere, that we would not eate there, but if they would prouide vs meate, they should prouide it for vs at our house. Then they faid, get yee home to your house; because you were inuited for no other cause but to eate. Therefore we returned by the Monkes, who blushed at the Lye bee told me, wherefore I would not speake a word of that matter. Yet some of the Nefterious would affirme vnto mee. that he was baptized : to whom I faid, that I would never believe it, nor report it to others, fee-

We came to our cold and emptie house, they prouided vs bedding and Couerlets, they brought vs also fuell, and gaue vs three the carkasse of one little leane Ramme, meate for sixe dayes; and euery day a little Platter full of Millet , and lent vs a Caldron and a Triuet to boyle our flesh : which being fodden, we fod our Millet in the broath of the flesh. This was our meate, and it had well sufficed vs, if they had suffered vs to eate in peace. But there are so many hunger-starued, who are not prouided of meate : that, as foone as they faw vs dreffe meate, they thrust in voon vs, and must eate with vs. There I found by experience, how great a Martyrdome liberalitie is in pouertie. Then the cold began much to prevaile; and Mangu Chan fent vs three Pek-coates of the Skinnes of Papions (Papionum) whole haire they turne outward; which we thankfully receiued. They demanded alio, how we were prouided of necessary food ? To whom I answered. 20 that little meate sufficed vs, but we have not an house wherein to pray for Manga Chan. For our Cottage was so little, that we could scarce stand vpright in it, nor open our Bookes, as soone as wee made fire. Then they brought him word: and hee fent vnto the Monke to know, if hee would have our company : who gladly answered, that hee would. From that time wee were prouided of a better house : and we went downe with the Monke before the Court, where none lodged but we, and their Sooth-fayers : but they lodged neever, before the Palace of the greatest Lady : and wee in the furthest end towards the East, before the Palace of the last Lady. And The 13. of Ian. that was done the day before Ottabis Epiphania. On the morrow (to wit) in Ottanis Epiphania, all the Neilorian Priests came together before day at the Chappell, and smote voon a board, and lang Matines folemnely, and put on their Ornaments, preparing the Censer and the 30 Incense.

preuzyleth.

Cotota Caten Wife of Mangu

CALL CHANGE OF THE PARTY OF

And while they flayed wayting thus, behold, in the morning, the principall Wife Cotota Caten by name, (Caten is as much as Ladie, and Cotota her proper name) came into the Chappell with many other Ladies, and with her eldeft Sonne, called Baltn, and other little ones of hers: And they cast themselves downe upon the Earth, ducking after the manner of the Nesterians. of Mangu Chas. and after this, they touched all the Images with their right hands, alwayes kiffing their hands after they had touched, and after that, they gave their right hands to all that flood about them in the Church. For this is the custome of the Nestorians when they come into the Church. Then the Priests sang many things, giving the Lady Incense in her hand, and she put it vpon the fire: then they perfumed her. After this, when the day was cleere, shee began to put off the Orna- 40 ment of her head, which is called Baccha : and I faw her bare iculi, then fhee commanded vs to goe forth, and as I went out, I faw a filuer Baion brought : whether they baptized her or no. I know not : but I know, they celebrate not Maffe in a Tent, but in a standing Church. And in the Easter I saw them baptize, and hallow Fount with great Solemnitie, which now they

And while we went into our house, Mangu Chan himselfe came, and went into the Church. or Oratory, and a Golden Bed was brought, on which hee fate by his Queene, ouer against the Altar, Then were we fent for, not knowing that Mangu was come, And the Doore-keepers fearched vs, left we should have Knines about vs. But comming into the Oratory, having a Bible, and a Breuiary in my bosome, I first bowed downe vnto the Altar, and after to Mangu Chan: 50 and fo passing by, we stood betweene the Monke and the Altar. Then they made vs sing a Psalme after our manner, and chaunt it. But we fang of that profe, Veni Santte Spiritus, Gre. And Cham caufed our Bookes to be brought vnto him, the Bible, and the Breuiarie : and diligently inquired concerning the Images, what they fignified. The Nestorians answered him at their pleasure, becaule our Interpreter came not in with vs. And when I was first before him, I had the Bible in my bosome, which he commanded to be brought vnto him, who looked earnestly vpon it. Then he departed, and his Ladie remayned there, and distributed gifts to all the Christians there, shee gaue the Monke a lafeet, and to the Archdeacon of the Priests another : she caused a Nasje to be spread before vs (to wit) a piece of Cloth, as broad as a Couerlet of a Bed, very large, and a \*Buckeram, which when I would not receive, they fent them to my Interpreter, who had them 60 to himselfe. He brought the Nassu to Cyprus, which he sold for eightie Sultanines of Cyprus; but it was much the worle for the carriage. Then drinke was brought (to wit) drinke made of Rice and red Wine, like Wine of Rochell, and Cosmos. " Then the Ladie holding the cup full in her hand, defired bleifing upon her knees, and all the Priefts fing with a loud voyce, and fhee drunke

Mares Milke,

CHAP.I. Nestorians drinking, fast, friday. Tartar-duining. Threshold.

it vp: and I and my companion must fing. Another time, when all of them were almost drunke, then meate was brought (to wit) the carkaffe of one Ramme which was prefently denoured: and after that, great files, which are called Carpes, without Salt; or Bread : whereof I eate a little, so they passed the day, vntill the Euening. And when the Lady her selfe was drunke, she tooke her Chariot (the Priefts finging) and went her way. The next Sunday, when (There was lanuary 20, a Mariage in Cana of Galily) is read for the Goipell; Chans Some came (whole Mother was a Christian) and did the like, but not with so great Solemnitie. For he gaue no gifts, but made the Priests drinke, till they were drinke, and gaue them parched Millet to eate.

Before the hill Sunday in Lent, the Nestorians fast three dayes, which they call the Fast of Io- Of the Fast of 10 nas, which he preached to the Niniuites. And the Armenians fail fine dayes , which they call the the Neserian,

Fast of Saint Sorkis, which is the greatest Saint amongst them.

and of their The Nesterians beginne their Fast upon Tuesday, and end it upon Thursday; so that upon Processions Friday they eate flesh. And all that time I faw the Chancelor (to wit, the great Secretarie of vito the Court State called Bulgas) make them a pittance of flesh voon the Friday; and they blessed the flesh of Mangu chan with great Solemnitie, as the Pakhall Lambe is bleffed : but he eate none with them, and this his elden Son, 1 learned of Willielmus Taristensis, who was his very familiar friend. The Monke lent to Man- Saint Saits. guto fait that weeke, which (as I heard) hee did : fo that on the Sabbath of Septuagefima (at Leut, which time it is as it were Eafter to the Armenians ) wee went on Procession to the house of Manga Chins Mangu: and the Monke, and we two (being first searched whether wee had Knines) went in Courtvisted with the Priefts, before him. And while we went in, one of the Senants went forth, carrying out the shoulder bones of Rammes, burne to the blacknesse of Coales. Whereupon 1 manuelled ons. greatly, what it should meane, whereof after I had inquired, I vnderstood, that hee neuer doth any thing, before he have confulted with thole bones. Whereupon hee doth not fo much as fuf-

fer a man to enter his house, but first consulteth with that bone, which kind of Dimination, is When he purposeth to doe any thing, he causeth three of those bones to be brought vnto him Howthey di-

vnburnt; and holding them he thinketh of the thing, whereof he will confult, whether he may une by the vincernt; and noting them he trained to the traing, whereas he will confide the may does too not; and then deliverest the bones to bee burnt, and there are alwayes two little of Rammes Roomes, hard by the houle where he lyes, where those bones are burnt; which are diligently butntblacke. 30 fought for every day thorow all the Leskar or Tent-dwelling. When they are burnt blacke, they In M. Issimbring them vnto him, then hee lookes vpon them, whether the bones (by the heate of the fire) four Voyage a be cleft right length-wayes : then the way is open, that he may do it. But if the bones be crac- mong the Tarbe cleft right length-wayes; then the way is open, that he may do to be all the lowest cleft in reade of fuch ked athwart, or round pieces flye out of them, then he doth it not a for the bone is alwayes cleft in reade of fuch the fire, or the thinne skin which over-spreadeth it. And if one of the three be cleft forth right, a Dimination. yet he doth it. When therefore wee went in before him (aduised before, that wee should not touch the threshold) the Nestorian Priests brought him Incenses, and he put it vpon the Censor, Threshold-Sur and they cenfed him. Then they fung, blefing his cup, and after them the Monke pronounced perflicion. his bleffing, and we must bleffe last. And when he saw vs holding the Bible before our breft, he Theydoc the caused it to be brought vnto him, that he might fee it, which hee diligently looked vpon. Then like in Florida. 40 after he had drunke, and the chiefe Priest had wayted on his Cup, they gaue the Priests drinke: After that, we went forth, and my companion stayed last. And when wee were without, my

companion (when hee should have gone out after vs) turned his face to Chan, bowing himselfe vnto him : and then, haitily following vs, he stumbled at the threshold of the house. And when we went in hafte toward the house of Baltu his eldest Sonne, they that observed the threshold, layd hands on my companion, and made him stay, that hee should not follow vs,

calling one, and commanding him to carrie him to Bulgai, who is the great Secretary of the Court, and judgeth those that are arraigned of life and death. But I knew it not, yet when I looked backe, and faw him not comming, I thought they detayned him, to give him some lighter garments: For he was weake, and so laden with Pelt-garments that he could scarce goe. Then 50 they called our Interpreter, and made him fit with him : but wee went to Chans eldeft Sonnes Baltus Court house, who had two Wives, and was lodged at the right fide of his Fathers Court: who as who was eldest foone as he law vs comming, leaping from his bed whereon he fate, calt himselfe vpon the earth, chan. fmiting his fore-head against the ground, worshipping the Crosse, and arising, caused it to be set vpon a new cloth, in an high place by him, very honourably. He hath a Schoolemafter, a Nestorian Priest called Danid, a very Drunkard, who teacheth him. Then he made vs sit, and give the Priests drinke, and hee also dranke, receiving the blething from them. Then wee went voto the Court of the second Lady, which was called Cota, who followed Idolaters : whom wee found lying ficke a bed. Then the Monke made her rife out of her bed , and worthip the Croffe, bowing her knees thrice, and ducking toward the ground : he standing with the Crosse at the West-60 fide of the house, and she on the East: this being done, they changed places, and the Monke went with the Crosse vnto the East, and shee vnto the West. And hee boldly commanded her

(although the were to weake, that the could scarce stand upon her feet) that shee should cast hertelfe downe thrice againe, and worship the Crosse, toward the East after the manner of the Christians : which she did, and he taught her to make the figne of the Crosse vpon her forehead.

After the lay downe upon her bed, and praying for her, we went unto the third house, where a Christian Lady vied to be : who being dead, a young woman succeeded her, who together with the Daughter of her Lord, joyfully received vs : and all that whole house reverently worshipped the Croile. And the fet it \*pon a Velnet cloth in an hig.: place, and thee cauted meate to bee brought (to wit) the carkaffe of one Ramme, which being fet before the Ladie, flee cauled it to be distributed to the Priests, But I and the Monke were very warie of the meate and drinke, for the meate being eaten, and much drinke drunke, wee were to goe to the Damofell Cerina, who lodged behind that great house, which was her Mothers : who at the comming in of the Croffe, cast her felte upon the Earth, and worshipped it very deuoutly, because shee had beene well taught to to doe, and fines let it in a high place, vpon a piece of filke. And all those clothes 10 whereon the Croffe was fet, were the Monkes.

faftned to the Croffe. Manga built a Church, The Court of the fourth Lidy.

... A certaine Armenian brought this Croffe who came with the Monk (as he faid) from Hiernfalon; and it was of filter, weighing about some foure markes; and it had soure Precious Stones in the corners, and one in the middle. It had not the Image of our Sauiour (because the Armeni-The Gourt of ans and the Nestorians are assamed, that Christ should appeare nayled to the Crosse) and hee had the third Lady, presented it (by the Monke) to Mangu Chan, And Mangu demanded of him what hee defired? The Armenians to whom he answered, That he was the Sonne of an Armenian Prieft, whose Church the Saracens had destroyed, and craued his helpe for the building agains of that Church. Then hee afked him, for how much it might be built againe : he answered, for two hundred lascots (that is) for two thousand markes : and he commanded Letters to be given him, to him who received the 20 Tribute in Perfia, and Armenia the greater, that they should pay him the faid summe of filter. This Croile the Monke carried with him enery where. And the Priefts feeing the gaine thereof. began to enuie him. Wee were therefore in the house of the faid Damosell, and shee gave the Priests much drinke. From hence wee went vnto the fourth house, which was the last in number and honour. For he vied not to come often to that Ladie, and her house was very old, and her felfe nothing gracious. But after Easter Char made her a new house, and new Chariots. She likewise as the second knew little or nothing of Christianitie, but followed Soothsayers, and Idolaters. Yet at our comming in , thee worthipped the Croffe , as the Monke and the Priefts taught her. There also the Priests dranke againe. And from that place wee returned to our Oratorie, which was necre thereabouts: the Priests accompanying vs with great howling 30 and out-cryes in their drunkennesse, which there is reprehensible neither in man nor woman. Then my fellow was brought home, and the Monke sharply rebuked him because he touched not reproneat the threshold. On the morrow Bulgai came (who was a Justice) and diligently inquired, when ble among the ther any had warned vs to take heed of touching the threshold. And I answered, Sir, wee had not our Interpreter with vs : how could we understand? Then hee pardoned him. But would neuer after fuffer him to come into any of the houses of Mangu Chan.

w:scured of Sergus the counterfeit Monke. Li ence is granted him to carrie the Croffe aloft.

AND THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY O

Rubarbe and Superftmon. Holy water notknowns in the Eaft.

T happened afterwards, that the fame Ladie Cota, which was ficke about Septuagefima, was How Lady Cota I ficke almost vinto death : and distination by Lots of the Idolaters could profit her nothing, Then Mangu fent vnto the Monke, demanding of him, what might bee done for her. And the 40 Monke indifferently answered, that it shee were not cured, hee should cut off his head, having made that ani were, the Monke called vs, declaring the matter vinto vs with teares, intreating to watch with him that night in Prayer: which we did. And he had a certayne Roote which is called Rubarbe; and hie cut it almost to powder, and put it in water, with a little Crucifixe which he had, wherein the Image of our Saujour was advanced : whereof he reported, that by it he knew, when the ficke should recour or dye. For it they should escape, it stucke to the brest of the ficke, as if it were sheed, it otherwise it stucke not at all. And I still thought that Rubarbe had beene some holy Relike, which he had brought from the Holy Land of Hierusalem. And he gaue all ficke persons of that water o drinke : to that it could not bee, but their bowels with credulous should be griped with so bitter a Potion: which alteration in their bodies they accounted a Miraile. Then I told him (when he was about to make fuch a water) that hee should prepare some of that Holy water, which is made in the Church of Rome, which hath great vertue to expell Deuils : because I vuderstood thee was vexed of a Deuill. And at his intreatie, wee made him some Holy water, and he mingled Rubarbe, and put his Crucifixe all the whole night in the water to temper it. I said moreouer, that if hee were a Priest, that the Order of Priest-hood hath great power to expell Deuils. And he faid it was very true, and yet hee lyed, because hee had no order, nor knew any one Letter : but was a Weauer, as I vnderstood after, in his Countrey, when I returned. On the morrow therefore I, and the Monke, and two Nefforian Pricils went vnto the forelaid Ladie. And thee was in a little house, behind her greater house. When wee came in, thee face in her bed, and worthipped the Croffe, and fet it honourably by her young 60 cloth of Silke, and drunke of the blefled water with Rubaibe, and washed her breft. And the Monke requested me to reade a Gospell over her, so I read the P. shon of our Lord according vnto Ioba. At length the was cheered, and felt her felfe better : and thee caused foure lascots to bee brought, which the firli layd at the feet of the Croffe, and after gaue me to the Monke, and reached me one, which I would not receive. Then the Monke Aretching forth his hand, tooke it, and gaue either of the Prietts one : fo that, at that time fhee gaue fortie Markes. Then fhee cauted Wine to be brought, and gaue it the Priests to drinke; and I must drinke thrice from her hand, in honour of the Trinitie. Shee began also to teach mee the Language, jesting with mee, because I was dumbe, not having any Interpreter. On the morrow we returned to her againe. And Mangu Chan hearing that we came that way,

made vs come in vnto him, because hee vnderstood that the Lady was somewhat better, and we found him with a few feruants, fupping liquid Tam, to wit, meat made of paste, for comforting the head : and the burnt shoulder-blades of a Ram lay before him : and he tooke the Crosse Io in his hand, but that hee kiffed or worshipped it, I saw not : but looked vpon it, and asked some questions, Iknow not what. Then the Monke craued leave to carry the Crosse alost vpona Lance: because I had spoken to the Monke before concerning this. And Mangu answered, Carry it as you thinke best to doe it. Then doing our duty to him, wee went to the foresaid Ladie, and we found her luftie and cheerfull; and the full drunke of the bleffed Water, and wee read the Paffion ouer her. And those milerable Priests neuer taught her the Faith, nor aduised her to bee baptifed. But I fate there mute, not able to speake any thing, but shee still taught me the Language and the Priests neuer find fault with any kind of Sorcerie. For there I faw foure swords Sorcerie of halfe drawne out of the sheath, one at the head of the Ladies bed, another at the feet, and two foure words. other, on either fide of the doore one. I faw also there one filuer Chalice, of our Chalices, which

20 peraduenture was taken or stolne out of some Church of Hangary; and it hung against the walls full of ashes, and upon those ashes there was a blacke stone. And concerning such things, the Priests neuer teach them that they are euill : Nay , they themselves doe, and teach such things. We visited her three daies, so that shee was restored to perfect health. After that, the Monke made a Banner full of Croffes, and got a Cane as long as a Lance, and we carried the Croffe aloft. I honored him as my Bishop, because hee could speake the Language; yet hee did many things The Crosse which pleafed me not : for he caufed a Chaire which may be folded to bee made for him, fuch as carried aloft. Bishops vie to haue, and Gloues, and a Cap of Peacocks feathers, and vpon it a little Crosse of gold : I was well pleased with the Croffe. Hee had scabbed feete, which hee laboured to grace with ointments, and was very prefumptuous in speech. The Neftorians also repeated certaine 30 Verses of the Platter (as they said) vpon two rods , which were soyned together , being held of

two men. The Monke was present at such things. And many other vanities appeared in him, which displeased me. Yet wee ioyned our selues to his societie for the honor of the Crosse. For we carried the Croffe advanced through all the Tents finging : Vexilla Regis prodeunt, &c. Wherevpon the Saracens were much dismaied.

Since we came to the Court of Mangu Chan, he rode but twice towards the South : and from Chan, 36.

Sthat time he beganne to returne towards the North, which was toward Caracarum. Where- A description vpon Inotedall the way, a thing of which Matter Baldwin of Hannonia had spoken to mee at of the Coun-Constantinople (who was there) that he had seene this onely wonderfull, that he alwaies ascen- ties about the 4 o ded in going, and neuer descended. For all Rivers came from the East into the West, either dis Courtef Manded in going, and neuer descended. For all Rulers came from the East fine die wett, ettlief die ge Chan, and of reelly or indirectly (that is to fay) bending towards the South or North. And I enquired of the their manner

Priests which came from Cataga, who testified this same. From that place where I found Mangu of writing, and Chan, unto Cataya, were twentie daies iourney, going towards the South and East. To Onan Kerule, their money. which is the proper Country of Moall, where the Court of Chingis is, were ten daies iourney right East. Chap 3. And in those parts of the East there was no Citie : yet there were people which are called Su-Moall, that Al Rivers benis to fay, Moall of the Waters : for Su is as much to fay as Water. These people line upon Fish, and hunding towards ting, having neither Flocks nor Heards. Towards the North likewife, there is no (tite, but a poore people the South and feeding Cattell, who are called Kerkis. The Orangei are also there, who binde smoothe filed bones un- North sunce der their feete, and thrust themselves forward upon the congeated Snow and Ice, with Such Swifinesse, west. so that they take Birds and Beafts. And many other poore people there are on the North side, so farre as

they may spread themselnes for the cold. And they in me on the West, with the Countrey of Palatit, Chap. 150 which is Hungaria the Greater, whereof I have Spoken before. The bound or limit of the North corner Su-Moal, the is not knowne, for the extremitie of the cold: for in that place there are continual fires or heapes of Water Tattars is not knowne, for the extremitie of the cold: for in that place there are continual pires or mapes of to the Eaft, is.

Snow. I was inquilitize of the Moniters or monitrous men, whereof Islanus and Solinus make using voon tile. report. They told me they neuer faw any fuch, whereof we much wonder, whether it bee true Kerke. or no. All the Nations aforesaid (although but poore) yet they must ferue in some trade : for it Orangai. was the commandement of Chingis, that none should bee free from service, till hee were so old, Pascair on the that he could labour no longer, by any meanes. Vpon a time a certaine Priest of Cataga fate with West. mee, clothed with a red coloured cloth; and I demanded of him whence hee had fuch a colour. Chap.19.

60 And he told me, that in the East parts of Cataya there were high craggie Rock, wherein certaine Muteruma Creatures dwell, having mall parts the shape of men, but that they bow not the knees, but commanded walke (I know not how) leaping: which are not about one cubit long, and their whole body is the like in No. walke (I know not how) leaping: which are not about one cutil tong, and their whole body is a Biffania.

couered with haire; who have their abode in Caues which no man can come vnto. And they A description of Apes, or elfe an embleme or Apifts fable, and perhaps by the Shinois intented, to fell their wares the dearer.

that hunt them goe voto them, and carry firong drinke with them, as ftrong as they can make. and make pits in the Rocks like Cups, filling them with that firong drinke. For Cataia as yet hathno Wine (but now they beginne to plant Vineyards) for they make drinke of Rice. The Hunters therefore hide themielues, then the forefaid Creatures come out of their holes, and tafte the faid drinke, and crie Chin-chin. Then they come together in great multitudes and drinke the faid drinke, and are made drunke, fo that they fleepe there. Then the Hunterscome, and bind them hand and feete while they are fleeping; and after, they open the Veine in their necke, and draw forth three or foure drops of bloud from every one, and let them goe free. And Most precious that bloud (as he told me) is most precious to die purple.

Purple. Cataia vpon the Occan. Taute and Man & who dwell whole Sea freezeth in the Winter. Cataia paper writing in Cataia like that of writing in Tangut and Inthe Rutenians.

multitude of

those that

He told it also for truth (which neverthelesse I doe not beleeve) that there is a Province beyond to Cataia, into the which, at whatfoeuer age a man enters, he continueth in the fame age wherein he entred, Cataia is voon the Ocean. And Mafter Willelmin Parifienfis told me, that the fame Meffengers of certaine people which are called Tante and Manfe, who inhabit Ilands, whose Sea is frozen in the winter, to that the Tartare may inuade them; who offered two thousand Tumen or lascots yeerely, so they would let them live in peace. Tumen is a piece of money contayning ten Markes. The common money of Cataia is Paper made of Bombaste, the breadth and length of an hand, upon the which they imprint lines, like the Seale of Mangu. They write with a Penfill wherewith Painters paint; and in one figure they make many letters comprehen-The manner of ding one word. The people of Thebet write as wee doe, and they have Characters very like ours. They of Tangut write from the right hand vnto the left, as the Arabians, and multiply the lines ascending vpward. Ingur, as aforesaid, from about downeward. The common mony of 20 The people of the Rutenians are little ipotted and grifel'd skins. When we came with the Monke, hee charitably admonished vs to abstaine from fiesh, and that our feruants should eate fiesh with his fer-Their manner mants; but he would promife vs Meale, and Oyle or Butter. Which wee did, though it much grieued my Companion, by reason of his weakenesse: wherefore our foode was Millet and Butter, or Palte fodden in water with Butter, or fowre Milke, and vnleauened bread baked in Oxe-The money of dung, or Horse-dung.

Chap. 37.

Of the second

Of the second greatest Ladie Cotota with all her company, fasted that weeke, who came every day to our 30 full of the peo-Oratorie, and gaue meate vnto the Priests, and other Christians, whereof a great multitude flocked thither the first weeke, to heare their dutie. And she gaue to me and my Companion, to in Lent. The each a Coate and Breeches of gray Samit (Samito) furred with course haire (Stuppa setz) beproued for the cause my companion complained much of the weight of his Skinnes, which I received for my fellowes comfort, excusing my felfe neuerthelesse, that I would not weare such clothes. I gaue to my Interpreter what belonged to me. Then the Porters of the Court feeing that fo great a multitude came daily to the Church, which was within the bounds of the keepers of the Court. they fent one of their fellowes vnto the Monke, declaring vnto him , that they would not have fo great a multitude come together within the precincts of the Court. then the Monke roughly answered, that he would know whether they commanded this from Mangu Chan? hee added 40 moreouer certaine threatning speeches, as if he would accuse them to Mangu Chan. Then they preventing him, accused him before Mangu; That he was too full of words, and that he gathered together too great a multitude to heare him speake. Afterward, the first Sunday in Lent, being called to the Court (and the Monke being shamefully demanded whether hee had a Knife. infomuch that he put off his shooes) wee came in before Chan himselfe, who having the burnt shoulder-blade of a Ramme in his hand, looked upon it, and (as it were) reading in it, began to reproue the Monke, demanding, that feeing he was a man that should pray vnto God, why hee Spoke so much with men s but I stood behind with my head bare : and Chan saying vinto him, Why dost thou not put off thy Cap, when thou commest before me, as that Francke doth and commanded me to be called neerer. Then the Monke being much abashed, put off his Cap, con- 52 trary to the custome of the Greekes and Armenians. And when Chan himfelfe had spoken many things sharply vnto him, wee went out. Then the Monke deliuered me the Crosse to beare to the Oratorie, because he could not carry it for shame.

After a few daies he was reconciled vnto him, promifing that he would goe to the Pope, and that he would bring all the Nations of the West to his obedience. Whereupon, he returning to the Oratorie after that conference had with Chan, began to enquire of mee touching the Pope, if I beleeved he would see him if he came vnto him in the behalfe of Mangu, and it hee would furnish him with Horses vnto Saint lames? He demanded also of you, if I thought you would fend your sonne vnto Mangu? Then I countailed him, that he should take heede that hee did not promife lyes to Mangu, because the last errour should bee worse then the first; and that God 60 needeth not our lyes, that we should speake deceitfully for him.

At that time there arose a certaine question betweene the Monke and a Priest called Ionas , a Learned man, whole father was an Archdeacon, and the other Priests accounted him for a Mafter and an Archdeacon. For the Monke faid, That man was created before Paradife, and that

# CHAP. I. Manichæan blassbemie, Hypocriticall feast-fast, Artisticall silver Tree. 35

the Scripture faid fo. Then was I called to bee an arbitrator of that question. But I being 19100rent that they contended about this, answered, that Paradise was made upon Tuesday, when the other Trees were made, and that Man was made the fixt day. Then the Monke began to lay, Monkes, Ma-Did not the Deuill bring earth the first day from the foure parts of the world; and making clay sichasablif. Did not the Deuni Dring cartii the interest of God infpired his fould! Then hearing this Harefie of phemie of the the Monke, and that he so publikely and shamelessy recited it, I reproued him sharply, faying, he should put his finger upon his mouth, because he knew not the Scriptures, and that he should take heed, that he faid it not, whereby he might be faulty: And he began to mocke me, because I was ignorant of the Language. I departed therefore from him, going to our house. It fell out te effectively, that he and the Pricks went on Procession to the Court, without calling mee; because the Monke spake not to me for the foresaid reproofe, nor would be carrie me with him, as he was wont. When therefore they came before Mangu, (I being not feene among them) hee earnestly demanded where I was, and why I came not with them ? The Priests fearing, excufed themselves. But returning, they told me the words of Mangu, and murmured at the Monke. After this, the Monke was reconciled to me, and I to him, intreating him, that he would helpe me with his Language, and I would helpe him in the holy Scripture. For a brother that is bolper of a brother, is as a strong Cuie. After the first weeke of fasting, the Ladie ceased to come vnto the Oratorie, and to give meat, and drinke, which were were wont to have, for the Monke fuffered it not to be brought, flying, that Mutton fat or Suet was put in the confection thereof: 20 and thee gaue no Oyle, but very feldome: to that we had nothing but browne Bread, and paft boyling in water, that we might suppe broath; because we had no water, but of dissolved Snow, Snow water, or of Ice, which was exceeding nought. Then my Companion began to be much grieued: fo or water of Ice, I acquainted Danid (the Schoole-mafter of Chant eldeft fonne) with our necessities, who made exceeding 1 acquainted Dama (the School-mailt) and to give vs Wine, Flowre, and Oyle. Neither the naught, No his earch Neftorians, nor the Armenians, eate fish, by any meanes, in the Lent. Then they game vs a bottle in Lent. of Wine. The Monketaid he would not eate but on the Sunday: and then the Ladie her felte fent meat of boyled patte with vinegar to suppe. But he had a Chift by him under the Altar, Hypocritical with Almonds and Rahins, and dried Prunes, and many other fruits, which hee ate all theday, feath faft, whenfoeuer hee was alone. Wee are once a day, and that in great affliction: for as foone as they knew, that Mangu Chan had given vs Wine, most impudently they came in vpon vs like 30 Dogs, both the Nefforian Priefts, who were drunke all the day in the Court , and the Moallians allo, and the feruants of the Monke. The Monke alfo, when any came vnto him, to whom he would give drinke; he sent to vs for Wine. So that, the Wine caused our greater affliction

Bout mid-lent Master Williams sonne came, bringing with him a faire filuer Crosse, made Chap. 38. A after the French falhion, having the Image of Christ all of filter fastened vpon it at the & Description top: which the Monkes and Prietts feeing, put it away: this Croffe hee was to precent in the of the worke behalfe of his Mafter to Bulgat, who was the chiefe Secretarie of the Contr; which when I of William Bulgari, who was offended. The fame yours man alfordedered to Manua Chan sharehouse the same of t heard, I was offended. The same young man also declared to Mangu Chan, that the worke the Palace of which he commanded to be made, was finished, which worke I described vnto you. Mangu Mangu Chan at hath at Caracarum a great Court, hard by the walls of the Citie, enclosed with a bricke-wall: Caracarum, into as the Priories of Monkes are enclosed with vs. In that place, there is a great Palace, wherein which Cire he holdeth his drinkings twice a yeere: once in Easter, when hee passeth that way, and once in palm sunday. Summer, when he returneth. And this latter is the greater : because then all the Nobles (who dwell farre some two moneths journey off in any place) meet together at his Court. And then Two moneths hee gives vnto them gifts and garments, and shewes his great glorie. There are many other journey. houses there, as large as Granges, wherein his victuals, and treasures are stored. In the entrance 50 of that great Palace (because it was vulcemely to bring in bottles of Milke, and other drinkes) Master William Parifiensis made him a great filuer Tree, at the root whereot were foure filuet Tae Descrip-Lions, having one Pipe lending forth pire Cowes milke, and the foure Pipes were conseased tion of a most within the Tree, vn:o the top thereof : whose tops spread backe againe downward : and ypon artificiall sucr euery one of them was a golden Serpent, whose tayles twine about the bodie of the Tree. And one of those Pipes runs with Wine, another with Caracosmos, that is, clarified Whay; another with Ball, that is, drinke made of Honey, another with drinke made of Rice, called Teracina.

then comfort; because wee could not denie it without offence. If wee gane, wee wanted our

felues, nor durst we, that being spent, defire any more from the Court.

And enery drinke hath his vessell prepared of filuer, at the foot of the Tree , to receive it. Betweene those foure Pipes in the top, he made an Angell holding a Trumpet; and under the Tree, he made an hollow vault, wherein a man might be hid; and a Pipe afcendeth through the heart 60 of the Tree vnto the Angell. Hee first made Bellowes, but they gave not wind enough. Without the Palace there is a Chamber, wherein the drinkes are layd, and there are fernants readie there to powre it out, when they heare the Angell founding the Trumpet. And the boughes of the Tree are of filuer, and the leaves and Peares. When therefore they want drinke, the Ma-

fter Butler cryeth to the Angell, that he found the Trumpet. Then he hearing (who is hid in

the Vault) blowes the Pipe strongly, which goeth to the Angell. And the Angell fets his Trumpet to his mouth, and the Trumpet foundeth very shrill. Then the Seruants hearing, which are in the chamber, every of them powre forth their drink into their proper Pipe, and the Pipes powre it forth from aboue, and they are received below in Veffels prepared for that purpose : Then the Butlers draw them, and carry them through the Palace, to men and women.

The descrip is on of the Pa-

And the Palace is like a Church, having the middle Ile, and the two fides beyond the two rewes of Pillars, and three gates on the South. And within before the middle gate flands the tree. And Char himselfe sitteth in the North front, in an high place, that hee may bee seene of all. And there are two degrees of steps afcending vnto him, by the one, he that carryeth his cup commeth vp vnto him, and by the other he descendeth. That space which is in the middle, be- to tweene the tree and the steps whereby they ascend vnto him, is voyde. For there standeth hee that wayteth on his Gup, and the Messengers, which bring Presents. And hee sitteth there aboue like a God. On the right fide (to wit) toward the West are the mention the left women. For the Palace stretcheth it selfe out in length from North to South by the Pillars. On the right fide are places full of feates lifted up, like the Sellar of an house, whereon his Sonnes and Brethren in. On the left fide is the like, where his Wives and Daughters fit. One only woman fitteth there aboue by him, but not so high as hee. When therefore hee had heard, that the Worke was finished, hee commanded the chiefe Workeman to set it in his place, and make it fit. And about Passion Sunday, hee went before with small houses, leaving his greater houses be-

the Position he hind : And the Monke and we followed him; and he tent vs another Bottle of Wine. And hee 20 goeth towards passed betweene the hilly Countries, where there was great wind, and an extreame cold, and there fell a great Snow. Whereupon hee fent about mid-night to the Monke and vs. intreating vs to pray vnto God, that hee would mitigate that wind and cold, because all the beath which were in the trayne were in icopardie, especially because all that time they were with young and readie to bring forth. Then the Monke fent him Incense, requiring him to put it on the coales and offer it to God : which, whether he did, I know not. But the Temperal They enter Car ceased, which had now continued two dayes, and now the third day drew neere. On Palme Sunday we were neere Caracaram: In the dawning of the day we bleffed the Willow boughes. whereon as yet there appeared no bud, and about nine of the clocke we entred the Citie, carrying the Crossealost with the Banner, passing through the middle of the street of the Saracens, 30 where the Market and Faires are vnto the Church : and the Nestorians met vs on Procession. And entring into the Church, we found them prepared to celebrate the Maffe : which beeing celebrated, they all communicated, and they asked mee, whether I would communicate: I anfwered that I had drunke before, and the Sacrament should not be received but falting. Maffe being faid, it was now Euening. Mafter William brought vs with great ioy to his Inne to fup with him : who had a Wife, the Daughter of a Lotharingian, borne in Hungarie, who could speake the French and the Language of Comania. We found also there a certayne other man called Basiling, the Sonne of an Englishman, borne in Hangarie, who also was skilfull in the foresaid Languages. Supper being ended, they brought vs to our Cottage, which the Tartars had appointed vs, in a certayne plat of ground neere the Church, with the Oratory of the Monke, On the morrow Chan himselfe entred into his Palace. And the Monke and L, and the Priests went vnto him. They suffered not my companion to goe, because he stumbled at the threshold. I much deliberated with my selfe what I should doe, whether I should goe or no. And fearing offence, if I should depart from other Christians, and because it pleased him : and fearing lest that good might be hindred, which I hoped to obtaine, I chose rather to go, although I saw their actions ful of Sorcery and Idolatrie : nor did I any other thing there, but pray for the whole Church with a loud voyce, and also for Char himfelfe, that God would direct him to the way of eternall faluation. We therefore went into that Court which was sufficiently ordered. And in the Summer Rivers are conveyed into every place, whereby it is watered. After this we entred into the Palace, tull of men and women, and stood before Chan, having the foresaid Tree at our backs, which so with the Vessels thereof tooke vp a great part of the Palace. The Priests brought two little Loanes, and fruit in a Platter, which they prefented vnto him , bleffing them. And the Butler brought them wato him fitting aloft in a very high place, much raised. And hee presently began to eate one of the Loaues, and fent another to his Sonne, and to a certayne yonger Brother of his, who was brought vp by a certayne Nesterian, and knew the Gospell, who also sent for my Bible, that he might fee it. After the Priefts the Monke fard his Prayer, and I after the Monke. Then he promised, that the next day he would come vnto the Church, which is great enough, and faire, and all the feeling about was courred with filke wrought with Gold. The next day he went his way, willing the Priests to excuse him, that he durit not come to the Church, because he understood the dead were carried thither. But we, and the Monke remayned at Cara- 60 sarum, and other Priests of the Court, that they might celebrate Easter there.

Manga Chan

CHAP.I. Celebration. Receiving the Sacrament, Confession, Theft excused,

Maundie Thursday drew neere, and Easter, and I had not our Vestments, and I considered Chap. 39.

The manner how the Nesson made the Sacramentall Bread, and I was much troubled. The manner what I should doe; whether I should receive the Sacrament of them, or should celebrate it in their how the Nisson what I mount docymeters I mount rectain you have a state of the state Armeniams; all which had not feene the Sacrament innce they were taken: because the Nesto- Christians rians would not admit them to their Church, vnlesse they were baptized of them, as they said, consesse themyet they made no mention of this to vs. And they offered their Sacrament freely to vs, and made feines, and reyet they made no mencion of this to say that I might fee their manner of Confecration. And also on crament of the Vigill or Reuen before Easter, by the Font, that I might see their manner of baptizing. They Frier william fay, they have of that Oyntment, wherewith Mary Magdalene anoynted the feet of our in the dayes of

Lord, and they power in as much of that Oyle, with that which they lay alide, and kneade their the Lords Sup bread therewith. For all those people of the East put fat in their bread, in stead of Leuen or per, and Easter Butter, or Suet of a sheepes tayle, or Oyle. They fay also that they have of the flowre, whereof the bread was made, which the Lord con-

fecrated: and alwayes powre out so much Oyle with it, as the flowre they lay aside. And they haue a Chamber hard by their Quire, and an Ouen, where they bake the bread, which they must confecrate with great reuerence. They therefore make one Loafe of an hand breadth, with the forefaid Oyle, which they first breake into twelve pieces, according to the number of the Apo-20 files : and after divide those pieces, according to the multitude of the people : and the Priest gives the bodie of Christ to every one in his hand. And then every man taketh it out of the Palme of his hand with reuerence, and stretcheth his hand to the top of his head.

The forefaid Christians, and the Monke himselfe were very earnest, intreating vs for Gods TheChristians fake, that wee would celebrate. Then I made them bee confessed, by an Interpreter, as I desire the Sacould, reckoning up the tenne Commandements, and the feuen deadly Sinnes, and other Confession. things, for the which a man ought to bee grieued, and confessed. All of them publikely ex- These exclusion cused themselves concerning Theft, saying, that without Theft they could not line, because ded the ten their Masters prouided them neither food nor rayment. Then considering , that they had Commande. taken away the persons and their substance without just cause, I said voto them, that they ments per-30 might lawfully take necessaries, of the goods of their Masters, and I was readie to main- lowes were of

tayne it to the face of Mangu Chan.

Some of them also were Souldiers, who excused themselves, that they must needs goe rersminde, to the Warres, or else they should bee slaine; I firmely forbad them to goe against the Chris which thought flians, and that they should not burt them, they should rather suffer themselves to bee K-Henry had flaine, for so they should become Martyrs. And I said, that if any would accuse mee of Decalogue. this Doctrine before Mangu Chan, I would bee readie to preach the same in his hearing. For the Neftorians themselves of the Court were present, when I taught this; of whom I was fulpitions, least they should report ill of vs. Then Master William caused an Iron to bee made 40 for vs,, to make Hofts, and hee had certayne Veitments which hee had made for himselfe : for he had some knowledge in Learning, and behaued himselfe as a Clerke. Hee caused the Image of the bleffed Virgin Marie to bee graven after the French fashion, and ingraved the

vp the bodie of Christ therein, and the Relikes, in certayne little holes cunningly made in the fides of the Boxe.

Hee made alto a certayne Oratorie vpon a Chariot, very fairely painted with holy Histories. I therefore tooke his Vestments and blessed them , and wee made Hosts , after our manner, very faire; and the Nestorians affigned mee their Font for Baptisme, wherein The Partiarch there was an Altar. And their Patriarch fent them from Baldach, a square Hide like a portable Altar, made with Chrisme, which they vie in stead of confecrated Stone. There- ans remayneth 50 fore I celebrated on the Day of the Lords Supper, in their filter Chalice and Diff. which at Ealdach. were very great Veffels; I did the like also on Easter day. And wee communicated the people with the blefling of God, as I hope. But they baptized in the Vigill of Eafter more

then threefcore persons very orderly. There was great toy generally among all Christians.

Hiftory of the Gospell (in the Casements) very faire, and made a certayne filter Boxe, to lay

"Hen it hapned that Master William was grieuously sicke, and when hee was your reco- Chap. 40. I uerie, the Monke viliting him, gaue him Rubarbe to drinke, so that hee had almost william Boukilled him. Then vifiting him, when I found him foill at eafe, I asked him, what hee had chirris ficke, the Monke gieaten or drunke? And hee told mee, the Monke had given him the forefaid Potion, and hee weth him Rudrunke two little Difnes full, thinking it had beene Holy Water. Then I went to the Monke, barbe; the and find voto him, Either goe as an Apostle doing Miracles indeed, by vertue of Prayer, and Priest tonas is and and visio in m, either goe as an Aposte using aniactes model, by the Holy Ghoft, or doe as a Physician according to the arte of Medicine. You give a strong sicke: Friet without adul-

miftre: hthe Lords Supper vote him, and anionteth him beeing readie to dye. Hee reprouerb the Monke for his Sorecries.

Potton of Phylicke to drinke, to men not prepared, as if it were a certayne hollow thing, for the which you will incurre a foule feandall, if it come to the knowledge of men. From that time he began to feare and to beware of him.

It hapneth at that time, that that Priest was sicke, who was, as it were, the Archdeacon of nasisficke and the rest: and his frien is sent for a cerrayne Saracen, which was a Sooth-fayer. Who fiid vnto them, A certaine leane man, who neyther easeth, nor drinketh, nor fleepes in a Bed, is angry with him: of bee can obtayne his bleffing bee may recover. Then they understood it was the Monke. And about mid-night, the Priests Wife, his Sister, and his Sonne came, intreating that hee would come, and bleffe him. They also raised vs vp, to intreate the Monke. Then he said vnto vs , intreating him : Let him alone, because hee with three others, who likewise tooke emill courses, 10 consulted to goe vnto the Court, to procure Mangu Chan, that I and you should bee expelled

from these parts.

For there arose a contention among them, because Manon and his Wives sent source Iascots and certayne Silkes upon Easter Eenen to the Monke and Priests, to distribute among them. And the Monke had kept vnto himselte one Iaicot for his part, and of the other three, one was counterfeit, for it was Copper. Where pon it seemed to the Priests, that the Monke had kept too great a portion to himfelfe, Whence (it might bee) that they had some words among themselves, which were reported to the Monke. When day came I went vnto the Prieit, hauing an extreme griefe in his fide, and spitting bloud : whereupon I thought it was an Impostume. Then I countelled him (if he had any thing that was an others) to restore 20 The Nelwins 1t. He laid, hee had nothing. I spoke vnto him also of the Sacrament of Extreme Vnction. knownes Ex- Who answered, we have no such custome, neither doe our Priests know how to doe it: I intrest tremeVaction, you, that you would doe it for mee, as you know best to bee done. I aduised him also concerning Confession, which they frequent not, hee spake shortly in the Eare of a certayne

Priest, one of his fellowes.

After this hee beganne to bee better, and hee intreated mee to goe for the Monke. So I went, but the Monke would not come at the first : yet when hee heard hee was some-what better, hee went with his Ctoffe. And I also went, and carryed (in a Boxe of Master Williams) the bodie of Chrift, which I had referued vpon Easter Day, at the intreatie of Maiter Williams. Then the Monke beganne to kicke him with his feet , and hee most humbly im-

Then I faid vnto him; It is the custome of the Church of Rome, that the ficke should receive the Bodie of Christ, as it were prouision for their journey, and a defence against all the Deceits of the Enemie. Behold, the Bodie of Christ, which I confecrated on Easter Day. You must be confessed, and desire it. Then said hee with a great Faith, I desire it with all my heart. Which, when I had discouered, hee, with great affection said, I beleeue, that this is my Creatour and my Sauiour, who gaue mee life, and will reftore it againe vnto mee after death in the generall Refurrection: and so tooke the Bodie of Christ (from my hand) made after the manner of the Church of Rome. Then the Monke abode with him, and gaue him (in my absence) I know not what Potions. On the morrow hee beganne to have the pangs of 40 death upon him. Then taking their Oyle, which they said, was holy, I anointed him according to the manner of the Church of Rome, as they intreated mee. I had none of our Oyle, be-

caule the Priests of Sartach kept all,

And when wee should fing a Dirge, and I would have beene present at his end, the Monke fent vnto mee, willing me to depart, because if I should bee present, I could not come into the He threispres houle of Mangu Chan, for one whole yeare. Which, when I had told his friends, they faid, it was true : and requested me to depart, left I might be lundered in that good, which I might promote. Affoone as hee was dead, the Monke fail vnto mee, care not : I haue killed him with my Prayers. This fellow only was Learned, and opposed himselfe against vs: the rest know nothing. Henceforth Mangu Chan himselfe, and they all will crouch at our feete. Then hee de- 50 clared vnto me the forefaid Answere of the Sooth-fayer. Which (not beleeuing it) I inquired of the Priests who were friends of the dead, whether it were true or no. Who said it was, But whether he were pre-instructed or not, that they knew not. Afterwards I found, that the The Monkey. Monke called the forelaid Sooth-layer and his Wife into his Chappell, and caused dust to bee feth Duinais fifted, and to diume vnto him. For hee had a certayne Rutenian Deacon, who diumed to him. Which, when I understood, I was astonied at his foolishnosse, and said vinto him, Brother, a man full of the Holy Ghost which teacheth all things, should not demand Answeres or Counsell from Sooth-sayers; seeing all such things are forbidden, and they excommunicated, who follow such things. Then hee beganne to excuse himselfe that it was not true, that hee fought after such things. But I could not depart from him, because I was placed there by 60 the commandement of Chan himselte, nor could I remocue my selfe without his speciall command.

fen with one that dyeth, carno: come into the pretence of the Prince, for the

Oncerning the Citie of Caracarum, know this, that excluding the Palace of Chan him-Celte, it is not to good, as the Cattle of Saint Denis: and the Monasterie of Saint De-Chap. 41.

mis is tenne times more worth then that Palace, and more too. There are two fireets there : on of the Cione of the Saracens, where the Faires are kept : and many Merchants have recourse thither, tie of caracaby reason of the Court, which is alwayes neere, and for the multitude of Messengers. There rum, they are is another street of the Cataians, who are all Artificers. Without those streets there are great examined: Palices, which are the Courts of the Secretaries. There are there twelve kindes of Idolatries fenden h.s. of divers Nations. Two Churches of Mahomet, where the Law of Mahomet is proclaimed : brethren aone Church of the Christians at the end of the Towne. The Towne is inclosed with a mudde gainst divers

Io Wall, and hath foure Gates. On the East part Millet and other Graine is fold, which yet is Kingdomes, fildome brought thither. On the West, Sheepe and Goates. On the South, Oxen and Wag- the Monke gons are fold. At the North, Hories are fold. Following the Court, before the Ascension, wee Saracensfarecame thither the Sunday before the Ascension. The next day after, we were called before Bul. well. The Wife gai, who is a Iuftice, and chiefe Secretarie, both the Monke and all his Family, and wee, and of Mangu Chan all the Meffengers and Strangers, which frequented the house of the Monke. And wee were dyeth called before Bulgar fenerally, first the Monke, and after wee, and they beganne diligently to inquire whence wee were, and for what purpose wee came, and what our errand was? And this inquirie was made, because it was told Mangu Chan, that foure hundred Hassasines, or

fecret Murtherers were gone forth in divers Habits to kill him. About that time the forefaid 20 Ladie was restored to health, and shee sent for the Monke; and hee not willing to goe, answered : shee hath fent for Idolaters about her, let them cure her, if they can. I will goe no more. Vpon Ascension Eeuen, wee were in all the houses of Mangu Chan : and I saw when hee should drinke, how they cast Cosmos to their Idols of Felt. Then I said to the Monke, What fellowshippe hath Christ with Beliall. What part hath our Crosse with

Moreouer, Manga Chan hath eight Brethren, three by the Mother, and fine by the Father. One of them of his Mothers fide, hee fent into the Countrey of the Halfafines, who are called by them Mulibet: and hee commanded to kill them all. Another went towards The Countrey Perfia, and is now entred therein, to goe (as is thought) into Turkie, from thence to fend of the Haffa. 30 Armies against Baldach , and Vastacius. One of the other he sent into Cataia, against some that since, or Mulirebelled. His youngest Brother of the same venter, hee kept nigh himselse, whose name was bet.

Arabucha, who holdeth his Mothers Court which was a Christian, whose Servant Master Some of Ge-William is : for one of his Brothers, on the Fathers fide, tooke him in Hungarie in a certayne Ci- tais rebell, tie, called Belgrade, where there was a Norman Bishoppe, of Belle-Ville neere Roan, with a certayne Nephew of the Bishoppes, whom I saw there at Caracarum. And hee gave Master William to Mangues Mother, because shee was very earnest to have him. When she was dead. Master William came backe againe to Arabucha, with all things else pertayning to the Court of his Mother : and from him hee came to the knowledge of Mangu Chan. Who after the finishing of the foresaid Worke, gaue vnto Master William an hundred Iascots, that is, a thou-

40 fand Markes.

On the Ecuen therefore of the Ascension, Mangu Chan said, hee would goe to his Mothers Court, and visit her, for it was neere. And the Monke said, hee would goe with him, and giue his bleffing to his Mothers foule. Chan was well contented. In the Evening, the day of Accesson day. the Ascension, the foresaid Ladie was very much pained. And the chiefe of the Sooth sayers fent to the Monke , commanding him that the Table thould not be smitten. On the morrow, when the whole Court remooued, the Court of the foresaid Ladie remayned still. And when wee came to the place where the Court should stay, the Monke was commanded to depart further from the Court, then hee was wont : which hee did. Then Arabucha met his brother Arabucha the Chan. So the Monke, and wee, feeing that hee was to paffe by vs, met him with the Crofle, yongerbro 30 And hee calling vs to minde, because sometimes he had beene at our Oratorie, firetching forth ther of Manga

his hand, made a Croffe vnto vs, like a Bishop. Then the Monke taking Horle, followed chan. him, bearing certayne Fruits. But hee alighted, before his brothers Gourt, wayting, while hee came from hunting. Then the Monke alighted there, and offered him the Fruit, which hee received. And hard by him fate two Saracens, of the Nobilitie of the Court of Chan. But Arabucha vinderstanding of the contention betweene the Christians and the Saracens, enquired of Ignorant zeale the Monke if hee knew the faid Saraceus; and hee answered, I know they are Dogges: aberrayer of why haue you them so neere you! but they replyed ; why, say they, doe you wrong vs, the Faith, a when wee doe none to you! To whom the Monke faid, I speake the truth: and yee, and cause perhaps your Mahomet are vile Dogges. Then they beganne to answere blasphemously against Christ; of Taitorina

60 and Arabucha forbad them, faying, speake not so blasphemously, for weeknow, that the Stratemine. Messia is God. That very houre there arose so great a winde over all the street, that the Wises of the Deuils feemed to runne through them. And after awhile, there came Rumours, that the La- dyeth. die was dead.

The next morning, Chan returning towards his Court another way. For this is their Sorcerie, that they neuer returne the same way they came. Moreouer, while the Court abode heere, after the remooue thereof, none dare passe that way (neither Horseman nor Footman) -where the Court stayed, so long as any shew of the fire made there, remayneth. That day certayne Saracens kept company with the Monke vpon the way, prouoking him, and disputing with him. And when hee could not defend himfelfe with Argument, and they mocked him, hee would have lashed them with the Whip which hee held in his hand; and hee went so farre, that the forefaid words were reported at the Court. And wee were commanded to depart with other Mellengers, and not abide before the Court, where wee were wont. And I alwayes hoped, the King of Armenia would come. There came fome about Eafter from Bo- 10 lac, where those Dutchmen are, for whose fake chiefly I went thither, who told mee, that the Dutch Priest should come to the Court. Therefore I mooued no Question to Mangu, concerning our flay, or departure. And in the beginning hee gaue vs leaue to flay but two monethes: and now fue monethes are past. This was done about the end of May. And wee had continued there all Ianuary, February, March, Aprill, and May. But hearing no newes of the King, or the said Priest, and fearing leit wee should returne in the Winter, whose sharpnesse wee lad prooud, I caused to bee demanded of Mangu Chan, what his pleasure was concerning vs, because willingly were would euer stay there, if so hee pleased. But if wee must returne, it were easier for vs to returne in Summer, then in the Winter. Hee presently fent vnto mee, commanding, that I should not goe farre off, because his pleasure was to speake 20 with mee the next day. But I told him, that if hee would speake with mee, hee should fend for Master Williams Sonne , for my Interpreter was not sufficient. And hee . that spake with mee, was a Saracen, who had beene a Messenger to Vastacim: and (blinded with Rewards ) counselled Vastacius to send Ambassadours to Mangu Chan, and the meane while the time palled: for Vastacius thought , hee would presently enter his Countrey. So hee fent, and after hee knew them, hee little regarded them, nor made peace with them , neither did they yet enter his Countrey : nor shall they bee able , so long The Tartan do as they dare defend themselues, nor did they ever take any Countrey by Force, but by more by deceit Deceit. And because men make peace with them , vnder colour of that peace they o-

Then hee beganne to bee very Inquisitive of the Pope, and of the King of the Franckes, and of the way to goe to them. But the Monke hearing this , adulfed mee fecretly not to answere him, because he would procure, that an Ambassadour should be sent. Whereupon I held my peace, not willing to answere him. And hee spake vnto mee I know not what injurious words; for the which the Neftorian Priefts would have accused him : so that hee had either beene flaine, or beaten all to clouts, but I would not.

examined

Chap. 42. ON the morrow, (to wit) the Sunday before Pentecoft, they brought mee to the Court:
They are often On the morrow of Model, who wayteth upon Chans cup, and the reft, Saracens, inquiring on the behalfe of Chan, wherefore I came? Then I 40 wherfore they told them the foresaid words, how I came to Sartach, and from Sartach to Baatu, and how Baatu fent me thither. Whereupon, I faid vnto him, I have nothing to speake on the behalfe of any to make com- man, vnlesse I should speake the words of God vnto him, if he would heare them; for he should parison of Di- best know what Basts hath written to him. They stucke vpon this word, demanding, what words of God I would speake vnto him? thinking I would prophese vnto him some prosperous The most lear- thing, as many vse to doe. To whom I answered: if yee will that I speake the words of God Friet William vnto him, get me an Interpreter. Who faid, we have fent for him, yet speake by this Interprewith the Idolater, as you may: wee shall vnderstand you well. And they vrged mee much to speake. Then I ters. The Sa- faid: This is the word of God: To whom more is committed, more is required at his hands, anovaccons acconon- the ralfo : to whom more is forginen, hee ought to lone more out of these true words of God, I sud, to 50 ledge the ruth Mangu bimfelfe, that God bath ginen him much. For the power and riches which hee hath, the Idols of the Tuinians have not given him, but the Omnipotent God, who hath made Heanen and Earth, in whose conference of bands all Kingdomes are, and hee translates them from Nation to Nation for the sinnes of men. Friet William, Wherefore if he love him, it shall goe well with him: if otherwise, let him know, that God will require all with the Ser, these things at his bands, even to the vitermost farthing. Then faid one of the Saracens, Is there any man that loueth not God? I answered, God faith, if any man loue me, he will keepe my Commandements: and be that loueth me not, keepeth not my Commandements. Therefore, hee that keepeth not the Commandements of God, loneth not God. Then faid hee, have yee hin in Heaven, that yee might know the Commandements of God! No faid I, but he hash given them from Heaven to boly men : and at the last himselfe descended from Heauen, teaching vs : and wee have those things in the 60 Scriptures, and we fee by the workes of men, whether they keepe them or no. Whereto hee replyed, will yee then fay that Mangu Chan keepes not the Commandements of God ? To whom I faid, Your Interpreter wil come, as yee lay, then before Mangu (ban(i' it please him) I wil recite the

### CHAP. I. The Can waters betwixt Ethnikes, Saracens and Christians.

Commandements of God, and he shall be his owne Iudge, whether hee keepe them or not. So they departed, and told him, that I faid, hee was an Idolater or a Trune, and kept not the Commandements of God. The next day, he fent his Secretaries vinto mee, faying : Our Lord fends vs vnto you, faying. Yee are heere Christians, Saracens, and Tienes: and every of you faith, his Magu Chan Law is better, and his Letters (to wit) Bookes, are truer. Wherefore hee would, that yee all defieth to come together, and make comparison, that every one write his words, that he might know the have a compacome together, and make comparison, that energy one writer his words, that he might know the ridon mide truth. Then I laid, Bleffedbe God, who hash put this in the heart of Chan, but our Scriptures faid, the concerning discovery the concerning discovery that the concerning discovery that the concerning discovery that the concerning discovery th Servant of God must not bee contentious, but meeke unto all: wherefore I am readie without strife and uine things, contention, to render an account of the faith and hope of Christians, to every one that shall require it. between the 10 Then they wrote my words, and brought them to him. Then the Nestorians were comman. Christians, Sadded, to prouide themselues, and write what they would speake, and the Saracons likewise, and trois ter: the Tumians also.

On the morrow hee fent the Secretaries againe, faying: Mangu Chan would know, wherefore yee came to thele parts, to whom I faid : That hee shall know by the Letters of Bastn. Then faid they, Bastness Letters are left, and hee hath forgotten, what Bastn wrote vnto him, wherefore he would know of you. Then tomew at imboldned, I faid vnto them. The His Anface dutie or office of our Religion is to preach the Gospell to all: whereupon, when I heard of the same of the people of Moal, I had a defire to come unto them: and while I was thus purposed, we heard of Sartach, that he was a Christian. Then I directed my Journey wnto him : And my Souer eigne Lord the King of

20 the Frankes fent him Letters, contaying good words: and other words besides, testifie of vs vnto him, what men wee are when bee made request, that hee would suffer us to continue with the people of Moal. Then be fent us to Baatu, and Baatu to Mangu Chan. In bereupon we intreated, and yet intreat him to fuffer visto flay. But they wrote all, and made relation thereof vnto him. On the morrow, he fent to me againe, laying: Chank no wes well en argh that yee have no meffage vnto him, but yee came to pray for him as many other Priefts doe : But hee deman leth, whether euer any of your Embaffadours were with him, or ours with you! Then I declared all vinto them concerning David and Frier Andrew, to they putting all in writing, reported the fame vnto him. Then he fent againe vntome, faying : Our Lord Chan fair h, yee haue stayed long here, his pleasure is, Mauea Châu that yee returne vinto your Country; withall, hee demandeth whether yee would conduct his will have them 30 Emballadours with you. To whom I made antiwere, that I durit not carrie his Emballadours returne,

beyond his owne Countrey : because there is a Warlike Nation betweene vs and you , and the Sea and Mountaynes, and I am a prore Monke : and therefore dare not take vpon mee to bee his Guide. So they having fet downe all in writing, returned. Whitfon Eeuen came; The Neftorians writ Chronicles from the Creation of the World to Whitfunday

the Passion of Christ; and passing over the Passion, they spake of the Resurrection of the dead, Ecuca. and of the Ascention, and of the comming to Judgement. Wherein somewhat was to be reprehended which I told them, and wee likewile wrote the Symbole of the Masse, Credo in vnum Deum. Then I demanded of them, how they would proceed. They faid, they would first dispute with the Saracens. I shewed them, this was no good course: for the Saracens in this agree with vs, 40 who affirme, there is but one God. Wherefore, yee shall have them to helpe you against the

Tuines: to they were contented. Then I asked tem, if they knew how Idolatry had his first How Idolatry originall in the World, and they could not tell. Then I told them and they faid; yee shall de- begin first in clare thefe things vnto them : and then let vs speake; for it is hard to speake by an Interpreter, the World. To whom I said: make tryall, how yee will behaue your selues against them : I will take the Tuinians part, and yee the Christians. Suppose I am of that Sect, that say, there is no God. Proue yee there is a God. For there is a certayne Sect there, which faith, That every foule, and every vertue in what thing foeuer, is the God thereor, and that otherwise there is no God. Then the Nestorians knew not how to produc any thing, but only that which their Writing declareth. I faid, they believe not the Scriptures : if yee thew one, they will thew another. Then I 50 counfelled them, to let me first talke with them : because if I should be ouercome, they might yet have libertie of speech: if they should be ouerthrowne, I should have no hearing. They agreed

Wee were therefore gathered together on Whidfon Euen at our Oratorie, and Mangu Chan fent three Writers, who should be Judges : one (briftian, one Saracen, and one Tuine: And it was proclaimed before. This is the Commandement of Mangu Chan : And none dare fay that the The Proclaims-Commandement of God is otherwise: He commandet b that none freshe contentious or inturious words tion of Manga to other, nor make any tumnit, whereby this businesse might be hindered, opon pline of his head. Then chan. all were ident : And there was a great affembly there : for every partie inuited the wifest of their Nation, and many others came flocking thither. Then the Christians for me in the midthen transit, and many in Tuineas to speake with mee. Then they (who are many in number) The murmu-

60 began to murmure against Mangu Chan, because never any Chan attempted thus much, to search ring of the Iinto their feerets. Then they opposed one vnto mee, who came from Catata, having his Inter- dol tors apreter : and I had Mafter Williams Sonne. And he first faid vinto me : Friend, if you bee brought to wind Mangu

leeues better. Then the Arbitrators judged this to bee reasonable. They would have begunne

be compelled to labour after death for confirmation also thereof (as Master William told mee) a

three yeeres old, yet not withflanding was capable of any reason; who affirmed of himselfe,

that he had beene three times incorporated, and knew letters, and how to write. I faid to the

toresaid Tuinian, Wee firmely beleene with the heart, and confesse with the mouth, that there is a God,

potent, God knowes Godperfectly

but one God, but Wife men fay there are many. Are there not great Lords in your Country, and Stere is a greater Lord, Manga Chan? So is it of the gods : because in divers Countries there are divers. To whom I faid : You make an ill example or comparison of men with God; for so every migh- 20 tie man in his countrey may be called a god. And when I would have dissolved the similitude, hee preuented me, inquiring; What manner of God is yours, whereof you speake, that hee is but Gadis Omni. one? I answered : Our God, beside whom there is no other, is Omnipotent, and therefore needeth not the helpe of another : nay, all we have neede of his helpe, it is not so with men. No man can doe all things. And therefore there must be many Lords in the earth, because no one can support all. Againe, be knowes all things, therefore be needes not a Counfeller : nay, all wifedome is from him. Moreoner, be ss perfettly good, and needeth not our good : nay, in him we line, mone, and have our being. Such is our God, and therefore you must not hold there is any other. It is not so, faith he. Nay, there is one highest in the Heauens, whote Generation we know not yet, and ten are vnder him, and vnder them there is one Inferiour. And in the Earth there are infinite. Then hee would have added other fables. 30 So I asked him of that highest God, whether he thought he were Omnipotent ! or of any other God ? and fearing to answer, hee demanded, if your God bee such as you say, Why made bee the balfe of things cuill? It is false said I. Whoso maketh any enill is no God, and all things what sener are good. At this word all the Tuinians maruelled, and let it downe in writing, as falle, or impossible. Then he began to aske, Whence therefore commeth euill You aske amille, faid I; For first you foodld demand, what euil is, before you aske whence it is. But returne unto the firft question, whether you beleeve that any God is Omnipotent, and after I will answer you to all what soener you will demand. Then hee fate along time and would not answer; Infomuch, as the Writers on the behalfe of Chan, were faine to command him to answer. At length hee answered : That no God was Omnipotent. Then all the Saracens brake out into great laughter : Silence being made, I laid, There- 40 fore none of your gods can since you is all dangers, because such a chance may happen, wherein he bath no power. Againe, no man can serue two Masters. How then can you ferue so many Lords in Heauen and in earth. The Auditorie willed him to answer. But he held his peace. Then when I was about to alleadge reasons to proue the truth of the divine Essence, and the Trinitie, in every mans hearing, the Nestorians of the Countrey faid vnto me, that it was enough, because they meane to Speake. So I gaue them place : And when they would have disputed with the Saracens : they answered : We grant that your Law is true, and what soener is in the Gospell is true : Wherefore wee will not dispute with you in any thing : and they confessed, that they beg at the hands of God in their prayers, that they may die the death of the Christians. There was there a certaine old Priest of the Sect of Ingurs, who confesse one God, yet they make Idols, with whom they talked much, so shewing all till the comming of Christ to judgement, declaring the Trinitie to him and the Saracens by similitudes. All of them harkened without any contradiction; yet none of them faid. I beleeve, and will become a Christian. The conference ended, the Nestorians and the Saracens fang together with a loud voice, the Tuinians holding their peace : and after that, they all

The Sarasens aniwer , that the Gospell is The Sect of the lugars.

Chap 43.

The day of

Pentecoft he

is called be-

tore Mangu

drunke abundantly.

VPon Whitfonday Mangu Chan called mee before him, and the Twinan with whom I di-funted, and before I went in, Master Williams sonne my Interpreter, said unto me, that we must returne vnto our Countrey; and that I should speake nothing against it, because he vnderstood it for a certaine. When I came before him, I must kneele, and the Tunnian by mee, with 60 his Interpreter. Then he faid vnto me: Tell me the truth , whether you faid (when I fent my chin, who com- Writers vnto you) that I was a Tuinian? Then I answered. My Lord, I said not so, but (if it feffeth the faith pleated your Highnesse) I will tell you the words I spake. Then I recited what I had spoken : and he answered; I thought well, you faid not to, for it was a word which you should not speake, his returne by Baats, he craneth leave to flay there, which is not graunted

but your Interpreter hath ill interpreted it; fo hee reacheth foorth his staffe towards mee, whereon he leaned, laying : Feare not. I fmiling faid tofely, If I feared, I had not come hither. A token of fa-Then he demanded of the Interpreter what I had faid? So he repeated my words with him. Af- uour. terwardhe beganne to confesse his Faith unto me. Wee Moallians (faith he ) beleene, that there Thefaith of is but one God, through whom we like and dye; and we have an vpright heart towards hims. Then (laid the Teriars. 1) God grant youthis, for without this gift it cannot be. And he demanded what I faid : fo the Interpreter told him; then he added turther. That as God hath gimen unto the hand diners fingers, so be hath given many waves to men. God hath given the Scriptures to you, and ye Christians keep them not. Te finde it not in the Scriptures, that one of you shall dispraise another? Doe you finde it, said he? 10 No, faid I, but I fignified vnto you from the beginning, that I would not contend with any. I freake is not, faith he, touching you. In like manner, yee finde it not, that for Money a man ought to decline from Inflice. No Sir, laid I, and truly, neither came I into thele parts to get Money; nay, Irefused that which was given me. And there was a Writer present there, who gave teltimony that I had refused a Iakot, and certaine pieces of Silke : I speake it not (faid he) for that. God hash given you the Scriptures, and yee keepe them not : But be bath given us South-fayers, and we doe that which they bid vs, and we live in peace. He dranke foure times as I thinke, before hee dif-

closed their things. And while I hearkned attentiuely whether hee would confesse any thing effe concerning this Faith, he beganne to speake of my returne, saying : You have stayed a long He speaketh of time heere, my pleasure is therefore, that you returne. You faid, you durft not carrie my Em- the Fryerere 20 baffadours with you. Will you carrie my meffage or my Letters ? And from that time I could turnes neither have place nor time to shew him the Catholike Faith. For a man cannot speake before him, faue what he pleaseth, vinlesse he were an Embassadour. But an Embassadour may speake what he will : And they alwaies demand, whether he have any thing elfe to fay. But he fuffered me to speake no more: but I must heare him, and answere Interrogatories. Then I answered red, That if he could make me understand his words, and that they were fet downe in writing. I would willingly carrie them to my power. Then he asked me, if I would have Gold or Siluer, or costly garments! I said, we receive no such things; but we have not expenses, and without your helpe, we cannot get out of your Countrey. Then faid he, I will prouide you all necef-

faries throughout my Countrey, will you any more? I answered, it sufficeth me : Then he de-30 manded, how farre will you be brought ? I faid, Let our Palle bring vs into the King of Armemines Countrey : if I were there, it were enough. He answered : I will cause you to be conueyed thither, and after looke to your selfe. And hee added : there are two eyes in one head; and though they bee two, yet there is one aspect of both, and whither the one directeth the fight the other doth. You came from Baatu, and therefore you must returne by him: when hee had Baatus greatthus faid, I craued licence to speake. Speake on, faith hee. Then faid I; Sir, wee are not men of nesses. warre: wee defire that they have dominion of the world, who would more initly gonerne it, according to the will of God. Our office is to teach men to line according to the will of God: for this Hee craueth ding to the will of God. Our effect is to teacomen to use according to the will of God. Our effect is to teach the purple came we into the fe parts, and would willingly home remained here; if it had placeful one leuvergine purple came we into the feat that we returne, it may be 6, I will returne and carrie your Letters that we returne, it may be 6, I will returne and carrie your Letters that we returne, it may be 6.

40 according to my power, as yee have commanded. I would request your magnificence, that when I but it is not base carried your Letters, it might bee lawfull for me to returne unto you with your good liking, granted. chiefely, because yee have poore Servants of yours at Bolac, who are of our language; and they want a Priest, to teach them and their children their Law, and I would willingly flay with them. Then answered he : Know you whether your Lords would fend you backe to me ? Then faid I ; Sir, I know not the purpose of my Lords: but I have luence from them to goe whether I will, where it were needfull to preach the word of God: and it seemeth to mee, that it were very necessarie in these parts: whereupon, whether they fend Embassadours backe or no, if it pleased you, I would returne. Then hee held his peace, and fate a long space as it were in a Muse. And my Interpreter willed me, to Hedeparteth speake no more, and I carefully expected what he would answere. At length he said : You have from the pre-50 a long way to goe, make your felfe strong with food, that you may come lusty into your Coun-

trey. And he caused them to give me drinke. Then I departed from his presence and returned not againe. If I had had power to doe wonders as Mofes did, peraduenture hee had humbled himfelfe.

Ooth-sayers therefore, as hee confessed, are their Priests: and what soeuer they command to A description Soch-sayers therefore, as hee confessed, are their Priests: and whattoeuer they command to of the Teriaribeedone, is performed without delay. Whose office I describe vnto you, as I could learne of an Sorcerers, Malter William, and others, who reported vnto me things likely to be true. They are many; and and or their they have alwaies one Captaine or chiefe Prieft : who alwaies placeth his house before the great divers ard vm house of Mangu (ban, neere, within a stones cast. Vnder his custodie (as I said before) are the lawfull behause 60 Chariots which beare their Idols, The others are behind the Court, in places appointed for them. Chiefe Price And they who have any confidence in that Art, come vnto them from divers parts of the of the Tartari. World. Some of them are skilfull in Aftronomie, specially the chiefe of them. And they fore- Some of them tell to them the Eclipse of the Sunne and the Moone, and when it shall come to passe. All the know Astrono. people prepare them food, to that they need not goe forth of the doore of their house. And Eckiples,

when

nery yeare.

They are caldiffinies, and derfull thing. are alto tent for when any

The falle ac-

the Sorcerers.

the Neft mans in Catala.

when there is an Eclipfe, they play upon their Timbrels and Organs, and make a great noise, and a loude crye, when the Eclipse is pail, they give themselves to feathing, and drinking, and make They fore-rell greation. They foretell fortunate and valueky dayes for all businesse or affaires. Whereupon luck/ and vn- they never levie an Armie, nor vndertake Warre without their direction. And they had long for unat data fine returned into Hungarie; but their Sooth-layers doe not fuffer them. They make all thines mance of all which are fent to the Court palle betweene fires, and they have a due portion thereof. They bulled what alto purge all the houshold-ituffe of the Dead, drawing them betweene the fires. For when focuerany one dieth, all things what focuer appertagne to him, are feparated, and not mingled with
They confeall other things of the Court, till all be purged by the Fire. So did I fee it done to the Court of the Compaffe that Ladie, which died, while wee were there. Whereupon, there was a double reason why to betweene frees. Friar Andrew, and his fellowes should goe betweene the fires, both because he brought presents. Friar Anders, as alfo for that they belonged to him, who was dead, (to wit) Ken Chan. No such thing was and his cllows required of me, because I brought nothing. If any living creature, or any thing else, fall to the ground, while they thus make them paffe betweene the fires , that is theirs. They also the The night day minth day of the Moone of May, gather together all the white Mares of the Herd, and confeof the Moone crate them. The Christian Priests also must come together thither with their Censers. Then o May to lonnly kept e- they cast new Cosmos upon the ground, and make a great Feast that day; because then they thinke they drinke Cosmos first, as it is the fashion tomewhere with vs, touching Wine, in the Feath of Saint Bartholmen, or Sixtue, and of fruits, in the Feath of Saint James and Christopher. They also are inuited, when any child is borne, to foretell his destinie. They are sent for also when any is ficke, to vie their Charmes : and they tell whether it bee a naturall infirmitie . or 20 by Sorcetic. Whereupon that woman of Mentz, whereof I fpake before, told mee a won-

of her Ladie, who was a Christian, as I faid before. And the Sooth-favers drew them through betweene the fires, and tooke more of them then was their due. And a certaine woman, under whole custodie the treasure of her Ladie was , accused them thereof vnto her Ladie : whereyoun the Ladie her felfe reproued them. It fell out after this, that the Ladie her felfe bean to be ficke, and to fuder certaine fudden passions in diucr parts of her bodie. The Sooth-favers were called : and they fitting farre off, commanded one of those Maidens, to put her hand vpon 30 the place where the griefe was, and it thee found any thing, thee flould fnatch it away. Then thee arifing did fo. And the found a piece of Felt in her hand, or of some other thing. Then they commanded her to put it upon the ground; which being layd downe, it began to creepe, as if it had beene some living Creature. Then they put it into the water, and it was turned, as it were, into a Horse-leach: and he said, some Witch hath hurt you thus with her Sorceries: and they accused her that had accused them of the Furres, who was brought without the Tents into the fields, and received the baltinado feuen dayes together there, and was thus tormented with other punishments, to make her confesse; and in the meane space her Ladie died. Which shee vinderstanding, faid vinto them, I know my Ladie is dead, kill mer, that I may goe after her, for I neuer did her hurt. And when thee confelled nothing . Manon Chan 40 commanded to faffer her to line. Then the Sorcerers accused the Ladies daughters Nurse, of whom I spake before: who was a Christian, and her husband was the chiefe among all the Neforian Priests, to shee was brought to punishment, with a certaine Maide of hers, to make her confesse. And the Maide confessed, that her Mistresse sent her to speake with a certaine Horse, to demand answeres. The woman also her felfe, confessed some things which shee did to bee beloued of her Ladie, that the might doe her good, but thee did nothing that might hurt her. Shee was demanded alfo, whether her husband were privile to it: thee excufed him, for that he had burnt the Characters and Letters which she had made. Then shee was put to death, and Manon The Bishop of Chan sene the Priest her husband to the Bishop which was in Cataia, to be judged, although he were not found culpable.

On a certaine time, very coffly Furres were prefented, which were layd downe at the Court

In the meane time it fell out, that the principall wife of Mangu Chan, brought forth a sonne, and the Sooth-fayers were called, to fore-tell the Destinie of the child, who all prophecied prosperitie, and faid, he should live long, and be a great Lord : after a few dayes, it happened, the child died. Then, the mother enraged, called the Sooth-layers, faying, you faid my fonne should line, and loe hee is dead. Then they faid, Madam, behold wee fee that Sorcereffe, the Nurle of Chrina, who the other day was put to death, shee hath killed your sonne; and behold wee see. fnee carries him away. Now there remayned one fonne and a daughter of that woman growne to full age in the Tents: and the Ladie fent prefently for them in a tage, and caused the young man to be flayne of a man, and the maide of a woman, in revenge of her fonne, whom the Soothfayers affirmed to be killed of their mother not long after, Mangu Chan dreamed of those chil- 60 dren, and demanded in the morning, what was become of them. His feruants were afraid to tell him : and he being troubled the more, demanded where they were, because they had anpeared vinto him in a Vition by night. Then they told him. So hee prefently fending for his wife, demanded whence shee learned, that a woman should give sentence of death, without the

prinitie of her Husband . And he caufed her to be flut up feauen dayes, commanding to give her The Revenge no meat. But the man who (who flew the young man) he caused to be beheaded; and the head of Manguether, no mean. Due the man merke, who had kild the Mayde; and made her to be culgelled to be hung about the womans necke, who had kild the Mayde; and made her to be culgelled to be with burning Fire-brands through all the Tents, and after to be put to Death. Hee had all o not with burning Fire-brands through all the Tents, and after to be put to Death. Hee had allo put theren. his Wife to death, but for the Children he had by her : And he went out of his Court, and returned not till after one Moone.

The Sorcerers also trouble the Ayre with their charmes : and when the Cold is so great na- The Sorcerers turally, that they cannot apply any remedy, then they fearch out some in the Campe, whom touble the

they accuse, that the cold comes through their meanes, so they are put to Death without any Ayre with their 10 delay. A little before I departed thence, one of the Concabines was ficke, and languified long, Charmes. and they mumbled their Charmes ouer a certaine Dutch Slaue of hers, who slept three dayes. Who, when she came to her selfe, they demanded, what she had seene ? And she had seene many persons, of all which, shee judged they should all shortly dye : And because she saw not her Miftres there, they judged the should not dye of that ficknes. I faw the Maydes head yet aking by reason of that sleepe. Some of them asso call upon Deuils, and gather them together (who will The Sorecres haur answers from the Deuill) in the night vnto their house, and they pur solden fiesh in the raite vo deuils, middelt of the house, and that Chan who innoketh, beginneth to say his Charmes, and hauing a Tymbrell, imites it ftrongly against the ground; at length he begins to raue, and causeth himselfe

to be bound. Then the Deuill comes in the darke, and gives him flesh to eate, and makes him an-20 fwer. On a certaine time, (as Malter William told me) a certaine Hungarian hid himfelfe with them, and the Deuill being vpon the house, cryed, that hee could not come in, because a certaine Christian was with them. He hearing this, fled with haste, because they began to search for him. These things and many other doe they, which were too long to report.

Feer the Feast of Penticost they began to make ready their Letters, which they meant to Chap. 45. A fend vnto you. In the meane while, he returned to Caracarum, and held a great Solemnity, nity. Manu 1 Liend vito you. In the meane write, in termine to the state all the Embassadours should be present. chans Letters The last day also he sent for vs, but I went to the Church to Baptise three Children of a cetto Lodowike taine poore Dusch-man, whom we found there. Mafter William was chiefe Butler at that Feaft, King of France 30 because he made the Tree which powred foorthdrinke. And all the Poore and Rich fung and the Fitter because ne made the liter which power char. Then he began to make an Oration vnto them, companion danneed, and clapped their hands before Char. Then he began to make an Oration vnto them, flareshwith faying; I have fent my Brethren farre off, and have fent them into danger, into forraigne Nations: the Tarias: the larios:
Now it shall appeare what yee will doe, when I shall send you, that our Common-wealth may be inlarged. they returne Euery day in those foure dayes, hee changed garments, which hee gaue them all of one colour, e- to Caracarum. uery day, from the shooes even to the tyre of the head. At that time I saw the Embassadour of This is also the the Cairpha of Baldach, who caused himselfe to bee carried vpon a Horse-litter, betweene two manner of the Mules, to the Court : of whom fome faid, that he made peace with them : fo that they should Flerida. giue him ten thousand Horse for his Army. Others said, that Mange said, hee would not make The Embassi-Peace, vnleffe they would deftroy all their Munition. And the Embaffadour answered; when dout of the Ca-40 you will placke off your Horse hooses, we will destroy our Munition: I saw also there, the Em. light of Ballach balladours of a certaine Soldan of India, who brought with him eight Leopards, and ten Hare- The Emballahounds taught to fit vpon the Horle buttockes, as Leopards doe. When I inquired of India, which dours of a cerway it lay from that place, they shewed me towards the West. And those Embassadours retur- taine Soldan of ned with me, almost for three Weekes together, alwayes west ward! I saw also the Embassadors India. of the Solden of Timbes, who brought him rich prefents: And hee antwered (as I heard) he needed the following the solden of the Well ded neither Gold nor Silver, but men: wherefore he required them to provide him an Army. In the fall of Salve I have be held a great Divinion and Louded on hundred and to Gray. In the Canadana. the feast of Saint John he held a great Drinking, and I caused one hundred and fine Carts, and by three weeks ninety Horses to be numbred, all laden with Cowes milke : And in the feast of the Apostles S.Pe- iourney. ninety Horses to be numbred, all laden with Cowes milke: And in the teat of the Apottes S. Feet and S. Paul, in like manner. At length the Letters being dispatched, which he fendeth to you. Saint 16611, 50 they called me, and interpreted them, the tenor whereof I writ, as I could winderstand them by June 24. my Interpreter, which is this. The commandement of the eternal God is this : There is but one The Letters of Eternall God in Heauen : upon Earth let there be but one Lord Chingis Chan, Temingu Tingij, That Manga Chan, to is to fay the found of Yron : (They call Chingis, the found of Yron, because hee was a Smith : and Lodewicke the puffed up with pride, they call him now the Sonne of God.) This is the word which is spoken to French King. you. Whatfoeuer Moals wee are, whatfoeuer Naymans, whatfoeuer Merkets, whatfoeuer Multilman, where soeuer eares may heare, whether soeuer Horse may goe, there, cause st to bee heard, and un- Moall. derstood, since they have beard my commandement, and would not beleeve it, and would leny an Army Nayman against vs, yee shall heare and see, that they shall be as bassing Eyes, and not seeing, and when they would storket.

hold any thing they shall be without hands, and when they would walke, they shall be without feet. This is the 60 commandement of the Eternall God, by the vertue of the Eternall God : by the great world of the Mcal. The comandement of Mangu Chan is given to the French King, King Lodouck, and all other Lords, and Priests and to the great world of the Frankes, that they understand my wordes, and the commaundement of the Eternall God, made to Chingis Chan. Nor from Chingis Chan, nor others after hom, came this commandement unto you. A certaine man called David came unto you, as an Embasadour

chen-chan, is cilled (unecan, of leha de Plano Carpini.

of the Moalls, but he was a lyar, and with him you (ent your Embassadours to Chen-chan. After Chen-chan was dead, your Embaffadour's came to bis Court. Charmis bis wife fent you Cloth, called Nasic. But to know matters appertaying to Warre and Peace, and to settle the great World in quiet and to fee to doe good, That wicked woman, more vile then a Dog, how could free know how to doe it? Thole two Monkes which came from you unto Sartach, Sartach fent them to Baatu: but Baatu, because Mangu Chan is the greatest over the World of the Moalls, sent them unto us. But now, that the great World and the Priests, and the Monkes might line in peace, and entry their goods, that the commandement of God might be heard among you, wee would have fent our En baffadours of Moall. with your Priests: but they answered, that betweene vs and you there was a warlike Nation, and many badmen, and troublesome wayes; so as they feared they could not bring our Embassadours safe with 10 you, but if we would deliver them our Letters, contayning our commandement to King Lodowick, they would carrie them. For this cause wee sent not our Embassadours with them. But wee have fent the commandement of the eternall God by your faid Priests. It is the commandement of the eternall God. which wee have given you to understand. And when you shall heare and beleeve it, if yee will obey us. Send your Embassadours unto us, so shall wee be certified, whether yee will have peace with us, or warre, When by the power of the eternall God, the whole World shall be in unitie, ioy, and peace, from the rising of the Sunne, to the going downe of the same, then shall it oppeare what wee will doe. When yee shall heare and understand the commandement of the eternall God, and will not bearken to it, nor believe it, saying, our Countrey is farre off, our Hills are frong, our Sea is great, and in this confidence, shall levie an Armie against us, to know what wee can doe, Hee which made that which was hard, easie; and that which 20 was farre off, neere; the eternall God himselfe knowes it.

And they called vs your Embaffadors in the Letters. Then I faid vnto them, call vs not Embuffadors, for I faid well to Chan, that wee are not the Embaffadors of King Lodomicke. Then they went vnto him and told him. But when they returned, they faid vnto me: that he held it

much for our good, and that he commanded them to write as I should direct them. Then I told them, they should leave out the name of Embassadour, and call vs Monkes and Priests. In the meane time, while these things were doing, my Companion hearing that wee must returne by the Wilderneffe to Basts, and that a man of Mould hould be our Guide, he ranne (without my privitie) to Bulgai the chiefe Scribe, fignifying to him by fignes that he should die, if he went that way. And when the day came, wherein we should have our Passe (to wit) a fortnight af- 30

He departeth ter the Feaft of Saint Iohn; when we were called to the Court, the Scribes faid vnto my Comthe 9. of July. panion, Behold Mangus pleafure is, that your Companion returne by Baats, and you fay, you are ficke, and it appeareth fo: Mangu fayth thus, It you will goe with your Companion, goe: but let it be your owne fault; because peraduenture you may remayne with some Iani, that will not prouide for you, and it will bee an hinderance to your Companion. But if you will flav heere, he shall prouide necessaries for you, till some Embassadours come, with whom you may returne more eafily, and by a way where there are Villages. The Friar answered . God grant

Chan a prosperous life; I will flay. Then I said vnto the Friar; Brother, bee aduited what you doe. I will not leave you. You leave not me (fayth he) but I leave you : because, if I goe with you. I fee the death of my bodie and foule, because I have not patience in intolerable labour. 40 Then they held three Garments or Coats, and faid vnto vs, Yee will not receive Gold, or Sil-

uer, and yee haue stayed long here, and prayed for Chan: hee entreats you, that at the least euethere from the ry one of you would receive a fingle Garment; that yee depart not emptie from him. Then 27.0f Decem-berto the 9.0f we must receive them, for reverence of him : for they account it a very eurll thing, when their gifts are contemned. First, he caused vs to bee often asked, what we would have ! And wee alwaies answered the same thing: so that the Christians insulted over the Idolaters, who seeke nothing but gifts. And they answered, that wee were fooles: because if hee would give them his whole Court, they would willingly take it and should doe wifely to. Receiving therefore the Garments, they be fought vs to make our prayers for Chan; which we did. So, taking our

leave, we went to Caracarum. But it happened vpon a certaine day, while wee were with the 50 Monke, farre from the Court, with other Embassadours; that the Monke caused the Table to be ftrucken in hard, that Mangu Chan heard it, and demanded what it was. Then they told him. So he asked, why he was remoued fo farre from the Court. They told him, because it was trou-

blefome to bring him Horfes and Oxen every day vnto the Court; and faid further, that it were better, that he should stay at Caracarum. Then Chan fent vnto him, saying, if hee would goe to Caracarum, and flay there, neere about the Church, he would give him all things necessarie. But the Monke antiwered, I came from the holy Land of Ierufalem hither, by the commandement of God, and left that Citie, wherein there are a thouland better Churches then that cf Caracarum. If he please that I flay here and pray for him, as God commanded me, I will stay: if not , I will returne to the place from whence I came. So that every evening Oxen were 60

brought him voaked to the Carts, and in the morning he was brought vnto the place wherehee vied to be before the Court. And a little before wee departed thence, a certaine Nellorien came, who feemed to bee a wife man : Bulgai the chiefe Secretarie placed him before his Court; to

whom Chan fent his children, that he should blesse them.

VV Ee came therefore to Caracarum. And while were were in Malter Williams house, my Chap. 46.

Chiefe came therefore to Caracarum. And while were were in Malter Williams house, my Chap. 46.

Chap. 46. hams hand, willing him to spend them in the behalfe of Chan, for the Friars necessities, which C. racarum, Refams hand, writing him to them the the shand of the Man of God, my Interpreter, comman turning he accompanied there; other fine he left in the shand of the Man of God, my Interpreter, comman companiesh ding to thend them upon the way, for my necessities. For Master williams had given them such Bantu a whole infructions, without our knowledge. I prefently changed one into money, and diffributed it moneth; deantitucions, without our anomicuge, specificity changes one time money, and untituded it moneth; design to the poore Cariffians, which were there: for all their eyes were fixed upon vs. Wee fpen parting, tegor another in buying necessaries things for vs. as garments, and other things, which were wanted, chroward the

which the third, the Man of God himfelt's bought fome things, wherein hee gayned fomewhat out to the which they notifiable with him: we finant the refl. and that no: because since week came into IC Which was profitable vato him : we spent the rest, and that to; because since wee came into Perfia, lufficient necessaries were no where given vs: nor yet any where among the Tarrars; He returned but we feldome found any thing to be fold there. Master Williams, sometimes your Citizen, sends by Pasa. you a certaine Girdle fet with a certaine precious-stone, which they vie to weare against thund A precious der and lightning, and infinitely falures you, alwaies commending you to God in his prayers: flone good afor whom, I shall neuer bee able to render sufficient thankes to God and you. Wee taptized sinfit thouser there in all fixe foules. Wee therefore departed one from the other with teares: my Comparate of the contract of the nion remayning with Mafter William; and I returning alone, with my Interpreter, my Guide. and one feruant; who had commandement to take one Mutton in foure dayes, for vs foure. Wee came therefore in two moneths and ten dayes from Caracaram to Bantu, and neuer law Towner, page 100 to 100 came therefore in two moneths and ten dayes from Caracarams to Basis, and neoc taw 1 owner, 700 to the Ri20 nor token of any house, bus Graues, except one Yillage, where in Wetate no Bread. Nor did we were 17 logs, is euer reit, in those two moneths, and ten dayes; saue one day, because wee could not get Horses, two moneths.

Wee returned for the most part by the same kind of people, and yet through other Countries and tendayes altogether: for we went in the Winter, and returned in the Summer, and by the higher parts in the summer. of the North by farre; except, that fifteene dayes journey wee mult goe and returne alwaies hard by a certaine River, betweene the Mountaines, where there is no lodging , but by the Ri A River beuer lide. We went two dayes, and sometimes three dayes, taking no food but Cosmos. Once Mountaines wee were in great danger, not being able to finde any people, our provision fayling vs, and our of biteene Horles tyred. When I had trauelled twentie dayes, I heard newes of the King of Armenia, that dayes journey,

he had pailed by.

In the end of August I met with Sartach himselfe, who went to Mangu Chan with Flockes Theend of 30 and Herds, and with his Wiues and Children: yet his great Families remayned betweene Ta- August he met nais and Etilia: And I did my dutie to him, faying, I would willingly stay in his Countrey; but Sartach in his Mangu Chan would not have mee returne, and carrie his Letters. Hee answered, that I might returne going eMangu Chan would not have mee returne, and carrie his betters. Hee answered, that I must to Mangu. performe the will of Mangu Chan. Then I asked Coinc for your children. Hee answered, they coinc the Priest were in the Court of Basts carefully recommended. I also required to have our Clothes, and of Sartach. Bookes againe: who answered, Did yee not bring them to Sarrach? I said, I brought them to Sartach, but I gaue them not vnto him, as yee know: and I replied to him, what answere I made, when he demanded whether I would give them to Sartach. Then hee answered, you say true, and none can refift the truth. Heft your goods with my father, who remayneth neere Sa-74; which is a new Towne Basts hath made you Essis, on the East shoare; but our Priests Saraisa new

have some of the vestments. If any thing like you (faid I) keepe it, so my Bookes be restored. Town, built Then he told me, he would report my words to Sartach. I must have Letters (faid I) to your Volga. Father, to restore mee all. But he was readie to bee gone, and said vnto mee, The traine of the Ladies followeth vs neere at hand. Yee shall alight there, and I will fend you Sarrachs answere by this man. I was very carefull he should not deceine me; yet I could not contend with him. Late in the euening the man came vnto me, whom he shewed me, and brought two Coats with him, which I thought had beene all of Silke, vncut: and he faid vnto me, Behold two garments : the one, Sartach hath fent to you; and the other, if it feeme good to you, you shall prefent to the King, on his behalfe. To whom I answered, I weare no such garments, I will preso fent them both vnto my King, in honour of your Lord. Then faid hee , doe wi h them what

you please; but it pleased me to fend them both vnto you, and I fend them to you by the bearer of these presents. He delivered him Letters also to the Father of Coiac, to restore mee all which appertayined vinto me, because he had no need of any thing which was mine. So wee came to They come to appertayined vinto me, because he had no need of any thing which was mine. So we came to the Court of Bastu the same day I departed thence, the yeere past; the second day after the Bastu, September 2011. Exaltation of the bleffed Croffe. And I found our young men in health, yet much afflicted with tem. 16.1254. penurie, as Goffet told me. And if the King of Armenia had not comforted them, and recom- cap. 18. mended them to Sartach, they had perished: for they thought I had beene dead. The Tartars The King of also demanded of them, if they could keepe Oxen, or milke Mares. For, if I had not returned, Armenia com-

they had beene brought into their feruitude. After this, Basin caused me to come vnto him, and made the Letters (which Manga Chan fends vnto you) to be interpreted vnto me. For io Manon wrote vnto him , that if it pleased him to adde any thing, or leaue out, or change, hee should doest. Then said hee, yee shall carrie these Letters, and cause them to bee understood. Hee demanded also what way I would goe, These inzen whether by Sea, or Land ! I said, the Sea was shut, because it was Winter, and I must goe by in the Winter.

Court to Ca-

Hungarie. \* Bigauimus wane-trauclling with Baatu a whole mo-His Guide was a lugur. They depart from Battu. The feuen mouthes of the River of The Village Sumerkent, or Alracan is in the latitude of 45. degrees. They goe no further downe, then Sumerkent The River of Velga frozen oner. He commeth to Sarai. Sarai is vpon Etilia. This from Afracan 60.Verfta. Chap. 47.

From Sarai of the Alam, and by the Lefgi, and by by Alexanders Inclosuresor Walls, by the Citie Shamaghi, by the gre... Plaine

A thort way by Land. For I thought you had beene yet in Spria, fo I directed my journey towards Perlia. For if I had thought you had passed into France, I would have gone into Hungarie: io I should son Her have come into France, and by a more case way then into Syria. Then wee travelled . moueth with him, before wee could have a Guide. At length, they appointed mee a certaine lugar, who vnderstanding I would give him nothing, and that I would goe forth-right into Armenia, caused Letters to be made, to conduct me to the Soldan of Turkie, hoping he should receive gifts of the Soldar, and that he should gayne more that way. Then we tooke our journey specdily (fifteene dayes before the Feast of Al-Saints) towards Sarai, going forth right Southward, descending neere to Etilia, which is divided into three Armes there below : every one where-17.0fOctober, of is almost twice as big as the River of Damiata. It maketh foure other leffer Armes; so that 10 we pasted that River in seven places by Boat. Vpon the middle Arme is the Village, called Sumerkent, without a wall: but when the River overflowes, it is compaffed with water. The Tartars were eight yeeres about it before they could take it : and the Alans, and the Saracens were in it. There we found one Duco-man, with his wife, a very good man, with whom Oolles flay ed in the Winter: for Sartaeb fent him thither to eafe his Court. About those parts was Bastu on the one fide of the River, and Sartach on the other, about Christmas, and they goe no further downe. And it falleth out, that all the River is frozen, fo they paffe ouer. Here is great flore of graffe, and there among the Caues theeues hid themselves, till the Ice melt. Coiacks father, receiving Sartachs Letters, reftored my veltments vnto mee, except three Albes and an Amice trimmed with fine Silke, and a Stole, and a Girdle, and a Tualia adorned with golden embroyderie, and a Surplice. He restored also vnto me the filuer Plate, except the Cenfer, and 20 the little Boxe where the Chrisme was. All which, the Priests which were with Sarrach had. Hee restored my Bookes, except our Ladies Psalter, which hee kept with my leaue, because ! could not denie it him : for he faid, Sartach tooke much delight in it. Hee also requested me, that if it happened, that I returned vnto those parts againe, I would bring them a man that knew how to make Parchment : for he made a great Church (by the Commandement of Sare tach) vpon the West side of the River, as he said, and a new Towne. Yet I know that Sartach the East fide of meaneth no fuch matter. Sarai and the Palace of Baars, are vpon the Easterne fide of the River. And the Valley through which the Armes of the River are spread abroad, contayneth more then feuen leagues in bredth. And there is great store of fish there. A Bible also in verse, and a cer- 30 called Uchoog, taine Booke in the Arabian, worth thirtie Sultanies, and many other things I neuer recoursed.

SO departing from him on the Feast of All-Saints, alwaies going toward the South, in the Feast of Saint Martin, we came to the Mountaines of the Alani. Betweene Basin and Sarai in fifteene dayes we found no people , but one of his fonnes , who went before him , with Falcons, and his Falconers, who were many, and one little Village. From the Feaft of All-Saints, for fine dayes, we found not a man : and wee were almost in great danger by reason of thirst, Swaces called one whole day and a night finding no water, till about three of the Clocke the next day, the Alani in thole Mountaines yet hold out, fo that, of ten of the Subjects of Sartach, two must Debent, by the come, to guard the straight and narrow passages of the Hills, left they come forth of the Moun- 40 Citie Samaron. taines, and fteale their Cattell in the Playne. Betweene the Alani, and Porta Ferrea, which is two dayes journey thence, where the Playne of Arcacci beginneth, betweene the Capian Sea and the Mountaines, there are certaine Saracens called, Lefgi, betweene the Mountaines, who likewise resist : so that those Tartars, who dwell at the foot of the Mountaines of the Alani, were faine to give vs twentie men, to bring vs beyond the Iron gate, or Porta Ferres. And I was glad, because I hoped to see them armed. For I could never see their Armour, though I had beene very delirous. And when we came to the dangerous Passage, of twentie there were two of thiss, where which had Habergions. And I demanded, whence they had them? They faid, they had gotten our and Arases them of the Alam aforefaid, who are good Worke-men for fuch things, and excellent Smiths. meet together. Whereupon, I thinke, they have small store of Armour, but Quiuers, and Bowes, and Leather 50 lackes. I faw them presented with Iron Plates, and Iron Sculls (capillos) out of Persia. And faw two also, who presented themselves to Mangu, armed with Coats made of Hogs skins bent inward, of rough Leather, which were very vnfit, and vnwildy. Before we came to Porta fer-A Castle of the rea, wee found one Castle of the Alani, which was Mangu Chans: for hee had subdued that Countrey. There we first found Vineyards, and drunke Wine. The day following, wee came A description to Porta ferrea, which Alexander the Macedonian King made. And it is a Citie whose East end of Porta ferres, is vpon the Sea illoare, and there is a little Plaine betweene the Sea and the Monntaines, through which the Citie is stretched forth in length vnto the top of the Mountaine which bordereth vpon it on the West: so that there is no way aboue, for the roughnesse of the Mountaines, nor below for the Sea, but forth-right through the middest of the Citie ouerthwart, where there is 60 an Iron gate, from whence the Citie hath the name. And the Citie is more then a mile long, and in the top of the Hill a strong Castle; and it is as much in bredth, as a great stones cast: it hath very strong walls without Trenches, and Turrets of great polished stones. But the Tartare have delitroyed the tops of the Turrets, and the Bulwarkes of the Walls, laying the Turrets euen with the Wall. Beneath that Citie, the Countrey was wont to bee like a Paradife. Two dayes journey hence, we found another Citie called Samuron, wherein there were many Samaten a Ci-

lener. And when we past it, we saw walles descending from the Mountaines to the Sea. And the of lewer. leauing the way by the Sea by those walles, because it bent towards the East, wee went up into the high Countries towards the South. On the morrow, wee paffed through a certaine Valley, The inclosures the high Countries towards the Journal of the monthly the panel and there was no or walks of A-wherein the foundations of walks appeared, from one mountaine to another, and there was no known that the countries of the known to t way through the tops of the Mountaines. These were sometimes the Inclosures or walles of Other inclo Alexander, restraining the fierce Nations, (to wit) the Shepheards of the Wildernes, that they sures where the could not inuade the inhabited Countries and Cities. There are other walles or Inclosures where lever are. to lewes are. The next day we came vnto a certaine great Citic, called Samag. And after this, we Or Samagi. temerare. The next day we called Moon, through which the River Cor floweth, of the which Plaine. the Curgi have their name, whom we call Georgians. And it runneth through the middle of Ti- cur, or the Rifis, which is the Metropolis of the Curgines, and in comes directly from the West running to the uer cpus. Eaft, to the foresaid Capian Sea, and it hath excellent Salmons. In that plaine wee found Tar. The Gargions. terragaine. Also by that plaine comes the River Arexes, which commeth from the greater Ar- The Gine Timenia from betwixt the South and West: of which it is called the Land Araxat, which is Ar - REC. 19.45. 27. menia it felfe. Whereupon in the booke of the Kings it is faid of the Sonnes of Sennacherib', that Note that the having flaine their Father they fled into the Land of the Armenians. And in Efay it is faid, that Hebrew text they fled into the Land of Ararat. To the West then of that most beautifull Plaine is Cargia, In bath Ararat they fled into the Land of Ararat. To the West thin to the art and the entrance of the into the places, that Plaine the Crofmin were wont to be. And there is a great Citie in the entrance of the Gangia, a great that Plaine the Crofmin were wont to be. Mountaines, called Ganges, which was their Metropolis, stopping the Georgians that they could Citie not come downe into the Plaine. Then wee came to the Bridge of Ships, which were faftened A bridge of together with a great Yron chaine, stretched forth crossethe River, where Cur, and Araves meet Ships. together. But Car lofeth his name there.

Frer that, wee went alwayes voward by Araxes, whereof it is faid ; Pontem dedignatur A- Chap. 48. Araxis, Araxes distaines a Bridge; Leauing Persia, and the Caspian mountaines on the left They alwaies hand, towards the South: on the right hand, (we sa, and the great Sea toward the Well: going goe vp the Ri.
Southwest betweene the South and the Well. We passed through the meadowers of Bareba, who by the Gine
General Wellshard Amin which is these within draws. And the bath mode the Care and 30 is Genetall of that Armie, which is there within Araxis : And hee hath made the Cargi, and Paxnon by the Turkes, and Persians subject to him. There is another Gouernour ( in Persia at Tanvinum, over the Country of Tribute) called Argon. Both which, Manga Chan hath called home to give place to his Brother Sabraja, by the comming into thole Countries. That Countrey which I have described to you, is not properly Calle Marjeucomming into those Countries. That Countries which I had advised to you, is not properly gen, by Aini, a

Per state, but was sometimes called Hyreania. I was in Bacchues house, and hee gaue vs Wine to Gitte of Sabes drinke, and he himfelfe dranke Cofmos, which I would willingly have drunke, if he had given it fa; they came me : yet it was the best new Wine : but Cofmos is more wholsome for an hunger-staruen man, to the Head of Wee went up therefore by the River Araxes, from the Fealt of Saint Clement, vnto the fecond Araxis. Sunday in Lent, till we came to the head of the River. And beyond that Mountaine where itrifeth, there is a goodly Citie, called Arferum, which belongeth to the Soldan of Turkie. And Bacebua Prince 40 neare thereabout Euphrates arileth towards the North, at the foot of the Mountaines of Cargia: of the Tartans to whose Spring I had gone, but the Snow was so great, that no man could goe out of the trodden haps the Ciris path : on the other fide of the Mountaines of Caucafus, towards the South arifeth Tigris.

When we departed from Bacebu, my Guide went to Taurinum to speake with Argon, carry- capian Sca(of ing my Interpreter with him. But Bacehs caused me to bee brought to a certaine Citie, called which it is now Naznan, which sometimes was the head of a certaine great Kingdome, and the greatest and fai- called the Sea reit Citie; but the Tartars have made it a Wildernes. And there were sometimes Eight hundred Churches of the Armenians there : now there are but two little ones : for the Saracens name have deftroyed them : In one of the which, I held the feast of Christmas as I could with our The head of Clerke. And the next day following, the Priest of that Church dyed : to whose buriall came a Tigris. certaine Bishop, with twelue Monkes of the high Countries. For all the Bishops of the Arme-of Tuessas of the Greeke likewise, for the greater part. That Bishop told me, that joint in the commitment of the Greeke likewise for the greatest Cine there was a Church neere that, where Saint Bartholmen, and like wife Saint Indas Thaddam were of Armenia. martyred: but there was no way open for Snow. He told me alfo, that they have two Pro- Barthelmen and phets: The first or chiefe is Methodism the Martyr, who was of their Country, and plainely Pro- Thaddem Mar-Phefied of the Ismaelites. Which Prophetie is fulfilled in the Saracens. The other Prophet is called tyrs. phefied of the Ifmaelites: Which Prophesie is stillslied in the Gracum. The other Prophet is called Yr.
Acaron, who when hee dyed, Prophesied of a Nation of Arebor, that thould come from the Methodium.
North, saying; That they should Conquer all the Countries of the East: and should spare the Ordense. Kingdome of the East, that he might give them the Kingdome of the West. But he faith, our Prophesie. Friers the Frankes being Catholikes, beleeve them not : And they shall possesse the Countries

from North to South : and shall come vnto Constantinople, and shall take the Port of Constanti-60 mople. And one of them, who shall be called a Wife man, shall enter the Citie : and seeing the Churches and rites of the Frankes, shall cause himselfe to be Baptized, and shall counsell the Frankes, how they may kill the Emperour of the Tartars; and there they shall be confounded. Hearing this, the Frankes which shall be in the middle of the Land, (to wit) Hierufalem, shall set

Mountaines on the which fied. Or Cemanium aTowne or a Armenian fa-

Armenians, shall pursue them : so that the French King shall place his Roy Il Throne at Taurinum in Perfia. And then all East Countries, and all the unbeleeuing Nations shall be concerted to the Faith of Christ. And there shall be so great Peace in the world, that the Living shall say to the Dead, Woe be vnto you wretches, that lived not vntill these times. I read this Prophesie brought to Constantinople by the Armenians, which remaine there, but I made light of it. Yet, when I spake with the said Bishop, calling it to minde, I regarded it the more. And throughout all that Armenia, they as firmely believe this Prophetie as the Gofpell. Hee faid vinto vs alfo : Euen as the Soules in Limbo expected the comming of Christ for their delivery ; so doe we looke for your comming that we might be freed from this flauery, wherein wee hane fo long lived. Neere the 10 City (Vaxn m) aforefaid, there are Mountaines, on the which (they fay) the Arke of Noab refted. North Arke re- And there are two, one greater then the other, and Araxes runneth at the foote of them. And there is a little Towne there, called Cemainum, which is by Interpretation, Eight: for (they fay) it was to called of the Eight persons, which came foorth of the Arke, and built it. Many have affayed to climbe the greater Hill, and could nor. And that Bishop told me, that a certaine Monke was very much troubled, and an Angell appeared vnto him, and brought him a piece of the wood of the Arke, willing him to trouble himselfe no more. That piece of Wood they had in their Church, as he told me. Neither is the Hill to high in appearance, but that men might well get vp vnto it. A certaine Old man shewed me a fufficient reason, why none should climbe it. They The Mountain call that Mountaine Massis: and it is of the Feminine gender in their Tongue. No man (faith 29 he) must climbe up Massis, because it is the Mother of the world.

In that Citie (of Varnan) Frier Bernard Cathalane, of the Order of the Preaching Friers found

me; who abode in Georgie, with a certaine Prior of the Sepulcher, who possessed lands

Tephelis.

Snow.

Ianuary 14.

Lanuary 18.

there. And he had learned somewhat of the Tarters language. Who went with a certaine Hungarian Frier to Taurinum, to defire Argons Paffe to Sartach. When they came there, they could not have accesses and the Hungarian Frier returned by me to Tophelis with one Servant : but Frier Bernard remained at Taurinum with a certaine Lay Frier, whose language he understood not. We went out of the Citie of Vaxnan in offanie of the Epiphanie : for we had flayd long there by reason of the Snow. We came therefore in toure dayes to the Countrey of Sabenfa, a certain (ingine, sometimes mighty, but now tributary to the Tartars, who destroyed all his Munition : 30 The Countrey whose Father Zacharias got that Countrey of the Armenians, having delivered them from the hands of the Saracens. And there are many faire Villages of true Christians, having Churches

right like the Frankes. And every Armenian hath in his house, in an honourable place, a wooden hand holding a Croffe, and he fets a burning Lampe before it : And that which we doe with holy Water, formkling it to drive away wicked Spirits, they doe the same with Frankinsence. For epery evening they burn Frankinsence, carrying it through all the corners of the house, to rid them of all kinde of Enemies. I ate with the forefaid Sabenfa, and he did me great reverence, both he and his Wife, and his fonne Zachary was a very-faire and wife young man. Who demanded of me, that if he should come vnto you, whether yee would entertaine him ! for he so hardly brooketh the Dominion of the Tartars, that, though he have plenty of all things, he had rather tra- 40 uaile into a strange Country, then indure their Lord-like Dominion. They said further, that they were sonnes of the Church of Rome: and if the Lord Pope would fend them any ayde, they would bring all the bordering Nations vnto the fubiection of the Church.

A Towns of Sabenfa. The Countrey of the Soldans of Turkie. day in Lene.

From that Towne of his, in fifteene dayes, we entred the Countrey of the Soldan of Turkie, vpon the first Sunday in Lent. And the first Castle we found, is called Mar fengen. All in the Cafile were Christians, Armenians, Curgines, and Greekes: The Saracens onely have the Dominion. There, the Captaine of the Castle said, he had received commandement, that no victuals should be given to any Franke, or to the Ambassadours of the King of Armenia, or of Vastacius. So that from the place where wee were the first Sunday in Lent, vnto Cyprus, (whether I came eight dayes before the Feath of Saint John Baptift) we must buy our promision. He, who was my guide 50 procured me Horses, and tooke money for the victuals, and put it in his purse. When he came into the Fields, seeing a slocke any where, hee violently tooke one Sheepe, and gaue it to his family to eate, and maruailed I would not eate of his robbery. In the Purification I was in a certaine Ci-February the s. tie called Ains, which was Sahenfas, whose situation is most strong: and there are there a thou-The Citie Ami, fand Armenian Churches, and two Synagogues of the Saracens. The Tarrars place a Baily there. belonged to There five Preaching Friers met me, whereof foure came from Pronince in France, and the fift ioyned himselfe to them in Syria, and they had but one ficke Boy, who could speake Turkish, and a little French : And they had the Popes letters to Sarrach, and to Mangu Chan, and to Buri; letters to Sar. fuch as your Highnes gaue me, Letters of request, that they would fuffer them to continue in their Country, and Preach the Word of God, &c. But when I told them what I had seene, and how 60 they fent me backe againe, they directed their journey to Tephelis, where there are Friers of their Order, to confult what they should doe. I faid vnto them they might well passe, by those Letters, if they would : but they should bee well affured to indure much labour, and render an account of their comming: for feeing they had no other meffage, but the office of Preaching, they

would care but a little for them, and chiefly, because they had no Interpreter. What they did after,I know not.

He second Sunday in Lent, we came to the head of Araris, and passing beyond the top of Chap.ag. the Mountaine, we came to Emphrates ; by the which wee descended eight dayes, alwayes They come to going to the Welt, vntoa certaine Caltle, called Camuth. There Euphrates bendeth to the South Eughrates, to towards Halapia, But we pailing the River went through very high hilly Countries, and through the Caffle catowards Halapia. But we pating the Killer went through very high himy Countries and through math, they palle the deepe Snow to the West. There was so great an Earthquake there that yeare, that in one into Cyprus, as-Citie called Arlengan, tenne thousand persons noted by name, persshed, beside poore men of terward to Are Io whom there was no notice taken. Riding three dayes together, we faw the gaping of the Earth, tiochia, and as it was cleft by the Earthquake, and the heapes of Earth which came from the Mountaines, thenceto Trias it was tiert on the tailinguage and filled the valleyes; to that if but a little more of the Earth had beene moued, that which Efay 1the Citie Are freaketh had beene literally fulfilled. Enery valley shall be filled, and enery Mountaine, and little bill forgomishing shall be bumbled. We passed through the Valley where the Soldan of Turkie was vanquished of the shaken with an Tartars. It were too long to write how he was ouercome. But a certaine feruant of my guides Earthquike, who was with the Tartars, faid; That the Tartars were not about tenne thousand in the whole, The gaing of the earth close and a certaine Curgine, a feruant of the Soldans, faid ; That there were two hundred thousand uen. with the Soldan, all Horsemen, In that plaine where the Battaile was, nay that flight, there brake The Vall , out a great Lake, at the time of the Earthquake. And my heart told me; that all that Earth ope- where the Solac ned her mouth to receiue yet more blood of the Saracens. We were in Sebaste of the lester Ar- dan of Turkie menia in Easter weeke. There we visited the Tombes of forty Martyrs. There the Church of ed of the Tar-Saint Blace flandeth : but I could not goe thither, because it was aboue in the Castle. On Low-Sunday we came to Cefaria of Cappadocia; where there is a Church of Saint Bafill the great. A. Sibafle of the bout fifteene dayes after we came to Iconium, making small journies, and resting in many places : lesser Aomenia. because we could not so readily procure Horses. And my guide did this of purpose; taking vpon made. him to follicite his owne busines three dayes, in every Towne: whereupon, I was much grieved, but durst not speake, because he might have fold, or slaine me and our feruants, and there was padois. none to gaine-lay it. I found many Frankes at Iconium, and a certaine Ianuenfian Marchant, cal- Iconium, led Nicholas de Santto Syrio. Who with a certaine companion of his a Venetian, called Boniface de 30 Molendino, carried all the Allum out of Tarkie, so that the Soldan could not fell any, but to those two: and they made it so deare, that what was wont to be sold for fifteene Bizantians, is now The Selden of fold for fifty. My guide prefented me to the Soldan; The Soldan faid, he would willingly cause Iconium. me to be convayed to the Sea to Armenia, or Cilicia. Then the forefaid Marchant knowing that the Saracens made little accompt of me, and that I was much burthened with the company of my guide (who troubled me euery day to give him gifts) caused me to be conveyed to Curcum a ha a Hauen of the King of Armenia. I came the three the day before the Ascension, and stayed till the our against day after Penticolt. Then I heard, that Ambassadours came from the King to his Father. Then I the East part of went freedily to the Kings father, to demand, whether hee had heard any newes of his Sonne : the Hand of Cy. And I found him fet with all his Sonnes one excepted, called Barum Ufin: Who made a certaine priss. 40 Caftle. And he received newes from his Sonne, that hee was returned : And that Mangu Chan Barum Vim.

had much eafed his Tribute, and had given him a Priviledge, that no Ambaffadour should come Ayax or Giazzo into his Countrey. Whereupon the old man him felfe, with all his Sonnes made a great Banquet. June the 16, he And he canfed me to be conveyed to the Sea, to the Hauen called Ayax : and thence I paffed on came to cyprus. uer into Cyprus. And at Nucofia I found our Prouinciall, who the fame day carried me with him Inne 29. to Antiochia, which is in very weake state. Wee were there on the Feast of Saint Peter and Tripolis Paul. From thence we came to Tripolis, where our Chapter was, in the Affumption of the Blef- August 15.

Nd our Provinciall determined that I should leave Acon not suffering me to come ynto you: Chap. 50. Commanding, to write vnto you, what I would by the bearer of these Presents. And not He writeth daring to relift contrarie to my chedience, I did according to my power, and understanding : craKing Lodowick uing pardon of your inuincible Clemencie for my superfluities, or wants, or for any thing that and give the his shall be undiscreetly, nay foolishly spoken, as from a man of little understanding, not accusto- adulte, tor senmed to indite long Histories. The Peace of God which passeth all under standing presence your ding of a fee heart and understanding.

I would willingly fee your Highnesse, and certayne spiritual friends, which I have in your the Tartars. Kingdome. Wherefore, if it should not bee contrarie to your Maiesties liking, I would befeech you to write to our Provinciall, that he would let me come vnto you, and returne flortly againe into the Holy Land.

Concerning Turkie, your Maiestie shall understand, that the tenth man there, is not a Sarar The weake ecen: nay, they are all Armenians, and Greekes, and Children rule over them. For the Soldan who flat o. Talke. was conquered of the Tarrars, had a lawfull Wife of Hiberia, by whom he had one feel le Sonne, concerning whom he charged, that he should be the Soldan. He had another of a Greeke Concubine, whom he gaue to a certayne great Admirall. The third, hee had of a Turke. To whom

The Baffard

The weake estage of Va-Ru us and Af-

The flare of the King of Hung ria. Godfrey of Bul-I'm and many

in food and rayment.

What Meffage

many Turks and Turcomans being gathered together, the y purposed to have slame the Sonnes of the Christians. They ordayned aifo (as I understood) to at after they had gotten the Victorie. they would destroy all the Churches, and kill as many as would not become Saracens. But hee was ouercome, and many of his men flaine. Hee renued his Armie the fecond time, and then was taken, and is yet in Prifon, Pacafter the Sonne of the Greeke Concubine procured of Filia-Pacaffer geneth fler, that he might be Soldan, because the other was weake, whom they fent to the Tartars. the Kingdome. Whereupon, his Kindred on the Mothers fide (to wit) the Hiberi, and the Curgi were angry. So that a child ruleth in Turkee, having no Treature, few Warriours, and many Enemies. The Son of Vastacine is weake, and hath warre with the Sonne of Affan, who likewife is a child, and worne out with the feruitude of the Tartars. Wherefore, if an Armie of the Church should to come to the Holy Land, it were a very easie thing to subdue all these Countries, or to passe

The King of Hungarie hath not about thirtie thousand Souldiers. From Cullin to Constantinople are not about threefcore dayes journey by Waggons. From Constantinople are not so many dayes journey to the Countrey of the King of Armenia. In old time, valiant men paffed through these Countries, and prospered, yet they had most valiant Relisters; whom God hath now deother Princes, stroyed out of the Earth. And we need not be in danger of the Sea, nor in the mercie of Savlers. And the price which wee should give for traight, were sufficient for expenses by Land. I Tartars thriftie speake it confidently, if your Countrimen (I say not Kings and Souldiers) would goe, as the Kings of the Tartars goe, and bee contented with tuch victuals, they might winne the whole 20 World. It feemeth not expedient (as I thinke) that any Frier goe vinto the Tartars any more, as I did, or as the Preaching Friers doe. But if our Souereigne Lord the Pope would honourably fend a Bilhop, and answere their tollies: which they have thrife written to the Frankes: once flould be tent to Pope Innecent the Fourth of Sacred Memorie, and twice to your Maiestie, once by David, who to the Tartars. deceived you, and now by me, he might speake vnto them what he would, and also cause them to put those things in writing. For they heare whatsoeuer an Ambassadour will speake, and alwayes demand, if he will lay any more. But he must have a good Interpreter; nay, many Interpreters, and large Expenses.

> COr the Readers better satisfastion touching the former Authour, and knowledge of the North 30 F parts of Asia and Europe and for His owne sake also, I have added this Transcript of our famous Countriman Frier Bacon, which I have not Englished, both to prevent tedion fielle in this Worke, otherwife more then enough voluminous; and because he was an Historian, no Traneller; and the vie thereof is principally to such as can reade his owne motome; a good part also being the same with that which our former Frier hash delinered.

## CHAP. II.

Ex quarta parte Maioris operis fratris Rogeri Bacon, Angli excerpta quædam de Aquilonaribus mundi partibus.

Mare Scythi.

Porta ferrea vel

Derbent Vid.

Phu. 1-6, c.11.

videfis etiam

O tel. Thef.

Geog. Mare Caspium

fit ex concursu

P!in. 1.6.6.13.

Ruminum.

lid.Erm.



D Aquilonarem vero partem Indix, vt dictum est, funt Mare Scythicum , & montes illi magni, qui Caucalus & Taurus, & multis alijs nominibus vocantur, secundum dinersitatem locorum & Gentum. Et ab Occidente eft Perfida sen Parthia & Media. Deinde sub eis ad Occidentem est Melopotamia & tota Syria, vt dichumest. Sedin

confinio Media & Parthia eft Porta ferrea Alexandri; que est Cinitas denommata à Portis. Et ille porte dicuntur Caspix, non Caucana, ve dicit Plinius. Nam alie sunt porta Caucasia, ve postea dicetur. Quia in littore Maris Calpia sunt ha Porta. Est enim Mare quoddam quod fit ex concur su maximorum suminum vententium ab Aquilone, & Caspium vecatur, 50 atque Hircanicum secundum Plinium. Nam Catpij & Hircani super lutora illius Maris inhabitant. Non igitur est hoc Mare veniens ab Oceano, ve Indores & Plinius, & omnes Authores Occidentales seribunt. In hoc enim casu non habuerunt experientiam certam, nec per se, nec per alios, sed ex rumore

In libris autem de moribus Tartarorum, & per fide dignos, qui in illis Regionibus fuerunt, patet, quod hoc Mare sit ex concur su fluminum. Et est Mare satis magnum, Nam circuitus est quatuor mensium. Et Hircania prope, est super littue Meridionale illius Maris in termino Parthix. Et vbi Par-Mare Caspium this consungitur Medic in Portu illis, extenditur à Portis Caspis versus Orientem, vt dicit Plinius. terra undiquiq, Deinde contra residuum Media ad eius Septentrionem, o ad Occidentem Hitcanix est maior Armenia: & eam dividit Euphrates à Capadocia, ve dieu Plinius. Propter quod Capadocia est ad Occiden- 60 tem Armenia maiorie. Deinde ver su Syriam & Mare nostrum eft Cilicia, qua dicitur Armenia muor. Unde iacet partim Medio, partim in Occidente Capadocia; & eine principium non distat ab Antiochia per duas dietas. Sub Cilicia ad Septentrionem super Mare comprehenduur Pamphilia, ve dicit Plinius, negleita gente Haurica, vel non computata per se propter prasutatem, sed sub eu compre

benfa, In Cilicia est Taifus Metropolis eius ; in quo natus fuit Beatus Apostolus Paulus, Et durat Cilicia a meridie in Septentrionem per Tarlum in latitudine circiter quatuor diciau versus Turkiam. Turkia. Chicia a meriaie in septentrionem per l'attoine, vbi est lconium celeberrima Cinitat; à qua Lycaonia lycaonia, Nam ad Septentrionem Cilicia est Lycaonia, vbi est lconium celeberrima Cinitat; à qua Lycaonia lconium. dictur quest Iconia. Unde Princeps eorum vocatur Soldanus Iconij & Turkie. Et à finiem Arme-Soldanus nix of que l'conium sunt octo diete. Nomina Prouinciarum in his Regionibus suot multum mutata prop- koni ter querras. Nam Turkia multas terras occupat que apud Authores babent nomina antiqua. Vi est pars Alix minoris, & Phrygia & Lydia. Alia ver o maior continet plus medietate Mundi, & totums prater Europam & Africam : unde continet hanc Aliam minorem. Et hac nunc vocatur apud Gracos Anatoli, id est, Orientalis Græcia : in qua est Galatia; unde Galatæ, quibus scribit Apostolus: 10 & Trois dientur illa formofissima Cinitas: & sunt alia mute, vi Epheius, & 7. Ecclesia Apocalyp.

lis; & Nicea: unde Synodus Nicena, & multa alia. Et ab Icomo vique Niceam funt 20. dieta in astate: cr abeaufque ad Brachium Santli Georgij (quod apud antiquos vocatur Hellespontus) Mare mier Italiam & Antiochiam. Et ibs terminatur Alia minor, Et habet a parte Occidentis Thraciam, Macedoniam, & Achaiam. Aparte vero meridici babet Mare illud, quod est inter Italiam & Graciam, & Antiochiam, & Egyptum. Ab Oriente habet Phrygiam. Nam vt dieit Plinius curialite, Phrygia Troadi superetetta Septentrionali sua parte Galatis continua est, meridiana Lycaonia ab Occidente Capadocia babet. Et dicit quod Lydia, Phrygia ex ortu selis vicina est, unde fuit Croslus dirifimu Rex Lydoru, Brachium vero Sancte Georgij eff frietum multum, o habes Coitantinopolim ab Occidente in Europa, Et extenditur à Mari magno quod est inter Asiam & Egyptum, Syriam, & I-

20 talia, circuter centum leucas versus Aquilonem, vsq. ad aliud Mare, quod vocatur Ponticum, & Mare Maus Et ifind Mare habet formamarcue Scytlici; o multas Regiones disterminat. Vinde bic incipiunt Regiones Aquilonares: de quibus Philosophi meridiani parum sciuerunt, secundum quad Ethicus Astronomus refert in suo libro. Sed hic perambulauit omnes has Regiones, & Mare Oceanum Septentrionale cum Insulis suis nauigauit. Volo sequi spsum : & mhilominus libros de moribus Tartaronim : & Regiones Aquiprecipue fratrem Willielmum, quem Dominus Rex Francia, Lodouicus in Syria existens misis ad ter- lonares. ram Tattarorum anno Domini 1253. Qui frater scripsit Domino Regi situm Regionum & Marium, Oceanus Sepram i artarotum anno Domini 1935. Extenditur autem hoc Mare maius ab Occidente, scilicet à Constantinopoli in Oriens, per mille qua-Quibus auto dringenta milliaria in longum: O in medio eius coarctatur ex otrad, parte in angulos: O in angulo ribus ofus eft meridiano est castrum & portus Tutkix, quod vocatur Sinopolis : A parte vero Aquilonic babet aliud maxime. 30 castrum in anoulo, quod vocatur Soldaia; & est in Pronincia que nune Castaria dectur, id est, Caisa- Sinopolis.

ria, Et sunt trecenta miliaria inter Sinopolim & Soldaiam. Et bac est latitudo maris inter illos an- Soldaia. pulos. Et ista castra sunt duo portus famost, à quibus transcunt bomines à meridanis Regionibus ad Aquulonares & è contrario. Et ab istis caftris versus Occidentem seu Constantinopolim extenditur Mare per septingenta milliaria in longum & latum, simulter ad Orientem per septingenta. Et ista Prouincia Caffaria circundatur Mari a tribus lateribus. Nam in Occidente habet partem Maris Pontici, vbi Caffaria sim Cattaru circunasiur iviais a tribus inicious. Tous tribus comentario and the propension of Infula, in qua est Tem-fut appellata est ciuntas Kersona, in qua sut sanctus Cher-Taurica Cherplum, quod dicitur Angelicus manibus praparatum, in quo corpus Sancti sepultum fuit. Et a Kersoua soncius. 21g, ad Soliaiam sunt quadringinta castra, quorum quodlibet fere habet proprium Idioma. Et sunt ibi Kersoua ciuitea multi Goti, qui omnes loquuntur Teutonicum. Et à parte meridiei Cassaria extendiur Mare Ponti- Goti. 4 Ccum : Et in Oriente eins cadit flumen Tanais in Mare, vbi habet latitudinem duodecim miliariorum.

whi est Civitas Matrica. Et flumen illud versus Aquilonem facit Mare quoddam, habens septuaginta Matrica civitas miliaria in longitudine & latitudine, nufquam habens profunduatem vitra 6. pedes. Et hoc Mare est Palus Mæoiis. Palus Maotis famosifima, de qua Philosophi & Historia & Pocta loquuntur.

Et slimen Tanais extenditur vitra illam paludem versus Aquilonem vsg, ad montes Riphæos; qui Montes Riphæi. funt in Vitimo Aquilonis : a quibus montibus oritur hoc flumen, o descendit per longum terratracium in Paludem supradictam, saciens eam: & ultra eam disgraditur, & fluit in Mare Ponticum, ut predixi. Et bec flumen fam (um dividit Europam ab Afia in locis illis , & Palus illa & plures paludes funt contigua: fed quasi pro una computantur, & vocantur paludes Maotis: vel Maotida in adiectino, Paludes igitur illa que vocantur Mare illud vadosum sunt in Oriente Costatia; & pars fluminio 50 Tanais, que est inter paludes & Mare Ponticum. Et bac Pronincia Callaria habet ab Aquilone va-

flam folitudinem, qua extenditir a flumme Tanai in Oriente vig, ad Danubium in Occidente itinere villa solitude. duorum mensium velociter equitando, sicut equitant Tartari. Et hoc est una die quantum est ab Aure-Tartaricum lianis Paritis. Vnde durat hec terra circuler 4, menfes, secundum quod alig homines communiter equi- iterergo eft e4. tant. Et hac terra fuit tota Cumanorum, qui dicebantur Captac. Sed Tartari destruverum eans to- milarierum vetant. Et bac terra juit tota Cumanorum, qui cuceranim Capiac. Sea lattati acifimitation taluer. G interfecerunt Cumanos, prater partem que fugit ad Regnum Hungaria, qui funt es tributaCuniani. rii : Et a Teuronicis dicitur Valana: A Plinio & Hodoro & ceteris Alania Occidentalis. Et bac Capiac. Prouncia babet Daneburn, & Poloniam, & Hungariam, ab Occidente. Et ab Aguilone iftius Alania Occi-Provincia est Russia magna : que similiter a Polonia in una parte sua extenditur ad Tanaim; sed in dentalu. magna sui parte habet Leucoma: a in Occidente (que est terra ita magna sient Alemannia:) Ad cuius Russia magna

6c Partem Occidentalem unt multa terra in circuitu Maris cuinflam : quod Mare sit per multa Brechia Maris Ocean que vervoit per medium Dacia, & vivra versus Orientem delatat se magnum Mare, guare Swecium-qued ab Occidente babr: Daciam & Sweciam : Sed Swecia est ad Aquisonem Dacia: declivans all-lucia. quantulum in Orientem vitra Daviam: vitra quas ad Aquilonem est Norquegia. Deinde Mars mag- Swica. no interiecto funt Scotia & Anglia : & Marsparuo interposito Hibernia. Nota sunt he Regiones : fed Norquegia

Circundatum. Capadocia. Cilicia vel Ar-

Prolem zus primus prodidit

1.0 ma hore fierers H. fterlings. Liuonia. Pruffia. Semigailia,

Albania.

versus Orientem, primo est Hibernia, secundo Britannia maior, qua continet Angliam & Scotiam : Deinde Norguegia, Swecia, Dacia, & post in Orientem versus est mugnum mare pradiction, qued Marc Orientale, vocatur mare Orientale; quia Oceanus non se extendit vitra aliud mare: Sed super latus Aquilonare istus maris immediate post angulum Swecia: est Estonia: deinde Liuonia versus Orientem illins mavocane na inco. ru: deinde Curonia seu Curlandia declinando ad Meridianum latus : postea Prussia magna terra in le in nofini bi- Meridiano latere : deinde Pomerania : postea Lubec portus magnus & famosus in consinte Dacia & Saxonia. In medio istius maris est Insula quadam, qua vocatur Gotlandia. Et super Liuoniam ad Orientem est Semigallia. Curoniam circundat Leucon: a praditta, & etiam circundat Ruffia macua ex viraque parte maris dicti, & terminatur Meridiana ad Prustiam & Poloniam. Polonia vero sacet 10 ad Meridiem Pruffix : & ad Meridiem eius est Bohemia : deinde Austria. Et ad Occidentem terrarum istarum Alemannia ; & postea Francia & Hispania. Sed ha nota sunt : facio tamen mentionem. propter alias. Ad Orientem Austriz & Bohemiz est Hungaria, ad quam Occidentalis pars Albaniz Danubii ducde. descendit. Nam cadit super Danubium, qui fluit per medium Hungaria, & vitra cam in mare Ponticum per duodecim oftia magna. In termino vero Hungaria Orientalis a parte Aquilonis occurrit Vel Valachi. Moldana, comra quam ad Meridiem Danubij funt " Balchi & Bulgari & Constantinopolis, and terre antiquitus vocabantur Thracia. Albama igitur Occidentalis extenditur à Danubio post finem Hungarie versus Orientem vsque ad flumen Tanaim ; habens Cassariam à Meridie, & Balchiam.

tango eas propter notstiam alsorum. Si ergo à finibus Occidentalibus ex parte Aquilonis afcendamus

Albania Occi-

Et ultra Russam ad Aguilonem est Gens Hyperborea, que sie nominatur a montibus magnis, qui 20 vocantur Hyperborei. Es hac Gens propter aeris salubritatem viuit in syluis. Gens longana vique quo quorum fabulis, fustidant mortem, optimarum consuctudinum. Gens quieta & pacifica, null nocens, nec ab alia Gente molestatur : sed confugiunt ad eam sicus ad assum. Qualiter aucem potest Regio ibi esse temperatissima. tetios prius in complexionibus locorum Mundi. Et sic habemus regiones Aquilonares in Europa notabiles. Ritus vero istarum Gentium sunt dinersi. Nam Pruteni, Curlandi, Liuonij, Estonij, Semigalli, Leuconij funt Pagani. Alani vero non funt, quia Tartari ceperunt terram illam, & fuganerunt omnes, vique in Hungariam. Et Cumani funt Pagani : & Alani fuerant similuer, sed deleti funt. Ruteni funt Christiani, & funt scismatici, babentes ritum Gracorum, sed non viuntur lingua Graca: immo lingua Sclauonica : qua est una de linguis, que plures occupat regiones. Nam Rustiam, Polo- 30 niam & Bohemiam, & multas alsas Nationes tenet. Tartari vero à Danabio in ho

Bulgariam & Constantinopolim. Ab Occasu vero Hungariam & Poloniam, & extremitatem.

Ruix: ab Aquilone habet totam longitudinem Ruffix.

Alani deleti. Decft linea.

Pigani.

Tartari.

in terram Alanorum seu Cunamorum, & viterius, vique fere ad partes vitimas Orientis, & alias Nationes eis vicinas ad Aquilonem & Meridiem subinganerunt pro maxima parte. Nam alique Gentes sunt in montanis & locis tuissimis, quas non possunt debellare, licet sint eis vicini, quia funt inexturnabiles.

Montes Riphæi. Albania fu-

Etilia florion,

wane Edel, &

Volga, crescit

non ex eadem

caufa, quia Ni-

lus, nec eodem

Tanais quidem fluuius descendit à montibus Riphæis altissimis, qui sunt in vero Aquilone: necest ultro illos ad Aquilonem habitatio. Et in termino Orientali Ruffia & Alania, ubi mercatores & alu Hot Cafale bodie conuentunt de Hungaria & Cailaria, & Polonia & Ruffia est quoddam Cafale, vbi nauigio pertranfivocaur Asou, tur flumen Tanais, Et est Tanais ibi ad latitudmem Sequanæ Parilijs. Et vlira flumen illudest Albania superior vique ad alind flumen magnum, quod vocatur Etilia, que maior est in quadruplo quam. 40 Sequana : & est de maioribus fluminibus Mundi ; & crescit in astate sicut Nilus : & à parte Aquilonis distat boc slumen à Tanai per decem dietas : sed versus meridiem multum seperantur. Nam Tanais cadit in mare Ponticum, & Etilia in mare Caspium : & facit illnd mare, cum alijs stuminibus multis, que veniunt de Perside & aligs locis. Nam à Pontico mari secundum Plinium sunt tricenta olloginta milliaria vique ad mare Caspium. Et in hac terra habitabant Cumani. Sed Tartari deleue. runt omnes, sicut ex altera parte fecerunt ofque ad D mubium, or dictum est. Et Tartari habent pecomodo : fed Hyem congelatur; ra infinita, & habitant in tentorijs, non habentes villu nec castra nistrarissime. Et unsu Princeps cum eflute l'quefiunt exercitu, & cum suis armentis gregum vagatur inter duo flumina. Ui vinus inter Borithenem & Tanaim : alius inter Tanaim & Etiliam ; & fic vitra versus Orientem, quia semper dinist sunt per de ex fabulu & pascua & aquam. Et à l'annario incipiunt adirepartes Aquilonarei inxta flumina osque ad Augustum: 50 antiquandis an. C tune redeunt ver sus meridianas propter frigus Aquilonis in byeme. Et ver sus Aquilonema stat Etiquitatis rugis. tilia à Prouincia Cassaria per unum mensem o tres dietas, sicus equitant Tartati. Hec vero terra Dolle tamen au- Tartarorum inter Tanaim & Etiliam habet ab Aquilone quasdam Gentes : & primo est Gens Athor iste, cuius rimplica propemontes Riphicos, qua est similus Hyperboreus in \* omnibus. Et ha dua Gentes surt prope polum in Aquilone. Sed remotius ab Aquilone vitra Tanaim est primo Gens que vocatur Moi la detecta, nec Subiecta Tartaris. Et sunt adhuc sine lege pure Pagani : ciuitatem non habent, sed casulas in sil-Etilia, velVol. nis. Dominus corum & magna pars corum fuerunt interfecta in Polonia per Polonios & Alemanga. Etil. Tar- nos & Boemos. Nam Tartari duxerunt eos ad bellum cum Polonis : & multum approbant Polonos toricum nomen, & Alemannos de firenuitate; sperantes adbuc liberare à seruitute Tattarorum per eos. Se mercator Volga Me seus ventat inter eos, oportet quod ille in cuius domo primo hospitatur, det es expensas quantum vult ibi mo- 60 ticum. Nota rari, Hac enim est consuctudo illius Regionis. Post hos ad Orientem est Cens quadam que vocatur

quad maior Bul. Mercluini, subietti Tarcaris. Sed sunt Saraceni, babentes legem Machemett. Post eos est Etilia garit, hodie Ruffia destur. flumen pradistum quod descendit à maiori Bulgaria, de qua postea dicetur. Meridie vero issue Re-Muscouia, gionis Tartererum super more Ponticum funt Hiberi & Georgiani. Et in Georgia est metropolis

cuntus, qua vocatur Tephelis, in qua Fratres Pradicatores habent domum. Es viterius versus Orien- Tephelis. sem est serra Coralminorum: sed delets sunt à Tartaris. Et in his locis solebant antiquitus esse Ama. Comminideles zones, fecundum Plinium & Ethicum Aftronomum. Amazones enim , vi refert Ethicus , fuerunt Amazones. nutieres ducentes exercitum magnum ex mulieribiu fine viris colleitum: qua aduocantes viros cortis Palea. temporibus anni conceperunt: sed masculos genitos interfecerunt, saminas reservando, quarum in iunentuic mamillas dextras per artificium chirurgia abstulerunt ne in sagutando reciperent impedimentum. per mamillas; & Minotauros as Centauros, monstra ferocussima nutriuerunt à iunentute mamillijuu: unde antecedebant eas sicut matres suas : & omnem exercitum premebant magis per baiusmods monstra, quam per arma : & similiter Elephantes à inuentute nutriebant & assuccebant ad bella : & 10 Seper centum annos vastabant meridianas partes Afix & Gracia, donec ab Hercule fuerunt sedu-

ita & distructa. Hac vero loca Georgianorum & Corasminorum bibent terram Soldani Turkiæ & Capidociam à Meridie. Nam in latere Meridiano maris Pontics est terra Soldani usque ad Sinopolun, de qua prius dictum est : & post eam in codem latere maris versus Occidentem est terra Valtacij, scilicet Terra V. stacij Gracia Orientalis. Nam Occidentalis vocatur vbi Constantinopolis est, o Regiones es annexe ci- fius. Regnun tra Brachium Santti Georgij in Europa. Sed Armenia maior est super Capadociam ad Orientem. 110pezonda; Et ideo illa Armenia etsi Meridiana sit respectu Georgia, tamen in Orientem tendit, & extenditur ofque Mediam & Melopotamiam. Et bac terra tota astimatur à multus effe terra Ataiat; propter boc Terra Ataiat.

quod in Itaia dicitur, quod filis Sennacherio interfetto patre fugerunt in Ararat: In libro Reguin. 20 dicitur, quod fugerunt in Arm. nam. Sed Ieronimu, undecimo libro super Isaiam foliut hoc dicens: Ararat regio in Armenia campestris per quam Araxis sluit incredibilis obertatis ad radices montis Tauri, qui ofque illuc extenditur. Quapropter Ararat non est tota Armema, sed regio determinata; magna tamen est. Nam Araxes fluuius, a quo Ararat regio nominatur, extenditur à capite suo per iter trium mensium & amplius. Caput autem eius est Fons in monte Armenia vbs proprie oritur Eu- De hot dubito. pirrates ex parte Aquilonis, & Tigris ad aliud latius montis versus Meridiem. In montibus autem Atmeniæ testante Scriptura requieuit Arca Noe: Sed non in quibuscunque montibiu: quoniam non est in istis, vois orium ur ista tria flumina magna, sed in altisimo Tauri montis cacumine, vois Ararat Tria sumina ex regio est, secundum quod dien Ieronimus vodecimo super liaiam; Arca in qua liberatus est Noe ces- escum montibus fante diluuo non ad montes generaliter Armenia. sed ad montes Tauri ait ssimos, qui Atarat mminent

30 campis. Et prope illos montes est ciuitas qua maxima fuit, antequam eum destruxerunt Tartari. Nam fuerunt in ea oblingenta Ecclefia Hermonorum. Et in tempore Fratris Willelmi, cum transfinit per Friter Willeleam, non fuerunt mist dua paruula: Et ibs prope fuerunt Martyrizati Beatus Bar holomzus & Bea- mus. tus Iulas Thaddaus. Et ibi funt due Prophetie. Una est Beati Methodij Martyris, qui fuit de Vid. fun in Rue Gente illa. Et plane prophetaut de Ismachtis que prophetia impleta est in Saracenis. Alius Prophe- brug. ta corum vocatur Abaton, qui prophetauit de Tarcaris & destructione corum. Dient enim, quod ab Bartholo-Aquilone veniet Gens Sagittaria, qua omnes Nationes Orientis subingabit: Et veniunt in Regnum. Iudas Tha-Occidentis, scilicet ad Constantin polim, & ibs per Principes Occidentis destruentur. Et sunc connertentur omnes Gentes Christi: Ferit tanta pax vbique, quod vini dicent morinis: Va vobis, quod non vixistis vique nune. Et Imperator Chr stianus p net soitum suum in Taurino in Periide, Et Her-

40 meni habent istam prophetiam sicut Euangelium. Et ciuitas memorata vocatur nunc Naxuan; que Nune Nacho Colebat effe caput Regni: & est versus partes Aquilonares Armen 2. Nam à festo Santts Clemen-chuan. tis ascendit Frater Willelmus inxta Araxem vbi terminatur versus Aquilonem; & in festo Natalis venit ad illam civitatem ; & in Octanis Epiphania recessit ab ea : & per A axem init vsque ad caput eius in sicunda Dominica qui dragesima : & non longe plus est à ciuitate illa ad vitimum Armeniæ aparte Meridici, quam ad Aquilonem. Deinde superius ad Orientem sunt montes Alanorum, & Aas, Alani. Aas, qui funt Christiani, & recipiunt vidifferenter omnes Christianos tam Latinos quam Gracos: unde non funt scismutici, & pugnant cum Tartaris; & similiter Alani. Post eos ad Orientem sunt Saraceni, que vocantur Lelgi, qui similiter propter terra fortitudirem pugnant cum Tattatis.

Post illos ad Orientem funt Porte Calpix Super Mare Calpium, gass Alexander magnus conftru- cent xit in concur su Montsum. Nam cum volus expugnare Gen em Aquilonarem no potuit propter illus 50 Gentis ferocitatem C' multitudinem. Et, vt dicit Ethicus, fletit per annum vuum & mensestres, ut defenderet fe ab cis, & ingenus quod talis peffima Gens fuiset in partibus Aquilonis; & exclamauit ad Deum, ut apponeret remedium, ne mundus desti neretur per eos. Sed licet non fuit dignus ausdiri, tamen Deus su bonitate, & propier salutem generu humani, iussu siere terra motum maximum, C' montes distantes per stadium conjunits sunt vique ad latitudinem unius Porta. E: Alexander tunc fecit fundi columnas ereas mira magnitudinis. & erexit portas & liniuit eas bitumine, quod nec igne, giumex infulis nec aqua,nec forro diffolui poffet, quod acquifinit ex Infulis maris. Nec potuerunt dinini aliquo modo nifi maris. per terra motum: & tam dirut a funt, Nam Frater Willelmus transsust per medium earum cum Tetta- Porta ferrea ris. Et eft ibi ciuitas qua vocatur Porta ferrea Alexandrità qua versus orientem incipit Hircania super Alexandri, Hircanum mare, quod est Calpium, ve superius dell'umest. Nam Hircania saces super littus meridionale

60 illius maris, co extenditur vso ad terminos India: à cuius Hircania latere meridionals sunt Media & Parchia, ficut prins fuit annotatum. Ha vero Porta non funt Caucatia, sed Calpia, ve dien Plinius: nec Caucatia funt Calpia. Nam Caucatia diffant a Calpijs per ducenta milliaria versus mare Ponticum: Et a mari Pontico distant per centum milliaria circa partes Hiberia & Georgia.

56

inc'uß. Antichriftus. Christian evpettine was the GILLIN STREETSCOR

Rogerus Bacon vinittempare Lodouici 9 Occanns Aquilonaris. Antiqui anti-

menlium. bide Turco-

metica : que iam pridem ad Titus Grecomodo Christianos tranfüt, hodica Finis Aquilo-Pascatur terra.

Magna Hanga-Blaci, Valachia

Gond Magog Et ifta loca cum montibies interiacentibus vocantur clauftra Alexandri, per qua cobibuit Gentes Aquiinhabien mili- Ionares ne irruerent in terras Meridianas deuastando eas. Nam Alexander multa bella gessit cum ess. ve refert Ethicus, & aliquando infra tres dies ceciderunt ex veragno parte multa milita hominum. Alexand r tamen migis arte & ingenio vicu, quam armorum potestate. Et cum fuerunt excitati ficut Vth de caucrais suis, non potuerat eos reprimere per violentiam : Sed Deus invit per terre motum & clausuras montium: Nunc autem rupte funt; & din est quod fracta sunt, sine terra motu, seu vetust ute. Et considerandum est duligenter de locis istis. Nam Gog & Magog de quibus Ezcchiel Pro-Harles, the ita- phetat, & Apocalyphis, in hijs locis suntanciass. Secundum quod dicit letonimus undecimo libro super refignites pre- Ezechielem; Gog Scythica gens trans Caucelum & Maotim & Caspium mare ad Indiam vique forting of alian tenduntur. Et aprincipe Gog, omnes qui subditi sunt Magog appellantur. Et Iudici similiter, quot to therait: he artis Orofius & alie fancli referunt exituros. Atque, ficut Ethicus feribit, Alexander inclusit viginti duo Eines Alem Sa. Resna de storpe Gog & M. gog, exitura in diebus Antichristi : Qui mundum primo vastabunt, & Ponutici fe. deinde obuiabunt Antichrifto, & vocabunt eum Deum deorum ; ficut & Beatus Ieronimus confiret nies & Con- mat. O quam' necessarum est Ecclesia Dei, vi Prelati & viri Catholici hac loca considerent : non prientes, espe- folum propter conversionem Gentium in illis lieis, & consolationem Christianorum captinorum ibiit int tamen An- dem, sed propter persecutionem Antichristi, ve sciatur unde venturus sit, & quando, per hanc considerente venturum rationem & alias multas. Aportis vero Caspijs incipit Mare Caspium extendi in longum ad Orientem & in latum ad Aqui-

vontant nique Ionem. Et est non minus quam Ponticum Mare, vt dicit Plinius : Et habet spacium quatuor men-Ine Magnoini firm in circuitu. Frater vero Willielmus in redeundo ab imperatore Tartarcrum circuinit latus Occi- 30 acitaiu myserio dental, & in cundo ad cum perambulauit latus Aquilonare; ve ipse resulte Domino Rege Francia, qui nunc est, Anno Domini, 1253. Et a parte Aquilonis babet vaftam Solitudinem, in qua funt Tartari : Christic Da. Et vitra eo: sunt multa Regiones Aquilonares antequam permenitur ad Oceanum. Et ideo non potest Frater Williel- istud Marcesse sinus maris Oceani: quod tamen fere omnes authores scribunt. Sed experientia buius tempores facta per fratrem Willielmum & bomines alios fideles docet quod non venit a Mari, fed fit per flumina magna & multa, quorum congregatione fit hoc mare Calpium & Hircanum.

Tota vero hac terr Tartarorum a l'anai vique ad Etiliam fuit Cumanorum, qui vocabantur Canregis Francia. gle : quiomnes sunt deleti per Tartaros. Et tota ista terra vocabatur Albania antiquitus. Et hic sint Canes maxims, ita ut Leones, & tauros perimant: Et homines ponunt eos in bigis & aratris. Deinde vltra Eriliam eft tertius principatus Tartarorum : Et destructe funt gentes indigene ab eis : Et fuerunt 20 Cumani Cangle, sicut prius. Et durat principatus ille à flumine Etilia in Orientem per iter quatuor Cumani idem mensum ex parte meridionali, vsque veniatur ad terram principalem imperatoris : Sed ex parte Aquiqui Cangle, & lonari durat per iter duorum mensium & decem dierum. Ex quo patet, qued Cumania suit terrarum maxima. Nam a Danubio v que ad terram banc in qua Imperator residet , habitabant Cumani. Out omnes funt destructi à Tartaris, prater eos qui fugerunt ad regnum Hungaria. Et hic principatus habet Tetraprincipalis ab Aquilone primo Maiorem Bulgariam; à qua venerunt Bulgari, qui sunt inter Constantinopolin & Hungariam & Sclauoniam. Nam bac que in Europa est minor Bulgaria, habet linguam illo-Cumania max- rum B. Igarorum qui sunt in maiori Bulgaria, qua est in Alia. Et iste Bulgari sunt pessimi Saraceni. imaterrarum; Et boc est mirabile: quoniam illa terra distat a porta ferrea sen a Portis Caspijs triginta diebus & plus per transuersum Solitudinis: Et est in fine Aquilonis. Unde mirum est valde, quod ad eos tam distan- 40 Bulgaria milor tes a Saracenis peruenit felta Machome i. Et de hac Bulgaria venit Etilia, de qua dictum est. Post (que bodie Ruf cam ad orientem est terra Pascatur, qua est magna Hungaria, a qua exinerunt Huni : Qui postea Hungri; modo dicuntur Hungari. Qui colligentes secum Bulgaros, & alias Nationes Aquilonares, sicut dicit Isidorus, Claustra Alexandri ruperunt : Et foluebatur eis tribusum vique in Egygtum. Et detem wis Maho- struxerunt terras omnes v sque in Franciam. Vnde maioris potentia fuerunt, quam adbuc sust Tartari. Et magna pars eorum residet in terra que nunc vocatur Hungaria vitra Bohemiam & Auftriam, que est modo apud latinos regnum Hungariae. Et suxta terram Pascatur sunt Blaci de Blacia maiori : a qua venerant Blaci in terra Affani inter Conflantinopolim & Bulgariam, & Hungariam, & Hungariam minorem. Nam populus ille dicitur nunc a Tartaris Ilac; quod idem est quod Blac. Sed Tartari nesciunt sonare B. literam. A parte vere meridiei Istins Solandinis Tartarcrum est mare Caspium: 50 Et deinde montes Caucali v que in Orientem. Et extenditur hie principatus ab Etilia v que in Carayam Nigram : unde vocatur Cara Cataja. Et Cara idem est, quod Nigra : Et dicitur Cataja Nigia, ad differentiam alterius Cataix, qua est longe vitra hanc ad Orientem multis regionibus distantem ab ısta Cataia Nigra : de qua postea dicitur. Et hac terra cum sibi ad: acentibus est terra imperatoris Tat-\* Sc licet in ro. tarorum pracipui, in quibus vagatur semper cum curia sua, ascendendo in astate ad frigidae regiones; t oribus illin Or. O m byeme ad calidas. Et bas Catara Nigra fuit terra Presbyteri loannis, sen Reges Ioannis; de quo tanta fama folebat effe : & multa falfa dicta funt & (cripta.

Hie vero oportet exprimi originem Tartarorum : .. on solum propter enidentiam distinctionis regionum Mare Caspium maiorem. sed propter ip sam Gentem, que nunc famos fima est, & subdit mundum pedibus. Sciendum iqu-Montes Caucali tur, quod cum bellum fuit Antiochia, tune regnoutt in Terra ifia Coir Can. Nam in historia Antio- 60 Carait Nigra, chena legitur. Quod Turci miserunt pro succursu contra Francos ad regnum Coir Can, qui tenebat Monarchiam in regionibus Aquilonis, tempore illo, quo capta fuit Antiochia qui fuit de Cara Catala. Coir

Caraia Nigra fuit Terra Presbytteri Ichannis, de que multa falfa , nes falfitate mineri transfet fabula ad Abossinos novama dedit nobit Presbjierum Toannem Africanum. Turci. Regnum Cole Can.

ver est nomen proprium: Can est nomen dignitatis; & sonat idem qued Dininator. Nam principes ibi requot populum per dininationes & fecentin que instruuet homines in futuris, sine sint partes Physica, et Aftronomia of scient: a experimentalis, sue artes Magica, quibus totum Oriens est deditu of imbutum. Omnes igitur imperatores Taitarorum vocantur Can : ficut apud nos vocantur imperatores & Reges. Mortus vero fo Coir, fuit quidur pafter Neitorinus in terra illa potens & Dominus super populum, qui populus vocatur Niiman; qui erant Coristiani, Neitorini. Qui sunt mali Christiani: Et tamen Niiman forduennt fe effe subsector Romanx Ecclesia. Et ift: Neitorini non folum funt ibi in Terra Naiman, fed lui. per omnes regiones vique in Orientem sunt dispersi. Iste vero pastor erexit se in Regem; & vocatus est Prelbyter & Rex Ionannes. Huic Iohanni erst frater quidam paster potent Vnc nomine : babens fina 10 pascua ultra fratrem sum per iter trium Septimanarum: Et erat Dominus cuinsdam Villa, qua dici- Giracotum tur Caracarum : que est nunc ciu tas Imperialis, & masor in terra Imperatoris : Et tamen non est ita Diki.

bona ficmt Santins Dionyius inxta Parifics in Francia; ficut feripfit frater Willelmus Domino Regi. Et vitra pascua istino circiter duodecino dietas erant pascua Moal, qui erant pauperes homines, & stutti Pascua Moal. ac simplices sine lege : iuxta quos sucrunt ally pauperes qui vocabantur Tartari, similes ess. Mortuo Tartari. igitur Iohanne Rege eleuaut se in Regens Vnc frater eius, & vocanit se Can : vnde Vnc-Can dicebatur : qui missic armenta sua versus terminos Moal. Inter quos Moal erat saber quidam nomine Cingis, Cingis saber. furans & rapiens animalia Vinc-can. Quo congregante exercitum Cingis fugit ad Tattaros : Qui dixa ad cos & ad Moal : Quia sumus sine duce ideo Vicini nostri opprimunt nos. Et factus est Dux corum, o congregato exercitu irruit super V nc-can, o vicit cum, o fattus est princeps in terra, o vo-20 caust fe Cingis-can : Et accepit filiam Vic, & dedit eam filto fuo in vxorem , ex quanatus est Mangu Can, qui regnum dinisti istis principibus Tartarorum, qui nune regnant & discordant ab invicem. Ad hunc enim Mangu Can fuit frater Willelmus. Et ipfe Cingis Can vbig, pramittebat Tattaros in pugna. Unde exinit fame Tartatorum : qui fere deleti sunt per crebra bella. Et licet propier banc caufam nos istam Gentem vocemus Tartaros, apud quos est imperium & Dominium : tamen semper

(unt Imperatores of principes de gente Moal. Nec volunt vocari Tattati sed Moal : quia primus eorum imperator sciliset Cingis-can, suit Natione Moal. Unde non hibnerunt ad huc ante istos qui nunc requant nift tres seilicet Cingis-can, & Ken-can, & Mangu-can. Qui Ken-can fuit filius Cingis, & Cingis can. Mangu stilius eins. Hac initur gens Moal est stulisssma ab origine prima, & pauperrima : Que tamen Hocita-can. permissione Dinina paulatime omnes Nationes vicinais subingaunt & totam mundi latitudinem in paruo Mangu-can. 30 tempore prostrauit. Que si effet concors primo congressu Egyptum & Aifricam vastaret, vi sic ex compore prostrauit. Zue se esse concert production of the Poloniam. Quia Tota Russia parte Lacinos circundarent. Nam nunc a parte Aquilonis regnant vsq, in Poloniam. Quia Tota Russia omni parte Lacinus erremount and Ariente vfg, ad Dinubium, o vitra Danubium, scilicet Tarreris (ubdi-Bulgaria & Blachia funt eis tributaria : Ita quod v fa ad terram Conffantinopolitanam tenet eorum ta. Imperium. Et Soldanus Turkix, & Rex Armenix, & princeps Antiochix, & omnes principes Orientis v[q, in Indiam sunt eis subietti, prater pancos, qui aut nimis distant, aut habent loca in Montanis

tutiffima, que expugnare non poffunt. Primo igitur in terra vbi imperator moratur est, Cataia Nigra, vbi fuit Presbyter Iohannes. Post Caraia Nigra. eam est terra fratris sui ultra per iter trium Septimanarum, Deinde terra Moal ; & Tartarorum ultra vbi suit Presbreos per iter quasi due decem ductarum. Sed tota bac terra est in qua moratur Imperator vagans per di ter lobannes. eos per ster quasi aus accens accarum. Dea cota vac terra est in qua musican amprimo organo per un Terra Moal.

40 nersa loca. Terra tamen in qua suerust Moal, vocatur Ornan Kerule: Et ibi est adhuc Curia Cingis Terra Tattaro-

Cin, Sed quia Ciracarum, cum Regione eius fuit prima adquisitio eorum; ideo Ciuit tem illam ha-rum. bent pro imperiale : Et prope illam eligunt sunm Can, id est Imperatorem. Deinde post Moal & Tarta- Ornan Kerule. ros ad Orientem funt fortes homines, qui vocantur Tangut; quiceperunt primo Cingis-can in beller Caracarum, Sed pace facta sterum subius auit cos. Ist homines habent Boues fortissimos, habentes Candas plenas pilis Ciutas Imperiaficut Equi: Quorum vacca non permittunt fe Mingi, nifi cautetures. Et fi ifti Boues vident bominem Tangut. indutum rubeis, in fliunt in eum volentes interficere. Post istos ad Orientem sunt bomines qui vocantur Vac. x malen-Tebeth: qui solebant comedere parentes suos cansa pietatis, vit non faccrent ess alia Sepulchra nisi cacantu ad unscera sus. De quibus scribum Philosophi, ve Plinius, Solinus & alig : Et frater Willelmus testatur Mulgendum. in libro suo: ac frater lohannes de Plano Carpini similiter in libro, quem composuit de Tartaris, inter Tebech 50 quos fut Anno Domini, 1246. mifus a Domino Papa in legationem ad Imperatorem Tartarorim. Vidab Hak. to.

Sed quia suerunt ex boc facto abominabiles omni Nationi, ideo iam mutaverunt bunc ritum & ta- 1.0 4) Vincen. men adons de offins capitum faciunt ciphos, in quibus bibunt propter memoriam parentum fuorum. Pest (pechific 32, iftes ad Orientem funt parui bomines & fusci sient Hilpani, & dieuntur Solangi. Quorum nuncij Solangi. cum veniunt ad curiam al cuius, habent in manu tabulam de Ebore, in qua inspiciunt cum narrant ca que volunt, acsi omnia essent ibi scripta. Et ultra eos est quid un Populue, quorum animalia non appropriant alicui, nec habent cust dem. Sed si aliquis indigena vult habere aliquod animal, stat super collem & vociferat sicu: vult, & veniunt ad vocem sum, & accipit quod vult. Quod si extrancus veniret, odore suo sugaret omnia, & saceret ea Stluestria. Et ideo cum homo venit extraneus, claudunt eum in domo, & dant et necessaria vita, donec bibeat responsum de cus pro quibus venit, nec permutent eum va-

50 gari ber regionem. Vitra bos est Catala (qua Seres dicitur apud Philosophos.) Et est in extremitate O- tremitaic Ostrientis , a parte Aquilonati refectu Indix, dinifa ab ea per sinum Maris & Montes. Et bic fiunt pan - equ. nı serici optimi, & in magna copia. Vode ab hac terra deferuntur ad alias regiones. Et hic populus alpir.st multum per nares: Et sunt optimi Artisices in omni arte. Et sunt boni Medici apud cos in omnibus pratergram de Vina, cuius inducio non utuntur, sed per Pulsun 🕏 alta signa optime diinducant : Et

Tel Afpreole-Descriptio Simix.

bene cognescent vires ber barum, & toties medicine potestasem. Multi ex eis sunt apud Tartaros. Et istorum Cataiorum moneta vulgaris est charta de hambasio in qua imprimunt quasdam lineas, Nec muun; Cum Ruteni, qui prope nos funt, habent pro moneta faciem . Helperolorum. Et ifta Catala non distat per 120. dietas à terra in qua moratur Imperator. Et in illa terra sunt rupes excelsa, in quibus habitant quadam creatura habentes per omnia formam humanam; non tamen genna fleciunt, fed ambulant saltando : sed non sunt longitudinis maioris, quam cubiti; & vestitur totum co pus crinibus. Et venatores portant cerustiam, & saciunt soueas in rupibus ad modum cyphorum: Et illa animalia veniunt & bibunt ceruisiam, & inebriantur, & dormiunt, & sic capiuntur: Et venatores ligant eis manus & pedes, & aperiunt venam in collo, & extrabunt tres vel quatuor guitas sanguinis, & dissoluunt ea, ac permittunt abtre. Et ille sanguis est preciosissimus pro purpura.

Patriarcha Ne-

Sciendum vero, quod à principio Cataix magne nigre vique ad finem Orientis sunt principaliter I. dolatra : fedmixti funt inter eos Saraceni & Tartari, & Nestoriani, qui funt Christiani imperfecti babentes Patriarcham suam in Oriente; qui visuat Regiones, & ordinat infantes in cunabulis ad sacros ordines: quia ip se solut ordinat; & non potest venire ad vnum locum nisi quasi in quinquaginta annis .Et bun in Athlo- ille diest se habere amthoritatem à Romana Ecclesia ab antique; & paratus est obedire, si via esset aperta, Et ist docent silios Nobilium Tartarorum Euangelium & sidem, & alios quando possunt. Sed quia parum sciunt, & sunt malorum morium, ideo Tartari despiciunt eos. Et consecrant in milla unum panem latum ad modum palma, & dividunt primo in duodecem partes, secundum numerum Apostolorum; & postea illus partes dissidunt secundum numerum populi. Et Sacerdos dat uniquique corpus Christi in manu sua; & tunc quilibet assumt de palma sua cum renerentia. Sed I dolatra pranalent in multitudi-20 ne in omnibus hijs Regionsbus. Et omnes conuensunt in hoc quod habem Templa sicut nos , & campanas magnas. Et ideo Ecclesia Grzecorum & rotins Orientis nolunt babere campanas. Ruteni ramen habent &

Idolatre.

Omnes Sacerdotes eorum radunt caput & barbam, & seruant castitatem ex quo radunt caput : Rafias. Callitas. Et vinunt centum vel ducentum in una congregatione. Diebus quibus intrant Templum ponunt Collegia Sacer-

Cords nucleo-Ingres.

Tebeth. Tangut. Catal Orienta. Chinzivtunmodi penscillis,

& characteribus

Caracteres Phi-

duo scamna, & sedent e Regione, ehorus contra chorum m terra, habentes libros in manibus, quos aliquan. do deponunt super illa scamna : & babent capita di scooperta quamdin sunt in Templo legentes in siknoio; & nullo modo loquerentur in Templo nisi verba officiy suis. Habent etiam in manibus quocunque vadunt quandam cordam centum vel ducentum nucleorum sicut nos Pater noster: ducunt super hac verba. On. Maio, Baccan, id est, Deus tu nosti. Hac sunt communia omnibus Idelatris. Sed tamen Iugres, qui 30 habitant in terra vbi Imperator moratur, differunt ab alijs. Nam alij non ponunt vnum Deum, sed plures, & creaturam adorant. Isti vero propter Viciniam Christianorum & Satacenorum ponunt unum. Deum, Et sunt optimi scriptores: unde Tattati acceperunt litteras corum: & illi sunt magni scriptores Tartarorum. Et isti scribunt à sur sum in deor sum, & à sinistru in dextram multiplicant lineas & legunt. Tebeth scribunt sicut nos, & babent siguras similes nostris. Tangut scribunt à dextra in sinifram sicut Arabes, sed multiplicant lineas ascendendo. Catai Orientales scribunt cum punctorio, que pinqunt pictores: & facium in una figura plures literas comprehendentes unam dictionem. Et ex boc venium Caracteres, qui habent multas literas simul. Vnde veri Caracteres & Philosophici sun Rompositi ex literis, & babent sensum dictionum. Et tota terra à Danubio vsq. in Orientem vocatur apud Antiquos Scythia, à quo Scythæ. Et omnes Regiones Tartarotum funt de Scythia : & etiam Russia, 40 o totum víq, ad Alamaniam.

And thus much ex quarta parte Compendiy Studiy Theologia F.R. Baconi.

V.B. Spec. hift. lib.32. 1.2.6.5.faith two of them went to the Cham: but they

Relations of VINCENTIVS BELVACENSIS, the most of which hecrecised from Frier S I M ON de Sancto Quintino, one of the foure Friers fent by Pope INNOCENT the Fourth to the Tartars: feruing to the illustration of the former.

Nno, 1246. Curne, who is also called Gog Cham, was advanced to the Imperial Throne of 50 the Tartars. All their Barons being affembied, placed a golden feat in the midft, whereon ther way, loby they caused him to sit; and set a Sword before him, saying, Wee will, and defire, and commind ther way, 10000 thee to rule ouer vs. He demanded if they were contented, to doe, come, goe, flay as he should and his fellow, command. They answered yea. Then said he, The word of my mouth shall henceforth bee my whose story is Sword: and they all consented. After this they spread a Felt on the ground, and set him thereon, faying, Looke upwards and acknowledge God, and looke downe on the Felt whereon thou fitteff. If thou shalt gouerne well, wilt be liberall, inst, and horour thy Princes according to their dignitie, thou shalt reigne magnificent, and the whole World shall be subject to thy Dominion, and God will give thee all thy hearts desire; if otherwise thou shalt bee miserable and so poore, that the Fels shall not bee left thee whereon thou fittest. This done, they let his Wife with him on the Felt : and lifted them up 69 both fo fitting, and proclaimed them Emperour and Empresse of the Tartari. After which they hum Ocodai Cast brought before him infinite flore of Gold, and Silver, and Gemmes, with all which remayined to Chagadan, who distributed what he pleased, and referred the rest. Then began they to drinke untill night after their manner; and afterward solden flesh came in Carts without Salt, and a

Vincent, 1.32.

mongit foure or fine they distributed a joynt thereof. They call him Can, concealing his proper name, and he boafts himselte the Sonne-of God. He hath a Prince in the Confines of Persia, called Baioth Noy ( Noy, fignifieth his dignitie, Baioth is his name) which hath subdued the Countries of Christians and Saracens to the Mediterranean Sea. Anothercalled Corenzam remayneth in the Welt Frontiers with threefcore thousand vader him. The greatest Prince is Bathath, who Batha. hath under him one hundred and threefcore thousand Tarters, and four hundred and fiftie thoufand Christians and others. The Chams forces are inhumerable.

Anno Dom. 1247. Frier Afeelinns fent by the Popt, came into the Campe of the Tariats with other Friers Preachers : where the Captayne Baioth-noy, by Meffengers demanded, whose Mefto fengers they were. Frier Afeeline answered for them all, I am the Messenger of the Lord Pope, who among it Christians is greater then any man, reputed a Father and Lord. They replyed, how proudly doe yee lay your Pope is greater then any ! Knowes he not that the Cham is Son of God and Baiesh-ney and Batho are his Princes! Aferlines answered, the Pope knowes nos them, but heares that the Tartars have comne out of the East, and have destroyed infinite multitudes. And had he knowne the names of Cham or his Princes, he would not have omitted their names in the Letters which we bring. But beeing grieued for the flaughters of fo many, especially Christians, with the aduice of his Brethren the Cardinals, he hath sent vs to the next Tartarian Armie we could find, to exhort the Generall thereof to cease fuch attempts, and to repent of that which they have done. The Messengers went and came divers times betwixt, e-20 uery time in change of Garments, and were very follicitous for Gifts and Prefents which the Friers had none to giue. And besides they denyed to performe the Ceremonies of kneeling to Baioth-noy, left they should thereby intimate a subjection of the Pope to the Tartars: whereupon The foure hee consulted to put them all foure to death, to which a Messenger sent from the Great Cham were Assessment would not confent. The Frien only would put vp their hoods and bow the head : whereata Alberite, Alex Tartar asked whereas you Christians adore stockes and stones, that is Crosses imprinted on them; men. why doe you refuse to doe so to Baioth-noy, whom Cham the Sonne of God hath commanded to be adored. Ascelmus answered, Christians adore not stockes and stones, but the signe of the Croffe theron, for his fake which dyed on a Croffe, adorning it with his mebers as precious lew- See a kke diels and confecrating it with his bloud, purchafing thereby our faluation. So cannot wee doe to flinction of 30 your Lord, Baieth ney fent them word, that hee would fend them with their Letters to the Ethnikes, Ang. Cham, which they refused. Then he sent for the Letters which were translated first into Persian, in Pfd. 113. and thence into the Tartar Language, Hee held them there with many Trickes and Illusions. many weeks with hard fare and ill viage. And after much adoe he returned with Bauth-noys an-

B Aioth nost Letter was this to the Pope, The word of Baioth-noy. Pope, know this ; thy Mef-General came and brought thy Letters to us. Thy Messengers spake great words; we know not whether thom gauest them so in charge, or whether they spake it of themselves. In thy Letters thou hadl written; yee kill, slay, and destroy many men. The precept of God stable and sirme, who contained the face 40 of the whole world, unto us is this. Whofoener shall beare the Statute on their owne Land, let them reeld Water and Patrimonie, and let them deliner power to bim which contagneth the face of the whole World. But who foener will not heare the Precept and Statute, but shall doe otherwise, let them be rooted out and Out we open error of the water was to chief that Sainte and Precept. If yes will yeeld Water and Pairs, mone on our Lund, it is meet that thou Pope thy felfs in thine perfor come to vir, and to bein which companies the conference of the whole Earth's and if thou will not heart to felfale Precept of God and of the which containeth the face of the whole Earth , wee know not, God knowes. It is meet that before thou commest, thou fendeft Meffengers, and that thou signifiest to us whether thou commest or no; whether thou will compound with Us, or be Enemie. And fend an Answere of the Procept quickly to Us. This Precent by the hands of Aybeg and Sargis, we have fent in the moneth of Iuly, the twentieth day of the Moone. In the Territorie of the Castle Sitiens.

fwer, having first had a Messenger with Letters from the Cham.

He Copie of the Chams Letters to Baioth-noy. By the Precept of the lining God Cingil-cham the Sonne of God, sweete and venerable faith, that God is high oner all, bee is God immortall, and upon Earth Cingis-cham, is Lord alone. Wee well that this come into every place to the hearing of all, to the Provinces obeying us, and to the Provinces, obeying against vs. It is therefore meete that thou O Baioth-noy excite them and make it knowne so them , that this is the commandement of the living and immortall God: that thou also incellantly make knowne thy desire touching this, and notifie my commandement in all places, where a Messenger may come. And who were final gamfay thee shall be hunted, and his Land shall be wasted. And I affure thee, that who-60 foener shall not heare this my Mandate, shall bee deafe; and who foener shall doe according to this my sudgement, knowing peace and not doing it, shall be lame. Let this my Ordinance come to the knowledge of all. Whosener thall beare and neglect to observe it shall be destroyed and slaine. Manifest this O Baioth-noy. And who seener desireth the profit of his House, and will serne vs , shall bee saued and bonoured. And whofoener finall contradict, studie thouse correct them at thine owne pleasure.

U.Bel.1 2: c.99.

\* Hee was Au-

thor of a great

part of that hi-

marke.

the ancients

See Brierwood

Vnto Lewis the French King were fent certayne Messengers from a great man, called Ercal-U.Bell. 23 1690. thay; and there was present Frier Andrew of Lontumes a Dominican, who knew Danid the to be that Sar. chiefe of them, hauing feene him in the Armie of the Tartart. Thefe brought Letters in Page tachin Ruhung. fan and Arabike Letters. They reported also that a great King of the Tartari called Chamwas Erealthur pre- become a Christian, with most of his followers. And now the faid Erealthur had received Baptisme and was come forth from Cham with a great Armie to aduance the Christian Faith, and to destroy the Aduersaries thereof; and much desired the French Kings loue. They thought also that the faid Erealthay would the next Eafter besiege Baldach. These told the King also of the Tartarian Affaires. Whereupon he fent Messengers with Letters and Iewels to Ercalibar, with a Tent or Chappell of Scarlet fairely embroydered, with the Storie of the Passion, with Orna-10 ments thereto and things fitting for Dinine Service, with a piece of the wood of the Holy Croffe, exhorting him to proceed in the Faith. The Messenger were the foresaid Frier Andrew with two other Friers and two Clerkes. Transcripts of all were fent into France.

### CHAP. III.

Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the Historie of R. Wen-DOVER, \* and MAT. PARIS: with certayne Epiftles of the same subject.

ftory, which is wholly afcribed to Paris by the moft. Dacia is here. as often by later Authours corruptly ra-ken for Den-

Nno 1239. the Tartars, inhumane Nations, which had made great flaughters, and had with hostile forces inuaded the borders of Christendome, in the greater Hancarie were vanquished and most of them slaine, beeing encountred by fine Kings, Christians and Saracens, herein confederate. After which the King of Dacia and the King of Hungarie caused the Confines (before by the Tartars brought in manner to a Wilderneffe) to bee inhabited by Christians, which they fent thither. Of

which out of Dacia, alone went more then fortie ships.

Anno 1240, the deteltable people of Satan, to wit, an infinite number of Tartars brake The Dacia of forth from their Mountayne-compassed, and Rocke-defended Region, like Deuth loosed out of comprehen-ded Transilus-Hell (that they may well be called Tartarians, as Tartareans) and like Grashoppers courring the face of the Earth, spoyling the Easterne Confines with fire and Sword, ruining Cities, cutting vp Woods, rooting vp Vineyards, killing the people both of Citie and Countrey. And if they spared any, they yied them in the fore-front of their battels to fight against their Allies, that if they were therein faint or fayned, themselves at their backes might kill them: if otherwise it was without reward. They are rather Monsters then men, thirsting and drinking bloud, tearing and deuouring the fielh of Dogges and Men; clothed with Oxe-hides, armed with Iron A Caluiff con- Plates; in stature thicke and short, well fet, strong in bodie; in Warre inuincible, in labour in- 40 fatigable, behind waarmed; drinking the bloud of their beafts for Dainties, &c. Thefe Tartare of detestable memory, are thought to be descended of the ten Tribes which went away (for sking the Law of Moles) after the golden Calues; whom Alexander the Macedon fought to inclofe in the Capitan hils : to which labour, exceeding humane power, hee introked the affiltance of the God of Ifrael, and the tops of the hils joyned together, and the place became inacceffible and impaffible. And though it be doubtfull, because they vie not the Hebrew Tongue, nor Law of Mofes, nor are gouerned by any Lawes; yet is it credible, that as their hearts then in Mofes gouernment were rebellious, Reprobately-fenfuall and Idolatrous, so now more prodigiously their heart and Language is confounded, and their life immane and beaftly inhumane. They are called Tartars of a certayne River called Tartar, running along ft their hils.

Anno 1241. that inhumame and brutish, lawlesse, barbarous and sauage Nation of Tartars, horribly spoyling the North and North-east parts of the Christians, cauled great feare and horrour ouer all Christendome. For they had now brought in manner to a Willernesse, Frista, Gothia, Pelonia, Bobenia, and both Hungarias, the most part of the Princes, Prelates and people beeing fled or flaine : as by this Letter appeareth.

O the Beloued and alway worthy to be beloued Lord, our Father in Law, the Illustrious Privice the Dake of Brabant, H. by the grace of God Earle of Loraine, Palatine of the Saxons, bis bumbleft service. The perills foretold in holy Scripture, now breake forth becamse of our sinnes. For a certaine outs service. I copperms solven and solves and lawlesse, invadeth and possesses the Constines next bordering to 60 es, and are now come to Poland, many other Lands being passed and peoples destroyed. Whereof aswellby our owne Messengers, as by our belowed Consin the King of Bohemia, we are fully certified and are inwited speedily to succour and defend the faithfull. For we know for certaine that about the Octives of Easter, the Tartatian Nation will inuade cruelly and foreibly the Lands of the Bohemians, and if not

presented, will there perpetrate unheard-of flaughter. And because our next neighbours house is now on fire, and the next (ountrey iteth open to waste, and some are alreadie masted, we earnestly and pitifully entreat the ayde and counsell of God and of our neighbour-brethren for the universall Church. And because delay is full of danger, with all our hearts we beseech you, that you make all possible speed to arme as well for your as our delinerance, making strong preparations of store of Sculdiers; diligently exciting the noble, mightie and couragious, with the people subject to them, that yee may have them in readinesse, when we shall next direct our Messengers to you. And we, by the ministerie of our Prelates, Preachers, and Minors, cause the Crosse (because the businesse belongs to him which was crucified) to be generally prea Crifales ached, fast: and prayers to be appointed, and our Lands in common to be called to the marre of lesses Christ. Sainst the 10 Hereto wee adde that a great part of that detestable Nation, with an other Armie adioqued to them, wa\_ tars.

fleth Hungaria with unheard-of tyrannie, insomuch that the King is said to have retayned but a small part to himselfe. And to Speake much in few words, the Church and People of the North is so oppressed and brought to such Straits, as it neuer was so scourged since the World began. Dated the yeere of grace

1241. on the day on which is fung Lætare Ierusalem: And this was the Letters fent to the Bishop of Paris by the Duke of Brabant. The like was

written by the Arch-bishop of Cullen to the King of England. Therefore for this grieuous tribulation, and for the discord betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, so hurtfull to the Church, there are appointed fatts and prayers, with larger Almes in divers Regions, that our Lord being pacified with his people, who as a magnificent triumpher is as firong in a few as in many, may 20 destroy the pride of the Tartars. The French Kings mother, Queene Blanch, with deepe fighs and A desour plentifull teares spake hereof to her sonne. What shall we doe my dearest sonne about this lamentable event, the terrible rumour whereof is comne to our Confines : generall destruction of vs all and of holy Church hangs ouer our times by the impetuous inuation of the Tartars. The King with mournfull voice, not without the Spirit of God, answered: The heavenly comfort, Mother, exalt vs ; and if they come on vs, either we shall fend againe those Tartarians to their thegme, Tartarean places whence they came; or they shall exalt vs to Heauen.

THe Emperourcertified hereof, wrote to the Princes, and especially to the King of England Emperous 1 in this forme. Frederike Emperour &c. to the King of England greeting. Wee cannot conceale, Fr.z. this I 30 though it sommhat lately came to our eares, but give you notice of a thing which concerneth the Roman Herr3. Empire (as prepared to the preaching of the Gospell) & all zealous Christian Kingdoms in the World, threatning generall destruction to all Christendom. A barbarow Nation hath lately come from the Southerne \* Region, which had long layne hid under the torrid Zone, and after towards the North by force possessing Regions long remajning is multiplied as the Canker worme, called Tarcars wee know not of studiowes what place or originall; not with sut the fore-seene indgement of God is reserved to these last times, to tend fam. the correction and chastisement of his people, God grant not losse of all Christendom. A publike destruction like the for bath therefore followed, the common defolation of Kungdomes, and spoile of the fertile Land, which that of inclosed

wickedpeople bath passed thorow, not sparing sexe, age, or dignistic & hoping to extinguish the rest of sexes. An mankind, whiles it alone goath about to domineers and reigne enery where by their immense and incom-tains were tains were 40 parable power and number. Now all things which they have beene able to fet eye on being put to death ball and it and floyle, leaving univerfall desolation behind them, these Tartarians (yea Tartareans) when they mote, that had come to the well peopled Colonie of the Cumani (prodigall of their lines, having Bowes their most they like had come to the well peopled (otome of the Cumain (promption of the times, with Darts and Arrowes which they continually ofe and are stronger in the armes then the linth, other men) they veterly ouerthrew them, and with bloudy sword killed all which escaped not by slight. were vis-Whose neighbourhood scarcely warned the Rutheni not farre distant to take heed to themselnes. For knowney, they suddenly flie thither, to prey and spoile as the wrath of God and lightning hurles it selfe, and by their thin also; Sudden affault and barbarous innafion take Cleua the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome; and all that noble tudden flat Kingdome was wasted to desolation, the Inhabitants being slayne. Which yet the neighbouring Kingdome original of the Hungatians who fould have taken warning, neglected: whole fluggeth King too secure, being dings in required by the Tattats messengers and letters, that if he desired that he and his should lue, he should have 50 sten their fauour by yeelding himselfe and his Kingdom; yet was not bereby servised and taught to fortify which they

against their irruptions: but they ignorant or insolent contemners of their enemies, secure in their enemies and without approach, trusting in the native fortification of the place, vnexpectedly compassed and oppressed at vn- of ichecht awares by them entring like a mbirlemind, opposed their Tents against them. And when the Tartars Tents Word as: were fine miles from the Hungarian, the Tartarian fore-runners in the dawning of the morning, rushed Letters will Suddenly and compassed the Hungarians, and first flaying the Prelates and chiefe men, killed an infinite number, with such unbeard-of slaughter as scarcely is recorded ever to have happed in one bastell. The King hardly escaped by flight on a swift Horse, which fled with a small companie to the brotherly portion of the Hyllitian Kingdome, there to be protected; the Enemie possessing the Tents and spoyless and

now wasting the nobler and greater part of Hungarie beyond Danubius, consuming all with fire and 60 found, they threaten to confound the rest, as by the venerable Bishop Vacientis the Anhastadour of the Said Hungarian King, not ce is given to our Court first as he paffed, being destined to the Roman Court. Wee are also bereof fully certified by the Letters of our deare sonne Conrade, elect King of Romans alway Augustus, and heire of the Kingdome of Ierusalem; and of the King of Bohemia, the Dules of

Austria and Bauaria; by the Messengers words also instructed experimentally of the Enemies neerenesse. Nor could wee learne these things without great griefe. Truly, as the report goeth, their under termined damnable Armie, by our Lords sufferance, bath proceeded divided purposely in three parts. For one being fent by the Pructeni, and entring Poland, the Prince and Duke of that Land were flapme by them, and after that all the Region spoyled. The second hath entred the bounds of Bohemia, and being entred hath made stay, the King manly opposing himselfe. The third hath runne thorow Hungara, bounded by Austria. Whence the seare and trembling hasing beginning from surie, dee excite and insite all: necessitie vergeth to withstand them, the danger being neere; the generall destruction of the world, and as, one-spirite of general ways and the first peeds before and succour. For this People is brusish, and without law, ignorant of humanitie: yet followers, and bath a Lord whom it obediently observeth and worships, and [6] calls. The God of the earth. The men are of short stature, but square and well fet, rough and comracious. at the becke of their Leader rushing on any difficulties: have broad faces, from using lookes, borrible cries agreeing to their hearts. They weare raw Hides of Oxes, Asses, or Horses, with Iron plates sewed on for defensive Armes hitherto: but now, with griefe we freake it, out of the froiles of conquered Christians , they are more decently armed, that in Gods anger wee may be the more dishonourably slayne by our owne weapons. They are also furnished with better Horses, sed with daintier fare, adorned with sairer rayment. The Taxtass are incomparable Archers; carrie sewed then artificially made, by which they passe Riners and waters without loffe. When food fayles, their Horses are sayd to be content with barkes and leanes of Trees, and roots of Herbs : whom yet they finde fuift and hardy. And we fore-feeing all those shings. often by Letters and Meffengers are mindfull to request your excellence, as also other Christian Princes, 20 earnestly folliciting and warning, that peace and lone may flours the amongst kulers, and discord being appealed (which often endamage Christendome) agreeing together to fet flay to them which have lately

thewed themselves ; for smuch as fore-warned are fore-armed, and that the common enemies may not

reiorce, that to prepare their wayes, fo great diffentions breake forth amongst Christian Princes. Ob

God, how much and how often would wee have humbled our selues, doing the utmost that the Roman

Bishop might have surceased from the scandall of diffention against us which is gone thorow the World;

The Emperours Letter for ande to the King of England, LIB. I.

The Pope to gainft the Emfeth Christian and would more temperately have revoked his passions from impersons rashnesse, that wee might bee able Princes to mu- to quiet our subielts by right, and rule them more peaceably ; nor that be would protelt those Rebels, the tuall quarrels which he shold haue opposed neuer ccaling till be had ruined that Familic and the Empire. Tariar Spies.

greatest part of which is by him fostered: that things being setled, and the Rebels awed against whom wee have masted much treasure and labour, our power might bee advanced against the common Ene- 30 mies. But Will being to him for a Law, not ruling the supperserunning of his tongue, and disdayning to abstayne from manifold dissention which be hath attempted; by his Legats and Messengers hee hath commanded the Croffe to be published against mee the Arme and Admocate of the Church, which hee queht to have exercised against the tyrannie of the Tartars or Saracens, inuading and possessing the Holy Land, whiles our Rebels infult and confult grieuonfly against our honour and fame. And now that our greatest care is to free our selves from domestike and familiar Enemies, how shall wee also repell Barbarians. Geing that they by their fries which every where they have fent before, they (how foener directed without Dinine Law, yet well trayned in Martial fratagems ) know the publike difford, and the unfortified and weaker parts of the Lands : and hearing of the heart-burning of Kings, and the strife of King. domes, are more encouraged and animated, O how much doth triumphing courage adds to firength? Wee 40 will therefore by Gods providence converted, apply our strength and industrie to both, that wee may drive away the foundall domesticall and barbarous on this side and on that, from the Church. And we have expressely sent our deare some Conrade, and other Princes of our Empire, that they may powerfully withstand the assaults of our barbarous Enemies, and represse their entrie. And heartily wee adjure your Maiestie in behalfe of the Common necessite, by our Lord lesu Christ, that taking heed to your seife, and to your Kingdome (which God keepe in prosperitie) with instant care and produdent deliberation, you disti-gently prepare speedy ayds of strong Knights, and other armed then and Armes: this we require in the This Emperor Prinkling of the bloud of Christ, and the league of affinitie in which wee are in ned And foles them be Fred, a matri- ready with us manfully and providently to fight for the deliverance of Ci ristendome, that against the Eneed Habel Sifter mies now proposing to enter the confines of Germanie, as the Gue of Christendome, by waited forces vi- 50 Chorie to the praise of the Lord of Hosts may be obtayned. Neither let it like you to passe oner these things with diffimulation, or to suspend them by deferring. For if (which God forbid) they invade the Ger nane confines without obstacle, let others looke for the lightnings of a sudden tempest at the doores; which we beleene to have hapned by Dinine Indgement, the world being dinerly infelted, the lone of many waxing cold (by whom faith ought to be preached and conserved) and their pernicious example stayning the world with V (uries, and diners other kinds of Simoine and Ambition. Let your Excellency therefore provide : and whiles the common enemies are outragious in the neighbour Regions, wifely confult to relist them: because they have comme out of their Lands with this intent, not regarding the perils of life, that they mught subdue to them (which God auert) all the West, and may permert and subuert the Faith and Name of Christ. And in respect of unexpected victorie, which hitherto by Gods permission bath fol- 60 lowed them, they are growne to that exceeding madneffe that now they thinke they have gotten the King. doms of the World, and to tame and subject Kings and Princes to their vile services. But nec hope in our Lord lefus Christ, under whole Standard wee base hitherto triumphed, being delisered from our Enemies, that thefe also which have broke forth of their Tattarcan feats, their pride being abased by oppo-

sed forces of the West, these Tartars shall be thrust downe to their Tattara (or Hell) Nor shall they hoult to have passed so many Lands, overcome so many peoples, perpetrated so many mischiefes unavenged, when their unwarie Destinie, yea Sathan, shall have drawne them to the conquering Eagles of puil-Cant Imperial Europe to their deaths. Where Germanie voluntarily raging and prone to Armes, France the mother and nurse of Soulderie, warlike and daring Spaine, fertile England potent in men and a furnished Nanie, Almaine full of impetuous Warriours, Strip-strong Denmarke, untamed 1:1lie, Burgundie ignorant of Peace, unquiet Apulia; with the Pyraticall and muincible Iles of the Greeke, Adriaticke and Tyrrhene Seas, Creet, Cyprus, Sicil, with the Sea neighbouring Ilands and Regions, blondie Ireland, with numble Wales, marifine Scotland, Icie Norway, and enery Noble and In famous Region in the West, will cheerfully fend their choise Soulderie under the Colours of the quickning Crosse, which and not onely rebellious men but adnerse Denils dread. Dated in our returne after the geelding and depopulation of Fauentia, the third of Iuly.

Some ( Papalmes ) ful pected that the Emperour had hatched this Tartar-peftilence like Ln- Malicema eifer or Antichrist, to get the Monarchie of the world and to Subnert Christiany, and that the fecret Counfels and wayleffe wayes of the Tartars were fraught with Imperiall Counfels. For they conceale their Language, varie their Armes, and if one be taken, knowledge of them or their purpole can by no torcures be extorted from him. And where (fay they) should they lurke, in which of the Climats till this time ! whence their to fecret and fraudulent Confpiracie! They are Hireans and Soythians, lauage bloud-fuckers, who with the confederate Cumani, through the 26 Emperours deuile, have overthrowne the King of Hungarie, to make him feeke shelter under the

Imperiall wings and doehim homage, &c. Needs must they goe whom the Deuill drives : or how elfe but by mad malice, and furious Solid Sec. faction, or an Antichrittian mift, could fuch impossibilities have been conceived ? Of their driuing the Turkes and the Choerofmines out of Perfia is elfe-where Ipoken. Of the Popes entertainment of the Tartahan Messengers, Anno 1248. close Conferences with them and gifts to them, with divers other discourses in the faid author or Authors, I omit. Onely this Epifile following, as containing both the strange adventures of an Englishman, and his relations of the Tartars from better experience, I could not but adde heere, making fo much to the Readers purpole and ours. It was written by one Two of Narbone a Clergie man, which being accused of 30 Herefie to Robert de Curzun the Popes Legat, fled, and lived one while with the Pararines, andther with the Becames, and at last writ this Letter containing a discourse of his travels, amongst them in Italie and G.rmanie. He begins Giraldo Dei gratia Burdegalensi Archiepiscopo, Tuo dictus Narbonensis suorum olimnouissimus Clericorum, Salutem, Jrc. and after some premisses of the Patarines, and Beguines (too long for this place) hee proceeds; Hoc igitur & multis aligs peccatis inter nos Christianos emergentibu sra:us Dominus, &c. In English, Our Lord therefore being angry with this and other sinnes falling out among I vs Christians, is become as st were a destroying enemie.

Part of an Epiftle written by one Y v o of Narbona vnto the Archbishop of Burdeaux, containing the confession of an Englishman, as touching the barbarous demeanour of the Tartars, which had lived long among them, and was drawne along perforce with them in their expedition against Hungarie: Recorded by Matthew Paris in the yeare our Lord 1243.

THe Lord therefore being prouohed to indignation, by reason of this and other sinnes committed among vs Christians, is become, asst were, a destroying enemy, and a dreadfull avenger. This I may instly affirme to bee true, because an huge Nation, and a barbarous and inhumane people, whose Law is lawleffe, whose wrath is firious, even the rod of Gods anger, overrunneth, and veterly wasteth infinite 50 Countries, cruelly abolifting all things where they come, with fire and fword. And this prefent Summer, the forefaid Nation, being called Tartars, departing out of Hungarie, which they had surprised by trea-Son, layd flege unto the very same Towne, wherein I my felfe abode, with many thousands of Souldiers : neither were there in the faid Towne on our part aboue Fifty men of warre, whom, together with twenty Corsse-bowes, the Captaine had left in Garrison. All these, out of certaine high places, beholding the enemies vafie Armie, and abhorring the beaftly cruelty of Antichrift his complices, signified forthwith unto their Gouernour; the hideous lamentations of his Christian Subietts, who Suddenly being surprised in all the Province adiopning, without any difference or refeelt of condition, Fortune, fexe, or age, were by manifold cructies, all of them destroyed: with whose carbesses, the Tartarian chieftaines, and their brutish co and Sauage followers, glutting themselves, as with delicious cates, left nothing for auliures but the bare bones. And a strange thing it is to consider that the greedy and rauenous vultures disdained to pray upon any of the reliques, which remained. Old and deformed Women they gaue, as it were for dayle instenance, unto their Canibals : the beautifull denoured they not, but smothered them, lamenting and Scrisching with forced and unnaturally rasustiments. Like barbarous miscreants, they quelled Virgins

unto death, and cutting off their tender paps to present for dainties unto their Magistrates, they encorged them felues with their Bodies.

Howbeit, their spials in the meane time discrying from the top of an high mountaine the Duke of Authria, the King of Bohemia, the Patriarch of Aquileia, the Dake of Carinthia, and (as some report ) the Earle of Baden, with a mighty power, and in battell aray, approching towards them, that accur fed crew im. mediatly vanished, and all those Tartarian Vagabonds retired themselnes into the distressed and vanguish. ed land of Hungarie; who as they came suddenly, so they departed also on the sudden: which their coloritie cansed all men to stand in borrour and astonishment of them. But of the said fugitimes, the Prince of Dalmatia tooke eight : one of which number the Duke of Austria knew to bee an Englishman, who was perpetually banished out of the Realme of England, in regard of certaine notorious crimes by him comm t- 10 ted. This fellow on the behalfe of the most tyrannicall King of the Tartars, had beene twife, as a messentea. Ant seame on the occasie of the most of the seame and planet for settling the feminibe se which afterward happened, unless be would submit himselfe and his Kingdome unto the Tartary whe, Wellbeing allured by our Princes to confesse the truth, he made such outbes, and protestations as (I thinke) the Demill bimfelfe would have beene trusted for. First therefore hee reported of himfelfe, that prefently after the time of his banishment, namely, about the thirtieth yeare of his age, having lost all that he had in the Citie of Acon at Dice, even in the midft of Winter, being compelled by ignominious hunger, wearing nothing about him but a shirt of facke, a paire of shooes, and a haire cap onely, being thauen like a foole, and vttering an vncoth noyfe as if hee had beene dumbe, he tooke his iourney, and so trauelling many Countries, and finding in divers places friendly entertain- 20 ment, he prolonged his life in this manner for a feafon, albeit every day by rashnes of speech, and inconstancy of heart, hee endangered himselfe to the Devill. At length, by reason of extreame travaile, and continuall change of ayre and of meates in Caldea, hee fell into a grievous sicknesse. infomuch that he was weary of his life. Not being able therefore to goe forward or backward. and staying therea while to refresh himselfe, hee began (being somewhat learned) to commend to writing those wordes which he heard spoken, and within a short space, so aptly to pronounce and to veter them himselfe, that he was reputed for a native member of that Countrie : and by the same dexteritie he attained to manie Languages. This man, the Tarrars having intelligence of by their spies, drew him perforce into their societie: and being admonished by an oracle or vision, to challenge dominion over the whole earth, they allured him by many rewards to their faithfull service, by reason that they wanted Interpreters. But concerning their manners and fuperstitions, of the disposition and stature of their bodies, of their Countrie and manner of fighting, &c.he protested the particulars following tobe true:namely, that they were aboue all men. couetous, hastie, deceitfull, and mercileste: notwithstanding, by reason of the rigour and extremitie of punishments to be inflicted upon them by their superiours, they are restrained from brawlings, and from mutuall strife and contention. The ancient founders and fathers of their tribes, they call by the name of Gods, and at certaine fet times they doe celebrate folemne Feafts vnto them, many of them being particular, and but foure onely generall. They thinke that all things are created for themselves alone. They esteeme it none offence to exercise cruelty against rebels. They be hardy and strong in the breast, leane and pale-faced, rough and huste-shouldred, having 40 flat and short noses, long and sharpe chinnes, their vpper jawes are low and declining, their teeth long and thin, their eye-browes extending from their fore-heads downe to their nofes. their eyes inconftant and blacke, their countenances writhen and terrible, their extreame joynts strong with bones and sinewes, having thicke and great thighes, and short legs, and yet being equall vnto vs in stature : for that length which is wanting in their legs, is supplyed in the vpper partes of their bodies. Their Countrey in old time was a land veterly defert and wafte, fituated farre beyond Chaldea, from whence they have expelled Lyons, Beares, and fuch like vntamed beafts, with their bowes, and other engines. Of the hides of beaftes being tanned, they yfe to shape for themselues light, but yet impenetrable armour. They ride fast bound vnto their Horses, which are not very great in stature, but exceedingly strong, and maintained with little 50 prouender. They vie to fight constantly and valiantly with Iauclins, maces, battle-axes, and fwords. But especially they are excellent Archers, and cunning warriers with their bowes. Their backs are fleightly armed, that they may not flee. They withdraw not themselves from the combate, till they see the chiefe Standerd of their Generall give backe. Vanquished, they aske no fauour, and vanquilhing, they shew no compassion. They all persist in their purpose of fubduing the whole world vnder their owne fubiection, as if they were but one man, and yet they are moe then millions in number. They have 60000. Courriers, who being fent before vpon light Horses to prepare a place for the Armie to incampe in, will in the space of one night gallop three dayes journey. And fuddenly diffusing themselves over an whole Province, and surpriling all the people thereof vnarmed, vnprouided, difperfed, they make such horrible slaugh. 60 ters, that the King or Prince of the land inuaded, cannot finde people sufficient to wage battell against them, and to withstand them. They delude all people and Princes of regions in time of peace, pretending that for a cause, which indeed is no cause. Sometimes they say that they will make a voyage to Collen, to fetch home the three wife Kings into their owne Countrey; fometimes to punish the avarice and pride of the Romans, who oppressed them in times past ; sometimes to conquer barbarous and Northern nations; fometimes to moderate the furie of the German; with their owne meeke mildneffe; fometimes to learne warlike feates and stratagems of the French; fometimes for the finding out of fertile ground to fuffice their huge multitudes: fometimes againe in derision they fay, that they intend to goe on Pilgrimage to Saint lames of Galicia. In regard of which fleights and collusions certaine undiscreet Gouernours concluding a league with them, have granted them free passage thorow their Territories, which leagues notwithflanding being violated, were an occasion of suyne and deltruction vnto the forefaid Gouernours,&c.

#### To the Reader.

Tround this Booke translated by Master Hakluyt out of the Latine. But where the blind leade the I blind both fall: as bere the corrupt Latine could not but yeeld a corruption of truth in English. Ramulio, Secretarise to the Decemvin in Venice, found a better Copie and published the same, whence you have the worke in manner new : so renewed, that I have found the Pronerbe true, that it is better to pull downe an old bouse and to build it anew, then to repaire it; as I also should have done, had I knowne that which in the enent I found. The Latine is Latten , compared to Ramusios Gold. And bee which 20 bath the Latine bath but Marco Polos Carkaffe, or not fo much, but a few bones, yea, sometime stones rather then hones; thunes divers, averse, adverse, perversed in manner, distornted in manner, beyond beliefe. I have seen some Aushors maymed, but never any so mangled and so mingled, so present and so absent, as this vulgar Latine of Marco Polo; not so like himselfe, as the three Polos were at their returne to Venice, where none knew them, as in the Discourse yee shall find. Much are wee beholden to Ramusio, for restoring this Pole and Load-starre of Asia, out of that mirie poole or puddle in which be lay drowned. And, O that it were possible to doe as much for our Countriman Mandeuill, who next this (if next ) was the greatest Asian Traveller that ever the World had & having falne among it theeves, neither Prieft, nor Lenite can know him, neither have we hope of a Samaritan to releeve him. In this I have indenoured to give (in what I give) the truth; but have abridged some things to present prolixitie 1 omes macrowress year (in worse, green) is a surely as a consistency of field fracts, but when defined it is a first order of field fracts, but when defined it is befored, in this is volked: and facking rather the finite from a firster verball following one Authorses word and forence. After the Chapters I finite the during by distance scripted, and therefore base word and forence. After the Chapters I finite them during by distance scripted, and therefore base word and forence. followed our owne method.

### CHAP. IIII.

The first Booke of MARCUS PAVLUS VENETUS, or of Master MAR CO POLO, a Gentleman of Venice, bis Voyages.

#### ð. Í.

The Voyages of Master M. NICOLO and M. MAFFIO from Constantinople to the Great C . N , and their comming home to Venice: their second Voyage with the Authour and

N the time of Baldwin Emperour of Conflaminople, \* where vitally remayned a \* Of Bald Magiltrate of Vonice, called Anolfier la Dofe, in the yeare of our Lord 1250, conqui in Malter Nicolo Polo, Eather of Matter Marco, and M. Maffio his Brother, No. Conflation ble, Honorable and Wiemen of Venice, beeing as Constantople with flore of pire of the Merchandize, kept many Accounts together. At last they determined to goe time the into the Great (or Euxine) Sea, to see if they could increase their stocke, and musichach

buying many faire and rich Iewels. They departed from Constantinople and fayled by the faid uen a long buying many faire and rich Iewels. They departed from Lonstantinopte and 124 Court of a courie: le Sea to a Port called Soldadia: \* from whence they travelled after by Land to the Court of a Courie: le Knowley. great Lord of the Tartars, called Barcha, who refided in the Cities of Bolgara and Affara, and before the fine was reputed one of the most liberal and courteous Princes that ever had beene amongst the Tar- [up.tom.; 1.] was reputed one of the moft liberal and courteous Princes that euter man very surface and programs in fars. He was very well pleaded with their comming, and did them great honour. They having "Called made flew of their Iewels, and feeing they pleafed him, freely befrowed them on lim, He, lots biffed 1/h. Speaks, 25.

placed in Chirmia (not Armenia) on the North-fide of the Eurine Sca. Frier Basen before cals it Soldaia in Caffaria.

G 3 to

to be acceeded in liberalitie, caused twice the value to bee given them, and besides great and rich gifts. Hauing flayed one yeare in the Countrey of the faid Prince, whiles they thought to returne to Venice, there inddenly arose Warre betwixt the faid Barcha and another named Alan, Lord of the Easterne Turtars. These Armies fighting together, Alan had the Victorie, and the Armie of Barcha received a great overthrow. By reason whereof, the wayes beeing not secure. they were not able to returne that way which they came. And having confulted how to returne to Confiantizople, they were aduised to goe fo farre to the East, that they might compasse

Bresta, or Bogor which fee M. Ieniginfon.

the Realme of Barcha, by viiknowne wayes : and fo they came to a Citie called Ouchacha, which is in the Confines of the Kingdome of this Lord of the Tartars on the Welt, and paffing further. they went over Tigris (one of the foure Rivers of Paradile) and after that a Defart of feven- to teene dayes Journey, without Citie, Castle, or Fort, finding only Tartars, which line in the fields in certayne Tents, with their bealts. Beeing past the Defart they came to agood Citie called Bocara, (the name alto of the Prouince) in the Region of Persia, which was subject to a King called Barach: in which place they flayed three yeares before they could goe forward or backward, by realon of great warres betwixt the Tartars.

At that time a certayne Wileman was fent Ambassador from the said Prince Alex to the Great Can, who is the greatest King of all the Tartars, residing in the Confines of the Earth, betwixt the North-east and the East, called Cublai Can: who being comne to Bocara; and finding there the faid two brethren which had now well learned the Tartarian Language, he rejoyced about measure, and perswadeth these Westerne men or Latines to goe with him , to the pre- 26 fence of the Great Emperour of the Tartars; knowing that hee thould gratifie him in this, and the men notwithstanding should be entertayned with great honour, and rewarded with large gifts; especially, seeing through the manifold conference had with them, he now perceived their pleating behaviour. Those men therefore considering, that they could not easily returne home without danger, confulting together, joyne with the faid Ambassadour, and journey with him to the Emperous of the Tartars, having certayne other Christians in their Company, whom they brought with them from Venice, and departing towards the North-east and the North, werea whole yeare in going to the Court of the faid chiefe King of the Tarrars. The cause of their long time in this Iourney, was the Snowes and River Waters much increased, so that they were forced in their trauell to flay the waiting of the Snow, and decreasing of the flouds.

Being therefore brought before the prefence of the Great Can, they were most courteously the Great Can, received of him. He questioned them concerning many things, as of the Countries of the Welt, the Romane Emperour, and other Kings and Princes, how they carried themselues in Gouernment, and in Warlike affaires, how Peace, Iustice, and Concord continued among them; also what manner of life, and customes were observed with the Latines; and especially of the Pope of the Christians, of the things of the Church and the Religion of the Christian Faith. And M. Nicolo and M. Maffeo, as Wifemen told him the truth, alway speaking well to him, and orderly in the Tartarian Tongue. Infomuch that hee often commanded they should bee brought to his prefence, and they were very acceptable in his fight.

Having well understood the Affaires of the Latines, and resting satisfied with their answers, 40 the Great Can intending to fend them his Ambassadours to the Pope, first, consulted with his Barons, and then calling to him the two Brethren, defired them for his love to goe to the Pope of the Romans, with one of his Barons called Chogatall, to gray him to fend an hundred Wife-They are fent men, and learned in the Christian Religion vnto him, who might shew his Wisemen, that the

Ambastadours Faith of the Christians, was to bee preferred before all other Sects, and was the only way of faluation; and that the Gods of the Tartars were Deuils, and that they and others the people of the East were deceived in the worship of their Gods. Hee gave them also in charge to bring in their returne from Ierufalem, of the Oyle of the Lampe which burneth before the Sepulchre of our Lord Iefus Chrift, to whom hee had great deuotion, and held him to bee true God. They therefore yeelding due reuerence to the Great Can, promife that they will faithfully execute so the charge committed vnto them, and prefent the Letters which they received from him, written in the Tartarian, to be delivered to the Billiop of Rome. He (according to the custome of his Kingdome) commanded a Golden Tablet to bee given

the broad

Golden tablet them ingrauen and figned with the Kings marke; carrying the which with them throughout his whole Empire, in flead of a Paffe-port, they might bee euery-where fafely conueyed through dangerous places, by the Gouernours of Prouinces and Cities, and receive expenses from them; and laftly, how long foeuer they would flay in any place, whatfoeuer they needed to them or theirs, should be ministred vnto them. Taking their leave therefore of the Emperour, they take their Journey, carrying the Letters and Golden Tablet with them. And when they had rid twentie dayes Iourney, the Baron aforelaid affociated vinto them began to fall grieuoufly ticke. 60 Whereupon confulting and leaving him there, they profecute their intended Icurney, beeing euery-where courteoufly received by reason of the Emperours Tablet. Yet in very many places they were compelled to flay, by occasion of the ouer-flowing of Rivers, to that they ipent three yeares, before they came vnto the Port of the Citie of the Armenians, named Giazza. From

Giazza they goe to Acre, to wie, in the yeere of our Lord 1269, in the moneth of Aprill. Acreo: Acre. But having enered into the Citie of Acre, they heard, that Pope Clement the fourth was late- then in post ly dead, and that no other was substituted in his place: for the which they were not a little grie- lion of the

ly dead, and that no other was monitured in in space to the Apoltolicall Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I und. At that time, there was a certaine Legate of the Apoltolicall Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to wit, Matter Christians, I will be a committed to the Apoltolical Sea at Acre, to with Tibalio de Vesconti di Piscenza, to whom they declared all they had in commission, from the Pope Clones Great Can: and he aduried them, to expect the Creation of a new Pope. In the meanie space the fourth. therefore departing to Venice to wifit their Friends, (purposing to remayne there; witill ano. " Another c ther Pope were created.) Mafter Nuolo found that his wife was dead, whom (at his departure) pie hath 254

hee had left great with child, but had left a fonne, named Marco, who was now \* mineteene Booke was Ic yeeres of age. This is that Marco which erdayned \* this Booke, who will manifelt thesein writtinby s all those things which he hath feene. Moreouer, the Election of the Pope of Rome was defer- Gendeman

They (fearing the discontentment, and disquieting of the Emperour of the Tartars, who mouth and They (rearing the discontentiment, and indirecting of the Linguist of the Legate, carrying with therefore fill they knew) expected their returne) goe backe agains to Acre to the Legate, carrying with in Rescale them Marco aforefaid, and (having gone to lerufalem, and fetched of the Oyle) with the Legats Letters, tellifying their fidelitie to the Great Chan, and that a Pope was not yet cholen, tioned in the they went againe towards Giazza. In the meane time whiles they were going, Meffengers third per or

came from the Cardinals to the Legate, declaring vato.him, that he was chosen Repe, and he and act into called himselfie 4 Gregorie. Hearing this prefently tending Meffengers, he calleth backe the most of himselfies a declared himselfie and hope of the hope not read the second of t Wenetians, and admonitheth them not to depart, preparing other Letters for them, which they fo written thould prefent voto the Great Chan of the Tartars; with whom he also inyned two Preaching the whole p Friars, men famous for their honest convertation and learning, whereof the one was called Friar Micolo Danicenza; the other, Friar Guielmo da Tripoli. To these hee gave Letters, and Printaname, the same, ledges, and authoritie to order Priefts and Bithops, and of all absolution as it himselfe were pre- Letters, and . fent, with Prefents also of great value, and Crystall vessels to prefent the great Chan, together Preaching with his Benediction. They came to Giazza, a Port of the Sea in Armenia. And because Ben- ars fent vn tiochdare the Sultan of Babylon leuying a great Armie had then invaded the Armenians, the two the Taviar. Friars mentioned, began to bee afraid of themselves, and delivering the Letters and Presents to

warres, remay ned with the Matter of the Temple, and returned with him. But the three Venetians exposing themselves to all danger, with many labours, and much difficultie trauelled many dayes, alwaies towards the North-east and North, till they after three yeeres and a halfe came vnto the Emperour of the Tartars, vnto the Citie called Clemenfu: for The Citie in the Winter time their journey had often and long hinderantes, by reason of the snow and menju. excreme cold, and mundations of waters. Moreover, King Cublai hearing that they were comming, who were yet very farre off, fent Meffengers fortie dayes journey to meet them, who should conduct them, and minister all necessaries for the journey.

Mafter Nicolo, and Maffio, and Marco, defiring to avoide the danger of the wayes, and perill of

Going therefore to the Kings Court, and being brought to his prefence, they fell downe be- The adora fore him on their faces, yeelding the accustomed reverence. Of whom being curteoutly recei- of the Tar ued, they are willed to arife, and he commandeth them to declare, how they passed the divers

dangers of the wayes, and what they had treated with the Bishop of Rome. Then they orderly declare all things, and give the Emperour the Popes Letters and Prefents which they brought. Whereat the Chan wonderfull rejoycing, commended their faithfull cares. The Oyle alfo Marcus ? brought from the Lampe of the Lords Sepulcher, and offered vnto him, hee reuerently received the Christ of them, and commanded it should bee honourably preserved. And asking of Marco, who hee Clerkes, was, Mafter Nicolo answered, that he was his Majetties fernant and his fonne. Hee enterrayned a Courter him with a friendly countenance, and caufed him to write amongst other his honourable Cour- Marter Le tiers: Whereupon he was much esteemed of all the Court, and in a little spacelearned the cuflomes of the Tartars, and foure divers Languages, being able to write and reade them all.

The great Chan to make his wifedome more apparent, committed an Embaffage vinto him to a force to be performed in a Citie called Caraban, who the which he could scarcely attayne in fixe moneths space. But he, carrying himselfe wifely in all things, discharged what hee had in comitation between the countries of the countr fion, not without the commendation and fauour of the Prince. And knowing the Emperour boned to was delighted with nouelties in the Countries which he passed thorow, he diligently fearched time in w the cultomes and manners of men, and the con litions of the Countries; making a memoriall this booke of all which he knew and faw, to pleafure the Great Chan. And in fixe and twentie \* yeeres written, for which he continued one of his Court, he was to acceptable to him, that he was continually fent 1272 to 13 thorowall his Realmes and Signiories, for the affaires of the Great Chan, and sometimes for lation app his owne, but by the Chans order. And this is the true reason that the faid Matier Marco lear- rethe The 60 ned and faw fo many no selties of the East, which follow in order diligently writters.

But these Venetians having stayd in that Court many yeeres, and growne very rich in Iewels 27 ye is he begant of great value, were inflamed with defire to wifit their Countries, fearing that if the Chan (new a Countries old) should die, they should not bee able to returne. One day Master Nicolo feeing the Chan They del merrie, craued licence to depart in the name of all three. Whereat hee was moved, and asked retelled

And this King gouerned the íame. The will of Queene Belgana. Cogatin.

why they would put themselves on so dangerous a journey; and if they wanted riches, he would give them twice as much as they had : and in great love would not permit their departure, Yet Argon, a King in the meane space it happened, that a King of the Indians, named Argon, sent three wise men vnto the Court of Great Cublai, whole names were Vlatai, Apufca, Coza, to treat with him. Argon is a Na- that he wold deliver him a wife; for his wife named Bolgana, being lately dead, begged this grace of the King at the point of death, and left in her Wil, that he should not marrie a wife of another Familie then her owne, which was of Catay. King Cablas therefore yeelding to his request, caufed to be fought out for them a faire young Mayden of feuenteene yeeres of age, named Cegatin, descended of the said Queenes stocke, and to be the wife of Argon.

King Argon. Nicolo, Maffio, Marco, and others, Embassadors. LIB. I.

These Embassadors departing, rode eight moneths the same way they came, but found so hot 10 warres betwixt the Tartars, that they were conftrayned to returne: and acquainted the Chan with their proceedings. Meane-whiles, Mafter Marco had returned from the parts of India. where he had beene employed with certaine ships, and declared to the Chan the nouelties of the places, and the fecuritie of those Seas: which words having passed him, the Embassadours conferred with the Venetians, and agreed that they with the Queene should goe to the Great Chan, and defire leave to returne by Sea, and to have the three Latines, men skilfull in Sea affaires, with them to the Countrey of King Argon. The Great Chan was much displeased with their request, ver vpon their petition granted it: and caused Nicolo, Maffio and Marco to come to his presence, and after much demonstration of his love, would have them promise to returne to him, after they had spent some time in Christendome, and at their owne house. And he cau- 20 fed to give them a Tablet of Gold, in which was written his commandement, for their libertie and securitie thorow all his Dominions, and that expenses should bee given them and theirs, and a Guide or conuoy for fafe passage; ordayning also that they should be his Embassadours to the Pope, the Kings of France, of Spayne, and to other Christian Kings. Hee caused fourteene thips to be prepared, each having foure Masts and able to beare nine Sayles in fayling, the forme of which is too long here to relate. Foure of them, or fine, had from two hundred and fiftue to two hundred and fixtie Mariners each of them. In these ships the Embassadours, the Queene, and Nicolo, Maffio, and Marco, fet fayle, having first taken leave of the Great Chan, who save them many Rubies and other precious gems, and expenses for two yeeres.

After three moneths they came vnto a certaine Iland, named land, and from thence fayling 30 through the Indian Sea ; after eighteene moneths, they come vnto the Countrey of King Argon, fixe hundred men of the Mariners and others, and but one of the Women and Damfels died in the journey, and onely Coza of the three Embassadours was living. When they came to the Countrey of King Argon, they found that hee was dead, and that one Chiacato gouerned the Kingdome, for his fonne being young. They fent to acquaint him with their businesse; who anfwered, that they should give her to Cafan the Kings sonne, then in the parts of Arbor faceo, in the Confines of Persia with fixtie thousand persons for the guard of certaine passages against the enemie. Hauing done to , Nicolo, Moffio , and Marco returned to Chiacato, and flayed there nine moneths. After this, taking leaue, Chiacato gaue them foure Tables of Gold, each a cupit long, fire fingers broad, of the weight of three or foure Markes: in which was written, that in 40 the power of the eternall God, the name of the Great Chan should bee honoured and praised many yeeres; and every one which should not obey, should be put to death, and his goods confiscate. It was further contayned, that these three Embassadours should be honoured, and service done them in all Lands and Countries, as to his owne person : and that Horses, Connoves . expenses and necessaries should be given them. All which was duly put in execution, that sometimes they had two hundred Horses for their lateguard. In this their travell they heard that the Great Chan was dead, which tooke from them all hope of returning thither. They rode till they came to Trabesonde, and from thence to Conflantinople, and after to Negroponte, and at last came with great riches fafe to Venice, Anno 1295. And thus much may ferue for a Preface to the following worke, whereby might appeare, how Marco Polo could come to the knowledge of the 50 things therein contayned.

To supply a little more, delinered by Tradition and recorded by Ramusio: he sayth that these three being comme to Venice, like Vlysses in Ithaca, none knew them; all esteeming them long since dead. Befides, sheir voyage bad fo altered them, that they seemed rather Tartarians then Venetians, having in manner for gotten their natine Language; their babite also was of thicke Cloth, like Tartars. They went to their house in Saint Iohn Chrylostomes Street, and is there still to be seene, then a faire Palace, and now called, The Court of millions: which name it had by reason of Marcos relations of so many millions in this worke, and in his d scourses of the Great Chans incredible wealth. They found there inhabiting some of their kindred, nor knew how to make themselnes knowne. Therefore, as I have often heard of Magnifico Meffer Gasparo Malipiero, a very old Gentleman of fingular integritie, from 60 the report of his Father and Grandfather, &c. they agreed to insite many of their kindred to a feast, prepared in honourable manner with much Magnificence: in which at first all three came forth in Crim-Son Sattin Sutes , and after the Guests were set, stropped themselues, and gaue them to the Sernitors. comming forth in Crimson Damaske; and at the next service in Crimson Veluct, and after in the common babit, gining still the former to the servitors. Dinner ended and the Servitors put foorth, Marco brought forth then three habits of thicke (losth in which they had comne home, and thence tooks and set on the Table an incredible quantitie of lewels artificially sewed therein, which was no lesse maruell to the beholders, then enidence of their being of the Polo family as they pretended. Masto was made a Magifrate in Venice, Marco was daily frequented with the youth; and all wanne great reputation. In few moneths after, Lampa Doria Generall of a fleet of Genois beingcome to the Ile Curzola with seauentie Gilletes, Andrea Dandolo was sent against them, and in that Fleet Marcowas made Captaine of a Galler, which by disaduenture of Warre was taken, and he carryed prisoner to Genoa. Where his strange travels being made knowne, a certaine Gentleman daily reforting to bim (as did the whole Citie in admiration) caused and belped him to write this storie, baning sent to Venice for his Notes. The booke was first written in Latine, and thence translated into Italian. One of which Latine Copies very ancient and haply copied out of Marcos originall, I have seene and compared with this which I heere Publish, lent me by a Gentleman of this Citie of the bonfe of the Chistimy special friend, which bolds it in specialleseeme. No price might ransome him, insomuch that his Father wanting an heyre to his wealth married againe, and had by his wife three Children. Marcos worthinesse obtained that which no moneys worth could doe, and being at libertie bee returned and marryed, and had two Danghters (but no some ) Moretta and Fautina, Oc.

That Gentleman of Genoa made a Preface to the Booke, and Francisco Pipino a Frier Preacher which translated the same, Anno 1320. out of the Vulgar (the Latine being rare, as well it might before 20 Printing and perhaps neuer seene of bim) into Latine. Both those Profaces are in Ramusio : the latter commends M. Polo for a denout and bonest man, and faith his Father confirmed the truth of this Booke, and his wacle Maffo on his Death-bed to his Confesor. Pipino abbremated the Booke and perhaps gane occasion to that corruption which was after increased by others.

#### ð. II.

Olfernations of M. Poto, of Armenia, Turkie, Zorzania, Baldach, Persia, Chirmain, Cobniam, Ormus, Knaue-fooles Paradife, and other Easterne parts in Asia, and Armenia the leffe.

Here are two Armenia's, the greater and the leffe. In the leffe the King abides in a Citie called Sebaffoz, which in all his Countrey observeth Inflice and good Government, The Kingdome it selfe hath many Cities, Fortresses and Castles : the soyle also is fertile, and the Countrey lacketh no necessary thing, nor doth it want game of Beasts

and fowle : the ayre is not very good. The Gentlemen of Armenia in times past were stout The mana warriours, but become now effeminate and nice, give themselves to drunkennes and ryot. There of the Inha is a certaine Citie in this Kingdome feated neere the Sea, named Giazza, having an excellent tants. Hauen whither many Merchants refort from divers Countries, even from Venice and Genna, by Giagge. reason of the divers marchandises brought thither, especially Spices of fundry forts and certaine other precious riches brought thither out of the East Countries for trading : for this place is as it were a certaine part of all the East Countries.

In Turchomania are three forts of Nations; to wit, the Turchomans or Turke-men, which ob- Turchoman ferue the law of Mahamet. They are men vulearned, rude, and wilde, inhabiting the Moun. Turkis. taines and inacceifible places, where they know are pastures; for they line onely of their beasts. There are good Horses, called Turke-men, (or Turke horses) Mules, of great estimation. The other Nations are Grecians and Armenians, who polleffe the Cities and Townes, and bestow their labour on Marchandule and Artes. They make the best Carpets in the world. And they have many Cities, the chiefe whereof are Cogno, or Iconium, Cafarea, and Sebafte, where Saint Bafil fuffered Martyrdome for Christ, and they acknowledge one of the Kings of the Tartars for their Lord.

Armenia the greater, being a very large Province, tributary to the Tartars, hath many Cities and Townes. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Arzuigg, and the best Bukram is made there. Most wholsome hot waters also spring there, for the washing and curing of mens bodies. And the other more famous Cities next to the Metropolis, are Argiron and Darziz. In the Summer time, very many Tartars refort thither with their Flockes and heards, allured through the fatnes of the pasture : and againe in the Winter depart for a certaine time by reason of the abuffidance of Snow. The Arke of Noah remained in the Mountaines of this Armenia. This Countrey Of the Ge hath the Pronince of Mofull and Meridin, bordering on the East. But on the North is Zorza. we nia\*, in the confines of which a Fountaine is found, from which liquor-like oyle floweth, yet is it 60 vnprofitable for the seasoning of meat, but very fit for the making and maintaining of Lampes, and to anoint other things enough to lade Camels.

In Zorzania is a King called alway Danid Melicz, or King Danid : One part of the Pro- Georgia uince is subject to him, the other payeth tribute to the King of the Tartars. The Woods there are of Boxe-tree. The Countrey abutteth on the two Seas, Mar-maggiore, and that of Abaccu.

(or the Capian) which containeth in Circuit twentie eight hundred Miles, and is like a Lake, not mingled with other Seas. In it are many Ilands, Cities and Cattles, fome of which are inhabited by those which fled from the Tartars out of Persia. The people of Zorzania ate Christia. ans, observing the rites of the Christians. They keepe their hayre short, like the Westerne Clergie. The Inhabitants haue many Cities and Castles, and abound with Silke, of the which they make very faire Cloathes.

Moxul.

Moxal is a Province in which dwell reople of many forces, one called Arabi which are Mabumetans, other are Christians, some Nestorians, others Incobites, and others Armenians: and they haue a Patriarch called Iacolit, which ordaineth Archbishops, Bishops, and Abbots, and sends them thorow all ports of India, and to Cairo and Baldach, and all parts where Christians dwell, as doth to the Pope of Rome. And all the cloathes of Gold and of Silke called Moffulnes are wrought in Moxul. But in the Mountaines of this Kingdome dwell the people called Cords, whereof fome are Nestorians, other Incobines, and some tollowers of Mahamet. They are wicked men and rob Merchants. Neare to them is another Prouince, called Mus and Meridin, wherein growes infinite flore of Cotton or Bombast, whereof they make Buckrams and other workes. They are all under the Tartars.

Baldach is a great Citie, in which was the Chalifa that is the Pope of all the Sarcens. A River

Baldasb. Balfara,

runnes thorow it, from whence to the Sea is ordinarily feauenteene dayes journey. They fayle by a Citie called Chift: but before they come thither is Balfara, about which grow the best Dates in the world. In Baldach are many cloathes of Gold and Silke : there are wrought Da- 20 maskes and Voluets with divers figures of creatures. All the pearles (in manner) in Curiftendome come thence. In that Citie is studyed the law of Mahomet, Negromancie, Phylicke, Altronomie, Geomancie, and Phisnomie : It is the chiefe Citie in those parts. When the Tartars began to raigne, there were foure Brethren, the eldest of which, Mongura gned in Sedia. These purpofing to subdue the world, went one to the East, another to the North, to the South a third, which was Vlan, and the other to the West. In the years from the Incarnation of our Lord 1250. Vlas having a great Army of one hundred thousand Horse, besides Foot, yet vsed policie, and hauing hid a great part of his men brought by fained flight, the Calipha into his ambush, and tooke

V'a4 A!47.0r

him, and the Citie : in which he found infinite store of treasure, infomuch that he wond; red. He sent for the Califa, and reproued him that in that warre hee had not therewith prouided 20 himselfe of Souldiers for defence : and commanded that hee should be inclosed in that Tower, where his Treasure was, without other sustenance. This seemed a sust sudgement from our Lord Iefus Christ on him. For he in the yeare 1225, feeking to conuert the Christians to Mahumet: And taking advantage on that place of the Golpell, that bee which bath Faith afmuch as a graine of Mustard-seed should be able to remove mountaines, he Converted all the Christians, Nestorians, and Tacobites, and propounded to them in ten dayes to remoue certaine Mountaines, or turne Mabumerant, or be flaine, as not having one man amongst them which had the least faith. They therefore continued eight dayes in Prayer : after which a certaine Shoomaker by reuelation to a Bulh p, was deligned to performe it. This Shoomaker once tempted to luft by fight of a young Wo nan in putting on her Shooe, zealoully had fulfilled that of the Gospell, and literally had put 40 out his right eye : He now on the day appointed with other Christians following the Croffe and lifting his hands to Heauen, prayed to God to have mercy on his people, and then with a loude voyce commanded the Mountaine in the name of the Father, Sonne, and holy Ghoft to remove, which presently with great terrour to the Califa and all his people was effected. And that day is fince kept holy, with fasting also on the even. Tauris is a great Citie in the Province of Hirace. It is a most populous Citie. They live

of Arts and Merchandife. They make Cloathes of gold and filke. For anne Merchants make there great gaine, but the Inhabitants are generally poore : a mixed people of Nestorians, Armemans, Lacobites, Georgians, and Persians, and Mahametans. These last are persidious and treacherous. thinking all well gotten which they steale from men of other Religions. And this wickednesse so of the Saracens hath converted many Tartars thereto. If the Christians kill them in their tobbe-Deuils Marryrs rie, they are reputed Martyrs. From Tauris to Persia are twelve dayes sourney. In the confines of Tauris is the Monafterie of Saint Barfam, the Monkes whereof are like Carmelites; they alway make girdles which they lay on the Altar, and give to their friends, which devoutly e-

The eight Kingdome of Perfis. Hories. Afles.

The Inhabi-

Persacontaineth eight Kingdomes: whereof the first is called Casibin, the second Curdiflan, the third Lor, the fourth Suoliftan, the fift Spaan, the fixt Siras, the leaventh Soncara, the eight Timochaim, which is necre Arboresecco towards the North. Faire and great Horses are there, whence they are fold into India. There are also very goodly and excellent Affes fold dearer then the Hories, for that they eat little, carrie much and farre. They have Camels but not fo fwift. 60 These are necessary in those Countries, which sometime in a long way yeeld no grasse. The people in those Countries are very wicked, contentious, Theeues, and Murtherers, profetting the faith of Mahamet. Merchants are enery where flaine by those Theenes, voleffe they travell in croupes. Yet are there excellent Artificers in the Cities, who make wonderfull things in gold,

filke, and Embroyderie. They abound with Silke-wormes, Wheat, Barley, Milium; and other kindes of Corne: and have also plenty of Wine and fruits. And though their Law forbid wine, Fine distincti kindes or Corne; and have an extra of the text, that if they boyle it, then it changeth the on, as in a Popith falts, taile, and therefore the name also of Wine.

Infds is a great Citie in the confines of Persia, where much Trading is exercised. It hath also

cunning Artificers who labour in Silke. Chierman is a Kingdome in the confines of Perfis to the East, subject to the Tartars. In the veines of the Mountaines the stones are found, commonly called Turchiffes; veines also of Aza aio and Andanico. There are also made all Armes and munition for warre, and by the Women IO excellent needle-workes in Silkes, with the portraitures of all forts of Creatures verie admirable. There are the best Falcons in the world, verie swift of flight, red brested, and under the trayne, leffe then those of other Countries, Proceeding further, you goe through a great Plaine, and hauing ended eight dayes iourney, you come vnto a certaine descent. In the Plaine many Partridges are found, and also Castles and Townes. But in that steepe descent are many trees and those fruitfull, but no habitation is there but of Shepheards. This Countrey in the winter time

After this you come vnto a certaine great Plaine, where a certaine Citie is feated, named Ca- Camandu. mandu, which in times past was great, but is now destroyed by the Tartars, and the Countrey is called Reobarle. There grow Pomgranats, Quinces, Adams-apples, and divers others fruits, 20 which grow not in our cold Countries. It hath also very great Oxen, and all white, thin havred with thicke blunt short hornes, with a Camels bunch on the backe, accustomed to beare great Oxen with a with thicke blunt thort hornes, with a Camels built of the back, accurate the burch on the burthens. And when the packe-faddles are fet vpon the bunch, they bow the knee like Camels, backe. and having received the burthen rife againe, being fo taught by men. The Sheepe of that Coun-Sheepe of the trey are no leffer then Affes, bearing to long and broad a tayle, that they weigh thirty pound bignes of Affe weight. They are very faire and fat, and good meat. Moreouer, in the plaine of this Countrey are many Cities and Townes, with high walls of Mud to defend them from the Caranna, that is Mefizes, or mingled people of Indian women and Tarrars, ten thouland of which bee conducted by one Nugodar, the nephew of Zagathai who ruled in the greater Turkie. This Nugodar hearing of the Malabars subject to Soldan Asidim, without his Vncles knowledge went and 30 tooke Dely with other Cities, and erected a new Seignorie, and mixing with the Indian women procreated these Carasmas, which goe vp and downe to rob and spoyle in Reobarte and other Countries. There they learned magicall and diabolicall Arts, by which the ayre is fo darkned in Their Inchange

Countries. I nere they tealine in agreed and in the day time for a long space, that none may see them or preuent them. CM. Marco one time thousand they work that they work they are they work they work they are they work they are they are they work they are the are they are the they are the are they are the are the are the are they are the are the are the are the are the Consalmi : but many of his company were taken or flaine. That Plaine whereof I now speake is fine daies journey extended towards the South But at the end therot, the way beginneth by litle and litle to descend for twenty miles together, & the way it felfe is very bad, and not without danger by reason of Theeues. At length you come to very goodly Plaines, which extend themselues two dayes journey in length, and the place it selfe is

40 called Ormus. That Countrey aboundeth with Rivers of water and Palme trees. There is also plenty of diuers Fowles, especially of Poppin-jayes, which are not like to ours. From hence you come vnto the Ocean, where on an Iland is leated, a Citic called Ormus, whereto many Mer. Parrets. chants refort, bringing Spices, Pearles, precious Stones, cleath of Gold and Silkes, and Elephants teeth, and all other precious things from India. That Citie is a great Mart, having Cities and Castles under it, and is head of the Kingdome Chermain: the King is called Ruchmedin Achomach, who yeelds obedience to the King of Chermain. He makes himselfe heyre, if any Merchant dyes there. In Summer they by reason of the heat betake themselves to their Garden houfes built on waters. And from nine till noone there blowes a winde with fuch extreame hear from the fands, that it I wallowes up a mans breath and stifleth him, which makes them lye in 50 the water. The King of Chermain lent an Armie of fixteene hundred Horle, and five thousand Foot, against the Lord of Ormus for not paying his tribute, which were all surprised and shifted with that winde. The Inhabitants of the place eate no Bread made of Corne and flesh, but feed vpon Dates, falt Fish, and Onions. They have not very found Ships : for they fasten them not Their Ships with yron nayles (by reason that the wood is brittle and would cleaue) but with woodden pins, with certaine threds made of the thels of Indian Nuts. These shels are dressed after the manner of An outward Leather, out of the which, threds are cut, and of the thrids exceeding flrong cordes are made, fhell which which are able to indure the force and violence of the water, and are not easily corrupted there- growes spon by. Those Ships have one Mast, one sayle, one beame, and are covered but with one decke.

They are not chalked with Pitch, but with the Trane of Fishes. And when they croffe the Sea th ready sub-60 to India, carrying Horses and other fraight with them , they lose many Ships, because that Sca ffance. is very tempestuous, and the Ships are not strengthened with yron. The Inhabitants of that Countrey are blacke, and addicted to the Law of Mahumet. It is the custome of this Countrey, when any Master of a family dyeth, that the wife left behind him should mourne for him foure weekes, once a day. They have women which professe the practile of mourning and are thereto hired to mourne daily for their dead. Returnin:

Returning from Ormus to Chermain is a fertile Plaine, but the bread made there, cannot bee eaten of them, who are not accustomed thereunto, it is so bitter by region of the bitter water put therein, whereof are flore of hot Bathes good against diseases.

which is Salt. bitter, laxatiue, greene

Going from Chermain in three dayes riding you come to a Defart, which continued till you come to Cobinam, seuen dayes Iourney, which is extended. In the first three dayes you shall have no water, saue a very sew, and those salt and bitter, of a greene co lour in shew, as if it were the iuyce of Herbs : and whoso tasteth but a little thereof, cannot escape loolenesse of thebelly. The like also hapneth, if any taste the Salt made of that water. It is therefore needfull, that Trauellers carrie some water with them, if they will not be indangered through thirst. The beasts also which are compelled to drink that water, escape not without scouring. In the fourth day they to find a fresh River under ground: the three last dayes are as the first,

Cobinam. Tutia and Siedio.

Cobinam 1s agreat Mahumetan Citie; goodly, and great Locking Glasses of Steele, are made there. Tutia allo which cureth the eyes; and Spodio and that, after this manner. That Country hath Mines, out of which they digge Earth, which they boyle casting it into a fierie Fornace. an Iron grate receiving the afcending vapour from aboue, in the which, the conglutinated and clammic vapour becommeth Tutia. But the groffer matter remayning in the fire, is called Spodie. The Inhabitants of this Countrey, are followers of Mahumet.

A Defart of eight dayes lourney.

Leaving the Citie Cobinam, you meet with another Defart eight dayes Iourney in length, and in it there is great drynesse: it wanteth trees, and fruits, and waters which it hath are very bit-In the title 18 grant at very beafs refuse to drinke them except they mixe meale therewish, and Tra-uellers carrie water with them. But having passed ouer this Defart, you came to the Kingdome 10

Timochaim. Tree of Sun, a Ricci.

there carrie went with the state of the stat The dry Tree. This tree is very great and thicke, and hath leaves, which on the one fide are white. and on the other fide greene. It produceth o prickly shales like those of a Chesnut, but nothing in them. The wood is folide and strong, yellow like Boxe. There is no tree within one hundred miles, except on one fide, on which are trees within ten miles. In this place the Inhabitants fav. that Alexander the Great fought with Darius. The Cities are plentiful of good things, but Mahametan, and of temperate Aire. It hath also goodly men, but specially women, the most beautifull in my judgement in the World.

Mu'chet.

Mulchet is in Saracen Language, as much to say as a place of Heretikes, and of this place they call the men Mulehetici, that is, Heretikes in their Law, as with vs Patarines. Hauing spoken of the Countrey, the old man of the Mountayne shall bee spoken of, of whom Marco heard much from many. His name was Aloadine, and was a Mahumetan. Hee had in a goodly old manof the Valley betwixt two Mountaynes very high, made a goodly Garden, furnished with the best trees and fruits he could find, adorned with divers Palaces and houses of pleasure, beautified with gold Workes, Pictures, and Furnitures of filke. Thereby divers Pipes answering divers parts of those Palaces were seene to runne Wine, Milke, Honey and cleere Water. In them hee had placed goodly Damofels skilfull in Songs and Instruments of Musicke and Dancing, and to make Sports and Delights vnto men what societ they could imagine. They were also fairely at- 40 tyred in Gold and Silke, and were seene to goe continually sporting in the Garden and Palaces, He made this Palace, because Mahomet had promised such a sensuall Paradite to his deuont followers. No man might enter: for at the mouth of the Valley was a strong Castle, and the entrance was by a fecret passage.

Alaodine had certaine Youthes from twelue to twentie yeares of age, such as seemed of a bold and vindoubted disposition, whom hee instructed daily touching Mahomets Paradile, and how hee could bring men thither. And when he thought good, he caused a certaine Drinke to bee giuen vnto ten or twelue of them, which caft them in a dead fleepe : and then hee caused them to be carryed into divers Chambers of the faid Palaces, where they faw the things aforefaid as soone as they awaked; each of them having those Damosels to minister Meates and excellent 50 Drinkes, and all varieties of pleasures to them; infomuch that the Fooles thought themselves in Paradiferindeed. When they had enioyed those pleasures foure or fine dayes, they were againe cast in a sleepe, and carryed forth againe. After which, hee caused them to be brought into his presence, and questioned where they had beene, which answered, by your Grace, in Paradise, and recounted before all, all before mentioned. Then the old man answered, This is the commandement of our Prophet, that who foeuer defends his Lord, he make him enter Paradife : and if thou wile bee obedient to mee, thou shalt have this grace. And having thus animated them, hee was thought happie whom the old man would command, though it cost him his life: fo that other Lords and his Enemies were flaine by these his Assaires, \* which exposed themselves to all dangers, and contemned their lines. Hereupon hee was effeemed a Tyrant, feared in all those 60 parts; and had two Vicars one in the parts of Damafeo, and another in Cur diffan: which obserthis flock Dis ned the same order with young men. Hee vied also to rob all which passed that way. Visus in spian Vicarior the yeare 1262 fent and befieged his Caille, which after three yeares nege they tooke, the hon and ruined his Paradife, not being able for want of victuall to hold out longer.

\* It is likely that the Affa fines mentioned in the

¿. III.

of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaican, Scaffem, Balaxiam, Bafcia, Chefmur, Vochan, Samarchan, Carchan, Peym, the dreadfull De-(art of Lop and Tanguth.



Eparting from the forelaid place, you come vnto a certayne Country plealant enough, Large pleala which hath Hils, Plaines, and excellent Pafture, and laftly, fruits in great plentie: Country, for the foyle thereof is very fruitfull. This continues fixe dayes, and then you enter a Defart of fortie or fiftie miles, without water. After this you come to the Citie ADefart.

Sapargan, where plentie of all victuall is found; especially, Pompions the best in the World, Sapargan. fweet like Honey.

Paffing from thence, we came vnto a certayne Citie, named Batach, which in times past was great and famous, having fumptuous Marble Palaces: but now overthrowne by the Taxtars. In this Citie they report, that Alexander tooke the Daughter of King Darins to wife. To this Citie (on the East and North-cast) continue the Confines of Persia. But it you goe from hence, and Balach, perha proceed between the East, and the North-east, you cannot finde any Habitation for two dayes in Sales Journey : because the Inhabitans of the place having endured so many grievances by Theeses 20 and Robbers, are compelled to flye vnto the Mountaynes, to wit, places of more lafetie. Many waters are found there, and very much game of wild beafts: Lyons also are there. And because Transllers find no food in that lourney, they carrie victuals with them, which may fuffice them

for two dayes. That two dayes Iourney ended, which we mentioned, we met with a certaine Castle, called Thracian-\* Thaican; where is great plentie of Corne, and very goodly fields. The Mountaynes also on Salt-mounts the South are high, some of which are of white and hard Salt, and the Inhabitants thirtie dayes taynes, Iourney about fetch it from thence, being the best World, so hard that they must breake it with Iron Instruments, so much that the whole World may have sufficient Salt from thence. The other Mountaynes have store of Almonds and Pistaches. Going betweene the East and North-30 east from hence the Countrey is fruitfull, the Inhabitants Murtherers, Perfidious, Mahumetans, Drunkards: Their Wine is boyled and excellent. They goe bare-headed, faue that the men bind vo their heads with a certainestring of ten hanfuls long. But they make them clothing of the skinnes of the wilde beafts which they take, as Breeches and Shooes, and vie no other

After three dayes Iourney is the Citie Scaffem feated in a Plaine, and hath many Castle, in the Scaffem Mountaines round about it. A certaine great River a To floweth through the middle thereof. There are many Porcupines in that Countrey, which they hunt with Dogges by the Hunters : Porcupines. and they contracting themselves with great furie, cast their prickly Quils against the men and Porci pinos the Dogges, and wound them. That Nation bath a particular language: the sheepherds there-40 of abide in the Mountaynes, having made Caues for their Habitation. You goe hence three daies

Journey without any Habitation at all, to the Prouince Balaxiam. Balaxiam is a Mahametan Province, and hath a peculiar Language. Their Kings who fuc- Balaxiam ceed one another by hereditarie right, are reported to have derived their discent from Alexander the Great, and from the Daughter of Darius, and are called Zulcarnen, which is to fay, Alex-

ander. There are found the Ballaffer, faire precious stones, and of great value. No man without danger of life, dare either digge fuch stones, or carrie them out of the Countrey, but with the licence and confent of the King: for all those stones are the Kings, and he sendeth them to whom he pleaseth, either for a Present, or payment of Tribute : he exchangeth also many for Gold and Silver. And this hee doth left the stone whereof there is such plentie should become viler and 50 cheaper. Other Mountaynes also in this Province yeeld stones, whereof the best Azure is made, the like whereof is not found in the World. The Mines also yeeld Siluer great store, and Brasse and Lead. The Countrey it felfe is very cold. It hath many Horles, and those excellent, great, Couragious and fwift, which have so hard and strong hooses on their feet, that they need no Iron Shooses, although they runne through Rockes. It is faid that not long fince there were Horses of the Race Bucchalusof Alexanders Bucephalsus, all with his forehead-marke, in the possession only of the Kings Vn- breed, cle, who was flaine for denying the King to have of them : whereupon his Widow in angry spite destroyed the whole Race. There are also excellent Falcons. The soyle thereof beareth notable Wheate, and Barley without huskes, and Oyle made of Nuts and Sulimane, which is like to flaxe feed, more sauourie then other Oyle. There are strait passages and many stormie 60 places. The men are good Archers and Huntimen, clothed with beafts skinnes. The hils are steepe and high, large plaines, Rivers alongst the ruptures; and if any have an Ague with abi-

ding two or three dayes on the hils he recouereth , which Maco procued in himselfe after a

yeares ficknesse. The women in the skirts of their Garments put sixtie or eightie yards of Cot-

ton, the greatest Bumsie Boncer seeming the goodlieft Lasfe.

ð. III.

Bascia.

The Province Bascia is tendayes Journey toward the South, distant from the Countrey Balaxiam. And the Countrie it felte is very hot : whereby it commeth to passe, that the people are browne: they are expert Magicians, and continually attend thereto. They have a peculiar Language : and weare Golden and Siluer Eare-rings with Pearles and Rones artificially wrought

in them. They eate fiesh and Rice, and are Idolaters, craftie and cruell. The Province (before is feven dayes Journey distant from Bascia. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar Language, and are Idolaters; beyond all others cunning Inchanters, forcing their Idols to speake, and darkning the day. They are the chiefest Idolaters, and Idols are descended from them. From thence you may goe to the Indian Sea. The men and women are browne, not wholly blacke, the heate some-what tempered : their food is flesh and Rice, yet are they excee- 10 ding leane. There are many Cities and Townes there. Their King is tributarie to none. There are certaine Heremites in this Prouince, who in Monasteries and Cels worthip Idols, honouring their Gods with great abstinence of meate and drinke, and observe great Chastitie, are very cautelous not to offend their Idols, and line long. Of these are many Abbeyes, and the people gine them great reuerence. The men of this Prouince kill no quicke creatures, and shed no bloud: and if they will eate flesh, it is necessary that the Saracens which live amongst them, kill the creature. Corall is here fold dearer then any where. Wee will leave the way to India now and

Vochan.

returne to Balaxiam and direct our way towards Caray, betwixt the East and North-east. Beyond Balaxiam is a certaine River, whereon stand many Castles and Villages belonging to the King of Balaxiams Brother : and after three dayes Iourney is the Prouince Vockan, having in 20 length and breadth three dayes Iourney. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar Language, and worship Mahumet. They are good Livers, stout Warriours, and good Hunters: for that Countrey aboundeth with wild beafts. If you depart hence betwixt the North-east and the East, you

must ascend for three whole dayes together, vntill you come vnto an exceeding high Mountayne, then the which, there is taid to bee none higher in the World. There also betweene two Mountaynes, a great Lake if found, whence by a Plaine runneth a very goodly River, neere vnto which are excellent Pastures, so that in them a leane Horse, or an Oxe, may bee fatted inten dayes. There is also plentie of wild beafts: especially, exceeding great wild sheepe, having hornes some of them fixe palmes or spans long, of the which they make divers kinds of vessels. That Plaine contayeth twelve dayes lourney in length, and is called Pamer; nor is there any

reth there, by reason of the cold, and (it is reported for a Miracle) if fire be kindled there, it is not so bright nor so effectuall to boyle any thing, as in other places. From hence the way leadeth fortie daye, further, betweene the East and the North-east through the Mountaynes, Hils, and Valleyes, in the which many Rivers are found, but no humane habitation, nor any herbe: and the Countrey it selfe is called Beloro. Habitations of men are seene in the top of those high Mountaynes, but fuch as are fauage, wicked, Idolatrous; who line by hunting, and are clothed

humane Habitation there, and Trauellers must carry victuals with them. No Bird also appea-

After this you come to the Prouince Casehar, which is tributarie to the great Cham and a Mahumetan. In it are Vines greene Gardens, fruitfuil trees, Cotton, Flaxe, and Hempe, and a fertile 40 foyle. The Inhabitants have a peculiar Language, and are Merchants, and Artificers, who are so couetous that they eate that which is bad, and drinke worse. Some Nestorian Christians are found there, who also have their Churches. The Countrey inlargeth it selfe fine dayes Iourney.

Samarchan is a great and famous Citie in that Gountrey, where are goodly Gardens and a fer-

tile Plaine. It is fubre & to the Nephew of the Great Cham. In it the Christians dwell with the Saracens, whence little agreement is betwixt them. It is reported, that in this manner a Miracle hapned, the brother of Great Cham, named Zagatai, gouerned that Countrey, about one hundred yeares agoe, being perswaded to become a Christian, the Christians through his fauour built a Church, in honour of Saint Iohn Rapist, with fuch cunning that the whole Roofe thereof, was supported by one Pillar in the midit, under which was fet a square stone, which by fa- 50 your of their Lord was taken from a building of the Saracens. Zagathais Sonne succeeded after his death in the Kingdome, but not in the faith : from whom the Saracens obtayned that the Christians should be compelled to restore that stone. And when they offered a sufficient valuable price, the Saracens refused to receive any other composition then the stone. But the Pillar listed Vp it felfe, that the Saracens might take away their stone, and so continueth.

Carchan.

Departing againe from this Citie, you come into the Prouince Charchan, about fine dayes Iourney in length. This Prouince hath plentie of all victuals, beeing subject to the Dominion of the Nephew of Great Cham. The Inhabitants worthip Mahumet, yet among them certaint Nestorian Christians dwell. They are great Artificers, and have most of them great legges, and a happen also in great Wenne or Bunch in the throat, by reason of the waters which they drinke.

Wennes by the Alpes. Cotam the

The Prouince Cotam tolloweth betweene the East and the North-east. It is subject to the Dominion of the Nephew of Great Cham, and hath many Cities and Townes. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Cotam. The Province is extended eight dayes lourney in length. There is no want therein of any thing, appertaying to the maintenance of life. It hath plencie of Cotton, Flaxe, Hempe, Corne, and Wine. But the people are not warlike, yet good Artificers and Merchants. They acknowledge Mahumet.

Proceeding further through the same Countrey, you meet with the Prouince Peim, extended Piim, nue dayes lourney in length. It is subject to Great Can, and hath many Cities and Caliles. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Peim, neere which runneth a River, wherem precious stones are found, to wit, lasper stones and Chalcedonie. The Inhabitants of the Countrey worship Mahumet, and are Artificers and Merchants. There is a custome in this Prouince, that when any marryed man goeth into another place and returneth not home within twentie dayes, it shall Adulterous be lawfull for the Wife to marrie another Husband, and the men also where some they goe doe custome. 10 the like. All those Prouinces aforefaid, to wit, Caschar, Cotam, Poim, to the Citie of Lop, are in Great Tarlies,

the bounds of Great Turkie.

Ciarcian is subject to the Tartars, the name of the Province and chiefe Citie, it hath many ciarcian Cities and Castles. Many precious stones are found there in the Ruers, especially Iaspers and Chalcedonies, which Merchants carrie even to Ouchach to fel, and make great gain, From Peim to this Province, and quite thorow it also, it is al Sand with many bad waters and few good. When any Armie passeth through this Prouince, all the Inhabitants thereof with their Wines, Childien, Cattel, and all their houshold fuffe, flie two dayes lourny into the fands, where they know good waters are, and flay there : and carrie their Corne thither also to hide it in the fands after Harnest for like seares. The wind doth so deface their steps in the sand, that their Enemies can-20 not find out their way. Departing from this Prouince, you are to trauell fine dayes Iourney thorow the fand, where no other water almost then that which is bitter is to be found, vntill youcome vnto the Citie named Lop.

Lop is a great Citie, from whence is the entrance of a great Defart, called also Lop, seated be- Lop. tweene the East and the North-east. The Inhabitants are Mahumetans, subiect to the Great Delartof Len Can. In it Merchants who defire to paffe ouer the Defart, cause all necessaries to be prouided for them. And when victuals beginne to faile in the Defart, they kill the Affes and Camels and eate them. They most willingly vie Camels, because they are sustayined with little meate, and beare great burthens. They must prouide victuals for a moneth to crosse it ouer-thwart; for to goe thorow the length, would aske a yeares time. They goe thorow the fands and barren Mountaines.

caused some to miscarrie. Conforts of Musicall Instruments are sometimes heard in the Ayre, latertimes

30 and daily find water, yet is it sometimes to little, that it can scarsly suffice fiftie or one hundred men with their beafts: and in three or foure places the water is falt and bitter : the rest (which are eight and twentie) good. In it are neither beafts nor birds. They fay that there dwell many Illusions of spirits which cause great and meruailous Illusions to Trauellers to make them perish. For if any Deuilaltiae flay behind that he cannot fee his company, he shall be called by name, and logoing out of the methdath way is loft. In the night they heare the noyfe as it were of a company, which taking to bee not then four theirs they perish likewise. Other apparances as of their companions, or of enemies have out, which

likewise Drummes, and noyses of Armes. They goe therefore neere together, hang Bels on their farts as ind beafts neckes, and let markes if any flav.

40 Hauing passed over the Defart, you come vnto the Citie Sachion, betwixt the East and North- Sachion east, subject to the Great Can, in the Province of Tanguth , where among the Worshippers of Tanguth. Mahumet, a few Nestorias Christians are found. Many Idelaters are allothere, who have their proper Language. The Inhabitants of this Citie, line not of Merchandize, but the fruits of the Earth. This Citie hath many Monasteries, consecrated to divers Idols, in the which many Sacrifices are offered, and great reuerence. And when a Sonne is borne vnto a man, hee prefently commendeth him to some Idoll, and in honour thereof, nourisheth a sheepe that yeere in his house, which he presenteth before it together with his Sonne, the next Festivall Day of that The Sacrific Idoll, with many Ceremonies and great reuerence. Afterward the flesh of the sheepe is boyled, or the Birth and left to long before the Idell, while their Prayers are finished, which they make for the con-day. 50 feruation of their Sonne, and the Idoll hath fucked out the fauour of the meate, after which

their fancie all his kindred being gathered together, eate that fielh at home with great deuotion and joy : but orderly keepe the bones in certayne veffels. The Prietts haue the feete, head, inwards, skinne, and some part of the fiesh for their spare. In celebrating the Funerals of suchas Funerall. were of effeeme, the dead bodies are burned after this manner. The kindred fend for the Aftro- Aftroiger logers, and tell them what yeare, moneth, day, and houre, hee who dyed was borne: who perceining the confellation, declare the day when hee is to be burned : fo that when the Planet fits not, they referue the dead bodie fometimes feuen dayes, and fometimes like monethes, preparing a Cheft for it at home, and joyning the fides together with fuch cunning Art, that no linke can issue forth. They also imbalme the bodie it selte with Spices, and couer the Chest fairely pain-

60 ted with a costly cloth : and enery day that the dead corps is kept at home, at the houre of Dinner, a Table is prepared neere the Cheft, fetting wine and meate thereon for the space while one might well eate a mealef-meat, supposing that the soule of the dead, feedeth of the sauour thereof. The Aftrologers tometime forbid to carrie it forth at the chiefe gate, pretending fome ditafrom flarres thereto, and cause them to carrie it out another way, and sometimes breake the

wall which is opposite to that place which the Planet makes more luckie; for otherwise the foirits departed would bee offended and hurt those of the house. And if any such enill happen, they afribe it to the dead thus wronged. When the bodie is carryed through the Citie to be burned without, woodden Cottages are erected in the way, with a porch couered with Silkes. in which they fet the bodie, and fet before it Bread, Wine, and Flesh, and Delicate Cates, suppoling the spirit to be refreshed therewith, which must bee presently present at the burning of

And when they come vnto the place of burning, they write and paint vpon Papers made of the barkes of Trees, the Images of Men and Women, Hories, Camels, Money, and Garments, (All the Instruments of the Citic meane-while refounding) all which are burned together with 10 the dead bodie. For they fay, that that dead man shall have io many Men-servants, and Mayd-seruants, Cattell, and Money, in another life, as refemblances, and Pictures were burned together

many Cities and Townes: the chiefe Citie is called Chamul. The Land butteth vpon two De-

farts, to wit, the great Defart, whereof wee haue spoken before, and a certaine other, thatis

with him, and shall perpetually line in that honour and riches. The Province Chamul lyeth in the great Province Tanguth, fubiect to the Great Can, having

leffe, of three dayes Iourney. It aboundeth with fuch things, which a man needeth for the fuftentation of life. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, haue a peculiar Language, and feeme to bee borne for none other purpose, but to apply themselves to sporting, singing, dancing, writing and reading after their fashion, playing on Instruments, and to give themselves delight. When any Traueller palling by, turneth into any mans house for entertaynment, the Master of the Family 20

receiveth him with great ioy, and commanderh his Wife and all the Family, that they as long as he will abide with them, obey him in all things. In the meane space, he departeth not to returne fo long as the Gueft remayneth in his house. And meane-while hee lyeth with the Wife, Daughter, and the rest, as with his owne Wines. The women of that Countrey are beautifull, and readie to obey all those Commandements of their Husbands, who are so beforted with this folly, that they thinke it a glorious thing for them, and acceptable to their Idols, for which they prosper with plentie of all things. Mangu Can having heard of this folly, commanded them to oblerue this detestable custome no longer; which they did about three yeares, and then seeing not their wonted fertilitie, and troubled with some Domesticall crosses, sent Ambassadours to 30 the Can, and instantly entreated, that he would renoke so grienous an Ediot, and not abolish that Tradition which they had received from theif Elders. The Can answered, seeing you defire your

reproch and shame, let it be granted you. Goe and doe herein after your wont. The Messengers returning with this Aniwer, brought great toy to all the people: this cultome is observed by that

After the Prouince of Camul, followeth the Prouince of Chinchintalas, which on the North boundeth vpon the Defart, and is fixteene dayes Journey in length, subject to the Dominion of is not in Ramu. Great Cham, It hath Cities and many Caffles. The people thereof are divided into three Sects. is not in name.

for Italian Co- Some few acknowledge Christ, and these are Nestwians others worthip Mahumet, the third, adore Idols. In this Province there is a Mountaine where are Mines of Steele and Andanicum, 40 and also Salamanders, of the which cloth is made, which, if it bee cast into the fire, cannot bee 1559) yet is it burned. But that cloth is made of the Earth in this manner (as one of my companions, a Tracket named Curcifur, a man indued with fingular industrie, informed me) who had the charge of the the Prouinces Minerals in that Prouince, A certaine Minerall of Earth is found in that Mountayne, which yeeldeth threeds, not valike to Wooll, which being dryed in the Sunne, are bruifed in a brazen And I have not Morter, and afterward washed, and whatsoever earthy substance cleaneth vnto them, is taken a little trauel. away: laftly, those threeds so purged and made small, are spunne like other Wooll, and woven led in Trauel into cloth. And when they will whiten those clothes, they cast them into the fire for an houre, and then they are taken out of the flaming fire valuet, whiter then Snow. After the like manner they clenie them, when they have taken any spots: for no other washing is added to them, 52 belides the fire. But touching the Salamander, the Serpent, which is reported to line in the fire, I could fearch out nothing in the East Countries. They say, there is a certay ne Napkinat Rome, wouen of the Salamander, wherein the Handkerchiefe of the Lord is kept wrapped vp, which

a certayne King of the Tartars sent unto the Bishop of Rome. After you are past this Prouince, you go betwirt the East and North-east ten dayes Iourney, in which few Habitations or things remarkable are found; and then you come to the Prouince Succuir, which hath many Habitations and Townes. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Succuir. Rhubarbe. Of In this Prouince, among many Idolaters, a few Christians are found they are subject to the Great Can. They apply not themselves to Merchandize, but live of the fruits of the Earth. hath guen a large di course. The best Raubarbe is found in great quantitie in this Prouince, which is carryed thence by Mer- 60 trom the Rela- chants, to divers parts of the World Strangers dare not go to the Mountaynes where it growes, tion of Chaggi by reason of venemous herbs, which if their beasts should eate them would lose their hootes; but Meerit, which those of that Country know and anoyd them. The generall name of this Province, and of the

two following is Tanguth.

Campion is a great Citie, the principall in the Countrey of Tanguth. In it are Christians Comition (which have there three great and faire Churches, Mahametans, and Idolaters. The Idolaters Christian haue many Monasteries, where they worship their Idols. Moreouer, those Idols are made eie Countries. ther of stone, wood, or clay, some ouer-layed with gold, and very artificially wrought, Among Idoi trons ther of flone, wood, or clay, some outer-layer with gold and they attend to the earth, as if they Monaticres, thele, some are so great, that they contayne ten paces in length, fastned to the earth, as if they idols of due is lay upright, neere vinto the which, little Idols are placed, which feeme to give reverence to the kinds. greater, and both are much reuerenced. The Religious men feeme to line more honeftly then other Idolaters, abstayning from certaine things, as Lecherie, and other things; although Lecherie feemes no grieuous finne : for they fay, if a woman feekes for loue to a man, he may vie her

10 without finne, but not, if he feekes first to her. They reckon the whole circuit of the yeere by Theyeere of Moones, In these Moones, they observe five, or foure, or three dayes, wherein they kill no Beast, the Moone, or Bird, nor eat Flesh (as is the vie with vs on Friday, Saturday, and Vigils.) The Lay-men Their many marrie twentie or thirtie wives, as they are able to maintayne : yet the first is accounted the wives, more worthie, and more legitimate. The husband receiueth no downe from the wife, but hee himselfe assigneth conuenient dowrie, in Cattell, seruants, or money, according to his abilitie. If the wife become hatefull to the husband, it is lawfull for him to divorce her from him, as he pleafeth. They take for wines their Kinf-women or Mothers in law. Marco, together with his Rather, and Vincle, remayined a yeeres space in this Citie, for the dispatch of certaine affaires.

From the Citie Campion, you goe twelue dayes journey to the Citie Ezina, bordering woon a zina 20 fandy Defart towards the North, contayned in the Prouince of Tanguth. Many Camels are there, and many other beafts; and Hawkes of divers kinds. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, living of the fruits of the Earth, forbearing merchandife.

ò. IIII.

of Carchoran, the Originall, proceedings and exploits of the Tartars; of Priest IOHN and his discendants. Customes of the Tartars. Of Bargu, Erginul, Xandu the Cans Citie and Palace; of Muske: of ftrange Sorcerers, and austere Monkes.

LI the Protinces and Cities aforefaid, Sachion, Chemul, Chinchitalia, Succeir, Campion, and Ezina, pertayne to Tanguth. Having palled over the forelaid Defart, you come vnto the Citie Carchoram, which is in circuit three miles, strongly rampierd with Carchoran, vide vnto the Citie Carcheram, which is in circuit three miles, irroughly rampiera Wiei Rubr, of caracarth, for they want stone. Neere it is a great Castle, and in it the Gouernors faire corum. Palace. This was the first place neere which in old times the Tartars affembled themselves. And The original now we will declare how they began to raigne. They dwelt in the North parts, to wit, in Gior- of the Domi-24 and Bargu, where are many and great Playnes without Cities and Townes, but goodly Pa- nion of the flures, Rivers and waters. They had not a Prince of their Nation, but payed tribute to a certayne Totals. great King, named as I have heard, in their language Vmcan, which in some mens opinion in our

40 tongue fignifieth, Preflyter (or Prieft) Iohn. To him the Tartars gaue yeerely the tenths of all their bealts. In processe of time, the Tarrars fo encreased in multitudes, that Vmcan was afraid of them, and thought to disperse them into severall parts of the world. And therefore when any rebelled he fent three or foure of an hundred of the Tarrars into those parts, fo diminishing their power; and the like he did in his other occasions, deputing some of their principals to that purpose. They seeing their ruine intended and loth to be separated one from another, went from the places where they dwelt to the Defart towards the North, where by remotenesse they might be fafe and denyed to Vmcan their wonted Tribute.

It hapned that about An. 1162. the Tartars having continued some time in those parts, chose a King among themselues, a wise and valiant man, named Cingis Can. He began to reigne with 50 fuch iustice, that he was beloued and feared of all as a God rather then a Prince, infomuch that his fame brought all the Tartars in all parts to his subjection. And hee seeing himselse Lord of so valiant men would needs leave those Defarts, and commanding them to prouide Bowes and other weapons, began to subdue Cities and Prouinces, in which Conquetts hee placed such init Gouernours, that the people were not offended. The chiefe of them hee carried alongst with him with great prouifions and gifts. Seeing therefore that he was advanced to fo great glorie, and The fruit of a power, he lent Embaffadors politikly to Umean to intreate, that he would bestow his daughter wilde gouern. vpon him to be his wife, Which he taking, in very euill part, answered with indignation, and re- ment. iecting the Embaffadors of Cingis, laid, doth my fervant demand my daughter? Get ye out of my fight and tell your Master, if he ever make such demand againe, I will make him die a miserable cingis goeth 60 derth. But King Cingis, leuving a great Armie, went forth with an hottile minde, and incamped forth against in a certaine great Plaine, named Tanduc, fending vnto the King, and fignifying vnto him, that he Umcan. should defend himselfe. But he, comming with a mightie Armie, deteended to the Playnes, and pitched his Tents within ten miles of the Campe of the Tartars. Then Cingis commanded his with the Ma-Aftrologers to shew him, what event and successe the battell should have. They cutting a Reed gicians.

haue (printed

Biwdes to

theirowae

Kind Cuck-

Wates,

this Salamander, but haue little;no Midmakes mee that conceit.

m:e by warre.

He dieth with the flor of an Aircw. Consis an. CVA CAI. Batina Can-E'a Con. Show " Cin. Cabla: Can. All webe Se-Kings of the Their cruell cultome of The marria-

ges of the

Their ub-

The Tartars religion.

lengthwife in two parts, fet the pieces themselves into the ground, and wrote vpon the one, Cings ; and on the other, Vmc.w; and faid vnto the King : In the meane space, while we reade the Conjurations, it shall come to passe by the Idols power, that these two parts of the Reed thall fight together: And whole part itall afcered upon the other, that King shall obtain victorie in the battell. The multitude therefore running together to behold that incctacle, the Altrologers beganne to mumble their prayers, and reade their inchantments, when prefently the parts of the Reed being moued, fought together, vntill at length the part of Cingis alcended vpon the part of Umcan. Which being feene, the Tartars affured of the fixure victorie, were encouraged to the battell, and Umcan being flayne, the Victorie, and Kingdome, and Umcans daughter remayned to Cingis. Cingis raigned fixe yeeres after this, in the which hee got many Ia Provinces : and lattly, when he endeuoured to winne a certaine Cattle, called Thaigin, and came fomewhat neere, being that in the knee with an Arrow, he died, and was buried in the Mountaine Altai.

The first King of the Tartars, was called Cingis ; the fecond, Cyn (an; the third, Bathyn Can; the fourth, Efu Can; the fifth, Mangu Can; the fixth Cublas Can, whose power is greater then all his Predecessors, having inherited theirs, and adding by Conquest in manner the rest of the World, For he lived neere fixtie yeeres in his Government. The name Con fignifieth Emperor. All the great Cans, and Princes of that bloud of Cingis, are carried to the Mountaine of Aliai to be buried, wherefoeuer they die, although one hundred dayes journey from it. And they which pulcher of the carrie the Corole to the buriall, kill all those that they meet in the way, faying : goe, and ferue 20 our Lord the King in another life. They kill also the better Horses. When the bodie of great Cham Mongu, the Predecessor of Cham Cublai, was brought vinto the Mountaine Altai to bee buried, the Souldiers accompanying the funerall, are reported to have flayne about ten thousand men, upon the forelaid occation,

The Tartareas women are most faithfull to their husbands. Adulterie is a great shame with them : yet it is accounted lawfull, and honest, that every one may marrie as many wives as he is able to maintayne, although the first be judged to be more principall and honorable then the rest. Womens con- Thefe live together in the same house without one ill word, in admirable concord, make their merchandifes, buy, and fell, and chaffer all things necessarie to their husbands and housholds, the men medling with nothing but their hunting, hawking, and things pertayning to Armes. They haue the best Falcons in the World, and so they have of Dogs. They live onely of Plefh and Milke, and what they take in hunting. They eat Horses, Camels, Dogs, if fat; and drinke Mares milke, called Chemors, fo vied, that it is like white " Wine. If the father dies, the forme may have all his wives except his owne mother and fifters. So, the brother being dead, it is lawfull for the brother who remayneth aline, to marrie the widdow of the brother. The husbands receive no dowrie from the wives, but they themselves affigne dowry to the wives, and their mothers. Through the multitude of wines the Tartars have many children. Nor is the multitude of Wives very burdenfome vnto the Tartars, feeing they game much through their labours. Befides, they are very carefull for the government of the familie, and preparation of food : and with no leffe care, execute the other duties of the house. But the men apply them- 40 felies wholly to hunting, fowling, and exercise of Armes. The Tartars nourish many herds of Oxen, flocks of Sheepe, and other Beafts, and Cattell, and abide with them in places of Pafture, in the Summer time, in the Mountaines, and colder places, where they finde Patture and Wood; but in the Winter, they remoue vnto the hotter Countreyes, where they finde Paffure for their Cattell: and goe forth-on two or three moneths together. Their houses are coursed with flickes and felts, ordinarily round, which they carrie with them on Carts or Waggons of foure wheeles, whitherfocuer they goe. For they can fold and extend them, fet them vp, and take them downe : and they turne the doore of them alwaies to the South. They have also neat Carts of two wheeles (couered with Felt fo well that rayne cannot pierce them) drawne by Oxen, and Camels, wherein they carrie their wives, children, and necessarie houshold-stuffe 50 with them, and defend them from the injurie of foule weather, and rayne.

The Tartars, if they be rich, are clothed with Sables, Ermins, and Cloth of gold, and all their furniture is costly. Their Armes are Bowes, Swords, Polaxes, and some Lances, but they can best vie their Bowes, whereto they are vied from their childhood. They are hardie, valorous. cruell, will continue two dayes and nights on horse-backe armed; exceeding patient of difficulties, and exceeding obedient to their Lords. Their Cattell also are hardie.

The Law and Faith of the Tartars is this. They fay, that there is a great God, high and heauenly, of whom with daily incense they defire good understanding and health. They have another, which they call Natigay, which is like an Image conered with Felt, or some other thing, which every one hath in his house. To this God they make a wife and children, placing the 60 wises Image at the left hand, and the representations of children before his face. This they call, The God of earthly things, which keepeth their Children, and their Bealts, and Corne : and give it great reverence. Before they eat themselves, they anoint the mouthes of the Images with the fat of the fodden Flesh, and they cast the broth out of doores, in honour of other

Spirits, faying, that their God with his familie have had their part; and after they eate and drinke at pleafure.

If the ionne of any Tartar die, who hath not yet beene married, and also the daughter of another die varmarried, the parents of both the deceated parties meet together, and make a mar- Painted Marriage betweene the dead : and making a draughter in writing, of that contract, they paint men riages. and women for feruants, Horfes and other creatures, with clothes of all forts and moneyes, in paper, and burne them together with the writing of contract; by the fumes whereof, they fay

that all these things are carried to their children in another world, where they are married, and the fathers and mothers thinke they are loyned together through such a bond of affinitie, as if

those marriages had beene celebrated, while the married couple yet lived.

When the Tartars goe to warre, their Prince conducteth about one hundred thousand Horse, Their war-fare appointing Heads over tens, hundreds, thoulands, ten thoulands, by which orderly subordination, commands are easily effected. Every hundred is ealled a Tuc; ten, a Toman. When they fet fort! they fend out men every way, as Scouts that no Enemie may affault them vinpromitted. Or Horse and Mares, there are for every man about eightcene. They carrie also their like Felt houses, under the which they shelter themselves in the time of raym. When there falls out 20 fome important employment, they will ride ten dayes together without victuals hoyled, and line of the bloud of their Horfes, curting a veyne and fucking it. They have Milke dryed like Patte, which they make , boyling the Milke, and taking the Creame which fwims on the top, put it in another vessell, and thereof make Butter : After, they let the Milke in the Sunne, and drie it; and when they goe in the Armie carrie ten pounds thereof, and every morning take halfe a pound, and put it into a little Flaske or Bottle of Leather, with as much water as he pleafeth : which while he rides, beats together : and this is his dinner. When they encounter with their Enemies, they ride here and there shooting, and sometimes make shew of slight, shooting as they flee, and finding the Enemies broken, redintegrate their forces, and purfue the victorie; haning their Horfes at command, with a figne to turne any way. But now the Tartars are mixed 30 in divers parts, and fo are their fashions.

They punish malefacters after this manner. If any steale a thing of small value, and hath not The mulet or deserved to be deprived of life, he is seaven times beaten with a Cudgell, or seaventeene, or sea- Penaltic of uen and twenty, or thirty feauen, or forty and feauen, guing the strokes according to the meafure and qualitie of the offence, and that wato an hundred; fome doe often times dye, through the heards of these strokes. But if any have stollen an Horse, or another thing, for the which hee deserueth to Castell dye, he is cut afunder with a Sword in the middle : but if hee will redeeme his life, he shall reftore the theft nine fold. Such as have Horses, Oxesfor Camels, brand them with their markes, and fend them to the pattures without a keeper.

Leaning the Citie of Carachoran, and the Mountaine Altai, you come vnto the champaine Bargu. 40 Countrey of Baren, which extendeth it felfe Northwards about fixtie dayes journey in length, The Inhabitants of those places are Meriti, and they are fubiect to great Chan, whing the man- Medite ners of the Tartars. They are wilde men, and eate the flesh of Beafts which they take by hunting, especially of Stagges, whereof they have great plentie, and they make them so tame, that Strange Falthey may ride them. They want Corne and Wine. In the Summer they exercise great hun-cons. ting and taking of wilde Beafts and Fowle, with the Hefh whereof they may line in the winter: This is either a For in Winter, as well fowle as other living creatures flie from thence, by reason of the exceeding and vntolerable cold of that Countrey. After the end of fortie dayes journey, you come hardly credivnto the Ocean, neere which is a Mountaine where After, and strange Falcons breed, which are ble. carryed thence vnto the Court of great Chan.

50 Heere we must returne vnto the Citie Campion. If therefore you proceed further fine dayes Nicht walking iourney from the Citie Campion towards the East, (in the places lying in the middle, horrible E-grad. voyces of Deuts are heard in the night time) you come to the Kingdome Erginal, in the Prouince of Tangut, fubicet to the great Cham. In this Kingdome are many other Kingdomes which are Idolators. There are some Nestorian Christians, and Turkes. There are many Cities and Caflies, of which Erginal is chiefe. From hence, if you proceed further to the Southeast, you may Cathai. goe to the parts of Carbai, going Southeast towards Carbai, there is a certaine famous Citie vamed Cinguy, (the name also of the Province) tributarie vnto great Chan : contained in Tangut : the people are fome Christians, fome Mahametans, others Idolators. Their are also found wilde Oxen, neere as great as Elephants, very faire, having white and blacke havre, thort in

60 other parts, and on the shoulders three palmes long, fine and white beyond filke : of which Marco brought some to Venice as a rare thing. Many also of these Oxen are tamed, and made to writer biguiste engender with tame Kine, and the breed of them are fitter for bufineffe then any other creatures, other ham. beare great burthens are yoaked to the plow, and doe twife as much as others. The belt Muske in the world is found in this Prouince, and is of a goodly beaft of the bigneffe of a Goat, having Miske groffe hayre like a Stagge, feet and tayle like a Gazella but without hornes; it hath toure teetin, two aboue, and two beneath, of the length of three fingers, fubtle, and white as Iuorie, and is a faire beaft to fee to, when the Moone is at full, neare the naull under the belly there growes

might be carefull preferners of all those things which he possesses. There are two forts of Idolaters, Sorcerers called Thebeth and Chefmir, which in the midft of The Kings fromes askend the Palace and furfer no rayne to fall thereon; which they make the people be- Magicians-

leene comes to palle by their fanctitie; and therefore they goe flouenly and regardlelle of their persons, neuer washing nor combing the michies. They also have a horrible custome to dresse and eate such as are comdemned to death, but not those which dye naturally. They are called also Bachfi, which is the name of their Order, as Friers Predicants or Minors with vs. They feeme by Magicke to doe what they lift, when the great Can in his Hall fits at his Table, which is To eight yards high : and in the midft of the hall a good distance from the table is a great Cupboard

of plate furnished: They cause that the peeces full of Wine or Milke or other viands of themfelues, fill the goblets without any hand touching them, and goe ten paces in the ayre into the great Cans hand; and when he hath drunke, returne to their place. This they doe in the prefence of any man, when their Lord commands. These Bachfealso when they will make feaths to their Idols, goe to the Can and fay; Sir, know that if our Idols be not honoured with Sacrifices, they will bring plagues to Corne and Bealts. And therefore wee pray you to give the fielh of fo many Sheepe with blacke heads, and fo many pounds of Incense and Lignum aloes, that we may make them due facrifice and honour. This they spake not to him themselves, but by certaine Lords deputed to that Office, who speake to the Can and obtaine it. On the feast day they and facrifice the faid beafts, and fprinkle the broath before the Idels.

They have great Monasteries some of the bignesse of a Citie, in some of which are about two thouland Monkes which ferue Idols, sequestred from the Laitie in their shauing and garments. Shauinge. For they thaue their heads and beards, and were a religious garment. These in the solemnities of their Idols fing with folemne fongs and lights, fome of them may marry. There are fome of great abitinence called Sensim, leading an auftere life, for they eate nothing but Meale mingled with water till all the Flower be gone, and eate the branne without any fauour. These worthip the Fire , and the men of other rules fay that these which are so austere, are Heretikes against Austerice, their Law, because they worthip not Idols as they doe; and there are great differences betwixt them : and these marry not in any case. They shaue their Head and Beard : they weare blacke 30 hempen garments, and bright yellow. They fleepe in thicke Mats, and line the feuerest life

ò. V.

## Of CVBLAICAN, his Raigne and Acts, Magnificent feasts and Huntines. Court and Counfell. His Cttie Cambalu and clerious

Nchis Booke I purpofe to write of all the great and maruellous Acts, of the prefent Heercheging Concalled Cons, which is in our Tongue Land of Lands, the greatest Prince the fectord of the consequence of

in peoples, Cities and Treatures, that ever was in the world. Hee being discended Booke of Marfrom the Progenie of Chingis, the first Prince of the Tarrars, is the fixth Emperour which I thought of that Countrey, beginning to raigne in the yeare of our Lord 1256, being twentie feauen good to adueryeares old, and ruling the people with great wifedome and grautie. He is a valiant man, exer- use the Reayeares old, and ruling the people with great witeoune and grautice. The inavailable for the performance of matters, before der rassor the cifed in Armes, ftrong of bodie, and of a prompt minde for the performance of matters, before Chapters, the he attained to the dignitie of the Empire (which by his wisdome he did against the will of his Laises and Re-Brethren) he often thewed himfelte a valiant Souldier in the warres, and carryed himfelfe like mule to differ, a wifer and bolder Captaine, then ever the Tartars had. But fince he fwayed the Kingdome, he that I have let

In the yeare of our Lord 1286, his Vnclenamed Naiam, being thirtie yeares of age, and ha-owne digitions uing the command of many people, and Countries, so that hee was able easily to bring together comes or chinfourehundred thousand Horse. Being puffed vp through youthfull vanitie, would now no lon- gu can. ger be fubre ct, but would needs take away the Kingdome from his Lord Cubas, and fent to ano- Natame tobelther great Lord named Cards, Lord of the parts towards great Turkie, who was nephew of the lion. Emperour Cublai, yet hated him, who yeelding confent to Rebellion, promifed to come in proper person with an hundred thouland Horse.

Both of them began to gather Forces, which could not bee done fo fecretly but Cublai heard of it, and presently tooke order to set guard to the wayes that no intelligence might passe that way: and then affembled all the Forces within ten dayes journey of Cambala with great speed, 60 to that in twentie dayes, were gathered together three hundred & fixtie thousand Horse, and one hundred thousand Foot, a great part of them Falconiers and men of his Houshold. With their hee made all hafte day and night towards Naiams Countrey, where at the end of twentie fine lives he arrived, altogether villooked for ; and refted his men two dayes. Then hee called his

Feafants.

fielh alio is good to eate. Mafter Marco brought to Venice the head and feet of this beaft dryed. The men hue of Merchandise and Arts, and have aboundance of Corne : they are Idolaters. of a fat body and a little Nofe, blacke hayred, having no beard but foure hayres on their chin. Beautie prefer. The women are faire and white. And when the men defire to marry wives, they rather feeke redbe ore No. the beautifull, then the noble or rich. Whereby it commeth often to paffe, that a great and Noble man marryeth a poore wife, but beautifull, affigning dowrie to her mother there. This Prouince extendeth it felfe fine and twentie dayes journey in length, and is very fertile. In it are exceeding great Feafants, having traynes eight or ten handfuls long. Many other kindes of Io Birds are also found there, which have very goodly feathers, distinguished with divers and ex-

to this beaft an impostume or bladder full of blood, and at the full then they goe to hunt the faid beafts and take away that fwelling, which is dryed in the Sunne, and is the best Muske : the

Egrezaia.

Proceeding further towards the East, after eight dayes journey, you meet with the Prouince Egrigaia, in the which are many Cities and Castles, all still in Tanguth. The principall Citie is called Calacia. The Inhabitants thereof are Idolaters, there are three Churches of Neftorian Christians, and are subject to the great Chan, In the Citie Calacia, Chamlets are made, wouen of white wooll and the hayre of Camels, then the which , there are scarce any fairer found

Going to the East from the Province Egrigaia, the way leadeth vnto the Province Tenduch. in the which are many Cities and Cafiles : where also Presbyter lobannes vieth to abide, who 20 now payeth tribute to great Chan. This King of that progenie of Priest Iohn is named George. and is a Priest and a Christian, and most of the people are Christians. All the Great Chans, after his death who was slaine in battell by Cingu, gaue their Daughters to those Kings to wife. This King George holds not all that Priest John before held, and is the fourth of that progenie. There is a Nation there called Argon, more goodly men and fitter for Merchandife then the rest, descended of Idolaters and Mahumetans. There are also two Regions where they raigne. Gog and Magog which in those parts are called Og and Magog, but they which dwell there call them Vng and Mongul: in Ung are Gog and in Mongul the Tartars. Riding East seauen dayes towards Catar, are many Cities peopled with Idolaters, Mahumetans, and Nestorians. There is one Citie cal-The Citie Sin- led Sindicin, where very faire and excellent Armes are made of divers forts, fie for Armies. In the 30

blew colours; the fifth, of a grizell or gray colour, having red and blacke heads, and thefe are very

great. And neere unto this Citie lyeth a certaine valley where many Cottages are, in the which 40 an exceeding number of Partridges is maintained, which are kept for the King, comming to

This Citie is three dayes iourney Northeastward to the Citie Xandu, which the great Chan

Idifa. Cianganor. Fiue forts of

mountaines of this Prouince are great Mines of filuer, and manifold game of wilde beafts, and the Countrey of the mountaines is called Idfa. Three dayes journey diffant from the forefaid Citie, flandeth another Citie langamur, that is White Lake, wherein is a Palace, in which the great Chan most willingly remainerh, because there are many Lakes and rivers, many Swannes, and in the plaines, Cranes, Feafants, and Partridges, and store of other fowle. There are fine forts of Cranes there : some haue blacke wings like Crowes, others are white and bright, hauing their feathers full of eyes like Peacocks, but of a golden colour, the necke blacke and white very beautifull: a third fort of bigneffe not valike ours; a fourth, little and very faire, intermingled with red and

lodge there for a time.

Xanda.

Hunting with A goodly house of plea-

A folemne Sa-

Cublay now raigning built; erecting thereing a maruellous and artificiall Palace of Marble and other stones, which abutteth on the wall on one side, and the midst of the Citie on the other. He included fixteene miles within the circuit of the wall on that fide where the Palace abutteth on the Citie wall, into which none can enter but by the Palace. In this inclosure or Parke are goodly meadowes, fprings, rivers, red and fallow Deere, Fawnes carryed thither for the Hawkes, (of which are there me wed aboue two hundred Gerfalcons which he goeth once a weeke to fee) and he often vieth one Leopard or more, litting on Horses, which hee letteth vpon the Stagges 50 and Deere, & having taken the beaft, giveth it to the Gerfalcons, and in beholding this spectacle he taketh wonderfull delight. In the middest in a faire Wood hee hath built a royall House on pillars gilded and vernished, on every of which is a Dragon all gilt, which windeth his tayle about the pillar, with his head bearing up the loft, as also with his wings displayed on both sides : the couer also is of Reeds gilt and varnished, so that the rayne can doe it no injurie, the reeds being three handfuls thicke and ten yards long, split from knot to knot. The house it selfe also may be fundred, and taken downe like a Tent and erected againe. For it is fullained, when it is fet vp, with two hundred filken cords. Great Chan vieth to dwell there three moneths in the yeare, to wit, in Iune, Iuly, and August. On the eight and twentieth day of August, he departeth to make a solemne sacrifice. He hath an herd of white Horses, and white Mares, about ten thou- 60 fand of the milke whereof none may drinke except hee be of the progenie of Cingis Can, except one family, called Boriat, priviledged hereto by Cingis for their valour. And thele beaits as they goe vp and downe feeding are much renerenced, nor dare any goe before them or hinder their way. The Aftrologers or Sorcerers tell Chan that on the twentie eight of the Moone of August,

50 Went but once into the Field, but fends his Sonnes, and other Captaines in expeditions.

Aftrologers, and caufed them before all the Armie to divine who should have victorie ( a thing they alway vie to incourage their men ) and they promifed it to (ublai. One morning whiles Nations was fleeping negligently in his Tent, having not to much as fent out any fcouts to efpie, Cublas made the v of his Armie voon a hill to Naiams. Hee himfelte fate in a certaine Cattle of wood, full of Archers and Croffe-bow men, borne by foure Elephants; on the top whereof was the Royall Standard with the Images of the Sunne and Moone. Hee deuided his Armie into three wings, of which he lent that on the right hand and the other on the left against Naiams Armie: To every ten thousand Horse were assigned fine hundred Foot with Lances, taught to leape vp behind the horse-men if any occasion of flight happened, and suddenly on advantage to light and flay the enemies horses with their lances. Caids was not yet come. The battels ioy- 10 ned and made a cruell fight, which continued from morning till noone; and then was Naiam taken and brought before Cublai, who commanded that he should be sewed betwixt two Carpets, which should be tossed up and downe till the breath were out of his bodie, that so the ImperialI blood might not be exposed to the Sunne and the ayre. The remainder of his people tware O. bedience to Cublai, which were foure Nations, Ciorza, Carli, Barfool, and Stringui.

Nature was fecretly baptifed, and by profession a Christian, but 110 follower of the workes of Faith, and figned his principall Enfigne with the figne of the Croffe, having with him infinite ftore of Christians which were all flaine.

The Iewes and Saracens, that were in the Armie of Cublai, began to vpbraid the Christians with this difafter of the Croffe, who thereupon complained to Cubiai. Hee then sharply repro- 29 uing the Iewes and Saracens, turning to the Christians faith; Surely, your God and his Croffe, would not give any ayde to Naiam, but be not you therefore ashamed, because God beeing good and just, oughtonot at all to defend injustice and Injustice. Naiam was a Traytour to his Lord, and contrary to all equitie raised rebellion, and sought the helpe of your God in his mischieucus purpose. But he as a good and vpright God, would not favour his Defignes. He returned after this with great triumph to Cambalu, and stayed there till Easter. On that day he called the Christians before him, and kiffed their Gospels, and made his Barons doe the same. The like hee doth in the great Feailts of Saracens, lewes , and Ethnikes, that Sogomamber Can the God of the Idols, Mahamet, Moles, or wholoeuer is greatest in heaven might helpe him. Yet he made best shew of liking to the Christian Faith but pretended the ignorance of the Professors, and the mightie acts 30

of the Sorcerers, to his not professing it. Now for rewarding his Souldiers, he hath twelve Barons or wife Counfellours, which give him notice of each Captaynes merit, who raifeth them command of one hundred to a thousand, and from one thousand to ten thousand, and so forward, giving them Vessels of Plate and Tablets. The Captayne of one hundred bath a Tablet of filter, and the Captayne of one thouland of Gold, or filter gilded; the Captayne of ten thouland hath a Tablet of Gold with a Lions head on it: the weight of the Tablets differ also according to the worth and weight of the dignitie. On the laid Tablet is written a command in this manner, By the frenoth and power of the great God, and by the Grace which he hath given to our Empire, the name of Can be bleffed, and let them all dye and be destroyed which will not obey him. All they which have these Tablets have 40 printledges in writing, of all things which they are to doe or demand. And the Generals when they ride in publike, they have a cloth borne over their heads; and when they fit, fit on a Chaire of filuer. Their Tablet is of three hundred Saggi (fittie ounces of Gold) with the Images of the Sunne and Moone. They whose Tablet haue a Gerfalcon, may take with them for their guard the whole Armie of a great Commander.

Cublai is a comeley and faire man of a meane stature, of a red and white face, blacke and good-

that Princely in a proper Palace, having about three hundred chosen Hand-mayds, and Mayd- 10

feruant, and many Eunuch feruants, and at least ten thouland persons in their Family. The King

ly eyes, well fashioned note, and all the lineaments of his bodie consisting of a due proportion.

He hath foure wives which he accounted hawfull, and the first-borne of them succeedeth him

Eublais person described.

Pagut.

His Wives and in the Kingdome. And every one of these is called Empresse, and holdeth a peculiar Court, and

hath also many Concubines.

There is a certaine Nation of faire people, Tartars, called Ungut, whether every fecond years he tendeth Ambassadors to puruey the fairest Lasses for him of greatest esteeme for beautie, which bring him foure or fine hundred more or leffe, as they fee cause. There are Praylers or Examiners appointed, which take view of all their beauties, examining Eyes, Note, Mouth, &c. apart; and set price on them at fixteene, feuentcene, eighteene, ninetcene, twentie or more Carrats. And they bring those of that rate which their Commission appoints. These hee causeth to bee reviewed by better Examiners, and of so many chuseth perhaps thirtie for his Chamber of the chiefe; which he puts to some of his Barons Wines, to see if they snore not in their sleepe, if in 60 fmell or behaviour they be not offensive. Those which are appropried are by fives divided, each fifth part wayting three dayes and nights in his Chamber by course, the other in the next Lodgings preparing whatfocuer these command them. The lesse prized are put to Cookerie, and other noble Officers. And fometimes the Can bestowes them on Gentlemen with great portions.

The men of that Countrey effecme it a grace and credit to have Daughters worthy his liking : and thinke themselves borne under an ill Planet, if they have not for his turne.

Cublas hash two and twentie Sonnes by his foure legitimate Wines, and the first-borne of his His children first Wife was called Cingis, who should have succeeded him in the Empire, if hee had not dyed before his Father. He lett a Sonne named Temur, a valiant man, wife, and exercifed in Armes, Temur who is to fucceed his Grand-father in the Empire, in stead of his deceased Father. But by his Hand-mayds and Mayd-fernants, he hath fine and twentie Sonnes, all which are daily exercifed in feats of Armes, and are great Lords. Seven of his Sonnes by his Wives are Kings of great Provinces, and maintayne their states with great reputation.

Three moneths of the yeere, to wit, December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, Cublai remayneth ordinarily in Cambala which is at the North-east border of Cataio, and there on the South part by the new Citie is seated a great Palace. First, there is a square Wall, each square being eight miles, with a deep Ditch enuironing, and a Gate in the middle of each : after which is the space of a mile in circuit where Souldiers stand. After this is another circuit of fixe mile square, with three Gates on the South square, and three on the North: that which is in the midtl being in both the greater, and kept thut, except when the Can paffeth that way; the other alway open to others. In each corner of this Wall and in the midst is a faire Palace, eight in all, very large, in which are kept the Cans munitions and furnitures of all forts, for Horles in one, in another Bowes and shooting Artillerie, in a third Cosses, Curasses and leather Armours, and so in the 20 reft. Within this circuit is another wall-circuit, very thicke, and ten paces high, all the battlements white; the wall square, each square a mile in length, with fixe gates as the former, and eight Palaces also very great, wherein are the Cans prouision. Betwixt these two last walls are many faire trees and medowes, in which are Deere, Muske beatts, with other game, and store of graffe, the paths being heightned two cubits to spare it, no durt, nor plashes of water being therein. Within this last wall is the Palace of the great Can, the greatest that hath beene feene, abutting with the wall on the North and South and open spaced where the Barons and Souldiers palle. It hath no feeling, but a very high roofe: the foundation of the pauement ten palms high, with a wall of marble round about 1t, two paces wide, as it were a walke. In the end of the wall without, is a faire Turret with Pillars. In the walls of the Halls and Chambers are carued Dragons, Souldiers, Birds, Beafts, of diuers kinds, histories of Warres, gilded. The 30 roofe is so made, that nothing is seene but Gold and Imagery. In every square of the Palace is a great Hall of marble, capable of great multitudes. The Chambers are disposed the best that may be deuised: the roofe is red, greene, azure, and of all coloures. Behind the Palace are great Roomes, and private store-houses for his treasures and Iewels, for his women , and other secret employments. Ouer against the faid Palace of the Can, is another for Cingis his sonne, whole Court, was in all things like his Fathers. Neere this Palace towards the North is a Mount made by hand, a mile in compasse, one hundred paces high; beset with trees that are alwaies greene. Vnto this mountaine, the king commandeth all the best trees, to be brought from remote parts, lading Elephants with them, for they are taken up with the roots, and are transplanted in this Mountaine. And because this Mountaine is alwaies greene it is called, The greene Mountaine. The greens And where the earth of that Mount was taken away, are two Lakes antivering each other, with Mountaine. a pretie Riuer filling them, stored with fish, and so grated that the fish cannot get forth.

The Citie of Cambala in the Prouince of Cathai, feated on a great River, was famous, and combala. regall, from antiquitie. And this name Cambalu lignifie:h, The Citie of the Lord, or Prince. This Citie the great Camremoued vnto the other fide of the Riner where the Palaces are: for This Gitte the great Cast remound winto the other fule of the Kiner where the Palaces are: for "The long flow he widerflood by the Altrologers, that it should rebell against the Empire". This new built "The long flow is the contract of the following the contract of the which contayneth in compasse foure and twentie miles, every side of the square contayning fixe mixed. miles. It hath walls of earth ten paces thicke at the bottome, and at the top but three, by little Taidu. and little afcending thinner: the batlements are white. Every fquare of the wall hath three principall Gates, which are twelve in all, having sumptuous Palaces built over each of them.

There are also excellent Palaces in the angles of the walls, where the Armes of the Carrifon Palaces, (which are one thousand at each Gate) are kept. The buildings are squared out, & the streets laid The equalitie very straight by line, throughout this Citie, so that from one Gate a free prospect openeth tho- of the streets; row the Citie, to the opposite Gate, having very goodly houses built on both sides, like Palaces with Gardens and Courts, divided to the Heads of Families. In the middle of the Citie, a certaine sumptuous house is built, wherein hangeth a very great Bell, after the third knolling whereof in the night no man may goe out of his house, vntill the beginning of the day following, except it be for speciall cause, as for a woman in travell, &c. And they are compelled to 60 carrie a light with them.

Without the Cirie of Cambalu are twelve great Suburbs, three or foure miles long, loyning Suburbs large vpon each of the twelue Gates, more inhabiting the Suburbs then the Citie : heere Marchants and Strangers keepe, each Nation having a feuerall Store-house or Burfe in which they lodge. No dead corps of any man is buryed within this Citie, but the bodies of Idelaters are

burned without the Suburbs, where the dead bodies of other feets are buryed. And because an Burial without huge multitude of Sorcerers converse alwayes there, they have about twentie fine thousand Harlots in the Suburbs and in the Citie, and these haue a Captaine appointed ouer euery hundreth, and thousand; and one Generall; whose office is, that when Embaliadours come, or such as haue bufineffe with the Can whose charges he findeth, this Captaine giueth euery Embaffadour and every man of his family, change of women nightly at free cost : for this is the Queanes tri-Harlors of the bute. The Guards every night cast those in prison which they finde walking late : and if they Suburbs. be found guiltie they are beaten with Cudgels : for the Bachfi tell them that it is not good to flied mans blood. But many dye of those beatings.

Buriall place, Harloss, Horse-men Courtiers, Feasts, New-yeares gifts. LIB. I.

The number of The Guard.

The great Can hath in his Court twelve thouland Horse-men, which they call Castran, faith- 10 the horse-men full Souldiers of their Lord, who guard his person more for state then seare. And source Captaines haue the charge of thefe, whereof every one commandeth three thouland. When one Captaine with three thousand Souldiers within the Palace, hath guarded the King for three dayes and nights, another Captaine with his Souldiers againe succeedeth : and so throughout the whole yerare, this course of watching by course is observed.

Solemn feafts.

The order of

Threshold threshing. The Nobles men that carry their mouthes,

The birth day of Cublai.

New Moone teaft. The prefents of the men of Dignitie, fub-The like Cu-New-yeares

The rwelue

New-yeres day The white colour accounted eminous. New-yeares gifts.

See Sir T. Ree

When through occasion of any feastinall day hee keepeth a folemne Court, his Table being higher then the rest of the Tables, is set at the North part of the Hall, and his face is to the South, having the greatest Queene on his left hand, to wit, his principall wife, and his Sonnes, and nephews, and they of the blood royall on his right. Yet their table is in a lower place, fo that they scarce touch the Kings feet with their heads; the seat of the eldest being higher then the 20 rest. The Barons and Princes, sit in a lower place then that. Their wines also keepe the like orders first the Cans sonnes wives and his kinsmens, fits lower on the left hand, and after, those of the Lords and of every Captaine, and Noble-man, each in her degree and order. And the Emperour himselse, while he sitteth at his table, may cast his eyes vpon all that feast with him in that Hall. There are not Tables for all to fit, but the greatest part of the Souldiers and Barons eate on Carpers. At all the doores fland two giantly fellowes with Cudgels, to fee that none touch the Thresholl, which if hee doe they take his garments away ; which he must redeeme with so many blowes as shall be appointed, or else lose them. They which serue the King sitting at the table, all of them couer their mouthes with Silke, least their breathing should by any meanes nies while the touch the Kings meat or drinke. And when he hath minde to drinke, the Damofell which gives 30 King danketh. it, goeth back three paces and kneeles downe, and then the Barons and all the people kneele, and the Musicians found their Instruments. There is no cause why I should write any thing concerning the meats which are brought to the Table, how daintie and delicate they are, and with what magnificence and pompe they are ferued in. All the Totars obleme this custome, to celebrate the Birth day of their Lord most honourably. The Festivall birth day of Cublai, is kept the twentie eight of September, and this day hee accounteth more folemne, then any of the whole yeare, except the first of February, wherein they begin their yeare. The King therefore in his Birth day is cloathed with a most precious garment of Gold, and about two thousand Barons and Souldiers, are cloathed of the same colour of gold (though of Silke stuffe) and a girdle wrought with gold and filter, which is given them with a payre of shooes: fome weare Pearles 40 and Gemmes of great price, namely, the Quiecitarie, which are next to the Can : and these garflome is ftilly- ments are not worne but on their thir eene folemne Feafts according to the thirreene Moones fedby the Mo- of the yeare; all then cloathed like Kings. This custome is also observed with the Tartars, that on the birth day of great Cham, all the Kings, Princes, and Nobles, which are Subject to his Dominion, should fend presents vnto him, as to their Emperour. And they who defire to obtaine any place of Dignitie or office of him, offer their requests vnto twelue Barons appointed for this purpole, and what they decree, is all one, as if the Emperour himselfe had answered them. The prayers of All people also, of what Faith or seet source, whether Christians, or leves, Saracens, or Tartars, and other Pagans are bound, selemnly to call upon their Gods, for the life, safetie, and prosperitie of Great Can.

On the day of the Kalends of February , which is the beginning of the Tartars yeare, great Can and all the Tartars, wherefocuer they are, celebrate a very great and folemne Feath, and all aswell men as women, desire to bee cloathed in white Garmenes. For they beleeue, that the white garment is a token of good lucke: Therefore that fortune might fauour them all the yeare, they weare white in the beginning of the yeare. Moreouer the Rulers of Cities, and Gouernours of Prouinces, mindfull of their dutie, fend vnto their Emperour on this day prefents of Gold and Siluer, Pearles and Precious stones, many white Cloathes, and other white things, and many Horses of a white colour : the rest of the Tarters at the beginning of the yeare, fend white prefents one to another. It is the custome of those which bring presents, if they can, of each to prefent nine times nine; as if they fend Horfes, to prefent nine nines, that is e ghtie one, and fo of 60 Gold, of Cloaths, & other things, that fomtimes he hath by this reckoning one hundred thousand Horses. Also at this good lucke, all the Elephants which the Emperour hath (fine thousand in number) are brought vnto the Court, couered with Tapistrie, wherein the similitudes of divers Bestls and Fowles are portrayed, carrying upon their shoulders two Chests full of golden and

Silver veffell. Many Camels also are brought, covered with state Silken clothes, which bring other things, necessarie for the Court. And this day in the morning, all the Kings, Captaines, Barons, Souldiers, Physicians, Attrologers, Falconers, and the Gouernours of Proninces. and Armies, and other Officers of the Emperour, affemble in the great Hall before the King, and they who happen to have no place there, for the multitude of men, fland in another place where he may fee them. All being placed in their order, and degree, one arifeth as it were fome Prelate, and crieth out with a loude voyce, Bow downe, and adore. And prefently all doe reuerence, bending downe their foreheads to the earth. Then he fayth, God preferue our Lord wah long life and ing and all answere, God grant. Then he layth, God encrease and aduance bis Empire, 10 and preserve his Subjects in peace, good will, and prosperitie: and all answere, God grant. And this they doe foure times. The adoration finished, the faid Prelate goeth to an Altar richly adorned. on which is a red Table, wherein is written the name of the Can, and taking a Cenfer, and putting odoriferous Spices therein, they pertume the Table and the Altar with great reuerence, in

honour of great Can, and to returne to their places. After which, are offered the gifts whereof we have spoken; and then the Tables are prepared, and a most tolemne Dinner held, cating and The Feast. drinking with great iny with their wines, in manner before described. And lattly, a domesti- A rame Lion, call Lion is brought vinto the King, which I jing at his feet, like a gentle Whelpe, acknowledgeth his Lord.

In those three moneths, in which as we faid before, the Emperous remayneth in the Citie of The office of 20 Cambala, to wit, in December, Ismuarie, and Februarie, all the Hantersawhich the Emperour the Provincial hath in all Proninces, round about the Pronince of Cathai, apply themfelues to hunting, and offer Hunters, all the greater wilde-beafts, to wit, Stags, Beares, Roe-buckes, wilde Boares, Deere, and fuch like, voto their Gouernours : who (if they be diffant from the Emperours Court, kelle then thirtie dayes Iourney) fend fuch beaffs taken, by Waynes, and Ships voto the Emperour, hauing first bowelled them. But such as are fortie dayes iourney distant from his Court, fend one. ly the skinnes, which are necedarie for the making of Armour. Hee hath many Leoparts, and Tame Leo-Wolves for hunting, and many Lions alfo, greater then those which are in Babylon, in the haire, pards, and whereof certaine little beames appeare of divers colours, to wir, white, black; and red, and they are accommodated to catch Boares, Beares, Stags, Roe-buckes, wilde Ailes, and wikie Oxens

30 and it is maruellons to fee the Lions herceneffe and dexteritie in the act. Two Lions vie to-bee carried in one Wagon, when they goe to hunt, and with them a Dog, with which they are ramed; and they carrie them on this fashion, because of their furie and varuhinede; and they must carrie them coptrary to the wind; for elfe the beaits would fent them, and thee. Hee hath many, Eagles tame Eagles, which are fo fierce, that they take Hares, Roe-buckes, Decre, and Foxes, among which some of them feare not with great violence to telze upon Wolles, and vexe them to loge, that without labour and danger, they may be taken by men.

The great Can hath in his Court two which are brethren, one called Bayan, the other, Ming an, The Mafters called in the Tartar language, Civici, that is, Malters of the Game, where of either hath the charge of the Game. of ten thousand men; they which are under one or them, are clothed in red; the other in skie-

40 colour, alway when they hunt. There keepe divers forts of Dogs, to the number of five thous fand Mattiues and other. In hunting they goe with their people, one on the right, and the other on the left hand of the King : and they take up to great a length of the Playne, that from one end to the other is a dayes journey, to that no beatt can escape them ; and it is great pleasure when the Can goes in the mill, to fee the Dogs follow Harts, Beares, and other kinds. And thefe Brethren are bound by cone ant, from the beginning of October to the and of March, to bring to the Court one thousand heads of peatts and birds befides Quarles, and fifteer heibeit they can, in great proportion.

The moneth of March comming in great Can departed b from the Citie of Cambala, and pro- Hawking. ceedeth North-eastward towards the Ocean distant thence two dayes inurneyes, bringing with;

50 him about ten thouland Falconers, who leave Falcons, Hawkes, Gerfalcons, and other sands of 1000, Falcon Fowles of prey fit for hawking. These Falconers disperie themselves by an hundred or two ners. hundred in a Companie; and the birds that are taken, for the molt part, are brought vinto the King, who by reation of lus Gour, fitteth in a woodden house, which two Elephanes carrie, co- The Kings uered with the skins of Lions, and within hanged with cloth of Gold, having with him, for-hit, Horfe luter, recreation, twelve choice Hawkes, and twel to favoured Courtiers : many Noblemen and Souldiers ride by, who guard the Kings person. Who, when they see Phelants, or Cranes, or other birds flying in the aire, declare it to the Falconers which are neere unto the King: and they, fignifying the same vnto the King vncouer the Kings House, and let their Falcons and Hawkes flie, and the King fitting on his Bed, beholdeth the pastime of the birds. Other ten thousand

6c men'alfogoe with the King, who in that hawking, tunne bother and thirther, by two and two. and marPe whither the Falcons and Hawkes file, that are call from the nit, that (if need bee) they may helpe them. And thefe, in the Tartar: Language, are called Tofcaol, that is to fay, Tofcaol, Watch-men or Markes-men, being skilfull in a certaine kind of whittle, wherewith they call in the Hawkes that are flowers. Nor is it needfull, that the Falconer who let the Hawkes flie,

1:05 : 3

V\*(-9-1

Till . Bir illia

ou to this

should follow her, seeing they, of whom I now speake, are busily imployed in taking up the Hawkes, and are carefull that by no meanes they bee hurt or loft. And every flying Hawke car-The markes of rieth a little table of filter on her foot, figned with the marke of her Matter or Falconer, that if thee bee loft, thee may bee reftored to her owner. But if the marke cannot be knowne, the Hawke is deliuered to a certaine Baron, who for this cause is called Bulangazi, to whom are brought all loft things (otherwise the Finder would be counted a Thiefe) and to him Losers refort to inquire of things loft. He hath a most eminent place, noted by his Ensigne, that in so great an affembly of people he may be knowne.

Whiles they are thus bufied in sporting and hawking, they come vnto a certaine great Plaine.

The number and order of the Pauilions.

The huge lines, and Sables.

called Cacarmodin, where the Tents of the King and all the Courtiers are prepared, about to ten thousand in number. The first and chiefe is the Cans Paulion, under which ten thousand Souldiers stand, besides Barons and Noble-men, with the doore to the South; sustained with three P.llars, wrought with divers curious and excellent carved workes, and covered with the skinnes of Lions (and strakes of divers colours) which keepe out rayne. But price of Arme- within, the walls of the Paulions are covered with most costly skinnes of Armelines and Sables. although in those Countries these skinnes are accounted most precious, that sometimes skinnes worth two thousand Sultanines of gold are scarce f. fficient for one paire of Vests. The Tartare call the Sable, the Queene of Furres. The Cordes, wherewith their Paulions are supported, are of filke. There are also other Paulions erected, wherein the Wives, Sonnes, and Hand-maides of the King remaine. Further alfo, the Falcons, Hawkes, Owles, Garfalcons, and other Birds, 20 which ferue for Hawking, have their Tents wherein they are contayined. For, there is fo great a multitude of Tents, that to them that come thither, a farre off it feemeth that a famous Citie is built there. The King remayneth all March in that Plaine, and taketh innumerable Beafts and infinite multitudes of Fowle. For no man may elfe hunt in all the Provinces of that Kingdome, at the least within fine dayes iourney one way, ten another , and fifteene a third way of the Cans Court : nor keepe an hunting Dogge, or an Hawke : and specially, from the beginning of March vntill the mone; h of October, no man is permitted to vie any denice or engine whatfoeuer, to take Stagges, Deere, Roe-bucks, Hares, left he should hinder their breede ; and hereypon it is that there are such ftore.

Hunting for-hidden.

Barke or Pa-

in Cambala. The Money of the Great Can is not made of gold or filter, or other metall . "but they take the middle barke from the Mulberrie Tree, and this they make firme, and cut it into divers and round pieces, great and little, and imprint the Kings marke thereon. Of this matter therefore, the Emperour causeth an huge masse of money to bee made in the Citie of Cambala, which sufficeth for the whole Empire : and no man vnder paine of death may law fully coine any other, or foend any other money, or refuse it in all his Kingdomes and Countries. Nor any comming from another Kingdome, dare found any other money in the Empire of Great Can, Whereby it commeth to passe, that Merchants often comming from farre remote Countries and Regions vnto the Citie of Cambala, bring with them gold, filuer, pearle, and precious stones, and receine the Kings money for them. And because this money is not received in their Countries, 40 they change it agains in the Empire of Great Can for merchandife, which they carried away with them. He also payeth stipends to his Officers and Armies of the mentioned money : and lastly, whatsoever thing he needeth in his Court he buyeth with this money. Wherefore, there is not a King to be found in the World, who exceedeth him in Treasure, not expended on the

It is incredible what multitudes of People, Merchants, and merchandifes of all forts are feene to

The Great Can hath twelue Barons, as is faid before, which are his Counfell of Warre, and dispose of martiall affaires, and the exalting or disgracing of Captaines and Souldiers. Their office is called Thai, that is, The bigh Court, because they have none about them but the Can. Other twelue Barons are appointed Counsellors for the foure and thirtie Provinces, which have a faire Palace in Cambalu, in which is for every Province a Judge & many Notaries. These have power 40 to choose Governours of the faid Provinces, and present their names to the Can which confirmes them. There also have the charge of the Treature to exact and diffeense the same. Their office is called Singh, that is, The fecond Cours, Subject to none but the Can, yet reputed leffe noble then the former, that being a martiall State.

0. VI. 60

VI.

The Cans provisions for Embassadors and for Posts; against Dearth; for High-wayes; for the Poore in Cambalu, for Aftrologers ; Tartars Wine, Fuell, Religion, Opinions , Behausour , Court-neatneffe : Polos proceeding from Cambalu Westward. of Pulisangan, Gouza, Tainfu, Pianfu, Thaigin, Cacianfu, Quenzanfu, Sindinfu, Thebeth, Caindu, Caraian, Carachan, Cardandan and Vociam.



Ithout the Citie of Cambain, many publike wayes conduct to the neighbouring Pro-uinces, and in eucry one of them alway at the end of fine and twentie or thirtie miles, are Lodgings or Innes built, called Lanb, that is, Post borfes, with great and Posts and

fuire Palaces, Chambers furnished with Beds and other Prouisions, meete to enter- Innes. taine great Men , yea to lodge a King; the provisions laid in from the next adjoyning places : The Romans taine great Men, yea to lodge a King; the promining iail in from the next autoyining places.

al o had publisher about four hundred Horles are in readinesse for Messengers and Embassadors, which there
like Stables as leaue their ridden Horses and take fresh. And in mountaynous places, where are no Villages, he heresbys fends People to inhabite, ten thousand at a place where these Lamb are built, which till the constanting ground for their prouisions; and this continueth vnto the furthed limits of the Empire : fo that Zof. 1.2, and 20 in the publique wayes, throughout the whole Empire, about ten thousand of the Kings Innes Palladius who are to bee found. And the number of the Horles, appointed for the feruice of the Meffengers in would ride those Innes, are more then two hundreth thousand, a thing almost incredible to tell : to that in a from the Conlittle while with change of Men and Horie, intelligence might flie to the Court. And if any fines of the wonder how fo many men and beafts should be provided for, hee must consider that the Moores Empire to Conand Genteles have many women, and ftore of children, fome having thirtie fonnes which follow flantmople, Son them armed; and for victuall they fow three feeds, Rice, Panike and Mill, which yeeld an hun- 47.6.19. dred fold : they make not bread, but boile thefe with Milke or Fleih. Wheat will not fo encreate with them : nor fuffer they any ground, which will beare, to lye untilled. And their Cattell alway increase, that each of them carries with him fix, eight, or more Horses into the field for his owne person. These Horses also take turnes, that of the foure hundred aforesaid two hundred are in the stables readie, the other two hundred at grasse by monethly courses. Their Civies adjoyning to Rivers or Lakes, are appointed also to have ferry Boats in readinesse for the Posts. And Cities adioyning to Defarts, are felled at Hories and prouisions thorow those Defarts, but have contribution from the Can. In cases of great import, the Poste rides with a Gerfalcon Table, and is truffed fo that he will ride two hundred miles in a day, or two hundred and fiftie, fometimes

bellies and heads girded runne as fast as the horse can and those which are able to endure this exceffine riding are of great reputation. There are also betweene the said Innes other habitations, three or foure miles distant one from another, where there are a few houses wherein Foot-posts dwell, having all girdels full of shrill founding bells. Thefe are alwayes readic, and as often as the Kings Letters are fent vnto them, Foote-poftes, convey them speedily to the next habitation : who hearing the found of the Foot-post comming Die Fost baden, afarre off, expect him, and receiving his Letters, presently carrie them to the next watch: and so the Letters passing through divers hands, are conveyed without any delay, vinto that place whither they ought to come. And it commeth often to pafe, that the King understandeth newes, or receiueth new fruits from a place, ten dayes journey diffant, in two dayes : as fruits growing at Cambalu in the morning, the next day at night at Xandu. But all the mentioned Poltes are Their Printfree from all exaction of Tribute, and receive a good recompence of their labours from the Kings ledges.

also they ride the night, Foot-posts running by with lights, if the Moone shine not. They winde a

Horne that the fresh Horses may be brought forth for them to mount presently, and having their

50 Rent gatherers besides. Some also are appointed to examine these Posts monethly, and to punish their faults. He fends yeerly vnto divers Provinces, subject to his Empire, to inquire whether any harme Provisions 2be done to the Corne, by Tempests, Locusts, Wormes, or any other pligue. And when he hath gainst dearth. notice given him, that any Province or Citie, hath fuffained any damage, he remitteth Tributes to that people for that yeere, and fendeth Grine for victuill and for Seede, ont of his owne Garners. For, in the time of great plentie, the King buyeth abundant flore of Corne, and keepeth Fuherly Royit with great care of Officers, three or foure yeeres in Garners, that when there shall be scarcitie alice. of Corne in one Countrey, that detect may bee supplied out of the Kings Store-houses. Hee felleth his graine for the fourth part of other mens price, and alway proudeth that his flore-houles 60 bestored. Likewise, when any murren lighteth among Cattell, heesends them other Cattell which he hath for Tenths in other Prouinces. And if a thunder-holt hath stricken any beast of any Herd or Flock, he will have no Tribute thereof for three yeeres, be the Herd never to great : nor custome of a Thunder-stricken ship, thinking God is afigrie with them which are so stricken. Likewife, that Trauellers may find the way in all places capable to beare Trees, He hath caused

Hence perhaps the walk trom Laborto Agra was occalioned. Their Ricc-

Trees to be planted, a little distance one from another, neare vnto the principall wayes; and in Sandre and defart places, he hath caufed to fet Stones and Pillars for that purpose : and Officers are appointed to looke to these things. Hee plants Trees the rather because his Astrologers tell him, that planting Trees lengthens the life.

They make excellent drinke, in the Province of Cathai, of Rice and divers Spices, which in the tafte thereof excelleth the fweetnetic even of Wine. And they who drinke more greedily therof then reason in geth to be fit or the nature of the drinker requireth, sooner become drunke

then if they had drunke Wine.

Throughout the whole Prouince of Caibai, certaine blacke stones are digged out of the Mountaines, which put into the fire burne like wood, and being kindled preferue fire a long time, as if 100 a thing ftrange they be kindled in the Euening, they keepe quicke fire all the night. And many vie those ftones, to Pols an Ita- because that though they have store of wood, yet is there such frequent vie of Stoues and Bathes (thrife every weeke) that the wood would not ferue.

It is not amiffe also, having spoken of his Provisions abroad, to mention his care for the poore of Cambain. When he heares of any honourable Familie decayed by difaduentures, or of any which cannot worke, and have no meanes : he causeth to give to such Families the whole yeares expenses; each of such Families going to the Officers for that purpose, and shewing their Bill of allowance, receive provisions accordingly. There is a Palace deputed for those Officers. They are provided alto of garments for Winter, and for Summer; the Can having the Tenths of all Wool, and Silke, and Hempe, which he causeth to bee made into Clothes in a house thereto appointed : 20 for all Trades are bound one day in the weeke to worke for him. He prouides also apparell for his Armies, and in enery Citie causeth Cloth to be made of his tithe wooll. You must vaderstand derfull divine that the Tartars ancient customes knew no almes, but rather vpbraided such as were in necessitie. bounty indeed as hated of God. But the Idolaters, especially these Bachsi, have propounded it as a good worke acceptable to God, and have taught him to be thus bountifull, fo that in his Court bread is never denyed to any which aske : and there is no day in which is not given away twentie thousand Crownes in Rice, Millet and Panike, whereby he is esteemed as a God.

There are also in Cambalu of Christians, Saracens, and Catayans, about five thousand Astrologers and Diumers, which the Great Can prouideth yeerly of foode and rayment, as those poore aboutefaid. These have an Astrolabe in which are marked the signes of the Planets, the houres and 30 points of all the yeere. Herein all these Astrologers, each Religion apart, view the course of the veere, according to enery Moone, obseruing the disposition of the weather, referring alway to The Denill an God to doe more or leffe after his owne pleasure. They write also vpon certaine squares (they call them Tacuini ) the things which are to come that yeere, which they fell to those that will buy them, and fuch as speake most truth are most honored. If any intend any great worke, or to goe a farre journey, and will know the event before-hand, he makes recourse to these Astrologers, to fee it with their eyes in the Heauens, which they doe, comparing the present Constellation with that of his Birth (which they demand of him) to foretelling him the good or euill.

The Tartars reckon the computation of their yeeres by twelves, the first figuified by a Lion. the second by an Oxe, the third by a Dragon, the fourth by a Dogge, and so thorow the whole 40 twelve: fo that if a man be demanded when he was borne; he will answer, such a point of such an houre, of fuch a day in the yeere Lion (this their fathers exactly fet downe in a booke) and when the twelae is complete, they goe ouer the same againe.

Of their Religion we have faid that they are Idolaters, and for their Gods have a Table fet aloft in the wall of their Chamber , on which is written, a Name reprefenting the High God of Heanen; and there every day, with a Cenfer of incenfe, they adore it in this manner. They lift up their hands aloft, and firike their teeth thrice, praying it to give them a good understanding and health; and defire thereof nothing elfe. Befides, on the ground they have another flatue called Natigai, The God of earthly things, with his Wife and Children (as before is faid) whom likewite they worthip with incense, striking or gnashing the teeth, and lifting up the hands; 50 and defire thereof temperature of the aire, fruits of the earth, children, and the like. They hold the Soule to be immortal, and that when a man dies, it enters into another bodie better or worle, according to the merits in the former life, as of a poore man to become a Gentleman, and after of a Prince or Lord, and so higher till it be assumpted in God: or if it hath ill deserved to be a poorer man, after a Dogge, alway descending to the lowest ranke of basenesse. They have a comely speech, salute cheerfully and honestly, hauea gracefull carriage, and feed cleanly. They beare great reuerence to their Parents, and if any be vindutifull, or helplesse to their necessitie, there is a publike Office designed to this particular, to punish vngratefull or disobedient children. Pritoners are released at three yeeres end, and marked in the cheeke, to be knowne Malefactors.

The Barons and People which goe to the Grand Can, observe these Rites. First, within halfe 60 a mile of the place where the Can is , all is husht and quiet without noyse or cryes , or any loud speech; and every Baron carries continually a little faire vessell to spit in, after which hee covers it, none daring to fair on the Hall. They have Furre buskins of white leather, which they put on when they enter the Hall , putting off the former and giving them to the fervants , left they frould for le the faire artificiall Carpets.

CHAP.4. S. 6. Faire bridge. Dor with his Damfels and penance. Mangalus palace. 89

En miles off Cambalu, is a certayne great River, named Palisangan, emptying it selfe into the Ocean, by which many thips with much merchandile alcend. And in that place, there is a very faire Bridge, all of Serpentine itone curiously wrought, contaying three hundred pa- An admirable ces in length, and eight in breadth, that ten men may ride abreft. On each tide it is fairely moun- Bridge. ted with a wall of marble, and Pillars fet on a rew : and in the height of the afcent is a great and Ramufie hath high Pillar, at the foote whereof is a great Lion, and on the top another. And is quite thorow given a pithe Bridge one pace and halfe ditant are Pillars with Lions on the top, and a faire well-wrought more. marble worke betwixt, to keepe men from falling.

Hauing passed ouer the River and Bridge, proceeding thirtie miles westward (in which Pala-To ces are continually seene with Vineyards and fertile Fields) you come to the Citie Gonza, both The Citie faire and great, having many Monasteries of Idols. Cloth of gold and filkes are made there, and Gonza. the pureft and finest Cambricks or Launes; and many common Innes for Strangers and Trauailers are found in that Citie: The Citizens are Artificers and Merchants. A mile without this Citie the way parteth, one leading West, the other South-east ; that to the West leadeth through the Parting of the Prounce of Cathar, but the other towards the Countrey of Mangi. From the Citie of Gouza way. to the Kingdome of Tainfu, you ride ten dayer thorow Cataso, alway finding many faire Cities and Castles, well traded with Vineyards and tilled Fields, from whence Wine is carried to Cataio, where it wants. There are many Mulberrie trees for Silke-workes : the People civill and Cities very frequent.

20 Tainfu is the name of the Kingdome, and of the chiefe Citie which is great and faire, hath Tainfu. much trading with flore of munition, fit for the Cans Armies. The Wine about this Citie fer- Armes, ueth the whole Prounce. Seven dayes further westward is a goodly Countrey, beautified with many Castles and Cities, in which also great trade of merchandile is vied. After which . you come to a Citie very great, named Pianfis, in which there is great abundance of Silke and Trading.

Westwar, from Pianfu standeth a very goodly Castle, named Thaigin, anciently built by a King called Dor. In it is a spacious Palace, wherein is a faire Hall, in which are painted all the famous Kings which have reigned there; a faire spectacle. Of this King Dor they say that he Dor and his was potent, and was attended onely by young Damfels, whereof his Court had great store, Damfel court, 30 They also when hee lifted to take his pleasure, carried him in a small light Chariot thorow the The King of Caitle, which is to fortified by Are and Nature, that the Gouernour thereof feared none, no not Mezel doe Vmcan his Lord, against whom hee rebelled. But feuen men professing fidelitie and service to likewise in Dor, tooke him at advantage in hunting, and brought him captive to Presbyter John or Vincan, part. who put him in vile clothes, an : appointed him to keepe his Cattell, and fet on him a ftrong guard till two yeeres were ended : after which , hee commanded him to bee brought before him.

About twentie miles beyond the Castle Thaigin, is the River Caramoran, which by reason of Caramoran, the exceeding bredth and depth thereof, hath no Bridge : and floweth to the Ocean. On the 40 shoare thereof are many Cities and Castles built; wherein much trading is exercised. This Countrey abounder with Ginger, Silke, and Fowle, especially Feafants, that three of them are bought for a groat of Venice. There grow Reeds infinite flore, so great that some are a foot, some are a foot and halfe in compasse, profitable to many vies. Passing this River, after two dayes journey is the famous Citie called Carranfu, where many clothes of Gold and Silke are made: heere carianfu, growes Ginger, Galingale, Spike, and many Spices. The people are Idolaters. Proceeding feuen dayes journey Weitward, many Cities, and Townes, goodly Fields and Gardens are found; and every where Mulberies for Silke-wormes. And they are Idolaters but there are also Chriflians, Turkes, Neflorians, and fome Saracens. There is much both of wilde Beatls and Fowle. If you proceed feuen dayes journey further, you shall come to a certaine great Citie, named

50 Quenzanfu, which is the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, in which have raigned many famous Quenzanfu. Kings: and at this day, the fonne of great Can, called Mangalu, hath the command thereof. That Countrey yeeldeth great plentie of Silke, Cloth of Gold, and all other things necessarie for furnishing of an Armie, and for preservation of the life of Man. The Inhabitants worship Idols, and there are some Christians, and Turkes, and Saracens. Fine miles without the Circe Handeth the Palace of Mangalu, teated in a Playne, where are many Springs , Riverets, and places of King Mongalue Game. There is a high wall encompassing fine miles, where are all wilde Beaus and Fowles, in the midft is an excellent Palace, having many Halls and Chambers great and faire, all painted with Gold and Az ire, and infinite Marbles adorning. The King with his Courtiers applieth himselfe to hunting of wilde Beasts, and taking of Fowle, and followeth histathers steps in 60 Inflice and Equitie, much beloued of his people.

Going three dayes Iourney Westward from the faid Palace, through a certaine goodly Plaine, where many Cities and Cattles are (and abundance of Silke, Merchandite, and Arts) is a mountainous Countrie, where, in the Mountaines and Valleyes are frequent Habitations, and flore of Lodgings, of the Prounce of Cunchin. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, and Husbandmen. Alfo. Combin.

and artyred him in Princely apparell, and giving him his pardon after sharpe admonition. Sent him so well accended to the repostession of his Kingdome.

Coales taken out of mines, lun, but comcalled Sea-cole, because they are brought by Sca from Newsaftle.&c-Eut-Ans suisies and the China Ica fuires bauc sold wonders of thefe black flones, a wonto this Land, and specially to this Citie. Cans charitie to the Poore. The Tenths

paid to the Weekly labour Angell of light, Aftrologers,

putation of

Their Religi-

Shattendo i Opinions of the foule

Their Cu-

Court reue.

Achbaluch

in that Countrie they hunt Lions, Beares, Stags, Roe-buckes, Deere, Wolues. That Plaine is two dayes journey, and the Countrey is twentie dayes Westward all inhabited, having Mountaines, and Valleyes, and many Woods.

After that, twentie da, es towards the West, is a Prouince, named Achbaluch Mangi, that is, The white Crie of the borders of Mangi, which is wel peopled. This Province for two dates journy hath a Plaine, with infinite habitations. After which follow Mountaines, Valleyes, and Woods. all inhabited twencie dayes sourney Weltward. It hath store of wild beafts, and of those creatures which yeeld Muske. In this Prouince Ginger groweth in great plentie, as also Corne and Rice,

After twentie dayes sourney thorow those Hills, is a Playne, and a Province in the Confines of Mangi, named Sindinfu. The chiefe Citie hath the same name, great and exceeding rich, be- to ing twentie miles circuit about. It hath had many rich and mightie Kings, but the old King dying, left three sonnes Successors of the Kingdome, which divided the Citie into three parts. compating enery part with their proper walls, all which notwithflanding were contayned within the former wall. But great Can fibitected that Citie and Kingdome to his Dominion. Thorow this Citie runne many Rivers, in many places, and round about, some halfe a mile over, some two hundred paces, very deepe, and on them are many Bridges of stone, very faire, eight paces broad, fet on both lides with marble Pillars, which beare vp a timber Frame that couers the Bridge, each Bridge having streets and shops all along st. When these Rivers are past the Citie, they becom one great riner, called Quian, which runneth one hundred dayes journey hence to the Ocean. Neere thefe Rusers are many Cities and Caftles, and ships for Merchandile. Proceeding fine dayes journey archer, through a certaine Playne, many Cities, Castles, and Villages are 10 found, in which fine Lawnes are in great aboundance. Many wilde Beafts alto are there.

After the Playne whereof wee now speake, is the Prouince of Tebeth, which great Can van-

unce of Teberb quished, and wasted: for in it are many Cities destroyed, and Castles overthrowne by the space of twentie dayes journey. And because it is become a Wildernesse, wanting Inhabitants, wilde Beafts , and Lions are there encreased abundantly: and it is needfull that Traueliers carrie victuals with them. Very great Canes grow in this Countrey ten paces in length, The subtill de- and three palmes in this knesse, and as much from knot to knot. When Travellers therefore nic of Trauel- will reft by night fecure from Beafts, they take great bundles of the greener Reeds, and putting fire vnder, kindle them. Which make fich a cracking, and fo great a noyfe, that it may bee 30 heard two miles off. Which terrible found the wilde Beafts hearing, flee away. Moreouer, Horses, and other Beasts which Merchants vie for their journey, hearing this noyse and cracking, are very much afraid, and many betaking themselves to slight, have escaped from their Mafters: but the wifer Trauellers binding their feet together with Fetters, detayne them Twentie dayes lourney ended, having passed over the Province of Tebeth, wee meet with

Cities, and very many Villages, in which, through the blindnesse of Idolatrie, a wicked custome

18-bookemen- is vied : for, no man there marrieth a wife that is a Virgin. Whereupon , when Trauellers and

Eight King-Tebetb.

Strangers comming from other parts, passe through this Countrey, and pitch their Paulions, the like of the Cy- Women of that place having marriageable daughters, bring them vnto Strangers, desiring 49 them to take them, and enjoy their companie as long as they remayne there. Thus the pretier the 4- booke, are choien, and the rest returne home forrowfull. And when they will depart, they are not suffered to carrie any away with them, but faithfully restore them to their Parents. The Mayden also requireth some toy or small Present of him who hath defloured her, which shee may shew as an argument and proofe of her deflouring. And shee that hath beene loued, and abused of most men, and shall have many such favours and toyes to shew to her Wooers, is accounted more noble, and may more easily and honourably be married. And when shee will goe honourably attired, shee hangeth all her Louers fauours about her necke, and the more acceptable shee was to many, of so much the more honour is thee adjudged worthie. But when they are once married to husbands, they are now no more fuffered to be coupled with Prange men. And the 10 men of this Countrie are very wary, that they offend not one another in this matter. They are Idolaters, and cruell men, thinking it no finne if they rob, and exercise theft. They live by hunting, and the fruits of the earth. Many beafts also are found with them, yeelding Muske called by them, Gudderi. They have a proper Language, and have no money, not the Paper Coralimoney, money of Can, but ipend Corals for money, and are clothed with the skins of beafts, or courle Hempe. This Countrey appertaymeth to the Prouince of Tebeth: for Tebeth is a very large Prouince, and hath beene fometime divided into eight Kingdomes, having many Cities, and Townes, with many Mountaynes, Lakes, and Rivers, where Gold is found. The women weare Corall about their neckes, and hang it about the neckes of their Idols, as a precious thing. In this Countrey there are very great Dogs, as big as Ailes, which take wilde Beafts, specially wilde 60 Oxen, called Beyamini. They are exceeding Necromancers, causing tempefts, lightnings, thunderbolts, and many other wonders. There are many forts of Spices never brought into thele parts. This Thebeth is (as all the former Provinces) fubicct to the Can.

On the Well of the Prouince of Tebeth, bordereth the Prouince of Cainda, formetimes gover-

ned by her owne Kings, now by the Gouernours of the Can. By the West you must not under z fland that the Countries are in the West, but that wee departing from those parts which are betwixt the East and North-east come hither Westward: and herefore reckon them Westward. The people are Idolaters, have many Cities, the chiefe called by the name of the Province. Cainds built in the entry of the Prouince. There is a great falt Lake, in which is store of Pearles, white, not round, to abundant, that the price of them would become little worth, if they were fuffered to be carried away at mens pleatures. Whereupon, it is prouided upon payne of death, that none should presume to his for Pearle in this Lake, without the licence of great Can. There is alio a Mountaine in which is found a Minerall of Turkefle Rones, confined to the like To licence. Many Gadderi are also in this Prouince, which yeeld Muske. That Lake also which Gadders. ingendreth Pearle in such plentie, aboundeth with Fishes: and the whole Countrey is full of wilde Beaits, that is to lay, of Lions , Beares , Stags . Deere, Ounces, Roe-buckes ; and divers kinds of Birds. Cloues are found there in great plentie, which are gathered from small Trees, Cloues. which have boughs and leaves like the Bay-tree, but fomewhat longer and straighter, white flowers and little, as are the Cloues, and when they are ripe they are blacke and duskie. Gin- Ginger, Cinager, Cinamon, and divers other Spices grow there in great plentie, which are not brought vnto mon, our Countries. Wine groweth not in it , but in flead thereof they make excellent Drinke of Corne, Rice, and diares other Spices. The Inhabitants of this Countrey worthip Idols, by which The Inhabithey are so besotted, that they thinke they deserue their fauour, if they profittute their wines, tants are ldo-20 fifters, and daughters to be abused by Trauellers. For, when any Stranger commeth amongst laters and them, every houtholder feeketh to give him entertainment, and goe their way, leaving the femals and house to the Strangers will, and returne not vntill they depart. And the women presently hang up some signe till he be gone, that when the Master of the familie returneth, he may know he is there still, and goe away againe, staying without till he be departed: which hee doth for the glorie of his Iuols, hoping they will be more gracious vito him. Certaine twigs of Gold are their money, ving weights, and according to the weight of the twig is the value of the money. And this money is the greater money without stampe. They have also a lester, which they make after this manner. They boyle Salt in a Caldron an houres space, of which being congea- Money of Salt led, they make little lumps like two-pennie loaues, which being made folid, is figned with the 30 Princes Stampe, and make great profit thereof in lauage places, remote from Cities which haue ftore of Muske and Gold, and want Chapmen. These bartar their Gold for Salt to vie in their meats. Leaving this Province, they proceed fifteene dayes journey further, and in the meane space meet with Castles, and many Villages, whose Inhabitants have the same customes, that the Prouince of Cainda hath, and at length they come vnto a River, called Briss, where the Pro- The River nince of Cainda is bounded. In this River Gold is found in great plentie, which they call, Di Briss yeelding Paiola (Wathed in veilels to feuer it from the fands and earth.) On the bankes thereof Cinamon Gold.

groweth in great abundance. This River runneth to the Ocean. Hauing palled ouer the River Briss, they come westward to the Province Caraian, which The seven contayneth feuen Kingdomes. It is subject to the Great Con, whole sonne, named Sentemer, Kingdomes of ontayneth recent anisassing of that Kingdome, who is rich, wife and inft. The Inhabitants thereof are Idola-King Sentember. ters. You ride fine dayes and finde it all well peopled. They line of their Beatts and Fruits. The Countrey bre deth excellent Horses: and it hath a peculiar and difficult language. At the end of those fine dayes is the chiefe Citie, called Iaci, and it is great and famous, hath in it many Mer. The Citie Iaci chants and Artificers, and many forts of People, Idolarers, Christians, Nestorians, and Saracens; but the most Idolaters. It hath Corne, and much Rice, although they eate no bread of Corne, because it is not whol ome, but they make bread of Rice. They make drinke also of it, and divers Spices very pleafant. They vie white Porcelanes in Read of money, and for ornaments which Money of are found at the Sea. Much Salt is made in this Citie of the water of falt Wells, whereof the Stones. King hath great profit. The men of this Countrey care not if any man come to their Wiues, fo they give their confent. There is also a Lake there very full of Fish, contayning an hundreth 50 miles in compaffe. Those men eater aw fiesh of Hennes, Beefe, Mutton and Buffals, but prepa- Raw fiesh. red after this manner. They first breake it into small pieces, and after season it with excellent Spices: but the poorer fort fired it and lay it in Garlicke fawce, and eate it as wee doe boy-

Departing from the Citie of Iaci, having travailed ten dayes journey westward, yee come to the Prounce named, as is the chiefe Citie, Carazan, which Cogasin, fonne of Cublas, governeth. Carazan, The Rivers there yeeld very much gold de paiola, and also that which is more folid, and the Rivers yeel-Mountaines gold of the veine and they give one fone of gold for fix of filter. They frend Porce. dung gold at lanes for money, brought thither from India. The Inhabitants are Idolaters: very great Serpents, with din yelare bred in this Countrey, whereof fome contayne ten paces in length, and in thickneffe ten iels from the 60 spannes. They have two little feet before nigh the head, with three talons or clawes like Lions, fand & earth. and the eyes bigger then a Groat loafe, very finning. They have their mouthes and jawes to Great Drawide, that they are able to swallow a man; great and sharpe teeth; nor is there any man, or o- gons. ther huing Creature, which may behold those Serpents without terror : there are found lesse, of

Caiuda.

eight, fixe, or fine paces long, which are taken after this manner. In the day time they vie to lie hid, by reason of the heat, in holes, out of the which they goe by night to seeke their prey, and denoure what foeuer they get, Lions, Wolves, or others : and then goe to feeke water, leauing such a tract with their weight in the fands, as if some piece of timber had beene drawne there. Whereupon the Hunters fasten under the sands sharpe Iron prickes in their vsuall tracts. whereon they are wounded and flayne. The Crowes prefen ly ring his knell, and by their craing cries innite the Hunters, which come and flay him, taking forth his gall, profitable for diuers Medecines (amongst other things, for the biting of mad Dogs , a penie weight ginen in Wine; and far women in trauell for carbuncles and puthes) and they fell the fl. th deare as being wine; and tar women in clause. There are bred great Horles in this Pronince, which by Merchants are carried into India. They vie to take one bone out of the tayle, left le should bend his tayle hither and thither, and effeeme it more comely that it hang downe right. They vie long Stirrups as the Frenchmen; which the Tartars and other Nations on their shooting vie short, because when they shoot, they rile up. They vie Targets and Armour in the Warres, made of the hides of Buffals: they have Lances and Croffe-bowes, and poyton all their Arrowes. Some of them Poy'on and which are ill minded, are faid to carrie ' poyton about them continually, that if they be taken, they may suddenly swallow it and death together, to preuent to rure. For which cause the great Lords have Dogs dung ready, which they force them to iwallow, and that forceth them to vomit the poylon. Before the great Can subjected them, they yield, that when any Stranger which feemed of good prefence and parts lodged with them, they flue him by night, supposing that those good parts of that man might abide afterwards in that house; and this was the death

Cardandon.

Scamards in fome places. porteth the with the Tiba-

Going from the Prouince Carazan, after fine dayes journey Westward, is the Prouince Caradandan, which also is subject to great Can. The chiefe Citic thereof is called Vocion. The Inhabitants thereof vie Porcelanes and weighed pieces of Gold in itead of money: for in that Countrey, and many other lying round about, Silver mines are not found, and they give one ounce of Gold for five ounces of Silver, and great gayne is made by the change. The men and women of that Countrey couer their teeth with thinne plates or Gold , which they fo fit vnto Golden coue- them, that the teeth themselues seeme (as it were) to be let in the plates. The men about their armes and legs make lifts, pricking the places with Needles, and putting thereon a blacke indelible tincture. And thele lifts or markes are eftermed with them a great galantrie. They give their minds to nothing but riding, hunting, hawking, and exercises of Armes, leaving the houfhold cares to the women, who are helped therein by flaues which they buy or take in Warre. When a woman is brought to bed flee or fakes the bed, washeth the shild and dreffeth it, and \* Strate in his then the husband \* lieth downe and keepes the child with him fortie dayes, not fuffering it to third booke depart : is visited meane while of friends an neighbours, to cheare and comfort him. The woman lookes to the house, carrie the husband his broths to his bed, and gues sucke to the child by done with the him. Their Wine is made of Rice and Spice, their meat Rice, and raw fielh dreffed, as is before mentioned. In this Province there are no other Idols, taux that every familie adoreth the oldeft man in the honfe, of whom they fay come themselves and all they have. They dwell for the most part, in wilde and mountainous places. But Forrainers come not to those Mountaines, because the ayre would kill them, being in Summer very corrupt. They are no letters, but make their Contracts and Obligations by tallies of wood, the helfe whereof the one keepeth, and the oreni. Le us if ther, the other; which being afterward payd, the tallie is rendred. There are no Phylicians in the Brasilians. this Province, nor in Candu, Vociam and Carasan : but when any is ficke, they call the Magi-Tallies of con- cians, or Idoll Priefts together, and he ficke partie declareth his direafe vinto them : then the The decentual Magicians dance, and found certaine instruments, and bellow forth fongs in honour of their Gods, while at length the Deuill entreth into one of them skipping and playing in the dance. the Magicians. Then leaving the dance, they confult with him that is poll for, for what cause that disease hapned vnto him, and what is to be done for his reconerie. The Deuill answereth by him, because so he hath done this or that, or because he hath offended this or that God : therefore, he fell into this disease. Then the Magicians intreat that God to pardon him that offence, promising, that if the ficke partie recouer, he shall offer a Sacrifice of his owne bloud. But if the Deuill thinke the weake partie to be ficke of fuch a difease that he caunot be freed from the same, he wheth to answere: This man hath so grieuously offended that God, that he cannot by any sacrifices bee appealed. But if he thinke he shall recouer, he commandeth to offer to many Rammes having blacke heads, and to prepare so many Magicians with their wives, by them to offer Sacrifices, and that God may then bee appealed towards him. Which being hear I, his kinfmen quickly cause those things to be done which the Denill commanded: they kill Rammes, and sprinckle their bloud in the ayre, and the Magicians affembled with their Witches, light great Candles, 60 and perfume the whole house with incense, making fume of Lignum Aloes, and sprinckle the broth of the field in the ayre, together with the potion made of spices: all which being duely performed, they skip about againe in a dance in honour of that Idoll, which is supposed to have beene fauourable to the ficke, finging, and making an horrible noyte with their voyces. These

CHAP.4.S.7. Deuill-cures. Tartars firatagem against Elephants.

things being done, they aske the possessed agains, whether by these things the Idol be appeared. If he answer, No, they presently prepare themselues to fulfill another command of his. But if he answer, that he is satisfied, they fit downe at the Table, and eate the fielh offered to the Idoli with great ioy, and drinke the confections. And dinner being ended, and the Magicians payed, every one returneth to his owne home. And when the ficke hath thus escaped the disease, through the providence of God, and hath beene restored to health, they attribute it to the Idol whom they facrificed. But if he die, then they fay, the Idoll was defrauded, and that forme of the Sacrificers taited thereof first. This is not done to all but to the Richer, the Deuill deluding their blindnesse.

ø. VII.

of the Province of Mich and Bengala, how they were conquered to the Can: Of Cangigu, Amu, Tholoman, Cintigui, and some other pares of Caraio. And of the Conquest of Mangi.

Nno Dom. 1272: the Great Can fent an Armie into the Kingdome of Vociam, and Carazan to guard it, to the number of twelve thouland expert warriors, vnder the conduct of Neffardin a wife Captaine. As foone as the King of Mien, and the King of Bengala heard of their comming, affembling their forces, they in ned Horse and Foot together, about three core thousand, and about a thousand Elephants beating Castles, and in every Castle twelve or fixteene "armed men were placed. With this Armie the King of Mien " This by rolespeedily marched towards the Citie Vociam, where the Armie of the Tarsars refted. Nestardin tion; for they comming forth with a manly courage to fight against the Enemie, encamped against a certaine vie not to cagreat Wood , knowing that the Elephants with those Towres were not able to enter into the ry about three Wood, Then the King of Mien marcheth forth to meete them. But the Tartarian Horses per- His stratagem. ceiuing the Elephants to be present, which were placed in the first front of the battaile, were terrified with fo great feare, that they could not by any violence or policy be prouoked against 30 the Elephants. The Tartars therefore were compelled to alight from their Horses, and tying Fight & flight them to the Trees of the Wood, they come to fight on foot against the Elephants. In the front of Elephants. of the battaile, all the Tartars purposely shot a multitude of Arrowes against the Elephants, which not able to indure the ftrokes of the Arrowes, speedily betooke themselues to flight, and with swift course went all vnto the next Wood , and brake their Castles, and ouer-threw the armed men fitting in them, which the Tartars feeing , runne vnto their Horfes , and getting vp vpon them, furiously fall vpon the Kings Armie with great violence : and many of either Armie fell, at length the King of Mien being put to flight, left the victorie to the Tartars, who haften to the Wood, and taking many Captines, vied their helpe to take two hundred of thefe Elephants. And euer fince Great Can hath vfed Elephants in his Armies which before hee had 40 not accustomed. Hereupon also he vanquished the Countries of the King of Mien and Bengala, and tubiected them to his Empire.

Departing from the Prouince of Cardandan, is a great descent, which continueth two dayes and a halfe, nor is there any habitation there, but a very large Playne, in the which, three dayes Market in a In the weeke many men meete together for Trading. Many descend from the great Mountaines dishabited of that Countrey, bringing gold with them to change for filter, to wit, giving one ounce of gold Playme. for fine ounces of filter: whereupon, many Merchants from forraine Nations come thither, who gold and file bringing filuer carrie away gold, and bring thither merchandiles to fell to those people. For to uer. those high Mountaines, in which, they who gather gold in that Countrey, dwell, no stranger can come, feeing the way is vnpaffable and intricate. When you are past that Playne, going to-50 ward the South, Mien bordereth vpon India, and the way lyeth fifteene dayes journey in places not inhabited and wooddy, in which innumerable Elephants, Vnicornes, and other wild Vnicornes or

beafts wander. After that fifteene dayes is found Mien, a great and noble Citie, the head of the Kingdome, Mien. and subject to Great Can. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar language, and are Idolaters. In this Citie there was a King, who being readie to die, commanded that neere to his Sepulchre, there should be made two Towres in Pyramide fashion, one at the head, the other at the seete, both of Marble, of the heigth of ten farhom. On the top was a round Ball. He caused one to bee couered all ouer with gold a finger thicke, and the other with filter. And vpon the top round about the Balls, many little golden and filuer Bells were hanged, which at the blowing of the 60 winde gaue a certaine found. The Moniment or Sepulchre was also couered with Plates, partly of gold, partly of filter. He commanded this to be made in honor of his Soule, and that his memorie should never decay among men. And when Great (an minded to subdue this Citie , hee fent a valiant Captaine, and the greatest part of his Armie were lesters, of which his Court is alway furnished. Thele winning the Citie, would not violate that Moniment without the Cans

knowledge, who hearing that the decessed had made it for the honor of his Soule, would not ful-The pierie of fer it to be firred : for the manner of the Tartar; is , not so violate those things which belong to the Tarters to the dead. In this Province are many Elephants, wild Oxen, great and faire Stagges and Detre. wardsthe dead and other wild Beatls of divers kindes.

The Province Bengala bord-reth vpon India toward the South, which Great Can fubdued when Marco Polo lived in his Court. The Countrey hath a proper King, and peculiar language, The Inhabitants thereof are all Idolaters : they have Mailers which keepe Schooles and teach Idolatries and Inchantments; a thing common to all the great Men of that Countrey. They eate Fiesh, Rice and Milke : they have Cotton in great plentie, and by reason thereof, much and great trading is exercised there: they abound also with Spike, Galang I, Ginger, Sugar, and diverso- 10

Ozen as bigge ther Spices. Huge Oxen alio are there, comparable with Elephants in height but not in thickas Elephants. neffe. Many Eunuches are made in this Prouince, which are afterwards fold vnto Merchants. This Province continueth thirtie dayes journey, in the end whereof going Eastward is the Pro-Cangign hath his proper King and peculiar language. The Inhabitants thereof worthin Idols.

Cangiga. Cangiga hath his proper King and pecur ar ranguage. The King hath about three hundreth Wines. Much gold is The Kingsum: and are Tributaries to Great Can. Their King hath about three hundreth Wines. Much gold is found in this Prouince, and many Spices, but they cannot eafily be transported, seeing that countrey is farre distant from the Sea. There are also many Elephants in it, and much game of many wild Beafts. The Inhabitants thereof line with Flesh, Milke and Rice. They want Wine, but they make good drinke of Rice and Spices. Aswell the Men as the Women vie to embroider their 20 Faces, Necks, Hands, Bellies and Legs, making the Images of Lions, Dragons and Birds, and fo firmely imprint them that they cannot easily bee put out : and the more such Images any one hath, by so much is hee esteemed themore gallant. And there be Professors of this foolish Art of

flesh embroiderie, which vie no other Trade but this Needle-worke, and dying of Fooles-skinnes. Amu is an Eafterly Prouince subject to Great Can, whose Inhabitants worship Idols, and haue a peculiar language. They abound with Herds of Cattell, and haue plentie of Victuals, and many Horses and those excellent, which Merchants bring into India. They have also many Buffes and Oxen, because there are delicate Pastures there. As well Men as Women, weare bracelets of gold and filter of great value on their armes, also the like on their legs: but those of the Women are of most value. From Amu to Cangiguare fine and twentie dayes sourney.

The sman.

The Prouince Tholoman is eight dayes iourney diffant to the East from Amu, subject vnto 30 Great Can, having a peculiar language, and worthipping Idols. The Men and Women thereof are tall and goodly, of a browne colour. The Countrey is very well inhabited, having many and ftrong Caftles and Cities. The men are exercited in Armes and accustomed to warre, They burne the bodies of their dead, and inclosing the Reliques of their bones in a Cheft, hide them in the Caues of the Mountaines, that they cannot bee touched either of man or beaft. Gold is in great plentie there, and in stead of money they vie Porcelanes brought from India, as also in Cangigu

Cintlgui.

are now vied in Congo. Great and #hardie Dogs.

From the Prouince Tholoman, the way leadeth towards the East on a River, by which are many Cities and Caitles, and at the end of twelve dayes you come to the great Citie Cinigni. The 40 Countrey is subject to Great Can, and the Inhabitants thereof are addicted to Idolatrie, Excel-Cloth made of lent Clothes are made in this Countrey of the barkes of Trees, wherewith they are clothed in the Summer. Very many Lions are there, fo that for feare of them, none dare fleepe without doores by night. The ships which goe vp and downe the River, for feare of the Lions, are not fastned to the banke. There are great Dogs in the same Countrey, so hardie and strong, that they seare not to adventure on the Lion: And it often hapneth, that two Dogs and one Archer kill a Lion; for the Dogs fet on by the man give the onfet, and the Lions nature is prefently to feeke shelter from some Tree, that the Dogs may not come behind him : neither yet will his great heart suffer him to runne from the Dogs, left he should seeme afraid; but he holds his stately pace, the man meanwhile shooting, and the Dogs fastning on his hinder parts, but with such quicknesse, that when jo the Lion turnes on them they are gone. And then doth this magnanimous Beaft hold on his way againe to feeke fuch Tree fuccour, that with Bitings and Arrowes he fometimes comes short, and with expense of bloud dyeth by the way. This Countrey aboundeth with Silke, which by Merchants is carried to divers Provinces by the River. They live on Merchandife, their money is Paper. They are valiant in Armes. At the end of ten dayes is the Citie Sidinfu, and twentie dayes from thence is Gingui, and foure dayes thence is Pazanfu towards the South, and is in Cataio returning by the other fide of the Prouince. The people are Idolaters and burne their dead. There are also certaine Christians which have a Church : all vnder the Can and vie Paper money. They make Clothes of Gold, and Silke, and Launes very fine. By this Citie (which hath many Cities vnder it) goes a great River which carries store of merchandise to Cambalu, made by many Chan-60 nels to paffe thither. But wee will paffe hence, and proceeding three dayes journey, speake of

Sidinfu Cinqui. Par pefu.

> Ciangle is a great Citie toward the South of the Province of Cataio, Libie to the Can, the Inhabitants are Idolaters, and burne their dead. Their money is the (Mulberie) Paper coine of the

CHAP.4. S.7. Salt made of earth. Nauie Royall. Fanfur K. of Mangi. Argus. 95

Can. In this Citie and the Territories they make store of Salt, for that Earth is very falt, and The Salt of out of it they get Salt, after this manner. They heape up Earth in manner of an Hill, and powre Canglu, water vpon it, which drawes the falenesse of the Earth vnto it, and then runnes into certaine Conduits, and is boyled in Pannes till it be congealed to Salt faire and white, to the Cans and their great gaine, being carried into other Countries to fell. There are great Peaches very good. which weigh two pounds a piece. Fine dayes journey beyond the Citie Ciangle, in Cataio South- Great Peaches ward flandeth another Citie, named Cangli (in which way are many Cities and Caftles, all fub- ciangli, ied to the Can) through the middest whereof runneth a great River, very convenient for ship-

ping laden with merchandiles.

Six dayes journey thence to the South (all which way hath great Cities and Caffles of Idolaters) is the noble Kingdome and great Citie Tudinfu, which had his proper King, before it was Tudinfu, fubdued to Great Can, Anno 1272. and hath elenen Royall Cities, famous for traffick, subject to the jurifdiction thereof. It is very delectable for Gardens and Fruits, rich in Silkes. The Can fent to the government hereof one of his Barons, named Lucanfor, with eightie thousand Horse: who rebelled against his Lord, but was skine by a power of one hundred thousand under two other Barons fent against him, and the Countrey reduced to obedience. Seven dayes off (riding by many Cities and Castles of Idolaters, plentifull of all things) towards the South is the famous Citie, named Singuimatu, vinto the which on the South, a certaine great River runneth, which be- Singui math. ing disided by the Inhabitants of the place into two Rivers, floweth partly to the East to-20 wards Caraio, and partly to the West towards Mangi. By these Rivers, innumerable Vessels for multitude, and incredible for their greatnesse and wealth, bring necessaries to both Prouinces. If you goe fixteene dayes iourney towards the South from Singuimatu, you still meet with Cities and Townes where much trading is exercifed. The Inhabitants of these Countries are Idolaters,

After that fixteene dayes, you come vnto a great Riner, named Carameran, which is faid to carameran. flow out of the Kingdome of Vmean or Presbyter lobn, of the North. It is very deepe, and carrieth Ships of great burthen : it is also flored with Fish. Within one dayes journey of the Sea there are in this Riner fifteene thouland Saile, each of which carrieth fifteene Horfes and twentie Men, befides Victualls and the Mariners. This is the Cons Fleet kept there in readineffe, to 20 carrie an Armie to any of the Hands in the Sea, if they should rebell; or to any remote Region

Neere the banke of the River where these Ships are kept, is Conganan, and over against it Quanzw. one a great Citie, the other small. After you are past that River, you enter into the noble Kingdome of Mangs. And doe not thinke that wee have handled in order the whole Province of Cataio : yea, I have not spoken of the twentieth part. For, M. Polo passing by the said Pro. nince, hath onely described the Cities in his way, leaving those on both hands, and those be-

twixt thele, to present tediousnesse.

The Province of Manos is the most rich and famous that is found in the East; and An. 1260. had a certaine King, named Forfur, richer and mightier then any which had reigned there in an Fantur King of hundred yeeres, but a man peaceable and full of almefdeeds, to beloued of his fubicets, that there- Mangi, which 40 by, and by the ftrength of the Countrie, he feemed inuincible. Whereby it came to passe, that is now called the King as well as the People, loft the vie and exercise of Warre and Armes. All the Cities were compassed with Ditches, a Bow shoot broad, full of Water. Hee held in pay no Horses, because he feared none. And hence it came to passe, that the King giving himselfe to pleasure more then was meete, enjoyed continuall delights. He maintayned about a thousand goodly Lasses, with which he passed his time in pleasure. He nourished Justice, and preserved Peace. No man durst offend his Neighbour, and diffurbe the Peace, for feare of feuere vnpartiall punishment. So that Artificers would often leave their Shops full of Wares open by night, and yet none would prefume to enter into them. Tranailers and ftrangers most fately walked day and night, throughout that whole Kingdom, fearing no man. The King himselfe also was pitifull and mercifull towards the Poore, and for looke not them that were oppreffed with necessitie, or pinched with penurie. 50 Besides, every yeere hee tooke vp twentie thousand young Infants, cast off by their Mothers, which through pourrie were not able to keepe them, which he brought vp, and fet them when they were growne to some Trade, or married the young Men with the Maids which hee had in like fort educated

Cublai Can was of a differing disposition to Fanfur, and delighted onely in Warres and Conquests, and to make himselfe Great; he sent a great Armie levied of Horse and Foot, and made one, named Chinfan Baian (that is, one hundred eyes) Generall thereof. Hee, therefore comming Chinfan Baian with his Armie and a Fleet to the Prouince of Mangi, first summoned the citie Coiganzan to yeeld another Argun obedience to his Emperour .: Who refusing the same, hee departed without any assault given to in the signifithe Citie and required the fame of the fecond Citie; which like wife setuting, he marched forward name, 60 to the third, and fourth, and received the like answere of them all. But he attaulted the next with great courage, and vanquished the same by force, and slue every mothers child therein; which so affrighted and terrified the reft, that they all prefently yeelded. Moreouer, Great Can fent another great Armie after the former, with both which Armies hee marched against the chiefe Citie

Ciangl<sub>K</sub>

Quinfai, the Kings Court,

Mangi and

China is a

Quinfai, where the King of Mangi relided: who mightily terrified, as never having feene any battell, fled with his wealth and treasures in ships which he had prepared to certaine impregnable llands in the Ocean (where he after died ) committing the cuttodie of the Citie of Quinfai to his wife, bidding her to defend it as well as shee could; for being a woman shee need not feare death, it thee were taken. It is to be observed, that King Fanfar had beene told by his Di-The flight of uiners, that his Kingdome should neuer be taken from him, but by one which had att hundred King Fanfur. \* This name eyes: which the Queene knew, and therefore was still in hope not to lose the Citie, how focuer fireightned; thinking it impossible for one man to have an hundred eyes. But one day she heard, Co:na are fo that the Commander of the Tartars was called Baian Chinfan, that is to fav, An hundred eves. different that differentinat they may feem and was much terrified : wherefore, calling for the Commander of the Tariars Armie, thindiuers Regiking him to bee the man which the Aftrologers spake of, shee delivereth the Citie vnto him, Which being heard, the Citizens, and Inhabitants of the whole Province, revolted to the obe-Reader is to dience of great Can. The Queene was fent vnto the Court of great Can, and was most honouobterue, that rably received by him, and maintayned like a Queene. And now wee will speake of the Ciries name to the

Chinois vn knowne, and that Kingdome hath appellations diverfly diverfixed a either from the Familie reigning (which now is called Cin and the Kingdome Min, and Min Cin, are not farre from Mangi) and by the Tartas, when they reigned, it was called Han and before, Chen, which both put together make Han Chen, without any great diffonance from Mangi: Or elfe by generall appellations common to all ages, &c. See our following relations of Ricci and Trigonium.

#### J. VIII.

Of the Cities of Mangi (now called China) and the rarities thereof: the many wonders of Quinfai, the Palaces, Pleasures, Rites and Gouernment. observed by the Natives, and the Tartars.

Coignagu.

Oiganzu is a faire and rich Citie, lituate towards the South-east, and East in the end trance of the Province of Mangi, (from Cataio, whence the Ambour paffed) where are alway great flore of thips, being leated on the River Caramoran. Great flore of 20 Merchandise is carried thicher. Salt is also made there in great abundance.

The Sale of Coniganzui. \* Terraglio,

Going from Coiganzu, you ride towards the South-east one dayes journey on a stone \* Caufie; on both fides whereof are great Fennes with deepe waters, whereon they may palle with fhips : neither is there any entrance into Mangi but by fhipping (as the Captaine of the Can did ) but by this Caufie. At the end of that dayes iourney is a Citie calle. Pungbin great and Paughin. faire. The people make clothes of Gold and of Silke, are Merchants and Idolaters. The Paper money of great Can is received throughout that whole Countrey. It is plentifull of all neceffaries of life.

Phofants.

To the Citie Caim, is from Panghin one dayes journey South-east, and this is also a famous Citie, abounding with hih, and game, of beafts, and fowle: especially Phelants are found 40 there, in exceeding great plentie, as great as Peacocks, of which you may have three for one Venetian groat.

Tingui,

Proceeding further hence one dayes journey, you come thorow a well manured and peopled Countrey to the Citie Tingui, which although it be not great, yet hath it exceeding great plentie of victuals. They are Merchants, and very many ships are also there: plentie of beafts and fowles : It is feated to the South-east, and on the left hand towards the East three dayes journey off is the Ocean: and in the space betweene, are very many Salt pits; and they make great store of Salt. After this, is Cinqui a great Citie, whence the Countrey is furnished with Salt, whereof the Can makes great profit, beyond beliefe. They are Idolaters, and have Paper mo-Iangui, Head ney. From Cingui riding towards the South-east, you meet with the noble Citie langui, vinder so the government whereof are other Cities, seven and twentie in number. And in that Citie refideth one of the twelue Barons which are Governours of Provinces choien by the great Can. They are Idoliters, and live of Merchandise. They make Armes and Harnasse for warre. And Malter Marco had the fole government thereof by commission of the great Can, three yeeres to-

of 27. Cities.

M. Pole Go-Nanghin.

gether in flead of one of those Barons. Nanghin is a Picuince to the West, one of the greatest and noblest of Mangi, a place of great Merchandife. They are idolaters, ipend Paper money, haue store of beasts and fowle, wilde and tame. They make clothes of Gold and Silke, and are rich Merchants, and the Countrey is very commodious to the Can, specially by Customes of Merchandite. There is great plentie of Cor. e. Sianfu is a noble and great Citie in the Province of Manoi, and hath twelve rich and 60 great Cuties subject vinto her jurisdiction. They make great stere of Silkes and cloth of Gold, have plentie of game and fowle, and of all things pertayning to a Citie of note : lo frong, that it was three yeeres befieged, and could not be vanquified by the Armie of the Tursars, when the Province of Mangi was fubdued. For it is compassed on every fide with Lakes, that there

was no way vinto it, but on the North: fo that thips came and went continually, bringing plentre of victuals: which not a little afflicted great Can. The two brethren Mafter Nicolo, and Madler Maffio, then in his Court, hearing hereof, went to him, and offered their feruice to deuife certaine Engines after the manner of the West, able to shoot a stone of three hundred weight, thereby to kill men, and ruine houses. The Can appointed them the best Carpenters which were Nefforita Christians, who made three (Mangans) of those Engines in a frost space, king of Enwhich were proued and approued before him, and by thips tent vito his Armie, Planting them gines. It heretherefore against the Citie Sianfu; they began to cast great stones into the Citie; and the hirst by appeares falling upon a certaine house, brake it for the most part, with the violence thereof. Which the sharthey had To belieged Inhabitants feeing, were very much aftonished, and yeelded themselves, and became not the vicos fullicet to the obedience of great Can, on the fame conditions with the rest of Mangi; to the the Cannon,

great repute of the two Venetian brethren.

From the Citie Stanfu, to a certaine Citie, named Singui, are numbred fifteene miles South- Singui. eaftward, which although it be not great, yet hath it an exceeding multitude of Ships , being trated youn the greatest River in the world, called Quian, the bredth of which in certaine pla- Quin. ces, con:ayneth ten miles, in other eight, and in some fixe. But the length thereof extendeth it illfe aboue an hundred dayes journey from the head to the Sea. Innumerable other Rivers flow into it, which tunne therow divers Regions, and are navigable, and make it fo great; incredi-

ble store of Merchandise is brought by this River. There are also very many other Cities, in 20 number about two hundred, which participate of this River: it floweth through the bounds of fixteene Provinces. The greatest commoditie is Salt, wherewith all the Cities which communicate in thele waters are flored. Mafter Marco faw at one time at Singui fine thousand ships, and yet other Civies on that River have more. All those ships are covered, and have but one mait, and one fayle, and viually carrie foure thousand, and so vpwards, some of them twelve thouland Venetian Cantari. Neither vie cordage of Hempe, except for the mait and fayle, but have Canes fifteence paces long, which they rive into thinne parts from one end to the other, and binding the cut pieces together, and wreathing them, make very long ropes, fo that fome of them contayne three hundred fathom in length. And those lines are as strong as Hempen, and ferue for halfes and cables to draw their ships vp and downe the River, each ship having ten 20 or twelve Hories for that purpole. On that River in many places are rockie hillockes, on which are built Monalteries to their Idols: and all the way are Villages and places inhabited.

Canqui is a little Citie, vpon the forefaid River South-eastward, where every yeere is brought cangui. store of Corne and Rife, carried the most part to Cambalu. For they may passe thither by Lakes Hand-made and Rivers, and by one deepe large hand-made River, which the Can caused to be made for pal- River, fage from one River to another, and from Mangi to Cambalu without going to Sea. Which worke is goodly and wonderfull for the fite and length, and more for the profit thereby to the Cities. Hee hath made also great Causies to goe on land by those waters commodiously. In the mids of the faid River is an Iland of a Rocke, on which is erected a great Temple and Monafterie, in which are two hundred Idolatrous Monkes. This is the Mother-temple and Monaste-40 rie of many others.

Cinghianfu is a Citie of Mangi, rich in Merchandise, plentifull of game, of wilde beasts cingbiansu, and fowle, and of victuall. In it are two Churches of Neftorian Christians, built Anno 1274. when the great Can fent Gouernour thither, Marfachis a Nestorian, which built them-From the Citie Cingbianfu, in three dayes journey South-eastward, you find many Cities and

Castles all Idolaters, and at last come to the Citie Tingnigui, a great and faire Citie, abounding Tingnigui. with all kinde of victuals. When Chinfam Baian, Generall of the Armie of the Tartars conquered the Province of Mangi, he fent many Christians (called Alani) against this Citie, which was double walled; into the inner they retired; into the other the Alans entred, and found there abundance of Wine, whereof after a bad journey, they began to drinke fo largely, that they were all drunke: and the Citizens in their sleepe suddenly falling upon them, slue them all, 50 none escaping. But Baian hearing this, sent another great Armie against those Citizens, which shortly vanquishing the Citie, in reuenge, put them all to the sword, leaving none aliue,

The great and excellent Citie Singui, contay neth in circuit twentie miles. Great multitudes Singui. of people are in it: it hath many rich Merchants, and cunning Artificers, and it hath also very many Phylicians, and Magicians, and Wifemen or Philosophers. In the Mountaines of this Citie, Phylicians and Rhubarb and Ginger grow in great plenty. This Citie buth fixteen Cities under the inriffiction Khubarbe. thereof, where much trading is vied, and very many carious Arts are exercited. Very many Silkes are made there. The word Singui, in their language, fignifieth, The Citie of the Earth, as also they have another Citie, which they call Quinfar, that is to fay, The Citie of Heaven. From Singui one dayes iourney is Vagin, where is also abundance of Silke, and coming Artificers with

60 many Merchants. Oing from Vagin three dayes, continually you find Cities, Catiles, and Villages, well peo-Apled and rich. The People are Idolaters, under the Can: at the end of those dayes you

Dainfa the Earthly Citie of Heatten, O how much better is the heauenly Ci-12000.bridges.

98

come to Quinfai, which for the excellency hath that name (interpreted Citie of Heauen) for in the World there is not the like, in which are found to many pleasures, that a man would thinke he were in Paradife. In this Citie Matter Marco Polo hath often beene, and confidered the same with great diligence, observing the whole state thereof, setting downe the same in his memorials, as here shall be declared briefly. This Citie by common opinion, is an hundred miles in cirtieon Earth in cuit; for the fireets and channels thereof are very wide. There are Market places exceeding grice, & more large. On the one fide a cleere Lake of fresh water, on the other a great River which enters in then most in- many places, and carries away all the filth of the Citie, and forunneth into that Lake, thence continuing his course to the Ocean : which causeth a good ayre, and commodious passage that beauenly both by land, and by these channels. There may goe both Carts and Barkes to carrie necessa- 10 uen in glorie? ries : and the report is , that there are twelve thousand Bridges great and small , and those anal, of ale. on the chiefe channels are to high that a ship without her Mast may passe wider, and about The fituation. Chariots and Horles.

The Ditch, Ten Market

On the other fide the Cirie is a Ditch, about fortie miles long, which encloseth it on that fide: large and full of water from the River, made by the antient Kings of that Province, both to receiue the ouerflowings of the water, and to fortifie the Citie: the earth which was taken out being layd within as a banke or hill encompassing. There are ten chiefe Market-places (besides infinite others along the streets) which are square, halfe a mile in each square. And from the forepart of them is a principall threet fortie paces wide, running right from one end of the Citie to the other, with many Bridges trauering it. And every foure miles is found fuch a Market- 20 place, two miles, as is faid, in compaffe. There is also one large channell, which runnes against the faid ffreet, behind the Market-places, on the next banke whereof are erected great Storehouses of stone, where the Merchants from India, and other parts lay up their Merchandise, The Markets. at hand, and commodious to the Market-places. In each of these Market-places is a concourse three dayes in the weeke of perfons betwixt force and fiftie thouland, which bring thither all things that can be defired for mans life, of all beafts of game, and fowles; that Lake yeelding fuch commediousnesse to bring them vp, that for a Venetian groat you may have two Geese, and

places.

The high street

The mayne

four Duckes for as much. Then follow the Butcher-rowes of Veale, Beefe, Kid, and Lambe, which the great and rich men eat; for the poore eat vicleane meats without respect. There are all forts of herbs and fruits continually, and amongst the rest buge Peares, weighing ten pounds a piece, white within like paste, and very fragrant: Peaches yellow and white very delicate: Grapes grow not there, but are brought from other places dried very good, and Wine alfo, but not lo esteemed in those parts, that of Rice and Spices contenting them. Every day from the

Ocean is brought up the Riner (which is the space of fine and twentie miles) great quantitie of fish, befides that of the Lake, so much as a man would thinke would never be bought, and yet in a few houres is gone. All those Market-places are encompassed with high houses, and vnderneath are shops of Artificers, and all fort of Merchandises, Spiceries, Iewels, Pearles, and in some onely Rice-wine. Many streets answere one another in the faid Market-places. In some of them are many Baths of cold waters accommodated with attendants of both fexes, a thing which from children they vie themlelues vnto. There are chambers also in the faid Baths with 40 hot waters for strangers which are not accustomed to the cold waters. They wash enery day; neither doe they eat before they have washed.

Trades of di-

In other streets are mercenarie Profitutes in such number, that I dare not report it : and not onely neure the Market-places, where they have their places appointed, but thorow all the Citie they fland very pompoutly with great odours, many feruants, and their houses adorned. There are very practike in making sports, and daliances, and sweetest pleasures rauishing (fooles) forth of themselves. In other streets are the Physicians, the Astrologers, they which teach to reade and write, and infinite other Trades. At each end of euery Market-place is a Palace, where Lords and Governours are appointed by the King to determine difficulties which happen betwixt Merchants or others, as also to looke to the Guards on the Budges, punishing the negli- 50 gent. Along ft the principall Street (whereof wee spake) on both tides are great Palaces with Gardens; and neere them houses of Artificers, and such multitudes of people continually going to and fro, that a man would wonder whence such multitudes should bee prouided of victuals. A Guery Citie. And Mafter Marco learned of an officer of the Cuftome-house in Quinfai, that by reckonings a ppeared the daily expence of Pepper in Quinfai, to be three and fortie Some, and every Soma is two hundred twentie three pounds. Hence may be gheffed the quantitie of Victuals, Fleil, Wine, Spiceries, were there ipent.

The Inhabitants are Idolaters, fpend Paper money, are white and faire complexion, apparelled for the most part in Silke, which growes in all that Territorie abundantly, besides that which is brought from other places. There are twelue principall mysteries, each of which have 60 one thousand shops; and in each shop or standing, are ten men, fifteene, or twentie at worke, and in some fortie under one Master. The rich Masters doe no worke with their hands, but fland civilly adorned, or rather pompoully, especially their wives, with lewels invaluable. And although the antient Kings ordayned, that the child should bee of the fathers Trade; yet the

rich are permitted not to worke, but to keepe shop, and men working in the same Trade. Their Houses are well ordered, and wrought richly, adorned with P. Gures and other stupendious costs. The Nations are peaceable, know not to manage Armes, nor keepe them in their Houses : nor is there strife and debate among st them. They make their workes with great finceritie. They loue in such amitie, that one Street seemes as one House, without jealousies of their Wives, which they hold in great respect, and it would be reputed great disgrace to speake a dishonest word to a married Woman. They entertayne Merchant-strangers kindly, both in their houses, and with best Great neighadvice for their affaires. But they are loth to fee Souldiers and the Guards of the Grand Can, as bourbood

by whom they are bereft of their naturall Lords and Kings.

About the Lake are built faire Buildings and great Palaces of the chiefe men : and Temples of their Idols with Monasteries of many Monkes. In the midst of the Lake are two Ilands, vpon each of which is a Palace with incredible numbers of Roomes; whither they refort vpon occasions of Marriages or other Featis; where Prouisions of Vessels, Naperie, and other things are maintayned in common for such purposes, one hundred sometime accommodated at once in seusrall Roomes. In the Lake alloare Boates and Barges for pleafure, adorned with faire Seates and Pleafure. Tables, and other provisions for Bankets, covered above and plaine, vpon which men itand with Poles to make the Boat goe, the Lake being but shallow. Within they are painted; without, are windowes to open and thut at pleature. Nor can any thing in the World feeme more pleafant then in this Lake to have fuch an object, the Citie fo fully prefenting it felfe to the eye, 20 with so many Temples, Monasteries, Palaces, Gardens with high Trees on the Waters, Barges,

People: for their custome is to worke one part of the day, and to dispense some part to this solace with their Friends, or with Women in the Lake; or elfe by Chariots riding thorow the Citie, which is also another of the Quinfay pleasures. For all the streets are paued with stone; Stone wayes, as alto are all the high Wayes in the Prounce of Margi, onely for the Postes is left on the side. a space vnpaued. The principall street of Quinfay is paued ten paces on each hand, and in the midft it is full of Gravell with passages for the Water, which keepe it alway cleane. On this ftreet are alway innumerable long close Chariots, accommodated with Clothes and Cushions of filke, for fix persons; which solace themselves in the street, or goe to Gardens, and there passe the time in places made by the Gardeners for that purpose, and returne at night in the said

When one is borne, the Father fets downe the print of Time, and with that note goes to the Aftrologer to confult of his future fortunes. Of these Aftrologers are a great number in every Aftrologers. Market place. They will not celebrate a marriage without such consultation. When one dies that is of nove, his Kindred clothe themselues in Canualle, and so both Men and Women accom- Funerals. nanie him to the burning place, playing on Instruments, and finging all the way prayers to their Idols : and being comme to the place, cast into the fire many Papers of Cotton, whereon are painted Slaues, Horses, Camels, Clothes of gold and filke, Monies, which they thinke hee shall really possesse in another World; and make such minstrelsie, in conceit of the ioy wherewith the Idols there receive his Soule, where hee beginneth (they fay) to live anew. In every fireet are 40 Towres of stone, whither in danger of fire they vie to carrie their goods, their timber houses being much subject to such casualtie.

The Can hath ordayned that on the most part of the Bridges, day and night, there stand under Warders, a couert ten Guardians, fine by day and fine by night: and in enery Guard is a Tabernacle of Wood with a great Balon, whereby they know the houres of the day and night, which at every Clocks. houres end the Warders frike to notifie what houre, one, two, &c. beginning at the Sunne rifing, and then againe at the beginning of the night. They walke vp and downe, and if any haue a light or fire after the deputed time, they cause him to answer it before the Justices or Governors aforefaid; or if any walke later. If any be not able to worke, they carrie him to Hospitals, of Hospitals. which are exceeding many founded by the Kings of old, with great revenues, thorow the Citie. When they are well againe, they are compelled to worke. If a fire happen; these from divers 50 places come to quench it, and to carrie the goods into Boats, or the llands, or those Towres : for in the night the Citizens dare not come our, but those who are in danger. The Can alway keepeth here store of his best and faithfullest Souldierie, as being the best and richest place in the World. Within a mile of each other are builded Rampiers of wood, where a found is made to be Larums.

heard further off, for like purpofes. When the Can had reduced all Mangi to his obedience, hee divided it (being before but one Nine Vice-Kingdome) into nine parts, and fet a King ouer each, which there administers inflice. Every roves in Men. yeare they give account to the Cans Officers of the revenues, and other accidents: and every third gi yeere are charged, as all other Officers are. One of these Deputie-Kings is resident at Quinfay, who is Gouernour of aboue one hundred and fortie Cities, all rich and great. Nor may this be a

60 wonder, seeing in Mangi there are twelve thousand Cities, all inhabited with rich and indu- 12000. Cities, strious people. In every of which the Can maintayneth a Garriton, proportionable to the great- and their gerneffe and occasions, one thousand, ten or twentie thousand; not all Tartars, but Catayans; for risons. the Tarrars are Horie-men, and keepe where they may exercise their Horses. Into Cathar he sends

To speake now of the Palace of King Fanfur; his Predecessors caused to enclose a place of ten

Feift.

miles circuit with high walls, and divided it into three parts. That in the midft was entred by one Gate; on the one fide and the other were great and large Galleries, the Roofe full ayned by 10 Pillars painted, and wrought with gold and fine azure : there were smaller at the entrie, and the further the greater; the fairest at the end, the Roofe fairely adorned with gold, and on all the Walls were painted the stories of the former Kings artificially. There every yeere on certaine Idoll holy-dayes, Fanfur kept his Court and feasted his principall Lords, the great Masters, and rich Arrificers of Quinfai, ten thousand at a time vader those Terraces. This dured ten or twelve dayes with incredible magnificence, every guest indevoting to present himselfe in greatest pompe. Behinde this middle-most building was a wall, and going out which divided the Palace: in which was, as it were, a Cloyster with Pillars, fustayning the Porch or Terrace round about the Cloytter: wherein were Chambers for the King and Queene curiously wrought. From this Cloyfler was entrance into a Gallerie fix paces wide, in length extending to the Lake, all course red. On each fide of this Gallerie were ten Courts, answering one another fashioned like Cloy-1000, Women fters, each Court having fiftie Chambers with their Gardens, and in them one thousand Laffes m 1000.cham- abode, which the King kept for his feruice, who fometimes with the Queene, fometimes with

them, went in his Barge on the Lake for folace, or to visit his Idoll Temples.

The other two parts of the Serraile were divided into Groves, Lakes, Gardens planted with Great Parks. Trees; in which were inclosed all forts of beafts, Roes, Bucks, Stags, Hares, Conies: and there the King folaced himselfe with his Damfels in Charets or on Horse-backe, no man entring there. There did he cause These to hunt with his Dogs, wearie whereof they went into those Groues, which answered one another ouer the Lakes, and there leaving their garments came forth naked. and fet themselues a swimming in the Kings presence. Sometimes hee would take his repast in 30 those Groues being serued by those Damsels, without once thinking of Armes, which finees meat cost him the soure sauce yee have heard. All this was told mee by a rich old Merchant of Ouinlas, whiles I was there, one which had beene an inward familiar of King Fanfar, and knew all his life, and had feene that Palace flourithing, into which he would needs bring me. The Viceroy now resides there; and the first Galleries remayne as they were wont, but the Damsells Chambers are ruined; the wall also which encompassed the Woods and Gardens is fallen to the ground, the Beafts and Trees being gone.

Twentie fine miles from Quinfai is the Ocean betwixt the East and North-east, neere to The Sea Gam- which is a Citie, called Gampu, a goodly Port, where arrive the Indian thips of merchandife. Whiles M. Marco was in Quinfai, account being given to the Grand Can of the Revenues, and 40 the number of the Inhabitants, he hath feene that there have beene enrolled one hundred and fixtie Toman of fires, reckoning for a fire, the Familie dwelling in one house: every Toman con-1600000 houl- tayneth ten thousand, which makes sixteene hundred thousand Families : of all which there is holds in Quin- but one Church of Christians, and those Nestorians. Every house-holder is bound to have written ouer his doore, the names of the whole house-hold, Males and Females; also the number of Horfes; the names added or blotted out as the Familie increafeth or decreafeth. And this is obferued in Mangi and Catay.

Those also that keepe Innes, write in a Booke the names of their Guests, and the day and houre of their departure, which Booke they fend daily to the Lords or Magistrates, which relide at the Market-places. In Mangi the poore which are not able to bring vp their children, fell them 50

Reuenucs of Millions of Duckats, and

The Reuenues which accrew to the Can from Quinfai, and the others pertayning thereto, be-Quinfai, & the ing the ninth part of the Kingdome of Mangi, are first, of Salt every yeers eightie Toman of appurtenances gold (euery Toman is eightie thousand Sazzi of gold, and euery Sazzo is more then one Florin of gold) which will amount to fix Millions and foure hundred thousand Duckats. The cause is, that that Province being night he Sea, there are many Lakes where the water in Summer is coagulated into Salt, where with five other Kingdomes of that Province are ferued. There is flore of Sugar growing, which payeth as all other Spices doe, three parts and a third in the hundred. The like of Rice-wine. Also those twelue mysteries (which we said had twelue thousand shops) and the Merchants which bring goods hither, or carrie any hence by Sea, pay the fame price. They 60 which come from farre Countries and Regions, as from the Indies , pay ten per cento. Likewife, all things there breeding, as Beasts, and growing out of the Earth, and Silke, pay tithe to the King. And the computation being made in the prefence of M. Marco, betides Salt before mentioned, yeerely amounts to two hundred and ten Toman, which will bee fixteene millions of gold and eight hun Ired thousand.

CHAP.4. \$8. Concha & Kingdom, Zaitum & famous Port of Mart of Mangi. 101

Rom *Quinfui* one dayes iourney to the South-east are all the way Houses, Villages, faire Gar-dens, plentitull of Victuals, at the end whereof is *Tapinzu*, a faire and great Citie, in the iurifdiction of Quintal. Three dayes thence South-east is Vgain, and two dayes further may your de Ve a that way, all the way finding Caitles, Cities, and cultivated Places, in such Neighbour-hood, that they feeme to Trauellers all one Citie; all in the fame jurifdiction of Quinfai. There are great Canes fifteene paces long and foure palmes thicke. Two dayes journey turther is the Civie Genoui, faire and great, and travelling further South-east are inhabited places, full of People and Gingui, Trades. And in this part of Mangi are no Muttons, but Beenes, Buffals, Goates, and Swine in great plentie. At the end of foure dayes journey is found the Citie Zengtan, built on a Hill in Zengien the midit of a River, which with her parted Armes embraceth and encompatieth it, and then runne one to the South-east, the other to the North-west. They are in the articliction of Quinfai, are Merchants, Idolaters, have store of Game. Three dayes sourney thence, thorow a goodly Countrey exceedingly inhabited, flands Gieza, a great Cirie, the last of Quinfar Kingdome, Gieza. after which you enter into another Kingdome of Mangi, called Concha. (The principall Citie Concha. thereof is Fugin) by the which you travell, fix dayes journey South-cast, thorow Hills and Turis. Dales, alway finding places inhabited and ftore of Game of Bearls and Fowle. They are Idolaters, Merchants, fubiect to the Can. There are fout Lions; there growes Ginger and Galingale plentie, with other forts of Spices, eightie pounds of Ginger for a Venetian groat. There is an herbe, whose truic hath the effect and gives the colour and smell of Saffron, but is not Saltron, v-20 fed in their meates. They voluntarily eate mans flesh, if they die not of sicknesse, as daintier then others. When they goe to Warres, they shaue to the eares and paint their faces with azure; they are all Foot face the Captaine which rideth, and vie Swords and Launces: are very cruell, and when they kill an Enemie, prefently drinke his bloud, and after eate his fleth.

After those fix dayes travell is Quelinfu, a great Citie with three Bridges, each eight paces Quelinfu. broad and aboue one hundred long; the Women faire, delicate; and they have flore of Silke and Cotton, are great Merchants, have store of Ginger and Galingale. I was told, but faw them not. that they have Hennes without feathers, hayrie like Cats, which yet lay Egges and are good to Hayrie Hense eate. Store of Lions make the way dangerous. After three dayes, in a populous Countrey which are Idolaters, and haue flore of Silke, is the Citie Ungnem, where is great plentie of Sugar, ient Primem, thence to Cambalu, which they knew not to make good till they became subject to the Can; in Sugar, 30 whose Court were Babylonians, which taught them to refine it with alles of certayne Trees; they before onely boyling it into a blacke patte. Fifteene miles further is Cangiu, still in the Realme Cantin. of Concha: and here the Can keepeth an Armie in readinesse for guard of the Country. Thorow

this Civie paffeth a River a mile broad, fairely built on both fides, and ftored with Ships of Sugar and other lading. This River difembokes from hence five dayes journey South-east, at Zanum. a Sea Port, from whence the rich Ships of India come to this plealant and fertile Citic, as is the way betwixt, in which are Trees or Shrubs of Camfire.

Zaitum is a famous Port, where many Ships arrive with merchandife, thence differfed tho- Zaitum. row all India. There is fuch store of Pepper, that the quantitie which comes to Alexandria to the West, is little to it, and as it were one of a hundreth : the concourse of Merchants is incredible, it being one of the most commodious Ports of the World, exceeding profitable to the Can, which Custometh ten of the hundreth of all merchandise. They pay so much for hire of ships also that there is not about one halfe of their merchandise remayning entire to themselves, and yet is that moitie very gainfull to them. The Citie is Idolatrous, gruen to pleafire; in it is much embroiderie and Arras worke. The River is great, very wide and fwift, and one arme of it goeth to Quinfai, at the parting of which is Tingui lituate, where Porcelane dishes are made (as I was Tingui, whate told) of a certaine Earth which they cast vp in great Hills, and so let he to all weathers for thir- Portaine is tie or fortie yeeres without flirring : after which refining by time, they make Dishes, paint them made. and then put them in the Furnace. You may there have eight Dithes for one Venetian Groat. In this Kingdome of Concha the Can hath as great Revenue almost as of the Kingdome of Quint fai. In thele two M. Marco was, and in none of the other nine Kingdomes of Mange ( in ail

which is one speech vied, with varietie of Dialect, and one fort of writing) and therefore will speake no more of them; but in the next Booke discourse of India the Greater, the Middle, and the Lesse, in which hee was both in the service of the Can, and also in his rejurne with the Queene to Argon,

200800. Cuftomes, The Ships of India described, the 1le of Zipangu, the Sea Chin, and World of Ilands, the two lauas, Zeilan and other Ilands, with the

Here begins the third book Ships of India,

E will now enter into India and begin with their Ships, which are made of Firre, and the Zapino Tree, with one deck, on which are twentie Cabbins (or leife, as the Ships are in quantitie) each for one Merchant. They have a good Roother, and foure Masts with foure Sailes, and some two Masts, which they erect or take downe at 10 pleature. Some greater Ships have thirteene Colts, or distitions, on the infide made with boards inchased, that it by blow of a Whale or touch on a Rocke water gets in , it can goe no further then that division; which being found is soone mended. They are all double, that is, have two course of boards one within the other, and are well calked with Ocam, and navled with Iron, but not pitched (for they have no Pitch) but anointed with the Oile of a certayne Tree mixed with Lime and Hemp beaten small, faster then Pitch or Lime. The greater ships have three hundred Mariners, others two hundred, one hundred and fittle, as they are in bigneffe, and from five to fix thousand bags of Pepper. And they were wont to be greater then now they are; the Sea having broken into Ports and Ilands, that the defect of water, in tome places, caufeth them to build leffe. They vie also Oares in thefe Ships , foure men to an Oare ; and the greater Ships 20 haue with them two or three ships lese, able to carry a thousand bags of Pepper, having fixtie or more Mariners, which leffe thips ferue fometimes to tow the greater. They have also with them ten finall Boats for fishing and other feruices, fastned to the fides of the greater ships, and let downe when they please to vie them. Also they fleath their ships after a yeares viage, so that then they have three course of boards; yea proceed on in this manner sometimes till there bee fix courses, after which they breake them vp. Hauing speken of the ships, we will speake of India, and first of certayne Ilands.

Zipangm is an lland in the East, one thousand and five hundred miles distant from the shoares

Zijangu.

inta: golden fibles; and make diffe. rence betwist his owne Relations and tho e which he had at the

froms Cap. gaines: and in man things you finall fee Sir T.Ree and lations igree with shele of

of Mangi, very great, the people white and faire, of gentle behaulour, in Religion Idolaters, and haue a King of their owne. They have gold in great store, for f. w Merchants come thither, and 30 De marnis mas, the King permits no exportation of it. And they which have had commerce there tell of the Kings house coursed with Gold, as Churches here with Lead, gilded Windowes, Floores of gold: there are many Pearles. Once; the fame of these riches made Cublai Can to send to conquer it, two Barons, with a great fleet of ships, one named Abbaccatan, the other Vonfancin, which going from Zaitum and Quinfai arrived there; but falling out betwixt themselves, could take but one Citie, and there beheaded all they tooke faue eight persons, which by an inchanted precious stone inclosed in the right arme betwixt the skinne and flesh, could not bee wounded with Iron; whereupon, with woodden Clubs, at the command of the two Barons they were although it be flaine. It hapned one day that a Northerne winde made great danger to the flains there riding, true of much fo that some were lost, some returned further into Sea, and others with the two Leaders and 0- 40 gilding in Edos ther Principals returned home. Out of many broken thips fome escaped by boards, and swimfuil.4.6.1.63. ming on an Iland not inhabited foure miles off Zipangu, and were about thirtie thousand, without provisions of victuals or Armes, against whom the Zip neuanders, after the Tempes was calmed, fet out a fleet of thips and an Armie. There comming on Land to feeke the wracked Tartars without order, gaue occasion to the Tartars to wheele about, the Hand (being high in the midft) and to get vnfeene to their ships, which were left vnmanned with the Streamers displaid: and with them they went to the chiefe Citie of Zipanes, where they were admitted without fulpicion, and found few others but Women. The King of Zipangu belieged them tix moneths, and they having no reliefe yeelded themselves, their lives saved : this happened An. 1264. The Can for this dilorder of his two Commanders, cut off the head of one, and fene the other to a 50 gol vied to Cor. faluage Hand, called Zorza, where hee caufeth Offenders to die, by fewing them, their hands bound, in a new-flayed hide of a B.:ffall, which drying fhrinketh fo as it puts them in a little-ease to a miferable death. The Idols in this and the adiopning Ilands are made with heads of Kine, Swine, Dogs, and other failions more monitrous, as with faces on their shoulders, with foure, ten, or an hundred hands (some, and to these they ascribe most power and doe most reverence) our M gol Re- and fay, that fo they learned of their Progenitors. They fometimes eate the Enemies which they take, with great ioy, and for great dainties.

The Sea in which this Iland standeth, is called the Sea of Con or Chin, that is the Sea against being of Taita Mangi: and in the language of that Iland, Mangi is called Chin: which Sea is fo large, that the Mariners and expert Pilots which frequent it, fay, that there are feuen thouland foure hundred 60 Note for China and fortie Ilands therein, the most part inhabited, and that there growes no Tree which yeelds not a good smell, and that there growes many Spices of divers kindes, especially Lignum Aloes, and Popper blacke and white. The ships of Zatum are a yeere in their voyage, for they goe in The Monfous, Winter and returne in Summer, having Windes of two forts, which keepe their featons. And

this Countrey is farre from India. But I will leave them (for I never was there, nor are they jubicet to the Can) and returne to Zaitum. From hence fayling South-westward one thousand five hundred miles, patting a Gulfe, called Cheinan (which continues two moneths fayling to the Northward, full confining on the South-east of Mangi, and eliewhere with Ama, and Toloman, and other Provinces before named ) within it are infinite Ilands, all in manner inhabited. In them is found flore of Gold, and they trade one with the other. This Gulie feemes ano-

After one thousand and fine hundred miles sayling ouerthwart this Gulfe, is the Countrey Zi-Ziamba. amba, rich and great, hauing a King and Language proper, Idolaters, and paying tribute to the 10 Grand Can, of twentie Elephants, and Lionum Aloes in great quantitie yeerely. Anno 1268. the Can hearing of the riches of this Iland ient this her Sagarn with an Armie, to inuade it. Accombale the King thereof was old, and made this composition of tribute. There are many Woods

of blacke Ebonie. Sayling thence betwirt the South and South-east one thousand & fine hundred miles, is Jana, lana maior, I fuppoted by Mariners, the greatest Hand in the World, about three thousand miles in circuit, Bonno, and which payeth tribute to none, the Can not offering to subject it for the length and laws minor that danger of the voyage. The Merchants of Zaitum and Mangi fetch thence flore of Gold and Spi- which fell is ces. South and South-westward fixe hundred miles from Lana are two Hands, one Sondur, which called lana. is the greater; the other Condur, leffe, both dejolate. Fifty miles South-east from them is a Pro-20 unce of firme land, very rich and great, named Lochae, the prople Idolaters, having a Language and King peculiar. There growes Brafill-wood in great quantitie, flore of Gold, Elephants, wilde beaits, and fowle, a fruit called Berci, as great as Limons, very good. The place is mountainous and fauage, and the King permits not many to come thether, Lift they should know his fecrets. There is store of Porcelane shells for money transp r.e. : o other place ..

Fine hundred miles Southward from Lochae is the lie Pentan, a fainge place, which produ- Lochae, ceth in all the Woods fweet Trees: fixtie miles of the way the Sea is in many places but foure A South Conceth in all the Woods tweet i rees: fixed miles of the way one deal of in many placed and King. tinent, if true, fathoms: after which being layled to the South-eart, thirtie miles further is the Iland and King. P. ntan. dome of Maluar, which hath a peculiar King and Lang rage to it felfe; and here is much Mer- Maluar. chandise of Spices. From Pentan one hundred miles South-east is lana the lefte, encompassing laniminor, in 30 about two thousand miles, and hath in it eight Kingdomes, and as many Languages. They are which are Idolaters, have store of Treature, Spices, Enon. Bratill, and are so farre to the South, that the eight King. Idolaters, have store of Frequere, Spices, Edon: Brain, and are to faire come south, that the domes. The North Starre cannot there be seens. Ma'er Marco was in fixe of those Kingdomes, of which Mahometans by

shall here be spoken, leaving the other two, which he faw : ot. One of tholeeight King lomes is, Felech: here the Id laters by frequent Trade of Saracens first, and after are converted to the Law of Mabinet, in the Cities, the Mountainers being beaffly, eating by conquestion mans flesh and all impure food; and wor hip all day what they first fee in the morning. Next religion have mans fielh and all impure 100d; and with plant day what they drive the individual to that is Bafma, which hash a Language by it felfe; they have without Law, like brafts, and all things, both fometimes lend Hawkes to the Can (w to challengeth all the Iland) for Presents. They have Names, Peowilde Elephants, 2 13 Vnicornes much leffe then Elephants, like the Buffals in haire. Their feet plas, and Ruces; 40 are like Elephants feet. They have one horne in the midit of the fore-head and hurt no bodie that hardly they can now there with the tongue and knee. For on their tongue are certaine long prickles and be defigued, tharpe, and when they burt any, they trample on him, and presse him downe with their knee, and reco ciled and then wound him with their tongue. The head is like to a wilde Boares, which hee carries tol ternames, downwards to the ground; an they have to fland in the mire, and are filthie beafts, and not Voicornes, fuch as they (Vnicornes) are faid to be in our parts, which fuffer themfelues to be taken of Mai- or rather forme dens, but quite contrarie. They have many Apes and of divers falhions. They have Gof- kind of Rhahawkes all blacke as Rivens, great, and good for prey. There are certaine small Apes faced like Piemen now

rie them thorow the World for Pigmers, or little men. 50 Samaca is the next King tome where Matter Marco ftayed fine moneths against his will, for- Some as ced by ill weather. There none of the Starres of Chirles mane are seene. Hee descended once on land with two thouland people, and there for the for that flue moneths, for feare of those brutish man-enters, and traded meane while with them for victuals. They have excellent 11th, Wine of the Date-tree , very medicinall for Pitnicke, Dropie, difrafes of the Spleene; fone See of this white, some red; and Indian Nuts as big as a mans head, the middle whereof is full of a pleasant Wine (12db) liquor, better then Wine: they eat all fi-fh w thout any difference.

Dragonan 3 another of those Kingdomes, claymed by the Can, having a proper King and Lan-Coco nuts. guage. I was told of an abominable cutto re, that when one is ticke, they fend to enquire of Dragoian. the Sorcerers whether hee shall scape ; if the Deu Is answere, No; the kindred fend for some

60 whose office it is, to firingle the first partie, after which they cut him in pieces, and the kindred eathim with great follow, even to the marrow of the bones, For (lay they) if any lubflance of him should remove, wermes would breed thereof, which would want food, and to die, to the great torture of the foule of the deceased. The bones they after take and carrie into fome Caue in the hils, that no beait may touch them. If they take any flranger they also eat him,

men, which they put in Boxes, and preferue with Spices, and fell them to Merchants, who car- made.

# 101 Tayled men. Meale of trees, Zeilan-Rubie, Malabar Pearle-fishing, LIB, L

Fanfur.

fones.

Nocueran.

Antaman.

A glorious

Zeilen,

Lino i.

Lambri is a fifth Kingdome of Iana in which is store of Brasill, of the feeds whereof Master Mirco brought to Venice, and fowed them, but in vayne, the foyle being too cold. Some men (the most) in this Kingdome have tayles more then a palme long, like Dogs, but not hairy; and theie dwell in the Mountaines out of Cities. They have Vnicornes in great plentie, and chafe of beatts and fowles. Fasfur, the fixth Kingdome hath the best Cambre, which is fold weight for weight with

Saga, (see in Sir Gold. In that Province they take meale out of great and long trees, as great as two men can fathome, whence taking the thinne barke and wood about three fingers thicke, the pith within is meale, which they put in water, and furre well, the lightest drosse swimming, and the purest fetling to the bottome; and then the water being cast away, they make thereof paste, of which to He-nic Wood, Mafter Marco brought to Venice, tafting like Barley bread, The wood of this tiee throwne in-

to the water linkes like Iron, whereof they make Lances, but there, for the long would be too heavie to beare : these they sharpen , and burne at the tops, which so prepared will pierce an Armour fooner then if they were made of Iron. About one hundred and fiftie miles from Lambri, fayling Northwards, are two Hands, one

called Nocueran, in which they live like beafts, goe all naked, men and women, and worthip Idols, haue excellent Trees, Cloues, Sanders white and red, Indian Nuts, Brafill, and other Spices; the other, Angaman, stuage as the former, and I was told, they had Dogsheads and teeth.

Sayling hence one thoutand miles to the West, and a little to the North-west, is Zeilan, two thousand and foure hundred miles in circuit, and of old encompassed three thousand and fixe 28 hundred miles, as is seene in the Maps of the Mariners of those parts, but the North winds have made a great part of it Sea. It is the best lland of the World. The King is named Sendern.z. The men and women are Idolaters, goe naked (faue that they couer their prinities with a cloth) haue no Corne, but Rice, and Oyle of Setamino, Milke, Flesh, Wine of trees, abundance of Brasill, the best Rubies in the World , Saphires, Topazes, Amathists, and other Gems. The King is faid to have the best R bie in the World, one palme long, and as big as a mansarme, without !pot, ihining like a fire, not to be bought for money. Cublai Can fent and offered the value of a Citie for it, but the King answered, he would not give it for the treasure of the world, nor part with it, having beene his Ancestours. The men are vnsit for warres, and hire others when they have occation.

## ð. X. Of the firme Land of the Greater India.

Malabar.

Rom Zeilan fayling fixtie miles to the West is the great Province of Malabar, which is not an Iland, but firme Continent, called India the greater, the richest Province in the World. There are in it foure Kings, the chiefe of which is Senderbands, in whose Kingdome they fish for Pearles, to wit, betwixt Malabar and Zeilan, in a Bay 40 where the Sea is not about ten or twelue fathome, in which divers descend, and in bags or nets

See my Pilg.

Bread-dcus-

tyed to their bodies bring up the Oysters in which they are. And because there are great fishes which kill the Fishermen, they hire certaine Bramines to charme them (being skilfull to charme all forts of beafts also and birds) and these have the twentieth, the King the tenth. These Oysters are found all Aprill, and till the midst of May, and not else: in September they finde them in a place about three hundred miles off, and till the midft of October. The King goeth as naked as the rest, saue that he weareth some honorable Ensignes, as a Coller of precious siones about his necke, and a threed of Silke to his breatt with one hundred and four taire Pearles (as Beads) to number his Prayers, of which he must daily say so many to his Idols: like Bracelets he weareth on three places of his armes, and likewise on his legs; and on his fingers also and toes. The prayers which he fayth are Pacauca, pacauca, pacauca, one hundred and foure times. This King hath one thousand women, and if any please his sense he takes her; as one he did from his brother, whence warres had followed, but the mother threatning to cut off her breafts which had nourshed them, if they proceeded, flayed the broyle. He hath many Horiemen for his Guard which alway accompanie him, who when the King dies, throw themselues voluntarily into Most of these the fire wherein he is burned to doe him feruice in the next World. This and his brethren the following cu. Kings of Malabar buy their Horfes from Ormsu, and other parts. The Countrey breeds none, and if it happens fometimes, yet are they there bred ill-fauoured and naught. Condemned per-Linfeboten, and fons will offer themselves to die in honour of such an Idoll, which is performed with twelve in my Pilg.15. Kniues, and twelue wounds in divers parts of the bodie, at every blow, taying, I kill my feife in 60 honour of that Idol, and the last he thrusts in his heart; and then is burned by his kindred. The wines also cast themselves into the fire with their husbands; they being difreputed which re-

They worthing Idols, and most of them Beeues, and would not eat of so holy flesh as Beete,

# CHAP.4. S. 10. Gaui. Dettors Circle, Superstitions of Malabars and Bramines. 105

for all the World. There are some called Gasi, which eate those Beeues which dye alone, may not kill them, and dawbe ouer their houles with Oxe dung. Thefe Gami are of the Posteritie of thole which flue Saint Thomas, and cannot enter the place where his bodie is, if ten men should carrie them. They fit on Carpets on the ground in this Kingdome, they have no Corne but Rice. are no Warriours, kill no beafts, but when they will eat any get the Saracens to doe it, or other people; wash twice a day, morning and evening both men and women, and will not otherwise eate; which they which observe not, are accounted Heretikes. They touch not their meat with the left hand, but wie that hand only to wice, and other vncleane offices. They drinke each in his owne por, and will not touch another mans pot, nor fuffer their owne to touch their mouth. to but hold it ouer and powre it in. To ftrangers which have no pot they powre drinke into his Detreircle. hands to drinke with them. Iuflice is feuerely executed for Crimes, and Creditors may encom-

paffe their Debtors with a Circle, which he dares not paffe till hee hath paid or given fecuritie : if he doth, he is to be put to death : and M. Marco once faw the King himselfe on Horse-backe thus encircled by a Merchant whom he had long delayed and frustrated, neither would the King age out of the Circle which the Merchant had drawne till he had fatisfied him, the people applauding the Kings Inflice. They are very icrupulous in drinking Wine of the Grape, and they which doe it are not ad-

mitted to be Witnesse; a thing denyed also to him which layles by Sea, for they say such men are desperate. They thinke Leachery no sinne. It is very hote, and they have no raine but in 20 June, July, and August, without which refreshing of the Ayre they could not line. They have many Phyliognomers and Sooth-fayers, which observe beafts and Birds, and have an valuckie Bayes put to houre enery day of the weeke, called Choiach, as on Munday betwixt two and three, on Tuef- times, in "s. day, the third houre, on Wednesday the ninth, &c. thorow all the yeare fet downe in their Bookes. They curiously observe Natinities : at thirteene yeares old they put the Boyes to get their owne liuings, which runne vp and down to buy and fell, having a little flocke given them to begin : and in Pearle-feafon they buy a few Pearles, and fell them agains to the Merchants, which cannot well endure the Sunne for little gaine. What they get they bring to their Mothers to dreffe for them, but may not eate at their Fathers coft.

They have Idols Males and Females, to which they offer their Daughters, which when the Their Idols & 30 Monkes (or Priefts) appoint, fing and dance to cheere the Idols; and diuers times fet victuals be- Votaties. fore them faving, that they eat, leaving it the space of a meale, singing the while, and then they fall to eating in deed, after which they returne home. The cause of these solaces is the household quarrels betwixt the God and his Goddeffe, which if they should not thus appeale, they should lose their blessing.

The great men haue Litters of large Canes, which they can fasten artificially to some vpper place, to preuent Tarantulas byting and Fleas, and other Vermine; and for tresh Aire. The place of Saint Thomas his Sepulchre, is a small Citie, smally frequented by Merchants, infinitely by Malabaris by Christians and Saracens for denotion. The Saracens hold him a great Prophet, and call him Ang. this Author mias, that is a holy man. The Christians take of the Earth where he was slaine, which is red, and extended to

40 carry it with them with great reverence, and give it mixed with water to the ficke. Anno 1288. A great Prince having more Rice then roome to lay it in, made bold with Saint Thomas his Church in the roome where Pilgrimes were received, but by a Vision of Saint Thomas in the night was fo terrified that he quickly freed the place. The Inhabitants are black, not fo horne, but often anount themselves with Sessamine Oyle to obtain that beautie; they paint the Deuill white, and their Idols blacke. The Beeue-worshippers carry with them to battell some of the haire of a wild Oxe as a prefernative against dangers : and therefore such haires are deare-

Murphili or Monful is Northward from Malabar fine hundred miles, they are Idolaters. Murkit. They have Diamonds in their hils, which they fearch for after great raines. Well-wards from 50 Saint Thomas is Lac, whence the Bramines have originall, which are the true! Merchants in Lac. the World, and will not lye for any thing, and truftly keepe any thing committed to their cu- Bramines. stodie, or fell, or barter Merchandice for others. They are knowne by a Cotton threed which they weare over the sholder tyed under the arms croiling the brest. They have but one Wite, are great Dinners, of great abstinence and long life: observe their owne shadow in the Sunne when they are to buy, and thence coniecture according to their Discipline. They wie to chew a cer- Betragor Below tayne Herbe which makes their teeth good and helpes digeflion. There are fome Religious of offer called them called Tingui, which goe altogether naked, line aufterely, worthippe the Beene, whereof Temini and

wherewith they anount their bodies in diners places with great reverence. They nor kill nor 60 eate any quicke creature, nor herbe greene, or Root before it is dryed, effeeming all things to have a foule. They vie no Diffes but lay their Viands on dry leaves of Ap; les of Paradize. They doe their Excrements in the Sands, and then differfe it hither and thither, left it should breed Wormes which must prefently dye for want of food. Some of them line to one hundred and firtie yeares, and their bodies after death are burned.

they have a little braffe Image on their forehead, and of the Oxe bones affees make an Ointment. Areva.

Cae'.

Cumari or Cape Comere.

Pirates, ftill

\* Hereby appeares the Vnicorne hee mentions, is no other.

These Relation of others, weight: yea, therefore I haue omitted the greatest pare, I had trouble efor fuch as loue fuch beare-&c. let them feeke elfewhere.

In Zeilan I had forgot to tell of a high Mountayne, which none can afcend but by Iron chaines, as I was told, in the top whereof the Saracens fay is Adams Sepulchre, the Idolater fay it is the body of Sogomonbarchan the first Idol-founder, fonne to a King of that Iland, which gaue himfelfe to a folitarie life on the top of this hill, whence no pleafures nor perswasions could draw him. His Father made an Image after his death to represent him, all of Gold adorned with Gemmes, and commanded all the Handers to worthip it, and hence began Idolatry. Hither they come from farre places in Pilgrimage; and there his haire, teeth, and a dish of his are referred. and folemnly shewed. The Saracens say they are of Adam, which report caused the Can, Anno 1 281. to fend Ambassadors thither, who obtayned two teeth, and a dish, and some of his haires by grant of the King of Zeilan; which he caused to be received by the whole people of Cam- to baln, without the Citie, and brought to his presence with great honour,

Cael is a great Citie gouerned by Astar, one of the foure Brethren, very rich and a good yfer of Merchants : he hath three hundred women. All the people have a cuffome to carrie in their mouthes chawing, a leafe called Tembul, with Spices and Lime. Conlam is fine hundred miles North-west from Malabar, they are Idolaters: there are also Christians and lewes which have speech by themselues. They have Pepper, Brasill, Indico, Lions all blacke, Parrets of divers forts, all white as Snow, others Azure, others Red, and fome very little: Peacockes and Peac hens much differing from ours, and greater, as are their fruits. They are leacherous, and marrie their fifters and kindred. There are many Aftrologers and Physicians. In Cumari are Apes so great that they seeme men : and here we had sight of the North starre. Dely hath a proper King 20 and Language : the people Idolatrous and have flore of Spices. The shippes of Manes come

Malabar is a Kingdome in the West, in which and in Guzzeras are many Pirats, which come to Sea with aboue one hundred Sails, and rob Merchants. They bring with them their wives and children, and there abide all Summer. In Gazzeras is store of Cotton, the Trees fix fathoms (or paces) high, and dure twentie yeeres; the Cotton of the old Trees is not good to fpin, after they are past twelue yeeres old, but for Quiles. There are many " Vnicornes: they have artificiall embroideries. In Canam is store of Frankincense; it is a great Citie, where is great trade for Horles. In Cambaia is much Indico, Buckram, and Cotton. Seruenath is a Kingdome of a pecumontons, 18
the Riseasers: liar language, Idolaters, Merchants, a good people. Chefmacoran is a great Kingdome of Idola-10
for India hith ters and Saracens, the last Province of the greater India towards the Northwest (understand the Author according to his sourney, from China or Mangi by Sea) five hundred miles from which, are faid to be two llands, one of Men, the other of Women, those comming to these, and there staying March, Aprill, and May. The Women keepe their Sonnes till twelue yeeres, and then fend ons which fol- them to their Fathers. It feemes the Ayre admits no other course. They are Christians and have low by relati- their Bishop, subiect to the Bishop of Soccotera; they are good Fishers and haue store of Ambar. Soccotera hath an Archbishop, not subject to the Pope, but to one Zatolia which resides in Bala dach, who chooseth him. The Soccoterans are Inchanters and great Witches, as any in the world (howfoeuer excommunicated therefore by their Prelate) and raile Windes to bring backe fuch thips as have wronged them, in despite of all contrarie working.

A thousand miles thence Southward is Magastar, one of the greatest and richest Iles of the World, three thousand miles in circuit, inhabited by Saracens, gouerned by foure old men. The nough to finde People liue of merchandife, and fell great store of Elephants teeth. The Currents in these parts and translate are of exceeding force. They tell of Fowles, called Ruch, like an Eagle, but of incomparable greatnesse, able to carrie an Elephant (but I am not able to carrie it.) Zenzibar also is said to bee of great length, &c. there are Elephants, Giraffas, sheepe vulike to ours: the Men and Women fay fables, as are very deformed. I have heard Mariners and great Pilots of those parts report, and have seene that of Ruch, in their writings, which have compassed the Sea of India, that there are in it twelve thousand and seuen hundred Hands, inhabited or desart. In Indiamaior, which is from Malabar to Chefmacoran are thirteene Kingdomes. India minor is from Ziambi to Murfili, in which are eight 50 12700, Ilands, Kingdomes, besides Ilands many. The second or middle India, is called Abascia. The chiese King is a Christian; there are fix other Kings, three Christians, and three Saracens, subject to media and mi- him : there are also lewes. Saint Thomas having preached in Nubia, came to Abascia, and there did the like, and after to Malabar. They are great Warriors, alway in Armes against the Sol-Abafria, or In dan of Adem, and the people of Nubia. I heard that An. 1288. the great Abiffine would have visited Ierusalem, but being distinaded by reason of Saracen Kingdomes in the way, he sent a Bishop of holy life to doe his devotions, who in his returne was taken by the Soldan of Adem , and circumcifed by force : whereupon the Abiffine rayled a power, discomfitted the Soldan with two other Mahumetan Kings, tooke and spoyled Adem. Abascia is rich in gold. Escret is subject to Frankincense. Adem fortie miles diffant South-east; where is store of white Frankincense very good, which 60 drops from small Trees by incision of the barke; a rich merchandise, &c. Some in that Countrey for want of Corne make Bisket of Fish, whereof they have great plentie. They also feede their bealts with fifthes. They take them in March, April, and May, &c.

Having spoken of the Provinces on the Coast, I will now returne to some Provinces more to

# CHAP.4. \$.10. Northern Tartars, Furs. Region of Darkneffe, Polo and Haiton, 107

the North, where many Tartars dwell, which have a King called Candu, of the Race of Cingis Caidu and his Can, but subject to none. These observe the customes of their old Progenitors, dwell not in Ci- Northerne ties, Castles, or Fortreffes, but abide with their King in the Fields, Playnes, Valleyes, and Fo- Tartars. reits, and are eltermed true Tartars. They have no fort of Corne, but live of Flesh and Milke in great peace. They have store of Horses, Kine, Sheepe, and other beasts. There are found great white Beares, twentie palmes long, black Foxes very great, wilde Affes, and little beafts called Rondes which beare the Sable Furres, and Vari arcolini, and those which are called Pharaos rats. which the Tarrars are cunning to take, The great Lakes which are frozen except in a few moneths of the yeare, cause that the Summer is scarse to bee trauelled for myre. And therefore the 10 Merchants to buy their Furres, for fourteene dayes journey thorow the Defart, haue let vp for each day a house of Wood, where they abide and barter : and in Winter they vie Sleds without Tragele. wheeles, and plaine in the bottome, riling with a femi-circle at the top or end, drawne eafily on the Ice by bealts like great Dogs \* fix yoked by couples, the Sledman only with his Merchant \* Perhaps and Furres fitting therein.

In the end of the Region of these Tartars, is a Countrey reaching to the furthest North, called Region of Darknesse, because the most part of the Winter moneths the Sunne appeares not, and the Ayre is Darknesse. thicke and darkish, as betimes in the morning with vs. The men there are pale and great, haue no Prince; and line like beafts. The Tartars oft rob them of their Cattell in those darke moneths, and left they should lofe their way, they ride on Mares which have Colts sucking, which they 20 leave with a Guard at the entrance of that Countrey, where the Light beginneth to faile, and when they have taken their prey give reynes to the Mares, which haften to their Colts. In their lone continued day of Summer they take many the fineit Furres (one occasion of the Tartars going to rob them) of which I have heard some are brought into Russia. Russia is a great Countrey Russia. in that Northerne Darkneffe : the people are Greeke Christians, the Men and Women faire . and pay Tribute to the King of the Tartars of the West, on whom they border on the East. There is itore of Furres, Waxe, and Minerals of filuer. It reacheth, as I was told, to the Ocean Sea; in which are flore of Gerialcons and Falcons.

To the Reader. N this admirable Voyage of Polo, I confesse, Inopem me copia fecit; the Translation which I had Lof Mafter Hakluyes from the corrupted Latine, being leffe then nothing (nimirum damno auctus fui) did me no steed but lose, whiles I would compere it with the Latine, and thought to amend it by

the Italian; and was forced at last to reiest both Latine and English, and after much vexation

to present thee this , as it is , out of Ramulio. I have not given thee word for word as an exast

Translator, but the sonse in all things substantiall, with longer Relations then I have admitted in others. because many which have read M. Paulus, nener saw M. Polo, nor know the worth of the worthiest Voyage, that perhaps any one man hath written; a man credible in that which hee faw himselfe, in some things received by Relation, rather telling what he heard, then that which I dare believe, and hecially toward the end of his third Bocke, which I have therefore more abridged. Pitie it is that time bath fo gnawne and eaten some-where, and some-where denoured otterly many his names and Trasts, which new Lords and new ( Lawes, the Saracenicall Conquests, especially ener since his time ) in those parts have caused. And farre caster by the Cans greatnesse then, and his employments under him, might bee know the World in those times; then in the combustions long since begunne and still continued in diner sisted and quarrelling States is possible : the Saracens quarrelling with Ethnikes, Christians, and other Saracens; the lartars disided and sub-dissided into so many quarressome Serpentine heads, whereby that busenesse is broken in pieces; the Chinois and others prohibiting ingresse of strangers, egresse of their owns, that I mention not Ethnike and Moorilh Dinisions amongst themselves. In the same time with Polo, 50 lined this following Armenian, of whom Ramuico relateth, and this Difcourfe intimateth that the Ho- See Ton. 1.18. ly Land being quite loft, Pope Clement the Fift mending to reconer it, was given to understand of c.4.5.3. belpes which might be gotten from the Tartars, and withall of this Haiton or Antonie a Kinsman of the King of Armenia, then living a Monke or Frier of the Order Premonstratentis in Episcopia in Cyprus; who in his young time had beene exercised in the Warres betwirt the Tartars and Egyptian Soldans, by whom he might reseive the best Intelligence of Tartarian Assares. He therefore (as hee first remoued the Court from Rome to France, where it abode senentie yeares) cansed the said Hayton to be brought from Cyprus to France with all his Memorials and Writings of that Subject, and being comme to Poitiers, caused one Nicolo di Falcon a Frenchman to write in French, which the other dectated in Armenian, which was done Anno 1307. A Copie of this Storie written aboue two bundred yeares since 60 came to Ramusines hand (whereto I here, that I say not you, are beholden) whence hee tooke that which concerned the Tarcars, omitting the rest, or remitting rather his Reader to M. Polo. Betwixt which two some difference may seeme, but so little, that Wisemen need no advertisement thereof.

One thing is remarkable, that the Author and the next, who in many Geographicall Notes agrees with bim, divide Asia into two parts, one called profound or deepe, the other the greater, and divided in the

Haiten and Mandquils agree in many

105

eum Nat. Cafaub.
\* Diony, Alex. repreyers, vid. & Euflach. com.

midft by the Caspian Sea, and Caucasus, which our Armenian cals Cocas, which Alexander nation not, nor was ener well knowne to the Ancients, who called all beyond that Hill Scythia, as wee now call the most of it by a generall name Tartaria. Strabo \* bath made like dissistant of Asia into the inner and The reason of veter, Taurus being the Vmpire; which Hill (with diners Appellations) beginning at Pamphylia runnes out methodia Eastwards thorow the midst of Asia to the Indies , that part to the North beeing called Asia within thus ordering (Tautus) and that to the South Alia without. Some ancient Geographers as Dionyfius mentions. our Prigrimes, extended Europe to the Cafpian Sea, which most of the Ancients thought to concurre with the Ocean as the Mediterranean, Arabian, and Perfian doe. Dionyfius bie Verfes are worth observation.

> Miara " pulli miene Arine apoe munelifanar. A'pfaueror jains Haupunides axperai Is day, &C.

They called it Taurss, as there followes of the Bull-forme, &c.

Ourexa Taurocares rexu cunarlus alden

Hereof we are the more curious, to give to the more curious a reason of our method in this Worke. who in our former Tome have first encompassed the sheares of Asia from the West to the East: and then in the In-land parts have in the eight and ninth Bookes principally (as Voyages game leane) viewed Alia without Taurus, and to the South of the Caspian: but this Profound or inner, more unknowne part we Gurnay here, where we handle the Voyages and Discourries of those parts of the World, which the Ancients 20 bnew very little or not at all. And indeed, how little was Mangi, Cataio, or Tartaria knowne, till the Tartars obtruded upon the World, a terrible knowledge of themselues, in manner as Rubruquius and the former Friers, with the fe Gentlemen, Polo and Haiton describe? Yea, how were they by ignorance of following times buried againe, till Portugall, English, and other moderne Voyages bane renined them. as it were in a resurrection? and that often in new names, as if they had suffered that party ixems, so often here rehear sed, and so much credited in many Religions of those Easterne Asians, whence st comes that ther are bardly knowne to be the fame. The Reader must pardon me (or go to the Author himselfe if I have here omitted some pieces of Haiton, which you have had in Polo and others before, shecially not fo pertinent to our present Tartarian subject. The figures note the Chapters, after the Latine, from which Ramusios Dinision is much divided, and we therefore from both.

CHAP. V.

The Historie of AYTON, or ANTHONIE the Armenian. of Asia, and specially touching the

ð. I.

of the Kingdome of Cathay, and discrepther Provinces of Asia, and of the first habitation of the Tartars: and of Canglys, or Cingls his beginnings.

The largenesse He Kingdome of Cathan, is the greatest that is to be found in the World, and is reof the Kingdome of Cathay.

Their arro-

plenished with people and infinite riches; beeing situated on the shoare of the Ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Illands, that their number on a situation of the Ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Illands, that their number on the ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Illands, that their number of the Ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Illands, that their number of the Ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Illands, that their number of the Ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Illands, that their number of the Ocean Sea; In the World, and is re-Ocean Sea ; In the which there are fo many Ilands, that their number can no to wayes be knowne. For neuer was there any man that could fay he had feene all those Ilands; But those of them which have beene frequented, are found to abound with innumerable wealth and treasures; and that which is there most e-

Oile of oliues, freemed, and deerest fould, is Oyle of Oliues, which the Kings and Commanders there cause to be kept with great diligence, as a Souereigne Medicinable thing; And moreouer, in the Kingdome of Carbay, are many maruellous and monstrous things, which I forbeare to mention. The Inhabitants of those parts are exceeding wife and subtill, replenished with all kind of skill and cunning, infomuch, that they disdaine the endeauours of all other Nations, in all kind of Arts, and Sciences : faving, that they only fee with two Eyes, the Latines but with one eye, and that all other Nations are blind. And albeit they are exceeding fharpe-lighted in the exercise of all 60 bodily workes and labours; yet is there not among it them any knowledge of ipirituali things; the men of that Countrey are not bold, or couragious, but more fearefull of death then befitteth fuch as beare Armes; yet are they very ingenious, and have oftner had victorie of their enemies by Sea, then by Land: the money vied in those parts, is of square precess of Paper, signed with

# CHAP.S. S. I. Tarfa, Sym, Turquestan, Corasmians; Cumania extremes, 100

the Kings figne, according to which figne or marke; the pieces are of greater or smaller value; and if they begin by age to be wasted, or worne out, hee that bringeth them to the Kings Court shall have new for them; of Gold and other Metals, they make Vessels, and other ornaments. Of this Kingdome of Cathay it is faid, that it is in the beginning of the World, because the head See Sir Isha thereof is in the East, and there is not knowne any other Nation to inhabit more Easterly there. Mandeuils traabouts: on the West it confineth on the Kingdome of Tarfa, on the North with the Desert of wels. Belgian. And on the South-fide are the Hands of the Ocean, afore mentioned.

2. In the Kingdom of Tarfa are three Prounces, whose Rulers are also called Kings, the men of Of the Kingthat Countrie are called logour, they have alwayes worshipped Idols, and yet doe except the dome of Tala. Io ten Kindreds of those Kings, who by the guiding of a Starre came to worthin the Natiuitie in Bethleem Inda. And there are yet found many great and noble among the Tartarians of that Race, which hold firmely the Faith of Christ. But the rest which are Liolaters in those parts, are of no estimation in matter of Armes, yet are they of a piercing wit for the learning of all Arrs. Wit and incliand Sciences. They have peculiar Letters or Characters of their owne. And almost all the Inhabitants of those parts abitayne from eating of flesh and drinking of Wine, neither would they by any meanes bee brought to kill ought that hath life. Their Cities are very pleasant and they Rive. haue great Temples in which they worship their Idols. Corne groweth there abundantly, and all good kind of Graine. But they are without Wine, and hold it a finne to drinke it, as doe alto the Agarens. This Kingdome of Tarfa on the East-fide confineth with the Kingdome of Ca-20 shar, as atoreiaid; on the West it bordereth on the Kingdome of Turquestan, on the North on 2 certayne Delert, and on the South-fide it adjoyneth to a very rich Prounce called Sym, which is Sym. fituate betweene the Kingdome of India and Cathaia, and it that Province are found Diamonds. 3. The Kingdome of Turquestan on the East fide is confined with the Kingdome of Tarfa, on the West side with the Kingdome of the Persians, on the North side with the Kingdome of the Of the King-

Corasmians, and on the South it reacheth out to the Defart of India. In this Kingdome are but dome of Tare few good Cities, but there are large Plaines and good feeding for their flockes, therefore the In- The Inhabi. habitants for the most part are Shepherds, dwelling in Tents, and houses that may easily beer emoued from place to place. The greatest Citie of that Kingdome is called Ocerra, there grow. herds, eth but little Barley or Wheate : no Wine at all. Their Drinke is Curfin, and other made Drinks, Ocera. 30 and Milke, they eate Rice and Millet, and flesh, and are called Twrtes. And almost all of them Curfie. are of the Sect of wicked Mahomet, yet there are some amongst them of no Faith nor Religion, Timbers They have no peculiar Characters of their owne, but doe vie the Arabike Letters in their Cities or Campes.

4. The Kingdome of the Corasmians, is well stored with good Cities and Townes, and there

are many Inhabitants, because the Land is fruitfull and pleasant, and wheate, and other graine, Of the Kingare many Inhabitants, becaule the Land is fruitfull and pleasant, and where, and other grains, is there in great quantitie; but they have little Wine. This Kingdome is confined with a dome of the is there in great quantitie; but they have length on the West-ties it reachest our Confinent. Wildernesse of one hundred dayes Journey, in length on the West-side, it reacheth out to the Caspian Sea. On the North it bordereth on the Kingdome of Camania, and on the South it hath the Kingdome of Turquestan. The chiefe Citie of that Kingdome is called 40 Corasme, and the people are called Corasmians, being Pagans, which have neither Learning, nor Religion. But those wich are called Soldini, are very fierce in Armes, and have their Language Coraline. and Letters, and Ceremonies of the Greekes, and make the bodie of Christ after the Greeke Soldini. manner, and are obedient to the Patriarkes of Antioch.

c. The Kingdome of Cumunia is very great : yet by reason of the diftemperature of the Ayre, Of the Kingit is ill inhabited : for in the Winter feafon, the cold is fo great in fome places, that neither dome of Caman nor beaft can any way live therein. And againe in some places, the heate of Summer manie.

This extramiis fo great, that none can endure the fame, nor the flyes which abound there. This King- tie comes by dome of Cumania, is in a manner all plaine, and there are no Trees, nor any Wood to bee found the long pretherein, vnleffe it be about some Cities, which have certayne Orchards. The people inhabit in sence in Sum-50 Fields, and in Tents burning the dung of beafts in fleed of Wood: This Kingdome of Compania mer, and about on the East-side, hath the Kingdome of Corasmia, and a certayne Desert or Wildernesse; on the West-side is the great Sea called Parisat Furnisms, and the Sea of Targin and the

West-fide is the great Sea called Pontus Euxinus, and the Sea of Tanais: on the North-fide it Winter, confineth on the Kingdome of Cassia, and on the South-fide, it reacheth out to a certayne great River called Esil, which every yeare is frozen, and sometimes remayneth all the yeare so hardly frozen, that men and beafts goe thereon as on Land, on the bankes of that River, are found certayne imall Trees. But beyond and on the other fide of that River, are divers and fundry Nations inhabiting, which are not accounted of the Kingdome of Camania, and yet are obedient to the King thereof : And fome there are which inhabit about the Mountayne Cocas, Cocas or Cauwhich is exceeding great and high. The Afteres and other ravenous Birds , breeding safes.

60 in that Mountayne, are all white, and that Mountayne is feated betweene two Seas; for on the Welt is the great Enxino Sea, and the Caspian Sea on the East, which Caspian Sea hath no entrance into the Ocean, but is as a Lake which only for his greatnesse hath the name of a Sea, for it is the greateit Lake that is to bee found in the World , reaching from the faid See after Mountayne Caucajus, euen to the head of the Kingdome of Perfis, and divideth all Affainto Chapter 47.

great, the Saracens and Pa-Fables, neuer heard of in here of Orlando, Artbur, 0gerus, and others. See in Po'o. Pérsia and Media are o. mitted.

two parts, whereof that which is towards the East is called Asia profunda, and that which is on the West is called Asia maior, or the greater Asia, and many good tishes are in that Lake. 6. The Kingdome of India is very long, and fituated on the Ocean Sea, which in those parts

is called the Indian Sea. This Kingdome beginneth from the Confines of Persia, and extendeth Note that of by East vinto a Prouince called Balaris, in which are found the precious stones which wee call Alexander the Balayes. On the North-fide is that long and great Defart of India, where the Emperour Alexander the ander is faid to have found so many Serpents, and such diversitie of Bealts inhabiting. In that Kingdome it is that Saint Thomas preached the Faith of Christ, and converted many people and gass naue many people and ny and strange Prouinces. But because they are so farre distant and remote from other places and parts of Christendome, the Christian Religion is there much diminished, for there as but one Citie that is in- to habited with Christians, the rest having wholy forfaken the profession of Christianitie. On these parts; as the South-fide of this Kingdome is a very long reach of the Ocean, in the which are many Hands, but their Inhabitans be all blacke, going altogether naked for heat, and worthip Idols like fooles. In those Hands are found precious itones, Pearles, and Gold, and fundry Spices, and medicinable drugs helpfull vnto men. There is also a certayne Iland called Celan or Zeilan, knowne in ancient time by the name of Taprobana, in which are found Rubies and Saphires, and the King of that Iland hath the greatest and best Rubie that is any where to be found, which when hee is to be crowned King, he holdeth in his hand riding round about the Citie, and is afterwards obeyed 9. In the Land of Armenia there are foure Kingdomes: yet have they alwayes beene fub- 20

Armenia.

iect to one King only. The length of the Kingdome of Armenia beginneth at the Confines of Persia, and reacheth out West-ward even to the Kingdome of Turkie. The breadth of Armenia Miralis, or the begins at the Citie Miralis, called the Iron Gate, and extendeth even to the Kingdome of Me-Iron gate, now dia. In Armenia there are many great and very rich Cities, of which Tauris is the chiefe: they haue both Characters of their owne, called the Armenian Letters , and others also which they call Haloen. In Armenia is the highest Hill or Mountayne that is in the World, which is commonly called Arath, or Ararat, and on the top of that Mountayne, the Arke of Noab rested first after the Deluge. And albeit for the abundance of Snow which is alwayes on that Mountayne, both Winter and Summer none is able to goe vp the fame, yet is there alwayes feene in the top thereof a certaine blacke thing, which men affirme to be the Arke.

Georgia.

10. The Kingdome of Georgia on the East-fide, beginneth from a certayne great Mountayne, called Albaris, or Albsor. There doe inhabit many Nations, and thereof that Province is called Alania, or Albania, from whence the Kingdome of Georgia reacheth West-ward on the Northfide to some Lands of the Kingdome of Turkee; the whole length of this Kingdome of Georgia lying voon the great Sea, and on the South-fide it is confined with Armenia the Great. This Kingdome of Georgie is divided into two Kingdomes, one of which is called by the name of Georgia, and the other knowne by the name of Albean, or Albeafe : and they have beene alwaies gouerned by two feuerall Kings. The one of which is subject to the Emperour of Afia; namely, the King of Georgia, But the Kingdome of Albem being mightie in people, and ftrongly fituated and fortified, could never yet either by the Emperours of Afia, or by the Tartarians bet 40 fubdued. In this Kingdome of Georgia is a maruellous strange Wonder or Miracle, which I durst not have reported or beleeved, if I had not feene it with my eyes. But because I have personally beene there, and beene made the eye witnesse thereof, I say, that in those parts there is a Province or Countrey called Hamsem, being in circuit about three dayes iourney, whose whole extent is all couered ouer with such thicke and palpable darknesse, that none can see any thing therein, neither doe any dare to goe into that Land, because they know not the way out agains. Those that inhabit neere about it, affirme, that they have often heard the found of mens voices crying, of Cockes crowing, and the neighing of Horses in the Wood, and by the course of a Riuer that runneth out from that place, there appeare certaine fignes that there are people inhabiting therein.

11. The Kingdome of the Chaldeans beginneth on the East-fide from the Mountaynes of Media, and reacheth out vnto Ninine. The Inhabitants of Chaldea are called Nestorians, because they are followers of the Errour of Nestorius, and they have their peculiar Chaldess Characters, others there are amongst them that vie the Arabian Letters, and are of the Sectof the feducer Mahomet. 12. The Kingdome of Mesopotamia on the East-side, beginneth at the great Citie Mosel,

(called of the Ancients Seleucia) which is feated neere the River Tigris, and firetcheth out vnto the River Emphrates, and the Citie of Robais (or Edessa.) 13. When the Turkes had inuaded the Kingdome of Turkie, and possessed themselves thereof, they could not preuayle against the Citie of Trapezond, nor the Territorie thereof, because 60 of their firong Castles and other Fortifications, by reason whereof it remayned full under the government of the Emperour of Constantinople, who vied yearely to fend thither a Ruler or Gouernour as his Deputie there, vntill at length one of them rebelling against him, made himself:

King in such fort that he which now holdeth that Land, is called Emperour of Trapezond. The

CH AP.5. S. I. Tartarians: beginnings of Changius their Romulus & Numa, 111

Inhabitants are Greekes. In the Kingdome of Turkie are foure Nations inhabiting; namely, the Nations of Greekes, Armenians, and Iacobines, (or Iacobines, which are Christians, litting on merchandise Turkic, and manuring the Earth:) and the Turker, which are Suracens, that have invaded that Land, and gotten the Government from the Greeks. Some of them live on merchandife, and labouring of the ground inhabiting in Cities and Towness others keeping in the Woods and Fields, both

Winter and Summer being Shepherds, and very good Bow-men. 14. Cilicia at this day is called Armenia, by reason that after the enemies of the Christian faith cilicia, how is

had gotten that Countrey, and held it a long time from the Greekes, the Armenians endeauoured came to bee themselves so well that they wome it agains from the Pagans. In so much that the King of Ar alled Armenia In the Kingdome of Syria are divers Cap. 15. Of the Nations inhabiting, namely, Greekes, Armenians, lacobites, Nestorians, and Saracens. There are Saracen Em-

also other Christian Nations, namely the Sprians and Maronines (or Maronites.) 16. The Country in which the Tartarians first inhabited, lieth beyond the great Mountaine Of the Coun-Beizian, mentioned in the Histories of & Alexander, And therethey lived like brutish People rey where the without learning or Religion, feeding herds of Beatts, and going from place to place to feeke pa- Tartariani for-

to al. Of their in ancient time there were many Nations which by a common name were called, ted \* Mools, who vpon their encrease were after divided into seven principall forts esteemed more as the Sersions noble then the reft. The first of these Nations was called Tatar, from the name of that Pro- and Alins and Alians unnce wherein they first inhabited: The second, was named Tangar: The third, Canat: The fourth, have of Alexan-Talair: The firth, Sonich: The fixth, Monghi: And the feuenth, Tebeth. And whiles thefe fe- der whom they uen Nations lived under the subjection of their Neighbours, as is above faid, it happened that a cil Biornis &cc. poore old man, being a Smith, faw a Vision in his fleepe; namely, a man armed all in white Armour, and mounted on a white Horse, which calling him by his name, laid votto him, Changins, charging or It is the will and pleasure of the immertall God , that then be Lord and Ruler over these Nations of the Cingis. Mogli, and that by thee they bee delinered from the Dominion of their Neighbours; under which they have long remayned: and they shall rule oner their Neighbours, and receive Tribute of them to whom. they formerly paid Tribute. Changing hearing this Word of God, was replenished with exceeding 10y, and made publikely knowne the Vition which he had feene. But the Rulers and Comman-

30 ders would not give credite to the Vision , but rather despised and mocked the old man. But the night following, they themselves saw the same Vision of the Horse-man armed in white, who commanded them from the Immortall God, that they should be obedient to Changing, and cause all to obey his command. Whereupon, all the said Chieftaines and Gouernours of the seuen Mations of the Tartarians, calling the people together made them to yeeld obedience and reuerence to Changins. Then atterwards placing a Chaire for him in the midft of them, and spreading a blacke Felt Carpet on the ground, they fet him thereon, and then the feuen chiefe Rulers lifting him vp, did place him in the Throne, or Chaire of State, with great triumph and acclamation, calling him Can their first Emperour, and doing him foleinne reuerence, with bow-

ing their knees as to their Lord and Gouernour. Now, at this folemnitie of the Tartarians, and at the simplicitie of their blacke Cloth, vied in the creating of their first Emperour, none ought much to wonder, either because haply they were not then furnished with any fairer ( loth of S ate, or elle were so rude and ignorant at that time, that they knew no better or fairer fashion of State. But at this men might rather maruell, See fane as that the Tartarians having fince that, co. quered many Kingdomes, and gotten infinite riches, (and namely, commanding over the Dominions and wealth of Ales, even to the wonfines of Hungaria) they will not yet leave their ancient and accultomed manner; but at the confirmation of every Emperour observe the like order in every point, whereof I can well be a witnesse, having beene personally profent at the cremonic vied at the Confirmation of one of their Em- Hailon, an eyeperours. But to returne to our purpole, Changin Can being thus made Emperour by common wineeffe of the 50 confent of all the Tartarius, determined ere he attempted any thing, to make triall, whether thus, they would all performe faithfull obedience to him, to which end he made certaine Ordinances changing ordal-

to be obterued of all.

The first was, That all the Tartarians hould beleene and obey the Immortail God, by whose will hee was promoted to the Imper all Dignitie: which Commandement they observed and from thenceforth vitill this day have ever continued to call on the Immortall God in all their occasions. Secondly, Hee willed that all the men that were able to beare Armes should be numbred, and that ouer every ten should be one appointed, and over every ten thousand a great Commander, and that also ouer every thousand should bee a Colonell, or Conducter of a Regiment, and he called an Armie of ten thousand Souldiers, a Regiment He commanded also the seuen Rulers over the Nations of the Tartarians, that they thould forthwith difinish themselves of their 50 former diginties: which they relinquished immediativ. But another of his Ordinances was very firange and admirable, in which he commanded those seuen chiefe Rulers to bring every of them his eldelt fonne, and each with his owne hand to cut off his head. Which Commandement appearing to bee most crueil and unjust, yet was there none that would any way gainly

flure. And being not exercised in armes they were despised of other Nations, and payed tribute merly inhabi-

#### Changius bie Owle; bis fecond Vision; and worshipping-miracle. LIB. I. 112

He e capeth

The Allocoo

benoured.

it, because they knew him to be set ouer them by Gods providence, and therefore they present. ly fulfilled it. When Changin Can had feene that they were readie to obey him, euen wnto death, he appointed them all a certaine day in which they should be readie to fight. And then they rode Prenaylethin against them which bordered next vnto them, and fabdued them. Whereby, they which had hight iga mit beene Lords ouer them, were brought into fubication under them. After, hee inuaded divers his borderers. other Nations, which hee conquered with great celeritie: For hee did all his exploits with a imall troupe of men, and was successefull in his enterprises.

Yet, one day it tell out, that being accompanied with a small number he was encountred with a great troupe of his Enemies, in fuch fort, that the fight being begun betweene them, whiles he valuantly defended himselfe, his Horse was flaine under him. And the Tartarians feeing their to Lord ouerthrowne, betooke themselves to flight; so that the Enemies being all busied in purfaing of those that fled, and having no knowledge of the Emperour, whom they had vnhorfed and ouerthrowne; he runne and hid himselfe among certaine shrubs for safety of his life. Whither when the Enemies were returned, with purpose to spoile the dead Carkasses, and to seeke out such as were hidden, it happened that an Owle o came and fate vpon those little trees or fhrubs which he had chosen for his couert, which when they perceived, they sought no further in that place, supposing that the faid Bird would not have fate there, if any man had beene hidden Booke chap. 8, vnderneath. By which meanes in the dead time of the night he found meanes to efcape thence. reciter a like and came by discress vofted ented wayer with his owne people, and diffeourfed who them what mistered 4. had befallen him. For which the Tarrarians rendred thanker with the Immortall God. And 28 that Bird which under God was held to be the meanes of his escape, hath euer since beene held in fuch reuerence among them, that happie is he that can get but a Feather of an Owle, which un corto recello they weare in their heads with great reverence, Which I thought fit to fet downe in this Booke. chimaso Alac- that the cause might be knowne for which the Tartarians vie commonly to weare Feathers on their heads.

But their Emperour Changius Can having given great thankes to God: for his deliverance out of fo great a danger gathered his Armie together, and fiercely affaulted his former Enemies a-A new Victory. gaine and brought them all under subjection, and so became Emperor of all the Countries lying on that fide of the Mountaine Belgian, and poss-fied them quietly without disturbance, vntill it The Authour happened him to have another Vision as shall after be declared. Neither is it any marvell that exceleth him- in these Histories I have not set downe the certaine time, because albeit I have sought of many to know the certaintie thereof, yet could I neuer finde any to instruct me fully therein: the reafon thereof-I take to be, because the Tantarians at the first were ignorant of all Learning, and knew no letters, and so passed ouer the times and memorable accidents without any Record or Register thereof kept, whereby they came afterwards to be forgotten.

#### ð. I I.

of CHANGIVS Can his fecond Vision and Conquests. Of HOCCOTA and his three Sonnes expeditions; of GINO Can; of MANGY Can, who was visited by the King of Armenia, and baptised , of the expedition of his Brother HALOON.

The fecond Iofe, bus mentions a vision Ot Alexander one like the Icw: lb high Priest impoli gorhin his Expedition. The Sea alfo The fatallex-

pedicien.

Fter that Changiss Can had Libdued all the Kingdomes and Countries on that fide of the Mountaine Belgian, he faw another Vition in the night. For the felfe-fame Horfman armed in white Armour appeared vnto him againe, faying, Changius Can, # is the pleasure of the Immortall God, that them passe over the Mountaine Beigian, and direct thy com fe Westwards, where thou shalt possesse Kingdomes and Countries, and subdue many Nations. And that thou mayeit be affured that the words which I feake unto thee are from the Immortall God: 50 Arise and goe with thy people to the Mountaine Belgian, to that part thereof which syneth to the Sea, there thou stalt alight from thy Horse, and kneeling downe nine times towards the East; thou shalt worship nine times the immortall God, and be which is Almightic will show thee the way by which thou majest easily passe over the Mountaine. At this Vision Changing reloyced exceedingly, and arose . without farther doubt or delay : because the trueth which he had found in the first Vision gaue gaue him way, him affurance of the other: in such fort that he forthwith speedily affembled his people, and commanded them to follow him with their wives and children, and all that they had. And fo they went forwards untill they came to the place where the great and deepe Sea did beate against the Mountaine, so that there appeared no way nor passage for them.

There presently Changing Can as had beene commanded him by God, alighted from his Horse, 60 and all his followers in like manner, worthipping nine times on their bended knees towards the East, they befreeched the Almightie and everliving God, that of his infinite mercy and grace he would vouchfafe to thew them the way and passage thence where they continued in prayer all that night. And in the morning arifing, they faw that the Sea wes departed from the Moun-

## CHAP.S. S.2. Embleme of Concord. Tartarian Nine, Hoccotas three fons acts. 112

taine, and had left them a way of nine feet in bredth to passe. Wherear they being all astonithed exceedingly, and rendring thankes to the Immortall God most denoutly, they passed on lous way. the way which they faw before them, and directed their steps towards the West. But as the Histories of the Tartarians doe mention, after they had passed ouer those Mountaines, the The dured some hunger and thirst for certaine dayes, because the land was Defart, and the waters were bitter and falt, which they could not by any meanes drinke, vittill at length they came where they had all necessaries aboundantly. In which place they abode many dayes, And there it happened by the will of God, that Changing Can grew dangeroully ficke, in their fort that The ficknesses the Phyticians despaired of his recouerie.

10 By reason whereof he called before him his twelve sonnes, and perswaded them to unitie and concord by an Example. For, he commanded each of them to bring with him an Arrow, His allegarless which when he had received, and bound them altogether he willed the eldeft to breake them if exhoring of he could, which when he had tried, but could not performe, he delivered them to the fecond, and his fonnes to then to the chird, and then to all the reft, but none of them could breake them as they were. Then The like Hihe commanded his youngest sonne to take the Arrowes severally and breake them, which hee florie hath Stoeatily accomplished. Then faid Changing Can to his tonnes: In like manner will it be with you; bein ferm 82. of for, as long as you remayne in concord and vnitie, your Empire shall continue; but as foone as situate see Inthere commeth diulion amongst you, your power is easily overthrowne. Many other good the sonnes of examples were ginen by him, and gathered by the Tartarians, which in their Language they Aprile dila-20 call, lafach, or infractions of Changin Can. And atterwards hee caused the wifest and best of greeing.

his fonnes, called Haccota Can, to be received as his Succeffour in his Empire, before he died; and then refted in peace. And his fonne, called Hoccorn Can, was placed in his Seat. But before wee end this Historie we must show how the number of Nine came to be of reue- His death.

rence and facred estimation among the Tartarians: for of a memoriall of the nine kneelings which they made in the Mountaine Belgian, when they worthipped the immortall God, according to the direction of him that appeared in white Armour, and their way of the bredth of nine feet, through which they passed, they hold that number Nine in very high estimation. The number Infomuch, that if any will offer a Preient to the Tartarian Emperour, it must bee prefented in of Nine, efterforme of nine feuerall things, if hee will have it graciously accepted; and so that the number med among 30 of Nine be offered the gift is reputed happie, which Cuftome is yet observed at this day among so they re

18. Hoccota Can, who succeeded in the Empire, was a man of much valour and wisedome, guilfup.pp.556 which made him very well beloued of the Tartarians, who were alwaies faithfull and obedient Of House Can wnto him. Hee therefore bethought himselfe in what manner he might best subdue all Afie, and the second thought good to make triall first of the mightiest Prince therein before he attemped it himselfe in person. On that enterprise therefore he sent forth ten thousand Horse-men under the conduct of a wife and valiant Leader, called Gebefabada, and commanded him to feeke out divers Kingdomes and States, and when hee met with an Aduersarie too mightie for him, to returne. Hee marched on, and tooke divers Caftles and Townes, and cruelly vied those which hee vanquished

40 in battell, for terrour to others, putting out their eyes, and taking away their Horfes and Vi-Stuals; dealing kindly with the weaker. Thus hee proceeded to the Iron Gate which Alexander built at the foot of Cochas, and razed it, left it might hinder his returne. Transmos the Prince of Georgia came out against him, and in a Plaine, called Mogram, they fought, but the Tierters ouercame; and proceeded to Arfeor a Citie of the Solden of Turke, who was fo well prouided to entertayne him, that Gebesabada feeing his forces decayed, returned to Hoccota Can, then in Gebesabade. Cambals. Hee defiring to subdue all Asia, called three of his sonnes, giving to each a great Armie, lochi the eldeft he fent Westward to Tigris ; Baydo, to the North ; Chagoday, to the South: and io divided Afia among his three fonnes. Hoccota Can made choise of another skilfull and valiant Captaine, called Baydo, to whom he gave thirtie thousand Tartarian Souldiers, termed

50 Tamachs, or Conquerours, and commanded them to fet forward the very fame way that the ether ten thousand went before, and not to make flay in any place till they came to the Kingdome of Turkie, and to trie whether they could withftand the Soldan of Turkie, which was held the mightieft of all the Princes in Asia. And if haply they found him so strong that they were not able to encounter him, they should then forbeare to fight with him, and make choise of fome place where they might reft themselves till they had received supplie of further aide from some of his sonnes which should bee neerest voto them, and that afterwards they might with more fafety fet voon him. Baydo accordingly with his thirtie thouland Tartarions came to the Kingdome of Turkie; and there hee vinderflood that the Solder which had discomfitted the first Tartarians was dead, and that his fonne Guiatadin succeeded him. And this man hearing of the

60 Tartarians comming, was very much afraid, and got all the Mercenaries that he could to his fuccour both Barbarians and Latines, and among it others hee had to his aide two thousand Latines vnder his two Captaines, the one called, Iohn de Limmado, who came from the lle of Cyprus, and the other Bonifacius de Molin, who was borne at Genua. The Soldan allo ient to his Neighbours, promiting many fauours and benefits to fuch as would affift him , by which meaner having

19. And after a little time Hoccora Can dyed , and a fonne of his facceeded in the Empire. called Gine Can, whose life was but short, and after him succeeded a Kinsman of his, called Mango Con, who was of very great power and hibdeed many Prouinces, and at length with a great Living he went into the Cathanan Sea to take a certaine Iland, which whiles he held befreged, the thesewo, 1. de Inhabitants of those parts being very subtile and ingenious, sent certaine Diners secretly under water, who continued fo long water the Ship, in which bee was, vntill they had made many to holes therein, fo chatche water came into it (no man obseruing nor stopping the leake) vitill the Ship fanke, and Maneo Can was drowned therein. Whereupon the refidue of the Tarrari-Rubruq. with ans returned home and chose his brother, called Cobila Can , for their Emperour , who raigned ouer them two and fortie yeeres, became a Christian, and founded a certaine Citie, called Ions, in the Kingdome of Cashay, which is reported to be greater then Rome; and in that Citie he dwel-Cable, or Cables led vntill his dying day. But leaving him, let vs speake of the three somes of Hocesta Can, and of Haoloon, and of his Heires. 20. Iochi, the eldest sonne of Hoccota Can, rade toward the West with all that people

which his Father had given him, and there finding fruitfull and pleafant Countries, abounding in all kinde of riches, he fixed his Tents, and ruled ouer the Kingdome of Twoquesten, and the lefter 20 Perfis, even to the River Philos, where his people inhabiting ever fince, are exceedingly multiplied in persons and riches, and the Heires of Jachs have succeeded one the other in those Dominions to this prefent, and those Countries are at this day ruled by two Brothers, the one called See 47. Chapt. Chapar, the other Doar, who have divided those Countries betweene them, and doe possesse them peaceably.

The fuceeffe of 21. Bayde, the second some of Hoccata Can, with the Tartarians which his Father gaue him, rode towards the North, vntill he came to the Kingdome of Cumania, where the Cumansans having many armed men , opposed themselves, and defended their Land against them. But His victorie o- being at length ouer-come, they fied to the Kingdome of Hangaria, where are yet many Cumaminus fo called minus inhabiting. Baydo having beaten the Camanians out of their Countrie, went to the King- 20 dome of Ruffia and conquered it, and possessed the Land of Gazaria (which is in the Northerne part of Taurica) and the Kingdome of Bulgaria, and by the way which the Cumanians had fled, he came to the Kingdome of Hangaria. Afterwards the Tartarians went towards the parts of Germanie, till they came to a certaine River that runneth through the Dukedome of Auftria: La, all now Defent, where they thought to have passed over a Bridge which they found there. But Frederick the Now Minicania. Duke of Ansfria, and others, that bordered neere it, had fortified the Bridge so that the Tararia. ans were denyed passage. Bayde thereupon, incensed with furie, commanded that all should passe through the water, and himselfe was the first that entred, exposing thereby himselfe and His drowning all his followers to apparant danger of death: for fuch was the breadth of the River and the violence of the streame, that their Horses were wearied before they could come to the farther banke 40 of the River. Which the refidue feeing which were not yet entred into the water, they were confounded with griefe, and returned to Ruffia, and Cumania which they formerly had conquered, as hath beene declared; and never fince that have the Tanarans attempted against Germa-His posteritie. nie. But the posteritie of Boyde hath ever fince successuely held those Lands which he subdued. a Othimafter And he which now raigneth there, is called a Toches, and ruleth peaceably and quietly.

23. Cangaday (or Chagoday) with those Tarzars which his Father gaue him, rode towards the South, even to the parts of India the leffer. There he found many Defarts, Mountaines, and drie Lands not inhabited, fo that hee could not passe that way ; but having lost many of his People, Horses, and other Beasts, he turned him towards the West, and after much labour came to his brother lochs, to whom he related what had befalse him : who taking compassion on his so b Orrather of brother, gaue him and his people a good part of those Countries which hee had : and ever after. Basels for the those two brethren dwelled together and their Progenie, vntill this day inhabite in those parts, Successors of yet in such fort, that those which descended of the younger brother, doe beare a kinde of revelathi, were na- rence to the posteritie of the Elder , and so being content with their Portions , they live peacemed in the 10 ably and quietly together: and that Succeffor of b locks that now liveth, is called Barach.

22. In the yeere of our Lord 1253. Haython, the King of Armenia, seeing that the Tartarians had in a manner subdued all the Kingdomes, Countries, and Lands, even to the Kingdome of Turke, taking Counfell of the wife, he refolued to goe in person to the Emperour of the Tartariens, the better to infinuate himfelfe into his fauour, and to make league with him. But firll he fent his brother, Lord Smibaldy, Constable of the Kingdome of Armenia, to obtayne fafe con- 69 duct for him : who carrying with him many Presents , and going attended with a goodly companie, dispatched in good order the businesse for which he was fent, yet stayed hee by the space of foure dayes before he came backe to Armenia: but at his returne, he related to the King what he had seene and done : who without delay departed in secret manner disguised, because it might

CHAP, S.S. 2, The Armenian King Difficelb the Can. His Demands & answer. 115

be dangerous for him to be knowne in the Kingdome of Timbis, through which hee must needes make his journey : and as God would, at his comming thither, he found that the Solden of Turkie was ouerthrowne by a Tartarian Captaine, whom hee met with there and made himselfe iourney, knowne vnto him, who when he vnderstood him to be the King of Armenia, and that hee was going toward the Emperour, entertayned him very honorably, and caused him to bee conducted to the Kingdome of Camania, and beyond the Iron gate;

And afterwards, other Tartarian Captaines caused him to bee conducted over all other Countries and Places, vntill he came to . Almalech (or Cambala) where Mango Can their Empe- c It feemes roug refided: who rejoyced much at the comming of the King of Armenia, and the rather for Caracanan that from the comming of Changens Can ouer the Mountaine Belgian; no other great Prince had which then come to meet him, and therefore hee received and entertayned him with much honour and love, the Kings Giand game write him fome of the greatest persons about him to attend, and associate him at his pleatie, or Cambain fure, and did him many other favours; But the King of Armenia having refled certaine dayes, as Ramufio increated the Emperour to vouchfafe him Audience in those affaires, for which hee was come, hath it. and to give him licence to returne. The Emperour very graciously answered him, that he would most willingly accomplish all his defires, and that it was very acceptable voto him that he came of his owne accord.

The King with good deliberation made feuen Petitions. First, He defired that the Empe- The King of rour and all his people would be baptized in the Christian Faith, leaving all other Seas. Se. Amenia his condly, That there might be a perpetuall peace and friendship established betweene the Christi- Demands. ans and the Tartarians. Thirdly, That in all Countries which the Tartarians either had conquered or should conquer, the Churches and Churchmen, whether secular or religious, might be free and exempted from all fernitude and payments. Fourthly, That he would deliver and free the holy Land, and the holy Sepulcher of our Lord, out of the hands of the Saracons, and restore them to the Christians. Fiftly, That he would endeuour the destruction of the Calipb of Bala dach, who was the head and chiefe Doctor of the Sect of Mahametifme. Sixtly, Hee required that a speciall Charter might be granted him, that of whatsoener Tarrarians especially such as should be nearest to the Kingdome of Armenia hee should bee occasioned to demand aide, they thould forthwith be readie to affifthim. Seventhly, He craved that all the Lands of the jurif-30 diction of the Kingdome of Armenia, which the Saracons had insuaded, and were or should happen to be recourred by the Tartarians, might be reftored to the King of Armenia, and that fuch

as he should get from the Saracens, hee quight peaceably and quietly eniony. Mange Can having The answere considered the Petitions of the King of Armenia, calling before him all his chiefe Captaines and of the Tata. Counfellers in their prefence, made him answere after this manner. Because that the King of vian. Armenia of his owne accord, and not of compulsion, is come vitto vs from remote parts; it befeemeth the Imperiall Maiestie to yeeld him all his demands that are lawfull and honest; Therefore to you, O King of Armenia, Wee returns this answere, That wee will accept of all your Requests made, and will cause them all (God-willing) to bee duely accomplished : first . I my selte being Emperour and Lord of the Tartarians, will bee baptised in that Faith which the 40 Christians hold at this day; withing and admining all my Subjects to doe the like : yet not entending to force any thereunto. To your second, We will and agree that there be a perpetuall

peace betweene the Tatarian and Christians, yet with this caution, that your felie bee a chiefe Pledge and Surerie that the Christians observe on their behalfe the like peace and amitie towards vs , as wee for our part intend inviolably to keepe towards them. Wee grant alfo, That all the Churches of Christians and their Clergie-men what soener, either Secular or Religious, shall enioy their Priuledge and Immunitie of Libertie and Exemption throughout the Dominions of our Empire, and that none shall molest them any kinde of wayes. Touching the matter of the holy Land, we say, That if we could conveniently we would willingly goe thicher in person, for the reuerence we beare to our Lord Iefus Chrift. But because we have many occasions of imporso tance to flay vs in these parts, wee will take order with our Brother Halon for the due accomplishment of that service in all points as it behooveth, for the freeing of the Citie of Hierasalom and all the holy Land, out of the hands of the Pagans, and restoring it to the Christians.

Concerning the Caliph of Baldach, We will give order to Baydo, our Captaine of the Tartarians, which are in the Kingdome of Tarkie, and the rest thereabouts, that they bee all obedient See the 18. to our Brother, whom wee will have to deftroy the Calipb as our capitall and deadly Enemie. and a4 Chap-The Charter which the King of Armenia delireth for affiliance from the Tartarians, Wee wish it tirs. to bee drawne according to his defire, and wee are readie in all things to confirme it. Laftly whereas the King Armenia requireth , That the Lands of his Kingdome, which the Saraceals had taken from, and haue fince beene recoursed by the Tartarians, may be reflored write him, we Pole calls this 60 freely and frankly accord it, willing our Brother Haloon to fee fuch restitution made without Haloon, Vian.

24. After that Mango Can had thus liberally accorded the Requests of the King of Arme- Mann Can mia and confirmed them by Charters, he would forthwith receive the Sacrament of Baptiline, and with his people was accordingly baptifed by the hands of a certaine Bishop, who was Chancellor of the King of is baptifed.

3.

Of Gino Can the third Em-Derour The former Friars mencion P!-no C-veini was with the : former, and

Mangu. Mango Can drowned. los the great

Bajde Northof the Caffle tioned by Plus L. GIL. DOW

Cangadays enterprtie.

# Haloons conquest of Persia and Bagdet. Chaliphs rieb-poore diet. LIB. I.

Armenia, and all that were of his houshold with many other great Personages of both Sexes, And then he made choice of such as were to accompany his Brother Haloon, about the enterprize of the Holy Land. After Halom and the King of Armenia departed, and rode both together vntill

The verage of Haloon with they palled ouer the great River Philos, then Haloon with his mightie Armie invaded the Coun-King Haption. treyes and Lands every where, and in less then fix moneths hee subdued easily the whole King-Profapossessed dome of Persia, because it was without a Ruler, or Governour, and tooke in all the Countreyes withous refiftance, even till he came to the Land of certayne Infidels, which are called Affaffint,

Stner de Tigade befic-

hauing neither Law nor Religion, but liuing as their Prince and Lord, commonly called " Sexmonte, see Pa's montio, instructeth them at whose pleasure and commandement they willingly and readily expose themselves to death. These had a certayne impregnable Castle, called Tigado, which was so to well furnished with all kind of necessary prouision, and so strongly built and seated, that they feared no affault. Halom therefore commanded one of his Captaynes to take with him tenne thousand of those Tartarians, which hee had left in Persia, and in no wife to depart from the fiege of that Caftle vntill hee had taken it, fo that they remayned at the fiege thereof, by the In the Latine space of seven yeares both Winner and Summer, which at last was yeelded up by the Affassia. it is 17. Remuf only for want of clothes, but not for any penury of victuals, or fearfitie of any other thing, whites Polo hach but 3. Haloon employed himselfe in ordering of the Kingdome of Persia, and besieging the Castle of the Assassia, the King of Armenia tooke leave of him to returne, because hee had beene long out of his Kingdome : Haloon therefore licenced him to depart, and giving him many great gifts, direceted his Precept to Baydo, residing in the Kingdome of Fackie, which he had subdued, that he 20 should conduct him safely to the entrance of his owne Kingdome, which in all things he fulfilled, so that after three yeares and a halfe of absence, the King of Armenia, through the mercie of Iesus Christ, came joyfully home into his owne Countrey.

Ha'osa foiour-Calipb taken.

25. Halson having ordered the Kingdome of Persia in convenient manner, went into a cerneth in Sorloch, tayine Prouince neere to Armenia, called Sorlock, where he repoied and recreated himselfe all the Sommer, and at the beginning of Winter he befieged Baldach, in which the Calipb relided, who was the chiefe Master and Doctor of the Irreligious Sect of Mahometifme, for which Enterprize Haoloon re-enforced his Army with thirtie thousand Tarrarians, that were in the Kingdome of Turkie, and assaulting the Citie by the shoare, hee tooke the same without any great difficultie, or delay. The Calipb was brought aline into the presence of Halom, and there was found in 30 Baldach, so much Treasure and Riches as would scarcely bee beleeved to bee in all the World befides; This Citie of Baldach was taken in the yeere 1258.

The Parlimo-

26. When Haoloon had disposed of the Citie of Baldach, he caused the Calipb to be brought vnto him, and all his Treasure to be laid before him, Then he demanded of him whether he had beene Lord of all that Treasure, who affirming, it was asked againe why hee had not made vie thereof in procuring the ayde of his Neighbours, and leayed mercenarie Souldiers to defend him and his Countrey from the power of the Tartarians, who fe answere was that hee thought his owne people had been sufficient. Then said Haloon to the Calipb, thou art said to be the chiefe Doctor & Teacher of all that beleeue the deceining Doctrine of Mahomer, & received rewards and Gifts of them all; therefore such and so precious a Master must be fed with no other meate 40 but with these precious things, which thou hast loued and kept so carefully, all which wee give thee for thy fuffenance : and fo commanded that the Calipb should bee shut into a Chamber, and that his Pearle and Gold should bee set before him, that hee might eate as much as hee would thereof, but that no other meate nor drinke should be given him; by which meanes the miserable wretch ended his life after a milerable manner. And there was no other Calipb in Baldach after

His death a. mongst his Treasures

flians. Mis Wife.

27. After that Hadoon had subdued Baldach and all the Countrey round about, hee distributed the Prouinces amongst his Captaines and Rulers as he thought good, giuing charge that the The fauour o Christians should e uerie where he louingly vied, and be preferred to the government of Castles and Cities, and the Saracens held under ffreight subiection. Haloen had also a Wife called Don- 50 wards Chricofcaro discended of those Kings that came from the East being guided by the Starre of the Natiuitie of our Lord, which Ladie being a most denout Christian, was a great meanes of destroying the Temples of the Saracens, and prohibiting the Solemnities and Ceremonies of Mahomer, and finally rased their Temples to the ground, and brought the Saracens in such subsection that they durft not shew their heads.

King Naythen

28. After that Haeloon had rested a yeare, he sent to the King of Armenia, to meete him at the Citie Robays, in the Kingdome of Mesopotamia, because he entended to goe towards the Holy Land, that hee might reftore it to the Christians, whereupon, the King Haython of famous memorie tooke his Journey, accompanied with a great Armie both of Horsemen and Footmen, for at that time the Kingdome of Armenia, was in fo good effate, that it could ra fe a power of 60 t welue thouland Horse, and threescore thousand Footmen, whereof beeing an Eye witnesse my felfe, I can will gine testimonie thereof, when the King of Armenia was come according to this appointment of Haplan, and had conference with him touching the Enterprize of the Holy Land, he adusted him that because the Soldan of Halappi, ruled ouer all the Kingdome of SyCH AP.S.S.3. Halappi won by the Tartars, Civil wars, Scandall from Christians. 117

ria, in which the Citie of Ierufalem was feated, the way to get the Holy Land, was first to befiege the Citie of Halappi, being the chiefe Citie of Syria, which when he had wonne, it would not be difficult for him to subdue all the rest of that Countrey : which adulfe Haloon liked well, and besieged the Citie of Halappi (or Aleppa) which he found to be of great strength being well Balestri. walled and inhabited : therefore with Mines valer ground, with Slings and other Engines, hee begitt it fo ftraightly, and affaulted it fo manfully on every fide that albeit it feemed impresnable, yet in the space of nine dayes he obtayned it. In this Citie they found such incredible store Hallo taken of wealth as would hardly be beleeved, yet there was a Caitle in the midft of the Citie, that held out eleuen dayes after the Citie was taken, which at length was wonne by vidermining. So the 10 Citie Halapoi, and afterwards the King lome of Syria, was taken by Haclore in the yeare of our

29. But when the Soldan of Halappi name ! Melechnafer being then in the Citie of Damafens, both Latine & understood that the Citie of Halappi, with his Wife and Children in it, was taken, being utterly Itabas have destitute of Countell hee came and cast himselfe at the feet of Haloen, hoping thereby that his 1240 Wife and Children with some part of his Dominions would bee restored him. But the Soldan found himselte therein deceiued, for Halom fent him with his Wife and Children into Perfia, that thereby he might enion the Kingdome of Syria, the more fecurely. These things thus disposed, Haloon ga ne to the King of Armenia a great part of the spoile of Halappi, and of the Lands which he had inuaded, whereby the King of Armenia was strengthened with many Ca-20 files bordering on his Kingdome, which he fortified as he thought good; and after that Haoloon had fetled the affaires of those Cities and Countries which he had wonne, intending to goe to Ierusalem to free the Holy Land from Pagans, and to restore it to the Christians. There came to him a Mellenger the third day, who brought newes that the Tartarian Empire was vacant by the death of his Brother Mango Can, and that his comming was earneftly expected to bee his Successor therein, which report made him very forrowfull : In regard whereof hee could now proceed no further in person, but left ten thousand Tartars to keepe the Kingdome of Spria, vnder the command of a Captayne called Guiboga, to whom he gaue order that hee should conquer the Holy Land, and reftore it to the Christians. And so leaving his Sonne at Tauris, hee hastened Eastward himselfe by great lourneyes.

d. III.

of Cobil A CAN the fift Emperour, of the Tartarians: Of the Warre with BARCHA, and Tartarian quarrell with the Christians , HAO-EAUN'S death. Atts of the Soldan of Egypt. Of ABAY A and other Sonnes and Succeffors of HALDON.

Ve before he could come to the Kingdom of Perssa, he heard that the Nobles & Princes
had placed his Brother Cobial Cos in the Imperial Seat of the Teresr, which he heard
was beene
with the was at Teresr's where he waterflood that Bereast (vs. Bereast) was marked by had placed his Brother Cobila Car in the Imperial Seat of the Tartars, which he heard war between whilft he was at Tamis : where he vnderstood that Barcat (or Barcha) was marching Haston and whilst new start a series a result of the series of the se beganne a very great Battaile. But the Ice being broken by the great multitude of Horfes and Guisegaoithe Men, there was drowned on the one fide and on the other thirtie thousand Tartar; Infomuch, Kindted of the that the Armies on each fide returned. But Guiboga whom Haoloon had left in the Kingdome of three Kings Syria, and the Province of Palestina held those Countreyes peaceably, and loued the Christians that came to well, for he was of the Progenie of the three Kings which went to worship the Natiutite of our Nationie of 50 Lord. But when he had laboured earneftly to reduce the Holy Land againe under the power of Chinft. the Christians, the Deuill sowed the seed of scandall, and discord betwixt him and the Christians of those parts, which hapned on this manner. In the Land of Belforte, which is of the Ter- Belfortes ritory of the Citie of Sidon, there were fundry Townes and Villages inhabited by Saracens, which paid certayne Tribute to the Tartars, on whom some of Sidon and Belforte made divers rodes and spoyles killing fundry of the Saracens, and carrying others away Captine with a great drone of Cattle. A Nephew of Cuiboga remayning neere thereabouts, followed speedily after those Christians that had committed those out-rages to tell them on the behalfe of his Vncle,

that they should dismisse their bootie. But some of them vnwilling to large their prey they had 60 taken, ranne vpon him, and flue him, with diners other Tartarians that accompanyed him. Gui. He destroyeth boga hearing that the Christians had slaine his Nephew, rode presently and tooke the Citie of the Citie of Sidon, difmanteled the walls thereof, and flue fome few Christians, the rest fauing themselves Sidon. in an Iland, And neuer after would the Tartars trust the Christians of Syria, neither durst they put confidence in the Tartari, who were afterwards driven out of the Kingdome of Spia by the Saracens, as shall be declared.

21. Whiles

Tine Soldans enterprize a-

21. Whiles Haoloon was bufie in the warre with Barcat, as hath beene faid, the Soldan of Egypt affembling his Armie came to the Province of Palestina, and in a place called Hamalech. grinft Guiboga, he royned battaile with Guiboga and his Tartars, where Guiboga was flaine, and his Armie defeated. The Tarrare which escaped went into Armenia , and by this meanes the Kingdome of Saria was wholly tobdoed by the Saracens, fauing certayne Cities of the Christians, which were feated neere the Sea. When Halson vnderitood how the Soldan of Egypt had inuaded Stria. Hastons prepa-Hand driven thence his people, he gathered his Armie and fent to the King of Armenia, and to the ring to cenew King of Georgia, and the other Christians of the East to prepare themsclues against the Soldan of thewirs, dich. Egypt and the Saracens, and when his Armie was in readinefie a fickneffe feized him, of which he languished the space of a fortnight, and then dyed, by whose death the enterprize of the Ho- 10 ly Land had an end. Abaga his Sonne held the Dominion of his Father, who intreated the Em-Abaga his Son perour Cobila Can being his Vnele, to confirme him therein, to which he willingly accorded. So he was called Abaga Can, and began to reigne in the yeare of our Lord 1264.

22. Abaga was wife and gouerned prosperously in all things, two only excepted, one that he would not be a Christian, as his Father had beene, but worshipped Idols, beleeuing the Idolatrous Priests. The other, that he was alwayes in warres with his Neighbours, by reason wherof the Soldan was long in quiet, and the power of the Saracens much increased. Those Tartars (or rather Tarks) which could escape from out the Dominion of the Tartars, fled vnto the Soldan, leeking to avoid the heavie burthens which the Tartars imposed on them. And the Soldan dealt politikely, for he sent Messengers by Sea to the Tartars, in the Kingdomes of Camania, and 20 Ruffia, and made composition and agreement with them, that when some Abaga should moone warre against the Land of Egypt, then they should inuade his Countrey, for which he promised them great gifts, by meanes whereof Abaga could not well inuade the Land of Egypt, but the Soldan could early without relitance inuade the Christians in the parts of Syria, infomuch, that the Christians lost the Citie of Antioch, and divers other places of strength, which they held in

Bendecar Solmenia Ramusio

33. Moreover, Bendecar the Soldan of Egypt was so fortunate that he much abased the Kingdome of Armenia. For it hapned that the King of Armenia with many of his men was gone to the Tartars, which the Soldan hearing, fent a Coptayne of his to invade the Kingdome of Arcals him Ban- menia. The Sonnes of the King of Armenia, gathering together all that could beare Armes, en- 10 countred the Egyptians in the Confines of their Kingdome, and relifted them couragiously; but the Armie of the Armenians being ouerthrowne, one of the Kings Sonnes was taken, and the other was slaine in battaile. So that the Saracens thereby wasted and spoyled all the Kingdome or Armenia, and carryed infinite riches thence to the great damage of the Christians, whereby the Enemies power was much encreased, and the Kingdome of Armenia wondroully weakned, The King whose endeauour was wholly bent about the destruction of the Infidels, having heard this most vanappie newes of his owne Countrey, busied his thoughts night and day how to afflict the Saracens, and oft-times very earneftly dealt with Abaga, and his Tartars to attempt He conclude in the ouerthrow of faithlesse Mahomet, and the reliefe of the Christians. But Abaga excused himselfe by reason of the warres, in which he was daily entangled with his Neighbours. The 40 King of Armenia feeing that hee could not have any prefent ayde of the Tartarians, fent and made truce by his Messengers with the Soldan of Egypt, that he might redeeme his Sonne which was Prifoner. The Soldan also promised him that if he restored him a friend of his called Angoldscar whom the Tarrars held captine, and yeelded up the Cattle Tempfach , and some holds of the Citie of Halappi, which he had gotten in the time of Haeloon, hee would fet his Sonne at libertie. Whereupon the Soldan, having received his friend, and the Cattle of Tempfacke beeing Greete Monkes yeelded, and two other Cassles throwne downe at his appointment, delivered his Sonne out of changed their Prison, and restored him accordingly. Then afterwards King Haython of famous memorie. hanames, appea- using reigned fortie fine yeares, and done much good to the Christians, yeelded up his Kingdome rethby theex- and Dominion to his Sonne Linen, whom he had delivered out of captivitie, and renouncing this 50 ample of Alex- Kingdom of the World became protested in Religion, and was called Macharius, changing his in Nices, p.48.6. name (according to the custome of the Armenians) when they enter into Religion, and in and of Andre. Thort time after dyed in peace in the yeare of our Lord 1270.

nicus the Emperour in Gre-

and of Carta-

34. This King of Armenia Liuone was wife, and gouerned his Kingdom prouidently, and being much beloued by his owne People, and by the Tartars, he laboured earnestly to destroy the gon lib, 9 p.47 Saracens, to that in his time Abaga made peace with al his neighbors, who of long time had been his enemies. Then the Soldan of Egypt entred the Kingdome of Turkie, and flue many of the Tartars, and draue them out of many Townes. For a Saracen, called Parmana, being Captaine Calcondilas lib.r. ouer the Tartars that were in Turkie, rebelled against Abaga, and fought the destruction of the Abaga entred Tartarians. Abaga hearing thereof, posted thither so speedily, that in fifteene dayes hee rode 60 the Kingdome fortie dayes iourney. The Soldan hearing of his comming departed fuddenly, not daring to make any longer abode. Yet could not fo speedily withdraw himselfe, but that the Tartars toilowing fwiftly, ouertooke the rereward of his Armie in the entrie of the Kingdome of Egypt, in a place called Pafolanke. There the Tartarians tushing on them, tooke two thouland Hotteman of

CHAP.5. \$.3. Paruana twife executed. Turkie refused. Mangodaniors folly. 110

the Saracens, befide much riches, and fine thousand of the Cordines which lived in that Countrie. Abaga being come to the Confines of Egypt, was perswaded to goe no farther for heat : for that Land is very hote, and his Tartars, and their beafts having come speedily from farre, could hardly haue indured it, by reason whereof hee returned into Turkee, and spoiled and wasted all the Countries that had rebelled, and yeelded to the Soldan. But he caused the Traytor Parnana with assunder and his partakers to be cut afunder in the midit, after the Tartarian manner, and part of his flesh to eaten. he ferued in all his meats, whereof he and his Captaines did eat. Such was the reuenge of King Abasa on the Traitor Paruana.

Abaga having effected his defires in Turkie, and enriched his Tartars with the spoyles To of the rebellious Saracens, he called to him the King of Armenia, and offered him the kingdome King Liuonoreof the rebellious surveys, the content and hee had been ever faithfull to the Tartarians. But the fulcth the offer of the King-King of Armenia being discreet and wife, rendred great thankes to Abaga for so great a Present, dome of The but excused himselfe from the accepting thereof, as vnable to governe two Kingdomes. For the &. Soldan of Egypt was in his full strength, and earnestly bent against the Kingdome of Armenia: to that hee had enough to doe to prouide for the defence thereof. Yet aduited him to fettle and difpose the Kingdome of Turke in such fort ere his departure, that there might bee no feare of Rebellion afterwards: and in any case to permit no Saracen to command there. Which aduice Abaga accepted of, and neuer after suffered any Saracen to beare rule in that Country. The Heavingth the Abaga accepted of, and neuer area inferience any swares to test full in the Country of delivering of king of Armenia then delived him to thinke of delivering the Holy Land out of the hands of levislating inom the Pagans: wherein he promifed all his best endeauour: and wished the King to fend mellen- Pagans.

gers to the Pope, and to other Princes of Christendome for their assistance, So Abaga having ordered the affaires of Turkie, returned to the Kingdome of Corazen, where hee had left his familie. Corazen. Bendecar the Soldan of Egypt, after he had received fuch damage by the Tartars, was poisoned, died in Damafens: whereof the Christians of those parts were very glad. And the Saracens The death of very forrowfull : for they had not his like after, as they themselves commonly reported. For his the Soldan, fonne, called Melechabic, succeeded him, who was bone driven out of his Dominion by one Melechabic his called Elfi, who violently viurping, made himfelfe Soldan.

dome of Syria, and were spoyling and forraging, tilb they came to the Citie Aman, now called

Camella, which is feated in the midft of Syria. Betore this Citie lieth a faire great Playne, where

led Turara. When they thought the Soldans Power vtterly overthrowne, Mangodanier who

never had feene the conflicts of warre before, being afraid without any reasonable cause of cer-

taine Saracens, called Beduins, withdrew himfelfe out of the field , having the better, forfaking

the King of Armenia, and his Captaine which had preuayled against his enemies. When the

Soldan, which thought he had loft all, faw the field cleere, and all abandoned, he got vpon a little

hill, with four armed men, and flood there. The King of Armenia returning from the pursuit,

36. The time appointed being come, when Abaga was to begin his warre against the Sol- ceffor.

dan of Egyps, hee appointed his brother Mangodanior to goe to the Kingdome of Syria with Elfs the Soldan, 30 thirtie thousand men, being Tartars, and couragiously to overcome the Soldan, if he came in battell against him: or otherwise to take in the Castles and Holds of the Countrey, and deliver

them to the Christians, if the Soldan should shun the fight. When Mangodanior with his Armie Mangodanior fetting forward, was come neere the Confines of Armenia, het sent for the King of Armenia, nerall by his who came presently voto him with a goodly companie of Horse: so that they entred the King-Brother.

the Soldan of Egypt had affembled his Power, intending to fight with the Tartarians. And there He comment the Saracen on the one fide, with the Christians and Tartars on the other fide, fought a great to battell abattell. The King of Armenia with the Christians ruled and commanded the right wing of the Soldan.

40 Armie which inuaded the Soldans left wing manfully, and put them to flight, and purfued them three dayes journey, even to the Citie Aman. Another part of the Soldans Armie was also rou- Turara. ted by Amalech a Tartarian Captaine, who purfued them also three dayes journey, to a Citie cal-

and miffing Mangodanior in the field, was much altonied, and imagining which way hee should 50 be gone, followed after him. But Amalech returning from the enemies whom he had purfued, abode two dayes expecting Almach his Lord, supposing that he had followed after him, as he ought, for the further subduing of his enemies, and the Countrey which they had ouercome: till at last, having heard of his retrait, leaving his victorie, hee made speed after him; whom hee found on the banke of the River Enphrates staying for him. And then the Tartars returned to their owne Pronince. But the King of The King of Armenia fultained much loffe, and hard adventure in his returne : for the Herles of the Christians dimona, his of the Kingdome of Armenia, were to wearied and ipent with the length of the way, and want his returne. of Fodder, that they were not able to travell, so that the Christiani going scatteringly by vnvfuall wayes, were often found out, and flayne without mercy by the Saracens inhabiting those

And this miladuenture of Mangodanior happened in the yeere of our Lord 1282. When Abaga understood the successe hereof, he assembled all his people, and when hee was Abaga prepareadie to fet forward with all his power against the Saracens, 2 certaine Saracen, the fonne of rethareuenge the Deuill, came to the Kingdome of Perfia, and prevayled by gitting great gifts to f me that

60 parts: Infomuch that the greatest part of the Armie was lott, and in a manner all the Nobility.

euzenus the deftroyed

served neere about Abaga, in such fort, that both he and his brother Mangadanior were poylo-

wards disclosed by the mischieuous Malefactors themselues. And so died Abaga Can in the

them a brother of his, called Tangodor, who had overgone the rest of his brethren. In his youth

he had received the Sacrament of Baptisme, and was baptised by the name of Nicholus. But be-

ing come to riper yeeres, and keeping companie with Saracens, whom hee loued, hee became a

wicked Saracen, and renouncing Christian Religion, would be called Mahomet Can, and labou-

of Iniquitie; in such fort, that those that hee could not compell by violence, hee a lured by

preferments and rewards: infomuch that in his time many of the Tariarians became protef-

fed Saracens, as at this day appeareth. This Child of perdition commanded the Churches of the

Christians to be destroyed, and forbade them to vie any of their religious Rites or Ceremonies.

Hee caused the doctrine of Mahomet to bee publikely preached, the Christians to bee banished,

and their Churches in the Citie of Tauris veterly to bee destroyed. Hee fent Messengers also to

the Solden of Egypt, and concluded a Peace and a League with him, promiting that all the Chris

Hee fest more recover to the King of Armente in Georgie, and to the other Christian Princes of 10 those parts to come vnto him without delay. But they refolued rather to die in battell then to

obey his commandement, for other remedie they could finde none. And the Christians being

now in such anguish and bitternesse of heart, that they rather desired to die then to line, even

God (which neuer refuseth them that put their truft in him) sent consolation to them all. For

a Brother of this Mahomet, with a Nephew of his also, called Argon, opposing themselves,

37. After the death of Abaga Can the Tartars affembled themselves, and ordayned over

He is poisoned ned both in one day: and died both within eight dayes after. The trueth whereof was after-Tanzodor the

yeere of our Lord 1283.

brother and Suce for of Abaga.

Of a Christian

red by all meanes to turne all the Tartarians to that irreligious Sect of Mahomet the some In rurne: h Sarafians within his Dominion (hould become Saracens, or elfe lofe their heads, which gave the Sa-

Hee feeketh to betray the Kings of Armenia and Georgia.

Hee is accused and schelling against him for his euill deeds did signific to Cobila Can the great Emperour of the

Argon of a

made King.

Hisrenenge

to Civile Can. Tartarians, how he had forfaken the steps of his Ancestors, and was become a wicked Saracen: labouring with all his might to bring the relt of Tartars to be Saracem also. Which when Cobila Can vnderstood he was much displeased thereat : insomuch that he sent and required Mahomes to reforme his euill wayes, for otherwise he would proceed against him. Which message 30 replenished him with wrath and indignation, infomuch that he being perswaded there was none He flayethhis that durst gainfay his proceedings but his Brother and his Nephew Argon, he caused his Brother to be flayne: and intending the like to his Nephew, he went against him with a mightie Armie. Argon being not of strength to withstand his forces, betooke himselfe to a strong Hold among the Mountaines; which that Sonne of Iniquitie belieged with his deuillish Armie,

racens cause of much reioycing, and made the Christians very sad.

Argon finally yeelded hirafelfe, with condition that he might ftill entoy his Dignitie and Dominion. But Mahomet deliuered him to the Constable and others of the Nobilitie, to bee kept in Prifon. And departing towards the Citie of Tauris, where he left his wives and children, he gaue direction that his Armie should come softly after him : but appointed the Constable, and such as he trusted most, to put his Nephew to death fecretly, and to bring him his head. These 40 things thus hastily ordered and directed, there was amongst those that had received the command of that bloudy execution, a man of some Place and Authoritie, brought vp vnder Abaga the Father of Argon, who having compassion of his distresse, tooke Armes, and in the night time slue the Constable of Mahomet and all his followers, and delivering Argon, made him Lord and Ruler of all: fome for feare, and others for love being obediene to his will and commandement. Argon being thus established, accompanied with his faithfull followers, pursued presently after Mahomes, whom he ouertooke and feized on before he came to Tatoris, and caufed him after their manner, to be cut afunder in the midit. And such was the end of that curfed Caitiffe Mahomet, before he had fate two yeeres in his feat.

Of Argon the Sonne of Araga, and Recatto his Brother; of Baido, and of the exploits of Casan against the Soldan of Egypt, and others.

N the yeere of our Lord 1285. after the death of Mahumet, Argon the sonne of Abaga Can, would not take on him the title of Can, vntill he had received commandement from the great Can Soueraigne Lord and Emperour, to whom he dispatched Messen- 60

drige is can ced much of his faceeffe against Mahomet and fent fome of his great Officers, to confirme dried have gon in his Dominion, who was thenceforth called Can, and much respected of all. For he was of a goodly aspect and presence, couragious and wife in his proceedings, much regarding and

honouring the Christians. The Churches over-throwne by Mahomet he repayred. The Kings of Armenia and Georgia, with the other Christian Princes of the East, came vnto him, defiring his best countaile, and helpe that the holy Land might be freed from the Pagans. Are or very gracroully answered, That he would gladly doe any thing that might tend to the honour of God, and the aduancement of Christian Religion, and that he intended to make peace with his Neighbours, that hee might the more freely and fecurely follow that enterprise. But Argon, before the execution of these good designments, dyed in the fourth yeere of his raigne, And a Brother He dyeth. of his, called Regatto, succeeded him, who was a man of small valour, as shall be after declared.

39. In the yeere of our Lord 1289. after the death of Argon Can , his brother Regains was To his Succeffor, being a man of no Religion : in Armes he was of no valour, but was altogether giuen ouer to beaffly Lixurie, and fatiating his infatiable appetite with superfluous meates and drinkes : and did nothing elfe by the space of fix yeeres which he raigned, infomuch that being hated of his fubirects and contemned of strangers, he was finally strangled by his Peeres. After whole death ando, a Kiniman of his fucceeded him, who was vpright and constant in Religi- Bando fuccee. on, and did many favours to the Christians, but he foone ended his dayes, as shall be declared. deth him.

40. In the yeere of our Lord 1295, after the death of Regaits, his Kinfman Bayde ruled over the Tartars. He being a good Christian builded the Christian Churches, and commanded that none hould Preach or publish the Doctrine of Mahomet amongst the Tartarians. But because those of the Sect of Mahomet were many, they could hardly be induced to bee obedient to that 20 commandement of Baydo, and therefore fent Messengers secretly to Cafan the sonne of Argono, promifing to give him the Dominion which Baydo held, and to make him their Lord and Ruler. if he would renounce the Christian Religion. Casan caring little for Religion, but greatly affecting Dominion, promifed to doe whatfocuer they would, and fo began an open rebellion, wherevpon Baydo affembled his people, thinking to have taken Cafan, not knowing of the Treaton which his people had wrought against him. But when they came to the Field, all the Mahometiffs leaving Baydo, fled voto Cafan, to that Baydo being forfaken, thought to have escaped by The death of flight, yet was purfued and flaine by his Enemies.

41. After the death of Baydo; Cafan being made Ruler over the Tartars, at the beginning Cafan fuccess of his raigne, durst not gainfay what hee had promised the Mahometists that had promoted him deth. 30 thereto, and therefore shewed himselfe for a while very austere to the Christians. But when hee found himfelfe well and firmely fettled in his Dominion , hee began to honour and cherish the Christians, doing them many favours as shall be declared. First, therefore hee destroyed many great Ones, who had beene perf waders with him to become a Saracen, and to perfecute the Chrifians. Then hee commanded all the Tartars within his Dominion, to bee readie with their Armour and all necessarie furniture, to attend him for a Conquest of the Kingdome of Egypt, and ouer-throw of the Soldan, and fent to the King of Armenia, and the King of Georgia, and other Christian Princes of the East in that behalfe. At the beginning of the Spring Cafan gathered his forces, and first fet forward towards Baldach: and at length turned towards the Land of Egppt. The Soldan, called Melechnafer, who had long before some intelligence of the comming Melechnaser 40 of the Tartars, affembled all his power, and came before the Citie of Aman, which is feated in the soldans

the middest of the Kingdome of Syria. Cases understanding that the Soldan meant to give him battaile, forbore to befrege any Citie or Cattle, but hafted speedily to the place where the Soldan was, and pitched his Tents but one dayes journey from him in certaine Meadowes, where was plentie of forrage and feeding, where he refted his Followers and their Horfes which were wearied with their trancil. Amongst whom was a Saracen, called Calpback (or Capchick) who had calchack douferued the Soldan, and was fled from him to Cafan, for feare of imprisonment and punishments ble dealing. for his miffe-demerits. This Calphack had received fundrie favours and rewards of Casan, who reposed great confidence in him: yet, like a wicked Traytor, he disclosed the counsale and purpose of Casan to the Soldan and Saracens, acquainting them by Letters how Casan meant to 50 abide in those Meadowes, vntill they had sufficiently rested their Horses which were wondrously wearied, and therefore counfailed the Soldan to fet upon him before his Horfes were refresh-

ed, whereby he might eafily ouer-come the Tartarians. The Soldan who thought to have expected the Tartars at the Citie of Aman, did hereupon The Soldans change his resolution, and with a chosen companie hasted with all speede to assaile Casan at vn- sudden on-set, awares. But his Espials and Scouts giving him notice of their approach. Cofan commanded his men presently to be set in order and manfully to relift them. He himselfe more bold then a Lion with fuch companie as hee had about him, rode to meete the Saracens, who had approached fo neere that they could not avoid the battaile. Cafan feeing that the refidue of his companie were fored to farre abroad in the Countrie for the feeding of their Horles, that they could not fudden. He dealeth po-60 ly come to him, he commanded those that were with him to diffmount from their Horses, and linkely. placing them in a Circle, made as it were a Wall of them, and with their Bowes and Arrowes caused his men to expect their Enemies, and not to shoote vittill they were sure to reach them,

by which meanes the Tartars shooting altogether, wherein they are very skilfull and readie,

wounded the foremost Hories of their Enemies in such fort that they fell before the rest, where-

CH AP. 5. S.4. Calfachs treason. Casans impediments to recover the Holy Land. 123

that Molay remayned Lieutenant in Syria for Cafan, who eft-soones by perswalion of the callada res-

to him the King of Armenia, and acquainting him with his purpose, hee told him that hee

would willingly have delivered the Lands which hee had conquered into the Christians hands,

if they had come to him, and that if they came hee would give order to Corolnfa to reftore

them the Lands which they had formerly helden : and to yeeld them convenient supply for

the repayring of their Castles and Fortresles. These things thus ordered, Casan tooke his

iourney towards Melopotamia, but when hee came to the River Euphrates, hee fent word to

Corolusa, that leaving twentie thousand Tartars under the command of Molay, hee should

come speedily to him with the rest of the Armie. Cotolufa did as was commanded him , fo

10 Traytor Calfach, remooued towards the parts about lerufalem, to a place called Ganr, to finde fon.

by the rest following on with great furie, and finding the former overthrowne, fell themselves head-long over them: infomuch, that of all the Saracens there escaped few, which were not either overthrowne or elfe wounded to death, with the Arrowes of the Tartars.

The Soldan himselfe being in the Armie, fled as fast as hee could, which Cafin perceiuing, made his men get vp on their Horfes, and manfully to fet on their Enemies, being himselfe the forem of among ft them that entred the Armie of the Soldan, who with some small companie remayning fo long, fuffayned the brunt, vntill the Tartars came in Troupes well ordered to fight, and the 1 came the whole Armie on both fides to battaile, which endured from the Sunne riling

He outr-com- till the Ninth houre. But in the end, the Soldan with his Saracens fled, being not able to withstand the courage of Cafan, who did wonders with his owne hand, and pursued them with his 10 people, killing on every fide vntill it was darke night, and made fo great flaughter of the Saracons, that the Earth was coursed every where with their dead carkaffes. That night Cafes refled at a place, called Caneto, rejoycing exceedingly at that great victorie which God had given him Cantto. against the Saracens. This fell out in the yeere of our Lord 1301, on the Wednesday before the

Feast of the Nativitie. 42. Then Cafan fent the King of Armenia, and a Leader of the Tartars, called Molay, with fortie thouland Horse, to pursue the Soldan as farreas the Delart of Egypt, being twelve dayes iourney diffant from the place where the battaile was fought, and willed them to expect him or fome Messenger from him at the Citie Gazara. And they departed speedily before the Sunne rifing, to follow after the S Idan. But fome three dayes after, Cafan fent for the King of Arme- 20 nia to returne, because he purposed to besiege the Citie of Damason, and willed Molay with the fortie thousand Tartars to pursue with speede after the Saracens, and to put what hee could take to the fivord. Yet the Soldan himfelfe flying very fwittly, and riding on Dromedaries both night

and day, in the conduct and companie of certaine Bedains, escaped into the Citie of Babylon very strangely. But others of the Saracens fled severall wayes, as they thought they could best save themielues, and a great number of them going by the way of Tripolis , were flaine by the Chrifirans, which inhabited the Mountayne of Libanus. The King of Armenia returning to Cafan, found that the Citie of Aman had yeelded vnto him, fo that the whole treasure of the Soldan, and his Armie was brought into his presence: which was so great that every one maruailed, why the Soldan carried fo much treasure with him when he went to fight. Cafan, when he had gathered together all the riches and spoiles which they had gotten, bestowed them bountifully a- 30 mongit the Tartars, and the Christians his followers, whereby they were all made rich. And I Friar Haython, the Compiler of this Hiftorie, who was present in all Expeditions and

Battailes, which the Tartars had with the Soldan, from the time of Haloon to this day, yet did I neuer see nor heare that any of the Tartarian Lords accomplished more in two dayes then did Cafan. For the first day, with a small companie of his owne, he ouer-came a great Armie of his Enemies, and did fuch exploits in his Perfon, that he wanne fame and commendations about all the rest. On the second day, such was his largeste, and so great this liberalitie of his heart, that of all the infinite wealth and treasure which hee got, hee kept nothing for himselfe, but a Sword and a Purse, in which was contayned certaine writings concerning the Land of Egypt, and the number of the Soldons Armie. And this was most maruailous about all the rest, how in so little Cafans dwarfish a body, and of so bad presence (for he seemed like a Monster) there could be so much vertue and flature and ill- rigour contayned: for among neere two hundred thousand Souldiers, there could hardly one of fauoured iea- leffe flature, or of worfe aspect be found. Therefore, because this Cafar lived in our time, it is fitting wee made the more ample narration of his Acts. And in regard that the Soldan who was ouerthrowne by Casan, is yet living at the writing of this Historie, they which intend to destroy, or any wayes to endamage the Saracens, may receive many advertisements out of these

> After some few dayes rest, Casan directed his course towards the Citie of Damascus : where the Citizens hearing of his approch, and fearing left if hee tooke them by force, they should die without mercy, by the aduice of the wifelt amongst them, fent with one consent their Messengers vnto him with offer of their Citie, which hee willingly accepted, and after a while rode towards the River of Damascus, on whose Bankes hee pitched his Tents, forbidding any damage to bee done to the Citie. Then the Citizens fent him divers gifts, and plentie of victuals for his Armie. There Cafan made his abode fine and fortie dayes with all his Followers, except those fortie thousand Tartars which were fent with Molay, who stayed his comming at the Citie of Gaccara.

> 43 While Cafan reposed himselfe neere Damasco, there came newes vnto him, how a Kinsman of his called Baydo, had entred into the Kingdome of Persia, and committed great spoile there in his absence : and thereupon hee resolued to returne to his owne. Leauing therefore his 60 chiefe Captaine Cotolufa, with part of his Armie for the cultodie of the Kingdome of Syras (whom hee willed Molay and the rest of the Tartars to be obedient vnto as to his Lieutenant) he fet Rulers and Gouernours over all the Cities, and committed the government of Damaleus to the Traytor Calfach, being not yet acquainted with his trayterous difpolition. Then calling

But in the Sommer time , Calfach ( who had formerly hatched Treason in his heart against Cafan, fent word fecretly to the Soldan, that hee would reftore him Damafens with the other Townes which Cafar had taken. The Soldan liked hereof, and couenanted to give him Danusco in perpetuall keeping, and part of his treasure with his sitter to wite. Insomuch, that shortly after, Calfach became Rebell, and caused all the strong places to rebell against the Tartars, bearing themselves bold on the heate of Sommer, in which they knew the Tartars could not ride nor yeeld any aide vnto their frie ds. When Molay perceined that they rebelled energy where, hee durft not flay any longer with fo small a companie, but tooke the shorter way

good feeding and prouision for his Horses.

20 towards the Kingdome of Mesopotamia, and fignified thence to Casan all that had hapned in the Kingdome of Syria. Who feeing hee could not any way redresse it at that season, by reafon of heate, yet when the Winter approached, hee made very great preparation on the bankes of the River Euphrates, and fent over Cotolufa before with thirtie thousand Tartarian Horse-men, directing him that when hee came to the parts of Antiochia, hee should call voto him the King of Armenia, and the other Christians of the East, and of Cyprus, and with that ftrength should enter into the Kingdome of Syria, whiles hee prepared to come after with the strength of his Armie. Cotolufa did as hee was commanded, and with his thirtie thoufand Tartars went forwards till hee came to Antioch, and then fent to the King of Armenia, who came vnto him with his Armie. The Christians also in the Kingdome of Cyprus having

30 heard of the comming of Costafa, came feedly with their Gallies and other Veffels to the Ile called Anteroda, among whom was the Lord Tyron brother to the King of Cyrus, Malter Tyron. of the Holpitall of the Temple, with their Brethren of their Societie. And these being all readie to vnder-goe the service of Christ, there came a rumour that Cafan was dangerously sicke, that men dispayred of his recourrie. Whereupon Cosolusa with his Tartars returning towards Casan; the King of Armenia returned also into his Countrey; and the Christians at the Ile of Anterada to the Kingdome of Cyprus, by which meanes the businesse of the Holy Land was veterly abandoned, which happened in the yeere of our Lord 1301.

Againe, in the yeare of our Lord 1303. Cafan affembling a mightie Armie, came with great Cafan teness. preparation to the River Emphrates, intending to enter into the Kingdome of Syrie, and there either ware to deftroy the whole Sector (Mahomet, and to reftore the Holy Land to the Christians. But of Syrie. the Saracens fearing the comming of Casan, and doubting that they should not be able to withstand him when they had reaped and gathered their Corne and other fruits of the Earth, and had housed their cattell in strong holds, they set fire on the rest, that the Tartars when they came The Saucen might not find victuals for themselues, nor for forrage for their beasts. When Casan understood burne and what the Agarens had done, and how they had waited all the Land, confidering that his hor- waste their fes could not there be fed nor fuftayned, he refolued to remayne that Winter vpon the bankes of trey. the River Empirates, and to beginne his Journey at the beginning of the Spring, when the graffe began to sproute. For the Tatas are euer more earefull of their Horses then of themselves, being contented with the smallest pittance of any kind of nourshment for themselves,

Then Cafan sent for the King of Armenia, who came to him without delay, and lodged 50 limitele on the Riuer. Cafan extended three dayes loarney in length euen from a certayne Cafile called Cacabe, to another Caffle called Bir, which Caffles appertayined to the Saracens, yet Coccabe, yeelded without any affault vnto Cafan. But while Cafan abode there, expecting the conue- 50. nient feafon for effecting his defire on the Saracens, and to deliver the Holy Landout of their hands, the Deuil cart a new Obstacle in his way, for he had newes againe that Baydo ha lentred, Baydoreb: and made more poyles on his Land then before; so that it was necessary for him to returne to again. his owne, whereat being much grieued, in respect that he was constrayed so long to delay the businesse of the Holy Land, he commanded his Captayne Cotolusa with fortie thousand Tartars Control to to enter into the Kingdome of Syria, and to take Damafeo, and kill all the Saracens; and that the soul the King of Armenia should in one his people with Cotolifa. Cafen then returned into Perfet, Lemenia

60 Corolifa and the King besieged the Citie Amar: and huning certaine Intelligence that the 9 7% Cooping and the daily control with the commercial and individual they tooke it by affect proting all the Saraceus one with another to the tword. There they found great store of wealth

Wilde Arabs.

ar thefe and the other Expuditions, till this time.

Demascus be-

Thence they went to the Citie of Damafens to befiege it, but the Citizens fent their Meffengers, defiring a Truce for three dayes which was granted them. The Scouts of the Tartars being almost a dayes Journey beyond Damafeus, tooke certayne Saracens whom they fent to Cotuloff a that he might examine them. Cotuloff being advertized by their that there were about twelue thouland Saracens Horlemen, with in two dayes Iourney from thence, which expected daily the comming of the Soldan. He rode presently with all speed, hoping to take them at vnawares : But it was almost night before Cotuloffa and the King of Armenia could reach thither. and they had Intelligence that the Soldan was come newly before them. Therefore being deceiued of their expectation to assaile those twelve thousand alone, some adulted them for the best to repose themselves that night being now somewhat late, and to set vponthe Enemie in the The obstinatie morning. But Cotulossa despiting the Soldan, and his people would not hearken to any aduice, but commanded his Armie to bee forthwith put in order : which the Saracens perceiuing, kept their standing, being on the one side fenced with a Lake, and with a Mountayne on another side.

and knowing that the Tarters could not come to affault them without danger, they would not goe forth to fight, but remayned in the place where they were, and when the Tartars thought wary Warrior, without any impediment to have affailed their Enemies; they found a small River betweene them, which in some places had no passage ouer: by meanes whereof much time was spent before they could passe ouer the River; but after they had passed the greatest part over the River, they fet manfully on their Enemies. Yet the Soldan flood still and would not remove from the Catalo Tah's place he was in, betwirt the Lake and the Mountayne; which Cotuloffa perceiuing, because the 20 darke night approched, he withdrew his company for that night and lodged them neere the Mountayne; only about a thousand Tartars, which could not passe the River, were not with him that night. The day comming, the Tartars againe couragiously fet vpon the Soldan; but as before, he would by no meanes come forth to fight, but defended himselse in that place of aduantage. So the Tartars continuing their affault from the morning vntill the ninth houre, beeing thirffie and ouer-wearie for lacke of water they retyred themselves in good order, leaving the Soldan and came to the Plaine of Damascus, where they had plentie of pasture and water at will. where they determined to abide vntill they had fufficiently reposed themselves and their

But the Inhabitants knowing, that the Armie of the Tariars was spread abroad in that Plaine, opened the Sluces of the River in the night time, whereby the waters rose so high in 10 eight houres ouer all the Plaine, that the Tartars were constrayned on the sudden to arise and depart, so that the night being darke, and the Ditches all filled with water, and no wayes nor pathes to be frene, they were all amazed in fuch fort that many Hories perifhed, and much Armour was loft, infomuch, that the King of Armenia endured much loffe, yet the day comming The Tattersing through the goodnesse of God, they elcaped the waters , but the Bowes and Arrowes of the Tartars being their chiefe weapons which they vie, and the rest of their Armour being all wet and veterly vnferuiceable, they were so assonied therewith, that if their Enemies had then purfue d them, they might have beene taken or flaine. Afterwards, the Tartars by reason that many had loft their Horses, returned fortly by small sournies to the bankes of the River Euphrates, 40 yet none of their Enemies durst follow or pursue them, but the River beeing risen and swolne through the abundance of raine that fell, many of the Armenians, as also of Georgians, perished therein, more then of the Tartars, whole Horses knew better to swimme: fo returned they into Perfia ruined and difgraced, not by the power of the Enemie, but by accident partly, partly by suill aduice. A great cause whereof was the obitinacie of Cotolusa, who would not regard any aduice that was given, for if he would have harkened to the countell of the wife, he might early have prevented those dangers.

And I Frier Hapthon the Compiler of this Historie, was present at all these proceedings : and He aydeth him if happily I treate more largely thereof then shall be thought convenient. I crave pardon in regard that I doe it to this end, that on like occasions happening these courses may bee called to minde. For these actions that are ordered by counsell, have commonly good and commendable events, but the rash and improvident Enterprizes, doe vsually faile of their wished successes. After that the King of Armenia had passed the River Euphrates with some losse, he resolved to goe to Cafan before he returned to his Kigdome of Armenia, and therefore hee went fire ght to the Citie of Ninine in which Cafan then refided. He entertayned the King with much honour, kindneffe, and magnificence, and being compassionate of his losses to make him some recompence of especiall fauour vnto him, he granted him a thousand Tartarians, continually in pay at his charge for the defence of his Kingdome, and also granted him out of the Kingdome of Turkie, a yeerely pension, for the maintenance of another thousand Armenian Horsemen yeerely at his pleasure, the King thus recompenced, having taken his leave, returned to the Kingdome of Ar. 60 menia, which Cafan had enjoyned him to watch warily ouer, vntill God pleafed to enable him personally to goe to the reliefe of the Holy Land.

CASAN dyeth, CARBAND & Succeedeth; his Apostasie. The Authors entranceinto a Religious Habit. Of TAMOR Can the fixth Emperour, and of CHAPAR, HOCHTAI, and CAR. BANDA, three other Tartarian

He King of Armenia returned fafely to his Kingdome, but after hee came thither hee found little rest there, for after it to pleased God, that Casan was surprized with a grieuous infirmitie, and haumg gouerneu wies; him the refere hee made his laft that his wisdome should bee commended in his death. Therefore hee made his laft that his wisdome should be commended in the should so Carhaamda his Heire and Successor grieuous infirmitie, and haumg gouerned wifely in his life, hee was no leffe willing Will and Testament, appointing his Brother Carbanda (or Carbaganda) his Heire and Successor Successor and having ordered all things concerning the Affaires of his Kingdome and his House in prudent manner, he made many good Ordinances and Lawes which for a memoriall heleft behind him. being at this day inuiolably observed by the Tartarians. Then dyed Casan, and his Brother Corbanda tucceeded in his Kingdome.

20 This Carbanda was the Sonne of a Ladie of famous memorie, called Erockcaton, who was very deuout and religious in Christianitie, while she lived, and had every day Divine Service celebrated before her, keeping a Priest and Chappell of her owne, so that this Carbanda was baptized and named Nicholas in his Baptisme, and continued a professed Christian as long as his Mother lived. But after his Mothers death, delighting in the focietie of Saracens, he forlooke the Chriitian Religion to become a Mahometist. The King of Armenia vnderstanding of the death of Cafan, was much troubled therewith, and his Enemies began to life vp their Crests very high. For the Soldan of Babylon thereupon fought by all meanes to endamage him and his people. fending all the yeare almost every moneth great troupes of armed Souldiers, which foraged and waited the Kingdome of Armenia, and did more damage and ipoyle on the plaine Countrey 30 then they had euer fultayned before in any mans memorie. But the Almightie and most merci- The Sellan full God who neuer for laketh altogether those that put their trust in him, had compassion on materirondes the poore afflicted Christians: for it fell out that in the moneth of July, feuen thouland Saracon, into Armenica of the best Families under the Soldan, made a reade into the Kingdome of Armenia, wasting and Spoyling all as farre as the Citie of Tharfus, in which the bleffed Apostle Saint Paul was borne. and when they had committed many spoyles in that Prouince, and were voon their returne, the King of Armenia, hauing gathered his people together, encountred and fet vpon them neere the Citie of Giazza, where more by Gods goodnesie then our worth, they were veterly over- The King of throwne in fuch fort, that of feuen thouland Saracens there escaped not three hundred, but samena outer were either taken or flaine, albeit they thought in their Pride, they could have ouer-runne the throweth his 40 whole Kingdome of Armenia, and denoure all the Christians thereat a moriell. This was performed on the Lords Day, being the eighteenth of July, after which conflict, the Saracens durit The Victorie no more enter into the Kingdome of Armenia. But the Soldan fent to the King of Armenia to bringspeace. make truce with him, which was agreed betweene them. 46. I Frier Haython, having beene prefent at all the faid proceedings, had purposed long be- The Author of

fore to haue taken a Regular Habit vpon me, and to haue entred into Religion. But by reason himselic.

with my honour forfake my friends and kindred in fuch extremities. But feeing that Gods goodnesse had beene so gracious vinto me, as to lease the King dome of Armenia, and the Chriflian people there after my manitold labours and trauels in quiet, and peaceable effate, I then so tooke the time to performe that Vow which before I had vowed. Therefore having taken my leaue of my Lord the King, and of the reit or my kindred and friends, euen in that field where God gaue the Christians Victorie over their Enemies, I beganne my Journey, and comming to Cyprus in the Mona derie of Episcopia, tooke a Regular Habit of the Order Premonstratechis, to the end that having served the World as a Souldier in my youth , I might spend the rest or my He taketh the Infein the Service of God, forfaking the pompe of this World, which was in the yeere of cur Habrofa Pre-Lord 1305. Therefore I render thankes vnto God, that the Kingdome of Armenta, is at this da. Dea. 1305. day in a good and peacerble effate, and well reformed by the Moderne King Linero, Sonne to King Haython, who is a Looking-glade or patterne to all other Kings in all kinde of eminent

of many impediments and difficulties in the Affaires of the Kingdome of Armenia, I could not

60 Moreouer, the Compiler of this Worke affirmeth, that he hath come three menner of wayes Theoreth of to the knowledge of those things which hee diclareth and writeth in this Booke. For from the this Historie beginning of Changisu Can, who was the first Emperour of the Tartas vintil Mango Can, who was their fourth Emperour, I faithfully deliner what I gathered out of the Hiftories of the Tartarians. But from Manno Canto the death of Haloon, I write, that which I received of an

ø. V.

Vertue.

Vincle of mine, who writ the same by the commandement of Haiton King of Armenia, and was present then at all the foresaid occurrences, and with great diligence did often discourse & male rehearfall of them to his Sonnes and Nephewes, that they might remayne the better to Ponteritie, and from the beginning of Abaga Can to the end of this third part of this Booke, the Author relateth those things which hee knew of himselfe, as having beene present at them all, whereby he is enabled to give testimonie of the truth. Now albeit we have hitherto treated of the Hift ries and Deeds or the Tartarians, there remayneth yet somewhat to be faid concerning their Power and Dominion, especially of those that are now living, that it may the better bee

Tamar Con.

47. The great Emperor of the Tartars which now holdeth the Empire, is called Tamor Can, 10 being their fixt Emperour, who keepeth his Residence in the Kingdome of Cathay, in a very great City called Iong, which his Father caufed to be built, as is about declared, his power is velong, or lons, ry great. For this Emperour alone is able to doe more then all the Tartarian Princes together, and fee [49.19.5.1. the Nations under his government are reputed more noble and rich, and better stored of all necessaries, because that in the Kingdome of Cathay, in which they now live, there is great abundance of riches.

Three in erior Kings of the Tartars.

Chapar.

Mollai.

Chapar.

Carbanda.

Besides this great Emperour, there are three other great Kings or Princes of the Totars. which rule each of them ouer many Nations, yet are they all subject to the Emperour, and acknowledge him their naturall and Leige Lord. And the differences which happen between them are decided in the Emperours Court, and determined by his Judgement. The first of these 20 Kings is called Chapar, another Hochtay, and the third Carbanda. This Chapar hath his Dominion in the Kingdome of Turquestan, being the necrest to the Emperour. It is thought that he is able to bring into the field foure hundred thousand Horsemen, and these are bold and good Warriours, but not fo well furnished of Horse and Armour as were expedient. The Emperours subiects doe many times make warre vpon them , and they on the other fide doe often invade the people of Carbanda. The Dominion of this Chapar was in ancient time subject for the greatest

Hoffer of who came the Zagatay Tartars, and Tameriane.
That is the Hum of whom the Hungarians had originall. Cartanda.

Hochtay keepeth his Seat of Residence in the Kingdome of Cumania, in a Citie called Asaro, (or Sara) and it is faid, that he is able to bring fix hundred thousand Horsemen to the fight, yet are they not fo much commended in Feats of Armes, as the men of Chapar, albeit they have bet- 30 ter Horses. These make warre sometimes on the Subiects of Carbanda, sometimes against the Hungarians, and sometimes amongst themselues. But Hochtay who ruleth at this present holdeth his Dominion peaceably and quietly.

Carbanda hath his Dominion in the Kingdome of Afia the Great, and maketh his chiefe abode in the Citie of Tauris, beeing able to bring three hundred thousand Horsemen to the field. But these are gathered out of divers parts being rich and well furnished with necessaries, Chapar and Hochtay doe sometimes make warre vpon Carbanda, but hee neuer medleth first with them: neither moueth warres against any but that he sometimes invadeth the Soldan of Egypt: against whom his Predecessors have fought many Battailes. Chapar and Hochtay would willingly take from Carbanda his Dominion, if they were able to effect it. The reason whereof is this, Asia is divided into two parts, the one part whereof being called

The division of the Lower or Deepe Asia, is inhabited by the Emperour, and those two Kings called Chapar and

led the fron

Hosbitay. The other part being the higher, is called Afathe Greater, in which Carbanda inhabiteth and hath Dominion. Now there are only three wayes by which men may passe out of the Deeper or Lower Afia, vnto the high Countrey called Afia Maior, The one is out of the Kingdome of Turqueffan, to the Kingdome of the Persians; another way there is called Derbent, which lyeth neere the Sea where Alexander built the Citie called the Iron Gate, as in the Histo-The Catie calries of Cumania appeares; the other way is to goe over the Sea, called Mare maius, which way lyeth through the Kingdome of Barca,. By the first way the subjects of Chapar cannot passe to the Territories of Carbanda, without great danger and difficultie, because they should find no so feeding for their Horses in many dayes trauailes, the Land being so dry and barren, that before they could come to any fruitfull inhabited Countrey, their Horses would be flarued, or at least so faint and wearied that they might be easily ourcome, and therefore that way they will not take. By the way of Derbent the people of Hochtay may palle into the Countrey of Carbanda, only fixe moneths in the yeare, which is in the Winter time. But that way Abaga hath caufed great Trenches and Fortifications to bee made in a place called Ciba: and is alwayes kept and especially in the Winter with a Garrison of armed men to defend the passage. The people of Hochtay have assayed many times to passe that way by stealth and secretly : but they never could, neither can by any meanes doe: for in a Plaine called Monga, there are Alwayes in the Winter time certaine Birds about the bignesse of Phelants having very faire feathers to behold, 60 The Birds cal- and these Birds (which are called Seysorach) when any people come into that Plaine, straight

flye away ouer those Watchmen and their Trenches, whereby the Souldiers there are eft-soones

affored of the comming of their Enemies, and prevent the furprize; and by the way of the Sea

called Mare mains, they neuer attempted, because that way goeth through the Kingdome of

Huskes poore Christian Prodigals (prodigall to beleene fuch lyes) were fed with in stead of Bread; not onely in the Church by Legends, but in their private studies, by Arthurs, Orlandos, Beuiles, Guyes, 60 Robin Hoods, Palmerins, and I know not what monstrous changeling-births of Historie. Such was this Ogerus: and in great part such was Odericus a Friar and Traueller, in whom perhaps some Friar Odericus on M. buth travelled, with him at least in this Author (whose age was before him, and therefore could not cite Helpublich.d. ought out of him.) Neither is it for nothing (though for worse then nothing, a lye is both) that Priars are in this storie so often mentioned and prayfed: I smell a Friars (Lyars) hand in this businesse. Our

Barca, which is so mightie in people and so strongly situated, that they are without hope to Barca in the prenayle there, and by meanes hereof hath Carbanda and his Predecesfors beene secured from Latine Copie the power of fo potent Neighbours. Now we will briefly fay fomewhat of the manners and is called Abeat. fashions of the Tartars.

48. The Caraians do so much differ from other Nations in their fashions and manner of living, The Religion that it were tedious to treat of the manifold diversitie and strange varietie found among it them; of the Catalans They acknowledge and confesse one Immortall God, and they call upon his Name: yet they nei- or Tariarians ther fait nor pray, nor any wayes afflict nor humble themselves, for feare or reverence of him, of those peris, nor doe any good workes. The killing of men they hold to bee no finne: but if they happen to Impunitie of

10 leave their Bridle in their horse-mouth when hee should feed , they thinke therein they offend God mortally. Fornication and Lecherie is held by them as no finne. They marrie many wines, Polygamie. and the custome is, that the Sonne must marrie his Step-mother after the death of his Father : and the Brother is married to his Brothers Wife after his deceale. In matter of Armes they are very good, and more obedient to their Superiour then other Nations are : and doe easily know by certaine fignes in Battaile the will of their Commander : whereby the Armie of Tartarians Warfare, is easily ruled and commanded. Their Lord bestoweth not any stipend on them, but they live on hunting and fuch prey as they can get : and their Lord may take from them when hee lift whattoeuer they have.

When the Tarrars ride upon any enterprize, they take with them great store of Horse, drin-20 king their Milke, and feeding on their fielh which they reckon very good food. The Tartars are Enting of very readie and excellent Archers on horse-backe, but on foot they are but slow, they are dex- Horse fieth. terous and ingenious in taking of Cities and Caltles, and are for the most part victorious over their Enemies; yet will they not forbeare to turne their backes in the skirmish if it be for their advantage. And this advantage they have in the field that they will fight with the Enemies when they lift themselves, and yet they cannot be compelled to fight but at their pleasure. Their manner of fight is very dangerous, to that in one conflict or skirmish of the Tartars there are more flaine and wounded then in any great Battaile of other Nations, which hapneth by reason of their Arrowes, which they shoot strongly, and surely out of their Bowes; beeing indeed so skilfull in the arte of shooting, that they commonly pierce all kind of Armour, and if they 30 happen to be routed, yet they flye in troupes and bands fo well ordered, that it is very dangerous to follow or purtice them, because they shoot their Arrowes backwards in their flight,

The Armie of the Tarrars maketh no great shew, because they goe trooping close together, so that an Armie of one thousand Tartars will scarse feeme fine hundred. The Tartarians doe cour- Their Hospi-

teously entertayne strangers, giving them part of their Viands, and expect the like offers to bee taking. made them, for otherwise they will take it by violence. They are much more skilfull in conquering of Countries then in keeping of them. When they are weake they are humble and gentle; flout and proud when they are growne the stronger. They cannot endure lying in other men, yet themselues are much given to lying, valesse it be in two especiall things. The one Delight in 40 being in matter of Armes, in which none dareth affirme, that he did any exploit which was not lying. done by him, or denie any faire Act which hee hath committed : The other is , That who foeuer hath done any offence, though it descrueth death, he confessesh it presently to his Lord if he be

wounding and killing oft-times both men and horses that pursue them.

examined thereon. This may fuffice at this time , concerning the manners of the Tartars , be-

cause it were long to rehearse all the different customes and kinds of behaviour. The other Chapters which follow, pertayning rather to aduice fitting those Times, and the boly Land . affaires, then the Tattatian Historie, I have omitted. And in the next place will present some Extracts of our Countriman, that famous Traueller Sir Iohn Mandevile, whose Geographie Ortelius commendeth, how soener be acknowledgeth his Worke stuffed with Fables. For my part, I cannot but deplore the loffe of Such a Treasure, but know not how to recour or repayre it (as Ramusio bath done for Polo) and 50 here have beene forced to deale with him, as Historians doe with our famous Arthur, daring to say little,

because others have dared so much and such increashilities. For his merit, and for his Nation I have

given a touch of him, these few Latine Extracts; referring him that hath a mende to reade him, to Ma-

ster Hakluits sirst Edition of his Voyages, where bis storie in Latine is to be scene at large. I suspect that Some later Fabler ont of the Tales of Ogerus the Dane hath Stuffed this Storie; Some of which, for Ogerus Done, a taste, I have here left remayning; not that I take pleasure in lyes, but that thou mailt see, from what of whom they Fountaine I suppose this corruption flowed : and in that mislie Age (when humaner learning was in- write that hee hum.inely imprisoned, and Dusine Scripture was vulgarly buried, and Printing net at all borne) what dia occ.

Mandevile transled from Ierulalem beyond lerico, from Christendome to remotest Ethnikes, and bath fallen among Theeues : The Friarly Priest and Leuite not onely neglected him, but I am afraid placed the Theenes thus to rob and wound him; mayming the two former parts, and inggling in the third, which I have therefore chopped off; not daving in the former but with the Nilus Dogge to taffe and away, for feare of a false Crocodile. Here you may finde lyes by retaile effecta, afficta, afficta, afficta, to, this Mandevile; who there, is made a maunde vile full of fuch pedlerie, unworthy thy light.

# CHAP. VI.

Briefe Collections of the Trauels and Observations of Sir Ionn Man-Devile; written by Master Bale, Cent. 6.



Ohn Mandevile, Knight, borne in the Towne of Saint Albons, was so well given to the studie of Learning from his childhood, that he seemed to plant a good part to the fludie of Learning from his childhood, that he feemed to plant a good part of his felicitie in the fame; for he supposed that the honor of his birth would not thing auaile him, except hee could render the fame more honorable by his knowledge in good Letters. Hauing therefore well grounded himfelfe in Religion by reading the Scriptures, he applyed his studies to the Art of Physick, a Profession

worthy a noble wit : but among it other things, hee was rauished with a mightie desire to see the greater parts of the World, as Asia and Africa. Having therefore provided all things necessaries for his journey, hee departed from his Countrey in the yeere of Christ 1332, and as another Visites returned home, after the space of source and thirtie yeeres, and was then knowne to a very tew. In the time of his travaile he was in Scythia, the greater and leffe Armenia, Egypt, both Lybias, Arabia, Syria Media, Mesopotamia, Persia, Chaldra, Greece, Illyrium, Tartarie, and diuers other Kingdomes of the World; and having gotten by this meanes the knowledge of the Languages, let fo many and great varieties, and things miraculous, whereof himfelfe had beene an eye wit celle, should perish in oblinion, hee committed his whole Trauell of three and thirtie an eye wit. ene, income permit of the state England, and having feene the wickednesse of that Age , hee gave out this speech : In our time (fard hee) it may bee spoken more truly then of old, that Vertue is gone, the Church is vnder foot, the Clergie is in error, the Deull raigneth, and Simonie beareth the fway, &c. Hee wed at Leege, in the yeere 1372. the 17. day of November, being there buried in the Abbey of the Order of the Guilselmites.

The Tombe and Epitaph of Sir Iohn Mandevile, in the Citie of Leege, spoken of by Ortelius, in his Booke called Itinerarium Belgia,

M Agna & populofa Leodii fubirbia, ad collimn radices, in quorum ingis multa furt, & pulcher-ruma Monufersa, inter que magnificum illud, ae nobile D. Laurentio dicasum, ab Raginardo Episcopo. Est in hac quoq, Regione, vel suburbijs Leodij, Guilielmitarum Canobium, in quo Epitaphum boc Icannis à Mandeville, excepimus.

Epitaphium.

Hic jacet vir nobilis, D. Ioannes de Mandeville, aliter dictus ad Barbam, Miles, Dominus de Campdi, natus de Anglia, Medicinæ Professor, deuotissimus, orator, & bonorum largissimus pa peribus erogator, qui toto quafi orbe lustrato, Leody diem vitæ fine clusit extremum. Anno Dom. 1371. Menfis Nouembris, die 17.

Hac m lapide: in quo calata viri armati imago, Leonem calcantis, ba ba bifurcata, ad caput manus 50 benedicens, & vernacula bac verba: Vos qui pateis for mi, pour l'amour deix preles por mi. Cliреш erat vacuu, in quo olim fuisse dicebant laminam aream, & cius in ea stidem calata ir signia . Leonem videlicet argenteum, cui ad pectus lunula rubea in campo caruleo, quem Limbus ambiret denticulatiu ex auro. Eins nobis oftendebant, & cultros, ephipiag, , & calcaria quibus osum fuisse asserbant, in peragrando toto fere terrarum orbe, ot clavius testatur esus Itinerarium, quod typus etiam excusum passim babetur.

DRincipi Excellentissimo, præ cunctis mortalibus præcipue venerando, Domino Edmardo Pejus nominis Tertio, diuina providentia, Francorum & Anglorum Regi Serenificno, Hibernie Domino, Aquitarie Duci, mari ac eius Infulis Occidentalibus dominanti, Christianorum 69 encomio & ornatui, vniueriorumq; arma gerentium Tutori, ac Probitatis & strenuisatis exemplo Principi quoq inuicto, mirabilis Alexa dri Sequaci, ac vinuerlo Orbi tremendo, cum reuerentia non qua decet, cum ad talem, & tantam reuerentiam minus sufficientes extiterint, sed qua paruitas, & possibilitas mittentis ac offerentis se extendunt, contenta tradantur.

Cum

"Vm terra Hierosolymitana, terra promissionis filiorum Dei, dignior cunctis mundi terris sit ha- Pats prima bends multis ex causis, & pracipue illa quod Deus conditor coli & mundi ipsam tanti dienatus fuit continens caobenda muitis ex canjis, or pracipie ina, quou Done verine un conserve generi humano per incar-estimare, ot in eo proprium filium Saluatorem mandi Cariftum exhibneris generi humano per incar-Cap. 1, nationem ex sutemer at a Virgine, & per eisu conversationem humillimam in eadem, ac per dolorosam Commendatio mortis sua consummationem widem, at q, inde per eins admirandam Resurrectionem, ac Ascensionem in breuis terra calum, & postremb quia creditur illic in fine saculi renersurus, & omnia indicaturus : certum est, quod Hierosolymiab omnibus qui Christiano nomine à Christo dicuntur, sit tanquam à suis propris baredibus diligenda, & pro chius q, potestate ac modulo honoranda. Verum quia iam nostres temperibus verius quam olim dici potest, Virtus, Ecclesia, Clerus, Demon, Simonia, Cessat, calcatur, errat, regnat, dominatur. ne ecce sufto Dei sudicio, credita est terra tam inclyta, & Sacrofantta impiorum manibus Saracenorum, quod non est ab [q, dolore pijs mentibus audiendum, & recolendum. Ego Ioannes Mandeuil militaris ordinis saltem gerens nomen, natus & educatus in terra Anglia, in Villa Sancti Albani, ducebar in Adolescentiamea tali inspiratione, ut quamuis non per potentiam, nec per vires proprias possem prafatam terram fius heredibus recuperare, orem tamen per aliquod temporis spacium percerimari ibidem, & fa-lutarem aliquantulum de propinquo. Unde in Anno ab Incarnatione Domini 1322. impossi me nauje lezniu Manda. eations Martilientis maris & via, in boe temporis, Anni 1355. Silicet , per 33. annos in transmarinis villi peccerigations mathienus maris & vigs, in occ semper to a same 1533 former of 150 maris in configuration particles partibus manss, perceptinatus sirm, ambulani, & circuini multas, ac dinersus Patrias, Regiones, Pronin&trigina ancias, & Insulas, Turciam, Armeniam maiorem & minorem, Ægyptum, Lybiam bassam & alsam, nos continus. Syriam, Arabiam, Perliam, Chaldwam, Ethiopiz partem magnam, Tartariam, Amazoniam, In- tz. 20 diam minorem, & mediam, ac partem magnam de maiore, & in ifis, & circum effas Regiones, multas

Insulas, Constates, Vrbes, Castra, Villas, & loca, vbi habitant varia gentes, aspectuum, morum, legum

acrituum diuersorum : Attamen quia summo desiderio in terra promissionis eram , ipsam deligentius,

per loca vestigiorum filij Dei perlustrare curaui , & diutius in illa steis. Quapropter & m hac prima parte buins operu iter tam peregrinandi, quam nauigandi, à partibus Angliz ad spfam deferibo, & loca notabiliter fanita, qua intra candem (unt breuiter commemoro & diligenter, quaienus peregrinis tam

in itinere quamin pronentione valeat hac descriptio in aliquo deserune. Qui de Hibernia, Anglia, Scotia, Noruegia, aus Gallia iter arripit ad partes Hierofolymitanas Cap. 2. potest saltem vsg, ad Imperialem Greciz Cinitatem Constantinopolim eligere sibi modum proficis- tim per terras cends, sine per Terras, sine per Aquas. Et si peregrinando eligit transsigere viam, tendst per Coloniam quim per s-30 Agrippman, & sie per Almaniam in Hungariam ad Montlusant Cinitatem, sedem Regni Hungariæ, quas vique in Et est Rew Hungariæ multum potens issis temporibus. Namtenst & Sclauoniam, & magnam partems Constantino Regni Comannorum, & Hungariam, & pariem Regni Ruffiæ. Oportet vet peregrinus in finibus polini. Hintopriz transeat manum Danuhii flumen. & madat in Reloration. Hee flumen with the Regis Hunga-Hungariz transest magnum Danubij sumen, & vadat in Belgradum; Hoc sumen oritur inter Mon-itz olm potana Almania, & currens versus Orientem, recipit in se 40. flumina antequam siniatur in mare. De tentia,

Belgrade intratur terra Bulgaria, & transitur per Pontem petrinum finnis Marroy, & per terram Pyncenars, & tune intratur Græcia, in Cinitates Sternes, Almopape, & Andrinopolis, & sie in Constantinopolim, voi communiter est sedes Imperatoris Grecia. Qui autem viam eligit per aquas verlus Constantinopolim nanigare, accipiat fibi portum, pront voluerit, propinguum fine remotum, Marfilia, Pifi, Ianua, Vene: ijs, Roma, Neapoli, vel alibi: fica tranfeat Tufciam, Campaniam, taliam, Corticam, Sarcinam, of gene in Stellam, que distinte a Italiam per frachium maris non magnum. In Sicilia of Mons Arm inguer ardens, qui ibidem appellatur Mons Gibelle, & preter Mons Etca.

magnam. In Sicilia que como sacita seguer a massa, y que magnam especial prometer: focusadam descrip-cialme babestur se loca Coltan tou fos fun fepera luca quasf fempe i quem frirantes: focusadam descrip-tatem colorum barum flammarum essimases lucala annum fertilem fore, vel fierilem, ficema vel humi-Eolides Indum, calidum, vel frieidum : hac loca vocant caminos Infernales, & a finibus Italiz víg, ad ista loca sulz. funt 25. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus inveniuntur frondes, flores, & fru- Temperies Eus per totorm annum, etiam in profunda hyeme. Regnum Siciliz est bona, & grandis Insula babens in Siciliz Insula. circuitu fere lencas 300. Et ne quis erret, vel de facili reprehendat quoties scribo lencam, intelligendum est de leuca Lombardica, que aliquanto maior est Geometrica; & quoties pono numerum, sub intelli- Louis Lomgatur fere, vel circiter, fine citra , & duetam intendo ponere , de 10. Lombardicis leucis : Geometrica bardica

50 autem leuca describitur, ve notum est, per hos versus.

Quinque pedes passum faciunt, passus quoque centum Viginti quinque stadium, si millia des que Octo facis stadia, duplicatum dat tibi leuca.

Constantinopolis pulchra est Cinitae, & nobilis, triangularis in forma, firmiterá, murata, caius Cap. z. dna partes includuntur mari Hellesponte, quod plurimi modo appellant brachium Sanctis Georgij, & ali- De vroe Cinqui Buke, Troia vetus. Versus locum vbi boc brachium exet de mari est lata verra planties, in que an- stantinopoli, tequitus stetit Troia Civitas de qua apud Poetas mira leguntur, sed nunc valde modeca apparent vesti.
gia Civitatis. In Constantinonoli habentur musta merchalia. gia Civitatis. In Constantinopoli habentur multa mirabilia, ac insuper multa Santi orum vener unda reliquia, ac super omnia, preciosissima Crux Christi, seu maior pars illius, & tunica viconsutilis, cum 60 spongis & arundane, & rono clauorum, & dimidia parte Corone spinee, cuius altera medictas seruatur in Capella Regis Franciz, Partifijs. Nam & ego indignus diligenter pluribus vicibus respexi partem v-

tramą, : dabatur quoq, mibi de illa Parilijs vnica spina, quam vsq, nunc preciose conscruo, & est ipsa spina non lignea sed velut de iuncis marinis rigida, & pungitiua. Ecclesia Constantinopolitana in benorem Sancta Sophia, id est, ineffabilis Dei sapientia dedicata dictiur, & nobilissima vniuer serum Ecclesa Son

Quid fit d.eta.

munds E-clefarum, tam in schemate artificiosi operis, quam in seruatsi ibi Sacrosanclis Relliquiss : nam Regina Helena & continet corpus Santa Anna Matris nostra Domine translatum illuc per Keginam Helenam ab Hierofolymis : & corpus Santta Luca Enangelista translatum de Bethania Iudea; Et corpus Beati Ioannis Chrysoftomi ipfius Cimitatis Episcopi, cum multis aligs Reliquis preciosis; quoniam est ibi vas grande cum huiusmodi reliquis velut marmoreum de Petra Enhydros; quod ingiter de seipso desudans aquano, semel in anno innenium suo sudore repletum. Ante banc Ecclessam, super columnam marmoream habetur de are assiato opere susorio, maena Imago Iustiniani quondam Imperatoris super Equain sedemis. De pradicta terra Thracia fun Philosophus Arittoteles oriundus in Cinitate Stage-Adjustin tum. 125, O est ibi in loco rumba erus velut altare, vbi O singulis annis certo die celebratur a populo sestum illus, ac si fuisset Sanctus. Temporibus ergo magnorum consiliorum conneniunt illuc supientes terre, 10 reputantes sibs per inspirationem immutti consilium optimum de agendis. Item ad divisionem Thracia & Miccoloniz funt due merabiliter alti Montes, vinus Olympus, alter Athos, cuius vliimi umbra O. riente sole apparet ad 76. miliaria, es a in Insulam Lemnon. In borum cacumine montium ventus non currit, nec aer monetur, &c.

Cap. to. De conductu

Prin; diclum est de renerentia Soldani, quando ad ipsum intratur exhibenda. Sciendum ereo, cum De conductu ab eo petitur securus conductus, nemini denegare consumit, sed datur petentibus communiter sigillum v que in Sinzi. eius, in appenditione absque literis : hec sigillum, pro vexillo in virga aut hasta dum peregrini ferum, ownes Stracent videntes illud flexis genibus in terram se renerenter inclinant, & portantibus omnem exhibent humanitatem. Verumtamen satis maior sit renerensia literis Soldani seillatis, quod & Admirabiles, & quicung, aly Domini, quando eis monstrantur, antequam recipiant, se multum inclinant: 20 Deinde ambabus manibus ess capientes ponunt super propria capita, postea osculantur, & tandem legunt inclinaticum magna veneratione, quibus semel aut bis perlettis, offerunt se promptos ad explendum quicquid ibi iubetur, ac insuper exhibent deserenti, quicquid possint commodi, vel bonoris : sed talem conductum per literas Soldani vix quifquam perierinorum accipit, qui non in Curta illius stetit, vel notitiam apud illum habuerit. Ego autem habui in recessiu mec , in quibus etiam continebatur ad omnes fibi fubiccos speciale mandatum, vt me permitterent intrare, & respicere fingula loca, pro mea placito voluntatis, & mihi exponerent quorumcunq; locorum mysteria distincte & absque vllo velamine veritatis, ac me cum omni fodalitate mea benigne reciperent, & in cun etis rationalibus audirent , requifiti autem fi necesse foret de ciuirate conducerent in ciuitatem. Habito nad, peregrinis conductu, ad Montem Sinay, &c. Mons Sinay appellatur ibi desertum Syn : quasi in radice Montis istius habetur Comobium Mo-

Literæ Solda. ni in gratiam Mandevilli concessa.

Cap. 11. De Monaftenachorum pergrande, cuius clausura in circuitu est sirmata muris altis, & portis fetreis, prometubestiarum deserti. Hi Monachi sunt Arabes, & Graci, & in magno conuentu, multum Deo deuoti. O-Sendere solent & caput ipsius Cathering cum involumento sanguinolento, & multas perterea santtas, & venerabiles reliquias, que omnia minitus sum diligenter & sepe, oculis indignis, &c. Icrusalem cum tota terra Promissionis, est quasi una de quing, Pronincijs vel pluribus, quibus Regnum Syria distinguitur. lungitur amem ludaa ad Orientem Regno Arabia, ad meridiem Ægypto,

rio Sinay, & reliquija bea-22 Catherina Omittuntur feqq.vid.fury. 1.8. 6.13. Cap, 14, De Ecclelia

gloriofi S:pul- fis possessa fuit Nationibus, Cananzorum, Indzorum, Aflyriorum, Perlarum, Medorum, Macedonum, Græcerum, Romanorum, Christianorum, Saracenorum, Barbarerum, Turcorum, & Tar- 40 in vrbe Icrutarorum. Cuius rei causa mersto potest astimari, quad non sustinuit Deus magnos peccatores longo

tempore permanere in terra sibi tam placita, & tam sancta. It aque peregrunus veniens in Ierusalem primo expleat suam peregrinationem, ad renerendum & Sa-Templum Se. crofanctum Domini nostri lesu Christi Sepulchrum: cuius Ecclesia est in vitima cinitatis extremitate, ad partem Aquilonarem, cum proprio sui ambitus muro ipsi cinitats aduncto. Ipsa vero Ecclesia est pnichra & rotunda forma cooperta de super cum tegulis plumbeis, habens in Occidente turrim altam & firmam, in pauimenti Ecclesia medio ad siguram dinidiy compassi habetur nobili opere Latonico adisicatum paruum Tabernaculum quasi 15. pedum tam longitudinis quam latitudinis, & altitudinis miro artificio intus extrag, compositum, ac multum diligenter diuersis coloribus ornatum. Hoc itag, in Tabernaculo seu Capella, ad latus dextrum, continetur incomparabilis thesaurus gloriosissimi Sepulchri, baben- 59 tss olio pedes longitudinis, & quinque latitudinis. Et quoniame in toto habitaculo nulla est apertura pre-ter paruum ostum, illustratur accedentibus peregrinis pluribus lampadebus, (quarum ad impia pra coram sepulchro sugiter ardere solet) ingressius.

ad Occidentem mari magno, & ad Aquilonem Regno Syria. Iudea terraper diner fa tempora a diner-

Sciendum, quod ante breue tempus solebat sepulchrum esse ingressis peregrinis accessibile, ad tangendum & osculandum: sed quia multi vei effringebant, vel conabantur sibi effringere aliquid de petra se-Meles Mandy pulchri, ifte Soldanus Melech Mandybron fecit illud confabricari, ve nec ofculari valeat, nec adiri. bres Soldanus, sed tantummodo intueri. Et ob illam cansam in sinistro pariete in alitudine quinque pedum immurari estralturam petra sepulchri ad quantitatem capitis humani, quod tanquam pro sepulchro ibi ab omnibus veneratur, tangitur, & ofculatur.

Dicitur ibi quoq, communiter prafatam lampadem coram sepulchro singulis annis in die Sancta Pa- 60 Mandevillus de raschemes, hora nona extungui, & in media nolle Pascha sine humano studio reaccendis. Quod (si ita est) hoc dubitat, euidens dinini benefici, miraculum est. Et quamuis id plurimi Christians simpliciter in maeno pietatis vid, sup. 1.3.4.2. merito credant, pleriss, tamen est in suspicione. Forte talia Saraceni custodes sepulchri singentes divulgauerunt, pro angendo emolumenta tributi, quod inde resultaret, seu oblationum.

Singulis autem annis in die Coma Domini in Parascheue, & in vigilia Pasche, tribus his diebus. Tumba Gode-Tumba Gede-manet l'abernaculum hoc apertum continue, & patet omnibus Christianis gentibus accessus, alias vero fridi de bollion. non per annum sine redditione tributi. Intra Ecclesiam, prope parietem dextrum, est Caluaria locus, voi crucifixus pependit Christus Dominus. Per gradus ascenditur in bunc locum, & est rupis velut albi coloris, cim aliqua rubedine per loca commixta, babens sciffuram, quam dicunt Golgotha, in qua maior pars preciosi (anguinis Christi dicutur influxisse : voi & habetur Altare construitum, ante aund consistunt tumbe Godefridi de Bullion, erc.

Ultrà duo stadia ab Ecclesia ad Meridiem sancti Sepulchri habetur magnum hospitale sancti Ioan- Capas. nis Hierofolymitani, qui caput & fundamentum effe dignoscitur ordinis Hospitaliorum modo tenen. De tribus alijs to tium Rhodum Insulam : in quo recipi possunt omnes Christiani peregrini cuiuscunque sint conditionis, Eccleijs, & seu status, vel dignitatis. Nam Saraceni pro leui cura anxis rumoris, prohibent ne apud quenquain. Specialites de (worum Christianus pernottet. Ad sustentationem adisicis huiss bospitalis, habentur in eo 124.co-mini, lumna marmorea, & un parietibus distincti 54. pilary. Satis prope hunc locum in Oruntem, est Ecclesia que destur, de Domina nostra magna: & inde non remote alia, que dicitur nostra Domina Latinorum, adificata super locum, vbi Maria Megdalene, & Maria Cleopha cum alijs planibus, dum Christus cruci affigebatur, flebant & dolores lamentabiles exercebant.

Item ab Ecclesia sancts Sepulchri in Orsentem ad stadium cum dimidio habetur adisscium mirabile, ac pulcbrum valde, quod Templum Domini nominatur, quod constructum est in forma rotunda, cuiss circumferentie Diameter habet 64. cubitos, & altitudo eius 126. & intrinsecus pro sustentatione edificit, 20 multi pilarij. În medio autem Templi est locus altior 14. gradibus, qui & ipse columnis undig, est stipatius : & secundum qualuor mundi plagas habet Templum quatuor introitus per portas Cypressinas artificiose compositas, nobilitera, sculptas, & excisas. Et ante portam Aquilonarem intra Templum sons est aque munda, qui quamuis olim exundabat, tamen nune minime finis. In soso circuitu adifici extrinsceus est valde pro atrio latumspacium loci, stratum per totum pauimentum marmoribus. Hoc Templum non ducitur stare in codem loco vbi Ten plum Dei stetit in tempore Christi, quo post Resurrectionem a Romanis destructo, istud longo post tempore Adrianus Imperator extruxit, sed non ad formam Templi prioris : pradictum tamen excelsum in medio Templi locum vocant Iudzi Santtum Santtorum, Sciatis itag, quod Saraceni magnam exhibent buic Temple reuerentiam, & bonorem, sapiw illud dis-

calceati intrantes, & positis genibus deuote Deum Omnipotentem exorantes, nulla enim ibidem habetur 30 imago, sed multa lampades relucentes. Neminem Christianorum seu Iudzorum ingredi suum hoc mago, jeu musa sampuna. Templum, reputantes eos indiguos ad hoc, & nimium immundos, unde nifi virtute luterarum quas habui tradite Mondi à Soldano, nec ego fuissem ingressiu. Ingrediens autem cum meis sodalibus deposimus calciamenta, uillo. recogitantes cum multa cordis denotione, nos magis id facere debere, quam incredulos Saracenos.

Porrò in eo loco ubs statuerat idem Rex ante Templum Altare holocausti, videlicet extra portam Templi Occidentalem, babetur & nunc Altare, sed non ad instar, nec ad vsum primi : Nam Saraceni, quasi nibil curantes, traverunt in eo lineas tanquam in Astrolabio sigentes in linearum centro batellum, ad cuius umbram per lineas discernuntur diei bora.

Viaturo ad dextram satis de propinquo habetur & alia Ecclesia,qua nunc appllatur schola Salomonis: rursusq, ad Meridiem est & alind Templum sue Ecclesia, que vocatur Templum Salomonis, quod Depuntuso-40 elim fuit caput, & fundamentum tetius ordinis Templariorum, &c.

Dominus Soldanus quodam die in Castro, expussis omnibus de camera sua, me solum retinuit secum vibem. tanquam pro secreto habendo colloquio. Consuetum enim est ys eycere omnes tempore secretorum: qui diligenter a me interroganit qualis esset gubernatio vita in terra nostra, breuster respondebam, bona, per Colloquium Dei gratiam, qui recepto boc verbo dixit ita non effe. Sacerdores (inquit) vestri, qui seipsos exhi. Soldani cum bere deberent alijs in exemplum, in malis iacent actibus, parum curant de Templi feruitio : ha- Mandevillo. bitu & studijs se conformant mundo: se inebriant vino, continentiam instringentes, cum fraude Sacredoum. negotiances, ac praua principibus consilia ingerentes. Communis quoque populus, dum festis diebus intendere deberent deuotioni in Templo, currit in hortis, in spectaculis, in Tabernis vique Repichenso ad crapulam, & ebrietatem, & pinguia manducans & bibens, ac in bestiarum morem, luxuriam vulgi iust sima 50 prauam exercens. In viura, dolo, rapina, furto, detractione, mendatio & periurio viuunt plures eorum euidenter, ac si qui talia non agant, vt fatui reputantur, & pro nimia cordis superbia nesciunt ad libitum excogitare, qualiter se velint habere, mutando sibi indumenta, nunc longa, nunc curta Vestimentonimis, quandoque ampla, quandoque structa vitra modum, vt in his singulis appareane derisi po- 1 um varietas tius quam vestiti : pyleos quoque, calceos, calligis, corrigias sibi fabricant exquisitas, cum etiam reprehensa. è contra deberent secundum Christi sui doctrinam simplices, Deo deuoti, humiles, veraces, inuicem diligentes, inuicem concordantes, & insuriam de facili remittentes. Scimus etiam eos prop-

quamuis ab Instalis ore prolate, & vultu pre rubore demisso percunctatus sum, Domine, Salua rene-

rentia, qualiter potestis ita plene hoc noscere? De hominibus (ait) meis interdum mitto ad medim

Mercatorum per terras & Regiones Christianorum, cum Balfano, Gemmis, Sericis, ac Aromatibus,

iationem merebuntur de nostris eam manibus recuperare.

ter peccata fua perdidiffe hanc terram optimam quam tenemus, nec timemus eam amittere, quamdiu se taliter gubernant. Attamen non dubitamus, quin in suturum per meliorem vitæ conuer-Ad hoc ego vitra confusus & simpefactas, nequiui muenire responsum; verebar enim obloqui veritati,

CHAP. 6.

ac per illos singula exploro, tam de statu Imperatoris, ac Pontificum Principum, ac Sacerdotum, quam. Prelatorum, nec non Equora, Prouincias, ac distinctiones carum.

Igitur peraita collocutione nostra satis producta, egressos Principes in cameram renocanit ex quibus quatuor de maioribus iuxta nos aduocans, fecit eos expresse ac debite, per singulas dinissiones in lingua Gal. licana destinguere per partes, & singularum nomina partium, omnem Regionem terra Anglia, ac alias Christianorum terrrai multas, acst inter nostros fuissent nati, vel multo tempore conuersati. Nam co ipsum Soldanum audiui cum is bene & directe loquentem idioma Francorum. Itaque in omnibus bis mente consternatus obmutui, cogitans, & dolens de peccatis singulis, rem talster se habere. Oc.

Secunda pars. Cap. 26. De Æthiopia, & Diamantibus, & de infima lodia. India triplex. Cap. 28.

De Ecclefia &

corpore lanctæ

Thomas Apo-

Calami vel

Apottoli erc.

Calumè.

Idolum in

132

Ethiopia confistit à terra Chaldworum in Austrum, qua distinguitur in Orientalem Æthiopiam, 10 A Ethiopia conjujiti a terra Chaldworum in Autrum, qua ujungmuur in Oruniaem Atinopiam, G Meridionalem, quarum prima in illis partibus vocatur Culh, propter hominum nigredinems,

De Ethiopia intratur in Indiam mediam, nam triplex eft, videlicet Infima, que in quibusdam, luis partibus est nimie frigida ad inhabitandum: Media qua satis temperata est, & Superior, qua nimie

Hinin Meridiem pluribus exactis Insulis per viam decem dietarum venitur in Regnum Mahron. Illic in ciuitate Calamix, servatur in magno Templo corpus beatissime Thoma Apostoli Domini noster Iefu Christi in capsa bonorisicata. In quo loco & martirizatus fuit, licet dicunt quidam, quod in E. dilla ciuitate. Iste populus non est multum tempus transactum, quin fuit totus in sidei religione, sed nune Regio Mabron eft ad peffimes Gentilium ritus perner fus.

Per certas historias habetur Ducem Danorum Ogerum conquistuisse has terras, & in exaltatione sanctarum Apostoli rell'quiarum fecisse fieri prefatam spectactilem Ecclesiam, &c.

In hac ipfa beats Thomx Ecclesia statuerunt multamira magnitudinis simulachra, ax quibus mum quod maius est multo alius, apparet sedens homo in alto solio adoperto aureis sericis, & lapidibus pratiosis, Templo fancti haben[q. ad collum suspensa pro ornatu multa cinctoria pretiose genomis, & auro contexta. Ad bocautem Idolum adorandum confluunt peregrini à remotis partibus, & propinqui, in satie maiori copia, & valde feruentiori denotione quam Christiani, ad fanctium Iacobum in Galizia, quia multi corum. per totum peregrinationis iter, non audent erigere palpebras oculorum, ne forte propter hoc deuotio in-

Ali, de propè venientes superaddunt labori itinerandi, ve ad tertium vel ad quartum passum semper ¾ cadant in genibus. Nonnulls quoque Demoniaca inspiratione semetipsos per viam peregrinationis lasceolis, & culiellis nunc minoribus, nunc maioribus (auciant vulneribus per fingula corporis loca, & dum ante Idolum peruenium, excisum frustum de carne propria projeiunt ad Idolum pro ossernda, ac plașis durioribus se castigant, & quando que spontanee penstus se occidunt : in solemnitatibus verò , ficut in dedicatione, & ficut in thronizatione simulachrorum fit conventus populi, quasi totius Regni. Et ducitur cum processione maisis Idolum per circuitnm cinitatis, in curru preciosissimo, modis omnibus perornate, & pracedunt in numero magno puella cantantes bina, & bina ordinatissimè; succedit q, pluralitas Musicorum cum instrmentis varys simphonizantes, quos continue subsequitur currus cuius lateribus coniuna git se peregrinorum exercitus, qui & venerunt de remotis.

Ibique cernitur miserabilis actius vitrà modum. Nam aliqui victi vitrà modum diabolica denotione 40 projetiunt se sub rotis currus pracedentis, ve françantur sibi crura, brachia, latera, dorsa, nec non & colla in reuerentiam Dei sui (ve dicunt) à quo remunerationem sperant, venire ad Paradisum.

Et post processionem postquam statuerunt Idolum in Templo suo loco, multiplicatur coram simula-Occidentie in chris numerus sape plangentium, & Occidentium vitrà quam credi sit facile. Ita quod quandog in illa honorem Idoli unica solemnitate innensiantur ducenta corpora vel plura occisorum. Etassistentes propinqui amici talism Diabols martyrum, cum magna musicorum melodia decantantes in sua lingua offerun Idolis corpora, ac demum accenso rozo omnia corpera comburunt in benorem I dolorum , assumentes sibi singuli aliquid de ossibas aut cineribus pro reliquiys, quas putant sibi valituras contra que libet infortunia, & sempestates. Et habetur ante Templum, aqua lacus, velut seruatorium piscium, in quo projeit populus largissimi 50 Suas oblationes, Argentum, Aurum, Gemmas, Cyphos, & similia, quibus ministri certis temperibus exhibentes prouident Ecclesia, ac simulachro, ac sibi ipsis abundanter.

Cap. 29. De Ima, & quibuldam alijs meridiona. hous Infulis.

Inde viterius procedendo in Austrum per multas & mirabiles terras quinquaginta duarum diatarum spacio, habetur magna Insula Lamori. Illic omnes nudi incedunt, & ferè omnia sunt singulis communia; nec vituntur privatis clauibus fine feris, imo & omnes mulieres funt communes omnibus & fingulis viru, dummodo violentia non inferatur : fed & peior est ijs consuetudo, quod libenter comedunt teneras carnes humanas; unde & negotiatores adferunt eis crassos infantes venales : quod si non satis pingues afferuntur cos (aginaut sicut nos Vitulum, fine Porcum.

Mandeuilius v-Iaua Iniula,

Hic apparet in bona altitudine Polus Antarcticus & ineipit modo apperere in alta Lybia, ita quod in alta E: hiopa, elenatur octodecem gradibus, pront ipfe probani Aftrolabio.

grandic. Et est valde grandis Regio Iaux, babens in circuntu ambusum ieucarum autarum munum. estama in Atoma-eft valde potentico imperans septem Inflatum vicinarum Regions. Terra situa sipopulosa valde, crescunt in ea Species, & abundantia Gingiberia, Canella, Gariofols, Nuces Muscata, & Mastix, cum

Aromatibus multie. Sed & quadibi nafcatur vinum, non habent : Aurum & Argentum eft ibi in copia immensa, quod patet in Regis laux palatio, cuius palaty nobilitas non est facile scribenda.

Cuniti gradus ascendentes ad palaty aulas, & aularum cameras, & ad thalamos camerarum sunt Colids de argento vel auro, sed & omnu statura pauimentorum in alis babetur ad similitudinem seacaru. omam quadratam argenti, alteram auri, laminis valde crassis, & in ipsis pauimentis, sunt ex sculpta gefla, & biftorie dinerfe. In principali verò anla, est plenarie expressa Dani Ducu Ogeri bistoria, à nainitate ifins, quousque in Franciam fantassice dicatur renersus, cum tempore Caroli Magni Regui Francia, infe Ogerus armata manu conquisius Christianitati sere omnes partes transmarinas à levofolymis vique ad arbores Solis & Lune, ac prope Paradifum terreftrem.

Pro bac Regione Jaua, (que tangit fines Imperij Tartariæ) sibi subinganda, Imperator Grand Can multories pugnanit, sed nunquam valuit expugnare. Hinc per mare ventur ad regnum \* Thalamai- \* VelTholo-lam, quatuor funt genera arborum, de quarum una accipitur farina ad panem, de secunda mel, de tertia vinum, & de quarta pessimum venenum. Extrabitur autem farina de suis arboribus isto modo. Certo tempore anni percutitur ftipes arboris undique prope terram cum secure, & cortex in locis plu- bote.

ribus vulneratur, de quibus recipitur liquor fpiffus, que deficeatus ad folis aftum & contritus reddit farinam albam, ac si de frumento esfet confectus, attamen his panis non est triticei saporis, sed alterius valde bons, Simils modo de suis arboribus mel elicitur, & vinum " liquitur: excepto quod illa non sicut era- "Tadeic, mina prima deficcantur. Fertur quoque ibidem extractionem buius farina, mellis, 🕁 vini, per Angelium 20 primitus fuisse ostensam pradicto Danorum Duci, ill c fame cum suo exercitu laboranti. Contra vene-

num quod de quarto arboris genere stillat, solum est intexicato remedium, ve de proprio simo per puram aquam distemperato bibat.

In littore maris Calanoch miraculose veniunt semel in anno, per tres continuos dies, quasi de omni ge. Calanoca, nere pissum marinorum, in maxima abuadantia: & prebent se omnibus liberè capiendos ad manum. Nam & ego ipse cepi quamplures. Unde not andum, quod codem tempore anni quo super dicta extrahitur farina, mel, & vinum, conneniunt in boc ists pisces: que ambo mirabilia fecit uno tempore Deus olumpro Duce suo Ogero, qua & in memoria illius, vsque nunc, sinculis annis innouantur.

Et sunt in boc territorio testudines terribilis quantitatis, sitás de maioribus Regi ac Nobilibus delica. Testivadines tus ac preciofus cibus : mentior, fi non quafdam ibidem viderim testudinum conchas, in quarum una grandishma, 30 fe tres homines occultarent, funt q, omnes multum albi coloris. Si bic ver vxoratus moritur, fepelitur &

vxor una cum eo, quatenus, sicut ibi credunt, habeant eam statim sociam in seculo altero. In iftis autem meridionalibus partibus apparebat mibi eleuasso poli Antarctici 33. graduum, cuiti Australis Intl-16. minutu. Et sciendum quod in Bohemia, similitér & in Anglia eleuatur polus Artitions 52. gra- tudo 33. grad. dibus vel citra: Et in partibus magie septentrionalibus, rebi sont Scoti 62. gradibus cum 4. minuttis. 16. minut Ex quo patet respiciendo ad latitudinem cult, que est de polo ad polum, simerario mea suit per quartum Horizoniis Chera terra, & vitraper 5. gradus, cum 20. minutis. Cum ergo secundum Aftrologos, totus terra circustus fit 31,000.milliarium, octo fladys pro milliario computatis, & fentinginta fladia Hac etat Era-respondeant ad unum gradum, quod patet ad latistudinem terra, perambulaui 66733. sladia cumo uno tosshenis come

tertio, que faciunt 4170. loucas Geometricas cum dimidia vel prope. (um gitur tot or talta in sfite Infulte vidimus monstra (que si explicarem scribendo vix à legenti-bus omnia crederentur ) noncuranismus viterius procedere sub polo Anstrali, ne in maiora pericula inci-De bona Rederemus : sed propter anditam & insusam nobis samositatem potentia, nobilitatis, & gloria Imperatoris gione Manderemus: jea propier anditum com jocijs nanigare magis versus Orientem. Cuma per multas dietas Mangi.) Tartarorum, vertebam faciem cum socijs nanigare magis versus Orientem. Cuma per multas dietas Mangi.) Sustinuissemus multa pericula maris , peruenumus in Regnum Manchus, quod est in confinibus superioris Indix, & innertur ab una parte Tartaria. Hac Regio Manchus pro fua quantitate reputatur melior, delettabilior, & omnium bonorum abundantior de cunttis ibi prope Regionibus. Nam & homines, befica, & volucres maiores & corpulentiores sunt aligs, & pra obertate vix inuenirentur in una ciuitate decem mendici. Formosi funt viri, sea firmina formosiores. Sed viri loco barba, habent perpancos pilos,

50 Prima quam ingrediamur ciuitas est Lachori, distans una dieta à mari, & mirabamur, & gauss sumus nos muens se integram cinitatem Christiana sidei. Nam & maior pars Regni credit in Christian. Christiant, Ibi habetur ir, leus preçio copia rerum omnium, & pracipue victualium : vnum genus est ibi serpentum in abundantia quod manducant ad omne consistium, & nisi pro finali ferculo ministrarctur de illis serpentibus, conniuum quam modicum diceretur.

rigidos, & longos ab utraque oris parte, quemadmodum nostros videmus cattos babere.

Suntá, per hoc regnum pleraque ciuitates & Ecclesia, & religiones quas instituit Dux Ocerus, quia boc est unum de quindecim regnis que quessur, sicut infra dicetur. Illic sunt elegantes alba galline, que non vestiuntur plumis ve nostra, sed optima lana. Canes aquatici, quos nos lutras nominamus, sunt ibi multi edomiti, quòd quoties mittuntur in flumen, exportant domino pifcem.

Ab hoc loco per aliquas dietas, ventur ad buius regionis maximam orbem Canfay, hoc est dicere, in India occi-6c Civicatem Coll, imo de universo orbe terrarum putatur hac maxima civitatum; nam eius circuitus dental, telle Ciuitatem Cerl, imo de vrinerijo orbe terrarum putatur oce maxima cumanum, imbatitur, He Penadumire, Colestici eli monful un cerl facile decret, quam compressi a quampsirium spositiri insbatitur, He Penadumire, fedet in lacumuri, quemadimodum, O Venetiz: O babontur in esplicita quam mille dacenti pom. in Decadibus.

Cantity vedi tes, & in quolibet turres mina magnitudinis, as fortitudinis, munita peruigili custodia & pro wrbe tuen- Quintay, & da contra Imperatorem Grand Can. Multi funt ibs Christiani , & multa Religiones Christianorum, entideletiptio

sed & de ordenibus Minorum, & Predicatorum, qui tamen ibi non mendicant; est magna pluralitat ex duersis Nationibus Mercatorum. Per Regionem nascitur vinum valde bonum, quod appellatur Bigon. Et ad leutam extra Ciustatem , Abbassa magna est, non de Religione Christiana sed Pagana: 🕁 in ea forrestium, sue borsuu magnuu vudid, circu netusu, consuu arbortbuu. & arbustu iu cuiuu stiam medio mons altsu simul & tasue, habens horsum vhi solum inhahstans bestiela mirabilas, sicus Simie, marmota, Lanbon, papiones, foreti o buiusmodi ad varia o multa genera, o ad numerum infinitum.

Eidem narrat

Omni autem die post resettionem conuentus Abbatia, qui est valde Monachosus, deseruntur reliquia ciborum cum magno additamento, in vasis auro lucentibus ad bunc bortum : & ad sonitum Campana argentea, quam Éleemos narius manu gestat descendentes, & occurrentes de bestiolis duo millia aut plures ses component residere ad sirculum more pauperum mendicorum, & traditur singulis per seruos, als- 10 quid de his cibaris, ac denno audita campana segregando recurrunt : Cumque nos tanquam redarquen. tes, diceremus, cur bac non darentur egenis, responderuns, illic pauperes non babentur, quod si innenirentur, potius tamen dari deberent bestvolis. Habet enim corum persidia, & Paganismus, animae nobilium hominum post mortem ingredi corpora nobilium bestiarum, & animai ignobilium corpora bestiarum ignobilium & vilium ad luenda videlices crimina, donec peracta panitentia transcant in Paradisum: ideo. que nutriunt, prout dicunt, has nobiliores bestias, sine bestiolas, qued à quibusdam nobilibue fundabatur in principio hac Abbatia. Multa sunt alia mira in hac Ciuitate, de quibus sciatu, qued non om-

C2p. 33.

Insula Pygm.zorum non est protensa, sed forte 12. Ciuitatum. Quarum una est grandie, & bene mu. nita, & quam Grand Can facit cum fortibus armaturis curiose fernari, contra Regem Mangi.

Lameban. \* Cumps.

Hinc proceduur per Imperium Grand Can, ad multas Cinitates, & Villas morum mir abiliter dinerforum, vfg, in Regnum Iamcham, quod est vnum de 12. Pronincis maximis, quibus distinguisur totum Imperium Tartarorum. Nobilior Cinitas buisse Regni sen Pronincia dicitur Iamchan, abundans meremionis, & duitis infinitis, & multa prassans proprio Registributa, queniam sieus ili de Ciuitate satentur, valet annue Regi quinquagista milia " Cuman Florenorum auri. Nota. In Iamehan Cinitate off Conuentus fratrum Minorum: in hac funt tres Ecclesia Monasteriorum: reditus simul afcendit ad 12. Cuman. Odericus. Vnus Cuman est decem millium. Summa tributi anuni, quinquaginta millia millium Florenorum. In illis nama, partibus magnas numerorum summas estimant per Cu-Ciuitas Meke, man, numerum 10 millium qui & in Flamingo dicitur laite. Ad quinque leucas ab bac Cinitate of maii, mme non a communi qui alsa ditta Meke, in qua fiunt de quodam albiffini genere ligni Naues maxime cum Aulis & Thalamis, ac multis adificies, tanquam Palatium tellure funditum.

ues, quales hodie oftentat b Vel Care

Inde per idem Regnum ad viamocto dietarum per aquam dulcem, multas per Civitates, & bonas a Siuc Lante- Villas, venimus . Laucherim, (Odericus appellat Leuyim) vrbem formofam opuma, magnarum,fitam super flumen magnum b Cacameran. Hoc flumen transit per medium Cathay, cui aqua infert damnum, quando nimis inundat, sicut Padus in Ferraria, Mogus in Herbipoli: & illud sequentes inmoron. autonom, quarum nimi souman, siem r autos in retraria, Mogus in Hetospoli: & illud sequentes in-Cathay Calay. transimus principalem Proninciam Imporis Tartaria, dictam Cathay Calay: & ista Pronincia est multum distenta, ac plena Cinitatibus, & Oppidis bonis, & magnis omnibus q', referta mercimonys, maxime Sericosis operibus, & Aromaticis fr iebus.

Vel Camba-

Nauizando per dictum flumen versus Orientem, & itinerando per banc Cathay Prominciam ad e Engarmago. multas dietas per plurimas Vrbes & Villas, ventur in Civitatem . Sugarmago, abundantiorem omnibus in mercemoni; s antedictis: quando sericum est bic vilissimum quadraginta libra babeniur ibi pro decem Florenis. Ab hac Cinitate, multis Cinitatibus peragratis versus Orientem, veni ad Cinitatem Cambalu, que est antiqua in Pronincia Cathay : Hanc postquam Tartari ceperunt, ad dimidium miliare fecerunt unam Cinitatem nomine Cay do, & habet duedecim portas, & a porta in portam duo funt groffa miliaria Lombardica, spacium inter medium istarum Ciuitatum habitatoribus plenum est & ciremitus cuiussbet istarum ambit 60. muliaria Lombardica, que faciunt ofto Teutonica. In bac Ciustate Cambaluresidet Imperator Magnus Can , Rex Regum terrestrium, & Dominus Dominorum terrestrium. At q, inde olterius in Orientem intratur vetus vrbs Caydo, vbi communiter tenet suam sedem Imperialem Grand Can in suo Pal cio. Ambitus autem vrbis Caydo, est viginti fere leucarum, duodecim habens portas à se distantes amplius quam stadia 24.

Imperatoria Grand Can.

Palatium Imperatoris Grand Can, quod est in Caydo Civitate, continet in circuitu propris muralis vltrà duas leucas 🕁 sunt in eo aula quàm plures, in forma nobiles, & in materia nobiliores. Aula autem sedis,qua est maxima caterarum, babet intrinsecus pro sui sustentatione 24. areas columnas factas opere fulorio, de auro puro, & omnes parietes ab intus opertas, pellibus quorundam animalium, qua vocantar Pantheres : ha sanguinei sunt coloris, & staremicantes, vt Sole desuper relucente, vix oculus valeat bumanus sufferre splendorem, tanta g fragrantia ve illi approximare non posset aer infeitus, unde & ista opertura parietum appreciatur super tegmen aurearum laminarum, &c. Istim autem ostia aula, dum in ea residet, aut deambulat Imperator mulis Barones ingressium sernant

mtente & ne limen tangatur, quod boc haberent pro augurio: & bene verberaretur, quia imperatore prasente, nemo nist adductus in quacunque camera, vel babitatione intromittitur, donec interrogatus inserit 60 Mandeuillus Imperator. Latitudinem buius Basilica astimo ad spacium de meis pedibus centum & longitudinem vlfuis pedibus aulum Impe-

Praterea, inxta Palati, ambitum, habetur grandis parci spaciamentum, diuersi generis arboribiu repletum, fruitus ferensibus varios, & nobis inus os, & in parse media, aula fuper excelfum collem de tam mira & pulchrastructura, et eius nobilitas de facili ad prasens non possu describi. Et endia, , per collis gyrum aqua fossaum profundum, & latum, vitrà quod pons unicue ducit ad collem. At q, ex duobus montis lateribus, stagnum cum diuerforum copia Piscium, & volucrum indomitarum, vt aucarum, annatum, cignorum, ciccniarum, ardearum, & collectorum in magna pluraluate: nec non & per parcum, muita siluestres bestia, & bestiola quatenus per aula fenestras possis Dominus pro solatio respicere volucrum ancupationes, bestiarum venationes, & piscium captiones.

Prater palatium hoc in Caydo, habet Imperator similar tria: vnum in ciuitate Sadus, versus Sep. tentrionem, vbi competens off frigue, ibi moratur in aftate. Camivalu, vbi competens calor, ibi moratur breme. Tertium in cuutate longh, in quo o in isto Caydo, ot sepius fernat fedem, eo quod in istis est Haitoniu me-

10 aer maçis temperatus, quamuis semper calidus videtur Nostratibus.

Sciatis quod ego, meiq, sodales, pro sama magnificentie buius Imperatoris, tradidimus nos stipendiarios esse in guerrus, contra Regem Mangi pranominatum. Es suimus apud ipsum 15. mensibus, & De quatuos auarous esse no preservo partem partem bominum, in meduam partem nobis non fussife relatam : bimninum bus, quas blaze des inuentius multo maiorem partem bominum, in meduam partem nobis non fussife relatam : bimninum bus, quas blaze (exceptu custodibus bestiarum & volucrum) qui intra palatium certa gerunt ministeria est mumerus mucan celedecem cuman.

Nota. Traxi moram in Cambalu tribus annis : fratres nostri locum habent in Caria sua specialiter, & fest is diebie flatinis dans benedictionem. Odericus. Et quoniam Imperator bubet satis plures Vixit in Camquam decem mille Elephantes edomitos, & velut vittà numerum alsas bestias (quarum quadam tenen- balu tribus tur m caneis, stabulis mirabilibus, velcatenis) nec non & aues rapaces, & Accipitres, Falcones, Offro. annis.

20 nes, Gryfandos gentiles, Laueroys, & Satyros. fed & Auiculas loquentes, & Papingos, & similes, 4halg, cantantes : requiatur numerus hommum de situ curam & laborem gerentium, vlira sex cuman, Sex cumo fe. & pratereà ingiter ad Curiam equites cum plenarys armaturis, quing, cuman, & de peditibus cum pra-mulotum, handi armaturis, cuman decem. Sed & omnes de natione quacung, mundi venientes, que petunt de-Quaque Cuscribi pro Curia, recipiuntur. Sic enim inssit Imperator. Habet & medicos Paganos viginti, & totidem manequitum, Phylicos, atque fine bis Medicos Christianes ducentos, & tosidem l'hyficos, quonsan ifte Grand Can Decem Cumaiorem gerit confidentiam in Medicis (hristianis, quam in sua propria nationis medicis.

Hoc ergo sirmiter scias, qued de Curia Regis accipiunt necessaria sua inguer oltrà triginta cuman stiani, 220.18 hominum, preter expensac animalisms & volucrum, cum tamen in festic maioribus sint bemines propè in aula Grand Can. duplo tanti. Nec valet hic Dominus defectum vilum pati pecunia, co quod in terra sua non currit moneta Vinus Cuman 30 de argento, vel auro, alione metalle, sed tantom de corio vel papro: borum enun forma denariorum contince de-sono imprestaria impressorum preciatus munoria aus maioria natoria. Secundom diameter. com milia, ve figno Imperatoris impressorum preciatur mmoris aut maioris valoris , secundim discrittatem impresso- in cap. 33. ms, qui per visitationem, detriti vel rupti, cum ad Regis the saurarios deferuntur, protinus dantur pro Moncta de co.

Quaier in anno celebrat Imperator sestimitates solennes. Pri nam de die propria Natinitatis. Se- Quatuoc sesta, cundam, de die sua prima prasentationis in corum Templo, quod appellant Moleach, voi o sit ijs, nescio quod gensu circumcifionis. Tertiam, in throniz time fui l'dolt in Templo. Quartam, de die que Circumcifio Idolum capit dare responsum, seu facere diabolica mira. Plures enim in anno non tenes si leunitates, niss que dam. si quando nuptias filiy aut filia celebrat. Itag, in istis solomitatibus est populi multitudo absq. nu-

40 Celebrato post boc prandio satie morose, quia nunquam est vitrà semel edendum in die de quo & cina Capa 36. administratione nunc longum est scribere, adsunt gesticulatores, mira visu, suamag, auditu pedibus, ma. De ludis & attentification none consumers; captibus, or toto corpor, et al. fingulos gefius, correspondente debto roccia for prefittigi in no. Et semper success forms in minimum cantilena success forms must be successful to consumers. Ex bos consumers profit successful to consumers of the funt, & Magi, qui fais incant :tiombus prastant prastigia multa.

Certum est illu bomines esse subsiles ad quasdam huma: se arses, & ingenioses ad fraudes super om... comecunt. nes, quu noui munds partes, unde & inter se dicumt pronerbium, se soles videre duobus oculis, & Chri. Magi intignes. nes, qua nossi susmas pares, vinac G suier je sunimi promi vinimi, je juva vinim uževeni vinaci. O vorificans vine, cateros success bomines caces: led mentitur iniquitas soi, quantizan ipsi vident solo oculo territoria. O nes Christicos duobsu, quia cameterenis videnus spritualia, G marsara: percentencia, centencia videnus spritualia, G marsara: percentencia, steenim Naas, id est, humani generis bostis cum illu fodus, ve erueret omnibus oculos dextros, scili- 1.5am.11.2.

50 cet forisuales.

Post annos Christi 1100. prima Tartaria fuit nimis oppressa servitute sub Regibus circumiacentium Cap. 37. sibi nationum. Quando antem Deo placnit, maiores illus Tartariz elenanerum de semplis sibi Regem Qua de causa dutum Guis Can, cut & promsferunt subiettissimam obedientiam. Idem cum effet prudens & fremus dicitus Grand 12. viriles babens filios, debellamis cum iss & populo suo, & vieis, ae subjects cunitos in circuitu Reges, Vera ratio huquibus terra indebite diu subsacuerat. Quin etia n apparente sibi in visione Argelo Dei velut milite mi ius nominis albo eque, & candidis armis, & hortante se, ut transiret Alpes, per montem Beliam, & per brachium Can. maris, ad terram Cathay, & ad alias illic plurimas regiones transsitt, & capit cum first suit aliquas Guis can. maris, ad terram Cathay, & ad alias ilke plurimas regiones transputs, & capu com post que actiques Vel Belgiam.
ex illis debellare, & fologete, Deo in comibus admunante patenter. Et quomim ne equo albo es Angelus Vel Belgiam.
Gur albo equi, apparuit, qui etiam ante pallum pradelti maris nouem orationes Deo facere iussi, ideo successores osque & novenarius 60 boute deligunt equos albos, & nouenarium numerum babent pra cateris in gratia. Dung Guis Can numerus Iar-

morti pre senio appropriquaret, conuccatos ante se filios bortabatur, & monebat exemplo 12. telorum in tatis sint in simul colligatorum, que à nullo siliorum pariter françi posuerant, sed dissoluta unumquodá, per se facile pretio. frangebatur: fic filij (inquit) dilectiffini, fi per concordiam ves innicem dilexeritis, & enxeritis fenior; frairs obediences, confido in Deo iunta promissionem mihi ab Angelo fattara, quod omnem latissimam

Cap. 35.

Grand can.

istam terram. & optimam illius imperio subijetetis, quod & post patris discessium strensissime , ac sidelisfine (Deo fibi prosperante) perfecerunt. Et quia cum propris nominibus habebant cognomen Can, prinrogenitus pro differentia obisnuit nomen Grand Can, id est, Magnus Can, videlicet supra cateros fratres, qui fibi in omnibus obediebant.

Sir Iohn Mandeviles Trauels and Observations.

9 into Can. Con Can. Mang Can. Cobile Cas.

itaq, iste secundus Imperator vecabatur Ochoto Can. Post quem filius eius regnaunt dictus Gui Can. Quartus autem, qui Mango Can baptizabatur, permansitg, fidelis Christianus, qui etiam millo magno exercitis cum fratre fuo Hallaon in partes Arabix & Egypti mandanit destrui in toto Miho. me a superstitionem, & terram poni in manibus Christianorum. Et fratre tum procedente, accepit rumores de frairis sui Imperatoris morte inopinata quapropter & redist negotio imperfecto. Quintus Co. bila Can, qui etiam fuit Christianus, & regnautt 42. annis, & adificauit magnam ciun atem Iong, 10 maiorem (atts vrbe Roma, in qua & continetur valde nobile palatium Impersale. Hinc vfg, bodie omnes successores Paganismo fædantnr.

Ethiant Can. Imperator Tartarorum tempore Arau dewilli. Sero ben vxor Grand can.

I empore autem meo erat nomen Imperatoris Echiant Can, & primogenitus eius Cofue Can, prater quem o alios filies habus 12. de querum nominibus conscribendis non est cur a prasentis.

Prama vxorum suorum vocabatur Serochan, que & est filia Presbyteri Ioannis , scilices Imperatoris India. Secunda Verouchan, Tertia Caranth Can.

Istis duobus Imperatoribus non creditur innentri maior Dominus sub firmamento Cali. In literic que buins Imperatoris Tartaria feribantur nomine ponitur semper iste Titulus. Can filius Dei exceltt, omnum vuiuerlam terram colentium fummus Imperator, & Dominus dominantium omnium, Circumferentia magni fut sigille, continet boc scriptum. Deus in Colo, Can super terram, eius for- 20 titudo. Omnium hominum Imperatoris tigillum. Sciendum quoq, quod quamuis populi ibi dicuntur, & funt Pagani, tamen & Rex & omnes credunt in Deum immortalem, & Omnipotentem, & inrant per infum appellantes, Y 10g2, id est, Deum Natura. Sed nibilominus colunt & adorant Idola . 67 simulachra aurea, & argentea, lapidea, lignea, filtria, lanea, & linea.

Yroga, Deus Cap. 38.

Totum Imperium Imperatoris Grand Can distinttum est in 12. magnas Provincias juxta numerum De Territorio duodecim filiorum primi Genitoris Can. Harum Prouinciarum maior, & nobilior dicitur Cathay, Cathay & moque consistit in Asia profunda. Tres enim sunt Alia, scilicet que profunda dicitur, & Asia dicta maior que nobis est fatis propinquior & tertia minor intra quam est Ephelus beati Inannis Euangelista fenultura, de qua babes in pracedentibus.

ribus Fartaro-12. Prouinciæ Chinz. Cathay, Afia triplex, Veftitus Tar-

Omnes cam viri quam femina similibus in forma vestibus inducuntur, videlices valde latis, & breni- 30 bus víq, ad genua cum apertura in lateribus quam firmant (dum volunt) ansis quibus dam, nam vterá, fexus est brachijs seu semoralibus plene tectus. Nunquam viuntur toga aut collobio, sed nec caputio. unde nec per afpeltum indumentorum potest baberi differentia inter virum & mulierem innuotam. Sed nupta gestat per aliquod tegumentum in capite formam pedis viri. Nubit illic vir quotquot placet mulieribus, ve nomnulli babeant decem vel duodecem vivores aut plures. Nam quifg, maritus innestur licenter entlibet mulieri, exceptis matre, & amita, forore, & filia. Sicut viri equitant, tendunt, & current per Datriam pro negotis sic & mulieres, quoniam & ipse operantur omnia fere artificia mechanica sicut pannos & quicquid efficitur de panno, corio, sericog, minanty, carrucas, & vebicula, sed viri fabricant de ferro & de omni metallo lapidibus at q, ligno, nec vir nec mulier nobelis aut degener comedit vitra semel in die communiter. Mulia nutriunt pecora sed nullos porcos, parum comeditur ibi de pane exceptis ma- 40 anatibus & diutibus, (ed carnes edunt pecorum, bestiarum, & bestiolarum vipote Boum, Onium, Caprarum, Equorum, Asinorum, Canum, Cattorum, Murium, & Rattorum, sus carnium forbentes, & omnis generis lac bibentes.

Porcus & panis rariff.

Nobiles autem bibunt las Equarum, seu immentorum, pro nobil: simo potu & pauperes aquam bullitam cum modico mellis, qua nec vinum ibi hibetur, nec ceruifia conficitur : & multi ac pluvimi fontes Formædemo. consulunt in sua siti, per villas, & rura. Domes, & habitacula rotunda sunt forma, composita & contexte parnis lignis, & flexilibus virgulis, ad modum caucarum quas nos facimus pro aniculis, habentes rotundam in culmine aperturam prastantem duo benesicia babitationi, quoniam & ignis quem in medio domus constituant fumum emittit, & pro espicie do lumen immutet. Intrinsecus sunt parietes undig, de filtro, sed & tellum filtrum est : has domus, dum locum habi; and mutare volunt, vel dum in distina 50 expeditione procedunt, ducunt secum in plaush is quasi tentoria.

Tarrari Hamaxouij, r. in plauft:is viuentes. Noutlunium

in precio.

Ceremonia

Tartaronum

& peccara.

Multas supernachas obsernant ceremonius, quia respicient in vanitates & infanias fals: solem & lunam pracipue adorant, ei fg, frequenter genua curuant, & ad nonilunium, quicquid est maoni estimant inchoandum. Nullus omnino vitur calcaribus in equitando, sed cogunt equim stacello scorrione. reputantes peccatum non leue, fi quis ad hoc flagellum appodiat, aut immensum percuteret suo frano: pleraque similia, qua parum aut nibil nocent, ponderant vi grania, sicut imponere cultellum in igne, os osse confringere, lac seu alind potabile in terram effundere, nec non & buinsmodi multa. Sed seper bas, tenent pro graniori admisso mingere intra domum qua inhabitatur, O qui de tanto crimine proclamaretur affuetus, misteretur ad mortem. Et de singulis necesse est vt consiteatur peccator Flamini sua legis, & Soluat summam pecumarum delicti. Et si peccatum deturpationis habitaculi venerit in publicum, o- 60 portebit reconciliars dominim per Sacerdotem, prinsquam villus andebit intrare. Insuper & peccatorem necesse erit pertransire ignem, semel, bis, aut ter inxta indicium Flaminis, quatenus per ignis acrimoniam ; ur getur à tanti inquinatione peccati.

Neminem hommum probibent inter se habit are, sed indifferenter receptant, Iudicos, Christianes,

Saracenos, & homines cuiuscung, nationis, vel legis, dicentes se satis putare suum ritum non ita securim ad salutem, nist quandog, traberentur ad ritum magis salutarem, quem tamen determinate nunc ignorant, imo mulsi de nobilibiu funt iam in Christianitate baptizati.

Porro Tarcari in pracinito expedicionis habent finguli duos arcus, cum magna pluralitate telorum: Arma Tarca Nam omnes sunt sagutari, ad manum & cum rigida & longa lancea. Nobiles autem in equis preciose torum, phaleratis ferunt, gladios, vel spatas breues & latas, scindentes pro uno latere, & in capitibus galeas de corio cotto, non altas, sed ad capitis formam depressas. Quicuno, de suis sugerit de prelio, ipso facto conscriptus est, ut siquando inuentus fuerit occidatur. Si castrum vel ciuitas obsessa se illis reddere vo- Taresti retre lucrit, millam acceptant conditionem mis cum morte omnium inimicorum, vel si quis homo singularis se figittantes.

Io dederit victum nibilominus abs q, vila miseratione occidunt, detruncantes illi protinun aures, quas postea coquentes, o in aceto (dum habuerint) ponentes mittunt innicem ad convinta pro extremo ferculo: dumque ipsi in bellis arte fugam simulant, periculosum est eos insequi, quoniam iaciunt sagittas à tergo, quibus equos & homines occidere norunt. Et quando in prima acie comparant ad bellandum, mirabiliter fefe constringunt, ve media pars numeri corum vix credatur. Generaliser noueritis, omnes Tartaros habere parmos oculos, & modicam vel raram barbam : In pro- Tartari hibers

priss locis varo inter se litigant, contendant, aut pugnant, timentes legum pergraues emendas. Et inne- parcos oculos nitur ibi rarius vispilio, latro, fur, homicida, iniurians, adulter, aut fornicarius, quia tales criminatores bam. innessigatione sollicita requiruntur, & sine redemptione aliqua perimuntur. Dum quie decumbit insir- Mos sepultumus figitur lancea iuxta illum in terra, & cum appropinquauerit morti, nullus remanet iuxta ipsum, rz. 20 cum verò mortuus effe scitur, confestim in campis, & cum lancea sepelitur.

Imperator Grand Can postquam eius cognita fuerit defunctio, defertur mox à paneis viris in parco Cap. 39. palati, ad preuisum locum voi debeat sepeiri. Et mudato prius toto illo loco à graminibus cum cespite De sepultara paiaty, au presujam ocum, un quo velut in solio regali de ligno corpus desuncti residens collocatur, paraturg, Imperatoris signiur ibi tentorium, in quo velut in solio regali de ligno corpus desuncti residens collocatur, paraturg, Grand Can, & mensa plena coram eo cibarijs preciosis, & potu de lacte iumentorum. Instabulatur ibi & equa cum suo creatione sucpullo, sed & ipse albus, nobiliter phaleratus, & onustrius certo pondare auri & argenti. Et est totum cessoric. Tentoriy patimentum de mundo stramine stratum.

Tunca, effodiunt in circuitu fossam latam valde, & profundam vt totum tentorium cum omnibus contentis descendat in illam. Eog, facto ita equaliter terram planificantes adoperiunt graminibus, ve in omni tempore locus sepultura non valeat apparere. Et quoniam ignorantia nubilo turpiter excacati pu-30 tant m alio (aculo homines delectationibus frui, dicunt quod tentorium erit es pro bospitio, cibi ad edendum, lac ad potandum, equus ad equitandum, aurum & argentum ad respiciendum, sed & equa lac semper prastabit, & pullos equinos successius generabit.

Post has itaq, Imperatoris defuncti miseras exequias, nullus omnino andebit de ipso loqui coram vxeribus & filips, & propinquis, sed nec nommare, quia per hoc putarent derogari paci, & quieti illius, qua ron dubitant eum dominari, in maiori satis gioria Paradisi quam hic stetit.

Breuiter & nunc intendo cursum describere aliquarum magnarum Regionum & Insularum Imperiy De multis re-Tarrarize. Et primo illas qua de Cendunt à provincia Cathay per septentrionalem plagam, v(q, ad fines gionibus Im-Christianitatis Prutiz, & Rutiz.

Ergo provincia Cathay descendens in sui Oriente à regno Tharsis iungitur ab Occidente regno Tur- subiection 40 queicen, in quo & sunt plurima ciuitates, quarum formostor dicitur Octopar. Ipsum autem Turquest Octopar. cen regnum jungitur ad Occidentem sui regno seu Imperio Persix, or ad Septentrionem regno Coratina, Corasine, quod spaciosum est valde, habens versus Orientem sui vitra centum diatas deserti : boc regnum est mul. Regnum Comtu bonu abundans, & appellatur eins melior ciuitae etiam Corafine.

Isti quod regno iungitur in Occidente versus partes nostras regnum Commanorum, quod & similiter longum est, & latum, sed in paucis sui locis inhabitatum : Nam in quibusdam est frigus nimium, in Samarkand, aliys nimius calor, & in nonnullis nimia mulcarum multitudo.

Sunt autem in Persia due regiones : una alta Persix, que à regno Turquescen descendens, jungitur & Spahan ad Occidentem sui fluuio Pysion. In ista habentur renominata siuitates, quarum meliores dua dicuntur Sarmasanc. Bocura & Sconargant, quam aliqui appellant Samarkand : Et altera Regio Baila Peria, descendens 50 à flumme Pylon, qui ad sui Occidentem iungitur regno Media, & terra minoris Armenia, & ad A. Demagnifi. quilonem mari Calpio, & ad Austrum terra minoris India. In hac bassa Persia tres principaliores centia impera. cinitates funt Æffaber, Saphaon, Sarmaiaule, &c.

A finibus regm Bacharix supradiste vbi contignatur Imperio Indix, eundo per multas diatas in-Palaisi. tratur in regnum Pentoxyrix quod est magna latitudinis, & abundantia in multis bonis: busus nomi- S u Pentoxonatior ciuitas, dicitur Nyle, & in ca hubet Imperator palatium Imperiale in quo residet dum sibs placet. 112. Imperator iste semper vocitatus est Presbyter loannes, cuius nominis causam audieram quandog, non Civitas Nyse veram : sed in illis partibus accep: rationem indubitatam , quam breniter bic enarro. Circa annum ab Fabula de re-Incarnatione Domini Octu gentessimum, Dux Ogerus de Danemarchia, cum quindeem cognationis ri Ducis Dasua Baronibus, & armatis viginti milibus transiuit mare Grecia, & fauente sibi Deo conquisiuit Chris niz, quale

60 fianitati per multa pralia pene omnes Terras, Regiones, & Insulas, quas esfe de potestate Grand Can de oriende, Guipradixi, nec non & omnes, que funt de potestate Imperij huius Imperatoris Indix. Eratginter Barones done Lini &c. unus denominatus Ioannes filius Goudebuch, Regis Frisonum : qui dictus Ioannes Des denorus fuit, Vode Preibite. & dam lieun Eccles tram limina iniuit, unde & Birones ei dabant quast per iocum Presbyter Ioannes eus. vocabulum. Dun ergo Ogerus dictas regiones expugnatas d underet in hes quindecum suis cognatis,

& quemlibet corum in suo loco constitueret Regem, quaterus Christiana religio in illa Orbis superficie semper ficbilis permaneret, tradidit ist. Presbytero Ioanni superiorem Indiam, cum 4000. Insulis, Requonibus, & psum prafecit Imperatorem super reliquos cognatos, ve es certa tributa impenderent, & in omnibus obedirent, atá, ex nunc omnes successores Indiz sunt vocati Presbyter loannes, & vsa, in hodiernum tempus boni manserunt Christiani, & Religionis amulatores, &c.

# CHAP. VII.

The Voyage of NICOLO di CONTI 4 Venetian, to the Indies, Mangi, Cambalu and Quinfai , with some Observations

out of Ramufor discourse of this voyage.

Icolo di Conti a Venetian, baning tranelled quite thorow India, after fine and twentie yeeres returned home; and because to saue his life he had made denyall of his Faith, bee went to the Pope (then Eugenius the Fourth, An. 1444.) being at Florence to obtaine absolution; who ensoyned him in way of penance, truly to make Narration of his Voyage, and whole Peregrination to his Secretarie Poggius, who writ it in the Latine tongue. 20 Ramusio Sought for it in Venice and other Cities of Italie in vame, and at last beard that it was translated into Portugall by the care of King Emanuel, An. 1500. a Copy whereof he pro-

cured from Lisbon, but so corrupt, that he doubted to publish it, which jet for want of better he did; and we out of him thefe Observations,

Nicolo di Conti a Venetian being a young man, then at Damasco, and having learned the Arabike Language, went with his merchandise in a Carauan of fix hundred Merchants, with whom he travelled into Arabia Petraa, and thence into Chaldea, till he came to Eufrates. In the Defart-deuills. Defarts of Arabia, once about midnight they heard a great noyle, which they thought were the wilde Arabs comming to rob them, but faw a great multitude passe by neere their Tents without hurting them, which some of the Merchants said were Deuils which hanted these Desarts. 30

Baidac. Grmus.

From Baldae is eight dayes sourney to Balfera, and thence foure dayes to the Persian Gulfe, where the Sea ebbeth and flowerh. After fine dayes fayling therein, he came to Calcum, and after to Ormuz; thence to Calaisa a Port of Persia of great traffick, where he remay ned to learne the Persian tongue. Afterwards clothed in the habit of the Countrey (which hee vied to doe in all his journey) he went with certaine Moores and Persians, having sworne to be faithfull to each other, and fayled to Cambaia, and after to Pacamuria and Dely, where flore of Ginger growes. Thence they went farre into Sea, and came to Bifinagar fixtie miles about, at the foot of a high Mountayne; in which are one hundred thouland men fit for armes; they marry as many wives as they will, which are burned with them when they die. The King is the mightieft King in India, and hath twelue thousand Women, foure thousand of which attend him on foot whither 40 focuer he goeth, and are busied in the service of his Kitchin; foure thousand others ride on Horfes, or are carried in Litters; two thousand are to burne with him, which is holden a great honor. Pelagonga is subject to him, eight dayes journey thence and ten miles in circuit : from whence in twentie dayes by Land hee came to Pudiferania (leaving in the way Odeschiria, and Cenderghista, where red Sanders grow) and thence went to Malepur where Saint Thomas is buried in a great and faire Church. The Inhabitants are Neftorians, which are Christians dispersed

L. Shacar.

Nestorians di-Malabar. Cinamon.

forted thorow all India, as lenes among ft vs. And all this Province is called Malabar. At the end of that Country is Zeilam a famous Iland, two thouland miles about, where are Rubies, Saphires, Cats-eye flones; and flore of good Cinamon; the Tree like a Willow but thicker, the boughs growing more in breadth then height, the leaves like thole of the Bay Tree, 30 but greater: the Barke of the boughs is best, that of the Trunke is not good : the fruit like Bayberries of which they make good Oile to anoint them. There is a Lake in which is a Citie of three miles circuit, gouerned by Bramines, which frend their lives in the studies of Philosophie, and are much given to Aftrologie.

After that is a great lland called Sumatra, which the Ancients called Taprobana, where her stayed a yeere. There growes the best Pepper, the Tree like to Liy. In a part of the lland, called Batech, they eate mans fielh. Thence he fayled to Ternasfari : and thence to the mouth of Ganges, and up the streame (which is very great) to Cernonem, and to Magrazia; whence croffing ouer Land he came to Racha, and thence in seventeene dayes to Ana fifteene miles about, men. There are certaine old women which get their living by telling Bels of gold, filter, braffe, of the bigneffe of Nuts, which they put in mens yards betwixt the skin and flesh, when they are of age to vie Women, and in thert time cure the place; and the men much please themselves

where they are much given to spend the Time in drinking and fellowship both Men and Wo- 60 to heare the found of them as they goe. Here the Copy is defettine.

Mangi is fill of Elephants of which the King nourished ten thousand: they ferue him in the warre, and carrie Caffles in which standers like the warre, and carrie Caffles in which standers like the warre, and carrie Caffles in which standers like the warre, and carrie Caffles in which standers like the warre, and carrie Caffles in which standers like the warre, and carried the warre, and carried the warre warred to the warred the warred to the war Slings. They take them with a tame female Elephant, vied to feed in a place encompafied with or this Margi a wall with two gates to goe in and out; into which in the coupling leafon the male enters is not China at one gate, and thee flees out at the other, many men attending with deuices to take him, both but Polos Mice, gates being thut; and with fafting, and accustoming other tame Elephants to him, tame him or some other

The men of this Countrey have but one wife, and all both men and women paint or embreider their skinnes with Iron pennes, putting indelible tinctures thereunto. They worthin Idols. To yet when they rife in the morning, they turne to the East, and with hands joyned, fav. God in Trimitie keepe vs in his Law. This Countrey produceth Serpents as groffe as a man, fixe cubits long, without feet, which they eate for great dainties; as they doe also certaine red Ants. There is a beast headed like a Swine, tayled like an Oxe, with a horne in the forchead like an Vnicorne a cubit long, of the colour and stature of an Elephant; with whom hee continually fighteth. The horne is much efteemed against poylon. In the furthest parts of this Countrey towards Caraio, are white and blacke Kine, some haired and tayled like Horses, some with haires like feathers of which they make Fannes.

Beyond Mangi is the greatest Pronince in the World, called Cataio, the Lord whereof is cal- Cataio, led the great Can which fignifieth Emperour: and the chiefe Citie is called Cambalu, which is 20 foure square and hath eight and twenty miles in circuit. In the midst thereof is a Fortresse, and in it a Palace for the King; and at every of those foure corners is a Cattle, each foure miles about, in which are Armouries of divers forts, and Engines for battery. From the Palace is a way on the wall to all those Castles, that if the people rebell he might betake himselfe thither. Beyond Note, this Citie fifteene dayes journey is Quinfai another great Citie, which within this little while hath beene new made by this king. It hath thirty miles compasse, and is more peopled then the former. In these two Cities it was told him that the Houses and Palaces are after the manner of Italie, and the men richer and wifer then in other places.

After he was gone from Ana, alongft the River to the Sea in seventeene dayes he arrived at Zaiton, a great Port, where he tooke Sea, and in ten dayes came to a great and populous Citie, Zaiton. 30 called Pauconia, which is of twelue miles compasse where he stayed foure moneths. There are Pauconia per-

a few Vines, which runne vpon Trees, and they make no Wine of them. There grow Abre- haps P. anin.

cockes, white Sanders, and Camphire, &c. I am loth to returne into India with this Author, whose defects and corruptions have made him so little sermiccable, together with the changed names of places since his time. It is remarkable that hee No compasses fayth that the Indian Mariners fayled by the Starres Amarike, and not by the compaffe; ving certaine which yet in measures and rules in that Starre-observation. Hee also relates the buge greatuesse and treble sheat the next age thing of their Ships. But of India, whereof all his Relations are, wee have already given you better, was there in that is more numbruall markedicall and readily a durbon. Yet have a have lived by the washing of their supportant to the same and the sam that is more punitual, methodicall, and credible Authors. Yet before we leave him, let us observe what Aneas Sylvius, or Pope Pius Secundas harb, cited out of him. Hee fayth, that hee fayled the Indian Antylde 2. 40 Sea a monet beyond Ganges, and then came to the River Ratha, which being fayled in fixe dayes, bee Afin fatte cite.

found a Citie called by the same name. And thence after seventeene dayes passing desart Hills be came into champaine Countries; which having passed in a fortnight with great labour, hee found a River greater then Ganges, called Daua: and having sayled therein a mometh, came to a samous Citie sifteene miles in circuit, named Dua, where the women are exceedingly libidinous, the men contented with one wife, The Province is called Macin, full of Elephanis, ten thousand of which the King keepes for Macinum: hereto marres, and thought critical on a white Elephant, mearing a golden Chapme diffinguished with by appeares genmes, and honging to his feet. The men and women rafe themselves, occur, can be since the Kom, his Matein is be saith, that the same Kine have tayles long and bairy to the feet, the haires subside like Feathers, of Pegu, &c.

much esteeme, and vsed on the tops of Lances as Ensignes. These things hath this Nicholas ( saith Sil- "And yet how 50 uius) of Macin, noting without doubt, the Region Serica. For our age placeth the Easterne Scythians many things in Cathay. That of Dua greater then Ganges, and that of ten thousand Elephants nounified by a more incredit.

King not have me have nechard to be believed. have languaged to the control of the control King not knowne by fame, are hard to be beleesed: bus long inquitie cannot cafily be confused.

# TO THE READER.

Reader, I here present thee a piece of a Historie, so much as abust on Tartaria, and China. Alhacen, a learned Mahumetan was the Authors'; whether an exast Historian, enery where intensity to be understood; or whether in some part he be parabolicall, and presents a Tamerlane like Xenophons 60 Cyrus, (in some things rather what be should have beene, and what the Author could say, then what be was) I undertake not to determine. The Abbat of Mortimer takes it for a sust Storie, and so doth Master Knolls in his Turkish Historie. If it be an Historie partly parabolicall, yet doth the decorum exact of the Authour a verssimiliande every where of actions and places (sufficient to procure our pardry, if not thankes, the veritie of a great part being enident in other Stories. It is true that four things

This Bell or

Margi

learne fulfe for want of truth in our intelligence, rather then in themselves. And so bath it fared with attibe (ubiett of this Booke) Tartarian and Chinesian affaires : of which we had as little knowledge as of Tamerlan, further then terrors of Taxtarian Armes and some mens speciall occasions and tranels have given us light. Even the Sunne rifeth in those parts whiles it is not day-breake with us, and but attayned almost his Noon-point before we see him: and worthy wee are still to abide in a blacke night of ignorance, if we welcome not what light we can get (if we cannot get what wee would) from 6 remote an East. Once; Tartarian affaires (as it happens in Conquests) were changeable, and their New Moone was quickly at the full; divers chances and changes succeeding after Poles dayes to these; such wealth whetting the Tartars to get and bold, and no leffe the Chinois to recouer, the China State being unquiet so long as the Tarta t greatnesse continued, and freed (for the most part) with their dimini- to Ihing, and division into divers Estates. As for these times of Tamellan (if this Story be exact) it is like the Can beld the North parts of China from Quinfay forward, with Cataio; and the King of China the rest : then Nanquin being the Seat Royall, as fince the expussion of the Tartars Paquin. Or perbaps the Quintay heere mentioned, is that which Conti hath in the former Page told vs. was lately built by the Can : and not that which Polo fleakes of; in Catay and not in China : which cleareth this doubt of the Cans residence and rule in China. To reconcile all counts is for mee too hard a taske. because Cataio and China are even still bewysted, and leave their surveyers perplexed, bounding the fearch of the most currons in fearching their sust bounds, bow farre they are the same or differing; wherein our lefuites will more amuse and amaze vs (where wee will cleare our selues as well as we can ) when wee come to them. I have premifed Conti, though Tamerlane be a little Elder for his Religions fake. & and to recreate with a little Relation, before this longer Storie.

## CHAP. VIII.

Extracts of ALHACEN bis Arabike Historie of TAMERLAN, touching his Martiall Trauels, done into French by IEAN Dv BEC, Abbat of Mortimer.

TAMERLANS Birth and Perfon, his Expedition against the Muscouite; his Marriage with the Cans daughter; his overthrowing of CALIX.

The Hiftory of Tamerlan famous amongft the Turkes and A abiuns.

Alhacen.

The Franke Tongue a mongst the

Vndry Histories doe attribute, as a great want vnto the happie fortune of Tamer lan, not to haue a Writer in his dayes, which might haue left in writing his Hi- 40 florie vnto posteritie. But without any cause did they moane him, insomuch as his Historie is very famous amongst the Turkes, and Arabians; his Conquests very largely discoursed, and many of his worthy and notable savings collected.

with an infinite number of Noble deeds left vnto the memoriall of posteritie. Very true it, is, that he had not an Homer, but a great and worthie person, learned as well in naturall Philosophie, as in Aftrologie, who was in the time of this Prince, a companion and familiar of his Conquests , named Albacen, an Arabian by birth , and of Mahomets Religion. This Authour then being fallen into my hands, in my Voyage into the East Country, I caused the same to be interpreted vnto mee by an Arabian, who did speake Prank (as they terme it) that is to fay, Italian, and some time I spent, in affociating my selfe so with this man, who com- 50 mended greatly vnto me the elequence and gravitie of this Authour, wondering at his digreffi-Yeoftenhaue ons, and entring againe into his matter fo well to the purpose. It grieved mee much that I had not the perfection of this Language, to be a helpe vnto the richer of this Historie, for to deliuer it vnto my Nation with some grace : but I tooke thereof as much as I could in his Language, the Franker ta- which was corrupted, as is the Franke Tongue ( fo they terme it) which is a kinde of Italian. king terufilm mingled with Slanon, Greeke, and Spanish Tongues very common at Constantinople, with the Afigures all the rabian and Trakilb Tongues: so as I could not gather but onely the trueth thereof, and not the W. ft of Europe. drifts and gravitie of the Declaration, wherein the Authour had collected it for posteritie (and as he faid) by the commandement of the Prince, who was a louer of learning, and excellent The Tartarium in the knowledge of Astrologie and Divinitie, as the custome of those Nations is to joyne them frange kinde ordinarily together, studying vpon the vertue of names, and of the turning of letters, even in 69 of Aftrologie, their placing, writing them underneath Starres, whereof they make fentences, by meanes whereof they wrought miraculously in the things of Nature. This is that Zoroastrien and Baltrien Science, that of Balaam, and fome others in my opinion, which hath fucceeded vinto fo many

# CHAP. S.S. I. Fables of Tamerlan. His Birth, Perfon, disposition: first Warre. 141

Arabian Astrologians. Now then, this Prince was endued with such knowledge, as made him admired of the people where he commanded, who are for the most part great wonderers, infomuch as this cauled him to be accounted a Prince accompanied with the Divine vertue, confidering the inflice he vied in all his actions. This hath proceeded even fo farre that some Italians have written foolish things thereof, as of certaine kinds of Tents which he caused to be pitched when he befieged any Citie; one white, fignifying peace, it yeelding vnto his meicy; another red, fignifying cruelty to follow; and the third blacke, fignifying mourning to enfue. But I finde not this in our Author, and I beleeue them to be tables.

I will now declare vnto you with my Arabian, who this great Prince Tamerlan was. Hee The off fpring 10 was then of the bloud of the Tartarian Emperours, and his father Og had for his portion the and flocke of Countrey of Sachetay, whereof hee was Lord. This Countrey lying betweene the North and the East, is the antient Countrey of Parthia, vpon the Coast of the Zagdians, and the chiefest the East, is the antient Countrey of Parina, whom the Count of the Zogadan, and the Chiefert The flockes of Citie of his estate was Samercand lituated upon the River of Iffarle. Some of our Historiograthe Tarinian phers would need haue him to be the sonne of a shepheard; but this haue they faid, not know- kings are their ing at all the custome of their Countrey, where the principall reuenue of the Kings and No-stockes and bles confifteth in Cattell, despising Gold and Silver, but making great reckoning of such righes, the Tart is wherein they abound in all forts: this is the occasion wherefore some call them Shepheards, and beafts are

fay also that this Prince deteended from them. So his Father Og was Prince of \* Achetay, wealth, abounding in fuch kinde of wealth. And being come vnto the age of fifteene yeeres, his father \* This name 20 being already old, delivered up vato him the government of his Kingdome, with the comman- feems derived dement over all his Men of warre. His father Og being given vinto peace, withdrew bimfelfe from Sothtai, dement ouer all his Men of warre. First tarner of being gracer who poece, while some being mentioned be-vinto a folitary life, for to ferue God, and end the reft of his dayes in quiet. Hee gaue winto his fore in Haiten fonne Tamerlan (which fignifieth Heanenly grace in their Tongue) two fufficient personages of whom these for to guide and affift him in the government of his Estate: the one was called Odmar, and the Tattars are full other Als, persons in great dignitie and credit with his father. Now this Prince was well in- called Zagerai, flructed in the Arabian learning, and exercised himselfe much therein, and at such time as they Tamerland thought him to be either in the Bathes, wherein they are very curious in that Countrey being make it to fig. their chiefest delicacies, he was in the contemplation and studie of heanenly things. This Prince nife Lame les had within his eyes fuch Diuine beautie, being full of fuch maieltie, that one could hardly in- by reason of

30 dure the light of them without cloting of their eyes, and they which talked with him , and did that accident, often behold him, became dumbe, infomuch as he abstrayed with a certaine modestie and comhis Hosse. lineffe, to looke vpon him that discoursed vnto him. All the rest of his visage was curteous and Michel well proportioned: he had but little naire on histchinne: hee did weare his haire long and cur- Tamerlan his led, contrary to the cultome of his Countrey, who are shaued on their heads, having the same studies and alwaies couered, but he contrariwife was alwaies in a manner bare-headed, and faid, his mother learning. came of the race of Samson, for a marke whereof thee aduited me to honour long haire. This was eyes. The like the cause that made him respected of his men of Armes, and the most part of them did beleeue is reported of there was fome vertue in those haires, or rather some fatall destinie, the which many did believe Augustus. to be fo; and verily they were of a disky colour drawing toward a violet, the most beautifull The custome

40 that any eye could behold. His flature was of the middle fort, somewhat narrow in his shoul- of the Tartaders, he had a faire leg and strong, the strength of hisbody was such as no body did surpasse, and Tanthas were often on the festivall dayes he made triall of his strength with the most strong: and this he did long haire, and with fuch grace and humanitie, that he whom he ouercame held himselfe therein most happie, why, although it bee a difgrace amongst the Tartarians to bee throwne to the ground in wrastling. The descrip-Now, as he was Martiall, and defirous of glorie: the first warre that hee attempted was against tion of Tamerthe Moscouite, who came and spoyled a Civie which had put it selfe into his protection, and Our Authors had entred also into his Countrey, and being retired, proclaymed open warre against him, gaue tell vs hewas him battell neere to the River Mafeha, although the Mufcouite had a great Armie, which hee lame, and that had gathered together long before On the other fide, the Prince determining to refift him, al- he was there-

50 fembled all his forces, and those of his allyes. Now the Muscomite had very great forces, and Tamelian his men well trayned up in the warres, having had alwaies warres with his neighbours, the King of first warre a Polonia, with whom hee had then friendship, and the ayde of ten thousand very good Horse. gainst the Mos-There were also with him many Hungarian Gentlemen, led by Vdecelaus a Hungarian Gentle- couite. man, who had brought with him more then eight thouland Horse; the opinion was, that hee The Amic of had in his Armie fourfcore thousand Horie, and a hundred thousand fout-men. Our Prince TaThe Armie of merlan had in his Armie about fix-score thousand Horse, and a hundred and fifty thousand men Tamerlan. on foot, but not fo skilfull in points of warre as those of the Mosconite: for our Estate had long enioyed peace, and our Souldiers were indeed trayned up in discipline of warres, but not in the practice thereof. The order of Tamerlan was this; that is, he caused all his Armie to bee divi- The order of

60 ded into fquadrons, each confifting of fixe thousand Horse, except his owne, which was of ten Tamerland thousand, to as he made eighteene squadrons, his owne being reckoned which made ninetrene. The Auant-guard was conducted by Odmar, who led nine fquadrons, flanked with fortie thoufand men on foot, divided both on the right and left fides, who should shoot an infinite number of Arrowes. The Battell was conducted by Tamerlan, who led ten fquadrons, his owne being

therein closed, and fiftie thousand Foot-men, the best and choicest Souldiers of his whole Armie. Prince Thanau, a kinf man vnto the Prince, led the Arere-ward, with fortie thousand Foot-men, and fixe squadrons: hee had some three thousand Horse adventurers, whom they call Oliagues, in the ir longue, the same which wee tearme, The forlorne bope.

The Moscomire did not observe that order, but did fight by double Rankes with Lances, and there was a space to helpe themselves therein, and to breake them, notwithstanding those Nations doe not breake them at all, and they feemed to bee a greater number then wee, making a great noyle. At the length multitude and skill ouercame the force and valour of the Mosconita, the victory bending to the Parthians fide, the which they did pursue hotly. Tamerlan was but the victory benoing to the retreated into the fire ye, and had two Hories slaine vinder him in the fight to on the fore-head upon the fide of the left eye, and had two Hories slaine vinder him in the fight to Tamertan employed himselfe in giuing God thankes for this victory, after hee had pursued the enemy three leagues; the next day he reviewed his Armie, and found that he had loft of his fide for his part betweene feuen and eight thousand Horse-men, and betweene three and source thoufand Footmen. The Mosconute lost some seven and twenty thousand Foot-men, and betweene fifteene and fixteene thousand Horse-men. This same day was Odmar the safegard of his Prince; but he loft Hally, who was slaine by the blow of an Arrow. The Prince did slacke no time after fo great a victory : He fer forward, and came into the borders of the Mofemite, whom he enforced to capitulations, that they should become Tributaries of a hundred thousand Duckets, and should pay all the charges of the War, amounting vnto the summe of three hundred thousand Duckets, he then would send backe againe all the Prisoners, and withdraw his Armie; 30 that for recuritie hereof they should give him pledges, which should be changed every yeare; vn. to all which they agreed. So was this Warre ended to his contentment, returning with glorie Now Tamerlan was received into all his Countries with much honour and triumph. The great

Cham of Tartaria, Brother vnto his Father, fent Prefents to gratifie him, making offer vnto him of his Daughter in Marriage, and that in marrying of her, hee would cause him to bee acknowledged as Emperour throughout all his Kingdomes, as his next heire, himfelfe being now old, and out of all hope to haue any more Children. Hereupon hee presently tooke his Journey towards him, being in the City of Quanicay, where he was received with all kind of Triumph and Magnificence; there did he shew himselve brane in all manner of gallant Showes and Gom- 30 bats, as well in jeft as in earnest. And as these Nations are full of vanitie, and desirous to make frew of their strength and agilitie, Tamerlan carryed away the Prize therein, whether it were in shooting neere with his Bow, or in changing Hories in the middest of the courses, or in breaking an Iron in running at the Quintaine; he made every one wonder at his dexteritie, and was crowned the fixt day after his comming thither with the joyfull confent of all the Subiects of the Emperour his Vncle, and of all the Court, After that, he married the Emperours Daughter, de-Marriage with firing first to bee crowned before the Marriage, to the intent that none should thinke that the the great Char Crowne came vnto him by meanes of her, but by succession, the Daughters not at all succeeding into Empires. It was also to affure his estate, and having remayned in that place by the space of two moneths, hee returned from thence with his Wite to Samercand, in which Citie hee de-40 lighted greatly to remayne, because the situation thereof was very faire; and for that the Citie is accompanied with a faire River, which caufeth great Traffque, and maketh it richer then any Citie within that Countrey. Odmar alone was called by him, at fuch time as the great Cham his Vncle did impart vnto him his Affaires; and among ft other matters, he propounded vnto him the Enterprize of China, promifing him affiftance and ayde, and gitting him to understand how

of the Cittle of

The Tartarian

Exercifes.

This may bee prayfed in a fideli, but not in a Chrift n Qui vb que eft

necessarie it was to undertake this Warre for the better assuring of his estate, seeing the King of China had much gone beyond his ancient bounds. He hal in his Court a Christian whom he loued much, and every one greatly respected, named Axalla, a Genuoic by birth , brought vp from his youth about his person. This man principally did stirre him vp vnto great Enterprizes, and notwithstanding his Religion, hee trusted 50 him. Now he had all Religion in reuerence, to as it did worthip one onely God, Creator of all things. He often faid, that the greatnesse of Divinitie consisted in the fundry kindes of people which are under the Cope of Heauen, who ferued the fame diverily, nounthing it felfe with diverfitie, as the nature was divers where it had printed his Image, God remayning, notwithftan-Quivo que est ding, one in his Essence, not receiving therein any divertitie. This was the reason that mooned majorane of the Some to permit and grant the vie of all Religions within the Countreyes of his obedience, alwater not all wayes prouided (as I faid before) that they worthipped one onely God. He determined to make Warre with the King of China (who is called the Lord of the World, and Childe of the Sunne) warre with the anig or come with the anig or warrend with the same which was no small Enterprize. But before hee would begin the same, hee fent with the same which was no small Enterprize. moueable populations of King of China, for to demand right for some Countreyes (which they call Hordan) abiding places, which this Prince of China had viurped long before, and even the passages of a River 69 A will builded called Tachy, which is beyond his limits, which are Walls which are betweene the Kingdomes of brehe Kingol the great Cham, and of our Tamerlan, builded of purpole by this King of China, to defend him from the Rondes of the Tartarians, and forces of our Prince, to as this was begun with the aduice of the

great Cham, and for his benefit as well as for the Princes. Therefore to accomplish his Enterprize, in the meane-time that he attended for the returne of his Embaffadors, he caused his forces to come forwards from all parts, appointing vnto them for the place of meeting his owneat port built be the Hords of Baschir, where all his Armie assembled : and other ayding troupes of the great fore, and per-Cham in the Delerts of Ergimul, at a certayne day, in which place he should joyne with all his haps now by Army. The Army of the great Cham confifted of two hundred thousand fighting men, wherein age ruined, which may were all the brave men of his Court, who were accustomed vnto the Wars, the Emperour which be a cuife Pole then raisened, and was old, having greatly increased his limits, and conquered a great Country, menuous fo as these men were well trayned up in the Wars, and accustomed unto travell and paines. Now them not) and To then the Embaffadors which were fent, returne and informe the Prince of the will of fible prond by this King King of the World) this King of China (who was named fo) who posted up with waine glorie, repayred 100, was afton thed how any durft denounce Warre against him, making this proud Answere, That Polestine In Tamerlan should content hims life that hee had left him that which hee might have taken from which space him, and that his Armes and Forces were of another fort, then those of whom he published the alle the chintage victorie, to bring thereby terrour vpon his Neighbours.

This Answere being heard, our Prince marched directly vnto the Army, and gaue order for used part of the conveyance of victuals from all parts, fent to haften forward his Confederates, emparted the their Empire Answere ynto the Emperour by Embassadours dispatched from him, caused the boldnesse of the conquired bo King of China to be published, to make manifest vinto all the World the just heffe of his cause: fore b. Cublai. 20 Before his departure he went to take leave of his Father, who endued with a lingular and Fa- betweene the

therly affection, faid he should neuer fee him againe, and that he hastened vnto his last reft, and Father and having made folemne Prayers over the Prince his Sonne for his prosperitie, kiffing him a though the Sonne, fand times, drew off his Imperiall Ring, and gaue it vnto him, not asking whether his Journey tended : and calling Odmar, he bade him farewell, recommending his faithfuldeffe vinto his Sons Then he departed and drew towards Samarcand, where the Empresse his Wife remay ned; whom he carryed with him as is the custome of that Nation, and after he had (being Religious) wifited the Tombe of his Servant Hally, hee caused his soule three dayes to bee prayed for, according to the Rites of his Law : whereupon he prefently departed, having taken order for the well go- Samay made uerning of his Kingdome in his abience, committing the charge thereof vnto Samer, a man well Gouernour of 30 practited in Affaires, and he who had the charge of our Prince in his youth. So then he triarched Sachtay in Taforward in the middeft of his Army, which comfifted but of fiftie thousand Horse, and one hundred thousand men on foot, relying principally on the Forces of the great Cham his Vncle; who Tamerlan his about all defired this War : he did not forget to give in charge, that the reft of his Forces should Armie matbe readie vpon the first Commandement, as soone as he should be joyned with the forces of the thing against great Cham, and marching forwards he had stayed by the way by reason of some distemperature the Ku which had surprized him through changing of the Ayre, as the Physicians affirmed. But yet, notwithstanding the forces which Cariles, Captayne of the Army of the great Cham conducted went daily forwards. Now the newes was spred into an infinite number of places of his distemperature, yet did he not neglect to fend vnto the great Cham, and often aduertize him of 40 the estate of his health, to the end the same should not cause any alteration, the which hee did fore-fee by reason of his preferment vnto this Empire, by the great Chans his Vncle : and hee

vet neither gratified nor acknowledged him as all the other fubiects had done. Now concerning his delay, it was by fundry diverfly interpreted; some saidthat hee had bin aduertized of some vproare to be attempted, when he should be farre seuered from thence, and had passed over the Mountaynes of Pasanfu, and that Calix stayed vpon nothing else, infomuch as the Companies of the great (ham were gone forwards, even beyond the Mountaynes, having parted the Runter of Mean, and were encamped at Beappea, the which Cafar vanderflanding, its confirmation of the final haute the memes to worke his enterprize. Thereupon hauing affembled great girld frame of the final haute the memes to worke his enterprize. Thereupon hauing affembled great girld frame for the final haute the memes to worke his enterprize. Thereupon hauing affembled great girld frame for the final haute the memes to worke his enterprize. Thereupon hauing affembled great girld frame for the final haute the memes to work the final haute the memes to work the final haute the final haut

was in doubt of a certayne Lord named Calix, who was discontented therewith, and had not as

50 flore of his most faithfull followers, he tooke counsell with them, that this was the meanes to lorin his abouerthrow the purposes of Zachetas, who would reigne ouer, and bring them vnder his Empire: sence, & that feeing their Prince had bin fo badly minded as to do the fame of his own mind without calling of them which had interest in that election, that now was the time to affure their libertie, which was in doubt to be loft, & caused also a rumor to be spred of the sicknes of this Prince, that the great Cham was old, the greatest part of his forces, far separated from him , forthwith dispatching a Messenger vinto the great Cham their Prince, to affure him that they bent not their forces against him, but were his faithful and obedient s. biects: but they armed themselus, because they would not be gouerned by the Parthians, their ancient enemies. Thus Calix thought greatly to trouble him, when he rose in Armes against him, and did thinke that he had already affaulted 60 the Wall which the King of China had made against the Tartarians. As soone then as the Prince was aduertized of the pretences of Calar thus difcouered, hee marched one dayes Iourney forward, to the end he might approach vnto (alibes, and impart the same vnto him, what face so-

euer Caliber fet on the matter, he harkened what would become of Calix, that hee might likewife make some commotion: there was left with him to command ouer the Parthians, the

Prince of Thanas, without whom he could not doe any thing, for that hee led the Auantgard. Thus was the Army deuided in two parts; the King of China remayning long before he was aduertized of all this, and thought he had all the forces both of the Tartarians and Parthians vpon Good directi- his Armes, so as this was of no small importance to favour our Affaires: for Tamerlan had elpecially given commandement, that the passages which are easily gotten, might as diligently bee kept, to the end that the King of China should not be advertized of the tumult. Then Tamerlan fet forward his Auantgard vnder the leading of Odmar: hee promifed vnto himfelfe shortly a happie fuccesse in his Affaires, and aduertized the Emperour of all: but it came vnto him when he was ficke. And furely it was high time for Tamerlan to march forward, or elical! had beene revolted, so leaving his Footmen, he made great lournies. Now during the time that he had bin to aduertized, and made his abode to confult, which was the space of two monetle: Calin having presented himselse with a hundred thousand fighting men before Cambalu, a very great Citie. and chiefe of the Prouince of Catago, the Inhabitants thereof came out to meete him, and did also receive him with all the joy that might be.

Now whilst our Army marched towards Caindu, and from thence vnto Calatia, whether our Army went eafily, looking for the Forces of his Natine Countrey of Zachetay, to come and joyne with him : he did not yet forget to fend forward daily of our Souldiers towards Cambaia, to as they supposed all our Forces to be on the necke of them already, which gaue great terrour wnto the people. Calie perceiuing that the people did repent, hee thought best to withdraw himselfe out of Cambala, determining to oppose himselfe against Tamerlan, and sent for his 20 power from all places, putting all vpon the euent and hazard of a battell. He drew out of Com-bala full fiftie thouland men, as well Burgeffes, as Souldiers which were there in Garrison, hauing wonne all the Captaynes which the old Emperour had placed there in Garrison, amounting to the number of thirty thousand men, and him that commanded ouer them, who had consented vnto the revolt of this great Citie. To make it short, having affembled all his Forces, he had fourescore thousand Horse, and a hundred thousand Footmen, the which hee had gathered together from all parts. Our Army then marched with all diligence, in fuch fort as certaine Scouts which were two thousand Horse, had newes of the Armie of Calix, the which came forwards directly towards vs, whereof they caused the Emperour to be certified speedily, who sent this ther two thousand Horses more, to the end they should keepe the passage of a River called Brore, 30 by the which our victuals were conveyed vnto the Armie, and also for to winne alwayes time, the Prince knowing right well that the motions of Civill Warres bee furious at the beginning, and that it is the best to resist them slowly, drawing them alwayes out at length if it be possible. For the people in the end acknowledging their faults, their meanes and money fayling them, and oftentimes victuals alfo. On the contrary fide in a Royall Army none of all this doth happen. where all things are fauourable, and the Souldiers well disciplined, obedience and order beeing wisely observed. Then had the Emperour the guiding of his owne purposes, for he had received commandement from the Emperour his Vncle, to hazard therein all for all, delivering vp into his hands the lafegard of his life and estate, that he might thereby end his dayes in peace, willing him likewise to punish this arrogant fellow and his partakers. By this meanes came forces from 40 all parts vnto Tamerlas; but on the contrary part, the Enemies Army was then in his chiefeff force, and began to feele the want of victuals.

Calix was of the age of fortie, he was a Captayne renowmed with the great Cham, hee was one of the chiefest in dignitie and place, and they had alwayes respected him within Tartare as a perion most worthy of the Empire, if the glory of Tamerlan, and his reputation had not so far excelled. The Armies began to be viewed the one of the other about eight of the clock in the morning, where there were very many skirmishes before they came vnto the mayne Battayle (according to the fights of these Nations) it was a great Plaine wherein they met at that time, with like aduantage on eyther part; Odmar led the Auantgard, wherein there was fortie thoufand Horse, and threescore thousand Foot-men; he made three Squadrons, whereof hee set for- 50 ward one before him that began the Battayle. Tamerlan marched in the same order, but his Squadrons were much stronger, the Foot-men both of the Auantgard and of the Battayle were on the right and left wings. Tamerlan had drawne out fixe thousand Parthian Horse, and two thousand Tartarian for the Arier-ward, and had committed the charge thereof vnto a faithfull Semant of his called Axalla (a Genuois borne) a man of great judgement, his vnderstanding being good and quicke, and a Captayne in great estimation amongst the Souldiers, although hee worthipped God in another manner then weedid, and was a Christian. And hee had many of them with him, whom he caused to come from the Georgians, and from Pont Enzin, who fought with great agilitie; this day did heeshew his great sidelitie and courage vinto his Prince. Calix on the other-fide, who was a well spoken man, was encouraging his Souldiers to fauour his fortune, and the libertie of his Nation : he had divided his troupes into three mayne Battayles 69 onely, his Foot-men vpon the right hand, his owne person was in the middest of the mayne Battayle, with many Foot-men which compaffed him round about (according as wee vie to

Many Chri-

CHAP. 8.5.2. Calix taken prisoner and beheaded. Tamerlan welcommed.

In the end, valiantly fighting, he fell into Axallas hands, which with one voyce he proclaymed through all his Campe, which overthrew the courage of all his Souldiers. Hee was kept vintill cally taken the next day, and was judged by all the Counfell worthy of punishment; whereupon Tamerlan prisoner by cauled his head to bee smitten off, the which hee sent to bee presented who the Inhabitants of Cambalu: he caused the like to be done vnto all the chiefe Leaders, not for crueltie, but for ne- ded ceffitie, knowing very well, that the meanes to cut off the Foot of civil warres, is to punish the Heads of the same, for they be Hydras which grow vp too fast.

Cataio, Cambalu ; TAMERLANS expedition into China, entring the Wall, conquering the King, and disposing of the Countrey, and returne to Cataio.

Feer this the Armie marched into the Kingdome of Catain, a Countrey rich in graffe, and in all kinds of pastures, abounding with great quantitie of Beasts, and People which knew not what warre meant. The Prince gaue commandement that these people should not be accounted as Enemies, but his good Subjects, that hee would vie all the Cities well, as Cangi, Sochgi, Gonza, Tagni, Togara, Congu, which had revolted, and were come to sue for pardon at his hands, in humbling themselves before him; the which he granted 20 vnto them, enjoying them onely to prouide fufficient victuals for his Arnie: which was of no small importance for the appealing of others, who had put all their hope in extremitie, which is in lofing their owne lives to make others doe the like and efpecially the Inhabitants of (ambals had taken this relolution : but being informed of the Emperours clemency , changed their opinions. In the meane while our Armie daily approched, and at fuch time as we came neereft, the more did the feare of all the Citie increase, insomuch as the Prince was advertised daily from those which fauoured his fide, of all things within the Citie, and he was affured that every one determined to obey the Conqueror, and to doe what focuer he commanded. The which being knowne vnto the Prince, he left all his Armie at Gonfa, and himselfe went directly vnto the Citie of Cambalu, where all things were made quiet, by the meanes of thirtie thousand Soul- Theordinarie 30 diers, being the ordinarie Garrison, whom hee caused to enter thereinto before him, and two Garrison as

houres after entred into the fame himfelfe, being received with great magnificence not yeelding Cambain of as yet to pronounce the word of pardon, referring all vnto the Emperour, and to the ordinarie course of Justice. He stayed for the returne of one of his Fauourites, whom he had sent vnto the Emperour, to carry him newes of the victorie, and of the death of Calix, and that the chiefe of this Faction remayned prisoners with him; also to know what Inflice the Emperour would appoint to bee inflicted on those Citizens, which were the first beginners of the revolt of this Citie: for the Prince being defirous to be effeemed mercifull, and to win love within this great Citie, would not execute justice of himselfe, nor in his owne name, but by the Emperour his

Vncle, whom hee did gratifie herein, leauing the authoritie wholly vnto himselfe, and by this 40 meanes hee was not effected cruell. Thus the Prince after hee had remayned here eight dayes, departed. He was not many dayes journey from the Citic before he received tydings, how the great Cham his Vncle, willed that justice should bee executed on them which were the first Moouers of this revolt; the which was executed accordingly in the name of the Emperous, and by his speciall ministers; in such fort, that as the people accused the crueltie of the Emperour, they commended the mercy of Tamerlan. Thus was this warre brought vnto an end, to the great honour and reputation of Tamerlan.

As soone as our Prince was returned vnto his Army where hee found Odmar, who there attended his comming, hee was received of his Souldiers, and with a loud voyce called by all his Captaines and Souldiers; Most great Emperour and most victorious, as they are accustomed to Tamerlan wel-50 doe amongst the Tartarians. The Prince after he had long discoursed with his Captaines both of commed vito the beautie and greatnesse of the Citie of Cambalu, hee arrived at his Tent, where after hee had his Armie, declared vnto Odmar in what fort all things had passed at Cambalu: he asked his aduice, whe-firange acclather nee should goe and visit the Emperour his Vicle. Odmar well perceived that the Prince de-mation, fired it, and called vnto his remembrance the honour which hee had received when hee was at Quinzai, and that hee would have beene very willing to spend the Winter with the Empresse staying for the Spring for to returne vnto the enterprise of China, with a long speech distinaded him. The Emperour answered him, that he had euer knowne his fidelitie and loue, and that the cause of his fadnesse was, for that hee did not find in himselse abilitie to recompence the same ; and that when he thought to give himselfe some ease, then was the time hee must instead of the

6: delicacies and pleasures of Quinzay, make the Desarts of Cipribit the resting place from the trauailes of his new victorie: that it was ended, and his purposes determined: I have also heard the Prince fay, that Odmar did not speake vnto him like an earthly but divine man, and that he verily believed that God by his meanes did call him back from fome miffe-hap which would have light vpon him, to make his glorie increase the more. Now, the rumour was alreadie

Tamerian his Oration visco his Souldiers

spread out all, that the Princes determination was to goe and wifit the Emperour his Vncle. the which tickled enery man with defire to returne into his Countrey, hoping to mioy the (weetnesse of his natine soyle. When as commandement was given for a generall review of the whole Armie: where the Emperour spake vnto his Souldiers in this manner: Wee have beginne (my faithfull Souldiers ) an enterprise to goe and assault the King of China, who hath of late repulsed even beyond the Mountaynes the Tattatian name; but wee were hundered to our great griefe by reschington fulfa ener organize internationer in a same timen to turne the bridle for to painly him, wherem you have because it is to follow for foreign of a lix, and were driven to turne the bridle for to painly him, wherem you have lowered a all affifted mee. It grieves benee that I cannot as well bragge of the fresh spojes of a stranger, as I may angoichina. vannt (by the meanes of your weapons) of those our omfantifull Citizens; and in times pass with your owne selves making tryall of my first Armes against the boldnesse of the sierce blokcounce, al- 10 though for this last civil victorie I am further indebted unto you, for your greater endeuour, and the hazardi-g of your persons being much greater, so were they our owne people, who would not acknow. ledge vs , whereof I cannot speake without skedding of teares , destring rather to burie such a vistorie, what glorie and honour soener wee have gotten thereby. Neither doe I recomm these things water you, but for to manifest that I forget not your faithfulnesse, and the great travaile you have endured with mee. Wee must not therefore bee wearie, but must turne our weapons against those which thinke that wee are greatly troubled, whereas wee are victorious. Wee have left our Companions, who have temportzed to beare the event and successe of our affaires, all our munitions bee there; wee must in that place (my Souldiers and friendly Followers)" paffe oner the rest of Winter: our Companions looke for vs. The Evernic is secure and looketh not for vs at this season of the yeare : for bee perceineth 20 that our Armie which is there is not sufficient for offence, but onely for defence. Ton fall receive donble pay, the better to furnish you against the inturie of cold : and as wee shall bee clothed with double garments, I hope wee shall bee also apparelled was double alorie. Let us march on merrily, I my selfe will goe with you, and bee companion of your glorue. After hee had thus spoken vnto his The crieof the Souldiers, they all cryed; One God in Heaven, and one Emperour on the Earth : and bowing Souldiers up- downe all their heads in token of humilitie, they shewed how agreeable they were to obey that which he commanded.

rours Oration.

China fortie

lergues Ling.

Perhaps this

was not the

ancient wall

of which the

but fome o-

ther betwirt

tho cparrs of

Cathay and

Chinois write.

Thus enery one returned into his Tent, where they abode yet eight dayes more. The Prince fent back againe Zamai vinto Sachetay with some fine and twenne thousand Horse, and fiftie thousand Foot-men, for the lafetie of his estate in those parts. Thus after prayers were said, 30 all the Armie being affembled together in the presence of the Prince (according to the cultome of our Emperours) cur Armie began to march forward. Hee forgat not likewife to dispatch one vnto the Emperour his Vncle, to give him understanding of all this resolution, the which hee very well liked ot. The Prince by the same Messenger did beseech him , to fend vnto him in the Spring of the yeare some fiftie thousand men to repayre his Armie, and certayne money isy the King of also for the payment of his men of Warre, which hee granted him. Moreover, the conduthing of good flore of warlike munition, and plentie of victuals for to renew ours : for this watre was principally enterprifed for the probt and greatnesse of the Tarianians, and for the importance which the loffe of the Lordships of Paguin and Quifu was vnto them, whereby the King of China had greatly strengthened and affured his estate, in so much as hee might at his 40 pleasure enter upon the Tartarians, and the Tartarians could not enterprife against him without great forces, for that hee had caused a wall to bee made betweene the spaces of the Mountaines, which was fortie leagues long, so as they were defended hereby from the ordinarie incursions. the which continually did greatly enrich them, because they brought much Cattell through the Mangi, which fame, wherein the Countrey of China doth greatly abound, by reason it is fituated in a tempethe Tastar has rate ayre, being neither too hot nor cold. This was the cause that made the Emperour his Vacle ming gotten to delire this warre; whom our Prince, according to his dutie, would to the vttermost of his in Polos dayes, power gratifie, as also his new Subiects.

So wee began to march, and in thirtie eight dayes wee arrived at Cipribit, the Armie having the Ch. new re- found great discommodities: there had wee newes of Calibes, who was very glad to understand 50 cour; the Tar- how the affaires had paffed : hee came to visit the Prince, who shewed vnto him a very good tarians fill hol- countenance, and gaue him particular understanding of his determination, and understood at large of Calibes, all that had passed within the Kingdome of China. The next day the Prince ex tours coner parts of Many; mounted on horse-back, and came vnto Pazanfon, where the forces commanded by Calibes were panest many at that prefent, the which had often fought with and tryed the forces of the Chinois : but found this florie (if shem much interiout vinto their owne. The Emperour caused a generall review to be made of all the forces which were wader Caliber, and after he beheld the countenances of these Souldiers throughout all their rankes, he caused them to muster, and to receive money, every one crying, The Prince of God fame the victorious and innincible Emperous, according to their custome.

The Prince of Thursis (who comma ided the Armie in Calibes absence, going to meet Tamernets a lot of law) with great diligence had marked the Wall, and the places by the which hee might enter by 69 the Mountains for even great diagence man marked one wan, and the places by the which nee might enter by to doe the Ems. peror feruice, in the Mountaynes, who aduertifed him of all. Hee had also gayned through his courtesse a Lord of the same Mountaynes (called the Lord of Vauchefu) who taled a great Countrey, with

whom he had fo well profited, that he made him defirous of a new Mafter, and to fibmit himtelfe vnto the Emperour, reseiuing daily great discommodicie by the warres which the Tartarians and Chinois made : fo as he comming to visit the Prince of Thanais , hee assured him of his defire to doe the Prince fernice, and to helpe him in the warre against the Chinois, the which the Prince of Thanais had wifely concealed from Calibes. But as foone as the Prince was arrived. he imparted the same vnto him, the which made Tamerlan desirous to have some speech with him, to that as foone as the Prince had received commandement from the Emperour, hee fent vnto Vauchefu to advertite him of the Princes arrivall, and of the commandement which hee had received: whereof the other was very glad, and having appointed a day, the Prince tooke Ic his fourney ( without flirring of the Armie ) into the campe of the Prince of Thanais, which was neere vnto the River of Languenne, whither hee had caused this foresaid Lord to come,

Then the Prince after he had heaped upon him gifts of faire Horses, rich Furres, and other rare things, he willed him to vtter that which he had to fay vnto him. This Lord spake then in this manner : Know my Lord , that it is but leffe of time to thinke , that with your Armes you should The speech of bee able to force the Wall, which the Chinois have built against the incursions of your subjects, the De- the Mountaine fendants have too much advantage therein. I doubt not of your Souldiers stoutnesse and of their cou. Lord vato Terage, I know you have conquered many Nations with them, and that what seener you command merlon. them, they will die or doe the same. I know you have great and wife Captaines with you, that

20 your Person is onely of all the World worthy to command them : but all this will bee but in vaine against the Wall of the Chinois, where I assure you there are fiftie thousand men to keepe it, and you cannot stay there so short a time, but there will come thither siftie thousand more, led by the Xianxi who bath such a commandement. The King of China will himselfe march forward also, who will give youbattell with two hundred thousand Horse and as many Footmen. After you have fought, I believe that the fortune and valour of your men may obtaine the viltorie, the which will cost you deare : but for to shew unto you how much the reputation and mildnesse of your men hath bound mee unto them, I will shew you a meanes by the which you may cause siftie thousand mento enter into the Kingdome of China, whom I my seife will conduct; and they shall bee on them which keepe the Wall, in a manner as soone as they shall perceive it. In the meane time you shall cause your 30 men to goe unto a place that I will tell you, which will bee very discommodious unto the Chinois, by reason of a Mountaine oner against them, which you must cause them to winne : for I assure my selfe, that when they shall perceine your Souldiers to bee passed, they will lose their courage, and you may casily winne the passage for to fauour those men of yours which shall bee passed ouer with mee. And for to show onto you the affection and fidelitie of that I speaks, I will deliner into your hands an onely Sonne I have, and two little Daughters with my Wife: I have also one Brother, who I am affured will follow mee to doe you feruice. The Prince having heard this Lord speake, received great ioy thereof, hoping that his affaires thould happily fucceede, and this hee kept very fecret, for even the Prince of Thanais knew not the meanes that this Lord had, feeing there was onely present the Prince and an Interpreter, and the Prince after hee had thus spoken vnso to him, gratifying him with all hee could possibly, this Lord retyred himselfe, accompanyed with the Prince of Thomais, who conducted him backe againe with all the honour that might bee. So the Emperour returned from thence into his quarter, and the next day after hee had imparted the whole vnto Odmar, and heard Calibes concerning that which hee had learned of the departing of the King of China, and of his preparation, which was great. This enterprise seeming hard vnto him , after due reuerence yeelded vnto the Prince , hee spake vnto him in this manner : Know my Lord, that I am your Slaue for to obey you : but feeing calibes Orariyou require mee to giue you an account of all that I know of the effate of the Kingdome of on voto Prince China, for that I have remay ned these fix moneths upon the borders by your commandement, Tomerian, to hinder them from pailing the same, whereby they might hurt your enterprises, I can af-50 firme vnto you, that the King of China, who raigneth at this present, is of great reputation,

and hath increased the limits of his Kingdome more then any of his Predecessors. His strength confifteth in this Wall opposed against vs, the which hee hath caused to bee made by reason of the ordinarie roades of our Nation. I am of opinion, that there bee betweene fiftie and threefcore thousand men at the guard of that Wall, men for the most part trayned up in the Garrifons of the King of China, and his best Souldiers, and I know no good meanes to force this Wall without great hazard and much losse of your men. I have vinderstood, that towards the Lake Hogeen you may finde more easie entrance into the Kingdome : after every one had decla- The Lake re i his opinion, hee faid; that hee hoped the great God (the Vnitie, of whom hee would Hoges. maintayne against such Idolaters) and his just right should answere the reasons which doe contradict his purpole, and the valiant arme of his Souldiers shall quite overthrow what sever opposeth it selte against the same; and concealed from his Souldiers that which hee held as affored to execute it, to the end, the honour of a happy conducting might be afcribed vnto him onely.

Now, our Prince having fat sfied every one of the Kings and Lords that did accompany him, bee appointed the meeting place for his Armie to bee at a certaine place, where hee meant to

choose fittie thousand fighting men, and deliver them vnto the commandement of the Prince of

Thanais, vnto whom he joyned the Lord Axalla a Genuois (for that hee knew him to bee dif-

creete ) for to accompanie him, commanding him to give credite vnto him, for his experience

and fidelitie. The day appointed being come, the Lord with his brother came to the Emperor,

having viewed the place againe, and found it to bee forceable and fit to passe, assuring the Prince

once agains of the happy successe of their enterprise, and the Prince beeing assembled with

them to conferre together, resolved in the end, that his person with all the army should

approach vnto the walles directly ouer against Quaguifon, in which meane space the

Axalla. The Emperour having not failed to deliver vnto them the best souldiers of his armie,

and having fet downe the order by them to bee observed, hee willed that the Lord Axella

should leadetwentie thousand of them, and should march the first, the rest led by the Prince

arrived at the passage, the which was won, not finding any man there to resist them : and having

taken a light repast, they beganne to march forward other ten leagues which yet remained.

where the Chinois were, who suspected no such thing, having onely an eye vnto them

the Princes armie to approach vnto their wall, as foone did they difery Axella with twenty thousand men, who advanced forward being followed by the Prince of Thorais

with thirtie thouland fouldiers chosen out of the whole army, who without any com-

munication fet vpon the Chinois, which came prefently vnto them, having left a certaine

number of their Campe for the guard of the wall : but they were presently won by the

footmen led this day by Odmar, who paffed ouer so as the Chinois were cut off betweene our

Armies. When Axalla began the battaile, he ouerthrew them in a manner all, the Prince of Tha-

nais not hazarding himself therein: there was great riches gotten this day, the King of China his

them, as well on their armes as on their horfe and furniture : they shewed no great stoutnesses. The newes heereof being come vnto the King of China, who at that present time was at Quanton, brought vnto him great aftonishment, for that hee judged it a thing that

could not possibly come to passe, you might have seene every one filled with fright, teares and

cries, bewailing the losse of their friends. The King gathering together foundiers from all parts (as the custome is of these people) caused all the Pricetes and such as had the charge of

holy things to come vnto him, and after exhortations vied, he(as their head) commanded them

to offer facrifice vnto their Gods, of whom the Sunne is the principall commanding in heaten

( whom they hold opinion to bee the chiefest cause of their being, accounting it immortall and im-

observed through out all his Cities; and the second thing was, that every one able to beare

armes should mount on horsebacke, and come vnto the King at Pagninson, whither hee doubted

men vnto the frontiers, at fuch time as they which were there had need thereof, was foone in a

full in the wayes of the countrey, troubled much the Armie : for a great number of his men were

on horsebacke. The Prince determined to beate downe all the wals, the better to affure his re-

turne, as also all the fortresses which were there vpon all the passages, all of them having

townes, Archy, Ymuly, Faliquien, Fuly, Cohensen, Qualiy, Puly Quianlu, who came and deliue-

red vp their keyes vnto him, being neighbours vnto this Lord, and gaue him the gouernment

of the frontier prouince of Xianxij, shewing himselfe to be a Prince of his word, and acknow-

ledging the notable services the which this Lord had done him. He referred the honouring of

his brother vntill he had meanes to doe the same : the Prince had received newes how that the

King of China affembled his forces & marched forwards, and that he was there in his owne per-

ion, & that he firengthened also his Cities which are fufficiently fortified, and vpon thele doub's

hee thought good to haue the aduice of his Captaines, and after fundry opinions, his resolution

of he may nourish his Armie, and secondarily call the enemie vnto battell. The which the con-

queror should alwaies seeke, &the defender the latest he can hazard the same. For that it is a very

doubtfull thing to commit themselves vnto a battell, his dutie being rather to delay, under mi-

ning the conqueror by lengt hand by wearinesse, and light skirmishes, then to fight in open field.

was, to leave nothing behind him, and to affault some famous Citie, and take it, by meanes where- 60

that we would go, because it was one of the neerest townes you the borders

The Emperous readincile, and came to oppose himselfe against the Princes Armie which entred, and being skil-

passible, moung it selse onely for the benefit of lining creatures) this did hee command to bee 49

I have forgotten to declare that this Lord who had the charge to conduct fiftie thousand

Coulin (whom he called King) was taken pritoner: There was a great quantity of gold amongst 30

But it fell out much otherwise, for even at the very same time the Chinois did perceive

affured to pale, conducted by the Chinos Lord, wnder the charge of the Prince of Thanais and Io

Then he dispatched Odmar with fourteene thousand Horse, to advance forward and summon the same, as for to hinder victuals from being conuaved thereinto out of the champaine Countrey: to the end that the Cattell remayning in the fields, should be a meanes to maintagne and nourish his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord Azalla Azalla made his feruices, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his Foot-men, which was one Captaine geof the principall honours of the Armie. Hee cauted the faid Lord Axalla to march after Odmar, nevall of all

10 with all the Foot-men, which was very neere a hundred and fifey thousand men, well trayned the foot-men; up in the warres, and good expert fighters. He marched himselfe immediatly after with all his Horsemen, Artilleries, Engines , and other munitions belonging vnto warre , directly vnto Pa. Pagninfin beguinfon. Odmar did ride twentie French leagues this day, to as he arrived there contrary to their beged. expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemie, and having taken much Cattell; wherewith the Countrey greatly aboundeth, he pitched his Tents, leauing the Citie betweene him and vs, and stayed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane space, sending continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the Enemie. This endured three or foure dayes, vntill our footmen led by this braue Christian Gennois, shewed themselves in the Playne of Paguinfon. Then the Citie was fummoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperour, or elfe they 20 should receive the Law of the Conquerour. They made answere, that they were determined to

line and die in the feruice of their Prince.

Now you must vinderstand that it was fortie yeeres, or thereabouts, since the Father of the Note these King which raigneth at this present ouer the Chinois, had conquered it from the Empire of the changes of Tartarians, and having driven out all the Inhabitants, they had planted therein new Colonies, flate betweet Tartarius, and nature unaction of the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Countier o trey, and imall walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Keyes, most willingly submitting themselues vnto the obedience of the Prince; so as there was great abundance of victuals within our Armie: and if wee had beene within our owne Countrey, there could not have come greater store; a thing which made our Prince hope for a happie successe, there 20 being no other difficulty which for the most part can ouerthrow a great Armie asours was, and withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of Pagainfon is belieged, and our foot-men camped round about within an Arrowes shot of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeuour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence,

Axalla having viewed a great and strong Suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league. supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there : that this must needs bee, for that they would not make him obstinate; he had a determination to winne it in the night; and having imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were ready, all of them having made prouision of Ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with handblowes, and having affaulted it on fundry parts, after the fight had continued two hours,

40 Axalla remay ned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thousand men at the least which were A great Subwithin the same : the spoyle was great, there were many of Axalla his men slayne of one side, urbe wonneby which was that by the which they doubted to be affaulted. But on the other fide, by the which Azalla in the it was taken, there was scarce any one slayne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly assonish mighe those of the Citie, who had marked the lustinesse of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of their fafety, which vnto this day they accounted as most affured. Now you must vnderstand The situation that the fittation of the Citie was of hard accesse, being seated upon a Playne, the which was or me united the fittation of the Citie was of hard accesse, being seated upon a Playne, the which was or me united the cities which was or me united to the cities which was on the cities which was one cities which was on

haur thereby a way for to forcour our Souldiers, which kept the pallages of the Mountaines on the enemies tide.

brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in person and meet with the Enemie, ac-60 companied with his principall Horf-men, and to leave the greatest part of his Foot-men at the siege, whereunto he had a great defire, omitting nothing that might wearie the belieged, who detended themselues couragiously. So the Prince beganne to batter, cauting his Engines to ap- The sege of proach; as Rammes, and other munitions: infomuch as the Citie was affaulted en two fides ve- Faguicfon.

enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them onely approaching the Citie, which ouerlooked it on front upon the North fide, where was a Valley by the which they poffed, and there did rume a River: on this fide wee the Suburbe fituated which had been taken, fo as the means to fuccour the Citie was flopped, our Souldiers keeping the paffiges of these Mountaines, the 50 which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdome : for Pagninfon was once governed by the Tartarians, which kept it for a defence against the Chinois, but had left the same, and these Mountaines were the limits of China against the aforesaid Tartarians, who governed Paguinfor at that time, so as these Mountaines were of hard accesse, and there remayned no other way but on the fide of the Suburbe, the which a River compaffeth about, running all along the fide of a bordering Mountaine, upon the which wee caused many bridges to be built, for to

In this meane time the King of Chinaes Armie approached which was very great, as they

Quagnifen. Fifuethousand fitte thousand men should march forwards vnto the place appointed, and where they were Chinabya feeret paffage. Prince of The of Thanais, and that every one should have one of those Lords to guide them, that by their mais and Axalla, meanes the enterprise might bee more safely directed. So having marched ten leagues, they

A fecret way found into Chima, by the con- which marched for to force their walles, affuring themselves to have the mastry, considering duct of the mountaine Lord.

Axalla onerthrew the Chi. nois that kept the wall of partition,

The cuftome

of the Chinaia in religion.

wals of China. The mountain yeelded themselves after his victorie, the wing himselfe very courteous vnto the people of these 50 Lord rewarded mountaines, he gaue vnto this Lord a small portion of land, wherein there be seven or eight good gouernment.

A good aduer. General.

ry couragiously. In the end through the valour of Axalla, who gaue an affault with twenty thou-

fand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince having so comman-

ded him to doe, to stop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes pur-

pole was to compound for the Citie, and not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that

he feared, the Citie being great and rich, that when the Souldiers should facke it, the Enemie

who was but thirty leagues from thence, should come vpon them, and by this meanes his Armie

should be found in disorder, also rich Souldiers neuer serue well : The other was, for that hee

would draw out of that Citie which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were ne-

ceffary for the fure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessary to have such a Citie

the Enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for ayde according

to the newes they had received, that the Kings Armie marched forward. Whileft thefe things

were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, flue the Gouernour, whereupon they did

resolue for to yeeld themselves vnto the Princes mercy, saving their lines, and the Souldiers en-

ioying their horse and weapons. The conditions were agreed upon, and there came out of the

Citie eighteene thouland Souldiers, the Inhabitants remayning in a manner all : there were

therein thirtie thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two moneths. The

honour of taking the Citie and the happy successe therein was attributed vnto Axalla, to whom

was given the government of the Citie with the Countrey already conquered. But hee befee-

ferued the hope of his Master, wherein hee should have part. This answere did greatly contene

the Prince, for hee greatly defired the feruice of Axalla. Vpon his refufall this charge was be-

flowed voon the Prince of Thanais, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I have already told

you, our Prince after hee had given such order as was necessary, and advertised his friends in all

parts, and about all the Emperour, he marched forward, having contented his Souldiers, and made a generall muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to

be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after he had solemnely called voon

enterprised to goe on forward, and to goe directly vnto the Enemie, who was at Simehu, with

all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As foone as he received newes that our Armie was paf- 30

The King of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeeres, who for the most part had beene

brought up in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor under the bloudie ensigne of Marie

loden with Iron, boytterous and furious, not with gold, precious flones, and with fuch kinde of riches: to as he was very infolent in threatnings, branadoes, and in defying vnto the battaile;

He often faid that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that

parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighbours and

Allies, who marched with the fame preparation. The rumour of these riches gave great courage

to the Souldiers, for they were couctous of iuft gayne, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both

our Armies went forward each to approch the other, and there was a Citie yeelded vnto the

Prince called Tunichenoy, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end wee might give occasion vnto the Enemie for to approch neerer, we sent to summon, and at the same

time to take possession of the Citie of Pamiba, the which in advancing forward wee left a little

behinde vs. The King of Chine had put many men thereinto, and it was a Citie fufficiently well

fortified : from Tianchenoy to Pagninubu there were ten leagues. He advanced his Armie within

ment of the Enemies comming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the

battaile, which he had chosen in his judgement with most advantage, and having set downe vn-

to Odmar the order he would have to be observed, he defired to see the comming of this Armie:

so sending before him fine or fix thousand Horse as Scouts, hee advanced forward, and Calibes

with him. After he had feene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee

commanded Calibes to retyre himfelfe as foone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto

him this great cloud, the which hee hoped foone to difperfe. So the Prince returned backe vn-

to his men for to affure them of the battaile: hee caused all his footmen to bee placed all along

by a great Mountayne, fo as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great flore

fcore thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the Christian manner, and all

of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about fix- 60

a league of the Citie Tiauchewoy, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertife- 50

we had strucken him without speaking any word : for this is the custome of the people in those 40

ched the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himselse heere- 20

for to make a Store-house of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, to

It was concluded, and the aduice of enery one was, to conquer the Countrey by little and little, so as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto Paguinfon, which as it was a great Citie, and one of the chiefeit, so is it also strongly fortified, and well replenished with people.

Then he dispatched Odmar with fourteene thousand Horse, to advance forward and summon the same, as for to hinder victuals from being conuaved thereinto out of the champaine Countrey : to the end that the Cattell remayning in the fields, should be a meanes to maintayne and nourish his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord Axalla Malla made his feruses, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his Foot-men, which was one Captaine geof the principall honours of the Armie. Hee caused the faid Lord Arafa to march after Odmer, netall of all with all the Foot-men, which was very neere a hundred and fifty thousand men, well resonant the foot-men. 10 with all the Foot-men, which was very neere a hundred and fifty thousand men, well trayned

up in the warres, and good expert fighters. He marched himselfe immediatly after with all his Horfemen, Aptilleries, Engines, and other munitions belonging vinto warre, directly vinto Pa. Pagningus beguinfou. Odmar did ride twentie French leagues this day, fo as he arrived there contrary to their fieged, expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemie, and having taken much Cattell. wherewith the Countrey greatly aboundeth, he pitched his Tents, leaving the Citie betweene him and vs , and stayed for his footmen, who marched for wards in the meane space, sending continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the Enemie. This endured three or foure dayes, vntill our footmen led by this braue Christian Gennois, shewed themselves in the Playne of Pagumfon. Then the Citie was fummoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperour, or elfe they 20 should receive the Law of the Conquerour. They made answere, that they were determined to

line and die in the feruice of their Prince.

Now you must vinderstand that it was fortie yeeres, or thereabouts, since the Father of the Nore these King which raigneth at this prefent ouer the Chineis, had conquered it from the Empire of the changes of King which raigneth at this present ouer the common has been depended therein new Colonies, flacebe.wist Tartarians, and having driven out all the Inhabitants, they had planted therein new Colonies, flacebe.wist the Taries and to thorowly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Counchinain, trey, and imall walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Keyes, most willingly submitting themselves vnto the obedience of the Prince : so as there was great abundance of victuals within our Armie: and if wee had beene within our owne Countrey, there could not have come greater flore; a thing which made our Prince hope for a happie successe, there 30 being no other difficulty which for the most part can ouerthrow 2 great Armie as ours was, and

withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of Paguinfon is belieged, and our footmen camped round about within an Arrowes shot of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeuour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence. Axalla having viewed a great and firong Suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league.

supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there : that this must needs bee, for that they would not make him obstinate; he had a determination to winne it in the night, and having imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were ready, all of them having made promision of Ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with handblowes, and having affaulted it on fundry parts, after the fight had continued two houres, 40 Axalla remay ned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thouland men at the least which were A great Sub-

within the same: the spoyle was great, there were many of Axalla his men slayne of one side, urbe wonneby which was that by the which they doubted to be affaulted. But on the other fide, by the which Axalla in the it was taken, there was scarce any one slayne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly assouth nightthose of the Citie, who had marked the lustinesse of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of their fafety, which vnto this day they accounted as most affured. Now you must vnderstand The Suation that the fituation of the Citie was of hard accesse, being seated vpon a Playne, the which was of the Citie of engineered round about with Mountaines, one of them one transported in the Citie of Pagainfin. enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them onely approaching the Citie, which ouerlooked it on front vpon the North fide, where was a Valley by the which they poffed, and there did runne a River : on this fide was the Suburbe fituated which had been taken, fo as the meanes to fuccour the Citie was flopped, our Souldiers keeping the paffages of these Mountaines, the

50 which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdome : for Pagninfon was once gouerned by the Tartarians, which kept it for a defence against the Chinois, but had lost the same, and these Mountaines were the limits of China against the aforesaid Tartarians, who governed Paguinfor at that time , so as these Mountaines were of hard accesse, and there remayned no other way but on the fide of the Suburbe, the which a River compaffeth about, running all along the fide of a bordering Mountaine, vpon the which wee caused many bridges to be built, for to have thereby a way for to fuccour our Souldiers, which kept the pallages of the Mountaines on the enemies tide.

60 companied with his principall Horf-men, and to leave the greatest part of his Foot-men at the

In this meane time the King of Chinaer Armie approached which was very great, as they brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in perion and meet with the Enemie, acfiege, whereanto he had a great defire, omitting nothing that might wearie the belieged, who defended themiclues couragiously. So the Prince beganne to batter, causing his Engines to ap- The fiege of proach; as Rammes, and other munitions: infomuch as the Citie was affaulted en two fides ve- Paguiajou.

The Citie of Paguinfou yeelded vnto Tamerlan vpon the death of their Gouerdxall:s choife.

kind of godli- the Immortall, Inuincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, wee

The King of the Aing of china his mag. cence: there was nothing to bee seene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe

fed ouer the River of Chalifu, the King of China marched directly vnto vs with great magnifiwas commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was fuch a quantitie of gold and rich stones, that enery part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles.

The custome

Pannibu.

The order of

as Generall.

they were commanded by fundrie Captaines; but all obeyed Axalla, who commanded them Our Horse-men were in battaile array in a great levell Playne, having the Footmen on the

The Cirie of Paguinfou yeelded vnto Tamerlax voen the death of their Gouer.

fand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince having to commanded him to doe, to flop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes purpole was to compound for the Citie, and not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that he feared, the Citie being great and rich, that when the Souldiers flould facke it, the Enemie who was but thirty leagues from thence, should come upon them, and by this meanes his Armie thould be found in disorder, also rich Souldiers neuer serue well : The other was, for that hee would draw out of that Citie which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were neceffary for the fure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessary to have such a Citie for to make a Store-house of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, 10 the Enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for ayde according to the newes they had received, that the Kings Armic marched forward. Whileft thefe things were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, slue the Gouernour, whereupon they did resolue for to yeeld themselues vnto the Princes mercy, fauing their lines, and the Souldiers enicying their horse and weapons. The conditions were agreed upon, and there came out of the Citie eighteene thousand Souldiers, the Inhabitants remayning in a manner all : there were therein thirtie thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two moneths. The honour of taking the Citie and the happy successe therein was attributed vnto Azalla, to whom was given the government of the Citie with the Countrey already conquered. But hee befeeched the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himselfe heere- 20 ferued the hope of his Master, wherein hee should have part. This answere did greatly content the Prince, for hee greatly defired the service of Axalla. Vpon his refusall this charge was beflowed upon the Prince of Thanais, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I have already told you, our Prince after hee had given such order as was necessary, and advertised his friends in all parts, and aboue all the Emperour, he marched forward, having contented his Souldiers, and made a generall muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after he had folemnely called your the Immortall, Inuincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, wee enterprised to goe on forward, and to goe directly vnto the Enemie, who was at Sintehn, with all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As soone as he received newes that our Armie was pal- 30 fed ouer the River of Chalifu, the King of China marched directly vnto vs with great magnifi-China his mag- cence: there was nothing to bee feene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe was commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was such a quantitie of gold and rich stones, that euery part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles. The King of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeeres, who for the most part had beene

kind of godli-

The cuftome of the Chinais,

Pannibu.

He often faid that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that we had ftrucken him without speaking any word : for this is the custome of the people in those 40 parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighbours and Allies, who marched with the same preparation. The rumour of these riches gaue great courage to the Souldiers, for they were conetous of just gayne, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both our Armies went forward each to approch the other, and there was a Citie yeelded vnto the Prince called Tunichenoy, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end wee might give occasion vnto the Enemie for to approch neerer, we sent to summon, and at the same time to take pollethon of the Citie of Pannibu, the which in advancing forward wee left a little behinde vs. The King of China had put many men thereinto, and it was a Citie fufficiently well fortified : from Tiaucheuoy to Pagninubu there were ten leagues. He advanced his Armie within a league of the Citie Tianchenoy, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertife- 50 ment of the Enemies comming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the battaile, which he had chosen in his judgement with most advantage, and having set downe vnto Odmar the order he would have to be observed, he desired to see the comming of this Armie: fo fending before him fine or fix thousand Horse as Scouts, hee advanced forward, and Calibes with him. After he had feene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee commanded Calibes to retyre himielfe as foone as they drew neere vntohim, and bring vnto him this great cloud, the which hee hoped foone to differfe. So the Prince returned backe vnto his men for to assure them of the battaile: hee caused all his sootmen to bee placed all along by a great Mountayne, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great store of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about fix- 60 fcore thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the Christian manner, and all they were commanded by fundrie Captaines; but all obeyed Axalla, who commanded them as Generall,

brought up in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor under the bloudie ensigne of Mars.

loden with Iron, boysterous and furious, not with gold, precious stones, and with such sinde

of riches: fo as he was very infolent in threatnings, brauadoes, and in defying vnto the battaile;

The order of the Princes battaile against the

Our Horse-men were in battaile array in a great levell Playne, having the Footmen on the

left hand, and on the right was the comming of the Enemie, fo as voon the least disfauour that might happen, hee would retyre to bee affitted by his footmen. Wee had four fcore thousand horie: Calibes with the Soythians were in the Auantguard, and had the commandement of thirtie thouland horse, who should receive him at such time as he did draw on the Enemie, as he was commanded. It was divided into three troupes, each one confifting of ten thousand. Odmar had also thirtie thousand horse who should affift him. The Prince remayned in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces : his purpote was to fuffer the threefcore and fix thouland horfe to maintayne the fight against the Barbarians, being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperor hoped after of 10 them to have a good marker, by carling his footmen to march forward and himfelfe with whom

there abode twentie thousand of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his Person for to give a new battaile, if so be that any disfavour should happen vnto them : for hee had understood that this was the custome of the Kings of China, to enclose themselves within the middest of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselues but upon the extremitie. So the Enemie fayled nothing at all to march directly vnto Calibes, and all the Atmie marched after following of him and fetting vpon him, and hee euen as the Seythians are al-wayes accustomed to doe, with his six thousand horse in retyring gaue many charges, killing some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautifull light to see this great Armie march, for it seemed to bee twife as great as ours, therein being an infinite number

30 of armed Chariots, wherein he put his principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers; fo many gildings of gold and filter as well in the trappings of their Horfes, as on their Armour, that it glittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the The beautie Armie march after Calibes, commended greatly the manner of casting their men out of the andrichnesse rankes, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did fee this Armie come in good order, and he of the King of tryed with his eye to note the place where the Kings Person was, having neere him the Chinas Armie. Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Auantguard nor battaile, but onely an Arier-ward commanded by the King, and inclosed (as I haue faid) with his Chariots : the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himfelte vnto vs, and in our language faid : Ter must wee this day differse this cloud here so gilded, Tamerlan his 30 and the King of China and my felfe must make a partition thereof.

Now, having feene the Enemie fufficiently advanced, and judging that he had had feene them march a good league, he thought it not convenient to suffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselues againe into their order; he sent unto Calibes for to will him to set forward the fight, and that if those whom he had led with him should be weary, they should come voto him; but it was not in Calibes power to have this commandement over them. For as foone as they heard this word of fighting vttered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded ouer them, called Ziottabanes, who made appeare vnto the Chinois to what end their flight was, charging very stiffely vpon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an occafion to begin the first fight. And I affure you, there could not be seene a more surious thing, nor 40 any for to fight with more defire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honour vnto his Prince. Now, this endured a long houre before the Chinois had ouerthrowne Calibes.

The Prince did see all patiently, saying alwayes, that the great multitude how confused soener The battaile it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers : you could not yet per- betweene the ceiue any alteration in the Princes countenance, Aduerfitie and Prosperitie were so indifferent King of China vnto him. His thirty thousand Horse were all Softbians, who observe not the same order the and Tamerian. Parthians doe. Now, before the Prince retyred with his men, hee did fee the first charge giuen. Calibes being wounded, retyred himselse neere vnto the Prince, having with him two thousand horse ioyned together againe, and many more ioyning themselues together necre vnto the Prince, who commanded that they should cure Calibes, viewing the place of his wound, hee 50 caused him to bee conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also. Now, Calibes was not able to pierce through this Armie, being beaten back; but Odmar with

almost all the Parthian horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorow them, and returned by one of the right wings of the Armie, where hee fought most valiantly, and having beaten them back even within the Kings Chariots, he thought that he should not doe wifely to goe about to breake fuch forces.

The King of China comming forward, and the horse-men which had beene broken by Odmar, joyning themselves together for his ayde, Odmar onely remayning in the battaile sent vnto the Prince for the footmen, and for to let forward the Artillerie, and that hee should assure himselfe of the victorie. The Prince, who had already set forward, kept aloofe off, and fent 60 vato him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillery, guing charge thereof vato Axalla, who forthwith let forward, having commandement to let vpon the Chariots, and to make an entrance : he fet forward the Artillery before him, the which did greatly aftonish the enemies : for the Gouernours of the horfes, belonging to the Kings Chariots, could not hold them; it made also a great spoyle. As soone as he perceived this disorder, hee fer forward, and

came to hand-blowes, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kings person. Axalla full of courage fought so valiantly, that they neuer beheld any doe more brauely. Odmer during this fight charged againe the Horlemen, who were retyred vnto the Kings avde, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the rest of his Foot-men. gaue ayde vnto Axalla, and came even vnto the person of the King of China, who was as yet enclosed within a second ranke of Chariots with thirty or forty thousand men : and after hee The King of had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men affitting the Foot-men, and they principally The aing or the Prince had referred, the King remayned wounded within the power of the Prince, and taken Prie the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Campe forced; the fight endured eight houres. and it was even night, which faued the lives of many of the Enemies. There were flaine two 10 Kings the Allyes of the King of China, and one taken Prisoner: there was inestimable riches King of china, gotten, as well in golden Vessellas precious stones, and the most rich and faire Charlots that could be feene.

The Prince would not see the captined King vntill the next day, beeing mounted on Horse. backe, and passing through the Campe of the Battayle for to stay the slaughter, and to ioyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee kept, whereof hee gaue the charge vnto Axalla; to whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the King of China within the middeft of his Souldiers, having bin already dreffed of a wound he had received in his right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diversitie of streamers wherewith they were decked, the which feemed vnto vs afar off as beautifull, as the diversity of 20 colours plentifull. But to fay the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, not withflanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours : and it is reported, that hee had ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thouland Horfe-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselves to bee slaine one vpon another, not marking their aduancage, nor having any Warlike knowledge, as our men have: there were flaine of the Enemies some threescore thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince hauing given thankes vnto God for his victorie, cauted the wounded to bee cured, and amonest the others Caliber, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the Ayre, rather then by the blow of the wound he had received, found himfelfe very ill, yet would he not omit his dutie, to com- 30 mand alwayes his Auant-gard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for he alone had Commandement ouer the Emperours Forces, beeing a Scythian, and greatly beloued of his

Tam. dranke

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of Chie. mas Brothers, who was fled away, having joyned together againe some twelve or fifteene thoufand Horse. The Prince sent to summon Panning, the which did yeeld it selfe vnto him: wherevpon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to aduance our selues the further into the Countrey. Now I forget to declare how the Prince having the next day caused his Tents to bee pitched most stately, and his Guards ordered according to his greatnesse, the principall of his Army being also neere his person: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 40 untill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a Tart and his water, for hee neuer dranke Wine; and lay downe on a Carpet where hee paffed the reft of the night. I was neere vnto him and neuer left him : but I neuer heard any vaunting or boafting to proceed out of his mouth. Then hee fent a commandement vnto Axalla to bring vnto him of the king of the imprisoned King : who beeing come, the Emperour issued out of his Tents, and went of the king of China came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like vato the Emperour Tamer preter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake sercely vnto him after this manner: The Gods whom I worship, being prouoked against my Nation and people, and confoired against my good fortune, have made mee at this day thy Prisoner : but forasmuch, as it is 50 reported ouer all the World, that Tamerlan maketh warre for the honour of his Nation : thou shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory, that the Lord of the World, the Child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receive fuch Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This hee faid in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himfelfe. The Emperour on the other-fide having faluted him very courteoufly, led him into his Tent.

He is furely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his Kingdome. There be many Mynes of Gold and Siluer, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the Christians call Rhubarbe. There bee in like manner within the Kingdome of China fifteene very large Prounces, the which have Gouernours. It is reported that hee hath threefcore and tenne Kings wearing Crownes, Tributaries vnto him. We call this Region China, the which they in 60 Tame, or Tamin their Language name Tame, and the people Tangis, the which we call Chinois. This Kingdome and Tamegius. doch abound in fifth, and in great numbers of wild-fewle, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe ouerflow the Countrey, the which is reasonable temperate: they aabound greatly in Silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, having small quantitie of

left hand, and on the right was the comming of the Enemie, fo as voon the least disfauour that might happen, hee would retyre to bee affitted by his footmen. Wee had foure fore thousand horse: Calibes with the Scythians were in the Auantguard, and had the commandement of thirtie thousand horse, who should receive him at such time as he did draw on the Enemie, as he was commanded. It was divided into three troupes, each one confifting of ten thousand, Odmer had also thirtie thousand horse who should affist him. The Prince remayned in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces; his purpose was to fuffer the threefcore and fix thouland horfe to maintayne the fight against the Barbarians; being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperor hoped after of

10 them to have a good market, by canning his footmen to march forward, and himfelfe with whom there abode twentie thouland of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his Person for to give a new battaile, if so be that any disfavour should happen vnto them : for hee had understood that this was the custome of the Kings of China, to enclose themselves within the middest of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselves but upon the extremitie. So the Enemie fayled nothing at all to march directly vnto Calibes, and all the Armie marched after following of him and ferting vpon him, and hee euen as the Seythians are alwayes accustomed to doe, with his fix thousand horse in retyring gaue many charges, killing some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautifull light to see this great Armie march, for it feemed to bee twife as great as ours, therein being an infinite number 20 of armed Chariots, wherein he put his principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers; fo ma-

ny gildings of gold and filuer as well in the trappings of their Horfes, as on their Armour, that it glittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the The besurie Armie march after Calibes, commended greatly the manner of cashing their men out of the andrichness rankes, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did fee this Armie come in good order, and he of the King of tryed with his eye to note the place where the Kings Person was, having neere him the Chinose China Atmie, Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Auantguard nor battaile, but onely an Arier-ward commanded by the King, and inclosed (as I haue faid) with his Chariots : the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himselfe vnto vs, and in our language faid : Ter must wee this day difter fe this cloud here so gilded, Tamerlan his

30 and the King of China and my felfe must make a partition thereof.

Now, having feene the Enemie fufficiently advanced, and judging that he had had feene them King of Chinds march a good league, he thought it not convenient to fuffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselues againe into their order; he sent vnto Calibes for to will him to set forward the fight, and that if those whom he had led with him should be weary, they should come wato him; but it was not in Calibes power to have this commandement over them. For as soone as they heard this word of fighting vetered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded ouer them, called Zioctabanes, who made appeare vnto the Chinois to what end their flight was, charging very stiffely upon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an occafion to begin the first fight. And I affure you, there could not be seene a more furious thing, nor 40 any for to fight with more defire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honour vnto his Prince, Now, this endured a long houre before the Chinois had ouerthrowne Caliber.

The Prince did see all patiently, saying alwayes, that the great multitude how confused source The battaile it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers : you could not yet per- betweene the ceiue any alteration in the Princes countenance, Aduerlitie and Prosperitie were so indifferent King of China voto him. His thirty thouland Horse were all Soythians, who observe not the same order the and Tamerian, Parthians doe. Now, before the Prince retyred with his men, hee did fee the first charge given, Calibes being wounded, retyred himselfe neere vnto the Prince, having with him two thousand horse ioyned together againe, and many more ioyning themselues together neere vnto the Prince, who commanded that they should cure Calibes, viewing the place of his wound, hee 50 caused him to bee conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also. Now, Calibes was not able to pierce through this Armie, being beaten back; but Odmar with

almost all the Parthian horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorow then, and returned by one of the right wings of the Armie, where hee fought most valiantly, and having beaten them back even within the Kings Chariots, he thought that he should not doe wifely to goe about to breake fuch forces. The King of China comming forward, and the horse-men which had beene broken by Od-

mar, ioyning themselves together for his ayde, Odmar onely remayning in the battaile sent vnto the Prince for the footmen, and for to fet forward the Artillerie, and that hee should assure himselfe of the victorie. The Prince, who had already set forward, kept aloose off, and sent 60 vnto him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillery, guing charge thereof vnto Axalla, who forthwith let torward, having commandement to let vpon the Chariots, and to make an entrance : he fet forward the Artillery before him, the which did greatly aftonish the enemies : for the Gouernours of the horses, belonging to the Kings Chariots, could not hold them; it made also a great spoyle. As foone as he perceived this disorder, hee set forward, and

Cory over the King of China.

came to hand-blowes, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kines perion. Axalla full of courage fought to valiantly, that they neuer beheld any doe more brauelv. Odmar during this fight charged agains the Horsemen, who were retyred vnto the Kings avde, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the reft of his Foot-men, gaue ayde vnto Axalia, and came even vnto the person of the King of China, who was as yet encloted within a second ranke of Chariots with thirty or forty thousand men : and after hee The King of had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men affating the Foot-men, and they principally The King of the Prince had referred, the King remayned wounded within the power of the Prince, and taken Pris the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Campe forced; the fight endured eight houres, and it was even night, which faued the lives of many of the Enemies. There were slaine two to Kings the Allyes of the King of China, and one taken Prisoner: there was inestimable riches gotten, as well in golden Vessellas precious stones, and the most rich and faire Chariots that

The Prince would not fee the captined King vntill the next day, beeing mounted on Horfebacke, and paffing through the Campe of the Battayle for to flay the flaughter, and to joyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee kept, whereof hee gaue the charge vinto Axalla; to whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the King of China within the middeft of his Souldiers, having bin already dreffed of a wound he had received in his right arme, It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diversitie of streamers wherewith they were decked, the which feemed vnto vs afar off as beautifull, as the diversity of 20 colours plentifull. But to fay the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, not withflanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours : and it is reported, that hee had ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thouland Horse-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselves to bee staine one vpon another, not marking their aduantage, nor having any Warlike knowledge, as our men have: there were flaine of the Enemies some threescore thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince having given thankes vnto God for his victorie, cauted the wounded to bee cured, and amongst the others Calibes, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the Ayre, rather then by the blow of the wound he had received, found himfelfe very ill, yet would he not omit his dutie, to com- 30 mand alwayes his Auant-gard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for he alone had Commandement ouer the Emperours Forces, beeing a Scythian, and greatly beloued of his

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of Chimas Brothers, who was fled away, hauing ioyned together againe some twelue or fifteene thoufand Horse. The Prince sent to summon Pannha, the which did yeeld it selfe vnto him : wherevpon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to advance our felues the further into the Countrey. Now I forget to declare how the Prince having the next day caused his Tents to bee pitched most stately, and his Guards ordered according to his greatnesse, the principall of his Army being also neere his person: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 49 vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a Tart and his water, for hee neuer dranke Wine; and lay downe on a Carpet where hee paffed the rest of the night. I was neere vnto him and neuer left him : but I neuer heard any vaunting or boalting to proceed out of his mouth. Then hee fent a commandement vnto Axalla to bring vnto him The comming of the imprisoned King: who beeing come, the Emperour issued out of his Tents, and went china priloner to receive him. This King of China came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like vnto the Em- a couragious man, approaching neere vnto the Emperour, hee demanded of Axalla by an Interperour Tamer- preter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vinto him after this manner: The Gods whom I worship, being prouoked against my Nation and people, and confoired against my good fortune, have made mee at this day thy Prisoner: but forasmuch, as it is 50 reported ouer all the World, that Tamerlan maketh warre for the honour of his Nation : thou shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory that the Lord of the World, the Child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receive fuch Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This hee faid in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himfelfe. The Emperour on the other-fide having faluted him very courteoutly, led him into his Tent.

Tam. dranke no Wine.

oo. Cities. Rhubarbe.

He is furely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his King-Adeleration dome. There be many Mynes of Gold and Siluer, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the Christians call Rhubarbe. There bee in like manner within the Kingdome of China fifteene very large Prounces, the which have Gouernours. It is reported that hee hath threefcore and tenne Kings wearing Crownes, Tributaries vnto him. We call this Region China, the which they in 60 Tame, or Tamin their Language name Tame, and the people Tanges, the which we call Chinese. This Kingdome and Tamegais. doth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wild-fowle, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe ouerflow the Countrey, the which is reasonable temperate: they aabound greatly in Silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, having small quantitie of

Wooll, and not ving the same: they have much Cotton and Linnen in stead thereof. The men doe weare their haire long, the women combe them : they have as many Wives as they are able to maintayne, Next vnto the King, there is a Gouernour Generall whom they call Tuten, the which was the Brother vnto the imprisoned King. The Prince having affembled his councell to to the end he might be aduised how he should vie his Prisoners and the rest of the Victory : hee received newes by Odmar, how that the Kings Brother was arrived at Quanton, the which hee had fortified, and that great flore of forces did ioyne themselves vnto him. This was the cause that the Prince having somewhat rested his forces, commanded two thousand Parthian Horse to convey the Priloners vnto Pagninfon, and from thence after they had made about there, to paffe

To ouer the Mountaynes, and to remayne at Burda (a Citie of olde time faithfull vnto the Empe- Burda rours of Schria) and there to keepe them faithfully. The purpose and resolution of the Prince was, that it behooved to affault Quanton, and to faut vp, if it were post ble, the Kings Brother within the same, being one of the principall seates belonging vnto the King of China, and a Citie greatly peopled and ffrong : it was forty leagues from the place where the batravle was fought. But Odmer being advanced thither, would not retyre before he had expresse Commandement from the Prince, who having fent thither, pitched his Teats round about the faid Cities having fummoned many small Cities, the which yeelded themselves wholly vnto the Princes mercy, making great lamentation for their King taken. Notwithstanding, the gentlenesse vied by the Conquerour made them to take all their losses with patience: and because it was also re-20 Ported, that he had vied the King moit friendly, and all the Prisoners : the Kings Brother had

tent Embaffadours to obtayne leave for to know of the Kings health, and for to fee him, the which the Prince did willingly fuffer, to the end this other should not declare himselfe Kings who would have brought him more trouble then the other. He attended for the event of Quanton, and had his eye vpon the successe of this siege. Now the Kings Brother having received newes of the Affaires of the belieged, he determined eyther to fuccourit, or to fight a Bartle. and came straight vnto Porchio, and made a bridge of Boats, whereof there be great store in their Porchio.

Now being enformed when the halfe part were passed, which was fiftie thousand men good. Odmar finding them in very ill order, and nothing at all advertised of the Enemies nearnesse, 20 gaue the charge, and verely ouerthrew them: there remayned dead you the ground form fiftie of the kings on the kings of a great Marish wherein they were encamped. Notwithstanding our Foot-men having wonne passing of a Ris the banke of the River, beganne also to winne the Boats, and to feuer them by the meanes of a uer, and flue great Boat, the which we with diligence caused to runne downe beeing full of artificiall fire, so fifty thousand as at the fame very time that they which were within the Boate did draw neere, they retyred of his men. out of the same, having fret kindled the fire within the Boate, the which with a great force rushed against the Bridge of Boats and overthrew it, and where it was resisted did burne. This did greatly aftomih them that were paffed, to fee their returne cut off. The Kings Brother was

not yet passed vnto the other-side of the water, and he which first had gone over was the King 40 of Canchina, who was slayne at the first charge, fighting very valiantly, in the fere-front. The Kings Brother did fee his men flayne and drowned, and could not remedie the fame. This fecond ouerthrow was of no small importance, although it was but the third part of the Kings Brothers Army, and that there remayned vnto him as yet a hundred thousand fighting menibut there was no great hope that he durst present himselfe before our Army. The newes hereof being reported at Quantionfon, they defired to make tryall of the Emperours clemency. Axalla dispatched one of his faithfull friends of his Countrey vnto the Prince, to carry vnto him these good newes : which was more welcome vnto the Prince, then the overthrow he had given vnto the Enemy, and agreed vnto all that Axalla demanded, referring all vnto his sufficiencie and fidelitie. The Kings Brother having fent to demand fafety for to treate, the Prince granted to much vnto them, for such as would come vnto him.

50 In this meane-time Quantoufou yeelded it felfe into the hands of Axalla, who caufed the Garrison to come out of the same, received the Inhabitants into the Princes protection, and they which would might remayne therein vnarmed : and he entred thereinto with the joy of all the Inhabitants, who did determine to receive the Emperour into the same with all the magnificence that might be. He caused thirty thousand men of War to enter thereinto; vnto whom was money deliuered for to maintayne them there, vntill fuch time as all the Foot-men should receive pay for three monethes due voto them, whereof the Inhabitants of Quantonfon did turnish the Prince, to the summe of eight hundred thousand Tentins, the which do amount vnto foure hundred and fifty thousand crownes or therabout. The Prince at this present sent me vnto Axalla, whom I found feating of his Captaines and fouldiers, flaying for the commandement that I 60 brought vnto him, the which was to remaine within Quantonfon, and to cause all his footmen

to fet forward directly vnto him, the which was done by the Prince, to the end it should strike a greater terror into the minds of the enemies, who feeing all his footmen arrived, he supposed they wold nothing doubt (Quantouf on being taken) but that he would march forward, infomuch Thus the Embassadors being arrived, who were of the Kings chiefest Vassals, Tamerlan recei-

ued them with all humanitie, causing his greatnesse to appeare vnto them; and therewithall the

agilitie of his Horsemen, to make them see with their eyes, that it would be the destruction of

An Embaffage the Chinois name, if he proceeded any further. So having faluted the Emperour with all reuefrom the King rence, they vetered their Embassage vnto him, which was that the Kings Brother had sent them

vnto him to treat for two causes: the one, was for the liberty of their King, the other, for prether vato Ta. leruation of their Countrey. The Prince having heard them, answered them, that they had reafor peace, and fon to truft vnto his mildnesse, and seeing at this present, they desired it, he would yeeld therethe Kings de- unto. Thereupon the Prince role vp, and caused to be said vnto them, that they should deliuer their offers in writing, and that present answere should bee made thereunto. Thus went they out of the Princes presence with great joy, and as it were affored of Peace, and to recouer their former prosperities. The conditions which they offered, were to leave Paguinfon, and all the Countrey beyond it, with all the Fortreffes of the Mountaynes; that they would pay all the charges of his Army, fince the day of answere made vnto his Embassadors; that they would Conditions a give two Millions of Gold, for their King. This being prefented wnto the Lord, hee made an invertebrento, which was; that he would keepe that which hee had conquered within the betweene 74.

merlan and the Countrey, which was his owne justly, seeing his armes had given it vnto him; that hee would 20. haue the River where he was now encamped to be his Frontier, ftretched vnto Hochio, Tehancezug, Cauchio, Lulun, euen vnto Poschio bordering vpon the Sea; that the King of China should pay vnto him yearely three hundred thousand Crownes, the which should bee deliuered at Paguinfon, for acknowledgement of submission vnto the Empire, as well for his Successors as himfelfe; that they should pay fine hundred thousand Crownes in ready money for the charge of the Army; that the King of China should be delivered, and all the Chinass Prisoners should pay ransom vnto particular men that took them, except those which carryed the name of Kings, who should pay one hundred thousand Crownes for peace with his Armes : that no Chinois should bee kept as slaue, nor fold for such hereaster, beeing vnder the Princes obedience, that Traffique and Entercourse of Merchants should be free betweene both the Nations; that the King of China should deliver his Brother as Prisoner, and two Kings named, with twelve principall men of the Countrey for affurance of the peace. They accepted of fuch conditions of peace as pleafed the Conquerour, hoping that time would bring againe vnto them their ancient liberty, and that for a time it behooved them to beare with patience the yoke of their bondage. Now the Prince had fent two thousand Horse, to fetch the King of China, to the end that being at liberty, he might sweare to the peace solemnly, the which he having performed at Quantonfou, whither the Prince caused him for to come, he brought with him vnto Paguin, all the pled-

> In the meane-time the Emperour, after hee had prouided for the affurance of his new conquest, he left Odmar there to gouerne them, and gaue vnto him an estate of thirty thousand Horse and fifty thousand Foot-men, to furnish all the Fortresses and strong places, the Prince having led with him many of the new conquered people, defiring to have them for to dwell within his Countrey, and to fend other Colonies in their places, to affure himfelte the better of the lightnesse of this people, having noted them to bee inclined vnto Nouelties. Hee gaue in charge vnto Odmar to make his principall abode at Quantoufou, and to fortifie well the passage: and also commanded a Fortrelle to be made at Dermio, the better to streng then his Borders : and after he had left him all things necessary, he recommended vnto him the fernices of that Lord, who had manifested vnto him his great affection. The Emperour having well tryed his faith- to fulnesse in his Affaires as they fell out, he carryed with him a Brother of his, vnto whom he gaue great gifts within Sachetar.

ges, and among it the reft, the Kings eldeft Sonne, and his Brother. The King beeing departed

for to performe his promise, according to the Treaty by him confirmed, he was received, and as

it were worthipped within his Countrey, with all the joy that might be.

Then we turned our faces straight vnto Cambalu, having advertized the Great Cham of the happy successe of our Affaires. The Prince remayned in deed King of China, holding in his polfellion, two of the fairest and greatest Cities of all the whole Countrey, having an hundred good leagues thereof voto himfelfe, and many leffer Cities, having extended his Borders voto a River, by which he might goe vnto the Enemy, but they could not come vnto him without paffing cuer the same : having good meanes to keepe it and with advantage. Now the Prince defired aboue all that the Idols which were within his Conquest, should be beaten downe, and commanded the worship of one God, establishing the same after the forme of his owne Countrey, for he 60 made account that in short time all would bee reduced vnto our customes. Our Army wherein was much ficknesse, began to march, and on the third day having newes of forces which came towards vs, the Prince fent them a Commandement not to come any further forward, and that they should march straight vnto Cambala, where the Prince did suppose to finde the Emperour

CHAP, 8. S.3. Tamerlans message to Baiazet. Baiazets proud answer.

his Vncle, who had fet forward towards that place to have the good hap for to fee him, being Cetermined to receive him at Cambalu with magnificence and triumphs, as hee well deferued. Now I will declare by the way, how Odmar being seuered from vs, all the Princes fauour was Tomerlan turturned unto Axalla, unto whom hee committed the whole charge of his Armie, infomuch as ned his fruent Axalla although he was alwaies in great reputation, notwithstanding the same was much en- vnto Axalla. creased by the Prince at Quantonfon, where the Prince did truit him with the Armie, in to weighty an enterprise as that was, and the which he forgloriously atchieued: likewise the manner of entring into the Kingdome of China, the intelligences hee had : fo as the report of his valour did flie throughout all the Empire. Calibes led the Auant-guard, and Axalla was in the to hattell neere vnto the Emperour, who gave him the chiefest place, bestowing vpon him two hundred thouland crownes yeerely, for to maintayne his ordinary expences. After certaine 200000.crowne

dayes journey, wee receited newes of the Emperours arrivall at Cambala, the Prince having of yeerley tent Left his Armie in a faire Countrey for to winter, where he dismissing many of our Souldiers, given vino dewes arrived within four leagues of Cambala, whither all the Princes of the Emperours Court, len, came for to receive him, together with all the principall Inhabitants, for to gratifie our Prince for his happie Voyage. The Prince having received every one, according to his wonted curtelle, retayning notwithstanding convenient Maiestie, hee was beheld to the great contentment of all his Subjects. Hee had with him the Empresse his wife, who had not left him in his Voyage. The next day the Emperour did him fo much honour, as to come and meet him, The meeting

20 with ail the magnificence that might bee. Hee gaue a present vnto the Emperour his Vncle, between the of all the richeft Chariots, and fairest Horses hee had wonne. The Emperour was very desi- great cam and rous to lee his daughter: he cauled her Chariotto bee vncouered, and cauled her to enter into Gine of came. his: but the Prince remayned on Horf-backe, whom the eyes of all the people could not be fa- bath in Catho, tisfied with admiring. The Prince presented Calibes vnto the Emperour, and making a recitall of his faithfulnelle, and the endeauour of enery one, hee caused the Emperour to give vnto him an lundred thouland crownes of encrease vnto his pension. Axalla was also presented vnto the Axalla rewar-Emperour, who being informed of his valour, hee was received with all the best favours that ded by the might be, and he gaue vnto him of the revenues belonging vnto the Empire , an hundred thou- great Cam for fand Tartarus of gold in a Principalitie, that he might the better declare vinto him how much use and fairly. 30 he effected of his fidelitie.

fulneffe.

### ò. 111.

The differences betwixt TAMERLAN and BALAZET the Turke; his returne to Samercand, and expedition against BAIAZET; the battell, and victorie, his caging of BAIAZET, and making him his Foot-Stoole.

His ioy and pleafire continued with vs all the Winter, where the Prince having receiued aduertisement how Baiaxes Emperour of the Turkes, had enterprised to joyne the Empire of Greece vnto his owne, and fully determined to beliege Constantinople :

the which he understanding, and succour being required of him by the Greeks Emperour, he dispatched one towards Baiaxer, for to declare vnto him his pleasure herein, and war. A messagesent ned him on his behalfe, not to trouble the Empercur Paleologue who was his confederate. Now by Tomerlan this motion came from Prince Axalla, who had wrought this league, being of kinne vnto Pat vnto Bainet. leologue, and alto thrust forward with desire to maintayne his Religion in Greece, where he was borne of the Genusis race. Whereunto being answered very proudly, by Baiaxet vnto our Emperour, asking what he had to doe therewith, and that he should content himselfe, with enioying The proud an-

30 lawes vnto his Subjects, and not vnto others, seeing he was not borne his Subject. This answer secros saintee being made, Axalla procured to be very ill accepted of the Emperour, and in fuch fort, that he determined to hinder this enterprite of the Ottomans.

Now the Prince had obtayned of the Emperour his Vncle an hundred thousand Foot-men. and fourescore thousand Horse, hoping to haue as many from Sacheray, besides the Lords who would accompanie him for to winne glorie, from whom he made account also of fifty thousand men more that they would bring vnto him, befides the other forces. Hee supposed that he had abilitie to deliuer the Empire of Greece from the bondage of the Ottomans. Thus the Prince departed, leaving the Empresse with the Emperour her father, for to serue him as a comfort of his age: it was not without a hard farewell of the Emperous pare towards his Nephew; but Heavyparing: 6c more grieuous on the Princes part towards his wife, who had never left him fince the time they were married; but nothing with-held our Prince, where there was either glorie, or meanes to encrease his reputation, and profit the Common-wealth: saying often, that he was borne to this A notable sayend, and that he must take in these exercises his principall delights; for every other thing where-ing of twoin he did exercise himselfe was but borrowed, being appointed and called of God to purill the lan.

1.amerlan his

pride of Tyrants. Neither will I here omit a dreame, which our Prince had the night before hee departed from Cambalu, which was, that he did fee as hee thought, a great multitude of reuerent men, who put forth their hands vnto him, requiring his fuccour against the violence of certaine Tyrants, who did afflict them with fundry kinds of torments: he faid, that he did never fee more reverent countenances, & that some of them were apparelled in white, and others in cloth of gold, some having as it were Crowns of gold vpon their heads, and it feemed vnto the Prince. that he gaue them his hand, and lift them very high. This dreame he recited vs the next morning, but no body was able to give him the interpretation thereof, & himselfe thought no more of it.

ney against the Turke.

Tamerlan re-

turneth from

the conquest

of China voto

The Prince was accompanied also with Calibes, & he commanded the Prince of Tanais, to take vpon him the state of Colonell of the footmen, which Axalla had left : vnto whom he gaue the re charge of Lieutenant generall within his Armie, with commandement to leade his Auant-guard, and Caliber the Arere-ward, being accompanied with farre greater forces then ever he had in any of his Armies : for they came vnto him from all parts. The Chinois Lord was licenced by Odmar to goe with 20000. men of the fubicets newly conquered, being defirous to fhew himfelfe vnto the Emperour, as also for to learne our manners and fashions. The Prince tooke his Voyage directly vnto Samercand, the place of his birth, three yeeres being past since hee had beene there. Zamar came to meet him, and I verily beleeve, a smillion of men, bleffing and prayfing him in

Confultation about the way the Armie Chould take to the Turkes Em-

Tamerlan his

Reigget marched varothe fiege of Conflantinople.

The govern-

all manner of tongs. All the Princes of the Countrey also ranne to visite him; he abode there a moneth. Axalla in this meane time was already at the meeting place at Ocera, who prepared all things, looking for the Princes commandement for to goe voto him, advertifing him often of 20 the doings of Baiazet. We departed from Samercand, for to goe vnto Ozara, where was the meeting place for all the Princes troupes: and having in that place taken advice for his journey, that is to fay, for to know whether should be most expedient and fauorable, either to goe by the coasts of Moscowie directly vnto Capha, or rather on the other fide of the Sea Bachu to passe by the skirts of Persia. It wis resolved in the end, after fundry opinions, although the way were the longer, to passe vnto Capta for to come vnto Trebifonda, and to the Georgians, and from thence to enter into the limits of the Ottomans. Then our Armie after the accustomed ceremonies & prayers made vnto God, wherein our Emperor hoped to finde his principall fuccours, we drew straight vnto Maranis, where the Armie abode three dayes, looking for the forces which Odmar did fend, whereof they received 30 newes. There did the Emperour cause all his Armie to be payd, and a generall muster was made. He had newes also there of the forces that the Moscowite did lend voto him : he like wife caused an infinite quantitie of victuals, and the most part of his furniture to be conseved by the Sea of Bachu, there being some twentie leagues where was want of water and victuals, through the which our Armie must needs passe, causing all things necessary to be carried by water, the which was a great commoditie vnto vs; and there was a commandement given at all the shoares of the Sea, that they should bring all the vessels for to carrie the munition of the Armie: so as this fore-Tamerlin hun- fight did greatly ease our Armie. The Prince went continually coasting the Sea-shoare, passing ted by the way away his time in hunting, and his Armie came not neere him by ten leagues, except fuch as came to feeke necessaries for the Armie, the which did extend it selfe some twenty leagues, it was fo # great. The Prince abode at Sarafich during the time his Army passed the River of Edel at Mechet, and at two or three other Bridges, the which they had caused to bee made; there had hee ceataine newes how Baiazet marched vnto the fiege of Constantinople, having reduced vnto his obedience all Bythinia, and Burfis a very noble Citie, the which hee caused to bee fortified, and divers other Cities, vring all the cruelties that might be, infomuch as all the adjoyning Prouisces yeelded themselves his tributaries; amongst the rest the noble Citie of Capha: the Citie was by the Prince given vnto Axalla for to dispose of the same: which hee did, going thither to fee his kinf-folke, and to take fuch order there, as he thought was for the prefernation of the Citie, as one not vngratefull vnto his Countrey: he rather placed his hope in this little shoare of Mar Maiore, then in the limits of Scythia and China, and for to succeed after his Master vnto 50 all his great conquests, for that he had all the Souldiers at his commandement, and great credit amongst all the people over whom his Prince commanded. Baiazet having a very great and mightie Armie, neither beleeued, nor once thought that wee would come vpon him, to exceeding barbarous was he, that he would not indure any man fo much as to speake onely vnto him of our Armie, as despiting it, he was to proud : and there he caused all the bordering people publikely to bee forbidden, to make any vowes and prayers for our prosperitie. Inflice raigned so among ft vs. infomuch as if a Souldier had taken but an Apple, he was put to death, and this was feuerely observed over all, a thing vivall, and especially in this Journey, the which was the onely cause of overthrowing the tyrannie of the Ottomans, and of this proud Baiaxet. So we arrived at Bachichiche, where the Armie refreshed it selfe for the space of eight dayes. Vn:othis 60 place came the Embassadours of Guines, vnto the Emperour, whom the Prince did greatly reusrence for his holinesse. The Emperor after he had caused generall prayers to be published, Tamerlans Armie departed from Bachichiche, and they reckoned that there was in our Armie, three huncired thousand Horse-men, and true hundred thousand Foot-men, of all kinds of Nations. Our

Armie came vnto Garga, where it passed the River Emphrates, the Avant-guard at Chinserie; and the generall meeting of the Armie was appointed to bee at Gianch, the which did yeeld it felfe: and there had we newes that Baiazet his Armie was neceevnto vs, within some thirty leagues, which caused s to march more close. All the Cities yeelded, the Emperour receiving them graciously, and those which retused obedience, were cruelly punished, especially such Inhabitants as were Turkes, but the Christians fet in full libertie, under the name of the Greeke Emperour Emanuel, whom the Emperour would wholly gratifie, Axalla having received this commandement from the Prince: fo heecaused them to sweare fidelitie vnto Emanuel. The The causes of great Armie of Baiazet thought to have surprised our men within Sennas (which they had ta. Tame lans In ken) but as foone as they drew neere, our men fet it on fire, and the greatest part retyring, there warre against

remayned some hundred Horse to performe the same, who retyred themselues in very great disorder. Now, the Prince of Ciarcan had divided his men into two troupes, and given comman- A flustagem. dement vnto the first troupe, that as soone as they perceived the Enemies to pursue the hundred Horse, they should receive them, and retyre ionntly together. Now, hee had the rest of his power in a valley necre vnto a Wood, and having fuffered some two thousand of the Enemies Horle. Turkes Auant-currers to passe by him, he charged them behind, and fought with them, they not fighting but fleeing as soone as they did see themselves pressed : many were slayne, and many were taken prisoners. This was the first time wee fought, and carried away the victorie : all the priloners were lent vnto the Prince, amongst the rest the Bassa of Natolia, who led this troupe. The next day Baiacet his Armie drew neere anto the fight of ours, the which marched How Tamerian

two leagues: and wee encamped within a league the one of the other. All the night long you Armie poffed might have heard fuch noyle of Horles, as it feemed the heavens were full of voyces, the aire did the night befor clound, and every one was defirous to have the night passed, for to come each one vnto the fought against trial of his valour. Vnto the Seribian Nation, the which is defirous of goods, they propounded the Turke the great riches they should get by the victorie over the Ottomans. Vinto the Parthian Nation ambitious of rule, the honour and glorie of the Nation, being Conquerours of them, who onely were able to take from them the Empire of Afia. The Christians who made the fourth part thereof affured themselves to conquer their greatest Enemie. Behold, now every one spake during the night time, according to his humour. The Prince this night went through his Campe hearing 30 all this, and was very glad to fee the hope that every one of his Souldiers did conceine already of

the victorie; and I being neere him, he did me the honour to tell me, that at the time he fought the battll against the Mesconite, he did heareall themight long all kindes of songs, the which refounded in his Campe, feeing in a manner no bodie fleepe: I hoped then (faid hee) to have fome good hap, and I trust to receive the like now. Now after the second watch the Prince returned vinto his lodging, and casting lumfelte vpona Carpet thee meant to sleepe: but the defire of day would not fuffer him; he then commanded me to giue him a booke, wherein he did reade: therein was contayned the lines of his Father and Grandfather, and of other valiant Knights, the which he did ordinarily reade: he called me, having light vpon (in reading) the discourse of a battell that his Grandfather had loft against the Persians, the which he had thought to have 40 gotten (very vndifcreetly) having affaulted his Enemie, many advantages being propounded vn-

to him, whereof he might have made good vie, all which he neglected, trulting vnto his owne valour and that of his Souldiers And having ended his speech, he commanded mee to reade the fame before him, and faid vnto me, I alwaies reade this before I beginne a battell, to the end I Tamelon his should not so much trust vnto the Lions skin, wherein I wrap my arme, that I should not serue sustaine bemy felie with the Foxes, to wrap therewith my head : for thus (faid he) my Grandfather was forea battell in a place of advantage, and he went out of it to feeke his Enemie, who was lodged ftrongly, and whatforuer his men faid to him, hee went on headling, shutting his eares against all the counfell and aduite of his feruants.

Seeing the Twifib Foot-men march, whom they doe call Innivaries, the which were placed The manner 50 in the middelt, and vpon the two fronts, two great squadrons of Horse-men, the which see- of the march med to be thirty thousand Horse, and another which advanced and covered the battalion of the of the Turkifb Immarie: Hee thought this order to be very good, and had to breake, and turning him felfe Footmen. vato Axilla, who was neere vato him, he fild, I had thought to haue fought on foot, but it behooueth me this day to fight on horiebacke, for to give courage vnto my Souldiers to open the great bartalion: and my will is, that they come forward vinto mee as foone as they may: for The order of I will advance forward an hundred thouland Foot-men, fifty thouland vpon each of my two Tameston his wings, and in the middeft of them forty thouland of my best Horse. My pleasure is, that atter battell, they have tryed the force of those men, that they come voto my Auant guard, of whom I will dispose (and fifty thousand Horse more) in three bodies, whom thou shelt command, the which 6c I will affilt with fourescore thousand Horse, wherein shall be mine owne perfon, having an hun-

dred thouland Foot-men behind me, who shall march in two troupes; and for my Arcre-ward forty thousand Horse, and fifty thousand Foot-men, who shall not march but voto my ayde. I will make choise of ten thousand of the best Horse, whom I will fend into every part where I shall thinke needfull within my Armie, for to impart my commandements. Ouer the first forty

What the Turks laniza-

Tamerian his was taken pri-Tamerlan his cause of the victorie, and wherein per-

thousand the Prince Ciarcian commanded : ouer the foremost footmen was the Lord Synopes, a Genuois, kinfman vnto Azalla, and he which was his Lieutenant ouer the footmen, a Captaine of great estimation. That ouer which the Prince Axalla commanded, confisted of fine squadrons of horsemen. Baiazet his Armie seemed faire and great, which was advanced continually forward towards vs, who stirred not one whit from the place of the battaile. There were many light horse men, as well Scythians, Parthians, as Mosconites, who left their rankes, and shot Arrowes. and brake Lances betweene the two Armies. There was a Spie who brought word that Baiazet was on toot in the middest of his lanix aries, where he meant to fight, that hee did not forget to mount on horse-back, giving order over all for the wants of his Armie : but purposed to fight in the middest of those lanizaries, who are a number of trusty men, brought vp in exercises from 10 their youth to all manner of warfare, and chosen out of al Nations, the fairest and strongest men. to as they are inuincible. By this bringing up the which they have had together, they doe fight with a great force and courage for their Prince and Lord, who being in the middeft of them, they are as in a halfe circle within the Armie. Now, they were thirty thousand men in this order, wherein Buiazet put his principall hope: he had many other footmen, but gathered together of all forts. His battaile of horse was very faire, amounting vnto the number of an hundred and fortie thousand horse, well exercised in all manner of fights. The Soldan of Egypt having ayded him with thirty thousand Mammolues, very good horse-men, and with thirty thousand footmen. Their Armie in that order feemed almost as great as ours: for they were not so knit together as we were, our forces being directly one after the other, and theirs all in a front.

So the Enemies Armie aduanced forward continually with an infinite number of cryes, and

ours was in great filence. After that common prayer was ended, the Emperour himfelfe aduanced continually forward, beholding the first charge given, and caused Axalla to set forward after he returned into his order, continually exhorting his men before hee left them. There could not be seene a more furious charge given, then was performed by the Ottomans upon the Prince of Ciarcian, who had commandement not to fight before they came vnto him : there could not haue beene chosen a fairer Playne, and where the skilfull choise of the place was of leffe aduantage for the one then for the other, but that wee had the River on our left hand, the which was iome aduantage for the Emperour, having given commandement, that in any cafe they should not lose the same, and that the Enemies , whatfoeuer came thereof , should not win it : this hee 30 did for to haue the advantage of the hand in fight. The Emperour, who aboue all Maximes of principall ma. warre, did vie to deale in such manner, that the Enemie might bee the first Affaulter; hee had xime of warre. Straightly commanded them which were appointed for the first charge, to suffer the Enemie for to give the on-fet. Now (as I have already declared) this young Prince of Ciarcian with his forty thousand horse was almost wholly ouerthrowne, having fought as much as hee could, but hee betweene Ta- entred even into the middeft of the lanizaries, where the person of Baiazes was, putting them merlan and Eas in diforder, where he was flaine. About this time Axalla fet vpon them with the Auantquard. where as he was not in any fuch danger; for having furprifed one of the enemies wings, hee cut it all in pieces, and his footmen comming to ioyne with him, as they had beene commanded, hee faced the Battalion of the lanisaries. The Prince feeing the charge Axalla had vpon his arme, fent ten thousand horse from his bat-

taile for to succour him, and knit together the mayne battaile of Axalla, and to give once againe a charge v pon another Battalion of footmen , the which did shew it felfe, and came to joyne with and strengthen that of the lanizaries, who behaved themselves valuantly for the safetie of their Prince. This fight continued one houre, and yet you could not have feene any scattered, fighting resolutely the one against the other. You might have seene the Mountaynes of horses rush one against another, the men die, crie, lament, and threaten at one very time. The Prince had patience to fee this fight ended, and when hee did perceive that his men did give place, hee lent ten thouland of his Horle to joyne againe with the ten thouland appointed for the Arierward, and commanded them to affift him, at fuch time as hee should have need thereof. At 50 this very time the Emperour chargeth, and made them give him roome, causing the footmen to affault, ouer whom the Prince of Thanais commanded; who gave a furious on-fet vpon the Battalion of the Ianiz aries, wherein was yet the person of Baiazes, who had sustayned a great burthen. But the multitude, and not valour, did preuaile; for as much as might bee done in fight, was by the lanizaries performed, for to preferue the person of their Prince. But in the end the Horse-men, wherein was the Emperours person, gaue a new charge, and his Aagainst Brieger uantguard was wholly knit againe vnto him, hee renewed another forcing, and was fully viwherein bee ctorious. Baiazet having retyred on horse-back out of the troupe of Janizaries wounded, fell aline into the hands of Axalla, vnto whom hee yeelded himselfe, supposing it had beene Tamerlan: then Axalla seeing him so followed (being for a time not knowne but for some great 60 Lord of the Ottomans) twentie thousand horse did not fight at all, but onely in pursuing the vi-Ctorie, and they made a great flaughter. The Prince had his horse tlaine under him with the blow of a Lance, but he was soone remounted againe on horse-back. This day the wisdome of the Emperor gaue the victorie vnto his Souldiers; for the judgment which he had in tyring of the firong

torces of the Ottomans, was the fafeguard of his. For if all had gone vnto the battaile in one front, furely ,the multitude had put it felfe into a confusion ; but this manner of aiding his men made euerie one profitable. The Emperour judging (like a great Captaine) of the need that every one of his fouldiers had, so that this manner of proceeding was the getting of the victory. They accounted threefcore thousand men flaine of the Ottomore, and twentie thousand of ours, The Prince of Tirzis was flaine, as I have faid : the head of the Georgians flaine, Calibes was verie forrie hee had so easie a reckoning in his Arier-ward, being very couragious, and a gentle Knight : the Delpote of Servia was taken prisoner, who did accompanie Baracet, and was a Christian : they gane him this day of battaile much reputation. The Emperour gaue vinto

10 him very good entertainment, reproouing him, for that hee did accompany Baiazet against him, who did come in fauour of his Emperour. Hee aniwered him, that it was not according to his dutie, but the prosperitie of Baiazet, vnto whom it seemed, that all the world did bend for to subjet it selfe vnto him, and that his safetie had caused him to set forward. The Emperour presently thereupon gaue him leaue to depart at his pleasure. Hee tooke care to get into his hands Baiazet his children : hee gaue commandement that Baiazet should be cured, and after brought before him : who at such time as hee was there never made any shew of humilitie. The Emperour faying vnto him, that it lay in him to cause Baiaget him to lose his life, he answered: Doit, that losse shall be my happinesse. And demanding brought before of him what made him for to enterprise to being into the life. And demanding transmins, with of him what made him for all, for to enterprise to bring into subjection so noble a Prince his pride,

20 as was the Emperour of the Greekes. Hee answered him, the defire of glorie and rule, Wherefore doest thou (said the Emperour vnto him ) vie so great crueltie towards men, so farre foorth that neither thou nor thine doe pardon either fex or age! This doe I (answered hee ) to give the greater terrour to my enemies. Then faid the Emperour, to shalt thou receive the like reward; and cauting him to bee conveyed againe out of his prefence, hee turned vnto his followers, and faid, behold a proud and fierce countenance, hee deserueth to be punished with cruelcie, and it is necessarie that hee bee made an exemplarie punishment to all the cruell of the world, of the just wrath of God against them. I acknowledge that God hath this day delivered into my hands a great enemy, wee must give thankes vnto God for the same: the which was performed, being yet day : for the battaile was wonne at foure of the clocke, and there 30 was as yet fine houres of day-light. The children of Baiazet were brought before him : hee

cauled them to bee vied curreoully, and as the children of an Emperour. The next day hee commanded the dead to bee buried : they found the Prince of Tirzis dead in the middeft of the Janizaries, where he remained enclosed. The Emperour did greatly lament this young Prince, who was his kiniman, and would have been one day worthie for to doe him great feruice. Temerica his In that battaile there died manie Captaines, & almost the chiefe Ottomans. This was a great Bat- saying of 84taile, the which was fought from feuen vnto foure of the clocke, in fuch fort that they knew issen. not vnto whom the victorie did incline. Our Armie stayed vntill the next day, every one caufing his friends to bee buried. The Prince of Tirzis was emblamed, and conucyed with two

thousand horse vnto Samarcand vntill the Emperour returned. All the other dead bodies were 40 buried at Sanas with all the honour that might be. Axalla was much grieued for his kinfman, because hee was verie well beloued of the Prince: his charge was given vnto one of his brethren who was verie famous; in fighting this fame day, we might judge the events of the matters of the world, Behold this Emperour Baiazet, who was, as hee thought, superiour to fortune, which in an instant found himselte and his estate by one battaile onely ouerthrowne euen vnto the lowest place, and at sich time as hee thought least thereof. Hee vied to say, that hee was justly punished, for despiting the multitude we had, for the assurance that hee had in the valour of his horimen, and especially of his Lanizaries. Hee was three dayes (as they report) be-of Anget asfor e he could be e pacified, as a desperate man, seeking after death, and calling for it. The Empereur he was raour did not vie him at all curreoully, but caused small account to bee made of him: and for to kenpre ner.

50 manifest that he knew how to punish the proud; vpon festivall dayes, when as hee mounted on horseback, they brought this proud man vnto him, and he serued him in stead of a foot-stoole : Bringer Tamarthis sidd he for to manifest the folly and arrogancie of men, and how justly God had humbled to mount on him. The next day the Prince marched directly towardes Barfia, whither all the remainder horeback, of Baiaxet his Armie was retired, with the Bassa Mastapha. All the countrie yeelded vnto vs, and the Prince caused all the holdes and fortresses to bee ouerthrowne and destroyed, and punished all those which were so enill adusted as to stay untill they were besieged. I had forgotten to declare, how hee caused the Prince of Tirzis bodie to bee accompanied with divers prisoners chained and tied together, whom hee did send vnto Samarcand, the which the Prince had determined to make great, for a perpetuall memorie of his greatnesse. Even so

60 had hee greatly peopled with people of China, which had beene taken in the Battailes, concrete his and of those likewite which were taken our of the two great Cities, Pagninfon, and Quan. Cities Somatoufon. Now this batta le did bring great aftonishment vinto all the countries possessed by cond. Baiazet, and no bodie reifted vs, cuen vnto Barfia, whither this Armie was fled, and therein were allo two formes of Batazer verte young, Axalla being alwaies a luanced forward before

deliuciy of

Prefents fent by Tanerlan vnrothe great

our Armie, with fortie thousand Horse, and an hundred thousand Foot-men without any carriages, who hindred the Enemies from joyning themselues againe together : and hee made a cruell Warre upon the Ottomans, deliuering the Gracians from the tyrannie of Baiazet, Hee Availe cruell approached neere vnto Bursia, where the Ottomans did not stay the comming of Axallus against the O. Armie, but only they which could not runne remayned behind. Baiazet his two Sonnes were tomass for the fent vnto the Greek fb Emperour for to bring them vp, and to have mercie vpon them; the rest went vnto Gallipoli, for to goe vnto Andrmopoli, the which they held, having conquered it from the Gracians. Now the Prince (for to returne vnto my purpole) dispatched towards the Emperour his Vncle, and vnto the Empresse his Wife, one of his Familiars, called Lieban, Captayne of his Chamber, for to carrie him newes of this Victorie, and to joyne it also vnto all the rest. He fent unto him Baiazet his Sword and Bow, and the Caparitons of his Horse, the which was efleemed to be worth aboue two hundred thousand Duckets. You may easily thinke that Prince Lieban was well entertayned of the old Emperour, and of the young Princefie, bringing word vnto them, that all the World did bend it selfe to make our Prince victorious, who surely receiued these Victories from God without infolencie, and at such time as hee sent him most glory, then did his men note him to be least puffed up. He was never bold, but in the day of battails, and on the Eeue for to command feuerely, and with greater Majesty. To tell you what he was in aduerfitie, I did neuer fee him in that effate : but it is to be thought, that they which bee not infolent in prosperitie, are not faint-hearted in aduersitie. So cur victorious Prince marched directy vnto Burfia, loaden with Spoyles and Trophees which hee daily got, departing from the 20 Cities which did come and yeeld themselves vnto him; therein observing the same manner of proceeding, the which we did in the Conquest of China; they which did yeeld vnto him without fighting, were well vied, and the obstinate well punished, the Prince knowing that reward and punishment are the Moderators of Common-wealthes, the one to bee vied towards the good, and the other towards the cuill. In the end we received newes by Axalla, that he had receined Bursia in the Emperours name, and how the Inhabitants thereof had punished the Garritons of Baiazet, having driven them away, and flaine many.

But I dare not follow our Author any further from Taxtatia, for whose sake I have entertayned him. Leauing therefore his agreement with the Greeke Emperour, and secres visiting Constantinople; his comming to Icrusalem, and Expedition against the Soldan, With his Exploits in Egypt, Syria, Perlia, me will returne with him to Samarcand.

# ò. IIII.

Ersia, as long as he lived was much affected vnto him: which greatly served him for the

Encrease of Samarcand; Affaires of China: Funerals of the Can; comming to Quinza, and description threess. His disposition of his estate and death.

keeping as well of Syria, as of the Soldans Empire, leauing continually men there, and drawing out Colonies, the better to fettle his Affaires in those places. So the Emperour leaving the Prince of Thanair, with his Army to attend his pleafure, he marched with therest of his forces into his owne Countrey with all the Ioyes and Triumphes that might be possible, the chiefest Prisoners marching before the Emperour, amongst the which was Bauzer Emperour of the Turkes all chayned, and was a Spectacle vnto all the World of Fortunes inconflancy : hee continued notwithstanding in the same siercenesse wis woont to be in him. So wherefoeuer the Emperour paffed, the people affembled themfelues by spoyles, in very great magnificence : where after we had beene the space of one moneth or two in Feathings and Manificences, the Emperour with his accustomed Denotion, having in great tolemnitie vowed a Church and Hofr itall vnto his God, the most magnificent that might bee deuised. Whereupon to performe the same, he began to search out all sorts of Handiciasts men for to honour this Citie, the which hee had a defire to make one of the stateliest Cities in the World. And in one of the corners thereof he began, and did build there his Temple and Holpitall, making an account to increase yet this Citie, as large againe as it was, and to people the fame, with to many feuerall kinds of people and Nations as hee had brought with him, giving libertie vinto them all to frame and build their Houses, causing money to be distributed to do the

thousands, praying and tinging his Victories. We arrived at the last at Samarcand with all our so fame, and giving all kinds of Priviledges and Freedomes vnto the Prisoners, for to give them a 60 greater defire to build and fettle themfelues there : and having caused the threets and places to

be plotted, and having appointed a place for every one to build vpon, hee tooke no other place

fure, neither had he any other care then the preferring the good will of his most famous Soci-

diers, whole name hee having cauted to bee written in a generall Mutter-booke, the which has

commanded to be made, from day to day, they (not thinking thereof) received honours. and good turnes of the Prince, in recompence of their fo great feruices. Now he declared the death of the Emperour his Vncle vnto his Councell (of which he before had received Intelligence, but kept it close) and forgot no Ceremony due vnto the honour of the faid Emperour outwardly, shewing the griefe he conceiued for his death; where after hee had rested some eight dayes, hee determined to goe vnto Quinzai for to fee the Empresse, and having left Baiazet in the cultodie of the Gouernour of Zachetay, the Emperour fet forward with his ordinary Court which was of forty thousand Horse, and threescore thousand Foot-men.

The Emperour being come vnto Cambalu, received newes of the Battell Odmar, had wonne Articles of a To against the King of Chinas, Captayne Generall, and how he pursued his Victory, having taken new spreemens three or foure great and rich Cities, the which did yeeld themselves vnto him, and that againe betweene Tathe Chinois did defire peace. The Emperour fent the Articles he required, which were that be- merion and the fore all other things the King of China should pay the Arrerages of the Tribute, the which hee had agreed with the Emperour. First, he should come in person to doe homage vnto his Majesty, and acknowledge himselfe as Vassall vnto his Empire. That the Army should withdraw it selfe during his Voyage, and he should deliuer up vnto him all his Cities, sauing three such as the Emperour should nominate; and that the things should be restored vnto the same estate they were in before the Warre, when the Emperour made the first peace; that hee should pay the Army for fixe moneths, and should also satisfie all the expences of the War, seeing he had begunne it, and 20 was Author of the breach of peace. Then the Emperour gratified Odmar, fending vnto him for Wife one of his Sifters with all magnificence that might be, for to make him the more affectioned vnto him. I will declare how the Emperour was received at Cambala by his Subjects, with all the magnificence possible, the Emperour for to gratifie them having restored their Priviledges, the which he had taken from them, for the Rebellion they had committed with Calix : fo as the Emperour went ouer all gratifying his Subjects for this new Succession that was lately fallen vnto him, all the Companies comming vnto him : for in these Countreves they have no certayne dwellings, they are alwayes wandring in troupes whereformer they goe: thither the Empresse (hauing left Prince Axalla to gouerne at Quinzai) came vnto him. The Prince remayned there almost two moneths, having in this place given order for all the Affaires he had. Cam-20 bals was also neere vnto mount Alebay, where they vie to bury the Seythian Emperours, whom we doe call the great Cham.

would conduct it with all pompe, honouring not only his body, but also all that her had loued in the World, and although it was not the custome to cause women for to affist the Funerals, yet The magnifiwould be affoord this honour vnto the Empresse, that she should assist the bringing of the body, of the great going neere vnto the same. This he did, the more to make appears how much he honoured the thome of the same of t memory of the late Emperour in his Wife, being his Daughter, and also to the end that if God taria. did take him away, his children being small, shee should have the greater authority, and bee the better acknowledged worthy to gouerne in the minoritie of his Children; and also for that thee 40 had beene brought vp alwayes in authority, even fince shee was marryed. The Prince desiring thereby the more to acknowledge the honour the Emperour his Vncle had done him, by adopting him as his Sonne, and in having left him so great and large an Empire, as that was, whereof he left vnto him the possession. Now the Emperour loued her onely, having no other affection in such pleasure, but only the happinesse of a faire Off-spring, the which he hoped for. Now the body of the late Emperour being come vnto Cambalu, he determined to conduct it vnto the buriall according vnto the accustomed Ceremony, and to put the body with the Kings and Em- Temerlanhis percurs his Ancestors. After he had from point to point performed the last Will and Ted-Ament Assessment of the late Emperour, he returned from theace vito Cambalas, where he spent all Winter in Tilt and Turnyin; some a hunting, makine his should there. Feeling have used the Winter in Tilt tooks good and Turnyin; somice a hunting, makine his should there. and Turny ing, going a hunting, making his abode there, because he was in a place nearest vnto Wise,

The Emperor caused the body of the Emperour his Vncle to be brought thither, and himselfe

the Kingdome of China, to know how matters passed there, having now brought thither his last 50 Affaires, purposing to goe thither in person the next Winter, if Odmar did not make an end of The young Aftares, purpoung to got timeer in period the track without in Commer the Hot make and the his Prince made the Wars alreadie begunne, and if the King of China did not fubmit himfelfe wholly wider his Cournous of obedience, hauing determined not to depart from Cambalu, vntill this Countrey were pacified, Quarta and the marke he fhot at, being only to keepe that which his valour was able to conquer through his ouer all the good fortune, being desirous to spend the rest of his life in enjoying the fruits of his trauchs, and Countrey; for to publish his prayles vnto his people, and with Millions to maintayne them in peace. He which feemen had also a purpose to bring vnto an end that which hee had determined to doe at Samarcand.

dalfo a purpole to bring vnto an end that which hee had determined to doe at Samarcana.

North parts of Now Asala was at Quinzai, as well vnto the contentment of all the men of Warre, as the China and per-Inhabitants, who defired much to fee their Prince, and having caused Prince Azassa in their be- haps in these halfe to beleech it, that it would pleafethe Emperour to cause his Sonne to bee brought up a times, Nan-60 mongit them there, the which he did grant vnto them in fauour of the faid Prince Axalla, eita- ouin was the mongit them there, the which he did grant vnto them in randor or the land rinter Arana, the blifting him for to command in the abience of the Prince his Sonne, whom hee made Gouer or them and or the same and nour of Quinzat, from Cambalu even vnto the Sea. This Countrey was replenished with some Quinzas, of the three hundred Cities, and was in largenesse more then foure hundred leagues, besides an finite Tartarian.

Princes Gouernour, and authorifed oner all the Goucrnour

generall. The King of omitted, asis alfo the moft part of the Booke,

on of the Citte of Quinco, with the wonderfull ficus. tion thereof. ceiued with great magnificence into rich and rare The order hee tooke for his

Tamerlan his notable faying of fuccession

Parthia.

Tamerlan his recreations, and notable Laying thereof.

The admiration and exceeding lone Duingay did beare voto

number of Villages. To make short, it was that the Emperour his Vncle gouerned, where this Avalla appoin. Prince Avalla was his Lieutenant generall, under the authoritie of the young Prince his fonne. ted the young vnto whom he deliuered him in charge for to be his Gouernour, authorifing him vnto the gouernement generall of all his Kingdomes: for the great wisedome that was in this Knight, made him beloued in all the Countreys under the Emperours obedience: the feruices also and great victories the which he had caufed the Emperour to obtayne by his front courage, and good Kingdomes of conduct, who for these occasions put his principall trust in him, and after himselfe hee thought him onely worthie to preserve for his children his Kingdome and Empresse.

The King of China came to visit him at his Court, according vnto the couenants offered vnto him, the which he accepted: he did sweare once againe obedience vnto the Emperour, who to china came vn. caused him to see all his greatest Cities, for to make himselfe the more to be feared of this Borto the Empe- barian, who kept no more promise then pleased himselfe. Hee was astonissed to behold so marour Tamerlant ny Souldiers, and the Countrey fo well replenished with people; and aboue all, that they vied did (weare vn. fo little curiofitie of riches in their apparell and garments, wondring that the Emperour was to him once a apparelled in meane Cloth of one colour, without any other fashion: but to counternaile than gaine obedi. he had about him men which seemed to bee Kings. At the same time when the King of China was at the Court, the Emperour received newes of the " victorie against the Soldan, for the The meane ap. which the Emperour reroyced, making feafts and turneys in his Court in token of mirth, and this rejoycing continued for the space of eight dayes. After the Emperour had given order for \*This battell. the double paying of his Armie that came into Persia, vinder the conduct of the great Chamberlaine, and Synopes Colonell generall in the Imperial Armie, the Emperour went vnto Quinfa for to fee his lonne, and wifit the people of this Countrey.

The Emperour arriving neere vnto Quinfay, Prince Axalla comming to meet him two dayes journey off, with all the chiefe Lords of the Countrey, together with the principall Citizens, who were preparing for the Emperour the most magnificent receiving that might bee, as well by water as by land. As this Citie is one of the richest in the world, so is it one of the greatest. and of the most wonderfull situation, being all wholly divided and overthwarted with channels, vpon the which are framed wonderfull and flately buildings, accompanied with an infinite number of Bridges, vpon the which they passe ouer channels: this Citie aboundeth with all kinde of spices, and in great quantitie, likewise with all manner of merchandises. The Empe- 20 rour as soone as he was arrived, received presents of the Citizens, the which were esteemed to be worth about two millions of Gold, with a wonderfull variety of all rare and fingular things, the which they presented wnto him , for to testifie the love and obedience they did owe wnto him. The Emperour was defirous to fee his sonne, whom they brought vp with the accustomed greatnesse of Princes: and having caused the child to be brought before him, being of the age of feuen yeeres: he forbad from hence forward they should suffer him to weare any thing upon his head, and himfelfe did hang a Bowe about his necke, faying aloud, that they which fonnes educa- from their birth were called vnto foueraignties, should bee vied both vnto cold and heate, and should bee exercised in Armes betimes, and not brought up delicately and easily, reprehending them which had the bringing of him vp, demanding of them, if they meant to make a woman 40 of him? And they answering, that he was tender. If he be not borne (faid he) for to be ftrong in Armes, he will not be worthy to succeed mee : for he must not be an effeminate Prince that shall preserve the Parthian Empire. Now he had sent the Empresse vnto Samarcand to be delinered, where shee was honourably received, having never beene there since shee was married. The Empresse Hee received newes that shee was there delivered of another goodly sonne, a thing which hee deliuered of an caused to be published ouer all, and himselse in token of ioy, made seasts sitteene dayes, with all other some at kindes of magnificent turneys: this he did for to shew his agalitie vnto this people, to the end, that as he excelled all his Gourt in vertues, that they should also iudge him worthie to gouerne them about all other men. After he continued there a moneth, and having visited all the Seatownes neere vnto Quinfay, hunting all kindes of chases, neglecting nothing not withstanding 50 which belonged to his charge, faying often, that the recreations hee did take, were helpes for to ease him in the paines of his publike affaires whereunto God had called him. Hauing vpon his returne called together all the people, he published his lawes, which were all renerenced of this people, as though they had proceeded from the Diuinitie, fo much admiration had every one of the greatnesse of this Prince. The which I will truely declare vnto you, that so long as the Emperour was there, this people did almost nothing , being for the most part busied in beholding of him, not finding any greater contentation then that. Some of his Courtiers, and amongit the rest, Prince Axalla faid one day vnto him, that this was a Citie sit for his abode. O their Emperor, my friend, it is not so: if they should see mee daily, they would make no more account of mee, The nature of It is a maxime, that the Lord of this great Citie must not goe thither but once in ten yeeres, and when he is there, it behooueth him to temper his actions, as if he were vpon a Scaffold rea- 69 die for to play some Comedie, where granitie and good grace is necessary for to content the beholders: for the people doe eafily receive an euill impression of their Prince, as they also doe a good, if you performe it well vnto them.

Now I have forgotten to tell you how the Emperour fent Prince Avalla in his name from Prince Avalla Quinfay in O China, and his Imperiall Maiette did not depart out of the Prounce before he re- fent into the atturned ne went thither with great diligence for to establish peace there. Prince Azalla went for to establish formed towards Paguin, where he was received of the Gouernour with all pollible honour. a reacethere. Are having affembled all the Emperours forces, hee fet forward towards the borders of China. hue an enterview at Pochio, where the meeting place was agreed upon. He pasted by Quanton: went forward vnto Pochio, whither the King came also to meet with him; and hee entred full fiftie leagues into the Countrey newly conquered. It feemed vnto him a thing too much derogating from the greatnesse of the Emperour, the maiestie of whose person hee represented, if In he went any further to fee this barbarous King, being more fit that he should come forward into the Countrey conquered lately from him by Odmar, after he had obtayned the victory, then to goe into his Countreys although he had subjected them vnto the Emperour, and did pay a very great tribute. So the King of China arrived within a league of Pochio with all his Court; hee The meeting fet forward vnto a Plaine, where he and Prince Axalla did fee each other, who was much bet. of Prince A. ter accompanied, from whom the King did as much differ as from the Emperours owne person. King of Ching They met three severall times together: the King desired to bee admitted into a Citie, which at Pethia. the Emperour had granted vnto him by the treatie. Prince Odinar declared that it was of great importance, therefore Prince Axalla was by the Emperour appointed for to bee Iudge of this controuersie, In the end they required another further within the Countrey, the which the 20 King accepted: fo hee was put into possession of that Citie, the situation whereof was very pleasant, being compassed about with a Lake. Axalla having discovered that this barbarous

King, did earnestly defire it onely for his pleasure, and not for any other euill intent, the Citie which hee deliuered being feated upon a River further within his Countrey, and that other within our Countrey compafied about with our fortreffes: but Odmar did not allow of that, and supposed it to bee for an euill purpose, as for to contrine some new practises. Odmar being an olde man, who knew the kings vnfaithfulneffe, although hee had made him know it

well enough vnto his fmart, having (as I have faid) wonne twenty or thirty Cities from him; and about fourescore leagues of Countrey, at such time as hee obtayned the last Battell, during

the time that the Emperour was in his last Voyage against the Persians,

So the enterniew continued yet betweene Prince Analla and the King of China on the Plaine, 2 Tent being pitched, whither Prince Axalla did come vnto him, whom hee continually honoured as much as the Emperours owne perion, where after they had long time treated by Interpreters, it was in the end agreed, that the King of China should enter againe into Quinanci , not fuffering him to put any Garrison into it, nor to fortifie the same : but even as a Priloner and Subject vinto the Emperour, her should enjoy it, and it should bee his owne. enioving all the revenue thereof, neither should hee carrie any kingly Enfignes, without the express leave of the Gouernour for the Emperour: hee should not withit anding have a Theresolution the expetite rease or the endersion for the emperous and should gue knowledge vitto the faid Gouernous betweene A. of his journey, before he entred into the Emperours Countries, the which hee must passe for to xalla and King 40 goe thither. Now the Citie was fituated in the middeft of a very great Lake, in the which were of thiss. many Ilands, wherein there were an infinite number of houses of pleasure, and it had beene alwaies a very delicate place, where the Kings of China were wont to recreate themselves in all kindes of pleafures that were there to be found: in fo much as this barbarous King did not respect the conditions propounded vnto him, so as he might make his abode there, as it were in an Hermitage. Hauing left vnto his brother the gouernment of his whole Kingdome, through King of Chinac the displeasure he had of his bondage whereunto he was brought; a courage certainly magna. brother sucnimous, and worthie a Nation made civill with the belt learning, and vinworthie the name of a ceeds. Barbarian wherewith we called him.

Three times in the weeke at Samercand, Tamerlan ministred open instice vnto the meanest, The instice of 50 in his Imperial Maiestie, a thing which made him beloued of the people ouer whom hee commanded. In the other dayes hee gaue secret audience for the affaires of his Estate, and tooke aduice for matters of importance, which were decided daily in his presence. He had such severitie line. in his counsell, that they must needs deale truely before him, and without all passion in discourfing : not withflanding he alwaies shewed himfelfe courteous in his conversation, and made himtelle both beloued and feared of his people: hee neuer changed his feruants, except they committed great faults against him; of all the servants of the late Emperour his Vncle he did not change one of them, but hee did withall encrease their estates, making them in this change to feele his liberalitie, which he made strangers for to taste also, vinto whom he was accustomed to give, to binde them vnto him. He drew great store of money yeerely for tribute of the Mofeo-60 mite: but he distributed it within the fame countrey for to maintayne his authoritie there, win-

ning those for his which might have hurt him, by meanes of giving voto them. Hee had great Tomerlin his care of his revenues, and he had such a readinesse, that he did see his estate from three moneths este of his vnto three moneths within one houre, both the ordinarie and extraordinarie expences, they remember prefented it fo well digefted vnto him.

Prince Saute-

But our hafte of other voyages permits not our flay bere. Onely we will adde, that after A things we dered, Sicknesse arrested and Death conquered this great Conquerour : and this Traueller trested the dered, solvingle arrepted and Dente comparers son green compared to way of all flesh into another world. Pretently after his death they ranne to call his fonne, those tooms as he was come that his eyes, powring out teares, a sallo did all his femunts. The tinge Samochio his eldeit fonne, within two houres after was proclaymed Emperour throughout. the whole Armie, and dispatches were made from all parts to advertise the Governours of Pro uinces thereof, the Letters being figned with the hand of the new Emperour, who having afand figured di. fembled all the Armie together, hee made an Oration vnto the Captaines and Souldiers, and caused them to make a generall muster, gratifying all the ancient Servants of the Emperour his Father: he would not dispose of any thing before he had seene Prince Axalla, and was iny ned with the Imperial Armie. This young Prince, when he came vnto this Empire was nineteene this nineteens yeeres old, hee was faire, and had much of the Emperor his Fathers naturall disposition. They hoped that hee would wifely (through the good counsell that was about him) maintayne this great Empire : but they feared greatly the young Prince Letrochio his brother (whom his mos ther loued) would cause divisions, as it happened in the times of their great grand-father betweene two brethren, who had beene occasion of the destruction of their estate, the which was releeued and lifted vp againe vnto his height by the valour of Tamerlan.

# CHAP. IX.

This Citie of Succine is great and populous, with faire houses of hewen stones after our man

mer: and hath many great Temples with their Idols of ftone. It is fituate in a Playne where

runne infinite Rivolets; is abundant in victuals of all forts, and yeelds filke there made of the

Reports of GHAGGIMENET & Perlian of Tabas in the Province of \* Chilan. or Gil.m. touching his Travels and Observations in the Country of the Great Can. Unto M. G. BAPTISTA RAMVSIO.

Succeir and Campion mentioned by M.



Ambaffadour to the great Can.

E faid that he had beene at Succeir and Campion, Cities of the Province of Tanguib, in the entrance of the State of Grand Can, who (faid he) was called Daimie Can, and fent his Officers to the government of the faid Cities, which are the first toward the Muslemans , and are Idolaters. He went thither with a Cara- if uan, which went with merchandises out of Persia, and from the places adiov. ning to the Cafpian Sea, for the Regions of Cataio; which Carauan they permit No piffing in. not to pierce further then Success and Campion, nor any other Merchant therein, except he cos

Succuir descri-

black Mulberies in great quantitie: hath no Wine growing, but they make a drinke with Hopy as it were Ale. Of fruits, by reason the Countrey is cold, there grow none but Peares, Apples, Apricocks, Peaches, Melons and Cucumers. Hee faid that Rhubard (of this commeditie Memet 4 had brought great flore at that time to Vonice) growes all over the Country ; but the beft, in certaine high stony Hills neere adjoyning, where are many Springs and Woods of divers forts of high Trees, and the Land is of a red colour, and by reason of many Raynes and Springs almost alway myrie. He shewed out of his botome a picture of the Plant, brought out of the Country (which Ramusio in his Preface to M. Polo bathalfo presented with this discourse) the description of which is this. The leaves, he faid, are ordinarily two spans long, more or leffe as the Plantis in bigneffe; narrow below and broad aboue, downy with (as it were) fmall hayres in their circumference; the stalke or trunke is greene foure fingers high, and sometimes a span from the ground : the greene leaves with age grow yellow and spread on the ground. In the midst of the trunke growes a thin branch with flowres faftned within, like the Mamole violets in forme, but 10 of the colour of Milke and Azure, and greater then those violets, of a noysome sent. The roote

The Root and thigh or legge, out of which grow little Roots or Sprigs, which spread in the ground, and are luyce and pro- cut away from the great Roote; which within is yellow with many veynes of faire red, full of

Six Saggi ounce.

the Sunne may not come at them, being in two moneths drie and perfect. They ordinarily take A cold climate, it out of the ground in the Winter, the vertue being then most wnited in the Roote (the Spring 60 there beginning at the end of May) which at other times is dispersed into the leaves and flowers, that juyce also being gone and the roote light and hollow. They sell one of their Cart lodes of Roots with leaves for fixteene filuer Saggi (not much vnlike ours) for they have no Coynes, but make their gold and filter in small thin rods, and thence

within ground is a span or two long, of a tawny colour in the barke, some as bigge as a mans

red and yellow juyce, cleaning to the fingers and making the hand yellow: and being cut in

peeces the viscous juyce issueth out and the roote becomes light; they lay them therefore on

boords turning them vp and downe divers times a day, that the juyce should incorporate there-

in, left it lose the goodnesse; after foure or fix dayes hanging them to drie in the winde, where

cut preces of a Saggio weight, which in filter is twentie Soldi Venetian, and in gold a Ducket and halfe. He laid that they would not gather it, if forren Merchants should not come to trade for it, themselves making no reckoning thereof : and that the Merchants of China and India carry away the greatest part; who if they should cut and dresse it as before is expressed, after it is brought in Cares, in foure or tix dayes it would corrupt; and feuen burdens greene (hee faid) would not yeeld about one drie. When it is greene it is intolerably bitter; and in Cataio they y'e it not for medicine, but beate and mixe it with other odoriferous compositions for persumes to their Idols. In some places there is such store that they burne it dryed in stead of wood: othere give it their crafed horses, so little doe they esteeme it in Cataio. But there they much

To prize another small Roote, which growes in the Mountaines of Succesir, where the Rubard prowes, and call it Mambroni cini, very deare, yied for difeafes, those specially of the eyes; nor Mambroni cini, did he thinke any of it was brought into these parts. He faid also, that in all Cataio they much wie the leagues of another herb, which they call Chiai Catai, which growes in a place of Catai, called Caccanfu. They boyle it, whether new or drie, and taking off a Beaker or two of that decoction faffing (as hot as can be borne) takes away the Feauer, payne of the Head or Stomack, Back, loynts, and other difeates, especially the Gowt, and it is good for digestion. They vie to carry it with them in their Voyages, and will give a fack of Rubarb for an ounce of Chini Catas. And the Cataians fay, that if our Merchants, Perfians and Frankes, knew the goodnesse thereof, they would buy no Rauend Cini, fo they call Rubard.

I asked him of his Voyage from thence to Conftantinople, and hee answered mee by Mambre our Interpreter, that hee returned not that way he went with the Carauan, by reason that the Greene-head Tartars called lefeilbas, fent an Embaffador at that time when hee was to come away, with a great company, by the way of Tartaria Deserta, about the Caspian Sea to the great Turke at Constantinople, to make a league against the Persian their common enemie. Whereupon The way of he thought good to come with them, and so did to Caffa. I asked of the way he went. He faid the Carauan he should have returned from Campion to Gauta in fix dayes (eight Farsencs, each of which is betwint Tauru three Italian miles, are a dayes journey, but on the Hils and Defarts they goe not halfe so much) in Gatal from Ganta to Succeir in fine dayes, from Succeir to Camul in fifteene, here the Mufalmans (or Mahumetans) begin : from Camul to Turfon is thirteene. From Turfon they passe three Ciac ties, Chialis ten dayes journey thence, after that Cuchia other ten, and after that Acfu in twentie. From Acfa to Cafear are other twentie dayes all rough Delart, all the former way being thorow places inhabited. From Cafear to Samarcand are fine and twentie dayes. From Samarcand to Bochara in Corassam, five; from Bochara to Eri, twentie; from thence to Veremi

Now for some particulars of those places, he related that Campion is subject to Daimir Can, Campion degreat Emperor of the Tartars ; the Citie placed in a fertile Playne all cultivated and abundant in feribed. proussions. They are apparelled in black Cotton cloth, furred in Winter with skins of Wolues Apparell. and Sheepe if they be poore; the richer with Sables and Marterns of great price. They we are 40 black Bonets sharpe like a Sugar-loafe; the men rather small then great, wearing beards as we Bea ded men doe, specially a certayne time of the yeere. Their houses are of stone like ours, with two or Houses,

in fitteene; from Veremi to Calbin in fix; thence to Soltania in foure, and thence to Tauris in

three lotts, slope-roofed, and dinersly painted, and they have one street onely of painters. The great men for magnificence make a great Loftor Pageant, and thereon erect two Tents of filke Pageans. embroydered with gold, filter, pearles, and jewels, and therestand with their friends. This they cause to bee carried by fortie or fiftie Slaues, and so goe thorow the Citie in solace. The Gentlemen are carried on a limple Pageant, by foure or fix men without other furniture. There Temples are made like our Churches, fo great that they may contayne foure or fine thousand. Temples and persons; and have in them two Statues, of a Man and a Woman, each fortie foot long, all of one 1dols. peece, firetched on the ground, and all gilded. They have excellent flone cutters. They bring 50 quarry Hones two or three moneths journey on shod Carts of fortie wheeles very high, drawne Huge cons-

by fine or fix hundred Horfes and Mules. There are also small Images with fix or fenen heads age. and ten hands, all holding divers things, one a Serpent, another a Bird, a third a Flower, &c. There are some Monasteries in which line men of holy life, immured within their houles that Anchorete. they cannot goe our whiles they hue, and haue victuals every day brought them. There are innumerable, like our Friars, which goe vp and downe the Citie. They have a cuftome, when Friars. one of their kindred dyes, to clothe themselues in white many dayes male of Corton, their gar- White mour-ments are made long to the ground with wide sleeues. They wile Printing of their Books, which ners. he thought formewhat like those I shewed him at M. Thomas Guntos printing house. Their Ci- Printing. tie is fortified with a thick wall, within filled with earth, able to carry four Carts abreft, with Lorineasion.

6C Towres and Artillary as thick as those of the great Turke. The Ditch is wide and drie, but they can make it runne with water at their pleafure. They have a kind of very great Oxen with : he and c vit long, than and with hayre. The Cataians and Idolaters are forbidden to goe out of their Count tell of the tries, to goe on merchandife thorow the World.

Beyond the Delart about Corassan to Samarcand, and till the Idelatrons ( ities the I-Collar

rebanks and luggling knaues.

The lessbas or rule, which are Tartars, Musulmans, wearing greene sharpe Turbants of felt, so making a different Green-bead rence betwixt them and the Persians, which weare them red and betwixt them two for diverfitie of opinions in Religion are continual warres, and difagreement about their Confines. Booms and Samarcand are two Cities of these Green-heads, each a Signorie of it selfe. They have chimia, Simia, three particular sciences, (himia (in the same sense as here) Limia, to make and cause love, and Simia, to make men see that which is not. The moneys which they have are not Coyned, but euery Gentleman and Merchant makes thin rods of gold and filuer, as is before faid of Campion Prating moun- and Succeir. In the market place of Compion are enery day many Mountebankes which have that science of Simia, which compassed with a great multitude present strange sights, asto cause a man to cut off his arme, or thrust himselfe thorow with a sword, and seeme to bee all to bloudy, with other like.

CHAP. X.

A Treatise of China and the adiopning Regions , written by GASPAR DA CRVZ 4 Dominican Friar, and dedicated to SEBAS-TIAN King of Portugall : here abbreuiated.

· of Camboia and the Bramenes there; the cause of his going to China : of China and the neighbouring Regions.

Camboia. Champa.



Being in Malaca building an house of my Order, and preaching, was informed that in the Kingdome of Camboia (which is subject to the King of Siam, and lyeth toward the parts of China, and doth confine with Champa, whence commeth to the most precious Calambach) was great oportunitie to preach the Gospell, and to reape some fruit. Having leave of my Prelate, I tooke the journey in hand.

And after the passing many troubles and hunger in the journey, with dangers and ficknesses, I came a land, and after I had reasonably informed my selfe by a third person, conversing with the People and with the Fathers, even before I knew it I found all to the contrary of that which they had told, and that all were deceits of the simple Laytie, which of light matters were mooued to prefume of the people that which was not in them. And besides this, I found many him-King of cam- derances for the obtayning of my defires and intent; for first, the King is a Bramene, and the bisa a Bramenes are his principall men and his fauourites, and most familiar, because they are Witches, for they are much given to bee pleased with witchcrafts, and they doe nothing without con- to fulting the Witches and Bramenes that are in the Kingdome (for by this meanes they thrine) by the Deuill. And to the first thing that the King asked me, was if I were a Witch.

Probar missur. Praiocuffur.

Men aliue

The Bramenes doe worship among others one God, which they call Probar missur (which they faid made the Heauens and the Earth; and another God, which they call Pralocusar, this also having obtayned power of another which they call Praisfur, for to give this licence to Probar millur) and I hewed them, that not onely he had not made the Heaven and the Earth, but that hee had beene a very wicked man and a great finner : wherefore these Priests said, that they would worship him no more, having worshipped him thitherto with their God Praput prasar metri: whereupon the hatred of the Bramenes increased towards me, and from thence forward I had disfauours of the King, which was mooued for the zeale of his God, and the God of his Bra- 10 menes. There met about these matters, the Priests of the Idols, and all of their troupe, which goe for Priests, and hold themselues for religious men, and in their conversation and life they are separated from all other people, which to my thinking is the third part of the people of the Land; the King thereof fetting an hundred thousand men in the field. This religious people, or that holds it felfe for fuch, are exceedingly proud and vaine, and aline they are worthipped for gods, in fort that the interiour among them doe worship the superiour like gods, praying vnto them and proftrating themselues before them : and so the common people haue a great confidence in them, with a great renerence and worship: in fort that there is no person that dare contradict them in any thing, and their wordes among them are held for fo facred, that in no wife they will endure to be gainfayed. Infomuch that it hapned fometimes whiles I was preaching, 60 many round about me hearing me very well, and fatisfying themselves of that which I said vnto them; if there came any of these Priests, and faid this is good, but ours is better, they would all depart and leaue me alone. Further, they being very ignorant prefumed to be very wife, and the common people did hold them for fuch, all their knowledge being ignorances and Heathenith

They make seuen and twenty Heauens, some where there is meate and drinke and faire wo- Twenty seuen men whether they say all living things doe goe, even the Flea and the Lowse, for they say, that Heavensas they have foules, that they must live in the other World. And to these, they say, all doe goe that are not R. ligious men as they are. They place others higher, whether they tay, their holy Priets doe goe that live in the Wildernesses, and all the selicitie they give them there, is to set refreshing themselves with the wind. They place others yet higher, the gods of the which, they fay, have round bodies like Bowles, those which goe to these Heavens, and the honour w. ich they give them is, to give them round bodies as the Gods themselves have. And even as they Thirteene make many Heatiens, lo they doe many Hels, for they make thirteene, to the which they goe Hels. to according to the grieuouinefie of the finnes of every one, eyther higher or lower.

They have a divition of their religious men, for some they call Massacraches, which are as Massacraches fupreame, which fit about the King : others they call Nascendeches, which are as our Bishoppes Nassendeches, here. Thefe fit equall with the King. Othersthey call Mitires, which are in the common de- Mitires. gree of Priests, which do sit under the King : under the which there are yet two degrees, which they call Charnizes and Sazes. And all these they ascend in degree, so they doe in vanitie and pride, and are more reuerenced. Befides all this, there is another very great inconvenience, that except the Priests and all those that holds themselves for Religious men, all the rest are slaves of the King, and when the owner of the House dyeth, all that is in it returneth to the King, and let the Wite and Children hide what they can, and begin to feeke a new life; the people of the 20 Countrey is of such a nature, that nothing is done that the King knoweth not : and any bodie be he never to fample may speake with the King; wherefore every one feeketh newes to carry vnto him, to have an occasion for to speake with him : whereby without the Kings good will nothing can be done, and wee have already shewed before, that hee is vinwilling to the matter of Chrifinitie. To these things was joyned some disorders of the Portugals, so that by all meanes I found croffes and inconveniences for to obtayne my defires and my pretence; wherefore I having beene in the Countrey about a yeare, and feeing I could make no fruit befide the paffing of grienous ficknesses, I determined to leave this Countrey, and because they told mee many things of China, and the people of it to have a disposition to Christianitie, and that they loued reason, I determined, seeing in this Countrey I did no goo 1, nor baptized more then one Gentile, which I 30 left in the Caue, to goe to China in a ship, of China which was then in the Countrey; in which they carryed me with a very good will, giving me the best roome in the hip, not taking any interest of me; yea, they dealt very charitably with me. This name China is not the proper name of the people of this Countrey, nor of the Countrey it felfe, neither is there commonly in the Countrey notice of fuch a name, onely among all the people of India, and among those which dwell in the South parts, as in Malaca, Stam, laoa, this denomination of Chinas goeth current, and also among those Chinas which doe traffique among vs. The proper name of the Countrey is Tame, the e. not well pronounced, but almost drowning it: and the name of \* As this word the people of the Countrey is Tamgin, whence this name China doth come, which is currant a- Tame in English mong the strangers we know not, but it may be conjectured, that the people which in old time

40 did layle to those parts, because they passed by the Coast of a Kingdome, which they call Canchin-china, and traffique in it, and victuall, and take refreshings there for the Journey of the Countrey that lyeth forward, which is that of China, in the which Kingdome they live after the manner of the Chinas, and is subject to the Chinas, it fremeth, that omitting Cauchin, from the denomination of this other Kingdome, they called all the Countrey that lyeth along

China is a great part of Scychia; for as Herodotiu faith, Scythia extendeth it felfe vinto India, which may be understood, because the Chinas did possesse many parts of India, and did conquet them of old time, whereof at this day there are some Monuments, as in the Coast of Choramandell, which is towards the Coast of the Kingdo me of Narsinga, on that side which we call Saint Thome, because there is a House built by the Apostle, and the Relikes of his bodie. There 50 is at this day a great Temple of Idols, which is a marke for the Nauigators to know the Coaft which is very low, the which as the men of the Countrey affirme, was made by the Chinas, of whom there remayned among them a perpetuall memory, and therefore they call it Pagode, of the Chinas, which is to fay, Temple of the Chinas. And in the Kingdome of Callecut, which is the head of M. lanar, there be very ancient fruit-trees which the men of the Countrey fay The Tartarsta. were planted by the Chinas, and on the shoales of Chilao, which doe runne from the Iland of ther let forth Ceplan, toward the Coast of Cheromandel, is affirmed, by the men of the Countrey, a great Ar- ne to these Exmy of the Chinas to be cast away which came for India, which was lost, because the Chinas were plains as in Pobut young in that Nauigation. And so the men of the Countrey say the Chinas were Lords of lo you reade. all Iaoa, and of Iautana, which is the Kingdome of Malaca, Siam, and of Chapaa, as it is com-60 monly affirmed in those parts: wherefore some doe affirme, many of this people to bee like the Chinas, that is, having small eyes, flat notes, and long faces, for the great commixture that the

Chinas had with all of them, especially with them of laon, which commonly are more China-

like. But the King of China seeing that his Kingdome went to decay, and was in danger by

owne Kingdome, making a publike Edict under paine of death that none of the Countrey should

fayle out of the Kindome of China: the which lafteth to this day. Liquos an Iland The Liquos are not continued with mayne Land, but it is an Iland which standeth in the Sta of China, little more or leffe then thirtie leagues from China it felfe. In this Iland line thefe people, which is a well disposed people, more to the white then browne. It is a cleanly and well attyred people; they drelle their haire like women; and tye it on the fide of their head, fastened with a filter bodkin; their grounds are plentifull of many and good waters; it is a people that fayle very seldome being in the middest of the Sea. They weare good shore Swords, they were in times past subject to the Chimas, with whom they had great connertation, therefore are very to like the Chinas. Now this Iland remayning to the Sea from China, as we have faid, the Ceaftor China runneth, winding from the Prounce of Cantano, and from her Coaft vnto the Coaft of the Promince of Nanguin, whether to the Portugals have fayled, the Coast making neuera point as the Maps doe make, the which may be feene well pointed in the Sea-cards and in the

their feeking to conquer other strange Countreyes, he with-drew himselfe with his men to his

Maps made among the Portugals.

The Tartars are reckoned among the Scythians, and runne fo far along China, with the which it hath continuall Warre, that commonly they affirme to have betweene the Chinas and the Tag. tariant, a Wall of an hundred leagues in length. And some will affirme to bee more then a hundred leagues : the first King Jome that doth confine with it on the Sea-fide of India, is one that is called Canchin-china, which hath about an hundred leagues little more or leffe a long the Sea-10

Last, or Siones

coast, the Sea maketha great entrance betweene it and the lle Daman, which is of fiftie leagues in length, and is already of the China: and in the end of this entrance this Kingdome abutteth with the Kingdome of China, and is subject to the King of China. The people of this Kingdome in their Habit, Policie, and Gouernment, doe vie them selves like the people of China. The Countrey is much inhabited and of much people, it is also a very plentifull Countrey. They have the same Writing that the Chinas have, although their speech be divers. Beyond this Kingdome of the Cauchin-chinas, lyeth another very great Kingdome, which runneth within the Land along China, which some doe call Lass, and others Stones, Maons: this by the otherside towards India, doch confine with the Kingdome of Cambon, and with the great Kingdome of Syam, and with the rich Kingdome of Pegu, with all the which Kingdomes it hath Traffique: 3 in fort that there remay eth to this Kingdome towards the Sea of India, all the Coaft of Pega, vato the ends of the Kingdome of Champaa, which doth confine with Cauchin-china. And is there remayne to thele Laos toward the lide of the Indian Sea, the great Kingdome of Pegu, the Kingdome of Tanagarin, and that of Quedaa, and that of Malaca, and the Kingdomes of Pa, of Patane, of Syam, of Camboia, and of Champaa which abutteth vpon the Cauchin-chinas This Kingdome of the Lass, or Sions Maons, was fubdued by the Bramas (of the which we will speake presently) in the yeere of fiftie fixe, and among some which they brought captine to Pegg ther brought some (hinas which the Lass held Captines, as one George Mello affirmed vnto met, which went for Captayne of the Voyage to Pegu. And though commonly there be no Warres betweene these Lass and the Chinas, because of the great Mountaynes that are betweene them, 40 on the which the Chinas have good forces on that tide in the Province of Camfi, which doth confine with these and with the Bramas: and in the forces they have continually men in Garrifon for the defence of those parts: there bee notwithstanding, continually assults on the one fide and of the other : whereby the Lass might have some Chinas captine. Before that these Lass were subdued by the Bramas, they carryed to Sion, to Camboia, and to Pegu some very good Muske and Gold, whereof is affrmed to be great stere in that Countrey, and these people having Muske, makes a conjecture the great store of Muske which the China have, they get it from the many healts that are in the Confines of this Kingdome in the Province of Camf, from

Muske what

whence they bring it. The Muske is the flesh and bloud of certayne beasts, which they say, to be as bigge as Foxes, 50 the which beaten with flrokes and killed, they tye the skinne with the flesh together in lumps, the which they cut after the flesh is rotten, and so they fell it, which the Portugals do call Muske Cods. And when it commeth fresh, presently it appeareth to be rotten flesh and bloud : the rest they fell loofe, holding these Cods for the finer Muske. Returning to the Lass, whereof we were fpeaking, these be the Wares which they brought to the about-laid Kingdomes, carrying in returne Cotton-clothes and other things they had need of. This people is not very browne, they weare their haireall cut round vinderneath, and all the rest aboue russled, raysing it many times voward with their hands, that it remayneth to them like a Cap, and ferueth in Head of one, for they weare nothing on their heads; they goenaked from the middle vpward, and from the hips downward, they weare certayne Cotton-clothes girt about them all white: the women goe covered from the brefts to the halfe legge: they have their faces fome-what like the China, they 60 haue the same Heathenish Ceremonies that the Pegus and Siones, and the Cambrias: The Prichs of their Idols doe weare yellow clothes girt about as the rest of the people, and a certayne manner of yellow Copes, with certayne folds and feames in which they hold their Superflitions.

Of this people I faw many in Camboia, which remayned there the yeere before by the way of Traffique, and that yeare that I was there, they came not because of the Warres, wherein(as I (aid) they faid they were fubdued by the Bramas. Thele Lass came to Camboia, downe a River many daies Journie, which they fay, to have his

beginning in China, as many others which runne into the Sea of India: it hath eight, fifteene. and twentie fathome water, as my felfe faw by experience in a great part of it : it paffeth through many vinknowne and defirt Countries of great Woods and Forrests, where there are innumerable Elephants, and many Buffes, of which I law many wild in that Countrie, and Me- River of the 716. which is like a good Mule, and certayne beafts which in that Countrie they call Badas: of Last. To the which the Male have a pointleffe and blunt Horne in their fore-head, and fome of the Mermare Hornes are spotted with singular colours, and others all blacke, others of a waxe colour, but they kind of wild haue no vertue, but only for the Hemorroides, or Piles : and after the Elephant there is no other Bades are the greater beaft; the haire of it is browne and footed like an Elephant, the head like a Cow, and it Rhinocerores: hath a great lumpe of flesh that falleth vpon his head, whereof I did eate trauelling in those by the forepares. There are also many other wilde Beaftes. There bee some Thorny Trees, like Limons head vaderand Oranges , and many wilde Grapes through the Woodes. When these Lass doe returne to their Countrie, going against the streame, they goe in three moneths. This River cauis lower three feeth a wonder in the Land of Camboia, worthy of reciting. Comming neere to a place which the forchead. they call Chudurmuch, which is twelue leagues from the principall Citie of Camboia, it maketh Chudurmuch. 20 a passage to another River which commeth from a great Lake, that is in the vetermost parts of Camboia, and hath Siam, on the other fide : in the middeft of the which his bigneffe being great, Laste, yee can fee no Land on neither-fide, and this River paffeth by Locob, which is the principall Citie of Cambona, vnto Chudurmuch: the waters of this River, which is also verie great, the most of them doe passe to the River that commeth from the Last, neere to (budarinuch, and the rest doe run downe the River directly to the Sea, when the great Winter floudes doe come, which happen when it raines not in the Countries of Camboia. The many waters which doe come by Siller the River that commeth from the Laos, which there they call Sifter, doe make a paffage right against Chudurmuch, to the River that passeth through Loceh , with so great furie , that where the waters of Lorch did run downward, by multitude of the other that entreth into it, they are fresh Ruer 30 turned backe and run vpward with a great current : in fort that it ouerfloweth all the Countrie running vp of Camboia, whereby all the Countrie is not travelled in the time of these flouds, but in Boates, without Seaand they make their Houses all with high lofts, and underneath they are all overflowne, and force;

fometimes these flouds are so high, that they are forced to make higher Roomes with Canes to keepe their houshold-stuffe in, and to lodge themselves. This River runneth vpward from July to September, and with the passing from the River that commeth from the Lass, (or from the River Sifter, which is his proper name) of fo many waters to the River of Loech, it doth not leaue his running to the Sea, making below verie great armes, and goeth verie high ouer-flowing many Countries downward, but not fo much as aboue. The Portugals did shew mee in Losch a field, a great hill of Earth, ouer the which they affirmed that in the time of the flouds a great 40 thip that was made in the Countrie did passe without touching, which thip might well have fay-

led from India to Portugall.

Beyond these Lass, follow the Brames, which is a great people, and very rich of Goldand Precious stones, chiefly of Rubies. It is a proud Nation and valiant, these are now Lords of Pegs, which subdued it by force of Armes some yeares before they subdued the Lass, they are men of good complexion, and well made, they are browne. They have Pegu and part of Bengala toward the Sea of India. It is a Countrey very scarce of victuals, they apparell themselves as we faid of the Lass, but that their clothes are fine, and many do weare them painted or wrought: they are also somewhat like the Chinas in the faces, they have very rich and gallant shippings garnished with Gold, in the which they sayle in the Rivers: they vse Veffels of Gold and of 50 Siluer, their Houses are of Timber very well wrought, the Kingdome is very great, they have not commonly warre with the Chinas, because of the great Mountaynes that are betweene the one and the other, and because the Chinas are well fortified on that fide : notwithstanding this, fometimes there are Robbers on the one fide, and the other that doe make affaults, whereby the Chinas haue some Bramas Captines, as some Portugals which were Captines in those parts, which faw them did affirme, and did speake with them in the great Citie of Camsi: and these flames told them, that from thence it was not very farre to Brama, and that in Pegu, they had feene Portugals.

There followeth along the China beyond the Bramas, the KingJome of the Patanes, which The Patanets now are Lords of Bengala, and after them the Mogores. Beyond these Mogores there runneth along the China, the Tartarians, which doe extend themselves from Mogor to the Lake Meotis and the River Thanais, which is a very great Kingdome and of much and innumerable people. This people are commonly red and not white, they goe naked from the waite vpward, they eate raw fielh, and anoint themselves with the bloud of it : whereby commonly they are flinking and have an ill fent.

Wall of thing, of the Chinas, and as I have faid the Chinas have an hundred leagues (others faying there are more) of a Wall betweene them and the other, where are continually Garrisons of men for the defence of the entries of the Tartarians. It may bee beleeved that this Wall is not continued, but that some Mountaynes or Hils are intermixt betweene ; for a Lord of Persia affirmed to me, that the like Workes were in some parts of Persia, with intermixing some Hils and Mountaynes.

An old man of China did affirme vinto me, that fometimes when they came against the Countries of China, if the wind stood on that fide where they came, they were difcerned by their

See Pinto.

\* Here fol-

fion of the

their Ciries,

It was affirmed to the Portugals which were Captines, and in Prifon in their Dungeons, in the yeare 1 eco. that fome yeares there is Truce betweene the Chinas and the Tartarians : and in the Tatterian rodes fame yeare the Tartarians made a great entry in China, in the which they tooke a very principall Citie from them : but a great number of people of the Chinas comming and belieging the Citie, and not being able to enter it by force of Armes, by the Councell of a man of low degree, they had a meanes whereby they killed them and their Horses, and remayned Lords againe of the Citie. The same Portugals which afterward were set at libertie, affirmed, that all the Priloners made great Feasts, and made a great stirre when the Tartarians made this entry, with the hope of being fet at libertie by the meanes of the Tartarians, if they did pol-

In the Citie of Cantan I faw many Tartarians Captines, which have no other captinitie then to ferue for men at Armes in other places farre from Tartarie, and they weare for a difference red Caps, in all the reft they are like the Chinas with whom they line : they have for their maintenance a certayne stipend of the King, which they have paid them without faile. The Chinas lowed the diui- call them Tatos, for they cannot pronounce the Letter r. Aboue the Lake where Thanais hath his beginning, they doe confront with the skirts of high Almayne , although on the fide of Europe, Countrey into and betweene them and Almayne are Hils that doe disside them: and of these people of the shires of King skirts of the Mountaines, the Chinas fay that the King of Chinas hath many men of Warre in 30 pay, that doe keepe the weake passages and the Wals on the side of the Tartarians: and say, &c. which wee they are great men with great Beards, and weare cut Hose, and Caps, and blunt Swords, and referre to later a Portugall that was carryed captine the Land inward, told me that he heard the Chinas fay, that and better In- they called their . Alimenes.

> Cantan described; the publike and private buildings and Government. The shipping and Husbandry of China; their contempt of the. idle, and provision for impotent

Eing to intreate of the Citie of Cantan, I give first a warning to the Readers, thatamong many Noble Cities, Cantan is one leffe Noble then many of China; and fante inferiour in building then many other: although it be more populous then many; this

is faid by all them that faw it, and trauelled within the Land, where they faw many other. This aduice presupposed, it is to be noted, that Cantan in his compasse, is of very strong Wals, very well made, and of a good height, and to the fight they feeme almost new, beeng eighteene hundred yeares since they were made, as the Chinas did affirme: they are very cleane 50 without any cleft, hole, or rift, or any thing threatning ruine. They are of free flone about a mans height, and from thence vpward of brickes made of a clay like vnto that of the Porceline Dishes, whence it causeth them to bee so strong, that I building a Chappell in Malaca, one of thete (which was brought from China) could (carfly bee broken with a good Pick-axe, Iointly with this there is in this Citie and in all the reft an Officer of the King which onely hath care to ourr-fee the Wals, for the which he hath a good fupend. And every yeare when the Governour of the Borders commeth to visit the Prouince, hee doth visit this as well as the other Offcers, to know if he doth well his Office, and finding him in any fault, or negligence, hee is put from his Office, and punished. And if he standeth in need of any expence for the mending of the Walls, the Ouer-feer of the Rents is bound to give him that which is necessarie, ander paine, 60 that if the mending remayneth yndone, he shall bee well punished. For this cause the Wals of all the Cities are continually kept found and in good reparation. These Walles are within the Citie little more then the walke of the same Citie in their height, which is the cause of beeing much more cooler. The Wals have in compaffe 12250, paces, and it hath eighty three Bulwarks.

# CHAP. 10.5.2. Large description of Cantan a Citie of China.

This Citie (and fo all thereft) hath on the one fide the River, along the which, as well this as the reltate built almost in a Valley; and on the other side they have a Ditch full of water of a Town duch. good breadth, betweene the which and the wall remayneth a good diffance where there may runne together a good troupe of people, and the Earth that was taken out of the Ditch, was call betweene it and the wall, whereby the foot of the wall remayneth a great deale higher then the other ground. Besides the dirch, notwith standing, this wall hath a great blemish, for it hath on the contraridfide to the Riner without the wals, and the ditch a little, Hillocke that difcouereth all the Citie within the wals.

This wall bath feven gates : the entries of the which are sumptious and high , strong and The Cates. To well mades watte Pinacles aboue, not square but made like steps. The other places of the wals have no Pinacles: the wall at the entring of the gates is twelve paces thicke : the gates ate all oner plated with Iron, and all of them have their draw-bridges very ftrong, which are alwayes Draw-bridges. vp, and are never let downe, but are ready against they be needfull: all the gates at the entrings have Courts, and the Courts that are toward the fide of the Suburbs, which lyethalong the Ri- Gate courts. tuer have every one three gates, one in the front and two on the fides, which remayne for the fervice of the to that ye along the wall, the wall of the Courts are almost of the height of them within ; the gate which is in the front in the Court, is like vnto that of the wals within : it hath alfo 4 draw bridge; the gates which are in the fide of the Courts are smell. The Courts that are on the other-fide of the field where no Suburbe is , have no more but one gate , and this not

20 right against that of the wills, but stand on the one side: the freets of the Citie are all drawne by a Line very straight without any manner of making a nooke or winding: all the croffe wayes are as firaight as the firests : in fort that there is neyther fireet nor traverie that maleth any tur- Strait fireets ning. All the threets and traueries are very well paued, the pauements going along the Houses, and paued. and lower in the middeft for the course of water; the principall freetes have triumphant Atches which doe croffe them, high and very well made, which make the ffreets very beautifull. and enoble the Citie: the principall streets have along the Houses close Portals, in the which and under the Arches many things are fold.

The Houses of them which rule the Countrey, are at the entrings very semptuous, with high Houses of Mar Portals, great and well wrought of Malons worke: they have in the fore-front very great gates giftrates, 30 like the gates of a Civic; with two Giants painted with Clubs in their hands ! Haw foure in one Pagode, (which is a Temple of Idols) drawne naturally from fome, which they fay, the King hath to keepe his weaked passages from Tartaria. They are of great members, of about tweloc or thirteene spans high. On the street side it hath right against the principall Porch a " receite not very great. It hath built along the street a good wall of a good height right against the Court. gate, that when the gate is open they that are within may not be gazed on by them that goe by the fireet: this gate ferueth not, neither is it opened but for dispatching of matters of luffice, and the principal of the House goe in and out at them; and others that are as honourable or more then they : at the one fide of this principall gate is another very great gate, but not fo big as the principall, which is for the feruice of the House, and of the Prisoners when the principal 40 gate is shut : and when this principall gate is shut , they set a glued Paper crosse over both the leaues, on which is written the name or firme of the principall of the House, and for to open it againe, an Officer of the House bringeth the same firme or marke on a playstered board to the Porter; that hee may open it, without the which token hee may not open it vnder a great

Entring by this gate, there is a great Court and almost square, which is almost a Horse-race, and it hatha Gallery little lelle then the length of the gate, which leadeth straight from the gate to a very great Table that stands at the end of the Court, the which is all paued with square stones with leanings as high as a mans waste, and it is high in the entry of the gate, and there Sandrie of

remayneth onely one step in the end of it to the Table, and the course in the sides of the Galle- Cours, and re-50 ty is low, that they goe downe to it by steps: this Gallery of the middest is of such respect a- his b Magimong them, that in no wife it is lawfull for any one to palle through it, but onely some of the strate. chiefest of the House, or others as great or greater then they; and those that goe to nego iate with the Officer of the Houle when they enter in at the gate, they must goe presently to one side, going downe to the Court which hath very great Trees for shaddow, and they goe up againe by Heps vnto the Table about faid, which is at the end of the Court, which is very great. In the end of this Table in all his length there is a step, and within the step a very great walke, all paued with square stones as the Table without it, and very high and all wrought with Mafons worke : in the middest of it leaning to the wall of the front are two Chaires, with two Tables before them, a little distant the one from the other, one of them, which stands on the 60 left hand, serueth for the Gouernour of that house, and that of the right hand is void, for if there should come another of a higher dignitie then hee, to sit him downe. To every one of the sides there are two spaces which runne behind this Gouernour, and are of a good breadth, having placed along the ides of these two spaces in energy one fine Chaires with fine Tables before them, and as the distance from them to the principall Governour is good, they remayne though behind,

in light of the principal! Gouernour. Their feree for ten Affiltanes which are with the principal pall at the dispatching of waightie matters. From these Galleries inward are great hodgings. as well for the Gouernour of the House, as for the Assistants, and for all the other Ministers and Officers of the House, which are many, as we will thew in their place.

On every fide of the Court are very great Prisons and great Longings, as well for the lay. lours (which alio are of great authoritie) as for the Watches that watch by night and by day, but neither their Prilons nor the Chambers of the Ministers of thein, nor the Lodgines of the chiefe of the House are seene outward, for they are served of all things, the doores that and bank continually their Porters. There are in Comen toure of these Houses for foure principall Officers, and in euery Pronince in the Citie, that is, the Head of the Pronince there are size of there on Houses an Cantum there are but foure; for as the Governour of Cantan is also Governour of Cant he is not refident in Cantan, but in a Citie that is in the Borders of one of the Prouinces, that the recourse in the Affaires of both the Prouisces may be the easier. Besides, these principall Houles of the chiefe Gonernours, there are many other in Cantan, the which though they bee not of fo great Maieflie as they, they are not withfranding very great, of other inferiour Officers, and chiefly those of the chiefe laylour which are very great. There is on the wals of Cantan, on the contrary fide of the River a high Towre all close behind, that they which are in it may not bee feene, nor gazed on from the Hillocke or Mountaforefaid, that was without the wals, and it is built in length along the wall, to that it is longer then broad, and it is all made in Galleries very fumptuous, from whence they discouer all the Cicie, and the Marshes and Fields beyond the to Riner, which serueth for the recreation of them that rule. In the other Cities are fuch buildings which lenue for recreation, many and very fumptuous, and of fingular building.

The Houses of the common people in the outward flow, are not commonly very faire, but Primatehouser, within are much to be admired, for commonly they are white as Milke, that they feeme like fleeked Paper, they are paued with square stones : along the ground; of a spanne little more or leffe, they are dyed with Vermilion, or almost blacke; the Timber is all very smooth and even and finely wrought and placed, that it feemeth to be all polished, or dyed, or in white, and fome there is in white to faire and pleasant to the fight, wanted Damaske-like, as it were Gold, and so bright that they should doe it injurie in painting it. I confesse, in truth, that I never faw fo fine Timber as that. It hathafter the House that is at the entrie , a Court with folices of finall po Trees; and Bowers with a faire little Fountayne : and then at the entring of the Foule where the women doe with-draw themselves, it hath a certaine manner of a Gallery open before towards the Court, where they have verie great Cubbeards finely wrought; which takes the one fquare of the House, in the which they have their Oratories, and Gods made of Wood, or of Clay: these Oratories are more or lesse curious according to the abilitie of euerie one : all the Houses are tiled with very good Tiles, better, and of more continuance then ours : for besides, they being well made, they are of verie good Clay: those which receive the water are broad and short, and the uppermost that close, the other are narrower, and at the ends toward the street fide, they are garnished with fine Workes made of Lime : for many yeares they have no need to be tiled againe, for as the Clay is very good, they are not fo mouldring as ours, or fo rough, but 40 they are very smooth and warme, and beging so well set they breed no sithinesse. There bee many Houses faire within, and very few with Lofts, the most are low Houses.

Temple and

Victuals,

Suburbes.

Pinacleon the top. The Suburbes without are very great and of many Houses, in such fort that fome Portugals would have compared them in bigneffe with them of Lifton , but to mee and to others they feemed leffe, though they bee bigger and of more Houses then the Citie within the wals. It is very populous, and the people is so much, that at the entring of the gates on the Riuer fide yee can scarce get through. Commonly the people that goeth out and in , doe cry and make a great noyfe to give place to them that carrie burthens. And the Rulers of the Citie com- 50 manding to enquire what victuals were spent enery day, it was found to spend only fine or sixe thouland Porkes, and ten or eleven thouland Duckes; besides which, they eate great store of Beeues and Buffes, and many Hens, and an infinite deale of fish, whereof the Markets and streets are full, and many Frogs and Shel-hift, great store of Fruits and all other Pulse. Hereby little more or leffe may be seene what people are in Caman, and whether it may bee compared with The Houses of the Suburbes are like those of the wals within; the streetes are so well and le-

They have in the middest of the Citie a Temple of Idols with high Towres, the wals of the

which we will speake of hereafter : they have their Melquit with Alegran very high with his

uelled by Line as those within, and all for the most part paued also, and some of them are verie broad, and haue triumphant Arches, but very few. Some freets, as well without as within the wals, on the one fide and the other along the Houses, have Trees for to make sha lowes, In all the ftreets of the Suburbs at the ends of them are gates with special Porters, whose Office is to 69 locke them every night under paine of fore punishment, and every street hath a Constable and a Tayle. He stands bound, either to yeeld the Malefactor which by night doth any harme in the ffreet, are to pay for it; wherefore all the ffreets have every night a watch, the Neighbours diunding themselves in quarters : and they make every night fixe quarters or watches, and for a Watches, figne that they are awake, in enery fireet they found a Drumme, where they have all the night a Lanthorne with a light. The gates of the Citie are thut as foone as it is night, and on the two leaues is fet a paper, with the chiefe Captaines marke on every one of them, and they are opened with the Sunne, with a token from the fane Captaine to them all, with his marke written Here followed on a white boord. Euery gate hath a Captaine, a very honelt man, and euery one hath certaine much of other

Souldiers, which continually doe watch every one of the Gates by day and by night. In some Cities the water runneth almost thorow every street, and on the one side and the cause the Au-

In fome Ciries the water runneth almost thorow every street, and on the one one not and the other of the freet are Tables made of flone, for the common fertice of the people; and the other of the freet are Tables made of some of the people of the other of the people of the other of the people of the other of the people of To row all the fireets are very good and well wrought Bridges to passe from one side to another: not, but received his intelliand thorow the middest of the streets is great trafficke by water that goe from one place to an gence from Pen other. In those places whereby the water entreth into the Citie, they have made in the walls reta, I referre very good gates, which have very firong Iron grates for to flut by night : and the most of the youtohim, very good gates, which have very mrong from grates for to make by might a find the robust freets to the land inward are very well pused with frone, and (where is no flone) with small Other course freets to the land inward are very well pused with stone, and (where is no flone) with small Other course tyle. In all the Mountaines and Hills where there are wayes, they are very well made, cut with High wayes, the Pick-axe, and paued where they are needfull. This is one of the good works of China, and it is very generall in every place of it. Many Hills on the fide of the Bramas, and of the Lass, are cut in steps, very well made; and in the height of the Hill is made a low place, very well cut; in the which is a very high Towre, which about doth equall with the highest of the Mountain. 20 which is very ftrong, the wall of one of the Towres was measured at the entring of the gates.

and it was fixe fathome thicke and an halfe. There are on this fide many of these workes, and so there may be in other places. I heard of a Gentleman of credit, called Galiste Perera, Bro. Galiste Perera ther to the chiefe Iustice of Arrayolos, which abode in Canfi, being Captine, that ( with the houses of these kinsmen of the King, being so many and so great) the Citie was so bigge that hoofes of thefe kinimen of the Airg, poing to many a very little show in it: and so he had it it seemed they occupied very little of it, and make a very little show in it: and so he had it it seemed they occupied very little of it, and make a very little show in it: and so he had it

written in a Rudder of his, whence I tooke a great deale \* of that which is heere spoken of : written in a Rudder of his, whence I tooke a great usaic or that which is necre ipowen in the free that the greatnesse of the Citie did hide in it selfe the multitude and greatnesse of the countries.

As in the Countrey there is great flore of Timber and very cheape, and much Iron and cheap,

30 and it is very good, there are infinite number of thips and thippings; for through the Country Store of thips are infinite Groues of Firre trees, and other trees, whereby it is easie for any one though of a ping. little fubitance, to make a ship and have shippings, and this causeth the great profit and gayne that is of them with the necessitie the Countrey hath of them : for it hath not onely a great number of Ilands along ft the coait, but also a very great coast where they Nauigate: and besides this, all China wi hin is natigated, and runne through Riters which doe cut and water it all. which are many and very great. So that yee may fay le to the ends of the Land, and goe in thippings. Any Capraine along the coast may in a little spice scyne two hundred, three hundred, even to a thousand ships, if hee stand in need for to fight. And there is no small Townealong the River that is not plentifull in small and great ships. Along the Citie of Cantan, more then

40 halie a league off the River, is so great a multitule of shipping, that it is a wonderfull thing to fee them, and that which is most to wonder, is that, that this multitude neuer decreaseth nor fayleth almost all the yeere: for if thirty, forty, or an hundred goe forth oneday, as many doe come in againe the next: Ifay, the multitude never to diminish nor fayle, for though sometime there be more, some lesse, alwaies there remaynesh a maruellous multitude; and that which is more, all those that goe forth, goe laden; and all that come in, come laden; carrying goods. and bringing goods: and that which sheweth much the noblenesse of the Country, the plentie and riches thereof is, that all there ships bringing great store of merchandise of Clothes, Silkes, prouisions and other goods, some doe goe into the Land, others come from within the Land, and nothing commeth form without China, neither goeth out of it : and that which the Por- Riches of Chi-

50 tugals doe carrie, and some that they of Syam doe carrie, is so little in comparison of the great na natiche. trafficke of the Countrey, that it almost remayneth as nothing, and unperceived; feeing that out of China there goeth no more but that which the Portugals, and they of Syam doe carrie; which is as much as though they brought nothing out or China, fine or fixe thips comming laden with Silke and Porcelane: the great plentie and riches of the Countrey doth this, that it can furtayne it selfe alone: Pepper and luone which is the principall that the Portugals doe carrie, a man may well line without it, and the trafficke of merchandife that is in this Countrie, is in all the Cities within the Land, which as we have faid, are almost all built along the Rivers. The Chinas have a common speech for to shew the noblenesse of their Kingdome, that the King Prouers, of China can make a Bridge of ships from China vnto Malaca, which are neere fine hundred

60 leagues, the which though it feemeth it cannot be, yet by Metaphor it fignifieth the greatnette or China, and the multitude of flips that of it felte it can make.

The great ships they call lunks; besides which there are ships for warre, made like great ships, lunkes for war to the which they make great Fore-catiles and high, and likewife abafte, to fight from them:
Ship-fights, insuch manner that they ourt-matter their adversaries, and because they vie no Ordnance, all NoOrdnance.

They vie

the first on-let they cast a great deale of Lime to blinde the aductaries, and as well from the Cattles as from the tops they cast many sharpe pikes burned at the end, which serue for Top. darts, of a very stiffe wood; they wie also great store of stone, and the chiefest they labour for, is to breake with their ships the dead workes of their aduerfaries, that they may be masters o. uer them, having them under them, and being destitute of any thing to shelter them; and as foone as they can enter, they come to the Pike or handy-blowes, for the which they have long Pikes, and broad-pointed Swords hanging at their fides. There bee other lunkes for lading of goods, but they are not so high as those of warre, though there bee some very great. All these fhips as well of warre as of burthen vie two Oares anhead: they are very great, and foure or fine 10 men doe rowe every one of them , laying them along the ship they move them with such a fleight, that they make the ship goe forward, and they helpe very much for to goe out and in at a barre, and fetting upon the enemies for to board them : they call these Oares, Liolies: in all manner of their hippings they vie the Lioflios, neither doe they vie any other manner of Oares in any kinde of thipping. There be other leffer thippings then Linkes, fomewhat long, called Bancones, they beare three O ares on a fide, and rowe very well, and loade a great deale of goods: there be other leffe, called Lanteau, which have fixe or feuen oares on a fide, which doe rowe very Iwift, and beare a good burthen also: and these two forts of sh ps, viz. Bancones and Lantess, because they are switt, the theenes doe commonly vie. The rowing of these Oares is standing, two men at enery Oare, enery one of his fide, fetting one foot forward, another backward. In 20 the lunkes goe foure, fiue, or fixe men at an Oare.

A kinde of Gailies.

They vie also certaine shippings very long , like vnto Gallies, without Oares or beake-head, which doe lade great flore of goods : and they make them fo long , because lading bringing a great burden they may tayle the better by the Rivers, which fometimes are not rough. They have many other shippings of burther, which is superfluous to tell of every one. There be many imall boats of poore people, in which are husband and wife, and children, and they have no other dwelling but in their boat in a middle decke, for defence of the Sunne, and of the raine: as also have the Bancones, and Lanteas, and others which wee faid were like Gallies, and these deckes are in such fort, that under them are very good lodgings and chambers in the great thips, in these of the poore, they are much inferiour : there they breed their Pigs, their Hennes, a and there they have also their poore little Garden, and there they have all their poore state and harbouring. The men goe to seeke worke about the Citie to helpe to maintayne their little house; the women goe in the boats, and with a long cane that reacheth well to the bottome of the River (at the end of the which is a little basket made of rods, wherewith they get shellfi.h) with their industrie, and passing of people from one side to another, they helpe to sustaine their houshold. These poore people notwithstanding doe not line so poorely and beggarly in their apparell, as those which live poorely in Portugall. There are other great shippings, wherein is the stocke of them both , which have great lodgings where they may bestow a great deale of stuffe : these have a great stocke; they have certaine Cages made all the length of the thip with canes, in which they keepe two or three thouland Duckes, more or leffe as the veffell at is: fome of these belong to Lordships, and their scruants goe in them: they feed these Duckes.

" The husthe wines buf-WI.CIT.

they have given it them, they open a doore to the River where is a Bridge made of canes, and the note they make at their going forth is wonderfull to fee them goe tumbling one over another, for the great abundance or them, and the time they take in going out; they feed all the Duck weeders day vntill night among the fields of Rice, those which are owners of the shipping doe receive a fee of them that owe the fields, for letting them feed in them, for they doe cleanfe them, eating the graffe that groweth among them. When night commeth they call with a little Taber; and though they be in fundry Barkes, every one knowes their owne by the found of the Ta- 50 ber, and goe vnto it; and because alwaies in time some remayne without that come not in, there are euery where many flockes of wilde Duckes, and likewife of Geefe. When I faw fuch 2 multitude of Duckes in every one of these Barkes, and all of one bignesse, and thinking they could not be hatched by Duckes or Hens, for if it were fo, fome would have beene bigger then some, seeing so many could not be hatched in one, two, or fifteene dayes, I was willing to know how they hatched them; and they told mee, it was in one of two forts. In Summer, laying two or three thousand Egs in the dung, and with the heate of the weather and the dung, the Egsare hatched. In the Winter, they make a Hurdle of canes very great, upon the which they lay this great number of Egges, under the which they make a flacke fire, continuing it of one fort a few dayes till the Egges be hatched. And because they are hatched in this fort, there are so many of one bignesse, and all along the River are many of these Barkes, whereby the Countries are well prouided of this food.

After it is broad day, they give them a little fodden Rice not till they have enough, when

Sie an exam-

ple in l'antoia, o this mag. There are some ships wherein the Rulers doe sayle, which have very high lodgings, and within houses very well made, gilt, rich, and very sumptuous: and on the one side, and the other

they have great windowes with their Nets woven of Silke, and very fine small rods set before them, that they within feeing all them without, may not bee feene of them. Toward the fide of the Lass and the Bramaes, are continually watches and wards in the Rivers in many thips, euen a whole moneths lourney in length vnto the Citie of Canfi: these ships are in the places Ships for where the Rivers make any armes, because of the many theeues which commonly are in these guard. parts, being the vttermost of the Kingdome: and because the Rivers have many armes, many ships are placed in those parts: in every place where these shippings are, there bee two small fir ps, which continually doe goe night and day from one watch to another, because they are vety iwift, and those of the great ships doe divide themselves into watches at their quarters. for to watch as well in the small as in the great ones. The ships of passage goe alwaies a great num- Fleets

ber together, that they may defend themselves, one another, while the ships of warre, and the watches do come to them, and at the watch where they make night, there they flay til the morning, and by the small boats they are delivered safe to the next watch forward, and so from watch to watch they are accompanied of the small vessels till they bee set in safetie. From the Citie of Donebeo, that is, where the Gouernour of Confi and Cantan is refident, vnto the bounds of the Province of Canfi, which are places more dangerous, are continually Armadas of fortie or fiftie hips. All these watches are paid of the common Rents of the Kingdome.

China is almost all a well husbanded Countrey : for as the Countrey is well inhabited, and Industry couse people in abundance, and the men ipenders, and ving themselves very deliciously in eating and of plentie, 20 drinking, and apparell, and in the other feruices of their houses, especially that they are great eaters, every one laboureth to get a living, and every one feeketh wayes to earne their food, and how to maintayne their great expences. A great helpe to this is the idle people to bee much Idleneffe haabhorred in this Countrey, and are very odious vinto the reft, and that laboureth not shall not ted. eate, for commonly there is none that doe give almos to the Poore; wherefore, if any poore did aske almes of a Portugal and he did give it him, the Chinas did laugh at them, and in mockage Almes dense faid: why ginest thou almes to thi, which is a Knaue, let him goe and earne it : onkly some le- ded. iters have fome reward, going to fome high placegather the people, and telleth them fome fables to get fomething. The Fathers and Priests of their Idols are commonly abhorred and not effecmed, because they hold them for idle people, and the Rulers for any light fault doe not spare

ac them, but giue them many stripes. Wherefore, a Ruler whipping once before a Portugal a Priest Idle Hollof theirs; and he asking him wherefore he did vie their Priests so ill, and held them in so little Priests punish effeeme, antwered him; these are idle and wretched Knaues. One day, I and certayne Portugals ed with vinus entring into the house of the Quer-seer of the goods, about the deliuerie of certayne Portagals infisce of prothat were in prilon , because the matter belonged to him, for the great profit that came thereof lers, which that were in priton, because the matter beausges to man, to the guarantees a Prieft; almost to the King, much per pole came in with vs to fee vs, among the which there was a Prieft; almost the King, much per pole came in with vs to fee vs, among the which there was a Prieft; and would part found and would part and worft part and worft

Every one laboureth to Seeke a living; for that which hee earneth hee enjoyeth freely, and and a God of fpends it as he will, and that which is left him at his death remaynes to his children and grand their goods. 40 children, paying onely duries Royall, as well of the fruits that they gather, as of the goods they deale in, which are not heavie. The greatest Tribute they have, is every married man, or that hath house by himf-ife, payeth for every person in his house two Mazes, which are fixtie Reys. that is ad, From Champaa, which as we aid, doth confine with Canchinebina vnto India, are many vnpro. Tyrannie fitable grounds, and made Wilderneffes and Woods, and the men are generally little curious to growes poore get or gather togeth r, for they neuer gayne or get fo much but it is tyrannized from them, that grownich which they have is onely theirs as long as the King lifteth, and no more. In fuch fort that as soone as the King knoweth that any of their officers hath much money, hee commandeth him to beeput in prifon, and they vie him fo hardly, that they make him cast all that hee hath gotten: wherefore there are many in those parts, that if they get any thing or money one day or one 50 weeke, they will not lab our till they confirme all that they have earned in eating and drinking, and they doe it because if any tyrannie should chance to come, they may finde nothing to take

from them. From hence it commeth, as I say, that they have in India many grounds in divers places vnprofitable; which is not fo in China, for every one enjoyeth the fruits of his labour. Hence it commeth that all the ground that in China can yeeld any kinde of fruit receiving bandrie, feede, is husbanded. The high places which are not to good for Corne, have very faire Grones of Pine Trees, fowing also betweene them some Pulse where it may be : in the drie Lands and stiffe they fow Wheate and Pulle: in the Marthes which are ouetflowed, which are many and very long, they fow Rice : and some of these Marshes doe yeeld two or three Crops a yeere. Onely the Mountaynes that are high and beaten with the weather, and are not fit to plant any thing, 60 remayne ynprofitable. There is not ing loft in the Countrey bee it neuer fo v.le: for the bones,

as well of Dogs as of other Beafts, they doe vie, making toyes, and with workes in flead of Iu >- Nothing left. rie, they fet them in Tables, Beds, and other faire things : they lofe not a Ragge of any qualitie, for as well of the fine as of the course, that are not of Wool, they make fine and course Paper, Paperofduers and they make Paper of barkes of Trees, and of Canes, and of faken Ragges, and in the Paper matters.

Artificiall

made of filke they write: the rest serueth for to roll betweene the pieces of filke: even the dung or men yeelds profit, and is bought for mony or in change of herbs, and they carry it from the houses : in fort that they give money or money worth, to fuffer them to cleanle their houses of office , though it imelleth enill through the Citie : when they carry it on their backs , they carry it in Tubs very cleane without, and although they goe uncourted, not wit aftanding it shew. eth the cleanlinesse of the Countrey and Cities. In some Cities these Tubs vie to goe courted

They wie in all things more flight then force, whereby they plow with one Oxe, making the Plough in fuch fashion that it cutteth well the Earth, though the furrowes are not so biggess among vs. A thip be it neuer to bigge, and haue it neuer to great a leake, the Pomps are made by to fuch a light, that one man alone fitting mouing his feet as one that goeth vp a paire of flayres, in a very little space he pomps it out : these pomps are of many pieces as a water wheele, laid a long the fide of the ship betweene rib and rib, every piece having a piece of wood of halfe a yard little more or leffe, one quarter well wrought : in the middeft of this piece of wood is a fquare little boord, almost of a hand breadth, and they joyne one piece into another in such manner as it may double well, the joynes which are all very close, whereby this manner of pompe doth run, is within of the breadth of the little boardes of enery one of the pieces, for they are all equall; and this manner of pompe bringeth io much water as may contayne betweene the two little Pupper player. boardes. The Chinas vie also Puppers, with the which they make representations. They bring vp Nighting ales in Cages which fing all the yeere, and are vied to Puppet representa- 20 tions alto.

It is a thing worth the noting, that the blinde have a labour appointed them for to get their imporent per- food, which is to ferue in a Horie-Mill like Horfes grinding Corne : and commonly where is a fons. Secof horse-mill there are two, because two going together, they may recreate themselves in talking one with another, as I faw them going about with Fannes in their hands cooling themselves, and talking very friendly. The blinde Women are the common Women, and they have Nurces that doe dresse them and paint them with Vermillion and Ceruse, and receive the wages of their euill vie. The lame and the creeple which either haue no kindred within a certayne degree, or if they have them and they doe not provide for them that which is necessarie, or are not able to belpe them, they make their Petition to the Ouer-feer of the goods of the King, and his kindred 10 being examined by his Officers, if among them are any that can maintayne them, they doe binde the neerest to take them to them to their charge and maintayne them, and if their kindred bee not able to maintayne them, or if they have no kindred in the Countrey, the Over-feer of the goods commandeth they be received into the Kings Hospitall: for the King hath in all the Cities great Hospitals which have many lodgings within a great inclosure. And the Officen of the Hospitall are bound to administer to those that are bedred all things necessarie, for the which there are fufficient Rents appointed out of the Kings Exchequor. The lame that keepe not their bed, have every moneth a certayne quantitie of Rice, with the which, and with some Hens or a Pigge, which they bring up in the Hospitall, they have fufficient to maintayne themselves, and al thefe things are very well paid without faile: and because commonly those which are recei-40 ued into these Hospitals are incurable, they receive them for life : and all those which are receiued by commandement of the Quer-feer, are enrolled, and enery yeere the Officers of the Hospitall doe yeeld account of the expenses, and of the promision of the poorelicke, and if any fault or negligence bee found in them of that which they are bound to doe, without remission they are well punished for it,

### ð. III.

Of their mechanicall Trades, Merchandises and Moneyes: their provisions of Flesh and Fish; the persons and attyre of Men and Women: their Feasts.

Shoomakers.

Here are in this Countrey many workmen of all Trades, and great abundance of all things necessarie for the common vie, and so it is requirite, for the people is infinite. And because shopes are the thing that most is spent, there are more workmen of Shoo-makers then of any other Trade. In Cantan are two particular freets of Shoo-makers then of any other Trade. makers very long, one where they fell rich shooes, and of tilke, another where they fell common shooes of leather : and besides these two streets, there are many workmen scattered about 60 the Citie. The rich Bootes and Shooes, are courred with coloured tilke, embroydered ouer with twist, of very fine workes, and there be Bootes from ten Crownes, to one Crowne price, and shooes of two Crownes and thence downward, and in some places are shooes of three pence. So that the rich and the very poore may weare shooes : and the rich as they list; the shooes of

three mence, or of a Riell , are of straw, and I fay of three pence, for there is money that antwersthour three peace. There bee many dich husband men , that let men by the wayes with many pichele Grawen hoses for chargoone Francilles fand ic is no wonder to hatte this charitie Almes not among shelp infidule ) for in the parts of the India are many rich Clenerit which light very great almos the fruit houses, wheteen they spend continually matchildie, giving foode to all the poste of what quanciof mercy. notice, wherein never means to the many constitution from the profession of the poor of what quaticie locars, since will come thinder tooking can't by the tweyer they have ment for the give a continually many Cappeners, and very good working to all manner of works. They have continually many Constants of their years they have continually many Constants of their years they have variabled with a very fame tannith, or him painted, or her byned with feether, and likewife of other forts. They to have concusually a great number of Charges made, forme of very fairle white wood, and other fairely gilt and filumred, very finely wrong it.

They have also Chaires scherein the Rolers are carried on mens backs through the Citic, Chaires which are very rich, of a great price and wary faire : they have another manner of Chaires, which are high, very rich and pleafant all close; with a little window on tablifide very faire with a net made of luorie, or of Bone, or of Wood, through the Which they that goe within doe fee on the one fide, and on the other of the street without bring feene; thefe ferue for to carry the Women about the Citie when they goe abroad. The feare is of the height of one of our Chaires. where they goe fitting with their legent dongth. There he many of there Chaires very rich, and of a great price ; and there are fome plante, and have Pithelies on the sope very faire : there are also 20 many bed-steads very pleasant and very rich, all close found about, of wood firely wrought.

I being in Cantan there was a rich one made wtought with hoose, and of a fweet wood. which they call Cayolague, and of Sandalam, that was prized at four hundred Crownes, and of little Boxes gilt, and Mundes, and Burkers, Daste, and Tables, all as well gift as with Silier is without mumber: Gold-fmithe, Silver-fmitises, Copper-finithe, Iron-lmithe, and of all other Trades there he many and perfect Workmen, and great abundance of things of every Trade, and very perfect. They vie inhnite Veffels of Latten: and from China they furnish all lade and Siene, with these Vessels, which in Industry sall Enterprise; and they are in every kind very petreet. They we Skillers, and Chasing-diffues, and other Vessels of east Iron, and not only they doe cast their Veilels of Iron, but after they are broken they bey them against for to re-call them. There 30 are many Merchants of precessand Clothes of Salke, because they spend many in the large Countrie, and in Siam, and there are pieces of Damaske and Taffata among themselves for rich , that they bring them not to ve because they give them not for them what they are worth within the Land : they fell alfo great flore of fine and comfe Berge of fundry cofours. There are many Silker Merchants of white and dyed Linnen cloth, for it is that which is most pent in the Countrie.

They gave men piece of Linner cloth of about ten cubits, which was valued at tenne Crownes, there is both fine and coutfe as every one will have it.

And howfoener the Porcelane which is vied in all the Countrie of Coms, and in all India is Porcelane, of common Clay; notwithflanding, there is very much courte Porcelane, and other very fine, and there is some that is lawfull to be fold commonly, for the Rulers onely vie it because it is red and 40 greene, and gilt, and yellow : tome of this is fold but very intic, and that fecretly. And because there are many opinions among the Portugals which liate not been in China, about where this Porcelane is made, and touching the substance whereof it is made, some faying, that of Oysters finels, others of dung rotten of a long time, because they were not enformed of the truth, I thought it convenient to tell here the lubflance whereof it is made, according to the trufh of Fables of it. them that faw it. The substance of the Porcelane is a white and foft Rone, and some is fedde, which is not fo fine, or in better speaking, it is a hard tlay, the which after well heating and grinding it and laying in Cifternes of water (which they have very well made of free-flone and Howitismade some playstered, and they are very cleane) and after it is stirred in the water, of the Creame that remayneth on the top they make the very fine Porcelane : and so the lower the couffer, and

50 of the dregothey make the coursest and base, which the poore people of China doe fie. They make them first as the potters doe any other vessell; after they are made, they drie them in the Sunne, and then paint them as they lift with Azure, which is fo fine as we fee : after these Pi-Stures are drie, they lay on the Glaffe, and then harden them. The principall ftreets of the Merchants, are the most principall ftreets, which have coverts

on the one fide and on the other : notwithflanding, the chiefest sale of the Porcelane is in the Gates of the Cities, and enery Merchant hath at his doore written in a Table all that is fold Merchants within his shop: those which fell simples for medicines, have at their doores tyed and hang. Tables, incline a piece of strategies. There are of the agent of Polecke has it; Rhubarbe, ing in a firing, a piece of every thing. There is in China great flore of Ruberbe, but it is not Kings Cubrought to Cantan, but fodden, there is none found raw. As the goods of China are very great from the 6c and many, fo the rents which the King of China hath in every part of his Kingdome are very 1 Or Quarters.

great. Some China Merchanes did affirme that Cantan did yeeld enery yeere to the King three y Whi has thousand Picos of Silver, and every three Picos make one Baar, every Baar hath foure Kintals, euery Kintall hath foure \* Arrobas : fo that one Baar is fixteene Quarters, and three thousand weight of Su-Picos, making one thousand Baars, by consequence, one thousand Baars make 7 lixteene thouser,

Which is 40000. pound weight of Sile

fand Quarters; and weefpeake of weight, for in Chinais no money of Gold or Silver, but one. ly of Braile, the Gold and Silver goeth by weight. But the feas they are popular people, though occupied in the trafficke of the Countrie, it fremes they know not well the truth of this, and that the fumme is greater which is collected of the sems Royall, for the Countrie is very great, and the merchandite many and very substantiall. I was informed by meaner of the Rulers, which is a more certaine information, because the rents doe pase thorow their hands , that ithe rent of the Salt in Cantan did yeeld alone to the King 300. Pagos of Silver, which doe make 100; Barr. which are 400. Kintals, that are 1600. " quarters of Silver.

Every one bath a paire of scales and weights in his house, which all are exceedingly perfect. The weights that they commonly hane, are from peri trownes to one, and from ten Tan to gas to one, one Tanga is nine pence. By the name of their Countrie 1 the leffer great weight is of one Tael, one Tael is fixe Mazes, one Maez is the Ametiat a Tanget of the small weights. the smallest is one Conderin, ten Conderins make one Tanga, or one Macz: one Conderin hath ten Caxos; and because the common that goeth in stead of money in Silver by weight, every one hath weights of his owne, as aboutfaid; for one laboureth by allthe meanes hee can to de ceine the other, none doe truft the scales and weights of the other, and every one that goeth to buy in the Market, carrieth a weight and balance, and broken Silver, and the balance is a little beame of luorie with a weight hanging at the one end with a ftring yand on the other end a Little scale, and the string of the weight runners along by the beames, which hath his market from one Conderin to ten, or of one Maez unto ten. I hele scales serue for to buy by retale, for a to buy by grolle they have perfect scales very curious and line, wich very perfect weights. They carrie the Silver commonly full of mixture, and because they encrease it with the mixture, from hence it commeth that he which will make good markets in the Countrie of China, and that it may be cheape, carrieth Silver rather then goods, for by the encrease which the Chinas make of the Siluer with the mixture, they give the merchandife good and cheape for the Siluer. The Merchants are commonly falle and lyars. There is great abundance of Rice in all the Countrie, for there are many marifhes, which

yeeld two or three crops enery yeere. There is also much and very good Wheat, whereof they

make very good Bread, which they learned to make of the Portugal; their vie before were

of Beofe, and Buffes fleth, which is like Beefe : there are many Hens, Geefe, and innumerable

Duckes; there are infinite Swine, which is the fielh they moit louk : they make of the Hogs

many fingular flitches, whereof the Portugals carrie an infinite number to the India, when they

goe thither by way of trafficke. The Chinas doe esteeme the Porke fo much, that they give it

to the ficke. They care Frogs also, which are fold in great Tube full of water at the gates, and

they that fell them are bound to flay them. All floth is fold by weight alive, except Beefe, and

exceeding much, and all very good, and it neuer wanteth in the markets: there be many Crabs,

and Outers, and other shell-hish, and all is very good: and of all these things the markets are

full. The Markets are commonly at the gates of the Cities, and under the triumphant Arches

which are in the large and principall fireets, as we faid before, and along the Portals of the fame

ftreets : but not to fell here flesh or fish, for there be particular ftreets , excepting quicke flesh,

Cakes of the same Wheat. There be many French Beanes, and other Pulse : there is great store w

Very Merchants. Viduals.

Frogs.

Buffes fielh, and Porke, which commonly is fold by the pound, except if they doe buy it whole, for then they are to weigh it whole : and that it may weigh the more, they fill it first with meat and drinke: the Hens to make them weigh the more sthey fill them likewife with water, and their crops full of fand and other things. The pound of the Hen, Goofe, Ducke, and Frogs, is 4 all at one price; the Porke, Beefe, and Buffes fielh is worth leffe, and all at one price. The fifth is

which is fold every where.

Markets.

Herbs.

Lechias.

houses.

Victualling

There are many Garden-herbes, fc. Turneps, Radish, Cabage, and all smelling Herbs, Garleeke, Onions, and other herbes in great abundance. There are also many fruits, fell, Peaches, Damsons, and another manner of Plummes which wee have not, with long, round, and sharpe 50 stones at both ends, and of these they make Prunes: There are many Nuts, and very good, and many Chefnuts both small and great. There is a kinde of Apples that in the colour and rinde are like gray Peares, but in smell and taste better then they. There is a fruit whereof there are many Orchards, it groweth on great and large boughed trees, it is a fruit as bigge as a Plumme round and a little bigger, they cast the huske, and it is very fingular and rare fruit, none can have his fill of it, for alwaies it leaueth a defire of more, though they eate neuer fo much, and doth no hurt. Of this fruit there is another kinde smaller , but the biggest is the best , they are called Lechias. There are Oranges, Figs, and many other fruits, which were to long to recite. And though there be particular streets of Victualling houses, yet there is through all the Citie almest in every freet of these houses. In these Victualling houses is great store of meate dressed. Ma- 60 ny Geele, Hennes, and Duckes roafted and fod, and store of other flesh and fish dreffed : I saw at one doore hanging, a whole Hog roafted, and let one aske where he will, for all is very cleanly dreffed : the showe of all the meate that is dreffed is at the doore, almost inciting them that

passe. At the doore is a vessell full of Rice, well coloured and drested, and because the matters

of Inflice are commonly almost from ten of the clocke forward, and many haue their houses farre because the Citie is very great, or because they which come from out of Towne with busineffe, as well Inhabitants as Strangers doe eate in thefe houses. When any man meeteth any acquaintance of his that commeth from abroad, or that he hath not feene him a long time, faluting one another, he asketh him presently if he hath dined, and if he answereth no, he carrieth him to one of these houses, and there they eate and drinke privily, for there is great store of Wine, and better then in any place of India, which they make of confections: if he answereth that he hath dined alreadie, he carrieth him where they have onely Wine and Shell-fish, wherewith they drinke, of which houses there are also many, and there he doth feaff him.

10 There is also in Cantan along the wall on the outside, a street of Victualing houses, in the which they fell Dogs cut in quarters, roafted, boiled, and raw, with the heads pulled, and their Dogs fleth. eares; for they scald them all like Pigs, it is a meate which the base people doe eate, and they fell them aline about the Citie in Cages: through every street they fell fleth, fish, herbes, fruit, and all things necessarie, crying that which they fell. In the end of Februarie, in March, and parc of Aprill, when the great flowings are , there commeth great flore of fish from the Sea to ipawne, in the mouthes of the Rivers along the Sea, whereby there breedeth infinite small fish of many forts in the pooles of the Rivers. Of thefe spawnes in these times all the Fishers along the Sea coast doe meet in their boats, and there meet so many that they couer the Sea, and lie neere the pooles. And thefe Fishers doe take great quantitie of this small fish, and cast it in Ci-20 Hernes which they have made with stakes, and a very thicke Net made of wyer, where they doe

feed them, to the end of the fifting time : and at this time there are wont to come a great number of Barkes from all places of China within the Land (for I faidalreadie that all China is failed by Rivers, for it is all cut and watered with great Rivers) and these Barkes doe bring a great many baskets within and without, which are all lined with oyled paper, that it may hold water, and enery one of these Barkes doe buy the fish they have need of. Then they carrie this fish in these baskets through all the Countrie inward, changing every day the water, and all men of any possibilitie, within their grounds and inclosures have great store of fish in ponds, for the which they buy the baskets they have need, they feed this fifth in the ponds in a very thore time with Cow dung and Bulles dung, wherewith it groweth very fast. In all the ditches of the Ci-30 ties likewise they breed great flore of fish in the same fort, of which the Rulers are serued. In

all the Cities which I faid alreadie, are built along the Rivers. The King hath many Sea Crowes in Coopes, in which they breed , with the which they make Royall affinings many times : all the Barkes that are bound to goe a fifting with these Cormorants, doe meet and serround in the Fifting with Riner, those that have charge of the birds, doe tye them about the crops, that they cannot swal- Gormorants, low them, and they cast them to hish in the River. They fish till they fill their crops of middle fish, and if it be great, they bring it in the beake, and come to the Barke, where they cast all the fish they have fished, forcing them to cast it : and in this manner they fish the quantitie they will. till they have to their contentment: after they have fished for the Barke they vntye them, and let them goe fish for themselues : after they be full, they come to the Boats, and are put in the 40 Coops: these birds doe fish very much. The King doth give for a favour to the Rulers one or

two of these Barkes, according as the person is of qualitie for the maintayning of his house Though that the Chinas commonly are ill-fauoured, having their faces and notes flat, and are Their persons.

beardlesse, with some sew haires in the points of the chinne: some notwithstanding there are which have very good faces, and well proportioned, with great eyes, their beards well fet, and their nofes well shapen; but these are few, and it may be they are of other Nations. They weare long Coats commonly with plaites after our good ancient vie: with a flappe ouer the break to The Attire of tye on the fide, and all in generall have very long fleeues to their coats, they weare commonly the men. blacke Coats of Linnen, or of very fine Serge or course of divers colours, some weare them of Silk, many doe vie them on the Feast dayes of Silke : the Rulers weare commonly fine Serge, and on

50 their Feafts they vie very fine Silkes, chiefly crimfon, which none in the Countrie may weare but they : the poore people weare commonly Coats of white Linnen, because it costs but little : on their head they weare a high Cap made of very fine twigs, and it is round interwouen with blacke Silke, and very well made, they vie their Stockins whole footed, which are very well made and stiched, and they weare Boots or Shooes, as the curiofitie or abilitie of every one is, either of Silke or of Leather : in Winter they weare Stockins of Felt, either fine or course, but the cloth is made of Felt : they vse also in Winter their garments lined with Martines, chiefly about the necke: they vie quilted Iackets, and fome doe vie them of Felt in Winter under their Coats.

They vie long haire like women, which they weare finely combed, and they combe it many Long haire, 60 times a day, they weare it tyed on the crowne of the head, and through the knot thrust through with a long small Silver pin: those which are not married, to wit, the yong Bachelors doe weare for a denife a fillet or ribband dreffe very well made, their Cap remayning aboue it, that it may be feene: they have a superfittion in their haire, therefore they wears it so long, holding that

by it they shall be carried to Heauen. The common Priests doe keepe their haire, but are shauen. for they tay they neede no helpe to carrie them to Heanen. Yet among them are some Priets of the Temple of the Idols, which among the Chinas are more reverenced then the rest; these doe weare haste on the top of the head fastued with a flick, very curiously wrought like a close hand, varnished with a very fine varnish, which they call Acharan: and these Priests doe weare black coates, the other wearing a white coate.

Courtefie.

The Chinaes are very curteous men; the common curtesie is, the lest hand close, they inclose it within the right hand, and they bring them very oft to their breft, shewing they have one another inclosed in their heart; and to this motion of the hands, they joyne wordes of curtefie, though the wordes of the common fort is to fay one to another, Chifen me fen, which is to fay, Haue wee eaten or no, for all their good in this world is refolued in eating. The particular curtefies betweene men of fort which have not feene one another a long while, are the armes bowed and the fingers clasped one within another, they stoope and speake with wordes of great curtefie, every one labouring to give the hand to the other to make him rife : and the more honorable they are the longer they stand in these curtefies. The honorable and noble People doe vie also many curtefies at the Table, the one giving drinke to the other, and every one laboureth to gue the hand to the other in their drinking, for at the table there is no other service but that of drinking. If there come any Ghest newly to his triends house, or his kinsman, if the Matter of the house be not apparelled in holy day clothes, when the Ghest commeth in, he maketh no account of him nor any mention, till he commandeth to bring his festivall apparell, and after he is 20 fo apparelled hee goeth to the Ghest, and receiveth him with many complements and curtesies. For they hold it not convenient, that a new-come Ghest and of reverence bee received with common apparell, but clothed in feast-like apparell, for in this he sheweth him that his entring into his house is a feaft day to him. Whatfo uer person or persons come to any mans house of qualitie, hee hath a custome to offer

him in a fine basket one Porcelane, or as many as the persons are, with a kinde of drinke which they call Cha, which is somewhat bitter, red, and medicinall, which they are wont to make of a certayne concoction of herbes somewhat bitter : with this they welcome commonly all manner of persons that they doe respect, be they strangers or be they not; to me they offered it many times. The Chinae; are great eaters, and they vie many dainties, they eate at one table Fish and Flesh, and the base people dresse it sometime all together. The dainties which are to bee eaten at one table, are fetall together on the board, that enery one may eate where hee liketh beft, It is a cleanly and near people. The common people hath some groffe things.

Certayne noble Portugals went to shew me on a day in Cantan a banquet, which a rich Merchant made, which was worth the fight. The house where it was made, was with a loft, and very faire, with many faire windowes and casements, and all of it was a mirror : the Tables were fet in three places of the house, for every Gheft enuited a Table and a Chaire very faire and gilt, or with filter, and enery Table had before it a cloth of Damaske downe to the ground, On the Tables was neither cloth nor napkins, as well because the Tables were very fine, as because the ranges was included that they need none of these things; the fruit was set along the edges of euery Table, all fet in order, which was, rosted Chesnuts and peeled, and Nuts cracked and shaled, and fugar Canes cleane and cut in flices, and the fruit we spake of before, called Lichias, great and small, but they were dried. All the fruit was see in small heapes like Turrets very well made, croffed betweene with certayne small sticks very neat : whereby all the Tables round about with these little Turrets were very fairly adorned. Presently after the fruit, were all the feruices placed in fine Porcelan difhes, all very well drefted and neatly carued, and enery thing fet in good order, and although the dishes were set one over another, all were so finely set, in such fort that he which fate at the Table might eate what he would, without any need of flirring or remouing any of them : and prefently there were two small sticks very fine and gilt for to eate with, holding them betweene the fingers : they vie them in flead of a paire of Pincers, fo that 10 they touch nothing of that which is on the board with their hand; yea, though they eate a dish of Rice, they doe it with those sticks, without any graine of the Rice falling : and because they eate so cleanly, not touching with the hand their meate, they have no need of cloth or napkins: all comes carved and well ordered to the Table. They have also a very small Porcelan cup gilt, which holdeth a mouth full of wine, and onely for this there is a Waighter at the Table : they drinke so little that at every bit they must have the cup, and therefore it is so small. There are some Chinaes that weare very long nailes, of halfe a quarter, and a quarter long, which they keepe very cleane, and these nailes doe serue them in stead of the sticks for to eate

The Chinaes doe vie on their birth dayes to make great feasts, continuing yet in them the cu. 60 flome of the old Gentiles. In these Feasts are wont to meet all the Kinsmen and Friends, and all doe helpe him to beare the charges of the Feafts, with fending him Prefents, that when they doe celebrate their birth dayes they may pay them in the same fort and because they have these helpes , they make great expence and folemnitie. The feast lasteth all night long , for all the

Gentiles as they walke in darknesse living without the knowledge of God, so all their featts t rough all places of India and in China, are made by night. In their feaths is great abun- Night feaths dance of meate and great flore of wine, all the night they fpend in eating and drinking and mulicke playing on diners instruments. Their Praests offer their facrifices to their Gods apparelled very richly. They apparell themselues in diners forts of garments, and the Priests doe fing their fongs in a very tunable voice : among these sacrifices, playing and singing, the Tables are alwayes furnished with fundrie meates, enery one taking what hee liketh best. The Priests when they have sung as all the rest, doe make at their doore triumphant Arches very well made of Paper, and Scaffolds with divers representations of Figures and to Statues, and certayne high Trees and hanging on the broken Boughes, very well wrought and painted, many lightes; and in enery place many Lanthornes very faire and well made all

In the generall Feasts of all the Towns and People, chiefly on the first day of the yeers, all New yeers the fireets and doores are very richly drefied, and chiefly they doe indeanour and labour to deck day. the triumphall Arches, couering them with many clothes of Damaske and of other filke, with many Lanthornes. There is much playing of fundrie Instruments, and finging, and icontly with this great flore of meate of fundrie kindes, and great abundance of Wine. They vie many times representations by Actors, which doe represent very well and to the life, the A-Comedici. ctors having very good apparell and well ordered, and fitting as is requilite for the person hee 20 representeth; and they that represent a Womans part, besides the apparell that is requisite for

the part has representeth, they are painted with Stibium and Ceruse. Those which vnderflands them not what they represent, are sometimes wearied, but they that understand them doe delight very much to heare them : and one whole night, and two, and fome time three, they are continually bussed in representations one after another. While these representations doe last, there must been Table set with great store of meate and drinke. They have in these Actions two great inconveniences or blemishes, the one is, that if one be to represent two parts. and is to change his attyre, he doth it before all the Beholders: the other is, that the Reprefenter as well as hee that speaketh alone, doe speake in a very high voyce almost finging. Sometime they got to the thips to play, that the Portugals may give them money.

30 The Instruments they vie for to play on, are certayine Bandoraes like ours, though not fo Influenting well made, with their Pinnes to tune them, and shere bee some like Gitternes which are fmaller , and other like a Vialt de gamba, which are deffe : they vie alfo Dulcimeres and Rebeckes, and of a certayne kinde of Hoboyse, resembling our vie. They vie a certayne manner of Instrument that hath many wyer strings; they play on them with their nayles, which for that purpose they weare; they have a great sound and make a good harmonie: they play many Instruments together sometimes, consorted in source voyces which make a very good confonancy. It hapned one night by Moone-shine, that I and certayne Portugals litting at the doore of our lodging, a few young men passing the time came along the River, playing on diuers Inftruments; and wee being glad to heare the musck, fent for them to come neere where 40 wee were, and that wee would inuite them, they as gallant youthes came neere with the Boate and beganne to time their Instruments, in fuch fort that wee were glad to fee them fit themselues that they might make no discord; and beginning to sound, they began not altogether, but the one tarried for to enter with the other, making many distillions in the processe of

the musick', some staying, others playing : and the most times they played all together in source parts. The parts were two small Bandoraes for the Tenor, a great one for counter-Tenor, and an Instrument called Cramo followed the rest, and sometime a Rebecke, sometime a Dulcimere for a Treble. And they vsed a good policy, that wee might remayne the more defirous, they played but two straines.

It is not lawfull for any man in all the Countrey to carry any manner of weapon, no not a Armes and knife, therefore when one quarrels with another they goe to buffets and pulling by the haire: quarrels,

50 onely the Souldiers and Ministers of the Captaines of warre doe weare swords on their hangers. When any man dyeth that hath House, Kindred, and Children, after hee hath given vothe Funerall riverghost, they wash the Coarse and put on his best apparell, and his Cap on his head, and set him on a Chaire, and then commeth his Wife and kneeleth downe before him, and with many teares and lamentable wordes shee taketh her leaue of him: and after the Wife comes the Children in their order doing the like, and after the Children therest of the Kindred, and all the rest of the House, and his Friends. The ceremonies ended, they put him in a Cossin made for him of Camfiere wood, which is prefernative for dead bodies, and smelleth well, they close it and pitch it well that no smell may come out of it; they set it vpon two little formes. and cast over it a cloath to cover the Coffin downe to the ground, whereon the picture of the

60 man deceased is pictured. They make a little house before the Cossin of white raw cloath, with a Portall right against the Coarse, where a Table is set with candle-sticks and candles lighted, and fet thereon bread and all the fruits of the Countrey. And all this they doe of superflition for a ceremonie, and there they keepe the Coarse eight or fifteene dayes, in the

marrie, the Mafter giveth him a Wife, and all the Children that are borne to him remayne free,

and without any Ooligation: notwithstanding, this Seruant is bound to give his Master so much

by the yeere, hauing a house by himselfe: for when he marrieth they give him a house and he la-

boureth, either at some Trade, or by his industrie for to earne his living. And no man may fell a-

ny of these Slaues to the Portugals, having great penalties for it. The Women, as by being com-

mon, they looke for great profit of them, in no wife they will fell them, befides the running in-

to great penalties alio. And all those which commonly are fold to the Portugals are stollen,

they carry them deceived, and fecretly to the Portugals, and fo they fell them : and if they were

perceived or taken in these stealths, they would bee condemned in the vemost punishment. The

for as the Men are bound to get a living for himfelfe and for his Children, if hee want the reme-

die, they hold that hee is in the fault of that. And that Man may the better labour for their li-

uing and their Childrens. So farre is China from hauing Slaues that altogether should bee cap-

tiues, that neither those which they take in warre are flaues; onely they are bound to the King,

and are placed for Souldiers in places farre from their Countries where they were taken, eating

of the wages they have of the King. These doe wearefor a device a red cap, as I saw the Tartari-

Lawes of China give authoritie to the Women for to fell their Children, and not to the Men.

their Heathernth inventions. There they bring many Pictures of men and women, and burne them with many ceremonies. Finally they hang fome Pictures of men and women in paper hanging on coards, and with great praying and mooning these pictures by the coards, with great crying and showting, they fay, to fend the dead man to Heaven. All day and all night while they are in these ceremonies, there is a Table set with great store of meate and drinke. These ceremonies ended, they take the Cossin and set it in a Field where the dead are, and there it confirmes with time. Their mourning which they vie is the sharpest that ener I faw. for they weare Coats after the common fort, of verie course wooll next the flesh, and girt with great coards, and on their head a Cappe of the fame cloath, made like the Caps that are to vied in the Countrey, fauing that these have certaine slappes that fall ouer their eyes. Notwithflanding, that as they are nearest in kindred so they weare the rougher mourning weed. The rest weare raw cloath, and not to course. For Father or Mother, they mourne three yeeres: and if he bee Louthia, as soone as hee heareth the newes presently he leaueth the office he serueth, and goeth to mourne to his owne house for three yeeres, which being ended he goeth to the Court to demand his office. The Women commonly, excepting those of the Sea coast, and the Mountayners, are very

white and fine women, some having their nofes and eyes well proportioned. From their

child-hood they wrap their feete in cloathes, that they may remayne small, and they doe it

yet among the noble people, and not among the basest. They weare their hayre very well

combed, close and tyed to the crowne of the head, and bound from the rootes to the toppes

with a long lace very well placed. And the lace is garnished with Iewels and peeces of Gold

are cloathed in white Linnen-cloath. They make curtefies as our women doe, but they make

three together and very haftely. They we painting their faces with Vermilion and white Ce-

ruse very well set. They commonly keepe themselves close, so that through all the Citie of

they goe abroad they are not seene, for they goe in close Chayres, (whereof wee spake

before ) neither when any bodie commeth into the house doth bee fee them, except for cu-

riofitie they chance under the doore-cloath, to looke on them that come in when they are

Cantas there appeareth not a woman, but fome light hulwines, and base women. And when 30

for the China's doe holde them for finer women that have small Nofes and Feete. This is vied 20

thing womens cuitomesand cloathes... I have many China Pictures which reprefent the women either wrapped vp,or round about. They vie long Coats like the Portugall women, which have the wafte in the elie very small; same manner that they have. They weare vpper-bodies with long sleenes, they spend comtheir eyes allo monly more Silke in their garments then their husbands : but in their common apparell they tle &c. o' the reit, as in the Map is scene.

Womens regi-

Marriage.

Adulteric. Witaldrie.

Harlots.

Commonly the men haue one Wife, which they buy for their money more or leffe, according as they are, of their Fathers and Mothers. Yet may every one have as many wives as hee is able to maintaine : but one is the principall with whom they live, and the other he lodgeth in fundry houses And if hee hath dealings in divers Countries hee hath in every one a wife and house with entertainement. If the wife committeeth adulterie, and the husband accuseth her and the adulterer, both fuffer death. And if the husband doe fuffer the wife to play the adulte- 40 refle, hee is grieuously punished. I being in Cantan, faw a Marchant of China goe from Iustice to Inflice, verie sharpely handled for suffering his wife to play the adulteresse. The common women are in no wife permitted to dwell within the walls. And in the Suburbes without they have their proper streets where they dwell, out of the which they may not live : All the common women are flaues, they bring them up for that purpose from their child-hood, they buy them of their mothers, and teach them to play on an Instrument of musique, and to fing. And those that can best doe this, because they gaine most, are worth more. And those which cannot doe that, are worth leffe. The mafters either carrie them vnto the men, or fell them to them : and when they are to be fet in the ffreet of the common women, they are written by an Officer of the King in a Booke, and the Master is bound to come euerie yeere with a certaine fee to this 50 Officer, they are bound to answer their Master to much euerie moneth. When they are old, with Paynting they make them seeme young. And after they are not for that trade, they are altogether free, without any obligation either to Mafter or any bodie, and then they feed you that which they have gottten.

I spake so particularly of this matter, for to come to say that in this Countrey of China is no greater captinitie then this of these Wenches. And let no man fay, or affirme any other thing, for about the examining of it I laboured formewhat in Cantan, because forme Portugals would affirme it otherwise. The captinitie in this Countrey is in manner following. If any woman by the death of her husband remayneth a widdow, and hath nothing to maintayne her felfe with, neither the children that are left her are fuch as are able to get their hung, neither hath fhee any 60 thingto gine her children; this Woman in this necessitie, commeth to a rich man, and agreeth with him for fix or feuen Crownes, for a Sonne or a Daughter, and the price received thee deliuereth it; if it be a Daughter, shee serueth as abouesai! for a common Woman, and is broug typ for that purpose : if it be a Sonne, hee serueth his Matter some time. And when hee is of age to

which their Priests of their Gods come continually by night to offer their Sacrifices, and to pray

ans weare in Cantan, which had beene taken in the warres.

d. IIII.

Of their Louthias, Mandarines or Magistrates, their creation, priniledges, maintenance; Of Prisons and Tortures; of the King and of Embassadors.

PVery one that in China hath any office , command or dignitie by the King , is called Tyry one that in Come ant any omee a command or organic by the Mang, in Santa Series, How this Title is given him, we will in his Sir, Mafter, or place make mention of it. There are in euery Province of Dima one though at Less. Lotd.

This, or according to others three thoughand, betides those that are resident in the Court, by whom are ordayned all matters of the Kingdome, and to whom come all the waightie matters of all the Realme. And because they are to dispatch with the King; and connerse with Lauthius of the him within doores, and it is not lawfull for other to converse with them, neither doe other fee Court Euthem, and they have entrance where the Wives of the King are, which are many, they are com. Buchs,

monly Eunuchs. In every Province are five, which among the rest are most principall, which haue a very great authoritie and majestie in their persons, and are greatly reuerenced and hono-

red, not onely of the common people, but also of all the other Losbyas.

The principall of the fine is the Gouernour, which in their language is called Tutom, to this The Tutom; come all matters both great and small of all the Prouince, and for the authoritie and majestie of Lieutenant, 40 his person he is not resident where the other Lorby 40, that hee may not bee frequented of them, Depute or and so he may be more esteemed and seared. To these come all the Rents of the Provinces except Vice-roy. the ordinarie expences, and by him as well the businesses as the Rents that are gathered, and all that hapneth in the Prouinces are referred and sent to the Court. The second dignitic of the Provinces, is the Over-feers of the goods, which in their language is called Ponchaffi: this hath The Ponchaffi the care to fend to recouer through all the Province the Rents thereof, for the which hee hath or Treasurer. many Lothyau vnder his jurifdiction, which are particular Officers for the bulineffes and recourries of the goods. This prouideth all the ordinarie charges of the Prounce, and with that which remayneth he reforteth to the Titom, that he may fend it to the Court, this may enter-meddle in graue matters of the other Officers inferiour, and hath authoritie ouer them. Likewise, all the so matters and affaires of the Prouince relort vinto him, to bee referred by him to the Tutom. Another chiefe dignitie under this is the chiefe Iustice, which in their language is called Anchast, The Anchast or and though there be many other Officers of Justice, this is about all, and by him are the dispate chiefe lustice. ches distributed to the rest, and all matters of Iustice resort vnto him, as one that hath authoritie of the other inferiour. Another dignitie vnder this is the chiefe Captaire, who in their tongue is called Assao. To this Assao persayneth to command to prepare the men of warre, and The Assao or all that is necessarie of shipping, and victuals, and all other prouision against Enemies and against chiefe Cap-Theenes: to this belong also the businesses of strangers in cases which belong not to the goods, tame, The fift and last of the great dignities, is of the chiefe Captaine which puttech in execution the matters of warre, and is resident in the Armies which the Astao, being a land, doth ordayne:

60 when it is necessarie besides the putting matters in execution and order, if the matter require his presence, he goeth in person : and so important may the matter be that the Aitao will goe. This His Lieuteis called in the Countrie language Intiffi. In the house of every one of these, except the Luthiffi, philis, the Luthiffi, philis, which is the inferiour of the fine, are other ten which are as Affiliants, and are alfo of great and Each hanc ten thoritie, fine of these doe fit at the right hand of the Principal in fine chaires, recited before when Affilians.

at the dispatching with the principall of the house, and the Principall dying or by any other meanes wanting, one of these according to his antiquitie remayneth in his stead : and if it benecoffary to goe through the Prounce about some matter of importance, that appertuyneth to the dignitie in whole houle they affift, one of these doe goe with all the authoritie of the Principall. The flue that fit on the right hand, haue a greater degree and dignitie then the flue on the left dignitie, girdle hand. And as the dignitie confifteth in their Girdles and Canopies, those of the right hand weare Girlles of gold and Canopies of yellow, and those of the left hand weare Girdles of filuer and Canopies of blew, or of changeable colour. The Girdles are little leffe then three fingers broad. and an inch thick, and all about of gold or of filuer very well wrought made of peeces. The Ca- 10 nopies are very large and faire, which an Officer doth beare vpon a staffe a fathom long, of a Cloue tree very faire, and they are lined with filke,

The Taiffu or Shcriffe

Besides these Assistants and the fine Principall, there is among the inferiour one of greater dignitie, which is the chiefe laylor, whom they call Taiffe, which have very great houses of great receipts, where they have great prisons, but neither this nor any that are under may weare girdle of gold nor filuer, nor a yellow Canopie, except hee bee an Officer or Captaine of men of warre, that for fauour of a Gentleman may have a yellow Canopie: the rest weare girdles of Tartana ga, or of other matter made like them of gold or filuer, and their Canopies are of changeable ftuffe or blew, and all these Inferiour doe speake to the Superiour, when they are before them on their knees, and doe kneele as long as they are with them, except the Taiffu, who when he com- 20 meth in kneeleth and rifeth vp prefently, and is alwayes standing. Every one of the great ones haue many inferiour Officers vnder his iurisdiction, for the matters and businesses necessary to the Office of enery one, all which as they are the Kings officers have the Title of Lothias and their badges or fignes. The fine Principall with their Affistants doe weare for a Badge the Kings Armes on their brefts, and on their backs, which are certayne Serpents wouen with gold thred.

The Chain or Indge of the Circuit, or

Euery yeere there is one fent to euery Prouince at a Justice, which is called Chaen, which commeth to take account of all the Loibias, great and fmall, and examineth all the Scudents and choofeth Louibias, and visiteth the Prisons, and all that is necessary to be seene and prouided for in all the Prouince. He vseth all meanes to spie out their briberie and injustice, and hath power 30 to displace or preferre. When this entreth newly into this Citie, it is not lawfull for any to worke, they hut their doores and no body walketh through the street, and to preferue his worthip and authoritie they will not boldly communicate in ight of the people, and many Officers with Banners displayed of crimson like, and all the Louthias both great and small are bound to goe and meet him. The same entertainment is vied to every one of the five, when hee commeth newly to the Prouince where hee is to administer his office. There bee other dignities about all The Quinchais, these, which are called Quinchais, which is to Gy, a Plate or Scale of gold: which are not fent but about very serious matters and of great importance, for the Kingdome, or the King. Euery Losbra of what qualitie soeuer hee bee, high or low, hath for a signe or badge, besides the aboutfaid, a high Cap and round with certayne eares a-croffe, made of small twigges wouen 40 with twift.

All the Offices are given from three to three yeeres, and none is given for longer time, and all given to men that are not borne in that part of the Land, because they may not be mooued by affection in matters of Julice that belong to their offices, and also because they may not become mightie, thereby to preuent infurrections. The offices are distributed by the King with the counfell of the Eunuchs. And because the Eunuchs are those with whose counsell the offices are d stributed, they are many times mightily bribed.

yeeres Vi-

The Chaens which the King doth fend every three yeeres, commonly are found men, and bring commonly more authoritie then the reft. And these (besides the yearly (baen) are fent the third yeere, when every Officer endeth his office. After that the Chaens have taken the ac- 50 counts of the Lothyas, they visit the Prisons and give audience to the Prisoners. After this hee with the other principall Lotbias doe visit the Schollers, and all those that hee findeth to have studied well, he fauoureth and giveth them good hopes, and those which have not studied well, if hee see they have abilitie for it, he commandeth them to bee whipped. And if already they have beene whipped and have not amended, he commands them to bee put fome dayes in prilon, besides the whipping of them, that with these punishments from thence forward they may have a better care. If hee findeth that they neither learne, nor have abilitie, hee thrufts them out of the Schooles.

This doe onely the Louthias which come every three yeeres, after they have dispatched the businesses of the Prouince, hee busieth himselfe in making Louthias : which hee maketh in forme following. Hecommandeth to come to the principall Citie of the Province, all the Students 63 that have well studied, from all the Cities of the Province, and from all the great Townes, where the King hath Schoole-mafters of free Schooles, maintayned at his charge (for the Students did Itarne the Lawes of the Realme, maintayned at their fathers charge.) And all the principall

Louibias of the Prosince affembled with Chain, there examine very well every one of the Students, demanding of him many things concerning their Lawes : and if he answereth to all well: they command him to be put apart, and if he be not yet well inftructed, eyther they fend him to learne more, and if it be through his default, eyther they whip him, or being whipped they fend him to Prison, as the Partugals faw many in Prison for that fault, where they were in Prison fend him to Priton, as the Partugati saw many in ration to that along which the private state of the Partugation and the Lambias with great for all the Lambias with great Commence to state or one of them that ton and. After the analysis and Playings, they grue the degree to every one of them they Commence mentor Ad-Certainties, customers, the second of the second of the second se To Caps with eares, broad Girdles and Canopies, and there they flay the diffribution of Offices. So following Rethat in this manner they make the Lauthies , which in the Country are to administer lutice. lations of the The Louisias for war are made by Chinalries and famous Deeds which they did in war, So that Ichins in these Countries men are much honoured by their Learning, or by their Chicaltie, and yet more for their Learning, because of the Learned doe commonly come the five principal! Learning and the Affiftants.

Notwithstanding, there are many Louthies, which are made for simple faucure, either for do-Other forts of ing some particular service to the King, or to the Realme, or in some Towne, or having some par- Lambia. ticular fauour or qualitie. As they did to a young man of Chora, because the Portugals beeing in Prifon, he ferued for an Interpreter, whereby the Lautheas gave him the title and badges of Lon-

20 this, because he could speake Portugall. But these and such other doe not commonly, Grue Offices of the King, but enjoy onely the Liberties of Lombias: as the Gentlemen Portugal base their Liberties which some enjoy by fauour of the King, And these Louds have great Liberties in the Countrey : for none can doe him any injurie without punishment , neither can they bee imprisoned but for hainous faults, and they may imprison any that doe wiring them, and many o- Their Prisither Liberties. And though there were some Porjugale that reported without any certaintie ledges. that the Chinace did fludie naturall Philosophie, the truth is the chere is no other Studies nor Vinuerfities in it nor particular, but onely the Schooles Royall of the Lawes of the Kingdome. The truth is that some are found that have knowledge of the couries of Heinen, whereby they know the Eclyples of the Sunne and of the Moone, But thefe if they know it by any Wri-

tings that are found among them, they teach it to some person, or persons in particular, but of this there are no Schooles. The Chinas have no certaine Letterain their Writing, for all that they write is by Chara-Sters. Their lines are not overthwart as in the Winings of all other Nations, but are written vp

When the Loudius are dispatched at the Court with Offices for the Provinces, where they Publike Offigoe to gouerne, they depart carrying nothing of their owne more then the Apparell they are to cers shally weare, and some few Seruants to serue him, even when they have no Offices, neither need they maintayned of carry any prouision for the lourney, nor carriage or shipping at their owne charge : for through the public. all the wayes where he goeth are promitions, alwell of thipping as of necessarie carriage; and ne40 cellary food for all the Kings Officers, which are promited of the Royall Rents. In all the Ci-Houtes for

ties and great Townes, the King hath many good and Noble Houses for the Louisies both great Officers. and small to lodge in, and all those which by any meanes are the Kings, have sufficient Rents for the maintenance of enery person that shall dwell in the House according to his degree. And that which is to be given to every one for his Expences is alreadie limited. Wherefore he that may lodge there being come, the Officer of the House commeth to him, and asketh him if hee will haue his ordinary in money, or in things necessarie for promision, and that which hee doth demand, as farre as the money doth extend, hee is to give him, very well and cleanly dreft, either Flefa, Fifth, Duckes, or Hennes, or what he will. And any Louthie that doth lodge there, may command the Hoast of the House to be whipped, if he serue him not to his will. And if any Low-

50 this will goe to lodge at the House of any acquaintance of his, hee taketh the Money, which the inferiour Louibiss doe also sometimes, either to spare some Money, or to bee merry at their wils more freely. And in the promisons of these Houses there is no want any wayes, for the Ponebasis have the charge to give them sufficient provision that it doe not want. And at the yeares end account is taken of the Officers of the House of the Expenses he made.

By the wayes at eurry League, and at eurry two leagues are Houtes which onely have Beds. Publike Inner. and Chaires for the Transllers to rest and ease themselves. And some of those that have care of thefe Houles, have prouision for to give Wine to the guest's others give nothing but Chas. After the Loubias come to the Citie where they are to be refulent and execute his Office, they find the Houles, where they are tolodge according to the Offices they have great or small, greater the riouses, where they are compage according to the Contest they make given on more a great of the contest of

ther Ministers necessary for their Offices. For these are continually in the hooses, for to minister cea. at all times all the Offices of the Houses where they sense. And every Officer according to his House and person bath his proussion necessary for his meace, drinkes, and his apparell (limited so that it sufficeth him well) which is payed to him without faile, enery moneth-

When

Reft in age

When the Louibias are old and wearied in the charges and Offices of the Kingdome, they are lodged in their owne Countries or where they will, and the King alloweth them enery moneth to much according to their qualitie for their maintenance till they dye. And because the Ordinaries of the Lombias are commonly fufficient, and with fome abundance, they may alwayes foure forme thing to lease their Wives and Children. Before the inferiour Ministers these Officers doe all things of their Offices and matters of luftice, for they are prefent at all things, to prevent Bribes and partialitie. Whiles the Ectabia is fitting in the chaire to heare the parties and difinatching of matters, the Porters, Sertueners, Sergeants and other Ministers are at the doores and when any person commeth with any matter, one of the Porters with a high voice that hee may be heard where the Lombias inteth (for it is farre off) telleth who and wherefore he com- to meth. And none speakethico the Loubias but woon both their knees on the ground, and commonly they speake a prettie space distant from him. And from thence with a high voyce well ynderftood, he propoundeth his case, or sheweth him his Petition written in Paper, and lifting vo the hand defireth him to receive it, and to flew him Iustice, to whom a Minister runneth, the Louthia making a figne to him, and prefenteth it vnto him. After the Louthia readeth it, he eve ther dispatcheth him of that which he asketh, writing at the foote of the Petition with redde Inke, or remitteth the party to an inferiour Officer to be dispatched. So I faw it done to a Petition which a woman presented to the Ponchafi.

The prompenetic and readineffe wherewith the Louthias are ferued, and how feared they are. cannot be written with the Pen, nor expressed with the Tongue, but it must be seene with the 20 eve for to know what it is. All doe their messages running and with great speed, not onely the Scriveners and Sergeants, and other Mimilters , but also the Inferiour Louthing to the Superiour. And if any fayleth never to little of his diligence and accustomed speed, or committeen the leffe negligence in the World before the Louthia, hee hath not any remission, but immediately they put a little flagge in his hand, and he must hold it in his hand kneeling vntill the parties be difparched: and then the Loudis commandeth to give him the stripes that he thinke good: and the thripes are fuch as hereafter we will tpeake of. Whereby all the Ministers in the Houses of the Laurbias are play flored or marked with the firipes, fo that already among themselves they hold Himia fauritas it a disgrace not to be marked with the stripes, because it is a thing generally common among them. And when the Louchia waxesh angry or is moved at any thing, it is a wonder to fee the so trouble and feare that is in all the standers by.

I being in the House of the Ponchast with certayne Portugals, intreating for the deliverance of certayne Portugals that were Captines, and imprisoned in the layle, for the which wee carried him eight Ounces of Ambar (which at that time was much eftermed of them, and now by carrying fo much it is not fo much eleemed) we not being willing to give him the Ambar, without giving vs both the Portugals, he tooke an occasion for to terrifie vs, to waxe angry against the wouth, femant of a Portugall which was in our company and was our Interpretour. Wherefore he role out of the Chaire and became red as bloud, and his eyes were inflamed, and let one foote forward putting his thumbes under his Girdle, looking to the standers by with a terrible countenance "ftepping forward, life up his foot and stampt on the ground with it, and faid with a 40 terrible voyce. Tas, which is to tay, Whippe. It was a wonderfull thing to fee in how little space they tooke the youth, tyed his hands behind with a Cord, and laid him on his belly with his thighes bare, and two Beadles placed them selves on each side one, with one foote forward. and their Whip readie for to give him the ffripes that they should bee commanded to give him. Certainly it was all done in a moment. The Merchants that came in our fauour were troubled. and flood afide shaking with feare. At this time one of the Priloners faid, Sirs, be not afraid for he cannot whip that youth. And in truth we knew it was fo, for according to their Lawes there was no fault, whereby he might command him to be whipped, and there was a penaltie if hee did it. The Loutbia hearing the voyce of the Priloner, commanded to carry him with speed to the layle againe. And the Louthia did this for nothing elfe but to make vs afraid, that wee 10 thould give him the Ambar for one of the Prifoners, for he could not give vs the other because he was alreadie adjudged to dye, and the fentence confirmed by the King, which was irrenocable, and he was willing to have the Ambar, for he hoped to have of the King a greater Reward then to be Ponchast for the Ambar. For he did eate it for to sustayne life; and many dayes were past fince they had demanded it of the Portugals, but as they knew not the name we vied for it, they never understood one another till that the yeare after they had for the Auto of Cantan a little for the delivery of a Portugall: whereby he was advanced to Poschafi. And this would also have for the same effect the Ambar at our hands for to be advanced.

Notwithstanding, we seeing our selues tyed and without an Interpretour by whom to speake, and the youth in disposition of whipping, we gave him the Ambar. There came presently a Cha- 60 ting-dish forto proue it, and the Pritoner cast a little in the fire, and feeing the smoake ascend right up, he was contented, and scattering the smoake hee set his Nose over it and said, Haoa, which is to fay, it is very good. And commanded prefently to deliner vs the Prifoner free. It was wonderfull to fee with what speed it was weighed, and the pieces told and put in a Paper,

and noted by the Scrivener before them all the number of the pieces, and the waight that was there. And after that Paper another, all glued presently. And after that another. And in the Manner of third, the Panchass set his Marke with Red Letters, and what was contayined within. And at their pompe in the same instant came a little Boxe, and being put in it was presently stopped, and vpon the couer a Paper glued, and vpon it the Marke of the Ponchaft: and prefently came an inferiour Lonthis Captayne of the Army with his Souldiers, and all afarre off kneeled downe, and faid at every word Quos, which is to fay, Yes, enclining their heads and hands to the ground. And receiuing his meffage, prefently as he came running, to he returned running with the Boxe to take shipping for to carrie the Amoar to the Tutaen, to bee fent from him to the King. All this that I 10 haue spoken was done in a trice before wee flirred from the place where wee were. This was allo defirous to have the Ambar of vs before the Louibia of that feate did come, which was looked for every day to come a new ; for this was onely a Lieutenant.

When any Loubis that is not of the fine, neither the Chaen, neither very inferiour, but as they say of the meaner fort, goeth abroad into the Citie, he hath before him a good space two Ministers with two Maces that seeme to be of filuer, vpon long states, made almost after our fashion, and the one goeth on the one side the street, the other on the other-side. After these a little distant, goe other two, each with a straight Cane, or Pole in his hand. After these goe other two in the same distance with two Canes trayling along the Pauements, which are the Instruments of Iustice wherewith they doe whip. After these goe other two with two Tables

20 like two Targets bowed and playstered, whereon is written the Title of the Officer that passeth. The formost tignifie in their Maces, that he which passeth is in his Office in the Kings place, And the two itraight Rods, the right of Iustice which he ought to doe. Those which carrie the Instruments of whipping, doe carrie for a figne certayne long Red Laces, with two great round Taffels at the ends. And all doe carrie very gallant Plumes very well made of the points of a Peacocks tayle. And those that goe before doe now and then say with a loud voyce Himph, which is to say, Gine place, or beware. While these doe passe it is not lawfull in any wife for any one to crosse, or goe in the middle of the street, under paine of being whipped without any remission.

It chanced two Portugals went through the middeft of a street in Cantan walking, and behind them came an inferiour Louthia, which had but foure Ministers, which came crying according to 30 their cultomethey should give place. The Portugals either gave no heed or made no regard of those that came: wherefore a Minister comming, gave a great thrust to the one of them, and the Portugall antiwered him with a boxe on the eare; and being bound with his hands behind him, was to goe to Prifon. It was necessary for the Porengall to come to the Louibia, and pacific him with faire words, and he made an end of pacifying him with fourteene Crownes that hee gaue him. After the Ministers commeth the Lombia in a rich Chaire gilt and very faire, on foure mens backes. These Chaires are great and sumptuous, and the Louthia goeth compassed with all the Scriveners and other his Ministers. And all of them while hee goeth by the fireet, goe alwayes running. And the Louthia weareth a long blacke Coate of fine Searge with long fleeues, which is the common wearing: he carrieth the armes a croffe like a Frier, and his eyes low with-40 out looking to any fide: for even with their eyes they will not communicate with the common

people, for to preferue their authoritie the more with them, that may be more feared. When any of the foure Lourbias goeth abroad, except the Tutan, or the yearely Chaen, they goe accompanied with many Ministers, and fixe Officers doe carrie them on their backes , and they leade a spare Horse with a faire Saddle, and a cloth of Silke ouer it; the Chaire inherein they goe is more sumptuous and richer, they carrie before foure, fine, or fixe Maces, and two or three Instruments and more Ministers.

When the Chaen that commeth every three yeeres commeth into the Citie, or for forme im- Pompe of the portant affaires goeth abroad, or fome Quinchay, they shut vp all the doores in the freets where he passeth, and none doth worke, nor is any seene in the street when hee passeth. The shops are 30 shut vp, and every thing of sale is out of fight. The Officers with coards along the street, doe make three lanes, where the triumphing Arches are made in three Arches: and through the middest passeth the Louthis onely, and the Officers on the two fides. And it is not lawfull for charge and any to passe through the middle : they are accompanied of many inseriour Louthias that goe on Quinchage foot. And on the one fide of the ffreet, and the other are many armed men and others with Ban- iplendour. ners of red Silke aduanced, all standing in good order. In the Court of the house where he is to goe in, are many Kettle-drummes fet vpon high stakes to be well played vpon, which are couered downe to the ground with clothes of Silke quartered. After these are many placed in order, with Flags of Silke on high. After these in the same order, are many with Trumpets, and all

are in great filence. As foone as the Loubia appeareth they all found their Instruments in order: Noyse and se 60 the found of the Instruments ended, they remayne all in sogreat a silence, as if there were no lence. bodie in the Court, being a great multitude of people. The people as they come in, doe place themselves on the sides, the middest betweene the Instruments remayning voide, whereby the Louibis passeth. Before these Louibias goe commonly many inferiour Louibias, of those that carrie Maces when they goe abroad. There are also in this Court many men at Armes with

long gilt Lances, and with very faire Armours. This is all in the first Court. In the second, 20 long the Gallerie (whereof wee spake aboue, when wee treated of the houses of the great men, that onely the Lossibias palle through them) on the one fide and the other are many inferiour Louthias with Head pieces on their heads, some gilt, some with Silver, and with Swords hanging at their belts, and with Coats and Callocks made in fashion of Frockes with studs of Gold and Silver, that it is emuth fet vpon plates , but it is a very fine worke made vpon very fingle Silke, which serueth onely for brauerie and ornament. Some vie on their heads white Headpieces garnished with Gold, but are of a very fine leafe and thinne, that seeming an Armour, are not. In this manner also are the Loubias inferiours, which doe entiron the superiour Loubia, The Chaires where these doe goe are very rich and of great price, and very sumptions. The Tables whereon is written the titles of dignitie of these Great men are written with letters of Siluer. And when any of these doth enter newly in any Citie with these feasts and enternayn. ments, all the Louibias, great and small, receive him at a house (where hee landeth very rich and noble) and from thence they accompanie him vnto his lodging, and being lodged, all doe take their leave with many curtelies. In these receivings they vie no sumptuous apparell. The great men (when most) weare Coats of red Silke. In their owne feasts in their houses, and secretly one with another, and in banquets they vie crimion Silke, and all the brauerie in their apparell,

Manner of inquifition.

Whenfocuer by way of inquirie or examination any Witnesses are demanded, the Louthier Whenoeuer by way or inquire or beautiful of this Office, and before all the reft that by 10 doe it in publicke before the Officers and minifers of his Office, and before all the reft that by 10 any meanes chance to be there prefent, and this because no fallhood may be vied, nor any sleight in the manner of inquiring: and by consequence in writing. And first they examine the Witneffes feuerally, and if they doe agree, they ioyne them, and examine the one before the other, till they bring them to altercations and quarrelling by words, that by the words the one speaketh to the other they may come to the knowledge of the truth. And if by this meanes they doe not comprehend the truth, they give them many stripes and tortures that by one meanes or other they may know the truth of the matter they enquire or examine : they vie no Oath, for they efferme nothing of their Gods. They have notwithstanding a respect in the witnessing the persons of qualitie, and of whom is presumed that they will not easily lye. When they examine any matter of great weight, or a graue person, then they write themselues, the proceffe of the examination. It chanceth sometimes that some of the Loubius for a great bribe, or for great friendship let some Prisoner loose, and put another in his place, for there neuer wanteth one naughtipacke that will put himselse in danger of stripes, or death for interest, or they bring him in by deceit, deceiving him with words, and making the matter light votto him, and giving him some interest, they name him as the Prisoner they will let loose, that the faulte and punishments of the guiltie may fall vpon the innocent. And when sometime in this sort they cannot let the guiltie person loose, they labour to bribe all the Officers to give him for dead among those that die in the prisons. But these inventions are not yied but where the bribes are great, or the adherents very great and mightie. And for to eschew the inconveniences which great, or the auncrents very great and augment.

iometime fall out, when any are imprisoned for weightic matters, or the Prisoners have great 40 in the far as the for a state of 40 in the far as the for a state of 40 in the far as the for a state of 40 in the far as the for a state of 40 in the far as the for a state of 40 in the far as th of Prisons and adversaries, they set downe all the markes of the Prisoners, and cause them to be set at the foot

Cane-whip. ping, Much is bere written which I have

of the writing, that so they may not vie any of the malices abouelaid. With how much pietie and leafure they kill, with so much crueltie and speed they whip, for in this case they forgiue none. The stripes are such that with reason it might be a sufficient puthirties.

\*Huge Reed\* in this case they torgue none. Incurred a transport of the transport broad, and goe straightning vpward vnto the end, where the Beadles hold them: and they are almost a finger thicke (for in those parts are canes as big as a mans leg. And because in Portugall are many witnesses of knowledge of the same, I dare simply affirme it, and they are of eighty or ninety (pans long.) And their whips are made of these canes of the height of a middle statured man to the breasts. They give the stripes on the hammes of the mans legs, being layd on his breaft, and his legs layd along, and his hands tyed behind. And the Beadles butchering, as they are commanded, the Louthias are altogether voide of compassion, talking one with another, eating and drinking, and picking their teeth. The crueltie is fuch, that the Court is full of bloud: and when they have made an end of whipping them, they carrie them not, but like Butchen Miferable ena- with much crueltie they draw them by one leg to the Prison. And when the Beadles are whipping, they tell with a loude voyce the stripes. If the miserable Prisoners which are in the Prfon for grieuous faults at the time that this correction is to bee done can get a piece of a coard, wherewith they may hang themselves, they goe to buffets who shall hang himselfe first, that that the butcherie of the stripes be not executed on them. And the Portugals affirmed, which were in Prison, that in one day fortie Prisoners did hang thems lues in the Prison where they 60 were, to escape the stripes they were rather willing to lose their lines. And they affirmed, that the coard was very short, that scarfely there was so much as to come about the necke to tye it, and on a flicke which they flucke in the wall, and because the flicke was very lowe, they pulled one another till they were choaked, going to buffers who should hang himselfe first. When any

aoth kill himfelfe, or dieth in the Prison, it is the order in China to cast him in the house of office, and there to be three dayes, where the Rats doe eate him up. And fometimes the Chinaes Pritoners doe eate of them with hunger.

Euery Citie that is the Head of the Province, hath thirteene Dungeons, and in fixe of them Store of freeare the men condemned to death: there are in Cantan vpward of fifteene thousand Prisoners, people, and There are in every Dungson onely for the condemned to death, one hundred and twenty men therefore flore that ferue for watches, and have a Louthia over them as their Captaine, or Gentleman of the used libertie round. There be two fores of tortures, one for the hands, another for the feet, which are nip- and flore. ped by certaine flickes to the bruifing or breaking of the fingers or toes with cruell paines.

The King hath as many wives as he lifteth: and within doores all the feruice is almost of The King his women: whereof he hath a great multitude: and likewife great store of Eunuches, and there is wines, chilno other people within the house. The first fon that is borne vinto him of any of his wives succeedeth in the Kingdome. The reft he marrieth, and at fuch time as he marrieth them they are lodged in some of the Cities that he best liketh; where they are well provided of all things neceffarie for their maintenance, as fonnes to the King. But they neuer fee the Kings face any more after they are married.

All the Embaffadours that come to China, with Embaffages from Kings or Princss, receive of the King great rewards and fauours, and they give him Cap and fignes of Lothia, whereby he hath great priviledges in the Countrey. They may whip and punish the Chinaes themselves. Embaffadours fo that they touch not any Louthia small or great: for to meddle with these would breed great priviledges,

or inconveniences. This was the cause that Fernando \* Perez of Adrade going for Embassadour to \* Lopo Source Chma, that the Chinaes did rife against him , and hee escaped with his hands on his head , losing was lent Vice-China, that the Chinaes did rite against tim, and there excepts with this manner of the chinaes, and they roy, Amissis fome thips: because having done vnaccustomed Justice in China, and vpon the Chinaes, and they and sent this forbearing him, he would firetch his hand to the Louthias. The goods of the Embaffadour, and Perez with a of his is free from customes, and to him and to his they give lodgings to dwell in, and all things fleet to China, necessarie while they are in the Countrie. No man, no hot a Louibia may disturbe him in any and therein thing, nor any thing of his. One Lothia would have whipped one of Siam, for having carried Thomas Perez a message to the Prison to certaine Portugals that were in Prison. One of the Officers said vnto him that was present, that he was of Siams of the Embassage, wherefore being satisfied there-enterrayned with he let him goe in peace, defiring him he would not doe to againe.

With the Chinaes being fo great as at the beginning we faid and declared, the King hath fuch tome Partugals meanes and industrie in the government thereof, that every moneth he knoweth all that passeth viurping Ta. through all the Realme, and he knoweth it in this manner. All matters of Juffice and of Warre, Hand, and exand all annuities with all that is worth the knowing in enery one of the Prounces is referred by ereifing all the Louibias, and by other persons to the Ponchast, and the Ponchast maketh a relation of all by ourrages, cauwriting to the Tman. The Tman is bound to fend a Post every moneth to the Court, which fed T. Perez afcarrieth the information in writing to the King of all things that passed in that moneth. They ter 4 monet count their moneths by the Moones, and they are to be dispatched in such fort, that at the be- Cantan to the ginning of every Moone the Posts from all the Provinces are to bee at the Court , that the first Court to bee 40 day of the Moone it may be presented to the King, as relations of all things happened in every taken for a Prouince. And although some Prouinces are farre distant from the Court, that the Posts cannot Spie, and sent come within a moneth to the Court: notwithstanding in such manner they agree that every tong where hee

Moone the King is to have the relation of every Province, though the one be of more time then died in Prilon another, because of the one Prouince being farre and the other neere. The manner of the Polts is as among vs, they carrie a Horne which they winds when they factors. See come neere to any Towne, that they may have a Horse ready in every Towne within a certaine who seemeth diffance. They are bound when they heare the Horne to haue a Horfe ready for him, which is to diffagree: or done with fuch diligence as all the other feruices of the Officers. And where hee is to passe a else his rec-Foord, as soone as he windeth his Horne with great speed they carrie him a Boat, as I saw once Ples act was

so going to the Citie of Cantan, in a Towne that was in the way, called Caanan. Sometimes it him, For hee hapneth by the malice of some Londias, when they have any interest in it, to keepe some things had left 6. ships concealed that the King knoweth not: but woe to them if the King come to know it, for they there, when he are grieuously punished, as wee shall see in a case hereafter following. Being in India, and also went to Canton, in Chma, I was enformed that sometimes the King of China doth send some men of great considence disguised through diners parts of China, that they might fee how his Officers did ferue Disguised Inhim. And if there were any nouelties or changes whereof they made him not printe, or some telligencers, things that were necessarie to prouide.

). V.

of the Portugall commerce with the Chinois; of the fenere Inflice executed upon certaine Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Portugals.

Ectule we spake many times before of Portugals, captines in China, it will bee a connenient thing that the caules of their Captinitie be knowne, where many notable things will beshewed. Yee are to know, that from the yeere 1554. hitherto, the businesses

in China are done very quietly and without danger : and fince that time till this day. there hath not one ship beene lost but by some mischance : having lost in times past many. Bee R cause as the Portugals and the Chinaes were almost at warres, when the Armies came vpon them, they weighed anchor and put for the Sea, and lay in places inflictered from tempefts, whereby the stormes comming, many were lost upon the coast, or upon some shelues. But from the yeere 1554. hitherto, Lionell of Sofa, borne in Algarue, being chiefe Captaine, and married in Chaul. made a couenant with the Chinaes that they would pay their duties, and that they should fuffer them to doe their bufineffes in their Ports. And fince that time they doe them in Contas, which is the first part of China: and thither the Chinaes doe resort with their Silkes and Muske. which are the principall goods the Portugals doe buy in China. There they have fure Hauens where they are quiet without danger, or any one disquieting them, and so the Chinaes doe now make their merchandife well : and now both great and small are glad with the trafficke of the , Portugals, and the fame of them runneth through all China. Whereby some of the principall of the Court came to Cantan onely to fee them having heard the fame of them. Before the time aforesaid, and after the riling which Fernando Perez of Andrade did cause, the businesses were done with great trouble, they suffered not a Portugall in the Countrey, and for great hatred and loathing called them Facui, that is to fay, Men of the Denill. Now they held not commerce with them under the name of Portugals, neither went this

led Fancui, and name to the Court when they agreed to pay customes : but vnder the name of Fangin, which Name-policy. is to fay, People of another Coast. Note also, that the law in China is that no man of China doe

Couetife law-

fayle out of the Realme in paine of death. Onely it is lawfull for him to fayle along the coaft of the same China. And yet along the coast, nor from one place to another in China it selfe it is Lawfull to goe without a certificate of the Louthias of the Countrey whence they depart: in 3 which is fit downe, whither they goe, and wherefore, and the markes of his person, and his age. If he carrieth not this certificate he is banished to the Frontiers. The Merchant that carrieth goods carrieth a certificate of the goods hee carrieth, and how hee payed duties for them. In every Custome-house that is in every Province hee payeth certaine duties , and not paying them he loseth the goods, and is banished to the frontier parts. Notwithstanding the abouesaid lawes some Chinaes doe not leave going out of China to trafficke, but these never returne againe to China. Of these some live in Mallaca , others in Siam, others in Patane, and so in divers places of the South some of these that goe out without licence are scattered. Whereby some of these which live already out of China doe returne againe in their ships vato China, vader the protection of some Portugall: and when they are to dispatch the duties of their ships they take some Poringall their friend to whom they give some bribe, that he may dispatch it in his name and pay the duties. Some Chinaes desiring to get their liuing, doe goe very secretly in these ships of the Chinaes to trafficke abroad, and returne very secretly, that it bee not knowne, no not to his kindred, that it bee not spread abroad, and they incurre the penalty that the like doe incurre. This law was made because the King of China found that the much communication of the strangers might be the cause of some risings. And because many Chinaes with an excuse of fayling abroad became theeues and robbed the Countries along the Sea coast, and yet for all this diligence there are many Chinaes robbers along the Sea coast.

Liampo.

These Chinaes that live out of China, and doe goe thither with the Portugals, fince the offence 30 of Fernando Perez of Andrada did direct the Portugals to begin to goe to traffick to Liampe; for in those parts are no walled Cities nor Villages, but many and great Townes along the coast, of poore people, which were very glad of the Portugals, and fold them their prouision whereof they made their gayne. In these Townes were these Merchants of China which came with the Portugals, and because they were acquainted, for their fake the Portugals were better entertayned. And as these Chinaes which were among the Portugals and the Countrey Merchants in their buyings and fellings, they reaped a great profit thereby. The inferiour Louibias of the Sea coast received also great profit of this trafficke, for they received great bribes of the one and of the other, to give them leave to trafficke, to carrie and recarrie their goods. So that this trafficke was among them a long while concealed from the King, and from the superia 60 our Louibas of the Prouince. After these matters had for some space beene done secretly in Liampoo, the Portugals went by little and little forward, and began to goe and make their merchan life to Chincheo, and to the Hands of Cantan. And other Louthes permitted them already in enery place for the bribes sake, whereby some Portugals came to trafficke beyond Namqui,

Chinches. Namqui, or Nanquin.

which is very farre from Cantan, without the King being witting, or having knowledge of this trafficke. The matters fell out in such fort, that the Portugals wintered in the Ilands of Liampoo.

Some Chinaes that were among the Portugals, and some Portugals with them, came to offer Diforders of der themselues in such manner that they made great stealths and robberies and killed some of the ourragious people. These etils encreased so much that the clamour of the injured was so great, that it came chinosis, and its not onely to the superiour Londons of the Province, but also to the King. Who commanded presently to make a very great Armada in the Province of Fuquen, to drive the theeues from all the coait, especially those that were about Liampoo, and all the Merchants as well Portugals as

Chinaes were reputed in this number of theeues. Being ready they went forth along the coast 10 of the Sea. And because the windes served them not for to goe for Liampee, they went to the coast of Chinches, where finding some shape of Portugals, they began to fight with them, and in no wife did they permit any wares to come to the Portugals; who stayed many dayes there ( fighting sometimes) to see if they could have any remedie for to dispatch their businesses. But feeing they had no remedy, they determined to goe without it. The Captaynes of the Armie knowing this, fent a mellage to them very fecretly by night, that if they would that any goods knowing this, tenta menage to the mount of the momething. The Portugals very glad with this Briberie, message, prepared a great and sumptuous present, and sent it them by night because they were fo admired. From thence-forward came many goods vnto them, the Louthias making as though they tooke no heed thereof, diffembling with the Merchants. And so were the businesses ended

20 that yeere, which was the yeere 1 548.

The years following, which was 1 549, there was a straighter watch vpon the Coast by the Captaynes of the Armada, and greater vigilancie in the Ports and entrances of China, in fuch fort that neyther goods nor victuals came to the Porengals : but for all the vigilancie and watching there was, (as the Ilands along the Coast are many, for they all runne in a rew along the China) the Armies could not have so much vigilancie, that some wares were not brought fecretly to the Portugals. But they were not so many that they could make vp the ships ladings, and the vetering those goods which they had brought to China. Wherefore leaving the goods which they had not vetered in two ships of Chima, of such Chimaes as were alreadie dismensbred from China, and Traffique abread under the shadow of the Portugals, (in the which they 30 left thirtie Portugals in charge with the ships and with the goods) that they might defend the

thips, and in some Port of China where best they could they should fell the goods that remayned in change for some Wares of China, and having ordayned this they departed for India. As the people of the Armie of the Chinaes faw the two ships remayne alone, the other ships being gone, they came upon them, being induced by some Merchants of the Countrey, which discouered to them the great store of goods that remayned in those Vessels, and the few Portsgals that remayned to keepe them. Then they layd an ambush for them, dreffing some Chinase ashoare, which being in armes made as though they would fet vpon the ships to fight with them, because they were close to the Land, that the Portugals being prouoked, should come out of the fhips to fight with them, & fo the ships might remaine without defence to them of the Armada,

40 which lay watching in an ambush, & did accordingly set vpon the two Veffels with great furie & celeritie, and flaying tome Portugals that were in the ships, and wounding others they tooke the ships. The chiefe Captayn which is the Lutbiff, remayned so glorious, that heresed great crueltie on some Chinaes that hee tooke with the Portugals. Hee laboured to perswade source Portugals Mountayne which had more apparance in their persons then the rest, that they should say, they were Kings of Mouse birth Malaca, he perswaded them in the end, because hee promised to vie them better then the rest, and therewith he prouoked them. And finding among the cloathes that hee tooke a Gowne and a Cap, and asking of one of those Chinaes, that were taken with the Portugals what habit that was, they put in his head, that it was the habit of the Kings of Malaca, wherefore he com-

manded prefently to make three Gownes by that patterne, and three Caps, and to he apparelled mili rifum tethem all foure in one fort, to make his favoring true, and his allowed the state of the stat 30 them all toure in one fort, to make his fayning true, and his victory more glorious. To this was joyned the couetoufneffe of the Lutbiff to fee if hee could detayne the many goods that hee had taken in ships.

And to doe this more fafely, not to be taken in a lye, he did great executions upon the Chinaes which he tooke with the Portugals, and killing some of them determined to kill the rest. These things comming to the cares of the Airas, which was his superior, he dishiked greatly that which hee had done, and fent to him prefently that hee should kill no more of those which remayned, but that he should come to him presently bringing with him all the prize as well of the men that were yet aliue, as of the goods. The Lutbiff ordering his Lourney for to goe to the Aitao, as he was commanded, he commanded foure Chaires to be given to them, to whom hee had

60 given title of Kings, to be carried in them with more honour. And the other Portugals were Carried in Coopes with their heads out fast by the neckes betweene the boards that they could Pillory Coops. not pull them in, but having some wounds in their heads, they went bare headed to the Sunne and to the Dew, and were carried on mens shoulders. The Luthis went with this Prize through the Countrey with great Majethe, he carried before him foure Banners displayed, on the which

192

were written the names of the foure Kings of Malaca. And when he entred into the Townes. he entred with great noyfe and Majestie, with found of Trumpets, and with Cryers which went crying the great victorie, the Luthisi (naming him) had gotten of the foure great Kings of Malaca. And all the great men of the Townes went to receive him with great Feafts and Honours, all the Townes running to fee the new Victorie.

When the Lubis came with all his pompe and glory where the Airao was, after the giving him particular account of all things passed and of his victory, he manifested to him his pretence and agreed with him to divide the goods betweene them both, and that he should continue the fayning of the Kings of Malaca, that both might receive of the King Honours and Rewards, This being fet downe they both agreed that to keepethis in fecret, the Lutbif should go forward to Damna le vain that which he had begun, to wit, he should say all the Chinas, that came there captine. And presently they commanded presently to put it in effect, and so they flue ninetie and odde Chinas, among whom were some young youths staine. They left notwithstanding three or foure youthes and one man, that by them (bringing them to their owne hand) they might certifie the King all that they would, that was to make of the Portugals Theeues, and conceale the goods which they tooke: certifying also by these that those foure were Kings of Malaca. And the Portugals not having the Language of the Countrey, neither had any person to intreate for or fauour them would perish : and they being mightie would make their owne Tale good, following the end by them intended. And for this cause they sue not the Portugals , but left them alive, for the greater triumph of the victorie.

·These Lothias could not doe this so secretly, but many of those which they slue had kindred in the Countrey, which did grieue at the death of theirs. Whereby, as well by these, as by some Lonthias that were zealous of Inflice, and would not give confent in to great enils and fraudulent dealings, this matter came to the Kings eares, and hee was informed now the Portugals were Merchants which came to traffique with their Merchandize to China, and they were no theeues, and how they had fallly given the Title of Kings to foure of them, to the end the King should shew great fauours, and doe them great honours; and how they had vsurped great store of goods; and that for to conceale these euils, they killed men and children without fault.

The Kings Inft:cc.

nitie.

As foone as the King was informed of all about faid, hee dispatched present from the Court a Quinchay, (of whom we spake before, that is to say place of Gold) And with him he sent other to two men of great authoritie allo, of the which the one had beene Panchafi, the other Anchafi. these two as Inquisitors and Examiners of this matter: Commanding and commending to the Chaen which that yeare went to visit the Province of Fuquen, and to the Panchasi and Anchasi. of the same Prouince, their ayde and affiltance to the Quincher, and the two Inquisitors in all things necessary for them in these businesses. The two that came with the Quinchay, as Inquifitors, went presently to certayne great Houses which had in the middest a great Court, and on the one fide of the Court were certayne great and faire Lodgings, and on the other fide others in the same fort, Each of the Inquisitors entred in one of these Houses aforesaid. The Prisoners were presently brought, and were presented to the one of them, who for courtese remitted them to the other, that he should examine them first, with many words of courtesie. The other fent 40 them againe with great thankfulnesse. So they were fundry times carried from one to another, each of them willing to give the hand to the other of beginning first, till that one of them yeelded and began. And as the matter was of great import and much commended to them, all that the guiltie and the accusers did speake these Officers did write with their owne hands. The Portugals had for a great Enemy a China man and Pilot of one of the shippes that were taken, and a China youth which was a Christian, which from a childe was brought vp among the Portugals: for they were both made of the part of the contrarie Louthias , mooned by gifts and promifes: the Louthias being alreadie depoted of their Offices, and held for guiltie, for the which they were accused before the King.

But though they were thus handled, they were so mightie and so fauoured, that they could 50 take from the Portugals a China youth that ferued them for an Interpreter, which vpontheir Manner of ex. Petition was againe delinered them. They examined them in this order, the accused were first brought and examined by one of these Officers, and they carried them to the other to bee examined againe. And while the other was re-examining the accused, the accusers were brought to him that examined first. And as well the accused as the Accusers were all examined by both the Officers, that afterward they both freing the confessions of the one and the other, they might fee if they did agree. And first they examined enery one by himselfe. Afterward they examined them altogeter, for to see if the one did contrary the other, or did contend and reprehend one another, that fo by little and little they might gather the truth of the cafe. In their Examinations the two were contrary, to wit, the Pilot, and the Christian China youth, and had many 60 stripes, because they agreed in somethings. The Loubias did alwayes shew themselves glad to heare the Portugals in their defence, who alleadged in their defence, that if they would know who they were, and how they were Merchants and not Theenes, they should send to enquire of them along the Coast of Chinches, that there they should know the truth, which they might

know of the Merchants of the Countrey, with whom a great many yeares agoe they had dealt. and that they might know that they were no Kings, for Kings do not abase themselves so much as to come with so few men to play the Marchants, and if before they faid the contrary, it was by the deceit of the Luthifi, and to receive better viage of him in their persons.

Having this information of the Portugals, prefently with the opinion of the Quinebar and the other Officers, they went to Chinches both of them, to enquire of the trueth or that which the Portugals had told them; and discovering there the truth of the Portugals matter, and the lies of the Lubiff, and of the Airas, they dispatched presently a Post; wherein they commanded to put the Latbiff and the Airao in Prifort, and in good fafeguard. Wherefore from thence forward 10 all men began to fauour them very much. If notwithstanding this examination had bin made in

Liampee, as it was in (binchee, the Portugals could not have chosen but have past it ill, according to the greatnesse of the euils they had done there. After the Louibias returned from Chinches, they commanded to bring the Portugals before them, and comforted them very much, flewing them great good-will, and faying to them, that they knew already they were no theeues, but were great good-win, and taying to them, as well they as their advertaries, to fee if they contra-honeft men: and they examined againe as well they as their advertaries, to fee if they contrahonet men: and they examine against the which before they had fooken. In thefe later re-examina-fallouted themselves in any thing of that which before they had fooken. In thefe later re-examina-fallouted themselves in the state of the stat tions the Pilot of China, which before had shewed himselfe against the Portugals; and had beene on the Louthias side, seeing that the Louthias were already in Prison, and that now they could doe them no good, and that the Portugals were already favoured, and that the trueth was already

20 knowne, he gainfaid himfelfe of all that he had faid, and faid that it was true that the Portugals were no theeues nor Kings, but Merchants, and very good men, and discouered the goods which the Lutbiffi had taken when he surprised the Portugals. And that till then he had said to the contrary, was for the great promifes which the Louthia promifed him, and for the great threats they wfed to him if he did it not. But freing they were already in Prifon, and he knew they could doe him no hurt, he would now speake the truth. They then commanded to torment him, and whip him very fore, to fee if he would gainfay himfelfe, but he ftill continued in the fame confession.

All the examinations and diligences necessarie in this businesse ended, the Quinchay willing The Quinchay to depart for the Court with his companie, would first fee the Portugals, and give a fight of himoffention, felfe to the Citie. The fight was of great Maieltie in the manner hee went abroad in the Citie,

30 for he went accompanied with all the great men of it, and with many men in Armes and many Ancients displayed and very faire, and with many Trumpets and Kettle- drummes, and many other things which in such pompes are vied. And accompanied in this manner, hee went to certaine noble and gallant houses. And all the great men taking their leaue of him, hee commanded the Portugals to come neere him, and after a few words he dismiffed them : for this was not but onely to see them. Before these Louibias departed they commanded the Louibias of the Countrey, and the Iaylors, that all of them should fauour the Poringals, and give them good entertaynment, and should command to give them all things necessarie for their persons. And commanded every one to fet his name in a piece of Paper, because that while they were at the Court, and their matters were dispatching, they should not craftily make some missing. And

40 they commanded to keepe the Lubsifi in good lafety, and the Aitas, and that they should not let them communicate with any person. Being gone from the Citie, they lodged in a small Towne, where they fet in order all the Papers, and ingroffing onely that which was necessarie. And because the Papers were many, and were much to write, they helped themselues with three men. And having ingroffed all that they were to carrie to the Court, they burned all the reft. And because these three men which they tooke for helpers should not spread abroad any thing Cautelousine of that which they had feene, or heard, or written, they left them that up with great vigilan- duftriccie, that none should speake with them, commanding to give them all things necessarie very abundantly vntill the King, Sentence came from Court, and were declared. The Papers being presented in Court, and all seene by the King and by his Officers , he pronounced the Sentence

50 in " manner and forme following.

Pimpu by commandement of the King. Because Chaipuu, Huchin Tutan without my commande abridged. ment, or making mee primie thereto, after the taking of so much people, commanded them to bee stayne: Sentence. I being willing to provide therein with Instice, fent first to know the trueth by Quinfituam, my Quinchei, who taking with him the Louthias which I fent to examine the trueth of the Portugals, and also of the Aitao and Luth si, which had informed mee, that the Portugals were thecues, and that they came to all the coast of my Dominion to robbe and to murther. And the trueth of all being knowne, they are come from doing that which I commanded them. And the Papers being scene by my Pimpu, and by the great Louthias of my Court, and well examined by them, they came to give mee account of

all. And likewife I commanded them to be perufed by Ahimpu, and Altu Chaen, and by Athayluti 60 Chuquin, whom I commanded to onerfee those Papers very well, because the matters were of great weight; wherein I would provide with Instice. Which then being seene and perused by them all, it was manifest that the Portugals came many yeeres before to the coast of Chincheo to doe their affaires, which was not convenient they hould doe in the manner they did it, but in my Markets, as was alwaies the custome in all my Ports. These men of whom hisherto I knew not: I know now that the people of

not theenes, as they had written to me they were.

case I beleeuing to be true, grieue in my heart.

194

Pantoos are Sca-watches.

Bure hely in- tented with killing of the men, but killed evildren also, custing off the feet of some, of others the bands, to solence. and at last the beads of them all: writing wnto mee they had taken and slayne Kings of Maillaca. Which

ceited himfelf.

Senfu and o-

thers rewar.

A. a I doe not blame Merchants to belpe Merchants, but I put great fault in my Louthias of Chincheo . because that when any shop came to my Ports, they should have knowne if they were Merchants, and if they would pay their duties, and if they would pay them, to write prefently unto mee. If they had done fo : fo much ewill ad not beene done. Or when they were taken, if they had let mee know it, I had commanded to fet them at libertie. And although it bee a custome in my Ports the Ships that come unto \* In china and them to be measured ' by cubits for to pay their duties : these being very farre off, it was not necessaries Size they pay but to let them doe their bufinesses, and goe for their Countries. Besides the my l'ontoos " which knew Custome by the fe men to be Merchants did not tell it mee, but concealed it from mee, whereby they were the case of measuring the thefe men to be Merchants did not be seen and did not the seen and d this i.o. n poop many people being taken and flame. And those that remayned aline as they could not speake, did looke to providow towa d Heanen, and demanded from their hearts instree of Heanen (they know no other God lumany cubasic premeout the Heauen.) Besides these things I know that the A.tao, and the Luthissi did so much enill for conetoufnesse of the many goods which they tooke from the Portugals, having no regard whether those which they tooke, and tooke the goods from, were good or stall men. Likewise the Louthins a-long the Sea coast knew these men to be Merchants, and certified mee not. And all of them, as distrall were the cause of so much enill. I knew more by my Quinchey, that the Aitao, and the Luthill had Letters, by the which they knew that the Portugals were no theenes but Merchants, and knowing this

they were not contented with the taking of them, but they wrote many lyes unto mee, and were not con-

And because hitherto so many cruesties have beene vsed without my commandement, from hence forward I command they be not done. Besides this the Portugals resisted my Armie, being better to have let them selves beene taken, then to kill my people. Moreover, it is long since they came to the coast of our Dominion about their affaires in manner of theenes, and not as Merchants: wherefore if they had beene naturall as they are strangers they had incurred paine of death & lesse of goods, wherfore they are not without fault. The Tutan by whose commandement those men were sla ne, said " that by this deed I should make him greater; and the people that he commanded to be flame after they had no heads, their bearts, (that is their sonles and their bland ) required instice of Heanen. I seeing so great enils to be done, my eyes could not indure the fight of the Papers without teares, and great griefe of my beart. I know 30 not , my Louthias feeing they tooke this people , wherefore they let u not goe, that I might not come to know so many cruelties and so great. Wherefore seeing all these things, I doe create Senfiu chiefe Louthia, because hee did bis durie in his charge, and told mee truth, I create also chiese Louthia Quinchio, because hee wrote the trueth to mee of the Pontoos which went to doe their merchandise in fecret with the Portugals to the Sea. Those which are emill I will make them baser then they which fowe Rice.

Likewsse because Paction did trafficke with the Portugals, and for bribes did permit the Merchants of the Country to trafficke with the Portugals, and yet doing thefe things, wrote unto mee that the Portugals were theenes and that they came to my Dominions onely to steale. And the same bee said also to my Louchias (which presents answered, that he lyed, for they knew already the contrarie.) And therefore fuch a one, and fuch a one, (he nameth ten Louthias.) It is nothing that all you be banished to red Caps \*, to the which I condemne you: but you deserve to be made baser as I doe make you. Chaen are the enligne for taking these men thou sayedit thou shouldest be greater, and being in the doing of so much enill thou layedit wou didit not feare mee: fuch a one, and fuch a one (he nameth nine) for the taking of thefe u the King men yee fay, I would make you great, and without any feare of mee yee all lied, juch a one, and juch a in his frontiers one (he nameth many.) I know also yee tooke bribes. But because you did so, Imake you base, (he deagainst the E- priveth them of the dignitie of Lothias.)

Such a one, and fach a one ( he nameth many. If the Aitao and the Luthiffi would kill fo many people, wherefire dud you suffer it? But seeing that in consenting you were accessarie with them in their to death, all are to the same fault. Chifun, and Chanchitun, were also agreeing to the will of the Aitao and the Luthilli, and were with them in the flaughter, as well those that were as those that were not in fault. Wherefore I condemne you all to red Caps. Lupuu let him baue a good heart, because the Tutan being willing to bell this people, he faid that he should let mee first know it. To him I will doe no harme, but good, as he descrueth, and I command that he remaine Louthia. Sanchi I make my Anchath of the Citie of Canti. The Antexio I command to be deposed of his honour. Assan feeing hee can freake with the Portugals, let him have honour and ordinarie, and he shall be carried to Chaquean, where hee was borne. (This is the youth with whom the Portugals did defend themselves, serving them for Interpreter, they gave him title of Louthia, and mayntenance.) Chinque Head of the Merchants that went to the Sea to trafficke with the Portugals, and deceined them, bringing great store of 60 goods a land, it shall be demanded of him, and set in good safeguard for the mayntenance and expenses of the Portugals, and I condemne him and his foure Companions to red Caps, and they shall bee banified whither my Louthias shall thinke good.

To the rest guilty and imprisoned for this matter, I command my Louthias to give to every one the

punishment be descrueth. I command the Chaen to bring me bither the Tutan that his faults being perwed by the great men of my Court, I may command to doe instree on him as I shall thinke good. (This The Tutenty Tutan was alto a confenter in the wickednesse of the Airao and the Laubissi: for the Lutbissi, hanging himand the Airao made him partaker, and gaue him part of the booties which they tooke from the felfe Portugals, that as the head he should hold for good that which they did : for in truth they durit the Hangman, not have done that which they did if he had not given confent, and agreed with their opinion. Mangman ra-This hearing what was judged against him, hung himselfe, saying, that seeing the Heauen had there made him whole, that no man should take away his head. The Poutoos which yet are in Prison, shall be examined againe, and shall presently be dispatched. Chuichum shall presently be deprined from

10 being a Louthia, without being heard any more. Chibee, head of fixe and twenty, I command that hee and his be all fet at libertie, for I find but little fault in them. Those which owe any money it shall bee recovered of them presently. Famichin , and Tomicher Shall dye , if my Louthias doe thinke it expedient; if not let them doe as they thinke best. Altonfo of Panua, and Peter of Cea (thele were Portugals) Antonie and Francisco (these were slaves) finding them to be guilty of killing some men of my Armie, shall with the Luthilli and Aitao be put in Prison, where according to the custome of my Kingdome, they all shall dye at leisure. The other Portugals that are aline with all their Seruants which are in all fiftie one, I command them to be carried to my (title of Cansi, where I command they be well intreated, seeing my heart is so good towards them that for their sake I punish in this sort the people of my Countres, and deale so well with them; for it is my custome to doe lustice to all men. The Louthnas of the 20 Armada, finding they are in little fault, I command they bee fet free (I deale in this fort with all men, that my Louth: as may see that all that which I doe, I doe it with a good zeale.) All these things I command to be done with freed. Hitherto the fentence of the King.

The Portugals that were freed by the fentence, when they carried them whither the King What became commanded, found by the way all things necessary in great abundance, in the Houses about of the Ports. faid, that the King had in enery Towne for the Lombian when they travell. They carned gale them in seates of Chaires made of Canes on mens backes, and they were in charge of inferiour Louthias, which caused them to have all things necessarie through all places where they came, till they were deliuered to the Lourbias of the Citie of Caufi. From that time they had no more of the King every moneth but one Foon of Rice (which is a measure as much as a man 30 can beare on his backe) the rest they had need of, every one did seeke by his owne industry. Afterward they dispersed them againe by two and two, and three and three through diners pla-

ces, to preuent that in time they should not become mightie joyning themselves with others, Those that were condemned to death, were presently put in Prison of the condemned. And Alfonfo of Pains had a meanes to give the Portugals to vinderstand that were free, that for his welcome they had given him prefently fortie firspes and intreated him very euill, hewing himfelfe comforced in the Lord. Those which were at libertie, now some and then some, came to the ships of the Poringals, by the industrie of some Chinas, which brought them very secretly for the great gifts they received of the Merchants of Portugall, which made their Merchandize

Of the Religion in China; difficultie of bringing in Christianitie. Terrible Earth-quakes and Tempests in

N the Citie of Cantan in the middest of the River which is of fresh water and very broad, is a little Ile, in the which is a manner of a Monasterie of their Priests; and within this Monasterie I saw an Oratorie high from the ground very well made, with certayne gilt steps before it, made of carued worke; in which was a woman very well made with a childe about her necke, and ichad a Lampe burning before it. I suspecting thatto bee fome shew of Christianitie, demanded of some Lay-men, and some of the Idoll Priests which were there, what that woman signified, and none could tell it mee, nor give mee any reason of it. It might well be the Image of our Ladie, made by the ancient Christians, that Saint Thomas left there, or by their occasion made, but the conclusion is , that all is forgotten: it imght also be some Gentiles Image. The greatest God they have is the Heaven, the letter that figniheth it, is the principall and the first of all the Letters. They worship the Sun, the Moone, nignment it, is the principal another mit of an one bestern any woman and provided and discourse, and all the I mages they make without any respect. They have, not with danding. Heaven 6.6 Images of Louthus, which they worship for having beene famous in some one thing or other both God and And likewise Statues and Images of some Priests, of the Idols, and some of other men for some Character,

respects particular to them. And not only worship they these Images, but what sever stone they

erect on the Altars in their Temples.

Omistoffo's and

They call commonly these Gods Omittoffois, they offer them Incense, B njamin, Ciuet, and another Wood which they call Cayo, \* Laque, and other smelling things. They offer them there offerings another vivos with the control of t tries behind the doores of the Houses, in the which they have their carued Idols : to the which every day in the Morning and at Evening they offer Incente and other perfumes. They have in many places (as well in the Townes as out of them) Temples of Lucis. In all the thips they fayle in , they make prefently a place for to worship in, where they carrie their idols.

Lots.

In all things they are to enterprize either Iournies by Sea or by land, they wie Lots & caft them before their Gods. The Lots are two sticks made like halfe a Nut-shell, stat on the one side, and round on the other ; and as bigge againe as an halfe Nut, and joyned with a firing. And when to they will cast Lots, they speak first with their God, perswading him with words, and promising him some Offring if he give him a good Lot, & in it shew him his good Voyage or good succeffe of his bufines. And after many words they call the Lots. And if both the flats fides fal vpward on one vp another downe, they hold it for an euill Lot, and turne them toward their Gods very melancholy, they call them Dogs, with many other reproaches. After they are wearie of rating them, they foothe them againe with faire milde words, and aske pardon, faying, that the Melancholy of not giving them a good Lot, caused them to doe them injurie, and speake injurious words vnto him: but that they will pardon them and give them a good Lot; and they promife to offer him more such a thing (because the promises are the better for them that promise them. they make many and great promifes and offerings) and fo they cast Lots so many times till 20 they fall both on the flat fides which they hold for a good Lot, then remayning well contented. Cruell men to they offer to their Gods that which they promifed. It happeneth many times when they caff

Lots about any weighty matter, if the Lot fall not out good, or launching a thip to the Sea it goeth not well, and tome euill came to it, they runne to their Gods and caft them in the water. and put them in the flame of the fire fometimes, and let them forch a little, and fpurning them often, and tread them under foot, and give them rayling words, till their businesse be ended. and then they carrie them with playing and feasts, and give them their Offerings.

Offerings.

They hold for a great Offering a Hogges head boyled: they offer Hennes, Greefe, Duckes and Rice all dreft, and a great pot of Wine. After they present it all to the Gods, they fet his portion apart, which is, to put in a Dish, the small points of the Hogs eare, the bils, and the points 30 of the clawes of the Hennes, Geefe, and Duckes, a few cornes of Rice very few, and put in with great heed, three or foure drops of Wine very heedfully, that there fall not many drops from the Pot. Thefe things fo fet in a Bason that they fet them on the Altar to their Gods for to eate, and they fet themselves there before the Gods to eate all that which they bring.

The Deuill

They worthip the Deuill also, which they paint after our fashion: and say that they worthip him because he maketh those which are good, Deuils; and the euill, he maketh Buffes, or Kine, or other beafts. And they fay that the Deuill hath a Mafter that teacheth him his Knaueries; thefe things fay the base people: the better fort fay they worship him because hee shall doe them no

When they will Lunch any new thip to the Sea, their Priests being called by them come into the ships to doe their Sacrifices with long side Garments of Silke. They set about the shippe many flags of Silke, they paint in the prow of the ship the Deaill, to the which they make many reuerences and Offerings, and fay they doe it becaute the Deuill shall doe no hurt to the ship. They offer to the Gods Papers with divers Images painted, and other of fundry kinde of cuttings, and they burne them all before the Idols with certayne Ceremonies and well tuned Songs, and while their finging doth laft, they ring cercayne small Bels, and among all they vie

In this Countrey are two manner of Priests, the one that have their head all shaven, these

Paper Offeruigs.

Two fores of Pr. Ac. Monkes.

weare on their heads certayne course Caps like vnto Canopie cloth, they are high, and flat behind (higher before then behind a hand breadth) made like a Mitre with Pinacles : their wea- 50

gre .t ftore of eating and drinking.

Seculars.

Feafis,

Traditionall

ring is white Coates after the Lay-mens fathion. Thefe line in Monasteries, they have dining places, and Cels, and many pleafures within their wals. There he others whom commonly the people doe vie for their Burials and Sacrifices, thele weare their haire, and blacke filke Coates, or of Searge or Linnen, and long like the Lay-men, having for a token their haire made fast in the Crowne of the head with a flicke very well made like a closed hand, varnished blacke. None of these Priests have Wines, but they line wickedly and filthily. The first day of the yeare, which is in the new Moone of March, they make through all the Land great Feafts, they visit one another, the chiefe principally doe make great Banquets. How

much these people are curious in the rule and government of the Countrey, and in their common Traffique, so much they are beaftly in their Gentilities, in the viage of their Gods and Idola-60 tries. For befides that which is faid, they have many Gentificall Lyes, of men that were turned into Dogges, and afterward into men, and of Snakes that were converted into men, and many

I entred one day into a Temple and came to an Altar; where were certaine stones set up

which they worthipped, and trusting in the little estimation they held their Gods in, and in being men that would be fatisfied with reason, I threw the stones downe to the ground, whereat fome ranne very fiercely at me and angry, asking me wherefore I had done that, I went millly to them, and smiling, said to them, because they were so inconsiderate that they worshipped thosestones. They asked me wherefore should they not adore them: and I shewed them how they were better then they, feeing they had the vie of reason, feete, hands, and eyes, wherewith they did divers things that the frones could not doe, and that feeing they were better they should not abase and esteeme so little of themselves as to worthip things so vile they being so noble. They answered me that I had reason, and went out with me in company, leaving the stones To on the ground : fo that there is likelihood and shew of their becomming Christians; And it makethalio much to this purpose, their not making any difference of meate, as all the people of Indus doth. And feeing that among all the meates they efteeme the Porke most, it is almost im-

polible for them to become Turkes.

Notwithstanding, there are two verie great inconveniences to make any Christians in this Countrey. The one is, that in no wife they will permit any noueltie in the Countrey, as in fome fort it may bee seene in the matter of the Moores. So that whatsoever noveltie that is in No noveltie, the Countrey, the Louthia take order presently how to represent; and it goeth no further. Whence it happened in Cantan, because they faw a Portugall measure the entries of the Gates, they fet prefently Watches that none should come in without licence, nor goe vpon the Walls.

20 The lesond is, that no strange person may enter into China without leave of the Louthids, nor be in Cantan, which doe give him a certaine time to bee in Cantan. The time of the licence ended, Provisions as presently they labour to have them depart. Wherefore because I and those which were with sainst stay of me were one moneth longer in Cantan, they fet vp written rords that none should keepe nor Surangers. harbour vs in their houses, vnder payne of fo much, till wee held it our best cheape to goe to the Ships. To the aboutfaid is joyned the common people to bee greatly in feare of the Louibias. wherefore none of them durst become a Christian without their licence, or at the least many would not doe it. Therefore as a man cannot be feeled in the Country, hee cannot continue Preaching, and by confequence he cannot fructifie and preferue the fruit. There was not with-

standing one way how to Preach freely, and fruit might be made in the Countrey, without any dogge barking at the Preacher, nor any Lombia doe him hurt any way : which is, if hee hair a licence for it of the King & And it might bee obtayned if a followine Embaffage were fent with a fo- Note: license preferents the King of China, in the name of the King of Portlight, reigion, men gaing with the Ambaffadour to obtanne the licence to goe about the Canatre, security themselves to be men with. sut Armes. And how our Law is no presidence to his Dominion and Consernement, but a great helpe that all might obey him and keepe his Lames. This onely's emedie there is in China, to reape any fruit, that an import voy onto moments.) And without this it is impossible for any Relations men to Preach art suifie, and because I had not this remedie, history the abbiecaid incommeniences, I came away from China, and therefore neither I, nor they of the bompany of It's vs which enterprised alreadie this bufine fe fundry emes, could fruitsfie in China.

This people hath bendes the ignorances above faith, that fifthy abomimition, that they refraine Chizois Sode no excamong them. Notwichthanding Preaching forietimes, as well publike as prinately mices. against this vice they were glad to heare mee, faying, that I had reason in that which I sayd, but but that they never had had any that told them that was a finite, hor any thing evill done. It feemeth that because this sinne is common among them, God was willing to fend them a grieuous punishment in some places of the earth, the which was common iff all China. Theing in the Plagues hap-Citie of Contan, and being willing to know of a rich China Warchant the euils that had happe- uing in thick ned in the Countrey, and free notable to tell it me by word of mouth, gaue me a Letter which they had written vnto him of what had happened & faying to me; that I should translate it and

give it him againe : but not trusting me hee translated it presently, and remayning with the 50 copie gaue me the principall, which I translated into Portugal with the helpe of one that could speake our lunguage and theirs, the tenour of the Letter is this.

The principall Londing of Sanzi and of Santon, wrote vnto the King, faying, that in those Prouinces the earth did thake terribly; and the dayes waxed darke like night (her Japh not how long) a South-fayer told them all that should happen. In the yeere before in the moneth of September, the earth opened in many places, and under it were heard great novices like the found of Bells, there followed a great winde with much rayne, and the winde ranne about all the Compatie. This winde is called in China, Tufaune, and many yeeres it bloweth but once a yeere, Tufan a terriand it is fo raging, that it driveth a Ship under fayle on the Land a great space, and the men can-bic tempost.

not keepe their feete, not leaving and holding one by another, and it doth things worthie admi-60 ration and incredible. In the yeere that I was in China, in the part where the Portugals were, they shewed the Boat of a Ship of a good bignesse, and the place where it was a land (that this winde carrayed it, might bee a great stones cast from the water) and many did affirme it to mee, that the winde had such force that it carryed it tumbling till it blew it into the Sea. And all the houses the Portugals had made of timber, and coursed with strawe, which were many and

the last fell also, and onely one that was sheltered with a high place escaped that it fell not. To blow downe these houses was nothing, for it doth many other things incredible. This winde is

almost euerie yeere in China, the which within twentie foure houres that it raigneth, it run-

neth about all the points of the Compaffe, With this winde, and the Lands being snaken with the Earthquakes, many Cities fell and were made desolate, in the which dyed innume.

#### CHAP. XI.

The relation of GALEOTTO PERERA, a Gentleman of good credit, that lay Prisoner in China.

His Land of China is parted into thirteene ' Shires, which sometimes were each 'You shall have one a Kingdome by it felfe, but these many yeeres they have beene all subject a more sull devnto one King.

The King maketh alwayes his abode in the great Citie Pachin, as much to fay ter Authors: in our language (as by the name thereof I am aduertifed,) the " Towne of the who yet could Kingdome. This Kingdome is so large, that vinder fine moneths you are not a Botsowell as ble to trauell from the Townes by the Sea lide, to the Court and backe againe, no not under three this, tell their moneths in Poste at your vegent businesse. The Post-hories in this Countrey are little of bodie, ceedings segment but swift of foote. Many doe trauell the greater part of this journey by water in certaine light rise, prions,

Barkes, for the multitude of Rivers, commodious for passage from one Citie to another, The King, notwithstanding the hugenesse of his Kingdome, hath such a care thereof, that eue. &c. these 13. rie Moone (by the Moones they reckon their moneths) he is aduertifed fully of what focuer thing deritood behappeneth therein. Before that wee doe come to (mese, we have to passe through many places, sides the two and some of great importance. For this Countrey is so well inhabited neere the Sea side, that royall Prouin.

you cannot goe one mylebu you shall see some Towne, Borough, or Hostrie, the which are so access you cannot goe one mylebu 'you intail tee iome 1 owne, norough, or nottre, the which are 102-bundarily prouided of all chings, that in the Cities and Townes they line civilly. Neuercheffle, fuch as dwell abroad are very poors, for the multitude of them enery where fo great, then of a Tree you shall see many times swarme a number of Children, where a man would not have "Emblastic." thought to have found any one at all.

From these places in number infinite, you shall come vnto two Cities very populous, and be- same, and so ing compared with Conces, not possibly to bee discerned which is the greater of them. These the Magellicall Cities are as well walled as any Cities in all the world. As you come into either of them, fran-Pole Horfe. deth fo great and mightie a Bridge, that the like thereof I have never seene in Portugal, nor else Their months. 30 where. I heard one of my fellowes say, that he told in one Bridge fortie Arches. The occasion Excellent wals wherefore thefe Bridges are made fo great, is for that the Country is toward the Sea very plaine and an admiand low, and ouerwhelmed euer as the Sea-water encreafeth. The breadth of the Bridges although it be well proportioned voto the length thereof, yet are they equally built, no higher in

the middle than at either end, in such wife that you may directly see from the one end to the other, the fides are wonderfully well engraved after the manner of Rome workes. But that wee Magnificent did most maruell at, was therewithall the hugenesse of the stones, the like wherof, as we came in\_ stones, to the City, we did see many set up in places dishabited by the way, to no small charges of theirs, howbeit to little purpole, wheras no body feeth them but fuch as do come by. The Arches are not made after our fashion, vaulted with sindry stones set together: but paued, as it were, whole stones 40 reaching from one Pillar to another, in fuch wife that they lie both for the Arches heads, & gal-

lantly ferue also for the high-way. I have been aftonied to behold the hugenesse of these aforesaid stones, some of them are twelue paces long and vpward, the least eleuen good paces long, and an halfe. The wayes each where are gallantly paued with four-foure Stone, except it be where for Wayes paned, want of Stone they vie to lay Bricke: in this voyage we trauelled ouer certaine Hills, where the bricked, or wayes were pitched, and in many places no worfe paued than in the plaine ground.

The Countrey is so well inhabited, that no one foot of ground is left untilled : small store of Culture and cattell haue we seene this way, we saw onely certaine Oxen wherewithall the countrey-men busbanders doe plough their ground. One Oxe draweth the Plough alone, not onely in this Shire, but in other places also, wherein is greater store of cattell. These countrey-men by art doe that in til-

50 lage, which we are constrained to doe by force. Here be fold the voydings of Close-stooles, although there wanteth not the dung of beafts : and the excrements of man are good marchandife throughout all China. The Dung-fermers feeke in every street by exchange to buy their durtie ware for Hearbs and Wood. The custome is very good for keeping the Citie cleane. There is great abundance of Hennes, Geese, Duckes, Swine, and Goates, Wethers have they none: the Hennes are fold by weight, and so are all other things. Two pound of Hennes flesh, Goose, or Ducke, is worth two Foi of their money, that is, three halfe pence. Swines flesh is fold at a peny the pound. Beefe beareth the same price, for the scarcitie thereof, howbeit Northward from Fuquies, and further from the Sea coast, there is Beefe more plentie, and fold better cheape, Beefe

onely excepted, great aboundance of all these Viands wee have had in all the Cities wee passed 60 through. And if this Countrey were like vnto India, the Inhabitants whereof eate neither Hen; Beefe, nor Porke, but keepe that onely for the Portugals and Moores, they would bee fold here for nothing. But it fo falling out that the Chineani are the greatest eaters in all the world, they doe feed vpon all things, specially vpon Porke, the fatter that is vnto them, the leffe lothsome. The highest price of these things aforesaid, I have set downe, better cheape shall you sometimes

rable people. Finganfa, Swallowed vp. quire perished, Leuchimen.

In a Citie called Vinyanfus, in this day was a great Earthquake. And on the west side a great Fire burft out, that swallowed vp all the Citie, in the which, innumerable people perished, esca- 10 ping in one place two, in another three, and so some of the Mogores chaped. In another Citie neere to this, there happened the same, but in this none escaped. In a Citie called Lenchingen. the River increased in such fort, that it ouer-slowed the Citie, where infinite people were drowned. In a Citie called Hien, was an Earthquake, with the which many houfes fell, which flew neere eight thousand soules. In Pucho, the house of the Kings kinsman fell and slew all that were in the house, except a Childe of seuen or eight yeeres old his sonne. (which was carryed to the King) and day and night was a noyle heard under the earth, like

Couchue.

Puchio.

Enchineen. Inchumen,

In a Countrey called Cochne, with fire from Heauen and with many waters of a Floud many perified, and the land remayned vnable to bee cultivated againe. In a Countrey called 20 Enchmoen, at midnight the houles fell, and the Citie remayned defolate and ruined, where perished neere one hundred thousand soules. In a Citie called Inchumen, in one day and a night, the River did flow and ebbe ten times, and with the great floud many people perished. Hitherto the translation of the Letter: that which followeth, was heard by word of mouth of the Portugals that were in the Port of Causan in the moneth of May, and I received the Letter in September.

Sanxi.

In a Citie called Sanci, from midnight till fue of the clocke in the morning, the earth shooke three times, the eighteenth of lanuarie, 1556. and the next day after, from midnight till noone. happened the same: the next day following, the twentie of the sayd moneth, the earth shooke mightily after midnight with great Thunder and Lightnings, and all the Prounce was burnt, 30 and all the people thereof, and all the Suburbes, Townes, and Cities: they fay it is from bound to bound, firtie or fixtie leagues, that there was not one faued but a Childe, fonne to a kinfman of the King, which was carried to the King. And the third of Februarie in the same yeere, Bloudie showin the Citie of Panquin where the King is, fell a shower of rayne like bloud. These newes brought one of China that came to Cantan, from a Citie neere to Sanxi, to give newes to a Louthis that hee should resort to his owne house, and faid, that the Citie where he was a dweller was ouerflowne, and that he knew not whether it would perish with the reft. That which ought to bee held for truth, is, that in three Prounces which commonly are fayd to be deffroyed, there was no more destruction then of those places whereof the Letter maketh mention, or little more. The agreeing in the Childe, sheweth that the Towne whereof the Letter maketh mention with 40 the childe, was in the Province of Sanzi. This hath more apparance of truth, because the Letter was written from the Court, then to fay that all the three Prouinces perifhed.

After the happening of the things about aid: the fame yeere in the Province of Cantan, a Woman which went to the Panchasi, told him that the Province of Cansi would bee destroyed with power from Heaven, the which after thee was well whipt, was imprisoned : but in the moneth of May of the same yeere, there fell great store of rayne verie hot, with the which the earth seemed to burne, and many people perished with the great heate: but the Prouince perished not altogether: wherefore this woman was carried to the King, which was in prison in the place where the Portugals were, which told this,

Reader, for assumed as this Anthor bath often mentioned, and related also the storie of certaine Por- 50 tugals, Prisoners in China (one of which bee nameth Galotte Perera) from whom bee received great part of the China mtelligence: I have thought good to adde bother Perceas relations, translated long fince out of Italian, and published by R. Willes; busing abbreviated some things in the Free; that yes might rather have them at the first hand from this Gentleman which sam them : but abbreviated to present tediousnelle.

made of Hennes, and are good meat among it them, as also Dogs, Cats, Rats, Snakes, and all other

vncleane meates.

200

the Cities.

The Cities be very gallant, specially neere vnto the Gates, the which are maruellously great. and couered with Iron. The Gate-houses built on high with Towers, the lower part thereof is made of Bricke and Stone, proportionally with the walls, from the walls vpward, the building is of Timber, and many stories in it one about the other. The strength of their Townes is in the No Artillerie. mightie Wallsand Ditches; Artillery haue they none. The ftreets in Cinceo, and in all the rest of the Cities wee haue seene are very faire, so large and so straight that it is wonderfull to behold. Their houses are built with Timber, the foundations onely excepted, the which are laid in with Stone, in each fide of the fireets are paintefes, a continual Porches for the Marchants to walke under : the breadth of the fireet is neuerthelesse such, that in them fifteene men may ride commodiously fide by fide. As they ride they must needes passe vader many high Arches of triumph, that crosse ouer the streets made of Timber, and carved diversly, covered with Tile of fine Clay : vnder these arches the Mercers do vtter their smaller wares, and such as list to stand there are defenced from raine, and the heat of the Sunne. The greater Gentlemen have these Arches at their doores : although some of them be not so mightily built as the rest.

Legiea.

Archers.

I shall have occasion to speake of a certaine order of Gentlemen, that are called Loutea, I will first therefore expound what this word signifieth. Loutea, is as much to fay in our languageas Sir, and when any of them calleth his name, he answereth, Sir. The manner how Gentlemen 10 are created Loneas, & do come to that honour and title, is by giving a broad Girdle not like to the rest, and a Cap, at the commandement of the King. The name Loures is more generall and common vnto moe, than equalitie of honour thereby fignified, agreeth withall. Such Loneas that doe serue their Prince in weightie matters for instrice, are created after triall made of their learning : but the other which ferue in smaller affaires, as Capitaines, Constables, Sergeants by Land and Sea, Receivers, and such like, whereof there be meuery Citie, as also in this, very many are made for fauour : the chiefe Louteas are ferued kneeling.

The whole Prouince China is divided, as I have faid, into thirteene Shires, in every Shire at the cours al, cham. leaft is one Gouernour, called there Tutan, in fome Shires there be two. Chiefe in office next vnto them be certaine other named Chians, that is, high Commissioners, as you would say, or Visiters, with full authoritie in fuch wife, that they doe call vnto an account the Tutanes themselves, but their authoritie lasteth not in any Shire longer than one yeere. Neuerthelesse, in euery Shire, being at the least seuen Cities, yea, in some of them fifteene or fixteene, besides other Boroughs and Townes, not well to be numbred, these Visiters where they come, are so honoured and feared, as though they were some great Princes. At the yeares end their circuit done, they come wnto that City which is chiefe of others in the Shire, to doe Iuftice there : finally, bufying themfelues in the fearthing out of fuch as are to receive the order of Lonted; whereof more shall be faid in another place. Ouer and befides these officers in the chiefe Citie of each one of these aforesaid thirteene Pro-

uinces, is resident one Ponchiassi, Captaine thereof, and Treasurer of all the Kings revenues. This

Magistrate maketh his abode in one of the foure greatest houses that be in all their head Cities.

Anchia(si. al.Hexafi. Tuzi. TaiTu.

Prifons and fentencing offenders,

In the second great house dwelleth another Magistrate, called Anchiassi, a great officer also, for he hath dealings in all matters of luftice. Tazi, another officer fo called, lieth in the third house, a Magistrate of importance, specially in things belonging vnto warfare, for thereof hath hee charge. There is resident in the fourth house a fourth Officer , bearing name Tails. In this house is the principall prison of all the Citie. Each one of these Magistrates aforesaid may both lay enill doers in prilon, and deliuer them out againe, except the tact bee heynous and of importance: in fuch a case they can doe nothing, except they doe meet altogether. And if the deed deserve death, all they together cannot determine thereof, without recourse made vnto the Chian wheresoeuer he be, or to the Tutan: and eftloones it falleth out, that the case be referred vnto higher power. In all Cities, not onely chiefe in each Shire, but in the rest also are meanes found to make

mencement or Loutens. Many of them doe studie at the Prince his charges, wherefore at the yeeres end they refort vnto the head Cities, whither the Chians doe come, as it hath beene earst faid, as well to give these degrees, as to sit in judgement over the prisoners.

The Chians goe in circuit every yeere, but fuch as are to be chosen to the greatest off ces, meet not but from three yeeres to three yeeres, and that in certain large halls appointed for them to be examined in. Many things are asked them, whereunto if they doe answere accordingly, and be found sufficient to take their degree, the Chian by and by granteth it them : but the Capand Girdle whereby they are knowne to be Lontess, they weare not before that they bee confirmed by the King. Their examination done, and triall made of them, fuch as have taken their degree 60 wont to be given them with all Ceremonies, vie to banquet and feast many daies together (as the Chineans fashion is to end all their pleasures with eating and drinking ) and soremain chofen to doe the King feruice in matters of learning. The other examinates found infufficient to proceed, are fent backe to their studie againe. Whose ignorance is perceived to come of negligence and default, such a one is whipped, and fometimes fent to prison, where wee lying that weere when this kinde of Act was, wee found many thus punished, and demanding the cause thereof, they faid it was for that they knew not how to answere vnto certaine things asked

CHAP. II. Louteas Maiestie. Manner of eating, Respect of Denills.

It is a world to fee how thefe Louiess are ferued and feared, in such wife, that in publike af- Their Mairsty. Comblies at one shrike they give, all the servitors belonging vinto lustice, tremble thereat. At their being in these places, when they list to move, be it but even to the gate, these Servitors doe take them vp, and carry them in feats of beaten Gold. After this fort are they borne when they goe in the Citie, either for their owne businesse abroad, or to see each other at home. For the digthat goeth in their feats is vibered by two men at the leaft, that cry vnto the people to give

nitie they have, and office they doe beare, they be all accompanied : the very meanest of them all place, howbeit they need it not, for that reverence the common people hath vnto them. They have also in their company certaine Sergeants, with their Maces, either filuered, or altogether Silver, some two, some foure, other fix, other eight, conveniently for each one his degree. The more principall and chiefe Loutess have going orderly before these Sergeants, many other with Staues, and a great many Catch-poles with Rods of Indian Canes dragged to the ground, fo that the threets being paued, you may here a farre off, as well the noise of the Rods, as the voyce of the cryers. These fellowes serue also to apprehend others, and the better to be knowne, they weare liverie-red Girdles, and in their Caps Pecocks Feathers. Behinde thefe Louteas come 20 fuch as doe beare certaine Tables hanged at staues ends, wherein is written in Siluer letters the name, degree, and office of that Louten, whom they follow. In like manner they have borne af-

ter them Hats agreeable vinto their titles : if the Louise bee meane, then hath he brought after him but one Hat, and that may not be yellow : but if hee be of better fort, then may hee have two, three, or foure : the principall and chiefe Loutess , may have all their Hats yellow , the which among them is accounted great honour. The Lones for warres, although hee bee but meane, may notwithstanding haue yellow Hats. The Tutanes and Chians, when they goe abroad . have befides all this before them led three or foure Horses , with their Guard in

Furthermore, the Louteas, yea, and all the people in China, are wont to eat their meat fit- Manner of 20 ting on Stooles at high Tables as wee doe, and that very cleanly, although they vie neither Ta- eating. ble-clothes nor Napkins. Whatfoeuer is let downe vpon the boord is first carued, before that it be brought in: they feed with two Sticks, refraining from touching their meat with their hands, euen as we do with Forkes, for the which respect, they left doesned any Table-clothes. Neither We, that is, the is the Nation onely civil at meat, but also in conversation and in courtesse they seeme to exceed Italians and all other. Likewise in their dealings, after their manner they are so readie, that they farre passe Spaniards. all other Gentiles and Moores: the greater States are so vaine, that they line their clothes with the best filke that may be found. The Louisarare an idle generation, without all manner of exercises and pastimes, except it be eating and drinking. Sometimes they walke abroad in the fields, to make the Souldiers shoot at Prioks with their Bowes, but their eating passeth : they 40 will fland eating even when the other doe draw to shoot. The Pricke is a great Blanket spread Shooting. on certaine long Poles, he that strikethir, hath of the best man there standing a piece of Crimfon Taffata, the which is knit about his head : in this fort the winner is honoured, and the Lowress

with their bellies full, returne home againe. The Inhabitants of China, beevery Idolaters, all generally doe worship the heavens: and as Idolany we are wont to lay, God knoweth it : 10 fay they at enery word, Tien Tautee, that is to fay, The Heanens doe know it. Some doe worship the Sunne, and some the Moone, as they thinke good, for none are bound more to one then to another. In their Temples, the which they doe call Meani, they have a great Altar in the same place as we have, true it is, that one may goe round about it. There fet they up the Image of a certaine Laures of that Countrey, whom they have in great reverence for certaine notable things he did. At the right hand flandeth the Deuill, much 50 more vgly painted then we doe vie to let him out, whereunto great homage is done by fuch as

come into the Temple to aske counfell, or to draw lots: this opinion they have of him, that he 15 malicious and able to docenill. If you aske them what they doe thinke of the foules departed, they will answer, that they be immortall, and that as soone as any one departeth out of this life, he becommeth a deuil, if he have lived well in this world, if other wife, that the fane deuil changeth him into a Buffe, Oxe, or Dog. Wherefore to this Deuill doe they much honour, to him do they facrifice, praying him that he will make them like vnto himselfe, and not like other beasts. They have moreover another fort of Temples, wherein both voon the Altars, and also on the walls doe fland many Idols well proportioned, but bare headed : Their beare name Omishofon, accounted of them spirits, but such as in heaven doe neither good nor eaill, thought to bee such

60 men and women, as have chattely lived in this world in abitinence from Fish and Flesh, fed on- Dendimes ly with Rice and Salates. Of that Deuill they make some account, for these spirits they care lit respected. tle or nothing at all. Againe, they hold opinion, that if a man doe well in this life, the heavens will give him many temporall bleffings, but if he doe euill, then shall he have infirmities, difeafes,

troubles, and penurie, and all this without any knowledge of God. Finally, this people knoweth no other thing then to line and die, yet because they be reasonable creatures, all seemed good vnto them we spake in our language, though it were not very sufficient.

New and full

Our manner of praying so well liked them, that in prison importunately they befought ys to So did the to. Write for them famewhat as concerning heaven, the which we did to their contentation, with May Auguries, fuch reasons as we knew, howbeit not very cunningly. As they doe their Idolatry they laugh Sodomie fre- at themselves. The greatest fault we doe finde in them is Sodomie, a vice very common in the meaner fort, and nothing strange amongst the best. Furthermore the Louteas, withall the people of China, are wont to folemnize the daies of the new and full Moones in vifiting one each other, and making great banquets, for to that end, as I haue faid, doe tend all their pastimes and spen- ia ding their daies in pleasure. They are wont also to folemnize each one his birth day, whereunto

Birth-dayes.

their kindred and friends doe refort of custome, with presents of Iewells or Money, receiping againe for their reward good cheere. They keepe in like manner a generall Feast, with great Banquets that day their King was borne. But their most principall and greatest Feast of all, and best cheare, is the first day of their new yeere, namely, the first day of the New Moone of Februarie, fo that their first moneth is March, and they reckon the times accordingly, respect being had vnto the reigne of their Princes : as when any deed is written. they date it thus ; Made fuch a day of fuch a Moone, and fuch a yeere of the raigne of fuch a King.

Iufti: c.

Now will I speake of the manner the which the Chineans doe observe in doing Justice. Be-20 cause the Chinish King maketh his abode continually in the City Pachin, his Kingdome so great, the shires to many, as before it hath beene said : in it therefore the Gouernours and Rulers, much like vnto our Sheriffes be so appointed suddenly, and speedily discharged againe, that they have no time to grow nought. Furthermore, to keepe the State in more fecuritie, the Longest that gouerne one shire, are chosen out of some other shire distant farre off, where they must leave their Wines, Children, and Goods, carrying nothing with them but themselues. True it is, that at their comming thither they doe find in a readinesse all things necessarie, their House, Furnis ture, Seruants, and all other things in such perfection and plentie, that they want nothing. Thus King is well ferued without all feare of Treason.

In the principall Cities of the shires be fourechiefe Loutess , before whom are brought all 30 matters of the inferiour Townes, throughout the whole Realme. Divers other Loutess have the managing of Iuftice, and receiving of Rents, bound to yeeld an account thereof vnto the greater Officers. Other doe fee that there be no euill rule kept in the Citie : each one as it behoueth him. Generally all these doe imprison Malefactors, cause them to be whipped and racked, hovfing them up and downe by the armes with a cord, a thing very vivall there, and accounted no shame. These Loutess doe vie great diligence in the apprehending of the Theeues, so that it is a wonder to fee a Thiefe escape away in any Towne, Citie, or Village. Vpon the Sea neere vnto the shoare many are taken, and looke even as they are taken, so be they first whipped, and af-Hard Prilons. terward laid in Prilon, where shortly after they all dye for hunger and cold. At that time, when we were in Prison, there dyed of them about threescore and ten. Their whips be certaine pie-40 ces of Canes, cleft in the middle, in such fort that they seeme rather plaine then sharpe. He that is to bee whipped lyeth groueling on the ground. Vpon his thighes the Hangman layeth on blowes might ly with these Canes, that the standers by tremble at their crueltie. Tenne stripes draw a great deale of bloud, twentie or thirtie spoyle the fiesh altogether, fiftie or threescore will require long time to be healed, and if they come to the number of one hundred, then are they incorable.

The Italians callit the ftra-Beating with Canes.

Examinations.

The Loutess observe moreover this: when any man is brought before them to bee examined, they aske him openly in the hearing of as many as be prefent, be the offence neuer fo great. Thus did they also behaue themselus with vs. For this cause amongst them can there be no salse witnes as daily amongst vs it falleth out. This good commeth thereof that many being alwayes about 50 the Judge to heare the Euidence, and beare witnesse, the Processe cannot be fallisted, as it hapnets Iometimes with vs. The Moores, Gentiles, and Iemes, have all their fundry Oathes, the Moores doe sweare by their Mossafos, the Brachmans by their Fili, the rest likewise by the things they doe worship. The Chineans, though they be wont to sweare by Heauen, by the Moone, by the Sunne, and by all their Idols, in judgement neverthelesse they sweare not at all. If for some offence an Oath be vied of any one, by and by with the least enidence hee is tormented; so be the Witnesses he bringeth, if they tell not the truth, or doe in any point difagree, except they bee men of worthin and credit, who are beleeved without any farther matter: the rest are made to confesse the truth by force of Torments and Whips. Besides this order observed of them in Exso low, that they dare not once flure. Againe, these Lontens as great as they bee, not with standing the multitude of Notaries they have, not trusting any others, doe write all great Processes and matters of importance themselves. Moreover, one vertue they have worthy of great praise,

aminations, they doe feare so much their King, and he where he maketh his abode keepeth them 60 and that is, being men to well regarded and accounted of as though they were Princes, they bee

nations about measure in giving audience. Wer poore strangers brought before them might say what we would, as all to be Lyes and Falaces that they did write, nor did we stand before them with the viuall Ceremonies of that Country, yet did they beare with vs fo patiently, that they caused vs to wonder, knowing specially how little any Aduocate or Judge is wont in our Countrey to beare with vs. For wherefoeuer in any Towne of Christendome should bee accused vnknowne men as we were, I know not what end the very Innocents cause would have : but wee in a Heathen Countrey, having our great Enemies two of the chiefest men in a whole Towne, Senere Inflicewanting an Interpreter, ignorant of that Countrey Language, did in the end fee our great Adnerfaries cast into Prison for our take, and deprived of their Offices and Honour for not doing

203

To Juffice: yea, not to escape death, for as the rumour goeth, they shall bee beheaded, Somewhat is now to be faid of the Lawes that I have beene able to know in this Country, Lawes, and first, no Theft or Murther, is at any time pardoned : Adulterers are put in Prison , and the fact once proued, condemned to dye, the womans Husband must accuse them : this order is kept with men and women found in that fault, but Theeues and Murtherers are imprisoned as I have faid, where they shortly dye for hunger and cold. If any one haply escape by bribing the lave lor to giue him meate, his Processe goeth farther, and commeth to the Court where hee is condemned to dye. Sentence being given, the Pritoner is brought in publike with a terrible band of A Pillorie men that lay him in Irons hand and foot, with a board at his necke one handfull broad in length board. reaching downe to his knees, cleft in two parts, and with a hole one handfull downe-ward in 20 the Table fit for his necke, the which they encloie vp therein, nayling the board fast together, one handfull of the board flandeth up behind in the necke : the fentence and cause wherefore the fellon was condemned to dye, is written in that part of the Table that standeth before. This Ceremonie ended, he is laid in a great Prison in the company of some other condemned persons,

the which are found by the King as long as they doe line. The board aforefaid fo made tormenteth the Prisoners very much, keeping them both from the rest, and eke letting them to eate

there a greater and a more principall Prison then in any of the rest : and although in every Citie there be many, neuerthelesse in three of them remayne onely such as bee condemned to dye. Their death is much prolonged, for that ordinarily there is no execution done but once a years, though many dye for hunger and cold, as we have trene in this Prison. Execution is done in this Execution manner The Chian, to wit the high Commissioner or Lord Chiefe Iuitice, at the yeares end goeth to the head Citie, where hee heareth agains the causes of such as bee condemned. Many times he deliuereth some of them, declaring that board to have beene wrongfully put about their neckes : the visitation ended, he chooseth out seuen or eight, not many more or lesse, of the greatest Malefactors, the which, to feare and keepe in awe the people, are brought into a great Market place, where all the great Loutess meete together, and after many Ceremonies and Superfitions, as the vie of the Country is , are beheaded. This is done once a yeare : who fo 40 escapeth that day, may be sure that he shall not be put to death all that yeare following, and so remayneth at the Kings charges in the greater Prison. In that Prison where wee lay were alwayes one hundred and moe of these condemned persons, besides them that lay in other Prisons.

commodiously, their hands being manicled in Irons under that board, fo that in fine there is no

remedie but death. In the chiefe Cities of euery shire, as we have beforefaid, there be foure prin-

cipall Houses, in each of them a Prisoner: but in one of them where the Tails maketh his abode,

These Prilons wherein the condemned captines doe remayne are so strong, that it hath not strength of beene heard, that any Prifoner in all Ching bath escaped out of Prifon, for, indeed, it is a thing the Prifons impossible. The Prisons are thus builded. First, all the place is mightily walled about, the wals be very strong and high, the gate of no lesse force : within it three other gates, before you come where the Prisoners doe lye, there many great Lodgings are to be seene of the Loutess, Notaries, Parthions, that is, such as doe there keepe watch and ward day and night, the Court large and paued, on the one fide whereof flandeth a Prison, with two mighty gates, wherein are kept 50 fuch Prisoners as have committed enormious offences. This Prison is so great, that in it are fireets and Market places wherein all things necessary are fold. Yea, some Prisoners line by that kind of Trade, buying and felling, and letting out beds to hire: fome are daily fent to Prison, some daily delinered, wherefore this place is neuer voyd of feuen or eight hundred men that goe at Store of Prife-

Into one other Prison of condemned persons shall you goe at three Iron gates, the Court paued and vaulted round about, and open aboue as it were a Cloyfter. In this Cloyfter bee eight Roomes with Iron Doores, and in each of them a large Gallerie, wherein enery night the Priioners doe lye at length, their feet in the flockes, their bodies hampered in huge woodden grates that keepe them from litting fo that they lye as it were in a Cage, fleepe if they can in the mor-60 ning they are looted agains that they may goe into the Court. Notwithstanding the strength of this Prison, it is kept with a Garrison of men, part whereof watch within the House, part of them in the Court, some keepe about the Prison with Lanthornes, and Watch-bels, answering one another fine times enery night, and giving warning to lowde, that the Loutes relling in a Chamber not neere thereunto may heare them. In theie Prifon; of condemned perions remayne

CHAP. II.

fome fifteene, other twentie yeares imprisoned, not executed, for the love of their honourable Friends that feeke to prolong their lines. Many of these Prisoners bee Shoomakers, and have from the King a certayne allowance of Rice : fome of them worke for the Keeper, who fuffee reth them to goe at libertie without fetters and boards, the better to worke. Howbeit when the Loutes calleth his Checke Roll, and with the Keeper vieweth them, they all weare their Lineries, that is, boards at their neckes, Ironed hand and foote. When any of these Prisoners dyeth, he is to bee seene of the Loutes and Notaries, brought out at a gate so narrow, that there can but one be drawne out there at once. The Prisoner beeing brought forth, one of the afore. faid Parthians, striketh him thrice on the head with an Iron fledge, that done, hee is delinered unto his friends, if hee haueany, otherwise the King hireth men to carrie him to his buriall in la

Courfe for

204

Thus Adulterers and Theeues are vied. Such as be imprisoned for Debt once knowne, lye there untill it be paid. The Taiffu or Lonces calleth them many times before him by the vertue of his Office, who understanding the cause wherefore they doe not pay their Debts, appointeth them a certaine time to doe it, within the compasse whereof if they discharge not their Debts beeing Debters indeed, then they be whipped and condemned to perpetual! Imprisonment : if the Creditors be many, and one is to be paid before another, they doe, contrary to our manner, pay him first, of whom they last borrowed, and so ordinarily the rest, in such fort that the first Lender be the last Receiver. The same order is kept in paying Legacies: the last named, receiveth his portion first.

When I faid that fuch as be committed to Prison for Theft, and Murther, were judged by the Court, I meant not them that were apprehended in the deed doing, for they need no tryall, but are brought immediately before the Tatan, who out of hand giveth sentence. Other not taken so openly, and doe need tryall, are the Malefactors put to execution once a yeare in the chiefe Cities, to keepe in awe the people : or condemned, doe remayne in Prifon, looking for their day, Theeues being taken, are carried to Prison from one place to another in a Chest vpon mens shoulders, hired therefore by the King, the Cheft is fixe handfuls high, the Prifoner fitteth therein vpon a bench, the couer of the Chest is two boards; amidst them both a Pillory-like hole, for the Prisoner his necke, there sitteth he with his head without the Chest, and the rest of his bodie within, not able to moue or turne his head this way or that way, nor to plucke it in: the necessis. ties of nature he voideth at a hole in the bottome of the Cheft, the meate he eateth is put into his mouth by others. There abideth he day and night during his whole Iourney: if happily his Porters stumble, or the Chest doe jogge, or be set downe carelelly, it turneth to his great paints that fitteth therein, all fuch motions being vnto him hanging as it were. Thus were our comple nions carried from Cinces, seuen dayes journey, neuer taking any rest as afterward they told vs. and their greatest griefe was to stay by the way : as soone as they came beeing taken out of the Chefts, they were not able to stand on their feet, and two of them dyed shortly after.

When we lay in prison at Fuquieo, we came many times abroad, and were brought to the Palaces of Noble men, to be seene of them and their wives, for that they had never seene any Portugall before. Many things they asked vs of our Countrey, and our fashions, and did 40 write euery thing, for they be curious in nouelties aboue measure. The Gentlemen shew great curtesie unto strangers, and so did we finde at their hands, and because that many times we were brought abroad into the Citie, formwhat will I fay of such things as I did fee therein, being a gallant Citie, and chiefe in one of the thirteene shires afore-said. The Citie Fnquiee, is very great and mightly walled with square stone both within and without, and as it may seeme by the breadth thereof, filled up in the middle with Earth, laid ouer with Bricke, and courred with Tyle, and after the manner of Porches or Galleries, that one might dwell therein. The stayres they vie, are so easily made, that one may goe them vp and downe a Horse-backe, as eftsoones they doe : the streets are paued, as alreadie it hath beene faid : there bee a great number of Metchants, every one hath written in a great Table at his doore fuch things as hee hath to fell. In 50 like manner every Artizan painteth out his craft: the Market places be large, great abundance of all things there be to be fold. The Citie standeth vpon water, many streames runne through it, the bankes pitched, and so broad that they serue for streets to the Cities vie. Querthe ftreames are fundry Bridges both of Timber and Stone, that being made levell with the streets, hinder not the passage of the Barges to and fro, the Chanels are so deepe. Where the streames come in and goe out of the Citie, be certayne Arches in the Wall, there goe in and out their Parai, that is a kind of Barges they have, and this onely in the day time : at night these Arches are closed up with gates, so doe they shut up all the gates of the Citie. These streames and Barges doe embellish much the Citie, and make it as it were to seeme another Venice. The buildings are euen, well made, high not lofted, except it be some wherein Merchandize is laid. It is a World 60 to fee how great these Cities are, and the cause is, for that the houses are built even, as I have said, and doe take a great deale of roome. One thing we faw in this Citie that made vs all to wonder, and is worthy to be noted : Namely, ouer a Porch at the comming into one of the afore-faid foure Houses, the which the King hath in enery share for his Governours as I have before said,

standeth a Towre built vpon fortie Pillars, each one whereof is but one stone, each one fortie Towers in handfuls or spans long: in breadth or compasse twelve, as many of vs did measure them. Besides dingonictrie this, their greatnesse such in one piece, that it might seeme impossible to worke them : they bee Pillers, each of moreover covered, and in colour, length, and breath fo like, that the one nothing differeth one from.

Wee are wont to call this Country China, and the people Chineans, but as long as wee were Name of China Prisoners, not hearing amongst them at any time that name, I determined to learne how they were called ; and asked fometimes by them thereof, for that they vnderstood vs not when wee called them Chineans, I am wered them, that all the Inhabitants of India named them Chineans, In wherefore I prayed them that they would tell me, for what occasion they are so called, whither

peraduenture any Citie of theirs bare that name. Hereunto they alwayes answered me, to have no fuch name, nor ever to have had. Then did I aske them what name the whole Countrey beareth, and what they would answer being asked of other Nations what Countrey-men they were ! It was told me, that of ancient time in this Countrey had beene many Kings, and though prefently it were all under one, each Kingdome neuertheleffe enjoyed that name it first had, the le Kingdomes are the Prouinces I spake of before. In conclusion, they layd, that the whole Tamen the pro-Countrey is called Tamen, and the Inhabitants Tamegines, so that this name China or Chineans, pername of is not heard of in that Countrey. I doe thinke that the neareneffe of another Province therea. China Taligbout called Cochinchina, and the inhabitants thereof Cochineffes, first discourred before that China Marietti 20 ma was, lying not farre from Malacca, did give occasion both to the one Nation and to the o- necre Poles

ther of that name Chineans, as also the whole Countrey to bee named China. But their proper name of Manname is that aforefaid.

I have heard moreover, that in the Citie Nanquim, remayneth a Table of gold, and in it writ- gines. ten a Kings name, as a memorie of that refidence the Kings were wont to keepe there. This ta- Tables reusble standeth in a great Palace, couered alwayes, except it bee in some of their festivall dayes, at renced. what time they are wont to let it bee feene : couered neuertheleffe as it is, all the Nobilitie of the Citie goeth of dutie to doe it every day reverence. The like is done in the head Cities of all the other Shires, in the Palaces of the Ponchiassimi, wherein these aforesaid tables doe fland with the Kings name written in them, although no reuerence bee done thereunto but in 20 Solemne Featts.

I have likewise understood that the Citie Pachm, where the King maketh his abode, is so great, that to goe from one fide to the other, be fides the Suburbs, (which are greater then the Citie it felfe) it requireth one whole day a horsebacke, going hackney pace. In the Suburbs bee many wealthy Merchants of all forts. They told me furthermore, that it was Moted about, and in the Motes great store of Fish, whereof the King maketh great gaynes. It was also told mee Their enemies that the King of China had no King to wage battell withall, belides the Tartars, with whom hee had concluded a peace more then fourefcore yeeres agoe.

There bee Hospitals in all their Cities, alwayes full of people, wee neuer saw any poore bodie beg. We therefore asked the cause of this : answered it was, that in every Citie there is a great 40 circuit, wherein bee many houses for poore people, for Blinde, Lame, Old folke, not able to trauell for age, nor having any other meanes to line. These folke have in the aforesaid houses, ever plentie of Rice during their lines, but nothing elfe. Such as bee received into these houses, come in after this manner. When one is ficke, blinde, or lame, hee maketh a supplication to the Ponchiassi, and prouing that to bee true he writeth, hee remaineth in the aforesaid great lodging as long as he lineth : befides this, they keepe in thefe places Swine and Hennes, whereby the poore bee releeved without going a begging.

I say I before that China was full of Rivers, but now I minde to confirme the same anew : for the farther wee went into the Countrey, the greater we found the rivers. Sometimes we were Store of rivers so farre off from the Sea, that where wee came no Sea-fish had beene seene, and Salt was there so very deare, of fresh-water Fish yet was there great abundance, and that fish very good : they

keepe it good after this manner. Where the Rivers doe meete, and so passe into the Sea, there lyeth great flore of Boates, specially where no salt-water commeth, and that in March and Aprill. These Boates are so many that it seemeth wonderfull, neither serue they for other then to take small fish. By the rivers fides they make leyres of fine and strong Nets, that lye three Plentie of fish: handfuls vnder water, and one aboue, to keepe and nourish their Fish in, vntill such time as o- and their keether fifters doe come with Boates, bringing for that purpose certaine great Chests lyned with ping of them. paper, able to hold water, wherein they carrie their fish vp and downe the river, every day renewing the cheft with fresh-water, and felling their fish in every Citie, Towne, and Village,

where they passe, vnto the people as they need it : most of them have Net-leyres to keepe Fish 60 in alwayes for their prouision. Where the greater Boates cannot passe any farther forward, they take leffer, and because the whole Countrey is very well watred, there is so great plentie of divers forts of Fish, that it is wonderfull to fee : affuredly, wee were amazed to behold the manner of their prouision. Their Fish is chiefly nourished with the dung of Busies and Oxen, that greatly fatteth it. Although I fayd their fishing to bee in March and Aprill,

Parai. Another

CHAP. 11.

at what time wee faw them doe it, nevertheleffe they told vs that they fished at all times, for that viually they doe feed on Fish, wherefore it behooueth them to make their prou-

206

He speakein of When wee had pasted Fuquien, we went into Quicen-shire, where the fine Clay vestellie regien shire. made, as I sayd before : and we came to a Citie, the one side whereof is built vpon the some Quanci where of a hill, whereby passet a River navigable: there we tooke Boate, and went by water toward the Sea: on each fide of the River we found many Cities, Townes, and Villages, wherein we faw great store of Merchandise, but specially of fine clay : there did we land by the way to buy vi-Etuals and other necessaries. Going downe this river Southward, wee were glad that we drew neere vnto a warmer Countrey, from whence we had beene farre diffant : this Countrey wee to passed through in eight dayes, for our journey lay downe the streams. Before that I doe say any thing of that Shire wee came into, I will first speake of the great Citie of Quicin, wherein alwayes remayneth a Tutan, that is a Gouernour, as you have feene, though fome Tutans doe gouerne two or three Shires.

Alys Cheuchi.

That Tutan that was condemned for our cause, of whom I spake before, was borne in this Countrey, but hee gouerned Fuquien-Shire : nothing it anayled him to bee io great an Officer. This Countrey is fo great, that in many places where wee went, there had beene as yet no talke of his death, although he were executed a whole yeere before. At the Citie Quanche whither wee came, the river was fo great that it feemed a fea , though it were fo little where we tooke water, that wee needed small Boates. One day about nine of the clocke, beginning to a row neare the walls with the streame, wee came at noone to a bridge made of many Barges, o. uer-linked all together with two mightie chaynes. There stayed we untill it was late, but wee faw not one goe either up thereon or downe, except two Louthia's that about the going downe of the Sunne came and fet them downe there, the one in one fide, the other on the other fide, Then was the bridge opened in many places, and Barges both great and small to the number of fixe hundred began to passe : those that went vp the streame, at one place, such as came downe, at an other. When all had thus shot the Bridge, then was it shut vp againe. Wee heard fay that enery day they take this order in all principall places of Merchandile, for paying of the custome wnto the King, specially for Salt, whereof the greatest revenues are made that the King hath in this Countrey. The passages of the bridge where it is opened, bee so neere the shore, that no- to thing can paffe without touching the same. To flay the Barges at their pleasure, that they goe Bridge #1114 no farther forward are vied certaine yron instruments. The Bridge confisteth of one hundred and twelve Barges, there stayed we vntill the Eevening that they were opened, lothfomly oppressed by the multitude of people that came to fee vs, fo many in number, that we were enforced to goe aside from the banke vntill such time as the bridge was opened : howbeit, wee were neuertheleffe thronged about with many Boates full of people. And though in other Cities and places where we went, the people came so importunate vpon vs, that it was needfull to withdraw our felues: yet were weeheere much more molefted for the number or people, and this bridge, the principall way out of the Citie vnto another place fo well inhabited, that were it walled about. it might bee compared to the Citie. When we had shot the bridge, we kept along the Citie vn-40 till that it was night, then met wee with another river that joyned with this, we rowed up that by the walls, vntill we came to another bridge gallantly made of Barges, but leffer a great deale then that other bridge over the greater streame : heerettayed we that night, and other two days with more quiet, being out of the prease of the people. These rivers doe meete without at one corner-point of the Citie. In either of them were so many Barges great and small, that wee all thought them at the least to bee aboue three thousand : the greater number thereof was in the lesser river, where we were. Amongst the rest, heere lay certaine greater vessels, called in their language Parai, that serue for the Tutan, when hee taketh his voyage by other rivers that ioyne with this, towards Pachin, where the King maketh his abode. Denrous to fee those Parai we got into some of them, where we found some chambers set foorth with gilded Beds very richly, 50 other furnished with tables and seates, and all other things so neate and in perfection, that it was wonderfull.

with faire

Quiacim-Shire, as farre as I can perceive, lyeth upon the South. On that fide we kept at our first entrie thereinto, travelling not farre from the high mountaines we saw there. Asking what people dwelleth beyond those mountaines, it was told me that they bee Theeues, and men of a strange language. And because that vnto sundry places neere this River, the mountaines doe approach, whence the people issuing downe, doe many times great harme, this order is taken at the entrie into Quacim-Shire. To guard this River whereon continually goe to and fro Parai great and small fraught with Salt, Fish powdered with pepper, and other necessaries for that Countrey: they doe lay in divers places certaine Parai, and great Barges armed, wherein 60 watch and ward is kept day and night in both fides of the River, for the safetie of the passage, and securitie of such Paras as doe remayne there, though the trauellers neuer goe but many in company. In every rode there bee at the least thirtie, in some two hundred men, as

This guard is kept viually, vntill you come to the Citie Oncho, where continually the Tutan of this Shire, and eke of Cantan, maketh his abode. From that Citie vpward, where the river waxeth more narrow, and the passage more dangerous, there be alwayes armed one hundred and fiftie Parai, to accompany other veffels fraught with merchandile, and all this at the Kings charges. This feemed vinto me one of the ilrangest things I did fee in this Countrey.

Moorish feet and observation. Mogores, Bremes,

When wee lay at Fuguien, we did fee certaine Moores, who knew to little of their feet, that Moores they could fay nothing elle, but that Wahomet was a Moore, my father was a Moore, and I am a Moore, with some other words of their Alcoran, wherewithall, in abstinence from Swines fiesh, they live vntill the Deuill take them all. This when I saw, and being fure, that in many

10 Chinfh Cities the reliques of Mahomer are kept, as toone as wee came to the Citie where thele fellowes bee, I informed my felfe of them, and learned the truth. These Moores, as they told me, in times past came in great Ships fraught with merchandile from Pachin ward, to a Port granted vnto them by the King, as hee is wont to all them that trafficke into this Countrey, where they being arrived at a little Towne standing in the hauens mouth, in time converted vnto their Sect the greatest Louisea there. When that Louisea with all his family was become Moorifo, the rest began likewise to doe the same. In this part of China the people bee at libertie, every one to worthip and follow what him liketh best. Wherefore no bodie tooke heed thereto, vntill fuch time as the Moores perceiving that many followed them in superstition, and that the Loutea favoured them, they began to forbid wholly the eating of Swines-flesh. 20 But all this Countrey men and women, choosing rather to forlake Father and Mother, then

to leave off eating of Porke, by no meanes would yeald to that proclamation. For besides the great defire they all have to eate that kind of meate, many of them doe hue thereby : and therefore the people complained vnto the Magistrates, acculing the Moores of a conspiracie pretended betwixt them and the Louises, against their King. In this Countrey, as no suspition. no not one trayterous word is long borne withali : to was the King speedily advertised thereof, who gave commandement out of hand that the aforetaid Louten should bee put to death, and with him the Moores of most importance : the other to be layd first in Prison, and afterward to bee fent abroad into certaine Cities, where they remayned perpetuall flaues vnto the King. To this Citie came by hap men and women threefcore and odde, who at this day are brought

30 to fine men and toure women, for it is now twentie yeeres agoe this happened. Their offipring passeth the number of two hundred, and they in this Citie, as the rest in other Cities, whither they were fent, have their Moscheas, whereunto they all refort every Friday to keepe Thatistheir their Holiday. But, as I thinke, that will no longer endure, then whiles they doe line, that Temples. came from thence, for their posteritie is so consuled, that they have nothing of a Moore in them, but abstinence from Swines-fleih, and yet many of them doe eate thereof privily. They tell me that their native Countrey hath name Cumarian, a firme land, wherein bee many Kings, and the Indiff Countrey well knowne vnto them. It may to be: for as foone as they did fee our fernants (our fernants were Prenzaretes) they in ged them to hee Indians : many of their words founded upon the Perfice tongue, but none of vs could understand them. I asked them.

40 whither they converted any of the Chmijh Nation vnto their Sect : they answered me, that with much adoe, they concerted the women with whom they doe matrie, yeelding me no other cause thereof, but the difficultie they finde in them to bee brought from eating Swinesflesh, and drinking of Wine. I have learned mor over, that the Sea whereby thele Moores Is seemeth that came to China were wont to trauell, is a very great gulfe, that falleth into this Country they came up out from Tariania and Perfia, leaving on the other lide all the Countrey of China, and land the river from of the Mogernes, drawing alwayes toward the South : and of all likelyhood it is even fo, the Californies because that these Moores, the which wee have seene, bee rather browne then white, whereby they shew themselves to come from some warmer Countrey then China is, neere to Pachin, where the Rivers are frozen in the winter for cold, and many of them so vehemently, that Carts may paffe o .er them.

50 Weedid he in this Citie many Tartars, Mogorites, Bremes, and Laoynes, both men and Tartars. women. The Tartars are men very white, good Horse-men, and Archers, confining with China on that fide where Pachin standeth, separated from thence by great Mountaines that are betwixt thefe Kingdomes. Ouer them bee certaine wayes to paile, and for both fides, Ca- Monte Ulant. files continually k pt with Souldiers : in time past, the Tartars were wont alwayes to have w. rres with the Chineans, but these fourescore yeeres past they were quiet, vintill the second yeere of our Imprisonment.

The Mogores tree in like manner white, and Heathen wee are aduertifed that of one fide they border upon theie Tartars, and confine with the Perfiche Tartares on the other fide, whereof wee faw in them fome tokens, as their manner of cloathes, and that kinde of Hat the Sa-60 racens dee weare. The Moores firmed, that where the King lyeth, there bee many Tartars

and Mogorites, hat I rought int. China certaine Blewes of great value.

As for the Bremes, were have beene in this Citie Chenchi certaine men and women, amongst Erines. whom, there was one that came not long time, having as yet her havre tyed up after the Pe-

CHAP. II.

Southward from Cherchi to the Sea. Ausins. Chenchi.

208

gues fashion: this woman, and other moe with whom a blacke Moore damosell in our company had conference, and did vnderstand them well enough, had dwelt in Pegbs. This new come woman, imagining that wee meant to make our abode in that Citie, bid vs to bee of good comfort, for that her Countrey was not distant from thence aboue fine dayes journey, and that out of her Countrey, there lay a high way for vs home into our owne. Being asked the way, shee answered that the first three dayes the way lyeth ouer certaine great mountaines and wildernesse, afterward people to bee met withall againe. Thence two dayes journey more to the Bromes Countrey. Wherefore I doe conclude, that Chenchi is one of the confines of this Kingdome, separated by certaine huge Mountaines, as it hath beene already fayd, that lye out towards the South. In the residue of these mountaines standeth the Prouince Sian, the Lasyns 10 Countrey, Cambaia, Chinapa, and Cochinchina,

This Citte, chiefe of other fixteene, is fituated in a pleasant Playne, abounding in things necessarie, Sea-fish onely excepted, for it flandeth farre from the Sea : of fresh Fish so much store, that the Market-places are neuer emptie. The walls of this Citie arevery strong and high: one day did I fee the Lomeas thereof goe vpon the walls, to take the view thereof, borne in their feates I spake of before, accompanied with a troupe of Horse-men, that went two and two : It was told me they might have gone three and three. Wee have feene moreover, that within this aforefaid Citie the King hath more than a thousand of his kindred lodged in great Palaces, in divers parts of the Citie : their gates bee red, and the entrie into their houses, that they may be knowne, for that is the Kings colour. These Gentlemen, according to their 20 nearenesse in bloud wnto the King, as soone as they bee married, receive their place in Honour; this place neither encreaseth nor diminisheth in any respect, as long as the King liueth, the King appointeth them their Wines and Familie, allowing them by the moneth all things neceffarie abundantly, as hee doth to his Governours of Shires and Cities, howbeit, not one of these hath as long as hee lineth, any charge or government at all. They give themselves to eating and drinking, and bee for the most part burley men of bodie, insomnch that espying any one of them, whom wee had not feene before, wee might know him to bee the Kings Com fin. They bee neuertheleffe very pleafant, courteous, and fayre conditioned : neither did wee finde, all the time we were in that Citie, so much honour and good entertainment any where, as at their hands. They bid vs to their houses, to eate and drinke, and when they found vs not, or wee were not willing to goe with them, they bid our feruants, and flaues, caufing them to fit downe with the first. Notwithstanding the good lodging these Gentlemen have fo commodious that they want nothing, yet are they in this bondage, that during life they neuer goe abroad. The cause, as I did vinderstand, wherefore the King so vieth his Coufins, is that none of them at any time may rebell against him : and thus bee shutteth them vp in three or foure other Cities. Most of them can play on the Lute : and to make that kinde of pastime peculiar vnto them onely, all other in the Cities where they doe line, bee forbidden that Instrument, the Curtizans and blinde folke onely excepted, who bee Musicians,

No Lordsbut

This King furthermore, for the greater securitie of his Realme, and the anoyding of tumults, 40 letteth not one in all his Countrey to bee called Lord, except hee be of his bloud. Many great Estates and Gouernours there be, that during their office are lodged Lord-like, and doe beare the port of mightie Princes : but they bee so many times displaced , and other placed anew, that they have not the while to become corrupt. True it is, that during their Office they be well prouided for, as afterward, also lodged at the Kings charges, and in pension as long as they liue, payed them monethly in the Cities where they dwell, by certaine officers appointed for that purpose. The King then is a Lord onely, not one besides him as you have seene, except it bee such as be of his bloud. A Nephew likewise of the King, the Kings Sisters sonne, lyeth continu-lly within the walls of the Citie, in a strong Palace built Castle-wise, euen as his others Coufins doe, remayning alwayes within doores, serued by Eunuches, neuer dealing with 30 any matters. Their festivall dayes, new Moones, and full Moones, the Magistrates make great banquets, and so doe such as bee of the Kings bloud. The King his Nephew, hath name Vanful, his Palace is walled about, the wall is not high, but four fquare, and in circuit nothing inferiour to the walls of Goa, the out-fide is painted red, in every square a Gate, and over each gate a Tower, made of timber excellently well wrought : before the principall Gate of the foure, that openeth into the high-street, no Louises, bee he neuer so great, may passe on horsebacke, or carried in his feate. Amidft this quadrangle, flandeth the Palace where that Gentleman lyeth, doubtlesse, worth the fight, although wee came not in to see it. By report the roofes of the towers and house, are glased greene, the greater part of the Quadrangle set with faurage Trees, as Oakes, Chefnuts, Cypreffe, Pine-apples, Cedars, and other fuch like that wee doe want, after the manner of a Wood, wherein are kept Stagges, Oxen, and other beafts, for that Lord his recreation neuer going abroad, as I have faid.

One preheminence this Citie hath aboue the rest where wee haue beene, and it of right as we doe thinke, that besides the multitude of Market-places, wherein all things are to bee

fold, the ugh enery threete continually are cryed all things necessarie, as Flesh of all forts, fresh-Fifh, H. arbes, Oyle, Vineger, Meale, Rice, In Jamma, all things to plentifully, that many houtes need no feruants, euerie thing being brought to their doores. Most part of the Merchants remayne in the Suburbs, for that the Civies are flut vp every night, as I have favd. The Merchants therefore, the better to attend their bufineile, doe choose rather to make their abode without in the Suburbs, then within the Citie. I have feene in this River a pretie kinde Fishing with of fishing, not to be comitted in my opinion, and therefore will I fet it downe. The King Comments, hath in many rivers good store of Barges full of Sca-crowes, that breed, are fed, and doe dye therein, in certaine Cages, allowed monethly a certaine promison of Rice. These Barges the they (wallow To King bestoweth vpon his greatest Magistrates, giving to some two, to some three of them, not their preg. as hee thinketh good, to Fish therewithall after this manner. At the houre appointed to Fish, One hash praas hee thinketh good, to thin the thinketh good, to the River is shallow, and the Crowes different all the Barges are brought together in a circle, where the River is shallow, and the Crowes different boundary.

boue, worth the looking vpon : each one as hee hath filled his bagge, goeth to his owne

Barge and emptieth it, which done, hee returneth to fish againe. Thus hauing

tyed together under the wings, are let leape downe into the water, some under, some a-

taken good store of Fish, they fet the Crowes at libertie, and doe suffer them to fish for their owne pleasure. There were in that Citie, where I was, twentie Barges at the leaft, of these aforesaid Crowes. I went almost euery day to see them. yet could I neuer bee throughly fatisfied

to fee to strange a kinde of Fishing. ···)

T 3



## PEREGRINATIONS. VOYAGES, DISCOVERIES,

OF CHINA, TARTARIA, RVSSIA,

AND OTHER THE NORTH AND EAST PARTS OF THE WORLD,

By English men, and others.

## THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

The beginning of English Discourries towards the North, and North-east, by Sir Hven WILLOVGHBY, RICHARD CHANCEL-LOR, and others; of the Muscouie Trade, as also Voyages by Russia, ouer the Caspian Sea, and thorow divers Regions of Tartaria.

The first Voyage for Discouerie with three ships, set forth under the charge of Sir HVGH WILLOVGHBY Knight, in which he died; and Moscouia was discovered by Captaine

CHANCELLOR.



N the yeere of our Lord 1553, the feuenth of the Raigne of King Edward the fixth of famous memorie, Schaftian Cabota Seb. Cabota, was Genernour of the Mysterie and Companie of the Merchants Aduenturers for the discouerie of Regions, Dominions, Ilands, and places unknowne. Certaine inflractions were agreed See the partion by him and the faid Companie, subscribed by Matter Ca- see the partibota, the ninth of May; the Kings Letters also procured vinto fler Hacklusts remote Princes in divers languages, and a fleet of three Ships Printed Voyafet forth at that time vinder the command of Sir Hunb Wil. Sen, Ion. 1. longbby Knight, Captaine generall. which went in the Bona Esperanza Admirall, a ship of an hundred and twenty tunnes. having with her a Pinnace and a Boat : William Geffer for was

Mafter of the faid ship. The Edward Bonauenture was of an hundred and fixty tunnes, and had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, in which went Rubard Chantellor, Captaine and Pilot Major of the fleet, and Siephen Burrough Matter. The Bona Confidentia of ninecy tunnes, had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, of which Cornelius Durfoorth was Mafter.

The first Voyn,e.
This difcourfe was were froz :n to Roff Hands.

212

The Captaines on I Mafters were fwome to doe their true intent, and the ships prouded of necollaries let forth on the tenth of May, 1553, for the discourse of Cathay, and divers other Regious, Dominions, Ilands, and places vnknowne. The fourteenth of July they discourted Land Eastward, and went on shoare with their Pinnace, and found thirty little houses, the Iniabi. foundwritten tants fied. The Land was full of little Hands, called as they after learned, Egeland and Hal. in the Sprange geland, in 66. degrees. The distance betweene Orfordrosse and Ageland two hundred and fifty leagues. Then we fayled from thence twelue leagues North-weft, and found many other land which were read a frage leagues. Then we fayled from thence twelue leagues North-west, and found many other Hands, where all the and there came to anchor the nineteenth day, and manned our Pinnace, and went on floure to the Hands, and found people mowing and making of Hay, which came to the shoare and welcommed vs. In which place were an innumerable fort of Hands, which were called the lles of to Rost, being under the Dominion of the King of Denmarke: which place was in latitude 66, de. grees and 30. minutes. The winde being contrarie, we remayined there three dayes, and there was an innumerable fort of Fowles of divers kindes, of which we tooke very many.

The two and twentieth day, the winde comming faire, wee departed from Roll, fayling North North-east, keeping the Sea vntill the seuen and twentieth day, and then we drew neer vnto the Land, which was fill Eaft off vs: then went forth our Pinnace to leeke harbour, and found many good barbours, of the which we entred into one with our thips, which was called Stanfew, and the Land being Hands, were called , Lewfoot, or Lefoot, which were plentifully inhabited, and very gentle people, being allownder the King of Demmarke: but wee could not learne how farre it was from the mayne Land; and we remayned there virtill the thertieth day, 20 being in latitude 68, degrees, and from the foresaid Ross about thirtie leagues North North east, The thirtieth day of July about noone, wee weighed our anchors, and went into the Seas.

and fayled along these slands North North-east, keeping the Landstill in fight votall the second

August.

Stanfer har-

bour.

Lofoot.

Sexua in 70.

The Edward

loft, or rather

ward found

Nicolas.

of Aveuit: then hailing in close aboord the Land, to the intent to know what Landit was, there came a Skiffe of the Hand abourd of vs, of whom wee asked many questions, who shewed unto vs. that the Hand was called Segnam, which is the latitude of scuenty degrees, and from Stanfew thirty leagues, being also under the King of Denmark, & that there was no merchandise there, but only dried fish, and Trane-oile. Then we being purposed to goe vitto Finmarke, enquired of him, it we might have a Pilot to bring vs to Finnarke, and he faid, that if we could beare in, we should have a good Harbour, and on the next day a Pilot to bring vs to Finnarke, vnto the Ward- 20 houte, which is the firongest Holi in Firmark, & most resorted to by report. But when he would have entred into an Harbour, the Land being very high on every fide, there came fuch flawes of wind and terrible whirle-winds, that we were not able to beare in, but by violence were conftrained to take the fea againe, our Pinnace being vnshipt: we failed North and by East, the wind encreasing to fore, that we were not able to beare any fayle, but tooke them in, and lay adrift, to the end to let the storme ouer-passe. And that night by violence of winde, and thicknesseof mills, we were not able to keepe together within light, and then about midnight wee loft our Pinnace, which was a dilcomfort vnto vs. As soone as it was day, and the fogge ouer-past, we looked about, and at the last wee descried one of our ships to lee-ward off vs: then wee spred an hullocke of our fore-fayle, and bare roome with her, which was the Confidence, but the Ed-40 mard we could not fee. Then the flaw formething abating, wee and the Confidence hoyfed vp our and entred the fayles the fourth day, fayling North-east and by North, to the end to fail with the Ward-house, as we did confult to doe before, in case we should part companie. Thus running North-east and by North, and North-east fifty leagues, then wee founded, and had one hundred and fixing fa-

> The eighth day much winde rising at the West North-west, we not knowing how the coust lay, firooke our fayles, and lay adrift, where founded and found one hundred and fixty fathoms as before. The ninth day, the winde bearing to the South South-east, we sayled North-east five 50 and twenty leagues. The tenth day we founded, and could get no ground, neither yet could fee any Land, whereat we wondered : then the winde comming at the North-east, we ran Southeast about eight and forty leagues. The eleventh day the winde being at South, wee sounded and found forty fathoms, and faire fand. The twelfth day, the winde being at South and by East, we lay with our sayle East, and East and by North thirty leagues.

thoms, whereby we thought to be farre from Land, and perceived that the Land lay not as the

Globe made mention. Wherefore we changed our courfe the fixth day, and fayled South-caft

and by South, eight and forty leagues, thinking thereby to finde the Ward-houle,

The fourteenth day early in the morning wee deferred Land, which Land wee bare withail, hoying out our Boat to discouer what land it might be : but the Boat could not come to Lani, the water was fo shallow, where was very much Icealfo, but there was no similaride of habitation, and this Land lieth from Seynam East and by North, one hundred and fixty leagues, being in latitude 72. degrees. Then we plyed to the Northward, the fitteenth, fixteenth, and feuen-

The eighteenth day, the winde comming at the North-east, and the Confidence being troubled with bilge water, and stocked, wee thought it good to seek harbour for her redresses then wee bare roome the eighteenth day South South-eafl, short feating leagues. The one and twentieth day wee founded, and found ten fathoms, after that wee founded againe, and found but feuen fathoms, to shallower and shallower water, and yet could fee no Land, whereat we maruelled greatly: to avoide this danger, we bare toomer into the Sea all that night Northwest and by West.

CHAP.I.S.I. Tedious iourney and deare bought. Arzina in Lapland.

The next day we founded, and had twenty fathoms, then shaped our course, and ranne West South-west vntill the three and twentieth day: then we descried lowe Land, vnto which wee bare as nigh as we could, and it appeared vnto vs vnhabitable. Then we plyed Westward along by that Land, which lieth West South-west, and East North east, and much winde blowing at the West, we haled into the Sea North and by East thirtie leagues. Then the winde comming 10 about at the North-east, wee sayled West North-west: after that, the winde bearing to the North-west, wee lay with our sayles West South-west, about fourteene leagues, and then descried Land, and bare in with it, being the eight and twentieth day, finding shallow water, and bare in till we came to three fathom, then perceiting it to be shallow water, and also seeing drie fands, we haled out againe North-east along that Land, viitill we came to the point thereof. That Land turning to the Westward, we ranne along fixteene leagues North-west: then comming into a faire Bay, we went on Land with our Boat, which place was vninhabited, but yet it appeared vnto vs that the people had beene there, by croffes, and other fignes: from thence we went all along the coast Westward.

The fourth day of September we loft fight of Land , by reason of contrarie windes, and the September. 20 eighth day we descried Land againe. Within two dayes after we loft the fight of it : then running West and by South about thirtie leagues, we gat the fight of Land againe, and bare in with it vntill night: then perceiuing it to bee a lee shoare, we gat vs into the Sea, to the end to have Sea roome. The twelfth of September wee haled to shoare-ward againe, having then indifferent winde and weather: then being neere vnto the shoare, and the tide almost spent, wee came to an anchor in thirtie fathoms water. The thirteenth day we came along the coast, which lay North-weit and by West, and South-east and by East. The fourteenth day we came to an anchor within two leagues off the shoare, having fixtie farhoms. There wee went ashoare with our Boat, and found two or three good Harbours, the Land being rocky, and high, but as for people could we see none. The fifteenth day we ran still along the coast vntill the seventeenth 30 day: then the winde being contrarie vnto vs, we thought it best to returne vnto the Harbout which we had found before, and so we bare roomer with the same, howbeit wee could not accomplish our defire that day. The next day being the eighteenth, we entred into the Hauen, and there came to an anchor at fix fathoms. This Hauen runneth into the Mayne, about two leagues, In this Hauen and is in bredth halfe a league, wherein were very many Seale-fifthes, and other great fifthes, and they died. vpon the Mayne wee faw Beares, great Decre, Foxes, and divers strange beasts, as \* Guloines, \*Or, Ellonsand such other which were to vs vaknowne, and also wonderfull. Thus remayning in this Hamen the space of a weeke, seeing the yeere farre spent, and also very euill weather, as Frost, Snow, and Hayle, as though it had beene the deepe of Winter, wee thought best to winter there. Wherefore we fent out three men South South-west, to search if they could finde peo-40 ple, who went three dayes journey, but could finde none : after that, we fent other three Westward foure dayes journey, which also returned without finding any people. Then sent we three Herreendeth men South-eaft three dayes journey, who in like fort returned without finding of people, or any Sir Hugh with fimilitude of habitation.

The River or Haven wherein Sir Hugh Willoughby with the companie of his two ships perio was written shed for cold, is called Arzina in Lapland, neere vnto Kegor. But it appeareth by a Will found withhis owne in a ship that Sir Hugh Willongbby, and most of the companie were alive in Ianuary, 1554.

note, which

#### A Letter of RICHARD CHANCELLOR, written to his Vncle Master CHRISTOPHER FROTHING AM, touching his discouerie of Molsonia.

Constructs as it is meet and necessaries for all those that minds to take in hand the travell into strange Countries, to endeauour themselves not onely to understand the orders, commodities, and fruits things thereof, but also to apply them to the setting forth of the same, whereby it may incourage others to the the transit is therefore have I now bought good to make a brief exheat fall of the order of thu my tra-nell in Rulla, and Mutcouit, and other Countries thereunto adopting the case it was my thones to fall with the North parts of Russia, before I came towards Moscouia, I will partly declare my knowledge therein. Rulia is very plentiful both of Land and People, and also wealthie for such commodities as they 60 bane. They be very great fishers for Salmons and small Cods: they have much Oyle which wee call Trane Oyle, the most whereof is made by a River called Dains. They make it in other places, but not Duine, so much as there. They have also a great trade in seething of salt water. To the North part of that Countrey are the places where they have their Furres as Sables, Marterns, greeffe Beuers, Foxes white, blacke, and red, Minkes, Ermines, Miniuer, and Harts. There are also a filhes teeth, which file is

W. Houghby his Land, in 72.

degrees.

cili.d. 1 Morsse. The takers thereof dwell in a place called Postesora, which bring them upon Harts to Lampas to fell, and from Lampas carrie them to a place called Colmogro, where the high Market is holden on Saint Nicolas day. To the West of Colmogro there is a place called Gratanoue, in our Linguage Nouogorode, where much fine Flaxe and Hempe groweth, and also much Waxe and Home. The Dutch Merchants basea Staple-house there. There is also great store of Hides, and at a place called Plesco: and thereabout is great store of Flaxe, Hempe, Waxe, Honie; and that Towne is from Colmogro one hundred and twentse miles.

There is a place called Vologda; the commodities whereof are Tallow, Waxe, and Flaxe: but not so great plentie as is in Gratanoue. From Vologda to Colmogro there runnesh a River called Duina, Jagrens peans as a falleth into the Sea. Colmogro ferneth Gratanoue, Vologda, and the Moko, with 10 all the Country thereabout with Salt and falt Fish. From Vologia to Ieresiaue is two hundred mileswhich Towne is very great. The commodules thereof are Hides, and Tallow, and Corne in great plentie, and some Waxe, but not so plentsfull as in other places.

The Mosco is from Ierallane two bundred miles. The Country betwirt them is very well replant feed with justall illages, which are so well silled with people, that it is wonder to see sten; the ground is w. I stored with sorne, which they carrie to the Citie of Mosco in such abundance that it is wonder to fee it. You shall meet in a morning senen or eight bundred Sleds comming or going this ber, that carrie Corne, and some carrie file. You hall have some that carrie Corne to the Molco, and some that jetch Corne from thence, that at the least dwell a thousand miles off: and all their carriage is on Sleds, Those which come so farre dwell in the North parts of the Dukes Dominions, where the cold will suffer 10 no Corne to grow, it is so extreme. They bring thither Fishes, Furres, and Beasts skinnes. Inthose parts they have but (m.: Il store of Cassell,

Mofce.

The Mosco st selfe is great: I take the whole Towne to be greater then London with the Suburbes: but it is very rude, and standeth without all order. Their houses are all of timber very dangerous for fire. There is a faire Castle, the walls whereof are of bricke, and very high : they say they are eighteene foot thicke, but I doe not beleeve it, it doth not so seeme; notwithstanding, I doe not certainly know it for no stranger may come to view it. The one side is disched, and on the other side runneth a Riner, called Moti ua , which runneth into Tartarie, and fo into the Sea, called Mare Calpium : and on the North side there is a base Towne, the which hath also a Bricke wall about it, and so it in neth with the Castle wall. The Emperour lieth in the Castle, wherein are nine faire Churches, and therein are Reli- 30 gious men. Also there is a Metropolisan with diners Bishops, I will not stand in description of their buildings, nor of the strength thereof, because we have better in all points in England. They be well furnished with Ordnance of all forts.

The Emperours or Dukes house neither in building nor in the outward shew, nor yet within the house is so sumptuous as I have seene. It is very lowe built in eight square, much like the old building of Eng-

land, with finall windowes, and fo in other points.

Now to declare my comming before his Maiestie: After I had remained twelve dayes, the Secreturie which hath the bearing of strangers did send for mee, advertising me that the Dukes pleasure was to have me to come before his Masejtie, with the King my Masters Letters: whereof I was right glad. Hee commeth and fo I gauc mine attendance. And when the Duke was in his place appointed, the Interpreter came 42 for mee into the outer Chamber, where sate one hundred or moe Gentlemen, all in cloth of Gold very Sumpruoses, and from thence I came into the Counfell-chamber, where fate the Duke himselfe, with his Nobles, which were a faire companie: they sate round about the Chamber on high, yet so that he himselfe (ate much higher then any of his Nobles, in a Chaire gilt, and in a long garment of beaten Gold, with an Imperiall Crowne upon his head, and a Staffe of Crystall and Gold in his right hand, and his other hand halfe le ning on his Chaire. The Chancellour flood up with the Secretarie before the Duke. After my distie done, and my Letter delivered, he bade me welcome, and enquired of mee the health of the King my Master, and I answered, that he was in good health at my departure from his Court, and that my trust was, that he was now in the same. Upon the which he bade me to dinner. The Chancellor presented my Present unto his Grace bare-headed (for before they were all conered) and when his Grace 50 bid received my Letter, I was required to depart: for I had charge not to speake to the Duke, but when be frake to mee. So I departed unto the Secretaries Chamber, where I remained two hours, and then I was fent for againe unto another Palace, which is called, The golden Palace, but I fam no cause why it should be so called; for I have seene many fairer then it in all points: and so I came into the Hall, which was small and not great as is the Kings Maiesties of England, and the Table will covered with a Table-cloth; and the Marshall sate at the end of the Table with a little white rod in his

Dineth with

before the

boord of Plate. From thence I came into the during Chamber, where the Duke himselfe sate at kis Table without Cloth of estate, in a Gowne of Silver, with a Crowne Imperiall upon his head, he fate in a Chaire sime- 60 what high: there fate none neere himby a great way. There were long tables fet round about the chamber, which were full fet with such as the Duke had at dunner: they were all in white. Also the places where the tables stood were higher by two steps then the rest of the house. In the middlest of the chimber food a Table or Cupboord to fet Plate on; which feedfull of Cups of Gold: and among tall the

band, which Board was full of vessell of Gold: and on the other side of the Hall did stand a faire Cap-

CHAP.I.S.I. Order of feruice, His forces, Armour and attyre, Hardinesse,

rest there stood source maruelloms great Pots or Crudences as they call them, of Gold and Silver: I thinks they were a good yard and abalfe high. By the Cupboa'd flood two Gentlemen with Napkins on their shoulders, and in their hands each of them had a Cup of Gold set with Pearles and Precious Golden Vell-1. Stones, which were the Dukes owne drinking Cups: when hee was disposed, hee drunke them off at a draught. And for his seruice at meate it came in without order, yet it was very rich seruice: for all were served in Gold; not onely be himselfe, but also all the rest of us, and it was very massive: the Cups also were of Gold and very massie. The number that dined there that day was two bundred persons and all were ferued in Golden Vessell. The Gentlemen that wayted were all in Cloth of Gold, and they ferned him with their Caps on their heads. Before the fernice came in , the Duke fent to enery man a

10 great shines of Bread, and the Bearer called the party so sent to by his name alonds, and said, should be Bastlinich Emperour of Russia, and great Duke of Moscoura, doth reward thee with Bread: then must all men stand up, and doe at all times when those words are spoken. And then last of all kee gineth the Marshall Bread, whereof he eateth before the Dukes Grace, and so doth renerence and departeth. Then commeth the Dukes service of the Swans all in pieces, and every one in a severall dish: the which the Duke sendeth as be did the Bread, and she Bearer saith the same words as bee said before. And as I faid before, the service of his meate is in no order, but commeth in Dish by Dish: and then after that the Duke fundeth drinke, with the like faying as before is told. Also before Dinner be changed Crowne chanhis Crowne, and in Dinner time two Crownes; fo that I faw three severall Crownes upon his head in ged. one day. And thus when his seruice was all come in, hee gaue to enery one of his Gentlemen Wayters 20 meate with his owne hand, and so likewise drinke. His intent thereby is, as I have beard, that enery man

Shall know perfectly his sernants. Thus when Dunner is done hee callesh his Nobles before him name by name, that it is wonder to beare how he could name them, having so many at hee hath. Thus when Dinner was done I departed to my Lodging, which was an houre within night. I will leane this, and Speake no more of him nor his Housbold: but I will somewhat declare of his Land and people, with their nature and power in the Warrer. This Duke is Lord and Emperour of ma- Dukes forces. ny Countries, and his power is marnellous great. For bee is able to brung into the field two or three bundred thou fand men : be neuer goeth into the field him felfe with under two hundred thou fand men : And

when hee goeth himselfe, hee farmisheth his Border; all with men of Warre, which are no small number, Heleaneth on the Borders of Liefland forthe thou fand men, and upon the borders of Letto, fixthe thon-30 fand men, and toward the Nagayan Tartars fixthe thousand, which is wonder to heare of : yet doth hee neuer take to his Warres neither Husbandman nor Merchant. All his men are Horfe-men: hee ofeth no Foot-men, but such as goe mish the Ordnance and Labourers, which are there ibousand. The Atmourand Horse-men are all Archers, with such Bowes as the Turkes have, and they ride stort as doe the Turkes. richaryse. Their Armour is a Coate of Plate, with a skull on their heads. Some of their Coates are concred with Velues or Cloth of God : their defire is to be sumpsuosus in the sield, and especially the Nobles and Gentlemen: as I have heard their trimming is very costly, and partly I have seene it, or else I would scarcely haue beleened it : but the Duke humselfe is richty attyred aboue all measure : hie Paution is concred eyther with Cloth of Gold or Silmer, and so set with stones that it is wonderfull to see it, I have seen the

Kings Maiesties of England and the French Kings Paulions, which are faire yet not like onto his. 40 And when they be fent into farre or strange Countries, or that strangers come to them, they be very gorgeom. Elfe the Duke himselfe goeth but meanly in apparell: and when hee goeth betwirt one place and another bee is but reasonably apparelled ouer other times. In the while that I was in Mosco, the Duke fent two Ambassadours to the King of Paleland, which had at the lest fine hundred Horses; their sumptuousnesse was about measure, not onely in themselves, but also in their Horses, as Velues, Cloth of Jampinsus see the second mediace, not one; y micromether, one my method for the second of Extremether (Sold, and Cloth of Silver fee with Pearles, and one search, What shall I further say? I never beard of Extremether (Sold and Cloth of Silver fee with Pearles, and one search that the second of Extremether (Sold and Cloth of Silver fee with Pearles). nor faw men so sumptnous : but it is no daily guize, for when they have not occasion, as I saidbefore, all their doing n but meane. And now to the effect of their Warres: They are men without all order in the Vadiciplined field. For they run hurling on heaps, and for the most pare they never give hattayle to their Enemies: but Souldists.

that which they do, they do it all by sealth. But I believe they be such men for hard lining as arens under SO the Sunne : for no cold will have them. Tea, and though they be in the field two moneths, at fuch time as Hardinetic. is shall freeze more then a gard thicke, the common Souldier bath neither Tent nor any thing else ouer to your present of the place and the weather to a Felt, which is fet against the wind and one ocean : oce comp un season or some or automotion of and makesh him a fire, and legeth him downer weather, and when Swar commeth he dothe cast it off, and makesh him a fire, and legeth him downer thereby. Thus doe the most of all bie men except they be Gentlemen which have other provision of their owne. They tying in the field is not so strange is is their hardnesse: for every man must carrie and make prossition for himfelfe, and his Harfe for a moneth or two, which is very wonderfull. For hee himfelfe shall twe voon water and Oate-meale mingled together cold, and drinke water thereto: his Horse Pall cate greene wood, and Juch like bag sage, and shall stand open in the cold field without court, and

ye will bee liber and first bim right well. I pray you amongst all our boufting Wariours bow many Jes min nee sucom and serve men reger neu. 1 pray you among et au our couping ou man serve of 60 seould we find to endure the field with them but one moneth. I know no such Region about us that becareth that name for man and beaft. Now what mught bee made of these men of they were trayned and broken to order and knowledge of Civil Warres: if this Prince had within his Countries such men as could make them to understand the things aforefaid. I doe believe that two of the best or greatst Princes in Christendome were not well able to match with bins, considering the greatnesse of his power and the

216

hardnesse of his people, and straight lusing both of people and Horse, and the small charges which his Wars frand him in: for he questo no mages, except to firangers. They have a yearely firpend and not much. As for bu swne Countreymen, enery one serueth of his swne proper costs and cl. arges, saving that hee gineth to bit Harquebusters certains allowance for Powder and Ibst: or elfe no man in all bit. Country

Knights Fee. buth one penie wages. But if any man hath done very good firmce, be gineth him a Ferme, or a piece of Land; for the which be is bound at all times to be readie with so many men as the Duke shall appoint; who considereth in his minde, what that Land or Ferme is well able to find: and so many shall be be bound to furnish at all and enery such time as Warres are holden in any of the Dukes Dominions. For there is no man of lining, but be is bound likewise, whether the Duke call for either Souldier or Labourer, to furnish them with all such necessaries as to them belong.

Duke heire Generall

Alfo, if any Gentleman or man of living doe dye without Ifice Male, immediately after his death the Duke entreth bis Land, notwithstanding be base neuer so many Daughters, and peraduenture guest it forth with to another man, except a small portion that he spareth to marry the Daughters withall. Alle. if there be a Rich man, a Fermour, or man of Liuing, which is stricken in age or by chance is maymed. and be not able to doe the Duke fernice, fome other Gentleman that is not able to line and more able to doe service, will come to the Duke and complaine, saying, your Grace bath such an one, which is vemeete to doe fernice to your Highnesse, who hash great abundance of wealth, and likewise your Grace hath many Gentlemen which are poore and lacke liming, and we that lacke are well able to doe good fersice. your Grace might doe well to looke upon him, and make him to beloe those that want. Immediate. ly the Duke senderh fortheo inquire of his wealth: and if it be so proved, hee shall be called before the ab Duke, and at shall bee fand unto him, Friend, you have too much liming, and are unserwiceable to your Prince, lesse will serue you, and the rest will serue other men that are more able to serue. Whereupon immediately his living shall be taken away from him, saving a little to find himselfe and his Wife on and be may not once repone thereat : but for an swere hee will say, that bee bath nothing, but it is Gods and the Dakes Graces, and cannot fay, as wee the common people in England fay, if wee have any thing; that it is Gods and our owne. Men may fay, that these men are in wonderfull great awe, and obedience, that thus one must give and grant his goods which he hath beene scraping and scratching for all his life to be at his Princes pleasure and commandement. Ob, that our sturdie Rebels were bad in the like subsection to know their dutie toward their Princes. They may not fay as some Snudges in England fay, would find the Queene a man to ferue in my place, or make his Friends tarrie as home if mony base the W opper hand. No. no st is not fo in this Country; for be Shall make bumble fute to ferne the Duke. And whom he fendeth most to the Warres hae thinketh he so most in his favour : and yet as I before have faid. be givet bno wages. If they knew their strength, no man were able to make match with them : for they that dwell veere them should have any rest of them. But I thinke it is not Gods will : For I may compare them to a young Horse that knoweth not his strength, whom a little (bild ruleth and guideth with

No wages.

a bridle, for all his great strength: for if he did, neither Child nor man could rule him. Then Warres are holden against the Crimme Tarrarians, and the Nagayans. I will stand no longer in the rehearfall of their power and Warres. For it were to tediom to the Rea-Centlemen, der. But I will in part declare their Lawes, and Tunishments, and the execution of Inflice. And first

I will begin with the Commons of the Country, which the Gentlemen nauerule on : And that is, that 40 enery Gentleman bath Rule and lustice upon his owne Tenants. And if it fo fall out that two Gentlemens Servants or Tenants doe disagree, the two Gentlemen examine the matter, and bane the parties Suits & tryals. before them, and fo give the Sentence. And yet cannot they make the end betweet them of the Controuerfie, but e ther of the Gentlemen must bring bis Seruant or Tenant before the high Sudge or Luffice of that Country, and there present them, and declare the matter and case. The Plaint: fe faith, Irequire the Law; which ss granted : then commeth an Officer and arresteth the partie Defendant, and ve feth him contrary to the Lawes of England. For when they attach any man, they beate him about the legs, untill such time as he findeth Sureties to answere the matter : And if not, his hands and necke are bound together, and bee is led about the Towne, and beaten about the legs, with other extreme pumph. ments till be come to his Answere: And the Suffice demandeth if it bee for Debt, and Sarth : Owest 50 thou this man any such Debi? He will, perhaps, say nay. Then saith the Indoe: Art thou able to dem it? Let us beare bow? By Oath, faith the Defendant. Then he commandeth to leave beating him till

No Lawyer.

further tryall be had. Their order in one point is commendable. They have no man of Law to plead their Causes in any Court : but every man pleadeth his owne Caufe, and giveth Bill and A fivere in writing : contrary to the order in England. The Complaint is in manner of a Supplication, and made to the Dukes Grace, and delinered him into his owne hand, requiring to have Instice as in his Complaint is alleaged. The Duke sineth sentence himselfe upon all matters in the Law. Which is very commendable, that such a Prince will take paines to fee ministration of Inflice. Yet notwithstanding it is wonderfully abused : and thereby the Duke is much deceived. But if it fall out that the Officers be effied in cloking the truth shey have most condigne punishment. And if the Plaintiffe can nothing prove, then the Defendant must take 63 bis Oath upon the Crucifice, whether he be in the right or no. Then is demanded, if the Plaintiffe bee Combattiall. any thing able further to make proofe: if he be not; then sometimes he will say, I am able to proue it by my body and hands, or by my Champions body, so requiring the Campe. After the other hath his Oath,

it is granted as well to the one as to the other. So when they goe to the field, they sweare upon the Crucifixe, that they bee both in the right, and that the one shall make the other to confesse the truth before they depart foorth of the field: and so they goe both to the bastell armed with such weapons as they wie m that Country : they fight all on foot, and seldome the parties themselves doe fight, except they bee Gentlemen, for they (tand much upon their reputation, for they will not fight, but with such as are come of as good an house as themselves. So that if either partie require the combate, it is granted unto them, and no Champion is to serue in their roome; wherein is no deceit; but otherwise by champions there is, For although they take great oathes upon them to doe the battell truely, yet is the contrary often seene : because the common Champions baue no other lining. And assome as the one partie bath gotten the victorie, hee 10 demandeth the debt, and the other is carried to Prifon, and there is hamefully a fed till bee take order.

CHAP.I.S.I. Punishments, miserable poore, Service, Prazers, Creed, GC.

There is also another order in the Law, that the plaintiffe may sweare in some causes of debt. And if the partie defendant bee poore, bee shall be set under the Crucifixe, and the partie plaintiffe must sweare ouer his bead, and when bee bath taken his oath, the Duke taketh the partie defendant home to his house, and vieth him as his bond-man, and patteth him to labour, or letteth him for hire to any Bondage. such as neede him, untill such time as bu friends make provision for his redemption : or else bee remayneth in bondage all the dayes of his life. Againe, there are many that will fell themselves to Punishments Gentlemen or Merchants, to bee their bond men, to have during their life, meate, drinke and cloath, for Crimete and at their comming to base a piece of money, yea, and some will sell their wines and children to be bawds and drudges to the buyer. Also they bine a Law for Fellons and pickers contrary to the Lawes of Eng-20 land. For by their Law they can hang no man for his first offence ; but may keepe him long in Prison, and oftentimes be ate him with whips and other punishment: and there bee shall remaine untill his fisends bee able to bayle him. If hee be a picker or a cut-purse, as there bee very many, the second time he is taken, hee bath a piece of his Nose cut off, and is burned in the fore-head, and kept in prison till be finde sureties for his good behaviour. And if bee be taken the third time, he is hanged. And at the first time hee is extreamely punished and not released, except be baue very good friends, or that some Gentleman require to have him to the warres : And in fo doing, hee shall enter into great bonds for him : by niteman require to country is brought into good quietnesse. But they bee naturally given to great de-Beating, ceit, except extreame beating did bridle them. They bee naturally ginen to bardlining as wellin fare as in lodging. I beard a Ruffian say, that it was a great deale merrier liuing in Prison then foorth, 30 but for the great beating. For they have meate and drinke without any labour, and get the charitie of well disposed people: But being at libertie they get nothing. The poore is very innumerable, and line

most miserably: for I have seene them eate the pickle of Herring and other stinking Fish: nor the Fish. cannot bee fo flinking nor rotten, but they will eate it and praise it to bee more whole some then other filb or fresh meate. In mine opinion there bee no such people under the Sunne for their hardnesse of lining. Well, I will leave them in this point , and will in part declare their Religion.

They doe observe the Law of the Greekes with such excesse of superstition, as the like hath not beene Superstition, beard of. They have no graven Images in their Churches, but all painted, to the intent they will not breake the Commandement: but to their painted Images they we such Idolatrie, that whe like was never Images and heard of in England. They will neither worship wor bonour any Image that is made foor th of their owne Pidures. 40 Countrey. For their owne Images (fay they) have Pictures to declare what they bee, and how they be of God, and he not ours: They for, looke how the Painter or Caruer hath made them, he wee doe wor-loop them, and they woofloop none before they bee Christened. They fay wee be but halfs Christians: because we observe not part of the old Law with the Turkes. Therefore they call themselves more boly then us. They have none other learning but their mother tongue, nor will suffer no other in their Coun- Mothet tongue trey among them. All their service in Churches is in their mother tongue. They have the old and new Testament, which are daily read among them : and yet their superstation is no lesse. For when the Service. Priests doeveade, they have such trickes in their reading, that no man can understand them, nor no man givetheare to them. For all the while the Priest readeth, the people fit downe and one talke with another. But when the Priest is at fernice no man litteth, but gaggle and ducke like so many Geese. And as 50 for their prayers they baue but little skill, but vife to fay, As bods pomele : As much to fay, Lord have Prayers.

mercie vpon me. For the tenth man within the Land cannot fay the Pater nofter. And at for the Creed no man may bee so bold as to meddle therewith but in the Church : for they say it should not be spo. Creed. ken of, but in the Churches. Speake to them of the Commandements, and they will say they were given Commande. to Moses in the Law, which Christ hath now abrogated by his precious Death and Passion : there- ments, fore, (say they) wee observe little or none thereof. And I doe beleeve them. For if they were examined of their Law and Commandements together, they flould agree but in few points. They have the Sacra-ment of the Lords Supper in both hindes, and more ceremonies then we have. They prefers them in a diffe en both kinds together, and carrie them round about the Church upon the Priests head, and so doe minister at all such times as any shall require. They bee great offerers of Candles, and Sometimes of money, which Candles,

60 wee call in England, Soule pence, with more ceremonies then I am able to declare. They have foure Leuts in the yeere, whereof our Lent is the greatest. Looke as wee doe begin on the Foure Lenis. Wednesday, so they doe on the Munday before : And the weeke before that they call the Butter weeke: And in that weeke shey eate nothing but Butter and Milke. Howbeit I beleeve there bee in no other Countrey the like people for Drunkennesse. The next Lent is called Saint Peters Lent, and begin-

Vices.

Abbies.

218

noted alwayes for corrumany news 1950s a some common, non someon we walth feters kenen. If they should be pake that Fall, their beliefe is, that they should not come in as. Heavier gates. And when any of them day, they beam a session with whom the four comments to Heavier gates it may deliner the same to Saint Peter, which declareth that the partie is a true and both Ruffin, The third Lent beginneth fifteene dayer before the later Lady day, and orders on our Lady Ecnes, The fourth Lent beginneth on Saint Martins day, and endeth on Christmas Ection : which Lent is Chiefe Sainte, fulled for Saint Philip, Saint Peter, Saint Micholas, and Saint Clement. Per they foure ber the fassed for Saint Philip, Saint Peter, Saint Baichdag, and Saint Clement. For they foure bee the principal and greates Saint in that Construct. In these tenses they eare neither Busice, Egges, Addig, now Cheese; so we they are every fireignly how which 2%, Cohadrage, and Reviews. And his of first Louis, they observe reach the Cohadrage and Foodages throughout the years; and on the Saingled they are set such as a great number of Redgeme were: which we bleek Alamber, and they care as Idea throughout they are not been such as the cohadrage and they care as Idea throughout the years, but Fish, Addig and Butter. By they are they were the cohadrage and the co Monket, and they act we Bidle torougness the years, was bise, cause and water. By their order they found date we fright by, and in bore terms they act we thing has Colomors, Cabbages, fair Commbert, with other reases, as Radio and help below Their drube is the own period det, and as salted Quiff. They have corriected in their Councies; and off as agas to fermice was hourse before day, and their is end by day light. At since of the clark they are to Maffe: these ended, so Bomes, and offer that to fractice against and their to Suppose. They have described in the condition of the Galaul that day: has been they went and mules we retrieved. sice agains: and then to Supper. Two field underfland that as comine dismort and fupper they have di-clared the exposition of the Cofficial back as; how how they week and moune she Septente and that to, gether, by report is in wanderful. It is the theoretimes and Drumbanusfe these bearing field liming, and for Extroition, they here the mild design that the same. How indees of short behinds, And have truly at mostly lead at the Darke brought hat he has up to be in readmark error with the field at they. They they lack brides of any of the power and fumple, here hash is by an order. When the Abbes of any of their Indias daysh, show the Darke bash at his copied mountaints on the mountaints. It is that the Sacqiffian beyond at the Darke bands is and by they means they her the New Years with Darke bank. Thus with their Relians I was a made and maddles. Let best Fermer; the Dake bath. Thus with their Rollings I make an end, profine bereafter to know

# Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by Chement Adams, Schoole-maßer to the Queene Henhamen, from the month of Captaine Chament hance how.

Thane this booke of clement Adams, is Latine, written in a very elegant hand and elegant ftile to King Philip; (as I

Sill cheed Chancelor with his Ship and companie being thus left alone, and become very pensiue, heavie, and somowfull, by this dispersion of the Fleet, hee (according to the order before taken, dapeth his course for Ward boufe in Normey, there to expect and abide the arruell of the safe of the Shipe, And being come thither, and having flave ed there the space of season dayes, and looked in vaine for their comming, hee determined at fength to proceed-done in the puspoice soyage. And as hee was preparing himselfe to depart, it happened that hee fell in companie and speech week certains Scotton aren: who having vo-40 deritanding of his intention, and withing well to his actions, began earneftly to diffwade him from the further profesurion of the discourie, by amplifying the dangers which hee was to fell into, and omitted no reason that might serve to that purpose. But he holding nothing so ignominious and representatillas incontancie and leurite of minde, and perswading himtelfe that a man of valour could not commit a more dishonourable part, then for feare of danger to anoyd and the great property of the state that to paffe which was intended, or elfe to dye the death,

And as for them which were with Master Chancelon in his Ship, although they had great cause of discomfort by the lost of their companie (whom the forestaid tempest had separated 5) from them, ) and were not a little troubled with cogitations and perturbations of minde, in refrect of their doubtfull course ; yet not withstanding, they were of such confert and agreement of minde with Master Chancelor, that they were refolute, and prepared wnder his direction and gover ment, to make proofe and tryall of all adventures, without all feare or miltruft of future dangers. Which constancie of minde in all the companie did exceedingly increase their Captaines carefulnesse; for hee being swallowed up with like good will and love towards them, feared left shrough any errour of his, the fafesic of the companie should bee indangered. To conclude, when they faw theirdefire and hope of the arrivall of the rest of the Ships to bee enery day more and more frustrated, they prouided to Sea againe, and Master Chancelor held on his courie towards that volknowne part of the world, and layled fo farre, that hee came at last to the 60 place where hee found no night at all, but a continuall light and brightnesse of the Sunne shi-Thoy arise in ning electely upon the luge and mightic Sea. And having the benefite of this perpetuall light the Bay of Saint Nitholar.

For certaine dayes, at the length is pleated trod to bung them line activation for mewhat farre within was of one hundreth miles or there about oner. Whereinto they entred, and formewhat farre within

within it cast anchor, and looking every way about them, it happed that they espeed a farre off a certaine Fisher-hoate, which Master Chancelor, accompanied with a few of his men, went towards to common with the Fishermen that were in it, and to know of them what Countrey it was, and what people, and of what manner of living they were : but they being amazed with the strange great nesse of his ship, (for in those parts before that time, they had never seene the like) began prefently to auoyd and to flee : but hee still following them, at last ouertooke them. and being come to them, they (being in great feare, as men halfe dead ) proftrated themselves before him, offering to kiffe his feete : but hee (according to his great and fingular courtefie,) looked pleasantly upon them, comforting them by signes and gestures, refusing those duties and To reverences of theirs, and taking them up in all louing fort from the ground. And it is strange to confider how much fauour afterwards in that place, this humanitie of his did purchase to himselfe. For they being dismissed, spread by and by a report abroad of the arrivall of a strange Nation, of a fingular gentlenesse and courtesse: whereupon the common people came together, offering to these new-come ghests victuals freely, and not refusing to traffique with them, except they had beene bound by a certaine religious vie and cuttome, not to buy any fortaine commodities, without the knowledge and confent of the King.

CHAP. I. S.I. Difcouerie of Russia by Englishmen, their Entertainment.

By this time our men had learned, that this Countrey was called Ruffia, or Mufcouie, and The Difeour that Inan Vallimich (which was at that time their Kings name) ruled and governed farre and ricos Russia wide in those places. And the barbarous Ruffer asked likewise of our men whence they were, and what they came for : whereunto answer was made, that they were Englishmen sent into

those coasts, from the most excellent King Edward the fixt, having from him in commandement certaine things to deliuer to their King, and feeking nothing elie but his amitie and friendthip, and traffque with his people, whereby they doubted not, but that great commoditie and profit would grow to the subjects of both Kingdomes.

The Barbarians heard these things very gladly, and promised their ayde and furtherince to

acquaint their King out of hand, with so henest and a reasonable a request. In the meane time Mafter Chancelor intreated victuals for his money, of the Gouernour of that place (who together with others came abourd him) and required hostages of them likewise, for the more affurance of safetie to himselfe and his companie. To whom the Governours answered, that they 30 knew not in that case the will of their King, but yet were willing in fuch things as they might lawfully doe, to pleasure him : which was as then to affoord him the benefit of victuals.

Now, while these things were a doing, they secretly sent a messenger vnto the Emperous, to Messengerseas certifie him of the arrivall of a strange Nation, and withall to know his pleasure concerning to the Empethem. Which message was very welcome vnto him, infomuch that voluntarily he inuited them rour. to come to his Court. But if by reason of the tediousnesses of so long a journey, they thought it not best so to doe, then hee granted libertie to his Subiects to bargaine, and to traffique with them: and further promised, that if it would please them to come to him, hee himselfe would beare the whole charges of poste Horses. In the meane time the Gouernours of the place, differred the matter from day to day, pretending divers excuses, and saying one while, that the consent of all 40 the Gouernours, and another while, that the great and weightie affaires of the Kindome compelled them to differ their answer: and this they did of purpele, so long to protract the time, vntill the messenger (sent before to the King) did returne with relation of his will and plcasure.

But Master Chancelor, (seeing himselfe held in this suspense with long and vaine expectation, and thinking that of intention to delude him, they posted the matter off so often,) was very inflant with them to performe their promile : Which if they would not doe, hee told them that he would depart and proceed in his voyage. So that the Muscounter (although as yet they knew not the minde of their King) yet fearing the departure indeed of our men, who had such wares and commodities as they greatly defired, they at last resoluted to surnish our people with all things necessarie, and to conduct them by land to the presence of their King. And to Master 50 Chancelor began his journey, which was very long and most troublesome, wherein he had the vie of certaine fleds, which in that Countrey are very common, for they are carried themselves vpon fleds, and all their carriages are in the same fort, the people almost not knowing any other manner of carriage, the cause whereof is, the exceeding hardnesse of the ground congealed in the Winter time by the force of the cold, which in those places is very extreame and horrible,

whereof hereafter wee will fay fomething. But now they having passed the greater part of their journey, met at last with the Sled-man (of whom I spake before) sent to the King secretly from the lustices or Governours, who by some ill hap had lost his way, and had gone to the Sea-side, which is neere to the Countrey of the Tarters, thinking there to have found our thip. But having long erred and wandered out of

6 his way, at the last in his direct returne, hee met (as he was comming) our Captaine on the way. To whom hee by and by deliuered the Emperours letters, which were written to him with all courtefie and in the most louing manner that could bee; wherein expresse commande. The Emperor. ment was given, that post Horses should be gotten for him and the rest of his company without ters to Master any money. Which thing was of all the Ruffes, in the rest of their iousney so willingly done, thancier,

Country, &c.is

### Hondivs bis Map of Ruffia.



Riphean hils,

Roffomakka, 2

Touching the Replean Mountainer, whereupon the Snow lyeth continually, and where hence in times past it was thought that Tanais the river did spring, and that the rest of the wonders of nature, which the Grecians fained and invented of old, were there to bee feene : our men which lately came from thence, neither faw them, nor yet haue brought home any perfect relation of them, although they remayned there for the space of three moneths, and had gotten in that time fome intelligence of the language of Mosconie. The whole Gountrey is plaine and champion, 50 and few hils in it : and towards the North, it hash very large and spacious Woods, wherein is great store of Firre trees, a wood very necessarie, and fit for the building of houses: there are also wilde beafts bred in those woods, as Buffes, Beares, and blacke Wolves, and another kinde of beaft vnknowen to vs, but called by them Roffomakka: and the nature of the same is very rare and wonderfull : for when it is great with young, and ready to bring foorth, it feeketh out some narrow place betweene two stakes, and so going through them, present it selfe, and by that meanes is eased of her burthen, which otherwise could not bee done. They hunt their Buffes for the most part a horse-backe, but their Beares a foot, with woodden forkes. The North parts of the Countrey are reported to bee to cold, that the very Ice or water which diffilleth our of the moyst wood which they lay vpon the fire, is presently congealed and frozen : the diuersitie 60 growing fodainly to bee to great, that in one and the felfe-fame fife-brand, a man shall fee both he and ice. When the winter doth once begin there, it doth fill more and more increase by a perpetuitie of cold: neither doth that cold slake, whill the force of the Sunne beames doth different colds. folie the sold, and make glad the earth, returning to it againe. Our Mariners which weeleft in

V٤

the ship in the meane time to keepe it, in their going vp onely from their cabbins to the hatches, \* The rest of had their breath oftentimes fo fuddenly taken away, that they eft-foones fell downe as men ve- M. Adams conry neere dead, fogreat is the sharpenesse of that cold Climate: but for the South parts of the training a description of the countrev. they are somewhat more \* temperate.

CHAP.I.S.I. Duke of Muscouic bis Letters, to King Edward the fixt.

The Copic of the Duke of Mosconic and Emperour of Russia his Letters, fent to King EDWARD the Sixth, by the hands of RICHARD CHANCELOVA.

The Almiphie power of God, and the incomprehensible boly Trimite, rightfull (briftian Beliefe, Inen Vassimkt), or the Grace of God great Lord and Emperous of all Kut., that is only, the thought of the Control of the The great Duke of Volodemer, Moico, and Nouograd, King of Kazan, King of Altracan, Lord of Belliam, na grea Duce of Smolensko, of Twerra, loughoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and others, Lord and great Duke of Smolensko of Twerra, loughoria, and others, Lord and great Duke of Nouograd in the Low Commercy, of Chemistry Rezan, Polotskoy, Roffoue, Yaruslaueley, Bealozera, Liesland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Condenfa, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Commiries, greeting. Before all, right, great and worthy of bonour Edward King of England, &c. according to our world heartie and good zeale, with good intent and friendly defire, and according to our boly Christian Faith, and great Governance, and being in the light of great understanding, our Answere by this our Honosand great Concernance, and occup in the ugos of great small planning, one empires of the one transac-rable Writing unto your Kingly Governmen, at the request of your factbful Scraws: Richard Chance-lout, with his company, as they shall let you wish know is this. In the strength of the twentieth years of our Genernance, be it knowne, that at our Sea-coasts arrived a stip, with one Richard, and his comof our conservance, or it geomet, some on won conservance of any open must were solution, on one com-pary, and faid, that he mai defront to come into our Dominion; and according to his request, but been our Maiestie, and don't eyes: and hath declared onto vs your Maiesties desire, as that wee should define is,

grant onto your Subjects, to goe and come, and in our Dominions, and among our Subjects, to frequent come into our from the continuency, we make common the common, and among our suscept, to frequent from Marty with all forts of Marchanders, and spon the forms to have marret for their returne, and prefence, they have all of alchimered vi your Letters which declare the fame trapall. And between wee basee they have all the substructions of the continuency of the contin ons, to be well entertayned, who as yet is not arrived as your Seruant Richard can declare.

And we wash Christian beliefe and faithfulnesse, and according to your Honourable request, and my Honour able commandement will not leave it unders: and are furthermore willing that you fend unto us your thips and Velfels, when and as often as they may have passage, with good assurance on our part to see your popt and a especiation name to grow many many property and provide mich visibere by pair Com-them harmfelfe. And if you fend one of your Machies counfell to treate with visibere by your Comtrey Merchant may with all kindes of Wares , and where they will make their Market in our Domiusons, they shall have their free Mart with all free Liberties through my whole Dominions, with always, very promounts over processing the second processing to this our Letter, our Word and our Scale which we base commanded to be under feeled Written in our Dominion, in our Citie and our Palace in the Caffle of Molco, in the yeare 7060, the second

This Letter was written in the Mossonian Tongue, in Letters much like to the Greeke Letters, very faire written in Paper, with a broad Scale hanging at the same, scaled in Paper vpon waxe. This Seale was much like the Broad Seale of England, having on the one fide the Image of a man on Horfe-backe in complete Harnesse fighting with a Dragon. Vinder this Letter was another Paper written in the Duch Tongue, which was the Interpretation of the other written in the Mofconian Letters. These Letters were sent the next yeare after the date of King

mera socies, 23),49 After this, entercourfeef Letters and Emballages palfed betwirt King Philip and Queene Marie, and the Molcouite and the Molcouie Company was inflituted and received Printedges both from their and the Molecountersan communication company was sufficient for the Maj. 1555, and Mafter George come and that Fortame Prince, a ficond Forge beeng fet for the Maj. 1555, and Mafter George Killingworth was made their first Agent: the parisculars whereof are found at large in Master Hakinyte first Tome of Voyages, as also other thougs concloung that Trade other stiled: which here I omit, and come to Matter lenkinions Voyage to Moico, and thence to Tartaria.

\* Hee made three others after, one as Embaffidour from Queene Firsheth to the Muscourte.

The first \* Voyage made by Master ANTHONIE IENKINSON. from the Citie of London, toward the Land of Ruffia, begunne the twelfth of May, in the yeare

Irft, by the grace of God, the day and yeare aboue mentioned, I departed from the land Citie, and the fame day at Granefend, embarked my felfe in a good hip, named the firme from the grape proported, although nwortly, chieft Captaine of the firme the Primrofe, being appointed, although vnworthy, chiefe Captaine of the time, and alfo of the other three good ships, to say, the lobn Euw gelift, the Anne, and the 10

Trinitie, having also the conduct of the Emperour of Ruffia, his Ambafiade ur named Ofen Nove Gregoriesch, who passed with his company in the faid Primrofe. And thus our foure tall ships being well appointed, at well for men, as victuals, as other necessary furniture, the said twelfth day of the moneth of May, we weighed our Anchors, and departed from the faid Grauefend, in the after-noone, and plying downe the Thames, the wind being Easterly, and faire weather the thirteenth day we came a ground with the Primrofe, vpon a fand called the blacke tayle, where wee fate fast vitill the fourteenth day in the morning, and then God bee prayfed, shee came off : and that day we plyed downe as farre as our Ladie of Holland, and there came to an Anchor, the winde being Eafterly, and there remayned vntill the twentieth day; then wee weved and went out at Goldmore gate, and from thence in at Balfey flade, and fo into Orwell wands, where 20 we came to an Anchor : but as we came out at the faid Goldemore gate, the Trinizie came on ground on certayne Rockes, that lye to the North-ward of the faid gate, and was like to be bilged and loft. But by the ayde of God, at the last she came off againe, being very leake: and the one and twentieth day the Primrofe remaining at an Anchor in the wands, the other three ships bare into Orwell Hanen, where I caused the said Trinitie to be grounded, searched, and repayred. So we remayned in the faid Hauen, vntill the eight and twentieth day : and then the wind being Westerly, the three ships that were in the Hauen, weighed and came forth, and in comming forth the Iohn Enangelist came on ground vpon a Sand, called the Andros, where the remayned one tyde, and the next full Sea the came off againe without any great hurt, God be prayfed.

The nine and twentieth day in the morning all foure ships weighed in the Wands, and that 30 tyde went as farre as Orfordnesse, where we came to an Anchor, because the wind was Northerly : And about fixe of the clocke at night, the wind vered to the South-west, and we weighed Anchor, and bare cleere of the Neffe, and then fet our course North-east and by North vntill mid-night, being then cleare of Tarmouth fands. Then wee winded North and by Weft, and North North-west, vntill the first of June at noone, then it waxed calme, and continued so vntill the second day at noone: then the wind came at North-west, with a tempest, and much raine, and we lay close by, and caped North North-east, and North-east and by North, as the wind shifted, and so continued untill the third day at noone : then the winde vered Westerly againe, and we went North our right course, and so continued our way vntill the fourth day at three of the clocke in the after-noone, at which time the winde vered to the North-west 40 againe and blew a fresh gale, and so continued vntill the seventh day in the morning, wee lying with all our thips close by, and caping to the Northwards; and then the winde vering more Northerly, we were forced to put roomer with the Coast of England againe, and fell ouerthwart New-castle, but went not into the Hauen, and so plyed upon the Coast the eight day

The tenth day the wind came to the North North-west, and wee were forced to beare roomer with Flamborow head, where we came to an Anchor, and there remayned vntill the feuenteenth day. Then the wind came faire and we weighed, & fet our course North and by Failt time and so continued the same with a merry wind vntill the one and twentieth at noone, at which we took the Sunne, and had the latitude in fixtie degrees. Then we shifted our course, and went 50 North North-eaft, & North-eaft and by North, vntill the five and twentieth day. Then we dif-Heiliek Ilands couered certain Hands, called Heiliek Ilands, lying from vs Northeaft, being in the latitude of fixty fixe degrees, fortie minutes. Then we went North and by West, because we would not come too nigh the Land, and running that course foure houres, we discovered, and had fight of Ross Hands, joyning to the mayne Land of Finmarke. Thus continuing our courte along the Coast of Normay and Furmarke, the feuen and twentieth day we tooke the Sunne, being as farre flot as Lofoot, and had the latitude in fixtie nine degrees. And the same day in the atternoone appeared ouer our heads a Rain-bow, like a Semicircle, with both ends vpward. Note, that there is betweene the faid Roll Hands and Lofoot, a Whirle-poole called Malestrand, which from halfeebbe vntill strange whirle halte floud, maketh such a terrible noyse, that it shaketh the Rings in the doores of the Inhabi-60 tants Houles of the faid Hands ten miles off. Also it there commeth any Whale within the current of the same, they make a pittifull cry. Moreouer, if great Trees be carryed into it by sorce

of threames, and after with the ebbe be cast out againe, the ends and boughes of them have beene

so braten, that they are like the stalkes of Hempe that is bruized. Note, that all the Coast of

the shoare of this Coast, there is one hundred, or one hundred and fiftie fathomes of water in depth. Thus proceeding and fayling forward, we fell with an Iland called Zenam, being in the Zenam Iland. latitude of feuentie degrees. About this Iland wee faw many Whales, very monitrous, about our flips, fome by estimation of fixtie foote long; and being the ingendring time they roared and cryed terribly; From thence we fell with an Hand, called Kettlewicke.

CHAP.I. S.2. Zenam and Kettlewike Ilands. Cattell fed with fish.

This Coast from Rost vato Lofoot lyeth North and South, and from Lofoot to Zenam North. east and South-west, and from Zenam to Kettelwicke, East North-east and West South-west. From the faid Kettelwicke we fayled East and by North ten leagues, and fell with a Land called

Inger found, where we filled, being becalmed, and tooke great plentie of Cods. Thus plying a. Inger found. long the Coast, we fell with a Cape, called the North Cape, which is the Northermost Land The North that we passe in our Voyage to Saint Nicholas , and is in the latitude of seventie one degrees Cape and ten minutes, and is from Inger found East, and to the North-wards fifteene leagues. And being at this North Cape the fecond day of July, wee had the Sunne at North foure degrees aboue the Horizon. The third day we came to Wardboufe, having such mists that we could not Ward-house. fee the Land. This Wardhouse is a Castle standing in an Iland two miles from the mayne of Finland, subject to the King of Denmarke, and the Eastermost Land that he hath. There are two other llands necre adjoining vinto that, whereon the Caffle of Wardboufe Handeth. The Inhabitants of those three flands line onely by fifting, and make much Stock-fish, which they dry with Frost: their most feeding is fish; bread and drinke they have none, but such as is brought

them from other places. They have small store of Cattle, which are also fed with fish. From Cattell fed W. without we fayled South South-east ten leagues, and fell with a Cape of Land called Kegor, with fifth, the Northermoit part of the Land of Lappia. And betweene Wardhouse, and the faid Cape is a great Bay, called Dommes haff, in the South part whereof is a Monastery of Monkes of the The Monaster Ruffes Religion, called Pechinchon. Thus proceeding forward and fayling along the Coast of ricof Pechinthe faid Land of Lappia, winding South-east, the fourth day through great mists and darknesse chow. we loft the company of the other three ships, and met not with them againe, vntill the seventh day, when we fell with a Cape or head-land called Swetings, which is the entring into the Bay of Saint Nieholas. At this Cape lyeth a great fione, to the which the Barkes that paffed there-

30 by were wont to make Offerings of Butter, Meale, and other Victuals, thinking that vnleffe they did so, their Barkes or Vessels should there perish; a sit hath beene often times seene: and there it is very darke and mystie. Note, that the fixt day wee passed by the place where Sir Hugh Willoughby with all his company perished, which is called Arzina reca, that is to fay, the dizinareca the

The Land of Lappin is an high Land, having fnow lying on it commonly all the yeere. The loughly was people of the Countrey are halfe Gentiles: they live in the Summer time neere the Sea fide, frozen, and vie to take fish, of the which they make bread, and in the Winter they remove up into the Countrey into the Woods, where they vie hunting, and kill Deere, Beares, Wolues, Foxes, and other bealts, with whose fiesh they be nourished, and with their skins apparelled in such frange

40 fashion, that there is nothing seene of them bare but their eyes. They have none other habita- The Lappine: tion, but only in Tents, remouing from place to place, according to the feafon of the yeere. They covered all faknow no arte nor facultie, but onely shooting, which they exercise daily, as well men as wo- ungtheir eies, men, and kill fuch beafts as ferue them for their food. Thus proceeding along the coast from Swetinez aforesaid, the ninth day of July wee came to Cape Grace, being in the latitude of 66. degrees and 45. minutes, and is at the entring in of the Bay of Saint Nicolas. Aboard this Land there is twentie or thirtie fathoms water, and fundry grounds good to anchor in. The current at this Cape runneth South-west and North-east. From this Cape wee proceeded along The current at untill we came to Croffe Hand, which is feuen leagues from the faid Cape South-west: and from Cope Grace. this Iland, wee fet ouer to the other fide of the Bay, and went South-west, and fell with an

Head-land, called Foxenofe, which is from the faid Iland fine and twentie leagues. The entring The entring 50 of this Bay from Croffe Hand to the neerest Land on the other fide is feven leagues over. From or the Bay of Foxenofe proceeding forward the twelfth day of the faid moneth of fully, all our fource hips arri-ued in latery at the Road of Samt Nicolas, in the Land of Paffia, where we anchored, and had fayled from Landon write the fail Road dieron hundred and fifty language. fayled from London unto the faid Road feuen hundred and fiftie leagues. The Ruffian Ambaffa- leaft, dour and his companie with great joy got to shoare, and our ships heere forthwith discharged themselves : and being laden againe, and having a faire winde, departed toward England the first of August. The third of the faid moneth I with other of my companie came vnto the Citie of August. Colmogo, being an hundred verites from the Bay of Saint Nicolas, and in the latitude of 64. degrees 25. minutes. I tarried at the faid Colmogro vntill the lifteenth day : and then I departed

in a little Boot up the Ricer of Duina, which runneth very swiftly, and the felfe same day paffed 60 by the mouth of a Riner called Pinego, leaving it on our left hand fitteene verites from Colmogro. Pinego Riner On both fides of the mouth of this River Pinego is high Land, great Rockes of Alabatter, great Woods, and Pine-apple trees lying along within the ground, which by report have lyen there face Noer fine !. And thus proceeding forward the nineteenth day in the morning , I came to

Finnarke is high Mountaynes and Hils, being coursed all the yeare with Snow. And hard aboard

Sir Hugh Wil-

LIB. II.

e to a Towne called *Temps*, an hundred verites from *Colmogro*. All this way along they make much Tarre, Pitch, and ashes of Aspen trees. From thence I came to a place called Offing, an ancient Citie, the last day of August. At this Citie meet two Rivers: the one called Iug, and the other Sucana, both which fall into the aforesaid River of Duna. The River ing hath his spring in the Land of the Tartars, called Cheremizzi, joyning to the Countrey of Permia: and Smana hath his head from a Lake not farre from the Citie of Vologda. Thus departing from Ufing, and passing by the River Sucana, we came to a Towne called Torma. About this place the water is very thallow, and stonie, and troublesome for Barkes and Boats of that Countrey, which they call Nasfades, and Dosneckes, to passe that way: wherein merchandise are transported from the

The descrip-Naffades.

call Nasjades, and Dojnerges, to patte that way . The veffels called Nasfades, are very long builded, aforefast Colmogra to the Citie of Vologda. These veffels called Nasfades, are very long builded, 10 broad made, and close aboue, flat bottomed, and draw not aboue foure foot water, and will carrie two hundred tunnes: they have no Iron appertayning to them but all of Timber, and when the winde serueth, they are made to sayle. Otherwise they have many men, some to hale and draw by the neckes with long small ropes made fast to the said Boats, and some set with long poles. There are many of these Barkes vpon the River of Daine: And the most partof them belongeth vnto the Citie of Vologda: for there dwell many Merchants, and they occupie the faid Boats with carrying of Salt from the Sea fide vnto the faid Vologde. The twentieth of September I came vnto Vologda, which is a great Citie, and the River paffeth through the midft of the same. The houses are builded with wood of Firre trees, joyned one with another, and round without: the houses are foure square without any Iron or stone worke, coursed with 20 Birch barkes, and wood ouer the same : Their Churches are all of wood, two for euery Parish, one to be heated for Winter, and the other for Summer. On the tops of their houses they lay much earth, for feare of burning: for they are fore plagued with fire. This Volegda is in 59. degrees II. minutes, and is from Colmogro, one thousand verites.

All the way I neuer came in house, but lodged in the Wildernesse, by the Rivers side, and carfor Travellers, ried provision for the way. And he that will travell those wayes, must carrie with him an Hatchet, a Tinder boxe, and a Kettle, to make fire and feethe meat, when he hath it: for there is small succour in those parts, valesse it be in Townes.

The first day of December, I departed from Velogda in poste in a Sled, as the manner is in Winter. And the way to Moscua is as followeth. From Vologda to Commelski, Seuen and twentie verstes; fo to Olmer fine and twentie verstes, fo to Telogiske twentie verstes, fo to Vrethir. 30 tie verstes, so to Volbanske thirtie verstes, then to Teraslame thirtie verstes, which standeth vpon the great River Volga, fo to Roflome fiftie verftes, then to Rogarin thirtie verftes, fo to Peraflane ten verstes, which is a great Towne, standing hard by a faire Lake. From thence to Doub. nay thirtie verites, fo to Godoroke thirtie verites, fo to Owchay thirtie verites, and laft to the Emperour of Mosco fine and twentie verstes, where I arrived the fixt day of December.

There are fourteene Posts called Tames, betweene Vologda and Mosco, which are accounted fiue hundred verftes afunder.

The tenth day of December, I was fent for to the Emperours Caffle by the faid Emperour. and deliutered my Letters vnto the Secretarie, who talked with mee of divers matters, by the 40 commandement of the Emperour. And after that my Letters were translated, I was answered that I was welcome, and that the Emperour would give mee that I defired.

The fine and twentieth day, being the day of the Natinitie, I came into the Emperours prefence, and kiffed his hand, who fate aloft in a goodly Chaire of effate, having on his head Crowne most richly decked, and a staffe of Gold in his hand, all apparelled with Gold, and gar nished with Precious stones. There sate distant from him about two yards his Brother, and next vnto him a Boy of twelue yeeres of age, who was Inheritor to the Emperour of Cafan, conquered by this Emperour eight yeeres past. Then fate his Nobilitie round about him, richly apparelled with Gold and stone. And after I had done obeyfance to the Emperour, he with his owne mouth calling me by my name, bade me to dinner, and fo I departed to my lodging till dinner time, which at fixe of the clocke, by Candle light.

Multipude of

The Emperour dined in a faire great Hall, in the midst whereof was a Pillar foure square, very artificially made, about which were divers Tables set, and at the uppermost part of the Hall fate the Emperour himfelfe, and at his Table fate his Brother, his Vicles fonne, the Metropolitan, the young Emperour of Casan, and divers of his Noblemen, all of one fide. There were divers Embassadours, and other thrangers, as well Christians as Heathens, diversly apparelled, to the number of fixe hundred men, which dined in the faid Hall, belides two thouland Tartars, men of warre, which were newly come to render themselues to the Emperour, and were appointed to ferue him in his warres against the Lief-landers, but they dined in other Halls. I was let at a little Table, having no stranger with mee, directly before the Emperours face. Being 60 thus fet and placed, the Emperour fent mee divers bowles of Wine, and Meade, and many dishes of Meate from his owne hand, which were brought mee by a Duke, and my Table ferued all in Gold and Silver, and so likewise on other Tables, there were set bowles of Gold, set with Stone, worth by estimation 400. pounds sterling one cup, besides the Plate which scrued the tables.

There was also a Cupboord of Plate, most sumptuous and rich, which was not vied: among Rich femice. the which, was a piece of Gold of two yards long, wrought in the top with Towers, and Dragons heads, also divers barrels of Gold and Silver, with Castles on the bungs, richly and artificially made. The Emperour, and all the Hall throughout was ferued with Dukes: and when dinner was ended, the Emperour called mee by name, and gaue me drinke with his owne hand. and fo I departed to my lodging. Note, that when the Emperour drinketh, all the companie fland up, and at every time he drinketh, or tafteth of a difh of meate he bleffeth himfelfe. Many other things I faw that day, not here noted.

The fourth of Januarie, which was Twelf-tide with them, the Emperour, with his brother Twelf-tide, 10 and all his Nobles, all most richly apparelled with Gold, Pearles, Precious stones, and cottly Furres, with a Crowne vpon his head, of the Tartarian tashion, went to the Church in Procesfion, with the Metropolitan, and divers Bishops and Priests. That day I was before the Emperour againe in Ruffe apparell, and the Emperour asked if that were not I, and his Chancellour aniwered, yea. Then he bad me to dinner: then came hee out of the Church, and went with the Proceilion upon the River, being all frozen, and there standing bare-headed, with all his Nobles, there was a hole made in the Ice, and the Metropolitan hallowed the water with great Mosto Riuck folemnicie and feruice, and did cast of the faid water voon the Emperours sonne, and the Nobi- ballowed. litie. That done, the people with great thronging filled pots of the faid water to carrie home to their houses, and divers children were throwne in, and ficke people, and plucked out quickly a-

20 gaine, and divers Tartars christned : all which the Emperour beheld. Also there were brought the Emperours best Hories, to drinke at the said hallowed water. All this being ended, hee re-Riverof holy turned to his Palace againe, and went to dinner by Candle light, and fate in a woodden house, water for horse very fairely gilt. There dined in the place, aboue three hundred strangers, and I fate alone as I and man, did before, directly before the Emperour, and had my Mear, Bread, and Drinke fent mee from the Emperour.

The Citie of Mosco is great, the houses for the most part of wood, and some of stone, with Citie of Mosco. windowes of Iron, which ferue for Summer time. There are many faire Churches of Rone, but more of wood, which are made hot in the Winter time. The Emperours lodging is in a faire and large Castle, walled foure square of Bricke, high, and thicke, situated vpon an Hill, two 30 miles about, and the River on the South-west file of it, and it hath fixteene gates in the walls. and as many Bulwarkes. His Palace is separated from the rest of the Cassle, by a long wall going North and South, to the River fide. In his Palace are Churches, fome of stone, and some of wood, with round Towres fairely gilded. In the Church docres, and within the Churches are Images of Gold : the chiefe Markets for all things are, within the faid Castle , and for fundry things fundry Markets , and enery science by it halfe. And in the Winter there is a great Market without the Callle, vpon the River being frozen, and there is fold Corne, earthen Pots, Tubs, Sleds, &c. The Castle is in circuit two thousand and nine hundred paces,

The Countrey is full of marish ground, and Playne, in Woods and Rivers abundant, but it The Countre, bringeth forth good plentie of Corne. This Emperour is of great power: for he hath conquered 40 much, as well of the Lieflanders, Poles, Lettoes, and Swetbens, as also of the Tartars, and Gensiles, called Samoeds, having thereby much inlarged his Dominions. Hee keepeth his people in great fubiection : all matters paffe his judgement, bee they never fo small. The Law is sharpe for all

The Metropolitan dealeth in matters of Religion, as himselfe listeth, whom the Emperour The Metropolitan greatly honoureth. They wie the Ceremonies and Orders of the Greeke Church. They worthip litanmany Images painted on Tables, and specially the Image of Saint Nicholas. Their Priests bee married, but their wives being dead, they may not marry the fecond time, and fo become Monks, whereof there are a great number in the Land. They have foure Lents in the yeere, and the weeke before Shrouetide, they call the Butter weeke, &c.

50 They have many torts of meats and drinks, when they banket and delight in eating of groffe Means and meates, and flinking fish. Before they drinke they vie to blow in the Cup : their greatest friend-drinkes. ship is in drinking : they are great Talkers and Lyars, without any faith or trust in their words, Flatterers and Dissemblers. The Women be there very obedient to their Husbands, and are kept straightly from going abroad, but at some seasons.

As my being there, I heard men and women that drunke away their children, and all their Drunkennesse, goods at the Emperours Tauerne, and not being able to pay, having impawned himselfe, the Tauerner bringeth him out to the high way, and beats him upon the legs : then they that paffe by, knowing the cause, and having peraduenture compassion upon him, give the money, and so hee is ranfomed. In enery good Towne there is a drunken Tauerne, called a Cursemay, which the 60 Emperour sometime letteth out to farme, and sometimes bestoweth for a yeare or two on some Duke or Gentleman, in recompence of his service : and for that time hee is Lord of all the Towne, robbing and fpoyling, and doing what pleafeth him: and then hee being growne rich, is taken by the Emperour, and fent to the warres againe: where hee shall spend all that which he hath gotten by ill meanes: so that the Emperour in his warres is lette charged, but all the

Saddlers.

burden lyeth upon the poore people. They wie faddles made of wood and finewes, with the tree gilded with damaske worke, and the feat couered with cloth, fometimes of gold, and the reft Saphian leather, well stitched. They vse little drummes at their saddle bowes, by the found whereof their hories vie to runne more iwifuly.

The Ruffe is apparelled in this manner: his vpper garment is of cloth of gold, filke, or cloth. long, downe to the foot, and buttoned with great buttons of filuer, or elfe laces of filke, fet on with Brooches, the sleenes thereof very long, which he weareth on his arme, ruffed vp. Vnder that he hath another long garment, buttoned with filke buttons, with a high coller flanding vp of fome colour, and that garment is made straight. Then his shirt is very fine, and wrought with red filke, or forme gold, with a coller of pearle. Vnder his shirt he hath linnen breeches, vpon his to legs, a paire of hote without feet, and his bootes of red or yellow leather. On his head hee weareth a white Colepeck, with buttons or filter, gold, pearle, or ftone, and vnder it a black Foxe cap, turned up very broad. When he rideth on horfe-back to the warres, or any journey, he hath a iword of the Tw kifb fashion, and his Bowe and Arrowes of the same manner. In the Towne he weareth no weapon, but onely two or three paire of kniues, having the hafts of the sooth of a Fith, called the Morfe.

In the Winter time, the people travell with Sleds, in Towns and Country, the way being hard, and smooth with snow: the waters and Rivers are all frozen, and one horse with a Sled. will draw a man upon it foure hundred miles in three dayes : but in the Summer time, the way is deeps with myre, and trauelling is very ill.

The Ruffe, if he be a man of any abilitie, never goeth out of his house in the winter, but vpon his Sled, and in summer vpon his Horse: and in his Sled hesits vpon a Carpet, or a white Beares skin : the Sled is drawne with a Horse well decked, with many Foxes and Woolues tailes at his necke, and is conducted by a little boy vpon his backe : his ferunts stand vpon the taile of the Sled, &c.

#### ð. III.

#### Notes taken out of another mans Relation of the Same Poyage, touching the Ruffian Rites.

N Christmasse day we were all willed to dine with the Emperors Majestie, where for bread, meate, and drinke, we were ferned as at other times before : but for goodly and rich Plate, we never faw the like or to much before. There dined that day in the Emperors presence aboue fine hundred strangers, and two hundred Russes, and all they were ferued in veffels of Gold, and that as much as could fland one by another vpon the Tables. Befides this, there were foure Cup-boards garnished with goodly Plate both of gold and filuer. Among the which there were twelve barrels of filuer, contaying about twelve gallons a piece, and at each end of every Barrell were fix hoopes of fine gold : this dinner conti-40

nued about fix houres. The hallowing Euery yeere vpon the twelfth day, they vie to bleffe or fanctifie the River Mofens, which of the River of runneth through the Citie of Mofco, after this manner. First, they make a square hole in the Ice about three farhoms large enery way, which is trimmed about the fides and edges with white boords. Then about nine of the clocke they come out of the Church with procession towards the

First and foremost there goe certaine young men with waxe Tapers burning, and one carrying a great Lanthorne : then follow certaine Banners, then the Croffe, then the Images of our Lady, of Saint Nicholas , and of other Saints , which Images men carry vpon their shoulders : after the Images follow certaine Priefts to the number of one hundred or more : after them the Metropo- 50 litan who is led betweene two Priests, and after the Metropolitan came the Emperour with his Crowne voon his head, and after his Maiestie all his Noble men orderly. Thus they followed the Procession vnto the water, and when they came vnto the hole that was made, the Priests set themselves in order round about it. And at one side of the same Poole there was a Scaffold of boords made, upon which stood a faire Chaire in which the Metropolitan was fet . but the Empercurs Majestie stood voon the Ice.

After this the Priests began to fing, to blesse and to sense, and did their service, and so by that time that they had done, the water was holy, which being fanctified, the Metropolitan tooke a little thereof in his hands, and cast it on the Emperour, likewise vpon certaine of the Dukes, and then they returned agains to the Church with the Priests that late about the water : but that prease that there was about the water when the Emperour was gone, was wonderfull to behold, 69 for there came aboue fine thousand Pots to be filled of that water: for that Moscomite which hath no part of that water, thinks himselfe vnhappy. And very many went naked into the water, both Men and Women and Children : after the prease was a little gone, the Emperours Jennets

and Horses were brought to drinke of the same water, and likewise many other men brought their Horfes thither to drinke, and by that meanes they make their Horfes as holy as themselves. All these ceremonies being ended, we went to the Emperour to dinner, where we were served in vessels of filter, and in all other points as we had beene beforetime.

The Rulls begin their Lent alwayes eight wocks before Eafter: the first weeks they cate Egs, The Kulles Milke, Cheefe and Butter, and make great cheare with Pan-cakes, and fuch other things, one Ltate friend visiting another, and from the same Sunday vacill our Shroue-funday, there are but few Ruffes fober , but they are drunke day by day , and it is accounted for no reproach or fhame a-

The next weeke being our first weeke in Lent, or our cleanting weeke, beginning our Shrousfunday, they make and keepe a great Fast. It is reported, and the people doe verily beleeve that the Metropolitan neither eateth nor drinketh any manner of thing for the space of seven dayes, and they fay that there are many Religious men which doe the like. The Emperous Maielie eateth but one morfell of bread, and drinketh but one draught of drinke once in the day during that weeke, and all men that are of any reputation come not out of their houses during that time, so that the streets are almost voide of companie, saving a few poore solkes which wander to and fro. The other fixe weekes they keepe as we doe ours, but not one of them will eate esther Butter, Cheefe, Egs, or Milke.

On Palme-funday they have a very folemne Proceffion, in this manner following. First, they Palme-funday haue a Tree of a good bigneffe which is made fast vpon two Sleds, as though it were growing Procession, there, and it is hanged with Apples, Raifins, Rigs, and Dates, and with many other fruits abundantly. In the midft of the fame Tree stand fine Boyes in white vestures, which sing in the Tree, hefore the Procession : after this there followed certaine young men with Wax Fapers in their hands burning, and a great Lanthorne that all the light should not goe out; after them followed two with long Banners, and fixe with sound plates fet vpon long states : the plates were of Copper very full of holes, and thinne: then followed fixe, carrying painted images upon their shoulders, after the Images followed certaine Priests, to the number of one hundred of more, with goodly veftures, whereof tenor twelue are of white Damaske, fet and embroidered round about

with faire and orient Pearles, as greates Peale, and among them certaine Saphires and other 20 Rones. After them followed the one halfe of the Emperours Noblemen: then commeth the Emperours Maiestie and the Metropolitan, after this manner.

First, there is a Horse coursed with white linner cloth downe to the ground, his eases being. The Emperor made long with the same cloth, like to an Affes cares. V.pon this Horse the Metropolitan fit-lead h the made long with the tame costs, use to an after cares. Your time more the metropowen in-teth fide-long like a woman; in his kappe ketch a fire Booke, with a Crucifixe of Gold-fmith. Hote indres, worke voon the couer, which he holderh fast with his left hand, and in his fight hand he hath a coffien. Crosse of Gold, with which Crosse he ceaseth not to blesse the people as hee rideth. There are to she number of thirtie men which fpread abroad their garments before the Horfe; and as foone as the Horse is past ouer any of them, they take them vp againe and runne before, and faread them againe, so that the Horse doch alway goe on some of them. They which spread 40 the garments are all Priests sonnes, and for their labours the Emperour giveth wato them

new garments.

One of the Emperours Noblemen leadeth the Horfe by the head, but the Emperour himfelfe going on foot , leadeth the Horfe by the end of the reyne of his Bridle with one of his hands, and in the other of his hands hee had a branch of a Palme tree : after this followed the reft of the Emperours Noblemen and Gentlemen, with a great number of other people. In this order they went from one Church to another within the Caftle, about the distance of two flight shot: and fo returned againe to the Emperours Church , where they made an end of their service. Which being done, the Emperours Maiestie, and certaine of his Noblemen went to the Metronolitan his house to dinner, where of delicate fishes and good drinkes there was no lacke. The reft of shis weeke vntill Easter day they kept very solemnely, continuing in their houses for the 50 most part, and vpon Munday or Thursday she Emperour doth alwaies we to receive the Sacrament, and so doe most of his Nobles.

Vpon Good-friday they continue all the day in contemplation and prayers, and they wie euery yeere on Good-friday to let loofe a Prisoner in the stead of Barrabas. The night following they goe to the Church, where they sleepe vntill the next morning, and at Easter they have the Refurrection, and after every of the Lents they eate fielh the nexe weeke following, Friday, Sa-

They have an order at Easter, which they alwaies obserue, and that is this: every yeere against Easter to dye or colour red with Brazell a great number of Egges, of which every man and woman gineth one vnto the Priest of their Parish vpon Easter day in the morning. And on Baffer day, but allo three or four dayes after, and Gentlemen and Gentlewomen have Egges. gilded which they carrie in like manner. They vie it, as they say, for a great loue, and in token of the Refurrection, whereof they reloyce. For when two friends meet during the Eafter holy

Kiffing vfed in

dayes, they come and take one another by the hand : the one of them faith, the Lord or Christie rifen, the other answereth, it is fo of a truth, and then they kiffe and exchange their Egges both men and women, continuing in kiffing foure dayes together.

His Majestie heareth all Complaints himselfe, and with his owne mouth giveth sentence and judgement of all matters, and that with expedition ; but Religious matters hee medleth no: withall, but referreth them wholly vnto the Metropolitane. His Majestie retayneth and well rewarderh all strangers that come to serue him, and especially men of Warre. He delighteth nor greatly in Hawking, Hunting, or any other pastime, nor in hearing Instruments or Musicke, but fetteth all his whole delight vpon two things: First, to serue God, as vndoubtedly hee is very depout in his Religion, and the fecond, how to subdue and conquer his enemies.

He hath abundance of Gold and Silver in his owne hands or Treasurie: but the most part of his know not a Crawne from a Counter, nor Gold from Copper, they are fo much cumbred therewithall, and he that is worth two, three, or foure Grotes, is a rich man. They have both Monkes, Friers, and Nunnes, with a great number of great and rich Mona-

Monasteries and Monker,

steries; they keepe great Hospitalitie, and doe releeve much poore people day by day. I have him in one of the Monasteries called Troietes, which is walled about with Bricke very strongly like a Castle, and much Ordnance of Brasse vpon the walls of the same. They told mee themselves that there are seuen hundred Brethren of them which belong vnto that House. The most part of the Lands, Townes, and Villages which are within fortie miles of it, belong vinto the jame. They shewed me the Church, wherein were as many Images as could hang about, or upon the wals of the Church round about, and even the Roofe of the Church was painted full of Images. The chiefe Image was of our Ladie, which was garnished with Gold, Rubies, Saphirs, and other rich Stones abundantly. In the midft of the Church flood twelue Waxe Tapers of two yards long, and a fathome about in bignesse, and there stands a Kettle full of Waxe with about one hundred weight, wherein there is alwayes the wicke of a Candle burning, as it werea

Miracles.

They shewed mea Coffin couered with Cloth of Gold, which stood upon one side within their Church, in which they told me lay a holy man, who never eate or dranke, and yet that he liueth. And they told me (supposing that I had beleeved them) that he healeth many Diseases, and giveth the blind their fight; with many other Miracles, but I was hard of beliefe, because I ... faw him worke no miracle whillt I was there;

Lampe which goeth not out day nor night.

Drinkes and

After this they brought me into their Sellers, and made me taffe of divers kinds of Drinkes. both Wine and Beere, Meade and Quaffie, of fundry colours and kinds. Such abundance of Drinke as they have in their Sellers, I doe suppose few Princes have more, or so much at once. Their Barrels or Veffels are of an vnmeafurable bigneffe and fize: some of them are three yards long and more, and two yards and more broad in their heads: they contayne fixe or feuen tuns apiece: they have none in their Sellers of their owne making that are leffe then a tunne. They have nine or ten great vaultes which are full of those Barrels which are seldome removued : for they have trunkes which come downe through the Roofe of the vaults in fundry places, through which they powredrinke downe, having the Caske right under it to receive the same, for it to should be a great trouble to bring it all downe the staires.

The Hospitalitic of their Monasteries,

They give Bread, Meate, and Drinke vnto all men that come to them, not onely while they are at their Abbey, but also when they depart, to serue them by the way. There are a great number of fuch Monasteries in the Realme, and the Emperours Majestie rideth oftentimes from one to another of them, and lyeth at them three or foure dayes together. The same Monkes are as great Merchants as any in the Land of Russia, and doe occupie buy-

Monke Merchants.

ing and felling as much as any other men, and haue Boates which palle to and fro in the Riners with Merchandize from place to place where any of their Countrey doe traffique. They eate no flesh during their lines as it is reported : but vpon Sunday, Munday, Tuesday,

Dyerand Ap-

Thursday, and Saturday, it is lawfull for them to cate Egges, Butter, Cheese, and Milke, and at 10 all times to eate fish, and after this fort they lead their lines. They weare all blacke Garments, and so doe none other in all the Land, but at that Abbey onely.

They have no Preachers, no not one in all the Land to instruct the people, so that there are many, and the most part of the poore in the Countrey, who if one aske them how many Gods there be, they will say a great many, meaning that every Image which they have is a God : for rance and Ido. all the Countrey and the Emperours Majestie himselfe will blesse and bow, and knocke their heads before their Images, infomuch that they will cry earneftly vnto their Images to helpe them to the things which they need. Al men are bound by their Law to have those Images in their Houses, and ouer every gate in all their Townes and Cities are Images fet up, vnto which the people bow and bend, and knocke their heads against the ground before them: as often as they come by any Church or Croffe they doe in like manner. And when they come to any House, they bleffe themselves three or soure times before they will salute any man in the

They reckon and hold it for great finne to touch or handle any of their Images within the

CHAP.I. S 2. Priests, Sacraments, Baptisme, God-fathers and God-mothers. Circle of the board where the painting is, but they keepe them very daintily, and rich men deck

them over and about with Gold, Silver, and Stones, and hang them over and about with Gloth Sinnes of Su-The Priests are marryed as other men are, and weare all their Garments as other men doe, Priests. except their Night-caps, which is cloth of some fad colour, being round and reacheth vnto the

eares; their crownes are shauen, but the rest of their haire they let grow, as long as Nature will permit, so that it hangeth beneath their eares upon their shoulders : their Beards they never shaue : if his Wife happen to dye, it is not lawfull for him to marry againe during his life.

They minister the Communion with Bread and Wine after our order, but hee breaketh the Sacraments. To Bread and putterhit into the Cup vnto the Wine, and commonly some are partakers with them: and they take the Bread out agains with a Spoone together with part of the Wine, and fo take it themselves, and give it to others that receive with them after the same manner. They will not permit any Nation but the Greekes to be buried in their facred Burials, or Church-yards. All their Churches are full of Images, vnto the which the people when they affemble, doe bow and knocke their heads, as I have before faid, that fome will have knobs upon their fore-heads with knocking, as great as Egges. All their feruice is in the Ruffie Tongue, and they and the com- All-heir fermon people have no other Prayers but this, Ghofpods lefus Christos efine vone ponuloi nafbe. That wice is in their is to lay, O Lord Ielus Chritt, Sonot God have mercie vpon vs : and this is their Prayer, fo that Mother the mort part of the volearned know neither Pater Nofter, nor the Beliefe, nor Ten Comman-tongue. 20 dements, nor fearcely understand the one halfe of their Seruice which is read in their Churches.

When any child is borne, it is not baptized votill the next Sunday, and if it chance that it be not baptized then, it must tarry vntill the second Sunday after the birth, and it is lawfull for them to take as many God-fathers and God-mothers as they will, the more the better.

When they goe to the Church, the Mid-wife goeth foremost, carrying the Childe, and the Baptifine God-fathers and God-mothers follow into the midft of the Church, where there is a small Table readie iet, and on it an Earthen Pot full of warme water, about the which the God-fathers and God-mothers, with the Childe, fettle themfelues : then the Clerke giveth vnto every of them a small Waxe Candle burning, then commeth the Priost, and beginneth to say certayne words, which the God-tathers and God-mothers must answere word for word, among which

30 one is, that the Child shall forfake the Deuill, and as that name is pronounced, they must all spit at the word as often as it is repeated. Then he bleffeth the water which is in the Pot, and doth breathe ouer it : then he taketh all the Candles which the Goffips have, and holding them all in one hand letteth part of them drop into the water, and then giveth every one his Candle againe, and when the water is fanctified, he taketh the Child and holdeth it in a small Tub, and one of the God-fathers taketh the Pot with warme water, and powreth it all voon the Childes head. After this he hath many more Ceremonies, as anounting Eares and Eyes with Spittle, and

making certayne Crosses with Oyle vpon the backe, head, and brett of the Childe : then taking the Childe in his armes, carryeth it to the Images of Saint Niebolas, and our Ladie, &c. and fieaketh vnto the Images, defiring them to take charge of the Childe, that he may live, and believe

40 as a Christian man or woman ought to doe, with many other words. Then comming backe from the Images, he taketh a paire of sheares and clippeth the young and tender haires of the Childes head, in three or foure places, and then deliuereth the Childe, whereunto every of the God-fathers and God-mothers lay a hand: then the Priest chargeth them, that the Childe bee brought up in the faith and feare of God or Christ, and that it be instructed to clinege, and bow to the Images, and so they make an end : then one of the God-fathers must hing a Crosse about the necke of the Childe, which hee must alwayes weare, for that Rolle which hath not a Crosse about his necke they efteeme as no Christian man, and thereupon they tay that wee are no Chris itians, because we doe not weare Crosses as they doe.

Their Matrimonie is nothing folemnized, but rather in most points abominable, and as neere Of their 1869-50 as I can learne, in this wife following.

First, when there is loue betweene the parties, the man fendeth voto the woman a small Cheft or Boxe, wherein is a Whip, Needles, Threed, Silke, Linnen Cloth, Sheares, and fuch neceffaries as she shall occupie when she is a Wife, and perhaps sendeth therewithall Raisins, Figs, or some such things, giving her to vinderstand, that it she doe offend, she must be beaten with the Whip, and by the Needles, Threed, Cloth, &c. that the should apply her selfe diligently to few, and doe such things as the could best doe, and by the Raifins or Fruits he meaneth if the doe well, no good thing shall bee with drawne from her, nor bee too deare for her; and shee sendeth vinto him a Shirt, Hand-kerchers, and some such things of her owne making. And now to the effect.

When they are agreed, and the day of Marriage appointed, when they shall goe towards the 60 Church, the Bride will in no wife confent to goe out of the Houfe, but relifteth and ftriueth with them that would have her out, and fayneth her felfe to weepe, yet in the end, two women get her out, and lead her towards the Church, her face being couered close, because of her diffimulation, that it should not be openly perceived for thee maketh a great noyle, as though the were folding and weeping, untill the come at the Church, and then her face is vincouered. The

man commeth after among other of his friends, and they carrie with them to Church a great Port of Wine or Meade : then the Priest coupleth them together much after our order, one promiling to love and ferue the other during their lives together, &c. which being done, they beginnne to drinke, and first the woman drinketh to the man, and when he hath drunke he letteth the cup fall to the ground, hafting immediately to tread vpon it, and so doth she, and whether of them tread first upon it, must have the victorie and be Master at all times after, which commonly happeneth to the man, for he is readiest to set his foot on it, because he letteth it fall himselfe, then they goe home againe, the womans face being vncouered. The Boyes in the fireets cry out, and make a noyfe in the meane time, with very dilhonest words.

When they come home, the Wife is fet at the vpper end of the Table, and the Husbandnext 10 vnto her: they fall then to drinking till they be all drunke, they perchance have a Minftell or two, and two naked men, which led her from the Church, dance naked a long time before all the company. When they are wearie of drinking, the Bride and the Bridegroome get them to Bed, for it is in the Euening alwayes when any of them are marryed; and when they are going to Bed, the Bridegroome putteth certayne Money, both Gold and Silver, if he have it, into one of his Boots, and then fitteth downe in the Chamber, croffing his legges, then the Bride must pluck off one of his Boots, which she will, and if she happen on the Boot wherein the Money is, shee hath not onely the Money for her labour, but is also at such choice, as she need not cut from that day forth to pull off his Boots, but if thee miffe the Boot wherein the Money is, the doth not onely lole the Money, but is also bound from that day forwards to pull off his Boots 20

Then they continue in drinking and making good cheere three dayes following, being accompanied with certayne of their friends, and during the fame three dayes, he is called a Duke, and the a Dutches, although they be very poore persons, and this is as much as I have learned of their Matrimony : but one common rule is amongst them, if the woman be not beaten with the Whip once a Weeke, she will not be good, and therefore they looke for it orderly, and the wemen lay, that if their Husbands did not beate them, they should not love them.

They vie to marry there very young, their Sonnes at fixteeene and eighteene yeares old, and the Daughters at twelue or thirteene yeares or younger: they wie to keepe their Wines very closely, I meane those that be of any reputation, so that a man shall not see one of them but at 30 a chance, when shee goeth to Church at Christmasse or at Easter, or else going to visit some of

The most part of the women vie to ride a-stride in Saddles with stirrops, as men doe, and fome of them on Sleds, which in Summer is not commendable. The Husband is bound to find the Wife colours to paint her with all, for they vie ordinarily to paint themselues: it is such a common practice among them, that it is counted for no shame: they greafe their faces with such colours, that a man may discerne them hanging on their faces almost a flight shoot off: I cannot fo well liken them as to a Millers Wife, for they lookeas though they were beaten about the face with a bagge of Meale, but their Eye-browes they colour as blacke as leat. The best propertie that the women haue, is that they can fewe well, and imbroider with Silke and Gold 40 excellently.

Of their Bu-

When any man or woman dyeth, they firetch him out, and put a new paire of shooes on his feet, because he hath a great Iourney to goe : then doe they wind him in a sheet, as wee doe, but they forget not to put a testimonie in his right hand, which the Priest giveth him, to testifie vnto Saint Nicholas that he dyed a Christian man or woman. And they put the Corse alwayes in a Coffin or Wood, although the partie be very poore : and when they goe towards the Church. the Friends and Kinfmen of the partie departed carrie in their hands small Waxe Candles, and they weepe, and howle, and make much lamentation. They that bee hanged or beheaded, or such like, have no testimonie with them : how they are recived into Heaven, it is a wonder, without their Palport.

There are a great number of poore people among them which dye daily for lacke of fustenance, which is a pitifull case to behold : for there hath bin buried in a small time, within these two yeares, about eightie persons youg and old, which have dyed onely for lacke of sufferance, for if they had had straw and water enough, they would make shift to live : for a great many are forced in the Winter to dry straw and stampe it, and to make bread thereof, or at the least they Bread made of eate it in stead of bread. In the Summer they make good shift with grasle, herbes, and roots: barkes of Trees are good meat with them at all times. There is no people in the World, as I sup-The winterest pole, that line fo miferably as doe the pouertie in thole parts: and the most part of them that have sufficient for themselves, and also to relieue others that need, are so vinmercifull that they

care not how many they fee dye of famine or hunger in the streets. It is a Countrey full of Discases, divers, and evill, and the best remedie is for any of them, as they hold opinion, to goe often vnto the Hot-houses, as in a manner every man hath one of his owne, which he heateth commonly twice every weeke, and all the houshold tweat, and wash

The first and principal Meade is made of the juyceor liquor taken from Berrie, called in I ne mit and printing and printing and the soft a manuellous sweet tatte, and of a Carmolant colour, which Berrie I of Russia. Malieno, which is of a manuellous sweet tatte, and of a Carmolant colour, which Berrie I haue feene in Paru. The fecond Meade is called Vifnona, because it is made of a Berrie fo called, Drinkes, reand is like a blacke Goofeberrie; but it is like in colour and tafte to the red Wine of France. The ported by The third Meade is called Amarodina or Smorodina, short, of a small Berrie much like to the small mas Balley. Railin, and groweth in great plentie in Ruffia. The fourth Meade is called Chereunikyna, which as made of the wild blacke Cherrie. The fift Meade is made of Honey and Water, with other mixtures. There is allo a delicate Drinke drawne from the Root of the Birch Tree, called in the Ruffe Trongue Berozewites, which drinke the Noblemen and others vie in Aprill , May, and 10 June, which are the three moneths of the Spring-time : for after those moneths , the sap of the Tree dryeth, and then they cannot have it.

I have by me a Letter of Master Christopher Hoddesdon, written the seventeenth of November 1 1 55. wherein he writes, that it feemes, there is no great puni hment for breaking their Region, some of them aduenturing to eate Milke with him on a Fasting day, which yet others refused. Tarolasty (so he cals the Towne where he writ) is fairer then Volga, the River almost a mile broad : he was asked feuen Altines for a Sturgeon, he had given at Danske nine Mark-sprace for a worfer; neither had he feene fuch abundance of Ling in England, as there of Sturgeons. there being in that dayes Market, about three thousand,

d. IIII.

The Voyage of Master Anthonie Ienkinson, made from the Citie of Mosco in Russia, to the Citie of Boghar in Bactria, in the yeare 1558. written by himselfe to the Merchants of London, of the Moscouic Company.

Hethree and twentieth day of Aprill, in the years 1558. (hairing obtayned the Em- Moleon 55.de\* perour of Russia his Letters, directed vnto fundry Kings and Princes, by whose Domi- grees, to mimons I should passe) departed from Mosco by water, having with mee two of your nutes. Semants; namely, Richard Iobason, and Robert Iohnson, and a Tartar Tolmach, with divers parcels of Wares, as by the Inventoric appeareth : and the eight and twentieth day wee came to a Towne , called Collone , distant from the Mascotwentie leagues , and passing one league beyond the faid Collom, we came voto a River, called Occa, into the which the River Mosco falleth, and loseth his name : and passing downe the said River Occa eight leagues, wee came vnto a Castle called Terremettuke, which we lest vpon our right hand, and proceeding forward, the second day of May, wee came vino another Castle, called Perollane, distant eight leagues, leaving it also on our right hand. The third day we came vnto the place where old Re. Reg. 7. 40 zanwas structe, being now most of it ruined and ouer-growne, and distant from the faid Pera-

flave, fixe leagues: the fourth day we pasted by a Castle, called Terreconia, from Rezan twelve leagues, and the fixt day we came to another Castle, called Cassim, under the government of a cassim. Tartar Prince, named Utzar Zegoline, sometime Emperour of the worthy Citie of Cazan, and now subject vnto the Emperour of Russia. But leaving Cassing on our left hand, the eight day Moron, we came vnto a faire Towne, called Morom, from Caffon twentie leagues, where wee tooke the Sunne, and found the latitude fiftie fixe degrees: and proceeding forward the eleventh day, wee came voto another faire Towne and Caffle, called Note Nongrod, fituated at the falling of the Note Nongred. foresaid River Occa, into the worthy River of Volga, distant from the said Moron five and twentie leagues, in the latitude of fiftie fixe degrees eighteene minutes. From Rezan to this Nyfe

50 Nonegrad, on both files the faid River of Occa, is ray fed the greatest flore of Waxe and Honey Honey and in all the Land of Russia. We tarryed at the foresaid Nyse Nonograd vntill the mneetenth day, Wasc. for the comming of a Captaine which was sent by the Emperour to rule at Assacas, who being arrived, and having the number of five hundred great Boates vinder his conduct, fomeladen with Victuals, Souldiers, and Munition: and other some with Merchandize, departed altogether the had nineteenth day from the faid Nyfe Novogrod, and the two and twentieth wee came vnto 2 Cattle, called Vasiliagorod, distant fue and twentie leagues, which wee lest vpon our right hand. This Towne or Caftle had his name of this Emperours Father, who was called hand. This towns or Cause has his aware or this impercular rather, better Falline . And Gored in the Ruffe Tongoe is as much to lay, as a Caffle, for the Falline Publishered. gread is to fay , Vafilms Calile : and it was the furthest place that the faid Emperour 6c conquered from the Tartars. But this present Emperour his Sonne , called Inan Vasition wich, hath had great good fucceffe in his Warres, both against the Christians, and also the Mabometists, and Gentiles, but especially against the Tartars, inlarging his Empire even to the

Culpian Sea, having conquered the famous River of Volga, with all the Countreyes thereabout

the poore, Stones or Baths viuall with the Mof-

adjacent. This proceeding on our journey, the fine and twentieth day of May afore-fail,

the two and twentieth day, and passing by another great River called Samar, which falleth out The River

of the aforesaid Countrey, and runneth through Nagay, and entreth into the faid River of Volgs, or Samer. The eight and twentieth day we came vnto a great Hill, where was in times past a Castle made by the Crimmes, but now it is ruined, being the just mid-way betweene the faid Cazan and Afrachan, which is two hundred leagues or thereabout, in the latitude of one and fittle degrees, fortie seuen minutes. Vpun all this shoare groweth abundance of Licoris, whose Root runneth

Thus going forward, the fixt day of July we came to a place called Perouolog, fo named be- great plantic, 10 cause in times past the Tartars carried their Boats from Volga, vnto the River Tanais, otherwise Donor Tanais, called Don, by Land, when they would rob fuch as paffed downe the faid Volga to Aftracan, and also such as passed downe by the River Tanais, to Afon, Cassa, or any other Towne situated vpon Mare Enzimum, into which Sea Tanais falleth, who lith his Springs in the Countrey ot the Rezam, out of a plaine ground. It is at this streight of Perouolog from the one River to the other, two leagues by Land, and is a dangerous place for Theeues and Robbers, but now it is not so euill as it hath beene by reason of the Emperour of Russia his Corquests.

within the ground like a Vine.

Departing from Peronolog, hauing the Wildernesse on both sides , wee fawa great Heard of Nagayans patturing, as is abouefaid, by estimation aboue a thouland Camels drawing of Cares with Houles vpon them like Tents, of a strange fashion, seeming to bee afarre off a Towne:

20 that Herd was belonging to a great Murse, called Smille, the greatest Prince in all Nagar, who hath flaine and driven away all the rest, not sparing his owne Brethren and Children, and hauing peace with this Emperour of Ruffia, hee hath what hee needeth, and ruleth alone : to that now the Ruffer live in peace with the Nagayans, who were wont to have mortall Warres

The fourteenth day of July passing by an old Castle, which was Old Astracan, and leaving it vpon our right hand, we arrived at Now Afracan, which this Emperour of Roffia conquered fixe yeares paft, in the yeare 1552. It is from the Mojeo vnto Afracan fixe hundred leagues, or Afracan thereabout. The Towne of Astracan is fituated in an Iland vpon a Hill fide , having a Castle within the fame, walled about with Earth and Timber, neither faire nor firong : The Towne is

30 also walled about with Earth: the Buildings and Houses (except it be the Captaines Lodging, and certaine other Gentlemens) most base & simple. The Ilanu is most destitute and barren of wood and patture, and the ground will beare no Come : the A re is there most infected, by reason (as I Store of Sturfuppole) of much fish, and specially Sturgeon, by which onely the Inhabitants live, having geon, & flyest great scarsitie of slesh and bread. They hang up their sish in their streets and Houses to dry for their prouision, which causeth such abundance of flyes to increase there, as the like was never feene in any Land, to their great Plague. And at my beeing at the find Afracan, there was a great Famine and Plague among the people, and specially among the Tartars, called Nagayans,

who the same time came thither in great numbers to render themselves to the Ruffer their Encmies, and to feeke fuccour at their hands, their Countrey being destroyed, as I said before : but 40 they were but ill entertayned or releeued, for there dyed a great number of them for hunger, which lay all the lland through in heapesdead, and like to beafts unburied, very pittifull to behold : many of them were also sold by the Ruffer, and the rest were banished from the Hand. At that time it had beene an easie thing to have converted that wicked Nation to the Christian Figh, if the Ruffer themselves had beene good Christians; but how should they shew compassion vnto other Nations, when they are not mercifull vnto their owne ? At my being there I could haue bought many goodly Tartars Children, if I would have had a thouland, of their owne Fahaue bought many goosily sarrars sometimes, in whose for a Loste of bread worth fixe pence in England, there and Mothers, to fay, a Boy or a Wench for a Loste of bread worth fixe pence in England, Miferible Fabut we had more need of victuals at that time then of any fuch Merchandize. This Afracan

is the furthest h...ld that this Emperour of Russia hath conquered of the Tartars towards the Ca-

50 fixen Sea, which he keepeth very strong, sending thither enery yeare promision of men, and victuals, and Timber to build the Caftle. There is a certayne Trade of Merchandize there yied, but as yet fo Inall and beggerly, that it is not worth the making mention, and yet there come Merchants thather from chers places. The chiefest Commodities that the Russes bring thither are red Hides, red sheeps skinnes, woo iden Veilels, Bridles, and Saddles, Knines, and other Trifles, with Corne, Baton, and other Vi-Stuals. The Tartars bring thither divers kinds of Wares made of Cotton Wooll, with divers kinds of wrought Silkes : and they that come out of Persia, namely, from Shamacki, doe bring fewing Silke, which is the courseft that they vie in Ruffeland, Craffs, divers kinds of pide Silkes for Girdles, Shirts of Male, Bowes, Swords, and fuch like things; and some yeares Corne, and

6 Wal-nuts, but all fuch things in fuch small quantitie, the Merchants being so begge. Iv and prore that bring the same, that it is not worth the writing, neither is there any hope of Trade in all those parts worth the following.

This foreignd Hand of Astracan is in length twelse leagues, and in breadth three, and ly the Eaft and West in the latitude of fortie sound degrees, nine minutes: we tarred there would the

we came to another Cattle called Sabon bare, which wee left on our right hand, diffant from Valiliagorod, fixteene leagues. The Countrey hereabout is called Mordonits, and the Habitante did protesse the Law of the Gentiles : but now beeing conquered by this Emperour of Russia most of them are christened, but lye in the Woods and Wildernesse, without Towne or Ha-

Sugarlo. Caran ftinds in

The feuen and twentieth day we passed by another Castle, called Swyaske, distant from Shabonfbare aforelaid, twentie fine leagues : we left it on our right hand, and the nine and twentieth 55 degrees 33. came vnto an Iland one league from the Citie of (azan, from which falleth downe a River called Cazanhareca, and entreth into the forefaid Volga. Cazan is a faire Towne after the Ruffe or Tartar fashion, with a strong Castle situated vpon a high Hill, and was walled round about with 10 Timber and Earth, but now the Emperour of Ruffis hath given order to plucke downe the olde wals, and to build them againe of free stone. It hath beene a Citie of great Wealth and Riches, and being in the hands of the Tariars, it was a Kingdome of it felfe, and did more vexe the Ruffes in their Warres, then any other Nation : but nine yeares paft, this Emperour of Raffia conquered it, and tooke the King capeine, who being but young is now baptized, and brought vpin his Court with two other Princes, which were also Kings of the faid Cazan, and being each of them in time of their Raignes in danger of their Subiects through civill difcord, came and rendred themselues at seuerall times vnto the said Emperour, so that at this present there are three Princes in the Court of Ruffia, which had beene Emperours of the faid Cazar, whom the Emperour vieth with great honour.

We remayned at Cazan till the thirteenth day of June, and then departed from thence ; and The Iland of

the fame day pailed by an Hand called the Hand of Merchants, because it was wont to be a place where all Merchants, as well Ruffes and Cazanites, as Nagayans and Crimmes, and divers other Nations did refort to keepe Mart for buying and killing, but now it is forfaken, and flandeth without any fuch refort thither, or at Canan, or at any place about it, from Moles vnto Mare Thus proceeding forward, the fourteenth day we passed by a goodly river called Cama, which The River of

Vactors.

we left on our left hand. This River falleth out of the Countrey of Permis into the River of Volga, and is from Cazan fifteene leagues: and the Countrey lying betwixt the faid Cazan, and the faid River Cama on the left hand of Volga is called Vachen, and the Inhabitants bee Geniles, and line in the Wilderneffe without House or Habitation: and the Countrey on the other side of Volga, oner against the faid River Cama, is called the Land of Cheremizes, halfe Gentiles, halfe Tarters, and all the Land on the left hand of the faid Volga, from the faid River vnto Ailraca, and so following the North and North-east side of the Caspian Sea, to a Land of the Tartars Mangat or Na. called Turkemen, is called the Countrey of Mangat or Nagay, whole Inhabitants are of the Law of Mahomet, and were all destroyed in the yeare 1558, at my beeing at Afracan, through Ci-

uill Warres among them, accompanied with Famine, Peftilence, and fuch Plagues, in fuch fort that in the faid yeare there were confumed of the people, in one fort and another, aboue one hundred thousand : the like Plague was never seene in those parts, so that the faid Countrevol Nagay, being a Countrey of great Pafture, remayneth now vnreplenished to the great contentation of the Ruffes, who have had cruell Warres a long time together. The Nagayaus when they flourished , lived in this manner : they were divided into divers

companies called Hords, and every Hord had a Ruler, whom they obeyed as their King, and was called a Murfe, Towns or House they had none, but lived in the open fields, every Murie or King having his Hords or people about him, with their Wives, Children, and Cattell, who having confumed the Pasture in one place, removed vnto another; and when they removue they have Houses like Tents set upon Waggons or Carts, which are drawne from place to place with Camels, and therein their Wines, Children, and all their Riches, which is very little, is carried about, and every man hath at the leaft foure or five Wives belides Concubines. Vie of money they have none, but doe barter their Cattell for apparell and other necessaries. They delight in 50 no Art nor Science, except the Warres, wherein they are expert, but for the most part they bee pasturing people, and have great store of Cattell, which is all their Riches. They eate much fielh, and especially the Horse, and they drinke Mares Milke, wherewith they be oftentimes drunke: they are feditious and inclined to Theft and Murther. Corne they fow not, neither doe eate any Bread, mocking the Christians for the same, and disabling our strengths, saying, wee line by eating the top of a Weed, and drinke a Drinke made of the fame, allowing their great denouring of flesh, and drinking of Milke to be the increase of their strength. But now to proceed forward

The Crimme

All the Countrey vpon our right hand the River Volga, from over against the River Cama vnto the Towne of Aitracan, is the Land of Crimme, whole Inhabitants bee also of the Law of 60 Mahomet, and live for the most part according to the fashions of the Nagares, having continual Warres with the Emperour of Ruffia, and are valiant in the field, having countenance, and hipport from the great Turke.

The fixteenth day of June we paffed by certayne Fishermens Houses, called Petowse, twentie

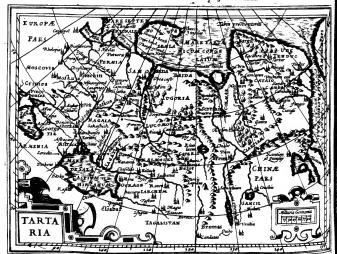
fixt day of August, and having bought and provided a Boate in company with certains Tartars and Persians, wee laded our goods and imbarked our selves, and the same day depar-They enter in. ted I, with the faid two lohnfons, having the whole charge of the Navigation downe the to the Calpiur faid River Volga, beeing very crooked, and full of flats toward the mouth thereof. Wee entred into the Caspian Sea the tenth day of August at the Easterly side of the said River, being twentie leagues from Affracan aforelaid, in the latitude of fortie fixe degrees, twentie

Volga. Volga hath feuentie mouthes or fals into the Seatand we having a large wind, kept the North-

east shoare, and the eleventh day we sayled seven leagues East North-east, and came vnto an Hand having an high Hill therein, called Accurgar, a good Marke in the Sca. From thence to East ten leagues, we fell with another Iland, called Bambiota, much higher then the other. Within thefe two Hands to the Northwards, is a great Bay called the Blue Sea. From thence wee fayled East and by North ten leagues, and having a contrary wind, wee came to an Anchorina fathome water, and fo rid untill the fifteenth day, having a great florme at South-east, being a most contrary wind, which we rid out. Then the wind came to the North, and wee weighed, and fet our course South-east, and that day fayled eight leagues.

Thus proceeding forwards, the feuenteenth day we loft light of Land, and the fame day fayled thirtie leagues, and the eighteenth day twentie leagues winding East, and fell with a Land Baughlesta be- called Baughleata, being seuentie foure leagues from the mouth of the laid Volga, in the latitude ing 74. eagues of fortie fixe degrees fiftie foure minutes, the Coast lying neerest East and by South, and West 20 and by North. At the point of this lland lyeth buried a holy Prophet, as the Tartars call him, of their Law, where great denotion is vied of all fuch Mahometiffs as doe paffe that way.

#### Hondivs bis Map of Tartaria.



The nineteenth day the winde being West, and wee winding East South-east, we sayled ten leagues, and passed by a great River called Iaic, which hath his spring in the Land of Siberia, Iaic River. nigh vnto the forefaid River Cama, and runneth through the Land of Nagay, falling into this Mare Caspinen. And up this River one dayes journey is a Towne called Serachicke, lubject Serachicke, to the forelaid Tartar Prince , called Murfe Smille , which is now in friendship with the Emperour of Russia. Heere is no trade of merchandite vied, for that the people have no vie of money, and are all Men of warre, and Pallurers of cattell, and given much to theft and murcher. Thus being at an anchor against this River laie, and all our men being on Land, saving I, who lay fore ficke, and fine Tarrars, whereof one was reputed a holy man, because hee came from

10 Mecca, there came vnto vs a Boat with thirtie men well armed and appointed, who boorded vs, and began to enter into our Barke, and our holy Tartar, called Azy, perceiving that, asked them what they would have, and withall made a prayer: with that these Rouers stayed, declaring that they were Gentlemen, banished from their Countrey, and out of living, and came to fee if there were any Ruffer, or other Christians (which they call Caphars) in our Barke: To whom this Azi most stoutly answered, that there were none, anowing the same by great oaths of their Law, (which lightly they will not breake) whom the Rouers beleeved, and youn his words departed. And so through the fidelitie of that Tartar, I with all my companie and goods were faued, and our men being come on boord, and the wind faire, we departed from that place, and winding East and South-east, that day being the twentieth of August failed fixteene leagues.

The one and twentieth day we passed ouer a Bay of fixe leagues broad, and fell with a Cape of Land, having two Ilands at the South-east part thereof, being a good marke in the Sea: and doubling the Cape the Land trended North-east, and maketh another Bay, into which falleth the greater River Tem, fpringing out of the Land of Colmack. The two and twentieth, tirree and twentieth, and foure and twentieth dayes, we were at anchor. The fine and twentieth, the The Country winde came faire, and we fayled that day twentie leagues, and passed by an Iland of lowel and, and thereabout are many flats and fands: and to the Northward of this Iland there goeth in a great Bay, but we fet off from this Iland, and winded South to come into deepe water, being much troubled with shoalds and flats, and ranne that course ten leagues, then East South-east, twentie leagues, and fell with the maine Land, being full of copped Hills, and passing along the

30 coast twentie leagues, the further we sayled, the higher was the Land.

The feuen and twentieth day we croffed ouer a Bay, the South shoare being the higher Land, and tell with a high point of Land: and being ouerthwart the Cape, there role such a storme at the East, that we thought verily we should have perished: this storme continued three dayes, From this Cape we passed to a Port called Manguslaue. The place where we should have arriued at the Southermost part of the Cafpian Sea , as twelve leagues within a Bay: but we being Manguflane fore tormented and toffed with this forefaid fforme, were driven vnto another Land on the other fide the Bay, ouerthwart the faid Mangustane being very lowe Land, and a place as well for the ill commoditie of the Hauen, as of those brute field people, where neuer Barke nor Boat had before arrived, not liked of vs.

40 But yet there we fent certaine of our men to Land to talke with the Gouernour and People, as well for our good viage at their hands, as also for prouision of Camels to carrie our goods from the faid Sea fide to a place called Sellyzare, being from the place of our landing fine and twentie dayes journey. Our Mellengers returned with comfortable words and faire promifes of all things.

Wherefore the third day of September 1558, we discharged our Barke, and I with my companie were gently entertayned of the Prince, and of his people. But before our departure from land thence, we found them to bee a very bad and bruish people, for they ceased not daily to molest vs, either by fighting, flealing or begging, rayling the price of Horie, and Camels, and Victuals, double that it was wont there to be, and forced vo to buy the water that we drinke : which 50 caused vs to hasten away, and to conclude with them as well for the hire of Camels, as for the price of such as wee bought, with other proussion, according to their owne demand: So that for every Camels lading, being but foure hundred weight of ours, we agreed to give three Hides of Raffia, and foure wooden dithes, and to the Prince or Gouernour of the faid people one ninth, and two feuenths: namely, nine feuerall things, and twice feuen feuerall things: for

money they vie none. And thus being ready, the fourteenth of September we departed from that place, being a Carauan of a thousand Camels. And having travelled fine dayes journey, wee came to another Princes Dominion, and vpon the way there came vnto vs certaine Tartars on horsebacke, being wellarmed, and seruants vnto the said Prince called Timor Sultan, Gouernour of the said Coun-60 trey of Manguslaue, where wee meant to have arrived and discharged our Barke, if the great The Country forme aforelaid had not disappointed. These aforesaid Tarters stayed our Caranan in the name it stands in of their Prince, and opened our Wares, and tooke fich things as they thought best for their 45. faid Prince without money, but for such things as they tooke from mee, which was a ninth (after much diffention) I rode vnto the same Prince, and prefented my selve before him , requesting

his fanour, and Pasport to travell thorow his Countrey, and not to be rolled or spoyled of his people: which request he granted me, and entertayned me very gently, commanding me to be well teafted with flesh and Maresmilke: for Bread they vie none, nor other drinke except water: but money he had none to give me for such things as he tooke of me, which might be of value in Russe money, fifteene Rubbles, but hee gaue mee his Letter, and a Horse worth seuen Rubbles. And fo I departed from him being glad that I was gone: for he was reported to bee 2 very tyrant, and if I had not gone vnto him, I vnderstood his commandement was, that I should have beene robbed and deffroyed.

This Sultan lived in the fields without Castle or Towne, and fate, at my being with him, in a little round house made of reeds courred without with Felt, and within with Carpets. There to was with him the great Metropolitan of that wilde Country, effeemed of the people, as the Bishop of Rome is in most parts of Europe, with divers other of his chiefe men. The Sultan with this Metropolitan demanded of mee many questions, as well couching our Kingdomes, Lawes, and Religion, as also the cause of my comming into those pars, with my further pretence. To whom I answered concerning all things, as vnto me seemed best, which they tooke in good part. So having leave I departed, and overtooke our Caravan, and proceeding on our Twentie daves iourney, and trau lled twentie dayes in the W Herneffe from the Sea fide without feeing Town or habitation, carrying provision of victuals with vs for the same time, and were driven by necefficie to ease one of my Camels and a Horfe for our part, as other did the like: and during the faid twentie dayes we found no water, but fuch as we drew our of old deepe Wells, being very 20 brackish and salt, and yet sometimes passed two or three dayes without the same. And the fire day Another Gulie of October enfuing, we came vnto a Gulfe of the Calpian Sea againe, where we found the water very fresh and sweet: at this Gulte the Customers of the King of Turkeman met vs, who tooke cultome of enery fine and twentie one, and finen ninths for the faid King and his brethren. which being received they departed, and we remay ned there a day after to refresh our selves.

Note, that in times palt there did fall into this Gulfe the great River Oxm, which hath his fprings in the Mountaines of Paraponifus in India, and now commeth not fofare, but falleth in-Will, de Rubricis to another River, called Ardock, which runneth toward the North, and confimeth himselfe in describeth this the ground, patting under the ground about fine hundred miles, and then iffueth out agains and Riut of Ardok, falleth into the Lake of Kuhay.

trivel in the

Wilderneffe.

or water.

We having refreshed our felues at the foresaid Gulfe, departed thence the fourth day of Octo-Sellinare, or ber, and the fewenth day arrived at a Cattle, called Sellinare, where the King, called Azim Can, remayined with three other of his brethren, and the ninth day I was commanded to come before his presence, to whom I delivered the Enperours Letters of Russia: and I also gave him a Prefent of a ninth, who entertay ied me very well, and caused me to cate in his presence as his brethren did, feasting me with fielh of a wilde Horse, and Mares milke without Bread. And the next day he fent for me againe, and asked of me divers questions, as well touching the affaires of the Emperour of Ruffa, as of our Countrey and Law:s, to which I answered as I thought good: fo that at my departure he gaue mee his Letters of fafe conduct.

This Calle of Sellizare is ituated upon an high H II, where the King called the Can lieth, 40 whose Palace is built of earth very basely, and not strong: the people are but poore, and have little trade of merchandife among them. The South part of this Ca'lle is low land, but very fruitfull, where growe many good fruits, among which there is one called a Dynie, of a great bigneffe. and full of moisture, which the people doe eate after meate in stead of drinke. Also there growes another fruit, called a Carbufe, of the bigneffe of a great Cucumber, yellow, and fweet as Sugar: alio a certaine Corne, called legar, whose stalke is much like a Sugar cane, and as high, and the Grane like Rice, which groweth at the top of the cane like a cluster of Grapes; the water that ferueth all that Countrey is drawne by disches out of the River Oxus, vnto the great deftruction of the laid River, for which cause it falleth not into the Caspian Sea , as it hath done in times part, and in short time all that Land is like to be destroyed, and to become a Wildernesse 50 for want of water, when the River of Oxus shall faile.

The fourteenth day of the moneth wee departed from this Castle of Sellieure, and the fix-Vignice, in 43. teenth of the same wee arrived 10 a Citie called Orgence, where we payed Custome as well for degras, min. our owne heads, as for our Camels and Hories. And having there to our ned one moneth, attending the time of our further trauel!, the King of that Countrev calle. Aly Sultan, brother to the fore-named Azym Can, returned from a Towne called Corafan, within the borders of Persia, which he lately had co. quered from the Persians, with whom hee and the rest of the Kines of Terraria have continuali warres. Before this King alfo I was commanded to come, to whom I likewife prefented the Emperours Letters of Ruffia and he entertayned me well and demanded of me divers questions, and at my departure gave me his Letters of safe conduct.

This Citie or Towne of Urgence standeth in a plaine ground, with walls of the earth, by effi- 60 mation four miles about it. The buildings within it are also of earth, but ruined a dout of good order: it hath one long freet that is covered about, which is the place of their Market, It hath beene wonne and loft foure times within feuen yeeres by civil warres, by meanes whereof there

CHAP.I.S.4. Vigence. Vicious living. Huge Sheepe, Rovers and theeves. are but few Merchants in it, and they very poore, and in all that Towne I could not fell about

foure Kerfeys. The chiefest commodities there fold are fuch wares as come from Boshar, and out of Persia, but in most small quantitie not worth the writing. All the Land from the Castian Sea to this Citie of Urgence, is called the Land of Turkeman, and is subject to the said Azim The Country Can, and his brethren which bee fine in number, and one of them hath the name of the chiefe of Turkemen. King called Can, but he is little obeyed fauing in his owne Dominion, and where hee dwelleth: for every one will be King of his owne portion, and one brother feeketh alwaies to deftroy an-

other, having no natural loue among them, by reason that they are begotten of divers women. and commonly they are the children of flaues, either Christians or Gentiles, which the father 10 doth keepe as Concubines, and every Can or Sultan hath at the least foure or five wives, besides young maidens and boyes, living most viciously: and when there are warres betwixt these brethren, (as they are feldome without) he that is ouercome if hee be not flaine, fleeth to the field with fuch companie of men as will follow him, and there liueth in the Wilderneffe, reforting to watering places, and so robbeth and spoyleth as many Carauans of Merchants and others, as they be able to our roome, continuing in this fort his wicked life, vntill fuch time as he may get power and aide to inuade fome of his brethren againe. From the Caspian Sea vnto the Castle of Sellizare aforelaid, and all the Countries about the faid Sea, the people line without Towne or habitation in the wilde fields, removing from one place to another in great companies with their Cattell, whereof they have great flore, as Camels, Horses, and Sheepe both tameand 20 wilde. Their sheepe are of great stature with great buttockes, weighing sixtie or eightie pound in weight. There are many wilde Horses which the Tartars doe many times kill with their Hawkes, and that in this order.

The Hawkes are lured to feize upon the beafts neckes or heads, which with chafing of themfelues, and fore beating of the Hawkes are tyred: then the Hunterr following his game doth flay the Horse with his Arrow or Sword. In all this Land there groweth no graffe, but a certaine brush or heath, whereon the Cattell feeding become very fat.

The Tartars neuer ride without their Bowe, Arrowes, and Sword, although it bee on hawking, or at any other pleasure, and they are good Archers both on horse-backe, and on foot also. Theie people haue not vie of Gold, Siluer, or any other coyne, but when they lacke apparell or other necessaries, they barter their Cattell for the same. Bread they have none, for they nei-30 ther till nor fowe: they be great denourers of flesh, which they cut in small pieces, and eate it by handfuls most greedily, and especially the Horse flesh. Their chiefest drinke is Mares milke fowred, as I have faid before of the Nagayans, and they will bee drunke with the fame. They haue no Rivers nor places of water in this Countrey, vntill you come to the foresaid Gulfe, difrant from the place of our landing twentie dayes journey, except it bee in Wells, the water whereof is laltish, and yet distant the one from the other two dayes iourney and more. They eate their meate vpon the ground, fitting with their legs double vnder them, and so also when they pray. Arte or Science they have none, but live most idlely, sitting round in great companies in the fields, deuifing, and talking most vainely.

They fixe and twentieth day of Nouember, wee departed from the Towne of Vrgence, and The River of hauing trauelled by the Riuer Oxas one hundred miles, wee passed ouer another great Riuer, Andochfalleth called Ardocke, where wee payed a certaine petie custome. This River Ardocke is great, and into the Lake very fwift, falling out of the forelaid Oxus, and passing about one thousand mile to the Northward, it then confume that felfe in the ground, and palling vnder the fame about fine hundred miles, issueth out againe, and salleth into the Lake of Kinay, as I have before declared.

The feuenth of December following, we arrived at a Castle called Kair, Subject to a Sulian The Castle of called Sarames Sultan, who meant to have robbed all the Christians in the Caraum, had it not Kast. beene for feare of his brother the King of Vrgence, as we were informed by one of his chiefest Counfellours, who willed vs to make him a present, which he tooke, and deliuered : besides, 50 Wee payed at the faid Caitle for Custome, of euery Camell one red hide of Russia, besides petie gifts to his Officers.

Thus proceeding in our journey, the tenth day at night being at rest, and our watch set, there came vnto vs foure Horlemen, which we tooke as Spies, from whom we tooke their weapons, and bound them, and having well examined them, they confessed that they had seene the tract of many Horsemen, and no footing of Camels, and gaue vs to vnderstand, that there were Rouers and theeues abroad: for there travell few people that are true and peaceable in that Countrey, but in companie of Carauan, where there be many Camels: and Horse-feeting new without Camels were to be doubted. Whereupon we confulted and determined amongst our schoes, and fent a Poste to the said Sultan of Kaite, who immediatly came himselfe with three hundred 60 men , and met these source suspected men which wee sent vinto him , and examined them to

straightly, and threatned them in such fort, that they confessed, there was a banished Prince with fortie men three dayes journey forward, who lay in wait to destroy vs, if hee could, and that they themselves were of his companie.

The Sultan therefore vinlerstanding, that the Theenes were not many, appointed vs eightie

men well armed with a Captaine to goe with vs, and conduct vs in our way. And the Sultan honfelfe returned backe again, taking the foure theeues with him. Thefe fouldiers trauelled with vs two dayes, confuring much of our victuals. And the third day in the morning very early they fet our before our Caravan, and having ranged the wildernesse for the space of foure hours, they met vs, comming towards vs as fall as their horfe could runne, and declared that they had found the tract of hories not farre from vs, perceiving well that wee should meete with enemies, and therefore willed vs to appoint our felues for them, and asked vs what wee would give them to conduct vs further, or elfe they would returne. To whom wee offered as we thought good, but they refused our offer, and would have more, and so wee not agreeing they departed from but they refuted our otter, and wouth man more, and to they refuted our otter of the configuration vs, and went backet o their Sultan, who (as wee coniectured) was print to the configuration vs, and went backet o their Sultan and an appropriate alled hole were the configuration. But they being gone, certaine Tartars of our companie called holy men, (because they had been at Mecca) cauled the whole Carauan to stay, and would make their prayers, and divine how we thould prosper in our journey, and whether wee should meet with any ill companie or no : To which, our whole Caravan did agree. And they tooke certaine sheepe and killed them, and

tooke the blade bones of the same, and first sod them, and then burnt them, and tooke of the

bloud of the faid sheepe, and mingled it with the powder of the said bones, and wrote certaine

Characters with the faid blood, vfing many other ceremonics and words, and by the same di-

uined and found, that wee should meete with enemies and theeues (to our great trouble) but

should ouercome them, to which forcerie, I and my companie gaue no credit, but wee found it

true : for within three houres after that the fouldiers departed from vs, which was the fifteenth as

Diaination by

day of December, in the morning, wee escryed farre oil divers horsemen which made towards vs, and we (perceining them to bee rouers) gathered our felues together, being fortie of vs well appointed, and able to fight, and wee made our prayers together enery one after his Law, profelling to live and dye one with another, and to prepared our felues. When the theeues were nigh vnto vs, wee perceiued them to be in number thirtie feuen men well armed, and appointed with bowes, arrowes, and fwords, and the Captaine a Prince banished from his Countrey. They

Fight with

willed vs to yeeld our feloes, or elfe to bee flaine, but wee defied them, wherewith they shot at vs all at once, and we at them very hotly, and so continued our fight from morning verill two houres within night, diuers men, horses and camels being wounded and slaine on both parts: Hand-sunsve- and had it not beene for foure hand-guns, which I and my companie had and vied, wee had a beene ouercome and destroyed : for the theenes were better armed, and were also better Archers then wee; But after we had flaine divers of their men and hor es with our Guns, they durk not approach fo nigh, which caused them to come to a truce with vs vntill the next morning, which wee accepted, and encamped our felues vpon a hill, and made the fashion of a Cassle, walling it about with packes of wares, and layd our Horses and Camels within the same, to saue them from the shot of arrowes : and the theeues also incamped within an arrow shot of vs, but they were betwixt vs and the water, which was to our great discomfort, because neither wee nor our Camels had drunke in two dayes before. Thus keeping good watch, when halfe the night was spent, the Prince of the Theeues sent a

Buffirmans, or

meslenger halfe way vnto vs, requiring to talke with our Captaine, in their tongue, the Cara-40 uan Balba, who answered the messenger, I will not depart from my companie to goe into the halfe way to talke with thee : but it that thy Prince with all his companie will sweare by our Law to keepe the truce, then will I fend a man to talke with thee, or elfe not. Which the Prince understanding as well himselfe as his company, swore so loude that wee might all heare; And then we fent one of our companie (reputed a holy man) to talke with the same messenger. The message was pronounced aloude in this order. Our Prince demandeth of the Carauan Basha, and of all you that bee Buffarmans, (that is to fay, Circumcifed) not desiring your blouds, that you deliner into his hands as many Caphars, that is, unbelieners (meaning vs the Christians) as are among you with their goods, and in so doing, bee will suffer you to depart with your goods in quietnesse, and on the contrarie, you shall bee handled with no lesse cruelty then the Capitars, if hee ouercome you, as hee doubteth not, 50 To the which our Caranan Balka answered, that hee had no Christians in his companie, nor other flrangers, but two Turker which were of their Law; and although hee had, hee would rather dye then deliner them, and that wee were not afraid of his threatnings, and that should hee know when day appeared. And so palling in talke, the Thecues (contrary to their cath) carried our hely man away to their Prince, crying with a loude voyce in token of victorie, Ollo, ollo. Fidelitieofan Wherewith wee were much discomforted, fearing that that holy man would betray vs: but he being cruelly handled and much examined, would not to death confesse any thing which was to vs prejudiciall, neither touching vs, nor yet what men they had flaine and wounded of ours the day before. When the night was ipent, in the morning wee prepared our felices to battell againe : which the theeues perceiving, required to fall to agreement, and asked much of vs : And to bee briefe, the most part of our company being loach to goe to battell agains, and having lit- 60 tle to lofe, and fafe conduct to passe, wee were compelled to agree, and to give the theeues twentie ninths (that is to fay) twentie times nine seuerall things, and a Camell to carrie away the same, which being received, the theeres departed into the Willernesse to their olde

habitation, and wee went on our way forward. And that night came to the River Ox 201, The river of where wee refreshed our felues, having beene three dayes without water and drinke, and tarried there all the next day, making merrie with our slaine Horses and Camels, and then departed from that place, and for feare of meeting with the faid theeues againe, or fuch like, wee left the from this place; and to the faid River, and passed through a wildernesse of faid, and trauelled foure dayes in the fame before wee came to water : and then came to a Well, the water of tind, being very brackish, and we then as before were in need of water, and of other victuals, being

forced to kill our Horses and Camels to eate.

In this wildernesse also, wee had almost fallen into the hands of Theeues: for one night be-40 ing at rest, there came certaine scouts, and carried away certaine of our men which lay a little separated from the Carauan where with there was a great shoute and crie, and we immediatly laded our Camels, and departed being about midnight, and very darke, and droue fore till we came to the river Ozm againe, and then wee feared nothing being walled with the faid river : and whether it was for that wee had gotten the water, or for that the same threues were farre from vs when the foots discouered vs, we know not, but week aped that danger.

So vpon the three & twentieth day of December, we arrived at the Citie of Boehar in the land Boghar a Citie of Baltria. This Bogbar is lituated in the lowest part of all the Land, walled about with a high of Eastria in wall of earth, with divers Gates into the same : it is divided into three partitions, whereof two Journates parts are the Kings, and the third part is for Merchants & Markets, and every Science hath their

20 dwelling and market by themselves. The Citie is very great, and the houses for the most part of Earth, but there are also many Houses, Temples, and Monuments of stone sumptuously builded, and gilt, and specially Bath-stones so artificially built, that the like thereof is not in the world; the manner whereof is too long to rehearie. There is a little river running through the A ftrance midft of the laid Citie, but the water thereof is moit vnwholesome, for it breedeth sometimes in Wome in men that drinke thereof, and especially in them that bee not there borne, a Worme of an ell mens lege. long, which lyeth commonly in the leg, betwire the fleth and the skin, and is pluckt out about the Ancle with great art and cunning, the Surgeons being much practifed therein, and if shee breake in plucking out, the partie dyeth, and every day the commeth out about an inch, which

is rolled up, and so workerh till the bee all out. And yet it is there forbidden to drinke any o-20 ther thing then water, and Mares milke, and who oeuer is found to breake that Law, is whipped and beaten most cruelly through the open markets, and there are Officers appointed for the lame, who have authoritie to goe into any mans houle, to fearch if hee have either Aquanta, Wine, or Brag, and finding the same, doe breake the vessels, spoyle the drinke, and punish the mafters of the house most cruelly ; yea, and many times if they perceine but by the breath of a man that hee hath drunke, without further exa mination he shall not escape their hands.

There is a Metropolitane in this Boghar, who causeth this law to be so straightly kept : and he is more obeyed then the King, and will depose the King, and place another at his will and pleafure, as hee did by this King that raigned at our being there, and his predecessour, by the meanes of the faid Metropolitan : for hee betrayed him, and in the night flew him in his chamber, who 40 was a Prince that loued all Christians well,

This Countrey of Boghar was somtime subject to the Persians, and doe now speake the Per- Thesa are of from tongue, but yet now it is a Kingdome of it felfe, and hath most crueli warres continually the testion with the faid Persians about their Religion, although they bee all Marometists. One occasion of Tartars. their warres is, for that the Persians will not cut the hayre of their upper lips, as the Bogbarians

and all other Tartars doe, which they account great finne, and call them Caphars, that is, vibeleeuers, as they doe the Christians. The King of Bogbar hath no great power or riches, his revenues are but small, and hee is most maintained by the Citie : for he taketh the tenth penie of all things that are there fold, as well

by the Graftimen as by the Merchants, to the great imposerishment of the people, whom hee keepeth in great subjection, and when hee lacketh money, he sendeth his officers to the Shops 50 of the faid Merchants, to take their wares to pay his debts, and will have credit of force, as the like hee did to pay me certaine money that he owed me for nineteene pieces of Kerley. Their money is filter and copper, for gold their is none currant: they have but one piece of filter, and The Coyne of that is worth twelue-pence English, and the copper money are called Pooles, and one hundred Bother .. and twentie of them goeth to the value of the faid twelue-pence, and is more common payment then the filter, which the King caufeth to rife and fall to his most advantage every other month, and fomtimes twife a moneth, not caring to oppresse his people, for that he looketh not to raigne about two or three yeeres, before he bee either flaine or driven away, to the great destruction of

The twentie fixth day of the moneth, I was commanded to goe before the faid King, to whom 60 I presented the Emperour of Rossia his letters, who entertained vs most gently, and caused vs to eate in his presence, and druers times hee sent for me, and denised with me familiarly in his secret chamber, as well of the power of the Emperout, and the great Turke, as allo of our Countries, Lawes, and Religion, and caused vs to shoote in hand-guns before him, and did hims lee

practife the vie thereof. But after all this great entertainment, before my departure hee thewed Avery Tast. 1. himselfe a very Tastar: for he went to the warres owing me money, and faw me not payed before his departure. And although indeed her gaue order for the same, yet was I very ill satisfied, and forced to rebate part, and to take wares as payment for the rest contrary to my expectation : but of a begger better payment I could not have, & glad I was fo to be payd and difpatched.

But yet I must needs praste and commend this barbarous King, who immediately after myarriuall at Bogbar, having understood our trouble with the Thecues, fent one! undred men well armed, and gaue them great charge not to returne before they had either flaine or taken the favd theeues. Who according to their commission ranged the wildernesse in such fort, that they met The Kings iuwith the faid companie of Theeues, and flew part, and part fled, and foure they tooke and to brought vinto the King, and two of them were fore wounded in our skirmish with our Guns: And after the King had fent for me to come to fee them, hee caused them all foure to bee hanged at his Palace gite, because they were Gentlemen, to the example of others. And of fish goods as were gotten againe, I had part reftored me; and this good Iuffice I found at his hands.

There is yearely great refort of Merchants to this Citie of Boghar, which travell in great Ca. ranans from the Countries thereabout adiopning, as India, Persia, Balgh, Russia, with diversothers, and in times paft from Cathay, when there was paffage : but thele Merchants are fo beggerly and poore, and bring to little quantitie of wares, lying two or three yeeres to fell the fame. that there is no hope of any good trade there to be had worthy the following. The chiefe commodities that are brought thither out of their forelaid Countries, are thefe following.

The indians doe bring fine Whites, which the Tartars doe all roll about their heads. and all other kindes of Whites, which ferue for apparell made of Cotton-wooll and Crafe ca, but Gold, Silver, precious Stones, and Spices they bring none. I enquired and perceived that all fuch trade passeth to the Ocean sea, and the veynes where all such things are gottenare in the subjection of the Portugals. The Indians carrie from Bogbar againe wrought Silkes, red Hides, Slaves, and Hories, with fuch like, bur of Kerleis and other cloath, they make littleaccount. I offered to bartar with Merchants of those Countries, which came from the furthest parts of India, even from the Countrey of Bengala, and the river Ganges, to give them Kerfeis for their commodities, but they would not barter for fuch commoditie as Cloath. The Persians doe bring thither Craska, Woollen-cloath, Linnen-cloath, divers kindes of 30

Merchandife

wrought pide Silkes, Argomacks, with fuch like, and doe carrie from thence red hydes with other Ruffe wares, and Slaues, which are of divers Countries, but cloath they will buy none, for that they bring thither themselves, and is brought vnto them as I have inquired from Alego Merchandife. in Syria, and the parts of Turkie. The Ruffes doe carrie vnto Bogbar, red hydes, sheepe skinnes. woollen cloath of divers forts, woodden veffels, brydles, fadules, with fuch like, and doe carne away from thence divers kindes of wares made of cotten-wooll, divers kindes of filkes, Crafes, with other things, but there is but finall viterance. From the Countries of Cathay are brought thither in time of peace, and when the way is open, Muske, Rubarbe, Satten, Damaske, with diners others things. At my being at Bogbar, there came Caravans out of all thele forefaid Coun-Merchandise tries, except from Cathay : and the caule why there came none from thence, was the great & warres that had dured three yeeres before my comming thither, and yet dured betwixt two great Countries and Cities of Tartars, that are directly in the way betwixt the faid Boghar and the faid Cathay, and certaine barbarous field people, as well Gentiles as Mahometifts bordering to the faid Cities. The Cities are called Taskent and Caskar, and the people that warre against Taskent are called Coffacks of the law of Mahomet : and they which warre with the faid Countrey of Caskar are called Kings, Gentiles and Idolaters. These two barbarous Nations are of great force, living in the fields without House or Towne, and have almost subdued the forelaid Cities, and to Hopped up the way, that it is impossible for any Carauan to passe unspoyled : fo that three yeeres before our being there, no Carauan had gone, or vied trade betwixt the Coun-

of Cathay. Wares. Taskent and

> To foeake of the faid Country of Cathay, and of such newes as I have heard thereof, I have thought it best to reserve it to our meeting. I having made my solace at Boobar, in the winter time, and having learned by much inquitition, the trade thereof, as also of all the other Countries thereto adjoyning, and the time of the yeere being come, for all Carauans to depart, and alfo the King being gone to the warres, and newes come that hee was fled, and I aduertifed by the Metropolitan himielte, that I thould depart, because the Towne was like to bee beseged : I thought it good and meete, to take my journey fome way, and determined to have gone from thence into Persia, and to have seene the trade of that Country, although I had informed my felfe sufficiently therof, as well at Astracan, as at Boghar: and perceived well the trades not to be much vnlike the trades of Tartaria: but when I should have taken my journey that way, it was 60 let by diners occasions: the one was, the great warres that did newly begin betwixt the Sophie, and the Kings of Tartaria, whereby the wayes were deftroyed : and there was a Caravan deitrayed with rouers and theeues, which came out of India and Persia, by safe conduct : and about ten dayes tourney from Bogbar, they were robbed, and a great part flaine. Also the Metropoli-

tries of Cathay and Boghar, and when the way is cleare, it is nine moneths journey.

ton of Boobar, who is greater then the King, tooke the Emperours letters of Ruffia from me. without which I should have beene taken Slave in every place : also all such wares as I had recrited in barrer for Cloath, and as I tooke perforce of the King, and other his Nobles, in payment of money due vnto me, were not vendible in Perfia : for which causes, and diners others. I was constrained to come backe againe to Mare Caspium, the same way I went : so that the eight of March, 1559, wee departed out of the faid Citie of Bogbar, being a Carauan of fixe hunfred Camels : and if wee had not departed when we did, I and my companie had beene in dan- March, 1559. ger to have lost life and goods. For ten dayes after our departure, the King of Samarcand came with an armie, and belieged the faid Citie of Baghar, the King being ablent, and gone to the 10 warres against another Prince his kinsman, as the like chanceth in those Countries once in two or three yeeres. For it is maruell, if a King raigne there about three or foure yeeres, to the great de-

Araction of the Countrey, and Merchants.

The fine and twentieth of March, we came to the foresaid Towne of Urgence, and escaped the Vrgence, danger of foure hundred rouers, which lay in wayte for vs backe againe, being the most of them of kindred to that companie of theeues, which wee met with going foorth, as we perceived by foure foves, which were taken. There were in my companie, and committed to my charge, two Ambaffadors, the one from the King of Bogbar, the other from the King of Balke, and were fent The King of vnto the Emperour of Ruffia. And after having tarried at Vrgence, and the Caftle of Sellyfure, eight Bale, or Ealgh dayes for the affembling, and making ready our Carauan, the second of Aprill wee departed from

20 thence, having foure moe Ambastadours in our companie, fent from the King of Vrgence, and other Sultans, his brethren, vnto the Emperour of Ruffia, with answer of such Letters as I brought them : and the same Ambassadours were also committed vnto my charge by the said Kings and Princes: to whom I promised most faithfully, and swore by our Law, that they should bee well vied in Rusland, and suffered to depart from thence againe in safetie, according as the Emperour had writtenallo in his letters : for they somewhat doubted, because there had none gone out of

Tartaria into Rullia, of long time before.

The three and twentieth of Aprill, wee arrived at the Mare Caspinan againe, where we The Caspina found our Barke which wee came in, but neither Anchor, Cable, Cocke, nor Sayle : neuerthe- fea. leffe we brought Hempe with vs, and fpun a Cable our felues, with the reft of our tackling, and 30 made vs a fayle of cloath of Cotton-wooll, and rigged our Barke as well as wee could, but boate or anchor we had none. In the meane time being denifing to make an anchor of wood of a Cartwheele, there arrived a Barke, which came from Astracan, with Tartars and Russes, which had Woodden and two Anchors, with whom I agreed for the one : and thus being in a readinesse, wee set sayle and chor. departed, I, and the two Iohn fons, being Master and Mariners our selues, having in our Barke the faid fixe Ambassadours, and twentie five Russes, which had beene Slaves a long time in Tartaria, nor euer had before my comming, libertie, or meanes to get home, and these Slaues served to row when need was. Thus fayling iometimes along the coaft, and iometimes out of fight of land. The thirteenth day of May, having a contrary winde, we came to an anchor, being three leagues from the shoare, and there arose a fore storme, which continued fortie foure houres, and our ca-40 blebeing of our owne spinning, brake, and lost our anchor, and being off a lee shoare, and having Dangerous no boate to helpe vs, wee hoysed our sayle, and bare roomer with the said shoare, looking for pre-tempest, and fent death; but as God prouided for vs, we ranne into a creeke full of Oze, and fo faued our felues vie of the with our Barke, and lived in great discomfort for a time. For although wee should have escaped with our lives the danger of the fea, yet if our barke had perished, we knew we should have been either destroyed, or taken slaues by the people of that Countrey, who live wildly in the field, like beafts, without house or habitation. Thus when the storme was feafed, wee went out of the creeke againe : and having fet the land with our Compaffe, and taken certayn markes of the fame. during the time of the tempest, whilest we rid at our anchor, wee went directly to the place where we rid, with our Barke againe, and found our anchor which we loft : whereat the Tartars

50 much maruelled, how we did it. While wee were in the creeke, we made an anchor of wood of Gart wheeles, which we had in our Barke, which we threw away, when we had found our Iron anchor againe. Within two dayes after, there arose another great storme, at the North-east, and we lay a trie, being driven farre into the fea, and had much adoe to keepe our Barke from finking, the billow was fo great : but at the last, having faire weather, wee tooke the Sunne, and knowing how the Land lay from vs, we fell with the River Taik, according to our defire, whereof the Taik, Tartars were very glad, fearing that wee should have beene driven to the coast of Persia, whose people were vnto them great enemies.

Note, that during the time of our Nauigation, we fet up the red Croffe of Saint George in our The English flagges, for honour of the Christians, which I supposed was never seene in the Caspian sea before. flag in the Casp 60 Wee paffed in this voyage duers fortunes: notwithflanding, the eight and twentieth of May we fames, the arrived in lafetie at Afracan, and there remayned till the tenth of June following, as well to County increased by prepare vs small Boates, to goe up against the streame of Volga, with our goods, as also for the companie of the Amballadours of Taxarie, committed vinto me, to be brought to the prefence of the Emperour of Ruffia,

This Capian fea (to fay fomething of it) is in length about two hundred leagues, and in breadth one hundred and fittie, without any iffue to other Seas : to the East part wheref, ioyneth the great defart Countrey of the Tartars, called Turkemen : to the Weit, the Countries of the Chyraffes, the Mountaines of Caucasius, and the Mare Euxinum, which is from the field Cassi. Another de Control an Sea, a hundred leagues. To the North is the river Volga, and the land of Nagay, and to the the Ciffianties. South part toyne the Countries of Media and Persia. This Sea is fresh water in many places, and in other places as falt as our great Ocean: It hath many goodly Rivers falling into it, and it auoydeth not it selse except it bee vnder ground. The notable Rivers that fall into it, are brit the great River of Volga, called in the Tartar tongue Edell, which springeth out of a lake in a marrish or plaine ground, not farre from the Citie of Nouogrode in Ruffia, and it is from the ipring to 10 the Sea, aboue two thouland English miles. It hath divers other goodly Rivers falling into it, as out of Siberia, Taic, and Tem: Allo out of the mountaines of Cancasus, the Rivers of Crue and Arash, and divers others.

As touching the trade of Shamakie in Media and Tebris, with other Townes in Persia, I have enquired, and doe well understand, that it is even like to the trades of Tartaria, that is little vtterance, and small profite: and I have been advertised that the chiefe trade of Persia is into St. ria, and so transported into the Leuant sea. The few ships upon the Cassian Seas, the want of Mart and port Townes, the pouertie of the people, and the Ice, maketh that trade naught.

At Altracan there were Merchants of Shamakie, with whom I offered to barter, and to give Afternation 47.

Action 14.7.

Action 14.7. Countrey, as I offered them, which was fixe rubbles for a Kerfie, that I asked : and while I was at Boghar, there were brought thither out of Persia, Cloath, and divers commodities of our Countries, which was fold as good cheape, as I might fell ours.

The tenth day of Iune, wee departed from Astracan towards the Mosco, hauing an hundred gunners in our companie at the Emperours charges, for the fafe conduct of the Tartar Ambassadours and me. And the eight and twentieth day of July following, we arrived at the Citie of Cazan, having been upon the way from Aftracan thither, fixe weekes and more, without any refreshing of victuals : for in all that way there is no habitation.

The feuenth of August following, wee departed from Cazan, and transported our goods by Zerous in 55 deg 33 min. Water, as farre as the Citie of Mouns, and then by land: so that the second of September, wee His arrival arrived at the Citie of the Mosco, and the sourch day I came before the Emperous Maieslis, Mojes the fe-kiffed his hand, and prefented him a white Cowes tayle of Cathas, and a Drum of Tartaria, which hee well accepted. Also I brought before him all the Ambassadours that were committed to my charge, with all the Ruffe fluies : and that day I dined in his Maiesties presence, and at dinner, his Grace tent me meate by a Duke, and asked me divers questions touching the Lands and Countries where I had beene. And thus I remayned at the Moseo about your affaires, vntill the seventeenth day of Februarie that your wares were sent downe: and then having licence of the Emperours Maiestie to depart, the one and twentieth day I came to your house to Vologhds, and there remay ned vntill the breaking vp of the yeere; and then having feene all your goods laden into your Boates, I departed with the jame, and arrived withall in fafetie at Colmogro, the 40 minth of May 1560. And heere I ceale for this time, intreating you to beare with this my large discoarse, which by reason of the varietie of matter, I could make no shorter, and I beseech God to prosper all your attempts.

I have certaine notes which seeme to have beene written at Boghar by some of Masser lenkinsons companie: which containe intelligences there received touching Cathay and the wayes thither. But I bope thereof in that which followes to give better intelligence. It is there faid that the people of Comoron are very beautifull, and that they wee Kniues and Forkes of gold and silver to eate their meate, not tonching it with their hands : that the Mink-beast is as big as a Hound. In Teray they worship the taintie in Goes. Fre, which is thirtie foure dayes iourney from Cathay, At Cascar is resident the Can. From Cascar to Cocheke is foure weekes ; it is the first Land of the Emperour of Cathay : and then to Camche 10 fine dayes by land, and to Catalo eight weekes. In this last sourney is plentic of all things : both Horse to bee bad, and Women at too easie rate, &c. which as newes to them I have beere touched,

Memoriallof

rather then related. I have also by me, the last Will of Gabriel Willoughbie, kinsman to that honourable Martyr of English Northerne Discoueries Sir Hugh Willoughbie, mentioned in the beginning of this Chapter, and subscribed with his Name, the worth whereof hath caused heere also this subscription. It was found in the Ship where they were frozen.

è. V.

Aduertisements and reports of the sixth \* Voyage into the parts of Persia and Media, gathered out of fundry Letters written by CHRISTOPHER BVE-ROVOH; and more especially a voyage over the Caspian Sea. and their hipwracke and miferies there endu-

red by the Ice.

Irft it is to bee understood, that the ships for the voyage to Saint Nicholas in Russia, in which the Factors and merchandise for the Persian voyage were transported, departed from Gravefend the nineteenth of June, 1 579, which arrived at Saint Nicholas in Ruffia, the two and twentieth of July, where the Factors and Merchants lan-

ded, and the merchandise discharged and laden into Doshnikes, that is, barkes of the Countrey, to becarried from thence up by River unto Vologda. And the fine and twentieth day of the faid July, the Doshnikes departed from Rose lland by Saint Nicholas vp the ruer Dwing Peremene, that is to fay in poste, by continuals fayling, rowing, setting with poles, or drawing of men, which came to Colmogro the feuen and twentieth day, and departed thence the nine and twentieth of Colmogra-Iuly up the faid river Dwina, and came to Vilyong (which is at the head of the river Dwina, and mouth of Sughano) the ninth of August, where they flayed but a small time, promising some vi-

20 Auals, and flutting certaine of their Coffacks or Barkmen, and so departed thence the same day vp the Sughano, and came to Torma (which is counted somewhat more then halfe the way from Vityoug) the fifteenth day, where they shifted some of their Cossacks, and departed thence the fame day, and came to the Citie Vologda the nineteenth of August, where they landed their goods, and stayed at that place till the thirtieth of the same. Hauing prouided at Vologda, Telegas or Waggons, whereupon they laded their goods, they departed thence with the same by land toor Waggons, whereupon use; and was a superior of the clocke in the morning, and came to the Eaft file of the river Volga, ouer against Tenglasse, with five and twente Telegas laden Yanglass. with the faid goods, the feuenth of September at fine of the clocke afternoone. Then the three strongs or barkes, prouided to transport the faid goods to Aftracan, (where they should meete the

30 thip that should carrie the same from thence into Perfia) came ouer from Terallane Into the same fide of the river Volga, & there tooke in the faid goods. And having prepared the faid Barks ready with all necessarie furniture, they departed with them from Terassame down the river of Volga, on the fourteenth day of September at nine of the clocke in the morning, and they arrived at Niz- Niznanagrad. nowogrod the feuenteenth day at three of the clocke afternoone, where they shewed the Emperours letters to passe free without paying any custome, and tarried there about three houres to prouide necessaries, and then departing, arrived at Cazan (or neere the same Towne) on the two Cazan. and twentieth of September at fine of the clocke afternoone, where (through contrary windes. and for providing new Coffacks in the places of fome that there went from them) they remayned till the fixe and twentieth day, at what time they departed thence about two of the clocke

40 after noone, and arrived at Tetulhagorod, which is on the Crim fide of Volga, and in latitude 55. degrees 22 minutes, the eight and twentieth day at ten in the forenoone, where they anchored and remained about three houres, and departing thence came to Oneak, which is on the Crims fide (on the Westerne fide of Volga) the lift of October about five of the clocke in the morning. fide (on the Welterne nac or y nga) into an one Cazan and Africam : and heere there groweth This place is accounted halfe the way betweene Cazan and Africam : and heere there groweth great store of Liquuris: the soyle is very fruitfull: they found there Apple-trees, and Cherrie-Liqueits. trees. The latitude of Oneak is 51 degrees 30 minuts. At this place had beene a very faire stone Castle called by the name Oneak, and adjoyning to the same was a Towne called by the Russes, Sadem: this Townse and part of the Cattle (by report of the Ruffer) was swallowed into the sadem earth by the inflict of God, for the wicked nelle of the people that inhabited the Jame. Therere-Strange indge-

50 mayneth at this day to be seene a part of the ruines of the Castle, and certaine Tombes, wherein ment. as it seemeth haue beene layd noble personages : for vpon a tombe stone might be perceived the forme of a Horse and a man sitting on it with a Bow in his hand, and Arrowes girt to his side : there was a piece of a Scutchion also vpon one of the stones, which had characters grauen on it, whereof some part had been confumed with the weather, and the rest left unperfect : but by the formeof them that remained, we judged them to be characters of Armenia: and other characters were grauen also vpon another tombestone. Now they departed from Oneak the faid fift of October at fine of the clocke after noone, and came to Peranolok the tenth day about elemen or Peranolok twelve of the clocke that night, making no abode at that place, but passed alongst by it. This word Perauolok in the Ruffe tongue doth fignifie a narrow straight or necke of land between two

60 waters, and it is so called by them, because from the riner Volga, at that place, to the riner Don or Tanais, is counted thirtie versts, or as much as a man may well trauell on foot in one day. And seuen versts beneath, vpon an Iland called Tfaritfna, the Emperour of Ruffia hath fiftie Gunners all Thirifue. Summertime to keepe watch, called by the Tastar name Caravool. Betweenethis place and Afracan are five other Caramools or watches.

\* The other voyages are in Mafter Haklig! this I have for Tariaria and the Caffian lea brought hi-

The First is named Kameni Caramool, and is distant from Peranelok one hundred and twentie verites. The fecond named Stupino Caronool, distant from the first fiftie verites. The third called Pology Caronool, is one hundred and twentie verftes diffant from the fecond. The fourth named Keezeyur Caramool, is fiftie verfles distant from the third. The fift named lebkebre, is thertieverites distant from the fourth, and from lebkebre to Afracan is thirtie verftes.

Lee at Allracan tor foure mo-

244

The fixteenth of October they arrived at Afracan. The ninteenth of November the winde being northerly, there was a great frost, and much Ice in the River: the next day being the twentieth of Nouember, the Ice flood in the River, and to continued vntill Eafter day.

The fixth of Ianuarie being Twelfe day (which they call Chreshenia) the Ruffes of Afracan 10 brake a hole in the Ice vpon the River Volga, and hallowed the water with great folemnitic, according to the manner of their Countrey, at which time all the Souldiers of the Towne flot of their small Peeces vpon the Ice, and likewise to gratifie the Captaine of the Caltle, being a Duke, whose name is Pheodor Michalonich Troiscouria, who stood hard by the ship, beholding them as they were on the River, was shot off all the Ordnance of our ship being fifteene Peter ces, viz. two Faulcons, two Faulconets, foure Fowlers, foure Fowlers Chambers, and three oother small Preces made for the Stroogs to shoot Haile-stones, and afterwards the great Ordnance of the Castle was shot off.

An Eclip'c.

On the one and thirtieth of Ianuarie there happened a great Eclipse of the Moone, which began about twelue of the clocke at night, and continued before thee was cleere an houre and an 10 halfe by estimation, which ended the first of Februarie about halfe an houre past one in the morning : fhee was wholly darkned by the fpace of halfe an houre.

The variation of the Com-

The fenenteenth of Aprill, the variation of the Compasse observed in Afracan, was 13. degrees 40, minutes from North to West. This Spring there came newes to Afracia, that the Queene of Persia (the King being blind ) had beene with a great Armie against the Turkes that can, was 13 de were left to possesse Media, and had given them a great overthrow: yet notwithstanding Derbent, and the greatest part of Media were still possessed and kept by the Turkes. The Factors of the Companie consulting upon their affaires, determined to leave at Aftracan the one halfe of their goods with Arthur Edwards, and with the other halfe, the other three Factors would proceed in the thip on their purpoted Voyage to the coast of Media, to fee what might bee done 30 there: where, if they could not finde lafe trafficke, they determined to proceed to the coast of Gilan, which is a Prouince neere the Caspian Seabordering vpon Persia: and thereupon appointed the faid goods to be laden aboord the ship, and tooke into her also some merchandise of Tifks or Persian Merchants.

Gilan.

The second of May they weighed, and plyed downe the River Volga, toward the Caspian Sea. The fewenth of May in the morning, they paffed by a Tree that flandeth on the left hand of the River as they went downe, which is called Mahomet Agatch, or Mahomets Tree, and about three verites further, that is to fay, to the Southwards of the faid Tree, is a place called Vchoog , that is to fay, The Ruffe Weare: (but Ochoog is the name of a Weare in the Tanar tong ie) where are certaine Cotages, and the Emperour hath lying at that place certaine Gun- 40 ners to guard his Fisher-men that keepe the Weare. This Veboog is counted from Afracan fixty

Peboog.

verites: they proceeded downe the faid River without flaying at the Veboog. The ninth and Shallow water, tenth dayes they met with shallow water, and were forced to lighten their ship by the Paus: The eleventh day they fent backe to the Voboog for another Passos: This day by mischance the thip was bilged on the grapnell of the Panos, whereby the companie had fultayned great loffes, if the chiefest part of their goods had not beene layd into the Paus: for notwithstanding their pumping with three Pumps, heaving out water with Buckets, and all the best shifts they could make, the ship was halfe full of water ere the leake could be found and stopt. The twelfth day the Panor came to them from the Vehoog, whereby they lighted the ship of all the goods. The thirteenth day in the morning there came to them a fmall Boat, fent by the Captaine of Afra- 50 can, to learne whether the ship were at Sea cleare off the flats. The fifteenth day by great industrie and trauell they got their ship cleare off the shoales and flats, wherewith they had beene troubled from the ninth day vntill then: they were forced to passe their ship in three foot wa-Chetera Bougori, ter or leffe. The fixteenth day they came to the Chetera Bougori, or Iland of foure Hillockes, which are counted fortie verifes from Vchoog, and are the furthest Land towards the Sea. The feuenteenth day they bare off into the Sea, and being about twelve verstes from the Foure hillockes, riding in fine foot and a halfe water about eleven of the clocke in the fore-noone, they tooke their goods out of the Panofes into the ship, and filled their ship with all things necessarie. The eighteenth day in the morning about feuen of the clocke, the Panofes being discharged departed away towards Aftracan, the winde then at South-east, they rode still with the ship, and 60

nineteenth day, the winde South-east, they rode still. The twentieth day, the winde at North-

Slars.

The Caffian

45. deg. 20.mi- obseruing the elevation of the Pole at that place, found it to be 45. degrees 20. minutes. The maccentuday, the winde South-eart, ency look can also and Heered thence South by Well, within in the well, they fee fayle about one of the clocke in the morning, and Heered thence South by Well, with they fee fayle about one of the clocke in the morning, and Heered thence South by Well,

and South South-west, about three leagues, and then anchored in fixe foot and a halfe water, a-

bout nine of the clocke before noone, at which time it fell calme: the eleuation of the Pole at that place 45. degrees 13. minutes. The one and twentieth, having the winde at North-west. they fet fayle, and steered thence South by West, and South vntill eleven of the clocke, and had then nine foote water : and at noone they observed the latitude, and found it to bee 44. degrees 47. minutes: then had they three fathoms and a halfe water, being cleare off the flats. It is counted from the Foure hillockes to the Sea about fiftie verifes. From the faid noone-tide vntill foure of the clocke, they fayled South by East fine leagues and a halfe : then had they fine fathoms and a halfe, and brackish water: from that till twelve at night they fayled South by Brackish water East halfe a league, East ten leagues : then had they eleuen fathoms, and the water salter. From

CHAP.I. S.5. The Bashaes entertainment of the English at Derbent.

10 that till the two and twentieth day three of the clocke in the morning, they fayled three and fiftie leagues, then had they fixteene fathoms water: from thence they fayled untill noone South and by West Seuen leagues and a halfe, the latitude then observed 43 degrees 15.mi- 43 degrees nutes, the depth then eight and twentie fathoms, and shallow ground : from that vntill eight 15, minutes, of the clocke at night, they fayled South by East five leagues and a halfe, then had they three and fortie fathoms shallow ground. From thence till the three and twentieth at foure of the clocke in the morning, they fayled South South-west three leagues and a halfe : then could they get no ground in two and fittle fathoms deepe. From thence vntill noone they fayled South nine

leagues, then the latitude observed, was 42, degrees 20 minutes. From that till the foure and twentieth day at noone, they fayled South by West feuenteene leagues and a halfe, then the lati-20 tude observed, was one and fortis degrees two and thirtie minutes. From noone till seven of the 41. degrees clocke at night, they fayled South South-west four leagues, then had they perfect sight of high 32-minutes. Land or Hills, which were almost couered with Snow, and the midst of them were West from the ship, being then about twelue leagues from the neerest Land: they sounded but could finde no ground in two hundred fathoms. From thence they fayled South-west vntill mid-night: about three leagues from thence till the fine and twentieth day, foure of the clocke in the mor-

ning, they fayled West three leagues, being then little winde, and neere the Land, they tooke

they founded but could get no ground in two hundred fathoms. At foure of the clocke in the 14. minutes. after-noone, the winde North-west, they set their sayles: and from thence till the sixe and 30 twentieth day at noone, they fayled East South-east foure leagues. From thence they sayled till eight of the clocke at night South-west three leagues, the winde then at North. From thence they fayled vntill the feuen and twentieth day two of the clocke in the morning, West Southwest eight leagues, the winde blowing at North very much. From the faid two till foure of the clocke, they fayled South by West one league: then being day light, they saw the Land plaine, which was not past three leagues from them, being very high ragged Land. There were certaine Rockes that lay farre off into the Sea, about five leagues from the fame Land, (which are called Barmake Talb) they sayled betweene those Rockes and the Land, and about fine of the clocke they paffed by the Port Bilbill, where they flould have put in but could not: and bearing long it

the shoare about two of the clocke after noone, they came to Bildib in the Countrey of Media Bilbill. 40 or Sheruan, against which place they anchored in time foot water. Prefently after they were at anchor, there came aboord of them a Boat , wherein were feuen or eight persons , two Tarkes, the rest Persians, the Turkes vassals, which bade them welcome, and seemed to be glad of their arrivall, who told the Factors that the Turke had conquered all Media, or the Countrey Sheruan, and how that the Turkes Balha remayned in Derbent with a Garrison of Turkes, and that Shamaky was wholly spoyled, and had few or no Inhabitants left in it. The Factors then being defirous to come to the speech of the Basha, sent one of the Tiskes (or Merchants that went over with them from Afracan, paffingers) and one of the Companies feruants Robert Golding, with those Souldiers, to the Captaine of Bachn, which place standeth hard by the Sea, to certifie him Bachn Poize of their arrivall, and what commodities they had brought, and to defire friendship to have quiet

50 and fafe trafficke for the same. Bachu is from Bildih, the place where they rode, about a dayes iourney, on foot easily to be translled, which may be fixe leagues the next way over Land: it is a walled Towne, and strongly fortified. When the faid Messenger came to the Captaine of Bachu, the faid Captaine gane him very friendly entertaynement.

In the morning very early, hee fent Horse for the rest of the companie which should goe to Derbent, fending by them that went, ten Sheepe for the fhip. Whileft they were at breakfast, Master Turnbull, Master Tailboyes, and Thomas Hudfon the Master of the ship, came thither , and when they had all broken their faits, they went to Bachn. And from Bachn they proceeded towards Derbent, as it was by the Captaine promised, being accompanied on their way for their fafe conduct, with a Gentleman, and certaine Souldiers, which had the Captaine of Bachs his

60 Letters to the Balba of Derbent, very friendly written in their behalfe. In their journey to Derbent they for fooke the ordinarie wayes, being very dangerous, and travelled thorow Woods till they came almost to the Towne of Derbent : and then the Gentleman rode before with the Captaines Letters to the Basha, to certifie him of the English Merchants comming, who receiving the Letters, and understanding the matter, was very glad of the newes, and fent forth to re-

in their fayles, and lay bulling: at noone the latitude observed, was 40. degrees 54. minutes: 40. degrees

The receiving of the English

The latitude

of Bildib 40.

deg.25.min.

The variation

of the Com-

paffe todeg.

ceiue them certaine Souldiers Gunners, who met them about two miles out of the Towne, faluting them with great reuerence, and afterwards rode before them : then againe met them other Souldiers, somewhat neerer the Cattle, which likewise having done their salutations rode bea fore them , and then came forth Noblemen, Captaines, and Gentlemen, to receive them into the Castle and Towne. As they entred the Castle, there was a shot of twentie Peeces of great Ordnance, and the Bafina fent Mafter Turnbull a very faire Horse with furniture to mount on, esteemed to be worth an hundred Markes, and so they were consayed to his presence; who atter he had talked with them, fent for a Coat of cloth of Gold, and caused it to be put on Ma. fter Turnbuls backe, and then willed them all to depart, and take their case, for that they were fter Turnbut backe, and then wince them an output, and talke further with them. The next day to when the Factors came agains to the presence of the Basta, according to his appointment, they requested him that he would grant them his primitedge, whereby they might trafficke safely in any part and place of his Countrey, offering him, that if it pleafed his Maiestie to have any of the commodities that they had brought, and to write his minde thereof to the Captaine of Be. chu, it should be delivered him accordingly. The Bashaes answere was, that he would willingly giue them his priviledge: yet for that he regarded their fafety, having come fo farre, and knowing the state of his Countrey to be troublesome, he would have them to bring their commoditie thither, and there to make fale of it, promifing he would prouide fuch commodities as they nee, ded, and that he would be a defence vnto them, so that they should not be injured by any: wherevpon the Factors fent Thomas Hudfon backe for the ship to bring her to Derbent, The latitude of Bildib by divers observations is 40.deg, 25.m. the variation of the Compas 10.deg.40.min.from North to West. They arrived at anchor against Derbent East and by South from the said Castle in foure fathom & a halfe water, the two and twentieth of June at ten of the clock in the morning: then they tooke vp their Ordnance, which before they had stowed in hold for easing the ship in her rolling. In the afternoone the Balba came down to the water fide against the ship, and having the faid Ordnance placed, and charged, it was all shot off to gratifie him: and presently after his departure backe, he permitted the Factors to come abourd the ship. The nine and twentieth day their goods were vnladen, and carried to the Balbaes Garden, where hee made choice of such things as he liked, taking for custome of every five and twentie Kersies , or whatsower, one, orafter the rate of foure for the hundred. The Factors after his choice made, determined to fend a part of the rest of the goods to Bachu, for the speedier making sale thereof. They departed from Derbent with the faid Barke the nineteenth of July, and arrived at Bildib the fue and twentieth day. Robert Golding defirous to understand what might bee done at Shamaky, which is a dayes journey from Bachn, went thither, from whence returning, he was fet on by theeues, and was shot into the knee with an Arrow, who had very hardly escaped with his life and goods, but that by good hap he killed one of the theeues Horfes with a Caliner, and shot a Turke thorow both cheekes with a Dag. On the fixt day of August, the Factors being aduertiled at Derbene that their thip was so rotten and weake, that it was doubtfull shee would not carrie them backe to Aftracan, did thereupon agree and bargaine at that place with an Armemian, whose name was Iacob, for a Barke called a Buffe, being of burden about fine and thirtie 40 tunnes, which came that yeere from Afracan, and was at that instant riding at an Iland called Zere, about three or foure leagues beyond, or to the Eastward of Bildin, which Barke for their more fafety, they meant to have with them in their returne to Afracan, and thereupon wrote vnto Wincoll and the rest at Bachu, that they should receive the same Busse, and lade in her their goods at Bildib, tot be returned to Derbent, and to discharge their first Boat, which was observed by them accordingly. When all their goods were laden aboord the faid Buffe at Bildib, and being readie to have departed thence for Derbent, there arose a great storme with the winde out of the

Zere Hand.

The English luffer thip-

> king out of the Buffe, fell by the Barkes fide into the water amongst the Rockes, and sowas loft. The packes of Cloth which they could not well take out of the Buffe were also loft : other things that were more profitable they faued. The third day of October all things were brought from the shoare abourd the ship: and that day the Factors went to the Balba to take their leave of him, vnto whom they recommended those the Companies servants, &c. which they had sent to Bachu, making account to leave them behind in the Countrey : who caused their names to be written, and promised they should want nothing, nor be injured of any. After this leave taken, the Factors went aboord, purpoling prefently to haue fet fayle and departed towards Afracan, the winde feruing well for that purpole at South South-east : And as they were readie to fet sayle, there came against the ship a man, who weued : whereupon the Boat was fent ashoare to him, who was an Armenian fent from William Wincoll, with his writing tables , wherein the faid Wincoll had written briefly, the mil-hap of the loffe of the Buffe, and that they were comming from Bildib towards Derbent,

Sea, by force whereof the Cables and Halfers were broken, and their Veffell put ashoare, and

broken to pieces against the Rockes : every of them that were in her saved their lives, and part

had receised for the commodities of the Companie, which they fold at Bachs, which at the ta-

of the goods. But there was a Carobia or Chift, wherein were Dollers , and Gold , which they so

they, and such things as they saued with a small Boat, forced to put ashoare in a place by the they, and use it things as any state of the that with the Southerly winde that then blew, they would come from the place they were at Village. to the ship, but if they could not come with that winde, they meant to sayle with the ship, with the next wind that would ferue them, against the place where they were, and take them in, if they could : which stay and losse of those Southerly winds , was a cause of great troubles, that they afterwards fustayned through Ice, &c. entring the Volga as shall be declared.

The latitude of Derbent (by divers Observations exactly there made, is fortie one degrees fif. The latitude tie two minutes. The variation of the Compaffe at that place about eleuen degrees from North degrees 52, min IO to West. From Derbent to Bildib by Land fortie fixe leagues. From Derbent to Shamaky by nutes. Land, fortie fine leagues. From Shamak y to Bachn, about ten leagues, which may bee thirtie The variation miles. From Bachn to Bildib fiue or fixe leagues by Land, but by water about twelue leagues, of the Com-From the Castle Derbent East-wards, there reach two stone wals to the border of the Castian Pasic. Sea, which is distant one English mile. Those wals are nine foot thicke, and eight and twentie or thirtie foot high, and the space betweene them is one hundred and fixtie Geometricall paces. that is, eight hundred foot. There are yet to bee perceived of the ruine of those wals, which doe now extend into the Sea about halfe a mile : also from the Castle West-ward into the Land. they did perceive the ruines of a stone wall to extend, which wal, as it is reported, did passe from thence to Pontus Euxinus, & was built by Alexand. the great, when the castle Derbons was made.

20 The fift of October about noone, the winde North North-east they weighed Anchor, and fet sayle from Derbent, being along it the Coast to the South-wards to feeke their men; but as they had failed about foure leagues the winde scanted Easterly, so that they were forced to Anchor in three fathome water.

The feuenth day about feuen of the clocke in the morning, they fet fayle, the wind Southwest. They confidered the time of the yeare was farre ipent, the ship weake, leake, and rotten. and therefore determining notto tarry any longer for Wincoll and his fellowes, but to leave them behind, bent themselues directly towards Afracan: and fayling North North-east untill midnight about fixteene leagues, the wind then came to the North North-west, and blew much, a very storme, which caused them to take in all their Sayles, sauing the fore Corse, with which 30 they were forced to steere before the Sea, South by West, and South South-west, And on the eight day about two of the clocke in the morning, their great Boat funkeat the ships sterne, which they were forced to cut from the ship to their great griefe and discomfore : for in her they hoped to faue their lives if the ship should have miscarried. About ten of the clocke before noone; they had fight of the Land about fine leagues to the South of Derbent, and bare along ft the they nau in the cast-wards vito Nexasso, where they came at Anchor in three fathomes, Nexasso. and blacke Ozie, good Anchor hold, whereof they were glad, as also that the winde was shifted to the North-west, and but a meane gale. Wincoll and the rest of his fellowes being in the Armsman Village, which is about eighteene Versts to the West-wards of Nezanoo, the place where against they rode at Anchor, saw the ship as she passed by that place, and sent a man in the night 40 following alongit the Coaft after her, who came against the ship where shee rode, and with a fire-brand in the top of a Tree made fignes, which was perceized by them in the ship, wherevoon they hoyled out their Skiffe, and fent her ashoare to learne what was meant by the fire: which returned a Letter from Wincoll, wherein he wrote that they were with fuch goods as they had at the Armenian Village, and prayed that there they might with the fame goods bee taken

The tenth day they sent their Skiffe to the Armenian Village to setch those men and the Theparicugoods they had, with order that if the winde ferued, that they could not returne to fetch the larsof their fhip, they of the ship promised to come for them, against the faid Village, But in their want God returns are four them two Course of Partridges, that came from the shores and little mitted. fent them two Cours of Partridges, that came from the shoare, and lighted in and about their Aftrange ac-30 thips, whereby they were comforted, and one that lay ficke, of whose life was small hope, re-eident of pro-

Pausses were sent from Astracan, in which they laded the ships goods, leaving her at Anchor their relative with Ruffes to keepe her.

The thirteenth of November they departed also in those Lighters, with the goods towards the Chetera Bongori, leaving the ship at Anchor, and in her two Ruffer, which with three more that went in the Panoles to prouide victuals for themselnes and the reft, and therewith promised to returne backe to the ship with all speed, had offered to vindertake for twentie Rubbles in Money, to carrie the ship into some Harbour, where shee might safely winter, or else to keepe her where the rode all Winter, which was promifed to bee given them if they did it : and the fame 60 day when with those Lighters they had gotten fight of the foure Ilands, being about eight Verftes South-west from them, the wind then at North-east, did freele the Sea to as they could not row, guide, stirre, erremoue the faid Lighters, but as the wind and Ice did force them. And so they continued driving with the Ice, South-east into the Sea by the space of fortie houres, and then being the fixteenth day, the Ice flood. Whiles they droue with the Ice, the dangers which

Trauell vpon

they incurred were great : for oftentimes, when the Ice with force of wind and Sea did breakes pieces of it were tolled and driven one vpon another with greatforce, terrible to behold, and the same happened at sometimes so neere vnto the Lighters, that they expected it would have ouer-whelmed them to their veter destruction : but God who had preserved them from many perils before, did also saue and deliver them then.

Within three or foure dayes after the first standing of the Ice, when it was firme and strong they tooke out all their goods, being fortie and eight Bales or Packes of Raw Silke, &c. laid it on the Ice, and couered the same with such proussions as they had. Then for want of victuals, &c. they agged to leave all the goods there vpon the Ice, and to goe to the shoare; and therevpon brake vp their Chefts and Corobius, wherewith, and with fuch other things as they could to get, they made Sleds for enery of them to draw vpon the Ice, whereon they layed their clothes to keepe them warme, and fuch victuals as they had, and fuch other things as they might conveniently carrie, and so they departed from the said goods and Panoses very early, about one of the clocke in the morning, and trauelling on the Ice, directed their way North, as necessary they could judge, and the same day about two of the clocke in the after-noone, they had fight of Chetera Balbas. the Chetera Babbas (foure Hillocks of Ilands fo called) vnto the fame they directed themselves

and there remayned that night. The goods and Panofes which they left on the Ice, they judged to be from those Chetera Babbas, about twentie Versts. And the next morning departed thence East-wards, and came to the Chetera Bongories (or foure Ilands before spoken of) before noone (the distance betweene those places is about fifteene Versts) where they remained all that night, 20 departing thence towards Aftracan : the next morning very early they loft their way through the perswasion of the Russes which were with them, taking to much towards the left hand contrary to the opinion of Master Hudson) whereby wandering vpon the Ice source or five dayes, not knowing whether they were entred into the Crimme Tartars Land or not, at length it fortuned they met with a way that had beene travelled, which croft back-wards towards the Sea: that way they tooke, and following the same, within two dayes trauell it brought them to a place, called the Crashoyare (that is to say, in the English Tongue) Red (liffe, which divers of the

There they remay ned that night, having nothing to eate but one Loafe of Bread, which they happened to find with the two Ruffer that were left in the ship, to keepe her all the Winter (as 30 is aforefaid) whom they chanced to meet going towards Aftracan, about fine miles before they came to the faid Crasnogare, who certified them that the ship was cut in pieces with the Ice, and

thip cut in pie. that they had hard icaping with their lines.

In the morning they departed early from Grafnoyare towards the Ouchooge, and about nine of the clocke before noone, being within ten Yersts of the Vebooge, they met Amos Riall, with the Carpenter, which he found at Ouchooge, and a Gunner newly come out of England, and also fixtie fine Horses with so many Cassacks to guide them, and fiftie Gunners for guard, which brought prouision of victuals, &c. and were sent by the Duke to fetch the goods to Astracan. The meeting of that company was much joy unto them.

The Factors fent backe with Amos Riall, and the faid company to fetch the goods, Thomas to Hudfon the Master, Tobias Paris his Mate, and so they the faid Factors and their company marched on to the Uchooge, where they refreshed themselves that day, and the night following. And from thence proceeded on towards Astracan, where they arrived the last day of November. These that went for the goods after their departure from the Factors, trauelled the same day vntill they came within ten Versts of the Chetera Babbas, where they rested that night. The next morning by the breake of the day they departed thence, and before noone were at the Chetera Babbas, where they stayed all night; but presently departed thence Thomas Hudson with the Carpenter and Gunner to feeeke where the goods lay : who found the same, and the next day they returned backe to their company at the Chetera Babbas , and declared vnto them in what fort they had found the faid goods.

Affaulted by

The third day early in the morning, they departed all from the foure Babbas towards the faid goods, and the fame day did lade all the goods they could finde upon the faid fleds, and withall convenient speed returned backe towards Aftracan. And when they came to the Chetera Bougori, where they rested the night, in the morning very early before the breake of day, they were assulted by a great company of the Nagars Tartar's Horse-men, which came shouting and hallowing with a great noyle, but our people were so inuironed with the sleds, that they durst not enter upon them, but ranne by, and shot their Arrowes amongst them, and hurt but one man in the head, who was a Ruffe, and so departed presently. Yet when it was day, they shewed Their returne themselues a good distance off from our men, being a very great troope of them, but did not as-fault them any more. The same day our men with those carriages, departed from thence to-60 wards Aftracan, where they arrued in safetie the fourth of December, about three of the clock in the after-noone, where our people greatly rejoyced of their great good hap to have elcaped so many hard events, troubles and miseries, as they did in that Voyage, and had great cause therefore to prayle the Almightie, who had to mercifully preserved and delivered them.

CHAP.I. S.5. A Letter of Master Lanes to bis friend in England.

They remay ned the Winter at Astracan, where they found great fauour and friendship of the Duke, Captaine, and other chiefe Officers of that place : but that Winter there hapned no great matter, worth the noting.

In the Spring of the yeere 1581, about the middt of March, the Ice was broken vp, and cleare Thebreiking cone before Altracan.

A Letter of Master HENRIE LANE to the worshipfull Master WILLIAM SANDERSON, containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the North-east discouerie, for the space of three and thirtie veeres.

After Sanderson, as you lately requested me, so have I sought, and shough I cannot finde some things that heretofore I kept in writing, and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine old Letters to content one that meaneth to pleasure many, I have breefly and as trucky as I may, drawne out as followeth: The rough bewing may bee planed at your leafure, or as pleaseth him that shall take the paines.

First, the honourable attempt to discouer by Sea North-east and North-west named for Cathay, being 20 chiefly procured by, primiledge from King Edward the fixt, and other his Nobilitie, by and at the coff and fute of Master Sebastian Cabota, then Gouernour for Descoueries, with Ser Andrew Judde. Ser George Barnes, Sir William Garrard, Mafter Anthony Huffie, and a companie of Merchants, was Anno 1553. in the last years of his Maiestres raigne, 1953. The generall charge whereof was committed to one Sir Master William Hugh Willoughbie Knight, a goodly Gentleman, accompanied with Sufficient number of Pilots, Ma- Eurough was fiers, Merchants and Marriners, basing three Ships well furnished, to wit, The Bona Sperança, the then young, and with his Edward Bonauenture, and the Confidentia. The Edward Bonauenture, Richard Chancelor be- brother in this ing Pilot, and Steuen Burrough Master, having discovered Ward-house voon the Coast of Finmark, first voyage, by florme or fogge departed from the rest, found the Bay of Saint Nicholas, now the chiefe Port of Ruf- Newnoxis ha, there winsred in safetie, and had ayde of the people at a Village called Newnox.

The other two ships attempting further Northwards (as appeared by Pamphlets found after written by Westwards s. Sir Hugh Willoughbie) were in September encountred with fuch extreame cold, that they put backe to miles. seeke a winstring place: and missing the said Bay fell upon a desart Coass in Lappia, entring into a Rosser immediately frozen up, since discourred, named Arzina Reca, distant East from a Russian Monasterie of Monkes called Pechingho, from whence they never returned, but all to the member of seventic persons perished, which was for want of experience to have made Cames and Stones. These were found with the Ships the next Summer, Anno 1554. by Ruffe-fishermen : and in Anno 1555. the place fent unto by English Merchants, as hereafter appeareth.

Anno 1574. the faid ship Edward Bonauenture (although robbed homewards by Flemings) returned with her companie to London, shewing and setting foorth their entertainments and discoverie of the 40 Countries, even to the Citie of Molco, from whence they brought a priviledge written in Ruffe with the

Kings or great Dukes feale, the other two frips looked for and unknowne to them where they were. Anno 1 555, the faid companie of Merchants for a discouerie upon a new supply, sent thather agains with two Ships, to wit, the Edward Bonauenture, and another bearing the name of the King and Anno1555. Queene, Philip and Marie, whose Maiessies by their Letters to the said Mulcounce, recommended The King and Sundry their subjects then passing, whereof certaine, to mit, Richard Chancelor, George Killing- cers. worth, Henrie Lane, and Arthur Edwards, after their arrivall at the Bay, and paffing up Dwina to Nologda, went first up to Mosco, where, upon knowledge of the faid Letters, they with their trayne had speciallentertainment, with houses and dyet appointed, and shortly permuted to the Princes presence, they were with Gentlemen brought through the Citie of Molco, to the Caftle and Palace, replenished

with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entred fundry roomes, furnished in shew with ancient 50 grave per sonages, all in long garments of sundry colours, Gold, Tissue, Baldekin, and Violet, as our Vestments and Copes have beene in England, Sut able with Caps, Lewels, and Chaines. These were found to bee no Courtiers, but ancient Mulcouites, Inhabitants, and other their Merchants of credit, as the manner is, furnished thus from the Wardrobe and Treasurie, wasting and wearing this apparell for the time, and fo to restore it.

Then entring into the Presence, being a large roome floored with Carpets, were men of more estate, Entertainand richer shew, m number aboue one hundred fet square : who after the faid English-men came in, do mentby the ing reservence, they all flood up, the Prince onely fitting, and yet rifing at any occasion, when our King and Duke. Queenes names were read or poken. Then after speeches by interpretation, our men kissing his hand, and bidden to dinner, were stayed in another roome, and at dinner brought through, where might bee seene

60 massie silver and gelt Piate, some like and as bigge as Kilderkens, and Wast bowles, and entring the Dining place, being the greater roome, the Prince was fet bare-headed, his Crowne and vich Cap ftanding upon a pinacle by. Not farre distan sate his Metropolitan, with ainers other of his kindred, and chiefe Tartarian Captaines : none fate oner against him, or any, at other Tables, their backes towards him.

Note.

and adventures this way (as divers doe now adayes other wayes) as worthic Gentlemen sent from Prinecs, to doc their Countrey good, I put them in your memorie, with my heartie farewell. From Saint Marsarets neere Dartforth in Kent.

251

#### To the Reader.

Haue had much trouble to give thee this Authour, both for his Language, being Portugall (which for this, and some other parts of this worke, I was forced to get as I could) and for the raritie of his Ic Kelations, seeming both in themselves so stupendrous, and not seconded in many things, that I say not contraried, by other Authors. Besides his booke came not ont, till himselse was gone out of the world. I answere, that Ricius the Islante his Relations came not to vs, till humfelfe was likewise gone; and that that might rather plead not onely for the Matoritie, but the sinceritie, by that Callan rule, Cui bono; for whom should a dead man flatter, or for what should bee lye? Tea, bee little spares his owne companie and Nation, but often and easerly layeth open their vices: and which is more, I finde in him little boafing, except of other Nations; none at all of himselfe, but as if be intended to expresse Gods glorie, and mans merat of nothing but miserse. And how soemer it seemes incredible to remember such instinite sarticulars as this Booke is full of, yet an easie memorie holdeth strong impressions of good or bad: Scribune in marmore lati, is fand of one; and of the other, Omnia que curant fenes meminerunt. Nei-20 ther is it likely but that the Authour wrote Notes, which in his manifold disaduentures were lost otherwise, but by that writing written the firmer in his memorie, especially new whested, filed, forbushed with so many companions of miserie, whom in that state, Hac olim meministe junabat; their best mulicke in their chaines and wandrings being the mutuall recountings of things seene, done, suffered. More

marnel it is, if a lyar, that he frould not forget himselfe, and contradict his owne Relations; which somtimes he may seeme to doe in the numbers of the seere of the Lord; yea, and other numbers: but his leaves were lest comperfect at his death, and those numbers perhaps added by others after : and besides, mine owne Note so num experience halb often found figures mistaken from my hand, which being by the Compositor set at large, bets (if great have runne at large by ten times fo much; and girt in other whiles as narrow with the tenth place dumini- care bee not

fied, or one signe set for another. And none out the Authors, or be which knowes the subsett, can eathed how can file amend that fault being so great by so small and extend land. The another interest of along I do. fly, how dan-3c filt amend that fault, being fo great by fo fmall and casie a lapfe. The graduations of places I doe congroully misfeste otherwise then in the letuites, and as I suppose not so truely as theirs: for I thinke that he neuber taken. had Arie " or Instrument to calculate the same, but contented himselfe in the writing of this Booke to " So it feemes leole into the common Maps of China, and to fellow them in setting downe the degrees, and so the bland by those words led the blind into erreur; no printed Map that I have seene being true. And perhaps the Chronicler to Of his fol, 122. whem the papers were brought unfimilited might out of those Maps doe it; erring either of innorance, or aimdaque con-swhich we have often seene in Carde of remote places Fast and West bourneless. I have the file que me (which we have often seene in Cards of remote places East and West) purposety, to conceale from others falls a milber, that which they have found sweet and gainfull; the Mariner and Merchant not looking with the gene- que be taker de row eyes of the ingenious, ingenuous Scholer.

For his repute at home; it was dedicated to King Phillip the Third of Spaine, which impudence day a enten-40 would not have obstruded (if allogether a tale) on such Maiestie; licenced by the Holy Office, and prin-der o clims & a ted at I whom translated into the Scoully for the I institute of the Holy Office, and prin-dlurades ted at Lisbon; translated into the Spanish by the Licentiate, Francisco de Herrera Maldonado, Canon grass &c. of the Church Riall of Arbas, and dedicated to a Clergie-man Scottin de Faria, Printed 1620. at Falle gradua-Madrid (and small credit it had beene to the House of the Farias, that one of them should publish in tions a com-Pertugall, and in Callile to another sould be dedicated, a frinolous tale and deuised foolerie. I adde monthing in also the Authours still Gretinious, and his atem watershiring, his continue to the sould be a also the Authours file so religious, and his often protestations: his credit, as Herreta reporteth with and Wester-King Philip the Second, who frent much time in discourse with him about these things. I might adde dies. the Spanish Translators Apologie at large, and out of him Fr. Andrada the Portugall Chroni-

If this moue thee not to believe, yet believe thus much, that I have no minde to deceive thee, but give 5C thee what I found, onely much contracted, and not going all the way with our Authour, whose original Booke is about one bundred and fiftie speets of paper in tolio, but contented with his China and Tartaria Relation:: that also too much, if not true. And yet I would not have an Author rejected for sit speeches framed by the Writer, in which many Historians have taken libertie; no, if sometimes be doth mendacia dicere, fo as he doib not mentiri; that is, if he be fo credulous to believe, or fo improvident to proffer to others faith, probable fallhoods related by others (as I will not sweare but of himselfe hee might miffike, and by others be mif-led, the Chinois bere might in relating the feranties to him enlarge, and de magnis maiora lequi) so as be still be religious in a init and true delinerie of what himselfe bath seene, and bely e not his owne eyes: the former is rashnesse and distassful, the later is dishonest and detestable. Once, the Sunne Rising bath found many worshappers, but the Westerne Sunne is neerer night:

6¢ and neerer observice and meannesse are our Westerne assures then those China Raies of the East; and wee were Backes and Owles not to beleene a greater light then our felues fee and vie. All China Au-Velinomea toours how diversified somer in their lines, jet concurre in a centre of Admiranda Sinarum, which great leave if others have not so largely related as this, they may thanke God they payed not so deare a price to see wrote a booke them; and for mee, I will rather beleene (where reason emets not an electione firm) then seeke to fer with that title-

which tables all furnished with ghests set, there was for the English men, named by the Russes, Ghosti Catabelski, to wis, Strangers or Merchants by ship, a table in the midst of the roome, where they were fet direct against the Prince: and then began the service, brought in by a number of his young Lords and Gentlemen, in such rich attire, as is aboue specified: and still from the Princes table (notwithstanding their owne furniture) they had his whole melles fet oner all in massie fine Gold, delinered enery time from him by name to them, by their fener all Christian names, as they fate, viz. Richard, George, Henne, At. thur. Likewife Bread and fundry drinkes of purified Mead, made of fine white and clarified Hong. At their rifing, the Prince called them to his table, to receive each one a Cup from his band to drinke, and Mister Killing. tooke into bis band Master George Killing worths beard, which reas beth oner the table, and pleasant. tong one one one came crayes that time it was not onely shicke, broad, and yellow coloured, but in length five foose and two inches of al size. Then taking leave, being night, they were accompanied and followed with a number, carrying put of drinke, and dishes of meate dressed, to our lodging.

This yeare the two Ships, with the dead bodyes of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, and his people, were for unto by Master Killingworth, (which remayned there in Mosco Agent almost two yeeres) and much of the goods and victuals were recovered and (aned.

of a muruel-

lous length.

Auno 1556. The Companie fent two Ships for Russia, with extraordinarie Masters and Saylers to disaftrous voy- bring home the two ships, which were frozen in Lappia, in the riner of Arzina aforesaid. The two ships fent this yeere from England fayling from Lapland to the Bay of Saint Nicholas, tooke in lading with paffengers, to wit, a Russe Ambassadour, named loseph Napea, and some of his men Shipped with Riv m chard Chancelor in the Edward. But so it fell out that the two which came from Lappia, with all then new Master and Marriners, neuer were beard of, but in foule weather, and wronght Seas, after their two geeres wintring in Lapland, became, as is supposed, unstanch, and sunke, wherein were drowned also diuers Russes Merchants, and servants of the Ambassadour. A third ship the Edward aforesaid, falling on the North part of Scotland, upon a rocke was also lost, and Master Chancelor with divers other. drowned. The faid Russe Ambassadour hardly escaping with other his men, Marimers, and some goods Saued, were fent for into Scotland, from the King, Queene, and Merchants, (the messenger being Mafter Doctor Laurence Huslie, and others: ) And then, as in the Chromicles appeareth, honorably entertayned and received at London.

Serchthrift.

This yeere also the company furnished and sent out a Pinnesse, named the Serchthrift, to discover the 2 Harboromes in the North coast from Norway to Wardhouse, and so to the Bay of Saint Nicholas, Suppos Borough There was in her Master and Pilot, Stephen Borough, with his brother William, and eight other, Their disconerse was beyond the Bay, toward the Samoeds, people dwelling neere the River of Ob, and found a found or fea with an Island called Vaigats, first by them put into the Card or Map. In the place they threw Snow out of their faid Pinnesse, with shouels in August, by which extremitie, and lacke of time, they came backe to Russia, and wintred at Golmogro.

Anno 1557. The companie with four e good Ships, fent backe the faid Roffe Ambaffadour, and in companie with him, fent au an Agent, for further discouerie, Master Antonie Ienkinton, who aftermard Anno 1558. with great fanour of the Prince of Muscouiz, and his letters, passed the riner Volez to Cazan, and meaning to seeke Cathay by Land, was by many troupes and companies of encivil Tarta-40 rians encountred, and in danger : but keeping companie with Merchants of Bactria, or Boghar, and Vigeme, trauelling with Camels, he with his companie, went to Boghar, and no further: whose entertain-Mufconie trade ment of the King is to be had of Master Ienkinson, which returned Anno 1559. to Mulcouie. Andin long vnfortu-Anno 1560. hee, with Henrie Lane, came bome into England : which yeere was the first safe returns, without losse or shipmracke, or dead fraight, and burnings. And at this time was the first trafficke to the The first trade Natue in Liuonia, which confines with Lituania, and all the Dominions of Rullia : and the Markets, Faires, Commodities, great Townes and Riners, were fent onto by diners fernants: she reports were taken by Henrie Lane, Agent, and delinered to the companie, 1561. The trade to Rie, and Revel, of old time hath beene long since frequented by our English Nation, but this trade to the Narue was hitherto concealed from vs by the Danskers and Lubeckers.

Anno 1 561, the faid Master Antonic Ienkinton went Agent into Rusha, who the next yeere after, passing all the river of Volga to Astracan, and over the Caipian sea, arrived in Persia, and opened the

Alcock flaine in in Media. Edwards dyed at Afracan.

Also betweene the yeeres of 1568. and 1573. Sundry Voyages after Master Ienkinsons, were made by Thomas Alcock, Arthur Edwards, Master Thomas Banilter, and Master Geffrey Ducket, whose returns (if spoyle neers Volga had not presented by rouing Theenes) had altogether salned and recovered the Companies (called the old Companies) great loffe, charges, and damages: But the Saying is true, By vnitie small things grow great, and by contention great things become small. This may bee understood best by the Companie. The fromardnesse of some few, and enill doing of some uniust Factors, was cause of much of the enill successe.

Arthur Edwards was sent againe 1579, and died in the voyage at Astracan. About which 60 matters, are to bee remembred the Voyages of Master Thomas Randolph Esquire, Ambassadour Anno 1567. And late of Sir Icrome Bowes, Anno 1583. both tending and treating for finither Discoueries, Freedomes, and Printedges, wherewith I meddle not. But in conclusion, for their paines

and foot, and threw him into Sea with a great stone tyed about his necke: The ship also sunke, and little was faued. They went to Arquico (then ) in the Countrey of Preste Iohn; to deliver a letter to Aurique Barbofa, the Factor of Antonio Sylveira, fent three yeeres before by Nuno de Cunha, who with fortie others escaped from the rebellion Xael, in which Dom Manoel de Meneses, with one hun-

dred and fixtie Portugals were taken, foure hundred thousand Duckets, and fixe Portugall Ships,

which were those that Solyman Baffa A. 1538. brought with prouision for his Armada to the fiege of Din ; the King of Xael having fent them with fixtie Portugals for a Cairo prefent; the Xael or Iael in-

reit hee bestowed as almes on Mabomets house at Mecca. I with three others, were sent some surrection. In dayes journeys into the Countrey to Barbefa, then in the Fort of Geleptor in guard of the Queene. mother of the Preste lobn, who welcommed them, as the nightly dew to the flowerie Garden, and as Helena to Ierufalem . fo were they ( faid the ) to ber eyes .

But (to leave those things ) he went thence to Ormsu, and then to Gos; there offered his feruice to Pero de Farsa Captaine of Malaca, which entertained him. The occurrences of Bata. Achem, Aaru in Samatra, Queda in the continent, and his imployments in those parts, as also

of Sinca, Paon, Patane, 1 omit.

He faith that hee was wracked at Sea comming from Aarn; of eight and twentie, five onely escaping, two of which the Crocodiles denoured. Hee was taken and sold to a Moore, which carried him to Malaca. Thence Pero de Faria fent him to Patane in trade : from thence againe, imployed by Antonio de Faria to Lugor, Coia Acem a Guzarate Pirate fet vpon them, tooke, and killed all Berall and Pinto only escaping, which leaping into the Sea were referred by a Barke, and fent to Patane. Faria afraid to return to Malaca, where he was to indebted for those goods, vowed to be reuenged of the Pirat. And by helpe of his friends armed a Junke with fine & fifty Souldiers. of which I and Borall (extreamely both indebted and wounded) were. From Patano we fet forth in May, 1 540, and to a Hauen called Bralapifson, some fixe leagues off the firme Land, where we Bralaviston. found a lunke of the Lequios , bound for Siam with an Embassadour of Namaquim de Lindau, Prince of the lle of Tofa fituate in fix & thirty degrees, which feeing vs come, haited away with Tofa Spen Loffa. all speed. Faria sent a Chinese Pilot to them with faire offers of love and courtesie, who returned 30 with a prefent, a rich Sword, and fixe and twentie Pearles in a Boxe of Gold, with this answer.

That the time would come, when they should communicate with vi in the Law of the true God of infinite A strange are mercy, who by his death had given life to all men, with a perpetuall inheritance in the haufe of the good: (were, and hee beleeved that this should bee after the halfe of the halfe of time were past. Neither could Antonie de Faria returne any thing in recompence, they being gotten farre into the Sea. Heere wee watered, and after coasted to fearch the River of Pale Cambins, which divides the Palle Cambins

Kingdome of Champas, from the Seniorie of Cambois in the height of nine degrees. Thither we came in the end of May, and the Pilot went up the River three leagues, to a great Towne called Catimpara, where we stayed to take in prouision twelue dayes. Faria being curious, defired to Catimeral. know whence that River came, the original thereof ( they told him ) was a Lake called Pinater. 40 Eastward from that Sea, two hundred and fixtie leagues in the Kingdome of Quitirvan; which Lake Finater. Lake was compassed with high Hills, at the bottome of which, alongst the waters side, were eight Quitivuan. and thirtie Townes, thirteene great, the rest small. One of these Great ones was named Xin-Xintales. calen, where was a great Gold Mine, whence every day was taken a Barre and a halfe of Gold. which in our money amounteth by the yeere to two and twentie millions of Gold. Foure 21- Millions Lords are sharers, and arestill at warres for a singular proprietie. They said that one of these called Duckers. Raiabitan, in the Court of his house in iarres, had set up to the necke in earth six hundred Bars of Gold mines, & Gold in poulder, as good as that of Menancabo in Samatra; and that if three hundred of our men were feut thither, with one hundred Caliners, they would without doubt become mafters thereof. They faid also that in Busquirim, another of those Townes, was a Rocke of Diamonds, better Rocke of Diamonds, then those of Laur and of Tanismoura in the He of Laur

so then those of Laue, and of Taniampura in the Ile of Iana. Proceeding along the Coast of Champaa, from Pullo Cambim, we came to a shelfe called Salersacuss, and the next day to the River Toobafoy, in the mouth whereof a lunke passed by, to which Similara Piwe offered the courtefie of the Sea, and they in scorne made shew of a Negroes Buttockes, with rate taken. many trumpets and other iollitie. Hence grew displeasure: in the night three Barks came to affaile vs, which we tooke, with the Captain, two Acheners, a Turke, & the Negro. This Negro confesfed himselfe a Christian, laue to Gasper de Mello a Portugall, whom that dogge (he pointed to the bound Captaine) flew two yeerestince in Liampoo, with fixe and twentie Portugal; befides with him in the Ship. What faid Faria, is this Sumilan? Yea, faid he, and he had thought in fo small a Barke, there had not beene aboue fixe or feuen, and hee would have bound your hands and

feet, and impaled you as hee ferued my master. Faria having served him and his with the same 60 fauce, tooke the Junke, in which was thirtie fix thousand Taeis of Japon Silver, which make fiftie foure thousand Cruzados or Duckets, besides much good merchandize.

Faria proceeded along it the Coaft of Champaa, and came to the River Timasorn, by our men Timasorn, or called Varella: into which enter the Ships of Siam and the Malaya Coast, which goe for China. Tan'achim, or and Truck for Gold, Calamba and Juory, whereof that Kingdome hath flore. Many Paraos cr

at the Authors rate; and if he hath robbed the Altars of Truth, as he did those of the Calemphre Idols, yet in Pequin equity we will not cut off the thu mbs (according to Nanquin rigour) upon bare furmile without any enidence avainst him, However, cheaper I am sure he is by farre to thee then to mee. n ho would have beene loth to be so true a labourer in a tring Authour, willingly or commonly (in my con. cett) sulffring his owne fight, though perhaps not seldome deceived in things taken up on China ment trust, or entred into their China Bookes, Such as be here often citeth. Men refusenot Silver for the Oare ; gather the Rose notwithstanding the prickles; neglett not Harnest mixed with weeds, Wheat with the chaff, Frust for the shelt, and hate not Home for the Bees sting, nor will seither in product suite the chaff, Frust for the shelt, and hate not to reset the most of that which here I present. Us then thy freedome, and him at thy pleasure (I say not mee) and if thou wilt not pardon such a briefe to collection, thou wouldit hardly gime Castilian entertainement to all, and more then all, often yeelding brauadoes and enlarging flouriftes of file, beyond a translation, as if his Authour had not said enough The variety, if it had beene meerly deuised, presents I know not how many entercourses as interludes of Comicke and Tragicke enents, more worthie the reading then most in this kinde, and as fit to recreate: how much more, where vertite is (as I suppose) the ground and substance, though perhaps intered with other phantasses among. That the sellutes in some things differ, is their authoritie against bu, who as more learned and indicious, and longer experienced, might finde out some truths better then bee; which various fortunes, and that time, might let him see many particularities which they could not, writing sixtie jeeres after. In many things they both agree : and Gaspar de Cruz hath many the same things: and that his strange Relation of the Crosse in China and the Hungarian of the Mount Sinai, is delle 19 uered by Lucena, perhaps learned by some of His companie: and these exceptions by mee mentioned, are rather praoccupations of censorious indging my indgement, then my indiciall sentence, which the indicions will supend, and leane to better experiense. Indicent posteri; veritas Temporis filia.

#### CHAP. II.

Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Easterne parts of the World, taken out of FERNAM MENDEZ PINTO bis Peregrination.

MENDEZ his many miserable adventures, his strange expedition with ANTONIO DE FARIA; divers coafts visited, Pirats tamed, miseries suffered, glorie reconered.



Ernam Mendez. Pinto, borne at old Montemor in the Kingdome of Pertugal, was placed in fertue at ten or twelve weers of one in Tillians. cember, An. 1521. on the day of breaking the Scatchions, or publike mourning for King Emanuel. A yeere and halfe after he fled vpon occasion of a suddenaccident, and got aboord a Caruile which was taken by a French Pirat, which would have made fale of them at Larache to the Moores. But a fortnight after

taking another Portugall ship comming from Saint Thome worth 40000. Duckets, they returned for France, carrying fome with them for Sea feruice, the rest they fet on shoare by night on the shoare of Melides, naked ; which came to Santiago de Cacem, where they were relieved so Thence he went to Setunal, and served Francisco de Faria a Gentleman belonging to the Master of Santiago, and after that was Page to the Mafter himfelfe. But his meanes being fhort hee \* See of Gama left his feruice.

An. 1537. he went for India in a Fleet of fine thips; the Admirall was Don Pedro de Sylua, sonne of Vasco \* da Gama (first Discouerer of the Indies, whose bones he carried with him in the ship at his returne, which were received by King Iohns appointment in greater Funerall pompe, then had beene feene done to a Subiect.) They arrived at Din the fifth of September. Thence after seuenteene dayes he went with two Foists for the Straight of Mecca, and came in tora before the fight of Curia Muria, and Abedalcuria, almost wracked with foule weather, and comming to Sacotora, watered neere the Fortreffe which Francisco d'Almeida first Vice-roy of India, had 60 built, 1507. Hauing received some refreshing of the Christians there, they departed, and in the Mahomat. Mar- heighth of Masua tooke a ship, but fine men being therein left of eightie; one of which was trem non pana the Capteine, a Renegado of Malorquy, who for love of a Moorgh woman had denyed his Faith, and refuling to returne to Christiannie, notwithstanding all perswasions, wee bound him hand

tom.1.pag.26. Straight of Mecca or the Portugall For-A Marryr of

Curchetes, or

Couramay.

finall Barkes came aboord vs, and wondred to fee white men with beards. They told him that if he would goe up the River to the Citie Pilaneacem, where the King refides, hee might in five dayes fell his goods: for great Merchants relorted thither from the Lauhos, and Pagnass, and Gue. os. That River they fand came from the Hill Moncalor, eightie leagues from that place, and bevond that Hill it is much larger, but shallower, in some places making shallow fields, where bred infinite flore of Fowles which couer the ground, in such innumerable numbers, that two and fortie yeeres before they caused the Kingdome of Chintaleuhos, (which is eight dayes journey) to be dispeopled. Beyond that Country of Birds, is another wilde and mountainous, where abide many creatures much worse then those Birds, Elephants, Rhinocerotes, Lions, Wilde-swine. Buffals, and Wilde-kine. In the midft of that Land or Kingdome ( fo it had beene in old time) to is a great Lake, which the Natiues call Cunebetee, others Chiammay, from which proceeds this river, with other three ingreat quantitie washing that land. That lake, as some write, containeth in circuit fixtie Iaons (each of which is three leagues) along ft which are Mines of Silver, Copper, Tinne, and Lead, carried thence by Merchants in Cafilas, with Elephants and Badas (Rhinoce. rotes ) to the Kingdomes of Sornan, or Ssam, Passiloco, Sanady, Tangu, Prom, Calaminhan, and other Kingdomes. Being asked of the weapons of those Countries, they answered, That they have none but Poles burned, and fhort Crifes of two fpannes. They might not go vp the River in leffe

\* Ganias.

might dispatch in eight or ten dayes.

Faria going from thence, came to Pallo Champeiloo, an Iland not inhabited in fourteene degrees 10 and twentie minutes, at the entrie of the Bay of Canchin-China : and thence having fitted his Ordnance to Ainam, to feeke Coia Acem : and being come to Pullo Capas, a Fleet of fortie great Iunkes, of two or three Deckes a piece was feene in the River by Boralho, whom Faria had fent to discouer, and after that another seeming two thousand saile great and small, and a walled Towne of some ten thousand houses. At his returne hee saw also one Junke in the Barre of the Quia Taiam, a River at anchor, which feemed of another Coast. Faria supposed this last was of that Pyrat Cois

then two months, or two and a halfe, by reason of the force of the water, which way downe, they

Thomas Ma-

Acem, which therefore hee affailed and tooke. One of the company was a Christian of Mount Sinai, named Tome Mostangue a Merchant, whose Barke Solyman Bassa had taken A. 1538 in the flangue his ad- Port of Indaa, with feuen others to be victuallers for his Armada of fixtie gallies, wherewith he was fent by the Great Turke, to restore Sulian Baadur to his Kingdome of Cambaya, whereof the 30 Mogor had then dispossed him, and to drive the Portugalls out of India. And when he demanded of the Turkeshis freight, which they had promifed, they tooke his wife and his daughter, and openly rauished them before his eyes; his sonne, which cried at that specacle, they threw into the Sea bound hand and foot : and laid himselfe in yrons, tooke away his goods, worth aboue fixe thousand Duckets. His wife and daughter died, and he as desperate leaped one night into the Sea, at the Bar of Din, with a some which there hee had and got to Surat, and came thrice to Malacca in a Ship of Garcia de Saa ; whence by Stephen Gama he was fent for China, with Chris flouan Sardinba, Factor of Maluco; whom riding at anchor in Cincapura Quiay Tayiam, Captaine of this lunke flew with fix and twentie Portugals, and faued him aliue because he was a Gunner. Faria cried out that he had heard of this Quiay Tayiam, that he had killed aboue one hundred Por- 10 tugals, and spoiled them of one hundred thousand Cruzados, and that since he killed Sardinha, he caused himselfe to bee called by his name. Hee asked this Armenian where he was, hee shewed where he with fixe or feuen others were hidden in the Ionke. Faria went and opened the skuttle, and Taiam with his company began a new fight, killed two Portugals and feuen boyes, and wounded twentie; but in the end were flaine. Faria hafted away for feare of the lunkes in the River, and came to the Coast of Canchin-China where he rifled this Junke, and found in her Spices and other goods, to the value of fixtie thousand Crozados, betides Artillery, which the Pirate had taken out of the Ships of Sardinha, Olineyra, and Matos.

Pearle-fishers.

The next day hee fet faile agains for Ainam, and by the way lighted on Boates fifting for Guamboy, and Pearles, to whom they offered contract, who told them that Guamboy, a Port somewhat before, 10 (as in Cantan, Chincheo, Laman, Combay, Sumbor, and Liampeo, and other Coast Cities) was a place of trade for itrangers, and counfelled him to goe thither : for there they had nothing but Pearles, which they fished for the treasure of the Sonne of the Sunne, by the command of the Tatan of Combay, Supreme Gouernor of all Canchin-China. And that the law was, that if any Barke besides the appointed entred, it should bee burnt with all the people therein. And because hee was a stranger, it was best for him to faile away before Buhaquirim the Mandirin, which was but feuen leagues thence came; who had fortie great Iunkes, with two thousand Mariners, and five thousand Souldiers; and did abide there the fixe moneths of fishing, from March to August both included. They much maruelled at the Portugall fashion, having neuer feene any fuch men, Aynam or Hai and suspected them theeues (they professing themselves Merchants of Siam) with gifts and 60 courtetie they wonne good estimation of these Fishers. One of these being asked touching Afnam, answered, That it was once an absolute Kingdome gouerned by Prechau Gamu, who dying without an heire there arole fuch contentions, that in foure yeares and a halfe there dved fixteen Lacafaas of men, which are so many hundred thousands, whereby the Land was so dispeored,

Citiesof China, Sunne, title of the King of

IlandS, from

that the Cauchin King made himfelfe mafter thereof, with feuen thousand Mogores, which the Tartar lene him from Tiopmican, then the chiefe Citie of his Empire. Hee fet ouer the fame Horba Paguard, who rebelled and made himfelfe tributarie to the King of China, paying fixe hundred thousand Duckets, or foure hundred thousand Taeis yearely : and dying without heire, two hundred thirtie fine yeares fince, hee declared the King of China his Successour : and fo it hath continued. He countelled him not to goe to Aynam; because they were Diffemblers, nor would the Moniton fuffer him to go to Liampoo; but to go to the good river Tananquir, ftil founding as he Tananquir. went for the shoalds; there he should have fure Anchorage, and in little space hee might sell all his

CHAP. 2. S. I. Faria tamer of Pirates. Piraticall Dillanies rewarded.

goods; where yet it was not fafe by reason of reasonlesse men to adventure his goods on Land, To that Riner we went, and in the mouth thereof nor able to flemme the Current, two lunks affayled vs, and their first Language was fixe and ewentie Perces of Ordnance : the Iffue was, Faris tooke them both, most of their men being drowned or flaine, and found therein feuenteene Christians Prisoners, by whom hee learned that the Captayne was a Rouer which bare two names, one of a Christian, Francisco de Saa, the other of a Gentile, Necoda Xicanlem. Fine yeares Xicanlem ano he had beene a Christian at Malaca; Garcia de Saa Captayne of the Fortresse, in his Baptilme ther Pyrate, imparting his owne name to him, who married him to a Gentlewoman of Poringall. But hee going, Anna 1534, for Chincheo in a China Iunke with twentie Portugals and his Wife, flue both

her and them at Pulo Caran and the next yeare took another Portugall lunke at Chincheo, which came from Sunda, and thie ten Portugals in her, and thence-forth practifed Pyracie on Chine- A Renegado 20 fes, (es hee thought vs to bee) and Portugals. The goods of the two lunkes amounted to fortie China Robber, thouland Taris, and lenenteene Brafle Perces. The Captayne of this place was in league with him, and thared a third of his Pyracies. Faria therefore went to another Port fortieleagues Eastward, called Musipinan, wherein were many Merchants which came in Cafilas from the Land of the Lauhos, and Paguass, and Guess with great flore of filuer. The current ferring flrong against vs at the Rock of Tilauinera. Wee came to Muripman, and learned that the River was Mulipinan deepe, the best in that Bay; the people peaceable, that Merchants had come nine dayes before from the Kingdome of Benan in two Cafilae, each of fine hundred Oxen, with store of Silver, Benan, Iuory, Waxe, Benioyn, Camfire, Gold in poulder, to:buy Pepper, Drugs, and pearles of Aynam; that they had not any Armada of great ships because the Wars which the Prechas (King) of the Canchins made wereby land, that he abode at Quangepaaru, 2 Citie twelue dayes journy thence;

that his Mynes yeelded him fitteene thousand Pites of Silver, halfe of which by Divine Law Quengepears. belonged to the people, which had remitted it tohim on condition to pay no other tributes, wherto the ancient Prechaus had sworne to keepe it, as long as the Sun should give light to the Earth. There treefold a great part of his goods till newes of the Tananquir Rouer made them afraid to come aboard : fo that he was forced to fee faile. Thus after many dayes spent in this Bay of Cauchin-china; because Coia Acem and the Py-

rates which robbed Christians were in league with the Mandarines , and fold that which they had gotten in Ainan, he purfued that purpose againe, and came to Anchor in Madel a Hauen in that Iland where he encountred with Himmilau, a Chinese Rouer which had become lately a Moore, and bitter enemy of Christians, of which Religion hee had also beene. Fine Portugal Himmius an Captine Boyes, which were aboard him, cryed out for mercy, whereby Faria mooned, fent to fine Moore know what they were, which answering with stones on their heads that came in the Boat, Pyrace. a cruell fight followed, in which Faria remayned Vilter, and feifed of the Captaine with fifteene others left aliue. He demanded for the Portugall Boyes, who told them they were in the Prow under Hatches; whereupon fending to fee, they found them lying on a heape with their heads off, a woman with her two children being also so served. Faria asked why hee dealt so with the small innocents? He answered, it was sufficient that they were children of Portugals. Being asked why he had forfaken the Christian Religion: he faid, because the Portugals had respected him being a Gentile, with Cap in hand saluting him Quisy Nicoda, but after hee was

Christian, made little account of him; whereupon he became a Moore in Bostam, and the King of lantan vied him with much honour, his Officers called him Brother, and hee fware on a Booke to become an Enemy to the Portugall and Christian Name as long as he lined, the King and Priest applauding and promising all happinesse to his soule. Seuen yeares he had beene in execution of that Oath, and had taken a lunke of Luys de Pauis in the Ruer of Liampoo, with foure hundred Bares of Pepper, flue eighteene Poringals, besides slaues: and after that had taken at times foure ships, in which he had slaine neere three hundred persons, seuentie of them Portse gali, and taken ifteene or fixteen hundred Bares of Pepper and other Commodities, of which the King of Pan had halfe, to secure him and let him have tale: in the River Choabsque on the Coast of China, he had killed Ruy Lobo, his old acquaintance, with seuenteene Portugals, escaping 2 60 wracke, and taken into his lunke on condition to pay him two thousand Cruzados, to let him on shoare at Pasane; which notwithstanding, hee slue him and the rest by the Moore; counsell

one night as they were affeepe. Faria would heare no further, but caused him to bee flaine and cast into the Sea. In Silke and other goods he found in the Junke to the value of fortie thousand Tacis: the lunke he burned, having none to man her,

The other Necodas or Captaynes of the Iunkes, feeing what Faris had done, confulred together, and feeing he might also doe as much to them, fent two chiefe men to him, defiring him as King of the Sea, to give them fecuritie to paffe, in dispatch of their businesses before the Monfon were ended, and that as his Tributaries, they would give him twentie thousand Taxis of Silver: to which he sware, and that no Thiefe should rob them; and with a Present received the Mo. ney brought him within an houre after. A Boy which writ their Paffes, gayned in thirteene dayes aboue fourethouland Taeis (behides gifts for dispatch) each Junke giving fine Taeis and treat him to ferue the Sonne of the Sunne as Admirall from Laman to Liampeo, at ten thousand

the leffe Barkes two. The Vice-Roy also of Amen fent him a rich Prefent, with a Letter to in-Tacis annuall wages, befides (after three yeares end) further advancement : wheretake excufed to his vinworthineste, and departed to Quangipara, a Citie of fifteene thousand Housholds, and fo coafted all along ft the Hand of Ainan feuen monethes space, till the Souldiers were wearie, and required their shares as had been e agreed; which was quieted with promise to winter at Some and having there made Money of all to give each man his part. With this agreement they came to an Hand, called Theener Hand, because standing out of the

Tiha des Ladre

Miferable wracke, and their fortnights mife-

Bay, it is their place to take the first of the Monson. Here at the new Moone in October wee were encountred with a cru ll Tempest in the night, by which the foure Vessels were broken in pieces, fine hundred eightie fixe perfons drowned, of which eight and twentie Portugals : three and fiftie of vs by Godsmercie faued, Faria being one, and one and twentie other Portugals, the rest Slaves and Mariners. They spent two dayes and a balfe in Buriall of their dead, and to as get fome of their prouision, which yet having taken Salt-water, would not last aboue five days of the infreene they flayed there. Faria comforted them faying , that God would not permit for much eail but for a greater good; nor would base taken from them fine bundred thousand Cruzades. but to give them fixe bundred thousand : God doth not punishmith both hands, his mercie curme the wounds which his luftice maketh. Thus we walked naked, and bare-foot on the Strand & in the Wildernes, fuffering hunger and

cold, many of our companions dying, not fo much for want of food, as the stinke and putrified

Reliefe almost miraculous. \* Milhano. Wonderfull prouifion.

Admirable

vibolformeffe thereof. In this disconsolate plight, a Sea-kite " came flying from behind the South Cane of the Iland; and let fall from his Talons a Mullet a span long; which he taking vp with great prayle to God, and Prayer to Ielus Christ, not to confider their merits, but bis merits for 10 them, hee canfed it to bee roffed and given to the ficke. Looking to the place whence the Fowle came, they faw more of them flying vp and downe, and going thitherwards, discoursed a Valley with divers Fruit-trees, and before they came at it, they found a Deere which a Typre had newly killed, and with their generall cry was scarred from it, having begun to eate it. Wee feafled with it, and with many Mullets which those Sea-kises got, and (scarred with our cries) let fall. This fishing they continued from Munday till Saturday, and then seeing a faile they his themselves in the Woods. It was a Laures or Barke with Oares, which came thither with this tie persons to wood and water; and whiles they were disporting themselves, and had left their Barke vnmanned, Farra apprehended the occasion, and having instructed them, at the name of lefus they all ranne vponit, entred without gain-faying, and looking the Prow put to Sea, The & Chinois feeing their Lantes taken, hafted to the shoare, but scarred with a little Iron-pieceout of their Lantes, they fled to the Thickets. We presently fell to eate, what an old man was dreffing for the Chinos, and after fearched and found Silkes, Damaskes, Muske, and other goods worth foure thousand Cruzados, besides Rice, Sugar, Hennes, which we most esteemed for recourse of the ficke. There was a Boy of twelue or thirteene yeares old, whom Faria asked, whence and whose the Lantea was : hee answered, it was his Fathers, from whom they had unhappily takenis lesse then an boure, all hee had gotten in aboue thirtie yeares : bee came from a place, called Quoaman, where in bartar for Silner be had gotten those goods, which he was going to sell to the lunkes of Siam is the Port of Comhay : and now bee going to Supply his want of water, you have taken away his goods without feare of the Instruct of Heaven. Faria promifing to vie him as his Sonne; then, faid hee, so fet me on floare in that miferable Land where my true Father is, with whom I had rather dye then line with fo bad people. Much reasoning passed, and he said, they could speake well of God, but little vied his Law : neither would he eate in three dayes space.

We determined to goe for Liampoo, two hundred and fixtie leagues Northwards from thence, and to get if we could, a better Barke, this being little, and fearly able to brooke those New Moone-stormes on the Coast of China. At Sun-let wee fet fayle, and next morning going East North-east, came to an Ile called Guimes, where we tooke a fisher-barke with store of fresh fish, Whence we tooke what we thought fit, with eight men of her, twelve to ferue for the Lantes, our men being weake. They told vs that eighteene leagues thence was a good River, called Xinguan, within which was a poore fisher-village, called Xamoy, and three leagues higher vp. a Citie 60 of good Trade. The next day in the evening we came to Xamoy, where a lunke rode fitter for Farsas purpose, which in the night he tooke, the men being afleepe; whom he bound, threatning Pullo Quirim. to kill them all if they made any cry; and fayled prefently with her to the lie Pullo Quirim, nine leagues off, and in three dayes after to an Hand called Lucitar, where for the recourty of the

New Moone.

ficke hee flayed fifteene dayes. In the lunke hee found no Merchandize but Rice, the most of which he cast into the Sea to lighten her, and fit her for our Voyage. Thence wee put forth for Liampoo, where we heard were many Portugals from Malaca, Zunda, Siam, and Patane, which vied there to winter.

In the way we encountred, after two dayes fayling, with a Iunke of Patane, which belonged to a China Pyrate, called Quiay Panian, a great friend of the Portugals, of whom he had thirtie in Quiay Panian: his company entertayned in his pay. They not knowing vs, began with a terrible falutation of china Pyrate. fifteene Peeces of Artillery, but by Croffes in their Banner, we knew them and made fignes, by

which both congratulated each other with heartieft greetings, and Quiay Panian and he joyned To in league to pursue their Fortunes together. They now purpoled to goe to Chincheo, and there chinches. found fine fayle of Porngals, which told them of a great Fleet of foure hundred lunkes, with one hundred thousand men gone to the Iles of Goto, in succour of Sucan of Pontir, who had volun- Goto,

tarily subjected himselfe to the King of China, in one hundred thousand Taeis Tribute yearely, We tooke out of those fine ships thirtie fine Souldiers more, and proceeded on our way for Liampoo. In the way we encountred a fmall Paraoo with eight Portugals forely wounded, whereof Antonio Anriquez, and Mem Taborda were, rich men of great efteeme.

These recounted to him that a Guzerate Rouer, Coia Acem, with three Iunks and foure Lantest News of Coia (in which were fine hundred men, one hundred and fiftie of them Moores) fet vpon them (ha- Acen. uing parted seuenteene dayes agoe from Liampoo, for Malaca, purposing to goe for India, if the 20 Monion had permitted) before the Ile Gumbor, and after some houres fight tooke them; eightie

two persons (eighteene of them Portugals) were slaine, and as many others cap: inted, with one hundred thousand Taeis value in their lunke : one of the Pyrats lunks was fired and burnt to the water. Thefe few in the furie of the entry escaped in the little Boat which hung at sterne; they being busied in the spoyle, and the Sunne tnen set, could not follow, but went into the River with much triumph.

Faria and Quiay Panian who had kindted at La loo, prouided themselves there of Powder, Laise, Lead, Victuals, and other necessaries for Money, by leave of the Mandarine, (no Countrey in the World being like China for all kind of provisions) and there get two greater lunkes in truck of the other, and two Lantess, and one hundred and fixtie Mariners, fo that they were in all fine 30 hundred persons of which ninetic fine were Portugali. They had one hundred & fixty Harquebuf-

fes. forty Braffe Peeces, & fixty Quintals of Powder, nine hundred pots of Powder, foure thousand Darts headed with Iron, Arrowes, and many Fire-workes, with other Weapons. Thus prouided, they fet forth in pursuit of Coin Acem, and by a Fisher-boat learned that he was in the Riuer Tinlan, there to turnish and fit the lunke lately taken from the Portugali, to goe with it and two others for Siam (where he was borne) about ten dayes thence. Faria fent Vicente Morola in the Fisher-boat, with some of his company to informe himselfe more fully, which making a flew of fifting with the reft, he early did, and brought word aboard of the eafineffe of the artempt. In the night they anchored, and went up the River in the morning, the enemy knowing nothing till they came in fight, and Faris crying out, Hej,my Masters, in the Name of Christ.

40 to them, to them, Santiage, off went the Ordnance, the small shot succeeded, that none now in the Iunkes durft appeare. His small Vestels (Lorche) comming from the shoare with succour were fo entertayned with great shot that they could not helpe themselues, and by our small Vesfels were fired with the fire-pois; in three of them two hundred persons were flaine. Out of the fourth they leaped into the water, and were most slaine by Panians men.

Coia Acess which before was not knowne, feeing his Moores ready to try the waters courtehe to escape those fiery enemies, armed in Buffe, with Plates fringed with Gold, cryed out aloud that he might be heard, La Hab ill. llab Muhamed rocolalab : what shall you Muslemans and inst men of the Law of Mahemet, Suffer your selves to be conquered of so feeble a Nation as are these Dogges, which have no more heart then white Hent, and hearded women to them, to them, the Booke of Flowres hath given promise from our Prophet to son and me, to bathe our selves in the blond of these Castres with-

50 one Law. With these curfed words, the Deuill 10 animated them, that it was fearefull to see how they ranne on our Swords. Faria on the other fide heartned his in the name of Christ crucified, and with a zealous fertiour reached Coin Acem, such a blow with a two hand Sword on his and with a zeatous transon reached. Opina pound, and with another blow cut off his legges, Opina pound, lead-piece of Maile, that he funke to the ground, and with another blow cut off his legges, opina from the control of the contr Whereupon his men with fuch furie allayled Faria, not caring for thirtie Portegals which flood flaine, about him, that they gaue him two wounds, which put fuch i pirit into our men, that in little space, eight and fortie of the Enemies lay dead upon Coia Acem, and therest they sue all but fine; whom they tooke and bound, the Boyes cutting the others in quarters, and throwing them into the water with Cota Acem, and the King of Birtans chiefe Cacia, or Priest, the Predder and The Cacia ha

the drinker of Portugall blond, as he stilled himselse in the beginning of his Writings, for which med of Chris 60 hee was of that curied Scot much honoured.

Of the Enemies were flaine three nundred and eightie, of ours fortie two (eight of which were Portugals, Faria learched the Iland, and found a Village therein of fortie or fiftie houses, which Coia Acem had facked, flaying some of the Inhabitants. Not faire off was a great house

feeming a Temple full of ficke and wounded men, ninetie fixe in number, which the Pyrathed there in cure, whom he burned, fetting the house on fire in disers places, those that sought to escape being received on Pikes and Launces. The Innke which they had taken from the Portugali fixe and ewentie dayes before, Faria gaue to Mem Taborda, and Antonio Anriquez in Almes forre. million of his finnes, taking their Oath to take no more but their owne. He tooke speciall care of the wounded, and caused the slaues to be set free. After all this, there remayned of cleere gaines, one hundred and thirtie thousand Taeis in Siluer, of Impar and other goods, which that Pyrat had taken along that Coast from Sumber to Fuches.

ANTONIO FARIA bis taking of Nonda a Citie in China, triumah at Liampoo ; strange Voyage to Calempluy , mi-Serable Shipwracke.

the fecond

Aria hauing recouered his ficke men, fet fayle for Liampoo, and beeing commeto the point of Microy in fixe and twentie degrees, by a frorme he was driven youn Rock in the darke night, and was forced to call out all the goods. in the darke night, and was forced to cast out all the goods, and cut all their Masts 20 ouer-board; and with much adoe we escaped with their helpe (two and twentie drowned by ouer-haftinesse) to the Iunke of Mem Taborda. The second day after came two

Neuday.

Portugals from Quiay Panians Iunke, and plained to vs their almost like misfortune (one guft hauing taken away three men, and cast them a stones cast into the Sea) and the losse of the small lunke with fiftie persons, most of which were Christians, and seuen Portagals. One of the Las. teas came and told of their difaduenture, the other Lantes loft, only thirteene men escaping, which the Countrey people carryed Captines to Nonday: fo that two lunkes and a Lantea with aboue one hundred perions were loft, and in Munition and other goods, aboue two hundred thoufand Cruzados, the Captayne and Souldiers having nothing left but that on their backes. The china pecillous Coast of China is subject to these strokes more then other Countries, so that none can sayle m thereon one yeare without difafters, except at the full and change, they betake them to their Ports, which are many and good, without barred entries, except Laman and Sambor.

Faria went and anchored before Nouday and fent fome to found, and to take some of the people to enquire of his men, who brought a Barke with eight men and two women, one of whom (having first iworne by the Sea, that it below, and the winds above should pursue him if her brake bis Faith, and the beautie of the starres whose eyes beheld all wrong, as the Chinese requested) told him that he taking them to be Sea Rouers and Robbers, had taken them and cast them in Irons. Farta writ to the Mandarin by two of those Chinois, with a Present worth two hundred Duckets to returne his men, which returned the next day with an Answere written, that himfelfe (hould come and demand Iuftice at his feet, and he would doe as hee faw caufe. Hee wrote to againe, offering two thousand Taeis for their Redemption, fignifying that hee was a Portugal Merchant, which came to trade at Liampoo, and payd Customes without any Robbery; and that the King of Portugall his Lord was in true amitie with his Brother the King of China, and in Malaca his subjects vied the Chinois juilly. This calling the King of Portugall the King of Chinas Brother, he tooke fo hainoully, that he caused the China Mellengers to be whipped, and their eares cut, and fent them backe with a railing Answere written to Faria, which had so proudly blasphemed, calling his King the Brother of the Sonne of the Sunne, the Lian crowned untb incredible power in the Throne of the Vninerse, under whose feet all (rownes of all that gonerne the Earth, are placed with all their Seniories, as all Writers affirme in their Histories. For this Herefie he burned his Writing with his Picture, as he would doe to himfelfe, charging him prefently to fet fayle 50 and be gone, Faria enraged, refolued to affault the Towne, having three hundred men, (feuentie of them Porsugals) with the company of Quiay Pansan, for that feat.

Nonday affaul

Having therefore taken foure Barkes, the next morning betimes with them, three Iunkes and a Lorcha or Lantea, he went up the River, and had fixe fathomes water and an halfe anchoring by the wals. And striking sayle without salutation of Artillery, we put off our Flagge of contract, after the China custome, to fulfill all complements of peace, fending new offers of love and further latisfaction for the Priloners. But the Mandarine full of indignation, hardly vied the Messengers on the wall in fight of the Armada; whereupon, Faria desperate of doing any good that way leaving order with the Iunkes continually to shoot at the Enemie where they were thickest, he with his company landed without contradiction, and marched to the Towns. When we were comne within little more then a Calieuer that of the Ditch without the wall, 69 there islued by two gates one thousand, or twelve hundred; about one hundred of them Horsemen, or Hackneymen rather (for they rode on leane Iades) which began to skirmish in such disordered fort, encountring one with another, and many of them falling to the ground, that they

feemed to be of fome neighbour Villages, which came more of force then with force or heart to the bulineste. Faria expected them, encouraging his men, and making a figne to the funkes.

The Horsemen dissided themselves, and wheeled about, as if that would have searred vs. which feeing, without effect they joyned in one bodie or heape rather; whereat the Captavne commanded all the Caleguers to shoot off at once, with furth successe, that the former halfe of the Horsemen fell to ground. And then wer which till that time had stood fill gaue the affanit. crying on the name of Iefus, infomuch that they fied fo confusedly, that they fell one wooh another, and when they came to the Bridge over the Ditch, they thronged themselves fo that none could goe forward. In this case we came on them, and slue about three hundred, none of them In fearly drawing Sword to defend themfelies. Wee profecuted the victory to the gate; in which was the Mandarine with fixe hundred men fairely mounted, armed with a Corflet of Crimfon Veluet silded, which we knew after to have belonged to Tome Perez, which King Emanuel of Thomas Perez, tric of the gate, more valorous then the former, till a Boy of ours difmounted the Mandarine The Mandarine from his Horfe with a Harquebuffe (bot thorow the breast, which caused the rest disorderly to flaine,

glorious memorie had fent Embaffadour to China. Hee and his began a fight with vs in the enflee, and we with them into the Towne. They calling downe their weapons ranne out at another gate toward the Countrey, none remayning. Antonio Faria gathering his companie together, marched orderly to the Chifanga, the Priton where our men were, brake up the gates and grates, and freed his men. Then did he appoint halfe an houre to his people for spoile, himselfe Prisoners loo-20 going to the Mandarines liquie, and had 8000. Taeis of Silver there, & five great boxes of Muske: fed.
The Towns

the reit he gane to the Boyes, which was much Silke twifted, and vnwrought, Damaske, Sate ficked. tin. Porcelane : the facke was fo rich, that foure Barkes or Veffels in which they came went foure times laden therewith to the lunkes, that there was neither Boy nor Mariner which had not a Chift or Chifts of pieces, belides what they had fecretly. Having fpent an houre and halfe. he feeing night now come on, let fire in ten or twelve parts of the Citie, which being built of Pine timber fuddenly arofe into fuch a flame, that it feemed a Hell. And without impediment, he embarked his company with much riches, and many faire Girles eyed by foures and fines with Match, they crying, our striumphing. It was now late, yet had Faria care of the wounded, which were fiftie of them, eight Ports.

30 gals, and to burie the dead, which were nine only one Portugall; and keeping good watch that night, as foone as it was day, he went to a Village on the other fide of the water, and found not one person in it, the houses still furnished with goods and provisions, with which he laded the lunkes: and departed for a defart Hand fifteene leagues from Liampio, called Pullo Hinber, where was good water and anchorage. After wee had fayled fine dayes betwire the Hes Comolem and Comelem the continent, Premata Gandel a Rouer which had done much damage to the Portugals in Pa- Hands. tane, Sunda, Siam, taking vs for Chinefes, fet vpon vs with two great lunkes, in which were two hundred fighting men befides Mariners, and grapling with the lunke of Mem Taborda, fiad almost taken it, when Quian Panian came to her succour with such a stroke on her quarter, that both lanke ; the three Lorche which Faria brought from Nonday comming in, faued most of our

40 men, the enemies being all drowned , and Mem Taborda freed. Meane while, Premaid Gundel Another lead had with two hookes and Iron chaines fathed himfelfe to Fanat lunke, both in the poope and prow, it has a cruell battell following, that in leffe then an houre most of Fanat when shall him.

And another and another chain the father than t ielfe were wounded, and twice in danger of taking, when the three Lorebs, and is lively limbse (nice which Pero Sylms had taken at Nonday, came in to his fuccour, fo that eightie fixe Mooret which I said vidorie. had entred Farius Iunke were flaine, who had cooped our men before in the poop-roome; and thence entring the Pirats lunke , put all therein to the fword.

This victorie coft feuenteene of ours their lines, fine of them of the best Portugal Souldiers, belides three and fortie wounded. The prize was valued at eightie thousand Taers, the most of 120000 Cruit lapan Silver, which the Pirate had taken in three Iunkes, come from Firanda bound for Chin- 23dos.

50 cheo. In the other funken lunkes was faid to be as much. With this prize Faris went to a little Iland, called Buncalon, foure leagues off, and stayed there eighteene dayes, making Cottages for Buncalon, the wounded, which there recoursed health. Thence they departed, Quiay Panian going in that Iunke of the Pirate, with 20000. Tae's over and above for his part : in fixe dayes we came to the Ports of Liampoo, which are two lles, in which the Portugals made at that time their Liampoo, a Porcontractation, and was a Towne of one thousand houses, and sixe or seven Churches built by sugal Tawne them, with Sherifs, an Auditor, Alcaides, and other Officers; the Notaries ving, to write, China, feuen I, N. publike Notarie for the King our Lord, in this Citie of Liampoo, &c. as if it had beene feat leagues from ted betwixt Santarem and Lifton: and fuch was their forwardnesse, that some houses cost Liampo. three or foure thouland Cruzados, all which were razed afterwards by the Chinois; fo vncer-

60 tame are the things of China (which in these parts are so effected) so subject to disaftres and difaduentures. When Faria was come to Portas de Liampoo, he fent Mem Taborda, and Anriques first to ac-

quaint the Townel-men what had passed, who sent leronymo do Rego with two Lanteau, to thanke him for the bountie shewed in the case of Cois Acen, and with refreshings; and for the

bufinefle at Nouday, he need not be afraid there to winter, the King of China being as they faid. Civil warres lately dead, and civill warres succeeding, thirteene competitors being in Armes to enforce their Cimil warres later) usua, and claim wastes in the Man No, which was next perion to the King in all the Go. perment, with meere and mixt Empire of Maiestic Regall, was besieged in the Citie of Que. ansij, by Preehau Muan Emperour of Cauchinas; in whole fauour it is holden for certaine, that the King of Tartaria is comming with an Armie of nine hundred thouland men; and that in this troubled estate Nonday would not be thought of, which was in comparison of many other Cities in China leffe then Ociras compared with Lisbon. He was fixe dayes after with great tri-

umph and glorious shewes, made of his owne Fleet, and of the many Boars, Barkes, and Citie umpn and glorious mewes, make the being three hundred men in fefticull apparell, with many to Gold Chaines, and gilded Swords, till he came into the Port, in which rode in a rew, twentie ix Ships, and eightie Junks, besides a greater number of smaller vessels, fastned one before another in two wings, making a street betwixt them, adorned with Lurell, and other greene boughes, and fweet herbs, the Ordnance thundring on both fides a congretulation. The Chinesis wondred, and asked if he were Brother or neere Kinfman to their King, they received him in fuch honour; Nay, faid a conceited Portugal, but his father shooed the Kings Horles, and therefore is he work this of this honour. Hereat they were more then amazed, and faid, There were great Kings in the World, of which their Authours had made no menuon, and the King of Portugal termes one of them, and much to exceed the Cauchim, or the Tartar, and it were no finne to lay he may hold compare with the Sonne of the Sanne, the Lion crowned in the Throne of the Worl, 20 Others confirmed the same, alledging the great riches which the bearded men generally posses fed. A glorious Lantes was purpotely adorned for his person in which hee went, with many Muricall Instruments of the Chinas , Malayos, Champaas, Siamites , Borneos, Leguios, and other Nations which there fecured them lefues vader the Portugals, for feare of Roners which filled

libendu mearie you to let you see the rest of this pempous speciacle, and more to heare their Oratins preserving him before Alexander, Scipio, Annibal, Ponpey, Czelar: Neither will Religion let me goe with him to their Masse: nor doe I ener dine worse then at selemme Feasts; and others will grudge me arconne at Comedies : all which pompes I will leane to our Author, enlarged by the Spanish translator, Canon of the Church of Arbas, as dedicated to Manuel Seuerin de Faria. There hee flayed five 30 moneths, spending the time in Hawking, Hunting, Fishing, Feating. Quay Passas in this time dyed, After hee made ready to goe to the Mines of @mangaru. Others diffwaded him by rea-fon of warees in those parts, and a famous Pyrat called Similar, cold him of an Iland called Calmapluy, in which seuenteene Kings of China were buried with much treasures, in Vests, and Idols of Gold, and other incredible riches; which hee on no other testimonie embraced, (without confulting with his friends, who not a little blamed him therefore) and went with Similan in feafch of this Hand, fetting out May the fourteenth, 1542.

which great thips cannot flemme, by reason of the ouer-flowings from Tartaria and Nixibian 4

Flaon, in those moneths of May, June, and July. He had with him fixe and fiftie Portugals, with

a Priest, and fortie eight Mariners of Patane, and fortie two Slaues : more our Pilot Similar

would not admit, fearing suspition in trauerfing the Bay of Nanquin, and entry of many Rivers

much is habited. That day and night wee cleared the lles of Angum, and followed our voyage

thorow a Sea before neuer layled by Portugals. The hrit fine dayes, we fayled with good winde, in fight of land to the entrie of the Bay of Nanquar islnings, and passed a gulfe of fortie leagues,

and had fight of a high Hill called Nangafu, alongit which we ranne to the North fine dayes; at

the end whereof, Similar put into a small River, the people whereof were white, of good sta-

ture, with small eyes like the Chinose, but differing in speech and behausour. After three dayes

fing another gulfe, there was a straight open to the East, called Silenpaquim, ten leagues in the

the tempest ceasing, we set sayle East North east seven ayes together in sight of land, and cros- 50

He set foorth with two Panonras, which are as it were Frigots, but somewhat higher: Iunkes he yied not, both for secrecie, and because of the Currents which set out of the Bay of Nanquin,

Currents in

Angitur.

Nameaniu.

mouth, within which we sayled fine dayes in fight of many Townes and Cities very faire; and this River or straight was frequented with innumerable shipping; insomuch that Faria was afraid to bee discouered, and would needs against Similars minde turne some other way. Thus out of the Bay of Nanquin (Similan : elling them of a moneths worke of fayling by the Riuer Sumbepaden, one hundred and feuentie leagues distant thence to the North) wee fayled fine dayes, at the end whereof wee faw a very high Hill called Faniss, and comming neere it, entred a goodly rode, where one thousand ships might ride at anchor. Wee sayled thence thirteene dayes along the coast, and came to the Bay of Buxipalem in 49. degrees, where wee found it som-Strange Fiftes what cold and faw Fiftes of strange shapes, some like Thornbacks, aboue source braces or fa-60 thoms compaffe, flat nofed like an Oxe ; some like great Lizards, speckled blacke and greene, with three rewes of prickles on the lacke, like briftles, three spannes long, very sharpe, the rell of the body full, but of shorter ; these Fishes will contract themselves like Hedge-hogs, and looke fearefully; they have a sharpe blacke snout with tuskes, after the manner of a Bore, two spanies

long. Other deformities and diversities of Fishes we saw. Fifteene leagues further, we came to an another fairer Bay called Calnidan, fixe leagues in compaffe fet round with Hills, diverlified Calnidan. with Woods and Rivers, foure very great. Similar favd that she filth of dead Carcaffes of creatures, proceeding from the operflowings.

specially in November, December, and Januarie, at the full of the Moone, caused the generation of fuch dissertitie of Fiftes and Serpents in that Bay, and the former, which were not feene in o-

ther pasts iff that Coathe Farinaskes him whence those Rivers came, and hee faid that he knew not but if it were true which was written, two of them came from a great lake called Mofcum. Mofcumbis. bis, and the other two from a Prouince of great Mountaines, which all the yeere were covered so with mow, called Alimonia, and in Summer when great part of the fnow was melted, they be- Alimonia. came fo impatuous, as wee now faw : and for that River in the mouth whereof we were entred,

called Pastebenem, were mow in the name of the Lord of heaven to turne the Prow to the Pastebenem East, and East Southwest \* to fearth against the Bay of Nanquim, which we had left behind two \* Alelte a hundred and fixtie-leagues, all which way we had made higher then Calemplay. The second day leffuste. we came to a high Maussaine called Barnafan, flored with divers kindes of wilde beafts, which Botinafan. continued neere fiftie leagues and fixe-dayes fayling; and after came to another Hill as wilde as the former, called Gungineson, and all the way forward was mountainous, and so thicke of trees Ganzitanou, that the Sunne could not pierce. Smillan layd, that in ninetic leagues space there was no habytation, and in the skires thereof lined a deformed faunge people onely by their Hunting, and 30 fome Rice which they got in China, by exchange of wilde beafts skinnes, which hee fayd came

to aboue a million yeerely. Of these Giganbos, wee law a beardlesse youth with fixe or feuen Kine before him, to whom Similan made a figue, and hee flayed till we came to the Bankes fide, and shewing him a piece of greene. Taffata (which hee fayd they much esteemed) with a harili voyce he fayd, Quites paran fanfan, words which none vnderstood. Faria commanded to give Giants. him three or foure Conados of the taffata, and one Porcelanes, which he received with much joy, faving, Par param porby pilaca humangue doren, figuing with his hand to the place whence hee came, and feating his Kine, he ranne thither. He was cloathed with a Tygers skin, the havre outward, his armes, head and logges bare, with a rude pole in his hand; well shaped, feeming ten

palmes or spans long, his hayre hanging on his shoulders. Within a quarter of an houre hee re-30 turned with a line Deere on his backe, and thirteene persons with him, eight men and fine women, with three Kine tyed in coards dancing at the found of a Drum, giving now and then five dances firokes on it, and other fine with their hands, crying aloude, Cur cur himan falcos. Amonio de Faria, capied to thew them fine or fixe pieces and many Porcelanes. All of them were cloathed in like manner, only the women had on their wrifts groffe bracelets of Tin, their hayre longer then the men, and full of Flowers, and on their necker a great neck-lace with coloured Shels, as big as Oyster-shels. The men had great poles in their hands, furred halfe way with such Pelts as they wore ; they were strong fet, with thicke lippes, flat moses, great open nostrils, bigge faces. Faris canfed to meature them, and none of them were higher then ten fpannes

and a halfe, one old man nigh eleuen, the women not ten : but I suppose the most sauage 40 that ener yet were discouered. Faria gaue them three corges of Porcelane, a piece of greene Taffara, and a basket of Pepper; and they fell on the ground, and lifting up their hands with A Corgeis so. their fifts flut, fayd, Ummenabilen opomenapan lapan, lapan, lapan. They gave vs the three Kine and the Deere, and after many words, in three houses conference returned with like dance

Wee followed our way fine dayes more up the Riner, about fortie leagues, in which we had fight of that people, and fixteene dayes more without fight of any, at the end of which we came to the Bay of Nanguins, hoping in five or fixe dayes to effect our defires. Similar willed Faria not to let his Portugal; be seene. And having sayled sixe dayes East and East North-east, we had fight of a great Citie called Sileupamor, and entred into the Port two hours within night, being Sileuparte.

50 a faire Bay almost two leagues in circuit, where abundance of shipping rode at anchor, seeming about three thouland : which made vs fo afraid, that our againe we went, and croffing the Riuer (which may bee about fixe or feuen leagues ouer) were ranne along it a great Champaine the rest of the day with purpose to get some refreshing, having passed thirteene hungry dayes. We Tanamadel. came to an old building called Tanamadel, and got prouition to our mindes. This place, the Chiwois which wee found there, told vs. belonged to an Hospitall two leagues thence for entertainment of the Pilgrims, which vilited the Kings Sepulcher. Wee continued our voyage feuen dayes more, hauing spent two moneths and a halfe tince wee came from Liampoo, and now Faria could no longer conceale his discontent, that hee had thus followed Similars project, and recei-

uing of him answer little to the purpose, had stabbed him with his Dagger if others had not in-60 terposed Similar, the night following as wee rode at anchor neere the land, swam a shoare, the watch not perceining, which Faria hearing was fo impatient, that going on shoare to feeke him, hee returned frustrate, and found of his fixe and fortie Chinais, two and thirtie fled. Full now of con ufion, it was by counfell resoluted to seeke Calemplay, which could not be farre off: and the next night entred a Barke riding at anchor, and tooke fine men sleeping therein; of whom hee

This lland was feated in the midit of the River, and feetned to bee a league in Compatie. His ther came Faria with trouble and feare, three houres within night, anchoring about a chamber thot from it. In the morning it was agreed, first to goe about it to see what ontrances it had and what impediments might befall their defigne. The Iland was all environed with a rampine of Hewen Marble, fire and twentie spannes high, so well cut and set together, that all abreval seemed but one piece, the like whereof wee had never seen in sada, or elsewhere : from the box. tome of the water to the brim, it contayned other fixe and ewentle spannes. In the top ware border of the same worke round ingirting it, like a Priers girdle, of the bigneffe of a rundlet to of twelue gallons, on which were fet grates of Latten turned, euery fixe fathoms faftened into holes of the fame Latten ; in each of which was the idollof a woman, with a roundball inher hands, norte knowing what it fignified. Within these grates, was a rew of marry Monflere of cast Iron, which in manner of a dance hand in hand, compassed the lie round. Further inwards from those monstrous Idols, in the same ranke, was another of Arches of sich worke pleafant to behold. And all from hence inward, was a grove of dwarfe Orange-trees thicke let; in the midft whereof were builded three hundred and fixtie Hermitages, dedicated to the Gods of the yeere, whereof those Paynims have many fabulous prairies. A quarter of a league higher, on a hill to the Eaft, were seene buildings with seuen fronts of houses like Churches, all from the top to the bottome wrought with gold, with high Towers feeming Bell-fleeples; 16 and without, two streets with Arches which encompassed these buildings, of the same worke with the fronts; and all from the highest top of the steeple pinacles to the bottom wrought with

gold; whereby we judged it fome fumptuous and rich Temple.

After this view taken, Farin resolved (though it were late) to goe on shoare, to see if he could speake with any in those Hermitages; and so (leaving sufficient guard in the Barkes) with sortie Souldiers, twentie Slaves, and foure Chinois; (which knew the place, and had beene formetimes there, and might serue vs for Interpreters) he committed the two Barkes to Father Diego Lobato, and entred at one of the eight Entrances; walking thorow the Orangetto-groue to an Hermitage, two Caliuer shorts from our landing place, with the greatest silence that might bee, and with the name of lefus in our heart and seputh. Having yet feene no person, he felt at the doore of the Hermitage with his Halberd, and perceined it locked on the infide : hee bade one of the Chinois knocke, which having done twice he heard an answer within answering, Praised bes the Creator which gilded the beautious Hearins, see about and I will know thy businesse. The Chinos went about and entring the backe coore, epened that where Faria frood, who with his com-

He enters an panie going in, found one man feeming aboue one hundred yeeresold, in a long Russet Damaske

Iefusmade a

patron of

thecues.

garment, by his presence seeming Noble (as after wee learned he was) who seeing such a troupe fell downe, trembling hand and foot. A good while it was before hee could speake, and then afked what wee were, and what we fought. The Interpreter answered by Farias command, that hee was the Captaine of these strangers of Siam, who bound for the Port of Liampoo in trade of and an Hermit Merchandite was wracked at Sea; hee and these escaping miraculously, and therefore yowing 40 to come to that Holy land on Pilgrimage, to praise God for deliverance from so great a dan-Abfairm vowes ger, and was now come to fulfill it; and withall to demand formewhat in almes to relieue him for his returne, protesting after three yeeres to restore it double whatsoeuer hee nowitooke. Hisicon (that was his name) answered, I have well beard what thou hast faid, and that damnable designe whereto thy blindnesse (as the Pilot of Hell) bath drawne thee and thing affociates to the bostome of the lake of night. For in stead of thanker for so great a benefit, then commest to rob: and what I pray thee will the Dinine instice repay thee at thy last breath? change thous thy smill purpose, and (beleene me) God will change thy punishment. Faria prayed him, hee would not bee angry, faying, hee had no other remedie of life : whereat the Hermite lifting his hands and eyes to Heauen, sayd, weeping. Blessed bee thou Lord, which sufferest on earth men. 30 which take for remedie of life thine offences, and for certaintie of glorie will not serve thee one day. And then turning his eyes to the companie which were rifling the Hangings and Chefts, taking the filuer from amongst the bones of the deceased therein, hee fell twice from his seare with griefe; and pensuely put Faria in minde of his last breath, of restitution, of penance perpetuall to his flesh, and liberall and discreet communicating to the poore, that the seruant of night should have nothing to accuse him in the day of account : praying him also to command his companie, to gather up the bones of the Saints, that they should not lye contemp-Compleathy. tible on the ground. Faria gaue him many good words and complements, professing himselfe (which hee whispered neerer) forrie of what had passed, but it hee should not doe it, his companie had threatened so kill him. If it bee so, faid the Hermit, then fball the paine bee 60 lesse then these ministers of night, whom as hungry Dogs, it seemes all the silver of the world would

> Thus with many good words hee tooke leaue of the Hermit (hauing taken all they could get) Who told him his knowledge might make bis sinne more penall. Nuno Coelho praying him not to be

# CHAP.2. S.3. The Foxe preacheth, prayeth, preyeth, payeth for all at last.

so angry for so small a marter, hee replyed, More small is the feare which thou hast of death, when having spent thy life in foule facts, thy soule shall stand as soule at the passage of this dung-bill of thy fielb. And if thou seekest more Silver to fill thy infernall appetite, thou mayst finde in the bouses adiorning enough to make it files, as well in danger of Hell for this already, faue that more burthened thou Shalt descend swifter to the bottome. Przy, sayd Coelho, take all in patience, for to God hath commanded in his holy Law : the Hermit shaking oft his head, fayd, I now see that which I never thought to have heard, Inbred wickednesse and vertue fained, the same man stealing and preaching: and turning to Faria, prayed him that hee would not fuffer them to fpet on the Altar, being liefer to dye a thousand times then to see it, which he promised. Hee then demanded of Hus-

10 con, what persons lived in all those houses; who answered, three hundred and fixtie Talagrepos onely, and fortie Menigrepos which ferued them without, for their prouision, and the care ges, Hermite of the Sicke. Hee asked if the Kings vied to come thither : no layd he, The King being fonne of & attendance. the Sunne, can absolue all and none may condemne him. Asked of their Armes, hee fayd, To goe as Lay breto Heaven, there needed not armes to offend, but patience to suffer. For the mixture of that Silver thren. with dead bones in the chefts, hee answered, that it was the Almes which the deceased carried Papellpower with them, to provide them of necessities in the beauen of the Moone. Asked of women with them. hee layd, that the Bee stings those which eate the honey, and pleasures of the slesh needed not to the life of the Soule. And thus parted hee from the Hermit with embraces, with purpole to returne the next day (it being now night) to the other houses, and not taking aboard with him this 20 Hermit, as hee was admifed, faying, his gowtie legges could carrie no tydings of va: which yet

hee did, creeping to the next, and bidding him goe call the Bonzij.

For an houre after midnight, wee faw fires in a rew, which our Chinois told vs, were fignes They are diffe of our discouerie, and therefore aduised vs to haste away. Faria was awakened, and would needs coursed a shoare with fixe men, and ranne like a mad-man from one place to another : his companie requeited him to haite away, and he answered, for his honour hee would first see the danger, and intreated them to stay one halfe houre, and swearing hereto, away hee goeth, and followes the found of a Bell to an Hermitage, in which were two men in religious habits; the place was richer then the former wee had beene in. They tooke thence an Idoll of Silver from the Altar with a myter of Gold on his head, and a wheele in his hand, and three Candletticks of filter 20 with long chaynes; and taking the two Hermits with them, returned aboard the Barkes with great haite. Of one of thele, they learned that Pilan Angiroo had come to the house of the Sepulchers of the Kings, and cryed out to them to awaken out of their fleepe, telling them of their oath to the Goddesse Amida, of Strangers with long beards and Iron bodies, which had robbed the Saints, and would kill them all, whence followed the fires, and fending to give notice to the Cities Corpilem, and Fumbana for ay de, their Religion prohibiting them to handle any thing which mighe draw blond. Farsa now having gone downe the River a great way, was much enraged for omitting fuch oportunitie, plucking his beard, and beating himfelfe with anguish, till not long after his heate was cooled.

#### III.

Their Shipwracke in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miserable wandrings of the rest to Nanquin: their Imprisonment, sentence and appeale to Pequin ; rarities observed in those places and wayes ; of the beginnings of the China Kingdome, and of their ad-

Euen dayes wee layled thorow the Bay of Nanquim, the force of the current carrying vs more (peedily, and came all discontent to a Village called Sujoquerim, and there promided our felues of victuall and instruction, and entred into a straight called Xalin-Xalingua. gau, in which wee ranne in nine dayes one hundred and fortie leagues, and turning to

enter the same Bay of Nanquim, which was there ten or twelve leagues wide, wee sayled with Westerly windes thirteene dayes: and being in the sight of the Mines of Conxinacan in 41. degrees and two thirds, there a Tufan or tempelt from the South, tooke vs with windes and raines feeming more then naturall, and the winde chopped into the North North-west, the Sea going fo high that (except our prouisions and Chests of plate) we threw all into the Sea, cut both our masts ouer-board, and about midnight heard a great cry in the Papura of Antonia de Faria, Faria dion-Mercy Lord God, whereby wee imagined flee was caftaway; we reconded the same cry, but ned and book heard no answer. Our Baske also the next day, split on a Rocke, and of flue and twentie Porta- the Basko 60 galt, cleuen were drowned, besides eighteene Christian boyes, and seuen China Mariners. This we used

hapned the firth of August, 1542. Wee fourteene which escaped, the next day transled into the Land, along it a Hill, and differuered a Lake, without the w of Land, which made vs returne backe, where wee found our men

Foure other

cast on shoare, to the renewing of our forrow, and the next day buried them, that the Tigres (of which there are many) should not eate them. In this, having nothing but our hands to doe it, and they thirtie fixe now flinking, wee spent the most part of the day. Thence wee went Northward thorow the Woods three dayes, till weecame at a straight, without fight of any person. In swimming ouer three men and a boy were drowned, being faint, the current strong, and the water somewhat spacious: the men were two brethren Belebior and Gaff ar Barbola, and Francisco Borges Capeiro, all of Ponte de Lima, and of good account. Wee which remayned (cleuen men and three boyes) passing that obscure nights winds, raines, and cold, imitated by our disconsolate sighs, teares, and feares, saw before day a fire Eastward, and went right towards our disconsolate igns, scares, and traveling along the River, we came in 10 it, commending our felues to God our only hope. And traveling along the River, we came in 10 the euening where fiue men were making Coles, and casting our selues at their feet, defired them to take pitie on vs, and helpe vs to some place where wee might finde reliefe. They gauevsa little Rice and warme water, and shewed vs the way to a Village where was an Hospitall, to which wee came an houre within night, and found there foure men appointed to that charge, which vsed vs charitably.

An Hospitall,

\* Maleca is faid to fland in the Kingdome of

The next day they asked what wee were, and whence: and wee told them, strangers of Stam \*, which came from the Port of Liampoo to the fishing at Nanguim, where by tempest we lost all but our battered flesh. They asked what wee intended to doe, and wee answered, to goe to Nanquim, to get pallage to Cantan, or Combay, where our Countrey-men have tradely licence of the Aitao of Paquim, under the shadow of The Sonne of the Sunne, the Lion crowned in 20 the Throne of the World; for whole fake we defired them to let vs flay there till we had recousred strength to travell, and to give vs some clothing to couer vs. They carried vs about the Village, and begged some old clothes and viotuals, and two Tacis in money for our reliefe, and gage vs two Taeis of the House; and with words of much comfort to trust in God, they gaue vsa Letter of commendation to the Hospitall of Siley iacan, which was in a great Towne three leagues thence, and had better maintenance. Thither we went, and shewed our Letter from the Ouerfeers of Buatendoo, in the faid Village of Catiboran to the Officers of this house, which fate then at Table in confultation, and the Scribe reading the Letter, they accommodated vs in a neat roome with fourteene Beds, a Table, and many Stooles, and Meate; and next morning examined vs, wee answering as before. They gave charge to a Physician to cure vs, and wrote a our names in a Booke, to which we subscribed. In eighteene dayes wee all recouered, and went thence to a place called Sujoanganee, fine leagues off, and fate downe wearie at a Well, where one came to vs with a handful of Wheat eares, which he wetted in the water, and adjured vs holding the same in our hands, by these substances of bread and water, which the high Creator had made for the fullenance of man to tell the truth what we were, &c. which we did, answering as before; and he gaue leaue to his neighbours to relieue vs. They layde vs in a Church Porch, and gaue vs victuals, and the next day we begged from doore to doore foure Taeis, which well helped our wants.

Siley iacau.

X'angulee hard

Thence we went two leagues to Xiangules, with intent to goe to Nangnim, one hundred and fortie leagues diftant. Comming thither late, three boyes which were feeding Cattell, ranne 40 into the Towne with an out-crie of Theenes; the people running out, and so welcomming vs, that one of the boyes died with the blowes. They kept vs two dayes in a Cifferne of water up to the wafte, full of Horf-leaches, without victuals, and our hands bound; whence by a man of Suzanganee, wee were freed, reporting better things of vs. Thence wee went to Finemilan ( in the way finding good reliefe at a Gentlemans house) still auoyding Cities and Townes of note, for feare of fricter inftice, two moneths holding on our way, fometime in, fometimes out, from Village to Village, one of which was Chautir, where a woman was then buried which had made the Idoll her Heire, and we were inuited as poore men to eate at her Graue, and had fixe Taeis given vs to pray for her foule. At Tapper an Officer charged vs to be Rogues, begging against the Law, and therefore layed vs in Prilon, where we continued fixe and twentie dayes, 50 in which Rodrigues Brano, one of our companie died. Thence wee were sent to Nanguins, and there continued fixe weekes in a miserable Prison (in which was said to be soure thousand Prifoners) where two of our companie and a boy died of the whipping, and the rest hardly esca-

Taypor.

Chautir.

ped; being besides sentenced also to have our thumbs cut off as theeyes, After this bloudy whipping, they brought vs to a house within the Prison where wee were cured, being as it were an Hospitali for the ficke, where in eleven dayes wee were pretily well recourred, but lamenting the cutting off our thumbes according to the rigour of the Sentence which had beene giuen, one morning came in two honourable persons which were Procurers of the poore. These questioned vs of our case, and hearing the same, made a Petition to the Chaem on our behalfe, and the eight Conchacis, which areas it were Criminall Iudges; and being there delayed, they made another Petition to another Table, called Xinfan nicor pitan, where are foure 60 and twentie Talagrepos affiftants, austere Religious men, as Capuchmes amongst vs, which retiew the cases of the poore, which prohibited the Chaem to proceed, and granted an appeale to the Airan of Airan in Pequins to moderate the Sentence, which the two Procurers brought vs.

Wee and thirtie others were embarked, chained with long chaines, the two Procurers procuring vs fome clothing, and Rice, and commending vs to Chifu, the Officer or Captaine appointed to carrie vs, with a Certificate in our behalfe to procure vs almes. The Rivers being then high swollen hindred our sourney. Three dayes wee stayed at a Village called Minca: ntem. where Chifu dwelt, and embarked his wite and children; wee were tyed to the feats where wee Where Costs awers, and embassed us with the Cities, yet thus much wee observed. Manquim place this Cities, we thus much wee observed. Manquim place this Cities is in 39, degrees and a third, washed by the Ruert Batampina, which fignified The flower of fifth: use in 33, and which River, as I was then told and after faw, comes from Tartaria, out of the Lake Fanofir, in other places nine leagues from the Citie Lançame, where Tamerlane King of the Tartars resided. This Lake they bkewice to is eight and twentie leagues long, and twelue broad, very deepe, and yeelds fine Rivers; first, difagree in their calculathis of Batampina, tunning thorow the midfl of China three hundred and fixtie leagues, and entition. The reaction tring the Bay of Nanquin in 36. degrees. The second Lechune which goeth alongst the Hills of son I suppose Pancruum, & dividing the Land of Cauchim, and Catchenan, which within the Country confines is, the P. 110 Pancrum, & did ding the Land of assessments of assessment which we contract country comings mear obler-with the Kingdome of Champas in 16. degrees. The third is Tangaday, that is, The mother of near obler-tion of the Champas in 16. degrees. The third is the Champas of Marchael (2) Land when the Marchael we ded the leight With the Anguone of Vacatass (a Land whence China was by left unent, paffing Welt North-west by the Kingdome of Vacatass (a Land whence China was by left unent, peopled) and falls into the Sea in the Kingdome of Sorman, or Siam, by the Barre of Cuy an hunnor printings dred and thirtie leagues beneath Patane, The fourth River is Batobaso, which palling by the hid skill there-Prounce of Sanfim (which was drowned An. 1556.) goeth into the Sea by the Barre of Cof-by this he conmm in the Kingdome of Pegis. Legicary is the fifth, runner the aftward to the Archipelagus of the Archipelagus of the Chinas to the Chinas (2) of the Chinas (2) of Xinxinpas, which confineth the Chafenines, entring into a Sea innain-followed the Chinas (2) of the Chinas (2) of Xinxinpas, which confineth the Chafenines, entring into a Sea innain-followed the Chinas (2) of the Chinas (2) o

gable, as being in 70. degrees of latitude. The Chinois affirme, that in Nangain are eight hundred Maps which thouland housholds, foure and twentie thousand houses of Mandarines, fixtie two great market at histerurne thou and housholds, four and twente thouland houses of Mandarines, there two great marker places one hundred and thirtie fhambles, each hunging eightic blockes; eight thouland firetes, he law, which have placed to the hundred and thirtie flam the places one hundred and thirtie flam the places of latent no house his deal all language transfer. The places of the house places of the places of the hundred and thirtie flam the places of the hundred and thirtie flam the hundred and the hundred a of which the fixe hundred principall have grates of Latten on both fides all alongst; two thou- Nonquess in fand three hundred Pagedes or Temples, one thousand of which are Monasteries of Religious perfons, richly built, with Towres of fixtie or feuentic Bells of Metall and Iron, which make a falfly, as I connoile horrible to heare; thirtie Prisons great and strong, each having two or three thouland Pri- cine to keepe foners, and an Hoipitall. The houses of the Mandarines are of earth, encompassed with Walls others from the nucleon. and Dirches, with faire Bridges, and rich Arches. The principall Magistrates have high Towers legged the 30 with gilled pinacles , where are their Armories and Treatures. The Street-arches with their pains, a thing

night that Gates, their new and full Moone feaths, incredible fithings, their ten thousand Silke-vivall in the loomes, one hundred and thirtie Gates in the strong wall, with as many Bridges over the ditch old Maps of (a Porter, and two Halbardiers in each to fee what goeth in or out) (wellae Fortreffes with Bul-Wiffjartsof warkes and Towers, but without Artillerie, the value to the King three thousand Cruzados a the World: day, or two thouland Tacis, I can but touch. The rarities of China, compared with the things and fometimes

cene at home, iceme countries of increases.

In the first two dayes wer law in our journey by the River no notable Citic or Towne, but failed spaces.

Software and Labourer and mithing the labourer and mithing the labourer and mithing the labourer and labourer and mithing the labourer and l of Villages a great quantitie which feemed to be of Fisher-men and Labourers, and within times,

Land as farre as we saw, appeared woods of Pines and other trees, Orange groues, fields of Nanaundestein 40 Wheat, Rice, Millet, Panike, Barley, Rie, Pulse, Flaxe, Cotton, and Gardens with houses for bed: See of it Where, Rice, Millet, Panike, Darrey, Mis, Func, Funce, Octoon, and Gracins with notices for the Grander. Cattell appeared along it the Reuers as much as in Prese lobus Country. On the in Panisis of Country, On the in Panisis, Cattell appeared along it the Reuers as much as in Prese lobus Country. On the in Panisis. the Granger, Lauren appears assign tops of Hills were seen Temples with gilded \* Steeples shining farrer off. On the fourth day type ter from the fourth day by the fourth day by the from the fourth day by the fourth day we came to a good Citie called Poeaffer, twice as big as Cantan, well walled with Townes and Nanquin to Pe-Bulwarkes, in manner like ours, with a Hauen before the wall of two Falcon flors long, faithed q-ia.

with Iron grates in two rewes, with Gates for the entrance and valualing of flips, which come This plane is the state of the contract of thither from all parts. In the end of the Towne on a Mount flood a Caffle with three Bulwarks and fine Towers, in one of which the Chinoir told vs, that the Father of this king held which the Chinoir Prifoner nine yeeres a King of Tartaria, poisoned at last by his owne vasfals, vnwilling to give any hour loofo much to redeeme him as was demanded. In this Citie, Chifu gaue leaue to three of ws nine, to him like gold.

50 goe (with foure Halbardiers to guard vs) and begge Almes, which in fixe or feuen freets gat the Possifire goe (with four charges to guest \*) and money, belides Flefh, Rice, Fruits, and Meale; halfe Pritoner. of which our Guard had according to the custome. They carried vs to a Temple where was great concurse of people that day, being solemne to that Sect of Taubinarel (one of their 32. Gentile Sects.) That House they said had beene the Kings, and that this Kings Grand-tather was borne there, his Mother dying in child-birth, in honour of whose death and buriall in the same chamber he had dedicated this Temple in that Palace. All the Building with the Offices, Gar. Aponfile Pa. dens, and all the appurrenances are founded in the aire on three hundred and fixtic Pillars (each dens, and an encappurerances are commend in the annex of the three hundred and fixthe and of one flone) feuen and twentie frames high, bearing the names of the three hundred and fixthe and of one flone) feuen and twentie frames high, bearing the names of the three hundred and fixthe and the seedays. dayes of the yeere; and in each of them is a feelf with much almes, bloody Sacrifices, and of theyeree.

6c dances to the Idoll of that day and Pillar, which flands therein richly enfirined, with a Silver Lampe before him. Beneath goe eight fireers or wayes encloted on both fides with Latten Queens filter grates, with doores for the people which come to those feafls.

Ouer the house where the Queene was buried was a round Chappell all lined with Silver, fee, the notes and ming richer in the worke then matter. In the midft was a filter Throne of fifteene fteps, round image others a

to t'e top encompassed with fixe rewes of filuer grates with the tops gilded. On the highest of them was a great Globe, and thereon a Lion of filter, bearing vp a chift of Gold three ipans fquare, in which they faid were her bones, by the blind people worshipped as great Relikes. There hung on foure filuer tyres which croffed the Houle, fortie three filuer Lampes (fo many yeares she lived) and seven of Gold in memory of her seven Sonnes. Without at the entry were two hundred fiftie three filuer Lampes great and rich, which the Chaens and great mene Wines presented in her honour. Without the doores were in fixe rewes round about Statues of Giants fifteene spans high, well proportioned of Brasse, with Halberds and Maces in their hands, which the Chinois faid were twelve hundred. Amongst them were foure and twentie Serpents of Braffe very great, each having a woman fitting thereon with a Sword in her hand of to the same metall, and a filuer Crowne on the head : so many had facrificed themselves at her death te doe her fernice in the next World. Another compasse environed that of the Giants, all oftrium. mant Arches gilded, with a great quantitie of filuer Bels hanging on filuer chaines, which by the motion of the Aire continually yeelded a strange found. Without those Arches in the same proportion stand two rankes of Latten grates encircling the whole worke, set in spaces with Pillars of the fame, and thereon Lions fet on balls, which are the Armet of the Kings of China.

The Ichits fay

At the foure corners were placed foure Monsters of Braste, one (which the Chinese call the Denouring Serpents of the deepe Cause of the House of Joseph in the figure of a dreadfull Serpent, with feuen Serpents comming out of his breft, fpotted with greene and blacke with many 20 prickles more then a fpan long, quite thorow the bodie like Hedge-hogges, each having in his mouth a woman ouerthwart, with disheuelled haires, looking deadly. The old or great Serpent holds in his mouth a Liz-rd halfe out, of aboue thirty spans in length, as bigge as a Pipe, with nofe and lips full of bloud, and in his hands he holds a great Elephant fo forcibly, that his entrailes seeme to come out of his mouth; all to naturally represented, that it is most dreadful to behold. The folds of his tayle were about twentie fathome long, enfolding therein another Monfter, the fecond of the foure, called Tarcamparoo, which they fay was the Some of that Serpent, which flands with both his hands in his mouth, which is as bigge as a gate, the teeth fet in or. der, and the blacke tongue hanging out aboue two fathomes. Of the two other, one was the Figure of a woman, named Nadelgau, Euenteene fathomes long, and fixe about, from whose waste 30 iffued a beake or face aboue two tathomes, which cast smoake out of the nosthrils, and slames of fire out of the mouth, which they make therein continually, faying, fiee is the Queene of the Fierie Spheare, and shall burne the Earth a the end of the World. The fourth is like a man, fet cowring with cheekes puffed like thips fayles, fo monftrous that a man could not endure the fight. The Chinois call him Vzanguenaboo, and fay, that it is hee which makes Tempests in the Sea, and throwes downe Housesby Land, to which the people give much Almes not to hurt

Xinfigau.

The second day we went from Pocasser, and came to another Citie called Xinligan, very great, well built, walled with Tyles, ditched about; with two Castles at the end, having their Towres, Bul-warkes, and Draw-bridges : in the midft of each Cattle was a Towre of fine 40 Lofts with many workes painted, in which the Chinois faid, were fifteene thousand Picos of filter, of the Rents gathered in that Archipelago, which this Kings Grand-father there lavd vp in memory of his Sonne Lenguinan, which tignifieth the toy of all, holden for a Saint, because he dyed a Religious man, and lyes there buried in the Temple of Quiay Varatel, the God of all the Fishes in the Sea, of whom they have large Legends. In that Citie and another five leagues from it is made the great off part of the Silke of that Kingdome, the waters there giving quicker colours (they fay) then in other parts. The Weauers Loomes of these Silkes, which they Huge pastures, affirme thirreene thousand, pay yearely to the King three hundred thousand Taeis. Going further up the River, wee came the next day Evening to a great Champaigne, continuing ten or twelue leagues, in which were many Kine, Horits, and Mares, pastured for the shambles 10 as well as other fielh, and kept by many men on Horle-backe. These Champaignes past, wee came to a Towne, called Junquilen, walled with Tyles, but without Towresor Bul-warkes. Here wee faw a stone Monument with an Inscription , Heere beth Transocem Mudeliar, Vn-Sectional librar cle to the King of Malaca, who dyed before hee was revenged of Captayne Alboquerque, the Lion of Sea Robberies. We enquiring hereof, an old Chinese faid, that about fortie yeares agoe, the man there interred had come Embassadour from a King of Malaca, to sue to the Sonne of the Summe, for succour against a Nation of a Land without name, which had comne from the end of the World, and taken Malaca, with other incredible particularities printed in a Booke hash, the Pally, which hee made thereof. Hauing fpent three yeares in this Suite, and brought it to some maakind of Palife turrite, hee fickned of the Aire one night at Supper, dyed in nine dayes, and left this 60

P4E.31.

gotten by ftroke or bla.

Wee proceeded on our way the River growing leffe, but the Countrey more peopled, fearly a stones cast free of some House, eyther of a Pagede, or Labourer. And two leagues higher on a Hill compassed with Iron grates were two Brasse Statues standing on their feete, one of a

man, the other of a woman, both feuentie foure spans long with their hands in their mouthes, Two monand puffed cheekes; fastned to Cast-Iron Pillars, seven fastnomes high. The Male was named firms status Quiay Xingatalor, the woman Apancapatur. The Chinois told vs that the man was Fire-blower and their dein Hell to torment fuch as in this life gaue them no Almes : the woman was the Hell-Porter, upposs, which suffered the Almef-givers to five by a River of cold water, called Ochilenday, and hid them their from the Deuils hurting them. One of our company laughed at this Tale, whereat a Bonzo was so offended, that hee set Chris in rage with vs, who bound vs hand and foot, and gaue vs one hundred stripes a-piece. Twelue Priests were incensing these Monfters when wee were there with Silver-cenfours full of fweet Odours, Saying, as wee ferne 10 thee, helpe thou vs: another company of Priests answering: So I promise thee as a good Lord. And thus went they on Procession about the Hill an houres space sounding certayne Bels cau-

ting a dreadfull novie.

Hence wee passed up the River eleven dayes, all peopled with Cities, Townes, Villages, Frequenic of Castles, in many places, scarsly a Calieuer shot distant one from another: and all the Land in China people, compalle of our fight had flore of great Houses, and Temples with gilded Steeples, which amazed vs with the fight. Thus wee came to the Citie Sampitay, where wee flayed fine dayes Sampitas. by reason of the ficknesse of Chifus Wife. There by his leane wee went thorow the streets, a begging, the people wondering at vs, and giving vs largely. One woman amongst others which bufily questioned with vs, shewed vs a Crosse branded on her left arme, asking if we knew 20 that figne, and wee deuoutly answering, yes, shee lifted up her hands to Heauen, and favd, Our Father which art in Heauen, hallowed be thy Name, in Portugues, and could speake no more, See Maff. 6. but proceeded in China speech, and procured leave to lodge vs at her House those fine dayes; tel- these Perugali ling vs the was named Inez de Leiria, and was the Daughter of Thomas Perez, which came Rebels had Embaffadour to China, and by reation of a Rebellious Portugall Captayne, hee was taken as a poffcifed Ta-they dyed in milery, only Vafco Caluo, being now left alme. Her Father, the faid, was banished alland, whence to this Towne, and there marryed with her Mother having somewhat to mayntaine her, and sollowed that by him made a Christian. They hued together many yeares like good Catholikes, and conuer- out rage to Peued many to the Faith of Christ, in that Citie three hundred aftembled on Sundayes to her house reg after foure 3c. to their holies, She shewed vs an Oratorie in which was a Crosse of wood gilded, with a Canuellition Canuellition Candlefficke and filter Lampe. Wee asked her what they did, when they came there, and shee faid, torto the nothing but kneele before that Croffe, with their hands and eyes lifted to Heaven, and fay, Lord Court, Lopez Ieliu Chrift, as it is true that thou are the true Sonne of God, conceined by the Holy Ghost in the wombe Soarez which lesia Christ, as it is true that those art the true Sonne of Uoa, conceined by the true y Under mine womove of the Haly Virgin Mary, for the falsation of Simors, so pardon ear first, that wee may obstype so see thy seem to early the true of the Haly Virgin Mary, for the falsation of Simors, so particularly the true was the true of the Haly Virgin Mary, for the falsation of the Haly Virgin Mary, for the H face in the glory of thy Kingdome, where them fittest at the right hand of the Highest. Our Eather which Come, with

ting friendly with each other. Her Father (the faid) had left other Prayers written, which the ans and Chri-Chinois had ftolne away, so that now they could say no more. Whereupon we promised to leave 40 her other Prayers, and taught the Christians seuen times there, and Christopher Borrall writin Chma Letters the Lords Prayer, Ane Mary, Creed, Salue Regina, Tenne Commandements, and other good Prayers. Shee had given a Present to Chifus Wife to deale with her Husband to gine vs this leave, and to vie vs kindly, and the Christians there gave vs fiftie Tacis of Silver, and Inez de Leiria other fiftie closely, de ring vs to remember her in our Prayers.

We continued our journey up the Batampura, to a place called Legainnan, of tenne crtwelue Legainnan, thousand Houses. Necre to the wall stood a long house with thirtie Furnaces for the puritying Mynes of Taxs of filter which was taken out of a Hill fine keagus diffant, called Tuxengnim; in which Mine: "systim, the Chinais told ve, there continually laboured one thousand men, and that it world no the Kine." [2000, Pleoss

of meer was caken on of a time meeting and that it yeeled to the King is a Million of yearely fine thousand . Pales of filter. We departed thence in the Eneming, and the n-xt Ene- 13ets. 10 ning anchored betwixt two small Cities standing over against one another, one named Pacam, the Pacam and Neother Nacass, both well walled and builded. These two Cities occasion mee to recite what I rass. haue heard often heard read in the thirteenth Chapter of the first Chronicle of the four-score which they have of the Kings of China; that fixe hundred thirtie nine yeares after the Floud, there was a Land, called Gnantipocau, in which lived a pettie Prince, called Turban, which had by his Concubine Narcas, three Sonnes, refuting to marry, and entring into Religion of the idoll China Chroni-Gizom (fill much effeemed in Iapon, China, Canchina, Cambona, Siam, of which I have eles and Le feene many Temples) appointing his clieft Sonne by the faul Nancaa his heire. His Mother then living was against this, and marryed herfelie with Solan a Priest, and flue Torban, where-

vpon Nancas and her children fled downe the River feveritie leagues, and fortified a place which 60 the called Pilannera, that is, the refuge of the poore. Five yeares after Silan prepared a Fleet of thirtie Barkes to destroy her and all her faction, thinking that her Sons comming of age might dispossesses having Intelligence, having of men, women, and children, not about one dispositified him. But the harming intelligence, naturing or men, women, and contact the contact harming intelligence in though and three hundred perfons, and but three or four: Boats not fufficient to contact having beginning of thousand and criter number personal on three or our thought the few, by common confent and aduice appointed a three dayes Fall thereinto begge functor to had your

art in Heauen, hallowed be thy Name. In the Name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Hoty 1515. Ghest, Amen. And so kitting the Crosse, hey embraced one another and went home; alway li- China Christi-

of God, in all which time none might eate aboue once, in paine of death. This Fast ended they cast Lots and the Lot fellon a Boy of seven yeares old, which was also named Silan, whom after all Ceremonies ended) they bid lift up his hands to Heauen, and tell them some remedie to these dangers. Who prophefied Victory to her ouer the Tyrant Silan, commanding her to embarke hers in her Enemies Barkes, and at the found of the waters to runne along the Land, till God shewed where shee should found a habitation of great name, which through all times should fend out his mercy with voyces and bloud of strange Nations: after which words the Boy fell

Legend of Pe-

The thirty Barkes came (faith the Storie) fine dayes after without any people therein : for at a place called Catebasy, a blacke Cloud arose ouer them, which rayned on them scalding drops, to which destroyed them all. Nancas with teares and thankes embarked her three Sonnes and the rest, and went downe the River conducted by the found fortie seven dayes, and then came to the place where Pequim now stands. Fine dayes after they came aland, was the first stone lave thereof by Pequim, eldeit Sonne of Nancan, and the Citie called by his owne name. And affluer shield hangeth on the Arch of the chiefe gate Pomosicotay, and hath this inscribed, in which are fortie Warders, and in the rest ordinarily but foure. The day also of the foundation (beeing the third of August) is kept with great Solemnitie, and thereon the King vieth to shew himselfe to the people. The later Kings also have made a Law that no Strangers, except Embassadours and Slaves should enter the Kingdome. The two other Brethren founded these two Cities, called by their owne names Pucan and Nacan, and their Mother founded Nanquin, which tooke the 20 name of hers.

The wall of

mos de largo.

Vion todas

Fine Rivers

the wall. Wall-fores.

Thus in Spaine, Chaens of the

IN the fift Booke of the chiefe places of that Empire, is written, that King Crifnogol (which reigned as we may accord our computation with theirs) about the yeare of our Lord 528 builded the wall, the people contributing ten thousand Pikes of filter (which are fifteene Millions of Cruzados) and two hundred and fiftie thouland men (thirtie thouland Officers and the rest Labourers) which was continued feuen and twentie yeares, and then finished, being, faith that Booke the length of feuentie Iaons (every Iaon is foure leagues and an halfe) which make three hundred and fifteene leagnes. The Priefts and Iles are faid to contribue as many, and the King and Officers another third, so that seuen hundred and sittle thousand men laboured therein. This 30 wall I have feeneand measured, being generally fixe fathomes high, and fortie spannes thicke: and foure fathomes runneth a kind of Rampire, twice as thicke as the wall strengthened with a Bituminous substance on the out-fide like Potters worke; and in stead of Bulwarkes it hath houfes of two lofts with beames of blacke wood, called Cambefy, that is, Iron-wood, feeming ftronger then if they were of stone-worke. This wall or Chanfacan (so they call it, that is, frong refifrance) runneth with an equal course till it encounters with Hils, which are all Chanfred and made so that it is stronger then the wall it selfe, the wall being only in the spaces twixt Hill and Hill, the Hils themselves making up the rest.

In all that way are but fine entrances, caused by the Tartarian Rivers, which with impetuous force cut the Countrey aboue fine hundred leagues entring the Sea of China, and Canchin-china: 40 And one of them more forcible then the others enters the Kingdome of Sornan (commonly called Siams) by the Barre of Cuy. At every of those five entrances the King of China hath one Fort and the Tartar another: in every of the China Forts there are feven thousand men fix thousand fand foot, and one thousand Horse, in continual pay; most of them Strangers, Mogors, Champaas, Pancrus, Coracones, and Gizares of Persia, the Chinois being but meane Souldiers. In all the space of this wall are three hundred and twentie Regiments, each of fine hundred men (in all one hundred & fixty thousand) besides Ministers, Commanders, and their retinue which the Chinois faid, made in all two hundred thousand men, allowed by the King only sustenance, all or most of them being condemned to that service, and therefore receiving no pay. And in Pequim is a great and admirable Prilon-house, in which are Prisoners continually for the Fabricke 52 of this wall of three hundred thousand men and vpwards, most of them from eighteene to to the Gallies, fine and fortie yeares old: whereof some are men of good qualitie, which for their ill behaviours or Garnions of Oran, Penan, ecc and enormities are hither fentenced, expecting to be removed hence to the fervice of the wall: whence they may have returne according to the Statutes thereof made, and appropuled by the Chaens, which therin difpense the Regall power with meere and mixt Empire. There are twelse of them which may pay to the King a Million of Gold for Rent,

d. IIII.

## ð. IIII.

Mindo Salt-pits: Mines of Coretumbaga, Copper-workes; Idolatry and Chri-Stianitie; China Trades, and River Faires; their comming to Pequin, tryall and fentence. Rarities of

O returne to our Voyage, from Panan and Nacan, wee passed up the River to Mon. Mindel, do, a greater Citie then either of the former, which on the Land fide had a great Lake of Salt-water, with great flore of Salt-pies therein, which the Chinou fiid, didebbe and flow like the Sea, from which it is about two hundred leagues distant; and that this Citie Rents to the King yearely one hundred thouland Taeis, of the thirds of the Salt, and as much more of the Silkes, Sugars, Porcelane, Camfire, Vermillion, Quick-filter, 300000. Cruwhich are there in great quantitie. Two leagues about this Citie were twelue long Houses, in zados. which many men were founding and purifying Copper, making fuch a noyfe with the Hammers that this place (if any on Earth) may refemble Hell. In each House were fortie Furnaces, twentie on a lide, with forcie great Anuiles, on each whereof eight men were hammering round. with fuch quicknes as fearce permitted the eyes observance; so that in eachhouse there were three 3840- Hamhundred and twentie continual Labourers, besides Workmen of other kinds. Wee asked how mer men. much Copper they might make yearely, and they answered, betwixt one hundred and ten, and APicois 1000. one hundred and twentie thousand Pikes, of which the King had two parts, because the Mynes Taeis. were his; the Hill where the Mine was, is called Coretumbage, that is, River of Copper, which in two hundred yeares (to long was fince the Discouery) was not emptied.

About thefe Houses one league neere the River, wee law on a Hill encompassed with three rewes of Iron Grates, thirtie Houles in fine rankes , very long , with great Towres of Bels of Metall, and Cast-Iron, with gilded Pillars and carried workes, and artificiall Frontifpieces of stone. Here we went on Land by Chifin leave, because hee had so vowed to that Pagede, which is called Bigaspotim, that is, the God of one hundred and ten thousand Gods, Corcheo, Fun. Bigaspotim. gane, ginate ginaca, ftrong & great (lay they) about all the rest. For they hold every thing hath a particular God which made it and preferues it in its nature, & that this Bigappotime brought forth all of them at his arme-pits, and that of him they all hold their being, as of a father by filiall vnion, which they call Byaporentefay. In Peon where I have beene formetimes, there is a Pagode like this (there called Ginocoginana, the God of all greatnesse) whose Temple was built by chinaruledo. the Chinois when they ruled in India, Which was after their Computation accorded with ours uer India. from Anno Dom. 1013. till 1072. conquered by Oxinagan, whose Successor seeing how much bloud was payd for fo little good, voluntarily relinquithed it. In those thirtie Houses stood a great quantitie of Idols of gilded wood, and as many more of Tinne, Copper, Latten, Iron. Porcelane, fo many that I dare not mention the number. Wee had not gone thence fixe or feuen leagues, when we faw a great Citie nuined with the houses and wals on the ground, seening a league in citcuit. The (boose said, that it had beene called Cobilouxas, that is, Flowre of the field, Cobilouxas. fometimes prof perous; and that one hundred fortie two yeares fince, as is written in a Booke, na-

Witch, and because they could not hold dispute with him, prouoking the people against him, faying, that if they did not kill him, God would punish them with fire from Heauen. The in- A Christian raged multitude killed one lobn a Weauer, where he fojourned, and his two Sonnes in Law, and marryred. his Sonne; which fought to defend him, and when they had gone about to burne him, in vaine, the Bonzos floned him, preaching Christ ynto them, which had conthe fire being extinct, the Bonzos Roned him, preaching Christ vnto them, which had come 50 from Heauen todye for Sinners, and to give life to all which professed his Law with Faith and Works, They fay, that the bodie was cast into the River, which for the space of five dayes would not runne lower, and thereby many were moued to professe that Religion : and as wee doubled a point of Land, we faw a Croffe of itone on a little Hill enuironed with Trees. Chifu Wife fal- A Creffe. ling into travell (of which she dyed) we stayed there nine dayes, and did our Deuotions thereto, proftrate on the Earth. The people of the Village (called Xrfangu) maruelling, came running to the place and falling on their knees, kiffed the Croffe often, faying, Christo lefu, lefu Christo, Maria Micau, late impone Mondel, that is , was a Virgin in his Conception, Birth, and after it. They asked if they were Christians, and we affirming it, had vs to their Houses and vsed vs kindly, being all of that Weauers Posteritie and Christians. They also confirmed that which

me Toxefalem, there came in company of Merchants from the Port of Tanacarim, a man which

wrought Miracles, in a moneths space raising vp fine dead persons, the Bonzos saying, he was a

60 the Chinois had told vs, and shewed vs the Booke printed of his Miracles, which they faid was named Matthew Escandel, an Hungarian by Nation, an Heremite of Mount Smay, borne at Bu. Mat. Escandel da. That Booke tels that ninedayes after his death, the Citie Cobilonza shooke so, that the people ranne out into the fields, and abode in Tents; to whom the Bonzos came and bid them feare Earthquake. nothing, for they would bekeech Quiay Tignarens, The God of the night, to command the Earth Plate.

to doe fo no more, otherwise they would give him no Almes. Thus went the Prieffs alone in Procession to that Idols House, and making their night-Sacrifices and Perfu nes, the Earth quaked about eleuen of the clocke at night, and ouer hrew the whole Citie (one only of about tours thousand Bonzos remayning aline) into a Lake more then one hundred fathomes deepe, called after this Finnganorfee, that is, punified from Heaven.

Iunquil nau.

Sem colares. nem algemas.

Hence we came to a great Citie, called Innquilinau, very rich, with many Junkes and Barkes. where we ft. ved fine dayes, Chifu there celebrating his Wines Exequies, and gining vs food and rayment for her foule, freeing vs from the Oare, and giving vs leave to goe on Lan' when wee would, without our . Collers, which was very great ease to vs. Thence we went up the River. fill feeing on both fides many and faire Cities and Townes, and other very great populations, to firongly walled, and Fortreiles along it the water with Towres and rich Houles of their Sects, with innumerable cattell in the fields, and shipping in the River, in some places sue hundred fix How such infis hundred, yea, one shouland sayle, in which were fold all things could be named. Many Chinair

affirmed, that there were as many lived in that Empire on the water, as in Cities and Townes:

fo many in both, that were it not for the good government of their Trades, they would eate one

an other. As in Duckes, one trades in buying and hatching the Egges, and felling the young; another in breeding them for fale when they are great, others in the Feathers, others in the heads, and in wares, others in the Egges, &c. none interloping the others Trade under paine of thirtie stripes. In Hogs, one trades in selling them together aliue, others kill them, and sell them by weight, others in Bacon, others in Pigges, others in Soufe. So in fifth, hee which fels freih 20 may not fell falt, some fell them alive, &c. and so in Fruits and other things. And none may change his Trade without license. They have also along this River of Batampina, in which wee from and flore went from Nanquin to Pequin, (the distance of one hundred and eightie leagues) such a number of Ingenios for Sugar, and Preffes for Wines, and Oyles made of divers forts of Pulfe and Fruits, that there are streets of them on both sides of the River, of two or three leagues in length. In other parts are many huge store-houses of infinite prouisions of all forts of stelln in which are salted and imoked Beefe, tame and wilde Hogs, Ducks, Geefe, Cranes, Bustards, Emes, Deere, Bustals, Ants, Horse, Tygres, Dogs, and all flesh which the Earth brings forth, which amuzed and amezed vs exceedingly, it feeming impossible that there should bee people in the World to eate the fame. Wee faw also great store of Barkes senced at Poupe and Prow, with Reedes of Canes full to of Ducks to fell, in divers lofts over one another, which goe out at foure frokes of a Drumme, fixe or feuen thousand together to feed, where they fet them, at the found of the Drumme returning againe, with like exceeding crie. In the like fort they let them out to lay on the graffe. They that hatch them have long houses with twentie Furnaces full of dung, with some hundreds of Egges concred therein, and hatched by that heate, the mouth stopped till they thinke fit time, then putting in a Capon halfe plucked and wounded on the breft, they that it agains. and after two dayes, the Capon hath drawne them all forth, and they put them into holes prouided for them. We saw along the River in some places store of Swine wild and tame kept by men on Hork-

Paffures of

backe, in other places tame Deere kept by Footmen, all maymed in the right foreleg, that they 40 should not runne away, which they doe when they are young. Wee faw Pennes full of little Dogs for meat, Dogges to fell, Barkes full of Pigges, others of Lizards, Frogs, Snakes, Snailes, all being meate with them. In these (being of small price) they may fell many kinds. Yea, the dung of men is there fold, and not the worfe Merchandize, that stinke yeelding sweet wealth to some, who goe tabouring wp and downe the streets to signific what they would buy. Two or three hundred favle are seene sometimes fraighted with this lading in some Port of the Sea; whence the satned foyle yeelds three Harueits in a yeare.

Wee came to a Faire of China where on the water 2000. Barkes, besides small Boats which Moneable Ci. goe vp and downe and small Barkes were assembled in one place, and made a Citie with threets in the water aboue a league long, and a third part of a league broad. Thele Faires are principally 10 on the Holy day of some Pagede, whose Temple is by the waters side. In this Water-citie, by the order of the Aitao of Bitampina (who is chiefe President of the thirtie two Admirals of the thirtie two Kingdomes of this Monarchie) are fixtie Captaynes appointed; thirtie for the gouernment and ordering of the same in matters of Justice, and other thirtie to guard the Merchants in comming fafely secured from Theeues. Ouer all these is a Chaem, which hath Mere and mixt Rule in Caufes Civill and Criminall without Appeale. These Faires last from the new Moon to the ful, in which it is a goodly thing to fee two thousand streets or ranks strait, enclosed with Barkes, most of them flourishing with Streamers and Banners, and railes painted, whereon are fold all things that can be defired, in others Mechanike Trades, & in the midit Boats going up and downe with people to trade without any confusion or tumult. As soone as it is night, the 60 fireets are enclosed with Cables. In every fireet is ten Lanthornes lighted on the Masts (which yeelds a fairer lustre then the former fight by day) to see who goeth by and what is his businesse. In each of these streets is a Watch-bell, and when that of the Chaems sounds, all the rest answer with as strange an Object to the Eare as the former to the Eye. In every of these Vowes are

Beautics and glories of this Oratories built on Barkes with gilded Tents, where the Idoll and Priests receive the Deuoti-

ons and Offerings of the people. Amongst other remarkable things we saw one rew, or street of about one hundred Barkes laden with Idols of gilded wood of divers fort, which are fold to be offered in the Pagedes; and belides, feet, legs, armes, and heads, which ficke folkes offered for Denotion. Other Barkes there are with Tents of Silke, in which Comedies and pattimes are represented. In others are fold Letters of Exchange, the Prietts giving them Bils to receive in Heaven what their folly lay downe there, with great increase (Our Scrimeners would scarly grow rich bere with that Trade) others are laden with skele of dead men, they dreaming that alithe Almes of those men, whole skuls these 10 have beene, shall belong to their foules, and that the Porter of Heaven feeing them come with thus many attending, will open to him as an honourable perion Others have Cages of Birds, and call to men to fet free those Captines, which are the creatures of God, with their Almes which they which doe, let loofe the Bird and bid him tell God what he hath done in his Service : others do the like with living fiber affering their freedome to the charitable Redeemers which themselves will not give them; which like the fale of Indulgences) (aying, they are Innocents which never finned, which freed by Almes are let goe in the River with commendations of this their Redeemess Service to the Creator. Other Barbes carry Friders and Muficians to offer their Service : Others (the Priefts) fell Harnes of factificad Beafts, with promite of I know not what Feafts

in Heauen : others had Tents of forrow, Tombes and all Funerall appartenances with Women-mour-20 ners, to be let out for Burials: others laden with Books of all forts of Historie, and there also have Scripeners and Proctors; others have fuch as offer their fartice to fight in defence of their honour; others have Mid-wines, others Nurses; others carry grame wen and women to comfors those that haue loft Husbands, Wines, Children, and the like disconsolate persons: others Boyes and Girles for fermice; others offer Counfellers in Cales of Law or Learning; others Phylicians : and to conclude, nothing is to bee fought on the Land which is not here to be found in this Water eine.

Once, the cause of the greatnesse of this Kingdome of China, is this case concourse of all parts by water and Rivers : some of which in narrow places have bridges of stone like ours, and fome made of one only stone laid over, sometimes of eightie, ninetic, or one hundred spanner, long, and fiftgene or twengie broad. All the High-wayes have large Causies made of good stone, Bridges, and

30 with Pillers and Arches fairely wrought inferibed with the Founders names and prayies in gol-admirable. den Letters. In many places they have Wels to refresh the Trauellers. And in more barren and leffe inhabited places are fingle women which give free entertainment to fuch as have no monie, Filihy charity. which abuse and abomination, they call a worke of Mercie, and is prouided by the deceased for good of their foules, with Rents and mayntenance. Others have also bequeathed in the like places, houses with Lights to see the way, and fires for Trauellers, water and Lodging. I have in one and twentie yeares unfortunate travels feene a great part of Affs, and the riches of Enrope, but if my testimonic be worthy credit, all together is not comparable to China alone: such are the endowments of nature in a whollome Ayre, Soyle, Rivers, and Seas , with their Policie, Iustice , Riches and State, that they obscure all the lustres of other paris. Yet such is their 40 bestiall and Deuillish Idolatry, and filthy Sadomitry publikly permitted, committed, taught

by their Priefts as a vertue, that I cannot but griege at their vagratitude.

Departing from this admirable Citie, we failed up the River, till on the ninth of October, on opinion Tuefday we came to the great Citie of Pequin, whither wee were fent by Appeale. Wee went Pequin. three and three as Prisoners, and were put in a Prison called Gofaria serca, where for an entrance they gaue each of vs thirtie stripes. Chifu which brought vs presented to the Aitao our Proceffe figned with twelve seales from Nanquin. The twelve Conchelis which are Criminall Indges, fent one of their company with two Notaries, and fixe or feuen Officers to the Prifon where wee were, and examined vs, to whom we answered as before, and hee appointed vs to

make petition to the Tauigores, of the holy Office by our Proftors, and gaue was Taell for 50 almes, with a caueat to heware of the Prifoners that they robbed vs not; and then went into another great Roome, where he heard many Prisoners Caules, three houres together, and then caufed execution to be done on feuen and twentie men, sentenced two dayes before, which all dyed with the blowes to our great terrour.

And the next day wee were collared and manicled, being much afraid that our Calemplay: bu-vige, finefic would come to light. After feuen dayes the Tangeres of the Hospitall of that Prison came in, to whom we with pitifuli lamentation gaue the Certificate which wee brought from Nanquin. By their meanes the Conchalis petitioned the Chaem to renoke the Sentence of cutting off our rhumbs, feeing there was no teltimonic of theft by vs committed, but only our pouer- Their Caufe

tic, we more needed pitie then rogour. He heard the pleading for and against vs for disers daies, heard. 60 the Prometor or Fiscall laying hard against vs that wee were thesees; but being able to proue The Fiscall (see nothing, the Chaem fullpended him from his Office, and condemned him in twentre Taris to vs. from shythe which was brough: vs. And at last we were brought into a great Hall painted with divers re- tudge which presentations of execution of Iustice for severall crimes there written, very fearcfull to behold : had seveneed and at the end a fairer gilded roome croffed the fame, where was a Tribunall with feuer steps, them; juni-

The Authors

Tribunal and pompe.

pearle, having a Canopie of Damaske franged with Gold and greene Silke, and vnderneath a Chaire of Silver for the Chair, and a little Table before him, with three Boyes attending on their knees richly attired, with chaines of gold on their neckes; the middlemost to give him his Penne, the other two to receive Petitions and to present them on the Table; two other Boyes flanding at his fide in exceeding rich aray, the one representing lustice, the other on the right hand Merer, without which conjoyned, the Judge (they fay) becomes a Tyrant. (The refl of the flate and ceremonic 1 omit) week kneeling on our knees, with our hands lifted up, and our eyes caft downe to the ground, heard gladly our Sentence of absolution. Only we were for one yeere Small works, banished to the workes of Quanty, and eight moneths of that yeere ended to have free parout to goe home, or whither we would. After the Sentence pronounced, one of the Conching the vp, and fine times demanded aloud if any could take exception against the Sentence: and all being filent, the two Boyes reprefenting Inflice, and Mercy, touched each others Enfigues which they had in their hands, and fand aloud, let them be free according to the Sentence, and prefently two Chumbims tooke off our Collars and Manicles, and all our bonds. The foure moneths (the Tanigores told vs) were taken off the yeere, as the Kings almes in regard of our pourtie; for had wee beene rich, wee must have ferued the whole yeere. They gave vs foure Taeis of almes and went to the Captaine which was to goe for 2 manff to commend vs to his charitie, which

The Kings

vied vs accordingly.

Description of the Chinais call is Pequim. Aquelendos 2

1600, houles for Deputies.

24000. Barge.

14000, Pur-Currefan ftreet.

rococo.Lin-1300 . Mona-Reries.

other men.

260. Gates

DEquin may be called the Mother Citie of the Worlds Monarchie for the wealth, govern-Pment, greatnesse, inflice, prouisions. It stands in the height of 41. degrees to the North; it contayneth in circuit, as the Chinois (and as I after heard read in a little Booke written of the greatnesse thereof , called Aquesendoo, which I brought with mer into this Kingdome) thirtie Booke written leagues, ten in length, and five in bredth, all which space is environed with two Walls, and innumerable Towers and Bulwarkes. Without is a larger space, which they say, was anciently peopled, which now hath but Hamlets, and scattered Houses, and Garden-houses (of which fixteene hundred are of principall note, in which are the fixteene hundred Proctors for the fixteene hundred Cities and Townes of note, of the two and thirtie Kingdomes of this Monarchie, which refide there three yeeres for the faid Townes. Without this circuit or wall, there a are in the space of three leagues broad, and seuen long, foure and twentie thousand Sepulchres of Mandarmes, with their little gilded Chappels, encompassed with grates of Iron and Latten, with rich Arches at their entries. Neere to them are Gardens, Groues, Tankes, Fountaines; the walls lined within with fine Porcelane, adorned also with Lions and Pinacles of divers pain-Hofoirals 500, tings. There are in that space fine hundred Lodgings, called Houses of the Sonne of the Sunne, for entertainment of Souldiers maimed in the Kings warres (besides many others for the old and ficke) every of which receive their monethly allowance, and have in them as they faid two hundred men, in all one hundred thousand. Wee saw another street very long, where lived foure and twentie thousand Rowers for the Kings shipping : and another aboue a league long, where lived fourteene thousand Tauerners for provision for the Court; and another where were 40 infinite Curtefans freed from tribute (which those of the Citie pay) for service of the Court. many running from their husbands, and here protected by the Tutan of the Court, which is fupreme in cafes of the Kings house.

In that compasse also line the Landerers of the Citie, which were as they told vs, aboue one hundred thousand, there being many Tankes or Ponds compassed with stone and Rivers. There are therein, as that Booke fayth, thirteene hundred Noble houses of Religious men and women, which professe the source chiefe Sees of the two and thirtie which are in that Kingdome: some of which, they say, have aboue one thousand persons within them besides servitors. There are other houses flore with great walls in which are Gardens, and Groues with game for hunting; and are as it were the Halls of Companies where many refort to fee Playes, and the great men 50 make their feafts there with incredible costs. Some of these houses cost about a million, maintayned by Companies of rich Merchants, which are faid to gaine \* much thereby. And when any will make a feat, he goeth to the Xipatom of the house, who sheweth him a Booke wherein is contayned the order of feafts and feruices (which Booke I have feene and heard read) of all forts, and of what prices they are, whether Sacred to their Idols, or Secular, (of which our Authour bath a large Chapter, here omitted.)

Now for Peaum, it hath three hundred and fixtie Gates, each having a Casslet with two Towers, and a Draw-bridge, a Notarie, and foure Warders, to take notice of those which goe in and out, and an Idoll proper according to the dayes of the yeere, every of which is feltivall in one of them. The Chinois reported that there are therein three thousand eight hundred Temples or Pagodes, in which are continually facrificed birds and wilde beafts, which they fay, are more 62 acceptable then tame : those especially very faire which are of the Menigrepos, and Conquisis, and Talagrepos, the Priests of the foure chiefe Sects, of Xaca, Amida, Gizon, and Canom. The ftreets are long and large, the houses faire, of one or two lofts, encompassed with Iron and Lat-

ten grates, and at the streets end are triumphall arches, closed at night; in the chiefe are Watchbells. Euery ffreet hath a Captaine and foure Quarter-masters or Corporals, which every ten dayes acquaint the Lonchaeys or Chaems with occurrents. That Booke reports of one hundred and twentie water-passinges, fixe fathome deepe of water, and twelue wide, with many stone 120, Rincrets, bridges, which are faid to be eighteene hundred rich and faire, with arches, pillars, and chaines: 1800. Bridges. it tels also of one hundred and twentie Market-places, each of which haue their monethly 120, Market-Faires, (which make some foure faires a day thorow the yeere) of which we saw ten or twelue places. in our two moneths free abode, very full of horfe-men and foot-men with all commodities to be fold. Thereare one hundred and fixtie Shambles, each having one hundred blockes for Flesh of 160. Shambles to all forts, the price fet downe on euery blocke, and besides the shop-weights, are weights at euery Gate to examine the weight againe. And besides those generall shambles, euery street hath fine or fixe shops which sell all kinde of Flesh : houses also for Poultrie, and for Bacon,

ð. V.

Foure Buildings incredibly admirable in Pequin, and divers of their superstitions: their Hospitals and provisions for the Poore. The Kingsrevenues and Court : their Sects.

and hanged Beefe.

Vt nothing feemed to me more admirable, then the Prison, called Xmanguibalen, that is, Prisonof the the Prison of the exiled, whose compasse contayneth about two leagues square, as well exiled to the in length as breadth, walled high and ditched deepe, with draw-bridges hanged on Testarian wall, Iron cast pillars very great. It hath a high arch with two towers, whereon are fix great watch- almost eight Bels, at the found whereof the rest within answer, which are sayd to bee one hundred. In this leagues com-Prifon are continually three hundred thouland men from " fixteene to fiftie yeers of age, all con- "Or 18.10 45. demned to banishment, for the fabrike of the wall betwixt Tartaria and (bina; whom the King 30 findes maintainance onely, without other pay. After they have ferued fixe yeares they may goe Multirudes of

out freely, the King freely remitting their lentence in latisfaction of their labour. And if in Prisoners and the meane time, they kill an enemie, or haue beene thrice wounded in fallies, or performe any in the wall. worthy exploit, he is also freed. There are " two hundred & ten thousand employed in that fer- Before hee nice of which yearly in those that dye, are maimed or freed, one third part is set off, and supplyed fayd 200000. from that Prilon, which was builded by Gozeler the fuccessor of Crisnagel, the founder of the wall. brought thither from all parts of the Realme, and lent to the Chaem of the wall at his appointment. These prisoners are sent from other prisons, being loose, saue that they weare at their necke, a board of a spanne long and foure tingers broad, inscribed with their name, and sentence of exile, such a time. In this Prifon are two Faires yeerely, one of which wee faw, kept in Iuly Huge Faires.

40 and Ianuarie, franke and free without payment of tolls ; to which are thought to affemble three millions of persons : the Prisoners being meane-while shut vp. The Prison hath three Townes, as it were, with itreets and Officers, belides the Chaems lodgings, fit to entertaine a King. There are also all necessaries fold. Their are groues, and tankes of water for washing, Hospitals also and twelve Monasteries, with rich houses, wanting nothing that a rich and noble Citie should have : the Prisoners having their Wives and Children with them, the King allowing a competent house for them.

Another building about as great as that, was the Muxiparan, or treasure of the Dead, compass Another adfed with a strong wall and ditch, with many stone Towers and painted pinacles : the wall on mirable Fathe top in iteal of battlements, was compassed with Iron grates, close to which were set great brikes fore of Idols of different figures, of Men, Serpents, Hories, Oxen, Elephanes, Fishes, Snakes, 50 monstrous formes of Wormes, and creatures neuer seene; all of Brasse and cast Iron, and some of Tinne, and Copper; a fight more admirable to the view, then can be imagined. Palling by a bridge ouer the ditch, wee came to a great Hill, \* at the first entrie all enuironed with thicke grates of foafter. Latten, floored with stones white and blacke, so shining that a man might see himselfe therein, as in a glasse. In the midst of that Hill stood a marble pillar of fixe and thirtie spannes high, all feeming to bee but one stone; on the top whereof stood an Idoll of filuer with a womans face, with both hands griping a Serpent sported with blacke and white. And further, before the gate (which flood betwix: two high towers, borne vpon foure and twentie bigge flone pillars) flood two figures of men with Iron maces or battle Axes, in their hands, as guarding the paffage, one

hundred and fortie spannes high, with dreadfull countenances, called Xixipitan Xalican, that is, 60 the Blowers of the House of Smoake. At the entrie of the gate, flood twelve Halberdiers, and two Fire blowers Notaries at a table, which writ downe all that en red. After wee were entred, we came into a of Helllarge ftreet let on both fides with rich Arches, with infinite bells of Latten hanging thereon, by latten chaynes, by the mooning of the ayre yeelding a great found. The fireet was almost halfe

a league

a kague long, and within those arches were two rankes of houses, like as it were great Churches soo Hules with galled pinacles, and painted inventions, in number as the Chinosis affirmed three thousand, all its in the bottome to the roote full of Sculls of dead men. Behind those houses was a hill of Bones, reaching to the rootes of the houses, of the same length of halfe a league and very broad. Wee asked the Chinois, if any account were kept thereof, and they answered, that the Talagrapor which had the government of thole houses, had registers for them all, and that every house cting Charnel yeelded two chouland Taes rent, left thereto by the deceased for their foules discharge, the Ring having therof the fourth part, and the Talagrepos the reft for expences of the Fabrike; the Kings fourth part was ipent on the exiled Prifoners of Xmamquibalen. Arti per was ipent on the exhete printers of a management.

Wee walked thorow the fireer, and in the midd is was great bill round encompaffed, with two

A third building wee faw without the walls, sumptuous and rich, named Nacapiran, which 30

fignifieth, The Queene of Heauen; which they meane not of the Virgin Marie, but thinke that

kedly Religious men and women; in enery of which, were fayd to bee foure hundred persons. which come to fixe and fiftie thousand; besides seruitours, which have not yet vowed the pro-

fession, as those within, who goe in facred habite of red with greene stoles, their beards and heads 40

shauen, with beades about their neckes, for their prayers, but aske no almes, having sustenance of

their owne proper. In this Edifice of Nacapiran, the Tartarian King lodged, Anno 1544 when

hee layd fiege to this Citie, as shall after bee delinered; wherein for a dinellish and bloudie Sacri-

of Quiay Figrau, Gol of the Motes of the Sunne, and of Quiay Ninardel, God of the Battelli, and of Suits a great, Go to the course of the Marke, Dang Champon, Parisy Chalder, and Make of Compound, and of four others, Daisy Anthre, Dang Champon, Parisy Chalder, and Make Lacasas, whose since Seets, are the chiefe construction and thirtie. Within this building weeks

divers memorable things. One was a Wall against the other, almost a league compasse, borne vp

The Douils banner tryumrewes of Latten grates; in the midst whereof was a brazen Serpent, aboue thirtie fathoms in her phant in ftupendious Sercircles, well proportioned, notwithstanding that incredible massinesse. This monstrous Spake pents; then which the Chinois call the Serpent denonrer of the House of smoothe, had let in his head, a Ball or which neither Bullet of cast Iron of two and firtie spannes circumference. Aboue twentie paces further, was figure por the figure of a Man in braffe, of Giantly limbes and proportion, who fuftained withbothis ereature bach been more a hands another bullet, which (eying the Serpent with an angry vilage) made as though he threw hands another course, which course is a superior of the first supe vp to him as in admiration: and in foure wyres of Iron enuironing, were one hundred and fixtle his conquest, two filter Candlestickes, each having fixe, seven, and ten nosles. This Idoll gave name to the his conquest, two filter Canalestickes, each nating tax, seven, and temporars, a many particles of the Ges. 3, shough whole Fabrike, and was called Muchiparom, who was, fayth the Chinest, the Trafferent of 10 a fronger then the bones of the dead, and that Serpent comming to rob them, hee threw that bullet in his hands, he ropte inted and made her flee to the darke bottome of the house of smoake, where God had cast her for her Superit, 106.3. badnesse: And that three thousand yeeres before hee made the former throw, and that three high taken the thousand yeeres after, he shall make another, and so each three thousand yeeres another, till the ed Serjon and hith which shall kill her: after which all these bones shall returne to their bodyes, to remayne alway in the house of the Moone. This their Bonzos preach, and that those soules shall bee hapcaprur, and briketie Ser. pie, whole bones are thither brought, fo that no day passet in which two thousand bones are not brought thither. And they which are too farre diffant to haue their bones brought, fend which heere a Tooth or two, which with their almes will doe as much good as the whole : fo that I suppose feemes intenthere are teeth enough in those houses to lade many ships.

ded with Fthn.ke vanitie. The third as temporall Kings are married, to also is the Heauenly, and that the Children which hee get-Arange Æditeth of Nacapiran, are the Starres; and when the starres seeme to shoute or fall in the ayre, that fice of Nacaria then one of those Children dye, all his brethen weeping so many teares, that the Clouds are therewith filled, and water the earth, and make it fruitfull, as being the almes which God gives rau the Iuni of 140.Monaftefor the foule of the deceased. Wee saw heere one hundred and fortie Monasteries, of their wic-

Nunnes forced fice, he commanded 30000 persons to be slaine: fifteen thousand of which were Women, or girles to diners Gods rather, the Daughters of the chiefe men of the Kingdome, and Religious, professed of the Sects

with stone arches, and in stead of battlements, arounded with Latten grates, and at every fixe so fathoms, Iron workes on pillers of Braile failtened one to another, whereon by chaynes hung innumerable bells, making a continual litrange noyfe, with the motion of the ayre. At the great Gate of this second wall, in terrible shapes, flood the two Porters of Hell (as The Porters of they call them) Bacharons and Queifau, with Iron Maces in their hands, terrible to looke on. Paffing under an Iron chayne, fattened to the brefts of these Diuels, wee came into a faire street long and wide, compassed with painted arches, on the top whereof were two rankes of Islosall that length, in which were about five thousand Images, week new not of what matter, being all gilded, with Myters on their heads of divers inventions. At the end of this fireet, was a great square Hill set with blacke and white shining stones, the whole square compassed with source rewes of Giants of mettall, each of fifteene spannes, with Halberds in their hands, and gilded 60 beards. At the end of all stood Quiay Huiaon, God of the Raine, fee vp against a batton or berder, feuencie spannes long, and his head to high, that it reached to the buttlements of the tower, (which were about twelve fathoms) by his mouth, eyes, notirils, and brefts, caffing our water,

which the people below gathered as a great relique. This water came from the top of the tower

Liciter or God of Rayne.

\* Encoftado à bunbord in.

by fectet pipes. Wee passed vinder his legges, which stood as a great portall, and came to a large house like a Church, with three Iles on marble pillars, and on the walls on both fides, many Idols great and small of divers figures, all gilded, set on their bases in good order. At the end of this house on a round of fifteene steps, stood an Altar made in fashion of a Throne, and thereon Golden status the Image of Nacapiran, like a goodly woman, with her hayre loofe, and her hands lifted to hea- of Nacapiran uen, all of gold fo burnished, that it dazeled the eyes. About that tribunali in the foure first steps, flood twelue Kings of China crowned in filuer. And beneath, were three rewes of gilded Idols on their knees, with their hands lifted up, many filuer Candle-sticks hanging about them. Going thence, wee came to another street of arches like the former; and from thence by two oto there of rich buildings, to a great hill, in which were eightie two Bells of metiall very great, hanging by chaynes from Iron beames sustained with Iron Columnes. Thence wee went to aftrong Gate twixt foure towers, in which stood a Chifie with thirtie Halberdiers, and two Notaries, which tooke the names of all passengers, to whom wee gaue thirtie Reis

The fourth remarkable and famous building, was in the River of Batampina, in an Iland about The fourth a league in compasse, walled round with stone eight and thirtie spannes aboue water, within fil- glorious Ediled with earth, round encompafied with two rewes of Latten grates; the vttermost live spannes hee. high for people to leane on, the inner of nine, holding filter Lions with balls, the Armes of the China Kings. Within thefe grates in good order, were placed one hundred and thirteene Chap- 112. Chappels, 20 pels, in manner of round Bulwarkes; in each of them, was an alabafter Sepulcher feated on the and their conheads of two filter Serpents, with faces of women and three hornes on their heads. In every of tents them were thirteen Candlesticks of filter, with seuen lights in each burning. In the midst of a spa- sickes. cious place compassed with three rewes of grates, with two rankes of Idols, stood a high Tower with fine fleeples of divers paintings, and on their tops, Lions of filter; in which tower the Chinese favd, were the bones of the one hundred and thirteene Kings, worshipped by them for great reliques. These bones say they, every New Moone, feast one with another, whereupon the yulgar at those times, offer to them infinite store of Fowles of all fores, Rice, Kine, Hogges, Sugar, Honey, and other prouision ; which the Priests receive, and deceive them in recompence, with as it were lubilees, of plenarie Indulgences, and remission of sinnes as they Indulgences.

In this Tower wee faw a rich house all lined with silver plates, from the top to the bottome, Rich silver in which flood those one hundred and thirteene Kings statues, and the bones of each King in his Temple. owne ftatue; and they fay, that by night thele Kings communicate and paffe the time together, which none may fee but the Cabizondos, (a higher degree of Bonzos, as that of Cardinals with ys) which fables they beleeve for very certaintie. In this great c reuit wee told three hundred and fortie Bells of mettall and cast Iron, in seuenteene places, by twentie in a place, which all found on those New-moone feasts abouesayd. Neere to that tower, in a rich Chappell built on feuen and thirtie columnes of stone, stood the Image of Amida made of filuer, with the hayres Lady Amidailof gold, on a Throne or foureteene steps, all wrought with gold, the hands eleuated to Heaven : mage.

40 beneath her shoulders, hung (like lines of beades) many little Idols, as big as the middle finger: and the fecret parts were coursed with two great Oyffer-pearles, gamiffed with gold : They being demanded the meaning of this mysterie, sayd, that after the generall Floud in which all mankinde was drowned, God tent Amida from the Heauen of the Moone, (being great Chambri, neco Na. berlaine to Nacapitan his wife) to reftore the destroyed world; who setting heere fecte in Ca- capitan, as in lemplay before mentioned, being lately freed of the waters, shee turned it into gold, and there to lune; a rile standing on her feet with her face in heaven, a great quantitie of Creatures iffued from downe perhaps duiher arme; downe her right hand Males, and Females downe the left; having no other place in fed thou that has held a where to have been expensed by the body to be the second of the seco her bodie whence to bring them foorth, as other women of the world, whom for finne God uenant, Gong. hath subjected to filthinesse of corruption, to shew how filthy sinus is. After shee had finished 15, as that 10 this trauell or child-birth of 33333. Creatures, (as they number) one third part Males, and two which follow-

parts Females; thee remayned to weake, having no bodie to provide her any thing, that with eth from Gon. dizzinesse shee fell to the ground dead without recouerie. Whereat the Moone in condoling her 3.16. death covered her felfe with forrow, which are those shadowes wee see from the earth; which fay they, shall remaine so many yeers as the produced Creatures (33333) & then the Moone shall put off her maske of forrow, and the night shall bee after as cleere as the day. Such and other like mad stuffe did they tell, which might make one wonder, and more to weepe, that the Deuill should gull them with such manifest lyes, being otherwise so understanding a people.

From this Hill we went to another Temple of Nuns, sumptuous and rich, in which they told A Nunnerie, vs was the Mother of this King, Nhay Camifama, but would not let vs enter being strangers. 60 Thence by a street of Arches, wee went to a hauen called Hicharioo Topilen, where was store of strange shipping of divers Kingdomes, which come continually to that Temple for a plenarie Inbilee, which the King with many priniledges hath granted them, and dyet on free cost. To speake of other Temples and matters of China, which wee faw in our two moneths libertie

Th:

How the poore

children are

The King of China most resideth at Pequin, for so he sweareth at his Coronation. There are Inc. and of the state of the st is, The Schoole of the poore, in which Orphans which know no father are taught to write and 15, for scroone of the power, in with the Capitalings. Of thefe Houles they have about two has reade, and mechanike trades to earne their limings. dred, and as many more of poore Nurfes which give facke to Children, expoted or caft footh by their Parents (which are punished if they beeknowne) and after they are weaned, are committeel tratents (which are pulmies a vary) teel to the former houses. And if any by naturall defect are viable to learne a Trade, they apply him to that whereto he is able, as those that are blind to Mills, two to grind, and one to lift; and to in other cafes. Bendes, no Tradef-man may keepe shop without licence, which is not granted to in other cares. Denkes, no them former of their poorer. The Miller is to give meate and drinke to g each of those blinde persons, and clothes, and fifteene shillings yeerely, which when he dieth Frace, each or those suitase persons, and coolers, and arrived meanings, years, which were interested in Speed, Amietes, he may give for his foule, that no poore should perish, according to the fourth precept of \* Ani. Prouif ns for da. For Greeples which cannot goe, they place them with makers of Frailes, Baskets, and o ther handliworkes : and those which cannot vse their hands have great Hampers given them, and Baskets to ferue for Porters to carrie what men buy, from the Markets to their houles; fuch as have neither hands nor feet to vie, are placed in great houses like Monasteries, where are ma-

placed to ny mercenary women which pray for the dead, halfe of the Offerings remayning to them, the

they are fullayned with the Fines imposed on Regraters and scolding women. For common women which are difeafed they have other houses, where they are cured and provided for, at the 20 costs of other common women, each paying a monethly fee. The Dowries or loynters of connicted Adultereiles are bestowed on the Hospitals of semale Orphans, that honestie may gains by dishonesties losse. Other honest poore men are maintay ned in other streets, at the charges of Soll:citors and Lawyers which maintayne vniuft Suits, and of partiall bribed Judges. Prouision a-For the provision of the poore I have further heard read out of their Chronicles that Chanfeguind fireility, ran Punagor, Great Grandfather of the King now reigning, defiring to doe God fernice (beng

other halfe to the Priests. If they be dumbe, they place them in a house like an Hospitall, where

blinde after a fickneffe which he had ) ordayned that in every Citie there should be store-houts of Wheat and Rice, that if any dearth should happen, there might be a yeeres prouision, and the poore should not perish: and to this purpose he applyed the tenth part of the Kings Customes. They fay, that God recompensed this his charitie with reflitution of his fight, which continued fourteene yeeres after till his death. This is still observed, and the number of those Storehouses is said to be fourteene thousand. At Haruest the old is duided to the Inhabitants as they haue need, which after two moneths are to lay in as much new, and fixe in the hundred more, that the store be not diminished. But if the yeere proue barren, it is divided to them without gaine : and that which is given to the poore which have not to (atisfie, 15 paid out of the Kings Kents of that place, as the Kings Almes. And all the rest of the Royall revenues are divided nus how differ into three parts; one for maintenance of the Kings efface, and for the government of the King-The tefaiteral dome; the second for the defence of the Country, for Ports, Fleets, and the like; the third is put up in the Treasurie at Pequin, with which the King by ordinary power may not meddle, being deputed for defence of the Kingdome against the Tanars, and other warres with confi-40 a pleasure dining Kings; this part of the treasure is called Chidampur, that is, The wall of the Kingdome. For they lay, that if such occasions happen, the King shall not lay tribute whiles that sasteth, nor shall the people be vexed, as in other Countries, where such providence is not vsed.

King cannot

Admiranda Pe

quini. " Minapau the Kings Palace: the number of Eunuches perhaps is mistaken by the Printer: 20000, and in the Palace

Were 16000 Eunuchs.

Indeed I feare to particularize all that we law in this Citie, left the Reader should doubt or Note com-pare China with mutter at the raritie, measuring things by that little they have seen, and indging by their owne curtalled concerts the truth of those things which mine eyes have feene. But high capacities, haughtie spirits, and large understandings, that measure not other states by the miteries and meannesse before their eyes, will perhaps be willing to heare things so rare; which I hold the more pardonable in others to doubt of, foralmuch as I verily confesse, that I my selfe which beheld them with mine eyes, am often amazed, when with my felfe I recount the greatneffes of 50 Pequim, in the admirable estate of that Gentile King, in the Iplendor of the Chaens of Iustice, and of the Anchaeys of government, in the terror and dread caused in all by their Officers, in the fumptuousnesse of the Houses and Temples of their Idols; and of all the rest therein. For only in the Citie Minapan which stands within the wall of the Kings Palace are 100000. Eunuchs, and 30000. women, 12000. men for his Guard, and 12. Tutans, which is the greatest dignitie, 18000-one ci. and commonly called the Sun-beames, as the King is called, the Sonne of the Sunne, whole perphet life. Yet and commonly the phet life. Yet and the phet life is a phet life. Yet and the fon they represent. Beneath these 12. are 40. Cheen as Vice-royer, besides the inferiour dignities, as Anchaeys, Aytaos, Ponchaeys, Lauseaus, and Chambins, all which in the Court are above when he writ, 500. and none of them haue leffe then 200. men depending, the greater part of which are Mogores, Persians, Coraçons, Moens, Calaminhans, Tartars, Cauchins, and some Bramaus; the 60 Naturals being little effeemed as effeminate, and wanting valour, how wittie Lewer in Atts a.d husbandrie. The women are white, chafte, more given to labour then the men.

The earth is fertile, which their ingratitude rather aftribes to the merit of their King, then the providence of God, Some Priests also barrer with them woon Bills of exchange to bee reCHAP.2. S.6. China Sects. Goatswooll-quarrell. Peacebreake-paritie. Caluo. 277

payed an hundred for one in Heauen, which Letters they eall Cuchimiocos. Other Priests are of Sects in Cities another Sect, called Nauftolins, which denye the Scules immortalitie, and therefore teach to Carbinings. take their pleasures in this life. Another Sect is called Trimecan, which holds, that a manihall Naussolins. folong lie in his Graue as hee hath lued aboue ground; after which, by the prayers of their Transchave Prieffs, the Soule shall returne into another creature seuen dayes, and then seeke for the old bodie left in the Graue, to carrie it to the Heauen of the Moone, where it shall sleepe many yeeres, till it be converted into a Starre, and there remayne fixed for ever. Another beautly Sect, called Gizem, holds that Bealts onely shall ensoy Heauen, in recompence of their penance and tra- Gizers uels here sustayned, and not Men which follow their lusts, except they leave to Priests at their to death, to pray for them.

Their remove to Quanty, quarrels, miseries; Tartarian huge Armie, and losse at the siege of Pequim, reported. Quanty taken, and Nixianco: MENDEZ his exploit. Their entertaynment by the Tartar King, and going to Cauchinchina with his Embassadours, with many Tartarian obseruations.

Fter we had two moneths and a halfe gone vp and downe in the Citie of Pequim, on Saturday the thirteenth of Ianuary, 1544, they carried vs to Quanfy to fulfill our Quanfy Sentence, where we were brought before the Chaem, who made vs of his Guard of eightie Halbarders allowed him by the King, which made vs thankfull to God, being

ilrife betwixt two of our companie, which in reasoning about the Families of the Madurerras. rell. and the Fonfecas, whether were more eminent, grew to heate, thence to brauing words, and after to blowes and wounds, not onely of those two, but by part takings of fine of the reft. The Chaem and Anchaeys fentenced vs to thirtie blowes a man, which made vs more bloudy then our wounds. Then they carried vs to a prison, where we lay in Irons fixe and forty dayes. After which we were brought to the Barre, and received other thirty stripes, and removed to ano- Paritie a ther priton, where we stayed two moneths, then removed to certaine Iron-works five moneths. Peace-breaker. much pinched in backe and belly, and being difeafed with a contagious ficknesse, they fent vs forth to begge, which wee did foure moneths. In this miferie wee fware to each other to line Christianly and louingly, and that each moneth one should bee chiefe, whom all the rest should obey, whereby wer after lived in peace.

a place of little labour and more maintenance and liberty. But after a moneth, the Devill fowed

Christonan Borralbo the chiefe for that moneth, distributed vs by couples to take their turnes weekely to begge, two to fetch water, and make ready what we got, two to get wood. I and Gaff ar de Meyrelez went one morning to the Wood, and Meyrelez being Muficall played on his Viall, and fung; a thing pleasing to that people, which spend much time in pastime and banquets, and profitable to vs in procuring almes. As wee went, wee met with a Funerall pompe Mutick for the with Mulicke in the midft: one of which Mulicians knowing Meyrelez, prayed him to play and comferred the fing as loud as he could, that this dead man wee now carrie to buriall may heare thee, to comfort him in leaving his wife and children, whereto he was much affected. Hee modeftly refufing, the other angerly answered, and others intreated, and almost forced him to goe with them to the burning Buriall after their cultome. I thus left alone, went and got my bundle of wood on my backe. In the way homeward I met in the way an old man, clothed in blacke Damaske furred with white Lambe, who having shewed mee a filter Crosse, told me, that he was a poore To Portugall, Vafco Caluo, which fenen and twentie yeeres fince was captized with Tome Pirez, Vallo Caluo.

aduentures, and I ours to him: and at his request I fetched the rest of our companie to his poore

house. Hee brought vs to another roome, where his wife was, with her two little formes, and

two small daughters. Shee entertayned vs louingly, and shewed vs her Closet with an Altar,

and a Crosse thereon, secretly kept; shee also and her children faid a Portugall Prayer, with the

whom Lope Source had fent Emballadour to China, which had a milerable fuccelle by reason of a Stathe former Portugall Captaine. Hee brought me to his house, and told me the storie of his and his fellowes note \$-3.

Pater nofter, Creed, and Ane Maria, to our great ioy. Eight moneths being spent in this our miserie and beggerie, on Wednesday the thirteenth Rewes of the of July, a great tumult and crie arole amongst the people, by reason or newes of the Tartarian Tastarian Ar-60 King his comming to Pequin, with a greater power then ever any King had in the World; that there were in his Armer 1800000, men. 600000 of which were Horte, men, which had not be the form. there were in his Armie 1800000. men, 600000, of which were Horle-men, which had comme by Land from Las game, and Famfin, and Mecuy, with 80000. Badas ' to carrie their proution. Longare. Twelue bundred thouland Foot-men had comne in fixteene thouland Laulees and langas downe "Ringo en is the Batampina. And because the King of China durift not relift fo great a power, hee waspen.

D' anfi.

to Nangum. Moreouer it was faid that in the Pmall of Manicataron, a league and halte off was Nantieer com- lodged one Nanticor, a Tartarian Captaine with 70000. Herle, who within few houres would bee at that Citie. This newes much terrified vs, and the next morning the Enemie appeared with Colours quartered greene and white in feuen battels, neere to a Pagode called Petilan Na. meioo, a little from the walls. From that Pagode they came with found of Instruments of warre in one große Sq jadron like a halfe Moone and encircled the Citie: and being within Caliner shot, they made a shout as if Heauen and Earth would have gone together, and scaling it with two thousand Ladders which they brought with them, affaulted it in all places they could very resolutely, and at last brake into the gates by certaine deutices of great fron Presses, and the Chaese with many Mandames, putting the Citie to the fword, lacke, and fire; killing 10 as was thought, 60000. perfens, and after stay of feuen dayes there, went for Pegum, where their King was. Two dayes after they were gone, they came to a Castle called Nixiamcoo, which he besseed

Nauticor called the feuentie Captaines to confultation, and agreed to male ready fine hundred

Nixiamco a Clana Calile affaulted.

Ladders that night for the next dayes affault. The next day their Paling windoens ( fo they call their Martiall Instruments) founded, and fourteene battalions marched, and gaue affault with great cries, scaling the walls, and fighting furiously; the belieged also defending themselves couragionsly, and in two houres killing three thousand Tartars, the rest sleeing; many wounded with The Tartars

Mendez his

The Caftle

Lautimey.

poiloned Arrowes, whereof they died. A Countell of Warre was hereupon called, one of them being the man which had vs in cultodie; who returning with two Captains of his acquaintance an to supper, in their discourse of that misfortune they calt eyes upon vs there prisoners, and questioned of what Nation we were, and whether our Kings vsed to warre, and whether any ot vs knew any Stratagem to get that Castle, promiting our freedome if we could effect it. To wha we answered accordingly, and George Mendez undertooke the deligne against our likings fearing his difabilitie , and our turther danger. One of these Captaines told the Mitagner (Namicor) hereof, who lent to Tileymay the Captaine which had charge of vs, to bring vs to him. He gate vs a grave welcome (being now in counfell with the fenenty Coronels, two houres after midnight, and first made vs to eate, having taken off part of our Irons; and then made large promifes to George Mendez if he could doe as he had said; to which he answered, that hee could anfwere nothing till he law it, and then he would tell him the way to take it. Wee were remo- 10 ued to a Tent adioyning, and there graided, full of feare left this undertaking would coft our lives with a People to cruell. The next day George Mendez and two others of our companie were carried with a band of Horte-men about the Caffle to view it, and then brought to the Mitaquer, to whom he professeth great facilitie of effecting his purpose: which so contented him, that he sware by the Rice he cate to present vs to the King, and to fulfill his promises, prefently taking off the remainder of our Irons. Hee made vs to eate neere him, and did vs other honour. After which, George Mendez as Camp-maiter appointed store of Chists, Boxes, and matterials to fill up the ditch, and three hundred large scaling Ladders able to hold each three Souldiers, against the next morning to be made ready two hours before day. All this was happily effected, the ditch filled, and Mendez wi h two others of vs first scaled the wall, and fet up the 40 Tartars Colours; fine thousand Tartars gallantly seconding, so that with a hoteskirmish the befieged were all slaine, and the Castle taken; the gates opened to the Muaquer, who with great ceremonies tooke thereof possession. He caused George Menden and the rest of vs to eate neere him, razed the Caitle, and taking Mendez with him on horse-backe returned to his Tent, giuing him 1000. Taeis, and each of vs 100, the cause of much emulation in some of our conpanie, who by his meanes had obtayned libertie. Thence the Mitaguer marched by places deiolate, to a good Towne by the Rivers fide, called Lautimes, the people whereof were fled; the Towne these barbarians fired, as they did other places where they came. The next day they burned Bunxay, a fowne held of aboue fixe leagues circuit, most Wheat; and came to the Hill Pommitay, and the next day to the River Palemzitau, within two leagues of the Kings Campe. 50 Guijar Paran sonne of the King of Persia, at the Castle of Lamir, by the Kings appointment flayed for him; to whom Mitaguer on his knees delivered his Scimitar, having first kissed the ground flue times. Hee welcomed him with honourable termes, and after that, slepping backe two or three paces with a new ceremonie, and with a voyce high and feuere (as he which reprefented the Kings person) laid, He, whose rich border of his garment my mouth continually killeth. whose great power ruleth oner others by Land, and on the Iles of the Sea, sends to tell thee by mee his Slave, that thy honour able comming is as welcome to his presence as the sweet Summer morning, wherein the bathing of cold water most delights the flesh; and that without delay thou hastenest to heare bis voice, mounted on this Horseruchly furnished out of his Treasurie with mee, that thou mayest be equal in bonour with the principal of his Court, and they which fee thee thus bonoured may know that thou are 60

a strong member, whose valour deserves this reward. Thus with great state and pompe they went to the King : and fifteene dayes after he brought vs to the Tents of the King well horied, then in the sumptuous House of Nacapiran. When he came to the Trenches, bee descended from his Litter (wee from our Horses) and asked leave of

Nautaran to enter, which granted, he againe went to his Litter, and we followed on foot: at Stare of the the next passage he descended, and went in leaving vs to expect him. An houre after he returned with foure faire Boyes gallantly arayed in greene and white, with their golden Xorcas on Campe and their feet, to whom all the people rose vp, and drawing their Scimitars laid them on the ground, Tent Reyallfaying three times, A bundred thousand yeeres line the Lord of our heads. Wee lying proftrate with our faces on the ground, one of the Boyes faid to vs with a loude voice, Retoyce yee men of the Worlds end, for the houre of your defire is comne, in which the libertie which the Mitaquer promifed you in the Cafile of Nixianco, shall bee granted you. Lift up your heads from the ground, and your hands to Heanen, giving thankes to the Lord which made the Stars. Wee autwered as wee were In taught, Let it bee our fortune that his foot tread on our beads: the Boy answered, The Lord grant

Their foure Boyes with Mitaguer guided vs on thorow a Gallerie standing on fixe and twentie Pillars of Braffe, from which wee entred a great Hall of timber, in which stood Mogores, Persians, Berdios, Calaminhans, and Bramas : thence wee came to another Hall, called Tigibipas. where were great flore of armed men in five files quite thorow the Hall, their Swords garnished with Gold. There Mitaguer performed some ceremonies, swearing on the Maces which the foure Boyes carried, kneeling and kiffing the ground three times. Then we passed another gate, and came to a square great Hall like the Clouter of a Monasterie, in which stood source files of brazen Images like Sauages with Maces and Crownes, feu in and twentie spannes high, and fixe 30 broad, which the Tartars faid were the three hundred and fixty Gods which made the dayes of

the yeere; which the Tartar King had taken out of a Temple, called Angicamor, in the Citie Xipatom, in a Chappell of the Sepulchres of the Kings of China, to carrie home in triumph. In Xipatom. this Hill was a Garden of firange herbs and flowers, and therein a Tent vpon twelve rurned posts of Camphire wood, in which was a Throne all garnished with much curiositie of Gold Curious and Silver workes, representing very lively the Sunne, Moone, Starres, Cloudes. In the midit of the Throne flood a filuer great Statue, called Abicannilancor, that is, God of the bealth of Kings. (taken alfo from Angicamoy) about which flood foure and thirt.e Idolsas big as children about fixe yeeres old, in two rankes let on their knees and hands lifted up as in veneration. At the entrie of the Tent were foure Boyes gorgeoutly arayed which went about it with Cenfers, and

20 at the found of a Bell proftrated themselves on the ground, and centing, faid, Let our crie come unto thee as a sweet sauour that thou mayest beare us. That Tent was guarded by lixtie Halbarders, standing a pretie distance from it round about. Beyond that Hill wee entred another place. where were foure rich roomes, in which were many great persons.

Thence we followed Mitaguer and the Boyes vnto a great Hall like a Church , where flood fixe Porters with Maces, which with new ceremonie let vs in. Here was the King of Tartars, The Tartar accompanied with his Grandes, among which were the Kings of Pafua, Mecuy, Capimper, Rasa His State. Benam, and the Anchesacotay, and other Kings to the number of fourteene, all in rich attire, placed at the foot of the Throne, two or three paces diffant; and a little further off flood two and thirtie faire women, playing on divers Inffruments. The King face on the Throne, encom-

40 passed with twelue Boyes on their knees, with small Scepters of gold on their shoulders; amongst which was a faire Damsell which ever and anone fanned the King. This was the fifter of Mitaquer, who by her meanes enjoyed that grace and respect in the Armie. The King was His person. about forcie yeeres old, tall, not flefhy, well fet; his beard fhort with Mostachos like the Turks, his eyes somewhat small, his countenance seuere; clothed in a shining reddish vesture set with Pearles; on his feet certaine Shppers greene wrought with Gold and Pearles; and on his head a kind of Sallet with a border of Diamonds and Rubies. Before we came at him by ten or twelve paces, we made our courtelle, three times killing the ground, with other ceremonies which wee were taught. The King commanded the Mutike to cease, and bid Mitaquer aske this Nation of the end of the world, it they have a King, and how their Land is called, and how farre it is from

30 China. One of vs answered for the rest, that our Land was called Portugall, our King was great and mightie, and from thence to Pequin was about three yeeres Voyage; whereat he much maruelled, as not thinking the World to great; and tiriking on his thigh faid about with eyes to Heauen, O (reator of all things, which of us poore Ps/mires on the Earth may be able to comprehend the maruels of thy greatnesse? And tigning with his hand he made vs come never to the tieps of the Throne where the fourteene Kings were placed, and demanded vs againe, how faire? and when we faid, three yeeres; he asked, why we camerather by Sea then by Land? wee answered, that the discritic of States and Kings in the way hindred. He asked, What doe you feeke with to farre trauels and great troubles ? wee gaue as good reason as we could; whereat he sha-

king his head, faid to the King of Benan, an old man, that it feemed that our Countrey had much 6c Couerouinesse, and little Instice; so, said the other, it appeares; for those men which flie on the top of all waters, by wit and industrie to get that which God hath not given them, either pouerty forceth to forlake their Countrey, or vanitie and blindnesse caused by couetousnesse, makes them forget Ged and their Fathers. After this, the women began againe to play, and the King retired himfelie into a house alone with his women which played, and the Damiell

# 280 Tartars for sake Pequin, Incredible losse, Eastern Princes Ambassages. LIB, II

that fanned. One of the twelue Scepter-boyes told Mitaquer from his Sifter, that the King commanded hee should not goe away, which he tooke for a great grace, and wee returned to

Tarters loff: Confultation.

Si ge of Pe-

anim breakes

The Kingsre-

Fortie and three diyes after we came to the Campe Royall (in which space were many fights betwixt the befiegers and befieged, two affaults by icaling with the Tartars loffe) the Tartarian called a Councell, where were affembled feuen and twentie Kings, and many great men and Captaines, which agreed that feeing Winter was now comming, and the waters of both Rivers had rifen and filled the Trenches, and many were ficke (foure or fine thousand dying daily) that it was best to ray se the siege. The King therefore embarked the Foot-men with the munitions. fired the Tents, and went away with 300000. Horse by land, and 20000. Badas, 450000. men 10 being found by accounts, to have dyed in this expedition, moll of sicknesse, 300000. Horses and 60000. Badas, for want of prouisions the two last moneths and a halfe of this Siege (which endured fixe moneths and a halte.) Besides, 300000, had runne to the Chinois, wonne by their great pay. Hee lodged the first night of his departure at a River called Quaytragum; the next day he came to Guijampee, which hee found wholly fortaken ; thence to Liampen, and after leuenteene dayes (eight leagues a day) he came to Guanxitms, and forced it, committing therein cruell flaughters, to prouide his Armie of necessaries by the spoyle thereof. The next day hee came to Caixilo, which he medled not with being great and ftrong, having therein 50000, men, of which 10000. were Mogores, Cauchins, and Champaas, better Souldiers then the Chinois, Thence hee passed to the walls of Singrachiron, and the next day to Xipator, and then sent away 20 most of his Souldiers, spending seuen dayes in the pay, and execution of Iustice on Prisoners, Thence discontent, hee went to Langame by water, (with onely one hundred and twentie Laulees, in which were some ten or twelue thousand men) where sixe dayes after hee arrived in the night without any pompe. There he stayed fixe and twentie dayes, till all his companie were come both of horse and foot.

after which hee went to a greater Citie called Tunnican, where he was personally visited by

confining Princes and Ambassadours from remoter Kings, Xatamas of Persia, Stammon Emperour

Langame.

Caran.

A Marriage treated on heand Tarter.

They depart

Uzaneuee.

Puxanznim. Guns of wood.

of the Guess, which within the Countrey confine with Brama of Tangu, the Calaminhan Lord of the brute force of Elephants, the Sornau of Odiaa, (intituled King of Siam) whose Segniorie comprehendeth feuen hundred leagues of coaft, from Tanançarim to Champaa, containing feuen- 30 teen Kingdomes; the King of the Mogores whose Kingdome lyes within land, betwixe Coracas tered, & fince neere Perfia, and the Kingdome of Dely and Chitor, and an Emperour called Caran, whose Segnithe time Lord orie confineth within the Mountaines of Goncalidan, with a Nation which the Naturals call Moscobr, of whom wee saw some in this Citie, ruddie, of bigge stature, with shooes, and furred cloathes, having some latine words, but seeming rather for ought wee observed Idolares then Christians, and much giuen to vnnaturall lust. To the Ambasadour of that Prince Caran, better entertainment was given then to all the reft. Hee brought with him one hundred and twentie men of his guard, with Arrowes and gilded quiuers, all cloathed in Shamois skinnes murrie and greene; and twelue Porters on horsebacke with Maces of Silver, leading twelue Horses in their right hands with rich embroidered Furnitures. After whom followed twelue men of high 40 and Giant-like sture, cloathed Sauage-like in Tygers skinnes, leading great Grey-hounds in chaynes and collers of Siluer, muzled. Then came twelue Boyes, faire and well proportioned of equall stature in gallant array, & next them Leixigan the Ambassador himselfe, in a Charlot (they call it a Pirange) with three wheeles on a fide, garnished with Siluer and a Chayre of the same, attended with fortie Foot-men in marrie and greene, yeelding a goodly fight, all things manifesting the greatnesse of his Lord. Wee were one day in his lodging with Mitaquer, who was fent to visit him, where amongst other strange things, we saw five roomes hanged with Tapeftrie of Frogges very rich, like that vied amongst vs, as if they had come from one place; the Canopies, Siluer-tables, Furniture and State, all rich. This Ambassadour came not only to welcome home the Tartar, but to treateal so of a Marriage for his Lord, with one of the Tartars Si- 50 treated on be-twistibe Caren flers, named Meica Vidin, a woman of thirtie yeeres, very charitable to the poore, whom wee haue often feene in their Festivall dayes.

Mitaquer at our request mentioned vs to the King, who sayd, he would fend vs with his Ambaffador shortly to Canchenchina; and caused vs to be brought againe to his presence with great ceremonie of State and Maiestie as before at Pequins, where hee questioned vs, if we would serve him, which we excused saying, we had Wines and Children in our owne Countrey; and asking George Mendez, hee accepted. Eight of vs were commended to the Ambassadour which was to goe to Vzanguee in Cauchenchma, & we went in the same Barke, We set forth from Taymican the ninth of May, and came to a Schoole or Vniuerfitie called Guatipamor, where wee lodged in a Temple (or Monasterie) called Naypatim. Next morning wee followed our voyage downe the 60 River, and two houres within night came to Puxanguim, a finall Citie, well torofied with Towers and Bulwarks after our fashion, with store of Artillerie of wood, like the Pumps of ships, the stocks where the Barrels were fastned being plated with Iron, and carrying a builet as bigge as a Falcon: which invention they fay, they received of a people called Alimanis, of a land

# CH AP. 2. S. 6. Tartars Pope, Monks, Nuns, Refurrettion, Idols, Huge Lake 281

named Mulcoo, which by a great and deepelake of falt water, came thither with nine Barkes of oates, in companie of a Lady, which was tayd to bee exiled out of her Countrey by a King of Denmarke. The next day wee came to Linxan, and fine dayes after we continuing our course Linzan. downe the River, came to Singuafatur, a huge Temple, more then a league in compafie; in which Singuafatur space were built one hundred and fixtie foure large and long houses full of Skuls, the other bones Templaand lying without in great piles. On a Hill compassed with nine grates of Iron, was standing against superstinions. a ftrong ftone wall, a monstrous statue of Iron thirtie braces high, and fix broad, in both his hands holding a bullet fixe and thirtie spannes about, of cast Iron also. (This to wound the Serpent which came to robbe them) himfelfe being hee which should one day restore the fielh to their To owne bones, if they gaue Almes, otherwise to the most vnable and putrid : his name Pachinaran Dubeculem Pinanfaque, who 74000. yeeres agoe, was borne of a Tortoyfe named Migania. and of a Sea-borfe one hundred and thirtie braces long, named Tibremoucan. The Ambasladours told vs. that of his Confraternities, there arose to him of annual rents about 200000. Taeis, and as much more of the Sepulchers of the Nobles, which were by themselues; that there belonged to him twelue thousand Priests preying on him, and praying for the dead, who might not without their Superiours licence depart out of that Circuit. These Priests once a yeare may defile Monkes and themselves in fornication within that Circuit; without, as oft as they will, without sinne, the Nous, ch. ste Chifangues permitting egreffe. There are many women also enclosed, who by their Libangus or name. Prioreffes leaue, permit themselues to those Priests.

The fecond day after, wee came to a great Citie on the River fide called Quanginan, where the Oxentinan. Ambaffadours flayed three dayes for prouision, and by reason of a Feast at the entrance of Talapicor of Lechune, who is there as a Pope : who had priviledged thefe inhabitants to be all Privite, A Genile Pope authorised to Sacrifice and give Bills of exchange for money to bee repayed in Heaven. He gave the Ambassadour grace to legitimate in his Countrey for money, and to give tycles of Honour; which hee recompenced, giving to the Priests all that he could make, and two thousand Taxis the King had given vs, for whith he gave vs fifteene in the hundred. Foure dayes wee paffed Lechune. downer he River to Lechuse the mother Citie of that falle Religion of Gentilitie, as Rome is with vs, wherein is a sumptuous Temple, in which are seuen and twentie Tartar Emperours buried in rich Chappels lyned with Silver, having abundance of filver Idols. On the North-fide a little Idols. 30 from the Temple, was a notable strong great wall, within which were built two hundred and eightie Monasteries, of men and women; in which were fayd to bee two and fortie thousand re- Monasteries.

ligious professed, besides feruitours. In those Houses are many Brazen pillars with Idols of their Saints thereon, to much more gilded as efteemed. In one of them was the Kings Sifter a widow, which had beene wife of Raia Benan, Prince of Pafus, after whose death shee entred Religion with fixe thousand women. The Ambassadour vitited her, and kissed her foot as a Saint. Departing thence downe the River five dayes, wee came to a great Citie called Rendacalem. Rendacalem. in the confines of Tartaria. And thence forwards began the Segniorie of Xmaleygram, thorow Ximalegrams

which wee trauelled foure dayes, and then came to a Towne called Voulem, where the Ambaifadours were well received, and provided of Pylots for those Rivers; which wee descended feuen dayes without feeing any thing of note, and then came to aftraight called Quatanque, into which the Pylots entred to cleape a Pyrat, which had spoyled the most part of the Countrey. Singapunor Thus wee came to the Lake Sing apamor, called by the Naturals Cunebetee, and fayd to contayne Lake of Cunefixe and thirtie leagues in Circuit. Foure Rivers runne thence, Ventram Eastward thorow Siam, bette, entring the Sea by the barre of Chiatabu, in twentie fixe degrees; Jangumaa Southwards by the Ventices. Lass and Guess, and part of Dabambu enter the Sea at Martanan, in the Kingdome of Pegu; bishura. Pumfilen runnes thorow all Capimper and Sacotay, and all the Empire of Monginoco, with part Pumfiles. of Meleytay and Sonady, and to to the barre of Cofmin, neere Arracan. Of the fourth River the Ambaffadours could give vs no inftructions, but fome thought it to bee Ganges ... In fourn dayes more, wee came to a place called Calespute, where they threw itones at vs, and would not fuffer so vs to land. Thence we fayled by another larger River nine dayes, and came to Tarem a good cale pute.

Towne, subject to the Cauchim, where we were well received: and in seven dayes more came to Taren. a good Cirie called Xolor. There were Silver mines, in which one thousand men were at worke, Xolor.

whence they fayd was yeerely taken fixe thousand Pikes, which makes eight thousand Quintals of ours. Thence wee went other fine dayes by that great River, the Countrey being well peopled, and came to the Citie Manaquileu at the foot of the Hills Combay in the borders of China, combay, and Cauchim; thence to Tinamquaxy. Thence they fent their foure Barkes to Huzamquee, the Huzamquee. chiefe Citie of Cauchim, and went by Land to Fanaugrem, where the King was. Their entertainment there and journey thence to Iapan, I omit, with their following long Pilgrimage

in that Easterneworld; wherein I am afraid to mander in places and affaires so uncouth. Wearie al-60 readie of things fostrange, and therefore uncertaine, I will passe to other Authors; and first to the Philippina's and Spanish Commerce of China. The Voyage of Legalpi, is taken out of a Latine Manufeript, the rest out of Mendoza, bis Spanish discourse of China, and certaine Frears which went this ther; the two Letters except, borrowed of an Italian Author.

Bb ;

CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

Spanish plantation of the Philippinas, and what entercourse bath thence bapned between them and the Chinois.

First discouerie of the Philippinas : written by Frier IV AN GONZALES DE MENDOSA.

ftraights.



Agalianes, was the first that discouered these Ilands, having passed the straight (which vnto this day beareth the tytle of his name) and came vnto the lland of Zubu, whereas they did Baptife certaine of the Inhabitants, and afterwards in a banquet, the same llanders did kill him, and other fortie of his companions, which was the occasion that Sebastian de Guetaria, a natural Biskin borne, forto

escape with his life, did put himselfe in a ship that remay ned of the voyage (which afterwards was named the Vistorie) and in her, and with a few people that helped him, with the Fausur of God hee came vnto Simil, having compaffed the whole world, from the O- 10 rient vnto the Ponent, a thing which caused vnto all men great admiration, but in particular vnto the Emperour Charles the fift of famous memorie, who after he had given many gifts and fauours vinto the fayd Sebassian de Gnetaria, he gaue order that a new Armie should bee made readie, and to returne againe in demand of the layd Hands, and to discouer that new world.

The fecond Villa Lobos.

So when all things were in a readinesse, for to depart on their Voyage (the which was done with great breuitie) they orday ned for Generall of all that fleete, one Villa Lobos, commanding him to goe by the Nuona Espania, The Villa Lobes, arrived at the Hands or Malucas, and at those of Terrenate, and at other Hands joyning vnto them, the which Hands were layd to gage by the aforefayd Emperour vnto the Crowne of Portugall. In these Hands they had great warres by meanes of the Portugals, and seeing themselves with little helpe and small resistance, forto 30 goe forwards with their conquest, they left it off, and went to the most part of them with the aforesayd Portugals, vnto the India of Portugall, from whence afterwards, they sent themas prisoners vnto the sayd King of Portugall, as oftenders, that had entred his Hands withouthis licence : who did not onely leave to doe them any harme, but did intreate them very well, and

tent them vnto their owne Countrey of Spaine, and gaue them all things necessarie for their journey, and that in abundance. Then certaine yeeres after, Don Philip King of Spaine, being very willing that the discourring should goe forwards, which the Emperour his father had so earnestly procured, sent and commanded Don Luys de Velasco, who was his Vice-roy of the Nuona Espania, that hee would ordayne an armie, and people for to returne and discouer the sayd llands, and to send in the sayd to fleete for Gouernour, of all that should bee discourred. Miguel Lopez de Legaspi, who did accompilsh all that his Maiestie had commanded, and made the discouerie thereof as followeth,

When the Spaniards came vnto them, they were without Lord or head, or any other to whom they should shew dutie, but hee which had most power and people, did most command : so that this (and that there were so many of equall power) was the occasion that civill warres continued, without any respect of nature, kindred, or any other dutie, but like vnto brute Brasts, killing, spoyling, and captilling one another, the which was a great helpe vnto the Spaniard, for to fubic Canhar Country with 10 great ease voto the King, and called them the Ilands Philippinas, in respect of his name. They did vie amongst them, to make Captines and Slaves, such as they did 50 take in value full warres, and for trifling matters, the which God did remedie, by the going thither of the Spaniaras: for you should have a man with fortie or fiftie friends in his companie, or feruants, that vpon a sodaine, would goe and set vpon a small Village of poore people and vnprouided, and take and binde them all, and carrie them away for Slaves, without any occasion or reason, and make them to serue them all the dayes of their life, or else sell them to other llands. And if it so chanced, that one did lend vnto another, a basket or two of Rice (the which might bee worth a Ryall of plate) with condition, to returne it agains within ten dayes: if the debtor did not pay it the same day, the next day following hee should pay it double, and afterward to double it enery day, so long as he did keepe it, which in conclusion, would grow to bee so great, that to pay the same, hee is forced to yeeld himselfe for Captine and Slaue.

But vnto all fuch as were captized in this order, or in fuch like, the King of Spaine hath commanded to give libertie, yet this just commandement is not in every point fulfilled and accomplished, because such as should execute the same, have interest therein. All these llands were Gemiles and Idolaters, but now there is among it them many thousands Baptiled, vnto whom the

## CH AP.3. S. I. Ancient Rites of the Philippinas. Their batred to the Spaniards. 283

King hath shewed great mercie, in sending vnto them the remedie for their soules in so good time: for if the Spaniards had stayed any more yeares, they had beene all Moores at this day. for that there were come vnto the Hand of Burnes, tome of that Sect that did teach them, and lacked little, for to worship that false Prophet Mahomet, whose false, peruerse and corrupt memory, was with the Gotpel of Christ eatily rooted out.

In all thefe Hands they did worship the Sunne and Moone, and other second causes, figures of men and women, which are called in their Language Maganitos, at whole Fealts (which they doe make very fumptuous, with great Ceremonies and Superstition) they doe call Magaduras, But among it them all, they have in most veneration an Idoll, whom they called Batala, the to which reuerence they had for a Tradition, yet can they not fay what should be the occasion that

he should deserve more then any of the rest, to be had in so great estimation. In certayne Hands not farre off, called the Illocos, they did worship the Deuill, and made vnto him many Sacrifices. The Deuil was in recompence of a great quantitie of Gold he had given vnto them, but now by the goodnesse of God, and the great diligence put and done by the Fathers of the Order of Saint Auftin (who were the first that passed into those parts, and lived worthily) and also by the Friers of Saint Francis, which went thither ten yeares after, all these Hands or the most part of them are baptized, and under the Enfigne of Ielus Christ : and the rest which doe remayne and are not, is more for lacke of Ministers and Preachers, then for any obstinacie of their parts. There is now gone thither certayne Fathers of the Order called Iesuits, who will be a helpe vnto them with their accustomed zeale and labour. And now goeth thither many other Religious men, very well learned and Apottolike, of the Order of Saint Dominicke, who will doe their endeuour to convert

them vnto Christ, as it behooueth Christians to doe.

They of these Ilands were accustomed to celerate their Feasts aforesaid, and to make Sacrifices vnto their Idols, by the order of certayne women which were Witches, whom they doe Witches. cal in their Language Holgoi, that were had in as great estimation among it them, as be the Priests among it Christians. These did talke ordinarily with the Deuill, and many times in publike, and doe Deuillish Witch-crafts both in wordes and deedes : into whom it is to bee beleeved that that the Deuill did enter, for that straight-wayes they did answere vnto all things that were demanded of them, although for the most part they would tell a Lye, or else such words that

30 might be given divers interpretations of, and of divers vinderstandings. They did also vie to cast Lots, they were great Agorifmers, or observers of times : in so much that if they beginne any Iourney, and at the beginning they meete with a Cayman or Lizard, or any other fauage Worme, they know it to be a figne of euill fortune, whereupon they would ftraight-wayes leane off their Iourney, although it did import them very much, and returne vnto their Houses, saying, that the Heaven will not that they should goe forwarde on that Journey : but all these lyes and fallenesse haue beene taught them, and they perswaded to by the Deuill, are ouerthrowne and taken away by the Law of the Gospel (as aforesaid) and have now amongst them many Monafteries full of Religious men, of the Order of Saint Austine, Saint Francis, and of Iefuits. Ac-

cording vnto the common opinion, at this day there is concerted and baptized more then foure 40 hundred thousand soules, which is a great number ; yet in respect of the quantitie that are not as yet conuerted, there are but a few. It is left vindone (as aforefaid) for want of Ministers , for that, although his Majestie doth ordinarily send thither, without any respect of the great charge in doing the same, yet by reason that there are so many Iland, and every day they doe discover more and more, and being so farre off, they cannot come vnto them all, as necessitie requireth. Such as are baptized doe receive the faith with great firmenesse, and are good Christians, and would be better, if that they were holpen with good enfamples: as those which have beene Spaniards haved there follong time are bound to doe: that the lacke thereof doth cause some of the Inhabitants nat. so much to abhorre them, that they would not see them once painted upon a wall. For proofe whereof (and for to mooue such as have power and authoritie to put remedie in the same, I will declare vnto you here a strange case, the which royally did passe of a truth in one of these Ilands,

50 and is very well knowne amongst them : that is, there chanced to dye an Hander, a principall man amongst them : a few dayes after that he was baptized, beeing very contrite for his sinnes, the which he had done against God before he was baptized, and after hee dyed. So after by the spanish report Dinine permission of God he appeared vnto many of that Iland whom hee did perswade forth of a Vision. with to receive the Baptisme, with reasons of great efficacie, and declared vnto them (as one that had experienced the fame) the reward of that good deed which without all doubt should be given vnto them, if they would receive the same, and liveafter conformable, and according vnto the Commandements of Christ, for the which he told them, and faid, that forth-with is foone as he was dead, he was carried by the Angels into glory, there whereas all things were of delight, pleature, and content, and did communicate onely in the fight of God, and that there

60 was none that entred therein, neither could enter, except he were baptized, according vnto the preaching of the Spaniards, of whom and of others that were like vnto them, there was an infinite number. Therefore, if to be that they would goe and enjoy of those benefits and delights, it is necessary that first they should be bartized, and afterwards to observe and keepe the Com-

# 284 Godreielled for malice to men. Commodities there. Theeues Ilands, LIB. II

The Indians would not goe into Heauen because there

Ciuir.

Honey.

mandements that be preached unto them by the Fathers, that are amongst the Castillas, and therewith he vanished away, and they remayned treating amongst themselves, concerning that which they had heard, and was the occasion that some of them forth-with received the Baptilme, and that others did delay it, faying, that because there were Spaniard Souldiers in glorie. they would not goe thither, because they would not be in their company. All this hurt is done by one peruerfe or impious man, and with one euill ensample, the which amongst many good. as you have in those parts : but especiall amongst them in particular, it ought to beereprehended and punished feuerely with rigour.

These Ilands at the first discouery of them, had the fame to be Mal Saues, or vnwholesome. but fince experience hath shewed and proued it to the contrary : It is a Countrey maruellous fer- 10 till, and yeeldeth very much Rice, Wheate, Goates, Hennes, Deere, Buffes, Kine, and great flore of Hogges, whose flesh is so sauourie as the Mutton they have in Spaine : there be also many Cats that yeeld Cinet, great flore of fruits which be very good and fauourie : great abundance of Ho. ney, and Fish, and all fold at so small a price, that almost it is fold for nothing. Also there is great Cinamon.

Linfeed Oyle, flore of Cinamom, but no Oyle of Oliues, but that which is carried thither out of the Numa Espania: they have much Oyle of Algongoli, and of Flaxe-seed, the which they doe spend ordinarily in that Countrey, so that the Oyle of Oliues is not missed with them.

There is great flore of Cloues, Saffron, Pepper, Nutmegs, and many other Drugges: great ftore of Cotton and Silke of all colours, the which is brought vnto them by Merchants of China, euery yeare a great quantitie, from whence commeth more then twentie ships laden with pieces 20 of Silkes of all colours, and with Earthen Vessell, Powder, Salt-peter, Iron, Steele, and much Quick-filuer, Braffe, Copper, Wheate, Flowre, Walnuts, Bisket, Dates, Linnen Cloth, Counting Chefts very gallantly wrought, Calls of Net-worke, Buratos, Efpumillas, Basons and Ewres, made of Tinne, Parchment Lace, Silke Fringe, and also of Gold, the which is spunne and twifted after a falhion neuer seene in all Christendome, and many other things of great curiositie, and all this aforesaid is sold very good cheape. Likewise such things as the llands doe yeeld, are fold very good cheape, for you shall have foure Roues of Wine, which commeth of the Palmetree for foure Rials of Plate (the which for lacke of that made of Grapes is very good) twelve Haneges of Rice for eight Rials of Plate, three Hens for one Riall, a whole Hogge for eighteene Rials, a whole Buffe for foure Rials, a Deere for two Rials, and yet it must bee both great and in good, foure Roues of Sugar for fixe Rials, and the like.

#### ð. I I.

### First Plantation of the Philippinas, by MICHAEL LOPEZ DE LEGASPI.

\* This I trans. lebact \* Lopez. de Legasse , Generall of the Spanish Armada, on Tuesday the one and de twentieth of Nouember, Anno Dom. 1565, let forth of the Hauen of Natinitie in Manuscript
Lating which!

New Spaine, and (ayled betwixt the South and the Weft, and after Weft-ward, till
Lating which!

New Spaine, and (ayled betwixt the South and the Weft, and after Weft-ward, till
Lating which! make for the Philippinas. After eight dayes, the ship called Saint Luke was milling, the Cap-

Natiuty Port. tavne whereof was Alfonfus de Arellano, suspected to have maliciously with drawne himselite. that de las Rejes The Fleet continuing their course in nine and ten degrees, after fiftie dayes had fight of an Hand of Fishermen and many other small Ilands not inhabited, which they passed by. It was agreed that they (hould heighthen their course to thirteene degrees, in which way they came on Monday the feuenteenth of Ianuary, 1366. to one of the Hands of Theeues, called Goean, and fayling toward it, fixe miles off, fiftie or fixtie Paraos fwift fayling Barkes with eight or ten men 18 quite naked met them and inuited them to their Habitations, where at night they anchored. The next morning, fixe hundred of their Parass came about them with victuals to fell, Rice, Honey, Sugar-canes, Plantans, Fruits of divers kinds, and Ginger whereof there groweth great ftore naturally. Their principall defire in barter was Iron Nailes , giving a large facke of Rice for a Naile; their fackes deceitfully filled with gravell and chaffe , with Rice in the top. Their people are well proportioned and ilrong. They fought with the Spaniards which were watering, and in the time of fight would be trucking with the ships, as sendlesse of their danger. A Mariner which itayd behind was flaine, whose death they revenged with many of the Sauages flaine in the night, one of them being taken and fent into New Spaine. Their name fits their Theenish

The Philippines disposition. called also the

Eleuen dayes after the fleet renewed their Voyage, and course in thirteene degrees eleuen dayes longer, and then had fight of the Philippinas, having failed from the Port of Nativitie, eight thousand miles. They anchored in a faire Bay called Baia de Sibabas, and there rode tenen Bais de Sibabae, dayes; whiles two Boats went to discouer, one to the North, the other Southward...

## CHAP. 3. S. 2. Bloudy leagues. Vicious, Sufficious, Portugal spite to Spaniards. 285

A Gentleman of one of them was flaine by an Indian, rashly leaping on shoare. These Indian's haue Iron Launces, with a head or tongue a handfull and halfe long. They have also shields, Bowes and Arrowes. In making peace each man takes two or three drops of bloud of his arme or breft and mixe both in some Vessell together, which is drunke with Wine and Water. Many Paraos came to the Spaniards with a white flag in the Prow, in token of peace, and the Admiral erected the like in her Poope to fignifie their leave to enter. Thele Indians are clothed, but barefoot. The Spaniards demanded prouision, which the other promised, but gaue only to the Captayne a fucking Pigge and an Egge. These people are very timorous, perhdious, and therefore suspicious. The Ilands beare Hogges, Goats, Hennes, Rice, Millet, Potatoes, Pome-citrons, 10 Frifoles, Cocos, Plantans, and many forts of Fruits. They weare Bracelets, and Earings, and

Gold Chaines, and whitherfoeuer the Fleet went, was flew of Gold in the Land, whereof Gold. they digge but for necessary vies : the Land is their Money bagge.

The Fleet departed hence, and two dayes after came to the Port of the Ile Tandoia, where a Tandoia fmall River enters; vp which they went in Boats, and came to a Towne called Camingo, There Canunge, they were well entertayned, and had victualls fet them : which whiles they were cating an Indian (pake forme Spanish words, and asked for Anionie Baptista Villalobos, and Captaine Cabeca de Vaca: for which the Lord of the place was angrie with him, and hee appeared no more. The next day the Spaniards returning found them armed, threatning them if they came on shoare. They minding not to deale cruelly, Martin de Goste was tent to discouer some convenient har-20 bour, who faw the Citie Tandaya, and other Townes of other neere Hands, and having gone fix- Tandaya. tie miles found the great Bay where was Cabalia a Towne well inhabited. Thither went the

Fleet, and the Inhabitants fled. Onely Camathan the fonne of Malataque a blind man, chiefe of that place, came to them, whom they detayned thinking thereby to get some prouision; but in vaine. He fant forth Souldiers which brought him fine and fortie Hogs, leaning in lieu form what for exchange, and dismissing Camatuan, who had taught the Captaine the names of the neighbouring Hes and of their Governours. Hee brought them to Mefagua two and thirtie miles off, Mefagua, and then was fent away apparelled and joyfull. The Iland Majagua hath beene frequent, but then had but twentie Inhabitants, which would not fee the Spaniards. They went to another Iland where the people were fled with their goods. Then went they to Butuan which is fubiect

30 to the Ile Vindena or the Ilands Corrientes. The winde draue them to Bobol, where they ancho- Bobol. red. The next day they law a lunke and fent a Boat to it, which wounded fome of their men-They had Arrowes and Lances and a Bale, and two braffe Peeces. They cryed to the Spaniards abordo, abordo. The Spaniards ient out another Boat better fitted, which tooke eight, the rest were flaine or fled, having fought valiantly. In the lunke they found white sheets painted; Silke, Almayzarez, Callicos, Iron, Tin, Braffe, and some Gold. The lunke was of Borneo, and so were these Moores. All was restored ( their intent being to get friends, and the Burneois fatisfied.

The Captaine femt the Saint Iohn to discouer the Coast of Butuan, and learne where the Cinamon was gathered, and to find some good Port in he place to build. The Burneous told the Wicked poli-40 Captaine the cause of the Indians flight, that about two yeeres before some Portugals bearing cy, an Indian themselves for Spaniards, had comne thither from the Melucas, and having made peace with pefficience them, fet on them and flue aboue a thousand Indians, the cause of that depopulation. This the which since Portugals did to make the Spaniards odious, that if they came thither, they might not be admit. hath infected ted. The Captaine fent a well furnished ship to search the Coast, which came to a place where the Borneo Gouernour faid he had friends, and leaping on shoare hee was slaine of the Indians. The Saint John returned from Buthuan, which faid, they had feene the King, and two lunkes of Moores in the River at anker, and that the lland was great and rich, and exchanged with them fine Gold for Testons, one for fix in equall weight. They bought Wax of the Moores but had Moores to be Earth inclosed in the Cakes; they also incensed the Indians against the Castilians, which would nage.

50 haue made purchase of them, but were forbidden by the King. They faid, they had there seene Wax, Cinamon, Gold, and other precious things.

On Easter Euen the other ship returned to their great ioy, which had thought her lost, having flaid twentie dayes longer then her limited time. They had failed about the Hand Igla the space 1gla, of fix hundred miles : and in their returne came to Subo a well peopled Hand, and plentifull of Subo. all things. The Captaine determined to goe thither to buy prouision, or else to force them. For Magelane had beene there; and the King, and most of the Inhabitants were baptifed, and acknowledged the Catholike King; Magelane also dying in their detence, and thirtie other Soul- See tout. 1.12 diers in Matan. They also had broken league and flaine some of Magelane Souldiers. On Fri- c. 2. day April twentie scuen, the Fleet arrived at the Port of Subo, and one came from King Tupar

60 to them, faying, that Hee with ten chiefe men would come to them. The Captaine expected them a whole day and the next, in which space the Handers hid their goods in the Woods. The third day the Captaine fent his brother Andrew and the Camp-mafter, to admonish the King in the Malayan tongue, to receive them, as Vaffals of the Spanish King. Which not succeeding, hee resolued to vie force. The Indians out of other Hands had attembled together to the number of



head. The Vice-row incontinent did gather together people necessary, and in great haste to follow him. The which being knowne vnto Limahon the Rouer, who faw, that with the people hee had, he was not able to make reastance against so great a number as they were, and the eminent danger that was therein, hee called together his Companies, and went from thence vnto a Port of the Sea, that was a few leagues from that place and did it to quickly and in fuch ficret, that he fore the people that dwell therein, could make any defence (for that they were not accustomed to any fuch affaults, but lived in great quietnesse) they were Lords of the Port, and of all such

thips as were there; into the which they imbarked themselves fraight-waves, weighed Anchor to and departed to the Sea, whereas they thought to be in more fecuritie then on the Land (as it was true.) Then he feeing himfelfe Lord of all those Seas, beganne to rob and spoyle all ships that hee could take, as well strangers as of the naturall people: by which meanes in a small time he was prouided of Mariners, and other things which before hee lacked, requifite for that new Occupation. He facked, robbed and spoyled all the Townes that were vpon the Coast, and did very much harme. So hee finding himfelfe very ftrong with fortie ships well armed, or those he had out of the Port, and other that hee had taken at the Sea, with much people fuch as were without shame, their hands imbrued with Robberies and killing of men, he imagined with himfelfe to attempt greater matters, and did put it in execution : he affaulted great Townes, and did a thousand cruelties. So he following this trade and exercise, he chanced to meete with another Vintequian a 20 Rouer as himselfe, called Vintoquian, like wise naturally borne in China, who was in a Port void by this Rouer.

of any care or mistrust, whereas Limaton finding opportunitie, with greater courage did fight with the ships of the other : that although they were threescore ships great and small, and good Souldiers therein, he did ouercome them, and tooke five and title of their ships, so that Vintoquian elcaped with fine ships. Then Limaton seeing himselfe with a fleet of ninetie fine ships well armed, and with many flout people in them, knowing that if they were taken, they should be all executed to death; feeting all feare apart, gave them felies to attempt new inventions of euill, not onely in robbing of great Cities, but also in destroying of them.

For the which, commandement was given straight-wayes vnto the Vice-roy of that Prouince (whereas he vied to execute his euill) that with great expedition he might be taken, who 30 in few days did fet forth to Sea, one hundred and thirtie great thips well appointed, with forty thousand men in them, and one made Generall over them all, a Gentleman called Omoneon, for One hundred to goe feeke and follow this Rouer with expresse commandement to apprehend or kill him. Of and thirtie all this prouision, Limahon had aduert ifemant by some secret friends, who seeing that his Ene-great ships of Warre with mies were many, and he not able to countervaile them, neither in shippes nor men, determined forty thousand not to abide their comming, but to retyre and depart from that Coast: fo in flying he came vnto an Iland in fecret, called Tonznacaoucan, which was fortie leagues from the firme Land, and is in Omoncon

the right way of Nauigation to the Hands Philippines. From this Iland they did goe forth with some of their ships robbing and spoyling all such as they met with Merchandize, and other things that they carried from one Iland to another, and 40 from the Iland vato the firme, and comming from thence among ft them all, they cauled to take two ships of Chma which came from Manilla, and were bound to their owne Countrey. And hauing them in their power, they fearched them under hatches, and found that they had rich things of Gold, and Spanish Rials, which they had in trucke of their Merchandize, the which they carried to the Ilands. They informed themselues in all points of the State, and fertilitie of that Countrey, but in particular of the Spaniards, and how many there were of them in the Citie of Manilla, who were not at that prefent aboue feuentie persons, for that the rest were separated in the discourring and populing of other Hands newly found, and understanding that these few did line without any lutpition of Enemies, and had neuer a Fort nor Bulwarke, and the Ordnance which they had (although it was very good) yet was it not in order to defend them-

nor offend their Enemies , hee determined to goe thither with all his fleete and people, 50 for to destroy and kill them , and to make himselfe Lord of the said Iland of Manilla, and other adjacent there nigh the fame. So with this determination hee departed from those Hands whereas hee was retyred, and went to Sea, and fayling towards the Hands Philippinas, they passed in fight of the Ilands of the Illocos , which had a Towne called Fernandina, Illocos. which was new founded by the Captayne lobn de Salzedo, who at that instant was in the same for Lieutenant to the Governour: Foure leagues from the same they met with a small Galley, which the faid Iohn de Salzedo had fent for victor is. He cast about towards her, and with great eale did take her, and did burne and kill all that was in her, and pardoned one of them. This being done, heeded profecute his Voyage according vnto his determination, and paffed along ft, but not in such secret but that he was discouered by the Dwellers of the Towne of Fernandina, Fernandina,

60 who gave notice thereof vnto the Lieutenant of the Governour aforesaid, as a wonder to see so many ships together, and a thing neuer seene before at those Hands. Likewise it caused admiration vinto him, and made him to thinke and to imagine with great care what it might be, he faw that they did beare with the Citie of Manille, and thought with himfelfe, that to great a fleet

two thousand, which prouoked our men, but at the report of the Ordnance ran away, and the two thousand, which produced our men, out at the topological and the land, and being Spaniards wan the Towne. Many figures of Gold and Gemmes appeared in the Iland. And being fituate to neere to the richeft Regions, the Governour hopeth accesse thereby to the increase and glorie of the Spanijb Crowne, it Spanifb Colonies be there planted. The Captaine from the Citie of Subo lent the Admirall fhip with his brother Andrew de Vrdanera, to certific the L. Lemp de Velasco, the sonne of the Vice-roy, what had beene done,

This which

Mignel Lopez de Legaspi, Generall or the Fleet , and Gouernour of the Countrey which they This which followith its: (hould discour, dyed in the faid Hands with the Title of Adelantado, having first peopled some ken out of Fray of them to the vis of His Maiestie, especially that of Manilla, which is fine hundred leagues in nam Gravales circuit; in which is feated the Citie of Lufon (called also Manilla) as the Metropolitan of all to the Hand where the Governous have fetted their relidance were times the first different de Mendofahis the Iland, where the Gouernours have fetled their refidence ever fince the first discourie. They Strong Action

1 ney

on of China, & have there founded a Cathedr. Il Church, and Friar Dom. Domingo de Salachar was confectated is bere much the first Bishop thereof in Madrid, 1579. At this present there be three Monasteries of Religi. ous men in that Iland, the one of the Order of Saint Austine, and were the first that by the Commandement of his Majestie did enter into this Hands, preaching the Law of the Gospell, which was great profit vito their foules, yet great travell vito them, & cost many of them their lines in doing it the other Monasterie is of barefoot Friersof the Order of S. Francis of the Prouince of S. lofeph, who have bin great Examples, with great profit vato them of those Parts. The third are of the Order of S. Dominicke, or Preachers, who have done their dutie in all things fo well as the other. These three Orders were alone in those Hands for certayne yeares, till now of 20 late time have gone thither lefuits, which have bin a great ayde and helpe vnto their Religion,

When theie Spaniards were come unto their Ilands, they had ftraight-wayes notice of the mightie Kingdome of China, as well by the relation of them of the llands (who told vnto them the maruels thereof) as allo within a few dayes after, they did fee and understand, by ships that came into those Ports with Merchants, that brought Merchandize and other things of great curiosit ie from that Kingdome, and did particularly declare the mightinesse and riches thereof. This being knowne unto the Religious people of Saint Ansim, who at that time were alone in those llands : but in especiall vnto the Prounciall, Frier Marin de Herrada, seeing the great capacitie or towardnesse which the Chinois had more then those of the Ilands in all things, but in especial in their gallantnesse, discretion and wit : hee straight-wayes had a great desire to 30 goe thither with his fellow to preach the Gospell unto those people, of so good a capacitieto receive the same : who with a pretended purpose to put it in vre and effect, he began with great care and studie to learne that Language, the which he learned in few dayes: and did make thereof a D. Etionarie. Then alterwards they did give great entertaynment and Prefents vnto the Merchants that came from China for to procure them to carrie them thither, and many other things, the which did flew their holy zeale : yea, they did offer themselues to bee slaves your the Merchants, thinking by that meanes to enter in to preach: but yet none of these diligences did take effect, till such time as the Duine Majestie did discouer a better way, as shall bee declared vnto you in this Chapter following.

#### ð. III.

of LIMAHON a China Robber and Rouer, by mbofe occasion the Spaniards fent into China.

Limabes a Chi-

#He Spaniards did enjoy their neere habitation of Manilla in great quietnesse & in obedience vnto the Christian King Don Philip, and in continual! Traffick with the Chinois. But being in this securitie and queenesse, vnlooked for, they were beset with a migh- 50 tie and great Armada or Fleet of ships, by the Rouer Limaton, of whose vocation

na Rouer.

there are continually on the Coast, the one by reason that the Countrey is full of people, where as of necessitie must be many idle persons : and the other and principall occasion, by reason of Whete Lima. the great tyrannie that the Gouernours doe vie vnto the Subjects. This Limaton came vpon them bus was borne. With intent to doe them harme as you shall understand. This Rouer was borne in the Citie of Trucheo, in the Province of Cuytan, which the Portugals doe call Catim. He was of meane Parentage, and brought up in his youth in libertie and vice, he was by nature Warlike and cuill inclined. He would learne no Occupation, but was ginen to rob in the high-wayes, and became so expert that many came vnto him and followed that Trade. Hee made himselfe Captaineouer them which were more then two thouland, and were fostrong that they were feared in all 63 that Province where as they were. This being knowne entothe King and to his Councell, they did straight way command the Vice-roy of the Province whereas the Rouer was, that with all the hafte possible he should gather together all the Garrisons of his Frontiers, to apprehend and take him, and if it were possible to carry him aline vnto the Citie of Taybin, if not his

as that was, could not goe to the place which they bare in with, for any goodnesse towards the dwellers therein, who were voide of all care, and a small number of people, as aforefaid: Wherewith he determined with himfelfe with to great speed as it was postible, to soyne tose. ther fuch Spansards as were there, which were to the number of fiftie foure, and to depart and produce to get the fore-hand of them, to advertise them of Man.lla, and to aide and helpe them to put their Artillerie in order, and all other things necessarie for their defence.

This Limaton was well prouided of prouision, and all other things neculiarie, and having the wand faire, hee was alwayes in the fore-front, and came in the light of Manilla vpon Saint Andrewes Eue, in the yeere 1574. whereas hee came to an anchor that night with all his

For all the contradiction of the winde this same night the foure hundred Chinois did put 16 themselues within a league of the Citie, vpon Saint Andrewes day at eight of the clocke in the morning, whereas they left their Boats and went on land, and in great hafte began to march forwards in battel aray divided in two parts, with two hundred Harquebuffes afore, and immediate ly after them other two hundred Pike-men: and by reason that they were many, and the Countrey very plaine, they were straightwaies discourred by some of the Citie, who entred in with a great noise, crying, Arme, arme, arme, the Enemies come. The which aduice did little profit, for that there was none that would believe them : but believed that it was some falle alarme done by the people of the Countrey for to mocke them. But in conclusion, the Enemies were come Martin de Goy vn: othehoule of the Generall of the Field, who was called Martin de Goys, which was the first house in all the Citie that way which the Enemies came. And before that the Spaniards and Sould:ers that were within the Towne could be fully perswaded the rumour to be true, the Enemies had fet fire voon his house, and slue him and all that were within.

Guidade Laba-

At this time, by the order of his Maiestie was elected for Governour of these Ilands Philippi. nas, Guido de Labacates, after the death of Miguel Lopez de Legaspi, who understanding the great fleet and power of Lymabon the Rouer, and the small relitance and defence that was in the Citie of Marilla, with as much speed as was possible he did call together all their Captaines and dwellers therein: and with a generall confent they spared no person of what qualitie and degree soener he was, but that his hand was to helpe all that was possible, the which endured two dayes and two nights, for follong the Rouer kept his ships and came not abroad. In which time of their continual labour, they made a Fort with Pipes and Boards filled with fand and other necessaries thereto belonging, such as the time would permit them: they put in carriages, some excellent Peeces of Artillerie that were in the Citie. All the which being put in order, they gathered all the people of the Citie into that little Fort. The night before the Enemie did gint affault voto the Citie, came thither the Captaine lobu de Salzedo, Lieutenant voto the Gouernour. The Rouer in the morning following, before the breake of the day (which was the fircond after he gaue the first affault) was with all his fleet right against the Port, and did put a-Indixe hundred Souldiers, who at that inflant did fet voon the Citie, the which at their pleafure they did facke and burne. They did affault the Fort with great cruelty, as men fleshed with the last flaughter, thinking that their reliffance was but small. But it fell not out as they did beleeue, for having continued in the fight almost all the day, with the losse of two hundred men, that were flaine in the affault, and many other hurt, he straightwaies departed from thence, and returned the fame way that he came, till they arrived in a mightie River, fortie leagues from the Citie of Manilla, that is called Pangasinan, the which place or soyle did like him very well, and where he thought he might be fure from them, who by the commandement of the King went for to feeke him. There hee determined to remayne, and to make himfelfe Lord over all that Countrey, the which he did with little trauell, and built himfelfe a Fort one league within the River, whereas he remayned certaine dayes, receiving tribute of the Inhabitants thereabouts, as though he were their true and naturall Lord: and at times went forth with his ships robbing and (poyling all that he met vpon the coaft. And spred abroad, that he had taken to himselfe so the Ilands Philippinas, and how that all the Spaniards that were in them, were either flayne or fled away. With this confideration they entred into counfell, and did determine to joyne together all the people they could, and being in good order, to follow and feeke the Rouer. Then the Gouernours commanded to be called together all the people bordering thereabouts, and to come vnto the Citie whereas hee was. Likewife at that time hee did give advice vnto fuch as were Lords and Governours of the Ilands, called Pintados, commanding them to come thither, with fuch fhips as they could spare, as well Spaniards as the naturall people of the Country. The Generall " of the field with the people aforefaid, did depart from Manilla the three and twentieth day of March, Anno 1575, and arrived at the mouth of the River Paganjinan vpon tenable Wednesday in the morning next following, without being discouered or any. Then 60

straightwaies at that instant the Generall did put a land all his people and foure Peeces of Ar-

tillerie, leaving the mouth of the River thut vp with his shipping, in chayning the one to the

other, in such fort, that none could enter in neither yet goe forth to gine any aduice vinto the

Rouer of his arrivall: he commanded fome to goe and discouer the fleet of the Enemie, and the

rede who uc. creded Gari, and was Neprice to Michael Legafi.

great authoritie, who was called Omoncon, who brought a Commission from their King, and thewed it vnto the Spaniards, and vnto the Father Provinciall: in the which the King and his Counfell did pardon all those Souldiers that were with Limabon, if that forthwith they would leaue him and returne vinto the Kings part: and likewife did promifegreat gifts and fauour vinto him that did either take or kill the aforefaid Rouer. Then did Sinfay declire vinto him of the The Captaine Omoneon reloyced very much of these newes, and made many fignes of great

taine Gabriel de Ribera, that straightwaies he should depart by Land, and that vpon a sudden he should strike alarme vpon the Enemie, with the greatest tumust that was possible. Likewife he commanded the Captaines Pedro de Canes and Lorenfo Chacon, that either of them with forty Souldiers should goe up the River in small ships and light, and to measure the time in such fore. that as well those that went by land , as those that went by water , should at one instant come vpon the Fort, and to give alarme both together, the better to goe thorow with their pretence: and he himselfe did remayne with all the rest of the people, to watch occasion and time for to 10 aide and succour them if need be required. This their purpose came so well to passe, that both the one and the other came to good effect : for those that went by water, did let fire on all the fleet of the Enemie : and those that went by land at that instant had taken and set fire on a Trench made of timber, that Limation had caused to bee made for the defence of his people and the Fort: and with that furie they flue more then one hundred Chinas, and tooke prisoners ieuenty women which they found in the fame Trench, but when that Limahon vinderitood the rumour, hee tooke himfelfe straightwaies to his Fore which hee had made for to defend himfelfe from the Kings Nauie, if they should happen to finde him out. The next day following, the Generall of the field did bring his Souldiers into a square bat-

tell, and beganne to march towards the Fort, with courage to affault it if occasion did ferue 20 thereunto: hee did pitch his Campe within two hundred paces of the Fort, and found that the Enemie did all that night fortifie himselfe very well, and in such fort, that it was perillous to affault him, for that he had placed upon his Fort three Peeces of Artillerie, and many Bafes, besides other Engines of fire-worke. Seeing this, and that his Peeces of Artillerie that hee brought were very small for to batter, and little store of munition, for that they had spent all at the affault which the Rouer did give them at Manilla, the Generall of the field, and the Captaines concluded amongst themselues, that seeing the Enemie had no ships to escape by water, neither had he any great store of victuals for that all was burnt in the ships, it was the best and most furest way to besiege the Fort, and to remayne there in quiet vntill that hunger did constraine them either to yeeld or come to some conclusion: which rather they will then to

This determination was liked well of them all, although it fell out cleane contrarie vnco Limaber ofter their expectation; for that in the space of three moneths that siege endured, this Limabon three moneths did so much that within the Fort he made certaine small Barkes, and trimmed them in the buff segeofcoperb, manner he could, wherewith in one night he and all his people escaped.

It happened vpon a day, that there came to the Campe a ship of Mignell de Loarcha, wherein was Friar Martin de Herrada Prouinciall of the Angustine Friars. Seuen leagues after they were out of the mouth of Pagafinan, they met with a thip of Sanglejes, who made for the Port, and thinking them to bee Enemies, they bare with them ( having another ship that followed them for their defence) and had no more in them but the faid Prouinciall and fine Spaniards, be-40 fides the Mariners. This ship of Sangley seeing that hee did beare with them, would have fled, but the winde would not permit him, for that it was to him contrary, which was the occasion that the two ships wherein the Spaniards were, for that they did both fayle and rowe, in a finall time came within Cannon shot. In one of the ships there was a Chino, called Sinfay. This Smfay went straightwaies into the fore-ships, and demanded what they were, and from whence they came: and being well enformed, hee understood that hee was one of the ships of warre that was fent out by the King of China, to feeke the Rouer Limabon, who leaving the reft of the fleet behind, came forth to feeke in those Ilands to fee if hee could discover him to be in any of them: and the better to bee enformed thereof, they were bound into the Port of Bnliano, from whence they came with their two thips: from whom they would have fled, thin-50 king they had beene some of the Rouers ships. Being fully perswaded the one of the other, they joyned together with great peace and friendship: the Spantard straight waies entred into their Boat, and went wnto the ship of the Chines, and carried with them the aforesiad Smfay, for to be their Interpreter, and to speake vnto the Chinos. In the said ship came a man of

comming of the Rouer vnto the Ilands, and all that happened in the fiege of the Citic, as a-60 forefaid: and how they had him befreged in the River of Paganfinan, from whence it was not

content, and did embrace the Spaniards many times, and gaue other tokens whereby hee did manifest the great pleasure her received, and would therewith straightwaies depart vinto the

Souldiers, to whom they did appertaine, all whatfoeuer they should bee valued to bee worth.

CHAP. 3. S. 2. China Compasses, insufficiency of Mariners. Idolatrous morthipina, 291

Vpon a funday at the break of day, being the fine and twentieth of June, after they had prayed vnto God to direct their voyage, they fet fayle with a prosperous wind : there were with the Friars, Souldiers and men of feruice, twentie persons, besides the Chines that were captines, and They departed the people of the Captaine Omoncon. They were not to foone off from the coast, but the wind towards Coast, abated, and they remayned becalmed certaine dayes: but afterwards they had a luftic gale, that carried them forwards. The Chines doe gouerne their thips by a compaffe divided into China Comtwelue parts, and doe vie no Sea Cards, but a briefe description or Ruter, wherewith they fayle: pailes divided and commonly for the most part they never goe out of the fight of Land. They maruelled very into 1. parts. no much when that it was told them, that comming from Mexico vinto Philippinas, they were Mannets. three moneths at the Sea and neuer faw Land. Vpon the Sunday following, we had fight of the Land of China: fo that wee found all our Voyage from the Port of Bulsano, from whence wee had last departed, vnto the firme Land to bee one hundred and fortie leagues; and twentie leagues before they came in the fight thereof, they had founding at threefcore and ten and fourefcore fathom, and so waxed lesse and lesse vntill they came to the Land : which is the best and furest token they have to bee nigh the Land. In all the time of their Voyage the Captaine Omoncon with his Companie shewed such great courte fie and friendship to our men , as though they had beene the owners of the faid ship : and at such time as they did embarke themselves, hee gaue his owne Cabine that was in the sterne to the Friers, and vnto Pedro Sarmiento, and 20 to Miguel de Loarcha, hee gaue another Cabine that was very good, and commanded his companie in the ship that they should respect them more then himselfe: the which was in such fort that on a day at the beginning of their Voyage, the Fathers found them making of Sacrifice vnto their Idols, and told them, that all which they did was a kinde of mockage, and that they should worship out onely one God: and willed them to doe so no more. Who onely in respect of them did leaue it off, and not vie it after in all the Voyage : whereas before they did vie it enery day many times. Besides this, they would worship the Images that the Friers They leave did carrie with them, and kneele vpon their knees with great flew of denotion: who now the worthingdid carrie with them, and kneere vpon them after with great men of deceasing which ping of one having fight of the firme Land, in fo thort time, and paffed that finall Gulfe fo quietly, which biolity were the label to were was wont to bee very perillous and full of stormes: they did attribute it vnto the Prayers of flip another. 30 the Friers, their companions and Souldiers. As they drew neerer the Land, they might discouerfrom the Sea, a very gallant and well towred Citie, that was called Titubul, whereas the Titalight in the

King hath continually in Garrison ten thousand Souldiers, and is under the government of Province of the Pronince of Chinches. The next day wee came vnto a Watch-towre, which was fitua- Chinabes. ted vpon a Rocke at the entrie into a Bay, who had discouered our ship, and knew the Standard or Flagge to bee the Kings: and made a figne vnto feuen ships which were on the other fide of the Point, which was part of a companie ordayned for to keepe and defend the coaft, which were more then foure hundred. Straightwayes the Captaine of the leuen thips came forth to know what wee were. Hee iffued forth from behind the Point, with three thips that did rowe with Oares very fwift: and when he came nigh vnto them, he shot at them to make 40 them to amaine: the which Omoncon would not doe, for that he supposed (as afterwards hee did confesse) that he should be some man of little estimation, and not the Generall of the coast, But as he drew nigher vnto him, he did know him by the Flagge hee bare on the sterne, in the Foift wherein he was himselfe with his Souldiers, and straightwaies caused to amaine his tayles, and tarried for him. The Generall did the like, and stayed behind, fending a Boat for to bring the Captaine vnto him, and to declare what hee was, and from whence hee came. Omoneon did forthwith embarke himselfe into his Boat without any refistance, but rather with teare that he should be punished for that hee did flee from him. The Generall gaue him good entertainment.

This Generall was a goodly man of person, and was very well appeared and did fit in a Chaire in the sterne of his ship, the which was all couered to keepe away the Sunne: he comso manded the Captaine Omoncon to fit downe by him vpon the hatches, without Chaire or any other thing, who did obey him, although first he did refuse it with great modestie, as not worthie to haue that honour, which was not esteemed a little. After that he was set, hee gaue him to vnderstand in effect of all his voyage and successe, and in what extremitie see left Limahon, and also how that he carried with him the Friars and other Spaniards, which went to carrie the newes, and to treat of peace with the Vice-roy of Aucheo: vnto whom, and vnto the Gouerneur of Chincheo, he carried presents, sent from the Gouernour and Generall of the field of the llands Philippinas. When the Generall had heard this relation, he commanded the Boat to teturne and to bring them before him, that he might fee what manner of men they were of perfon, and the vie of the apparell : and likewife to latisfie himselfe of other delires that came in-60 to his mind by that which Omoneon had faid of them. The Fathers and their companions did obey the commandement, and did embarke themselves in the Boat, and came visto the ship whereas the Generall received them with great courteile after his fashion.

and ice the Generall of the field in Paganfinan, and carrie with him Sinfay, one that was known both of the one and the other: by whole meanes they might treate of such things that beff accomplished the confirmation of the peace and friendship betwixt the Chinois and the Spamards, as also of the death or imprisonment of Limabon. With this resolution, the one departed vnto Pagansman, whereas they arrived the same day, and the others vnto Manilla, whither they

Rouer, the better to enforme himselfe: hee determined (for that it was fough hand) to goe

went for victuals.

with him pledges to their content.

Omoncon remayned there certaine dayes, after the which he feeing that the fiege did long en-

dure, and that his staying might cause suspicion of his death: and againe, that the whole steet in did tarrie his comming to his intelligence of the Rouer, being fully perswaded and certaine, that he could not escape the Spaniards hand : they had him in fuch a straight, and that they would without all doubt, fend him vnto the King alive or dead (as they promifed him) hee was determined to returne vnto China, with the good newesthat hee had understood, with a determined nate intent, to return a againe and carrie the Rouer, after that they had him prisoner. With this resolution in the end of certaine dayes hee went vnto the Gouernour, certifying him of his pretence, whereby hee might giue him licence to put it in execution. The Gouernour did like well of his pretence, and did promise him the same, the which the Generall of the field did offer vnto him : and which was, fo foone as the Rouer should be taken prisoner, or slavne, to fend him vnto the King without any delay, or elfe, to put him whereas he should be forth-comming, 20 and to give them advertisement to send for him, or come himselse : and did offer him more, that for his voyage he should bee prouided forthwith of all things necessarie, without lacking of any thing. Omencon did give him great thankes for the same, and in recompence thereof did promife vnto the Gouernour, for that he vnderstood, and had intelligence of the Fathers, of Saint Augustine, that his Hopour, and his Antecessor, and the Adelantado, Miguel Lopez de Legafii, lad defired many times to fend vnto the Kingdome of China fome Religious men, to treate of the preaching of the Gospell, and to see the wonders of that Kingdome, and how that they never could put this their defire in execution, for that those Chinose which came this ther, although they did offer them what soener they would demand, fearing the punishment that should be executed on them according vnto the Lawes of the Kingdome : hee did promise to him, that he would carrie them with him voto China, fuch Religious men as his Honour would

that hee carried, to runne in no danger of the Law, neither the Vice-roy of Aucheo to thinke

euill thereof, and for a more securitie that they should not bee euill entreated, hee would leave

the Augustine Friers, who was elected but few dayes past: his name was Frier Alonso de Al-

The Gouernour being very joyfull of these newes, did therewith send for the Provincialist

mit throcar- command, and fome Souldiers, such as would goe with them: hoping with the good news Vato China.

A good pre-

names that went to China.

A token that fine cloth is esteemed.

warado, vinto whom hee declared the offer that the Captaine Omoneon had made vinto him, whereat he reioyced. They determined that there should goe but two Religious men, by refon that at that time there was but a few of them, and two Souldiers in their companie. The 46 Religious men should be , Frier Martin de Herrada of Pamplona, who left off the dispitie of Prouinciall: and in companie with him should goe, Frier Hieronimo Martin, who also was very well learned, and of the Citie of Mexico: the Souldiers that were appointed to beare them companie were called , Pedro Sarmiento, chiefe Sergeant of the Citie of Manilla of Vilorado, and Miguel de Loarcha, both principall men, and good Christians, as was convenient for that which they tooke in hand. There Fathers did carrie them for this purpose, that if they did remaine there with the King, preaching of the Gospell, then they should return with the newes thereof, to give the Gouernour to vinderstand of all that they had seene, and happened vinto them : and likewise vnto the King of Spanne, if need did so require. And the Gouernour in token of gratitude, did give vnto the Captaine Omoncon in the presence of themall, a gallant 50 Chaine of Gold, and a rich Robe of crimton in graine: a thing that her efteemed very much, and much more efteemed in China, for that it is a thing that they have not there. Belides this, Spanishbounty, they did ordayne a reasonable Present for to send voto the Governour of Chinches, hee that dispatched Omoneon by the commandement of the King , to goe and feeke the Rouer : also another Present for the Vice-roy of the Prouince of Ochian, who was at that present in the Citie of Aucheo. And for that Sunfay should not finde himselfe agreeued ( who was a Merchant well knowne amongst them, and perhaps might bee the occasion of some euill and disturbance of their pretence ) they gaue vnto him also another Chaine of Gold, as well for this, as also for that hee was ever a fure and perfect friend vnto the Spaniards. Then firaightwaies by the commandement of the Gouernour there were brought together all fuch Chiness as were 60 captine and taken from Limahon out of the Fort aforefaid, at Pagansinan, and gave them vnto Omencon, to carrie them free with him : and gaue likewise commandement that the Grnerall of the field, and all fuch Captaines and Souldiers that were at the fiege of the Fort, should give vnto him all such as did there remaine: binding himsefe to pay vnto the

#### ò. IIII.

Friar MARTIN DE HERRADA, and other Spaniards entertaynment in China, and their returne to the Philippinas.

Tanfujo, or

Ithin a little while after, Omoneon and his companie arrived at the Port of Tarfula hard by, voon Wednesday in the evening, being the fift day of July. This Tarfulo is a gallant and fresh Towne of foure thousand Housholders, and hath continually a

is a gattant and item a own to a compassed about with a great and strong wall, 10 and the gates fortified with plates of Iron, the foundations of all the houles are of Lime and Stone, and the walls of Lime and Earth, and some of Bricke: their houses within very fairely wrought, with great Courts, their streets faire and broad all paued. Before that Omencon die come vnto an anchor, they faw all the Souldiers and the people of the Towne were gathered together upon the Rockes that were joyning unto the Port, all armed ready unto the battell. amongst whom there was a principall Captaine, and three more of his companions, that were fent him by the Gouernour of Chinches, whom they doe call in their language, Influente, who had understanding of the comming of Omoncon, when the ship entred into the Port, Omoncon did salute the Towne with certaine Peeces of Artillerie, and discharged all his Harquebusses fixe times about, and therewithall tooke in her fayle, and let anchor fall. Then fraightwaies the 20 Captaine whom the Insuanto had sent, came abourd the ship, who had express commission, not to leane the companie of our people after that they were difembarked, till fuch time as they came whereas he was, but to beare them companie, and to prouide them of all things necessarie: the which he did accomplish.

Enfignes to

All these Captaines and Ministers of the King doe weare certaine ensignes for to be known. from the common people, to wit, broad Wastes or Girdles embossed after divers manners : some of Gold and Siluer, some of the Tortois shell, and of a sweet wood, and other some of Juorie. the higher estates hath them embroidered with Pearles and precious stones, and their Bonnets with two long eares, and their Buskins made of Sattin, and vnshorne Veluet.

Board-licence.

Then after, fo foone as they were come to an anchor in the Port, the Iustice did fend them 30 a Licence in writing for to come forth of the ship, as a thing necessarie, for that without it the Waiters or Guards of the water side, will not suffer them to put foot on land. This Licence was written vpon a boord whited, and firmed by the Iuftice, whose charge it is to give the Licence. The first lan-Then when they came ashoare, there were the Souldiers that were appointed by the Institute in a readinesse to beare them companie, and diddirect and leade them vnto the Kings houses of the faid Citie: the like hath every Citie almost throughout all the Kingdome, and there they bid lodge them. These houses are very great and very well wrought, and gallant, with faire Courts below, and Galleries aboue: they had in them Stanges or Ponds of water full of fifth The people of the Citie did preffe very much to see these strangers, so that with the preffe, as 49

also with the great heate, they were maruellously afflicted: which being perceived by the Iuflice, he gaue order that they might bee eased of that trouble, and caused Sergeants to keepe the doore, and their Yeomen to make relistance against the people. When night was come, the Juflice of the Citie did make a Banquet according to the fashion of the Countrey : and it was in their banquets the fashion following. They were carried into a Hall that was very curiously wrought, wherein were many Torches and waxe Candles light, and in the midft thereof was fet for every one of the Gueffs a Table by himselfe, as is the vie and fashion of that Countrey; every Table had his couering of Damaske or Sattin very well made, the Tables were gallantly painted, without any Table-clothes, neither doe they vie any, for they have no need of them, for that they doe eate all their victuals with two little flickes made of Gold and Siluer, and of a maruellous 50 odoriferous wood, and of the length of little Forkes, as they doe vie in Italie, with the which they do feed themselues so cleanly, that although their victuals be neuer so small, yet doe they let nothing fall, neither foule their hands nor faces. They were fet downe at thefe Tables in very good order, and in gallant Chaires, in such fort, that although they were every one at his Table by himselfe, yet they might see and talke one with another, they were served with diuers forts of cates, and very well dreffed, both of flesh and fish, as gamons of Bacon, Capons, Geese, whole Hens, and pieces of Beese, and at the last, many little baskets full of sweet meats made of Sugar, and Marchpanes all wrought very curioufly. They gaue them Wine of an indifferent colour and tafte, made of the Palm-tree. All the time that the supper lasted, there was in the Hall great store of Musicke of divers Instruments, whereon they played with great con- 60 fort, some one time and some another. The Instruments which they commonly doe vie, are Hoybuckes, Cornets, Trumpets, Lures, fuch as be vied in Spaine, although in the falhion there is some difference. There was at this Banquet (which endured a great while) the Captains

that was ordayned for their Guard, and the Captaine Omoncon, and Smfay. When Supper was

Wine of a

done, they were carryed into very faire Chambers, whereas were faire Beds, where they flept and eated them felues.

The next day in the morning, was brought vnto them their ordinarie victuals, and that in a bundance, as well of Flesh as of Fish, Fruits and Wine, to be dressed vnto their owne content, and according vato their manner they would take nothing for the fame, for fo they were commanded by the Infuantes. This was brought vnto them every day, fo longas they were there, & in the way when as they went vnto Chinches. The same day arrived a Captayne of fortie Ships in the same Captains of Port, and so soone as hee was ashoare, he went straight-wayes vnto the Palace for to see the form Shipsi firangers : who being aduertised of his comming, came foorth and received him at the Palace

10 gate, whereas, was vied betwixt them great courtefie. The Captayne came with great Majestie. with his guard of Souldiers and Mace-bearers before him, with great mulicke of Hoy-buckes, Trumpets and Drums, and two Whiffelers, or Typ-staues, that made roome, putting the reople afide : also there came with him two executors of Iustice, having each of them in their hands a Sergente-Set made of canes, which is an instrument wherewith they doth whip and punish offenders. When this Captayne came vinto the Palace gate, whereas the father Friars and their companions did receive him, he was brought on the shoulders of eight men very richly apparelled, in a chayre wrought of Iuorie and Gold, who stayed not till they came into the inner Chamber, whereas he did alight from the chayte, and went straight under a Cloath of estate, that was there originarily for the same purpose, and a Table before him : there hee sate downe, and straight-wayes arose vp,

and standing he did receive the strange ghests, who did courtese vnto him according vnto their fashion, which is to joyne their hands together, and to stoope with them and their heads downe to the ground : hee gratified them againe, with bowing his head a little, and that with great granitie. These speeches being finished, there was brought foorth certaine pieces of blacke Silke of twelue vares long a piece. And his Officers did put on the Friars shoulders each of them two. which was for either shoulder one, and was brought about their bodies and girt therewith : the like was done in order vnto the Spanish Souldiers, and vnto Omoncon, and Sinfay, and to their Interpreter. But vnto Omoncon, and Sinfay, was given vnto either of them a branch or Nofegay made of Siluer, which was fee vpon their heads, which is accustomable honour, that is done vnto fuch as have done some great enterprise, or such like. After that this ceremonie was done, they 20 played vpon the Instruments aforesayd, which came with the Captayne. In the meane time of

their mulicke, there was brought foorth great store of Conserues, March-panes, and things made of Sugar, and excellent good Wine : and to being on foote standing, hee caused them to eate, and hee himselfe from the Chayre whereas he sate, did give them to drinke every one in order, with out rifing vp, which is a ceremonie and token of great fauour, and of love.

This being done, hee arose from the chayre vnder the Cloath of state, and went and sate downe in that which was brought on mens backes, and with declyning of his head a little, hee departed out of the Hall and out of the house, and went vnto his owne house, whereas by the counsell of Omoncon, and Sinfay, within an houre after they should goe and visite him, the which they did: hee received them maruelloufly well and with great courtefie: who maruelled at his

40 great Maiestie and authoritie, for that Omoneon and Sinsay, when they did talke with him were vpon their kness, and so did all the rest. Hee gaue them againe in his owne house a gallant banquet, of divers forts of Conserves and Fruits, and excellent Wine of the Palme-tree, and did talke and reason with them in good fort, and was more familiar than at his first visitation.

After that the Fathers with their companions had remained two dayes in the Port of Tanfulo, the thrid day they departed in the morning towards (binches. At their going forth of the Town, they were accompanied with a great number of Soldiers, both Harquebulles & Pikes, and before them a great noyle of Trumpets, Drums, and Hoy-bucks, till fuch time as they came vinto the Riuers fide, whereas was a Brygandine prouided and made readie in all points, to carrie them up the River : all the streets alongst whereas they went, there followed them so much people that it 50 was innumerable, and all to fee them. All alongit the Rivers whereas they went, was feated with Villages very gallant and fresh, both on the one side and on the other.

At the end of the two leagues, they came vnto a great Bay, where was at an Anchor a fleete of more then one hundred and fiftie Ships men of warre, whose Generall was this Captaine, whom wee haue spoken of. At such time as the sleete did discouer them, they began to salute them, as well with great pieces of Artillerie, as with Harquebulles, and other kinde of paltimes, which commonly they doe vie at fuch times,

Our Spaniards did travell up the Riner more than three leagues, having continually both on the one fide and on the other, very many and faire Townes, and full of people. In the end of the three leagues, they went aland halfe a league from the Towne of Tangos, whereas straight-60 wayes all fuch things as they carryed with them, were taken upon mens backes, and carryed un-

to the Towne before them, whereas they were tarrying their comming, for to give them great entertaynment. At their going ashoare, they found prepared for the two Religious men, little Chayres to carrie them vpon mens backes, and for the Souldiers and the rest of their companions horse. The Fathers did refuse to bee carryed, and would have gone a foot, but Omoncon, and the

other Captayne would not confent thereunto. The Fathers obeyed their reasons, and entred into the Chayres, and were carryed with eight men a piece, and the other their companions with foure men a piece, according vnto the order given by the Governour. Those that carryed the Chayres, c. it with fo good a will, that there was ffriuing who should first lay hands to them. This Fowne of Tangoa, hath three thousand Souldiers, and is called in their language Co. an : at the entring in, it hath many Gardens and Orchards and a street where through they care ryed the Spaniards vnto their lodging, they aff rmed to bee halfe a league long, and all the ffreet whereas they went, was full of boards and stalles whereon was layd all kinde of Merchandife

very curious, and things to bee eaten, as fresh Fish and falt Fish of divers forts, and great abundance of Fowle, and Flesh of all forts, Fruits and greene Herbes in such quantitie, that it was to fufficient to ferue fuch a Citie as Simili is. They were brought vnto the Kings house, which was very great, maruelloufly well wrought with stone and bricke, and many Halls, Parlours, and Chambers, but none aboue, but all below. So foone as they were a foote, there was brought from the Captayneor Iuffice of the Towne, whom they doe call Ticoan, a meffage, bidding them welcome, and therewith a present, which was great store of Capons, Hennes, Teales, Duckes, Geese, Fleih of foure or fine forts, fresh Fish, Wine, and fruits of diners forts, and of so great quantitie, that it was sufficient for two hundreth men. All the which they would have given for a little coole ayre, by reason that it was then very hot weather; and againe, the great number of people that came thither to fee them did augment it the more. In the Euening the two Spa-Souldiers went foorth into the streets to walke abroad, and left the two Friars within their 20

lodging, vnto whom afterwards they did give intelligence of all things that they had seene, which did cause great admiration : the wall of the Towne was very broad, and wrought with china Women. lyme and ftone, full of loope-holes and watch-towers. And as they paffed through the ffreets there came foorth of a house a very honest man, as it seemed, who was very well apparelled and stayed them, for that in the same house, there were certayne Dames principall personages, that did fee them a farre off, and not content therewith, they did request them with great curtefie for to enter into the house, that they might the better fee them : the which they did ftraightwayes accomplish, and entring in, they were brought into a court, whereas was fet Chayres for them to fit downe, and the Ladies were there a little from them, beholding them with great honeftic and granitie. Then a little after, they fet them a banquet with March-panes and fweet 30 meats made of Sugar, which they did eate without any curiofitie, and drunke after the fame. The

banquet being done, they made fignes and tokens vnto them, that they received great content with their light, and that they might depart when that their pleasure was, the which they did, after that they had made great curtefies with thankes, for their friendship received of both parts, House of pleas. So after they had taken their leave, they went to see a House of pleasure, that was hard by the Towne-wall, wrought vpon the water, with very faire galleries and open lodges to banquet in, made of Masons worke, and therein many Tables finely painted, and round about it Cisterns of water, wherin was store of Fish, and joyning Into them Tables of very faire Alabaster, all of one

ftone, and the least of them was of eight spannes long : and round about them were brookes of running water, that gaue a pleafant found in the meane time they were banquetting, and nigh 40 thereunto many Gardens full of all forts of Flowers. And a little from that Aace they faw a S:one-bridge. Bridge all of Masons worke, and the stones very well wrought and of a mightie bignesse, they meafured fome of them, that were twentie and two and twentie foote long, and five foot broad, and seemed voto them, that it was a thirg impossible to bee layd there by mans hands. Of this bignesse, yea and bigger they did see layd vpon many other Bridges, in the discourse of their voyage, going to Chincheo and Aucheo. The next day in the morning when they were vp and rea-

die, they found in the house all things in a readinesse and in very good order, for their departure, as well their little Chayres, and Horse, as for men to carrie their stuffe and apparell, which did not a litle make them to maruell, how that every one of them with a waster vpon their shoulders, did divide their burthen in two parts, fixe roues before and fixe roues behinde, and did trauell 50 with the same with fo great ease and swiftnesse, that the Horse could not indure with them. They went vnto the Tiesan his house. They found him with great Maiestie, but yet gaue them great and good entertaynment. Hee did likewife put youn each of them, two pieces of Silke, in

the same order as the Gouernour of Tanfuso did.

From this Towne of Tangoa vnto Chincheo, is thirteene leagues, and so playne way that it Thriftie tillage giveth great content to travell it : in all the way they could not fee one spanne of ground but was tilled and occupied. The like they doe fay, is of all the ground that is in the whole Kingdome : it is full of people, and the Townes one so neere to another, that almost you can not indge them to bee many Townes but one, for that there was but a quarter of a league diffant, one Towne from another, and it was told vnto them that in all the Prouinces of the Kingdome, it is 60 peopled in the same order. All their ground they till is watred, which is the occasion of the fruitfulneffe therof, fo that they doe gather fruitall the yeere long, and our Spaniards did fee in all pla-

Plowing with ces whereas they came, that they were gathering of Rice, some new spraing up, some with eares, and some rice. Then they were gathering of Rice, some new spraing up, some with eares, and some ripe. They doe plough and till their ground with Kine, Bufalos, and Bulls, which are

very tame, and although they bee very great, yet be their hornes but of a spanne long and turning backwards to the tayle, in such fort that they cannot doe any hurt or harme with them ; they doe gouerne them with a coard that is made fast to a ring that is in their nose, and in like fort doe they gouerne the Bufalos. They doe feed them commonly in the fields of Rice, for that Paffunce they have no other graings, and all the time that they are feeding, a Boy doth ride on every one of them to disturbe them, that they doe no harme therein. But to eate the weedes and graffe

All the high-wayes are coursed with the shadow of very faire Orchards, which doe garnish it

very much, and they are planted in very good order : and among it them there are Shops, where-10 as is fold all manner of Fruits, to the comfort of all fuch as doe travell by the way, which is an infinite number, some on foote, some on horse-backe, and others in little chaytes. Their waters by the high-wayes, are very good and light. The fame day when they had trauelled halfe way, they faw a farre off comming marching rowards them in very good order, a fquadron of Souldiers, which at the first caused them to maruell, and to bee atrayd, till fuch time as they drew nigher, it was told vnto them, that it was the Captayne of the guard vnto the Infuanto, or Gouernour of Chinches, who came by his order to receive them with four hundred Souldiers, very well armed with Pikes and Harquebuffes, and well apparelled. So foone as the Captayne came vnto them, hee was mounted on a bay Horie, but of small flature, as they for the most part bee in all that Prounce, hee alighted and came vnto the Fathers, and his companions (who likewile 20 did alight from their little Chayres) and did falute the one the other with great courtefie.

The Captayne came very well apparelled with a Chayne of gold about his necke, a man of a good audacitie and understanding. Hard unto his stirrop hee had a Page that went with him, and carryed a great Tira fol, made of Silke, that did shadow him all ouer. Hee had before him Athing to great mulicke of Trumpets and Hoybuckes, whereon they played in great concord. This Cap- keepe away tayne with his foure hundreth Souldiers, did continually guard them for pompe, not necessitie; the Sunne; for the people may not weare weapons but the Souldiers. In this high-way continually there went and came many packe-Horses, laden with Merchandite and other things, but the most part of them were Mules. The high-wayes are very broad, that twentie men may ride together High wayes; on a ranke, and one not hinder another, and are all paued with great stones.

TPon a Saturday being the eleventh of July, came our Spaniards vnto the Citie of Chincheo, Chincheo hath foure houres before it was night. This Citie is of the common fort in that Kingdome, and sevente thoumay have feuencie thousand housholds. It is of great trafficke and well provided of all things, for sand houshold: that the Sea is but two leagues from it : it hath a mightie River running along it by it downe into the Sea, by which is brought by water and carryed downe all kinde of merchandile. There is Faire Bridge a Bridge ouer the fayd River, which is supposed to bee the fairest that is in all the world : it hath a draw bridge to ferue in time of warres, or for any other necessitie : the Bridge is eight hundred paces long, and all wrought with flones of two and twentie foote long, and fine foote broad, a thing greatly to bee maruelled at : at the entrie thereof, there were many armed Souldiers rea-

40 die to hight, who when they came within Harquebuffe shot did salute them in very good order, There was nigh vnto the favd bridge in the River riding at author, more then a thouland Ships A thouland of all forts, and to great a number of Boates and Barkes, that all the River was covered, and every one full of people that had entred into them for to fee the Caffillas, for fo they did call the Spa- River. wiards in that Country, for the ftreets in the Suburbes, nor in the Citie could not hold them, the number was so great, yet their streets are as broad as our ordinary streets in any Crtie in all Spaine, This Citie is compassed with a strong Wall made of stone, and is seven fathom high, and source fathom broad, & vpon the Gates many towers, wherein is placed their Attillerie, which is all their They have no @ strength, for that they doe not vie in their Kingdome strong Castles, as they doe in Europe. The vicot Castles houses of the Citie are all built after one fort and falhion, but faire, & not very high, by reason of Earthqu's to

50 the Earthquakes which are ordinarily in that Country. All the fireets (but especially that wherin they passed at their comming thicker) have on the one fide and on the other, Sheds, under the Rich Merwhich are shops, full of rich Merchandise and of great value, and very curious. They have in e- chandite. quall distance the one from the other, many triumphant Arches which doe set out the streets Triumphant very much, and is vied in euery principall fireet throughout all the Kingdome, in the which Arches. they have excellent Market-places, whereas is to bee bought all things that you will defire to be eaten, as well of Fish, as of Flesh, Fruits, Hearbs, Comfits, Conserues, and all things fo good cheape, that it is almost bought for nothing.

The Infuanto or Governour of the Citie, did fend that forthwith they should goe vnto his The Inflation House, for that hee had great delire to see them. In the midst of the streete, where was no lesse 60 number of people then in the other, whereby they entred into the Citie, they met with a Lop. tia, that came to entertaine them with great Maiestie, and had carryed before him many Banners, Mace-bearers, and Tipstaues, and others which carryed Sets or Whips, which they did trayle after them, made fast vnto long flickes, which were the Executioners, the which doe goe alwayes making of way, parting the people before the Loginas, as you have heard. The mainthe

An Affiftant. Serpents knot-

and company wherewith he came was to great, that they verily did beleeue him to be the Infinante: but being certified, they understood that it was one of his Counsellors that came from the Gouernours home to his owne house, which was in the same street whereas hee met with them. This Counsellor was carried in a Chaire of Juorie, garnished with Gold and with Curtaines of Cloth of Gold, and on them the Kings Armes, which are certayne Serpents knotted togo. ther (as hath beene told you.) But when he came tight against the Spaniards, without any flaying he made a figne with his head, and commanded that they should returne backe againe vnto his house, which was hard by : the Captaines did straight-wayes obey his commandement, and returned with them. The Counsellor entred into his house, which was very faire, hee had in i a faire Court, and therein a gallant Fountaine and a Garden. After him entred the Spaniards all 10 alone, the reft remayned without in the fireet at the Lopius commandement, hee entertayned them with very good words of semblance, and commanded a Banquet to be brought forth, and Wine to drinke, he began first both to eate and drinke. Then he commanded to call in the Captaine, vnto whom was given the charge to beare them companie, and didchide with him very fharpely and feuerely, because he did carrie them on foot (they could not understand whether it were done for a policie, or of a truth, although the effects wherewith heedid chide feemed of a truth) hee straight-wayes commanded two rich Chaires to bee brought forth to carry the Fathers, and to give vnto their companions Horses: the which beeing done, hee willed them to goe and visit the Gouernour, who did tarrie their comming: and that another time at more lei-They followed their way all along ft the street, which seemed vnto them to bee more fairer

then the other wherein they entred, and of more fairer houses and triumphane Arches; and also the shops that were on the one side and on the other, to bee better furnished with richer things then the others, in so ample fort, that what therewith, as also the great number of people which they saw, they were so amazed, that they were as people from themselves, thinking it to bee a Dreame. To conclude, after they had gone a good while in that ifreet, delighting their eyes with new things neuer feene of them before : they came into a great place, whereas were many Souldiers in good order with their Harquebuses, Pikes and other Armour in a readinesse, apparelled all in a Livery of Silke, with their Ancients displayed. At the end of this place, was there a very faire and sumptuous Palace, the gate was wrought of Masons worke of itone, very 30 great and full of figures or Personages, and aboue it a great window with an Iron grate all gik: they were carried within the gates, the Soulders and the people which were without number, remayned without and could not be auoyded but with great difficultie. When they were within the first Court, there came forth a man very well apparelled and of authoritie, and made signes with his hand vnto them that brought the Spaniards, that they should carrie them into a Hall that was voon the right hand, the which was straight-wayes done. The Hall was very great and faire, and at the end thereof there was an Altar, whereon were many Idols, and all did differ the one from the other in their fashion : the Altar was rich and very curiously trimmed with burning Lampes: the Altar-cloth was of cloth of Gold: and the fruntlet of the same.

After awhile that they had beene there whereas the Idols were, there came a Seruant 40 Stare-ceremo. from the Gouernour and faid vnto them in his behalfe, that they should fend vnto him the Interpreter; they straight-wayes commanded him to goe. And the Gouernour said vato him that he should adulie the Fathers and the rest of his companions, that if they would talke and treate of fuch bufineffe as they came for, that it must be done with the same ceremonie and respect, as the Nobles of that Prouince doe, vie to talke with him, which is vpon their knees (as afterwards they did fee many times vsed) if not that they should depart vnto the House whereas they were lodged , and there to tarrie the order that should be sent from the Vice-roy of Auchee.

The Spaniards were of divers judgements, striving amongst themselves a good while, but yet in conclusion, the Religious Fathers, whom the Gouernour of the Ilands had ordayned and sent as principals in this matter, and whose judgement they should follow, said, that they ought to 50 accept the condition, feeing that by no other meanes they could not come vnto that they pretended; and not to leave it off for matters of small importance, for that therein they make no offence vnto God, and it may be a meane vnto the converting of that mightie Kingdome.

When that the Insuante vinlerstood that the Spaniards would enter with the reverence accustomed, and in such order as was declared vnto them, hee straight-wayes commanded that they should come into the Hall whereas hee was, they entred into another Hall as bigge as the first : whereas were many Souldiers with their weapons in their hands in very good order, and richly apparelled, and next vnto them were many Tipstaues and Sergeants, with different Ensignes or Badges, all apparelled with long Robes of filker, garded and embroydered with Gold, and every one of them had a Helme on his head, some of tillier and other some of Tinne gilt ouer, which 62 was a gallant thing to fee : all had long haire and died yellow, which hung downe behind their eares vpon their backes : they were placed in very good order, and made a lane that the Spaniards might paffe thorough: then they came into a Gallerie, which was joyning vnto the Chamber where the Gouernour was, and there they heard such a noyse of Instruments of divers scree,

which endured a good while, and was of fo great melodie, that it feemed wnto them that they neuer before heard the like : which caused vinto them great admiration to see to great Majestie among it Gentiles. When the Muficke was ended, they entred into the Hall aforefaid, and had Great Mais Ry. not gone many fleps, when as they met with the Counfailer that met with them in the fireet afore-faid, and with him other two of his companions all on foot and bare-headed before the Gouernour, and their Entignes of Majestie left off: which is generally vied in all the Kingdome, the inferiour to make any shew when that he is before his Superiour. Then they made fignes vnto The Instantos them for to kneele downe, for that the Infnanto was nigh at hand in a rich Towre, under a Ca- person and en. nopie of great Riches, and did represent so great Majestie as the King himselfe : hee did enter- terraynment.

10 tayne them with tokens of great loue, and humanitie, and told them by their Interpreter, that they were very well welcome, and that hee did greatly rejoyce to fee them, with many other words of great fauour. This Gouernour was a man of goodly person, well fauoured, and of a merry countenance, more then any that they had seene in all that Countrey. Hee caused to bee put vpon the shoulders of the Fathers and of the Souldiers that were with him, every one of them two pieces of filke, which was croffed about them like Skarfes, and likewise to either of them a branch of filuer: the like courtefie he did vnto the Captaine Omoncon, and vnto Sinfay, and commanded to give vnto all their Servants every one of them a Mantle of Cotton painted. This being done, the Fathers did give vnto him the Letters which they carried from the Gouernour and Generall of the field, and a note of the Present that was sent him : crauing pardon for 20 that it was fo small, but time and oportunitie would not serue as then to fend vnto him a thing

of greater price and valour : certifying him, that if the friendship which they pretended did goe forwards, and come to be established, that then all things should be amended and amplified. Hee answered vnto their profices with words of great fauour, and made signes vnto them to arise, and to goe and take their reits there, whereas they were lodged: the which they did, and found all things in very good order and well furnished, as well of Beds as of all other necessaries, which was done by the commandement of the Gouernour. Before they departed out of the Palace the Captaine of the guard did carrie them vnto his Lodging, which was within the Court, and there he made them a Banquet with Conferues, and Fruits in abundance : the which being done, hee and other Gentlemen of the Palace did beare them company until they came to their Lodgings, 20 which they greatly defired, for that they were wearie of their Iourney, and also with the trou-

ble of the great presse of people that pressed on them in the streets, & otherwise for to see them: the which Captaine of the guard did appoint a Company of Souldiers for to guard them both night and day, the which was done more for Maiestie then for necessitie or securitie of their perfons. They had a Steward appointed to prouide them and all their company of all things neceffary, and that in abundance, and not to take of them any thing, which was given by particular commandement by the Gouernour.

The next day, many of the Gentlemen of the Citie did goe vnto the Spaniards to visit them, and fuch as could not goe themselues did send their Servants, bidding them welcome. The Spaniards did make answere, and gratified them all, in the which visitation they spent all the whole 40 day, having great admiration to see the good behaviour, nurture, and gallant demeanour of those Gentlemen, and the great discretion they had in the demanding of any thing they would know as also in their Answeres made to our requests. The next day the Infuanto sent a commandement wherein he willed the two Fathers to remayne in their Lodgings and take their eafe : but

the two Souldiers Pedro Sarmiento, and Miguel de Loarcha, should come and speake with him, and that they should bring with them their interpreter, for that hee had one there with him (who was a Chino, and vinderstood the Language of the Philippinas, but so badly, that they could not by his Interpretation talke of any matter of importance. So when they came thither, they were brought whereas he was, but with leffe ceremonie, he requested them to declare vnto him the whole circumstance of the comming of Limaton the Rouer, vnto the Ilands, and how the Spaniards dealt with him: that although he had beene informed particularly in all things, by the

50 Captaine Omoncon and Sinfay, yet he was in a lealousie that they told him not the truth. Hee was nothing deceived in that he suspected,) for after that our Souldiers had made a true Relation of the comming of the Rouer vnto Manilla, and of all the rest, hee found that they differed very Vainc glory. much, the one from the other, for that they did attribute it wholly vinto themselves to get honour and benefit: but the Instanto like a wife man straight-wayes vnderstood their pretence, But when that he perceived that Limaton was neither dead nor Prisoner, but onely belieged, he offered vnto them that if they would return againe vnto Pagansinan vpon him whereas he was, he would give vnto them five hundred ships of warre, with people sufficient to serve both by Sea and Land, and more if they would request. They answered him, that all such cost and labour were but in vaine, for that the Generall of the field who hath him in siege, with the people and 60 thips that he hath are lufficient to end that Enterprize, and to fend him hither alive or dead, and

that long before that their fleet should come thither. And besides this, their Ilands were poore Bo itingof victuals, and could not sustaine so great an Armie many dayes. Beeing satisfied with these reasons, he gaue place that the Interpreter which they brought should come in where as they

Morrified

Table-rite.

were, for he remay ned at the doore without, for that hee would bee fully certified to avoid the fulpitious doubt he had before he come in prefence, yet he did helpe them very much. So when their Interpreter was come in, the Spaniards feeing good occasion and oportunitie for to declare that which passed the day before, betwire them and the Fathers, touching the speaking vito him on their knees: and feeing, as it feemed vnto them, that he was at that time in a good mind for to heare them, they did vtter vnto him all the whole contention (after that they had declared many reasons of great consideration, to give them to understand that it was not convenient to doe it, but especially to religious men, who were there as principals ouer the rest, vnto whom the King of Spaine (their Lord) himselfe doth stand on foot, when as they doe intreate of any matter, although it be but of small importance : for that they are Priests and Ministers of God, 10 whom he doth worship and reuerence.

The Infnanto with a merry countenance did answere them, that wnto that time hee vnderflood no more of them, then in that he was informed by the Captaine Omoncon, and did not acknowledge them to bee any other but Castillas : without knowing wherefore they came . nor from whom, for lacke of the Letters fent from their Gouernour, and Generall of the field, the first time that hee spake with them : neither had hee any knowledge of the custome of their Countrey : yet notwithstanding, that which hath passed heere, without any exception of perfon, if they would take it in good part, in that which is to come shall be amended and from that day forwards, at all times when seuer it were their pleasure to come of themselves, or at such time as they were fent for, for to talke with him as they doe vie in Castilla or Spaine, vnto such of their dignitie and vocation, the which hee granted with a very good will; although hee not grant vnto any that pre-eminence, no not vnto a Vice-roy, except he were an Ambalfador fene

from fome King.

The next day, the Gouernour called a Gentleman of his House voto him, and commanded him to go and visit the Spaniards, and to informe himselfe of them if that they lacked any thing, And also that he should in his name inuite them for the next day following to dine with him in his House. This Gentleman went vnto them and accomplished his message : and the Spaniards answered, kissing his hand for the great care he had of them : they were carryed into a Hall that was below in the second Court, whereas were many Chaires of Veluet and Tables that were painted with their frontals before. In the first Chaires they caused the Friers to fit downe, euery one at a Table by himselfe, and each of them other fixe Tables, placed in order, compassing round like a Circle : then were the Spanifb Souldiers fet in the same manner, and each of them had fine Tables, and next vnto them the Captaine of the guard belonging vnto the Gouernour. and two other Captaines : and every one of them had three Tables. For that it is the cuftome A Cornedy & of that Countrey to make a difference in the qualitie of the gueffs, by the number of the Tables. other ports. All these were placed in circle or compasse (as aforesaid) that they might see one another. In the midft betwixt them there was a round compaffe, whereas was represented a Comedie with much pustime, and indured all the Dinner time, and a good while after. There was also great ftore of very good and excellent Muficke, accompanied with gallant voyces, also Jesters with Puppers, and other things of great pastime, to drive the time away. On the first Table was set to every one of the guests, little Baskets wrought with Gold and Silver wyre, full of sweet meates made of Sugar, as March-panes, Caftles, Pitchers, Pots, Difhes, Dogges, Buls, Elephants, and other things very curious, and all gilt : befides this there were many Diffies full of fielh, as Capons, Hennes, Geefe, Tcales, Gamons of Bacon, pieces of Beefe, and other forts of fieth wherewith all the Tables were replenished, faming that whereat they did sit to dine, which was replenished with victuals that was dreffed (for all the other was raw) and was of so great abundance, that there was at times more then fiftie diffies, and they were ferued with great curiofitie. They had Wine of divers forts, and of that which they doe make in that Country of the Palme-tree, but of so great excellencie, that they found no lacke of that which was made of Grapes. The Dinner endured foure houres, in fo good order that it might have beene given vnto any Prince in the World.

Their Servants and Slaves that they brought with them at the fame time, did dine in another Hall nigh ynto the fame, with fo great abundance as their Matters. When Dinner was done, the Gouernour commanded the people to come vnto him, with whom hee did talke and common with great friendship, and good conversation, and would not confent that they should kneele downe, neither to be bare headed. So after that he had made vnto them tokens of friendship, and detayned them a while, in demanding of many things, laftly, he told them that there was an order come from the Vice-roy of Auche, that they should goe thither with great speed. So hee tooke his leaue of vs with great friendship and courtefie. At their going forth out of the Hall, they found the Captaine that did dine with them, and with him many other Gentlemen that 60 tarried their comming for to beare them company vnto their Lodging : going before them many Serumts, that did carrie the raw meate, that was voon the other Tables over and above that which they did eate on, the which was done for great Maiestie, and a Ceremonie very much viel in that Kingdome, so many times as they doe make any Banquet.

When

When they came vnto their Lodging they found that the Infuance had fent them a very good Prefent, in the which was for every one of them foure pieces of filke, and counting chifts with other things, and certayne painted Mantles for the Servants and Slaves. After they had taken their leaue of the Captaines and Gentlemen that did beare them company home, they beganne with great toy to put all things in order for their Journey the next day following.

He next day in the morning, before that the Spaniards were stirring, there was within the House all things necessary for their Journey, as well of Litter chaires, as of Horses and Men for to carrie them, and their stuffe, the which they did with fo good a will (as aforefaid) that they did fall out and thrine amongst them selves, who should be the first that should receive their

10 burthen. So all things beeing in good order, they departed, having in their company the same Captaine and Souldiers, that vnto that time had beene their guard, vntill they came vnto the Citie of Ancheo, whereas the Vice-roy was. This day by reason they understood that they should depart, the prease and multitude of the people was so great, that although they had ducker. Tip-staues before them, to beate the people away and to make roome, yet was it almost night before they could get out of the Citie : fo that they were constrained to remaine in a Towne there hard by all that night, whereas by the commandement of the Governour they were very well lodged, and their Supper made readie in very good order, as it was in feuen dayes together. till fuch time as they came vnto Aucheo, without taking for the fame, or for any other thing necessarie for their sustentaion, any price or value. There went continually before them Post

20 with a prouision from the Gouernour, written in a great board wherein was declared who they were, and from whence they came, and commanding that there should be prouided for them all things necessarie in abundance, vpon the Kings cost, which was the occasion that so much people came for to fee them, that in the high-waies they were many times disturbed with great trouble, the third day they came vnto a Citie which was called Megon , which was formetimes Megon a great the head government, the which was of forty thousand housholds, but a great part thereof was Citic spoyled dispeopled : the occasion thereof they told vs (and was) that about thirtie yeares past, the lapo by lapanders. nes, who brought for their Guides three Chinois, came vpon that Citie (to reuenge theinfelies of Strategen

an injurie that was done vnto them) che which they put in execution with fo great fecrecie and policie, that they made themselves Lords of the Citie without any danger or burt vnto them-30 selues : for that fiftie Iapones, men fit for that purpose, did apparell themselues in Chinois apparell without being knowne, and came vnto a Gate of the Citie, whereas the Souldiers that had the charge thereof were void of all suspition. And within a little while after that, followed two thousand that did dis-imbarke themselves in a secret and vnknowne place, and came in very fecret order, because they would not be discouered, and did befet that gate of the Citie, whereas their companions were, which they fent before : who fo foone as they faw them nigh at hand. drew out their weapons, the which they carried hid under their apparell, & fet upon the Soldiers (that were void of feare and vnarmed) with so great furse and force, that they being amazed were easily slain, so that they were Lords of the Gate, whereas they left very good guard, and followed

40 their victorie, and made themselues Lords of the Citie, without any danger vnto their persons. and did possesse the same certaine daies, and did sacke the same in spite of them all, with great harmeand loffe vnto the Inhabitants thereof, vntill fuch time as the Vice-roy of Anches did letile an Armie together of threefcore and ten thusand men, but they seeing that they could not defend themselues against so many, in one night they left the Citie and went vnto their ships, whereas they had left them in very good order, and carried with them the spoile of the Citie, leauing it beaten downe.

So loone as they came thither, the Friers remayned in their Lodgings, but Pedro Sarmiento and Mignel de Loarcha went to vifit the Gouernour, ving the Spanis courtefie with him : and he received them with great joy and courtefie. After they had taken their leave and returned vitto their Lodgings, the Gouernour fent to visit them El Tyn, who is the ancientest of his Coun-

50 cell. At their depirture from this Citie, trauelling towards Ancheo, they paffed ouera mightie Admirable great River, by a Bridge all made of itone : the goodlieft and greatest that ever they had seene, whose greatnesse did cause wonderfull admiration, so that they stayed and did measure it from one end to another, that it migt be put among ft the wonders of that Countrey, which they tooke a note of. They found that it was one thousand and three hundred foot long, and that the leaft stone wherewith it was built, was of seventeene foot, and many of two and twentie foot long, and eight foote broad, and feemed vnto them a thing impossible to bee brought thither by mans art, for that all round about fo farre as they could fee, was plaine ground without any Mountaines : by which they judged them to be brought from farre. When they were paffed that Bridge, they travelled all the rest of the day till night vpon a Cawsie that was very broad and 60 plaine, and on both fides many Victualling Houses, and the fields sowed with Rice, wheate, and

other Seeds : and fo full of people as in the streets of a good Towne or Citie After they had travelled more then halfe a league in the Suburbs of the Citie of Auchee, they met with a Post that came from the Vice-roy: who brought order that they should re-



300

mayne in a house that was appointed for them in the fayd Suburbes. So soone as they were alighted, there came a Gentleman to visite them, sent from the Vice-roy to bid them welcome. and to know how they did with their sourney, and also to see that they were well provided for that night, of all things necessarie, and that in abundance. After this Gentleman, came other Captaynes to visite them, and brought with them great store of Conserues, Wine and Fruit; which is a common custome among st them, when that they goe in the like visitation, and it is carryed by their fernants in little Baskets very curioufly wrought, or elie in Barrels made of earth all gilt. Within two houres after their comming thither, there came another meffeneer from the Vice-roy, with many men laden with Capons, Hennes, Geefe, Teales, gamons of Bacon and Conferues of divers forts, and of great abundance, fufficient for one hundred men to Ja suppe that night, and for their dinner the next day. The next day in the morning very earely. there came much people vinto their lodging, fent by the Vice-roy, and brought with them two rich Chayres, for to carrie the Fathers in, and the Gurtaines tyed vp, that they might the better bee feene, and for their companions very good Horfes, fadled after the fashion which they doe vie. They foorthwith made hafte for to depart, and alchough they made great speed, yet were they a good houre and a halfe, before they could come vnto the gates of the Citie, and seemed wnto them that they had trauelled two leagues in the Suburbes: well peopled, faire houses, and many shops full of Merchandise. Before they came vnto the Gates, they passed a mightic River three times over Bridges, that

were great and very faire, and the River so deepe, that great Ships came up the same, but their 20 mastes stooping downe, to passe vnder the bridges. This Citie is the head Citie of all the Prouinge, verie rich and fertile, and many Townes belonging vnto it, and but eight leagues from the Sea. They had no leafure to tell the Souldiers, but they faw that from the Gate vntill they came vnto the Vice-royes Palace on both fides, which was a good way, to bee full of them, and all richly apparelled and of one colour. The people that were at the windowes and in the ffreet, betwixt the houses and the Souldiers were so great a number, that it seemed to be doomes day, and that all the people in the world were there joyned together in that fireet. When they came unto the Palace which was two houres after day, the Gentlemen that were their guides, did cause the Spaniards to enter into a roome which was hard by, till such time as the Cate was open, for that it is open but once a day, and so continue no longer time then the audience endu- 30 reth, which is done by the Vice-roy once every day, and that is but a small time. But first, beforc he doth enter into audience, there is shot off foure peeces of Artillerie, with a great noyle of Trumpets, Drums and Waytes. And there is no day that paffeth without audience, as our people did see by experience so long as they were there, and were likewise informed of others. The houre being come, and the ceremonie done as aforefayd, the Gates were opened, and there was in the Court many Souldiers, apparelled in the fame linerie that those were of in the street, From the midst amongst them came foorth a Gentleman, who was as it was told them, the Captayne of the guard of the Vice-roy, who came with great grauitie and authoritie, towards the place whereas our people were, and after they had faluted the one the other, hee made fignes vnto them, that they should goe towards the gates of the Palace. When they were with- 40

that they should doe the like.

once a day.

Stite.

Then straight-wayes came foorth of the Hall a man apparelled in a long Robe, of good perfonage, and asked of the Spaniards, if they would speake with the Vice-roy, and they answered, yea : then asked hee againe from whom they came, and by whom they were fent, they answered, that they were fent by the Gouernour of Philippinas, who was feruant vinto the mightielt 50 King in all Christendome. When he had this answer, he returned agains into the Hall, and within a little while after he came foorth, and bad them come in, but gaue them to understand, that in entring into the hall whereas the Vice-roy was, that they should kneele downe, and talke with him in that order, till hee commanded to the contrarie, if they would vie this Ceremonie. that then they should come in, if not, that they should returne backe againe. They sayd, that they would observe the order given vnto them. Therewith hee went in, who seemed to bee the Mafter of ceremonies, making a figne that they should follow after him, and doe that which hee willed them to doe. At the entring in at the doore, they stayed a little, and then kneeled downe right ouer against there whereas the Vice-roy sate, in a Chayre very high like vnto a Throne, with a Table before him, and was in fo darke a place that almost they could not see his sace very 60 well. On the one fide of him, there were fome like vnto Heralds of Armes, with Scepters in their hands, and on the other fide, two men of a gallant comlinesse armed with Corslets, made of scales of Gold downe to the calfe of their legges, with Bowes in their hands of gold, and Quiuers at their backs of the same. Both the one and the other were vpon their knees. There was

in the first Court, which was great and wrought with mightie pillars, there was a great number

of Souldiers, and many Sergeants, that entred into another great court, and mounted up a payre

of stayres that was on the one fide, whereas all the people were with great filence, fairing the

Captayne of the guard, who went with our people till they came to the gates of the Hall, where

was the Vice-roy, at which gate hee stayed with his head discovered, and made signes vinto ours

voon the Table before him, paper and all things necessaries to write: which is an ordinarie vse Lions he among ft them at all times, when there is any publike audience, and on the one fide of the board Armersot that among it them at an times, which was (as after they vinderstood) the Armes of that Province. Province, per. So firaight-wayes hee made fignes vnto them to draw neere, which they did, and kneeled hapsthisdedowne a little from the Table which was whereas the Master of Ceremonies did will them, In coued Pinte, this fort they began to talke with him by their Interpreter, and told them the occasion of their who mistooke this fort they began to talke with him by their interprets, and from whom and wnto whom they were fent. But them (feeing comming into that Citie and Kingdome, and from whom and wnto whom they were fent. But them common hee made fignes vnto them that they should arise, the which they did with a very good will, on pillars &c.) and did perfeuer in their intent. But the Vice-roy did cut them off before they could make an to be the Kings 10 end, and asked if they had brought any Letter from their King, vnto the King his Lord, whom Armer, which they would goe to fee and talke with ; but when they answered no, hee ftraight-waves tooke Werebut of his leave of them, faying, that they were welcome, and that they should depart vnto their lode ines and to take their eafe, for that afterwards they should have occasion to declare their mindes vnto him, and hee would give them their answer, for that the King was farre off, and it requireth along time to come whereas hee is, but he would write vnto him, and according vnto his commandement, he would make them answer. And therewith hee tooke the Letter, and the memoriall of the prefent, and commanded in his prefence, to put about the neckes of the Friare in manner of a scarfe, to either of them fixe pieces of Silke, and vnto the Soldiers their compani-

ons, and vnto Omoncon, and Sinfay, each of them foure pieces, and to every one of their feruants 20 two a piece, and to give voto the two Friars and the Souldiers, Omoncon, and Sinfar, every one of them two branches of Siluer.

With the Silke about their neckes, and with the branches in their hands, they returned out of the Hall and downe the stayres the way they came, and so through the court into the streets, from whence they law them that the Court gate with fo great a noyle, as when they did open it. From thence at the request of Omoneon, and Sinfay, they went vnto the house of Totoc, who Totoc. is the Captayne generall of all the men of Warre, and vnto the house of Cagnitoc, who is the chiefe Standard-bearer : their boufes were nigh the one the other, very faire and great. They found them with as great Maiestie as the Vice-roy, and in the same order, with a Table before them, and had on each tide of them armed Souldiers, kneeling on their knees. Yet did they not

20 vieour men with the courtefie that the Vice-roy vied, to cause them to stand vp, which was the occasion, that straight-wayes they made a show that they would depart and bee gone, complain ning of Omoncon, and Smfay, for that they did carrie them thither, and told them with anger, that the Governour of Manila, did intreat them in a different lort, who was there refident for the mightieft Prince in all the world, and they but easie Merchants, neither was their going thither to bee equalled, voto the benefite that they came thither for. This discontent the which they received, was the occasion that they would not goe to make any more visitations, although the fayd Ommeon, and Sinfay, for their owne interest, would have carryed them to the houses of other Officers, and Gentlemen of the Court,

At their comming thither, they found all their stuffe in good order, and their dinner marvei-Olous well prouided, and the whole house hanged and trimmed, as though it had beene for the Kings owne person, with many wayting men and Souldiers, those which did guard them both day and night, and hanging at the doore two tables or boards (commanded by the Vice-roy) whereon was written who they were, that were there lodged, and from whence they came, and wherefore, and that none whofoeuer, should bee so hardie as to offer them any wrong or diflurbance, vpon payne to bee for the same offence seuerely punished. In this house they were more in quiet, then in any other place, whereas they had beene, neither did the people give Reports of Pethem so much trouble, by reason of the great care which the Judges had in putting order for the quin, called fame, by the commandement of the Vice-roy, yet was it the greatest Towne and most populed, of all that Province (although in other Provinces there bee that be much bigger) and is affirmed Suntiem. that the Citie of Taybin, or Suntiem, (there whereas the King and his Court is resident) hath Nantin, or

three hundred thouland housholds, and yet there is a bigger Citie in the Kingdome cal- Nanquin. See

This Citie of Muches, hath a very faire and firong Wall made of stone, which is five fathom Auches descrihigh, and foure fathom broad, the which was measured many times by our people, for that bed, they had a gate out of their lodging that did open to the fame. This wall is all covered over with tyles to defend the rayne-water for hurting of it, which could not to the contrarie but receiue damage, for that there is no lyme vied in the whole wall. They have not one Cattle in all this Citie, neither is there any yield in all that Kingdome, for all their force and strength is in their Gates, the which bee made very strong, with a double wall, within very broad, betwixt the which are continually many Souldiers, such as doe keepe watch and ward both day and 60 night. Vpon these gates they have much Ordnance, but very ill wrought. The whole wall is Ordnance bad

full of battlements, and thereon written the names of fuch Souldrers as are bound to repayre this ther in the time of necessitie. At enery hundred paces they have lodgings, the which are very huge and great : there whereas in the time of necessitie doe remayne and dwell their Captaynes,

Tabin also and

China Feast begun with Sunne-superstition. Tumblers. Play. LIB. II to long as their troubles doe indure, all the wall is fortified with two great mores or ditches, the The Cart

d use noted one within and the other without, the which they doe fill at all times when they please, by fluces which they have from the River for the same purpose, and dee serue of water almost all the houses in the Citie, whereas they have their stanges for the most part full of Fish. This mightie Officis si uated in a great playne, and compassed round about with mightie Rockes and Mountaines, which is the occasion that it is not so healthfull, and the Inhibitants say, that it is by re son of the Mountaines, and many times it is over-flowen in the winter, by spring-tydes from the River. And in that yeere that this doth happen, it doth defirey and ruinate agreat Immigations. part of the Citie, as it was at that time when our people did fee it, for that in the winter before they were troubled with these great tydes, which did them much harme.

Vice-royes

The next day after that our people came into the Citie, the Vice-rey did fend to invite them to dinner to his owne house, whereas he made them a great banquet in the forme following. At their comming vnto the Palace there came forth a great number of Gentlemen, fernants vnto the Vice-roy, to bid them welcome, with great flore of muficke and tokens of mirth. Bung entred into the first Court, they brought them into a mightie Hall that was maruellously well trimmed, wherein was a great number of Tables fet in fuch order, as they were in the banquet that was made them by the Gouernour of Chuncheo, (as hath beene told you) although the number and farniture did farre excell the other. But before they did fit downe, there came vnto them two Captaynes principall men, vnto whom the Vice-roy had committed the charge of the banquet, to doe all things in his name, for that it is a custome in that Kingdome, that Noble men zo must not be present in their banquets they make. So the charge was given vnto them, to make them be merrie, & to bid his ghetts welcome. When they came vnto them they vied great courtefie, and paffed away the time in gallant discourses, till it was time to go to dinner, and that they began to bring in their victuals. Then before they did fit downe, the Captaynes did take each of them a cup in his hand, in manner of a Sorlue, as they doe vie, and being full of Wine, they went together whereas they might discouer the Heaven and offered it vnto the Sunne, and vnto the Saints of heaven, adding thereunto many words of prayers : but principally they did request that the comming of their new ghests might be profitable visto them all, and that the friendship which they did pretend to establish, might be for good both vnto the one and to the other. This their prayer being done, they did spill out the Wine making a great courtefie, then were they to ftraight-wayes filled againe, and making reference vnto their ghefts enery one by himfelfe, they let the Cups downe voon the Tables whereas the Fathers should dine, whereas they were fete. uerie one by himfelie. This being done, the first feruice was fet vpon the boards, and the Captaynes were fet at other Tables. The time which the banquet indured (which was very late) there was great store of muricke of divers Instruments, as of Vials, Gitterns, and Rebuckes, and

with them many lesters did make them merricat their dinner. The which being done, the Liyd

Captavits did beare their ghests companie out of the Palace, whereas they did anew invite them

to dinner for the next day, in the same Hall: they obeying their request did come, whereas was

made unto them a banquet more notable than the first. This day at the banquet was present the

Totog. In this second banquet they had as the day before, very much musicke, and a Comedie 10

that indured long, with many prettie and merrie iests : there was also a Tumbler, who did his

feates very artificially, as well in vauting in the ayre, as vpon a staffe that two men did hold on

their shoulders. Before the Comedie did begin, by their Interpreter the signification thereof was

Idolatrous rice to the Same.

Comedies. Tomblers.

Taibino: Pa. qua; asuceff 1 called, other by real on of diuers linguapella:me

ges or because they give apnames (as the Tartars call the Cambain, that

All things good cheape.

told them, that the better they might content themselves in the conceiving. The next day they fent the prefent, and those who carryed it in, did afterward give our prople to understand that in opening the prefent, there was a note thereof taken before a Notatie, and straight-wayes put in againe where it was taken out, before the fayd Notarie and other witneffes, the which being done, hee fested it vp, and fent it vnto the Citie of Taybin, vnto the King and his Counfell, for that they have a rigorous Law in that Kingdome, that doth prohibiteall fuch as haue any office of Gouernment, to receiue any present of what qualitie foeuer it bee, 50 without licence of the King or of his Counfell. This is conformal le vnto that, which the Gouernour of Chin, hee did in the presence of our people.

The next day following, the Vice-roy did tend to visite them, and to aske of them a Sword, a Harquebusse and a Flaske : for that hee would cause others to bee made by them, the which they did fend, and afterwards understood, that they had counterfeited the same, although not Citi.) thereto. in fo perfect manner.

Then after a time our people feeing, that their being in that Citie feemed to be long and like to be longer, they did procure to drive away the time in the best manner they could, and went abroad into the Citie, and did by either of them that which they thought best. Whereof they found great abundance, and or to small price, that they bought it almost for nothing. They bought 60 many Bookes that did intreat of divers matters, which they brought with them to the Ilanis. The next day they went to fee the Gates of the Citie, and all fuch curious things as were to bee feene, fofarre as they could learne or understand, which were many. But amongst them all, they one Chappell. faw a jumptuous Temple of their Idols, in whose chiefe Chappell they counted, one bundred

and eleuen Idols, besides a great number more that were in other particular Chappels, all were of Three besided and cream toos, one and and gilded; but in especiall three of them that were planinge. ced in the midft of all the rest, the one had three heads proceeding out of one bodie, the one loo- A woman with king on the other in full face, the second was the forme of a Woman with a Child in her armes, childe, the third of a Man apparelled after the forme and rashion, that the Christians doe paynt the Apofiles. Of all the rest some had four armes, and some had fixe, and other eight, and other some maruellous deformed monsters. Before them they had burning Lamps, and many tweet per-

fumes and finels, but in especiall, before the three above specified.

But when that the Vice-roy did understand, that our people did goe viewing the Citie gates Vice royes In and Temples (and perceiveth that they that gave him the notice did suspect it, that it was to icalouse. some ill intent) therewith hee straight-wayes commanded, that they should not goe forth of their lodging, without his licence : and likewife commanded the Captayne that was their guard not to confent thereunto, as he had done, and likewife that none should carrie them any thing for to fell for he that did it should be punished with whipping. Yet not with standing, they had euery day very sufficient necessaries for their personages in such ample wise, that there did always remayne, and not lacke. In this closenesse and keeping in, they suffered many dayes with much fadnesse, and oppressed with melancholicke humours, to see that their purpose wherefore they went thither feemed to be long, and enery day was worfe and worfe. Yet notwithstanding they did paffe it ouer in the best wife they could, in committing it with heartie zeale vnto God, for

whose honour and glory they did attempt that voyage, and prayed vnto him for to moone their 30 hearts to confent, that the religious Fathers might remayne in that Countrey, for to learne the language (as they had begun many dayes before) by which meanes their foules might be faued, and clearely deliuered from the tyrannie of the Deul , who of truth had them in possession, So after many dayes, that they had remayned in that close estate, as aforesayd, they determined for to goe and talke with the Vice-roy, and to bee fully refolued, either to tarrie or returne from whence they came, but were not permitted.

In this order they remayned in the Citie certayne dayes, and for to conclude, either to stay there, or depart the Kingdome, they were resolute, and determined to write a Letter vnto the the Vice-roy. They could finde none that would write this letter for them, although they would

30 haue payed them very well for their paines. Till in the end, by great request and prayings, the Captayne Ononcon did write it for them, and straight-wayes departed vnto the Citie of Ampin, Ampin, that was not farre off, to put away the suspition they might conceiue, that hee did write the letthat was not tarroun, or possible to the first territory of the periodenture the Vice-roy would take it in ill part. Their letter being written, they people in great territory of the periodenture the first territory of the periodenture that the first territory of the periodenture that the periodenture the periodenture that the p found great difficultie in fending the same, for that there was none that would carrie it, neither subjection would they consent, that our men should enter into the Palace to deliver it. But in conclusion, what with requests and gifts, they perswaded their Captayne of their guard to carrie it, who did deliuer the same vnto the Vice-roy, in name of the Castilles, saying, that he tooke it of them to bring it vnto him, for that they did certifie him, that it was a thing that did import very

much. Hauing read the letter, he answered that he would give the King to vinterstand thereof, 40 ashee faid at the first time. And in that, touching the Friars remaining in that Countrey to preach, at that time he could make them no answer, for that in such matters, it was first requisite to have the good-will of the Royall Countell. Yet would hee make answer visto the Letter they brought from the Gouernour of Manilla, and that they might depart, and returne againe at such time as they brought Limation prisoner or dead, the which being done, then shall the friendship be concluded which they doe pretend, and to remayne and preach at their will. With this anfwer they remayned without all hope to remaine there, and did incontinent prepare themseliles for to depart from Manilla, and bought many bookes to carrie with them, wherein was comprehended all the fecrets of that Kingdome. By reason whereof, they might give large notice vinto the royall Maiestie of King Philip. The which being understood by the Vice-roy, who had fet

30 fpyes to watch their doings, he did fend them word that they should not trouble themselves in the buying of bookes, for that he would gue them freely, all such bookes as they would define to haue : the which afterwards hee did not accomplish.

In the meane time that they stayed in this Citie, amongst all other things that they underflood, to drive away the time was one, it was given them to understand that in one of the Prifons, there was a Portugall prisoner, who was taken in a ship of the Iapones, with others of his Nation, who were all dead in the Prifon, and none left aftue but hee alone. Our people being very definous for to fee him, and to learne of him some secrets of that Country, for that hee had A Paragal private of the country of the cou beene there a great while, they did procure to talke with him, asking licence of the supreame soner. ludge and Lieutenant vinto the Vice-roy, who did not onely refuie to grant it them, but 6c did make diligent inquirie who they were, that did give them to understand thereof, for to

Vpon a sodaine there came newes vnto the Citie, that the Rouer Limahon, was vpon the coast of Chineheo, vsing his old accustomed cruelties, and how that he had spoyled and robbed a Towne . Pon the fea coalt. This newes was throughout all the Citie, and appeared to bee true, touching

Su:pition of

304

Tascay another the effect of the deed : yet falle touching the person, for that the Rouer was called Tascay, an Pirat, taken to enemie, and contrarie vinto Limahon : but a friend vinto Vintoquian, of whom wee have spoken of. But thereupon the Vice-roy, and all of the Citie, were comformable in the suspition that they had received, which was that our people were come into that Kingdome vpon some euill pretence, and to fee the fecrets thereof, to fome euill end, which was the occasion that from that time forwards, they shewed them not so good countenance as they did before. These newes was not fo foone come, but straight-wayes the Vice-roy did fend for Omoncon, (who was then returned from his vifiting) and Sinfay, vnto whom he had done courtefie, and given them the tytle of Lortius and Captaynes, and hee did reprehend them very sharpely for that they had brought ouer people thither, and fayd, that they had told him alve, in faying that Limaton was belieged, 10 in such fort that hee could not escape, neither had the Castillos burnt his Ships, and that all was but a made matter amongst themselues, and how that the Captiues which they brought, and fayd that they had taken from Limahon, they had robbed from other places, and fayd that the Spaniards, were spyes that came to discouer the secrets, and strength of the Kingdome, and that they had brought them thither, by force of gifts that they had given them. They answered him with great humilitie, in faying, that in all that which they had fayd they did speake the truth, and that it should appeare at such time, as the newes of the Rouer should bee better knowne, the which if it shall appeare to be contrarie, they were there readie for to suffer whatfoeuer punishment that should bee given them. The Vice-roy being somewhat satisfied with this their iustification, bad them to depart, remitting all things vnto time for the true declarati- 20 on thereof. Then Omoneon, and Sinfay, came straight-wayes to give the Spaniards to vinderstand of all that had passed with the Vice-roy, and what they understood of him, which caused in them so great feare, that for the time which it indured (which was till such time as they vnderflood the truth as aforefayd) they payed very well for their feafts and banquets the which they had made them. All this happened in the time that Omoncon, and Sinfay, were at variance, and fpake many injurious words the one of the other, discouering their intents and deuises, whereby it plainely appeared, that in all that which they had told vnto the Vice-roy, they lyed, but in especiall Omoncon. Sinfay did diffemble, for hee fayd and told vnto all people, that by his order and industrie, our people did fire the Ships of Limabon, and befieged him, with other speeches in the like fort, yet twentie dayes before his comming thither, all was ended and done 30 as appeared. The occasion of their enmitte and falling out, was for that the Vice-roy had giuen vnto Omoneon, a tytle and charge of more honour, then vnto Sinfay, having made betwixt them a confort, that the reward or dignitie should bee equally divided betwixt them, and that the one should speake of the other the best they could, because the Vice-roy should doe them friendship. This condition and confort (as appeareth) was euil performed by Omoncon, being addicted vnto felfe-loue, and feemed vnto him that Sinfay, did not deferue fo much as hee did, for that he was a base man, and of the Sea, and hee of the more nobilitie, and had the office of a Captayne.

Ith this griefe and care remay ned the Spaniards certaine dayes kept close in their lod- 40 gings, and were not visited to often as they were when they first came thither, which did augment very much their feare, till fuch time as they understood, that the Vice-roy either of his owne good-will, or elfe by some particular order from the King and his Counsell, had called together all the Gouernours of that Prouince of Aucheo, to intreat of matters touching Limahon, as also in particular, why and wherefore the Spaniards came thither, and to resolue themfelues wholly in all things require for the fame. So when that they were all come together, Generall con- which was in a short time, and amongst them the Gouernour of Chincheo, who by another name was called Infuanto, they had particular meetings together with the Vice-roy, in the which they were all agreed to have a generall meeting, whereunto should bee called the Castillos, and to demand of them in publike audience, the cause of their comming and being heard, to give 10 them their answer according as they had determined : for the which vpon a day appointed they met all together (but not the Vice-roy) in the house of the Cagontoc, and commanded to come before the Castillos, who did accomplish their request with a great good-will, for that they vnderstood that they were called to entreat of their matter, either to tarrie or depart. So when they came thither, they were commanded to enter into a mightie Hall, whereas they were all fet in verie rich Chayres with great grauitie and maiestie. The Insuanto seemed to bee the chiefest amongst them, but whether it was for that hee was the principallest next vinto the Vice-roy (or as it was told them) for that it was hee that fent Omoncon, in the chase of the Roser Limahon, they knew not, but fo foone as they were entred into the Hall, they were commanded to draw nigh, there, whereas they were all placed, without bidding them to fit downe, neither did 60 they vie any particular circumstances or courtefie. The Infuanto tooke vpon him the charge, and demanded of the Spaniards (by meanes of the Interpreters) what was the occasion of their comming into that Countrey. The Spaniards answered as they thought : and supposed, that at that time it could not bee, but that Limahon was either taken prisoner or slaine. Then did the Insuanto

conclude his speech, in saying vnto them that they should returne vnto their owne Countrey to the Hands, and at fuch time as they did bring Limaton, they would conclude all things touching the friendship they requested, and also for the Preaching of the Gospell.

So from that day forwards, they did procure with all hafte for to depart, and gaue the Viceroy to vinderstand thereof, who answered them and sayd, that they should comfort themselves and receive joy and pleafure, and that hee would dispatch them, so soone as the Visitor of that Province was come to Aucheo, which would bee within ten dayes, for that hee had written vnto him, that he should not dispatch them vntill his comming, for that he would see them. From that day forwards, he commanded that fometimes they should let them goe foorth abroad New-moone

to recreate themselues, and that they should shew vinto them some particular pleasure or friend. Musters, fhip. So one of them was carryed to fee the Multering of their men of warre, which they have in a common custome throughout all she Kingdome, to doe it the first day of the New-moone. and is fure a thing to bee feene : and they doe it in the field which is joyning vnto the walls of the Citie, in this manner following. There were joyned together little more or leffe then twen- Their admitte, tie thousand Souldiers, Pike-men and Harquebusse shot, who were so expert, that at the sound their Picco, & of the Drum or Trumpet, they straight-wayes put themselves in battle aray, and at another tobe paughts found in a fquadron, and at another the shot doe duide themselves from the rest, and discharge their Pieces with very gallant and good order, and with a trice put themselves againe into their places or flandings : this being done, the Pike-men came foorth and gaue the affault all toge-

ther, with so good order and consort, that it seemed vnto the Spaniards, that they did exceed all the warlike orders vsed in all the world: and if it were so, that their stomacks and hardinesse were equall vnto their dexteritie, and number of people, it were an easie thing for them to conquer the dominion of all the world. If it so chance, that any Souldier should lacke in his Office, Souldiersare and not repayre to his place appointed, hee is straight-wayes punished very croelly, which is the punished, occasion, that every one of them hath a care vinto his charge. This their Muster indured foure houres, and it was certified vnto the Spaniards, that the fame day and houre it is done in all Cities and Townes, throughout the whole Kingdome, although they are without suspection

of enemies.

Fine and twentie dayes after that the Infuance had ginen the resolute answer vnto the Spanse 30 mds, came the Visitor thither : and the whole Citie went foorth to receive him, who entred in with fo great Maiestie, that if they had not knowne who hee was, they could not have been perswaded, but that he had beene the King. The next day following, the Spaniards went to vilite him, for duties fake, as also for that hee had a defire to see them. They tound him in his lodging, where he began to make visitation of the Citie. In their Courts were an infinite number Manner of his of people, which came thither with Petitions and complaynts, but in the Halls within, there Courts, was none but his Seruants and Sergeants. When that any came for to prefent his Petition, the Porter that was at the entrie made a great noyle, in manner of an O est, for that it was a good way from the place whereas the Visitor did fit, then commeth foorth straight-wayes one of his Pages, and taketh the Petition, and carryeth it vnto him. At this time it was told him how

40 that the Castillas were there : hee commanded that they should enter, and talked with them a few words, but with great courtefie, and all was touching the Imprisonment of Limabon, without making any mention of their departure or tarrying. So after a while that hee had beheld them and their apparell, he tooke his leave of them, faying that by reason of the great businesse hee had in that visitation, he could not shew them any courtese, neither to vinderstand of them what their request and defire was, but gaue them great thankes for their courtefie snewed, in that they would come to visite him.

Three dayes after the Visitor was come thither, the Infuanto departed for his owne house, with order that with all speed possible, hee should ordayne Ships wherein the Castellas should returne vnto the Philippinas. Likewise the same day, all those that were there assembled by the 30 order of the Vice-roy, departed vnto their owne houses. And the Spaniards were commanded for to flay vntill the full of the Moone, which should bee the twentieth of August, and that day they should take their leave of them: for on that day amongst them, it is holden for good to begin any thing what soeuer. Wherein they doe wie great superfittion, and doe make many ban. Superfittion.

quets, as voon New-yeeres day.

The day before the departure of the Spaniards, there came forme in behalfe of the Vice-roy to inuite them, and made them banquet in the order and fashion as at the first : alchough this (for plement, that it was at their departure) was more sumptuous, wherein was represented a Comedie, which was very excellent and good, whose argument was first declared vnto them. All the which they

did represent so naturally, and with so good apparell and personages, that it seemed a thing to 6c passe in Act. There was not in this banquet the Vice-roy, but those Captaynes which were there the first time : and another Captayne, vnto whom was given the charge to bring the Spaniar de vnto Manilla, who was called Chantalay, a principall Captayne of that Prouince. When the banquet was ended, they were carryed with great companie from the Hall whereas the banquet was made, vnto the house of the Cogontoc, who was the Kings Treaturer, & dwelt there hard by Treaturer.

306 Presents for the Spaniards China superstition at the Friers parting LIB. II.

Prefence.

of whom they were maruelloully well received with louing words and great courtefie: in fav. ing that he hoped very shortly to fee them againe, at such timeas they shall returne with Limabon, and that as then their friendship should be fully concluded, and would intreat with them in particular of other matters. This being done, he gaue wnto them a Present for to carrie wnto the Gouernour of Manilla in recompence of that which was fent vnto the Vice-roy: the Prefent was forty pieces of Silke and twentie pieces of Burare, a Litter Chaire and gilt, and two Quitafoles of Silke, and a Horfe. Likewise hee sent the like Present unto the Generall of the field, and to either of them a Letter in particular; these things were put in Chists which were very faire and gilt. Belides this he gaue other forty pieces of Silke of all colours for to bee parted afaire and gult. Beindes this ne game some 100.5 percease of the field of Limabon, with three hundred mongfield Captaines and other Officers that were at the field of Limabon, with three hundred mongfield Captaines. Befoles ill that he follows: blacke Mantles and as many Quitafoles to be parted among it the Souldiers. Besides all these, he gaue vnto the Friers each of them eight pieces of Silke, and vnto the Souldiers their compani-

ons foure pieces of each of them, and to every one his Horse and a Quitasol of Silke; their Horfes were very good to trauell by the way. This being done, the Cogorroe sooke his leave of them, and willed them to goe and take leave and licence of the Vice-roy and the Vistor, that they might depart, for that all things were in a readineffe for their Voyage: the which commandement they did straight-wayes accomplish, being very well content and satisfied of the great fauours and courtefies, the which they received both of the one and the other: Likewise of the Torce, is Captaine Generall, whom they also did visit and tooke their leaue.

Captains General, whom they also one vine and cooks who a Tuefday, being the three and The Spaniards departed from the Citie of Auctor, appearance of the Citie who came forth to Captain 10 twentieth of August in the fight of all the people of the Citie, who came forth to fee them with fo great presse and throng, as they did when they first came thither into the Country; they were all carried in Litter Chaires, yea, their very flaues, for that it was so commanded by the Vice-roy : the Friers were carried by eight men a piece, and the Souldiers by foure men a piece, and all their Seruants and Slaues were carried by two men a piece. Looke so many men as was to carrie them, there went fo many more to helpe them when they waxed wearie, befides foure and twentie that carried their Stuffe. There went alwayes before them a Harbinger for to prouide their Lodgings, and with him went a Pay-master, whose charge was to ordaine and prouide men for to carrie their Litter Chaires , and to give them for their travell that which

is accustomed, and to pay all costs and charges spent by the Spaniard.

After that they departed from Anches, they made of two dayes Journey one, which was the 30 occasion that they came to Chinches in foure dayes. At their entring into the Citie they found a Servant of the Infinante, with order and commandement, that they should proceed forwards on their lourney, and not to flay in the Citie, but to goe wato the Port of Tanfuso, whither he will come the next day following. They obeyed his commandement, and made so much haste that in two dayes they came vnto the Village of Tangon, whereas they had beene before, and particular mention made thereof. In the same Village they were lodged, well entertayned and had great good cheere : from thence they went in one day to Tanfujo, which was the first Port wheras they did dif-imbarke themselues; when as they came from the Hands vinto that firme Land: the Intice of the Towne did lodge them in the same House whereas they were first lodged, and 40 did provide for them of all things necessary and needfull, and that in abundance, till the comming of the Infuanto, which was within foure dayes after, for that hee could not come any fooner (although his desire was) for that it was very foule weather.

The third of September, the Infranto fent and commanded the Spaniards that they should imbark themselues, for that it was that day the conjunction of the Moone (although at that time the thips were not fully in a readinesse.) They obeyed his commandement, and the Infranto himselfe went to the water fide, in whose presence came thither certaine Religious men of their manner, and after their fashion they made Sacrifice with certaine Prayers, in the which they craued of the Heanens to give good and faire weather, and a fure Voyage and favourable Seas vnto all those that faile in those thips. This Ceremony being done (which is a thing very much vsed in that to Countrey) the Spaniards went unto the Infuance, who was there with great company and Maiestie: he entertayned them very friendly and with cheerefull words making an outward shew that he bare them great loue, and that their departure was vnto him a great griefe. Then he requested them to give him a remembrance of such things as was necessary and needfull for their prouitiou for the Sea, for that he would give order for the prouiding of the fame, the which hee

did, and was with so great abundance that they had for the Voyage, and remayned a great deale to spare. He then commanded to be brought thither Cates to eate and drinke, and gaue it them with his owne hands, as well the one as the other: he himtelfe did eate and drinke with them, which is the greatest fauour that can be shewed amongst them. The Banket being ended, he commanded them in his presence to goe aboard their ships, because that was a luckie day, and allo to 60 accomplish that which the Vice-roy had comanded, which was that he should not depart from thence, vntill they had first seene them imbarked. The Spaniards obeyed the commandement, and tooke their leane of the Infuanto, with great courtefie and reverence, and with outward shewes that they remayned indebted for the great courteste & good will that they had received:

CH AP. 3. S.4. Oxe facrificed. Farewell-feaft. Ilands on the Coaft.

and therwith they departed to the waters fide, towards the Boat which was tarrying for them. As they paffed by the Religious men (that before we spake of) they saw a great Table set, and vpon it a whole Oxe with his throat cut, and hard by the fame a Hogge and a Goate, and other things to be eaten : the which they had ordained for to make Sacrifice, which they doe vie in the

They being imbarked in the Boate, they were carried aboard the Admirall, which was the thip appointed for them to goe in : then presently they beganne to flirre the thip, from one place vnto another with certaine Boats and Cables which they had there readie for the same purpose. The ship did not so soone begin to moone, but the Religious men ashoare did beginne their Sato crifice, the which did indure vntill night, ending their Feafts and Triumphs in putting forth of the Citie, and upon their Gates many Creffets and Lights. The Souldiers shot off all their Harquabuffes, and the shippes that were in the Port shot off all their Artillerie, and on the shoare a great noyle of Drummes and Bels : all the which being ended and done, the Spaniards went ashoare againe vnto their Lodging: but first the Infuanto was departed vnto his owne House, with

all the company that he brought with him.

The next day the faid Influente did inuite them vnto a Banket, which was as famous as any Influentes farewhich had beene made them vnto that time. He was at the Banket himselfe, and the Captaine well Feat. Generall of all that Province. There was abundance of meates and many pretie deuises to passe away the time, which made the Banket to indure more then foure houres: the which being done, 20 there was brought forth the Present which the Insuano did fend vnto the Gouernour of Manil-

lain returne of that which was fent to him. The Present was fourteene pieces of filke for the Gouernour of Manilla, and ten pieces for the Generall of the field : he also commanded to be given vnto the Friers each of them foure pieces, and vnto the Souldiers each of them two pieces, and unto their Seruants and Slaves certaine painted Mantels, and therewith hee tooke his leave of them very friendly, and gaue vnto them Letters, the which he had wrote vnto the Gouernour. and vnto the Generall of the field, answere vnto those, the which they had wrote vnto him, and faid that all things necessary for their departure was in a readinesse, with victuals for tenne Tenmonths moneths put aboard their ships, so that when as wind and weather did serue they might depart. prousson

Alfo that if in their Voyage it should so fall out, that any of the Chinois that went in their ships.

30 should doe vnto them any euill; either abroad or at the Ilands : that the Gouernour thereof should punish them at his pleasure, and how that the Vice-roy will thinke well thereof : In conclusion, he said vnto them, that he hoped to see them there againe very shortly, and to returne againe with Limaton, and then he would supply the wants which now they lacked. The Spamiards did kiffe his hands, and faid; that they had received in courtefie more then they deferred, and that in all things, there did abound and not lack, that they remained greatly indebted vnto him for their friendship, and would give their King notice thereof, that whensoever occasion should be offered, to repay them with the like : and therewith the Infrante departed to his owne House, leaving in the company of the Spaniards five Captains, those which should go with them

in their company to Sea, and also Omoncon and Sinfay who were that day in the Banket, with 40 the Habit and Enigne of Loytin, for that the day before it was given vnto them by the Infamento. Vpon Wednesday which was the fourteenth of September, the wind came faire, wherewith they hoyfed up their Sayles and went to Sea : at their departure there was at the waters fide the Infranto and the Inflice of Chinches to fee them fayle, they fayled forwards directing their course towards a small Hand that was not farre off, with determination there to take water for their ships, for that it had in it many Rivers of very sweet water. Within a small space they

arriued there, and it had a very faire and fure Port, wherein might ride in fecuritie a great Nauy of thips. All Thursday they were there recreating and sporting themselues, for that it was a pleasant Iland, and full of fresh Ruiers. Vpon Friday being the fixteenth of September, the day being somewhat spent, they made saile and tooke Port source leagues from that place in another 50 Hand called Lands, for to put themselves in a new course, different and contrary vnto that which Lands, they tooke when they came vnto that Kingdome, for that the Chinois had by experience proued, that in those monethes the winds were more favourable then in other monethes, and for Monsons. the most part North and North-east winds: all that night they remained in that Iland, and the next day following they fayled unto another Hand which was called [haminho, not farre diffant chaninho,

from that of Lauls. This lland was full of little Townes, one of them was called Gantin, which Gautin. had fine Forts of Towers made of Lime and stone, very thicke and strongly wrought: they were all foure square, and fixe fathome high, and were made of purpose for to receive into them all the people of those little Townes, to defend themselves from Rouers and Theeves that daily

They very much noted, that although this Hand were rockie and fandie, yet was it tilled and fowed full of Rice, Wheate, and other Seeds and Graine. There was in it great store of Kine Kine and and Horie, and they understood that they were gouerned, not by one particular man, to whom Commonthey were subject, neither by any other among it themselves, nor of China, but in common yet wealth. notwithstanding they lived in great peace and quietnesse, for that every one did content himselfe

Corcha.

with his owne. Vpon Sunday in the afternoone they departed from this Hand, and fayled their course all that night, at the next morning they arrived at another Iland, called Corche, which was twentie leagues from the Port of Tanfuso, from whence they departed. The Speniards feeing what leiture they tooke in this their Voyage, they requested the Captaines to command the Mariners that they should not enter into so many Ports or Harbours. The Captaines and fwered , and requested them to haue patience , for that in making their Iournies as they did. they doe accomplish and follow the order set downe by the Vice-roy and Infranto, the Chimic are very fearefull of the Sea, and men that are not accustomed to inguise themselues too farre,

Accon.

Neere vnto this Hand there was another somewhat bigger, which is called Ancon, wholly to dispeopled and without any dwellers, yet a better Countrey and more profitable for to sow and reape then that of Corchu. The Spaniards being at an Anchor there, vnderstood by the Chinese that in times past it was very well inhabited, vinto the which arrived a great Fleet belonging to the King of China, and by a great storme were all cast away vpon the same: the which lose and destruction being understood by another Generall that had the Guard of that Coast, suspecting that the dwellers thereof had done that flaughter, hee came to the shoare and slue many of the Inhabitants, and carried all the reft in their ships vnto the firme Land, who afterwards would neuer returne thither againe, although they gave them licence after that they understood the truth of that successe: so that vnto that time it remained dispeopled, and full of wilde Swine, of the brood that remained there at fuch time as they were saine and carried away as you have 20

A ftraight.

This lland and the rest adjoyning thereunto (which are very many) have very excellent and fure Ports and Hauens, with great store of fish. These Ilands endured vntill they came vnto a little Gulfe, which is fine and fortie leagues ouer, and is fayled in one day, and at the end shereof is the Port of Cabite, which is necre vnto Manilla. So when that winde and weather ferued their turne, they departed from the lland of Ancon, and failed till they came vnto another lland called Plon, where they understood by a ship that was there a fishing, how that the Rouer Limabon was escaped in certaine Barkes, which he caused to bee made very secretly within his Fort, of such Timber and Boards as remained of his ships that were burnt, the which was brought in by night by his Souldiers, on that fide of the Fort which was next vnto the River, and were 20 not discourred by the Castillas, which were put there with all care and diligence to keepe the mouth that come in to helpe them. And towards the Land there whereas he might escape, they were without all suspection (they were so strong) and did not mistrust that any such thing should be put in vre, as afterwards did fail out, the warch was executed with fo great policie and craft, that when they came to viderstand it, the Rouer was cleane gone, and in safeguard, calking his Barkes at the Iland of Tocaorican, the better for to escape and saue himselfe, and they said, that it was but eight dayes past that he fled. With this newes they all received great alteration. but in especiall Omoncon and Sinfay.

After they had remained three weeks in that Harbour detayned with a mighty North-wind, that neuer calmed night nor day in all that time. The eleventh day of October two houres before 40 day, they set layle and went to Sea. Sixteene leagues from the Port, failing towards the South, they discourred a mightie Hand very high Land, which was called Tangarruan, and was of three fcore leagues about, all inhabited with people like vnto those of the Hands Philippinas. Vpon Sunday in the morning being the seuenteenth day of October, they discourred the Iland of Ma-From the Phi. milla, of them greatly defired, they fayled towards the Hand that they follong defired to fee, and lippinato the came thither the twentie eight day of October, as aforesaid. So that from the Port of Taninio, which is the first Port of China, till they came vnto the Iland of Manilla, they were five and fortie dayes, and is not in all tul two hundred leagues, which may be made with reasonable wea-

ther in ten daves at the most. I could have here added two other Voyages of Franciscans, to China, the one by Peter de Alfaro, 10 and other three of his Order, 1579. the other 1582. by Ignatio, &c. both written at large by Mendo-Za. But I haften to our lefuites exacter Relations. Only I will conclude thu Storie with Alfaros returne from China to the Philippinas; and his Relation of their Witch-crafts vied in a Tempel then happening : after that two Letters mentioning English ships on that Coast.

But it so fell out, as they were going along it the Coast of the lland for to enter into the Port of Manilla, and being within fine leagues of the entry thereof, vpon a fudden there arose the North-wind with fo great furie, and caused so great a Sea, that they found themselues in a great deal- more danger then in the other storme past, in such fort that they sponed before the winde with their fore fayle halte Mast high, shaking it selfe all to pieces, and in every minute of an houre readie to be drowned. The Chinois for that they are Superfittious and Witches, beganne 69 to invocate and call upon the Deuill, for to bring them out of that trouble (which is a thing commonly vied among it them, at all times when they find themfelues in the like perplexitie) also they doe request of him to thew them what they should do to bring themselves out of trouble. But when the Spaniards understood their dealings, they did diffurbe them that they should

not perfeuer in their Lots and Inuocations, and beganne to conjure the Deuils, which was the occation that they would not answere vnto the Innocation of the Chines, who did call them after guinft conjuduers manners, yet they heard a Deuill fay, that they should not blame them because they did ring. not answere into their demand, for they could not doe it for that they were disturbed by the conjuration of those Spanish Fathers, which they carried with them in their ship.

So presently when the night was come, God was so pleased that the storme ceased, and became in few houres very calme, although it endured but a while, for as they began to fet fayle to nauigate towards the Port, and almost at the point to enter into the same, a new storme feized on them, and with fo great force, that they were constrayned to returne vnto the Sea, for to feare to bee broken in pieces vpon the shoare. The Chimos began anew to innocate the Deuils Innocation by

by writing, which is a way that they neuer let but doe answere them, as they did at this in- writing, flant , and were not diffurbed by the conjurations of the Fathers, yet notwithflanding they lyed in their answer, for that they faid, that within three dayes they should be within the Citie of Manilla, and after it was more then foure dayes.

In conclusion, having by the favour of almightie God overcome all their travels by the Sea. and the necessitie of the lacke of water and victuals, they arrived at the defired Port the second day of February, Anno 1580, whereas they were received by the Governour, and of all the rest with great ioy, &c.

Two Letters taken out of BARTOLOME LEONARDO DE ARGENSOLA his Treatife, called Conquista de las Islas Malucas, Printed at Madrid, 1609. pagg. 336.

337. mentioning the comming of two English ships to China: which seeme to bee two thips of the fleet of \* BENIAMIN WOOD: The former written by the Visitor of Chincheo in China.

vnto the Gouernor of the Philippinas, Don PEDRO DE ACVINA.

\* See sup. L3.

30 To the grand Captaine of Luzon. Becanse wee have understood, that the Chineses, which went I sound this to trade and trafficke into the Kingdome of Luzon, have beene staine by the Spaniards, wee have translat with made inquisition of the cause of these samplests, and have befought the King to doe sustice on him, that half been the cause of so great muschiefe, to procure a remedie for the time to come, and that the Mer. chants may like in peace and fafety. In the yeares past, before I came hither to be Visitour, a certaine Sangley, called Tiones, with three Mandarines or ludges having the Kings Paffe, came to Cabit in Tiones. Luzon, to feeke Gold and Silver: which was all lyes: because he found neither Gold nor Silver. And therefore I befought the King, that he would punish this decemer Tioneg, that the good instice that is vied in China might be knowne. In the time of the former Vice-roy, and Capado, Tioneg and his companion Yanlion delinered this virtuth. I afterward befought the King , that hee would cause all

40 the Papers of the cause of Tiones to be coppied out, and that he would send for the said Tiones with his processes before himselfe: And I my selfe saw the said Papers, and caused it to appeare that all was but lyes which the faid Tioneg had faid. I wrote vato the King , faying , That by reason of the lyes which Tioneg had made, the Castillians suspected that wee sought to make warre upon them: and that therefore they had slayne about thirtie thousand Chineses in Luzon. The King did that which 30000 chineses I befought him. And so be chastisfed the faid Yanlion, commanding him to bee put to death. And flaine in the hee commanded Tioneg bead to be cut off, and to be put in a Cage. The people of China which were flame in Luzon, were in no fault. And I with others regotiated this businesse with the King , that I might know his pleasure in this affaire: and in another matter, which was this: That there came two Two English might know his pleasure in this affaire: and in another matter, which was this: 1 that there came two thirs on the English ships to these coasts of Chincheo; a thing very dangerous for China: That the King might coast of this. consider what was to bee done in these two matters of so great importance. Likewise were wrote vato theo in China,

50 the King, that be would command the two Sangleys to be punished, which thewed the Hauen to the Eng- I salouke of lithmen. And after wee had written thefe things aforefaid to the King, he as fivered us that wee should Strangers. tearne, wherefore the English forps came unto hina? whether they came to robbe or no? That they should dispaich from thence a Messenger immediatly to Luzon: and that they should signific to them of Luzon, that they stould not give credite to the base and lying people of China : And this forthwith they Should put to death those two Sangleyes, which shewed the Hanen to the Englishmen. And touching Danger of the rest that wee wrote unto him, wee would doe as wee thought best. After wee had received this or- bringing thips der, the Vice-voy, the Capado, and I fent this meffage to the Gouernour of Luzon : That his Lordfing uen, might know the greatnesse of the King of China. Seeing bee is so mightie, that bee governeth all that China ambi. the Moone and Sunne doe thine upon. And also that the Gonernour of Luzon may know the great tion. 60 wifedome wherewith this might; Kingdome is governed. Which Kingdome this long while none durst lajonian at-

attempt to offend. And albert the Japonians have presended to disquiet Corea, which is under the Go-Core is vadet wermment of China: yet they could not obtayne their purpose : but they were driven out of it : And China. Corea hath remajned in great peace and fafety, as at this day they of Lazon doe well underflard.

The Answer of Don PEDRO DE ACYNNA, Gouernour of the Philippina, to the Visitour of Chincheo in China.

"He Couernour answered these Letters by the same Messengers that brought them: vsing terms The Control of apparent toojs Letters of the June supering the Singleyes, from the beginning:
full of course fie and authoritie. Her rebearfed the rebellion of the Singleyes, from the beginning: He sufficed the defense of the Spaniards, and the pansforment that was executed upon the Offenders. Hee faid, that no Common wealth can be gonerned without chaffifing the bad, nor without temading the good. And therefore that he did not repent him of that execution: because it was done for reprethe good. And therefore come neumon superior to the good of the state the case should happen in China. That the griefe that be bad was , that he could not same certaine Sangleyes Merchants Annayes, which died among the offenders : But that this was unpossible to be remedied; because the surve of warre doth not give leave to kill some, and to save others, especially being not area; vecume of the Soulders in the heate of battell. That ofing mercy to those that remayned aline, condenned them so rowe in the Galleyes: which is the funiforment, which is order ned among the Castillians for those that have described death. Test if it seems in China that it ought to be moderated, bee would grant them libertie. But let it be considered, faid Don Pedro, that this may be a cause, that in not chassis. fing fo great an effence, they may bereafter fall egame into the fame. A thing that wend fint up all acciffe uno fauour. Tout the coods of the Chinetes that were flame are in fafe cuffodit. And that it may be feene, that no other affection moneth mee then that of suffice, I will frontly fend them to be deli- 20 sured to the right Herres, or unto fuch persons as of right they belong unto. None other respect mounts mee to any of these things, but that of reason. Whereas you tell mee, That if I will not set at theorie shofe presoners, licence will be granted in China to the kinsfelke of those which died in the Rebillion, to come with an Armie to Manila, it breedeth no feare in mee. For I hold the Chineses to be fo wife, that they will not be moved to such things upon so weake a ground: especially none occasion thereof buy given them on our part. And in case they should be of another minde, wee Spaniards are a People which know very wellhow to defend our Right, Religion , and Territories. And let not the Chineles thinks, that Chinaptide te- they are Lords of all the World, as they would have vs thinks. For wee Cafillians, which have meafured the World with spannes, know perfectly the Countrejes of China. Wherefore they shall doe well to take knowledge , that the King of Spaine bath continual warres with as mighty Kings as theirs is, 30 and doth suppresse them, and putterb them to great troubles. And it is no new case, that when our enemies thinke that they have varquished vs, they finde vs marching and destroying the Consines of their Land, and not to cease, untill wee have east them out of their Thrones, and taken their Scepters from them. I would be much grieved with the change of the commerce: But I believe also that the Chineses would not willingly lose it, since that thereby they obtaine so great profit, carrying to their Kingdome our Siluer, which neuer faileth in trucke of their merchandife, which are flight things, and

The ships of the Englishmen, which arrived on the coast of China, it was determined not to receive: because they be no Spaniards, but rather " their enemies, and Pirats. Wherefore if they come to Mathips spoken of nila, they shall be pumished. Finally, b. cause wee Spaniards doe alwaies instifice our causes, and doe boait 40 tions to you we promise to many the major to be used to have the variety other ment pelfellion; no runde our free that the things other ment pelfellion; no runde our freends, that that the fall be fulfilled which is here promised. And from home for and it is them know in China, according to that weeneuer doe any thing for feare, nor for threats of our enemies. Don Pedro concludeth, offering consumance of amitie by new bonds of peace with the Kingdomes of China: and that he will fet at the bertie in due time the Prisoners which he held in the Gallytes: albeit he thought to vife them, as he did, in the voyage of Maluco; which be put in execution with speed. And all this he precisely performed.

## CHAP. IIII.

The report of a Mahometan Merchant which had beene in Cambalu: and the troublesome trauell of BENEDICTY'S GOES, 4 Portugall Icfuite , from Lahor to China by land , thorow the Tartars Countreyes.

Epift. Eman.

the mucuall

hestilitie of

those times.

310

Xatai and Xam. balu, for Carai and cambaly.

Erome Xauere a lefuite, in a Letter from Labor in India, fubiect to the Mogoli, dated, August, 1598, relateth that an old man there knowne to have distributed 100000. Peeces of Gold at Mecca, affirmed to the Prince that he had lived in Xatai thirteene yeeres, in Xambalu the chiefe Citie; that the King thereof 69 was mighty, and had in his Empire one thouland and fiftie Cities, fome very populous; that he had often feene the King, with whom no man speakes but by

cagar.

a Supplication, nor is answered but by an Eunuch. And asked how hee had accesse thither, he faid, he being a Merchant sultayned also the person of the Embassadour of the King of Congar.

and being detained in the first Citie by the Magistrate, he shewed his Commission, and Poste was presently fent to the King, who returned in a moneth, riding ninety or an hundred courses a A Course or day, with change of Hories; bringing him Letters of admission. Hee faid that they punish Co'eisamile theenes senerely: that these Xaitaians are white, long bearded, personable, and comely, therein and halfe, and to be preferred before the Rumes or Turkes; in Religion Ifamtes (Christians, to called of lefus) includes and many Mahamatan information that they bound to be miles. fome Musanites or lewes, and many Mahametans, infomuch that they hoped to bring the Chrisfian King to that Sect. They had ( he faid to the lefaire in another conference) many Temples. and Images painted and grauen, and Crucifixes which they with great denotion worshipped; many Priests, much reuerenced, each having his owne Church; to whom they offer their gifts, 10 they lived fingle and kept Schooles; one supereminent: at the Kings tharge were the Churches built and repaired; they ware blacke clothes, and on holidayes red; with Caps like the lefantes; but greater; many Monasteries of both Sexes, and some in their owne houses, observing a single life: the Countrey rich, having many filter Mines; and that the King had foure hundred Elephants, which they faid were brought from Malaca, and that Merchants referred thither; the Voyage fixe moneths. Xauerius addeth, that in Caximir he heard of many Christidins in Rebat, a Kingdome adioyning to Catai, with Churches, Priests, and Bishops. These reports (sayth

the like, which the Deuill hath imitated among the Chinois like to our (Romillo) Rites, Their reports caused the lefuites in India to thinke of fending one of their Society into those parts. Pimenta the Father Vilitour fent notice thereof to the Pope, and to the King of Spaine, who tooke Order with the Vice-roy to be aduised herein by Pimenta. Benedictus Goez a brother of that Society and Coadjutor to Xauerine, was thought hit for that deligne, having the Persian tongue. And having come from Echebar (father of the present Mogol) who had lately taken De chris.exp. tongue. And latting come from ecosoar (latter of the present exagger) who had lattery saach Brampor, with his Legat, to Goa; hee was fent backe to Labor, to accompanie the Merchants; ditaps small; cityling. which every fifth yeere, as that Saracen related, with title of Legats of the King of Persia, and Lamethe free, other Easterne Kings (not otherwise admitted ) went thither. In the yeere therefore 1602, he Inditaction went to Agra, where Echebar applauded his purpose, and gaue him foure hundred Crownes for his iourney, besides a thousand Rupias hee had already spent. He changed his habite, and dif-

Trigantino) the Saracens made, either of purpose to deceive, after their wont; or were deceived

by like shew of Holies in Images, Lamps, Altars, Priests vestments, Processions, Singings, and

30 guifed himselfe like an Armenian Merchant, and so went to Labor, calling himselfe Branda Abedula, whither he came on the eight of December. He went to the house of Iohn Galisco a Venetian, and there provided himselfe of necessaries, wearing his haire and beard long, and Leo Grimone a Greeke, well skilled in Turkish and Persian, undertaking to be his companion, with Demetrius another Greeke, and Isaac an Armenian. Furnished with diners writings and a Catalogue of moucable Feaths till An. 1610. he fet forth An. 1603, the fixth of Ianuarie from his Superiour, and in Lent after from Labor, with the companie of Metchants which got from the Mogols to Cafear, almost fine hundred men, with many Camels and carriages.

In a moneths journey they came to a Citie called Atbee; in the Province of Labor; and after Albee, fitteene dayes, passed a River a slight shot broad, where they stayed five dayes, being told of 40 theeues in great number at hand. Two moneths after they came to another Civie called Pallanr, Pallann, where they rested twentie dayes. Thence they going to another small Towne, met with a certaine Anchorite a stranger, by whom they understood that thirtie dayes off was a Citie named Capherstam, into which the Saracens are not permitted entrance, and if they enter are put to Carberstam. death. But Erhnike Merchants are admitted their Citie, yet not their Temples. Hee faid, that the Inhabitants of that Region goe to Church all of them in blacke; their Countrey fertile, and plentifull of Grapes. Hereby Goes forposed that they were Christians, In the place where they found this stranger, they stayed other twentie dayes. And because the way was infested with Theeues they received of the Lord of the place a Conuoy of foure hundred Souldiers, In fine and twentie dayes they came from hence to a place called Ghideli, all which way their carriages Ghideli, 50 went at the foot of a Hill. The Merchants with Armes on the tops of the Hill made fearth

for Theeues, which vie to throw Hones from thence on the Paffengers, except thus prevented. In this place the Merchants pay Tribute. Being affaulted by Theeues many were wounded, and they had much adoe to faue their lives and goods. Benedict escaped by flight into the Woods. At night they came againe together, and anoyded the Theenes. Atter other twentie dayes iourney they came to Cabul, a Citicand Mart frequent, not yet having paffed the Mogols Do- cabul, minions. Here they stayed eight dayes : for some of the Merchants would goe no further, and others durst not, being so few. In this Mart the Sister of the King of Cafear, by whose Dominion they were to passe to Catay, happened on the Carauan. The Kings name was Massamet Can; this his Sifter was Mother to the King of Cotan , and called Agebanem ( Age is a title gi-60 uen by the Suracens to those which have beene on Pilgrimage at Mecca, whence she now returned.) Being destitute of prouision for her journey, shee demanded aide of the Merchants, pro-

mifing to reftore all faithfully with encrease when they were comne to her Kingdome. Goes thought it a ht occasion to procure the friendship of another King, his Mogoll Patents now wearing out. Hee lent her therefore on fale of fome goods fixe hundred Crownes, refuing

A kind of Ciaracar.

any contract of interest, which shee bountifully repayed in pieces of Marble much esteemed in Coma, the best merchandise for such as goe to Catag. Lee Grimane the Priest, wearied with the Miroje much vilued in china tedioutnetle of the journey, went no further, and Demerius stayed in this Citie on merchandifing affaires. Goes held on with Isaac the Armenian, in the companie of other Merchants, which gaus likelihood of better fecuritie. The first Citie they came at was called Corracor, in which place is great flore of Iron. Here Goes was not a little troubled, the Mogols Seale in these his borders being neglected, which all this way hitherto had freed him from payment Paramenthe ex- of Cultomes, Ten dayes after they came to a small Towne, called Paramen, the vimost of the

of the Mogoll.

Aingbaran. Gialalabath.

Cheman.

After fine dayes flay, they had twentie dayes journey ouer high Mountaines into a Region 10 named Aingharan. In fifteene dayes more they came to Calora. The people of this Region hath yellow haire on head and beard like the Low-Countrey-men, and dwell in divers Villages. Ten dayes after, they came to a place called Gialalabath, where the Bramanes exact Customes granted them by the King Bruarase. After other fifteene dayes they came to Talban, where Civil broiles detayned them a moneth; the Calciums rebelling and endangering the wayes, Hence they passed to Cheman. Vnder Abdulaban King of Samarban, Burgania, and Bacharate, and of other neighbouring Kingdomes, is a small Towne, the Captaine whereof sent to the Merchants to containe themselues within the walls, the Calcians infesting all without. They answered. that they would pay their Cultomes, and purfue their iourney by night. But hee forbad them, faying, that the Rebels had no Hories as yet, which if they could take from the Carauan, they 16 would proue more mischieuous: much better it were, if they would ioyne with him to repell them. Scarcely were they comne to the walls, when the rumour came of the Calcians comming : at which newes the Captaine and his ranno away. The Merchants erected a sudden fortification of their packes, and carried into the same great store of stones to serve their turnes if Arrowes failed. The Calcians perceiuing that, fent a meffage to the Merchants, that they should feare nothing, for they would accompanie and defend them. They durst not trust them, but resolued to flee to the next Wood, the Theenes taking out of the packes what they pleafed, and then calling them forth, and permitting them with their emptied packes to enter the emptie walls. Benedict lost nothing but a Horse, for which also hee after received Cotton clothes. They hued within the walls in great feare. But at that time a great Captaine, named 10 Olobet Ebadafcan, fent his Brother out of the Bucharate Region to the Rebels, which caufed them to permit the Merchants to goe freely: in all which iourney the Rere was vexed with Pilferers. Foure of them fet vpon Goes, to escape whom hee threw amongst them his Persian Turbant, whereof they making a foot-ball, hee meane while fet spurres to his Horse and ouer-Eight dayes after with a tedious passage they came to Badascian, called Tengi, which signi-

fieth A troublesome way : for there is space but for one to passe, and that on the high banke of a

great River. The Inhabitants with a companie of Souldiers fet vpon the Merchants, and tooke

from Goes three Horses, which he after redeemed with gifts. Here they stayed ten dayes, and

open field, and were besides assaulted by Theeues. Ten dayes after they arrived at Serpanil, a

place quite forfaken. They climbed into a high Hill, called Sacretbma, whither the ftrongest

Horses were only able to passe, the rest going about. Two of Goes his Horses halted, and had

much adoe to our take their fellowes. In twentie dayes journey comming to the Province

Sarcil, they there found many neighbouring Villages. After two dayes stay for refreshing, they

in two dayes more came to the foot of a Hill, termed Ciecialish, which they alcended, thicke co-

nered with Snow, wherewith many were frozen, and Goes was in great danger. For the Snow

held them fixe dayes; after which they came to Tangetar, which belongs to the Kingdome of

Cafear. There Ifaac the Armenian fell from the banke of a great River into the water , and

fuch an ill way that Goez loft fixe Horfes with the travell. In five dayes he got ( halting before

the companie) to the chiefe Citie named Hiarchan, whence hee prouided his companions of ne-

was eight houres space halfe dead. In fifteene dayes more they attayned the Towne laconich, so

thence in one day came to Ciarciunar, where they were hur dayes detayned with raines in the 40

TengiBadascian.

Serpanil.

Sarcil. Snowie way.

Hiarchan.

Hiarchan the Seat Royall of the Kingdome of Cascar, hath great refort of Merchants, and is also well flored with variety of merchandile. The Carauan of Cabul here ends their Voyage: Catag-Carenan and from thence to Catag is a new one furnished, the Captainship whereof the King sellethat

ceffaries, who foone after arrived there in November, 1603.

Precious

a great price, and conferreth on the Captaine Regall power over the Merchants thorowall that way. It was a yeeres space before they could all bee ready to so long and dangerous a journey, which required many persons. Neither is it performed every yeere, but by them onely which know they shall be admitted into Catay. There is no better merchandise (as before is faid) then 60 a certaine shining Marble, which wee are wont to call lasper, for want of a fitter word; which the King of Catay buyeth at a great price; and what hee leaueth they may fell to others at exceeding rates. Of it they make divers ornaments for Veffels, Garments, Girdles, with leaves and flowers artificially engrauen. The Chinois call it Tusce; and of it are two kinds, one more

precious which is taken out of the River Coran, not farre from the Citie Royall, in manner as the Divers fish for Pearles, and is brought out like thicke flints; the other meaner is digged out of Hils, and is fawed into broad stones aboue two Ells wide, after fitted to the Voyage. This Hill is twentie dayes Iourney from that Citie Royall, and is stiled Canfangui Caseio, that is, The stonie Mountayne. They are thence taken with incredible labour, both for the defertnesse of the place, and the inexorable hardnesse of the Marble, which they say is forced with fire made thereon to yeeld: the license also to take it, is deere fold by the King to some one Merchant, who purchafeth the Monopoly; and when they goe thither they carrie a yeares prouision for the Labourers, which in that space returne not.

Goez vilited the King, whose name is Mahamethin, and presented him with a Watch, a Glasse Mahamet Con and other European Commodities, which made him very welcome. Hee would not at first tell King of Cafeer, him of going to Catay, but only spake of the Kingdome of Cialis East-ward from thence, and Cialis. procured his grant thereto, affitted by the Sonne of his Sifter the Pilgrime Queene before metitioned. Sixe moneths passed, and Demetrine one of his old Societie which standat Cabul, came thither. At that time by the Kings License one of the Merchants was stilled Emperour as in jeft, to whom the other Merchants after the cultome gaue Presents, which Demetring refusing. was in danger to be imprisoned and beaten (for fo large is his power) had not Benedict interceded and by a gift compounded the businesse. Theeues also brake into the House and setting a Sword to the Armenians breit terrified him from crying; but our Brother Demetrius hearing, 20 cried out and fearred them away. Benedict was gone to the King of Quotans Mother for pay-

ment of his Debt : his Residence was ten dayes Journey thence, so that he spent a moneth therein before his returne. In this space the Saracens raised a report that he was dead, slaine by their Priests for refusing their holies. Now because he dyed intestate, they sought to seize on his goods, which was very troublesome to Isaac and Demetrius, both for defence of the goods, and loffe of their Friend, which redoubled their joy at his returne with plentie of that Marble, and hee in thankfulneffe gaue much Almes.

On a day as he was eating with other Saracens, one came in armed, and letting his Sword to his breft, charged him to inuoke . Mahomet. He answered, that in his Law there was no such . Towie (22 it name innoked, and therefore refuled : and by the company that mad fellow was extruded. The seemes) those 30 like zeale oft endangered him on like termes of Mahumetan profession. On another day he was words to illab called by the King of Cascar in the presence of his Casiar, the Profess we have Action and illabels, Mehacalled by the King of Cafear in the presence of his Cacifes, the Priests, & the Mulles or learned motificialists, men, and asked what Law he professed, whether that of Moses, of Danid, or Mahumes , and the Charactewhich way he turned himselie in praying. Hee answered, that hee professed the Law of Iesus, tilikal note of whom they call //a. and curned any way when he prayed, beleasing that God was every where posterior which rofe among it them great controversie, they wing to turne to the "West: yet hey "D Messey below they below the state of the "West: yet hey "D Messey is the state of the "West: yet hey "D Messey is the state of the "West: yet hey "D Messey is the state of the "West: yet hey "D Messey is the state of the "West: yet hey "D Messey is the state of the "West: yet hey "D Messey is the state of the "West: yet he was the state of the "West: yet he was the way the state of the state of the way the state of the state of the state of the way the state of the way the state of the s

concluded that our Law also might feeme good. Meane-whiles one Agrafi of that Countrey was named Captaine of the future Caravan, who inuited our Brother to his House (having heard well of him) to a Feast, wherein they had Mu-

ficke after their manner. At the end, hee defired his company to Cates, which lie much defired, 60 but had learned by experience how to deale with the Saracest, and would be intreated, that he might seeme to doe, rather then receive, a Fauour. The Captaine vieth the Kings mediation, who defired him to accompany the Carauan Baffa, which he accepted upon condition of his Carauan Baffa. Letters Patents for all that way. His Cabul companions were herewith offended, as loth to lofe See before in Letters reaches for all that way. The Lorent companions were loth here to the like lour-his company, and much diff waded him; but hee made fliew as though hee were loth hereth to the like lour-th like lourdisplease the King, and for his sike had promised the Caranan Bassa, which now hee might not negard the reuoke. They faid that thele people were perfidious, and would denoure him and his: nor was lameplaces, their feare caussesse, for many of the Natiues had told them, that those three Armenians (so they called all these three Christians) as soone as they were out of the walles would be flaine.

This terrified Demetrius from going further, who also diffwaled Goee but in vaine, saying, he 50 would not disappoint the hopes of so many, the Archbishop of Goa, and the Vice-roy to lose his expences, but would adventure his life in the Defigne.

Hee prouided ten Horfes for his Carriages, and for his fellow, having another at home. The Baffa was gone to his house fine dayes sourney thence to make all readie, and thence sent to

Anne 1604, about the midft of Nouember, they came to a place called Ielei, where they Voyage to Cevie to pay Cuttomes, and their Commissions are examined. Hence they went to Hancialize in from History Alcegbet, to Hagabateth, to Egriar, to Meseteles, to Thalee, to Horma, to Theartac, to Men-then. Alceghet, to Integenates, to Egrear, to Inspection, to Innec, to 120 ma, to 100 Ciscor, to Place girds, to Captuleol Zilan, to Sare Guebedal, to C Acfa: in this way they ipent fue and twentie dayes, the way troubletome, both with flore

60 of thones or Rockes, and with Sands. Acfais a Towns of the Kingdome of Cafear, the Governour whereof was Nephew to the King, then twelve yeares old. Hee would needs fee Goez, who went and gaue him childish Piesents, Sugarand the like, and was gently entertayned of with well and gaus mittennount exercits, sugarant the rice, and the good, success him. There being then a folerane dancing before him, he requested our Brother to dance, which Gordsneeth.

These walls were built on the West of China, as it trends North-wards, about the space of two hundred \* miles, where the Tartarian out-roads are now lefte dangerous. Against them are \* This 200, is builded two fortified Cities with choise Garrisons. They have a peculiar Vice-roy and other tobe vnder-Magistrates over them, which are commanded only from Pequin. In one of these Cancen in the stood of the

In Prouince of Scenfi) the Vice-roy resideth with other chiefe Magistrates. The other (named So- Westernepare con) hath a speciall Gouernour, and is distributed into two parts; in one of which the Chinois or perhaps all (whom the Saracens here call Catayans) in the other the Saracens, have their Habitation, which natural of come from (afear, and the like Westerne Kingdomes for Merchandizing Affaires. Some of rockes or hiles them, as the Paringals at Amacao, in the Province of Canton, lettle their abodes and have wives or Triganina and children, accounted as Native subjects. But those Portugals live according to their owne Dutchman Lawes, and have Magistrates of their owne, whereas these Surveys are governed by the Chin might meane nois, and energy night are flux up by them within their owne Citie, inclosed with peculiar walls. Discombes. The Map ex-The Law is, that he which hath flayed there nine yeares, may not returne to his Countrey. The preficth about Merchants come viually from the West to this Citie, which with fayned Embassage, by an- 1000 miles.

20 cient leagues of feuen or eight Kingdomes with that of China, have obtayned, that every fixth The reports yeare feuentie two in name of Legats should pay Tribute to the King, that shining Marle, pre- are duters as cos of Diamonds blue colour and other chinary thence they goe to the Court on Milliant from reports: ces of Diamonds, blue colour and other things; thence they goe to the Court at publike charge; for who could and likewife returne. Their Tribute is rather by way of honour or homage then any way profine feet all and table; for no man payes dearer for this Marble then the King himfelie, who esteemes it a disho; what good nour to take my hing of Strangers for nothing. And they are so entertayned at the Kings cost, would see, that all things reckoned, they get every day about their, necessarile there is a supportant of the support of t Hence are many ambitious of this Embalinge and purchase it of the Caranan Baffa (who hath men in few the nomination) at great price : at that time counterfeiting their Kings Letters, acknowledging dayes might the nominatory at great price. The like Embifages the Chinois admit from duers Kingdomes, paffe.

Availables to the King of China. The like Embifages the Chinois admit from duers Kingdomes, paffe.

Contact the China China China China and Samue of the Torian Kingdomes are switched. Duers Embig. 30 from Canchus china, Stam, Leuchien, Corea, and some of the Tartary Kingdomes, not without in-

credible expenses of the publike treasure : of which fraud the Chinau are not ignorant, but flac-feued. ter with their King, as if all the World paid Tribute vnto, him, when as rather the Chinesi in. this manner pay Tributes to them.

At the end of the yeere 1005. Our Benedilt came to Secen, growne wealthy by his long. Iourney; having thirteene Horles, fine hired Servants, two Boyes, which hee bought, and the most precious Marble of the rest, all valued at 2500. Duckets. Hee also and Isaac were well in health. In this Citie he lighted vpon other Saracens returned from Pequin, which confirmed Reportrof ret health. In this Catte ne agraced vpouroiner oursesson, iccurate a round a system of the thing the former Reports of the Fathers, with other things beyond all mealure of Fathers the King weighed. of China paid them money daily by a certaine meafare and not by weight. Hee writ presently

40 to Father Matthew to Pequin, to acquaint him with his comming, and gaue the Letters to certaine Chinois: but because he knew not the China name wherewith Ours were called, and the Region where they resided, and writin European Characters, those Chinose could not deliver them. The next yeare at Easter, he sent againe by a Saracen Fugitive (for they may neither goe in nor out without the Magistrates leque) and writ to them of his Voyage and state, defining them to take some course to tree him from that Prison, that he might returne by Sea into Indus, . the Portugall way. The Kather had long before learned by Letters from India, of this intended Journey, and yeerely expected him, and made much enquirie of those counterfeit Embassadors, but could not till now heare of him. They were now therefore much joyed to read his Letters, which in November following came to their hands, and one was preferrly fent, to bring him by Novem 1606:

50 some meanes to Pequa, not one of the Societie left one stranger should hinder another, but a Papill which lately admitted, had not yet entred his probation, named Iohn Fernandus a wife young man, with a companion, a new Conuert, skilled in those parts. And if hee could not bring him thence by the Magistrates leaue or by other Arts, he should flay there with him, and write to the Company, who by their friends would procure him pallage.

This lourney was varea sonable in the hardest of Winter, being almost four emoneths sourney from Peguin. Yet would not Father Matthew deferre any longer, which if he had done, Gora would have beene dead before his comming. Hee and two others of the Societie writ to him. Meane-while Goes fuffers more wrongs of the Saracens in this place then hee had done in the

way, and was faine to fell his Marble halfe under the price for proutions, whence he made 1200. 6c Duckers and paid his Debts, and furfained his Family a yeere. Means-while, the Caraual carbe Carauan conference of the with their Capraine, and he with enterrainments was againe forced to borrow, and because hee meth, was chosen into the number of the seventie two, he prouded him of some Marble pieces, without which had beene no going to Pequin. Hee hid one hundred pounds in the ground that the Saucess should not know thereof. Ferdinandus went from Pequin the eleventh of December,

The Saracen Nations bordering on these parts of China, might easily by the Chinois bee subdued, as being not warlike men, if the Chinois cared to enlarge their Dominions. In this way one night Beneditt fell from his Horse, his company going on and not missing him till they came to their Lodging, and then I face went backe to feeke him and found him by the found of the Name lefus, almost despairing to see his company any more.

He writed also his Mother and shewed her his Patent, which was with great reverence admitted : to her he gaue a Chrystall glaffe, a Calico cloth of India, and the like. The Childs Go. uernour alfo, or Protector, which fwayd the publike Affaires, fent for him. In this way one of Goez his Horfes fell into a fwift River, and escaped to the other fide ; and came againe of himtelfe, the Name of lefus being inuoked.

Caracathai, the first place of the Tartars Conquest. See before in F. Becen, Ruis. Acfin.

In this way the Defert is passed called Caracathai, that is, The blacke Land of the Catharan: in which they fay the Catayans stayed long. In this Towne they stayed fifteene dayes for other Merchants, and then departing went to Onograch Gazo, to Cafciani, to Dellai, to Saregabedal. to Vgan, and after to Cucia, a small Towne where they stayed a whole moneth to refresh their bealts, which by the irkiomnesse of the wayes, and weight of the Marble, and want of Barley 10 were almost spent. Here the Priests demanded of Goez, why in their Solemne Fast (Lent) he fasted not, and almost forced him in hope of some Largeste or Fine. After they were gone hence in fine and twentie dayes they came to the Citie Cialie, which was little, but well fortified. This Countrey was gouerned by a base Sonne of the King of Cascar, who hearing that Goes professed Country was gone been to year life him. Saying, it was a bold part for a man of another profef, fion to enter those parts: for he might lawfully take from him his life and goods. But when he read his Letters Patents he was pacified, and with a Present was madealso a friend. One night disputing about their Law, with the Priests and Learned men, he sent for Benedict into the Palace (whereupon suspition arose of some ill intent being at so vnseasonable a time) hee went and being commanded to dispute, with force of Arguments silenced the Aduersaries. The Vice-roy 30 alway protected him, approuing his Sayings, and concluding that the Christians were the true Misermans, saying, that his Progenitors had professed the same Law. After the Disputation hee made him a Banquet, and caufed him to lye that night in the Palace, so that Isas was weeping at his returne, and almost in despaire to see him. In this Citie they stayed three moneths. For the Caraman Bassa would not depart without a great company (it being so much more gaine to him ) nor fuffer any man to goe before. Goez weatied with this tedious stay and chargeable expence, with a Gift obtayned leane of the Viceroy, the Caranan and Captaine being against it. He then intended to proceed from Cialis, when the Merchants of the former Caravan retur-

ned from Caray. These faining an Embassage (after their wont) had pierced into the Royall 30

Seat of Caray, and having converfed in the same Palace of Strangers with our (lesuites) repor-

three moneths with ours, and told him that the Fathers had prefented to the King, Watches,

Pictures and other European Presents, and were much respected in the Palace, of the greatest,

and (adding some lies) faid that they had often spoken with the King. They reasonable well

painted their faces, but knew not their names : by reason that after the China manner they

had taken other names. And for further Argument they thewed a Paper written in Portneall. which they had taken out of the duft, when the Servant (wept the Chamber, to shew in their

owne Countrey. This cheared Goez hearing that Cater was Chana, and that Peguin the Royall 40

The Vice-roy gave him his Letters for fecuritie, and demanding whether he would be inscribed a Christian, he answered yea; for all this way he had comme, called by the Name of Isa, and

fo would hold out to the end. An old Saracen Prieft hearing this, caft his Cap on the ground, ap-

plauding his resolute Zeale, saying, that theirs are reported to diffemble and alter their Religion

with the Region. Goez went on with his companion, and a few others, and in twentie dayes

came to Pucian a Towne of the same Kingdome, where the Gouernour vsed him kindly and

amply prouided him out of his owne House. Thence they proceeded to Turphan, and flaid a

whole moneth in that fortified Citie. Thence they passed to Aramath, and after to Cannel, a for-

the Kingdome of Cialis, which ends at this Towne. From Canual in nine dayes they came to

the Northerne wals of China, to a place called Chiaicnon, where they staid fine and twentie

tified place where they refreshed themselues another moneth, because they were well vied in all 50

Newes of F M. Ricins and ted strange and certaine newes of Father Matthew and the Companie, to Goez, who wondred the lemirs. that Catay was become China. Thefe Saracens were the fame hereafter reported of, which lined In Pantois and Ricius.

that is right

Names chan-

Citie was Cambalu.

Pueien.

The wals of Chiaicuon.

Socieu in China.

Borderers

daves for the Answere of the Vice-roy of that Prouince. After this they were admitted entrance within the walles, and in one day came to Societa Citie, where they heard much of Pequin, and other names knowne; so that now hee was out of all doubt that Catay and China differed only in name. All the way from Cialis to the borders of China, is infamous with incursions of the Tartars: and therefore Merchants passe these places with great feare, fearching by day from the Neighbour Hils whether there bee any out-rode of Tariars, and if they judge the wayes fecure they trauell by night with filence. In the way they found many Saracons miferably flaine, having adventured to goe alone : although the 60 Tartars seldome kill the Natiues, saying, they are their Slaues and Herdimen, from whom they take away their flocks of Sheepe, and Herds of Bullocks. They eate no Wheate, Barley, nor Pulie, faying, it is food for beafts, not men. They feed only on flesh, not sparing Horses, Mules, Camels, and yet are taid to live one hundred yeares.

The

and his Servant ranne from him at Singhan, the Mother Citie of the Province of Scianfi, carrying away halfetheir prouision. At the end of March, 1607, he yet made shift to get to Socen, and found Goez lying on his Death-bed, who had dreamed that one of our company would come thither the next day, and fent I face into the Market who brought Ferdmanday to him. Having receiued the Letters, he brak into a Nune dimittis, as feeming to have ended his Pilgrimage. Eleuen daves after Goez dyeth, not without inspition of Poylon from the Saracens. They had perpetual Spies to watch and catch what he left, which they did most barbarously execute, and amons if the reft his Journall was loft which he had written in very small Letters. They sought for it to preuent payment of Debts there entred. They would have buried him like a Saracen, but Ifage and Ferdinand excluded them and buried him , with a recitall of the Rofaria , in defect of other to Bookes. Thus died Benedict Goez, a man of great parts, which had after his admission done great feruice to the Societie (howfoeuer he was not a Prieft) much esteamed by the Great Morell. whom he auerted from the Warre of India. He diffwaded before his death that Ours should not trust the Saracens, nor adventure this way, as unprofitable and dangerous. And although hee dved without Confession in so many yeeres, yethe was cheerefull in the mercie of God, and professed that his confcience did not accuse him of matters of any moment,

By a Tartarian custome they divide the goods of the deceased among st them all, and therefore

bound I face threatning to kill him if he turned not Mahumetan; but Ferdinand put vp 2 Supplication to the Vice-roy at Cancen, who subscribed that the Gouernour of Sosen should examine the businesse. He first was fauourable, but corrupted by bribes threatned to whip him, and held a him in Prison three dayes. But he fold his Garments for want of Money, and continued the Suit fine moneths, not being able at first to conferre with I face for want of Language, I face only vetered a few Portugall words , and the Judge had thought they had spoken in the Canton Tongue. At last, Ferdinand learned to speake Persian, and was able to conferre with him. The Saracens pleaded that Ferdinand was a Chinese by his countenance, the other a Saracen : hee anfwered that his Mother was a Chinese, whom he resembled. But nothing moued the Judge more then that he was an enemy to their Religion, and pulling a piece of Porke out of his fleeue, they both did eate it; whereupon with laughter of the Affembly, the Saracens abhominated both, fpitting at the Armenian, and leaving the Suit, faying, that the Armenian was deluded by the Martinumey. China-coorener. For in all the way to present offence, Benedit and I face had abstiyined from 10.

Porke. And thus all was by the Iudges semence restored to Ferdinaid which had beene Benedit in the ground, which was fold, and yeelded to pay their Debts and prouision for their Journey to Pegain, whither both of them came. They brought a faire gilded Croffe-Picture and the Charters of three Kings, Cascar, Quotan and Cialis, which are referred at Peguin for a memoriali. Isaac related all this Storie to Father Matthew upon credit of his memorie, and having stayed a moneth, was fent the wonted way to Amacaa; where being well entertayned, hee in tayling thence to India, was

Chaul.

### CHAP. V.

taken by Hollanders, and loft both goods and libertie. But the Portugals of Malaca redeemed him, and he held on his course to India, and hearing of his Wiues death, went not to the Mogols

Countrey, but flaid at Chant, and is now at the writing hereof aline.

A Generall Collection and Historicall representation of the Islantes entrance into lapon and China, Intill their admission in the Royall Citie of Nanquin,

of Francis Xavier, Melchior Nunnes, Valignanys, RUGGERIVS and PASIUS.

Oralmuch as we have failed so lately from the Philippinas to China, and backeagaine with our Friers, and have given you a lesuits Land Iourney, we thought it worthy our labour alfo to launch into the deepe of their Nauigations, and to honour the Iefuits, (to whom in the following parts of this Hiltorie we are fo in-63 debted) with observing their Observations of Iapon, and the intercourse thereof with Ching; and from it (as the greatest and most glorious Easterne Jesuiticall

Conquest) to thip our felnes in their Barge to China. How Francis Xanier (new Sainted at Rome, together with Ignatius Loisla, first Founder of that Order) laboured the Conversions of

CHAP. S.S. I. Ieluites glorying of Connersions : their Proselites examined.

Gentiles and Pagans to Christianitie, as in other parts of the Indies, so heere in I apan I willingly acknowledge; yea, so farre am I from enuying either him or his Order, or any other Order the led Religious, their Trophees of Convertions, that I could wish the Pope seated in Miaco, and all the Ieluits, & Friers, yea, all his Ieluited Clergie fully possessed of the Bonzian Colledges & Temples in Iapon; whence a double good might issue; to the Ethnikes some light in stead of a totall darkneffe, a diseased life being better then death; and to Europe, to be lightned of their burthen. where professing themselves Lights, they prove Lightnings, and raise so manifold combustions. And most especially could I with this honour to my Countrey-men the English Iesuites, and Priefts, Popili Emissaries of whatloeuer Order, that they were there ordered, or (which fits to their ambition better) ordering that Eatterne World, rather then here difordered and difordering , playing the Lords of Mif-rule in the West. The very Name of Christ is sweet to mee, euen in lapan, yea, from a lefuites mouth, or a lefuites Conuert; and would God they taught them Ielus more, and leffe Ieluitish tancies of exchanged worship of Creatures, howsoeuer gilded

with Christian Names, that the Iaponians might learne to acknowledge Iefus and Maria truly, and not with Names and Images of they know not what, to worthip Venus and her Sonne Cupid, This happened in stead of the Blessed Virgin, and that incarnate Blessednesse her blessed Sonne, who is God oner in Capt. Saits

One told Cortes the Mexian Conqueror then speaking great words, that there is much difference in conquering Neighbours at home, and naked Americans; I adde, that a man may be Chri-20 stened, and yet farre short of Christianine, (euen by Jesuites \* testimonies) and that somewhat \* See sup Lose. more is required to a Christian then Christian Names, given in Baptisme to hundreds at once, as 12 \$65. and the some have done without further instruction. Denotion is rather to be prized by weight and last Chapter of worth, then by tale and numbers, as happens in their Beades here, and too often in their Con- my Pulgrimage gersions there: which were they indeed so much to be magnified and gloried in, would aswell pressile in men of capacitie to ouerthrow firms bolds and high imaginations, as here to worke on 1.64.104. our filly women laden with finnes, hoping for their Confession-cure; and there, with fillinesse it selfe, or such as Reason turnes Coriftians because they will not runne madde with their owne SeeSir T. Ree to fuch Monsters as their Bonzs teach them. Themselves confesse, that it is not much, they can and M.Terry, premaile with Mahametans any where or here in China: and Ours have found them to fay more [40] \$1.148a. and 30 then they had done in that little.

I should much rejoyce that their Reports were true, and that as an Orator of theirs hath so fiems that lemnized the Canonization of Loisla, their Patriarke, and Xasier the Indian Apossic (so hee sti- with Megala & leth them) this Samt Francis had connerced three hundred thouland Soules, of innumerable changing the Nations; yea, all Heretikes in neere fixteene hundred yeeres, had not converted fo many, nay, are best Con-Nations; yea, all Heretuses in neere unsured minured yeeres, nad not converted to many, nay, uert. in. had not peruerted io many not Christians, to all their Herefes together, as he alone adjoyned to "Adulstibut." Christin eleven yeeres. I am glad to heare it, and that which hee addeth, that all Heretickes tomas. Colon.d. whatfoeuer had not infect dio many Languages and peoples, as those of which hee had illustra- 1622-1873.6. ted many with Christian Truth and Pietie. Doth this man consider how much of the World hath beene Christian, and how much after that Herecical! how many more Nations the Nosto-

40 rian Herene hath infected then Xanier faw, leavening, in manner, all Afia from Constantinople where it began, vinco Tartarial Cashay, or China, and the Index, and hath not the Income He. See before in sefie prevailed over Africat and before that the Arrism , over all the World, which as Saint Hie . Pole, cont. ov. rome latch, ground and wondred to lee it felie growne. Arrians But these perhaps rather permetted.

Christians then any way connected Esbaikes 1 Yer the erest Nations of the Gaskes and Facility of the standard of the control of the Christians then any way converted Estimbes! Yet the great Nations of the Goibes and Vandales were of Ethnikes made Arreans, the great Nations of the Lithuanians, Mufconites, Ruffes, &c. have not many hundred yeeres fince of Ethnikes beene converted to the Greeke Church, which they hold not Catholike (that I mention not the Armenians, Georgians, and others) one of which numbreth many times three hundred thousand.

And that one Impietie of Mahannee hath more Followers many, then all whatfoeuer professional 50 ons of Christiannie in all Languages, Nations, Rites whatfocuer (I greeue to tell ir) and that from perueric Ethnikes and peruerted Christians. And although Lather and Calnin Went not out of Germanie and France (which he objects) yet their found, the Gospell which they preached bails gone over all the Earth, (as these our Relations shew in the Voyages of English, Dinich, French, yea, the Apostles themselues) and they have shaken the Towres of Babylon in Europe, where they were ftrongest (where Antichnet hathhis Throne, a Conquest more then Indian or Inponian) and when the Prophesie of Babylons vtterruine is fulfilled, the same wordshall conquer (I hope) both lewer and Gentiler, yea, these letuites and their Preachings, may by Duine Dif. Apr. 18.

pensation become Harbengers to the Gospell hereafter, as the Iemph Dispersions in the Translations of the Scripture and profession of the true God, were fore-runners of the Apostles preations out to start the start of the time to ti Wolses enter, and make vs to leave the Pharifer glorie of compating Sea and Land to wime Pro-Alisa Glasson chair shair Harry and Sun A. felace to these their Heires and Successors in this, as in many other things. But I will leave them glorying of their Convertions, grieving that they are not herein better then their reports. I will glorying of their Comiernous, greening that they are not necessively even their reposition of follow them to these parts of (bins, and here for Chinas sake to Japon , and with that Rule of Chinas sake to Japon , and with that Rule of Chinas sake to Japon , and with that Rule of Chinas sake to Japon , and with that Rule of Chinas sake to Japon .

1.1.4c.r.p.367.

Caffin

Cassium (Cus bono) observe them, in things not gainefull to their Religion, approve and appland their in Justrie, yea, accept and thankfully acknowledge their authoritie. In their Conversions rothe Faith, I suspend my faith in the qualitie, if I admit their quantitie. For how could one man well instruct so many in so little time, except hee could have given the Holy Ghost, as the Apostles in their convertions did.

How little in

Francis Xanier, in the yeere 1541. Sayled from Lisbon, wintred at Mosambique, whence hee passed into India, after that to Malaca, and to Iaponia, & Canillas oras (fayth the former Au. thor) quas Oceanus ab Indico mari vsque ad extremos Sinas, id est totius Orbis dimidimo, circum. companion
was Pash, from flust, Enangelica predicatione illustrants & implenit, (Iapon was first discourred and knowne to the Journalism oil- Portugals by Mosa, carryed out of his course to China thither by tempes, 1542.) Heedyed, 10 Anno 1552, the fine and fiftieth of his Age, of his Indian peregrination the element, in the He Sancian, on the Coast of Chma. This was the Indian Standard-hearer to all of that Societie (beginning his trauell to Lisbon the first yeers of their Confirmation 1540.) and now desired of Canonized, and inuoked by Doctor Schulchenius, Chancellor of Collen his Orator, Ignatio France cifee vestris succerrite precibus, co. A Letter of his written from lapon, in November, 1449, Wee came by Gods grace in August to Iapon, on the Feast day of the Assumption of the Virgin Marie, having let forth from Malaca on Midsommer day, The Master of the Ship was a Chinese, which had

Letter of Xauis

beauty is verticious accessing to the most accessing to the Malaca, and layled professing till the Malier altered by minde (at these Barbarians are vsually inconstant) and layred long amongs the Ilandi in the may, 20 This trendled vs in two respects principally, but for the last of the last on the may, 20 This trendled vs in two respects principally, but for the last of the season which God offered, and which being past, wee were compelled to winter on the Coast of China; and againe, because in the same Ship thippecaby the was carried an Idoll of the Denill, to which the Mariners in fight and spight of vs, sarificed after the manner of their Countrey. They also by lots demanded answers thereof, touching their Voyage; which (as they (and and beleened) were sometimes good, sometimes bad. Abundred leagues from Malaca, holding our course to China, wee stayed at an Iland, where after many Ceremonies the Deuill was consulted, what fortune wee should have, who answered, very prosperous: Whereupon with great alacritic wee set sayle: they worshipped the Idoll placed in the poope, with Candles burning and incense of sweet Wood; wee trusted in God she Creator of Heaven and Earth, and in his Sonne our Lord Ielus Christ, desiring to carrie his Religion into those parts. When wee were under sayle, they demanded of the Denill, whether 30 this Ship should return from lapon to Malaca : the answer was made by the lot-casters, that it should goe to lapon, but not returne to Malaca; which made them alter their mindes, thinking it better to winter in China, and to deferre the voyage to Iapon till the next yeere. You may well thinke bow it griened vs, that the Denill must bee consulted touching our course. After this we came to Cauchinchina, where

two adverse things bappened, Emanuel Sina our companion, by the rolling of the Ship in the troubled

Sea fell into the fine, almost dead with the bruise and water, but in few dayes reconcred : which before it

was ended, the Masters Daughter with the like rolling of the Ship fell into the Sea, and in all our sight

was drowned, and much lamentation followed. The Barbarians prefently sught to pacific the Denill, and without rest all the day and night, tooke paines to kill Birds to the Idoll; and to set dishes (of meate before it, ) and by lots consulted to know the cause of that misfortune. The answer was, that if Emanuel 40 which first fell in, had dyed, the Girle had not fallen into the Sea. You fee in what danger the Denill hereby badcaft us, if our Lord bad not reftra ned his rage, or c.

ons and Pira-

The tempest being asswaged, wee came in few dayes to the Port of Canton in China. And there they purposed to Winter, notwithstanding all our intreaties and exposmlations : but I know not how on a Sudden they would goe to Chincheo, on the Same Coast. And when wee were almost there, the Master Lapon Paul had was certified by some which sayled by, that there was store of Pirats at Chincheo; whereupon the winde beene in India, being faire for Iapon, and croffe for Canton, they brought us to Cangoxuma, the Country of our and was Baptis friend Paul, whose friends wied we unkindly. There wee frent forte dayes in learning the Elements of the Iaponian tongue with great labour, and began to publish the Decaloque, and other beads of Christian learning, which Paul had accurately connerted into his owne Language; and wee purposed speedily to 50 Print them, whereby the knowledge of Christ is further and more easily founded, oc. The occasion of his journey thither, heesheweth in another Letter, that some Portugals being lodged in a House poffeffed by Denuls, compaffed the fayd boufe with Croffes, and that there was great hope of good to bee done in those parts: whereupon, notwithstanding those Seas are very tempestnous, and much insested with Pirats, hee resolued to goe thither.

Ricius and Trigantius, adde that the Iaponian Priests alledged in defence of their Idolatries, the Chinois wisedome against him, whereupon hee returned to India, to adulte with the Vice-roy to fend an Ambassage into China, without which there was no entrance, and obtayned that I ames Pereira was named Legate, with whom he had before conferred about the businesse at Sancian, where the Portugals at that time vied to trade with the Chinois, (Amacao not yet (Rablifhed) 60 but Aluarn: Tardius the Captayne of Malaca opposed. Xanier loath herein to bee crossed, vied the Popes Bull, which constituted him Apostolicall Runcio, and grieuously Cursed all that should hinder his proceedings in promoting Religion. And when Alwarus would not otherwise relent, hee interdicted him and his followers. Soone after Aluarus was pollefled with a Lepro-

# CHAP. S. S. I. Xauiers zeale, Portugals trade with Chinois, Amacao, Nunez. 310

sie, and further contemning the Vice-roy, was taken and cast in Irons, and dyed miserably. Xauier burning with zeale of his China expedition, lought to get fome Chinois by fauour or re- Xauier zeale. ward, to convergh him by Health into China, and to expose him some-where on the Continent. although hee knew that imprisonment attended fuch strangers, as came into China without licence. Being admonished to take leave of the Captayne, What, sayd hee, Sould I goe to salute an Excommunicate person ? I shall never see him, nor bee me, inthis life, nor after, but when in the Vale of Iofaphat I Shall accuse him before the Indge, Christ. And praying for him, after with a counter Sencial thirds nance full of Maiestie, hee put off his shooes, and shooke off the dust, according to the Evangelical leagues from precept. Thus he came to Sancian a Delart Hand, where the Portugals vied to make outher of the China

Io boughes or ftraw, (for the time of their Trading with the (binois) with whom hee confulted a- shoare. bout some way to effect his desires, though with losse of libertie or life. At last he agreeth with a China Merchant, for as much Pepper (given him of the Portugall Merchants in almes) as was worth about two hundred Duckets, to fet him and his Interpreter on shoare secretly. Hee vindertooke it, but either fecretly terrified by other Portugals, or with his owne danger, his Inter-Sec Fita Kaus-Dreter for sooke him : and after that, the Merchant alio vanished. He stayed yet wayting for THE F.Pinto. him, till a Feuer tooke him out of the world, in December, 1552. His corps was after tran- & Eman. Asofta flated to India.

The Portugals of those times, were very desirous of Trade with the Chinois, who on the other ", oc. fide were very suspitious of them, both by that which they saw of their Ships and Ordnance, 20 and by that which the Moores at Canton reported of these Franks, (so the Mahametans \* call \*Since the Exand by that which the Magnesiat Canton reported of these France, (10 the Magnesians - Call Pedition of Europeans) that they were warlike and victorious, as appeared in Malaca and all India, under the Westerne colour of Merchandife subjected to the Portugals. The Chinois at Canton call them still Falanks : christians (the for they want the R, and pronounce not two conforants without a vowell interpoled. By the chiefe of fame name they call allo the Portugals Ordnance. Yet delire of gaine preuayled, that they were which were admitted to fuch a trade as ye have heard, to as the Mare ended, they mult away with their goods pranty) to me conquetto its. to India. That course continued divers yeeres, till the Chimos growing leffe fearefull, granted raidem. them in the greater lland a little Peninsula to dwell in. In that place was an Idoll, which still remayneth to beefeene, called Ama, whence the Peninfula was called Amacao, that is, Amac APeninfulan Bay. This Rocke indeed rather then Peninsula, began to bee inhabited not onely of Portugals, compassed

30 but of the confluence of all neighbouring Nations, in regard of the commerce of Commodities of with water ex-Europe, India, and the Moluccas, brought in Portugals Ships, and especially loue of the Silver cepton one Coynes, brought the Chinois thither to dwell. In continuance of time, a Citie began by degrees Beginnings of to bee built, and the Porsugals made not onely contracts of Merchandife, but of Marriage, with America. the Chinois, and so the Paninsula was filled with private houses, and out of a barren Rocke arose a noble Mart. And as gayne brought Merchants thither, fo the care to keepe and to get foules, brought thither Priests and Religious men, and the Poringall Kings primiledged the place with the tytle of a Citie, and made it a Bishops See. There the lesites fixed a relidence, and first ere-Red a Church to our Ladie, and after that diners others. For it seemed convenient to their defignes, the world of China lying to the North, the Molaccas to the South, Iapon, and the Philip-

40 pinas to the East, to the West Cochinchina, Camboia, Stam, and others.

From hence, many intended the China imployment without successe, those fields not then white to the haruest. Meichior Nunnes, (Anno 1555.) from Canton, writes of his accidentall Melchur Nun. going a shoare on China, in his voyage to lapan, occasioned by a terrible tempest whereto those Seas are much subiect. They came in July to Sancian an Iland, thirtie leagues from Canton, being much indangered by the Rockes in the way, and there hee fayd Maffe ouer the place where Xauier had beene buryed; and eafily obtayned admission into Carton. This is reported to bee the content least of all the Mother Cities of the Proninces, yet seeming to exceed Lisbone, in frequencie. The buil- Mettopolitan dings are good, the walls strong: a thousand Arches with inscriptions are seene therein, which the Ma-Citic. giftrates of faulty leave as Memorials at their departures. The people are given to their bellies, and to the field histely. 50 pleasure. The Government is admirable. The Chiefe Influe they call Hexais, the Treasurer Pontions could chall, the Admirall and Governour of Strangers, Altan. The Chaens Enfignes, are a Hand and an you have to Eye; bis office is to fee the Execution of the Kings Sentences, to order or deprine Magifrates. The much before Tutan is Once-roy, conspicuous by his Cap and his Garments, wroughs with a gilded Lion, which " is dies, dies, or Tutan is Vice-vey, complement by his Cap and his Garments, wronghe with a guided Lion, which is thinked the Kings Armes: in Statebee excelleth European Kings, The Portugall Captaynes and weeffeake 500 pinted 0, not to him, but alcofe on our kneet. If any will feake with him, at enery Gate of his fampinous Palace, butthis the bee must aloud viter his businesse, before the Porter admits him. Hee hath many for his Guard. And Provinces one hundred thou fand men are sayd to be emaint ayned at the Kings cost, for the keeping of this Province, Asmes not the Kings

His Officers goe two and two and make way with great cryes. Their Cane-whippings are terrible, the Kings. Canes burned at the end, a subite long, foure fingers broad, oc. The Chinois are wittie and indicious, 60 in matters of the world: but have luttle care of the fortle, ignorant of its "immortalitie, of one God, and mmatter of the worth, was came interest on joine, ignorant of 113.

Feternall revards and purishments. Their Priefs base a kinds of Miter or the bead, are shaken some Sede. peter and reverse a compression of the Freeze state of the state of th their Ceremonies, and the lawe: of their Holies. The Imbabitants all hame Idols, which they incerfe; more other and dinine by less, beating the Idols if the Lots prone unluckie. I was twice at Canton, and front in this.

moneths there to redeeme Portugall presoners. The Chinois kill or captimate the Portugals, which

are wracked on that Coast, which yet they cease to dae, since they pay their Customes. I went thence

mi Sinensis ex-

lefuites Epiftles published by

tant with the

lo. Hayus.

Alexander Valignanus, was fent by the Iesuiticall Generall into India as Visitor, and having visited other parts, came to Amacao, in his way to lapon, forced to stay there ten moneths with the lessites. There hee more fully informed himselve of the state of Chima, and raised the embers Admiranda reg- of the almost extinguished zeale of that expedition. Hee is thought to bee the Author of the treatile called Admiranda Regni Smensis, contayning a summarie of the wonders in China, worthy heere to have beene inferted, but that wee rather ayme at things feene then heard, as having better certaintie. Oculatus testis vinus prestat auritis decem., Vpon the confideration of their wits, Peace, Policie, fludies of Learning, hee conceiued that if any were skilfull of their Language and Letters, he might doe some good for their Conversion. Hereupon hee resolved to imploy some that way, although many others of the companie which had experience of the Chime affayres, held it labour in vayne. Yet hee went on and because of the paucitie of oursat

at least one Priest for that purpose. And he going to Japon, left order what hee which was sent

in May to Iapan.

Mich.Ruggeri-

Michael Ruggerius, an Italian of the Kingdome of Naples, was fent, and came to Amacao, in July, Anno 1579. and applyed himselfe to learne the language which the Courtiers in China vie, and is common thorow all China, (the Provinces having otherwife peculiar languages) also to learne to reade and write their Characters, which are as many as words. That language was verie hard both in it felfe, and for the want of teachers. For thole Christian Chineis which lived at Amacao, in habit of Europeans, & those which came thither in Merchandise, were almost as ignorant of the Court tonque, as of the Portugall : and though they understood it, yet they could not well pronounce it. And for the Characters, they know those which belonged to their Merchandifing and common vie. Labor improbus omnia vincit. With pictures his teacher was often for-Portugal trade ced to supply characters. And whereas the Portugals twice a yeere in the Mart feafon have acceffe to Canton, about I anuarie and I une, he went with them thither. For in time they obtayned day, and extru- this libertie, that not in a defart Iland, as first, nor in the Amacao Hauen, but in the Metropoliean Citie two dayes up the River, they might have trading by day, but lye aboard at night, with io many eyes and watches on them, as it is manifest they are not altogether free of 30 their former feares.

Amacao, and none fo fit for that designe, hee sent into India to the Promincial, to fend thither

Rugg,first en-

These Marts continue two moneths each of them, or longer, and have beene the onely meane of admitting the lefastes into China, by the industrie and pietie of other Portugals. Ruggerius therefore with his merchandife also adventured with them, and found an impediment at first. Another lestite which before had gone thither had converted a youth, Disciple to a Priest, and closely conue yed him to Amacae. His Master made complaint and procured the Magistrate to fetch him backe by force, to the great trouble of Ours, and feeming discredit as if by ill arts they had feduced Children from their Parents, which is a thing at Canton, both vitall and Capi-Ruggeriss freed tall. Ruggeriss enterposed himselfe with great care and discretion, and appealed the Admirals or by the Hai-tao, Which hath the command of Strangers, who hereby had an opinion of his vertue, and delighted to feehim studious of the China pookes. He therefore permitted him to stand at his side

when others kneeled, and freed him also from the going aboard at night, and allowed him a Ambassage of place in the Palace, where the Ambassadours of the King of Siam were visually entercayned, bringing their present or tribute (such as you have heard in Goez) to the King. There hee studied night and day the China bookes, and on Sundayes and Holy-dayes, the Portugals came thither to him to Maffe and to receive the Sacraments. This continued whiles they continued, for when the Mart ended hee was commanded to returne with them. The Father procured acquaintance also with the chiese Captayne of the Souldiers of that Province (the Chinois call him Zumpin) to whom hee gaue a watch. By this meanes many of thole which came to Amacao, began to shake off their Ethnike darknesse, and the devout Portugals erected a House for the Catechumen

Zumpim oz Chumbim.

(new Conuerts to bee instructed in Christian mysteries before Baptisme) where hee instructed them, and more freely followed his China studies, by helpe of Interpreters. One businesse hindred another, and his Marts absence (which tooke vp neere halfe the yeere) this Catechising, and a tongue is hardly learned by fludie without vie; and therefore the Vifitor fent for Masthen Ricins out of India, (which had come out of Europe with Ruggerins, and now had finished his Diminitie course at Goa) to bee his youke fellow, one to whom the China expedition is most

Anno 1 82. Valignamus the Visitor, carryed certayne I apoman Princes sent to Rome to yeeld fubiection to the Pope, in the name of those Kings which fent them, as you shall heare. He stay- 60 Francrinice of ing for the Monfon at the Colledge of Amacao, tooke great paines to advance the China bulineffe. And to that purpose hee instituted the Fraternite or fellowship of lesus in our House, with lawes fitting to New Converts; forbidding any Portugals to bee therein admitted, but onely Chinois, and Imponians, and those which were newly concerted of other Nations : alway to bee

gouerned by one of those Fathers which should bee assigned to the China Expedition, called, The Father of the new Connerts, taking care not onely of their faluation, but their other affaires

The Vice-roy of Canton Province is one of the chiefe Vice-royes, because his Province is farre Vice-roy of from Pequin, and coasting on the Sea; infested therefore with often Piracies, especially I apoman. Continu Hereupon the Canton Vice-roy exercifeth iuridiction also in the adioyning Prouince Quample, Quamp if occasion require to leuie more Souldiers, although Quamif hath also a Vice-roy of her owne. For this cause the Canton Vice-roy resideth not at Canton, but at Scianquin, a Citie bordering Scianquin.

on both Prounces. At this time Cinfus borne in the Prounce of Fuguen, was Vice-roy, a couetous man, who to get money of the Amachons fent thither his Writ for the Bulhop and Cape taine to come to his Court, vinderstanding that they commanded all there. They thought it not agreeing to the Portugall honour to goe, nor to their fafety to neglect his fummons, and there-

fore by Valignarus his aduife, Ruggerius was fent in the name of the Bishop, to see if hee could get a perpetuall Station in that Kingdome, and Penella the Auditor, in place of the Captaine, And to obtaine his fauour, that he should not disturbe their merchandising, a Present was feet him at publike charge, of fuch things as the Chinois most regard, as waved garments of filke Dat maske (which the Chinois then knew not how to make) Crystall Glaffes, and other things valued at 1000. Duckets. The Vice-roy received them in great pompe, more to terrifie then henour them; but at the fight of the Presents (the scope of his purpose) hee became gentle and courteous, and decreed that they might line in his Port in manner as hitherts they had done, obeying the Lames of the China Magistrates: which words seeme formall, the Peringals living there af-

ter their owne Lawes ; and other Nations, yea the Chinon themselues which are Christians in habite and religion, being subiect to them. The other Chenois are subiect to common Officers fent thither from Canton. The Vice-roy would have nothing, but hee would pay for it, which heedid because bribes and gifts are there seuerely punished : but privily hee sent to them, that Bribettiches.

money was given them to procure him as many other like.

Ruggeriss defired that which he came for, faying, he learned the China Tongue and read their Bookes, which he seemed much to like, and gaue him hopes at his next returne to obtayne it. And having given them weight of Silver; with provision, great attendance of Magistrates and 30 Souldiers, much Musicke of Hoybuckes and other Instruments, hee sent them pompoully thorow the publike streets of the Citie to their hipping. So weighty is hope of gaine. In August had comne (as they vie) Portugall thips to Amaeas, in them of our Society not a few, and an mongst others , Father Matthew Ricius , w .o brought with him an artificiall Watch from the Mat. Ricius, Provinciall for the advancing this China buineffe. About that time the Captaine of Amacao having made readie thole things which the Vice-roy prescribed, sent backe the Auditor to Sciauguin, but Ruggerius vnicasonably (or seasonably rather as the eacht manifested) fell ficke; yet fent word to the Vice-roy that he could not come to him as he had promifed : and withall, that he had a Clocke-watch which did without any striker found the houres, a thing even still of Clocke-watch much wonder to the Chinois. Hearing of his ficknesse, hee seemed forrowfull, but this Watch

40 awaked him, and caufed him to make his Secretarie prefently write a Licence for the Father to come to him with that admirable worke, as foone as he should bee able. When this Charter was read at Amacao, it contayned more; for the Fathers were muted by publike Authoritie to erect a publike and private house in that Citie, which caused great toy. But the Visitor was afraid as yet to fend Ruggerius, as not turnished fully for that deligne; the beginning of a thing being the greatest part. The other lesuites perswaded, and Father Francis Passus bound for lagon, a man well qualified for gouerning was fent, and Ruggerius adioyning his Colleague. Ricius was made Gouernour of the Colledge of the Catechumen, and appointed to follow the other two, if occafion serued. And if the butinesse proceeded not, Passa was to proceed to Iapon, and the other two to attend better opportunitie in their China bulineffe. Those two lesuites went to Sciauguin, and offered their Watch with a triangle Glaffe pre- 10/4/11/15 fift

fenting variety of colours, a thing admired of the Chinais as a precious lewell: both which the contra were exceeding welcome to the Vice-roy, who affigned them a connenient flation in a Suburbian Temple, called Thien-min-zn, whither he often fent them divers viands, and often admitted them in Visitation to his Palace. There they abode foure or fine moneths, often visited in that Temple by principall men and Magistrates of the Citie, and were in hope of their perpetuall continuance, having obtayned licence of the Secretarie alfo for Ricins to come, who was preparing for the Voyage, when all was diffurbed on a fudden, the Vice-roy being I know not for what fault, deprined of his place. He fearing least in the chiefe Citie the presence of Strangers might further hurt him, difmiffed the leswies to, as hee permitted them to flay at Canton, 6c commanding the Magistrate there to provide them a house and ground. The Chinois call that

well knew that his committion was of no force, yet they went, and the Haitan, to whom the true name of Charter was directed was abient, and no regard being had thereof, they were not permitted to Canton. aftend the bankes, and therefore with griefe returned to Amacao. Pafins presently sayled ac-

Citie Quam-chen which the Portugals (by the name of the Pronince deluded) call Camen. They Quam-then the

cording to the Visitors appointment to Iapon, and after divers yeeres labour there, was Vindera provincial of the China and Iaponian Missions : and when both of those expeditions were by the Generals order made a Prouince, he was declared Visitour thereof, and came to Amagao, to take order for China, where within few moneths he died.

#### ð. I I.

Iaponian Embassage to the Pope; Of Nabunanga and Quabacondono their gouernment; Corai inuaded, Embassage from China, Talcosamas Temple, and OGOSHOSAMAS succession.

Iapmian Embiffigetothe Ed dit Hen.

Curciius.

Auing mentioned that Embaffige of Isponias Kings fent to the Pope by procurement of the Isfaites, out of their writings I have heere added for further illustration, the acts of the publike Confiftorie in this forme of words. Pope Gregorie the thirteenth, fitting in the Halldefigned for entertaynment of

Kings, and their Embaffages on the three and twencieth of March, 1,85. in the morning, in a most ample Session of the Cardinals of the Holy Romane Church, and in a great assembly of Princes and Prelates with greatest industry, and most frequent attendance of all Orders: Man- 20 time and Michael (who was also of the Prince of Omner) two Legates of Isponian Kings, were brought in and one of the two laponian companions of the lame Embassage, of principall Nobilitie, to wit, Martine, for Inlian the other of them was withholden by tickneffe.) After folemne adoration of the Pope, and the kiffes of his bleffed feet, received of him with great demonstration of beneuolence and charitie, they went aside into a place appointed them with great modeftie. Afterwards, the Letters of the Kings which they had brought are publikely read, being translated out of the laponian Tongue into the Italian, and thence into the Latine. First, that King of Bunges of Francis King of Bunge, who therein profeseth the Distine bountie in fending the lesuites foure and thrite perez before mus those parts, whose seed had taken some rooting in his breast, which her a scribes to the Popes prayers and merits. And had it not beene for his age, marres, and sicknesse, bee would have visited those body places, and have histed his body feet, and set them on his bead, and recined. bu bleffing, bis breast croffed by his most boly band : but so detayned, had thought to baue sent his listers Sonne, the Lord Ierome, Sonne of the King of Flunga his Embassadour, whose Cousin-german Mantius in his absence he now sent; thankes him for the Relikes sent him, &c. Ian. 11.1582. Inscribed, To the great and most boly Pope to be addred, and bolding on Earth the place of the King of Heauen. Subscribed, Francis King of Bungo, prostrate at your Blessedows most boly feet. Not much valike was the tenour of the second Letter, sent from Protasius King of Arima, who detayned by diuers lets, had fent his Cousin-german in his roome, to his Holineffe, which with fincere and humble minde hee adoreth. Inscribed, To the great and boly Lord whom I adore, holding the roome of God. The Prince of Omer tent also the said Michael his Brothers Sonne with a Letter of like import, 40 interibed. With lifted up hands adoring I offer thefe to the most holy Lord the Pope , Vicar of the great God. Subfcribed in fubitance as the first.

After this, filence was commanded; and in the name of the faid Kings and Legates, Galper

An ha was more worth then both /#discreathe.

This the most acceptable myferie of Papail Faith.

Gonfaluas a Portugall Issuite made an Oration vnto the Pope, comparing and preferring this Embassage with that of certaine Indians to Augustus, and the conversion of Britaine by the first But that Hor. Gregorie with this of Iapon, and other Ilands by the Thirteenth, fucceeding and exceeding that, now fallen from the Pope; applying Efays Prophecies of the Churches encrease to this Iesaittcall Haruest, and magnifying the great glories of that Pope, founder of Seminaries, and magnified extra anni Solifa, vias. Antonio Buccapadulso answered in the name of the Pope, That Francis King of Bungo, Protatius King of the Arimans, and Bartholmew bis Uncle, Prince of Omur, 30 Pope, See sup. bath fent you their kinsmen to him from the remote Iaponian Ilands to the veneration of that power in presence, which by Gods bounty be holdeth, they have done godly and wisely. For there is one Faith, one Catholike Church, one made Gouernour over the faid Church, and Pafter of Christs Flocke, that is, of all Catholikes throw the World, in the succession of Peter, the Roman Bishop. That they acknowledge and professe this, together with the mysteries of the orthodoxe Faith, our most holy Lard reiosceth, and giveth immortall thankes to the Divine bounty, and indges this to be the most true toy which proceedeth from the studie of Gods glorie, and the saluation of Soules. Therefore most willingly, together with thefe his venerable Brethren, Cardinals of the Roman Church, hee embraceth the teffification of their Fauth, Obedience, Denotion. He wisheth and prayeth that by their example other Kings and Princes also of those lles, and of the whole World, retecting the worship and errour of Idols, min know the 60 true God, and whom he hath sent Iesus Christ; for this is life eternall.

This done, the Confiftorie was difmiffed. The Legates when they had attended the Pope, after the custome, into the inner roomes, were first entertayned of the Popes brothers some, the Cardinall of Saint Sixtus, with a Banket; after that admitted to the Popes pre trace and &-

CH AP. 5. \$.2. Romish boasts: Papall favors. Nabunanga, Quabacondono.

miliar conference, they discoursed by Interpreters with him of many things, touching the Journey and Religion : then went to Saint Peters Church, and the holy Thresholds of the Apostles pioufly faluted, at night were honourably brought to their lodging.

Church, then the Deuill hath seduced in the North.

This was prepared and furnished in the lessues Colledge by the Popes appointment at their Extrall, eliteral first comming to Rome, the two and twentieth of March, who also fent two troops of Horse to Roma milit. guard them. They went from their Charet to the Temple, and whiles they praifed God, and worshipped at the greatest Altar, the Students of the German Colledge in a double Quire sanga Te Deum landamus. The Legates next day had audience as yee have heard; their Veftment was parti-coloured and embroidered, a short Sword on the left hand, an Arab Dagger on the right, to the other part of their habite laponian. The pompe of all forts, and the Ordnance attended them to the Vatisan, & there the Italian Garrison, and Helaetian Guard with their Preces and military Musicke received them. Then were they lead into the Hall, and after all things there finished, the Legates carried the Popes traine at his departure. And on the five and twentieth day, festinall for the Annuntiation, the Pope going on folemne Procession , these Legates rode in the last place. What should I say more! (sayth our Authour) it cannot be told, how all magnifie the Scethelast mercy of God which brings farre more at this time from the East and West to the Catholike chip of my Charles then the Davill hack feducad in the North

These Impenian Lords returned into India, 1586. as Valignames writeth, and were much endangered by a tempest. Their returne into lapor is fignified by the Letters of Michael to the 20 Archbishop of Ebora, testifying their arrivall the one and twentieth of July, 1590, at Nangalach with the faid Valignanus; and by the Letter of Don Sancins, Sonne and Succeffour to Bartholonew Prince of Onsur to Pope Xifts the fifth, with thankes for the wood of the Croffe, and Popes prefents the Sword fent his Father which should be kept among it his principal I lewels. Protafine also the King of Arima wrote to the Great and most boly Pope Kiftus or Sixtus in this manner.

On the fixteenth of the fixth Moone, which was the one and twentieth of Inly, 1690. heere arrived the Father Viftour of the Societie of Ielius, with Cingina Don Michael my kinf-man, Don Mancius, and other companions which I had fent to Rome to put their heads under your Holueffe feet. Whole comming did as much reloyce me, as if a thouland Autumnes had comme so me, and ten thouland yeares had beene added to my life. Don Michael related with what bonour and famour bee was enter tayned of 20 your Holmesse, of King Philip, and other Catholike Princes, for which I rander those thankes which Pen and Paper cannot express. He delinered me Letters also which your Holinesse vonchsafed mee, fanour ably rachoning mee amongst the Christian Kings. Hee brought me also part of the boly Wood of Papallfanours. the true (roffe, a Hat, and a Sword, which your Holimeffe is wont to fend to Christian Kings and Prin- with livle coff ces. Which fanour and studies are such, and so esteemed of mue, that I have determined to conservate buying much them to evernall moment, and to place them amongst my chiefe Treasseres, and the Ornaments and  $M_{O-}$  (Secure, naments of my posservice. And this bonaux conserved on more is such, that greater cannot be in this life, and it redounds unto a justice good life. I had determined (according to the order prescribed of your H. Pompe ptein his Listers, and as the fanour, and so great benefits bestowed on mee deserted) to have received the scribed. faid Prefeats with all the celebratic and pumpe that might be in my Kingdome: but the Father Piftour 40 found mee that reflect was to be had of the syramic and great haired wherewith Quibaccockons the Lord of all Iapon, perfocusath the Fathers and Christians thefe shree yeares together; and this featt to be deferred till be returneth from Meaco, whither hee is going in Embassage from the Vice-roy of India to Quabacondono, erc. The ninth yeare of the Era salled Tenscio, the tenth of the eighth Moone, which is the two and twentisth of September, An. 1 590.

At your Highnesse feet,

Arimano, Sciurino, Daibu Don Protasins.

This Quahacondono (as L. Froes writeth) was now growne the greatest Monarch that ever Secondone Lapon had, having alcended thereunto from a bale efface, which was (as hee hath divers times laponian Kinga 50 with his owne mouth confessed) to cut wood, and to carrie it to the Market to sell for his daily and Rites my food. Nobsurange his Predecessor had growne to great height, such as many ages had not there Nationange. seene. In Frenoiama eight hundred yteres before, a King of Iapon had builded 3800. Temples, with houses adjoyned for the Bonzie, which employed themselves in the studie of the Lawes and Sects: for whose quietnesse he removed the Husbandmen, and builded them two itreets, allowing to their maintenance about the third part of the Cultomes (or Rents) of the Vomen Kingdome. Thus became it a fountaine of their superflitions. In time those Temples disperfed in fixteene Vallies were leftened to 800, and the Boszies discipline, and studies melted into pleasures, hardned into Armes, and ranged into robberies, so that they fired Mosco with great ilaughter, and oppoled Nobunauga: who having destroyed the Militarie Bonze (called Icoxos) 60 and taken away their Caftles, intraded Frenoisma, professing he feared not their Gods. On the Frenoisma. top of a Hill was the Temple of Quanto, to whom prayers and pilgrimages were made for health, wealth, and long life; and yeerely folemnities and Playes with huge pompe and cost were made in his honour (to which the Gibon feast at Meaco succeeded) with frequency of men,

The Benzin Popith Cor;us Christi Player Shau. lings.

324

deuices of work men, and such order, that it may appeare that Satan there imitates the anniuerlary inlemnitie of Corpus Christi amongst vs. Thither the Bonzi had gotten , but it , and they, and their streets were destroyed, and foure hundred Temples with their furniture burned, At Faculanem allowere a thouland houses of the Bonzi by themselves, besides Monasteries, like ty lefaites which he destroyed. Xinguea the King of Cainochum had forced his Father to exile, and imprifoned his elder Brother, and then seized on the Kingdome: after which he shaued his beard and haire, and became a Bonzo, and would needs repaire Frenoiama, and stiling himselfe, Chiefe in the house of the Kings and of Religious, gathered an Armie. Nabunanga wrote to him , cailing himfelic, Tamer of Denils, and enemie of Setts. Hee proceeded first against the Bonzs with their terrours; and after would needs himielfe be worthipped, but eighteene dayes after in a confpi-10 racy of his owne against him, he was slaine, and his dispersed. Quabacondono succeeded, and in greatnesse of attempts and ambition exceeded.

Faxiba made Quabacondono. Quabacu fignihes, the Chift of treasure.

This Quabacondono is a title which Faxiba assumed, and is as much, as Treasurer. These titles are given by the Vo, or Dairi, descended of the ancient Kings, and now enjoying a strange Em-Coff. Turrismus, pire, which is to give titles of honour, (for which all great men haue their Factors with him) and is esteemed as a God, not suffered to tread on the ground (that were deposition) nor often feene, and gets much treasure out of those Tules, which he so often changeth, that the King of Bungo was by the lesuites observed foure and thirty times to have altered his appellations. There The 3. chiefe is a high Priest, who with Papall power authorizeth Sects, confirmeth and confecrateth the men in lapon. Tundi or Bilhops which are nominated by the Kings, and enjoyeth Royall reuenues. The 2000-10 ene is the third person, and hath power over Judgements and Warres. But the Lords of Tenfa, that is, such as haue power to get into their hands Meace, and the Region adioyning, are really Agreeter then chiefe Lords, and command the State, though in seeming ceremonie (as the Tarker to their Mufti, and more manifestly the Soldans of Egypt to their Califus) they yeeld a feeming fubiection ; the Dairs not daring to crosse them.

Meacathe chiefe Citie of lapon.

Priest and

Duineue.

Corai.

Organtinus

Faviba Cicugendono obtayned that title of Cnabacondono (Dono is a generall title of honour) the next to the Dairs, and having subjected lapon, minded to conquer China, by the way of Corai. The King of Corai fent his Embaffadour to him with three hundred attendants in vaine, he minding to fend and place in those new Conquests all the suspected Princes of lapan, and to eternize his owne name, being exceeding vain-glorious. He tookefrom the Bonza their Lands: 30 and after that, making ditches round about Meace, hee forced them all to dwell together neere the faid dirches: which reducing their difcrepant Sects to an unformed Chaos together, made many of them for lake their protession. Hee emoyed every foot of Land in lapon, gave, or removed, or depriued Kings at pleasure, tooke away all Armes from the Ruftikes; forbad all contentions and fights upon paine of death, if any guilty hereof fied, punishing the kindred, or fernants, or neighbours, cruafying them. He administred instice very severely without partiality, or pardoning any man : and had almost put to death the Meacon Bonzi for their Concubines if the Gouernour of Meaco had not interposed and undertaken their amendment. Hee neversuffered the Souldiers to be idle, but vied them in warres or buildings. The Vice-roy fent him an Embaffage and Prefents; the foure Inomian Lords which had beene in Europe attending Valigna. 40 nus the Embassadour. Quabacondono would needs heare these Iaponians play European Mulicke, which they had there learned : and made great shewes of kindnesse to them all, and fent this Letter with Presents to the Vice-roy.

Duis tulerit the ricular

Sir, I have received Letters which your Lordship from so remote Regions sent mee, in opening and reading whereof I seemed to see the length of the leagues by land and sea. This Kingdome of lapon as you wrote, contagneth abone fixtie Stares or Inrisactions, in which before have beene ereat disorders and warres, no peace nor quiet. For many wicked men, Traitors to their Countrey confirred to denye obedience to their . King, a thing which from my youth hath vexed me. And long fince I bethought met of a course to subject this People, and to pacifie the whole Kingdome: and layed for a foundation three vertues, towit, Gentlenesse and affabilitie of freech in connersing with men ; Prindence in considerate 50 sudging of things, and egregious fortitude and courage of minde : by the aide whereof I have subduct all this Nation, and have brought all the Kingdomer into this forms of one Empire, wicked men being extinit, and morke-men which labour in the fields promoted. And I have for referred prace and quietnesse to these Kingdomes, and in few yeeres have so settled and stabished the Monarchie of Japon, that it is now like a great Rocke which cannot be removed. Whence it is come to paffe that in all foure paris of the Kingdome they have a King eminent in much wisedome; and the King likewise hath all of them obedient. And in this order I have declared and exercised the power of a good Captaine, to whom these Kingdomes are subject; by taking away the wicked, and rooting out all Robbers by sea and land. So the china invasion. people, families, and all places of the Kingdome entoy maruellous quiet. I have also determined to invade the Kingdome of China, and in few dayes I will take ship and doubt not of victorie. When I shall 60 possesses to your Lordship may more easily communicate with mee in all things.

Now concerning the Fathers, \* I apon is the Kingdome of Chamis, whom wee hold to be the same with Scin, which is the beginning of all things. This Scin is the substance and the very being of al The lessits. things; and all things are one and the same with Scin, and into Scin are resolved. Who in Sama is

called Iutto, and in Tescincu Buppo. Further, in the observation of the Lames of this Chamis confifleth all the Politicall government of lapon, which being neglected, there is no difference betweet Lords and Subjects: if it be kept, the union and concord is perfected which ought to bee twint the Father and Sonne, the Husband and wife. Therefore the whole, both internall and externall government of Men and Kingdomes is placed in the confernation of this unson and policie. Now the Fathers formerly have en. Christian Reli-Kingdomes is placed in the conjensation of tous round and printer, even to the tocasis we are instructed. Sin always tredities Kingdomes to preach another Law for the saming of men; but because we are instructed. Sin always to be Detail and and fettled in the Lawes of Chamis, we desire no other Law: for the discripties of Lawes and opini- his accused for ons are hurtfull and preindiciall to the Kingdome. Wherefore I commanded the Fathers to depart out a State-differof Iapon, and have forbidden them to preach their Law, nor will I that becreafter they preach any ber. 10 new Law in this Kingdome. Although thefe things be fo, get I greatly defire that a stable communi. Issuites bani-

new Law in tous Angainne. Leaswoong very some you to you a greasing aspire tous a passe communit. spire cation may remay be betwick to 1; for fe this Kingdame shall bee free from Theeses, by Land and Sea, thed. And I give leave to all Merchants which bring merchandle, to sell them all without let. I desire your Lordship to approve the same. I received all the gifts which you sens out of those Southerne parts, as it is written in your Letters. I likewise fend some others out of shefe Kingdomes, with a memoriall of the gifts, and the names of them which have given. The Legate will declare the rest, wherefore I will bee no longer. Dated 20. yeere of Tenfci, 25. of the fenenth Moone,

In the end was the Scale and Subscription. It was written in a leafe eight palmes long, foure broad, painted with golden Flowers, and put in a red filke bagge wrought with Gold and filuer; and that inclosed after the lapon manner in a Boxe, which for the price and workman-20 thip was to admirable, that the subtiltie and excellence of the worke might amaze all Euro. lapenian note-

peans. Within it was coursed and without, with Vrosci (made of Gold beaten into pow-minship. der) diftinguished with Flowers of Gold and Siluer, so inserted in the Vrosci that none could different the conjunction, but he which knew the making of the Boxe. It had also Roses, and gold Chaines to tye the Boxe; which Boxe was put into another Bag, and that into another Boxe very artificiall. The gifts were Armours, Armes, and other things very precious.

He assembled his Lords about this China Warre, which durst not expresse any other opinion, Preparation hee having protested, that hee would not heare his Sonne distande him, if he were aline againe, for invasion of and if any should hinder him, it should cost him his life. Thus for some moneths space nothing Corai. might be teene elfe, but prouision for Ships, Armes, Municions, and necessaries for the Warre.

30 Hee made a Catalogue of all his Lords, exempting none from the expedition, and fetting every one his number of followers. To Augustine a Christian Lord hee gaue the fauour of first impression into Coras, other Lords staying still at Suscima eighteene lagues distant. Coras is ad. Coras descrisoyning to the Continent of China at one ead, divided by a great River from China, and tribu-bed: fee my tarie to the King of China; it is in length about an hundred leagues, and fixtie broad : the people China Mig. whilke the Chimois in language and bodily strength, but following their lawes, customes, and gopernement. They are better Archers then arany other weapons: and not comparable to the I asonians, except in hipping, wherein they and the Chinois exceed. Yet at this time they were destitute of that defence, and Augustine gaue them a great ouerthrow. Before Quabacondono would goe, he made his Brothers Sonne by the Dairi to be entituled Quabacondono, as 1115 Heire 40 and Successour , concenting himselfe with the title of Taicofama, that is, Great Lord. All the

Japonian Princes were commanded to be present at the translation, to give him obedience; to whom the Dami gaue the Fortrest of Meaco, and the Palaces of Quabacondono, making him Lord of Tenfa. But his Vncle held the Iway of all in his owne hands, and after having a \* Sonne \* This is that of his own, cause I this his Nephew with some others to crosse himselfe (that is, to cut his breast Fresama of acroffe, his bowels falling out, and some one of those which died with him, cutting off his head, whom you read in the property of the head of of Augustine with a Fleet of eight hundred sayles entred Corai, and tooke two Fortresses, the Sain, and Ma-Coraiens being driven from the walls by the laponders Gunnes, vinknowne to the other, and fue fler tooks, dethousand of them slayne. This wanne him great credite with Taice Jama, who promited him printed by Oge-

much, yet performed little. Hee defeated also an Armie of twenty thouland, and after another fooland. 10 of fourescore thousand, and the King fleeing into China tooke the Meace, or Royall Citie of Consi, Taicefams fent him a Horse, and a Sword, the honour that Nabanangs was wont after any great Victorie to doe to him. The Cornians feeing their King with his troops in fafety, fled with their prouitions into Woods and Hills, and would not thence bee brought by any promifes. The Japonian polleffed of the Fortreffes wanted men to till the ground, and therefore mult needes want necessaries: the wayes also were by the Coraians upon all occasions assaulted. There are two hundred thousand laponians at this present in Corai, and Augustine is in the extreme borders adioyning to China, leparated notwithstanding by a River three leagues Wide Kuner broad, abounding in thips, and the shores fortified with multitudes of men, so that the suc- betwitt China

60 Frees in his Epifile, 1595, writeth that there were then an hundred and ninety lefuites in Ia- 190, ichite. pon and China: that Taicofama not fucceeding in his Coraian expedition, returned to Meaco, and quarrelled the new Quabacondono out of his life, who with nue others at Taicos command executed themselues after the Iaponian manner. Augustine meane while gnieauoured an Embaffage to bee fent from the King of China, who thinking himfelfe Lord of the World, tent to

Taicofama, that it was an vnmeet thing that He, whose industrie and valour had subdued threefeore and fixe Kingdomes of Japon to his Empire, should permit the Dairi a private man, and Subject to the King of lapon to hold his former place of dignitie. And if hee would deprine chint Embath him thereof, hee promifed to fend him a Crowne, and the title of King, and by the fame Legates to treate further about the Iaponians forfaking Coras. Two Embassadours were fent from Pequin to Augustine to Corai: who presently sent word to Taice, the Embassadours abiding with him, because of the solemne entertaynment which Taico intended for the renowne of his name to all posteritie. The Nobles exhaust in the former expedition were yet now en-Huge Palace, forced to new braueries and expences. Hee caufed at Ozacea a Hall to bee creeked, with a thoufand Tatami (very elegant Mats) the timber cofly, and gilding incredible. Yet by store of 10 raynes a great part thereof fell downe, which hee intended foone to repaire, having an hundred thousand men at worke there both night and day in great miferie, flanding with their feet in the water. If any runne away they are killed. Before this Hall hee erecled a Theatre for Comedies, exceeding stately and costly with artificiall paintings of Vrusci. Hee repaired the Tower of Ozaca seuen stories high. The gilded Plates or Tiles, the Bridge called, The Bridge of Paradife, the new Citie of Fusermo which he builded, and other his immane expenses (the Offerings to his Idoll of Fame, ) I cmit. Hee caused his little Sonne to goe with great State to Sandai to the Dairi, that is, to bow his head thrice before him downe to the Mats, who entertayned him with a folemne feast, with great lubilee in alteration of names and titles of honour to the Nobles. Taico had settled peace thorow all lapon from Warres, from Robbers by land, and from

Rouers by fea, which before continually infested all with Piracies (one of which Noximan-

forced a great part of the Coast to yeerely tribute vnto him, to bee freed from his Robberies)

onely the Dairs had higher title: and a Crowne and Scepter seemed wanting to his realitie of

Regalitie and Soueraigntie already possessed. And now whiles hee intended to exceed himselfe in his entertaynment of the Embassadours , one of them hating this long detention or impri-

Nonmandano a dono is mentioned by the lessistes in this time to have had a great Fleet of ships, and to have

Prodigious

their King-China Prefents

forment in Corai, fled; which newes Augustine sent to both Courts. From China the Legacy was renewed, the Delinquents kindred punished. Meane while the two and twentieth of July, 1,96, at Meaco it rayned ashes, wherewith the houses, hills, and trees were coursed as with 30 snow, and a great myft accompanied it. At the same time at Ozaca and Sacoia it rayned sands. At Meaco after the showre of ashes came another of haires, long and white like the heavy haires of an old womans head, but fofter, and not fo fmelling when cast into the fire. In the Northerne Kingdomes of lechu, lechingo , Scimano , and Nora, the land and houses were coured with them. A Comet appeared in August : on the thirtieth whereof followed an Earthquake as a warning to a greater on the fourth of September, which threw downe Taices magnincent Hall with a thousand Tatames, in which hee had purposed to entertayne the China Legates; and the Tower of seuen lofts, and another Tower, and almost all the buildings of the Fortreffe, and the Store-houses, which were very large, and stored with Corne, and halfe the houses of Ozaca, all in halfe an houre, fixe hundred people being buried in the ruines. It made 40 a noise like Thunder, and like the waves beating on the shoare. The Earth opened in many places. A great new Temple and a Monastery fell downe, and the same day in which the lesinie had heard a Bonzs in the same Temple inuiting to call vpon Amids, and much depredicating his mercies. The next day at Meaco was a noise greater then of the greatest Cannons that ever were . heard, dreadfull to man and beast, and wee faid the Letanies on our knees, but scarfely could keepe on our knees for the Earth-quake, Others forsooke their houses, lamented their dead (fine hundred being ouerwhelmed; and fifteene or twenty Temples) called on their Amida: \* laponies poli- and some ranne to Fuscisso ( Taicos new Citie for him and his Nobles) whereof the best part was cy to keepe all ruined, and much harme happened in many other places. Taices Palace at Fujemo fell downe, bout the Court and oppressed seventy women, himselfe escaped into the Kitchin vntouched: and the relations 50 for fecuritie; of that Earth-quake would yeeld a booke alone. Taico yet would feeme to dominere ouer Nafeliome fuffe- ture, and leuell a very huge Hill with the Valley, to erect new Palaces. And because hee could not entertayne at Fuscimo the China Embassadours, he receiued them at Ozaca. The solemne state and pompe I omit. They had audience the twentieth of October.

The Kings Letter was written in a plate of Gold very great and ponderous, inclosed in a golden Coffer, wherein also was the Vest, and royall Crowne for Tuico, and in another was a Crown for Mandocorasama his Wife with title of Queene. Hee fent also twenty Vests of Quingui with title and dignity of China for twenty Lords (the first of which was Augustine) by him named, and as many for those whom Taco should name. In the Epitle of the King were these words, \* chia an berb Finatabi cioscen vocasu cotonacare, that is, Thou shalt not returne againe into Cotat, and if thou re- 60 ved in warme remarks to jeen vocajs commerc, that is, 1000 juns, words importing their visibiling to the Chinais, water in all tarness, toy dignitic shall no longer advantage thee, words importing their visibiling to the Chinais. The Embaffadour and Taico were equal in fitting on the Tatamis; the chiefe Lords of lapon ments in Ispon were prefent 3 and after the tafte of their " Chia, Taico received the Epithe or golden plate, and layd it on his head, and the Vests, going in to put them on. At his returne the Chinois adored

CHAP. 5. S.3. Taicos inhumanitie, death, deity. New entrance into China.

him, and a feaft followed with pompous plenty: which was continued other dayes. But when the Legates moved him to pull downe his Forts in Corai, and to pardon the Coraians, hee brake into exceeding furie, and commanded them backe to Corai, and extruded them in great naite out of the Countrey with inhumane viage.

About this time Peter Martines first Bishop of Iapon came thither. Taico died Sept. 16, 1598, Bish, of Iapon. haung taken politike order for the Scate, and as foolish for himselfe to be made a God, preicribing the forme of his Temple : One was crucified for speaking of his death. Word was sent by the Gouernours which Taice had appointed as protectors for his Sonne, to the I aponian Lords in Coras, to returne, and so after seuen yeeres that warre had end. What events to lowed after in " on P-flus. Cords, to returne, and to atter teuen yeeres that warte has eno. What euenes no however atter in Japan, you may fee in my Pajerissage, and fonewhat allo before in Captanne Sarie, and Mafter the Cords relations: This country of the Cords of

himselfe. So much harder is it to be a Man then a God, and easier to bequeath a Temple and cy- 615. 6. tle of Camus, and divine worthip as to a new Facinan or Mars (all which his Executors perfor- Second his med and caused to be effected; his body not burned after the wont, but as he had preserved, put death som. I. in a Circli and translated to that sumptions Temple, where the is worth ped as the principal of 1407.

all the Cami) with an Image crected to him, (leene by Cap. Sarie) then to bequeate long life to seminimos. himselfe, accomplishment to his Coraian designes, or sure succession to his posteritie, in all which C pe Sais hee fayled. But we will with our perfecuted lefuites leave lapon, and thip our felices for China, told mee hee

### ð. III.

RVCCERIVS enters againe into China with RICIVS, and is forced backe to Amacao; thence fent for againe by the Vice-roy. Sande and Almeida are fent to them, and enter the Countrey as farre as Cequion, and returne to Sciauchin.

FRT is a cultome in China, that of all Charters granted by the Magistrates a copie is kept in the Registrie, and the execution, or what hath therein beene done, subscribed at the end. The fucceeding Vice-roy finding the copie of that Charter granted to the Island at their departure, without fuch subscription (because nothing had beene done therein) wrote to Canton, to the Aisao; he (which then was ablent) to the Ansam or Hiem-xan, the Gouernour of the Citie, and he being ignorant thereof, to the Port-gouernours at Amacao. They went to the Bishop, and by him were sent to our Colledge where they were shewed the sealed Charter: but there being then Melebior Carnerus Pattiarch of Ethiopia (which expedition was Sup.L.T. in finis diffolued ) Capralis, Gomez , Pafins, and other principall Isfutes, it was thought fit , that it should not be delivered to the Souldiers, but carried by two lefunes to the Airao: and Raggerins with Recuss were therein employed, the China Captaines also consenting that they should

goe to Anfan, thence by the Ci-bien or Governour, to be fent to Canton. This Ci-bien when they Ci-bien a Go-40 came thither would have fent it and not them, which they refused, whereupon he grew angry, we nour of a cast it on the ground, and commanded them to returne backe; faying, that a deposed Vice. Hieror Citic. royes grant could no way benefit them. They went to their Inne, and there consulted to goe without his leave, deceiuing a Ship-mafter with fight of the faid Charter, who tooke them into his thip; but terrified by others, cast them out againe with their goods. At this time came a meflage to the (i-bien of his Fathers death, whereupon (according to the China Custome) he loft his office and returned home during his three yeeres mourning. They by this occasion, and a weightier cause, (money giuen to the Successour) and the Notaries subtiltie in a feeming teruice to the Common-wealth, were fent in manner as prisoners to Canton, as strangers found there,

The Assa notwithstanding gaue them kinde entertayment. They petitioned, shewing, that states the states of they were Kelgious were which had possed on many Seas allured by the same of China, there to shead enton. their dayes: and defired nothing but a small piece of ground to raise thereon a little house to the Lord of Heauen, and they would be further burthen some to none, but procure linelihood of their owne mens benenotence. They mentioned nothing of Christian Religion, left it might cause suspicion, and bee a let to them; the Chinois thinking too well of themselves, that strangers should teach them any thing, which they have not already more complete in their owne Bookes. Rebellions have alio begunne under colour of new Sects. The Assao or high Admirall commended their defires, but faid, it belonged to higher Magistrates, and could onely bee granted by the Ciai-yuen (the ciai-yuen or Visitour of the Prouince) or the Vice-roy. They defired that hee would at least let them itay Chain, Proving there in the Palace of the King of Sions Legates, till the Portugals Mart came, and in meane ciall Vificour.

60 time they would trye what they could doe with the Vifitour or Vice-roy. This hee granted. but the same day repeated, professing that he feared the Visitor (if out of Mart-time he should finde ft angers there) whose censure is dreadfull to every Magistrate. He therefore commanded them presently to packe for Amacao. They were comne backe to Angan, and found things in worse case then before. For at the gates of the Citie they found an Edict set up by Co the

# 228 Temple and Statue eretted to Governours. Ichites house and Images. LI B. IL

new Vice-roy, blaming the China Interpreters which had put into the heads of Stranger-priefs Money brings to learne the China language and Characters, and to defire some place for to credit a facred and prinare house, threatning those interpreters if they perfitted. In this dispayre of proceeding, the identified the first adjoint of they had not been a weeke gone, when from Scissquin, the feate of the Vice-roy, one of his guard came to Issaecs and brought the Casia, (so they call the Gouernour of that Prouince) his Letters Patents by the Vice-royes authoritie, inuiting the Fathers to Scianguin, there to receive a piece of ground for a Church and dwelling house. The cause hereof was an offer made by the Fathers (when they were lent away from Scianchin, by the deposed Vice-roy to Canton) of a fumme of money to any which should procure of the New Vice-roy license for their returne. One of the meanest Souldiers in name of Interpreter to the Societie had put ypa Petition to the Vice-roy, who fent it to the Gouernour of the Region called Guam-puon, of Cequion Province) to bee dispatched, who gave the former Letters Patents to the Souldier, which brought them himselse to Macao. They with great ioy, as seeing the Diuine hand herein, made ready for the iourney, which the former expenses and late Ship-wrackes (especially of the lapon Ship in the Viga bounties He Lenquieco, which alone hath most of the wealth of the Citie in it) made difficult; but Gafter Viegas charitably bestowed the expense, seconded also by others. Thus full of hope they let fayle, and in Canton, both now and when before they were difmif-

fed from Scianguin, they found Spaniards. Then, a Ship which from the Philippinas was bound

kindly answered, that they should goe about the Citie and spye out some convenient place for

At the same time at Scianquin, they were erecting by the common charge of the Eleven Ci-

ties of that Iurisdiction, a Tower (whereof one floore was now rayled, to which they intended 10.

to adde nine others aboue it) in a pleasant place by the Rivers side, a myle and more from the

Citie, the Suburbes continuing further then it. In the same place they set foorth a Temple, and

therein erected a Statue to the Gouernour, whose fixe yeeres gouernment had well deserved of

the learned, and of the vulgar. A piece of that field in which the flourishing Tower (to they called

it) was building, they defired, which hee liked well, and promifed to further them with the

Vice-roy. The lesuites at their former departure, had left an Altar with one Cin Nice, who had

placed the same in a connenient place, for want of Images inscribing aboue, it Thien Chu in Cu-

bicall letters, that is, To the Lord of Heauen. Hee made also thereunto divers Incenses, and at fet

times veelded divine honors before it; which much rejoyced the Fathers, feeing that there was one found which inuoked the true God. And this mangage them entertaynment, till they had 40

received the Vice-royes answer, approving their request; and the next day the Governour set

foorth a plot of ground for them with straight caution to observe the Lawes of China, and to ad-

mit no Strangers companions to dwell with them; which they promifed. Much was the con-

course and admiration of people, much the wonder at their triangle Glasse, the Image of our La-

die, a wrought Handkerchiffe, with which they presented the Governour; but hee returned all

afterward, fearefull of Bribe-imputation. Much trouble arose about that place, and another was

affigned them, where they began to build and were forced to pawne their precious triangle

Glaffe, to fit it for their vie; they obtayned also an ample Charter from the Vice-roy, and two

Patents from the Gouernour which protected them from wrongs

their purpose, which hee doubted not to procure of the Vice-roy for them.

Friars in China, for New Spaine, was wracked at the Ile Nan-tau, on the Canton coast; the men which escaped were kept in durance : And now, seuen or eight Franciscan Friars, which had gone from the same 10

Anno 1583.

Philippinas for Cauchinebina, hearing the King was become a Christian, and in their returne were wracked on the He Hainan, and taken and spoyled, and presented to the Magistrates for Pirats. whose libertie these lesures procured, promising all recompence at Amacao, Hence they had see foorth in the beginning of September, 1583, and in the same moneth came to Scianquin, in that Souldiers companie, by whom they were conueyed to the Gouernours Palace, and kneeling before him made request as in the Souldiers mentioned Petition had beene contayned, and were

Temple and flame to Gouernours.

Ignete Dee. Wilde Christie

Iefuites build a meane, after greater,

Images weg-

In these beginnings they made little mention of the Gospell, but imployed their spare time 50 in learning the Language and Characters, by a Holy life feeking to infinuate themselves into the peoples good liking. Their habite was like the modestest of the Chinois, a long Gowne with large sleeues: Their house had two Cells, and betwixe them a Hall with an Altar in the midst, D. wanting to on which they fet the Image of the Bleffed Virgin, carrying her Sonne. They called their God, Thien-cui, Lord of Heauen; for the Chinois want the D. which caused that they could not give any name more fit: and this name continueth to this day, although they vie others also, as Highest Ruler of all, First beginning of all, and the like. The blessed Virgin is called the Great Mother of God. This Image on the Altar, all which visited them both Magistrates, Students, Priests, and common people, did religiously worship, kneeling and (after their rice) knocking lightly the ground with their fore-heads. They admired the excellencie of the Picture and colours 60 without ceasing. But when it began to bee rumoured, that they worshipped a Woman for God, they tooke away that Picture and substituted the Image of Christ. After this, they painted the ten Commandements in the China language, which many approued. Some brought them Incense for holy vies, and some bestowed their Almes; others also Oyle for the Lampe which burCHAP.5.S.3. Their Honor, iealousie, calumnie, Mathematicks. China ignorance, 329

ned before the Altar; and the Fathers commended their Law, as agreeing to the light of Nature. nes perfore the raises, and a specified, was a poore dileased man cast foorth by his parents, whom they First Baptisme instructed, and a little before his death baptifed. The reliefe which they bestowed on him before, caused a rumour amongst the vulgar, that those Strangers knew by the mans complexion, Fancies of the that hee had a precious stone in his head, the cause of all that benificence. The Chinois much ad, vulgar, mired the Bookes, of which the Fathers had ftore, the artificiall binding, gilding, coft, goodlinesse of the Print, and their studiousnesse in the China bookes; and received with great applause a Booke of Christian learning which they printed. Yea, the Gouernour after the China rite

would needs doe them publike honour, which is done by fending a goodly Table with Cubitall Tables of ho-It letters in praile of them, with the Magistrates name, and the date inscribed in lesse letters. Two nour, of these with great pompe hee sent unto them, the one to bee set ouer the entrance with inscription, The boule of the flowre of Dinine men; the other to bee placed in the Hall, inscribed, The boly Nation of the West : which wanne them great reputation, this Magistrate being much reputed for learning and vertue.

Our wants caused Ruggeriss to intreat leave to goe to Amecao for supply, which hee obtayned with a faire Ship and thirtie Rowers. The Gouernour requested also, that a Clocke might bee made for him. But the pouertie of the Amacaons, their Ship not being come from lapon, and the Colledge enjoying no Rents, caused him to send the workman to Scianguin, to make it there ; which hee tooke in good part. Now the Chinois are a people suspicious of Strangers, especially

20 those ruder parts of the Province of Canton, and much muttered at the Portugals Commerce, fay- Chimsin Hefing, they made all things dearer, and the profit came but to few. They gaue an odious appella- pirall. tion to the Portugals, calling them Denils. To this, Fame had added a fourte, reporting that Portugals caltheir famous Tower was the worke of Strangers (which had no ground be added a fourte, reporting that Ied Deuils. their famous Tower was the worke of Strangers, (which had no ground but that their house was building at the fame time) and the Flourishing Tower, was stilled the Strangers Tower. They there- Tender du ficefore in Ruggerius absence offered great abuses by throwing stones, being angrie that they kept ple. their house shut, which they would have had made an Idoll Temple, alway open to all. One boy in throwing stones, was taken by the femant and brought in, but at others request soone difmiffed. Hereupon two neighbours conspired, to set a fellow on worke to accuse these strangers for seducing Children, as they had done this youth his brother, (so they agreed) and kept Conspiracies 30 him three dayes, with intene to fell him for a Slaue at Amacae. The two neighbours offered to bee witnesses hereof. The accusation was put vp in pittifull manner, and the Gouernour much moued, the Father fetched into Court by an Officer, before hee could have leafure to write his

aniwer. The Interpreter had filled his sleenes with stones, which hee powred out in Court as witnesses of their abuses. The Judge smelt the businesse, and by examination of the Tower work. False accuses man which had feene it, found out the knauerie, and rewarded it with terrible whipping; and trucky rewarded.

Reim his skill in the Mathematickes which hee had learned, being an Auditor of Clavina at Mathematicks Rome, was no small helpe to them. They had a Cosmographicall Map in European Characters, and Map of Anney was no much map to be the learned beheld with great pleasure, much desiring to see it in the world, in the characters, little knowing, as little hanney to doe with the rest of the world. They had trouddien to Gonell. Maps pretending a Description of the world, but prefented onely their fifteene Provinces, with the Sea and a few Ilands, and the names of fuch Kingdomes as they had heard of, all which Kingdomes scarcely equalled one Province of China. They now wondred much to see themselves Chinasi ignoftraightned in an Easterne corner of the world, and Reciss at the Gouernours request, published range the it in Chinacharacters: and inferted, as hee faw cause, the rites of the world and the Christian world. holies. They have a conceit, that the Heavens are round, the Earth square, and their Empire to Richards Map. bee seated in the midft thereof ; hee therefore so proisceed his Description, that he presented China in the midft. They that before thought baiely of all other men, as if elfe-where were no The world v.

King, nor Republike, nor Bookes, began to be better conceited of Europeans, and to bee betGotoell, 30 ter prepared for the feed of the Golpell : and might hereby also leffe feare European forces Golpell. foremote from them. This worke hee often reuised and corrected, till it came at last both to the two Royall Cities, and to the Kings house. The workeman at the same time finished the Clocke, and both were together presented to the Gouernour, who at his owne cost published the Map, and soone after restored the Clocke, because hee had none which knew how

The Ship comming from Lapon, Ruggerius well relected returned, whereby the house was fi- Euggerstaurn. nished, their debts payed, and the building with stories, the disposition of the windowes, furniture, faire fituation on the River with goodly prospect, and European rarities, brought many, e-

Ben great Magistrates, to behold it. Riesus proceeded to make Spheares of Brasse and Iron; hee 60 Ben great Magnitrates, to behold it. Rieum proceeded to make appeares of spanie and flow in the Printed alfo Globes, and made Sunne-dyals, which hee gaue to the Magnifrates. And by his le-Chures on these subjects, he got reputation of the best Astrologer in the world, they esteeming others by them selves. The Governour was about this time advanced to a higher Dignitie, called Limiter Ruler Line fi-law, having the rule of two or three Regions and all the Townes therein, nor remocuing of two or three from Sciences at a day the found of the remoculing of two or three from Sciences and as the / biness are superfictions chierces of Appures. In concentral that, Distinstructures are superficient chierces of Appures. Languistas, haung the rule of two of three regions and an one formation, he conceiled that he Dimformed from Sciences: and as the Chinais are superflictions observers of Auguries, he conceiled that he Hundredt.

(40,1,2.6.I. Gaine feparates the lub. ic Brofone Dutch in the Indies. And fframents of Edw Menele.

230

whole Booke vou haue in the 9. booke.

Almeidas Let-Rector at X44-

Moilin.

prooued the luckier man by this familiaritie with our men, which hee fignified when they came to him, with a prefent to gratulate thefe honours. In the Philippinas the newes of the lefaites successe caused the Gouernour to fend the Treasurer Iobn Baptista Romanus to Amacao, with Father Alfonso Sancins 2 Spanish Lesuite, with a Watch

and other presents and letters to the lefaites, to progure an Ambassage from the King of Spaine to China. The lestites had with petitioning brought the bulinesse to good forwardnesse, when ictiofone Crowner, with they received contrary mandates from Amacao, it being likely to prooue the destruction of that our feraration Citie, if the Spaniards with their plentic of Silver from Perm and New Spaine, should have trade offlace. Apply in China; neither did this belong to the Spaniards, but to the Portugals, according to the Comthis to the position betwixt the two Kings made by Alexander the fixth: and at though they are both sub- to the Ex-lift and ich now to one Crowne, yet their printledges remayne diffinct without confusion. Thus both the Magistrate adusted, and their superiour the Rector prohibited them to proceed. Yet the former working was not cealed by Silence, till the Amasaon Magistrates laboured with divere hereby you fee reasons to disert the Ambassage. Capralis the Rector was desirous to see their house, and they procured the Linftans leave, fo that hee came thither, viewed all, and Baptifed both the youngfecular affaires man before mentioned which kept the Altar, and a learned man which read the China Bookes to the Fathers, this called Paul, the other Iohn, the first China Converts. Valignamus made Prouinciall of India, hearing of this successe, fent thither Father Edward Sande, and Father Antonie Almeida: and obtained of the Vice-roy Edward Menefe, an annual flipend for this mission. They

At the same time it seasonably hapned, that Linsitan was commanded from the Court, to procure of the Strangers at Amacao, certaine goodly feathers for the King. He furnished a faire thip F.Edw: Sande. and fent Ruggerius thither, and brought with him Father Edward Sande, who went to falute Linsitan, and gaue him no meane gift of our Commodities to procure abode, whereof nothing so pleased him as a triangle Glasse. Hee gives him leane to stay, on condition that they admit m other companion. In Linstians place had succeeded another of Cequion Province, a great friend of the Fathers, who being to goe to Pequin about some affayres of his Office enery third yeers. was featled at our house (where the Magistrates were often solemnly entertayned) and then of fered to carrie one of ours with him in his journey, at least as farre as Cegnion his owne Coun-Antonie Almei- trey. They willing to erect some new seate, least some disaster might in a moment strip them 20 de, License for easily of one and all, agreed that Ruggerine and Sande should goe, and received license for entring the Prouinces of Cequian and Huquan, and places adjoyning. This was the Mart time whither Ruggerius went, and found Almeida come thither with the Portugals. Thither also a Brother of Lustau was gone with much Merchandise of Silke, (the most whereof is made in the Cequian Prouince) which the Portugals bought at his price by the Fathers intreatie, who therefore tooke the Fathers, his brothers friends, to his Citie in Cequian, called Scianbin, (a name somewhat neere the other, but in China a little difference producth great) the natiue place of both

the Gouernours. The Chinois haue a custome to be called by many names, and no man calls them by their proper name, (but themselves in naming or writing themselves, or sometimes their superiours) with- 40 lesuites change out injurie: they taking a greater name, which others give them for more honour. Now the Fathers had yet assumed no other name, but their servants called them by their proper name, a thing among it the Chinois reputed barbarous. They therfore (to become all things to all to winne all to Christ) then followed that rathion, and euer fince at their first entrance assume a new Name. Their Iourney is thus written by Almeida. On the elementh of the Kalends of December, 1585, wee departed from Canton. The third day the

ter to Ed. Sarde. Ship happened to bee on fire, some imputing that unluckinesse to us: but without much harme it was quenched. Whiles wee fayled through the Canton Pronince, wee feldome came in fight and never went ont of the Ship till wee came to Moylimpor. I can therefore relate nothing of that Province, but that there were very many Cities, and Townes very frequent, and steepe high Mountaines, betwint which that 50 Riner lideth to dissers tralts of the Pronince stored with waters, Wares and Shipping. Euery where we beheld sumptssom e-Adisces deducated to the worship of Deuils, and of Ships almost insinite multisude, and of water-Fowle innumerable store, and berds of Goats feeding by the Woods, to the fenenth of the Ides of December. Then wee arrived at Moilim a Citie, neere which is the beginning of that River, whose course being swift, wee were drawne by ropes and rowed with Oares against it. Into this sitie wee Should bardly have found admission, the passage being by a Bridge with two Iron chaynes, opened onely and that at the will of the Gonernour. But our Conductor baning acquaintance with the Liniteu, wee had The Linft aus present entrance, hardly able to passe for the multitude of Ships, there wayting. Wee were there wellentertayned, and on Sunday and Munday Sayd Masse. On Tuesday wee went to a Citic eight miles distant, Another river, there regaining the commoditie of another River. All that way was paved with stones; in which we passe 63 a Mountaine, on the top whereof was an arch with an inscription of his name, who had facilitated that way, otherwise difficult. The weather was unseasonable, rainie and cold perhaps because the whole way in manner was Mountainous. I doe not remember that ever I faw way fo frequented, not then when Merand populous. chants refore to publike Faires : for all the Merchandise from Nanquin, and the places advoying are

brought hither. Also the Merchants which inhabit the remotest Cities in that way, on both sides had Partners for the conneying of their Wares, very fitly; for our Conductor had nothing to doe but to deliner one hundred and fiftie Packes of Wares with other provisions for the way, to his Hoast, which all bee should Seats and Potbundred and styles saves by react the fe Partners also provide Horses for the Sermants and Seats ters in the find in his Inne in the next Towne. These Partners also provide Horses for the Sermants and Seats high-wayer, for the Masters to be carried in by two Porters defended from the Raine by Sumbretos, or Shadowes which they carrie in their binds. When bee had paffed halfe the way, wee changed our Seats and Porters. and had others to the Inne; to these nothing is due but some small gratuitie, the Hoast beeing paid for all: and a Seat is at as easie a rate here, as a Horse in our Countrey, with great commoditie and frequencie of Times. In the Enening we came to the Towne Faquen, and flaid there two dayes, such concourfe Faquen. 10 of Citizens comming to fee vis that we were almost ouer-whelmed, and were glad to get a ship board on

Friday. On Saturday we failed downe the streame, fifteene dayes continuing our courfe, in which wee hired three Barkes, in one of which we only were carried. On both Bankes many and farre Townes walled about present themselves tathe view of Passengers, seeming as bigge as Canton, which made mee me- Great Cities disate of the facilitie of conseying the Gofpell in thefe parts, we making all this way with as great tran- thicke, quilitie of bodie and minde, that wee might in the flip pray or studie and doe other things as commo-

On the fixteenth of the Kalends of Ianuary, we came to a most frequent Citie far greater then Canton, where the Tutan or Vice-roy of the Province Chianfi resideth. It is high walled divided into three Metropolitan parts, a Riner flowing thorow with a Bridge of Barkes, toyning two parts of the Citie. On this Bridge and customes are paid, but our Conduct being the Lancitau. Brother passed without search. And although 30 we search to be examined by the Magistrate, yet no man troubled us, they being not so inquisitine in on

ther parts as in Canton Promince, about strangers : yea, they entertayne them more honourably enery. where then your Worship at Xuchin. About halfe a mile from this Bridge another River toyneth with this, which runneth by the other side of the Citie, and makes the third part of the Citie. I wished the Fathers a Colledge in this place both for the fertilise of the sople and holfomnesse of the Aire. Having promided necessaries for the rest of our lowrney in this Citic, were went aboard and in the space of sixe or seuen dayes going downe the streame, we beheld on beth sides very goodly Woods, and many Pales of wood on the Bankes necessary for those cold Regions, and bolding on our course passed by seven Cities, or more. famons for greatnesse and Merchandise : and on Christmas Euen came to the greatest Citie of all 30 Chianii, where wee staid that night for that Solemnists. But hee which then was horne exercised our patience with a grieuous North-wind, whereby the River water (otherwise cleere) was so troubled that on Christmas day wee could not drinke it. For the Rivers course is North-ward, which therefore by a Allthis way is

North-wind is fo moued. Agricomman young along by a Citie which by the fight we indged greater then Lisbone, in one dayes paffage further, we came to the way which leads to Nanquin, where durer kirer in ming together make a New River.

kind of Crosse with great commoditie for Trade and passage. For a Barke well defended against wind and weather, convenient for two Gentlemen with their Seruants and bag gage, may here be bired for twentie or thirtie dayes, at an easier rate then aman shall pay for Horses from Coimbra to Li bone. For from Canton to Moilin fifteene dayes tourney, for a Ship which carried two bundred Packes of Mer-40 chandize of diners kinds, we paid but nine lacs, and senen for those three which wee bired for twentie Nine Tacis.

dayes more. After that, leaving the Northerne way which goeth to Nanquin or Lanquin, wee turned West ward against the streame, yet with benefit of the wind favoring us, we went sisteene and sometimes ewentie \* miles aday : in which space sailing by very large sields we arrived at a Citie where saire Por- \* These miles celane is made, thence carried into India and Europe. Wee paffed by many Woods also and some Civies, seeme to bee The cold meane-while was so great, that one day all was concred with Snow. The River decreased, and intended spaon the third of the Nones of lanuarie, they unladed the Merchandise into ten lesse Boates, and failed "solkagues.
Cold Region. two dayes, wee came to a large Citie, to which wee had entry by a Bridge borne up with fiftie painted Barkes.

On the Nones of Ianuary wee came to Gouli, a Citie at the end of our Nauigation by that River. 50 Here in colebrating Maffe wee were thronged by the multitude. And a Priest of the Idols insuited vs. Papifts and which then performed to his Idols Ceremonies at his Honse, Altars there erected, & Priests innited, & P. pnims Cere-Hymnes vied, where he and those Bonzi vied vs kindly. Here wee observed that the Deuill counterfeis monies alike, ted the Ceremonies of the Catholike Church. We went thence by the foot way carried in portable feath as before fixe or seuen miles : and then entred the Province of Ciquion, at the Sun-set entring the Citie Ciquion. Cuixion. On the Ides of Ianuarie we againe went a ship-board bolding our course by another River Cristion, which in that Citte first beginneth to be Nanigable, the stow streame lingring with vi three dayes, in which yet we faw eight Cities, about which we found unmeasurable quantitie of Oranges, very high Hils abounding with Trees and under-woods, betwirt which that pleasant River sweetly slides receiving from New River. enery place new Tributes of waters that it prooneth now as large as that of Canton Pronince. And

6c although China baue name of fertilitie, yet bere appeared some prints of Iaponian sterilitie. For in fine dayes space we could get nothing but Rapes and Rice, and a little fish. On the elementh of the Kalends of February, we paffed by a large Citie twice as great as Canton, as the fe which knew the Region Steallitie, affirmed : for we by reason of Snowes and Mists could see nothing but some high Towres. At Sunne going downe wee came to a Towne, against which a Bow-shot distant on the other side of the Riner, wee

Venice.

were forced to take a new forp, and caufing our frip to bee drawne (a light banged out at the Maft) the were journal of the Catie Ciquion, the end of our tourney. In this Catie, which as Father Ro. next morning we came to the Citle Ciquion, the end of our vortacy. In this citie, which at Father Ro. gests (or Ruggeriths) is want to fat, is a type and representation of Venice. God bath provided vs of a good House, on one side having the Citie, on the other the River for prospect, with convenient Remote and a Garden, and a six place for a Chappell. On both sides of vs dwell deleterant Privilly, which ye who will be the convenient of the convenient of the convenient Remote and a Garden, and a six place for a Chappell. On both sides of vs dwell deleterant Privilly which ye one of second second to be are our Dollrine, as doe others in great multitudes, that we camen yes of every charge, and acting comes to near and fee or. To the chief of them me some me comes no anode their frequent concomfe to hear and fee or. To the chief of them me showed our Alac cretical to the immertall God, which they be held with great remerence, worshipping the image of our Santone. And the greates Magistrates were so affected with our Christian Ceremonies, that they said they would not fuffer us to depart. Some of them innited and entertayned Father Rogers : one of them of fare 10 mes injure rocks then the Comernour of the Citie, who then mourned for his Mother, and mained ve by his Steward to ber Ennerall Solemnitie; whom we answered that our Projets anafled not but to the wer. Stepara cour emocran overnouse, women or enjures who were a super a major a major a we can to the worfrippers of the true God. He ofed the Father with very great reflect, giving him the higher place at eable, and accompanying him at the parting to the vitnost gate of his I alace, seeming much delighted with be, and accompanying common parameter than the Common have common being the Mysteries of our Faith. Three obers greater than the Common have common to vist vs. and about come fo frequent that it is trouble force. The Prints also give vs good lookes, what sever they thinks, The Adjices both publice and prinate, the streets and Lanes of the little are larger and fairer then us Inter-comment of Canton. The Citizens also in granitie of manners, and civilitie of Habit, differ not a listle from the linhabit arts of Canton and Sciauchin, There is no Citie in Portugall, Lisbone except, that is any way for greatnesse comparable. The singularities I shall write at another time. Ciquion the 10

Prominciale Letter-Fortie Inpenior Con-

The Provinciall of India writ to the Generall that at their returne to Xanchin they found fortie Christians added to the Church, which number in those beginnings in the ample and bar-Chinais compabarous Kingdome of China, may be equalled to fortie thousand Christians in the Laponian Prouinces : from Gos 14. Kal. Ian. 1 587.

#### d. IIII.

False Brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin : erect a 30 Seat at Xauceum. Monasterie of Nanhoa and other things of note in those parts. They alter their babit ; Voyage to Nanquin ; the Lake, Riners , Idols and other Ravities .

sale leins cals that Citie where they relided Scianbin, and faith, it is a principall Citie, though not the Metropolican of the Prouince, noble in commerce, in scituation (in the midft of a fresh water Lake) in wits and learned men. They baptized there Linginus Father of a fresh water Lake) in wits and learned men. They baptized there Linginus Father of a fresh water Lake in with a state of the and two or three Infants, which then dying they thrust into Heauen at vinwares. Sixtus the Pope granted a great Indulgence to the Societie, to further the Laponian and Chinefe businesse: 40 and Agnaviva the Generall fent them three Watches and an artificiall Clock, which was great, yet mooued by wheeles without waights, and strucke also the quarters to the great admiration of the Chinois. Others fent Pictures, one the worke of Gafpar Costins who first taught the Ispenians and Chinois the European Painting to the great good of both Churches, But the Kinfmen of Limitians feeing fuch flocking to the Fathers grew suspicious of danger, and caused them to bee recalled, and Linfitan also to be estranged from them. Also one Tansao-hu a great acquaintance of Linftan, with purpole to get somewhat from the Fathers, questioned Ruggerins why heehad not feene Mount Vu-tan in the Province of Hu-quam, a famous refort of Pilgrimes; who answe-Puter a now place haunted red that hee durft not without the Magistrates leave: I will procure it, faith hee, and did so. In by Pilgrimes. the way Ruggerius went to the Mother Citie of Quamofi, where hee vilited one of the Royall 10 bloud, not knowing that fuch have nothing to doe with the State, and was not admitted, but bidden first to goe to the Vice-roy, to whom he went and had no injury, nor yet wonted humanitie, but was bidden to profecute his Pilgrimage and not to flay there. Limitan hearing of this, fought to shift his hands of them, and with much adoe they obtayned that two might beepermitted to stay in their house.

New Connert,

Coellins firft

teacher to

Another danger happened by one Martin 2 new Conuert which had made two other Conafalle Knaue. uerts beleeue that the Fathers could by a certaine herbe turne Quick-filuer into filuer, and by that meanes maintayned themselves. Now the Chinois being exceedingly affected to that Alchymisticall vanitie, these gaue money to buy a Wife, and other costs to that false brother who vndertooke to learne of Father Ruggerim and to teach the other two that Science. And having got. 60 ten what he could of them, he also borrowed the Triangle Glaffe of the Fathers, with which hee ranne away. The Gouernour one day defiring to fee it, they told him who had ftolne it, and he fent an Officer which found him out and brought him bound. Hee , to bee reuenged of the Fathers, accused one of them of Adultery; and the Husband of the pretended Adulteresse (partner

### CHAP.5. S.4. Dieth of whipping. Strange Honours, Icluites fernice.

in the Conspiracie) put wp a Petition against Ruggerius, who vpon inquisition was found at the time named to have beene in Onam-fi, two moneths journey thence. The Acculer hoped to get some-what, being poore, to stop his mouth, which they refused vtterly, and hee for feare fled, together with his Wife. The Father was judicially cleered, and Martin in his presence received Martin whitetwentie cruell stripes, and condemned to the Gallies, was sent to Linsian who had first com- ped to death. mitted him to confirme the fentence; who added fixtie stripes more, and being beggered and cast inbonds he was forfaken of all his Friends, and (the Fathers meane-while releeuing him) dyed within few dayes of the wounds. He which had gotten the Gliffe from Martin, another Con-uert, came and restored it to them, lest it might breed him danger being found with him.

Linftian was preferred to a higher dignitie in the Prouince of Hu-quam. To him the Citie Manner of ho-10 had crected a Temple, and on the Altar had let his Statue; before the Altar a great Harth for nouring good burning incense: Candlestickes were also magnificently placed; and at his departure the whole Magistrates. Citie there visited him, and after their rite , palled off his old Boots (Bootes are the ensignes of Magistracy) and put on new, putting the old in a Chist, and locking them up to bee reserved for a monument of his worth. Ruggerius went to Amacao, and Matthew got leave for Father Edward the Superiour to returne to Scianquin. The new Converts which had loft their moneys by Martins death, deuised new tumults against the Fathers; the River (which is a mile broad) ouerflowing, damnified the houses of the Citie, whence grew occasions of new abuses to Ours. The Vilitour endeauoured to procure Legation from the Pope to China, and Ruggerius was fent to Europe on that businesse, which tooke little effect by the death of divers Popes; hee spending & goeth into 20 the rest of his life at Salerne in the Kingdome of Naples.

Ricins was alone a good while, till Almeida came to him. His Clocke, by the Diall to the eyes, and by selfe-striking to the eares, caused no little wonder. But a new calumnie much endangered them made to the Ciai-yuen. For certaine old men of Canton, which are honoured for that in their whole liues they neuer haue accused any, nor beene accused of any, enjoying therefore a Primited and veerely feast out of the publike treasure, a peculiar Vest, and divers other immunities, put vp a old men, Petition, admonishing of the danger of the Amacaons, and especially those Spies which had Their elegant builded houses of divers stories, and every day proceed with new arts, giving money toward Petition is the building of Scianquin Tower to get entrance into that Citie, fayling to and fro without im- whole in Ricing, pediment, dangerous to the State. This is that which our Bookes fore-tell, Tee base fowen thornes this place. 30 and nettles on a gentle foot, yee have brought in Serpents and Dragons into your boufes. That of Ama-tao is lice a fore on the bands or feet easily circed as leafure, but this of Sciauquin, an viber fixing on the breait and bear timely to be remedied, &c. The Visitour reputed a seuere man committed it to

the Haitu, and at last it came to the Gouernour of Sciauchin, who then being at Pequin to performe the customary trienniall vistation to the King, Phan his colleague (our friend, then Lieutenant) affifted vs with his Counfell, and they gave their Glasse to the new Linsitan, who ended the quarrell with the Vifitour, as being a falie calumnie, The two Marts prouided them of exhibitions and European Presents from Canton, and their Clocke, Mathematike Instruments, Geographicall Maps, Pictures, and Bookes, with Musicall 40 Instruments, had procured them much visitation, and much estimation of Europe, and some fruit thereof in Connersions. Neither was this Station unprofitable to Amacao, helping their af- 1estite metit faires with the Magistrates, in businesses with the Vice-roy, in cases of shipwrackes, in redu-their cabibi-

eing fugitive slaves. It happened at that time the Vice-roy dying , his Successour would not tion by service through superstition enter his Palace till hee had pulled it quite downe and built it anew at to the state. the Kings charge. Meanewhile spending his time in Canton Province, he was made against vs and banished vs. But the Magistrates being our friends, and order comne then from Pequin to Issuites banis buy Scarlets of the Portugals, F. Mat. Ricius was employed, and got their good liking, but not fied. leaue by any meanes of the Vice-roy to stay at Sciauchin. Yea, hee forced vpon the Governour the execution of his Mandate to packe them away, offering money for the house, which they refuled to take, faying, a house built for Gods service might not be sold, and it were ill merchan-

50 dife to take fixtie pieces of Gold for fixe hundred which it had coft them. Isfuites house When they came at Canton the Admirall was absent, and whiles they waited for him the coll societies ice-roy sent a Barke for them to senum and then a senum and the collection of Gold, which Vice-roy fent a Barke for them to returne, and then permitted them to chinfe any other place of in Ching is a residence. Ricius chole Nanhium in the Prouince of Quiansi (or Quamsi, or Chiansi ) which hee great tumine, refuled not, but wished them first to trye at Nanhoa, or at Xauceum, commending them to the Nanhour. Affiliant of the Gouernour thereof, then present, and gaue Ricius a bundle of bookes of his \*\* Auctum. owne acts in token of good will, who thanked him with his fore-head to the ground, after their fashion. They departed from Scianchin on the Assumption day, 1,89. They came to the place called Sancem, or Three-waters, where the Rivers of Xauceum from the North falls into a great River : there they wie to change ships, to have others fixted in other fashion to sayle against the

60 streame. In eight dayes sayling to the North, they came to the place where the Gouernours feruant stayed for them to bring them to the Temple or Monasters of Nanbon, part of which Neglina Monasters of Which Neglina Monasters of Nanbon, part of Nanb the Vice-roy had given them if they liked it. This Monasterie they found in a goodly Plane, stone of 1000 engironed with pleasant Hills, enriched with hand-fet fruit bearing trees, watered with a Morris

profitethuttle.

1.Tim.4.8.

Pilgrimage.

334

piety of the Ancestrie, Lords of that ground ) had their abode, The originall thereof was a man which lived about eight hundred yeeres since, called Lass. who is reported to have flourished in great reputation of holinesse, by reason of his austere course of life; with a chaine girded to his bare flesh, wonted to life Rice, and to beate it lightly after their manner, as much as serued for the daily food of a thousand Monasteries. With that chaine Budily extraite his flesh putrified, so that wormes bred therein : of which if any happened to fall to the ground. he placed it there againe, laying, Hait thou nothing to ease? why heest thou runne away? There is his carkaile preferred and that famous Templebuilt to his worthip, to which is concourse of 10 Pilgrimes out of all the Kingdome, euery-where he and all his being much reputed. These Minifters of the Deuill are divided into twelve Stations, each having his Superiours, and over all an Abbot. When the Father came thither fent by the Vice-roy, they supposed hee had come to be their Abbot and to reforme their abuses; for they not only had their Concubines and Bastards. but robbed by the high-wayes. Now all the Idoll Priests are as subject to the Mag istrates as o. ther men; perhaps because their Learned esteeme not Idols, nor account these their Priests. Yet with China diffirmulation they gaue the Fathers faire entertainment with much pretended joy,

China hypo-

Monftreus Idolatry. Bels,

Lufus Shrine.

The bodie also of their Saint, Lufu, was shewed, all dining with that their China bituminous Vernish (so vulgarly thought, and preserved with incredible veneration, though many deny it to be his bodie:) In the midit of the Temple is an eminent place to which they accend by neate steps, in which hang about fifty Lampes, but not all burning except on let dayes. The Chinois maruelled at the Fathers doing no worship, a thing vivally performed by those Chinois, which otherwise repose no confidence in those Idols. They both agreed; the Chineis Monkes to bee rid of their feare, and the Fathers to goe to the Citie. At their departure, Father Almeida went by water, and F. Matthew by Land with the Go- 30

uernours Servant, the Abbot bearing him companie. He there told the Magistrate that he liked

not of the Temple, because the men had an ill report as vniate Neighbours, and hee worthipped

patieth by Nauhium on the East, the other running out of the Province of Vquam on the West.

But the Citie wals and Houses are builded in the midit of the field, but they are forced by the

ftraitnesse to build also on the other-side the River, joyned with a Bridge on Barkes. It contay-

neth flue thousand Housholds is fertile but vnholsome, the third or fourth part of the Inhabi-

tants being ficke of a Tertian from October to December, which takes away many, and leaues

a pale Impression on the rest. Strangers also are no lesse arreited by it, when they come thither

covered they had a Charter from the Vice-roy to build their House in ground belonging to the

Monasterie. Thither the Visitor sent them Sebastian Fernandus and Francis Martinez which

had beene trayned up in the Schoole of Amacao, the first Probationers in China. They to avoid

expense, built this House of one Storie after the China manner : and sooneliked better of this

on businesse. And the lesuites had almost lost themselves in this new purchase, where being re- 50

and officiously offered all at their Service, making them also a Solemne Feast, and then shewing

them the chiefe places of their Monastery. They were full of great Idols of Brasse and other

Steeples and Bels of Metall caft, one such as they had never seene in Europe to their remem-

Metals, and of wood gilded. In one Station were told fine hundred. There were also many to

Folly of Selfe- one God, and not Idols. This amazed the Gouernour, perswaded before, that there was in the pleasing.

World no other Law nor Characters then theirs, till Father Matthew pulled forth his Prayerbooke. The Abbot also testified that hee had worshipped none of the Idols, no not Lusen leke. At laft, the Gonernoor was perswaded by him, that that of Idol-worship was a later Sectamongit them; yea, the Abbot affirmed, that they deferred no worship, but that former Magiitraces had observed that without Idols the vulgar would not keepe Religion, and therefore set up thefe to be worthipped. They vilited all the Citie Magistra'es which wied them with more courtesse then those of Sciauchin. They went also to another Temple or Monasterie called 40 Quambias, on the other Westerne side of the River, and carried their goods thither till they were prouided of a House. The Citie Xancenm is feated betwixt two Nauigable Rivers which here met: the one which

Apply to Images. Originall of Idols. Contesse and behanged. Xauceum des Icribed-Nanbium.

Icinits new

then their former Residence. Chiutaife (the sonne of one of the second ranke of Magistrates called Sciansciu, a man fa-Chimage (the tolline of olders and Author mous, as being the first named of the three hundred Doctors made enerythird years, and Author of Learned Workes) had spent his Patrimony after his Fathers death with Proggalitie and experiments of Alchymie : and now was forced to shift, with his Wife and Seruants wandering thorow the Kingdome to his Fathers Friends, and becomming a Sollicitor for other men to the 60 Magistrates of his acquaintance. Hee having obtayned of the Vice-roy a Roome in that Monasterie became Neighbour to the Fathers; and one day with set Pompe (after the China cuitome) and precious Gifts came to Father Matthew, and chose him for his Malter. It was not fate for the Father to refuse (though he requited his gifts, left he should seeme to have beene brought this

thei by conetouinesse) and first taught him Arithmeticke. For that which the Chinois haue is with a Linnen Instrument whereon Beads are put by wires, and shifted hither and thither to china Arithreckon their numbers : certayne, but subject to Error, and unprofitable to high Sciences. He read meticke. to him alfo the Sphere of Clauins, and the first Booke of Enclides Elements, and taught him to make Sun-dials of many forts, and Geometricall Rules to measure Altitudes. He being of subtile wir, committed these things to writing in elegant stile, and shewed them to Magistrates of his Acquaintance, fo procuring great opinion and admiration to the lefuits. His wit and exceeding industry brought him to great skill, that hee made Spheres, Astrolabes, Quadrants, Compasses, Dials and other like, very artificially, and some of filter : withall so setting forth his Master 10 and the European Learning, that it proued of no small consequence. By his meanes the Fathers had acquaintance with Pimpithan a Military Commander, with the Gouernours of the Citie and divers other Magistrates. Almeida fell sicke and was sent to Macae, to see if Physicke

might recourt him, and there dyed. Recins fet forth a goodly Image hitherto vnseene, on the Altar adorned with Waxe Lights, An Image sens which brought fuch concourse to fee it, that their enuious Neighbours stoned the House and Ser- from New uants by night : whereat Chintaife offended acquainted the Gouernour, which had before fet his Spaine, Decree ouer their doore prohibiting all wrongs. He called the Street Gouernours (as Conftables with vs) and was likely there to have foourged them, pretending their ignorance, and putting chaines about their neckes after the fashion, sent them to seeke out the wrong doers, and Scuere Inflice. ting channes about their heavy fearing to anger their Parents, durift not name them, till he Free, de Parise commanded to whip the one and fend the other to Prison, whereupon they named two, whose punishment with much intreatie of the Father was pardoned. Father Francis de Petris, was lent Vice-roy de-(by the Magistrates License obtayned) to succeed in Almedau place. The Vice-roy was then prined, preferred by his Friends procurement and Bribes to a higher place, but the Provincial Pifter had so complained of his wrongs, that by the way hee was acquainted that hee was deprined of all Office, and fined at forty thousand pieces of Gold to the King. Besides, a filthy Vicer brake out of him, and soone after he miserably dyed. Thus did God punish his pride, which to erect a Temple to himselfe at Sciauchin, had deprined the Iesuits of their Houle. The fame at Sciauchin was that the Issuits were expelled for refusing to teach the Vice-roy the Arte of Al-

One Cosunbon a Merchant of the Citie Taicho in Chiansis, abode in Nanhium, and had some for-Taiche. tie persons in his Family, a very Superstitious Idol-worshipper, in whose service hee macerated his whole life in that China abstinence from Flesh, Fish, Egges, and Milke, liuing only of Pulse, china absti-Rice, Herbs, and certaine Cakes, industrious for his faluation in another life, but not fatisfied nence, with any of the Chima Sects. He had learned by Chimaifo of the Ieluits, and came to Xanceum and acquainting Father Ricius with his purpose, he was instructed and baptized loseph. He stayed with them a moneth, and after Ricius went to Nanhium to him, and preached and baptized ten Nanhium. with them a monetin, and arter norms were to the Governour was made acquainted, who others. Theeses by night affailing their House, the Governour was made acquainted, who

would have them indited by the Fathers (which they did very sparingly, whereas the Chine 40 manner is to adde excefficely) and he put them to torture; and forced them to confesse one whose Their sentence Hat or head covering falling off had bewrayed him, he condemned in Capital sentence; the other to be fent to the Gallies, or amongst the Kings Slaues : which sentence was to passe to Superiour Gouernours, and so to Scienchin, and Father Ricins must goe thither about it, which happened well for the new Connerts which had for the most part growne wild. From thence he went to Amacao to speake with the Victor, and returned to Scianchin, where the Parents of the theeues procured him their Aduocate which should have beene the Plaintiffe. Amongst the China Magistrates is one which hath his name of Pardoning punishments: Hee is sent in the Name of the Queene Mother, into each Prouince one. Their Office is to visit Prilons, to exempt the smaller Queenes par-

offenders and to mitigate Sentences; for which the Magistrates hold them in great esteem. But doner. SO hee would not faccour these men, though the Father intreated. The Proxincial Visitor only remayned, who alone doth laft of all reuse the Sentences, and they despaired that hee would reuoke the judgement of seuen or eight Magistrates. Hereupon they conspired fiftie of them conjoyning in an implous Sacrifice in a certayne Temple to expell ours from Xauceum. But none of the Magistrates of the Citie subscribing (except one, who did it, to offend the Fathers greatell friend) they better bethought themselves, and intreated Ricins to be their Intercessor; whereby the Visitor was perswaded to pronounce them Dicers and not Theenes, and to exchange their Rivers. fentence into twentie stripes apiece. For the name of Theeues would have beene an ignominious Theft ignoral. brand to them and to their Kindred for euer. Yet would they have renewed their acculation to nious.

the Visitor, but he would not heare them. About that time the Prefident of the Court of Rites at Pequin Prefi-60 Pequin, passed that way towards Hamam his Natiue Countrie, who hearing of Ours (which he dent. did not to the Vificers) vifited them with gifts, and spent a whole day with them, premiting at his returne to carry Father Matthew to Pequin with him to correct their Kalendars.

In November 1594. Father Francis de Petris dyed, and Father Lazariu Catanem succeeded, Ricins bethought him of another course: for howsbeuer they had shaken off the name of Bonzi.

336

vet because they shaued their beards like the Portugall Priests, and cut their hayre, and lined single, had their Temple and fet prayers, they could not free themselues of that infamous title which made them vnfit for greater Defignes. Hee aduited the Vifitor, that by this meanes they Ethnik prieffs were accounted as the Idoll Priefts, and that it were fitter to let their hayre and beards grow, and to weare the habite of the Learned men, each of them having a garment of Silke to vilit the Magistrates, without which they might on equall tearmer amongst the Chinois, conferre with them: also that it was fit to remoue their residence from this vnw hollome ayre of Xaucenne, or to divide it. To all these the Visitor yeelded, undertaking to acquaint the Generall of the Order and the Pope. For how locuer for vertue and learning (wanting to their Bonzi) the Magistrates and the Pope. For nowaccast to Cours, yet the vulgar held them in that vulgar respect; nois had alway thewed countenance to Ours, yet the vulgar held them in that vulgar respect; nois had alway thewed countenance to Ours, yet the vulgar held them in that vulgar respect; nois had always the vulgar respectively. ther might the Magistrates breake their custome, to give them equall entertaynment. Nor did they now beare themselves for Learned men of China, but for European Learned, imitating the

Iefuites alter

Sciles

The next yeere, 1595, the Chiefe Iudge of the Councell of Warre, by the Chinoic celled Scilais which is farre aboue the dignitie of Vice-roy, (who before had after divers Dignities betaken himselfe to a private life) vpon occasion of the musion of Corai, was by the King of China (which fent in defence thereof an Armie of eightie thousand) called backe to the Royall Citie. Hee had a Sonne of twentie yeeres old, who for griefe that he had loft the first degree of their Students, loft his wits. Hee fent a Captayne for the Fathers, thinking they could recourt his Sonne which he had with him, and gaue them fuch entertaynment, that the Magistrates were 14 Mount Muiim amazed. He caused a Charter to bee given to Ricius for going to Nangau, chiefe Citie in Chian or Moilin: Sac where hee hoped to doe good on his Sonne. He passed Mount Moilin, which lyeth betwixt the two Prouinces and the two Riuers, a dayes journey, and the most notable thorow-fare in the whole Kingdome. For at the foot thereof to the South, the River of Nanchina becomes nauigable, which runneth into Canton and the South Sea. On the other fide of the Hill at the Citie Naugan, arifeth another great River, which visiteth the Provinces of Chianf and Nanquin, and many Cities before hee enters the Sea Eastward. Thus what comes from forraine Kingdomss

to Canton, is this way conveyed to the in-land Kingdomes, as also from those hither: Horses

and feates, or Chayres for carriage on mens shoulders, Beafts for carriage and Porters, being al-

most innumerable enery day, yet all in good order. The Mountayne is common to both Progin-

with Trees, paued with stones, frequenc with Hostries, as secure by night as by day, bothby

the guards of Souldiers, and frequencie of Trauellers : neither are their ouer-flowings

by raynes. On the Hill top is a neate Temple, and therein a Garrison, both Prouinces thence

offered to the view. Naughan tignifieth the Somberne Inne. Hee went in one of the Presi-

dents Ships, till hee came to the Citte Cancer; by the way often entring into his owne Ship

and discoursing with him of European affayres, Sciences, and Religion. But so many visite-

ces, which are diffunguished by a Gate erected among the stonie precipices. All the way is set 30

ver Prefident,

Stately enter-

Boat-bridge.

is 18.ftreames. It feemes fo

tions for Magistrates hindred all dealing with his Sonne in this journey, so that by his Father it In this Citie Cancen, refiderha Vice-roy greater then the Vice-roy of that Prouince, they 40 call him the Vice-roy of foure Prounces, Chianfi, Fuchien, Canton and Vquam: not that all those Prouinces are subject to him, but because hee governeth two adjoyning Regions, or lesse Provinces out of each of them. The cause of appointing this Vice-roy extraordinarie was, the multitude of Theeues in those parts, which bordering on so many Prounces, could not easily by ordinarie course of Iustice bee apprehended; whence two Regions out of each were committed to one, who by Militarie forces repressed those infolences, And because the militarie Magistrates are fubiect to that Councell of Warre at Pequin, the Prefident was heere received with greater State : aboue three thouland men were fent to meete him a league off, with their Captaynes, Colours and Armes, many with Hand-gunnes mixed, shooting off as he passed, making a faire show on both fides the River, which there is not very large. When hee was come into the Citie, the 10 Vice-roy with other Magistrates visited him with Gifts, Provisions, Banquets; and some companies were fet to guard the Ships : which was also done every where, such is the China veneration of such Magistrates by their inferiours. Heere was a Bridge of Boates, opened but once a day for Ships passage which have payd their customes.

After they were past this Citie, another Ruer addes it selfe to this, whence they come into a place called Sciepathau, about thirtie miles long, in which are many Rockes differred, on which the impetuous force of the water caufeth many ship-wrackes goods lost, and men drowned; and requireth expert Ship-men; a strange thing to see a River full of shelves and sharperockes, in the Lying vanities midft of the continent. In the entrance of this dangerous paffage is an Idoll Temple, wherein the passengers denoutly commend the fafetie of their fortunes to thele vanities, which Scalan al- 60 to heere did in vaine : for although with multitude and industrie of Saylers his Ship auoyded the Rockes, yet was that broken in which his Wife and Children were carryed, though they efcaped drowning, by reason of her high building, every one getting vp into the highest decke, which lifted up it felfe aboue those shallower waters. They cryed pittifully, and Father Mat-

them having then gotten a Boate for himfelfe came first and received them, going himfelfe into another leffe, which went before to conduct the way. Scilar fent for another Ship prefently to Cancen. Father Matthew was taken into another Ship of burthen, which was in a guit ouerthrowne, Iohn Barradas his boy was drowned, and hee hardly recoursed : the Commodities by dvuing were gotten againe, though much burt by the water. They came to a noble and populous Citie called Chiengan, where the winde by night was fo violent, that it dispersed all the

CHAP. 5.S.4. Nancian and Nan quin. Huiunfins Tale and Temple.

Fleet, which hardly elcaped wracke.

Scilan terrified with this disaftrous passige by water, purposed to goe by land to Pequin, which Kings Posse is done at the Kings coft; in certayn places there being Horses, Lighters, Porters, proutions ready provided. Now thinking to fend backe Ricius to Xanceins, least some might accuse him in a time of warre for bringing Strangers to the Court ; hee shewed some the wonders of his triangle

Glaffe, which hee was willing to give the President if hee knew he should hold on with The Glassee. him in the lourney. They acquainted their Lord, and hee gave him license to goe to Nan- fleemed a quin, and to enter those two Prouinces of Cequion or Cechien, and Nanchin or Nanguin, Hee great levell, was carryed thither with two of Scilans feruants, still having Souldiers from all places to guard Nancion Mehim, they thinking that fome of his Sonnes were there carryed. When hee came to that tropolises Mother Citie (for before hee seldome went foorth, to preuent all lets) which is in twen tie Chiange. nine degrees, to the Northermost part of the Prouince, hee made shew of himselfe as one of Scilent houshold feruants: and not knowing whither to goe to deliuer his Letters, hee first 20 went into a Temple of note, which beares name of the Iron Piller. For they fable that one This seemes us

Huminfin, had some hundreds of yeeres agoe, brought perfect Silver out of Quick-filler, and had agree with delivered this Citie from a huge Dragon, whom hee over-whelmed in the ground, and ty- Para Muchied to that Iron Pillar, and then flew with his whole house, Mice and all, into Heauen. The parem for page building of this Temple is worthy the view, against which are perpetual! Faires, in which nothing is lacking to bee fold. The Priests are those which they call Thanfu, which let their havre and beards grow. When hee entred that Temple, much concourse of people came about him to fee a Stranger, a strange fight there, yea, reputed holy, for they had thought that the fame of that Idoll, had brought him thither from farre Countries. But when hee did no worship thereto, hee was admonished to doe that which the greatest Magistrates refused not a then threatned, after they would force him, till one of the Ship fayd, hee worshipped no Idols, But feeing the multitude ftill flocking about him, he returned to the Ship, and fignified that hee came with the President, whom every man knew. The servants visited their Masters friends, and

received gifts of some, especially of the Vice-royes Physician,

Scarcely had they fayled out of the chiefe Citie, when they meete with a Lake admirable Admirable for the greatnesse and other things : on all the bankes as farre as a man can see, are innume- Labersee the rable Townes, Caffles, Villages, great Houses; thence they may passe into Fucbien, and thence new Map. to the Sea Eastward. Amongst other Townes there is one Citic called Nancan, at the foot of to the bea Eurovaiu, minoight of the first and the first and the first and f himfelfe with afflicking his bodie. Those Houses are fayd to bee as many, as are dayes in the himselfe with afflicking his bodie. Those Houses are fayd to bee as many, as are dayes in the himself with a fair than the himself with the himself with a fair than the himself with the 40 yeere : and they tell as a miracle, that the Sunne shining cleere round about, that Hill is alway courred with Clouds and mysts; so that that Hill (so neere) cannot bee scene out of the in Page 162 or Lake. The course of the River is to Nangain, but in that breadth the streame hath small force, somelike place and eafily may with the winde bee fayled any way. After you are out of the Lake, a great Riuerout of Vquam Prouince, runneth thither and therein loseth his name and waters. For the greatnesse, it is thence-forward called Tamfa, which signifieth, the Son of the Sea, being in many places two or three myles broad, dangerous also for tempelts like his Father, and they say Riner Tanys or the waters are fo whirled therein, that swimming can little profit those which fall thereinto. The Chinois fayle it with great feare, and are there often wracked. Great Ships fayle youd the Lake, therein, and happely our Ships (not the greatest of all) and our Galleyes might fayle hitherto so from the Sea. Many other Rivers pay their tributes to it. They fayle it not by night, but betake themselues to some Port, which they may readily doe also in a storme. To this

Lake the Spring-tydes at Change and Full come, at other times not observable : at Nonquan enery day, but it is fresh water. When hee was come to Nanquin the Presidents servants

Nanquin described; RICIVS expelled thence, hee setleth at Nancian, thence goeth to Nanquin againe, and to Pequin ; description of it, the way thither, the Kings Palace, and of Suceu, and Hamcen

(which Fola cails Quin(ay) defembed. It was then greater, ay being warres toge. ther have diminished it : perhans allo that Lake decaying and diving vp; or not rebuilt after the Tarters expelled.

Second Wall ewelue Gares. Third Wall,

Citie wall two

Garrison

Milerable

Anquin or Nanchim by the Portugals is called Lanchin ; for they head of it by the Inhabitants of the Protince Fuchian or Fuguian, which vie L for N. It is called also Intienfu, because the Gouernour of the Region there refideth. This is that Citie, which in the Chinois opinion excelleth all Civies of the world, both in great celle and goodlineffe : neither may many be compared to it. For it is full of very great Palacis, Temples, Towers,

ter, as come Bridges, which all yet are exceeded by those of the same kinde in Europe. It excellent also in the noyante temperature of the ayre, fertilenesse of the soyle, goodnesse of wits, gentlenesse a manners elegance of speech, multitude of inhabitants of every ranke, of People, and Learnes, and Magistrates: game on precupants and the same with those of Pequin, in number and dignitie, however by the abfence of the King, that equalitie is made vn-equall. And so in all the Kingdome of China, and the bordering Kingdomes, it is commonly (all things confidered) judged the fift or chiefe Citie. 20 It is compassed with three Walls; the first, that of the Kings Palace exceeding stately. That is also compassed with a three-fold wall, in manner of a Tower, with ditches filled with water, It hath foure or fine Italian myles in circuit. And I dare boldly fay, that no King any where hath a more excellent Palace (not if you weigh particulars together, but) comparing all things. The second wall encompassed the Palace, and the principals part of the Citie, opened with twelue Gates, which are fortified with Iron plates, and Ordnance planted ouer against them within the Citie. This second Wall comprehendeth eighteene Italian myles compasse. The third Wall and ettermost is not enery where continued, but where need is, Art hath added supplyment to Natures fortification.

The circuit thereof can hardly bee knowne. The Inhabitants fay, that two Horse-men in a 30 dayes journey whole dayes tiding, having gone out of the same Gate, met together at night: whence the prodigious quantitie may bee observed, especially the forme of the Citie being Circular, and therefore most capable. Although within the walls are great spaces of Mountaynes, Lakes, Groves, Gardens, yet the greatest part is very frequently inhabited. The garrison Souldiers (which one would not beleeve, had not eye-witnesses confirmed it) which keepe the Citie alone, are agrees, 15 mine fortie thousand. The Pole is eleuated 32 degrees, and so it is seated in manner in the midth of the Kingdome, from North to South. The River runneth by it at the West, exceedingly both enriching and beautifying it. Nor doth it onely passe by, but is in many places brought into the Citie by Channels (whereby greater veffels may enter the Citie) being enlarged by Art. In times past it was called the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, and may feeme to have beene anci-40 ently more glorious.

Riches went a-land in the Suburbe, which is without the three Walls, and is so large and frequently inhabited, that it may feeme another great Citie. There a Physician of the Vice-toy of Schiauchin knew him, and hee vilited the Vice-royes sonne, and by his meanes grew acquainted with others. When he went into the Citie, hee vied to bee carryed in a close Chayre, to preuent noueltie, and for more authoritie, and because the length of the way to friends houses often required it. There hee thinking to fixe a residence, learned of one Sciutagin 2 Magistrate of his former acquaintance, to whom hee had before given a Globe and an Houre-glaffe, receiving promifes of much kindnesse. To him he went full of hope and not emptie handed: but hee being both miferably couctous, and ambitiously hunting after new places, was offen-10 ded with his presence (hee pretending that he came to see him) sent for his Hoast, and threatned him terribly, causing him to ship away his new Ghest; having also agreed with the Notarie of his Court to give enidence against him, as a troublesome and dangerous man formerly expelled from Scianchin. Thus against the streame both of his affection and the River, is Rieiss forced (loath to displease Magistrates) to returne to Chiansi Province. In the way fall of thoughts, hee had a vision (as the Storie fayth) in which God appeared to him, and promise to bee propitious in both the Cities Royall to him.

In Nancian the chiefe Citie of Chianfi hee abode. This is as great in circuit, but not in Merchandife as Canton, and though none of those portentuous great Cities, yet is it famous tor the number of Learned men, which thence are advanced to divers parts: the people are thriftie and Faftfromfleth, contented with little, and many of them observe that first aforesayd. Of the Learned men there fin egges, and is also a Societie, in which on set dayes the more learned doe Lecture or discourse couching vertues in very modest manner. The Physician aforesayd, famous for his Art and well respected by

### CHAP.S.S.S. Ricius bis Booke of Friendship. Princes of the Blond Royall.

the Vice-roy, was visited by him. Hee now vsed his Silken vest and Cap vsed by the Learned. fomewhat like but higher, then that which Priests in Spaine weare, (for he had learned to keepe flate and not to deject himselfe too much) and carryed two servants with him in long garments made of Callico, and his gestatorie Chayre: without which pompe a man cannot bee taken for a Learned man, the poorest Students vsing them, and otherwise contemned. The Physician enter- Many of the tayned him kindly and after inuited him to a Feast, where were many Students, and some of the Royall bloud Royall bloud (of which that Citie hath very great store) which were glad of his acquaintance; at Nancian, and when he had once mentioned his flaying there; the Phylician was to eager in defire thereof. that he feyned that the President Scilan had written to him, to procure him residence there, be- chinalying is 10 cause in the former abode he had not his health. The Chinois esteeme such lyes to bee wisedome, prudence

Hee soone got credit among st them by Mathematicall lectures and instruments, and by his artificiall memorie especially. For the Chinois about all others commit whole bookes to memorie Ricius his artic with vn wearyed paynes, and in the first yeeres of their studies doe nothing else. He repeated the ficial memorie most confused and independent Characters in order, yea, backwards as well as forward, Many defired to learne it, and tome hee entertayned. Phylicians being of no great authoritie, he fought to infinuate into fauour of the Magistrates; but a certayne Student had counselled him to neglect their license, and thereupon enquirie being made by the Vice-roy, this his friend and landlord very friend-like, would needs throw him fuddenly out of doores, and hee was forced by Forumefriend force to defend himfelfe. But the Vice-roy having received a Libell from him, teffifying who he 20 was, greatly rejoyced ( having heard of him ) and when hee came to his Court, arose from the

Tribunall to meete him, would not suffer him to kneele, and gave him good viage and magnificent Titles, inuiting him also to reside there. Whose affections were after kindled into a greater flame by his Physicians, magnifying his Mathematickes, Memorative, Bookes, three square Glasse and other nouelties. The Vice-roy would have him make him a Dyall, and teach his Sonnes, but for that admirable Glaffe, hee would by no kinfle force accept the gift.

And whereas time out of minde many of the Royall bloud are there, two of them having the chiengen and tytle of Kings, Chiengan, and Longan, fent their principall Scruants or Courtiers, to invite Fa- Longan, Kings ther Marthew to the Palace, which is fitting to Royali Maiestie, both for Greatnesse, magnifi- titular,

cence of Building, pleasure of Gardens, and other furniture of houshold and attendance. Chien-30 gan first inuited and entertayned him, attyred with a Royall vesture and Diadem: Father Matthew gave him a Dyall with the Signes of the Zodiacke, and a Globe with China characters, and other European commodities; which hee recompenced with Silkes, weight of Silver, and divers viands. Nothing gaue him such content as two Bookes of Japon paper, smooth and hard bound in European manner : one contayning Maps and other Mathematicall representations, with an explication in their Language; the other was a tractate of Friendling, wherein Dialogue-wife Richus his Chius (as Cicero in his Letins) hee bringeth in the King, questioning what the men of Europe thought Bocks of Friendship, and set downe the sentences of Philosophere: Doctors and other Authors as friendship, of Friendship, and fet downe the sentences of Philosophers; Doctors, and other Authors; a worke to this day read there with great applause and admiration, Printed in divers Provinces. Chiengan continued his friendship and left it as a legacie to his Sonne, who yied when the Father

40 visited him, to pay the Porters, and to give money to his servants, a token with them of great Token of welwelcome. The Societie also of Learned men grew acquainted with him, and the chiefe of them, come, hearing him complayne of multitude of visitors, wished him to command his Servants to say hee was not at home: which officious lye heaffirming to bee by our Law vnlawfull, bred in him and the rest much wonder.

In the meane while at Xanceo they fullayned abules, and Seballian Fernandus was vied igno- Caulis. miniously by the calumnies of their quarrelsome neighbours, and sentence of a partiall Judge, which caused two Servants to bee whipped vaheard, and Fernesidus to stand as in a Pillorie, with Pillorie board, his head in a board au ell and halfe square, therein a hole fitted for the necke, to bee opened and thut; fo that a man cannot put his hand to his mouth; and this for footh for beating the Bachellors. 50 This was written as the cause of his punishment. Hee afterwards sought the lesistes fauour, a-

shamed of his fact, inuited them, and set up an Edict for their safetie. Fernandus was sent herevpon to Riem, and Catanem continued alone without any Father, till the yeere 1597. and fell ficke : then going to Amasao (Father lobn Aroccia was fent in his place ) hee returned with Fa- droccia and ther Nicholas Longobard a Sucilian. Father Matthew was appointed superious of the China million by the Viltor Valignanus, without subjection to the Rector of Amacao. To him precious watches were fent, and Images with other things, which might further their China proceedings, the Portugals of Amacao continuing their liberalitie herein. Father Matthew minding to trie all meanes to peerce to the Court, aslayed Chiengan in vaine,

who feared to raife any suspicion of himselfe. Hearing therefore that Guan (which had as you 60 heard) visited the house of Xaucee, in his way to Hainan, was thence called by the King to Nanquin to bee President of the first Councell, called Li Pu, that is, the Councell of Magistrates : in his The Council way at Nancies they vifited him with a prefent, (in which nothing to pleated him as the trigone Glasse) and tooke opportunitie to signifie to him, their defire of presenting the King with Maidhaire. some European rarities. Hee approued thereof and fayd, they should not onely goe with him to

Customent Converse names in Bap-ANTO 1598.

340

Vice-roy of Nanquin, aloacr of Geographie.

Honour to an

Chappelle

Chian or Duian Sec Polo Jup.90 River of Nanquin : one cur from it for Pe-Yellow River

Such coniectures as this Pinto of this

Nanquin, but to Pequin also; whither within one moneth of his comming hee was to goe. Ricing with Cataneus attend him (leaving two of the company at Nancian) with two brethrenos the company, Seb. Fernandus, and Emanuel Pererius, of China parentage in Amacao: who of their God-fathers take vivally both Christian name and Sir-name, ving also their China names in dealing with Chinose. They fet foorth from Nancian on Midlummer day, 1598. and when they were come to Nanguin they found all full of feare, by reason of the Iaponian Warre in Cerai, so that none durit give vs encertaynment, grieuous Proclamations having lately forbidden to receiue men any way suspicious, by occasion of Iaponian Spyes taken. Euen the President himselfe, feared to bee author in so troublesome time of bringing Strangers: and Ricius when he visited him, vied his Gestatorie seate. They gaue eight pieces of Gold to a cunning Clerketo in China brings write their Petition (fo deare doe Learned men there prize their labour) which when they game the Chancellour (which fends Petitions from Nanquin to the King) hee would not meddle with it, but put it off to the President, that hee should carrie them with him to Pequin. He being to bee there to gratulate the King at his Birth day, in name of the fixe Tribunals or Counfels, fent his goodsby water and the lessites with them, but went himselfe by land. When this Prefident came to Nanguin, other Magistrates vifited him with prefents after the

manner, and one the Vice-roy of that Prouince with a Map of Richa his invention, concealing the name of the Author in a new impression ; which hee shewed to Ricius, who soone knew and challenged his owne. This the President intimated, that the Author was going with him to Pequin. Hee presently fends the Captayne of the Souldiers, to defire the President that he might to haue fight of a man whom hee so mich admired; sending withall a Chayre, and Porters with Horses also. For the Vice-roy of Nanquin resideth not in Nanquin, because in that High Court are higher Magistrates, which would seeme to eclipse his Greatnesse. So Catanens went with the Ship, Ricius to the Vice-roy, whom hee falled with European gifts. He flayed with him ten dayes, so great desire he had to conferre with him. And when hee shewed him the Image of Christ, he would not take view of it there, but would first ascend to a neate Chappell which he had on the top of his House, therein after the rites of their Learned, to worship Heaven; with three doores to it, from the South, East, and West : about it round was a Gallerie distinguished and cancelled. There he caused an Altar to bee erected, and thereon Wax-lights and Incense to be fired; and then the Image being fet thereon, hee came in his most sumptuous attire and did worship foure times, after their accustomed rites : after which hee would not stand before it but besides it, to take view, which liee did a good space. After him, his familie did likewise : and euery day they reiterated the fame, one also being appointed to keepe perpetuall O dours burning before it. Hee brought other Magistrates also to see the same : and when he might not detayne the Father longer, he fent him away with great weight of Siluer, which came fitting to their necessitie. Hee gaue aduise also touching their designe, and rold them of that frustrate successe which followed. He went with him to the River, and fent one with him till he had overtaken his companion. The Chinois call that River langu-chian, Chian fignifying the greatest River ; Qther Rivers they call Cho.

That River of Nanquin which I called (Yamfu or) Ianfu, the some of the Sea, goeth North- 40 ward to Nanquin, and then returning fomewhat Southward, runneth into the Sea with great force; fortie myles from which it palleth by Nanquin. And that from hence to Pequin there might bee pallage by Rivers, the Kings of China have derived a large Channell from this to another River, called the Tellow River, tuch being the colour of that troubled water. This is the ofee the Map. ther famous River of that Kingdome, in greatnesse and note, which ariseth without the Kingdome to the West, out of the Hill Cunlun, conjectured \* to bee the same whence Ganges artieth, or one neere to it. Where it first breakes foorth, it maketh a Lake which they call of the Confellations : thence it pierceth into the borders of China in Scienfe, the most Westerly Prouince, Lake feeme ill and goeth out againe out of the Northerne walls into the Tartars Countries; after which it returneth to the South, and that Prouince whence it had come, and washeth another Prouince na- 10 grounded.

Lake of Confiel. med Scians, and another named Honan: then turneth into the East and entreth the Easterne Ocean, not farre from the Sonne of the Sea. This River against their lawes for Strangers, entreth China from Barbarous Regions, and as in reuenge of their malice to Strangers, often ouer-floweth great part of the Kingdome, and shifteth his Channell being full of Sands which it mooueth. . Certayne Off cers or Magistrates designed doe sacrifice thereto, or to the Spirit of it (for they see Spirits ouer divers things) with many rites: and they fayne that it cleeres the troubled waters, but once in one thousand yeeres, whence it is prouerbiall of a fild-feene thing, When the yellow Riwer Shall bee cleered. They that sayle therein, must therefore keepe the water many dayes till it fetleth, the third part prouing myre and fand. Before the ingresse and egresse of this River, are Channels which give passage to Ships that carry prouision to Peguin. Those Ships are sayd to 19000. Ships of bee ten thouland, fent onely out of five Provinces, Chanfe, Ceebian, Nanchin, Vanam, and Scianthe Kingstor tum. For thele Prouinces pay their yearly tribute in Rice and Corne, the other ten in Silver-Sue Provinces Belides thele, there paffe innumerable Ships of Magistrates and of private Merchan's : but prinate men are forbidden to goe out of the Hianfu into those lefte Rivers (those onely passe which

shwell within fach Rivers to the North) left the multitude of Ships should hinder the passage, or bee able to doe harme to Pequin. Yet is there such store of Ships not withstanding, that they are forced to stay sometimes divers dayes, one hindring another, especially at some seasons when water is fearce, for remedie whereof, they have tockes and flood-gates, which opened make way from one to another of them, with great labour and tedious language. The croffenesse of winder and labours of drawing with ropes, I need not mention. Some thips are overwhelmed at the o- Cranes to pening of those lockes. They have woodden Engines on the bankes to draw the ships of Magi. draw thips strates, at the Kings coft, against the streame all the way. And in fitting this River to Naniga. Tempestions trates, at the same years years the feare of the Sea and Pyrats; have made them take this course leas and Pyrats; have made them take this course leas on that In rather then that by Sea.

CHAP. S. S. Way to Pequin by River, Carriages, Cofts, Townes, Locks, Co.

In all this way, many Cities most worthy note appeare, of the Prouinces Naugain, Scian- Fine, tum, Pequin, and belides the Cities there are fo many Townes, Villages, Houses on the banker, that all the way may be fayd to bee inhabited; fo that the Saylers no where want to furnish themselues with Corne, Rice, Fish, Flesh, Fruits, Hearbs, Wine and the like, at a very cheape rate. By the same River, Wood, Timber, Boards, Pillars ( for the Chinose make reckoning Timbers for onely of those of wood) are carryed for the Kings workes : especially, then when the Kings the Kings builonely of those of wood) are carryen for the raining works.

Palace had beene on fire, which confirmed two parts of three thereof. In all the Iourney, ours Two thirds of found great rankes of Timber-trees tyed together, and of other wood, which many thou- the Kings fands of men drew with huge toyle, and fearcely could get forwards fine or fixe myles in a day, house burnt by 20 and from the Prouince Sufemen, which is furthest from the Court, such Timber-trees were in Lightning, going up, two or fometimes three yeers space : whence enery pillar made of them prodigiously arose each to three thousand pieces of Gold : and of those Timber-rankes they encountred one. feeming longer then the reft, which was efteemed to reach two myles in length. The Bricks alfo (which the Chinois preferre before Stone) for the Kings Palace, were carryed this way fifteen Bricks preferhundred myles, and many Ships had no other wie, fo many as might feeme fufficient, not for a red to mone; Palace but a great Citie. Out of the Southerne Provinces, are yearely fent those things which in the more barren Provinces of Poquin are wanting ; as Fruits, Fish, Rice, Silkes, Cloathes and other things : and a day is fet them, at which if they bee not there, they incurre grieuous penalties. Of the Ships called Horfer, the Kings Eunuches have command. By this River Swifter falge 30 they layle almost onely when the Riners swell over their bankes, peraduenture by the melting called Herfet, of the Snowes from the Hills whence they fpring. By the heate in that lourney of a moneth, Heat and colds and fometimes two moneths, the viands which they carrie, are often corrupted before they come to Pequin, for which cause they coole them with Ice, and in all those wayes much Ice is preserved for that purpose, and distributed to the passengers, and so all things age carried fresh

The Eunuches of those Ships, fell emptie roomes to the Passengers for their gayne : for the Chinois thinke it aglory to fend that which goeth to the King in many thips, & not to give them their full lading, which is also profitable for that sterilitie of Pegain, Merchants by these conuenient fraights making nothing to want there where nothing growes. Ours hared a roome in 40 like manner for their eafe. By reason of the great heat they all fell licke, yet by Gods helpe recouered. When they were to passe out of the River, in the Province of Scientime, they met with a there. Which runnes out neere Pegain, to the Tower Tienfin. Another River Hand-made River, which runnes out neere Pegain, to the Tower Tienfin. from Pequis or rather from Tarteria, meetes it, and runnes together with it into the Sea, or into that Bay, betwix: Corai and China, after they have runne together one day. In this Tower there was a new Vice-roy extraordinary, by reason of that invasion of Coras from Japon. Hee They come to promided a huge Fleet for defence of Coras, by which meanes that whole Riner was full of Ships Program. of warre and militarie tumult. Ours went thorow the thickest of them without let, and at length came to the Port or Banke rather of Pequin, which banke is a dayes journey from the walls of Pequis. And although by Artthey have made a huge Channell to the walls, yet left it 50 (hould bee filled with multitude of Ships, they fuffer none but the Kings burthens to goe that way, the others being carryed by Carts, Beatls, and Porters. They came to Pegnin on a feftivall day, the Eeuen of the Virgins Nativitie.

The chiefe Mart Townes in this way were lameben in Nanquin Pronince, in thirtie two loweled Hode. degrees thirtie minutes. Hosingan in thirtie foure not all io much; Sincen in thirtie foure degon, Sincen. grees thirtie minutes. In Sciantum Prouince Zinim in thirtie fine degrees fortie minutes. Lincin Zinim licin. in thirtie feuen degrees fortie minutes. In Pequin Province Tiencin in thirtie nine degrees thirtie minutes. Pequin in fortie large. They are deceiued which eleuate it to fiftie. Now from Canton (which is two dayes from Amação) are of China furlongs (flue of which make a mile, and fifteene a league) by River to Nanbiun, one thousand one hundred and seventie. Thence to Nan- Length of the 60 cian eleuen hundred and twentie. From that to Nanquin, one thousand source hundred and fortie, way, And thence to Pequin three thousand three hundred thirtie five, in all seven thousand fixtie five: which makes of miles, one thousand foure hundred and thirteene.

Peque de ciibed.compared

The walls. Watsh and

Palace.

All goe and ride veiled.

Commodiria Booke of Pe-

Sec Polo fup.88.

Cambalu the great Tartar of the North.

Alchymic and

Coozening Merchant.

Chine Lan-

Degam is fituated in the Northerne border about one hundred miles from the wall against the Tarrars. Nanquin exceeds it in greatnesse, composition of the Streets, lugenesse of Builwith Nanquis. sings, and Munitions: but Paquis exceedeth it in multitude of Inhabitants, and of Maguitates. Fo the South it is compassed with two walls high and strong, so broad that twelve Horles may eafily runne abrest oin the breadth without hindering one the other. They are made of Brickes. fane that on the foot it stands all on huge stones, the midle of the wall is filled with Earth; the height farre x ceeds thole in Europe. To the North is but one wall. On these walls by night is kent as vigelant watch as if it were time of warre: in the day Eunuches guard the gates par rather exact Tributes, which is not done in other Cities.

The Kings Palace rifeth within the inner Southerne wall, neere the City gates and extends to to the Northerne walls, seeming to take vp the whole Citie: the rest of the Citie running forthern both fides : It is some-what narrower then the Palace of Manquin, but more goodly and glorious; that feeming by the Kings absence, as a carkaffe without soule. Few of the Streets are paged with Bricke or Stone, fo that in Winter dirt, and dust in Summer, are very offenfine; and because it rainesh there seldome, the ground is all crumbled into dust, and if any wind blow, itenters every Roome. To prevent which they have brought in a custome, that no man of whatfoeuer ranke goeth on foot or rideth without a Veile or Bonnet hanging to his breft, of that fubtiltie that he may see, and yet the dust not annoy him: which also hath another commoditie that he may goe any whither vnfeene, fo freed from innumerable redious falurations, and also be spares attendance and cost. For to ride is not magnificent enough with the Chimois, and to bee 10 carried in their Seats is cofily, with Attendants especially; and in that time of Watre it fitted with ours to paffe vnknowne, being Strangers.

Muletters flood at the Palace, and City gates, and in every Street to let Mules, themfelues alforatending the Hirers whether they would in the City; which leading the beafts by the bris dle, in that frequencie made way, being also skilfull of the wayes, knowing most of the great mens Houses: all at a reasonable rate. There is a Booke also which truly relateth all the Streets, Lanes, Regions of the City: Porters also with Seats to carrie Men, and Horses are enery-where found, but dearer then at Nanquin, or other places.

All things are to bee had in abundaace, but brought thither and therefore dearer. Wood is scarce, but supplied with Mine-coles (we call them Sea-cole) necessary to that Region, cold be- 10 wond what the Climate vivally exacteth : their Beds are fo made with Brick-workes, that they by a new kindrof Stones admit the heate of those Coles : a thing vivall in all those Norsherne Regions. These Northerne Chinos are some-what more dull, but better Souldiers then the other. Here they learned that this Kingdome is Cataio, and the King of China the great Can, and

For the nine Kingdomes (of Mangi) are those Southerly Provinces which are under the great River lansuchian, and fixe vpon it make vp the fifteene, fo great that some one of them is as great as all Italy. Anno 1608, whiles we write, it is fortie yeares fince two Turkes or Moores out of Arabia brought to China a Lion (a beast seldome here seene) by Land, which had an Office given by the King to them and theirs, to keepe the Lion, and that they should carry no 49 Tales thence: They in conference called this Kingdome great (ata), and this City (amhalu the like we heard of others which had comne from Persia. The Chinois also have heard of that name, and still call the Tartars Lu, and the North parts Pa and Pe: to which Can the Tartarian Title added easily makes Canpalu or Cambalu with others; for the Chinois feldome vie B, and Marco Polo comming in with the Tartars called it by their name. And at this time without the walls of China is found no Catay. The Portugals called it China, borrowing the name as may be supposed from the Stamites, and hence Cosmographe:s made them two Kingdomes. But Goez his lourney by Land to Catay Hath taken away all scruple.

To returne to ours now come to Peguin, the Prefident gave them entertainment, and procured an Eunuch to vndertake the bufineffe for the Presents, which were a Clocke, two Pictures, two 50 Trigone-glaffes and a Bell : all pleafed the Eunuch, but his minde ranne more on making Silver of Quick-filter, which he had heard they could doe, and which would bee more gratefull to the King. And when he law that would not be undertaken, neither would be undertake to acquaint the King, in this time of Corayan Wartes; and ours also were taken for laponians, or necre vnto them, they not knowing how by true names to diffinguish Nations. The President also began to be fearefull and purpoled to carry them backe with him to Nanguin. Yet they flaid a moneth after him (he being at a certaine day by Law to depart) and when they had tryed all wayes in vaine, nonedaring to acknowledge Strangers, they returned to Nangain. They had a Bill of Exchange from Amacao to take vp money at Pequin, but the Merchant had plaid the Merchant and Chmese too, none such there to be found. They hired a ship at an easie rate for their returns 60 (because they goe empty) but not easie in this respect that the Owners pouertie made the lourney tedious for what of helpes. This benefit they made of this Journey to learne the Language goage and Ac. better, making a Dictionary, obseruing their Accents with Points deutled; (chat speech constfting wholly of Monolyllables, the want of skill in those Accents had caused that they neither

CH AP. 5. S.6. Frozen Rivers, Succu wonders, One wheeled Coach.

did, nor were vnderstood) Catineus skill in Musicke helping to distinguish those founds. What course Ricins and he instituted, that the Company still observe in their Writing.

All the Rivers in China vie to be frozen in the beginning of Winter, that thips cannot pale Rivers frozen. by water, and Carts by Land are fafer. They agreed that Father Matthew should goe by Land Ric, goeth by with two Seruants, to try if he could fettle at Nanquin, the rest and the burthens to stay till the Land. River were thawed. He purposed also to goe to Succes whither Chinesis had often invited him. being his Countrey. Pailing thorow Scianium, he vilited Sincen and Tameen famous Marts, and Sincen and paffing the River Tamcen, at Chinchiamfu, the chiefe City of that Province hee entred into a Tamcen, hand made River, by which is failed to Succes and to the chiefe Citie of Cechian Hamces. This In River being Southerly and neere frozen over, is to narrow that multitudes of thippes cloy it fo formtimes that they cannot palle forward or backward. He was forced therefore to go by another way, which is a Coach or Wagon of one wheele, to builded that one fitting in the midft, and Coach of one two on the fides, the Coach-man behind with woodden Leauers or Barres drives it forwards wheele. both furely and fwiftly; that in short time he came to Sween,

This Noble Mart is one of them whereof is the Proterbe, That which is in Heaven the Seat of Succes described the Bleffed, that in Earth is named Suceu, and Hamceu: in splendour, wealth, frequencie remark-bed, able. It is built in a calme fresh-water River, and quite thorow one may goe, as in Venice, by Another Ve-Land or Water, but herein it excelleth Venice that the water is fresh. The fireets and buildings nice. stand upon piles of Timber, the Wares from Amacan and other parts are most fold here. It hath 20 one gave to the Land, the other are water-wayes. The Bridges are innumerable, & Magnificent, Ancient, but of one Arch in those narrow Chanels. Butter and White-meates are plentie, Rice, and the best Wine, which thence is carryed to Pequin and other parts. It is scarsly two dayes from the Sea. It is well fortified, the chiefe City of the Region, which hach eight Cities. One Huge Tribute. of the Princes held this, when the Tartars were expelled, against this Royall Race; whereupon it still payeth a great Tribute, to wit, the halfe of . Il things growing, (so that some two whole Provinces pay leffe then this one Region to the King against whom it had stood out) it is fill also awed with a frequent Garrison. Chintaife was then absent at Tanian a Neighbour City, Tanian, who received him with great humanitie. He abode in a Monasterie, and refigned his bed to his Mafter, who tired by trauell fell ficke, and was likely there to have dyed. Recovered by his care, an he gave him a Triangle Glasse, which he put in a Silver case with Gold Chaines at the ends, and

Matthew had prefented his to the King hee would not fell : after that hee fet a higher price At the beginning of the China yeare, all are busied in sending Presents to their friends, feasts New years? and falutations. They went to Cinchian to the p. blike Solemnitie where Chiunaifo was well day, knowne, and by his speach Father Matthew and from thence they went to Nanquin, in February , 1599. Before wee come thither wee will looke backe to our Canton lefuits.

ð. V I.

Letters from Father Longobard and Taiso. Ricivs his entertaynment at Nanquin and Residence there. The Chinois unlearned Lear-

Ather Nicolas Longobard wrote vnto Claudius Aquaviva the Issuiticall Generall, the Letter of F. Ather Richae Longoura wroce vino classam Anguerora in Seintican General, in Lenerol c. et "enth of October, 15 9 8, that in the Kingdome China there were then le. Niclamind: uen leiuts diffributed into two Refidences and one Mulion: at Noncione, Father lobu Soerius and Isbanues à Roccia; himselfe and Francis Marines a Chinese at Scientific at Scientific at Scientific and Francis Marines a Chinese at Scientific and Francis Marines and Isbanues ceum in Canton Province, Ricci and Cataneus, and Sebastian Fernandez a Chinese, were then gone to Pequin: that China condition and conditions agreed to well with him, that hee feemed to bee in the midft of Italy : that much respect had accrewed to them in concert of the Chinois together, with that Habit of their Learned, which they had taken, the Bonzi and their Habit effecmed base alike. He also much commends Thasso or Taiso, (Chimaiso before mentioned) who chima Learmuch enery-where commended the Ieluits and their Learning, as much exceeding what euer ning had beene taught in China. And truly, faith he, the Chinois Learning exceedeth not the Science ton with that

60 They are much exercised in a kind of writing and speaking briefe and pithie Sentences : their mants seemeth Bookes express well Ethnikes and Politickes, but are rude in Naturall Philosophic. When I had perhaps not the best, there being the best of Heathen Rome; Varre, and Chere, and Virgil, as the Romant Trium viri for Learning, besides, Salagi

adorned it further with a Writing that it was a fragment of that matter whereof the Heavens confift. Glaffe glazed; One was faid to offer him fine hundred pieces of Gold soone after for it, which till Father

\* Thaifes Letter. Fotheir tupersours and witte not in their fitting at

of honour a mongftthe 500.yeere,and now Ricina. Probabilities for the Gospel

China Mona.

as in our Vniuerfities, a mans prinare Many things in which the lefuites and Chimin con-

Chincles Letter. Their Monasteries, Charisie, Schooles, Studies. LIB. II. I rely runne thorow two of their Bookes, which they efteeme as their Metaphylikes, or first Philosophie, one of their learned men gratulated my proficience; when as I found therein no pandopine, one of their requirement of the Laniar. They lay, note but the Chinois can valerthad them, Father Ricci vieth to adde none better then the Europeans. A Letter of Taife to Revi hee added thus inferibed. Thaifo " younger Brether which fland at the " fide to heave, do fide. ner auerticius interioru. I intib mit my bead to the ground, and exhibite bonour and rentrence to the clair Brother, Master and Father Marchew Ricci, a famous Peere, and Master of the most choise slowers of the great Law, and cast downe my selfe at she feet of his Seat and Chaire. The Letter followeth, After our departing (it being foure yeeres fince fight of each other) there hash not beene a dayin Sciauchin, my (enurreyman, a Merchant, Latters to your Worlbip, thereby to learne where and whee it nouse (1).

This (116) did. I know not besther they have attayed that, to come to your magnificent hands, &c. When I went at the feet, with from your Walpup I faid it must goe into the North parts, if it mould belook the filendam and magniethe feet, with 1 cm your runnings and most go morry bad nothing fingular, that Nanquin Court was tradition the level lig. Scene of tou kinguisms, sum my control of the product was fit each for dwelling, because there were lea-

ned men in st of excellent vertue, and of a true and falid foris to receive the Law This year. gathering together those things which your Worship taught mee, I made a Booke, and exhibited it so the their fring at occiety of learned men, of which there was none which did not admire and fubfribe, faring, your Wes-Sop was Scingin, that is, a Saint of these times. Those things which I have added hapfy may be errous-Cutes. popular Senigui, tone so in oness y says treet.

Sente, son, and fore this they contradict is founder and larger tearning; and interfere beaut from my ferman 30. Non-hol clima to bring it to your Hardylop to reads, which I made it made, and to careful, the approach to truth, so hole out the falls, to illustrate the object, writing all in another Books, and feeding it by the falls. fernant in few dayes , because I would presently commit it to the Presse, that your Worshops learning friends in jun anges, yearnings a coming preparity community to known the thorough the World. In these places are of greatest reckning the Books of Hothu, Cocus, Pequa, Queulcieu, Thaiquitu, and other like, which have written of a Point, Lime, Extremite, and Tincravife. All these learned make of a Line a Circle: but according to your Worships teaching, of a ting sholy birth, greatest Line is made the termination of a Circle, and a Circle confists therein. From which principles the conotton, greatest clusions brought of Thatquit, that is, of God, doe farre exceed the Commentaries of all our learned learning that conjume or company of annual parties of the state of the state of antiquatie, which his horro bean not be may be Man norn. And they are enough to illustrate a thousand objectives of antiquatie, which his horro bean not beene pierced. This one thing affills mee, that my writing and file is meane and abieft, and most onfix to to illustrate and cularge the most excellent concests of its mind. Means while I much long, and as is pagas men an one cheg affish were on tiptoes looke about enery where, if haply I man fee your face. From Succes the two and twentich of the fourth Moone, and the foure and twentieth of the Raigne of Vanlia. Subscribed; Thailo younger Brother agains bends bis head to the ground, &c. Lombard proceedeth in his Letter, and sheweth the commodiousnesse of one King which ru-

leth all, of one Mandarine Tongue, of the common industrie and cheapnesse of prouisions (not as in the powertie of lapon, where the worke-mens maintenance must come from other parts) all fitting to bring in the Gofpell. There are, fayth he, almost infinite houses of Bonza maintayand by the King, besides gifts which they receive of others which yet repose no great considence in Idols: what would these doe if they beleeved to receive a hundred for one, and eternall life? 40 Their composition of bodie, complexion, condition, rites; no vse of weapons, not so much as a Knife carried (but by Souldiers in Garrison, not in the way or at home) their habite long, and anciently vsed, with their hands alway hidden in their long sleeues, except in vse of their fanne, which all, even the meanest carrie with them ; their quarrels, if any happen in the vulgar, ended in a few boxes or brawles; their feemely behaulour equall to the European; yea, in some Valuerfities in things to the Religious there; their studiousnesse of learning the onely foundation of dignitie Vinuerines and greatnesse, as many Athens there as great Cities, each having a Schoole or Vniuerstie with-Professors and out mixture of other Regions) their politike and morall Rules and Lawes; all these might be furtherances to the Gospell, Their tenacitie also of their owne customes and jelousie of Stranate normal are surfaces, might better secure them from Heresies. Hee commends also their worker of Piety, and 50 Charity, Almes, Hospitals for poore, voluntary chastisements of the bodie to subdue the affe-Ations, as fastings ( in which they abstraine from Flesh , Fish , Milke, and Egges , but eate other things as oft and as much as they will) liberties and gifts by Magistrates to Widowes which mansprinate fludies and the contaying themselves from second marriages; triall of a mans selfe in all his actions comtours, and the mended in their Bookes, especially of those things which other men cannot know; and hereexaminations vpon the liking of a folicary and contemplatine life in the Country, and refloring themselves to the first state, as they say, wherein the Heauen created them; for which purpose are congregations of learned men, together in Villages addicted to contemplation, and fleeing publike Offices (as the ancient Fathers had their conferences in woody and mountainous places) in which also their women are as forward as the men, many of them living in Nunneries, governed 69 by an Abbeffe; and all China women line so enclosed, as if their owne houses were Cloisters: These he commends in them, as also that of all vertues they give the first place to Obedience to Parents as in which confifts a mans perfection. And that no man may be ignorant of his duty, if they cannot reade (of which there are but few) they have a short Summe (or Catechisme)

for publishing whereof there is a man appointed at publike charge, every full and change, to A fornight publish the same in euery freet of the City, so that on the same day & houre, a little before Sun- Sabbath, rifing the same doctrine is propounded in all the Cities of China, and thorowall their streets, This is fixe Articles or Principles, which ate, First, Obey Father and Mother: Secondly, reservence Sixe precepts Betters and Elders: Thirdly, make peace among Neighbors: Fourthly, teach Children and Nephewes: of Chinas Fifibly, let enery man well discharge his office : Sixths, communit no offence, that is, not to kill, iteale, fornication, ecc. which in manner comprehend the second Table of the Decalogue. As for the first Table, the Chinois, especially the learned are Atheirts, little regarding Idols, whereof their Houses and Temples are full; little minding the re wards or punishments of the life to come, or

Ic the foules immortalitie, which yet are eafily found in their bookes touching the punishments at least of Holy Pao (so they call God) in Hell. Of rewards of bleffednesse there is not such euidence, as Thasfe affirmed. And although many difficulties happened to ours in the Bonzian habite, yet is it now farre otherwise. As for Canton Province, the Mandarines which come this Cantonians way, aske vs why we flay among it their Mangines, that is, Rufticks and Barbarians : We must, Aprilians. fay they, leave the Barke and pierce to the pith and marrow of the Kingdome, if we would fee the China splendor and politic. He writes for Labourers, Bookes, Images, and Pictures, for confolation of new Connerts: the Ethnicks worship that of the Virgin, and call her Scin mu nian Bleffed Virgin mian, that is, holy Mother, and Queene of Queenes: and ends with imploring the patronage honoured. and interceffion of all the heavenly Quire, specially of the bleffed Virgin, the Apostles, the An-

20 gels guardians of China, to obtaine of the holy Trinitie happy successe to their endeuours, &c. But wee will returne to our best acquainted in China, Ricius, whom we left newly arrived at Nanguin.

The case was now altered at Nanguin, they went on soot without impediment to their lodg- Nanguin, ing, which was in a huge Monaftery, called Cingbenfu, in which is great refort of guests which Cingenfu a there hire lodgings, being built in the centre of the Citie. The Inponiant were now beaten from great Abbie. Corai and Quabacondono was dead, which had fo terrified that vowarlike Nation. He heard that they had heard of his going to Pequin, and that the Coras warre was the frustrating of his defignes in that vnseasonable time. The President was verie glad of his comming, and exhorted him to buy a house there, and sends two of his followers to looke out for one. Scarlly had he

30 and Chiuraifo gotten home to their lodging, when the Prefident followeth to vifit them, which hee did with the folemnest Rites. And when they were fet in the Hall, the Abbot came to offer The Prefident them the wonted potion, kneeling to all three ( to the President hee was bound as supreme go- supreme gouernour of Temples) and the President inuited the Father to spend two or three daies in his uernour of house, to see the Fire-workes, which that full Moone, the first of the yeere would bee to bee Full Moone feene, which strange deuices of lights that and the following nights; which he did and beheld fre-workes. that which without wonder cannot be beholden, the Nanquiners herein exceeding as may be

When it was reported that the Prefident had vifited him, all the Maiestic of Magistrates did the like, yes some whom he had not visited. The President of the Court of Criminall Canfes, and the Prefident of the Treasury (which is the second Tribunall) came with rites & gifts, as also did others; yea hee which a little after was the High Colso at Pequin, which all viged him to buy a house; and he now went thorow all Streets and Palaces without gainclaying (which he knew from a vision hee before had had thereof) and procured a house which the President helped to furnish. So much admiration and respect had the opinion of European science acquired to him, these being to the China wits baits for the Gospels fishing. Now first did they heare that the Earth was round (for they conceited the Heauen round and the Earth square) that the Centre drew all heavie things to it, that the Vniverse was inhabited round, that there were Antipodes, that the Earths interpolition caused the Moones eclipse (some saying that the Moon Mathemankes Antipace, that the Entire unexportant contains a state of the Sunne and a state of the Sunne was dazled or amazed; others that there was a hole in the Sunne, againft Oop. It. 30 which the Moone opposed loft her light ) that the Sunne was greater then the Earth; and that the Starres also, this was out of measure paradoxicall: the like was the soliditie of the Orbes, and their number; the fixed pollure of the Starres, the Planets wandrings, the eleuation and depression of the Pole according to the various Climates; and likewise the inequalitie of the how valeaned

daies, without the Tropikes Geographicall Maps in plano, and Globes, Meridians, Parallels, Degrees, the Line, Tropikes, Poles, Zones, Spheres, Sun-dialls, they had not at all vinderfleed, with other points of European learning. A Doctor of theirs confessed himselse ashamed; For, laid hee, you may thinke of me as wee doe of the Tattars and barbarous out-lawes; for you begin where wee end ( which hee spake of the studie of eloquence, which takes up our childhood, their whole life. ) They numbred fine Elements, Metall, Wood, Fire, Water, Earlb, one of which they ec faid was procreated of the other: the Aire they did not acknowledge for one, because they fee it not, placing acvacuum or emptinesse where wee place the sire : as incredible it was that the firrie Element was the highest, and that Comers and Exhalations were therewith fired. Father Harris Col-Matthew writ a booke of the Elements in their language much applauded, and often by ledge in

them reprinted. Divers became his Schollars; one sent from his Master in Hantin Colledge in Region.

Pequin ( the chiefe place for China learning, to be admitted into, which is a great dignitie.) Hee was very wittie, and without any Mafter attained the first booke of Enclide, and exacted of Witofa Father Matthew Geometricall demonstrations. And when hee added some things of Christian Citte fe. nitic, you need not, faith he, confute that Idolatrous Sect, it is enough to teach the Mathema. Bonzis, dotages, tikes. For these Bonzis would also be Philosophers and Mathematicians. They faid the Sunne hid himselfe by night behinde a Hill called Siumi, rooted in the Sea foure and twentie miles Eclipies. deepe. And for the eclipses, they faid that the God Heischan caused that of the Sun couering

it with his right hand, and that of the Moone with his left.

Not at Pequin alone, but at Nanquin also is a Colledge of China Mathematicians of better Colledge of building then Aftrologicall Science. They do nothing but bring their Almanacks to the rules to of the ancients, when they mif-reckoned, they afcribed it to irregularitie of nature, not theirs, deuifing some prodigious euent to follow. These at first were afraide that Father Matthew would have deprined them of their dignitie; and freed of that feare, they visited him friendly, and he them, where hee faw a strange fight. There is an high Mountaine, on the top whereof is an open Plaine or Floore fit to contemplate the Starres. In this open space one enery night is appointed to watch, and obserue if any Comets or other alterations be in the skie, thereof to Mathematicall gine the King notice, and what it portends. In this place, of cast mettall are Mathematicall Intiruments, admirable for their greatnesse and neatnesse, the like whereof wee have not seenein huge Inftru-Europe. They have continued there in all chance and change of weather necre two hundred and

ments. A Globe,

A Sphere,

A Diall

number 24. confiellations

Thelike Inftruments at Pe-

This time agreeth with the time of Tamerlant: which giueth au boform:r ftory of him : belides the Chinois call the laft Tartar which ruled them Temor.

Nobilitie of

made in Canton Prouince, and make larger Commentaries, and hee would print it at publike 50 rity to Albacors coff, which he did, and with an elegant Proeme commended the Author of the worke. This was published and carried into all parts, and in other places reprinted. The Vice-Roy of Cricen Province printed it with another methode, making to every Kingdome a proper Commentarie in a booke, adorning the Authoralio with his praises. Besides, the Presidents of the fixe Tribunalls (equal except for the Kings prefence, in the government of their Province, to thele of Pequin) hee had three other friends, yet vomentioned. There is a certaine hereditarie dignitie derived to the eldeft fonnes, from those Captaines which expelled the Tatars; they are called Quocum ; their posteritie are honoured by the King, most of all the eldest, which in processe of time have growne into a numerous Family; and although they beare no publike office, except some militarie commands, yet have they great dignitie and wealth; and these onely doe truely retemble the Nobilitie of Europe. One head of this Family is at Nanquin, liuing in great pompe, with Palace, Furniture, Gardens, all I ke a King. He one day inuited Fa-Artificial rock, ther Matthew, and entertained him in the beit Garden in the Citie : in which , befides other pleafing rarities, he faw an artificiall Mount or Rocke of dius re uppolished Marbles, hollowed

ruled ouer the Chinou, by some expert of our sciences.

fiftie yeeres without damage. Of them were foure greater, the one a huge Globe diffinguished 20 by degrees with Meridians and Parallels, as great as three men can fadome; it flood on a huge Cube of brasse likewise, vpon his Axel-tree : in the Cube was a little doore, sufficient for it to passe when need was. On the vtter superficies was nothing grauen, neither Stars, nor Regions, whereby it appeares that it was either vofinished, or purposely so left that it might serue both for a Celestiall and a Terrestriall Globe. The second was a huge Sphere, the Diameter whereof was a fadome; with Horizon and Poles, and in stead of Circles, certaine double chaines the space betwirt them representing the Circles in our Spheres : all these were divided into three hundred and fixtie degrees, and a few minutes. In the middeft was a Globe of the Earth, but a certaine pipe hollowed like the barrell of a Peece, which might bee turned any way, and fet in any degree and cleuation for triall of the Starres very ar ificially. The third was a Diall two 30 fadoms high in a huge &long Marble fet to the North, with a channell about the table to hold water, whereby to trie if it flood plaine or no : the stile placed perpendicular, both it and the Rone distributed into degrees; it feemes, for exact trials of the shadowes of Solstices and Equinoctialls. The fourth and greatest was an engine or instrument of three or foure huge Affrolabes fet one by another, each containing a Geometricall pace in a Diameter, with their Fiduciall line, or Halbilada, and Dioptra: one of them represented the agreetor inclined to the South. another (which made a croffe with the former) to the North; another flood erected to the South, perhaps for knowledge of the Verticall Circle, but turned about to flew any Verticall; all had the degrees marked with iron knots franding forth, that they might bee knowne by feeling in the night. This Worke of Astrolabes was fet in a plaine floore of Marble alfo, with channels about. In every of these Instruments was expressed in China Characters what every thing fignified : the foure and twentie Constellations of the Zodiake, answering in the number doubled of the Zodiake, to our twelue Signes. There was in them this one errour, that they were fet in the fixe and thirtieth degree of the Pole eleuated, whereas Nanquin stands without all doubt in two and thirtie and a quarter of a degree. They seeme to have beene made to be placed somewhere cife, and placed here by some voskilfull Mathematician. Afterwards Father Matthew faw the like, or the fame Inftruments rather at Pequin, cast with the same hand, at that time when the \* Tarturs

The greatest Magistrate defired Father Matthew to revise the Vniverfall Map, which he had

into Caues; it contained Chambers, Halls, Staires, Fish-ponds, Trees, and other things, Art wantoning with Nature to engender pleasure; especially in time of heate to coole themselves in their studies or feasts with this Caue-retiring; which although it comprehended no great space of ground, yet would it aske the space of two or three houres time to visit all the parts, the earesse being by another gate. This Nobleman was yong, and defired to see some things of Europe.

Another which became familiar with Father Matthew, was the Commander of all the Nan- Captaine of quin Souldiers, which had also another great Office, called Hen, who often vinted him, and be-the Citie Garcame his great friend, whole friendship gaue vs tecurity, to whom the watch and ward, and fe-

curity of the Citie belongeth. Beiides, I will name the chiefe Eunuch , which hath great au- Chiefe Eucurry of the Citie Denoises. Section 3. A reason of the Citie care, and over the Mangain Equichs, where I had a care, and over the military Muffers. Thurbands of the Kings Palace, and hath command of all the Citie gates, and oner the military Musters Enumbrace together with the former Captaine, with other parts of authority, and expressent the same Nanqua, with great pompe. He was almost decrepit, and after the Euguchs fashion there, not so gentle; and when Rieses came to him, his Courtiers commanded him to give him a title which answer

reth to Highnesse with vs. I explane it thus; when they speake to the King, they wish to him ten Van, ven, fit, thousand thousand yeares of life in these three (yllables, Van van sin, which is all one with the title as to the Eaof Maiefie: to others in the Palace, the Queenes, or Children of the King, they with inferiour by of An Mo. of reasigns to thousand yearer. Now the Eunuchs are fo arrogant that they expect this thousand ever Dan, 10, veres will, and to bee faluted on the knec. Father Mushew could not doe this fafely, left hee 20 should doe more to him then to the chiefe Magistrates; but hee had learned not to neglect in China their rites ; and he being deafe, one that hollowed in his eate made up what the Rather

wanted. Hee gaue him a great gift, which he refuied, and denyed him the trigone Glaffes yet this caused the other Eunuchs to honour him. At that time lived in Nanquin one which had obtayned the first place in the declaration of A principal

Dodors (which is a very great dignity) who lined here in this Country private, but on peace Dodors a eiteeme of all. He had degenerated to become a Francher of the three China Sects, and pinced. Preacher fed great knowledge of them, Hee had at his house a famous Votarie, or Bouzi-Monke, who A Mendarine renouncing the publike Offices which he had borne, had financed his head, and (which is rice, y becomes a fuall in China ) of a Learned Man, had become a Minister of the Idols, And because her was Bonn. 30 both learned in the China Sciences, and growne feuenty yeares old, he had acquired much tarne

and many Disciples, professors of that new Sect which he dentied. These villed Facher Marthem, to the wonder of all ; that Literate-apostata confessed, the fruth of our Law, and prefen ted the Father with a Fanne with two elegant Epigrams tierein, Two other vilited hints, one Epigrams. of which counterfeited himselfe to have lived three hundred yeares, whom the China Cushes much followed, as doting on the fludie of long life, the precepts whereof he read to his Scholers, Hee also boasted of Geomancy. The other was a Physician, and companion to the other cach blazing the others Science : and whiles both preferred the Easter, fome ful pected that bee had lined some Ages (which they wie to affirme of Strangers, differing in countenance from them) and would not let it be knowne. .

40 The Chinose have one day tolerune to Confusion the Prince of the Learned, in which they make confusion his a kind of Sacrifice to him, not as to their God, but their Mafter. They call it a Sacrifice, houldy, but in larger excent of the word. Mulike was prepared against that day, at the triall whereof Father Rissus was present. The Priests of the Learned, salled Taylor, ordered the Musike sand Musike of in the Kings Hall (or Temple rather) dedicated to the Lord of Heaven, this triall was made, China, ... The Priests came forth in precious vestures, as if they would facrifice, who after their wonted rites to the Prefilent, fell to their Musike: in which were small braffe Bells, Basons, other as it were Tabors, others of stone, ftringed Instruments, Pipes; Organs blowed with the mouth, not with Bellowes; others refembled Bealts out of the hollow bellie yedding a found; all thete founded together with fuch diffcording diffcord as you may imagine; the Chinois themselves con-50 felling the concord and harmoniacall confent to bee loft; onely the Inftruments remayning from

That Temple was great and magnificent , built neere the Citie in a Pine-groue, compafied Templeroyali, with walls twelve miles about. The wall of the Temple was of bricke, the other parts of time and meaning ber : it is dissided into fine fles; the Pillars were round of huge timbers as great as two men could farhome, the heigh proportionable to that thicknesse; the roofe is excellently carnet, and all gilded: and although it be two hundred yeerestince it was built, and the King relides not at Nanquin, nor facrificeth there, yet is it little decayed from the first inlendon. In the midst of the Temple is a more eminent place of most precious marble, in which is a double Throne, both of marble; the one fox the King when he fitteth to facrifice, the other is left for him to be 60 by, to whom the factifice is made. The Clouders without are beautified with most elegant windings, and left the Birds should defile all, the windowes are all netted with Iron wyers (which is virall therow all the Palace : ) all the garge of the Temple are covered with Profite plates gilded, and wrought with near Vilages of the same metall. Without the Temple were

many Altars of red marble, which represented the Surme, Moone, Staries, and Hills of Cons.

The Father vied the Habit of the Learned (as is faid) of those especially which profese themselves Preachers of the Law; the Habit modest, and the Cap not valike ours in Croffe fashion ale io. He confuted both the Sects of Idolaters, and commended that of the Learned, prayling Con. faring, which was rather filent, then would deurse any thing touching the next life, and taught good Rules for the Life, Family, and Republike. A great man flourished at Nangmin then (which in had some thousands of Disciples) in opinion of Vertue and Learning, and had set dayes in which to heare and to be heard enery moneth. Chintaife brought the Father, and this Father together, and in some reasoning Ricins wrung from him that some corruptions were in the Idoll Sects, which he followed not, holding that only (he fayd) which was good. It being a fathion that Learned men met in their Societies to conferre of Morall Vertues, in one of those meetings this man learnedly confuted Confutius, which another Magistrate tooke haynously, and cryed

ewist an Idol-

out, it was intolerable that the Sect of Idols brought out of other Countreyes should bee preferred before Confining, whom the Learned Ricins allo admireth, refelling the Idol-follies. Hear-I wered, he had spoken with the man, but he was not yet well acquainted with China businesse. and he would instruct him better. Soone after he inunted him to a Feast (for the Chinois vivally to Conference or in fuel meetings determine Controuersies ) and there hee met Samboi a famous Idol-Prieft, i Learned Philosopher, Orator, Poet, and well skilled in others Sects also. When they were fet. this Priest and the Father together, the Priest began shewing his desire to conferre of Religion, Ricins first asked what he thought of the first beginning of Heaven and Earth, and the Creatou of things whom we call the Lord of Heanen. Ideny not, fayd he, that there is fuch an one, bet he hath no Majesty nor Deity, but I am equall to him, and so are all others. Canst thou (faith Ricins) make those things which he hath dones he granted. Make then such a Chafing-dish (one flood before him) this, fayd the other, was an vnworthy demand. Thou (fayth he) art an Aftronomer, and makeft new Sunnes in thy minde when thou reasonest thereof. That, fayth Ricing, is but an Image or likenesse which the minde from things seene conceineth, as in reseasion of a to Glaffe whereon the Sunne shineth, yet dock not the Glaffe created Sunne. The Hoast forfeare of further quarrell parted them. At Dinner the Chinois disputed of a Question of bumane neture, how it came bad (they want Logicke and cannot well diffinguish betwire morall and naturall good, and neuer heard of originall finne) they discoursed thereof a whole houre ; after which Ricius repeating what had beene fayd, entred into diffrute with Sambos , who laughed at his and their Reasons and answered all with a Fale of I know not what Flowd, according to his Sect, but he straitned him with Arguments, so that he and this Disputation grew famous. They conceine that God and the Creatures are all of one fubftance, and that God is as a great Soule of the Vniuerfe : which opinion from the Idol-fects hath infected the Learned. Ricins writ a fummary of that point, which gaue men good fatisfaction, and his Law feemed not fo batharous as to they imagined.

Oppreffien. ftopped by anbe opened to preuent rob-

The Kings Treasure was exhaust by the Corayan Warre, whereupon contrary to the Lawes Mines of Gold he caused the ancient Mines which were sayd to be stopped, to bee sought, and opened, and imposed new Tributes, that in all Provinces, Merchandizes should pay two of a hundreth : which cient Kings & had beene tolerable if gathered by Magnifrates; but his Eunuches, lent to every Province, without shame or mercie exacted on the people, and rayled a worse combustion then that of Coray. So many Impostors, Counterfeits, Theeues were euery-where : if a man dwelt in a good Houle, they would digge it up to fearch for a Myne, to force composition from the owner. Some whole Cities and Prouinces compounded with these Caterpillers to free themselves from their vexations; the money io gotten they gaue the King as taken out of their Mynes. This caused Dearth, 30 and in some, Commotion. The Magistrates petitioned the King against these abuses, but sweetnesse of gaine had not only stopped that eare, but procured grieuous penalties to those which withstood his Catch-poll-Eunuches, which by those punishments grew more insolent. Ours which wintered at Linein, happily escaped these Harpy-clutches, who with their Presents arriuing at Nanquin rejoyced to see a Residence so prepared there. These Presents intended for the King, bred fuch an amazement in the beholders that others were ready to offer force to fee them. They fill minding to prefent the King, (the weather now more cleare and peaceable) Caranens went to Amacao; where was much rejoycing for these hopes, but soone quenched with forrow for loffe of their thip which tradeth to Iapon, men and goods loft, on which thip all their Commerce dependeth. They found themselves therefore vnable to maintayne three Refi- 60 dences : the Iesuites Rector scraped all hee could for that purpose, and added a Watch and Image of the bleffed Virgin, and Trigone Glaffes, Houre-g affes and other Rarities to their

Father Diego Pantoia 2 Spanish Priest also accompanyed Catanene to Nanquin, and thence

went with Ricius to Pequin, with Sebastian and Emanuell. Father Iohn was called from Nancian to reide with Catanem at Nanquin. They went with an Bunach then going to Pequin with fix Zinin. thips, who thewed them much kindnesse. In Zinin a City of the Prounce of Sciantum is a Viceroy wingli isar High Admirall ouer all the thips, whether they carry prouison or other things, High Admiral. Toy water the content of the content ftate hee followed him eg his faip and there vifreed him with vitall Rites of Vrbanity and a Prefens, and won-fred much at the fight of thole Prefens they carryed for the King. He fent an 10 Officer allo to make him a readier way. One Lecter had made way to this Vice-royes friending. who foone after killed himselfe, hearing that voon some complaint of his Books, the King had Licinkilleth

CHAP. S. S. G. Ricius named Sithai Mathan's mifchiefes, Ship, boafts, Feaft,

commanded him to bee imprisoned and his Books to bee burned; preventing so the study of his himielie. Aduerfaries to put him to fome shamefull death.

Amongst those Eunuches which the King had sent to oppresse the people, was one Mathan, Mathona great which dwelt at Linein, whole exactions had rayled the people and Souldiers into mutiny, which and bale Euburnt his Palace and killed his Servants, himfelre efcaping difguifed, but the Captine and Slave nuch. of Couetouinesse no lesse then before. Our Eunich addressed himselfe to him, but could not till Treacherie, the third time be admitted, because his Gitts were not answerable to the others appetite. Hee to make way for himselfe betrayed Ques ta this Harpy, they not knowing it, faying, that in

30 one of his thips were strangers with precious Gifts for the King, which he shewed closely to his Officers with their he might get the Kings fauour. The Governour which in that and the Neighbour Cities had great command was his great friend, of whom Ricuss asked counfell : he told him that now the Ennuches reigned, and they almost only were the Kings Counsellors, nor could the greatest Magifrates withfland their injuries. Yet the countenance of this Magistrate was a great helpe to him, this being the man whom of all the Gouernours he most feared; a man so well deserving that his Civizens erected to him a Temple, Image, and Inscription; who now al so both countenanced Ricius what he might, and game him the best aduice how to carry himfelie to this Eunuch, and perhaps but for him they had loft all and themfelies to. This Capon had Gress and erected Palaces and Temples, and had built a auge fup in which the King himfelfe might have glorious faip,

30 fayled; fo many were the Cels, Chambers, Hals, and other commodious Buildings thereof; the Windowes, Galleties of yndecaying wood carryed with many Meanders, "all flaining with Vernish and glettering with Gold. In this ship was bee carryed to our, where Resus mes lim. He viewed and liked all, and downe on his knees to the Virgins Picture, promifed to procure her a place in the Balace. Ricino modeftly refusing his fertice for them to the King, faying, many Magistraces of best ranke had vindertaken that kindnesse; he finited, faying, none of them could doe io much as he with the King : the King answeres my Petitions the Jame day, to them or late, or nothing. The Eunuch which brought ours was sent away, and all the Presents put a-board his thip, Hee carryed the letures with him to the Towre of Thienfin, whither hee went to fend Thienfan, thence thenx moneths Tribute to the King : he feasted them, Comedies, Rope-runners, Tum-

40 blers, Vaulters, and Mimicke Ape-men attending the cheare with fuch disports as they had nener feene in Europe. One cast three great Kniues into the Ayre one after another, and catched china Players. them agains in their sheather; another lay on the ground, raysing his feete over his shoulders, and Feat worwith which hee toffed up and tumbled too and fro an Earthen Pitcher in such fort, as hardly kers. could bee done with the hands; the like hee did with a Drumme on a Table. A Comedie was acted only with getures, of difguifed Gyants in glorious habits; one from the Theatre pronouncing all their parts, A Boy danced admirably, and then as it were falling, layd his hands on the ground, and another Boy of Clay came forth, which ving his hands for feete, imitated all the prankes of the other, and fell to wreitle with the liuing Boy, as if both had beene aliue.

We will leave you Spectators bere, and now bring you forth another Actor, which basing in little while 50 transled much and learned more of his Fellowes; Juddenly sent into Europe these Relations nos unworthy your view: which I base therefore examined with the Original Spanish, and the Latine Translation, and cut off some superstanties to give you more full content and to present Repetition; the rather because bee descendesh to many particularities which Ricius looking higher and knowing more, bath omitted.

Hh

CHAP.

haue bothin Spanifb printed Lucia : and in Latine at Mentz 1607.

\*This Booke I A Letter of Father DIEGO DE PANTOIA, \* one of the Company of IESVS, to Father LVYS DE GVZMAN, Prominciall in the Prouince of Toledo; written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March, the yeare 1602.

#### ¢. IIII. "

Difficulties of entring China, their dwelling at Nanquin , going from thence to Paquin, with Presents for the King, troubles in the way by an Ennuch.



Ight Reservend Father in Christ, the peace of Christ bes with you. I thinke I doe not facisfie the dutie which I owe vnto your Worship, for the lone which you have 30 alway shewed vnto mee, and the Obligation wherein I am bound to so many most dearely beloued Fathers and Brethren of this Pronince, if being as I am in this great Kingdome of China, procuring the good of these Pagans, (whereumo it pleased our Lord to choose mee) I should not give you some briefe Relation of the things that concerne this our new Mission, and of some things also concerning the greatnesse of this Kindome, the Customes, Government and Policy thereof.

Being come, as heretofore I wrote to your Worship, to Macao 2 City of the Portugal, 2d-joyning to the firme Land of China, where there is a Colledge of our Company : and there attending till the Persecution, Tumults, and Warres of lapen, would permit ten or twelve Fathers of vs to passe thither, which stayed expecting sit oportunitie : when we were readie to de. pare, within few monethes, it pleased our God to change my Lot, and Enterprize which I had before myne eyes, and to fend mee to enter into China, whereinto I entred in the end of the yeare of our Lord 1599. There were in this Mission at this time, only fine Fathers divided into three Houses. For though it be twentie yeeres since they first began to enter, yet the entrance of Strangers is so hard and so firsitly forbidden, and their state and persenterance is so difficult, that in all this time there never paffed aboue five or fixe Fathers, and those which succeeded fince. though by little and little, did discouer the Countrey; But their entrance was by fiealth and fecretly. Confidering that all passages were shut up, and that in all ( bine there was no man that could or durft prefume to gue licence to preach the Gofpell; we alwayes fought to get fome ac-Meanes fought ceffe vnto the King, either by way of Embaffage, or by way of Prefene, and Gifes, and to feeke # to enter china to obtayne this in part, or in the whole, to this end and purpose.

Entrance into

Embaffage.

The Fathers alwayes fought to obtayne some Ambassage of the Pope, or of the Catholike King. But perceiuing they could not obtayne this, they procured it by way of gining a Prefent, not fo much of precious things, for they had none of that kind, as of ftrange things never feene before in China. And having procured this for many yeares space, without having any meanes to obtavne it; the Divine Providence ordayned one in the yeare of our Lord 1590, which was this : The Fathers being in Xanebeo, (a Refidencie of the Prounce of Canton) there paffed that way a great Mandarin, called by the King, to give him an Office in the Court, which among vs is like vnto a President of one of the chiefest Councels, which had known the Fathers long time; and now feeing themselves with him, and fignifying vnto him the defire which they had to goe 50 to Paquin, to give a Prefent to the King, and that if hee would doe them the courtefie to carne them along with him vnder his shadow and protection, they would alwayes remayne thankefull, and exceedingly bound to ferue him. After this and other motives which they prefented vnto him, did that follow which wrought most effect, which was a good Present, with hope of other things afterward, whereupon he shewed himselfe very tractable to grant their request, and to take them with him to Pagnin.

Being glad of this refolution, they prepared themselves for the Voyage, and tooke the things which they defired to give the King, which hereafter I will mention. It pleafed God to bring them to Paguin, in the company of fo great a Mandarin, without the hinderance of any bodie. Being come to Paquin they began fecretly to negotiate their bufineffe : because they durit not, 60 neither was the Mandarin that brought them willing that they should shew themselves abroad. But though they attempted all possible meanes, neither with gifts, nor any thing elfe, there was not any man that would meddle with this businesse, because it was a matter that concerned Strangers, confidering what might hereof happen vnto them. After they had spent certayne

# CH AP. 6. S. I. Hage Garrison. Mandarins Houses. Denils disturbe not Jesuis. 351

moneths, and faw they profited nothing, and fearing fome innovation, they determined to returne to their Residencies from whence they came. Having returned three hundred leagues, they came to the great Citie of Nanquin, which was

the ancient Seat and Court of the Kings of China: and now (though the King reside not there) vet is it the most noble, great, strong, and beautifull of all this whole Kingdome, and retayneth her being the Royall Court, with all the same Offices which the Citie hath where the King refideth. They defired greatly to get an entrance into this City, because, as I have faid, it is a fa- 100000, Gar. mous place, and hath fuch flore of graue persons in it, thereby to make themselues knowne, and rison southiers here to procure with more facilitie an entrance or accesse vnto the King. But it seemed a thing in Mangaia. here to procure with more recurring an entrance or accesse who the recurring the property of the procure with more recurring standard and a financial was a considered the property of the pro get licence, it seemed impossible to obtayne the same of so many great Mandarins, as governed 60000 are so the same. But our Lord (to whom every thing is abke polible) vouchsafed to comfort the Fathe Country the fame. But our Lord (to whom werey string in affice pointer) voluntated to common third with their fame their free fame of their journey to Paquis' and by additioning or their for the fame of their fame of the Atlantic for the Nation thers for their tasen and such the protection of the Mandarin for the Naule the counfell of fome friends which they had there, and with the protection of the Mandarin and See guard. had carryed them to Paquin, which at that scason came vinto this City, they dwelt in Nanquin, or kinus might without the contradiction of any Mandarin, although all of them knew thereof: howbeit, as speak of the a very great manfaid, which afterward became our great friend, hee was readie to fend to ap- or illnary are

20 time abode in China.

prehend the Fathers, vntill hee vnderstood that they were peaceable people, which had long temperable times. Paragraphs After they were purposed to remayne there, there was another difficulty to get leave to dwell some time and have an Hou'e within the wals. But the Divine Providence gave them a very sweet and while the Iseasse meane for all this, as here I will declare. The Mandarins live in this City in houses which Position warre are not their owne, but belonging to the Offices which they beare : and when one hath ended Continued. his Office, hee that succeedeth him, succeedeth him in his Hosses, which are all builded at the bouse are Rings coft. At this time a great Mandaron had builded one of thefe, wherein by his Office hee publike. was to dwell : But when he had finished it, it pleased God, that he enjoyed it not : and hee sent House posmany Deuils to enter into it, as they did in deed, which with fearefull shapes did terrise those fessed. which dwelt in it, especially by night: and this continued so long a time, that all men left it, and none would dwell in it. As Father Matthew Riccio (who was the party which negotiated

this businesse, as the Procurator of all this Mission) went about to seeke to buy an House, by way of jest they asked him, whether he would buy an house fill of Deuils! The Father answered, that hee tooke it not for a jest, but that if the house liked him, hee would not vary for that; for he ferued a God whom the Deuils feared and dreaded, and that trufting in his helpe he was nothing at all afraid of them, but that they did rather much feare him, because he was the Servant of fuch a Lord. They went to see the House, which presently liked him: and as they fold it good cheape because of the bad report that is had, in two words they agreed together: and the Mandarso that fold it was fo glad, that he give vs Patents to possesse it perpetually in China; Iesuits Patent a thing which in no place could be obtayned of any other Mandarin. Forth-with they went to for china hibi-

40 it, and at their comming in they bleffed it according to the Rite of the Holy Mother Charch; tation. and by the grace of God there was neuer dreame of any euill thing that troubled the same. All men looked what would become of this, and what successe they should have with the Deuils. And when they saw the great quietnesse, without any shew of Spirits, they were greatly asto-And when they key the great questions, without any men or applied, they were greatly alto-nied, faying, that without doubt this was a great God, and that hee fought to dwell in that Fame of Ie-Houle, and that therefore he had commanded the Deuils to dwell there, and not to fuffer others functioning.

to enter therein; and that when he came they went their way. To this fo good beginning the progresse from thence forward was answerable; for the grave Fame of their Mandarins vinlerstanding, together with the fame that they were Learned men, that they had Learning. many Bookes, that they were men of a good life, and that they had fome things of their Countrey, which were neuer feene in China (as certayne Clocks with Wheeles, and Images in Oyle, which and other present phinary) all of them for the control of and other prettie things) all of them fetting feareapart, and other respects, came to visit the Fathers in great effate, because they were the greatest Mandarines of all China, but with much humanitie, respect and courteste, with Presents of things to cate, and Banquets as they viewith their equals. They were fo well pleafed with all that they faw and heard, that all of them became their great Friends and Patrones: and gaue so good report of them, that all men lought to doe the like: and for continuance of their amity they came oftentimes to vific them, and oftendoe the like: and for continuance or their anney they same or continues to the standard people, times insuited them to their Palaces: and with this fame and honour of the grauelt fort of people, Their cities and the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, their cities and the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of people, the standard people of the grauelt fort of the grauelt fort of people of the grauelt fort of the grauelt all the relt of the inferiour and bafer fort yied them with much reuerence, no man daring to doe,

This was the flate of things when it pleased God to choose me for this Mission, and when I entred into it we had three Refidences, one in the Province of Canton, another in the Province of Quasci, which is somewhat more within the Land, another in the Citie of Nanquin, which is in the midft of the Kingdome, and three hundred leagues from Macco. I entred fecretly, as all the rest did (I say without particular Licence of any Mandaria, ) But my secrecic continue.

There lections.

but a while, as hereafter I will declare. I came at the first, without staying in any other House. to Nanquin, where three Fathers of vs were foure moneths; Father Maisbem Riccio our Superiour, Father Lazarus Catanio, and my felfe, and a Brother a Chinos, one of the two which are received into this Mission, and every thing goeth well. But as in matter of strangers the Chines are exceeding ferupulous, more then your Worship can beleeue, so there were many which spake of our abiding in Nanquin, confidering that now wee had three Houses in China. Wee beganne with much more earnestnesse to procure another better foundation, and to returne to Pagnin more openly, and seeke accesse vnto the King. And because in Nanquin there bee Mandarine to whom this belongeth, and some of them were our Friends, wee beganne to speake of this

frozen all the Winter.

lars of the Gilded Dracalsthem) the for the frequencie men-Armes of Can-

ton Prouince. fome others which might be miitaken for the Kings Armes. They began May, filenous. Gospell.

thipping.

Lincin

But it was not needfull to spend many words; for straight way we met with a Mandarin, to pains stanted. whom by right this matter appertayned, who frankly and freely offered vs Patents, Dispatches. and whatfoeuer was needfull to accomplish this businesse. The promises of this Mandarin were not vaine : for when the time came that the River was

unfrozen, (which all the Winter is frozen ouer) and Barkes began to goe for Paquin, he performed his word faithfully, giving vs Patents and Paffe-ports needfull for the money; and befides. Nanquin ouer- hee fent vs a Barke of the Kings to carry our Prefent and our owne things. Beeing glad of these good newes and dispatch, we consulted how we shoul I deale in certayne things which offered themselues in this businesse, and who should goe: There was no question but Father Manthen Riccio should be one, but who should be his companion : for whom they choose me, and the Brother. We fet our things in order, particularly those which were of the Kings Present, Which kings Present, were two Clockes with Wheeles, one great one of Iron, in a very great Case made faire with a thousand ingraued worker, full of eided Dragons, which are the Armes and Signes of this King, as the Eagle is the Empercurs: another little Clacke very faire, aboue on handfull high , all of golden Metall, of the best Worke which is made in our Country, which our Father Generall had sent us for this purpose; Kings Armes, which was fet in a gilded Case, as the other was : and in both of them in stead of our Letters were grasen Pinto faith a the Letters of China, and an hand that came forth did point at them. Besides these there were three l-Lion, perhaps mages in Oyle, two great ones of an Ellbigh, and one listle one. The greatest was the figures and portrainre of Our Lady of the Poplar, of Saint Lucar : The second was of our Lady with the Babe le-sus, and Saint John : the third, was a Picture of Christ, which was the least; all of them were of excel. 30 quater meny lens Worke. Befides this, there were certayne Looking-glaffes; two Triangle-glaffes (which though Pole, fur, 349. among us they be of no account, yet are they eftermed here among them) adorned with Chaines of Silecorpethaps wer, and let in an excellent Case of Iapon, which was of twentie times more value then the Glasses, to them that know what Glaffes are. A Booke of The Theatre of the World, and a Breniarie exceeding Serpents fince, fairely bound, with an inscription, That that was the Doctrine of the True God, whose Images they the Royall En- did present bim mithall. A very faire Monocord, because it is an Instrument whereat the Chinois figne Besides a doe wonder much, and other pretie things of lesse importance,

All which things beeing fet in order, and imbarqued, we tooke our leave of the Christians of Nanquis, (which at our departure came to our House with a Banquet with great joy) and and perhaps of of the Mandarms our friends, which with great forrow, and shewes of love tooke their leaues of vs , and lent vs Presents for our sourney, and many Letters of fauour to the great Mana darins of Pagnin.

We departed with this good diffpatch from Nanquin in the yeare 1600, the twentieth day of May. And knowing not how the King, and the Mandarins of Paguin, and those of the Kings Court, would take this our Iourney, because wee were Strangers, wee sought to prepare our felues for that which might fall out : in great hope that we should find ayde eyther in all or in from Manquin part to obtayneour defire, which we had for the establishment of our Company in this King-1600ths 2006 dome, and to procure the opening of an entrance thereunto for the preaching of the holy We file-and.

We began to fayle vpa very great River, whereof hereafter I will speake somewhat; and 50 when we had fayled certayne leagues, wee entred into another small River made by hand about two hundred leagues, only to carry in Barges the Tribute which the Prouinces of the parts of Nanquin pay vnto the King, and other things which these Countries yeeld (which are the belt, and most plentifull of all things which are in China) because it seemeth impossible to carry it by 300 leagues as Land with Millions of people, being in Rice, Wheate, Silner, and a thouland other things very great : And the Veffels which are employed about this businesse are so many, that without doubt it is no Hyperbole to say that from Nanquin to Paquin , which is three hundred leagues, all the Summer time it seemeth to be a path way of the Kings Barges. We were all aswell Mandarins as particular men very well intreated all the way, whither many Mandarins came out of the Villages and Cities, defiring to fee the Present which wee carried, and our selves; bringing vs 60 many Presents for our Journey. Having travelled two hundred and thirty leagues in forty dayes, wee came to a very famous place and Mart Towne in China, which is in the Pro-uince of Xantan, which is next wnto the Territories of Paquin, called Linein. Where, because of the great Trafficke of Vessels and Merchants, which goe and come from the Court, who

pay to the King a very great tribute, he hath placed one of his chiefest Eunuchs, which serueth pay to the strings of the string of the stri euer he goeth abroad he is alwaies carried in a Chaire, vpon eight mens shoulders, which is a Kings Eunu he very great honour in China, with great store of Horsemen before and behind, with certaine Ba. his pompe, fons of Copper, which make a great found when they be playd vpon, to figuifie to the people that he commeth that way, that all may goe out of the way; as the cuttome is with all the great Mandarines in the Cities of their iurisdiction. Which Eunuch understanding of vs, and of the things which wee brought for the King, and of many other things which they put in his head that wee brought, to wit, precious stones, and others of that kind: hee lent vs word, that hee To knew what we had brought for the King, and that he defired much to fee it, and that the fame day or the next he would come, praying vs that we would make it ready.

He came at the appointed time, and having seene the things which wee brought for the King, and making account of them to be precious, and that the King would greatly delight in them, he fought meanes to cause them to be presented to the King by all meanes, as things that he had dealt with vs to bring, to please him, and thereby to obtayne some sure for himselfe: and befides this, with defire and hope that wee would give him fome precious stones (whereof the Chinois are very greedy) he determined wholly to meddle in this businesse. Hee sent vs a Prefent of things to eate, and a very courteous message, that wee should passe in one of his Barges, that shortly he would fend vs to Paquin, with Souldiers of his house, a Petition made with his 20 owne hand to the king; that we should consult together, and bethinke our selues what we defired to obtayine of the King, whether it were to bee Mandarines, or to have lands or houses, or all together, because there should be no difficulty in any thing. The message came with all this courtefie. And we made answer with the like, returning him a Present for his answer with gecourteils. And we make answer what the men recuming min a retrieue for mis answer with generall words. For though he came with fo great offers, yet wee knew that these Eanuchs, for minded, the most care has and courtous people.

It happened at this time that the chiefest Mandarine of this Citie, which was our great friend was come from Nanquin, from whence they had fetched him for that Office. Wee determined that Father Matthew Riccio should visite him with a small Present, according to the vice of the Countrey, to relate vnto him this businesse, and to aske his counsell what wee were best to doe. Hee received the Father with much courtefie and loue, and kept him two dayes in his houfe: which, after he had heard the whole matter, answered, that he was very forrie that we had met with this Eunuch, because we could looke for no goodnesse of his basenesse, couetousnesse, and bad meanes of proceeding; and that he could performe nothing that he had promifed, and that his intent was nothing but couetoulnesse; that hee would admie vs to take as little as we could of him: but for all this, that wee should not refuse that which hee offered, but rather to make a vertue of necessicie, and to thanke him with a very good continuance for that which hee promifed, because we were in his power, and he might and would hinder our passage, if weedid not fo, and take away our Prefent from vs, and give it himfelfe with his owne hand to the King, Notfable & te without making any account of vs, without controlment of any man, because he was not tubical ordinary Ma. 40 to any Mandarine

This feemed vnto vs to be very found counfell, and a forcible enducement to follow it. So we followed the fame, and applied our felues vnto him in euery thing, answering the Eunuch according to his defire, and passed in a Barke of his. He defired much forthwith to carrie the Kings Prefent to his house, saying, that he would trimme them to give them to the King, and this we courteoutly denyed him, faying, that we durft not depart with them till we had deliuered them to the King, neither that it feemed realonable, that when wee did give them, another should trimme them; especially, that these pieces were not such as had need of more trimming, since in themselues they were so precious : with which answer hee seemed to remayne satisfied. At the first he made vs great basiquets, sport, and cheere: but as in very deed his purpose was no-50 thing but to doe himleffe good, and to looke for his owne profit, and not for ours, hee beganne glickly to difcour himfelte: for hee flayed certaine dayes, looking that wee should gue him Conceited fome precious stones, which some body had told him that we had brought with vsto please him, Semmes. for some things that they looked for at his hands, and when he saw the dayes were passed, with-

in which he thought we would have given him them, he began to be out of hope, and to grow coll in our entertaynment : yet for all this, he came to vilite vs with great pompe at our embarking; and after fifteene dayes he dispatched vs for our iourney to Paquin with men of his them.

owne house, and with a Pecition to the King, fignifying vnto him how hee had met vs on , the way, and what our intent was, and what things we brought. We were very honourably entertayned in his journey, and in all the Townes and Cities of 6c his Jurisliction whereby we pasted, he commanded them to give vs without delay refreshing of Floh-meate, Fish, much Fruit, and Wine. Wee travelled eight dayes and came to the last place of his lartifaction: which is three dayes journey from the Court of the King We flayed there with company that did waite spon vs, watching day and right about the Barke with their Continuels and Bells, as they are wont to doe with the great Mandarines, and especially because

there were there things belonging to the King, and the reft of the feruants of the Eunuch went to Paques, to deliner the Perition to the King, and to know his pleasure. They delinered the Petition, and we looked for an answer thereof within three or foure dayes, as he had told vs. Bur God had disposed otherwise for the exercise of our patience and hope in him: and that was, that the King made no answer as we looked for : whereupon he was somewhat ashamed of the great brags that he had made to vs without performance of any thing: and hee and wee were all in suspense, when we saw the King returned no answer, which is wont to bee a token that he liketh not the Petition that is made vnto him. Fifteene dayes after wee arrived in this place, the Eunuch came thither; to fend from thence

to the King a third part of the tribute which he had gathered. He came accompanied with great 10

ftore of Veffels, and that wherein he was, was such, as assuredly your Wothip hath not feene

House, wholly divided into chambers and halls very high, full of carved workes round about,

with hangings of Silke, of many figures, and round about full of galleries to walke vp and

downe without being driven to enter in. And on the outside it was all covered over with a kind

of Oyle like Varnish, which runneth out of certaine trees, which they make with tempering of

all forts of colours, (whereof in lapon and here there is great abundance) and the Portugals call

it Charan; it is a very faire, thining, and durable thing : and the things that are coloured with it,

doe shine like Classes, if it be of the finest: and besides, though it be not cofly, yet it is as faire

gures, trees, and flowers; and if it be of the right, it doth not decay, and loseth no whit of his luttre. Herewith was the Barge trimmed without, with divers figures painted on the hull of the

Barge: from the hull vpward the windowes and the walls of the Halls and Chambers was full

of carued workes, knots, and carued flowers, some gilded, others of divers colours, agreeablem

their natures, which made a very pleafant flew : within it was of the fame worke with more

excellency, and the most part was gilded, and the floore of boords was painted with very shi-

ming Charan or Oyle. It was as long as a good Gallie, little more or leffe, and somewhat bros-

der, but farre higher , and in such fort, that when wind fayleth they vie very great Oares after

the manner of China, which ferue, and are managed as Fishes vietheir tayle to swimme. And

because they bee of this fashion they wie them with much facilitie in every Vessell how high so- 10

When he was come to this place, feeing the King fent no answere to his first petition, he fent

euer it be. This was the fashion of the Vesseil wherein the Ennuch came with much Musikeof

another to put him in remembrance, and to folicite an answere to the first: wherein lice answere

red nothing to this point, although he answered to other things. And though it bee true, that

sometimes the King maketh no answer, through forgetfulnesse and consustion, because the peti-

tions be infinite which are daily given him from all the Kingdome : yet most ordinarily when

he giveth no answer it serueth for an answer, either that hee will not doe, or liketh not of that

fur that is made vnto him. And therefore because there came no answer, the Euruch was much

cause he had given a Petition to the King, vntill he had seene some answer of his, fearing some

damage, or displeasure of the King, that hereof might ensue : and hereupon hee beganne to

estrange himselfe from vs, and sought not to see vs, nor to have to doe with vs, and sent sixe

grieued that he had meddled in this matter, out of which he could not withdraw his hand be- 40

Trumpets, Drummes, and Fifes, and other Instruments which I omit for breuities fake.

and fairer, because it is more naturall, and very neate and fine, wherewith they paint divers fi. 36

354

Ennuchs pom- the like in all your life. The forme is very much different from ours: for it is like vnto an high

Glorious Var. Abundance of all colours in Lapon and Chine Painted Fi-

Very great excellentyle of them. Mniike.

Manner of petitioning the King.

Eunuch egranged.

men alwaies to stay in our Barge, under colour to ferue vs , but in very truth to watch vs day In this suspence wee continued three moneths in the extreme heate in a Barge, not knowing what would become of vs. At the end thereof newes was brought vs, that the King had fent to the Eunuch, that he should see what things they were (for vntill then he had not written to him but in generall) and fignifie it vnto him, and if he thought them worthie, he should fend him a Petition touching that matter. Wee were somwhat more joyfull with this message, which 39 was so indeed. And Father Matthew Riccio went to the Eunuchs lodging to receive the Kings answer, with such ceremonies and reuerences as they are wont to receive the messages that come from the King. And to put this commandement in execution, he came to our Barge accompanied with many inferiour Mandarines, as witnesses, and in the Kings name hee tooke all these things into his hands: which he fent vnto his house. There he fell to reason with vs, perswading vs that wee should conceale none of the precious things that wee had brought (whereof his minde did fo greatly runne) because the King would be greatly displeased, if hee knew that wee had any good things and would not give them him. Wee told him plainely the truth, putting him in plaine words out of that imagination which we knew he had conceived. And after many complements on both parts he returned to his lodging.

He wrote to the King what things they were which we had brought, looking that he would straight haue sent for them. But it fell out as it did at the first, that he returned no answer, and the cause thereof seemed to be, that they were things that he made none account of. Wee were now the second time in like case as wee were at the first, not being able to goe backe nor forward: for they would not fuffer vs to goe to Paquin, nor to returne backe. The Eunuch being readie to returne to the Citie of Linein, where we first met him, having need of the Barge where- Linein, in wee were, commanded vs to bee remoued vnto an houle in the Citie, there to flay vntill some meffage came from the King, either good or bad. We removed with great pleafure, for the defire that we had to fay Maffe, whereof wee were deprined many moneths. After we were come on This was the fhoare, we fet up our Altar whereon we faid Maffe euery day, preparing our felues for that which thirteenthof

CH AP.6. S.I. Conetoufneffe injurious. Images, Croffe, Chalice, Sufficion,

This Eunuch could not bee diffwaded from that which couetousnesse had perswaded him, to Couetousnesse wit, that we had brought some precious thing with vs. And seeing it seemed vnto him that he iniurious, to could not get vs by another way, to give that which hee defired, and wee had not; hee became

shameleste, and two dayes before his departure, he came with a great companie to our house, as though it had beene to vilite vs in friendship, we thinking nothing of any tuch thing : and when he was come in he began to speake vnto vs, and put vs in great feare, asking vs, how wee durft come so farre into the Kingdome without leave of the King ? and that other Eunichs had aduertifed him from the Court, that wee had many other things, and that wee would not shew them, nor give them to the King. While he was thus talking and dealing, hee commanded his men to feize vpon all our stuffe, which we had in foure or fine Hampers, and to lay them all out young banke, which with great celeritie aboue an hundred Officers which came with him performed, and in two words, they undid and opened all, and with his owne hands he opened as 20 many papers as he found, to feeke that which he defired : and feeing he could finde nothing that Images.

hee looked for, he tooke that which hee found, which was an Image of our Ladie, being one of the two small ones which wee had referred, that which hee left was better without comparifon, and very excellent, on which also hee had cast his eye : hee tooke also certaine Glasses, and other small things, of small importance, because there were no better : but that which grieved A Crosse and vs much was, that he tooke from vs a Croffe of very good and great Reliques, and a Cafe of Re- Reliques. liques likewife, and the Chalice wherein we faid Maffe, which because it was of Silver and gilt A Chalice. (which that yeere they had fent vs of Almes from Maaco) did pleafe him; and when we prayed him not to touch it, because it was a thing consecrated to God, which the Kings of our Coun-

trey durft not prefume to touch, hee made a left of it; and the more it was told him that hee 30 should not touch it, hee handled it the more with scorne, saying, that though wee told him he might not touch it, yet we faw he held it in his hands without any difficulty or danger. By the intercession of a Mandarine that favoured vs, he gave vs the Chalice againe; but wee . could never get the Reliques agains out of his fingers, as wee defired, for of all things elle hee

would depart with none. As he and those that ayded him so willingly were fearthing with much curiositie, and energy one catched what he could, because all things lay tumbled on the ground: at last they met with

a Case wherein was a carued Crucifixe, which was mine. He began to looke vpon our Lord Ie- A Crucifixe, fin Christ being bloudy and wounded, being a very faire and pleatant fight to our eyes and heart, but very strange, foule and offensive to his fight. He vsed certaine gestures not saying any word, 40 vntill he was assonished, and turned his head, and asked what it was? Wee told him, that that was the true God which made Heaven and Earth, whom all the World ought to worship, who died for our finnes, and to give vs life, and afterward rose againe by his owne power, and ascen-

ded into Heaven. He would not heare many reasons; for it seemed vnto him that we were deceitted in worshipping a God that in his eyes was dead : againe, he looked wistly vpon it; and the finall conclusion that hee made was, that that which hee suspected was true, that wee were suspicions very lewde fellowes, because wee had the shape of a man misused with so great inhumanitie , nayled on a Croffe, and all besprinkled with blood, as that was , and that it was nothing elfe but some witchcraft to kill the King; And though in this second point hee was deceived; vet in the first he had great reason, though hee knew not wherefore, fince our sinnes and euill deeds made Christ to be vied on that fort.

50 That which the Eunuch faid in our house, he vttered also abroad : in so much that certaine grave Mandarines which favoured vs, retired themielues from vs , and fent vs word, that from henceforth wee should leave that crucifixed man, and that seeing now wee remayned in China, we should wholly conforme our selues vnto them, for as long as we kept it they durst not speake in fauour of vs, because the report went that it was a deute to kill the King. But our China Boy which was a Christian before he brought ws the message, answered before the Mandarine, faying, That this was the true God: wherefore not onely wee, but himlelfe that was a Chinois would rather die then denye him one jot : whereat the Mandarme wasamazed, feeing him Dring dreatspeake resolutely of dying; a thing so much abhorred of the Chinois, even to speake of it: and sull. so he sent vs a moderate message, bidding vs to hide that Figure, that no bodie should see it, for

60 the report that went of it. The Eunuch gaue out many threatnings against vs, faying, that whether the King received the Present, or not , the least displeasure that hee would doe vs was, to thrust vs out of the Kingdome, as wicked fellowes, writing a Petition to the King against vs. Befiles this we remay ned thrust into an exceeding bad and naughty house in the greatest force

The force of Winter-

of the Winter, alwaies with many Souldiers within and without doores, the gates being flux with hanging Lockes, without fuffering our Boy to goe forth to buy any thing, without two Souldiers to goe with him. In which kinde of living (though still with some remission of the This was till the beginning rigour that we were kept in at the first) wee continued about two moneths and an halfe without any kinde of comfort or rest at any time of the day to say Masse.

At the end of which time, the Eunuch returned to the same place. Wee verily thought that our comming out of that place should not be such as it was, at the least we thought we should be thrust into a perpetuall Trunke or Prison, or in some worse place, as the same went, and the good will which the Eunuch shewed vs.

ð. I I.

The King fends for shem, is delighted with sheir Clockes and Pictures; they are flus up, after take a house, are admired for learning; Christianiste of China.

#ARCAS the cause of our trouble was the Kings not dispatching of our businesse, and our conceiuing that hee misliked of our comming, to all was ended by his remembring by chance to aske where the strangers were, which certaine moneths past they had told 18 him had brought him certaine Images, and certaine small Bells which strike of themselues ( for so they call Clocks) and wherefore they brought him not those things, and that they fends for them should fetch them quickly; and he game the charge of dispatching our businesse to a great Man-

Wee were lodged all the way in the Palaces of the Mandarins very honourably. Hauing travel-

led four dayes, we came to the walls of Paquin, and they lodged vs in an house without the walls. And because the King had referred the businesse to the Mandarin, which I spoke of the

Ennuch feared that hee should lose the thankes, which he thought to receive of the King for that

present, if another Mandarm should meddle with it. That day hee caused all things to be made

readie of the Petition and remembrance, which therewithall he was to give vnto the King, and

earely in the morning with other things and much Siluer of the revenues which he prefented,

being all guarded with many Horse-men and Foot-men, hee carryed it to the Kings Palaces.

received the fame: and when hee had feene all those strange things, the like whereof, or of so qo great excellencie, he had neuer seene before; they say that he rejoyced greatly, considering and

Who having the memoriall delivered vnto him, commanded his men to receive all things. They

viewing all things a very long while, with great shew of admiration, especially of the Pictures

and Clockes. Hee commanded them to bring vs to his Palaces, and to enquire of vs what kinde

of thing those Clockes were, and what thing was needfull, for to have them to goe well. Wee

anfivered to the point. And from the place where we were on horsebacke, by poite on two Hor-

fes which we mounted, and with the like speed we came to the Court. At the same of our com-

ming, and for to seevs an infinite multitude of people assembled, (because Strangers are no

ordinarie thing in China:) and when wee came to the Court, those which had the charge of

vs, were enforced to make roome with staues. When we were come to a cercayne place, a

vs what the King commanded him, and to fee how wee did handle those Clockes : They

faw how we yied them; but wee answered to the question, that it was needfull to ap-

great Eunuch accompanied with aboue two hundred small ones, came downe to demand of 10

darin of Paquin, to whom it belongeth to deale with Strangers.

These newes were brought to the Eunuch and vs, who for the executing of the Kings commandement (whose Letter they obey without reply) fent vs word that wee must goe to Pagum, because the King sent for vs, and sent vs eft-soones all the Pieces which hee had in his possession and the most part of those things which he had taken from vs, that wee our selves should put them in order, that they should receive no hurt by the way, and gave vs many men to carrie all

Their journey our stuffe on their shoulders, and Horses for all our companie, and a Mandarin to accompanie vs.

Pagnin, in 4.

The present is the King.

Clockes and Pictures admi.

They are fent. for to the Court,

Eunuches are taught to vie the Clockes,

The Pictures.

point some bodie of good capacitie to learne, which in two or three dayes would learne how When they had returned the answer, the King appointed foure Eunoches of his principall Mathematicians, to learne it, and command them to receive vs in the meane while in his house with n his owne Palace. They received vs with much respect and good ente taymment. A great multitude of Eunuches came to see vs, and euery one to enquire what came in his minde. But the King, which all those dayes was occupied in rejoycing for those new things, commanded the Images to bee placed in a principall Hall, whether, as the Eusuches told vs, the chiefe Queene 60 went to doe them reuerence : and they told vs of the King, that hee durft not keepe them neere him, being afrayd, because they seemed vinto him to bee alive. Often times he fent Eunuches vnto vs, to enquire divers things concerning our Countrey, whether it had any king, what manner of Apparell he wore, and what kinde of Hat? (for in China they make great difference of

CHAP. 6. S. 2. Pictures, Chinois ill Picturers, Kings closenesse, Ichintes request. 357

the apparell of the King, from the foot to the head, and of other men) and if wee had any Pichure of him that we should shew it. We had a picture wherein was the Pope with his triple Crowne, and the Emperour, and the King with their Enfignes, kneeling before the name of God, and we gave them it for a show, declaring that those were three kinds of Kings, and that all of them did worthip the true God, which made Heaven and Earth, whose Image we had giuen him. They carryed it vnto him, and because it seemed to bee small, he commanded them to otkings. draw another greater, in colours by it.

Afterward hee fent another to demand questions of the things of our Countrey, particularly

of the Kings Houses. Wee had a Map of the Escural, newly cut in Copper, and a picture of the The Escural 10 Place of Saint Marke in Venice, both which wee gave them. Though we suspect that they delivered but the fecond, faying, that they durft not give the other, because firaight in hafte hee Saint Market. would command them to paint them great, and there was none that durst take it vpon him, though wee know not whither they deliuered it afterward. Hee willed them further to enquire; after what manner wee buryed our Kings : because in the matter of Burials and Sepul- Sepulchers. chers, the Chinois are great South-layers, and put a great part of their felicitie in a good manner and place of their Burials. At that time wee receined a Map of the Death of his Majestie, (who Death of King liueth with God in glorie) and of the manner of his Funerall, and so we answered him, as it was Philip thes. in the Map, to wit, that they made him a Coffin within of Lead (which continueth long) and without of excellent Wood, and put these coffins in a Sepulcher of itone, and for this purpose,

20 there was a Church builded of purpose. They enquired many things of vs of this kinde these few dayes, where vnto wee answered, advancing the things that belonged to the service of our Lord God, as much as we might, and concerned our Europe, as farre as the truth would permit vs, because that we deemed it to bee convenient for the service of our Lord. They told the King fo many things, that it feemed hee greatly defired to feevs : But on the other part, he thought The King ne. it would bee too great a courtesse, and much beyond his custome, who never suffereth himselfe to ver suffereth be seene of his owne people, but of his Eunuchs, and Wines that serue him, and somtime very sel- himselfe to be dome of some one of the greatest Mandarins: yet, though he would not suffer himselfe altogether common peoto bee ouercome of this temptation, yet he suffered himselfe in part, and hee sent to take our Pi- ple. Starters: which two Painters did, each of them by themselues as well as they could. Yet in truth

Bad Pictures

30 I neither knew my felfe nor my companion in that picture, but as it was they carryed it away. diswers. It was not after such figure and manner, as your Worship hath knowne mee, but with a Beard an handfull long, and a garment of a Learned honourable Chineis, though downe to the foote, and very modeit: but from the head to the footfarre differing from our fashion.

After the Eunuches had beene instructed three dayes, the King in haste fent for the Clockes, Eunuches prewhich they carryed, and fet in order before him ; whereat hee tooke fuch pleafure, that he in-ferred, creased their Dignitie, aduancing those foure which had learned this skill, to a greater place of their Order. The King asked them many questions of vs, what wee did eate, and how much, and many other trifles. Whereunto the Eunuches answered (as they told vs afterward) as wee

40 They gaue vs all the welcomes of humanitie which the King did shew vs, appointing vs all Infaites offered to bee Mandarins (which is the reward and felicitie of the Chinois) which wee alwayes refus to be Manda fed, faying, that we came not for that purpose, but onely to dilate the Law of God, neither riss. could wee take that office vpon vs: But we were so neere to bee made Mandarins, that they told vs the King would bestow Dignitie vpon vs, that wee were enforced to beseech the Eunuches, that when occasion was offered, that his Majestie did aske them any thing, they would tell him plainely that we fought no kinde of Dignitie, nor could become Mandarins: who told him fo much , whereby our Lord God delinered vs out of much trouble, which wee should have endured in refusing the same, if the King had bestowed it vpon vs. Wee continued in these demands, questions and answers, goings and commings to the Kings Court: for now we had lived a whole 50 monethabroad: in which time euery day I at least was there, when wee could not goe both,

because Father Manhow Riccio was occupied with other Ghests and visitations. They enquired and asked vs, what we would demand of the King . Wee told them, that we fought no A Monethprofit at all; but if the King would give vs under his hand, some certayne place and a House to dwell in, we would bee very glad; because wee had none other intent, but to stay in some certayne place, and to feeke to dilate the Law of God. For though it bee true, that our purpose did ftretch it selfe further (as I have sayd in the beginnning) yet wee found things in so different a disposition from that which we imagined, that it seemed an exceeding great errour, to make any motion to giue an entrance for more companie and Fathers : for it was certayne that we

should doe no good, nor should finde any, which by any meanes durst presume to moone it to the 60 King, and affuredly should lose all that we had done, and at last should cast our selues wholly out of the Kingdome : and therefore it was not convenient that we should bee knowne, that we had any companions. And many of our friends gaue vs counfell, that wee should not seeme to feeke to dwell heere; for in that very point, they would have vs in inspition. Yet neuertheleffe, we went as farre as we could, and as we thought might bee brought to paffe, which

358

was, that we might have the Kings license, that no Mandarin might (if hee would) cast vs out. The Mandarin, to whom the King at the first had referred our builnesse, seeing the Eunuch had wholly medled in the same without him, being much offended therewith, did frowne alto-Mand:rin of. gether upon vs, and made a warrant out, to take vs wheretoeuer they found vs, vttering certaine grieuous words against vs, because that being Strangers, and remayning in the Court, wee preiented not our felues vnto him, to whom of right belonged all the bufineffe of Strangers. They were at the lodging where wee lay, and they that up our Boyes; for they neuer durit offer any discourtesse to Father Matthew Riccio, (which at that time was there.) At that time I was at the Kings Court, whither they fought to fend me word to fpeake with the Eunuches, and that they, if they could, should aduertife the King thereof, that they had apprehended vs. But they ja hindred with exceeding great care and diligence the going foorth of any bodie, and they flaved for me till I came home, (which came home thinking no harme at all ) and when I was come in they that the doore without. Wee rode the next day very honourably on Horsebacke to the audience of the Mandarin, and

They are thut

Manda ms Pc-

fignified vnto him, that in that we did not present our selues, was not our fault; hee vied vs w.ll, and honourably; but they put vs in an house with a Guard, where wee continued some three moneths, yet fo that certayne Mandarins came to fee vs. This Mandarin gaue the King 2 remembrance that hee held vs there : But that as our purpose was good to serve him with that prefent, it was reason to give vs some reward, setting downe that it would doe well to give vs the Ensience of the Mandarins, and to pay us for that which wee had given him Royally; but that it was fit to fend 10 vs away speedily into our Countrey, or to Canton (where vntill then wee had dwelt: ) for it seemed not well, that Strangers should dwell and that in the Kings Court, entring into the Palice of the King querie day, being a thing fo unufuall. And in very deed hee had reason : for to suffer vs to enter into the Palace, or to flay and lye there, they did vs fuch a faucur, that of long time the King of Chema hath neuer done to any Stranger. Wee feared some trouble by this Petition. But our Lord which had given vs this bitter morfell, afterwards made it fweet to vs againe, because the Kine made none account of it. And albeit divers times afterward, the faid Mandarin delivered foure Petitions concerning this point, hee made as small account of the last as of the first. And divers times the Euruches told vs, that the Kings meaning was of all likelihood, that wee should slay heere, For feare lest wee should returne into our Countres, to give newes and knowledge of his Kingdome; as they delt with a Turke, which hath beene heere aboue fortie yeeres. True it is, that hee answered as little, in performing nothing that was in the Petition : But wee tooke it for good fatisfaction, that hee did not yeeld to that, that we might not lofe the other thing, which was the principall.

When three moneths almost were spent, seeing the businesse would bee prolonged if wee attended the Kings answer, and being that vp we could doe nothing, nor negotiate any thing that we intended, nor deale in Gods matters, as we defired; wee fought to get out of this place, and They hyer an to get a license to take a House, and there to stay wayting till the King would give some order: and wee handled the matter fo well, by meanes of certaine Mandarins which favoured vs. and principally by the grace of our Lord, that wee obtained our whole defire : And we tooke an 40 house in the chiefe situation of this Citie : all that which they gaue vs at the Kings coft in that place, which was fufficient for our fustentation, after wee were gotten out they gaue vs the same allowance in like manner.

Visited by Mandarins.

China igno-

rance or the

Vic of Maps.

Many Mandarins of this Court, heard great fame of vs and of our things: and understanding that we were come out of that place, b. gan to come in great numbers and concourie with much honour and respect, courteste and presents to visite vs. and to enquire divers things which they defired to know. For the fame that went of vs, that wee knew all Countries, and the things and customes of the World, and the materiall and spirituall things of Heauen, was great ; and therefore every one came to enquire that which hee defired. And though our knowledge be but little, in comparison of the knowledge which is in our Countrey : yet being compared with 50 theirs of China, which knoweth nothing of the world, faue their owne Kingdome, which by a common name thy call, The World : of God, and of the things of Heaven nothing, and of other things little, it was fomewhat, and was fufficient to fend them home amazed, and alwayes with

III Colmogra-

They faw a very faire and great Map of the world which wee brought with vs, and we showed them how bigge the world was, which they thought to bee fo little, that they imagined that there was not to much more in all the same, as their Kingdome : And they looked one vpon another, and fayd, wee are not fogreat as we imagined, feeing heere they flew vs. that our Kingdome, compared with the world, is like a grayne of Rice, in comparison of a great heape. They also thought, that there was no other Writing, nor no other Bookes in the world but theirs: and when they faw ours, which at the leaft they faw in outward appearance, to bee much better then their owne, they were aftonied, and put out of their errour, doing vs alwayes more and more honour : and chiefly they were aftonied, when wee shewed vnto them certayne things in Mathematicks the Mathematickes which theyknew not, gitting Clockes to certayne perfons, which for this

end we made of purpose ; and by these, and other moanes, and principally by discourfing with them of Morall vertues, (whereof they write, speake; and have many Bookes) and of Gods mat- Ethikes ters, there ranne fo great a fame, that the greateft Mandarine of all this Kingdome furbich are the greatest persons nevt she King) sought to converse with vs, and to treke our friendship; and to many fent vs preliuta, and others came to visite vs. with great numbers of people : others with much courtefie insured vs to their houles : fo that in foure moneths space, were had gotten Foure months the greatest Mandarine of Pegnin to be our friends, and readie to favour vs in all things a And he which at this time particularly doth favour and honour vs, is the Profident of that Audience. which hath the charge of vs, and at the first approound vs : fo that wer remayne Inhabitors of this Citie; with all libertie that wee can defire, to deale with all fuch as are willing to heare the things that belong to our boly Law, and their faluation. And by this good fuccesse, our Lord hath made ye forget all that is past. And though it bee true, that hisherto wee have gotten no dispatch, nor resolution of the King, yet wer content our solues in that her letterth wafter heere, although hencuer grant vs more. For albeit by this our Journey, we have not obtayined all that wee delived, yet we hope that this our firme abode heere, shall tend greatly to the feruice of our Lord, and the good of this Miffion.

They bee commonly of good vinder franchings, so that easily they fell into reason, and are caps. Hopes of ble : they have not in the government of this Kingdome, any thing that forbiddeth eliem to fol- Christianite. low what Law they lift, nor any Law nor Obligation, which is contrarie to ser holy Law,

20 They have none which effectually and with authorate doth exhort them vito other Lawes, and with-draw them from the truth. For the Bones (which are dedicated for this purpose to Idols) The balenesse are in the common conceit of all men, the most base, contemptible, and worst people in all Chi. of the Benji. me, whole least care is, to exhort them to any thing more then to give them fomewhat and thus they doe not onely not exhort them to follow adole; but also with their bad manner of liuing, per wade them (as wee have often heard of men of good sudgement) that it is not good to ferne them, fince their Ministers bee such. And so in this matter of worldipping of Hols, though there be many that worthip them, and have many of them, and we their Ministers for their Funerals, and other things, yet with very small affection, and denotion thereunto, we eafily make them fay that they are naught, and that it is mot fit to worthip them.

30 Yet, though these things and others which I comise doe helpe them with ease to follow the Law of Go., the counterpois is great, and commonly it weighest downe the ballance on that fide. For first because the matter of Strangers is sendious in China; and the dealing with them fo fuspicious, one fort because they disdayne it, as the Princes, who albeit they now conceine better of vs. yet to learne or Strangers, and to receive a Law which is not of their owne meanes, they hardly perswade themselves : others for feare, as the base people.

The second difficultie, and perhaps the greatest, is a neural obtains, that all this Nation Indenotion hath of another life, and of immortalitie, and of faluation or condemnation of the Soule : and not onely an oblinion, har aifo an auerfion from all these things, wherein wee haue likewife

found them to differ from all other Nations. And it is a thing to be noted, that fince it is a thing 40 fo naturall to Man to reverence some God, either false or true, and to feare or love him, and to conceine or imagine what shall follow after this life : Those Chimose, (which on the other side are of fo good capacities in humane things, and fo wittle therein ) bee as though they were deprined thereof; for they are almost all \*lbeist, not knowing not worthipping neither false nor Almost \*lbeist\* true God, nor neuerthinking what shall follow after this lite: And those which a man would thinke are most bound hereunto, which are the Learned men, are they, which have least knowledge hereof : yea, rather one of the chiefest things that they commend, is, not to believe any thing that concerneth another life, Hell, nor Paradile, which they wholly place in this life. The Bookes of Phi-Bookes which they studie from their Child-hood, doe them much hurt, which are of certayne lolophers, a-Philosophers aboue two thousand yeeres old, whom they effectue little leffe, then if they svore boue 1000. their God, to whom earry yeers they offer Sacrifices: of whom they hold lo great an epission, yerresold, of that they thinks not that any thing more may be knowne, then They knew. And offerences Spirities of the whom they hold of great and spirities, strength of the whom they have the spirities of the short stated or whether were had not the Rooker in our Conservation. White the World Spirities of the short sp

they have asked vs, whether wer had not thefe Bookes in our Countrey ? What other Bookes might we have, that might compare with them ? And as these Philosophers, as Gentiles, spake nothing of the other life, but onely of good Gouernment, and Morall vertues, they thought they might attayne to farre, without beleeuing that there could bee another life. By reason hereof, and of the common vices which Paganifme draweth with it, which in this Countrey increase exceedingly, by reason of the fatnesse, abundance, and fruitfullnesse thereof, they feele great difficulties to vindergoe the yoke of Christ, (though it be fo (weet) fo contrarie to their appetite, which taketh from them the libertie which they have, in keeping as many Wines as they area-60 ble, and in a thousand other things.

These later yeeres in the relidencies of Canton, Nanquin, and heere in Paquin, were made some Some Christians true Christians, which ouercame all these difficulties, and goe on forward with great integritic, made there. constancie and servour. In the Province of Canton, in a residencie which wee have in Xancheo, a principall Citie, haue beene Baptifed within this two yeeres, about three hundred persons, which

according to the Letters which even now wee received, doe all continue with great example and according to the Letters within their new force of people, moused by the good example which they gue, doe-fauour them much : and especially, our Lord hath shewed many tokens of his fauour, in having theward great plagues vpon such men, as perfected them for becomming Christians. And about all, God hath frewed his ayde vpon the Women : who, befides the men, are very hard to bet wonne to receive our holy Law, which is, the great prinatenesse which they vie, be. nard to get wome to receme our noty naw, without is, one goes primary in the price of caule it is not lawfull to fee them, no not for their kinsfolker. But as I fay, herein the prace of our Lord God shewed it felfe very mightie, seeing it ourreame this difficultie, and so many of them were Baptifed, after they had beene very well Carechifed by the Fathers. On Sundays them were Daptines, aren tines man occur very men the Men, yet at leaft in this beginning, and Holy-dayes, because they cannot come to Mafe with the Men, yet at leaft in this beginning, the shey meete in places appointed for that purpole, and there they Pray; and reason; and interest of Divine matters. The men for the exhortations that they make vnto them; have tayer appoinnerrons are ted of themselines, and with their owne content, to conferre and repeats that which they have

Some relations of Gonucruons are

herreforbre. Item or togrammen, and with their whose committed to the content and repeate that which sping home they repeate to their Wines and Daughtees.

Eurry day some bee Connected in Nangains : grane and learned men doe enter. Here in 72 gain while wee haus been heere, we have Baptied some, and some great Mandarini content. heare. If our Lord dee helpe them, and fled his bloud wpon thefe Chinois, (as fice high done in laper, and in other places) there will bee fetled one of the most famous and learned foundations of Christiannia, that is in all the world. For the greatnesse of this Kingdome, their Lawes and Gouernment conformable to reason, their being so studious as they are, and given to Learning, as and to know to much as they know of Morall vertues, and their good capacities gentle, docile, and ingenious, and the great peace and quietneffe which they enjoy, without having any bodie to trouble them with warre, promife much and give great hope, that the warrage which they have our other Nations fately discovered, in the gifts of Nature ( being affilted by the grace of God ) will helpe them in Gods matters.

Marke this

And Laffure your Worthip, that if the doore were opened to Preatisfreely and to Baptife, I fay not there the Fathers and Brethren of our Companie which might bee spared; but without ny amplification; at all, halferthe Religious men of all Europe, were needful to attend fo many Giries, Townes and places; and forminate numbers of people as there are : albeit when Christ. anitie is cauce begun indeed, chere is such abundance of grave people and of much estimation, that 10 many of them might bee made Priests Preachers; and Bilhops, without feeling any wanted thole of Europe since as now they bee Gentales, and their stope goeth no further then to this life, there be many very great Mandermaistibofe chiefe delight is to discourse of things conterming Vertue, and oftentimes they meete together as it were in Fraternities to treate thereof. And the grauer fort doe make Orations, and Conferences together, perswading one another, and delinering the meants to governe well, and to fellow vertue. And without doubt the more wee fee of this, and the more zeale in thele Chriftians, fo much the more our heart is readie to burft to see them so destitute, and to have so few meanes to obtayne accessarie remedie and helpe, entiquit o Abantementaria

The description of the Kingdome of China : of Catay and Musk, the diaftion inso Provinces, Coises and Townes described, Rivers, Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding.

Ow by thehelpe of our Lord I will fay somewhat that I remember, touching the Caflomes, Policie, and Gouernment of this Kingdome, but not in fuch order as were re- 50 quisite, because I haue no leasure, and therefore I will onely write as things come vnto my minde, though things bee not lincked well together, because I cannot first wite one Copie, and after ward dispose it in order, with such distinction as were needfull; retering

China foure Description. that (as I sayd in the beginning) vntill our Lord grant me a better opportunitie.

This great Kingdome of Chies, is almost foure square, as the Chiese themselnes describe the Jame : it runneth North and South from the Prounce of Canton, which is the most Southerly pare of it, beginning leventeene or eighteene degrees under the burnt Zone, unto fotrie two degrees, which is the most Northerty part of it; it contayned from Canton by water, aboue fixe hundred leagues; but in a right line it is four hundred and fiftie, on the Balt it confined with Corea, which isyneth with the same, and with Japon, and with the Ocean Sea, by which they 69 come from Pern, and Nucua Espana, to Manilla: On the West with certayne small Kingdomes, which lye betweene Bengala, the Lands of Mogor and Persian; On the South, with the Iles called Philippinas, and the Malucas, and others, and more South-westerly, it hath Sion, Pegu, and other Kingdomes. On the North part, it hath those people which in our Countries wee

CH AP.6. S.34 Errours of our Maps and Conceits of China.

commonly call Tarrars, with whom they have alwayes had Warre, and once they wanne all the Kingdome from the Chineis.

For the Readers better satufattion I have here presented him Hondius his Map of China, not to hew it, but the erroneous-conceits which all European Geographers have bad of it: A more complete Map of China I shall present after, as by comparison will appeare.

### HONDIVS bis Map of China.



This Kingdome standeth in an excellent climate and situation; for besides the things which it hath in it lelfe, it standeth very neere vnto India, and other Kingdomes, from whence com-50 meth with great facilitie that which it defireth and wanterh. And before I paile any further, because I have spoken of the situation and heigth of China, I will note for their takes which would bee glad to learne, and also it may serue to mend two notable errours, which our neweft Maps haue. The one is, That they make China a third partigger then it is, placing this new & Maps.

Citic of Pagnan in fifty decrees being in were deal but in the control of the cont Citie of Pagum in fifty degrees, being in very deed but in forty onely, as we saw, which twice Pagus in 40, tooke the height thereof with a very good Aftrolabe: And the limits and end of this King-degrees. dome, which are three dayes iourney or leffe diltant from this City of Paquin, are at the most but The Kingdom two degrees more: And so those great walls so famous in our Europe are in two and forty de- of china social grees; and this is the greatest height of the Kingdome of China.

The second errour is, that our Maps make a Kingdome aboue China, which they call Catago, grees Northwhereas indeed it is none other but this selfe same Kingdome of China: and the Citie of Cambala, which they put for the head thereof, is this Citie of Paquin wherein wee are. Wee finde they are all this here to be true very plainely by occation of certaine newes which lately were spred ouer one. duers parts by the way of Mogor, which gaue out many things, and great matters of Catego, Comballa and which feemed to be so peculiar and proper to this Kingdom: of China, teat they made visdoubt Paquen need

that it was not a fenerall Kingdome. After wee were come to this Citie of Paguin wee mee with two Cafilas or Carauans, one of Moores of certaine small Kingdomes bordering vpon China, another of Tarkes with their Turbanes of the Countries of Moger, and of the greet / mael Sophi, ( for with this very name they call him) and of other parts , which had knowledge by fame of Spaine, Italie, Venice, India, and Portugall.

Very Merchants.

lafper ftone a

great mer-

chandile

These Turkes and Moores are wont to come hither every five yeeres by Land, in the name of their King, to acknowledge and pay Tribute to the King of China: for which purpose they counterfeit certaine Letters, wherewith they eafily deceme the Chinois, which thinke and hold that all the Kings of the World doe acknowledge obedience vnto theirs. But the trueth is, that they come to vie their trafficke and merchandile, and therefore the Chineis admit them to willingly : howbeit many now doe know, that their paying of Tribute is a fayned thing : In It is to in Meg. which their trafficke they speed very well. For the King doth maintayne them very plentifully from the time that they come into his Kingdome, vntill their departure; and they took all their Chifts of them, whereof this yeere they brought a thouland. The King tooke of them at an easie price a great part of the merchandise which they brought, and afterward hee gave them rewards. The thing of greatest bulke of merchandise are a kinds of stones, which themfelues call laiper stones; which is white, yet somewhat duskish, so that it enclineth to grey (which seemeth to bee that lasper which so often times in the holy Scriptures is called Precious stone.) It commeth in pieces vnhewen, but whole like peeble stones; which stone for many ornaments the Chinese effeeme much; especially the King: and they buy enery pound 30 of the best at eightie Duckets: and of that which is worse, at fiftie or sixtie Duckets, whereby they gaine greatly. I have feene thefe stones of other colours in our Countrey, but not of this which the Chinois esteeme.

When these men come to this Citie of Paguin, they put them into a great house, which there is for this purpole; (wherein wee were two moneths) and fuffer them not to come forth, Wee asked these men certaine questions: and one was this of Catayo, enquiring of them, How they called this Kingdome of China in their Countrey ! They answered , Catago, and that in all the Countries of Mogor, Perfia, and other parts , it had none other name , and that they knew none other Kingdorne that was called fo. Wee asked them how they called this Citie of Paquing They faid Cambala, which, as I have faid, is that which our men fet downe for the 30 head Citie of Catayo. Whereby it appeareth, that there can no doubt bee made, but that wee are heere resident in the Countrey which must bee Catago, if there were no fault in the Maps; and wee know that there is no fuch Countrey, nor Cities, but a few contemptible Mores and Géntiles.

Wee vnderstood also of their \* Ciuet or Muske, whereof they brought some, which is, as Spantise Latin it 7 were the maw (or stomacke) of a Beast somewhat bigger then a Cat, which they kill to cut away this maw. They breed wilde in the field , and in a Countrey very neere to China, though not of this Kingdome. I had read when I departed out of Spaine, a Booke which is printed of the things of China, which writeth of this Ciuet, and of other things, which I haue seene with mine eyes: it reporteth many errours by halfe informations, which hee which 40 wrote it should have beene better informed in , although in many things hee tell the trueth. Rhubaib. See They brought also great store of very good Rhubarbe, which heere wee bought of them of the before inchese- choice, at ten Marauedis the pound : it is a wilde root like vnto Nauewes, whereof, they fay, thefields are full. These men say, That there is a Sea of sand ( which our Maps doe place in Arabia) neere vnto China, which divideth it from Mogor, and other Kingdomes: And this should seeme to bee the cause, why these Kings, which heare great same of this Kingdome, of the greatnesse thereof, and of the weakenesse of the people, doe not feeke to inuade the same, being not very farre off; because it would beevery difficult to passe ouer the same sandie Sea, with a great Armie.

Diminon.

The Chinois divide this Kingdome into thirteene Provinces, and two Courts, which are, as 50 it were, two Prouinces. Every one of them have their Metropolitane Citie; and every Citie her division of so many Townes. It is knowne very particularly by Chinish Bookes which are written of this argument, how many Cities, Townes, and places there are in all the Kingdome, how many houses every one hath, and commonly what numbers of people, what every Countrey seuerally yeeldeth, and how much Tribute it payeth to the King, and many other things: but I doe not set it downe here : because I could not get those Bookes these few dayes past, to take a view thereof: At some other time, God granting mee life, I will doe it more at large. Chinepopulous Onely I say in generall, that all the way which wee travelled, weemet with so many Cities, Townes, and Villages, that to beleeve their greatnesse, it was necessarie to see them. For your Worthip will hardly beleeve, that wee spent two or three houres in fayling still by the walls 60 of one Citie. After which there still followed many Townes and Villages, one within fight of another. And after this manner all this way continueth, even to Paguin. Yea, the Villages are very great, and full of recople, and of much trafficke. For though wee give them

this name (which among vs figuifieth some small matter) The Chross doe not distinguish

Chorographi-

them by great or small, and so their Villages are bigger then others which wee call Townes. All the Cities and Townes are very well enclosed with high walls. And because, as I faid. I deferre this vntill another time, I will only speake of Nanquin, whereof I had some sight.

This Citie standeth in two and thirtie degrees and an halfe, eight or ten leagues from the Walls, Sea, vnto which it hath a mouth, and a mightie River. It hath three walls of Bricke very high Nanquin in 37and faire, with very great and beautifull gates, which they shut vp very timely before night, degrees and and faire, with very great and occasional genes, was the habitation of the Kings of China; an halfe.

This Citie, of old time, two hundred yeeres paft, was the habitation of the Kings of China; an halfe, the could be a supplied and all many and the could be a supplied and all many and the could be a supplied and all many and the could be a supplied and the could b and so it continueth in very good condition: The streets are very broad, and all paued with very great square stones, or set with brickes. It hath exceeding long streets of two leagues, Streets long. and two leagues and an halfe, and in the middest of the Citie are the Kings Palaces, which are Palaces,

very great.

The Chinois declare the circuit of this Citie, that two Horsemen going in the morning both Circuit. out of the same gate, and one going on the one fide, and the other on the other, going all the day they meet at night in the gate opposite to that which they went out at. The very truth is, that it is at least eleuen or twelve leagues in circuit, and seemeth to have above two hundred thoufand housesof people. It seemed to all of vs that were there, that Nanquin and this Citie of 200000.houses Pagnin, each of them have as many people or more, then foure of the most famous and populous Cities of all our Europe, as Rome, Lijbon, and others of the greater fort. For whereas these two whereof I speake are in themselves so great Cities, not one nor two streets, but the grea-

20 ter part of the Citie enery day doth swarme with people,

There are about this Citie many others within one or two dayes journey, and very famous Hambes and for greatnesse and trafficke; among which there are two, one named Hancheo, the other Sucheo; Sucheo. and this is very great and like to Venice, whose streets are halfe water and halfe land. The Chinois call these Cities \* Paradise, to expresse the goodnesse, abundance, and cheapnesse of all Quintay, Cinithings that are in this Kingdome, and come from other places. And Sucheo is so full of people, Imcali, merchandise, and trafficke, that a Booke which is printed (wherein all things are set downe which the Prouinces and Cities pay to the King) faith, that this only payeth one yeere with Revenue, another in Siluer, Gold, Rice, and Silke, and other things, wherewith it doth greatly abound, twelue millions : so that there be whole Provinces that amount not to so much by a great deale: which though it seeme an incredible thing, yet they write it for a certaintie; and hee which knoweth what these Cities are, will beleeue it.

Yet for all this, thefe Ciries have no notable things, neither fumptuous Temples nor buil- Building not dings, which are wont to be those things which doe beautifie a Citie: for the houses are not beautifull beautifull outwardly; nor they vie no great Porches, as they doe in our Countrey. And he that hath feene the things of our Countrey, and is skilfull in architecture (hel facility and in the samples). hath seene the things of our Countrey, and is skilfull in architecture, shal find it here very little. For the houses are low, and without galleries, lofts, windowes, or fight into the firet; yet they haue faire yards, and are very neate within , and painted with divers colours, with that Charan, or liquid Gumme, whereof I made mention before. And that which I speake of Nauquen touching the abundance of people, trafficke, and manner of houses, is after the same manner in the 40 other Cities which we law. For the Chinois are fo like, and fo vniforme in all naturall and artificiall things, that he that hath feene one of the principall Cities, findeth no new thing to bee Vinformitie in

feene in the others. And albeit that other Cities are not comparable to these in bignesse, yet in multitude of people proportionally there is little difference,

This Kingdome is commonly very fertile of all things that are necessarie for the vse of man : Fertilitie. and a great cause of the fertilitie and abundance thereof proceedeth of the great number of exceeding great Rivers which it hath; which befides the profit that the Rivers yeeld by the fi. Commodious shing, and besides the profit in watering of the grounds, wherein they stand the Chinois in great Ruccis-Read, they are occasion of great trafficke and communication of one Province with another with great ease by water, which is an enriching to them that vie it, and of great plentie in Infooleagues

50 every Citie of all things that are in the Kingdome. From our departure from Magae, till with-butone day by in a little of Paquin, which is, as I said, fixe hundred leagues, wee travelled not part one day Ind. by Land (because wee would not fetch too great a compasse about by water) wee trauelled. This is more a great part of this way vnto Nanquin by the greatest Ruer that ever I saw in my life red by siring which in some parts is about three leagues broad, and vary deeper, which the Chinois, for the amore exact a more exact a more exact. greatnesse thereof doe call, The little Sea; and that with good reason. For though it were and mature an hundred leagues from the Sea where I entred into it; yet there is great abundance of fish observer of all of those kindes which breed in the Sea; as Porposes, fishes with sharpe beakes, and others things for 8.5.

I faw in this River peere the bankes thereof men fish with certaine Fowles as bigge as small perhaps 201.10 60 Geeft, like vnto Rauens, with a long beake, and bending downeward like a crooked hooke, mentioned by which the Chinese teach to fish: They have a very long necke, which they binde in such fort P. so. that the fifthes cannot goe downe into their fromacke, but they fill their throat with them, if I ding with a they be small fillies, and when they come out of the water, they make them call tilem out; sinde or Ra and if the fifth beggreat, hee fighteeth with him and bestech him with both make the machine about the time of Common or Co and if the fifth bee great, hee fighteeth with him, and heateth him with pecking affaulting him more to

and they fay they take bigger. And because this fishing is so gainfull and so certaine, they pay Muddy River.

a certaine Tribute to the King for every one of these Rauens (or Cormorants.) Wee met with another River as great as this , which feemed to bee rather of mudde then water, because the water was alwaies mingled with earth, which whence it should come for fo many yeeres, I wot not. They cannot drinke the water without they clarifie it, which Alume vied in they doe with Alume. Besides these two Rivers all the rest is made by hand for vessels to passe

this fort wee faw this Fowle take Fishes sometimes of a pound, and a pound and halfe weight;

clarifying Shipping.

Ship-houses.

The Vettels which we faw in all the Cities which we passed, is one of the greatest things that belong to this Kingdome. For in every Citie there are two forts of there, one fort of vellets for burden, and another fort for houses. Some of them are very faire, and as fit to dwell in as houses themselues : and many of them also serue for houses for poore people, wherein they have their whole houshold, and bring up Hens and Hogs, and gayne their living in them. I remember that the same morning that wee entred into Nanquin there went 500. Vessels or more before our Barke, to enter at the fame houre, with their layles vp most pleasantly to behold; many of them being laden with divers things , all for the provision of that great Citie : and on this manner they continued all day long in going and comming.

Multitude of

Mandarines

Barges.

The Barges of the Mandarines (which are all made at the Kings coft) are the most costly, and are most for the fight, and very great. They would much rejoyce in our Europe to see them; be-The excellent cause it seemeth that there is nothing comparable to these in beauty. Most commonly these beauty of the haue Trumpets, and Drummes, which they play vpon when they paffe by the Citie, and when they meet with others, that all may give them place. They are commonly as long as Gallies, and as broad or more, but very high, to that to get vp into one of them is about a fathome high from the water, and therefore they carrie a great burthen.

Tributes in money and in kinde.

And because I spake before of those which carrie the Kings Tribute, I will here speake more particularly. Many Prouinces from whence they cannot carrie Rice and other like things with eale to Paquin; because they are farre off, pay their Tribute in Silver : but those Provinces from whence they may passe by water, pay a great part in Rice. For which occasion all the Cities have great and strong Vessels made of purpose for this service. And when the time of their departure is come, euery Cafila or Companie departeth from their Citie with a Mandarine that hath the charge of them.

10000. Veffels at Nanquin for Tribute of Vi-Cuals, and Tributes : and others many for workes. Path-way of

And they fay that those Vessels which goe from this part of Nauquin, in all amount to ten thousand, though they goe not all every yeere: yet they have alwaies more for veeres of greater plenty; and because many cannot returne in time, to goe backe agains the next years, 1000 for other I know not certainly how many they be; but this onely I know, that all this way from News quin to Paquin, seemed to be a path-way of these Vessels, whereby wee passed : for they went all along, and because they went so deeply loden, oftentimes they wanted water. To helpe this want of water (for because it is no natural River it never overfloweth) it hath floud-gates like Sluces, wherewith it keepeth in all the current three or foure or fixe hours: then opening Sluces or locks, the fame, many doe passe with great ease, and they may goe very well writill they come to such

Besides these Vessels of victuals, they carrie to the King every yeere many others, which bring him particular things, and dainties, whereof this Countrey of Nangain yeeldeth great flore, and also for the service of the Kings house. Some Cafilas or Caravans of these are of pieces of Silke for the Kings house, which may be some dozen of Vessels; others carrie many things to eate : and with one of these Canlas we passed. They were nine great and faire Vessels, which Silkes and per- carried pieces of Silke, and other things which they are wont to burne in the Sacrifices which they make wnto the dead, and before their Idols. They fay, that these Vessels for particu- 50 far things are a thousand : and as soone as they come within the Kings house, the Eunuches take the charge of them. From Nanquin vnto the middest of the Kings Palaces, Vessels may paffe by this River: to come to the place which they goe voto, they paffe thorow the middest of the Palaces. In all these Rivers, when they want winde, the Mariners draw the . Barkes with great facilitie, and fixe or feuen are fufficient eatily and merrily to draw one of the

7 fels for

Wee met likewise upon this way a very great number of Veffels which came from farre, hden with Brickes for the Kings workes, and greater flore this yeere to build a great piece of an house which fire from Heanen had burned : for this purpose they carried great store of timber for beames, and boords, and other leffer timber which are carried from the parts of Nanamin vn. 60 to Pagnin, some an hundred and two hundred paces long, and one log fastened spon another, so that thefe rafts grow high and great: they carrie upon them frames of dwelling houses ready made, wherewith there goeth an inferiour Mandarme, which hath the care of it, and iometimes the Marmers goe with all their houshold, and breed of Hogs, Hens and Duckes : for sometimes

they stay about a Summer in going to Paquin. These seuen or eight yeares this prouision of timber, Brickes, and lime, and other things hath continued.

The fertilitie of this Kingdome is great, of all things that feeme to be needfull for the vie of mans life, And if there bee any other Nation which liveth commodiously without needing trafficke with forraine Kingdomes, they are the Chinous, And though it bee true that some things come vnto them from forraine Countries, yet are they not the necessary things for the life, and which all men vie. The most that commeth out of forraine parts, and they defire, is Silver: Silveringres. And that which all men carrie from thence is very much, and very good merchandife: as Silke, refi request is Gold, Muske, Porcelanes, pieces of wrought Silke, raw Silke, cloth of Cotton wooll, all kinde Chine.

to of worke in Copper, Iron, and Latten, Quickfiluer, Sugar, Honey, Waxe, Cinnamon, workes The great flore made of fine wood, and gilded, as Bedifeads, Ink-horns, Cabinets, and an infinite number of other of metchan. things, whereof there is so great abundance, that although they send out many ships laden for distinctions. Lapon, India, Manila, and other parts : yet without doubt they might prouide ten times more: and if more would come to buy, they would alwaies have the more to fell. All things are very Cheipnesse. cheape, without all comparison cheaper then in our Countrey. A pound of Sugar is worth eight or ten Marauedis, and sometimes fixe: and if they buy any quantitie at once, an hundred pounds weight are worth nine or ten Rials of Plate: And here at the Court (where all things are dearest ) a pound is worth twenty, or foure and twenty Marauedis. There is great store of Waxe and that very good, which wee buy heere in Paquin for the feruice of our Altar, a pound for a 20 Riall and a Quartill: and the pounds here are greater then ours; for every one of them weigh fixteene Duckets of Siluer weight. Honey likewise is very good cheape. Of Copper and Latten there is exceeding great abundance: and Latten made and wrought into any worke that a man would have, with the fashion and all is worth a Riall and a Quartill the pound. Needles an hundred a quarto, and if they buy many together, better cheape. And I have fet downe for example their small things to know the particular price, and of other things (though they bee not so cheape) after the same proportion. Howbest those which come from forraine Countries Acaution for to trafficke with them, had need to be very heedfull: for the Chinois lose not opportunities to transe Merraise the price of them, when they may.

The abundance of things for food is likewife great, to wit, of Oxen, Weathers, Sheepe, Victual flore 20 Goats, and more then of all others of Hogs , because they are the common food that they line and sheape, of. Deere, Hares, which they catch with Hawkes, whereof here and in other parts there are many. And when they are dearest here, one of them is worth foure or fixe Quartos : they be as great as they bee in our Countrey, and they are found at all times. Hens, Geele, Duckes, and fundry forts of wilde Fowles, and all other fielh is exceeding good cheape. Wee came to a very great Citie, where Beefe, Mutton, Hennes, all was of one price a pound, which was foure Marauedis. And in Nanquin (though the Court be there) a pound of Hens flesh was fold for three halfpence, Fishes after the same manner, or better cheape, because it stands upon the Riuer. And I faw a Fish of ten pound weight fold for a Riall of Plate, and we bought great Trouts at Size pence. three Marauedis a pound weight. Egges ten, twelue, fixteene, eighteene for one Conduren, One halfpeny,

40 which in our Countrey is a penie halfpenie farthing. Fruits are of the like cheapnesse. In our iourney, which was when Abricockes beganne to bee ripe, which are here very good, they gaue vs two hundred for ten Marauedis. They are very much giuen to eate fresh Herbs and Sa- Herbs. lads, and Pulfe. At every banquet and good feast, there is alwaies Fleth or Fish. There are many Nuts , Chestnuts , Filberds , and Pine-nuts though but few , Figs , though not of our kinde, and yet as good or better, and many. And although they have all these things, yet enery Prouince and Countrey doth not yeeld them all : but that which one wanteth another supplyeth.

Their common food in stead of Bread is Rice solden only in water, whereof wee all did feed, although at the first wee had much adoe with it. Commonly they have every yeere two Har- Two and three 50 uefts, and in some places three. And the Land hath great Plaines with Rivers to water the Haruffin grounds: for the fields of Rice doe much defire to be coursed with water.

From our entrance into Canton vnto this Citie of Paquin, wee met with few Hills, and effer-Plaine Councially from Nanquin hither very few. Wee passed by a Plaine aboue an hundred leagues, farther trey, then wee could kenne. I faw likewise much Wheat, whereof they make rolls without leauen, Plaine of fodden in the reeke or vapour of feething water, and fo without cruft, good for old folkes that 100. kagues. want their teeth, Although that it bee true that the fruitfulnesse or this Countrey is very great, yet without doubt other things, faue Rice would not be fufficient, if the Chinois were as Spare feeding. great feeders as our people, and did not feed fo fparingly as they doe. They all eate commonly thrice a day; once, betimes in the morning; the second time, at two in the afternoone; the

third time, very moderatly at night. And besides, the rich Mandarines, few others which are of good abilitie, doe commonly eate either Flesh or Fish , but Pulse , Salads, and Herbs which cost Herb-eaters, almost nothing, and their chiefest food is Rice, or Millet, and hereof they fill their bellies.

They have many Horles, Mares, and Mules, whose fielh they eare, though I have not heard Horsersten report that the greater fort doe feed voon them. They have much Wine of divers forts; all Wines divers.

J. 1999. 11.C

**266** 

made of Rice: but herein they may not compare with the Wine of our Country : Whatforuer they drinke, be it Wine or Water they drinke it alwaies hot. They are neate in feeding, for they touch none of their meate with their hands, therefore they vie neither Table Napkins, nor Table-clothes. All their meat is ferued to the Table finely minced. They vie to feed with two fmall flickes of Juorie, Eborne Wood, or fuch like, wherewith they take vp all their metre verie hansomely. And herein, I confesse, they have a great advantage of vs because this manner of feeding is very commodious, and fuch as euerie man that hath triall thereof will much delight in teching is very commonitous, and the state in Lapon and Macao Vie it. Thirk adwars drinking Benefit of bot their drinke our Father and eating little fruit (for they are not for greedite of 3th as our men are) doth drinke, the state of the no Oliues, vet have they abundance of Oile. The best is of a kird of Herbe, which they call in Oile made of Spaine, Alegria, which fignifieth Ioy or Mirth. I fay not that it is as good as ours, but Nay, I find no fault in it, nor I doe not defire it, nor much leffe the Chinese, which can cate nor finell no kind of Oile, because the smell thereof pleaseth them not, as sometimes wee prooued by a little of ours' which we had : and they call their flinking Oile odoriferous, fo great a force there is in cuftome. As the Chinois are diverse in divers Provinces, fo are their Fruits; and those which grow in the Province of Canton, are not in all these colder Provinces. There are the best sweete O.

an herbe.

ranges which hitherto we have knowne, which are eaten with the skinne.

Their Moneyes, Apparell, Persons, Trades, Wealth, Learning, Marriages, Superstitions, Rites, and

bebought in

Timber planty

Here is in this Kingdome great flore of Timber; for proofe whereof wee need no more
but to fee the inhibititude of Barges laden there with 10 good cheape as it is. And therefor I thinke a man may build a flip with all things necessary thereunto, three parts of
four there is no the proof of the proof fore I thinke a man may build a thip with all things necessary thereunto, three parts of 10 foure better chespe then in our Countrey: They vie not Gold, though therebe much

to be bought; but all is Silver, which they doe not coyne in Money, but cast it in Barres, and when they would buy any thing, they cut it and weigh it in certayne fine Weights like the Remane Weights in our Countrey : and therefore every body that will boy or fell, carryeth one of thole Weights with them. Great store of Silver commeth out of forreine Countreyes. But the chiefe Maffe of it is out of the Mynes of the Kingdome it felfe, as also the Gold, When they buy or fell, they try the Siluer of how many Kiliates it is : and one is worth more, another leffe, according to the goodnesse thereof. It was very necessary for the Chinois to weigh and try their Silver, and not to coyne it into money : for otherwise there would have beene a thousand deceits, wherein the Chinois are very cunning. They vie Braffe Money, wherein also they try that to which is true or falle : for in all forts there is deceie and mixture. They have the best Porcelane that hitherto hath beene found, which is exceeding good cheape, and in fuch plentie, that befides all the Kingdome of China doth turnish it felfe thereof, they fend forth as many thips ladings as they will.

For their Apparell, though they have great abundance and cheapneffe, yet in goodneffe they may not compare with our Countrey. There is much Silke and that very good, but they know not how to dreffe it. They make good Damaskes, razed Veluets, Taffataes, and other forts : but the colours, though at the first tight they feeme reasonable, are quickly lost and fade away. The ordinary apparell of the common people is of blacke cloth made of Cotton, or of certayne shags of Silke, which are very great, farre greater then a flocke, which only serue for this pur- 10 pole, and are very warme. Persons of Honour weare commonly an outward Garment of Silke which they vie in Vititations, and other like Actions : And there are many which alwayes got abroad apparelled in Silke, but not in fuch great number as that Booke fetteth downe, whereof I made mention before. All men, even to the very Souldiers, weare their apparell long downe to the in-step of the foot, with very broad sleeues, open before, and fastened to the sides beneath the arme. They be so well contented and pleased with their manner of apparell, that they think there is none in the World comparable to theirs. And in very truth they bee graue and modelt, and especially those of the Mandarins, which differeth from all others, saving the Bonzi, which thaue their Beards and Heads. All the men and women let their Hayre grow long, and the men truste it vp, and wind it on a knot on the top of their crowne. They weare certayne Nets on 60 their heads like Coyffes, made very cunningly of Horfe-hayre : and in the Summer time many weare Caps and Hats of the fame. There are many forts of Caps or Hats (for I know not what their feuerall names are) according to the flate of euery one. The bafeth fort which the common people vie ordinarily is round. Their shooes, are of the same staffe that their Garments are

CHAP. 6.S.4. The Persons, Trades, Riches, Nobitie, Marriage, Heires.

of, very commonly of Silke made with many faire borders and knots. It is a discourse fie for a man to be seene (especially before any man of Worship) without a Cap on his head. They greatly effecte for the most part things of our Countrey, and they are very deare. And some pieces of Silke which the Portugall Merchants brings, especially Veluets of three Piles, are far more dearer then their owne. All woollen cloth is much efteemed and very deare, likewise Chamblers, and fine Linnen-cloth, which they bring from India are very deare. Looking-glaffes, and all things made of Glaffe, and many other things, which in our Countrey are very good cheape, are here deare, and in great estimation,

The Chineses hause commonly little Beards, small Eyes, and Noses, and all of them have black To Eyes, fo that they much maruelled at the colour of mine, which are " of Gray or Iron colour " Sarces lat. (which they neuer faw) and they find many secrets in them, and very commonly they say, that fortunize, these eyes of mine know where stones and precious things are, with a thousand other Mysteries, so that they thinke they haue Letters in them. To paint an euil-fanoured man, they paint him in short apparell, with a great Beard, Eyes, and Nole. They are commonly all white, yet not fo white as those of Europe: and therefore to them we feeme very white. The Learned men are very graue, of very good capacitie, and appeare outwardly very modest and graue.

There are Arificers of all Arts that are in our Countrey, and very many with the felfe-same Trades. manner forme of Instruments. Every man is free to follow what Trade he will, without being bound to follow his Fathers Trades, as divers times I have heard it spoken when I was in Europe : and those which will may fludy, fortake, or change that course of life. They worke very good cheape : but in cunning and excellencie ours most commonly excell them much, though in some

things they be very skilfull. The service of young men and maydes is easie and good cheape, because there is great store of people, so that a yeares wages is not aboue two Duckets, and meate and drinke, without appaa Seruants

rell. As there are many poore people that have many Sonnes and Daughters, it is a very ordin cheape. mary thing to fell them, and this the cheapeft thing in China. For a youth of twelve or fifteene dien vic, yeares without any naturall blemish will cost not past twelve or fifeeene Rials of Plate, and in time of Dearth much leffe, and it is a common thing to buy them for service; though they vie them well, and marry them at their time. 30 Although the abun lance and riches of this Kingdome be very great, as the people alfois: yet Nonevery

there is no body that is very rich, newther in any state of people may they compare in this point rich, with our Countriey. You shall not find in China, which is able to spend twenty thousand Duokets of Rent how neere of Kinne focuer he be to the King, and very few, and those case to be numbred that can fpend ten thousand Duckers, and the ordinary is no more which they possesses then that which their Lands and Offices yeeld them, which is not great. But though it bee true Yet astichas that thole of our Countrey pollelle much more Silvery confidering the cheapnelle of things in ours very tich their Countrey, all commeth to one account,

There are very few of the poore people idle, because all of them commonly cake pathes, and Fewide. earne their lining. Though the multitude of the Nation be so many, and the Kingdome so great, Surnames, 40 yet the furnames of all the Kingdome are not aboue three hundred, and all of one fyllable.

There are some, though very few, which may be called Knights, which for feruice-to the Knights. Kings in some necessities have given them Offices in succession : but the common vie is not to haue any Nobilitie by Descent in China; neyther can any man say, I am of a better House then Nobilitie on you. But the honour and Nobilitie dependeth wholly voon Learning, and to obtavne degrees ly in Learning. and Offices of Mandarins. And therefore an House which now is in Office, and his Father bee one, if he haue a Sonne a Doctor, which is made a Mandarin, he is honourable, and the honour No Lordbut continueth as long as the Learned men and Mandarins doe line. There is no man, neyther Kiniman nor not Kiniman of the King which hath ever a Village of his owne that payeth him Tribute : but all men pay it to the King; and hee giveth stipends and wages to the Mandarins, 50 fo that they receive nothing of particular men by right, though they extort much continually Extortion.

Commonly the Chinois doe marry from fifteene to eighteene and twentie yeares, and all of them doe marrie one Wife that is chiefe; and this is their lawfull Marriage. On the day of their Marriage, when the Bride doth passe to the House of her Husband, shee carriets openly before her through the freets all the things which she bringeth with her, and all her house-hold stuffe: But besides her they may marrie (I say they may keepe and doe keepe as many as they areable) as many Wines as they will, which for the most part they buy : and afterward when they will, fell them away againe. They may not only not marrie with any Kinswomen of their Wines, but with none of that furname, though they have no shew of Alliance. The sonnes of the Concu-

with none or that turns ne, though they have no new or annunce. The read honour, to be the Inheritence:

60 bines doe likewife inherit, and there is little or no difference in their flace and honour, to be the Inheritence. Sonne of the lawfull Wife or of the other, neyther make they any question of it. The thing wherein the Chinais are most observant, Ceremonious and Superstitious is in their Funerals and

Burials, Funerals, and Mournings: for herein they shew their obedience and loue to their Pa-mournings. rents, whereof their bookes are full. It is a very ordinary thing to have great respect to their Fa-

ther and Mother, and the disobedient are grieuously punished. Many graue men and Manda. rins begge leaue of the King to leave their Offices which they have, and to goehome to keepe their Father and Mother company, yeelding for a reason that they be old, and that they would goe to serue them. And it is a Petition in the fight of all men fo suft, that they grant it very ve fually. When the Father or the Mother dieth, all the Sonnes and Daughters (from the King to white Linners, the meanest Peasant) doe mourne for three yeares. The mourning colour, which among vsis blacke Bayes, among them is white Linnen, whereof they make all their apparell euen to the Cap. The first monethes they weare a very rough Sack-cloth, girded with a Coard, like the bare-footed Friers. And though he be neuer fo great a Mandorn, withoutany exception (fane only the Mandarins of the Warre) affoone as hee heareth newes of the death of any of his Parents, he is to leaue his Office and Dignitie, and all other Employment what foeuer of Gouernment and Examinations of obtayning his degree, and is to goe home for three yeares to burie his Father or Mother (and to mourne and bewaile them. The graue men which haue an house for this purpose, doe not strait way burie their dead, but keepe them two or three yeares in the house, in a Chamber which they keepe for this Office, and it is not the worst in the house; and very viually or enery day they go thither to make them a thouland Ceremonies and Renerences. and to burne Incense, and other sweet sauours, and to set ouer the place where they be laid, meate to eate; and at squerall times, many of those Bonzo doe meet , and with great Ceremonies begin

their Seruice and Prayers, and their Sonnes, Kinsefolkes and Wines make lamentation. The Mandanus do not only leave their Offices, and change their Weeds, but also all the things which 20 they did vie. Many fit not in Chaires, but vpon low Stooles : they vifit, or fuffer themselves to bescene very seldome: they change even the very Paper wherein they write, wherein they haue a piece of another colour, in token of mourning : when they name themselues in their Letters, they vie not the name which they did at other times, but others proper to the partie, as when he nameth himfelte, hee calleth himfelfe difobedient, fignifying, that by his difobedience to his Parents he did not preferue them aliue. They wie no kind of Mulikce, and many change their ordinarie Diet into courierfood, V pon

the Funerall day they prouide great company : many Kinsfolkes and Friends meete together all clad in white, with many Bonzs, (according to every mans abilitie) which fing with dolefull Infiruments. And by their apparell which they weare, and their time in finging, hee that knew 10 them not, would take them for Clerkes reuested, singing plaine Song; for they much resemble Funerall Fithem. They make many Beeres with men, of Paper or of white Silke, many Banners and other Ensignes. The place whither the Corps goeth is adorned with many figures: the Corps is put into a very great Coffin. This Nation holdeth a great part of their felicitie, for them and their Succeffours to confift in these things of their Funerals, especially in two, the Coffin or Chiff wherein the Corps is to be layed, and the place of their buriall. The stuffe to make the Coffin of, wherein themselues are to bee buried, and the making of the Coffin, they leave not to others to doe after their deathes, neither then may the body looke for much coft to make one of these Coffins, neither in this (as a thing of great importance) will they trust, no not their owne Sons:

Coffin,

but they themselues at leisure seeke some kind of Wood that is least corruptible, and Plankes 40 which are commonly foure, fixe, or eight fingers thicke ; which because they bee so thicke, and the Chifts or Coffins very closely thut they can keepe their Corps in their Houses without any euill smell. Some spend in making their Coffin seventy, eighty, and an hundred Duckets. They hold it for a felicity to be able to get one of these that is good; on the contrary for a great disgrace, not to have a Coffin to burie himfelfe in , and they are very few which faile in that one

The Sepulchre and place thereof is the thing for chooling whereof they vie great Sorcerie or casting of Lots, and doe it with great heedfulnesse, and with the helpe of some that are skilfull in this Art. For they hold opinion, that in making a good choice of the place dependeth a great part of their owne good fortune and of their Posteritie. And oftentimes they are a yeare in re- 50 foling whether it shall looke toward the North, or to any other part. And therefore the greatest and most contentious Sutes which are in China, are about places of Burials. These places of Burials are alwayes without the wals in the fields, or Mountaynes wherein they build Vaults very well made and strong of Bricke, stone, or other matter, wherein they lay the Coffin, and then close it vp very furely : And afterward now and then they come thither to performe certain Ceremonies, & to bring things to eat. They hold it very valuckie to burie a dead man in the Citie: and if they know it, though he were the greatest man that is in China, they will not sufhim to bewaile his dead Friends much , especially those which are women. There are many which beleeve the passing of the soules from one bodie into another; and therefore after the death of their Father and Mother, they will neuer kill any liung beaft, yeelding for a reason 60 why they will not doe fo , left fome of them should be their Mother or Father, or some other other person. And likewise many of them fast, because, that whereas some of them bee poore; they delire afterward to be borne againe in a rich and honourable Family.

Metempluchi-

Valuckie to

burie in the

Citie.

Although it bee true that the most part of them believe not in Idols, and it offendeth them

not to speake euill of them, yet commonly all of them at a certaine time of the yeare doe them fome reuerence, because it is the custome, though in no fort they worthip them as Gods: and those Idolarie, which put most confidence in them, burne Paper, Incense, and sweet smels vito them, and kill beaits before them. Their Bookes of these Idols speake of Hell, and in many places, or in a manner in all the Cities there is fet vp a portraiture of Hell made with bodily thapes, and many Deuils, as vglie as wee paint them. It is very well fet foorth, but badly beleeued : for it serueth only there for a bugbeare. And if any believe that which the Idols fay of Hell, that it is a place Of Hell. of torments, they fay, that after fo many yeeres be paffed, all men come out againe, and are tranf-Seein Pinte. of comments, tary 1233 target and the state of the state 10 what things shall come to passe : howbeit I have not heard in all China, that there was any an-

fwer of a Diuell in an Idoll, as is in other parts, in regard of the small beliefe that they have in them, and the lewdnesse of the Bonzi that ferue them. Their houses wherein they set them, Wicked Bonzi. whereof as yet I neuer faw any good one, are commonly verie filthy and stinking. And befides this confulting of Idols, the Chinois are much given to Divinations to know things Diviners and to come, and whether they shall have good or bad fortune; whether they shall have that which distinations.

they defire or no : and there becan infinite number of these South-sayers, and all of them pratlers, mumblers, and coofeners, whereby they deceine many. And though the Chinois be of good understanding, and know that these fellowes know nothing, and every foot doe take them in lyes : yet for all this, there are verie few that when any occasion is offered, doe not confult with 20 them. And though they feeme to bee but few, yet some of them are in league with the Deuill,

as oftentimes wee gather by certaine things.

Many of these grave men of China, have commonly two follies, wherein they doe erre more then in other things. The first is, that they perswade themselves that they can much prolong Studies to prether Lines; and for this purpose they vie a thousand inventions, and take many medicines, which long life. indeed rather doe shorten their dayes. There are many Masters and Bookes of this follie, which viuallie are graue and rich men. There are many that make themselues very old folks, whom the people follow like Saints to learne some rule of life of them, wherein they put all their felicitie. Many doe not beleene that we are so old, as we say we be, and that we doe diffemble : but that in deed we bee an hundred yeeres old, and that we know this rule to live for ever, and that we doe not Marrie because wee would line long. The other follie is, that they perswade themselves that they are able, and goe about to make Silver, whereof likewife there are many Bookes. They vie Bookes of Ale for this purpose many Hearbs, and Quick-filuer, wherein they spend that little Siluer which chimie, they have, and remaine beggers, but not perswaded but that it is feeible, but that it was not their good lucke, and good fortune : and to obtains this, many of them fast many yeeres.

Their bad Souldierie and Artillerie; Degrees, Priviledges, Honours and promotions of Learning. Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing. The Mandarins commended.

Here are many Souldiers in many Provinces of this Kingdome: and though they have Souldiers me had Peace these many yeeres, yet they still entertaine them: but because they bee lo-ny and sew. uers of peace and quietnesse, the most contemptible state, except the state of the Bonzs, is the Souldier. And indeed it is a most base people, which hath no valour nor

worthinesse, much lesse any fortitude in them. Many of them are Porters, which beare on their shoulders, the Chaires wherein the Mandarins and honourable persons are carried. And at the 50 time of Musters, which are made from time to time, they repaire thither, to obtaine wages, and thus they have no worth, nor jot of honour in them. The punishment wherewith their Captaines punish them, is the same wherewith they punish all other people : they whip them Basenesse. as wee doe Children in Schooles. According to the worthinesse and valour of the Souldiers, the Armont and beautie of their Armour, offensiue and defensiue is answerable, which is sitter to bee laughed at, Armesthen to be reported. They have no Harquebusses that are worth any thing; and all those which The burses of I faw (and I faw many Souldiers with them) had their barrels but a pannel ong : fo that it fee but a span long but a span long meth that they beare it and the rest of their Armour for fashions take. And I maruell not : for

fion to become valiant: but they are able men when occasion serueth, and it seemeth they will bad Souldies, 6c eafilie become val:ant. The Mondarms of Souldiers, is also a thing of small estimation, and they are nothing compare those from rable with those which they call the Mandarus of Learning, which are those, which take De-the control grees. The Mandarins or Captaines of Souldiers, obtaine not the same for Heroicall arts or proweffe, but they make a Discourse or an Oration, y pon some matter concerning warre, and they

by reason of the exceeding great Peace which they have so long enjoyed, they have none occa-. The carfesof

things with shadowes, and know not how to paint in Oile : yet in the second they are verie

into friendship with any. Also they make much account of Paintings, and playing upon Instru-Painting and

ments. And albeit they know but little in the first, because they have no Art, nor paint the Musicke.

make choise of certaine of those which had done it best. Likewise they shoote two or three Arrowes, to fee if they bee skilfull in shooting. They have no yfe of great Ordnance. Albeit I faw livarie.
No Ordance in the Gates of some Cities, certaine small short Pieces, as broad at the mouth as at the nether end, which I know not whether they shot off sometimes or no : I saw about fixe or eight of them woon the Walls. The defence of their Walls is their height, without any other Artilletie. The greatest force and number of Souldiers, resideth in the confines of the Tartars.

Tartarian conquest.

Mahomesans.

No weapons

in houfes.

Feare of Tar-

Not bloudie.

Studious.

Many Chara. Monofyllable

grees which is

Trigantius, and from it. therefore here omitted. Glory of Do-

Most can write with one of theirs, containeth much more : for our letter is lesser then theirs. Though in China it 60 and reade. Postrie-

be harder to learne to reade and write, then in our Country, yet there be few but know ordinarie Letters to deale betweene man and man. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the graver fort give themselves much wnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to fend vs fome Poefie in praife of vs, when wee enter

finely lay it ouer, whereby the Letters remaine white, because they bee deeper, and the rest remaineth blacke. I fend you with this Letter certaine papers thereof, that your Worship may

reioyce in beholding the excellencie wherewith it is done. One of our Bookes of equall volume

It is foure hundred yeeres fince a King of the Tartars wonne all China, (whereof Paulus Ve-\_netus writeth, which was in that Countrey) and they did also possesse it two hundred yeers: at the end whereof, a Bonzo a very prudent and valiant man rebelled, and cast the Tartar out, and at the end whereor, a Done a very procure and a sale. They alwayes keepe great Watch and procured King, whole issue continueth writin this day. They alwayes keepe great Watch and which was a sale of the continued of the continu ward vpon this frontier. Many youthes of these Tartars remayned in China, and namely in these parts of Paquin, there are many which keepe and maintagne their Law of Mahomet, and haue Mezquitas or Turkish Temples, and are much different in shapes and countenances from the Chinais. Except the Souldiers, there is none that keepe Weapons in their houses: not became it is forbidden, but because there is no need of them : but rather the Learned and grane people, count it a dishonest thing to keepe Armour : there is no vie of them but in the time of warre. For you shall neuer see them fight with weapons one with another as wee doe. But their fighting is to buffer one another, to pull them by the hayre of the head, and to draw them by the coller, and in two words to become friends againe. Our men make no great matter of giuing buffets and fuch like, for they kill one another.

The Chinois are greatly given to Learning and studie; for all their honour and riches depen. 24 deth thereupon. They have aboue fortie thousand fundry Letters : though many of them bee made one of another. They have no A, B, C, nor any thing like thereunto, as among vs. But to fignific cuerie thing they have one Letter, and all diverse. Their words are of one fyllable, and no more, though their Letters bee so many. Those which are commonly vied every day, are eight or ten thousand. They begin to learne to write and reade commonly, when they be seuen years old : they write with Penfils. They have many little Bookes which encourage Children to flu-Penfil-writing. die, exhorting them to take paines, with the reward that they shall grow to bee Mandarius. They know not, nor studie any Science, neither Mathematickes, nor Philosophie, nor any Rhetorike fole such thing, but onely Rhetoricke: for all the substance of their knowledge and fame of Learned men, consistes h in nothing else, but to know how to make a very elegant Discourse and Oration 19 vpon a theame, like as in our Europe the Oratours vied anciently. And as the Chinose have good wits, and by hope of reward are verie appliable hereunto, they doe it with great excellenmore exact in cie, and occupie themselues with nothing elfe, and haue no other knowledge to distract them

Euery Doctor (after hee hath obtained his degree) fetteth vp in his Countrey before the

doores of his House a Title of verie great letters, which faith : Thu is the House of a Dollar: which all men haue in regard. And before the doore, they fet vp many high Poles like mafts, which euerie Mandarm of that Citie where hee dwelleth fendeth him, with a Banner hanged vp, and alwaies they remaine there. They make a verie excellent Arch triumphall, to him that hath the first degree, at the gate of his House. The Chinois effeeme more then we doe, the skill to bee able to write well, and Print euerie yeere a great number of Bookes, whereof there is no forceofbookes examination nor choise, and euerie man Printeth what hee list, good or bad, and so they make booke of nothing. The best which come foorth are of no Science: for as I have said, they know none: but they are onely of Morall fentences, to the advancement of good Customes and Gouernment. Their manner of Printing is not like ours : for they joyne not their Letters, but for euerie leafe they make a table which hath letters on both fides, it would feeme to bee very hard, EssePrinting, but with the custome which they have gotten, they doe it with great ease, speed and cheapenesse. I will send you some Booke well printed, that your Worship may see it. They also print Letters in white, I fay white letters, and the ground blacke. And though in the former they so come not neare vs, yet in this they goe far beyond vs. They vsually print these letters in Stones, and the letters stand not in the Stone vpward to touch the Paper directly, but in the paper and Printing white the stone they stand all one way : and this is the order whereby they doe this : They wet the Paper, and laying it vpon the toppe of the Stone, they gently beate it with some veriegentle thing, wherby the Paper which lyeth vpon the Stone finketh into the hollownesse of the Letter, and resteth lower then the other, then with a kind of Inke which they have for this purpose, they

lift with the greatest Mandains of his Kingdome, as well as with the basest people thereof. Yet for all this, of late yeeres there were many, who with great libertie and courage reprehended his faults by writing (which is the manner of speaking most publikely with him) that all men might read it. And though they might feare fome gricuous punishment (besides the losing of their Offices, for that was certayn) neuertheleffe, there were many men of courage which wrote 30 vnto him: among whom there was one very renowned : The letter which he wrote to the King, began thus. That although bee were affored, that he were so be hanged, and that the Fire were kindled to burne him, yet her would reprehend his vices and lendueffes, and the enill example that her gave to all Heroike zeale. bis Kingdome : And so hee did, and spake verie freely, and put him in great feare. And it feemeth that for his finceritie and courage, the King had some regard of him, and chough hee punithed him, yet it was verie moderately, There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeares, which because it is notable I will heere fet it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselues keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife. but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others youger of the second. The 40 Eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inferitour, although he bee of the fourth wife : but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and defired, by her Question of

In from all our other Inftruments.

perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not have advanced the lawfull Heire. The the Successor time being passed to performe the same, many Mandarus lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this diforder, and for feeking to make him advance the Eldeft. But the principall Manderies of the Court perceiuing that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the Mandarius which are in the Court (which are aboue some thoulands ) that vn. Thoulands of der paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at sixch a day, and sixch an houre, in sixch a Court Manda. place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all affembled at the day appointed, with their 50 Enlignes of Mandarins, they put vp a Petition vinto the King, faying, That fince fo often they Enlignes of Creaman ins, they pure that the made some account of them, not feeling to advance the true Prince, that her bloom left the would ferue been, that all of them would ferue the true Prince, that her floud feele those that would ferue been, that all of them would ferue for the street for the street floud feele those that would ferue been, that all of them would feele the floud feele those that would feel been that the flower flow that the flower oner their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serme. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chiefest men of his Kingdome : And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe foorth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason; and so this yeere 1602. hee advanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.

readie on their Instruments, and play gravely and leafurely. I heard certaine forts of Musicke, especially in the Palace of the King : to welcome me, the Eunuches his Musicians played vnto me awhile, and they pleased me : although in this, little it seemeth vinto me they may compare with our Countrey, yet it is certaine, that they thinke they doe farre excell vs. They have not aboue one kinde of Instrument, which the graver fort wie and make much account of, which is like voto our Harpe, although the fashion and manner of playing voon it, differeth from ours, and As in China there is no fort of people more honourable then the Learned men, and Doctors: Noble Spirit fo there is no people of better condition, and of more Honourable and more Noble manner of of the Manda-

proceeding. And albeit before they were Doctors and Mandarius, they were verie poore and vint. base people, and many of their Fathers officers of vile Offices, (as it is verie ordinarie) neuerthelesse, after they have obtayined the Degrees, they put vpon themselves a more honourable spirit. And therefore albeit in (bins, wee indured much trouble at the base peoples hand, yet the Mandoms did alwaies vie vs honourably and with much respect : especially now, for which cause now no man dare trouble vs. And if there beeany, which in title are like our Lords, Knights, and

Courtiers, they are thefe. There are among them, men of much excellencie and finceritie in their 20 Office, which doe feeke the common good : And without doubt they make vs wonder, that fee- Sinceritie of ing they bee but Gentiles, which doe nothing for the zeale of Gods honour, nor for his fake, they fome be of fuch finceritie, which they shewed of late more then at other times, in having to doe with

this wicked, vicious, and couetous King, which they now have : who though hee be so absolute The present a Lord, that with the same libertie, and in a manner with the same facilitie, nee doth what he Kings dispose

of the Gouernment of China : Of the Mandarins ; the China Comple. ments and manifold nicities.

Ow I have touched the state of the Mandarins, it offereth it selfe to speake of the manner of Gouernment in particular ; But I confesse vnto-your Worthip, that the multitude of Offices which they have is so great a frame, that I was not able to vaderstand it, to reduce it into order. Onely I will say in generall, that they have many

Gouernment good if well executed.

good things belonging vnto Gouernment, but not the execution: finally, it is a Gouernment of 10 Gentiles, with a thouland faults. There are no great store of Lawes, but commonly they decide Controuerfies of their owne heads and make Lawes in their Juridiction after their pleasure, each executed. Controduction of their owne means and make have in their authorities and their present, cut.

Laws lawless ry one district. And heere your Worthip may imagine, that the Gouernment in the practice cannot bee very just, fince every one that can tell how to make a good theame or exercise, are not sufficient to bee Law-makers: And it is very ordinarie among them to direct all things to their owne profit, whereby of necessitie, they commit many absurdities and wrongs, and take all that they can get: Bribes are vitall, and men vie these more then any thing else: and though one of them know this fault in another, they all diffemble as being in the fame fault, that others may winke at them. And though they feeke to hide it one from another, yet it is like the fe-

Court Manda

Bube.

Dance in a

Chiefe Man. darin, or of Heauen. See or thefe afger in the di courfe of Rica cius and Tri-The fecond.

The third . Sec.

Councillof State, or the Colai.

Their wealth and wages

Whipping.

State and

The Mandarius are many in all Cities, but very extraordinarie in the Courts of Nanquin, and Pagnin. For in this Citie of Pagnin, befiles the Mandarins of Armes, whereof no great account is made, and are more in number then the rest; and besides those which alwayes repaire thither, vpon the business or all the Provinces: Those that properly belong to this Citie and Court, ate aboue two thousand and fine hundred: who all, or the most part heare Causes ordinarily twice day; so that wee cannot imagine what businesses occupie so many Mandarius, nor what is the Iuritdiction of euericone. The most principall which are in all the Kingdome and heere, ate fixe, Prefidents of fixe Councels, being the chiefert of the Kingdome. There is one, which is the greatest, to whom belongeth the government of all the Mandarins of the Kingdome, to advance them to higher Offices that doe deserue it, and as much as they deserve, to chastile and to de- 30 grade those which badly performe their Office: which because it is a place so great and honourable, the Chinois call him, The Mandarm of Heanen : who proposeth all these things to the King, as to promote, to advance, to difgrade the Mandarins, and the King confirmeth them : So that all the Mandarins how small soever they bee; that are in all the Kingdome, are appointed by the King. The second hath the charge of all things belonging vnto Ceremonies, as well humane of Courtelies. and ceremonies in all royall Acts, as in making the King, the Prince, and in marrying of them, &c. And all that which belongeth to the worship of the Sacrifices of the Duad, and others which the Kings offer to Heaven and Earth. There is another chiefe of the Councell of Warre : another of the Kings Treasure, which taketh the account of the Kings rents: another Councell is of the Workes, as of the Kings houles, pronision for all things neces-40 farie, for the Walls of the Cities, &c. There is another of Chaffisement, whereunto causes criminall and sentences of Death due belong. About these (sixe) there is onely one Degree, which are absolutely the greatest, before whom whatsouer the King doth in anything is consulted of. Although it bee true, that these be rich and opulent in the conceit of the Chinois, yet none of them in any thing may compare with any of the meanest Lord of title, of our Countrey. The wages which they have of the King is small: the attendance which they have, is of base people, and of small countenance, yet they are much respected and obeyed : And the common people kneeleth vnto them, as to the Manuarins. The common chastisement which all the Mandarins doe give, is to whip them with peeces of Canes, of foure or fixe fingers broad and thicke, wherewith oftentimes they dye, when it is Lyd on foundly. Whipping is as common as it is to 50 whip Children in the Schoole : And sometimes for nothing they give a dozen stripes, as well to the Plaintiffe as to the Defendant, and therewith they end the Suites, and they stay to give none other fentence, but fay : Gine him twentie stripes,

Vitally when the Mandarms of any State goe through the fireets, men goe before them crying, or making a noile with Infruments, for the people to give place. And in particular Cities, when a great Mandarin palleth through the streets, all men hide themselves and goe into houses, and the Handicrafts-men cease from their worke, and that in such fort, that I saw once in a Citie in a street of great trusticke, a Mandarin appeare, and in a moment enery bodie got away, even the very Dogges, with exceeding great filence : so greatly they bee reuerenced of all men. And many carrie Chaines trayling them before them, and other Instruments. But in the Courts 60 (though the Mandarins bee greater) the people runne not away, they doe no more but give way that thy may passe. In the Courts many Mandarins, though they be great, side on Horl backe, and others in Chaires: but besides them, all goe in Chaires carried on mens shoulders, which we cording to their Offices are two, or foure, or eight.

Euery Prouince hath a Visitor, which publikely visiteth the same euery yeere, and taketh in-Visitors. formation of the Mandarines. There are fecret and prime Visitors. Sometime one is fent : But it is no viuall thing, and as I haue heard, it is long tince it was left off. I speake this, because I alwaies heard when I was in Spaine, that the Chinois vied this manner of Vilitation.

The Visitor onely may give sentence of death. They be not cruell in punishments by death. Punishment by Onely the King vieth iome cruell execution : and namely this King that now raignest, which deathrare. is a very wicked man. One of them is that which lately hee caused here to bee executed voon eight men, by the great frosts of Winter, for no great offence for so cruell a punishment, and as The great they fay, fallely imputed : And this it was : Hee caused their neckes to be put through a thicke frosts of Win-

CHAP.6.S.7. Vifitors, punishments, Apish humanitie, or tedious salutations.

10 planke, which taketh a great part of the head, and they fet the plankes to stand vpon Formes, tet in Paquine to that the man standeth upon his feet day and night in the middest of the street, with men to watch him. Hee condemned them to this punishment for three moneths : but they died before fifteene dayes, with their legs all rotted, and burit with flanding alwaies on foot : I my felfe faw them stand on this fashion, which pitied me extremely. I neuer faw nor heard of any other cruell punishments; though, as I have faid, often times the Mandarines kill them with whip-

ping, which is a very cruell thing. The Chinois are very curious in writing of newes, which viually they fet out in Print, and Bookes of in a very (hort space disperse them through all the Provinces. There are alwaies Bookes where- news. in all the Mandarines of the Kingdome are written, as well their names as their Countries : 20 And because they be changed every foot from one place to another, they blot out and put in the

names as foone as they know them, with great facilitie.

One thing among the reft is (wherein they bee very dutifull and prolixe) in their manifold courtefies, which are of many forts, according to the estate of him with whom they have to Complements doe. The vitall fathion is when they vitite one another, the firanger is fet on the most honourable hand (which in some places is the right hand, and in the Northerne Provinces the left) and ment. That putting one hand in the sleeue of the contrarie arme, which is very long and wide, they lift vp which is in a their hands fo fastned together, then bending their (bead and) body downe to the ground, fay- little letter is ing, Zin zin, which is of no fignification but an interiection of vrbanitie, their bowing veneration they added out of ing, 2.11 2111, where is of no jeginjication can be missing of visionite, that overing visitation ton. Triguitius. eall, Zo ye: they change places to repay courtefies. After this the Guell fitteth downe in " the "When they

30 Chaire of the Master of the house, and the Master of the house another besides that which the salute in the Guest hath, and each of them setteth them in their due place, which is the strangers Chaire in the street, they highest place, diltant from the wall, and the Chaire of the Master of the house is set in the midst turne to the highest place, distant from the wall, and the change of the lowest place, one over against another. After this (when they have ended their falutations) fide: at home they straightway cause a drinke to be brought, which they call Cha, which is water boyled with to the head of a certaine herbe, which they much esteeme, for this is a want of civilitie and courtesie: and at the theboufe. least they must drinke of it twice or thrice. He bringeth forth some Fruit or Sweet-meat, and a which is a-Spoone to take it vp. If the Gueft stay any time, straight without faile they will bring out some gainst the thing to eate, but with some preparation, answerable to the occasion and person; whereon they ward also their eate very little, vnleffe it be at the ordinary houres of feeding, and then they cate formwhat more. Temples and

When they visite one another (vnlesse they be very great friends and familiars) a Boy goeth Halls for enalway before, which carrieth a Libell or Booke of vilitation, which they call Papere, which is as terraynment alway before which carrieth a Libellot Booke or vintation, which they can a spire, which is being made much as, A Paper of vifitation: And this name neuer faileth, for alwains they we it: which doore the control of t mutitaes, are ager of visionium.

with the doors but mane with model epithets (as many perhaps as Visitors) are written, according as the quality is to the South. of them that vitite, and those that are visited; to is the manner most different whereafter they Che or Chis a Write the fame : to wit, with more humility, either as our better, or as an equall, or as an infe-dinke made riour, as a scholer, or as a master: for as the relations are many and particular, so the fashions and with a certaine manners which they yie are divers. Of their chings, and of all that hereafter I shall say touching berbe, this point. I will send out the sympler in their court. this point, I will fend you the examples in their owne parers of vifitations, which great Man-tingpaper. darins, and ordinary men brought vnto vs, fetting down in our tongue vpon every letter the de- Thefe Libels

50 claration thereof. And I doubt not but your Worthip, our most deare Fathers, and Brethren, and confist of 12. as many others as shall see the same will reioyce thereat. And when that Paper is brought, they Pages of white carrie newes into the boule to him that is vilited, which prepareth himselfie to receive his Guelt, paper a palme which comment within a windle after. When they he not people which the form the property of which commeth within a winle after. When they be not people which they see enery day, they &c. see Ric. vie not ordinary apparell in their vilitations, but they have garment proper for this purpole, of per. 66. a farre different fulhion. And if by chance one come so apparelled, and another he not, he sayth, Salutation or that he durst not salute him, nor receive him before he had put on his apparell, so he getteth him visitation. away in great hafte to put on his apparell, and then they begin to performe their complements. When the Guest departeth, hee alwaies goeth before, and at their going out of the doores

they vie falutations, and offers of courtefie; according to the qualitie of the Gueff, and the Ma- Taking leave. 60 fter of the house, so he bringeth him more or leffe way, or vnto the street : or it he goe so fare, he stayeth till he take his Chaire, or his Horse, and then lifting up their armes and sleeues unto their heads they take their leaues and depart one from the other. When they are departed, the Visitor and hee that is visited, each of them fend a Boy to give one another thankes, one for his vilitation, the other for his good entertaynment and friendly viage. If hee that is vilited be not

at home, they leave the Paytre at his house, which is a token that hee came to visite him. Hee that is vilited is bound to requite his vilitation prefently, or the next day, if he bee a man of Worthip, or if they be equals, within three or four dayes: which payment is performed after the selle same manner : and if hee finde him not at home, it sufficeth to leave the Payne there, If hee that requireth the vilitation bee a farre greater person then the first which visited him, (as if he be some great Mandarm) hee which first visited him, returneth the next day in person with a Head placeof he giueth him thankes by word of mouth. When the man which wifireth is of great Worthin hee fendeth word a good space before with a Pegire : and the Master of the house commeth forth hee fendeth word a good space perior with a raying a share Houses and Lodgings, have always to torceine him, and to bring him into the houle. All their Houses and Lodgings, have always 10 to the house him four whose shares the always 10 to the house him the house him. an head and more honourable place (which is the highest part) where alwayes they place the Great Letters Guest. Likewise in their writing they vie a great difference, according to the citates, Dignitic and Age : and in their Letter, the greater the Mandarin is, they vie the greater Letter : those that are equall, or inferiour vie a very small letter : likewise they observe the same order in speaking to energy one according to his qualitie. When they meet in the fireets, the ordinary courtefie, is, to put their hands into their fleeues, & clofing them together to hold them vp, & to vie a common speech, which they have for this purpose, When a couple enter into new acquaintance, they doe yet more, and that is, they kneele downe, and touch the ground with their head so often, and

tance. Sending Pre-

for great per-

374

with for great ceremonies, that I dare not speake of them, left I should never make an end, When they fend Prefents, they write downe all things which they fend in a paper, as they to doe their speeches, with words of Honour : whereof I send likewise examples to see, of very grave persons which sent vs Presents. And whether the partie receive the Present or not, or only a part, he alwayes fendeth backe another paper with certaine red lines (as herewith is to bee seene) with a Letter which sayth: I thanke you much : And when he receiveth the Present, hee alwayes gineth fome money to the youths that bring it : and hereby he remayneth bound to anfwer him, with another Presentas great at the least: And herein they be very precise, especially persons that are not of the greatest account. A thing which I finde very strange, and which doth put vs to much trouble, to be driven equally to answer those Presents which the greater Mande

rins doe fend vs, for they alwayes defire some thing of our Countrey, and here we are very poore. They send vs somtimes from Macao some Clockes of sand, or Houre-glasses, some Kniues, some 20 cases of tooles for Surgeans, and other things: for they much esteeme all things that come from our parts : and with these things, which in our Countries are little or nothing worth, heere wee procure friends, which stand vs in exceeding great stead to conferre with them of our holy Faith, and of the faluation of our Soules.

Innitations

Besides their Presents and visitations, they have Gossippings and Banquets, whereunto very viually they inuite one another. When their be very folerane, they fet every Guest two tables for himselfe, one of Flesh and Fish, &c. another of Fruits and sweet Meats. When they be not so so lemne, one table for every man, or two at every Table; they provide for these Guests great diverfitie of meates well dreffed and seasoned, which they bring foft and fayre one after another, that they may be hot. When they inuite one to a Banquet, they fend fixe or feuen dayes before a pa-40 per, wherein they isuite him against such a day. If hee cannot come, he sendeth another paper, wherein he faith, I excuse my selfe: If he excuse not himselfe, he is resolved to come. This paperis fent with many words of courtefie, & with much honour. On the day appointed in the morning, hee sendeth another to inuite him againe for the selfe same day : and at the appointed houre, hee fendeth another to pray him to come : and then hee goeth : If any of these messages should fayle hee would not goe. When he is gone to the Banquer, they wie many other ceremonies: But the most adoe is, about their places, so that it is long before you can place them, and allot out the roomes how they shall sit, because they ever seeke, or at least make shew that they seeke to give the chiefest roome to others. They feed not as men vie to doe in our Countrey : neither seemeth it that the Feaft is made to feed, but onely they taile of some small thing for fashion fake; and 50 they drinke very sippingly in small Cups of Porcelane, each of which will contayne fine or fixe Thimbels-full of Wine; and heerein and in deniting, they spend fine or fixe houres at a Banquet, and goe home an hungred. And thus it happeneth vnto vs ; although wee feeke to excuse our selves from them as much as we can, because wee lose much time, vnlesse it bee some great Mandarin, who we feare would take it evill, if wee should deny his request. When the Banquet is ended, the next day enery one of the Guests sends his Boy with a paper, wherein hee thanketh his Heaft for his good cheare.

Feafts to tafte

Chineis Com-New-yeere.

Heere your Worship may see, wherein the Chinois spend the one halfe of their life. For the greatest beninesse they have, and that wasteth most of their time, is in Visitations, Banquets, and fending of Presents. And the time wherein they most of all vie the same, is their New-yeere, 69 which lasteth fifteene dayes : their Birth day, which all of them keepe with great folemnitie: or when they goe foorth, or come home on a lourney. And to end the whole yeere, I fend you fome Papers of vifitation of all these things (whereof they have sent many vnto vs) that your Worthip may fee (though you understand not the outward Letter) the manner and fashion of

this people, how farre different Salutations, manners and fashions, we fend you from the plaineneffe of our Europe, and especially of our Companie, But for the present, wee all thinks it necess farie to eate after this falhion, and to vie their cultomes, to obtayine more free accesse vinto them. and to winne them to Christ.

CHAP.6. \$.7. Papacie applanded : hypocriticall Excuses ; China Women,

There is a Turke heere, a dweller in this Citie, which aboue fortie yeeres agoe, brought one or A Turke differtwo Lions to the Father of this King : who, partly because hee knoweth no Learning nor Sci- specked. ences, and partly because hee sought not to apply himselfe to the habite, customes, and manner of China, there is none that will deale with him, nor come neere his house : And through the grace which God hath given vs, and because they see vs apply our selves to their Apparell, Fa-To shion, and Courtesies, all the gravest Mandarus come home to our house to visite vs, and doe vs

the fauour, to hold vs publikely for their Friends : which they vie not to doe, to their owne Countrey-men, of our qualitie and condition : prayfed bee our Lord alwayes, Amen.

I will not omit to declare the great pleafure, wherewith these learned Chinois heare the great confent of the things and ceremonies, of our holy Faith in Europe, and that wee have Bishops, and, as we call them heere, Mandarins, and superiours in Spirituall things: and about all, they The Hietarchy reioyce exceedingly to heare of our Pope, that being so great a personage they preferre a Lear- applauded by ned and Holy man by way of Election, and not by Succession, and likewise the obedience and chinese. fubjection which other Kings doe yeeld vnto him; and that there have beene many (as wee told them) who being chosen Popes, refute it in good earnest, and by no meanes will accept the 20 same : and that we have all things which concerne the Law of God and good manners, fet downe

in writing, with all other Bookes concerning him, or his Ministers. And although that which I have spoken hitherto of our high Priest, is a thing very apparent and true, and wee delivered it for fuch, and they fo understand it : yet oftentimes they have giuen vs occasions of laughter. The first was, That when wee told them, that some refused so great an Office : ftraight-way they aske, where you lay that they refuse it, is it not euident that their excuse will not be accepted : As who should say, of they would accept of it, who is there that would make an excuse? And thus they say, because they doe so themselves : for when great Of- Ridiculousnis fices are bestowed voon them, ettsoone they offer vp a Petition, making a thousand excuses to ceite, the King not to receive them : and they defi e nothing leffe, neither can any thing happen fo 20 grieuous vnto them, as to accept their excule. But viually they be not admitted : though some-

times they bee, to their great griefe of heart, as I my felfe have feene : But to excuse themselves, or to refuse with some danger, is the vie to common, that they will not fayle to doe so : for if they should not doe so, it were more certayne that they should goe without the Office. The fecond thing that made vs more to laugh, is, that many of them tell vs, that if wee would returne into our Conntrey, without doubt they would make vs Popes: The reason (though not openly) which they yeeld, is, that wee haue a great aduantage about other men of our Countrey, to wit, that wee have seene, and studied, and understand their Bookes; because that they onely, in their opinion, can make a man perfect, and generally seene in all things. Such is the high conceit and reputation which they hold of their Bookes.

ø. VII.

Of their Women: Of the Tartars Conquest, Alls and Expulsion. The greatnesse of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queenes Eunuches.

Will conclude this Letter with two points : the one concerning the Women, whereof I haue little to fay : and the last is of the King, and of his Palaces and Services. Euery man (as I faid before) may keepe as many Wives as lee will, and so they

doe: which is the cause of many tumults, quarrels, and disorders in their houses a- Polygamie limong their wines, and among the Sonnes of diners Mothers: and therefore when wee tell them, tigious, 50 that in our Countrey no man marryeth but one Wire, they neuer are fatisfied in praifing it in words, though neuertheleffe they doe not follow it, nor put it in practife. And the difcontentment which the Women haue among themselues, and with their Husbands for this occasion, is like to prooue agreat encouragement vnto them, to make them defirous to receive our holy Faith, and to perswade their Husbands to embrace the same, seeing that it doth not permit any more but one lawfull Wife onely.

Of their other Conversation, Customes, and other things, weeknow nothing, neither is any Closeness of thing to bee learned : for they keepe house all their life time, and goe out of doores exceeding Women. feldome to visite either their Mother or Sisters, or nearest kinswomen, for they goe not to any clie, no not in thought: And therefore as they have no convertation, (but alwayes to keepe home) I can speake nothing of their behaviour. Their Apparell seemeth vnto mee houest and comely : (for fometimes I have seene the Wives of Officers, and of the poore people, for many of Apparell. them doe goe abroad.) In some parts of the Countrey wee have met many women upon the high way, in short garments, like to the men of our Countrey, without any difference, sace on



their heads, and their feete : for all the rest is all one kinde of Apparell ; but these are the common people onely : One of the greatest ornaments that the Women haue, is, to have verie little feete, and they are folittle, that they goe verie badly, and always they feeme to goe as though they would fall. I could not know the caule, nor the Chinois themselves know not the original occasion, why chis is counted for a beautie: albeit some say, it began not for a comelinesse, but onely with a purpose to cut off all occasion from them of going abroad.

Hifto: les of th: 11 Kings. Knowledgeof the Flood.

The Chinos haue beene very carefull in their Histories, and therefore they have histories of their Kings of aboue foure thousand yeeres. And if credit bee to be given to that which their Bookes report, touching those times, and is gathered by divers of their Histories; There are ma-Bookes report, concuming those times, and agreement of the pallo have forme knowledge in their ny more yeeres from the Flood to our dayes (whereof they also have been supported which transfer they are 10 Bookes) then the most followed and allowed Calculation among vs, which trate of that matter, doc allow of : for they fay, it is fixe thousand yeeres at the least. They say that they have continued Histories. But Heaue this, because I have not well conferred the truth and foundstion of the Chinib histories. At the least it is certaine, that they have knowledge of their matters, and certaine Kings within a little after the Flood, whenfoeuer it was. They had many ancient Kings, which were verie good men, which it may bee were faued in the law of Nature, because the heroicall workes of Vertue, which they report of them were great, and there is no record that they worshipped Idols, but some, that they worshipped the Lord of Heauen and durine contrary Earth. There were some that sought not to leave their lawfull Sonnes to bee their Heires, because they thought them not fit for Gouernment, but choose the wisest and best man, that they could finde, and left the Kingdome vnto him.

Moralitie and Nature midea Man-

This Kingdome in old time was divided into many small Kingdomes, vntill by little and little it was vnited. It is some foure hundred yeeres (25 I said before) fince a Tartar King posseffed it whollie, and two hundred, since a Bonzo or Religious man of China recovered it. This Mahumetan Tartar King, left some tokens of himselse in things that he did. Hee left in Nan-Mathematicall quin, certaine Mathematicall infiruments of Copper, the like whereof for goodnelle peraduenture are not in all Europe, at least not better. The Chinese Bonzo which expelled him out of the Kingdome, was a very valiant and wife

The China vin-New Lords,

new Lawes.

man, and there bee many Histories of his wisedome, and sentencious sayings, and judgement in man, and there bee many rationes on the wiscome, and which he ordayined in this King-hard matters: and the manner and forme of Googness the form. He was now of Googness and dome, which continueth inuiolable, doth greatly declare the fame. Hee made new Offices and gaue new Names to all of them: An viuall thing when one house beginneth to Raigne, to change all, even the name of the King, as also of all Offices, and also of many Cities. I omit the division of the Gouernment into fo many heads, and fo good distribution, that it feemeth (and fothe Chmois (ay) it is like to continue thoulands of yeeres, so that no man of the same Kingdome is able, nor hath any power to make any Rebellion of importance. For those which in former time revolted, were the Vice-royes of the Provinces, and other great Mandarins, in whole power were the Gouernment, the Souldiers, and the treasure. But hee divided it in such fort, that those which had power ouer the Souldiers, should have no money at all, neither should the pay of the Souldiers depend upon them : and those which keepe the Treasure must have no superintendencie and dominion ouer the Souldiers. Others which were mightie and rich, hee impouerished and divided their Authoritie and Revenues among many; and so there is no man that can call himselfe Great. I remember that I had read in a Booke, set out in the Spanish tongue, of the great power of certayne Captaynes, and because the King did not trust them, hee

uented by the policie.

> fent one of his house to will them to come vato him. All which relation, with many other things which hee reporteth of the prouidence of the King, how hee divideth his Authoritie among divers Princes, is not so in truth, neither in truth, neither is there any apparence thereof, neither have the Captaynes much authoritie, neither are they very rich : for though they have many people, yet the government of them is divided into divers heads, so that they can hardly affemble to raife any Ribellion, especially, be- 50 cause they remaine alwayes in the Kingdome, and neere about the King.

Renemie.

Expences.

The Reuenue of this King, without doubt, is exceeding great, and vntill wee have gotten is out of their Bookes (wherein every thing is fet downe very particularly) I will not prefume to publish the same, not as though I knew not that it is so, since whilest a man knoweth more of thu Kinedome, he doubteth leffe: Yet because I feare for all this that it will bee hard to make one beleeue the fame, which knoweth it not of a certainty; making the Accounts not very large, his Reuennes are one yeare with another an hundred Millions in Silver, Gold, Rice, and an infinite number of other things; although the greatest part is Silver. And he that considereth the greatnesse of the Kingdome, and that every man payeth Tribute to the King of their Persons, Lands, Trees, and other things (without carrying any Tribute out of the fame) that which I speake wil 60 not feeme excessive. But as his Revenue is very great, so his Expenses are many. For those which in this Kingdome doe live at the Kings charge are many, to wit, all the Chandarins to whom the King gueth Wages, all the Souldiers, all the Kinstolkes of the King, his Eunuches, and an infinite number of people, whereby his charges are exceeding great, although alwayes there re-

others fay, 150.

CHAP. 6. S. 7. State-contentednesse. The Queene and Concubines. Eunuchs.

mayneth a good deale for him to lay up; and there is no doubt but hee hath it in flore in exceeding great quantitie.

Many small Kingdomes round about acknowledge the King of *China*, and pay him Tribute, N ighbout as Corea, and others, whole names I know not, on this Northerne part : and on the fiele of Ma- Kingdomes. laca and Macao, many others. And fometimes on these Northerne parts they trouble him Corta or Corais somewhat, in robbing and killing of people. It may be that your Worlhip, or some bodie elie may demand, why the King of China being to great, subdueth not these small Kingdomes that lye about him to deliver himselfe of trouble ? I answere, that he wanteth no abilitie : but I will A Paradoxe. fay one fure thing, a Paradoxe to the people of our Europe, which is, That neither the Chinois, Io nor their King doe fleke, nor dreame of dilating their Empire more then it is. And this their Contentednes.

refolution is such, that although they would give them all these Kingdomes, they would not take them, & much leffe if they were farther off. For they hold it for one of the greatest miseries (especially the Mandarins & grave fort of people) to go out of their Kingdome to any other part.

There is one of the best Examples hereof that may be given: which fell out of late, and that was, that as by the danger which might grow to his Kingdome, if the people of lapon should none of China. winne the Kingdome of Corea, which is joyned to China by the mayne Land, as they began to doe; the Chinose syded the Coreans with many men: and the people of Lapon by the death of their King called Quabacondons, did wholly aband n it. The Kingdome remayned in the power of the Chinois, and fo continued two or three yeares. After which they whol-20 ly gaue it over, without any other greater respect, then that there were none that were

willing to goe thither to gouerne it, nor that the King had any need to annexe it vnto his Estate. And without doubt, it seemeth that he would doe the like with any other, although they would put it into his hands. And touching those Kingdomes which pay him Tribute, there is no great account made, whether they come or no : and their continuall comming, is more for the profit of those which come, then that the King doth desire it. And therefore the Philippine Ilands which in former times paid Tribute to the Kings of China, were made none account of when they ceased to pay it.

This King lath one lawfull Wife (as other men haue) in choice whereof they haue regard to nothing else but to her good qualities and externall beautie, for there is no Nobilitie to be 30 fought for. Besides her hee hath a great number of Concubines chosen after the same manner, whose Sonnes (if the lawfull Wines Children faile) inherit the Kingdome, which commonly Queenes fallethout, and fuch is he which now is King, and he which is to fucceed him. When any of these closensses. women be once entred into the Kings Palace to bee his Wife, there is no name which may bee compared vnto her in being kept close; for they may not only not greatroad, no nor bee seene of their Facher, Mother, or Brethren. They have little or none authoritie, but such as they obtaine of the King. Also the feruice of the King, of the Queene, and of his Concubines, is all by Eunuches, a service doubtlesse vnworthy of a King. All these Eunuches (without any exception) are of the most base people which are in all the Kingdome, whose Fathers (because they cannot keepethem when they were young) doe make them Eunuches, in hope that one day they 40 shall get into the Court to serue the King : the manner is farre different from some which are in

Europe : for these bee like those which the Turkes vie, Because their Fathers doe this for po- The gard and uertie, it followeth that they have no excellencie, for they have no meanes to learne it, and they all cut away. are little or nothing Learned.

They elect and choose these Eunuches from time to time to supply such as die, and this first yeare that I was here, they chose aboue three thousand, for which purpose there assembled aboue twentie thousaind (as they say) out of which number they made their choice. The Ble- Their numbers Ctors were a verie great Mandarin (to whom, as I faid before, the Kings private bufineffe belongs) and choice. and another Eunuch of the eldest and most private. The Examination and Election constiteth in two things, which are a good Countenance and a good Tongue : for proofe whereof, they

50 make them pronounce two words, wherein those that have not a readie Tongue doe shimble. When they are chosen, and gone to the Court, they divide them in divers Offices: yet at their Senice. first comming, they are appointed to waite vpon the old Euniches as Boyes, which make good triall of their patience, and obedience; and he that after certaine yeares sheweth himselfe towardly, they begin to employ in greater matters.

Of these Eunuches, the King hath his Musicians and Mathematicians, who, to bee briefe, I Ignorance. fay, have no found understanding in these things at all, but only for complement or superficially: vet some of them are bound to watch all night, and to looke whether any Comet doe appeare, or any fuch like thing in the Skie, to enforme the King thereof : and to performe other like Of-,

fices. They are visually versecouetous, and as they are bale, if they rife to bee prinate with the Couetonics. 6c King, some of them be proud and vncourteous. They serve the King as slaves, obeying his will which way toeuer he inclineth. The King chastiseth them verie sharp y for euery light offence: especially the King that now is, which is a very wicked man. He hash caused many tobe whipped to death, for some small matter wherein they have offended him. Yet there are some of them good and difer et, which the King vieth for dispatching of his businesse, and other matters

of weight. Though the ordinarie wages which they have of the King bee small, yet it serueth them well to line of, and therefore they goe verie well apparelled in many Robes of Silke verie finely wrought of divers colours, and the manner of their Cap and Apparell differeth from all o. ther peoples. There are of them in number, as they fay, about fixteene thousand of them in the Kings palaces, Hereby your Worship may see what Examples and Education the King of China obserueth, which spendeth all his time with these and with women.

The common poople neuer with the King. Law of Nations contem-

Emb-affager.

Although it be the custome of thele Kings, to shew themselves from time to time to certaine of the greatest Mandarist : yet they neuer luffer the rest of the people to see them, mor to speake with them; and when he speaketh with any bodie, they enter not into the place where hee is: but the King commeth forth to a certaine place. If there be any Nation among whom the Law to of Nations hath no place in many things it is this: for as they have no commerce with other Nations, to they have not the Law which is common to all men. And therefore they admit no Ambasiadour in China, valesse it be by the way of giuing some Present, the King not acknow. ledging anymeither doe they thinke that there is any in the World, which is able to deale with their King by way of an Embassadour. And if they bring any Message (as the lapons brought within thele few yeares, who came to intreate of certaine agreements , by no meanes they are admitted to the fight of the King, neither doth he give them audience: but some Mandarin doth accompany them : and the entertay ment which they give them, and honour which they flew to all strangers which come voto them is verie small. But as for the most part they have no great conceit of strangers, so their entertaynment is like to their conceit. Whosoeuer he be that 20 commeth into their Countrey, they shut him vp in a verie homely house, not suffering him to

The Kings Palaces are verie great; and albeit in the excellencie of Architecture they bee not comparable to those of our Europe, yet they much exceed in the hugenesse of Building. They have three wals foure square, the circuit of the first may be as bigge as the wall of a good Citie. Betweene the first and the second wall, there is a wall which enuironeth the greatest part of the House, and here are many Houses of the Eunuches of the lowest fort, which exercise Mechanicall Arts, or the like, as Porters, &c.

Betweene the second and the third wall there are many pieces of the Kings House, which is not joyned altogether, but in divers parts there be divers Roomes, built for divers purposes, one 30 answering to another. These parcels of Buildings which are here (which are euerie one as long as the Careere of an Horse, and very high) have no under Roome, but a great Building raised up with foundations of great Brickes, as broad and long as all the Building, wherein there are Gates of Marble from very wel wrought to passe from one place to another. This house or Foundation is about eight fathomes high little more or leffe. Aboue these are guilded Galleries, Tarefies, Hals, and Chambers, which on the out-fide flew verie gallant (which is as much as can be feene; for no man can get in to fee them.) The greatest part of them is of Timber, with many gilded Embossements, and many other pleasant Pictures. The Roofes are verie well made. The Tiles are of a farre better fashion, in mine opinion, then ours, and so even ioyned together that that they seeme to be all one piece : they are all anneled with yellow, which is the Kings Co-40 lour. To conclude, I say, that it seemed wnto me in multitude of Houses and greatnessea stately thing. Also betweene these wals the River runneth which I spake of: and to passe from one to another there are many faire Bridges of Marble made of very great stones : betweene these wals was one of the two fourth parts of the House, on which the fire from Heaven fell downe within these few yeares, and contumed it : and with the blowes of the stones which fell downe many verie great Houses were broken downe to the ground (as sometimes I beheld my selfe) and they remayned with many fignes of fire on them. They fay, that when this fire fell from Heauen, the King commanded his Sonne to kneele downe, and befeech The Heasen to be mercifull vato him, for he himselse was too wicked, and that the Heanen would not beare him. Within these wals are many Lodgings of the graueft Eunuches, who like Fellowes of Colledges line many in one 10 House, enerie one having his private Chamber. Herre betweene these wals are Mounts and Groues and other recreations whither the King repaireth to recreate himselfe. And the space of these wals is very great, for when I went to the Palace to teach the Eunuches which were in that place to trimme the Clocke, I passed before I came to their Lodging eight great Palaces, and on the other fide there were many more. The Lodgings of the Eunuches vinally are low and bad, for the Kings Seruants, yet very necessarie.

Third partf. -

River and

Bridges.

Fire from

No peace to the wicked.

Mounts and

Next after this followeth the third wal, where the King dwelleth, with his Wines and Children, and those which where his neerest fermants, whereinto no man entreth but they. And therfore albeit I have heard that it is a very beautiful thing & very much worth the feeing, as in very deed it sheweth to be : yet I cannot give any Relation of any thing concerning the lame in par- 60 ticular. Only this I fay, that when I was in the House of the Eunuches that were the Mathematicians, I went fometimes up into a Towre, from whence I might fee the tops of the Houfes, the Groues, and Orchards, and me thought that I never in my life faw so great a frame of Building, although I have feene many in mine owne Countrie. And therefore there are alwaies

a great number of Officers of all Offices, some making new Buildings, and others repayring the old. The King neuer goeth abroad, especially this King, and his Ancestors some one time and King a home no more, vnto a Temple which they have builded to The Heaven, and the Earth, where everie Priloner. yeare they offer Sacrifice. And therefore I know not with what pompe hee goeth abroad : But Temple of libe as in his femice he hath no men of qualities it cannot hee fuch as our Kines wis in their point. Heasen and like as in his feruice he hath no men of qualitie, it cannot bee fuch as our Kings vie in their going Earth. to Church:

There is a barbarous custome among the Kings, that when the Prince is advanced to the Kings. dome, within a fhort time after, all the rest of the old Kings Sonnes are to depart out of the

House to certaine places appointed for them, which vnto the third Generation are served like Barbarous v. 10 Kings, but they neuer come more in the presence of their Father, Mother, nor elder Brother; and fige of the therefore there is great lamentations of their Mothers at their departure. The Posteritie of these Kings Childoe alwaies remayne as Kinfmen, and with the name of the Kings Kinfmen. To all these (which dren, are very many) the King giveth sufficient mayntenance, which is no great matter. They never beare Office; and deale with other people, and marrie with them, without doing themselves much good or none at all in being the Kings Kinfmen, nor purchase any speciall authoritie thereby. Other Kinsfolkes of the King, married with the Sifters, Daughters, or Coulins of the King, or Queene, although they have fufficient to live vpon, yet have they exceeding small authoritie, and haughtinesse. And herein, nor in any thing may they compare with the Mandarins.

Here came to visit vs one married with the Sister of this King that is now , ina Chaire with 20 three or foure Boyes to wait on him. Another came oftentimes married with the Sifter of the Wife of the Prince that is to inherit, on Horse-backe with one Boy only attending on him; and hee entreth into the Examinations that hee may proceed Doctor and become a Mandarin : So litle is the benefit that groweth vnto them by the Confanguinity or Affinity of the King which are joyned vnto him thereby.

Here the time faileth me, though neither matter, nor defire to give contentment to your King Afficie Worship, and the rest of my most deare Fathers and Brethren , neither doth nor shall ever faile and Confee

me. And therefore if I shall understand, that they take this in good worth, I will give Relati- guintie, links on of that which shall fall out here by the helpe and grace of our Lord, to whom I humbly be-worth. feech all of them to commend mee.

I fend here withall two Maps of this Kingdome of China, which came to my hand after I Maps of China. had written this Letter, and Relation. I fought to translate all that which is contayned in the China Letters; which is all the Rent which every one of these Provinces payeth to the King of China; and to make a description of all the Houses which enerie Prouince hath, and how many people, and many things elfe: But your Worthip may beleeue that by no meanes I had leviure s and therefore I fend you only the figure, and another yeare (if it please our Lord God) I will fend you the fame with the declaration thereof.

All the rundles and squares which are therein are Cities , or Fortreffes of many Inhabitants, both of them walled about. There is no Towne here fet downe that it is not walled : the others

The Rivers are well diffinguished. The great lines are the limits of the Provinces : the other small lines, and of little circuit are the Iuridisdictions of some one principall Citie.

We print here another Map of all the World of our manner with Chaife Letters, which beand wee want time to declare the Letters, I fend not till the next yeare, which then we will fend if our Lord grant vs life.

I fend you many other Papers, that your Worthips may fee the fa hion of the Letters of these people of China, and what Characters wee committed to memorie. From Paquin, beeing the Court and Royall Citie of the King of China, the ninth of March, 1602.

CHAP

dome, there printed, 1579, that which followeth.

nion be delett, I will here translate out of a China booke entituled, The Description of that King-

Pequin the Northerne, and thirteene others. In these lifteene Pronunces ( you might call them Kingdomes ) by another distifion are numbred one burdred liftie eight Regions or leffe Prosinces, called by them

In the Kingdome (of China) there are two Presinces Royall, Nanquin the Southerne Court, and

CHAP. VII.

A Discourse of the Kingdome of China, taken out of RICIVS and TRIGAVTIVS, contayning the Countrey, People, Government. Religion, Rites, Selts, Characters, Studies, Arts, Alts; and a Map of China added, drawne out of one there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof.

ò. I.

Of the Name, Scite, and Greatnesse; the Tributaries, Commoditie, Arts , Printing , Seales , Inke , Pencill-pennes and Fannes.

cap. 2+ the nrft being a place; The duers mames of this

Here in the au. His vtmost Empire in the East, hath beene made knowne to Europe by divers appellations, as that of Pelemey, fina; that later of CMercus Peulus the Pentium, Cathey; and that most of Warren Pentium, the Cathey; and that most visual received from the Portugal, which call it China. I seem not pellation on all to that this is the Region of the Hoppophagica Hof-featers, a meat three as common as Beefe here: as allo that this is the Region Series or Sider; for the Arman Cathey; the Common of the Hoppophagica Hop much as there is no Kingdome of the East where Silke is found in that quantitie;

and the Portugals ship it thence for lapon, and all India; the Spaniards also of the Philippina L. Lands, fraight their ships therewith for all the American World. Moreover, I find in the China Chronicles that this Silke-worke was there two thousand fix hundred thirtie iix yeares before the Birth of Christ : whence it passed to the rest of Asia, to our Europe and to Africa. But in 30 this varietie nothing seemes so strange to me, as that all these names are so strange to them, not knowne or once heard of, although the change of names be not strange to that Countrey. For as often as the Empire passeth from one Family to another, according to the vicifitude of humane Affaires : He which attayneth the Throne, imposeth a name at his pleasure. So hath it beene The china: I flometimes called Them (which fignifieth exceeding) farge) another while In, that is, Reft, after far eighanthar functified by His, or Great; Sciem, Advised, Chen, Perfeit; Hon, The Milly may in Honging ging names & 30. And fince this Family, called Cin, which now holdeth the Sourreigntic, hath reigned, it is called Mm, which intimateth Splendour, and by vivall addition of one tyllable Ta-min, that is, the Kingdome of Groat Splendowr, Brightnesse or Glory. Yet doe few of their Neighbour Nations observe these changes of Names, whereby each of them almost, stile it by severall appella-40 tions. Those of Cocin, Cauchin-china, and the Siamites call it Cin; the Iapanders, Than; the Tartars, Han; the Westerne Swacens, Catas. Also amongst the Chinois themselves, besides that atbi rary name to imposed by their Kings, it hath some common to all Ages. Such are Ciumon, Conceitof the that is, the Kingdome; and Chiumboa, which fignifie tha Garden, a name arifing from their Geo-Earthsforme. graphy, beleeuing indeed the roundnesse of the Heaven, but a squarenesse of the Earth, and th eir Kingdome in the midft thereof, a conceit growne out of conceit now by better instru-Ction of the Icfa its.

The Kings

China Sina or

Cather, Vo-

knowners

them,

Their King is called Lord of the World, and they supposed accordingly that their Kingdome contayned the principall part thereof; not deeming the Neighbour Kingdomes worthy to bee called Kingdomes, which yet before their Commerce with Europeans were all they knew. And 50 not vinworthily is the name Great prefixed to their Kingdomes appellation, beeing the greatest Kingdome in the World, which at this day carrieth One Name, or hath done in former times. For Southward it beginneth in the nineteenth degree, at the lle which they call Hainam, that is, the South-Sea; and runneth into the North to the two & fortieth, even to those wals which diuide the Chinois from the Tartars. The longitude beginneth from the one hundred and twelith (reckoning from the Canaries) in the Province Tunan, and extends East-ward to the Sea in one hundred thirtie two. These Dimensions wee have observed in divers places of the Kingdome where we have passed, by Astrolabes and other Mathematicall Instruments; adding also the obfernation of Eclipfes in their Almanacks, where the Moones Change and Foll are juftly described, and specially by authoritie of Cosmographicall Plaines. Year others which shall come of 69 ter vs shall more exactly observe the longitude (which I dare by will be no great matter) I shall not vnwillingly yeeld. Hence may be observed that this ample Kingdome is for the most part The temperate within the temperate Zone; neither doth it extend fo farre North-ward as some Maps hand deferibed by many degrees. And left any should thinke that some great parts of so large a Domi-

Fu; the most of which be the twelne or sifteene Cities of reasonable quartitie, besides Villages, Hamlets, Castles and Townes. In these Provinces we two bundred sortie seven greater Cities, called Cheus howbeit sometimes distinguished from other Cities rather in disnitie then largenesse) of vulgar Cities, which they call Hien, 1152. Of men growne to ripe age, which pay tribute or poll money to the King, were then Ic fiftie and eight millions, fine hundred fiftie thou fand, 801. In all which the female fexe is not reckoned: and of the Masculine are omitted, Boyes, Touths, Eunuchs, Souldiers, the Royall kindred, Magistrates, Students, and very many others. And of the Souldiers, although there be a Supine peace (except some

Tattatian assault sometimes ) there are maintained in the Kings pay, and in perpetual Armes, about ten "hundred thousand. For the three Northern Proninces are almost halfe in pay, In that booke are num- "Somelay mabred Kingdomes adiopning to that of China and tributarie; to the East three, to the West fiftie three, to my more tee the South fiftie five to the North three. Tet I observe that nothing so many doe in these dayes pay tribute, the Map and and the few hich doe, carry more from China, then they bring thather : and therefore the Chinois care not notes, much whether they continue loyall or no.

To the worth of this Kingdome, may bee added, the fortification by Nature or Art round about it. To the South and East, the Sea washethir, and so many Ilands guard it, that hardly can a Fleet of Ships approach the Continent. To the North, fleepe pracipieer are loyned together, with a continued Tract of 405, leagues, and exclude the Tartars affaults. To the Northwelt is a landy delart of many dayes iourney, which prohibite passage of an Armie, or minace their burialis. The South-west hath great Mountaines and little Kingdomes to preuent feare on

From this largenesse of Territories proceeds such divertified varietie of things growing in that Kingdome, some in the torrid, others in the colder or in the temperate Zones: what some The commois required to the necessitie or delicacie of food or raiment being there naturall; nothing being dises of think here in Europe but either is there, or a better supply : Wheat, Barley, Panike, and other Corne; Rice, Pulle (in some Provinces two or three haruests yeerely) fruits and Apples of the best (Nuts Fruits of all

and Almonds excepted ) Figs and others wiknowne in our world, as the Liegas and the Longa- forts, nas in Canton Prouince onely ; the Sucufusa or China Figge, or Apple to called, because they may dry it as they do Figs, & liker to a Peach red, without hoatineffe or Hone : in Oranges, Citrons, Limons they exceed all places. So doe they in goodnesse and varietie of Gardens, Herbs, as being there much vsed, some for religion, others for powertie eating nothing else. Flowers have there taken up their bowers , admirably varied, more respected for fight then fent ; the Art of diffuling fweet-waters being there vuheard of. In the foure Southerne Prouinces grow Betre or Betele leafe, and the tree Arequa or Arequeira, so much vied in India, and chewed all day long for their fromacke and teeth. Sefame Oile is both odoriferous and plentifull. Wine is not

Iq

there fo good as in Europe (the Grape being neither plefant nor frequent) made of Rice and o-Hogs-fieth is common food : they have Buffails, Muttons, Goats-fieth; Hennes, Duckes, Fieth for food-Geefe, innumerable: Horses also, Asses, Mules, and Dogs-steff are food, and shamble commodities. In some places superstition abstaineth from Beese and Buffalls, Venison, especially red Deere, Hare, and divers domestick creatures are common; all cheape. Their Horses and Beasts of labour are not lo goodly as in Europe, but more in number, and therefore in cheapneffe. The whole Kingdome is very commodious for passige by Rivers both naturall and hand-made: Passige by whence the number and kindes of shipping is incredible; infomuch that a moderne Writer water. hath anerred, that there are as many which keepe on the waters as on the land; an Hyperbole,

50 yet not lo exceeding the truth to fuch as faile thefe Rivers, as may bee feene to others. I am of opinion, that there are as many Ships in this Kingsome, as are in all the world befind in freshwaters : for their Sea-hipping is fewer and not comparable withouts. But to returne to their ping and water Horise the Chimic boom not have a dwellers. Hories, the Chinois know not how to manage and breake them but by gelding ; fo that their Horses for service are innumerable, but so viscerusceable, that they will not indure the neighing Horses. of the Tartarian Hotse without flight. They snoot them not with Iron, so that in rockie and

Befides the Seas plentie of Fish and Rivers, they are stored also in Lakes, feeming for their Fish. depths and largeneile petie Seas. They have more flore of Fish-ponds also, then in these parts, whence the Market is daily furnished. Their Woods have no Lious, but store of Tigers, Beares, Wildeberts. 60 Woolnes, Foxes. Elephants there are not, but for pompe some kept at the Court in Pequin, Woolaes, Foxes: Elephants there are not, but for pomperione and a bandance of Cotton, brought from other places. Flaxe they have not, but are supplied with abundance of Cotton, Cotton. the feed whereof was brought thither foure hundred yeares frace, and hath so liked the soyle, that the whole world, as may feeme thence might have fufficient. Of Silke-workes wee by Sale of down no more. Of Hempe, and of some other Herbs, they make many clothes, especially for Summer

vie. They milke not their Sheepe; they sheare them, yet make no cloth of the Wooll (not withflanding, woollen-clothes brought thither by Merchants is well fold; but light Summer clothes for blankets and other fleight vies. The North parts, though neerer the Sunne then some Regions in Europe, are colder, the great rivers and lakes frozen over, of which we can give no reaion, but the neighbouring Mountaines of Tartaria: against which they are furnished with choice Furres.

China Porcelane, Buildings, Chia, Varnish, Fire-workes, &c. LI B. II.

Metalls.

All forts of metalls are there found. They make besides Brasse and Copper, another shining like Siluer, as cheape as the yellow Braffe. Of molten Iron they make Kettles, Caldrons, Belle Mortars, Ordnance, and other things. Their Gold is cheaper then with vs. Silucr they vie for money, diffinguished not by flampe but weight, in all bargaining fing the ballance, which is to made the more incommodious for the differing goodnesse of the Siluer, and frequent allay and fraud. In some places are Braffe farthings. Place and Gold vessells are vied by the greater, but nothing fo much as in these parts. The women spend much Gold and Siluer in heir head-tires. The vulgar vie earthen dishes, called, I now not why, porcellane; the best whereof is made in the Kiam fin Province of a yellow carth. It endureth without riving hot meates, yea as woodden dishes here with a wyre, they sowe the rifts and make them hold liquor. They make Glasse, but therein are short of the Europeans.

Giaffe. Buildings.

Porcellane,

Hard Timber and Reeds.

Sea-cole.

Rhubarb, China Muske.

Salt, Sugar, Home-waxe.

Paper.

zich Varnish,

Spices:

Chap. 4. Of their Arts in China. This is not to be vn ferftood of Temples. &c. as may ap-peare by Nan-

gun Temple, Ponting.

Their houses are of Timber commonly, cuen the Kings Palaces, the walls which serue for parritions of roomes being sometimes of Bricke, but the roofe suffained by Timbers : which toge-

ther with their shipping argues their plentie of trees. Oakes are tare, but supplied with a hard 20 and eur tlafting wood with them vied for coffins, in which their curiofitie will iometimes foend a thousand Duckets. There is also store of a kinde of reed, which the Portugalls call Bambu, of almo! Iron haranesse, the roundnesse scarcely compassed with both hands, and serves for smaller posts; the lesser of them for Launces and other vies, For fire they vie Wood, Coles, Reeds. Straw, and a bituminous substance called Mai (a kinde of Mine-cole or Sea-cole) which is most and best in the North, digged out of the earth. Of medicinable herbs they have divers, specially Rhubarbe, sold for tenne halfe pence the

pound : China Wood, or holy Wood growing in defatts naturally, and thence taken for no other price but the labour : Muske ; Salt both made of Sea-waters, and of others eafily in the Continent; Sugar more common there then Hony, though both plentifull : Waxe both of Bees, and 30 another whiter and burning better made by certaine wormes, which therefore are nourifhed in trees : another also made of a certaine fruit : Their paper is not so during as ours, nor can endure

I omit their parti-coloured Marbles, their gems, colours for paintings, odoriferous Woods. &c. I cannot paffe by fome raricles; as their thrub whence they make their drinke (id. They Cha, Chia, or Cia. gather the leaves in the Spring, and dry them in the shadow, and keepe it for daily decocion. vfing it at meates, and as often as any guest comes to their house, yea twice or thrice, if hee make any tarrying. They fup it hot , bitterish to the palate , but wholesome : not of ancient vie, for they have no ancient Character in their bookes for it. The lapanders pay deare for it, ten or twelve Duckets a pound for the best, and vieir otherwise, putting the poulder of the leafe 40 to hot water, as much as two or three spoonefulls : the Chinois put the leaves themselves into the hot water, which they drinke, leaving the leaves behinde. They have also a bituminous subflance like milke, thrained out of the barke of a tree, of pitchy cleaning, whence they make Sandaracha, a varnish for their houses and houshold, ships, and other things : yeelding a smooth touch to the hand and glaffie splendour to the eye with long continuance. Thus can they more then counterfeit the colours of any wood, and hereby are prouided against prouisions of Napery, this feruing for Table linnen; they recouring any greafie contagion with a little rinfing of water. They have an Oyle also pressed from an apple not valike it in vie, but not fore-

They have Cinamon and Ginger growing, Pepper and other Spices are brought from other 50 parts. They have flore of Gun-powder, not fo much for Artillerie ( which they can vie but meantly) as for Fire-works in pompous spectacles, thereby representing, Trees, Fruits, Battels, and other things with great Art and colt. We faw at Nanquin, in the first moneth of the yeere, as much this way fpent as would have ferued a continued fight two yeares.

For Mechanicall Arts, they are not comparable to our mens Architecture, whether veeregard the beautie or continuance of their buildings, they not fo much as conceiuing or crediting the stately magnificence or long durance of some in these parts. They either make no foundation, or verie fleight, and thinke a mans age to be age enough for a house, and that scarcely without reparations; their houses being also of Timber, and where the walls are Stone, threy have Time bers to beare up the roofe, that the wall may cafily be repaired or renewed without meddling 60 with the supporters.

Printing is ancienter there then here; fomethinke before the Incarnation, and most certains Antiquitie and 2boue fine hundred vecres old: much differing from ours because of the multitude of their Chamanner of it. racters. They graue or cut their Characters in a table of Peare-tree, Apple-tree or Zizyphus, In

this Table they lightly glue on a whole leafe written, and then cunningly shaue the drie paper, that they make very little transparence; after which they cut the wood, that onely the prints or lineaments of the Characters are eminent: which done, with great facilitie and celeritie they print off leaues at pleasure, one Printer often 1500. in one day; so ready also in cutting, that to mee Ours feeme to spend as much time in composing and correcting. This course is more accommodated to their great Characters then to ours, whose little letters are not easily out in woodden Tables. They have this commoditie also, that keeping these Tables by them, they may with little labour adde or take away words or fentences: and need not at once print off any more Copies then present vse or sale requireth. Wee doe this with Bookes of our Religion

Io of European Sciences, printing them at home by our China feruants. They have another way of Another way. printing Characters or Pictures printed before in Marble or Wood, laying on a leafe of Paper moift, and on that a woollen Cloth, whereon they beate with a Hammer till the Paper infinuates it selfe into the voide spaces and lineaments of the Characters or Picture : after which they lightly colour that leafe with Inke or other colour, those delineations onely remayning white, and retayning the Prototype-figure. But this is for groffer Pourtrattures.

They are much addicted to pictures, but nothing so cunning in painting, founding, grauing, Painting, graas Europeans. They make magnificent Arches with figures of men and beats, and adorne their uing tounding,

Temples with Idols and Bells, but their Genius otherwife generous and ingenious enough, for want of commerce with other Nations, is herein rudely artificiall. Shadowes and Oyle in want or commerce with other transpositions and the state of the state eye, and yet will be doing in huge ( indeed) Monsters of this kinde, in Earth, Brasse, and Mar-

ble. Their Bells haue all woodden Hammers, which yeeld a woodden found, not comparable Bells. to ours, nor feeming capable of those of Iron. They have variety and plenty of Musicall In- Musicall Infruments, yet want Organs and all that haue Keyes. Their Strings are made of raw Silke, and struments, know not that any can be made of Guts. The Symmetrie of their Instruments is answerable to ours. All their Musike is simple and single-toned, vtterly ignorant of confort in discord-concord: yet much applaud they themselues in their owne Harmonie, how socuer dissonant to our eares, But this pride feemes to grow (as vivally it doth) from ignorance, and it is likely they would 30 preferre ours if they knew it.

They have scarcely any Instruments for measuring of (that which measures all things) Time; Want of Hours fuch as they have, measure by water or fire, but very imperfedly, as is also their Sun-diall, which they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein, and all their or an they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein exceed ours; some practising the same in principall Townes, others trauelling thorow the Kingdome (or roguing, if you will) being the dregs of the Kingdome, buying Boyes whom they frame to this faigning facultie. Their Commedies are commonly antient, whether Histories or Comedies. deurces, and few new written. They are vied in publike and in private Solemnities; as allo in Featts, whereto being called, they offer to the Inniter a Booke, in which to take his choife, the Guelts looking, eating, drinking together; and sometimes after ten houres seasting, they will 40 fpend as much succeeding time in a succession of Interludes one after another. Their pronuncia- Seales,

tion is with finging accent, and not with the yulgar tone. Seales are of great vie with them, not onely for Letters, but for their Poems also, Pictures, Bookes, and many other things. These contayne the name, fur-name, dignitie, and degree : neither content they themselves with one, but haue many, inscribing sometimes the beginning and end of their workes; not imprinting them in Waxe, or such like substance, but onely colour them red. The chiefe men haue on the Table a Boxe full of Scales, which contains their divers names (for every Chinese hath many names) and those of Wood, Marble, Inorie, Brafie, Crystall, Corall, and better stones. There Various fib. are many workemen of that Scale occupation, their Characters differing from the vulgar, and flance effica-

There is another Art not valike, of making Inke for all writing, made into little Cakes or Inke-making. Balls of the fmoke of Oyle. For their effination of exact writing makes the making of Inde alfo to be holden an Art not illiberall. They vie it on a Marble smooth stone; with a tew drops of water rubbing those Balls, and colouring the stone, thence taking it with a Pensill of Heres Pensils in

Fannes also are in much wie by both Sexes for the causing of winde to coole them in Summer. Fannes. No man may goe abroad without a Fanne, although the weather be cold, and the winde already bee importunate: the vie being rather for ornament then necessitie. They are made of Reeds, Wood, Juorie, Ebonie, together with Paper or Silke, and a certaine odoriterous Straw, in round, ouall, or square forme. The chiese men vie them of Paper gilded with plaits to be let in or our,

60 and therein inf. ribe some pithie sentence or Poeme. These are the most common gifts or prefents (as Gloues in Europe) and we have a Chift full of them fent vs by our friends. In other things the Chinois are liker ours, ving Tables, Stooles, and Beds (which the adioyning Nations dee not, but fit on Carpets on the floore) to eate or fleepe.

#### ò. I I.

Of their Characters and writing downward: their studies, Ethikes, Aftrologie, Physike, Authentike Authors, Degrees how taken both Philosophicall and Militarie.

Cap.5. Monofyllable Language, as alfo our prope most wholly.

Ow, for their more liberall Arts, and Literate-degrees, this Kingdome differs from all others: in which their Learned beare principall fway. The China words are Monofyllables, not one otherwise, howsoener two or three Vowels sometimes are conjoy- to ned into one Diphthong, to speake after our manner; for they have not Confonants nor Vowels, but divers Characters for fo many things, and as many of them, as there are Words.

fo that a Word, Syllable, Letter, are the fame; and when we ione divers Syllables to make one Word, it is after our fashion, because they signifie the same thing; with them each Syllable -coop. Chara- is a feuerall word. And although the number of things and Characters feeme the fame, yet doe they fo compound them together, that they exceed not feventy or eighty thousand: and hee which knoweth ten thousand of them, bath the most necessary : to know all is in manner for any one man impossible. Of these Characters the found is often the same, the figure and fignification differing : to that no Language is fo equiuocall; nor can any Speech bee written from the Speakers mouth by the Hearer, nor can a Booke bee read to the Hearers understanding, ex. 20 Equinocations cept they have the Booke before them , by their eyes to diffinguish the equinocations which their eares cannot. Yea, in speaking accuratly, the Hearer often understands not without repetition and writing either with Inke, or water on the Table, or forming the Characters in the aire; and this most happens in the most elegant and polite discourses (the stile of Bookes and

Fine Accents.

Inkhorne-dialect of their learned, wholly differing from the vulgar Idiome.) This equitocation and paucity of founds is in fome fort exfed be Accents, which are fine, and not eatie to diflinguish; by which of one Syllable (as wee account it) they make it with differing tones fine fold in differing fignification: and there is no Word which is not pronounced with one of these Hardneffe of Accents. Hence is the Language so difficult as none else in the World for Strangers to learne to speake and understand; which importunate labour of ours hath yet attayned. The reason I con- 30 ceine to be that they alway have laboured to adorne their writing more then their freech, their eloquence still confisting in writing and not in pronunciation, as I forrates is commended amongst the Greekes.

Elaquentia fine

This multitude of Characters, as it is burthensome to the memory, so it hath this commo-Many Nations dity, the commerce with divers Nations of different Linguages by community of writing; laand Languapon, Corai, Cauchinchina, the Leubices, vnderstanding and reading the Characters, each into his ges baue the owne Language, which the other understand nothing at all. Each Province also hath its owne, iame Charaand all haue one common Tongue besides, which they call Quonboa, or the Court Language (the cters. Court Lan-Magistrates being all forrainers, and none bearing Office in his Countrey Province) vied in their Courts, and by the Learned: this onely did ours learne, nor is the other yied by the civiller or # learneder in conference, except priua: ly by Countrey-men : yea, children and women learne this Court-speech. I heare that the Isponians have an Alphabet also of Letters after our fashion, besides these Characters; but in China they have none, so that from their Cradle to the extremest age they are learning their Characters, as many as professe Learning : which howfoeuer it takes up time from better Sciences, it doth it also from idle youthfull vanities. Hence also rifeth a kinde of writing with them, in few Characters expressing that which would Their writing coft vs long discourses. Their course of writing is from the right hand , the line downward,

Morall Philo-Of all the noblest Sciences they are best skilled in morall Philosophie (naturall, they have safophie. ther obfcured ) and being ignorant of Logicke, they deliver those Ethicke precepts in confused 50 fentences and discourses without order by meere naturall wit. Their greatest Philosopher is Confutius. His heroike called Confutius, whom I finde to have beene borne 551, yeeres before the comming of Christ, and to have lived above 70. yeeres, by example as well as precept exciting to vertue, accounted a very holy man. And if wee marke his fayings and doings, wee must contesse few of our Ethnike Philosophers before him , and many behinde. But with the Chinois, his word is authori-

ours contrary from the left and fide-waves.

shipping him, not as a God, but as a Man; and his posteritie are much esteemed, the head of that familie inheriting by grant of Kings a title of great honour, with immunities and re-They have some knowledge also of Astrologie, and the Mathematikes: In Arithmetike and 60 Geometry antiently more excellent, but in learning and teaching confuled. They reckon foure hundred Starres more then our Astrologers have mentioned, numbring certaine smaller which doe not alway appeare. Of the heavenly Apparances they have no rules : they are much bufied

about foretelling Eclipses, and the courses of Planets, but therein very erroneous; and all their

tie, and no fixech of his is called in queftion; the Learned, yea the Kings also, ever fince wor-

skill of Starres is in manner that which wee call Indiciall Aftrology, imagining these things helow to depend on the Starres. Somewhat they have received of the Westerne Saracens, but they confirme nothing by Demonstration, only have left to them Tables, by which they reckon the Eclipses and Motions:

The first of this Royall Family forbad any to learne this Iudiciall Astrologie, but those which

by Hereditary right are thereto defigned, to preuent Innouations. But he which now reigneth mayntayneth divers Mathematicians, both Eunuches within the Palace, and Magistrates without, of which there are in Pegnin two Tribunals, one of Chinois, which follow their owne Authors, another of Saracens which reforme the fame by their Rules, and by conference together. 10 Both baue in a small Hill a Plaine for Contemplation where are the huge Mathematicall Instruments of Braffe before mentioned : One of the Colledge nightly watcheth thereon as is before observed. That of Nangum exceeds this of Pequin, as being then the Seat Royall. When the Pequin Aftrologers foretell Eclipses, the Magistrates and Idoll Ministers are commanded to affemble in their Officiary Habits to helpe the labouring Planets, which they think they do with beating brazen Bels, and often kneelings, all the time that they thinke the Eclipse lafteth, left Eclipses,

they should then bee deuoured (as I have heard) by I know not what Serpent

Their Phylicke Rules differ much from ours; they examine the Pulie alike. They fucceed Phylicians well in their Prescriptions, which viually are Simples, Herbs, Rootes, and the like. They have for it no publike Schoole, but each learnes it of his owne Mafter, yet in the two Royall Cities so Degrees of this Art are given after Examination, but curforily and without any respect acquired by his Degree, because all may practise which will. Neyther doth any study Mathematickes or Physicke, which is in any hope of the Ethikeglory, but such as want of wit or meanes hath deterred from studies more sublime. Contrariwise, that Ethike Science is the Ladder of China felicity. Confutius brought into order the Bookes of foure former Philosophers, and wrote a fift confutius his himselfe, which five Bookes hee called Dollrines: in which are contayned Morall and Politike five Bookes. Rules, Examples of the Ancients, Rites and Sacrifices, divers Poems also and the like. Besides Tetrabiblion these fine Volumes, out of Confusion and his Disciples are brought into one Volume, divers Precepts without order, Similes, Sentences Ethike, Oeconomike, Politike: this Booke for the foure parts is called the Foure Booker. These nine are the ancientest China Bookes, whence the

30 others most what are taken, and contayne most of their Characters. And the ancient Kings enacted that they which professe Learning , should take the foundations of their Learning from those Bookes, not only to learne the proper sense of the Text, but to bee able on the sudden to write fitly of any sentence, for which cause that Tetrabiblion is learned without Booke. Neyther is there any Vinnerfitie or publike Schoole (as some of ours have affirmed, the Masters or Profes. No Valuerstry. fors whereof haue undertaken to read and expound those Bookes; but every one gets a Master at home at his owne choice and coft (of which there is a huge multitude.) In this Science are three Degrees bestowed on them which offer themselves to be examined and are judged meete. That Degrees, Examination is almost wholly in Writing. The first Degree is conferred in every City in that Tibis the Pro-

place which is called the Schoole, by some learned man defigned to that Office by the King, who poser. 40 is by that place called Tibin; the Degree is termed Siencai, A threefold Examination is premifed, Siencai a B2-First, at his comming to any City of his Province, all that stand for that degree in that City, and chelors dethe confining limits thereof refort thither and are examined by those Masters which are set ouer fire of Arr the Bachelours till they have attayned further Degree, mayntayned by the Kings stipend. In with vathis Examination euery one is admitted, perhaps foure or 5000 affembled to that purpole. The fecond is by the foure Gouernours of the City (for none are admitted to Gouernment but the Learned) which present out of all that number 200. of the better Writers to the Tibio, and he in 2 third Examination chuseth 20,00 30.0f the beft, which he entituleth Bachelors: their Enfignes are a long Gowne, a Cap, and Boots, which none else may weare, & in all places they are much respected Ornaments. as in a ranke aboue the vulgar Citizens, and enjoy also divers Priviledges, being in manner subject Their Privile

50 only to the Masters aforesaid and the Tibio, other Magistrates scarsty medling with them. This ladges, Tibio not only hath authority over these new created Bachelors, but over those which were made before to re-examine them : and these according to their writing hee divideth into five rankes; the first he rewardeth with some publike Office in the City, the second with some inferiour honour, the third he newther rewards nor punisheth, the fourth he causeth to be publikely whipped, the last he degradeth and maketh againe Plebeians. The second Degree is called Kingin, and may be compared with our Licentiates, and is conferred but once in three yeares, and that in the Metropolitane City about the eight Moone with greater Majesty. And the degree is not Thesecond conferred to all, but to a certayne number of the worthieft, according to the dignity of each Pro- degree, Kin-

uince : Pequin and Nanguin haue each 150. Cequian, Quamfi, and Fuquian 95. others fewer. Only 210, 35 Licen-60 Bachelors, but not all, are admitted to this Examination, the Tobio fending out of each City or chelors in Di-Schoole 30. or at most 40. of the best, which number yet ariseth in some Province to 4000 of uninite, if we those Examinates or Probationers for this second degree. A little before the eighth Moon (which compare them often fals in September, the Pequin Magistrates present to the King 100. of the most esteemed withours. Philosophers in the Kingdome, who thence pricketh or nameth thirty, for each Province two, to Examining

Palace of examination.

take charge of the Examination of these Candidates. One of these two must bee of the Hanlin Colledge, the Collegians whereof are most famous thorow the Kingdome. The King doth not name them till that nicke of time when they must prefently packe to their Province, dilignify guarded also that they speake with none of that Province till the Ast or Commencement be past. In the fame Prouince also are chosen the best Philosophers to affift these two Examiners. In tuery Mother City is a huge Palace built for this purpole compassed with high wals, with many sign tions for the Examiners separate from noyse; and foure thousand Cels or Studies besides in the midlt of the Palace, wherein is a stoole and table for one man, that none may see or confer with

When the Examiners sent by the King, and those of the Province are come thicher, they are 10 presently shut up in their stations before they can speake with other men, or with each other, during all the Examination time. Night and day, meane-whiles the Magistrates and Souldiers guard the Palace from Colloquies. Three dayes (the same thorow the Kingdome) the ninth, twelfth and fifteenth of the eighth Moone, from morning to night are appointed for their winting, the doores being shur. A light refection provided the day before is given to the Writersat publike cost. When the Bachelors come to the Palace, they are thorowly searched whether they haue any Booke or Writing with them, and are admitted only with the Penfils which they vie in writing, their Plate, Paper and Inke; these also and their Garments searched to prevent all fraud, which found causeth the twofold punishment both of losse and sence. When they are admitted, the doores shut and sealed, the two Royall Examiners out of the Tetrabiblism propound to Theamer githree Sentences for fo many Theames to every of them; and foure out of the five Bookes of De-Seuen writings thrues for so many other Theames. These seuen Writings must bee made for elegance of words and weight of Septences according to the Precepts of China Rhetoricke; neyther must any Writing contayne aboue 500. Characters. Two dayes being passed for the Examinationn of thele; the next day out of the Chronicles, or other three Cales of Politie are propounded, wherein each which three Theames or Writing expresse their minde, or Libel-wise admonish the King what were fitteft to be done. The third day three Law Cafes, fuch as happen in the Maguitrates, Offices are propounded, for each thereof to expresse his Sentence. There in great filence, each in his appointed Cell, having written their Theames, subscribed with their owne, their Fathers, Grand-fathers and great Grand-fathers names, and sealed so that none but men to

appointed may reade them, offer them to certayne Officers, which before the Examiners fee them ; cause them to bee transcribed by certayne thereto appointed : which Capies to be diftinguished from the Originals are written in Red Inke, without the Authors names the Originals laid up fafely) that none might by the hand or name know the Authour. In this Examination the Affifants first reiect the worlt & present vnto the two Examiners twice so many as are to be chosen Licentiates; as if one hundred and fifty are to bee chosen, three hundred are tendered to passe their last scrutinie: who first lay by the best, so many as are to bee elected (and thence take the first, second, and third, and set them accurately in order, and then conferre them with the Originals, thence taking the names which they cause to bee written in great Cubitall Letters, in a luge Table, which they expose about the end of the eighth Moone in great 40 concourse of Magistrates, and applause of the new Elects Friends and Kindred. The Printledges and Ornaments of this Degree are more then of the former, and if they intend to proceed no further, they are hereby capable of very good Magistracies. After the AG, the Kings Examiners publish a Booke of their proceedings, the names of the Graduates and their principall Writings, especially his which is as the Elder Brother (they call him Quiagnen) and whose Theames were best liked. The Bachelors of other Provinces may not here be admitted; some only except of the Kings Schoole in Pequin and Nanquin.

Third degree called Cinfu.

The third Degree is like our Doctorship, called Cin fu, which is conferred enery third yeare alfo, but onely at Pequin, and alway is the next yeare after that Commencement of Licentiates. Only three hundred chosen ou of the whole Kingdome obtayne it, although the Li- 10 centiates of every Province are admitted to the Examination.

Co'as.

This Act is in the second Moone on the same dayes that the former and in like forme, saving that the diligence is greater, as for a greater degree, and the Colai, the chiefe Magistrates of the Kingdome are Examiners. The Doctors being pronounced in the same Palace, where the Licentiates vie to bee; all of them in the Kings Palace, before the chiefe Magistrates of the Court (yea anciently the King was wont to bee present) make a Theame, according to the judgement whereof, the order of the Magistracies which they are to beare, is declared, being distributed in three Rankes.

Hee that in Examination of Doctors had the first place, hath in this second Examination the third place without question : but hee which hath the first or second enjoyeth a great dignitie 60 during his life, besides the greatest Offices in the Common-wealth; and might (compared with ours ) bee as a Duke or Marqueffe, if it were Hereditary. These Doctours presently haue their peculiar Vest, Cap, Bostes, and other Enfignes of Magistrates, and are preferred to the best Offices, fuch as the Licentiates may not attayne, and are as the prime men of

Those Licentiates which are rejected from the Doctorship, if they meane to proceed no fur- Ambition will ther, are preferred to Magistracie, but if they list still to stand for that degree they betake them be highest or felius home to their Bookes atrefly, till the third-yeare-examination returnes, fo that fome fland nothing. tentimes, continuing foling private to become more publike. A Booke is also published of them and of their fuccesse. Another is yearely set forth contayning the Names, Country, Parents, O fices of all the Do tors; and where they governe, whereby a man may know how any hath rifen or descended all his life, as is there vsuall after their merits. It is remarkable also how the Licentiates and Doctors of the same yeare respect one the other as Brethren euer after, and loue the Friends also of their Colleagues, and honour their Examiners as Fathers.

They vie to grant at the fame times and places the fame Titles (in the Moone following) to give, Military Profesiors, but with lesse pompe, because Souldierie is of no such reckoning with them, and few fland for them. This Military try all is three-fold, in the first they shoot nine Arrowes on Horse-backe running; in the second they shoot as many at the same marke standing : and hee which hath hit the Marke with foure on Horke-backe and two Arrowes on foot, is admitted to Threefold the third tryall wherein they have some Theame of Military matters propounded, and the tryall, Judges examining this Triple tryall out of the whole number pronounce about fifty Licentiates in enery Prouince. And when the Doctorall Act is at Pequin, one hundred of the choice of these after a Triple Examination are made Military Doctors. These Doctors are more easily admitted to Military Prefectures (but scarcely without Bribes) then the Licen-30 tiates. Both the Philosophicall and Military, ouer their doores, fet vp in great Letters this

their new attayned dignity. All the Examiners, whether of Mathematicall, or Military, or Philosophicall degrees, are of those Pulosophers, without affiftance of any Captaine, Mathematician, or Physician, as if thereby they were inabled to all things.

. Ø. III.

Of the Tartarian Conquest; Of H v M v v the Establisher of the present Gouernment. The Revenues. Magistrates in the Courts Royall, Proninces , Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Vifitations. Deprivations.

30

WHe Gouernment of China is Monarchicall. In times past, there have beene Lords of Chap ; Tule, as are Dukes, Marqueffes, and Earles in Europe, but taken away eighteene hun. Polohaibrela dred yeares fince. It was neuer fishdued by any Forteiners before the Testerius Conqueron (ed. The leftuiers. hinke that that Conquerour was Tamberluse; for the China; of the Monit years in the Conductor of the Conductor was Tamberluse; for the China; who the Conductor was Tamberluse; for the China; who the Conductor was Tamberluse; for the China; who the Conductor was conquered all the Chinois and left them to his Pefterity till the yeare 1368. At that time the (and perfecte Tartanear growing weater, duers Captyn-s arole in duers parts of the Kingdome which bally of the thooke off that voke. Among the mail the most tamous was of the Family Time, whome after Tartanass growing weaker, summer superful.

Anongst tiem all the most tamous was of the Family Ciss, whom after Conquestion flooke off that yoke. Amongst tiem all the most tamous was of the Family Ciss, whom after Tomor Tiem. mon Souldier grew to fuch greatnesse, that nee first expelled the Tarters, and then repelled the 116 about 100. Rebels thorow all the Kingdome, and possessed that Sourceigntie which still continueth in his yeares before Line. For the Crowne there goeth by Inheritance; only two or three of the Ancient King Timelas, rehause commended it to others. their owne Sonnes feeming vinworths; and the conclet hands. It is temestary have commended it to others, their owne Sonnes feeming vinworthy; and the people have by were not fully Rebellion iometimes rayled a new Family, divers yet loing their lines rather then acknow - fabed (for

ledging that Faction, this being Pronerbiall in their Philosophie, An benefit Woman bath but one Mandemieler-There are no ancient Lawes, but the first Founder of any Royall family makes new Lawes, of Estates There are no marked Larresport in the Country of th no ancience treat ready, they thinke their King Lordofths World, and call him Therein, the Some of Whom, let ther parts of the world, they thinke their King Lord of the World, and call inim Thereon, the some of Hessien, or (which is all one in their Theologie) of God. His vitall tirle yet is Hoamf, that is, 19,154. Butto after the into of creams Monarch: whereas they fule of the Kings Garm, an inferiour title. To present Re. attribe it to furnish, and bellions and Factions. Humous ordayned z at none of the Royall bloud should intermeddle to end the 7mwith Gouernment. Those Captaynes which had ayded him in expelsion of the Tartars, hee 1211 Reignest gaue militatre Commands with reuenues and triles, to defeend to their Heires. The Royal race 1368 argues he gaue the triles of Guenny, spettic Kings, with large reaemes to be yearely payed out of the Exchequer, and commanded all Magufritts to resurrance have. There Deferred her beginning the Hillings of the nee gate the trans of warm, as petter transfer with transfer returners to the yearsty payor out on the History of the Excheque, and commanded all Magnifitates to returned them. Their Potterties hee hosoured Tartis, Tamer-

with interiour Honours and revenues, so much lesse as further from the originall, and after cer-lose dense ng tain generations to have no more then might well maintayne them without labour. The like buyoungilo tain generations to make in more than nogative in more than the more than a faithful captaynes in one born, in Marriages and Titles were presided for the Royall Daighters. Those affiling Captaynes in One-born, the more in this part of ten likes Character which separate place their explanate in 1 interrogation for the captain of the part of honoured with a plate of Iron like a Charger, in which are engraven those their exploits for de-early, har

First and fecond place gloriou.

## 288 Humvus Lawes, Kings Renenues, Six Courts and Colai, Choli, Zauli, LIB, II.

liuerance of the Kingdome; which being shewne to the King, is priviledged with pardon of any penaltie, though mortall, three times, except for Treason which forfeiteth presently all Pringleiges. Euery time it obtaynes any pardon, it is engrauen in the Plate. The Sonnes in Law, and Fathers in Law of the King, and some which have extraordinarily merited of the State,enjoy like Honours and Revenues with the same diminution of time, as before.

Magistrates. Quenfu and Mandarin a

He also ordained that all Magistracie and Gouernment should belong to those Licentiates and Doctors, whereto neyther the fauour of the King or other Magistrates are necessary, but their owne merits, except where corruption frustrates Law. All Magistrates are called Quonfu, and for honours fake they are stiled Law je or Lau fie, that is , Lord, or Father. The Portugale call for noncours made they are those for reprefentation of Aristocratic, in that Gouernment: for 10 though they doe nothing but first petitioning the King, hee also determines nothing without Pertugal name. their follicitation. And if a private man petitions (which is seldome, because Officers areappointed to examine Petitions before the King fees them) the King, if hee will grant it, fends it to the Tribunall proper for that businesse, to admise him what is sit to bee done. I have found for certaine, that the King cannot give Money or Magistracie to any, except hee bee solicited by some Magistrate : I meane this of publike Reuenues; which doubtlesse doe exceed one hundred and fiftie Millions yearely, & are not brought into the Palace Treasurie, nor may the King spend them at his pleasure : but all whether Money or Rice and other things in kinde, are layed vp in the publike Treasuries and Store-houses, in all the Kingdome. Thence the expenses of the King his Wiues, Children, Eunuches, Family, and of all his Kindred are in Royall fort disburfed, but 18 How dispensed according to the ancient Lawes, neither more nor leffe. Thence the Stipends of Magistrates

and Souldiers and all Officers thorow the Kingdome are paid : the publike Buildings, the Kings Palace, Cities, Walls, Towres, Fortresseand all provision of War are thence sustained, which cause new Tributes sometimes to be imposed, this huge Revenue notwithstanding. Of Magistrates are two forts, one of the Court which rule there, and thence rule the King-

Bookesof

dome; and other Provinciall, which gouerne particular Cities or Provinces. Of both forts are fine or fix Bookes to be fold enery where, printed twice each moneth at Pequin, as by their course of printing (you have seene) is easie; contaying nothing else but the name, Countrey, and degree of the Magistrates; and therefore printed to often because of the exaltings, shiftings, fetting lower, death of Parents (which suspends three yeares to mourning in prinate) their owne deaths or deprivations.

1. Li pa, or Court of Magiftrates.

1. Ho-gu.

3. Li-pu.

Of the Court Tribunals are reckoned fixe; the first, Lips (Ps is a fmuch as Tribunall or Court, and Li, as (Magistrates) to which it belongeth to name the chiefe Magistrates of the King. dome, bringing up from the lower to the higher according to the Lawes prescribed, or if they descrue it, abasing or quite depriuing them. For those Licentiates and Doctors continually afcend, except their owne faults deject them, wherein a deprination makes for euer vncapable. The fecond is called Ho-ps, that is, the Exchequer Court, or that of the Treasury; which exacts and disburfeth the Kings Revenues. The third is the Li-pu, or Court of Rites, which ordereth the publike Sacrifices, Temples, Priests, Kings, Marriages, Schooles, Examinations, Festiuall Daves, common Gratulations to the King, Titles given to the wel-deferving, Physicians, Colledges of Mathematicians, entertayning and fending Embassages, with their Rites, Presents, Letters; the King holding it abasing to his Majesty to write to any. The fourth, is the Pimpu, or Military Court, which rewards the meriting, and takes from the fluggish Souldier; ordereth their Multers and giues Military degrees. The fifth is Cumpu, which hath care of the publike Buildings, Palaces for the King or his Kindred, and the Magistrates; Shippes for publike burthens or Armadas, Bridges, Walls of Cities and all like prouitions. The fixth Court is Himpu, which inquireth into Criminall Causes and sentenceth them; also all the publike Prisonsare fubject hereto.

All the affaires of the Kingdom depend on these Courts, which therefore have Magistrates and

order facilitating this fo weighty a Defigne. For first, in every Court is a Lord Chiefe Iusticeor

Notaries in enery City and Prouince, to admonish them faithully of all things, the multitude and 50

5. Campu.

6, Himpu.

The Prefident Prefident called Ciam Cin, who hath two Affiftants, one fitting at his right hand, the other at

his left, called Cilam : their dignity in the Royall Cities is accounted principall. After thefeeuery Tribunall hath diuers Offices, each of which hath diuers Colleagues, besides Notaties, Courtiers, Apparitors, and other Servants. Besides these Tribunals there is another the greatest colsi, or Coun. in the Court and Kingdome; they call them Colsos, which are three or foure, fometimes fixe fell of State. which have no peculiar businesses, but take care of the whole Re-publike, and are the Kings Priuy-Counfell in all Affaires. These are daily admitted into the Kings Palace, and there abide whole dayes, and answere as they see cause to the Petitions which are put up to the King (who was wont to define matters with these Colas in publike) and shewing their answere to the King, 60 hee alters or approoueth the same, and sets his hand thereto for the execution.

Choli and Zauli Befides these Orders of Magistrates and others not mentioned (as like to our owne) there are Magistrates two forts not vsuall with vs., the one Chois, the other called Zanis. In each of these Orders are extraordinary, about fixty choice Philosophers, men approued for their wildome and courage before experien-

### CHAP. 7. S. 2, Hanlin College, Yunlo remoues the Court, Symmetry of Magifirates, 289

ced. These two Rankes are vied by the King in Court or Promince businesses of greater weight, with great and Royall power, which caufeth to them great respect and veneration. These by Libell admonish the King if any thing be done contrary to the Lawes in any parts of the Kingdome, not sparing any of the Magistrates, nor the Kings House, nor the King himselfe; to the wonder of other Nations. And although the King sometimes bee touched to the quicke, and toucheth them to the quicke againe, yet ceafe they not still to rip the fore till it be cured. Other Magistrates may doe it, yea any private man, but these mens Libels or Petitions are of most worth, as proceeding from their peculiar Office. The Copies of them and of the Kings answers are printed by many, fo that the Court and State Affaires flye thorow the Kingdome, and are by 10 some written in Bookes, and those of most moment transcribed into the Annals of the Kingdome. Of late when the King would for love of a fecond Sonne have excluded the eldeft, so many by Libels reprehended the King, that he in anger deposited or abased one hundred of the Magistrates. They yet ceased not but one day went together into the Kings Palace, and offered vp their Magistracies if he persisted to breake the Law. Lately also when the chiefe of the Colas did not observe the Law, in two moneths space about one hundred Libels were put vp , not-

withstanding they knew him a great Fauourite; and hee dyed within a while after, as was

thought, of griefe. There are also besides Magistrates, not a few Colledges instituted for divers purposes, but the Colledges. most eminent is that called Han lin Tinen, into which none are chosen but choice Doctors after Han in Tinen. 20 due Examinations. They which line in that Royall Colledge, meddle not with Gouernment, yet are of higher dignitie then the Gouernours. Their Office is to order the Kings Writing, to make Annals of the Kingdome, to write Lawes and Statutes. Of these are chosen the Malters of the Kings and Princes. They wholly addict themselves to their studies, and in the Colledge haue their degrees of honours, which they attayne by writing. Thence they are preferred to great dignities but not out of the Court. Neither is any cholen to bee a Colas, but out of this Colledge. They gaine much also by Writings for their Friends, Epitaphs, Infriptions and the like; which all leeke to have of them, their name giving credit and reputation of Elegance. Thefe are the chiefe for Examinations of Licentiates and Doctors, who hold them for Masters and lend

30 All these Pequin Magistrates are foundationt Nonquin, but obscured by the Kings absence. Cause of the

Hum whad fixed his Seat at Nanquin, but after his death Thu to one of his Nephewes, who in removing the the Northerne Provinces defended with an Armie thole Borders against the Tarters, perceiving Seat Royall Hum-vas Sonne but weake, thought to deprine him of the Kingdome, which hee effected by from Nasquin helpe of the Northerne Promines, and with force, fraud and largeffe obtaymed his Voices to Preside. Throne. And because he was strongest in the North parts, and most seare was from the Tartars there, he there fixed his Refidence, where the Tartar Kings had avonted to abide and called that Citie Pequin, that is, the Northerne Court, as Nanquin fignifieth the Somberne, leaving to this the former Offices and Immunities.

The Gouernment of the other thirteene Prouinces depends on two Magistrates, the one Pn- Propincial 40 cinfa, the other Naganzafa: the former judging Civill Causes, the later Criminall; both residing Government with great Pompe in the Mother Citie of the Province. In both Courts are divers Colleagues Picin-fa. and they also chiefe Magistrates called Tauli, which governing other Cities often relide in them. Hagenceles The Provinces are all distributed into divers Regions, which they call Fin, each of which hach a Division of peculiar Gouernour called (ifn. Thefe Regions are subdivided into Cen, and Hien, that is the Provinces. greater or more eminent Townes, and those which are more vulgar, which are not lesse then our Regions or Cities, if you except our greatest. These have their special Governours called Ciorn and Cobien. The Governours of Cities and Regions have their foure Affittants and Colleagues as Auditors, Con and Hier. and ludges to helpe them. As for the opinion of some that thinke those only to bee Cities, Tule sumitswhich are called Fs, and Cess, and Hiers to bee Townes, it is an errour: for the City wherein the ken. 50 Gouernour of the Region refides, is also called Hien, and hath its peculiar Gouernour called Cibien, Cifu, Cibien and

and Affishmers; and the Cifu hath no more power there then in other places of his Luridiction; Chen. which is the first Appeale to him as Superiour from the Cibien or Cicen. The second Appeale is to the Pucumfu and Naganzosu and their Colleagues in the Metropolitane Cities, which Cities likewise haue their Cibien and Cifie, aswell as the Subordinate; all in incrediale

And because the whole Provinciall Government hath reference to Pequin, therefore in every Prouince besides these, are other two superiour to them sent from the Royall Citie, the one fixing his Refidence in the Province, called Tutam, which may be compared to our Vice-197, ha- Tutam.

uing command over other Magistrates, and in Martiall affaires: the other is yearely sent farm Cis years 60 the Court, and is called Csa-juen, as a Commissioner or Visitor, which reniewes all the Causes of the Prouince, the Cities also and Caffles, inquireth of the Magistrates, and punishesh some of the meaner fort, acquainting the King touching the reft, how every one demeaneth himselfe; and he onely executeth Capitall punishments. Besides these, are many others in Cities, Townes and Villages : and befide them, many which have command of Souldiers, especially in the Con-

Magistraces

fines and on the Coatts in fupinest Peace, watching and warding in Ports, Walls, Bridges, Ca. Militrie com- files, as in the hotteft Warres, with Mufters and Martiall exercises. All the Magistrates of the Kingdome, are reduced to nine Orders, whether you respect the Philosophicall or Militarie Se. Anigome, at retact to me change and the freatury is proportionably diffributed monethly ray, Money or Rice; yet little aniwerable to that their Magnifeence (the highest Order not having one thousand Duckets yeerely) and equall to all of the same ranke, the supreame in matters of Warre having as much as the supreame in the literate Order, if you looke to that which the Law ale loweth. But much more accrueth extraordinarie then this fee or flipend, belides what any mane

Robes and Or-

industrie, couetife, fortune, bribing addeth, by which they oft attayne to great wealth, All the Magistrates vie the same Caps, both Mercuriall and Martiall, of blacke Cloath with 10 two Eares or wings, of Quall figure, which may eafily fall off, which being a difgrace, caufeth the more modestie and steadinesse in carriage of their heads. They all weare like Vest, and like blacke leather Bootes of peculiar fashion ; also a Girdle wider then the body, about foure fingers broad, adorned with circular and square Figures : On the breast and backe, they weare two Square Cloubes Embroidered : in which and the Girdles is great varietie, according to their diuers Degrees; by which the skilfull know their ranke and place. The cloathes intimate it by the figures of Flowers, Fowles, Beafts; the girdles by the matter, of Wood, Horne, Sweet wood, Gold or Silver; and the best of all of that Iaffer before mentioned, called Tace, brought from Cafear. Their shadowes or Sumbreros, by their Colours and numbers intimate like difference. They have other Ornaments, Banners, Chaynes, Cenfors, Guards with Cryes to make way, to that in most frequent streetes no man appeareth, more or lesse, according to the Magistrates

See in Geer. Cap. 4. V mbelle.

Consentednes

Philosophers

bour 3.yerres.

4000.ludges judgej.

z. Couctous.

2. Cruell. 3. Remiffe. a. Rath.

Careropre ons, factions, and bribes.

Strangers.

The Chinois having plentie of all things, care not for fubduing the neighbour-Nations, better keeping their owne, leffe caring for others Countries, then our Enropeans : their Chronicles of foure thousand yeeres not mentioning any care of enlarging their Empire. And if any China imprefions or foot-prints bee, it is from men voluntarily going to other Countries, not from the Kings ambition fending them. It is also remarkeable that Philotopers beare all the sway, the Souldiers and Captaynes being subject to them, and sometimes beaten of them as Schoole-boyes by their Master : euen in Militarie matters, the King more vsing the adulfe of Philosophersthen Captaynes; whereupon euery haughtie spirit rather affects meane places in the Literate Order, then great in the Martiall. Yea these Literate are more magnanimous, and more contemne their Beautie of Or- lines in zeale of the publike then the Souldierie. No leffe admirable is the Symmetrie and Order of Magistrates in their subordinate Orders, in Obedience, Reuerence, Vilitations and Presents; the Inferiour giuing honourable Titles to the Superiour and kneeling to them. None beares any Office about three yeeres, except the King confirme it. And the chiefe Magistrates of Prouncces, Cities and Regions, every third yeere must appeare at Pequin, and doe their Rites to the King, at which time feuere inquirie is made of the Magistrates, and they thereupon rewarded or Seuere luftice punished. I have also observed, that the King dares not alter any of those things, which in this publike Disquisition are ordered by the Judges. Anno 1607, we reade foure thousand Magistrates condemned, that being the Search-yeere, and a Booke published thereof.

These Condemned are of fine forts; First, Couetons which have taken Bribes to pervert Inflice, or have viurped the publike or private mens fortunes : thefe are wholly deprived of all Offices for euer. The second are the Cruell, which have too severely punished, which are also deprived of their Places and Enfignes : The third are the Old and fickly, and the Remiffe and negligent; these are deprived, but permitted the Immunities and Ensignes. The fourth fort, are the rath, headdie, and vnaduifed, which are put in lower Offices, or lent to more easie places of Gos. Vagouerned themselves or theirs, worthy of that place of Gouernment; these are wholly deprived. The like Inquisition is made every fifth yeere of the Court Magistrates, and the same time also, of Militarie Commanders.

None may beare Office in his natiue Prouince, except Militarie. The Sonnes also or Dome- 10 flike feruants of Magistrates, may not goe out of the house lest they should bee Factors for bribes: but all services without doores is done by Officers, designed to his place : and when hee goth out of his House hee sealeth the doores, whether private or publike, that none of his Servants may goe out vn witting to him.

They permit no Stranger to live with them that mindes to returne to his Country, or is knowne to have Commerce with forraigne Nations : and no Stranger although of a friendly Nation and Tributarie, may have accesse to the inward parts of the Kingdome, a thing whereof I haue feene no Law, but Custome : neither haue I ever feene any of Cora in China, except fome Slaues which a Captayne brought thence, although a tributarie Nation which vieth in manner the China Lawes. And if a Stranger steale into the Country, they punish him not with Death nor Slaverie, but permit him not to returne. They most sewerely punish those, which without the Kingsleane have commerce with Strangers: and hardly can any bee periwaded to be fent abroad with Mandates; and fuch are rewarded with some Dignitie at their returne, None beare Weapon in Cities, not the Souldiers or Captaynes, but in their Traynings; nor haue any men

weapons in their Houses, except some rustie blade which they vie when they trauell for feare Weapons, weapons in their routes, except their testing of the property eth, none of his Sonnes are permitted to remayne in the Royall Citie, but the Heyre; and it is royallkindred. Capitall for them, being dispersed in divers Cities to stirre thence. Some principall amongst them, compounds their firites and rules them ; in Cafes with others, they are subject to the Magistrates.

ò. 1111.

Their manifold rites in Salutations, Entertaynments, and other Civilitie: to the King and Magistates : Of Buryals and Marriages, Birthdayes; their Men, Women, Names and Games, Habites.

Ourtefie or Civilitie, is reckoned one of their five Cardinall vertues, much commeded in Courtefie in Courtefie in

their Bookes. (Their common Rites yee have bad largely in Pamoia.) When greater remutually enespect is vied, as after long absence, or on a Solemne day, after the common bowing, ration and cirboth fall on their knees with the forehead to the ground, and then rife and downe as cumpetbegaine in like fort three or foure times. When they doe this reverence to a Superiour, hee frands haviour to oat the head of the Hall, or fits, and at all those prostations toyning his hands, bowes a little and sometime for greater modestie hee goeth to the fide of the Hall, whose head is Northwards as the doore is Southwards. The same rites they performe to their Idols; and sometimes as the Sido reus-Securates to ther Mafter, or the meaned of the people to honourable persons, which is presently rence, to kneele and knock the ground thrice with their forestead; they stand at his fide when their Mafter speakes, and kneele at enery answer. When one speakes to another, they vie not the second Respect of perperson, nor the first person when they mention themselves, except to their inferiour, and have sons, as many formes of depreffing themselves, as of exalting others, the lowliest of which is to call a See Thense E. 30 mans felfe by his proper name, in flead of (L) When they speake any thing of another mans, Pille, sup. 344 they vie a more honourable forme; Of their owne, or theirs, a more modest: which a man must

learne both for manners fake, and to understand their meaning.

The Vilitors fend their Libels or papers of vilitation, fo many that the Porter is faine to keepe Viliting one anote of their names, and where they dwell, left wee should forget; and if the partie to bee visit- another, ted be not at home or at leasure, that libell is left with the Porter for a testimonie. The more honourable the Vilitor, the larger hee writes his name. In fending Presents they vie like libelling; fetting downealfo each gitt in a line by it felfe, part of which may bee fent backe without offence, which is done with a like libell of thankes. They often fend money or pieces of Gold for 40 presents. They have Garments proper for visitations. The chiefe place in both Royall Courts. is given to Strangers, most remote especially, which made vs commonly to bee preferred. The fernant, when they are fet, brings as many little Cups of Cis as are Guefts. When they part, Tedious cours tenant, when the state of the s Seruant is fent after in his Masters name, to salute them, and they fend their seruants like-

Their Banquets are not fo much commessations as Competations; for although their Cups be 45 Chine banques little as Nut-ihels, yet they drinke often. Their Civill and Religious affayres are therein handled, befides the demonstration of kindnesse. In eating they have neither Forkes, nor Spoones, so nor Kniues; but vie small smooth flickes, a palme and a halfe long, wherewith they put all meats Feeding. to their mouthes, without touching them with their fingers. They bring all things to the Table cut in little pieces, except it bee of lofter condition, as Egges, Fish, and such things as their flickes will divide. They vie to drinke hot, even in hottelt weather, whether their Cis-decoction, or Wine, or Water : which it feemeth is profitable to the Stomacke ; for they live long, and are strong at seventie or eightie yeeres : Neither is any of them troubled with the Stone, The Stone vawhich I suppose is occasioned by our cold drinke. When any is Inuited, a Libell is sent a day or knowne is chimore dayes (if it bee to a folemne Banquet ) before, fignifying, that the Inuiter bath prepared a m, which fo Banquet of Hearts, and bath walbed his Cups, that at fuch a day and hours ( which commonly to many to mentch michs) has man have and to make the suppossition night) bee may beare and learne somewhat of him : At the day they send another like Libell (on in the Kidney, 60 the out-fide of these Libels, there is a red paper added with the more honourable Name of the in Vreter, Bladuited, which the Chinois vie besides their proper name) in the morning to each Guest, and der this last

my honorable Patron and best friend, B. King, 4880 1631. and 48000 1633. Master Bistidiamy neighbour, the pains full Mindlet at 763-Benwriedyeed of a Stone, which I weighed, and found (a miracle in Nature) much about 31 Ounces, whiles there or Gasar clauses are in the Peesse; therefore Letter membered, My felfe slid basing stone; a filter best processes are in the Peesse; therefore noe stone clause clauses.

third at the houre. Their furniture is not Hangings ( whereof they have no vie) but Pictures, Flowers, Veffels; to each Gueft his Table, and fometimes two to one, the one before the other, These Tables are some Cubits long and broad, but more in length, and covered with a cloath as our Altars. The Seats thine with their Varnish, adorned also with Pictures and Gold. The fift entertainment is with Cia in the Hall: and thence they goe to the Feafting-roome. Before they fit downe, the Inuiter falutes the principall Gueft with a low courtefie, and holding a cup of Wine : then goeth to the doore or porch, and first making a low courtese, turning his face to the South, powres out that cup on the ground, offering it to the Lord of Heaven, and bowing downe againe, returneth, and filling another cup goeth to that principall Guest, and bowing falutes him in the place in which the rites of falutation are vied; and then they goe together to 10 the Table where the chiefe Guest must fit. The midst of it is the chiefe place; there with both his hands he fets a dish with great veneration, and taking the two stickes (which vsually are of Ebonie, or Inorie tipped with Gold or Siluer, where they touch the meate) layer them by, and taking a feat, brusheth it with his sleeves lightly, and sets it in the middest; after which both

goe backe and bow themselves in the middest of the Roome. Thus hee doth to every one,

The Guefts courtefie to the Hoft.

Sipping oft, one draught,

placing the second on the left hand, the third on the right. Lastly, hee which shall have the chiefe roome receiueth of his feruant the Inuiters Dish and Cup, and bids Wine to be filled, and together with the other Guests and the Inniter, boweth downe and placeth the Dish on his Table (which is placed in the lower part of the Hall, with his backe to the South, and face to the chiefe Table) with the flickes and feat, as he had done before to him; and then all goe agains to 20 their place, with great ceremonie, to fit them better with both hands, he to whome the rite is done, standing by the side of the doer with his hands in his sleeues, and modestly bowing with thanks. They wash neither before nor after. After all this, they performe the last rite of inclination to the Inniter together, and then each to other, and then fit downe. When they drinke, the Inuiter with both hands takes the Cup in the Dish, and lightly lifting it vp, and then letting it down inuites them to drinke, all turning to him at the same time, and beginning to drinke, or to fip rather, foure or fine times fetting it to his mouth, not as we vie with one continued draught, After the first Cup the Dishes are brought in , of which the Inuiter beginning , all with their stickes apply a bit or two to their mouthes, diligently observing, not to lay downe their stickes before the principall Gueft hath layd downe his : and then the servants fill his , and after every 30 mans Cup, with hot Wine: and the same rite is againe and againe repeated, but more sipping then eating. Mean-while some discourse, or Comedie, or Mulike continue. The grace of their Feaft is variety, a little of each, Flesh also and Fish mixed, taking off nothing, but setting one Difth on another like Castles and Towers. Bread, and Rice (which there supplyes our Bread) comes not in solemne Banquets. They have games also, in which the loser is fined to drinke, with others disport. None is compelled to drinke aboue his strength. Their drinke is tipsie,

boyled like our Beere. Their folemne Banquets last all night, the remainders given to the Guess

but his Eunuches, and those which line in his Palace, Sonnes and daughters. None of the Magi- 40

frates without the Palace (the Eunuches also have their degrees) speake to the King butby

Throne and Dragon-enfignes are carued and gilded, often bowing and kneeling before it with

peculiar composition of the body to veneration, and wish ten thousand yeers of life to the King.

the Kings kindred make their appearance there and presents. All also which are named to any 50

The like is done on his Birth-day yeerely, the Pequin Magistrates and Provinciall Legates, and

Office by the King goe to give thankes to the Throne (for the King is not there) with rites prescribed with habite peculiar to that purpose, with an Juorie Table couering their mouth as of

as they speake before the King: the King was wont to come forth to a window, with such a

feruants. Neere the end of the Feaft they change Cups. In eating they are more moderate.

King observed. The King is observed with more Rites then any other in the World. None speakes to him

Peritions. New yeere.

Petition, and those with so many formes of veneration that none can make them, which is not well exercifed, though he be learned. Euery new yeare which beginnes with that New Moone which next precedeth or followeth the Nones of February, out of enery Province a Legate is fent to visite the King , which is done more solemnely every third yeere. Also in every Citis on euery Change day, all the Magistrates assemble to one place in their Citie, where the Kings

Kings colour

The Palace

Table in his hand, and another on his head, ouer his Crowne hanged, about with threads of gemmes, his face hidden in presence from the beholders. The Kings colour is yellow (forbidden to others) of which his garment is wrought with many golden Dragons, which are carued or painted in all the Palace, and Vessell, and furniture; in the roofe also; whence some have thought the Tiles to be of Gold or Braffe, being of a yellow Earth, each nayled to the Timber: with Nayles gilded on the heads, that all may appeare yellow. It were treason for another to arrogate that colour or Armes, except he bee of the Roy- 60 all linage.

The Palace gates are foure, to the foure corners of the World. They which passe by, descend from their Horses or Seats, and goe on foot till they be past, the greatest soonest alight, and that at Nanquin alfo, where no King hath of long time refided. The gates to the South both inner

and our ward are three, the King only going in and out at the middle (which otherwise is thut) Kings gate, others at the other gates on the right and left hand. Their computation of time is onely by the Time. Kings Raigne. Sometimes the King bestoweth a Title on the Parents of the principall Magi- Inleilrates by a certaine writing, made by the Kings Philosophers in the Kings name; eftermed wonderfully, acquired with any cost, and kept in the familie as a thing facred. The like opinion is of other Titles given to Widowes, expressed in two or three Characters, given to Widowes. Widowes. which to their old age have refused second marriages; or to old Men which have lived an hun- Old men, dred yeeres, and in like cales. They fet thefe Titles over their doores. Magistrates also doe the like to their friends. To good Magistrates Arches are erected at publike coft, of Marble : by Arches.

to Citizens also to some of their Citizens which have attayned any notable dignitie. The most precious Artifices thorow all the Kingdome are yeerely fent to the King to Pequin with great Pequin, costs. The Magistrates of the Kings Citie goe abroad with leffe pompe, on horsebackes and few of the principall in Sears, and those carried but by foure Porters : all in reverence of the King. Foure times in the yeere, once a quarter, all the Court Magistrates assemble at the Sepulchres of the antient Kings and Queenes, and make there their offerings: giving the princi- Funerals of pall honour to Humun. They prepare to this folemnitie certaine dayes falling at home and fur- Kings:

ceafing of faits.

Next to the King they honour their Magistrates, both in formes of words and visitations, to Honour of which none afpire but Magistrates; and they which have beene deprived lose not all honour in Magistrates. 20 this kind, but sometimes come forth in their habits, and are respected by their Citie Magistrates. If one bee preferred to another dignity, which hath well executed his Office, they honour him with publike gifts, and referue his Boots in a publike Chift, with Verses in his praise. To fome they erect Temples also, and Altars with Images, and some are deputed to keepe lights there burning, and odours, at publike Rent charge perpetually, with huge Cenfers of Bellmetall, as they doe to their Idols. Yet doe they diftinguish betwixt this and Divine worship, of their Gods asking many things, whereas these Rites are onely memorials, though many of the vulgar confound them together. Cities are full of fuch Temples, by friends often ere. As in the day had dirited the winger tomound them together. Once they goe and performe kneeling and bowing Saints worthing Rites, and offer Meats. Their Bookes are full of precepts for obleruing Parents with due honour, and that of 20 and in outward flew no Nation performes to much. They will not fit ouer against them but God

on the fide, speake to them with great reuerence, they suffaine their poorer Parents with their Honour of palabour in best manner they are able, and in nothing are more curious then their funerals. The mourning colour is white, and all their habite from the Shooes to the Cap of a strange See in Pantain and miferable fathion. The cause of three yeeres mourning for Parents, is because follong they of Funeralls carried them in armes with fo much labour of education : for others as they please, a yeare, or and mourthree moneths, as they are in neereneffe : For the King they mourne three yeeres thorow all the nings. Kingdome, and for the Lawfull Queene. Their funerall Rites are written in a Booke which they confult on that occasion, all the parcels of the habite there pictured. When a man of ranke is Mourningby

dead, the Sonne or next Kinsman sends Libels to the friends within three or foure dayes: all the books. 40 Roome is white, with an Altar in the midst, on which they place the Coffin and Image of the dead. Thither all the friends come in mourning one after another, & offer Odors and two Waxcandles on the Altar; whiles they burne, making foure bendings and kneelings, having first censed against the Image. The Sonnes stand at the side, and the women behinde, couered with a Curtaine, mourning the while : the Priests also borne Papers and Silkes, with certaine rites to minister Clothes to the deceasted. They abstayne from wonted Beds ( sleeping on Straw-beds on the ground neere the Corps) from fiesh and other daintier food, Wine, Bathes, companie with their Wines, Bankets, not going out for certaine moneths, remitting by degrees as the three yeeres expire. On the funerall day the friends are by another Libell inuited, to which Buriall. they goe in Procession forme, in mourning; many Statues of Men, Women, Elephants, Tigres, Lions, of Paper all going before, diversified in colour and gilding, which are all burnt before the

50 Graue: a long ranke of Idoll Priefts, Prayers, and Players on diuers Instruments obseruing diuers rices in the way; huge Bell-cenfers also carried on mens shoulders; after which followes the Herse under a huge carued Canopie adorned with Silkes, carried with forty or fifty men. Next the children on foot with states, and then the women enclosed within a white gestatory Curtaine, that they may not be seene: followed by women of the kindred in mourning Seats. The Graues are all in the Suburbs. If the Sonnes bee absent, the Funerall pompe is deferred till their comming. They bring ( if it may bee) the deceaffed in another Countrey to lie by his friends. The Graues are adorned with Epiraphs in Marble magnificently. Thither on certaine dayes yeerely the kindred refort to cense and offer, and make a funerall banquet.

Their Marriages and Spoulals are with many rites, done in their youth; the Contracts com- Marriages 60 Their Marriages and Spoulate are with many rices, uone in their young.

pounded by the Parents without their conferns; they observe equalitie in yeeres and degree in pounded by the Parents without their conferns that he property leave. The poorer also but their the lawfull Wife. In their Concubines, luit, beauty, price beare Iway. The poorer also buy their Wines, and when they lift fell them. The King and his kindred respect onely beauty, Magiftrates appointed to make the choife. One is his lawfull Wife; the King and his Heire having

Sur-names

394

tew. In Eng-Birth.day.

Virilis pileus. Candlemas.

Women.

Haire.

Rings.

Name-cere-

Great name.

Religious Greaterthen

nine other Wives a little inferiour, and after them fixe and thirty, which are also called Wives: his Concubines are more. Thole which bring forth Sonnes are more gracicus, especially the Mother of the eldeft. This is also familiar to other families the row th. Kingdome. There fifth Momeror meencer, Imas sanchemmas comments of the Royall families) are a: land-mails, and may not fit, but fland in prefence of either of them: their Children allo calling that lawfull Wife their Mother, and for her (though not the true Parent) chierue triennial mourning. In Mariages tew. in Eug. they are curious not to take any of the fame fur-name, of which fur-names there are not a thoufand in all that vaft Kingdome. Nor may any man frame a new jur-name, but must have one antient of the Fathers side, except he be adopted into another familie. They respect no affinity antient of the Patiers But, except the de adopted and the Mothers kindred almoft in any to confanguinity in a differing fur-name, and lo marrie with the Mothers kindred almoft in any to degree. The Wife brings no portion, and although when thee first goeth to her Husbands house the street-full of houshold attends her, yet is all promided by his costs which sends money some

Euery mans Birth-day is fethually celebrated with Preferrs, Banquets and iollity: especially after the fiftieth yeere explice (at which time they are reckoned among it old men) and then auter the intrestry cere. The Children then procure Emblemes of their friends, and Epigrams, and forme write Bookes. That day is also festivall in which they are of age to take the Mani tap, which is about twenty yeeres, till that time wearing their haire loote. But the first New and Full Moone of the years is most generally testinall; each man then having ingeniously desifed Lights or Lamps made of Paper, Glaffe, or other matter, the house terming by the discribed 10 Lights to bee on a light fire. They runne vp and downe allo with great stirres in the night with Fire workes. Dragon-famioned Lights, and make great thewes of Powder-fire-workes.

The Chinois are white (but neerer the South more browne) with thinne beards (some had chans persons using none) with staring haires, and late growing; their haire wholly blacke; eyes narrow, of Egge forme, blacke and standing out: the nose very little, and scarcely standing forth; eares meane: in some Proninces they are square taced. Many of Canton and Quams Proninces on their little toes haue two nailes, as they haue generally in Cachin-china. Their women are all low, and account great beauty in little feet, for which cause from their infancy they bind them ftraight with clothes, that one would sudge them sump-sooted: this, as is thought, desided to make them house-wives. The men and women both alike let their haire grow without cutting: 30 but Boyes and Gitles till they are fifteene yeere old, are cut round, leauing a locke onely on the crowne : after which they let it gr w loofe ouer their shoulders till twenty. The most of the Priests shaue head and beard every eighth day. When they are men they binde up their baire in a Cap or Coife made of horse or mans haire, or in a filken Cawle; and in Winter of woollen: on the top it hath a hole, where the haire comes forth, and is tyed in a neate knot. The women weare not this Cap, but binde up their haire in a knot, and make it up with a dreffeof Gold, Silver, Stones, and Flowers. They weare Rings on their cares, but not on their fingers.

The men and women weare long garments. The men double them on their breaft, and raften them under both the arme-holes; the women on the midst of the breast. They weare wide long fleenes; but the womens wider, the mans flraighter, at the wrifts. Their Caps are artificially 40 wrought. Their Shooes are much differing from ours; the men weare them of Silke with diuers workes and flowers, exceeding the elegance of our Matrons. Shooes of Leather none but the meaner fort weare; and scarcely admit they Leather soles, but of Cloth. The Caps of their Learned are square, of others, round. Euery one spends halfe an houre at least in combing and trimming his haire. They winde also long clouts about their feet and legs, and therefore weare their Breeches loofe. They weare no Shirts, but a white Coat next the skinne, and wash often. They have a feruant to carrie a Shadow or great Sumbrers over their heads against the raine and Sunne; the poore carrie one for themselues.

For Names, befides the fur-name of which is spoken, the Father gives one to the Sonne (for females have no name but the Fathers sur-name, and called as they are borne, first, second, third, 50 in order of the Sifters: ) by this name they are called by the Father and Eiders; others call Fathers name: them like wife from that order amongst the Brethren, as is said of Sisters. They in their writings call themselves by that which their Father gaue them ; but if others either equall or superiour should so call them, it were both vacinill and injurious. When a Boy goeth to Schoole his Schoole name. Mafter giueth him another name, which is called his Schoole name, whereby onely his Mafter and Schoole-fellowes may still him. When he hath his Mans cap put on, and marrieth a Wife, Letter name, some more honourable person give h him a more honourable name, which they call, the Letter. by this any man may call him, but those which are subject to him. And when he is now at the full growth, he receiveth of some grave person his most honourable name, which they call Great, whereby any may call him present or absence but his Parents and Elders still vie the Letter-62 name. If any protestea new Sect, his Instructor calls him by a new name, which they call, of Religion. And when one visites another, he will aske what is his Honourable name, to shie him thereby: and we were therefore fayne to take a Greater name then that which we received in chriftian name, Baptilme, for them to call vs by.

Сн AP.7.\$-5. Seales, Seats, Ships, Masters, Games, Theeues, Dayes, Diviners.

They are fludious of Antiquities : much value old Trinets of Bell metall, Pictures in blacke and white Characters and writings, feeled with the Authors feale (for there are many Counterfeiters.) The Officers have all a Seale proper to their place given by Hunrun, which they vicon- Seales of Ma. ly fealing with red colour : and if they lose the Seale they lose the Office, and are besides seuerely gistrates. punished; and therefore they carry it with them, in a sealed and locked Boxe, and neuer leave it out of fight, at night keeping it vader their Pillow. Graue men goe not on foote thorow the streets, but are carryed in a feate closed, except they lift to open the fore-part, whereas Magiftrates feates are enery way open. Matrons feates are altogether closed, but easily knowne from Seats in which mens by the fashion. The Law forbids Coaches and Litters. Some Cities are in the midst of Ri- they are carryto uers and Lakes, in which they have very neate Boates to passe the streets. And because they goe edonames more by water then ours, therefore there Shipping is more convenient and elements. Boulders. more by water then ours, therefore there Shipping is more convenient and elegant. But the Boates kinja Magistrates, built by publike cost are as commodious as Houses, with divers Lodgings, a Hall, Kitchin, Cells, so neate as seeming Great mens houses, rather then Ships; and therefore they make their folemne Banquets a Ship-board, passing along the Rivers and Lakes for further pleafure. All within shines with Charams or shining Vernish in divers colours, and the Carued fure. All within inines with combined fweetes to the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their workes gilded in places, with combined fweetes to the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their workes gilded in places, with combined fweetes to the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their works gilded in places, with combined five the combined for the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their works gilded in places, with combined five the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their works gilded in places, with combined five the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their works gilded in places, with combined five the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their works gilded in places, with combined five the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their works gilded in places, with combined five the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their works gilded in places, with combined five the Eyes and Nofe. Masters more then with vs, so that if a man have beene anothers Scholler but one day in any Art, hee calls him Master euer after, and neuer sits in any meeting but at his side, and doth

Dice-play and Cards are common with them: Cheffe also with the graver persons, not also. Games, gether valike ours: but their King neuer remoues but to the foure next roomes, and the Bishops Cheffe. haue their Queenes. They have also which they call Poulder passes, which goe before the Knights and follow the Paunes. They have a grave Game in a table of three hundred roomes with two hundred men white and blacke, in which Magistrates spend much time, and the curning skill whereof gets much credit to a man, although hee can doe nothing else; and some chule fuch their Masters with wonted rites. Theft is not punished with Death : the second fault These punishtherein, is branded with an hot Iron and Inke in the Arme, with two Characters, the third time ment in the Face, after with their terrible W hipping or condemning to the Gallies, for a time limitted : so that there are abundance of Theenes. Euery night in Cities, many Watchmen at cer-30 tayne times beare Basons as they walke the streets, the streets also enclosed and shut, yet many thefts are committed, the Foxe being the Goofeherd, and the Watch partners with the Theefe. The Cities in greatest Peace in the midst of the Kingdome, are shut every Night, and the Keyes

Of their Superstitions, Cruelties, feares of Magistrates, of the Kings kindred, of Strangers and Souldiers. Their Deiries and three Sects: Priests, Nunnes, Monasteries, Legends, Lyes.

O superstition is so generall in the Kingdome, as the observation of luckie and valuekie chaps. Dager and Houses, for which purpose yeerely is Printed a two-fold Table of dayes by Obscruzion the Kings Affrologers, in fuch plentie that every house is full of them. In them is of times. written on enery day, what may bee done or not, or to what houre yee must forbeare Twofold Albusinesse, which may in that yeer happen. There are others more dangerous Masters, which different beginning of Building or Journaying cill their appointed day or houre come: & then Impollors how unfitting focuse that products with croffe weather, they fer on neuertheleffe, though it be how similarly locate that products white the workenight thence appears to take beginning. The like superfitious obfernation they have of the moment of the Nationitie, which they precifely fit downe, divers professing by Astrologie, or by superstitious numbers, or by Physiognomic, or Palmestrie, or Dreames, or words in Speech, or politure of the body & by innumerable other wayes to force and elling of tell future Fortunes, many Gpfe-juglings vied to fuch impoflures, as by a stalking Knaue which Fortunes, full profess his Fortunes exactly told him by the professor, or by searning out of printed Bookes that proteins no rotemps exactly took man by one proteins, or by reatting one of proteins which describe every Citie, Street and Familie, what hath hapned as an argument of the truth orthat which they fay shill happen. Yea, their credulitie breeds such strong imagination, that Strengthof 60 same being foretold of a Sicknesse such a day, will then fall sicke of conceit.

Many also consult with Deuils and familiar Spirits, and receive Oracles from the mouth of Deuils consul-Infants, or of Bealts, not without fraud. They are imperilitious in chaining a plot of ground, toe-ted. Intants, or or pears, not without read. They are uper introduced a tayle and feete of disers. Dra. Dreames of gess, which lise (forflooth) valler our earth, whence depends all good of bad Fortune. Dizers Dragons.

Learned men busie their wits in this abstruse Science, and are consulted when any publike Buildings are rayled. And as Aftrologers by the Starres, fo these Geologers by inspection of Rivers. Fields, Mountaines and scite of Regions, foretell Destinies ; dreaming by setting a Doore or Window this or that way, conveying the rayne to the right or left hand, by a higher or lower roofe, honour and wealth shall accrue to the House. Of these Impostors the Streets, Cities. Courts, Shops, Markets are full, which fell that which themselves want, good Fortune to all Foole-fortunate buyers : yea, Women and blinde folkes professe it, and some find such Chapmen of the Learned, Noble, King and all, that they grow to great riches by others little wits. Alldifafters publike or private are attributed to Fate, and ill scite of some Citie, House or Palace. The noise of Burds, the first meeting in the Morning, Shadowes caused by the Sunne in the house, are in

Auguric.

Cruell vices

For other vices, some will make themselves Servants to rich men, to have one of the handand vanaturall maydes become his Wife, fo multiplying iffue to bondage. Others buy a Wife, but finding their family becomine too numerous fell their Sonnes and Daughters as Beafts, for two or three pieces of Gold (although no dearth prouoke him) to everlatting separation and bondage, some to the Portugals. Hence is the Kingdome full of Slaves, not captived in warre, but of their owne free-Child-felling. borne. Yet is service there more tollerable then else-where ; for every man may redeeme himfelfe at the price payd for him, when hee is able ; and there are many poore which with hard Child-killing, labour fuffayne themselues. A worse cuill in some Prouinces is theirs, which finding themselues Pittileffe pitte, poore, smother their new-borne Babes, specially Females, by an impious pietie and pittileffe pitte 10

Transmigrati. preuenting that sale to Slauerie, by taking away that life which even now they had given. They pretend hereunto also their Metempfychofis, dreaming that the Soule of that Infant shall the foo. ner passe into some more fortunate body : and are not therefore ashamed to doe this in others presence, yea not the meanest of the communaltie. Many more inhumanely kill themselves, ei-Selfe-flavers. ther wearse of a miferable life, or willing after death to bee reuenged of fome enemy, whiles to the Enemy of mankind many thoulands yeerely Sacrifice themselves, by Halter, Drowning, and Poyfon. Another immanitie in the Northerne Provinces is vied vpon Male Infants, whomfor Eunuches. hope of Palace preferments their Parents make Eunuches; of which in the Kings house are ten

thousand, a dull and blockish kinde of vokind vomanly men. Their Whippings also take away moreliues, then the executions of fentences to Death ; their Reedes slit two ells long, a fin- 10 ger thicke and foure broad, at the first blow breaking the skinne and flesh on the hinder part of the thighes : to preuent which many bribe the Magistrates, of whose domineering fulmesse of power they live in perpetual feare, where calumnies and lyes are so rife : which Chi-84 perfidiousnesse made the Kings come so guarded abroad and vnknowne, and now not to come

Kings kindred.

The Kings kindred are now growne to fixtie thousand, and daily increasing become abusthen to the publike, and daily increase in idlenesse, impotence, numbers, the King being very jear lous of them, and fetting Guards, befides their perpetuall exile from Pegnin and Nanguin. No Strangers con- maruell if Strangers be no better trusted in China, where the Natives and Bloud are suspected: out of whose Bookes they scorne to learne, and repute them little better then Beafts: and the to Characters whereby they expresse them are taken from Beasts. How Legats are held as prisoners in publike houses is else-where delivered. Commanders of Souldiers, which guard places are Souldiers bafe, guarded and watched, and not trufted with the pay of their Companies : neither is there any more base then the Souldiery, most Slaves or condemned persons, for their owne or their Auceftors cuils : and when they are free from exercises of warre, they become Muletters, Porters, and of other base Offices. The Captaynes onely have some authoritie. Their armes are worthleffe for offence or defence, and onely make a flew, the Captaynes being also subject to the Magiftrates whippings. Their Alchimifticall vanitie, and fludy of long Life, with precepts and huse bookes of both, I omit. The founders for footh of these Sciences have gone body and souleto Heauen. The making of Siluer hath made many spend their siluer, wits and credit, cheated 50 by professing Artists; and the great Magistrates ( few in Pegnin free ) are taken up with the o-

ther Study; fome thortning their life to make it longer. They write of one of their Kings which

had procured such a potion of immortalitie, whom a friend of his was not able to diffwade from

that conceit, enraged, by his fudden fratching & drinking his prepared potion : which he feeking

by death to revenge, the other answered, how can I be killed, if this draught cause immortalitie?

Studies of Allong life.

and if I may, then have I freed thee of this errour. Touching the China Sects, I read in their Bookes, that the Chinois from the beginning worshipped one God, which they call the King of Heaven, or by another Name Heaven and Earth. Beneath this Deitie, they worshipped divers tutelare Sprits of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the that Linterans four parts of the world. In all actions they held Reason to bee obeyed, which light of Reason 60 and calculate, they confessed they had from Heauen. Of that supreame Deitie and his administring Spirits, my not swell they neuer had such monstrous conceits as the Romans, Greekes, Egyptians, whence the lesures with be faued with-our the Pone hope that many of them in the law of Nature were faued. Their Sects are reckoned three: The out the Pope, nope that many of them in the law of Nature were raued. I heir Sects are reckoned that as the lades, first of the Learned, the second of Sciequia, the third Lauen. One of these is professed by all ters without God and Christ and worshipping that, which by Nature is not God?

which wie their Characters. That of the Learned, is most proper to China and most accient and all their Learned learne it in the course of their studies, Confusius is the Prince therof. This Sect hath no Idols, worships one God, beleeuing all things to bee conserued by his providence. They worfhip in inferiour fort the Spirits. The best of them teach nothing of the Creation : rewards and puriliments, they confine in this life to a mans lefte or his polteritie. Of the immortalitie of the Soule they freme to make no doubt, for they speake of the deceated lining in Heauern, but of Hell they make no mention. The later Learned deny both, with the foules immortalitie : yet fome fay, that the foules of good men are corroborated with vertue and made able to hold out, o-

thers dying with the body.

thers dying with the bounds.

The principall opinion feemeth borrowed of the Idoll Sect, fine hundred yeeres agoe; which Godfuppo ed The principate opinion retines to our matter, and that the Creatures are as formany the found that this whole Vinuerie conflits of one matter, and that the Creatures are as formany the found that the Creatures are as formal that th members of this huge body, fo that every one may actayne to the similitude of God bring one world members of this nage body, to that causy with him; which we confute out of their owne ancient Authors. Though the Literate acknow. Peffort had no ledge one supreame Deitie, yet they erect no Temple to him, nor any other place proper to his Temples, Worship, nor any Priests, persons or rites peculiar, nor have precepts thereof, nor any which prefcribeth, or punisheth defect of Holies; nor any which privately or publikely recite or ring ought to him. Yea they affirme, that the Office of Sacrificing to the King of Hesuen and his worthip belongs to the King : and if any should take on him that Office, hee should vsurpe the Kings, and be thereby a Traytor. For this purpole, the King hash two stately Temples in both Two Temples 20 Royall Cities, one dedicated to the House, the other to the Earth sin which former the evical Royal.

The Specifical has now in his place correspond Visibility to the submitted by the state of the

Royal Gites, one contested of the Army Magistrates have succeeded, which there facrifice ma Fried : Mighigh to Sacrifice, but now in his place certayne Magistrates have succeeded, which there facrifice ma ny Oxen and Sheepe, with many Rites. To the Spirits of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the foure frates infan-Regions of the world, onely the chiefe Magistrates Sacrifice, nor are the people admitted out,

thereto. The precess of this Law are contayned in the Tetrabiblion and fine Bookes of Dollrines; nor are any other Bookes allowed, but onely some Commentaries thereon. Nothing in this Obite, Sect is more of note then their yeerely Obite, or parentations to their deceased Parents, common to all from the King to the meanest, observing their dead Ancestrie as if they were living. Neither yet doe they suppose that they eate of the meate which is set them, or need it, but they haue no better meane to exprelle their loue.

30 The Literate have a coffly Temple to Confusius in every Citie, by Law appointed, in that Confusius Temple place where the Schoole is, and adjoyning to the Magistrates Palace, which is let ouer the Ba- ple and Rites. chelors or Graduates of the first degree. In a principall place of that Temple his Image is erected, or elle his Name in golden Cubitall letters, written in a curious Table. Hither the Magultrates affemble enery New-moone, and Full, also the Bachelors, with wonted kneelings, Odours and Wax-lights, to acknowledge their Master. On his Birth-day and on other set times, they offer reftiual Diffies, thankefully confessing his learned workes, whence they have attayned their Degrees and Offices, but pray not to him nor looke for ought from him; but as is observed of their derd Parents. Other Temples also are seene of the same Sect to the Tute. Templeofine

As officers of the state of the Magnitude of the Thomas, where they follow the binde them these to follows to obligate Law and Indian when they follows to obligate them to be follows to obligate them to obligate them to be follows the to obligate them to be follows to obligate t 40 binde themselyes by solemne Oathes, to observe Law and Institut, when they first enter into their Temple. Office. In these they offer Dishes and Odours, but in differing Worship: for in these they ac- Outhol Magiknowledge, there is a Dinine power to punul the perjurious, and reward the good. The loope fluter. of this Laterate Sect, is the peace and good of the Common-wealth, and of Families, and of each perfons; their precepts agreeing with Nature and Christianitie. Fine Relations or Societies are Fine combinations observed by them, comprehending all duties of humanitie; of Father and Child, of Husband and tions Wife, of Master and Servant, of elder and younger Brethren, of Fellowes and Equals. They condemne Single life, permit Polygamie, and in their Bookes largely explaine that precept of Charltie, to doe to another as a man would be done to. They deny this to bee a Sect, but a certayne Acadamie instituted for the gouernment of the Common-wealth; and because it prescribes not, nor

50 prohibiteth any thing touching the Life to come, many adjoyne the other two Scots to this. The second Sect is called Sequia or Ominge, and by the Imporiants, Sciecca and Amilabu. Second Sect Both have the same Characters, and the same Totoque or Law. It came to the Chimois from the began Albes, Weft, brought from the Kingdome of Thienfew or Scints, now called Indeftan, betwixe Indus and Ganger, about the yeere of Christ 65. It is written that the King of Chma, warned in a Dreame, fent Legars thither, which brought Bookes and Interpreters from thence, the Authors of them nert Legast citizen, within cought Dooks and anterpreters from citizene, the running of being dead. And threefore I lee not how truely the Iapminn affirme that Science and Amidaba pierced thirter, and were Natue of Stam. The Authors of this See, have taken some things out Domerstians. of our Philosophers. For they hold foure Elements, and manifold Worlds and transmigration of systems and

Soules, and other things. Somewhat it teemes to acknowledge the Trimne fabling of three 60 Gods becomming one sit acknowledgeth suff rewards to the good in Hessen, to the bad in Hell. It extols Single life, so as it may seeme to reject Marriage. They leave house and friends and Likenessee. exauell into duers places Begging. The Rete of this prophare Seed, has great affinitie with our (Asom/b) Eccleiafficall: the Singings of more faviors than Green and the reaching a single and those or and the service of the service (Assurph) Eccleinfficial: the Singings of men faying their fertice may leeme nothing to differ Cont., most (Aussian) Economical to the Singlings of ment raying their former may be more forming country from our Gregorian; they have Images also in their Churches; their Priests Garments are also monomicate.

the streets ends on cercaine times, hired by the dwellers. They have a Prelate called Ciam; which dignity he transmitted to his posterity 1000, yeeres giam Prelate. fince by hereditary fuccessions, and seemeth to have taken beginning from a Magician which liued in a Caue of Quiamifi Prouince, where his posterity still continueth. Their Prelate liueth

most commonly at Pequin, observed by the King, and admitted into the inmost Palace to consecrate and hallow the Roomes suspected to bee hanted by ill spirits. Hee is carried in an open Chaire, and with other pompe competent to the chiefe Magistrates, and is allowed by the King 10 a great Renenue. But I haue learned of a Conuert that thes: Prelates now are so ignorant that Tanfiu (Prietts) and their Monasteries, many of which are also Alchimitts, These three Sects Multiplication have divertified themselves into 300 in seeming, daily encreasing and growing worse and worse. of Sees.

Humvu ordayned that these three Lawes should be kept for the good of the Kingdome, onely the Literate to rule; whence it comes that they feeke not to ruine each other. The Kings make vie of them all for their purposes, often repairing the old, and building new Temples. The Kings wives are more prone to the Idoll Sect, and maintayne whole Monasteries without the Palace, and buy their Prayers with Almes. The Islols are not onely in Temples in this Kingdome, but in primte houses in peculiar places, in streets, ships, Palaces, they are the first things you see, and 20 yet put they little confidence in them. Their wifeft men feeke to mixe all three Sects together, and to whiles they embrace all, are of none, and proue Arbeifts.

gether like ours, which with an Ecclefiafficall terms wee call, Pinnalia. In their Service they often recite the name Tolome, which themselves confesse to be ignorant of. But they denie eternitie in their Heauen and Hell, alcribing a new birth after I know not what revolutions of time. in some other of their conceited Worlds, then and there to be penitentially purged; withother o fooleties. They prohibite to eate of liuing creatures, but few impose on themselves this abstinence, and they finde easie absolution from this and other sinnes, it they give to the Priests, who professe to deliver from Hell by their Prayers or Recitations, whom they will.

This Sect came in at first with great applause, as clearely professing the Soules immortalitie : but nothing more differed it, then that that King and thefe Princes which first embraced it (which the Literate often object) died miferably with violent death, and publike loffe and miffortune followed. By writing of many Bookes they have entangled it in mextricable Labyrinths. The notes of Antiquity appeare in the multitude of their Temples, and most of them fumptuous : in which huge Monsters of Idols of Braffe, Marble, Wood, and Earth are feene; with ples. Sceeples, Steeples adjoyned of Stone or Bricke, and in them huge Bells, and other ornaments of great price.

coitly Temmany and mi-

The Priests of this Sect are called Ofciami, they shaue their head and beard, against the fashion of the Countrey: some travell, as is said, some leade a very austere life in Mountaines and Caues, but the greatest part which amount to two or three millions, line in Monasteries, sustayned with their antiently-given Revenues, and Almes, and alfo by their owne industry. These Priests are accounted and juffly, the most vile and vicious in the whole Kingdome, frung of the bafeff plebeians, fold in their childhood to the elder Ofiami, and of Slaues made Difciples, fucceed their Mafters in Office and Benefice, a course which they have found for their propagation. For, few are found which voluntarily by defire of fanctitie doe adjoyne themselves to those Monkes, Ignorance also and illiberall education makes them liker their Masters, few of them learning Letters or civill rites; and daily growing worse. And although they have no wives, they are much addicted to women, and cannot but by grieuous penalties be kept from them. The Colledges of the Ofciams are divided into divers Stations, in every of which is one per-

petuall Administrator, to whom his fernants or as many as he brings up, succeed. They acknowledge no Superior in those Cells, but every one in his owne Station builds as many Lodgings as he can (most of all places, in the Court) which after they let to strangers, so that they are rather Innes then Monasteries, as full of tumults as empty of deuotion. Although they bee of base e-steeme, yet are they employed to Funerals and other Rites, by which wilde beasts, and sowles. of wide erea. and fishes are set at liberty, by the professors of this Sect with opinion of great merit. In this tures. See P.n. our age this Sect hath much retitued, and many Temples are built and repaired, by Eunuches, A River faire. Women, and the rule vulgar, and especially by the Ciacum, or Fasters, which all their lives abflavne from Fleih, Fifh, ( Egges, and Milke) and worship a multitude of Idols with set prayers at home, and are by hire to be called to any other mans. Nunnes also observe the same Monasti-Miss, or Nuns, call rules, being fingle and flaued; they call them Nunnes, nothing fo many as the Monkes.

The third Sect is called, Lanza, derived from a Philosopher which lived at the fame time with Confutius, whom they fable to have beene carried 80. yeeres in his parents wombe before he was borne, and therefore called, Lanza, that is, the Old Philosopher. He left no Bockes of his Opinion, nor feemes to have intended any new Sect, but certaine Sectaries, called Taufa, made him the head of their Sect after his death, and wrote divers elegant Bookes gathered out of divers Sects. Thefe alfo line fingle in their Monasteries, and buy disciples, base and wicked as the former. They weare their haire as the Lay-men, differing herein, that where they weare their haire twed on a knot, these haue a Cap on the crowne of Wood. Some also are married, and say our their Holies in their owne houses. They say, that with other Idols they worship also the Lordof Heanen, whom yet they imagine Corporeall, and to have suffered many things. They tell, that the King of Heaven which now raigneth, is called Ciam, and he which before ruled was named Len. This Len came one day to the Earth riding on a white Dragon, and Ciam a Wizard entertayned him with a Feast, where whiles Len was eating, Cum gat vp on the white Dragon, and 10 Liss Hill, neere was carried to Heauen, and excluded Less from that four raignty; only he obtayned of this new the great Lake. King, that he might rule ouer a certaine Mountaine in his Kingdome, where they fay he fill liueth: thus confessing (as the Greekes of lose) themselves to worship an Vsurper and Traitor.

> having some dreame also, as the former of the Trinicie. They also speake of places of rewards and punishments, but differing from the former: for they promife a Paradife for foule and body together, and have Images of fome in their Temples which have fo gone thither. To obtayne this, they prescribe certaine exercises of sitting in divers pollures, fee Prayers, Medicines by which the life is lengthned, if not made immortall. Their Priests exorcise Deuils, and drive them out of houses, by painting herrible shapes of them 60 in yellow Paper on the walls, and making horrible cryes as it them felues were become Deuils. They arrogate also to bring downe or to stay Rames, and other publike and private fortunes, most impodent impottors, either Lyars or Magicians. They affift the Kings facritices in those Temples of Hemen and Earth (thereby acquiring much authority) being Matters of the Mutike therein:

Befides this Deity of Heaven, they acknowledge three others, one of which they fay, Lauza is,

Innes.

Third Sect. Lyc of Lauzu,

## ). V I.

## Of Strangers, and forraine Religions in China.

Ow inhospitall the Chinois are to Strangers, we have in part heard, neither permitting egreffe to the Natines, nor ingreffe to Aliens except in three respects. The first, such as come to pay their annual Tributes. The second, such as pretending honour and tribute, come (as wee haue heard) from the West with seeming tribute, a colour to their gaine by merchandife. The third, fuch as in admiration of the Chimies vertues and learming, come thither (as the Qieene of Sheba to Salomon) to learne the fame, which is the Isfantes pretence : but these must here fixe their habitation , nor may be suffered to returne ; such is their fealousie, of discouering their mysteries to others. And this made the lessites, after so long stay, free from feare of expulsion, which yet fince complaine of perfecution. But it may not be known, that they have any intelligence or commerce with stranger .: & therfore the lefuster, which have obtayined two fo great priviledges, the Eurisches Palace for their refidence, and the imployment in correcting the China Kalender, both by Royall approbation; yet could not obtayne leave to 40 goe into the Prounce of Canton, though with Mathematicall pretexts for that Kalender-busines, to observe longitudes and latitudes of places, because they were said to be Countrymen to those of Macao. Yea, a Colas, or Counfellor of State, was deprined, for fending a message to a bordering King; a tempest of libelling complaints thundring and showring against him therefore. In the bordering Provinces they fee narrow watch at Cuitom-houfes, Bridges, and in the very Rivers, by thips of warre thereto appointed. But if they be once gotten into the inner parts of the Kingdome, there are no such Officers, nor fearches. Neither may any stranger past out of the Kingdome, after once entring, without the Kings licence. The tefautes steale their ingresse and egresse by meanes of the Portugals, which had the Towne of Macao affigned them by the Channes, for trafficke. These come vivally twice a yeare to the chiefe Citie of the Province of Canton, which is not called Quantum, or Canten, (the name of the Province) but Quant cen. All the day time This is allo tethey have free entrance in the Citic about their merchandife, but mutt lie on fhipboord at night. About Many

In the midft of the River there is a little Hand, and therein a Temple, in which they are allowed de Manjon. their Catholike denotions. There by Boat did they prounde to feale in or out of the Country. The Mahametan that come in by land, if they flay nine yeeres (as is observed may never return Many Mobile home againe. Of these there are now many thousand Families in China, dispersed into the most measuraches of the Prouinces and chiefe Cities. They have there their Temples very fumptuous, and their Circumcifion. But as farre as I could euer loarne, they neither teach, nor care to teach, others their denotions, but are vnskilfull of the Saracens Tenents, and are contemned of the Chinose. It feems, that their comming in was in the time that the Tatar reigned here, which fince have increased,

60 and after folong continuance, are not held in suspicion, as other strangers. Some say, after the fourth generation they are reputed as Natiues; year they are admitted to the studies of Learning. Degrees, and Magistracy, as well as the Chinose. But most of these, thus dignified, relinquish their former superstition, retayning nothing thereof, but abstinence from Swiner Best, which rather by Nature, then for Religion, they abhorre.

Мm 2

Christians.

Pinto.269.

Touching Christians in China, there is not so great certainty. Certaine Mogores told Ricing of some in the Xensian Province, in the North parts of China, at a place called Xucheo, which were white, hearded, vied Bells, worshipped Ifa, that is, Iefm, and Marie, and honoured the Crucifixe ; their Priefts married , which cured diferfes without medicines. A lew at Pequin gaue more full intelligence, that at Caifumfu, and at Linem, in the Province of Sciantum, and in the Prouince of Sciansi, there lived certaine Strangers, whose Ancestours had come out of forraine parts, which worshipped the Crosse which the Chinois expresse by the Character of Ten ) and made the figne thereof with the finger on their meate and drinke. They also made the fame figne with Inke on the foreheads of their children, to preferue them from misfortunes. A lefinte alfo faw, in the hands of an Antiquarie, a Bell, with a Church and Crosse thereon grauen, circum- Io fcribed with Greeke letters. The Iew also reported that those Croffe-worshippers had the same doctrine in their prayers which the lewes held: this the leswies interpreted of the Platter common to them both. Hee affirmed that there were many of them in the Northerne Provinces, which to flourished in Letters and Armes, that they grew fuspicious to the Chinair, which hee thought was caused by the Saracens some fixty yeeres before. The Magistrates were so incenfed hereby, that they for teare were dispersed, some turning lewes; some Saracens; others Idea laters : and their Temples were also converted into Idolatrous Temples, one of which he menfioned in his Countrey. Euer fince they hade their profession, and when the lesuites fent one of their Converts to make enquirie, he could learne of none : which they thought proceeded from their feare, taking him for a Spie fent from the Magistrates.

All these Sects the Chinois call, Hoei, the lewes diftinguished by their refusing to eate the finew or leg; the Saracens, Swines flesh; the Christians, by returing to feed on round-hoofed beasts. Affes, Hories, Mules which all both Chinois, Saracens, and lewes doe there feed on. The Saracens called the Christians also Ifai, as before; and Terzai, which is a name given in Persia to the Armenian Christians (as an Armenian affirmed to Ricius ) whence hee coniectured, that these Christians came out of Armenia. And by the report of Hauton the Armenian, which fayth, their Sce fup pag. 115 King came to the Great Can of Cathay (which wee have before observed, at least the best parts thereof, to be the North parts of China) to perswade him and his to become Christians; which in great part also hee affected , besides other Christians there reported to bee , by Paulus; and those of Sarnan, subject to the Great Can, mentioned by Vertomannus, which seeme to be neere 30 these in China. The Malabar Christians have Chaldee memorials of China, converted by Saint

Thomas; and their Metropolitan hath his style of all India and China.

A certaine lew at Pequin hearing of the lefuites there, came to them to fee and conferre with

chálamfu. Iew at Pequin

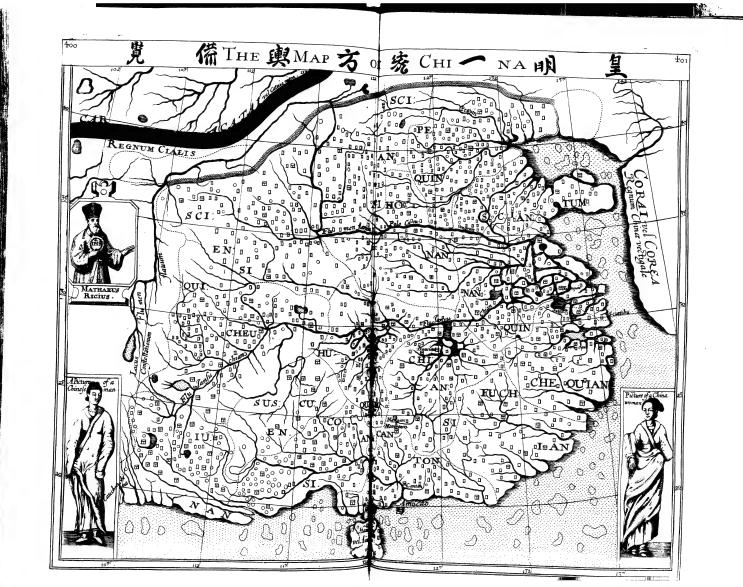
Sian.

them, imagining them to be Ienes. This Ien was borne at Charfamfa, the Mother-citie of the Province Honan, his name was Ngai, his countenance not refembling the Chinois; hee neels-Cting Indaifme, had addicted himselfe to the China fludies, and now came to Pequin to the examination, in hope of proceeding Doctor. There did hee enter the leseues House, professing that he was of their Law and Religion. Ricer leads him into the Chappell, where on the Altar food the I mage of the Virgin, lefus, and Iohn Baptist, kneeling; which he taking to be the Images of Rebecca and her Twins, did worship vnto them, contrary ( he faid ) to their custome. The Ima- 40 ges of the Euangelists he supposed to be so many of lacobs sonnes. But youn further question ming, the lesuite perceived that he was a professor of the Law of Moses: he confessed himselfe an Ifrachte, and knew not the name of Iem; fo that it feemed, the dispersion of the ten Tribes had pierced thus farre. Seeing the Hebrew Bible, hee knew the Letters, but could not reade them. He told them that in Chaifamfu were ten or twelve Families of Ifraelites, and a faire Synagogue, which had lately coft them ten thousand Crownes; therein the Pentateuch in Rolls, Which had bin with great veneration preserved five or fix hundred yeers. In Hamches the chiefe Citie of Chequian, hee affirmed, were many more Families with their Synagegue; many also in other places but without Synagogues, and by degrees wearing out: his pronunciation of Hebren names differed from ours, as Herusoloim, Moscia; for Messia, Ierusalem. His Brother, hee said, 50 was skilfull in the Hebrew; which he in affection to the China preferment had neglected; and therefore was hardly centured by the Ruler of the Synagogue.

Ifraelites dilewes at Han-

> To this Citie did Ricci fend one of his to enquire, who found those reports true, which also copied the beginnings and endings of their Bookes, which they compared, and found to agree with their owne Pentarench, fauing that they wanted prickes or points. He wrote also in Chie Want of prices no Characters to the Ruler of their Synagogue, that hee had the rest of the Bookes of the Old Testament, and other Bookes of the New, which contayned the acts of the Messias, being already come. The Ruler doubted, faying, that he would not come till ten thousand yeeres were expired. Hee also promised, that because hee had heard much good of him, if hee would come

thither, and abiliaine from Swines flesh, they would make him Ruler of their Synagogue. Af- 60 ter this, three Ienes came from thence to Pequin, and were almost perswaded to become Chriflians. These complayned, that through ignorance of the Hebrew, their Religion decayed, and that they were likely all of them in a short time to become Saracens or Ethnikes. The old Archifynagogue, was now dead, his fonne a young man succeeded in place, but ignorant of their



Law. And that their lewift Religion was indeed languishing, appeared by this, that they both worshipped the Popish Images, and complayned that in their Synagogue and primate houses they had none. They were offended that they were forbidden the eating of any creature, which themselues had not killed, which had they observed in this Journey had cost them their lives. Their wines and neighbours esteemed Circumcifion of their Infants on the eighth day a cruell thing, which they could be willing to alter, with acceptation of the Christian Law, nor would much standabout Swines flesh.

As for the Christian Religion thither carried by the Iesuites, you have heard the whole substance of their owne large Histories ; I meane not of Miracles , and other like stuffe and stuffings, To but the meanes of conuaying the Gospel to the Chinois, which are merchandise, money, & gifts, Mathematiks, Memorative-art, Morality, which to China Couetoufnes and Curiofity with their conforming to Confusius Ethikes, and China Literature, Habite, Names and officious Rites, were good Orators, and made way with much adoe to that little which is done; a mutuall exchange in many things, of Romife for Chinois Beades , Shauing , Vefts, Songs , Murafimus , Ta. pers, Cenfers, Images, Legends, Monkes, Nunnes, Processions, Pilgrimages, Monasteries, Al. tars, hee and shee Saints, and other things innumerable pertayning rather to bodily exercise which 1.Tim.4.2. tars, hee and thee Dantes, and other raines innumerance percayining tasher to would not married profite thirds, then to Goddinesse, or God-likenesse, who being a Spirit, required men to worshop 104,13,14 beam in spirit and truth; and by foolshousses for praching faueth them that between 100 prosidence of 1601,13,14 words, in elegant writings, and those more of Arts then Christianisy. The great Doctor of the on Gentilas tooke another course, not with excellency of words, fayth he, or wisedome; yea, bee efter-

med to know nothing among the learned Corinthians but Iefus Chrift and him crucified : neither food 1.Car. 21,233 bis word in the entifing speech of mans wisedome, but in playme enidence of the Spirit; not the wisedome of the World, but the wifedome of God in amysterie, &c. Which I speake not as denying the feruice of Arts to Dininity, but of Dininity in manner to Arts, where the profession is not as of a Tent-maker to live that he may preach, but as of an European Philosopher, where Hager domineereth, and Sora at some times whilpers a little, and except in Images and Shewes scarcely thewes her felfe, as more fully appeareth in the fore-going Hittory. But would God any Arts Waiton, c. t. or any Preachers may occasion the opening of their eyes, which were wont to bragge of two eves, and lay Europeans had but one, when as they have but this one natural eye, and in spiri-30 tual things are blinde: and would God the Chinois might as generally acknowledge themfelues thankfull to lessitical labours in professing the Gospell, as I doe here my selfe for this His-

è. VII.

The Map of China, taken out of a China Map, printed wish China Characters; illustrated with Notes, for the understanding thereof.

seeing He originall Map, whence this prefent was taken and contracted, was by Captaine Serie (whole industrie and acks haue both here and elfewhere enriched this worke) gotten at Bassam of a Chinese, in taking a distresse or debts owing to the English He originate study, whether this phenomenon both here and elsewhere enriched this worke) Test. 144.14 gotten at Banam of a Chinese, in taking a distresse for debts owing to the English 42.03. Merchants; who feeing him carefull to conuay away a Boxe, was the more carefull to apprehend it, and therein found this Map, which another Chimese lodged at his house, lately come from China, had brought with him. The greatnesse of the danger at home (if knowne) The China

made him earnefly begge for that which was on the other fide as earnefly defired and kept, is loss of Malter Haking procured it of the Captaine, professing his intent to give it to Prince Henry of Suragers. glorious memory, who being fuddenly advanced to a higher view in Heauen, and Mafter Hak-

days following, this Map came to my hand, who fought to express my loue to the publike in communicating what I could thereof. For it being in China Characters (which I thinke none in England, if any in Europe, vn.lerstands) I could not wholly give it, when I give it; no man being able to receive, what he can no way conceive, And as in greatest things our little understandings easier apprehend negations then affirmations, and can better tell what they are not, then what they are 16 this Map eafily tells at fifth, Benefit of this euen wirhout Commentaries, the comments and conceits of our Geographers, Ortelms, Mer. Map moonts cator, Hondius, and what societ other our Authors of Maps, and Globes, who all haue heerein tingothers. fayled, gining nothing leffe then China in their China; whether wee regard the generall figure

and shape thereof, or the particular Rivers, Hills, Provinces, Wall, Latitude, and if wee beleeve the lesistes Longitude also. They present it in forme somewhat like a Harpe, whereas it is also most foure square; they make Hills, Rivers, Lakes, Ilands, ( Cora, also for one, which is part of cora no lland, the Continent ) Cities, Prouinces, every thing out of due place. Whose industry I commend; but industry guided by fansie, and without light, is but the blind leading the blind, or like a freled vamanaged Horfe, the more spurred, the more ready to carrie his Rider into precipices, or out of the way at least. Our Geographers haue indeed payd the Chineis in their owne Coine:

for they, as before yee have read, knew nothing in manner of the other parts of the World, and expressed them as fanfifully in their Maps; and wee likewise knowing nothing of them, have entertayined, and beene entertayined with Fanfi-maps, in flead of those of China. As therefore by Sir Thomas Roes honourable industry wee haue given you Indus and India before, which no Geographer before had done (they all bringing Indus thorow Cambaia, and some seeking for Ganges at (anton in (bina) fo here we give you a true China, the Chinas themselves bring our Guides, and the lefuires their both Examiners and Interpreters.

The Originall is about four foot one way, and almost fine foot the other, whereof a vard and some source inches square is the Map it selfe; the rest are China Discourses touching the sayd Map in their Characters and Lines (running downward, and beginning at the right hand to bee read, after their manner) which are heere omitted, as not vindentood. Yet have wee fome vinderstanding (as where wee see a man farre off, whom we know to bee a man, and can obsense his habit, gefture, motion, though wee see not the proper complexion of his face) by that which Pantous hath told vs before; namely, that those China Characters contayne all the Tributes of each Province, yea the number of Houses and perions in the same. And in the Map (of which wee have given an extract) hee fayth the Rounds and Squares are Cities and Townes of principall note all walled; adding that the Rivers are diffir thy delineated; and the great Lines are boundaries of Prouinces, (wee haue heere ex pressed them after our manner in little prickes,) the leffer expresse the chiefe Cities Iurisdiction. Ours hath no such leffe Lines, but those mentioned Rounds and Squares, which perhaps hee meaneth; for therein are many others in Character, and without fuch lines round or square, and therefore as I suppose without Iuridiction; and in this extract wee have left them out, because we exactly knew not their meaning, and perhaps sometimes are Cities, fornetimes Caftles or Townes, or Hills, or fome other thing: and filence fee med better, then labour to expresse an waknowne Character, or boldnesse to expresse our owne folly or to occasion others, deceiuing and being deceiued. These Rounds and Squares also have their Characters in them, and those greater Squares with Crosses, haue, some three others four

Besides Passogia, another hath helped further to the particular understanding, namely our famous Countryman Malter Candifb, who in his voyage about the Globe, brought home certains references taken out of the Map of China, neere which hee fayled, and it feemes by fome skilful 20 of the Languages both of China and Portugall, had the fame interpreted to him. That the Prouinces beare other names then in our Map or discourse is no wonder; for both the Chinois themfelues in divers Provinces speake divers languages, and in all have the Court language besides the peculiar : and the China Characters are the same to many Nations, each of which reades them into his owne language, dialect and appellation. Thus what one Prouince callerh Language (wanting the N.) by divertitie of Dial Ct, is elfe-where called Nanquin; Pequin, Paquin, and Puching yea, by other language Taybin, and Cambalu, and Suntien, or Citie of Heauen. I durft not interpret all, chu fing rather to giue an vincertayne truth, then to hazard a certayne errour. Mafter Canablus Notes are thefe.

" Perhaps this is Scienfi. nThefe leagues feeme doubt-Pequin.

falle, if the Iefuirsbe rrue: rather :he gueffe of the Pertugall Interpreter,then any fuch note in the Map. good Cofmo- 1 graphers to obterus de. grees. p Seiantum.

I He Province of Canfas \* hath 4. great Cities, and 20. fmall Cities, and 77. Townes and Castles : it contayeth in length 95. leagues a it hath 362000. Houses of great men that pay Tribute and 13900, men of Warre, and hath 47000, Horfes which are the Kings,

2 The great City of Paguin where the King doth lye, hath belonging to it 8, great Cities, and 18. small Cities, with 118. Townes and Castles, it hath 418789. Houses of great men o This note of which pay Tribute : it hath Horlemen for the War, 258 100 this City is in the latitude of oce. degrees to the North-wards, being there as cold as it is viually in Flanders. The Province of Sorehin hath 7. great Cities, and 16. fmall, with 12. Townes and Caffles,

and one great Citie, to which many repayre to fight against the Tartars; it hath ( ) leagues in 50 length, and hath 164118, great Houses which pay Tribute, and 96000 men of War. 4 The Province of Santo P hath 6. great Cities, and 14. fmall, with 90. Townes and Cattles; it is 82, leagues long, and hath 775 55, great Houles which pay Tribute : 62808, horie-

that there was men, and 31000. footmen of War. The Province of Oymen 4 hath 7. great Cities, and 14. fmall, with 90. Townes and Caltles; being 470. leagues long, and 132958. great Houses that pay Tribute, 82800. men of For the Chiman Warre. Out of this Prouince commeth Copper, Quick-illuer, and Black-lead.

6 The Province of . Cutchen hath 8. great Cities, and 12. fmall; and 82. Townes which make Armour to fight with the lawes which do inhabit beyond Cauchin-china: it is 100.leagues broad, and hath 32920. Horlemen and Footmen with 405670. great Houses which pay Tribute 63 whereof the men of War are payed.

7 The Pronince of Languyn hath 14. great Cities, and 17. fmall, and 95. Townes and Car Or Quichen, files: it is 1 20. leagues over, and hath 962818. great Houl s which pay Tribute : it hath in it 308900. men of Warre. Whereof there are 52500. Tartar Horlemen that take wages.

8 The Province of Vquam hath 14. great Cities and 19. small, 150. Townes and Castles, and is 210, leagues broad; and 53161. Houses that pay Tribute : and 71600, men of Warre.

9 The Province of Som hath 7. great Cities, and 11. small, and 103. Townes and Castles: and is 200. leagues broad : and hath Houses that pay Tribute 139567. and men of Warre

10 The Prouince of Essiram hath 12. great Cities, and 75. small, and 80. Townes and Cafiles, and is 440. leagues broad, and hath great Houses that doe pay Tribute 1242135. and 229000 men of Warre.

11 This Lake lyeth behind Siam, and before Champa, and doth joyne with the Lappians, and To from thence commeth all the water that ferueth the Kingdome of China; and the Indians and I sam Confess. the Chinians doe report this Lake to be the whole World, and so they paint the Sea, the Moone timum.

12 The Province of Lanfay, hath 13. Cities and a chiefe Citie, and 73. Townes and Castlesi and is 260. leagues broad, and hath great Houses that pay Tribute 1393629. and 12700. men

12 The Prouince Counts hath 12. great Cities, 45. Small, and 51. Townes and Castles, it is 260. leagues broad, and hath great Houles that pay Tribute 1306390, and men of Warre, both Horsemen and Footmen 100100.

14 The Province of Vanam hath 14 great Cities, and 36. fmall, and 34. Townes and Ca. 20 files, and is 88 leagues broad, and hath great Houses that pay Tribute, 389396. and 15100.

15 The Prouince of Figure hath eight great Cities, and one principall Citie, and 54. Towns and Caffles, and two great Gities of Garrison to keepe watch vpon the Japans, and is 200 leagues broad, and hath 1909532. great Houses that pay Tribute, and 4003225. men of the Kings

16 The Province of Canton hath 40. great Cities, and feuen small, and 77. Townes and Cafles; and a Citie that putteth forth hundreds of flips for the keeping of Cauchin-china, and is 380. leagues in breadth, and hath 483383. great Houses which pay Tribute, and 39400. men

30 17 The Province of Enous hath seven great Cities and 13. small, and 90. Townes and Cafiles : and is \$8. leagues broad, and hath 589296. great Houles that pay Tribute, and 15100.

The Spanish Friers of the Philippinas, as Mendoza recorderh, thus out of the China Bookes relate the names of the Prouinces, Paguia, Foguiem, Olam, Siufay, Sifuan, Tolanchia, Canfay, Oquiam, Aucheo, Honan, Xanton, Quichen, Chequian, Susuam and Saxy; tenne of which are seated on the Sea-coast. He also addes that Pagnia or Pequin hath forty feuen Cities (stiled Fu) and one hundred and fiftie others termed Ches. Canton hath thirtie feuen of the one, and one hundred and ninetic of the other, and so proceedeth with somewhat differing account, reckoning in all five hundred ninety one Cities entituled Fs, and 1593. of the Chen Cities, which he makes Townes: 40 whereas the Issuits have taught vs that Fu is the Title of a Region or Shire, in each Province,

which are sub-divided into Cen and Hien, those the more, these the lesse principall, but yete-Againe, 11 a Dialogue printed at Macao, in the Confines of China, 1590, by the Portugals, thefe Prounces are thus reckoned, Sixe vpon the Sea, Countums, Foquien, Chequian, Nanquin, Xantum, Paquim; the other nine In-land Proninces, Quianfi, Huquam, Honam, Xienfi, Xanfi, Suchnon, Queichen, Innan, Coansi. Perera reckons them thus, Fuquien in which Cinceo is the best knowne City, Cantan, Chequeam, Xutiamfu, Chelm, Quianci, Quicin, Quanet, Confu, Vrnan, Se-

china, Ge, all which diversity proceedeth partly from ignorance, partly from different Language and Dialect in the expounding these Characters. And it must needs be so, the Chinos wanting 50 vie of, and Characters to expresse b. d. r. and all their Characters being of things noe Letters; in proper names is very great difficulty to expresse ours in their Characters, or theirs in our Letters; insomuch that one lesuite doth not perfectly agree with another, nay, often disfents from himselfe, as in langen, Tameen, Hiancen, for their great River which Pole cals Quian; and Chi, and Ci, and Qui I find often confounded in their fyllables, as also x and sei, as X auchin, Scianchin, and the like. Yea, such is the difficulty, that the lesuits can scarsly devise to express in China Characters, the forme of Baptime, to put the Latine words thereof, into China Chara-Gers, that Baptisme might vnisormely bee administred after the Romish Rite, as themselves

Touching their Souldiers, I thought good, to adde this note for their Peeces whole Barels Note of Soul-60 Pastria layth, are but a span long, that Captayne Saria beeing asked told mee, hee saw many of diers Pecces. them , and they were as long as Piftols , but the Cocke fuch as makes them of little feruice.

I have added these Pictures of Man and Woman of China, not by ghesse, but out of certains the Printers in China Pictures made also in China in very good Colours, but with Arte meane enough, fault. fine cloth inferted in frong Indian Paper; of which Captayne Saris communicated many to me. Picares.

Their little Eyes and Nofes, long Hayre bound vp in knots, womens feete wrapped vp, long wide-sleeved Garments, Fannes, &c. I have (taking divers parts out of divers) presented to ther. A taste of the China Characters thou hast in the Title. That of Ricins I have added from Provinces and the Ichaits, in thankes for his great paines, and to shew the habit of the head, &c.

to the South. Degrees.

The names of the Proninces I have hunted out of the Iesuites Iourneyes and other Relations. In the most I am fure I am right, in the other 'you have my consecture; for neyther know we their Characters, nor haue any given vs a particular Geography or Chorography, but only the names of the Prouinces. I have added names also to some Cities and Rivers of principall note, As for the truth of the Map I finde well to agree with the Isfuites Journeyes; but it hath not European Art, it being neyther graduated, nor Hils, nor Woods, or other differing places pre- 10 sented to the view; only having Characters, Lines, Lakes, and Rivers. I have addendered to adde Degrees to helpe such Readers as cannot doe it better themselves, following the lefuits prescripts in generall, although I cannot but manuell at that longitude, so farre differing from the generall opinion, and could almost doubt, that herein these Portugals are minding that diuision agreed on betwixt the Spaniards and them , which hath anciently caused such contentions, and wherein you have read some Offices of the Iesuits in these China Discourses. But I will not contend, where them selues speake faintly,

Now for Quian which Polo hath mentioned, as the greatest River in the world(it is here called Suim. And tor Quian which rose nath mentioned, as the greaten Kiner in the world it is here called Mandeule & lanfu, or Humfu, or Tamfu, that is, the Some of the Sea, and lanfuchian) and another called Coo hers speake ramoran (Cara signifieth blacke, and this great Northerne River is alway thicke and troubled) of the irregula- and their Marriage by Art, is here viewed; and more then two hundred Cities (one of Polas Wonders) communicating their Merchandizes by that Quian, or Chian, as they now termeit Iansuchian, chian signifying the chiefe Riner. For the name Cathay to bee given by the Tartars to China, Goez his Journey hath made it out of doubt; also that Pequin is Cambalu, that is, the Citie of the King. I doe conceine that Polos Mangi was the nine Southerne Proninces of China; the Northerly before conquered was knowne by the name of Cathay; a name by the Tartarigia uen to divers Countreyes, as Cara Catay and Catay Calay and Great Catay. This Great Catay is China.

Polo and other Authors speake of Cathar and Mangi as two; perhaps the Tartars so accounting them; the one, to wit, the North parts being formerly subject to them, and called by their 18 ancient name, the other called Mangs in contempt; as the Romanes called the fubiect Britaines of this Iland by their former name, and the others Pitts and Barbarians; and as our Ancestors called those Britons which withstood them Walfb or Welch in a kind of difgrace. Nay still the Northerne Chinose call the Southerne Mangines , that is , rude or barbarone , as the Iefuites have taught vs. But neither Cashay, nor Manyi, was then the name which they affumed, but was given them by the Tartars, as China is a name vnknowne to them now. If any will find noother Cambalu, nor Cathay but Pequin and China, I will not contend, though my Reasons elle-P. Pil. LA. 12. Where given out of Pole, and Chaggi Memet, and others, with the former Relations of Pinto and Albacen, make me scrupulous, and fill to beleeve some greater Prince or Can with his Cambals or Court in the more Northerly parts of Afia, then the lefuits could learne of; which the is China icalouse, admitting no entercousse of Strangers, and the many quarrelling. Tartar Princes in the way have concealed from vs hitherto.

The great blacke space on the North-west hath in the Originall certayne Characters in it which expresse it whether it intendeth Mountayns which their Art could no better expresse, and the Rivers thence running may import, or that fandy Defere on the North-weft, I cannot fo well determine. The Iefuits fay, that ab occasu qui Aquiloni vicinior est, conterminu visina arena strentis ager, qui multorum dierum penuria aduenarum exercitus ab Sinarum Regno ant deteret, aut fepelet. I rather thinke that it is Cara Catay or Blacke Catay, before often mentioned, both Mountaynous, and Defert, and perhaps coloured blackish, as the name intimates, by black lands, or as health grounds with vs: it was the first Tartarian Conquest, and beginning of the greatest 50 greatnesse which this World hath yeelded; the Countrey before of Presbyter loannes A-

The wall is in this forme in the original, not in the Picture made up of Mountaynes, wherein I thinke they had not art to imitate Nature ; the Art in the whole Map much refembling our old Maps, of wooden prints, faue that I fee not one Mountaine prefented in fwelling fashion to the Eye. The Ilands are very many with their Characters, but poorely delineated, their names here omitted for their vncertaynties : fo little (and yet how much more then any other !) doe wee giue you of China, till Time giue vs more. The degrees are not so perfectly accommodated to the Map, by reason that we must at once follow the Chinian Map which had no degrees (nor could their Art without degrees give every place his just longitude or latitude) and the Iesuits Rules: 60 yet we haue comne som ewhat neere, as may be seene. Other things appeare in the History.

CHAP.

#### CHAP. VIII.

A continuation of the Teluits Acts and O bernations in China will Rivervs his death and some yeares after. Of Hanceu or Quintay. An Extract of MONEARTS.



to them, kneed on Hus having with Pantogias eyes taken fome view of the Kings Palane and with Ricins of their whole Government, I hold it fit pot to leave this Chine Apoltle (fo Ricing is called) till wee have feene fome fruitant his laboure vintil and after on Leija his death. He tels vs that three dayes after they had beene that we in the Palace of Strangers as yee haue read, they were brought forth into the Kings Palace so performs the wonted Rites to the Kings Throne, This is done in a large and driven

glorious Court or Porch, where 20000. men might be contayagd; at the end whereof is a high Chamber, under which by fine great doores is a passage to the Kings Lodgings sin that Change ber is the Kings Throne, where anciently he fate to heare and dispatch butinelles and Embaffages. and to receive the Rites of Magistrates, rendring thankes for their Preferments. But in the pre. Kings Throne fent folitarinesse of the King, those Rites are done to the Empty Throne , many there gratula reucrenced 20 ting the King enery day. In this Court, engironed with flately Workes, 2000, Souldiers watch euery night, befides others watching in Towres without, a ftones caff from one another. In each of the fine Gates is an Elephant, which with the Souldiers goe forth when it is day; 'and those Elephants. are admitted which come to gratulate the King. These come in a peculiar Habittof Red, with an luory Table in their hand to couer " their mouth, and exhibit their kneelings and bow. "See the like ings to the Throne, as they are taught by Officers of Rites or Mafters of Ceremonies : one cry. [80.23. ing out to that purpose at the performance of each gesture. The Gouernour of Strangers having Throns. thut them vp, first petitioned the King tharply against Mathan the Eunach and them, but feeing no answere, he petitioned more gently but would have them fent from Pegain; which the King

30 also laboured their stay for feare the Clockes should miscarry beyond their skill. The Kings Mo- Kings politike ther hearing of a selfe-striking bell sent for it, and the King sent it, but to prevent her af- piecie. king it, canfed the Wheeles to be loofed, fo that not feeing the vie, the fent it agains.

When the Rituall Magistrates could get no answere to their Petitions for not touching their flay at Pequin; the Prefett fent to Ricius that he would make a Perition to give him leave to flag. there in precence of Sicknesse and Physicke, which beedid, and the other presently answered, giuing him libertie to hyre a House; continuing also his former allowance, with source servants to bring it every fifth day, (Flein, Salt, Rice, Wine, Hearlys, Wood,) and another fervant in continuall attendance : fo that now they recoursed libertie, and credit. The Eunuches alfo told Their liberie them of the Kings approbation of their flay; and they had out of the Treasurie right Crowness and allowance 40 moneth, which their goeth much further then heere : and the Captayne of Strangers by open Sentence gaue them full libertie. One of the Colai, and then the onely, became their great friend, with his Sonne, after some Enropean Presents, which hee bountifully rewarded : likewise the supreame President of the Court of Magistrates, and other of the Grands, besides the Eupuches of the Palace, and some of the Queenes and Royall family, Amongst others was Famochan a great Funother man, who for withflanding the Eunuches capacitie in Vquess Prouince, was deprined, whipped, and three yeeres Imprisoned; but by others honored with Temples, Odours, Images, and Bookes

became Rieins his Scholler, and was baptifed Leo, borne at Hancen, the chiefe Citie of Cechan, so of which afterward. Yet had Ricina a great enemy of a great Learned man of Hanlin Colledge, who in zeale of the One of Hanlin Idol-fect had put away his Wife, and professed himselse one of their Votaries or Shauelings, neth Idoldrew many Disciples after him, and writ many Bookes against the Literate Sell; and writ also Priess. against Recise his bookes. One of the Kings Admonifors accused him to the King by Petition, and the King referbing feuerely, hee flue himfelfe : yea, the King ordayned, that if the Magistrates would become Apostata shauelings, they should leave their Robes and get them to the

in prayle of him, as a Saint, and the King wearyed by multitude of Petitions for him, granted

him againe his libertie. Also Lingofon a great Magistrate and Mathematician as they accounted,

Deferts; many accordingly chufing rather to leave their Offices, then their Idols. One Thacon Thacon a fawas fo famous, that the cluefe Queene daily worshipped his habit, (hauing no other meane of en. mous infatercourfe) and fo proud that hee fent to Ricins to come and visite him, with the rites of kneeling, mous Prieft. 60 But on occasion of fearch for a Libell against the King, hee was found guiltie of writing ill of the King, for not professing Idols, and of ill viage to the Kings Mother, for which he was Whipped io, that before they could adde bonds, hee dyed. One which by torments confessed himselfe au-

thor of the Libell, had 1600 gobbets plucked from his flesh and then beheaded, a Death most (for the division of the body) abominable to the Chinois.

liked not, yet without Petition from the Magistrates would not detayne them. The Eunuches

Xauceum refi dence. Новация в three eved Monfter.

Portugall cu-

Seueritie.

€hiutaife Bap.

The Icluire

Traitors.

Scianhai in

In the Xancean Residence some stirre happened, whiles they brought to the Iesuis house their Idoll Honquan, made with three Eyes, one in his forehead (for though the Chinois have no Idols representing any formes but humane, yet they admit Monsters) as their God of Eye-fights for whom they intended to build him a Temple, and carryed him from house to house a begging to that purpole; the lessies refuling to grue them. Runaours alio of Mashans detayning the Prefents were soone apprehended; as likewise certayne Stage-players which comming from Amacao, fet forth in Pictures those things which the Chinois hated in the Portugals, as their short Garments (feeming to them ridiculous) praying on Beads by men in Temples, with Swords girded to them, kneeling on one knee; their quarrels one with another and combats, Women going with Men in company, and the like; a Magistrate also accused the Jessies to the Tasis, 10 who space for them and visited them. It happened also that by occasion of a great Drought, Processions and Falts were commanded, and the Shambles shut vp, the Governour and people in diters places appointed thereto, begging rayne with their bowings; and when this pressyled stee, they beought air fall out of the Suburbes, called Levi, which was carryed about, adored, Issurvaluciti. Offered too, with no better faceesse. Hereupon they consulted a Witch, which sayd the Quant or Goddeffe was angry, that her backe was daily forched (fpoken of the Converts burning their Idols) which caused some conspiracie, quenched with the Tantis sauour and the rayne sollowing, At Nanquin one borne at Scianbai, and hift pronounced Licentiat in the examination 1597. was Baptifed by the name of Panins, who connerted his whole Family. Anno 1604. hee was made Dector, amongst three hundred and eight, of which number foure and twentie were cho- 28 fen of Hastin Colledge, after the Come course of best Writing, of which hee was the fourth : this Choile of four and twentie is but for probationers, for at the most after long tryafe by the Colai, but twelue or fifteene are let in possession, in which examinations hee was

I rhought to adde this by the way, that Ligorfun a learned friend of the lefuites, had beene put from his great place into I know not what petrie Office, for too light demeanour and too fre-Hollanderstake quent Cheffe-play, which continued three yeeres. The Hollanders much impountified the Pera Partugal thip sugals by taking the lapan Ship of Amacas, the fewell of the Issues beneficence. At Nancian they Converted three of the Blood royall, Baptifed by the names of Melchior, Gafpar, Baltha. far, and their Mother a woman much addicted to Idols, and observing the China Fast; who sent 10 them a Charter, called the Drectorie of Hell, which the Shaueling Impostors had fold her, written to the Infernall King, to give her good entertaynment, and remit her punishment. The le fustes exchanged their Images tor her Idols, and their Ecclefiafticall Falt for that Pegan.

At Nanquin, Chine also was baptifed by the name of Ignatius, firking the ground four times first with his forehead, and feciting the profession of his Faith, which hee deliuered in writing to the Fathers: the contents of which and of Pauliu, are expressed in our Author. The Hollanders fought entrance into China, to bee admitted Trade in Fuquien Province, but were denyed notwithstanding both promites and threats. Feare of them made the Poring als at Amacao begin to lesuricallypbuild a Tower and to fortifie. But a quarrell falling betwixt a Regular, and a Secular Priest, one ficeing to the lefane Rector for refuge, there grew such a combustion that the Chinois fled to 40 their Countrey, perswaded that Catameiu then there intended to get the Kingdome, whereof hee had such expense; at Canton was such terrour, that aboue one thausand Houses without the walls were polled downe, the Gates toward Amacao filled up with Lime and Stones, all commerce with Amacaons prohibited, great Watch kept; Francis Martinez betrayed by a false brother a Mariner whip- Convert, as a Spie, was twice to Whipped that hee dyed foone after the ftripes, as hee was entring the Prison. At Nanquin three thousand were found, Anno 1606, to have conspired the Death of the Magistrates, and to invade the ancient Treasuries. Those which were taken were put in those Pillorie boards, which force them to fland till their Legges rot, some of them holding out a Fortnight, as was thought by bribing the Executioners : the suspition hereof was by Some cast on the lesistes. Two Guides or Fraternities were erected of (bina Converts.

Zin Panlus the learned Connert, being to leave his place for three yeeres, to mourne for his Nanquin Pro- Father at Scianbai his native Towne, he obtayined Catamens to bee fent thither with him, where heestayed two yeeres. This is one of the meanest forts of Cities which they call Hien, one hundred fortie and foure Italian myles from Nanquin, and in that Province, in twentie nine Degrees, ouer against Corai and the Laponian Hands, within a little of the Easterne Sea. The name Sciantia, lignifieth on the Son; and it is fortified with Garrisons and a Fleet against the laponians, being a passage with a good winde of source and twentie houres sayle. The walls are two myles compaile, the Suburbes contayne as many Houses as the Citie; so that there are numbred fortie thouland Housholds (by this jon may measure the frequencie of great Cities,) the Territoris is an euen Playne, and so cultinated that they seeme a Citie of Gardons, full also of Villages, 60 Hamlets, Towers, contayning twentie thousand Families in this Townes jurisdiction, there being in that Circuit 300000. men. This Iurisdiction alone, payeth to the King the yeerely value of 1 50000. Golden Crownes, in the weight of Silver, and afmuch in Rice, in all 200000. (whence the incredible renennes of this Crewne appears also credible) the Ground being fertile of

CHAP.8. Riccis death. Pantoias Petition to the King. Ticams Chappell.

Cotton, whereof there are reckoned 200000. Weaters, Pequin and other parts being hence fer- 200000. West-

ued with Cloathes. There are many good wits and Students, a good Ayre, and they live long, ners. eightie, ninetie, and a bundred yeeres.

Wee are now come to the Death of Father Ricine (the Author of our Iesuiticall Discourse of Ching hitherto; occasioned by multitude of businesse that yeere, fine thousand Magistrates comming to vilite the King, and five thouland others standing for their Doctorship, of which about three hundred onely are chosen. Wearyed with his Ecclesiasticall Fasts also and labour of building a Church, hee fell ficke and dyed, May 11, 1610. having much propagated the Goipell by his writings, and furthered it by his Mathematickes. For all Sects have beene there more en-To creased by Writing then Preaching. Hee dyed leauing much forrow to his friends and care also in that China forupulofitie, how and where to interre him. It was the counfell of their friends, to put vp a Petition to the King, whereupon they resolued, and Pantogia by Doctor Less helpe, thus Petitioned in behalfe of Ricius his Corps. I lames Pantogia, Subjett of the Kingdomes of the great West, Offer a Supplication in behalfe of another Forrainer now deceased. I humbly beseech your great Clemencie for a place of Buriall, that your Royall beneficence may extend to all, even Strangers of remotest Regions. I lames Pantogia am a Stranger of a most remote Kingdome, but mooned with the vertue and fame of your most Noble Kingdome, have in three yeeres fayle, with much trouble, paffed bither abone fixe thon and leagues. In the eight and twentieth yeere of Vanlie, (for so, as wee, they account their yeeres by the Kings raigne) in the twelfth Moone, I, with Matthew Ricius, came into 20 your Court; where wee presented some gifts, and have since beene sustained at the Kings charge. The nine and twentieth yeere of Vanlie, in the sirst Moone, we Petitioned your Maiestie for a place of resdence, and have many yeeres entoyed the Royall bountie. In the eight and thirtieth yeere of Vanlie, the eighteenth day of the third Moone, Ricius dyed. I, a Client of the Kingdome of the great West remains a sis subsect of pitie. The returne into our Courtrey is song oc. And I new, after so many yeares stay, suppose that wee may bee numbred to the people which solloweth your Royall Chariot, that your Clemencie, like that of Yao, may not contagne it felfe in the Kingdome of China alone, cre. So proceeds he He was a King to fet foorth the good parts of Ricim, and with a long supplication to begge a place of Buryall. of old, account fome Field, or part of a Temple; and bee, with his fellowes, should observe their wonted Prayers to the

Lord of Heaven, for thou fands of yeeres to bim and his Mother. This Libell was written with peculiar forme, Characters, Seales; many Rites herein necessarily observed. Before any bee offered to the King, it must be eviewed of some Magistrate; and they got this to bee allowed by one which is Mafter of Requests, which fent it presently to the King. They must also have many Copies thereof, to shew to those Magistrates, to whom it appertaines; which they did : one of them affirming, That Rismu deserved a Temple also, with his Image to bee there set up. This message hee tent them by another : for when they favour a cause, they shew great itrangeneffe. The King commonly answers the third day (except hee mislike, for then he suppresfeth) and fends it to the Magistrate that had presented it, who shewes which of the sixe is the peculiar Court, which judgeth of their things : This being fent to the Ritual Tribunall. Their antiwer is fent to the King within a Moneth (which there is a fhort space ) and repeating the Petition verbatim, and the Kings command to the peculiar Office, answers what the Law fauth in that case, and concludes the Petition to bee agreeing to Iustice, and earnestly pleades and sues for confirmation. The King fends this answers to the Colao, which subscribed his approbation; which being fent agains to the King, hee lubscribed with his owne hand Xi, that is First, or bee

at done, which the third day after was delivered them. The lefuites having so speedie and prosperous successe, bethought of gratifying their friends, which had furthered this defigne with Dyals, especially to the Colas, which vied Pantogia very kindly and writ to the Gouernour of Pequin to looke out a place fitting. Three or foure were offered to their choyse, one of which much pleased them.

It was about a quarter of a myle from one of the Citie gates, built by an Eunuch, who now so was condemned for some crime; and left his Palace which hee had heere builded, with Place affigned the expence of aboue foureteene thousand Duckats (which in China is a great fumme, in that to the Islands. cheapnesse of all things, farre beyond European computation) should fall into the hands of spoylers (the goods of Eunuches in this Kingdome, viually becomming his which first can catch them) hee confecrated his Palace, and made it a Temple, maintayning therein one Priest. Such Spoylers spoy-Palaces many of the Magistrates have neere to the Cities, as retyring places and Tusculanes for led. their Muses. The portraiture of this whole House, with the Garden, and other appurtenances, Trigautius hath fet foorth in Picture; being after the China building, with the doore Southwards, and fo running a great length into the North, with foure great Halls one beyond another; in the middle parts, and on each fide, Chambers and other Roomes; beyond all the Gar-

60 den, the pillars of Timber bearing up the roofe; the walls and pauement of Bricke. The outmost of these Halls was converted into a Temple or Idoll-Chappell, in which was a great Altar of Stone and Bricke cunningly fretted, paynted red (a colour forbidden to private Houses) and vp-Chappellof on the middest thereof fate a huge Monster of Earth, gilded from top to toe, of mattie quantitie. Chappellos The Chinois call it Ti cam, the God (as they fable) of the Earth & Treasures, as Plate in the Poets. na Plate.

His Image or

M.Paris, coc. Ehstan fields.

fay, that the

thip not the Idoll, butGod

Inhis hand was a Scepter, on his head a Crowne, not volike those vsed by our Kings. On each fide flood foure ministers of the same matter : on both fides of the Roome two great Tables, and on each of them flue Kings, or great Officers of Hell. On both the wals were painted the fame Officers, or ludges, firting on their feuerall Tribunals, giving fentence on wicked men, every one according to the condition of his Court. Before them flood many Deuils, more terribly formed then with vs. The paines of Hell also were so deciphered, that could not but strike terror to Rhadamanthus treat wires. In passes of Little Beds, fome fryed in fedding Oyle, fome cut in pieces, or herebase we the beholders; fome rofted in yron Beds, fome fryed in fedding Oyle, fome cut in pieces, or here necessary to be consumers; some content of Dogges, or other wife tortured. The fift of those indges can other affiliors divided in the middle or torne of Dogges, or other wife tortured. The fift of those indges can mined the faults, which they faid hee law in a certayne Glaffe. Those which hee found guiltie, Ballances like were fent to the other Inalges, according to the qualitie of the crimes. One of these was ladge in 18 thole in quiets the case of Transfiniaration, which fent the foules of cruell men into Tygres; of vncleane perious, into Swine, and the like : or if their crimes were smaller, into the poorer fort. There was a great Ballance; in one of the Scales, a man laden with finnes; in the other, one of their Hypocritical Prayer-bookes, which counterpoyted the other Scale, and freed the Sinner. There range through Prayer-nouses, which carried away many. For our it were two Bridge, one of Gold, the other of Silver; by which, those passed over, which had beene devout Idola. ters, carrying in their hands Enfignes of the same : these were guided by the Priests, which led ters, carrying in their middle of Hell to faire and pleafant Groues and Gardens, In another part were painted the Dungeons of Hell, with horrible Serpents, Flames, Deuils. To the Brazen Gate thereof there comes an Idolatrous Priest, which in despight of all the Deuils delivers his Mother 20 from those flames. There was no infernall punishment painted, but had such an Inscription: He Trom trave trainers, I were was as measured parameter, spanles, our measured at antemption: see which shall pray to such an Idoll a thousand times. The ledutes beat the Earthen Idols to dust, and burnt those of wood, wherein the Chinese Connerts were the forwarder, because the Countrey custome is to fill the hollow bellies of these Images with denoted Money or Iewels. They demolished the Altar and playstred our the Pictures, and in place thereof erected the Image of Christ, No prinate man may erect a Temple by Law, which A little before this exchange of Idols into Images (after their distinction, and a \* filly one it

\* The lefuites is) some tooke their last leaue of Tream: one kneeling and bidding it fare-well; another chang, laid; Thou masse of Dung and Earth, if thou hait no power to maintagne thy Temple and thy selfs, 30 tayne their i., tayac metr., dolatries, (ay. what helpe may looke for at thy hand? Neither art thou worthy of any homen at mine. Others laid, that this had sometime borne the name of some other Idoll, and therefore was auenged for that

Ricius, having thus taken possession of China by his dead bodie, and living name, wee shall thereby reprebriefly out of the Ieluits Epistles adde some later accidents, and so leaue our China Discourse, which if they have feemed redious and troublefome, remember that China is both exceffuely ntuall, and also inhospitall to Strangers; and I have but imitated my subject, in long and wearifome entertaynment. These tell vs of the Kings vnkindnesse to his Heire, proclaymed, as yet haue feene against his will, scarsly allowing him necessary sustenance, nor permitting his Mother Prince and his at her death to be mourned for with wonted Rites, He is indenout, his Mother egregioully Su- 40 at the death to the minimum of the state of One had beene fo mad, that he being a Licentiate, bought children whom fecretly he killed, of their bloud making compositions for that purpose; which comming to light by one of his Concubines, he was put to a deferued death, three thousand pieces of flesh first cut from him.

In their Winter is greatest scarsity of water in the Rivers, and many shelves then cause many shipwrackes. As they want b. d. r. so they end no word in any other Consonant but m. and z. The China Conuerts are very zealous in selfe-whipping penance, and fasting, altered from their forme to the Ecclesiasticall, which is hard to them accustomed to eate thrice 2 day: Their Priests vse Beads, mumbling thereby their Denotions and many things alike. They built a 50

Chequian fornetimes the Imperial Pro-

fpeded.

Church at Nanquin, Anne 1611.

The Pronince of Chequian yeelds only to the two Royall, Nanquin and Pequin, beeing more excellent then any of the reft. Neither hath it loft other Provinciall Ornaments how sowerit hath loft the feat of the Chma Empire, but is still the best of thirteene. On the East it is washed with the Sea, which the winds fauouring admit passage to I spors in four eand twentie hours: on the West it confineth with the Prouinces of Nangum and Kiams (or Chians) on the South with Faquian: to the North is Xanto (or Sciantum.) It hath twelve Cities of principall note, which are the heads of fixtie three leffe; befides innumerable Townes, Caftles, Villages. The foile is the most fertile of the Kingdome pleasantly interlaced with Riuers, many of them produced by Art in imitation of Nature, in commodiouinesse no whit inferiour, yeelding a spectacle of amaze- 60 ment to the amufed Posteritic, how humane force could effect such wonders. These Rivers for further commoditie are towred with innumerable Bridges of huge massie stones arising into diuers Arches, like to the European workmanship. You have alreadie Almeidas Epistle of his and Rogers going into this Pronince, to Xao Him, whence foone after they returned. The Chinoir have

a Prouerbe of Hameen the Metropolis, and of Sucen, thien xam, thien tham, ti xam Su ham, that which in Heanen is the Hall of Heanen (lastea ona, as he elle-where interprets it) that on Earth Sucen and Hamcen. The Countrey to aboundeth with Mulbery-trees and Silke-wormes, that China, Iapon and India are thence furnished. Ten Vests of Sillke are there cheaper, then in our Countrey one of cloth. Hamcen stands from Nanquin South-eastward nine dayer lourney, almost in thirtie degrees elevation : about three dayes lourney from Scientist, where Caterine was, who with Trigamins our Author were fent thither by Less procurement. They went from Naquie by the Ruer lanfu first, and then into hand-made Rivers, Cities, Townes, Villages, so trequent in the way, that nothing feemes in the whole Kingdome more populous. Mid-way, where Nonquin and Chequian Prouinces joyne is that famous Sucen , feated in the Continent, and fee- Sec/pp-142ming yet the Daughter of the Sea, like another Venice, but more happie with her fresh waters:

ming yet one Doughast of the whole thipping of the Kingdome Were thither the Ports fo frequent, and thips to many as if the whole thipping of the Kingdome Were thither comne to some Faires, which yet are in succession perpetuals. When the Fathers were comne hither, the Chinais by I know not what rumour were conceited that their Foe or Gods were comne thither in Visitation. And a Magistrate sent to Les about it, to know if, and how, hee

But to leave their Fooleries, let vs take view of their Citie, Hameen is the chiefe Citie of this Hameen Ham-Prounce 1 yea, in all this Kingdome; leffe perhaps somewhat in compasse of walles then compassed with the compassed of walles then compassed the compassed of wallest the compassed the compassed of wallest the compassed the c Nangain , but better peopled : no place in the Citie emptie , nor occupied with Gardens, but 20 all builded, and all the Buildings almost with divers Stories, which in other Cities of China is not viuall. The Inhabitants are so many, and the Tribute so much, that the Iesuites durst not relate that which hereof they had heard by graue testimonie, for the incredibilitie: the description would aske a whole Volume. The chiefe street is almost halfe a dayes sourney in length, and cannot be leffe then admirable. For whereas the Chinois vie to erect triumphall Arches, as Monuments, to wel-deferring Magistrates, and Ornaments to their Cities; this one street hath and exceeding curious Workmanship, that if the Houses on both sides yeelded the like splendor, the World could not flew such a spectacle. But they occupie it all with shops, and build the most magnificence of their Houses inwards, and yet those not like the European Palaces.

there is also a Lake close to the Citie, which the eye can fearfly measure, which sliding in The Lake. I never a more accessive to the water primary was yet an actiny measure, writen mounty in- time Lane. to a Valley encompating, embodled with diners Hillocks, bath given occasion to Are to thew her. See the Map. or a variety companing, checking, beautifying all those spacious bankes with Houses, Gardens, Groues; a very Labyrinth to the bewitched eyes, not knowing whereat most in this Maze to bee most amazed, wherein most to delight. And in delights doe they spend their dayes, filling the Lake with Veffels, furnished with Feasts, Spechacles and Player on the water. There is a pleasant Hill in the middle of the Citie, whereon is a faire Towre or Steeple, where they meafure their houres by a strange deuice. Out of huge Vessels water droppeth from one to another, the lowest being very large, in the middle whereof is perpendicularly raysed a Rale, diffinguathe dwith hours-spaces, which by the ascent or descent of the water, diside the rising and de-thed with hours-spaces, which by the ascent or descent of the water, diside the rising and de-clining day, and declare the hours: every halfe hours some men appointed by Tables with Cu-

triming coys and the state of the time to all men. From this Hill is a prospect ouer all the Citic. All the freets being fet with Trees, make thew of pleafant Gardens. It is so full of Riuers, Lakes, Rils, Ponds, both in the Citic and Suburbs, as if a man would frame a Platonical Idea of elegancie to his minde. The Idoll Temples are many and stately, which Idolatry where it is wanting in China, hath a worfe Succeffor, Atheisme.

is wanting in Learns, natify worth succession, artherings.

Let vs ftay awhile and gaze (for where have you fuch an Object!) Is not Dainfay (whi- Quinfay, limits). Let v3 113 awnine and gaze (tot where mane you much an object. ) 12 100 2 mm/s/ (with gaze the Royall Seat of the Kings of Mangi, 25 Venetus recordeth, supposed by our Moderne can Geographers to be fivallowed up with fome Earth-quake, or in Bellma's all-confuming belly) Seet defendable to the seed of the here rayled up from the Grane? The Lake fluxte on the one b fide, (io Panin reports of b hear me to Quinfay) the Name Quinfay figurifying the Citie of Heaven, and this called a Heavenly Paradic bandwalege, Langay the reason samply ngurying the class of reason, and this cance a resucting Paraunt bounds by the Chinese; and Hamingnifes Latter via, in Heaven; and Con, perfett: yea, Quinfay, or as O . Oc. driens calls it (unfig, and Has or Chances, not so disgreeing in sound, as different Dialects e That which

are wont: the excellencie being chiefe Citie in the Kingdom, and this Pronince fometimes Royal, is before faid as Pequin now and Nanquin are: the fination. South-east from Cines and wonter all much a dates are wont: the executars of the fination, South east from Cinexian's, c fine and twentic ionney, as Pequin now and Nanquin are: the fination, South east from Cinexian's, c fine and twentic ionney, is to as region now and examples are the limber on some control of the exceeding the succession of the limber of the limber of the limber of the exceeding the exc mines from the Sea; the mgo rasones, and hones vines means, the exceeding a rate, returned, a see your filmes by water, multitudes, fairenesse, and length of the streets; all so conspiring to product his of the china Has or Hames tobe that Quinfa, of Paulus. True it is, that Quinfay was then greater, beeing industrial as Frontine faith, one hundred miles about: But the energing of that Ferfor and his Family, then the state of as Penants states, one numerous mines about. Due the energing of that any on a later to Nanquim by Hums. for reigning, the discreting of the Court to Cambalu by the Tartars, and after to Nanquim by Hums. formetime but

reigning, on emercing or the court to commune by the factors, and acted to commune out to mention of 24, and neuer returning hither, might leffen the lame. And might not warres, in that long feee 6 mylesaday. by the Tartart, in the recourty thereof by the Chinas, easily circumcife her superfluitie? Beides, who knoweth whether all this huge Lake might bee contayned in that account of Paulus, fall compaffed about with Buildings: Or before those Warres, the Lake it felfe might (as Sucra now is) be builded on; which Time and Warre hath confumed; nor fince the remouse of the Court

were so necessarie. Mandeuss mentions Warres at Quin say in his time; Nicolo di Conti (which was heere about the yeere 1440.) fayth, Quinfay was in his time new built, of thirtie miles

But that Quinfay of Conti and Abacen, is perhaps Thienfin, being (as they lay it) neerer Com-Thiomai fun.

But that Qninfay of Conti and Abacen, is perhaps I binnin, Deing (as they lay it) neerer Cam.

14. Thiomis balu. I confesse, much may bee layd for Nanquin to finde Quinfay there, and I have given such a macth Heauen, noce \* vpon it, to incite industrious search, because it was the Ancient royall Chamber : Nei-See pag. 338. ther could I finde any other Royall Citie but Pequin, in Ricius or other Writers, till Trigasmus later Epiteles intimated, that the Chequian Prounce hath beene fometimes Imperiall; which I conceive to bee that time of Farfur mentioned by Pole, and Hancen his Quinfay.

Anno 1618. Trigamine writes of Perfecution in China, raifed by an Idolotrous Magistrate in 10 Nanquin, and effected by bribes, which hath caused the lesuites to bee fent thence : but because our intelligence is little, wee will leave them heere (as much as lyeth in our power) and visite some of the other Northerne people; having first given you a briefe view of a French-mans trauell, Monsieur de Monfart, who having travelled thorow the Indies, saluted Canton in China, and Cauchinchina; whole knowledge therefore could not bee fo folid, as the Iefnites, nor yet is to contemptible that it should veterly bee forgotten. Wee will therefore present his Service as a French Page, and one attending the Issues Gravitie, and thus as it were bearing

Macao,

Rom Malaca I went to Macao, (neere a moneths travell) which is a Citie scituate on the 20 I Sea coast, at the foote of a great Mountayne, where in times past the Portugals had a great Fort, and to this day, there bee yet many that dwell there. This is the entrance into Ching. but the place is of no great importance; they are Gentiles, and there the Inhabitants begin to bee faire complexioned.

Canchinebina,

Thence I trauelled two moneths to the Cochinchines, finding nothing by the way worthy of note ; no not so much as necessaries, so that wee were fayne to carrie our Victuals with vs. the greatest part of the way. They are Subjects to the King of China, but sometimes they rebell and make Warre against him ; And there is great number of Christians among them, Their Kings treasure consisteth in a certayne kinde of Wood, called Calamba : for which the Portugals pay one hundred Crownes a pound, to make Paer-nosters with. It is of a mixt colour, with blacke and yellow veynes; the better fort of it is moyft, fo that being cut it expelleth a kinde of fat oylie liquour. It groweth out of a certayne Tree, which they fell and let it lye a while a putrifying : then they bruife it, and within the same, they finde this kinde of Wood, like many hard knots. They are a very white people, because there it begins to bee cold, low of Stature, flat Nofed, and little Eyed, with a very few hayres on their Chins, and Muflachoes : none at all on their Cheekes, the hayre of the Head they weare long like Women, tyed vp with a blacke filke hayre-lace, and weare a flat Cap vpon them. They weare Cloath breeches made very levell, and a short Robe above them, like a Matter of the cham-

There are found a kinde of Serpents that will swallow vp a whole Stagge; two Friers affu- 40 Huge Serpents red me that travelling in that Countrey, together with fixteene other men, through a Fenniemarsh, about the dawning of the day, they met to their feeming, a great Tree lying along the ground, the boughes being lopped off, vpon which they all began to fit downe and reft themselues : but no sooner were they sate, but that which they tooke for a Tree, fiercely rowsed it felfe from vuder them, and left them all to picke ftrawes on the ground, for indeed this was one

this of Lions

. Their cultome is (as they fay) to put themselves in ambush among the boughes of a Tree, and when they espie their prey to draw neere, bee it Man or Beast, they fall upon him with open mouth and devoure it. There are also store of Lions, Leopards, and Tigers : and there the Fruits begin to refemble those of these parts : but the Fruit, which aboue all others aboundeth there, 10 Thence I fent forwards to Canton, the principall Citie of all China, (fome three Moneths tra-This is not the uell diftant) beyond which there is no passage, say any body what hee will to the contrary; for

principall Cineuer any man proceeded further, except (as they fay) fixe lefuites, who dwelled twentie tie, except, of yeeres at Camon, as well to learne the Language perfectly, as to let their havre to grow long, afthat Produce, and for trauel, ter the Countrey manner, of whom there was never fince heard any newes, nor is their hope ling further, he cuer to fee their returne. That people is very white, and apparelled as is about fayd; they are speakestrus likewife Gentiles, and worship the same Image with three heads. Their Women of the better ofordinarie fort, and qualitie which are able to line of their owne without working, neuer goe out of their courfes, butotheir seculence houses but as they are carryed in a Chayre. And to that effect, from their Infancie, they put and the Art Li. their feete into certayne woodden Slippers, to make them flump-footed and impotent, in fo

is doubtfull.

Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is feene. This restimonie touching Lefuites is worth the noting: For fome of Ours which vpon great offers could not finde meanes to enter China, have held that nene have beene there.

CHAP. 8. Merchandises, Cloath of Gold, Cabinets, Vessels, Massie Gold, Silkes.

much as they are not able to goe: the reason they alleadge for it, is, that Women were made to

The Christians are not permitted to lye within the Citie, but as soone as Night approaches they must recire themselves to their Ships, being lawfull for them to Traff que wherefocuer they please by Day-light. And for their traffique, what rarities sourt there bee throughout all Chima, are to bee had in this Gitie, which are diligently brought thicker, to with great store of eloath of Gold and Silke, Cabinets, wrought Veilels, Venus itells, Maffine gold, and many other things. They will exchange or barter Gold for twice as much waight in Silver; for they have tanger a new variance they would buy any thing, they carrie with them a piece of to Gold, and will cut off as much as they intend to beflow on what they take. They make carused Images of Silver, which they erect heere and there through the Streets, and no body dates

The Citie is gouerned by foure Rulers, and each one hath his Goustoment, or Circuit spare, feeluded from each other: those of one quarter dare not goe and labour in another, and those which caufe themselues to bee carryed, from one pare to another, must change their Bearers when they come to the Gate of the next circuit: thole Gates are opened eury morning, and that enery night, vnlede there bee any complaint made of some mildemeanour, committed within the Circuit: for then they shut them suddenly, or if they bee shur, they open them not, till the offender be found. The King bestowes these commands on those who are best Learned. This is 20 a most faire Citie, and well built, very neare a bigge as Park, but there the House are arched, and nothing neare to high. There is to much Sugar in that Country, that it is by them very little fer by, yet is Silke in faire more great abundance, but withill more course then ours, by rea. Silke women fon of their flore, being fo great as they are confirmed to make it abroad in the Fields, on the ton or their more, being nogices as may are country and to make a country in the execut, on the very Trees, in this wife; when the Wormes are harched, (whereof the Egges are faire greater then ours.) They observe what quantitie of Wormes each Tree will bee able to seed, then they lay fo many on it, leaving them there without any more adoe, except it bee to gather the cods, when they are ready to bee fpunne, which is done as they gather Apricocks:

Fishing.

for indeed a fare off they appeare to bee fo, and is a very fine light to behold: they yie a frange kinde of Fishing with Cormorants. They tie their neckes a little aboue their stomackes, less See Pols, Pare they should denour the Fish they take a then comming to their Master, hee pulleth it a-Ine, out of their throates: Likewife for water Fowle, they make vie of great Bottles with two holes, which they leave floating vp and downe the water a good while, to acquaint the Fowles therewith: then some fellowes will wade vp to the necke in the water, thrusting their heads into those Bot-

tles, and having a bagge underneath, come as neere the Fowleasthey will, taking them with their hands, without the rest being atraid

 $N_{n_2}$ 

10. 10. 11.1

aughitts

1 101 2.01

Rufsica



# OYAGES AND COVERIES OF THE NORTH

PARTS OF THE WORLD, BY LAND AND SEA, IN ASIA, EXROPE, THE PO

THE NORTH WEST OF THE NORTH WEST OF THE NORTH-WEST OF THE PROPERTY OF THE WARRENCE OF THE WARRENCE

## or concerning the Propositional sear time will the fact the con-THE THIRD BOOKE, in the charge of the courter of the courter of the charge of the char

s meth a thoutand west, well night beyond a tell man in the streaming. discrete from the state of the second of the A Treatife of Rulesa and the adjourning Regions, written by Dollar Od L & a 'Ihresin

A Treathe of Kuisha and the datapaing a course, written by troots and the second of the first of the second of the A solution of the deep distribution of Russian destroys and a serior education of deposition of the state of the deposition of the deposit mentaging of the street street and the street of the stree



is Country of Refference Country of Refferen

I findle in tione Colmographers, that the Rest Nation horrowed the name of the people allest Rest them, and were the very lame. Nation with them, at it
without all good probabilities, both in respect of the Exymptograf of the word symple is sery
tarrefreche), and aspeadly for the large and asselling of that people, which was between the Studenthia it is
two Ringraf Tanasa and Beriffbener, as the sergested; quite another way from the Comp. Sometimes of the sery from the Comp.

trey of Raffia.

When it bare the name of Samatia, it was divided into two chiefe parts the Winner and the ton annual Blacks. The White Samatia, was all that particularly sen towards the Morth, and on the falce of the tree. Blacke. In wome varmand, was all that patternatives towards the choice, amount one on the Lufland; as the Prounces now called Disput, Varba, Vist. Volgeda Carrandon, Nonogradus per owners of wherety Nonogradus was the Metapolitic, orchiter Citic. Black Sarmana was all the Carrandon of the Country that lyeth Southward, toward the Earn or Black See: as the Duk dome of Colombiant. of Marke Resemble. Some have thought that the name of Samain was first caken, from one or nanegy, example, spine and topped call formather, Some to lotten, and appear to Heber, of Gasta. the polteritie of Sem. But this seemeth to be nothing but a conjecture taken our of the likeness, 100 polterities.

The borders

of the name Afarmathes, For the dwelling of all Interns posteritie is described by Moses, to haut beene betwirkt Meschaor Masim, (an Hill Wage Amenier) and Sophace, neare to the River Emphrates: Which maketh it very onlikely, that Mormathes should plant any Colonies so lare off, int the North and North-west Countries. It is bounded Northward by the Laper, and the North Ocram. On the South-fide by the Tarters, called Chrims. Eastward they have the Marraian Tartar, that pollefieth all the Countrey on the East fide of Voleba, towards the Calbian Sea. On the West and South-west border, lie Litmania, Limonia and Polonia.

The whole Country being now reduced vader the Government of one, contribute these chiefe Proumees or Shires. Valedomer (which beareth the first place in the Emperours Bile, became their House came of the Dukes of that Countrey, Morke, Nifnougred, Pleske, Smelenf- 10 ho, Nonogrod velica ( or Nonogrod of the low Country ) Rostone, Tarnflane, Bealozara, Berton Dayna Cofe appla, Melbora, Vagba, Vlugba, Ghalet a. Thefe are the natural things permy-ning to Raffia, but farre greater and larger then the Shires of England, though not fo well people. The other Countries or Provinces, which the Ruffe Emperours have gotten perferce added of late to their beher Dominion, are thefe which follow, Twerra, Tongborta, RemnafValle, Beal. ghoria, Chernigo, Oudoria, Obdoria, Condora, with a great part of Siberia : where the people though they bee not gathrall Ruffer, yet obey the Empergut of Ruffic, and are ruled by the Lawer of his Countrey, paying customes and taxes, as his owne people doe. Besides these hee hath ynder him the Kingdomes of Cazas and Altracas, gotten by Conqueft not long finer. As for all his possessions in Lituaria (to the number of thirtie great Townes and more,) with Narmand to Dorpin Linonia, they are quite gone, being surprised of late yeeres by the Kings of Poland and Sweden. These Shires and Prounces are reduced all inco foure larssaidtions, which they call Chetfyrds (that is) Tetrarchies, or Fourth parts. Whereof wee are to speake in the Title or Chapter, concerning the Prouinces, and their manner of Gouernment.

The whole Countrey is of great length and breadth. Erom the North to the South (if you and length of measure from Coles of Minister which bendeth (omewhat Eastward) it zeacheth in length 20 the Countrey. bout foure thousand two hundred and sixtie verit, or myles. Notwithstanding, the Emperour of Ruffie hath more territorie Northward, farre beyond Cole vnto the River of Tromfebres, that runneth a thousand verit, well nigh beyond Pechinga, neere to Wardhouse, but not intire nor clearely limitted, by reason of the Kings of Swedon and Demarke, that have divers Townes there as well as the Rule, plotted together the one with the piet; every one of them clayming the schole bushos Rule, the comments as well as the Rule, plotted together the one with the piet; every one of them clayming the schole bushos Rule, the comments of the remarks of the rema mino life myle. If the whole dominion an the stuffe Emperous weers all habitable, and peopled in all places, as it is in some, hee would either hardly hold it all within one Regiment, or becour mightie for all his neighbour Princes,

-1971 but the effect CMPL 82 TO CE

- - 10.1555 Sels

"He Soyle of the Country for the most part is of a fleight fundamental, yet wary much district. The threshes place from another, for they well of the white a large control of the works with a first three for the three. The Cointry Notherwist, would be for the three three cointry Notherwist, which the three three cointry notherwists of the three three cointry notherwists and the three cointry notherwists and the cointry notherwists and the first world by real on of the Chymatr, and explaints of the which is the control of the control .broad. to dwell there, (fluing a wilde and vignint life) nor loffer the Refer that it farress with its fluingth of his Coluntey) to people those parts. From Volegial (which lyesh along) one those Panicode fand fenen hundred veril from the Port of Saint Nichola' downer wands Mosto and to to 10 wards the South pare that bordereth upon the Chrim, (which contayneth the like pace of one thousand lepen hundred verift, or thereabouts) is a very fruitfull and pleasant Countrey, yeelding Pafture, and Corne, with Woods and water in very great plentie. The hiers betwint Revan (that lyeth South east from Moske) to Nonograd and Vobsko, that teach fartheft towards the Worth-well Substwixt Moske, and Smolenske (that lyeth South-well towards Linguis) is a very fruitfull and pleafant loyle. The whole Countrey differeth very much from it leffe; by reafor of the years to that a man would maruaile to fee the great alteration and difference betwixt the Winter and the Summer in Ruffa. The whole Countrey in the Winter lyeth under Soow, which falketi continually, and is sometime of a yard or two thicke, but greater triwards the North. The Rivers and other waters are all frozen vp, a yard or more thicke, how swift or 60 broad focuer they bee: and this continueth commonly fine Moneths, viz. from the beginning of November, rift rowards the end of March, what time the Snow beginneth to melt. So that it would breed a frost in a man to looke abroad at that time, and fee the winter face of that Countrey. The first penefie of the ayre you may judge of by this : for that water dropped downe or

CHAP.I. Cold and beat extreame; Rivers of Russia; Fruits.

cast vp into the ayre, congealeth into Ice before it come to the ground. In the extremitie of Winter, if you hold a Pewter dish or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the form Sirter Winter, it you man a rewest unit of pour ingers will freeze fait vato it, and draw of the chamber wheretheir warme Stoues bee) your ingers will freeze fait vato it, and draw of the rome tower channes the parting. When you passe out of a warme roome into a cold, you shall sensibly feele told me of a your breath to waxe starke, and euen stifding with the cold, as you draw it in and out. Divers lectorified your oreast no wear catalog and count mining Markets, and firects of their Townes, are mortally not onely that trauell abroad, but in the very Markets, and firects of their Townes, are mortally not which use pinched and killed withall 1 to that you half life many drop downe in the Streets, many Trauel. It is the pinched and killed withall 1 to that you half life many drop downe in the Streets, many Trauel. pincher and a pince without to the your man and the pincher specific pinch tippes of their Eares, and the balls of their Cheekes, their Toes, Feete, &c. Many times when from his Ma-IO (the winter is very hard and extreame) the Beares and Wolues iffue by troupes out of the woods fire Table in drives by hunger, and enter the Villages, tearing and rauening all they can finde: fo that the In-the nextroom, habitants are faine to fise for fafegard of their lines. And yet in the Summer time you shall fee listed is and the same of the control of the same of the control of the same of the habitants are faine to flee for lafegard of their lines. And yet in the Summer time you shall see fuch a new, he wand sace of a Countrey, the Woods (for the most part which are all of First and of historage Birch) forfeth and fo fweet, the Paftures and Meadowes fo greene and well growne, (and that for that feet ypon the fusidem). fach varietie of Flowers, fuch noyfe of Birds, ([pecially of Nightingales, that full: a fewer your uniqueess), see a service of a service

And this firsh and speedy growth of the Spring there, seemeth to proceed from the benefit of red.

And this firsh and speedy growth of the Spring there, seemeth to proceed from the benefit of red.

the Snow s, which all the Winter time being spred ouer the whole Countrey as a white robe, Essentials. 20 and keeping it warme from the rigour of the Froft, in the Spring time (when the Sunne waxeth warme, and disfolueth it mto water) doth so throughly drench and loake the ground, that is forms what of a fleight and fandie mold, and then shineth so hotly upon it againe, that it draw-5th the Hearbs and Planes forth in great plen ie and varietie, in a very short time. As the Win-

ter exceedeth in cold, to the Summer inclineth to ouermuch heate, specially in the moneths of Iune, July, and August, being much warmer then the summer ayre in England.

The Country throughout, is very well wattred with Springs, Rivers, and Ozeraes or Lakes. Registerell was Wherein the prouidence of God is to bee noted, for that much of the Countrey being fo farre in tered. land, so that fone parelyeth a thouland myles and more every way from any Sea, yet it is letned with faire Riners, and that in very great number, that emptying themselves one into another, rume all into the Sea. Their Lakes are many and large, some of fixtie, eightie, a hundred,

and two hundred myles long, with breadth proportionate.

The chiefe Rivers are these, I. Valeta, that hath his head or spring at the roote of an Alder. The chiefe River are the chiefe River are the chiefe River are the chiefe River are the chiefe River and two hundred well about Everylasse, and groweth so bigge by the increase of other River of Refig. uers by that time it commeth thither, that it is broad an Englife myle and more, and so runneth into the Calisa Sea, about two thouland and eight hundred verft or myles of length. The part is Berifiberes (now called Neper) that divideth the Country from Lituaris, and

falleth into the Enne Sca.

The third Tanase or Dan, (the ancient bounder betwixt Europe and Afia) that taketh his head out of Recon Osera, and fo running through the Country of the Chrim Tarter, falleth into the 40 great Sea lake, or mears, (called Manie) by the Cirie of A. on. By this River (as the Roffs reporteth) you may pale from their Citie Manh to Conflavrimente, and so into all those parts of the world by water, drawing your Boate (as their manner is) ouer a little Islamou or narrow dippe of land, a few verds ouerthware. Which was prooted not long fince by an Ambiffadour cent to Companiesple, who paffed the Riner of Montag, and to into another called Ocks, whence he drew his Boare over men Tenew, and thence passed the whole way by water.

The fourth is called Dayna, many hundred myles long, that falleth Northward into the Bay of Saint Nicholas, and hath great Alabafter rockes on the bankes towards the Sea fide.

The fifth Dana, that emptyethinto the Baltick Sea by the Towne Rige. The fixt Owegs, that falleth into the Bay at Solome to minety Veril from the Port of S. Niebs. to the property of the following following the following f and to into the Sound, you may puffeall by water, as hath been tryed by the Ruffer.

The feuenth Suchana, that floweth into Dayna, and fo into the North-fea. The mightsh Ooks, that seecheth his. Head from the Borders of the Chrise, and streameth

The nineh Makes, that runneth thorow the Citie Moste, and give thit the name. There is Wichida allo avery large and long River that rifeth out of Permia, and falleth into Pagete All thefe are Rusers of very huge firemes, the leaft to bee compared to the Thomas in bigoelle ans in length far more, befinder diuers ocher. The Pole at Morke, is fiftie fine degrees ten 60 manutes. At the Port of Saint Nicholas Cowards the North fixty three degrees and fifty minutes.

[Or kinds of traits, they have Apples, Peaces, Planmes, Cheries, Red and Blacke, (but the Black wild)a Deene like a Muske Milian, but more sweet & pleasant, Cucumbers and Goords The Nation (which they call Arbonfe) Raipes, Strawberries, and Hartibberries, with many other Berries in Commodules

great trey.

great quantitie in euery Wood and Hedge. Their kinds of Graine are Wheate, Rie, Barley, Oates, Peafe, Buckway, Pinytha, that in taste is somewhat like to Rice. Of all these Graines the Countrey yeeldeth very sufficient with an ouer-plus quantitie, so that Wheateis fold fometime for two Alteens or tenne pence sterling the Cherfird which maketh almost three Eng. Their Rye is fowed before the Winter, all their other Graine in the Spring-time, and for the

Ryc.

The chiefe

trey.

most part in May. The Permians and some other that dwell farre North , and in Desart places. are ferued from the parts that lye more South-ward, and are forced to make Bread forestimes of akind of Roote called Vagbnoy) and of the middle rine of the Firre-tree. If there bee any of a kind of Koote canear sagmery and to the most 1788. Wheat and Rye being at thirteen edirects, arms 1788. Wheat and Rye being at thirteen edirects, and careful as they accounted this last year. Arms 1788. Wheat and Rye being at thirteen edirects and the finite in the produce of said that, 10 or fire shillings five pence sterling the Cherfird) the fault is rather in the practice of their Nobilitie that wie to engroffe it, then in the Countrey it felfe. The Native Commodities of the Countrey (wherewith they ferue both their owne turnes, and fend much abroad to the great enrichof the Couning of the Emperour, and his people) are many and fubfiantiall. First, Fusres of all forts, Where in the providence of God is to bee noted, that provide ha naturall remedy for them, to helpe the naturall inconvenience of their Countrey by the cold of the Climate. Their chiefe Furs are thefe, Blacke Fox, Sables, Lufernes, Dunne Fox, Marcrones, Gurnestalles or Aimins, Lafets or Miniuer, Beuer, Wuluerins, the Skin of a great Water Rat that Imelleth naturally like Muske, Calaber or Gray Sq sirrell, Red Squirrell, Red and White Foxe. Besides the great quantitie fpent within the Countrey (the people being clad all in Furs the whole Winter) there are tranfoorted out of the Countrey some yeares by the Merchants of Turkie, Perfin, Bougharia, Georgia, Armenia, and some other of Christendome to the value of foure or five hundred thousand Rub. bels, as I have heard of the Merchants. The best Sable Furre groweth in the Countrey of Peche. ra, Momeoforskor and Obdorskor, the worler fort in Siberia, Perm, and other places. The Black Fox and Red come out of Siberia, White and Dunne from Pecbora, whence also come the white Wolfe, and white Beare Skin. The best Wuluerin also thence and from Perm. The best Marrons are from Siberia, Cadam, Morum, Perm, and Cazan. Lyferns, Mineuer, and Armins, the best are out of Gallets, and Ouglites, many from Nonogrod, and Porm. The Beauer of the best fort bree-

a. Waxe.

The second Commoditie is of Waxe, whereof hath beene shipped in forraine Countreyes (as I have heard streported by those that best know it) the fumme of fiftie thousand Pood yeardy, every Pood contayning fortie pound, but now about tenne thousand Poods

deth in Murmonskey by Cola. Other common Furres, and most of these kinds grow in many,

and fome in all parts of the Countrey.

a. Honey.

The third is their Honey, whereof besides an exceeding great quantitie spane in their ordinary Drinkes (which is Mead of all forts) and their other vies, forme good quantitie is carried out of the Countrey. The chiefe increase of Honey is in Mordna and Cadam neere to the Cone. miffen Tarear : much out of Senerskey, Benan, Merum, Cazan, Derogobefe, and Vaffin.

4. Tallow.

Fourthly, of Tallow they afoord a great weight for transportation : not only for that their Countrey hath very much good ground apt for Pasturage of cartell, but allo by reason of their so many Lents and other Faits : and partly; because their greater men wie much Ware for their Lights, the poorer and meaner fort Birch dryed in their Stones, and consisted long fritiers, which they call Luchiness. Of Tallow there hath beene shipped out of the Realme a few water fine about one hundred thousand Pood yeerely, now not past thirty thousand or theresbouts. The best yeeld of Tallow is in the parts and Territories of Smelenste, Larighane, Ongliss; Nonograf, and Vologda, Offer, and Gorodetskey.

g. Hide.

Another principall Commoditie is their Loft and Cowillide. Their Loft or Buffe hide is very faire and large. Their Bull and Cow-hide (for O Zenthey make none, neither you Weather) is of a small size. There hath beene transported by Merchants strangers some yeares; one hundred thousand Hides. Now it is decreased to thirty thousand or theresbodes. Besides great store 10 of Goats Skins, whereof great numbers are shipped out of the Countrie. The largest kind of Losh or Buffe breedeth about Rostone; Wichida, Nongrad, & Moram, and Perm, The lefter fort within the Kingdome of Cazan.

6. Trane Oyle. An other very great and principall Commoditie is their Trane-oyle; drawneout of the Seal-The manner fish. Where it will not be impertinent to shew the manner of their hunting the Seale, which of bunning the they make this Oyle of : which is in this fort. Towards the end of Strinmer y before the Frost beginne) they goe downe with their Boats into the Bay of Saint Niebelal, to a Capt called Cufconesso or Foxnofe, where they leave their Boats till the next Spring tilde. When the Summe waxeth warme toward the Spring, and yet the Ice not melted within the Bay, they remine thirther agains. Then drawing their Boats over the Sea kee, they vie them for Houles to reft and 69 lodge in. There are commonly about seventeene or eighteene Fleete of them, of great large Boats, which divide themselves into divers companies, fine or fixe Boats in a confort.

They that first find the haunt, fire a Beacon, which they carrie with them for the none. Which being espied by the other companies, by hickamong them as are appointed of purpose,

they come all together and compasse the Seales round about in a Ring, that lye Sunning themfelies together vpon the Ice, commonly foure or fine thousand in a shoale, and so they inuade them enery man with his Club in his hand. If they hit them on the Nofe, they are foone killed, If on the fides or backe they beare out the blow, and many times fo catch and hold downe the Club with their Teeth by mayne force, that the partie is forced to call for helpe to his

The manner of the Seales is, when they fee themselves beset, to gather all close together in a throng or plumbe, to sway downe the Ice, and to breake it (if they can) which so bendeth the Ice, that many times it taketh the Sea-water vpon it, and maketh the Hunters to wade a foot or 10 more deepe. After the slaughter, when they have killed what they can they fall to sharing euery Boat his part in equal portions and so they flay them, taking from the body the Skin, and the Lard or Fat with all that cleaneth to the Skin. This they take with them, leaving the bodies behind, and so goe to shoare. Where they digge Pits in the ground of a fathome and an halfe deepe, or there about, and so taking the Fat or Lard off from the Skin, they throw it into the Pit, and cast in among it hor burning stones to melt it withall. The vppermost and purest is fold and vied to oyle Wooll for Cloth, the groffer (that is of a red colour) they fell to make Sope.

Likewife Ickary or Cauery, a great quantity is made upon the River of Volgba, out of the fift 7. Ickary. called Bellougina, the Sturgeon, the Seueriga and the Sterledey. Whereof the most part is shipped by French and Netherlandish Merchants for Italy and Spaine, some by English Mer-

The next is of Flaxe and Hempe, whereof there hath beene shipped (as I have heard Mer- 8. Hempe and chants (ay) at the Port of Name a great part of one hundred thips small and great yearely. Now flaxe, not past fue. The reason of this abating and decrease of this and other Commodities, that were wont to bee transported in a greater quantitie, is the shutting vp of the Port of the Narue towards the Finland Sea, which now is in the hands and possession of the Sweaden. Likewise the ftopping of the passage ouer-land by the way of Smolenike, and Plosike, by reason of their Warres with the Polonian, which caufeth the people to bee leffe prouident in mayntayning and gathering these and the like Commodities, for that they lacke Sales. Partly also for that the Merchants and Mousicks (for so they call the common sort of people) are very much discouraged by many 30 heavy and intollerable exactions, that of late time have beene imposed upon them; no man accounting that which he hath to be fure his owne. And therefore regard not to lay vp any thing, or to haue it before hand, for that it causeth them many times to be sleeced and spoyled, not only of their goods, but also of their lines. For the growth of Flaxe the Prounce of Volike, and the Countrey about is the chiefe and only place. For Hempe Smolenkeke, Derogobole and

The Countrey befides maketh great store of Salt. Their best Salt is made at Storarouse in ve- 9. Salt. ry great quantitie, where they have great store of Salt-wels, about two hundred and fiftie verst from the Sea. At Allracan Salt is made naturally by the Sea-water, that cafteth it vp into great Hils, and fo it is digged downe, and carryed away by the Merchants and other that will fetch 40 it from thence. They pay to the Emperour for acknowledgement or custome three pence. Ruffe vpon euery hundred weight. Besides these two, they make Salt in many other places of the voort act of the state of the s of Salt-pits, faue at Solonetskey, which lyeth neere to the Sea.

Likewile of Tarre they make a great quantitie out of their Fiere-trees in the Countrey of 10. Tarre. Duyna and Smolenske, whereof much is fent abroad. Befides thefe (which are all good and fub- 11, Ribezuba flantiall Commodities) they have divers other of smaller account, that are naturall and proper to that Country : as the fift tooth (which they call Ribacoba which is vied both among themfelues and the Perstans and Boughardens, that fercht it from thence for Beads, Knines, and Swordhafts of Noblemen, and Gentlemen, and for diners other vies. Some vie the powder of it a-50 gainst poylon, as the Vnicornes Horne. The fish that weareth it is called a Morie, and is caught about Pechana. These fish teeth some of them, are almost two soot of length, and weigh eleuen

or twelue pound a-piece.

In the Prouince of Corelia, and about the River Duyna towards the North Sea, there grow- 12. Slude. eth a foft Rocke which they call Sinde. This they cut into pieces, and so teare it into thin flakes, which naturall it is ape for and so wse it for Glasse-lanthornes and such like. It giveth both inwards and outwards a cleerer light then Glaffe, and for this respect is better then eyther Glaffe or Horne: for that it neyther breaketh like Glafe, now yet will burne like the Lanthorne. Salt- 13 Salt peeer peeter they make in many places, as at Onglises, Taruflane and Viling, and some small store of and Brimstone Brimstone vpon the River Voleba, but want skill to refine it.

Their Iron is somewhat brittle, but a great weight of it is made in Corelia, Cargapelle, and 14.1100. Their Iron is tomewhat brittle, but a great weight of it. In the Property of the Third Third Third The Color Myne they have none growing within the Realme.

Their beatls of strange kinds are the Losh, the Ollen, the wilde Horse, the Beare, the Wolue- The strange ring or wood Dogge, the Lyferne, the Beauer, the Sable, the Matron, the blacke and dunne bests, fift, Foxe, the white Beare towards the Sea coast of Perbora, the Gurnstale, the Laset, or Minener. foste &c. the

They breed in Ruffia

They have a kind of Squirrell that hath growing on the pinion of the shoulder bone, a long tufe of haire, much like vnto feathers, with a far broader tayle then have any other Squirrels, which they moue and shake as they leape from tree to tree, much like vnto a wing. They skife a large space, and seeme for to flie withall, and therefore they call them Letach Vechibe, that is, the five ing Squirrels. Their Hares and Squirrels in Summer are of the same colour with ours, in Winter the Hare changeth her coate into milke white, the Squirrell into gray, whereof commeth

the Calabar. Deare Horfes:

They have fallow Deere, the Roe Bucke, and Goats very great store. Their Horses are but small, but very swift and hard, they trauell them vnshod both Winter and Summer, without all regard of pace. Their Sheepe are but small, and beare course and harsh wooll. Of Fowle, they to Sheepe, I haue haue divers of the principall kinds : First , great store of Hawkes ; the Eagle , the Gerstalicon the Slightfaulcon, the Gof-hawke, the Taffell, the Sparhawke, &c. But the principall Hawke land breed twice a yeere; that breedeth in the Countrey, is counted the Gerfaulcon. the Ram hath foure bornes,

Of other Fowles their principall kinds are the Swanne tame and wilde, (whereof they have great store) the Storke, the Crane, the Tedder, of the colour of a Fealant, but farre bigger and lineth in the Firre woods. Of Fealant and Partridge they have very great plenty. An Owle there is of a very great bigneffe, more vgly to behold then the Owles of this Countrey, with a broad face, and eares much like vnto a man.

For fresh water Fish, besides the common forts (as Carpe, Pike, Pearch, Tench, Roach, &c.) they have divers kinds very good and delicate : as the Bellouga, or Bellougina of foure or five 20 elnes long, the Ofitrina or Sturgeon, the Seueriga, and Sterledy somewhat in fashion and taste like to the Sturgeon, but not fo thicke or long. Thele foure kinds of fifth breed in the Volgbe, and are catched in great plenty, and ferued thence into the whole Realme for a great food. Of and are executed in great prenty, and stock closed in the Goes of their four existing they make very great flore of I carry or Causary, as was fail before. They have besides these that breed in the Volgot, a fish called the Ribbella, or white Salmon, which they account more delicate then they doe the red Salmon, whereof also they have access ding great plenty in the Rivers Northward , as in Dayna the River of Cola , &c. In the Ozera or Lake neere a Towne called Peristane, not farre from the Moske, they have a small fish which they call the fresh Herring, of the fashion, and somewhat of the taste of a Sea-herring. Their chiefe Townes for fish are, Taruslane, Bealozera, Nonogrod, Aftracan, and Caxan: which all 30 weeld a large Custome to the Emperour every yeers for their trades of fishing, which they pra-Stife in Summer, but fend it frozen in the Winter time into all parts of the Realme.

Chap. 4. The chiefe Cidies of Ruffia.

"He chiefe Cities of Ruffia are, Mosko, Nonograd, Roftone, Volodomer, Plefco, Smolente, larustane, Peristane, Nisnonograd, Vologda, Ustinck, Golmigroe, Cazan, Astracan, Cargodia,

beareth his

The Citie of Moske is supposed to bee of great antiquitie, though the first Founder bee vid knowne to the Ruffe. It feemeth to have taken the name from the River that runneth on the one fide of the Towne. Berofus the Chaldran in his fifth Booke telleth that Nimrod (whom ospected author, ther profane Stories call Saturne ) fent Affring, Medus, Mofens, and Magog into Afia to plant 40 or tather that Colonies there, and that Molen planted both in Afra and Europe. Which may make some probality, that the Citie, or rather the River whereon it is built; tooke the denomination from this Mojens: the rather because of the climate or situation which is in the very farthest part and list of Europe, bordering upon Asia. The Citie was much enlarged by one Europe or John, some to Daniel, that first changed his title of Duke into King: though that honour continued not to his posteritie: the rather because he was innested into it by the Popes Legate, who at that time was Innocentises the fourth, about the yeere 1246, which was very much milliked by the Rufe people, being then a part of the Eastern or Greeke Church, Since that time the name of this Citie hath growne more famous, and better knowne to the World: infomuch that not only the Prouince, but the whole Countrey of Ruffis is termed by some by the name of Mosconis the Me- 50 tropolite Citie. The forme of this Citie is in a manner round, with three strong walls, circuling the one within the other, and fireets lying betweene, whereof the inmoft wall, and the buildings closed within it (lying fafest as the heart within the bodie, fenced and watted with the River Moskua, that runneth close by it) is all accounted the Emperours Caffle. The number of houses (as I have heard ) through the whole Citie (being reckoned by the Emperour a little before it was fired by the Chrim) was 41500. in all. Since the Tartar besieged and fired the Towne (which was in the yeere 1571.) there lieth waste of it a great bredth of ground, which before was well fet and planted with buildings, specially that part on the South side of Moskua, built not long before by Basilism the Emperour for his Garrison of Souldiers, to whom he gas priviledge to drinke Mede, and Beere at the drie or prohibited times, when other Raffet 60 may drinke nothing but water , and for that cause called this new Citie by the name of Nalsi, that is , Skinke or powre in. So that now the Citie of Moske is not much bigger then the Citie of London. The next in greatnesse, and in a manner as large, is the Citie Nonograde: where was committed (as the Ruffe layth) the memorable warre to much spoken of in Stories of the Seg-

Treacherie of bond flaues, Iaruflaue, Ruffe building, CHAP.I.

thian fernants, that tooke Armes against their masters: which they report in this fort: vz. That the Boiarens or Gentlemen of Nonograde and the Territorie about (which onely are Souldiers after the discipline of those Countries) had warre with the Tartars. Which being well performed and ended by them, they returned homewards. Where they understood by the way, Pleasant His that their Cholopey or Bondflaues whom they left at home, had in their ablence poffeffed their florie. Townes, Lands, Houses, Wives, and all At which newes being somewhat amazed, and yet disdayning the villanie of their servants, they made the more speed home : and so not farre from Novograde met them in warlike manner marching against them. Whereupon adulting what was best to be done, they agreed all to set upon them with no other shew of weapon but with

to their Horse whips (which as their manner is, every man rideth withall) to put them in remembrance of their femile condition, thereby to terrifie them, and abate their courage. And Likelips, like fo marching on, and lashing altogether with their whips in their hands they gave the onset; lettice. Which feemed to terrible in the eares of their villames, and froke fuch a fense into them of the fmart of the whip which they had felt before, that they fled altogether like Sheepe before the Driuers. In memory of this victory the Nonogradians euer tince have stamped their Coine ( which they call a dinger Nonogredskey, currant thorow all Ruffie ) with the figure of a Horse-man shaking a whip aloft in his hand. These two Cities exceed the rest in greatnesse. For ftrength their chiefe Townes are , Vobsko , Smolensko , Cazan , and Afracan, as lying upon the borders. But for fituation laruflane farre exceedeth the reft. For belides laruflant 20 the commodities that the foyle yeeldeth of Pasture and Corne, it lieth vpon the famous River

Volga, and looketh ouer it from a high banke very faire and flately to behold; whereof the Towne taketh the name. For laruflaue in that Tongue fignisfieth as much as a faire or famous Banke. In this Towne (as may be gheffed by the name ) dwelt the Ruffe King Vlademir, furnamed laraflane, that married the daughter of Harald King of England, by mediation of Suere the Dane, as is noted in the Danish Storie about the yeere 1067.

The other Townes have nothing that is greatly memorable, faue many ruines within their walls. Which sheweth the decrease of the Ruffe People, under this government. The streets of their Cities and Townes in stead of paning, are planked with Firre trees, plained and layd uen close the one to the other. Their houses are of wood without any lime or itone, built very Themannet 20 close and warme with Firre trees plained and piled one vpon another. They are fattned toge- of Ruffe builtther with dents or notches at every corner, and so clasped fast together. Betwixt the trees or dingtimber they thrust in mosse (whereof they gather plehey in their Woods, to keepe out the aire. Euery house hath a paire of staires that lead up into the chambers out of the yard or street after

and bricke : as being colder and more dampish then their woodden houses, specially of Fitte, that is a dry and warme wood. Whereof the probidence of God hath given them fuch store, as that you may build a faire house for twentie or thirtie Rubbels, or little more, where wood is most scant. The greatest inconvenience of their woodden building is the aptnesse for firing, which happeneth very oft, and in very fearefull fort, by reason of the drinesse and fat-40 neffe of the Firre, that being once fired, burneth like a Torch, and is hardly quenched till all bee

the Scottif manner. This building feemeth farre better for their Countrey, then that of Rone

The fur-hame of the Imperial house of Russia, is called Beata; It tooks the original (as is thouse of the Kings of Hangarie. Which may freme the more probable, for that the Of the house Hangarian Kings many yeeres agoe have borne that name: as appeareth by Bonfinius and other or flocke of Stories written of that Countrey. For about the yeere 1059, mention is made of one Beala the Ruffe Emthat succeeded his brother Andreas, who reduced the Hungarians to the Christian Faith from perour. whence they were fallen by Atheifme and Turkifh perswasion before. The second of that name was called Beala the blind, after whom fucceeded divers of the fame name.

That their Ancestry came not of the Russe Nation, Inan vasilowich father to this Emperour, In not naturally 50 would many times boaft, dislayning (as should feeme) to have his progenic derived from the Roffe. See 149. Ruffe bloud. As namely to an Englishman his Gold-smith, that had received Bullion of him to 56, where the make certaine Plate: whom the Emperour comman led to looke well to his weight. For my Tacins de-Ruffes (faid he) are theeues all. Whereat the Workeman looking vpon the Emperour, began to firoyed these Ruffet (laid he) are thecues all. Whereat the Workerman looking vpon the Emperour, began to Commeyes finile. The Emperour being of quicke conceit, charged him to tell him what hee finiled ac. If then called your Maiestie will pardon mee (quoth the Gold-limith) I will tell you. Your Highnesse said, that the Bulgaria maior, Russes were all sheenes, and forgat in the meane while that your felfe was a Russe. I thought is (quoth many fled into the Emperour) but thou art deceined. For I am no Ruffe, my Ancestors were Germanes (for io Hungarie: and they account of the Hungarians to bee part of the German Nation, though indeed they come after Estabas of the Hungarians. They immeds these Countries and and all indeed they come death, bo h 60 of the Humnes. That intraded those Countries, and refted in those parts of Pannoning, Dow cal-Hunterie and led Hungarus.

meanes to recourt themselves, and perhaps either by Hungarian affinitie with their Princes, or taking a Prince from Hungarie then affilled with Germans, they began to recour of that Tartwim dilease, whereof fill some Symtomes remayne.

The advancehou'e of Beals.

How they aspired to the Dukedome of Volademer (which was their first degree, and ingrafting into Ruffles ) and whether it were by Conquest, or by Marriage, or by what other meanes, I could not learne any certainty among them. That from these beginnings of a small Dukedome (that bare notwithstanding an absolute government with it, as at that time did allothe other Shires or Provinces of Ruffia) this house of Beala spred it selfe forth, and aspired by degrees to the Monarchie of the whole Countrey, is a thing well knowne, and of very late memorie. The chiefe of that House that advanced the Stocke, and enlarged their Dominions, werethe three laft that raigned before this Emperout, to wit , Inan Bafilem, and Inen father to the other that raigneth at this time. Whereof the first that tooke vnto him the name and title of Emperour, was Bafilem father to Inm., and grandfather to this man. For before that time they were con- 10 tented to be called great Dukes of Mosks. What hath beene done by either of these three, and how much they have added to their first estate by Conquest or otherwise, may bee seene in the Chapter of their Colonies, or Purchases perforce. For the continuance of the race, this House of Beals at this prefent ' is in like case as are many of the greatest Houses of Christendome, va. the whole Stocke and Race concluded in one, two, or some few of the Bloud. For besides the Em-Since the Scepreshath been perour that now is, who hath no child (neither is like euer to have, for ought that may bee coniectured by the constitution of his body, and the barrennesse of his wife after so many yestes marriage) there is but one more, vz. a child of fixe or feuen yeeres old, in whom refleth all the manifold comhope of the succession , and the posteritie of that House. As for the other brother that was eldeft of the three, and of the best towardnesse, he died of a blow given him by his father vpon 20 the head in his furie with his walking staffe, or (as some say) of a thrust with the prong of it driven deepe into his head. That he meant him no such mortall harme when hee gave him the blow, may appeare by his mourning and passion after his sonnes death, which neuer left him till it brought him to the grave. Wherein may be marked the inflice of God, that punished his delight in shedding of bloud with this murder of his sonne by his owne hand, and so ended his dayes and tyrannie together, with the murdring of himselfe by extreme griefe, for this his via happie and vanaturall fact.

bultions. The Emperor

" Va. A. D.

milies, with

1588.

We have fince had two which hane affirmed to be this De metrius, and thereof and of

The Emperours younger buther of fixe or feuen yeeres old (as was faid before) is kept in a remote place from the Masks, wader the tuition of his mother and her kindred, of the Houfe of the Nagaies: yet not fafe (as I have heard) from attempts of making away by practice of some 10 that afpire to the succession, if this Emperour die without any issue. The Nurse that tasted behue obrayned fore him of certaine meat (as I have heard ) died presently. That hee is naturall sonne to feet Vafilowich, the Ruffe People warrant it , by the fathers qualitie that beginneth to appeare althereof and of ready in his tender yeeres. Hee is delighted (they fay) to fee Sheepe and other cattell killed, and to looke on their throats while they are bleeding (which commonly children are afraid t behold) and to beate Geese and Hennes with a staffe till he see them lie dead. Besides these of the male kind, there is a Widow, that hath right in the succession, Sister to the old Emperour, and Aunt to this man, sometime Wife to Magnus Duke of Holft, Brother to the King of Denmarke, by whom she had one daughter. This woman since the death of her Husband hath beene allured againe into Ruffia, by some that love the succession better then her selfe, which appeareth 40 by the sequele. For her selfe with her daughter, so soone as they were returned into Russia, were thrust into a Numerie, where her daughter died this last yeere while I was in the Countrey, of no naturall difease as was supposed. The mother remayneth still in the Nunnerie, where (as have heard) the bewayleth her selfe, and curieth the time when the returned into Raylia, encode with the hope of marriage, and other faire promises in the Emperours name. Thus it standeth with the Imperiall Stocke of Ruffia, of the House of Beals, which is like to determine in those that now are, and to make a conversion of the Russe estate. If it be into a government of some better temper, and milder constitution, it will be happie for the poore people that are now oppreffed with intolerable feruitude.

Chap,6. Of the manner of crowe ning or inau-Ruffe Empe-

He folemnities vsed at the Russe Emperours Coronation, are on this manner. In the great Church of Frechefte (or our Ladie) within the Emperours Calle is erected a Stage, whereon standeth a Scrine that beareth vpon it the Imperiall Cap and Robe of very rich stuffe. When ning or man-guration of the the day of the Inauguration is come, there refort thither, first the Patriarch with the Metropolitans, Arch-bishops, Bishops, Abbots, and Priors, all richly clad in their Pontificalibus. Then enter the Deacons with the Quier of Singers, Who fo foone as the Emperour fetteth foot into the Church, beginne to fing : Many yeares may line noble Theodore Juanowich, &c. Whereunto the Patriarch and Metropolite with the rest of the Clergie, answere with a certaine Hymne, in forme of a Prayer, finging it all together with a great noise. The Hymne being ended, the Patriarch with the Emperour mount vp the Stage, where flandeth a Seat ready for the Emperour. 60 Whereupon the Patriarch willeth him to fit downe, and then placing hunfelfe by him you another Seate prouided for that purpose, boweth downe his head towards the ground, and fayed this Payer: Ob Lord God King of Kingt, Lard of Lad, which have to me ground, sine ay-this Payer: Ob Lord God King of Kingt, Lard of Lad, which have Prophet Samuel didft choofe top ferman: Dauid, and anount hom for King oner thy People Heael, have now our Prayers, and love

from thy Sanituarie upon this thy Seruant Theo love, whom thou hast chosen and exalted for King oner these thy holy Nations, aboint him with the oyle of gladnesse, protect him by thy power, but upon his head a Crowne of Gold and procious Stones, give him length of dayes, place him in the Seat of Instice, strengthen bis arms, make subject onto him all the barbarous Nations. Let thy feare bee in his whole bears, turne bim from all errour, and shew him the saluation of thy boly and universall Church, that bee may indee thy people with Instice, and protest the children of the poore, and finally attayne enerlasting life. This Prayer he speaketh with a lowe voyce, and then pronounceth a lowd : All prayer and power to Godsbe Faiber, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghoft. The Prayer being ended, he commandeth certayne Abbots to reach the Imperiall Robe and Cap: which is done very decently, and with

10 great Solemnitie, the Patriarch withall pronouncing slowde : Peace be unto all. And fo he beginneth another Prayer to this effect: Bow your felices together with vs. and pray to him that respects oner all. Preferue him (oh Lord) under thy holy protection, keeps him that bee may doe good and holy things, let luftice shine forth in his dayes, that we may line quietly without strife and malice. This is pronounced somewhat sofely by the Patriarch, whereto hee addeth againe allowd : Thou are the King of the whole World , and the Samieur of our foules , to thee the Father, Sonne, and Holy Ghost, bee all prayle for ener and ener, Arrien. Then putting on the Robe and the Cap, hee bleffeth the Emperour with the signe of the Crosse: Saying withall, in the Name of the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghoit.

The like is done by the Metropolices, Archbishops, and Bishops: who all in their order come 20 to the Chaire, and one after another bleffe the Emperor with their two fore-fingers. Then is faid by the Patriarch another Praier, that beginneth: Omost boly Virgin Mother of God, or. After which a Deacon pronounceth with an high lowd voyce : Many yeeres to Noble Theodore, good, bonourable, beloved of God, great Dike of Volodemer of Mosko, Emperour, and Monarch of all Ruffia, &c. Whereto the other Priests and Deacons that stand somewhat farre of by the Altar or Table, anfwere finging, Many yeeres; many yeeres, to the Noble Theodore. The fame Note is taken vp by the Prieffs and Descons, that are placed at the right and left fide of the Church, and then altogether, they channt and thunder out; inging: Many years to the Noble Theodore, good, bonomable; belond of God, great Dake of Votedemer, Mosko, Emprour of all Russa, &c. These Solemnities being ended, first commerti the Patriarch with the Metropolites, Arch-30 bishoppes, and Bishops, then the Nobilitie, and the whole Companie in their order, to doe homage to the Emperour, bending downe their heads, and knocking them at his feet to the very ground.

The Stile wherewith hee is invested at his Coronation , runneth after this manner, Theodore learnowich, by the grace of God, great Lord and Emperous of all Ruffs, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Nousgrad, King of Cazan, King of Altracan, Lord of Plesko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Twerria, Toughoria, Permis, Vadska, Bolghoria, and others, Lord and great Duke of Nouograd, of the Low Country, of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotskoy, Rostone, Yarusaueley, Bealozera, Leifland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Condensa, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Countreyes, etc.

40 This stile contayneth in it all the Emperours Provinces , and setteth forth his greatnesse. And therefore they have a great delight and pride in it , forcing not onely there owne people but also Strangers (that have any matter to deliver to the Emperour by Speech or writing) to repeat the whole forme from the beginning to the end. Which breedeth much cavill, and sometimes quartell betwixt them and the Tarter, and Poland Ambasiadours: who refuse to call him Czar, that is Emperour, and to repeat the other parts of his long Stile, My selfe, when I had audience of the Empercur, thought good to salute him onely with thus much, viz. Emperour of all Ruffia, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Nouograd, King of Cazan, King of Aftracan. The rest I omitted of purpose, because I knew they gloried, to have their Stile appeare to be of a larger Volume then the Queenes of England, But this was taken in

50 fo ill part, that the Chancellor (who then attended the Emperour, with the reft of the Nobilitie) with a lowd chafing voyce called still upon me to fay out the rest. Whereto I answered, that the Emperours Stile was very long and could not so well be remembred by Strangers, that I had repeated so much of it, as might shew that I gaue honour to the rest, &c. But all would not ferue till I commanded my Interpreter to fay it all out.

Hemanner of their Gouernment is much after the Turkilb fashion : which they seeme to \_ Chap.7. imitates a neer as the Countrey, and reach of their capacities in Politike Affairs will gue them leave to doe.

The State and forme of their Government seemeth to apply all to the behoofe of the Prince, The Russe Go-60 and that after a most open manner: as may appeare by the Sophismata, or secrets of their Gouern a menument to ment afterwards fet downe, as well for the keeping of the Nobilitie and Commons in an vn- ranneall der proportion, and farre vneuen ballance in their feuerall degrees, as also in their Impositions and Exactions, without any regard of Nobilitie or People: farther then it giveth the Nobilitie a kind of libertie, to exact vpon the Commons and baser sort of People in all parts



Guill-kind giue-all kind tenure. Abfolute Soucreigntie.

of the Realme whereforeur they come , specially in the place where their Lands lye, or where of the Acadine white course they come a special first appointed by the Emperour to gouerne wider him: Alfo to the Commons fome final they are appointed by the simperior to governe a lost different of Inheritance to whether Some contentments, mentacting pane out the control of their sects by gift they will: which commonly they doe after our Ganill kend, and difpole of their sects by gift

of terminent without any constraints.

Concerning the principall points and matters of State, wherein the Sourreignetic confeited Concerning the principal points and amendment of public Lawss, the making of Magifrates, power to make Warre or can be the making and amendment of public Lawss, the making of Magifrates, power to make Warre or (as the manying amammany of provide are to pardon life, with the right of Appeals in all matter, buth Langue with any Euresiae State, to execute or to pardon life, with the right of Appeals in all matters, buth Laague wuo any correse osate, se caches or primary service or the Emperour, and his Coun-Count and Cromman, they were to the source of the Sourceigne Commander, and the Execution 10 ner of all thefe. For as couching any Law or publike Order of the Realme, it is over determined ner of all tires. You are the control of before any publike Affembly or Parliament be furmoned. Where before his Connell, he of Derore any public randomy of a same and the same concluded before had, but onely a few Bishops, Abbots, and Friers: to make aduantage of the peoples Superstitions, even against rew Dinneys, and trains a woman and juff, that paffeth with content of their Biftops and Clergie men, whatloeuer it be. For which purpose the Emperours are content to make much of the corrupt flate of the Church, as now it is among them, and to nounsh the same by extraordinary favours, and Immunities to the Bishops Seas, Abbeyes and Frieries: as knowing Superstition and falle Religion best to agree with a Tyrannicall State, and to be a special meanes to vp-

Magistracies.

Secondly, as touching the publike Offices and Magistracies of the Realme, there is none here. ditarie, neyther any fo great nor so little in that Countrey, but the bestowing of it is done immediately by the Emperour himselie, Insomuch that the very Diacks, or Clerkes in enery head Towns, are for the most part assigned by himselse. Notwithstanding, the Emperour that now is (the better to entend his Deuotions) referreth all fuch matters pertayning to the State, wholly to the ordering of his Wines Brother, the Lord Borris Feder wich Godonoe.

Hefucceeded Luridiction.

Thirdly, the like is to be faid of the Iurifdiction concerning matters Iudiciall, specially such as concerne life and death. Wherein there is none that hath any authoritie or publike Iuridiction that goeth by Difcent, or is held by Charter, but all at the appointment and pleasure of the Emperour, and the same practifed by the Indges with such awe and restraint, as that they derenot 30 determine vpon any speciall matter, but must referre the same wholly, vp to the Medico the Emperours Councell. To shew his Sourceigntie ouer the lines of his Subjects, the late Empe-Intervention Language Language

Fourthly, for the Souereigne Appeale, and giving of Pardons in Criminall Matters to such as are connicted, it is wholly at the pleasure and grace of the Emperour. Wherein also the Emprese that now is, being a woman of great Clemencie, and withall delighting to deale in publike Affaires of the Realme, (the rather to supply the defect of her Husband) doth behave her lelfe after an absolute manner, giuing out pardon (specially on her birth day and other solemne times) in 40 her owne name, by open Proclamation, without any mention at all of the Emperour. Some there have beene of late of the ancient Nobilitie, that have held divers Provinces by right of Inheritance, with an absolute Authoritie and Iurisdiction over them, to order and determine all matters within their owne Precinct without all Appeale; or controllment of the Emperour. But this was all annulled and wrung cleane from them by Inna Valionich Father to this

Ancient No-

Chap. 8. The manner of holding the Parlia. The States of

Parliament. The order of

Friday respect. of that day.

number. As for Burghers or other to represent the Comminattie, they have no place there: the people beeing of no better account with them then as servants or bond-slaves that are to obey, properties on to make Lawes, nor to know any thing of publike matters before they are concluded.

The Court of Parliament (called Zabere) is held in this manner. The Emperour cause the the fammons to be fummoned fuch of his Nobilitie as himfelfe thinketh meete, being (as was faid) all of his or allemblage Councell : together with the Patriarch, who calleth his Clergie, to wit, the two Metropolites, the two Archbishops, with such Bishops, Abbots, and Friers as are of best account and reputation among them. When they are all affembled at the Emperours Court, the day is intimated when the Selfion shill beginne. Which commonly is vpon some Friday, for the Religion 69

Heir highest Court of publike consultation for matter of State, is called the Zabore, that is,

The Public Affembly. The flates and degrees of persons, that are present at their Patila-

of twenty being all of his Councell. 3. Certayne of the Clergie men, &c. about the fame

ments, are these in order, 1. The Emperour himielse. 2. Some of his Nobilitie about the number 50

When the day is come, the Clergie-men assemble before at the time and place appointed, which is called the Stollie. And when the Emperour commeth attended by his Nobilitie, they arife all, and meete him in an out-roome, following their Patriarch, who bleffeth the Emperour

with his two fore-fingers, laying them on his fore-head, and the fides of his face, and then kiffeth him on the right fide of his breft. So they palle on into their Parliament House, where they fit in this order. The Emperour is enthronized on the one fide of the Chamber, In the next place not farre from him at a small square Table (that giveth roome to twelve persons or thereabouts) fitteth the Patriarch with the Metropolites and Bilhops, and certayne of the principall Nobilitie of the Engerours Councell, together with two Dracks or Secretaries (called Dunmoy dyakes) that enact that which passeth. The rest place themselves on benches round a bout the Roome, euery man in his ranke after his degree. Then is there propounded by one of the Secretaries (who represente the Speaker) the cause of their Assembly, and the principall matters that they are to confider of. For to propound Bils what every man thinketh good for the publike benefit (as the manner is in England) the Ruffe Parliament alloweth no luch custome,

nor liberty to subjects. The points being opened, the Patriarch with his Clergie-men haue the Prerogative to be first Their discourse asked their vote, or opinion, what they thinke of the points propounded by the Secretarie, at Parliament.

Whereto they answere in order, according to their degrees, but all in one forme without any Discourse: as having learned their Lesson before, that servet in their turnes at all Parliaments alike, what where is propounded. Commonly it is to this effect. That the Emperour and his Conneell are of great wisdome and experience, touching the Policies and publike Affaires of the Realme, and faire better able to sudge what is profitable for the Common-wealth, then they are, which attend upon the De Service of God only, and matters of Religion. And therefore it may please them to proceed. That instead of their adusse, they will aside them with their Prayers, as their duties and vocations doe require, erc. To this or like effect having made their Answeres every man in his course, vp standeth some Abbot or Frier more bold then the reft (yet appointed before-hand as a matter of forme) and defireth the Emperour it would please his Maj-stie to command to be delivered wnto them what his Majesties own judgement, and determinate pleasure is, as touching those matters propounded by his Desake. Whereto is replyed by the faid Secretarie in the Emperours name. That his Highnesse with

zbose of his Roble Conneell, upon good and sound advice have found the matters proposed to be very good and necessary for the Common-wealth of his Realme. Notwithstanding, for assmuch as they are Religious con metch with the transfer of the faid Propositions And therefore defreth them again to fine the mental series of the faid Propositions And therefore defresh them again to fleat them media freely. And if they fall live to give their confents, that then the matters may passe to a full conclusion. Hereunto when the Clergie-men haue giuen their consents (which they vie to doe without any great pauling) they take their leaves with bleffing of the Emperour : who bringeth the Patriarch on his way fo faire as the next Roome, and fo returneth to his Seat, till all be made ready for his returne homeward. The Acts that thus are passed by the Zabore or Parliament, the Deisekers or Secretaries draw into a forme of Proclamation, which they lend abroad into enery Prouince, and head Towne of the Realme, to be published there by the Dukes and Diakeis, or Secretaries of those places. The Session of Parliament being fully ended, the Emperour muiteth the 40 Clergiemen to a folemne Dinner. And so they depart euery man to his home.

The degrees of persons or Estates of Russia (besides the Sourreigne State or Emperour him-Other Noblity which is of four forts, Whereof the Chiefe Noblities and by for Birth, Authority, and Reuenne are called the Valency Knazer, that is, The exempt or primited ed ite, and by Dukes. Their held formerine a feneral Invisit Pour and this hour and the state of the st Dukes. These held sometime a seuerall Iurishiction, and absolute Authoritie within their Pre-it's kept in an cincits, much like vnto the States or Nubles of Germany. But afterwards (referring their Rights under proporvpon composition) shey yeelded themselues to this Houle of Beals, when it beganne to waxe tion agreeable mightte, and to enlarge it selfe by ouer-marching their Neighbours. Onely they were bound to to that State.

Granthe Emperous in his Warn your marching their Neighbours. ferus the Emperour in his Warres with a certayne number of Horfe. But the late Emperour I- Kneto chiefe 50 Man Vafilometh Father to this Prince, being a man of high fpirit, and fub ill in his kind meaning of the Nobito reduce his Government into a more first torme, began by degrees to clip off their greatnesse, little and to bring it downe to a leffer proportion: till in the end he made them not onely his Vallals, bu: his K.lopkey, that is, his very Villaines or Bond-flaues. For fo they terme and write themfelues in any publike Instrument or private Petition which they make to the Empirour. So that

now they hold their Authorities, Lands, Lines, and all at the Emperours pleasure as the rest do. The meanes and practice whereby hee wrought this to effect against those, and other of the Nobility (lowell as I could note out of the report of his doings) were these, and such like. First, he cash private emulations among them about prerogatine of their Titles and Dignities. Wherein hee vied to let on the inferiours, to prefer or equall themselves to those that were accounted to 60 be of the Nobler Houses. Where hee made his advantage of their malice and contentions, the one against the other, by receiving deuised matter, and accusations of secret practice and Conspiracies to bee intended against his Person and State. And so having singled out the greatest of them, and cut them off with the good liking of the rell, hee fell at laft to open practice, by forcing of the other to yeeld their Rights vnto him.

The faction of

2. Hee divided his lubiects into two parts or factions by a generall Schifme. The one part he Operation and called the Oppression or Selectmen. These were such of the Nobility and Gentry as he took to his Operations and Callect the Oppression of the Common. The Meet and maintagne given as his faithfull fubice. The other he called Zemsky, or the Common. The Zemsky contayined the base and vulgar fort, with such Noblemen and Gentlemen as he meant to cut off, as suspected to mislike his Government, and to have a meaning to practice against him. Wherein he provided that the Oppressing to number and qualitie of Valure, Money, Armour, &c. farre exceeded the other of the Zempskey fide, whom heput(as it were from under his protection: so that if any of them were spoyled or killed by those of the Oppression, (which he accounted of his owne part) there was no amends to bee sought for by way of publike luftice, or by complaint to the Emperour.

The whole number of both parts was orderly registred and kept in a Booke : so that every man knew who was a Zempsker man, and who of the Opprefini. And this libertie of the ope part to spoile and kill the other without any helpe of Magistrate, or Law (that continued fenen yeeres) enriched that fide, and the Emperours Treasury, and wrought that withall which hee intended by this practile, viz. to take out of the way such of the Nobilitie, as himselfe mishked. whereof were flame within one weeke to the number of three hundred within the Citie of

This milchieuous practice of making a generall Schilme, and publike division among the subsects of his whole Realme, proceedeed (as should seeme) from an extreame doubt, and defe perate feare, which he had conceived of most of his Nobilitie, and Gentlemen of his Realme, 10 in his Wars with the Polonian and Chrim Tartar. What time he grew into a vehement suspition (conceined of the ill successe of his Affaires) that they practised Treason with the Polonian and Chrim. Whereupon he executed some, and denifed this way to be rid of the reft.

Pomefiney

3. Having thus pulled them and feafed all their Inheritance, Lands, Priviledges, &c. Save some very small part which hee left to their name, hee gaue them other Landsof the tenour of Pomestnoy (as they call it) that are held at the Emperours pleasure, lying far of in another Countrey, and foremoued them into other of his Provinces, where they might have neyther favour, nor authority, not being Natiue nor well knowne there. So that now these of the chiefe Nobility (called Vaciney Knazey) are equalled with the reft : faue that in the opinion and fauourof the people they are of more account, and keepe still the Prerogative of their place in all their an

Their practice to keepe downe these Houses from rifing againe and recourring their dignities are thefe, and fuch like. First, many of their Heires are kept vnmarried perforce, that the stocke may dye with them. Some are sene into Siberia, Cazan and Afracan, under pretence of service, and there either made away, or elfe fast clapped vp. Some are put into Abbeyes, and sheare themselues Friers by pretence of a Vow to be made voluntary, and of their owne accord, but indeed forced vnto it by feare, vpon some pretenced crime objected against them. Where they are so guarded by some of speciall trust, and the Couent it selfe (vpon whose head it standeth that they make no escape) as that they have no hope but to end their lives there. Of this kind there are many of very great Nobilitie. These and such like wayes begunne by the Emperour Inan Va- 40 filorach are fill practifed by the Godonoes, who being advanced by the Marriage of the Empresse their Kinfwoman, rule both the Emperour, and his Realme (specially Borrs: Federowich Godonee, Brother to the Empresse) and endeauour by all meanes to cut off, or keepe downe all of the best and ancientest Nobilitie. Whereof divers already they have taken away, whom they thought likeliest to make head against them and to hinder their purpose, as Knoz. Andreas Guraken Bulgatkowe, a man of great birth and authoritie in the Countrey. The like they have done with Peter Gollaumi (whom they put into a Dungcon where hee ended his life) with Knez Vafile Vrywich Gollooben, with Andrien Inanowich Suskey accounted among them for a man of a great wiledome. So this last yeere was killed in a Monastery (whither they had thrust him)one Knez Inan Petrowich Suikey a man of great valour, and feruice in that Countrey : who about five or fixe yeeres 10 fince, bare out the fiege of the Citie Vobsko, made by Stephan Batore King of Polonia, with one hundred thousand men, and repulsed him very valiantly, with great honour to himselfe, and his Countrey, and difgrace to the Polonian. Also Micheta Romanowich Vncle to the Emperour by the Mothers fide, was supposed to hauedyed of Poylon, or some like practice.

Names of the

The Names of these families of greatest Nobilitie are these in their order. The first is of Knez fees of the Ruffe Volodemer, which resteth at this time in one Daughter a widow, and without Children (mentioned before) fometime wife to Harrock Magnus Brother to the King of Denmarke, now closed within a Nunnerie. The fecond Knez Methelosker, thrust into a Frierie, and his onely Sonne kept from marriage, to decay the houle. The third Glimsley. But one left of his houle, and hee owithout children faue one Daughter. The fourth Saukey, whereof there are foure Brethren young men, and vomarryed all. The fifth Hubershop. Of this House are foure living. The fixth Bulgaloy, now called Gulescher house, whereof are fine lining, but youths all. The seventh Vorallins. key. Two left of that flocke. The eighth Odgorkey, two. The ninth Telletikey, one. The tenth Taytone, three. Thefe are the Names of the chiefe Families, called Vaetney Knazy: that in effect

haue loft all now, faue the very name it felfe, and fauour of the people, which is like one day to restore them againe, if any be left.

The second degree of Nobilitie is of the Boiarens. These are such as the Emperour honoureth The second (befides their Nobilitie) with the title of Counfellers. The revenue of thefe two forts of their degree of No. Nobles that rifeth out of their Land affigned them by the Emperour, and held at his pleafure billine, (for of their owne Inheritance there is little left them, as was fayd before) is about a thousand Marcks a yeere : besides Pension which they receive of the Emperour for their sentice in his Warres, to the fumme of feuen hundred Rubbels a yeere, and none about that fumme,

But in this number the Lord Borris Federowich Godenos is not to bee reckoned, that is like a Lord Borris as-Transcendent, and in no fach predicament with the rest, being the Emperours Brother in law, his ter this Emper 10 Protector for direction, for Command and authoritie Emperour of Ruffig. His yeersty revenue rour. in Land and Pension, amounteth to the summe of 93700. Rubbels and more, as appeareth by the particulars. Hee hath of inheritance (which himfelte hath augmented in Vafma Dorogebofe, fixe thousand Rubbels a yeere. For his office of Connick, or Matter of the Horse twelve thousand Rubbels or Marcks, raifed out of the Conaffue Sloboday, or the liberties pertayning to that Office. which are certayne Lands and Townes neere about the Mosco. Befides, all the meadow and pasture ground on both sides the banke of the River Moske, thirtie verst vo the streams, and fore tie verift downwards. For his pension of the Emperour (besides the other tor his Office) freene thouland Rubbels. Out of the Province or Shire of Vagha, there is given him for a nemiliar exemoted out of the Cheffird of Posolskey, two and thirtie thousand Rubbels, besides a rent of

20 Furres. Out of Rezen and Sener, (another peculiar) thirtie thousand Rubbels. Out of Grer and Turiock another exempt place eight thousand Rubbels. For rent of Bach-fromes and Bathinghouses without the walls of Moske, fitteene hundred Rubbels. Befides his Pomest, or Lands, which hee holdeth at the Emperours pleature, which farre exceedeth the proportion of land al-

lotted to the rest of the Nobilitie.

One other there is of the house of Glinders, that difpendeth in Land and Pension about fortie thousand Rubbels yeerely. Which nee is suffered to enjoy, because he hath marryed Borris his wives Sifter, being himfelse very simple and almost a naturall. The ordering of him and his Lands are committed to Borris.

In the third ranke are the Voyandey, or fuch Nobles assire, or have beene Generals in the Em- The third for perours warres. Which deliner the honour of their Tiele to their postericies also : who take their of Nobilitle, place about the other Dukes and Nobles, that are not of the two former forts, viz. of the Vdelmey knazey, nor of the Boiarens.

These three degrees of their Nobilitie, (to wit) the Valley knazy, the Beiarens, and the Voisingdey, have the addition of Vicb, put vnto their inhame, as Borris Federowift, Scc. Which is a Title Vich. note of Honour that the rest may not viimpe. And in 15ats it bee not added in the naming of them, they may fue the Bestebest or penaltie of dispanous voon them, that otherwise shall tearme them.

The fourth and lowest degree of Nobilitie with them; is of such as beare the name of Kname. or Dukes, but come of the younger Brothers of those chiefe Houses, through many discents, and haue no inheritance of their owne, faue the bare name getitle of Duke onely. For their order is to deliuer their names and titles of their Dignities over to all their Children alike, whatfocuer elfe they leave them. So that the Sonnes of a Voisnodey or Generall in the field, are called Vois moder, though they never faw the field, and the Sonnes of a Knot or Duke, are called Knower, though they have not one groat of inheritance or linely hood to maintay,ne them selves wishall. Of this fort there are fo many, that the plentie maketh them cheape a fo that you hall fee Dukes glad to ferue a meane man for fine or tixe Rubbels or Marcks a years, and marchey will fland highly upon their Beficheft or reputation of their Honours. And thefe are their leverall des grees of Nobilitie.

nees of Nobilitie.

The fecond degree of perfons, is of their *Sina Beiarskey*, or the fonnes of Gentlemen specifically The fecond so are preferred, and hold that Name by their feruice in the Empesours warren better ach degree of perdiers by their very stocke and birth. To which order are reterred their Dyacks or Sestences, fons, that lense the Emperous in every head Towne, being joyned in Committee with the Dukes of that place.

at place.

The last are their Commons, whom they call Monstet. In which number they rate on their Theolimide. Merchants, and their common Artificers. The very lowest and baselt fort of this kinds (which green are held in no degree) are their Countrey people, whom they call Christianen. Of the Sina Boiarskey (which are all Souldiers) were are to fee in the description of their Forces, and Militarie prouisions. Concerning their Montion, what their, comittion and behaviour is, in the Title or, 60 Chapter Of the Common people. Store and state a store of the first men

He whole Countrey of Ruffia (as was fayd before) is divided into fours parts, which they Orthe Go-1 call Chetfirds, or Tetrarchies. Euery Chetfird contaymeth divers Shires, and an anthewed to a vernment of feuerall Office, whereof it takes the name. The first Chefferd or Terrachie, beareth the name of their Prouin-

Possbey Cheffed, or the Invisibilition of the office of Ambassages, and at this time is wider the chiefe Secretarie and officer of the Ambassages, called Andrew Schulculone. The standing see or stipend that hee receiveth yeerely of the Emperour for this service, is one hundred Rubbels or Marcks.

The fecond is called the Referancy Chatfird, because it is proper to the Referance or high Interest in care the appropriate by vertue of Office to Bafile Shalealane, Brother to Contague. At this critical is personally one Zapon Abramone. His pension is an hundred Rub.

is yestery.

The third is the Chesfird of Pomesting, as pertuyning to that Office. This keepeth a Register of The third is the Coeppray of companying property of the third is the Coeppray of the Coeppray att Lands guen oy me ampetous or them. The officer at this time is called Eleanor Wellington, His to

The fourth is called Coffankey Dworets, as being appropriate to the Office that hath the inrifdiction of the Kingdomes of Casan and Afracan, with the other Townes lying von the Fed. ges, now ordered by one Druzhine Penetiene, a man of very special account among them for his wifedome and promptnesse in matters of policie. His pension is one hundred and fifthe Rub-

Dessayeure.

From these Chessinds or Terreschies is exempted the Emperours inheritance or Voctors (as they call it) for that it pertayned from ancient time to the Houle of Beals, which is the firmame of the can it for the terretain the state of fixe and thirtie Townes with their bounds or Territories. Imperant pions. In Handston, which are likewife deducted out of those Cheffrid, as the 20 Shire of Pagha (belonging to the Lord Borrife Federowich Godonoe) and fuch like.

Thefe are the chiefe Governours or Officers of the Provinces, not resident at their chargeabroad, but attending the Emperour whither soener hee goeth, and carrying their Offices about with them, which for the most part they hold at Mosts, as the Emperous chiefe seate.

The parts and practice of these foure Offices, is to receive all Complaints and Actions where focuer, that are brought out of their feuerall Cherfirds and Quarters, and to informe them to the Emperours Councell. Likewise to send direction agains to those that are under them, in their Gyd Prouinces, for all matters given in charge by the Emperour and his Councell, to bee done or put in execution within their Precincts.

For the ordering of every particular Province of these source (bestirds, there is appointed one 10 of the Bukes, which were reckoned before in the lowest degree of their Nobilitie, which are of these Brances, wanter west reasonable and Provinces. Whereof energy one bath joyned with him in Commission a Drack or Secretarie to assist him or rather to direct him. For in the executing of their Commission, the Direct dothalk

The parts of their Commission are these in effect. First, to heare and determine in all civil matters within their Precind. Fowhich purpose they have vader them certayne Officers, as Gubany Statest or Coroners, who besides the cryall of felfe Murders, are to attach Felloms: and Dukes or Prethe Sondie or vnder Iustices, who themselves also may heare and determine in all matters of the fame nature, among the Countrey people of their owne Wards or Bayliwickes : but to that in cale either parte differe, they may appeale, and goe furthereo the Duke and Doe that refide of within the head Towine. From whom all other may remove the matter to the higher Court with the reas route. From whom a work of the strain of the strain of the strain of the Emperous Councell, where lye all appeales. They have under them also Switter Starts, that is Aldermen, or Baylifes of the Hundreds.

Secondly imall criminal matters, as Theft, Murder, Freafon, &c. they have authoritie to apprehend, to examine and to imprison the materietor, and to having received perfect evidence and to come of the Case; they are to fend it ready drawne and orderly digetted up to the Mored and propounded to the Emperours Councell. But to determine in any matter criminall, or to doe execution upon the partie offending, is more then their Commission will allow

This y, if there bee any publike fernice to be done within that Prounce, (as the publishing of any flaw, or common order, by way of Proclamation, collecting of taxes and impositions for the Emperor, mustering of Souldiers, and fending them forth at the day, and to the place assigned by the Emperous or his Councell) all these and such like percayne to their charge.

These Dukes and Dyacts are appointed to their place by the Emperour himselfe, and are changed ordinarily at enery yeers end, except upon some speciall liking or sute, the time bee them which oppressed for a yeere or two more. They are men of themselves of no credit, nor favour with the people where they governe, being neither borne, nor brought up among them, nor yet having inheritance of their owne there, or elfe where. Onely of the Emperour they have for that fernice an hundred Marcks a yeere, hee that hath most, some fiftie, some but thireie. Which ma- 60 keth them more fur pefted and odious to the people, becaute being to bare, and comming firth and humary \$160 them lightly enery years, they racke and fooyle them without dhe regard of Iuftice or Confeience. Which is easily tollerated by the chiefe Officers of the Chesfirds, to the end they may spoyle them againe, and haue a better bootie when they call them to account:

which commonly they doe at the end of their feruice, making an advantage of their injuffice and oppression ouer the poore people. There are few of them but they come to the Padkey or Whip when their time is ended, which themselves for the most part doe make account of. And therefore they furnish themselnes with all the spoyle they can for the time of their Gouernment, that they may have for both turnes, as well for the Emperour and Lord of the Cheffird, as to referue some good part for themselves.

They that are appointed to governe abroad, are men of this qualitie: faue that in the foure border Townes that are of greatest importance, are set men of more speciall valour and trust, two in every Towne. Whereof one is ever of the Emperours privile Counfell. These foure border 10 Townes are, Smolenske, Vobske, Nonogred, and Cazan, whereof three lie towards the Polonian and Sweden, one bordereth farre off vpon the Chrim Tartar. These have larger commission then the other Dukes of the Prouinces that I spake of before, and may doe execution in criminall matters. Which is thought behooffull for the Common-wealth : for incident occasions that may happen upon the borders that are farre off, and may not flay for direction, about every occurrent and particular matter from the Emperour and his Counfell. They are changed every yeere (except as before) and have for their (tipend 700. Rubbels a yeere he that hath most : some have but 400. Many of these places that are of greatest importance, and almost the whole Countrey is managed at this time, by the Godonoes and their Clients.

The Citie of Moske (that is the Emperours Seat) is governed altogether by the Emperours 20 Counfell. All matters there both civill and criminall, are heard and determined in the feuerall Courts, held by some of the faid Counsell, that reside there all the yeere lone.

Onely for their ordinary matters (as Buildings, Reparations, keeping of their Streets decent The governand cleane, Collections, leuying of Taxes, Impositions and such like) are appointed, two Gen-ment of Maste. tlemen, and two Djacks or Secretaries, who hold a Court together for the ordering of fuch matters. This is called the Zempskey house. If any Townel-man suspect his seruant of theft or like matter, hither he may bring him to have him examined vpon the Puckey, or other torture. Besides these two Gentlemen, and Secretaries that order the whole Citie, there are Starufts or Aldermen for enery feuerall Companie. The Alderman hach his Society or Confiable. and the Constable hath certaine Decetskess or Decurions under him, which have the overfight of 30 ten housholds a piece, whereby every diforder is sooner spyed, and the common service bath the quicker dispatch. The whole number of Citizens poore and rich are reduced into Companies. The chiefe Officers (as the Dyacks and Gentlemen) are appointed by the Emperour himselfe, the Starait by the Gentlemen and Dyacks, the Saskey by the Starait or Alderman, and the Decetskopes by the Conflables.

This manner of gouernment of their Prouinces and Townes, if it were as well fee for the giuing of inflice indifferently to all fores, as it is to prevent innovations, by keeping of the Nobility within order, and the Commons in subjection, it might seeme in that kind to be no bad nor vnpolitike way, for the contayning of to large a Common-wealth, of that breadth and length as is the Kingdome of Ruffae. But the opportion and flauery is 60 open, and fo great, that 40 a man would maruell, how the Nobilitie and People should suffer themselves to be brought vader it, while they had any meanes to avoide and repulse it : or being so strengthned as it is at this present, how the Emperours themselves can be content to practife the same, with so open intuities and oppretion of their Subieds, being themselves of a Christian professor. By this Anhardmatic appeareth how hard a matter it were to alter the state of the Bonff Government, as now ter to alter the standard of the Bonff Government, as now ter to alter the standard of the Bonff Government.

THe Emperours of Ruffia give the name of Counfellour to divers of their chiefe Nobilitie, Chap. 11. ather for honours fake, then for any vie they make of them about their matters of State. Of the Eurpa Thefe are called Boiagens, without any addition, and may be called , Comfollows at large. For rours Countel, 30 they are feldome or neuer called to any subhike confutation. They which are of his special and prime Counfell indeed (whom he yieth daily and ordinarily for all publike matters pertayning to the State) have the addition of Dunmer, and are named Dunmer, beieren, or Lords of the Counfell, their Office or Sitting Bearfine damma.

Their names at this prefent are their in their order. First, Kner. Feeder lanewich Methillof. The number kg. 2. Kner. Inan Michaelswich Glaukes. 3. Kner. Vallie Inanomich Sunbry Scopm. (Their and namics of three are accounted to be of greater birth then wisedome, taken in (as may seeme) for that end, the Connectrather to furnish the place with their honours and professes then with the place with their honours and professes then with the place with their honours and professes the with the place with the place with their honours and professes the with the place with t rather to furnish the place with their honours and presence, then with their advice or counsell.) 4. Knez Vafilie Inanewich Sankey, thought to be more wife then the other of his name. 3. Knez

Feeder Michaelowich. 6. Knez Michael Romanowich Trowbetthoy. 7. Knez Timophey Roma-60 nowich Trombetskey. 8. Knew Andrew Gregorimich Curakine. 9. Knew Demetrie Inanovich Foresime. 10. Knez Feoder Inanomich Europine. 11. Bodau Inanomich Sabarone. 12. Knez Inan Vasilowich. 13. Knez Fooder Demetrimich Shestinone. 14. Knez Fcoder Michaelowich Troyconione. 15. Înan Buterlyney. 16. Demetrie Inanowich Godonoe. 17. Borrise Federowich Godonoe, brother to the Emprelle. 18. Stephen Vafilowich Godonoe. 19. Gregorie Vafilowich Godonoe. 20. Inan



Gdenus of

Pafilowich Gadence. 21. Feader Sheremitone. 22. Andriew Petronich Cieficanina. 23. Ignate Philomico Camenoc. 21. Femor Oscistantes. 25. Demension Juanomich Chromosich Taisleue. 24. Romain Michaelowich Pena. 25. Demension Juanomich Chromosige. Letromen sunjume, 24 Arman arternations. 25. Vafile Shalcalone, 28. Vafile Shalcalone, 29. Elea. 26. Remain Vafilewich Afferione, 27. Elea. zar Wellusgin. 30. Drezbeen Penteleoue. 31. Zapon Abramone.

Foure Secre-

The foure laft of these are called Dunney deider or Lord-Secretaries. These are all of the Empercurs privile Counfell, though but few of them are called to any confultation, for the tall man. perous prime counters, trongs over the period of the period of the counter to the Emprese, terrain and determined vpon by Borra Federowich Godone brother to the Emprese, with fome flue or fixe more whom it pleafeth him to call. If they come, they are rather to the nature of the matters occurrent which are heare, then to gue counters, and one to constant them at their fittings by the Lond of the force to of State done within the Whereof mention is made in the Chapter concerning the Gourna-Cheefinds, or Tetrarchies. Whereof mention is made in the Chapter concerning the Gourna ment of their Prouinces. Who bring in all fuch Letters as they receive from the Dukes; Dracts. ment of their recommendations of the Citie and Catiles perrayaing to their feuerall Quitter or Captaines, and other Officers of the Citie and Catiles perrayaing to their feuerall Quitter or Chesfird, with other advertisements, and informe the Counsell of them.

The like is done by the chiefe Officer of euery feuerall Office of Record: who may come into the Counfell-chamber, and informe them, as occasion incident to his Office doth require. Befides matters of State, they consider of many private Causes, informed by the way of sipplinoes matters of state; they commented many properties and determine; as the Caule or meanes can procure fanour. Some they lend to the Offices whereto they perrayne by common meaners can proceed a process of their fitting are, Mondayes, Wedneldayes, and Fri. 20 dayer. Their time of meeting is commonly feven of the clocke in the morning. If there bee any extraordinary occasion that requireth confulcation on some other day, they have warning by the Clerke of of the Counfell, called Derofty Bulbers, who receive horder from the Rofered, or High Constable of the Realme, to call them together at the time appointed.

Ches. 12. The Offices of The Steward Receiver of

the Crowne-

land Rents.

COr the receiuing of Customes, and other Rents belonging to the Crowne, there are appoin-Of the Empethe Office of Dworrsona or Steward of the boulbold. The second is, the Office of the Chesfird, which I comprehend under one, though it be divided into foure leverall parts, as was faid before. The third is called, Bullba Prechode; or the great Income.

As touching the first, which is the Office of the Steward, it receiveth all the Rents of the Emperours Inheritance, or Crowne-land, which they call, Voctin. The Voctin or Crown-land contayneth in it fixe and thirtie Townes with the Territories or Hundreds belonging with them, Whereof the chiefe that yeeld the greatest Rents are thefe: Alexandrifea, Corolika, Orfer, Sinboday, Danielska, Moifalskoy, Chara, Samerska, Stravaronse, Bransone, &c. The Inhabitants or Tenants of these and the other Townes, pay fome Rent money, some other Rent duties (called Obrites ) as certaine Chesfirds or measures of Graine, Wilest, Rye, Barley, Oats, &c. or of other victuall, as Oxen, Sherpe, Swannes, Geefe, Hares, Hennes, wilde Fowle, Fish, Hay, Wood, Honey, &cc. Some are bound to lowe for the Emperours provision certaine acres of ground, and to make the Corne ready for his vie: having for it an allowance of certaine acres of ground for 40

This promition for the houshold, specially of Graine served in by the Tenants, is a great deale more then is fpent in his boule, or in other allowance ferued out in livery, or for the Emperous honour, called Schalonangs for which wie there is bestowed very much, both in Graine and other Victuall. This furplus of promition is fold by the Steward to the best hand, and runneth

In the rime of Image Validowich, father to this Emperour (who kept a more Princely and bountifull house then the Emperour now doth) this overplus of Graine, and other incomes into the Stewards Office, yeelded to his Treasurie not past 60000. Rubbels yeerely, but rifeth now by good husbanding of the Steward Grogory Vafilowich Godsmoe, to 230000. Rubbels a yeere. And 10 this by the meanes of the Empresse, and her kindred, specially (Borris Federarich Godones) that account it all their owne that runneth into the Emperors Treasure. Much of this surplusage that rifeth out of the Rent prouision, is employed to the payment of the wages of his houshold Officers, which are very many attending at home, and purueying abroad.

The Office of

The fecond Office of Receit, is called the Cheffirds, (being divided into foure feuerall parts, 25 before was faid ) hath foure head Officers: which befides the ordering and government of the Shires contayned within their feuerall Chesfirds, have this also as a part of their Office, to receine the Tagle and Podes belonging to the Emperour, that rifeth out of the foure Cheffels or Quarters. The Tagla is a yeerly Rent or Imposition railed upon enery 14 the or measure of Graine, that groweth within the Land, gathered by fworre men, and brought into the Office. The 60 Was contayneth fixtie Chesfirds. Every Chesfird is three Bushels English, or little lesse. The Podar is an ordinary Rent of money imposed vpon every Soake, or Hundred within the whole

This Tagle and Podes bring in yeerely to the Offices of the Cherfirds a great fumme of money:

as may appeare by the particulars heere fet downe. The Towns and Pronince of Voliko pay yeerely for Tagla and Podat about 18000. Rubbels. Nonogrod 35000. Rubbels. Terihocke and Offer 8000, Rubbels. Razan 30000, Rubbels. Morum 12000, Rubbels. Colmigrae and Dayna 8000. Rubbels. Vologda 12000. Rubbels. Cazan 18000. Rubbels. Ufing 20000. Rubbles. Rollone 10000. Rubbels. The Citie of Maske 40000. Rubbels. Sibierskey 20000. Rubbels. Refrome 12000. Rubbels. The totall amounteth to 400000. Rubbels, or Markes a yeere, which

is brought in yeerely the first of September, that is reckoned by them the first day of the yeere.

The third (that is called the Bullba Precbod, or great Income) receiveth all the Customes that with September. are gathered out of all the principali Townes and Cities within the whole Realme. Befides the 1 he Office of

To fees and other duries which rite out of divers smaller Offices, which are all brought into this Builba Prechod Office of Bullha Procbed. The Townes of most trade, that doe yeeld greatest Custome, are or great inthese here set downe. Mosko, Smolensko, Vobska, Nousgrod Velica, Strararquie, Forfhocke, Ot., come. fer, Yaruflane, Caftrome, Nefua Nonogred, Cazan, Vologda. This Cultome out of the great Townes is therefore more certaine, and easie to bee reckoned , because it is set and rated precise. ly what they shall pay for the Custome of the yeere. Which needs must bee payd into the faid Office, though they receive not fo much. If it fall out to be more, it runneth all into the Empe-

rours aduantage.

The Cultome at Mosko for every yeere, is 1 2000. Rubbels. The Cultome of Smolensko 2000. The Emperors Volike 12000. Rubbels. Nouvered velica 6000. Rubbels. Straratoufe by Salt and other commo-20 dities 18000. Rubbels. Torflock Soo. Rubbels. Offer 700. Rubbels. Tarnslane 1200. Rubbels. Cafrome 1800. Rubbels. Nofna Nonogred 7000. Rubbels. Cazas 11000. Rubbels. Vologda 2000. Rubbels. The Custome of the rest that are Townes of trade, is sometimes more. fometimes leffe, as their trafficke and dealings with commodities to and fro, falleth out for

This may bee faid for certaine, that the three Tables of Receits belonging to this Office of The whole re-Bullha Preched, when they receive leaft, account for thus much, we. The first table, 16000. ceit of the Bul-Rubbels. The second table , 90000. Rubbels. The third 70000. Rubbels. So that there com- fine Precisator meth into the Office of Bullha Prechod, at the least reckoning (as appeareth by their Bookes of great Income, Customes) out of these and other Townes, and maketh the summe of 340000. Rubbles a yeere.

20 Besides this Custome out of the Townes of trade, there is received by this Office of Bullba Prechad, the yeerely Rent of the common Bath-floues, and Cabacks or drinking houses, which pertayne to the Emperour. Which (though it be vicertaine for the juft fumme, yet because it is certaine, and an ordinary matter, that the Ruffe will bathe himselfe as well within as without) yeeldeth a large Rent to the Emperours Treaturie.

There is belides , a certaine Mul& or Penaltie that groweth to the Empergur out of every Rentront of Indgement or Sentence, that paffeth in any of his Courts of Record in all Civill matters. This the Indicial Penaltie or Mulct is twentie Dingoet or Pence vpon enery Rubbel or Marke, and fo ten in the hundred. Which is payd by the parcie that is consist by Law. He hath besides for every name contayned in the Writs that paffe out of their Courts , fine Alteens . An Alteens is fine pence 40 fterling, or thereabours. This is made good out of the Office, whence the Writ is taken forth.

Thence it goeth to the Office that keepeth the leffer Seale, where it payeth as much more to the Emperours vie. This rifeth commonly to three thouland Rubbels a yeere, or thereabouts. Farther also out of the Office of Roife onia, where all felonies are tryed, is received for the Emperour the halfe part of Felons goods, the other halfe goeth the one part to the Informer, the other to the Officers.

All this is brought into the Office of Bullha Preched, or Great income. Besides the overplus or remainder that is faued out of the Land-rents allotted to divers other Offices: as namely, to the Office called Roferade, which hath Landsand Rents affigned vnto it to pay the yeerely falaries of the Souldiers, or Horsemen, that are kept still in pay. Which in time of peace, when they rest at home not employed in any service, is commonly cut off and payd them by halfes, 50 fometimes not the halfe: fo that the remainder out of the Roferade Office that is layd into the Emperours treasurie, commeth for the most part enery yeere to 250000. Rubbels.

In like fort (though not fo much) is brought in the furplus out of the Strelletskoy Offices which hath proper Lands for the payment of the Strelfey men or Gunners, as well those at Moske, that are of the Emperors Guard (12000, in ordinary) as on the borders, and other garrifon Towns and Castles. Likewise out of the Office of Prechase, Shisting Newsbey, which hach set allowance of Lands to maintayne the forraine mercenary Souldiers, as. Poles, Sweadens, Dutches, Scots, &c. So out of the Office of Pulbarskey, (which hath Lands and Rents allowed for the promition of munition, great Ordnance, Powder, Shot, Saltpeter, Brimstone, Lead, and such like) there is left somewhat at the yeeres end, that runneth into the Treasurie. All these bring into the Of-

fice of Bullha Preched that which remayneth in their hand at the yeeres end. Whence it is delivered into the Emperours Treasarie. So that the whole summe that groweth to this Office of Bullha Prechod, or the great Income (as appeareth by the Bookes of the laid Office) amounteth to

800000. Rubbels a yeare, or thereabouts.

treature a ule file of Mosto.

All these Offices, to wit, the Office of the Steward, the foure Chetfirds, and the Bullea Priched deliver in their receipts to the head treasurie, that lyeth within the Emperours house or Cuffle within his Ca. at the Morke. Where lye all his Moneys, Iewels, Crownes, Scepters, Plate, and such like, the Chefts, Hutches, and Bags being figued by the Emperours themselves with their owne seale. Though at this time the L. Borris Federowich Godonoe, his feale and over-fight supplies for the Emperour, as in all other things. The vnder Officer at this time is one Stepan Vafilonich Godone, Coufin germane to the faid Borris, who hath two Clerkes allowed to letue vngerhimin the Office.

Emperors rent money.

1. Out of the Stewards Office about the expence of his\_ Sum 1430000. Rub-The fum that groweth to the bonse 23000. Rubbels.
Emperors Trea2. Out of the foure Chessirds for Souke and Head charges for his house to fury in money \ money, 400000. Rubbels. and ordinary falleries onely, for energy 3. Out of the Bullina Precod Office, or great Income of his Souldiers otherweere. for Custome and other Rents, 800000, Rubbels. wife discharged.

But besides this reuenue that is paid all in money to the Emperors treasurie, he receiveth yeerely in Furres, and other duties to a great value out of Siberia, Pechora, Permia, and other places, which are fold or barrred away for other forraine commodities to the Turkilo, Perfian. Armenian, Georgian and Bougharian Merchants, that trade with n his Countries, besides others of Christendome, What it maketh in the whole (though the value cannot bee let downe precifely, as being a thing casuall as the commoditie may be got) it may be gheffed by that which an was gathered the laft yeere out of Siberia for the Emperour's Custome, vz. 466. Timber of Sables, fiue Timber of Marttones, 180. blacke Foxes, befides other commodities.

To these may be added their seazures, and confiscations vpon such as are in displeasure, which rifeth to a great fumme, besides other their extaordinary Impositions, and exactions done voon their Officers, Monafteries, &c.not for any apparant neceffitie, or vie of the Prince, or Common. wealth, but of will and custome: yet with some pretence of policie. To this purpose this byword was vied by the late Emperout Iuan Vafilowich : That his people were like to his beard. The oftner fhanen, the thicker it would grow. Or like fheepe, that must needs bee fhorne once a yeare at the least : to keepe them from being over-laden with their wooll.

Vnderstand their politike courses of the times when the Agrhor writ. beens heavy to fro v among

MEanes feruing to which purpose were to preuent no extortions, exactions, or briberies what source, done upon the Commons by their Dukes, Diseks, or other Officers in their Provinces : but to suffer them to goe on till their time be expired, and to sucke themselves full, Then to call them to the Prancie (or whip) for their behaulour, and to beat out of them all, Gods chaftile- or the most part of the bootie, (as the Hony from the Bee) which they have wrung from the ment hath fince Commons, and to turne it into the Emperours Treasurie, but neuer any thing backe againsto fweep fuch ills the right owners, how great or enident soener the injurie be. To this end the needle Dukes, and Diacks, that are fent into their Prouinces, ferue the turne very well, being changed fo often (to wit) once a yeere : where in respect of their owne, and the qualitie of the people(as before was faid) they might be continued for some longertime, without all feare of innovation. For com- 40 ming fill fresh woon the Commons, they facke more eagerly: like Tiberius the Emperours Flies, that came new fill upon an old fore. To whom he was wont to compare his Prators, and other Provinciall Officers.

2. Yet they did make of these Officers (that have robbed their people) sometimes a publike example, if any be more notorious then the rest : the Emperour thus seeming to mislike the oppressions done to his people, and transferring the fault to his ill Officers. As among divers other, was done by the late Emperor Inan Vafilowich to a Diache in one of his Prouinces : that (befides many other extortions and briberies) had taken a goole readic dreft full of mony. The man was brought to the Market-place in Mosko. The Emperour himselfe present made an Oration. Thefe, good people, are they that would eate you up like bread, or . Then asked he his Po- 50 lachies or Executioners, who could cut vp a Goode, and commanded one of them first to cut off his legs about the midft of the shin, then the armes aboue his elbowes (asking him still if Goofeflelb were good meat ) in the end to chop off his head : that hee might have the right fashion of a Goose readie dressed.

3. They make an open shew of want, when any great Taxe or Imposition is towards. As was done by this Emperour Theodore Inanowich, by the aduice of some about him at the beginning of his raigne : when being left very rich (as was thought) by his father, he fold most of his Plate, and stamped some into Coyne: that he might seeme to want money, Whereupon presently out came a Taxation.

4. They fuffer their subiects to give freely to the Monasteries ( which for their superstition 60 very many doe, specially in their last Wills) and to lay vp their money and subtlance in them, to keepe it more fafe. Which all is permitted them without any restraint or prouiso, as was and is in some Countries of Christendome. Whereby their Monasteries grow to exceeding great wealth. This they doe to have the money of the Realme better flored together, and more res-

die for their hand, when they lift to take it. Which many times is done without any novie: the Friers being content rather to part from somewhat (as the increase groweth) then to lose all at once. Which they were made to doubt of in the other Emperours dayes.

To this end Inan Vafilowich late Emperor vied a very Brange practile, that few Princes would A franze prachave done in their greatest extremities. Heerefigned his Kingdome to one Velica Knez Simeon, tice to get mothe Emperours some of Cazan; as though hee meant to draw himselfe from all publike doings ney. to a quiet private life. To wards the end of the yeere, he caused this new King to call in all Charters granted to Bishoprickes, and Monasteries, which they had enjoyed many hundred yeeres before. Which were all cancelled. This done (as in diflike of the fact & of the mif-gouernment

of the new King ) hee refumed his Scepter, and fo was content (as in faugur to the Church and Religious men ) that they should renew their Charters, and take them of himselfe : reserving and annexing to the Crowne fo much of their lands, as himfelfe thought good,

By this practice he wrung from the Bishoprickes and Monasteries (besides the lands which he annexed to the Crowne ) an huge maffe of money. From fome forcie, from fome fiftie from fome an hundred thousand Rubbels. And this as well for the increase of his Treasury, as to abate the ill opinion of his hard gouernment, by a shew of worse in another man. Wherein his Grange (pirit is to be noted : that being hated of his fubicets ( as himfelfe knew well enough ) ver should venture such a practice to fet another in his faddle, that might have rid away with

his horse, while himselfe walked by on foot. 5. They fend their Meffengers into the Provinces or Shires, where the special commedi-20 ries of their Countrey grow, as Furres, Wax, Hony, &c. There to forestall and ingrosse sometime one whole commoditie, fometime two or more, taking them at finall prices what themselves lift, and felling them againe at an excessive rate to their owne Merchants, and to Merchants itrangers. If they refuse to buy them, then to force them voto it. The like is done when any commoditie either native or forraine (as Cloth of Gold, Broad-cloth, &c.) thus engroffed by the Emperour, and received into his treasury happeneth to decay, or marre by long lying, or fome other cafualtie. Which is forced vpon the Merchants to be bought by them at the Emperours price, whether they will or no. This last yeere of 1,589, was engroffed all the Wax of the Countrey : fo that none might deale with that commoditie, but the Emperour onely.

30 6. To take vp and engroffe in like fort sometime forraine commodities (as Silkes, Cloth, Lead. Pearle, &c. brought into his Realme by Turkifb Merchants, Armenians, Bongbarians, Poles English, and other. And then to force his Merchants to buy them of his Officers at his

owne price.

7. They make a Monopoly for the time of such commodities as are paid him for Rent, or Custome, and to inhance the price of them, as Furres, Corne, Wood, &cc. What time none must fell of the same kinde of commoditie, till the Emperours be all fold. By this meanes he maketh of his Rent, Corne, and other provision of victuali (as before was faid ) about 200000. Rubbels or Markes a yeere. Of his Rent, Wood, Hay, &c. 30000. Rubbels, or thereabouts.

8. In every great Towne of his Realme hee hath a Caback or other drinking house, where 40 is fold Aqua-vita ( which they call Ruffe Wine ) Mead, Beere, &c. Out of these hee receiucth Rent that amounteth to a great fumme of money. Some yeeld 800. fome 900. fome a 1000. some 2000, or 2000. Rubbels a yeere. Wherein besides the base and dishonourable meanes to encrease his treasury, many foule faults are committed. The poore Labouring man, and Artificer, many times spendeth all from his wife and children. Some vie to lay in twentie, thirtie, fortic Rubbels, or more into the Caback, and vow themselves to the pot, till all that be spent. And this (as he will fay) for the honour of Hofpodare, or the Emperour. You shall have many there that have drunke all away to the very skin, and so walke naked (whom they call Naga.) While they are in the Caback, none may call them forth whatfoeuer cause there be, because he hindereth the Emperours reuenue.

50 9. Some of his Boiarens, or Nobles of his Court, (whom he vieth vpon truft) that have houfes in the Moske, faine themselucs robbed : Then they fend for the Zemskey men, or Aldermen of the Citie, and command them to finde out the robbery : In default of not finding it, prane or cease the Citie for their misgouernment in 8000. 9000. or 10000. Rubbels at a time. This is many times practifed.

10. In these exactions to shew their Soueraigntie, sometime they have beene vied very plaine, and yet strange cauillations. As was that of Inan Vasilowich , father to this Emperour, after this fort. He fent into Perma for certaine loads of Cedar wood, wherof he knew that none grew in that Countrey. The inhabitants returned answer they could finde none there. Whereupon hee seazed their Countrey in 12000. Rubbels, as if they concealed the commoditie of

60 purpose. Againe, he sent to the Citie of Mosko to provide for him a Colpack, or measure full of live Fleas for a medicine. They returned answere that the thing was impossible. And if they could get them, yet they could not measure them, for leaping out. Whereupon hee praned, or beat out of their thins 7000. Rubbels for a Mulch. By like cavillation hee extored for his Nobilitie 30000. Rubbels, because he missed of his game, when hee went a hunting for the Hare:



the manner is) Praned prefently againe vpon the Monficks, or common people of the Country,

Of the flate of people in the Countrey of Ruffie.
The feruile and miterable eftate of the

Ruffe people.

Mil rie of

those times.

"He condition of the Commons and vulgar fort of people, may rartly bee understood by that which already hath beene fayd concerning the manner of their Gouernment, and the flate th. Common of the Nobilitie, with the ordering of their Prouinces, and chiefe Townes of the Land. And gar fortofthe first touching their libertie how it standeth with them, it may appeare by this : that they are reckoned in no degree at all, nor have any fuffrage nor place in their Zabore, or high Court of Parliament, where their Lawes and publike Orders are concluded upon. Againe into what feruile condition their libertie is brought, not onely to the Prince, but to the Nobles, and Gentle- 10 men of the Countrey (who themselves also are but servile, specially of late yeeres) it may further appeare by their owne acknowledgments in their supplications, and other writings to any of the Nobles or chiefe Officers of the Emperours. Wherein they name and subscribe themselves Kolophey, that is, their Villaines, or Bond-slaves : as they of the Nobilitie doe vnto the Emperour. This may truely bee fayd of them, that there is no feroant nor bond-slaue more awed by his Master, nor kept downe in a more seruile subjection, then the poore people are, and that vniuerfally, not onely by the Emperour, but by his Nobilitie chiefe Officers and Souldiers. So that when a poore Moufick meeteth with any of them voon the high way, hee must turne himfelre about, as not daring to looke him on the face, and fail downe with knocking of his head

manners and to the very ground, as he doth vnto his Idoll. Secondly, concerning the Lands, goods, and other possessions of the Commons, they answer the Name and lye Common indeed, without any fence against the rapine and spoyle, not onely of the highest, but of his Nobilitie, Officers, and Souldiers. Besides the Taxes, Customes, Seazures, and other publike exactions done upon them by the Emperour, they are fo racked and pulled

by the Nobles, Officers, and Meffengers, fent abroad by the Emperour in his publike affayres, specially in the Tammes (as they call them) and thorow faire Townes, that you shall have many Villages and Townes of halfe a mile, and a mile long, stand all vnhabited : the people being fled all into other places, by reason of the extreame viage, and exactions done vpon them. So that in the way towards Moske, betwixt Vologda and Taruflaneley (which is two nineties after their reckoning, little more then an hundred miles English,) there are in fight fiftie Dariennes or Villa- 30 ges at the leaft, some halfe a mile, some a mile long (that stand vacant) and desolate without any

inhabitant. The like is in all other places of the Realme, as is fayd by those that have better trauelled the Countrey then my felfe had time, or occasion to doe.

The great oppression ouer the poore Commons, made them to have no courage in following their Trades : for the more they have, the more danger they are in, not onely of their goods, but of their liues also. And if they have any thing, they conceale it all they can, sometimes conueying it into Monasteries, sometimes hiding it under the ground, and in Woods, as men are wont to doe where they are in feare of forraigne invalion. Infomuch that many times you shall fee them afraid to beeknowne to any Boissen or Gentleman, of fuch commodities as they have to fell. I have seene them sometimes when they have layd open their Commodities for a liking 40 (as their principal) Furres and such like) to looke still behinde them, and towards every doore: as men in some feare, that looked to bee set vpon, and surprised by some Enemie. Whereof afking the cause, I found it to bee this, that they have doubted least some Nobleman or Smaboiarsker of the Emperour had beene in company, and to layed a trayne for them to pray you their Commodities perforce.

This made the people (though otherwise hardened to beare any toyle) to give themselves much to Idlenesse and Drinking : as passing for no more, then from hand to mouth. And hereof it commeth that the Commodities of Russia (as was fayd before) as Waxe; Tallow, Hides, Flax, Hempe, &c. grow and goe abroad in farre leffe plentie then they were wont to doe: because the people being oppressed and spoyled of their gettings, are discouraged from their labours. Yet this 50 one thing is much to bee noted, that in all this oppression there were three brethien Merchants, of late that traded together with one Stocke in common, that were found to bee worth 300000 Rubbels in money, besides Lands, Cattels, and other Commodities. Which may partly be imputed to their dwellings farre off from the eye of the Court, viz. in Wichida, one thousand miles from Moske and more. The same are sayd by those that knew them, to have set on worke all the yeere long ten thousand men in making of Salt, carriages by Cart, and Boat, hewing of Wood and such like : besides sue thousand Bond-slaves at the least, to inhabite and till their Land-They had also their Physitians, Surgeons, Apothecaries, and all manner of Artificers of Doutcher and others, belonging vnto them. They are fayd to have payed to the Emperour for Custome to the summe of three and twentie thousand Rubbels a yeere, (for which cause they were 60 suffered to enjoy their Trade) besides the maintayning of certayne Garrisons on the borders of Siberia, which were neare vnto them. Wherein the Emperour was content to vie their purie, till fuch time as they had got ground in Siberia, and made it habitable, by burning and cutting downe Woods, from Wiebida to Perm, aboue one thousand verst, and then tooke it all away from

Rich Ruffian

them perforce. But this id the end being ennyed and dislayned, as a matter not standing with their policie, to haue any to great, specially a Monfick, the Emperour began fint to pull from them by pieces, fometimes twentie thouland Rubbels at a time, fometime more : till in the end their Sonnes that now are, are well saied of their Stocke, and have but I mail part of their Fathers substance : the rest being drawne all into the Emperours treasurie. Their names were lacone, Gregorie, and Simon, the Somnes of Omkang

For the qualitie of their people otherwise, though there segmeth to bee in them same, and nesse to receive any Art (as appeareth by the natural) wits in the men , and very children ) yet they excell in no kinde of common Art, much lelle in any learning or literall kinde of knowto ledge: which they are kept from of purpole, as they are also from all military practice; that they may bee fitter for the femule condition, wherein now they are and have neither reafon, nor valour to attempt umouation. For this purpole also they are kept from travelling, that Raffinit perthey may learne nothing, nor fee the falhious of other Countries abroad. You shall seldome muced to make fee a Ruffe a traueller, except hee bee with forme Embaffadour, or that hee make an estape out of his Countrey. Which hardly he can doe, by reason of the borders that are watched to narrowly, and the punishment for any such attempt, which is death, if hee bee taken, and all his goods confileate. Onely they learns to write, and to read, and that very few of them. Neise ther doe they fuffer any stranger willingly to come more their Realine out of any civill Countries. for the same cause, farther then necessite of vetering their commodities, and taking in of for-

reine doth enforce them to doe. And therefore this yeare 1580, they confulred about the removing of all Merchants strang. The isologie gers to the border Townes, to abide and haue their rendencie there, and to bee more wary in of the Empe. admitting other strangers heereafter into the Inland parts of the Realme. For the same pur, rour conce pose also they are kept within the bounds of their degree by the Lawes of their Countrey; ning his flate. so that the sonne of a Moussek, Artificer, or Husbandman, is euer a Moussek, Artificer, &c. and hath no meanes to aspire any highers, except, having, learned to write and reade, hee attayne to the preferment of a Priest, or Dyact. Their Language is all one with the Slavonian, which is thought to have beene dernied from the Rufe Tongue, rather then the Rufe from the Slanonian. For the People called Selani, are knowne to have had their beginning out of Sclanonia and 30 Sarmatia, and to have tearmed them (slaves of their Conquest Schauer, (that is) Famous or the Language.

Glorious, of the word Sclaus, which in the Rolle and Slausnian Tongue fignifieth as much as Glorie, or Fame. Though afterwards being fubliced and trod vpon by divers Nations, the Italians, their Neighbours, have furned the word to a contrary figuration, and terme every Semant or Pealant by the name of Sclaw, as did the Removes by the Gaes and Springs; for the same reason. The Ruffe Character or Letter, 15,00 other then the Greeks , somewhat

Concerning their Trades, Diet, apparell, and such like, it is to be noted in a severall Chapter of their private behaulour. This order that bindeth enery man to keepe his ranke and feneral degree, wherein his fore-fathers lived before him, is more meet to keepe the Subiects in a ferifle: 40 Subjection, and so apt for this and like Commonwealths, then to advance any vertue; or to breed any rare or excellent qualitie in Nobilitie or Commons: as having no further reward nor preferment, whereunto they may bend their endeauours, and employ themselves to advance their effate, but rather procuring more danger to themselves, the more they excels in any noble of

Heir Courts of Civill Inflice for matters of Contract, and other of like fort, are of three. Chep.14. kinds, the one being ubject vnto the other by way of appeale. The lowest Court (that Of their pubfeemeth to be appointed for fome ease to the Subiects) is the Office of the Gubney Starmer, that like liftic, and fignifieth an Alderman, and of the Society Sternit, or Bayliffe of the Soake or Hundred, where proceeding in of I spake before in the ordering of the Prouinces. These may end matters among their neigh- Civill, and 50 bours within their Soake, or feuerall Hundred, where they are appointed vader the Dukes and Criminall bours within their Soake, or leuerall Hungred, where they are appointed under the Libres and Disect of the Provinces to whom the parties may remove their matter, if they cannot be agreed matter.

Court of Car

The second is kept in the head Townes of every Province or Shire , by the faid Dukes and three, Djacks, that are Deputies to the foure Lords of the Cheffeds (as before was faid.). From these The Dokes Courts they may appeale, and remove their Suits to the chiefe Court, that is kept at the Moike, and Drace. Course they may appears and the foure Cheffield. These are the chiefe Indices of Indiges. Court, where are resident the Officers of the foure Cheffield. These are the chiefe Indices of Indiges. The high energy of them in all Civil Inactors that grow within their several Cheffed or Quarter, and. Court of may be either commenced originally before them, or profecuted out of the interiour Courts of Marie. 60 the Shires by way of appeale.

Their commencing, and proceeding in Civill actions is on this manner. First, the Plaintife putteth up his Supplication, wherein he declareth the effect of his Caule, or wrong done wire. Their minner purcen up as suppressions, whether in consistent the content which he delinerest testic Resistance in Could material with the state of the Could material Co or Sergeant, to doe the arrest vpon the partie whom hee meaneth to implead. Who wpon the retri-

arreft, is to put in Sereties to answere the day appointed, or elfe flandeth at the Sergeants deuo-tion; to be kept fafe by such meanes as he thinketh good.

The Seguants are many, and excelf for their hard and cruell dealing towards their prifoners; commonly they clap Irons upon them , as many as they can beare, to wring out of them some larger fees, Though it be but for fixe pence, you fhall fee them goe with Chaines on their les armes, and necke. When they come before the Iudge, the Plaintiffe beginneth to declare his matteractor the contents of his Supplication. As for Attorneys, Counfellors, Procurators, and Advocates to plead their Cause for them, they have no fuch order; but enery man is to tell his 

Ending of controuerlies

If they have any witnesse or other enidence, they produce it before the ludge. If they have the none, or if the truth of the Caufe cannot fo well bee differried by the plea, or enidence on both partie: then the fudge asketh either partie ( which hee thinkern good , Plaintiffe or Defendant) whether hee will hife the Croffe, voon that which hee anoncheth, or denyeth, Hee that taketh the Groffe (being so offered by the Indge ) is accounted cleare, and carrieth away the matter. This Ceremonie is not done within the Court, or Office, but the partie is carried to the Church by an Officer, and there the Ceremonie is done: the money in the meane while hanging when a naile, or elfe lying at the fdois feet, ready to be definered to the partie, as foone as he wash killed the Croffe before the faid Idoll.

by lot

This killing of the Croffe ( called Crenftina chelonania ) is as their corporall Oath , and accounted with them a very holy thing, which no man will dare to violate, or prophane to with a false allegation. If both parties offer to kiffe the Croffe in a contradictorie matter, then they draw Lots. The better Lot is supposed to have the right, and beareth away the matter. So the partie connicted is adjudged to pay the debt or penaltie whatforuer, and withall to pay the Emperours fees, which is twentie pence vpon every Marke, as before hath

When the matter is thus ended, the partie connicted is delivered to the Sergeant, who bath a Writ for his warrant out of the Office, to carrie him to the Pranenth or Righter of Luftice, if prefently he pay not the money, or contenanot the partie. This Prancip or Righter, is a place neere to the Office: where fuch as have fentence paffed against them, and refuse to pay that which is adjudged, are beaten with great cudgels on the finmies, and calues of their legs. E- 10 uery fore-noone from eight to eleven, they are fet on the Praisesh, and beate in this fort till the money bee payd. The after-mone and night time, they are kept in chaines by the Sergeant: except they put in fufficient Sureties for their appearance at the Prancy at the houre appointed. You shall fee fortie or fiftie fland together on the Prancufo all on a rew, and their hinnes thus becudgelled, and behafted every morning with a pireous crye. If after a veeres standing on the Pranens, the partie will not, or lacke wherewithall to satisfie his creditor, it is lawfull for him to fell his wife, and children, either outright, or for a certaine terme of yeeres. And if the price of them doe not amount to the full payment, the Creditor may take them to

The forme of

Such kind of Since as lacke direct enidence, or fland voon coniectures and circumftances to be 40 weighted by the Indge, draw of great length, and yetld great advantage to the Indge, and Officers. If the Suit beyon a Bond, or Biff, they have for the most part good and speedy inflice. Their Bonds or Bills are drawne in a very plaine fort, after this remour. I Ivan Vafileo base borrowed of Alphonaste Dementio, the summe of one hundred Rubbels of going money of Mosko , from the Kreshenea ( or hallowing of the water ) until the Saburney Voscreshenea (or Counfell Suiday) mithont interest. And if this money rest impaged after that day, then bee finall gine tel coursey ; mount per le fait money, after the common rate, as it gant among the people, vz. for every fine the five Rubbell. Ypon this there are Witnesses, Michele Sydroueskey, &c. Subicribed. This Bill bane I wraten Gabriel Iacouelefini, in the yeere 7096. The Witneffes , and Debter (if hee can write) endorse their names on the backefide of the Bill. Other figning, or fealing have

be his bond-flaues, for yeeres, or for euer, according as the value of the debt requireth.

When any is taken for a matter of Crime (as Treason, Murder, Theft, and such like) he is first brought to the Duke and Diack, that are for the Prouince where the partie is attached, by whom hee is examined. The manner of examination in such cases, is all by torture, as fourging with Pudey this white made of finowes, or whitleather (called the Pudey) as big as a mans finger, which giweth allore lash, and entreth into the fielh; or by tying to a Spit and rolling at the fire; sometimes by Breaking and wrefting one of their ribs with a paire of hot Tongs, or cutting their fielh winder the dayles, and fuch like.

The examination thus taken with all the proofes, and evidences that can bee alleaged against the partie, it is fent up to the Morke, to the Lord of the Cheffed or Fourth part, vnder whom 60 the Prouince is, and by him is presented to the Councill-table, to be read and sentenced there, where onely hidgement is given in matter of life and death, and that by evidence vpon information, though they never faw nor heard the partie who is kept full in prison where the fact was committed, and never fent up to the place where hee is tryed. If they finde the partie

CHAP.I. Executions ; no written Law ; Emperours Guard, Pensioners.

guilty, they give Sentence of death according to the qualitie of the fact : which is fent downe by the Lord of the Chefferd, to the Duke and Direck to bee put in execution. The Prifoner is carried to the place of execution with his hands bound, and a Waxe candle burning held betwixt his fingers.

Their Capitall punishments are hanging, heading, knocking on the head, drowning, put- Executions, ting under the Ice, setting on a stake, and such like. But for the most part, the Pritoners that are condemned in Summer, are kept for the Winter, to be knockt in the head, and put vnder the Ice. This is to bee vnderstood of common persons. For theft, and murder, If they bee committed voon a poore Mousick by one of Nobilitie are not lightly punished, nor yet is hee To called to any account for it. Their reason is becamfe they are accounted their Kolopher, or Bond-flaues. If by some Sinaboiarskey, or Gentleman Souldier, a murder or theft bee commit-

ted peraduenture hee shall bee imprisoned at the Emperours pleasure. If the manner of the fact be very notorious, hee is whipped perchance, and this is commonly all the punishment that is inflicted upon them.

If a man kill his owne feruant, little or nothing is faid vnto him, for the same reason: because hee is accounted to be his Kolophey, or Bond-slaue, and so to haue right ouer his very head.

The most is some small mulest to the Emperour, if the partie bee rich : and so the quarrell is made rather against the purse, then against the injustice. They have no written Law, faue Rivall (now onely a small Booke that contayneth the time and manner of their sitting, order in proceeding, right-all) and such other Indiciall formes and circumstances, but nothing to direct them to give Sentence vpon right or wrong. Their onely Law is their Speaking Law, that is, the pleasure of the Prince, and of his Magistrates and Officers.

He Souldiers of Ruffia are called Simboiarskey, or the Sonnes of Gentlemen: because they

are all of the degree, by vertue of their military profession. For every Souldier in Russia Their fotces is a Gentleman, and none are Gentlemen but onely the Souldiers, that take it by differnt from for the warter their Ancestors: so that the sonne of a Gentleman (which is borne a Souldier) is curr a Gentle-Officers and

man, and a Souldier withall, and professeh nothing else but military matters. When they are filaries, of yeeres able to beare Armes, they come to the Office of Roferade, or Great Confidele, and there The onely present themselues : who entreth their names, and allotteth them certaine Lands to maintaine Gentlemen. their charges, for the most part of the fame that their fathers emioyed. For the Lands affigued birth and inbeto maintayne the Armie, are ener certaine, annexed to this Office without improving, or detra-nizace. Aing one foot. But that if the Emperour haue sufficient in wages, the roomes being full so farre as the Land doeth extend already, they are many times deferred, and haue nothing allowed them, except some one portion of the Landbe divided into two. Which is a cause of great diforder within that Country: When a Souldier that hath many children, shall have sometimes but one entertayned in the Emperours pay. So that the rest having nothing, are forced to live by vaiuft and wicked faitts, that tend to the hurt and oppression of the Monsieke, or common fort of people. This inconvenience growth by maintayning his forces in a continual fucces-40 fion. The whole number of his Souldiers in continuall pay, is this: First, he hathof his Drorang, that is, Penfoners, or Guard of his person, to the number of 15000. Horsemen, with their Guard.

Of these fifteene thousand Horsemen, there are three forts or degrees, which differ as well Degrees of in estimation, as in wages, one degree from another. The first fort of them is called, Dworaney Hersemen. Bullery, or the companie of head Pensoners, that have, fome 100. some 80. Rubbels a yeer, 1. Petenson and none under 70. The second for are called Condensor 100. and none vinder 70. The second fort are called, Serediney Divorancy, or the middle ranke of Penfronces: these have 60, or 50, Rubbels by the yeere, none under 40. The third and lowest fort person, 15000 are, the Dyta Boiar ikey, that is, the lowe Pensioners : their salarie is 30. Rubbels a yeere, for him that hath most; some haue but 25, some 20, none under 12. Whereof the halfe part is so payd them at the Morke, the other halfe in the field by the General, when they have any warres, and are employed in feruice. When they receive their whole pay, it amounteth to 55000. Rubb.

And this is their wages, besides lands allotted to enery one of them, both to the greater and the leffe, according to their degrees. Whereof he that hath leaft, hath to yeeld him 20. Rubbels or Markes by the yeere. Besides these 15000. Horsemen, that are of better choise (as being the Emperours owne Guard when himf: fre goeth to the warres, not vnlike the Roman Souldiers called Pretoriani) ste 110. men of speciall account for their Mobilitie, and truft, which are chofen by the Emperour, and haue their names registred, that find among them for the Emperours Twoother warres, to the number of 65000. Horfemen , with all necessaries meet for the warres of the woupes to the 60 Ruffe manner.

To this end they have yeerely allowance made by the Emperour for themselves, and their Companies, to the summe of 40000. Rubbels. And these 65000, are to repaire to the field euery yeere on the borders towards the Chrim Tartar, (except they bee appointed for forme other fernice) whether there bee warres with the Tariars, or not. This might feeme peraduenture

somewhat dangerous for some State, to have so great forces under the command of Noblemen. to affemble euery yeere to one certaine place. But the matter is so vied, as that no danger can grow to the Emperour, or his State by this meanes. First, Because these Noblemen are many, to wit, 110, in all, and changed by the Emperour fo oft as hee thinketh good, Secondly, Because they have their livings of the Emperour, being otherwise but of very small Revenue, and receive this yeerely pay of 40000. Rubbels, when it is presently to be paid forth agains to the Souldiers that are vinder them. Thirdly, Because for the most part they are about the Emperors person, being of his Counsell, either speciall, or at large. Fourthly, They are rather as Pay-mafters, then Captaines to their Companies, themselves not going forth ordinarily to the warres, faue when some of them are appointed by speciall order from the Emperour himselfe. So the 10 whole number of Horièmen that are euer in a readinesse, and in continuall pay, are 80000. a few more or leffe.

continual pay

If he have need of a greater number ( which feldome falleth out) then hee entertayneth of those Sinaboiarskey, that are out of pay, so many as he needeth : and if yet he want of his number, hee gineth charge to his Noblemen, that hold Lands of him, to bring into the field every man a proportionable number of his feruants (called Kolopbey, fuch as till his Lands) with their furniture, according to the iuft number that hee intendeth to make. Which, the service being done, presently lay in their weapons, and returne to their seruile occupations againe.

Footmen in continuall pay

Strangers

mercenaries

in pay 4300.

Of Footmen that are in continuall pay, he hath to the number of 12000. all Gunners, called Strelley. Whereof 5000, are to attend about the Citie of Moske, or any other place where the m Emperourshall abide, and 2000. (which are called Stremaney, Strefley, or Gunners at the Stirrop) about his owne person at the very Court or house where himselfe lodgeth. The rest are placed in his garrison Townes, till there be occasion to have them in the field, and receive for their falarie or itipend enery man feuen Rubbels a yeere, besides twelue measures, a piece of Rye, and Oats. Of mercenary Souldiers, that are strangers (whom they call Nimples) they have at this time 4:00. of Polonians: of Chirchaffes (that are vader the Polonians) about 4000. whereof 3500. are abroad in his Garrilons: of Dutches and Scots, about 150: of Greekes, Turkes, Danes, and Sweadens, all in one band, 100, or thereabouts. But these they vie only vpon the Tartar lide. and against the Siberians: as they doe the Tartar Souldiers (whom they hire sometimes, but onely for the present) on the other fide against the Polonian and Sweaden: thinking it best po- 10 licy fo to vie their feruice vpon the contrary border,

The chiefe Captaines or I.The Voiauod or GeneralL

The chiefe Captaines or Leaders of these forces, according to their names and degrees, are these which follow. First, the Voyanodey Bulfbaia, that is, the Great Capsaine, or Licentement generall under the Emperour. This commonly is one of the foure houses of the chiefe Nobilitie of the Land : but so chosen otherwise, as that he is of small valour or practice in Martiall matters, being thought to ferue that turne fo much the better, if he bring no other parts with him faue the countenance of his Nobilitie, to bee liked of by the Souldiers for that, and nothing elfe. For in this point they are very warie, that thefe two, to wit, Nobilitie and Power, meet not both in one, specially if they see wise lome withall, or aptnesse tor policie.

Their great Voianod or Generall at this prefent in their warres, is commonly one of thefe 40 foure, Knez Feeder Inanowich Methilostey. Knez Inan Michailowich Glinskey, Cherechaskey, and Tranbetskor, all of great Nobilitie, but of very simple qualitie otherwise: though in Glinskop (as they fay) there is somewhat more then in the reft. To make up this defect in the Voicenod or Generall, there is some other joyned with him as Lieutenant generall, of farre leffe Nobilitie, but of more valour and experience in the warres then he, who ordereth all things that the other countenanceth. At this time their principall man, and most vsed in their warres, is one Knez. Demetrie lumonich Forestime, an antient and expert Captaine, and one that hath done great seruice (as they fay) against the Tartar, and Polonian. Next under the Voianod and his Lieutenant the field, foure. generall, are foure other, that have the marihalling of the whole Armie divided among them, and may be called the Marshals of the field.

2.Lieutenane

generall,

Euery man hath his quarter, or fourth part under him : whereof the first is called, the Prana Polsker, or Right wing. The second is , the Leney Polsker, or Left wing. The third is, Rufney Polskoy, or The broken band, because out of this there are chosen to send abroad upon any sudden exploit, or to make a refcue or supply, as occasion doth require. The fourth, Storesbonoy Polskoy, or The warding band. Euery one of these foure Marshals have two other under them (eight in all ) that twice every weeke at the least must muster and traine their severall wings or bands, and hold and give inftice for all faults and diforders committed in the Campe.

a.Marfhala

5. Coronela

Vnder-cap-

And thefe eight are commonly chosen out of the hundred and ten (which I spake of before) that receive and deliver the pay to the Souldiers. Vnder thefe eight are divers other Captaines, as the Gul anoy, Captaines of thousands, five hundreds, and hundreds. The Petyde Seiskey, or 60 Captaines of fifties; and the Decetskies, or Captaines of tennes.

Besides the Voianeda, or Generall of the Armie, (ipoken of before) they have two other that beare the name of Voianoda: whereof one is the Matter of the great Ordnance (called Naradna Voianoda ) who hath divers Vnder-officers , necessary for that service. The other is called , the

Voianneda Gulanoy, or the Walking Captayne, that hath allowed him 1000. good hioriemen of The walking principall choice, to range and ipye abroad, and hath the charge of the running Cattle, which Captayne, we are to speake of in the Chapter following. All these Captaynes, and men of charge must once enery day refort to the Bullba Voianoda, or Generall of the Armie, to know his pleasure, and to informe him if there be any requifite matter pertayning to their Office.

WHen Wars are towards (which they faile not of lightly enery yeere with the *Tortor*, they and many times with the *Polonian* and *Swedon*, (the foure Lords of the *Cheffird*; lend of their muforth their Summons in the Emperous name, to all the Dukes and Dyacks of the Provinces, to Stering, and Je-In be proclaymed in the head Townes of every Shire : that all the Sinabeiariker, or Sonnes of Gen- wying of fortlemen make their repayre to such a border where the Service is to be done, at such a place, and Armour, and by such a day, and there present themselves to such and such Captaynes. When they come to provide of the place affigned them in the Summons or Proclamation , their names are taken by certayne victuall for the Officers that have Commiffion for that purpole from the Roferade, or High Conflable, as Cletkes Warren of the Bands.

for mustering,

If any make default and faile at the day, he is muleted, and punished very severely. As for the Generall and other chiefe Captaines, they are fent thither from the Emperours owne hand, with fuch Commission and charge as he thinketh behoofefull for the present service. When the Souldiers are affembled, they are reduced into their Bands, and Companies, vnder their feuerall 20 Captaynes of tens, fifties, hundreds, thousands, &c. and these Bands into foure Polikeis or Legions (but of farre greater numbers then the Romane Legions were) under their foure great Leaders, which also have the authoritie of Marshals of the field (as was laid before.) Concerning their Armour they are but flightly appointed. The common Horse-man hath The Horse-

nothing else but his Bow in his Casevnder his right arme, and his Ogiuer and Sword hanging on mans Furnithe left fide: except some few that beare a Case of Dagges, or a laueling, or short Staffe along ture. their Horle fide. The under Captaynes will have commonly some piece of Armour besides, as a shirt of Male, or such like. The Generall with the other chiefe Captaynes and men of Nobilizy, will have their Horse very richly furnished, their Saddles of Cloth of Gold, their Bridles faire boffed and taffelled with Gold, and Silke frindge, bestudded with Peaste and Precious 20. Stones, themselues in very faire Armour, which they call Bulletnoy, made of faire hining Steele, vet couered commonly with Clothot Gold, and edged round about with Armine Furre, his Sceele Helmeton his head of a very great price, his Sword, Bow, and Arrowes at his fide, his Spease in his hand, with another Helmet, and his Shella pera, or Horse-mans Scepter carried before him. Their Swords, Bowes, and Arrowes are of the Tarkilo falhion. They practite like the Tartar to shoot forwards and backwards, as they flye and retyre. The Strelfey or Footman hath nothing but his Peece in his hand, his striking Hatchet at his ward and

Shooting fore

backe, and his Sword by his fide. The stocke of his Peece is not made Caleeuer wife, but with bakward, a plane and strait stocke (some-what like a Fowling-peece) the Barrell is rudely and wnartifi- Furniture, cially made, very heatie, yet shooteth but a very small Bullet. As for their provision of victus. Provision of 40 all, the Emperour alloweth none, either for Captayne, or Souldier, neyther provide thany for victuall. them except peraduenture some Corne for their Money. Euery man is to bring jufficient for himselfe to serue his turne for foure moneths, and if need require to give order for more to bee Provisions, brought vnto him to the Campe from his Tenant that tilleth his Land, or some other place. One great helpe they have, that for Lodging and Dyet every Ruffe is prepared to bee a Souldier before-hand. Though the cheife Captaynes and others of account carry Tents with them after the fashion of ours with some better prouision of victuall then the rest. They bring with them commonly into the Campe for victuall a kind of dryed Bread (which they call Sucharie) with fome store of Meale, which they temper with water, and so make it into a Ball, or small sumpe of dowe, called Tollockno. And this they eateraw in fread of Bread. Their Meate is Bacon, or 50 (ome other fielh or fish dryed, after the Duck manner. If the Russe Souldier were as hardie to execute an Enterprize, as he is hard to be are out toyle and travell, or were otherwise as apt and

well trayned for the Warres, as he is indifferent for his Lodging and Dyet, hee would farre exceed the Souldiers of our parts. Whereas now he is faire meaner of courage and execution in any Warlike service. Which commeth partly of his scralle condition, that will not soffer any Homes alit error. great courage or valour to grow in him. Partly for lacke of due honour and reward, which hee hath no great hope of whatfoeuer feruice or execution he doe.

"He Ruffe trusteth rather to his number, then to the valour of his Souldiers, or good orde- Chep. 17. I ring of his Forces. Their marching or leading is without all order, fane that the fore Polf. Of their more 60 ker or Legions, (whereinto their Armie is diuided) keepe themselues severall vinder their Enfignes, and fo thruit all on together in a hurrie, as they are directed by their Generall, Their Endmartill Directed by their Generall, Their Endmartill Directed by their Generall, Their Endmartill Directed by their General Company of the Burney of Company of Comp figne is the Image of Saint George. The Bullha Dworaney or chiefe Horfe-men; hau euery man a cipline. fmall Drummeof Braffe at his Saddle-bow, which hee striketh when hee gueen the charge, Gonge canigne.

Drummes.

They

gaines. 6. Mailers of the Artillerie. charging.

They have Drummes besides of a huge bignesse, which they carrie with them vpon a board layd on foure Horfes, that are sparred together with Chaines, euery Drumme having eight ftrie kers, or Drummers, besides Trumpets and Shawmes, which they found after a wild manner, much different from ours. When they give any charge or make any invafion, they make a great hallow or floute altogether, as loude as they can, which with the found of their Trumpets, Shawmes, and Drummes, maketh a confused and horrible noyse. So they set on first discharging their Arrowes, then dealing with their Swords, which they vie in a brauery to shake, and brandish over their heads, before they come to strokes.

The footmans Their Footmen (because otherise they want order in leading) are commonly placed in some ambuth or place of advantage, where they may most annoy the enemy, with least hurt to them- in felues. If it be a fet battell, or if any great inuation be made vpon the Rufe borders by the Ter-The milking tar, they are fet with in the running or moning Caftle (called Beza, or Gulay gorod) which is car. ried about with them by the Voianoda gulanoy (or the malking Generall) whom I spake of before This walking or mouing Caftle is fo framed, that it may be fet up in length (as occasion doth to quire) the space of one, two, three, soure, fine, fixe, or seuen miles : for so long it will reach. It is nothing eliebut a double wall of wood to defend them on both fides behind and before, with a space of three yards or thereabouts betwixt the two sides : so that they may stand within it. and have roome enough to charge and discharge their pieces, and to vie their other weapons. It is closed at both ends, and made with loope-holes on either fide, to lay out the nose of their Peece, or to pulh forth any other weapon. It is carryed with the Armie wherefoeuer it goeth, 20 being taken into pieces, and so layed on Carts sparred together, and drawne by Horse that are not feene, by reason that they are coursed with their carriage as with a shelfe or pent-house. When it is brought to the place where it is to bee vied (which is denied and chosen out before by the the walking Usianod) it is planted fo much as the present vie requireth, sometime a mile long, fometimes two, fometimes three, or more : which is foone done without the helpe of any Carpenter, or Instrument : because the Timber is so framed to claspe together one piece within an other : 25 is eafily vnder food by those that know the manner of the Raffe building.

In this Castle standeth their shot well fenced for advantage, specially against the Tarter, that bringeth no Ordnance, nor other weapon into the field with him, faue his Sword, and Bow and Arrowes. They have also within it divers field Peeces, which they vie as occasion doth require, 30 Of Peeces for the field they carrie no great store, when they warre against the Tartar but when they deale with the Polonian (of whole forces they make more account) they goebetter furnished with all kindsof Munition, and other necessarie prouisions. It is thought they no Prince of Christendome hath better store of Munition, then the Russe Emperour. And rother partly appeare by the Artillerie House at Moske, where are of all forts of great Ordnance, all

Braffe Peeces, very faire, to an exceeding great number.

The Ruffe Souldier is thought to be better at his defence within some Castle, or Towne, then he is abroad at a fet pitched field. Which is ever noted in the practice of his Wars, and namely, as the fiege of Volike, about eight yeares fince : where he repulled the Polonian King Stepan Batore, with his whole Armie of 100000. men, and forced him in the end to give over his fiege, with 40 the losse of many of his best Captaynes and Souldiers. But in a fet field the Russeis noted to haue-ouer the worse of the Poloman, and Sweden.

Reward for valour.

If any behaue himselfe more valiantly then the rest, or doe any speciall piece of senice, the Emperour fendeth him a piece of Gold, stamped with the Image of Saint George on Horseback. Which they hang on their fleeues, and fet in their Caps. And this is accounted the greatest honour they can receive, for any feruice they doe.

or purchales by force,

He Ruffe Emperours of late yeeres have very much enlarged their Dominions and Territo-I ries. Their first Conquest after the Dukedome of Moske, (for before that time they were but Dukes of Volodomer, as before was faid) was the Citie, and Dukedome of Nonograd on the 50 their conquests West, and North-west side : which was no small enlargement of their Dominion, and strengthning to them for the winning of the rest. This was done by Inan great Grand-father to Thesdore now Emperour, about the yeere 1480. The same began likewife to encroach upon the Countreyes of Lituania, and Linemia, but the Conquest onely intended, and attempted by him vpon fome part of those Countreyes, was pursued and performed by his Sonne Bafiless, who first wan the Citie and Dukedome of Plesko, afterwards the Citie and Dukedome of Smolensko, and many other faire Townes, with a large Territory belonging vnto them, about the yeere 1514. These Victories against the Lettors or Lauanians in the time of Alexander their Duke, hee atchieued rather by advantage of civill Diffentions and Treasons among themselves, then by any great policie, or force of his owne. But all this was loft againe by his Sonne Inan Vafilowich, about eight 60 or nine yeeres paft, vpon composition with the Polonian King Stepan Bajore: whereunto he was forced by the aduantages which the Pole had then of him, by reason of the foyle hee had given him before, and the disquietnesse of his owne State at home. Onely the Russe Emperour, at this time hath left him on that fide his Countrey, the Cities of Smolensko, Vitobsko, Cheringo, and Beala gered in Lituania. In Linenia, not a Towne, nor one foot of ground.

When Bafilem first conquered those Countreyes, he suffered the Natives to keepe their Poffessions, and to inhabit all their Townes, onely paying him a Tribute, under the Gouernment Litrania, of his Ruffe Captaynes. But by their Conspiracies and Attempts not long after, hee was taught to deale more furely with them. And fo comming upon them the fecond time, hee killed and carryed away with him, three parts of foure, which hee gaue or fold to the Tartars that ferued him in those Wars, and in stead of them placed there his Ruffer, so many as might ouer-match the rest, with certayne Garrisons of strength besides , wherein notwithstanding this ouer-fight was committed, for that (taking away with him the Vp-land, or Countrey people that should haue tilled the ground, and might easily haue beene kept in order without any danger, by other 10 good policies) he was driven afterwards many yeeres together to victual the Countrey (el pecial-

lythe great Towne) out of his owne Conntrey of Ruffis, the foyle lying there in the meanewhile waste, and vntilled.

The like fell out at the Port of Name in Liefland, where his Sonne Inan Vafilowich deuised Marie, to build a Towne, and a Castle on the other fide the River (called Inangorod) to keepe the Towne and Countrey in subjection. The Castle hee caused to bee so built, and fortified; that it was thought to be inuincible. And when it was finished, for reward to the Architect (that was a The Deuillite Poloman) he put out both his eyes, to make him vnable to build the like againe. But having left the Natines all within their owne Countrey, without abating their number or strength, the Towns and Castle not long after was betrayed, and surrendred agains to the King of Sweden.

On the South-east fide they have got the Kingdomes of Cazan and Aitracan. These were wonnefrom the Tartar, by the late Emperour Inan Valilowich, Father to the Emperour that now is : the one about thirty five, the other about thirty three yeeres agoe. North-ward out of the Countrey of Siberia, he hath layed vnto his Realme a great breadth and length of ground, from Wichida to the River of Obba, about 1000, miles space ; so that he is bold to write himselfe now. The great Commander of Siberia.

The Countreyes I kewise of Permis, and Pechora, are a divers People and Language from the Permis and Pe-Rulle, our come not long fince, and that rather by threatning , and thaking of the Sword , then chora. by any actuall force : as being a weake and naked people, without meanes to relift,

30 Their Neighbours with whom they have greatest dealings and intercourse, both in Peace Chap.ig.

Of the Tatter of the Tatter of the Pulminary home the Pulm called Tanks.

and Warre, are fifti the Tarrar: Secondly, the Polonian whom the Raffe calleth Laeber, and other bore and other bore. noting the first Author or Founder of the Nation, who was called Lasbes or Leches, whereunto dereis to the is added Po, which fignifieth People, and to it made Polaches; that is, the People or Posteritie of country of Laches , which the Latines after their manner of writing call Polanes. The third are the Swe- Raffia, wi h dens. The Polonians and Swedens are better knowne so these parts of Europe, then are the Tar whom they sars that are farther off from vs (as being of Afia) and divided into many Tribes, different both doesn was and in name, and government one from another. The greatest and mightiest of them is the Chrim prace. Tartar, (whom some call the Great Charm) that lyeth South, and South-east-ward from Rassa, Th. Polenians and doth most annoy the Countrey by often Inuations, commonly once every yeere; fometimes called Laches 40 entring very farre within the In-land parts.

In the yeere 1571, he came as farre as the Citie of Mosko, with an Armie of 200000. men, Terta. without any battell, or refistance at all, for that the Russe Emperour (then Issan Vasilowsch) lea- The bring of ding forth his Armie to encounter with him, marched a wrong way : but as it was thought of Monkey the wery purpose, as not daring to aduenture the field, by reason that he doubted his Nobilitie, and Conin Tartar, chiefe Captaynes, of a meaning to betray him to the Tartar.

The Citie he tooke not, but fired the Suburbs, which by reason of the buildings (which is all of Wood without any Stone, Bricke, or Lime, faue certayne out Roomes) kindled so quickly, and went on with such rage, as that it consumed the greatest part of the Crie almost within the space of soure houres, being of thirty miles or more of compasse. Then might you have seene 50 a lamentable Spectacle: befides the huge and mightie flame of the Citie all on light fire, the peofarthers from the Enemie, where meeting together in a mighty throng, and so prefing eneric man to preuent another, wedged them lelues to fast within the Gate, and streets neere voto 11,23 that three Rankes walked one vpon the others head, the vppermost treading downe those that were lower: fo that there perished at that time (as was faid) by the fire and the press, the num-

The Chrim thus having fired the Citic, and fed his eyes with the fight of it all of a light flame, returned with his Armie, and fent to the Ruffe Emperour a Knife (as was fayd) to sticke himfelfe with all : obrayding this loffe, and his desperate case, as not daring either to meete his Ene-60 mie in the field, nor to truit his Friends or Subjects at home. The principall cause of this continual quarrell, betwixt the Ruffe and the Chrass, is for the right of certayne border parts claimed by the Tartar, but possessed by the Ruffe. The Tartar alleadgeth, that besides Astracan and Cazan, (that are the ancient possession of the East Tarter) the whole Countrey from his bounds North and Westward, so farre as the Citie of Moske, and Moske it selfe, pertayneth to his right.

the Chrim Tat-See the first Tarters Con-

Homzgedone Which feemeth to have beene true by the report of the Ruffes themselves, that tell of a certayne by the suffero homage that was done by the Ruffe Emperour every yeare, to the great Christ or Cham, the Ruffe Emperour standing on foote and feeding the Chrises Horse, (himselfe fitting on his backe) with Oates out of his owne Cap, in stead of a Boll or Manger, and that within the Castle of Mosko. And this homage (they lay) was done till the time of Bafileus Grand ather to this man. booke or sas-thay and of the Who surprising the Chrim Emperour by a stratagem, done by one of his Nobilitie (called Income Demetrowich Belicher) was content with this Ransome, viz. with the changing of this homage into a Tribute of Furres : which afterwards also was denyed to bee payed by this Em-

Hereupon they continue the quartell, the Ruffe defending his Countrey, and that which hee 10 hath wonne, the Chrim Tarter invading him once or twice every yeere, fometime about Whitefontide, but oftner in Haruest What time if the Great Cham or Chrim come in his owne perfon, hee bringeth with him a great Armie of 100000, or 200000, men. Otherwise they make fhort and fodden roades into the Countrey with leffer numbers, running about the lift of the border as wilde Geefe flie, inuading and retiring where they fee advantage,

The manner of Their common practice (being very populous) is to make divers Armies, and so drawing the

fight, and Ar-

Apparell.

Mirchs of

Ruffe to one, or two places of the frontiers, to inuade at fome other place, that is left without defence. Their manner of Fight, or ordering of their forces, is much after the Ruffe manner. (ipoken of before) saue that they are all Horse-men, and carrie nothing elie but a Bow, a sheafe of Arrowes, & a falcon Sword after the Turkifb fash on, They are very expert horse-men, and vie 20 to shoote as readily backward as forward. Some will have a horf-mans staffe like to a bore Speare, besides their other weapons. The common Souldier, hath no other Armour then his ordinary Apparell, viz., a blacke Sheepes skinne with the wooll-fide outward in the day time, and inward in the night time, with a Cap of the same. But their Marfey or Noblemen imitate the Turke, both in Apparell and Armour. When they are to passe ouer a River with their Armie, they tye three or foure Horfes tegether, and taking long poles or pieces of wood, binde them failt to the tay les of their Horfe: fo fitting on the Poles they drine their Horfe ouer. At handle ftrokes ( when they come to joyne battell ) they are accounted farre better men then the Ruffe people, fierce by nature, but more hardie and bloudie, by continuall practice of Warre: as men mowing no Arts of Peace, nor any civill practice.

The fubrilise

Yet their subtiltie is more then may seeme to agree with their barbarous condition. By reaof the Tatter. fon they are practifed to inuade continually, and to rob their neighbours that border about them. they are very pregnant, and ready witted to denise Stratagems vpon the fudden, for their better advantage. As in their warre against Beals the fourth King of Hangarie, whom they invaded with five hundred thousand men, and obtayned against him a great v ctorie. Where among other, having flaine his Chancellor, called Nicholas Schinick, they found about him the Kings priuie Scale. Whereupon they deuised presently to countefeit Letters in the Kings name, to the Cities and Townes next about the place, where the Field was fought : with charge that in no case they should conuay themselues, and their goods out of their dwellings, where they might abide fafely without all feare of danger, and not leave the Countrey defolate to the possession of 40 fo vile and barbarous an Enemie, as was the Tarrar Nation, tearming themselves in all reproachfull manner. For notwithstanding he had lost his carriages, with some few straglers that had marched diforderly, yet he doubted not but to recour that loffe, with the accesse of a notable victory, if the fauage Torter durst abide him in the field. To this purpose having written their Letters in the Polifo Character, by cerrayne young men whom they tooke in the Field, and figned them with the Kings Seale, they dispatched them foorth to all the Quarters of Hungarie, that lay neere about the place. Whereupon the Ungarians, that were now fiying away with their goods, Wives, and Children, vpon the rumour of the Kings overthrow, taking comfort of these counterfeit Letters, stayed at home. And so were made a prey, being surprised on the sudden by this huge number of these Tartars, that had compassed them about before they were awares

When they beliege a Towne or Fort, they offer much Parley, and fend many flattering mellages to perswade a surrendrie : promising all things that the Inhabitants will require ; but being once possessed of the place, they vie all manner of hostilitie and crueltie. This they doe vpon a rule they have, viz. That luftice is to bee practifed but towards their owne. They encounter not lightly, but they have some ambush, whereunto (having once shewed them selves, and made fome shore conflict) they retire, as repulsed for feare, and so draw the Enemie into it if they can-But the Ruffe being well acquainted with their practile, is more warie of them. When they come a Rouing with some small number, they set on Horsebacke counterfeit shapes of men, that

their number may feeme greater.

When they make any onset, their manner is to make a great showte, crying all out together, Olla Billa, Olla Billa, God belpe vs, God belpe vs. They contemne death fo much, as that they choole rather to dye, then to yeeld to their Enemie, and are feene when they are flaine to bite the very weapon, when they are past striking, or helping of themselues. Wherein appeareth show different the Tarter is in his desperate courage from the Ruffe and Turke. For the Rufe

CHAP.I. Mijerable Captimitie, Tartar Religion, Idols, Sorcerie, Marriage.

Souldier if hee begin once to retire putteth all his safetie in his speedie flight. And if once he be taken by his enemie, hee neither defendeth himselfe, nor intreateth for his life, as reckoning firaight to dye. The Turk commonly when hee is past hope of escaping, falleth to intreatie, and cafteth away his weapon, offereth both his hands, and holdeth them vp. as it were to bee ty-

ed : hoping to faue his life, by offering himfelfe Bond-flaue.

The chiefe bootie the Tartars feeke for in all their warres, is to get store of Captines, Speci- Captines ally young Boyes and Girles, whom they fell to the Turkes, or other their neighbours. To this purpose they take with them great Baskets made like Bakers panniers, to carrie them tenderly, and if any of them happen to tyre, or to bee ficke on the way, they dash him against the ground, no or some Tree, and so leave him dead : The Souldiers are not troubled with keeping the Captiues and other bootie, for hindering the execution of their warres, but they have certaine bands that intend nothing elfe, appointed of purpose to receive and keepe the Captives and the other prey.

The Raffe borders(being vied to their invasions, lightly every yeere in the Summer) keepe few The Tarten other Cattell on the border parts, faue Swine onely, which the Taylor will not touch, nor drive a- Religion. way with him: for that he is of the Turkif Religion, & will eate no Swines-flesh. Of Christ our Saujour they confesses much as doth the Twee in his Alcaron, viz. That he came of the Angell Gabriel, and the Virgin Marie, that hee was a great Prophet, and shall bee the Judge of the world at the last day. In other matters likewise, they are much ordered after the manner and 20 direction of the Turke : having felt the Turkib forces when hee wonne from them Azon and Caffa, with some other Townes about the Euxine, or Blacke Sea, that were before tributaries to the Chrims Tartar. So that now the Emperour of the Chrims for the most part is chosen some one of the Nobilitie whom the Turke doth commend : whereby it is brought now to that paffe, that the Chrim Tartar giveth to the Turke the tenth part of the Spoyle, which hee getteth in his warres against the Christians.

Herein they differ from the Turkifo Religion, for that they have certayne Idoll puppets made Idols, of Silke or like stuffe, of the fashion of a man, which they fasten to the doore of their walking houses, to bee as lamistes, or keepers of their house. And these Idols are made not by all, but by certayne Religious women, which they have among them for that and like vice. They haue befides, the Image of their King or great Cham of an huge bigneffe, which they erect at eue-

30 rie stage, when the Armie marcheth: and this every one muit bend or bow vnto as hee passeth by it, bee he Tartar, or Stranger. They are much given to Witchcraft and ominous conjectures, Sorteries.

In making of Marriages, they have no regard of alliance or confariguinitie. Only with his Mo-Marriage, ther, Sifter, and Daughter, a man may not marrie, and though he take the woman into his house and accompanie with her, yet he accounteth her not for his Wife, till hee haue a Child by her. Then he beginneth to take a downe of her friends of Horse, Sheepe, Kine, &c. If shee be barren, after a certayne time hee turneth her home againe,

Vnder the Emperour they have certayne Dukes, whom they call Morfeis or Dysognorfeis! The Torto that rule ouer a certayne number of 10000. 20000. or 40000. a piece, which they call Hoords. Nobilitie, When the Emperour hath any vieo: them to lerue in his warres, they are bound to come, and to bring with them their Souldiers to a certayne number, euery man with his two Horse at the least, the one to ride on, the other to kil, when it commeth to his turne to have his Horse eate. For their chiefe victuall is Horfe-flesh, which they eate without Bread, or any other thing with The Tatte it. So that if a Tarter bee taken by a Ruffe, hee shall be sure lightly to finde a Horse-legge, or dye.

fome other part of him at his faddle bow.

This last yeere when I was at the Moske, came in one Kiriach Morfo, nephew to the Emperour of the (brims that now is (whole Father was Emperour before) accompanied with three hundred Tartars, and his two Wives, whereof one was his Brothers widow. Where being en-50 tertayned in very good fort after the Roffe manner, hee had fent vnto his lodging for his welcome, to bee made ready for his Supper and his companies, two very large and far Horses, ready flayed in a Sled. They preferre it before other flesh, because the meare is stronger (as they say) then Beefe, Mutton, and fuch like. And yet (which is maruell) though they ferue all as Horfemen in the warts, and eate all of Horfe-fielh, there are brought yearely to the Moute to bee exchanged for other Commodities, thirtie or fortie thouland Tartar Horse, which they call Cones. They keepeallo great herds of Kine, and flockes of blacke Sheepe, rather for the Skinnes and Milke (which they carry with them ingreat bottles) then for the vie of the flesh, though sometimes they eate of it. Some vie they have of Rice, Figges, and other fruits, They drinke Milke or warme Bloud, and for the most part card them both together. They wse sometimes as they tra-60 uell by the way, to let their Horse bloud in a veyne, and to drinke it warme, as it commeth

Townes they plant none, nor other standing buildings, but have walking Houses which the The Total Latiner call Very, built vpon wheeles like a Shepherds Cottage. Their they draw with them whis dwelling. therfoeuer they goe, driving their Cattell with them. And when they come to their Stage or

Moneable Citie and Court.

standing place, they plant their Cart-houses very orderly in a ranke : and so make the forme of ffreets, and of a large Towne. And this is the manner of the Emperour himselfe, who bath no other scate of his Empire but an Agera, or Towns of wood, that mooneth with him whithersoeuer hee goeth. As for the fixed and standing building vied in other Countries, they fay they

They begin to moone their Houses and Cattell in the Spring time, from the South part of their Countrey towards the North parts. And so driving on till they have grasted all up to the furthest part Northward, they returne backe againe towards their South Countrey (where they continue all the Winter) by ten or twelue miles a stage : in the meane while the grade being continue au tine W. Inter Joy ten or their Cattell as they returne. From the border of the Salara to forming vp againe, to ferne for their Cattell as they returne. From the border of the Salara to the border of the Salara to the border of the Salara to t wards the Cafrian Sea, to the Ruffe frontiers, they have a goodly Countrey, specially on the South and South-east parts, but lost for lacke of tillage.

Of money they have no vie at all, and therefore preferre Braffe and Steele before other men tals, specially Bullate, which they vie for Swords, Kniues, and other necessaries. As for Gold and Siluer they neglect it of very purpose, (as they doe all tillage of their ground) to be more free for their wandring kinde of life, and to keepe their Countrey leffe subject to inuations. Which gineth them great aduantage against all their neighbours, euer inuading, and neuer being inuaded,

For Person and Complexion, they have broad and flat visages, of a tanned colour vellow and forsideferibed. blacke, fierce and cruell lookes, thinne hayred vpon the vpper Lip, and a pit on the Chin, light and nimble Bodied, with short Legges, as if they were made naturally for Hotse-men : whereto 10 they practife themselves from their Child-hood, seldome going a soot about any businesse. Their Speach is very sudden and loude, speaking as it were out of a deepe hollow throat. When they Sing you would thinke a Cow lowed, or some great Bandogge howled. Their greatest exercife is Shooting, wherein they trayne up their Children from their very infancie, not fuffering them to eate, till they have shot neere the marke within a certain e scantling.

There are divers other Tartars that border vpon Ruffia, as the Nagaies, the Cheremiffens, the Mordwites, the Chircasses, and the Shalcans, which all differ in Name more then in Regiment, or of Tariars. other condition, from the Chrim Tartar, except the Chircaffes, that border South-west towards Litmonia, and are farre more civill then the rest of the Tartars, of a comely person, and of a stately behaulour, as applying themselues to the fashion of the Toloman. Some of them have subjected to themselues to the Kings of Poland, and professe Christianitie. The Nagay lyeth Eastward, and is reckoned for the best man of warre among all the Tartars, but very sauage and cruell aboue all the rest. The Cheremisin Tartar, that lyeth betwixt the Russe and the Nagay, are of two sorts, the Luganoy (that is of the valley) and the Nagornay, or of the hilly Countrey. These have much troubled the Emperours of Ruffia. And therefore they are content now to buy Peace of them, under pretence of gining a yeerely pension of Russe Commodities, to their Morfeis or Dr. noymorfeis, that are chiefe of their Tribes. For which also they are bound to serue them in their warres, under certayne conditions. They are fayd to bee just and true in their dealings ; and for that cause they hate the Ruffe people, whom they account to bee double, and false in all their

dealing. And therefore the common fort are very vnwilling to keepe agreement with them, but 40 that they are kept in by their Morfen, or Dukes for their penfions lake.

The most rude and barbarous is counted the Mordante Tartar, that hath many selfe fashions, and ftrange kindes of behaviour, differing from the reft. For his Religion, though hee acknowledge one God, yet his manner is to worthip for God, that living thing, that hee first meeteth in the morning, and to sweareby it all that whole day, whether it bee Horse, Dog, Cat, or whatfoeuer elfe it bee. When his friend dyeth, hee killeth his best Horse, and hauing flayed off the skinne, he carryeth it on high vpon a long pole, before the Corps to the place of Buriall. This he doth (as the Ross fayth) that his friend may have a good horse to carrie him to Heaven: but it is likelier to declare his love towards his dead friend, in that hee will have to dye with him the

best thing that hee hath. Next to the Kingdome of Astracan, that is the furthest part South-eastward of the Russe Dominion, lyeth the Shalcan, and the Countrey of Media : Whither the Ruffe Merchants trade for raw Silkes, Syndon, Saphyon, Skinnes, and other commodities. The chiefe Townes of Media where the Ruffe tradeth, are Derbent (built by Alexander the great, as the Inhabitants fay) and Zamachie, where the staple is kept for raw Silkes. Their manner is, in the Spring time to retime the Silke-wormes (that lye dead all the Winter) by laying them in the warme Sunne, and (to haften their quickning, that they may fooner goe to worke) to put them into bagges, and io to hang them under their Childrens armes. As for the Worme called Chrinifin (as wee call it Chrimfon) that maketh coloured Silke, it is bred not in Media, but in Affria. This trade to Derbent and Samachie for raw Silkes, and other commodities of that Countrey, as allo in Persia, 60 and Bongharia, downe the River Volgha, and through the Caspian Sea, is permitted as well to the English, as to the Ruffe Merchants, by the Emperours last Grant at my being there. Which hee accounteth for a very speciall fauour, and might proue indeed very beneficiall to our English Metchants, if the Trade were well and orderly vied.

The whole Nation of the Tanare are veterly voide of all Learning, and without written Law. Yet certayne rules they have which they hold by tradition, common to all the Hords for the practice of their life. Which are of this fort. Birth, To ober their Emperous and other Ma Tarters geneeiftrates, what former they command shout the public Service, Secondly, Except for the public behavio, tall Rules. gurante property of the free and aut of Controloguest. Thirds, No private may be pelfelle any Leuds, but the whole Congress to be as a Computer. Everable, it a neglect all destinates and versite of Adapts, and to contros them feluse with that which comments next to hand, for more benduelle, and readinable in the execonnect tory part of flower, Rfgip, To means any base Action, and to paced their Chather, whether there been my near or not : that when there is my differ no flower, is more experient Coate. Stock, To take or 10 floods from any Stranger what forms any transfer what forms any Stranger what forms are not one will find. tell shouldines to them, Somenthly, Tomards their owne Hourd and Mation, to beetragin mard and doed. Eightly, To Suffer vo Stronger to come mithin the Realme, if any dee, the fame to bee Bond Days to him that first taketh him, except fuck Marchants and other, at have the Taxtat Bull or Patters

He Permians and Sampirschat Ive from Ruffia, North and North east, are thought likewife to hene taken their beginning from the Tarter kinde. And it may partly be gheffed by the Of the Permi fashion of their Countenance, as having all broad and flat faces, as the Torters have, except the aut, Samoitte Chircoffee. The Permia ne are accounted for a very ancient people. They are now habject to the and Laper. 20 Rufe. They live by Hunting and trading with their Furres, as dothalfo the Sameyt, that dwel. The Permian.

lath mone towards the Worth Sea. The Samer hath his name (as the Ruffe faith) of Esting bornbimfolfe sas if in times part, they lived as the Cannibale, eating one another. Which they make more probable, because at this time they eate all kinde of raw flesh, whatsoeuer it bee, euen the very Carrion that lyeth in the ditch. But as the Sameits themselues will say, they were called Samoie, that is, of themselver, as though they were Indigina, or people bred voon that very loyle, that never changed their leate from one place to another, as most Nations have done. They are

Subject at this time to the Emperour of Rullia.

I talked with certaine of them, and finde that they acknowledge one God : but represent him The Sanits by fach things as they have most vie and good by. And therefore they worthin the Sunne, the Religion, 30 Ollen, the Loth, and such like. As for the Storie of State Babs, or the Golden bagge, (which I State Babs or haue read in some Mans, and descriptions of these Countries, to bee an Idoll after the forme of Hag, an old Woman) that being demanded by the Priest, gueth them certaine Oracles, concerning the fucceffe and event of things, I found it to bee but a very fable. Onely in the Province of Obdoris upon the Sea lide, neere to the mouth of the great River Ohks, there is a Rocke, which naturally (being somewhat helped by imagination) may seeme to beare the shape of a tagged Woman with a Child in her armes, (as the Rocke by the North cape the fhape of a Frier) where the Obdorian Samons vie much to refort, by reason of the commoditie of the place for Fishing : and there fametime (as cheir manner is) conceine, and practice their Sorceries, and ominous conje-Cturings about the good, or bad speed of their Journeyes, Fishings, Huntings, and such like.

They are clad in Seale-skinnes, with the hayrie ude cutwards downe as low as the kness, The Sameirs with their Breeshes and Netherthocks of the same, both men and women. They are all Blacke histic and behayred, naturally beardleffe. And therefore the Men are hardly differred from the Women by haulour. their lookes: faue that the Women weare a locke of hayre downe along both their cares. They line in a manner a wilde and a fainge life, rouing still from one place of the Countrey to another, without any propertie of House or Land more to one then to another. Their leader or directer

in euery Companie, is their Pape or Prieft.

On the Northide of Ruffie next to Corelia, lyeth the Country of Loppis, which reacheth in The Lapre. length from the furthest point Northward, (towards the North cape) to the furthest part Southeast (which the Rufe calleth Sweemeffe or Holy mole, the English men Cape-grace) about three hundred and forcie fine verft or miles. From Swattneffe to Cambelox, by the way of Verfega (which measureth the breadth of that Country) is nunetic miles or thereabouts. The whole Countrey in a manner is either Lakes or Mountaines, which towards the Sea fide are called Tonare, because they are all of hard and eraggie Rooke, but the inland parts are well furnished with Woods, that grow on the hills fides, the lakes ly implet weene. Their dyet is very bare and fimple. Bread they have none, but feed onely voon Fishand Fowle. They are subject to the Em- No Bread. percur of Raffin, and the two Kings of Sweden and Demmarke : which all exact Tribute and Cufrome of them (as was layd before) but the Emperour; of Ruffis beareth the greatest hand ouer them, and exact of them farre more then the reft. The opinion is that they were first tearmed Lappes, of their briefe and short speach. The Raffe dinideth the whole Nation of the Lappes into two forts. The one they call Nouromousky Lapary, that is, the Normegian Lappes : because

they bee of the Danis Religion. For the Danes and Noruegians, they account for one people. The other that have no Religion at all, but line as bruite and Heathenish people, without God Wilde Land. in the world, they call Dikey Lopary, or the wilde Lappes.

The whole Nation is veterly vulcarned, having not so much as the vie of any Alphabet, or

Speach. Shooting. Diners kindes

The Nagay Tartar the cruclieft. The Chircafee the civilleft Tertars. The Cheremiffen Tartar.

The Mordwit Tarter the moft barbarous of the reft.

Witches,

Letter among them. For practice of Witch-craft and Sorcerie, they passe all Nations in the the World. Though for the inchanting of ships that sayle along their Coast (as I have heard it reported) and their giving of winds good to their friends, and contrary to other, whom they meane to hurt by tying of certayne knots vpon a Rope (fomewhat like to the Tale of exchin his wind-bag) is a very Fable, deviled (as may feeme) by themselves, to terrific Saylers lor comming neere their Coaft. Their Wespons are the Long-bow, and Hand-gunne, wherein they excell, as well for quicknesse to charge and discharge, as for neernesse ar the Marke, by reason of their continual practice (whereto they are forced) of shooting at wild-fowle. Their manner is in Summer time to come downe in greateompanies to the Sea-fide, to Wardingfe, Cala, Koyo, in Summer time to come coverse in great companies to the same and the say of Vedagobs, and there to fifth for Col. Salman, and But-fifth, which they fill to the 10 Ruffer, Down, and Norwegians, and now of lare to the English men that trade thinter with Cloth, which they exchange with the Lapres and Corelisor, for their Fifth, Oyle, and Furres, whereof allo they have some store. They hold their Mare at Cole, on Saint Peters day, "white warreor and uney most Mardhorfe (that is Resint there for the King of Demarke) must be pre-fent, or at least tend his Deputie to set prices vpon their Stock-fish, Trans-oyle, Furres, andother Commodities : as also the Ruffe Emperours Cultomer, or Tribute taker, to receive his Cuflome, which is ever payed before any thing can be bought; or fold. When their fishing is done, their manner is to draw their Carbaffes, or Boats on shoare, and there to leave them with the Keele turned vpwards, till the next Spring-tyde. Their trauell too and fro is vpon Sleds, drawne by the Olen Deere : which they vie to turne a grazing all the Summertime, in an Hand called 30 Kilden (of a very good Soyle compared with other parts of that Countrey) and towards

Sicds drawne

Cola,

Chap. 21. ckfiafticall flate, with

Oncerning the Gouernment of their Church, it is framed altogether after the manner of the Greeke: as being a part of that Church, and neuer acknowledging the Iurifdicton of the Latine Church, vsurped by the Pope. That I may keepe a better measure in describing their Ceremonies, then they in the ving them (wherein they are infinite) I will note briefly: Fuff, what Ecclelia ticall Degrees, or Offices they have with the Iurisdiction, and practice of them. Secondly, what Doctrine they hold in matter of Religion. Thirdly, what Lyturgie, or forme \$0 of Seruice they vie in their Churches , with the manner of their administring the Sacriments. Fourthly, what other strange Ceremonies, and Superstitious Denotions are vsed among

the Winter time, when the Snow beginneth to fall, they fetch them home againe, for the vie

The Church

Offices.

Their Offices, or Degrees of Church-men, are as many in number, and the fame in a manner both in name and degree, that were in the Westerne Churches. Furt, they have their Patriare, then their Metropolites, their Archbifbops, their Vladkey, or Bifbops; their Protopopes or Arch priefts, their Deacons, Friers, Monkes, Nunnes, and Eremnes.

The Patriarch.

Patriarch of Sie, or Chie.

Their Pariarch, or chiefe Directer in matter of Religion untill this laft yeere, was of the Citie of Confiantinople (whom they called the Parriarch of Sie) because being driven by the Turke out of Constantinople (the Seate of his Empire) he removed to the He Sis, fometimes called Chis, 40 and there placed his Patriarchiall Sea. So that the Emperours, and Clergie of Russia, were wont veerely to tend Gifts thither, and to acknowledge a Spirituall kind of homage, and subjection due to him, and to that Church. Which custome they have held (as resemeth) ever fince they professed the Christian Religion. Which how long it hatfi bn I could not wel learne, for that they haue no Story or Monument of Antiquitie (that I could heare of ) to shew what hath been done in times past within their Countrey, concerning either Church, or Common-wealth matters. Onely I heare a report among them, that about three hundred yeers fince, there was a Mariage betwint the Emperour of Constantinople, and the Kings Daughter of that Country: who at the first denyed to joynehis Daughter in Mariage with the Greeke Emperour, because he was of the Christian Religion. Which agreeth well with that I find in the Story of Lamicu Chal. 50 cacendulas concerning Turkish Affaires in his fourth Booke : where hee speaketh of such a Mariage betwixt lobs the Greeks Emperour, and the Kings Daughter of Sarmatia. And this argueth out of their owne report, that at that time they had not received the Christian Religion: as alfo that they were converted to the Faith, and withall perverted at the very fame time, receiving the Doctrine of the Gospell, corrupted with Superflitions even at the first when they tooke it from the Greeke Church, which it felfe then was degenerate, and corrupted with many Superflitions, and foule Errours, both in Doctrine and Discipline : as may appeare by the Story of Nicephorus Gregoras, in his eighth and ninth Bookes. But as touching the time of their Conuersion to the Christian Faith, I sppose rather that it is mistaken by the Ruffe, for that which I find in the Polonian Story, the second Booke the third Chapter: where is faid that about the 60 yeere 990. Vladomirus Duke of Ruffia, married one Anne Sifter to Bafilius, and Conflaminus Brothers, and Emperours of Constantinople. Whereupon the Raffe received the Faith and Profesion of Christ. Which though it be somewhat more ancient then the time noted before out of the Ruffe Report, yet it falleth out all to one reckoning, touching this point, viz. in what truth and

finceritie of Doctrine the Ruffe received the first stampe of Religion : for asmuch as the Greeke Church at that time also was many wayes infected with errour and superstition.

At my being there, the yeere 1,38. came vnto the Morke the Patriarch of Constantinople, or on of the Pa-Sio (called Hieronimo being banished as some sayd) by the Turke, as some other reported by the triarchicallsea Greeke Clergie deprived. The Emperour being given altogether to superstitious devotions, gave from Constantihim great entertaynment Before his comming to Moske, hee had beene in Italy with nople or Sin, to the Pope, as was reported there by some of his company. His arrand was to consult with the Mosto. Emperour concerning these points, First, about a League to passe betwixt him and the King of Spaine, as the meeteft Prince to joyne with him in opposition against the Tirke. To which pur-

IO pole also Ambassages had passed betwire the Russe and the Persian. Likewise from the Georgians to the Emperour of Ruffia, to joyne league together, for the inuading of the Turke on all fides of his Dominion : taking the advantage of the simple qualitie of the Tarke that now is. This treatie was helped forward by the Emperours Ambassadour of Almayne, sent at the same time to solicite an inuation upon the parts of Polonia, that lye towards Rufland, and to borrow money of the Ruffe Emperour, to purfue the warre for his Brother Maximilian, against the Swedens sonne. now King of Poland. But this confultation concerning a league betwirt the Ruffe and the Spamiard, (which was in some forwardnesse at my comming to Moske, and already one appointed for Ambassage into Spaine) was marred by meanes of the ouerthrow given to the Spanish King by her Majestie, the Queene of England, this last yeere. Which made the Russe Emperour and his 20 Councell, to give a fadder countenance to the English Ambassadour at that time : for that they were disappointed of so good a policie, as was this conjunction supposed to bee betwixt them and the Spanish.

His fecond purpose (whereto the first served as an introduction) was in revenge of the Turke and the Greeke Clergie, that had thrust him from his seate, to treate with them about the reducing of the Rufe Church under the Pope of Rome. Wherein it may feeme that comming lately from Rome, hee was fet on by the Pope, who hath attempted the same many times before, though all invaine : and namely the time of the late Emperour Inan Vafilowich, by one Anthony his Legate. But thought this belike a farre better meane to obtayne his purpose by treatie and mediation of their owne Patriarch. But this not succeeding, the Patriarch fell to a third point 30 of reatie, concerning the relignation of his Patriarchihip, and translation of the Sea from Conflantinople or Scio, to the Citie of Moske. Which was fo well liked, and entertayned by the Emperour (as a matter of high Religion and policie) that no other treatie (specially of forraigne

Ambaffages) could bee heard or regarded, till that matter was concluded

The reason wherewith the Patriarch perswaded the translating of his Sea to the Citie of Moske, were thefe in effect. First, for that the Seaps the Patriarch was under the Turke, that is enemie to the Faith. And therefore to bee remooued into some other Countrey of Christian profession. Secondly, because the Russe Church was the onely naturall daughter of the Greeke at this time, and holdeth the same Doctrine and Ceremonies with it : the rest being all subject to the Tarke, and fallen away from the right profession. Wherein the subtill Greeke to make the bet-

40 termarket of his broken ware, aduanced the honour that would grow to the Emperour, and his Countrey : to haue the Patriarchs Seat translated into the chiefe Citie, and seate of his Empire. As for the right of translating the Sea, and appointing his Successour, hee made no doubt of it, but

that it pertayned wholly to himselfe.

So the Emperour and his Councell, with the principall of his Clergie, being affembled at the The Patriarch Morke, it was determined that the Metropolite of Morke, should become Patriarch of the whole this of the whole the control that the Metropolite of Morke, should become Patriarch of the whole this of the whole the who Greeke Church, and have the tamefull Authoritie and Iunifdiction that pertayned before to the ted to Mosfee Patriarch of Conftaminople, or Sio. And that it might bee done with more order and folemnitie, the fine and twentieth or Ianuarie, 1 588. the Greeke Patriarch accompanied with the Ruffe Clergie, went to the great Church of Prechefte, or our Ladie, within the Emperours Castle (having

50 first wandred thorow the whole Citie in manner of a Procession, and bleshing the people with his two fingers) where hee made an Oration, and deliuered his refignation in an Instrument of writing, and so layed downe his Patriarchicall staffe. Which was presently received by the Metropolite of Moste, and divers other ceremonies vied about the Inauguration of this new

The day was holden very folemne by the people of the Citie, who were commanded to forbeare their workes, and to attend this folemnitie. The great Patriarch that day was honoured with rich Presents sent him from the Emperour and Emptesse, of Plate, cloath of Gold, Furres, &c. carryed with great pompe thorow the streets of Moske, and at his departing received many gifts more, both from the Emperour, Nobilitie, and Clergie. Thus the Patriarchilhip of Conflan-60 timple, or See, (which hath continued fince the Councell of Nice) is now translated to Meske, or they made beleeve that they have a Patriarch with the fame right and Authoritie that the other had. Wherein the fubtill Greeke hath made good advantage of their Superitition, and is now gone away with a rich bootie into Poland, whither their Patriarchihip be currant or not.

The matter is not valike to make some Schisme betwixt the Greeke and Roffe Church, if the

Ruff- hold his Patriarchship that hee hath so well payed for, and the Greekes Elect another withall, as \* likely they will, whether this man were banished by the Turke, or deprined by "As they doe and ener fince order of his owne Clergie. Which might happen to gine advantage to the Pope, and to bring ouer the Ruffe Church to the Sea of Rome, ( to which end peraduenture hee deursed this Stratagem, and call in this matter of Schisme among them) but that the Emperours of Russia know well enough, by the example of other Christian Princes, what inconvenience would grow to their State and Countrey, by subjecting themselues to the Roms Sea. To which end the late Emperour Inan Vafilowich, was very inquilitiue of the Popes authoritie ouer the Princes of Chris flendome, and fent one of very purpose to Rome, to behold the order and behaulour of his Court.

Kilender pre-

With this Patriarch Hieronymo, was driven out at the same time by the great Turke, one De- 10 metrio Archbishop of Larifa: who is now in England, and pretendeth the same cause of their banishment by the Turke, (to wit) their not admitting of the Popes new Kalender, for the alteration of the yeere. Which how valikely it is, may appeare by these Circumstances. First, because there is no such affection, nor friendly respect betwire the Pope and the Timbe, as that hee fhould banish a Subject for not obeying the Popes ordinance, specially in a matter of some sequel for the alteration of Times within his owne Countries. Secondly, for that hee maketh no such scruple in deducting of times, and keeping of a just and precise account from the Incarnation of Christ: whom hee doth not acknowledge otherwise then I noted before. Thirdly, for that the fayd Patriarch is now at Naples in Italy, where it may be gheffed he would not have gone within the Popes reach, and so neere to his nose, if hee had beene banished for opposing himselfe a- 20 gainst the Popes Decree.

The Patriarchs Iurifdi-

This office of Patriarchship now translated to Mosko, beareth a superiour Authoritie over all the Churches, not onely of Russia, and other the Emperours Dominions, but thorow out all the Churches of Christendome, that were before under the Patriarch of Constantinople, or Sto : or at least the Ruffe Patriarch imagineth himfelfe to have the same authoritie. Hee hath under him as his proper Diocesse the Prouince of Moske, besides other peculiars. His Court or Office is kept at the Meske.

Two Metropo-

Before the creation of this new Patriarch, they had but one Metropolite, that was called the Metropolite of Moske. Now for more flate to their Church, and new Patriarch, they have two Metropolites, the one of Nonograd velica, the other of Roftone. Their office is to receive of the 10 Patriarch such Ecclesiasticall orders, as hee thinketh good, and to deliner the charge of them ouer to the Archbishops : besides the ordering of their owne Diocesse.

Foure Arch-Sixe Bishops.

Their Archbilhops are foure : of Smolenfo, Cazon, Vobsko, and Vologdo. The parts of their office is all one with the Metropolites : faue that they have an under lurifdiction, as Suffraganes to the Metropolites, & Superiors to the Bishops. The next are the Vladiteis or Bishops, that are but fixe in all : of Crutitika, of Rezan, of Orfer and Torfhock, of Collomenska, of Volodemer, of Sufdalla, These have every one a very large Diocesse : as dividing the rest of the whole Country among

Ecclefiaffical)

Their Gentles

The matters pertayning to the Ecclesiasticall jurisdiction of the Metropolites, Archbishops, and Bishops, are the same in a manner that are vied by the Clergie in other parts of Christendome. 40 For besides their authoritie ouer the Clergie, and ordering such matters as are meere Ecclesiasticall, their jurisdiction extendeth to all Testamentarie causes, matters of Marriage, and Divorcements, some Pleas of iniuries, &c. To which purpose also they have their Officials, or Commisfaries (which they call Boiaren Vladstskey) that are Lay-men of the degree of Dukes, or Gentlemen, that keepe their Courts and execute their Iurifdiction. Which besides their other oppressions ouer the common people, raigne ouer the Priests: as the Dukes and Dracks doe ouer the poore people, within their Precincts. As for the Archbishop or Bishop himselfe, hee beareth no Iway in deciding those causes, that are brought into his Court. But if hee would moderate any matter, he must doe it by intreatie with his Gentleman Officiall. The reason is, because these Boiarstey, or Gentlemen officials, are not appointed by the Bishops, but by the Emperour him- 50 felfe, or his Councell, and are to give account of their doings to none but to them. If the Bishop can intreat at his admission to have the choice of his owne Officiall, it is accounted for a speciall great fauour. But to speake it as it is, the Clergie of Russia, as well concerning their Lands and reuenues, as their Authoritie and Iurifdiction, are altogether ordered and ouer-ruled by the Emperour and his Councell, and have so much, and no more of both as their pleasure doth permit them. They have also there Assistants or severall Counsels (as they call them) of certayne Priests that are of that Diocesse, reliding within their Cathedrall Cities, to the number of foure and twentie a piece. These aduise with them, about the speciall and necessarie matters belonging to their

The Church

Concerning their Rents and Reuenues to maintayne their dignities, it is somewhat large. The 60 Patriarchs yeerely rents out of his Lands (befides other fees) is about 3000. Rubbels or Marcks. The Metropolites and Archbishops, about 2500. The Bishops, some 1000. some 800. some 500.8cc. They have had some of them (as I have heard say) ten or twelve thousand Rubbels 2 yeere : as had the Metropolite of Newograd.

Their

Their Habit or Apparell (when they shew themselves in their Pontificalibus after their folemnell manner is a Mitre on their heads after the Popish fashion, set with Pearle and Precious Stone, a Coape on their backes, commonly of Cloth of Gold, embroydered with Pearle, and a Crossers Staffe in their hands, layed ouer all with Plate of Silver double gilt, with a Crosse or Sheepherds Crooke at the upperend of it. Their ordinary habit otherwise when they ride or goe abroad, is a Hood on their heads of blacke colour, that hangeth downe their backes, and standeth out like a Bon-grace before. Their vpper Garment (which they call Reis) is a Gowne or Mantell of blacke Damaske, with many Lifts or Gards of white Sattin layed voon it, enery Gard about two fingers broad, and their Crofiers staffe carried before them. Themselves follow after, bleffing the people with their two fore-fingers, with a marvel-

The Election, and appointing of the Bishops and the rest, pertagneth wholy to the Empe- The Election rour himselfe. They are chosen euer out of the Monasteries : to that there is no Bishop, Arch. of Bishops, bishop, nor Metropolite, but hath beene a Monke, or Frier before. And by that reason they are, and must all bee vnmarried men, for their Vow of Chastitie when they were first shorne, When the Emperour hath appointed whom he thinketh good, hee is inuefted in the Cathedrall Church of his Diocesse, with many Ceremonies, much after the manner of the Popish Inaugura-

tion. They have also their Deanes, and their Arch-deacons.

As for preaching the Word of God, or any teaching, or exhorting such as are under them, The learning they neither vie it, nor have any skill of it : the whole Clergie being veterly vulearned both for and exercise they neither vie it, nor naue any same to the manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, we of the far other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeer. the first of September (which is the first day of their yeere) and on Saint John Baptists day, the make an ordinary speech to the people, euery Metropolite. Arch.bishop, and Bishop, in his Catherall Church, to this or like effect: That if any bee in malice towards his Meighbour, hee shall leaue off his malice : if any haue thought of Treason or Rebellion against his Prince, hee beware of such practice: if hee haue not kept his Fasts, and Vowes, nor done his other Duties to the holy Church, hee shall amend that fault, &c. And this is a matter of forme with them, vttered in as many words, and no more, in a manner, then I have heere fet downe. Yet the matter is done with that Grace and Solemnitie, in a Polpit of 30 purpole fet vp for this one Act, as if hee were to discourse at large of the whole substance of

Diminitie. At the Monte the Emperour himselfe is euer present at this Solemne Ex-

As themselves are void of all manner of Learning, so are they wary to keepe out all meanes that might bring any in : as fearing to have their ignorance and vngodlineffe discouered. To that purpose they have perswaded the Emperors, that it would breed Innouation, and sow danger to their State, to have any nouelty of Learning come within the Realme. Wherein they fay but truth, for that a man of spirit and vinderflanding, beloed by Learning and liberall Education, can hardly indure a tyrannicall Gouernment. Some yeeres past in the other Emperours time, there came a Presse and Letters out of Polonia, to the Citie of Merke, where a Printing House was 40 fet vp, with great liking and allowance of the Emperour him elee. Bu: not long after, the house was let on fire in the night time, and the Presse and Letters quite burnt up, as was thought by the procurement of the Clergie-men.

Their Priests (whom they call Papaes) are made by the Bishops, without any great tryall for Priests. worthinesse of gifts, before they admit them, or Ceremonies in their admission : laue that their heads are shorne (not shauen, for that they like not) about an hand breadth or more in the crowne, and that place anointed with Oyle by the Bishop: who in his admission putteth upon the Priest, fift his Surplesse, and then fetterha white Crosse on his brest of Silke, or some other matter, which he is to weare eight dayes, and no more : and fogueth him authoritie to say and fing in the Church, and to administer the Sacraments.

They are men veterly vulearned, which is no maruell, for as much 25 their Makers, the Bi-They are men veterity vincarines, without a managery of the qualitie, and make no farther vie at all of those themselues (as before was faid) are cleere of that qualitie, and make no farther vie at all of those themselves. any kind of Learning, no not of the Scriptures themselves, save to reade and to sing them. Their ordinary charge and function is to lay the Lyturgie, to administer the Sacraments after their manner, to keepe and decke their Idols, and to doe the other Ceremonies vivall in their Churches. Their number is great because their Townes are parted into many small Parishes, without any diffretion for dividing them into competent numbers of Housholds, and people for a just Congregation : as the manner in all places where the meanes is neglected, for increasing of knowledge, and instruction towards God. Which cannot well be had, where by meanes of an vnequall partition of the people, and Parishes, there followeth a want and vnequalitie of 60 flipend for a fufficient Ministery.

For their Priests, it is lawfull to marry for the first time. But if the first Wife dye, a second The Roge. he cannot take, but he must lose his Priest-hood, and his living withill. The reason they make Priest can out of that place of Saint Paul to Timothy 1.3.2. not well waterflood, thinking that to bee fpo. marry but ken of diners Wines successively, that the Apostle speaketh of at one and the same time. If hee once

will needs marrie againe after his first wife is dead, he is no longer called Papa, but Rospapa, or Priest quendam. This maketh the Priests to make much of their Wines, who are accounted as the Matrones, and of best reputation among the women of the Parish.

For the stipend of the Priest, their manner is not to pay him any tenths of Corne, or ought elfe : but he must stand at the deuotion of the people of his Parish, and make vp the Incommes elle : out he must haus at the usualists the can, by Offerings, Shrifts, Maringes, Burials Direct towards his maintenance, 6 well as hee can, by Offerings, Shrifts, Maringes, Burials Direct and Prayers for the dead and the lining (which they call Molana.) For befides their publike Seruice within their Churches, their manner is for euery private man to have a Prayer laid for him by the Prieft, vpon any occasion of businesse whatsoeuer, whether he ride, goe, hile, plough, or what source else he doth. Which is not framed according to the occasion of his businesse, but 10 at randome, being some of their ordinary and vsuall Church-prayers. And this is thought to bee more holy, and effectuall, if it be repeated by the Priests mouth, rather then by his owne. They haue a custome besides to solemnize the Saints day, that is, Patrone to their Church once every yeere. What time all their Neighbours of their Countrey and Parishes about, come in to have Prayers faid to that Saint for themselues, and their friends : and so make an Offering to the Priest for his paines. This Offering may yeeld them some ten pounds a yeere, more or lesse, as the Patrone or Saint of that Church is of credit and estimation among them: The manner is on this day (which they keepe Anniuersary for the Priest, to hire divers of his Neighbour Priests to helpe him : as having more Dishes to dresse for the Saint, then he can well turne his hand vnto. They vie besides to visit their Parishioners houses, with Holy Water, and Perfume, com- 20 monly once a quarter: and so hauing sprinkled, and becemed the goodman and his Wife, with the rest of their houshold, and houshold stuffe, they receive some Denotion or less, as the man is of abilitie. This and the rest layd altogether, may make vp for the Priest towards his maynte. nance, about thirty or forty Rubbels a yeere : whereof he payeth the tenth part to the Bishop of the Diocesse.

The Priefts maintenance.

Their Priefts

The Pape or Prieft is knowne by his long Tufts of Haire, hanging downe by his Eares, his Gowne with a broad Cape, and a walking staffe in his hand. For the rest of his Habit , heeis apparelled like the common fort. When he fayth the Lyturgie or Seruice, within the Church, hee hath on him his Surpleffe, and fometimes his Coape, if the day bee more Solemne. They haue besides their Papaes or Priests, their Churmapapaes (as they call them) that is, Black Priess: that may keepe their Benesices, though they be admitted Friers withall within some Monastee rie. They seeme to be the very same that were called Regular Priests in the Popish Church Ynder the Priest, is a Deacon in euery Church, that doth nothing but the Office of a Parish Clerke. As for their Protopapaes, or Arch-priefts, and their Arch-deacons (that are next in election to be their Protopopas ) they ferue onely in the Cathedrall Churches.

Friers.

Of Friers they have an infinite rabble farre greater then in any other Countrey, where Popety is professed. Euery Citie, and good part of the Countrey, swarmeth full of them. For they have wrought (as the Popish Friers did by their Supersition and Hypocrisie) that if any part of the Realme be better and sweeter then other, there standeth a Friery or a Monastery dedicated to some Saint.

The number of them is so much the greater, not onely for that it is augmented by the Superfittion of the Countrey, but because the Friers life is the fafest from the Oppressions, and Exactions, that fall vpon the Commons. Which caufeth many to put on the Friers Weed, as the best Armour to beare off such blowes. Besides such as are voluntary, there are divers that are forced to shire themselves Friers, vpon some displeasure. These are for the most part of the chiefe Nobility. Diners take the Monafteries as a place of Sanctuary, and there become Friers, toanoyde some punishment, that they had deserued by the Lawes of the Realme. For if hee geta Monaftery ouer his head, and there put on a Coole before hee bee attached, it is a protection to him for euer against any Law, for what crime soeuer : except it be for Treason. But this Promso goeth withall, that no mancommeth there, (except fuch as are commanded by the Emperour to 50 be received) but he giveth them Lands, or bringerh his stocke with him, and putteth it into the common Treasury. Some bring 2000. Rubbels, and some more. None is admitted under three or foure hundred.

The manner of their Admission is after this fort. First, the Abbot strippeth him of all his Secular or ordinary Apparell. Then he putteth upon him next to his skinne, a white flamell shirt, with a long Garment ouer it downe to the ground, girded vnto him with a broad Leather Belt. His vpper-most Garment is a Weed of Garras, or Say, for colour and fashion, much like to the upper Weed of a Chimney-sweeper. Then is his crowne shorne a hand breadth, or more close to the very skinne, and thefe, or like words pronounced by the Abbot, whiles hee clippeth his haire: As these haires are clipped of, and taken from thy head; so now we take thee, and separate thee 60 cleane from the World, and worldly things, &c. This done, hee anointeth his crowne with Oyle, and putteth on his Coole : and so taketh him in among the Fraternitie. They yow perpetual Chastitie, and Abstinence from flesh.

Besides , their Lands (that are very great) they are the greatest Merchants in the whole

Countrey, and deale for all manner of Commodities. Some of their Monasteries dispend in Lands, one thousand, or two thousand Rubbels a yeere. There is one Abbey called Troits, that hath in Lands and Fees, the summe of 100000. Rubbels, or Markes a yeere. It is built in manner of a Castle, walled round about, with great Ordnance planted on the wall, and contavneth within it a large breadth of ground, and great varietie of building. There are of Friers within it, (besides their Officers, and other Seruants) about seuen hundred. The Empresse that now is, hath many Vowes to Saint Sergins, that is Patrone there : to intreate him to make her fruitfull, as having no children by the Emperour her Husband. Lightly euery yeere shee goeth on Pilgrimage to him from the Mosko, on foot, about eighty English miles, with five or fixe thousand women attending vpon her, all in blue Liveries, and foure thousand Souldiers for her Guard. But Saint Sergins hath not yet heard her Prayers, though (they fay) hee hath a speciall gift and facultie that way.

What Learning there is among their Friers, may be knowne by their Bishops, that are the What Learning unter a smong user the state of them at the Citie of Flood day where The Friest choice men out of all their Monatteries I talked with one of them at the Citie of Flood day where Learning. (to try his skill) I offered him a Ruffe Testament, and turned him to the first Chapter of Saint Matthews Gotpell. Where hee beganne to reade in very good order. I asked him first what part of Scripture it was, that he had read? he answered, that he could not well tell. How many Euangelists there were in the New Testament? He faid he knew not. How many Apostles there were! He thought there were twelve. How he should be faved! Whereunto he answered me with a piece of Russe Doctrine, that he knew not whether he should be faued, or no: but if God would Poshallowate him, or gravise him so much, as to saue him, so it was , he would bee glad of it: if not, what remedy. I asked him, why hee shoare himselfe a Frier? Hee answered, because he would eate his Bread with peace. This is the Learning of the Friers of Rassia, which though it be not to be measured by one, yet partly it may bee ghessed by the ignorance of this

man, what is in the reft.

They have also many Nunneries, whereof some may admit none but Noblemens Widowes. Nunneries and Daughters, when the Emperour meaneth to keepe them vnmarryed, from continuing the bloud or stocke, which if he would have extinguished. To speake of the life of their Friers, and Nunnes, it needs not, to those that know the hypocrisie, and vncleannesse of that Cloy-3C fier-brood. The Ruffe himselfe (though otherwise addicted to all Superstition) speaketh so fouly of it, that it must needs gaine silence of any modest man.

Besides these, they have certayne Eremites, (whom they call Holymen) that are like to those Eremites. Granosophifts, for their life and behauiour : though farre vnlike for their Knowledge , and Learning. They vie to goe starke naked, saue a clout about their middle, with their haire hanging long, and wildly about their shoulders, and many of them with an Iron coller, or chaine about their neckes, or midst, even in the very extremitie of Winter. These they take as Prophets, and Strange hards men of great Holinesse, gining them aliberty to speake what they hist, without any control- acise, ment, though it beeof the very highest himselfe. So that if hee reprooue any openly, in what fort foeuer, they answere nothing, but that it is Po gracum, that is, for their finnes. And if 40 any of them take some piece of sale ware from any mans shop, as he passeth by, to give where he lift, hee thinketh himselfe much beloued or God, and much beholding to the holy Man, for ta-

Of this kind there are not many, because it is a very hard and cold Profession, to goe naked in Ruffia, specially in Winter. Among other at this time, they have one at Marke, that walketh naked about the streets, and inueigheth commonly against the State, and Gouernment, especially against the Godonoes, that are thought at this time to be great Oppressors of that Commony again. Another there was, that dyed not many yeeres agoe (whom they called Bafileo) that Bafileo the Erewould take upon him to reproue the old Emperour, for all his crueltie, and oppressions, done towards his people. His body they have translated of late into a sumptious Church, neere the Em-SC perours Houle in Maste, and have canonized him for a Saint, Many Miracles he doth there (for io the Friers make the people to beleeue) and many Offerings are made vnto him, not only by the people, but by the chiefe Nobilitie, and the Emperour, and Empresse themselves, which vihe that Church with great Denotion. But this last yeere, at my being at Moske, this Saint had ill lucke in working his Miracles. For a lame man that had his limines restored (as it was pre- Lame Miracletended by him) was charged by a woman that was familiar with him (beeing then fallen out) that he halted but in the day time, and could leape metrily when hee came home at night. And that he had intended this matter fixe yeeres before. Now hee is put into a Monastery, and there rayleth vpon the Friers, that hired him to have this counterfeit Miricle practifed vpon him. Befides this difgrace, a little before my comming from thence, there were eight flaine with in 60 his Church by hire in a Thunder. Which caused his Bels (that were tingling before all day and night long as in triumph of the Miracles wrought by Bajileo their Saint) to ring somewhat softhigh tong as in training to the states wronger by same to the was another of great Nichola the account at Pleike, (called Niebola of Pleike) that did much good, when this Emperours Father Eremite-

came to facke the Towne, vpon supition of their revolting and Rebellion against him. The Em-

perour, after he had faluted the Eremite, at his lodging, fent him a reward. And the Holy man to requite the Emperour, sent him a piece of raw Flesh, being then their Lent time. Which the Emperour feeing, bid one to tell him, that he maruelled that the Holy man would offer him flesh to eate in the Lent, when it was forbidden by order of holy Church. And doch Euske (which is as much to fay, as lacke) thinke (quoth Nicola) that it is vinlawich to cate a piece of beatle fleih in Lent and not to eate up fo much mans fleih, as he hath done stready. So threatning the Emperour with a prophecy of some hard aduenture to come vpon him, except he lett murdring of his people, and departed the Towne : he faued a great many mens lives at that time.

This maketh the people to like very well of them, because they are as Pasquils, to note their great mens faults, that no man else dare speake of. Yet it falleth our semetime, that for this 10 rude libertie, which they take vpon them, after a counterfeit manner, by imi-ation of Prophets. they are made away in fecret: as was one or two of them, in the last Emperours time, for be-

ing ouer-bold in speaking against his government.

Cb49. 22. Of their Lyturgic, or form of Churchferuice, and their manner of admini firing the Sacrameats. Their morning Seruice.

Their morning Service they call, Zautrans, that is, Mattint. It is done in this order. The Priest entreth into the Church with his Descon following him. And when he is come to the middle of the Church, he beginneth to fay with a loude voyce : Blastaney Uladika (that 18) Bleffe vs heavenly Paftor : meaning of Christ. Then hee addeth, In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the bely Ghost one very God in Trinitie: and Afpody pomelui, or, Lord bane mersy vpon vs., Lord have mercy upon vs., Lord have mercy upon vs. repeated three times, This done, 28 he marcheth on towards the Chancell, or Santium Santtorum, (as they vieto call it) and io entreth into the Scharfuer Dwere, or the Heavenly Doore: which no man may enter into, but the Pricti onely. Where standing at the Altar, or Table ( fet neere to the upper wall of the Chancell) he fayeth the Lords Prayer, and then againe Afrody pomelui, Cr, Lord have merey upon vi, Lord have mercy upon vs, &c. pronounced twelve times. Then praifed be the Trimitie, the Father, the Sonne, and boly Ghost, for ener and ener. Whereto the Deacons, and Peopletay, Amen. Next after, the Priest addeth the Plalmes for that day, and beginneth with, O come let vs worship, and fall downe before the Lord, &c, and therewithall himfelfe, with the Deacons, and People, all turne themselves towards their Idols, or Images, that hang on the wall, and croffing themselves, bow downe three times, knocking their heads to the very ground. After this, he readeth the Ten Commandements, and Athanafius Creed, out of the Seruice Booke. This being done, the Deacon that standeth without the Heasenly Doore, or Chancell, readeth

Legend.

a piece of a Legend, out of a written Booke, (for they have it not in Print) of fome Saints life, miracles, &c. This is divided into many parts, for every day in the yeere, and is read by them with a plaine finging note, not valike to the Popish tune, when they fung their Gospels. After all this (which reacheth to an houre and an halfe, or two houres of length) he addeth certaine fet Collects, or Prayers upon that which he hath read out of the Legend before: and so endeth his Seruice. All this while stand burning before their Idols , a great many of Waxe candles, (whereof iome are of the bigneffe of a mans waste) vowed, or enloyned by penance, vpon the people of the Parish.

Candles.

About nine of the clocke in the morning, they have another Service, called Obeidna, (or Compline) much after the order of the Populh Service, that bare that name. If it be some High or Festivali day, they furnish their Service beside, with Blessed bee the Lord God of Ifrael, &c. and Wee praise thee, O God, &c. fung with a more folemne and curious note.

Their enening Service, is called Vecberna, where the Priest beginneth with Blaslane, Vladka, as he did in the morning, and with the Pfalmes appointed for the Vecberna. Which being read, he fingeth, My (oule doeth magnific the Lord, &c. And then the Priest, Deacons, and People, all with one voice, fing, Afpody pomelui, or Lord have mercy upon vs, thirty timestogether. Whereunto the Boyes that are in the Church , answere all with one voice , rolling it up so fast; as their lips can goe : Very, Very, Very, Very, or, Praife, Praife, Praife, &c. thirty times together, 30 with a very strange noise. Then is read by the Priest, and vpon the Holidayes sung, the first Pfalme : Bleffed is the man, &c. And in the end of it , is added , Allelnia, repeated ten times. The next in order is some part of the Gosp Il read by the Priest, which hee endeth with Alleluia repeated three times. And so having said a Collect in remembrance of the Saint of that day, hee endeth his eucning Service. All this while the Priest standeth aboue at the Altar, or high Table, within the Chancell, or Santium Santiorum, whence hee never moveth all the Seruice time. The Deacon, or Deacons (which are many in their Cathedrall Churches) it and without the Chancell by the Scharfuer Dware, or Heanenly Doore: for within they may notbe ieene all the Service time, though other wife their Office is to sweepe and keepe it, and to set up the Waxe candles before their Idols. The people stand together the whole Seruice time in the body of the Church, and some in the Church Porch, for Piew, or Seat they have none within their

Baptiline.

The Sacrament of Baptisme they administer after this manner. The child is brought vnto the Church (and this is done within eight dayes after it is borne ) if it bee the child of some

Nobleman, it is brought with great pompe in a rich Sled or Wagon, with Chaires and Cushions of cloth of Gold, and fuch like sumptuous shew of their best furniture. When they are come to the Church , the Priest standeth ready to receive the child within the Church Porch , with his Tub of water by him. And then beginneth to declare vnto them, that they have brought a little Infidell to be made a Christian, &c. This ended, he teacheth the Witnesles (that are two or three) in a certaine fet forme out of his Booke, what their dutie is in bringing vp the child after he is baptifed, vz. That he must be taught to know God, and Christ the Saujour. And because God is of great majestie, and wee must not presume to come vnto him without Mediators (as the manner is when we make any funt to an Emperour, or great Prince) therefore they must to teach him what Saints are the best, and chiefe Mediators, &c. This done, he commandeth the Deuill in the name of God after a conjuring manner, to come out of the water; and so after certaine Prayers he plungeth the child thrite ouer head and eares. For this they hold to bee a point necessary, that no part of the child be vndipped in the water.

The words that beare with them the forme of Baptilme vttered by the Prieft, when he dippeth in the child, are the very same that are prescribed in the Gospell, and vsed by vs. vz. In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the holy Ghoff. For that they hould alter the forme of the words, and fay, by the boly Ghost, (as I have heard that they did ) following certaine Heretikes of the Greeke Church, I tound to be vntrue, as well by report of them that have beene often at their Baptismes, as by their Booke of Lyiurgie it selfe, wherein the order of Baptisme

20 is precifely fet downe.

When the childe is baptifed, the Priest layeth Oyle and Salt tempered together upon the Oyle and Salt; forehead, and both ides of his face, and then voon his mouth, drawing it along with his finger ouer the childs lips (as did the Popith Prietts) faying withall certaine Prayers to this effect: that God will make him a good Christian, &c. all this is done in the Church Porch. Then is the child (as being now made a Christian, and meet to be received within the Church Doore) carried into the Church, the Priest going before, and there he is presented to the chiefe Idoll of Presented. the Church, being layd on a Cushion before the feet of the Image, by it (as by the Mediator) to be commended vnto God. If the child be ticke, or weake (specially in the Winter) they wie to make the water luke warme. After Baptisme the manner is to cut off the haire from the childs Cutting off 30 head, and having wrapped it within a piece of Waxe to lay it vp as a Relique or Monument in haire. a fecret place of the Church,

This is the manner of their Baptisme, which they account to be the best and perfectest forme. As they doe all other parts of their Religion, received (as they fay), by tradition from the best Church, meaning the Greeke. And therefore they will take great paines to make a Profelyte, or Profelyte. Convert, either of an Infidell, or of a forreine Christian, by rebaptiling him after the Ruffe man- paines. ner. When they take any Tartar prisoner, commonly they will offer him life, with condition to be baptifed. And yet they perswade very few of them to redeeme their life so : because of the naturall hatred the Tartar beareth to the Ruffe, and the opinion he hath of his falhood, and

iniuffice. The yeere after Mosko was fired by the Chrim Tartar, there was taken a Discommerfey, 40 one of the chiefe in that exploit with three hundred Tartars more: who had all their lives of- Tartars choose fered them if they would be baptifed after the Ruffe manner. Which they refuled all to doe, to die rather with many reproches against those that perswaded them. And so being carried to the River then turne Mosko (that runneth through the Citie) they were all baptifed after a violent manner : being thrust downe with a knock on the head into the water, through an hole made in the Ice for that purpose. Of Lieflanders that are captines, there are many that take on them this second Ruffe Rebaptifings

Baptisme to get more libertie, and somewhat beides towards their living, which the Emperour ordinarily vieth to give them.

Of Englishmen fince they frequented the Countrey there was never any found, that so much forgot God, his Faith, and Countrey, as that he would be content to be baptifed Ruffe, for any respect of feare, preferment, or other meanes whatsoeuer: faue onely Richard Relph, that fol-50 lowing before an vngodly trade, by keeping a Caback (against the order of the Countrey) and being put off from that trade, and spoiled by the Emperours Officers of that which he had, entred himfelfe this last yeere into the Ruffe Profession : and to was rebaptiled, living now asmuch an Idolater, as before he was a Rioter, and unthrifty person.

Such as thus receiue the Ruffe Baptilime , are first carried into some Monasterie to bee instru-Eted there in the doctrine and ceremonies of the Church. Where they vie these ceremonies. First, they put him into a new and fresh sute of apparell, made after the Russe fashion, and set a Coronet, or (in Summer) a Garland upon his head. Then they anoint his head with Oyle, and put a Waxe candle light into his hand: and so pray over him foure times a day, the space 60 of feuen dayes. All this while he is to abstaine from fielh, and white meats. The feuen dayes being ended, he is purified and washed in a Bath-stoue, and so the eight day hee is brought into the Church, where he is taught by the Friers how to behaue himselfe in presence of their Idols, by ducking downe, knocking of the head, croffing himselfe, and such like gestures, which are the greatest part of the Ruffe Religion.

The admini-Bring of the

The Sacrament of the Lords Supper they receive but once a yeere, in their great Lent time, a little before Easter. Three at the most are admitted at one time, and neuer aboue. The manner ftring of the Lords Supper, of their communicating, is thus. First, they contesse themselves of all their sinnes to the Priest (whom they call) their ghofily Father. Then they come to the Church, and are called up to the Communion Table, that flandeth like an Altar, a little remoued from the vpper end of the Church, after the Duteb manner. Heere first they are asked of the Priest, whether they hee cleane or no, that is, whether they have never a finne behind that they left vnconfessed. If they anfwer, No, they are taken to the Table. Where the Priest beginneth with certayne vsuall Pravers, the Communicants standing in the meane while with their armes folded one within another, like Penitentiaries or Mourners. When these prayers are ended, the Priest taketh a Spoone 10 and filleth it full of claret Wine. Then hee putteth into it a small piece of Bread, and tempereth them both together : and so delivereth them in the spoone to the Communicants, that fland in order, speaking the vsuall words of the Sacrament. Eate this, &c. Drinke this, &c. both at one time without any paule.

Communion

After that hee delivereth them againe Bread by it selfe, and then Wine carded together with alittle warme water, to represent Bloud more rightly (as they thinke) and the water withall, that flowed out of the fide of Chrift. Whiles this is in doing the Communicants vnfold their armes. And then folding them againe, follow the Priest thrice round about the Communion table, and so returne to their places againe. Where having sayd certayne other prayers, heedifmiffeth the Communicants, with charge to bee merrie, and to cheere vp themselves for the seuen 20 dayes next following. Which being ended, hee enjoyneth them to fait for it as long time after. Which they vie to observe with very great denotion, eating nothing else but Bread and Salt, except a little Cabbage, and some other Herbe or Root, with water or quaste Mead for

This is their manner of administring the Sacraments. Wherein what they differ from the institution of Christ, and what Ceremonies they have added of their owne, or rather borrowed of the Greekes, may eafily bee noted.

Chap. 23. Of the Do-Arine of the Ruffe Church. & what errors it noldeth, lowing of certaine parts of the Canonical

Heir chiefest errours in matter of Faith I finde to bee these. First, concerning the Word of God it selfe they will not read publikely certayne Bookes of the Canonicall Scripture, as 30 the bookes of Moles : specially the foure last, Exedus, Leutiens, Numeri, and Denteronomie, which they say are all made disauthentique, and put out of vie by the comming of Christ: as not able to difference the difference betwixt the Morall and the Ceremonial Law. The bookes of the Prophets they allow of, but reade them not publikely in their Churches, for the fame reason : because they were but directers vnto Christ, and proper (as they say) to the Nation of the Jems. Onely the Booke of Pfalmes they have in great estimation, and sing and say them daily in their Churches. Of the New Testament they allow and reade all, except the Renelation: which therefore they reade not (though they allow it) because they understand it not, neither have the like occasion, to know the fulfilling of the Prophecies contayned within it, concerning especially the Apostacie of the Antichristian Church, as have the Westerne Churches. Notwithstanding, 40 they have had their Autobrifts of the Greeke Church, and may finde their ownefalling off, and the punishments for it by the Turks invasion in the Prophecies of that Booke, Secondly, (which is the fountayne of the rest of all their corruptions both in Doctrine and

2. Traditions equallto the holy Scripture.

₹.The Church to have foueraigne autho-Fitie in inter. preting the 4. The holy Ghoft to proceed from the Father onely. 6. Christ not fole Mediator

Images.

Ceremonies) they hold with the Papifts, that their Church Traditions are of equal authoritie with the written Word of God. Wherein they preferre themselues before other Churches: affirming that they have the true and right Traditions, delivered by the Apostles to the Greeke Church, and fo vnto them.

Thirdly, that the Church (meaning the Greeke, and specially the Patriarch and his Synod, as the head of the reft) having a soueraigne Authoritie to interpret the Scriptures, and that all are bound to hold that Interpretation, as found and authentique.

Fourthly, concerning the Divine nature and the three Persons, in the one substance of God, that the holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father onely, and not from the Sonne.

Fiftly, about the office of Christ, they hold many foule errours, and the same almost as doth the Popish Church : namely, that hee is the sole Mediatour of redemption, but not of intercession. Their chiefe reason (if they bee talked withall) for defence of this errour, is that vnapt and foolish comparison, betwixt God, and a Monarch or Prince of this world, that must bee sued vnto by Mediatours about him: wherein they give speciall preferment to some aboue others, as to the bleffed Virgin whom they call Prochefte, or vndefiled, and Saint Nicolas, whom they call Scora his 300. Angels pomofaick, or the Speedy belper, and fay, that hee hath three hundred Angels of the chiefeft appointed by God to attend upon him. This hath brought them to an horrible excesse of Idolatrie, af- 60 ter the groffest and prophanest manner, giving vnto their Images all religious worship of Prayer, Thankelgiuing, Offerings and Adoration, with proftrating and knocking their heads to the ground before them, as to God himfelfe. Which because they doe to the Picture, not to the portraiture of the Saint, they fay they worship not an Idoll, but the Saint in his Image, and so ofCHAP. I. Russe opinions of Saluation and Damnation. Abstinence Marriage.

fend not God : fergetting the Commandement of God, that forbiddeth to make the Image or likenesse of any thing, for any Religious worship, or vie whatsoeuer. Their Church walls are verie full of them, richly hanged and fet foorth with Pearle and Stone, vpon the smooth Table, Though some also they have embossed, that slicke from the board almost an inch outwards. They call them Chudonodites, or their Miracle workers : and when they prouide them to fet up in their Churches, in no cale they may fay, that they have bought the Image, but Exchenged money for it.

Sixtly, for the meanes of Iudification, they agree with the Papifts, that it is not by Faith one. 6. Iudification ly apprehending Christ, but by their Workes also. And that Open operations, or the worke for the by worker.

10 worke fake, must needs please God. And therefore they are all in their numbers of Pravers. Fafts, Vowes, and Offerings to Saints, Almes deeds, Croffings and fuch like, and carrie their numbring Beads about with them continually, as well the Emperour and his Nobilitie, as the common people, not onely in the Church, but in all other publike places, specially at any set or solemne meeting, as in their Fasts, law Courts, common Consultations, entertaynment of Ambalfadours, and fuch like.

Secentrally, they say with the Papifts, that no man can be affured of his faluation, till the fen- 7. Saluation tence be passed at the day of Judgement.

Eightly, they vie auricular Confession, and thinke they are purged by the very action from 6 8. Auricular many finnes, as they confesse by name, and in particular to the Priest.

Ninthly, they hold three Sacraments, of Baptifme, the Lords Supper, and the last Anothing or 9. Three Sa-Unction. Yet concerning their Sacrament of extreame Vnction, they hold it not so necessarie craments. to faluation as they doe Baptisme, but thinke it a great curse and punishment of God, if any dye without it.

Tenthly, they thinke there is a necessitie of Baptilme, and that all are condemned that dye that die wish without it.

Eleventh, they rebaptife as many Christians (not being of the Grocke Church) as they convert 11. Anabapto their Raffe profession : because they are divided from the true Church, which is the Greeke, time.

Twelfth, they make a difference of Meates and Drinkes, accounting the vie of one to be more 12. Difference

30 holy then of another. And therefore in their fet Fasts they forbeare to cate fielh, and white of meates. meates (as wee call them) after the manner of the Popish superstition : which they observe so firefly, and with such blinde denotion, as that they will rather die, then eate one bit of Flesh. Egges or such like, for the health of their bodies in their extreame sicknesse. Thirteenth, they hold Marriage to bee volawfull for all the Clergie men, except the Priefts 12, Marriage

onely, and for them also after the first Wife, as was sayd before. Neither doe they well allow of for some perit in Lay-men after the second marriage. Which is a pretence now vied against the Emperours sons valantall onely Brother, a childe of fixe yeeres old : who therefore is not Prayed for in their Churches, (as their manner is otherwise for the Princes bloud) because hee was borne of the fixt marriage, and so not legitimate. This charge was given to the Priests by the Emperour himselfe, by procure-40 ment of the Godones : who make him beleeve, that it is a good policie to turne away the liking of the people from the next successour.

Many other falle opinions they have in matter of Religion. But these are the chiefe, which they hold, partly by meanes of their traditions ( which they have received from the Greeke Church) but specially by ignorance of the holy Scriptures. Which notwithstanding they have in the Polonian tongue, ( that is all one with theirs fome few words excepted) yet few of them reade them with that godly care which they ought to doe : neither have they (if they would) Bookes sufficient of the old and new Testament for the common people, but of their Lyturgie onely, or Booke of common service, whereof there are great numbers. Which notwithflanding it is not to bee doubted, but that having the Word of God in some fort (though without the or-50 dinarie meanes to attaine to a true fenfe and understanding of it) God hath also his number among

them. As may partly appeare by that which a Ruffe at Moske fayd in fecret to one of my Seruants, speaking against their Images and other superstitions : That God had given vnto England light to day, and might give it to morrow (if hee pleased) to them.

As for any Inquintion or proceeding against men for matter of Religion, I could heare of Inquisition. none : saue a few yeeres since against one man and his wife, who were kept in a close Prison the space of eight and twentie yeeres, till they were over-growne into a deformed fashion, for their hayre, nayles, colour of countenance, and such like, and in the end were burned at Meske, in a small House set on fire. The cause was kept secret, but like it was for some part of truth in matter of Religion : though the people were made to beleeue by the Priests and Friers, that they 60 held some great and damnable Heresie.

He manner of making and folemnizing their Marriages, is different from the manner of o- Otthe manner A ther Countries. The man ( though hee neuer faw the woman before) is not permitted to of tokennihaue any fight of her all the time of his wooing : which hee doth not by himfelfe, but by his Marriages.

Mother

Mother or some other ancient woman of his kinne or acquaintance. When the liking is taken (as well by the Parents as by the parties themselves, for without the knowledge and confent of the Parents, the contract is not lawfull) the Fathers on both fides, or fuch as are to them in flead of Fathers, with their other chiefe friends, haue a meeting and conference about the downie, which is commonly very large after the abilitie of the parents : fo that you shall have a Market man (as they call them) give a thousand Rubbels, or more with his Daughter.

The manner

454

As for the man it is neuer required of him, nor standeth with their custome to make any joyn-The manner of indowment ter in recompence of the dowrie. But in case hee have a Child by his Wife, shee enjoyeth a third deale after his deceale. If he have two Children by her or more, the is to have a courtefie more, at deale after his accease. If he made at the depart without lifes by his wife, the in returned 10 home to her friends without any thing at all, laue onely her dowrie : if the husband leave fo much behind him in goods. When the agreement is made concerning the dowrie, they figue Bonds one to the other, as well for the payment of the dowrie, as the performing of the Marie age by a certayne day. If the woman were never married before, her Father and friends are bound besides to assure her a Maiden. Which breedeth many brabbles and quarrels at Law, if the man take any conceit concerning the behaulour and honestie of his wife.

Thus the contract being made, the parties begin to fend tokens the one to the other, the Woman first, then afterwards the Man, but yet see not one another till the Marriage bee solemnized. On the Eue before the marriage day, the Bride is carryed in a Collimago, or Coach, or in a Sled (if it bee winter) to the Bridegroomes house, with her marriage Apparell and Bed-flead so with her, which they are to lye in. For this is euer prouided by the Bride, and is commonly verie faire, with much cost bestowed vpon it. Heere she is accompanied all that night by her Mother and other women : but not welcommed, nor once feene by the Bridegroome himfelfe.

Ceremonies in Marriages.

Ring.

Loafe,

When the time is come to have the marriage folemnized, the Bride hath put vpon hera kinde of Hood, made of fine Knit-worke or Lawne, that couereth her head, and all her body downe to the middle. And so accompanied with her friends, and the Bridegroome with his, they goe to Church all on Horsebacke, though the Church be neare hand, and themselves but of very meane degree. The words of contract and other ceremonies in folemnizing the Marriage, are much after the order, and with the same words that are vsed with vs : with a Ring also given to the Bride. Which being put on, and the words of contract pronounced : the Brides hand is deliuered 30 into the hand of the Bridegroome, which standeth all this while on the one side of the Altaror Table, and the Bride on the other. So the marriage knot being knit by the Prieft, the Bride commeth to the Bridegroome (Randing at the end of the altar or table) and falleth downe at his feet, knocking her Head voon his Shooe, in token of her subjection and obedience. And the Bridegroome againe, casteth the lappe of his Gowne or vpper garment ouer the Bride, in token of his dutie to protect and cherish her ...

Then the Bridegroome and Bride, standing both together at the Tables end, commeth first the Father and the other friends of the Bride, and bow themselves downe low to the Bridegroome : and so likewise his friends bow themselves to the Bride, in token of affinitie and love euer after betwixt the two kindreds. And withall, the Father of the Bridegroome offereth to 40 the Priest a loafe of Bread, who delivereth it straight againe to the Father and other friends of the Bride, with attestation before God and their Idols, that hee deliner the downe wholly and truely at the day appointed, and hold lose ever after, one kindred with another. Whereupon they breake the Loafe into pieces, and cate of it, to testifie their true and fincere meanings, for performing of that charge, and thenceforth to become as graines of one Loafe, or men of

These ceremonies being ended, the Bridegroome taketh the Bride by the hand, and so they goe on together with their friends after them towards the Church porch. Where meet them certaine with pots and cups in their hands, with Mead and Ruffe Wine. Whereof the Bridegroome taketh first a Charke, or little cup full in his hand, and drinketh to the Bride : who opening her 50 Hood or Vale below, and putting the Cup to her mouth underneath it (for being feene of the Bridegroome) pledgeth him againe. Thus returning all together from the Church, the Bridegroome goeth not home to his owne, but to his Fathers house, and shee likewise to hers, where either entertayne their friends apart. At the entring into the Houle, they vie to fling Corne out of the windowes vpon the Bridegroome and Bride, in token of plentie and fruitfulnesse to bee

Silence:

Corne,

When the Eueuing is come, the Bride is brought to the Bridegroomes Fathers house, and there lodgeth that night, with her Vayle or couer still ouer her head. All that night she may not speake one word (for that charge shee receiveth by tradition from her Mother, and other Matrons her friends) that the Bridegroome must neither heare, nor see her, till the day after the 60 marriage. Neither three dayes after, may she bee heard to speake, saue certaine few words at the Table in a fet forme, with great manners and recerence to the Bridegroome: If sheebehaue herfelfe otherwise, it is a great prejudice to her credit and life euer after : and will highly bee diffiked of the Bridegroome himfelte.

After the third day, they depart to their owne, and make a Feast to both their friends together. The marriage day, and the whole time of their festivall, the Bridegroome hath the honour to be called Moloday Knez, or young Duke, and the Bride Moloday Knezay, or young Dutcheffe.

CHAP.I. Croffe Denotion ; Hallowing of Rivers ; Holy-water drinke.

In lining with their wines, they shew themselves to be but of a barbarous condition : vsing them as servants, rather then wives. Except the Noble-women, which are, or seeme to bee of more estimation with their hushands, then the rest of meaner fort. They have this foule abuse, contrary to good order, and the Word of God it selfe, that vpon dislike of his wife, or other cause what socuer, the man may goe into a Monasterie and shire himselfe a Frier, by pretence of deuotion : and fo leave his wife to shift for her selfe so well as shee can.

"He other Ceremonies of their Church, are many in number : especially, the abuse about I the figne of the Croffe, which they fet vp in their high wayes, in the tops of their Churches, Of the other and in every doore of their houses, figuing themselves continually with it on their forcheads & Ceremonies breafs with great deuotion, as they will leeme by their out ward gesture. Which were leffe of orth. Ruste fence, if they gaue not withall that religious reuerence and worthip vnto it, which is due to Church. God onely, and vied the dumbe shew, and signing of it instead of thanksgiving, and of all the crossishood other duties which they owe vito God. When they rise in the morning, they goe commonly it crossish out in the fight of some steeple that hath a Crosse on the top; and so bowing themselves towards other stuoties 20 the Croffe, figne themselues withall on their foreheads and breafts. And this is their thankigi- ons, uing to God for their nights rest, without any word speaking, except peraduenture they say, Affody Pomelny, or Lord have mercie upon vi. When they fit downe to meat, and rife againe from it, the thankigining to God, is the croffing of their foreheads and brefts. Except it be some few that adde peraduenture a word or two of some ordinary prayer, impertinent to that purpose. When they are to give an oath for the deciding of any controversie at Law, they dee it by (wearing by the Croffe, and kiffing the feet of it, making it as God, whose name onely is to bee vied in such triall of Institute. When they enter into any house (where ever there is an Idoll hanging on the wall ) they figue themselues with the Croffe, and bow themselues to it. When they begin any worke, bee it little or much, they arme themselues first with the signe of the Crosse. 30 And this commonly is all their prayer to God, for good speed of their businesse. And thus they

ferue God with croffes, after a croffe and vaine manner : not with flanding what the Croffe of Christis, nor the power of it. And yet they thinke all strangers Christians, to be no better then Turkes in comparison of themselues ( and so they will say ) because they bow not themselues when they meet with the Croffe, nor ligne themselves with it, as the Ruffe manner is. They have Holy-water in like vie and estimation, as the Popish Church hath, But heerein Holy-water, they exceed them, in that they doe not onely hollow their Holy-water (tockes, and tubsfull of

water, but all the Rivers of the Countrey once every yeere. At Marke it is done with great Hallowing of water, but an interview the Emperour himselfe being present at it with all his Nobilitie, mar-Riners. ching through the streets towards the River of Moikes, in manner of Procession, in this order 40 as followeth, First goe two Deacons, with banners in their hands, the one of Precheffe ( or our Lady) the other of Saint Michael fighting with his Dragon. Then follow after the rest of the Deacons, and the Priests of Mosko, two and two in a ranke, with Cosps on their backes, and their Idols at their brefts, carried with girdles or flings, made fast about their necks. Next the Priests come their Bishops in their Pontificalibus : then the Friers, Monkes, and Abbots : and after the Patriarches in very tich attire, with a Ball or Sphere on the top of his Myter, to fignific his voluerfalitie ouer that Church. Last commeth the Emperour with all his Nobilitie. The whole traine is of a mile long, or more. When they are come to the Riuer, a great hole is made in the Ice, where the Market is kept of a road and a halfe broad, with a flage round about it to keepe off the presse. Then beginneth the Patriarch to say certaine prayers, and consureth so the Deuill to come out of the water; and so casting in Salt, and confing it with Frankincense, maketh the whole River to become Holy-water. The morning before, all the people of Make vic to make croffes of chaulke ouer cuery doore and window of their houses; least the Deuill being conjured out of the water, should flye into their houses,

When the Ceremonies are ended you shalsee the black Guard of the Emperors house, & then the rest of the Towne, with their pailes and buckets to take off the hallowed water for drinke, and other vies. You shall also see the women dip in their children over head and cares, and many men and women leape into it, fome naked, fome with their clothes on, when fome man would thinke his finger would freeze off, if he should but dip it into the water. When the men haue done, they bring their horfe to the Riuer to drinke of the fanctified water, and so make 60 them as holy as a horse. Their set day for the solemne action of hallowing their Rivers, is that

we call Twelfib-day. The like is done by other Bishops in all parts of the Realme. Their manner is also to giue it to their ficke in their greatest extremities thinking that it will Incir manner is anothing of the incirculation of th fonable superstition, as did the Lord Borrie his onely sonne, as my being at the Meske: whom Holy, was a



Gruellblind-

he killed (as was faid by the Physitians) by powring into him cold Holy-water, and presenrefle of uper- ting him naked into the Church, to their Saint Baffles, in the cold of Winter in an extremitie of fickeneffe.

They have an Image of Christ, which they call Nernebi, ( which signifieth as much as Made without hands) for so their Priests, and superstition withall perswadeth them it was. This in their Processions they carry about with them on high vpon a pole, enclosed within a Pixe, made like a Lanthorne, and doe reuerence to it as to a great myfferie.

Brewing with

At every brewing their manner is likewife to bring a dish of their woort to the Priest within the Church: which being hollowed by him, is powred into the brewing, and so giveth it fuch a vertue, as when they drinke of it they are feldome fober. The like they doe with the first fruits of their Corne in Haruest.

Pilm-funday.

They have another Ceremony on Palm-funday, of ancient tradition : what time the Patriarch rideth through the Morke, the Emperour himselfe holding his horse bridle, and the people crying Hofanna, and spreading their vpper garments under his horse feet. The Emperour hath of the Patriarch for his good service of that day two hundred Rubbels of standing penfion. Another pageant they have much like to this, the weeke before the Nativitie of Christ: when euery Bishop in his Cathedrall Church, setteth forth a shew of the three children in the When early bushes the Angell is made to come flying from the roofe of the Church, with great admiration of the lookers on, and many terrible flashes of fire are made with rofen, and gun-pow. der, by the Chaldeans (as they call them) that run about the Towne all the twelue dayes, dif- 10 guifed in their players coats, and make much good spore for the honor of the Bishops pageant. At the Motke, the Emperour himselfe, and the Empresse neuer faile to be at it, though it be bet the same matter plaid enery yeere, without any new invention at all.

Fafts.

Besides their fasts on Wednesdayes, and Fridayes throughout the whole yeere, (the one because they say Christ was fold on the Wednesday, the other because he suffered on the Friday) they havefoure great Fafts or Lents every yeere. The first, ( which they call their great Lent) is at the same time with ours. The second, about Mid-summer. The third, in Haruest time. The fourth, about Hallontide : which they keepe not of pollicie, but of meere superstition, Inthele great Lent, for the first weeke, they eat nothing but bread and falt, and drinke nothing but water, neither meddle with any matter of their vocation, but intend their firining and falling on 10 ly. They have also three Vigils, or Wakes in their great Lent, which they call Stoignie and the last Friday their great Vigil, as they call it. What time the whole Parish must be present in the Church, and watch from nine a clocke in the Euening, till fixe in the morning, all the while standing, saue when they fall downe and knocke their heads to their Idols, which must bee an hundred and seucntie times just through the whole night.

Vigils. Burialls.

About their burialls alfo, they have many superstitious and prophane Ceremonies : asputting within the finger of the corps, a letter to Saint Nicolas : whom they make their chiefe mediatour, and as it were the porter of heaven gates, as the Papifis doe their Peter.

In Winter time, when all is conered with snow, and the ground so hard frozen, as that no spade nor pick-axe can enter their manner is not to bury their dead, but to keepe the bodies ( fo ma- 40 ny as die all the Winter time ) in an house, in the suburbs, or out-parts of the Towne, which they call Bobsedom, that is, Gods house: where the dead bodies are pyled up together, like billets on a woodftacke, as hard with the froft as a verie ftone, till the Spring-tide come, and resolueth the frost : what time euerie man taketh his dead friend, and committeth him to the ground,

Monehs minds

They have befides their yeeres and moneths mindes for their friends departed. What time they have prayers faid over the grave by the Priest: who hath a peny ordinary for hispaines. When any dieth, they have ordinary women mourners, that come to lament for the dead partie : and frand howling over the body after a prophane and heathenish manner (sometimes in the house, sometimes bringing the body into the back-side, asking him what he wanted, and 50 what he meant to die. They bury their dead, as the party vied to goe, with coat, hofe, bootes, hat, and the rest of his apparell.

Many other vaine and imperfittious Ceremonies they have, which were long and tedious to report. By these it may appeare how farre they are fallen from the true knowledge, and practice of Christian Religion, having exchanged the Word of God for their vaine Traditions, and brought all to externall and ridiculous Ceremonies, without any regard of Spirit and Truth, which God requireth in his true worship.

The Emperours private behaviour, so much as may be, or is meet to bee knowne, is after this manner. Hee riseth commonly about source a clock in the morning. After his appar- so Of the Empe. rours domerelling and washing, in commeth his ghostly Father, or Priest of his chamber, which is named intheir tongue, Orerz Dubouna, with his Croffe in his hand, wherewith he bleffeth him, laying it first on his forchead, then voon his cheekes, or fides of his face and then offereth him the end of it to kiffe. This done, the Clerke of the Croffe (called Chreiby Deyack Profery ) bringeth

into his Chamber, a painted Image, representing the Saint for that day; for every day with into his Champer, a panieto innigo, representing an annual transport of the placeth among the His private them hath his fewerall Saint, as it were the Patrone for that day. This hee placeth among the His private that the private of the placeth among the private that the private rest of his Image Gods, wherewithall his Chamber is decked, as thicke almost as the wall can Prayer. beare, with Lampes and Waxe-candles burning before them. They are very coffly and gorgeously decked with Pearle and Precious Stone. This Image being placed before him, the Emperour heginneth to crosse himselfe after the Russe manner, hrst, on the fore-head, then on both lides of his brest, with Aspody Powelny, Powelny mena bospody, facroy mena grasnick Sybodefina; which is as much to fay, as, Helpe me, O Lord my God, Lord comfort me, defend and keepe me a Sinner from doing enil, Je. This he directeth towards the Image, or Saint for that day, whom hee 10 nameth in his Prayer, together with our Lady (whom they call Procheste) Saint Nicholas, or fome other, to whom he beareth most denotion, bowing himselfe prostrate vnto them, with

knocking his head to the very ground. Thus he continueth the space of a quarter of an houre of

Then commeth againe the Ghostly Father or Chamber Priest, with a Silver Bowle full of Holy-mater, which they call in Ruffe, Sweta Voda, and a sprinkle of Basill (as they call it) in his hand : and so all to besprinkleth first the Image Gods, and then the Emperour. This Holy-water is brought fresh every day from the Monasteries, farre and neere sent to the Emperour from the Abbot or Prior, in the name of the Saint, that is Patrone of that Monastery, as a speciall token of good will from him.

These Denotions being ended, he sendeth into the Empresse, to aske whether she hath rested in health, &c., And after a little pawfes goeth himfelfe to falute her in a middle Roome betwixt both their chambers. The Empresse lyeth a-part from him, and keepeth not one chamber, nor Table with the Emperour ordinarily, faue vpon the Eue of their Lents, or common Fafts: what time she is his ordinary Ghest at Bed and Boord. After their meeting in the morning, they goe together to their private Church or Chappell, where is faid or fung a morning Service (called Zautrana) of an house long or thereabouts. From the Church hee returneth home, and fitteth The Emperour him downe in a great chamber, to be seene and saluted by his Nobilitie, sich as are in fauour a- giuethprebout the Court. It he have to fay to any of them, or they to him, then is the time. And this is lence every ordinary, except his health, or some other occasion alter the custome,

30 About nine in the morning, he goeth to another Church within his Caftle: where is fung by Priests, and Choristers, the high Service (called Obeadna, or Complin) which commonly lasteth two houres: the Emperour in the meane-time talking commonly with some of his Councell, Nobilitie, or Captaynes, which have to fay to him, or he to them. And the Councell likewife conferre together among themselues, as if they were in their Councel-house. This ended, he returneth home, and recreateth himselfe vntill it be Dinner time.

He is ferued at his Table on this manner. First, query Dish (as it is deliuered at the Dresser) is The Emperor taffed by the Cooke, in the prefence of the high Sceward, or his Deputie. And so is received by Service whis the Gentlemen-wayters (called Shifter) and by them carryed up to the Emperours Table, the Toble.

high Steward or his Deputie going before. There it is received by the Sewer (called Eraffrey) 40 who gueth a tafte of every Dish to the Tafter, and so placeth it before the Emperour. The number of his Difhes for his ordinary Service, is about feventy: dreffed fomewhat grofly, with much Garlike, and Salt, much after the Duich manner. When hee exceedeth vpon some occasion of the day, or entertainment of some Ambassadour, hee hath many more Dislies. The Service is fent vp by two Dishes at a time, or three at the most, that he may eate it warme, first the baked, then the Roass meats, and last the Broths. In his dining chamber is another Table : where sit the chiefe of his Nobility that are about his Court, and his Ghoffly Father, or Chapleine. On the one fide of the chamber flandeth a Cubboord, or Table of Plate, very faire and rich, with a great Cifterne of Copper by it, full of Ice and Snow, wherein fland the Pots that ferue for that meale. The Taster holdeth the cup that he drinketh in all Dinner time, and delivereth it voto him with a fay, when he calleth for it. The manner is to make many Diffnes out of the Service after it is let on the Table, and to fend them to fich Noblemen and Officers as the Emperour liketh best.

And this is counted a great fauour and honour. After dinner he layeth him down to rest, where commonly he taketh three houres sleep, except he employ one of the houres to bathing, or boxing. And this cultome for sleeping after Dinner, is an ordinary matter with him, as withall the Ruffer. After his sleep, he goeth to Even-long (called Veclurua) and thence returning, for the most pare recreatesh himselfe with the Empresse till Supper time, with Iesters and Dwartes, men and women, that tumble before him, and sing many

Songs after the Ruffe manner. This is his common recreation betwixe meales that he most delights in. One other speciall recreation, is the fight with wild Beares, which are caught in Pits Bearebying. 60 or Nets, and are kept in barred Cages for that purpole, against the Emperour bee disposed to see the pastime. The fight with the Beare is on this fort. The man is turned into a Circle walled round about, where hee is to quite himfelfe fo well as hee can: for there is no way to flye out. When the Beare is turned loofe, he commeth vpon him with open mouth ; if at the first push he miffe his ayme, so that the Beare come within him, hee is in great danger. But the wilde Beare

being very scarce, hath this quality, that giveth advantage to the Hunter. His manner is, when he affayleth a man, to rife vp right on his two hinder-legs, and fo to come roaring with openmouth vpon him. And if the Hunter then can puffi right into the very breft of him betwixt his fore-legs (as commonly he will not miffe) resting the other end of their Boare-speare at the fide of his foot, and so keeping the Pike still towards the face of the Beare, hee speedeth him commonly at one blow. But many times thefe Hunters come short, and are either slaine, or milerably torne with the Teeth and Talents of the fierce Beaft. If the partie quite himselfe well in this fight with the Beare, he is carried to drinke at the Emperours Seller doore : where he drinketh himselfe drunke for the honour of Hospodare. And this is his Reward for aduenturing his life, for the Emperours pleasure, To maintayne this pastime, the Emperour hath certayne Huntsmen that are appointed for that purpose to take the wild Beare. This is his recreation commonly on the holy dayes. Sometimes hee spendeth his time in looking vpon his Gold-smithes and Iewellers, Taylors, Embroyderers, Painters, and such like, and so goeth to his Supper. When is draweth towards Bed-time, his Priest faith certayne Prayers : and then the Emperour blesseth and croffeth hunfelte, as in the morning for a quarter of an houre or thereabouts, and so goeth to

Emperour Theodore deferibed.

The Emperour that now is (called Theodore Inanowich) is for his person of a meane stature. fome-what low and groffe, of a fallow complexion, and inclining to the Dropfie, Hawke-noted. uniteady in his pale, by reason of some weaknesse of his limmes, heavy and vnactive, yet commonly smiling almost to a laughter. For qualitie otherwise, simple and slow witted, but very 20 gentle, and of an easienature, quiet, mercitull, of no martiall disposition, nor greatly aptior matter of Policie, very Superititious, and infinite that way. Befides his private Devotions at home, he goeth euery weeke commonly on Pilgrimage, to some Monasterie or other that is neerest hand. He is of thirtie foure yeeres old, or thereabouts, and hath reigned almost the space of fix yeeres.

houthold Of-

Herfe.

Pilgrimage.

THe chiefe Officers of the Emperours houshold, are these which follow. The furth, is the Office of the Boisven Conesheus, or Master of the Horse. Which contayneth no more then is ross private, or expressed by the name, that is, to be Over-seer of the Horse, and not Magister Equitum, or Maiter of the Horsemen. For he appointeth other for that Service , as occasion doth require (as 20 before was faid.) He that beareth that Office at this time, is Borris Federawich Godonoe, Brother Mafter of the to the Empresse. Of Horse for Service in his Warres (besides other for his ordinary vies) he hath to the number of 10000, which are kept about Mosko.

The Lord Steward The Lord Treasurer. Comptroller. Harbengers.

The next is the Lord Steward of his houshold at this time, one Gregorie Vafilowich Godanoe. The third, is his Treasurer, that keepeth all his Moneyes, Iewels, Plate, &c. now called Signar Vafilowich Godonoe. The fourth, his Comptroller, now Andreas Petrowich Clefinine. The fift, his Chamberlaine. He that attendeth that Office at this time, is called Eftoma Bifabroza Paftelnif-Chamberlaine chay. The fixt, his Tafters, now Theodore Alexandronich, and Iman Vafilowich Godonoe. The feuenth, his Harbengers, which are three Noblemen, . no diners other Gentlemen that do the Office under them. These are his ordinary Officers, and Offices of the chiefest account.

Of Gentlemen, beside that wait about his Chamber, and Person (called Shilfer Strapfer) there the Chamber. are two hundred, all Noblemens Sonnes. His ordinary Guard is two thousand Hagbutters, ready with their Peeces charged, and their Match lighted, with other necessary Furniture, continually day and night: which come not within the house, but waite without in the Court or Yard where the Emperour is abiding. In night time there lodgeth next to his Bed-chamber, the chiefe Chamberlaine, with one or two more of best trust about him. A second chamber off, there lodge fix other of like account, for their trust and faithfulnesse. In the third chamber lye certayne young Gentlemen, of these two hundred, called Shilfer Strapfer, that take their turne by forces enery night. There are Groomes besides that watch in their course, and lye at enery gate and doore of the Court, called Estopnick.

Groomes.

The Hag-butters or Gunners, whereof there are two thousand (as was said before) watch about the Emperours Lodging, or Bed-chamber, by course two hundred and fiftie every night, and two hundred and fiftie more in the Court-yard, and about the Treasure-house. His Court or house at the Moske, is made Castle-wise, walled about with great store of faire Ordnance planted upon the wall, and contayneth a great breadth of ground within it, with many dwelling houses. Which are appointed for such as are knowne to be sure, and trustic to the Emperour.

Chap. 28.

THe private behaviour and qualitie of the Ruffe people, may partly be understood by that Or the primate which hath beene fayd, concerning the publike State and viage of the Countrey. As tou-Awhite hath beene sayd, concerning the publise State and viage of the Country, as two-pulatine of the hing the natural labit of their bodies, they are for the most part of a large fize, and of very of fellily bodies i accounting it a grace to be formewhat große and burley, and therefore they non-Constitution rith and spread their Beards, to have them long and broad. But for the most part they are very of their bodies vnweldy, and vnactiue withall. Which may bee thought to come partly of the Climate, and the numbneffe which they get by the cold in Winter, and partly of their Dyet that flandeth

CHAP. I. Russian drinking, bathing, extremes; womens painting; Attire.

most of Roots, Onions, Garlike, Cabbage, and such like things that breed groffe humours, which they vie to eate alone, and with their other meates.

Their Dyet is rather much, then cur ous. At their Meales they beginne commonly with a Their Dyet. Chark, or imall cup of Aqua-vite (which they call Riffe Wine) and then drinke not till towards the end of their Meiles, taking it in largely, and all together with kiffing one another at Drinking and euery pledge. And therefore after Dinner there is no talking with them, but euery man goeth killing. to his bench to take his after-noones fleepe, which is as ordinary with them as their nights reft. Sleeping. When they exceed, and have varietie of Difhes, the first are their baked meates (for roaft meats they vie little) and then their Broaths or Pottage. To drinke drunke, is an ordinary matter 10 with them euery day in the Weeke. Their common Drinke is Mead, the poorerfort vie water,

and a thm Drinke called Quaffe, which is nothing else (as wee fay) but water turned out of bis wits, with a little Bran meaihed with it.

This Dyet would breed in them many Difeafes, but that they wie Bath-floues, or Hot-hou- Bath floues, fes in itead of all Physicke, commonly twice or thrice every Weeke. All the Winter time, and almost the whole Summer , they heate their Peaches , which are made like the Germane Bathftones, and their Porlads like Quens, that so warme the House, that a stranger at the first shall hardly like of it. These two extremities, specially in the Winter of heate within their Houses, and of extreame cold without, together with their Dyet, maketh them of a darke and fallow complexion, their skinnes being tanned and parched both with cold and with heat: specially

20 the women, that for the greater part are of farre worse complexions then the men. Whereof the cause I take to be their keeping within the Hot-houses, and busying themselues about the heating, and viing of their Bath-Houes and Peaches.

The Ruffe because that he is vied to both these extremities of heate and of cold, can beare them both a great deale more patiently then strangers can doe. You shall see them sometimes (to Extremiles, feafon their bodies) come out of their Bath-stones all on a froth, and fuming as hote almost as a Pigge at a Spit, and prefently to leape into the River starke naked, or to powre cold water all ouer their bodies, and that in the coldest of all the Winter time. The women to mend the bad hue of their skinnes, v'e to paint their faces with white and redde colours, so visibly that every Women dans. man may perceive it. Which is made no matter, because it is common, and liked well by their bers.

30 Hisbands: who make their Wives and Daughters an ordinary allowance to buy them colours to paint their faces with all, and delighe the melues much to fee them of foule women to become such faire Images. This parcheth the skinne, and helpeth to deforme them when their pain-

They apparell themselves after the Greeke manner. The Noblemans attyre is on this fashion. First, a Taffis, or little night cap on his head, that concreth little more then his crowne, commonly very rich, wrought of Silke and Gold Thread, and fet with Pearle and Precious Stone. His The Noblehead he keepeth thauen close to the very skin, except hebe in some displeasure with the Emper, mans anyae, our. Then he suffereth his haire to grow and hang downe vpon his shoulders, couering his face as

vely and deformedly as he can. Ouer the Taffia he weareth a wide Cap of blacke Foxe (which 40 they account for the best Furre) with a Trava, or long Bonnet put within it, flanding vp like a Persian or Babyloman Hat, About his necke (which is seene all bare) is a Coller set with Pearle and Precious Stone, about three or foure-fingers broad. Next ouethis shirt (which is curiously wrought, because hee strippeth himselfe into it in the Sommer-time, while hee is within the house) is a Shepon, or light Garment of Sill e made downe to the knees, buttoned before; and then a Cafran or a ciole Coat buttoned, and girt to him with a Porfan Girdle, whereat he hangs his Kniues and Spoone. This commonly is of Cloth of Gold, and hangeth downe as low as his ankles. O ser that he weateth a loofe Garment of some rich Silke, surred and faced about with fome Gold Lace, called a Ferrie. Another over that of Chamblet, or like Stuffe called an Alkaben, seemed and hanging low, and the Cape commonly brooched, and set all with Pearle. When

so he goeth abroad, he catteth ouer all thefe (which are but fleight, though they feeme to be many) another Garment called an Honoraiker, like to the Alkaben, lave that it is made without a Coller for the necke. And this is commonly of fine Cloth, or Camels haire. His Buskins (which hee weareth in itead of Hole, with Linnen Folles under them in itead of Boot-hole) are made of a Persian Leather called Saphian, Embroydered with Pearle. His viper flocks commonly are of Cloth of Gold. When he goeth abroad, hee mounteth on Horle-backe, though it bee but to the next doore; which is the manner also of the Boiarskey, or Gentlemen.

ext coore I which is the maintraneou, the Dimerstry of Schalemen.

The Boiarskey, or Gentlemans attyre is of the ame fallion, but different in Stuffe: and yet. The Gentlehe will bane his ("ffan or Ynder coar sometimes of Cloth of Gold, the rest of Cloth or Silke, management of the Country of the Vhe Noble woman (called Chyna Boiarfhena) weareth on her head, first a Caull of some fort. The Noble-

60 Silke (which is commonly called Red) and ouer it a Fruntlet, called Obrofa, of white colour, womans at Ouer that her Cap (made after the Coife-fashion of Cloth of Gold) called Shaple Zemphie, tice. edged with some rich Furre, and set with Pearle and Stone. Though they have of late begun to distaine Embroydering with Pearle about their Caps, because the Disches, and some Merchants Wines have taken up the fashion. In their cares they weare Earenings (which they call

#### To the Reader.

Thought good here to give an account of my course. Having spent much time in that other World. fo little known to This (Tartaria and China) that the parts least known might be made best known; I have comme neerer home, to Rulla, and her neighbours, the neerer, or Chrim Tartars, the Samoveds, and others; whereof Doctor Fletchers Story being so elaborate (where, though the centre bee Russia, yet his circumference is more generall) and by men indictions which have in those parts enioyedmost bonourable employment, and exactest intelligence, commended; I have given our the first

20 place. And if some terme bee mollified, or some few things omitted, it is not to defrand Thee of the Historie (which for substance is whole, as by perusalt is found) but not to destand our industrious Countrymen in sheir merchandizing mysterie, wherein some perhaps would hence seche occasion of undermining. For like cause I have given the next place to Capsaine Edge , (the one our gowned Generall by Land , the other in his generall Historic also by Sea) as described by his ten year as Voyages , and his other Merits. As for the question of Willoughbies Land, I list not to dispute it ; but I strinke, nekher Hollander ( as is also confessed by the French Booke, called, The Historie of Spitsberghe a on the 2 H. G. A. ... Dutch behalfe) nor any other have found any fuch Lands as bis Stere describes, but some part of those consultant Ductive comps for my mane wee call, Greenland (bemfocuer the makers of Maps and Globes may feed on with a generall name wee call, Greenland (bemfocuer the makers of Maps and Globes may feed on with create Lands and Hands at pleasure, especially in onknowne places) and the first setled, ordinary, and or length, say to

20 derly Voyages for the Whale killing, and the most for discourse in those parts have been made by the Hesting very English, their gaynes awakening the Hollander to that enterprise, and that also (as elsewhere in the que no start-World) by English guides. That which I most greene at in this contention, is the detention of further niers Nont iron defensery to the Pole and beyond (where it is not likely to be colder then here, and at the Article circle: 72 degrees and au in the Red Sea, Ormus, and the Countrey about Ballara on this fide the Tropike, is found greater can Pips. beat then under the Line it felfe) the defire of gayne enery where can fing debate, and confequently loss 72 in Sir Hugh of the best gaine both in Earth and Heanen. Merchants might get the World, and give ve the World Willoughbies better, if Charitie were their Needle; Grace their Compas, Heanen their Hauen, and if they would Booke penhaps tabe their height he abstrains the Space of Richtenguinelle in the Compas, Heanen their Hauen, and if they would was militien take their height by observing the Sunne of Righteousnesse in the Scripture-astrolabe, and foun- for 17-their fidong their depth by a Leading Faith, and not by a Leadden bottomleffe Couetoulneffe : that is, if gure of 7, and they would feeke the Kingdome of Heaven brit, all things should be eadded; shey should finde that of 2, in

they would feeke the Kingdome of Heaven hrit, all things inoutd nee acuten; vory journa innae World enough in the Indian, and Polare Worlds, and wee and they floud arrive at better knowledge of oil writing, being very like World enough to the initiations. And of all men (that I may a little further answers that Historie of Spirite each other, to berghe) I would be glad to fee agreement betwire the English and Durch, both became I bonour that that the last r. Nation, as bath appeared in thus whole worke of Voyages, in which and of which the Durch are so great with a little a part: and because in Region, Religion, Original Nation, ingenious and ingenuous disposition, and wuch of the a part: and occusie in Acquin, actions, vigoran exacton, ingenious and ingenious ausposition, and running Pentions where the sings both on our Stage) the glory of Nanigation, they are so neere vs., and worthe to running Pention be bonored, it is true that every where the English hath beene the elder Boother, a Dollar, and Ductor, this hand, to the Hollanders, in their Martiall feats at home, and Neptunian exploits abroad, (that I mention I amfair, is c not their permitted wealthis filling on the English shoare) whom had they followed with as true and due the old inition 40 respett, as with happie successe; quarrels had not so distracted and distorted both sides. I appeale to Cithitime.as

Officer and appeared of the property of the pr Ductinggenius, 1 can roop and any interest of the property of finding America, and the Spaniards with his band, the happiness. But for the North America, and the robote Northern New World, Cabota before or and perhapsal bred at leaft in England, was either Aller or Author For the Dutch, I have frewed, for the compassion of his handof the World, and for the East Indies before, that our Drake, Candith, Mellis, Dauis, Adams, Se. Mapshau were their Fore-runners, Pilots, and Guides: Tea, their New-found Land Popages, and all the Nor-made on 1911 therne coast of America were discoursed by Sebastian Cabota, and other Englishmen. I adde their in that his he New Straights Southward from thefe of Higelane were descered before by Drake, as in the Map meter meters New Straffics Somethera i 1000 1001 of magenia were uncoverea beine of Dirace, as in the Map mathematic of Sir Francis Drakes Verage prefested to Queene Elizabeth, flil benging in His Marghise Gollere, and the Dutch or White Hall secret by Princ Chamber, and by that Man Margines College, Dutch of Margines Chamber, and by that Man Margines College, Dutch of Margines Chamber, and by that Manager Chamber and by the Manager Chamber and Barbar and Manager Chamber and Manager Chamber and Barbar and Manager Chamber and Manager Ch

at White Hall, neers the Printic Chamber, and by that Map wherein is Cabotas Pitture, the first and (abich they great Columbus for the Northerne World) may be seene. In which Map, the South of the Magelane layate eight in Straits is not a Continent, but many llands, and the very same which they have stick in their Straits. 73.) have Barneuels Hands had long before beene named by the most anspecate of Earthly Names, (and let them band nath Desirences seems one uning serve occess came any see must anywate of Lartely Names, (and test them, bood; perhaps felies be large, with which the other is at little morthie to be mentioned, as a find Mostor, and as my, bood; perhaps had Tratton. The Name Flischeric & consolid in called I seems of the large seems of feinet se tanges, were none core was a serve fed in golden Letters, with a golden Crowne, Garter, laughte rishe and Armes affixed: The words of cribed oberennio are thefe, Cum omnes fere hanc partem A iltra-mitresen, by lem Continentem effe patent, pro certo iciant Infulas effe Naugantibus peruias, earumq; au- nor knowing ten Contineración ene patent, protetto iciane inicias ene ivaciganticos permas, caronaj acontenta fitalifimam Elizabet i Respet de Mancio Draco Inventore dictam effe. The fame beight the vatia con a decrease and Sauch actual beight formation Months Western Manch nine further enderes of the Compass of 57. degrees and South-caffeety situation from the Magelan Western Month sine surface and Sea where 60 And my learned friend Malter Brigges told meshat he halb seene this plot of Drakes Veyage cut in which take to

and H.G. A. confesser also. b Schuffen Cabeta the English Columbus, sonne of John a Venetica, bred heere, and Discourer tor and B. G. A. continuent also. D segment appear and the engine common, tonic or 1000 a presenting, that here and Difference of the Molonie Companie. Sit E. Draft first findated these Steichts cal-Many the Sevents, or America; and the Sevent Elegabeth Pricting, with Neptune yeeking his Tricken; and Triton founding her laws, with their Verles, Te Deus aquorem donat Regina Tridente, Es Triton laudes efflat visique turn.

Sargee) of two Inches or more compasse, the matter of Gold see with Rubies, or Saphires, or fome like Precious Stone. In Sommer they goe often with Kerchiefs of fine white Lawne, or Cambricke, fained under the chinne, with two long Taffels pendent. The Kerchiefe spotted and fet thicke with rich Pearle, When they ride or goe abroad in raynie weather, they were white Hats with coloured bands (called Stapa Zempikey.) About their neckes they weare Collers of three or foure-fingers broad, fet with rich Pearle and Precious Stone. Their vpper Gazment is a loofe Gowne called Oposhen, commonly of Scarler, with wide loofe sleenes, hanging downe to the ground buttened before with great Gold Buttons, or at least Siluer and gilt, nigh as bigge as a Wal-nut. Which hath hanging ouer it fastned under the Cap, a large broad Cape as bigge as a Walling. Which was almost to the midst of their backes. Next voder the lo Opoiken or voper Garment, they weare another called a Leanich that is made chose before with great wide fleoues, the cuffe or halfe fleeue vp to the elbowes, commonly of Cloth of Gold: and order that a Ferris Zemskey, which hangeth loofe buttoned throughout to the very foot, On the hand wrests they weare very faire Bracelets, about two fingers broad of Pearle and Precious

Stone. They goe all in Buskins of White, Yellow, Blue, or some other coloured Leather, embroydered with Pearle. This is the attyre of the Noble-woman of Ruffie, when shee maketh the best shew of herselfe. The Gentlewomans apparell may differ in the Stuffe, but is all one for the making or fashion.

As for the poore Monfiek and his Wife they goe poorely clad. The man with his Odnorates, or loofe Gowne to the small of the legge, tyed together with a Lace before, of course white or blue cloth, with some Shabe or long Wast-coat of Furre, or of Sheep-skinne vnder it, and his furred Cap, and Buskins. The poorer fort of them have their Odnoratkey, or upper Garment, made of Cowes haire. This is their Winter Habit. In the Sommer time, commonly they weare nothing but their shirts on their backes, and Buskins on their legs. The woman goeth in a pel or blue Gowne, when the maketh the best shew, and with some warme Shube of Furre under it in the Winter time. But in the Sommer, nothing but two (hirts (for fo they call them) oneouer the other, whether they be within doores, or without. On their heads, they weare Caps

of some coloured Stuffe, many of Veluet, or of Cloth of Gold : but for the most part Kerchiefes. Without Earings of Siluer or some other Metall, and her Crosse about her neck, you shall see no Russe woman, be shee Wife, or Maide.

Theirwits and

As touching their behaulour, and qualitie, otherwise, they are of reasonable capacities, if 30 they had those meanes that some other Nations have to trayne vp their wits in good Nurture, and Learning. Which they might borrow of the Polonians, and other their Neighbours, but that they refuse it of a very selfe-pride, as accounting their owne fashions to be farre the best. Partly also (as I said before) for that their manner of bringing vp (void of all good Learning, and Civill behaulour) is thought by their Gouernours most agreeable to that State, and their manner of Gouernment. This causeth the Emperours to bee very wary for excluding of all Peregrinitie, that might alter their fashions. Which were lesse to bee disliked, if it set not a print into the very minds of his people. For as themselves are very hardly and cruelly dealt with all by their chiefe Magistrates, and other Superiours, so are they as cruell one against another, specially over 40 their inferiours, and fuch as are vinder them. So that the baseft and wretchedelt (bristianoe (as they call him) that stoopeth and croucheth like a Dogge to the Gentleman, and licketh up the Crueltic of the dust that lyeth at his feet, is an intollerable Tyrant, where hee hath the aduantage. By this Ruffe people. meanes the whole Countrey is filled with Rapine, and Murder. They make no account of the life of a man. You shall have a man robbed sometime in the very streets of their Townes, if he goe late in the Euening; and yet no man to come forth out of his doores to refcue him, though he heare him cry out. I will not speake of the strangenesse of the Murders, and other cruelities committed among them, that would scarily be believed to be done among men, specially such as professe themselves Christians.

The number of their vagrant and begging poore is almost infinite: that are so pinched with 50 Famine and extreame need, as that they begge after a violent and desperate manner, with Gine me and cut me, Gine me and kill me; and such like Phrases. And yet it may be doubted whether is the greater, the Crueltie or Intemperancie that is vied in that Countrey. I will not speake of Intemperancy. it, because it is so foule and not to be named. The whole Countrey ouerstoweth with all sinne of that kind. And no maruell, as having no Law to restraine Whoredomes, Adulteries, and like vncleannesse of life.

As for the truth of his word, as fome fay, the Ruffe neither beleeveth any thing that another man speaketh, nor speaketh any thing himselfe worthy to bee believed. These qualities make them very odious to all their Neighbours, specially to the Tartars, that account themselves to be honeft and just, in comparison of the Russe. It is supposed by some that doe well consider of 69 the State of both Countries, that the offence they take at the Ruffe Gouernment, and their manner of behautour, hath beene a great cause to keepe the Tartar still Heathenish, and to millike as he doth of the Christian protession.

The Mouficks

or common

Silver by a Dutchman (Michael Mercator, Nephew to Gerardus) many yeeres before Scouten or Mane intended that Voyage. As for Nous Zemla by Stephen Burrough, and others, long before discovered, they also have given new names, which I envie not: onely I feare a væ soli, and hate ingratitude both ours and therrs. But too much of this. Next to this more generall Discourse shall follow the Dutch Northerne Voyages, and the English North-easterne : after which wee will take a more complementall leaue of that Continent, and from thence visite the Northerly and North-westerne Discoue. ries; at once hunting for a New World and a New passage to This.

### CHAP. II.

A briefe Discouerie of the Northerne Discoueries of Seas, Coasts, and Conntries, delinered in order as they were hopefully begunne, and have ever fince bappily beene consinued by the fingular industrie and charge of the Wor-Society of Muscouia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine THOMAS EDGE the Authour

Greenland first discoursed by Sir HVOR WILLOVGHBIE: the Voyages of FROBISH'ER, PET and IACKMAN, DAVIS, the Dutch; First Morse and Whale-killing, with further Discoueries.

W.Gemeticensis

He Northerne parts of the World have ever beene held to be Officing Gentium 6 velut Vasina Nationium, Natures Shop and Store-house of Men, better furnished then any other part of the Earth, and from whence those notable Inundations came first of the Cymbrians and Tensons, in the time of the antient Roman; and secondly of the Gothes and Vandals under Atila, to the confusion of things both Dinne and Humane in all the Southerne parts of Europe, as farre as Barbarifine could preuaile against Civilitie and Religion. For remedie whereof the Townes alongst

the Baltick Sea entred into a confederacy under the names of the Hass Townes, and undertooke the keeping of those Northerne people, and the securing of these Southerne Kingdomes from any the like ouerflowings, vpon such Priniledges and Immunities as were granted and agreed vnto them by all the Southerne Princes, and according to such Lawes as were made and proui- 40 ded for the maintenance and strength of the faid Hans Townes, amongst which the supreme and fundamentall Lawe was that none of these Nations so secured should have trade or commerce in any parts beyond the Baltike Seas, to the end the barbarous people might not bee enabled thereby to practife or moue against the Hans Townes : which was the cause together also with the extremitie of cold, that those Northerne Seas were neuer looked vnto vntill the yeere 1553. At which time the trade of this Kingdome waxing cold and in decay, and the Merchants incited with the fame of the great masse of riches which the Portugals and Spaniards brought home yeerely from both the Indies, entred into a refolution, notwithilanding the prohibition of the Hans Law to discouer the Northerne Seas, which so long had beene frozen and Cathay. See I. a. that up; and to fee whether they could not affoord a passage to Cathay and the East Indies, and chaptered in mix vp rame or recovered to produce the mix vp rame or recovered to the mix vp rame or recovered to the mix vp rame or recovered to the mix vp rame of t age, with Richard Chancellor Captaine of the Edward Bonanemure, together with a third flip, called the Bona Confidentia. These three ships falling downe from Ratcliffe, the tenth of May in the forefaid yeere went on their Voyage, and proceeding as farre as the Cape of Norway, they were seuered by a tempest. Chancellor after he had stayed at Ward-house seuen dayes, expe-Sting the Admirall and the other ships, according to a former appointment upon any such cafualtie, and hearing nothing of them, went on, and discouered the Bay of Saint Nicolas, and

fetled a trade there, which hath continued to these times. Sir Hugh Willomebbie was driven to the height of 72. \* where heefell voon an Iland, now knowne by the name of Willowgbbie Land, and lieth from Sinam ( vpon the Continent of Nor- 60 tude, the Land way East and by North an hundred and fixtie leagues or thereabouts, from thence he went North Stands in 77. and North-west, and within eight dayes after he tell upon a Land which lay West South-west, and East North-east, betweene 74. and 75. degrees of latitude, and plying Westward along by

## CHAP.2. S.I. Greenland discouered by Sir H. Willoughbic, Borough, &c. 462

the Land, he was driven by the wind to put to Sca againe, vntill the wind came about. Then they made towards the Land againe, and bare with it, but finding that place wife for landing, they haled out againe, running along the Land fixteene leagues North-west, where they found a faire Bay, went on Land and found the place inhabited. From thence they put to Sea againe. runne along the coalt for fortie leagues together, till at length they came to an ancior within two leagues of the shoare, where they landed, and found two or three good Harbours.

Afterwards they entred into the Hauen which ranne vp into the Maine a- Greenland discoursed by Sir Hugh bout two leagues, where they remained for the space of a weeke vpon the willaughbie. This Voyage was writmaine Land. They found Beares, great Deere, Foxes, and other beafts. They tenby Sir H. Will. and found in his Io fent out three men three dayes journey to the South-west, and three others also thin, In lanuarie after he was aline, fent out three men three dayes sourney to the South-west, and three others and appeares by a Will of Gab. Will. full West, all which returned after divers dayes trauelling, and found no people his kindman, subferibed by Sir Hag. nor any likelihood of habitation. And this is that Land which now is called wifeness which Will I now haue. Greenland, or King lames his New-land, and is knowne to the Hollanders by the and keepe as a Relike of that worname of Spafbergen. Sir Hugh Willoughbie returned into Lapland, where he and this discourser and first finder of his companie were frozen to death, in the Hauen called Arzina, neere Kegor.

The Muscomia Merchants having thus settled a trade in Russia, and being incorporated by the name of, The Merchants of England, for the discourrie of new trades, purfued their first relolutions for finding a way to Cathay by the North-east, and in the yeere 1556. fent out Stephen Burrough, for discouerie of the River Obb, who proceeding forwards in that Voyage discouered 20 the River Pechora, the Streights of Vargats and Nonazembla "; went on shoare vpon the Iland \* See Hall, V of Vaigats, and upon the North Continent of Ruffia; met with the Samoeds, observed their 10m.1.psg.274. manner of life, their Religion, their Sacrifices to their rude and ill staped Idols; and the yeere

being ipent, returned into Ruffia.

The Companie having fought for the North-east passage, and finding such difficulties as are mentioned in their particular Journals, refolued to make triall, if the North-west part could not affoord a passage to the Indies, which was the first and maine scope of their Northerne Discoueries. And in the yeare 1 e 76, they fent forth Sir Martin Frebifber with two Barkes, who comming into the height of 62, or thereabouts, found a great Inlet, now knowne by the name of Sir M. Frebilber Frobifiers Streights, into which he put himfelfe, and fayled fixtie leagues with a mayne Land on Hatt. tom, 3.294 20 each tide, and to for that yeere returned.

The next yeere following he made a second Voyage to that place, purposely to lade himselfe with a kind of Oare, which the yeere before he had found there, and gaue hope by the colour to yeeld Gold, and being laden with some quantitie, returned.

The yeere following, being 1578. having made tryall here of that Oare, and finding it not to fall out according to his expectation, hee was furnished out to proceed in the further discouerie of those Streights, and entring into the same, made way so farre as hee thought fit, and then returned backe, having first taken possession thereof in the name of Queene Elizabeth of famous memorie, who called the place Meta incognita: he brought home some of the Natives,

and left iome of his men there.

In the yeere 1580, the Companie sent out a second Voyage for the discouerie of the River 1580. Obb, and thence to goe on to Cathay; furnishing forth two ships under the command of Arthur Pet and lack-Pet, and Charles Lackman, who following their instructions, arrived at Vaigats, passed those man, Hak tone Streights with a particular observation of those Ilands and places therein, plyed along the East 1.445. part of Nonazembla, and the North of Russia, and the Samoeds Countrey, so farre as the Ice would give them leave, and finding no possibilitie of passage by reason of the Ice, returned backe in the latter end of the yeere. By this time the Voyage of Saint Nicolas was knowne, and become a beaten trade. And the Companie sent out yeerely thicher ten or twelue ships, which returned fraighted with the commodities of that Countrey.

In the yeere 1583. by the leave and admittance of the Mosconia Companie, Sir Humfrey 50 Gilbert went out for the disconerie of the North part of Terra Florida, came into the great Ri- Sir H. Gilbers uer called, Saint Laurence in Canada, tooke possession of the Country, settled the government of Hakita-3. P.1432

the filhing there which is fo well knowne in thefe times. In the yeere 1,85. Master Iohn Danis was furnished out at Dartmouth with two Barkes, for the discouerie of the North-west, came into the height of 66. plyed along the coast, observed Master Danie the probabilitie of a paffage, and in the end of the yeere returned.

In the yeere following, being 1,86. hee went on againe in the further discouerie thereof, 6 feq. found a great Inlet betweene 55. and 56. of latitude, which gaue him great hope of a paffage, traded with the people there, and fo returned.

In the yeere 1587, hee made a third Voyage to those places, followed his course to the North 60 and North-west, to the Latitude of 57. degrees, having the Continent (which hee called America) on the West fide and Groineland, which hee named Desolation on the East, and going on the height of 86.degrees, the passage enlarged so that hee could not see the Westerne shoare. Thus he continued in the Latitude of 73. degrees in a great Sea free from Ice, of an vnmeasurable depth, but by the occasion of the departure of two Ships which were incompany with him,

Hak.to.3 - p. 93.

which hee left Fishing at a place, he returned home. This passage continueth the Name and me-Fretum Danis. morie or the first Discouerer, and is called Fretum Danis. And thus the Discouerie of the Northern Seas proceeded on from time to time, by the endeapour and charge of the Musconia Companie, vntill they had particularly discourred the Lands, Coasts, Ilands, Straights, Hauens, Bayes, Ruers and other places therein, and measured enery part thereof, by their often tracing to and fro: Together allo with the observation of the Commodities and Advantages, arising from curry part of the fame, continuing even vnto these times to haunt and frequent the parts which they had formerly found out; As by their yeerely Reportaries and Journals may appeare, and thateither without emulation or competition of any other Nation, that ever came into those parts or enterprifed any Discouerie there vntill of late yeeres, as appeares by this that followeth

Hal. Tom. I.

When Richard Chancelor had fetled a trade with lebn Vafilowich then Emperour of Ruffie, and his Ambassadourshad beene heere in England, to accomplish matters requisite for maintenance of the Amitie and Entercourse made and agreed voon betweene these two Crownes; King Philip, Queene Marie, Dukes also at that time of Burgundie, and Soueraignes of all the Netherland. made a grant of Priviledge vnto the Musconia Merchants for the fole Trade of those Seas, prohibiting all others to haunt and frequent the fame, without speciall Licence and consent of the favd Companie : which grant of Priviledge was accordingly enjoyed without diffurbance or interioping of the Hollanders, who out of obedience either to the Prohibition made by their Soneraigne, or for that they durft not adventure into these Seas, did not any way attempt to bee feene or appeare there, either for Discouerie or wrade of Merchandize, for the space of five and so twentie yeeres, after the Port of Saint Nicholas was first Discouered and found cut by the Es. gulb. For the Company having as is about mentioned, made their first Discouerie in the yeere 1552, there was neuer heard of any Netherlander that frequented those Seas, vntill the year 1578. At which time they first began to come to Cola, and within a yeere or two after, one John de Whale a Netherlander, came to the Bay of Saint Nicholas, being drawne thither by the perswasion of some English for their better meane of Interloping, which was the first man of that Nation that euer was seene there. And this as is formerly noted was fue and twentie yeeres after it was Discouered by the Musconia Merchants.

25. follow.

Afterwards the Hollanders crept in more and more, and in the yeere 1594, they made out Thele Voiages foure Ships for Discouerie of the North-east pussage to China, the Master Pylot whereof was 10 William Barrents, these came voon the Coast of Nonazembla to the Latitude of 77.degrees, drew backe againe towards the Straights of Vaigats, and then returned giving Names vnto iome places and Promontories upon that Land.

1595.

In the yeere 1595. They fent out a fecond Voyage, tracing the way through the Straightsof Vasgats in the same steps, as Pet and lackman had formerly passed, and so returned, In the veere 1 596. They fet out athird Voyage with two Ships, the one of which shaped her course from the Cape of Norway, to an Iland in the Latitude of 74. degrees, which wee call Cherie Iland, and they call Beare Iland, and from thence to Greenland, where Sir Hugh Willoughbie had beene two and fortie yeeres before, for fo long time there is betweene the nrst Discourse published 1613 thereof and the yeere 1596. And from thence to the North-east part of Nonazembla, in the 40 Latitude of 76. degrees, where they Wintred and loft their Ship, and came home with much In the yeere 1603. Stephen Bennet was imployed by the Companie, in a Ship called the Grace,

which writerh against this English allegation, &c. but hotter arguments then I

aniwer.

Whale Bay.

Hackluits

Headland.

Hudfons Tout-

to those parts Northwards of the Cape, and was at Cherie Iland and killed some Sea-horses, and brought home Lead Oare from thence. In the yeere 1608, the faid fellowship fet foorth a Ship called the Hope-well , whereof William am willing to Hudson was Master, to discouer to the Pole, where it appeareth by his Sournall, that hee came to William Hudfon the height of 81 idegrees, where he gave Names to certayne places, vpon the Continent of Greenland formerly discouered, which continue to this day, namely, Whale Bay, and Hackluit Headto 81.Degrees. land, and being hindred with Ice, returned home without any further vie made of the Coun- 50 trey, and in ranging homewards, hee discourred an Iland lying in 71. degrees, which hee named

Thomas Welden, I bomas Edge the Author.

1610.

I mas Poole first

Heere it is to bee understood, that the Companie having by often refort and imployment to those parts , observed the great number of Sea-horses at Cherie Iland , and likewise the multitude of Whales, that shewed themselues upon the coast of Greenland; They first applyed themfelues to the killing of the Morces, which they continued from yeere to yeere with a Ship or two yeerely; in which Ships the Companie appointed Thomas Welden Commander, and in the yeere 1609, the Companie imployed one Thomas Edge their Apprentice, for their Northeren Voyage, and joyned him in Commiffion with the forefayd Welden. Now the often vfing of Cherie Hand, did make the Sea-horse grow scarfe and decay, which made the Companie looke out 60

for further Discoueries. In the yeere 1610. the Companie fer out two Ships, viz. the Lioneffe for Cherie Iland, Thomas Edge Commander ; and the Amitie, for a Northerne Discouerie, the Master of which Ship was longs Poole: who in the moneth of May fell with a Land, and called it Greenland, this is the

Land that was discourred by Sir Hugh Willoughby long before, which Ship Amitie continued vp. \* See Baffins on the coast of Greenland, discouring the Harbours and killing of Morces, vitil the moneth of North west August, and so returned for England, having gotten about some twelve Tunnes of goods, and an Vaicorne.

In the yeere 1611, the Companie fet foorth two Ships for Greenland, the Marie Margaret Horne, Admirall, burthen one hundred and fixtie tunnes, Thomas Edge Commander; and the Elizabeth, burthen fixtie tunnes, Ionas Poole Maiter, well manned and furnished with all necessarie Provisions, they departed from Blackwall the twentieth of Aprill, and arrived at the Foreland in Green. land in the Latitude of 79. degrees, the twentieth of May following, the Admirall had in her

IO fix Biskayners expert men for the killing of the Whale; this was the first yeers the Companie set First whale out for the killing of Whales in Greenland, and about the twelfth of Iune the Biskayners killed killing. fmall Whale, which yeelded twelue Tunnes of Oyle, being the first Oyle that euer was made in Bifcayners v-Greenland. The Companies two Shalops looking about the Harbour for Whales, about the five and twentieth of June rowing into Sir Thomas Smith his Bay, on the East fide of the Sound faw on the shoare great store of Sea-horses : after they had found the Morses they presently rowed vnto the Ship, being in croffe Road feuen leagues off, and acquainted the Captayne what they had found. The Captayne understanding of it, gaue order to the Master, Stephen Bennet, that he should take into his Ship fiftie tunnes of emptie Caske, and fet sayle with the Ship to goe into Foule Sound. The Captayne went prefently away in one Shallop with fixe men vnto the Sea-

30 morfe, and tooke with him Lances, and comming to them they fet on them and killed fine hundred Morfes, and kept one thousand Morfes living on shoare, because it is not profitable to kill them all at one time. The next day the Ship being gone vnto the place & well mored where the Morfe were killed, all the men belonging to the Ship went on shoare, to worke and make Oyle of the Morfes; and when they had wrought two or three dayes, it fortuned that a small quantitie of Ice came out of Foule Sound, and put the Ship from her Moring. The Master and ten men Shipwracke being a board of the Ship, let fall their Sheat anchor which brought the Ship vp to ride; the Ice by Ice, comming vpon heragaine, brought her Anchor home and ranne the Ship ashoare, where shee by the Masters weake Iudgement was cast away, and all their Bread spoyled not sit to eate. The

Ship being cast away without hope of recouerie, the Commander Thomas Edge gaue order, that 30 all the Morfe living on shoare should be let goe into the Sea, and so gave over making of Oyle, and presently haled vp ashoare all his Shallops and Boates, being fine, setting the Carpenter to trim them, the Saylers to make Sayles and Wastcloathes for the Boates, fit to serue them at Sea. Hauing fitted their Boates as well as they could with the small prouision they had, being in number foure small Shallops and the ships Boate, they divided their men into them equally with what provisions of victuals they could well carrie, and after they had fayd Prayers all together on Land; being fiftie men they departed from the place where they loft their Ship, on the fifteenth of July with the winde Southerly, and rowed thirtie or fortie leagues to the Southward, and then they loft companie of one Shallop and their thips Boate of Horne Sound, which two

Boates met with a Hull Ship, and acquainted him with the loffe of the London Ship, and that shee 40 had left on land goods woorth fifteene hundred pounds : So our men carryed the Hall Ship into Hall Ship. Foule Sound, to take in the Companies goods and to kill some Sea-horses for her selfe at that place. The Captayne and two other Shallops put from the Coast of Greenland in the height of 77. . Degrees, and set their course for Cherie Iland, which lyeth in 74. Degrees (—) sometimes Sayling and sometimes Rowing, and made Cherie Iland the nine and twentieth of July, having Cherie Iland. beene in their Shallops at Sea fourteene dayes, and comming into the Iland with a great fforme

at North-west, with much difficultie they landed on the South side of the Iland. Being on shoare, the Captayne sent three of his Saylers over land vnto the North roade, be-

ing three miles distant from that place, to see if the Elizabeth was there, and they saw a Ship riding in the North roade, and being ouer-joyed they returned backe vato the Captayne to ac-50 quaint him, without flaying to speake with any of the Ships companie, and by good hap the Mafter of the Elizabeth espyed men on the Shoare, being at that time weighing Anchor to set fayle for England, voon which hee stayed and sent the Boate ashoare to see what men they were, and when the men of the Elizabeth came ashoare, they found them to bee men of the Mary Margaret, and so went aboard vnto the Master to acquaint him; whereupon the Master cansed Anchor to bee weighed and went to the South fide of the Iland, and there tooke in the Captayne, and hee being aboard understanding what a poore Voyage the Elizabeth had made, gaue order to the Master to goe for Greenland, there to take in such Goods as the fayd Edge had left in Foule Sound. They departed from Cherie Hand the first of August, and arrived at Foule Sound the Fourteenth Dillo: where they found two Boates which they had lost companie of before, and

60 all their men being come thither with a Hull Ship which they met with, and brought to that place; which Ship had spent all the yeere in Horne Sound, and got little goods. The Elizabeth being mored, the Captayne gave order vnto the Mafter to deliver out of his Ship, all the goods hee had got at Cherie Iland, which was Sea-horse hydes and Blubber, being of little woorth; And to take in the Oyle and Whale-finnes, which were gotten by the Marie Margarets com-

panie, the Master in validing of his Ship brought her so light, that vasortunatly hee over-sether, Ship out fet, having goods in her worth learn hundred pounds. This ill chance happening vato the two Les. paining goods in net worth seven numerical pounds. I me in change impossing vitto me two London Ships, the Captayne of them agreed with Thomas Marmadus halfer or the Hull Ship, to don Ships, the cappayare of the goods which was faued, at the rate of five pounds the Turn e, which was agreat tate take in the goods which was faued, at the rate of five pounds the Turn e, which was a great tate take in the goods worth flue hundred pounds for the (notwitnitanding they had beene a meanes to get him goods worth flue hundred pounds for the (100 Minus and 100 me) August, 1611. they departed from Greenland in the Hope well, being ninetic nine meninall, and arrived at Hall the fixth of September, where the layd Edge tooke out the Companies goods, and Shipped them for London by order from the Companie. This yeere, Edge in coasting in the Shallops, discoursed all the Harbours on the West

#### II.

Dutch, Spanish, Danish difturbance ; also by Hull men, and by a new Patent, with the succeeding Successe and further Discourtes till this present.

N the yeere 1612, the Companie fer forth two Ships, viz. The Whale, burthen one hundred and fixtie Tunnes, and the Scalous hundred with the burther one hundred and fixtie Tunnes, and the Seaborfe, burthen one hundred and eighter tunnes, 20 under the Command of John Ruffell, and Thomas Edge, for discovering and killing of the

Holl anders.

Whale. They discourred that yeere nothing worth writing of, by reason of some falling out betwixt Ruffell and Edge; yet they killed that yeere leventeene Whales, and some Sea. hortes, of which they made one hundred and eightie Tunnes of Oyle with much difficultie; a not being experimented in the businesse. This yeere the Hollanders ('Okcepe their wont in fellowing of the English teps) came to Greenland with one Ship, being brought thither by an Eng. lib man, and not out of any knowledge of their owne Discoueries, but by the direction of one

Allen Sallowes, a man imployed by the Minfconia Companie in the Northerne Seas for the space of twentie yeeres before; who leaving his Country for Debt, was entertayned by the Hollanders, and imployed by them to bring them to Greenland for their Pylot. At which time 10 being met withall by the Companies Ships, they were commanded to depart, and forbidden to Spanish Ship. haunt or frequent those parts any more by mee Thomas Edge. There was also a Spanib Ship

Woodcocke Im.

brought thither, by one Nicholas Woodcocke this yeere, a man formerly imployed by the fayd Companie; which Spanis Ship made a full Voyage in Green-harbour. But Woodcocke at his returne into England, being complained of by the Companie, was Imprisoned in the Gatebooks and Tower, fixteene Moneths, for carrying the Spanish Ship thither.

In the yeere 1613, the Companie fet out for Greenland feuen fayle of Ships, under the Com-Besianus sesent mand of Bens sons to soph, and Thomas Edge, the Slips derarted from Grass and the fix and twentieth of Aprill, and arrived in Greenland the fourteenth of May. This yeere the English had the Kings Patent under the broad Seal- of England, to forbid all Strangers and others, but the Musica 40

MIA Conspanie to vie the Coast of Greenland. The English met with fitteene fayle of great Ships, two of them were Durch Ships, the rest were French, Spanish, and of the Archdukes, besides four Englib Intellopers. The Companies Ships forced them all from the Coalt of Greenland, not suffering any of them to make a Voyage; they tooke from the two Dateb Ships certayne goods, buing ing to take it, they neglected their owne voyage, which was damnified thereby to the value of three or foure thouland pounds. For their Ships came home dead Fraight two or three hundred Tunnes by that meanes. This yeere was Hope Hand and other llands discoursed, to the

1614. Thirteen oh ps and two Pin-

B.ff sarmed.

Dutch fhips.

In the yeere following, which was 1614, the Companie fet out for Greenland, thirteene great Ships and two Punalles, vnder the Command of Beniamin Isleph, and Thomas Edge, all which 50 Ships were well appointed with all manner of Artillerie for defence, and other necessaries for the making of their Voyage and for Discourie. This yeare the Hollanders set out for Greenland eighteene great Ships, whereof foure of them were of the States men of Warre, Ships with thirtie pieces of Ordnance a piece. This yeere the Dutch stayed and fished for the Whale perforce, they were farre stronger then the English, which was a cause that the English Ships came home halfe laden, and the Dutch with a poore Voyage. This yeere the Companie Discourred unto the Northwards of Greenland, as farre as 80. Degrees odde Minuts, in the Ship Thomases, as by herdaily lournall doth appeare at large; in which Ship was imployed Thomas Sherwin, and Walliam Baffin, being the second Voyage they were imployed into those parts. And some llands to the Eastwards of Greenland, were Discouered by soure Ships imployed in that service, as by their 60 Iournall more at large appeareth.

So. Degrees 1615.

In the yeere 1615, the Companie set out for Greenland, two sayle of great Ships and two Pinnaffes, vnder the Command of Beniamint of pb, and Thomas Edge, who following their Instructions, arrived upon the Coast of Greenland the fixth of June, which they found to bee much

pettered with Ice, and being foggie weather, they runne into the Ice, fo farre, that they were Fast in Ice. fait in it fourteene dayes before they could cleare themselves of it. This yeere also the Hollan- in lune fourders fet out fourteene fayle of thips, whereof three of them were States Men of warre of great teene dayes, force: they killed Whales in Horn-found, Bel-found, and Faire-hauen, and flayed voon the coaff of Greenland perforce, as they did the former yeere; whereby the English came home halfe la- King of Denden. This yeere allo the King of Demmarke lent vnto Greenland three of his ships, Men of warre, marke demands to demand a toll of the English; but they had none payd them : for they fell with the Foreland in 79. degrees, where Captaine Edge was, and he denyed payment of any toll, all dging Vn Enelify that the Countrey of Greenland belonged to the King of England. These were the first Danish English to tense thips that ever came to Greenland, who had for their Pilot one lames Vaden, an Englishman to Duich, Spanish, To bring them thither.

In the yeere 1616, the Company fet out for Greenland eight Sayle of great thips, and two their owne, Pinnaffes under the command of Thomas Edge, who following his course, arrived in Greenland 2. bout the fourth of June, having formerly appointed all his thips for their feuerall Harbours, for their making of their Voyage vpon the Whale, and having in every Harbour a sufficient number of expert men, and all promitions fitting for fuch a Voyage. This yeere it pleafed God to bleffe them by their labours, that they full laded all their thips with Oyle, and lett an over-plas in the Countrey, which their ships could not take in. They imployed this yeere a small Pinnasse vnto the East-ward, which discouered the East-ward part of Greenland, Namely, the lland cal-

led now Edges Hand, and other Hands lying to the North-wards as farre as feuentie eight de- Edges Hand. grees, this Pinnaffe was fome twentie tunnes, and had twelue men in her, who killed one thoufand Sea-horses on Edges Iland, and brought all their Teeth home for London. This was the first yeere that ever the Company full laded all their ships tent to Greenland, and this yeere they made twelse or thirteene hundred tunnes of Oyle in Greenland by the fourteenth of August All the thins arrived in fafety in the River of Thames, in the moneth of September. The Hollanders had this veere in Greenland foure thips, and those kept together in odde places, not easily to bee

found, and made a poore Voyage.

In the years 1617, the Company fet out for Greenland fourteene Sayle of thiss, and their two Pinnaffes turnished and manned with a fufficient number of men, and all other provisions fitting 30 for that Voyage, under the command of Thomas Edge. They departed from Grane fend about the foure and twentieth of Aprill, and arrived vpon the Coast of Greenland, the eight and twentieth

of May all in fafety.

At our first comming vpon the Coast this yeere, I met with a Dateb shippe of two hundred tunnes, which I commanded aboard, the Captaynes name was Coske, who told mee there were ten Sayle of Dutch vpon the Coaft, and two men of Warre, and that he came to make a Vove age voon the Whale. I shewed him the Kings Commission; and commanded him by vertue thereof to depart from the Coast, willing him to acquaint the rest of his Countrey-men with it. And further, I told him that if I met with him or any Dutch thips heereafter, I would take from them what they had gotten, and thus having entertayned him abourd with me courteout-40 ly, I let him goe without taking any prouitions from him. At his departure from mee, hee pro-

mifed hee would but flay to meet with two of his Conforts, which hee had loft company with the day before, and then hee would directly goe for Flufting, and acquaint his Merchants, that the English Captayne would not fuffer him to stay upon the Coast of Greenland; but it seemeth at his meeting with his Conforts, they agreed altogether to goe into Horne-found, and there they killed some few Whales which they saued in Blubber. I vinderstanding of it, gaue order to my Vice-admirall when he was laden, that he should goe into Horne-found, and put the Flemmings from thence, and take what they had gotten, which he did accordingly : but the goods he tooke from the Dutch thips, were not worth to the English twentie pounds, for it was but Blubber and Finne's, which they had no need of, in regard they had killed as many Whales as would lade their ships, and more then they could carry or laue. This yeere the English made nineteene hun-

dred tunnes of Oyle in Greenland, and all their thips arrived at home in the moneths of August and September in fafetie. They also employed a ship of fixtie tunnes, with twenty men in her, who discourred to the Eastward of Greenland, as faire to the North-wards as seventie nine degrees, and an Iland which he named Witches Iland, and divers other Ilands as by the Map appear witches Iland. reth, and killed ftore of Sea-horfes there, and then came into Bel-found : where hee found his lading of Oyle, left by the Captayne which he tooke in. This yeere the Hull men fet a small ship Hull men. or two to the East-wards of Greenland, for the Hull men still followed the steps of the Londoners, and in a yeere or two called it their Difcouery, which is falle and vntrue, as by Oath in the Admiraltie doth appeare. The Dutch likewife practife the same course.

60 In the yeare 1618, some difference having passed betweene the English and some Zelanders. the yeere before, in King James his Newland, alias Greenland (which Zelanders were neuer in those Zelanders. parts before, and vpon promile of the present departure) were permitted to passe elie-where with their prouisions which they had, and comming to Cherrie Iland, and meeting with one English Interloper of Hall; namely Marmaduke, he animated the faid Zelanders to returne back Marmaduke.

for Greenland, alleaging vnto them, that the Companies thips were in each feuerall Harbourba. for Greeness, attending, and that none would flure from his Harbours to moleft them, and that they being three ships of force, might returne to a Harbour in that Country, called Hamfood, they being consecutives and there make a Voyage perforce, which the faid Zelanders did attempt, and there matmed out divers Shallops, having many Bicksiners, and killed flore of Whales, fetting those English at ouers Snauops, maning man, and Edge, chiefe Commander of the English Fleet, having laden those ships that were in Harbour with him, and presently sent for William Help, his Vice-Jacen toole injective, well and was not then full laden, but in good forwardnessed by the ship he was in, and goe to Horne-found afore-faid, and put the said Zelander; from thence: which the he was in, and goe to recomply mental than the part of the preferred part in a notice to faid Hely preferrely put in execution. But before his comming thirther, the Zelander had notice to laid resp presency put it is they did not depart, the English Vice-admiral would come presentby an Engage Suggest, the state of the Relation of the Relation of the goods they had in two ly and fent them away before the comming of the English Vice-admirall, leaning one hip inips, and tent them away who be blubber, and two Whales and an halfe vicut vp, in a brauado to trye if the English would meddle with them or not, which faid ship and goods there left, were tive is the saying with Vice-admirall; the goods detayed to the Companies vie; and the flip reflored there to the Zelander; which flip having in her ten caft Peeces, and fixtie men, and having intelligence of one of the Companies ships, at that time laden in the Country with one hundred and eightie tunnes of Oyle, the Zelender gaue out he would lie in waite and with one munice and taging some solution of Jrs, the Latenth flip of the Companies and her lading, and carrie her to Zeland. For preuention where take that flip of the Companies and her lading, and carrie her to Zeland. For preuention where of, the faid Vice-admirall tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the carries of the faid vice-admirall tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the carries of the car Zeland, which were in England restored to the owners.

In which faid yeere 1618, the Zelanders lending over for reflitution of the goods taken from them. A new Company commixt of English, Senish and Zelanders, through the meanes of one Sir Iohn Commington Knight, procured a grant for fetting forth of fhipping to those parts, which might vtterly haus ouerthrowne and spoiled the trade of the first discournes thereof and to that angle, vices; mean characteristics and divers of the chiefe men were hired by the new Company that had been feruants to the feft discouerie, and much shipping and prouitions agreed for. Whereupon there was an agreement, East radia Ad. that the East India Adventurers should some stocke with the Moseonia Adventurers, and be one ioynt Companie for that trade of King James his Newland. The Scottifb Companies Patent thereupon diffolied, to the Mofemio Companies great trouble and coft, in taking of all the prouissons they had bespoken, and paying ready money for the same, having novsethereof, but great part spoyled, and came to little good, and in joyning unfortunately with the East ladie Companie, in which yeere, and the next yeere after, their Voyages proued very ill, and they were lofers, and much vexed and croffed in their proceedings, to the great diffeartning and detriment of the Moscomia Companie: yet that yeere 1618 they fet forth thirteene ships and two Pinnasses, vnder the command of the said Captaine Thomas Edge, who arriving vpon the coast of King lames his Newland, in the beginning of June separated themselves to severall Harbours for accomplishing of their Voyages, the most part being ships of no force. Presently after in all Harbours where the English were, arrived great store of ships of Zeland, in warlike 40 manner, being ships of great force, who continued in the same Harbours amongst the English, ferting two boats to the English one, with Biskainers, with a full purpose to drive the English from their Harbours, and to reuenge the iniurie (as they termed it) done them the yeere before: and for that the Scottife Patent was diffolued; wherein many Flemmings were to be intereffed. And to that purpose towards the latter end of July, ten Saile of the said Zelanders, being at a Harbour called the Foreland, where the faid William Heley, Vice-admirall of the English Fleet that yeere, was in the thip Pleafure, Matter Robert Salmon, with one English thip and a Pinnaffe there of no force, fet vpon the said English Vice-admirall, threatning, if hee would not yeeld prefently, to dispoyle him of ship and goods, not permitting to take his men aboord. And with two of their chiefest ships layd the English Vice-admiral abourd, there being but seven English abourd the ship, which they detayned for foure and twentie houres, the Zelanders not daring to enter, making many brauadoes and attempts, thinking to make the English to yeeld; and stand to their mercy, which was refuled. And thereupon fine of those Zelonders ships; namely, the Fortune of Campbine, burthen foure hundred tunnes, with eighteene cast Peeces, besides braffe Bales and Murtherers, Captaine Hubreght Cornelifon; the Saint Peter of Flufting, burthen three hundred tunnes , with eighteene cast Peeces, Captaine Cornelius Cooke; the Salamander of Flufing, two hundred tunnes, fourteene cast Peeces, Captaine Adrian Pesterson; the Cast of Debb Hauers, with fixteene cast Peeces, Abraham Lourstick being Captaine and Generall of the Zelanders, and William I obn for of Millworth, in a thip with fourteene cast Pecces: all which, after much conference passed betwixt the said Zelanders and William Hely: which said Zelanders gaue out many vnciuill speeches against the Kings Marettie, not esteeming his Commission; al- 60 ledging that there was good law in Flanders for what they did. And on Sunday the nineteenth of July, 1618, did forcibly fet you the faid English Vice-admiral, fue together plying their great Ordnance, small Shot, and Murderers, seeking what in them lay to kill and spoile all the

the Anglift.

English that were abourd: who refifted their force, and in spite of all their opposers set sayle, faluting them with their Ordnance, and maintayning fight against them till their Sayles were thot downe, some of their chiefe men flaine, others hurt, and their ship forced either to anchor, or run ashoare. The Zelanders vied the English very vokindly, tifling their ship of all their goods, and taking away all their munition and artillery, not leaving any goods ashoare, but burning vo the Caske, not permitting the English to take in fielh water, but shot their Boat thorow in going ashoare, and minding, as they protested and sworevnto the faid William Hely, that they would take and ransacke all the English ships in the Countrey, and carrie the English Captaine to Zeland: having as they faid, that yeere in those parts 23. fayle of well appointed thips, onely to 10 ouerthrow all the English, all which were to meet in Scotland outward bound. After the furpriling of the faid English Vice-admirall, all the reft of the English thips being dispersed farre afunder, could not joyne together, being in all places hindred by the Flemmings: and by that meanes the English Voyage veterly overthrowne, to the extraordinary great losse and charge of

the Companie, the most part of their ships returning home without any goods.

The next yeare 1619, the faid Mosconia and East India Companies fet out nine ships, and two Pinnasses , under the command of the faid Captaine Edge , in which yeere, divers Hollanders being in the Northermost Harbour in the Countrey, employing great quantitie of Boats in chafing the Whale there, off into the Sea, put them by their vivall course, so that the Companies ships, being fine of the nine, in the two Northermost Harbours, were disappointed of their

20 Voyage in those Harbours; and thinking to better it in the other Harbours; the foresaid William Heley fending a Shallop with ten men in her, with Letters to the faid Captaine Edge, of their ill fuccesse to the Northwards, the faid Shallop was cast away, and all the men lost: and the faid Captaine being laden, fent a Pinnasse to the said Heley in August, aduertising him of his departure, thinking all the ships to the Northward had been laden, wishing them to haste home. By meanes of which Shallops cafting away, the Voyage was greatly hindred to the Companies exceeding great loffe; in that the Hollanders did as then bring over great quantitie of Whale-oyle, and fold it at under rates, so that the Companie was forced to keepe theirs on their hands twelue moneths, and fell it afterwards at a very small price, and lost one ship in her returne homewards neere Tarmouth: which did fo much dishearten the faid Companie, that

30 they diffolued againe, and thought verily to have adventured no more thicker ( their fuccesses those two yeeres past, in which the East India Companie joyned with them was so bad, that any that would buy their provision might entry the benefit of the Trade there.) At which time, the worthie and famous Merchants Aduentuers; namely, Ralph Freeman, Beniamin Deicrope, George Strond , with Captaine Thomas Edge, all brethren of the Mosconia Companie , pitying the down-fall of so worthie a Trafficke, in which yeerely so many poore Land-men receited great comfort, and breeding of Mariners, at their owne charge compounded with the faid Companies, and tooke that Trade into their hands. In which yeere 1620, they fet out seuen sayle of ships, vnder the command of William Goodlad, and the faid William Heley; in which faid yeere, by reason of great store of Flemmings and Danes in the foresaid Northermost Harbours, their

40 ships had ill successe to the Northwards, and were forced to passe from Harbour to Harbour to seeke to make a Voyage, but could not, and so returned home halfe laden, with seuen hundred

The next yeere 1621. the forefaid Aduenturers hired, and fet forth eight ships, seuen for the Whale Voyage, and one to the South-eastwards vpon Discouerie, under the command aforesaid, which yeere in one of their chiefest Harbours their Voyage was ouerthrowne, by reason of the foresaid Flemmings and Danes, being to the Northward, as aforesaid, putting the Whale by her course, and in all places in the Countrey generally disheartned, and out of hope to have made any Voyage that yeere, whereby to have earned their bread. Yet it pleased God afterwards in some Harbours, Whales hitting in, a Voyage was performed, and 1100. tunnes of Oyle brought home, to the great encouragement of the faid Aduenturers: otherwise that Trade had beene 50 vtterly ouerthrowne.

The yeere following 1622. the faid Aduenturers at their owne charge fet forth nine ships, vnder the command aforefaid, and therein employed divers Land-men, many of which afterwards proue good Sea-men, and are fit for any Sea feruice. Eight of which ships were appointed to make their Voyage vpon the Whale, and one to goe on discouerie to the South-eastwards. But ill successe happening, one of their greatest ships of burthen, whereot lobn Masson was Master, haufing in her two hundred turns of Caske, Coppers, and divers prouitions, was unfortunatly call Shipwricke, away against a piece of Ice, upon the coast of King James Newland, four leagues from the shoare, in which thip perithed nine and twentie men, and the remainder being three and twenty, were 60 by the providence of the Almightie miraculously faued in a Shallop, coasting thirtie leagues af-

terwards to meet with some other ships to find some succour, having neither bread nor drinke, nor any meanes whereby to get any food: and fo remayned three dayes in extreme cold weather, being in a small Boat ready to bee swallowed up of enery wane, but that God prouided better for them. Many of which people their hands and feet rorted off, being frozen, and they

died in the Countrey. The rest of the ships returned home laden, bringing in them 1300, tuns of Oyle, yet the foresaid chiefe Harbour could not performe their full lading there, by reason of the Flemmings and Danes being to the Northwards, as aforefaid, which doth yearely kinder the Companies thips from making a Voyage.

The Description of the seneral sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Whereto is added the Description of Greenland.

\* The ordinaric growne Whale. Finnes.

Small eyes, Some kinds haue greater. Stow mentions one taken on Tenet theare, the eye of which was a Cart-loade, a man might ftand in the hole vpright: The like wee may sheffe of the throat &c. Nature being herein luxuri-

You may fee this Story of the Whale-killing prefented lively in the Map, which bath liberally added to this

He Whale is a Fish or Sea-beast of a huge bignesse, about fixtie fine foot long, and thirtie fine foot thicke, his head is a third part of all his bodies quantitie, his fracious mouth contayning a very great tongue, and all his finnes, which we call Whale finnes. These finnes are fastned or rooted in his upper chap, and spread ouer his tengue on both

files his mouth, being in number about two hundred and fiftie on one fide, and as many on the other side. The longest finnes are placed in the midst of his mouth, and the rest doe shorten by their proportionable degrees, backward and forwards, from ten or eleven foot long to foure inches in length, his eyes are not much bigger then an Oxes eyes, his body is in fashion almost 20 round forwards, growing on still narrower towards his tayle from his bellie, his tayle is about twentie foot broad, and of a tough folid substance, which we vie for blockes to chop the Blubber on (which yeelds Oyle) and of like nature are his two swimming sinnes (and they grow for-

This creature commeth oftentimes aboue water, spouting eight or nine times before he goeth downe againe, whereby he may be descried two or three leagues off. Then our Whale-killers presently rowe forth from the place where they stand to watch for him, making what halle they can to meet him ; but commonly before they come neere him, he will be gone downe againe, and continue a good while before he rifeth; fo that fometimes they rowe past him, Yes are they very circums pect, euer looking round where they may espie him risen, or discerne his 30 way under water, which they call his Walke. When he is up and the Shallops neere him, they rowe towards him very resolutely, as if they would force the Shallop voon him, if hee went downe under water ; but the Harponyre, who flandeth up in the head of the Boat, darteth his ant, and diver- Harping-iron at the Whale with both his hands, to foone as he commeth within his reach; wherwith the Whale being strucken, prefently descendeth to the bottome, and therefore doe they reare out a rope of two hundred fathome, which is fastned to the Harping-iron, and lieth coyled in the Boat : And they let him have as much of the rope as reacheth to the bottome, and when they perceive him rifing they hale in the rope to get neere him, and when the Whale commeth wp about water, then do the men lance him with their lances, either out of one Shallop or the other; for most commonly there bee two Shallops about the killing of one Whale. In 40 lancing him they strike necre to the finnes he fwimmeth withall, and as lowe under water necre his bellie as conveniently they can: but when he is lanced, he friskes and strikes with his tayle fo forcibly, that many times when her hitteth a Shallop hee splitteth her in pieces; fo that the men are relieued and taken in by another Shallop; and sometimes he striketh to fully vpon them, that some of the men are either maymed, or killed with his stroke. Therefore they who undertake this businesse which is the principall thing in the Voyage, must not onely bee bold and reso-Capraine Edge lute, but also discreet and wary; otherwise their rash forwardnesse may preuent them of their expected conquest; confidering they have no shield to withstand the offended beast their enemy, but onely by a heedfull warmeffe to avoide the receiving of his dangerous stroke. Swimming is also requisite for a Whale-killer to be expert in, for it may be a meanes to saue his life, when 50 he hath loft his Boat, and another is not neere presently to helpe him.

The Whale having received his deadly wound, then he spouteth bloud (whereas formerly he cast forth water) and his strength beginneth to fayle him; but before he dieth, hee will sometimes draw the Shallop three or foure miles from the place where he was first stricken: and as he is a dying, he turneth his bellie vpwards, which lieth vppermost being dead. Then they faflen a rope to his tayle, and with the Shallops, one made fast to another, they towe him towards the ship with his tayle foremost. Then doe they lay him crosse the sterne of the ship, where he is cut vp in this manner; two or three men in a Boat or Shallop come close to the fide of the Whale, and hold the Boat fast there with a Boat-hooke; and another standing either in the Boat, or most commonly upon the Whale, cutteth the fat (which we call Blubber) in square pieces with 60 a cutting Knife, three or foure foot long. Then to race it from the flesh, there is a Crane or Cap-Ren placed purposely vpon the poope of the ship, from whence there descendeth a rope with a hooke in it; this hooke is made to take hold on a piece of Blubber : and as the men winde the Capsten, to the cutter with his long knife loofeth the fat from the flesh, even as if the lard of a

Swine were to be cut off from the leane. When a piece is in order cut off, then let they lower the Crane, and let downe the Blubber to flote vpon the water, and make a hole in fome part of ir, putting a rope thorowit; and so they proceed to cut off more, faithing ten or twentie pieces together to bee towed a shoare at one time, being made fast to the sterne of a Boat or Shallon. Thele pieces being thus brought vnto the shoare side, they are drawne by one and one vpon the floare with an high Crane, or carried vp by two men on a Barrow vnto a Stage, there to be cut into small pieces about a foot long, but thin : then it is carried vnto the choppers by two boyes, with two little hand-hookes, taking in each hand a piece, and so they put it into half-tubs which fland behind the choppers, out of which the choppers take it vp; who fland at the fide of a

boat which is raifed of an equall height fit for the furnace. And the boat being fitted with all 10 things necessarie for the choppers , they place the chopping blockes , which they make of the Whales tayle, and the Blubber is layd ready for them, as they vieit, in small pieces vpon the boord whereon they stand. Then the choppers take it vp with hand-hookes, and lay it on their blockes, and chop it in thin pieces (the thinner he cutsit, the better it is) and when it is chopped, they put it off the blocke downe into the Shallep, with a short Paddle made like a Colerake: and thus doe fixe or eight men stand chopping on the one side of the boat, and on the onther fide of the boat about two or three yards diffant are the Furnaces and Coppers placed and heated. Then betweene the chopping boat and the Coppers, is layd a broad thicke planke, on which standeth a hogshead, which contayneth as much as is put into the Copper, at one time for one boyling, and the tub being emptied, is made to flide vnto the chopping boat againe, be-

20 ing there filled with a copper ladle againe, and put into another Copper. When it is boyled enough, the small pieces of Blubber, which wee call Fritters, will looke browne as if they were fried. Then are they taken out with copper ladles, and some of the Oyle also with them, and put into a Barrow made close to dreyne the Oyle, which standeth ouer another Shallop, that is fet on the back-fide of the Furnace to receive the Oyle in, and as soone as the Fritters are taken cleane out of the Copper, then presently is the tub of small Blubber emptied into the Copper againe to be also boyled.

The Boat into which the hot Oyle is put out of the Coppers, is ever kept halfe full of water, which doth not onely coole the Oyle before it runne into the Caske, but also is a cleanfer of it 30 from drolle, which descendesh to the bottome of the Boat. Out of the Oyle-boat doth the Oyle runne thirtie or fortie years in Troughstor Gutten, and to into Burs or Hoppheads, which being filled, is rolled off to coole, and another Caske layd to fill, and when there is any quantitie of Oyle made, it is carried aboord the ship in rafts. In this manner is the Oyle faued and

Now concerning the Whale Finnes, the Whaleshead being cut off from the body (as hee Whale Finnes) floteth at the sterne of the ship where hee is cut up) is towed by a Boat as necre the shoare as it will come: but it is aground in twelue or thirteene foot water, then by crabes which are placed on land it is drawne on land, at feuerall times when the water is at higheit, so neere the dry, shoare, that men at a lowe water with their Boats on, cut off the Blubber and Finnes, which by 40 the crabes are drawne on shoare, and the Finnes are with Axes, one seuered from another, and being made cleane, are packed up by fiftie in a bundle, and fo shipped.

There are eight feuerall kinds of Whales, and differing the one from the other in goodnesse, Eight tinds of quantitie and qualitie.

The first fort of Whale is called the Grand bay, taking his name from Grand bay in New . Grand by foundland, as having there beene first killed : he is blacke of colour, with a smooth skinne, and While. white underneath the chaps. This Whale is the best for Oyle and Finnes of all the rest (and doth yeeld most the elder it growes.) This fort of Whale doth yeeld about an hundred hogsheads of Oyle, and some fine hundred Finnes.

The second fort of Whale is called Sarda, of the same colour as the former, but somewhat 2. Sarda. leffer, and the Finnes likewife leffer, and yeelds in Oyle according to his bignesse, fometimes le-50 tenerie hoghrads, or eightie hogheads. This Whale hath naturally growing vpon his backe,

The third fort of Whale is called Trumps, being as long as the first, but thicker forwards, of 3. Yrumps. colour more gray then the former, having but one spoute in his head, and the rest have all two; he hath in his mouth teeth about a span long, and as thicke, as a mans wrist, but no finnes; his he natural many mount of the two former, and in proportion fare bigger then his bodie. In the head of this Whale is the Permefitie, which lieth there in a hole like a Well. This is the Whale that Sparmacer. is supposed to yeeld the Ambergreese; There taken about fortie hogsh-ads of Oyle besides the

The fourth fort of Whale is called Otta Sotta, and is of the same colour of the Trumpa, having 4.0tts Sotta. finnes in his mouth all white, but not aboue halfea yard long , being thicker then the Trumpa, but not fo long : he yeelds the best Oyle, but not aboue thirtie hogsheads.

The fit fort of Whale is called Giberta, of colour blacke like the two first, fauing that it & Giberta, hath standing vpon the top of his backe, a sinne halfea yard long. This Whale is as bigge

as the first; his fins little or nothing worth, being not about halfe a yard long: and hee yeeldethabout twelue hogheads of Oyle, all which his backe yeelds; as for his bellie it yeelds The first fort is called Sedena, being of a whitly colour, and bigger then any of the former.

6. Sedeua.

the finnes not aboue one foot long, and he yeelds little or no Oyle." The feuenth is called Sedena Negro, of colour blacke, with a bumpe on his backe; this Whale yeelds neither Oyle, finnes, nor teeth, and yet he is of a great bigneffe.

8. Semria,

The eight fort is called Sewria, of colour as white as fnow, of the bignesse of a Wherrie, he yeelds not about one hoghead or two of Oyle, nor any finnes, and is good meate to becaten.

## The description of Greenland.

Antiphraffical appellation. I have found of Greenland,

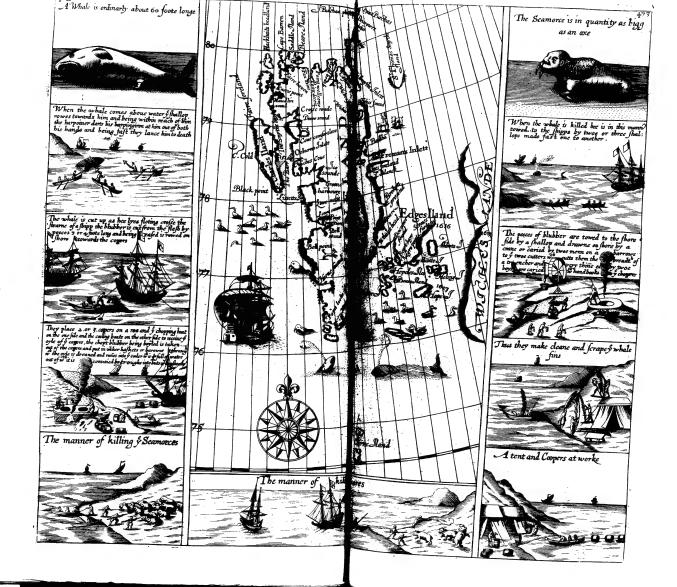
Reinland is a place in Nature nothing like vnto the Name: for certainly there is no place in the World, yet knowne and discouered that is leffe greene then it. It is couered with fnow, both the Mountaines and the lower Lands , till about the beginning of June , being very Mountainous, and beareth neither graffe nor tree, faue onely such as grow wpon the Moores and heathie grounds, in the North parts of England, which we call Heath, or Ling. This growth notes, written When the fnow melteth, and when the ground beginneth to be vincouered. And on this doe the by Ra. Fesherin. Decre feed in the Summer time, and become very fat therewithall in a moneths space, but how 20 they line in the Winter time it is not eafily to be imagined. For feeing at the end of May wee find the ground all couered with fnow, it is very like, that in the time of Winter there is no part bare, where any thing can grow; especially during the time that the Sunne is altogether depressed under the horizon, which in the latitude of 77.degrees, continueth from the eighteenth of October till the fourth of Februarie. This Countrey by all probabilities hath neuer been inhabited by any people; notwithstanding, I thinke men might line there, carrying thither good store of prouition of victuals, and other things necessary against the cold, which perhaps will be vehement in the Winter time, by the former reasons; namely, because the Sunne remayneth so long vinder the Horizon,

Neuertheleffe, there will not be any continuance of darkneffe, because the Sunne in his greatest declination will be but to degrees under the Horizon, at this time of his being in the South of the Meridian in the former latitude of 77, degrees, which is once in foure and twentie homes; and therefore the time of their Noone will bee much lighter then our Night here in England, when the dayes are at the longest; for then is the Sunne 15. degrees under the Horizon at midnight, and yet the greatest darknesse is but like twi-light. And although it bee a generall faying, and a common receined opinion, that the further North the greater cold, yet experience teacheth, that it is not alwaies true. For at Mofeo, and thereabouts in the Winter time, there is extreme frosts and cold weather, informach that oftentimes men are brought homedead, being flarned with cold; and many have their nofes and cares caufed to fall off, through the extremity of the piercing aire : yet at Edenborrow, which is more Northerly by one degree and an halfe, 40 and in all places neere vnto it the aire is temperate, and the cold tolerable, the fnow neuer sying any long time on the ground after it is fallen. Notwithstanding, wee have snow remayning all the yeere long in divers places of England, but the reason of this is, because the aire is ever warmest neere vnto the Sea stoare, (as Edemborrow standeth) and contrariwise the cold is most veeuen neere the hement in places which are fartheft remote from the Sea, as Mofce is fituated.

All the Creatures that appeare vato vs vpon the Land, are Deere, Beares, and Foxes, and fundrie forts of wilde Fowle, as Cuthbert Duckes, Willockes, Stints, Sea-pigeons, Sea-parrets, 30. and 40. the Gulls , Noddies , &c. The Author addes a discourse of sending condemned men to inhabite there, with diners protects for their sermice there, for the further discourrie how best to bee effected, for such things as are most need ary for this employment of Whale-killing, &c. but because experience halb gi- 50 nen best instructions already, and destructions must otherwise be prenented, I have forborne to detaine the Reader in those (otherwise indicious) freculations.

The Southermost part of Greenland stands in 76. degrees 30. minutes, which wee call , Point Looke our, and we have discouered all the West side of the Land as farre vnto the Northwards as 80 degrees odde minutes: in which compasse wee have already experience of fixe or eight good Harbours for the killing of the whale; and on the East side we have discovered as farre as 78. degrees, finding divers llands, great and small, yeelding good Harbours, and store of Whales, and Sex-horses; and for a surther discovery on the East side, I am perswaded it had beene farre greater, if the Dutch had not so disturbed vs in our proceedings, as also the Hull-men, who ever practifed to follow our steps, after the discouerie within one yeere or two: as by our Mafters Journall more at large may appeare. The best actions have their hindrances and crosses, and so hath this had; for, the Dutch have beene a bane to this Trade and Discouerie: The Hull-men have done some bad service in this Action , for they were the first that carried the Dutch to the Tutches, as by Whomdens Oath and Journalt appeares, they were also a cause of that bad Voyage,

Sea, and farre Sun, betwixt Winters are extreme, R. Foth.



to vs in 1618, in that they animated the Flemmings to come backe to Greenland againe, as appeareth in this lournall, in the yeere 1617, they have done fome other ill fernices against vs as well as the Dutch, but in regard they are our Countrey-men, I will omit and wish their amendment, and pray to God to fend a good and further Discouery to bee made in these Northerne

Eader, I present thee here three admirable Voyages of Discourry made by the Dutch, no whit en-R Lader, I prejent thee very cure automator of the more of Alls and Arts. They base formerly been published in Dutch, andtranslated by W. Philip. I have beere abbreniated them, as my vie is with others, 10 to aunid prolixitie. The Dutch themselmes " write that after the English Rustian Trade, one Oliver " Prolesmena. to assess presented: to obtain the minimum white the chigain and the set of the first the chigain and the set of the s nards, by the personalism of P. Plancius to goveright Northwards from Noua Zemla. Linschot wone fiftie miles beyond the Streights, the Northerly winds, and late scason forcing him backe. Bernards Journall bere followeth, of that and his two later Voyages, the two later written by one compleyed therein.

#### CHAP. III.

The first Nauigation of WILLIAM BARENTS, alias BER-NARDS into the North Seas ; Written by G z-RAT de VEER.



T is a most certayneand an affured Affertion, that nothing doth more benefit and further the Common-wealth (specially these Countryes) then the art and knowledge of Nauigation, in regard that such Countreyes and Nations as are strong and mightie at Sea, have the meanes and ready way to draw, fetch, and bring vnto them for their mayntenance, all the principallest commodities and fruits

In these Natigations we must not be dismayed if some missike, or if we cannot perfect a Difconery in the first, second, or third Voyage. Alexander Magnis (after he had wonne all Greeis, A thing not and from thence entred into little and great Afia; and comming to the farthest parts of India, communed, there found fome difficultie to paffe) faid, If wee had not gone forward, and perfifted in our intent, which other men effeemed and held to be impossible, we had fill remayined and flayed in the Allthingsare entry of Cieilia, where as now we have over-runne and past through all those large and spacious effected in Countreyes : for nothing is found and effected all at one time, neyther is any thing that is put in convenient 40 practice, prefently brought to an end. To the which end, Cierro wifely faith; God hath given vs time. fome things, and not all things, that our Succeffors allo might have some-what to doe. Therefore we mult not leave off, nor flay our pretence in the middle of our proceedings, as long as there is any commoditie to be hoped, and in time to bee obtayned : for that the greatest and richeft Treasures are hardliest to be found. I thought good to set downe, in regard that I have vndertaken to describe the three Voyages made into the North Seas, in three yeeres, one after the other; behind Norway, and along and about Musconia, towards the Kingdome of Cashaia, and China: whereof, the two laft, I my felfe holpe to effect; and yet brought them not to the defired end that we well hoped.

First, to show our diligent, and most toylesome labour and paines taken, to find out the right The first sin-50 courfe; which we could not bring to paffe, as wee well hoped, wished, and defired, and possible dingis hard, might have found it, by croffing the Seas, if we had taken the right courle; if the Ice & the fhort-but the iccone neffe of time, and bad croffes had not hindered vs. We have affuredly found, that the onely and enfer. most hinderance to der Voyage, was the Ice that we found about Nona Zembla, vnder 73.74-75. and 76. degrees, and not so much voon the Seabetweene both the Lands : whereby it appeareth, that not the neerenesse of the North-pole, but the Ice that commeth in and out from the Tartarian Sea, about Nona Zembla, caused vs to feele the greatest cold. Therefore in regard that the necreneffe of the Pole was not the cause of the great cold that wee felt, if wee had had the meanes to have held our appointed and illrended courfe into the North-east, we had peraduenture found some entrance : which course wee could not hold from Nona Zembla , because that 60 there we entred amongst great store of Ice; and how it was about Nona Zembla, we could not tel, before we had fought it; and when we had fought it, we could not then alter our course, at though also it is vincertayn, what we should have done, if we had continued in our North-east course, because it is not yet found out. But it is true, that in the Countrey lying vnder 80. degrees, (which we esteeme to be Greenland) there is both Leaues and Graffe to be feene : Wherein, fuch Bealts

of the heate voder the line. with the cold North Pole.

The resolute Liam Baranto.

lune s.

lars beeing

knowne to

many of our

Mariners, I

as feed of Leaues and Graffe (as Harts, Hinds, and fuch like heafts line, whereas to the contrary in Nona Zambia, there groweth neyther Leanes nor Graffe, and there are no beafts therein but fuch as eate fields, as Beares and Foxes, &c. Although None Zembla lyeth 4.5, and 6. de. grees more Southerly from the Pole, then the other Land aforefaid. It is also manitest, that vp. on the South and North-fide of the Line of the Sunne on both fides, betweene both the Troon the south and destroyed and an halfe, yet it is as hot, as it is right under the Line. What worse der then should it be, that about the North-pole also, and as many degrees on both fides, it should not be colder then right under the Pole ! It was not the Sea, nor the necrencife unto the Pole, but the Ice about the Land, that let and hindered vs (as I faid before) for that affoone as we made but the acc apose the Land, and put more into the Sca, although it was much further Northward, preferrly to we felt more warmth, and in that opinion our Pilot William Barent; dyed, who not wishfunding the searchal and intolerable cold that he indured, yet he was not discouraged, but offered to by wagers with divers of vs, that by Gods helpe, hee would bring that pretended Voyage to an wagers wire a source North-eaft from the North Cape, But I will leave that, and flew you of the three Voyages aforefaid, begunne and fet forth by the permission and furtherance of the Generall States of the vnited Proninces, and of Prince Marrice, as Admirall of the Ses, and the

First, you must vinderstand, that in Anno 1594, there was four eships fet forth out of theynited Prounces, whereof two were of Amferdam; one of Zelands, and one of Enchangen, that were appointed to fayle into the North Seas, to discouer the Kingdomes of Cathaia, and Chine; 30 Northward from Norway, Masconia, and about Tarteria, whereof William Bareut, a notable skilfull and wife Pilot, was Commander over the ships of Amsterdam, and with them vpon Whit-funday, departed from Amfterdam, and went to the Toxell.

Vpon the fifth of Iume they sayled out of the Texel, and having a good wind and faire weather, vpon the three and twentieth of Iune, they arrived at Rilduin in Masconia, which for that it is a place well knowne and a common Voyage, I will make no further description thereof. The nine and twentieth of June, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone, they fet fayle out

The fourth of July they faw None Zembla, lying South-east and by East fix or feuen miles from them, where they had blacke during ground at one hundred and fine fathome. William Ba- 10 rents tooke the height of the Sunne with his Croffe-ftaffe, when it was at the loweft , that is betweene North North-east, and East and by North, and found it to be eleuated about the Hon-ZOR fix degrees and f. part, his declination being 12. degrees and 55. minutes, from whence fibfiracting the aforefard height, there reflech fix menth degrees and 35. minutes, which being fibflracted from 90. degrees, there refleth 73. degrees and 25. minutes. Then they wound Eafward and layled fine miles, East and by South, and East South-east, and past by a long point of Land that lay out into the Sea, which they named Langenes, and hard by that point East-ward, there was a great Bay, where they went a Land with their Boat, but found no people. From Langenes to Cape Bape, Eaft North-eaft it is foure miles. From Cape Bape to the West point of Lombsbay North-east and by North are fine miles, and betweene them both there are two 40 Creeks. Lombibay is a great wide Bay, on the West-side thereof having a faire Hauen, fix, feuen,

or eight fathome deepe, blacke fand, there they went on floare with their Boat, and voon the shoare placed a Beacon, made of an old Mast which they found there; calling the Bay Lombson, because of a certayne kind of Beares so called, which they found there in great abundance. The East point of Louisbay, is a long narrow point, and by it there lyeth an lland, and from that long point to Sea-ward in, there is a great Creeke. This Lambfle ) lyeth under 74. degrees and , part. Admirals Hand From Lambifay to the point of the Admirals Hand, they fayled fix or feven miles, North-eaft and by North. The Admirals Iland is not very faire on the East-fide, but a faire off very flat, so that you must shunne it long before you come at it, it is also very vieuen, for at one casting of the Lead they had ten fathome deepe, and presently at another casting of the Lead they had but 50 fix fathome, and presently after that agains ten, eleuen, and twelve fathome, the streame runnine hard against the Flats.

From the East-end of the Admirals lland, to Cape Negro, that is the Blacke point, they sayled about fine or fix miles, East North-east, and a mile without the Blacke point it inscuenty fathome deepe, the ground flimy, as vpon Pamphine, right East-ward of the Blacke point, there are two sharpe pointed Hils in the Creeke, that are easie to be knowne. The fixt of July, the Sunne being Williams Hand North, they come right before the Blacks point with faire weather, this Blacks point lyeth under 75. degrees and 20. minutes. From the Blacke pome to Williams Hand, they fayled feuen or eight

miles, East North-east, and betweene them both about halfe a mile, there lay a small lland. The fewenth of July chey fayled from Williams Iland, and then Williams Bareets tooke the 60 height of the Sunne, with his Croffe-staffe, and found it to be cleusted above the Horizon in the South-west and by South 53: degrees and 6. minutes, his declination being 22. degrees and 49. minutes, which being added to \$3. degrees and 6. minutes, make 75. degrees and 55. minutes. This is the right height of the Pole of the faid lland. In this Iland they found great flore of

Drifimood, and many Sea-horses being a kind of fish that keepeth in the Sea, having very great Sea-horses, of teeth, which at this day are vied in fread of Juory or Elephants Teeth, there alio is a good Road Mories. for ships, at twelve and thirreene fathome deepe against all winds, except it bee West Southwest, and West-winds, and there they found a piece of a Russia ship, and that day they had the wind East North-east, mistie weather.

The ninth of July they entred into Beeren-fort, vpon the Road under Williams Hand, and there Beeren-fort they found a white Beare, which they perceiuing, presently entred into their Boat, and shot her white Beare, into the bodie with a Musket, but the Beare shewed most wonderfull strength, which almost is terrible. not to be found in any beatt, for no man euer heard the like to bee done by any Lion or cruell beaft what locuer : for not with standing that she was shot into the bodie, yet she leapt up, and fwamme in the water, the men that were in the Boat rowing after her, casta Rope about her necks, and by that meanes drew her at the sterne of the Boat, for that not having seene the like Beare before, they thought to have carryed her aline in the ship, and to have shewed her for a ftrange wonder in Holland; but she vied fuch force, that they were glad that they were rid of her, and contented themselves with her skinne only, for shee made such a noyse, and stroue in fuch fort, that it was admirable, wherewith they let her reft and gaue her more scope, with the Rope that they held her by, and so drew her in that fort after them, by that meaner to wearie her : meane-time, William Barents made neerer to ber , but the Beare swamme to the Boat , and with her fore-feet got hold of the fterne thereof, which William Barents perceining, faid, she will 20 there reft her felfe, but she had another meaning, for she vsed such force, that at last the had gotten halfe her body into the Boat, wherewith the men were fo abalhed, that they ranne into the further end of the Boat, and thought verily to have beene spoyled by her, but by a strange meanes they were delinered from her, for that the Rope that was about her necke, caught hold voon the hooke of the Ruther, whereby the Beare could get no further, but fo was held backe, and hanging in that manner, one of the men boldly stept forth from the end of the Scute, and thrult her into the bodie with a halfe-pike; and therewith thee fell downe into the water, and fo they rowed forward with her to the shippe, drawing her after them, till shee was in a manner dead,

wherewith they killed her out-right, and having flayed her, brought the skin to Amiferdam. The twentieth of July, they sayled out of Beeren-fort from Williams lland, and the same day Handof Croffet in the morning got to the Hand of Creffer, and there went on Land with their Pinnaffe, and found the lland to be barren, and full of Cliffes and Rocks, in it there was a small Hauten, whereinto they rowed with their Boat. This Iland is about halfe a mile long, and reacheth East and West; on the West end in hath a banke, about a third part of a mile long, and at the East end also another banke, upon this Hand there standeth two great Crosses, the Hand lyeth about two long miles from the firme Land, and under the East-and thereof there is a good Road, at fixe and twentie fathome fort ground; and formewhat closer to the Hand on the Strand, at nine fathome

From the Iland of Croffes to the point of Cape Naffam, they fayled Baft, and Eaft and by Cape Naffam, North about eight miles ; it is a long flat point which you must be carefull to shunne, for thereabouts at feuen fathome there were flats or shoales, very farre from the Land; it lyeth almost vnder 76. degrees and a halfe. From the West end of Williams Hand, to the Hand with the Croffes is three miles , the course North. From Nasaw point they fayted East and by South , and East South-east fine miles, and then they thought that they faw Land in Nor th-east, and by East, and fayled towards it fine miles North-salt to descrie it, thinking it to bee another Land, that lay Northward from Nous Zemble, but it began to blow so hard out of the West, that they were forced to take in their Marfaile, and yet the wind rofe in fuch manner . that they were forced to take in all their Sayles, and the Sea went to hollow, that they were confirmed to drine fixteene houres together, without fayle, eight or nine miles East North-east.

The elementh of July their Boar was by a great want of the Sea funke to the ground, and by that meanes they loft it, and after that they draue without fayles fine miles, East and by South, at laft the Sunne being almost South-east, she wind came about to the North-west, and then the weather began somewhat to cleere up, but yet it was very mistie. Then they hoysed up their fayles againe and fayled foure miles till night, that the Sunne was North and by East, and there they had fixtie fathome deepe, muddie ground, and then they faw certayne flakes of Ice, at which time voon the twelfth of July they wound West, and held North-west, and fayled about a mile with miftie weather, and a North-west wind, and sayled up and downe West Southwest three or foure miles, to see if they sould find their Boat againe: after that they wound againe with the wind, and layled foure miles South-east, till the Sunne was South-welt, and then they were close by the Land of Nous Zembla , that lay East and by North , and West and by 60 South, from thence they wound over against ill noone, and fayled three miles, North and by West, and then till the Sunne was North-west, they held North-west and by North three miles,

then they wound East-ward and sayled foure or fine miles North-east and by East. The thirteenth of July at night, they found great store of Ice, as much as they could descry out of the top, that lay as if it had beene a plaine field of Ice, then they wound Westward our from

Cape Truft.

The seventeenth of July, William Barents tooke the height of the Sunne with his entirela-The separate of the policy and then they were voider 77, degrees and a tof the Pole, and dyled Southward fix miles, and perceived the firme Land, lying South from them. Then they fayled till the nineteenth of July in the morning, Weit South-weft fixe or feuen miles, with a North-weft winde, and miftie weat' er, and after that South-west and South-west and by West seven miles, the Sunne being 77. degrees 5. minutes leffe. Then they fayled two miles South-west, and were close by the

The flue and reventieth of Iuly, they were so inclosed about with flakes of Ice, that out of the top they could not differne any thing beyond it, and fought to get through the Ice, but they could not paffe beyond it. At night, they tooke the height of the Sunne, when it was at the 10 lowest betweene North and North-east, and North-east and by North, it being eleuated about the Horizon 6, degrees, and 4, his Declination being 19, degrees 50, minutes, now take 6. degrees 1, from 19. degrees and 50. minutes, and there refleth 13. degrees 5. minutes, which fub.

stracted from 90. there resteth 77. degrees leste 5. minutes.

The fixe and twentieth of July in the morning, they tayled fixe miles South South-eaft, till the Sunne was South-west, and then South-east fixe miles, and were within a mile of the land of Nova Zembla, and came againe to Cape Truft.

The eight and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken at noone with the Afrelabium, it was found to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 57. degrees and 6.minutes, her Declination being 19. degrees and 18. minutes, which in all is 76. degrees and 24. minutes, they being then a- 24 bour foure miles from the land of None Zembla, that lay all couered ouer with Snow, the wea-

The nine and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken with the Croffe-ftaffe, A-Brolabium & Quadrant, they found it to be elevated aboue the Horizon 32. degrees, her declination on being 19. degrees, which substracted from 32. there resteth 13. degrees of the Equator, which being fubftracted from 90, there refted 77, degrees, and then the nearest North point of Nose Zembla, called the lee point, lay right East from them. There they found certaine Stones that glistered like gold, which for that cause they named Gold-stones, and there also they had a faire Bay

Vpon the same day they wound Southward againe, and sayled South-east two miles be- 30 tweene the Land and the Ice, and after that from the Ice poin & East, and to the Southward fixe miles to the Ilands of Orange; and there they laboured forward betweene the Land and the Ice, with faire full weather, and vpon the one and thirtieth of July got to the Hands of Orange. And there went to one of those Hands, where they found about two hundred Walrushen, or Sea-horfes, lying vpon the shoare to bast themselues in the Sunne. This Sea-horse is a wonderfull strong Monster of the Sea, much bigger then an Oxe, which keepes continually in the Seas, haning a skin like a Sea-calfe or Seale, with very short hayre, mouthed like a Lion, and many times they lye vpon the Ice; they are hardly killed vnlesse you strike them just vpon the forehead, it hath foure Feet, but no Eares, and commonly it hath one or two young ones at a time. And when the Filher-men chance to finde them vpon a flake of Ice with their young ones, shee casteth her 40 young ones before her into the water, and then takes them in her Armes and fo plungeth vp and downe with them, and when shee will reuenge her-felse vpon the Boates, or make resistance against them, then she casts her young ones from her againe, and with all her force gouth towards the Boate (whereby our men were once in no small danger, for that the Sea-horse had almost ftricken her teeth into the sterne of their Boate) thinking to over-throw it, but by meanes of the great crie that the men made, the was afraid, and fwomme away againe, and tooke her young ones againe in her armes. They have two teeth sticking out of their mouthes, on each fide one, each being about halfe an Ell long, and are effeemed to bee as good as any Iuorie or Elephants teeth, specially in Muscomia, Tartaria, and thereabouts where they are knowne, for they are as

The Sea-horfes that lay bathing themselues upon the Land, our men supposing that they could not defend themselves being out of the water, went on shoare to assaile them, and sought with them, to get their Teeth that are so rich, but they brake all their Hatchets, Cuttle-axes, and Pikes in pieces, and could not kill one of them, but strucke some of their Teeth out of their mourthes, which they tooke with them : and when they could get nothing against them by fighting, they agreed to goe aboord the Ship, to fetch some of their great Ordnance, to shoot at them therewith; but it began to blow so hard, that it rent the Ice into great pieces, so that they were forced not to doe it, and therewith they found a great white Beare that flept, which they shot into the bodie, but shee ranne away, and entred into the water; the men following her with their Boate, and killed her out-right, and then drew her vpon the Ice, and so sticking a halft-pike 60 vpright, bound her fast vnto it, thinking to fetch her when they came back againe, to shoot at the Sea-horfes with their Ordnance, but for that it began more and more to blow, and the Ice therewith brake in peeces, they did nothing at all.

After that, William Barouss finding that hee could hardly get through, to accomplish and end

CH AP.3. Nauigations into the North-Seas, by William Barents.

his pretended Voyage, his men also beginning to bee wearie, and would savle no further, they all together agreed to returne backe againe, to meet with the other Ships that had taken their course Thererentne to the Wer-gates, or the Straights of Maffer, to know what Difconeries they had made there. The backe again. first of August they turned their course to sayle backe againe from the Ilands of Orange; There William Berents tooke the height of the Sunne, it being vnder 71. degrees and #. and there they found a great Creeke, which William Barents judged to bee the place where Olimer Brunel had beene before, called Coffine farch. From the Blacke Hand they fayled South, and South and by Blacke Hand. East to another small point three miles, on which point there stood a Crosse, and therefore they called it the Croffe-poor, there also was a flat Bay and low water, fine, fix, or seuen sadome deepe Croffe-point.

Io fost ground. From Craft-paint they fayled along by the land South South-east source miles, and then came to another small point, which behind it had a great Creeke, that reached Eastward: This point they called the fifth point, or Saint Lawrence point. From the fifth point they fayled to the Seemer point three miles, South South-east, and there lay a long blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there flood a Croffe; then they entred into the Ice againe, and put inward to the Sea because of the Icr. Their intent was to sayle along the coast of Nona Zembla to the Wey-gates, but by reason that the Ice met them, they wound Westward, and from the ninth of August in the Equening, till the tenth of August in the Morning, sayled West and by North eleuen miles, and after that foure miles West North-west, and North-west and by West, the winde being North in the Morning they wound Eastward againe, and fayled vntill Ecuening ten miles East, and and were against a great Creeke, where with their Boate they went on land, and there found a faire Hauen fine fathorne deepe, fandie ground. This Creeke on the North fide hath three blacke

20 East and by South , after that East, and East and by North foure miles, and there they faw land. points, and about the three points lyeth the road, but you must keepe somewhat from the third point, for it is stonie, and betweene the second and third point there is another faire Bay, for Saint Laurens North-west, North, and North-east windes, blacke sandie ground. This Bay they called Saint Bay.

Laurence Bay, and there they tooke the height of the Sunne, which was 70, degrees and \$. From Saint Laurence Bay, South South-east two miles to Seemes point, there lay along blacke Scence point. Rocke close by the land, whereon there food a Crosse, there they went on Land with their Boat, and perceived that fome men had beene there, and that they were fled to faue themselves.

20 for there they found fixe Sackes with Rye-meale buried in the ground, and a heape of stones by the Croffe, and a Bullet for a great Piece, and thereabouts also there stood another Croffe, with three Houses made of wood, after the North Countrey manner : and in the houses they found many barrels of Pike-staues, whereby they conjectured, that there they vied to take Salmons. and by them stood five or fix Coffins, by Granes, with dead mensbones, the Coffins standing vp. on the ground all filled vp with fromes ; there also lay a broken Ruffis thip, the Keele thereof being fortie foure foot long, but they could fee no man on the Land : it is a faire Hauen for all winder, which they called the Meale-hauer, because of the Meale that they found there. From the blacke Rocke or Cliffe with the Croffe, two miles South South-east, there lay a low Iland a little into the Sea; from whence they fayled nine or ten miles South South-east, there the height 40 of the Sunne was 76. degrees and 50. minutes, when it was South South-west. From that Iland they fayled along by the Land foure miles South-east and by South, there they came to two

Ilands, whereof the vetermost lay a mile from the Land : those Ilands they called Saint Clara. Then they entred into the Ice againe, and woond inward to the Sea in the wind, and fayled from the Hand vntill Ecuening, West South-west foure miles, the wind being North-west; that Ecuening it was very miftie, and then they had eightie fathome deepe.

Then againe they fayled South-west and by West, and West South-west three miles, there they had seventie fathome deepe, and so sayled till the thirteenth of August in the morning, South-west and by West foure miles, two houres before they had ground at fiftie fixe fathome, and in the morning at fortie fine fathome, foft muddie ground. Then they woond from the land and fayled North, and North and by East foure miles, from thence they woond to land againe, and fayled till the fourteene of August, fine or fixe miles South-west, fayling close by the land, colones,

which (as they ghelle) was the Hand of Colgogon.

August the fifteenth, the Sun being South-west, William Baronts tooke the height thereof, and found it to bee elevated above the Horizon 35. degrees, his Declination being 14. degrees and 1. fo that as there wanted 55 degrees of 90. which 55. and 14. degrees 1. being both added together, made 69. Degrees 15. Minutes, which was the height of the Pole in that place, the wind being North-west, then they sayled two miles more Eastward, and came to the Hands called Matfire Matfire and and Delgoy, and there in the morning they met with the other Ships of their companie, being of They meet Zelands and Enck-hussen, that came out of Wes-gates the same day, there they shewed each other with their companies where they had beene, and how farre each of them had sayled and discoursed.

The Ship of Enck buy fen had past the Straights of Weg-gates, and faid, that at the end of Weggates hee had found a large Sea, and that they had fayled fiftie or fixtie miles further Eastward, and were of opinion that they had beene about the River Obi, that commeth out of Tartaria, and that the Land of Tartaria reacheth North-eastward agains from thence, whereby they thought

that they were not farrefrom Cape Tabia, which is the point of Tarania, that reacheth towards that they were the Kingdome of Cathai, North-eaft and then Southward, and so thinking that they had Disco. nered enough for that time, and that it was too late in the yeere to fayle any further, as allo that perce enough for that time, and that it was been and to come home again before Winter, they turned against owards the Wog-gates, and came to an Iland about five miles great, lying Southturned against war and the farteries fide, and called it the States lland, there they found many Stones that were of Christall Mountayne, being a kind of Diamond,

When they were met together, as I sayd before, they made fignes of joy, discharging some of when they were merrie, the other Ships thinking that William Berests had layled round their Ordnance, and were mettic, the other only a timining the Wey-gate: and after they had to about venue comments, and made figures of joy for their meeting, they fet their fixed each other what they had done, and made figures of joy for their meeting, they fet their inewes seat unto water the course to turne backs agains for Holland, and upon the fatteenth of August they went under course to turne backs agains for Holland, and upon the fatteenth of August they went under the Hands of Mailes and Delger, and put into the road, because the wind was North-well, and lay till the eighteenth of August. Then they set sayle, and came to the Taxes the fixteenth

### CHAP. IIII.

A briefe Declaration of BARENTS his fecond Nationation, made in Anno 1595. behinde Norway, Muscouia, and Tartaria, written by GERAT DE VEER.

He foure Ships aforefaid, being returned home about Haruest-time, in Anne 1544 they were in good hope that the Voyage aforefaid would bee done, by pafing along the Straights of Woy-gates, and ipecially by the troort made by the two Ships of Zelands, and East, burgen, wherein John England of Linfchores was Committee, who declared the manner of their travell in fuch fort, that the Generall States and Prince (Maurice refolued, in the beginning of the next yeere to pre- 30

pare certayne Ships, not onely (as they went before) to discouer the passage, but to lend certayn Wares and Merchandizes thither, wherein the Merchants might lade what Wares they woold, with certaine Factors to fell the faid Wares, in fuch places as they fhould arrive, neither paying Fraight nor Custome. Peter Plantins a learned Cosmographer, being a great furtherer and setter forward of this Voyage, and was their chiefe Instructer therein, setting downe the scinuation of the Coasts of Tartaria, Calbaia, & China; but how they lye it is not yet sufficiently Discovered, for that the courses and rules by him set downe, were not fully effected, by meanes of some inconveniences that fell out, which by reason of the shortnesse of time could not bee holpen,

In Anno 1 595, the Generall States of the vnited Prominces, and Prince Maurice, caused seven Ships to be prepared to fayle through the Weg-gates, or the Straights of Naffare, to the King-40 dome of Cathaia and China: two out of Amsterdam, two out of Zelands, two out of Encl. hopfen, and one out of Rosterdam: fixe of them laden with divers kindes of Wares, Merchandizes, and with Money and Factors, to fell the faid Wares; the fouenth being a Pinnaffe, that had Commiffion, when the other Ships were past about the Cape de Tabin (which is the furthest point of Tanaria) or fo farre, that they might fayle forth Southward, without any let or hinderance of the Ice, to turne backe againe, and to bring newes thereof : and I being in William Barent: Ship that was our chiefe Pilot, and Lames Hemf Acres chiefe Factor, thought good to write downe the fame in order, as it is hereafter declared, as I did the first Voyage, according to the course and

First, after we had beene mustered at Amsterdam, and every man taken an Oath, that was then 50 purposely ministred vato vs; vpon the eighteene of June wee sayled to the Texes, from thence to put to Sea, with other Ships that were appointed to meet via a acertayne day; and so tobegin our Voyage in the name of God. The second of July wee set sayle out of the Texes. The fifth of August, the North Cape lay about two miles East from vs, and when the Sunne was Northwest, the Mosher and her Daughters lay Southward from vs foure miles.

The fewenteenth, wee faw great store of Ice, all along the Coast of Nona Zembla, and cashing out the Lead, had 75. fathom foft ground. After that we held divers courses because of the lee, and fayled South-east and by East, & South South-east, for the space of eighteene miles, till the eighteenth of August, when the Sunne was East, and then we cast out the lead againe, and found 30. fathome fort ground, and within two houres after that, fathome, red fand, with small shelles: 69 three Glasses after that we had ground at twentie fathome, red fand, with blacke shels, as before: then wee faw two Ilands, which they of Euck-bussen gave the names of Prince Maurice and his Brother, which lay from ve South-east three miles, being low Land, and then wee fayled eight miles, till the Sun was South. Then we fayled East, and of tentimes cashing out the lead, we found

twentie, nineteene, eighteene, and seuenteene fathome deep, good ground mixed with black shels. and faw the Wey-gates (the Sunne being West) which Ly East North-east from vs about fine miles, and after that we fayled about eight miles.

Then we fayled under 70. degrees, untill we came to the Wey gates , most part through broken Ice, and when we got to Weg-gates, we cast out our Lead, and for a long time found thirteene and fourteene fathome, fort ground, mixed with blacke thels, not long after that we cast out the Lead and found ten fathome deepe, the wind being North, and we forced to hold ftifly aloofe, in regard of the great quantitie of Ice, till about mid-night, then were forced to wind Northward because of certaine Rocks that lay on the Southfide of Wey-gates, right before vs, about a mile and a halfe, having ten fathome deepe : then we changed our courfe, and fayled West North-west for the space of foure Glasses, after that we wound about againe East, and East and by South, and fo entred into VVer-gates, and as wee went in, wee cast out the Lead, and found seven fathome deepe, little more or leffe, till the nineteenth of August, and then the Sunne being South-east, we entred into the Weg-gates, in the Road, the wind being North. The right Channell betweene Imagepoint, the Image point and the Samuters Land was full of Ice, so that it was not well to bee past the Samuters Land row, and so we went into the Road (which we called the Trace Bay, because we found store of Trace Bay. Traen-oyle there, this is a good Bay for the course of the Ice, and good almost for all winds, and we may fayle to farre into it as we will, at foure, fine, and three fathome, good Anchor-ground, on the East fide it is deepe water.

The twentieth of August, the height of the Sunne being taken with the Crosse-staffe, wee found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 69. degrees 21. minutes, when it was South-west and by South, being at the highest, or before it beganne to descend. The one and twentieth of August, we went on Land within the VVog-gates with foureand fiftie men, to see the situation They goe on of the Countrey, and being two miles within the Land we found many Vel-werek, Traen, and Land fuch like Wares, and divers foot-steps of men, and Deere; whereby wee perceived that fome men dwelt there abouts, or else vied to come thither. And to affure vs the more thereof, wee might perceiue it by the great number of Images, which we found there vpon the Image or Beelthooke, Images. (so called by vs) in great abundance, whereof ten dayes after wee were better informed by the Samuters and the Russians, when wee spake with them. And when wee entred further into the Land, we vied all the meanes we could, to fee if we could find any houses or men, by whom we might be informed of the ficuation of the Sea there abouts, whereof afterward we had better in-

telligence by the Samuers; that told vs, that there are certayne men dwelling on the VVeygates, and voon Nona Zembla, but we could neither find men shoules, nor any other things, fo that to have better information, wee went with some of our men further South-east into the Land; towards the Sea-fide, and as we went, we found a path-way made with mens feet in the Mosse or Marsh-ground, about halfe knee deepe, for that going so deepe we felt hard ground vnder our feet, which at the deepest was no higher then our shooes, and as we went forward to the Sea-coalt, we were exceeding glad, thinking that we had feene a passage open, where we might get through, because we saw so little Ice there : and in the Euening entring into our ship againe, we showed them that newes. Meane-time, our Master had fent out a Boat to fee if the Tarrarian Sea was open, but it could not get into the Sea because of the Ice, yet they rowed to the Cross-point, and there let the Boat lye, and went over the Land to the West point, and there

perceived that the Ice in the Tartarian Sea, lay full voon the Ruffian Coafts, and in the mouth of VVey-gates. The three and twentieth of August we found a Lodgie, or Boat of Pizzere, which was fewed together with Bast or Ropes, that had beene Northward to seeke for some Sea-horses Teeth, Traen, and Geefe, which they fetche with their Boat, to lade in certaine shippes that were to come out of Ruffia through Wey-gates. Which ships they said (when they spake with vs) were to fayle into the Tartarian Sea, by the River of Oby, to a place called Ugolita in Tartaria, there

50 to flay all Winter, as they vied to doe euery yeere : and told vs that it would yet bee nine or ten Weekes ere it began to freeze in that place, and that when it once beganne to freeze, it would freeze so hard, that as then men might go ouer the Sea into Tartaria (along vpon the Ice) which

The foure and twentieth of August in the morning betimes, we went on board of the Lodgie, to have further information and infiruction of the Sea, on the Eaffide of PVer-gates, and they gaue vs good inftruction, fuch as you have heard.

The fine and twentieth of August we went agains to the Lodgie, and in friendly manner spake with them, we for our parts offering them friendship; and then they gaue vs eight fat Geefe, that lay in the bottome of their Boat : we defired that one or two of them would goe with vs a-6c board our ship, and they willingly went with vs to the number of seuen; and being in our ship, they wondred much at the greatnesse and furniture of our ships and after they had seene and looked into it in every place, we fet Fish, Butter and Cheese before them to eate, but they refused it; faying, that that day was a Fasting day with them, but at last when they faw some of our Pickled Herrings, they eate them both heads, tayles, skinnes, and guts, and having eaten thereof,

Iames Hemfter exploit.

we gaue them a small Firkin of Herrings, for the which they gaue vs great thankes, knowing not what friendship they should doe vs to require our courteste, and wee brought them with our Pinnasse into the Traen Bay. About Noone we hoysed up our Anchors with a West North-west wind; the course of fretching of VVogague, is East to Grup point, and then North-east to the Twiff point, and fomewhat more Easterly: From thence the Land of Wogague, reacheth North-North-east, and North and by East, and then North, and somewhat Westerly, wee syled North-eaft and Eaft ward two miles, by the Twift point, but then we were compelled to faile backe againe, because of the great store of Ice, and tooke our course to our Road aforesaid : and fayling backe againe we found a good place by the Croffe point, to anchor in that night. The fix and twentieth of August in the morning we hoyfed Anchor, and put out our fork faile, and to 10 failed to our old Road, and there to stay for a more convenient time.

The eight and twentie, nine and twentie, and thirtieth of August till the one and thirtieth. They peaks I me cigar and we can summary and William B. arents our Captaine failed to the wind for the most part was South-west, and William B. arents our Captaine failed to the South-fide of VVey-gates, and there went on Land, where we found certaine Wildmen (called Samuers) and yet not altogether wilde, for they being twentie in number, staid and spake with our men, being but nine together, about a mile within the Land, our men not thinking to find any men there (for that we had at other times beene on Land in the VVeg-gates, and faw none) at last, it being mistie weather, they perceived men, five and five in a company, and weewere hard by them before we knew it : then our Interpretour went alone towards them to speake with them; which they perceining, fent one towards vs, who comming almost to our men, tooke 2a an Arrow out of his Quiner, offering to shoot at him; wherewith our Interpretor, being with out Armes, was afraid, and cryed vito him, faying (in Ruffien speech;) Shoote not, we are friends: which the other hearing, cast his Bow and Arrowes to the ground, therewith giving him to understand that he was well content to sprake with our man: which done, our man called to him once againe, and faid: We are friends: whereunto he made answere and faid; then you are welcome : and fainting one the other, bended both their heads downe towards the ground, after the Russian manner: this done, our Interpretor questioned with him, about the situation and streeching of the Sea East-ward through the Streights of Wy-gates; whereof he gaue vs good infinction, saying that when they should have past a point of land about five daies sailing from thence, shewing North-eastward; that after that, there is a great Sea (shewing towards the South-east to vpward,) faying, that he knew it very well, for that one had beene there that was fenr thither by their King with certaine Souldiers, whereof he had beene Captaine.

The manner of their Apparell is, like as we vie to paint Wildmen, but they are not wilderfor they are of reasonable judgement: they are apparelled in Harts skinnes from the head to the feet, valeffe it be the principalleft of them, which are apparelled, whether they be men or women, like vnto the reft, as atorefaid, vnlesse it be on their heads, which they couer with certains coloured Cloth lined with Furre : the rest weire Caps of Harts or Bucks skinnes, the rough fide Haire, perion, outwards, which fland close to their heads, and are very fir. They weare long Haire, which they make the state of their heads, and are very fir. They weare long Haire, which they flands. pleate and fold, and let it hang downe you their backes. They are (for the most pare all) thore and fow of stature, with broad flat faces, small eyes, thore legs, their knees standing outwards 40 and are very quicke to goe and leape. They trust not Strangers; for although that wee shewed them all the courtesse and friendship that wee could, yet they trusted vs not much : which wee perceived hereby, that as upon the first of September wee went agains on Land to them, and that one of our men desired to see one of their Bowes : they refused it, making a signe that they would not doe it. Hee that they called their King, had Centinels standing abroad, to see what was done in the Countrey, and what was bought and fold : At last, one of our men went necrer to one of the Centinels, to speake with him, and offered him great friendship, according to their accustomed manner, withall giving him a Bisket; which he with great thankes tooke, and presently eate it; and while hee eate it, hee still lookt diligently about him on all sides what

Their Sleds.

Their King.

Their Sleds stood alwayes readie with one or two Harts in them, that runne so swiftly with one or two men in them, that our Horses are not able to follow them. One of our men shota Musket towards the Sea, wherewith they were in fo great feare, that they ranne and leapt like mad men : yet at last, they satisfied themselves, when they perceived that it was not maliciously done to hurt them: and we told them by our Interpretor, that we vied our Peeces in flead of Bowes; whereat they wondered, because of the great blow and noyse that it gaue and made; and to shew them what wee could doe therewith, one of our men tooke a flat stone about halfe a handfull broad, and let it vpon a Hill a good way off from him: which they perceiving, and thinking that we meant some-what thereby, fiftie or fixtie of them gathered round about vs; and yet some-what farre off, wherewith hee that had the Peece, shot it off, and with the Bullet fmote the stone in sunder: whereat they wondred much more then before,

Departure.

After that, wee tooke our leaues one of the other, with great friendship on both sides; and when we were in our Pinnasse, wee all put off our Hats, and bowed our heads viito them, sounding our Trumpet: They (in their manner) faluting vs also, and then went to their Sleds agains.

And after they were gone from vs, and were fomewhat within the Land, one of them came riding to the shoare, to fetch a rough-hewed Image, that our men had taken off the shoare, and Image, carryed into their Boate : and when hee was in our Boate, and perceived the Image, he made's a figne that wee had not done well to take away that Image: Which we beholding, gaue it to him againe : Which when hee had receiued, he placed it vpon a Hill right by the Sea side, and tooke it not with him, but fent a Sled to feech it from thence : and as farte as wee could perceive, they esteemed that Image to be their God; for that right over against that place in the percente, they executed that images all Hundreds of fuch caraved Images, all Hundreds of rough about the Heads, being somewhat round, and in the middle, having a little hill in thead of ill supen test-10 a Nofe; and about the Nofe two cuts, in place of Eyes; and vnder the Nofe; a cut, in place of a ges.

Mouth. Before the Images, wee found great ftore of Alhes, and bones of Harts : whereby it is to bee supposed, that there they offered voto them.

The second of September, a little before Supne riling, wee put forth an Anchor to get out, for that the winde as then blew South South-weit; at being good weather to get out; and if weather to lye still: for wee lay under a low Banke. The Admirall and Vice-admirall seeing vs making out, began also to hoyse their Anchors, and to fet sayle. When wee put out out Focke-fayle, the Sunne was East and by South : and then wee fayled to the Croffe-point, and there wee cast Anchor to stay for the Vice-admirals Pinnasse; which with much labour and paines, in time got out of the Ice, by often cafting out of their Anchor : and in the Eeuening 20 face got to's: in the Morning about two hours before Sunne ring we fet fayle, and by Sunne

rling, wee got within a mile Eastward of the Twitt-point, and fayled Northward fixe miles, till the Sunne was South. Then wee, were forced to wind about, because of the great quantitie of Ice, and the Myst that then fell, at which time the winde blew so vncertayne, that we could hold no courfe, but were forced continually to winde and turne about, by reason of the Ice, and the vnconfiantnesse of the winde, together with myst, so that our coarse was vncettayne, and wee supposed that we had sayled Southward up towards the Samuers. Country, and then held our courie South-well, till the watchers were North-well from vs ; then we came to the point of the States Hand lying Eastward about a Musker shot from the land, having 1 3. fathom deepe.

The fourth of September, wee hoyfed Anchor because of the Ise, and sayled betweene the firme Land and the Stater Hand, where we lay close by the States Hand at foure and fine fathom States Hand deepe, and made our Ship fast with a Cable cast on the shoare, and there wee were safe from the course of the Ice, and divers times went on land to get Hares, whereof there were many in that lland. The fixth of Septembar, some of our men went on shoare spon the firme land to seeke for Stones, which are a kinde of Diamond, whereof there are many also in the States Iland : and while they were feeking the Scones, two of our men lying together in one place, a great leane white Beare came suddenly stealing out, and caught one of them fast by the necke, who not White Deare came assument, accounting one and several Anomaly where we wherewith the other, that lay not faree from him; lifted vp his head to fee two men.

40 Beare, and therewith profendy role vp and ranne aways.

who it was, and perceiuing it to bee a monftrous Beare, cryed out and fayd, Oh Mate! it is a Beare, and therewith presently rote up anoranne aways.

The Beare at the first falling upon the man, but his blood, in flighter, and fuckt out his blood, where with the reft of the ment that were on the Land, being about twentie in number, ranne presently thirther, either to faue the man, of else be drue the Beare from the dead body: and has her flourness. pung charged their Pieces and bent their Pikes, fet vpon her, that still was denouring the man; but perceiuing them to come towards her, fieroely and eruelly ranne at them, and got another of them out from the Companie which shee tore in pieces, wherwith all the rest ranne away.

We perceiving out of our Ship and Pinnaffe, that our men ranne to the Sea-fide to faue themfelues, with all speed entred into our Boates, and rowed as fast wee could to the shoare to relieue our men. Where being on Land, we beheld the croell spectacle of our two dead men; that had beene so cruelly killed and come in pieces by the Beare, wee feeing that, incouraged our men to goe backe againe with vs, and with Pieces, Curtalaxes, and Halfe-pikes, to fet vpon the Beare, but they would not all agree thereunto: fome of them faying, our men are already detd, and we final get the Bear well grouph, though we oppose not our selves into so pen danger, if wee might fane our fellowes lines, then wee would make hafte, but now we need not make feh speed, but take her at an admintage, with most securities for our selves, for we have to doe with a cruell, fierce, and rauchous Beaft. Whereupon three of our men went forward, the Beare fill dewouring her prey, not once fearing the number of our men, and yet they were thirtie at the least : the three that went forward in that fort, were Corneling tacebjon, Mafter of William Barents (hip, William Cifen, Pylot of the Pinnasse, and Hans wan Nosten, William Barents, Purfer : and after 60 that the fayd Master and Pylor had thot three times and mist, the Purser stepping somewhat further forward, and feeing the Beare to be within the length of a shor, presently levelled his Piece, and dicharging it at the Beare, that her into the head betweene both the eyes, and yet the

held the man fill faft by the necke, and lifted up her head with the man in her mouth, but thee

Begm fom what to flagger, where with the Purier and a Scottift-man drew out their Curtelaxes;

They kill the

and strooke at her so hard, that their Curtelaxes burst, and yet she would not leave the man, at last william Gersan went to them, and with all his might strooke the Beare vpon the snout with his Piece, at which time the Beare fell to the ground, making a great noyle, and William Geylen leaping vpon her cut her throat. The feuenth of September, wee buried the dead bodies of our men in the States Hand, and having flayed the Beare, carryed her Skin to Amferdam.

The minth of September, we fet fayle from the States Hand, but the Ice came in fo thicke and with fuch force, that we could not get through, so that at Eenening we came backe agains to the States Hand, the winde being Wefterly. There the Admirall and the Pinnaffe of Retterday, fell on ground by certayne Rockes, but got off againe without any hurt.

If on ground by creating the same from the States Iland towards the Wog-Sates, and Io fent two Boates into the Sea, to certifie vs what flore of Ice was abroad : and that Ecuening wee came all together into Wey-gates, and Anchored by the Twift-point. The eleventh of September in the Morning, we fayled agains into the Tartarian Sea, but we fell into great store of Ice, fo that we sayled backe againe to the Weg-gates, and Auchored by the Croffe-point, and about midnight we faw a Ruffian Lodgie, that fayled from the Beels-point towards the Sammers Land. The thirteenth of September, the Sunne being South, there began a great storme to blow out of the South South-welt, the weather being miltie, melancholy, and inowie, and the florme increasing more

The fourteenth of September, the weather began to bee somewhat clearer, the winde being North-west, and the storme blowing stiffe out of the Tartarian Sea, but at Ecuening it was faire 20 weather, and then the wind blew North-east, the fame day our men went on the other side of Wer-eates, on the firme land, to take the depth of the Channell, and entred into the Bough behind the llands, where there flood a little House made of wood, and a great fall of water int the land. The same Morning we hoysed up our Anchor, thinking once againe to try what wee could doe to further our Voyage, but our Admirall being of another minde, lay full till theffteenth of September. The same day in the Morning, the winde drawe in from the East-end of the Weg-gates, whereby we were forced prefently to hoyse Anchors, and the same day sayled out from the West-end of the Wey-gates, with all our Fleet, and made homewards againe, and that day past by the Hands called Marshee and Delgey, and that night we sayled twelve miles, Northweft and by West, till Saturday in the morning, and then the winde fell North-east, and it be- 30 gan to Snow. We saw the point of Candynaes, lying South-east from vs, and then wee had seven and twentie fathom deepe, red fand with blacke thels

The nine and twentieth of September, in the Ecuening entred into Ward-boufe, and there we flayed till the tenth of October. And that day we fet fayle out of Ward bonfo, and voon the eighteenth of November, we arrived in the Mars.

CHAP. V. The third Voyage Northward to the Kingdomes of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by GERAT DE VEER

What bappened to them at Sea, before they came to build their Honfo.



Free that the seuen Ships (as I said before) were returned backe againe from their North Voyage, with leffe benefit then was expected, the Generall States of 50 the Vnited Provinces confulted together, to fend certayne Ships thitheragaine, a third time, to fee if they might bring the faid Voyage to a good end, if it were possible to bee done : but after much Consultation had, they could not agree thereon; yet they were content to cause a Proclamation to be made, that if

any, either Townes, or Merchants, were disposed to venture to make further fearch that way, at their owne charges, if the Voyage were accomplished, and that thereby it might be made apparant, that the layd paffage was to be fayled, they were content togine them a good reward, in the Countries behalfe, naming a certayne fumme of money. Whereupon in the beginning of this yeere, there was two Ships rigged and fee forth by the Towne of Amferdam, to fayle that Voyage, the men therein being taken vp vpon two Conditions: viz. What they (hould have if 60 the Voyage were not accomplished, and what they should have if they got through, and brought the Voyage to an end, promifing them a good reward if they could effect it, thereby to encourage the men, taking up as many vnmarried men as they could, that they might not bee diffwaded by meanes of their Wiues and Children to leaue off the Voyage. Vpon these Conditions, those

two Ships were ready to let layle in the heginning of May. In the one, lacob Heemskerke Hendicklon, was Matter and Factor for the Wares and Merchandizes ; and William Barents chiefe Pylot. In the other, John Cornelison Ripp, was both Master and Factor for the goods that the Merchants had laden inher.

The fifth of May, all the men in both the Ships were Mustered, and vpon the tenth of May. they fayled from Amfterdam, and the thirteenth of May got to the Olie. The thirtieth of May we had a good winde, and fayled North-east, and wee tooke the height of the Sunne with our Croffe-staffe, and found that it was eleuated about the Horizon 47. degrees and 42. minutes, his Declination was 21, degrees and 42 minutes, fo that the height of the Pole was 69, degrees

The first of Iune we had no night, and the second of Iune we had the winde contrarie, but ypon the fourth of June we had a good winde, out of the West North-west, and sayled North-east. Three Sunnes on the fourth of lane we had a good winde, one of the yverthyouth-well, and tayled a vorth-walls

And when the Sunne was about South South eaft, wee faw a fittinge fight in the Element: for Rain-hower. on each fide of the Sunne there was another Sunne, and two Raine-bowes, that past cleane tho- The like hath row the three Sunnes, and then two Raine-bowes more, the one compassing round about the beene seene seene in Sunnes, and the other crosse thorow the great rundle; the great rundle standing with the vtter- England about most point, elevated about the Horizon 28, degrees: at moone the Sunne being at the highest, the therime this being the thereof was measured, and wee found by the Abrahams that it was also and the work entred. height thereof was measured, and wee found by the Astrolabium, that it was elevated aboue the worke entre Horizon a8 degrees and 43, minutes, his Declination was 22, degrees and 17, minutes, the which 20 being added to 48. degrees 43. minutes, it was found that wee were wnder 71. degrees of the height of the Pole.

John Cornelis ship held aloofe from vs, and would not keepe with vs, and would hold no course but North North-east, for they alledged, that if wee went any more Easterly, that then we should enter into the Weg-gates, but wee being not able to perswade them, altered our course one point of the Compasse, to meet them, and sayled North-east and by North, and should otherwise haue fayled North-east, and somewhat more East,

The fifth, wee faw the first Ice, which we wondered at, at the first, thinking that it had beene The fifth, wee law the fifth acc, wants we remain the Fore-decke, on a findden began to cry out with white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a findden began to cry out with white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a findden began to cry out with the was the ware under Harches has a loud voyce, and faid; that hee faw white Swannes: which wee that were under Hatches hea-20 ring, prefently came up, and perceived that it was Ice that came driving from the great heape, showing like Swannes, it being then about Ecuening, at midnight we sayled through it, and the

Sunne was about a degree eleuated about the Horizon in the North. The fixth, about foure of the clocke in the after-moone, were entred agains into the Ice, which was softrong that we could not passe through it, and sayled South-west and by West, till eight Glaffes were runne out, after that we kept on our course North, North-east, and fayled along

The feuenth, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated about the Horizon 28 degrees and 38 minutes, his Declination being 22. degrees 38 minutes; which being taken from 38 degrees 38. minutes, wee found the Pole to bee 74. degrees ; there we found to great store of Ice, that it was admirable: and we sayled along through it, as if we had past betweenetwo Lands. The water being as greene as Graffe, and we supposed that we were not Greene water, farre from Greenland, and the longer we fayled, the more and thicker ice we found. The eight of Iune, we came to fo great a heape of Ice, that we could not fayle through it.

The minth of lune, we found the Hand that lay vinder 74. degrees and 30. minutes, and as we Beate, or Cheghest, it was about fine miles long. The tenth, we put out our Boate, and therewith eight of our tie-lland. men went on Land, and as we past by Iohn Cornelisms thip, eight of his men also came into our Boat, whereof one was the Pilot. Then William Barents asked him, whether we were not too much Westward, but hee would not acknowledge is : whereupon there passed many words betweene them, for William Barents fayd, he would proue it to bee fo, as in truth it was. The ele-

50 uenth, going on Land, we found great store of Sea-Mewes Egges vpon the shoare, and in that Iland we were in great danger of our lines : for that going vp a great Hill of Snow, when wee should come downeagaine, we thought we should all haue broken our neckes, it was so slipperie, but we fate vpon the Snow and flid downe, which was very dangerous for vs. to breake both our armes and legges; for that at the foot of the Hill there was many Rockes, which we were likely to haue fallen vpon, yet by Gods helpe we got fafely downe againe. Meane time William Variation of Barous fate in the Boate, and faw vs slide downe, and was in greater feare then we, to behold vs the Compasse. in that danger. In the faid lland, we found the varying of our Compasse, which was 13. degrees, to that it differed a whole point at the least : after that wee rowed aboord lobn Cornelsons ship, and there we eate our Egges.

The twelfth in the morning, we faw a white Beare, which wee rowed after with our Boate, thinking to cast a Rope about her necke; but when we were neere her, she was so great, that we Great durst not doe it, but rowed backe agains to our Ship to fetch more men and our Armes, and so made to her againe with Muskets, Harquebuffes, Halberts, and Hatchets. Ichn Carnelsons men comming also with their Boate to helpe vs : and so being well furnished of men and weapons,

Fight with

we rowed with both our Boates vnto the Beare, and fought with her while foure Glaffer were runne out, for our Weapons could doe her little hurt : and amongst the rest of the blowes that we gaue her, one of our men ftrooke her into the backe with an Axe, which flucke fast in her backe, and yet shee swamme away with it; but we rowed after her, and at last we cut her head in funder with an Axe, wherewith the dyed : and then wee brought her into John Cornelifons Bearesskin 13. Ship, where we flayed her, and found her Skinne to bee twelue foot long: which done, we cate fome of her flesh; but wee brookt it not well. This Iland we called the Beare-Iland.

The thirteenth we left the Iland, and fayled North, and somewhat Easterly, the winde being West, and South-west, and made good way : so that when the Sunne was North, weeghest that

we had fayled fixteene miles Northward from that Iland.

The fourteenth, when the Sunne was North, we cast out our Lead one hundred and thirteene fathomedeepe, but found no ground, and fo fayled forward till the fifteenth of lune, when the Sunne was South-east, with missie and drilling weather, and sayled North, and North and by East: about Eeuening it cleared up, and then we faw a great thing driving in the Sea, which we thought had beene a Ship : but passing along by it, we perceived it to bee a dead Whale, that flunke monstroully; and on it there face a great number of Sea-mewes : At that time, wee had

The fixteenth, with the like speed we sayled North and by East, with mistie weather; and as we fayled, we heard the Ice before we faw it ; but after, when it cleared vp, we faw it, and then woond off from it, when as we ghest we had fayled thirtie miles. The senenteenth and eigh- 28 teenth, we saw great store of Ice, and sayled along by it, vntill we came to the point, which we could not reach, for that the wind was South-east, which was right against vs, & the point of Ice lay Southward from vs: yet wee lauered a great while to get beyond it, but we could not doe it. The nineteenth, we faw Land againe, then we tooke the height of the Sun, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 33. degrees and 37. minutes : her Declination being 23. degrees and 26.minutes : which taken from the fayd 33. degrees and 37.minutes, wee found that we were and 11 miants, vnder 80.degrees and 11 minutes: which was the height of the Pole there. This Land was very great, and we fayled Westward along by it, till we were under 79. degrees and a halfe, where we found a good road, and could not get neare to the Land, because the winde blew North-east, which was right off from the Land : the Bay reacheth right North and South into the Sea.

Another fight Beare.

The twentie one, we cast out our Anchor, at eighteene fathome before the Land; and then we and lobn Cornelisons men, rowed on the West-fide of the Land, and there fetched Balast ; and when we got on boord againe with our Balaft, we faw a white Beare that swamme towards our thip; whereupon we left off our worke, and entering into the Boate with Iohn Cornelisons men, rowed after her, and croffing her in the way, droue her from the Land, wherewith the fwamme further into the Sea, and we followed her; and for that our Boate could not make good way after her, we manned our Scute also, the better to follow her: but shee swam a mile into the Sea: vet we followed her with the most part of all our men of both Ships in three Boats, and strooke oftentimes at her, cutting and hewing her, fo that all our Armes were most broken in pieces, During our fight with her, thee strooke her Clawes so hard in our Boate, that the fignes thereof 40 were seene in it; but as hap was, it was in the fore-head of our Boate; for if it had beene in the middle thereof, she had (peraduenture) ouer-throwne it, they have such force in their Clawes: At last, after we had fought long with her, and made her wearie with our three Boates that kept about her, we ouercame her and killed her : which done, we brought her into our ship, and flayed her : her Skinne being thirteene foot long. After that, we rowed with our Scute, about a mile inward to the Land, where there was a good Hauen, and good Anchor ground, on the East-fide being sandie, there wee cast out our Lead, and found sixteene fathom deepe, and after that, ten, and twelve fathome, and rowing further, we found that on the East-fide there was two llands, that reached Eastward into the Sea : on the West-side also there was a great Creeke or River, which shewed also like an Iland. Then we rowed to the Iland that lay in the middle, and there 50 we found many Red Geefe-egges, which we faw fitting vpon their Nelts, and droue them from them, and they flying away, cryed red, red, red : and as they fate we killed one Goose dead with a stone, which we drest and eate, and at least fixtie Egges, that wee tooke with vs abourd the ship, and vpon the two and twentieth of lune, we went aboord our ship againe. Those Geese were of a perfit Red colour, such as come into Holland about Weiringen, and eue-

13.foot long.

Red Geefe Egges,

Red Geefe breed their rie yeere are there taken in abundance, but till this time it was neuer knowne where they hatcht young Geefe, their Egges, so that some men have taken upon them to write, that they sit upon Trees in Scot-Vnder 80.De. land, that hang ouer the Water, and fuch Egges as fall from them downe into the Water become grees in Green young Geele, and swim there out of the water; but those that fall vpon the Land burft in funder, Fable of Barand are lost : but this is now found to bee contrary, and it is not to be wondred at, that no man 60 could tell where they breed their Egges, for that no man that ever wee knew, had ever beene

vnder 80. Degrees : nor that Land vnder 80. degrees, was neuer let downe in any Card, much

Note.

leffe the red Geefe that breed therein. It is heere also to bee noted, that although that in this land which we esteeme to be Greenland, lying under 80. Degrees, and more, there groweth Leaues and Graffe, and that there are fuch Beafts therein as eate graffe, as Harts, Buckes, and fuch like beafts as live thereon, yet in Noua Zembla vnder 76. Degrees, there groweth neither Leaues nor Graffe, nor any Beafts that eare graffe or leaves live therein, but fuch Beafts as eate Flesh, as Beares and Foxes: and yet this Land lyeth full 4. Degrees from the North Pole, further then Greenland aforelayd doth,

CHAP.4.S.I. Greenland, Low-land, Beare-Iland, Cherie-Iland,

The three and twentieth, wee hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled North-westward into the Sea; but could get no further, by reason of the Ice; and so we came to the same place againe where we had layne, and cast Anchor at eighteene fathome : and at Eeuening being at Anchor. the Sunne being North-east, and somewhat more Eastward, wee tooke the height thereof, and In found it to be elevated about the Horizon 13. degrees and 10. minutes, his Declination being 22.

degrees and 28 minutes : which substracted from the height aforesaid, resteth 10 degrees and 18. minutes, which being substracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole there was 70. degrees and 42. minutes.

After that, we hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled along by the West side of the Land, and then our men went on Land, to fee how much the Needle of the Compaffe varyed : Meane time Bareaffaults there came a great white Beare swimming towards the Ship, and would have climbed up into them. it, if we had not made a noyle; and with that wee that at her with a Piece, but the left the thip, and swam to the Land, where our men were : which we perceiuing, fayled with our ship towards the Land, and gaue a great shout; wherewith our men thought that wee had fallen on a Rocke with our Ship, which made them much abashed; and therewith the Beare also being a-

fraid, swamme off againe from the Land, and left our men, which made vs glad : for our men had Variation of no Weapons about them. Touching the varying of the Compasse, for the which cause our men the Compasse

went on Land, to trie the certaintie thereof : it was found to differ 16. Degrees,

The five and twentieth of Iune, we hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled along by the Land, and went South, and South South-west, with a North North-east winde, vnder 79. degrees. There we found a great Creeke or River, whereinto we fayled ten miles at the leaft, holding our course Southward; but we perceived that there we could not get through: there we cast out our Lead, and for the most part found 10. fathom deepe, but we were constrained to lauere out again, for the winde was Northerly, and almost full North, and we perceived that it reached to the firme land, 30 which we supposed to bee Low-land, for that wee could not see it any thing farre, and therefore we fayled so neere vnto it, till that we might see it, and then we were forced to lauere, and vpon the feuen and twentieth of June we got out againe.

The eight and twentieth, we got beyond the point that Ly on the West side, where there was fo great a number of Birds, that they flew against our Sayles, and wee sayled ten miles South. Store of Birds; ward, and after that West, to shun the Ice. The nine and twentieth, wee fayled South-east and fomewhat more Easterly, along by the Land, till we were under 76. degrees and 50.minutes, for we were forced to out off from the Land, because of the Ice. The thirtieth of June, wee fayled South, and somewhat East, and then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elenated about the Horizon 38. degrees and 20. minutes, his Declination was 23. degrees and 20.

40 minuts, which being taken from the former height, it was found that we were vnder 75, degrees. The first of July wee faw the Beare-Iland againe, and then Iohn Cornelison and his Officers July. came aboord our fhip, to speake with vs about altering our course, but wee being of a contrary o- Cheric Hard. pinion, it was agreed that we should follow on our course, and hee his : which was, that he (according to his defire) should sayle vnto So. Degrees againe : for he was of opinion, that there he should finde a passage through, on the East side of the Land that lay under 80. Degrees. And up- They pare on that agreement we left each other, they fayling Northward, and wee Southward, because of companies the Ice, the winds being East South-east.

The fecond, we fayled Eastward, and were vnder 74.degrees, having the wind North Northwest, and then wee woond ouer another Bough, with an East North-east winde, and sayled 50 Northward. In the Eeuening the Sunne being about North-west and by North, we woond about againe (because of the Ice) with an East winde, and sayled South South-east, and about East South-east, and then we woond about againe (because of the see) and the Sunne being South South-west, we woond about againe, and sayled North-east. The third, we were under 74-degrees, having a South-east and by East winde, and sayled North-east and by North : after that wee woond about againe with a South winde, and fayled East South-east, till the Sume was North-west, then the winde began to be somewhat larger.

The eight, wee had a good North-west winde, and sayled East and by North, with an indifferent cold gale of wind, and got vinder 72. degrees and 15. minutes. The ninth of July, we went Eaft and by North, the wind being West. The tenth of July, the Sunne being South South-west, 60 we cast out our Lead, and had ground at one hundred and fixtie fathome, the wind being Northeast and by North, and we sayled East and by South, under 72. degrees. The eleventh, we found 70.fathome deepe, and faw no Ice, then weeghelt that we were right South and North from Dandinaes, that is the East-point of the White-fea, that lay Southward from vs, and had fandie ground, and the banke firetched Northward into the Sea, fo that we were out of doubt that we

W:llowebbies

Land concei-

were vpon the banke of the White Sea, for wee had found no fandie go and all the Coast along, but onely that banke. Then the wind being East and by South, we failed South, and South and by East, under 72. degrees, and after that, we had a South South-east Wind, and sayled Northeast to get ouer the Banke.

The thirteenth of July, we fayled East with a North North-east wind: then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 54. degrees and 38. minutes. his declination was 21. degrees and 54. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was found to bee 73. degrees, and then againe wee found Ice, but not very much, and we were of opinion, that we were by Willaughbies Land. The fourteenth, we fayled North-eaft, the wind being North North-weft, and in that fort fayled about a dinner time, 10 ted from tome along through the Ice, and in the middle thereof we cast out our Lead, and had ninety sathome deepe, in the next quarter wee cast out our Lead againe, and had an hundred fathome deepe, and we tayled to farre into the Ice, that wee could goe no further: for wee could fee no place where it opened, but were forced (with great labour and paine) to lauere out of it againe, the wind blowing West, and we were then under 74. degrees and 10. minutes:

The fifteenth, we draue through the middle of the Ice with a calme, and casting out our Lead, had an hundred fathome deepe, at which time the wind being East, wee sayled West. The sixteenth, we got out of the Ice, and faw a great Beare lying vpon it, that leaped into the water when shee law vs : Wee made towards her with our ship, which shee perceiving got vp vpen the Iceagaine, wherewith wee shot once ather. Then wee fayled East South-east, and faw no 10 Ice, ghesling that we were not farre from Nona Zembla, because we saw the Beare there vpon the Ice, at which time we cast out our Lead, and found an hundred fathome deepe.

The feuenteenth, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and it was cleuated about the Horizon 37. degrees and 55. minutes , his declination was 21. degrees and 15. minutes , which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was 74. degrees and 40. minutes : and when the Sunne was in the South, we faw the Land of Nona Zembla, which was about Lembar: I was the first that espied it. Then we altered our course, and sayled North-east and by North, and hoysed up all our sayles, except the Fore-sayle and the Lesien. The eighteenth, wee saw the Land againe, being under 75, degrees, and fayled North-east and by North, with a North-Admirati Iland, west wind, and we gate about the point of the Admirats Iland, and sayled East North-east, 30 with a West Wind, the Land reaching North-east and by North. The nineteenth, wee came to Croffe lland in the Croffe lland, and could get no further, by reason of the Ice, for there the Ice lay still close 76. degrees 200 vpon the Land, at which time the wind was Weft, and blew right vpon the Land, and it lay vnder 76. degrees and 20. minutes. There ftood two Croffes vpon the Land, whereof it had the Name.

The twentieth, we anchored under the Hand, for we could get no further for the Ice. There we put out our Boat, and with eight men rowed on Land, and went to one of the Croffes, where we rested vs a while to goe to the next Crosse, but being in the way wee saw two Beares by the other Croffe, at which time we had no weapons at all about vs. The Bearestofe vp vpon their hinder feet to fee vs (for they fmell further then they fee) and for that they fmelt vs: therefore 40 they rose varight, and came towards vs, wherewith we were not a little abashed, in such fort that we had little lust to laugh, and in all haste went to our Boat againe, still looking behind vs, to see if they followed vs, thinking to get into the Boat, and so put off from the Land : but the Master stayed vs, saying, hee that first beginnes to runne away, I will thrust this Hake-staffe (which he then held in his hand ) into his ribs ; for it is better for vs ( faid hee) to flay all together, and fee if we can make them afraid with whooping and hollowing; and fo we went foftly towards the Boat, and got away, glad that we had escaped their clawes, and that we had the leasure to tell our fellowes thereof.

The one and twentieth we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 35. degrees and 15. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees, which being ta- 50 ken from the height aforefaid, there refted 14. degrees, which fubftracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was found to be 76, degrees and 15. minutes, then we found the variation of the Compasse to bee 26. degrees. The same day two of our men went againe to the Crosse, and found no Beares to trouble vs, and wee followed them with our Armes, fearing leaft wee might meet any by chance, and when we came to the fecond Croffe, we found the foot-steps of two Beares, and faw how long they had followed vs, which was one hundred foot-steps at the least, that way that we had beene the day before. The two and twentieth being Munday, wee fet vp another Croffe, and made our Marke thereon : and lay there before the Croffe Iland, till the fourth of August, meane time we washt and whited our Linnen on the shoare.

The thirtieth, the Sunne being North, there came a Beare fo neere to our ship, that we might 60 hit her with a stone, and we shot her into the foot with a Piece, wherewith shee ranne halting away. The one and thirtieth of July, the Sunne being East North-east, seuen of our men killed a Beare, and flayed her, and caft her bodie into the Sea. The same day at noone (by our Infrument) we found the variation of the Needle of the Compaffe to be 17. degrees.

Nosa Zembia,

Two Beares.

The first of August we saw a white Beare, but she ran away from vs. The fourth, we got out of August, the Ice, to the other in e of the Iland, and anchored there : where, with great labour and much pame, wefetched a Boat full of stones from the Land. The fifth, wee set sayle againe towards Ice point, with an East Wind, and sayled South South-east, and then North North-east, and faw no Ice by the Land, by the which we lauered. The fixth, we gate about the point of Naf- Point Nasjam.

faw, and fayled for ward East, and East and by South, along by the Land. The feuenth, we had a West South-west Wind, and sayled along by the Land, South-east, and South-east and by East, and saw but a little Ice, and then past by the Trust-point, which we had Trust-point much longed for : at Ecuening we had an East Wind, with mistic Weather, so that we were forced to make our ship fast to a piece of Ice, that was at least thirtie fixe fathome deepe winder the

water, and more then fixteene fathome aboue the water: which in all was two and fifty fathome thick, for it lay fast v pon ground, the which was thirtie fixe fathome deepe. The eight in the Ice 52-fathom morning we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather.

The ninth, lying fill fast to the great piece of Ice, it snowed hard, and it was mistie weather, Snow, and when the Sunne was South, we went vpon the Hatches (for we alwayes held watch) where as the Mafter walked along the ship, he heard a beaft snuffe with his nose, and looking ouer-boord, he faw a great Beare hard by the fhip, where hee cryed out, a Beare, a Beare; and with that all Beares affault. our men came up from under Hatches, and faw a great Beare hard by our Boat, feeking to get into it, but we giving a great shout, she was afraid, and swamme away, but presently came backe 20 againe, and went behind a great piece of Ice, whereunto we had made our fhip fast, and climbed vpon it, and boldly came towards our ship to enter into it : but we had torne our Scute Sayle in the thip, and lay with foure Peeces before at the Boot-sprit, and shot her in the bodie : and with

that, thee ranne away; but it snowed so fast that wee could not see whither shee went : but wee gheft that shee lay behind a high Hoouell; whereof there were many upon the piece of Ice. The tenth, being Saturday, the Ice began mightily to breake, and then wee first perceived that the great piece of Ice whereunto we had made our ship fast, lay on the ground; for the rest of the Ice draue along by it, wherewith wee were in great feare that wee should bee compassed about with the Ice, and therefore we vied all the diligence and meanes that we could to get from thence, for we were in great doubt : and being vinder fayle, wee fayled voon the Ice, because it was all broken under us, and got to another piece of Ice; whereunto we made our thip fast againe with our Sheate Anchor, which we made fast vpon it; and there we lay till Eeuening; and when Liethander. we had supped, in the first quarter, the said piece of Ice began on a sudden to burst and rend in pieces, to fearefully that it was admirable; for with one great cracke it burft into foure hundred pieces at the least : we lying fast to it, weighed our Cable, and got off from it, under the water

it was ten fathome deepe, and lay voon the ground, and two fathome about the Water; and it

made a fearefull noyfe both under and aboue the Water when it burft, and spread it selfe abroad on all fides. And being with great feare, gotten from that piece of Ice, wee came to another piece, that was fix fathome deepe vnder the Water: to which wee made a Rope fast on both ides. Then wee law another great piece of Ice, not farre from vs, lying faft in the Sea, that 40 was as sharpe aboue, as it had beene a Tower; whereunto wee rowed : and carking out our Lead, we found that it lay twentie fathome deepe, fast on the ground vider the Water, and twelve fathome aboue the Water.

The eleuenth being Sunday, we rowed to another piece of Ice, and cast out our Lead, and found that it lay eighteene fathome deepe fast to the ground under the Water, and ten fathome about the water. The twelfth, wee fayled neere under the Land, the better to shunne the Ice, for the great flakes that draue in the Sea, were many fathome deepe under the Water, and we were better defended from them being at foure and fine fathome Water, and there ranne a great current of water from the Hill. There we made our ship fast againe to a piece of Ice, and called that point, The small Ice point.

The thirteenth in the morning, there came a Beare from the East point of the Land, close to Beare hilleds our ship, and one of our men with a Peece shot at her, and brake one of her legs, but she crept vp the Hill with her three feet, and we following her, killed her, and hauing flayed her, brought the skinne aboord the ship. From thence weelet sayle, with a little gale of Winde, and were forced to lauere, but after, that it began to blow more out of the South, and South South-east.

The fifteenth, we came to the lland of Orange, where we were inclosed with the Ice, hard Orange llands by a great piece of Ice where we were in great danger to lose our ship, but with great labour and much paine, we got to the Iland, the Wind being South-east, whereby we were constrayned to turne our ship, and while we were busied thereabouts, and made such noyse, a Beare that lay there and flept, awaked, and came towards vs to the flip, so that wee were forced to leave our 60 Worke about turning of the ship, and to defend our selves against the Beare, and shot her into the bodie, wherewith the ranne away to the other fide of the Hand, and fwamme into the water, and got vp vpon a piece of Ice, where the lay still, but we comming after her to the piece of Ice where the lay, when the law vs, the leapt into the water, and fwamme to the Land : but we got betweene her and the Land, and strooke her on the head with a Hatchet, but as often as wee

strooke at her with the Hatchet, she duckt under the water, whereby wee had much to doe before we could kill her: after the was dead we flayed her on the Land, and tooke the skinne aboord with vs, and after that, turned our shippe to a great piece of Ice, and made it fast

The fixteenth, ten of our men entring into one Boat, rowed to the filme Land of Nova Zembla, and drew the Boat vp vpon the Ice, which done, we went vp a high Hill, to fee the smatter of the Land, and found that it reached South-east, and South South-east, and then againe South which wee diffiked, for that it lay so much Southward : but when wee saw open water South writes were much comforted againe, thinking that we had wonne our Voyeaft, and Eaft South-eatt, we were much comported against, similarly to the work of the very age and knew not how we should get soone enough about, to certifie William Barratist Research 10.

The eighteenth, we made preparation to fet fayle, but it was all in vaine : for wee had almost loft our Sheat Anchor, and two new Ropes, and with much loft labour got to the place against from whence wee came : for the streame ranne with a mightie current, and the Ice drawerry ftrongly vpon the Cables, along by the ship, so that we were in search that wee should lose all the recogny year to the street was two hundred fatherne at the leaft, but God prouided well for vs, fo that in the end, we got to the place again from whence we put out.

The nineteenthit was indifferent good weather, the Windblowing South-west, the Ice still drining, and wee set sayle with an indifferent gale of Wind, and past by the point of Defre, whereby we were once againe in good hope, and when we had gotten about the point, we failed South-east into the Sea-ward, foure miles, but then againe wee entred into more Ice, whereby 20 wee were constrayned to turne backe againe, and sayled North-west vntill we came to the Land againe, which reacheth from the point of Defre, to the head point, South and by West fix miles : from the head point to Finfingers head , it reacheth South-weft , which are three miles one from the other: from the Flushinger, head, it reacheth into the Sea, East South-east, and from Flujbingers head to the point of the Hand, it reacheth South-week, and by South, and South-west three miles : and from the Iland point, to the point of the Ice Hauen, the Land reachethWest South-west foure miles: from the Ice Hauens point to the fal of Water, or the stream Bay, and the low Land, it reacheth West and by South, and East and by North seuen miles: from

The one and twentieth, we fayled a great way into the Ice Hauen, and that night anchored 30 therein: next day the streame going exreame hard Eastward, wee haled out agains from thence, and fayled againe to the Hand point, but for that it was mifty Weather, comming to a piece of Ice, wee made the ship fast thereunto, because the Wind beganne to blow hard South-west and Earthon the South South-west. There we went up you the Ice, and wondred much thereat, it was fich manner of Ice: For on the top it was full of Earth, and there wee found about fortie Egges, and is was not like other Ice, for it was of a perfect Azure colour like to the Skies, whereby there grew great contention in words amongst our men, some saying that it was Ice, others that it was frozen Land : for it lay vnreafonable high aboue the Water, it was at least eighteene fathom vnder the water close to the ground, and ten fathome about the water: there wee stayed all that ftorme, the Wind being South-west and by West. The three and twentieth , wee sayled 40 againe from the Ice, South-eastward into the Sea, but entred presently into it againe, and woond about to the Ice Hauen. The next day it blew hard North North-west, and the Ice came mightily driving in, whereby we were in a manner compassed about therewith, and withall the Wind beganne more and more to rife, and the Ice still draue harder and harder, so that the pinne of the Rother, and the Rother were shorne in pieces, and our Boat was shorne in pieces betweene the ship and the Ice, we expecting nothing else, but that the ship also would be prest

The fine and twentieth, the Weather began to be better, and we tooke great paines, and bestowed much labour to get the Ice, wherewith we were so inclosed, to goe from vs., but what meanes soeuer we vied it was all in vaine, but when the Sunne was South-west, the Icebegan 50 to drive out againe with the streame, and we thought to faile Southward about Nowa Zembla, to the Streights of Mergates, seeing we could there find no passage. Wee having past Nona Zembla, were of opinion that our labour was all in vaine, and that we could not get through, and so agreed to goe that way home againe, but comming to the Streame Bay, wee were forced to goe backe againe, because of the Ice which lay so fast thereabours, and the same might also it froze, that wee could hardly get through there, with the little wind that we had, the Wind then be-

The fix and twentieth, there blew a reasonable gale of Wind, at which time wee determined to fayle backe to the point of Defire, and so home againe, feeing that wee could not get through the were ats, although we vied all the meanes and industry wee could to get forward, but when 60 we had past by the Ice Hanen, the Ice began to drine with such force, that wee were inclosed round about therewith, and yet we fought all the meanes we could to get out, but it was all in vaine : and at that time we had like to have lost three men that were vpon the Ice to make way for the ship, if the Ice had held the course it went, but as we draw backe againe, and that the

Point Defre.

with I.e.

Ice also whereon our men stood, in like fort draue, they being nimble, as the ship draue by them. one of them caught hold of the beak head, another vpon the shrouds, and the third vpon the great brase that hung out behind, and so by great aduenture by the hold that they tooke, they got safe into the ship againe, for which they thanked God with all their hearts : for it was much likelier Escape of three that they should rather have beene carried away with the Ice, but God, by the numblenesse of men. their hands, delinered them out of that danger which was a pitifull thing to behold, although it fellout for the best, for if they had not beene nimble, they had surely dyed for it. The fame day in the evening, wee got to the West-fide of the Ice Hanen, where wee were forced in

great cold, pouertie, milerie, and griefe, to stay all that Winter, the winde then beeing East 10 North-eaft.

The feuen and twentieth, the Ice draue round about the ship, and yet it was good weather, at which time we went on Land, and being there it began to blow South-east, with a reasonable gale, and then the Ice came with great force before the bough, and draue the thip vp foure foot high before, and behind it feemed as if the keele lay on the ground, to that it feemed that the thip would be overthrowne in the place, whereupon they that were in the thip, put out the Ship lifted was Boat, therewith to faue their liues, and withall put out a flagge to make a figne to vs, to come and befet with aboard: which we perceiving, and beholding the ship to be lifted up in that fort, made all the Ice. hafte we could to get aboord, thinking that the ship was burst in pieces, but comming vnto it, we found it to be in better case then we thought it had beene.

30 The eight and twentieth, we got some of the Ice from it, and the ship beganne to sit vpright againe, but before it was fully vpright, as William Barents and the other Pilot went forward to the bough to fee how the ship lay, and how much it was rifen; and while they were busie vpon their knees and elbowes to measure how much it was, the ship burst out of the Ice with such a noise, and so great a cracke, that they thought verily that they were all cast away, knowing not Another dans

how to faue themfelues.

The nine and twentieth, the ship lying vpright againe, weevsed all the meanes wee could with Iron hookes and other inftruments, to breake the flakes of Ice that lay one heaped ypon the other, but all in vaines fo that we determined to commit our felues to the mercy of God. and to attend aide from him, for that the Ice draue not away in any fuch fort that it could helpe 30 vs. The thirtieth, the Ice began to drive together one vpon the other with greater force then before, and bare against the ship with a boystrous South-west winde, and a great snow, so that all the whole thip was borne up and enclosed, whereby all that was both about it and in it began to cracke, so that it seemed to burst in an hundred pieces, which was most fearefull both to fee and heare, and made all the haire of our heads to rife vpright with feare: and after that, the ship ( by the Ice on both sides that joyned and got wnder the same) was driven so woright, in such fort, as if it had beene lifted vp with a Wrench or Vice.

The one and thirtieth of August, by force of the Ice, the ship was driven up foure or five foot high at the beake head, and the hinder part thereof lay in a clift of Ice, whereby wee thought that the Rother would bee freed from the force of the flakes of Ice, but notwithflanding, it Rother broken 40 brake in pieces staffe and all: and if that the hinder part of the ship had beene in the Ice that draue, as well as the fore part was, then all the ship would have beene driven wholly vpon the Ice, or pollibly haue runne on ground, and for that cause were in great feare, and set our Scutes and our Boat out vpon the Ice, if need were, to faue our felues, but within foure houres after, the Ice draue away of it felfe, wherewith wee were exceeding glad, as if wee had faued our lives, for that the ship was then on flote againe, and vpon that we made a new Rother and a Staffe, and hung the Rother out voon the hookes, that if we chanced to bee borne voon the Ice againe, as we had beene, it migh: fo be freed from it.

The first of September being Sunday, while we were at prayer, the Ice began to gather toge- September. ther agains, so that the ship was I fred vp two foot at the least, but the Ice brake not. The same 50 evening the Ice continued in that fort still driving and gathering together, so that we made preparation to draw our Scute and the Boat ouer the Ice vpon the Land, the wind then blowing South-east. The second, it snowed hard with a North-east wind , and the ship began to rise vp higher voon the Ice, at which time the Ice burft and cracke with great force, fo that wee were of opinion to carrie our Scute on Land in that foule weather, with thirteene barrels of Bread, and two hogsheads of Wine, to sultaine our selues if need were.

The third, it blew hard but snowed not so much, the wind being North North-east, at which time we began to be loofe from the Ice, whereunto wee lay fast, so that the Scheck broke from the Steuen, but the plankes wherewith the thip was lined, held the Scheck fast, and made is hang on, but the Boutloofe and a new Cable ( if we had falled upon the Ice) brake by forcible 60 preffing of the Ice, but held fast agains in the Ice, and yet the ship was staunch; which was wonder, in regard that the Ice draue so hard, and in great heapes, as big as the Salt-hils that are in Spaine, and within a Harquebusse shot of the ship, betweene the which wee lay in great feare

The fourth, the weather began to cleare vp, and we faw the Sunne, but it was very cold, the

CHAP. S.S. I. Violent and incredible freezing. Ground not to be thaved. and perceiuing that she was dead, shee ran away, but wee tooke Halber; sand other Armes with

vs. and followed her, and at last the came againe towards vs, and we prepared our selues to with-

stand her, wherewith she rose vp vpon her hinder feet, thinking to rampe at vs, but while shee

reared her felfe vp, one of our men shot her into the bellie, and with that she fell vpon her fore-

feet againe, and rouring as loud as the could, ran away. Then we tooke the dead Beare, and ript

her bellie open; and taking out her guts, we fet her vpon her fore-feet, that so the might freeze as thee flood, intending to carrie her with vs into Holland, if wee might get our thip loofe, and

wind being North-cast we being forced to lie still. The fift, it was faire Sun-shine weather, and write came, and at evening when we had supped, the Loe compassed about ve againe, and wee very came, and a coming to the ship beginning to lie vpon the one fide, and leaked fore, but by Gods grace it became flaunch againe, wherewith we were wholly in feare to lofe the flip, it by Gods grate a present a which time wee tooke counfell together, and carried our old locke was in to great uanger: at within the state of the state Sayle, with rowger, Lean, a vent with a start a bout our Scure that we had drawne vpon the Land, and at that time we carried fome Bread, and Wine on Land alfo, with fome Timber, therewith to mend our Boat, that it might fence vs in

me of need.

The fixt, it was indifferent faire Sea-weather, and Sun-fhine, the wind being Weft, whereby less moved drive away, and that wee mishs on. 19 The INC, it was indirected, the ping that the Ice would drive away, and that wee night get we were some water commenced and the free man and the second seco ning of the water, but to the contrary, it lay hard enclosed with Ice, and no water at all about the ship, no not so much as a bucket full. The same day, sue of our men went on Land, but two of them came backe againe, the other three went forward about two miles into the Land, and or them came users against state, where allothey found great flore of Wood that had been driven chither, and there they found the footfleps of Harts and Hinds, as they thought, for they were closen footed, some greater footed then others, which made them judge them to be so.

The eight, it blew hard East North-east, which was a right contrary wind to doe vs any good, touching the carrying away of the Ice, so that we were still faster in the Ice, which put ses in no fmall difcomfort. The ninth, it blew North-eaft, with a little fnow, whereby our hip 20 was wholly enclosed with Ice, for the wind draue the Ice hard against it, so that we lay three or foure foot deepe in the Ica, and our Sheck in the after Steuen, brake in pieces, and the finip began to be somewhat loose before, but yet it was not much hurt. In the night time, two Beates came close to our ship side, but we sounded our Trumper, and shot at them, but hit them not, because it was darke, and they ranne away. The teath, the weather was somewhat better, because the wind blew not so hard, and yet all one wind.

The eleventh, it was calme weather, and eight of vs went on Land, every man armed, to fee if that were true as our other three companions had faid, that there lay Wood about the Riner, for that feeing we had so long woond and turned about, sometime in the see, and then againe got out, and thereby were compelled to alter our course, and at last we that we could not get out of 30 the Ice, but rather became faiter, and could not loose our ship, as at other times we had done, as alfo that it began to be Winter, we tooke counfell together what we were best to doe, according to the time, that we might winter there, and attend such adventure as God would send vs: and after we had debated upon the matter (to keepe and defend our felues both from the cold, and wilde beafts) we determined to build a houle vpon the Land, to keepe vs therein as well as wee could, and so to commit our selves vnto the tuition of God, and to that end we went further into the Land, to find out the convenientest place in our opinions, to raife our house vpon, and yet we had not much fluffe to make it withall, in regard that there grew no trees, nor any other we had not much name to make to make the build it withall: but wee leading no occasion vinought, to as our men went abroad to view the Countrey, and to fee what good fortune might happen vaas our men went amount of revening to very at laft we found an vnexpected comfort in our need, which was, that we found certaine need, when we trees roots and all, (as our three companions had faid before) which had beene driven vpon the wereforced to the state of the feelithe win-ter you the Land, wherewith (as if God had purpolely fent them vnto vs) we were much comforted, being Land, fent vs. in good hope that God would show vs some surther suour; for that Wood served vs not onely Wood to make to build our houfe, but allo to burne, and ferue vs all the Winter long, otherwise without all

The twelfth, it was calme weather, and then our men went anto the other fide of the Land, to fee if they could find any Wood neerer vnto vs, but there was none. The thirteenth, it was calme but very mifty weather, so that we could doe nothing, because it was dangerous for vs to goe into the Land, in regard that we could not fee the wilde Beares, and yet they could finell vs, for they smell better then they see. The fourteenth, it was cleare Sun-shine weather, but very cold, and then we went into the Land, and layed the Wood in heapes one vpon the other, that it might not bee conered over with the Snow, and from thence meant to carrie it to the place

The fifteenth in the morning, as one of our men held watch, we faw three Beares, whereof the one lay still behind a piece of Ice, the other two came close to the ship; which wee perceiuing, made our Peeces ready to shoot at them, at which time there stood a Tub full of Beefe vpon the Ice, which lay in the water to be feationed, for that close by the ship there was no water: one of the Beares went unto it, and put in his head to take out a piece of the Beefe, but she fa- 60 red therewith as the Dog did with the Pudding, for as she was snatching at the Beefe, shee was shot into the head, wherewith she fell downe dead, and neuer stirred: the other Beare stood still, and looked upon her fellow, and when shee had stood a good while, shee smelt her fellow,

when we had fet the Beare upon her foure feet, we began to make a Sled, thereon to draw the Wood to the place where we went to build our house, at that time it froze two fingers thicke in It freezenhin to the falt water, and it was exceeding cold, the wind blowing North-east.

The fixteenth, the Sunne shone, but towards the evening it was mifty, the wind being Easter- thicke in a ly, at which time we went to fetch Wood with our Sleds, and then wee drew foure beames about make. a mile upon the Ice and the Snow, that night agains it froze about two fingers thicke. The feuenteenth, thirteene of vs went where the Wood lay with our Sleds, and so drew fine and fine in a Sled, and the other three helped to lift the Wood behind, to make vs draw the better, and with more case, and in that manner we drew Wood twice a day, and laid it on a heape by the place where we meant to build our house,

The three and twentieth, wee fetcht more Wood to build our house, which wee did twice a day, but it grew to be mifty and ftill weather againe, the wind blowing East, and East North-20 east, that day our Carpenter being of Purmeesee died, as wee came about about evening. The foure and twentieth, we buried him vnder the fedges, in the clift of a hill, hard by the water. for we could not dig vo the earth, by reason of the great frost and cold, and that day wee went twice with our Sleds to fetch Wood.

\* The five and twentieth, it was darke wether, the wind blowing Well, & Well South-well, and House builded. South-west, and the Ice began somwhat to open, and drive away; but it continued not long, for that having driven about the length of the shot of a great Peece, it lay three fathoms deepe vpon the ground: and where we lay the Ice draue not, for we lay in the middle of the Ice; but if we had layne in the mayne Sea, we would have hoyfed fayle, although it was then late in the yeere. The same day we rayled up the principles of our house, and began to worke hard thereon, but 30 if the ship had been close, we would have left our building, and have made our after Steven of our fhip, that we might have beene ready to fayle away if it had beene possible.

The fixe and twentieth, wee had a West wind and an open Sea, but our ship lay fast, wherewith we were not a little grieued, but it was Gods will, which we most patiently bare, and wee began to make vp our house, part of our men fetched Wood to burne, the rest played the Carpenters: and were bufie about the house, as then we were fixteene men in all, for our Carpenter was dead, and of our fixteene men there was still one or other ficke. The seuen and twentieth, it blew hard North-east, and it froze so hard, that as we put a nayle into our mouthes (as when men worke Carpenters worke they vie to doe) there would Ice hang thereon when we tooke it Hard and vioout againe, and make the bloud follow: the fame day there came an old Beare and a young one lent froft.

40 towards vs, as we were going to our house, being all together (for we durft not goe alone) which we thought to shoot at, but she ran away, at which time the Ice came forcibly driving in, and it was faire Sun-shine weather, but so extreme cold, that we could hardly worke, but extremity

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, and the Sunne shone, the Wind being West and very calme, the Sea as then being open, but our ship lay fast in the Ice and stirred not; the same day there came a Beare to the ship, but when she espyed vs, she ranne away, and we made as much hafte as wee could to build our House. The nine and twentieth in the morning, the Wind was West, and after-noone it blew Northerly, and then wee faw three Beares between vs and the House, an old one and two young; but we notwithstanding drew our goods from the 50 ship to the House, and so got before the Beares , and yet they followed vs : neuerthelesse, we would not thun the way for them, but hollowed out as loud as we could thinking that they wold baue gone a way, but they would not once goe out of their foot-path, but got before vs, wherewith we and they that were at the house, made a great noyse, which made the Beares run away, and we were not a little glad thereof. The thirtieth the Wind was East, and East South-east, and all that night and the next day it snowed so fast, that our men could setch no Wood, it lay so close and high one vpon the other: then wee made a great fire without the House, therewith to thaw the ground, that fo we might lay it about the House, that it might bee the closer; but it Ground not was all loft labour, for the Earth was so hard, and frozen so deepe into the ground, that wee to be thawed. could not thaw it, and it would have cost vs too much Wood, and therefore wee were forced to

60 leave off that labour.

River of fresh

Ship faikned

They deter-

burne in the cold Winter.

ð. II.

Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreadfull Winter: the Sunnes absence, Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculous speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many ma-

He first of October, the Wind blew stiffe North-east, and aster-noone it blew North, with a great florme and drift of Snow, whereby wee could hardly goe in the Wind, 10 with a great total and a man could hardly draw his breath, the Snow draw fo hard in our faces, at which time we could not see two ships length from vs. The second before noone, the Sunne flione, and after noone it was cloudie againe, and it fnew, but the vycather was fill, the Wind being North, and then South, and wee let up our House, and upon it wee placed a May-pole

The third before noone, it was calme Sun-shine vveather, but so cold, that it was hard to bee indured, and after-noone it blew hard out of the West, with so great extreme cold, that if it had continued, we should have beene forced to leave our worke. The fourth, the Wind was Well, and after-noone North, with great store of Snow, whereby we could not worke : at that time we brought our Anchor vpon the Ice to lye the fafter, when wee lay but an Arrow floot from 20 the Water, the Ice was so much driven away.

The fifth, it blevv hard North-west, and the Sea was very open and without Ice, as farress vve could discerne, but vve lay still frozen as vve did before, and our ship lay two or three foot deepe in the Ice, and were could not perceine otherwise, but that wee lay fast upon the ground and then it was three fathome and a halfe deepe. The same day we brake up the lower dex of the fore-part of our ship, and with those Deales we coursed our Houses, and made it slope o. uer head, that the Water might runne off, at which time it was very cold. The fixth, it blew hard West South-west, but towards Equening, West North-west, with a great Snow, that wee could hardly thrust our heads out of the doore, by reason of the great cold. The secunth, it was indifferent good weather, but yet very cold, and wee calk't our House, and brake the 30 Extreme Snow ground about it at the foot thereof : that day the Wind went round about the Compasse.

is from the

North.

The eight, all the night before it blew so hard, and the same day also, and snowed sofast, that we should have smothered, if we had gone out into the Ayre; and to speake truth, it had not beene pessible for any man to have gone one ships length, though his life had layen thereon; for it was not possible for vs to goe out of the House or ship. The ninth, the Wind still continued North, and blew, and snowed hard, all that day the Wind as then blowing from the Land, so that feeme, that the all that day we were forced to flay in the ship, the weather was so foule,

The tenth, the weather was somewhat fairer, and the Wind calmer, and blew South-west, Tides and Sea and West, and South-west, and that time the Water slowed two soote higher then ordinary, which we gheft to proceede from the first North-wind, which as then had blowne. The same 40 day the weather began to be somewhat better, so that we began to go out of our ship againe : and as one of our men went out, he chanced to meet a Beare, and was almost at him before hee knew it, but prefensly he ranne backe againe towards the fhip, and the Beare after him, but the Beare comming to the place where before we had killed another Beare, and let her vpright, and there let her freeze (which was couered ouer with Ice, and yet one of her pawes reached about it) shee flood still, whereby our man got before her, and climbed up into the ship, in great feare, crying, A Beare, a Beare; which we hearing, came aboue Hatches to looke on her, and to shoot at her, but we could not see her, by meanes of the exceeding great smoke, that had so fore tormented vs (while we lay under Hatches) in the fouls weather which we would not have indured for any money, but by reason of the cold and snow ie weather, wee were constrayned to doe it, if wee 50 would faue our lives, for aloft in the ship we must vindoubtedly have died? the Beare stayed not long there, but ranne away, the Wind then being North-eaft. The same day about Eeuening, it was faire weather, and we went out of our ship to the House, and carried the greatest part of

The eleuenth, it was calme weather, the Wind being South, and somewhat warme, and then we carried our Wine and other Victuals on Land : and as we were hoyfing the Wine over-boord, there came a Beare towards our ship, that had layen behind a piece of Ice, and it seemed that we had waked her with the noyle we made: for wee had seene her lye there, but wee thought her to be a piece of Ice; but as she came neere vs, we shot at her, and she ranne away, so we proceeded in our worke. The twelfth, it blew North, and somewhat Westerly, and then halfe of 60 our men kept in the House, and that was the first time that we lay in it, but wee indured great cold, because our Cabins were not made; and besides that wee had not Clothes enough, and we could keepeno fire because our Chimney was not made, whereby it smoked exceedingly.

The thirteenth, the Wind was North and North-west, and it began agains to blow hard, and

then three of vs went abourd the ship, and laded a Sled with Beere, but when wee had laden it, thinking to goe to our House with it, suddenly there rose such a Wind, and so great a storme and cold, that wee were forced to goe into the ship againe, because were were not able to flay without, and wee could not get the Beere into the ship againe, but were forced to lee it fland without vpon the Sled : being in the ship, wee indured extreame cold, because wee had but a few

The fourteenth, as wee came out of the ship, wee found the Barrell of Beere standing upon the Sled, but it was fall frozen at the heads, yet by reason of the great cold, the Beere that purged out, froze as hard vpon the fide of the Barrell as if it had bene glued thereon, and in purgestous, trose as a serior spot and set the Barrell an end, and dranke it first vp, bur wee Bette meked. were forced to melt the Beere, for there was scant any unfrozen Beere in the Barrell, but in that thicke Yeaft that was unfrozen lay the strength of the Beere, so that it was too strong to drinke alone, and that which was frozen tafted like water, and being melted we mixt one with the other, and so dranke it, but it had neither strength nor taste.

The fifteenth, the Wind blew North and East, and East South-east, that day we made place to fet up our doore, and shoueled the Snow away. The eighteenth, the Wind blew hard East South-east, and then we setched our Bread out of the Scute which wee had drawne vp vpon the Land, and the Wine also which as then was not much frozen, and yet it had layne fixe Weekes therein, and not withflanding that it had oftentimes frozen very hard. The same day wee saw Sea concred 20 another Beare, and then the Sea was so couered ouer with Ice, that wee could fee no with Ice

The nineteenth, the Wind blew North-east, and then there was but two men and a Boy in The innercentin, the wind new renembers, and single-field was not make an although the ship, at which time there came a Beare that fought forcibly to get into the ship, although Beare shall be a bear beared as a bear bear beared as a bear bear beared as a bear the Imp, at which time there came a near than the grant and the two men shot at her with pieces of Wood, and yet she ventured upon them, whereby they she ship. were in an extreame feare, each of them feeking to faue themselues, the two men leapt into the Ballast, and the Boy climbed into the foot Mast top, to faue their lines, meane time, some of our men shot at her with a Musket, and then shee range away. The twentieth, it was calme Sume-fine weather, and then againe wee faw the Sea open, at which time wee went Barrels and L. on boord to fetch the rest of our Beere out of the ship, where wee found some of the Bar- ron boop 30 rels frozen in pieces, and the Iron hoopes that were vpon the locam Barrels were also fro- broken with

The two and twentieth, the Winde blew coldly, and very stiffe North-east, with so great a Snow, that wee could not get out of our doores. The three and twentieth, it was calme weather, and the Winde blew North-eaft, then wee went aboord our ship, to see if the reft of our men would come home to the Houle; but wee feared that it would blow hard againe, and therefore durft not flirre with the ficke man, but let him lye still that day, for hee

The foure and twentieth, the rest of our men beeing eight persons, came to the House, All come to and drew the ficke man vpon a Sled, and then with great labour and paine, wee drew our the Houfe. 40 Boat home to our House, and turned the bottome thereof vpwards, that when time ferned vs (if God laued our lines in the Winter time) wee might vieit : and after that, perceining that the thip lay fast, and that there was mothing less to be expedted then the opening of the

water, wee put our Anchor into the ship againe, because it should not be covered over and lost in the Snow, that in the Spring time wee might vie it: for we alwayes trufted in God that hee would deliner vs from thence towards Summer time, ey ther one way or other. The Sunne, when we might fee it best and highest, began to be very low, and we vied all the speed we could to feeth all things with Slede out of our hip into our Houle, not onely meate and drinke, but all

other necessaries, at which time the Wind was North.

The fine and twentieth, wee fetche all things that were necessary for the furnishing of our 30 Seute and our Boate: and when we had laden the last Sled, and stood readie to draw it to the House, our Master looked about him and saw three Beares behind the ship that were comming towards vs, whereupon hee cryed out aloud to feare them away, and wee prefently leaped forth to defend our felnes as well as we could rand, as good fortune was, there lay two Hala berds vpon the Sled, whereof the Master tooke one, and I the other, and made refistance against them as well as we could; but the rest of our men ranne to faue themselves in the ship, and as they ranne, one of them fell into a Clift of Icc, which grieued vs much s for we thought verily that the Beares would have ranne voto him, to denoure him, but God defended him; for the Beares fill made towardes the ship after the men that ranne thicher to saue themselves. Meane time, wee and the man that fell into the Clift of Ice, tooke our advantage, and 60 got into the ship on the other side, which the Beares perceiuing, they came sercely to-Fight with

wards vs, that had no other Armes to defend vs withall, but onely the two Halberds, Beares. which wee doubting would not bee fufficient, wee fill gave them worke to doe by throwing Billets and other things at them, and cuery time we threw, they ranne after them as a Dogge vieth to doe at a Stone that is east at him. Meane time, wee fent a man

downe under Harches to strike Fire, and another to fetch Pikes, but wee could get no Fire, and so wee had no meanes to shoote: at the last, as the Beares came siercely vpon vs, wee strooke one of them with a Halberd vpon the Snowt, wherewith shee game backe , when shee felt her selfe burt, and went away , which the other two that were not to great as thee , perceiving, ranne away : and wee thanked God that wee were to well delivered from them, and so drew our Sled quietly to our House, and there shewed our men what had happened voto vs.

. The fixe and twentieth, the Wind was North, and North North-west, with indifferent faire weather ; then wee faw open Water hard by the Land , but wee perceived the Ice to drive in the Sea, still towards the ship. The seven and twentieth, the Wind blew North- Io east, and it snowed so fast, that wee could not worke without the doore. That day our men killed a White Foxe, which they flead; and after they had rofted it, are thereof, which taffed like Conies flesh ; the fame day we fet vp our Dyall, and made the Clocke flrike, and wee hime vp a Lampe to burne in the night time, wherein we vied the fat of the Beare which wee melt, Beares fat for and burnt in the Lamoe.

The nine and twentieth, the Wind still blew North-east, and then wee setched Segges from the Sea-fide, and layd them upon the Sayle that was spread upon our House, that it might bee so much the closer and warmer : for the Deales were not driven close together, and the foule weather would not permit vs to doe it. The thirtieth , the Winde yet continued North-eaft, and the Sunne was full abous the Earth, a little aboue the Horizon. The one and thirtieth, the 20 Winde still blew North-east, with great store of Snow, whereby weedurst not looke out

The first of November, the Wind still continued North-east, and then wee faw the Moone rife in the East when it beganne to bee darke, and the Sunne was no higher aboue the Horizon Sun & Moone, then we could well fee it, and yet that day we faw it not, because of the close weather, and the great Snow that fell, and it was extreame cold, so that we could not goe out of the House,

The second, the Wind blew West, and somewhat South, but in the Ecuening it blew North, with calme weather, and that day we faw the Sunne rife South South-east, and it went downe South South-South South-west, but it was not full about the Earth, but passed in the Horizon along by the east, and goeth Earth : and the fame day one of our men killed a Fox with a Hatchet, which was flayed, roafted 20 downe South and eaten. Before the Sunne began to decline, wee faw no Foxes, and then the Beares yied to South west, not full about goe from vs.

The third, the Wind blew North-west with calme weather, and the Sunne rose South and Foxes succeed by East, and somewhat more Southerly, and went downe South and by West, and somewhat more Southerly and then we could fee nothing but the vpper part of the Sunne about the Horizon , and yet the Land where wee weren was as high as the Mast of our ship, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, it being in the eleventh degree, and fortie eight minutes of Scorpie, his Declination being fitteene degrees and twentie foure minutes, on the South-fide of the Equinoctiall Line.

The fourth, it was calme weather, but then wee faw the Sunne no more, for it was no 40 Sun no more longer about the Horizon, then our Chirurgion made a Bath (to bathe vs in) of a Wineafter the third pipe, wherein wee entred one after the other, and it did vs much good; and was a great of November, meanes of our health. The same day wee tooke a White Foxe, that oftentimes came abroad, not as they wied at other times : for that when the Beares left vs at the fetting of the Sunne, and came not againe before it rose, the Foxe to the contrarie came abroad when they were gone.

The fifth, the Winde was North, and somewhat West, and then wee saw open water vpon the Sea, but our shippe lay still fast in the Ice, and when the Sunne had left vs, wee saw mully seene in the Moone continuall both day and night, and neuer went downe when it was in the the Sunnes ab- highest degree. The fixt, the Winde was North-west, still weather, and then our men 50 fetchr a Sled full of Fire-wood, but by reason that the Sunne was not seene, it was very darke weather.

The seventh, it was darke weather, and very still, the Winde West, at which time wee could hardly discerne the Day from the Night, specially because at that time our Clocke stood full, and by that meanes weeknew not when it was day, although it was day, and our men role not out of their Cabins all that day; but onely to make water, and therefore they knew not whether the light they faw, was the light of the day or of the Moone; whereupon, they were of seuerall opinions, some saying, it was the light of the day, the others of the night: but as wee tooke good regard thereunto, wee found it to bee the light of the day about twelve of the clocke at noone.

The eight, it was still weather, the Winde blowing South, and South-west. The fame day our men fetche another Sled of Fire-wood, and then also wee tooke a White Bread shared Foxe, and saw open water in the Sea. The same day wee shared our Bread amongst vs, each man having foure pound and tenne ounces, for his allowance in eight dayes, fo that then

They fee the

Nouember,

Sun rifeth

the Earth.

Beares.

Dackneffe,

CHAP, S.S.2. Foxe-trap Wine Sharing. Bathing. Foxe skinne Cabs.

we were eight dayes eating a Barrell of Bread, whereas before wee ate it up in fine or fix dayes: we were eight on hear our flesh and fish, for we had more flore thereof; but our drinke failed vs. Recressingly and therefore we were forced to share that also: but our best Beere was for the most part who - lesse with stools ly without any strength, so that it had no fauour at all : and besides all this, there was a great deale of it spile. The ninch, the Windblew North-east, and somewhat more Northerly, and then we had not much day light, but it was altogether darke. The tenth, it was calme weather, the Wind North-well, and then our men went into the ship to see how it lay, and wee Ship ballaft faw that there was a great deale of water in it, fo that the ballaft was concred oner with water, concred with but that it was frozen, and so might not bee pumpt out. The eleventh, it was indifferent wea- water. to ther, the Wind North-west. The same day we made around thing of Cable yarne, and like to a

Net, to catch Foxes withall, that wee might get them into the House, and it was made like a Foxersp. Trap, which fell vpon the Foxes as they came under it, and that day we caught one.

The tweltth, the Wind blew East, with a little light : that day wee began to share our Wine, Wine mared. euery man had two Glasses a day, but commonly our Drinke was water, which we melted out Drinke water, of Snow, which we gathered without the House. The thirteenth, it was foule weather, with great Snow, the Wind East. The fourteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a cleere Skie full of Starres, and an East-wind. The fitteenth, it was darke weather, the Wind North-east, with a vading light. The fixteenth, it was weather with a temperate Ayre, and an East-wind. The feuenteenth, it was darke weather, and a close Ayre, the Wind East. The eighteenth, it was foule weather, the wind South-east : then the Master cut vp a packe of course Clothes, and dinided it amongst our men that needed it, therewith to defend vs better from the cold. The nineteenth, it was foule weather, with an East-wind, and then the Chist with Linnen was opened, and divided amongst the men for shift, for they had need of them, for then our onely care was to find all the meanes we could to defend our bodie from the cold. The twentieth, it was faire still weather, the Wind Easterly, then wee washt our sheets, but it was so cold, that when wee had walht and wrung them, they presently froze to stiffe, that although wee layed them by a great fire, the fide that lay next the fire thawed, but the other fide was hard frozen, so that wee should sooner haue torne them in sunder then haue opened them, whereby wee were forced to put them into the feething water againe to thaw them, it was fo exceeding cold. The one and

twentieth, it was indifferent weather with a North-east wind, then we agreed that every man flould take his turne to cleane Wood, thereby to case our Cooke, that had more then worke enough to doe twice a day to dreffe meate, and to melt Snow for our Drinke, but our Master and the Pilot were exempted from that Worke.

The two and twentieth, the Wind was South-east, it was faire weather, then wee had but feuenteene Cheeles, whereof one we ate amongst vs, and the rest were divided to every man one for his portion, which they might eate when he lift. The three and twentieth, it was indifferene good weather, the Wind South-east, and as we perceived that the Fox vsed to come oftner, and more then they were wont, to take them the better, wee made certaine Trappes of thicke Planckes, whereon wee laid stones, and round about them placed pieces of shards fast in the 40 ground, that they might not digge under them, and fo got fome of the Foxes. The foure and Bathing and twentieth, it was foule weather, and the Wind North-east, and then wee prepared our selues to purging. goe into the Bath, for some of vs were not very well at ease, and so source of vs went into it, and when we came out, our Surgeon gaue vs a Purgation, which dil vs much good, and that day we tooke foure Foxes. The fine and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West; and

that day we tooke two Foxes with Springs that we had purpolely fer vp. The fix and twentieth, it was foule weather, and a great storme with a South-west Wind, and great flore of Snow, whereby wee were fo closed vp in the House, that wee could not goe out, but were forced to ease our selues within the House. The seuen and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind South-west, and then we made more Spinges to get Foxes, for it stood 50 vs vpon to doe it, because they served vs for meate, as if God had sent them purposely for vs, for we had not much meate. The eight and twentieth of November, it was foule flormic weather, and the Winde blew hard out of the North, and it frew hard, whereby wee were thut

vp againe in our House, the Snowlay so closed before the doores. The nine and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, and a good Ayre: the Wind Northerly, and we found meanes to open our doore by shoueling away the Snow, whereby wee got one of our doores open, and going out, wee found all our Traps and Springes cleane conered ouer with Storeof Snow. Snow, which wee made cleane, and fet them up againe to take Foxes : and that day wee tooke one, which as then ferued vs not onely for meate, but of the skinnes wee made Caps to weare Fox-skin-csps. vpon our heads, wherewith to keepe them warme from the extreame cold. The thirtieth, it 60 was faire cleere weather, the Wind Well, and fix of vs went to the ship, all well provided of

Armes to see how it lay : and when wee went vnder the fore Decke, wee tooke a Foxe alive The fift of December, it was foole weather with a South-west Wind, and great store of December.

Snow, whereby we were once againe stopt up in the House, and by that meanes there was so

great a smoake in the House, that we could hardly make fre, and so were forced to lye all day in Lye fill in Ca- our Cabins, but the Cooke was forced to make fire to dreft, our meate. The fecond, it was full feule weather, whereby wee were forced to keepe still in the House, and yet wee could hardly nt by the fire, because of the smoake, and therefore stayed still in our Cabins, and then we heated flones, which we put in our Cabins to warme our feet, for that both the cold and the smoake were

Coldand Smoake. Le cracking

The third, we had the like weather, at which time as we lay in our Cabins, wee might heare the Ice cracke in the Sea, and yet it was at the least halfe a mile from vs, which made a huge noyfe, and we were of opinion, that as then the great Hils of Ice which wee had fene in the Sea, in Summer time, brake one from the other, and for that during those two or three dayes, be. cause of the extreame smoake, we made not so much fire as we commonly vsed to doe, it froze so fore within the House, that the Wals and the Roofe thereof were frozen two fingers thick with Ice, and also in our Cabins where we lay all those three dayes, while wee could not goe out by reason of the foule weather, we set up the Glasse of twelve houres, and when it was runne out, wee fet it up againe, fill watching it left wee should misse our time. For the cold was so Clock frozen, great, that our Clocke was frozen, and might not goe, although we hung more waight on it then before.

Ice in the

The fourth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind North-east, and then we began enery man Deore digged by turne to digge open our doores that were closed up with Snow, for we saw that it would be often to doe, and therefore we agreed to worke by turnes, no man excepted but the Mafter 20 and the Pilot. The fifth, it was faire weather with an East-wind, and then we made our Sprine ges cleane againe to take Foxes. The fixt, it was foule weather againe, with an Eafterly Wind, and extreame cold, almost not to bee indured, whereupon wee lookt pittifully one vpon the other, being in great feare, that if the extreamitie of the cold grew to bee more and more, wee should all dye there with cold, for that what fire soener we made, it would not warme vs, yea, Cold stronger and our Sacke which is so hot, was trozen very hard, so that when wee were every man to have his part, we were forced to melt it in the fire, which wee shared every second day about halfee pint for a man, wherewith we were forced to fullayne our felues, and at other times wee dranke water, which agreed not well with the cold, and we needed not to coole it with Snow or Ice. but we were forced to melt it out of the Snow.

The fewenth, it was still foule weather, and we had a great storme with a North-east Wind,

which brought an extreame cold with it, at which time weeknew not wrat to doe, and while

we fate confulting together, what were best for vs to doe, one of our companions gaue vs coun-Sea-coale fire, fell to burne fome of the Sea-coales that we had brought out of the ship, which would cast a great heate and continue long, and so at Ecuening we made a great fire thereof, which cast a great heat: at which time wee were very carefull to keepe it in : for that the heate beeing fo great a comfort vinto vs, we tooke care how to make it continue long : whereupon wee agreed to flop vp all the doores and the Chimney, thereby to keepe in the heate, and io went into our Cabins to fleepe well comforted with the heate, and fo lay a great while talking together; but at last we were ta-Swounding & ken with a great fwounding and dazeling in our heads, yet some more then other some, which 40 fiffing by the we first perceised by a sicke man, and therefore the leffe able to beare it, and found our selves to Cole vapour be very ill at eafe, fo that fome of vs that were strongest, start out of their Cabins, and fift oand closenesses pened the Chimney, and then the doores, but he that opened the doore fell downe in a swound vpon the Snow, which I hearing, as lying in my Cabin next to the doore, flatt vp, and casting Vinegar in his face, recouered him againe, and to he rose vp : and when the doores were open, we all recouered our healths againe, by reason of the cold Ayre, and so the cold which before had

againe, gaue every one of vs a little Wine to comfort our hearts.

The eight, it was foule weather, the winde Northerly, very sharpe and cold, but we durit lay no more coales on, as wee did the day before, for that our misfortune had taught vs. that to shunne one danger we should not runne into another. The ninth, it was faire cleare weather, the skie full of Statres, then we fet our doore wide open, which before was fast closed up with Snow, and made our Springes ready to take Foxes. The tenth, it was still faire Star-light weather, the winde North-east: then wee tooke two Foxes, which were good meate for vs, for as then our victuals began to bee scant, and the cold full increased, whereunto their Skinnes serued Shoots on feet vs for a good defence. The eleuenth, it was faire weather, and a cleere ayre but very old, which frozen within. hee that felt not would not beleeue, for our Shooes froze as hard as hornes upon our feete, and They weare no within they were white frozen, so that we could not weare our shoots, but were forced to make great Pattents, the upper part being Sheepe-skinnes, which we put on ouer three or foure payre of Sockes, and to went in them to keepe our feet warme.

beene fo great an Enemy vnto vs, was then the onely reliefe that wee had, otherwife without

doubt, we had dyed in a fudden fwound, after that the Maffer, when we were come to our felues

Clothes on

The twelfth, it was faire cleere weather with a North-west winde, but extreame cold, so that our House walls and Cabbins were frozen a finger thicke; yea, and the Cloathes vpon our backes were white ouer with Frost, and although some of vs were of opinion, that wee should CHAP. S. S. 2. Cold blisters. Sunnes comfort. Foxes daintie at Venison, lay more coles upon the fire to warme vs, and that we should let the chimney stand open, yet we durst not doe it, fearing the like danger we had escaped. The thirteenth, it was faire cleere wea-

ther, with an East winde : then we tooke another Foxe, and tooke great paines about preparing and dreffing of our Springes, with no small trouble, for that if wee stayed too long without the Cold bliffers: doores, there arose blifters upon our Faces and our Eares. The fourteenth, it was faire weather; the winde North-east, and the skie full of starres, then we tooke the height of the right shoulder of the Rent, when it was South South-west, and somewhat more Westerly (and then it was at the highest in our Compasse) and it was elevated about the Horizon 20, degrees and 28, minutes, his Declination being 6. degrees and 18. minutes, on the North-fide of the line, which Declina-

10 tion being taken out of the height aforefayd, there refted 14. degrees, which being taken out of 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76. degrees.

The fifteenth, it was still faire weather, the winde East : that day wee tooke two Foxes, and faw the Moone rife East South-east, when it was fixe and twentie dayes old, in the figne of Scorpio. The fixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, the winde East : at that time wee had no more Wood in the house, but had burnt it all : but round about our house there lay some courred over with Snow, which with great paine and labour we were forced to digge out, and fo shouell away with Snow, writen what great pains and state which wee did by turnes, two and two together; the Snow, and fo brought it into the house, which wee did by turnes, two and two together; wherein we were forced to vie great speed, for wee could not long endure without the House, because of the extreame cold, although we wore the Foxes skinnes about our heads, and double zing, 20 apparell vpon our backes.

The fewenteenth, the winde still held North-east, with faire weather and so great Frosts, that wee were of opinion, that if there flood a Barrell full of water without the doore, it would in one night freeze from the top to the bottome. The eighteenth, the winde fill held North-eaft. with faire weather ; then feuen of vs went out vnto the Ship to fee how it lay, and being vnder the decke, thinking to finde a Foxe these, we fought all the holes but we found none; but when we entred into the Cabbin and had ftricken fire to fee in what cafe the ship was, and whether the water role higher in it, there wee found a Foxe, which we tooke and carryed it home, and eate it, and then we found that in eighteene dayes absence (for it was so long fince we had beene there) the water was risen about a finger high, but yet it was all Ice, for it froze as fast as it 30 came in, and the reffels which wee had brought with vs full of fresh water out of Holland, were frozen to the ground.

The nineteenth, it was faire weather, the winde being South : then we put each other in good comfort, that the Sunne was then almost base over, and ready to come to vs againe, which wee Sunnes comfore longed for, it being a weary time for vs to bee without the Sunne, and to want the greatest fore. comfort that God fendeth vnto man heere vpon the earth, and that which rejoyceth every liuing thing. The twentieth, before notine it was faise cleere weather, and then we had taken a Foxe, but towards Ecuening, there role such a storme in the South-west, with so great a frow, that all the house was inclosed therewith. Theone and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, with a North east winde, then we made our doore cleane againe, and made a way to goe out, and fed with from 40 clenfed our Traps for the Foxes, which did vs great pleasure when we tooke them; for they feemed as daintie as Venison vnto vs. The two and ewentieth, it was fould weather, with great ftore of fnow, the winde South, west, which stopt vp our doore againe, and wee were forced to digge it open againe, which was almost enery day to doe. The three and twentieth, it was foule weather, the wind South-welt, with great store of snow, but wee were in good comfort that the Sonne would come againe to vs, for as we gheft, that day hee was in Tropice Capricorni, Sun in Tropical

which is the furthest Signe that the Sunne passets on the South-side of the line, and from thence Capitornia. it turneth Northward againe. The foure and twentieth, being Christmasse Eeuen, it was faite Decem Stile weather, then wee opened our doore againe, and faw much open water in the Sea : for we had heard the Ice cracke and drive : although it was not day, yet we could see so fafte. Towards heard the ice cracks and urine; authors; it was not up, yet are the following for that all the paffage Cold Christian in the part of the North-east, with great flore of Snow, for that all the paffage Cold Christian in the part of the North-east, with great flore of Snow, for that all the paffage Cold Christian in the part of the North-east, with great flore of Snow, for that all the paffage Cold Christian in the part of the North-east, with great flore of Snow, for that all the paffage Cold Christian in the paf that wee had made open before, was flopt up againe. The fine and twentieth, being Christmaffe mille, day, it was foule weather, with a North-west winde, and yet though it was foule weather, we heard the Foxes runne ouer our Houle, wherewith some of our men sayd, it was an ill signe; and Ill signe inwhile we fated if puting why it should bee an ill signe, some of our men made answer, that it was deed.

an ill signe became wee could not take them, to put them into the Pot or roast them, for that had The fixe and twentieth, it was foule weather, the winde North-west, and it was so cold that

we could not warme vs. although wee yied all the meanes we could with great fires, good store Coldinaine of cloathes, and with hot flones and billets, layd vpon our feete and spon our bodies, as we lay, ble. 60 in our Cabbins; but notwithstanding all this, in the morning our Cabbins were frozen, which made vs behold one the other with fad countenance, but yet wee comforted our felters agains as well as we could, that the Sunne was then as low as it could goe, and that it now began to come to vs againe, and we found it to bee true : for that the Dayes beginning to lengthen, the Cold began to frengthen, but hope put vs in good comfort, and eafed our paine. The feuen and twentieth, it

was still soule weather, with a Notth-west wind, so that as then wee had not beene out in three was from four wearing out of doores, and within the house it was forgatives together, nor durift not cirrust our heads out of doores, and within the house it was forgatives. dayes rogerms, in a swe fare before a great Fire, and feemed to burne on the fore-fide, we from Burne perse, treame cours, true as we are the country men vie to be, when they come in at the country men vie to bee, when they come in at the gates of the Towne in Holland with their Sleds, and have gone all night. The eight and twentieth, it was still foule weather with a West wind, but about Ecuening it

began to cleere vp, at which time one of our men made a hole open at one of our doores, and began to creer vp, as what newes abroad, but found it is hard weather that hee flayed not long, and went out to fee what newes abroad, but found it is hardweather that hee flayed not long, and went out to see what it were much, that the Snow lay higher then our houle, and that if he had told we that it mad moved to me and the me had fayed out longer, his eares would vandoubtedly have beene frozen off. The nine and twentieth, 10 it was calme weather, and a pleasant ayre, the wind being Southward : that day, he, whole turns It was canne weathers and digged a hole through the Snow, where we went our of the houfe It was, opened the was in the state out of a Celler, at least feuen or eight steps high, each stepasoote vpon steps, as if it had beene out of a Celler, at least feuen or eight steps high, each stepasoote vpon neps, as a transfer of the Foxes, whereof for certaine days we had not taken any : and as we made them cleane, one of our men found a dead Foxe in one of them, that was frozen as hard as a stone, which he brought into the house, and thawed it before the fire, and after flaying it, some of our men eate it. The thirtieth, it was foule weather againe, with a storme out of the West, and great store of Snow, so that all the labour and paine that we had taken the day before to make steps to goe out of our house, and to clense our Springes, was all nactacen me say our season over with Snow againe, higher then it was before. The one and 30 thirrieth, it was fill foule weather, with a florme out of the North-weft, whereby we were fo faft shur vp into the house, as if wee had beene prisoners, and it was so extreame cold, that the fire almost cast no heate : for as we put our feet to the fire, we burnt our hose before we could feelethe heate, fo that we had worke enough to doe to patch our hole : and which is more, if we had not sooner smelt, then felt them, we should have burnt them ere we had knowne it.

Fire conque-

After that with great cold, danger, and difease, wee had brought this yeere unto an end, we As Dan 1597, entred into the yeere of our Lord God 1597, the beginning whereof, was in the same manner as the end of Inno 1596. had beene, for the weather continued as cold, foole, and Snowie, as it was before, so that woon the first of January wee were inclosed in the House, the winde then being West : at the same time wee agreed to share our Wine every man a 30 fmall measure full, and that but once in two dayes: and as we were in great care and feare that it would bee long before we should get out from thence, (and we having but small hope therein) fome of vs spared to drinke wine as long as we could, that if we should stay long there, we might drinke it at our need. The fecond, it blew hard with a West wind, and a great storme with both Snow and Frost, so that in foure or fine dayes, we durst not put our heads out of the doores, and as then by reason of the great cold, we had almost burne all our Wood; notwithstanding, we dust not goe out to fetch more wood, because it froze so hard, and there was no being without the doore, but feeking about we found fome peeces of wood that lay ouer the doore, which we close, and withall cloue the blockes whereon we vied to beate our Stock-fish, and fo holpe our felues so well as we could. The third, it was all one weather, and we had little wood to burne. The 40 fourth, it was fill foule stormie weather, with much Snow and great cold, the winde Southwest, and we were spreed to keepe in the house : and to know where the wind blew, we thrust a halfe-pike out at the Chimney with a little cloath or feather upon it, but as soone as wee thruft it out, it was prefently frozen as hard as a peece of wood, and could not goe about nor

Three Kings

The fifth, it was somewhat still and calme weather: then wee digged our doore open againe, that we might goe out, and carrie out all the fath that had beene made, during the time of our being flut in the house; and made every thing handsome, and fetched in Wood which we cleft, and it was all our dayes worke to further our felues as much as we could, fearing leaft we should be thus vp againe : and as there were three doores in our portall, and for that our house by couered ouer in Snow, wee tooke the middle doore thereof away, and digged a great hole in the fnow, that lay without the house, like to a side of a vault, wherein we might goe to ease our felues, and cast other filth into it : and when we had taken paines all day, we remembred our felues that it was Twelfth Eeuen, and then we prayed our Mafter that we might be merris that night, and fayd, that we were content to spend some of the Wine that night which we had spared, and which was our share every second day, and whereof for certayne dayes wee had not drunke, and so that night we made merrie, and drunke to the three Kings, and therewith we had two pound of Meale, whereof wee made pan-cakes with Oyle, and every man a white Bisket, which we lope in Wine; and so supposing that we were in our owne Country, and amongst our friends, it comforted vs as well as if we had made a great banquet in our owne house; and we al- 60 so made tickets, and our Gunner was King of Nous Zembla, which is at least two hundred miles

long, and lyeth betweene two Seas.

ftirre with the wind.

The fixe, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then wee went out and cleanfed our Traps to take Foxes, which were our Venison, and we digged a hole in the Snow, where our fire-

wood lay, and left it clo fe aboue like a vault; and from thence fetched out our Wood as we needed it. The feuenth, it was foule weather againe, with a North-west wind, and some Snow. and very cold, which put vs in great feare to be shut vp in the house againe. The eight, it was faire weather againe, the wind North : then wee made our Springes ready to get more Venifon: which wee longed for, and then wee might fee and marke day-light, which then began Day-light to encrease, that the Sunne as then began to come towards vs againe, which put vs in no little espied. comfort.

The ninth, it was foule weather, with a North-west wind, but not so hard weather as it had beene before, so that we might goe out of the doore to make cleane our Springes. The tenth, it was faire weather with a North wind : then seuen of vs went to our ship well armed, which 10 we found in the same state wee left it in, and in it wee saw many footsteps of Beares , both great Beares in the and small, whereby it seemed that there had beene more then one or two Beares therein; and ship, as we went under hatches, we strooke fire, and lighted a Candle, and found that the water was risen a foot higher in the ship. The eleventh, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the cold began to be somewhat lesse, so that as then we were bold to goe out of the doores, and went about a quarter of a mile to a Hill, from thence we fetched certaine stones, which we lavd in the fire, therewith to warme vs in our Cabins.

The twelfth, it was cleare weather, the wind North-west: that evening it was very cleare, and the skie full of Statres, then wee tooke the height of Oculus Tanri, which is a bright and Oculus Tanri, well knowne Starre, and we found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 29. degrees and 54. mi-20 nutes, her declination being 15. degrees 54. minutes on the North fide of the Line. This declination being fubtracted from the height aforefaid, then there refted 14. degrees, which fubtraded from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76, degrees, and io by measuring the height of that Starre, and some others, wee gheffed that the Sunne was in the like height, and

that we were there vnder 76. degrees, and rather higher then lower. The thirteenth, it was faire still weather, the wind Westerly, and then wee perceined that day-light began more and more to encrease, and we went out and cast Bullets at the bale of the Flag-staffe, which before we could not see when it turned about. The fourteenth, it was faire weather and a cleare light, the wind Westerly, and that day we tooke a Foxe. The fifteenth, 30 it was faire cleere weather, with a West wind, and axe of vs went about the ship, where wee found the Bolck-vanger (which the last time that we were in the ship, wee stucke in a hole in the fore decke, to take Foxes) pulled out of the hole, and lay in the middle of the ship, and all torne in pieces by the Beares, as we perceitted by their footsteps.

The fixteenth, it was faire weather, the wind Northerly, and then we went now and then out of the house to stretch out our joynts and our limbs with going and running, that we might not become lame, and about noone time we faw a certaine redueffe in the shie, as a shew or mel- during blusheth senger of the Sunne that began to come towards vs. The seventeenth, it was cleare weather to lie so long with a North wind, and then still more and more wee perceived that the Sunne began to come in bed, neerer vnto vs, for the day was somewhat warmer, so that when we had a good fire, there fell 40 great pieces of Ice downe from the walls of our house, and the Ice melted in our Cabine, and the Cold releases water dropped downe, which was not so before, how great socuer our fire was; but that night

it was cold againe. The eighteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-east wind, then our Wood began

to confume, and so we agreed to burne some of our Sea-coles, and not to stop vp the Chimney, and then we should not need to feare any hurt, which we did, and found no difease thereby, but we thought it better for vato keepe the Coles, and to burne our Wood more sparingly, for that the Coles would ferue vs better when we should fayle home in our open Scute.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind: at that time taking of Foxes began to fayle vs, which was a figne that the Beares would come againe, as not long after we found it to be true, for as long as the Beares stay away, the Foxes came abroad, and not much before the Beares come abroad, the Foxes were but little feene.

The two and twentieth, it was faire weather with a West wind: then we went out agains to cast the Bullet, and perceined that day-light began to appeare, whereby some of vs said, that the Sunne would foone appeare vnto vs, but William Barens; to the contrary faid, that it was yet two weekes too soone. The three and twentieth, it was faire calme weather, with a Southwest wind : then foure of vs went to the ship, and comforted each other , giving God thankes that the hardest time of the Winter was past, being in good hope that we should live to talke of those things at home in our owne Countrey : and when we were in the ship, we found that the water role higher and higher in it, and to each of vs taking a Bisket or two with vs, wee went 60 home againe.

The foure and twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind : then I, and I acob Hoemskerke, and another with vs went to the Sea-fide, on the South fide of None Zembla, where contrary to our expectation, I first faw the edge of the Sunne, wherewith wee went speedily Sunne appea. home againe, to tell William Barents, and the rest of our companions that toyfull newes: but Ina-14-

William Barents being a wife and well experienced Pilot, would not believe it, efferming it to be about fourteene dayes to foone for the Sunne to finne in that part of the World; but we earneftly affirmed the contrarie, and faid, that we had feene the Sunne.

ftrange, and CONLEASY to all learned mens

Opinions,

The flue and twentieth, and fixe and twentieth, it was mifty, and close weather, so that wee could not fee any thing: then they that layed the contrary wag.r with vs, thought that they had won; but vpon the feuen and twentieth day it was cleare weather, and then wee faw the nau won; our vpon the leuen and twentering by the resulting and the mainteffly appeared that wee had sun fully feen. Sunne in his full roundnesse about the Horizon, whereby it manitefly appeared that wee had Sunne in ans tour rountement above ching the same, and that wee said, it was cleane contrary to the opinions of all old and new which they ching the tame, and that were tain, it was cleane contrary to the opinions of an one and new had loft the 4. Writers; yea, and contrary to the nature and roundnelle both of Heaten and Earth; fome of vs 10 vertices; year contrary to the there had been no day, that it is ight be that we had oursilept our disperie to felues, whereof we were better affured : but concerning the thing in it felfe, feeing Cod is wonthem agrine vpon the 14, of derfull in all his workes, we will referre that to his almightie power, and leave it vnto others to vano the 14, of diffure of, but for that no man shall thinke vs to be in doubt thereof, if wee should let this pass without discoursing upon it, therefore we will make some declaration thereof, whereby we may affure our felues that we kept good reckoning.

You must vaderstand, that when we first law the Sun, it was in the fift degr. and 25 min. of Aquerius, and it should have staid according to our first ghesting, till it had entred into the 16.deg. and 27. min. of Aquarius, before he should have shewed there vinto vs, in the height of 76.deg. Which we ftriuing and contending about it amongst our selines, could not be farished, but won. 20 dred thereat, and iome among it vs were of opinion, that we had mistaken our selves, which nener held fie we could not be perfivaded vnto, for that enery day without fayle, wee noted what had part, and also had vied our Clocke continually, and when that was frozen, wee vied our Houre-glasse of twelue houres long, whereupon wee argued with our felues, in diuers wise, to know how we should finde out that difference, and leave the trueth of the time, which to tris, wee agreed to looke into the Ephemerides made by Isfopous Schole, Printed in Venice, for the yeeres of our Lord 1 , 89 . till A. 1600. and we found therein, that vpon the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary, (when the Sun fift appeared vnto vs) that at Venice the Clocke being one in the night time, the Moone and Inpiter were in conjunction, whereupon we fought to know when the same conjunction should be ouer or about the house where wee then were, and at last wee 30 found that the foure and twentieth day of January was the fame day whereon the conjunction Difference of aforesaid happened in Venice, at one of the clocke in the night, and with vs in the morning, when the Sunne was in the East: for we faw manifestly that the two Planets aforelaid approached neere vnto each other, vntill such time as the Moone and Impuer stood one inst our the other, both in the figne of Tourses, and that was at fixe of the clocke in the morning, at which time the Moone and Impiter were found by our Compasse, to be in conjunction over our house, in the North and by East point, and the South part of the Compasse was South South-west, and there we had it right South, the Moone being eight dayes old, whereby it appeareth, that the Sunne and the Moone were eight points different, and this was about fixe of the clockein the morning: this place differeth from Venice fine houres in longitude, whereby we may ghelic how 40 much we were neerer East then the Citie of Venice, which was fine houres, each houre being 14. degrees, which is in all 75. degrees, that we were more Eafterly then Venice, by all which it is manifeftly to be feene, that wee had not fayled in our account, and that also wee had found our right longitude, by the two Planets aforefaid, for the Towne of Venice lieth under 37. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and her declination is 46. degrees and 5. minutes, whereby it followeth that our place of Nona Zembla, lieth under 112. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and the height of the Pole 76 degrees, and so you have the right longitude and latitude but from the vetermost point of Nona Zembla to the point of Cape de Tahm, the vetermost point of Tarie is, where it windeth Southward, the longitude differeth 60. degrees; but you must vn-Note for deg. derstand, that the degrees are not so great as they are vinder the Equinoctiall Line, for right vin- 50 der the Line a degree is fifteene mikes, but when you leave the Line, either Northward or Southward, then the degrees in longitude doe lessen, so that the neerer that a man is to the North or South Pole, so much the degrees are lesse: so that under the 75. degrees Northward, where we wintred, the degrees are but three miles and two third parts; whereby it is to be marked, that we had but 60. degrees to faile to the faid Cape de Tabin, which is, 220. miles, so the faid Cape lieth in 172 degrees in long tude as it is thought; and being aboue it, it feemeth that we should be in the Streight of Anian, where we may fayle boldly into the South, as the Land reacheth. Now what further instructions are to be had to know, where wee lost the Sunne under the faid

tring place.

76. degrees upon the fourth of Nouember, and faw it agains upon the foure and twentieth of Ianuary: I leave that to be described, by such as make profession thereof, it suffices have 60 shewed, that it failed vs not to appeare at the ordinary time. The fine and twentieth of Ianuary, it was darke cloudy weather, the wind Westerly, so that Besterreturns the feeing of the Sunne the day before, awas againe doubted of, and then many wagers were with the feeing of the Sunne the day before, awas againe doubted of, and then many wagers were with the Sun. the seeing of the Sunne the day before, was again to district on, and then many weather sunner against the Sunne appeared, the same day we saw a Beare, (which

as long as the Sunne appeared not vnto vs we faw not) comming out of the South-west towards our house, but when we shouted at her she came no neerer, but went away again. The six & twen tieth, it was faire cleare weather, but in the Hor zon there hung a white or darke cloude, whereby we could not fee the Sunne, vehereupon the reft of our companions, thought that we had mistaken our selues voon the soure and twentieth day, and that the Sunne appeared not vnto vs. and mocked vs, but vve were resolute in our former affirmation, that vve had seene the Sunne. but not in the full roundnesse: That Eeuening the Sicke man that was amongst vs, was very Sicke man wyeake, and felt himfelfe to bee extreame ticke, for he had layne long time, and we comforted diethhim as well as vve might, and gaue him the best admonition that vve could, but hee dyed not

10 long after midnight. The twentie feuen it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, then in the morning we dieged a hole in the fnow hard by the house, but it was still to extreame cold, that we could not flay long at worke, and so wee digged by turnes, every man a little while, and then went to the fire, and another went and supplied his place, till at last wee digged seuen foot depth where wee went to burie the dead man, after that when we had read certaine Chapters, and fung some Pfalmes, wee all went out and buried the man, which done we went in and brake our fafts, and while we were at meate, and discoursed among st our selues, touching the great quantitie of show that continually fell in that place, wee faid that if it fell out, that our house should bee closed vp againe with fnow, wee would finde the meanes to climbe out at the chimney, whereupon our Malter went to trie if hee could climbe up through the chimney, and fo get out, and while hee

was climbing one of our men went forth of the doore, to fee if the Master were out or not, who The Summeter ftanding upon the fnow, faw the Sunne, and called vs all out, wherewith we all went forth, and faw the Sun in his full roundnesse, a little aboue the Horizon, and then it was without all doubt. that wee had seene the Sunne vpon the foure and twentieth of Ianuary, which made vs all glad, and we gave God heartie thankes, for his grace shewed vnto vs, that that glorious light appeared

vnto vs againe.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind, then we went out many times to exercise our relues, by going, running, casting of the ball, ( for then we might see a good way from vs ) and to refresh our joynts, for wee had long time fitten dull, whereby many of vs To were very loofe. The nine and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great flore of fnow, the wind North-west, whereby the house was closed up againe with snow. The thirtieth, it was darke weather, with an East wind; and we made a hole through the doore, but wee shouled not the fnow very farre from the portall, for that as foone as we law what weather it was, wee had no defire to goe abroad. The one and thirtieth, it was faire calme weather, with an East wind. then we made the doore cleane, and shouled away the snow, and threw it vpon the house, and went out, and wee faw the Sunne shine cleere, which comforted vs, meane time we law a Beare. Beare, that came towards our house, but wee went foftly in, and watched for her till shee came neerer, and as shone as she was hard by we shot at her, but she ran away againe.

The first of February, being Candlemasse Eeue, it was boisterous weather, with a great storme, February, 40 and good store of snow, whereby the house was closed up againe with snow, and we were conftrained to flay within doors, the wind then being north-west. The second it was foule weather, and as then the Sunne had not rid vs of all the foule weather, whereby wee were somewhat difcomforted, for that being in good hope of better weather wee had not made so great prouision of wood as we did before. The third, it was faire weather, with an East wind, but very mystie, whereby wee could not fee the Sunne, which made vs tomewhat melancholy, to fee fo great a myst, and rather more then we had had in the Winter time, and then we digged our doore open againe, and fetched the wood that lay without about the doore into the houle, which we were forced with great paine and labour to dig out of the snow. The fourth, it was foule weather, with great flore of fnow, the wind being South-weft, and then wee were close vp againe with fnow, but then wee tooke not so much paines as we did before, to dig open the doore, but when we had 50 occasion to goe out we climbed out at the chimney, and eased our selues, and went in agains the

The fifth, it was still foule weather, the wind being East, with great store of snow, whereby They go cout wee were flut up againe into the house, and had no other way to get out but by the chimney, at the chimney and those that could not climbe out, were faine to helpe themselves within as well as they could, ney, The fixth, it was still foule stormy weather, with store of show, and we still went out at the chimney, (and troubled not our felues with the doore,) for some of vs made it an eatie matter to climbe out at the chimney. The feuenth, it was ftill toule weather, with much fnow, and a South-west wind, and we thereby forced to keep the house, which grieued vs more then when the Sun thined not, for that having feene it, and felt the heate thereot, yet wee were forced not to inioy it. The eight, it began to be fairer weather, the wind being South-west, then wee faw the Sun rife South, South-east, and went downe South South-west, by the Compasse that we had made of Lead, and placed according to the Meridian of that place, but by our common Compafie it differed two points. The ninth, it was faire cleere weather, the wind South- weft, but as then wee could not

Heat of the Sunne.

fee the Sunne, because it was close weather in the South , where the Sunne should goe downe, The tenth, it was faire cleare weather, so that wee could not tell where the wind blew, and then The tenting to was said the control of the Sun, but in the Ecurning it began to blow semewhat cold out

The elementh, it was faire weather, the wind South, that day about noone, there came a Beare towards our house, and wee watched her with our Muskets, but shee came not so necre as wee could reach her, the same night wee heard some Foxes stirring, which since the Beares began to come abroad againe we had not much seene. The twelfth, it was cleere weather and very calme, the winde South-west, then we made our Traps cleane againe, meane-time there came a great the winde South-west, then we make our stage of in, and weel feuelled at her with our Munkett, 10

Beare towards our house, which made vs all goe in, and weel feuelled at her with our Munkett, 10 and as shee came right before our doore, we shot her into the brest, cleane through the heart, the bullet paffing through her body, and went out againe at her tayle, and was as flatte as a Counter, the Beare feeling the blow, leapt backwards, and ranne twentie or thirtie foot from the house and there lay downe, wherewith wee leapt all out of the house, and ranne to her, and found her fail aliue, and when the faw vs, thee reard up her head, as if the would gladly have done vs form mifchiefe, but we trufted her not, for that we had tryed their firength fuffciently before, and therefore wee shot her twice into the body againe, and therewith shee dyed ? Then we ript up her belly, and taking out her guttes, drew her home to the House where we flayed her, and tooke at of a Bear, view belly, and taxing out nerguives, user the library which wee molt and burned in our Limps. This full fire Lamps. Greafe did vs great good feruice, tor by that meanes we ftill kept a Lampe burning all night 20 long, which before wee could not doe, for want of Greate, and enery man had meanes to burnea Lampe in his Cabbin, for such necessaries as hee had to doe. The Beares skinne was nine foot long, and feuen foot broad.

The thirteenth, it was faire cleere vocather with a hard West winde, at whith time we had more light in our house by burning of Lampes, whereby we had meanes to passe the time away, by reading and other exercites, which before (when we could not diffinguish Day from Night, by reason of the darkenesse, and had not Lamps continually burning) vvee could not doe. The foureteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a hard West wind before noone, but after noone, it was still weather, then fine of vs went to the Ship to see how it lay, and found the waterto increase in it, but not much. The fifteenth, it was foule weather, with a great florme out of the 30 South-west, with great store of Snow, whereby the House was closed vp againe, that Night the Foxes came to denoure the dead body of the Beare, whereby we were in great feare, that all the Beares thereabouts would come thither, and therefore wee agreed, as foone as we could to get out of the honfe to burie the dead Beare deepe vnder the Snow.

The fixteenth of February, it was foule weather, with great store of Snow and a South-west wwind, that day was Shroue-tuelday, then wee made our felues formewhat merrie in our great griefe and trouble, and enery one of vs dranke a draught of Wine.

The nineteenth, it was faire cleere v veather, with a South-west winde, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, which in long time before were could not doe, because the Horizon was not cleere; as also for that it mounted not to high, nor gaue not so much shadow, as vve vvere to haue in our Astrolabism, and therefore we made an Instrument that was halfe round, at the one end having 90. degrees marked thereon, whereon we hung a thread with a Plumet of Lead, as the water Compasses have, and therewith we tooke the height of the Sunne, when it was at the higheft, and found that it was 3. degrees elevated above the Horizon, his Declination 11. degrees and 16. minutes, which being added to the height aforefayd, made 14. degrees and 16. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, there refted 75. degrees and 44. minutes for the height of the Pole, but the aforesayd 3 degrees of height, being taken at the lowest fide of the Sunne, the 16.minutes might well be added to the height of the Pole, and foit was just 76. degrees, as we had measured it before. The twentieth, it was foule weather, with great store of Snow, the wind South-west, whereby we were shut wp againe in the house.

The two and twentieth, it was cleere faire vveather, with a South-west wind, then we made ready a Sled to fetch more Wood, for need compelled vs thereunto; for as they fay, hunger driveth the Wolfe out of his denne, and eleven of vs went together, all well appointed with our Armes, but comming to the place where we should have the Wood, we could not come by it, by reason it lay so deepe vinder the Snow, whereby of necessitie we were compelled to goe further, where with great labour and trouble we got some : but as vve returned backe againe therewith, it was fo fore labour vnto vs, that we were almost out of comfort, for that by reason of the long cold and trouble that we had indured, vve vvere become so vveake and feeble, that vve had little strength, and we began to bee in doubt, that we should not recouer our strengths againe, and should not be able to fetch any more Wood, and so we should have dyed with cold, but the pre- 60 fent necessitie and the hope wee had of better weather, increased our forces, and made vs doe more then our strengths afforded, and when we came neere to our house, we saw much open vvater in the Sea, which in long time we had not feene, which also put vs in good comfort, that things would bee better.

CHAP. 5. S. 2. Tartarian Sea. Shooes of Felt and Ruoge. Shooes fozen.

The five and twentieth, it was foule weather againe, and much Snow, with a North winde, whereby we were closed vp with Snow againe, and could not get out of our House.

The eight and twentieth of February, it was still weather, with a South-west wind, then ten of vs went and fetched another Sled full of Wood, with no leffe paine and labour then wee did before, for one of our companions could not helpe vs, because that the first joynt of one of his great Toes was frozen off, and so heecould doe nothing.

The first of March, it was faire still weather, the wind West but very cold, and we were forced March, to spare our Wood, because it was so great labour for vs to fetch it, so that when it was day, we exercifed our felues as much as we might, with running, going, and leaping, and to them that In lay in their Cabins, wee gaue hot stones to warme them, and towards night we made a good fire, which we were forced to endure. The second, it was cold cleere weather, with a West wind, the same day we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was cleuated about the Horizon 6. degrees and 48. minutes, and his Declination was 7. degrees and 12. minutes, which Substracted from 90. degrees, refteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The third, it was faire weather with a West wind, at which time our Sicke men were fomewhat better, and fate vpright in their Cabins, to doe fome thing to passe the time away, but after they found that they were too ready to stirre before their times. The fourth, it was faire weather, with a West wind the same day there came a Beare to our House, whom we watcht with our Pieces, as wee did before, and thot at her, and hit her, but thee runne away, at that time fine of vs went to our Ship, 20 where we found that the Beares had made worke, and had opened our Cookes cupbord, that was concred over with faow, thinking to finde fome thing in it, and had drawne it out of the Ship

The fenenth, it was still foule weather and as great a winde, so that wee were shut vp in our Note. House, and they that would goe out, must climbe vp through the Chimney, which was a common thing with vs, and still we saw more open water in the Sea, and about the Land, whereby wee were in doubt that the Ship in that foule weather, and driving of the Ice, would be loofe (for as then the Ice draue) while we were thut vp in our House, and wee should have no meanes to helpe it. The eight, it was still foule vveather, with a South-west storme, and great store of Snow, whereby we could see no Ice in the North-east, nor round about in the Sea, whereby we 30 were of opinion, that North-east from vs there was a great Sea. The minth, it was foule vveather, but not fo foule as the day before, and leffe fnow, and then we could fee further from va and perceive that the yvater yvas open in the North-east, but not from vs towards Tartaria, for there we could fill fee Ice in the Tartarian Sea, otherwise called the Ice Sea, so that we weete of opinion, that there it was not very wide, for when it was cleere weather, we thought many times that wee faw the Land and thewed it to our companions, South and South-east from our house, like a hilly Land, as land commonly showeth it selfe, when we see it.

The eleventh, it was cold, but faire Sun-shine vventher, the wind North-east, then we tooks the height of the Sunne with our Aftrolabium, and found it to bee elevated about the Herizon 10. degrees and 19. minutes, his Declination was 3 degrees and 41. minutes, which being added 40 to the height aforefayd, made 14.degrees, which substracted from 90. degrees, there resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. Then twelve of vs went to the place where wee vied to goe. to fetch a Sled of Wood, but still we had more prine and labour therewith, because we were vveaker, and when we came home with it, and were very vvearie, we prayed the Mafter to give each of vs a draught of Wine, which hee did, wherewith we were somewhat released and comforted, and after that were the willinger to labour, which was vnfupportable for vs. if meere extremitie had not compelled vs thereunto, faying oftentimes one vnto the other, That if the Wood were to be bought for Money, we would give all our Earnings or Wages for it.

The twelfth, it was foule weather, the Winde North-east, then the Ice came mightily driving in, which the South-west Wind had beene driven out, and it was then as cold, as it 50 had bin before in the coldest time of Winter.

The fifteenth, it was faire vveather, the Wind North, that day were opened our doore to soe out, but the cold rather increased then diminished, and was bitterer then before it

The fixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, but extreame cold with a North Wind, which put vs to great extreamitie, for that vve had almost taken our leaves of the cold, and then it bes gan to come againe this continued till the one and twentieth.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather, but ftill very cold, the Wind North, the fame day the Sunne entred into Aries in the Equinoctiall Line, and at noone wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated 14 degrees about the Horizon, but for that the Sunne Solin Aries, 60 was in the middle Line, and of the like distance from both the Tropickes, there was no declination, neither on the South nor North fide, and so the 14. degrees aforefayd being fubfiracted Shoots of Felt from 90, degrees, there refted 76, degrees for the height of the Pole. The fame day, we made and Rugge. shooes of Felt or Rugge, which we drew voon our feete, for vve could not goe in our shooes, by

reason of the great cold, for the shooes on our feet were as hard as hornes, and then we fetcht a

Sled full of Wood home to our house, with fore and extreame labour, and with extremititof Sted full or wood nome to our nome, with the cold which we indured, as if March means to bid vs farewell, for our hope and comfort was, cold which we indured, as it means means to be that at length the firength thereof would that the cold could not still continue in that force, but that at length the firength thereof would

The three and twentieth, it was very foule weather, with infernall bitter cold, the wind North-eaft, fo that we were forced to make more fire, as we had beene at other times, for then it was as cold as euer it had beene, and it froze very hard in the floore and voon the walls of our it was as cold as ever it had beene, such that every with great flore of fnow, and a North wind, house. The foure and twentieth, it was alike cold, with great flore of fnow, and a North wind, whereby we were once againe that up into the house, and then the Coles serned vs well, which whereby we were once against unit vp mind the diffixed of. The fixe and twentieth, it was faire to cleare weather, and very calme, then we digd our felues out of the house again, and went out, and then we feecht another Sled of Wood, for the great cold had made vs burne vp all that we had.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, whereby the Ice drape away very fail. The same day, sixe of vs went aboord the ship to see how it lay, and sound it away very tate. a resume cap, in the Beares had kept an euill fanoured house therein.

He is one sort; our we personned that was faire weather, the wind North-east and very calme, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 18. degrees and tome to minutes, his declination being 4. degrees and 40. minutes, which being (b.bitracked from the height aforefaid, there rested 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole

the house.

504

The fixe, it was still soule weather, with a sliffe North-west wind, that night there came a Beare to our house, and we did the best we could to shoot at her, but because it was most were ther, and the cocke foifly, our Peece would not give fire, wherewith the Beare came boldly to ward the houle, and came downe the staires clole to the doore, feeking to breake into the houle, but our Mafter held the doore faft to, and being in great hafte and feare, could not barre it with the piece of Wood that wee vied thereunto; but the Beare feeing that the doore was flut, fire went backe againe, and within two hourse after thee came againe, and went round about and wpon the top of the house, and made such a roaring, that it was fearefull to heare, and at lat got to the chimney, and made fuch works there, that wee thought fine would have broken downe, and tore the fayle that was made fail about it in many pieces, with a great and fearful jo noile, but for that it was night, we made no refiftance againft her, because wee could not fee her,

The fourteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind , then we saw greater hills of Ice round about the thip, then over we had seene before, which was a fearefull thing to beheld, and much to be wondred at, that the thip was not inflicten in pieces. The fifteenth, it was fair calme weather with a North wind, then feuen of vs went aboord the fhip, to fee in what take it was, and found it to be all in one fort, and as wee came backe againe, there came a great Bere toward vs, against whom we began to make defence, but she perceining that, made away from vs, and we went to the place from whence shee came to see her Den, where we found a great hole made in the Ice, about a mans length in depth, the entrie the reof being very narrow, and with 40 in wide, there we thrust in our Pikes to seele if there was any thing within it, but perceiuing it was empty, one of our men crept into it, but not too farre, for it was fearefull to behold, after that we went along by the Sea-fide, and there we faw, that in the end of March, and the beginning of Aprill, the Ice was in fuch wonderful manner rifen and piled vp one vpon the other, that it was wonderfull, in such manner as if there had beene whole Townes made of Ice, with

The faxteenth, it was foule weather, the wind North-west, whereby the Ice began somewhat to breake. The feuenteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, and then fewen of vs went to the ship, and there we faw open water in the Sea, and then wee went ouer the Ice-hills as well as we could, to the water, for in fixe or fever moneths we had not gone 10 fo neere vnto it, and when we got to the water, there we saw a little bird swimming therein, but as foone as it effied vs, it diued vinder the water, which we tooke for a figne, that there was more open water in the Sea then there had beene before, and that the time approached that the

The eighteenth of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then wee tooks the height of the Sunne, and it was elevated about the Horizon 25. degrees and 10. minutes, his declination 11. degrees and 12. minutes , which being taken from the height aforefaid , there refled 13. degrees and 58. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was found to be 75. degrees 58. minutes; then eleuen of ys went with a Sled to fetch more Wood, and brought it to the house, in the night there came another Beare upon our house, which so we hearing, went all out with our Armes, but the Beare ran away.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a North wind, then we tooke the height of the Sumoe againe, and found it to bee eleuateed 28, degrees and 8, minutes, his declination 14. degrees and 8. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the

## CHAP.S.S.3. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute.

height of the Pole. The nine and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a South-west wind, then we played at Colfe, both to the ship, and from thence againe homewards, to exercise our felues. The thirtieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then in the night wee could fee the Sunne in the North ( when it was in the highest ) iust about the Horizon, so that from that time wee faw the Sunne both night and day.

### ð. III.

Their preparation to goe from thence: they depart in a Boat and Scute both open. and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the way.

He first of May, it was faire weather with a West wind, then wee sod our last flesh, May, which for a long time we had spared, and it was still very good, and the last morfell tafted as well as the first, and we found no fault therein , but onely that it would last no longer. The fecond, it was foule weather, with a fforme out of the South-weft, whereby the Sea was almost cleare of Ice, and then wee beganne to speake about getting from thence, for we had kept house long enough there. The third, it was still foule weather, with a 20 South-west wind, whereby the Ice began wholly to drive away, but it lay fast about the ship, and when our best meate, as fiesh, and other things beganne to faile vs, which was our greatest full enance, and that it behooved vs to be somewhat strong, to sustaine the labour that wee were to vindergoe, when we went from thence, the Master shared the rest of the Bacon amongst vs. which was a small Barrell with salt Bacon in pickle, whereof every one of vs had two ounces a day, which continued for the space of three weekes, and then it was eaten vp.

The fourth, it was indifferent faire weather, the wind South-west, that day fue of vs went to the ship, and found it lying still as fast in the Ice as it did before, for about the middle of March it was but feuenty fine paces from the open water, and then it was fine hundred paces from the water, and enclosed round about with high hills of Ice, which put vs in no small feare, 20 how wee should bring our Scute and our Boat through or ouer that way into the water, when wee went to leave that place. That night there came a Beare to our house, but as soone as shee heard vs make a noyle, the ranne away againe, one of our men that climbed vp in the Chimney, faw when shee ranne away, so that it seemed that as then they were afraid of vs. and durst not bee so bold to set vpon vs, as they were at the first. The fift, it was faire weather, with some snow, the wind East, that Ecuening, and at night wee saw the Sunne when it was at the lowest, a good way about the Earth. The fixt, it was faire cleare weather, with a great Southwest wind, whereby we saw the Sea open both in the East and in the West, which made our men exceeding glad, longing fore to be gone from thence. The fewenth, it was foule weather, and fnew hard, with a North wind, whereby we were closed up againe in our house.

The tenth, it was faire weather with a North-west wind, that night the Sunne by our common Compasse being North North-east, and at the lowest, we tooke the height thereof, and it was eleuated 2. degrees and 45. minutes, his declination was 17. degrees and 45. minutes, from whence taking the height aforefaid, there refted 14. degrees, which fubitracted from 90. degrees. there rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole.

The fourteenth, wee fetcht our last \$led with fire-wood, and still ware our shooes made of Rugge on our feet.

The five and twentieth, it was faire weather, with an East wind, then at noone time wee tooke the height of the Sunne, that was elevated about the Horizon 34. degrees and 46. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 46. minutes, which taken from the height aforefaid, there refted 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, refted 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. 50 The fixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a great North-east wind, whereby the Ice came in againe. The feuen and twentieth, it was foule weather, with a great North-east wind, which draue the Ice mightily in ageine, whereupon the Mafter, at the motion of the companie, willed vs to make preparation to be gone.

The nine and twentieth in the morning, it was reasonable faire weather, with a West wind, then ten of vs went vnto the Scute to bring it to the house to dresse it, and make it ready to fayle, but wee found it deepe hidden under the fnow, and were fayne with great payne and labour to digge it out, but when wee had gotten it out of the snow, and thought to draw it to the house, wee could not doe it; because wee were too weake, wherewith wee became whol-60 ly out of heart, doubting that wee should not bee able to goe forward with our labour, but the Master encouraging vs, bade vs strine to doe more then wee were able; saying, that both our lives and our well-fare confifted therein: and that if wee could not get the Scute from thence, and make it ready, then heefaid wee must dwell there as Burgers of Nona Zembla, and Burgers of No. make our Graues in that place: but there wanted no good-will in vs but onely strength, " Zembla.

Bucke.

Beares Liner

venomous.

lune.

which made vs for that time to leaue off worke and let the Scute lie ftill, which was no small griefe vnto vs, and trouble to thinke what were best for vs to doe; but after noone being thus comfortlesse come home, wee tooke hearts againe, and determined to turne the Boat that lay by the house with her keele vpwards, and to amend it, that it might bee the fitter to carrie vs ouer the Sea, for wee made full account that we had a long troublelome Voyage in hand, where in wee might haue many croffes, and wherein wee should not bee sufficiently provided for all things necessarie, although wee tooke neuer so much care, and while wee were busie about our worke, there came a great Beare vnto vs, wherewith wee went into our house, and flood to watch her in our three doores, with Harquebusses, and one stood in the Chimney with a Musket, this Beare came boldlier vnto vs then euer any had done before, for shee came to the nea- 10 ther ften that went to one of our doores, and the man that ftood in the doore faw her not, because hee looked towards the other doore, but they that stood within saw her, and in great feare called to him, wherewith he turned about, and although he was in a maze, he shot ather. and the Bullet past cleane through her body, whereupon she ranne away. Yet it was a feartfull thing to fee, for the Beare was almost upon him before hee faw her, so that if the Peece had fayled to give fire (as oftentimes they doe) it had coft him his life , and it may bee, that the Beare would have gotten into the house: the Beare being gone somewhat from the houselay downe, wherewith wee went all armed and killed her out right, and when wee had ript open her bellie : we found a piece of a Bucke therein, with haire, skinne and all, which not long before thee had torne and deuoured.

The one and thirtieth of May, it was faire weather, but somewhat colder then before, the wind being South-west, whereby the Ice draue away, and we wrought hard about our Boat, but when wee were in the chiefest part of worke, there came another Beare, as if they had finelt that wee would be gone, and that therefore they defired to tafte a piece of some of vs, for that was the third day, one after the other, that they fet fo fiercely vpon vs, fo that wee were forced to leave our worke, and goe into the house, and shee followed vs, but we stood with our Peeces to watch her, and shot three Peeces at her, two from our doores, and one out of the Chimney, which all three hit her : but her death did vs more hurt then her life, for after we ript her belly, we dreft her Liner and eate it, which in the tafte liked vs well, but it made vs all ficke, specially three that were exceeding ficke, and wee verily thought that wee should have lost them, for all 30 their skins came off, from the foot to the head, but yet they recourred againe.

The third of Iune, in the morning it was faire cleare weather the wind West, and then wee were somewhat better, and tooke great paines with the Boat, that at last we got it ready, after we had wrought fixe dayes upon it: about evening it began to blow hard, and therewith the water was very open, which put vs in good comfort that our deliuerance would foone follow, and that we should once get out of that desolate and searefull place.

The fourth, it was faire cleare weather, and indifferent warme, and about the South-east Sunne, eleuen of vs went to our Scute where it then lay, and drew it to the ship, at which time the labour seemed lighter wnto vs then it did before, when wee tooke it in hand and were forced to leave it off againe. The reason thereof was, the opinion that wee had that the snow as 40 then lay harder upon the ground, and so was become stronger; and it may be that our courages were better, to fee that the time gane vs open water, and that our hope was that wee should get from thence; and fo three of our men stayed by the Scute to build her to our minds: and for that it was a Herring Scute, which are made narrow behind, therefore they fawed it off behind, and made it a broad stearne: and better to brooke the Seas, they built it also somewhat higher, and drest it vp as well as they could, the rest of our men were busie in the house to make all other things ready for our Voyage, and that day drew two Sleds with victuals and other goods vnto the ship, that lay about halfe way betweene the house and the open water, that after they might haue fo much the shorter way, to carrie the goods vnto the water side, when wee should goe away: at which time all the labour and paines that wee tooke seemed 50 light and easie vnto vs, because of the hope that wee had to get out of that wilde Desatt, irkefome, fearefull, and cold Countrey.

The fift, it was foule weather, with great store of haile and snow, the wind West, which made an open water, but as then we could doe nothing without the house, but within we made all things ready, as Sayles, Oates, Masts, Sprit, Rother, Swerd, and all other necessarie things. The fixt, in the morning it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then wee went with our Carpenters to the ship, to build vp our Scute, and carried two sleds full of goods into the ship, both victuals and Merchandise, with other things, which wee meant to take with vs; after that there rose very foule weather in the South-west, with snow, haile, and raine, which wee in long time had not had, whereby the Carpenters were forced to leave their worke, and goe home 60 to the house with vs, whereby also we could not be drie, because wee had taken of the Deales, therewith to amend our Boat and our Scute, there lay but a fayle ouer it, which would not hold out the water, and the way that lay full of fnow began to be foft, so that wee left off our shoots made of Rugge and Felt, and put on our Leather shooes.

The eight, it was faire weather, and wee drew the wares to the ship, which wee had packed and made ready, and the Carpenters made ready the Scute, so that the same euening it was almost done, the same day all our men went to draw our Boat to the ship, and made ropes to draw withall, fuch as wee vie to draw with in Scutes, which wee cast ouer our shoulders, and held fast with all our hands, and so drew both with our hands and our shoulders, which gave vs more force, and specially the desire and great pleasure wee tooke to worke at that time made vs itronger.

The tenth, wee carried foure Sleds of goods into the ship, the wind then being variable, and at evening it was Northerly, and wee were busie in the house to make all things ready, the 10 Wine that was left we put into little veffels, that fo wee might divide it into both our veffels, and that as wee were enclosed by the Ice, (which wee well knew would happen vnto vs) wee might easilier cast the goods upon the Ice, both out and into the Scutes, as time and place ferued vs. The eleuenth, it was foule weather, and it blew hard North North-west, so that all that day we could doe nothing, and we were in great feare left the storme would carrie the Ice and the ship both away together, (which might well have come to passe) then wee should have beene in greater miserie then euer wee were, for that our goods both victuals and others, were then all in the ship, but God prouided so well for vs, that it fell not out so vnfortunatly. The twelfth, it was indifferent faire weather, then we went with Hatchets, Halberds, Shouels, and other instruments, to make the way plaine, where we should draw the Scute and the Boat to 20 the water fide, along the way that lay full of knobs and hills of Ice, where wee wrought fore with our Hatchets and other inftruments, and while we were in the chiefest of our worke, there came a great leane Beare out of the Sea vpon the Ice towards vs, which we judged to come out of Tartaria: for we had seene of them twenty or thirty miles within the Sea, and for that wee had no Muskets, but onely one, which our Surgeon carried, I ranne in great hafte towards the ship to fetch one or two, which the Beare perceiting ranne after mee, and was very likely to haue ouer taken me, but our companie feeing that , left their worke and ranne after her, which made the Beare turne towards them, and left me, but when she ran towards them, she was shot into the body by the Surgeon, and ranne away; but because the Ice was so vneuen and hilly, she could not goe farre, but being by vs ouertaken, we killed her out right, and imote her teeth out Beare flame. 30 of her head, while the was yet living.

The thirteenth, it was faire weather, then the Mafter and the Carpenters went to the thing and there made the Scute and the Boat ready, fo that there refted nothing as then, but onely to bring it downe to the water fide, the Mafter and those that were with him , seeing that it was open water, and a good West wind, came backe to the house againe, and there hee spake vinto William Barents (that had been elong ficke) and shewed him, that he thought it good, (seeing it They departs was a fit time) to goe from thence, and fo willed the companie to drive the Boat and the Scute downe to the water fide, and in the name of God to beginne our Voyage, to fayle from None Zembla: then William Barents wrote a Letter, which he put in a Muskets charge, and hanged

it up in the Chimney, shewing how he came out of Holland, to sayle to the Kingdome of China. 40 and what had happened vnto vs being there on Land, with all our croffes, that if any man chaneed to come thither, they might know what had happened vnto vs, and how we had beene for-ced in our extremitie to make that houle, and had dwelt ten moneths therein, and for that wee were put to Sea in two imall open Boats, and to undertake a dangerous and aduenturous Voyage in hand, the Master wrote two Letters, which most of vs subscribed vnto, signifying how wee had flayed there vpon the Land in great trouble and miferie, in hope that our ship would bee freed from the Ice, and that we should sayle away with it againe, and how it fell out to the contrary, and that the ship lay fast in the Ice, so that in the end the time passing away, and our vichials beginning to faile vs, we were forced for the fauing of our owne lives, to leave the ship, and to fayle away in our open Boats, and so to commit our selues into the hands of God, Which

50 done, he put into each of our Scutes a Letter, that if wee chanced to lofe one another, or that by fformes or any other misaduenture we happened to be cast away, that then by the Scute that escaped, men might know how we left each other, and so having finished all things as we determined, we drew the Boat to the water fide, and left a man in it, and went and fetcht the Scute, and after that eleuen Sleds with goods, as Victuals, with some Wine that yet remayned, and the Merchants goods, which we preferred as well as we could, vz. fixe packes with fine woollen Cloth, a Cheft of Linnen, two packets with Veluet, two small Chests with Money, two Dri-fats with mens Clothes and other things, thirteene Barrels of Bread, a Barrell of Cheefe, a flitch of Bacon, two Runlets of Oyle, fixe small Runlets of Wine, two Runlets of Vineger, with other packes belonging to the Saylers, fo that when they lay all together vpon a heape, a 60 man would have judged that they would not have gone into the Scutes, which being all put into them, we went to the house, and first drew William Barents upon a Sled to the place where our Scutes lay, and after that we fetcht Claes Adrian fon, both of them having beene long licke, and so we entred into the Scutes, and divided our felues into each of them alike, and put into

either of thema licke man, then the Mafter caufed both the Scares to lie close one by the other,

The

Gerrat de Vect. Leenard Hen-Iohn(en Schea-

and there we subscribed to the Letters which he had written, and so committing our scheets to the will and mercy of God, with a West North-west wind, and an indifferent open water, we was subscribed fet sayle and put to Sea.

The fourteenth of Iune in the morning, the Sunne Easterly, wee put off from the Land of to the Pour Po- Nona Zembla, and the fast Ice thereunto adjoyning, with our Boat and our Scute, having a West wind, and fayled Eaft North-eaft all that day to the Hands point, which was fue miles, but our first beginning was not very good, for we entred fast into the Ice againe, which there by very hard and fait, which put vs into no small feare and trouble, and being there, foure of vs went tomes, recer 13 that a data settly which por containing the state of t

The fixteenth, we let layle againe, and got to the Iland of Orange, with a South wind which 10 is eight miles diftant from the Point of Defire, there we went on Land with two small Barrels, and a Kettle, to melt snow, and to put the water into the Barrels, as also to seeke for Birds and Egges, to make meate for our ficke men. We put to the Sea againe with a South-east wind and drowlie miseling weather, whereby we were all dankish and wet, for wee had no shelter in our open Scutes, and fayled West, and West and by South, to the Ice-point, and wee made our Scutes Open Scures. failt to a great piece of Ice, and there eate somewhat, but the weather was still souler and souler.

to that we were once againe enclosed with Ice, and forced to stay there.

The fewenteenth in the morning, when we had broken our fasts, the Ice came so fast vpon vs that it made our haires stare vpright vpon our heads, it was so fearefull to behold : by which so meanes we could not make fast our Scutes, so that we thought verily that it was a fore shewing of our last end, for wee draue away so hard with the Ice, and were so sore prest betweene a flake of Ice, that we thought verily the Scutes would burff in a hundred pieces, at laft, being in this discomfort, and extreme necessitie, the Master said, if we could take hold with a ropevpon the fast Ice, we might therewith draw the Scute vp, and so get it out of the great drift of Ice, but as this counsell was good, yet it was so full of danger, that it was the hazard of his life that should take upon him to doe it, and without doing it, was it most certaine, that it would cost was all our lives: this counfell as I said was good, but no man (like to the tale of the Mice) durft hang the Bell about the Cats necke, fearing to bee drowned, yes necessitie required to have it done, and the most danger made vs choose the least, so that being in that perplexitie, I being 30 Dangerous at. the lightest of all our companie, tooke on me to fasten a rope vpon the fast ice, and so creeping from one piece of driving Ice to another, by Gods helpe got to the fast Ice, where I made a tope fast to a high howell, and they that were in the Soute, drew it thereby vnto the said fast Ice. and then one man alone could draw more then all of them could have done before, and when we had gotten thither, in all haste wee tooke our ficke men out, and layed them vpon the Ice, laying clothes and other things under them, and then tooke all our goods out of the Scutes, and fo drew them vpon the Ice, whereby for that time we were delinered from that great danger, amaking account that we had escaped out of deaths clawes, as it was most true.

The eightcenth, we repaired and amended our Scutes againe, being much bruifed and crushed with the racking of the Ice, and were forced to drive all the nayles fast againe and to piece ma-40 ny things about them, God fending vs Wood, wherewith we molt our Pitch, and did all other things that belonged thereunto, that done, some of vs went vpon the Land to seeke for Egges, which the ficke men longed for, but we could finde none, but we found foure Birds, not without great danger of our lines, betweene the Ice and the firme Land, wherein wee often fell, and were in no small danger.

The nineteenth, it was indifferent weather, the wind North-west, and West South-west, but we were still shut up in the Ice, and saw no opening, which made us thinke that there would be our last abode, and that we should neuer get from thence.

Thetwentieth, Class Adrianson and William Barents died, the death of William Barents put vs in no small discomfort, as being the chiefe Guide, and onely Pilot on whom wee reposed our 50

The two and twentieth in the morning, it blew a good gale out of the South-east, and then the Sea was reasonable open, but we were forced to draw our Scutes over the Ice to get vnto it, which was great paine and labour vnto vs; for, first we were forced to draw our Scutes ouer a piece of Ice of fifty paces long, and there put them into the water, and then againe to draw them vp vpon other Ice, and after drew them at the leaft an hundred paces more ouer the Ice, before we could bring them to a good place where we might easily get out, and being gotten vnto the open water we committed our selues to God, and set sayle the Sun being about East North-east, with an indifferent gale of wind out of the South, and South South-east, and sayled West, and Efficioned again West and by South, till the Sunne was South, and then we were round about enclosed with Ice 69 againe, and could not get out, but were forced to lie still, but not long after the Ice opened againe like to a fluce, and we past through it and set sayle againe, and so sayled along by the Land, but were presently encloted with Ice, but being in hope of opening againe, meane time weeeate Somewhat, for the Ice went not away as it did before : after that wee vied all the meanes wee

W. Barents

could to breake it, but all in vayne, and yet a good while after, the Ice opened againe, and we got out, and fayled along by the Land, West and by South, with a South wind. The three and twentieth, wee layled still forward West and by South, till the Sunne was South-east, and got to the Trust-point, which is distant from the lee-point fine and twentie miles, Trust-point,

and then could goe no furtheer, because the Ice lay so hard and so close together, and yet it was faire weather : the fame day we tooke the height of the Sunne with the Aftrolabium, and alfo with our Astronomicall Ring, and found his height to be 37 degrees, and his Declination 23 degrees and 30. minutes, which taken from the height aforefayd, there refted 13. degrees and 30. minutes, which substracted out of 90 degrees, the height of the Pole was 76 degrees and 20 min notes, and it was faire Sun-thine weather, and yet it was not fo firong as to melt the Snow, that

we might have water to drinke, fo that wee fet all our Tinne platters and other things full of Extreame cold Snow to melt, and fo molt it, and put fnow in our mouthes, to mele it downe into our throates,

but all was not enough, so that we were compelled to endure great thirste

Rom the Low-land, to the Streame Bay, the courfe East and West, four miles. From the Streams The stream The stream of the Land Bay, to the Ice-lauen point, the course East and by North, four miles. From the Ice-lauen point, the course the Land to the llands point, the course East North-east, fine miles. From the llands point, to the Flushingers where we winpoint, the course North-east and by East, three miles. From the Flushingers point, to the Head point, tred, along by the course North east, foure miles. From the Head point, to the point of Delite, the course South and the North-inde 20 North, fixemiles. From the point of Defire, to the Hand of Orange, North-west, eight miles. From of Nota Zem-Notice, the must. From the point, the course West, and West and By South, sur musts, argon must. From the lands of Orange, to the lee point, the course West, and West and By South, fine musts. From the lee has to the point, to the point of Truth, the course West and by South, fine and transite musts. From the point of Mryan, where point, to the point of Little, we come to Feb. made of Some, powers and animal to Naslawes point, the course West, made of and by North free mides. From the Naslaw point, we pathous to the East end of the Crost cland, the course West and by North sight miles. From the East end of the Coulton. Croffe Hand, to Williams Hand, the course west and by South, three miles. From Williams Hand, to Huffe, and ones the Blacke point, the course West South west, fixe miles: From the Blacke point; to the Ball and of the the entrie of Admirable Hand, the courfe West South west, fenew miles. From the East to the West point of the &d- to Cola, accormirable Hand, the course West South west, fine miles. From the West point of the Admirable Hand, ding to the to Cape Planto, the courfe South-weit and by West, ten miles. From Cape'de Planto, to Lombi-bay, Card hereine the courfe West South-west; sight mules. From Lambibbayer the Stanes point; the courfe West South- fuing. west, ten miles. From the Staues point, to Langeheste; the cour fo South-west and by South, forteene miles. From Langeneffe, to Cape de Cant, the config South well and by South, fixe miles. From Cape

mes, trum Language to the Elacke ciffus the camels Sanch and by West, four miles. From the plant with the Blacke ciffus, to the Blacke idea, the courfe South Sanch and by West, four miles. From the Blacke with the Blacke ciffus, to the Blacke idea, the courfe South Sanch and the plant with the Blacke ciffus, to the Blacke idea, the courfe South Sanch and the sanch and the Blacke idea. Iland, to Conflint-farke, the course East and West, two miles? From Conflint-farke, to the Croffe point, the course South South cast, fine miles. From: Croffe point, to Smint Laurence Bay, the course South South-east, fixe miles. From Saint Laurence Bay, to Mel-haven; the courfe South-east, fixe miles. From Mel-hauen to the two Hands, the course South South-ouff, fixe miles. From the two I. lands, where we croft ouer to the Ruffia Cooft, to the Ilands of Marfice wind Delgoy, the courfe South-40 west, thirtie miles. From Mat floc and Delgoy, to the Creeke where we sayled the compasser round about,

and came to the same place againe, two and twentie miles. From that Crocke to Colgoy, the course well North-west, eighteenemiles. From Colgoy, to the East point of Camdenas, the course West Northwest, twentie miles. From the East point of Camdenas, to the West file of the Winte Sea, the course Well North-west, forsie miles. From the West point of the White Sea, to the fenen Hands, the course North-west fourteene miles. From the fenen Hands, to the VVest and of Kilduin, the course Northwest, swentie miles. From the V Vest end of Kilduin, to the place where Iohn Comelis came unto us, the course North west and by VV oft, seuen miles. From thence to Cola, the course VV est Southers,

So that wee sayled in the two open Scutes, sometimes in the Ice, then ouer the Ice, and through the 50 Sea, three hundred and cightie one miles Flemish, which is one thon fand one hundred fortie and three

The foure and twentieth of Iune, the Sunne being Eatherly, we rowed heere and there in the Ice, to fee where we might beil goe out, but wee law no opening, but when the Sunne was South, we got into the Sea, for the which we thanked God most heartily, that hee had sent vs an vnexpected opening, and then we sayled with an East winde, and went luftily forward, so that we made our account to get aboue the point of Nasames close by the land, and wee could easily see the point of Nassames, and made our account to bee about three miles from it.

The fixe and twentieth, it still blew hard out of the South, and broke the Ice whereunto we were fast in pieces, and we thereby draue into the Sea, and could get no more to the fast Ice, 60 whereby we were in a thouland dangers to bee all cast away, and driving in that fore in the Sea, wee rowed as much as we could, but we could not get neere vnto the Land, therefore we hoyfed up our Focke, and so made up with our sayle, but our Fock-mast brake twice in peeces, and then it was worle for vs then before, and not with flanding that there blew a great gale of Wind, yet we were forced to hoyfe up our great Sayle, but the winde blew to hard into it, that if wee

had not prefently taken it in againe, we had funke in the Sea, or elie our Boate would have been filled with water, for the water began to leape ouer-boord, and wee were a good way in the Sea, at which time the waues went fo hollow, that it was most fearefull, and wee thereby faw nothing but death beforeour eyes, and every twinckling of an eye looked when wee should linke, But God that had delinered we cut of so many dangers of Death, holpe we once againe, and contrary to our expectations, fent vs a North-west wind, and so with great danger wee got to the fast Ice againe, when we were delivered out of that danger, and knew not where our other Soure was, wee fayled one mile along by the fast Ice, but found it not, whereby we were wholly out of heart, and in great feare that they were drowned, at which time it was myllie weather, and fo fayling along, and hearing no newes of our other Scute, we shot off a Musket, which they hear 10 sing that off another, but yet we could not fee each other, meane time approching never to each other, and the weather waxing somewhat cleerer, as wee and they shot once againe, we saw the smoake of their Piece, and at last we met together againe, and saw them lye fast, betweene driving and fast Ice, and when we got neere vnto them, we went over the Ice, and holpe them to wnlade the goods out of their Scute, and drew it ouer the Ice, and with much paine and trouble brought it into the open water againe, and while they were fast in the Ice, wee found fome Wood vpon the Land by the Sea fide, and when we lay by each other, we fod fome Bread and Water together, and eat it vp warme, which did vs much good.

The eight and twentieth, when the Sunne was in the East, wee layd all our goods voon the Ice, and then drew the Scutes vpon the Ice also, because we were so hardly press on all sides, with 10 the Ice, and the wind came out of the Sea vpon the Land, and therefore wee were in feare to be wholly inclosed with the Ice, and should not be able to get out thereof againe, and being you the Ice, we layd fayles ouer our Scutes, and lay downe to reft, appointing one of our men to keepe watch, and when the Sunne was North, there came three Beares towards our Scutes, where-Three Beares, with hee that kept the Watch cryed, three Beares, three Beares, at which noyle wee leapt out of our Boates with our Muskets, that were laden with hayle-shot to shoote at Birds, and had no time to discharge them, and therefore shot at them therewith, and although that kinde of shot could not hart them much, yet they ranne away, and in the meane time they gaue vsleafore to lade our Muskers with bullets, and by that meanes wee thot one of the three dead, which the other two perceiuing ranne away, but within two houres after they came againe, but when they 10 were almost at vs and heard vs.make a moyle, they ranne away, at which time the winds was

One Beare

Weft, and Weft and by North, which made the feet drive with great force into the Eaft.

The mine and twentieth of lune, the Sunite being South South-weft, the two Beares cameagaine to the place where the deal Beare lay, where one of them tooke the dead Beare in his mouth, and went a great way with it oues the ringged Ice, and then began to eate it, which we mouth and ear perceiuing shot a Musket at her, but she maring the neyse thereof ranne away, and let the dead Beare Ive. then foure of vs went thither, and faw that in fo hort time the had eaten almost the halie of her, we tooke the dead Beare and layd it upon a high heape of Ice, that we might fee it out of our Scute, that if the Beare came againe we might shoot at her, at which time we try-Strong Beare, ed the great firength of the Beare, that carryed the dead Beare as lightly in her mouth, as if 40 it had beene nothing, whereas wee foure had enough to doe to carry away the halfe dead Beare

Iuly,

The first of July, it was indistreent faire vveather, with a West North-west wind, and in the Morning the Sunne being East, there came a Beare from the driving Ice towards vs, and swam ouer the water to the fast Ice whereon we ky, but when she heard ve, she came no neerer but rm away, and when the Sunne was South-east, the Ice came so fast in towards vs, that all the Ice whereon we lay with our Scutes and our goods, brake and ran one peece vpon another, whereby we were in no small feare, for at that time most of our goods fell into the water, but wee with ereat diligence drew our Scutes further vpon the Ice towards the Land, where we thought to be better defended from the driving of the Ice, and as we went to tetch our goods, we fell into the greatest trouble that ever we had before, for that wee endured so great danger in the saving thereof, that as we layd hold vpon one peece thereof, the rest sunke downe with the Ice, and many times the Ice brake under our owne feete, whereby we were wholly discomforted, and in a manner cleane out of all hope, expecting no iffue thereof, in such fore that our trouble at that time firmounted all our former cares and impeachments, and when wee thought to draw vp. our Boates upon the Ice, the Ice brake under vs, and we were carryed away with the Scute, and all by the driving Ice, and when we thought to faue the goods, the Ice brake under our feet, and with that the Scute brake in many places, especially that which wee had mended, as the Mast, the mast planke, and almost all the Scute, wherein one of our men that vvas ficke, and a Cheft of money lay, which we with great danger of our lives got out from it, for as we were doing it, the Ice that was under our feet draue from vs, and slid voon other Ice, vvhereby we were in danger to burft both our armes and our legges, at which time, thinking that wee had beene cleane quit of our Scute, we beheld each other in pittifull manner, knowing not what we should doe, our lines depending thereon, but God made fo good pronision for vs, that the peeces of Ice draue from

each other, wherewith we ranne in great hafte vinto the Scute, and draw it to vsagaine in fuch case as it was, and laid it woon the fait Ice by the Boate, where it was in more fecuritie, which put vs vnto an exceeding and great and dangerous labour, from the time that the Sumne was South-east, votill it was W. It South-west, and in all that time wee rested not, which made vs extreame wearie, and wholy one of comfore, for that it troubled vefore, and it was much more fearefull wnto ve, then at that time when William Barents dyed, for there we were almost drowned, and that day we lott (which was funke in the Sea) two Barrels of Bread, a Chift with Linnen Cloth, a Dry Rat with the Saylors Clothes, our Aftronomicall Ring, a packe of Scarlet Cloth, a Rundlet of Oyle, and some Cheeses, and a Rundlet of Wine, which bouged with the to lee forther there was not any thing thereof faued.

The fourth, it was fo faire cleere weather, that from the time we were first in None Zemble. we had not the like. The lifth, it was faire weather, the Wind West, South-west, the same day

dyed lobe Branfon of Harless.

The fewenth, it was faire weather with some Raine, the Winde West, South-west, and at Ettening VVert, and by North, then we went to the open water, and there killed thirteene Birds.

which we tooke vpon a piece of driving Ice, and laid them vpon the fast Ice.

The minth, in the morning, the Ice began to drive, whereby we got open water on the Land fide, and then alto the fast Ice whereon we lay, beganne to drive whereupon the Master and the men went to fetch the Packe and the Chift, that flood vpon the Ice; to put them into the Scute, 20 and then drew the Scutes to the water, at least three hundred and fortie paces; which was hard for vs to doe, in regard that the labour was great, and we very weaks, and when the Sunne was South South-east we fet fayle with an East-wind, but when the Sunne was West, we were forced to make towards the fait Ice againe, because thereabouts it was not yet gone, the Winde being South, and came right from the Land, whereby wee were in good hope that it would drive away, and that we should proceed in our Voyage. The tenth, from the time that the Sunne was East North-east, till it was East, we cooke great paines and labour to get through the Ice, and at last we got through, and rowed forth, vntill we happened so fall betweene two great flakes of Ice that closed one with the other, so that we could not get through, but were forced to draw the Scutes vpon them, and to valade the goods, and then to draw them over to the open water 20 on the other fide, and then we must goe fetch the goods also to the same place, being at least one hundred paces long, and when we were in open water againe, we rowed forward as well as we

could, but we had not rowed long, before wee fell betweene two great flakes of Ice, that came driving one against the other, but by Gods helpe, and our speedy rowing, we got from betweene them, before they closed up, and being through we had a hard West Winde, right in our Teeth, so that of force we were constrayned to make towards the fast Ice that lay by the shoare,

The eleventh, in the morning as we fate fast vpon the Ice, the Sunne being North-east, there came a great Beare out of the water running towards vs, but we watcht for her with three Mul- Huge Beare, kets, and when she came within thirtie paces of vs, wee shot all the three Muskets at her, and

killed her out-right, fo that the ftirred not a foot, and we might fee the fat runne out at the holes 40 of her skinne, that was shot in with the Muskets, swimme vpon the water like Oyle, and so drining dead upon the water, we went upon a flake of Ice to her, and putting a Rope about her necke, drew her vp vpon the Ice, and imit out her Teeth, at which time we measured her bodie, and found it to be eight foot thicke, then we had a West Wind with close weather, but when the Sunne was South it began to cleere up, then three of our men went to the Iland that lay before vs, and being there, they faw the Croffe Iland, lying West-ward from them, and went this ther to fee if that Summer there had beene any Ruffier there, and went thither woon the fast Ice, that lay betweene the two Ilands, and being in the Iland, they could not perceive that any man had beene in it fince wee were there, there they got feuentie Egges, but when they had them, they knew not wherein to carrie them, at last one of them put off his Breeches, and tying them fast below, they carried them betweene two of them, and the third bare the Musket : and fo

50 came to vs againe, after they had beene twelve houres out, which put vs no small feare to thinke what was become of them, they told vs that they had many times gone up to the knees in water, vpon the Ice betweene both the Ilands : and it was at least fixe mile to and fro, that they had gone, which made vs wonder how they could indure it, feeing we were all fo weake. With the Egges that they had brought, wee were all well comforted, and fared like Lords, so that we found some reliefe in our great miserie, and then wee shared our last Wine amongst vs, whereof

euery one had three Glaffes.

The twelfth, in the morning, when the Sunne was East, the Wind began to blow East, and East North-east, with mystic weather, and at Equening fixe of our men went into the Land, to feeke certayne stones, and found some, but none of the best sort, and comming backe againe, ey-60 ther of them brought fome Wood. The thirteenth, it was a faire day, then feuen of our men. went to the firme Land to feeke for more frones, and found tome, at which time the VV ind was South-east. The fourteenth, it was faire vveather, with a good South VVind, and then the Ice began to drive from the Land, whereby wee were in good hope to have an open water, but the





Wind turning Westerly againe, it lay still, when the Sunne was South-west, three of our men event to the next lland that lay before vs, and there shot a Berchemet, which they brought to the Scute, and gaue it among ft vs, for all our goods were common.

The fixteenth, there came a Beare from the firme Land, that came very neere vnto ws, by reafon that it was as white as Snow, whereby at first we could not differne it to be a Beare, because it shewed so like the snow, but by her stirring at last we perceived her, and as she came neere vnto vs, vve shot at her and hit her, but shee ranne away : that morning the Wind was VVest and after that againe, East North-east with close weather. The seventeenth, about the South South-east Sunne, fine of our men went againe to the neerest Iland, to see if there appeared any open water, for our long staying there was no small griefe vnto vs , perceiung nochow wee to should get from thence, who being halfe way thither, they found a Beare lying behind a piece of Ice, which the day before had beene that by vs, but thee hearing vs went away, but onted cor men following her with a Boat-hooke, thrust her into the skinne, wherewish the Beareroke up wpon her hinder feet, and as the man thrust at her againe, she strocke the iron of the Boat-hooke in pieces, wherewith the man fell downe vpon his buttockes, which our other two men feeing, two of them shot the Beare into the bodie, and with that she ranne away, but the other man went after her with his broken staffe, and strooke the Beare vpon the backe, wherewith the Beare turned about against the man three times one after the other, and then the other two came to her and thor, her into the bodie againe, wherewith thee fat downe vpon her buttockes, and could feart runne any further, and then they shot once againe, wherewith shee fell downe, 20 and they smote her Teeth out of her head: all that day the Winde was North-east, and East North-eaft.

The eighteenth, about the Haft Sun, three of our men went vp vpon the highest part of the land to fee if there was any open water in the Sea, at which time they taw much open water, har it was so far from the land, that they were almost out of comfort, because it lay so far from the land. and the fast Ice, being of opinion that we should not be able to draw the Scutes and the goods so farre thither, because our ilrengthes still beganne to decrease : and the fore labour and paine that we were forced to indure more and more increased, and comming to our Scutes, they brought vs that newes, but we being compelled thereunto by necessitie abandoned all wearinesse and faintheartednesse, and determined with our selves to bring the Boats and the goods to the water side, 30 and throw vitte that Ice, where wee must passe over so get to the open water, and when wee got toit, wee valaded our Scutes, and drew them fift over the Ice to the open water, and after that the goods; it beeing at the least one khouland paces, then wee let fayle, till the Sunne was West and by South; and presently fell amongst the Ice againe, where wee were forced to draw up the Scutes againe upon the Ice, and beeing uponit, wee could fee the Cresse Ihand; which wee ghest to bee about a mile from vs, the Wind then being East, and East North-east.

The nineteenth, lying in that manner woon the Ice, about the East Sunne, feuen of our men went to the Groffe Hand, and being there they faw great store of open water in the West, wherewith they much reloyced, and made as great halfe as: they could to get to the Scutes againe, but 40 before they came away they got too. Egges, and brought them away with them, and comming to the Soutes, they shewed vs that they had seene as much open water in the Sea as they could discerne, being in good hope, that that would be the last time that they should draw the Scures ouer the Ice, and that it should bee no more measured by vs, and in that fort put vs in good comfort, whereupon we made speed to dresse our Egges, and shared them amongst vs, and presently the Sunne being South South-west we fell to worke, to make all things ready to bring the Scutes to the water, which were to be drawne at least two hundred paces over the ice, which wee did with a good courage, because we were in good hope that it would be the last time, and getting anothe water, we put to Sea with Gods helpe, with an East, and East North-east Wind, and a good gale, fo that with the West Sunne, we past by the Croffe Hand, which is distant from Cape 50 de Nassawes ten miles, and presently after that the Ice left vs, and wee got cleere out of it, yet wee faw some in the Sea, but it troubled vs not, and so wee held our course West and by South, with a good gale of Wind out of the East, and East North-east, so that wee ghest that betweene euery meale-tyde we fayled eighteene miles. .

The twentieth, having still a good gale about the South east Sunne, wee past along by the Blacke Point, which is twelve miles distant from the Croffe Iland , and fayled West South-west, and about the Eeuening with the West Sunne, we saw the Admirals Hand, and about the North Sunne past along by it, which is distant from the Blacke Point eight miles, and passing along by it, we saw about two hundred Sea-horses, lying vpon a stake of Ice, and wee sayled close by them, and drawe them from thence, which had almost cost vs deere, for they beeing mightie 60 firong fishes, and of great force, swamme towards vs, (as if they would be reuenged on vs for the despight that we had done them (round about our Scutes) with a great noyle, as if they would have denoured vs, but we escaped from them, by reason that we had a good gale of Wind, yet it

was not wisely done of vs to wake sleeping Wolues. The one and twentieth, we past by Cape

Plancio, about the East North-east Sunne, which lyeth West South-west eight miles from the Cape Plancie Admirals Hand, and with the good gale that we had about the South-weft Sonne, we fayled by Lancenes, nine miles from Cape Plancie : there the Land reacheth meft South-weft, and we had Langenes. a good North-east wind.

The two and twentieth, we having so good a gale of wind when wee came to Cape de Cant. Cape Cant. there we went on land to feeke for some Birds and Egges, but we found none, so we sayled forwards, but after that about the South Sunne we faw a Clift that was full of Birds , thither wee fayled and cafting stones at them, we killed two and twentie Birds, and got fifteene Egges. which one of our men fetcht from the Clift, and if we would have stayed there any longer, wee In might have taken alundred or two hundred Birds at least, but because the Master was somewhat further into Sea-ward then we, and stayed for vs , and for that wee would not loofe that faire fore-wind, we tayled forwards along by the Land, and about the South-west Sunne, wee came Strange Birds

to another point, where wee got a hundred twentie and fine Birds, which wee tooke with our breeding in hands out of their Nefts, and some wee killed with stones, and made them fall downe into the strong cold. water, for it is a thing certayne that those Birds never vied to see men, and that no man had ever fought or vied to take them, for else they would have flowne away, and that they seared no had the bat the Foxes and other wild beasts, that could not climbe up the high Chire, and that therefore they had made their Ness thereon, where they were out of feare of any beasts comming vato them, for we were in no small danger of breaking of our legges and armes, especially 20 as we came downe againe, because the Clift was so high and so steepe, those Birds had every one but one Egge in their Nelts , and that lay upon the bare Clife without any fraw or other thing vnder them, which is to be wondred at, to thinke how they could breed their young ones in fo

the heate which they give in breeding to many, may be wholly given vinto one Egge. The foure and twentieth, it was faire weather, but the winde still Northerly, whereby wee were forced to lye fill, and about noone we tooke the height of the Sunne with our Astrolabisms, and found it to be elevated about the Horizon 37. degrees and 20. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 10. minutes which subftracted from the height aforesaid rested 17. degrees and 10. minutes, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 73. degrees and 10. mi-30 nutes, and for that we lay ftill there, some of our men went oftentimes on Land to feeke ftones,

great cold, but it is to be thought and believed, that they therefore fit but voon one Egge that fo

and found some that were as good as euer any that we found. The feuen and twentieth, wee had layled from Cape de Cant, along by Constinfarke, to the

Croffe Point, twentie miles, our course South South-east, the Wind North-west. The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather with a North-east wind, then we fayled along Two Rufflet by the Land, and with the South-west Sunne, got before Saint Laurence Bay , or Sconce Point, Ledies or Ledand fayled South South-east fix miles, and being there, wee found two Ruffians Lodgies, or thips gies. beyond the Point, wherewith we were not a little comforted, to thinke that we were come to the place where we found men, but were in some doubt of them, because they were so many for at that time we faw at least thirtie men, and knew not what they were, there with much paine 40 and labour we got to Land, which they perceiuing, left off their worke, and came towards vs. but without any Armes, and we also went on shoare, as many as were well, for divers of vs were very ill at ease, and weake by reason of a great scouring in their bodies, and when wee met together, wee faluted each other in friendly wife, they after theirs, and wee after our manner, and when we were met, both they and wee lookt each other stedfastly in the face, for that some of them knew vs, and wee them, to bee the fame men which the yeere before, when wee past through the Weg-gates had been in our ship; at which time wee perceiped that they were abasht and wondred at vs, to remember that at that time wee were so well furnished with a great thip, that was exceedingly prouided of all things necessary, and then to see vs to leane and bare. with fo small Scutes in that Countrey : and amongst them there were two, that in friendly o manner clapt the Mafter and me vpon the shoulder, as knowing vs since that Vovage: for there was none of all our men that was as then in that Voyage, but we two only, and asked vs for our Crable, meaning our thip, and we thewed them by fignes as well as we could (for we had no Interpreter) that we had loft our thip in the Ice, wherewith they faid, Crable propal (which wee vnderitood to bee, Haue you lost your ship?) and we made answere, Crable pro pal, which was as much as to fay, That we had loft our ship, and many more words we could not yee, because we understood not each other, then they made flew to be forrie for our loffe, and to be grieved that we the yeere before had beene there with so many ships, and then to see vs in so simple manner, and made vs fignes that then they had drunke Wine in our fhip, and asked vs what drinke wee had now, wherewith one of our men went into the Scute and drew some water, and let them

6c take thereof, but they shak't their heads, and said, No dobbre (that is, It is not good) then our Matter went neerer vnto them, and shewed them his mouth, to give them to vnderstand that we were troubled with a loofenesse in our bellies, and to know if they could give vs any countell to helpe it, but they thought wee made shew that wee had great hunger wherewith one of them went vnto their Lodging, and fetcht a round Rie Loafe, weighing about eight pounds, with

fome fmored Fowles which we accepted thankfully, and gaue them in exchange halfe a doozen some invited a writer with the state of the chiefe of them with him into his Scate, and gate them some of the Wine that we had, being almost a Gallon, for it was so neere out 1 and while we flayed there, we were very familiar with them, and went to the place where they lay, and fod some of our Mischayt with water by their fire, that we might eat some warme thing downe into our bodies, and wee were much comforted to fee the Ruffiers for that in thirteene moneths time, that we departed from Iohn Cornelision, we had not feene any man, but onely monferous and

The nine and twentieth, it was reasonable faire weather, and that morning the Russians be-In thin and twentieth, it was recommended to fet fayle, at which time they digged certapre 10 Barrels with Trayne Oyle out of the fieges which they had buried there, and putitinto

The thirtieth, lying at Anchor, the Wind fill blew North-weft, with great flore of Raine, and a fore florme, fo that although we had coursed our Scutes with our Sayles, yet we could not Tyedry, which was an vnaccuttomed thing vnto vs : for wee had had no Raine in long time before, and yet we were forced to ftay there all that day,

The one and thirrieth, in the morning, about the North-east Sunne, wee rowed from that Hand to another Hand, whereon there flood two Croffes, wee thought that some men had layne there about Trade of Merchandize, as the other Raffus, that wee faw before had done, but wee found no man there, the Wind as then beeing North-weft, whereby the Ice draw still towards 30 Scury graffe, the Wy gates : there to our great good wee went on Land, for in that Iland wee found great fore of Leple leanes, which ferued vs exceeding well, and it fermed that God had purposely lener care the country of the countr call infirmitie, meanes of those leaues we were healed thereof; for that as foone as we had eaten them, we were prefently cased and healed, whereast wee could not choose but wonder, and therefore wee gaue God great thankes for that, and for many other his mercies he wed vnto vs.by his great and vnexpected side lent vs, in that our dangerous Voyage: and fo as I faid before, wee eater them by whole handfuls together, because in Holland we had heard much spoken of their great force, and

as then found it to be much more then we expected. The first of August, the Wind blew hard North-west, and the Ice that for a while had driven towards the entry of the Wey-gates, stayed and drane no more, but the Sea went very hollow, whereby we were forced to remoue our Scutes on the other fide of the Hand, to defend them from the wanes of the Sea, and lying there were went on Land againe to fetch more Leple leanes, whereby we had beene to well holpen, and still more and more recourred our healths, and in to floor time, that we could not choofe but wonder thereat, fo that as then some of vs could eate Bisket againe, which not long before they could not doe. The second, it was darke mistie weather, the Winde still blowing stiffe North-west, at which time our victuals beganne to decrease, for as then wee had nothing but a little Bread and Water, and some of vs a little

The third, about the North Sunne, the weather being somewhat better, wee agreed amongst our felues to leave None Zembia and to croffe ouer to Ruffia, and so committing our felues to God, we fer fayle with a North-west Wind, and sayled South South-west till the Sunne was East, and then we entred into lee againe, which put vs in great feare and about the South-west Sunne got eleere thereof, and entred into the large Sea, where we faw Ice, and then what with fayling and rowing we had made twentie miles, and so failing forwards wee thought to approach neere vnto the Ruffien Coast; but about the North-west Sunne we entred into Ice againe, and then it

The fourth, about the South-east Sunne, being gotten out of the Ice, we sayled forward with a North-weft Wind, and held our course Southerly, and when the Sunne was South, at noone 50 time we faw the Coaff of Raffis lying before vs, whereat we were exceeding glad, and going neerer vnto it, we firooke our fayles and rowed on Land, and found it to be very low Land, like a bare Strand that might be flowed ouer with the water, there we lay till the Sunne was Southwest, but perceining that there wee could not much further our selues, having as then sayled from the Point of Nona Zembla (from whence we put off) thither full thirtie miles, wee fayled forward along by the Coaft of Ruffle, with an indifferent gale of Winde, and when the Sunne was North, we saw another Raffias lake or ship, which we sayled vato to speake with them, and being bard by them, they came all aboue Harches, and wee cryed vnto them Candinaes Candimass (whereby we asked if we were about Candinass) but they cryed againe and faid, Pstana, Pittora, (to flew vs that wee were there abouts) and for that wee fayled along by the Coaft, 60 where it was very dry, supposing that we held our course West and by North, that so we might get beyond the Point of Candinaes, we were wholy deceived by our Compaffe, that stood vpon a Chift bound with Iron bands which made vs vary at leaft two Points, whereby we were much more Southerly then wee thought our course had beene, and also farre more Easterly, for wee

thought verily that we had not beene farre from Candinaes, and wee were three dayes fayling from it as after we perceived, and for that we found our felues to bee fo much out of our way, we flayed there all night till day appeared.

The twelfth of August, it was faire weather, at which time the Sunne being Baff. wee faw a Ruffia Lodgie come towards vs, with all his fayles vp, wherewith we were not a little comforted, which we perceiuing from the Strand, where we lay with our Scutes, we defired the Mafter that we might goe voto him, to speake with him, and to get some victuals of them. and to that end we made as much hafte as we could, to launch our our Scutes and fayled toward them, and when we got to them, the Master went into the Lodgie, to aske them how farre wee had to Gardinaes, which we could not well learne of them, because wee vinderstood them not. they held up their fine Fingers unto vs, but we knew not what they meant thereby, but after we perceived, that thereby they would shew vs, that there stood five Crosses vpon it, and they brought their Compasse out and shewed vs that it lay North-west from vs, which our Compasse Russian Comalso shewed vs, which reckoning also we had made : but when we saw we could have no better patter intelligence from them, the Malter went further into their Ship, and pointed to a barrell of Fifth that he faw therein, making fignes to know, whether they would fell it vnto vs, shewing them a peece of eight Rials, which they understanding gave vs one hundred and two Fishes, with the Cakes which they had made of Meale, when they fodde their Fish, and about the South Sunne wee left them.

The fixteenth of August in the Morning, sayling forward North-west, we perceived that we were in a Creeke, and so made towards the Russian Lodgie, which we had seene on our starreboord, which at last with great labour and much paine wee got vnto, and comming to them about the South-east Sunne, with a hard winde, we asked them how farre we were from Sembla de Cool or Kilduin, but they shooke their heads, and shewed vs that wee were on the East-side of Zembla de Candinaes.

The seuenteenth lying at Anchor, in the Morning at breake of day, wee saw a Russian Lodgie that came fayling out of the white Sea, to vvhom we rowed, that vve might have some instruction from him, and when we boorded him, vvitbout asking or speaking vnto him, he gaue vsa loafe of Bread, and by fignes hewed vs as well as he could, that hee had feene our Companions, and that there was feuen men in the Boate, but wee not knowing well what they fayd, 30 neither yet beleeuing them, they made other fignes vnto vs, and held vp their feuen Fingers, and pointed to our Scute, thereby thewing that there was so many men in the Boate, and that they had sold them Bread, Flesh, Fish and other victuals: and while wee stayed in their Lodgie, vve faw a small Compasse therin, which we knew that they had bought of our chiefe Boatson, which they likewise acknowledged. About mid-night wee found a fall of fresh Water, and then we went on Land to fetch some, and there also wee got some Leple-leaues, and as wee thought to row forward, we were forced to sayle, because the flood was past, and still we lookt earne fly out for the point of Cardinaes, and the five Croffes, whereof we had beene inftructed by the Ruffians, but we could not fee it.

The Eighteenth, in the Morning the Sunne being East, we puld vp our Stone (which we vsed in fleed of an Anchor) and rowed along by the Land, till the Sunne was South, and then we faw a point of Land reaching into the Sea, and on it certayne fignes of Croffes, which as vve went necrer vnto we law perfectly, and when the Sunne was West, we perceined that the Land reached West and South-west, so that thereby we knew it certainely to bee the point of Candinaes, lying at the mouth of the white Sea which we were to croffe, and had long defired to fee it. This Point is eafily to bee knowne, having fine Crosses standing vpon it, which are perfectly to be discerned, and having a good North-east wind (which was not for vs to slacke) we let forward in the Name of God, and when the Sunne was North-west we past the Point, and all that night and the next day sayled with a good Wind, and all that time rowed but while three Glasses were so runne out, and the next Night after enfuing, having still a good wind, in the Morning about the East North-east Sunne, we saw Land on the West-fide of the white Sea, which we found by the rushing of the Sea vpon the Land before we saw it, and perceiuing it to bee full of Clifts, and not low fandie ground with some Hills, as it is on the East-side of the white Sea, wee assured our felues that we were on the West-fide of the white Sea, vpon the Coast of Lapland, for the which Lapland. we thanked God, that he had helped vs to fayle oner the white Sea in thirtie houres, it being for-

tie Dutch miles at the leaft, our course being West with a North-east winde. The twentieth, we espied certayne Crosses, with Warders vpon them, whereby we vnderflood that it was a good way, and so put into it, and being entred a little way within it, we saw a great Ruffian Lodgie lying at Anchor, whereinto we rowed as fast as we could, and there also 60 we saw certayne Houses wherein men dwelt, and when wee got to the Lodgie, we made our selves fail vnto it and cast our tent over the Scute, for as then it began to rayne, then we vvent on land into the Houses that stood vpon the shoare, where they shewed vs great friendship, leading vs into their Stones and there dryed our wer Cloathes, and then feething some Fish, bade vs fit downe and eate somewhat with them. In those little houses wee found thirteene Russians, Russian Houses.

August.

who every morning event out to Fish in the Sea, whereof two of them had charge over the rest, they fined very poorely, and ordinarily eate nothing but Fifth and Bread: at Ecuening when we prepared our felues to goe to our Scute againe, they prayed the Maiter and me to stay with them prepared our remost or go to do an arrived them for, would not doe, but I stayed with them all Laplanders might: befides those thirteene Men, there was two Laplanders more, and three Women traiting the behavior to the control of the outroland which the Rufflers gave them, as a peece with a Child, that lived very poorely of the outroland which the Rufflers gave them, as a peece of a Fish, and some fishes heads which the Roffings threw away, and they with great thankfulor a run, and touc management of their popertie, we hought our felies to be well furnifined : and yet we had little enough, but as it fermed their or linary litting was in that manner, and we were forced to stay there, for that the vv and being North-west, it was against vs.

The one and twentieth, wee met our other Companie vyherewith we rejoyced, and shewed and the une and weekings, and how wee had tayled too and fro in great necessitie and hunger, and yet they had beene in greater necessitie and danger then we, and game God chankes that hee had presented vs aline, and brought vs together againe, and then we cate something together and dranke of the cleere Water, such as runneth along by Colley through the Rhone, and then wve agreed that they should come vnto vs, that we might sayle together.

the two and twentieth, the rest of our men with the Boate came vnto vs, about the East South-east Sunne, whereat wee much rejoyced, and then we prayed the Ruffians Cooke to bake a such case of Meale for vs, and to make it Bread, paying him for it, which hee did, and in the meane time, when the Fifther-men came with their Fifth one of the Sea, our Mafter bought foure Cods 20 of them, which we fodde and eate, and while we were at meate, the chiefe of the Raffians came vnto vs, and percenning that we had not much Bread, hee fetched a Loafe and gaue it vs, and although we defined them to fit downs and eate some meate with vs. yet we could by no meanes get them to grant thereunto, because it was their Fasting day, and for that we had powred But-Source a fast ter and fac into our Kish: nor wee could not get them once to drinke with vs, because our Cup was somewhat grease, they were so superstitious touching their Fasting and Religion, neither would they lend vs any of their Cups to drinke in, leaft they should likewise bee greased, at that

The foure and twentieth, the wind blew East, and then the Sunne being East, we got to the freen Hands, where we found many Fisher-men, of whom we enquired after Cool and Kildsin, 30 and they made fignes that they lay West from vs. (which we likewise ghest to bee so) and withall they the wed we great friendthip, and caft a Codde into our Scate, but for that wee had a good gale of wwind, we could not flay to pay them for it, but gaue them great thankes, much wondering at their great courtefie, and so with a good gale of wind we arrived before the seuen Hands, when the Sunne was South-weft, and past betweene them and the Land, and there found cer-tayne Fifner-men that rowed to vs., and asked vs. where our Crable (meaning our Ship) was, whereunto we made answer, with as much Ruffien language as wee had learned; and fayd, Crable pro Pal, (that is, our Ship is loft) which they understanding, sayd unto us, Cool Brahouse (rable, whereby we understood, that at Cool there was certayne Netberland Ships, but wee made no great account thereof, because our intent was to fayle to Ware-bons, fearing least the Rufflan: 40 or great Prince of the Countrey would stay vs there.

The fine and twentieth, fayling along by the Land with a South-east vvind, about the South Sunne, we had a fight of Kildnin, at which time we held our courie West North-west, and fayling in that manner betweene Kildmin and the firme Land, about the South South-west Sunne, we got to the West end of Kildnin, and being there looked if we could see any Houses or people therein, and at last we saw certayne Rossian Lodgies that lay vpon the Strand, and there finding a connenient place for vs to Anchor with our Scates, while wee went to know if any people were to bee found, our Mafter put in with the Land, and there found fine or fixe small Houses, wherein the Laplanders dwelt, of whom we asked if that were Kildsin, whereunto they made answer, and shewed vs that it was Kildein, and sayd, that at Cools there lay three Brabant Cra- 50 bles or Ships, whereof two were that day to let layle : wee found a small House vpon the shoare, vuherein there was three Men and a great Dogge, which received vs very friendly, asking vs of our affaires, and how we got thither, whereunto we made answer, and shewed them that we had loft our Ship, and that wee were come thither to fee if we could get a Ship that would bring vs into Holland: whereunto they made vs answer as the other Russians had done, that there was three Ships at Cools, whereof two vvere to let layle from thence that day, then wee asked them if they would goe with one of our men by Land to Coola, to looke for a Ship, wherewith wee might get into Holland, and layd we would reward them well for their paines, but they excused themselves, and sayd, that they could not goe from thence, but they sayd they would bring vs oter the Hill, where we should finde certayne Laplanders whom they thought would goe with vs, as they did: for the Mafter and one of our men going with them ouer the Hill, found certaine Laplanders there, vwhereof they got one to goe with our man, promising him two Ryals of eight for his paines, and so the Laplander going with him, tooke a Piece on his necke, and our man a Boat-hooke, and about Ecuening they fet forward, the vvinde as then being East, and East

The fixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-east, at which time we drew vo both our Scutes vpon the Land, and tookeall the goods out of them, to make them the lighter; which done, we went to the Ruffians and warmed vs, and there dreffed fuch meater as wee had, and then againe we began to make two meales a day, when we perceived that we should enery day finde more people, and we dranke of their drinke which they call Quaffe, which was made of broken peeces of Bread, and it tafted well : for in long time wee had drunke nothing elie but Water. Some of our men went further into the Land, and there found blew Berries and bramble Berries, which they plucked and eate, and they did vs much good, for we found that they healed vs ot our loofenesse, the wwind still blew South-east.

The eight and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, and then we drew the Scutes voon the Land againe, that we might take the rest of the goods out of them, because the wind still blew hard North, and North North-west, and having drawne the Scutes vp, we spred our sayles vpon them, to shelter vs vnder them, for it was still mystie and raynie weather, much defiring

to heare some newes of our man, that was gone to Cools with the Laplander.

The nine and twentieth, wee fpyed the Laplander comming alone without our man, whereat we wondred, and were somewhat in doubt, but when hee came vnto vs; he shewed vs a Letter that was writen vnto our Master, which he opened before vs, the Contents thereof being, that hee that had written the Letter wondred much at our arrivall in that place, and that long fince hee verily thought that we had beene all cast away, being exceeding glad of our happie fortune, and how that he would prefently come vnto vs with victuals, and all other necessaries to fuccour vs withall, we being in no small admiration who it might bee, that shewed vs so great fanour and friendship, could not imagine what he was, for it appeared by the Letter that he knew vs well : and although the Letter was subscribed, by me lobn Cornelson Rip, yet wee could not bee perswaded that it was the same John Cornelison, who the yeere before had beene set out in the other hip with vs, & left vs about the Beare Hand : for those good newes we payd the Laplander his hyer; and besides that, game him Hose, Breeches, and other furniture, so that hee was apparelled like a Hollander: for as then wee thought our felues to bee wholly out of danger, and fo being of good comfort, we layd vs downe to reft. Heere I cannot chuse but shew you how fast the Laplander went : for when he went to Cools, as our Companion told vs, they were two Dayes and two Nights on the way, and yet went apace, and when he came backe againe he was but a Day and a Night comming to vs, which was wonderfull, it being but halfe the time, so that we fayd, and verily thought that hee was halfe a Conjurer, and he brought vs a Partridge, which hee had killed by the way as he went.

The thirtieth, wee faw a Ruffian Ioll come rowing with Iohn Cornelison, and our Companion that we had fent to Cools, who being landed, wee received and welcommed each other, with great joy and exceeding gladneffe, as if either of vs on both fides had feene each other rife from death to life againe : for we esteemed him, and hee vs to bee dead long fince : hee brought vs a Barrell of Refwicks Beere, Wine, Aqua vite, Bread, Flesh, Bacon, Salmon, Suger, and other things. which comforted and relieued vs much, and we rejoyced together for our fo vnexpected meeting:

at that time giving God great thankes, for his Mercie shewed vnto vs. The first of September, in the Morning with the East Sun, we got to the West-side of the Ri- September. uer of Coola, and entred into it, where we rowed till the Flood was pait, and then wee cast the Stones that ferued vs for Anchors vpon the ground, at a point of Land till the Flood came in againe : and when the Sunne was South, wee fet fayle againe with the Flood, and so sayled and rowed till mid-night, and then wee cast Anchor againe till morning. The second, in the Mor- Trees atare ning, we rowed up the River, and as we past along wee faw fome Trees on the River fide, which fight. comforted vs, and made vs glad as if we had then come into a new world, for in all the time that wee had beene out, we had not feene any Trees, and when we were by the Salt Kettles, which is about three miles from Cools, we stayed there a while, and made metrie, and then went forward Cooks, 30 againe, and with the Welf North-west Sunne, got to lobn Cornelisons Ship, wherein we entred and drunke: there wee began to make merrie againe, with the Saylers that were therein, and that had beene in the Voyage with Iohn Cornelison the yeere before, and bad each other welcome: then we rowed forward, and late in the Ecuening got to Coola, where some of vs went on Land, and some stayed in the Scutes to looke to the goods: to whom we fent Milke and other things to comfort and refresh them, and we were all exceeding glad that God of his mercie had delivered

vs out of so many dangers and troubles, and had brought vs thither in safetie. The third, wee valaded all our goods, and there refreshed our selnes after our toylesome and wearie Iourney, and the great hunger wee had endured, thereby to recouer our healths and ftrengths againe.

ttengens againe.

The eleventh, by leave and confent of the Bayart, Governour of the great Prince of Mafee. This Score and Box layd mia, we brought our Scute and our Boate into the Merchants Houle, and there let them Rand for up for a Monu a remembrance of our long, farre (and neuer before fayled way) and that wee had fayled in those ment how open Scutes, almost foure hundred Dutch miles, through, and along by the Sea Coasts to the much more Towne of Cools.

the old world

The feuenteenth of September, John Cornelifon and our Master being come aboord, the next day about the East Sunne, we fet sayle out of the River Coola, and with Gods grace put to Sea, to fayle homewards, and being out of the River, wee fayled along by the Land North-weft and by North, the winde being South.

Vpon the nine and twentieth of October, wee arrived in the Maje, with an East North-east wind, and the next morning got to Mafeland Sluce, and there going on Land, from thence rowed to Delfe, and then to the Hage, and from thence to Harlem. And upon the first of November about Noone, got to Amfterdam, in the fame Clothes that wee wore in Nona Zembla, with our Caps furr'd with white Foxes skinnes. The newes thereof being spred abroad in the Towne, it was also carryed to the Princes Court in the Hage, at which time the Lord Chancellour of Der. 10 marks, Ambassadour for the sayd King, was then at Dinner with Prince Marrice : for the which cause we were presently setcht thither by the Scout, and two of the Burgers of the Towne, and there in the presence of those Ambassadours, and the Burger-masters, wee made rehearfall of our Journey both forwards and backwards.

I thought good to adde bither for Barents or Barentsons sake, certaine Notes which I bane found (the one Translated, the other Written by him) amongst Master Hakhuyts Paper.

This was Written by William Barentson in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Reucrend Peter Planting in Amsterdam, March the feuen and twentieth, 1609.

Intelligence from Samoreds 1595. Barkes going from Pechora to Gielbfidi : Wintering Gielbsidi won tars 1592.

15920 Floud.

"He foure and twentieth of August, Stilo nouo 15050 wee space with the Samoieds, and asked I them how the Land and Sea did lye to the East of Way-gates. They fayd after fine dayer intrine toing North-east, wee should come to a great Sca, going South-east. This Sea to the East of Way-gaza, they faydwas called Marmoria, that is to fay, A calme tea. And they of Ward-house bane told us the Jame. I asked them, if at any time of the yeere it was frozen over ? They fand it was. And that sometimes they passed it was Sleds. And the first of September 1595. Stilo nouo, the Russes of the Louis or Barke affirmed the same ; saying , that the Sea is sometimes so Frozen, that the Lodies or Barkes going Sometimes to Gielhfidi from Pechora, are forced there to Winter : which Gielhfidi was wonne from 20 the Tartars, three yeeres pail. For the Ebbe and Flood there I can finde nome; but with the Winde so runneth the streams. The third

of September, Stilo nouo, the winde was South-west, and then I found the water higher, then with the winde at North or North-east. Mine opinion is grounded on Experience, That if there bee a passage, is is small: or else the Sea could not rise with a Somberly winde. And for the better proofe to know if there were a Flood and Ebbe, the nimb of September, Stilo nous, I went on Spoare on the South end of the States Hand, where the Groffe flandeth, and layd a Stone on the brinke of the Water, to prome when ther there were a Tide, and went round about the Iland to Scote at a Have, and returning, I found the Stone as I left it, and the Water neither higher nor lower : which producth as afore, that there is no

#### CHAP. VI.

A Treatife of Iver Botr & Gronlander, translated out of the North Language into High Dutch, in the geere 1560. And after out of High Dutch into Low Dutch, by WILLIAM BARENTSON of Amsterdam, who was chiefe Pilot aforesaid. The Same Copie in High Dutch, is in the hands of I o D o cv & Hondivs, which I baue seene. And this was translated out of Low Dutch, by Master WILLIAM STERE, Marchant, in the geere 16c8. for the vie of me HENRIE

HVDSON. WILLIAM BARENTSONS Booke is in the hands of Mafter PETER PLANTIVS, who lent the same unto me.

Narima, it is reported by men of Wisedome and Vnderstanding borne in Growland, That from Stad in Norway to the East part of Island, called Horn-ness, is feuen dayes fayling right West.

Items, men shall know, that betweene Island and Gronland, lyeth a Riffe called Gombornse-skare. There were they wont to have there passage for Gronland. But 60 as they report there is Ice vpon the same Riffe, come out of the long North Bot-

tome, so that we cannot vie the same old Passage as they thinke. Item, from Long-neffe on the East tide of Island to the aboutlaid Horn-neffe, is two dayes fayle to the Brimstone Mount.

with, and after fall againe, there remay neth your the Land much Fish drie. Item, when you fayle out of Emefines Ford, there lyeth an Inlet, called South-woders Wike : Bloming.

Irem, if you goe from Bergen in Norway, the course is right West, till you bee South of Rokeselle in Illand : and diftant from it thirteene miles, or leagues. And with this course you shall come under that high Land thas lyeth in the East part of Groneland, and is called Swafiler. A Smafiler, day before you come there, you shall have fight of a high Mount, called Huit-farke : and betweene Whitfarke and Graneland, lyeth a Head-land called Hernoldus Hooke; and thereby Whitfarke lyeth an Hauen, where the Norway Merchants Ships were wont to come : and it is called Hernoldus

Sound Hauen. Item, it a man will fayle from Island to Gronland, hee shall set his course to Snofnesse, which is in Groneland, by West Rokenesse thirteene miles or leagues right West, one day and nights sayling, and after South-west to thun the Ice, that lyeth on Gombornse-skare; and after that one day and night

10 North-west. So shall hee with this course fall right with the abouelayd Smaster , which is high Land, under which lyeth the aforefayd Head-land, called Hornoldus Hooke, and the Sound Hauen.

lauen.

Item, the Easter Dorpe of Groneland lyeth East from Hernoldus booke, but neere it, and is calSkagen Ford. led Skagen Ford, and is a great Village.

Item, from Skagen Ford East, lyeth a Hauen called Beare Ford : it is not dwelt in. In the Beare Ford. mouth thereof lyeth a Riffe, fo that great Ships cannot harbour in it.

Item, there is great abundance of Whales: and there is a great Fishing for the killing of them A great fifting there : but not without the Bilhops confent, which keepeth the fame for the benefit of the Ca- for Whales, thedrall Church. In the Hauen is a great Swalth ; and when the Tide doth runne out, all the A great Swalth

20 Whales doe runne into the fay! Swalth. Item, East of Beare Ford, lyeth another Hauen called Allaborg Sound : and it is at the mouth Allaborg Sound narrow, but farther in, very wide :: The length whereof is fuch, that the end thereof is not yet

knowne. There rumeth no Streamer & lyeth full of lettle Hes. Fawle and Oxen are there com- Store of Oxen. mon : and it is playne Land on both fides, growne ouer with greene Graffe.

Item; East from the Icie Mountayne, ty than Hauen called Feedehother; fo named, because in The Icie Saint Olafer time there was a Ship caft away, as, the speach hath beene in Gromeland; In which Monntayne. Ship was drowned one of Saint Olafer men, with others: and those that were faued did The Hauen of burie those that were drowned, and on their Granes did fet great flone Croffes, which wee fee No.e. 30 fem de la companya de la companya

te this day.

Items, form what more East toward the Leie Mountayne, lyeth a high Land, called Corfe Hought.

An hunting of vport which they Hune white Beates, but not we have the Bulhops leave, for it belongeth to the white Beares Cathedrall Church. And from tuence more Easterly, men fee nothing but Ice and Snow, both More Easterly

by land and water.

All Defart.

Now wice shall return agains to Hernoldius Hooks, where was first began to come to the first. The Towner Towns that lyech on the East field of Hernoldus Hooke, called Shager Ford; and to we will write from Hernoldus the Names of all that Iye on the West-fide or the Ford or Sound.

tem, West from Hernoldus Hooke, lyeth a Dorpe called Kodosford, and it is well built : and as ward. you fayle into the Sound, you shall see on the right hand a great Sea and a Marsh : and into this The Towns of 40 Sea runneth a great streame : and by the March and Sea standeth a great Church, on which the Godafird Holy Croffe is drawne, of colour white : it belongeth to Emineffe de Hokefong, and the Land Church with a to Peters Wike. 1 1 a way of a passe or bright a lody, by manner .

Item, by Peters Wike, lyeth a great Dorpe called Wartfdale, by which lyeth a water or Sea of on it. ewelne miles or leagues ouer : in which is much Fifth : And to Peters wike Church belongeth wantidall. Wart Idale Boy or Towne, and the Villages. (h. for sport the boy and the

Item, neere this Boy or Towne, lyeth a Cloy thron Abbey, new hich are Canons Regular, it is tongue fignifi-Dedicated to Saint Olafas, and Saint Augustinas parie. And to it belongeth all the Land to the eins Towne. Sea fide, and toward the other fide of the Cloyther. ் வரும் வர்வர் மல் நார்க்க

Item, next Godorford, lyeth a Ford called Rompnes Ford : And these lyeth a Clouder of Nuns Anumerie, of Saint Beneditts Order. ned V ant. L'avid & illi lightige.

50 Item, this Cloyfter to the bottome of the Sea and to Wegen Karket Was Dedicased to Saint Q. Het waters in Lafe the King. In this Ford lye mady fmall Hes. Andre this Clayster belongeth Blic the Ford Grenelaid. and the Church. In this Sound are many, warme Wastess. In the Winter they fart, intollerable. A place called hot but in the Summer more moderates, and many Bashing in them are cured of many distalts. Single below

Item, betweene Rampus and the next Sound, lyeth a great Garden called Hofe, belonging to King, the King. There is alto a coffly Church dedicated to Saint Nicolas. This Church had the King Sunt Nicolas before this. Neere it lyeth a Sea of Fresh water, called in which is great abundance Church. of Fish, without number. And when there falleth much Rayne, that the Waters doe rife thereSouthwoder;

60 and formewhat higher in the same Sound, and on the same side, lyethed little Cape salled Bloming: Granwicke and beyond that lyeth another Inwike called Grannike, and aboue, that lyeth a Garden called Deleth Garden, Daletb, which belongeth to the Cathedrall Churche And on the right hand as you tayle out of Agree: Wood the same Sound, lyeth a great Wood, which persayneth to the Church, where they Rede all and Horses

Item, West from this lyeth another high Land, called The long bigh Land: and by another cal-Eight great Orchardsbe. led whereon are eight great Orchards, all belonging to the Cathedrall Church. longing to the But the Tenths thereof they give to Warfedall Church. Cathedrall

Hem, next to this Sound lyeth another Sound called Smalfter Ford, wherin standeth a Church To called Swaffer. This Church belongeth to all this Sound, and to Romfe Ford, lying next it. In Items, next to that lyeth Ericky Ford, and entring therein lyeth an high Land called Ericky.

Swalfter Ford, Erick: Hought.

Hongbe; which pertayneth the one halfe to Deners Kerke, and is the first Parish Church on Groneland, and lyeth on the left hand as you fayle into Ericks Ford : and Deners Kerks belongethall to Meydon Ford, which lyeth North-west from Ericks Ford.

Shogel Kerke.

Item, farther out then Erseks Ford, standeth a Church called Skogel Kerke, which belongeth to all Medford : And farther in the Sound standetha Church called Leader Kerke. To this Church belongeth all thereabout to the Sea; and also on the other side as farre as Boufels. There lyeth also a great Orchard called Grose Lead, in which the Gusman (that is a chiefe or Baylisse over the 20

Folfa Sound.

And farther out then Ericks Ford, lyeth a Ford or Sound called Foffs, which belongeth to the Cathedrall Church : and the fayd Foffa Sound lyeth as mentayle out towards Ericks Ford ; and to the North of it lye two Villages, the one called Ener-boy, and the other Forther-boy, because Item, from thence farelier North lyech Breile Ford, and after that Lormont Ford from that West, and from Larmone Ford to the West is Ice Dorpe. All these are places built, and in them

Breda Ford. Larmat Ford. Ice Dorpe. The Sherlen-

Item, from the Easter builded Land to the Wester Dorpe, is twelve miles or leagues and the rest is all waste land. In the Dorpe in the West standeth a Church, which in times past belonged 10 Many Horfes, so the Cathedrall Church, and the Bilhop did dwell there. But now the Sketlengers have all the Well Lands and Dorps. And there are now many Horses, Oxen, and Kine, but no people neisther Christian nor Heather; berthey were all carryed away by the Enemie, the Skirlangers.

Oxen, and Kine. Iner Bety the

All this before Written was done by one Iner Boy borne in Gronland, a principall man in the Bishops Court : who dwelt there many yeeres, and faw and knew all these places. He was chofen by the whole Land for Captayne, to goe with Ships to the West land, to drive away their Enemies the Skerlengers. But hee comming there, found no people neither Christian nor Hea-then, but found there many Skrepe running being wilde, of which Skeepe they wooke with them as many as they could carrie, and with them returned to there Houses. This before named Indo Bory was himfelfe with them. To the North of the West Land, Iyeth a great Wildernesse with Clifes or Rockes, called He-

A great Wilderneffe called to the North of the Well Mines of Sil-

ner, white

Beares, whire

fores of Fifh.

Grant Land not

fo cold as Ife-

mel Hatsfelt. Farther can no man fayle, because there lye many Smalgen or Whirle-pooles" and alfo for the Water and the See. " Item, in Groneland are many Siluer Hills, and many whice Beares with red patches on their heads; and also white Hawkes, and all fores of Fish, as in other Countries.

item, there is Marble stone of all colours, also Zeuell stone or the Load stone, which the Fire cannot hurt, whereof they make many veffele, as Pots, and other great veffele. Item, in Groneland runneth great streames, and there is much Snow and Ice : But it is not so fold, as it is to flowed or Mormay.

Item, there grow on the high Hills, Nuts and Acornes, which are as great as Apples, and good 50 for ate. There groweth alfor the best Wheate, that can grow in the whole Land,

land or Norway. Fruits.

This Sea Card was found in the lies of Fero or farre, lying betweene Shor-last and Iffiend, in an old reckoning Booke, written about one hundred yeares agoo : out of which this was all taken. Press and Pas ... Isom, Primmi and Pother fe, have inhabited Island certayne yeeres, and fometimes have gone to Sea, and hate had their trade in Groneland. Also Pumnie did give the I funders their Lawes, and caufed them to bee written. Which Lawes doe continue to this day in Hand, and are called by name Pumite Lawes. Lagret ...

## The Course from Island to Groneland.

F men bee South from the Hauen of Brad Ford in Illand, they shall fayle West, till they see Winfarke apon Groneland; and then fayle fomewhat South-west till Whitfarke bee North off you, and to you need not feare Ice, but may boldly fayle to whitfarke, and from thence to Ericks Haven

CHAP.6. Gronland Commodities. Counsell for Gronland Travellers.

If men be North the Hauen of Bredford in Island, then sayle South-west, till Whit sarke beare North: then tayle to it, and to come to Ericks Hauen.

If you fee Ice, that commeth out of Troleboshon, you shall goe more Southerly, but not too Troleboshon farre South for feare of Free land, for there runneth an hard streame. And it is fifteene miles or leagues from Freefland.

Item. Freefland lyeth South, and Island East from Grenland.

Item, From the Ice that hangeth on the Hilles in Gronland, commeth's great Fogge, Fioft and Cold. And fuch a Fogge commeth out of the Ice of Trolebothon : and it is a great Wil- Trolebothon, a dernesse.

There are Sables, Marcernes, Hermelins, or Ermins, White Beares, and White Hawkes, neffe. 10 Seales, White and Gray, Gold and Silver Hills, also Fish dryed and salted, and thousands dities of Grandof Salmons: also store of Losh Hides and other Hides. There are Hares, Foxes, Wolues, Ot- land ters, and Veltfrafen. Now if it please God they come to Gronland, then shall they set but two men on shoare; Good counsell

who shall take with them diners kindes of Marchandize : and let them deale with good for travelling order, and let them bee such as can make good Report, what they there doe see or findes to Grenland,

and let them obserue whether men may there Land or no, with the love of the Inhabitants. And I counfaile and charge those that shall Trade for Gronland, that they set no more folke on Land, but they keepe men enough to man the Ship. And looke well to the course you hold to Gronland, that if those that bee set on shoare bee taken, they may come

20 home againe with God, helpe. For if shipping returne, they may come home or bee relecued in a yeere and a day. And in your living there so demeane your felues to them, that in time you may winne the Countrey and the people. Remember my Scholler and Clearke, which shall bee there appointed as Commander, that

you fend those on Land, that will shew themselves diligent Writers, and that they carrie themselues so, that they may learne thereby the State of the Countrey. They shall take with them two Boats and eight Oares, and take Tynder-boxes for fire if there be no Habitation. Also Tynder-boxes fet vp Croffes of Wood or Stone, if need be.

# This Note following was found in an old Booke of Accompts, in the Teere 1 596.

Normis, From Grad in Norway, standing neere the Latitude of fixtie three Degrees, you Courfes for I shall hold your course due West: and that course will bring you woon Swartnesse in Gron- Gronland. land. And in this course is the least streame and least perill of Swalgen or Indrastic. There is leffe perill this way, then is on the North-side; you shall keepe ? of the Sea on Freesland side, and one third on Island fide. And if it bee cleere weather, and you have kept your course right A fforme in Welt, you shall fee the Mount of Suesets lotest in the South-west part of Isand. And if you have the North a storme in the North, you must shunne it as you can, till stringlands be North of you. Then whitest

40 shall you sayle right with it, and seeke the Land : and you shall finde a good Hauen, called Erick Ford: Item, If you bee betweene Gronland and Island , you may see Suenels lokal on Island, and Whitfarke on Gronland, if it be cleere weather. Therefore men of experience doe affirme, that it

is but thirtie leagues betweene both. Alfo if you have a storme betweene Gronland and Island, you must have care you bee not laid on Freefland with the streame and Winde; for the streame or Current doth fun strong vpon Freefland, out of the North.

Also if you have a storme out of the South, you shall not sayle out of your course, but A storme in keepe it as neere as you can possibly, till Whit farke in Gronland beare North off you: then the South 30 Sayle toward it, and you shall come into Ericks Ford, as it is afore-said in the first Article.

Yу 3

CHAPA

## CHAP.7. S.I. Osoil. Imperiall Priviledge, River Wichida, Oncekos.

CHAP. VII.

A Description of the Countries of Siberia, Samoicda, and Tingoesia. Together with the lourneyes leading Onto the Same Countries toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Moscouites.

The first and fecond Paragraph: were rublished in Latine by Hellell Gerar. dus Art. 1612. here a little contracted: the last I found in M. Hallayts P:pers. White Sea :0 the North of Ruffia. Samoieds.

Discouerie of Siberia, and the subjecting of the same

Here is in Mosconie, a Kindred called the Sonnes of Onecko, of a rusticke or hase defeent, and first spring from one Oneselo, at Husband-man. He being very rich in Lanls, dwelt vpon a certaine River called Wiebuda, or Wisfigda, falling into the River Duma, which about one hundred leggues beneath, never way to the Calle 10 called S. Michael the Archangel, which falleth into the White Sea. This Oneselo being with the selicible but were Cell His and the Sea. descent, and first sprung from one Onecke a Husband-man. He being very rich in ing rich (as is faid) had also many Children, God having largely bleffed and pro-

unded him with plentie of all things. Yet neuertheleile, hee had an earnest delire and affection, Arisa or Oncele to know what Countreyes were possessed and inhabited by those people, which yeerely came into Russia to trassicke, bringing with them costly Furres, and divers other Merchandizes, much distring in Language, Apparel, Religion, and Behauiour, calling themselves Samoreds, and by other vnknowne names. These people came energy yeere downe the River Wichida, and exchanged their Commodities with the Ruffes and Moscouites, in the Townes of Ofel and Viling, on the River Oyet and Pfling Duina; which at that time were the Receits and chiefe Mart Townes of all kind of Marchandizes, but especially of costly Furres. Onecke therefore (as hath beene faid) was most desirous to 30 know, from whence these people came, or what Countreyes they did inhabit, easily conjecturing, That great wealth was there to be gotten; fince the Furres yearely brought them amounted to a great summe of Money. Wherefore secretly hee got acquaintance and conforted him-Sammedicoun- felfe with diuers of them, and fent in their company about tenne or twelve of his owne people into those parts; enjoyning them, that through what Countreyes so ever they should travell, they should make diligent fearch of enery particular thing therein, and fully observe the Manners, Rites, Dwellings, and whole course or life of those Nations; that at their returns they might bring from thence perfect knowledge thereof. Which they having at length performed, he enterrayned them bountifully at their returne, and shewed them all fauour, but with especiall 40 charge to keepe filence. Hee likewife kept all thefe things close to himfelfe, not reuealing them to any man.

The fecond Voyage.

for the Sa-

The first Voy-

great Riuers. Riuer Obi Great wealth by the Tride the prople. No Bread Shooting, Apparell. Honics.

And the next yeere following, he fent thither a greater number of his people, joyning with them certaine of his Kindred and Alliance. These carried with them divers base Alarchandize; as small Bels, and other like Dutch small Wares; and tooke diligent notice of every thing in those parts; and after they had palled many Deferts, and divers great Rivers, they came to the River Ob; Many Deferts where making Acquaintance and Friendship with the Samoieds, they found that Furres were to be had for a small price, and that great wealth was there easily to be gotten; and further, that this people had not any Cities, but lived together in Companies, and peaceably, and governed by tome of the ancientest among them; that they were lothfome in their feeding, and lived on the Helh of fuch beafts as they tooke : that they had no knowledge of Corne or Bread , were cun- 10 ning and skilfull Archers, making their Bowes of a gentle and flexible kind of Wood, and that to the Ruser of their Arrowes were headed with sharpened stones or fish bones; with those they killed wilde Conditions of heafts, which are exceeding plentifull in those places: that they fowed also with bones of fishes, ferning them for Needles; their thred being made of the finewes of certaine small beasts, and so Gouldment, they tew together the Forres, wherewith they cloath themselves : the Furrie side in Summer turned outward, and in Winter inward. That they covered their Houses with the Skins of Elkes and such like beasts, lettle esteemed among them. Finally, these Messengers of Oneeke, searched curiously into enery matter, and returned home flored with coffly Farres. Now when as Oneeke understood by their report, that which he so much longed to know, he

together with certayne others of his Friends, continued his Trafficke into those Countreves for 60 divers yeares together : by meanes whereof the Oneekos grew very mightie, and bought great continuance of Possessions in all parts. Those that dwelled neere vnto them beening ignorant from whence all this Voyage. this wealth arofe, greatly wondred at it. For the Oncefor builded Churches in force of their

Villages. Yez, afterward they erected in the Towns of Ofoll vpon the Wichida, where at that time they dwelt, an exceeding faire Church, which was rayled from the very roundations of hewen flone. Finally, they knew no end of their goods.

Now among the Rufferst goeth for a common Proverbe, that Hee which bath no friends in Court, is scarce to be accounted in the number of the lining. For most commonly it happeneth, that they that excell others in any thing, are prefently enuyed and falily accured in the Princes Court, where if they have not a friend to fuccour them, they are forth-with without hearing the cause, oppressed; yea, and veterly ruined. For which cause the Oneckes beeing growne to L. Ecis, that \* much wealth, as is faid, got into the fauour of one of the greatest in the Court, which was Bo- Theodore Em-

10 Produces Brother to the Wife of the Emperour Phoesiar Engounes then reigning; to whom record, the slight feeder also be faced in the Empire. Vint this Beris the Oneshot determined to reurale the whole Registro-Thousand to reueale the Empire. Vnto this Boris the Oneeless determined to reueale the whole nounce that matter: who first presenting him with gifts after the custome of the Countrey, prayed him to ob. grant them hearing in a matter, which they had to deliver for the benefit of the whole Empire. Boris presently listning to this Petition, received them with extraordinary kindnesse: and after they had declared vnto him the fituation of the Countreyes of Samoiedia, and Siberia, then what they had feene and observed therein, and how great Riches might thence arise vnto the Empire of Molconia. Boris presently grew into an ardent defire to set forward this businesse, entertayning them as his Children, and gracing them to the vttermost of his power, procuring them from the Emperour a most ample Printledge, by which it was ordayned, That they should for e- Imperiall-ri-20 uerenjoy the Lands which they possessed, and might dispose of them vnto their Heires at their mileden.

pleasure. And farther, it it happened they were abiding in the Citie of Mojeua, he tooke them into his owne Sled : which among the Moscouites is the greatest kind of honour, especially being offered by principall Noblemen, such as then was Boris, a man of the greatest power, and in whom the chiefe authoritie of the Empire refted. Boris pondering thele things attentiuely, fignified the whole matter to the Emperour, to whom it was very plealing; And not fleeping about the matter, employed therein certayne Captaynes, and Gentlemen of small abilitie of his owne followers: commanding them to prepare themselues to goe to that Iourney, in company of such as the Oneckes should appoint vnto them, and that they should apparell themselves gallantly, and like voto Ambastadors, adding further certayne Souldiers, and Presents of small value to 30 be distributed among the people, to which they should come: enjoying them further to note

diligently all Passages, Rivers, High-wayes, Woods, and what elfe they should meete with in their travell; as also to commit to memorie the names of them; that at their returne they might make a faithfuil and true report thereof : adding further that they should intreat the people with all courtelle, and that they should feeke out some convenient place for building of Caltles and Fortreffes, and that in any case (if it were possible) they should bring backe with them into Mosconia, some of the Inhabitants of those Countryes.

These Messengers being sufficiently furnished with all things necessary for the Journey, name- The first Voyly, Apparell, Weapons, Money, and Preients, departing from the Mofena, not long after came age for our by to the River Wechida, and to the Oneckes: who also fent some of their owne people with them. Baris Godfagous.

40 Alloone as they were arrived into those parts, they began to performe what was given them in charge, shewing freely all tokens of courtetie vnto the barbarous people, and carefully observing who were of greatest authoritie among them, to whom they vied reuerence and gaue gifts, fuch as were of small and almost no value to themselves, but which seemed so precious vnto the other, that when the Moscouites were comming a farre off towards them, they would stay for them with great dancings and clapping of their hands, and call themselnes downe at the feet of the Givers, being fo gallantly attyred, accounting them altogether as Gods. The Mofconnes vfing the Samoieds for their Interpretors, which had continued certayne yeeres in the Villages of Moscoma, to learne their Language, began to discourse with the Barbarians concerning their Emperour of Moscouie, whom they wonderfully extolled, and made him little leffe then an Earthly God, enterlacing other things with all, whereby those people were stirred up to wish

50 that they might behold thefethings with their eyes. Thefe their defires were pleating to the Moscourtes, who fignified that they were likewise well contented therewithall : Adding, that they would leave certayne pledges among them, which during the Samoieds abode in Mosconia, might learne their Language: And by this meanes they drew vnto their purpose the good will of many of the people on the Wetl-fide of Obr, who of their owne accord fibiected themselves to the authoritie of the Moscourtes, and suffered them to lay a Taxation vpon them , promiting They felt mit yeerely of every head (not excepting the Boyes that were but yet learning to handle the Bow) themselves to two skinnes of Sables; which to themselves were of no value, but esteemed of the Moscounes as precious as Iewels. These they promised to deliuer to such a Treasurer as the Emperour should ordayne. Neither did they faile to performe the fame.

After this the Mellengers palled over the River Obi, and travelled beyond it almost two hundred leagues toward the East and North-east, having seene by the way many wild beasts of Travilles-Arong thapes, most cleare Countaynes, extraordinary Plants and Trees, pleasant Woods, and Sa- youd On. moved or divers forts, whereof fome did ride on Elkes or Loftes, other were drawne in Sleds by Elker or L. Gree.

Raine Deere, and others also were drawne by Dogges, which are equall to Harts for swiftnesse, Ruine Deere. Finally, many other things in their whiele lourney they met with, not before seene, and theregrining many other unings in their whole country they mee want, no centre cette, and there fore to be manuelled at : which orderly and truly noted downe, that they might more certainly report the fame at their returne, And foat length taking with them fome voluntarie Sameieds, and leaving there divers of their owne people to learne their Language, they returned backe into Mescant, where at their first commence they made knowne to Beru, and by him vato the

Samoieds shoo. ting; \* Stiuer.

They maruelled at the Samoieds which were brought vinto them, commanding them to make A ney matterieu as one campagn, y mort processor and for the comment of the comme fome shew of their cunning in smooting; which they one to perfectly, the amount of any man incredible. For taking a piece of Coyne lesse then our \* Pennie, and fashing it to the any man incredible. any man increasion: For examine present of control and the fact of they did enery time that they did floot fo affuredly hit the fame, that they did not one miffe it. Where at many of the beholders did aboue measure wonder.

And on the other fide, the Samoied as greatly wondred both at the Mosconius manner of liuing and fashions, as also at the stateliness of the Citie: neither did they without a certayne terrour behold the Emperour himselfe, so richy attired and mounted either on Horse-backe, or in his Coach drawne by many Horfes together, and enuironed with fo many Nobles most gallantly adorned. Then with admiration they beheld the Guards furnified with their Caluers, of whom about foure hundred waited on the Emperour at his going abroad. So of allo as they whom about four numbers water on the Emperor at the Mosconites, and law to many 20 heard the ringing of the Bells, which are very many among the Mosconites, and law to many 20 faire shops, and the rest of the Cities beautie, they were altogether associated, and thought themselves to bee in some Mansion of the Gods; withing withall, that they were a while among their Country-men to tell them of all things. Yea, they reported themselves to be happie, that they had the fortune to serue so glorious an Emperour, whom they altogether accounred as a Diuine power. The Meates which the Mosconites did set before them, they did greedily cate : whereby it plainely appeared, that the same were more pleasant to their taste, then the raw flesh, or fish dried in the winde, wherewith they feed themselves at home. Finally, they promifed to receine the Emperour for their Lord; and to perfwade their Country-men, inhabiting farreand wide to doe the same. They humbly also prayed the Emperour to youchinhabiting rarreand while to doe the same. They mainly follower them, and to whom they 30 feethem the facour, to fend them certaine Governours to rule over them, and to whom they 30 might pay the aforefaid Tribute. Concerning their Idolatrie, there was no speech made thereof, but they were left to their owne customes. Notwithstanding, I thinke that the Christian Faith would eaflybe spred among them, if they had sufficient and godly Teachers. Neither doubt I but the Moscomics would have taken order therein, if they had not beene hindred by these most

These things so done as is declared, the Onecker were raised to great Honours, and endowed with great Priviledges, as allowith Supreme Authoritie over many places, adjoyning vino their Lands, enjoying Postessions lying one hundred miles a funder upon the Rivers of Dina Whithida. and Suchana: to that they are very mighty and rich, and increase daily in greater Honours.

It was further orday ned by the Mosconiter, that there should bee places chosen by the River 40 Ob, and in the fields addopning vnto it, fortified by the natural lituation for the building of Cariles thereon, and furnishing them with Garrifons, and that there should be sent chither a chiefe Gouernour, principally for further discourring the Countrey, and bringing it vnder subtection. These things so ordayned, did likewise take effect. And first of all, there were builded certaine Cattles enclosed with certaine strong beames, cut out of the Woods thereby, and fastned one in another in double rewes, filled betweene with earth, and fortified with Carrifons; And fogreat a multitude of men is duely sent thither, that in some places there are Cities affembled, confilling of Poles, Tarans, Raffes, and other Nations mingled together. For, into these parts are sent all that are banished, Murtherers, Traiters, Theeues, and the scumme of fuch as deferue death: some of which are for a time kept in prilon, others enforced to continue 50 there for certaine yeeres, every one according to the rate of his offence: whereby there are very populous affemblies of people growne together, who with the Cattles already builded, doe almoit make a pretie Kingdome: Many men of the meane fort, daily flocking thither, the rather for that they enioy great primiledges, neither pay any thing for the Lands which they polletic.

Caftles buil

The whole Countrey is called Siberia, the Citie builded therein Siber. And in deed at the fiest, the Offenders among the Mosconites, did no lesse tremble at the name of Siberia, then doe Then Male, coill perfons in London, when they are threatened with New-gate; for they were forth-with facts of Am. fent away into Sibria. But now the often inflicting of that punishment is almost growne informs the to contempt. But Noblemen and great Perforages, if at any time they incurre the Prince dil. pleasure, doe as yet very much loath the name of Siberia. For many times both them- 60 felues, with their Wiues and Families are sent away into those parts : where some Office is committed vnto them, till the Emperours anger bee allwaged, and they called home into

I will now thew the way by which they travell out of Messenia into those parts, and that

in the best manner that I could get notice thereof. Which whatsoeuer it shall feeme to bee, I This Iournall have not attayed vnto it, without great paines and ready furtherance of fome friends, which to the North-I found in the Court, while I continued in Ruffia: who though they were ready to pleasure me, east was harde and that I had beene very initiant with them about it, yet with much adoe were brought to com- ly obrayned by and that I had beene very initiant with them about it, yet with index above to blodge for the municate this particular lournall vnto me. For if at any time after, when the land should bee at in Court, municate this particular vision in Court, aniet, it should any way come to light, doubtlesse it would cost them all their lives. For such is The great danthe disposition of the Russes, that they will not indure to have the secrets of their State to bee ger for imparmade knowne.

#### **∂.** II.

A briefe Description of the wayes and Rivers, leading out of Moscouia toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoiedia, and Tingoesia, as they are daily frequented by the Russes: with further Discoueries sowards Tartaria and China.

Rom the Citie Ofoil vpon the River Wiehids, where the Oncekos dwell, they goe a- Ofoil. gainst the fireame, vntill they come to lauinis, a little Towne built by the Ruffes, lauinis 17 daies and it is distant from Ofoil almost seventeene dayes journey. Whither before they journey distant and it is diffant from Ofoil, almost Each test to a year of the strong of the from Ofoil, accome, they paffe many Rivers and Woods. The River Wichida springeth out of the from Ofoil, accome, they paffe many Rivers and Woods. The River Wichida springeth out of the from Ofoil, accome, they paffe many Rivers and Woods. Mountaines of Ingeria, which to the South ioyne vpon Tatarie, and from thence runne Northwards to the Ocean Sea. Out of the same Mountaines issueth the River Petfora, which falleth Ingeria, into the Ocean Sea on this fide the Streight of Waygats. From launis, after three weekes iour- River Pelfora. ney, they come to Neem; a River so named of the gentle gliding of her streames through the Neem River 3. Woods. For Neem in English fignifieth Still or Dumbe. On this River they proceed about weekes jourfine dayes space with their Boats; and then , for that the Neem taketh his course another way, nie for shortning their journey, they must of force cause their stuffe to be carried by Land, the space of aleague: And so they come to the Wifera, a River isluing out of certaine Rockes adjoyning From Neem to of a league. And to they come to the Workes the Moscomites call Camenas. From hence they are journey. carried downe the River Wifers, for the full space of nine dayes, vntill they come to Soil Cam- From Wifes to feer, a small Towne builded by the Moscomites, for refreshing of Trauellers for a short space, Soil Campon which hence forward are to proceed on their lourney by Land. As for the Wefers, it keeping 9-dayes. on his course somewhat farther, at length falleth into the Cam, which passing by Viateam, a Volga by the Towns of Molcoma, falleth into the great River Rose, commonly called Volgs, which entreth Fail Fail with feuenty branches into the Caffien Sea, as I have received from eye witnesses.

The Towne of Soil Campley is reasonably inhabited, having many Villages round about it. The Soil campley. Inhabitants, for the most part are Ruses or Tariars. Here is great store of Cattell, and chiefly of Horses. Transellers having here some what refreshed themselves, doe lade their carriages on Horses, 40 and travell for the most part through Mountaines full of Firres, Pines, and other trees of strange forts. Betweene these Mountaines they passe ouer the Rivers Soibs, and from thence over Cof. The River

se, both running toward the North-east. Now these Mountaines are divided into three parts; whereof the two first are passed over collect each of them in two dayes, and the third in foure dayes. The first part is called Coofminscoy Ca- Mountaines in men: The fecond Cirginfor Camen: The third Podninfor Camen. And doubtleffe all their moun-three parts, tainous Countries are much different from the other Countries out of which they enter into Cominges Cathem. For the Woods vpon them, are fairer and thicker growne with trees, bearing enery where Circuites Care divers forts of Plants. These three Defarts are frequented by none in a manner but Tartars, men and Samoisds, who onely hunt after those coffly Furres, which are to pay their tribute to the Poduinsoy Ca-50 Emperour of Mofessia. The Mountaines of Poduinfeoy Camen are higher then the reft, and for men. the most part covered with Snow and Cloudes, and therefore difficult for Travellers to passe ouer: but by little and little they have a gentle descent. From thence they come to Vergateria, Vergateria. in which Towne they must abide wntill the Spring, by reason of the River Toera, which arising Toera River.

not farre from thence, is all the reft of the yeere very shallow. But the Spring approaching, when the Snow melts from the hoary Hills, and the Land waters arife, it is passed ouer with Skiffes and small Boats. Vergateria is the first Towne of the Vergateria the Countrey of Siberie, and was begun to be builded with some other Townes within these one first Towne of and twenty yeeres. It is reasonably full of buildings, and the lands about it are tilled as in Siberia. Molomia. Heere there is retident for the Emperour of Molomia 2 Gouernour, which yeerely Ruffian Gouer-60 at the beginning of the Spring, by way of the Rivers doth distribute great store of Corne, and neur. Victoris among the Caftles with Garrisons throughout all Siberia: furnishing also in like manner the Mofconites, which remayne beyond the River Oby. For in those places the ground is not yet tilled; and the Samoieds, as before is faid, for the most part feed on the flesh of wilde beafts.

Downe

Fine dayes iourney to Iasbanis.

Downe the River Toers, in fine dayes they come to Isphanis, a Towne builded and inhabited within these two yeeres. Thence againe they passe downe the Teers, and having proceeded two dayes thereon, they are enforced by reason of the often windings and turnings of the Riuer, to cut ouer it in certaine places, for shortning of the way. In these places there now dwell here and there, Tartars and Samoieds, living for the most part vpon Cattell and Fishing.

Tabab a michleagues from From Iaphanis to Timia 12. dayes iourney by fled Many tranell farre beyond

At length leaving Toera, they come to the mighty River Tabab, diftant from Vergairia about two hundred leagues. And from thence they proceed farther to Tinna, a populous Towne, and builded by those about mentioned. But many trauell also from Isphanis to Tima, by Sleas in the Winter time, in the space of twelve dayes. And here is vsed much buying and selling of coffly Furres, betweene the Mulconnes, Tartars, and Samoieds, And this is a very concument 16 place, for such as determine to say in the Countrey not aboue sixe moneths. But many doe fearch the further parts, and trauell farre beyond the Oby, toward the East and South,

From Tinna they come to Tobolfea, the chiefe of all the Townes of Siberia: wherein is the Thre ocyona of the feat of the chiefe Governour of Siberia, and of the Moscowings that are in the same. To this OFF CONTROL IN PLACE YEEFERY are brought from the other Townes of the whole Countrey, as well on this fale, as beyond Oor the tributes, which being brought together, and guarded with Souldiers, are after carried into Mosconia to the Emperour, Here also the Law is most severely administred: and all the other Gouernours in Samiedia, and Siberia, are bound to obey him onely. In this Citie befides is the chiefe Market of commodities brought out of Mosconia; the Tartar: out of the South parts, and almost farthest parts of Tartarre, and men of other Nations repairing thither: 20 who, the farther that the report of these Countries reacheth, doe in so much the greater number affemble thither : whereby there arifeth great profit to the Molcounter. Furthermore, in diners places there are Churches and Chappels creeted, wherein the Greeke Religion is exercifed, which among the Ruffer, and other Northerne People is most vsed, although corrupted with divers Superfittions. But howfoever, no man is forced against his will to their Religion: but certaine gentle meanes are vied by the Ruffer, by which these people are persuaded and

The Citie Tobolfes is situated on the River Tris, which with a most forcible streame, and as it were another Danubius, rifing from the South, taketh his course toward the Ob, through

which it feemeth to runne with the fame courfe. On the other fide is the River Tabol, of which 30

the Citie taketh her name. Into this falleth the Ruer 74fs, which feemeth to spring from the

Tobal River. Taffa River.

of Siberiae

Pohemy a

Tris River. Olicongrad

North-east, and from certaine Mountaines there upon the Coast. On the side of this River the Mosconies haue of late builded a Towne, talled Pobenty, inhabited with dwellers drawne out of Siberia, for no other cause, but that it is enumoned with an exceeding fertile soyle, as also with very pleasant Woods, wherein dauers sorts of wilde beasts doe breed, as Panthers, Ounces, Foxes, Sables, and Marterns. Nows Poberty is diffant from Tobolfes, about two weekes Iourney toward the North-east. Tris with almost the like distance from Tobosca, falleth into the Obj. And at the mouth of it was builded a Towne calle: Olfcoggrood, but afterward razed downe by commandement of the Gouernour of Siberia . The cause whereof was not then knowne: which not with landing I guesse to have been either the extremity of the cold, or that the Towne stood 40 rer vnto the Sea then they thought fit, and feared left tome inconveniense might grow thereby. for which cause about fittie leagues aboue that razed Towne, they builded another vpon an Iland Zergolica nown of the Riner Oby, called Zergolica. From hence fayling up the Riner, they wie small sayles, either because winds blow faintly, or for the highnesse of the shoare: so that, though the Oby bee almost every where very broad; notwithstanding, they drew their Boats in it with ropes, altogether after the same fort that they trauell vp the Rivers of Mostonia.

builded in an River Oby.

Caftle 200

They travell

Two hundred leagues aboue Zergolta, they came to Normfon, a Cafile builded thirteene yeers agoe, at which time the Gouernour fent certaine men thither out of Siberia, to fecke out Counleagues abone tries profitable for mankind, and fit to build Townes in. Wherefore at that time they builded this Caffle, and furnished it with a certaine Garrison, in a very pleasant, wholsome, warme, and fertile loyle, and wherein were great flore of Beatls and Fowles of rare kinds. The very Cattle being situated toward the South-east, by little and little grew to be a Citie. The Inhabitants whereof were enjoyned to proceed by degrees into forther and more temperate Countries, and to trafficke truely in euery place, and courteoully and kindly to entreat all people that they met withall: whereby at length they might more largely extend the Dominion, and ipread abroad the Russian Name. Wherefore flocking thither in great numbers, and piercing into the Inland foure hundred leagues, they found goodly Countries, but not inhabited. And whereas ten yeeres past, having sayled two hundred leagues up the River Ob, they lighted upon a Countrey very fruitfull and pleasant, which was very temperate, and free from all discommodities, and the Winters very flort, and in a manner none at all. They tooke occasion thereupon to returne into The Reigne of Siberia, & to fend word of thefe things into Mofema. Boru Gedmons was then Emperor there, 60 Bern Codenzate: who having reteined fuch good ridings, forthwith commanded the Governour of Sheria, that with all speed hee should cause a Citie to bee builded there. The Governour obeyed, and there was a Castle builded upon his commandement, with certaine houses adiogned; so that now it

is a large Citie. The name thereof is Tooma, because they understood, that a great multitude of Tartars in times pait were feated there, of whom this Citie tooke that name for the pleifant. The Cide neffe of the fituation thereof. And it is reported that their Tartari had at that time a King. whose name was Alim: Whereby it came to passe, that the Citie which was first builded, held Tarker King, out many affaults of fundry people that dwelt in those Champion Countreyes. And now this Citie is so mightie, that in procede of time, some reasonable great Kingdome is likely to grow

Furthermore, betweene this Castle of Noxinscoi, and the Citie Tooma, and Siberia, the Moscontest daily doe difcouer many people dwelling in the In-land parts, fome of whom call them-In felues Offachies, and now are growne into one bodie with the Tartars, Samoteds, and Ruffes, li- Offachiesa uing friendly together; they have many Kings among them, almost like vinto the Indians (I Pcople. speake of the pettie Kings, not of the greater Kings of India.) And to bee briefe, the Moscourtes have proceeded to farre into that mayne Land, that we have just cause to marriell thereat. Mores ouer, there are many Caltles and Townes betweene the Riners of Obrand Treis, builded almost at the same time when Tobolfon was, and are now proper Townes: whose Inhabitants are Mos. counters, Tartars, and Samoreds of their kind, which we call, The same Samoteds, in scipe of of those which are altogether wild.

And the first of the Townesis Tara : from which place it is neere ten dayes sourney between lorgoetum. Obiand Triis. Then forgoetum, builded about fifteene yeares patt. Befobia, and Mangarfoifesi. Befobia. 20 gored, both of them builded about lorgoetum toward the South. The Inhabitants that dwell on Manganfaifelle the west side of the River Obi , seeke daily to discover more and more. On this side of Obi are Nation and feated the Civies Tobolfea, Siberia, Berefaia, and certaine others, builded upon certaine Rivers : Toma beyond and more are builded dairy. Beyond Ob are Narins, Tooms, and divers other Cities, the Inhabi. Obi. tants whereof infreed of Horfes vf. Reyne Deere, or exceeding fwift Dogs, which they fatten Reyne Deere with diners kinds of fishes, and especially with Thornebacks; because they thinke they be made swift Dogs the stronger with that kinde of food, lorgoetam, whereof I spake before, is builded in an Hand vied instead of of the River Obi.

Alfo about Narim as men travaile toward the East, they maete with the River Telea: on the fed with banke whereof they have builded a Castle, named Composition The gartison Souldiers of which Fisher. 30 Cattle, together with the Inhabitants of Narm, about Maen yeeres past, were commanded by the East bethe Gouernoor of Siberia to travell East, and diligently to learch what vinknowne Nations road Obia dwelt in those parts. Therefore travelling through certaine wast Deferts, for the space of tenne Comer lies weekes or there abouts, palling in the way through many faite Countreys, many Woods, and Caffles Rivers, at length they espied certaine Cottages set up in the fields, and certaine Hords or travell East-Companies of people. But because they had Samoieds and Tartars for their guides, which were ward from Obi acquainted with those places, they were not afraid. The people came vnto them reverently, wherein the and with humble behaulour, and fignified by the Samoleds and Tartars, that they were called Tingocfies were Tingoes, and that their dwelling was upon the banke of the great River Iemsce, which they faid first discourdid ipring from the South South-east, but that they knew not the head thereof. These people Timeses a peo-40 were deformed with swellings under their throats, and in their speech they thratled like ple dwelling Turkie-cocks. Their language teemed not much to differ from the Samoieds, which also vider in Companies flood many of their words.

Ienifee being a River farte bigger then Obi, hath high mountaines on the East, among which The Impeter are some that cast out are and brimstone. The Countrey is plaine to the West, and exceeding deformed fercile, stored with plants, flowers, and trees of divers kinds. Also many strange fruits do grow with swellings therein, and there is great abundance of rare Fowles. Iemifce in the tpring overfloweth the vader their fields about feuentie leagues, in like manner as they report with one, as Nilus doth Egipt, Where throats: a difwith the Tingoes being well acquainted, doe keepe beyond the River, and in the mountaines, drinkers of untill it decrease, and then returne, and bring downe their heards of Cattell into the plaines.

50 The Togoef being a very gentle people, by the perswasion of the Sommeds, without delay Mountaines fubmitted themselves to the Lime Governours which they obeyed, whom they reverenced as a on the East kind of Gods. But what God they worship, or with what rites, it is vincertaine, neither as yet cashing out fire can bee knowne, the Moscowites being negligent fearchers into fuch things.

Neither hereaf er will I maruell, though the Streight of Waggats bee flopped up to the The ouesflow-North-east, with such huge Mountaines of Ice, since the Rivers Obs and Ienisce, and very many ing of tenisce more, whose names are not yet knowne, powre out so huge a quantitie thereof, that in a man. in the springs more, whose names are not yet knowne, powre out to huge a quantitie thereor, that in a mail.

as it may be nerit is incredible. For it commeth to passe in the beginning of the spring, that in places neere from melted. vnto the Sea, the Ice through the excessive thicknesse and multitude thereof, doth carrie downe Snows whole woods before it. And without doubt this is the cause, that about the shoares of Reason why. 60 the Streight of Waygats, fo great abundance of floting wood is every where feene. And where- "agents is flogas in that Streight neere vnto Nova Zembla, it is extreame cold, it is no maruell, if in regard of pid with Ice. the narrownesse of the Streight, so huge heapes of Ice are gathered and frozen together, that in tabous these the end they grow to fixtie, or at leaft to fiftie fathoms thicknesse, as this present yeare (1612) in the Streight

Tara 2 Towne

ypon the great

they measured the same , which at the cost of Ifage Lamer went thither in a small Barke , in of Waygots.

The fi fi voyage Eastward

dwe:l toward

uct lenike.

the South

Tartars, as be-

The fecond

voyage? East beyond

Gertaine per

the River

Isnifce.

ple taken.

Belis.

The River

The descripti-

on of the peo.

pledwelling

vpon the Ri-

of the ÉaG'

both Tartars

and Chinois.

age beyond

Ienifce Eaft.

The sowling

haps in the

North parts

Hor.es in Pig-

with fquare

They came mot home rill

Autumne.

The plefante

Countrey in

Aprilland

aboue it.

feene.

attempt the fame , valefle they take another courle in the businesse. But let vs returne to our runti-ermore, those whom I mentioned before, undertooke a long Journey beyond the Riner Ienifee Eastward, and were somewhat afraid to turne to the South, taking with them cerbeyond th Ritaine Tingoesses, by whom they were informed, that many Nations dwelt toward the South, which differed much from them, whole Kings were most commonly in warre one with another. Many Nations But having travelled certaine dayes to no great purpole, at length they returned home; Yet before their returne they gave order to the Timgosfier, to learch those Countreys more thorowly; 10 who promife that they would doe so : And they renewed the league which formerly they had warre one with ware one with make with the Mofemites. The Mofemites at their departure, left diners of their people in are the Zagatay those pares, and alio certaine Samoieds and Tarters their confederates, after they had bellowed fome small gifts among the Tingoefies.

fore in Goes is The yeere following, the Tinguesses sent divers of their owne people Eastward : who trauelling somewhat farther then they had done before, at length found another mightie River, somewhat lesser then lessifee, but as swift as it : And following the course thereof some few dayes, they lighted upon certaine people whom they tocke, being swifter a foot then they: Burthey could not vinderstand their language, saving that by certaine signes and words of the Salmages, which often repeated on on, they coniectured that on the other fide of the Riner, they 20 heard it often thunder. They added also, that they had often heard the noyse of men in those parts: And pointing to the River with their fingers, they often repeated the word Pifids: whereby the Tingaeffes gathered, that that should bee the name of the River; but by the voyces om om, the Moscomies did afterward gather, that they were knollings of Bells. The Tingorfies at their returne from thence, carried with them divers of the people of that Countrey, which died all by the way, either for feare, or through change of ayre. The Tingoe fies were verie forrie for their deaths. For at their returne they : firmed, that they were men of good vnderstanding, well let, with small eyes; flat faced, browne colour, and enclining to tawnic,

When the Moscouitan wnderstood these things by the Samoins, which returned into Siberia out of the Country, of the Ingessies, etcliones they were flired up with a great defire to learch 30 out the farther parts of that Countrey, wherefore they became futors to the Gouernour, that they might bee fent thither with some others soyned with them. Hee presently yeelded to their request, granting vnto them a certaine companie of Souldiers, and enioyned them curiously to fearch out all things, and to take with them Tingosfies, Samoinds, and Tartars. So beeing about The third voy-Guen hundred men, they passed the Riner Obi, and came to the Riner Senifes, through the countreys of the Samoieds and Tingoefies: And paffing the River, they marched forth Eastward. hauing the Tingeofies for their guides : which did not onely serve them as guides, but also plentifully prouided all the company with victuals, taking with wonderfull dexteritie, Fowles, Goats, Reyne Deere, and such like wilde beafts : as also no small quantitie of fish out of the Rivers which they met in the way. Having travailed as farre as the River Pofids, they pitched their 40 Tents on the banks thereof, with purpose to stay there till it were passable, the Ice being shortby to breake vp. because the spring was at hand, at which time they came thither, yet they durif not passe one the Riner Passe; having now plainly heard the sound, whereof they were aduertised before: which they certainly judged to bee nothing else but the towling of Brazen Bells; and when the wind blew from the farther fide of Pifide, they fometimes heard the noyfe of brazen

Bells; of men and horses. Moreouer they saw certayne sayles, though but a few; whereby they coniectured that they were vellels, which sayled downe the streame. They sayd further, that the fayles were square, like the Indian sayles, as wee suppose. But seeing no people at all on that China, and perfide of the Riner where they remained, after they had staied there a certaine space, and had perceited that in the spring time the River did greatly swell (which neverthelesse they can hardly 50 affirme for a certaintie, lince the shoare is high on both sides: ) At length by very great journeys, and yet not before Autumne they returned home to Siberia; reporting, and that woon their Veffels fayling oathes, That in the moneths of Aprill and May, they were very much delighted with the exceeding faire shew of that Countrey; And that they had seene therein many rare Plants, Flowers, Fruits, Trees, Fowles, and wild Beafts. But the Mojcoures are nothing curious in fuch things, as men that feeke after nothing but gaine, in all things elfe very negligent and rude.

These newes being brought to the Court of Mosconia, the Emperour Boris, and the Noblemen that were with him, much wondering thereat, and inflamed with a great defire to fearch out exactly all particulars, refolued the yeere next enfuing, to fend Ambaffadours thither, which should carrie presents with them, and should take Tarios, Samoieds, and Tingoefies in their com- 60 panie. And they were enioyned to fearch out the further fide of the Ruer Pifide, and to make a league of friendship with the Kings if they foundary, and set downe in writing all things that they could obletue by the way, and should make report of them most exactly. But these things did not take effect, because of the breaking out of the civill warres, among the Moscowies in the

I am of opinion, that in this countrey is the beginning, and the bounds of the Kingdome of The opinion of Catais, which bordereth vpen China, Yet I feare the Moscouites will lose their labour, if they the Author of

there was a voyage made into time parts, many inhabitants of outside being employed in the fame, who pathing our the River lenge, tradelet flitcher on foot; thurs of whom thed by the Voyage to the River P fida. way, being not accustomed to hardnesse. These also found many things agreeable to the relati- The towling of on of the former. And sheylikewife did oftentimes have size towningsnot brazen Bells. But Brazen Bells. on of the former. And days are they durft not patie the River: But they stayed awhile in casting out Mountaynes the Mountains, out of which they law oftentimes flames of fire alcend; & they brought thence flames of fire the Mountains, our or winding law of thorch-fidure; for hardome half-shakes food-or distalled amount of the Vego of the fidure of the Vego of the to the River fpring; and to coaff the fame continually sill they came to the Raucof lange; wherein the Amuldatterward faile certaine dayed discharging is felfe (as heothoughe) into she de le ferie others likewife to travell over Land : giving commandement to both of them before they went? Tu the Land-men, than they should flare by the Rivers fide vntill the Bootes arrobd; and that if best they did not arrive there then after one years they should returne.) To them that were in the

Boated, over whom he made one Lucas Captayne, he gave in charges diligently to diffeour the Lucas Captain Coaff and what focuer the teon was worthy to bee observed. Their slid as they we attend what of the Dif. o. And the Marmers arrining at the mouth of the River senife, met with carray meiorathem which unichy search traudied ouer Land, which were lent before in Boats and Skiffds downe the Raier. a. .. M 1500 120 Inches journey, they found all things in a manner to fall out as the Government and fore redd; But Lukas being dead by und way, and some others, they chought is the best confession borts of the Communica to retainentheilame way that they came : And when they came home into Sites friet they lectured write there ouernour the whole stickelle of show journey a which saufed the fishe to be lent was the Emperour And this Relation is layed y pamong the Treatines of Most comis would she fe Warten beerendish and then, as it is thought, it fools ber examined. But wee

and he reported, that he was traus thorn in your of our a Santon rous and hovedestar Morgouer, the Rules Twe falleth into the River of Obi, pringing soit feemeth, into of planes Twe Where he meere voto the Raues lowife, and out of a great Wood in those parter out of which Wood and left into obi the River formethatio to bene his Foundayne not farrefrom the River Two and sallech into the The River Foundation River of lenice. So that even from Obi they travell by water along the Coast of the Samoieds, into lenice and passing only two leagues over Lands, they meet with the River Torgatie, downe which An Ones hall with the streame they fall into the River lenifee. And this is a very easie way, and lately found of two leagues out by the Samoieds, and the Tingoofiel.

feare that by this time it is perilled, which if it belo, truly it is much co be lained ed, in regard

20 chat they have found to many rare and fundry. Hands, Biners, Fowlers, and wild hearts, and shad

Doubtleffe (it is to be lamented) that the Hollanders have not had good fucceffe in passing the 40 Streight of Way-gars; but furely they know not the right way to attempt the fame. For if they attempt it by thippes, though it were an hundred times, it would hardly once take effect. But if they would throughly discouer these Countreves, then they should stay two or three yeares about Petfora and Way-gats, where they should not want good Hauens, nor Victu- North-cast alls : and from theire they should fend out some with small Boares to district the first parts. parts, by the very example of the Refer, whose Friendship is they would process with Nose themselves, they should easily first Guides and Pilots; and so at length at their Coasts would throughly bee discourred. ther transfer institution reds 💱

Doubtleffe goodly Countreyes would bee found out, and not only Hands or by the Marie Landalfo. Yet there is just cause to doubt, whether America above China joyne not with so fome of the three parts of the old World : As wee see Africa joyned waten Ala with a name row necke of Land spon the Redde Sea, And doubtlesse, this feemeth likely to bee true: For who can affirme, that they bee separated ! Sauing that they have found some things as the Writings of problane Authors; whereby it may be proceed, and bring many Arguments from thence. And though these parts bee not joyned together, yet they multiple disided with fome fmall Streight. To destruit a service of the first of the service o to a series of aim town a factor of aim to aim to

charlends.

Yestiles eine

eff.

Otake.

Geta K.::

eler in Geta

ber :302519

1 1.14

A remain of the

Youjey the

greater and leffe

Geta River.

A Note of the Travels of the Ruffes over Land, and by Water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint Nichot As to Pechora, to Obi, to Yeniffe, and to the River Geta, enew unto the Frontiers of Cataia; brought into England by Mafter logale of an innochous Mericke, the English Agent for Molco. and and on mic, and translated out of the Ruffe by Read

1990 news Charles and the CHARD FUNCTORY of Table modernibbens of

Mean and the Root of Makes to Perform, is a thousand Versite and the same is translied with Reyne Means of the State of th Qua of Mourais Reca, or the troubled Riner, patting this Ouer-hall, they enter into Belonia Ri-64, or the Greene River. From Zelena Reca, or the Greene River to Obs, is three Weekes rown ing, sunming downe with the Current; but with a faire wind it is no more but three dayer and Taes River and three nights learney. From Oh to Taci Caffe, is a Weekes rowing. From Tacs Caffe to the Raiser Temiffey vpous long Woodden Pattens through the Snow, is three Weekes travaile. Bire Trigosfe Rillien through the deepe Channell in the aboresfaid Veffels; called Coaches, is foure: Weekes 20 Interpretation transple. Diobrangeth them to a place; called Torran-hande Lamenia, that is, The The Saulafises. Wintering place of one called Torrashon, Haning transled to this Town house Zeimenia. they come out on the backe fide to a place called, The River of Tongsoft being a flonie of Rocky Fauer, which falketh into the River Tamifey. In that place line the Taggetie, and prophet the asine faith Land of Taggetie, and prophet the asine faith Land of Taggetie. Beyond them five a people called The Bentaffeer: And beyond the abuse the annual of a property of the theory. There is no per concerning Tenify the Great, and Tenify the Later of the theory of the theory of the theory of the theory of the Creat, and Tenify the Later of Tenify in the transfer of the theory of the Creat, which are a kind of Tenify in the Later of Tenify in the Creat o Summert tra- which are a kind of Passase. Also beyond the Languages is a superculed detay which was tra-uellion Time thinked by the Raffer of Passas, and Raffer of Passas. These men by report lived in the pure of Gods, fine preses. After which one of the Ruffe of Palien, named Wafe , returned into Seberie; 30 Vefish of and he reported, that he was transiling from Tanganfe to Gata a Sammer. Likewife, this find greater with Walfargoness, that a Samoid told him, that in Taniff, the greater with Vefish of a great him he kepts there, Some this drawner with the Rope, by a very great number of people that he could not with the Rope. athing red in the what people they were, neither whither they did intend to traunile with the faid Veffets. the contract of the contract of green and the contract of the Samueles intermedia An Ourt. hall

were energy and levely could of pure, these CHAP. VIII.

and Morege made to Pechora 1611. Written by WILLIAM It .. sall sono el Govacoon of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilet, for dry space on a reward hard yads . Difeonerse to Objects . I Manufit . . and the fact of the Maria

His detunesh of laprill we weighed Anchor as Blacke making the River of Thomes, I braship called the America websers of lamus Hodger was Matter, and fayling a lidage the Coafts of England, Teclulary, Newton, and Environes, on the elements of the next moneth of May, wee found our fellers in the latitude of T. degrees 40. minutes, il attention on but in

The twelfth, wee ranne fortie eight leagues North North-east, the wind being at South-east, and found our folios in the latitude of 73, degrees 42, minutes, and at 10 night wee had shouldings of Cherie Hand for wee were entoyated by our Commission to touch there, although it were three degrees to the North out of our way.

The timecounts, being Whit-funday it cleared up, and then we did fee Cherie Hand fix lengues East South-east from vs.

The fourteenth, being faire weather, we flood to the Northwards, thinking to have gone on shoare, but we could not for Ice, and labouring to Land on the South fide of the Iland, wee met with Ionas Poole about Eeuening in the Elizabeth , who came as then to the Hand , and was fet forth by the Right Worthipfull Company of our Ruffien Merchants, to discouer further Northward, from eightic degrees toward the North Pole. Then we flood to the Eastward, where wee found great store of Ice.

The fifteenth, we spent on the South-side of the Hand, in hope of the arrivall of the Marie Margant, which being a ship of nine score Tunnes , was fet forth very chargeably by the aforefaid Ruffiae Company, and had in her fixe Basker, being excellent Whale-killers of Saint Ison de Laz, for the killing of the Whale on the Coast of Greenland, in a Road called Croffe Road,

standing exceeding farre to the North, even in the latitude of 79. degrees and better. The same day at night, feeing that there we could doe no good, we determined to proceed on our Voyage for the River of Pechara: and Letters being given one to the other for Teltimoniall of our meeting in that place, we left Ionae Pooley, and directed our course to the Eastward.

The two and twentieth of May, we came to a small Hand, called Bigs Hole by Tapani Harbour. May. The three and twentieth, we arrived at the Ile of Kildin in Lappia.

The foure and twentieth, loftas Logan, which was appointed Factor for Pecbora, and my felfe Olena. with two more, went to Olena, and flayed there all the fine and twentieth, being Saturday, where wee found a flip of Tarmouth, whereof James Wright of Hull was Master, of whom we learned IO the proceeding of the Hollanders.

The feuenth of Iune, in the morning we had fight of the Coast of Lappia, a little short of Cape Iune. Comfort, and met with a thip of Amfterdam, by which we fent Letters to Mafter lobn Mericke Cape Comfort our English Agent, then Relident in Colmogro; and we had two Hogsheads of Beere of them.

The eight, we plyed to Cape Comfort, the wind at South-east. The ninth being Sunday, in the morning wee put off from the Coast of Lappia, to cross over the White Sea, to the Cape of Callinos corruptly, and commonly called Candinos. At noone we

paffed through some Ice, the weather being thicke and foggie. The eleuench, we plyed to the Cape of Callinos, passing through much Ice, the wind at North North-east. And therefore wee thought it better to goe to the Southward againe: and in the

20 Equening we came to an Anchor in ten fathomes. This night wee had a fore frome; the winde at North-eaft.

The twelfth, in the morning we weighed, and in weighing brake our Anchor: and then wee
They goen flood to the Southward, and came to an Anchor; and at night wee went on shoare for Wood, shoare. and Water, where was good flore of Drift Wood: And within a ledge of Rockes on the West-Ten Ledias of tide of Callinos there lay ten Lodias or Ruffe small shippes, some fourteene or fifteene Tunnes the Pinega bound biggeft (of a Towne called Pinega) all which were bound for Nona Zembla, to kill the Morfle: for Nona Zembla, with the men of which Fleete wee had some conference, and did see their Prouisions : which bla were Launces of their fashion, and Harping Irons; their Victuals were Salt-fish, Butter, Bacon, Meale, their Drinke Quaffe.

30 The fixteenth, in the morning wee weighed and flood our course for the Ile of Colgoiene, the wind being at South South-welt, and did find the Ice that was close to the shoare to bee open: but at night finding that we could not fayle our course for the Ice, we thought it better to stay, and so came to an Anchor.

The feuenteenth, wee weighed in the morning, and food along the shoare, which did lye South-east by East, and North-west by West. And in the after-moone, wee went on shoare with our shallon, and came to a River, which we called Hablages River, where wee did see certayne Samoieds, with their Deere: but when they perceived vs, they fled into the Land, carrying with them fuch things as in halte they could get together : but left most of their necessaries, as Bowes , Arrowes, long Speares, wanting Iron heads burnt at the epd, Harping Irons, Wimbles, 40 and Morfle-skinnes, lying hid, fome in one place, fome in another : which wee caused our men to

vncouer, and would not suffer them to take anything away ; only I tooke the Pizzell of a Morsse which they had lately killed; and Iofias Logan left a Knife, that they might not shunne vs hereafter. The same Ecuening we anchored and stayed all night.

The eighteenth, wee weighed, and at noone wee came to an Harbour; which, as wee thinke, A good Harwas the very fame where Mafter Stephen Barrow was in his Discourrie of Vaigatz, and None by Zembla, 1556, where there is twelve, or thirteene foot at high water voon the Barre, and Stephen Burton within fix or feuen fathomes. Also in this place were three Lodias of Pinega, which when they Three Lodias faw vs come in, rowed out, and at night returned, and some of their men came abourd of vs, and of Finese. told withat they could not paffe for Ice; and faid, that they were bound for Sharshai Gooba, or Sharshai Gooba, 50 Shar Bay to fish for certayne fishes; which they call Omitie, which are somewhat like a Shad, and which is the

The twentieth, lofiat Logan and my felfe went ouer to the Mayne, which was diffant two leagues, and came to a great River in 67. degrees and 40. minutes, where there had beene people : and there we faw foure or fine great white fishes swimming, which are foure or fine yards They land the long, and called by the Ruffes Belluga, whereof they make Oyle, whereof afterward we found Agreet Riger. at Pechora, great store to be spoyled.

The one and twentieth, we fent our men for Wood, for there was good frore of Flote-wood Flore-wood. as we had found all the Coast along ; but none growing.

The two and twentieth, in the morning we came ouer the Barre, the winde at South South-60 east, directing our course for the lie of Colgiene; and at noone wee passed through much Ice, which lay to thicke that wee could not fayle, but tooke in our fayles, and made fast our ship to a piece of Ice.

The three and twentieth, in the morning wee fet sayle, and plyed to the Wind-ward, the wind at South-east, with raine : and at night wee mored to a Cake of Ice.

Kıldız in Lappia

The foure and twentieth, in the morning we let fayle, and pyled to wind-ward, the windar South-weft to get cleere of the Ice; and at noone we observed and found our selues to be in 67. degrees 12, minutes, and in the after-noone we had fight of the Land againe, being four legues Aforesyde vp. to the Southwards of the aforefand Harbour; and finding the Tyde to fer very fore vpon the Aforeigney, to the Southwards of the automate values, and the Earthward, bearing through the Ice, and attiwelle at

The nue and twentieth, we loosed and fayled to the Eastward, till we found the Ice so thick, that we could not passe further: then we made fast to a piece of Ice: the wind at North North. east, thicke fogge, and some raine. The fix and twentieth, we set our fore top-sayle, the wind eart, enticke togge, and some rames, are to all the form of the following forms as: North North-eaft, blowing hard and thicke fogge; we flood fometimes one way, fometimes to another, as we could find the Ice open; and at noone we had fight of the shoare, being source fine leagues off, and the Ice lying to thicke, that we could make no meanes to get farther from the shoare: wherefore wee made fast to a great Cake of Ice. The seuen and twentieth, wee Lay still, the Ice lying very close, with thicke foggie weather: the wind at North North-west.

The eight and twentieth, in the morning it was cleere, and the Land did beare North by West fouen leagues off, and then we fet sayle, passing to the Eastward till noone: then we made fast to a piece of Ice, it being very foggie: the wind at West North-west. And the same day at eight in the after-moone wee loofed from the Ice, it being cleere, the wind at North-west. And

at mid-night we got cleere of the Ice, keeping our course East North-east.

William Courdangooth on Two Ruffe Croffes.

A despe Bay

Wood.

The nine and twentieth, at eight in the morning, we had light of Cape Swetines, the winde 20 at North North-west, with thicke foggie weather: At noone, finding the Ice to lye close to the shoare, we cast about to the Westward. And at eight in the Ecuening, wee came to an Anchor in tenne fathomes; and then I went on shoare, where there were two Russian Crosses: the Land was imooth, and full of fresh Ponds, being a kind of white Chalke Cliffes. At our commings. boord, we weighed and flood neerer to the shoare because of the Ice. The thertieth, in the morning the Ice came so extreamely upon vs, that we could not weigh;

for our men being catt from the Capstan, our Cable brake, and so wee lost an Anchor. Then feeing wee could not passe to the Eastward, wee stood to the Westward of Cape Smetimes, Cape Swelins; into the afore-fail deepe Bay in seuen fathomes : the wind at East North-east, cleere weather.

The first of July, we went on shoare to see if there were any thing to take notice of : but wee 30 Land againe. found nothing worth the going. For only we faw a wild Derre, and an House of Wood after An house of the Ruffe fathion, where people had beene. The second, likewise we rode still, and going againe on fh. are we did see the Ice all gone to the Eastward; and so came aboord. The third, at fixe in the morning we weighed, theiwind at East North-east, and plyed through some Ice : and at foure in the after-noone we got cleere of it; and at eight of the clocke wee came to an Anchor, it being calme and cleere weather: then I went on shoare, where we were first; and came abourd because of the great abundance of Muskitos or Gnats. At our comming having the windeat South-weit, we fet fayle and flood along the shoare,

Land the fixth A undince of Muskicos.

Ra Teratrhe

mouth of Pe-

the Brita of

the Rager of

They paffe o-

Pechar:

cho a

The fourth, we fayled along the shoare with faire weather, having the winde variable. The fifth, wee plyed to the Eastward, wind at North-east by East taire weather. The fixth, wee 40 plyed along the shoare, the wind at North by East. And in the after-noone wee passed through much Ice. The isuenth, we plyed through the Ice to the Eastward, the windest East Northeast, thicke and foggie. The eight, with cleere weather, the winde at North North-east, we plyed to the East ward; and at noone observed the Sanne having 69. degrees 40. minutes: At Equening we had fight of the Land to the Eastward of the River or Pecbera; and thinking to get into the shoare we could not for the shoald water.

The ninth, in the morning we flood backe to find the Barre or entrance of the River of Pe-Croffes found chora. And in the after-noone, feeing the Sand ouer the Ice, which was not broken off from the shoare, I went thither with my shallop, and going on shoare, we espeed three Crosses, and certayne Ruffes walking upon the Sand; who told vs, that that was the place that we defired : and 50 one of them came aboord our ship to bring vs ouer the Barre. But comming to should water, The depth of wee durst not trust his skill, but stood backe againe, and came to an Anchor in foure fathomes.

The teach, in the morning I went to found the Barre; where we had eleuen and tenne, and in one place but nine foot water. And comming aboord wee set sayle to come in. And in going ouer the Barre we were on ground; but, God be thanked, wee got well ouer, and came to an Anuerth. Barre, chor in fix fathomes.

and ride in fix

The eleuenth, the Ice brake off from the shoare, and came so fast vpon vs, that we could not shift fathoms water, from it, but were put on ground vpon a Sand; yet God be thanked without any harme. The fame day leaving our ship lying to, lofias Logan our Factor, my felfe, William Purfelque, being rowed in our Skiffe by fix of our Mariners, tooke our way toward the Towne oner a shoald Sea, which the 60 Pichera, ouer Ruffes cal, The Dry Sea: which may very well be so called. For on the starboard or West side going Diggs is freen up is a low dry Sand, and on the Larboord or East fide is all should water, as two, three, or four foote water. And feuen leagues within to the South-west is an Hand called Dolgoi, that is to lay, from the Barre The long lland, which you must keep on the Larboord or East fide, & then steer away South South-

welf, neere vpon twentie leagues, all in shoald water; and then you shall come to the fight of an high Land called The Boluan; which in the Ruffe Tongue tignineth, a Blocke: which you must The Boluan; or leaue on the Larboord, or East fide. And be fure to keepe the channell, which doth trend South- East bead land west, and South-west by West. By report of the Inhabitants the Riner hath two and seuen-

The twelfth, we passed over the Drie Sea, (which the Russes call in their Language, Suchoi trengeth Morie, ) to the mouth of the River Pechera: where we found many small Hands, some a mile, South wift. fome two miles in length, and so should water, that wee could not get to the shoure with our Shallop, but lay in her all night at an anchor, being vncertaine which way to take : and feeing to fo many entrances before vs, we could hit right at none. The thirteenth, in the morning wee An lland necre got to an Iland, at the very mouth of the River, where wee flayed all the day, having much the mouth of the River.

wind and fogge. The fourteenth, being Sunday, we fet fayle from the Hand, the Sea going very They find one high: and at noone we came by Gods direction, into one of the chiefest entrances of the River of the chiefest Pechora; and came to an house, where there were two and their families, who made vs the entrances of best entertaynment that they could, and gaue vs directions how to goe to the Towne.

The fifteenth, we came to a Sari or Ferme house of one of the principall men of the Towne; They come to who bid vs kindly welcome: and as the place and feafon affoorded, hee made vs good cheere.

A Ferme bould be lay there at this time, to take Duckes, Swanger Goeffe and other Foundation of a principall He lay there at this time, to take Duckes, Swannes, Geefe, and other Fowles: for then was man of the the time of the yeere. Their feathers they fell, and their bodies they falt for winter promition. Towns.

He also gaue vs a man to bring vs to the Towne.

The fixteenth, we came to the Towne of Pufforers, which flandeth vpon a Lake. There was The Towne is no Gentleman or Gouernour in the Towne at our arrivall! for he had deltroyed the Caftle, and called Puffe. fled away the last Winter. For certaine dayes wee could have no answer, whether wee might 30%. stay or no, all the chiefe men being abroad for their Winters promision. But the chiefe Customer Marphe, fending men to know their mindes, the three and twentieth day of the fame moneth of Iuly, we were embraced of them, and defired to stay, and they appointed vs an house to dwell in. Furthermore, they told vs that the River Pechera was more convenient for vs, then the River of Duyna: and that a great part of the goods, which come to Colmogro vpon Dwina. doe passe in one place or other by the River Pechera, which, they say, runneth through Siberia; and how much farther they themselves know not. The five and twentieth, in the morning, ha-

30 ning one of their Boats full with feathers, weedeparted from the Towne, taking our leaves of Siberia and fat-Iofias Logan, who stayed behind.

The fixe and twentieth, we came downe to the Bolues, where were went abourd of two Co. Two Coches ches of some fifteene tunnes a piece, bound for Monguezea. Here I went on shoare, and bought or Lodias, an airie of Slight-falcons, being very young. The feuen and twentieth, in the Ecuening wee Mousearte came aboord our thip, and the fame night tooke in the Feathers, and laded their Boat againe Hebuyeth two with Meale, fending her vp to the Towne by the Ruffes that brought her downe.

The eight and twerrieth, we got out our goods, which were appointed to be left at Pechora, The flocke of vnder the charge of Mafter Logan, and made ready our flip. The nine and twentieth, wee goods left in weighed anchor, and fell lower downer the wind North North and The thirtieth was gold Puffered. 40 weighed anchor, and fell lower downe, the wind North North-east. The thirtieth, wee rode fill, and in the after-noone two Lodias that were fifthing for Omulais, went out to Sea, the wind at North-well by Welt. The one and thirtieth, the wind being at Welt North-welf, there came in foure and twente fayles of Lodias or Coches, all bound for Magnances but the yeer being fare spent they gaue ouer their Yoyage, and went to the Towne of Pafactes, to winter. Out of one of the which Lodias we hired a man belonging to the Towne, to stay with william watd of Ob. Pursglone and Marmadake Wilson, by our goods, till the Lodia came, which we had hired. Which two were to winter with Malter Logan in the Countrey. The aforefaid foure and twentie Lodias were of Colmogro, Pinega, Mezen, and Puftozera.

The first of August, the wind at West, we weighed, and, God bee thanked, came safely over They safely the Barre of Pecbera. From thence wee directed our course for Noua Zembla: and at noone passethe Birre 50 we came to Ice: where having fayled many points of our Compaffe, at mid-night wee tooke in of Pethola. our sayles, and made fait to a piece of Ice; the weather being very thicke and toggie. The second being very cleere, and feeing no way to passe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to return; and because the yeere was to farre spent to go tor Cherie Hand, to see if it pleased God to give vs there any good tucceffe, for the bearing of the charges of this Voyage. So wee looked, and at eight in the Equening wee got cleere off the Ice, keeping our course by the edge of it, which did lie East by North, and East North-east. The third, at noone we had fight of Colgoiene Hand, Colgoiene Hand and tooke the latitude, being on the North fide of the Iland which was 69, degrees 20, minutes minutes minutes. and at night I went on shoare to see the Land, which was high clay ground : and I came where there was an airie of Slight-falcons: but they did flie all away faue one, which I tooke vp, and Falcons.

60 brought aboord. This Ile of Colgorene is but thirtie leagues from the Barre of Peebora. The fourth, we passed through some Ice, and at noone wee got cleere off it, and stood to the Northward, Colgoiene bearing South-west fixe leagues, the wind at East North-east. The fire, we had faire weather, the wind at East South-east, wee sayled two and thirtie leagues North

70 degrees 40. minures. 72. degrees 34

534

North-west, we observed, and found our selves in 70, degrees and 40 minutes. The fixt, the wind being at South South-well, we steered North North-west fortic leagues, and were in 72. degrees 34. minutes. The feuenth, the wind was variable, the weather faire : we steered North by Wett, eight and thirtie lesgues, and at noone had the latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes, And at eight in the Eenening we founded, and had eightie fathomes greene Oze. The eight, the wind at Weft, we fayled North twenty leagues: in the morning we founded, and had fenenty fathoms Oze: and at three in the afternoone, the wind comming North, wee cast about to the

The ninth, faire weather, we sayled thirteene leagues West, the wind at North. At noone we founded, and had an hundred and twentie fathomes, greene flime. The tenth, the wind va- 10 riable, with fogge and raine: wee fleered West North-weit fine and twentie leagues: and at 74, degrees 57. moone we observed, and had the latitude of 74. degrees 57. minutes. The eleventh, was thicke foggie weather; wee layled foure and twentie leagues West: and at eight in the Ecuening wee founded, and had ninety fathomes, foft Oze. The thirteenth, at noone wee had fight of Cherie Hand, being within a mile of it, before we did see it : and the same Benening wee got into the Cone, and mored our ship. Here we stayed twelue dayes, taking what it pleased God to send,

Cherie Hand.

The fixe and twentieth of August, we left the Iland, because the time of the yeere was fare spent, and returned for England, where (blessed be God) we safely arrived in Saint Catharines Poole, in the Riner of Thames, on Saturday being Saint Masthews day, and the one and twen- 20

30. Lodiar.

There were in the Hauen of the River Pechora, at our being there, about thirtie Lodias, or small Roffs thips , having ten, twelve, fourteene , and fixteene men in each of them : which purposed to have gone, some to Nona Zembla, some to Taffe gorodoe, and some to other places in Mongamfey, to the East of the River Ob. Their Louiss for the most part, were of Ufing, Cal. moero, Pmega, Mezen, and Pecbora.

50. Cayucks or

Allo, we that went up to the Towne, found about fiftle Cayucks, or Boats of foure, five, fix, filling Boass, and feven tunnes a piece, fifthing in the River of Pechers for Salmons, and other kinds of fill; hauring the most of which Cayueks come from the great Towns of Using, and the Towns thereunto adioyning, by the River Ing, through the Land into the River Pechera, and at the Bolmen, at the Riv 30 uers mouth they tooke most part of their Salmon,

## CHAP. IX.

A Letter of RICHARD FINCH to the Right Worshipfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Ruffia : touching the former Voyage, and other observations.



Sa Ight Worshipfull, my dutie remembred vnto you, with prayer to God for the preservation of your healths and prosperous successe in all your worthie affaires. My last Letters vnto you were from Typani in Lapland, by Thomas Hare-castle of Hull, dated the foure and twentieth of May, 1611. The other, the nine and twentieth of May from Kyldin neere Camen, by a thip of Hamburg : which forefaid Letters were directed to our Gouernour, the right Worthipfull Sir Thomas

Two Croffes flanding on the land. Pinega.

Smith, Knight. May it now please you further to understand, That the ninth day of July, wee They arrive in came to the mouth of the Riner of Pechora, which the Ruffes call Pechorikoi Zanoros with our 50 the Fortor Pe. ship. And being entred into the aforesaid Harbour, it was full of Ice, and hard to finde : for we found no mayne Land, faue a small Sound behind the Ice. And labouring to and fro along the fame, we fent William Gourdon in our Shallop manned to the shoare : who, as soone as they were landed, espied two Croffes standing on the sand : and presently our men espied three men comming toward them. These men belonged to three Boats of Pinega, which Boats had beene in our companie not long before, at a place called by them, Promoja, by vs, Observe, but by other Writers, Mershouitz. One of these Russes came on board of our ship, and told vs, that wee could goe no farther with our fhip, then the place, that their Veffels, called Conder, rid in; and that to the Towne we must goe in small Veffels; giuing vs directions to layle by, for the better finding of the Towne. After our getting ouer the Barre of the Perborshei Zamoret, and that we 60 were come to an anchor, we rode in great danger by the abundance of Ice, and the strong tide Ship endange-both of the ebbe and floud, which droue the fame to forcibly againft our hip. For, the eleventh of July, lying in foure fathomes water, a piece of an Iland of Ice, fer with Juch a power against our ship, that it droue vs out of our riding into eight foot and an halfe, and nine foot water.

The eleventh of July, Master losias Logan , William Gourdon , and William Pursglone, with our Shallop went up to the Towne of Pechera, taking directions of the Ruffes for the finding of the same. Neuerthelesse, two dayes after their departure from our ship, they had mistaken their way, if by chance they had not met with a small Russe Boat, in which were Russes that directed them. Being about thirty Verits from the Towne, they came to the house of one Valiti Deadoolone, who that this present is one of the chiefest Customers : by which Customers the Towne of Pechora is now gouerned, fince there was no Gentleman fent from the Mofco. This man gaue them good entertaynment, and fent vp with them a man of his owne, fearing that the people would bee amazed at our mens fudden and vnexpected comming. Yet as foone as they Our men ar-

10 espied our people, they were all exceedingly afraid. Divers of them with their women fled in-rive at Towne espied our people, they were all exceedingly atraid. Divers of them with their women neu into the Woods, until that one of the chiefest Customers had fent for them other Customers, who of Peebwa.

People atraid at that time were all out of Towne. But being met together, Master Logan shewed them the of the Entitle. Priniledges, of feuerall of their Emperours granted to your Worships. After the perusing of which, with the good report given of Maiter Mericke, your Agent, and our Nation by one of Colmogro, with whom Mafter Logan was acquainted; the Townel-men were well fatisfied: and appointed our people an House. And many of them sent Bread, Pies, Ducks, Fish, and such like vnto them, entertayning them very well, according to the fashion of the Countrey, with continual admiration how they found the Towne.

Touching the Inhabitants, there is no doubt, but that they will be glad of our trading thi-20 ther. Neuerthelesse, by that which I have heard and perceived, it is very likely, that the same will be distastfull to the Merchants of the Countrey, and others that travell thither in the Winter time, out of many parts of Russia: and also, to them that trade in the Summer time, by Sea to Mongofey, and through the River of Peoza in Cayucks to Perm, Ouft-zilme, and Pechora.

The seven and twentieth of July, our Shallop with a small Ruffe Boat , returned to our ship from Pechora Towne, departing from the fame the Thursday before, being the flue and twentieth of Iuly, in our foresaid Shallop, and Russe Boat, were sent downe by Iosias Logan, flue and fortie bags of white Partridges feathers, and an hundred and feuentie white Foxe skinnes. These White Par-Feathers and Foxe skinnes, are bought of a Colmogro man, to be payd for the lame in Ruffle by Fraxes. Mafter Mericke; and, as I vnderstand, not so cheape as others doe buy there of the Fowlers 30 themselves. But if two men were left, one at Pecbora, another at Ouft-zilme, and Perm, with ready money and a little commodities, much good might be done in the Winter time by buying

of Sables, Beuers, Beuers wombs, Squerrils, Foxe skinnes white and dunne, Losh hides, and Deere skinnes. And for the transportation of your goods to Pechora, or bringing of your goods from Pechora; the fame may be done from Arch-angel vpon the Dayna to Mezen, and from

Mexen to Pechora, Ouft-zilme, and Perm, both by Winter ouer Land, and in Summer through fresh water Riuers, or alongst the shoare with speed, and with a little charge : as by the manner of their ordinary travell appeareth, as it hath beene of a trueth delivered mee, from the mouthes of men of long experience. The last of August, came into Pechorikoi Zameret, or the Hauen of Pechora, fixe and twentie The Fleet of 40 Lodies or Boars, which was the Fleet let out from Ouffing, Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen : all of Mengely of them being bound for Mangafer: but having been croffed with contrary winds, & the time of the Or Mangal yeere being frent, they gaue ouer their intended Voyage; purposing with the next faire wind, to sayle to the Towne of *Peebora*, there to lay vp their Lodias and commodities till the next

Spring, and themselues with their small Boats or Wherries to goe home, passing from thence up the River of Peoza, which they told me they could eafily doe in a moneths time. As foone From Pechera as this Fleet of Lodias was come to an anchor, many of them came abourd of our thip, wondring to colmogra is a to fee a ship there. They demanded of me, how wee came thither, and what the intent of our monethstrauch comming was : and whither we purposed to sayle from thence. Among these were some which by Ruer.

feemed to be Merchants , who asked to buy Lifts , remnants of Cloth, Cap-clothes, Aqua vita, 50 especially, they asked for small Pewter D. shes, which I understand to be a commoditie fold by SmallPewter them to the Samoyeds, at a great rate. I answered them, that the goods which wee had brought, Diffee, a great were part already at Pechora, and the reft was to be transported thither, as soone as the Vessell came that was hired to carrie the same vp : so that, if any of them were minded to buy of our commodities, they might have it of one of our Countrey-men there. After which, two or three of them demanded of me, whether I would buy any Sables, or Squerrils: which was but a brag. At this time many of them being on board together, some of them were in primate talke, which was my chance to ouer-heare, and was as followeth : If these Neamchines, or Strangers refore to these places, it will be an occasion in short time to make vs to be without Bread. The like speeches I heard a little before, of two men of Pinega; and of an old man remayning in 60 Pechera, that came downe to our ship with the Feathers.

Touching the goods left with William Purselone, Marmaduke Wilson, and the Russe, in regard the same lay in no good place, we were desirous to have hired one of their Ruffe Boats, to have carried the same to the Towneat a reasonable rate; the rather because it was on their way, and their Boats were not overladen: which they with two Boats might have done with eafe: yet

they would not, valetie wee would give them thirtie or fine and twentie Rubbels at the leaft, and that with Condition, that they might distribute into each Boate somewhat thereof. Therefore understanding their unreasonable demand, having a Boate already hyred, wee utterly refused to talke with them any further thereof: especially when they were minded to diuide the goods into all the fixe and twentie Lodias or Boates : which had beene a tricke to

August 1. Huge Ice.

535

The first of August, leaving Master Issas Logan, William Pursulous, and Marmadake Walson, at Pechora, wee sayled ouer the Barre of Pechora in Camoros, directing our course for Nona Zembla, till that wee had runne so farre, and were so inclosed in huge Ice, that in a Day and a Night we could goe neither backward nor forward: And finding no meanes to proceed on our intended Voyage for Nona Zembia, wee cleared our felues out of that place. Truth it is, that this hath beene an hard Summer to all the Rufes, both to them which were bound for Mangezes, and Omeli Filbring: those that went to kill Morses, and fishing of a certayne Fish called Omeli. From the foresayd place wee fet our course for Cherie Hand, intending to meete with the He of Colgoine, and Willoughbies Land. With Colgoiene wee met, but we missed of the other. The seventh of Augus,

William Gow don and I with our Shallop went on shoate. This Coloriene, is a very long and broad

Iland with many Vallies in it. On the same are many Geele, which the Russes vie to take with

Nets in the time of the yeere, before they becouer fledge. In this Iland feemeth to bee flore of

Hawkes. Heere William Gowrdon and our Cooper, caught two Hawkes, whereof one was spoy-

led in the taking, the other remayneth aline.

They land on Geefe.

Two Hawkes

Cherie Lland, See fup.c.2.

The thirteenth of August, wee arrived at Cherie Hand, standing in 74. degrees and odde mia 20 nutes, and Anchored in the South Coue, finding the same very cleare of Ice. And presently after our Ship was at an Anchor, lames Vadin the Master, Willian Gonrdon, and I, went on shoare on the Coue to looke for Morfes. Here we found a certayne Note, which was left thereby Thomas Edge: the effect of which was: That he arrived there with three Shalops from Greenland, and that there he had found the Ship called the Elizabeth, and that hee was gone in her to Greenland the foure and twentieth of July, hoping to finde the goods which hee had left there : and that hee did purpose to returne againe to Cherie Iland with as much speed as could be made. Subscribed:

At our comming to the Iland, wee had three or foure dayes together very fine weather : in which time came in reasonable ftore of Morfes, both at the South Coue and at the North-fide: 30 and wee were in good hope we should have made a fauing Voyage. Neuerchelesse, though there Morfes feare. were store of Beasts, yet by no meanes would they goe on those beaches and places, that formerly they have beene killed on. But fortie or fiftie of them together, went into little holes within the Rocke, which were so little, steepe and slipperie, that as soone as wee did approach towards them, they would tumble all into the Sea. The like whereof by the Masters and William Gongdons report, was neuer done. For lying as they did, and being so shey as they were, it was not possible to doe any good voon them. Moreover, to get them off these foresaid Rockes to make them come on shoare upon their accustomed places, the Master and our men on both sides of the Hand went to drive them away, yet they would not. But by often driving of them out of their 40 holes, we killed as many as wee could. In the end the weather growing stormie and cold, there were few or none of them left. Wherefore seeing all hope of good to be done of them to be past, wee departed from thence the fixe and twenneth of August 1611 for England. We did not perceine any Ship of Hull to have beene there this Summer.

August 26.

Hauing touched the chiefest points of our Voyage, I thinke it meete to set downe somewhat of the State, Commodities, and Trade of Pechora, Ouft Zilma, and Parmia.

Rechora.

Ousting.

The Towne of Pechora is imall, having three Churches in it : and the most part of the people are poore. In the Spring and a great part of the Summer, they live by catching of Partridges, Geefe, Duckes, and Swannes, of which they every Summer take a great number. The flesh of these Fowles they salt, and line of them the most part of the Winter. But the feathers of the said Fowle they gather together, and fell to the men of Colmogro, Oufling, and others, that come e- 10 uerie yeere ont of Ruffia to buy the same : Some of them give a little money before hand to the Fowlers. Which must be done with great care as the times are now. One Menfed a mans fonne of Pechora, whose Father is a man of great dealings, told mee, That they fold white Partridge feathers to men of Colmogro for readie money, at fine Altines the Poul, and Duckes feathers (among which was Downe) they fold now for feuen or eight Altines the Poud. Likewise hee told me that in former times the Ruffes that vied to trade thither, before the people of the Countrey knew what Commodities were worth, had commonly a Poud of Partridge feathers for of their Pence, two pence of their money, and a peece of cake Sope worth at Colmegre ten pence of their money. So that the chiefest Commoditie and best cheape is Feathers, being bought at Pechera with readie Ruffe money of the Fowlers themselves, and not of the Ligers there, that vie to fell them 60 A great filhing to vs at Archangel on the River of Duyna.

weight. An Alteen is fine

A Poud is 37.

Moreouer one hundred English miles on this fide of the Towne of Pechora, is a place called by furiof August, them the Boluano, where they take great store of Salmons. But it is alwayes the first of August

before they begin to cast out their Nets. And oftentimes toward the later part of the Summer. they have such store, that they are sold ordinarily for foure-pencea Fish, and sometimes for a penie a Fish of their money. Yea, in a plentifull yeere, I haue beene told, one may buy whole draughts of Salmons for a very small summe of money. The Salmons heere are fat : three Fishes weighing commonly a Powd and no more. The best fort of the people of Pechora, vie to preferue a great quantitie of their Salmon with a little falt. For they falt eightie, or one hundred Fishes with a Powd of Salt and many times in plentiful yeres, much Fish is cast away for want of falt: which they are loath to bestow when Salt is deare.

CHAP.9. Trauelling Deere. Ruffe Merchants. Commodities, Provifions.

This Salmon is carryed by the Pechora men to Mozen in Sleds, drawne with Reyne Deere-Ic But if they be minded to carrie the faid Fish from Mezen to Colmogro, then they carrie the same from thence with Sleds drawne with Horses.

Also many men of Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen, buy Salmons at Pechora, and carrie it in the Winter time to Mezen, to which place they pay from Pechora for the hyer of a Sled and a Reyne Deere, ordinarily ten Altines, being twelve dayes journey : and from Mezen to Colmogro, being fixe dayes journey, they pay foure-pence a Powd at the most. The Deere that trauell from Pechora to Mezen, will not draw about feuen Powd weight. This way is trauelled every Winter twice. The first is fixe or eight weekes before Christmaste. And the second time is two or three weekes before Shrouetide : which bee the times that they very diligently observe to fell the Salmon in. Most part of the men of Pechora, have every one his owne Deere to travell with. And 20 fome particular men of the better fort haue twentie or thirtie Deere, which they let out to hyer Trauelling in the Winter time; and in the Summer time they put them foorth to the Samoreds to keepe, Deere, Also when the Winter way is set and beaten, many Merchants and others come out of Russia to buy Sables, Beuers, Beuers wombes, Squirrels, blacke, white and dunne Foxes, of which in the Winter time is flore, brought thither by the Samoieds round about those parts : which Trading is in the Wintertime and not elfe. The chiefest Ruffe Merchants or Furriers that vie their

parts, I have beene told, are the Obleazoues, the Sheperkins, and the Yeadomskoies. The Com-

modities carryed by them, are red, and yellow Cloathes; but chiefly Ruffe money, with which they buy Commodities there of the Russes, as well as that which they buy of the Samoieds

The Commodities carryed from Volochda, Oasling, Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen, to Pechora and Mongozei, are Meale, Bacon, Butter, Ote-meale, Tolockno, and Salt, with some small quantitle of Yeasts and tanned Leather, with some Cloath, and other of our Commodities. These Commodities at Mongozei are fold at great rates. But at Pechora, Commodities are fold sometimes deare and sometimes chèape, in respect of profit. For if the Fleet, being at least thirtie Boates that fet out every Summer for Mongozey, laden with thele Provisions and Commodities aforesaid, bee croffed with contrarie windes; and that by the latenesse of the yeere they cannot reach to Mongozer, but are constrayned to leave the same and come for Pechora, (as this yeere 1611, they were:) Then commonly Meale, Bacon, and such like Commodities with them are not deare. For by report a little quantitie of Meale doth serue all those parts. For the greater Fishia stead part of them live of fresh Fish fod and dryed in stead of Bread, of which Fish they have plentie, of Bread. Likewise, there vieth not to goe from Colmogro with these Prouisions, about two Boates in a Summer directly to the Towne of Pechora: especially fince the Towne was burnt, and that there

was no Gouernour in the same.

Also by the Mongozey men it did appeare, that there was no likelihood for them to veter that quantitie of Commodities at Pechora, at any rate. For it there had, there would not have resolved to lay vp their goods in Ware-houses till the next Spring, and then to proceed for Mongozer.

Further from the Towne of Pechora, is a place called by the Ruffes, Ouff Zilma. This is, by Ouf Zilma. the description given vnto me in distance from Pechora, as Oussing is from Colmagno: and is likewife to bee trauelled by water against the streame : And in Winter time it is to bee trauelled in 50 Sleds drawne with Reyne Deere. In this place of Onft Zilma, is great store of Squirrels, Beuers, and Beuers wombes, Foxe skinnes white and dunne, and other Furres, but chiefly Squirrels, of which is great store by all mens report, that I have talked with all. So that having a man in the Winter time at this place, a good quantitie of Squirrels and other Furres, may bee provided at a reasonable rate. Moreouer, heere are to be bought Losh-hydes, and Deere-skinnes, which in the Winter time are brought to this Towne of Ouf Zilma from Perm, which is not farre from thence. But to buy Losh-hydes and Deere-skinnes, the best course is to goe from Oust Zilma to Perm, and to buy them there, where one should bee sure to have Chorse, and at a farre better Perm, rate. Also those that wie to come out of Ruffis in the Winter time to Perso, to buy these foresaid Hydes stoward the later part of Winter carrie all these Hydes by Sleds, some two or three dayes 60 Iourney from Perm to the fide of a certayne River, neere vnto which is a small Towne or Village; whereas foone as the Ice is gone, they have small Dorshenicks and Floates, on which they

lade their Hydes, and being out of this River, they enter into Disyna, and transport them to Colmogro and Archangell. Likewise being at Pechora, Oust Zilma, or any of those parts, there is in the Winter time to

ı.

bee had among the Samoyeds, Elephants teeth, which they fell in pieces according as they get tecth, whence, it, and not by weight. And I have beene told, they fell the same at a very small rate. It is called in Ruffe, Mamanta Kaoft. Thus much may suffice at this time to bee spoken of Pechora, Ouffe

Now I will fet downe as I have beene enformed by divers Ruffes, the Names of the chiefest places which they vie to fayle vnto from Slobodes, an Hauen fo called in the Province of Me. zen, to the Pechorshoie Zauorot, orthe Hauen of the River of Pechora, and the Diffances to each place : with a Direction how to layle from Pechorskoie Zauoros up to the Towne of Pechors.

I will also set downe the Ruffer layling from the forelayd Pechanikoie Zaworet, to the Tomborskeie-share. And from thence to the River of Ob : and thence to Mongozer.

I will likewise set downea true Direction, to goe by water in their Boates called Contes, through the River of Peona, and other Rivers , till they come from Mexen to Ouf Zilma,

Likewife I meane to write of the Samoieds, travelling from Vaggats to the parts of Mongozes, in the Winter time, and from thence backe agains to the forelayd Towns of Mezes, called Slobodca.

Lastly, I will intreate of such Commodities as are to bee had at Mezen, with the speedie pas fage from thence to Colmogro by Sea, or by Land in the Sommer time. And it is as followeth.

The things aboue mentioned, that I have not seene my selfe, I have not sleightly set downe from the mouthes of one or two, but from the mouthes of many ancient men, well experienced 20 in the Trauelsand Trades of all these parts, which Master I ames V adam the Master of our Ship can likewise witnesse. Therefore if the same may bee any way beneficiall vnto the Company, and that thereby I have discharged my dutie vnto your Worships, I shall bee heartily glad thereof, Thus fearing I have beene ouer tedious by my rude Letter, I rest, with my heartie prayer vnto Almightie God, for the happie preferuations of your selues, and all yours. Written on Shipboord, the last of August, 1611.

Your Worships bumble Sernant to command, RICHARD FINCE.

### The Names of the principall places, which the Russes sayle by from Mezen to the Pechorskoie Zauorot, or the Hauen of Pechora, 1511.

Rom Mezen to Candinos, with a faire wind and fliffe gale, is thirtie houres fayle: They fay-Fling commonly almost 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, according to which it is 50. leagues. From Candinos to the Ile of Colgoie, is as before thirtie houres fayling, and after 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, is 50. leagues. From Candinos to Promoja or Obscure, is twentie houres fayling, or 35. leagues. From the Ile of Colgois to Colocol coun, is fifteene houres 40 fayling, and reckoned as aboue appeareth, is 25. leagues. Along the shoare of this place are heapes of Sand, in the forme of Bells. Therefore the Ruffes call this place Colorol-come, being derived from Colocol, which in English fignifieth a Bell. From Colocol-coma to the Peasanestsa, is three houres fayle, or 5. leagues. This place is onely a small Brooke which they vie for a Sea-marke, more then for any benefit is to bee reaped at the same. From Peafancetfa to the Peeborskoie Zamoret, is fixe houres fayle, or 10. leagues. So that from Colgoie lland to this forefayd Pechorskeie Zaworet, is not about 40. leagues at the most.

## A direction to Sayle from the Pechorskoie Zauorot, where wee rode with our Ship in August 1611. to the Towne of Pechora,

Dolgoie Iland in

Rom this Pechorskoie Zanorot, they sayle into the Sooboie Mora, or Drie Sea, and not before: I firring away from hence South-west and by South, and in a faire gale of Winde, in source houres they come to an Iland called Dolgoie. This Iland is reported to bee three or foure Raffe Versts long, having on it in some time of the yeere many Geele, which the men of Pechora take before they bee able to flie. From this Dolgois, they flire away South South-west; and sayling this course with a faire gale of wind, in eight or nine houres sayle they come in sight of the maine Land, being an indifferent high Land. This Land is called the Bolnamon; and this is 20. leagues at the most. This Boluanon they have on their Larboord side. Neere this place are divers that inhabite in Raffe Houses: where in the Summer time they lye a Fowling, and fishing of a certayne Fish called Omes, which are like our Maccarels. If need bee, heere a man may have a guide or

## CHAP.9. Greene Hands. Tbicke or troubled River. Greene Lake.

good infirmations to conduct him to Pechora Towne. Hard by this Bolumon, is the Oufile or barre of the entring of Pecbora River. For as soone as you are over this barre, you come into the Rivers mouth, which leadeth to Perbora Towne. If if bee thicke foggie weather, then one of them continually foundeth the depth of the Channell, keeping as neere as they can in the deepeft water : and in fo doing, they feldome miftake their way, fo that they ftirre away West from the Belianmen to the Rivers month, keeping the Land on there Starboard fide. And by all mens report, from the Balmanon to Parbona Towne, is with a faire winde and fliffe gale, not about twentie houses layle : which according to their layling, is about three and thirtie leagues. And it is not about fiftieleagues from the Pechershoie Zaneret, where our Ship lay, to Pechera Towne.

The names of the places that the Ruffes Sayle by, from Pecharskoie Zauorot, to Mongozey : with the manner of their Tranell, and Distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halling, and Rowing Unto the Came.

Rom Parler those Zampes to Marphepous Ofrens, or Hand, is with a faire wind and fiffe gale, Maphepous O. Lat the most thirtee houres sayle, which being rackoned as before; rafter fortic leagues in four from. and swentig hours is fiftie leagues to which they furre away East From Marphyone Offrone to Touberhole the Toutiershoie-flowe, is mine hours sayle or fifteene leagues. When they are come to this Iland, Shore. they fir away rom thenge Bail to the faid Toubor keis four. Alfo in cleere weather from Mat. The Meedans pheyon Offices, they can be the maint Laul, with the Mendonetiche Zamers: where the two the Zames:

Hands be called the Zalessies or Grossellanis .. to which lands many of the Ragios refore, to where Hambstake a kinde of Fishes, called Gonels, which are like Maccarels : of which heere are Rote. This The ewo Imaine Landthey have on their right hand or S athourd lide, lying South from Marphrone O. lands called from. Alio to the Southward of the Marphrone Offices, is another hand which the Reflex call Zelentie, or Dalgone, that is, the long Hand. So that there are two Dolgone : the one, within the Peebershois the Greene I-Zaueres, entring into the Saskey Mora, or Dru Seu : The other is Chie, which is betwitt the Delgae Officute Mapherone Offrene, and the Tongarkere-bare ; lying as before was layd, South from the fayd or the Long I-30 Marpheyone Offrone. From which iland in a cleere day they can fee the Land of Vajgars, which land. lveth on the Larboord fide, being very high Land. So that furring out-right, in the middle betweene the Mondones here Land on their Starboord, and the Land of Vargats on their Larboord tween the measurement of the property of the state of the may Oftrone, or Meaftury Island. Further it is to bee immembred, that as foone as they enter this from any Island. Carriese Goods or B y, they tayle vp a Ruser, leaving this Bay on their Starboard : which River And Hand.

40 bringeth them into the Mostneya Ress. which fignifieth the thicke or troubled River. From Mostneya Ress. Cernicis Geobs to this Mosseya Rea, is 20 leagues. Likewife, being a little paft the Twoor their. One Thicke There, there may bee described an high Land, which they call Second Londs, that is, The Howley. sereb. And being over the Mostnoya Reca, which they are eight dayes and eight nights in halling along the shoare by the Rope or Beachana, they come into two Lakes, which two Lakes from one end to the other they commonly row over in one Day or two Tides: the same not being about ten or twelve leagues. Having gotten to the end of those two Lakes, they come to a The Newbie. place called the Nanologe, which fignifieth an Ouer-hall. And it is almost two hundred fathonis, or foure hundred paces in length : And having emptyed their Veffets, called Cosches, laying poles under them, with the Companies or men of foure or fine Boates, having twelve or thurteene men in a Boate, they hall their Veffels over, launching them into a third Lake, which they

call the Zeleney Ofere, that is, the Greene Lake. There Querahalls conftraine them to confort Lake. themselves into Companies : otherwayes they could not get this way to Mongotes. At the and of this Zeleney Ofera, or Greene Lake, they come into the Zeleneya Reca, or Greene River, in- Zeleneya Reca, to which they runne with the ftreame, being often compelled to emptie their great Boates with Rose fallah their Lodias, or Wherries, laying their Goods vpon the shoare : which being done they row into 06. their great Lodias ouer the shoalds emptie ; and having got ouer the shoalds, they bring their 20 ods on boord againe, And thus they doe in divers places of this Zelenga Reca. or Greene River: by reason whereof they are commonly ten dayes from the Ouer-hall, before they can get through this forelayd River, which is all with the ffreame; but the Diffance hereof cannot yet

60 bee perfectly learned. Being come to the end of this Zeleneya Reca, they enter into the River of The River Ob. Ob: and having rowed a little way up the fame, they come to a place which they likewife call Zaueret: which fignifieth a turning, winding, or entring into a place. From this Zaueret, they The Zaueret in turne into the Tanze Reca, flirring away South to Tanze River; but it is foure and twentie houres fayle, or fortie leagues from the River of Ob, before they come into any part of the Tawes Tong Read,

Tacs.

Mongoley.

in the Winter to Mongofey. We may learn of the e Sameyeds, the trade of Mongoley at Meren more

Reea. In the River of Ob, are neither Woods nor Inhabitants, till they layle for are up the face

hat they come neere to Sugarm. Due there are though they have foure dayes and foure nights saying.

When they are entred intesthis Tanza River, they have foure dayes and foure nights saying. Tante Gurda, to Tanza Calife, with a faire wind and a fiffe gale : Burif they be driven to row could have Corode of Cattle, then they are twelve dayes and twelve nights rowing thirther at the leaft, ha Corose of Same weather. This Tenze Guodos, or Tanza little Caffle, with the Villages, Townes, and all other places thereto belon ging, is by all the Roffer generally called Mongalys all this place an ourse places over the same pure, with three or fout hundred Guoness, and Institution are two Gentlemen or Course pure with three or fout hundred Guoness, and Institution in feuerall places of these parts of Mangaly. Morcouet, the men of Mena, from whom I had feuerall places of their parts or crossengers, processes, and made an account and all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Masself, to all their Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there were men from Siberia to Masself, to all the Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there were men from Siberia to Masself, to all the Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there were men from Siberia to Masself, to all the Notes, told men the Notes and the Notes a all these Notes, colo me; and more remote such a service such by Sables; defiuring varonee, that the Sables taken by the Samonda about Wangalon are Alice her color and the samonda about Wangalon are The Samples our owners out of the sample of pricher in Furres, near tone on ac come rom owerm, and they tone me, that the same with inha-biting won the mayne had diet against growth that the winter time with white Reym Deers to the parts of Managery, to kall Sables and other bearts: and doe carrie their Furre from thence to Mezen, to fell there at a place called by the Rufes, Sabbles, to which they did commonly refort about Shroue-tide, flaying not there long, but as foone as they had made take of their Foures, they departed home againe. Further, their men of Mezen told me, that in the Winter time with them was to be fold flore of Squerrif; Beauers; Beauers wombs; and yearer trans want all those that travelled in the Winter time from any part of Mongaly, Man Pectora, and One folius, to any part of Ruffis whether they were Merchants, or britery is perfectly. resourcements, or poyers per any state of the must of force come to their Towne to Mr. ces, to hire stories to cattie them to Campyre. By which meanes they told mee, their Tolk was well septembed with all mannet of Furres especially of Squernis. Allothey infinial me, that disers of Colongre, and other parce of Region chief fold vs Furs, for the most part boulet and fame, of Shem, lying there in the Winder visite for this purpose. Therefore, this they, from the square species and the control parts; they would be glad thereof, and that the single control parts; they would be glad thereof, and that the single control parts; they would be glad thereof, and that the single control parts; they would be glad thereof. he furnitied of all forts of Burres, and as a farre better frate then hitherto we have had then a And thap we could upon any occasion be quickly at Compres in the Winter time by Stell of in any part of the Spring of Summer time by Borre, are very imall charge. Laffly, that in the Spring time, weshoold not faile of a parcell of Trans-cyle, and Decres skinnes, which carry Summer they transported to Archangel to fell. ำนี้และสำนัก

A true direction of the Rulles transfing from Mezen, with Copools or final Bests, through the River Peoza, and from these to aplace called by them Peastanoy
Naucolock on The Sandy Ouer-hall, paging from themeestrough
other Rivers, till they come to Outh-felma, this for the Towns of Pechoral And is when the word 1 . Salah

Jan Borney or Calling

and a Manney and ag

Hang embarqued themselves at Moton, in these small Cayooks or Boats, covered with the barkes of trees, they tayle to a River called Peace Rece. From themse they layle, or draw choice Boats to e place called, the Peachers Nambick of Sand Oner-ball. From Messes to this Our-ball is ten dayes falling along the thorse with the rope. This faid Our-ball is far Reference to the Cayooks, they draw the faid ver-ball is ten dayer than after they have validen their goods out of their Cayooks, they draw the faid Veffels over at times with Horfes, that come from Mezen of purpole; lying there the most part of the Summer, to that intent: and they pay fixe pence Raff, for drawing outr an empty Boat. Being ouer this Ouer-hall, they drive with the streame in three dayes to the Towners of Ouss-schools: and with the streame in source dayes they drive to a place called Fusions. and from Pussesses against the streame they come to the Bolissons, and from the Bolissons to the Towne of Pechara. Also, many of these Boats very often in their returne home with their fore-Said Cayooks, carrie Furres to Ufing, and divers other places into the Countrey of Raffia. All

CHAP. 60

#### CHAP. X.

The Voyage of Master Iosias Logan to Pechora, and bu wintering there, with Master WILLIAM PVRSGLOVE, and
MARMADVRE WILSON. Anno 1611.

He first of July, William Gurdon, Richard Finch, and William Pursglone, went on The former thoare at Snatinefe, where two Croffes stand. The second, were weighed anchor part of the againe, and flood into the Bay because of the Ice: and that night wee went on Voyage is hoare againe. The third, we weighed anchor, and stood it about Swatinofe. The anoide redious fift, we food to the Eastwards fine leagues more, and about twelue of the clocke repetition, at night, wee were thwart of the lland of Toxar. The tenth, at eight of the Toxar.

clocke at night, we weighed, and went ouer a Barre, at two fathomes, and came into Harbour, where wee anchored at ten of the clocke in the morning in flue fathoms, having fands round about vs , being land-locked. The eleventh , my felte , William Gurdon , and William Purfglone, with fixe of our men more, departed from the ship with our Shallop, to goe vp to the Towne

The fourteenth, wee arrived at the fishing house of one Enan Vasilion sene fowban, where the Pufferent people were afraid of vs, and were ready to runne away: but we spake to them, and gaue them fome Biscuit and Aqua vita, and they fod vs some fish, and shewed vs our way to another Fishery : but they ran away from vs, so we departed on our way. The fifteenth day, at soure of the clocke in the afternoone wee met with a Raffe, that was borne at Ufting, who gaue vs Milke, and fuch things as he had, and we gave him some Biscuit, and some Aque vite, and hee directed ws vnto another Fishery, about some five miles from that place where wee arrived, about sixe of the clocke the same night. But comming alhbare, we found not any, saue one man, who after some conference had with vs, and giving him some Bread, and some of our Aque vite, hee told vs, that the Master of the house, with three of his sonnes were hunting of Duckes, and that 30 their wines were afraid, and were runne into the Woods to hide themselues, leaning a young childe behind them for hafte, So he brought vs into the house, where by that time that we had flayed an houre ( because there were so many Muschines, which are like vnto a Midge, and fline most horribly, so that we were not able to fray without) the Master of the house, and his somes came thither, who at the first were afraid, thinking we came to rob them. And they were about to shoot our men in the Boat; but one of our men holding wp a Biscuit cake, they then came to them, and spake voto them; but our men not voderstanding them, made them signes to the house, where my felfe, William Gurdon, and William Pursglone were: who, when they came into the house, being yet afraid, they came in one after another. Now, when we had faluted them after the Ruffe manner, they asked vs of whence we were, and for what cause we came thither: 40 whereunto I made answere, that wee were English-men, who because of the troubles in Russia.

came thicher to feeke a Trade, having heard divers times of the fame of those parts. Then hee replied, that in times past those places had beene good for trading : but now, by reason of a bad Gouernour, in those troublesome times, vpon a spleene he had fired the Towne, and burned above an hundred houses: and so by that meanes they were fallen into pourty, and trading decayed, by reason of his great exactions. Yet hee said, that they have great store of Salmon, and that the last yeere they got about 1,000. Salmons, and in the Winter is their chiefest Mart. For then the Samojeds come thither from diners places, and bring Sables , and Beauers , white Foxes, Rofamackes, Feathers, and fome Squerrils. So having hipped with him, we gave him a gallon of our Aqua vita, and some fortie cakes of our white Biscuit; and three or foure pound of Railins: for we heard, that he was one of the principalless men in the Towne. Then desiring 50 his fauour, he holpe vs to a man to goe with vs vp to the Towne, because of the fearefulnesse of the people, which they conceine through the Warres of the Poles: and so wee departed from thence that night to the Towne.

The fixteenth, in the afternoone we arrived at the Towne of Puffozera, where wee found not many people, confidering the number of houses there, which are betwixt fourescore and an hundred, being of wood, built after the Ruffian manner, and they are jubiect vinto the Ruffe, obferting all their Rites as doe the Ruffes. The people were all abroad (tome, in getting of Morfes Oyle, and Belougaes Oyle, and some fishing of a fish called Ometta, which is a very sweet fish, and some hunting Duckes) saving the Customers, and three or soure more, who were likewise afraid of vs, although we had one of their owne people with vs, and were ready to flee away. 60 So we feeing their fearefulnesse, caused their man to goe first on shoare with vs three aboue mentioned, not permitting the rest of our men to come on Land as yet : then hee calling to them, they stayed, still peeping from behind the corners of their houses, vitill at the last there was a Ruffe, one of Colmogro, that had wintred with them, who knew me, and had feene me fome two

yeeres before at Cola in Lappia, at his Vncles house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, thewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intene of harme: for hee knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at. Cola foure or fine yeeres together, and lay at his Vncles house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had seene mee with his Vincle at Cola. Then I called to mind, that I had feene him there, and so we grew acquainted; and he went with vs to the Custome-house, where staying an houre, at length the Customer came: and after many questions had concerning our comming thither, I craued licence, that foure of vs might winter with them: which they denyed, alledging that they durft not without the Emperour of Roffis his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when he was 10 raigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, aboue all other strangers; and shewed what great prinileges hee had bestowed on our people: and how by the Englishmens meanes at the first, what a trade is now at Antania, and what profit came, not onely into his Maiesties Treasure, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hicker: and withall shewed the Emperours primitedge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and willed vs to flay fine or fixe dayes, vntill he had fent for the chiefeft men of the Townes-men, who were abroad. and then they would give vs an answer. Then I desired, that we might have an house to be in, and not to flay without doores. So he gaue libertie to any that would, to entertaynevs, where to there was one Calless that made answer, that he would: whereupon wee went with him, and were in an Ambar of his, vntill wee received answer from them. In the meane time wee 29 made much of them, and feafted them with our Aqua vite, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtayne their loue.

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to gine vs our answere, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might flay if wee would : but they must write vp to the Maske of our being here. So we thanked them, and gaue them such entertaynment as we could, and sent prefents to fixe of them of the chiefest, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what fauour they could. So this night I made ready my Letters to fend for England.

The fourth of August, fine and twentie Lodyas arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for Molgomfey: but by reason of contrary winds, they were forced into Pechora, and came up to the Towne of Puffoxer, and unladed to make fale. Pale baprized

The fixe and twentieth, we removed from the house where we were at the first, vnto a Poles house, who is christened Rufe, where we are to remayne all the Winter.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the Ozers was frozen over, and the Ice drining in the River to and againe, brake all the nets, fo that they got no Salmon, no not fo much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a Soyma, which the Towns-men bought, that went downs the River to have gone for Ingeria, and had a faire wind : but they neglecting two dayes fayling, that would have carried them forth of the River to the Sea, the wind came contrary, fo that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the ninetcenth, game ouer their Voyage, and came up to the Towne.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the Ozers flood in one night, that men did walke on it the next day, and fo continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of November, there went two men of Penega to Ufi-zilma, to buy Squerrils, and Beauers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arole at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The foure and ewentieth, there went divers men, with at the least, three or fourescore Sleds Slabades Mart. drawne with Deere, to a place called Slabades, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof : and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom William Purselone went into Russia. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and fet at South-west and by West.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and fet South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Towns-men of Pechera went over land into Ingeria, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the Samoyeds.

The eleventh, Marmadake Wilson faid that he faw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I faw the Sunnes beames my felfe, but I could not fee the Sun it felfe, although I watched it very strictly. The fourteenth, it was snowie, and stormie weather, and continued so vntill the foureand twentieth day, which was close weather also.

The fine and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it having the neathermost part of it all the way init with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was flormy and fnowy weather, and fo conti- 60 nued vntill the end of the moneth.

The fecond of Ianuarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie height aboue the Horizon.

The fift, William Purselone returned from Colmogro. The eleventh, the Sunne arose at South by East by the Compasse, and fet at South-west and by West.

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should bee a generall Fast, Generall Fast both for young and old, not exempting the fucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continu- for three dayes ing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water, neither admitted they very first. their fucking Babes, faue those that fainted, to whom they gaue a few Figs and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of Puffozer that went into Ingoria, returned from thence. bauing had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the Samoyeds had among st themselves: so that they durit not goe into Molgomsey, where they catch the most part of the Sables which come into Ruffia.

The three and twentieth, came the Carratchey, which is the chiefe of the Samoyeds, but they In had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the Samojeds of Molgemfey, neither hunt for the Sables themfelues , which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe Carratchey, his fonne, his fonnes fonne, and his brothers fonne at Dinner, and had fome conference with him, who told mee, that they had feene ships in the Vaggats, two yeeres one after another: but they durft not bee feene of them, but fled from them : for the Ruffes told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them Ruffes fraud. away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our comming, when they saw our behaulour and the entertaynment that they had of vs: Neuertheleffe, they are very timerous, and vnreafonable couetous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The second of February, the most part of the Samoyeds went to Slobodea with their commo- February. 20 dities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the Samoyeds of Calle-Samoyeds nofe, and had flayne one or two of them : wherefore they went to agree with them, and to quirielle

pay ranfome for fome of their men that were taken afterwards. The fifteenth, the Sunne arofe at South-east, a little Southerly, and fet at West and by South Westerly. The fixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse

as I could fet it, the variation being two points Westerly : for, at a South South-west, the Sunne Veriation. commeth to the Meridian.

The twentieth, I had conference with a Ruffe, concerning their trade of Molgomfer, who had The report of beene there twice, and he was the first that euer attempted it, and none hath beene farther then a Ruffe, a great beene there twice, and he was the first that ever accomplete to, and note has beene that words. And he told me, that their courie from Medensky Zanores, at the mouth Trauellet of the way from 30 of Pechera to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called Zyelenfa, is two dayes and three nights di- Pecherato Ob. flance, fayling with a faire wind. From thence to Broin-vinnofe, three dayes and three nights Medenston Ze failing with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of Vaggars. And from thence by an Hand, word. or rather a Rocke, called Socolia Londia, leaning it on the Starboord fide for feare of Rockes, Zyelenja two fill keeping your coarse North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboord side, Breit vimele, with a fand lying off into the Sea three miles, fome fine or fixe dayes fayling. Which when you Socalia Lordia have gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more enclining to the South, fine or six A long Point, daves more : and then you shall come to the Riner of Ob; against the mouth whereof lieth an From Medem-Hand: but you must keepe the Sea-boord of it, by reason it is should betwist it and the Mayne, it a Zaustatto
The Land all alongst the shoare is a fine lowe Land, and the going into the River, is on the East
Ob is tedayer 40 fide of the Hand. The River is reported to be a Summer dayes fayling ouer in bredth, and as full An Hand.

of Ilands: whereby they report it to be should. Yet, in my opinion, so great a River cannot be Obisfullof I. without a mayne channell; which as yet they have not fought for : and therefore they judge it lands, broad innauigable. Also they report it to bee very plentifull of Fish of divers forts: but the people and should. here, and the Ruffes are vinwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreover, hee told mee, that from the River Ob to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some fixe or eight dayes sayling The people of more. To the Eastward of the River Ob lieth another great River as large as Ob, and is very the Ruffet are deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is wiknowne. Although that hee vinwilling that affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes up the River : and all along as we should goe they went , they met with fundry forts of People, differing in Language one from another, to 06.

50 which they call Sameyeds. Yea, and the People there did certifie them, that up more to- The River wards the South, there are Tarter; inhabiting, who ride vpon Horses. And hee affirmed, that Samoreds, they found pieces of Ploughes that had beene driven downe the River by the flouds, caused Hories. by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This River is very high Land, and deepe water on Pioughes. both fides. Into this River, on the East fide falleth another River, called Tinguffer, and the In- The River of habitants thereof are fo called: whereby I coniecture, that it is not faire from the Citie the Tinguffeys. Tangut in Carbay. Thele Tinguffes report, that there is another hage River, that trendeth to Tangut mentithe Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the River of Tinguffey: wherein oned by Polo, a the Southwards, which the necke or a Laus partets from the Kiner of Angry Malis and here are great thips, not valide wato the Ruffer thips, that tayle in it, having many Malis and Northward Northward Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyle: which should from Guing, or

60 feeme to be the Chinians, that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the china. Winter doth come. The like also affirmeth another, being a Ruffe, who hath beene in the River The River of Tinguffey, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the Ruffes tooke their Journey from hence, from Puffoxer into Ruffes, with March, fuch commodities as they bought. Aaa a

Froft in Au-

Molgomiey.

Sunne reture

Cola in Lappia.

yeeres before at Cola in Lappia, at his Vncles house, And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, thewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intene of harme : for hee knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at Cola foure or fue yeeres together, and lay at his Vncles house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had feene mee with his Vincle at Cola. Then I called to mind, that I had feene him there, and fo we grew acquainted: and he went with vs to the Custome-house, where staying an houre, at length the Customer came: and after many questions had concerning our comming thicker, I craued licence, that soure of vs might winter with them: which they denyed, alledging that they durst not without the Emperour of Ruffia his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when he was 10 raigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, about all other strangers; and shewed what great primiledges hee had bestowed on our people : and how by the English-mens meanes at the first; what a trade is now at Arkania, and what profit came, not onely into his Maiesties Treasurie, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and withall shewed the Emperours printledge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and willed vs to stay fine or fixe dayes, vntill he had fent for the chiefest men of the Townel-men, who were abroad. and then they would give vs an answer. Then I defired, that we might have an house to be inand not to stay without doores. So he gaue libertie to any that would, to entertayne vs, whereto there was one Calless that made answer, that he would: whereupon wee went with him, and were in an Ambar of his, vntill wee received answer from them. In the meane time wee 20 made much of them, and feafted them with our Aqua vite, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtavne their love.

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to give vs our answere, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might stay if wee would : but they must write up to the Maske of our being here. So we thanked them, and gaue them fuch entertaynment as we could, and fent prefents to fixe of them of the chiefest, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what fauour they could. So this night I made ready my Letters to fend for England.

Frost in Au-

The fourth of August, five and twentie Lodyas arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for Molgomfey : but by reason of contrary winds , they were forced into Pechora, and came up to the Towne of Puffezer, and unladed to make fale. The fixe and twentieth, we removed from the houle where we were at the first, vnto a Poles Pole baptized

house, who is christened Russe, where we are to remayne all the Winter.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the Ozers was frozen over, and the Ice driving in the River to and againe, brake all the nets, fo that they got no Salmon, no not fo much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a Soyma, which the Towns-men bought, that went downs the River to have gone for Ingeria, and had a faire wind: but they neglecting two dayes fayling, that would have carried them forth of the River to the Sea, the wind came contrary, fo that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gave over their Voyage, and came vp to the Towne.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the Ozers flood in one night, that men did walke on it the next day, and so continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of Nouember, there went two men of Penega to Uft-zilma, to buy Squerrils. and Beauers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arose at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The foure and twentieth, there went divers men, with at the least, three or fourescore Sleds drawne with Deere, to a place called Slobedca, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof: and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom William Purigious went into Ruffis. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arole at South and by West by the Compaffe, and fet at South-west and by West.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and fet South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Towns-men of Pechers went over land

into Inseria, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the Samoreds. The eleventh, Marmadule Wilfon faid that he faw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the

Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I faw the Sunnes beames my felfe, but I could not fee the Sun it felfe, although I watched it very firictly. The fourteenth, it was snowie, and stormic weather, and continued so vntill the foureand twentieth day, which was close weather also. The fine and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by

West, and set at South-west and by South, it having the neathermost part of it all the way init

with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was flormy and fnowy weather, and fo conti- 60 nued vntill the end of the moneth. The second of Januarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west

a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie height aboue the Horizon.

The fift, William Purigione returned from Colmogro. The eleventh, the Sunne arofe at South by East by the Compasse, and fet at South-west and by West.

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there foodld bee a generall Faft, Generall Faft both for young and old, not exempting the fucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continu- for three dayes ing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water, neither admitted they very fria. their fucking Babes, faue those that fainted, to whom they gaue a few Figs and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of Puftozer that went into Ingeria, returned from thence. having had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the Samoreds had amongst themselves: so that they durst not goe into Molgomfey, where they catch the most part of the

Sables which come into Ruffia.

The three and twentieth, came the Carratches, which is the chiefe of the Samoreds, but they In had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the Samoreds of Molgomfey, neither hunt for the Sables themselues , which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe Carratcher, his sonne, his sonnes sonne, and his brothers some at Dinner, and had some conference with him, who told mee, that they had feene ships in the Vaygets, two yeeres one after another: but they durft not bee feene of them, but fled from them : for the Ruffes told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them Ruffes fraud. away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our comming, when they saw our behaulour, and the entertaynment that they had of vs: Neuertheleffe, they are very timerous, and vnreafonable couetous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The fecond of February, the most part of the Samejeds went to Slobedes with their commo- February. 20 dities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the Samoyeds of Calle- Samoyeds nofe, and had flayne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to quiriell. pay ransome for some of their men that were taken afterwards.

The fifteenth, the Sunne arole at South-east, a little Southerly, and fet at West and by South Westerly. The fixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could fet it, the variation being two points Westerly : for, at a South South-west, the Sunne Variation.

commeth to the Meridian. The twentieth, I had conference with a Rufe, concerning their trade of Molgomfer, who had The report of beene there twice, and he was the first that ever attempted it, and none hath beene farther then a Russ, a great beene there twice, and he was the first that ever attempted it, and none nature that the fact the Eastwards. And he told me, that their course from Medensky Zanores, at the mouth the way from the way from 30 of Pechora to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called Zyelenfa, is two dayes and three nights di-Pechorato Ob. flance, fayling with a faire wind. From thence to Broin-vinnofe, three dayes and three nights Medenthen Zeflance, 1871ing with a later wind, which is within the Streight of Vogeti. And from thence by an Iland, work. Gailing with a fire wind, which is within the Streight of Vogeti. And from thence by an Iland, work or rather a Rocke, called Secalia Louis, leaving to on the Starboord fide for feare of Rockes. Species wood rather a Rocke, called Secalia Louis, leaving it on the Starboord fide for feare of Rockes. Species are fill keeping your course North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboard side, Breit ripmese. with a fand lying off into the Sea three miles, fome fine or fixe dayes fayling. Which when you Seculatorming have gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more enclining to the South, fine or fix A long Point. dayes more : and then you shall come to the River of Ob; against the mouth whereof lieth an From Medem dayes more: and then you man come to the more of or is against the market in and the Mayne, to District and the Mayne, to District and the Mayne, to District and the Mayne. The Land all along it the shoare is a fine lowe Land, and the going into the River, is on the East 40 fide of the Iland. The River is reported to be a Summer dayes fayling ouer in bredth, and is full An Iland. of Hands: whereby they report it to be should. Yet, in my opinion, so great a River cannot be Obis full of I-

deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is vnknowne. Although that hee yowilling that affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes up the River: and all along as we should goe they went , they met with fundry forts of People, differing in Language one from another, to 06. 50 which they call Sampeds. Yea, and the People there did cerrifie them, that vp more to. The River which they call Samogeds. Yea, and the reopie these did certine them, that vp more to-wards the South, there are Tarrar; inhabiting, who ride vpon Horles. And hee affirmed, that Samogeds, they found pieces of Ploughes that had beene driven downe the River by the flouds, caused Horiese by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This River is very high Land, and deepe water on Ploughes, both fides. Into this River, on the East fide falleth another River, called Tinguffer, and the In- The River of habitants thereof are so called: whereby I conjecture, that it is not farre from the Citie the Tingustry. Tangut in Carbay. Thele Tinguifes report, that there is another hage River, that trendeth to Tangut mentithe Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the River of Tinguffey: wherein oned by Palo, a there are great ships, not valide vnto the Ruffer ships, that sayle in it, haung many Mass and large kingdom which was the sayle in the sayle in it.

Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyle: which should from Caulog or 60 feeme to be the Chinians, that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the China. Winter doth come. The like also affirmeth another, being a Ruffe, who hath beene in the River The River of Tinguffey, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the Ruffes tooke their lourney from hence, from Puffozer into Ruffia, with March fuch commodities as they bought.

without a mayne channell; which as yet they have not fought for : and therefore they judge it lands, broad

innauigable. Also they report it to bee very plentifull of Fish of duers forts: but the people and should here, and the Ruffer are vnwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreouer, hee told mee, that from the River Ob to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some fixe or eight dayes sayling The people of more. To the Eastward of the River Ob lieth another great River as large as Ob, and is very the faults are Aprille

a Permack.

due Eaft.

Stones like

way betweene

Pilida and Ca-

May.

breakes up.

Foure dayes

iourney be-

tweene Pufla-

zer and Ouft-

66. degrees

30. minutes,

& there grow

faire Barley

part for Mol-

Tem combu-

and Ric.

gom/eJ. Iuly.

ftion.

The twelfth, the Sunnes altitude by the Que frant was 67. degrees and 40. minutes; and the P. Mozirain 68. de lination, no degrees 52. minutes, which being added, maketh 68. degrees and 30. minutes, degrees 30, or being the true heigth of Puffezer.

The thirteenth, the Sun arose at East and by South a little Southerly, and set at West Northwest. This day the Sunnes altitude by the Quadrant was 67. degrees 20. minutes; and the declination, 1. degree 14. minutes : which added together, maketh 68. degrees 35. minutes : fo that I conclude, that Puffoxer flandeth in about 68, degrees 30. minutes. The eight and twentieth, the Sunne arose at East and by North, and set at North-west and by West.

The eleuenth of Aprill, the Inhabitants of this Towne returned from Slobodca, bringing with

them Rie, Rie-meale, and other prouitions.

The one and twentieth, having conference with a Permack, concerning what commodities were to be had at the Towne of Uf-zilma, he told me, that there were Losh hides, Squerrils, Sa-The report of bles, white Foxes, and Rosomackes. Moreover, he told me, that beyond the River of Tenifer, Teniffey: bethe Land trendeth due East, and then there is a River called Peaseds, and beyond that another, called (atonga, which runneth into Cathay : whole King, thele Permacks and Ruffes call Tentha land trendeth tfar. The River lieth North and South as they of Teniffey fay, but they cannot tell how farre: for, there hath not any beene vp the River, by reason they are afraid of their shot. And this Pelida River. Permack told me, that on the Sea coaft betwixt thefe two Rivers , Peafeda and Catonga, they Catonea Riner runneth out of found certaine stones like vnto Gold , and some like Silver , being about the halfe way betwixt Gold and Sil-

The two and twentieth, we had newes brought that the Ice was broken, in the Pechora, all uer in the mid- along it by the fides.

The ninth of May, the Sunne arose at North-east somwhat Easterly, and set at North somwhat Westerly, it being iust foure houres by the Houre-glasse under the Horizon, The three and twentieth, the Sun did not goe under the Horizon, for it was a pretie height

aboue the Horizon, at a North North-east point of the Compasse: it then being at the lowest. The River Ice The foure and twentieth, we had newes that the Pecbora brake vp, vpon the twentieth day of this instant moneth. The fixe and twentieth, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone, I departed from Pultozer, to goe to Uft-zilma, where I arrived the thirtieth day instant. And the Riuer of Pechora lieth most part North North-east, and South South-west, and sometimes North 10 and South. Uf-zilma, is a Village of some thirtie or fortie houses, and standeth in the height of 66, degrees and 20, minutes. They have Corne growing there, both Barley and Rie; and zilma. Ouft-zilma is in their Barley is paffing faire and white almost as Rice.

The ninth of June, I departed from Vit-zilma backe againe to Puflozer, where I arrived the eleventh of Iune. The one and twentieth, seventeene Somas departed from hence to goe to Molgomfey : some belonging to this place, some to Vft-zilma, and some to Mezen, and Penega. The two and twentieth, diners Boats went from hence to the Sea, to fish for Omelyes and Bealowgaes Oyle. The foure and twentieth, I fent downe William Purfglone to the Sea fide, to 17. Somas de- buy the Oyle which God shall fend them.

The third of July, I received a Letter forth of England, by the way of Colmogro.

The fift, we had newes that the Governour and Souldiers of Tom have burnt the Towne, and fled from thence, by reason they wanted victuals, and their pay: and about three hundred of them intended to come to Uft-zalma, to rob the Inhabitants thereof. This day I was told. that from Puffozer vp Peebers with a faire wind, to the River of Oufe, is three weekes travell : and then up the River of Onfe, to Podcamen, ten dayes, and from thence to Ob, eight dayes. drawne by Deere : and from thence to Berefous, fixteene dayes, which is a Towne of trading. This mine Host told me, that he was a prisoner at Beresona, and at Tobolseo: and hee affirmeth, that Tobolfco is a Citie of great trade, and that the Tofecks, Bowhars, and Tarters, come thither to trade, who bring Silkes, Veluets, Grogran, Sendames, and Kindackes, and that great flore of Cloth, Pewter, and Copper may be vented there. Also there is great flore of Forres, as Sa- 10 bles. Scuerrils, Foxes, Blacke, Rofamackes, and Beauers. He fayth, that from Pofferer to Vade in Ingoria, which is on this fide Ob, with carriage vpon Deere, it is a moneths Lourney, and Notone is on the other fide of Ob; and it is two weekes and an halfe with light carriage or polt. Moreouer, he told me, that Pecbera runneth into Veleka permia, fine weekes journey from Puffozer, and from Veleca permia to Verho touria, nine dayes iourney by Horse and Sleds : and from thence to Tamen by River, ten dayes : and from Tamen to Tobalfee, fixe dayes by the Riuer Irtifh, and is the chiefe Citie of all Siberia. And from Tobolfeo to Somroost, is fixe weekes Intelligence of Iourney up the River Ob, from whence come all the rich Furres which come to Arcania. From the Country. Sourgone to Tome, which is among it the Tartars, is three weekes up the River Ob : and yet none knoweth how farre the Ob runneth further, as he fayth, he was carried these wayes to the Musko, in the beginning of Roffriga his time.

The fixteenth, I was told by a Permack, having some speech with him concerning the Vaygats, that from Medniskoy Zanoros to the Vayeats, is one day and a nights layle with a faire wind. And as you goe forth of the Vargats, there lieth an lland salled Meafino Offrone, not

being farre from Socolia Lowdy : and from Vaygats through Yongorskey four into Oarskey gomba, Scola Londia. (which is a great Bay and deepe) is two dayes and one nights tayling into Movemeny River, the Yomgaring it of course East, somewhat Southerly. And from Mowerney to Sharrappa shar, which is an Inlet, is Mommoy a Ri, halfe a dayes fayling : and from thence to Tomeonome is halfe a dayes fayling , which is an high uer. Land : and from thence to Narome is is a dayes fayling. And there are three little Rivers be Sharrappa Shar. twixt them : and there are Morfes all alongft that shoare, and farther he knew not by Sea. But Yourse he fauth, that the River Ob is a daves fayling right over. And from Zylena reca to the Taz, zamoros, the course is South-east, a dayes sayling : and from the Zamoros of Tax to the Rivers ob. mouelt, is a day and a nights fayling : and there is an Hand in the mouth thereof, being high land. Zylena River. To And from thence vp the River, the course is South-east to the Towne eight dayes journey, to Taz Zawerat. be haled with a rope, there runneth fuch a ftreame. But, ere you come to the Taz River, there Taz River. an Illand in the and you must leave the lland at the Tax on the Larboord fide. And from Tax Town Tax. up the River Volochanco; is fixe dayes journey Eafterly against the streame, vntill' you come to a The Towne. Vollocke, about a mile and an halfe long, Marish ground, and so into another River, some foure Powe River. dayes rowing with the freame, to the Ruer that is called Trowban, which is a great Ruer, and Anliand called falleth into Teniffer, fome three dayes journey more with the streame : at the entrance whereof The River lieth an lland; called by the fame name; whereon there is a little Towne of the fame name, From Hauteronthencedowne the River Teniffer to the River Hantike, is twelve dives fayling : and it is a great ne hout of can

CH AP. 10. Mowmoy River. Indiga River ; deepe water, good Harbour.

Kishayskoy Tsarrstua. The fitt of August, my selfe, and the Boy, went aboord the Lodia departing from Pustozer. August. The tenth, we arrived at the Glombocke, which are the deepe water, whither William Parfegione They depart was come with the Oyle, where we melted what we could, before we departed. The twelfth, I observed in the Gloubocke, and had it on the Quadrant 56. degrees 30. minutes : and the Declination was 12. degrees 42. minutes, fo it standeth in 69.degrees 12. minutes.

The eighteenth, we departed from the Gloubocke, and entred the Dry Sea, and arrived at the Zaures the one and twentieth.

The two and twentieth, we weighed and went out to Sea, the wind at East North-east, but the Gloubecke in sa 20. wind comming to the North-well, we put roomer againe, and came to an Anchor at the Zanerot againe. The foure and twentieth, I observed at the Zawrot, and had it on the Quadrant 62, minutes. degrees no minutes, and the Declination was 7. degrees 26. minutes, foit flandeth in about 70.

The fix and twentieth, we departed from the Zanoros about noon, the wind being at East, the land trending betwixt it & Collections East & Welt, being two Voadaes, or fixty Verits distance. Collections. The feuen and twentse: h, we came to an Handcalled Mezzon Sharry, being fixtie Verits to Mezzon Sharry

the Eastwards of Suatinofe, and it is about ten Verste in length, and two Verste broad. At the East end thereof, Oliner Brunell was carried into Harbour by a Ruffe, where he was Land-locked, Oliner Brunell.

having the lland on the one fide, and the Mayne on the other.

40 The eight and twentieth, we departed from Mezzon Sharry, the wind at North-east, a little gale, but before night it fell thicke, and wee steered away North-west, and about mid-night, it came to the North North-east blowing a very fore storme : so that we were not able to beare our fayle aloft, and having floud under foot, we were fogged into the Bay, and put alware fome two houres before day, upon the long point of the obscure Harbour, about three miles to the Westwards, the wind being at North : where we got all our goods on Land, alwayes looking when the Lodia would have iplic. But, by Gods Almightie Providence, she heate over that Sand, and lay betwixt it and the beach: fo that when the ty de was fallen, the fate on ground, as if the had beene in a creeke, the Sands all dry round about her. Also on the West fide of Snatinofe, in the Bay is a great River, called Indiga, which is, deepe Water, and a good Harbour for a ship, as Indiga. 50 the Ruffes doe report.

The thirtieth, the storme continued all the day long. The one and thirtieth, about noone it blew leffe wind, and at hight we stopped our leakes as well as we could.

The first of September, in the morning wee got our goods againe aboord. The second, in the Septembere morning, we went roomer with the obscure Harbour, the wind being at the North-west, but at noone, it came to the South-east and East South-east, so we weighed, and stood to the Westwards againe, vntill wee came to the River, where wee came on shoare the last yeere: which is called Zenomen, where wee anchored a little to the Eastwards, and ridde the most part of

The third, in the morning we weighed, and stood to the Westwards, but the wind comming 60 to the West South-west blowing hard, and having the tyde against ve, we anchored againe about ten of the clocke on Thursday, being the third day : yet within two hours after, we were forced to weigh, and put roomer to a little River or Creeke, that is, called Creeftons where wee ridde vntill the ninth day. Then we loofed, thinking to have gone forth to Sea, the wind being Eafterly; but it blowing hard, and there running a great streame of fresh water, that it put vs

20 River, and runneth to the East (as it is thought) into Cathay, which of the Permacks, is called they.

on ground againe, wee were in great danger againe of loning all. So wee were forced to get all things on fleare againe, and then got her off the elementh day, and went into the Crakeagaine : and stopping our leakes as well as we could, we got our goods abourd againe,

The fourteenth, the winde comming to the East South-east, wee got forth to Sea with much adoe; and forme after, the winde came to the East North-east, a faire gale: and wee flooditalongst the Land South-east and by South, and North-west, and by North all that after-moone vatill mid-night; at what time we were thwart of Callenge, The fifteenth, about three of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the North-caft, and blew very hard, so we specied away South South-west, and at night weesfell, with a should, which they faid, is thwart of the Mezen mouth; but I take it, it, was Knocke John.

The fixteenth, in the morning about eight or nine of the clocke, haping carried but an hul-Danielous Stelle locke of our fayle all night, we fell with Danielous Stelle on the Coaft of Lappia, the mind being at South, and blowing hard, so that we went into Harbour at the West of the Hand, there standing five Crosses on it, is being a Rocke: And there are foure Warlocks on the Mayne, and another on a Rocke to the Westwards : yet it is but for Lodyes, and that a bad one also, beeing full of Rockes round about, where we rid vinill the fix and twentieth. Then we departed forth of Daniela Stolbe about moone, and at night we came to Sofnouers, where we rid all night. The feuen and twentieth, in the morning we fell with Churus Nofe. The eight and twentieth, wee arrived at Arkania, where wee landed our Oyle. The nine and twentieth, wee arrived at

Arbenia. Colmorro.

### Extracts taken out of two Letters of Josias Logan from Pechera, to Master Haklunt Prebend of Westminster.

This piece of an Elephants Tooth was fent into Eng-The Sea Naromzie.

Here vie to come buther in the Winter about two thousand Samoieds with their Commodities, which may be such as we dreamed not on yet. For by chance one came to vs with a piece of an Elephants Tooth, which be faid he bought of a Samoied. And heere are men called Tinguffies, whose Commercial beyond the Riners of Obi, and Taes; and borderetb upon the great Riner Yeniffe : which is a good Riwer and a deepe, and falleth into the Sea Natomzie: And it fould seeme it is not farre from China. 30 Therefore yourmay conceine what hope thereis of this Enterprise, if it please God it may be followed as it onghe to be. Thus be feeching Almizhiu God to hilfle you and us . I commit you to the protection of him, who is the giver of all goodsesse, led. 24. 1611.

In another Letter from Peccara, Auguft 16.

Hetescone two or three thoughand Samoicus utitier to stade onto the supplier of the Ferent Moffer, Reformack, Etimines. And bere is caught in September, good flore of Ferent, Squirrels, Wolfer, Reformack, Etimines. And bere is caught in September, good flore of the Semi-Hetecome two or three thonfand Samoieds bither to trade with their Sables, Beauers, Blacke Salmon, Traine of a certagne great filh, called a Bealonga, and Morfles, and Seales Oyle in the Sommer time, and White Foxes and Feathers, I had some conference with a Russe, who sold mee that the Samoieds told him, that there lye Minchins, which in their Language is strangers, buried in the Sand in Coffins, with their armee arrose their keelts which they estimate to be about fixtie yeeres ago: And 40 that they found Writing Tables in one of their pockets, and other small Trifles which they rooke away. The Vayeats is sometimes open and sometimes shut : and upon them groweth Christallof the Mount, Chryfull voon The Ruffes and Permacks reade yearely with them of the River Obi, and beyond. They goe by Sea mthe Ingests to the great Bay beyond Pechota, called Yowgorsky Shar : into which there fall foure Rivers; The Eastermoit mitere of they call Cara Reca, enche Blacke River ; beyond which they passe unto another, Moetnaia Reca, talled Moetnaia Reca; then shey come to a Voloc, or necke of Land, which continues b but three Verfit; The Volce of oner which they draw their Boats and goods, and fo come to another River, called Zelena Reca, or The necke of Land. Greene River which bringeth them unto Obi : Into which on the Easter fide, the River Tacs falleth. making but one mouth with the Riner Obi, being Should, and they report it to bee as broad toward the mouth, as a man can discerne oner, baning many Ilands therein.

Cara Reca. Zelena Reças ObiRiuer. Taes River. Yeniffey River.

Theguiffey 2

Horfes People in Ar-

Moreoner, there is another great Riner, called Yenilley beyond Taes: which they fay, is rather big. ger and deeper iben Obi; and it runnetb up into the Land no man knoweth bow fare : Although they bane disconcred some fourteene dayes rowing up therein: neither can they learne of the Enhabitants thereof bem farre it firetcheth; whom they call Tinguffey timbe are a proper people of themfelatt. And the Samoieds report that they have travelled fo farre, that they came within fight of a White Citie or Greatinging Towns : which found freme to be builded of flore, for they durft not goe to make trial : and they hard great ringing of Bels . Alfo they fay, that they faw beafts, but they were not like their Deere; for they had a great Mane, a long Taile, no Hornes, and their footing was round, not closen, as their Deeres Ma and they afe toride upon then backs; and not to draw in Sieds as their Deere vie to doe: Thefe I aflove my felfe met. Horfac. And for they report, that there came people mets them all made of Iron, 60 then beauty we mer, hands, and logges: fo that neither Arronies, Swords, nor Spences, could enter; which, They are not 41 I commellar, were people in Armonic. For they faid, that the bundred of them they thought were tire from Co. offic to conquer althor Razlem: By thus you may guither, thus they ore not fore from Cassia and Chi-tina and China. 30. Thus have (ficused ones you the greatest factor, and the mercil to the truth that I know Requesting

7011, if you thinke it meet, that the Right Houserable the Earle of Salisbutic might base a Copie thereof. Thus withing you health and profesitie in this World, and felicitie in the World to come, I cease.

### CHAP. XI.

A briefe Relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and wintering there, began in the geere 1611. Written by WILLIAM PVRSGLOVE.



After Iosas Logan, and William Gourdon, having received directions from the Right Worthipfull Company of English Merchants, Trading Russia. The eleventh of Aprill, 1611. departed from Blacke wall in the River of Thomes, in a good thip, called the Amitie; whereof Iames Vadam of Radriffe was Mafter.

The fixteenth of July, we arrived at Puffeners, being much wondred at by the Inhabitants, a Permae received vs into his House, and let ve have a Ware- They were first

house for our goods. We all continued there vntill the fine and execution of July. Then wee received into returned in our Shallop agains to our ship, having a small Ruffe Boate in our company, to carrie Permacks 20 some of the Feathers and Downe, which we brought there, our owne Boat not beeing able to House, carrie all, being pettered with our Prouision, and some Feathers, and White Foxes. Wee came aboord our thip the feuen and twentieth of July, where wee delivered those White Foxes, Feathers, and Downe, and an exceeding rich blacke Foxe skinne, having laded the Ruffe Boate with part of our goods. The reft of our goods they laid vpon the Sand to be fent vp afterward, leaving mee and Marmaduke Wilfon, and an hired Ruffe with them, where wee attended to heare of Bas from the Towne. But Master Lagan not hearing of any aboue a sunne and an halfe, could not get any to come downe to vs; because they feared to goe over the dry or should Sea in their little Boates being laden.

The one and thirtieth, our flaip departed over the Barre, purposing to make sheir Voyage in 30 Nona Zembla, or fome Ilands not farre diftant from thence. At their departure there were five and twentie Coaches or Soyman, in that Road of Pecbers, with at least two hundred men in them bound for Molgomfey; but hindered by contrary Windes and Ice, our shippes being over the Barre, they all came on house to vs; fome threatning, others flattering vs , but after I had bestowed two Bottles of Beereamong some of the best of them, they all went vp to Pastezera: where most of them that had any goods to sell stayed all Winter, and fold their Commodities in barrer with the Inhabitants, and when they could happen fecretly upon any Samoieds, they would be trading with them alfo : which is contratie to the Printledges granted by the Emperour to the Puffacerits. Their Wintering there was no little hinderance to vs for the fale of our goods.

We arrived at the Towne the feventh of August. In mine absence Master Legen had hired August. part of an House of one, called Tiffon Vrian sch, a Polo san, who was turned Russ.

The three and twentieth of November, I departed from Paffezers to goe for Ruffia, at three November, of the clocke in the afternoone, in the Company of certayne Ruffes, Permacks, and Samoieds, His Voyage of which Samoieds were our Guides ouer the Mountaynes: and one dayes journey ouer the Rocks, per-land to which they call Cameni, which are not Rockie Hills, as in Norway, but high Lands, yet in most Commerce. places smooth, and most marith grounds full of little Hillocks, which being covered with Snow Mountaynes & and frozen, did not much annoy vs. Our Argeshey or Caravan were about two hundred and ten Cameri, or Sleds, drawne the most part with two Deere in a Sled. They had also about two hundred spare Rockes. Deere, to ease the wearied. We kept company untill the fourth of December together, having

50 passed two third parts of our way to Slobotca, being the first Towne in the Countrey of Melen, that we faw. And then in company of foure Sleds, having each two choice Buckes, with a Samoied in the fift for our Guide, we left the Argelney, and rid polt for Sloboten, where were arrived He sermeth & the ninth of December, at ten of the clocke at night. In this Towne I found one Thomas Ligar of December an Englishman, who had ferued Mafter Richard Cackes of London, who faluting mee in English, maruelled much to meet me there: and carried me from the rest of my company to his Lodging, Thomas Ligan, and gaue me there very kind entertaynment. The next morning I departed thence in his Sled, hauing over night hired an Horfe to the next Towne, which was fifteenth Verits off : And to travelling day and night, changing Horfes at enery convenient place. I came to Colmogro the twelfth of December : and delinered my Letters from Mafter Iofias Logan our Factor in Paffere. He arrived at

60 ra, to Master Fabian Smith, then Agent for the English Company. Having rested my selfe foure Colmogro, the dayes there, and receined certayne Money to helpe to put off fome of our goods at Pechora, I 12.0f December departed from Colmogro the feuenteenth of December, and came to Slobotca the nineteenth day; the height of the Pole being there some fixtie five degrees. I stayed there till the two and twentieth of the faid moneth, by which time the Permacks and the Inhabitants of Puffoxers,

Winter doe fend Cloth and Money ouer Land.

The fourth of

The mapner of tranciling with the San

Dangerous Wolues.

Slobetca.

Trade with the

Hauing made my prouision for my journey, and taken my leane of Master Thomas Ligon, wee fet forward that night, and rid not aboue five and twentie Verits, to a place where wee found the Argeshey which set out from Sloboica the two and twentieth day in the morning by breake of day. We had better passage in our returne, then we had in our journey from Pustozera, by rea-Show berts retatheir Tra. fon of much Snow fallen in the time of our being in Ruffia, and trozen fo hard, that it bare both Deere and Sleds in all places. Wee kept together with the Argeshey, being then two hundred and fiftie Sleds, till we had pasted more then two thirds of our way ouer the Mountaynes: and 10 then long before day having choien Buckes of the best, wee departed the fourth of Januarie, being eight Sleds in company, and rid post all that day and night following, beeing Moone-light, faue forsetimes for the space of an houre that wee stayed where, the Samoied our Guide knew Mose food for there was good store of Mosse, (which is white) to refresh our Deere. The fifth of Lamurie, we came to Puffezera, having in forcie houres travelled three hundred and fiftie Verits with

our choice Buckes. Our Argeshey or Carauan arrived there after vs the twelfth of Ianuarie.

ny other places Eastward, as Ongoria, Siberia, or Molgomfey; know, by their continuall travell,

The Samoteds being the onely Guides in Winter, either from Paffozers to Slobotca, or to a-

were readie to returne to Pechora with their goods, being Rie, Malt, Hops, Salt, Aqua-vite, and fome course Cloth. Moreouer, divers Ruffes having their Sonnes or Kinimen Leigers there, in

the way, though it be neuer fo thick weather, as also where most store of white Mosse is growing: and according as they find themselues neere vnto some mossie place, be it somthing before night, 20 or within night foure or fine houres before they can come thither : there for that Night they pitch their Tents, being for the most part made of Deere and Elkes skinnes : we had in our companie foute great Tents fet vp, and some twentie under each Tent. This worke of pitching the Tents belongeth vnto the Women. In the meane time the men vnyoakethe Deere, and turne them loofe to digge through the Snow, bee it neuer so deepe, for their food and sustenace. Then the Samoinds (of every Tent one) out of the next Wood, provide as much Fuell as shall serve in turnes for their abode there. First, they set on Kettles full of Snow water, which being welted, Hard loft lod. they drinke thereof every one a good draught : then they feeth their Supper, ving as before Snow water melsed for their Drinke. Our lodgings were vpon the Snow within our Tents, round about the Fire, having vnder vs for our Beds the skinnes of Deere, conered with our day 30 apparell. For all the time of our journey, the Merchants, whether Stranger, Rulle, or Permac, according to the number of them, make prouision of Victuals to feed the whole familie in every Poore Samuelds Tent, every man his day about, together with the Samuelds, their Wives and Children; who carrie all their Houshold enery where with them ; and out of their Sonnes and Daughters, they appoint a watch ouer their Deere, for feare of the Wolfe and other Beafts, which notwithftanding their watch sometimes kill in a night one or two of their Deere, as it fell out two nights in our journey to Slobetca. This Slobetca is a pretie Towne, having in December and Ianuarie, great refort of people repayring thither, as well Rich Ruffer out of many places, with money to buy Furres, as others with provision of Meale and Malt, and other Commodities, to furnish the Puffezerits, as also to buy Fish, to wit, Salmons, Oyle of Bealages, Deere skinnes, 40

and Furres of them. The tenth of Ianuary, the Inhabitants of Puffozera, returned from Trading with the Sa-Samuels of Ou- moieds of Ougoria, on which Iourney they fet forward the fine and twentieth of November : and within three dayes after, came betwixt eight or nine hundred Samoieds with a small quantitie of their Commodities, in respect of former yeeres, by reason of Warre betweene the Samoieds of moiels come to Ougoria, and Molgomfey, who were wont to Trade one with another, and not to watre one against another. So Sables, and other Commodities being scant, the inhabitants fold them very deare : yet notwithstanding, the Ruffer bought vp all, strining one to have them before another, So that after that little money, which we had was bestowed, wee could not doe any thing in barter. Moreouer, the Raffer did not onely informe against vs to the Inhabitants to ftirre them The falle fug. vp againft vs, but also vied the like meanes to the Samoieds to diffwade them from trading with vs, either in their owne Countries, or else-where; alleadging that wee would betray them, and not onely carrie them away to make them Slaues, and robbe them, but also would murcher and destroy all the rest, where foeuer wee should come. The Inhabitants also of Passozera, being incensed by the Russes, doubting wee would enter farther into their Trade Eastward, began also to hinder, and forbid the Samoieds to come to vs. Yet by meanes of our Hoalt being a Polac borne, we spake with divers of the principall of the Samoieds, hee being our Interpreter, and wee our felues understood certayne Samoieds speaking broken Ruffe, and by these meanes we found out more at large the despitefulnesse of the Russes, and the enuie of some of the Inhabitants against vs ; as also their feare, least wee or any other Stranger, should enter into further Discouerie of their trafficking toward the East, but especially about the River Ob. Some fayd we were sent as 60 spyes to betray their Land to the Pole or the Swethen, with whom they then had warre. Some gave counsell to put vs vnder the Water : others admised to fet vs vpon the Sand, where wee Should have beene without all doubt drowned in thort space, others thought best to send vs vp

to the Nobi litie, and to feaze on all our goods to the vie of the State. But divers of the beft in the Towne, with whom wee kept all friendship that possible we could, withstood those bloudie practifes. The Lord therefore bee bleffed. The fifth of March, the Inhabitants of Pufforer went agains to Slobetca, carrying the Ruffes March.

with their Commodities thither.

They returned home the eleventh of Aprill, 1612. The one and twentieth of Aprill, water Aprill, 1612. was first seene vpon the maine River Peshora aboue the Ice, descending from aboue Onstructiona,

May so, the Ice The twentieth of May, the Ice brake vp. The fine and twentieth of May, certayne of the In-brake vp.

habitants of Puftozer, went by water vnto Ouft-zelma.

The fixe and twentieth, lofias Logan with our Hoaft the Polonian, hired a Boate and went toward Onli-zilma, carrying with him certayne Cloath and Copper Kettles, in hope to fell them well there, being intreated in the Summer before by one of their Townelmen to come thither, or to fend one to Winter there : alledging that they got great flore of Lofh-hydes, Squirrels, Sables, and Bevers, Which some yeeres indeed, as we were credibly informed, falleth out according to his report. But at his arrivall there, divers of the Townelmen came against him, and would not suffer Our meain. him nor any of his Boate to Land for the space of ten houres : but in the end, they let him goe on treated to wing shoare, after, as wee suppose, the Inhabitants of Pufforer had bought most of their Commodities. teras Ouff-So that hee thaying there two dayes, could get but nine Losh-hydes, and halfe a timber of course vilna. Sables, in barter for some Cloath and Copper. The principall cause of his going thither, was to meete with some of the Permacks out of Permis, who some yeeres come downe with Rie, and Rie-meale, and thought to have given notice to those Permacks of our being at Puffoxer, and to

haue willed them to have perswaded their Countrey-men to bring thit her the next Spring following all their Commodities, being Waxe, Honey, Losh-hydes, and Furres, which they might doe for halfe the charge that they are at in bringing them to Archangell, on the River Duina. Ouff-zilma is a pretie Towne of some uxtie Houses : and is three or foure dayes sayling with Ouff vilna.

a faire wind against the ftreame from Puffexer, but backe againe they may fayle it in two dayes. The third of Iune, came the first Ruffes in their Cayooks by River out of Ruffes to Puffozer. Iune 3.

These Cavooks, be small Boates of two tunnes, having two men in each Boate.

The twentieth of Lune, nine Ruffe Coaches or Soymas, passed by Pustorer from Outstainen for Sixteene Soy-30 Molgomfey. The one and twentieth, fixe Ruffe Soymas more departed from Pufforer: all the man depart for rest having given over their Voyage, which came thither the Summer before, 1611. The two Malgorife. and twentieth, one Soyma belonging to the Towne of Puffezer, departed for Molgomfer.

The three and twentieth, and four and twentieth, the Inhabitants of Puffoxer, went to Fish Fishing for for Bealugos under the Boluan, being the highest Land neere unto the Drie Sea, and two dayes the Boluan.

fayling from the Towne. The fine and twentieth, I departed after them, and arrived there the feuen and twentieth

But with most not one.

hoping to have provided good fore of Bealingos Oyle. But it fell out contrarie : though there were aboue fiftie Boates, having in every Boate three men, and in many foure, by reason it pleafed God to fend fuch windie and stormie weather, that the Boates could not goe to Sea in many 40 dayes together, during their wonted time of Fishing for those Bealts; being till the twentieth of July. Then every man leaveth that Fishing, and repaire to their owne Fisherie, to hunt Ducks, Geefe, and Swannes, which most yeeres they get in abundance, and make good profit of their Feathers and Downe : as also of their Flesh, which they falt vp in Caske for Winter prouision, feruing them also all the Summer for Flesh dayes. These Bealinger they catch with harping Irons, Manner of kiltyed fast to a long rope of ninetie or an hundred fathoms, with a staffe of the length of two lingthem. yards or formewhat longer, being put loofe into the Iron, wherewith when the bealt commeth The Ruffer sp. within the reach of him that ftriketh, he finiteth him with the Iron, leauing it in the Beaft : then on the Ice vie the rope being layed out cleere to vere out, the man holding his Staffe still in his hand : but the Morfe assister. Beaft being wounded hafteneth to the bottome, where having beate himfelfe neare to death, doe sheir zeeso they hall in their rope by little and little, the Beaft afcending thereby. And if they finde him lugo: but their not neere death, they firike him againe : and being dead they cut off his skinne with the fat on rope is longer, it in hany parts, some the breadth of two hands, some more or lesse. Then comming on shoare, made soften they take the Fat from the skinne, and cut it in small peeces to dissolue it to Oyle, casting away one end to the Flesh which is red, to the Fowles of the Sea; except some poore Samoied come that way, buoy it. who taketh it, though it have lyen putrifying two or three dayes, and dryeth it, and maketh Sameieds pogood cheare with it with his Familie. This Beaft is as bigge as two good Sturgions. Moreouer, uertie. I was informed by an ancient Traueller, that the Flesh and Fat of that Bealt, being cut as Beefe meate in Italie meate in Italie and falted in Caske, is a great and rich Commoditie in Italie; which cannot chuse but to bee much better then young Whales, which I have heard that the Biskayners vie to preferue for good 60 meate. With the Fat of some one of these Beats, they will fill three Barrels, of some leffer two barrels, and some yeeld but one barrell of Blubber, which they call Shilliga. In that Summer when I was there, by reason of Northerly windes blowing hard, they killed by all their Boates not about fortie Beaits : with fome Boate they killed two, with other three, with fome foure.

Iuly 12.

by River to

Pufferera, to

terch home

August.

A Boarefent

The thirteenth of July, I received a Letter from Mafter lofiat Logan, the effect whereof was ; That the Company of our English Merchants of Ruffia, had lent a Boate out of Ruffia by River, which stood them in foureteene Rubbels or Marks for vs to goe in her, or by Lodia for Russia For they were purposed not to send a Ship for vs that yeere.

The ninth of August, Master lossas Lagan, and Marmaduke Wilfon, came from the Towne of The ninthol August, Matter Issue Logan, and Marmaduke Walson, came from the Towne of add in Com-Puspecera in a Lodia to goe for Russia, and Anchored in the Glambus, which is a deep place of the pany into Ross. River. Heere wee stayed ten dayes to make up our Oyle. In the meane time the Lodia got her full lading with Omelies, and Seegies salted in Caske, attending a faire winde.

The minth of August, wee set sayle out of the Glowbue, and entred the Suebei-morie, that is, The Drie or Should Sea, and stirred away next hand North North-east.

The nine and twentieth, a little before day, not thinking wee had beene fo neere the Land, we were on the Breches of Promoi Coskoi, or the Sands of Promoi, a bad Harbour so called by the Ruffer, and beate ouer one Sand by Gods prouidence onely, so high, being halfefull of water, that in disparre of euer getting her off againe, wee vuladed most of the goods, as Fish, Oyle, Feathers, Downe, and Losh-hydes, as soone as it began to bee day-light, and that the Russes knew vs to bee vpon the mayne Land. The thirtieth day, being fomewhat calme, and the wind Easterly, but thicke weather still, there came three men from Vafilie Beregen his Lodia, who was our Confort, while wee were working to get our Lodia a floate againe, and told vs, that their Lodia was beaten in peeces vpon the mayne Land, some seuen or eight Versts to the Westward off ws. The one and thirtieth, wee laboured againe, and by Gods affiftance got her a floate, having 20 taken out almost all her goods: and that night laded some part againe.

September.

The first of September, wee got all our goods aboord, and at Night-tide being faire weather, the winde North-west and Moone-light, wee put from that comfortlesse place, and went into the Promoi Harbour, having on the Barre nine or ten foote water ; but within foure or five fathoms. A South-west Moone maketh there a full Sea. It is in the great Bay betweene Suetinos and Candinos. The second, the winde at East North-east faire weather, wee set sayle with our leake Lodia, the Pumpe neuer resting.

The third, the winde variable, wee fayled along the the shoare till about Noone : then the wind comming to the West, wee put backe againe for Christona Stanonecha, which is the Crosse

Harbour, where wee rode in a fine River, having a bad Barre.

The ninth, in the Morning wee purposed to put to Sea againe, the winde Easterly : but the Barre was so growne and warped vp with sands, when wee came vpon the entrance of it, that we could not passe ouer, neither with Wind nor Oares, but wereforced vpon the mayne : where our Lodia was beaten so high vpon the sand, that all hope of saving her was past. That day wee got out of her an hundred Barrels of Fish and Oyle, and yet we could not get her off againe.

North-meft winder cause March Snow.

The tenth, the winde being at North-west, caused high Tides. by which meanes we got her off, and brought her againe into Harbour. The eleventh wee had fo much winde and Snow, that we could not get our goods aboord all that day. The twelfth, we got all aboord, having stopped most of our leakes with Mosse and old Cloutes.

Candina.

The thirteenth, the wind at East, faire weather, wee put to Sea out of that bad Harbour, lea- 40 uing one of our Boates there, and eight Barrels of Fish to ease our leake Lodia. The fourteenth, about mid-night we were thwart of Candines, and stirred South-west, and South South-west all the next day : but the Night following being much winde, the Ruffes effeeming themselves to bee on the Westerne shoare, strooke sayle, and by Day-light we saw Land to the Westward of the White Sea, being the fixteenth day : and wee were forced againe into another bad Harbour, called Danilo Stolb, that is, Daniels Piller, on the Coast of Lapland, where we made our Lodia fast among the Rockes : where shee lay drie halfe-tide, and lay there beenept and wind-bound vntill the fixe and twentieth day : and then at Tide-time wee got out of that place.

Archangel,

The eight and twentieth, wee entred into the River of Dayna, and landed that night at the Caffle of Archangel in the English House, all our Oyle, Losh-hydes, and other goods; as Fea- 50

The nine and twentieth, about mid-night we came to the English House at Colmogro, and there continued all the Winter.

The three and twentieth of Aprill 1613. the River of Dayna brake vp at Archangel.

# Other Observations of the Sayd WILLIAM PVRSGLOVE.

Rom Medenskoie Zauoros to the Isle of Vargats, is two dayes sayling with a Ruffe Lodie. 60 From Vaygets to the River Ob, is four dayes fayling. The River Ob lyeth North and South. Vogest land.

The course from Vaygas to Tomboi-coscop, is North-east; and from thence East to the mouth of The Riser Of.

Within the Ob fome three dayes tayling, is a Riser on the Ealt fide called Taybaung as it.

The Riser Tay

Ob. Within the Ob fome three dayes tayling, is a Riser on the Ealt fide called Taybaung as it. were a Barre at the entrance thereof : yet there is alwayes eleuen or twelue foote water vpon

### CHAP. 11. Molgomfey a great Mart Towne. Affembly of Hunters.

it, but within it is very deepe. Within two dayes fayling within the Tau, the Rulle hath builded a Towne and a Cattle, being called Molgomfey; where all the Hunters of Beatts affemble, Molcomfey a and bring their Furs with them. Also the Ruffe Soymas or Boats and thole of Puffezers come this great Mart. ther with their Meale and other Merchandizes. And having fold or bartered their Commodities, enery one returneth home, fome to Puffezera, and others to Ruffia. The Hunters also provide against the next Winter for Hunting againe.

There are three Rivers under the high Land of Ongoria and Naramzey, and great flore of Ongoria and Morfles about the point of Naramzei, whither the Inhabitants of Puffozera doe fend a Naramzei. Lodia in the Autumne, with divers Commodities to trade with the Ongorsan Samoieds, Alfo

10 they kill many Morfies, onely taking their Teeth, and trauell among the Samoieds all the Wing Store of Morfthey kill many Morites, onely taking their receip, and taking in Ianuarie next following. Some feater to trade with them, and returne ouer Land to Pullezera in Ianuarie next following. Some feater to trade with them, and returne ouer Land to Pullezera in Ianuarie next following. Some feater to trade with them, and returne ouer Land to Pullezera in Ianuarie next following. yeeres, if the winde doe not ferue them instantly, they are glad to give over that Voyage by Sea. They returns As for example, in the yeere 1611, when we wintered there, the frost came vpon them before in lanuarie. they had wind to ferue them; whereupon they were forced to give ouer that Voyage, And affoone as they could trauell by Sled, fome of the richeft of the Sonnes and Seruants of the Townsmen, were fent with certayne Commodities to barter with the Samoieds, against their Fathers or other Friends should come after in the Winter, and to buy up all the best Furs and other Com-

The Ruffes when they fayle for Molgomfey in their Soymas, goe not about Naramzei point to 20 the mouth of the River Ob, but fayle vp a narrow River, called Moetnaia Reca, that is to fay, the Moetnaia Reca Muddie River, & at the head therof they hale their Boats over a little neck of land into the River Zelenai, that is, the Green River, & so fall down into the River Ob: and so faile Southward up the Zelenai Reca. River Ob till they come to the River Tas. From the Barre of Tas to the Rivers mouth, is above a Ob Resa. daies & a nights failing. There is an Iland in the mouth of Tar, being very high land. From thence Anlland in the the Riner to the Towne, leaving the Hand on the left hand are eight dayes fayling. But ere you mouth of Tai, come to the Tas River, there is a small River called Power, or Pier; where they get the best Sa. A Towne. bles of all Molgomfey. And up the River Tas to Volochanko, against the streame are fixe dayes A necke of fayling Eastward, till you come to a Voloc, or necke of Land a mile and an halfe ouer, beeing marish ground, ouer which the Russes and Pustozerits hale their Boats into another River, called 30 Toronham, and rowing downe with the ftreame three dayes, they fall into the mightie River Te- The River Tenifee. At the mouth of the River Toronban, there dwell people on an Iland, having builded them The River.

a little Towns and a Church. And from thence they fayle downs the River to Hawtick, which Hawtick is a great River, and runneth vnto the Eaft.

Goates in this Countrey.

The River of the Tinguffies, is three dayes and three nights fayling within the River Tenifeey. The River of There are no Woods neere vnto the mouth of lemifee. But in the River of Tinguifie are great flore the Tinguifies. of Woods. There are two or three Rivers betweene the mouth of Tenifer and Tinguifie, but not Two or three Colored as the Timeuffie River is never with which the Ruffer doe fifty and officers in the Rivers from fo large as the Tompuffic Riner is; neere vnto which the Ruffes doe fifth: and afficone as it free- Tinguffic some zeth, they go againe to their old trade of hunting the Sables, Beners, and Foxes. And having in mouth of Ye two winters solaboured for themselues, those that be good Husbands return rich into Russia: And nice. 40 except they fall againe into pouertie through fire or other wayes, neuer returne thither againe.

The Tinguiffus are a taller people then the Samoieds, and weare their Garments made of skins thorter, and made closer to their bodies then the Samoieds. They be a very gentle people to con-

From the mouth of Ob to the great River lenifee, as a Ruffe told mee, is foure dayes and foure nights fayling. Betwixt Ob and Tenifee, is high blacke Land.

Beyond lenifce Eastward is another great River, called Pifda. The Land trendeth due East The River Pife beyond the River Imifee to Pifida: and to another River, called Catonga, which commeth out of da. Cathay, whose King the Permackes call Tentha Tfar. The River lyeth North and South, they The River Caknow not how farre. For the Tinguffies, of whom they had intelligence of this River, are afraid tonge. 50 of Gun-shot that they doe heare, which they vie on the South part of that River, and dare not trauell vp it. In it they faw Veffels with two or three fayles; which in the Spring, fayle downe Ships with two the River Northward, and in the Autumne, returne agains to the South. But they know not or three failes, whether they fish, or goe to gather some Mynes, which are supposed to be in those Countreyes, not daring to goe neere them. It was told me, that betwixt Pifida and Catonga, about the midway vpon the Sea-coaft were found diners Stones, some like vnto Gold in colour, other white Horses about and like Silser. Allo the Tregulius haug feene people about that great Ruer, called Catomes, the Ruster and its faid, that there is great store of Come, Beefer, Horles, Sheepe, and tregue.

The travell from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situated thereupon, oner Land.

Rom Puffozera vp the River Pechora, with a faire wind to the River Oufe, is fourteene dayes fayling by River. From Onfe to Podcamen, ten dayes. From Podcamen to Ob eight dayes by

1

Berefena.

Deere in Winter time, associate sthe Snow is fallen and frozen. From thence to Beresena fixteene dayes; which is a Towne of Trade, it is from Puffozera to Vade in Ougeria, beeing on the West fide of Ob, a monethes journey or travell by Detre. This Vade is a little Towne, having the The River of Pechora, runneth through great Permia; and the head thereof is five Weekes

in the Ruffe Tongue, The higher: as Vercho-towria, is Towria The higher. From thence by River is ten dayes journey to Tumen. From Tumen to Tobolfes, fixe dayes down the River Irigh, To-

trauell from Puffozera. From Great Permia, is nine dayes travell by Horse and Sled to Vercho-towria. Vercho signifieth Verebio-towria.

Tobolica. Surzout.

bufca is the chiefest Citie in Siberia. From Tobolfca to Sargana, or Sergalt, is fixe Weckes jour- 10 ney up the River Ob. From Surgest to the Citie Tom, feated among the Tarton, is three Weeks up the River Ob. The Ruffer know no farther of the River Ob; nor how farre it firetcheth to the Southward : But they suppose that it runneth much farther to the South, by reason there Many Nations come so many severall Nations downe the said River to trade at Surgest, and Tobolice: 25 namely, the people of Boughar, the Teficks or Persian Merchants, and many forts of Tartars. Abrabam Michaelonich was chiefe Customer at Surgent, 1611. And hee told me, that hee received for South to trad: the Emperours Cultome for goods, bought and fold that yeere, the fumme of fixteene thousand

Moreouer, he told me, that the people of Cathar doe trade to Surgout, and people from divers The Country other Kingdomes, as from Alteen Tear, or King Alteen, who among other things bring Plates of 20 of King Alteen. Silver and fell them. Another Russe named Philat, who had travelled farther among the Tingus-An Aline is 6x Plate of Silver weighing in Ruffe Money fortie two Alteens, foure Dingoes, for twentie blue

Berefous vpon the Ob, before you come neere Tobolfos, is a Towne of Trade for Furres, but especially for Losh-hides; which are bought for tenne Alteenes a piece. I was told by a Permae, that there was a Ruffe which bought foure thousand Elkes, or Losh-hides, there for a fourth part of a Roble or Marke a piece.

To the Eastward of Pechora are store of Hawkes, which I hold to bee as good as the Tinkie Hawkes, namely, flight Falcons, Goshawkes, and ler-falcons, whereof some are as white as 30 Snow, others speckled White and Red. Likewise, there are all kinds of the richeft Sables white as from, brought from Molgomfey, and blacke Foxes. There is also Christall of the Mountayne, If we might haue libertie to trauell thole Countreyes, wee might haue these Commodities cheaper there then at Pechora. And within the Ob we might vent our Commodities at a better rate.

> Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tinguffies.

[Irft, at Pechora readie Money, being Rosse Money, is the best and principallest both to put off 40 other goods to profit, as also to get credit among the Merchants frangers at our first comming thither, till Trade be fetled and knowne through Permia, and Siberia. Salt, Rie, Meale, white Danike Rie Kil-dryed for heating in the ship, Oat-meale and Butter for the Samouds; all forts of course Cloth, some fine Cloth, Copper, and Brasse Kettles of the middle size, from two pound to thirtie, or thirtie fiue. But Braffe not aboue fifteene pound with eares of Braffe, all the Kettles and eares of one piece. Also Files to sharpe Arrowes and other things, small Horse-bels, course Canuaffe for vpper Gownes. Foure peny, fixe peny, and ten peny Nayles: fmall Anchors of foure and twentie pound a piece. Frankincenie for their Churches and Houtes.

## Commodities for the Tinguffics.

Thewter, Pewter Sawcers, Little Platters, Flat Poringers, some grauen, some ungrauen. Nefts of Cups, some grauen, others vngrauen. Salt-fellers. Plates, or sheets of Latten being white. Hamberough Lichenaes, Blue, Red, and Tawny. But I think our course Northerne dozens, and course Kersies Northerne dyed into those colours, would vent as well and better then they: they being thicker walked. And the Samoieds delight aftogether in thicke Cloth. Grey doozens of an easie price would vent well among the Permiets, which were much grey or mingled coloured course Cloth. And some course doozens died Yellow, or Northerne course Cloth Red and Yellow, would bee no bad Commoditie.

Aqua vita of two forts, the best and indifferent for the Samoieds. Gliffe Beades, Skie colou- 60 red. Needles round and three square. Braffe Basons, Ruffe Linnen Cloth, or Polife Linnen Cloth. Hops, Mault, Ruffe Sope. All forts of strong Wines, as Sacke and Canarie Wine. Bacon is a good Commoditie in Siberia.

CHAP. XII.

Later Obsernations of WILLIAM GOVEDON, in his Wintering at Pustozera, in the yeares 1614. and 1615. with a Description of the Samoyeds life.



He twentieth of Nouember, I departed from Pufforera, to goe to Tongorie, at foure Nouember; in the after-noone, and did ride most of the Night, before wee came to the 1614.

Choome, going East South-east. The one and twentieth, Mibiles returned Histourney to the Towne, and we remoued and went our lourney, faire and little wind. The leagues of Ot. two and twentieth, little wind North, wee kept on our courfe East South-east, and neers to hauing gone from the Towne 50 miles, at night Mibiles came to vs. The three Before, and twentieth, little wind, we went on our Lourney, and at Noone passed ouer a little River, cal. The River Co.,

led Coy, falling North into Pechora, 14. leagues below the Towne, and at Night came all the close the Ruffes from the Towne, having gone 24. miles East South-east. The foure and twentieth, wee removed on our Journey being very cold, and went not a-

boue ten miles East South-east, at Night wee broke one of our Sleds, which went laden with

The fine and twentieth, wee went forward very flowly, at Noone I received a Letter from Master Copman by Forma Cretisone, this after-noone another had his Sled broken, we went 10. or 12. miles. The fixe and twentieth, we continued on our Journey, and at Eeuen we passed over 2

The River River, called Shaptina, falling South into Pechora; halfe way betwixt Puffozer and Ouff-zihna, The Kiver Shaptina, falling South into Pechora; halfe way betwixt Puffozer and Ouff-zihna, Shaptina, falling South into Pechora; halfe way betwixt Puffozer and Ouff-zihna, a Sled broken and mended out of hand, going East South-east 15, miles. The seuen and twentieth ling into Prebeing Sunday, the wind at South-west, did blow very hard, and Snow all the day, the snow dri- chora uing that wee could hardly fee which way to goe, yet we kept on East South-east 18.miles,

The eight and twentieth, in the Morning, wee passed oner Nongorotka River, which falleth The River West South-west into Shapkina River, fixe dayes lourney aboue Oust-zisma, the wind South-Novemoikasal west, and Snow all day, wee kept on still East South-east 15. miles. The nine and twentieth, ling into Shep-30 the wind South, with Snow all day, being not cold, we went on East South-east 20. miles. The tina. the wind South, the wind East South-cast, very cold in the after-noone, we passed over Habeaga River, falling imo Fe

which falleth into Pechera, fixe dayes lourney aboue Oufl-zilma, going 20.miles. The first of December, the wind East blowing very hard, the Snow did drive so hard, that we could not goe forward, but flood still all day and did not remoue. The second, calme and not so December. cold, wee went on East South-east 10 miles. The third, in the Morning it was very warme, at Noone the wind North, it was extreame cold, the Snow driving very thicke, in the after-noone The River Hawe passed ouer the River Haryena, which falleth into Columy South-east, having gone East South-into Column,

The fourth day warme, we went East, at Eeven we came to a River called Colney, which fal- The River cal-40 leth South into the River Oufe, where wee stayed all Night, having gone 20. miles. The fift, \*97 falling inin the Morning we went on vpon the River fix or feuen miles East and by North, and came where to ONS. it parted in two, the one keeping North-eaft, the other being called Sandamets; from the Southeast wee went betwixt them both East and by South 12. miles, and tooke vp our lodging vpon 2 Playne where no Wood is to bee seene.

The fixt, being Saint Nicholss day, which with the Ruffer is held a principal day, in the Saint Nicholss In clux, oring same exposuse us, which we can be come, lighting Wax-candles before them, making their Prayers to them, according to their order; after which, I gaue them a bottle of Aqua vita, wherewith the Guides were drunke, that they could not guide their Deeres, but fet me to direct the way by Compasse, which I did all the day, although I had but little skill,

so we went South-east and by East 20. miles. The fewenth, being very faire weather, our Guides lay all the day with Pohmeall, and could not goe forward. The eight, faire and calme, we went forward South cast and by East 10.miles, and A small River tooke vp our lodging by a small River which falleth into Sandauets River. The ninth, very cold, Sandauets, that we had much adoe to keepe our felues from freezing, going on foot all the day ouer a playne where no Wood groweth, going South-east 15. miles, and lay by a Wood side all night. The

Sunday, the Frost continued extreame, we remouing, there were few in the Companie that had not some part of their faces frozen, and my selfe, although I was something better provided then any of them, yet I had fomething to doe to keepe my felte from freezing, going on foot most 60 part South-east and by East 15. miles. The tweltth, the Frost was so extreme, that there was no

looking forth, but lay still all day. The thirteenth, not altogether so cold, were proceeded on our The River Ho-Iourney 20. miles South-east & by East, and at night we passed over the River Hofeda, which fal- feda, falling me leth South-east into the River Azua. The fourteenth, the winde South, with Snow and not fo to Atla. cold, we went thorow Woods 20. miles, East South-east. The fifteenth, the wind South, with

tenth, the Frost was so extreame, that wee lay still and could not proceed. The eleuenth, being Terrible Frost.

CHAP.

The fixteenth, the wind South, in the Morning we fet forth East South-east, over a high ridge to Ouf.

The Mountain or Mountayne, called Tangoda and you the top of the fame the wind shirling North, with Snow fo thicke, that our Guides did not know well which way to goe, yet fometimes backe and fomtimes forward, with much adoe we got ouer, in the Ecuening passing ouer the River Regards Meniba, falling South into Oufe, where we stayed all Night, having gone 20, miles.

Deeplog, rating South the Costs, where we tayed at Fugor, having gone 20, mines.

The feuenteenth, faire and warme, wee passed thorow Woods, where the Snow was very deepe, and came to a Playne, called Correspon Tundra, where a Russe whose name was Correspondent to the Costs of deepe, and came to a Playne, called Correspon 1 mores, where a knife whose name was correspond to dyed, (and was buried, therefore they gave that place that Name) some thirtie yeeres past, and was buried therefore they gave that place that Name) from thirties with the buried came as a miles Courbe coeff and bu F.16. The sink-aparts in al., 10 where we stayed all Night, having gone 15 miles South-east and by East. The eighteenth, in the The River Re Morning wee went on thorow Woods, the Snow being very deepe, and at Mid-night we came norming were well as the state of the Ruffer had a Gorodocke, and bettering with the Sameit, talling into having gone 30 miles East South-east, the River falleth with turnings to the Southward into

The thirtieth of December, I observed with my Astrolobia, and had the Sun 2. degrees aboue Akitude and Ianuarie.

the Horizon, Latitude 65 degrees and 48 minuts, the variation of the Compaffe being 20 degrees. The fixth of Ianuary, at three in the after-noone, wee departed from the Gorodocke, the wind South South-west blowing very hard, going North-west 30.miles, and at mid-night came to the Choome. The feuenceanth, the wind South South-weft, blowing very hard, the Snow driving 20 fo thicke, that we could not goe ouer the Mountayne, called ? angode, but flayed by a Wood fide, to thicke, that we could not goe out the mountain department, out has endy a recool had hading gone West North-west 14. miles. The eight, in the Morning wee passed our the Riner, called Roganeya Meniha, and at Noone ouer the Tangada, keeping backe our way 30. miles West North-west, faire and warme. The ninth, little wind North but sharpe, we went on North-west and by West, at Noone we passed ouer Azua River, and in the after-noone came to a Herd of wilde Deere, the Sameits killed three, giving me a haunch ; going in all 20. miles,

The tenth, calme and very cold, we went on 20 miles, Weft North-weft. The eleuenth, little wind South-east; at Noone we passed ouer Hofela River, which falleth South-east into Acua, we went 30.miles North-west & by West. The twelfth, the wind South and cold, we went West we were 30 minus round recks & Ponds 25 miles. The thirteenth, this day the wind South and 30 not cold, we went West & by South 30. miles, thorow many woods and plaines. The fourteenth, faire and warme, at Noone we passed ouer Saudaers River, which falleth South-west into Colury,

The fifteenth, being Sunday, we went West North-west over a broad playne, with many great Ponds, at Night we passed over Columy River, going South into the River Onfe, which falleth into Pechara, nine dayes journey from Ouft- zitms, we went 30.miles, having most of our Deere tyred, the Snow was so deepe. The sixteenth, little wind, we went on West North-west, at noone we puffed ouer Haryens River, which falleth South-east into Colney, going 20. miles. The feuenteenth, the wind South, blowing very hard, the Snow driving, wee went West North-west 25.miles, at Night we tooke vp our lodging vpon the River Habeaga, which falleth into Pecho- 40

The eighteenth, we went on West North-west 10, miles, where the Townslmen ouer-tooke vs, riding post to the Towne, where making our selves ready, wee followed, the same Eenening we passed ouer Nongorotha River, which falleth West South-west into Shapkina River, which falleth South-west into Pechora, halfe way betwixt Pufforer and Oust-zitma, and in the Morning we passed ouer Cog Riner, which falleth into Prebora 14.leagues Northward from Pussor; and the fame day, being the nineteenth day in the after-noone, wee came to the Towne, having rid about 150. miles without reft. The last of Aprill, 1615. being Sunday, was the first appearing of the water, increasing at Puffozora. The feuenth of May, Enan Cresicone, had almost flaine with a knife his two Vncles, Foma Croticone, and Erasmi Croticone.

The eighteenth, the water was at the highest, being so extreame that many were forced out of their Houses, and we our selues in like manner, having the water a foot deepe in our bed Chamber. The twentieth, the water did a little begin to fall, and so continued falling by degrees.

The ninth of lune, my servant Marmaduke Wilson came from Ouft-zilma, having Wintered there, to buy and fell goods, bringing with him fuch Commodities as the place doth affoord, as Sables, Rolomacks, Wolues, Ermins, Squirils, &c.

The fifteenth, we laded three small Lodias with goods, to carrie downe to the Glouboka. The three and twentieth, I departed from Puffoxer, and came to the Glouboka the fine and twentieth, Shoulder in 67. With two small Lodias laden with goods. The eight and twentieth of June, I observed at the wint two man Louiss sales in the height of 67 degrees 55 minutes, and the Compafe varyed 60 18. degrees. The last of lune, I went from the Gloubules to passe out the Drie Sea, the wind at South, but the wind comming to the North, I returned backe the next day. The second of July, being Sunday, the wind at South South-east, I departed the second time, to come to the Zawers, but comming neere Dolger, an Iland lying in the Drie Sea, the Ice lay fo firme, that we could not paffe but returned backe to the Glauboka.

CHAP. 12. Samoyeds apparell, Sleds, Deere, Women, Polygamie, Religion, &c. 555

The fourth of July, Iohn Copman came to the Glouboka, bringing with him all our goods for favle, having payed all Customes and duties for the same. The fixth of the same, I departed the third time from the Glauboka, the wind at South, but did not continue, but came to the East, and East North-east, so rowing along it the shoare, wee passed to the West side betwint the shoalds and the shoare, and having passed the Wester Hand, called Leuerstey, we came to the Zackbarreoueberage or Coaft, which doth lye South-west and North-east, and put into a small River, where we stayed (the seventh) all night, and the next day with Sayle and Oares, wee came to a Bay to the South of Cafness Note, where we stayed all might, the wind East South-east.

The eight, in the Morning we passed by Cuenerf-Note among it the Ice, having much adoe to Ic get cleare, the wind at North North-weft, and at Night we came to the Zauorot, where were fine and twentie layle of imall Lodias, some going for Mangantes, other for Fish, and some going to Pultozer, who told me they had beene aboord our Ship at Sea. The ninth, this day being Sunday our Ship came over the Barre, where I was received, not looked for. The eleventh, at Night we departed from the ship, and went to get downe our goods from the Glonboka and the Towne.

The fixteenth, I departed from the Glouboks, with three imall Lodias laden with goods, but the wind at East North-east, two of them returned backe, but I kept on and came abourd our Ship the eighteenth in the morning. The twentieth, the other two came with the goods aboord, and the one and twentieth, we returned to the Glonboka with three Boates, and got thither that night. The three and twentieth, I came the second time from the Glouboke, with three Boates with goods, and the next morning came to our Ship, where I remayned, fending vp all the Boats the fixe and twentieth of Inly.

The eight of August, came John Copman with Thomas Dogget, bringing two Boats laden with goods, fitting to fet layle for Holland, but did not depart till the 21. of August. And the three and twentieth of September, (giuing heartie thankes to God) we arrived at Dors in Holland.

NOw for the manner of the Samoits in their lourney, their vpper Coas is called a Parka, Apparellofsai which is for the most part of Deere-skin, and some of white Foxe or Woluerin, which they moveds. wearethe hayre or furre outward, under that they have another Coat, which is called a Mallet, made of young Fawne-skins, or Hare-skins, or Swan-skins, very foft and well dreffed, a Cap of Beuer, double and close to their heads, with two flaps for their Eares, tyed vnder their Chin, a payre of Breeches of Deere-skin with the hayre inwards, vpon their Feete they have fockes or flockins of Deere-skin, the hayre to their skin, vpon that long Boores which they call Pempes, made of the legges of Deere-skins, thus apparelled, they fre upon their Slede croffe-legged, with Sleds. a Deere-skin under them. Two Decrebeing yoaked toa Sled, they will ranne with fuch fivilt- Deere wift. neffe, and fo long to continue, as is not to be beleeued, except to those that have seene the same. neffe, For riding post, they will ride without rest or sleepe, two hundred miles in four eard twentie houres; but with their Argish or stuffe, thirtie miles in twelve houres; their Women vsully doe Women. guide their Argish, which is ten Sleds, and to every Sled a Backe, all made fast one after another, the Men in the way doe prouide Wood for firing, and doe hunt for all manner of Beafts & Fowle, 40 which the women dreffe. It is the Womans labour to fet vp the Choome or Tent, making one Tentand place therein alwayes Holy, which the woman must not fet her foot into, neither goe about the Chappell.

Tent round; which if they chance to doe, they will prefently remoue all, for feare of the Wolfe Superflitton. or Beare, which they fay, would denoure them if they did not remoue. Their Tent or Choome, is made in this manner; first, they set vp long Firre-poles, then they haue fixe quarters double of Deere-skin; which being fet vp, they throw Snow round about the edges a yard thicknesse, leauing the top open for to vent smoake, making a Fire in the middle,

foreading Deere-skins, vpon which they lye, in which manner, it is altogether as warme as the Stones in Ruffia, they have no Townes, neither any certaine place of abode, but with their No Townes, Deere they travell from place to place, where they finde the heft Moffe for their Deere,

Their Wines they buy for Deere, and will have if hee have abilitie foure or fine Wines, with Marrie Wines, whom he lveth by turn every night feveral; he is the richeft man that fath most Deere or Daugh bought and ters, selling them to any that will give most for them. In their Marriages having agreed of price, fold. they vie not great Ceremonies; onely they make a Feast to their friends, after which the Wo- Marriages. they vietne great community unknown and to the Herberg lang with many Iron Rings and Brazen Bels, all departing out of the Tent faut they two till the next Morning, and then he Bels. departeth; but if he bee one of wealth, they will continue their Featt feuen dayes. It falleth out many times, that after they have had their Wives halfe a yeere or a yeere, they will turne them backe to their Friends, taking their Deeres againe, paying for the charge of the Feast, which Diuoree. is alwayes to bee made at her Fathers charge, and lofing the increase of his Deere.

They have not knowledge of the true God, but worthip Blocks and Images of the Deuill, vnto Religion. which, they will strangle tame Deere, rebbing the blond on the Idols, and eating the meate

When a Rich man dyeth, because hee should not travell on foot, his friends will kill three Funerals Decre to draw him in the new World, and they will strangle a Slave to tend on him. The Decre

Aprill. River in cres-

Oufe.

Returne.

Their verre but halfe a

they kill in this manner to ferme the dead man, they make a Stake sharpe, which they thrust into the Beafts fundament, with many howlings and cryings, till they be dead. The Mailer with the Slaue they barie, the Deere they cate as well raw, as boyled or roalt, although they vie all, three If a young Child dye vnder foureteene of their yeeres, which is feuen of ours, they doe hang It by the necke on some Tree, faying, it must flie to Heaven.

If any Controuersie bee, which cannot bee decided or the truth knowne, then one of the two betwixt whom the Controuerfie is, must bee fwome, which is in this manner; they will make na I ming of a Man of Snow, bringing a Wolpes nofe, delivering a Swood to him that mind fewere, he rehearing by name all his Friends, defring that they might all bee cue in peeces in (weare, he reheating by mane as the street, which is the he himlelfe, doch out the Image of Snow that manner, as hee doth cut that Image of Snow 10 all to peaces with the Sword; then after, the Wolnes nose being layd before him, he defires that the Wolfe may destroy all his tame Deere, and that hee may never more take or kill any wilde Deere after that, if hee speake not the Truth, so cutting the Wolues nose in peeces, there is no more to bee fayd of that Controversie.

Their persons. The Samoir is stout and bold of Spirit, not very tall but broad Brested, broad Faces, with hollow Eyes. Their ordinary infituments for Warre, are Bowes and Arrowes, very dangerous, they have long Speares, (the heads bee made in Monganzer, by another fort of Samoits) and (hort Swords, not much vnlike tome that I have feene brought from East India.

Digination.

When they would know any thing to come, they fend for their Priest or Witch to converse when tury would allow any with the Deuill, fitting in one fide of the Tent, having before his face a peece of an old fhire of the the Deuill, fitting in one fide of the Tent, having before his face a peece of an old fhire of the third have been determined by the tent of Mayle, hung with Bels and peeces of Braffe, in his right hand a great Tabor made with a Wolucs skinne, beating vpon the same with a Hares foot, making a very dolefull found, with finging and calling for the Deuill, to answer his demand, which being ended, they strangle a Deere for a Sacritice, making metrie with the Fleih.

The Women be very hard of Nature ; for at their Child-bearing, the Husband must play the Midwife, and being delinered, the Child is washed with cold water or Snow, and the next day the Woman able to conduct her Argish.

The Ruffes have a yeerely Trade with the Merchants of Bogbar, at a place called Tomor in Tartarie, whither they of Boghar come with Camels enery yeere.

From Tames in Tobal in Saberia, they come in foureteene dayes,

From Tobal, they come to Berefona in nine dayes, all downe the River Ob. From Berefone, partly by the River Ob, then over a necke of Land of halfe a mile over, into the River Oufe, and downe the River Oufe into the River Pecters, and fo to Pufferers in three weekes. At Pufforera, the Englifbhaue Wintered three yeeres.

CHAP. XIII.

Divers Voyages to Cheric Iland, in the yeeres 1604. 1605. 1606. 1608. 1609. Written by IONAS POOLE.

" This was Mafter Bennet fecond Voyage thither. His first Voye 4. 1603,I have added at the end of this Chapter, after Pooles Relacions: this be-



Ee set sayle \* from London the fifteenth of Aprill 1604. in a Ship called the God Speed, of fixtie Tunnes, with thirteene Men and a Boy ; our Merchant was one Mafter Thomas Welden, our Mafter was one Stenen Bennit of Saint Catherins. We arrived at Cols in Lapland, the first of May, where weetarried till the last of the fame Moneth, at which time wee fet fayle from Cols, and went to an Harbour called Pechingo, which lyeth betweene Cola and Ward bonfe. In which Harbour of Peshings, we continued untill the thirtieth of June. At which time wee fet fayle from thence, and through contrarie windes and foule weather, were put into Ward-bowfe, where we tooke in

fresh water, and stayed vntill the fixth of July.

The same day, the wind came Southerly, and we steered away Northwest and by North about ing setherfore 1 36. leagues, wee observed the Sunne at twelve of the clocke at Noone, and found our selves to be in 73. degrees 5. minutes of Northerly Latitude. The feuenth of July, it was all day calme, and wee founded, but had no ground in two hundred and fiftie fathoms. The eight day, we had little winde, which was at South-east, and foggie weather; and at eight of the clocke at Night, wee faw great flockes of Sea-fowles, which we call Willockes : fome of these Fowles had each of them a small Fish in their bills, and slew toward the North-west and by North. The other without Fish, some of them slew contrarie to the former, and some sate in the Sea very necre our Ship.

About twelve of the clocke at night we founded, and had ground at one hundred and twen- 60 tiefathomes. We steered away North-west and by North, till soure of the clocke the eight day in the morning, then it fell calme : and as the ship lay still, our Master spied a Morste, which same to our thip and twamme round about it, While we were all gazing at this Monfter, I spied

the Hand sandragues off, bearing North North-west halfe a point Westerly, which shewed very high Land, and much Snow vpon it. The wind came to the North-eaft. The minth day, wee there Hand came to an Ancher onlike South South-east fide, infine and twentie fathomes streamie ground, described We hoy fed our our Beare, and Matter Wolden twent toward the Land : but thinking to have landei he copid not, because there went a great Sea, and great flore of 'kee all along the theoris fide. Within one houre the Boate pame aboard, and they fair, there were fo many Powles, that they Store of concred the Rockes, and flow in such great flockes, that they thewer like a Cloud. While this soulce. they were talking close by the Boats, rolovous linge Morife, putting his head about the water. looking assnally at the Boate, and made such an horrible hoyle and foating, that they in the Markenine to Boate thought he would have funke it.

The fame day, at eighe of the clocke as night, we weighed and flood away South well and he South shout four miles, where wee applied the Southermall point of the Hand, and found the Land to trend North North-weft, and all along the theart forme frattering ice. We hayled along the theart, finding feuerittene, eighteenes, and semetimes twentie fathomes, firramic ground with white shels. We held this course will were faw all the Northermost part of the lland : and being within three miles of it, and about thirteene miles from the Point, wee came roundabout it. And some two miles from the Land, we anchored in fixteene fathomes, streamie ground, We had not ridden one house to arrend, but a gazar piece of Ice came directly with the tyde voon vs; and before wee could weigh, it ftrookening thip, with forth force, that it hilded on the one fide.

and notice we can wright, an appropriate my warrach agent, same to make our the one me.

20 Affione as it was paft, we went on lineary, where were found abundance of Sea Fowles, Se Willocks, Gulles, Noddies, Sea-mewes, a finall Fowle like a Willocke, and divers others, as wilde Sea-fowles Geese, Sea-pidgeons, Oxbards, and such like : whereof Master Thomas Welden killed to many found on with his Peece, that we almost laded our Beate with them. The same night we shot three heaps shoure. of fifting-lines, but when we haled them, wer found neither fift nor hayte ; for the Seales had

ten them all on.

The ninth day, Mafter Welden and our Matter went on thours, to too what they could finde. They went in the fore-noone about eight of the clocke, and came againe about fourt in the after-noone very weary, feeing nothing by small Foxes, along the Dogges in overy being flight their finell and their tryles. In the means time, the Mattern Mate, and my. fails obleaned the

30 Sunne, and found that part of the line to be in 74-degrees and 45, minutes.

The tenth day we weighed, having the wine Southerly, and found the Land so trend away Nos. East South-east, The length of this fide is about ten miles, good ground. We had not failedpast East south-east, are regard to make the property of the property of the many o Boate, whetein was Mafter Welden and fixe men more: we landed, and law abundance of Morffes on the shoare, close by the Sea-side; and drawing negre varo them, were perceived that they result in the three company, which wee had seen before. It formed very strange to we to see such a multitude of Montiers of the Sea lye like Hogges vpou heaper: I la the end wise fine at 40 them, not knowing whither they could runne fixitly or leize vpon vaor no. To be briefe, wee them, not knowing winter they could be made a few first factor a Musker, and another a Musker. They delike the doubt three Perces, Marker Made as Fowling Perces, thay fells a Musker, and another a Musker. They delike the doubt three Perces, Market Made as the Musker and another as Musker. Their Peeces were spoyled instantly. For Master Welden, was cloyed, the other man wherehee M had that one by himselfe, thought to knocke him on the head with the fleck, but following Peece, I shot still, and some when they were wounded in the flesh , would but looke up and lye downe againe. Some were killed with the first shot; and some would goe into the Sea with fine or fixe thot : they are of fuch an incredible strength. When all our Powder and show was frent, wee would blow their eyes out with a little Peafe shot, and then come on the bland side of them, and with our Carpenters Axe cleage their heads. But for all that, we could det, of about a thousand we killed but fifteene. We tooke off their heads, and when we had done, we went ftending vp so and downe to fee what we could find. I found the first Touch that was castwoon the lland, and going a little farther alone, I found as many Teeth more, as hand three men more confidentie!

which filled an Hoghead; all which would deliver to Matter Welders The next day following, being the cleuenth day, we want on thouse againe, and billed about Tech. fixe more : And afterward wee went up into the Land, and faw nothing but Fowloand Power. I perceived in deed a great print of a Beares foote; and after that many other footings, bus yet faw no Beare or other wild beaft.

The twelfth, wee weighed from thence, and fined so the Eastward: wee had not gone past foure miles, but we found the Land to fall away South call and by South. The length of this fide is about twelue miles. All this fide we went close by the thoate with our Boate, and the 60 (thip fayled along about three miles off. We went oftentimes on shoare, but could fee mothing on Abundance of all that fide but Fowle, and abundance of Drift Wood, tho most part whereof was Firres, which Drift Wood haue beene beaten up and downe the Sea. This day being Sunday, about sight of the clocke at night, we anchored within two miles of the place where we arrived at the first. The same right wee went on shoare, and in a Bay under an huge Cliffe of a Rocke, upon the Beach, wee found

Small Fores 74149

The foliane:

A thouland

Pechinge.

cola.

neere athousand Morfen, wee killed shirtie or thereabours, and when wee had taken off their Mories found. heads, we went abourd.

The thirteenth, wee went on shoare againe, and with our Pieces fell a killing of the beafts, One of our company named Rubard Lang caftle phir his Piece, and with all his handibut Mafter Welden with Salues of his owne, healed it to skilfully, that he hath the vie of it againe. We killed that day fixtic Morfer, all the heads whereof were very principall. When we had done, wee went about a mile to the Eastward, to see what weecould finde : And landing at a Bay where 160 Lead Vre, weet googs a man to the same the years before, and found a piece of Lead Vre, wee looked for the Reality of some that of the first of the same day returning about of wee fer fayle for Pechings in Lepland, where wee arrived the fine and twentieth of July; and flayed there foure dayes: at which time 10 we fee fayle for Cole, and arrived there the eight of August, where wee continued till the fixteenth day, at which time we departed thence for England, and arrived in the Thomes the fif-

Why the lland teenth of October, of the yeere atorefaid 1604. When wee came to Landon, because Sir Francis Cherie Knight and Merchant was at the charges of this Discourrie, this Hand was called Cherie Bland.

> The third Voyage to Cheric Iland, performed by Master WELDEN Merchant, and STEPHEN BENNET Mafter, in the yeere 160%

The che yeere about hid, wee fet fayle from London, the first of May, with one ship of fixtie curmes, and two and twentie men and boyes. The three and twentieth of the faid moneth, we were taken by a fhip of Dunkirke. They tooke from vs two Hogheads of firing Beers, our Muskets, a Fowling Peece of Master Weldens, which cost three pounds sterling. After the Captayne had misused was his pleasure, though we were in peace with his Country, he let vs goe.

The fight of

Morfes. Eleven ums of

tayon man manuncu yan un pirantre, muogin we weem pease wan in a country, ne set ve goe. The eight and twentest of fune, we put of from #figuration ? \*\*sat, which is a place not fare from the North Cape, and about 70 degrees in latitude, but by contrain winds wee were put backs againe. Yet the second of July, we came to Cherie Hand, and anchored on the South-east 10 fide; and having a Shallop in pieces to fet vp, we carried it on shoare, and went to worke vpon it; and the third day after we had it on flote. The fixth day we entred into a Coue, having all cour men on shoare with shot and jauchings, and shorabundance of Morses. The yeare before we Many souther flow all with those, nor shinking that a justing could pierce their skinnes; which we found now the limit of the said with the sa enter or if he dos enter, he shall spoyle his Lame woon their bones; for they will strike with their fore-feet, and bend a Lance round, and breake it, if it bee not all the better plated. They will salle firike with their Teeth at film that is next them : but because their Teeth grow downward, their frokes are of small force and danger, After we had opened the beafts which we kind flaine, we tooke out the blubber, and carried it a mile into the Bay, where weelet up the 40 shallop. The reason why we carried it thirher, was, becapse we thought that the fire of our Furnage would feare them away : for wee did boyle all their facto bring it into Oyle. Thus wee followed our businesse till the foureand twentieth of Idly, at which time wee had very foule weather with fogs. Now the ship riding in the same Coue, where we killed our Morfes, had taken in eleven tunnes of Oile, and the teeth of all the beafts aforesaid. Then we made preparation to be gone home: and I was fent with our shallop, and eight men with me to fetch our Tent, and our boyling Coppers, our mens Clothes and some Teeth. At my returne, when I was almost abourd, comming through a place betweene the Hand and a Rocke, which of necessitie we must needs passe, the tyde being against vs, and a stiffe gale of winde blowing out of the Sea, made the Seadyr very high woon the Rocker, whereby we had like to have beene funker for our Boat 10 was almost full of water; and if weehad not speedily rowed backe againe, weehad dyed each man of vs. To make short, we got into a Cone, where the Rockes did keepe the growne Seas from vs, & we lighted our Boat. In this Coue I found a Myne of Lead Vre, and digged vp about thickid potunds weight of it, which I brought into England. And calling to mind that wee were in fight of our ship, when we shipped the water which I spake of before, I misstusted that they thought, as they did indeed, that we were all drowned. Therefore I demanded who would goe with me, to the top of a Cliffe which stood over against the ship? And one lobn lenings said, that be would goe ; he had not gone halfe way, but hee would goe no farther because it was so cold, and the Hill fibod floping very fleepe toward the Sea, and all the fide of it was loofe Earth, which we must needs paste. Then I went forward all alone, and found all our men on shoare, lauingan old man, and a ficke men. But the Cliffe being fo high and fleep, that they under it could fearce understand what I said, nor I what they said, but with much adoe : They demanded, as I tooks it it all our men were wel: I told them yea, as loud as I could: And then I threw downe a piece of the lead Vre which I had found, which Mottelden took vp: And when I was going away

I heard them shout, and looking behind me, I saw them all point coward the Skiffe that lay at anchor hard, by the shoare; whereby I perceived that the rope was broken, which made it fast to the ineare, and the Skiffe was gone off to the length of her rept fo that they could not go abourd except one of them did wim to the Skiffe, which was exceeding dangerous, both because it was extreame cold, and also for feare of being killed by the Moffes, that were in the Sea all about the Bost. Whereupon with all speed possible I rame to helpe our men in that diffrestle, and comming to the Shallop, some were willings, and some rowilling. But I faid that out I would; and taking sothing abound with me but a few reeth, wee got out : and in the place where we had like to have beene funke before, wee had a great hollow See? but our Boat being light, and the tyde 10 with vs, was got through: whereit Ih Welden, and Stenies Bennet our Mafter, with all the com-

pany were not a little toyfull, and gaue God humble thankes, that had of his great mercy defen-ded va from a great many of dangers that slay. For that day wee faw abundance of yee driving Abundance of toward the land, but the winde and tyde fhifting, put it another wiy. Likewife two boyes driving lea-had like to have been faine with the fall of a rockle, which fell clofe by them, they being but newly flepped out of the place wheet where the rock fell.

In the time that we were in this diffreste, I called the Mountaine by the name of Mount-wis Mount Mistry ferie, which is fo called at this day. Likewife there is a very high Mountaine on the East Southeast point of this Hand: which, because Master Welden and I got two Foxes necre it , I called it Mount maleperdus, alluding to the name in the merrie booke of Remold the Fox.

The fixe and twentieth of Iulie, wee got out of the Cous with the Ship, having fuch a fogge, A montrous that although wee ridde to neere the land, that we could heare the fewle that were on shoare. yet wee could not fee the land. This fogge continued vitill the eight and twentieth of July : on which day having electer weather, wee got our water and other provision about ; and fet fayle for England, and passing by the coast of Finmarks and Normay, we arrived at London the foure and twentieth of August. 1605.

The fourth Poyage to Chery Hand, 1606.

VV E fet fayle from London in a Ship and a Planoffe; the Ship being of burden fixtie Tuns, August 14, and the fame due I was in the Summer before; Mafter Thomas Welden was Merchant, A Ship field. and Mafter Bennet Mafter, having in all two and swencie men and boyes. The Pinnalle was of twentie Tunnes, and had eight men in her, and I Jones Pool was Mafter of her : we were fer out by Mafter Raffell, one of the Mofeonie Company.

The eight and twentieth, wer had fight of land on the coast of Norway, in the latitude of sixtie degrees and a halfe; nine leagues off.

The fixe earth of tune, we fell with the Affampien, it bearing South and by West eight leagues The Affampien, off : and we lay bearing betweene the North Cape and it, till the eighteenth of Iune: At what we have the second of time weeput off, and steered away North North-west about fiftie fine leagues, and found Much Leage. 40 much Ice : wee thought to have gotten through it, but could not : and when wee had fpent leagues from twelue houres in it, and having the wind Northerly, we put backe againe. The two and twen- Cape. tieth, we fell with the North Cape againe, at twelve of the clock at noone. The foure and twentieth, we put off againe, and being fine and fortie leagues from the Cape, wee met with Ice, and Ice within 450 wpon a piece office we faw a Beare. The Ship being on head of vs, bare close to the Ice; and Ma-fier Welden that the faid Reare dead at the field that. This Reare was found in the land of the North Cape. fler Welden shot the said Beare dead at the first shot. This Beare was from the neerest land about A Beare on Ice feuen and twentie leagues, and lived of Seales or other fift that he could prey vpon.

The second of July, we saw Cheris Ilandat a North found : the land bearing North and by stom any land West about ten leagues off. The same time we sounded and had ground at seventie sue fathoms, laif de white small shelly ground with small blacke stones,

50 The third of July wee anchored on the West side of the Hand in twentie fathoms, having verie much Ice. I observed the Sunne at the lowest, and found the latitude of that place to bee in 74 degrees, 55 minutes. It followesh shere South-west and by South and the floud commech lined in 74der from the South-west.

The fifth and fixth dayes, we were troubled with much Ice; but it being broken, we brought minutes. the ends of our Cables to our maine Mafts; and having a good tyde, we did sheere, as wee tearme The floud it, cleere off the Ice. We ridde thus in Ice fixe dayes, to wit, vntill the thirteenth day; at white comments time the Ice began to goe way, and the Morfes came on thoare. For their nature is such, that they from the will not come on land as long as any Ice is about the load. will not come on land as long as any Ice is about the land .

The fourteenth, we went on land; Mafter Welden, and Mafter Bennet, with the Ships company, of July. 60 and I with the company of the Pinnasse. And being altogether on shoare, and seeing of the Thenature of beafts sufficient to make our voyage, wee prepared to goe to killing. Master Welden and Master the Morks. Benner appointed mee to take eleuen men with mee, and to goe beyond the brafts where they lay; that they and wee might meet at the middeft of them, and so inclose them, that mone of them should get into the Sea.

A great white

As I ferched a compatie about, before we were aware, rose a great white Beare within a Pikes length of vs : whereupon we made a stand, and my selfe having both a Musker and a Lance, thought to have flot him: but remembring my felfe, that the report of my Pecce might make all the Morfes goe into the Sea, and is basard our Voyage, I went to him with my Lance. All this while he fare forning at the mouth, and would not firre, but gapted and roared as though he would have eaten yeall; but prefently wee prickerhim in the snout; and then with an eafe pace we proceeded on with our bufinesse; and before has hourses were ended, we had shayne about pace we note that the state of the state of

flayne in fixe Agreat Froft

The fixe and swentieth, we had taken in two and swentie sums of the Oyle of the Morfes. and three hogheads of, their Testbe.
The lepen and twentierh, Mafter Welden flue another Beare.

The eight and twentieth, we tooke in Water and Wood. The nine and twentieth, we fet tayle for England. The fiftgenth of August, 1606, we arrived in the Themes.

The fixth Voyage made to Cheric Iland, the South part whereof flandath in 74. degrees and 40, minuses of Northerly latitude, in the yeere 1608.

He fixteenth of Aprill, in the yeere 1608, we fet fayle from Blacks wall, and came to Grass f.

Tipany.

The one and twentieth of May, we were within 4. leagues of the North Cape, flanding in 71. degrees and 2 of North latitude. The four and twenteth, were came to Ward-buile. The four and twentieth, we weighed and came of Tipany in Lapland the five and twentieth: where we flayed about our bufineffe till the thirteenth of lune.

lune 13.

We may cannot our company on my cannot be used to the morning wee faw forms I - land. The thirteenth of lung aforefaid, were weighted anchor, and directed our course for Cheric I - land. The eighteenth, at four of the clocks in the morning wee faw forms I land, it bearing North North-weff 10, leagues off: and as foure of the clocke at night wee anchored on the North-weff for it: and Maker Woldes went on Land on the North ide, and flue a Bears. Thenineteenth, we rid ftill, and Mafter Wollen went to the North file againe, and flue ano-Another Beare ther Beare. The same day we sent two men to the South fide of the land, to fee if there were any Morfes on shoare. They came againe the next day, and faid, that there were great flore.

Great heats

The twentieth and one and twentieth dayes it was calme, and the weather cleare, and wee had it as hot as I have commonly felt in England at that time of the yeare. For the Pirch did runne downe the ships sides ; and that side of the Masts that was to the Some ward, was so hot, 40 that the Tarre did frye out of it, as though it had boyled. The two and twentieth, at a North-caft Sun, we weighed and went to the South fide of the

1000, Morfes

Hand, and came into a Cope, where the Mories were, and flue about 900, or 1900, or the Hand, and came into a Cope, where the Mories were, and flue about 900, or 1900, or them in felle then seuen hours: and there were plyed our bufinesse vanil site second of fully: at what time we had taken into our thip 22 tunnes and three hogificads of Oyle. The third of Inly, being Sunday, one Richard Sement of Harewich came to the faid Cherie Iland, in a hip called the Dragen, being factor by Maffeet Duppe, is Brewer dwelling in Same Catherine nette the Tower of London; which fee out a ship with Maffeet Toppes the Toppes with the Catherines neets the Tower of London; which see out a ship with Maffeet Toppes tricking the

Iland, 1607.

The ninth day, we made our Voyage, and came out of the Coue, having taken in 31. tumnes of 50 Oyle, and one hoghead, one barrell, and one terce of Mories teeth: befole a oo, other teeth, The twelfth, we tooke into our fair twee young Morkes, male and female, aline: the female died before we came into England: the male lived about ten weekes. When were had watered, we fet fayle for England about foure of the clocke in the morning.

The fourteenth day, we saw the Hand bearing North North-weff, 15. leagues off vs, and four-

nesse, we brought our living young Morse to the Court, where the King and many honourable personages beheld it with admiration for the strangenesse of the same, the like whereof had neuer before beene seene aliue in England. Not long after it fell sicke and died. As the beast in 60 shape is very strange, so is it of strange docilitie, and apt to be taught, as by good experience we

The senenth Voyage to Cherie Iland, made in the yeere 1609.

VVEe were furnished with two ships, determining to goe to Tipany in Lapland, to buy fish of the Lappes and Rasses, and afterward to goe to Charie lland: the one was salled the Lioneffe, in which I went for Mafter, the other, the Paul, which was there the last yeere. 1608. The one and twentieth day of March, we weighed anchor at Granefend: and the fixe and twentieth, we came to Harwich: where it was concluded, that the Limeffe should goe directly to Chrie Hand. The fifteenth of Aprill, we weighed at Harewich: and the last of the same mo-

neth we fell betweene Lofost and Zenam vpon the Coast of Finmark.

The second of May, we came to the North Cape; and the same day wee stood for Cherie I. Zenen, land : but meeting with contrary winds and foule weather, we bare backe agains for the Cape. May 2. and fell with the Land the fourth day. The fift day in the morning, we put the fecond time from the North Cape; and the eight day wee anchored at Cherie Hand. It did freeze very hard, but They arise at we found no Ice about the lland, faue that which claue to the Rockes. We went into the Coue Cherie Iland with our Shallop, and found eight Morfes on the Ice hard by the shoares side: And we also found all the beafts that were killed the last yeere not washed away with the Sea , couered ouer with Snow and Ice. Wee thought to have gotten abundance of Fowle as wee had done in the yeeres Foule. before : but they would not fit; the reason was, because they were but new come to the Iland, 20 and not fetled as then: yet some Fowle we got, and came aboord. And because the wind was Northerly, that we could not conveniently goe to the North fide with the fhip, we determined to fend fome men ouer Land, to fee if there were any Morfes on shoare voon that side. The ninth day, I prepared to goe over Land to the North fide, about a North-east Sunne, with three men in my companie. I my felfe had a Musker, and about a quarter of a pound of Powder, and fixe Bullets: an Halfe-pike in mine hand, and an Hatchet at my backe. One of the men had a birding Peece; the other two had each of them a lauelin. Wee went ouer the Snow and Ice anace outward; but came wearily homeward, by reason we rested not any where. And when we were within a mile of the other fide, one of my companie faid, he faw a Beare : whereupon we looked vp, and law three great ones. Whereupon I made a ftand, and gaue each of my com. Three Beares. 30 panie some Aque vite, and a little Bread, and told them, that wee must not in any case seeme Qualities fearefull , because the nature of them is such , that wholoeuer seemeth fearefull , or offereth to Beares

feeing vs to come toward them, flood vpon their feet, and two of them went toward the Sea : tor. The third flood still champing and forming, as though hee would have eaten vs. When I was within flot of him, he beganne to follow his fellowes, still looking behind him with his former gesture: In the meane while I got ground of him, the three men following mee with their weapons. In the end the angry deuill turned backe, and came directly toward mee : Het him come within two long Pikes lengths, and gaue him such a welcome, that hee fell downe stone dead. A Beare slaine, 40 The company that were with me were glad as well as I: yet I had beene at the killing of Beares before. After this Beare was slayne, we told seuenteene more, whereof three were young ones. 17. Beares in This done, we went on to the Sea fide, where we found the Shallop which we left the yeere be- fighter fore. Wee were no fooner fet to eate a little food, but there came a Beare with two young ones as big as Lambes of a moneth old: they skipped about their dams necke, and played with one Young Betteanother very wantonly. The dame came so neere that I shot at her, and being loth to hure the whelps young ones, being playing about her fore-parts, I shot her through the top of the shoulder; then the went away. Immediatly we faw another Beare comming toward vs, which before he came

to vs, flood vpon his hinder feet twice or thrice, vling the fame countenance that the first did, which I slue. Het him come very neere, and thinking to give him his pasport, the fint of my Musket was broken, which made him come very neere vs. Then the fellow that had the bir-50 ding piece shot him into the foot : whereupon he ran away faster then wee could follow him. Wee feeing fo many Beares, and having no store of Powder nor Shot, bent our journey toward our ship againe. Wee had not come a quarter of a mile, but wee faw a huge Beare fast a sleepe on the Snow. I went foftly toward him, and gave him fuch a filip, that he never rose out of the place where helay. His skin when he was flayed was thirteene foot long. A neere neighbour A Beare flayn, of his hearing the report of my Peece came toward me: and him I flue alio. Now, having but the skin wherone shot left, I thought it not best to bestow it there, although I faw another lie voon the Snow of was 13, foot. hard by. While we fate downe to reft vs in the mid-way, there came toward vs another Beare flayae.

with one young one: they came almost within shot, and went backe againe: presently shee turned againe, and came within hot of me, and flood on her hinder legs directly vpright, and Ofo did the young one. I made account they would have come neerer; but they to the contrarie ran away. Wee came being very wearie aboord our ship about a North-west Sunne. Then wee weighed, and flood to the Northward, having the wind at South; and by three of the clocke the next morning, wee came to the North-east Point with the ship. There wee manned our The tenth day.

runneaway, they will feize vpon him. In this time I made my Musket readie: and the Beares Feare a Trais

The

Shallop, and Matter Thomas Welden and I went on shoare, where hee slue fine Beares, and I one, and I wounded two more very fore. And before a North Sunne, our men had fleyed them flyar. All the Beares all; both them that I flue the day before, and them that wee flue this last time: for they were

The eleventh day, we went on Land, and washed some old steyed Morses skinnes, which had lyen there two yeeres: but they will hardly proue good. The twelfth day, we rid at the West fide, and got some Fowle with shor, and there we rid till the thirteenth.

The thirteenth, wee faw very much Ice to the Southwards and Westwards, wich came driuing so fast toward the shoarewhere weerid, that wee were forced to weigh, and stood to the ung to far toward the most variety of the land. The Ice followed vs shill: then wee stood to the East side of the Hand: 10 and there wee found both the Hand and our felues encompassed round with Ice. But the winde being Westerly, and a good sliffe gale, it blew the Ice about a mile and an halfe from the Eastern fide: by which meanes wee got betwixt the Ice and the Hand, and flood to the Southward, but faw not any thing in all the Sea faue Ice; fauing close by the Land a little open Sea trending to the South-westward. That way wee stood with our fore top-sayle, and stood one while one way, and another while another way, and could not see open Sea till the fifteenth of the same moneth; at a North-west Sunne wee saw the open Sea: onely a ledge of Ice which began to part infunder, was betwixt vs and it. Toward that place we flood, and intending by Gods helpe to get through, we made provision to defend the ship from the Ice, by hanging Cables ends, and Plankes, and Capitan barres about the bowes of our ship. But for all 20 our fendors, our ship had a great knocke vpon a piece of Ice. About a North Sunne, we got out into the open Sea; with humble thankes to God for our deliuerance.

Snow.

The fixteenth day, the lland did beare North-east and by North, eight leagues from vs: and it did freeze all that day, the wind being at North, which was almost calme. The seventeenth, at noone the Iland did beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off, the wind Southerly, snowy weather. The same day we saw a sayle, bearing East North-east off vs about 5. leagues. The eighteenth, the lland did beare North about 15. leagues off, the wind being at East and by North, Snow and frofty weather. The nineteenth, at twelve of the clocke at noone the Iland bare North and by East: and we finding the Ice somewhat scattered, and the wind Southerly, put roome toward the Hand, and vpon one piece of Ice we faw fine Seales: one I killed, and one 30 I tooke alive , and brought it aboord our ship. But wee could not come neere the Hand by fixe leagues. The wind came to the West with thicke weather and Snow. The twentieth, at twelve at noone the Hand beare North North-west, about twelve leagues off, We sounded, and had 100.

Snow,

Fine Seales.

fathoms, greenish Oze, faire weather, but cold. The one and twentieth, we faw the ship that wee had seene the seuenteenth day; wee spake A ship of Hull. With them about 12. at noone. The Master told vs he was of Hull. Wee demanded whether he was bound? He told vs, to Cherie Hand, and that there he would make his Voyage. The Hand at this time did beare North and by East about nine leagues off; and it was faire, but cold frostie Frony wether. weather. The 22. 23.24. and 25. dayes, we did beate up and downe in the Ice. The 26. 27. and 28. dayes, likewife wee fayled up and downe in the Ice; having the wind Northerly, and 40 the Iland bearing betweene the North and the North North-east, cold weather. The nine Snow & frost. and twencieth, the Hand beare North nine leagues off, the wind at North-east, snowy weather

26. Scales. The thirtieth day, we flue 26. Seales, and espied three white Beares: wee went aboord for Shot and Powder, and comming to the Ice againe, we found a shee-Beare and two young ones: Mafter Thomas Welden shot and killed her: atter shee was slayne, wee got the young ones, and brought them home into England, where they are aliue in Paris Garden. The one and thirtieth, we beate vp and downe in the Ice, but could not come neere the Land for Ice; the winde was white Beares brought into

on the Ice. Two young

Froft.

The first of Iune, we got within fine or fixe miles of the Hand : but finding very much Ice 50 close by the Land, we stood off againe, the wind being at North-east, cold weather. The second day, we got within three leagues of the Hand: but finding exceeding much Ice round about vs, we flood off againe, the wind at North-east, cold frostie weather. From the second day to the fift, wee fayled first one way, and then another, as the wind and Ice would give vs leave. The wind being at North and by East, and the Iland being betweene the North-west and by North, within fixe leagues and leffe.

The Hall man.

The fixth day, we spake with the Hull man, who told vs, that he was put swentie leagues to the North-west of the Iland, being fast in the Ice. We had the wind Northerly, and frosty weather; the Land bearing North North-west. The seventh and eight, we beate vp and downe in the Ice : the Hand did beare North-west eight leagues off. The winde was Northerly, with 60 No fog in a cold and froftie weather.

The ninth, the Land beare North-west off vs about six leagues off. That day we had the first fogge fince the time of our arrivall, which was the eight of May. Neither loft wee the fight of the Hand about eighteene houres in all this time. This day, about a North-rast Sunne it began to thaw ; and in fixe houres the frow was melted, which lay vpon the Ice aboue fixe inches The first than thicke : which put vs in good hope that the Ice was almost past.

The tenth, we got within fixe miles of the shoare : where I made an attempt to hatte got to the land with the Shallop : but comming within three miles of the shoare, I could get no farther, the Ice was so thicke, and such foggy weather. I made another attempt the same day, and got within one mile of the Land ; but the Ice was so thicke that I could get no farther. The same day wee faw good ftore of Morfes on the Ice and in the Sea.

The eleuenth and twelfth, we plyed vp and downe fayre by the Iland, to fee if wee could get on Land with our Shallop; but the Ice was so close about the Land, that wee could not by any In meanes, This day the wind was at South-east, thicke foggie weather. The thirteenth, we had thicke fogge and calme weather; and when it began to cleere, weehad fight of the Souther Fogges part of the lland, bearing East South-east, about fixe miles off; but it fell thicke suddenly againe. There wee anchored in fortie fathoms, white shelly ground; and rid till ten of the clocke at night : at what time I prepared to goe on shoare, as fast as I could with a Shallop and sixe men. About eleuen of the clocke we put from the Ship, and with great labour got through the Ice to the Hand, by a North-east Sunne.

The fourteenth day, I landed on the Wester side of the Iland, and determined to goe from The Beares thence to the North fide, where wee flew the Beares. The ninth of May I left three men flaine on the with the Shallop, and tooke three men with me. In my journey I found fuch bad way, that I had North see. 20 no ftomacke to goe through ; for where there was no fnow, the ground was fo foft, and without

graffe, that we went up to the anches in dirt; and where the fnow lay, which was in fome holes, three or foure fathoms thicke, it was fo foft, that we flipt each ftep vp to the twift; fo that wee were aboue three houres in going fearce two miles. Whereupon confidering it would bee long before I (hould get ten miles and backe againe, I returned to our Shallop, and found that the men which I left had killed some fowle, which wee sod, and when wee had earen them, I prepared to goe in the Shallop to the North fide. I went close by the shoare; for the Sea was full of Ice. As wee went along by the Cliffes, we got good store of Fowle; which made vs glad and joyfull, because there was no hope to get aboord the Ship that day, nor the next. About a North-west Sun wee got to the place about aid, and found nine Beares, three of them I flew, the other tooke the 30 Sea. Those three that were flaine we flead, and tooke their flesh and salted it in their skinnes; Three Beares which I flowed in the Shallop for feare of a dearth. I had a terce full of falt there, which wee flaine, powdered, in the Shallop for feare of a dearth.

The fifteenth day, when wee had ended our businesse, and eaten some of our Beares sieth, and Possession to fet vp an Enfigne in token of our possession of the Hand, wee prepared to be gone : and about an ken of theria East North-east Sunne the wind came Westerly; which made me thinke, as it proued, that the I and for the Ship would be on the South-east fide of the Iland; and when wee were comming, and almost at Mujessie the North-east point, we saw nine men ; prefently I knew them to beethe men of Hall. Along Company. I came to the East side, where we tooke in drift wood, and a broad stone to make a fire vpon in Drift wood on our Boat. While wee were there, wee efpied our ship vnder her Fore-topfayle, and her Mifen, the Eath fide, 40 We made all the hafte we could, and came to the Coue, where wee made our voyage the Summer laft paft. There likewise I set up a Pike, with a white cloth vpon it, and a letter fignifying our The Cour. possession for the right worshipfull Company trading to Moscome. When I had done, I elpied the Hull mans Boat rowing into the Coue, and a Tent fet vp in the bottom of the Bay. I went thither, and told him we had taken possession there, the eight of May last. He answered, That if the beatls came on shoare, he would kill them if he could, and that there were as good men which wentured in that Ship, as the Company. I told him he durft not answer these words in England, and so departed and got some Fowle. About a South-west Sunne wee stood toward our Ship, having the wind at West South-west, and the Ship bearing from vs South-east about four leagues. I had not failed ten miles, but the Ice was so close and firme, that I could not get aboord, so nor backe againe; for it closed with such force, that it made the Shallops sides cracke, as though they would have met together. Wee laboured very fore to faue our Boat, because it did concerne our lines, and got her into a place where shee lay betweene two pieces of Ice. After this fort we

draue, being not able otherwise to moue till we were aboue eight leagues from the Iland. The fixteenth day, at an East South-east Sun, the Ice began to open. Then, although my Company were in delpure, and fait it was impossible to get out, to worke wee went, and by cutting off Ice, and remouing of it one piece from another, we made way through toward the Land. The neerer to the Land wee got, wee found the more open Sea ; and by a North Sunne wee got on shoare. After wee had given God thankes for our deliverance out of such extreame danger, wee 6c eate some Fowle and Beares slesh, which wee fod under a Cliffe. There wee found nine young They feed on

draue with the Ice till we had loft fight of our Ship, which was about a North fun; and still wee

Foxes, and killed the old one. There also we slept upon the cold Sand, which was not past three sinches thicke, and underneath Ice; and said here till a Court, and Sunne the Suppression land. Nine Foxes rocks, and and underneath Ice; and stated here till a South-east Sunne the seuenteenth day. South-east Sunne the seuenteenth day. The fenenteenth, we went from this place to the Coue, where we found the Hall mans Boat. I made a tilt of the Shallops fayle, and fod fome Beares flesh and Fowle; and stayed about the

Three Mynes

Coue all that day. And vpon an Iland, commonly called Gull-Iland, I found three Mynes of Three Mynos Lead Vre : but having no ht tooles to breake the Rocks, and also because it was in the view of on Gull Hand. the Hall mans Tent, I was forced to let it rest, till the Ships could get into the Coue.

Good Sea

564

The eighteenth day, wee went to the North fide of the Iland, and in our way wee found good Good Sea-coles found on Sea-coales to burne : fome wee tooke with vs to try them, and found them good. And on the North fide I flew two Beares. Then wee shated the bread that was left; and wee had but two cakes to a man : for some of my Company while I was asseepe, or killing of the Beares, had broken open the cheft wherein the bread was, and had conveyed fome away. Our betre was fpent before this time, and we were faine to drinke fnow water.

ent before enis time, and we were table to come in the wind being Westerly, to see if we could espy our 10 Ship; but wee could not, neither could shee come neere the lland for Ice; for all the Sea, as farre as I could fee from the top of an high Hill was covered with Ice, fauing that within a quarter of a mile off the shoare, it was cleere round about once in a tyde.

palle of lee. Another Beare flaine.

The twentieth day, I went to the North fide againe, and flew a Beare. Thus wee spent the time, sometimes on one side, sometimes on the other, neuer staying about one day in one place till the Ship came in ; which was the feuen and twentieth of June, on which day I flew ano-Another ther Beare. I slew seven in all, whose slesh we eate full saverly, forgetting the oyly ranknesse Beare flaine. of it; for hunger is a fauourie fawce.

Their Ship got in the fecondtime.

The feuen and twentieth, our ship came to an anchor on the North side, where we then were: affcone as vve faw her, we needed no bidding to go aboord. When we were come to the ship side, 20 they bad vs vvelcome: but vvhereas vve thought to have releeued our felues, vvee found it farre otherwise; because the Ship had a knocke with a piece of Ice in the Sterne, which brake in the corner of a Planke under the wvater, so that our bread-roome wvas full of wvater, and all our bread foyled, lauing about one hundred weight: which was but a finall quantitie for three and form men. This day a Ship called the Mathew came to an anchor by vs. Then Mailer welder and I The Matthew. vvent on shoare, where vve found one lohn Skinner, Masters mate of the Matthew, with eleven men by him. We set vp our Tent, and told him there vvas no voyage for him to make : but our necefficie vvas such, that vve vvere faine to take foure hundred of bread of them, vpon some condition, which I will not speake of here. The same day were thought to have taken a Copper aboord, which I digged out of the snow; but by negligence it was let fall into the Sea, yetal- 30 terward taken vp againe and carried aboord. The fame day, another Ship called the Mary Margarise came into the faid Coue on the South fide.

The Marie

The eighteenth, I went to the Coue with the Shallop and fixe men, where I found the Marie Margarite; there passed no great kindnesse betweene them and me. Islew three Morses there, two overe lost, the others head I brought aboord. The next day I came aboord our Ship, and we rid on that fide, looking still when any beasts would come on shoare, till the second of Iuly. Then we weighed, and stood to the East side of the Hand; because the wind was at West North-west, and great store of Ice came from those parts. We had not rid one houre to an end, but Logen and Edge, vve faw a Skiffe comming towards vs. In this Skiffe vivas one Josias Logen, and Thomas Edge, Factors in the Paul for the vvorshipfull Company. They told vs that the Paul vvas in the Coue, 40 and the ship of Hull. They weent aboord againe, and when the tyde was spent, we weighed and thought to have anchored neere the Coue; but the wind was so far Easterly, that we could not: so vvee vvent to the Wester fide, and ridde there till the fourth day, where we got Fowle; for in all the time of our being about the Iland, and in the Ice, they were our chiefest food.

in extreamitie

The fourth, we weighed and went to the North fide; where we were troubled with much Ice : The wind was at West and by North, which brought the Ice whole vpon vs; so that we vvere forced to vveigh againe.

A Beare flaine. Another Beare flaine.

The fixth, vve came into the Coue; where Master Welden slew a Beare. The eight day, he flew another Beare; and the fame day I vvent to the North fide, with the Shallop and victuals for the men which kept on that fide. I flayed there till the fourteenth of July : on which day 50 wee had the wind Northerly, with fnow and frost, and the Iland enuironed round with Ice. In this time the Ships Company on the South fide did digge some Minerall Lead. And we caught aboue twentie Foxes, which we did eat as fauerly as if they had beene Venison. The fifteenth day, by a North-east Sunne vve came aboord the Ship, which lay in the Coue,

Snow and Froft. Some Minerall Lead digged. Aboue twentie vvith our Shallop and all our provision that vvas on the North fide. And the Lionelle prepared

Foxes eaten, to goe to Saint Nicolas in Ruffia, as it was appointed before in London, The fixteenth, the wind being North-east brought such store of Ice to the Hand, that it vvas compassed round close to the shoare; and filled the Coue so full, that by no meanes possible the Ships could get out, but ridde ftill that in for five dayes.

The feventeenth, the Ice began to open at the mouth of the Coue, and some were willing to 60 goe out with their Ships; but conetoninelle had like to have brought vs all to great milery : for each man striuing to ride longest in the Coue, supposing that there the Morses would come first Dragers by the on shoare, they found it cleane contrary; for the wind came Southerly, and blew all the Ice from this fide of the Hand, faue that which was in the Coue: which pressed so fore vpon our

Ships, that our Anchors could not hold vs. For the Matthew was put from three Anchors, and droue with that imall tyde, that runneth there within her length of a funken Rocke: but a great piece of Ice on ground vpon the Rocke did keepe her from it. And when the floud came againe, the was driven within halfe her length of the Rockes; fo that they were glad to get molt of their victuals out of her vpon the Rockes, looking each minute when the should split in sunder. And though the rest of the ships did not drive as she did , yet they had many a fore stroke with the Ice. For the Southerly wind caufed a hollow Sea to come in; fo that our ships strooke with such force against the Ice, that wee could hardly stand on our feete in them. Then each man layed to his hand to faue his ship, by putting Plancks and old Cables ends, and bundels of 10 Hoops betweene their ships and the Ice. But they were beaten all to pieces presently. Then we put pieces of Elme Plancke betweene the bowes of the Paul, in which ship I was: Immediately, they also were beaten into small pieces, although they were aboue foure inches thicke. With the stroke that brake the Plancke, the Carpenter taid, the ships side did cracke, and two timbers were broken. Then prefently wee also got out of the ship most of our victuals, and carried it to the shoare. There might you see a fortowfull spectacle. For all the ships, being fine in number, were fo fast in the Ice, that all the men that were in them all , which were one hundred eightie two, could not imagine how to laue one. Among the rest, we made account that the Matthew would finke, ere long : because the Ice had broken nine timbers on one fide, and eleuen on the other: fo that the Greene Sea did come into the ship : and her mayne beame was broken at that 20 inflant likewise. In this fort we continued till the twentieth day following; when we looked still to bee put on the Cliffes with the force of the Ice, that preffed upon our ships to fore, that our Anchors could not possibly hold.

CHAP. 12. Ship endangered by Ice. Many Morfes staine. Their Oile and teeth.

Vpon the twentieth day, it pleafed God to bring the wind Westerly, then the Ice began to open, and to drive out of the Coue by little and little, to our great comforts. But that Ice that did not get cleane out, came backe againe, and ranne round in a Circle; fo that wee had a contimual labor to defend the ships from it, Whereupon we made meanes to get out by long 1 Warps, 1 A warpe, is a as weetermethem. Wee were faine to let flip one Cable , and the Lioneffe one. The Matthew Rope (com had but one Cable and Anchor; but they borrowed one of vs. By a North-west Sunne, all ser yield to the ships got out of the Ice to the Coues mouth; where we stayed for the ebbe. When the ebbe warpe a ship, 30 was come, the Lioneffe departed on her Voyage to Saint Nicholas in Ruffia. And presently the that is, with an Matthew, and the Mary Margarite let faile and got out. Then wee in the Paul fet fayle, and Anchor bent Matthem, and the Mary Margarie rectaine and got out. I then we entitle rame let tayle, and to the Hawfer before our Anchor was up, it got hold upon one of Matthemes Cables, that shee lost, when shee and layd out droue out, and brought vs vp toa Bitter, fo that wee were very neere the Rockes:but wee to hale the thir got off againe, and ride there till a North-weft Sunne the next day.

The one and twentieth day, we weighed and stood to the East side of the Iland, where wee is done when found the Mary Margarite, which had loft her Boat. Streight way we fayled to the North fide, they want wind where we anchored and rid till a North Sunne.

The two and twentieth day, it cleered up of a fogge, which had continued fince the bour. time of our comming out of the Coue. And wee thought it best to fetch the victuals abourd, m A Bitter, is a 40 which we carried on shoare when the ship was like to be split with Ice.

Then Islan Logan and I tooke feuen men more with vs, and came to the Coue on the the Bitts, for Southfide : where wee found abundance of Morfes lying on the Ice, that was in the Coue. when they I flue one of them, and tooke off his head: we could not get to the shoare where our victuals lay, come to Anbut we made a fire vnder a Cliffe in the fame Coue.

The three and twentieth day, wee got to our victuals, and loss went with it to our shippe: about the Bitts but I tarried at the Coue, hoping that the beafts would come on Land when the Ice was gone; (two mayne as they did afterward. There I tarried till the fine and twentieth of July; at what time Tofias squarepieces Logan came to mee with the Shallop, and a Skiffe loden with Caske and other prouision; of Timber, and told mee, that they had flaine five or fixe hundred Morfes on the North fide.

Hee tarried with mee till the seuen and twentieth of July : now seeing no beastes the loose of 50 did come on Land, because the Ice did hang about the Coue, he went to the North fide againe: the ship, to but the same day after he was gone, they began to come on Land.

The next day following, being the eight and twentieth, wee flue about eightie, and tooke Cable vnto) their Blobber and Teeth. Then they began to come on shoare agains the thirtieth day : at what their they may time Master Bonner was come into the Coue to seeke his Anchors. Then his men came on shoare, little vere it and we flue about one hundred and fiftie beaft more. But there rofe a florme at South-east, that cut at case: obrought in such a surge, that it washed aboue sixtie beasts into the Sea; so that most of them therwise, if a were loft.

rere lott.

The next day being the last of July, Master Welden and Master Iones came to the Coue with would runne about twelue men, being all very wearie. For they had lett the Shallop in a Coue on the North- out end tor 60 west fide of the Hand, and came ouer Land. Then to worke wee went on all hands, and placed end, that is alour Coppers. And by the fift day of August we had ended our businesse; and the ship came from together; but the North fide into the Coue.

is faid to bee brought to a Bitter. The Bitter end is that end of the Cable within boord at the Bitter. The

or into a Har-

Pillar wife in

August.

Note.

The fixt of August, I tooke the Skiffe and feuen men to fetch the Shallop to the Coue, that Mafter Welden had left in a Coue, on the North-weft fide of the Iland, the last of July. When I came to the place, confidering I was neere the North fide, where we commonly make our Voycame to the place, commercing a way more than to do for a went thirther, and found about age, and also defired by Mafter Welden, if I could goe, to doe so, I went thirther, and found about fine and fortie as good headed beafts for Teeth, as cuer I faw. Wee had no more Launces to kill the and rottle as good neared pearls for a certified seem at law, which is a more Launces to kill the movimal, but two, I tooke one, and a luttle fellow that was our Cooper had the other swe en m with air, but two, t tooke one, and a mine tank of the first and the celt in lefte then two houres, had not killed past ten but his Lancebrake. Then I she all the rest in lefte then two houres, and wee tooke their Teesh; and the next day by a West Sunne wee came abourd the Paul

th them.

The eight day, wee got the Southermost Point of the Hand : where wee rid all that day. IO Their Skille from their long Boats flerne, and we manned our Boat to fetch her againe: but then their Same from their song transfer but enter the got to the hip of fuch a fogge, that we had like to haue loft both our Boats and men; but they got to the flip

The ninth day, it was calme; but wee had fuch a fogge, that wee could not fee two The mann day, it was cause; out we can a cape; that we could not be two Cables length from the ship. And about eight of the Clocke at night, wee lost our Skiffe

together.

The tenth day, we had a little Wind at North-west and by West. Then seeing no amendment of the weather, wee left the ship of Hull behind with the lland, and about fixe of the ment of the weather, we take any and arrived fafely at London the laft of August, 1609. Bleffed

A Voyage performed to the Northwards, Anno 1603. in a ship of the burthen of fif-tic tunnes, called the Grace, and set forth at the cost and charges of the Wor-Shipfull FRANCIS CHERIE. Written by WILLIAM GORDEN; being the first Voyage to Cheric Iland; which came to my hands since the former (or rather later Voyages) were in

He ship being readie the tenth of Aprill, whereof was Master Stophen Bennet, and for 30 Factor and Ouer-feer Williams Gorden , our Directions from the faid Merchant, were first to proceed to Cola, and there to make sale of such goods as we had, and to take in fuch other as the Countrey of Lappia did affoord, and then to proceed vpon some Discouerie, Wherefore omitting our lourney to Cole, as a matter of small importance, being so well knowne before, after our Affaires ended, we were readie to proceed forward. But our men not being hired thereunto would have refused, if there had not beene made an agreement by meanes of loss as Logar, who was to lye there as Factor for Master Cherie, the Master and my felte, partly with promiles, partly with gitts. And thus fetting forward the fixt of August, 40 from the River of Cola, being determined to have fayled into 80, degrees of latitude, if nothing did hinder vs;or if we did not light vpon some landsour determination was hindered by meanes of meeting with an Iland, and likewile the yeere being farre spent, keeping our course from the West end of Kilden, to the Hands of Ward bouse, which were passed the tenth of August with little wind; then directing our course North North-west, the wind at South-west easis wind, so that the eleventh day we did reckon our felues to have fayled twentie leagues North-west. The twelfth day, it was most part calme and foggie. The thirteenth day, it was cleere, and the wind at South, and we had fayled twentie two leagues North North-west. The fourteenth day, the wind at East, we kept our course and sayled ten leagues, and the same day being thicke and foggie, we had thought wee had seene Land about foure of the clocke in the after-noone, bearing 50 from vs West North-west, and North-west by West, but sayling towards it three houres, keeping still his forme, and not altering till the wind increasing, caused it to fade away (for it was no other then a banke of fogges) after we had fayled three leagues changing our courle, we fayled then fifteene dayes twentie leagues, North-west and by North, still having close weather, that we could not make any observation. The fixteenth day in the morning, at two of the clock, we did see two great high Hils, which did seeme to vs aboue the Clouds, and did seeme very neere, but we found it otherwise for sayling towards it, we found it further then we did expect, for it was fixe of the clocke at night before wee could come neere vnto the Land, where wee anchored in thirtie fathomes. In which time we could not tayle leffe then eighteene leagues North and by West. That night our Master knowing, better what did belong vinto those Affaires, 69 would not fuffer the Boat to goe aland till the morning : which was the feuenteenth day of Auguit, and before our going aland, the Maiter caufed afhanke of Lines to bee that for, to toy for his, and then he and my ielfe with foure of our Company went aland. First, vpon a little fland meere adjoyning, where we had much adoe to get to our Boat againe, by reason of the steepnes

of the Rockes : then we went on thouse vpon the Mayne, where at our comming on Land, wee did fee two Foxes, one White, the other Blacke. Thus foending most part of the day, wee returned aboord our ship without any profit: only one of our men tooke vp a piece of Lead, and I found a piece of a Morfes Tooth, by which we perceined that the Sea Morfer did vie thither, but the time for that yeere was pair, for we did fee none. After our comming aboord, hading haled the Line, we found nothing but one but fish thereon, wherefore prefently weighing Anchor. we fayled West to see if we could have any true observation, the next day which wee had , and found our felues to bee in 74 degrees 30, minutes, The fame day directing our course for London where we arrived the tenth of September, by Gods helpe, in health and fafetie,

## CHAP. XIIIL

Diners Voyages and Northerne Discourries of that worthy irreconcrable Discourrer Master HENRY HVDSON. His Discouerie toward the North Pole, fet forth at the charge of certaine Wor hipfull Merchants of London. in May 1607. Written partly by IOHN PLAYSE one of the Company, and partly by H. HVD SON.



Nue 1607. Aprill the nineteenth, at Saint Ethelburge in Bishops Gate ffreet, did communicate with the reft of the Parishioners these persons Scamen, purposing to goe to fea fouredayes after, for to discouera Paffage by the North Pole tollapan and China. Futt, Henry Hudfon Matter. Secondly, William Colines his Mate. Thirdly, James Toung. Fourthly; Jobn Common. Firtly, John Cooks. Sixtly, James Bankery, Seuenthly, James Shoutson. Eiglity, John Playce, Ninthly, Thomas Baxter.

Tenthly, Richard Day. Eleventhly, James Knight, Twelfthly, John Hadfon a Boy. Tentiny, Kentra Lee, Letteniny, Letteniny, Letteniny, Letteniny, Letteniny a Loy, The first of May 1607, we weyed Anchor as Gransfeld; Jado on Tuesday the fixe and twen-tieth day in the morning, we made the Hes of Shotland, and at noone we were in 60. degrees 12. The Hessefminutes, and fixe leagues to the Eastward of them :the Compasse had no variation. We had fixtie four fathomer at our founding, blacke, ozie, fandir, with some yellow shels. Our ship made No variation. more way then we did suppose. On Saturday the thisweth of May, by our observation we were minutes. in 61. degrees 11. minutes, This day I found the Needle to incline 79. degrees winder the Ho-The inclubilrizon. For foure dayes space we made very little way by contrary winds.

On Thursday the fourth of June, we were by our observation still in 61. degrees and 14. mi. Needle. nutes, eight and twentie or thirtic leagues from the Norther part of Shotland : the Land bearing by our Accompt East and by North off vs, I found variation in fine degrees Westerly. The seventh of June, wee were in 63. degrees 25. minutes. The eighth, all the fore-moone 67.degrees 27. we had a fresh gale Southerly; we steered away North and by West, and by observation we were minutes.

in 64. degrees 27. minutes.

The elementh, wee faw fixe or feuen Whales neere our shippe : wee were in sixtie seuen degrees thirtie minutes. About fine of the clocke, the winde came up at North-east and by East; wee steered away North North-west with a fresh gale all the night at East. Thetwelfth, the winde was at East North-east, a stiffe gale, wee steered away as afore, and accounted wee had runne by this day noone thirtie leagues. In the after-noone wee steered away North and by West fifteene leagues, all the night prooued a great fogge with much wind.

The thirteenth, betweene one and two in the morning, we saw some Land on head of vs, and fome Ice: and it being a thicke fogge, we fleered away Northerly, and having much wind wee 10 flood away South and by East, fixe or eight leagues. Our sayle and shroudes did freeze, At eight in the morning it cleered vp, the wind being at North-east and by East, with much wind wee were hardly able to maintayne a fayle. This was a very high Land, most part covered with Snow. The neather part was vncouered. At the top it looked reddish, and underneath a blackish Clay, with much Ice lying about it. The part which we faw when wee cast about, trended East and West: And the Norther part which we saw, trended North-east and by North, and Northeast; and the length which wee saw was nine leagues; wee saw much Fowle. Also wee saw a Whaleclofe by the shoare. We called the Head-land which we saw, Towney Cape; and neere it Young Cape. flandeth a very high Mount like a round Castle, which were called, the Mount of Gods Mercie. The Mount of All the after-noone, and all the Eeuening it rained. At eight in the Eeuening we cast about, and Gods messic. 60 feered all night North and by West, and sometimes North North-west.

The fourteenth, being neere the Land we had Snow. At foure in the morning, the wind vering Northerly, we cast about and stood South-east and by South. This day wee had much wind and raine, we shorted sayle being neere the Land. The fifteenth, in the morning it blowed so much wind at North-east, that wee were not able to maintayne any sayle, wee then strooke a Ccc 2

hull, and let our thip drive, wayting for a fitter wind; this night was very much raine. The fixteenth, was much wind at North-east. The feuenteenth, we let fayle at noone, we steered away East and by South, and East South-east. The eighteenth, in the afternoone a fine gale Southeast, which toward the Eeuening increased, and we steered North-east three Watches, twelve lesgues. The nineteenth we steered away North North-east fixteene leagues. At noone wee had raine with fogge. From twelve to foure we steered North North-east eight leagues, and did nas rame with tugge, a runs twages to be a special property of the whether the Land which we made the thirteenth day, were an lland or part of Greenland. But their the fogge increased we made the thirteenth day, were an lland or part of Greenland. very thicke with much wind at South, which made vs alter our course, and to shorten our sayle, and we steered away North-east. Being then as we supposed, in the Meridian of the same land, 10 haning no observation fince the eleventh day, and lying a hull from the fifteenth to the fevenmaning as controction into the country of the South-west. This day were saw three Whales neere our ship, and hauing steered away North-east almost one watch, but leagues, the Sea was grown cuery way : we inpposed wee were thwart of the North-east part of that Land which we made the thirteenth day, and the current fetting to wind-ward. The reason that mooued vs to thinke forwas, that after we had fayled five or fixe leagues in this Sea, the wind neither increating nor dulling, we had a pleafant and smooth Sea. All this night was foggie with a good gale of wind, westeered away North-east until the next day at noone, and sayled in that course

Land not conered with

The twentieth, all the morning was a thicke fogge with the winde at South : wee fleered 20 North-east till noone. Then we changed our course, and steered away North North-east, hoping for an open Sea in our course to fall with the bodie of Newland. This day at two in the afternoone it cleered up, and wee faw the Sunne, which wee had not feene fince the fecond of this moneth. Haning steered North North-east, two watches and an halfe, fifteene or fixteene leagues wee faw Land on our Larboord, about foure leagues off vs, trending as wee could gheffe North-east and South-west. We steered away East North-east, the wind at South a good gale, Muchdrift lee, but reasonable cleere; wee saw many Birds with blacke backes, and white besses in forme much \*Toloofe,is to like a Ducke : we saw also many pieces of Ice driving at the Ses. We \*loofed for one and went keepeclofeto roomer for another. And this morning about foure, a thicke fogge we faw a head of vs. The one and twentieth, in the morning we steered North-east, and East North-east two wat- to

ches, fine or fixe leagues. Then it grew thicke fogge. And we cast about, and steered North-east and East North-east two watches, fixe leagues, finding wee were embayed. The wind came at \* To tacke the East South-east a little gale: we \* tacked about and lay South. All this night was a thicke fog thip, is to bring with little wind, Eaft we lay with the flemme.

The two and twentieth, in the morning it elected up, being calme about two or three of the clocke : after we had a prettie gale, and we steered away East and by North three leagues, Our observation was in 72. degrees 38. minutes, and changing our course, we steered North-east, the wind at South-east a prettie gale. This morning when it cleared vp, we saw the Land, trending neere hand East North-east, and West South-west, esteeming our selves from it ewelue leagues, It was a mayne high Land, nothing at all covered with fnow : and the North part of that 40 mayne high Land was very high Mountaynes, but we could fee no fnow on them. We accounted by our observation the part of the mayne Land, lay neerest hand in 73. degrees. The many fogs and calmes with contrary winds, and much Ice neere the shoare, held ws from farther Discovery of it. It may bee objected against vs as a fault, for haling to Westerly a course. The chiefe cause that moued vs thereunto, was our defire to fee that part of Groneland, which (for ought that we know) was to any Christian vnknowne : and wee thought it might as well have beene open Sea as Land, and by that meanes our passage should have beene the larger to the Pole: and the hope of having a Westerly wind, which would be to vs a landerly wind if wee found Land. And considering wee found Land contrarie to that which our Cards make mention of; we accounted our labour fo much the more worth. And for ought that wee could fee, it is like to bee a good to Land, and worth the feeing.

On the one and twentieth day, in the morning while we freered our course North North-east, we thought we had embayed our felues, finding Land on our Larboord, and Ice vpon it, and many great pieces of Drift Ice : we steered away North-east, with diligent looking out enery cleere for Land, having a defire to know whether it would leave vs to the East, both to know the bredth of the Sea, and also to shape a more Northerly course. And considering wee knew no name given to this Land, wee thought good to name it, Hold with bope, lying in 73. degrees of

The Sunne was on the Meridian on the South part of the Compaffe, neerest hand, Heere is The Land of to bee noted that when we made The Mount of Gods Mercie, and Tonngs Cape, the Land was 60 Hold with Hope conered with inow for the most part, and extreame cold, when wee approached neerest: But this Land was very temperate to our feeling. And this likewife is to be noted, that being two dayes without observation; notwithstanding, our lying a hull by reason of much contrary wind, yet our observation and dead reckoning were within eight leagues together, our shippe beeing

before vs eight leagues. This night vntill next morning prooued little Winde. The three and a wentieth, in the morning we had an hard gale on head of vs. with much rayne that fell in very great drops, much like our Thunder showers in England; wee tacked about and thood East Northerly with a short fayle, to our feeling it was not to cold as before we had it. It was calme from noone to three of the clocke with fogge. After the winde came vp at East and East South east, we steered away North saft with the fogge and rayne. About seuen or eight of

the clocke, the winde increased with extreame fogge, wee steered away with short sayle East North-east, and sometimes East and by North. About twelve at mid-night, the wind came vp at South-west, we steered away North, being reasonable cleere weather.

The four and twentieth, in the morning about two of the clocke, the Mafters mate thought A mayne high he faw Land on the Larboard, trending North North-west Westerly, and the longer we ranne Land North, the more is fell away to the Welt, and did thinks it to been mayne high Land. This day the wind being Westerly, we steered away North, and by observation wee were in 72 degrees nearest hand. At noone we changed our course, and steered away North and by East, and at our last observation, and also at this, we found the Meridian all Leeward on the South and by West, Westerly part of the Compasse, when we had sayled two Watches eight leagues.

The fige and twentieth, the wind feanted and came vp at North North-weft, we lay Northeaft two Warches 8, leagues. After the wind became variable betweene the North-eaft and the North, we steered away East and by North, and sometimes East, we had thicke fogge. About noone three Granpasses played about our shape. This After-noone the wind vered to the East and South-east, we haled away North and by East. This night was close weather, but small fogge (we vie the word Night for distinction of time, but long before this the Sunne was alway about the Horizon, but as yet we could never fee him you the Meridian North.) This Night being by our accompt in the Latitude of 75 degrees, we faw small flockes of Birds, with 75 Degrees blacke Backes and white Bellies, and long speare Tayles. We supposed that Land was not farre Land not farre off, but we could not diferie any, with all the diligence which we could vie, being fo close wea- off, ther that many times we could not fee fixe or feuen leagues off.

. The fixe and twentieth, in the morning was close weather, we had our wind and held our course as afore. This day out observation was 76. degrees 38. minutes, and we had Birds of the 76. degrees 38. 30 fame fort as afore, and diversocher of that colour, having red Heads; that we faw when we first minutes, made the Mount of Gods Mercy in Greenland, but not fo many. After we fleered away North and by East : two VVatches 10. leagues, with purpose to fall with the Souther part of Newland, accounting our felues 10. or 12. leagues from the Land. Then wee flood away North-east one

VVatch fine leagues.

The feuen and twentieth, about one or two of the clocke in the morning we made Newland, Greenland or being cleere weather on the Sea; but the Land was couered with fogge, the Ice lying very thick Newland discovery all along the shoare for 15. or 16. leagues which we saw. Having faire wind wee coasted it in a uered. very pleasing smooth sea, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms, foure leagues from the shoare. This day at noone, wee accounted we were in 78. degrees, and we stood along the shoare. This 78. Degrees.

40 day was so foggie, that we were hardly able to see the Land many times, but by our account we were neare Useel Hooke. About eight of the clocke this Eeuening, we purposed to shape our zogel Hooke. course from thence North-west. Heere is to bee noted, that although we ranne along neere the shoare, we found no great cold, which made vs thinke, that if we had beene on shoare the place is Temperate temperate. Holding this North-west course, about ten of the clocke at night, we saw great store avec of Ice on head off vs, bearing Wester off vs; which we could not goe cleere off with the forefayd course. Then we tast about, and stood away betweene the South and the South-east, as much defirous to leave this Land as we were to fee it.

The eight and twentieth, was a hard gale of wind all the fore-noone betweene the South and the South-west. We shaped our course , we did it to bee farther from

so the Ice and Land. It pleased God that about twelve of the clocke this night it cleared vp, and we found that we were betweene the Land and the Ice; Vogel Hooke then bearing nearest hand East off vs. Then we tacked about, and stood in for the shoare, having Sea-roome between the Ice and the Land. The nine and twentieth, at foure in the morning the wind at North-east, a pretie gale, we thought best to shorten our way, so we tacked about and stood North North-west, the wind a little increasing. About twelue at noone, we saw Ice a head off vs; we cast about again, and flood away East South-east with very much wind, to that we shortned our tayles for the space of two Watches. Then about eight this Ecuening, we strucke a Hull, and it proued the hardest stormethat we had in this Voyage. The thirtieth, in the morning was stormie; about noone it ceased, at seven in the Eevening it proved almost calme.

60 The first of July, all the fore-noone the wind was at South-east, we stood North-east for the shoare, hoping to finde an open Sea betweene the shoare and the Ice. About moone wee lulywere embayed with Ice, lying betweene the Land and vs. By our observation we were in 78.degrees 42.minutes, whereby we accounted we were thwart of The great Indraught. And to 78.degrees 42. free our felues of the Ice, we fteered betweene the South-east and South, and to the Westward, as minutes.



we could have lea ; And about fix, this Ecuening it pleased God to give vs cleere weather; and we found we were that farre into the Inlet, being almost a Bay, and enuironed with very high Mountaynes, with low Land lying betweene them; wee had no ground in this Bay at an hundred fathoms. Then being fure where we were, we florred away West, the wind at South-tall and calme, and found all our Ice on the Norther shoare, and a cleare Sea to the Southward.

The second, it pleased God to give ve the wind at North-cast, a faire gale, with cleere wetther, the Lee being to the Northward off vs, and the weather shore, and an open Sea to the South wards vader our Lee. We held on our course North-west till swehe of the clocke; having say. led in that course to leagues, and finding the Ice to fall from es to the led in that courie rotagues, and mining the act of rail nomine for a mongh fo huge a quantitiankes to God, who marcellously preferred we from for many daigers, amongh fo huge a quantition of the course of the cou titie of Ice and Fogge. We steered away North-west, hoping to be free from Ice, we had ob-72. Degrees 56. femution 78. degrees 56. minutes, we fell with Ice againe, and trended it as it hay between the West and South South-east. The third, we had observation 78, degrees 33 minutes. This day The degree 33 wee had our throads frozen, it was fearching cold, we also trended the lee, not knowing when ther we were cleare or not, the wind being at North.

The shroudes the Inlet.

minuces.

78.degrees. The end of

A Blacke and o

the Sache.

pen Sea.

The fourth, was very cold, and our shroudes and sayles frozen, we found we were farre in the The incomes and ayles for Inlet. The wind being at North, we beare vp and flood South-South-eaft, and South and South well by Well till ten this night. The fift, was very much wind at North Basterly : at twelve we ftrooke a Hull, hauing brought our felues neare the mouth of the Inlet. 77. degrees 20.

The fixth, in the morning the wind was asbefore, and the Sea growne. This morning we 10 came into a very Greene Sea, we had our observation 77.degrees 30 minutes. This after-noone the wind and Sea affwaged. About four of the clocke we let sayle, and steered North-west and by West, the wind being at North North-east. This day proued the clearest day we had long before. The fenenth, at foure in the morning was very cleare weather, and the fairest Morning that we saw in three weekes before, we steered as afore, being by our account in 78.degrees nearch hand, and out of the Saste. We found we were compassed in with Land and Ice, and were againe entred into a Blacke Sea, which by proofe we found to be an open passage. Now having againe entreu into a source one, without you proof we sould be by East, with purpose to fall with the Southermost part of this Land : which we saw, hoping by this meane, either to defray the charge of the Voyage, or elfe, if it pleafed God in time to give vs a faire wind to the North-eaft, to is 10 tisfie expectation. All this day and night afterward proued calme.

Much Drift-The eight, all the fore-noone proued calme, and very thicke fogge. This morning we saw many peeces of Drift-wood drine by vs, we heated out our Boate to ftop a leake, and mended our riggings. This day wee faw many Seales, and two Fishes which we judged to bee Sea-horses, Many Seales. or Morfes. At twelue, this night we had the winde at East and by South, wee stood away

The ninth, all the fore-noone was little wind at South-east, with thicke fogge. This day we were in amongst Ilands of Ice, where we saw many Scales.

The tenth, in the morning was foggie, afterward it proued cleere, we found we were compaffed with Ice enery way about vs; wee sacked about, and flood South and by Weft; and South 40 South-west one Watch fine leagues, hoping to get more Sea-roome, and to stand for the Northeast, we had the wind at North-west. The eleuenth, very cleere weather, with the winde at South South-eaft, we were come out

of the Blue Sea into our Greene Sea againe, where we faw Whales. Now having a fresh gale of

ken out of Hen.

wind at South South-east, it behooved mee to change my course, and to sayle to the North-east, by the Souther end of Nowland. But being come into a Greene Sea, praying God to direct mee, I Notes.

Russ and Greene feered away North ten leagues. After that, we faw Ice on our Larboord, we fleered away Eaft and by North three leagues, and left the Ice behind vs. Then we steered away North till noone. This day wee had the Sunne on the Meridian South and by West, Westerly, his greatest height was 37-degrees 20. minutes. By this observation we were in 79, degrees 17. minutes, we had a 50 79-degrees 17. fresh gale of wind and a smooth sea, by meanes whereof our ship had out-runne vs. At ten this Ecucumg cleere weather, and then we had the company of our trouble ome neighbours Ice with fogge. The wind was at South South-west. Heere we saw plentie of Seales, and we supposed Beares had beene heere, by their footing and dung vpon the Ice. This day, many of my Compa-

Sick of Beares nie were ficke with eating of Beares fielh the day before vnfalted. The twelfth, for the most part was thicke fogge, we steered betweene South and by East, and South South-east 2. . leagues, to cleere vs of the Ice. Then we had the wind at South, we steered till noone North-east fine leagues. This morning we had our shrouds frozen. At noone by our accompt we were in 80, degrees, being little wind at West South-west, almost calme with thicke fogge. This after-noone we steered away North, and sometimes North-east. Then we faw Ice a head off vs, we cast about and stood South-east, with little wind and fogge. Before we 60 calf about by meanes of the thicke fogge, we were very neere Ice, being calme, and the Sea fetting on to the Ice, which was very dangerous. It pleased God at the very instant to give vs a small gale, which was the meanes of our deliverance, to him be praife therefore. At twelve this night,

it cleared up, and out of the top William Collins our Boat-Iwaine faw the Land, called Newland Newland or

by the Hollanders, bearing South South-west twelve leagues from vs. The thirteenth, in the Morning the wind at South and by East, a good gale, we cast about and which the Holfood North-east and by East, and by observation we were in 80. degrees 23. minutes. This day landers bath we faw many Whales. This fore-noone proued cleere weather, and we could not fee any figne of made a little Ice out of the top. Betweene noone and three of the clocke, we steered away North-east and by Barens, as be-East five leagues, then we saw Ice on head off vs, we steered East two Glasses one league, and could sore is delivenot be cleare of the Ice with that courfe. Then we fleered away South east two leagues ; atter ted, but nei-

we fayled East and by North, and East foure leagues; till eight the next morning. The foureteenth in the morning was calme with fogge. At nine the wind at East, a small nor so exact gale with thicke fogge, we steered South-east and by Exft, and running this courte we found nor first sabeour Greene Seasgaine, which by proofe we found to be freeft from Ice; and our Azure Blue Sea fore is obferto be our Icie Sea. At this time we had more Birds then we viually found. At noone being a wed of Sir He thicke forge, we found our felues neere Land, bearing East off vs ; and running farther we found Willam a Bay open to the Welt and by North Northerly, the bottome and fides thereof being to our Discourres fight very high and ragged Land. The Norther fide of this Bayes mouth being high land, is a finding the small Hand, the which we called Colline Cape, by the name of our Boat-swaine, who first saw it. Whale and In this Bay we faw many Whales, and one of our company having a Hooke and Line over-board Morfe benefit, to trie for Fish, a Whale came under the Keele of our ship, and made her held, yet by Gods mer- they also em-20 cie we had no harme, but the lofte of the hooke and three parts of the line. At a South-well Green Seafter Sunne from the North-west and by North, a flood set into the Bay. At the mouth of this Bay est of Ice, and we had founding thirtie fathoms, and after fixe and ewentie fathoms, but being farther in, we the Blue Sta had no ground at an hundred fathoms, and therefore judged it rather a Sound then a Bay. Be- Icie. tweene this high ragged, in the fwampes and vallies lay much fnow. Heere wee found it hot. Whale danett

On the Souther fide of this Bay, lye three or foure fmall llands or Rockes. In the bottome of this Bay, John Colman my Mare, and William Collins my Boat-swaine, with A Sound is a two others of our company went on shoare, and there they found and brought aboord, a payre of greater and Morfes teeth in the jaw, they like wife found Whales bones, and fome dofen or more of Deeres desperin-Hornes, they faw the footings of Beafts of other forts, they also faw Rote-geefe, they faw much draught then a 30 drift Wood on the shoare, and found a streame or two of Fresh water. Here they found it hot on Bay.

the shoare, and dranke water to coole their thirst, which they also commended. Here we found so, degreet, the want of a better Ship-boate. As they certified me, they were not on the ilioare pair halfe an houre, and among other things brought aboord a Stone of the Countrey. When they went from vs it was calme, but prefently after we had a gale of wind at North-east, which came with the Flood with fogge. We plyed too and againe in the Bay waiting their comming; but after they came aboord we had the wind at East and by South a fine gale, we minding our Voyage, and the time to performe it, fleered away North-east, and North North-east. This inight proued cleere, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the North and by East part of the Compasse, from the

vpper edge of the Horizon with the Croffe-staffe, we found his height 10, degrees 40 minutes, grees 40 minutes, without allowing any thing for the Semidiameter of the Sunne, or the diltance of the end of the his, about staffe from the Center in the Eye. From a North Sunne to an East Sunne, we sayled betweene mid-niele. North and North North-east, eight leagues.

The fifteenth, in the morning was very cleere vveather, the Sunne shining vvarme, but little wyind at East Southerly. By a South-east Summe wee had brought Collins Cape to beare off vs South-east, and we faw the high Land of Newland, that part by vs Discouered on our starboard, eight or ten leagues from vs, trending North-east and by East, and South-west and by West. eighteene or twentie leagues from vs to the North-east, being a very high Mountaynous land, like ragged Rockes with frow betweene them. By mine account, the Norther part of this Land which now vve faw, firetched into \$1. degrees. All this day proued cleere vveather, little \$1. degrees. Wind, and reasonable yvarme.

50 The fixteenth, in the morning warme and cleere weather, the wind at North, This morning we saw that we were compassed in with Ice in abundance, lying to the North, to the North-west, the East and South-east, and being runne toward the farthest part of the Land by vs disco- Landssreeduered, which for the most part trendeth nearest hand North-east and South-west, vvce faw inginto 82.demore Land iowning to the same, trending North in our fight, by meanes of the cleernesse of the grees. vveather, firetching farre into 82. degrees; and by the bowing of the skie much farther. Which when I first faw, I hoped to have had a free Sea bet weene the Land and the Ice, and meant to have compassed this Land by the North. But now finding by proofe it was unpossible, by means of the abundance of Ice compating vs about by the North, and toyning to the land, and They returned

feeing God did bleffe vs with a faire wind to fayle by the South of this Land to the North-taff, to vereturned, bearing vp the Helme, minding to hold that part of the Land, which the Hollarders had discourred in our fight, and if contrary vvindes should take vs, to Harbour there, and to trie what wee could finde to the charge of our Voyage, and to proceed on our Discouerie, as soone as God should bleffe vs with Winde. And this I can affure at this present, that betweene 78. de-

grees and \$\dagger\$, and \$2. degrees by this way there is no passage: but I thinke this Land may bee grees and a superson of the state of the sta Abundance of faw more abundance of Seales then we had feen any time before fwimming in the water. At taw more annual to the state with the state of the state nounce, the may having a time gate or the clocke the Cape beare. North-eaft off vs. From in 31 aggrees and a mater and a south west, with purpose to keepe in the open Sea free from Ice, and layled in that course 16. leagues. At ten this night we steered away South-west, with the wind at North a hard gale, vntill eight the next morning 18, leagues.

The feuenteenth, in the morning a good gale at North: at eight, we altered our courfe, and The feuenteenth, in the morning a good gase at avoisit; see eight, we attend our course, and fleered away South till eight in the Ecuening, and rame 12. leagues. This day proud reasons. ble cleere and warms. The eighteenth, in the morning the wind encreafed at South and by Earl, with thicke fogge. All this after-moone and night proued close weather, little fogge, and

The nineteenth, at eight in the morning the wind at South, with thicke fogge, we fleered South-east 4. leagues till noone: then the wind vered more large; wee steered South-east and by Eaft 4, leagues till foure: then wee vered shete, and steered East and by South Easterly, 15. leagues, till eight the next morning. This day after the morning proced reasonable clerre

The twentieth, in the morning little wind: at eight this morning wee faw Land ahead of vs ynder our Lee, and to weatherward of vs diffant from vs 12. leagues, being part of New 20 Land. It is very high mountainous Land; the highest that we had seene vatill now. As we sayled neere it, we faw a Sound ahead of vs, lying East and west. The Land on the Norther fide of this Sounds mouth, trendeth neerest hand West North-west, and East South-east 12. legues, in our fight being 10, leagues from vs. And the Land on the Souther fide being 8.0r 10.leagues in our fight; a: this time trendeth South South-east, and North North-west; from eight to noone 77.degras.m. was calme. This day by observation we were in 77. degrees 26. minutes. On the Norther side of the mouth of this Inlet lie three llands, not farre the one from the other, being very high mountainous Land. The fartheft of the three to the North-west, hath source very high Mounts like heapes of Corne. That lland next the Inlets mouth, hath one very high Mount on the like heapes or Come, a tax tann near the market mount, many very mgo anomic on the Souther end. Here one of our companie killed a red billed Bird, All this day after the mor- 30 ning, and all night proued calme, enclining rather to heate then cold. This night wee had fome

The one and twentieth, all the fore-noone calme; at foure in the after-noone we had a small gale of wind at South-South-east, with fog ; we steered away East to stand in with the Land, and layled 3. leagues untill mid-night: then the wind came at North-east, we cast about, and fleered South 10. leagues till eight the next morning. The two and twentieth, at eight in the morning much wind at Eaft, and variable, with short sayle wee steered 3. leagues South and by East: then came downe very much wind; weeftrooke a hull. All this after-moone and night,

The three and twentieth, all the fore-noone was very much wind at South, with raine and 40 fogge. At foure this after-noone wee faw Land, bearing North-eaft of vs 6. leagues from vs. Then we had the wind at South South-west; wee steered away South-east, and South-east and by East 4. leagues, the Sea being very much growne. We accounted we had hulled North-west and by North 22. leagues; and North 3. leagues. Then fearing with much wind to be fet on a lee shoare, we tackt about, and made our way good West and by North, halfe a point Northerly,

The foure and twentieth, in the morning much wind as afore, and the Sea growne. This morning wee strooke our mayne Top-mast to eate our ship, and sayled from the last Equening eight to this noone 15. leagues West and by North halfe a point Northerly. From twelue to eight, 6. leagues as afore, with the wind at South and by West: at eight we tackt about with 50 the winde at South South-west, and lay South-east and by East, with much winde, and the

The fine and twentieth, was a cleere morning we fee our mayne Top-mast, we saw Land bearing North of vs, and under our Lee, we fayling South-east and by East. Then the wind scanted: we cast about, and lay South-west and by West a leagues ; till noone. Then it began to ouer-cast, and the wind to scant againe: we cast about, and lay South-east and by South, the wind at Southwest and by West, and sayled in that course 3, seagues till source in the atter-noone. Then the wind featted againe, and we fayled 3. leagues South. Now, seeing how contrarie the winde proued, to doe the good which weedefired this way; I thought to proue our fortunes by the West once againe: and this Eeuening at eight, wee being the latitude of 78. with the better, 60 and from Land 15. leagues, which leagues part whereof beare from the North-east to the East off vs, we steered away West, with the wind at South-east, and cleere weather.

The fixe and twentieth, all this day proued rayne with thicke fog, and an hard gale of wind at East and by North, and East North-east. From the last Ecuening at eight to this moone, wee ranne 25. leagues ! from noone till mid-night 19. leagues, the wind at East and by South; from mid-night till two the next morning, 2. leagues West.

The feuen and twentieth, extreme thicke fog, and little wind at East and by South. Then it proued calme, and the Sea very loftie. Wee heard a great rutte or notic with the Ice and Sea. which was the first Ice we heard or faw fince we were at Collins Cape: the Sea hearing vs West. ward toward the Ice. Wee heaved out our Boat, and rowed to towe out our ship farther from the danger; which would have beene to finall purpose, by meanes the Sea went so high; but in this extremitie it pleased God to give vs a small gale at North-west and by West, we steered away South-eaft 4. leagues till noone. Here we had finished our Discouerie, if the wind had con- Dangeresta-

10 tinued that brought vs hither, or if it had continued calmer but it pleased God to make this ped North-west, and by West wind the meane of our deliverance : which wind wee had not found common in this Voyage. God give vs thankfull hearts for fo great deliverance. Here we found Whales Bay. the want of a good ship-boat, as once we had done before at Whales Bay : we wanted also halfe a dozen long Oares to rowe in our fhip. At hoppe the day cleered vp, and we faw by the skie Ice bearing off vs: from West South-west to the North and North North-east. Then we had a good gale at West, we steered away South will foure 7. leagues. From foure to fix South 4. leagues, and found by the loy skie and our necreneffe to Groneland, that there is no paffage that way : which if there had beene, I meant to have made my returne by the North of Groneland to Danie his Streights, and fo for England. Here finding we had the benefit of a Westerly wind, which 20 all this Voyage we had found feare, we aftered our course, and steered to the Eastward, and ran

South-east foure leagues. From eight this Equening till moone the next day; East South-east 30. leagues. All this day and night proued very cold, by meanes, as I suppose, of the winds com-The eight and twentieth, very cold, the wind at West, not very foggie. At noone this day we fteered away South-east and by East, and by observation we were 76, degrees 26, minutes.

From noone to eight to, leagues. Then the wind scanted to South-east and by South, we steered away East and by North 18. leagues, till the next day noone.

The nine and twentieth, all the fore-moone a thicke fog and wet, the wind at South-east and by East, neerest hand, and raw cold. From noone to soure, wee sayled three leagues East and by 30 North, halfe a point Northerly. Then the wind vered more large, we steered East and by South 8. leagues till twelne at night. At this timet to windward we heard the rutte of Land; which I knew to be fo, by the colour of the Sea. It was extreme thicke fog, fo that we could hardly fee a Cables length from our ship. We had ground 25. fathoms, small blacke peble stones. Wee founded againe, and had ground at 30. fathomes small stones like Beanes, at the next cast no ground at 60. fathomes. I cast about againe, and steered South-west 6. leagues, West and by North two leagues till the next day noone. All this day and night extreme thicke fog.

The thirtieth, all the fore-noone very thicke fog. At noone almost calme : after we had little wind, and fleered North North-west till two: then it cleered vp, so that we could see from vs 2. leagues with the wind at North-west. Then we steered East South-east: after it cleered. At 40 South in the Eeuening, we faw an Iland bearing off vs North-west from vs 5, leagues, and we faw land bearing off vs from vs 7. leagues. We had land likewise bearing off vs from East Southeast, to South-east and by East as wee judged, 10. leagues. Then having the winde at West North-west, we steered South and by East, It presently proued calme till ten this Eeuening: then wee had a little gale at South-west and by West, wee steered away South South-east till twelve this night, and accounted ourselves in 76. from Land 10. leagues: which was the likelieft Land that wee had feene on all the parts of Newland, being playne riggie Land of a meane height, and not ragged as all the rest was that we had seene this Voyage, nor coursed with snow. At twelve this night we faw two Morfes in the Seancere vs, fwimming to Land. From twelve

at night to foure, calme. 50 The one and thirtieth, at foure this morning we had the wind at South-east, we steered South South-west. Then it proued calme, and so continued all the fore-moone. The after-moone wee had the wind at East South-east, we steered South 8. leagues. Then being like to proue much wind, contrarie to our purpole, and finding our fog more thicke and troublesome then before, diuers things necessarie wanting, and our time well nigh spene to doe further good this yeere, I commanded to heare vp for our returne for England, and freered away South South-wett. And this night proved a hard gale of wind at South-east and by East. Wee were thwart of Cheries Cherie lland. Hand the next morning at foure of the clocke, being to windward off vs 5. leagues: knowing we were neere it, we looked out carefully for the same, and it prouing cleere, we saw it , being a very ragged Land on the Wester side, rising like Hey-cockes.

60 The first of August, a very hard gale of wind at East South-east, 'we shorted sayle, and steered away South South-west. This night was very foggie, with a hard gale of wind at East and by South, we fleered by our account 27. leagues: and from eight this Equening till the next morning foure, 10. leagues as afore. All this night was very foggie, wet and raw cold.

The second, in the morning calme with a thicke fog, cold and slabbie weather. About noone

we had a little gale Weft and by North, wee steered away as afore. The third, in the morning calme and cleere weather, with a littlegale Eaft and by South, we fayled South South-west: then wee had the wind at South-east, wee sayled as afore. All this day and night proued close weather, a little fogge at noone, which continued not long. At twelve this night the wind vered to the East and by North, wee held our course South South-west, as afore.

The fifteenth of August, we put into the Iles of Farre, standing in 52. degrees; and the fifteenth of September, I arrived in Tilberie Hope in the Thames.

CHAP. XV.

A second Voyage or Employment of Master Hener Hener on, for finding a passage to the East Indics by the North-east.

written by himselfe.

\* I haue Robert Inets I ournall alfo, for breuitic omitted.

May.

Lewfoat.

Heir names employed in this action are as followeth: Henry Hadjon, Master and Pilot; Robert ' Inst, the Matter his Mate; Lindayer Arrain; Inne Cooke; I don of done; Philip Stacie, Carpenter; I don Berns; I don Brans; I don Brans; I don of dry, I ames Straten, Michael Epice, Thomas Hilber, Rebord Tomfon, Reduced in this College of the Control of the Con Pilot ; Robers " Inst, the Master his Mate ; Ludlowe Arnall; lobo Cooke, Boatbert Rayner, lobn Hudfon, and Humfey Gilby. The couries observed in this 20 Iournall were by a Compasse, that the Needle and the North of the Flye were

directly one on the other. Aprill.

Anno 1608. the two and twentieth of Aprill, being Friday, we let fayle at Saint Katherines, and fell downe to Blacke wall,

The twentieth of May, at noone by observation we were in 64-degrees 52-minutes, and at this time and place the Needle declined under the Horizon by the Inclinatory 81, degrees, and wee had a smooth Sea, by meanes whereof my observation was good.

The one and twentieth, at night thicke fog, wee fayled North North-east, with the wind at Eaft. The two and twentieth, in the fore-noone the winde at South-eaft, wee fleered North North-east, as afore: in the after-noone little wind and thicke fog; we accounted vs in 67. de. 30 grees, the Sea smooth, the Needle declined 82. degrees, this night was calme and cleere. The three and twentieth, in the morning the wind was Easterly, we flood North North-East, and North and by East. All the fore-noone was foggie: in the after, noone it cleered, and the wind shortned upon vs, we made our way good North all night. The foure and twentieth, the wind at East North-cast, and East and by North, we lay as neere as wee could with a full layle; wee accounted Lowfoot from vs East Northerly, 16. leagues, distant from vs : at foure a clocke this after-noone, wee flood all night, as afore.

The fine and twentieth, the wind at East North east, we flood a way North as we could lie: all this day was cleere weather, and fearthing cold, which cold begunne the one and twentieth day, and then my Carpenter was taken ficke, and to doth yet continue; and three or foure more 40 of our companie were enclining to ticknelle, I suppose by meanes of the cold. All the night it was calme. The fixe and twentieth, cold but cleere weather, the wind betweene Kaft and East North-east, we flood North-easterly till twelpe a clocke at night: then wee had the wind at North-east & North North-east, we stood South-east and East till noone the next day. The seven and twentieth, cold and drie weather, at noone we had the wind North and North North-west; Wee stood away North-east, and East North-east, as we could, and accounted our selues in 69. degrees 40. minutes, and the Needle enclined, having a smooth Sea, neerest 84. degrees. All night we had wind and weather as afore.

The eight and twentieth, drie cold cleere weather; the wind betweene North North-west Sun s. degrees and North, we made our way good East North-east; wee faw the Sunne on the North Meri- 30 35. minutes at dian aboue the Horizon 5. degrees 35. minutes, All this night we had much wind, as afore. The nine and twentieth, a hard gale at North North-west: by account we ranne from mid-night to noone 21, leagues, East North-east. Wee had the Sunne on the Meridian 5. degrees, the latitude 73. degrees 13. minutes, whereby wee found our ship to have out-runne vs. At mid-night the wind came to South-east: we cast about, and stood East North-east. This day partly cleere weather with some snow. The thirtieth, cold cleere weather, the wind betweene North-east, and East and by North; we went East South-east, and observing, were in 73. degrees 50. minutes. The one and thirtieth, cold and cleere weather: from the last day till this day noone, we flood South-east and by South, in the latitude of 72. degrees 45. minutes.

South-east. The second, a hard gale of wind at North-east: towards night, calme with fogge, our course was South-east all day. The third, in the morning we had a sight of the North Cape; Variation well and at a West and by North Sunne, the Cape bore off vs South-west, halfe a point Southerly,

The first of June, a hard gale at East North-East, with snow: we made our way good South 60 being from vs 8. leagues: and observing the variation, I found it to the Westward II. degrees:

and having a smooth Sea, the Needle enclined under the Horizon 84. degrees and a halfe, the Needlesinclineerest I could finde. We had the wind at South-west, and wee stood away North-east and by nation 84, de-East. It was cleere weather, and we faw Norway Fisher-men at Sea.

The fourth, warme cleere fun-shine, we stood away North-east and by East. Now by Gods halfa. helpe our Carpenterrecouered, and made a Mast for our ship-boat, and the companie made a Sayle, we had the Sunne in the light on the North Meridian : his height was 5. degrees 40. minutes. Inclination 23. degrees 21. minutes : Poles height 72. degrees 21. minutes. The fift, in the morning calme weather : wee founded, and had 140, fathoms, fand Oze : here wee faw a fwelling Sea setting North-east and by East, and South-west and by West, with streame-leches: 10 and we saw drift wood. After we had wind ; and we sayled and made our way North Northeast: towards night we founded, and found ground at 150. fathoms, fand Oze. This day cleere weather, and not cold. The fixt, wee had cleere weather, the wind being at East North-East, from the last day till this day noone; we shaped our way on divers courses North and by West,

in the latitude of 73, degrees 24. minutes. We found that our ship had out-runne vs, founding in 160. fathoms: in the after-noone little wind. The fewenth, in the morning the wind at South, after at South South-east: from the last day till this day noone, wee accounted our way from divers courses North-east, 15. leagues. This day was close but cleers weather, and we had a good gale of wind at this time. And three dayes before this, our Cooke and one more of our companie were very ficke. In the morning, we had

20 ground at 150. fathoms, and at night we had no ground at 180. fathoms, which encreated hope. This night we had some snow, which continued foure houres: then the wind came at Northeast and by East with storme; and with short sayle we stood North and by West; here the Needle enclined \$6. degrees. I accounted that we were in 74. degrees and a halfe at neerest hand. This 74 degrees night we faw the Sunne on the North Meridian , his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which 30. minutes maketh the Poles height 74, degrees 23. minu es. The eight, from twelue a clocke last night till noone, we accounted our way on divers courses, North and by East: then our latitude was 74. degrees 38. minutes, and we had no ground at 200. fathoms. In the after-noone the wind came at South-east, and South-east and by East. This day and night wee had cleere weather, and we were here come into a blacke blue Sea.

The ninth, cleere weather, the wind came at South-east and by East: from the last day till Sea. this day noone, wee had a good way North-east, in latitude of 75. degrees 29. minutes : then wee entred into Ice, being the first we faw in this Voyage: our hope was to goe through it, we flood into it, and held our course betweene North-east, and East North-east, loosing for one, and bearing roome for another, till foure in the after-noone : at which time we were so farre in and the Ice fo thicke and firme ahead, being in it foure or fine leagues, that wee had endangered vs formewhat too farre; wee returned as wee went in , and with a few rubbes of our ship against the Ice; by eight a clocke this Eeuening wee got free of it. Wee made our way till next day at moone, South-west and by South, 18 leagues: in the middest of this way weehad no ground at 180. fathoms. The tenth, in the morning hafey weather; but at noone it cleered vp, and 40 then we cast about, and stood away North and by East, the wind being at East South-east, two watches, fine leagues: then we had the wind at East, we cast about, and stood South South-east, and made a South way, fixe leagues. The eleuenth, in the morning a hard ftorme at East, and East and by South we strooke ahu'l.

The twelfth, in the morning fog, and all day after cleere weather, the wind at South Southwest, we steered East and by North at noone being in the latitude 75 degrees 30 minutes. From noone till four a clocke, fine leagues East and by North; then we saw Ice ahead of vs, and voder our Lee trending from the North-west to the North and East of vs: We had founding 100, fathom, greenish Oz: . Here we saw divers pieces of drift wood by vs driving, and streame Leeches lying South South-west, and North North-east. We many times saw the like since we saw the North Cape. The thirteenth, cleere weather, the wind at East, we made a South way 6. leagues, two watenes: then we cast about, and made a North way one watch 3. leagues 4: At twelve at night, much wind with fog, we strooke abull and layed our ships head to the Southward. The

fourteenth, in the fore-noone fog, and our shroudes were frozen: the after-noone was cleere The fifteenth, all day and night cleere fun-shine; the wind at East, the latitude at noone 75. degrees 7. minutes. We held Westward by our account 13, leagues. In the after-noone the Sea was affwaged; and the wind being at East we fet fayle, and stood South and by East, and South

South-east as we could, This morning, one of our companie looking ouer boord saw a Mermaid, Mermaide and calling up fome of the companie to fee her, one more came up, and by that time fine was feen, and de-6c come cluse to the thips fide, looking earnefly on the men: a little after, a Sea came and ouertur. feribed. ned her: from the Nauill vpward, her backe and breafts were like a womans, (as they say that faw her) her body as big as one of vs; her skin very white; and long haire hanging downe behind, of colour blacke: in her going downe they faw her tayle, which was like the tayle of a Porpose, and speckled like a Macrell. Their names that saw her, were Thomas Hiller and Ro-

The fixteenth, cleere weather, the wind being at East. From the last day till this day moone, we made our way South and by East 9. leagues; and from noon to eight a clocke in the Eeuening, 6. leagues: then we cast about and stood to the Northwards.

The seuenteenth, cleere weather, the wind at South-east and by East; from the last day till this day noone, our way was North-east and by East, at noone being in the latitude of 74. degrees 40 minutes. At after-noone we founded, and had ground at 86.fathom, greene Oze, and our water whitilin greene: Here we saw Whales, Porpoiles, and the Sea full of Fowles: from noone to mid-night North-east and by East we had the Sunne at lowest, on the North and by East, Easterly pare of the Compasse: latitude 74. degrees 54. minutes. Sounding we had 92. fathoms

The eighteenth, faire weather, the wind at South-east and by East, from mid-night till this day noone, wee fayled North-east and by East, in the Latitude of 75, degrees 24. minutes, and had ground at ninetie fine fathome Oze, as afore. Heere we had Ice in our fight to the Northward off vs. In the after-noone, having little wind at North-east, we cast about and lay East South-east, and at fixe a clocke, had ground at ninetic five fathoms and a halfe Oze, as afore. From noone to twelue a clocke at night, our way was South-east, and South-east and by East, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East halfe a point Eastward. The Sunnes height was eight degrees 40 minutes. Sounding ninetie fathom. All this day, we had Ice on our Larboord trending : and at this time, from the North-west off vs to the East South-east, I have fome reason to thinke there is a Tide or Current fetting to the Northwards; the course wee 20 held and the way we made betweene this noone and mid-night Observations, doe make mee

Needles inclination 89.degrees and a

Current.

The nineteenth, faire and warme weather, the sea smooth. Here the Needle inclined under the Horizon 89. degrees and a halfe, being in the Latitude at noone of 75. degrees \$2. minutes; Soungrees and a ding wee had ground in an hundred fathom. From twelue a clocke last night till this day at naire, 1175,000 noone, we accounted our way from East and by North to South-east, ten leagues, having Ice alwayes in our fight trending on our Larboord, wee had the winde betweene North, and North North-west. We saw the Sunne at the lowest on the North and by East, halfe a point Easterly, his height was 8. degrees 10. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 56. minutes; Sounding we had ground in one hundred and twentie fixe fathom. From moone to this time, wee 10 accounted our way East and by South, and East South-east, twelve leagues.

The twentieth, faire warme weather, this morning at foure of the clocke, wee had depth one Beares roaring hundred and twentie fine fathom. Heere we heard Beares roare on the Ice; and we faw vpon Store of Seals, the Ice and neare voto it, an incredible number of Seales. We had founding one hundred and fifteen fathom, and after ground at mnetie fine fathomfandie Oze, We had the Sun on the Meridian North and by East, halic a point Easterly; his height was 7, degrees 20. minutes. From twelve a clocke last night, to twelue a clocke this night, our way was made good by our account Southeast and by South, twelie leagues, and South-east, three leagues and a halfe, the Ice alwayes being on our Larboord. The wind this day, betweene North and North-west.

The one and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the morning wee founded, and had one hundred 40 and twentie fathome greene Oze, and the Icebore off vs East, the winde variable; in divers courfes wee made our way good South South-east; our Latitude at noone being 74. degrees 9. minutes, we were haled to the Northward beyond expectation. All this day faire, cleere, and aughings 7.

degrees 40 mi. warme weather, and Ice on our Larboord at a North and by East Sunne; being then at lowest, his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which made the Poles height 74. degrees 33. minutes. degrees 33.mir From the last day at noone, till twelve a clocke this night, by account of our ships way, wee made our way good East North-cast, fixe leagues and a halfe; whereby it doth appeare how we were haled to the Northward. Heere wee had ground at one hundred and thirteene fathome, riation of the greene fandie Oze.

night high 7. Juets notes tell of a fudden va-Compaffe, North to the East one point which had

The two and twentieth, faire cleare weather, the winde at West North-west. At eight a 30 clocke in the Morning, we had ground at one hundred and fifteene fathom, greene Oze. From mid-night to noone, our course was North-east and by East, being in the Letitude of 74. degrees 35.minutes, and we found that our ships way, and our observation were not which mad there was carefull heed taken or both. Heere we had Ice a head off vs, trending to the Southdissely before, east; and all day before Ice on our Lasboord. Here we stood South-east fine leagues, then the Ice trended South and by West fixe leagues; we sayled by it, and doubled it by eight a clocke in the Eeuening, and then it bore East off vs. Heere having a smooth sea, the Needle inclined 85, degrees, from eight a clocke to twelue, North and by East Easterly. Then we had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East 1. a poynt Easterly. The Sunnes height was 7. degrees 45. minutes, which made the Latitude 74.de rees 43 minutes.

The three and twentieth, in the morning thicke fogge, the wind at North North-west, From 60 mid-night till foure a clocke this morning, we fayled North-east fine leagues, and then we were among the Ice; we cast about, and stood two houres South-west, two leagues, and had no ground at one hundred and eightie fathom. Then we cast about againe, and stood East till eight a clocke

two leagues, and then it cleared up, and we had Ice a head off vs. And from North, we flood to South-east, and our shrondes were frozen. Then till noone wee went East and by South, soure leagues, and were neere Ice on our Larboord, in the Latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes. In the after-noone the wind being at North, wee ftood two houres and a halfe, fine leagues and a halfe; three houres South South-east, fine leagues; one houre South-east and by South, one league and a halfe ; an houre East halfe a league, which brought eight in the Eeuening alwayes Ice on our Larboard. This after-noone, wee had some snow. From eight a clocke to mid-night, South South-west foure leagues, with Ice as afore. We saw the Sunne at the lowest, North Northeast, his height was 7. degrees 15. minutes, the Poles height 74. degrees 18. minutes,

The foure and twentieth, cleere, but cold and fome frow, the wind betweene North Northeast, and North-east, from mid-night to foure a clocke, wee stood Southward two leagues, and South-east and by East two leagues. And from some a clocke till noone, South-east Southerly nine leagues, founding we had ground in one hundred and fortie fathome. From noone to three a clocke, we stood South-east and by South three leagues; from three to foure, South-west and by South one league; and had Ice from the North-east to the South-east off vs. From foure a clocke to eight, we flood South-west two leagues and a halfe, Southward halfe a league, with Ice neers vs vnder our Lead.

The five and twentieth, cold and cleare, the wind at East South-east; from eight a clocke last night till foure this morning, our way was South and by East, foure leagues and a halfe ; foun-20 ding we had ground in eightie fathome, then we had little wind till noone, at East North-east, and the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-west and by South point of the Compasse, ere it began to fall, wee were in the Latitude of 72. degrees 52.minutes, and had Ice on our Larboard. and our hope of passage was gone this way, by meanes of our nearenesse to Nona Zembla, and the abundance of Ice. We had from Noone to eight a clocke in the Ecuening, the wind between North North-east, and North-east, we stood South-east three leagues and a halfe, and had Ice on our Larboord, and thoulding fixtie eight fathome.

The fixe and twentieth, faire Sun-finning weather, and little wind at East North-east. From twelue a clocke at night till foure this morning, we flood Southward two leagues, founding wee had fixtie fixe fathome Oaze, as afore. From foure a clocke to noone, South-east and by South 30 foure leagues, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-east and by South point of the Compasse, in the Latitude of 72. degrees 25. minutes, and had fight of Nona Zembla foure or fue No pallage leagues from vs, and the place called by the Hollanders, Swart Cliffe, bearing off South-eaft, In that wa the after-noone, wee had a fine gale at East North-east, and by eight of the clocke, we had Swar Cliffee

brought it to beare off vs East Southerly, and fayled by the shoare a league from it,

The seuen and twentieth, all the fore-moone it was almost calme; wee being two mile from the floare, I fent my Mate Robers Inet, and John Cooke my Boat-fwaine on floare, with foure o- They goe as thers, to fee what the Land would yeeld that might bee profitable, and to fill two or three thear Caskes with water. They found and brought aboord some Whales Finnes, two Decres Hornes, and the Dung of Deere, and they told me that they saw Graffe on the shoare of the last yeere, 40 and young Graffe came vp amongst it a shaftman long; and it was boggie ground in some places, there are many freames of Snow water nigh, it was very hot on the shoare, and the snow melted apace, they saw the footings of many great Beares, of Deere, and Foxes. They went from vs at three a clocke in the morning, and came abourd at a South-east Sunne; and at their comming, wee faw two or three companies of Morfes in the fea neere vs fwimming, being almost calme. I presently sent my Mate, Ladow the Carpenter, and fixe others a shoare, to a place where I thought the Morfes might come on the shoare, they found the place likely, but found no figne of any that had beene there. There was a Croffe standing on the shoare, much Driftwood and fignes of Fires that had beene made there. They faw the footing of very great Deere and Beares, and much Fowle, and a Foxe; they brought aboord Whale finnes, fome Mosse, Flow-3D ers and greene things that did there grow. They brought also two peeces of a Crosle, which they found there. The Summe was on the Meridian on the North North-eaft, halfe a point Eafterly, before it began to fall. The Sunnes height was 4 degrees 45 minutes, Inclination 22. degrees 32. minutes, which makes the Latitude 72. degrees 22. minutes. There is difagreement betweene this and the last observation; but by meanes of the cleerenesse of the Sunne, the imoothnesse of the Sea, and the neernesse to Land, wee could not bee deceived, and care was

The eight and twentieth, at four a clocke in the Morning our Boat came aboord, and brought two dozen of Fowle, and some Egges, whereof a few were good, and a Whales sinne; and wee all faw the Sea full of Morfes, yet no fignes of their being on shoare. And in this calme, from 60 eight a clockelast Eeuening, till foure this Morning, we were drawne backe to the Northward, as farre as wee were the last Eeuening at foure a clocke, by a Streame or a Tide; and we chose rether so to drive, then to adventure the losse of an Anchor, and the spoyle of a Cable. Heere our new Ship-boate began to doe vs feruice, and was an incouragement to my Companie, which want I found the last veere.



The nine and twentieth, in the morning calme, being halfe a league from the shoare, the Sea

being smooth, the Needle did encline &4. degrees, we had many Morfes in the Sea neere vs. and desiring to find where they came on shoare, wee put to with Sayle and Oares, towing in our Boat, and rowing in our Barketo getabout a point of Land, from whence the Land did fall more Easterly, and the Mories did goe that way. VVee had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by VVest point, halte a point to the VVester part of the Compasse, in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes. At two a clocke this after-noone we came to anchor in the mouth of a River, where lieth an Iland in the mouth thereof, foure leagues: wee anchored from the Iland in two and thirtie fathomes, blacke fandy ground. There droue much Ice out of it with a freame that fet out of the River or Sound, and there were many Morfes fleeping on the Ice, 10 and by it we were put from our Road twice this night; and being calme all this day, it pleased

God at our need to give vs a fine gale, which freed vs out of danger. This day was calme, cleere and hot weather: all the night we rode full.

The thirtjeth, calme, hot, and faire weather, we weighed in the morning, and towed and rowed, and at noone we came to anchor neere the He aforefaid in the mouth of the River, and faw very much Ice driving in the Sea, two leagues without vs lying South-east and North-westand driving to the North-west so fast, that wee could not by twelve a clocke at night fee it out of the top. At the Iland where wee rode, lieth a little Rocke, whereon were fortie or fiftie Morfes lying alleepe, being all that it could hold, it being so full and little. I sent my companie ashoare to them, leaving none aboord but my Boy with mee; and by meanes of their necrenesse to the water, they all got away, faue one which they killed, and brought his head aboord; and ere they came aboord they went on the Iland, which is reasonable high and steepe, but flat on the top. They killed and brought with them a great Fowle, whereof there were many, and likewise some Egges, and in an houre they came aboord. This Ile is two flight-shot ouer in length, and one in breadth. At mid-night our Anchor came home, and wee tayld aground by meanes of the strength of the streame, but by the helpe of God, wee houed her off without hurt. In short time wee moued our ship, and rode still all night; and in the night wee had little wind at East, and East South-east. Wee had at noone this day an observation, and were in the latitude of 71. degrees 14. minutes. The first of July, we saw more Ice to Seaward of vs; from the South-east to the North-west, 30

Iuly.

578

Riuet and

driving to the North-west. At noone it was calme, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South and by VVeil point, halfe a point to the VVeilerly part of the Compasse, in the latitude of 71. degrees 24. minutes. This morning I fent my Mate Eueret, and foure of our companie to rowe about the Bay, to fee what Rivers were in the fame, and to find where the Morfes did come on land; and to fee a Sound or great River in the bottome of the Bay, which did alwaies fend out a great freame to the North wards, against the tide that came from thence : and I found the fame in comming in, from the North to this place before this VVhen by the meanes of the great plenty of Ice, the hope of passage betweene Newland and Nona Zembla was taken away; my purpole was by the Vaygats to pale by the mouth of the River Ob, and to double that way the North Cape of Tartaria, or to give reason wherefore it will not be: but being 40 here, and hoping by the plentie of Morfes wee faw here, to defray the charge of our Voyage; and also that this Sound might for some reasons bee a better passage to the East of Noua Zembla. then the Vargats, if it held according to my hope conceived by the likeneffe it gave : for whereas we had a floud came from the Northwards; yet this Sound or River, did runne fo ftrong, that Ice with the streame of this River was carried away, or any thing elfe against the floud : to that both in floud and ebbe, the ftreame doth hold a ftrong course; and it floweth from the North three houres, and ebbeth nine.

The fecond, the wind being at East South-east, it was reasonable cold, and so was Friday: and the Morfes did not play in our fight as in warme weather. This morning at three of the clocke, my Mate and companie came aboord, and brought a great Decres horne, a white looke of 50 Deeres haire; foure dozen of Fowle, their Boat halfe laden with drift Wood; and some Flowers Herd of white and greene things, that they found growing on the shoars. They saw a herd of white Deere, of ten in a companie on the land; much drift wood lying on the shoare, many good Bayes, and one River faire to see to on the North shoare, for the Morfes to Japel on; but they have no Morfes there, but fignes that they had beene in the Bayes. And the great River or Sound, they certified me, was of breadth two or three leagues, and had no ground at twentie fathoms, and that the water was of the colour of the Sea, and very fair, and that the threame fetteth farongly out of it. At fixe a clocke this morning, came much Ice from the Southward driving upon vs, very fearefull to looke on : but by the mercy of God and his mightie helpe, were being moored with two Anchors ahead with vering out of one Cable, and heaving home the other, and fen- 60 ding off with Beames and Sparres, escaped the danger : which labour continued till fixe a clocke

in the Ecuening, and then it was past vs, and we rode still and tooks pursed this night. The third, the wind at North a hard gale : At three a clocke this morning wee weighed our anchor, and fet fayle, purposing to runne into the River or Sound before I poken of.

The fourth, in the morning it cleered up with the wind at North-west, we weighed and set favle, and stood to the Eastwards, and past over a Reefe, and found on it five and a halfe, fixe, fixe and a halfe, and feuen fathoms water: then we faw that the Sound wasfull, & a very large River from the North-eastward free from Ice, and a strong streame comming out of it: and wee had founding then, foure and thirtie fathoms water. Wee all conceived hope of this Northerly Ri- The River uer or Sound, and fayling in it, wee found three and twentie fathomes for three leagues, and after twentie fathomes for five or fixe leagues, all tough Ozie ground. Then the winde vered more Northerly, and the streame came downe so strong, that wee could doe no good on it: wee came to anchor, and went to supper, and then presently I fent my Mate Inet, with fo fine more of our companie in our Boat, with Sayle and Oares to get wp the River , being pro-

CHAP. 15. Cause of the Ice in Noua Zembla. Costing Sarch, Brunell.

uided with Victuall and Weapons for defence, willing them to found as they went; and if it did continue fill deepe, to goe vntill it did trende to the Eastward, or to the Southwards, and wee rode still.

The fift, in the morning we had the wind at West: we began to weigh anchor, purposing to fet sayle and to runne vp the Sound after our companie: then the wind vered Northerly vpon ws, and we faued our labour. At noone our companie came abourd vs having had a hard rought ; for they had beene up the River fixe or feven leagues, and founded it from twentie to three and twentie; and after brought it to eight, fixe, and one fathome; and then to foure foot in the best: they then went ashoare, and found good store of wilde Goose quills, a piece of an old Oare, and some Flowers, and greene things which they found growing: they saw many Deere, and so did we in our after-dayes sayling. They being come aboord, we presently set sayle with the wind at North North-west, and we stood out agains to the South-westwards, with forrow that our labour was in vaine: for , had this Sound held as it did make thew of , for breadth, depth, fafenesse of harbour, and good anchor ground, it might have yeelded an excellent passage to a more Easterly Sea. Generally, all the Land of Nona Zembla that yet wee have seene, is to Nona Zembla a mans eye a pleasant Land; much mayne high Land with no Snow on it, looking in some pleasant to the places greene, and Decre feeding thereon: and the Hills are partly coursed with Snow, and eye parely bare. It is no maruell that there is so much Ice in the Sea toward the Pole, so many Cause of much Sounds and Rivers being in the Lands of Nova Zembla, and Newland to ingender it besides Ice in those 30 the coafts of Pechora, Ruffia, and Groenland, with Lappia, as by proofes I finde by my travell Seas, which

the coatts of Ferrors, any in these parts: by meanes of which Ice I suppose there will be no nauigable passage this way. gable passage, This Eevening wee had the wind at West and by South: wee therefore came to anchor under Deere Point; and it was a storme at Sea, wee rode in twentiefathomes, Ozieground: I sent my Mate , Ladlow, with foure more ashoare to fee whether any Morses were on the shoare, and to kill some Fowle, (for we had seene no Morses since Saturday, the second day of this moneth, that wee faw them driging out of the Ice.) They found good landing for them, but no figne that they had been there: but they found that fire had beene made there, yet not lately. At ten of the clocke in the Eeuening, they came aboord, and brought with them neere an hundred Fowles called Wellocks; this night it was wet fogge, and very thicke and cold, the winde at

40 West South-west.

The fixt, in the morning wee had the wind ftormie and shifting ; betweene the West and South-west, against vs for doing any good : we rode still and had much Ice driving by vs to the Eastward of vs. At nine of the clocke, this Ecuening wee had the wind at North North-west: we presently weighed, and set sayle, and stood to the Westward, being out of hope to find pasfage by the North-east: And my purpose was now to see whether Willoughbies Land were, as Willoughbie is is layd in our Cardes; which if it were, wee might finde Morfes on it; for with the Ice they Land, sconwere all driven from hence. This place vpon Nous Zembla, is another then that which the makers it fee-Hollanders call Cofting Sareb, discouered by Oliner Brownell: and William Barent fons observation ming to be no doth witnesse the same, It it layd in plot by the Hollanders out of his true place too farre North: other then to what end I know not, vnlesse to make it hold course with the Compasse, not respecting the Newland or variation. It is as broad and like to yeeld passage as the Vaygatt, and my hope was, that by the Greenland (as

ftrong streame it would have cleered it selfe; but it did not. It is for full of Ice that you will und ap.2.) as hardly thinke it. All this day, for the most part, it was fogge and cold.

The feuenth, cleere but cold weather : in the morning the wind was at the North; from the Brunell is to last Equening to this morning, we set faile and kept our course West and by South, sirteene leagues, others Nova from morning to eight a clocke in the Eeuening it was calme : then we had the wind againe at Zembla. North, and we fayled till nine a clocke next morning West South-west, eight leagues; then the wind being West and by South, wee went North and by West, three leagues, and wee had the Sunne at the highest South South-west, in the latitude of 71. degrees 2. minutes. The eight, 6c faire weather; at noone we had the wind at East North-east, we stood North three leagues till foureaclocke: then the wind being at west and by North, wee stemmed North and by West one league and a halfe, till fix a clocke in the Ecuening; then the wind was at North-eaft a hard gale, and wee flood till next day at noone Weft and by North, by account three and twentie leagues; we had the Sunne on the Meridian, South and by Weft, halfe a point necreft Weft, in



the latitude of 70. degrees 41. minutes. The ninth, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, we fayled South-west and by West, twelve leagues, and Northward three leagues; and in these courses had these soundings, 41, 42, 46, 48, and 45, fathoms; we had the Sunne South and by VVest, halfe a point to the VVest part of the Compasse. The Sea was lottie; our latitude was 70. degrees 20. minutes.

The tenth, cleere but close weather: from this till next day noone, wee had little wind at West North-west: by account we made our way five leagues North-easterly. Wee had the Sun at the highest on the South and by West point, and a terce Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees eq. minutes, and I thinke we had a ruftling tide under vs; and in this time had founding betweene fortie fiue and fortie fathomes, white fand. The eleuenth, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, little wind at North North-east, and sometimes calme; wee sayled West and by North by account fine leagues; and had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by West point 1. West in the latitude of 70, degrees 26, minutes, and found a rustling under vs. This fore-noone we were come into a greene Sea, of the colour of the mayne Ocean, which we first lost the eight of June: since which time wee have had a Sea of a blacke blue colour, which ( both by the last and this yeeres experience) is a Sea-pestered with Ice.

The twelfth, faire weather: from noone to mid-night wee had she wind shifting betweene the North and West; our course was betweene VVost North-west, and South South-west. Then we had the wind at South, we fayled till the next day at noone, West and by North, thirteene leagues: wee accounted our way from the laft day till this day noone Westward, eighteene leagues. This after-noone wee saw more Porpoises then in all our Voyage after. The 20 thirteenth, close weather: in the after-noone having much wind at South, with thort sayle we flood away West and by North, till eight a clocke in the Ecuening: then we had the wind at South, but most times calme till noone the next day : wee stood away as afore, foure leagues, which made in all twelue leagues: we had the Sunne ere it began to fall, South and by West, in the latitude of 70. degrees 22. minutes.

The fourteenth, wee flood West North-west till mid-night, seuenteene leagues: then the wind scanted and came at West, we stood North North-west, one league and a halfe; then the wind being more Southerly, wee fayled West North-west, fine leagues. From the last till this day at noone, our way was out of diners courses North-west and by West, soure and twentie leagues. We had the Sunne beginning to fall at South and by West, in the latitude of 70, de- 30 grees 54. minutes.

The infreenth, faire; but towards night like to be ftormie with thunder, the wind betweene South and South South-east; from this , till the fixteenth day at noone , our course was West and by North, teuen and twentie leagues, and the Sunne then began to fall at South, three quarters of a point Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 42. minutes. The fixteenth, faire; our way was from this till next day at noone North-west, twelue leagues, out of diners courses: and we had the wind shifting, sometimes at East, at West South-west, and West and by North; the latitude by a bad observation, 71. degrees 44. minutes. The seventeenth, in the fore-noone faire : the wind being at West and by North. At foure a clocke this morning we faw Land beare 40 off vs, West and South South-west, which was about Ward-bonse: this after-noone wee had a ftorme at West and by North, we layed it to trie till eight a clocke in the Ecuening, and then fet fayle with the wind betweene West North-west, and North-west: our course till the next day at noone, was South-west and by South , twelue leagues : the Cape Hopewell bore off vs South South-west, and we were foure or fine leagues from land.

The eighteenth, gufty, with raine all the fore-noone; then we had the wind shifting till next day at noone from South-South-east to East, and South-east : our course in generall was Northwest, foure and twentie leagues: then did North Kene beare off vs West halfe a point Southward, being from vs foure leagues; and the North Cape in fight bearing West and by North, &c.

The feuen and twentieth, cold with raine and storme; this night we began to burne Candle in the Betacle, which we had not done fince the nineteenth of May: by reason wee had alwaies 50 day from thence till now. The thirtieth, we had the Sunne vpon the Meridian due South, in the latitude of 68, degrees 46. minutes; whereby we found vs to bee afore our thip, ten or twelve leagues, and Lowfoot bore East of vs, but not in fight.

The feuenth of August, I vied all diligence to arrive at London, and therefore now I gaue my companie a certificate vnder my hand, of my free and willing returne, without perswasion or force of any one or more of them : for at my being at Nona Zembla, the fixt of July, voide of hope of a North-east passage, (except by the Vargats, for which I was not firted to trie or proue) I therefore refolued to vie all meanes I could to fayle to the North-west; considering the time and meanes wee had, if the wind should friend vs, as in the first part of our Voyage it See Hakes. 3. had done, and to make triall of that place called Lumleys Inlet, and the furious ouer-fall by Cap- 60 tayne Danis, hoping to runne into it an hundred leagues, and to returne as God should enable mee. But now hauing spent more then halfe the time I had, and gone but the shortest part of the way, by meanes of contrary winds; I thought it my dutie to faue Victuall, Wages, and

CHAP. 16. Master Hudsons third Voyage to Noua Zembla, &c.

Tackle, by my speedy returne, and not by foolish rashnesse, the time being wasted, to lay more charge upon the action then necessitie should compell, I arrived at Granefend the six and twentieth of August.

### CHAP. XVL

The third Voyage of Master HENRIE HYDSON toward Noua Zembla, and at his returne, his passing from Farre Hands, to New-found Land, and along to forsie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and fo to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River neere to fortie three degrees. Written by ROBERT IVET of

N Saturday the fine and twentieth of March, 1609, after the old Account, we fet fayle from Amflerdam; and by the feuen and twentieth day, we were downe at the Texel : and by twelve of the clocke we were off the Land, it being Eaft of vs two leagues off. And because it is a journey vsually knowne, I omit to put downe what paffed, till we came to the height of The North Cape of Finmarke, which we did performe by the firt of May (file none) being Tuefday. On which May 5. file

day we observed the height of the Pole, and found it to bee 71, degrees and 46. minutes; and found our Compafie to vary fix degrees to the West: and at twelve of the clocke, the North Cape did beare South-west and by South, tenne leagues off, and wee steered away East and by

After much trouble with fogges, sometimes, and more dangerous of Ice. The nineteenth, being Tuesday, was close stormie weather, with much wind and snow, and very cold: the wind variable betweene the North North-weft, and North-east. We made our way West and by North 30 till noone. Then we observed the Sunne having a slake, and found our height to bee 70. degrees 30. minutes. And the ship had out-runne vs twentie leagues, by reason of the set of the streame of The White Sea : and we had fight of Wardhoufe. Then at two of the clocke wee tacke to the Beals Man Eastward : for we could not get about the North Cape, the wind was so scant ; and at eight of washe the clocke at night, on the one and twentieth, the North Cape did beare South-east and by There South seuen leagues off. And at mid-night Assumption Point did beare South and by East, fine the North

The two and twentieth, guffing weather with haile and fnow, the Sunne breaking out fometimes; we continued our course along the Land West South-west. And at tenne of the clocke at night we were thwart off Zenam. The bodie of it did beare East off vs fine leagues : and the Zenam. course from the North Cape to Zenam, is for the most part West and by South, and West South well fiftie foure leagues.

The three and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather; the wind at East and by South, and East South-east a wee steered along the Land South-west , and South-west and by West eight leagues a Watch, for fo we found the Land to lye from Zenam to Lofoste. And the differce is fiftie leagues from the bodie of Zenam, to the Westermost Land of Leftore. And from the one to the other, the course is South-west and by West. For the Needle of our Compasse was set right to the North. As tweller of the clocke at night, the bodie of Leftote did beare South-eaft, fixe

The foure and twentieth, faire cleere Sun-shining weather: the wind variable vpon all 50 points of the Compafe, but most vpon the South-east, and sometimes calme. We continued our course West South-west as before, And at eight of the clocke at night, the Souther part of Lofore did beare South-east ten leagues off ys.

The fine and twentieth, much wind at North-east, with some snow and haile. The first watch the wind came to the East a fine gale, and so came to the North-east, the second watch at source of the clocke, and freshed in : And at eight of the clocke it grew to a storme, and so continued. At noone we observed, and made the ship to be in 67. degrees 58. minutes. We continued out courfe South-west, twelue leagues a watch. Ar nine of the clocke, Lofonte did beare East of vs 14. leagues off. And we found the Compaffe to have no variation. The wind increased to a storme: No variations

The fix and twentieth, was a great fforme at the North North-east, and North-east. Wee 60 Recredaway South-west afore the wind with our fore-course abroad: for wee were able to maintayne no more fayles, it blew so vehemently, and the Sea went so high, and brake withall, that it would have dangered a small thip to lye under the Sea. So we skudded seventy leagues infoure and twentie houres. The florme began to ceale at foure of the clocke,

The leven and twentieth, indifferent faire weather, but a good fliffe gale of wind at North

Thunder.

**580** 

No night in



and North-North-east, wee held on our course as before. At noone wee observed and found our heigh to be 64. degrees 10. minutes. And wee perceised, that the Current had hindred vs in Agrear cur-rent ferting to fortic eight houres to the number of 16, leagues to our best judgement, We set our mayne-sayle, rent terming to the North-east. sprit-sayle, and our mayne-top-sayle, and held on our course all night, having faire weather.

The eight and twentieth, faire weather and little wind at North-east, we held on our course South-west. At noone wee obserued the heigth, and were in 62. degrees and 30. minutes. The after-noone was little wind at North North-weft. The fecond watch it fell calme. At foure of the clocke wee had fight of the Iles called Farre, and found them to lye out of their place in the Sea Chart fourteene leagues to farre Westerly. For in running South-west from Leforte, wee Sea Chart rourceme reagues to tast of the season of the se course and observation : and had fight of them fixteene or eighteene leagues off.

The nine and twentrieth, faire weather sometimes calme, and sometimes a gale with the wind varying at South-weft, and fo to the North-eaft. Wee got to the Ilands, but could not get in. So we flood along the Hands. The ebbe being come, we durft not put in.

Streme.

m The Bitts-

ele is a clofe

Their first

for forther

North, they

Schroffters:

The thirtieth faire weather; the wind at South-east and East South-east. In the morning we turned into a Road in Stromo, one of the Hands of Farre, betweene Stromo and Munge-nes, and got in by nine of the clocke : for it flowed to there that day. And affoone as we came in, we went to Romage, and fent our Boat for water, and filled all our emptie Caskes with fresh water, Wee made in end of our Romaging this night by ten of the clocke.

The one and thirtieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at East South-east. In the fore- 20 noone our Master with most of his Company went on shoare to walke, and at one of the clocke they returned aboord. Then we fet fayle.

The first of June, file none, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at East South-east, We continues on our course South-west and by West. At moone wee observed the Sunne, and found our heigth to be 60, degrees \$8, minutes : and fo continued on our course all night with faire westher. This night we lighted Candles in the " Bittacle againe.

The second mystie weather, the wind at North-east. At noone we steered away West Southplace in which the Compasse west, to find Buffe Hand, discoursed in the years 1578, by one of the ships of Sir Martin Frebefore; to see if it lay in her true latitude in the Chart or no : wee continued our course as before all night, with a faire gale of wind : this night we had fight of the first stars, and our water was an changed colour to a white greene. The Compaffe had no variation.

The third, faire Sun-shining, weathersthe wind at North-east, We steered on our course Southwest and by West, with a stiffe gale of wind. At noone we observed and found our height to bee 18. degrees 48. minutes. And I was before the saip 16. leagues, by reason of the Current that held we to ftrong out of the South-west. For it is eight leagues in foure and twentie hours. We Change of was

accounted our felues neere Buffe lland ; by mid-night we looked out for it, but could not fee ic. The fourth, in the morning was much wind with fogge and raine. Wee fleered away Southrent out of the west by west all the fore-noone, the wind so increasing, that wee were enforced to take in our top-fayle : the winde continuing so all the after-noone. Wee steered a way South-west all the fore-past of the night; and at ten of the clocke at night it was hitle wind; and that was at South,

and so came vp to the South South-east.

The fit, ftormie weather, and much wind at South, and South by East, so that at foure of the clocke in the morning, we tooke in our fore-fayle, and lay a try with our mayne corfe, and tryed away West North-west foure leagues. But at noone it was less wind, and the Sunne fhewad forth; and we observed, and found our heigth to be \$6.degrees 21.minutes. In the aftermoone the wind vered to and fro betweene the South-west and the South-east, with raine and fogge, and so continued all night. Wee found that our ship had gone to the VVestward of our course. The fixth, thicke hasie weather with gusts of wind, and showers of raine. The wind varied betweene East South-East and South-west, wee steered on many courses a West Southwest way. The afternoone watch the wind was at East South-east, a stiffe gate with myst and rame. Wee fleered away South-west, by West eight leagues. At noone the Sunne short forth, and we found the heigth to bee 56, degrees 8, minutes. The fewenth, faire fun-fhining weather all the fore-moone, and calme vntill twelve of the clocke. In the after-moone the wind came to the North-west, a stiffegale. We steered South-west by West, and made a South-west way. At are laced and noone we found the height to bee 55, degrees one minute, and it continued all night a hard gale, ecked to the fayles to en-The eight, formy weather, the wind variable, betweene West and North-west much wind :at large them : eight of the clocke wee tooke off our Bonnets. At noone the Summe shewed forth, and wee obwith reference ferued, and our height was 54. degrees 30. minutes. The ninth, faire fim-thining weather, and litwhetero the maynecourfe, the wind all the fore-part of the day vntill cleuen of the clocke. Then the wind came to the millen courie, South South-east, and we steered away West South-west. At moone we found our height to bee 60 fore courie is such a south-eart, and we neered away went South-went. At moone we found our height to bee vaderhood of 53. degrees and 45. minutes, and we had made our way South by West ten leagues. In the afternoone the wind increased and continued all night at East North-east and East.

The twelfth, faira weather, the wind variable betweene East North-east and South-east, wee freered on our course as before. At foure of the clock in the afternoon the wind came vp at SouthCHAP. 16. Current to the South, Great forme. Variations of the Compafe.

east. And we held our course as before. At moone wer observed and found our height to be 72. degrees 3 c. minutes.

The eleuenth, in the morning was thicke and foggie, the winde varying betweene South South-weft, and North-weft. At foure of the clocke in the morning, wee tackt about to the Southward: At eleven of the clocke the winde came to the North-west, and so to the West North-west. This day we had change of water, of a whitish greene, like to the Ice water to the North-west. At moone it cleered vp, and became very faire weather : wee put out our mayne Noting top-layle: then we observed the Sunne and found our height to be 51 degrees 24 minutes. We Acurent from had fayled many courfes and found our thip gone to the Southward of our account ten leagues, the North. 10 by reason of a current from the North-ward. The Compasse varied on point to the East.

The twelfth, faire Sun-thining weather, but much wind at the Wett : we flood to the South - point Eaft, ward all day, the wind shifting betweene the South-west and the West and by North. Wee made our way South halfe a point West, eight and twentie leagues. Our height at noone was 50, degrees 9, minutes. At eight of the clock at night we took off our Bonets, the wind increasing,

The thirteenth, faire Sun-shining weather: the wind variable betweene the West, and North North-west, We made our way South South-west feuer and twentie leagues. At noone we obserued, and found our height to be 48, degrees 45, minutes. But not to be trufted, the Sea went fo high. In the after-noone the winde was calmer, and weebrought to our Bonets, and flood to the Southward all night with a stiffe gale.

20 The fourteenth, faireand cleere Sun-shining weather: the winde variable betweene the North-west and South-west by West, At mid-inight I observed the North starre at a North-west by West Guardesa good observation 49, degrees 30. minutes. And at noone wee observed the Latitude 48; Sunne, and our heigth was 48. degrees 6. minutes. And I made account we ranne betweene the degrees 6. min two observations evelue leagues. At one of the crocke in the after-moone, were cast about to the nuces. Westward, and stood so all night: the winde increased to a storme, and was very much winde

The fifteenen, we had a great fforme, and spent o ouer-boord our fore-mast, bearing our fore To spend the corle low fet. The fixteenth, we were forced to trie with our mayne fayle, by reason of the vn- Maft, is noterconflant weather. So wee tried four warthes South-east and by South eight leagues and an soul of brea-30 halfe, and two warches fixe leagues! The feuencement, reasonable faire weather: the wind variable betweene Weft South-weft, and Weft North-weft. And a stiffegale of wind, and so great a swelling Sea out of the West South-west, that wee could doe nothing. So one watch and an halfe wee drone North foure-leagues and an halfe, and foure watches and an halfe South and by Bast halfe a point East twelve leagues. The eighteenth, reasonable weather but close and cloudie, and an hard gale of wind, and a great Sea. The winds being at the North-well, wee lay to the Southward, and made our drift South and by West, fine leagues. The after-noone prooned little wind, and the night part calme, The nineteenth, in the fore-moone faire weather and calme, In the morning we fet the piece of our fore maft, and fet our fore corfe,

The one and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, but much wind and a great Sea. We split 40 our fore faile at ten of the clocke; then we laid it a trie " with our mayne fayle, and continued " That is, bare On the same a cent in the control of the wind. This day our height was 45, degrees 48 minutes, so more farise. The two and twentieth, very faire Sunifolnine weather, and calme all the after money. The two and twentieth, very faire Sun-finning weather; and calme all the after noone. At fair, &c. noone we made a very good observation, and found our height 44, degrees 38, minutes. At eight Variation,

of the clocke at night wee had a small gale of winde at South-east. And wee steered away West for Nawfound Land. The true Compasse varied one point Haft,

The three and twentieth, thicke weather with much wind and some raine. At eigheof the elocke in the morning, the wind came to the West South-west, and West so stiffe a gale, that we were forcad to take our top layle, and freeted away North North-well vitill four of the clock in the after mone. Then we take to the Southward the winde at Well North-well. Ac eight 50 of the clocke at night wee tooke in our top-fayles, and laid it a trie with our mayne fayle, the

The foure and twentieth, a fiffe gale of wind, varying betweene the West and North Norths west, we tried cill fixe of the clocke; at which time we fer our foresaile, and steered way West and by South by our Compaffeeight leagues in foure watches : and wee tried away South in

The fine and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at North North-west and North, we fleered away West by South by our Compasse till twelve of the clocke: at which time we had fight of a layle, and gaue her chase but could not speake with her. She stood to the Raftward; and we flood after her till fixe of the clocke in the after-noone. Then weetact to the 60 Westward againe, and stood on our course it was faire all night, and little wind sometimes.

The fix and twentieth, all the fore-part of the day very faire weather and hot , but at four of the clocke in the after-noone it grew to bee much winde and raine : the winde was at South South-east. At noone wee observed and found our heigth to bee 44. degrees 33. minutes. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to South-well, and Well South-well. Wee fleered

tholelayles without their

North-west, one Watch, and at twelve in the night, to the West, and West and by South, very much wind. So we could lye but North North-west,

The seuen and twentieth, very much winde and a soare storme, the wind Westerly. In the morning at foure of the clocke, wee tooke in our fore-corfe, and layd it a trie with our maynecorfe low fet; and so continued all the day and night, two watches to the Northward. At eight of the clocke at night, we tacke to the Southward

The eight and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we lav a trie to the Southward till eight of the clocke in the morning. Then wee fet our fore-corfe, and flood to the Southward a stiffe gale of wind, but faire weather and a great Sea, out of the Westerboord, and fo continued all night.

The nine and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South ; we stood to the Southward vntill fixe of the clocke at night, and made our way South and by East, foure leagues. Then the windecame to the South-west, and wee cast about to the VVestward, and made our way VVelt North-weftall night. At noone, I found the height 43. degrees 6, mie nutes. The variation one point VVest.

The thirtieth, faire fun-shining weather, the winde at South-west and by VVest, we steered North-west and by VVest. And made our way so, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At noone, I found the height to bee 43. degrees 18. minutes; wee continued our course all night, and made our way North-west and by VVest, halfe a point VVesterly, fine and twentie leagues.

The first of July, close, mystie and thicke weather, but a faire gale of wind at South-west, and 20 South-west by South. We steered away North-west and by West, Westerly, and made our way so, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At eight of the clocke at night, wee sounded for the Banke of New-found Land, but could get no ground.

The second, thicke mystie weather, but little wind, and that at West, and West and by South. New fundLand At eight of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and when our ship was on flayes, we founded for the Banke, and had ground in thirtie fathoms, white fand and shells, and prefently it cleered : and we had fight of a layle, but spake not with her. In the night we had much Rayne, Thunder and Lightning, and wind shifting.

The third, faire Sun-thining weather, with a faire gale of wind at East North-east, and wee fleered away West South-west by our Compasse, which varyed 17. degrees Westward, This 30 French-mam Fis morning we were among a great Fleet of French-men, which lay Fishing on the Banke; but we spake with none of them. At noone wee found our heighth to bee 43, degrees 41. minutes. And we founded at ten of the clocke, and had thirtie fathoms gray fand. At two of the clocke wee founded, and had fine and thirtie fathoms gray fand. At eight of the clocke at night, we founded againe, and had eight and thirtie fathoms gray fand, as before.

The fourth, at the fore-part of the day cleere, with a faire gale of wind, but variable betweene the East North-east, and South and by East, wee held on our course as before. The after-noone was mystie, the wind shifting betweene the South and the West, till foure of the clocke. Then we tooke in our top-layle and sprit-sayle, and sounded and had no ground in seventie fathoms. The winde shifted fill untill eight of the clocke, then it came to the North North-east, and 40 North-east and by North, and we ficered away West North-west, by our varyed Compasse. which made a West way halfe point North. The Compasse varyed 15. degrees from the North to the West.

The fift, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at North-east and by North, we steered away West North-west, which was West halfe a point North. At noone we found our heighth to be 44.degrees 10.minutes, and founded, and had no ground in one hundred fathoms. The afternoone proved calme fometimes, and fomtimes little wind, vntill nine of the clocke in the night. Then the wind came to the East, and we held on our course. At mid-night I observed and found the height to bee 44. degrees 10. minutes, by the North Starre and the Scorpione heart. The Compaffe varyed 12. degrees.

The fixth, the fore-part of the day faire weather, and a stiffe gale of wind, betweene South South-east, and South-west, wee steered West and by North, and West North-west, The afterpart of the day from two of the clocke, was all foggie and thicke weather; the wind a hard gale, varying betweene South-west and by South, and West and by North, we made our way Northwest halfe a point Northerly, nineteene leagues, vpon many points foure Watches. At night at eight of the clocke, we founded and had no ground at one hundred fathems.

The fenenth, faire fun-thining weather, the wind varying betweene West and by North, and West and by South. At source of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and flood fo sill one in the after-moont. At moone we found our height to be 44. degrees 26. minutes. At fewen of the clocke, we tackt to the Northward. At eight at night, we tackt to the South- 60 ward, and founded, and had nine and fiftie fathoms, white fand.

The eight, in the fore-noone faire weather, but the morning foggie till feuen of the clocke. At foure of the clocke in the morning we founded, and had fine & fortie fathoms, fine white fand, and we had sunne fue leagues South and by West. Then wee stood along one Glasse, and went one league as before. Then we flood one Glasse and founded, and had fixtie fathoms. Then wee take and stood backe to the Banke, and had fine and twentie fathoms; and tryed for Fish, and it Many great takt and thoo docke to the Danke, and the most account of the colocke till one. Code takes, from eight a clocke till one, the fell calme, and we caught one hundred and eighteen great Cooloc Hungary Thou. Many great and after Dinner wee tooke twelue, and faw many great Scoales of Herrings. Then wee had a Scoales of Herrings. gale of wind at South, and it shifted to the West North-west, and we stood three Glasses and rings. founded and had fixtie fathomes, and flood two Glasses, and had two and fortie fathoms, red To found is to flones and shells. So wee founded every Glasse and had severall soundings 35.33.30.31.32. trie the depth

The ninth, faire calme weather, we lay becalmed all day and caught fome Fish, but not much, &c. 10 because we had small store of salt. At three of the clocke in the after-noone, wee had a gale at South-east, and South South-east, and we steered away Westerly, our Compasse was West and by South halfe a point South. At foure of the clocke, we founded and had but lifteene, seuenteene, and nineteene fathoms on a filhing Banke; and we founded euery Glaffe. Then we could get no ground in fine and twentie fathoms, and had fight of a fayle on head off vs. At noone our height was 44 degrees 37 minutes. We flood to the Westward all night, and spake with a French-man, which lay Fishing on the Banke of Sablen, in thirtie fathoms, and we saw two or three more.

The tenth, very mystic and thicke weather, the wind at South-west, a faire gale. We stood to the South-ward, and made our way South-east and by East. At twelve of the clocke we sounded, and had eight and fortie fathoms: againe at two we founded, and had fiftie fathoms. And 20 at fixe of the clocke we founded: and had eight and fortie fathoms on the end of the Banke. Againe, at eight of the clocke at night wee founded, and had no ground in eightie fathomes, and were oner the Banke. So wee stood along till mid-night. The Compasse varyed 17, degrees to the Westward.

The eleventh, very thicke and myflie weather. At twelve of the clocke at night, we caftabout to the Westward, and stood so all day, and made our way West North-west. We sounded at twelue of the clocke, but had no ground; fo we flood to the Westward all the fore-part of the

night, and founded but could get no ground in fiftie or fixtie fathoms till mid-night. Then I founded and had ground at fifteene fathoms, white fand.

unded and has ground at myseus saturation, which course all the morning till eleuen of the clocke; at The twelfth, was very foggi, we flood our course all the morning till eleuen of the clocke; at the course of t 30 which time we had light of the Land, which is low white fandle ground, right on head off vs. Land, being low, white and thou of the control of the contro and had ten fathoms. Then we tacke to the Southward, and stood off foure Glasses: then we tacke fandie. to the Land againe, thinking to have rode vnder it, and as we came neere it, the fog was so thicke that we could not fee; fo wer flood off againe. From mid-night to two of the clocke, we came founding in twelue, thirteene, and foureteene fathoms off the shoare. At foure of the clocke, we had 20 fathoms. At eight of the clocke at night 30 fathoms. At twelve of the clocke 65, fathoms. and but little winde, for it deeped apace, but the nearer the shoare the fairer shoalding.

The thirteenth, faire fun-shining weather, from eight of the clocke in the fore-noone all day after, but in the morning it was foggie. Then at eight of the clocke we cast about for the shoare. but could not fee it; the wind being at South by our true Compasse, wee steered VVest and by 4; degrees

40 North. At noone we observed, and found our height to bee 43, degrees 25, minutes; so we stee. 35, minutes. red away VVest and by North all the after-noone. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone, Sight of Land we founded and had fine and thirrie fathoms. And at fixe of the clocke, wee had fight of the against, and of Land, and faw two fayles on head off vs. The land by the waters side is low Land, and white sandie Bankes rifing full of little Hils. Our foundings were 35.33.30.28.32.37.33. & 32.fathoms.

The four eteenth, full of my fts flying and vading, the wind betweene South and South-weft, we fteered away West North-west, and North-west and by West. Our soundings were 29. 25. 24. 25. 22. 25. 27. 30. 28. 30. 35. 43. 50. 70. 90. 70. 64. 86. 100. fathoms, and no ground. The fifteenth, very mystie, the winde varying betweene South and South-west, wee steered

West and by North, and VVest North-west. In the morning we sounded, and had one hundred fathoms, till foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Then we founded againe, and had seventie 50 face fathoms. Then in two Glaffer running, which was not about two English miles, we founded and had fixtie fathoms, and it shoulded a great pace untill we came to twentie fathoms. Then we made account we were neere the Ilands that lie off the shoare. So we came to an Anchor, the Sea being very smooth and little wind, at nine of the clocke at night. After supper, we tryed for Fish, and I caught fifteene Cods, some the greatest that I have seene, and so we rode all night.

The fixteenth, in the morning it cleered up, and wee had fight of fine llands lying North, and Fine llands North and by VV eff from vs, two leagues. Then wee made ready to fet fayle, but the myst came fo thicke, that we durft not enter in among them.

The seuenteenth, was all mystie, so that wee could not get into the Harbour. At ten of the to clocke two Boates came off to vs, with fixe of the Sanager of the Country, feeming gl.d of our Size Salages comming. VVe gaue them trifles, and they eate and dranke with vs ; and told vs, that there come about were Gold, Siluer, and Copper mynes hard by vs; and that the French-men doe Trade with them. them; which is very likely, for one of them spake some words of French. So wee rode still all day and all night, the weather continuing myslie.

Lead or Pole

The

Variation 13.

July.

The Banke of

fhing on the

A large River.

The eighteenth, faire weather, wee went into a very good Harbour, and rode hard by the shoare in soure fathoms water. The River runneth vp a great way, but there is but two fathoms hard by vs. VVe went on shoare and cut vs a fore Mast, then at noone we came abourd againe, 44. Degrees 10. and found the height of the place to bee in 44. degrees 1. minute; and the Sunne to fall at 2 South South-west Sunne, VV e mended our sayles, and fell to make our fore-Mast. The Harbour lyeth South and North, a mile in where we rode.

The nineteenth, we had faire fun-shining weather, we rode still. In the after-noone wee went with our Boate to looke for fresh water, and found some; and found a should with many Lobsters on it, and caught one and thirtie. The people comming aboord, shewed vs great friend-LODRETS On It, and cought on an an interest of the faire funne flining weather, the windest IO flip, but we could not truft them. The twentieth, faire funne flining weather, the windest IO South-west. In the morning, our Scute went out to catch fresh Fish halfe an houre before day, and returned in two houres, bringing feuen and twentie great Coddes, with two hookes and lines. In the after-noone wee went for more Lobsters, and caught fortie, and returned aboord. Then we effect two French Shallops fall of the Country people come into the Harbour, but they offered vs no wrong, feeing we flood vpon our guard. They brought many Beauer kinnes, and other fine Furres, which they would have changed for redde Gownes. For the French trade with them for red Cassockes, Kniues, Hatchets, Copper, Kettles, Treuits, Beades, and

The one and twentieth, all mystic, the wind Easterly, wee rode still and did nothing, but about our Mast. The two and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the winde all Northerly, 20 we rode fill all the day. In the after-noone our Scute went to catch more Lobsters, and brought with them nine and fiftie. The night was cleere weather.

The three and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather and very hot. At eleuen of the clocke, our fore Mast was finished, and we brought it aboord, and fet it into the step, and in the after-noone we rigged it. This night we had fome little my ft and rayne.

The foure and twentieth, very hot weather, the winde at South out of the fea. The fore-part of the day wee brought to our fayles. In the morning, our Scute went to take Fifh, and in two houres they brought with them twentie great Coddes, and a great Holibut, the night was faire alfo. We kept good watch for feare of being betrayed by the people, and perceived where they

The fine and twentieth, very faire weather and hot. In the morning wee manned our Scute with foure Muskets, and fixe men, and tooke one of their Shallops and brought it aboord. Then we manned our Boat & Scute with twelue men and Muskets, and two stone Pieces or Murderers. and draue the Salnages from their Houses, and tooke the spoyle of them, as they would have done of vs. Then wee fet fayle, and came downe to the Harbours mouth, and rode there all night, because the winde blew right in, and the night grew myfile with much rayne till main night. Then it fell calme, and the wind came off the Land at West North-west, and it began to cleere. The Compasse varyed 10. degrees North-west.

The fixe and twentieth, faire and cleere funne-shining weather. At fine of the clocke in the morning, the winde being off the shoare at North North-west, we set sayle and came to sea, and 40 by noone we counted our ship had gone foureteene leagues South-west. In the after-noone, the winde shifted variably betweene West South-west, and North-west. At noone, I found the height to bee 43 degrees 56 minutes. This Ecuening being very faire weather, wee observed Variation to. degrees toward the variation of our Compaile at the Sunnes going downe, and found it to bee 10. degrees from the North-welt the North to the VVestward.

The feuen and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the winde shifting betweene the Southwest, and West and by North, a stiffe gale, we stood to the Southward all day, and made our way South and by West, seuen and twentie leagues. At noone, our height was 42 degrees 50 minuts. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone, wee cast about to the Northward. At eight of the clocke, we tooke in our top-fayles and our fore-bonnet, and went with a short fayle all night, 50

The eight and twentieth, very thicke and mystie, and a stiffe gale of wind, varying betweene South South-west, and South-west and by VVest; we made our way North-west and by VVest, feuen and twentieleagues, wee founded many times and could get no ground. At fine of the clocke, we cast about to the Southward, the wind at South-west and by VVest. At which time we founded, and had ground at feuentie fine fathoms. At eight, weehad fixtie fine fathoms. At degrees to the ten, fixtie. At twelve of the clocke at mid-night, fiftie fixe fathoms, gray fand, The Compaffe varyed 6. degrees the North point to the VVeil.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, we flood to the Southward, and made our way South and by VVeil a point South, eighteene leagues. At noone, we found our height to bee 42. degrees 56.minutes, wee founded oft, and had these 60, 64, 65. 67. 65. 65. 70. and 75. fathoms. At 60 Variation 5. & night, wee tryed the variation of our Compasse by the setting of the Sunne, and found that it shalfe degrees, went downe 37. degrees to the North-ward of the VVeft, and should have gone downe but 31. degrees. The Compalie varyed 5. 1. degrees.

The thirtieth, very hot, all the fore-part of the day calme, the wind at South South-east, wee

fleered away VVest South-west and sounded many times, and could find no ground at one hunfeered away the defendance of the feered and feuentie fathomes. VVe found a great current and many ouer-falls. Our current had A great curdeceived vs. For at noone we found our height to be 41. degrees 34. minutes. And the current rent and mahad heated vs to the Southward fourteune leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, I founded and ny ouer-fals. had ground in fiftie two fathomes. In the end of the mid-night watch, wee had fiftie three fathomes. This last observation is not to be trusted.

The one and thirtieth, very thicke and mystie all day, vntill tenne of the clocke. At night the wind came to the South, and South-west and South. We made our way West North-west nineteene leagues. Wee sounded many times, and had difference of soundings, To fometimes little Rones, and fometimes groffe gray land, fiftie fix, fiftie foure, fortie eight, fortie seuen, fortie foure, fortie fix, fiftie fathomes ; and at eight of the clocke at night it fell calme, and we had fiftie fathomes. And at ten of the clocke we heard a great Rut, like the Rut of the shoare. A great Rus, Then I founded and found the former Depths; and mistrusting a current, seeing it so still that the ship made no way, I let the lead lie on the ground, and found a tide set to the South-west, and South-west by West, io fait, that I could hardly vere the Line so fast, and presently came an hutling current, or tyde with ouer-fals, which cast our ship round; and the Lead was so fast in the the South-well ground, that I feared the Lines breaking, and we had no more but that. At mid-night I foun- and Southded againe, and we had feuentie fine fathomes; and the strong streame had left vs.

The first of August, all the fore-part of the day was mystie, and at noone it cleared vp. We with over-take go found that our height was 41. degrees 45 minutes, and we had gone nineteene leagues. The afternoon was reasonable cleere. We found a rustling tide or current, withmany ouer-fals to continue ftill, and our water to change colour, and our fea to bee very deepe, for wee found no ground in one hundred fathomes. The night was cleere, and the winde came to the North, and North

North-east, we steered West.

The second, very faire weather and hoe : from the morning till noone we had a gale of wind, but in the after-noone little wind. Atmoone I founded and had one hundred and ten fathomes and our height was 41. degrees 56. minutes. And wee had sunne foure and twentie leagues and an halte. At the Sun-fetting we observed the variation of the Compasse, and found that it was come to his true place. At eight of the clocke the gale increased, so wee ranne fixe leagues that 30 watch, and had a very faire and cleere night.

The third, very hor weather. In the moining, we had fight of the Land, and fleered in with it, thinking to goe to the North-ward of it. So we lent our shallop with fine men, to found in by the shore : and they found it deepe fine fathomes within a Bow shot of the shoare; and they They goe on she shoare; and we found a floud come from the South-east, and an ebbe from the North-west. with a very strong streame, and a great hurling and noyses. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind began to blow a fresh gale, and continued all night but variable. Our founding that wee had to the Land, was one hundred, eightie, seuentie foure, fiftie two, fortie fixe, twentie nine, 40 twentie feuen, twentie foure, nineteene, seuenteene, sometimes Oze, and sometimes

gray fand. The fourth, was very hot : we flood to the North-west two watches; and one South in for the Land, and came to an Anthor at the Norther end of the Headland, and heard the voyce of men call. Then we fent our Boat on shoare, thinking they had beene some Christians left on the Land : but wee found them to bee Sauages, which feemed very glad of our commings So wee brought one aboord with vs, and gaue him meate, and he did eate and drinke with vs. Qur Mather gaue him three or foure glaffe Buttons, and fent him on Land with our shallop againe. And at our Boats comming from the shoare he leapt and danced, and held up this stands, and pointed ws to a river on the other fidesfor we had made fignes that we came to fifth there. The bodie of this 10 Headland lyeth in 41 degrees 49 minutes. We fet fayleagaine after dinner thinking to flaue got

to the Weltward of this Headland, but could not; so we beare up to the Southward of it, & made a South-east way; and the Souther point did beare West at eight of the clocke at night. Our foundings about the Easter and Norther pare of this Headland, a league from the shoare are these at the Bafterside thirtie, twentie seuen, twentie seuen, twentie foure, twentie fine, twentie, The North-east point 17. degrees 18. unmutes, and so deeper. The North-end of this Headland, hard by the shoare thirsie fathomes : and three leagues off North North-weit, one hundred fathomes. At the South-east part a league off, lifteene, fixteene, and senenteene fathomes. The people have greene Tabacco, and pipes, the boles whereof are made of Earth, and the pipes of red Copper. The Land is very fweet.

60 The fife, all mystie. At eight of the clocke in the morning, wee tack about to the Westward and flood in till foure of the clocke in the after-noone; at which time it cleered, and wee had fight of the Head-land againe fine leagues from vs. The Souther point of it did beare West off vs : and we founded many times, and had no ground. And at foure of the clocke we cast about. and at our staying wee had sementie fathomes. Wee steered away South and South by East all

Augus.

lyeth off Eaft

from Cape

Ced into the

The Flees.

night, and could get no ground at feuentie and eightie fathomes. For wee feared a great Riffe, that lyeth off the Land, and steered away South and by East.

The fixth, faire weather, but many times mysling, Wee steered away South South-east, till eight of the clocke in the morning: Then it cleered a little, and wee cast about to the Westward. Then we founded and had thirtie fathomes, groffe fand, and were come to the Riffe. Then wee kept our Lead, and had quicke shoalding, from thirtie, twentie nine, twentie seuen, twentie foure, twentie two, twentie and an halfe, twentie, twentie, ninetcene, ninetcene, ninetcene, eighteene, eighteene, seuenteene; and so deeping againe as proportionally as it shoulded. For we steered South and South-east till we came to twentse fixe fathomes. Then we steered Southwest for so the tyde doth set. By and by it being calme we tryed by our Lead; for you shall 10 haue fixteene or leventeene fathomes, and the next cast but seven or six fathomes. And farther to the Westward you shall have four and five foot water, and see Rockes under you; and you shall fee the Land in the top. Vpon this Riffe we had an obsenzation, and found that it lyeth in 40. degrees 10. minutes. And this is that Headland which Captaine Barthalomen Gofnold discourred in the yeere 1602, and called Cape Cod, because of the store of Cod-fish that hee found thereabout, So we steered South-west three leagues, and had twentie, and twentie foure fathomes, Then we steered West two Glasses halfe a league, and came to sisteene sathomes. Then we steered off South-east foure Glasses, but could not get deepe water; for there the tyde of ebbelaid vson; and the streame did hurle so, that it laid vs so neere the breach of ashoald, that wee were forced to Anchor. So at feuen of the clocke at night, wee were at an Anchor in tenne fathomes: 20 And, I give God most heartie thankes, the least water wee had was seven fathomes and an halfe, We rode still all night, and at a still water I founded so farre round about our ship as we could see a light; and had no leffe then eight, nine, ten, and eleuen fathomes: The myft continued being

The feuenth, faire weather and hot, but mystie. Wee rode still hoping it would cleere, but on the floud it fell calme and thicke. So we rode still all day and all night. The floud commeth from the South-west, and rifeth not about one fathome and an halfe in nepe streames. Toward night it cleered, and I went with our shallop and sounded, and found no lesse water then eight fathomes to the South-east off vs : but we law to the North-west off vs great Breaches.

The eight, faire and cleere weather. In the morning, by fixe of the clocke at flake water wee 30 weighed; the wind at North-east, and ist our fore-layle and mayne top-layle, and got a mile ouer the Flats. Then the tyde of ebbe came, so we anchored against ill the floud came. Then wee fee fayle againe, and by the great mercie of God, weegot cleere off them by one of the clocke this after-noone. And wee had light of the Land from the West North-west, to the North North-west. So we steered away South South-east all night; and had ground vintill the middle of the third watch. Then we had fortie fine fathomes, white fand, and little flones. So all our foundings are twentie, twentie, twentie two, twentie fenen, thirtie two, fortie three, fortie three, fortie fine. Then no ground in feuencie fathomes,

The ninth, very faire and hot weather, the wind a very stiffe gale. In the morning, at four of the clocke, our shallop came running up against our sterne, and split in all her stemme; So we 40 were faine to cut her away. Then wee tooke in our mayne fayle, and lay atrie under out forefayle vntill twelve of the clocke at mid-day. Then the wind ceased to a faire gale, so wee stood away South-weft. Then we lay close by, on many courses a South by West way fifteene leagues; and three watches South-east by East, ten leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, wee tooke in our top-fayles, and went with a low fayle; because we were in an vnknewne sea. At noone we observed and found our heigth to be 38. degrees 39. minutes.

The tenth, in the morning some raine and cloudie weather: the windeat South-west, wee made our way South-east by East, ten leagues. At noone, wee observed and found our height to bee 28, degrees 39, minutes. Then wee tackt about to the Westward, the wind being at South and by East, little wind. At foure of the clocke it fell calme, and we had two Dolphines about 50 our thip, and many small fishes. At eight of the clocke at night, wee had a small tingring gale. All night we had a great Sea out of the South-west, and another great Sea out of the North-east.

The eleuenth, all the fore-part of the day faire weather, and very hot. VVeethood to the VVeft South-west till noone. Then the wind shorted, and we could by but South-west and by South. At noone, wee found our heigth to bee 39. degrees 11. minutes. And that the current had laid vs to the Northward thirtie two minutes contrary to our expectation. At four of the clocks in the after-noone there came a myst, which endured two houres. But wee had it faire and cleere all night after. The Compaffe varied the North point to the V Veft one whole point.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the South-west and by South, and the North little wind. In the moraing we killed an extraordinary fifth, and flood to the West- 60 ward all day and all night. At moone we found our height to be 38. degrees 12 minutes. And the observation the day before was not good. This noone, we found the Compasse to vary from the North to the West ten degrees.

The thirteenth, faire weather and hot : the wind at North-east. Wee steered away West and

by our Compafie two and twentie leagues. At noone wee found our height to bee 37, degrees 45. minutes, and that our way from noone to noone war Well South-well, halfe a point Southerly. The Compafe was 7 degrees and a halie variation; from the North point

The fourteenth, faire weather, but cloudie, and a fiffe gale of wind, wariable betweene Northeast and South-weit, wee steered away West by South, a point South all day untill nine of the clocke at night; then it began to Thunder and Lighten, whereupon we tooke in all our fayles, and layd it a hull, and hulled away North rill mid-night, a league and a halfe.

The fifteenth, very faire and hot weather, the winde at North by East. Actours of the 10 clocks in the morning we let layle, and flood on our course to the Wellward. At noone wee found our height to bee 37, degrees 25, minutes. Theufver-moone proued little wind. At eight 37-Degrees of the clocke at night, the winde came to the North, and wee fleered West by North, and West North-west, and made our way West: The Compasse waryed 7 degrees from the

The fixteenth, faire finning weather, and very hor, the wind variable betweene the North and the West, wen steered away West by North. Armoone wee found our height to bee 37. 37.Degrees degrees 6, minutes. This morning we sounded and had ground in nirectie fathomes, and in fixe 6 minutes. Giaffes running it shoulded to fiftie fathoms, and so to eight and twencie fathoms, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Then wee came to an Anchor, and rode till eight of the clocke at 20 night, the wind being at South and Moone-light, we refolued to goe to the Northward to finde deeper water. So we weighed and stood to the Northward, and found the water to should and

deepe, from eight and twentie to twentie fathomes, The fewenteenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather, the winde at South by West, wee Recred to the Northward till foure of the clocke in the morning, then wee came to eighteene fathomes. So we Anchored vntill the Sunne arose to lookeabroad for Land, for wee judged there could not but be Land neere vs, but we could fee none. Then we weighed and flood to the Westward till noone. And at eleuen of the clocke wee had fight of a low Land, with a white fandie shoare. By twelve of the clocke we were come into fine fathomes, and Anchored; and the Land Alow Land was four cleagues from vs, and wee had fight of it from the West, to the North-west by with awhite North. Our height was 77 decrees a commence. Then the mind blance of the rest and out of findic thouse 30 North. Our height was 27 degrees 26 minutes. Then the wind blew fo stiffe a gale, and such a 37 degrees 36. Sea went, that we could not weigh ; fo we rode there all night an hard rode,

The eighteenth, in the morning faire weather, and little winde at North North-east and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we weighed and stood into the shoare to see the deeping or shoulding of it, and finding it too deepe, we stood in to get a rode; for wee faw as it were three Hands. So wee turned to windward to get into a Bay, as it shewed to vs to the Westward of an Iland. For the three Ilands did beare North off vs. But toward noone the wind blew Northerly, with guits of wind and rayne. So we stood off into the Sea againe all night; and running off we found a Channell, wherein we had no leffe then eight, nine, ten, eleuen, and twelve fathomes water. For in comming our the Barre, wee had five, and foure fathomes and a 40 halfe, and it lyeth fine leagues from the shoare, and it is the Barre of Virginia. At the North end Barre of Virginia. of 11, it is ten leagues broad, and South and North, but deepe water from ninetie fathoms to fiue, nin.

and foure and a halfe. The Land lyeth South and North. This is the entrance into the Kings Kings River. River in Virginia, where our English-men are. The North file of it lyeth in 37. degrees 26. minutes, you shall know when you come to should water or founding; for the water will looke Greene or thicke, you shall have ninetie and eightie fathomes, and shoalding a pice till you come to ten, cleuen, nine, eight, seuen, ten, and nine fathomes, and so to fiue, and foure fathomes and a halfe. The nineteenth, faire weather, but an hard gale of winde at the North-east, wee stood off till

moone, and made our way South-east by East, two and twentie leagues. At noone wee cast Note. 50 about to the Westward, and stood till fixe of the clocke in the after-noone, and went five leagues and a halfe North-west by North. Then wee cast about againe to the Eastward, and stood that way till foure the next morning.

The twentieth, faire and cleere weather, the winde variable betweene East North-east, and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, weecast about to the Westward, and stood till noone; at which time I founded; and had two and thirtie fathomes. Then we takt to the Eastward againe; wee found our height to bee 37. degrees 22. minutes. We stood to the East- 37. degrees 25. ward all night, and had very much wind. At eight of the clockeat night we tooke off our Bon-minutes nets, and flood with fmall fayle,

The one and twentieth, was a fore storme of winde and rayne all day and all night, wherefore 60 wee flood to the Eastward with a small sayle : till one of the clocke in the after-noone. Then a great Sea brake into our fore-corfe and split it; so we were forced to take it from the yard and mend it; wee lay a trie with our mayne-corfe all night. This night our Cat ranne crying from one fide of the thip to the other, looking ouer-boord, which made vs to wonder; but we faw nothing.

A current fem

Ecc

The three and twentieth, very faire weather, but some Thunder in the morning, the winde variable betweene East by North. At moone wee tackt about to the Northward, the winde at East by North. The after-moone very faire, the wind variable, and continued so all night. Our way we made East South-east, till neune the next day.

The four and twestieth faire and hot weather, with she wind variable between the North 10 and the East. The after-moone variable winds. But at fours of the clocks, the wind came to the East, and South-east; fo wee storred away Narth by West, and in three Watches wee went thirteane leagues. At noone our height was 35 degrees 41, minures, being farre off at

The five and twentieth, faire weather and very bot. All the morning was very calme vertill eleuen of the clocke ; the wind came to South-east, and South South-east | fo wee steered away North-west by North, two Watches and a halfe, and one Watch North-west by West, and went eighteene leagues. At noone I found our height to bee 36, degrees 20, minutes, being

The fixe and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde variable open all the points of the 20 Compalie. From two of the clocke in the morning wntill noone, were made our way North by East, seuen leagues. In the after-noone the wind came to the North-east, and vering to the East South-east, wee steered away North-west friceene leagues, from noone till ten of the clocke at night. At eight of the clocke at night wee founded, and had eighteene fathomes, and were The Banke of come to the Banke of Figinia, and could not fee the Land. Wee kept founding, and fteered a. way North, and came to eigh: fathomes, and Anchored there ; for the wind was at East Southeast, so that wee could not get off. For the Coast lyeth along South South-west, and North North-east, At moone our height was 37, degrees 15, minutes. And wee found that we were returned to the same place, from whence we were put off at our first seeing Land.

The fenen and twentieth, faire weather and very hot, the winde at East South-east. In the 30 Latitude 37. morning as soone as the Sunne was up, wee looked out and had fight of the Land. Then wee degrect 1 5, mi weighed, and flood in North-west two Glasses, and found the Land to bee the place, from whence wee put off first. So wee kept our loofe, and steered along the Land, and had the Banke Ive all along the sheare; and wee had in two leagues off the sheare, five, fixe, seven, eight, nine, and ten fathomes. The Coast lyeth South South west, and is a white Sandie floare, and theweth full of Bayes and Points. The ftreame fetreth West South-west, and East Northeast. At fixe of the clocke at night, wee were thwart of an Harbour or Riner, but we saw a Barre lye before it; and all within the Land to the Northward, the water range with many Hands in it. At fixe of the clocke we Anchored, and fest our Boate to found to the shoare-ward, and found no lelle then fourt and a halfe, fine, fixe, and feuen fathomes.

The eight and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde at South South-west. In the morning at fixe of the clocke wee weighed, and steered away North twelve leagues till noone. The Point of and came to the Point of the Land; and being hard by the Land in fine fathomes, on a fudden wee came into three fathomes ; then we beare vp and had but ten foote water, and ioyned to the Point. Then as foone as wee were over, wee had five, fixe, fenen, eight, nine, ten, twelve, and thirteene fathomes. Then wee found the Land to trend away North-weft, with a great Bay and Rivers. But the Bay wee found shoald; and in the offing wee had ten fathomes, and had fight of Breaches and drie Sand. Then wee were forced to stand backe againe; so we Rood backe South-east by South, three leagues. And at feuen of the closke wee Anchored in eight fathomes water; and found a Tide fet to the North-west, and North North-west, 50 A fmall Shaland it rifeth one fathome, and floweth South South-east. And hee that will throughly Diflop needfull. couer this great Bay, must have a small Pinnasse, that must draw but source or fine soote water, to found before him. At fine in the morning wee weighed, and steered away to the The Norther Eastward on many courses, for the Norther Land is full of shoulds. Wee were among them, Land is full of and once wee strooke, and wee went away; and steered away to the South-east. So wee had two, three, foure, five, and feuen fathomes, and fo deeper and deeper.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, with some Thunder and showers, the winde shifting betweene the South South-west, and the North North-west. In the morning wee weighed at the breake of day, and flood toward the Norther Land, which we found to bee all Ilands to our fight, and great stormes from them, and are should three leagues off. For we comming by them, 69 had but feuen, fixe, fiue, forre, three, and two fathoms and a halfe, and strooke ground with our Rudder, we steered off South-west, one Glasse, and had fine fathoms. Then wee steered Southeast three Glasses, then wee found seuen fathomes, and steered North-east by East, foure leagues, and came to twelue and thirteene fathoms. At one of the clocke, I went to the top-

# CH AP. 16. Deceisfull freames, Three great Rivers, Salmons, Mullets, Rayes, 591

mast head, and set the Land, and the bodie of the Hands did beare North-west by North; And at foure of the clocke, wee had gone foure leagues Eaft South-eaft, and North-eaft by East, and found but seuen fathoms, and it was calme, so we Anchored. Then I went agains to the top-mast head, to see how farre I could see Land about vs, and could see no more but the Le lands. And the Souther point of them did beare North-west by West, eight leagues off. So weerode till mid-night. Then the winde came to the North North-west, so wee waighed

The thirtieth, in the morning betweene twelue and one, we weighed, and flood to the Eaftward, the winde at North North-west, wee steered away and made our way East South-east. In From our weighing till noone, eleuen leagues. Our foundings were eight, nine, ten, eleuen, twelue, and thirteene fathomes till day. Then we came to eighteene, nineteene, twentie, and to fixe and twentie fathoms by noone. Then I observed the Sunne, and found the height to bee 19. degrees 5. minutes, and faw no Land. In the after-noone, the winde came to North Latinde 39. by West; So wee lay close by with our fore-sayle : and our mayne-sayle, and it was little degrees ; mi winde untill twelue of the clocke at mid-night, then wee had a gale a little while. Then I autes. founded, and all the night our foundings were thirtie, and fixe and thirtie fathomes, and wee went little.

The one and thirtieth, faire weather and little wind. At fixe of the clocke in the mornin we cast about to the Northward, the wind being at the North-east, little wind. At noone it fell 20 calme, and I found the height to bee 38 degrees 39 minutes. And the ftreames had deceived vs. Latitude 38. and our founding was eight and thirtie fathoms. In the afternoone I founded againe, and had necessary but thirtie fathoms. So we found that we were heaved too and fro with the streames of the Tide, Deceitfull both by our observations and our depths. From noone till foure of the clocke in the after-noone, freames, it was calme. At fixe of the clocke wee had a little gale Southerly, and it continued all night, fometimes calme, and fometimes a gale ; wee went eight leagues from noone to noone, North by East. The first of September, faire weather, the wind variable betweene East and South, we steered September.

away North North-west. At noone we found our height to bee 39. degrees 3. minutes. Wee Latitude 39. had foundings thirtie, twentie seuen , twentie foure, and twentie two fathomes . as wee degrees 3, min 3c went to the Northward. At fixe of the clocke wee had one and twentie fathomes. And all the nutes, third watch till twelue of the clocke at mid-night, we had foundings one and twentie, two and twentic, eighteene, two and twentie, one and twentie, eighteene, and two and twentie fathoms. and went fixe leagues neere hand North North-weft.

The second, in the morning close weather, the winde at South in the morning; from twelve untill two of the clocke we feered North North-welt, and Ind founding one and twentie fathoms, and in running one Glaffe we had but fixteene fathoms, then feuenteene, and fo shoalder and shoalder vntill it came to twelue fathoms. We saw a great Fire, but could not see the Land, then we came to ten fathoms, whereupon we brought our tackes aboord, and flood to the Eastward East South-east, foure Glasses. Then the Sunne arose, and we steered away North agains. 40 and faw the Land from the West by North, to the North-west by North, all like bro-

ken llands, and our foundings were eleuen and ten fathoms. Then wee looft in for the shoare, The Landine broken llands, and faire by the shoare, we had seuen fathoms. The course along the Land we found to be North-The course a call by North. From the Land which we had first fight of, whill we came to a great Lake long the Land of water, as wee could indge it to bee, being drowned Land, which made it to rife like llands, from the which was in length ten leagues. The mouth of that Lake hath many floodids, and the Sea breaketh on them as it is cast out of the mouth of it. And from that Lake or Bay, the Land lyeth mouth of the North by East, and wee had a great streame out of the Bay ; and from thence our sounding Norther Bay was ten fathoms, two leagues from the Land. At fine of the clocke we Anchored, being little or Lake. winde, and rode in eight fathoms water, the night was faire. This night I found the Land to Variation 8. 50 hall the Compasse 8 degrees. For to the Northward off vs we saw high Hils. For the day before the Hills. we found not about 2. degrees of Variation. This is a very good Land to fall with, and a plea. L. degrees va-

The third, the morning myslie vntill ten of the clocke, then it cleered, and the wind came to See. The third, the moraning waynes that the South South Court and is very pleafant the South South cash, so were weighed and stood to the Northward. The Land is very pleafant this and a and high, and bold to fall withall. At three of the clocke in the after-moone, wee came to three bold floare, great Rivers. So we flood along to the Northermost, thinking to have gone into it, but we found Three great it to haue a very shoald barre before it, for we had but ten foot water. Then wee cast about to Rivers, the Southward, and found two fathoms, three fathoms, and three and a quarter, till we came to The Northerthe Souther fide of them, then we had fine and fixe fathoms, and Anchored. So wee fent in our ment barrerd.

An excellent 60 Boate to found, and they found no leffe water then foure, five, fixe, and feven fathoms, and re-River. turned in an houre and a halfe. So wee weighed and went in, and rode in fine fathoms, Ozie Latitude 40. ground, and faw many Salmons, and Mullets, and Rayes very great. The height is 40. de. degrees 30 min grees 20. minutes.

The fourth, in the morning as soone as the day was light, wee saw that it was good riding

The Coaftly-

eth South

and North

North weff.

This agreeth

Tyndall,

the Land.

A great Bay

South-weft.

A very good Harbour,

they are very

Dryed Cure

Mantles of

Red Copper.

Hempe.

ciuill

farther vp. So we fent our Boate to found, and found that it was a very good Harbour; and foure and fine fathoms, two Cables length from the shoare. Then we weighed and went in with our ship. Then our Boate went on Land with our Net to Fish, and caught ten great Mullets, of a foot and a halfe long a peece, and a Ray as great as foure men could hale into the ship. So wee trimmed our Boate and rode still all day. At night the wind blew hard at the North-west, and our Anchor came home, and wee droue on shoare, but tooke no hurt, thanked bee God, for the ground is loft fand and Oze. This day the people of the Countrey came abourd of vs, feeming ground is not tains and Oxer many may have perfectly a specific for Knines and Ready very glad of our comming, and brought greene Tabacco, and gaue vs of it for Knines and Ready. They goe in Deere skins loofe, well drefted. They have yellow Copper. They define Cleathes, come aboord. and are very civill. They have great flore of Maiz or Indian Wheate, whereof they make good 10 Bread. The Countrey is full of great and tall Oakes.

Yellow Cop-Tall Oakese

The fifth, in the morning as foone as the day was light, the wind ceafed and the Flood came. So we heated off our ship againe into fine fathoms water, and sent our Boate to found the Bay, The great Bay and we found that there was three fathoms hard by the Souther shoare. Our men went on Land and 30 minutes, there, and law great store of Men, Women and Children, who gaue them Tabacco at their comming on Land. So they went up into the Woods, and faw great flore of very goodly Oakes, and fome Currants. For one of them came aboord and brought fome dryed, and gaue me fome, which were sweet and good. This day many of the people came aboord, some in Mantles of Feathers, Feathers, Furs, and some in Skinnes of divers forts of good Furres. Some women also came to vs with Hempe. They had red Copper Tabacco pipes, and other things of Copper they did weare 20 about their neckes. At night they went on Land sgaine, so wee rode very quiet, but durft

to the North-Anarrow Riner to the Westward.

The fixth, in the morning was faire weather, and our Master fent Iohn Colman, with foure on Another River ther men in our Boate over to the North-fide, to found the other Rives, being four leagues from vs. They found by the way should water two fathoms; but at the North of the River eighteen, and twentie fathoms, and very good riding for Ships; and a narrow River to the Westward betweene two llands. The Lands they told vs were as pleasant with Graffe and Flowers, and goodly Trees, as euer they had seene, and very sweet smells came from them. So they went in two leagues and faw an open Sea, and returned; and as they came backe, they were fet vpon by two Canoes, the one hauing twelue, the other fourteene men. The night came on, and it began 30 to rayne, so that their Match went out; and they had one man slaine in the fight, which was an English-man, named Iohn Colmon, with an Arrow shot into his throat, and two more burt. It grew fo darke that they could not find the ship that night, but labored too and fro on their Oares. They had to great a streame, that their grapnell would not hold them.

colmen flaine,

The feuenth, was faire, and by ten of the clocke they returned aboord the ship, and brought our dead man with them, whom we carryed on Land and buryed, and named the point after his colmans Point. name, Colmans Point. Then we hoyfed in our Boate, and raifed her fide with waste boords for defence of our men. So we rode still all night, having good regard to our Watch.

The eight, was very faire weather, wee rode still very quietly. The people came abourd vs, and brought Tabacco and Indian Wheat, to exchange for Kniues and Beades, and offered vs no 40 violence. So we fitting up our Boate did marke them, to fee if they would make any shew of the Death of our man; which they did not.

Smages.

The ninth faire weather. In the morning, two great Canoes came abourd full of men; the one with their Bowes and Arrowes, and the other in thew of buying of Kniues to betray vs; but we perceived their intent. Wee tooke two of them to have kept them, and put red Coates on them, and would not suffer the other to come neere vs. So they went on Land, and two other came aboord in a Canoe: we tooke the one and let the other goe; but hee which wee had taken, got vp and leapt ouer-boord. Then we weighed and went off into the channell of the Riner, and Anchored there all night.

The tenth, faire weather, we rode (till till twelue of the clocke. Then we weighed and went ouer, and found it (hoald all the middle of the Riuer, for wee could finde but two fathoms and a 50 cours, and found it (hoald all the middle of the Riuer, for wee could finde but two fathoms and a 50 cours and found it (hoald all the middle of the Riuer, for wee could finde but two fathoms and a 50 cours are considered. halfe, and three fathomes for the space of a league ; then wee came to three fathomes, and foure fathomes, and to to seven fathomes, and Anchored, and rode all night in toft Ozie ground. The banke is Sand.

The eleuenth, was faire and very hot weather. At one of the clocke in the after-noone, wee weighed and went into the River, the wind at South South-weft, little winde. Our foundings

were seuen, fixe, fiue, sixe, seuen, eight, nine, ten, twelue, thirteene, and fourteene fathomes. Then it shoulded againe, and came to fine fathomes. Then wee Anchored, and saw that it was a Good Harbour very good Harbour for all windes, and rode all night. The people of the Country came about of vs, making thew of love, and gave vs Tabacco and Indian Wheat, and departed for that night; but we durit not truft them.

The twelfth, very faire and hot. In the after-noone at two of the clocke wee weighed, the winde being variable, betweene the North and the North-west. So we turned into the River two leagues and Anchored. This morning at our first rode in the Ruer, there came eight and

twentie Canoes full of men, women and children to betray vs : but we faw their intent, and fuffered none of them to come aboord of vs. At twelve of the clocke they departed. They of men. brought with them Oysters and Beanes, whereof wee bought some. They have great Tabacco Oysters and pipes of yellow Copper, and Pots of Earth to dreffe their meate in. It floweth South-eaft by Beanes.

Copper Pipes South within.

The thirteenth, faire weather, the wind Northerly. At seven of the clocke in the morning, as the floud came we weighed, and turned foure miles into the Riuer. The tide being done wee anchored. Then there came foure Canoes abourd : but we fuffered none of them to come into our ship. They brought great store of very good Oysters aboord, which we bought for trifles. IO In the night I fet the variation of the Compaffe, and found it to be 13. degrees. In the after- Variation 13. noone we weighed, and turned in with the floud, two leagues and a halfe further, and anchored degrees.

all night, and had five farhoms foft Ozie ground, and had an high point of Land, which shewed out to vs, bearing North by East fine leagues off vs.

The fourteenth, in the morning being very faire weather, the wind South-east, we sayled vp the River twelve leagues, and had five fashoms, and five fathoms and a quarter leffe; and came to a Streight betweene two Points, and had eight, nine, and ten fathoms: and it trended Northeaft by North, one league: and wee had twelve, thirteene and fourteene fathomes. The Ri-Her is a mile broad : there is very high Land on both fides. Then wee went vp North-weft, a The Riner a league and an halfe deepe water. Then North-east by North fine miles; then North-west milebroad, 20 by North two leagues, and anchored. The Land grew very high and Mountainous. The Very high and River is full of fish.

The fifteenth, in the morning was mifty untill the Sunne arofe; then it cleered. So wee weighed with the wind at South, and ran vp into the River twentie leagues, paffing by high Mountaines. Wee had a very good depth, as fixe, feuen, eight, nine, ten, twelue, and thirteene fathoms, and great store of Salmons in the River. This morning our two Savages got out of a Port and Iwam away. After we were under fayle, they called to vs in fcorne. At night we came to other Mountaines, which lie from the Riners fide. There wee found very louing people, and Very louing very old men : where wee were well vied. Our Boat went to fift, and caught great flore of People.

30 The fixteenth, faire and very hot weather. In the morning our Boat went agains to fishing. but could catch but few, by reason their Canoes had beene there all night. This morning the people came aboord, and brought vs eares of Indian Corne, and Pompions, and Tabacco: which Maiz, Pomple wee bought for trifles. Wee rode fill all day, and filled fresh water; at night wee weighed and bacco. went two leagues higher, and had should water : so wee anchored till day.

The feuenteenth, faire Sun-shining weather, and very hot. In the morning as soone as the Sun was vp, we let fayle, and ran vp fixe leagues higher, and found shoulds in the middle of the Shoulds and channell, and small Hands, but seuen fathoms water on both sides. Toward night we borrowed small Hands so neere the shoare, that we grounded : so we layed out our small anchor, and heaved off againg. Then we borrowed on the banke in the channell, and came aground againe; while the floud ran

40 we heated off againe, and anchored all night.

The eighteenth, in the morning was faire weather, and we rode still. In the after-noone our Masters Mate went on land with an old Sauage, a Gouernour of the Countrey; who carried him to his house, and made him good cheere. The nineteenth, was faire and hot weather: at the foud being neere eleven of the clocke, wee weighed, and ran higher vo two leagues about the Shoalds, and had no leffe water then five fathoms: wee anchored, and rode in eight fathomes. The people of the Countrie came flocking aboord, and brought vs Grapes, and Pompions, which Grapes and wee bought for trifles, And many brought vs Beuers skinnes, and Otters skinnes, which wee Pompions:
Beauers and Hyphans Company and Hyphans Compan bought for Beades, Kniues, and Hatchets. So we rode there all night.

Otters skins.

The twentieth, in the morning was faire weather. Our Mafters Mate with foure men more 50 went vp with our Boat to found the River, and found two leagues aboue vs but two fathomes water, and the channell very narrow; and aboue that place feuen or eight fathomes. Toward night they returned: and we rode still all night. The one and twentieth, was faire weather, and the wind all Southerly : we determined yet once more to goe farther vp into the River, to trie what depth and breadth it did beare; but much people reforted aboord, so wee went not this day. Our Carpenter went on land, and made a Fore-yard. And our Mafter and his Mate determined to trie some of the chiefe men of the Countrey, whether they had any treacherie in them. So they tooke them downe into the Cabbin, and gaue them fo much Wine and Agas vita, that they were . Il merrie: and one of them had his wife with him, which fate To modestly, as any of our Countrey women would doe in a strange place. In the end one of them was 60 drunke, which had beene aboord of our ship all the time that we had beene there; and that was ftrange to them; for they could not tell how to take it. The Canoes and folke went all on shoare: but some of them came againe, and brought ftropes of Beades : some had sixe, seuen, eight,

nine, ten sand gaue him. So he slept all night quietly. The two and twentieth, was faire weather: in the morning our Mafters Mate and foure more

Ece 3

of the companie went vp with our Boat to found the River higher vp. The people of the Countrey came not aboord till noone: but when they came, and faw the Sauages well, they were glad. So at three of the clocke in the after-noone they came aboord, and brought Tabacco, and more Beades, and gaue them to our Mafter, and made an Oration, and shewed him all the Countrey round about. Then they fent one of their co apanie on land, who prefeatly returned, and brought a great Platter full of Venilon, dreffed by themselves; and they caused him to cate with them : then they made him reuerence, and departed all faue the old man that lay abound. This night at ten of the clocke, our Boat returned in alhowre of raine from founding of the River; End of the Ri- and found it to bee at an end for thipping to goe in. For they had beene vp eight or nine leagues, uers Nuiga. ' and found but feuen foot water, and vaconflant foundings.

They returne downe the

Riner.

trees, &c.

Oration,

The three and twentieth, faire weather. At twelve of the clocke wee weighed, and went downe two leagues to a shoald that had two channels, one on the one side, and another on the other, and had little wind, whereby the tide layed va vpon it. So, there wee fate on ground the space of an houre till the floud came. Then we had a little gale of wind at the Well. So wee got our ship into deepe water, and rode all night very well.

The foure and twentieth was faire weather: the winde at the North-west, wee weighed, and went downe the River feven or eight leagues; and at halfe cobe wee same on ground on a banke of Oze in the middle of the River , and fate there till the floud. Then wee went on Storeof Chaft. Land, and gathered good store of Chast-nuts. At ten of the clocke weecame off into deepe

The fine and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale. We rode still, and went on Land to walke on the West side of the River, and found good ground for Corne, Okes, Wal-nut and other Garden herbs, with great flore of goodly Oakes, and Wal-nut trees, and Ober-nut sees, Cheir-nut trees, Ewe trees, and trees of fweet wood in great abundance, and great flore of Slate for houses.

The fixe and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale, wee rode still. In the morning our Carpenter went on Land with our Masters Mate, and foure more of our companie to cut wood. This morning, two Canoes came vp the River from the place where we first found louing people, and in one of them was the old man that had lyen abound of vsat the other place. He brought another old man with him, which brought more fropes of Beades, and 30 gaue them to our Master, and shewed him all the Country there about, as though it were at his command. So he made the two old men dine with him, and the old mans wife: for they brought two old women, and two young maidens of the age of fixteene or feuenteene yeeres with them, who behaued themselues very modestly. Our Master gaue one of the old men a Knife, and they gaue him and vs Tabacco. And at one of the clocke they departed downe the River, making fignes that wee should come downe to them ; for wee were within two leagues of the place

The feuen and twentieth, in the morning was faire weather, but much wind at the North, we weighed and fet our fore top-sayle, and our ship would not stat, but ran on the Ozie banke at halfe ebbe. Wee layed out anchor to heave her off , but could not. So wee fate from halfe 40 ebbe to halfe floud: then wee fet our fore-fayle and mayne top-fayle, and got downe fixe leagues. The old man came aboord, and would have had vs anchor, and goe on Land to eate with him : but the wind being faire, we would not yeeld to his request; So hee left vs, being very forrowfull for our departure. At fine of the clocke in the after-moone, the wind came to the South South-west. So wee made a boord or two, and anchored in fourteene fathomes water. Then our Boat went on shoare to fish right against the ship. Our Masters Mate and Boat-swaine, and three more of the companie went on land to fifh, but could not finde a good place. They tooke foure or fine and twentie Mullets, Breames, Bases, and Barbils; and returned in an houre.

The eight and twentieth, being faire weather, as soone as the day was light, wee weighed at 50 halfe ebbe, and turned downe two leagues belowe water; for, the streame doth runne the last quarter ebbe: then we anchored till high water. At three of the clocke in the after-noone we weighed, and turned downe three leagues, vntill it was darke : then wee anchored.

The nine and twentieth was drie close weather: the wind at South, and South and by West, we weighed early in the morning, and turned downe three leagues by a lowe water, and anchored at the lower end of the long Reach; for it is fixe leagues long. Then there came certaine Indians in a Canoe to vs, but would not come aboord. After dinner there came the Canoe with other men , whereof three came aboord vs. They brought Indian Wheat, which wee bought for trifles. At three of the clocke in the after-noone wee weighed, as soone as the ebbe came, and turned downe to the edge of the Mountaines, or the Northermost of the Mountaines, and 69 anchored: because the high Land hath many Points, and a narrow channell, and hath many eddie winds. So we rode quietly all night in seuen fathoms water.

The thirtieth was faire weather, and the wind at South-east a stiffe gale between the Mountaynes. We rode still the after-noone. The people of the Countrey came abourd vs, and brought

fome fmall skinnes with them, which we bought for Kniues and Trifles. This a very pleafant Small skins. place to build a Towne on. The Road is very neere, and very good for all winds, faue an East Apleasant North-east wind. The Mountaynes looke as if some Metall or Minerall were in them. For the place to build Trees that grow on them were all blafted, and fome of them barren with few or no Trees on a Townsons. them. The people brought a stone aboord like to Emery (a stone vied by Glassers to cut Glasse) it would cut Iron or Steele: Yet being bruifed small, and water put to it , it made a colour like Likelihood of blacke Lead gliftering; It is alfo good for Painters Colours. At three of the clocke they depar. Minerals. ted, and we rode still all night.

The first of October, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the West and the North. In Octobers Io the morning we weighed at feuen of the clocke with the ebbe, and got downe below the Mountaynes, which was feuen leagues. Then it fell calme and the floud was come, and wee anchored at twelue of the clocke. The people of the Mountaynes came abourd vs , wondring at our ship and weapons. We bought some small skinnes of them for Trifles. This after-noone, one Canoe kept hanging under our sterne with one man in it, which we could not keepe from thence, who got up by our Rudder to the Cabin window, and stole out my Pillow, and two Shirts, and two Bandeleeres. Our Masters Mate shot at him, and strooke him on the brest, and killed him. Whereupon all the rest fled away, some in their Canoes, and so leapt out of them into the watet. We manned our Boat, and got our things againe. Then one of them that swamme got hold of our Boat, thinking to ouerthrow it . But our Cooke tooke a Sword, and cut off one of his hands, and 20 he was drowned. By this time the ebbe was come, and we weighed and got downe two leagues, by that time it was darke. So we anchored in foure fathomes water, and rode well.

The second, faire weather. At breake of day wee weighed, the wind being at North-west, and got downe seuen leagues; then the flowd was come strong, so we anchored. Then came one of the Sauges that Iwamme away from vast our going up the River with many other, thinking Treachetle of to betray vs. But wee perceined their intent, and fuffered none of them to enter our fhip, their Sausgen, Whereupon two Canoes full of men, with their Bowes and Arrowes shot at vs after our sterne: Askirmish and in recompence whereof we discharged fixe Muskets, and killed two or three of them. Then 2- flaughter of boue an hundred of them came to a point of Land to shoot at vs. There I shot a Falcon at them, the Sauages. and killed two of them: whereupon the rest sled into the Woods. Yet they manned off another

30 Canoe with nine or ten men, which came to meet vs. So I that at it also a Falcon, and shot it through, and killed one of them. Then our men with their Muskets, killed three or foure more of them. So they went their way, within a while after, wee got downe two leagues beyond that place, and anchored in a Bay, cleere from all danger of them on the other fide of the River, where we faw a very good piece of ground : and hard by it there was a Cliffe, that looked of the A Myne of colour of a white greene, as though it were either Copper, or Silver Myne : and I thinke it to be Copper or one of them, by the Trees that grow voon it. For they be all burned, and the other places are Silver. greene as graffe, it is on that fide of the River that is called Manna-beta. There we faw no people to trouble vs: and rode quietly all night; but had much wind and raine.

The third, was very stormie; the wind at East North-east. In the morning, in a gust of wind 40 and raine our Anchor came home, and we droue on ground, but it was Ozie. Then as we were about to haue out an Anchor, the wind came to the North North-west, and droue vs off agains. Then we shot an Anckor, and let it fall in source fathomes water, and weighed the other. Wee had much wind and raine, with thicke weather; so we roade still all night.

The fourth, was faire weather, and the wind at North North-west, wee weighed and came out of the River, into which we had runne so farre. Within a while after, wee came out also of The great mouth of the great River, that runneth vp to the North-west, borrowing vpon the Thegreat mouth Norther fide of the same, thinking to have deepe water; for wee had founded a great way with of the great Riour Boat at our first going in, and found seuen, fix, and five fathomes. So we came out that way, "".

but we were deceived, for we had but eight foot & an halfe water; and fo to three, five, three, and 50 two fathomes and an halfe. And then three, foure, fine, fixe, feuen, eight, nine and ten fathomes. And by twelve of the clocke we were cleere of all the Inlet. Then we tooke in our Boat, and fet our mayne-fayle and fprit-fayle, and our top-fayles, and fleered away East South-east, and the Coast of the Coast of South-east by East off into the mayne sea : and the Land on the Souther-fide of the Bay or In- Tingaia, let, did beare at noone West and by South foure leagues from vs.

The fift, was faire weather, and the wind variable betweene the North and the East. Wee held on our course South-east by East. At noone I observed and found our height to bee 39. degrees 30. minutes. Our Compaffe varied fixe degrees to the West.

We continued our course toward England, without seeing any Land by the way, all the rest of this moneth of October : And on the feuenth day of November , file none , being Satur-60 day : by the Grace of God we fafely arrived in the Range of Dartmonth in Denonshire, in the yeere 1609.

CHAP. XVII. An Abstract of the Iournall of Master HENRY HYDEON, for the

Discouerie of the North west Passage, begunne the seuenteenth of Aprill, 1610. ended with his end, being treacheroully exposed by some of the Companie.

Aprill 17.

He seventeenth of Aprill, 1610. we brake ground, and went downe from Saint Ka. tharines Poole, and fell downe to Blacke-wall: and so plyed downe with the Ie ships to Lee, which was the two and twentieth day.

The two and twentieth, I caused Master Coleburne to bee put into a Pinke. bound for London, with my Letter to the Aduenturers, importing the reason wherefore I so put him out of the ship, and so plyed forth.

May. The Iles of Oriney.

The second of May, the wind Southerly, at Eeuen we were thwart of Flamberough Head. The fift, we were at the lles of Orkney, and here I fet the North end of the Needle, and the

Note. Farre Ilands 61 degrees 24. Westmany.

Iune.

The fixt, wee were in the latisude of 59. degrees 22. minutes, and there perceived that the North end of Scotland, Orney, and Shotland are not to Northerly, as is commonly fet downe. The eight day, wee faw Farre Hands, in the latitude of 62, degrees 24. minutes. The eleuenth 20 day, we fell with the Easter part of Island, and then plying along the Souther part of the Land. we came to Westmony, being the fifteenth day, and ftill plyed about the mayne lland, vntill the last of May with contrary winds, and we got some Fowles of divers forts.

The first day of Iune, we put to Sea out of an Harbour, in the Westermost part of Island, and fo plyed to the Westward in the latitude of 66.degrees 34. minutes, and the second day plyed and found our selues in 65. degrees 57. minutes, with little wind Easterly.

The third day, wee found our felues in 65. degrees 30. minutes, with winde at North-eaft, little before this we fayled neere some Ice.

Graneland.

The fourth day, we faw Groneland ouer the Ice perfectly, and this night the Sunne went downe due North, and rose North North-east. So plying the fift day, we were in 65. degrees, 30 fill encombred with much Ice, which hung vpon the Coaft of Groneland.

The ninth day, wee were off Fredithers Streights with the winde Northerly, and plyed vnto the South-westwards untill the fifteenth day.

Streights.

The fif: eenth day, we were in fight of the land, in latitude 59. degrees 27. minutes, which was called by Captayne lobn Danis, Defolation, and found the errour of the former laying downe of that Land : and then running to the North-westward untill the twentieth day, wee found the ship in 60. degrees 42. minutes, and saw much Ice, and many Riplings or Ouer-fals, and a strong A current West Areame setting from East South-east, to West North-west.

Defelation.

The one and twentie, two and twentie, and three and twentie dayes, with the winde variable, we plyed to the North-westward in fight of much Ice, into the height of 62. degrees 40

East entrance into the Streights.

The foure and twentie, and fine and twentie dayes, fayling to the West-ward about midnight, wee faw Land North, which was fuddenly loft againe. So wee ranne still to the Westward in 62. degrees 17. minutes.

Iuly.

The fift of luly, wee plyed up voon the Souther fide, troubled with much Ice in feeking the shoare vntill the fift day of July, and we observed that day in 59 degrees 16. minntes. Then we olved off the shoare againe, vntill the eight day, and then found the height of the Pole in 60. degrees no minutes. Here we saw the Land from the North-west by West, halfe Norther-Defrepresseles. ly vnto the South-west by West, covered with snow, a Champaigne Land, and called it, De-

growne Sea.

We still plyed up to the Westward, as the Land and Ice would fuffer untill the eleventh day; when fearing a storme, we anchored by three Rockie Ilands in vincertayine depth, betweene two and nine fathomes; and found it an Harbour vnsufficient by reason of lunken Rockes, one of which was next morning two fathomes aboue water. Wee called them the Iles of Gods Mercies. The water floweth here better then foure fathomes. The Floud commeth from the North, flowing eight the change day. The latitude in this place is 62. degrees 9. minutes. Then plying to the South-westward the fixteenth day, wee were in the latitude of \$8. degrees 50. minutes, but found our felues imbayed with Land, and had much Ice : and we plyed to the North-westward vntill the nineteenth day, and then wee found by observation the height of the Pole in 61. degrees 24. minutes, and faw the Land, which I na- 60.

Wold with Hope, med, Hold with Hope. Hence I plyed to the North-westward still, vntill the one and twentieth day, with the wind variable. Heere I found the Sea more growne, then any wee had fince wee left England.

The three and twentieth day, by observation the height of the Pole was 61, degrees 33, mi-

nutes. The fine and twentieth day, we faw the Land; and named it Magna Britannia. The fixe Magna Britan and twentieth day, wee observed and found the latitude in 63. degrees 44. minutes. The eight and twentieth day, we were in the height of 63. degrees 10, minutes, and plyed Southerly of the West. The one and thirtieth day, plying to the Westward, at noone wee found our felues in 62. degrees 24. minutes.

The first of August, we had fight of the Northerneshoare, from the North by East to the West Angus. by South off vs: the North part twelue leagues, and the Wester part twentie leagues from vs: and we had no ground there at one hundred and eightie fathomes. And I thinke I faw Land on the Sunne fide, but could not make it perfectly, bearing East North-east. Here I found the latio

10 tude 62. degrees co. minutes.

The second day, we had sight of a faire Head-land, on the Norther shoare six leagues off, which I called Salisburies Fore-land : we ranne from them Well South-welt, fourteene leagues : In the mid-way of which wee were fuddenly come into a great and whorling Sea, whether caufed by fore landmeeting of two streames, or an Ouer-fall, I know not. Thence fayling West and by South fe- A great and uen leagues farther, we were in the mouth of a Streight and founded, and had no ground at one whurling Seas uen leagues farther, we were in the mouth of a Streight and rounded, in the paffage in this A Streight hundred farthomes; the Streight being there not about two leagues broad, in the paffage in this A Streight Wester part : which from the Easter part of Freeium Danis, is distant two hundred and fiftie into the deep

The third day, we put through the narrow pallage, after our men had beene on Land, which great Mercies. 20 had well observed there, That the Floud did come from the North, flowing by the shoare five fathomes. The head of this entrance on the South fide, I named Cape Worfenbolme; and the head Cape Wolfenon the North-wester shoare, I called Cape Digs. After wee had tailed with an Easterly winder boing. West and by South ten leagues, the Land fell away to the Southward, and the other Iles and Cape Dig. Land left vs to the Westward. Then I observed and found the ship at noone in 61. degrees 20.

minutes, and a Sea to the Weitward.

30

A larger Discourse of the same Voyage, and the successe thereof, written by ABACYKPRICKET.

Ebegan our Voyage for the North-west passe; the seventeenth of Aprill, 1610. Thwart of Sheper, our Mafter fent Mafter Colbert backe to the Owners with his Letter. The next day we weighed from hence, and stood for Harrich, and came thicker the eight and twentieth of Aprill. From Hawich we fet fayle the first of May, along

the Coast to the North, till we came to the Iles of Ortney, from thence to the Iles of Fare, and Ortney, from thence to Island : on which we fell in a fogge, hearing the Rut of the Sea ashoare, but faw Farrelles. not the Land whereupon our Master came to an Anchor. Heere we were embayed in the South- Island. east part of the Land. Wee weighed and stood along the Coast, on the West fide towards the The South east 40 North: but one day being calme, we fell a fifting, and caught good ftore of fift, as Cod and Ling,

and Butte, with fome other forts that we knew not. The next day, we had a good gale of wind at South-west, and rayfed the Iles of Westmonie, where the King of Denmarke hath a Fortreffe, Westmanie by which we passed to rayle the Snow Hill foot, a Mountayne to called on the North-west part Hand. of the Land. But in our course we saw that samous Hill, Mount Hecle, which cast out much Mount Hecle fire, a figne of foule weather to come in short time. Wee leave Island a sterne of vs, and met a coffethout fire, Mayne of Ice, which did hang on the North part of "flord, and stretched downe to the West, A mayne of which when our Master law, he stood backe for Island to find an Harbour, which we did on the North-west part, called " Derefer, where wee killed good store of Fowle. From hence wee " Or Direferd.

put to Sea againe, but (neither wind nor weather feruing) our Mafter flood backe for this Harbour againe, but could not reach it, but fell with another to the South of that, called by our 50 Englishmen, Loufee Bay : where on the shoare we found an hot Bath, and heere all our Englishmen Loufee Bay. bathed themselues : the water was so hot that it would scald a Fowle.

From hence the first of lune, we put to Sea for Groneland, but to the West wee faw Land as The first of we thought, for which we beare the best part of a day, but it proued but a foggie banke. So wee lune, gaue it ouer, and made for Gronland, which we rayled the fourth of Iune. V pon the Coast thereof hung good store of Ice, to that our Master could not attayne to the shoare by any meanes. The Land in this part is very Mountaynous, and full of round Hils, like to Sugar-loanes, coursed with fnow. We turned the Land on the South fide, as neere as the Ice would fuffer vs. Our course for the most part was betweene the West and North-west, till we rayled the Defolations, Hand of Defoto which is a great Hand in the West part of Groneland. On this Coast we saw store of Whales, lation. and at one time three of them came close by vs, to as wee could hardly thunne them : then two

passing very neere, and the third going under our ship, wee received no harme by them, prayfed bee God. From the Defolations our Master made his way North-west, the wind being against him, who

elfe would have gone more to the North : but in this course we saw the first great lland or Mountayne of Ice, whereof after we faw store. About the latter end of June, we rayled Land to the North of vs, which our Mafter tooke to bee that Hand which Mafter Danis fetteth downe in his Chart. On the West side of his Streight, our Master would have gone to the North of it. but the wind would not fuffer him : so we fell to the South of it, into a great Rippling or ouerfall of current, the which ferteth to the West. Into the current we went, and made our way to the North of the West, till we met with Ice which hung on this Iland. Wherefore our Mafler casting about, cleered himselfe of this Ice, and stood to the South, and then to the West. through store of sloting Ice, and vpon the Ice store of Seales. We gained a cleere Sea, and continued our courle till wee meete Ice; first, with great llands, and then with store of the smaller 10 fort. Betweene them we made our course North-west, till we met with Ice againe. But, in this our going betweene the Ice, we law one of the great Ilands of Ice ouerturne, which was a good warning to vs, not to come nigh them, nor within their reach. Into the Ice wee put ahead, as Iland of Ice obetweene two Lands. The next day we had a florme, and the wind brought the Ice fo fast your vs, that in the end we were driven to put her into the chiefest of the Ice, and there to let her lie, Some of our men this day fell ficke, I will not fay it was for feare, although I faw small figne of

The storme ceasing, we stood out of the Ice, where wee faw any cleere Sea to goe to: which was sometime more, and sometime lesse. Our course was as the Ice did lye, sometime to the North, then to the North-west, and then to the West, and to the South-west : but still inclo- 20 fed with Ice. Which when our Master saw, he made his course to the South, thinking to cleere himselfe of the Ice that way : but the more he strone, the worse he was, and the more inclosed. till we could goe no further. Here our Malter was in despaire, and (as he told me after) he thought he should neuer haue got out of this Ice, but there have perished. Therefore hee brought forth his Card, and shewed all the company, that hee was entred aboue an hundred leagues further then euer any English was : and left it to their choice, whether they would proceed any further: yea, or nay. Whereupon, some were of one minde, and some of another, some wishing themany had been. felues at home, and some not caring where, so they were out of the Ice : but there were some who then spake words, which were remembred a great while after.

Discontents.

There was one who told the Master, that if he had an hundred pounds, hee would give foure 30 fcore and ten to be at home : but the Carpenter made answere, that if hee had an hundred , hee would not give ten woon any fuch condition, but would thinke it to be as good money as ever he had any, and to bring it as well home, by the leave of God. After many words to no purpole, to worke we must on all hands, to get our felues out, and to cleere our ship. After much labour and time spent, we gained roome to turne our ship in, and so by little and little, to get cleere in the Sea a league or two off, our course being North and North-well.

In the end, we rayfed Land to the South-west, high Land and coursed with Snow. Our Ma-Defire promotes. ster named this Land, Defire promotes. Lying here, wee heard the noyle of a great over-fall of a tyde, that came out of the Land : for now we might fee well, that wee had beene embayed before, and time had made vs know, being fo well acquainted with the Ice, that when night, or 40 foggie, or foule weather tooke vs, we would feeke out the broadest Hand of Ice, and there come to anchor and runne, and sport, and fill water that stood on the Ice in Ponds, both sweete and good. But after we had brought this Land to beare South of vs, we had the tyde and the current to open the Ice, as being carried first one way, and then another : but in Bayes they Iyeas in a pond without mouing. In this Bay where wee were thus troubled with Ice, wee faw many of those Mountaynes of Ice aground, in fixe or seven score fathome water. In this our course we faw a Beare vpon a piece of Ice by it felfe, to the which our men gaue chase with their Boat : but before they came nigh her, the tyde had carried the Ice and the Beare on it, and joyned it with the other Ice : so they lost their labour, and came abourd againe.

profit on the Difference of Tydes and Ice about 100.

Exercises of

We continued our course to the North-west, and rayled Land to the North of our course, to- 50 ward which we made, and comming nigh it, there hung on the Eastermost point, many Ilands of floting Ice, and a Beare on one of them, which from one to another came towards vs, till she was readie to come aboord. But when the faw vs looke at her, the cast her head betweene her hinder legges, and then dived vnder the Ice : and fo from one piece to another, till she was out of our reach. We flood along by the Land on the Southfide ahead of vs, wee met with Ice that hung on a point of Land that lay to the South , more then this that we came vp by : which when our Master saw, he stood in for the shoate. At the West end of this lland (for so it is) we found an Harbour, and came in (at a full Sea) ouer a Rocke, which had two fathome and an halfe on it, and was so much bare at a low water. But by the great mercie of God, we came to an Anchor cleare of it; and close by it, our Master named them, the Iles of Gods Mercie. This is an Har- 60 bour for need, but there must be care had how they come in. Heere our Master sent me , and others with me, to discouer to the North and North-west : and in going from one place to another, we sprung a Couey of Partridges which were young : at the which Thomas Woodbonse shot, but killed only the old one. This Hand is a most barren place, having nothing on it but

Hes of Gods Partridges.

A dangerous

plashes of water and riven Rockes, as if it were subject to Earthquakes. To the North there is a great Bay, or Sea (for I know not what it will prove) where I iaw a great Hand of Ice aground, betweene the two Lands, which with the Spring-ride was fet affoat, and carried into this Bay or Sea to the North-westward, but came not backe againe, nor within fight. Here wee tooke in tome Drift wood that we found ashoare. From hence we flood to the South-woft, to double the Land to the Weft of vs. through much

floting Ice: In the end wee found a cleere Sea, and continued therein, till wee rayfed Land to the North-west. Then our Master made his course more to the South then before : but it was not long ere we met with Ice which lay ahead of vz. Our Mafter would have doubled this los to the North, but could not; and in the end put into it downe to the South-west through much

Ice, and then to the South, where we were embayed agains. Our Mafter from to get the shoare, but could not, for the great store of Lee that was on the coast. From out of this Bay, we stood to the North, and were foone out of the Ice : then downe to the South-west, and so to the West. where we were enclosed (to our fight) with Land and Ice. For wee had Land from the South to the North-west on one fide, and from the East to the West on the other : but the Land that was to the North of vs, and lay by East and West, was but an Hand. On we wene till we could goe no further for Ice: fo we made our thip fast to the Ice which the tide brought vpon vs , but when the ebbe came, the Ice did open, and made way; fo as in feuen or eight hours we were cleere from the Ice, till we came to weather; but onely fome of the great Hands, that were car-20 ried along with vs to the North-west.

Hauing a cleere Sea, our Master stood to the West along by the South shoare, and rayled three Capes or Head-lands, lying one aboue another. The middlemost is an Iland, and maketh a Bay Three Capes; or Harbour, which (I take) will proue a good one. Our Mafter named them Prince Honries Prince Honries Cape, or Fore-land. When we had layd this we railed another, which was the extreme point Cape. of the Land, looking towards the North: woon it are two Hills, but one ( about the rest ) like an Hay-cocke; which our Mafter named, King James his Cape, To the North of this, lie cer- King James his taine Hands, which our Master named, Queene Annes Cape, or Fore-land. Wee followed the Cape. North shoate still. Beyond the Kings Cape there is a Sound or Bay, that hath some Hands in Cape. it : and this is not to be forgotten, if need be. Beyond this , lieth some broken Land, close to

20 the Mayne, but what it is I know not : because we passed by it in the night.

Wee flood to the North to double this Land, and after to the Weff againe, till wee fell with Land that ftretched from the Mayne, like a shewer from the South to the North, and from the North to the West, and then downe to the South againe. Being short of this Land, a florence tooke vs, the wind at West, we stood to the North, and raised Land : which when our Master faw, he stood to the South againe; for he was loath at any time that wee should see the North shoare. The storme continuing, and comming to the South shoare againe, our Master found him. Note. felfe shot to the West, a great way, which made him muse, considering his Leeward way. To the South-west of this Land, on the Mayne, there is an high Hill, which our Master named Mount Charles. To the North and beyond this, lieth an Hand, that to the East hath a faire head, Mount Charles

40 and beyond it to the West other broken Land, which maketh a Bay within, and a good Road may be found there for ships. Our Master named the first, Cape Salfbarie.

When we had left this to the North-east, we fell into a Rippling or Ouer-fall of a Current, which (at the first we tooke to bee a Shoald: but the Lead being cast, wee had no ground. On we passed still in fight of the South shoare, till we raised Land lying from the Mayne some two leagues. Our Mafter tooke this to bee a part of the Mayne of the North Land; but it is an Iland, the North fide firetching out to the West more then the South. This Iland hath a faire Head to the East, and very high Land, which our Master named Deepes Cape: and the Land on Deepes Cape. the South fide, now falling away to the South, makes another Cape or Head-land, which our Worlands Mafter named, Worfenhams Cape. When wee were nigh the North or Hand Cape, our Mafter Cape. 50 fent the Boat ashoare, with my selfe (who had the charge) and the Carpenter, and divers others.

to discover to the West and North-west, and to the South-west : but we had further to it then we thought; for the Land is very high, and we were ouer-taken with a storme of Raine, Thunder and Lightning. But to it we came on the North-east fide, and vp we got from one Rocke to another, till we came to the highest of that part. Here we found some plaine ground, and saw some Deere ; as first, foure or fiue, and after, a dozen or sixteene in an Herd, but could not come Deere, nigh them with a Musket shot.

Thus, going from one place to another, wee faw to the West of ws an high Hill about all the reft, it being nigh vs : but it proued further off then we made account; for, when wee came to it, the Land was so steepe on the East and North-east parts, that wee could not get vnto it. To 6c the South-west we saw that wee might, and towards that part wee went along by the side of a Store of south

great Pond of water, which lieth vader the East fide of this Hill : and there runneth out of it and grafe. a streame of water, as much as would drive an over-shot Mill; which falleth downe from an Sorell and high Cliffe into the Sea on the South fide. In this place great ftore of Fowle breed, and there is Scuruy grafe, the best Graffe that I had seene since we came from England. Here wee found Sorell , and that

which wee call Scurny-graffe, in great abundance. Paffing along wee law formeround Hills of flone, like to Graffe cockes, which at the first I tooke to be the worke of some Christian. Wee paffed by them, till we came to the South fide of the Hill; we went vuto them, and there found more; and being nigh them, I turned off the vppermost itone, and found them hollow within, and full of Fowleshanged by their neckes. Then Greene, and I, went to fetch the Boat to the South fide, while Robert Billet and hee got downe a Valley to the Sea tide, where wee

Our Mafter ( in this time ) came in betweene the two Lands , and shot off fome Peeces to call we aboord; for it was a fogge. Wee came aboord, and told him what we had feene, and percan ve account; our as was a reger fixed in this place, telling him what refreshing might there bee had : 10 but by no meanes would he flay, who was not pleased with the motion. So we left the Fowle, and loft our way downe to the South-west, before they went in sight of the Land, which now beares to the East from vs , being the same mayne Land that wee had all this while followed. Now, we had loft the fight of it, because it falleth away to the East, after some fine and twenty or thirty leagues. Now we came to the shallow water, whereweth wee were not acquainted fince we came from Island; now we came into broken ground and Rockes, chrough which we passed downe to the South. In this our course we had a storme, and the water did should space, Our Mafter came to an anchor in fifteene fathoms water.

Wee weighed and flood to the South-east, because the Land in this place did lie so, When we came to the point of the West Land (for we now had Land on both fides of ws) we came to 20 an anchor. Our Master sent the Boat ashoare, to see what that Land was, and whether there were any way through. They foone returned, and shewed that beyond the point of Land to the South, there was a large Sea. This Land on the West side, was a very narrow Point. Wee weighed from hence, and stood in for this Sea betweene the two Lands, which (in this place) is not two leagues broad downe to the South, for a great way in light of the East sheare. In the end we loft fight thereof, and faw it not till we came to the bottome of the Bay, into fixe or feuen fathomes water. Hence we flood up to the North by the West shoare, till wee came to an Iland in \$2. where we tooke in water and ballaft.

Discord? see Relations fol-

From hence wee passed towards the North : but some two or three dayes after (reasoning concerning our comming into this Bay, and going out ) our Mafter tooke occasion to reviewed to matters, and to displace Robert Inet from being his Maie, and the Boat-swaine from his place, for words spoken in the first great Bay of Ice. Then hee made Robert Billet his Mate, and Wile lowing. Leas Wilfox our Boxt-(waine. Vp to the North wee flood, till we raifed Land, then downe to the South, and vp to the North, then downe againe to the South: and on Michelmsfel Day, and Bay. came in, and went out of certaine Lands; which our Mafter fets downe by the name of Michelmsfel. maffe Bay, because we came in and went out on that day. From hence wee stood to the North, and came into shoald water; and the weather being thicke and foule, weecame to an anchor in feuen or eight fathome water, and there lay eight dayes: in all which time wee could not get one houre to weigh our anchor. But the eight day, the wind beginning to cease, our Matter would have the anchor vp, against the mind of all who knew what belonged thereunto. Well, 40 to it we went, and when we had brought it to a peake, a Sea tooke her, and cast vs all off from the Capstone, and hurt divers of vs. Here wee lost cur Anchor, and if the Carpenter had not beene, we had loft our Cable too : but he (fearing fuch a matter) was ready with his Axe,

From hence we flood to the South, and to the South-west, through a cleere Sea of divers founding, and came to a Sea of two colours, one blacke, and the other white, fixteene or feuenteene fathome water, betweene which we went foure or fine leagues. But the matt comming, we tooke in our Top-sayles, and stood afore the wind with our Maine-sayle and Fore-sayle, and came into fine or fixe fathomes, and faw no Land for it was darke. Then we flood to the East, and had deepe water againe, then to the South and Southwest, and so came to our Westermost 50 Bay of all, and came to an anchor neerest to the North shorae. Our went our Boat to the Land that was next vs, when they came neere it, our Boat could not flote to the shoare it was so shallow : yet ashoare they got. Here our men saw the footing of a man and a Ducke in the snowy Rockes, and Wood good store, whereof they tooke some and returned aboord. Being at anchor in this place, we faw a ledge of Rockes to the South of vs, some league of length; It lay North and South, couered at a full Sea ; for a strong tide setteth in here. At mid night wee weighed, and stood to goe out as we came in; and had not gone long, but the Carpen er came and told the Master, that if he kept that course he would be voon the Rockes : the Master conceiued that he was past them, when presently wee ranne on them, and therestucke fast twelve houres : but ( by the mercy of God ) we got off whurt, though not wnscarred,

Wee flood wo to the East and rayled three Hills, lying North and South: wee went to the furthermost, and left it to the North of vs , and so into a Bay, where wee came to an anchor. Here our Mafter fent out our Boat, with my felfe and the Carpenter to fecke a place to winter in : and it was time; for the nights were long and cold, and the earth concred with Snow. Ha-

uing frentthree moneths in a Labyrinth without end, being now the last of October, we went Last of October downe to the East, to the bottome of the Bay : but returned without speeding of that we went ber. for. The next day we went to the South, and the South-west, and found a place, whereunto we brought our ship, and haled her aground : and this was the first of November. By the tenth November the thereof we were frozen in : but now we were in, it behooned vs to have care of what we had; reach frozen for, that we were fure of ; but what we had not, was vncertaine.

Wee were victualled for fixe moneths in good proportion, and of that which was good : if our Mafter would have had more, he might have had it at home and in other places. Here we were now, and therefore it behould vs to to fpend, that wee might have (when time came) to bring vs to the Caper where the Fowle bred, for that was all the hope wee had to bring vs home.

IC Wherefore our Master tooke order, first for the spending of that wee had, and then to increase it, by propounding a reward to them that killed either Beaft, Fish, or Fowle, as in his Iournall you have feere. About the middle of this moneth of November, dyed John Williams our Gunner: John Williams Gad pardon the Matters uncharitable dealing with this man. Now for that I am come to speake dyeth. of him, out of whose ashes (as it were ) that wnhappy deed grew which brought a scandall vpon all that are returned home, and upon the action it telte, the multitude ( like the dog ) running after the stone, but not at the easter : therefore, not to wrong the living, nor flander the dead, I will (by the leave of God) deliner the truth as neere as I can.

You shall understand, that our Master kept (in his house at London) a young man, named Hen-

20 rie Greine, borne in Kont, of Worthipfuli Parents, but by his leud lite and conversation hee had Hony Greens loft the good will of all his frinds, and had spent all that hee had. This man, our Master would bad conditions have to Sea with him, because hee could write well : our Master gave him meate, and drinke, and lodging, and by meanes of one Mafter Venfou, with much adoe got foure pounds of his mother to buy him clothes, wherewith Mafter Venfon would not trust him : but faw it laid out himfelfe. This Henrie Greene was not fet downe in the owners booke, nor any wages made for him. Hee came first abourd at Granefend, and at Harwich should have gone into the field, with one Wilkinson. At Island the Surgeon and hee fell out in Dutch, and hee beat him a shoare in English , which set all the company in a rage; so that wee had much adoe to get the Surgeon aboord. I told the Master of it, but hee bade mee let it alone, for (faid hee ) the Surgeon had a tongue that would wrong the best friend hee had, But Robert Inet (the 3C Mafters Mate ) would needs burne his finger in the embers, and told the Carpenter a long tale

when hee was drunke ) that our Mafter thad brought in Greene to cracke his credit that should displease him : which words came to the Matters eares, who when hee understood it, would have gone backe to Island, when he was fortie leagues from thence, to have fent home his Mate Robert Inet in a Fisher-man. But, being otherwise perswaded, all was well. So Henry Greene stood vpright, and very inward with the Master, and was a feruiceable man every way for manhood: but for Religion he would fay, he was cleane paper whereon he might write what hee would. Now, when our Gunner was dead, and (as the order is in fuch cases ) if the company fland in need of any thing that belonged to the man deceased, then is it brought to the Mayne Maft, and there fold to them that will give most for the same : This Gunner had a gray cloth gowne, which Greene prayed the Mafter to friend him so much as to let him haue it, paying for it as another would give : the Master faith hee should, and thereupon hee answered some, that fought to haue it, that Greene should have it, and none else, and so it refled.

Now out of feafon and time, the Master calleth the Carpenter to goe in hand with an house Green conon shoare, which at the beginning our Master would not heare, when it might have beene done, spiracies The Carpenter told him, that the Snow and Frost were such, as hee neither could, nor would goe

in hand with fuch worke. Which when our Mafter heard, hee ferreted him out of his Cabbin to strike him, calling him by many foule names, and threatning to hang him. The Carpenter told him that hee knew what belonged to his place better then himselfe, and that hee was no House Carpenter. So this passed, and the house was (after) made with much labour, but to no end. The next day after the Master and the Carpenter fell out, the Carpenter tooke his Perce and Henry Greene with him, for it was an order that none should goe out alone, but one

with a Peece, and another with a Pike. This did moue the Master so much the more against Henry Greene, that Robert Billet his Mate must have the gowne, and had it delivered voto him; which when Henry Greene faw, he challenged the Masters promile : but the Master did so raile on Greene, with so many words of diffrace, telling him, that all his friends would not trust him with twenty shillings, and therefore why should he ! As for wages he had none, nor none should haue, if he did not please him well. Yet the Master had promised him to make his wages as good, as any mans in the ship; and to have him one of the Princes guard when we came home. But you So fhall fee how the deurl our of this fo wrought with Green, that he did the Mafter what mischiefe

hee could in feeking to differedit him , and to thrust him and many other honest men out of the Theirhand Ship in the end. To speake of all our trouble in this time of Winter (which was so cold, as it la winting, med the most of our Company, and my selfe doe yet feele it ) would bee too tedious.

But I must not forget to shew, how mercifully God dealt with vs in this time : for the

Store of Pate

O:herFowles

space of three moneths wee had such store of Fowle of one kinde (which were Partridges as white as milke) that wee killed aboue an hundred dezen, besides others of sundry sorts: for all was fifth that came to the net. The Spring comming, this Fowle left vs, yet they were with vs all the extreame cold. Then in their places came divers fore of other Fowle, as Swanne, Geele, Duck, and Teale, but hard to come by. Our Mafter hoped they would have bred in those broken grounds, but they doe not : but came from the South, and flew to the North, further then we were this Voyage; yet if they be taken short with the wind at North, or North-west, or North-east, then they fall and stay till the winde serue them, and then siye to the North. Now in time thele Fowles are gone, and few or none to bee leene. Then wee went into the Woods, Hilles, and Valleyes, for all things that had any shew of substance 10 in them, how vile focuer : the mosse of the ground, then the which I take the powder of

Milerable diet a post to bee much better, and the Frogge ( in his ingendring time as loathiome as a Toade) was not spared. But amongst the divers sorts of buds, it pleased God that The man Woodbonfe brought home a budde of a Tree, full of a Turpentine substance. Of this our Medicinable Surgeon made a decoction to drinke, and applyed the buddes hot to them that were troubled with ach in any part of their bodies; and for my part, I confesse, I received great and present case

A Sauage.

About this time, when the Ice began to breake out of the Bayes, there came a Sauage to our. Ship, as it were to see and to bee seene, being the first that we had seene in all this time : whom our Master intreated well, and made much of him, promising vnto himielse great matters by 20 his meanes, and therefore would have all the Knives and Hatchets (which any man had)to his private vie, but received none but from lohn King the Carpenter, and my felfe. To this Sauage our Maiter gaue a Knife, a Looking-glaffe, and Buttons, who received them thankefully, and made fignes that after hee had flept hee would come againe, which hee did. When hee came, hee brought with him a Sled, which hee drew after him, and vpon it two Decresskinnes, and two Beauerskinnes. Hee had a scrip under his arme, out of which hee drew those things which the Mafter had given him. Hee tooke the Knife and laid it vpon one of the Beauer skinnes, and his Glasses and Buttons vpon the other, and so gaue them to the Master, who received them; and the Sauage tooke those things which the Master them to the Marter, who recently the many them to the Marter thewed him an Hatchet, 30 for which hee would have given the Mafter one of his Deere skinnes, but our Mafter would haue them both, and so hee had, although not willingly. After many fignes of people to the North, and to the South, and that after so many sleepes he would come againe, he went his way, but neuer came more.

Turke,

F.fhing.

Now the Ice being out of the Sounds, so that our Boat might go from one place vnto another, a company of men were appointed by the Master to go a fishing with our net; their names were as followeth : William Wilson, Henry Greene, Michael Perce, John Thomas, Andrew Moter, Bennet Mathewes, and Arnold Lodlo. These men, the first day they went, caught fine hundred fish, as big as good Herrings, and some Troutes: which put vs all in some hope to have our wants supplied, and our Commons amended : but these were the most that ever they got in one day , for many 40 dayes they got not a quarter fo many. In this time of their fishing, Henry Green and William Wilfon, with some others, plotted to take the net and the shallop, which the Carpenter had now set vp, and so to shift for themselues. But the shallop being readie, our Master would goe in it himfelte to the South and South-west, to fee if hee could meete with the people; for, to that end was it fet up, and (that way) wee might fee the Woods fet on fire by them. So the Mafler tooke the Sayue and the Shallop, and so much victuall as would serue for eight or nine daves, and to the South hee went. They that remained aboord, were to take in water, wood, and ballaft, and to haue all things in a readinesse against hee came backe. But hee set no time of his returne; for he was periwaded, if he could meet with the people, hee should have fiesh of them, and that good flore: but hee returned worse then hee went forth. For, hee could by no meanes meete with the people, although they were neere them , yet they would fet the 50 woods on fire in his fight.

Being returned, hee fitted all things for his returne, and first, delivered all the bread out of the bread roome (which came to a pound a piece for euery mans share ) and deliuered also a Bill of Returne, willing them to have that to shew, if it pleased God, that they came home: and he wept when hee gaue it vnto them. But to helpe vs in this poore estate with some reliefe, the Beate and Savue went to worke on Friday morning, and flayed till Sunday noone: at which time they came aboord, and brought fourescore small Fish, a poore reliefe for so many hungry bellies. Then we wayed, and flood out of our wintering place, and came to an Anchor without, in the mouth of the Bay: from whence we wayed and came to an anchor without in the Sea, where our bread being gone, that ftore of cheefe we had was to ftop a gap, whereof there were fine, whereat the company grudged, because they made account of nine. But those that were left, were equally dissipant of nine. ded by the Mafter, although he had counsell to the contrarie: for there were some who having it, would make haft to bee iid thereof, because they could not gourne it. I knew when Henrie

Greene gaue halfe his bread, which hee had for fourteene dayes, to one to keepe, and prayed him not to let him have any vntill the next Munday : but before Wednelday at night, hee never left till hee had it againe, having eaten up his first weekes bread before. So Willow the Boatfwaine hath eaten (in one day) his fortnights bread, and hath beene two or three dayes ficke for his labour. The cause that moued the Master to deliner all the Cheese, was because they were not all of one goodnesse, and therefore they should see that they had no wrong done them that every man should have alike the best and the worst together, which was three pounds and a halfe for

The wind feruing, we weighed and stood to the North-west, and on Munday at night ( the In eighteenth day of lune) wee fell into the Ice, and the next day the wind being at Weil, we lay there till Sunday in fight of Land. Now being here, the Master told Nicholas Simmes, that there would be a breaking vp of chefts, and a fearch for bread, and willed him (if hee had any) to bring

it to him, which hee did, and deliuered to the Mafter thirty cakes in a bagge. This deed of the Mafter (if it bee true ) hath made mee maruell, what should bee the reason that hee did not stop the breach in the beginning, but let it grow to that height, as that it ouerthrew himfelfe and many other honest men : but there are many denices in the heart of man , yet the counsell of the Lord

Shall Stand.

Being thus in the Ice on Saturday, the one and twentieth of Iune at night, Wilson the wilson's Green, Boatswayne, and Henry Greene came to mee lying (in my Cabbin) lame, and told mee that they their wickedao and the reft of their Afficiates, would shift the Company, and turne the Master, and all the sicke nesses. men into the shallop, & let them shift for themselves. For, there was not fourteen daies victual left for all the Company, at that poore allowance they were at, and that there they lay, the Master not caring to goe one way or other; and that they had not eaten any thing thele three dayes, and therefore were resolute, either to mend or end, and what they had begun they would goe through with it, or dye. When I heard this, I told them I maruelled to heare fo much from them, confidering that they were married men, and had wives and children, and that for their fakes they should not commit so foule a thing in the fight of God and man, as that would bee; for why should they banish themselues from their native Countrie ! Hemy Greene bad me hold my peace, for he knew the worst, which was, to be hanged when hee came home, and therefore of the two 30 he would rather be hanged at home then flarted abroad : and for the good will they bate me, they

would have mee flay in the Ship. I gave them thankes, and told them that I came into her, not to forfake her, yet not to hurt my ielfe and others by any fuch deed. Henry Greene told me then, that I must take my fortune in the Shallop. If there bee no remedie (faid I) the will of Go p

bee done.

Away went Henry Greene in a rage, swearing to cut his throat that went about to disturbe them, and left Wilfon by me, with whom I had some talke, but to no good : for he was so periwaded, that there was no remedie now, but to goe on while it was hor, least their partie should faile them, and the mischiefe they had intended to others, should light on themselves. Henry Greene came againe, and demanded of him what I faid, wilfon answered, He is in his old fong, ft:ll pati-

40 ene. Then I spake to Henry Greene to stay three dayes, in which time I would so deale with the Mafter, that all should be well. So I dealt with him to forbeare but two dayes, nay twelve hours; there is no way then (fay they) but out of hand. Then I told them, that if they would fray till Munday, I would inyne with them to share all the victuals in the ship, and would instifie it when I came home; but this would not serve their turnes. Wherefore I told them , it was some worse matter they had in hand then they made shew of, and that it was bloud and revenge hee fought, or else he would not at such a time of night undertake such a deed, Henry Greene (with that)taketh my Bible which lay before me, and fware that hee would doe no man harme, and what hee did was for the good of the voyage, and for nothing elfe; and that all the rest should do the like. The like did Wilfon fweare.

50 Henry Greene went his way, and prefently came Iner, who because hee was an ancient man, Robett Part, Sen I hoped to haue found some reason in him ; but hee was worse then Henry Greene, for hee sware plainely that he would instifie this deed when he came home. After him came lobn Thomas, and Michel Perce, as birds of one feather : but because they are not living, I will let them goe, as then I did. Then came Moter and Bonnet, of whom I demanded, if they were well aduled what they had taken in hand. They answered, they were, and therefore came to take their oath.

Now, because I am much condemned for this oath, as one of them that plotted with them, and that by an oath I should bind them together to performe what they had begun, I thought good heere to fet downe to the view of all, how well their oath and deedes agreed : and thus it was, Ton shall sweare truth to God, your Prince and Countrie: you shall doe nothing, but to the glory of Oath abused.

60 God, and the good of the action in hand, and harme to no man. This was the oath, without adding or diminishing. I looked for more of these companions ( although these were too many) but there came no more. It was darke, and they in a readineffe to put this deed of darkneffe in execution. I called to Henry Greene and Wilfon, and prayed them not to goe in hand with it in the darke, but to flay till the morning. Now, euerie man (I hope) would goe to his rest, but wic-Fff 2

ter (pared.

kedneff: fleepeth not ; for Henry Greene keepeth the Master company all night (and gaue mee brea i, which his Cabbin-mate gaue him) and others are as watchfull as he. Then I asked Henrie Greene, whom he would put out with the Mafter ! he faid, the Carpenter lobn King, and the licke men. I faid, they should not doe well to part with the Carpenter, what need socuer they should haue. Why the Carpenter was in no more regard amongst them, was; first, for that he and lobn King were condemned for wrong done in the victuall. But the chiefest cause was, for that the Matter loued him, and made him his Mate, vpon his returne out of our wintering place, thereby displacing Robert Billet, whereat they did grudge, because hee could neither write nor read. And therefore (laid they) the Mafter and his ignorant Mate would carry the Ship whither read. And therefore (and they) the sales are the Matter forbidding any man to keep account or reckoning, having taken the Matter pleased, the Matter forbidding any man to keep account or reckoning, having taken the Matter pleased, the Matter pleased of the Matter from all men what souer served for that purpose. Well, I obtained of Henrie Greene and Wisson, that the Carpenter should stay, by whose meanes I hoped (after they had satisfied themselves) that the Marter, and the poore man might be taken into the Ship againe. Or, I hoped, that some one or other would give some notice, either to the Carpenter John King, or the Master; for so it might have come to paffe by fome of them that were the most forward.

Now, it shall not bee amisse to show how we were lodged, and to begin in the Cooke roome: there lay Benner and the Cooper lame; without the Cooke roome, on the steere-board side, lay Thomas Wydboufe ficke; next to him lay Sydrack Funer lame, then the Surgeon, and lobn Hudfon with him ; next to them lay Wilfon the Boati waine, and then a Arnold Lodlo next to him: in the Gun-roome lay Robert Inet and John Thomas; on the Lar-board fide, lay Mithael Bute and A- 20 dria Moore, who had never beene well fince wee loft our Anchor; next to them lay Michael Perce and Andrew Moter. Next to them without the Gun-roome, lay lobn King, and with him Robert Billet: next to them my felfe, and next to me Francis Clements : In the min-fhip, betweene the Capftone and the Pumpes, lay Henrie Greene and Nicholas Simmes. This night lobn King was late vp, and they thought he had been with the Master, but he was with the Carpenter, who lay on the Poope, and comming downe from him, was met by his Cabbin-mate, as it were by chance, and fo they came to their Cabbin together. It was not long ere it was day : then came Bennes for water for the Kettle, hee role and went into the Hold: when hee was in they flut the Hatch on him ( but who kept it downe I know not ) up vpon the Deck went Bennet,

In the meane time Henrie Greme, and another went to the Carpenter, and held him with a 20 talke, till the Master came out of his Cabbin ( which hee soone did ) then came lohn Thomas and They bind the Bennet before him, while Wilfor bound his armes behind him. He asked them what they meant? they told him, he should know when he was in the Shallop. Now Inet, while this was a doing, came to lobs King into the Hold, who was prouided for him, for he had got a fword of his own, and kept him at a bay, and might have killed him, but others came to helpe him : and so he came vp to the Master. The Master called to the Carpenter, and told him that he was bound; but, I heard no answere he made. Now Arnold Lodlo, and Michael Bute rayled at them, and told them their knauerie would shew it selfe. Then was the Shallop haled up to the Ship fide, and the poore, ficke, and lame men were called vpon to get them out of their Cabbins into the Shallop. The Master called to me, who came out of my Cabbin as well as I could, to the Hatch 40 way to speake with him : where, on my knees I befought them, for the loue of God, to remember themselues, and to doe as they would be done unto. They bad me keepe my selfe well, and get me into my Cabbin ; not suffering the Master to speake with me. But when I came into my Cabbin againe, hee called to meat the Horne, which gaue light into my Cabbin, and told mee that Inet would overthrow vs all; nay (faid I) it is that villaine Henrie Greene, and I spake it

Now was the Carpenter at libertie, who asked them, if they would bee hanged when they came home : and as for himfelfe, hee faid, hee would not flay in the Ship vnleffe they The Carpen- would force him: they bad him goe then, for they would not ftay him: I will (faid hee) fo I may have my cheft with mee, and all that is in it : they faid, hee should, and presently they 50 put it into the Shallop. Then hee came downe to mee, to take his leave of mee, who perswaded him to flay, which if he did, he might so worke that all should bee well : hee faid, hee did not thinke, but they would be glad to take them in againe. For he was so perswaded by the Mafler, that there was not one in all the fhip, that could tell how to carrie her home; but (faith he ) if we must part ( which wee will not willingly doe, for they would follow the ship ) hee prayed me, if wee came to the Capes before them, that I would leave fome token that wee had beene there, neere to the place where the Fowler bred, and hee would doe the like for vs : and so (with teares) we parted. Now were the ficke men driven out of their Cabbins into the Shallop; but Iobn Thomas was Francis Clements friend, and Bennet was the Coopers, fo as there were words betweene them and Henrie Greene, one faying, that they should goe, and the other swea- 62 ring that they should not goe, but such as were in the shallop should returne. When Henrie Greene heard that, he was compelled to gine place, and to put out Arnold Lodie, and Michael Bate, which with much adoe they did.

In the meane time, there were some of them that plyed their worke, as if the Ship had beene

entred by force, and they had free leaue to pillage, breaking up Chefts, and rifling all places. One of them came by me, who asked me, what they should doe. I answered, hee should make an end of what hee had begun ; for I faw him doe nothing but sharke vp and downe. Now, were all the poore men in the Shallop, whose names are as followeth; Henrie Hudson, John Hudson, Thenames of Arnold Lodlo, Sidrack Faner, Phillip Staffe, Thomas Woodbonfe, or Wydhonfe, Adam Moore, Henrie the company King, Michael Bute. The Carpenter got of them a Peece, and Powder, and Shot, and some Pikes, exposed in the an Iron Pot, with some meale, and other things. They stood out of the Ice, the Shallop being fall to the Sterne of the Shippe, and fo ( when they were nigh out, for I cannot fay, they were cleane out ) they cut her head fall from the Sterne of our Ship, then out with their Topfayles, and towards the Eaft they flood in a cleere Sea. In the end they tooke in their Top-Lyles,

righted their Helme, and lay vnder their Fore-fayle till they had ranfacked and fearched all places in the Ship. In the Hold they found one of the veffels of meale whole, and the other halfe fpent, for wee had but two; wee found also two firkins of Butter, some twentie seven piece of Porke, halfe a bushell of Pease, but in the Masters Cabbin we found two hundred of bisket Cakesa a pecke of Meale, of Beere to the quantitie of a Butt, one with another. Now, it was faid, that the Shallop was come within fight, they let fall the Main-layle, and out with their Top-fayles, and five as from an Enemy.

Then I prayed them yet to remember themselves ; but William Wilfon (more then the rest) would heare of no such matter. Comming nighthe East shoare they cast about, and stood to the West and came to an Hand, and anchored in fixteene or seuenteene fathome water. So they sent the Boat, and the Net atheare to fee if they could have a Draught : but could not for Rocks and great stones. Michael Perfe killed two Fowle, and heere they tound good store of that Weede, Liftfieht of which we called Cockle-graffe in our wintering place, whereof they gathered flore, and came a- the Shallops board againe. Heere we lay that night, and the best part of the next day, in all which time we faw not the shallop, or ever after. Now Henrie Greene came to me and told mee, that it was the Companies will, that I should come up into the Masters Cabbin, and take charge thereof, I rold him it was more fit tor Robert Inet: he faid, he should not come in it, nor meddle with the Mafters Card, or Iournals. So vp I came, and Henrie Greene gaue me the Key of the Mafters Cheft, and told me then, that he had laid the Mafters best things together, which hee would vie himfelfe when time did ferue : the bread was alfo deliuered me by tale,

The wind feruing, we flood to the North-east, and this was Robert Billets course, convrarie to Robert Inet, who would have gone to the North-west. We had the Easterne shoare still in fight, and (in the night) had a flout gale of wind, and flood afore it, till wee met with Ice, into the which we ranne from those to thicke, till we could goe no further for Ice, which lay so thicke ahead of vs (and the wind brought it after vs afterne) that wee could not ftirre backward, nor forward : but to lay imbayed fourteene daies in worle Ice, then euer wee met to deale withalle for we had beene where there was greater store, but it was not so broad upon the water as this: for this floting Ice contained miles, and halfe miles in compasse, where we had a deepe Sea, and a Tide of flood and ebbe, which fet North-weft and South-east. Heere Robert Inet would have gone to the North-welt, but Robert Billes was confident to go through to the North-east, which he did. At last, being cleere of this Ice, he continued his course in fight of the Easterne shoare, till he raifed foure Ilands which lay North and South: but we passed them fixe or seven leagues, Foure Hands the wind tooke vs fo short. Then wee stood backe to them againe, and came to an Anchor betweene two of the most Northermost. We sent the Boat ashoure, to see if there were any thing there to be had, but found nothing, but cockle Graffe, whereof they gathered flore, and fo return ned aboard. Before we came to this place, I might well fee, that I was kept in the ship against Henry Greenes minde, because I did not favour their proceedings better then I did. Then hee began (very fubtilly) to draw me to take vpon me to fearch for those things, which himselfe had folne: and accused me of a matter no lesse then Treason amongst vs, that I had deceived the The wicked

so company of thirtie Cakes of bread. Now they began to talke amongst themselves, that Eng. flee where Lond was no fafe place for them, and Henry Greene I wore , the shippe should not come into any none pursucula place (but keepe the Seastill) till he had the Kings Majesties hand and Seale to shew for his fafetie. They had many deuices in their heads, but Henry Greene in the end was their Captaine, and so called of them.

From these Ilands we flood to the North-east and the Easter Land still in fight : wee rayled those Ilands, that our Master called Rummes Ilands. Betweene these Ilands and the shallow ground to the East of them, our Master went downe into the first great Bay. We kept the East shoare still in our fight, and comming thwart of the low Land, wee ranne on a Rocke that lay under water, and strooke but once; for if shee had, we might have beene made Inhabitans of that 6c place: but God fent vs foone off without any harme that wee faw. Wee continued our courfe and rayled Landa head of vs, which ftretched out to the North : which when they law , they faid plainly, that Robert Billet by his Northerly course had left the Capes to the South, and that they were best to seeke downe to the South in time for releife, before all was gone : for we had Small flore left. But Robert Billet would follow the Land to the North, faying, that he hoped in

A Rocke.

Note.

July 27 .

Sauages,

God to find somewhat to releeue vs that way, as soone as to the South. I told them that this Land was the Mayne of Worsenhome Cape, and that the shallow rockie ground, was the same that the Master went downe by, when he went into the great Bay. Robert Inet and all said, it was not possible, vnlesse the Master had brought the ship ouer Land, and willed them to looke into the Masters Card, and their course how well they did agree. We stood to the East, and left the mayne Land to the North, by many small Hands into a narrow gut betweene two Lands. and there came to an Anchor. The Boat went ashoare on the North fide, where wee found the great Horne, but nothing elfe. The next day wee went to the South fide, but found nothing Cockle graffe, there, faue Cockle graffe of which we gathered. This graffe was a great releefe vnto vs.for without it, we should hardly haue got to the Capes for want of victuall. The wind seruing we should out, but before we could get cleane out, the wind came to the West, so that we were constray. ned to anchor on the Nor h fide.

The next day, wee weighed and doubled the point of the North Land, which is high Land. and so continueth to the Capes, lying North and South, some fine and twentie or thirtie leagues. To the North we stood to see store of those Fowles that breed in the Capes, and to kill fome with our shot, and to fetch them with our Boat. We raised the Capes with joy, and bare for them, and came to the Ilands that lie in the mouth of the streight : but bearing in betweene the Rockie Iles, we ranne on a Rocke that lay vinder water, and there stucke fast eight or nine houres. It was ebbing water when we thus came on, so the floud set vs affoat, God guiding both wind and Sea, that it was calme, and faire weather : the ebbe came from the East, and the floud from the West. When wee were affoat, wee stood more neere to the East shoare, and there 20

The next day being the feuen and twentieth of July, we fent the Boat to fetch fome Fowle, and the ship should way and stand as neere as they could: for the wind was against vs. They had a great way to row, and by that meanes they could not reach to the place where the Fowle bred:but found good flore of Gulls, yet hard to come by, on the Rocks and Cliffes, but with their Peeces they killed some thirtie, and towards night returned. Now we had brought our ship more neere to the mouth of the Streights, and there came to an anchor in eighteen or twentie fathom water, vpon a Riffe or shelfe of ground : which after they had weighed their Anchor, and stood more neere to the place where the Fowle bred, they could not find it againe, nor no place like it: but were faine to turne to and fro in the mouth of the Streight, and to be in danger of Rockes, 30 because they could not find ground to let fall an Anchor in, the water was so deepe.

The eight and twentieth day, the Boat went to Digges his Cape for Fowle, and made directly for the place where the Fowle bred, and being neere, they faw feuen Boates come about the Easterne point towards them! When the Sauages saw our Boate, they drew themsclues together, and drew their leffer Boats into their bigger : and when they had done, they came rowing to our Boat, and made fignes to the West, but they made readie for all assayes. The Sauages came to them, and by fignes grew familiar one with another, fo as our men tooke one of theirs into our Boate, and they tooke one of ours into their Boate. Then they carried our man to a Coue where their Tents stood toward the West of the place, where the Fowle bred : so they carried him into their Tents, where he remayned till our men returned with theirs. Our Boat went to 40 the place where the Fowle bred, and were defirous to know how the Sauages killed their Fowle: Sauages man- heshewed them the manner how, which was thus, They take along Pole with a snare at the ner of fowling, end, which they put about the Fowles necke, and so plucke them downe, When our men knew that they had a better way of their owne, they shewed him the vie of our Peeces, which at one shot would kill seuen or eight. To be short, our Boat returned to their Coue for our man, and to deliuer theirs. When they came they made great joy, with dancing and leaping, and flroking of their brefts: they offered divers things to our men, but they only tooke fome Morfes Teeth, which they gave them for a Knife, and two glaffe buttons : and to receiving our man they came aboard, much rejoycing at this chance, as if they had met with the most simple and kind people

of the World. And Henry Greene (more then the reft) was so confident, that (by no meanes) we should take care to fland vpon our Guard : God blinding him fo, that where hee made reckoning to receive great matters from these people, he received more then he looked for, and that suddenly by being made a good example for all men : that make no conscience of doing euill, and that we take heed of the Sauage people, how simple soeuer they seeme to be.

The next day, the nine and twentieth of July, they made hafte to be ashoare, and because the fhip rid too farre off, they weighed and flood as neere to the place where the Fowle bred, as they could : and because I was lame, I was to go in the Boat, to carrie such things, as I had in the Cabbin of enery thing fomewhat : and fo with more hafte then good speed (and not without swearing) away we went, Henry Greene, William Wilson, John Thomas, Michael Perse, Andrew, 60 Moter, and my felfe. When we came neere the shoare, the people were on the Hils, dancing and leaping : to the Coue we came, where they had drawne up their Boates: wee brought our Boate to the East side of the Coue, close to the Rockes. Ashoare they went, and made fast the

Boat to a great stone on the shoare, the people came, and every one had somewhat in his hand to barter : but Henry Greene twore they should have nothing, till he had Venison for that they had fo promised him by signes.

Now when we came, they made fignes to their Dogges (whereof there were many like Sanages Mongrels, as bigge as Hounds) and pointed to their Mountaine, and to the Sunne, clapping their dogges, hands. Then Henry Greene, John Thomas, and William Wilfon, flood hard by the Boate head , Min chael Perfe, and Andrew Moter were got up upon the Rocke, a gathering of Sorrell : not one of them had any weapon about him, not fo much as a flicke, faue Henry Greene only, who had a piece of a Pike in his hand : nor faw I any thing that they had wherewith to hurt vs. Henry Sauages tree 10 Greene and William Willon had Looking-glaffer, and lewes Trumps, and Bels, which they were chericshewing the people. The Sauages standing round about them, one of them came into the Boats head to me to thew me a Bottle : I made figures to him to get him afhoase, but he made as though he had not vinderstood me, whereupon I stood vp, and pointed him ashoare. In the meane-time, another stole behind me to the sterne of the Boat, and when I faw him ashoare, that was in the

Wherefore I cast vp my head, and fave the Sauage with his Knife in his hand, who strooke at my breft ouer my head : I cast vp my right arme to faue my breft, he wounded my arme, and strooke 20 me into the bodie vindermy right Pappe. He strooke a second blow which I met with my left hand, and then he strooke me into the right thigh, and had like to have cut off my little finger of the left hand. Now, I had got hold of the ftring of the Knife, and had woond it about my left hand, he striuing with both his hands, to make an end of that he had begunne, I found him but weake in the gripe (God enabling me) and getting hold of the fleene of his left arme, to bare him from me. His left fide lay bare to me, which when I faw, I put his sleeue off his left arme into my left hand, holding the string of the Knife fast in the same hand; and having got my right hand at libertie, I fought for somewhat wherewith to strike him (not remembring my Dagger at my fide) but looking downe I faw it, and therewith strooke him into the bodie, and the

head of the Boat, I fate downeagaine ; but fuddenly I fawithe legge and foote of a man by mee.

Whiles I was thus affaulted in the Boat, our men were fet voon on the shoare. Iohn Thomas Trecherie iust and William Wilson had their bowels cut, and Michael Perfe and Henry Greene being mortally to vaiuft Trays 20 wounded, came tumbling into the Boat together. When Andrew Moter faw this medley, hee tors. came running downe the Rockes, and leaped into the Sea, and fo swamme to the Boat, hanging on the sterne thereof, till Michael Perfe tooke him in, who manfully made good the head of the Boat against the Sauages, that preffed fore vpon vs. Now Michael Perfe had got an Hatchet, wherewith I faw him ftrike one of them, that he lay forawling in the Sea. Henry Greene crieth Greene flaine, Coracio, and layeth about him with his Truncheon : I cryed to them to cleere the Boat, and Andrew Moter cryed to bee taken in : the Sauages betooke them to their Bowes and Arrowes, which they fent amongst vs, wherewith Henry Greene was flaine out-right, and Michael Perfe received may wounds, and fo did the reft. Michael Perfe cleereth the Boate, and puts it from the shoare, and helpeth Andrew Moter in: but in turning of the Boat, I received a cruell wound in 40 my backe with an Arrow: Michael Perfe and Andrew Moter rowed the Boate away , which when the Sauages faw, they ranne to their Boats, and I teared they would have launched them, to have followed vs, but they did not, and our ship was in the middle of the channell, and could

Now, when they had rowed a good way from the sheare, Michael Perfe fainted, and could row no more; then was Andrew Moter driven to stand in the Boat head, and wast to the ship, which (at the first) law vs not, and when they did, they could not tel what to make of vs, but in the end they flood for vs, and so tooke vs vp. Henry Greene was throwne out of the Boat into the Sea, and the rest were had aboard, the Sauage being yet aline, yet without sense. But they died all there Wicked and that day , William Wilfon (wearing and curfing in most fearefull manner : Michael Perfe lived wretchedend two dayes after, and then died. Thus you have heard the Tragicall end of Henry Greene and his of wretched
Mares, whom they called Cantaine, these source heard the policy has been all the ship wicked men. 50 Mates, whom they called Captaine, these foure being the only lustie men in all the ship.

The poore number that was left, were to ply our ship too and fro, in the mouth of the streight, for there was no place to anchor in neere hand : besides, they were to goe in the Boate to kill Fowle, to bring vs home, which they did, although with danger to vs all. For if the wind blew, there was an high Sea, and the eddies of the Tydes would carrie the (hip so neere the Rockes, as it feared our Master, for so I will now call him. After they had killed some two hundred Fowle, with great labour on the South Cape, wee stood to the East: but when wee were fixe or seuen leagues from the Capes, the wind came up at East. Then wee stood backe to the Capes againe, and killed an hundred Fowle more. After this, the wind came to the Well, fo wee were driven to goe away, and then our Master stood (for the most) along by the North shoare, till he fell in-60 to broken ground about the Queenes Fore-land, and there anchored. From thence wee went to Gods Mercies, and from thence to thole Hands, which lye in the mouth of our Streight, not feeing the Land, till we were readie to runne our Bosprite against the Rockes in a fogge. But it cleered a little, and then we might fee our felues inclosed with Rockie Hands, and could find no

608

ground to anchor in. There our Master lay atrie all night, and the next day the fogge continuing, they fought for ground to anchor in, and found fome in an hundred and odde fathomes of water. The next day we weighed and flood to the Eaft, but before wee came heere, we had put our felues to hard allowance, as halfe a foule a day with the pottage: for yet we had some meale Mistrie pursu- left, and nothing else. Then they beganne to make triall of all whatsoeuer: wee had flayed our Fow le, for they wil not pull : and Robert Inet was the first, that made vie of the skins by burning of the Feathers: to they became a great dish of meate, and as for the garbidge, it was not

After we were cleere of these Ilands, which lie out with two points, one to the South-east. After we were cure or one.

After we were no way through, we con- 10 and the other to the North, making a Bay to the fight as if there were no way through, we con- 10 tinued our course East South-east, and South and by East, to raise the Defelations, from thence to finance our course for Ireland. Thus we continued divers dayes: but the wind comming against vs. made vs to alter our courfe, and by the meanes of Robert I not who perfwaded the company, that they should find great reliefe in Namfound Land, if our Country-men were there, and if they were gone before we came, yet should we find great store of bread and fish lest ashoare by them; but how true, I gine God thankes, we did not trie. Yet we flood to the South-weft, and to the West, almost to fiftie seuen degrees: when (by the will of God) the winde came up at Southwest. Then the Master asked me, if he should take the benefit of this wind, and shape his course for Ireland. I faid it was best to goe, where we knew Corne grew, and not to feeke it, where it was caft away, and not to be found. Towards Ireland now wee flood, with profeerous winds for 20 many dayes together: then was all our Meale (pent, and our Fowle reftie and dry: but (being no remedie) we were content with the Salt broth for Dinner, and the halfe Fowle for Supper. Now went our Candles to wracke, and Bennet our Cooke made a melle of meate of the bones of the Fowle, frying them with Candle-greafe, till they were crifpe, and with Vineger put to them, made a good dish of meate. Our Vineger was shared, and to euery man a pound of Candles deliuered for a weeke, as a great daintie. Now Robert Inet (by his reckoning) faith, wee were within fixtie or feuentie leagues of Ireland, when wee had two hundred thither. And fire our course was so much the longer, through our euill steeredge: for, our men became so weake, that they could not fland at the Helme, but were faine to fit. Then Robert Ivet dyed, for meere want, and all our men were in despaire, and said wee were 30

Robert I uets

paft Ireland, and our last Fowle were in the steep-tub. So, our men cared not which end went forward infomuch as our Mafter was driven to looke to their labour, as well as his owne: for fome of them would fit and fee the fore-fayle, or mayne-fayle flie vp to the tops, the sheetes being either flowne or broken, and would not helpe it themselves, nor call to others for helpe, which much griened the Mafter. Now in this extremitie it pleased God to give vs fight of Land, not farre from the place, our Mafter faid he would fall withal, which was the Bay of Gallows, and we fell to the West of the Derses, and so stood along by the coast, to the South-west. In the end, there was a joyful cry, a layle, a layle, towards which they flood, then they law more, but to the neerest A fayle of Fowy we stood, and called to him : his Barke was of Fowy, and was at anchor a Fishing : he came to vs. Bere Hauen in and brought vs into Bere Hauen. Here we stayed a few dayes, and delt with the Irish, to supply 40 our wanes, but found no reliefe: for in this place there was neither Bread, Drinke, nor mony to be had among ft them. Wherfore they adulfed vs to deale with our Country-men, who were there a fishing, which we did; but found them so cold in kindnesse, that they would doe nothing without present money, whereof we had none in the Ship. In the end, we procured one lobn Waymoust, Master of the Barke that brought vs into this Harbour, to furnish vs with money, which hee did, and received our best Cable and Anchor in pawne for the fame. With this money, our Master with the helpe of lohn Waymouth, bought Bread, Beere, and Beefe.

Now, as wee were beholding to Waymouth for his money, so were wee to one Captaine Taylor, for making of our contracts with Waymouth, by whose meanes hee tooke a Bill for our Cable and Anchor, and for the mens Wages, who would not goe with vs, vnlefle Waymouth wold paffe 50 his word for the same : for they made shew, that they were not willing to goe with vs for any wages. Whereupon Captaine Taylor swore hee would preffe them, and then, if they would not goe, hee would hang them.

In conclusion, wee agreed for three pound ten shillings a man, to bring our Ship to Phimosale, or Dartmouth, and to give the Pilot five pound : but if the winde did not ferue, but that they were driven to put into Briffor, they were to have foure pound ten shillings a man, and the Pi-They arrine at lot fixe pound. Omitting therefore further circumstances, from Bere Hauen wee came to Phmonth, and so to an anchor, before the Castle: and from Plimonth, with faire winde and weather without stop or stay, wee came to the Downes, from thence to Gramsfend, where most of our men went a hoare, and from thence came on this fide Erith, and there stopped : where our Master 60 Robert Billet came aboord, and so had mee up to London with him, and so wee came to Sir The-

> For a smuch as this report of Pricket may bappely bee suspected by some, as not so friendly to Hudson, who returned with that Companie which had so cruelly exposed Hudson and his, and therefore may sceme

CHAP. 18. Widhouses Letter and notes, Articles agains Inet, erc.

to lay beauter imputation, and rip up occasions further then they will believe ; I have also added the report of Thomas Widhouse, one of the exposed Companie, who aferibeth those occasions of discord to Iver. I take not on mee to sentence, no not to examine; I have presented the Enidence init as I had it : let the Bench censure, hearing with both eares that which with both eyes they may see in those, and these notes ; to which, I baue first prefixed his Letter to Master Samuel Macham.

After Macham, I heartily commend mee unto you, &c. I can write unto you no newes, though Malter Macham, I hearthy common mes only jum, Get a cast write only you no newes, though I have seen much, but such as every English Fisherman haunting these Coasts can report better Io then my felfe.

Weekent our Whit funday in the North-east end of Island; and I thinke I never fared better in Eng. land then wee feasted there. They of the Countrey are very poore, and line miserably : yet we found there- Ilanders in store of fresh Fish and daintie Fowle. I my felfe in an after-noone killed so much Fowle, as feasted all poore. our Compunie, being three and tmentie perfous at one time, onely with Partridges; besides Curlue, Plauer, Mallard, Teale, and Goofe. I have frene two hot Batbes in Illand, and have beene in one of them. Wee are resolved to trie the uttermost, and lye onely expecting a faire winde, and to refresh our selves to anord the Ice, which now is come off the West Coufts, of which wee have seene whole Ilands, but God bee The couse of thanked, have not beene in danger of any. Thus I defire all your prayers for us. From Itland this thir. their flay as tierb of May, 1610.

A note found in the Deske of Thomas Wydowfe, Student in the Mathematickes, hee being one of them who was put into the Shallop.

He temb day of September, 1610. after dinner, our Master called all the Companie together, to heare and beare witnesse of the abuse of some of the Companie (it having beene the request of Robert luet ) that the Mafter (bould redreffe fom: abufes and flanders, as bee called them, against this I-30 uet : which thing after the Mafter had examined and heard with equitie what hee could fay for hims selfe, there were prooued so many and great abuses, and mutinous matters against the Master, and action by luct, that there was danger to have suffred them longer : and it was fit time to punish and cut off farther occasions of the like mutimies.

It was prooned to bis face, first with Bennet Mathew our Trampet upon our first fight of Island, and bee confest, that bee supposed that in the action would bee man-flanghter, and prous bloodse to some. Secondly, at our comming from Illand, in bearing of the companie, bee did threaten to turne the head of the Ship bome from the attion, which at that time was by our Mafter wifely pacified, hoping of a-

Thirdly, it was deposed by Philip Staffe our Carpenter, and Ladlie Atnold, to bis face upon the boly 40 Bible, that hee per waded them to keepe Muskets charged, and Swords readie in their Cabbins, for they Should bee charged with shot erethe Voyage were over.

Fourtbly, wee being peffered in the Ice, bee had v fed words tending to mutinie, discouragement, and flander of the action, which eafily tooke effect in these that were timorous; and had not the Master in time presented, it must easily base overstrowne the Voyage: and now lately becing imbayed in a deepe Bay, which the Master had desire to see, for some reasons to himselfe knowne, his word tended altogether to put the Companie into a fray of extremitie, by wintering in cold : lefting at our Mafters hope to fee Bantam by Candlemasse.

For these and diners other base standars against the Master, bee was deposed; and Robert Bylot, who had hered him felfe honeftly respecting the good of the action, was placed in his stead the Masters Mate. Alfo Francis Clement the Bossion, as this time was put from his Office, and William Wilfon, a man thought more fit, preferred to his place. This man had bajety carryed himselfs to our Muster and

Also Adrian Mooter was appointed Boatsons mate: and a promise by the Master, that from this

dar luats mages should remaine to Bylot, and the Beat sous overplus of mages should bee equally divided betweene Willon and one lohn King, to the owners good liking, one of the Omnag Masters, who had very well carryed themselnes to the surbarance of the businesse.

Alfo the Master promised, if the Offenders yet behaved themselves benceforth honestly, bee would bee ameanes for their good, and that bee would forget immries, with other admonition?

These things thus premised touching Hudfons exposing, and Gods inst judgements on the Ex-6c polers, as Pricket hath related (whom they referred as is thought, in hope by Sir Dudley Digger his Master to procure their pardon at their returne) I thought good to adde that which I have further received from good Intelligence, that the Ship comming aground at Digges Iland, in 52. degrees 44. minutes, a great flood came from the West and set them on floate : an argument of an open pallage from the South Sea to that, and confequently to these Seas. The Weapons and

### CHAP. XVIII.

The Discouries of M. M. NICOLO, and ANTONIO ZENI, gathered out of their Letters, by FRANCISCO MARCOLINO: whereto is added Q VIRINO bis Ship-wracke.

They are related by Mafter Haplait in his 3.vel pag 131.

Frieflands



N the yeere 1380. Mafter Nicola Zono being wealthy, and of a haughtie spirit, defiring to see the fashions of the world, built and firmished this wife fashions of the world, built and firmished this wife fashions of the world, built and firmished this wife fashions of the world, built and firmished this wife fashions of the world, built and firmished this wife fashions of the world, built and firmished this world the world defiring to fee the fashions of the world, built and furnished a Ship at his owne charges, and passing the Straits of Gibralter, held on his course Northwards, with intent to fee England and Flanders. But a violent tempeft affailing him at Sea, hee was carried live knew not whither, till at laft his Ship was carried away vpon the He of Frisland; where the men and most part of the goods were faued,

In vaine seemes that deliuerie, that deliuers up presently to another Executioner. The Handers like Neptanes, hungry groomes, or his base and blacke Guard, set vpon the men whom the Seas 20 had spared : but heere also they found a second escape, by meanes of a Prince named Zuchmit. Prince of that and many Ilands thereabouts : who being neere hand with his Armie, came at the out-crie, and chafing away the people, tooke them into protection.

This Zichmui had the yeere before given the overthrow to the King of Norman, and was a great adventurer in feates of Armes. He spake to them in Latine, and placed them in his Mauie. wherewith hee wonne divers Ilands. Nicolo behaved himselfe so well, both in saving the Fleee by his Sea-skill, and in conquest of the Hands by his valour, that Zichmun made him Knight and

Sain: Themes

After divers notable exploits, Nicolo armed three Barkes, with which hee arrived in Engrone-Land: where hee found a Monafterie of Friers of the Preachers Order, and a Church dedicated to 30 Saint Thomas, hard by a Hill, that cafteth out fire like Vefamus and Etna. There is a Fountaine of hot water, with which they heate the Church of the Monaftene, and the Friers chambers. It andthe frange commeth also into the Kitchin so boyling hote, that they vie no other fire to dreffe their meate; effects thereof. and putting their Bread into braffe Pots without any water, it doth bake as it were in an hot Ouen. They have also small Gardens, which are covered over in the Winter time, and being watered with this water, are defended from the violence of the Frost and cold, and bring forth Flowers in their due seasons. The common people aftonished with these strange effects, conceiue highly of those Friers, and bring them presen: s of Flesh and other things. They with this Water, in the extremitie of the cold, heate their Chambers, which alto (as the other buildings of the Monafterie) are framed of those burning stones, which the mouth of the Hill casts foorth. They cast water on some of them, whereby they are dissoluted, and become excellent white Lime, and so tough, that being contriued in building, it latteth for euer. The rest, after the fire is out, serue in stead of stones to make walls and vaults, and will not dissolve or breake, except with some

Their Winter lasteth nine moneths : and yet there is a faire Hauen, where this water falleth into the Sea, not frozen : by meanes whereof there is great refort of wild Fowle and Fish, which they take in infinite multitudes. The Fishers Boates are made like to a Weauers shuttle, of the akinnes of Fishes, fashioned with the bones of the same Fishes, and being sowed together with many doubles, they are so strong, that in soule weather they will shut themiclus within the fame, not fearing the force either of Sea or winde. Neither can the hard-hearted Rockes breake these yeelding Veffels. They have also as it were a Sleeve in the bottome thereof, by which with 50 a subtill device, they convey the water foorth, that soaketh into them. The most of these Friers fpake the Latine tongue.

A little after this, Nicolo returned and dyed in Friesland, whither his brother Antonio had before reforted to him, and now fucceeded both in his goods and honour; whom Ziebmin employed in the Expedition of Effortland: which happened upon this occasion. Sixe and twente yeeres before, foure Fisher-Boates were apprehended at Sea by a mightie and tedious storme; wherewith after mathy dayes, they were brought to Effortland, aboue a thousand miles Well from Friefland: vpon which, one of the Boates was caft away, and fixe men that were in it, were taken and brought to a populous Citie; where, one that spake Latine, and had been cast by chance wpon that Iland, in the name of the King asked them what Country-men they were; and under- 60 flanding their case, hee acquainted the King therewith. They dwelt there five yeeres, and found it obee an Iland very rich, being little leffe then Ifeland, but farre more fruitfull. One of them faid nee faw Latine bookes in the Kings Librarie, which they at this prefent doe not under-

CHAP. 18. Canibals of Drogio. Icaria. Zichmuis Citie. Quirino.

fland. They have a peculiar Language, and Letters or Characters to themselves. They have mines of Gold and other Mettals, and have Trade with Engroneland. They low Corne, and make Beere and Ale. They build Barkes (but know not the vie of the Compaffe) and have mamy Cities and Castles. The King sent these Fisher-men with twelve Barkes Southwards, to a Country which they call Drogio .: in which Voyage ekaping dreadfull tempelts at Sea, they prois, encountred with Caribals at Land, which decoured many of them. Thele Fifters thewing them the manner of taking Fish with Nets, escaped , and for the presents which they made of their Fish to the chiefe men of the Country, were beloned and honoured. One of these (more expert it feemeth then thereft) was holden in fuch account, that a great Lord made warre with their Lord 10 to obtaine him: and so premyded, that he and his companie were fent vnto him. And in this order was her fent to fine and towentie Lords, which had warred one with another to get him, in thier cene yeeres space : whereby hee came to know almost all those pares; which, he said, was a great Countrey, and (as it were) a new World. The people are all rude, and voide of goodneffe :

they goe naked, neither have they wit co cover their bodies with the Beails skinnes which they take in Hunting, from the vehement cold. They are fierce, and eace their enemies, having divers Lawes and Gouemours. Their laing is by hunting." Further to the South-weft, they are more quall, and have a more temperare ayre : They have

20 Cities and Temples dedicated to Idols, where they facrifice Men, and after rate them; and have also some vie of Gold and Silner.

Hee fledde awey fecretly, and conveying himfelfe from one Lord to another, came at length to Drogio, where hee dwelt three yeeres. After this time finding there certaine Boates of Ellotiland, hee went thither with them : and growing there very rich, furnished a Barke of his owne, and returned into Friesland where hee made report whto his Lord of that wealthy Countrey. Zichmei prepared to fend thither : but three dayes before they fet foorth, this Fisherman dved. Yet taking some of the Marriners which came with him in his flead, they prosecuted the Voyage and encountred after many dayes an Hand; where ten men of divers Languages, were brought vnto them, of which they could vinderstand none, but one of I falend. Hee told them, that the Hand was called loaris, and the Knighes thereof called loars, defectided of the ancient pedigree of Dedalus, King of Scots, who conquering that Iland, lefe his Sonne there for King, 30 and left them those Lawes, which to that present they retayned. And, that they might keepe their Lawes inuiclate, they would receive no Stranger. Onely they were contented to receive one of our men, in regard of the Language, as they had done those ten Interpreters.

Ziehmai fayling hence, in foure dayes descried Land, where they found abundance of Fowle. and Birds egges, for their refreshing. The Hauen they called Cap Trin, There was a Hill, which burning, catt out moake : where was a Spring, from which iffued a certayne water like Pitch. which ranne into the Sea. The people of small stature, wilde, and fearefull, hid themselves in Caues. Ziehmei built there a Citie, and determining to inhabite, sent Antonio backe againe, with the most of his people to Friesland.

This Historie I have thus inserted at large, which perhaps, not without cause in some things, Airah.Ortel. 40 may feeme fabulous; not in the Zem, which thus writ, but in the relations which they received Charto. from others. How focuer, the best Geographers are beholden to these Brethren, for that little Hak wolds. knowledge they have of these parts; of which none before had written: nor since have there Baters.

Maginus. beene any great in-land Discoueries.

Hending, &c.

#### The Ship-wracke of Master PIERO QVIRINO, described by CHRI-STOFORO FIORAVANTI, and NICOLO DI MI-CHIEL\*, who were present there : beere contracted.

T semeth to bee a convenient dutie to make a memoriall, and not suffer to bee buryed in obli- in Remuse, 1 uion, that most lamentable, and cruell Voyage full of innumerable and extreame miseries, Tem 2. Out of which befell a Venetian Ship, wherein wee carryed about feuen hundred Buttes of Wine, Spices, heere added Cottons, and other Merchandiles of great value, furnished in Candia with threescore and eight diversannotamen, to goe towards the \* West. The Master whereof was Master Piero Qunmi, a Venetian tion Gentleman, in the yeare 1431. Who after many troubles ", misfortunes, and wants befalne "The Italians him, after his departure from Candia towards the West, on the fixth of November, in the fore- call the fayling faid yeere of the Lord, by chance came into the mouth of the Channels of Flanders, and went into the Medi-60 farre beyond them, by a florme from the South, towards the North-west, about one hundred and Leuintoe fortie miles, running still upon the Iland of Vseni, where, by agreement, wee Christo. East; and ? foro Fioramanti, and Nicolo Michiel, fay, that at noone wee founded the bottome of the thence int cean, and these parts the Ponent or West. \* These are particularly related by Quirino the Patron or Owner. They lost their Rudder on a Rocke, not farre from Cales in Spaine, and were faine to make thither to repaire it and other diaft. is followed.

\* There is also the relation hereof by Dui rino hamicife. extant tooe. ther with this

Sea with the Lead, and found our felues in fine and fiftie fathome of water, and afterward toward the Euening wee founded, and found our felues in ninetic fathomes and more, but the fforme and turie of the windes was fo great, that it brake fine of the hinges off our rudder.

On the twelith, in the morning, the florme not ceasing, but increasing every houre more and more, beat vpon our weake rudder with fo great violence and furie, that it broke away all that held it, in such fort, that it hung on the one side, where, for the last remedie, wee fastened a great Cable vnto it, with the which, for three dayes wee drew it after vs, not being able to doe it otherwife, in which time in our judgement, wee thought wee had runne two hundred miles and

Afterward we tooke away the two Rudders, and with many pieces of Timber we made an other, which might rather be called a shadow then a true Rudder, and wee put it in his place to guide and direct the ship. But it could not endure longer, then tell the six and twentieth of Nonumber, when the violence of the Sea carried it all away : fothat then wee remayined deprined of all hope of government and direction. On the fourth of December, the furie of the winde grew to outragious againe, that it carried away all this third fayle, and to being spoyled and bereft of Sayle and Rudder, we went at adventure vntill the eight day, alwayes wandering, not knowing by any meanes how to prouide for our lafetie. Afterward the winde alwayes increasing from the East, and with so great violence and furie, that the Sea beganne to fwell so high, that the waues seemed Mountaynes, and farre greater then we had cuer seeme before, with the carknesse of the extreame long night, so that we seemed to goe in the bottomlesse 20 depth of Hell: whereby you may imagine how great the auguilhand trembling of our hearts was, because although we were living, yet at that inflant wee seemed to bee dead, expecting death euery houre, which we saw present : In this darknesse the Heaven was sometimes seene to open with the lightnings and fudden flashes of fire so bright, that they tooke away the fight of our eyes, And sometimes we seemed to touch the starres, the ship mounted so alore, and then againe we faw our felues buried in Hell, infomuch as being all afformshed, we had loft our firength and force. And being in this miferable cale we did nothing elfe, but with pittie behold one anothers& running with fo great violence for many houres, in the end a furge of the Sea came ouer the thip under the wind with such furie, that the water entred into it, filled it almost halfe full, whereby being now much weakened, it was readic to finke, and turned up the Keele, And fure 30 ly that was the last houre, and our end, and truly we had beene swallowed up of the Sea, if our Lord Islus Christ had not beene, who forfaketh not them that religiously call upon him, who put such power and strength into our afflicted minds, that seeing the ship in so dangerous a case, full of water, as it could not be cast out by any humaneforce, we determined to cut downe the mayne Mast, and cast it together with the mayne Yard and Tackling into the Sea, and so wee did, whereby the ship being disburdened, pauled awhile, and we then taking courage, beganne and whether the major state of the state of they agreed to make readie the Boat and the Sciuffe, with that lettle prouision of victuall which was remayning, equally parted. And the Patron laid, With your confent I command you Ni- 42 colo di Michiel the Notary, that you fet downe in a note the names of those that are willing to enter into the Schiffe and Boat : so prefently he gave him fortie five persons in a note, who were willing to enter into the Schiffe, which was capeable but of one and twentie men only, and therefore it was necessary to cast Lots who should goe therein ; and so it was done, and they prepared it, and fet it in order, and did the like to the Boate, into the which the Master They leave the with fortie feuen men entred. The one and twentie perions to whom the lot fell , entred the Schiffe, and a rate was given them according to the proportion of the victual which was remayning of Bisket, and also of Frifoppi, three hundred pound weight, of Cheefe of Candia eightie pounds, of dried Bacon eight pounds, of Tallow to trim their Schiffe fortie pounds, of Oyle about two pound waight and no more : but belides wee bestowed there 50 feuen Corrattells of Tyrian Wine, which is a kind of Matuafic, for the Pinnasse or Schiffe would hold no more. In like manner fortie seuen men, reckoning the Master, entred into the Boate or Pinnaffe, vnto whom rateably fell their proporcion of victuals, adding thereto a little Greene Ginger in Sirrope, and Sirrope of Limons, with some small quantitie of Spices, which wee had taken. We were (in our judgement) distant from the neerest lland or Land about fine hundred miles or more, from the point of Land to Lee-ward of the North part, and we fayled with these Conserves in a quiet and calme Sea, that little time of the day together with our one and twentiecompanions, comforting our felues in that which we had feene the beginning of fo faire

a fortune. But when the night came, a darke mitt rofe, which was a token of the euill successe and end, which our companions of the Schiffe were to have, of whom we had now loft the fight, so that we never faw them any more. The ninteenth day, the morning appearing, and not feeing any token of the Schiffe, it made vs suspitious of their death, whereupon our mindes were much troubled, doubting what might befall them, because the windes raged in such manner, that a wave of the Sea mounted with the

great violence into the Pinnafle, behinde the Poope, where wee Christopher and Nacholm were let downe, that through the force of the furie thereof, two flayes were battered and bent, which left a token of vnlupportable trouble and griefe, by meanes that the Pinnasse was more charged with the weight of the water, then with her owne burthen. Wherefore to remedie it, wee ranne all to lade it out with our hands, and being confirmined through feare and necessitie, for the freeing of her, wee were faine to cast out all that, whether with water or without, which came most fie and ready to our hands. The Pinnaffe becomming drie againe, prefencly in this storme, wee agreed to cast ouer-boord the greatest part of the Wine, and wee found our selves in fo great extremitie, that if wee would tafte thereof to comfort our troubled lenfes, no more then one gob-To let of Wine apeece fell to every mans share for the whole day; and who so would drinke more;

was confray ned to take the Sea-water : and this measure and quantitie of Wine held out eight dayes, and no more. And after ward being dricento greater necessitie, wee brought our selves to a greater extremistie, by reftraguing our proportion to halfe a goblet a day, and hone of ve could iccurrely fleepe,

for the divers doubts and dangers, wherein wee alwayes prefently flood. Wee continued energy day and night, foure or fixe of vsacthe Helme; and those that were at the Pumpe; flood alwayes from and voright changing their couries, where wee endured cold beyond comparison faste Great Frollies. greater then that, which not many yeeres ance was in Finder, when all the Channels were fro- Venice zen, fo that from Margara to Venice, not onely Men and Women, but Oxen, Horfes, Carts,

20 and Waggons, went ouer voon the Ice in great multitudes, to the admiration of all the people, because that Region is (without comparison) much colder then the Countrey of Italy. Now consider what our case was, being without Clothes to court valand not having any thing to eate, or drinke, or other necessary ching for the maintenance of mans life, except a few Frifoppi which were left, and the nights one and twentie hours long, and Hodarke. Through the which cold, Exgrams cold wee began to lofe the feeling of our feete, and by livele and little, elecold becomming more vehement, possessed the whole body, procuring a dogged and waking appetite and hunger, so that every one long to redecours that which was his to a context, and what lieses the had next at hand, wherefoener hee could finde it, as well as hee mighe, with that weake and little ffrength which hee had remay ning. Afterward, death feating vpon them, you might fee them fhake the 30 head, and fall downe preferrely dead.

In the which Difeafes, of feuen and fortie men (which wee found in that eafe) fixe and ewen. The death of tie yeelded up the ghoft, and it was not any wonder, confidering wee could not have any fulc- fix and twee cour, may, it is a distince miracle that any one remayind alies. And thole few of we that are re-tie, mayning, live onely to commend to memorie, and highly to exalt the great power of God. Those fixe and twentie dyed, from the three and twentieth of Becamber with the fifth of fanuity, now one, now two, and fometimes more, in one day, whom we buryed in the Sea.

Theone and thirtieth of December, our Wine being wholly spent, and having seene the cruell and lamentable experience of our fixe and twencie Cohipanions, who died with drinking of the Sea-water, necessities gaue vs a good stomacke, that is to say, to take our owne water to 40 quench our thinft. Now, there were some of the companier seedingly troubled with giddinesse: Great thirst. for, wanting the abundant plentie of Wine, they were not the to indure thirlt, nor to expell it, but they accounted it a great fauour to bee able to obtayen of their companions, whereof there were some who denyed it to their denost friend; tolkere te to etientiglues. It is true, elus some of vs warily mortified it, by mingling a little simbe of greent Ginger; or Limone therewith, which by chance we had remayning During this time, whill the fifth of Ianuary, we were

every house more accustomed to greater extremities. 11: 21 The third of January, 1421, wee had fight of the first Land, which game we great hope, al- Sight of Land; though it so fell out, that it was very farredistant, whose wee law certayne Rockes towerherward conered to the top with infinite heaper of Snow, so the which the winder being ton so trary, we were not able to approach with the faylor, and munit lefter with Dares, because

our armes were exceedingly weakened a wherefore wer think to come heere them with the winde, but passing beyond them through the ourrent of the weter, wee lost fight of them altogether. And after difficult escape from the Rockes, fayling forward towards a very high Rocke, wee

had fight of a Valley icitrated betweene the two next Mountaynes, into the which defiring to enter about the fourth hours of the night; the cruell and outing out windes would not fuffer vs. Notwithstanding, inflamed through an exceeding great defire to got on Land, wee tooks cons rage and firength, and (through force of the Qures, and the kelpe of God) entred into the layd Valley, at a point of Land in the leaft doubtfull and dangerous place, as it were at the vary bea 60 ginning and entrie thereof, in the which as frome as they perceined the Pinnaffe to touch wpon Hor from for

the fand, fine of our companie being more defirous of drinke, then of any other refreshing and recreation, leaped into the water without any regard, althought it were very deepe, and went qualidanker their way toward the Snow, and to glurred themselves therewith, that it was an incredible

thing. And afterward, they brought a great quantitie thereof vato vs, who remayned in the Pinnsife, to defend it from the beating of the Sea, of the which wee also with great greedinesse. received without meafure.

And sunning according to our judgement, as wee had runne in this Pinnaffe for eighteene dayes, from the day that weedeparted from the ship, votill this fixth of Ianuarie, sayling alwayes betweene the North-east and the East, and not with leffe winde then after fixe miles an houre, wee had runne about two thousand fine hundred miles and more, without ener feeing any Land.

On the fixth of Ianuary, at the time of the folemne day of the Epiphane, nineteene of vs went on land in this desolate and drie place, called the Hand of the Sames, in the Coaft of Names, 10 fubicet to the Crowne of Democres, leaving two other to looke to the weake Pinnafe, that it might not bee broken with the beating of the Sea. And being landed there by meanes of an Oare, we endeauoured to kindle fire, and with a tynder boxe and fleele to firike fire, wee retired is his Map of our felues into the closest place from the winde, and at the fight of the fire, nature thereby receiued a little ffrength.

Finding this Hand not inhabited, and feeking to goe in the Pinnaffe to another Hand five miles and Ruftere in off, shee so leaked, that part of vs landing, as it were all in the water, and some of vs vp to the 74.degrees, but middle in shallower water, wee strong to draw her on land, and despairing to bee ener able to goe in her againe, wee determined to fit her in such fort, that shee might ferue our turne to couer vs. after the best manner that wee could. Wee broake her into two parts : and of the greater 20 wee made a shelter, or Cottage for thirteene of vs, and of the lesser a shedde, capable of size men, under the which wee entred couring them with part of our fayles, and with the reft, and the cordage of the tayd Pinnaffe, wee made continual fire to preferue our lines.

Now being veterly destitute of all sustenance of meate and drinke, wee went wandring vpon the Sez shoare, where Nature gaue vs food to maintayne life, with certrine Perewinckles or Shel-fifth and Barnacles. And of thefe, not as many nor when wee would, but in very fmall quantitie. And remotting the Snow in some places, wee found a certayne Herbe, which together with the Snow wee cast into the Caldron, and when wee thought it was boyled, wee cate not. This is off it. Nor could wee fatisfie our felues therewish, and thus wee lined for thirteene dayes together, with small charitie amongst vs, by reason of the great scarcitie of all thinges and extreame famine, leading rather a brutish life, then the life of men.

Continuing in this rude and homely kinde of life, it happened, that through the intollerable wants foure of our companions of the greater retiring place, failed even where the affiicted Mafter was, with those remedies and flender comforts for their foules and bodies : fo that you may thinke their bodies remayning opere vato ve, who being very weake had loft all our firength, wee were not able to remous them two yardes out of fight : and yet I will fav Foure dyc and more, that wee had no fooner taken the frozen or wasse water in our mouthes, but prefently Nature of it felfe cast it wp againe, wee not beeing able to abstaine from it, nor almost to stand

The cold fession of the yeers had brought we to such necessitie, that ( to warme vs) wee food 40 close thronged, in such fore, that wer feemed (as it were ) to bee fewed together. Wherefore I entred under the fayles, which coursed both our Cottages round about downe to the ground, the franke not being able to iffue foorth, which proceeded (as I thinke) from the Pitch which was within certaine peeces of the Pinnesse, which we burned, so that our eyes were swolne that Milerable cold wee could not fee : neuerthelesse wee indured all, that wee might bee warme. And our garments which wee neuer put off, were full of vermine, and the Lice fwarmed in fuch number. that taking them from our backen, wee cast them by whole handfuls into the fire, and they had entred into the field in such manner through the skinne, even to the bones, that finally they Abundance of brought a young man of our company (that was a Notarie) even write death, so that hee was Lice.

A thing of most manifest example, to abase and abate our pride, and hought inesse of minde.

Now concord fayling smong vs, cuery one vied his owne proper adule, whereupon part of our companie wandring through the Sourge and va-inhabited place, came to the knowledge of a folitarie and ancient settring place made by the Shepherds beretofore, for the time of their abode, and it was feated on the highest part of the Coast of the fayd Hand towards the West, distant from ours about a mile and a halfe. Vnto the which, fixe of the companie of the number of those eight, which were found in that first and greater retiring place, determined to remouse themselves to that new-found solutarie habitation, for their less inconvenience leaning the other two, their other companions alone, in an abandoned and forfaken place, as well because they were not able to smuell, as also for that wee were altogether viable to conduct them.

It came to passe, that those sime through the gracious goodnesse and gift of God, found an exceeding great Fift, to the which I know not what name to give, whether Whale, or Por

They goe on Iland of Saints or Santi, beacoast of Nerway. See Orte Scandia : hee

placeth Santi

614

are from the North Cape, from which this Rocke ((airb Dniring) ftant, fome inpaffe, and callod in their Languagefor the extreame remoteneffe. The arfe of the

Great weake-

CHAP. 18. Hunger good fance. Ilands of Saints and Rustene.

piffe of the Sea, which were are to thinke was fent from the Diuine and excellent bountie to feed vs. And confidering that wee faw it call up by the Sea upon the shoare, shead, fresh, good and great, and at the time of our io great necessitie, wee rendred thankes vnto our most gracious Lord God, who at that time would fuffayne our fo weake and dileafed bodiesa with that foode, appealed peraduenture through the prayers of some vigilant and denone foule.

With this Fifh, wee fedde our felues for nine dayes fufficiently. And as it happened those very nine dayes were foremp: fluous with windes, rayne and fnow, that by no meanes the cruell

forme would have fuffered vs to goe one pace out of our Cottage.

The miraculous Fith being ipent, the furious tempelt was fomewhat affwaged, wherefore not having wherewith to maintayne life, like Wolves that oppressed with famine, goe to feeke out other places of abode, wee arose out of the Cottage, and went wandring through the delete Rockes to finde any succour to sustayne our life with Perewinckles of the Sea and Barnacles; with the which were were of necessitie to bee contented, although they were very little thinges, and so wee maintayned our selues vntill the last of lanuary, 1431. 1432 in Fe. and therefore were were leane, pale, afflicted, and but halfe aline. In which time raine accounts finding certayne dung of Oxen foorched and dryed with the cold and winde, (whereof wee gathered every day to make a fire) wee certainely knew that place to bee frequented by Oxa en : which thing gaue vsallured hope of some good end, and through this perswation wee indu-

20 red part of our grieuous cares and forrowes. In the end the houre came, wherein our benigne Creator and most gracious Lord, purposed to conduct his little flocke fo much afflicted, into the Hauen of their fafetie : and it was in this manner. Two young Heifers of a Fisher-man neere vnto this Iland within fine miles, beeing IleofRakmi firayed the former yeere from the place where hee vied to dwell, and neuer understanding any newes of them within the yeere, nor having any hope to finde them againe, on the very first day of February, 1421, at night, one of the Sonnes of the Said Fisher-man of Rustene ( for to the faid Hand was called) being of the age of fixteene yeeres, dreamed that certainly the two Heifers were escaped, and gone up to the lland of Saines distant from them, where wee were lodged, at the point of the Well part, vpon the which no man durft ever goe at the low 30 water. Whereupon the Sonne who had fuch a vision or dreame, prayed the Father, and an

elder Brother of his, that they would accompany him to goe to feeke them. And fo, all three in a Fisher-boate tooke their way towards the fayd lland, and came to the point where wee were, and the find young men landing there, left their Father to looke to the Boate, and having ascended a little voon the Cliffe, they saw a smoake arise in the ayre, from their retiring place which they had formerly vied. Whereupon through feare and aftonishment they maruelled, and that not a little, how, whence, and by what meanes it might come to passe. Wherefore, they stood a long time much amazed. And desiring to know the cause, they began to talke one with another. And although wee perceived the novie, and heard the voyce; yet wee could not conceine whence it should bee, but rather indged it to 40 bee the crying of Crowes, then the voyce of men. And wee were the rather induced there-

unto, because some few dayes before, wee had seene (vpon the miserable Carkasses of our eight companions cast to the winde) multitudes of Crowes, that rene the ayre with their crokings feeding themselves voon them : whereupon wee thought it could bee no other.

But continuing from good to better, the voyces of the children of God fent to faue vs. wee cleerely perceined that they were the voyces of Men, and not the crying of Fowles. And at that instant Christophore Fioramanti arose out of the Cottage, and seeing the two young striplings, crying with a loude voyce came towards vs, saying, Reioyce, behold two come to feeke vs. Whereupon, inflamed with an earnest desire, wee rayled our selues on our feete, going rather with the heart then with the feete, and drawing neers vnto them, wee perceived that through the fudden and extreame strangenesses of the matter, they were afraid, and their countenances began to waxe pale. But contrarily wee cheered our felues, and being comforted with an affired hope, thewed with actions and gettures of humilitie, that wee came not to offend them in any wife. Divers thoughts came in our mindes, whether wee should detaine one of them or both, or whether one or two of vs should goe with them. The first decomination was against vs, because weeknew not with whom, nor with how many wee had to doe, for that wee understood not them, nor they ws,

But being aduised by the holy Ghost, wee went downe to their Boate, in the best and most amiable manner that wee could, where the Father was, who expedied them : and when he saw vs, hee also remayned aftonished and amazed. In this meane space, wee looked whether there 6c were any thing in their Boate to fuccour our necessities, to maintayne life : but wee found nothing there. So, they moved through pitie, feeing ws affamished, by fignes and actions which wee made vnto them, were contented to carrie with them Ghirardo da Lione, a Sewer, and Cola di Otranto, a Marriner, who had some kritowledge, and were able to speake the French and the high Dutch, leaving vs in great hope of present safetie and helpe.

Thei:

Their Boate comming to Ruftens with our two companions, all the people flocked together, and feeing the countenance and habite of our companions, aftonished at so great and strange a matter, they demanded among them felues, whence, & how such like fellower as these appeared, or from what place they landed : and that they might be the better advertised, they attempted to speake vnto them in divers Languages, but in the end an Almaine Prieft of the Order of the Preachers, spake with one of the said companions in the high Dusce, and by that meanes, they were certified what wee were, from whence, and how wee had arrived there. The which matter the morning following, which was the second day of Februarie dedicated to the glorious Mother of Christ, the faid Priest published to all the people of Rustene, exhorting them, that through our misfortune, they would bee mooued to pitie and to helpe vs, according to to

In this meane space, through the Catholike remembrance of the Almaine Priest, on the third day of February, 1431. at the very instant of the day of Saint Biagio, the curteous and pittiful Inhabitants of Ruffene came vnto vs with great plentie of all fustenance, which they vie for their prouifion, to feed vs and preferne vs, being defirous to conduct vs to their kinde habitations, torefresh our weake bodies. And so wee were guided and received into Rustene vpon the saydday, where wee had great reftoratives, which were rather hurtfull for vs, through the exceeding abundance thereof, because wee could never satisfie our selues with eating, and our weake stomackes not being able to indure it, it made our hearts to grieve, so that wee thought wee

There were remayning in the first and greater of our two retiring places, two of the companie which were impotent and weake, who knew nothing of this our so miraculous succour. Wherefore giving these Catholike Countrey people notice of them, and likewise of the other eight that were dead and unburied, affembling themselues together, they went with the Priest linging Pialmes and Hymnes, as well to burie those eight that were dead, as to conduct to the Hauen of safetie the two that were remayning behinde, and arriving at the Iland of Saints, they performed a worke of mercy to the eight that were dead, to the which number, one of the two remayning was added, whom they found dead. Now imagine, how the other could continue being deprined of companie and all humaine fuftenance, and yet hee was brought to Reftene with some little shew of life, where, at the end of two dayes hee departed this tran- 30

Eleuen of vs being come to Rustew, wee landed and went into the house of our Guide, Hoft, and Lord, as hee and the rest desired, whereinto our most prudent Master, Master Piero Quirini entring, ving his wisedome and discretion, performed an action of exceeding great humilitie, as foone as hee faw the companion of our Conductor and Sergeant Major, declaring by femblance that hee would acknowledge her to bee the Mistresse of the house, hee cast himselfe downeat her feet; but shee refused and listed him vp from the ground, embracing him and bringing him to the fire, and with her owne hand gave him somewhat to eate.

In this Iland there are twelue little Houses, with about one hundred and twentie persons, for Rushese descrit the most part Fishermen, and they are by nature indued with understanding to know how to 40 make Boates, Buckets, Tunnes, Baskets, Nets of all forts, and every other thing necessarie for their vse and trade. And they are very curteous one toward another and serviceable, desirous to please rather for loue, then for hope of any gift or good turne to bee done them againe. Fishes called Stock-fifth, in all their payments and battering, are vied in itead of coyned money, and they are all as it were of one bignesse and measure, of the which every yeere they drie an infinite flead of many number in the winde : and in the time of May fraight themselves with them, carrying them through the Realmes of Denmarke, that is to fay, Sweden, Denmarke, and Norway, being all Subsect to the King of Dacia: where they barter and exchange the faid Fifh, for Leather, Cloathes, Iron, Pulse and other things, whereof they have scarcitie.

Few other things for maintenance of life are found there, except Fifth, yet at certaine times, 50 they have some small quantitie of Beefe, and Milke of Kine, of the which, with Rice, and I know not what other mixture, they make Bread of a naughtie taffe. Their Drinke is fowre Milke, displeasing vnto them, who have not beene accustomed thereunto. They vie also Ale, that is to fay, Wine drawne out of Rie. Wee eate of the Plaice or Halibut fifth, which are exceeding great, so that you would not beleeve it. Wee saw some of them somewhat longer then sixe seete of the common Venetian mealure, about two foote broad vpon the Chine, and more then three quarters of a foote in thicknesse: a wonderfull thing to bee spoken. They cloath the men with redde Hides, and likewise blacke, able to defend them from the water, and they vse cloathes very course, of azure, redde, and ash-colour, brought from Demmarke, of small price and

Their drinke Halibus very

> These Countrey people vie much to frequent the Church, because they are very denout, and yeeld great reuerence to the worship and service of God. Avarice, is as it were altogether extinguished, for, they understand not in any fort, nor know not what thing of anothers may become theirs, but by barter : and therefore they vie not to locke Doore, House, nor Win

dowes, nor any Cheft for feare to bee robbed, but onely by reason of the wilde Beafts.

The Inhabitants of this place both young and old, are of fo great simplicitie of heart, and o. Simplicitie. bedient to the Commandement of God, that they neither understand, know, nor imagine in any Thus the Ital wife, what Fornication, or Adulterie may bee : but vie Marriage according to Gods Commaning regard of dement. And to give you a true proofe hereof I Christophere fay, that we were in the house of their differing our forefaid Hoft, and flept in one and the fame Cottage, " where hee also and his Wite flept, icaloufie, and successfuely in one Bed neere adjoyning, were their Daughters and Sonnes of ripe age toge- which searly ther, neere to the which Beds we also slepe, almost close adjoyning to them : fo that when they Permits the went to fleepe, or when they arole, or when they firipped themlelnes naked, and wee in like or Brother to

to manner, we indifferently faw one another, and yet with that puritie, as it wee had beene little fleepevader children. But I will tell you more, that for two dayes together, out faid Hoft, with his elder the lame roofe Sonnes arole to goe a filling, even at the time of the most delightfull houre of scepe, leaving his with the Mo-Wife and Daughters in the Bed, with that securitie and puritie, as if he had properly left them in Quiria. in the armes and embracements of the Mother, not returning to his home in leffe time then the laith in the fpace of eight houres.

The Inhabitants of this Hand, especially the elder fort, are found so wnited in their wils to be, their hou-

the will of God, that in every casualtie of naturall death, which befalleth Father, Mother, of timber in Husband, Wife, Children, or whatforger other Kinfman, or Friend, when the houre of their round forme paffage vinto another life appeareth, preferrely without any griefe of heart and complaining, they with one light an affemble themselves together vnto the Cathedrall Church, to thanke and prayle the Heavenly in the top, Creator, who hath permitted such an one to line so many yeeres, and at that present, as his crea- which in winture vouchfafed to call him, or her into his gracious fauour, and neere voto him : and at the appointed house they cause them to be washed cleane, to have them pure and neate, as they were portable cold borne. Whereupon rejaycing and contenting themselves with his infallible will and pleasure, is covered they give him prayle and glorie, not shewing any passion either in words or gestures, as if proper- with shinnes of ly they had but flept. Surely we may fay, that from the third of February 1431. vntill the four-which cast a teenth of May 1422, which amounteth to an hundred dayes and one, we were within the circuit of Paradile, to the reproch and shame of the Countries of Italie.

There at the beginning of May we saw great varietie and alteration. First, their women vie dren after 30 to goe voto the Bathes, which are very neare and commodious, as well for puritie, as for the foure dairsold cuitome they obserue, which they hold agreeable vnto Nature : they vie to some forth of their the same for houses starke naked, as they came out of their Mothers wombe, going without any regard to the snow to fall their way, carrying only in their right hand an heape of graffe, in manner of a broome, as they on them, that fay, to rub the tweat from their backe, and the left hand they hold voon their hip, for eading it they may bee as it were for a shadow to couer their hinder parts, that they should not much appeare : where hardned for the cold. having twice seene them, we passed away by them, as easily as their owne people, the Countrey From the fire was fo cold, and the continual feeing of them, that it caused vs to make no account thereof. On of Febr. to the the contrary part, these very women were seene on the Sunday to enter into the Church in long 14-of May, it and comely Garments. And that they might not by any meanes be seene in the face, they we are almost alway. 40 on their head a thing like a compleat Motion with a Gorget, which hath an hole to fee through figurements are at the end, like the hole of a Pipe, through the which they behold within that, no further off of courie half from their eyes then the hole is long, so that they feeme to have it in their mouthes to pipe : and of London, &c. worse then that, they can neither see nor speake, volesse they turne themselves a yard or more, more then of from the hearer. I thought good to note these two extreame varieties, as worthy to bee vn. Eunerall. derstood.

From the twentieth of Nonember, vntill the twentieth of February, the night continueth Long nig and lasteth there about one and twentie houres or more, the Moon neuer wholly hiding her bodie Quaino laith, or her rayes at leaft. And from the twentieth of May vntill the twentieth of August, either the months night whole Sunne is alwayes feene, or elie his beames never faile.

In this Countrey there is infinite plentic of white Birds, in their Language called Mazi, but behe of the we called them Cockes of the Sea, which by nature connerfe, and willingly abide where men Moone: and inhabit, whether they find them in Barkes or on the Land. And they are fo domesticall and three others tame as House-doues are with vs.

In this Iland, and in the Countries of Succia, we saw very white skins of Beares as white light at leaft of as Armelins, much longer then twelue Venerian feete. Wee abode in Ruftene three moneths and the Sunne, eleuen dayes, expecting a fit time to paffe with our Hoft into Sueden , with his viual fraight of Brids, Mari. Stock-fish, which is in the time of May, when these Countrey people depart, carrying with They returned them infinite plentie thereof through the Realmes of the aforefaid King of Dacia.

On the fourteenth day of May 1432. came the houre fo much defired, to turne our faces to-60 wards our amiable and beloued Countrey, as our minde and defire alwayes was, and leave the charitable place of Rustene, which was the last succour and refreshing to our miseries. So wee tooke our leave of our Domesticall friends of the House, and of our Mistresse and Hostesse, to whom in token of our loue we left, not that whereunto we were in dutie bound, but what wee had remayning ; and that was certayne small trifling things of little value in our opinion, as

great laftre.

no fate cnamers, rowing more commenced by the from Railens, wee found certaine Relikes of 10 the plankes and ribs of our Skiffe, whereby we plainly knew, that our companions which were in it, were perished and drowned, the first night that they departed from vs. The nine and twentieth of May 1432, we arrived with the faid Barke at Trondon, vpon the

Tronden. Saint Olans.

Coaft of Normey, the Princely Seate of the King of Denmarke, where the Honourable bodie of glorious Saint Olaus resteth. There wee stayed ten dayes to waite for passage, and a fit time for our Voyage: but not finding it, because we would lose no more time; wee tooke leane of our beloued Hoft, his Sonnes and the reft, to proceed on our journey by Land.

Vollina.

The ninth of June we departed from Trondon, travelling on foot, going towards Vastena, aplace Subject to the King of Demmarke, within the Province of Sweden, where the check-bone and part of the bone of the head of Saint Bridges remayneth. Being there, wee understood by the Pene 20 tians, that the Inhabitants for the reurrence of their glorious King Saint Olam, vinto whom (as they well knew) our Signierie of Venice did great fauour in his going and returning from his Voyage to Hierufalem, were disposed with deeds to provide for vs by their counsell, helpe and money. And firit, they aduised vs not to goe the direct way into Dacia, by reason of the dangers of wilde beafts, which might befall vs, but to addreffe our felues zo goe directly to Stiebins. borgi, to find out a valiant Venetian Knight called M. Gionan Franche, from whom wee should receue fauour and helpe in plentifull manner, for loue of our Countrey, although the way were thirtie dayes iourney, quite contrary to our direct way. On the eighteenth day we came to the Court of the faid Canallier CM. Gionan Francho, an Honourable Baron, and highly efteemed of the Crowne of Dacis, where (with great joy) we found our two straggling companions.

Venetica Knight.

The valorous Knight being now informed of our comming, with a cheereful countenance declared well vnto vs how great the loue of his Countrey was, and especially knowing the calamitie and penurie of vs his Countrey-men, and being eafily able to releeue it. And therefore he could not sufficiently satisfie himselfe in honouring, clothing and feeding vs, but gaue vs money for our necessities, and furnishing vs afterward with good Horfes, in his owne proper person, together with his only Sonne M. Maples, with an hundred and twentie Horles of his owne Seruants he accompanied vs many dayes journeyes through his Territories, trauelling alwayes at his owne charge. Afterward, vpon his limits and bounds wes tooke our leave to depart, thanking him with the most reuerent and kind speeches that possibly we could. Whereupon he being departed, left vs for our Guide, his faid sonne M. Maphee with twentie servants on Horie- 40 backe, who kept vs company vnto Vastena, the place from whence about fortie dayes before we had departed, vnto the which place, for the anoyding of two monethes trauell, wee were faine to returne : fo that on the thirtieth day of July wee entred into Vallera, where wee abode vntill the second of August, being alwayes accompanied, and our charges borne by the said

On the second of August, we tooke our leave of the foresaid M. Maphee, yeelding him such thankes as we could. And being departed from him wee went to Lodefe, where wee arrived the eleventh of the faid moneth; in which place we found two passages, the one for England, and the other for the Low Countries : and there we voluntarily divided our felues into two parts,

Quirine faith when he fee foot on Eng. med to bee Hell and te-Hee came to where a Benehim fixteene

The two and twentiech of August 1432. we Christophere Fiorausme, one of the Councell of 50 the vnfortunate ship, together with Girardo da Lione, the Sewer, and Nicolo di Michiel of Venice the Notarie, now Writer of this present Discourse, departed from the other eight of our companions, they going towards London and we to Venice, by the way of Rostoch', pretending to goe to Rome for a Pardon: and after many troubles and molefations, paffing over Mountaynes, Valleyes, Rivers, sometimes on foot, and sometimes on Horse-backe, through the helpe of the Omnipotent God, we came vnto our so much defired Countrey of Venice, on the twelfth of October, 1432. Safe and found, leaving the faid Grardo da Lion at Vafenech, who from thence went wnto his Countrey : and those that went into " England were these; Master Francesco Quirini, Sonne of Mafter Iacomo a Venetian Gentleman, being Merchant of the vnhappie ship. Matter Piero Gradenico, Sonne of Matter Andrea, of the age of eighteene yeeres, a young Mer- 60 chant, Bernardo da Cagbire, Pilot of the ship, whose Wife being young, aswellebrough the long don, where he delay of time passed, as for that it was many times certainly reported, that the said ship with all them that were therein, were in great dauger, and no token at all appearing to the contrary, moneths, &c. being adulfed more halfily, then you mature confideration, as is the manuer of needle women,

### CHAP. 10 Liars reward. Arthus Conquests. Edgars great Name and Titile. 619

the married her felfe at Zieinife. But hearing of our comming, and the certayne hower of het liuing and true Husband, the prefently feparated the bond of the fecond Marriage, and thusbee felfe up in an honeil Monafterre, atwell to declare the Integritie of her minde, as to expett the returne of her true Husband, who about some three moneths after came to Foner fale and found! and tooke her againe vinto him, &c. storage of the distribution of the man grant of the gift of of the many transmit processing factored ductines remained to to

I the after the second to bus, or any account to beat, not a great recent

To send of connected between the recognition of the control of the

And the state of t cradible to policitic. And s.Lize ( faid Mexanders Mafter, Aniforde) per chische lying, that when he (peakes gruth be cannot be belegied. So hath it fired with

30 that British worthy, King Arthur, whose Great Acisby great Flatterers, seeking to light candles to the Sunne, have made others suppose it to be night, and his worth to be a worke of darkneffe and lyes. Neither doth the later posteritie know how to distinguish the one from the othersand the Witters for and against the trush of the Brand Rose, as laffer of Manmouth and William of Newbridge of old, and others fince, have feemed to me to let the truth ( as in altercation is vivall ) to fall downe betwint them, for others more boderate foirits to take vo. Although

is stall to full downs but with them, for others most stalleness fastes to take van Alshaugh therefore many things related of Archang and Made, and for are not all from that frogether which is placed and for a ready and the stalleness of the stal

Saint Mailles

Logic chair famous francer of Migneleries, is had by Remuleian the Apply from hat he with a minute of the comparison of the Migneleries is had by Migneleries in the Migneleries of the Migneleries in the Migneleries of Migneleries of the Migneleries of Migneleries of the Migneleries of Migne

Arthur was a Britom by the strong hipping and well manifed and mismaiged Manie.

Florenius Winemeins fillersh him. Flore devis anterplanum Repair, Parificus Rev. Selgam, manifus mengada ablis Anglis audam Romalis, Romans, [Far Flore Aller and Macadinha, Arface Parrier, Corolus Magnus Francis; and addeth, as before is recognized to ampediam manifold. Jacon Landra, Corona ringuar ringuar ringuar pagina pagina notang se negjecano munica 3000. Landra pagina p gens ad defensomm contra exteros Regni fai, & sum suorumque ad bellicos visus exercitium. Both associativo Florentinu and Malmerbury and Mat Westminster record; that hee litting at the steine, was cost also. 6c rowed by eight Kings his Tributaries; Kined King of Scots, Macolm of Cumberland, Macon of Man and many Hands, Dufnal of Dometta, Siferth and Howel Kings of Wales, Jacob King of Galwales, and Inkil of Westmar, having the same day there met at his summons, and sworne featige

and affiffance to him by Sea and Land. These rowed him in the River Dee, to the Monastery from

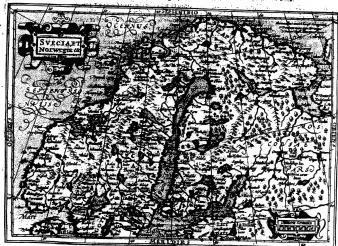
his Palace, and thence after feruice backe againe : So rightly did he inftile himfelfe in his Charter

vo Malmasbury, Ego Adquesas tatinas Albionias Bafilena, per nom Maritimorania fon infulanorum Reguns

Men (acrificed

This Sunne being let, darke and flormy times followed by reason of Darift incursions. These Dates (as. M. Cameter accorders) began to be knowne sertin world, about the years of Chair 570. for their piracies called Wiccing; of them Dudo de S. Quintino hach this testimony, Danie Scar. ad (that is, Secanda) volue camen apune canifre of gladine vagina, discritete mahimeda, 60. The 16 Dance, like a frame of Bees out of their bine, and a fravilone of a sheath, in discrifted Dance, like a fiverme of Besseus of their bins, and a fiverd out of a lheath, in discrift of a mamer and barbarous cultures for least from Scanacia (Scanacia) plies that with petulant infit they bad multiplied their immunerable generations. Their binsig generations. Their binsig generations. Their binsig generations are sufficiently and their immunerable generations. Their binsig generations are sufficiently and their binsig their above the properties of their ancient cutting of the supplies of their properties of the supplies of their formations that when their likes. In the confirmation of the supplies on expedition, they assigned platerifical to Thurs, not with bright, but the bland of amount formation to the tensor of the supplies of th fread of Hankes, to pacific their Gods. Hereby wee fee that by Daws, in our Englift Stories, are intended not onely those which now we properly to call, but " Norwegians also, Gettes, Vandais.

HONDIVS bu Map of NORVYEGIA and SVETIA.



Lamberts per- Frieflanders, and the Inhabitants generally of those North-easterne parts, three Ships of whom, on of in the yeere 787. landed in the West parts, slew the Reene of Beerbtricke King of the West Sanons, and were by the Countrie people forced backe to their Ships. Ann, 795. 2 few Ships of them made the like affay in Sostland, and foone after fome of them entred Tynemouth Hauen, in the 60 North part of England, and returned with the spoyles of the Churches of Hereenes and Tyumouth. Mat. Welmings. This was in the yeere 800. Thirtie three yeeres after, in the reigne of Egbere, they were beaten at Danmeth, but spoyled Sheeper, with murthers and robberies, entring Thomes with thirtie fine

CHAP. 19. Danes fooyling, massacre, reuenge. Hocktide Canutus, S. Olauc.

fayle. The next yeere they preuailed in battell against King Egbert, and after that loyned with the Wellomen to inuade and destroy this Kingdome, but were both chased by the victorious power of the King ; and An. 836. another hoalt of them was beaten. Another Fleet of thirtie foure Ships landed at South-Hamton, An. 838. and flew Duke Ethelbelm: after which they proceeded with continuall incursions (two Hydras heads still succeeding, when any English Hercules had cut off one ) that it breeds horror to read or thinke of the spoyles, rapes, fires, murthers, barbarisme, heathenisme, desolation and defiruction, which they brought every where with them. And although Aifred, Edward, and Adelftane somewhat healed the Land of that pestilence; yet in Etheldreds time such a mortall relapse happened, that first he charged the people with an insupportable tribute of Danegelt, arifing to 48000, pounds yeerely ( euen after the account of those times) and Danegelt con-

Ao buying herewith nothing but perfidie on their part, and beggerly on his, by the aduice of one Ha. traued till Edna the Generall of his Armie, he wrote Letters to all places, that on Saint Brices day ( which is wardth: Conthe morrow after Saint Martins night, the Danes not having digested that drunken solemnitie 4. 1012. should be all massacred, which accordingly was effected on man, woman, and child, not sparing those which fled to the Altars. A few in London escaped, and caused Sweyne with a Danifo Army and unspeakable crueltie to repay that butcherie. Erbeldred fled with his wife and children into Normandie (the feed of a new Conquest) for that Swanus \* hauing made the sheepefold a shambles \* This Swanus, Normanate (the seed of a new Conquery in that Smann had and she had and she pheardlesse, proclaimed himselfe King of England, which Canatas or Canata and his two or Suene had and she pheardlesse, proclaimed himselfe King of England, which Canatas or Canatas and his two

fonnes, Harold and Hardioannes, held after him fome thirtie yeeres fpace.

And fuch was the Danifo tyranny, that every Dane was filled Lord Dane, and had at his commandement the wines, daughters, and the whole houshold where hee became. But after the death of Hardicanness, that title was turned into the reproachfull terms of Lurdane, and the day of his death " (as the Roman Fagalia ) was celebrated with open pastime and feathing in the " A 1042. freets, called Hockids or Hockids, as it England (then abblutely freed) made a mocke or Bostati have footne of her enemies. Cannins by treason of Endring Streams obtained the Kingdome, first as particularly as the complete of the complete forme of her enemies. Cannets by treaton of Easting Streens obtained the Kingdome, ner as partpublisficaner with Edmund Ironfide, and after his death the whole by other perfidie, flaying Easting brother
thing in the of King Edmand, and lending Edmands two lonnes, Edward and Edmand, to the King of Sweden firet the we to be there made away. But hee hating fuch cruelcie, fent them to Salomon King of Hangary to men alfolinbring vp, where Edmand dyed, and Edward married Agaiba daughter of Honry the Emperour, by dinginch, or bring up, where Edmana dyed, and Edmana married Against under the Emperiodicty whom hee had Adam Athling, and Margaret married to Malcolm King of Scots (the mother them to load 30 of Mand wife to Henry the first) and Christine a Nun.

Camutus dittiedet the Kingdome into foure parts, of which hee referued Welt Satonie to him- Ireday fort-felte, East England hee committed to Earle Tartill, Mercia to Duke Edvice, and Northimberland nicht after to Earle Erice. Soone after, he caused Duke Edrike (which treachetously had advanced him to the Crowne) to bee flaine, (a suft reward of treason ) and then bansshed Earle Tarkill and Earle Brike picking quarrell with them (weary of any stalking horses) the former of which was presently after his landing in Denmarke flain. And now did Canutus feeke to win the favour of the English by building and endowing Monasteries, making good Lawes, and marrying Emma the relict of King Ethelred. Thus having Demmarke by inheritance, and England by conquest & treachery, his ambition pext aimed at Sweden, where first he had the worse, but after compelled VIf and Esplaf the Kines of that Countrie to composition with him, Earle Godwin, the Generall of the English, pro-

uoking and animating the English to recouse their priftine glory, and by folid vertue to our come question see them, who had our come their new Lord, subole fortune had subjected the English. Thus Come den. 4.1044. tus pressiled by Godwines policie and English valour, they by night without the Kings know-ledge, or affistance of the Danish Armie, assaulting and ouerthrowing the Smedens: hee, the next day, miffing the English, and fearing they had turned to the Enemy, till giving the onset with his Danes voon the forfaken Campe of the Enemy, he found there nothing but carkaffes and spoyle.

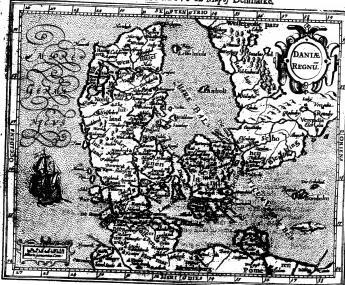
Anno 1027. having intelligence that the Norwegians contemned their King Olans for his Saint Clans fimplicitie, he fent great fammes of Gold and Silver to the Grandes of Norman, to corrupt them, and caused them to reject Olane, and to choose him for their King. For percerted with gifts they fent him word to come to them, whom he foodld find readie to entertayne him. An. 1028. he went with a fleet of fifty fayle to Norway, and expelled Olane, Subjecting that Kingdome to himselfe. Olane which had beene the King, Doctor, Preacher and Apostle of the Norwegians, (as Florileons ftileth him) the fonne of Harald King of Norway, was flayne, Anno 1030. and cruelly butchered by his treacherous Norwegians with an Axe or Hatchet, for difanulling their Pagan superstitions, and hee since is there superstitiously worshipped for a Saint, whom then trayteroufly they permitted not to reigne or breathe. The same yeere perished at Sea, or (as some fay) was flayne in one of the Orcades, Earle Hacun, whom Camerus fearing had banished in co-

6c lour of fending him Embaffadour. His greatnesse (having to wife his listers daughter) made him grow suspicious: And according to the deuotion of that time. Anno 1031. Canutas or Caute went to Rome on Pilgrimage, and there made magnificent Offerings, and obtayined divers Immunities of the Emperous and Pope, After his returne he inuaded the Scots, and ouercame King Malcolme with two other

Komifb Pileri-

Kings. He going from Rome to Denmarke, tent a Letter to his English Subjects thus beginning: Canstus Rex totius Auglia, & Danemercia, & Norreganorum, & partis Suamerum, Acthelinathe amige a proto Metropolitano & Alfrico Eboracensi Archiepiscopo omnibusque Episcopie & Primatibus & voti Anglorum genis, tam nobilibus quam plebeijs, salutem. Rotifico vobus me nomiter inssse Romam, oratum. rannous viur-pation of Nu- pro redemptio e peccaminum meorum & pro salute Requerum, quique meo subiacent regimini populepation of the part of the professioner Deciam olim denoueram : sed pro negoties Regnite causes impedienwithout reft- tibus bue vique per sicere non posui. Nunc antem ipsi Deo meo Omnipotents valde bumiliter gratus atution to the right Heires: as go, qui mibi concessit in vita mea Santos Apostoles suos Petrum & Paulum, & omne Santharium. right Heires sa s if Peters pre- quod suxta wibem Romam aut extra addifere potul expetere, & secundum desider imm menun presentiast reters pre-têded key were luer venerari & adorare. Ob id ergo maxime hoc patrant, quia à sapientibus didici santium Petrum Aa Pick-locke to postolum magnam poseitatem à Domino accepisse ligandi ai g, soluendi, classigerum g, esse Regni Celestis, open Heauca o ideo speciale eins patrocinium așad Dominum diligenter expesere valde veile duxi, &c.

## HONDIVS bis Map of Denmarke.



Canatus before his death fet his Sonne Suams in possession of Norway, and Hardecametus his Sonne over the Danes. Harald and Hardecapatus divided England betwixt them after his death. Anno 1035 and Harald dying, Anno 1040, that quarrell was ended; and soone after, by the others death the Danish Empire in England; the small space of King Edward interceding that, and 60 another Conqueit of the Normans, detcended also of like Northerne, namely of Normegian Originall, Canutus his Daughter Cunilda was married to Henry the Emperour, and being accused of Adultery, against a Giantly Champion appeared in her defence a childish English Dwarsse which ferued her, who flue the Giant and presented his head to the Ladie, who thereupon disorced

herfelfe, and became a Nunne. Suesa King of Narray after fine yeares deceafed, and Countar his

ill gotten English and Normegian wings were quickly not only pulled but out of.

The English had occasion of further intusion to and from Narroys. For Samus decosing the Norwegians choic Mapus the Sonne of Saint Olear for their King; which when Hardece Histria Dan natus understood (as the Densel Storie fet forth by Erpold Lindonbruch testifieth) her numeded Normay with his English and Danish forces, where he and Magnus came to composition than the Suruiuour should enjoy both Kingdomes. When Hardesmase was dead, Sasse the Sonne of the Samuson means easy and Magnus King of Normey Sought with Samus to obtayne his coSecond Implimenanted Kingdome of Dommer's, and outcame him, Samu fied into Sweden, and there also Expedition intill the death of Magnus, after which he recovered his Danie's Scepten. Elevenium written than to improve Poneme from to King Edward the Confessor, intresting his side with a Natis against Adequate Earle Gedwire counfelled to lend fitte ships, but Earle Legisite and the people resisted; and Magnes with a great Nauie fought with Same, and expelled him his Kingdome, which here ifter recourred.

Harald Harnager the Sonne of Samuel King of Normay and Brother by the Mothers fide to Cameral and the state of the st mord death) insaded England with a great Nauis a of three hunding Sips, and discomfitted a Treath
20 the Earles Edwine and Moreor nears Torks; but fine dayes after Harald then King Conne of organism. Earle Godwin) flue his Brother Tosts and Harnagre at Sampwel Bridge, permitting his Sonne O-Lane to returne youn conditions to Norwey. But whiles he connected the spoyle to his owne prolass to returns upon comments to everythe the transfer of the transfer of the better le with priling per vic, he gain the dight to the English can a few days after in the battayle with priling Earle of Normandie, they were lefte zankous of his cause, where a new Norman period beganner from 187, to those Northerne quarrels having had no other end but this succession.

I shall not need to adde what sollowed (the Normes Acts in Italie, Paleiline and other places I have handled elle-where) little occurring of Mars, but Marcanio, of which I have by me wid for La. cest name namers enerwhere recomming to transpose to the Resigner of Hammor Hammer, the Ring 6.6.5.t. of Narmay, for mutuall Tufficke betwire both their fibigids. It is remarkable that the Northerne humour of fpoile, daughter and bloud continued whiles they were Pagans, and expired in manner with their Paganilme both in Namegian and Dance: as if God would first by them 30 punish the vices of those times, and withall conquer the Conquerours, with the Religion of the Note. punish the vices or those times, and withhis conquer true conquerous, with the Rengion of the conquered and by to fittingse a way being the Horetheant Whole dey this way of destroying to faluation. Since that time, the State of Normay, Mand and other parts hath decayed in stumbers of hipping, courage of man, and other measure of Earthby growneds. Somewhat we for Elifornius fake, I will adde of Manham Pan's an Englishmen his Voyage and the Constant of the Con

In the years 1947. Matthew Paris recorders, that can the day of Saint Olass, a famous Saint Ma.Parisp.981 in the Regions and Hands of Norway, Hanne was crowned King, and folemnely anointed at in the Kegnon and Mannar of Ayrang, reserve was a trouved a larg, and a resulting a mounter of Reggley the Billing of Sadies thin Legate (from the Pope) in their parts. For the horseur 40 whereof the faid King game the Pope 1 your, Markes feeting, beside it immalable Giffs which the Legate himselfe had; and see hundred Markes thy him externed (faith our Author) from the Pope the Church of that Kingdome. The King also receiming the Croffs for the Holy Land Expended in Control, obtayoed of the Pope the third part of the Ecolefiafticall Revenues of the Kingdome gave dere towards his charges. Which Lewis the French King knowing , writ in friendly termes to Ha- friends to all con, to beare him company in the faid Expedition offering him full power (in regard of his Sea Emglomes. skill) ouer his Nauie, and ouer the Fronce Army. This Letter was carried by our Authour Ma-offers. skill) our nis raune, and our ne rrows Army. I ms Lever was carried by our Authors & Mar-thors Fair, to whom King Eleon answered that he gass great thamber to that drouge King; but knew in part the nature of the Frameh. & as faith the Poot, Camuly, profiles Ampaisans subvive orit, and I say, Omney, Superior, Ampaires comfairs orit. May people as impositions in indifferent, and impazient of wrongs, which might occation irreparable change; and therefore it is fearer for 9 each to goe by himselfe. But I have written to the King for quite passage therow his Country, and warminous as need remained. The Kinsa Antwers there and Leven Borness were all helps. and prouifions as need required. The Kings Answere thereto and Letten Patents were also deliuered to him by this our Author in this forme,

Ludonicus Dei gratia Françorum Ren., minerfe aminio & fidelibus fine, Ballierie, Miliaribus, & His Lette. Prepsjest, al ques prafentes litera permencina fabateno. Com chariffmon sufter I laftris Hacon Rose. Nerwegia in fubfaisum Tursa fundia transfreisure proponea, ficus nobis per fundi litera unimanis; con Alteringue is parjument, a tera process consistence proposes, prom weres por pusa ester as immunes, vovers menadament, paraetenus fi considera Regem voli infina Vilanigimio per muo e consiguem terra soften trasfere consingue, vol in Terram mofiram, vol in frauda mofira a discub paptacea, iplimo de paste benique de plane rificè recipatis, permistrates cossem in terra midira vilitualis amorro 3 de fido par forum legrimmon de fido necessaries providere. Altum apad Santium Germanum in Laia, A. D. 1248.

When the King of Normey had read this (for hee is a diferent, and modest, and well learned man) hee rejoyced much, and was gratefull to the bearer, respecting him with Royall and M.Parhis veybountifull gifts. Thus writeth Matthew Paris of himselfe, and his employment. The cause of age to Navag. his going into Norway he further relateth, that King (mito (or Cammins ) having founded a fa- John Abbie.

Monkes igno-

runt of their owne order.

mous Monastery of Saint Bennet, of Holm in Norway Cof which title and order hee had founded another in England) is happened that the faid Abbie, with the appurtenances was almost ruined by an impious Abbat, who forfaking his Order, and flealing away privily the Seale of the Chapiter, either fold, or by forged writings fraudulently engaged almost all the possessions thereof. wherein hee had the Sacriff, the keeper of the Seale, his copattner, both in this fugitive apoffacie and treacherie. Heerespon the Archbishop of Nidrofia, in whose Diocesse the said Abbie was fituate, leifed the fame and the appurcenances into his hands, alledging that the Monkes had only the habite, but were altogether ignorant of Monastike order, and Saint Bennets rule, some of them also theenes and fugitines. The Monkes appealed to the Pope (which canfed the Archibishop to fulpend his proceedings) and the Prior recovering somewhat, and gathering together a summe of money, west to the Roman Court, where the Abbat had beene a little before, and intangled by writings the faid house in fine hundred markes; which caused the Prior to returne frustrate and full of griefe. But in his way, hearing that the faid Abbat was dead, in the Abby of Saint Alban in Selio ( in Norway ) he and the Conent made choice of an Abbat, and this Prior, with another Monke, and three hundred markes in mony, together with the Kings letter, being fent to Matthew Paris to take paines for their freedome, it was procured happily that the temporal ties of the faid house were freed from the Campines (the Popes Viurers) then refiding at London, within one yeeres space. But their Spiritualities were much maimed, they by bribes purchasing delayes, left the Archbishop should take possession of the Hand which wholly belonged to the Abby, and of it also, expelling the Monkes.

Now the Cardinall B thop of Sabine then comming Legate into Normay, the Monkes fought to him for fuccour, and hee counselled them to go and perition the Pope to provide them of an Instructor and Reformer, and he would write in their behalfe.

The Abbat therefore and Prior went with Letters from the King and Legate to the Pope, who gatte them leave to chuse any man of whatsoever Region or Monasterie to be their Influder. They answered the next day, that all the World had not Monkes of that Order living in more composed order then England, nor England any comparable by report, to Saint Albans: of which House they defired Marthew to be their Reformer, of whose wisdome and faithfulnes they had had experience; a man also almost familiar and friendly to their King, and able by his meanes to order the rebellions and varuly. Hereupon the Pope gaue them this Briefe to the Ab- 30 bat of Saint Albans.

Innocentius, &c. Dilecto Filio Abbati Santi Albani in Anglia Ordinis S. Beneditti, &c. Cum fient ex parte dilecti filij Abbatis Monasterij de Holm, Ordinie S. Benedicti Nistorsiensis Diocesis, fuit propositium corum nobis; idem Monasterium propter Pradecessorium suorum negigentiam, sit in bis qua ad Monasticum Ordinem periment desormations; nec innuniam in illis partibus aliquis qui statuta és observantia einsem Ordanis bene sciat: Nos ad supplicationem einsem Abbatis, discretionen tuam rogamus, attenius & bortamus per Apostolica tibi scriptamandentes, quaterus discitum siram Fratrem Mattheum Monachum tuum, que dicitur probata vita acreligionse experta, ad idem Monasserium ut dicham Abbatem & Monaches suos in regularibus disciplinas & flatutis que ad cundem ordinem pertinent, informet & informat, transmittere pro dinina & Apostolice sedis ac nostra renerentia non postponus. Dasmo Lugduni, &c. Hereto the Abbat obeying, and Matthew to his Abbat, the businesse luckily succeeded, and Monkerie both in that of Holio, and other Norwegian Monasteries

I might here shew 1 the great stirres which in the first Ages after the Conquest the Norme-

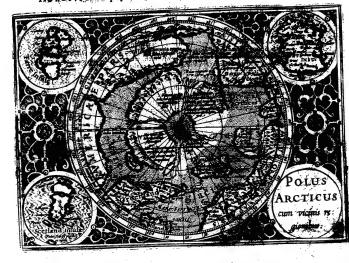
King Haralds

Ben; 4.

gians have caused in Ireland, Wales, Man, Anglesoy, the Hebrides, and Oreades : as also of Haraid (whom the Conquerour flue) his two fonnes and daughter fleeing to Snene King of Denmarke, who gave the daughter in Marriage to Ieruflaus, or Waldembrus King of Ruffe : and of Nicolas de Lynna, a Franciscan Frierand Mathematician of Oxford, before mentioned, of whom Jacobus Curren faith in his Journall that he learned of a Priest who had descended of those which King Arthur had left to people the Hands of Norway, Anno 1364, that in the yeare 1360, the faid Frier had come into those Hands, and proceeding further by Art Magicke, had described 50 a See pag. feq. those Agride parts(as the " Map presents) with fourt Whirl-pooles or In-draughts, Yea (as Master Frier of Lime. Des addeth) at the Northerne Hands, the Record whereof at his returne he gaue to the King of England the Booke being called lonentie fortunata or fortuna, concavering a description from fiftiefourg degrees to the Pole. I might also adde out of Thomas of Walfingham, the Trauels of House Earle of Darbie, (afterwards Henrie the Fourth, King of England) into Proffic and Lettow, or Lithuania, where by his helpe especially was taken Vilna the chiefe Citie (Shirpalle the King of Lettor, having fled thither for refuge) his Colours being first advanced on the walls, fourethousand flaine, of which the King of Polands Brother, and three thousand captived. Also T. of wedlick. I might adde the Voyage of Thomas of Maddfocke Duke of Glocefler, fonne to King Edward the Third, along the Coalts of Denmarke, Norway, and Scotland. Other Letters likewife of King Edward the Second to Haquin or Hacon, King of Namay in behalfe of English Merchants there arrested : with Entercourles betwirt the English and the Dutch Knights in Liefland. But hauing only briefe mentions of these, and them or the most of them recorded by Master Haklayts

industrie before, I doe here but Index-wife referre the Reader thither. I rather choose to give new things and rare : and fuch may feeme these Notes which Anno 1609. I writ from the mouth of Maiter George Barkeley.

# HONDIVE by Map of the Arctike Pole, or Northerne World.



## CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memorial of the great Tranells by Sea and Land, of Master GEORGE BARKLEY Merchant of London, in Europe, Afia, Africa, and America, and their Ilands.



Eing a childe, he was transported into the East Countries, and the first place of his landing was Schagen, from thence vnto Elfenore, a Towne as bigge as Brent. Schagen, where the Danifb Custome is taken; and where he hath scene at one time Elsenore. the Dane making flay of all thipping fourteene dayes, for oftentiation to a for-right Nobleman, futen hundred Gyle. From theuce to Coppenhagen, thence to Proposed the Coppenhagen and the Coppenhagen and the Coppenhagen theory is not the Coppenhagen that the Co Bornbolme, thence to Danske, a Towne fubject to the Pole, being in continual Danseit.

buildings, if by any meanes they may fortifie themselves against the Hilles over-looking the 60 Towne, a Rill running betweene, whence they have their fresh water they spare no time Sunday nor other. There lyeth here in the Sea by casting up of fands a long Iland called Frifta mering, where alongit, as on Samaiden , is gathered by the Danske Officers there, and here by the lewes, that farme it of the Pole, Amber, cast vp by the Sea in great abundance, pieces as bigge as Ambers a pecke, more or leffe. The Bores that find it and gather, have fo many firkins of fome other sale,



means commoditie and it they keepe and fell it, they dye for it. Hee hath feene one piece of Amber taken up, in the middeft whereof was to be feene through the transparent Ambera Frog in fimilitude and full proportion : (Mafter Vaffall, his brother, a friend of mone, told me of a piece of Timber in the ketle of alsay, where by occasion of a liner, one cutting none inches within the Timber and the Ketle of alsay, where by occasion of a liner, one cutting none inches within the Timber and the same of the same the next time. One here in his Net drew vp a company or heape of Swallowes as bigge as a bushell faffned by the legs and bills in one which being carried to their flowes, quickned and flew, and comming againe fuddenly in the cold Aire dyed-

From Danike he went to Marienberg, a Towns also standing on the Vitle, whereby it runne hin another channell, and betwikt both these makes an Hand wherein stands Nerdeich, which Iland is compafied with a wall to fortifie it against the comming downe of the Pattle in the Spring at the thaw of the snowes, &c. This wall feemeth in some places as high as Paules Steeple, and other-where as high as Paules Church, where yet it hath fometime beene ourrflowne : full it is of Hoffes and Villages belonging to the Lords of Danske,

Marienberg is a free Towne for Religion (Danke then profeshing only Lutheran) faue certayne Friers and Nunnes lining in Cloyiters closely. There a Lauber as when he preacheth must make an end at his houre, and then a lefuit preacheth to the Rom, Catholikes as long, the former Durch Enights both company, and Preacher being ausyded of himselfe, or by force. It was built by the Kreizeberne (Dei-parini milites) Knights of the Croffe, who having loft their footing in the Hely Land, by confent of the Empire affaulted and conquered Pruffia, being in this Conquest fixtie foure

# Hondivs his Map of Borvssia, or PRVSSIA.



yeeres, who after carried themselues so tyrannously, that the people yeelsded themselues to the Pule, and destroyed the Kreiztherms, saue those that made a head about the North parts, with

whom after some doubtfull fights, was made a league, that This Order should cease; Their Captayne should be married, and should have seventie two Townes in Profits, to him and his Heires Wales, and in defect of fuch Heires to returne to the Pole. His Townes are not adjoyned together, but the Poles Townes betwixt. Kinning fourge is the Dukes Court.

Thence he went to Elbing, a faire Towne, where our Trade is now for Flaxe, which was before at Danske, thence removed for their infolencies. Here our men only pay Custome : others are free, and this they did voluntarily, and have in this respect very much authoritie among ft

To the Lords there : the Towne ftill flourisheth with buildings, &cc. Thence he went to Branfperg, (the Poles Towne) where is a Colledge of Isluites : From this Branfperg. place to Kinning Berg, and thence to Libs in Carland, thence to Samaiden, and thence to Rica, or Rigue. Rie in Liefland alfo. (This Rica is voider the Pole) thence to Derpt, and thence to Remel. At Derpt he went to schoole three yeares : it is vnder the Pole. Limenia is exceedingly diffracted betwirt

HONDIVS bis Map of LIVONIA or LIEFLAND.



the Sweden, Ruffe, and Pole. King Stephen recovered part from the Ruffe, who before had partly 60 killed, and partly carried captine the Handicrafts men, in such desolate manner, that the Townes are ruinate, the stone walls of Houses and Churches standing with trees of great bignesse growing through their vncouered roofes; the Woods (whereof they have excellent flately) being ftrowed with bones of dead carkaffes; and himfelfe did once in one of those Woods eate Honey our of a Mans skull wherein a swarme of Bees were, and bred as it hanged on a Tree. Hee con-

y:eres

Rene'l. Straw Caftle.

quereil all faue Resell .: against which he made a Castle with water and straw, the frost binding queres as tase names against reaction. The Country is inhabited with the ancient Indigent, them together as 144, 35 they were some the Date of th Money's & Sart being cast on these Countries, did buy of the simple Inhabitants so much ground as a Rose hide, Sec. to building in one place Resel, in another farre dillant Rie, and foother Townes; by this meane commanding and fubduing all the Countrie. Deep was one Turfe of ground bought

Idolatry.

Marriage.

October.

The Momesfer are almost Salnadors, retaining still their old superstitions, as to worship the Sun, or the first Beast they meet with, and especially they have in religious reckoning their Dease. unjoy the first bear they piece without or the Greener, is a company of Trees, which it is religious to To Into winton they can be seen a Marin Telefor Dope, who breaking a bough was swelled a yeere together as big as his skinne would hold. Heere at Marriages and Burialis they pray, but years organic arong a sus same in thus. The man and his Bride are fet fireding on a Horis, and blinded; and to led into Se-leam, there taken downs and married by their Rites; then fer ypagaine, blinded as before, and conneyed with their company, and Mulicke to their house, singing Kojóku Kojóku Coniku. scamoha: there taken downe and had to bed, still blinded till the next mor-

They mourne when one is borne, reioyce and make merry at death. Their mourning (in Curland) is then, and when they walke alone, or fetch wood, Terow, peron peron, masculine base: the words themselves understand not, but thinke it to have remained fince that Babylongh Towre, 10 When the Momefes die, they are buried in their Leanes, with their knife vinder their arme, and their coate hanging over the grave. The Momefer are very ignorant, and aske who learne the Hares in the woods their prayers. At Rie the women have a thing of Red veluet on their heads, made like a Ship with the keele vpward, at each end a lock of hayre. The women of the Saes differ in their fashion of attire each City from other, a pleted Petti-

Hospitalitie,

core, with a damaske Vpper body, a veluet Square on their heads, and thereon a Cloke, &c. The maid vincouered, if the haue had a child and refute to goe couered, the is brought to the Pillory, her. haire cut off, and there nayled, and a Kerchiefe put on. Here and in Norway, and in White Kuffa, &c. strangers pay fighing for entertainment, but salute, six downe, and expect the Hosts expences. Their bed they mult bring with them, which is commonly a Beares skin, or elfe they there 30 haue a locke of straw. To offer money is a difgrace, which yet might seeme to arise of the basenesse of the coyne. Their houses are all of Timber beames laid square, and others laid on them in notches, fo till they come to the roofe, which they couer with flraw, divided in two roomes; the inner being the Parlour or floue, where they have as it were one Ouen over another: the middle hearth being of stones set grate-wife, the fire is put in on the Back-fide or Hal-side, & there also the Sinke ifficeth. Before that mouth in the Stone is set a vessell of water, which, when they will have the heat exceeding, they beformkle on those hor stones. A fire lasteth a day, at night they renew it. Sometimes the old Prufess on the borders of Curland, according to their old heathenish Rites do facrifice their Priest in fire.

Pribus.

Letta,

Vilna

From Derpt hee went to the Peibus, whereinto runne seventie two Riversmaking a great 40 Lake full of Fish. In the Perbus betweene Plaske and Name, the Ships (whereof are many, and Yome an hundred Tunne, with one Maft) are fowed together with Ofiers, having no from worker, called Boidacts. They goe to Markets in Sleds, where comming to a walled Towne, and wairing the opening of the Gates, the Sled is drawne in formetime, with his Mafter fitting a before starke dead with cold. Thence he went to Name, which runneth out of this Lake, where the River being twice fo bigge as the Thames, hath a fall a mile steepe on a Rocke. Here the Sweden (as is reported) made a Bridge ouer with the bodies of Ruffer, as the Ruffe had done before with his owne people about 40000, hence to Inanograd. These 40000, were onely bearded men slaine, &c. not women or children; these hee dashed by the heeles, the dryed braines whereof hee hach feene on the wals, &c. thefe all out of two Townes, Narwe and Iwano-50 grod. The Cattle of Imanograd is fo fortified, that it must bee thrice conquered before conquered, and built in a yeere, of Stone, which none elfe is in Ruffia. Hence hee went to Teraflane, where he and his companion were apprehended by the Ruffes, for travelling without licence, and as they came at any Towne, blinded, and after some feares sent thence into Letto, or Lithuania: passing through Woods full of Bears, Beares, &c. none hurtfull but en luxe, a kind of ounce or Cat-amountaine, with a tayle a handfull long, spotted, as big as a Dogge, in forme like a Cat, which would from off a tree leap on Trauellers and kill them. Here they came to the Weild or Vilna, the chiefe Citie where the old Dutcheffe a Calminift ( whom therefore they called the English Queen) kept her Court. Her two fons being fummoned to the Parliamene in Poland, went garded with 30000. Here they viually steale their wines; a man viewing one to his content comes with 60 his company to the place where the dwels, and lies in ambush till night when the comes forth to make water, and then they catch her, and on a Sled carry her away, &c. her friends not knowing what is become of her perhaps a moneth, and yet know what to suspect because of the custome. Their Churches are thin, and in the Villages they have a Croffe of Wood, with a Pentife, and a

HONDIVS bu Map of LITHVANIA.

CHAP.20.

Crucifixe, and there say they their prayers once perhaps in a quarter, having a Priest come to them, or they goe to him in their Church twenty miles off. They worship also a Snake , which they keepe vp in their houses, saying, they have reason for it, because it keepes their children: these Snakes goe often into the Woods, and thence returne, and before the fire vomit vp milke, which the men eate. Here they hunt the Vrochs, and other beaths. When the Lord will hunt, his Tenants or Slaues (as they are heere, and in Sweden, Poland, &cc. ) doe make fires in the Woods, Hunting, bringing the beafts into a corner, & there they affault them. From Valua he went to Grodno in the Maje, where are the best Poles fouldiers, & they are Roman Catholikes. From hence to Craconia. From thence to War Jonia, where is a Bridge (couered ouer with a Pentice, where toll is paid, twice to long as London Bridge) over Fiftula, which foone after he was passed over, brake, and there were drowned many Polongh Gentlemen that came thither to the Parliament at that time there To this Parliament came a Tartar to fue for his two daughters, taken captine by the Christians:

but not speeding he returned; and with him went our Author Master George Berkley, and stayed

60 ters, he would have bestowed one on him, &c. if he would have lived with him, and he faid he ne-

ner lived in all his lite fo pleafantly as with these Tariars. Hee returned into Poland againe. In

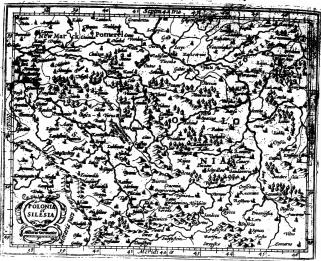
Poland all are Gentlemen and Slaues. Punifinable it is not for their Gentlemen to keepe Concu-

bines, whose children they bring up as their other, saue that they doe not inheric. There is

freedome of religion. So many Cranes feathers as they weare in their Hats, fo many Tartars or Hhh 3

with him fixe moneths. This Taxtar lived with his hord of about a thoufand housholds of a His going into kindred. They fowed a three square graine (Totarke) had cattle, hued a texle, enery day hunting; Tartria. these worshipped Mahomet. Their manner is to make sudden Inrodes on the Christians, and prey on them, who therefore are readie for such affaults : the Polonib Gentleman at dinner hauing his two Peeces by him, and his Seruing-men, which are Souldiers with their Peeces also, when the Christians make head against them, they cannot most what find them. They are refolute, and wil ride with their Bowes in face of a Peece, If this Tartar could have gotten his daugh-

HONDIVS his Map of POLONIA.



Two kes are holden to be flaine by them. No Townes very strong but Commension built within a Rocke, the light let in atholes. The Tarke went open it but could not win it.

The Polanders had a great murraine of beafts attributed to the lewes: two lewes comming to a 40 woman offered her mony for some of her milke, she answered, her child but then sucked, they left their glaffe there, promifing to fetch it anon and to fatisfie her; her husband meane while comming home and feeing so strange a thing as a glasse, asked from whence it came, and why ; being answered two lewes had left it there for milke for a medicine, bid her fleet Cowes milke and fill the glasse : which the lewes receiving, and having entertained a Boy, caused him to climbe up one of the Ladders which there stand together with their three square gallowes made of stone, with woodden rafters croffe, and to poure it into the mouth of one of the dead men(which there alway hang after execution) his mouth, who presently cryed like a beast, as the boy reuealed, and they thereupon cryed they were cofined : a murren followed which should have been a plague. Many lewes executed for it ; which yet the lewes faid to bee a pretence for their money. The sa Iewes that farmed the Custome at Samaiden in Carland, killed a Polonys Merchant without punishment, beating out his braines for delaying to open his packe. Hee returned out of Poland into Pruffia to Torne, the first place obtained by the Kreizberne, where they built a Castle about an Oake which standeth there still, but is dead. Thence along the Viftle (where the Poles have their Maks, &c. with wares three miles together tyed downe the streame) to Dantzike; thence into Pomerland farre more barren then Pruffia, to Caffubia, Cofilin, Colberg. Thence to Statim, every way exceeding pleafant and good. Thence to Refleck in Mackelberg. Thence to Labeck, a fairer Citie then Danske, fo to Oldfloe, to Hamberg, to Brome, to Limenberg, to Mansuelt, to Bamberg , and thence through Bohemia into Silefia, to Brefilaw, where hee went to schoole three yeeres : whence into Polonia againe, and thence to Pruff. Thence home into England.

Torne.

Hee went againe iuro Normey to Nilme, Bafme, &c. It is a barrenfoyle, as being nothing but Rockes and Valleyes: the Rockes are coursed with graffe, and the ground betweene they digge and fow with Corne, which yet is not able to farisfie the Country. The difference between the course with the country. The difference between the country to the difference between the country.

Gentlemen and Bore, is in his command; being otherwise, as raggedly apparrelled as hee, with twentie patches on his breech, and barefoot in winter.

To write pacines up in precent active the chiefe Citic. These now "under Dake Charlet, hold warre" "When he with their King, yet all chings passing vider himams, but so having the Polet, that chough of an-was there, other Nixton, neither the long attire, not there there Garb, or hooked Sword can pass, listing various mong the Bores for sufficient of being Polet and the rather because they were made believe that chie Pole was ayded against them by the Torser that were man-eater. They are strong in shipping and had guess the Dame the outershrow at the battle at Brundshun, had he not been safisted by the Lubreters with money, &c. One allo of whole Ships with a shot fired and blew up the Admittal of the Sweden. The Lubreters therefore pay no custome to the Dames, and for their

cofts hold Borabolas till they be litisfied out of the Reusen was thereof.

In Swedom (as in Firelland and other those Countries) the Lord holds the other his Tenants as Villaines and Slaues, and at his pleasure hips their Hories and Daughters to Roself, and there fells them; a bothell and halfe a Collose of Sair for a woman, which yet is of perfen and complexion very comely, and very able to doe works. He came againe to Legands; and thence to Funland, where hee was with an English Captains in a Cattle; and thence into Lissenis, and fo in-

to Ruffia, &c. Beides those his Easterne trauels, he hath bin in our neerer neighbor places, as in Belgies, France, mauells. Spaine, Portugal, de and paffed to the West ladies by the Hands of Cape Verd: in three of which S. S. Ant on Vincent, Lucie, the Inhabitants cannot profper nor live long, faue in those llands which yet are vnkind to other forrainers. He hath also beene in Guinea, in Barbary, in the Straits, at Caribage, where the old ruines remaine, and the stones of Marble, &c. worth the bringing home, in Italy, Slauonia, Morea, at Venice often, at Ferrara, Padua, Mat. Angele, thence to Fermo, Langue to Loretto (where he visited the Ladie of Loretto ) it is one street, walled about, the Temple faire. and in the Temple of our Ladies house, inscriptions innumerable of divers languages, affirming it to have fled the Turkes conquelts from Inry into Sclamonia, and from thence also hither. Here forfooth it was placed in a piece of ground belonging to two Brethren, which because of this new quest and request could not agree on the proprietie : and to amoyde further suite, in the night it was found remound to a vacant place by the high-way, and there this Temple built whither refort Pilgrimes in troopes, as to a Mart from divers Nations. The ftreet on one fide all Innes, on the other makers of Images, Beades, and such other holy bables heere sanctified by touch of Madonne.

The Temple is banged about with Monuments of ther exploits, vpon vowes consciued in diffrest of Warres, Diffeafes, &c. here hang the old Swords, &c. There are two Veffres of incredible wealth, and Priefs of diuers Nations for their proper Pilgrimes. The Houfe low and means builded with white Brickes, fuch as in Barbarse they burne in the Sun. There are two roomes, in one whereof the Chimney where the a effed hed meate, and her diffee, &c. In the other her felle, or flatue with a Childe, aloft of blacke colour: to whom one whole office it is, on a falfe like a Musket-reft doth lift vp Beades, &c. by her touch to bee hallowed. The Fronth Queene fent 40 her a Prefert to hang about her necke, which prefent would pull her in precess by the weight. It is round, two foot in diameter made like a Sunne, in the center a Carbuncle, the reft. fet with Diamonds, the rayes pointed with orient Pearles, the Brickes (miscoloufy) cannot be remoouch, to which end they report of a Bishops superflictious steale: who was not able to passe

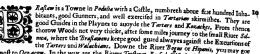
Trauelling in diuers places of Italy, Rome, Sc. hee returned by the Alper, from Fenies to CMefre, thence to Treufe, to to Serasaile, a Towne of Blade-fmither, which with Wafer-workes grinde and hammer their Mettals: thence ty the Alper by a patings for marrow cut out of the Rocke, that fometime the Horfe hoofe hung ouer, it beeing a fleepe mile high, a Riuter running voder. Thus to Baffl, thence backer or Twoil.

After all ibefe transls in the fearts of Europe better known, and those others in the more unknowne, 
50 and in Africa and America, hee much offeiling the Vingimis befines and effectually that of Bermudal, 
went this hir to order publishe affirers. At adore all this (as you have beard) went in place of Cape 
Afrechants to the End Indress, and being Capeaine of the English House at Bantam, there analthence 
transled to his long home. This I thought goad to add to the former relations, which I received many 
yeers since from his owne sounts, being my loning and familian friend, and for a general Transler by 
Sea and Lond, in hote and odd Countries of the old and new world, not easily matchable. Had bee lined, 
I would have better perfected these solves, in the Deads less less them from the world his memory; I rather chusing to give the world tops of world his 
from the world his memory; I rather chusing to give the world tops of world where 
the notion to have them with him, or by resuming and ilsusfrating to make them name. The best illustration seems that of Mappers, some of which out of Hondiums I have added.

CHAP

CHAP. XXI.

Collections out of MARTIN BRONIOVIVS de Biezerfedea fent Am. balladour from STEPHEN King of Poland, to the Crim Tartar : Contagning a Description of Tartaria, or Chersonesus Taurica, and the Regions Subject to the Perecop or Crim Tartars, with their Customes primate and publike in Peace and Warre.



almost to Occacon. In the way are the Rivers Triftener, Berfad, Olfank, Sauran (whence they are called the Fields of Sauran) a stone Bridge and Bathe sometimes belonging to Vitoldius, Great Duke of Lestonania, ruines and graues, Sinanod Riveret, the strong rockie Ile Probite, a good re-Duke of Latheans, tumes and grants, someone and May and lune, vie there and in the other fuge for ours against the Tasters (the Breflavens in May and lune, vie there and in the other and with the Discost Constant Runs the creater and the Left. 20 many Ilands of Bogm to fish, armed with their Pieces) Certeina River the greater and the leffe. and that of Capeacles, and Hancocriens (the Tarter; call it (ham) and the Lake Berezania. That Long miles in Field is fiftie miles, or as they call it feuen dayes journey to a speedse traueller, from Braston to Oczacow. There are wilde Beafts, Bisonts, Elkes, Horles, Harts, Rammes with one horne, Goates, Swine, Beares : which ten yeeres fince were fayd to bee killed with the sharpnesse of the Winter, and huge heapes of their bones are found in the fields. They had also innumerable herds of Horses, Turkish and Tartarian; Kine and Sheepe which fedde there, by the bordemorie, Sharpe winter, rers of Russia, Volsinia, Kiew, Podolia, and Moldania, not long since destroyed. The hills called Mogili, are teltimonies of Burials and Warres. The Field is fertile, rich of pasture and pleasure.

those pares: Band in the reft of this

# HONDIVS bis Map of TAYRICA CHERSONESVS.



Passing ouer Prus or Hieras, a River of Moldania, you come to Stepanonetia or Iassi, chiefe Towne of Valachia; or righter to Pritum Technia, a Towne and Fort of the Turkes, not long fince Part of Mo da. Towns of Valactia; or righter to Pritim Teconia, a Towns and For to the Interspect to fine unit or the low-tortified on the Neffer; and there are found some Moldanian passages in the Neffer, right into er Valactia, calthe champaines. It diffufeth it felfe into the Lake Vidono or Obidono (to called, as some fabulou- led sometimes fly concerne of Omdam) and foone after difembokes into the Enrine Sea, ouer against Bialogrod Beffaribia. (named by the ancients Moncastrum) not long fince taken by the Turkes, from the Valachian or Like Vidowin Meldenine Princes, & holden by them. In the very mouth of Types or Neglet, bearing name of New Neglet, before my same start of the Neglet of Types of Neglet of the Neglet of New Neglet of Neglet of New Neglet of New Neglet of Neglet of Neglet of Neglet o phinfa on the left hand of the Rauer.

After followeth Beribonesses with deepe and large ditches neere the Sea, washed by the Lake Beribonesses where fometimes was a good Port. Advigeli hath three Ditches, many fait Lakes nigh the Sea, Advigeli. where many Cozak relort and often kill each other in mutuall warres and quarrels, which Damina berewhere many occur and occur and occur and can being in another water and quarters with rankes at terrible to Trauchers. Then follow Domnina Delnia, and the Lake Beremainia, and the Bay Careman. Strate placeth five hundred furlongs in the Sea, from the mouth of Tyras the Luca, Hand Leuca facred to Achilles.

Oceanous called antiently Olbia, Olbis, and Olbispolis, is feated on Borifbenes or the Carcenise Oceanide Bay ; fometimes builded by the Meletsens : the Tower is of Stone, the Towne but meane, is fub. iect to the Turkes. Borifthener or Neper; a deepe, wide and fwitt ftreame, runneth from the Boriffhener or North into the Bay, and neere to Ocaaconia into the Enxine. Fouremiles higher Bogm empties Belsi.

20 it felfe into Borifthenes. There the Turkes exact Cultomes. The Istomus betwint Borifthenes and The 12thmus. the Sea, is a dayes journey, over fandie plaines, with Hills, Lakes, Salt-pits; with Decres, Beares, Goates, wilde Swine well flored. It is extended to Perceptia aboue thirtie miles in length, con- Their hou'es taining Medowes, Rivers, and Tarrarian Cottages (which they call vinft) made of small pieces of and pastures wood, daubed with mud or myre and dung of beatts, and thatched with reed. The Tarters line progress. not in them in Summer and Autumne, but in April begin their progresse, with their wives, children, flaues, and houses which are round, covered with clothes, fearthy commodious for foure or fine men, carried on two-wheeled carts, with one or two Camels or Oxen, together with their houshold. They carry with them Carnels, Horses, Flockes, and Herds innumerable, leauing othere in commodious pastures. They goe towards Perecopia, and fometimes into Taurica, or Taurica or Don.

30 ouer against Perscopie, to Offen or Azaph, as the Turker call it , a Towne by the Don ( Tanais, a great and swift River) fornetimes fortified by the Greeker, and fince by the Gennois; where the Turkes now have a Garrison, and a Commander. They Hway travell into the Ifthmu, or the large Plaines which are betwirt Boriftbenes, and the Lake Meetis, and the Ponike Sea, where they find best pastures. In October the raines, colds, and perpetuall windes force them to returne to their Cottages. For they are afraide of our Nizonian Cozats, which paffe downe the ftreame in Boats, and the Gunners , which then make incurfions on them. Neper is frozen ouer in Winter. Ptolemer calls that Ishmus, Zenos Chersonesius, and Strabo writes that the Roxans and Revo-lans (whom we call Russians) pattured those Fields twinkt Tanats and Burishbenes (describing their life like that of thefe later Tartars)

40 Perecopia (antiently called Eupatoria, Pompeiopolis, Holy Grone, Achilles Race, Gracida, Hera- percona clea) is feated in the confines of Taurica, or the Scythian Cherfonefus, the Towne obscure and fmall, the Tower of flone, not well fortified; in which the Taxar Chans have their perpetual Palatine or Beg, which keepeth the Marches and passages of Borisbenes and Don, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant over all the Tartars in the Playnes adioyning. Strabe writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and ftill in the Tartarian and Turkilb language hath the name. When Sachinhgieres raigned there (heè ouerthrew the Nagay Tar. tars at Perecopia with a memorable victory) there were fenenteene ftone Forts raifed in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the flayne, and the ditch repayred. Heere the Tariars keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to paffe without the Chans Letters. And there so in occasions of Warres is their principall affembling.

Collow is feuen miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the Chan hath a perpetual Coffie. garrifon. Ingermenum is hence twelue miles or more: it hath a frone Fort, a Temple; and Vaults Ingermanum. under the Cattle and oner against it, with wonderfull Art cur in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountaine; and therefore the Tarker give it the name of the Fantis. It hath heene a wealthy Towne. Ouer against it the Promontorie trendeth fome turkongs broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare evident figures in the Runie Mountaines, that the ancient Greetes thence cut huge ftones and carried them by Ships to build Cherfona a Citie in those cherfara. times famous, as the Greeke Christians Rill report. The Heraclians of Pomen fent thicker a Colony. The Fort of Ingermenum was also built by the Greeker, as appeareth by Greeke Interiptions

6C and Scutcheons therein : and thorow all the Isthmus to the walls were fumptuous buildings, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-wayes or Causies of Stone, There were many good Vineyards and Girdens, now called Belbec, and postessed by Greeke Christians, or Italians, and Iemes, and a few Turkes. Of the ruines the Turkes and Turtars make great Stalls and Enclotures for their beafts. This Cheronefus, Corfunum, or Cherfons the Turker called Sari

Germenum, or Tellew Tower of the colour of that Tract; whereof admirable runes remaine to tellifie the quendam iplendor. There are channells or conduits of hewen stone vnder ground foure miles to the Citie walls, still containing cleere water. From a place where is a Village of note, and not farre off, neere the Sea is a Greeke Monastery of Saint George, with anniversarie denotion frequented of the Greekes remaining in Tauries with great concourie. The Citic hath noe beene inhabited these many ages; the Walls and Towers sumptuously built are yet seene entire. But the Turks carry thence excellent Marble, and Serpentine Columnes and great stones by Sea, for the vie of their publike and private buildings. Of the Temples the very ruines, are viterly ruined, and the houses lye buried in that Monument and Selfe-sepulchre.

ined, and the noutes tye ourted in that automated by large, but without roofe, and the ornaments to The walls of a Greeke Monafterie remayne very large, but without roofe, and the ornaments to spoyled. The Russian and Polonian Chronicles relate that Volodomir, great Duke of the Russian or Kiess, carried thence two doores of Cormibian Braffe, and some artificial Greeks Images which Bratefant he fecond King of Poland translated from Kom to Gnefins, there yet in the great Church to be feene. Voladimir tooke that Citie from Iohn Zemifen the Good instrumpelant Emperour : but after, marrying Anna the fifter of Emperour Bafilina, and being baptized in that Monastery after the Greeke Rites by a certayne Patriarch, hee restored it, as is still relaced by the Christian remainders in those parts. Before the Citie was the Promontorie Parthenium with a Temple and Image of that Goddeffe, and other Antiquities by Strabo related,

The Citie B4-

That which the Greekes called Iamboli, the Turkes have filed Balachei, as the Towre of files, in regard of the plentie in that Sea, It was fortified in a high, great and stonie Mountayne by 20 the Genusie, whiles the proud cowardly Grecians which held that part of Taurica quartelling amongst themselues, lost it to them. There they had a notable Port, a strong and sumptious Fortreffe; and there the Towres, houses and walls with the Genusis Entignes and Inscriptions, Iveruined. It is now inhabited of a few Greekes, lewes and Turkes, and frequented by fewer Merchants and strangers by Sea.

Marcopia stretcheth further to the Mountaynes, and Woods, and is not so neere the Sea : it Mongara Gity. hath had two Caffles, Greeke Temples and Houses sumptuous, with many cleere Rils running out of the Rone : but eighteene yeeres after that the Tarkes had taken it (as the Grocke Christian) assirme) it was destroyed by a sudden and horrible fire. Neither hath any thing remayned of note but the higher Fort, in which is a goodly Gate, adorned with Greeke writing and store of 30 Marble, and a high house of stone. Into that house the Messengers of the Muscowites are by the barbarous Cheese sometimes thrust, and there endure hard keeping. There remaynes the Greeke Church of Saint Conflantine, and another meane one of Saint George. One Greeke Priest and some Iswes and Turkes dwell there; Oblinion and Ruine hath denoured the rest; nor are there men or Stories of the quandam Inhabitants, which I with great care and diligence enery-where fought in vaine. An old Priest which I saw there, said that a little before the Turkes besieged it, two Greeke Dukes of the Imperial bloud of Contlantinople or Trapezond, there refided, which were after carried aliue into Conflantinople, and by Selim the Tarkifo Emperour flame. In the Greeke Churches on the walls are painted Imperiall Images and Habits. The Tower and Citie Marcopia is nigh to Cerceffigermenum a new Turkilb Fort taking name from Cerceffinm; but the 40 Turkes, and Turkers, and Greekes also have now lost the name. The Greeke Dukes are faid to have there committed much wickednesse. And in that stony Hill whereon it is seated, it hath houses cut with admirable Artifice in the Rocke, which still for the most part remayne entire, although the place be become wooddie. A Temple adorned with Marble and Serpentine Pillars, now laid prolitate on the ground, teffifie the quendens glorie.

The Palaces or Houles of the Chans reach vnto the Mediterranean Taurica (as Strabe calsit.)

It hath a famous Towne, and a principall Store-house, called Baccasara, wherein he perpetually resideth. That Towne is situated betweene two Mountaynes, and a little River flowes betweene, whereof the Towne is named. There is a stone Moscbe, and the Chans Sepulchres built within the Townes Liberty of the Christians ruines. Not farre also from that Towne there is a Mahometan Monasterie, and very many Tartarian Graves curiously rayled out of the Grecian 50 ruines. In the further end of that Towne, there is another Towne called Salaticum, adorned with faire buildings by the Turkes there inhabiting. The Royall Seate or Mansion of the Chans is sumptuously garnished by the ancient Tartaran Princes with Houses, Temples, Sepulchres, and exquisite Baths. When the Princes with their Wines, oft give themselves to ease, passimes. pleasures, and recreation, they go thither. For that place or Region is commodious for huntings, it hath Orchards, Vineyards, Gardens, and many flore of good grounds, and it is watered with Chrystaline streames. There are Mountaynes and store of Woods, wherein are seenevery many ruines of Houses, and large Forts and Cities, yet they remayne desert, and are of few or none inhabited.

Almaffaray at the meeting of the River Alma, is a house of the Kings , where he is woont 60 not often to reside, because he lives not there so commodiously, as in other places, and cannot lodge there with his Court : for there is only one base Village. There are some more obscure bordering Townes and Fortreffes, where they are woont to maintaying their Wives. Also not a few

Castles where the Sultans, the Chans brothers, or their fonnes and wines perpetually dwell. That part of Cherfonefan, which the Chan with his Tartars possesse from Percepta, toward the Percepta Fenne or Lake to the Cite (Frances , is cultivated, plaine, champson, feetile, and plentfull of (France, graffe; but toward the Sea and the Palace of the (Law, and his Townes, Caffee, and Villages, the Countrey is Mountaynous, woodie, well husbanded, and very fruitfull. The Mountaynes in that Coast are huge and remarkable. But the greatest is the highest of all, and hath in the top a Lake of no small quantitie. And although I did not ascend it , yet it is well discerned many miles off, and demonstrates no ordinary height and greatnesse. Plentie of Rivers and no small ones runne from thole Mountaynes. Also they have much fifth, but not of any greatnesse (for the River is shallow) yet very favourie and daintie. But because the Tartars doe not often feed on 10 fift, the Christians only and our ftrangers when they come thither take paines to catch them. There is also abundance of delicious Fowles; which sometimes Christian or Tarkill Gunners are woont to feeke after, feldome our ftrangers. There is much game of Harts, Goates, Boares, and Hares meere the Sea under the Tartars and Turkes. Oftentimes also the Chan himselfe is wont to hunt fome dayes there, but more often he goes into the champion with Turkifo and Tar-

tarian hunting Dogges. Sortaffus is a Tartarian Village adjoyning to the Chans Regall Mansion, wherein the Latton Suraffate 02 and Muscous Ambassadors doe often lodge; it is spacious and delightsome. But when Tourica or the Poninfula beganne fubieft to the Chan; Dominion, divers Italian Gentlemen Gomes after Capha was taken by the Turkes, or Turter Princes, having their Charters written and fealed of their right and proprietie (which I have feene among them) they held that Village with speciall Priviledges, or purchased it with that Gold which they carried with them out of their Countrey, or with their feruice to the Chaus. In going Ambassador to Christian Princes, it was permitted them to build a Catholike Temple in that Village, wherein I sometimes entred while I abode there. There was in that Temple one Prieft a Franciscan Fryer, whom those Christians had then redeemed with their money from Turkib flauerie.

Cremans, or as the Tarans call it Crimans, is a Citie and a Castle much while in the antiquitie, Cremans. magnitude, and height of the wall, amplemente and renowme, to the other Cities of Taurica; It is whike the Mediterranean (for to Prelamie cals it) perhaps this was called by Ptelamie Taphres, but by Plinie Taphra. Now in thefe latter times before the comming of the Genees into Tamres, 30 it seemes to have beene husbanded and inhabited by a great Mahameton Nation, who remound thither out of Asia. For there are seene ancient Moscher or Mahameton Temples not only in the Citie it felfe, but alfo beyond the Citie very many with Chaldaiche Characters engrauen in great flones. There are very few Turkifb or Turar Inhabitants, yet the Grukes are fewer, who report this, that their Ancestors have constantly delivered, that that Citie was whilome dwelt in by the Perfias Nation, and that it was a quouden noble and excellent Store-house of Mechanick Mysteries. A man may certainly conjecture by the ruines and largenesse of the place that it hath beene a famous Citie and a great Colonie of people. The Tartars are now vulgarly nomi- crim Tartars nated from that place Crims. They have a Mint in that Citie. In the Towre which is the great why so called 40 test in the Citie, the Chars wives are alway kept and spend their lives.

Sidagios of the Greekes, but Sudacum of the Genoes, was called a Caftle and Citie. The Tartars Sidagios or Suare viterly ignorant of it. In aloftie rockie and spacious Mountaine standing neere the Sea in the top of it, it hath a higher Towre, a second indifferent, and a third of baser esteeme. The Greekes or Italian Genees founded their Castles environed and fortified with Walls and Towres. There are seene innumerable Grecies Churches, and seeme but few, as though they were Chaps pels, not a few undemolished, but very many are ruinated, and lye ouerturned in the dust. The

haughtie diffentious and idle Greekes being overthrowne and weakened by the Isalian Geners, loft

that Citie. There are seene no contemptible fignes of the Geness much more illustrious then those of the Greekes.

But it is evident by the ruines, that it was once a famous place, & fo it is reported by the Greek, 50 Christians, of whom there are a very few Relikes. Moreouer, many Christians have erected a multitude of Temples which they report to have beene some hundreds. There are three great Catholike Churches, Houses, Walls, Gates, and faire Towres with Arrace and Ensignes of the Genees, are seene in the lower Castle. I heard from a certayne Metropolitane a Greeke and an honest man, who then came thither from the Greeier Iles to visit their Priests , and entertayned mee, That when the most barbarous Nation of the Turks had belieged that Citie with a great Armada, it was valiantly and manfully defended by the Genees : but when the Genees could no more hold out the daily fiege and famine, neither could longer fustaine the violence of such a great Armie of Turkes, tome hundreds, or, as hee auductied, about a thousand stout-hearted men conveyed themselves into the greatest Church which yet abides entire, and some dayes hardly and couragiously preferuing themselues in the lower Towre, into which the Tweet toreably entred, hauing made a notorious and memorable flaughter of the Turkes, at the length they were all flaine in that Temple. The doores and windowes of that Temple being stopt vp with a wall by the Turkes, the flaine bodies lye vinburied to this day. I was prohibited by the Saniak of Capha forme-

times a Turke, that I should not enter into that Temple. The Custome of the Cicie is not meane: it hath very fruitfull Vineyards and Orchards, which doe extend about two miles, now manuted by Caphaes, Turkes, Irwes, and Christians : For the best Wine of all Touries growes there: all that tract abounds with pleasant Rivers, which runne downe from the highest and middle Mountaynes and Woods, which are there very frequent.

Having now passed over those upper Cities, and at the last Sudace, also as farte as Theodolia. which the Italian Genoes call Capba, the banke of Taurica is in Longitude a thousand furlongs, craggie, mountaynous, and tempestuous with Morth windes. Before the Citie the Promontorie that is there seene, doth hang out into the Sea on the South-side toward Paphiagonia, and the Citie Assaftrum, and Strabe relates, that it is called of the Greekes, Orinm and Oxon, the 10 Rammes forehead. And there is another Promontorie Carambis of the Paphlagonians opposite to it, whereby the Emrine Sea is divided into the double Sea, and Empire straightens them both. Strabe fayth, that Carambis is diffant from the Citie of the Cherenfitay , two thousand fine hundred furlongs, but from the Rammes forehead, a farre leffer quantitie. Behind that hilly Countrey, as Strabo calls it, hee affirmes the Citie Theodofia to bee founded, and that it hath large Fields notable for fertilitie, and a Hauen able to receiue a hundred Ships, and that that Limit was affigned to the territorie of the Boffborines and Tourikes.

Capha or Theodofia, is the excellenteit and best defensed Citie of all Taurica. It was built by the Italian Genoes, and is placed by the Sea. It hath a Hauen alway frequented. It is perforceous, that in the times of the Genoes, it was a wealthy and populous Citie. But after it was taken 20 from she Genees by the Turkes aboue a hundred yeeres fince, the Italian Christians were brought into such a straight, that there are but a very few and obscure remaines of them left. The Citte hath in a manner loft her priftine iplendour. The Romish Churches of Christians are demolished, the Houses cast downe, the Walls and Towers, wherein are seene many tokens of honour of the Genoer and Latine inscriptions, are fallen. Onely two Catholiche Temples and two Armenian remayne whole, in which it is granted them of the Twice, after their owne custome to maintaine their proper Priests, and to bee present at their publike denotions. It is replenished with Tarket, Armenians, lewes, but very few Italian and Greeke Christian inhabitants : Now also it is famous ouer all that part of Taurica for Nauigation and the Hauen. It hath almost innumerable Vineyards, Orchards and Gardens. Men layle often to Capba, from all the bordering and remote L. 30 lands of Greece, but oftner from the Citie Conftantinople; for with a prosperous winde they come thither by Ship, in the space of two dayes or little more. The Petigoren Prouince, or Colchis is inlarged, as farre as the Caffism or Horam Sea, and is

Idolaters.

much subject to Mountaines and very large Woods, which are now seene in these Confines. It is a very free people, and hath many brave Commanders, to whom all the Nations and Families obey. Moreover they professe themselves Christians, and it is manifest in the time of the Genoes very many of them were Christians, but now wanting Priests and Churches, they onely retayne the opinion of Religion. Most and the greatest part of them are Idolaters, amongst themfelues rapacious and cruell, but to Strangers hospitall and free-bearted. The Parents, although they bee of the more Noble or of the Ruftickes, fell their owne Children, their Sonnes 40 for Slaues, their Daughters for Wives to the Turkes and Turturs, also to many Christians, and those which they are wont to steale secretly among themselves, they sell closely beyond the Sea to barbarous ftrangers after a more then barbarous manner.

Betweene Perecopia, Cremum, and Customa, are Townes on the North. Taurica or the Peninsula is exceeding plaine, not very hilly, and altogether champaine. It hath a very fertile foyle, in great part flonie, but great scarcitie of good water. Yet there are found in diners places very many extraordinarie deepe Fountaynes or Wells of a wonderfull profunditie and difficultie, in times pail digged and made by the elder Greekes, or those great and antique Nations, who inha-

bited the Peninfula before the Greekes.

Sak Lake.

From Perecopia the space of a mile, there is a great Lake congealed naturally of admirable Salt, 50 from whence the pureft and beft Salt is continually gathered, as if it were frozen; it hath many other Salt lakes. In certayne commodious and in very many places, in Mountaynes and Groues are found in great number, ancient huge Grecies ruines of Caffles, Cities, Temples and Monafteries, which while they have many ages beene destitute of inhabitants, by reason of their antiquitie, haue loft their names. All Taurica or that Paninfula, from the West and North is plaine and champaine, and hath few Townes, many Villages; extends in length the fumme of fiftie miles. But from the South and East, it is mountaynous and wooddie, and hath every where maruellous high, large, stony Mountaynes. In which, betweene Cremum and Capba, it is reported that veynes of Gold and Silver, and the best Iron, were whilem found by the Inhabitants. It hath a very fruitfull ground, Floods, delightsome Rivers, Fishes, Meadowes, Pastures, abundance 60 of wilde Beafts, Harts, Goates, Boares, Beares, Vineyards, Orchards, Territories, Champaines, Townes, Villages, Hamlets, many and large Granges. Taurica or the Peninfula, is spread in Latitude after a fort into a circle; in some places, the distance of one or two dayes journey, but in most places about the quantitie of one.

The Cattles and Sea-cities, and the rest of all the Peninfula, which are described in their order, with many Villages and Hamlets of Greeke Christians, except the Holds and Sea-townes. and many leffe suspected walled Townes in Perecopia and Casilonia, and a few Villages of Greeke Christians, are subject to the Turkish Emperour, and all obey his behests, and are kept with a fure Garrison. The Peninfula, which lyes in the middle from the East and South against Perscopies, hath a milde winter and temperate ayre. For in the end of December is the beginning of winter, but in the midft of Februarie the sharpenesse of winter, which is more snowie then cold, or fubicat to Ice, neither yet doth that endure about three dayes together, neither continues it any longer then to the beginning of March. Therefore about the beginning of the Spring, and al-Io way in a hot Autumne the ayre is very contagious.

In Bratislania, the Sauranen, Oca aconien, and Bialodogroden . Plaines are fituate betweene Hipanis or Bagus, Tyra or Nefter. From the North toward Neper or Berifthener and Bogas, are fomewhat plaine and champion grounds, but from the West towardes the River Nester and Prath or Hierafus, more wooddie and hilly. Podolia, Camenecia, and Moldania betweene the freames Nefter and Prath, every where border on the middle Tachain and Bialon gred, which is by the Lake Usdono or Obidono, and the Eurine Sea, on the West confine on the Plaines, and on the Euxine Sea, on the South Bralogrod, Kibia, and the River Danubins. Oczacomis hath on the North Borifthenes, (into which Bogus there dischargeth it selfe ) and spatious Plaines, on the South the Enrine Sea, and the overflowing Salt meere Berezania, from the Weil

20 the adioyning River Nester. Further, that Continent which is betweene Occaconia and Borsstbenes in the fashion of an Ile, hath into the West Boristhenes, as though it were betweene Boristhenes, the Fen Meets, and the Enxine Sea; on the North the Rivers Tameis or Domme, on the South the Enxine Sea, and that Ishmus or Continent, but beyond Oczaconia and Borishenes, as far as Perecopia, that Continent is verie narrow in many places; but beyond Perscopia to the Caftle Offonum, a ranke foyle, and all champion and plaine : For in that neck of Land almost all the Perecopian and Offemen Tartars feed their blockes and Cattle, and line there all Summer and Autumne. That Continent or Illimus from Oczaconia, as farre as Offonum, for there it is limitted, is firetched out in Longitude, as is manifest out of the Tartors Diaries more then a hundred miles, but in Latitude 30 not after an equall manner. For it is larger, as well beyond Perecopia, as toward Oczaconia, or

The Taurican or Cherfone fon Tartars, who are now called Percopen or Crims, doe certainely feeme by the ancient Writers of the Schythians to have been the lanelgenfes, and to have had their original and appellation from Rbs, or the River Folgs. Moreover between the famous, deepe, and great Rivers of the North Tansis, or Don and Boriffbenes, it manifelly appeare that they paffed by little and little into the Plaines, and a hundred and fixtie yeeres fince, or very little more to have come into Taurica or the Peninfula.

The stocke of the Chans, or of their Tartar Princes was anciently called Cyngis race, from cyngis. whom was Locbionus a certaine Chan, of whom all the Chans take their originall. Hee was the Locbion,

40 first Emperour of Taurica or Chersonesus in Taurica, or the Peninsula. They have procreated the Sirinen , Bachinien , Manguten , and other Kinaziy or Dukes , from whom are the Caiacei, who are the Chans Counsellours and chiefe Officers, who also marry the Chans daughters and fifters. The Vlani, which are anciently descended of the Chans bloud, and (if the lawfull posteritie faile) fucceed in the Regall Throne. It is very true that the Murstes are the noblest of each, now also their posteritie remaine & other warlske Tartars; of whom it is certaine he had divers Hords, of some ten thousand a piece in his company passed into Taurica, or the Peninsula with him.

The Chans predectfors fincerely and constantly much esteemed the Grecian Chiefetaines, who inhabited at Mancopia, and Ingermene, and the Italian Genoes, who dwels at Iambold and Capia, as also the other people they found in the Peninsula, with whom they had friendship, peace, and so league, vntill they were ouercome by the Turkes, and confumed in warre : they had also many

yeeres common mony which I have feene there,

But Selim, Emperour of the Turkes, compelled and fubiugated Mechant Gererius Chan to his Selim, Empire. Those Nations being weakned, almost all the Castles and Cities of the Martime Penin- Gery Chan. fals, being taken and possessed: Sachmates the Prince of the landgen Tartars put him to flight, with a fingular and memorable slaughter having destroyed his Armie of a hundred thousand. Sachmates. Since which time the Chans acknowledge, as chiefe, the Empire of the Turkes. The Viceroyes, or Princes of the Tartars of Taurica, or the Peninfula are constituted by them, they receiue thence a Banner, and giue their fonnes and brothers Soldans for perpetuall pledges to

60 Notwithstanding, after the ancient custome of their Nation, they make a Galga or successor The Galba or to the Empire(as the French doe their Dolphines) the brother or eldeft fenne and more fufficient, heyre appawho hath the greatest sway in peace and warre, but the Chans themselves perpetually depute and rant. elect them, but with the approbation of the Tartar Nobles. And if also any diffention or war be raifed betweene the Soldans or the Chan about the Empire, the Turkifb Emperour neglects not to

dispatch the Soldans pledge, with an Armie and Standard into Taurica or the Peninsula: and it is fufficient for him to be Prince, the Chan and Sultan being appealed or forced to goe away by warre, for which cause he hath alwaies many Innizaries in Tanrica, or the Peninsula.

Election of the The election of the Chans, after the ancient custome of the Nation , did whilelome confist in the free fuffrages of the Dukes, Murfies, and nobleft Tartars. Furthermore, for their frequent difcord and hidious warres which were occasioned by the Nogaian Tartars bordering on Tamica, or Sachibgiereim. the Poninfula about the Empire, Sachibgiereim and Dealetigereius, being Chans over the Tartars. having by tubtiley deftroyed the more noble and potent Tartars, and caft them into fetters, began absolutely to domineere over the Tartars, and by force to draw the election to their posteritie, the Emperour of the Turkes ayding them.

But if the Chas will not conftitute his brother Galga, but his owne fonne, as it often fortunes, by reason of those discords and reciprocall butcheries among themselues, hee circumuents craftily and fubtilly all the Soldans brothers, and couertly makes them away. Yet most of them siye to the Tarke, of whom they are bountifully entertained and comforted, and

receive a perpetuall stipend of him.

The Soldans younger formes of the Chans are educated and tutered by the Tartars, or more noble Marfies, lest that when they are at mans effate, by reason of their pluralitie, diffentions, or warres might arise : for each Chan acknowledge a supreme Dominion, and when they are growne vp, those that are fit are fet oner certaine Tartar troupes, and allure many voluntary Tartars vnto them, notwithstanding they make leaders of the Rogaien Tar- to tars, and remunerate with monyes and horses most of their parents, whom they esteeme more speciall and substantiall. Very often also through feare of treacheries or seditions among themfelues, being ayded by their Gardians fauour, they flye vinto the Christian or bordering Princes of their people.

The Chan hath Attalike Councellours, whom they fo terms from the care of their women, pa-

Attalici.

Hamiati

rents, or their wives, by whom those Sultans also are continually from their youth educated and provided for : hee hath Hamiatts, who are the Agents for exotick Princes affaires with him, and also perpetuall Court Officers. But especially hee conuocates to him the Dukes, Coracei, Vlani, and the nobler Mursi, and alwayes vieth to confult with them in weightie affaires. Hee hath principall and meet men Ministers of his Court, whose service hee veeth in his Ambassages, and in his divers other necessary businesses and imployments, who also are exalted to Counsellours and Court Officers. He alwayes maintaines those who are chosen out of the more renowned and illustrious Tartains youth, who are conversant in his Court by moneths interchangeably, and when they are made fit, are honoured with those dignities. Yet hee is chiefly and most delighted with the Cercesins, Nogaiens and Petogorens, who are very industrious, valiant, bold, and warlike. On the principall hee bellowes honourable gifts and annuall penfions, and of these his Court is alwayes replenished. In the Princes Court, the better reputed and nobler Tartars, are very richly and civilly decked, not to pride or superfluous laxurie, but for necessitie and decencie. For they are fo inriched by the lazie cowardife, and especially by the irreligious impiety of the neighbouring Christians, through making often inrodes, and getting rich booties, that the greater nobler of them in private wealth and domestick splendor, are little inferiour to the Tiokes. They 40 may have as many women by the Mahometicall Law as they will, and for the most part, they buy wines of the Petigorens, which although they fustaine and maintaine, not proudly, but very comely and civilly according to the countrey guife, but those by whom they have iffue very hodrabite letters nourably and gorgeously. They deliver their formes in their infancie to be instructed in the Arabike Letters, but they keepe not their daughtersat home, but commit them to the neerest in bloud to be prouided for. They place their fonnes growne to mans age in the Chans or Sultans

feruice, their mariageable daughters in wedlock to the more honourable and nobler Tartars

or Turkes.

Religion.

Those Tartars are Mahometans, and have Priests and Mosches, they vie the Chaldack or Arabike Letters, which they have received somewhat corrupted from the Tirks, although before they 50 came into Taurica or the Peninfula, they feeme to have beene a fauage and brutish Nation, and of very fauge conditions, which now also is very perspicuous by the rusticks : for they wanted then altogether those Lawes, Rites, Letters, and Manners. But the Tartars being taught by the Turks humanitie, and that falle worthip, the more nobler now generally practife hospitality.

Government and Lawes. The Cadi and Begs.

they plead their owne

Law or Iustice, is administred in the Towns or Cities of the Chan & other Sultans among the Tartars after the Mahometane Law. There are alwayes presbiterall Cadi or Judges in the Villages. Begi or Iustices, who heare and decide particular injuries: but causes of life, bloud, theft, which we call Criminall, or of Land, which we call Civill or Officiall; the Chan himfelie decideth with his Counfellours. In refoluing of which they need no Lawyer, nor vie tricks of law, calumnies, exnor Lawyers: culations nor procraft marions. The Tartars or Strangers, of meane condition, lay open them- 60 selues very freely their wrongs before the Judges and Chan, of whom they are alwayes heard and speedily discharged, for at any time any may have accesse to him. When hee comes in publike, men of the basest degree are not excluded, but being scene of the Chan are examined, to wit,

if they have any fuit, that they relate it. For they doe not onely performe great obedience to the Lawes : they adore and venerate their Princes in Gods fleed. All spiritual Indges (after Mahomets Law) are accounted among them for Saints, men of all equitie and integritie, fidelinie and opinion. The Princes and Magistrates execute and dispatch what focuer is bidden or com- Greet peacemanded suddenly and faithfully, with alacritie, promptnesse, and great feare. They are far from ablesesse to controueries, oriminations, inflices, vnneceffary and personal brawlings, enuy, hatred, filthy ex- the shame of ceste, luxury, and ambition in their victuals and array. I abode their nine moneths, neither Gospellers. heard I Criminall or Civill Act to have happened among them, or any composition by reason of enmitie.

10 In the Princes Court they weare not, nor at home Swords, neither Bowes nor any other No daily reweapon; except Wayfarers and Trauellers, to whom they are very courteous and friend- of weapons, ly. They are alwayes secure from Spoylers ; but except they keepe perpetuall watch , they are leffe tate from High-way-theeues, and Night-robbers, who feale nothing from them but

their Horses. Although they have a rich foyle, yet very few Gentlemen, or Plebeians provide for the houf. hold effate, for many neither till nor fow their ground : they abound with Horses, Camels, Oxena Kine, Sheepe and Flockes of all Cattle, and thereof line. Yet the Gentlemen have bread. fleft, meate, diftilled \* wine and Methoglin ; but the rufticks want bread, but vie stampt Millet, \* Agrante. and macerated with milke and water, which they vulgarly call Caffa, for meate ( and for drinke Meatand 20 they vie Mares milke) and cheefe. They feed on Camels, Horfes, and Oxen vnprofitable for drinke.

burthen , and kill them when they are about to dye , fometimes eatesheeps fiesh. The Gentlemen dwell not in the Plaines, but in the Villages of Tauries or the Penm (ula. They which are neere Woods liue in them, although many doe not possesse proper Villages; yet they have peculiar Lands and Manors. They vie the Ingarian, Ruffian, Moschonian, Valachian, or Moldanian Slanes. flaues, which they keepe, and whereof they have great plentie, as beafts to every worke. Their houses are of Timber, much after the Turkish fashion : but the Greeke Christians, who are in a few Townes, labour and till their grounds as beafts. The Tartars ferue the Chan or Tartarian Nobles, being hired at no price, but onely that they may have meate and appearell : but the reft . and the greatest part of them are alwayes idle. In the Cities or Townes are very few Merchants : but 3c some few practise Mechanick crafts, and some Merchants or Artificers are found there, either Merchants

Christian Slaves or Turkes, Armenians, Iewes, Cercessiums, Petigorens, (which are Christians) Phylistius, or (jugans, men of obscure and lowest degree. Those Tartars, which live in the Plaines beyond Percepia, or in the Peninfula have no woods, every where digge Wells. They vie in flead of Wood Beafts dung, which their Bond-mengather in the Fields, and dry in the Sunne and houfes of the same forme, whereof mention is made in the former description. Those Tartars, which are Slaves and Subjects of the Chans, Sultans, and other Noble-men, are drudges, and alwayes Tana flaves, keepe and pasture their Lords innumerable Herds of Cattle; and although they goe from place to place, into the Plaines and Pastures, in severall Streets, Hamlets, Townes, or Villages, by separated troupes (or hords ) whereof they beare the Names, and of their Masters, so that men ao may eafily find there, those Tartars Slaves which they seeke to buy.

The Char hath alwayes by the leagues and agreements, an annuall Donatine of the King of Tributes Polonia, the great Dukedome of Litsania, the Palatine of Moldania, and Cercafian, and Nogaien Embaffidors. Tartars, The Legats, Orators, Meffengers, Truchmen of those Princes come to him yeerely, whom fometimes he entertaines benignely and bountifully, but fometimes receives, mifutes, and detaynes a great while after a more then brutish manner. When therefore they come into Perecopia, one of the Chans men meets them in the Summer, in the Medow or Plaine, where they rest under a Tent: in the Winter they are opportunely and commodiously conuaved into the Village of Alma, or Bacchafanium more fafely bordering on the Towne of the Kings Palace, But Alma after they are lodged there, they are faluted by the Counfellours or Servants of the Court in the to Chans name, which procure them refreshing or victuals, two oxen, or one, some sheep, bread, wine,

and barley, not liberally, but in a kind of hospitalitie, and moderately sufficient for once. But when they are called to the Chan, hee heares them, the Soldans, Tuians, Vlans, Marzies, chiefe Counfellours, and many other Ministers of his Court and principall Tartars being present, they are conducted onely by one man to the Chans gate, but are brought in by two Counsellours. When as therefore they are entred in, they reuerence the Chan, after the ancient custome of the Nation, and having faluted him on bended knees declare their meffige, and are admitted to eate with him. They are honoured with cups and goblets gilded and emboffed with gems, filled with Mead or Methegline reached from the Chans hand, after the order of that people, in figue of clemencie and beneuolence, which they drinke on bended knees. And when they are dispatched, 60 the Chan inuites them againe to a Feast. The Feast being ended, they goe backe a little from the Palace doores, and are rewarded with Silke Vests wouen with Gold as low as the anches, prepared after the guife of the Nation, with one Horse or two, not seldome with Captines of their

owne people. And so attired with those Vests they returne agains to the Chan, and render

thankes to him for his hospitalitie and liberalitie, and having saluted him, depart from the Ban-

ket. Sometimes a small provision is procured for them by one of the Chest men in his Domis nions when he takes his sourney, and he is conuayed by him as farre as Boriftbenes.

The Turkyb Emperours have made that authoritie conflant to the Chan, in Tamica, or the Baffa of Capha, Peninfula, to that when the Baffa of Capha, or the Sansak dye, he rules all the Segniories in the Pea ninfula, vntill the Turke hath lent thither another Saniak, or whom he will preferre ouer Capba. The Chan hath a common Custome-house with the Turke, at Percepia, Casionia, Capha, and other Cities of Taurica, or the Peninfula, which are of the Turks & Empire. Hee demands annually a contribution of the Tartars, Armenians, lewes, Gercasians, Petigorens, and Grecian Christians, of whom he hath very few in his Dominion; the Turkes are only excepted : euery day are paid for a perpetuall shpend out of the Turkes Exchequer twentie fine Dollers to the Chen, twelve to Dollers and a halfe to the Galea, to the Soltan pledge two and a halfe, and to the fame Hoftage, Villages, and ample Farmes neere Adrianople, called Ianboln, are given by the Tarke. To the Dukes, Caiaks, Vlans, and Murzies, and many others which take pay, are given conftant wages according to each of their estates. Notwithstanding the Chan alwayes payes every yeere to the Turky Emperour Captines taken in warre of both lexes, the most excellent and precious Furs, and also baser, Butter and Salt, wherewith Taurica or the Poninsula abounds. And into whatso. euer warre he shall bee sent or called, he may refuse, neither may hee wage warre with any, but the Duke of Moscho, without the Emperour of the Turkes leave or knowledge. The Chan exacts annuall pecuniarie Rents from the better fort of Captiues taken in warre, three pieces of Gold; of the raskalitie one Doller, and a tenth of them; but from each of the Fountaines, which 20 are many in his Dominions, in the Plaines of Taurica, or the Peninfula, one Horse of the Tarrars: but any necessitie enforcing the Chan, all the Tartars decree a certaine contribution to him. The

Warres.

Tartars Nobles, alwayes at home, and in warre also, yeeld him sustenance of divers forts; for hee neither tills nor fowes. Hee hath alwayes proper Herds of Horfes , Camels, Oxen, and infinite Flockes of Sheepe. Hee hath a peculiar money of base Copper, which is coyned in Crimum, a Towne of his Dominion , round money, whereof tenne are esteemed at a Turk ile Silver Afper. which makes one Polonian Groat or leffe. But I being present, there were flamped greater Copper money filuered ouer, which was valued at fine Afpers. In coyning it he hath a great and plentifull gaine ; for in three or foure yeeres, of the fame money, which is carried by all the Tartors of Strangers into the Mint, new invented money is alway stamped. For in all Taurica, or the Pe- 30 ninfula, it is lawfull for none ( Tartar or ftranger)even in the Cities of the Tarkes Dominion, vnder a capitoll punishment and confiscation of goods, of what estate soener hee bee, to exchange Turkib pieces of Gold, or the Doller of Strangers, or the Turkes Silver Afper into Turter covne of the other value. Neither is it lawfull to buy with Gold or Silver coyne, but Tartarian, which all frangers ( none excepted ) perpetually receive by the Chans Edick.

When the Chan is about to go to any war, he first fignifies to all the Tartars of his Dominions by the Seruitors of his Court, and commands them that they prepare themselues for war, within three ( or at the most ) in foure weekes, and that they provide for themselves victualls for three or foure moneths. That fuftenance is carried in Leather-bags, and those Bags among the Gentlemen are carried on Horles. And they carrie with them food of Millet parched in the fire, or 40 flamped, or ground; for they have Mills, and thereof fleeped in water, the most make meate or drinke. They carry Cheefe and Flesh, and Mares-flesh dried in the Suntthey cut them in pieces boyled or drie, and taking out the bones put them in Sackes. They line with Mares-milke and Cheefe, and fowre milke, which they tempering with a certaine Art, hold an excellent food. The Chan hath only one Chariot with him for any danger of ficknesse; also a few Camels, where on is carried for his owne person Aquanita, or some other provision wherewith he is easily satisfied. But the Tartars fenerally fet meat before him and his Courtiers, the gentlemen(yet very few of them) not feldome carry a little drie bread, and a little Aquanita on Camels, or in lighter Carts,

Manner and Art of warre.

But after the Chan hath determined any warlike Expedition, he prepares very speedily some exercifed men in an indifferent number, and chooseth them sometimes Tartars, but more fre- 50 quently Cercefians, Petigorens, and those which are accounted spies of Regions and Provinces of other Princes, and expert Way-leaders, they verie well know each particular passage of Places and Borders, and Fords of Rivers. And when they come into the Marches , they goe into the necre confining circuits, and each in fundrie places view all things, and diligently feeke for Captines, which when they have intercepted, they returne with them speedily to the Chan, of whom, vling interrogatories, the Char quickly is acquainted with the estate of those Prouinces where his skouts haue beene. Forthwith therefore hee assignes the day of progresfion to the Tarrars, wherein hee stirres alone, and premiseth speedily some servants of his Court, through all that Hord or Prouince. They constraine and inforce to goe to warre and follow the Chan all Tartars and Christians of his government, men and youth, if they can but lit on horses (be- 60 fides impotent old men and children) who although they want Armes and Hories, yet are accommodated by the welthier in hope of spoyle. But in eight, or at the vtmost in tendayes after the Chang departure, al of them follow him into certain new defined places, which are beyond Perecopor toward Borisi benes, the Galga, Soltans, Dukes, Murzies, & the most approved valiant and chiefe

Warriours and Souldiers, being gathered and convocated together: and they being called to his Councell, first the later Capriues and privie Searchers also are examined, at length they suddenly confult of the featonablenetic of time, places, occasion of well ordering the matter, and whether the warre be then commodiously to be profecuted. And mutuall confent and counsell being made and determined; yet none of these things is confusedly disulged to the multitude.

From the same place therefore the Ministersof the Court of the Chan, Galga, and Soltans 20ing before the companies of the Dukes, Marzons and other Tartarian Nobles (which they lead and rule according to the ancient claime of their kindred, and call them by various appellations in their Language) the Chan mours the Armie vnder the Entignes, following in a meane order To after the ancient custome of the Nation: but after they have fet foot in their enemies Land, againe he fends before a certaine number of the most experienced and skilfullest Espials. They goe before the Atmie, and ien I backe to the Char whatioeuer Countreymen or others they shall take and meet with; from whom hee may bee certified of the condition and armie of the enemies. But when the Chan is certainly informed that no armie of enemies comes out against him, he againe makes a Campe-councell with his Nobles and Peeres, how farre and wide he ought to endamige his enemies Dominions. Then at length he goeth flowly forward in a perfect order with all his Hoaft, and commands upon penaltie of their heads to kill all the obuious Rustickes, left 20 after they should be taken by the Tarrars, they should peraduenture make an escape, and certific his enemies of his bands to the hurt of his men. Moreouer, they kill not women nor children, nor lay hold on them, nor dare lay hands of any of the prey, left his armie should be furcharged

with it, and cause some stay in his proceeding. But when the Chan comes with his armie to the Castles, Townes, Villages, Hamlets and manured places, he elects ten, or at the most fifteene thousand Souldiers with their Dukes . Marzons, and chiefe of his Court, and most notable, best tryed, and principall men of Armes of all his Hoall, and leaves them in his owne jurifdiction in his flanding Campes, or in the fiege of fome Fortrefle; then he makes ready the Galga, other Solians, Dukes, Marzons, and the reft of the Armie, which then is mustred some thousands. And that Armie being spread abroad in divers bands, ouer each of which the best esteemed and ablest men are made Captaynes, is extended in longitude more then ten miles, and in latitude as much. And as they affemble among them-20 felues at the farthest in feuen or eight dayes, but at the foonest in three or foure running about in troupes through divers places, and leading straying preyes, and wasting with fire and Sword whatfoeuer they meet with, returne to the Campe : but if they come not backe at the prefixed day to the fortified Campe, they waite not for them, but all the Armic with wonderfull celeri-

tie moue in their arrayes, out of the standing Campe.

And when as then also the Chas is truly signified that no Armie pursues him, he prouides for places not medled with by his troupes, an Armie of fome thoulands of selected Horsemen, and as yet vnwearied. He employes as many more also in ambulbes in divers places neere the Townes and Caffles obvious to the Tarters, left that Armie might without delay fall into the lying in waite on any of their companies. But if he bee certified by his Scouts of any numerous hoaft of 40 Enemies, he neuer commics the matter to an univertal fight, but goes forward flowly and cauteloufly with his bands: but if the Chan be certainly affored that the Troups of his Aduerlaries are many and valiant, he retires a little, and feekes for the better husbanded and peaceabler places, and with wonderfull agilitie in his precipitious flight, spoyles them with fire and sword, and intends to returne home with the bootie that hee had hastily driven away. But if then hee hopes his enemies cannot ouertake him, he marcheth with his Armie, yet not too fecurely, almost in the order to his confines.

But affoone as the Chan is entred into his Borders, he takes the tenth of the principali Cap. The Chans times throughout all the Armie. But the Captaynes of companies, and they which have brought rentha greater number of captines, cull out of each Band the principall for themselves. The other Tortars of the promifeuous multitude divide the Prifoners among their troupes. Notwichitan-50 ding before they come to that partition, they first satisfie all those which running about by Bands haue loft Hories, Garments, or any thing elfe. They fell to the Tartars both Noble and

Ignoble captines, if they shall appoint no price whereby they may free themselves, because the Chambeing vitiated with the Merchants giftshath feta great value on them.

The condition of captiues is very milerable among the Tarters, for they are grieuously oppreffed by them with hunger and nakednesse, and the Husbandmen with stripes, so that they rather desire to dye then to line. Many of them moned with the present calamitie, and follie, tell the Tarters that they are Gentlemen, and have wealthy and rich parents and friends. They promife of their owne accord a great and almost inestimable ransome, which the barbarous, im-60 pious, couetous, hungry, and cruell Nation feekes almost daily to increase with all kind of sub-

tilties and Examinations, tyes them in fetters, vieth them therefore more hardly. But when they understand that an Agent of their people is come to the Chan, they meete him with their captines, of whom sometimes they require the price fallly nominated by themselues, or some-

Manner of redemption.

times promifed by the Prifoners: but the Agent who wel knowes the craft and deceitfulnesse of the Tartars, finds fault with the captives foolifhnesse, and tell the Tartars that they are neither noble nor rich, and that they knew not, nor will euer be able to pay the price, and as though they were neither moued with Pietie nor Religion r. ject them. Yet the Agent is diligent that they be inscribed in the Catalogue, and if they have a purpose to ransome any with their own mony, they hold it expedient to luborne lewes or Tarters, and other Merchants being corrupted with mony : by whom, being as it were neglected and rejected by the Agent, they are releated at a far easier rate. Nothing therefore is more frequent to the captines, then to promise and offer to the Tarters this price, for which they are fold to the Turkes, lewer, and stranger Merchants, and others beyond the Sea, or a little more, or twice so much, if they bee able to per- Ie forme it: but if they cannot learne of the Ruftickes or others what they are, as the Tare says are for the most part, went often to enquire of their captines, they are content with little. Neither doe they fell them to ftrangers, but rather to the Agent of their Nation : but if they are not redeemed by the Agent, they command them to write to their Parents or Kinffolke. Also many captures are delivered with the exchange of Taria captures, in providing for and freeing of whom , the Tartars exhibite and shew farre greater pietie , friendlineffe and care, then our Christians. For difrepecting all price, they first demand their Tarter captines in exchange of ours, which often promifing the same and not able to performe it, wie to bring upon themselues a farre greater discommoditie. For they aske of them almost an vnuslusble fumme, wherewith they prize their Tartars, which when they are not able to pay, 20 they fell them to barbarous Nations ouer the Sea for perpetuall flaues, for as great a price as they can, and very often at an excessive rate, or if the Tantars are wealthy, they condemne them to

The Chan hath all his Tartar Armie gathered of Horsemen, except some hundred Gunners Imizaries, Footmen, which are either Turbif Auxiliaries, or fome of his owne which he maintaynes. He is accustomed to carrie with him some smaller Ordnance to warre. From Tauries or the Peninfula the Perecopens, and Crims, Offoniens, Nogariens, Cerceffians, are Tributaries and Souldiers for aide, the Duke of the Cerceffians, Petigorens are Stipendaries and Mercenaries, and are wont to goe voluntaries to the Chans warres. The Occasioniens and Bialogradeus, also they who by the continual couenants which they have with the Tarkil Emperour, fometimes allo 30 the Debrusen Tartars and Inhabitants of Dannbins, by the command of the Emperour of the Turkes follow him to warre. All that Hoaft collected out of those Turkers, is wont to make the number of a hundred and twentie thousand, sometimes also thirtie thousand more, but not feldome to exceed that Summe, I have bin truly informed by many credible Christians, which often follow the Chans warres, and by some captined Gentlemen of our Nation, who have many times feene his Armie.

All have according to their vie Tartarian Horles, neat, excellent, flomackfoll, fwift, and indifferent good and commodious to vndergoe great labours. The Chan, most of the Solians, and Tartar Nobles vie in warre Turkih, Caramanian, Arabian, and other Asian, Tartarian, and the best Out-landish Horses. The swiftest Horses are accounted among them at a great and almost ine- 40 stimable price. They alwayes feed them Summer and Winter in the Plaines of Taurica or the Peninfula, but very often as farre as the Rivers Borifibenes and Tanais: the Gentlemen nourish at home very few Horles, only for their vegent occasions, not for any arrogancie or luxurie. They feldome put their lades and unprofitable Horses for riding in the Waggon, for they doeall their bufineffe with Camels and Oxen.

Their Armes.

The Tartars vie their ancient weapons, a two-edged Sword, or Tartarian Cymiter fomewhat long, and a Turkift Dart, or a Perfian, shorter and broader of the best Iron, and well wrought; a peculiar Tartarian Bow, along Arrow, and swift; a Quiver, sometimes a short Speare after the old guize of their people. They goe with Brest-plates and Helmets, and in Persian or Mosconian Armes, wherewith they abound being enriched by the spoyle of Christians. They 50 haue ancient Saddles and Bridles after the custome of the Nation, very fitting, not for pride or superfluitie : the Nobles have them prepared very elegantly, strongly and compendiously for their vie. But most in the Tartar Armie are altogether vnarmed and cowards, and they carrie with them to warre by reason of their great Hoast, almost an infinite number of Horses. For a Store of Hor- Tartar even of the bafest condition will scarcely be content with one or two Horses, but three, foure, and more, which he may have alwayes readie with him at his hand. Therefore the Armie of the Tartars is made so numerous, great and terrible, which when it is seene afarre off, is decmed by our men almost an infinite and innumerable Hoast.

Now when the Tartarian Armie is come into their enemies Country, the Tartars ranke not themselues in bands or troupes, but all set forward and proceed leisurely. They dispose many 60 Watchmen in all parts throughout their companies, which they make greater or leffer for their Flight fayard. Supply, but after that the foremost of them have described their enemy, they counterfeit a flight, that they may more easily allure them into those troupes, which they have laid in ambushments,

and so ouer-charge him. But when they espie a great Armie of enemies, they make a retraite quickly and speedily to their Armie, Rankes, and Banners.

There is great celeritie in conflictuting and governing their troupes, feeing that they are not ruled onely by the advertizements of the Generals and Prafects of their Regiments, but also by Their Dift. the thew of Whips, as is the long continued practice of the Nation ; and they are subject to to pin

a becke, that they are very eafily brought into their Ranges, when focuer it is necessary.

The Chan is alwayes for tified in warre, with a band of frome thousands of noble and coura. His strength. gious Tortors in number, some hundreds of Institution, Footmen, and some small Ordnance. In The principall, the Chams Regiment a very great white Maret tayle, and a piece of Greene and Red Salke of Engine a Maret tayle and the Tortol Emperour is carryed before on a great Pike for the Standard. There appears in the

troupes of the other Tartars, many Ancients and Enlignes of various colours.

The more famous Souldiers, and they which are notable in reputation, dexteritie and warlike Prowes, and have archieved in warre some Noble Sprudee and Enterprize, are greatly honoured by the Chen, Soldens, Kimiazons, and Maraons. And that refpect is had to thom, shat nourse up the common the common that the with sensy me great base for and footh liberrietis, as he can flew them, but allo is to mindful of their deligns and membershire he stig over them and indeficient or the common that more noble Marious. That dignitie among the Tarters in the greatest and Hereditary, for they going to warre able and experienced men which possesse the place, are dignised by the Clear, 20 with the glorie of leading the Troupes. The Chan also frees some Tarrar captives wish the permutation of captines, and in ranfoming others be largely powers out his owne Treasure, and willingly comforts them as he is able.

### CHAP. XXII.

#### DITHHAR BLEFERNS his Voyages, and Hifterie of Island and Groenland.

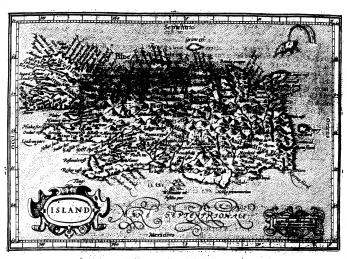
N the yeere 1565. \* two Hamburg Merchants thips determined to fayle to a Hepabli Iffand, the Mariners, by an ancient cultome, defirous to have a Minister of Gods thed this Book Word with them, commend this care to the Ministers of the Church of Ham- dame 1607. burg, and intreat them to prouide them a Minister. One Doctor Panton of Etzen was then Superintendent of the Church of Hamburg. While therefore I flayd at Hamburg, expecting my Library from Roffeeb, I entred into some familiariste with Paulus, and the rest of the Ministers. This Office was bestowed vpon me, which I vndertooke the more willingly, because I had a longing defire to know strange things, and divers Countries, yeelding to their perswasion. Taking thip therefore the tenth of Aprill, wee sayled voon the Coust of England and Sectland, and passing beyond the Ilands Oreades, in number fifteene, whereof the

most part lye vnmanured for the barrenesse; Foron and Hitland are inhabited : Here wee law a very high Rocke, which in the top representeth the head of a cooled Monke , where also there is a fafe Harbour against all winds, and this Monke delivereth many from prefent dangers. The fourteenth of June we descryed Island, which feemes afarre off, like winter clouds. The next day we attayned the Land and Haven of Haffenefords toward the South,

Ifeland is a rough, hilly and fnow ie Land, which is supposed to bee twice bigger then Sicilia: it is thought to be a hundred leagues in length, which also Olans Magnus testifieth in his eleventh Booke. It hath the name of the perpetual Ice, and coldnesse of the Ayre, which is there most tharpe: for eight whole moneths it is troubled with fee: It burneth not withfranding with heat and inward fire in many places. The extremitie of cold increaseth this heate in the bowels of 50 the earth, which cold continueth the greater part of the years (a few Summer mounths excepted) and so bindeth the pores in the vpper part of the Earth, that it can have no free venc. And this Iland hath fo great a Latitude from the Aquator, that the Arctick Circle divides it in the middeft, that is to fay, fixtie fine degrees and a halfe. The Hands called Ebude, are object to the North part of this lland. But whether that be of thefe, which Ptolomie, and ancient Writers call Thule, or rather I feland, that great Iland, I dare neither affirme, nor altogether denie, because there is no Iland found where Prolemie fet Thule. Now, the later Writers make another manner of longitude about Scotland, and the bordering Hands, then Prolemie ever thought.

I will draw the Descent of this Nation from their first originall, following the truth of the Island Chronicles. In the yeere of Christ 900. in the time of Alebrand Bishop of Brane, cer-60 tayne of the Nobilitie of East Frifia, and of the Countrey of Breme, definous to discouer thrange Countries toward the North, fet fayle from Wefer, and passing beyond the Oreader, found this Hand almost in the vemost skirts of Europe, yet habitable, but full of Snow : which they called Heland, for the coldnesse and roughnesse thereof. And when they had fayled further towards the North about two hundred leagues, they found another Hand, which (by contraries)

# HONDIVS his Map of ISLAND.



they named Groneland. Endeaucuring to fayle further towards the North, through the frozen Mifts ordinary or congealed Sea, being long hindred by the Ice, at length with great labour getting out, they in those Seas. fell into whirle-pooles of the Sea, and thicke darkenesse.

See of Illand originall the

In these whirle-pooles and darknesse, this Fleet (one onely Ship excepted) perished. They that were preferred, after many long labours and perils, fayling through the Tartarian Sea, came oniginall the next Chapter.

Antiquisies Land. And when the Inhabitants had hid themselves in secret places, by reason of the great are often my- heate and foorching of the Sunne, they faw Gold, and other precious things fet heere and there, Rical, ormythis without a guard. And when they had carryed away afmuch as they would, and hafted to the cal & fabulous Ship, they faw some pursue them with Dogs of strange bignesse. One, who was hindred and laden with a prey that bee could not estape; was torne in peeces of the Dogges. The rest, after long fayling, shunning these Whirle pooles, arrived in Musiconia, thence by the Balticke Sea returning voto Breme, they brought backe thefe tidings to Alebrand the Bishop, with part 50

Much about this time, the Normerians, by example of the Helnetians in Iulius Cafars time, are supposed to have come out of Norwey, who then long time possessed that part of France, which now.alfo is eall Normandie. And when they had performed great attempts by Sea and Land against the Britaines, they did not onely scoure the Sea by hostile incursions, but also expelled the Saracens, who at that time came into Italy, and fought to feat themselves in Calabria and Apulia. After they brought Colonies Northward into Hisland, Feron, and Island: which way, they learned of the Bremians, by meanes of the Nobilitie of Frifia aforefaid. And even the very proprieties their speech doth testifie, that they came out of Norway: for the pronunciation of the I falanders doth agree with the antient Inhabitants of Norway. For vpon the Sea coalt of Nor-60 men, especially where the famous Hauen and Citie of Bergen is, by reason of the refort and familiantie with the Germaines and Dones, the Language is changed.

### CHAP. 22. Iseland Bishops, Reformation of Religion, Tadde Bonde.

Of the Iselanders Religion.

N the yeere of Christ 1398. Woldemarus, the second of that name governed the Danish King. dome, whereunto Norway was added, whose posteritie held it, vntill Ericus Duke of Pomerania, and Christopher Banar. Vnto this Waldemarns all the Aritoian Colonies obeyed, fo that now, under that Woldsmarus, the I folunders were first instructed in the Christian Religion, when before they had worthipped ftrange Gods. And when almost all Christian people, in that lamentable darkeneffe and title of a Church, as it were by Witchcraft deceiued, were detayned in most deepe bonds of superstition ; it could not bee but they, who were furthest removed from the focietie of Learned men, and dwelling vader an vaciuill and barbarous Climate, should fall into most foule Idolatrie, when sometimes (as hereafter shall bee declared) they had Deuils to serue them, as familiar as domesticall servants. But after Luber began to bee knowne, Christianus the The Christian King of Demairke procured purer Doctrine to himselfe, and purged the Churches in the King- care of King dome of Denmarke, Norway, and all the Ilands subject voto him; fending Ministers into Ifeland, Christian, to fow the feede of the Gospell there. Hee fent a Printer also out of Demarke, to let forth the Bible, the common places of Philip Melantilion, the Workes of Vibanus Regins and others, in the vulgar Tongue, to the Paltors who were ignorant of the Latine, as at that time almost all of them were. And also sent for fit and apt young men out of Iseland, whom hee maintayned in the Haffnian Vniuerlitie at his owne costs, and gaue them charge over Churches

King Woldemare, as soone as they should professe Christian Religion in Iseland, ordayned them two Bilhops, one in Scalbolden in the East part, and another in Hollen in the West, whose Suc. Two Bishops ceffours at this day retayne nothing but a shadow, and a bare Title, for they have no other reve- in Ifeland. mues but Butter and Fish. But when that reformation (whereof I spake) was made by King Christian in the Churches of Isaland, one of the Bishops in Scalbolden, conspiring with the people, reiects the Doctrine of the Gospell, and making a rebellion they kill the Kings Lieutenant. The yeere following, which was 1535, the King fent a Noble man of the Order of Knighthood, one Paul Hitfelt (whom I faw an old man in Demmarke) furnished with a Fleet, Souldiers, and Municion into the Iland. The feditious being flaine, hee renueth the reformation of the

charge of the Church and Hand.

The greatest man in Iseland at that time was one Tadde Bonde. Hee, after the Kings Armie Tadde Bondie was departed, conspiring with the principall men (whom by his Authoritie hee drew to take was departed, computing with the party and perfect of the Ilanders to follow. They his part) revolted from his Allegiance, and perfect of the Ilanders to follow. They meete together in a place called Waloe, and conspiring to rebell, and cast off the Kings Subjection, they impart their counsels together, and Tadde had his possitions not in one place, and many retayners, and for these causes hee thought they could not easily bee suppressed. The Bishop who dwelt in the East, had a speciall care to acquaint the Kings Lieutenant with all that was done (for the Lieutenant was ablent in the Weit part of that Iland) and the Bishop hated Tadse a long time. For in that first Rebellion, hee had fallly accused him to the Lieutenant as guiltie, and au-

3C Doctrine of the Gospell, and returneth into Demmarke, leaving a certayne Noble man to take

thor of the Rebellion. This acculation onely brought great and extreame calamitie v pon him. The Lieutenant being certified what was done, hee perswadeth by fit instruments, some of the Complices of the faction, to continue in their Allegiance, propounding rewards and punishments. Then many of them when they faw the greatnesse of the danger, leauing him, came humbly to the Lieutenant, and begge pardon, and obtayne it. Tadde therefore is adjudged an Enemie, both of the King and of his Countrey, they promife therefore by an Oath and giving of their Faith, that they will purfue him.

Then hee, through feare of the danger, with a few of his Domestickes which hee had gatheso red together, kept himselfe at the foote of Hekelueld, but being circumuented they were all flaine, and hee taken. They that tooke him, brought him to the Bishop, to commit him to Prifon, but hee refused to receive him. Therefore they draw him to another certains man, of those who had the chiefe place in Iustice, neither would hee receive him, fearing the hatred of the people. There was at that time there a certayne Ifelander, Ionas by name, a man of courage. I know (fayth hee) to whom I will commit him, that will diligently keepe him, and foorthwith hee flew him and buryed him. And to the Sedition was appealed. And from that time vntill this day, the Word of God is taught among it Barbarous men, after the manner of the Couteffion of Augusta.

The Life and Manners of the Iselanders.

IN the whole Iland, there are three forts of men, who are held in any reckoning and account: Three forts of for the common people, by reason of the scarcitie of Ships wherewith they fish, make them. People. felues flaues to the richer. Of those three forts, the first is of them whom they call Lofbmaders,

Ale to his mouth, drinking off it as if hee had had but one small measure,

Strength,

Hibite.

Drinke,

a loud lie.

Bread.

the whole Hand.

one, to often doth he thanke him, with his head discourred, and this they doe one to the other, as

By night the Mafter of the house, with all his family, his wife and children lye in one roome, Lodging. covered with a cloth made of Wooll which they make. And the like clothes they lap vnder them, without straw or hay put wider. All of them make water in one chamber-pot, with the which in the morning they wash their face, mouth, teeth, and hands; they alledge many reasons thereof, to wit, that this makes a faire face, maintaineth the strength, confirmeth the finnewes in the hands, and preferueth the teeth from patrifaction. If Cattle perish in the waters or fnow (which often commeth to paffe ) they fay, they are killed of God, and are accounted among the delicates. And it happened in the yeere 1964, in a place called Ackermiffe, that in the month of lanuary some Kine strayed in the darke, and the fogge was so great, and the depth of fnow, that they could not be found. In the moneth of April they were first found vntainted, and without any euill fmell, and being distributed among the neighbours, some part was brought to the Governour, with whom I lived at that time, which was not lawfull for him to despife, yet he

commanded it to bee given to the poore. In the Winter time, before and after the Solfinium, when the Sunne declineth, and being in Sagitarius, Capricornus, and Aquarius, it departeth from them, neither doth it afcend about the Long night. Horizon, while it touch Prices, therefore they have no light but of the Moone and Starres. In like manner about the Summer Solftimm, when the Sunne afcendeth to Gemini, Cancer, and Leo, it never goeth downe under the Horizon, therefore at that time they have no Night. In the Winter time, they keepe their Beds many dayes, and exercise themselves in the game of Chesse, Chesse,

the invention wherof is due to Xerxes the Philosopher: the meane while the fervants bring them 30 their meate dressed to their beds. They keepe Lampes of the oyle of Fish continually burning, others burne Tallow candles.

In the moneth of Februarie, as foone as the Sunne afcends about the Horizon by little and little the dayes grow longer, then they begin to Fish, whereof there is so great plentie, that it is scarce credible, for the Fishes which for three whole moneths swamme in the darke, as soone as they fee a fish of Tinne faitened to an Iron, they ranne to it in schooles, that they are not onely drawne vp by the jawes, but wherefoeuer the Iron toucheth them. Having taken them, they plucke out the bones, and lay vp their bowels, and make Fat or Oyle of them. They heape vp their Fish in the open ayre, and the puritie of the ayre is such there, that they are hardened one-

40 ly with the winde and Sunne, without Salt, better furely then if they were corned with falt. And if they kill any Beafts, they preterue the flesh without stinke or putrifaction, without salt, hardened onely with the winde.

Of the wonderfull standing Pooles, Lakes and Fountagnes in Isoland.

IN divers places almost throughout the whole Hand are Bathes and scalding Fountaynes, which Hot Bathes I flow out in great abundance. This water as foone as it begins to coole, hath a Sulphurie fub-Hance in the top thereof. In these scalding waters, wherein I could scarfe dippe my finger, red Diue-doppers are seene afarre off, if you come neerer, they vanish, if you depart, they appeare againe, fo all day long (if any please) they play boe-peepe with men. Whether they bee Dine- Dinesdoppers.

50 doppers indeed, I leave it to others to decide. At the West of this Iland, there is a buge smoakie Lake, and very cold, which turneth all Sconcemaking things that are cast into it into itones, and that in few dayes, and (which is worthy of great ad- water. miration) if you put afticke vpright into the botcome, the lower part which is flucke into the earth, hath the relemblance and hardneffe of Iron after two dayes, that which was in the water hath the hardnesse and show of a stone, the upper part which remayned about the water, keepeth his wonted forme : And I twice proved the truth of this thing, but when I put the lower Note.

part (which represented Iron) to the fire that it might melt, it burned like a Coale. There are two Fountaynes of most different qualitie, in a place youn the Sea coast, which is called Turlocks Hauen, the one cold, the other hot; their Fountaynes by pipes are drawne into 60 one place, and tempered for bathing, they make a most wholesome Bath. Not farre from these Fountaynes, there is a certaine other Fountayne, which bubbles foorth liquor like Wax, which French diseases

notably cureth the French difease, which is very common there. Not farre from the Hauen Haffnefords, there is a cleft in a Rocke like to a Fountayne of vn-

deth alwayes at the Table, watchfull if any becken; to him that beckeneth thee gives the chamber-pot under the Table withher owne hands; the rest in the means while grunt like Swine, least any noise bee heard. The water being powred out, hee washeth the Bason, and offereth his feruce to him that is willing, and hee is accounted vacuill who abhorresh this fashion. They Louing entertaine them that come voto them with a kille, and they behold and looke each on other, if wormes, paraduenture they may fee Lice creeping on their garments, which greatly trouble them for want of linnen : if thy fee any, each taketh them from the other, and as often as he taketh away

Both Sexes in Ifeland have the fame habite, fo that by the garments you shall not easily di-

strength of body which they have. If aw an I felander, who easily put an Hamburg Tunne full of feerne whether it bee Man or Woman. They want Flaxe, except it bee brought vnto them by our Countrey-men. The Women-kinde there are very beautifull, but ornaments are wanting,

that is to fay, Men of luftice : for Loch in their language, fignifieth Law. These men administer

They are in the place of Nobles, and as every one of them is richeft in Shipping, and Cattle, so

hee hath most Fishers, and followers. This onely power they know. The third fore is of Bi-

shops and Ministers of the word of God, of the which many are found every where throughout

There are many of the Iselanders very proud and high minded, especially by reason of the

Inflice, and there are many of them, but twelve of them onely have the yearely charge of Inflice.

ces cach yeare All men obey their Judgement and Decrees. Another fort is of them, who are called Bonden:

The whole Nation of the Islanders is much given to Superfittions, and they have Spirits fami-Superstition liarly ferging them. For they onely are fortunate in Fishing, who are raised up by night of the and Witchcraft. Deuill to goe a fifning.

And although the Ministers of the Gospell vie all diligence in diffwading them from this im-Night Rauens, pietie ; yet this wickednesse hath taken roote, and sticketh so deepely in their mindes, and they are so bewitched of Sathan, that they can admit no found Doctrine and Dehortation. Yea, by the Deuils meanes, if you offer them money, they promife prosperous wind and performe it, which 20

I know, as hereafter shall bee spoken. The like Olaus Magnus wreteth of the Finlanders in his third Books. They hold Ships also by inchantment almost immoueable, and that in a prosperous wind. Sweet factifice And truely it is a wonder that Sathan fo sporteth with them. For hee hath shewed them a refor the Deuill, medie in flaying of their Ships, to wit, the Excrements of a Maide being a Virgin : if they annount the Prow, and certaine planckes of the Ship, hee hath taught them that the Spirit is put to flight, and driven away with this tinke.

In the rest of the carriage of their life, they thus behaue themselues. The Parents teach their male Children (euen from their child-hood) letters and the Law of that Iland, fo that very few men are found throughout the whole lland, but they know Letters, and many Women vie our letters, and have also other characters, with the which they expresse some whole words of 30 theirs, which words can hardly bee written with our letters. They give themselves to hardnesse, and fishing from their Infancie; for all their life confists in Fishing. They exercise not Husbandrie, because they have no Fields, and the greatest part of their foode consisteth in Fish, ynsauerie Butter, Milke and Cheefe. In flead of Bread they have Fish bruited with a Stone. Their Drinke is Water or Whay. So they live many yeeres, without medicine or Phylitian. Many of them

live till they bee one hundred and fiftie yeeres old. And I faw an old man who fayd hee had Anoldman or then lived two hundred yeeres. Nay, Olaus Magnus in his twentieth Booke fayth, that the Ifelanders live three hundred yeeres.

The greater part of Ifelanders hath neuer seene Bread, much lesse tasted it. If our men at any time fell them Meale or Corne, they mingle it with Milke, and lay it vp for a long time, as de- 40 licates for Nobles. They call this fauce or mixture, Drabbett.

The Germaines that trade in Ifeland have a place in the Haven of Haffenefords fenced by Nature, where vnder Tents they fet their Merchandise to sale, as Shooes, Garments, Glasses, Knives, and fuch kinde of Merchandile of no price. The Ifelanders have Oyle molten out of the howels of Fishes, knowne to our Tanners and Shoomakers: they have Fish, Brimstone, white Foxe skinnes, Butter and other things. They barter all these for our Commodities, nor is the

bargaine ratified, before they bee well stuffed with our Meat, Wine or Beere, together with their Wives and Children whom they bring with them, how many foeuer they have. Comming into the Hauen, they have their Daughters with them which are marriage-able:

they after they have inquired of our companie, whether they have Wives at home, or not, they promise a nights lodging for Bread, Bisket, or any other trifling things. Sometimes the Parents 50 weeld their Daughters freely, even for a whole moneth, or as long as they stay. If shee proove with Child by that lying with her, the parents loue their Daughter better then before, and the Child being borne, they bring it vp fome yeeres, while either the Father returne, or they give it to their Sonne in law that (hall bee, for a Dowrie with their Daughter, who doth not despite it, because it is borne of the Germaine blood. It any Virgin have familiaritie with a Germaine, fliee is honoured among them, and therefore flee is fought of many Suiters. And the time was before this, that Whoordome, which was without the degrees of Confanguinitie and Affinitie, had no Infamie. And although Preachers crie out against it, and the offenders are severely puniflied, yet they hardly abiliaine.

They lay not vp Wine and Beere which they buy of our Countrey-men, but quaffe it vp 60 Drinking and house by house by course one with another, and that freely or for nothing. While they drinke, they fing the heroicall acts of their ancestors, not with any certaine composed order or melodie, but as it commeth in every mans head. Neither is it lawfull for any one to rife from the Table to

measurable depth. If you looke into it, you cannot see the water, but if you cast in a stone, halfe an houre after you shall heare it falling, as if it fell into brazen Vessels, and forthwith the water arifeth, and it is filled to the top of the Wels brimme, and it is a most cleere water, which notwithstanding no man dare touch, nor taste, neither doth it flow out, but so long after, as the ftone which is cast in, finketh to the bottome. There is another Lake in the middle of the lland, which cafteth forth a peftiferous fume, infomuch as it killeth Birds flying ouer it with the poy-

### Of the wonderfull Mountagnes in Island.

Here are three Mountaynes in Island very admirable, the one is called the Mountayne of the Croffe, the other Snenelflockell. These two pierce the cloudes with their height, whose heads, or tops no man euer faw, nor are they euer feene without Ice and Snow; in those, Lightnings and horrible Thunders are daily heard, when neuerthelesse, in the neighbouring Valleyes the Aire is faire and cleere, as in Summer time. The third Mountayne lyeth on the North of the Hand, and not very high, but it hath burned very many yeeres; with what fire or matter, it is vnknowne; but seeing Brimstone is digged out of the Earth throughout the whole Land, it seemeth, that the Salphurie matter is sometime inflamed. This Mountayne is not farre from the Sea, and the Sea on one fide beates vpon it : it is called Heela, fometimes it caffeth forth flame, fometimes fierie water, then blacke ashes and Pumis stones, in so great abundance, that it darke. 20 neth the Sunne. No man also can dwell neere it by fixe mile, neither are there any pastures about it. Sometimes bold men, and fuch as regard not their liues, cast stones into the hollow places; for sometimes there is a wonderfull calme in the Mountayne; of pecially when the Westerne wind blowes, it caffeth backe the stones stung into it with an horrible noyse and found; the common people thinke the foules of the damned to be tormented heere : it is certayne that diuers and horrible spirits are observed in this Mountayne and about it; for if a Battaile be fought in any place, the Islanders, especially they that sayle and fish in the Sea neere to Heela, know the day of the Battaile fought, although they know not where it be done : for they fee (as they report) wicked spirits going forth, and returning, and bringing soules with them. And such a storie is reported all I fland ouer.

Heela a bur-

Purga:orie.

A Fisherman fayling by Hecla, met with another ship, both had a prosperous wind, and when (after the manner of Saylers) he was demanded who hee was and of what place, hee answered, that hee had the Bishop of Breme in hisship, whom hee would conuay to Heela: and it was men, or illuse knowne that the Bishop dyed the same day, which not with standing, I would not set downe ons of Deuils, to truth. If any perish by Sea, or otherwise dye, sometimes leauing their Friends and Acquain-Animinous an Animinous and Ani so be witched of Satan, that they thinke them the foules of the departed.

But because no man that is well in his wits, will thinke that Hell is in this Mountayne, yet it may be demanded, whence the Hill hath this matter, whereby it should bring forth formany 40 yeeres flames, so many ashes, and such abundance of Pumis stones ? For wee see the most follid and firme bodies, and all things to be confumed by fire and for that cause some thinke, that it shall come to palle that these shall once be extingished? for the cause fayling, they deny that any effects can follow. But heere (what I thinke) I will freely speake, yet sauing other mens judgements. It is manifest by watry Meteors, that there is a continuall generation of water, by the vapours gathered together in the cauties of the Earth; which issueth forth by Fountayns; but the efficient and materiall causes abiding perpetually, the effects also continually remayne: so also in the bowels of the Earth, there are certayne places, which by their owne nature draw vnto them a hote and dry exhalation, and that it relolues it into flames, after, and Pumis flones, which may eafily be done in this Mountayne, by reason of the Sulphur matter, which is found in 50 Island throughout the whole Land. And as Fountaynessend forth more abundance of water in the Winter time, then in the Summer, nay, some of them are dry, because matter failes; sois it with this Mountayne : for sometimes matter failing, it hath neither slames, nor smoke, and all is quiet, whereby it appeareth that the matter and efficient cause faile. However it bee, I know this, that no man may come to the foot of the Mountayne without danger and feare, as hereafter shall be declared.

The same yeere I was in Island, the nine and twentieth of November, about midnight in the Sea, neere Hecla, there appeared a flame, which gaue light to the whole Iland, fo that all of vs aftenished, wondred, and carefully expected the issue thereof: the elder sort and such as were skilfull in this matter, faid, that this light came from Hecla: an houre after, the whole Iland 60 trembled, as it should have beene moved out of the place : after the Earthquake followed a horrible cracke, that if all warlike Ordnance had beene discharged, it had beene nothing to this terrour. It cannot be thought, much leffe expressed by word , how horrible it was. Wee thought that the whole frame of the World would fall, and that the last Day was at hand : but it was

knowne afterwards that the Sea went backe two leagues in that place, and remayned dry. About the beginning of July, at a certayn time of the years great flore of Ice fuldenly floteth to the Iland about Hecle, and there goes a rumour through the whole Iland, may it is believed, that the damned foules are tormented in this Ice by courfe, in the Flame, in the Mountayne, and Another wellafter in the Ice. This Ice for three whole moneths fwimmeth only about Hetla. If you take 2- der. ny part of this Ice out of the Sea, and wrap it in a linnencloth, and lay it vp in a Cheft, it remayneth follong vnmelted, as it swimmeth in the Sea; but if the Ice in the Sea vanish, which fuddenly in one night happeneth, this appeareth not , nor leaneth any figne of moyflure in the linnen cloth, which is not a hard thing for Satan to doe, to take away the Ice without moyflure, To coincrease their incredulitie. Olasse Magents maketh monion of this Ice in his sienemb Bodge.

But because I determined to fearch out all chings diligently, I fayled nor without great feare wato this Ice, and I observed, that this Ice was violently cast against the Rockes by force of the winds, and so made a mournfull found afarre off, as if milerable howlings were heard there. Hereupon the Islanders thinke the foules of the damned are tormented in this Ice.

### Of the Riches of the Manders.

Haue faid that Island was a rough and snowie Countrey, and besides, it is full of Rockes and flones; and formly, that there is not a field in the whole I and : they have not fo much as Gardens, wherein they may have Pot-herbes or Pulse : they know no kinde of Corne nor Apples, Peares, nor Cheries, nor any fruit of Trees. And, which is almost incredible, they neither Mofruits vie Bread nor Salt, yet they are well liking , and ftrong. There is no Citie in the whole Hand: they feldome have two or three dwellings together. They have their Cottages on the Sea fide for fishing, and under ground by reason of the fierce windes.

There is no lone of money among them, for wares are changed for wares. Brimftone groweth Barest. on the South part, and almost throughout the whole lland, which is digged out in great abun- Brimstonel dance: they fell this stuffe purged for a small price. Mines of Gold or Silver, nor of any other mettall they have none. They vie Iron, but fuch as is brought wnto them. You shall scarfe finde a man, who hath not Iron Nayles in a Bagge, wherewith Horfe-shooes are fastened.

All their houses are under ground, for they have no matter for building. There is not a tree in the whole Iland , except the Birch-tree , and that in one place, which also excee- Birch-tree. deth not the flature of a man in length, and that by reason of the vehemencie of the winds, that it cannot grow higher. This Birch-tree after the Summer Solftinium beginnes first to bud, the leaves have a most iweet smell, and of so fragrant a favour, that the Germones put them in their Tents, and voon their meats for a fingular delight. Yet sometimes great abundance of Firetrees from Tartaria, or elie-where carried by force of the waves and the Ice, arrived in Island. The chiefe vie of them is in building Cabbins under the ground; you shall fearly find a house out of the earth, by reason of the strong winds, which sometimes overthrow Horses and their Ri-Great winds ders. They have great plentie of Butter, for the tatnes of the graffe: for the Ifland graffe is fo fat. 40 that Oxen after a certaine time are to be driven from the Pastures, left they burft. And it is of fo pleafing a fent, that our men lay it vp in their Chefts with fingular care for their garments.

The most part (for scarcitie of Vessels) lay their Butter aside in the corners of their Houses, (as we doe Lime or other matter) and that without Salt. They have domesticall cattle, as kine; but many of them are without hornes. Al their Horses are amblers & very fit for carrying of burdens. Their kine, They have very great sheepe, they keepe not a Hogge nor a Hen, for want of graine, if fodder or horses, and They have very great theepe, they keepe not a riogge not a riet; to want or gland, it roots to the have falle them in the Winter, they feed their cattle with fish. They have rough Dogs bred with Dogs of more out tayle and eares for their pleafure, which they fell deere and greatly esteeme, when not withstanding they offer their children to any that will aske them, and that freely. Besides, this Iland children. hath white Foxes, and huge Beares of the same colour. They have no Birds but water-fowle, Beares and 50 whereof there are divers kinds and forts found there, vnknowne vnto vs. Crowes fometimes Fores. White Crowes are changed white; and excellent Falcons, and some among them white, which being taken and gotten, with the great coft of the Spaniards and Portugals, are also carried away in great number, which thing was done, while I was in /fland, to my great profit. Ifland also hath white Partridges. There are also every where through the whole Hand most pleasant Rivers, which yeeld Rivers,

the Inhabitants fish in great plentie, Salmon Trowts, and Sturgeons. There is one only bridge in all the Iland, made of the bones of a Whale. They that goe from one part of the Iland to another Whale-boneby the Continent, have no way which they may follow, for the folitarinesse thereof: but as Say - bridge. lers in the Sea, fothey by the helpe of the Load-ftone performe their journeyes. The depth of the Trauell by lers in the Sea, to they by the neipe of the Load-trone performe their journeyes, the dependent companie.

Sea neere I fland is very exceeding. In these gulfs there are Whales of wonderful bignes, and many Whales, 60 Sez-monfters which cannot bee killed or taken of men , the Ice only through the force of the winds dasheth them against the Rockes, and killeth them. I saw such a Monster cast vpon the sheare dead, whose length was thirty ells, his heigth more then a very long Warlike Pike.

A Whale being dead or killed, the Inhabitants make Buildings and Dwellings of the Huge Whale bones thereof with great dexteritie and skill, they make also seates, benches, tables, and other

Note. Orca.

vtenfils, smoothing them to that they feame like luory. They that sleepe in these houses, and said alwayes to dreame of shipwrack. And although it bee a huge and fearfull creature, and sauce great ffrength, yet notwithstanding oftentimes he is not onely withstood, but our come of his capitall enemie (not fo great) which is called Orea; this fift hath the shape of a ship turned apa fide-downe, and vpon his backe very sharpe and long sinnes, wherewith hee woundern the loft of the belly of the Whale, and killeth him, and the Whale to feareth this fifth, that in fhunning him, he often dasheth himselfe against the shoare.

A Sea-mon-

The Ifeland Sea bath a Monster also, whose name is vnknowne. They judge it a kinde of Whale at the nift fight, when hee shewes his head out of the Sea, hee so scarreth men that they fall downe almost dead. His square head harh flaming eyes, on both sides senced with long 10 hornes, his body is blacke, and befer with blacke quills; if he be seene by night, his eyes are ficry, which lighten his, whole head, which he putteth out of the Sea, nothing can either bee painted or imagined more tearfull. Olans Magnus maketh mention of this Monfter in his twentieth Booke, and faith, that it is twelue cubits long. Such a Monster at that is me tore in pieces with his teeth a Fisher-boate, wherein there were three Fisher-men, so that they were drowned, one of them, who held in his hand a little cord, wherewith hee vied to draw the hooke, and the fiffes, laid hold of the board which floted in the Sea; so he was saued getting out of the bottom vpon the planke and iwam foorth, and declared this to the Kings Gouetnour in my prefence, adding moreover that he was faued from heaven, that he might get maintenance for hischildren, who otherwife were readie to perish with hunger, when the other two though married, yet were 20.

Harfal another

Another Monster alio is often there seene and taken, of ten or twelve elles long, it is called Haefal, it is all fat; it is taken after a wonderfull manner: they have a very long pike wherunto they fasten an Iron with a forked point, that it cannot goe backe, vnto the statica cord of a maruailous length is fastned; they sticke this speare in the Monster, which swimmeth vnto it for prey , perceining a man in the little boates; as foone as the Monster teeles himselfe strooken and wounded, forthwith he hides himselte in the Deepe, and there (his bloud being pow-

Dog-fifh.

red out) dyes, afterward the Fishers draw him to the land by the long cords fastned to the speare. Besides, it hath divers Sea Monsters : a Dogge sish, which putting his head out of the Sea barketh, and receiveth his whelps (porting in the Sea agains into his belly, while they come to more growth. It hath Horfes and Kine, and what not? and it is a marvell, how skilfull Nature fports, 30 in expressing the shape of all earthly Creatures and Fowles in the Sea. Neither should any man perswade me that these things are true, although ten Ariffoeles should affirme them vnto me, vn-Leffe I had feene most of them with mine eyes. Let no man therefore prefently cry out, that what he knowes not is fabulous.

Note.

The men of Labeck, Hamburg, and Breme, were often wont to goe to this Iland, and leave their feruants in the winter lodgings; but now it is prouded by the Kings authoritie, that no Germaine, either by reaton of trading or learning of the language, leave his fervants there in the winter; but vpon what occasion this came to passe, the matter standeth thus. In the yeere of White; but spoin was a Citizen of Hamburg, one Coveradus Bloom, left by an other in Ifeland in the winter lodgings with the Bilhop in Scalbolden, for trading and learning of the tongue: the 40 Bishops fishers find a whole Vnicornes horne in the Ice, brought out of Groneland (as it is thought) where yet at this day Unicorns are faid to be, & thinking it to be a Whales tooth, nor did the Bi-Imas Pools and Shop beleeve otherwise, they bring it to their Master, who gave it to Comadus begging it; he being somewhat craftie, lold it after at Antwerp for some thousands of Florins. When this thing came to the King of Denmarks cares, he forbad that no Germaine should winter in Ifeland in any cause.

Sea-fifb. See

### Of the indgement of the Iselanders.

Here is a most pleasant place almost in the midst of the Iland, you would say it were a Paradife in the Spting time, where fometimes there was a high Mountaine, which burned with inward fire, as Hecla doth at this day; which matter after it was confumed, made a Plaine, but 50 the Rocks which were erected about the Mountaine, stand yet, therefore this place is so fenced by Nature, that they that enter it, must goe one by one. This place is famous for two great falls of water, where two Rivers from the highest Rocks cast themselves steepe downe one against the other, with an aftonishing and horrible dashing of the waters against the Rocks. These Riuers meete together in the middle of the field, and by a great whirlepoole are swallowed up into the ground.

Heere yeerely the nine and twentieth of Iune, the Inhabitants who have any controversie, meete together: for in no other place or time Iustice is administred: after they are entred, standings are placed by the Gouernours guard, who admit all that defire to come in, no man hath libertie to goe out, without the confent and authoritie of the Governour. When they are come 60 thither, the Gouernour offreth his Charter to bee publikely read, whereby hee procureth credit to his Office, and having spoken before somewhat of the Kings goodwill, and his owne towards the Handers, he exhorteth them to communicate Iustice vnto all, without respect of persons, hee

atter departe: h, and keepes himfelte in his Tent, having heard a godly Sermon, the twelve men, whom they call Lachmaders, as it were men of Iutlice, hit downe on the ground, each of them Monner of hath a Booke in his hand, contayning the Law of that Iland, written in the vulgar tongue. Ac- rials and cufation and answer being made, they goe apart into seuerall places, euery one reades ouer his sutes. Booke diligently, going atterwards againe to his place, without Scribe, without replication or doubling, and juglings of fuch brabling Lawyers, they conferre of the fentence and pronounce it : If any thing bee worthy of deliberation, it is brought to the Gouernour for confultation and for his honours fake, when not with landing they leave no power of deciding it to him.

There are many acculations of There and Adulteries, they make no question of their Bonds, of Io their Fees, their Hereditarie fields, or any fumme of money : there are no controueries there. These twelue men, ouer which one is chiefe, are greatly honoured amongst them. These doe determine, and diligently inquire of all publike Controverses. If there bee any wicked Act committed that yeere, if Murther bee committed any where, if Theft, if Adulterie, if Cartle be flot- Sentence and len away (which vieth oft to bee done) then thefe men fet downe the punishment. They that execution. are condemned to dye, are beheaded: the rest, who are any way to bee punished, they burne with a marke, this punishment with them is most grieuous : for they are marked in the forehead; they that are in marked are accounted in the number of wicked men : others are beaten with roddes : and I faw when the Pather and the Sonne for theft (for they were Cattell sealers) were held Captines, that the Father was compelled to beate his Sonne with roddes, and hee after-

20 wards beheaded.

### of Groneland.

Seland by Nature is formewhat long, it hath Norway on the East, the Orcades and Scotland on the South, Groneland on the West, and the Hyperborean or Congealed Sea vpon the North. Although I purposed to passe ouer Groneland with filence, yet seeing I touched vpon the Land, and faw fome few things, I thought it was to bee added. There was in a certaine Monasterie in Ifeland called Helgafiel, a certayne blinde Monke left (for the Abbot of the Monasterie had conuerted the Reuenues to the Kings vie) who lived miferably there : hee was borne in Groneland, of 30 a darke complexion and broad face. The Governour commanded him to bee brought vnto him, that hee might know some certaintie of the state of Groneland. Hee Layd, there was a Monasterie of Saint Thomas in Groneland, into the which his Parents thrust him when he was but young, and after that, hee was taken out by the Bishop of Groneland, when hee was thirtie yeeres of age, to faile with him into Norway, to the Archbishop to Nidrofia (or Dronten) to whom the Ifeland Bishops are subiect: in his returne hee was left in a Monasterie by the Bishop, whose Countrey Groneland was: this was done (as hee fayd) 1546. Hee faid, that lland was called Groneland, Antiphrastically. For that it isldome or neuer waxeth greene, and that there is so great cold there throughout the whole yeere, except lune, luly and August, that being clothed and couered with Furres, they could scarfe bee warme; and that they had at home certayne round 40 peeces of wood, which being continually mooued with the feete, kept their feet warme. Hee

fayd, it aboundeth as Ifeland doth with Fishes, and that they had Beares and white Foxes, nay Their Pienies Pigmies, and Vnicornes, and that day did not appeare, till the Sunne had runne through Psfees. are Bealts and This Monke told vs maruellous strange things: that there was in the Monasterie of Saint The Valcornes, mas (where hee lived) a Fountayne, which fent forth burning and flaming water, that this wa- Fifnes.

ter was conneyed through pipes of stone, to the seuerall Cells of the Monkes, and that it made them warme, as Stoaues doe with vs ; and that all kinde of meates might bee boyled in this Fountayne and fierie water, no otherwise, then if it had beene fire indeed. Hee added moreouer, that the walls of the Monasterie were made of Pumice stones, out of a certagne Mountayne (not farre from the Monasterie) like to Hecla: for if yee powre these burning Waters vpon the SC Pumice stones, there will follow a slimie matter, which in stead of Lime they vie for Morter.

After the Gouernours conference with the Monke, I came privatly vnto him, to demand certayne particular things touching the Pigmies and other things; hee had little skill in the Latine tongue, hee vnderstood mee speaking Latine, but answered by an Interpreter. Hee sayd, the Pigmies represent the most perfect shape of Man, that they are hairy to the vetermost joynes of Pigmies, our the fingers, and that the Males haue beards downe to the knees. But although they have the men boue nor fhape of men, yet they have little fenfe or understanding, nor diffine speech, but make shew of teene such. a kinde of hilling, after the manner of Geele; that his Abbot kept two of them in his Monasterie, male and female, but they lived not long, and that they were vnreasonable Creatures, and line in perpetuall darknesse. That some say, they have warre with the Cranes, that Of this the

He affirmed, that the same maner of food was in Greneland, as in Ifl and, to wit, of fish but not of win am this cattle, because they have no cattle, & that the country is not populous. Forthwith from Island be and the next gins the Hyperborean Sea, which beats upon Groneland, and the Country of the Pigmies, which at this day is called Nona Zembla, & there the frozen Sea hath a Bay which is called the White Sea, light.

Kkk 2

653

or Mare Album, and there are there certayne passages whereby they sayle into the Schytbian O. or can, if they can for Ice. And the Gouernour had the King of Demurkes Ship, furnished with dail, it trey can to be a fact of the blook for the basis of these passages, and short cut into the Kingdome of China, liee affected this commendation, that hee might open thefe paffages and Lie virto the Kingdome of China by the Tartarian Sea, which had often beene attempted by c.

The Authors Voyage tor Discouerie.

The last day therefore of March, in the yeere 1564, hee commanded that Ship to sayle to those places, and mee also together with them, being willing of mine owne accord: and enjoyned me to marke diligently the scituation of the places, and what some wee met with worthy of fight to marke unigenity on a trouble of the foreign and four men, as well Danes as fielenders, and the 10 or report. Wee were in the Ship threefcore and four men, as well Danes as fielenders, and the 10 twentierh day of Aprill wee arrived at a certayne Promontoric of Graneland, and when wee found no Hauen, to the which wee might fafely commit our felues, and letting downe the lead, wee had founded the depth of the Sea, it was fuch as wee could not anchor there, and the abundance of Ice was so great, that it was neither lafe nor possible to sayle neerer to the Rocks s foure and twentie therefore of vs armed, with great labour and danger went on thoare in our Skiffes among whom I allo was) to trie whether wee could finde a harbour, and what kinde of men Groneland had. In the meane time, the great Ship floated in the Sea and Ice, in a great calme, halfe of our companie abode in the shoare to keepe the Skiffe; another part (and I with them) ranne abroad to discouer: they that were left on shoare to keepe the Skiffe, going hither and thirther, found a little man dead with a long beard, with a little Boate, and a crooked Hooke of 20 the bone of a Fish, and a leather cord : foure fish Bladders were bound vnto the Boate (as is supposed) that it should not bee drowned, whereof three were sunke and fallen flat : This Boate (because it was very valike ours) the Gouernour sent to the King of Denmarke. Olaus Magnus in bus first Booke writeth, that there is a Rocke in the middest of Iseland and Grone-

In Sir Thomas Smiths Hall in Londents a

land, called Hutilocke, which wee layled by and that there they bane Ships of leather, which bee sellifeeth hee faw, but it was not fuch an one: but Petrus Bembus in his fenenth Booke, in the Venetian Historie, describeth a Ship, which was like unto this, where bee writeth thus : Whole a French Ship kept ber cour fe not farre from Britaine, fine tooke a Boate built of Ofiers the middeft being cat out, and the fo-Lonsonts a kind of Boare lid barks of Trees toyned together, wherein there were fewen men of a middle flature, somewhat darks cokind of soare to range of a large and broad face, marked mits frange fearer and violet colour; thefe had their par- 30 o: bathe lowed mants of Eifnes skinnes full of foot, they bere a painted Crowne of reede women in, as it were with feuen Scalesskins, eares they did ease raw Floib, and drumbe Blood, as wee doe Wine; their freech could not bee underflood. fixe of items and, one young man was brought aims to the Aulercos, where the King was.

It is not unlikely to bee true, that this Ship with these seum men were driven out of Grone-

land, into the Britaine Ocean : feeing the description of Bembus his Ship agreeth with that found in

A Beare.

Wee wandred in the meane feafon, in a Land vnknowne vnto vs, which was coursed with Snow and Ice, wee found neither footing of men, not any habitation, nor fit Port, but the Sea was closed and fenced on every side with craggie Rockes. Yet we met with a great white Beare, which neither feared vs, nor could be driven away with our cryes, but came full vpon vs, as to 40 his certaine prey, and when hee came neere vnto vs, being twice shot through with a Gunne, hee flood boit vpright withhis fore-feetas a man flandeth, till hee was shot through the third time, and so fell downe dead : his Skinne was sent to the King of Denmarke. We agreed among st our felues before wee went on shoare, if wee found a fit Harbour, or else had need of their helpe, that wee should plucke up our standerd, which wee carried out with us for that purpose, and that they, if they would call vs backe, should figuifie the same with their Ordnance. A tempest arising in the meane while, the Master of the Ship gives vs a signe to returne, by the discharging of a piece of Ordnance, and calls vs backe vnto the Ship: all of vs therefore returned with great labour after three dayes unto the Ship with the Beares skinne; wee sayled therefore to the other fide of the Iland toward the North, to the Countrey of the Pigmies or Nous Zern- 50 bla, that by the mouth of the White Sea, wee might come into the Scythian, or Tartarian Sea, from whence (they say) there is a passage to the Kingdome of China, and Cashay; but beeing hindred by the Ice, wee could not paffe the mouth of that Sea : therefore without doing any thing, wee returned into Ifeland the fixteenth of lune.

The Authors

T fayd before, that the Ifelanders the nine and twentieth of Iune yeerely came together almost in the middle of the lland to ludgement, and after our returne, the Gouernour went thither, and I with him. Some of the next inhabitants of Hecls then came to Iudgement, whom the Gouernour inuited twice or thrice to dinner and supper. These men while they were at supper, reported wonderfull things of the Mountayne Heels, and other things; I was foothwith in- 60 flamed with a defire to fee and heare all. Wherefore the Gouernour commended mee to thefe men, that they should bring mee thither, and commanded all things should be she wed me, which they knew there worthy to bee seene. This Governour was a Dane, a Noble man, and excellent. ly well learned : to this man furely I am much bound for his great liberalitie towards mee, in

CHAP. 22. The Authors furuey of Hecla, and ficknesse thereupon.

that he caused me to be conveighed at his charge to divers places of the Hand, where any notable thing was to be feene. I accompanied with two Islanders, and a certaine Dane, who carried prouition, and a Tent on Horfe-backe, fpent foure whole dayes, while we go through rough places, Hilly and desolate vato this Mountayne. For some Miles about Hecla, all was fell of blacke ashes and Pumis stones. The Islanders admised me that I should goe no neerer, leading away the Horfe, which they had lent me;

I, because I purposed to see, and search out all things diligently; accompanied with the Dane. came neerer, as though I went to climbe the Hill, and although at the first tight we were afraid. vet I would not leave off my purpose, and by reason of my young yeeres, not understanding Io the danger, I went through the after and Pumis stones alone to Hecla, leaving the Dane, There was there at that time a wonderfull calme, fo that I faw neither fire nor fmoke. But behold finddenly in the bowels of the Earth, a great noyle was heard, after this, followed flames of a greene colour, which had almost killed me with their Sulphurie and filthy stinke, so that I scarle efcaned to my fortaken horses and companions. Vpon that sudden assonishment I fell into a sickneffe, and vehement cogitation, feeing these horrible flames were alwayes present before mine eyes: infomuch that my Illand companions were compelled to carry me away unto their house, with whom I lay ficke two whole monethes : while in the meane time the Dane returned to the Gouernour, and to the Hamburgers, and acquainted them with my flate. I lived miferably among it the Barbarians, ficke and voknowne; they had Bisket which I fleeped in Milke, and 20 and fo for that time, I indured hunger, while (being ftronger) I might returne to the Gouernour.

The Hamburgers, by reason of the time of the yeere, least they should loose the opportunitie of fayling, desparring now of my returne, set fayle (for they depart before the foure and twentieth of August, lest being hindered after by the Ice, they cannot get out) yet with speciall care commended me to the Gouernour (if at any time I did returne) leaving Bisket, Wine, and Beere, The Gouernour hath a dwelling fit enough for the manner and fashion of this Countrey, on the South of this Hand, not faire from the Hauen of Hafnefordt, the place is called Beffede. I was Hafnefordt, brought hither of the Islanders, to the Gouernour, who, for our common studies, entertayned His abiding me willingly and honorably. But although wee were plentifully furnished with all necessaries, there two winvet being very wearie of that life in such darknesse, I expected the ships out of Germany the ters.

30 next yeere with great defire.

There grew then warre betweene Ericus of Suetia, and Fredericke the Second King of Den. marke; which was continued with great courage for ten yeeres after. The Lubekers were Conforts and Confederates of Warre vnto the Dane. So most part of the Cities on the Sea-coaft, vpon the Balthicke Sea, hindred or intangled with this Warre, intermitted their fayling into Mand this yeere, therefore wayting in vaine, I must stay. The yeere following, when I had wayted till the end of Iune, all hope of returning into Germany that yeere was taken away, and which was worfe, the yeerely thip came not from Denmarke: and bread and Wine failed vs almost foure monethes.

There lay Portugals at anchor at that time in Island in a small ship; who came thither to fowle, 40 they caried away excellent Falcons, and white ones among them, in great number. I thought good rather to croffe ouer into Portugall with them , then to wayte another yeere, either for Danes or Germanes. And when they gave the Governour his Custome, he dealt with them in my behalfe concerning the charge, that I might passe with them, and he liberally paid the charges, and honorably fent me away with a worthy Prefent. Not far from the Kings house, there was a certayn Minister, lonas by name, he familiarly faluted me before I departed for the time I was in Island, I had some familiaritie with him, to whom also Heft my Bookes when I departed; he for friendships sake, knit three knots in a handkerchiefe, and promised me a prosperous wind, say ing, if by chance the winds at any time grow contrary at Sea, open these knots, and then remem- His Nauisatiber me. When therfore about the twentieth of September we had fayled, and now Spaine was in onson the 50 our view, there was fo great a calme, that we felt not a breath of wind, and that for three whole Goalt of Afridayes. In this calme my friends promise came into my minde, and I defired to proue it. I loosed 64, &c. hec the first knot, by and by, after one houre, there arose a very prosperous winde, but blowing very his Presace, gently, I vntye the second and the third, forthwith a Tempest beganne more and more to grow, which I have fo truly that after two dayes we ridde in the River Tagus, which beateth upon Liftone.

Kkk 2

\* This learned Iflander publi-

thed A. 1593.

one Booke of

Island which

M. Hak. tranf-

forth in the first

lated and fer

Tome of his Voyages. This

worke is larger in three Books

out of which I haue taken

fome things

which I held

conducent to

our purpole,In

Works he con-

futeth the er-

rours of diuer

write fally

grees 44. mi

Diuers names

of illend,

Discourrer.

Farre Hands.

Sneland Naddec firft

nutes.

the former

CHAP. XXIII.

Extracts of ARNGRIM IONAS \* an Islander, bu Chrymogaa or Historie of Island : published. Anno Dom. 1609.

> of Island, the Situation, Discouerie, Plantation and Language.

famous man , Gudbrandus Thorlacius , now Bishop of North Island, hath hitherto shewed : who

Sland is an Iland of the North, compafied about with the huge Ocean : whose Gosmographicall latitude towards the North, to wit, at Hola, the Episcopall Seat of North Island, is 65. degrees, and 44. minutes : and the longitude 23. degrees and 30. m:nutes, or thereabouts : for I will not precifely affirme the fame. by reason of that scruple, arising from the Paralaxis of the Moone in the obseruation of the Eclipses to be doubted : which only way of finding out the longitude, that most 20

hath imported vnto vs this longitude and latitude of his Sea : and was the first, that I know, Authors which among our Countreymen, who hath delivered any certaintie in Writing, concerning this matter. And furely, that which at this day, and to from the first entrance of Inhabitants, beareth the many things of his Countrey. name of Island, (while as yet it remayned barren and defolate) had divers names allotted orgi-

uen vnto it from divers Discouerers : whereof three are mentioned.

For first of all it was called Swalandia. For a certaine Pyrate called Naddocus, going towards the Farensian Ilands (commonly called Farenar, for the multitude of Egges) was brought vnto the shoares of East Island, through a Tempest, not farre from the Mountayne Reidarfiall, (so called afterward) to the Bay Reidarfiard: who afcending the Mountayne, and beholding the bor-dering Countrey farre and neere, found it all Defert. And departing from the Coast about Autumne, he perceived the higher tops of the Mountaynes to bee courted with exceeding much Snow; and therefore, as the prefent cafe required, he called the Iland Snalandia, that is to lay. The Snowie Countrey Another following him, one Gardarus the fonne of Susuarus a Sussian borne, perswaded

found it, who arrived also neere the Easterne shoare, and from thence being carried about the

Iland, he abode in the Bay of North Mand called Skialfands, and wintered there in the yeere of

Christ 864. and called the name of the Hauen, Husawich, from the wintering places, or houses

built there. But the Spring beginning, Gardarus being about to depart into Norway, the ship

there was a certayne Mariner called Natrare: from whom also this hauen had the name of Narfa-

rawicke. Moreover, Gardarus returning to his friends, called that new Countrey Gardarsholme,

Boat was driven away by a tempest, into an Hauen neere vnto the former, and in the same Boat 40

Gardar fecond through the report which Naddocus had brought concerning Suclande, went to feeke it : he

A.D.864.

Flece third

as it were, the Iland of Gardarus, neglecting the name of Snalanda. Moreouer, the defire also of vifiting a Countrey newly discouered, possessed many. For the third also, one Floco, and he a most famous Pirate purposing to visit Gardar shoime, fet sayle out of an Hauen of Norman, which lyeth neere the watch-towre or rather Pharms Flokawards, lituate in the limits of the Prouinces of Hordaflandia, and Rogalandia : and passing by Hietlandia, (mifnamed by some Schetlandia) called a certayne Hauen by the name of Flokawogur, and there the deepest part of the Sea (where Geirbilds the daughter of Floco by chance was drowned) was caled Gerbildarwata, from her : no otherwise then that Sea was called Helleftontus, wherein by 10 misfortune Phryxus loft his lifter Helle. There was yet no vie of the Mariners Compafic: wherefore Floco leaving Hietlandia, tooke certay ne Ravens vnto him : and when hee thought hee had fayled a great way, he fent forth one Rauen, which flying aloft, went backe againe to Hietlande, which the faw behind. Whereupon Floco perceiuing that he was yet neerer to Hietland then other Countryes, and therefore couragiously going forward, he sent forth another Rauen : which because she could see no Land, neither before nor behind, light into the ship again. But lastly, the third Rauen was fent forth by Floce, and having for the most part performed his Voyage, through the sharpnesse of her quicke sight attayning the Land, which the Mariners desired, she speedily flew thither: whose direction Floco following, beheld first the Easterne fide of the Iland, as his Predeceffors did : and from theree directing his course to the South, found a very wide and open 60 Bay twelve Islandist miles broad, betweene the two Promontories or high Lands, afterwards called Renkanes, and Snafelfnes. And hearing by accreayne Mariner (whom he had with him) a See borne, named Faxe, that the Bay they now met with , was the huge mouth of a River or

CHAP. 23. S. 1. Island fo salled of Ice, It is not Thule, Length and breadth,

Floud; Floce to reprove the folly of Faxe, supposing so huge a Bay of the Sea to be the mouth of a River, called the name of the Bay inclosed betweene the torefaid Promontories, Faxan, which fignifieth the month of Faxa. This Bay, by reason of the multitude of Hauens, was afterwade called Hafnafiordur : which name Hafnafiordur at this day is more specially vied of a most safe Hauen of the same Bay.

After this, Floco fayling along the West side of the Iland, entred somewhat within the Bay Breidaford, remaining in a certaine Hauen of the Prouince Bardestraund, called Watnsfierdier (for I vie the names given them afterwards ) and there preparing wintering places, he lived very commodioully and well with fifth of divers kindes, wherewith that Bay doth abounds But has 10 uing the Spring time here very wntemperate through cold, hee found a Bay (which entreth this

pare of the Land on the North) to be filled with Ice of the Sea, which wee call Gronelandif Ice. The name From which Ice, Floco deuised the third name for the lland, and called it Ifand. Moreover also Ifandos Ica Floce turning to the South fide , passed another Winter in Island : and returning into Nerway (from the Rauens, which hee vied in fread of the Mariners Compasse) he allotted it the furname

of Rafnaflokes And I fland furely obtained these names consequently from the finders, or discouerers thereof. Randis not For as touching the fourth, Thule, imposed vpon this Land by some, I cannot bee perswaded to Thule,

20 beleeue, it is true; chiefly by this argument; That Thyle, or Thule among the ancient Writers, was often in the mouth and writings not onely of Pliny in his fecond booke of Natural Histories 75. Chapter and fourth booke, and fixteenth Chapter (and Pliny flourished about the eightieth yeere of Christ) and of him who was more ancient then Pliny, Pythias Massilien is : bu. also of Pub. Vargilins, who lived not above fourteene yeeres after Christ : but Island, till the yeere of Christ 874. remained altogether desert, as hereafter I shall speake. Thule therefore, which Vogil faid fhould ferue Augustus (Geor. 1. tibi fermiat vitima Thule : where even every child knoweth that Thule is Synecdochically ipoken, for the Inhabitanes of Thule) not onely inhabited in the times of Augustus and Vergil, but alio knowne to the Romanes, is not Island, which many ages after began firit to be inhabited, Besides, Plinie himselfe kemeth in the later place recited to reckon Thule with the Hands of Britaine: for , faith hee, Vhima omnium qua memorantur eft Thule: to Thate further wit, of the British llands, for hee speaketh of them. It is likely also that Forgil meant the same, of the British who said Thule was the last, in the place before recited and likewise, Penning toto dinifer orbs lies.

30 Britannos: that is to fay, the last. Let me yet vrge the same argument further, from the age of Claudianns Alexandrinus, and Pub. Papinius Statius, farre more ancient then he. For Claudianus about the yeere of Christ 390, writeth thus concerning the successe of the Gerick Wars atchieued by Theodofins. Famaque ingrantes succinsta panoribus alai,

Secum cuncta trabens, à Gadibus vique Britamann Terruit Oceanum : & nostro procul axe remotam Infolito Belli, tremefecit murmure Thulen.

Then blackwing'd Fame Feare girt, frights all the World with Warre, From Cades to Britaine, from Our World shakes Thale farre,

But did Report and Fame cause Island not inhabited, and desert to tremble ? And Station more ancient by three hundred yeeres then Claudian, in his third Booke Sylms, writeth thus:

Quanquam etfi golidas irem manfurus ad Artes,

Vel (uper Hefteria vada saligantia Thules. Though I should dwel in Artike frosts,

Or mystic shelves of Thales West coasts.

You heare, not onely a flight report of Thule came to Stations eares, but that the shallow places, quicke fand, or shelues found in approching to the Hand were sufficiently knowne vnto him, by 50 the often relation of Nauigators: of which fort in the circuit of Island, there are none that I know, \* The Author

which experience speaketh; but in comming to the Hands of Britains they are very ordinarie proceedeth in this disputation and common, as they fay. The Longitude thereof from the East vnto the West, hath not hitherto beene expressed by a then our Rea-

my certains or affored measure that I know, nor yet the Latitude from North to South; der perhaps faue that in an ancient Codicall or Writing I found that the Longitude was twentie dayes jour- would permis ney : and the Latitude (where it is broadeft) foure dayes, but the journeyes, as elfewhere, fo alto vs. The learney : and the Lattrude (where it is broaden) from edayes, but the commyes as elewiners, to also ned an evidence with vare not alike, (yet here I vnderfland "Pyngmanuficid twentie, in the Authors own unit where hand-writing it is Dagledor) nor is it expressed whether of Horie-men or Foot-men. But the find enough: Go Latitude it felfe is not euery where the fame; by reason of Bayer on both fides, to wit, from the and more yet South and North entring the Land it felfe with vnequall diffances. The Easterly bound is in Ortelius his South and North entring the Land it lette with vinequal distances. The Landity boths this factor of the Promontory Sua-felloues lyeth more toward and I bestrum, and I bestrum,

who prouch out of Pampenius, Pielemeus, and Processus, that illend is not Thuis but(at the name founds) Tylemer's, a Region in Names, or all Seastle, of which that is part, fill retaining the name.

the South-well) but the North bound is Langanes, and the South Reikranes. The Iland alio from the foure quarters of the World, is duided into North, South, East and West, and the Promontorie Langanes divideth North Island from East Island; fromWest Island, the Bay Rutafiorder: trom South Island, the vast and luge deferts of rough, and inaccessable places extended the whole length of the Hand. But South Island, opposite to the North, through these rough and inaccessable places lying betweene the River loculfu, running through the deferts of Solfeimasande, divideth from Falt / fland : from West / sand alio, a famous River, named Albis, emptying it selfe into the Bay Borg ar ford: So that, if it pleafed me to represent the lland in humane shape, East Island should have the proportion of the head. The two more famous Promontories Langanes and Reitranes or bounds; the one Northerly, the other Southerly(as hath been (aid)) should serve in stead of armes, 10 And the deferts extended the whole length of the Hand should make the backe, or backe bone: then North and South Island, the shoulders with the sides ; the two opposite Bayes Borgarfiords. and Ratafiordar, the one on the South, the other on the North, should dunde the forepart about the short ribs, from both the thighes or hips. But West Mand should resemble the rest of the parts of a mans bodie, from the forepart about the short ribbes : which the Bay Breidifiordur commine in from the West, should contract and straighten into the right and left foot,

The Circuit.

The circuit also of the Iland, is no more certainely knowne; yet an ancient rumour and opinion (as in another place where it is noted) reckoneth one hundred and fortie foure Nornegian miles(as Ithinke) that is to fay, two hundred eightie eight Germane miles, Chytresu accounting the Normegian mile, to equal two Germane miles, fayling from one Promontorie to the other, not by 20 the Bayes : whereof North Island is esteemed to have cleven, East Island, twentie one, South Mand fixe, and West Island seventie.

" Harald Hare. figre finding many pattie Princes made an abfolere Monarchy of

Haraldus Pulcricomus ' Iwaying the Scepter in Normay, much neglected the chiefe Nobilitie of Normay : which the Normegian Historie letteth downe at large, yet particular Histories of noble Families expulied by Pulcricomus, more largely profecute the fame, as hereafter wee purpose to write. For Pulcruomus not contented with Kingly authoritie, or chiefe soueraignetie, that is to fay, with the right of Lawes, Magistracie, and appeale of Warre and Peace, challenged Normay, wher- all vnto himfelte, by the right of a proprietarie. Infomuch, as very many choic rather to leave their Countrey and rich inheritances, then to exchange their Generolitie for flauerie and trifought to free bates for they thought it altogether vnworthy and ill beseeming their owne valour and their 30 ancestours. Hence, for the most part arose mutuall injuries against the King, or the Kings parries; and hence takers; as murdering of the Kings friends, allyes, or faction; then the exercises both at Sea and arote the plan- Land were rapines and robberies. From these noble Families therefore, refusing the violence of ration of island Harald, this our Island, with the neighbouring Ilands began first to be inhabited, and that almost

A.D. 874.

In the yeere of our Redemption 874 a certaine Inhabitant of Norway, one Ingulfus, going out of his Countrey , following the steps of Naddocus , Gardarus , and Floco mentioned before, was made Standard-bearer of the Inhabitants which were to bee conveyed into Mand, and that upon this occasion. Ingulfus was famous for his parentage and riches, whose father, called Orne, which fignifieth an Eagle, was Duke of Fyrdafilee in Norway; the fifter of Ingulfus was 40 Helga, a Virgin indued with all womanly ornaments, and his coufin germaine Leifus; who for a notable fword, which through his fingular warlike proweffe he got in Ireland, was named Hiorleifus. For Hir is a Sword. Moreouer, at that time among the Nobilitie of Norway, there were three naturall brothers, Hallftenn, Holmsten, and Herstenn; the sonnes of Atlas , or Atlantes, a certaine Baron of Norway: who bore certaine prime grudges to the forelaid Ingulfus and Hiorleifus; which prefently after brake forth into cruell and bloudie flaughters. For when by chance they feasted together, after the manner of that age, they injoyned every one to make some solemne Vow. Herstenus therefore first vowed, that he would take Helga, Ingulfus fifter to wife, or marrie none. Then presently Ingulfus vowed, that hee would admit none into his Fathers Inheritance with him, laue only Hierlesfus: meaning thereby that his fifter Helgs, by his confent should marry none but Hierleifus (contrary to the vow of Hersteins for the marrying of her only.) After that Helmstenus vowed, that if he were chosen Arbitrator betweene the aduerse parties, he would by no meanes be compelled, to suffer an viniust sentence. And so the rest after them. Not long after succeeded the Vow of Ingulfus, for Histories us tooke his Coulin Germane Helga to wife. For at that time the Marriages of Coulin Germanes were lawfull. From hence arole the extreame hatred, and enmitte of Herstenus, against the forelaid Hierleifus, and Ingulfus : who therefore joyning with his Brother Holmstenn, with fixe ships filled with Souldiers, let vpon Hiorleifus vnawares, having but three ships only, preparing his Voyage into forceine Countreyes. Whose violence Hiorleifus a long time, and stoutly sustayning, holpen by a certayne friend comming in the meane-while, having flaine Herstenus got the upper hand, But Holmitemus providing for himfelfe by flight, and not a little exasperated and grieved through the violent 60 death of his Brother, after some few monethes, came with an armed power to Ligalfus and Hiorleifusto surprize them suddenly at home. Whereof they being certified by Spies, receive him with an armed force, and kill him. Halftenus the third brother, wifer then the reft, who

quarrells ca-

conforted not with the vinjust routes of his Brethren, remayined yet aline; to whose arbitrement Ingulfus with Hierleifus commit the whole matter to be determined, holding him mindfull of his Vow, concerning equitie not fo be violated. Halstenns therefore pronounceth his brother Herflenus to be justly flame: But not Holmftenus who compelled through bitter griefe, defired to reuenge the death of his brother, by any flaughter what focuer. For killing therefore of him, he commanded them both to be banished out of the Prounce of Fyrdafille. They readily obey his award. to whom they willingly committed the centure, & with a purpose to leave their Countrey, they fell their Lands and Poffessions for mony and Merchandizes, and conceine in their minds a worthy actempt of planting a strange people in a strange Country and that not to gratific Halftenns (with whom through this agreement they returned into fauour; with whom they might otherwise cally have contended in strength) but also for feare of Pulsyscomes himselfe, raging against his Countrey, and innocent Countreymen, for the obtayning (as hath beene faid) not only of the Monarchie, but Pampella, of all their Poffethons : nor was that to bee doubted, concerning the violence and oppression of Harald: for in the Historie of Haquinus Adalstenius his succeeding Sonne is is exprelly read, that he was contented with Kingly authoritie, and restored to every

one their owne, which his Father vajuftly challenged vato himfelfe. Is was the weere of Christ 870. wherein Ingulfus with Hierleifus hist visit Island, but they inhabit it not prefently, but foure yeeres after, in the yeere 874, as hath beene faid; bringing ma- Iffand firth in-

ny Families thither. Moreover Inguifus comming within view of the Hand, cafteth the postes of the houses which 30 he had in Norway into the water, after the manner of Ethniekes accounting it for an Oracle, that that place was fatally chosen for his Habitation, which the postes cast out vpon the shoare Superficion: should note or signifie. That custome many of the Norwegians retayned by turning op the ground. But Ingulfus arrived not where he cast in the postes, but at the Promontorie of the South shoare (alle-where erromoully, the West shoare) called by his name Ingalfhofde. Yet notwithstanding wanting the postes of the houses three whole yeers, at length he found them in that place, which is named Reychiarwich, and there he erected his Habitation. But Hiorleifus more estranged from Ethnick Superfiction, seated himselfe in the Promontorie Huleifihofda; foralled likewise from his Ethnick superstrion, seated similates in the Promontorie exiting said in seates in the wine from its rame. There he built great houses one of one hundred twentie six, and another of one hundred signal and an illuminated the said signal and an illuminated signal thirtie fine feet long : who, the first yeere being ended, began to till the ground and sow feed. ciently fairer 30 In which worke, when he had exercised ten feruants or slaues, which her brought with him out houses then In Which Worke, which is me activated to the state of the

Wood, he was deceitfully flaine by thefe flaues lying in ambush : together with some other lage was then companions which he tooke with him : the Servants aswell ravishing the Wives as spoyling the in vie. goods of the flaine; and flying into the Ilands not very farre distant from the shoare : which after Hiorleifus slain. goods or the name; and my no westmasjar, because they were of Ireland. The Normegians call the Westmasjar, because they were of Ireland. The Normegians call the Westman. Irilb, Englifb, and Scots Weltmen, that is, men of the West : feeing those Countries are diffant

cruell death of his deere friend and allyes. But Inguifus found and possessed Island altogether barren and desolate; on every side beset Woods. with very thicke Woods, and scarsly fertile of any but Birches, so that hee was faine energwhere to open the Woods with the Axe, for journeyes and habitation. Yet in the meane foace. we might gather by certayne fignes, I know not what Mariners had fometimes touched vpon certayne shoares of the Countrey, but not inhabited them. For Ingulfus found little facting Bels and Belsand wooden Croffes, and other things made by the workmanthip and arte of the Irib and Groffes.

Britaines: but no tokens of culture, or habitation. Whereupon it is likely, that Irib, or Scottifb Fishermen (as also the English at this day) accustomed to fish neere Island; as sometimes it com-

meth to paffe, went ashoare, and so by chance left facring Belle and Croffs, the Vtenfils of Chri-

itian Religion. For at that time the Irifb were instructed in Christianisme as they fav. And

those whosever were the ancient Islanders, they called Papa, or Papas: from whom, as feemeth

from Norway, to the West. Ingulfus pursuing these Murtherers, set vpor them suddenly, and de-

ftroyed them every man in the same Ilands, being much grieved in minde for the vntimely and

probable to me, the Iland of East Island called Pagey, derived the name; because they were often wont to touch there : or their Monuments (fuch as I fayd) were chiefly found there. This fide of Illand, to fich as fayle from England, Ireland, and Scotland, is most exposed towards the North-west. Moreouer, what and from whence these Papa, or Pappa came, I cannot fufficiently speake : vnlcfle peraduenture from the Ilands of Scotland, whereof one is named Pappa, and another Westrapappa. as we may see in the Mappes : vnto which conjecture let every 60 one give what credit he pleateth. Furthermore, very many of the Normegians, afterwards boldly following the steps of Ingulfus going into Island, with their wines and children, and great mula titudes of their Kindred and friends, restored themselves to libertie, Whose names and large Families are recited in the Chronicles; as by the fecond Booke is underflood. Befides, it is there

recounted what coasts, what shoares, what middle-land places every one possessed and at what

time; and allohow the first Inhabitants gaue name to Straights, Bayes, Hauens, narrow time and attoriow the mat annuousness gate manne to orange so, payer, caucins, marrow firaights of Laud, Ferryes, Clyffes, Rockes, Mountaines, Hills, Vallies, rough and inacceffible Places, Fountaines, Floods, Rivers, Villages, Farmes or Habitations : whereof at this day Die Frices, countednes, riouss, riouss, riouss, riouss, riousses, dippoing it would bee tedious, especialhany are yet reasons as an extensive and a service of the service of the description of the lytical fortaine Reader, I have here omitted; applying my felfe rather to the description of the Insabitants, who in fixtie yeeres space so replenished with their multitudes, the habitable

Chap. 3. Of the lane guage of the Nation. If inders only retaine the ancient Gottifb

Concerning the language of the Hunders, the matter it selfe speaketh, that it is the Novegian; I lay, that old and naturall speech, derived from the ancient Gorballs, which onely the gran; I say, that old and natural spectus, desired from the addition of the letters of which toggies to we will first speake somewhat and afterwards in the Chapter following there shall be a short

And furely that language feemeth to have double letters : to wit, the Old, and New. The New, which commonly wee vie at this day, are common almost to all Europe together with Two kindes of Va. Which, when they first began to be vied is not certainely knowne. Surely as yet, some eroffes written in ancient letters, are yet feene among our Country-men, which letters also many yeeknow, and both reade, and write: and this naturall language it felfe is contained in the fame, nothing at all changed. Moreouer it feemed good to mee, thus to prefent the name and finge of the ancient Characters, such firely as was offered vato mee, placing the New of Commaps of the absent Contacting that many as was officed vinto meet, placing one frew or com-mon ouer against them, expressing the validitie thereof, adding allo the agreement and differe 10 pancie of ours, with those of Vibbila, the Bishop of the Gother: whom Ishames Theoderat, and Johannes Ifrael, brethren and Citizens of Francofort, report to have innented these letters by whose relation hee agreeth with vs in all chings, saue where the disagreement shall bee noted here. Moreouer alfo, I thought it not amiffe to let downe in writing the letters of certaine other Nations, to some of our Country letters, out of the same Francofust copie, which the Types or Fi-

```
Biarkan
   Knesol
   Stunginntyr
  Stunginn kaun 🗗
   Kaun
   Langur
                  or A: Uphilathus A: it is also A, the Mosconit L.
m Madur
n Nand
                  Vlphila thus A
  Os
  Plastur
                 Viphila thus A
               Q Vipbile thus Q
              A Vipbila thus XPCsb. Cotha. of the Arabians.
```

Here wee see twentie one Characters, but the ancient numbred onely fixteene. And the third M., they would not acknowledge for theirs ; because at of the Greeke, that is to 62 fay 11. or d., (as they would haue it) they might write it in their language with diffinet letters. But the fourth A from the eighteenth, they diffinguish with some point, or an outrthwart line, almost thus . cotherwise it is altogether the same in shape and name, Tr, but d. Stanging ty, that is to fay, pointed Tyr, as 10 . Com, k, and pointed kom 10 . g. So Is pointed for e.

### CH AP. 22. S. 2 Letters and Grammer of Illand. First Northerne Inhabitants. 650

but Plaffar refembleth B. with both the bellies open about and beneath. Befides there the reft are numbred fixteene, as I faid. For they reckoned the Diphehongs to the Syllables.

Moreoner, it retained the last new Conforant of the old Alphabet, changed in name, but not in shape , which is p. This being fet after a vowell in the same syllable, bath the found of d. as Blan for Blad, which is a leafe : which kind of writing was more vivall with the ancient but at this day is almost growne out of vie : but being fet before a vowell, it hath a peculiar force and pronundation, not altogether Th, but founding fomewhat more grofly, as it were Teb, putting forth the tongue almost between the fore-teeth : as parthat is to fay, then In times past it had the name of Paff: at this day it is called Pari, or Thorn, if you purp, for the and therefore it cannot be written or pronounced at all, but by it felfe.

They also of later time write the Comforant f. after this manner g. The Moderne Writers also dee sometmes appirate L.W.R.the ancient very feldome and almost never : as Histor in old time Lour, that is a thing. Histor in times palt fas also fometimes at this day | Kniffer ; that is to fay, a Knife, Hruste, mold time Rutur, that is to fay a Ram. In like manner fometimes lod, and Uaf, or land w. Conforants : as Hul, that is, a Wheele: Hualw, that is, a Whale : which also I thinks the ancient did concerning fod, and Vaf.

In Vowels and Diphthongs, as also abbreviations proper to this language, the varietie is farre and greater, which I purpose not to touch. Moreouer also, the due handling of the letters, as of the rest of the Etymologie and Syntaxis of this tongue, would bee the copious matter of a peculiar worke, especially if any would adde the Poetrie, purposing to write the Grammer of the Islandish tongue, which would bee no more difficult, then that wee have feene done, concerning the Germane and French tongue, besides others.

About the yeere of the Lord 1216, one of our Country-men wrote in his Country language, Illand Gramconcerning the letters of the proper, or mother tongue : where hee affirmeth thefe ancient Cha- marian. racters to be peculiar to this language, and handleth them both, as well new as old after a legitimare and due manner of tractation, by his definitions and divisions of the letters into Vowels and Consonants, and of the five Litine Vowels, maketh eighteene of his language, distinguished in sound and pronunciation: He divident the Consonants haturally into halfe Vowels, and Mutes, and those into Liquids and Firmes, these into open and that; performing the part of a pretie Lo-20 gician. And in delivering the force and pronunciation of the letters, hee artificially assumeth for every definitionall the Influments of framing the voyce, as well the lungs and throat, as the auxiliary parts of the mouth and tongue. The letter p, also, he calleth the, peraduenture in imisation of the Greeke Theta (which almost, as we said, although not altogether it expresses) or Tas of the Hebrewes, which Hebrew letter, if th. or t. of the Latines rightly expresse, as is reported by fome, Than shall come nothing neerer to our p. then Theta. The same Country-man of ours, from absolute letters, proceedeth to fet downe in writing, the figures of the word and sentence in the Mother tongue, and illustrate them with examples of our language, retaining the Greek titles of the Figures, or names of Epizensis, Anadoplosis, &c.

And from this Writer of our Country, we received the Types of the old Alphabet : for there Norws of whom 40 are Historicall fragments yet extant, concerning Norse the Name-giver of Norway, and founder Norway is of the Kingdome, and thole Toparchi, or little Kings, whom hee vanquished before hee obtained named. the Monarchie.

#### ò. II.

A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, Supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders Honfes, Fewell, Victuall.

Oreoser concerning fome of the ancestors of Norsu: among whom his father Porre. Chop.a. of the kist (whom they call Thorres) King of Gestand, Findand, and Kanesians! an excellent Prince thabitation of this age, from whom the moneth of the cld Normagians, and now Hunders hat the de North de North name of Thorre, which in the Intian Calender beginneth the 10.11.12.13.14.15.01 16. parts of the of January: for it hath a mousable beginning after the manner of their Calender. And feeing King world. Therre this month accustomed to facrifice vnto his gods; the Knenones instituted yerely facrifices Therre.

in the fame month to him, being dead, as to a certaine god, in token of an happy yeere, which they began with the winter, after the maner of the old Lacedemonians; & called the fame month Porre, 60 of Thorrowno otherwise then the Lacedemonius gave divine honor to Lycurgus being dead, building a Temple in memory of him, where hee was honoured for a god; to whom his familiar friends instituted fet Feating-dayes, and solemne assemblies which remained a long time, and the daies wherein the affemblies were celebrated, they called Lycargide: concerning which matter looke Cragine in his third booke of the Common-wealth of the Lacedemonians.

Of the Ancestors also of Norm, all are mentioned even to his Great-grandfather, who was Fermetus King of Finland: Moreover, one of the three fonnes of Fermetus, and therefore Great vacile of Norse, called Logie, which fignifieth a flame; who for the excellencie of his beautie was called Halogie, that is to fay, an high or excellent flame. Hee was Monarch of the Halongie. enfian Prouince, bordering vpon the Prouince of Nidrofia.

Goe also the daughter of Thorro, by the lister of Norms, is there recorded, for recourse of whom, being ftolne away (as Cadmus was fent by his father Agenor to fecke his daughter Europa) Norms was fent by his father Thorro: which, that it might more happily succeed, Thorro instituted new facrifices to the Gods, in the moneth next following the former (afterwards called Thorra) and intituled the same moneth with the name of Gos, after the name of his daughter 10 Goe : which name of the moneth likewife the /flanders that now line doe yet retaine. Furthermore, ancient Histories make mention of Garas, the naturall brother of Norus : as also the nepbew of Garns, named Cylum, having the fourragns authoritie in Succia, in whole time Odmus happened to come (others call him Orbinus ) Standard-bearer of the After Immigration, made in the foure and twentieth yeare before Christ was born, which we mentioned before : and Gylanu hada father called Generus , and an Vncle Benerus, the founes of Gorns; from Benerus, the Hauen neces the Citic Nidrofie, is named Beitflod,

## I thought good to exhibit these things in a Table.

Fermetse King of Finland, Kare. The same also is Agire. That is to say, the Winde, for Signification Paleon, bonoured in the number of the Godzaf. fread of Falcon after death (as

beautie was called Halogie, to

logalande in Norway.

named of the Province of He 30.

the Sea; hee is supposed an-other Nystum, to have do-other Nystum, to have do-Windes.

Hhar.

Frofte. Otherwise called John, both from the Froft and Cold.

That is to fay, Some : furnamed the Ancient, because hee is reported to have lined three hundred yeares; he left one fonne, and three daughters.

Dryfa. A fnowy fhower.	Porre. King of Goth- land, Kuenland, and Finland.	Fames.  Signifieth Snowe gathered together in thicke heapes by a Tempeft.	delcending
Goe. A daughter.	Nor. Of whom Norwey is named, and the		Gør. Beiter-Geiter.

From this Norm , Haraldon Pulcriconnus is the twelfth of them that descended from the right Line, whom some make the first Monarch The said After immiof Norwey, but amiffe, being ignorant of Antiquitie: feeing hee was gration happened in the third Restorer of the Monarchy of Norway: for betweene him and the time of this Gylai, co Norms, Hemneus the fonne of Odinus "obtayned the Monarchy alfo,

This Odina is faid to have made his plantation with his After follow-Crs. about for and twentic yeeres before Christ was borne\_

Earth-bred or Land-fprung had their originall in that

These (I say) besides many other things, are the manifest tokens of the Inhabitants of the Northerne World, farre more ancient then the immigration of Odinus: of whose original notwithflanding, there is not one word. But because it is most repugnant to a Christian man, knowing the Bookes of Mofes concerning Originals, to affirme themselves to be Antecheme, as both others, but especially the Granges did concerning their Ancestors (yet with better leave then the rest of the people of Europe: who next to the Chailers, Egyptians, and Ienes, might worthily boaft of Antiquitie in comparison of other people.) It were better truly to confesse the vaknown originall of Ancestors, then to be carried away with the opinion and error of Earth-bred men: 60 left furely wee should heare some fuch thing, as sometimes one wittily vpbraided the Grecions with, fo much boafting by reason of their pretended selfe-criginall, to wie, that Moses the Law giver of the lewes, was more ancient then the Gods of the Gracians,

In the meane space, because through the onely confession of ignorance or doubt, truth doub

Giants first Inhabitants of the North, &c. C HAP.23.

not to foone appeare; tomewhat is to be alleaged touching the proposed question: that the historicall Reader may haue fome thing here which hee may either confuse or confirme. Wee are therefore by probable reasons to inquire, who were the first inhabitants of the Northerne World, and from whence they came: then, when they began to inhabit this our World: that from hence some coniecture may artie concerning the original of the language. And that I may here acquit my felte without circumstances; I thinke the first inhabitants of the Northerne nere acquire my sone Williams, nay, mere Giants; men that inhabited the mountaines Giants firft inof an luge and iometimes a monitrous body, and of monitrous and exceeding firength; and that hibbers of the they were the posteritie and remnant of the Canaanites, expulsed from the Territories of Pale- Northerne 10 ftms, about the yeere of the World 2500. by losse and Caleb removing into Palestina through parts of the Hona, about the year of the World even until those times, or World, Gods pleasure and direction: and that this Countrey of the World even until those times, or Their original

peraduenture longer, remay ned altogether not inhabited. For thus Saxo Grammaticus argueth in the Preface of his Dania. But (fayth he) the flones of exceeding bignesse fastened to the Tombes and Caues of the ancient, testifie that the Countrey of Den- Along dismarke was formetimes troubled with the inhabiting of Giauts. But if any doubt, that it was done by courte of the monstrous strength; let him looke up to the high tops of certaine Mountaines, and say, if he know Authorico monitrous livengin; let tim tooke up to the tight up to the tops thereof? For every one that confiderate there have bin this Miracle, shall perceine that it is beyond common opicion, that the simple labour of mortalitie, or v- Giaris, tofuall force of humane strength Scouldraffe so huge a weight (bardly, or not at all moneable open the mitted,

20 Plaine ground) to fo bigh a top of mountaynous sublimitie. This Saxo writeth, who shall be a sufficient Author voto vs concerning the first Inhabitants of Denmarke, that is to Gay, his owne Countrey. So concerning Norway and Succia, and the bordering Countreyes, as whatsoeuer is most ancient; fo it most resembleth a Giant-like disposition and nature. Whereof examples are to be taken out of Histories, which would be tedious Giants in the here. For that I may omit ancient examples, those things are knowne of late memory to have time of Harbeene done : Concerning the Giant Doffro, inhabitant of the Mountayne Doffrafiall in Nor- aldus Hareway; and Foster-father of Haraldus Pulcricomus King of Norway. Also concerning Dunubo fayre and since who lived in the time of Droffon : from whom the Bay Boddick or Bothnicke : in time pail was

called Dumbshaff, who in a Sea-fight, encountring eighteene Giants alone, fent twelve of them 30 first to Hell before he himselfe was slaine. Of thirrie Giants at once destroyed by fire. by Dumber Sonnes left, in reuenge of their Fathers death. There is yet a later example of certayne Giants of Norway, destroyed by authoritie of Olans Triggo King of Norway, about the yeere of Christ 995. But the latest in the yeere 1338. Magnus the Sonne of Ericus, being King of Nor- 1338, 2 Giane Christ 995. But the latest in the yeere 1338. Magnus the sonne of Essen, being hing of Norreportedons,
way, that a Giant of fifteene Cubits was flaine by foure menias it is found recorded in the ChroCubits. nicles. Hereunto adde, that a certayne Prouince of Normay, or bordering vpon Finnauchia, in ancient time was called Rifalande, that is to fay, the Land of Grants (for En Refe, and Refe, fignifie a Giant) from whence lotum Heimar, that is, the habitation of Giants is not farre diffonant (whereupon as yet, En Ist, is fail to be a Giant) that I may fpeake nothing heere of Istumland: by which name, that which at this day is called Intland, was fometimes called by our Countrey Intland.

40 men, and very many other also, the Land of the Cimbri, or Chersonesus: the same name also being given it of Kemper, that is, fighting Giants of Nephilbeimar, and Karnephill, elfe-where, and peraduenture by others shall be spoken, as also of the Gotthes, and Gotts (peraduenture also letts) and fuch like others. Moreouer, the remnant of the Giants came into Island, whose Names, Habitations, worthy Acts and Enterprizes, are fufficiently knowne, and before our eyes. Sceing therefore Giants first inhabited this our World; it is demanded, when, or whence they came?

Gilb. Genebrand. Chronol. Lib. 1. The first Age, fayth hee, ( from the Creation of the World unto the Floud) seemeth to have beene passed and spent within the mid-lands of the World, and that ther came not to the borders of Alia, Airica, and Europe. Bodinus fayth, that Mofes wrote the

50 Hiftorie of the whole World (he meaneth inhabited) euen to the yeere of the World, 2470. And Genebrand againe, Lib.1. Chronol. pag.18. As the first Original of Manhind was in Acmenia, Melopotamia, Chaldea, and Syria: and men before the Floud dwelt only there: fo other Countreyes themselnes, were first inhabited after the Flond. Also Gonebrand fayth yet turther, wild. pag.35. Before three thousand yeeres (for bee wrote in the yeere of Christ 1597.) almost all Estope was emptie, that is, about the yeare of the World 2541. Which is chiefly to bee vinderstood of the Northerne World, if of the rest of Europe, But hee faid , almost , not altogether , that hee might not take away the migrations of the Nations then presently beginning after the yeere of the World 2500. wee doe not therefore tye the time (wherein this further Europe began to bee inhabited) to the yeere of the World 2500. But wee fay, that that troublefome time wherein 60 the Nations (and among them the Giants of Coman) were cast out of their places and dwellings, and compelled to feek new habitations, even in Emope, happened in this yeere; as was propoled by vs in the beginning. And that Europe received her Inhabitants from hence, among the

Ancient, Processus is my Author, a Writer borne at Cafaria of Palaftina , Collector of the worthy Act, of Infimianus, about the yeere of the Lord 520. who to proue this very thing, allea-

geth divers Writers of the Historie of the Phamieians. The words of Proopins are these, inhis geth duters Writers or the Finone or the Foundalls, not in one place only, cited by D. Citeran : out of fourth Booke of the Warres of the Vandalls, not in one place only, cited by D. Citeran : out of fourth Booke or the warres or they assume, north the Hebrewes (faith Procopius) of the which, among other things, I gather mine opinion. The Hebrewes (faith Procopius) of the which, among other chings, a granter mine opinion at the present of Palarstina, Moles (who led them ter they returned out of Leype, and remajore persons to version by a amount moves (now eather in their issurney) dieth: whom lotted the some of Nun succeeded, who also brought the people may so teer secrety acto: woom thus we jume of a broad the nature of man obtained the Country where-Paiettina, and journey irrengto and contray out organise and many of monocomposition one constrained or by difference of the contract of the as to Century upon toe Oceanous, jump uncultures to the accions thirty of the Phoenicians bor oner which one long price reagress; as an writege, woo were to more than 1,000 years to well studes of people dwelt: the Gergalites, lebulites, and others mamed in the Hebrew Fedomes, to great mutitudes of people and it for Designines, securities, and when they faw the Armie of the fireness to be inexpossable from their Country bounds were into who when they have the Arme of the fireness is we thexportance sensor for the transformation with the Egypt next also pring, and there increding in number and posterine, when they found not inflicious, and Egypt next also pring and there increding the many forms and commence of the forms of the fireness of the forms of the fireness consecuent pace pre per a ministrue, to person use alticonvoire momentage or many consistency page for all the costs, even wate the Pilers of Hercules, ving the base Phoenician Tongue and Dialets, and built the Towne Tingen in Numidia, most strongly fortified in the situation thereof; where two teet, and count to a towns a suggestion because in a prompty jurisjum to can promise inversely involved the Pollers of white flows are erelied nears the great Familiess, whereven in the Photonician Language lade. Letters are ingrauen. Nos firmus Cananes, quos fugaut lessa Latro. For lossa in the Hesteria Letters are negranors, two names common, your superior segme and the stevens at the stevens are cited by Go.

Lefter, This Preceptus written, to which purpole the Historians of the Hebrewes are cited by Go. nebrand : Issue (faib be) parish expelled the Cananites; and parish she them. The remnon of the necrona: copie ( jano oc ) parsy experiment of diseases, and for execution of formation of sung over reported to best gone into Germany, Sclaudnia, and the next adsorpting Countryes, Gr. Into So. 20 see reported to deate gone most settlikely, Neadollide, and the nead among now, commerces, etc. Interested to Claim, Sec. Alfo: And foreign to that Age, that the whole Weft mat compile and impeopled, fame that the Nations of the Eafl came by little and little into the Commerces thereof, it appeared by the often ha to the atoms of the party of the annual and the second of Japons: I in Someorems with the Hebrares, went into lbyricom and Pennenia (to writ, by those of the Land of Palatina, by the Hebrares, went into lbyricom and Pennenia (to writ, by those magrations and remoues, which out of the place before alleadged by Procesius, were understand) as Rabbs David Kimchi witneffeth at the end of Abdiss.

The ancient / Jander seeme to have beene ordayned for great frugalitie, wherein first there habitations or buildings are briefly to be touched, next their food and manner of apparell : and

For first as touching their habitations, the Islanders have followed the first and most ancient 19 Separate dwelmanner of dwelling. To wit, not by Cities and Townes; but as Tacina speaketh of the Gramones of his time, they dwelt alunder, as a Field, as a Fountayne, as a Wood, as an Hill, or Valhonest of the tune, tuny over a student, as a kind, as a commayire, as a wood, as an rill, or via-ley, Shoare, or Bay of the Sea pleafed them: Not only initiating here the example of the first Age of the World, but also of the latter Age as the people of Ashew and Laconia, in the begin-ning dwelt by Villages (as they write) not together or by Cities: and as in the time of Tackur, about the yeere of Christ 120 with the Grammer there was no vic of Mortar nor Tyles: (whereupon any man may rather judge the like concerning the Northerne World) fo, nor after, (whereupon any man may sause; punge the macroneering one southerne womay is, nor area, with the Islanders, but they built their houses with Timber and Turffe. Nor farely was it momentany worke which lasted but a while, nor yet deformed in shew, the walks were foundtimes made only of Turffe, foretimes of rough Stones, adding Turffe in flead of Mottar; which at 4 terwards they coursed with workmanship of plankes, as also the rastering it selfe; especially in more notable buildings. And so you might see the Roofe with the walls before mature old age ouer-growne with greene graffe energy years, for you must widerstand, that the Roofe and walls were concred with greene Turfe, Windowes were made in the Roofe, feldome in the walls, and certaine Roofes not very high, firch as is reported the building of houses with the Easterne people was wont to be. The Inhabitants had flore of Timber, cast ypon the shoare by the swelling of the water of the Sea; through the minatulous testimonie of Gods Proudence, confide ring their Woods at home yeelding plentic, at thinks only of Birches, were not fufficient for their huge houles: which yet were a great helpe also; with those which the Inhabitants, as off as they would, fetched out of bordering Norwy, and peradosneare also out of Grandand: for the 90 Iftendars tayled yeerely to both a long time. Euery one therefore had the houles of their Vallages almost joyning together on their ground : besides the stalls of their Herds, seated somedistance from the houles themselves. Also certayne piles of field, not altogether joyning together, to awoid the danger of fire : peraduenture also certayne store-houses, which being folicary, might

Some maintayned their fires with home-growing Wood : others with clammic Turfe (as I thinke H. Ismiss aprly calleth it) whereof there are two kindes with vs : the one foft and frongie, growing vader the superficies of the Earth; which wee call Sourder: Another more houges growing range and appearance of the metal; winter wee may very well call digged Turfe, by the opinion of the same shoras because it as taken out of the deep Opinion of the same shoras is the country of the deep Opinion of the same shoras is the same of the deep Opinion of the same shoras is the same of the deep Opinion of the same shoras is the same of the deep Opinion of the same shoras is the same of the same of the same shoras is the same of the same of the same shoras is the same of the same short is the dust in a second of the same and winder the same of the same o Benero or Turte-fewel in of the Germanies call it Tarff: the innentor whereof in the Orchades a certayne Orchadeshan Duke is faid to become Einarus the Sonne of Rangunaldus a Norwegian Duke of Mare, in the

time of Pulericomus King of Norway, who was therefore called Torffeinarus. He had a brother talled Rolfno, whom Crantzins nameth Rollo, who possessed part of France, afterwards called Normandie of the Normans, or Normegians. The Inhabitants chiefly wanted fewell to expell the diffemper of cold, betides other vies fufficiently knowne : especially in the Winter time, Stones when Hot-houses and Chimneyes are in vse, heaped together of Rocks and stone, through which the flame might eafily breake forth; which as foone as through the force of the fire they were throughly heat, and when the Hot-house began now to leave smoking, the cold parts of the Chimney were befprinkled with hote glowing stones : by which meanes heate vieth effectually to disperse it selfe throughout the whole house, which also is very well so preserved by the wall,

to and Roofe couered with Turfe. Yet left the Islanders might seeme through meere pouertie or want of knowledge, to have yfed rule buildings and poore houses; I can cal to remembrance certayne houses of an hundred and Gresser house twentie fixe foot long, and some of one hundred thirie sue, as I have before declared concerning to in standard in the buildings of Ingulfus: and some of one hundred and twentie seet in length, and sixtic feet old times, broad : whereof we shall hereafter speake; some also, whose hollowed rafters, and boarded feeling of the walls carued by art, report the ancient Histories, of worthy and memorable Acts. They therefore inclosed their habitations built after this manner, with certayne spaces of fruitfull fields orday ned for tillage, which spaces through toylesome labour, they atterwards compaffed about with a banke cast vp, to keepe out the Heards of cattle. Moreouer, sufficient huge 20 pastures were assigned to every Farme or plot of ground, divided by certayne limits, or inclofures from others, whereof we shall speake in the eight Chapter. And enery Farme or Habitation for the most part, and in like manner every plot of ground received the name from the first Founders: sometimes also from some other: so Mountaynes and Rivers as hath beene advertized before; fo that by this meanes the places themselves, even by their names only declared to all pofteritie their first Inhabitants, and improust.

I proceede from buildings to their victuals, and tillage of the field and ground, which part- victuals and ly succeeded well to the first Inhabitants, to procure Corne and fruit from thence : but I know Husbandry. not whether every where alike. Yet in the meane space, that Hierleifus mentioned before, exercifed his flaues in tillage of the ground and one Gunnerus of L. darenda, fowing his Seed, was ently in viet 30 wounded by the enemie on the ball of the cheeke : and likewife Hofebuldus Huitarneffede bufily imployed in fowing the Seed, was flame. Hence from the fields there are proper names of cer-

tayne places. Hence came that Law concerning the gathering together, and carrying of Corne after Haruest (whese they speake of the services which the Lawyers call pradual.) All which are manifest tokens of the tillage of the ground, amongst the first Islanders : which also,

euen vnto this day, I heare, is practited by some Inhabitants of South Island, but with

leffe increase: the ground and temper of the Ayre degenerating from the first goodnesse thereof after fo many Ages : peraduenture also the care of the Husbandmen beeing leffe diligent, may bee the cause; since Corne comming from forreigne parts began more to be in vie; And because that tillage of the ground seemed in the beginning either not vied of all, or lesse 40 fruitfull for Corne, and all manner of graine; a peculiar manner of tillage of the ground prefently began : whereby they compafied with dunge those fields or spaces, which I said they inclosed within their owne circuit, especially with kowes dunge, at the mowing of the best hay, to the intent they may the betterfeed the Heards; and especially the Kine, that they might yeeld the more plenty of Milke. Which tillage of the ground is yet retayned : and they only exercife thefame for the most part, almost by mid-land Inhabitants: feeing such as dwel your the Sea-coast live most by fishing: whither also those more remote or mid-land people veerely fend their Seruants to fifh, Both Plaines, that is to fay, the ground and the Sea, was to bee ploughed after a fort by the Illanders, for the comforts of life. To whom besides insteed of victuals, Sheep, Oxen . Swine and Kiddes, fufficiently abounded : and also fiftes of diners kindes , besides So Sea-fish out of the Flouds, Lakes and Rivers, they met with every where to that they Beaffer

might take them as it were out of a certayne weele, especially in that Age : also Milke and White-meate, with goodly plentie of Butter from the Heards of cattle. Besides Fowle in great number, some tame, as Hennes and Domesticall Geese, or Fowle of another kind liuing in the open Ayre, wandring also solitarily in Mountaynous places: which the poffeffors marked in the feet, that every one might more eafily demand his owne. They had others also not tame, which they tooke by certayne ginnes : as Geese and Duckes of the Medow, Partridges, and Swannes and very many Sea-fowle, whose names and properties I doe not know. But Fowle of either kind tame or wilde, they either prefented their Egges or themselves, Gr both, for the vie of men. Besides the naturall Drinke or pressed Whay of Milke (where-60 of the great plentie is fo much the better, as the Milke is more excellent : fo that halfe an Drinker

cunce of water mixed with an ounce of Whay, doth not wholly diminish the taste thereof; but Whay. that is relisheth more of the Whay then of the water) they also boyled Barley Flowre, formetimes adding thereto the Honey Combe , or Water mingled with Honey : fometimes Mead. also a Liquour made of certayne Berries growing heere. Moreoner, the ancient Islanders, Ale.

Romes and

Fewell.

brought in drinke made of Corne, from forreigne parts, as also all manner of graine, and other brought in triange manager come, and other come, wherewith they yearely visited as their pleasure, Denmarke, Norway, Suecia, Scotland, Saxonie, England, and Ireland.

Terr presence, seemmore, a wormy, when you would be a worked by surface and the furely with Our ancient sparners wanted not content and content and and are with our miferable sparing, whether we respect the number of the guests, or the time of the Banour miletane sparing, whether we respect the number of the guests, of the same of the pan-quest exhibited. For Theodorus and Thornaldus, brethen, and Citizens of Historia of North Illand, folemnizing the Funerals of their Father Hialta, made a Banquet for fourteene dayes together, of twelue hun led persons, presenting the men of better note with some gift. And an Inhabitant of Weit fland, furnamed Olass Pa, with his two brethren, were at the charge to banquet nine bundred men, euen for fourteene dayes face; not sending the chiefe men away 10

I find money was not vitall with the Islanders, I meane, those of ancient time: butilizer was weighed by the ballance: and bartering of Merchandizes was very commonly vied. Moreour, Rings of Gold, and Bracelets, were both often fent for tokens of remembrance from Superiours to private men, or from one friend to another.

#### è. III.

# Of their Politie, and Religion in old times.

Chap.6. Of their Corr mon-wealth & Religion.

He Islanders going about to establish an Aristocratic, or State of Nobilitie (considering they dwelt scattered in the Countrey, and not together) first duided their Citie into Fourths or Tetrades, named from the foure principall quarters of the World, and diffinguished besides by setting of bounds (such also as was

the Geographicall partition of the Iland it selfe, mentioned before at the end of the first Chapter) diuided into North , East , South , and West quarter. And againe, they diuided the Fourths into Thirds, except the North quarter : For this, as it was larger then the reft, was parted into Fourths. But these Thirds they subdivided againe into their parts: forme Tenths and others formewhat otherwife. For the which not finding a fit name, I have retayned the proper name of the Country, that which with them is Hrepper, wee may counterfor. ly call Reppa: vnto the which also we may imagine no vnapt Etymon, from the word Repo. For here was the first affilia or sospionia of them that executed any publike Office, for equitie elther of opinion and jungement, and the equall ballancing of mindes, to be preferred in the reft of the Magistrates, worthily ought to begin there, valesse any would rather thinke they had respect heere vnto Reed, that is to say, Coards, with the which the diuision was made, after the most ancient manner of the Hebrawes themselues. Euery Reppa regularly contayned twentie Inhabitants at the least (for oftentimes it contayned more) limited by a certayne increase of the wealth of their Family, under which they might not be reckoned to the poorer Repres; to the

Seats of Inflice and Re-

Idols,

Per and Thers day. Freir Nierdur and As. Same that Wa. Saxen ftorie. Deuil) made

Moreouer in euery Third, as also in the Fourths of the North Tetrade, (which Iurisdictions 40 in times past they called Pyng, at this day also Sylla berad) they appointed three more famous places confectated to the Seat of Inflice and Indgements; besides also dedicated to Ethnicke Sacrifices, which they call Hoff: we call them Holy Places, and Temples. Euery Chappell after the manner of this Countrey was sumptuously built : whereof wee reade of two, of one hundred and twentie foot long. One in the Iurisdiction of Walbdall of North Island: the other in Rialarnes of South Island: and this surely fixtie foot broad. Moreover, every such holy place had a kind of Chappell adjoyning. This place was most holy. Heere stood the Idols and Gods made with hands, upon a low stoole or a certayne Altar; about which the cattle which were to be facrificed voto them, were orderly placed. But the chiefe and middlemost of the Gods was Impier, by them called Por, from whom these Northerne Kingdomes yet call Thorrday Thorf. 50 dagb. The rest of the Gods were collateral vnto it; whose certayne number, and names I have not heard. Yet in the ancient forme of oath (whereof mention shall be made hereafter) three besides Thoras, are specially noted by name : Freyr, Nierder and As: whereof the third, to wit At, I thinke to be that famous Odinus, not accounted the last among those Estimicke Gods (of whom I made mention before) Synecdochically called At : because hee was the chiefe of the people of Afia, who came hither into the North : for in the fingular number they called him At, which in the plurall they called Efer, or Efer. This Odions, as aforeised, for his notable knowledge in Deuillish Magicke; whereby like another Mabonet, hee affected Sorcery(which a Dumnitie after his death, was reckoned among the number of the Gods: from whom at this day, Wadnesday, is called Odens Dagur, the day of Odinus: whereupon peraduen-60 ture, I shall not vraptly call Odin Mercurie, as Ther Impiter. Yet the ancients honoua God, Wednesday, or red Odm in the place of Mars: and such as were slaine in the warres, they lay were sacrifixed to Odin. And the companions, or Sonnes of Odin were Freyr and Noveline : who

CHAP.23. S. 3. Ethnike rites and bumane facrifices . Deuill-circle. Christianitie. 665

through the same artes which their Father or Prince Odinus practited, obtayned an opinion of Diumitie. I haue before aduertifed you, that chiefly in the North Countrey, Kings, after their death, are honoured for Gods. But the worthipping of them hath not yet come wnto the Illenders: wherefore we will speake nothing of them in this place. Privation we wan a peace inclining a second Temples, flood an Altar credted, coursed The Altar.

aboue with Iron, that it might not be hart with fire, which mult bee continually there. A Caldron also or braien vessell was see voon the Altar, to receine the bloud of the lacrifices, with an Holy water holy water flicke or iptinkle, to bedew the flanders by with the bloud of the facrifices.

Belides, on the Altar a filter Ring was kept (or of copper) of twentie ounces, which being Holy Ring. anomized with the bloud of the facilities, they who executed any office pertaying to Juffice, being now readie to take their oath, religiously handled while they were sworne. Foure-footed beaits, for the most part, were appointed for lacrifices; to bee converted to the food of the Sa- Sacrifices,

crificers. Although in the meane space, I finde (a lamentable matter) that the blinde Ethnicky in the forefaid place of Ridames vied also humane facrifices: where at the doore of the Temple, was Humane inhuvery deepe Pit, wherein the humane lacrifices were drowned; which Pit was called Blothell mane facrifices de, from the Sacrifice

Also in West Island, in the Prouince of Thornshing: in the middle of the Market place there was a round circle, into the which, men appointed to be facrificed to the Gods, were gathered: Deuill-circle who being violently smitten against an exceeding great stone set there, were cruelly slaine. The indignitie whereof, that those is reported to have declared many ages after, by the bloudy co-

lour, which no shower of raine, or water, could eurr wash away. An abominable crueltie surely, yet not wanting examples, derived even from the most ancient times. I omit those of later time, and found in the neare bordering Countries, as the humane factifices of the French, whereof CL cere pro Fonteio, speaketh : and also the custome of nearer bordering Countries. I doe not mention the Roman factifices : among which, Laperea Valeria, appointed to be factificed, was delinered from preient death by an Eagle. Let the maps walking, and facrificing of noble Virgins of the Greeter, not be remembred: with whom Helena was likewife freed from imminent perill of facrificing, by the benefit of an Eagle. But who is it, that can be ignorant of Benbennon or Gebennow of the Hebrewes, and their crueltie farre greater then this, exercised not woon flaues or guiltie

now of the Hebrews, and their cruentic rare greater ten this, exercises not voon states or guitte persons, but even voon their dearest children? Concerning which matter I chought good to set of the converted words of Chrispah, Adricomus Desphus, Gobornow, faith he, was a place so the fab.

not is of Cruislem over on aims to East, water the Measurague of Ossess, news the Fabous of the Fabre, made pleased, idee Tempe. In this 1949 fined a Pauline, and the brash did of Modoch, committy wrongs in the Samp of a King, bellow within; whose beat resembling a Cally, the other parts as much that arms spritched from to survive address: who through the cohemon has af the International Calls and the Calls of th burned amidit these curfed embracements: For when by the fire put under in the concanity of the Idell, we reca amous two processing to the most wicked person, with merchale creative, delucred their deory field the case all first, then the most wicked person, with merchale creative, delucred their deory field then, to mit, bow Somes and Dangbars to be borned within the fe detfiable embracements. And leaft deep, to mit, bow Somes and Dangbars to be borned within the fe detfiable embracements. And leaft deep, to mit, bow Somes and Dangbars to be borned within the fe detfiable embracements. aren, se me, mem some some semponts i some memor men some men some memor memor memor de fibe parents, Of this place the mujerable er of the shidere in borroble trammer being hard, might memor the bound of the parents, Of this place the Fright of Mooch, filled the agree and this memor fille with the barth found of trampets, and firsting and their cries

up of Drummes, fo long as the facrifice contamned, Whereupon alfo the place was named Tophet, which of the children figuifieth a Drumme. This Adriconnus writteth. And leaft any might thinke, that the common confued with Property of Armony. 1111 In Inc. 1111 Inc. 111

But that crueltie, and those facrifices of Saturas seeme not to have continued long with the was called Ge-Islanders: and furely, they were vied no where elle, fame in the two places affigned. Nor yet of bests and Toall the Inhabitants of that Prouince, where it was exercised. For it is reported of Harleifen, the companion of Luguifus before mentioned, that he altogether abhorred the worthipping of Idols.

So And Helys alfo turnamed Biols, defeended from the Barons of Norwey, an inhabitant of the Protince of Rislarues favoured the Estimick Religion but a little : for he received an Irish man, a bamithed Christian, into his neighbourhood; one named Ormulfus, with his families (which came with him :) and did not onely receive him, but also permitted him to build a Church confecrated to Saint Columbe, in the Village of Escuberg. A yong man also of the same Province, called Base destroied that most accurred Temple of humane facrifices with fire, and burned all the Gods, although afterward it was repaired by the Proprietors.

Moreouer, Torchillus furnamed Mane (it may bee because hee honoured the Moone, called More, and the rest of the Starres , with more Religion then the rest) a man of a very vpright life, and famous among the Nebilitie of Island, a little before the agonie of death, caused him-60 felfe to bee fet forth ouer against the Surne, and openly admiring the workmanship of Heauen, and the whole World, commended his Soule departing when he was readie to die, to that God who created the Sunne, and the rest of the Starres. He lived about the yeere of Christ 970. The who creates the state, and the feet in the states. He must not a project continued. As of fame, or the like may be reported of very many others, while Ethnicishney continued. As of fallers a certain inhibition of South Island: who, because hee followed not the worthip of Hallers a certain inhibition of South Island: who, because hee followed not the worthip of

Idols, was called Godleus, that is to fay, as was also his sonne Helge. The publique Offices, fome of them are diffinguisted from hence; others have their original Chap. 7. The publique Onace, some or them are unanigument from hinner; there is not their original. Of Magiltrates from tome other place. These which are taken from hence, are a Reprogram (that I may denie Of Magificate from tome owns place. Those varieties are the partition into Repensed Products, and Courts.

2 word) and the administration of Products, to with the partition into Repensed Products, the partition into Repensed Products. a word) and the auminitiation of a rount value of some kinds of government loyated with it. For ended as it were in funding faces, but both had fom kinds of government loyated with it. For ended as it were in funding present, but outstrond come alone or government, my ned with it. For a swell the Repp. 2021 (for 10 I may call the Masters of Repp.) as the prominciall Governous, proaswers the appropriate the production of the production of the production of the production of the public claimed Allembires, effablished Indgements (every one in their Court) and pumished the guiltie: ctames parenties, enguines tougenesses (easy one matter court, and pulmes are guite: whereby it is entired that they also vied the Law of Appeals in forren Caules (for in their own, whereby it is canonic tractiney and vice one has to appear an auton mane for in their own, even primate men had libertic of Appeale) for that I need not doubt that the Appealog allo were euen printer men nan inversie of a ppears, or that a the trade for cooker that the arpragge and were comprehended wider the Title of a Magnifrate. Who is defined by Bodims to bee Hee, that bets 10

A Magistrate, part of a publique generations, Metho, bill, cap. 16. I added, faith he, the word Publique, that it part of a purique governments, are two, one, way, 10. a ductor, later we have a rounge, that it might be diffing unfied from the government of a Mafter, or a Father. If therefore any would mign: or outstriguisses from the government of a master, or a master, at therefore any would define a more perfect diffinction of a Magistrate, it should be such: A Magistrate is inferior, or Gente a more person unimprated to a magnitude, it mount of fine men, which not inhabitants choice fuperior. The inferior is a Keppagogie or Gouemour of fine men, which not inhabitants choice Tor government of the Rapes, yield in every Rape, whom we are here compelled to call Rapage. for government of the repetition of the state of the stat gritie, next for the possession of immousable goods; validic concerning this latter, it seems good

Care of the

Moreouer, the Office of the Repraest, is limited by the care of the Poore, But that which Moreouer, the Once of the Appropriate the care of the Poore required, every one within the bounds of their Rope, endeuored to attain to the care or the reore required, every one washin the country of which appears to define the provide, that none should bee suddenly brought to by infective meaner. First, that every money product, that none mound one modernly prougate to extreme pourtie : as much furely as confifted in mans policy. Secondly, how they might provide for fuch as were become Beggars, to be maintayned by the common aide.

And furely, they attempted the first part of their office three manner of wayes: first, by ma-And timery, tury assempted the man parcol since of the comment of wayer; mit, pymaking Lawes against such as through their owne fault (speaking after the manner of men) beking Lawes against than as intough their owner that the personal attention manner or men ) oc-Lives against carne beggins : of which fort are those, situal de exberedandis; esp. 3. Parenthes mendies natus, came oeggus : oe winen interese entire, sinne a correamant, cap 3. Parentons mondees natus, & is fe bification villamo quarendo educatus (nifi morbo officilos) boredinatem nollom adito &c. that G . Pig only the time of the from doore to doore: The 18. chapter of the fame; and the first is to 127, 50 using as in meeting from the time of begging, 69-30. Leaft any vinder a feigned thew of vertue, three years, max months are the sames, Allo, Altera let de cinfmod mendicis impans coffendis; a so tiemficam coronidam fore; similar, depublis, cap, 33, to wir, Left living from doore tamp: non-common new twomans and present the various in parents, which afterwards should be a borden to the Commonwealth. Also, a third Law, De yellow menders non alenda; titul, de menders con. 39. 63, (not repugnant to the commandement of the Apolile, Her that laboured not, its bonner 39.03a (not repugnant to the command of the sporter), saw sus toporard nos, is summer eats, 2. Thef. 3.) and of not receiving them, fo much as into their house, cap. 45. of the fame: agricuous penaltie being inflicted, if any offended against this kaw; in the same place.

By which Decree, what other thing I pray you is mean, then the cultome of the Atheniese by which beere, who come the stronger inquired of the particular Citizens, by what are co in times part; among whom the exception inquartu or the particular citizens, by weat art every one lived; and provided to have them called in question, who gave themselves to filthy nery our nute; and produced to the ching, I fay, then what was meant by the Decree of the 40. Majittenfa, who forbad them to enter their Citte, who knew no are whereby to fuffaine their Magnusors, who torous them to enter the a three more no at the whother they gave no place to the cand tetrany mount present extend empressable or unnotate axes: they gave no place to Players, counterfeit lefters, laughing Companions, fawey Scotlers and Jugglers, To conclude, Prayers, connections sections, sungaming companions, sewery societies and suggests. In concluse, What other thing, then what the Decree of Solon meant, who orday ned a Law, that the children should owe no chanks nor fauour to their parents, by whom they had beene instructed in no honelt arte toget their lining . The ancient World had fo great and webement protocations no nonert arts tages with our Countrimen, which in this laftage (ah, too degenerate) you may vario versus; chem wantous Sountenment, which me the samage (1), on tegenerate, you may finde wanting with griefe; all these Constitutions being taken away. Wherefore the number Ende wanning wan grees, an unce communicons orang cases away. Wherevore the number as drading (that I may vie the word of Paul) is more abundantly increased, that it to say, of them, who being void of all discipline, line infamous to themselues, and grienous and trouble- 50 them, who design out at a supplier, the talking and fithy alleness; and grievous and trouble-fome to their common Countrey, in slothfull and slithy alleness; innerting and changing that order instituted by God himselfe. The care of which thing, if the Magistrate would yet under-

Inerdinare

The second meanes and way of preuenting pouertie, was a Law or E.lict, concerning those who defined to be admitted into a Represe become Citizens of Represe. For none was to be receiued into a Reppe, vnlesse hee had first gone vnto the solemne assembly of that Reppe, and defied that he might be admitted; which they might not infly denie, valeffe to one connicted of their, or otherwise of some other crime, or so poore, that therefore hee was vnsite for the Report, and that hee could not fuffaine himfelfe and his family without the common almes of the beggers, But if any could not be prefere at this affirmbly, her was bound to intreat leaue of colabitation 69 of flue inhabitants, haming lands of their owne, and next vnto him, whom here was about to goe vario. If any of honest same and rich in abilitie, would notwithstanding goe into the Report without demanding lease, he retayned his habitation, but yet was excluded from the Law and primiteiges of the Represe. But if any wicked and dishonest person had through himselfe in without leave (although he had lawfully hired void and emptie land from the Lord and Owner therof ) the fame was to be expelled by force : Traise de Reppis cap. 48. To the fame purpose appersaineth that Edict concerning fernants taken out of the Rep. cap. 47. of the fame.

The third Statute against pouertie was, concerning the restitution of private losse in the title recited before cap. 47. Whereofan example shall be given, first in houses by chance confumed by fire : and those of foure forts. For if a Store-houle, Kitchin, Bed-chamber, or Bed, and Chappel had been burned; the loffe received was to be valued within fourteene dayes, by five of the next neighbours, as well of the house it selfe, as of the most necessary things contained therein : as of the prouition of victuals, apparell, and houshold-stuffe daily vied onely, properly belonging to the Malter of the family, excluding other mens goods, as treasures, and other things more precious: because a man might bee a sufficient Citizen of Reppes without these. Then the halte part of the loffe valued by the whole Reppe, was to bee reftored within an appointed time, by Subfidies contributed in common, according to the abilitie of every Inhabitant. Another example of this liberalitie enjoyned by the Lawes, is, concerning Cattle deftroyed by the Murren or Rot : for if the fourth part of any mans Cattle, or more dyed, the loffe likewife being valued within fourteene dayes after the Murren ceased, was to bee relected by common supplies for the halfe part, as the former was. But concerning both, there was a crution added, that this benefit should not be performed the fourth time; least any thing through too much carelefnesse, and retchlesse negli-

gence, should procure damage to himselfe, De Reppis cap. 47. 48. The other part of the Office of the Reppagesi was imployed about the care of the poore, concerning the maintaining of such with certaine contribution of almes as were now become beggers, either through fickneffe or age, or other casualties not in their owne power : and also concerning the excluding of others, who should not appertaine vinto the almes, and divers cases thereunto belonging. This almes was either private or publike. Private, for the which a law was Lawes of made concerning the receiving of the beggers, into the number of their family by their kindred, Almes. or coulins, one or more, inabled by a certaine increase of wealth limitted by law, and to bee maintained by certaine lawes, according to the degree of hereditarie fuccession: For as any was next to the inheritance of the begger, if hee possessed goods, so was hee accounted the first that should sustaine him. But the next degree failing, or the same being poore, or not having where-30 with to maintaine himfelte and his, besides that begger, that necessitie was imposed vpon the se-

cond, or third degree of kindred,&c. to be releeved.

Publike almes was, as often as the kindred or confins of the beggar failed, they lived by the helpe and reliefe of the Reppes: every one was to bee maintained in his Repp; whereof there are prescript constitutions of lawes, to wit, what beggars should belong to what Ropp, and what not; and concerning the driving away and expelling of them by processe of law, who appertaine not thereunto. Therefore the Reppagegi partakers of a publike Office limited with these bounds, proclaimed affemblies : Some furely both in time and place, flanding, or ordinary : others not franding or extraordinary; that is to fay, as often as any new matter came pertaining to their charge to bee determined. Also private men might call extraordinary assemblies, to wit, they 40 who had any cause worthy of an assembly and indgement. But the figure and token of having an

affembly (after the thousand yeere, when they had now sworne to the Christian Faith, peraduenture before Impiters Hammer and battle Axe, Hamor pors) was according to the religion of that time, a woodden Croffe, which every Inhabitant carryed to his neighbour at the day, place, and occasion of the affembly proclaimed, of which figne intermitted or neglected, a certaine pemalrie was inflicted. There therefore the Reppagogi, concerning the matters appertaining to their charge, confulted according to equitie and right, determined them, and punished the guiltie: There the guiltie person, if the innury were private, was cited into the Court of Iustice by him that was injured, even without publike authoritie (which also wee reade was vsed by the Spartames:) but if the injury were publike (or if the partie injured in a private offence would not cite the guiltie person, or could not) then was see cited by some of the Rappagogi. Private men also had libertie and power to sue the Rappagogi negligent in their Office, or otherwise injurious:

wherea penaltie of money fell to the Citizens of the Reppes: all which, and other things here belonging are handled, in codice legum de Reppagogis, cap. 43. And concerning the inferiour Magi-firates, that is to say, the Reppagogi onely, to wit, the first species of the Civill Magistrate.

Nowfolloweth the superiour Magistracie, which is diftinguished into Governours of Provinces, and Iuftices. They were each of them Gouernours in every Province (which before I called Thirds, to wit, of every Tetrade) executing as well the publike Offices of the Courts of Iustice, as of holy my fteries : or they were Interpreters of the Law, and matters of Religion : (although afterward the interpretation of the Law belonged more to the Iustices.) As with the Romanes, oc the Adiles also vsurped part of the Pratorian Iurisdiction, Among the ancient Hebrewes also the High Priests : also among the Romanes the High Priests were facrificers. Whereupon Horatins carm, lib. 2. Ode 22. Victima Pontificum fecures cernice singit.

Thefe Gouernours therefore, in that they had the charge of holy Mysteries, were Priests in that they had to doe with the Court of Iuflice and Iudgement, they were Iudges : we call them

Noble-men in this place, and the state of the Common-wealth governed by their overfight, an Noble-men in this pace, and the trace of the common regard, governously their overright, an Aristoratie. The lame are called by our Country-men Godar, and Haffgodar; from the Church Arillocatie. The lame are caused by our country-incut or was, and a supplement; from the Church or Temple (which is Hoff) as it were Ouer-feers of the Church, and their Office or Dignitie or Temple (which is Hoff) as it were Ouer-reers to the Charlet, and their Once or Dignitic was called Godord; to wit, their name being next derived from their Elbwick gods, which they calwas called 0-00074510 wit, their name being usas defined from their account gous, which they called God: that even by the name it felfe, they (who almost represented the Name and Office of the Red God: that even by the name it sensythey two annotate presented the twane and United the Gods) might bee put in minde of the Vertues, Wisdome, and Inflice, &c. requifite in fuch a

And that they might thew themfelues fuch, I suppose the same place was appointed to judge-And that they might mere various ments of the feate of fulfice, which was ordained for Sacred Mysteries; to wil, at the forelist ments of the react of numer, which was obtained to a supplier. And also therefore, because the place of holy Mysteries, was religiously thought fitter 10 I emples. And also therefore, because the place of many my intries, master ground inought there for in gazate, or the taking of good counsell, whereof there is effectall whe in the Court of Inflice. for in Sudde, or the taking or good counter, whereor there is especially we little court of tustice.

Moreouer, the Promociall Governours had their two-fold affemblies, as the Rappagest had, yette-Moreouer, one production of the state of the ly or ordinary meetings, and proclaimed to extraordinary, any ascending equilibrium tor-mer affemblies, containing many dayes oid. Kampb.cap. 8. Torn. Lot.) and that, as it is likely, mer attemptes, containing many uses a survey and a survey faid of Appendix, as it is nikely, aftempted by fome figure of helding a meeting as we have already faid of Appendix; which fineanembled by some ugge or notating a meeting as we have already and or Appagates: which luc-ly, what it was in times past, is not well knownes valefic it were that, which afterwards, and by, what is much afterwards, and yet remaineth in vie; the forme of a Normegian axe of Wood, carried about after the fame manyet remainets in ves the tomore a very remained and a little before, of the woodden croffe. This toner, among the prountestal Guardian our language, which fignifieth a mellage,

en of the mulciant Court, is caused one in our ranguage, which names in a menage.

Moreoust, surry one paid some yearsly tribute or reusenue to the Temples; whereof the Guar- 40 Moreouer, energy one paid some yearest tribute or revenue to the a empires: whereof the Church was the Collector; for speaking of holy mysteries pertaining to dian or Unerteer of the Church was the Control of Presanges, may mynteries pertaining to the Church, I call enery Noble man fo. To him also came the penaltie of the Temple, and Court the Church, I can enery require must be, a to aim and came the penante of the 1 emple, and Court of Juffice prophaned: who likewife ought to maintain the Temple, or keeps it in repractions, of lattice propagate 1 who the write ought to maintaine the a timple, or keepe it in reparations, at his owne charge. Laffly the necessity, and specially care to amend and make good what sower at its owne curry. Leaving the through a managed one with Proxince, or to forefee and preuent it being imminent, wing the halpeof the Prouncials, lay wholly you him: for hat, for the definying of Theene and publique Robthe frouncists my windry your min; so that, on the destroying of a freetestand publique Kob-bers, you may finde fome who were prodigall of their owne life. Contrarily, it is a lamentable pers, you may muse a me was were prouged to the party where they make a great conference to cale, now at this day we see it canty more conserved pairs, where every make a great conscience to condemne a notorious Theefe by the Law, or any other considered once or twice of any capitall consense a novement in seet by the latter, to say the consense of Provinces. The Nameto, 10 crine, much more to put nun to ucati. I have alse the closerhours of crounices: I he exempted, less or Indices follow. The Nemophase was the other kinde of the superior Magistrate, somewhat later then these: of which fort, in the whole auncient Citie of Island (for we yet definbe what lazer then there: or which nore, in the whole sumbletic line of spans (for we yet dekinbe it) at one and the fame time, there was onely one: who of pronouncing or delivering the Law, 10) at one and the name time, where was onesy one. Who is propositioning or delinering the Law, was called Loginson and Log Loginson. For the Commonwealth began not finddenly, but by little. was called Legisland and Legislands or the Communication organized mannering, one by urtile and little to be framed: therefore the Prominciall Lawes were first, of the like meaning, though another to be trained to the fame, before they had them compact, and gathered into one peraturenture not every where the tame, before they mentioned and generical into one body; which when they attained for the callody and preferration of the fame, they admitted body: which when they accuracy is an arrange of the state, they somittee trustic and wife men, whom I call Namphylacu; and whose Office I shall very well describe in trust and whe men, whom a cart at omy a men a man whole since I man very well describe in the words of D. Nieslane Cragins, declaring the Office of the Sporten Nonephylaces. The Office of the Nomophylaces (and D. Cragins L. a.cap. 6. de Repub. Lacedom.) was, as we precede by the 40 of the Nomophylaces (faith D. Cragus Li. 2.Cap. 6.de Kepun. Lacedum.) was as we precinc by the matter is soft- in the tempts of the Common-matter is soft- to the tempts of the Common-tempts and that they found not softer them to be shoughted, thought, when they makes more by any. Marcount, they indecoured that the force of the Lames might not grow one spoty, or the many thereof the force of the states which has they compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined from the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined from the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates to the offen defined to the compiled the Magistrates the ten con 100 (compensative congress messores of the appropriate of course, of persons of some anneal dansferior, we may being thefe very sens were the interpreters of Lawes, of persons on thing dansifully fet downer, or hardly understood, blood come on differentiation. This [ration writteth: the fame descripting fee description to surely control to the feet of surface to surface to the feet of the fee wants account a sure of the Nobility, of changing, or renewing Lawes, and also inlarging them, as then white terror and counterfours; the content of the people being added. Therefore the No. maphyless or chiefe luthress, tooke nothing away from the forme of an Ariffernie: but were, 30 mappyment of contract numbers, toons around a map around to the Law, armed with publique authority for this purpole, in whole power alio] the custody of the Booke of the Lawes re-

But I dure proceeds no further with our Author in his Law Suites and Courts, left I be therein Dist. to the process and redown deloies. I am a Transler, and bomformer I base (not fo mach for the statement when the statement of the Archan entiquities) which then fare: I will not tire the Reader Him I, as for the knowledge of the Alexana arrequires) water tom fare: I will not tive the Reader farther, but remus the more curious to the Ambor himfolfs, who but hadded much of their Laws, and a Jetter, out court to more coverage of the camer analysis, were only abuse move of their sames, and a whole books of their annecent Grands, and mostler of their Kings, but bere omitted. The Kings of Norway began to base demicion in Hand, A. 1261. disers immunities referred : which Kingdome defcoming open Margaret, by her was limbed with then of Denmarke, and fo bath continued above 100. 60

# ENGLISH NORTHERNE NAVIGATIONS, AND DISCOVE-

RIES; RELATIONS OF GREENELAND.

GROENLAND, THE NORTH-WEST PAS-SAGE, AND OTHER ARCTIKE REGI. ONS, WITH LATER RYSSIAN

THE FOURTH BOOKE.

#### CHAP. I.

30 A Voyage fet forth by the Right Worshipfull Su THOMAS SMITH, and the rest of the Muscouie Company, to Cherry Iland : and for a further discouerie to be made towards the North-Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in the Ship called the Amitie, of burthen seuentie tuns ; in the which I IONAS POOLE was Master having fourteene men and one boy: A.D.1610.



HE first of March 1609. I wayed at Black-wall and went to Granefend. The third day I went downe to the Noore-bead. The ninth, wee wayed and put out to Sea (bleffed bee God :) and day, by the fifteenth day I was in the Bay of Roffe, on the Coast of Norway, in Latitude 65. degrees : at what time the wind came Northerly, and blew extreame herce, with great store of Snow and Frost. The fixteenth day, wee had the like weather and winds, to that wee could not maintaine a \* mayne-courfe, and \* The Mainwe loft fome of our Beere. The fenenteenth day, we had Snow, fayle without and all the Beak-head was fo laden with Ice , that it feemed a a Bonnet.

firme lumpe, and the wind at North, which blew so fierce that we could not maintaine a "fore-course, and draue vsbacks". The Foreto the altitude 63, degrees, 56, minutes. The fforme continued to exceeding violent, that I The Forewas faine to spoone before it fortie eight houres, and the same wind and weather continued till Bonnit the twentie one day, and in that time wee were driven as farre to the Southwards as Shottland. Andbeing faire by the Land, and feeing no likelihood of faire weather, I got a Fisher-man to conduct mee to a good Harbour, called Hamer found, not to much to efohew the stormy weather, conduct mee to a good Harbour, called Hamer found, not to much to elonew the normy weather, as to ftop fome leakes, and so amend our rackling. I carryed in Shortland till the twelfth of Shotland. April 1610, at which time the wind was Southerly. The former wind came to the North at midnight, with great store of Snow, which froze as fast as it fell : which wind continued 60 till the fourteenth at noone. At two of the clocke it came to the East north-east, and I flood to the Northwards, after many fformes, much cold, Snow, and extreame Frofts. I had North Cape fight of the North-cape the fecond day of May. Then I flood towards Chery Hand, the in 71 degrees winde being at West North-west. The third day at noone, the Cape bare South South-east; 20,minutes. fearenteene leagues off, we had much Snow with Froft. The fourth day, it was thicke weather May the us-

Chen Hand. Ice.

with great flore of Snow and Froft, the winde at North-west and by North. The fift day, it with great tore of show and riots, the winde at North North-eaft. The fixe day, at twoof the clocke in the was faire weather, the winde at Aroth Profitness a managery of the I held my courie toward Chery lland, horaning, a mee with rate to the second of the clocke, I faw the Ice fo thicke, that I could not possibly the winds using as South as a major win stock, as there sayle, and founded, but had no ground get through it. Then I flood to the Welf wards with a floor sayle, and founded, but had no ground get introgen in a next intoon to the view water many and a state of the clocke it began to cleere up, and I thoole into the Ice finding it featered in fome places; and at twelve at noone, I found the Pole elegated about the horizon 74 degrees 7 minutes, and founded, but had no ground at one hundred and featentie fathomes. From twelter till foure, I ran North North-west two leagues, and of May wee of ted and requestive rationnes, from twenty that country, and the founded, and had a hundred and fixtie fathomes. Then Chery Island did beer, as I sudged, North 10 founces, and not a numerous and instant automates, a new control and wester, as a magen protein. North-west, about fifteene leagues off or more: from foure till eight it was calme, at eight of the clocke the winde came Southerly, and I stood towards the lland and found the Le so thicke, that the Ship had no roome to wend, and withall fuch a fogge that I could not fee one Cables length; in which time the Ship had many a knocke, but thankes be to God, no harme was done. By twelue of the clocke, the fewenth day, I got out of the Ice and lay a hull till the North

Sunne, at which time it began to be cleere weather : then I fet faile, and stood to the Eastwards, The eight day it was very foggie, the winde at North and by East, with Snow and Frost: I flood to the Kastwards, in hope to get the Easter end of the Ice, and so to Chery Island; and I ranne into a Channell betweene two firme bankes of Ice, and could finde no way through, but 10 lay in the Ice till the ninth day at a South Sunne. Then I observed, and found the Ship in the altitude 74. degrees and 17. minutes, the winde being at North North-west, very faire weather,

grees-30,mi-

I failed in the abouefaid Ice, one while one way, and another while another, in hope to finde fome opening towards the Iland : but which way focuer I flood, I faw all the Sea courred with Ice. At a South Sunne, the tenth day, I observed both with my Astrolabe and Crossestaffe, and 74. degrees 15 found the Poles height 74. degrees and 15 minutes: and the variation 13 degrees and 30 minutes the North point Westerly: by a North Sunne I got out of the Ice into the open Sea, and to write. each courfe, way, and winde, with all other accidents, would be too tedious: but the thirteenth day of May, at midnight, I founded, being in very thicke Ice, and had a hundred thirtie eight 10 The Lyoneffee fadoms; there prefently I espied the Lioneffe standing into the Ice, I kept her company till eight The Lyonette of the clocke at night, and then I fleered as followeth, from eight aboue faid, till twelte at noone: The fourteenth day I failed North-well and by North twelve legges, the winde at South South-east, thicke foggie weather: from twelve till foure at night, I failed scaven leagues North, the same winde and weather with raine. And by the fifteenth day at foure of the clocke in the the faire winds and weather; at what time morning, I had failed North twentie seaten leagues, the same winds and weather; at what time I supposed, that I was not farre from land, because I see great store of Sea-Foule about the Ship: at eight of the clocke I founded, but had no ground at a hundred and fortie fathome : very foggy weather : likewife I founded at twelve of the clocke at noone; no ground at a hundred thirtie fine fathomes, where I met with Ice and great store of Fowle, as before, winde at South, and 40

I stood through the Ice, till eight of the clocke at night, holding no course by reason of it, at which time I founded, and had mintie fine fathom greene oze, the weather being all one, and very much Ice from eight, till ten of the clocke, I sayled North, one legaue and a halfe, and had senentie fise fathoms rockie ground. From ten till twelve at midnight I sayled North one league and a halfe, and founded, and had thirtie seven fathoms, the wind being at South, with great flore of raine and fogs, and abundance of Ice round about, but something broken. Then I stood off Weft and by South, and tooke in all the Sayles, except the fore-faile and maine top-faile; and at one of the clocke the fixteenth day founded, and had fortie fathomes oze: likewife I founded at two of the clocke, and had fiftie two fathomes: I could neither perceine Current nor Tide in all this time, and it did raine as fast as I have commonly seene in England: then I stood to the Eastwards, and at three of the clocke sounded, and had fortie fathomes ozer and thus I failed among the Ice East and East and by South, and East North-east, keeping no certaine course, by reason of the Ice, and had these depths following, 30. 20. 19. 16. and fifteene fathomes, and then I faw the Land within two leagues and leffe ofme, bearing betweene the South and by East, and the North-west: then I stood in East and by South, supposing to have found a harborough within a ledge of rocks that lay off a low point, which feemed like an Iland, and flanding in, I found depths, 10. 9.8.7.6.7.4. and three fathomes, flanding in it a should bay, and full

Then I fleered a way North-west and by West, and had fix, seizen, eight, and ten fathome foule ground; this part of this Land is foule ground a great way off, therefore come no neeter this place then ten fathome, and that will carry you cleere of all dangers that I could fee. Towards noone it cleered up, and I did looke the Meridian altitude of the Sunne, which was 34. degrees and 20. minutes, the declination being 21, degrees and 10. minutes North, the Equator

As Cobodines

must bee 13. degrees and 10. minutes aboue and beneath my Horizon. The Complement being 76. degrees and 50. minutes, the Poles height. Likewife I found by true observation the Com- 46.degrees 50 paff. to vary 15. degrees, and before I had tayled foure leagues I faw a Sound that lay Eaft and minutes Pole by South in, the winde comming to the East South-east; then I sent the Skiffe on land in the Variation 16. mouth of the Sound, because I supposed I had seene Morfes on the land, but they proued Rocks. deeres. I followed into the laid Bay with the thip, but flanding in I had a fliffe gale of winde off the The North shoe e, which draue abundance of Ice out of the Sound, through the which I enforced the ship, in point westerly.

hope there to have found an Harbour; in turning in I found thefe depths, thirtie fine, thirtie, Rockes twentie, and eighteene fathoms. The Boat came aboard about a North-well Sunne and the men twentie, and eighteene fathoms. The Boat came aboard about a North-well Sunne and the men twentie, and eighteene fathoms. The Boat came aboard about a North-well Sunne and the men twenties are the sunne and lying on the Ice, but none on land, and they brought a piece of a Decres horne aboord, therefore Hornfound. I called this Sound Horne Sound, and a Mount that lyeth foure leagues to the South of it, the Mufcons Muscomy Companies Mount, because it was my first landfale. Then finding no benefit here to bee had, nor Hauen for the ship, I stood to Sea, and sayled For these pla-

North-weit and by North foure leagues at midnight it blew very hard, and I flood to the Weff- ces fee Captain wards with a fhort fayle, and fayled foure leagues West by eight of the clock the seuenteenth adges Map. day. Then I stood to the Landwards, the winde being at South South-west thick weather : and three leagues from me I faw a Point, which I named the Ice Point , because there lay abundance Ice.point. of Ice voon it. Then I faw another Point beare North North-west fine leagues off, which I named Bell Point , because of a Hill formed like a Bell on the top , and to the Northwards of Bell Bell point.

30 Point goes in a great Bay with two Sounds in it, the one lieth in East South-east, the other Northeast and by East; the last Sound you can hardly discerne, by reason there is a long Hand lying in the mouth of it. But the going into the faid Sound is on the North fide, yet there is an Inlet under Point-partition, but very narrow and full of Rocks, and an exceeding firong Tyde fetteth Point partiin there. This day I found the weather very warme and farre temperater then I have found it tion at the North Cape at this time of the yeere: this place lying in 77. degrees and 25. minutes, and The agreem the Cape in 71. degrees and 20. minutes; this place being to the Northwards of the Cape 6.de. Peratei grees and 5. minutes : and note, two leagues to the Southwards of Bell Point is a ledge of Rocks three miles off the shoare, and come no neerer the shoare then fifteene fathom : vpon the North fide of the Bay is low land, which I named Lowneffe Hand. I called the North Sound Lowe Sound. Lowneffe He.

30 Into the Bay I turned, the winde at East North-east faire weather; turning in I had no leffe Lowsound, then fortie fathoms close by the shoare, and in the middest no ground at fixtie fathoms, and being neere the Poins that parteth both the Sounds , the winde increased with raine. Then I faw the Sound frozen over from tide to fide, and vpon the Ice a Beare and great store of Mohorses, but The Sounds the winde blew so extreme hard, that the Boat could not row to windwards, to trie if we could season. kill some of them. The sogs and raine continued till ten of the clock the nineteenth day, at Very thicke which time the raine ceased, and it did freeze with snow and winde and fogs, as before.

From twelve at mid-night the nineteenth day, till foure in the morning the twentieth day, I fayled three leagues South-west and by South, then I found the Ice thicker then before. It was

very thick fozs, with winde, froft, and fnow, and cold, that I thinke they did ftriue here which Extranne cold of them should have the superioritie. I pur into the Ice aforefaid in hope to get through, and af-weather. ter many a fore stroke with the ship in it, I got through at a South-west Sunne, at what time it began to befaire weather. Then I flood through the Ice towards the land againe, in hope that that land would proue worth the labour and travell; and going to let the mayne top fayle, it was frozen as hard as euer I faw any cloath in all my life time, so that all my company could ve- Sailes frozen. ry hardly let it; and whereas I supposed, and have often faid, that this climate is not so subject to foggs in May and Iune, as it is in Iuly and August, it is contrarie; for I have not seene the Sunne on the Meridian these fine dayes, nor seene it at all in fixtie houres: I had not failed three leagues North-east, when it was as thicke as it was before with Frost and Snow: yet I stood shill

50 towards the Land. The twentie one, I faw the Land at an Eaft Sunne, and flood towards it, and at a South and by West Westerly, I observed the Sunne, and found the Meridian altitude of it 33, degrees 30. minutes, the declination being 21. degrees 76. minutes, &c. the altitude of the Pole was 78. degrees 26.minutes. The winde at North North-east : cold frostie weather : This place I called the Black-point lie : I called a point (that lyeth foure leagues to the North-welt of Black-point) Cape- Black-point fte Black point lie : I called a point (that syeth total traggers of the storage it was covered with Ice, cold, and to the South-east of Black point is a great found, which because it was covered with Ice, Cape-cold. I called lee-found, and standing neerer to the shore, I could not fee any Sound or Harbour open; Icetherefore I determined to fland to the Northwards to feeke what good might be done that way to profit the Merchants, and also to get some Wood, for we had but little left. I sounded at the

6c Black-point, and had twentie three fathomes streamy ground. At two of the clocke I stood off, and at midnight flood to the shore againe, cold weather with frost, the winde at North and by East. The two and twentieth day, at an East Sunne, I was faire by the Land, betweene Capecold and Black-point, a league off where it fell calme, and I founded there, and had twentie eight fathoms, where I tried for Fish, but could take none.

Note.

No fift.

lare paffage.

The three and twentieth day, at an East North-east Sunne, I was within three leagues In e tirce and ewenteen one, at an eather, and I tooke the Sunnes height at twelte of the of Capecota: and say it was rate measure, and a concerne studies length at a weather of the clocke, and found it to be 32, degrees 30, minutes, the declination being 22, degrees 13 minutes, the declination being 22 degrees 13 minutes. ctocke, and tomas it to be \$1.00 gives 30. minutes, the occurrence occurs 21. urgrees 13 minutes, the diffiance of the Pole from my Zeneth, was 11. degrees 17. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth, was 11. degrees 17. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth, was 11. degrees 17. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes, the community of the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. minutes and the pole from my Zeneth was 11. degrees 19. degree 19. degre Fair weather, plement thereof being 78, degrees and 43, minutes, the Poles alriande. All this day it was plements energy using 700 usgress are 430 minutes, the same and the place Cope, celd, if carme at the coremous, watthe tunions receive, and removes a manufacture of the core and it had false with it this day, or the like, I should have guen it another name. Here I thied to take fill, but could perceiue none, I tem, there is a point that beareth from Cope-cold North & by Weft inspect come precess none, remained to a pour second, and Black point, are all one lland. At Which I caree energeranate title en ann, and one cann, and one come, are at one tinned. At fixe of the clocke at night, the winde came to the North North-weff, then I determined to IO view the lee-found better; but comming neere it, I perceived it packeful of Ice, fo that I could fee view the recooning execution comming means and I fee any open water in it. At a North Sun, no end thereof at the Top-mail-head, neither could I fee any open water in it. At a North Sun,

the wind came to the North-east, and by North, then I stood to the Northwards, as before. The foure and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunnethe wind came to the South-well, fairg weather and warme. At a North north-east Sun, I tooke the Meridian Alkitude, which was eleuen degrees about the Horizon, and by working accordingly, I found the eleuation of the Pole aloue the Horizon, to be 78.degrees, 37. minutes. The fine and twentieth day, at an East-fouth. acoust the roman, so to consequence, some many and it being calme I founded fortis fine fathoms, where I proud for fifth, but could find none, and within one league of the fhoare I had In silithis land fine and thirtie, and thrite fathome fireamy ground. Ara South-east Sume, the Bost came 10 by the lea side aboord laden with Wood, and some Whales fins. The men told mee there was great by the real nate of Morfes in the Sea, about the shoare side, and about thirtie on Land. Immediately 1 fent 15 good mare. Hore or Andres memore, about the money and about children of action. Immediately 1 tent of Dinfewood, my Mate. Nabolae Woodcorf, with the Bost on Land againe, to fee if they could kill any of the but non-growth here, faid Mohories, and allo to fearch what other thing they thould hap to find that might procede-non-minimal Moreover I was considered the all the Deck and the Deck and the Constitution of the Constitution neficiall. Moreouer I was certified, that all the Ponds and Lakes were vnfrozen, they being Freih-water, which putteth mee in hope of a milde Summer here, after so sharpe a beginning as I haue had, and my opinion is fuch (and I affure my felfe it is 60) that a paffage may be affooreat-Hope of a Potayned this way, by the Pole as any vnknowne way what society, by reason the Sundoth give a great heat in this climate; and the Ice, I means that that freezeth here, is nothing so hoge as I

The fixe and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the Boat came aboord agains, having slaine but two Morfes, at twelue at midnight the wind came to the North, and blew fo hard, that I wasenforced to try with a Mayne-course, cold frosty weather, with snow. The sayd wind and was enforced to try whith a major country, constituting the state of the clock at night, which are stated to the country weather continued till a South Sun, the fever and twentieth day, at eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to the North-west and by West faire weather, then I stood towards the Landagain, And at a South-east fun, the eight & twentieth day, I was within three leagues of Faser-forfand, and standing in Hounded divers times, and had these depths, 15, 17, 19, and 18, lathous, within fine, fixe, and fenen myles of the shoare, and when Fager-forland did beare South and by East by the Compasse. It being two miles from me, I saw the Land beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off, the which because it was full of knottie Mountaines, I called Knot. 40 tie-point, and between Knottie-point, and Fayer forland, Haw a great Bay, which because it was foggy on the fudden, I could not discouer. In the Sea, about the Fortund, I law great store of Mohories and Sea-fowle, I founded in the Bay and had nintie fue fathomes rockie ground. I flood to Sea, and had very foule weather, with fnow, and fogs, and frost, which weather continued till Thiny day of the chirtieth day, at foure of the clocke in the morning, at which time I was within one mile of Fayer-forland in nine fathomes, and then I fayled East North-east about two miles, and had thele dephs, 18.17, 16.14, and 12. fathomes all rockes. Then I fleered South with the like depths and grounds, but when I had runne South South-east three miles further, I had sandie ground, then did Fayer-forland beare West and by North, about three leagues of , the next cast I had tenne fathomes foule ground, and from thence I steered two leagues South and by East, having these 50 depths, 10.9. 8. and 7. fathomes, then I faw the Bay covered over with Ice. I turned out the wind at North, This Sound I named Forele-found, for in this Bay are three Sounds; this I fpake wind at Avertin. It is south, and gooth out at Black point: another lyeth in Eat South-eath, which I named Deen-found: another gooth in North, which is called Cinfo-come, and being neere the point betweene Fowle-found and Detre-found, it fell calme, and I fent the Skiffe on Lund, and flanding after, with a little wind at West, I found the fayd Point very shoale, with a ridge of Rockes, where I had these depths, 4.5.6.7.9.10.18. and then 30. fathomes. At a South Sun, the Boat came aboord and brought Wood, and fome Whale-fins.

The last of May, at an East North-east Sun, I was within three leagues of Knotty point, at which time I saw Ice all the Sea ouer betwixt the West and the Land : then I saw another Point some leagues diffant from Knotty point, the one bearing of the other North and by East, and South and by West, and it is smooth Land, the which I named the Gwnerds nofe, indifferent warme weather : and finding the Ice to bee fo thicke that I could not patfe it, and the wind comming to the West, I stood to the Southwards againe, determining to search the Sounds better for a Road, and

for commodities, because I saw no good to bee gotten in keeping the Sea amongst the Ice, and at a North Sun, I was in the entrance of Clofe-come, where I had no ground at one hundred & twenty Notes fathomes, and yet I was within two Cables length of a funken ledge of Rockes, that lyeth on the Larboard fide of the Bay a mile from the shoare.

The first of Iune I found a good Road in Clofe-case, on the South-west fide, where I rid in Iune, feuen fathomes fand mingled with oze, at an East Sun I fent a Skiffe to a low Point, that lyeth on the North fide of the Bay, where they found some Whales fins , and three pieces of Mohorse teeth, and spon a little rockie Iland, they faw neere one hundred Mohotfes, which were there fleeping. In this time I went towards the bottome of the Sound, and flue a white Beare. At a A Beare flainte 10 South-west Sun, I went towards the rocke, to see if I could kill any of the Morfes that lay there. and as wee went by the shoare side I espied Deere, three of them I flue, and one of my company one. But when I came to the rocke the Ice that the beafts lay on was hollow, and the rocks that was bet wist the Ice and the fea frood floping toward the Sea; the which when I faw, I determined to go aboord and let them alone, yet afterward I went on the rocke betwint the Ice and the Sea : and as I with the reft of my company were killing them, the Ice brake, and Ice and beaits fird Into the Sea together, and carryed one of the men with them, so that he escaped out of

that danger very hardly; for besides the weight of dead Mohorses, and Ice that bruised him, the 20 beafts that were aline frook at him in the water, and brunfed him very foare. I had beene in the fame cafe, if I had not beene the nimbler, and flipt on one fide. I killed three Morfes, whole teeth I cooke off. Then I espied the Beare, which my Mate had hurt before with a shot ; hee went into the Sea, when hee faw the Boate, where I flue him with a Lance, and brought ABeare flaines

The second day sea North and by East Sunne, At a South Sunne, I went to the South shoare of Deere-found, where I found a good quantitie of Fins, and came abourd, at a North North-west Sunne: "The third day , being Sundays, I rid full , having the wind at West South-West much wind. Then vpon the fide of a Hill, a mile to the Westwards of the Road, I fet vpa Crosse, with Acrosse fet vpa a writing ponit; lignifying the day of my arrivall first in this Land, by when I was fet Crefe road. out, and the time of my being heers. This Road Itealed Cofferend. At a South east funne for all minds the fourth day, I wayed, the winder West South-west, and when I was almost out, the wind increased with fogs, which made me purback into the Road, where I anchored the same day at fix

of the clocke, at afternone. The fifth day, at a North east and by East fimme I wayed, and it fell calme then I went to the Eaft fide, and killed fome Fowle, which I found in great abundance: There is great and when I was readie to go aboord, I faw tourceme Detre, at winditime I fpent all my powder, flore of Fowler and thor but one thor; with the which I flue a fat Buck. The lame day, at a South fun, I went on in this Land. Landand Hortwo Deere more. And at a South well fun I went on Land and fine a Dog, and took A Buck flaine. the Faune aline, and brought it abound; but it dyed the next day. The salme continued till the fixth day, at an East North-east funne Pand we droue in the Bay, with a little foaking ty de that rumeth there.) Then I fem the skiffe to the rocke aforefaid, to for what flore of Mohories were there; at three of the clicke they came about, and told mee there was neere ewo hundred beafts. Three Decre

40 I tooke both the boat and skiffe, with all my company, and went to the rock, and in going flane. a mouse coun use courann settie, with an my company, and wenter the rock, and my company chitcher I flow a Beare have better I came to their ocket, the beadth began to go ein to the flat, then I for referringly went on land? with all say semplany, and the eighnic beath, whose teeth I Beare flance tooks, and in going shooted flat modeled Beare, and came abouted the intenth day, and a bottom Monorate. eaft inh. Then I aw two white fifties; which at the fift fight I fampoist to be Beares, they had the Stingeoin, two flat Fifti close by their gills, list bodysis mall towards their tailes,

The centh day, I went on thouse and flue five Doore; swithshe which, and them that I flue Fine Deere, our Ancestors to bee trainffed vote, by region of the extreme work which they supposed to bee to shood a 50 here ) I find the afretemperate in the Lands, and nothing the colds & I have found at Chery .... Hand in fide feneral Voyages. Moreouer, in this Land Phane feener steat Hore of Deere, which have neither built not tree to fletter them that inpping cold of Winter, nor yet any extraordinarie pattoretic refresh ellem. In these (1fix) having morning but the Rockes

ay extraordinaine pattode to critiche the in-Witness (Affire), having morthing bother flocker for a houle, and the Searry Campie for a couring doe have hereve beginning not man attached hat the platford Cod bettlywith viscolitish for this hostel had force our first to the parties of the house of the flower of the house of the parties of the house of the parties of

Ice.

Close-Come.

the North-west, and blew very hard, which made mee to put roome for Cross-road, where Irid till the fourteenth day, in which time I caused both the boates to bee trimmed, and the minutes. Compaffe vary thirteenth day at noone, I observed on Land, in this place, and found the Poles height 79 degrees, fitteene minutes, and the variation of the Compage 18, degrees, 16, minutes North-welt the

The fourteenth day, at a South-east Sunne I wayed, the wind at South-west forgie weather at a South-west Sunne, I went on Land and slew a Buck. The infreenth day, at East Sunne, I got out of the Bay, at which time I faw abundance of Ice to the Sea-wards, but the wind came to out of the Bay, at which time I saw anomalises to the shoare. At a North-weft Same, I due to the South-east, and I sayled betwixe the Ice and the shoare. At a North-weft Same, I due to the skille (with feven men in it) to the Land under Kuetie-powe, at which time the wind came to the North-east, and I stood to the North-wardes, where I had these depths, sitteene. Great flore of thirteene, and eleuen fathomes fould-ground. These depths were about a leagues, and other Northwards of Knottie-point, I saw great flore of Whales, the like Liaw in Desre-found. The fixteenth day, the Skiffe came aboord, and brought a few Finnes, and five Detre, and they told Fine Deere mee that within the Bay, that lyeth betwixt Knottie-point and Gurnerde-nofe in a Hauen, in the entrance whereof is an Iland, and seuen fathomes going in, but within eight, nine, fifteene. and twentre fathomes good ground. This maketh Gurnerds-nofe, an Hand, for this Hanen goeth out on the North-weit fide of Gurmerds-nofe. I named this Hanen, the Farre-banen : I Paier Hauen Abundance of found a great tyde heere, which runneth South South-weft, the floud commeth from the 20 Southwards,

Then standing to the Northwards, I saw the Sea conered with Ice, which lay close to 79. degrees 50. the Land which made me fland to the Southwards again, t observed at Garner de mode, and found the Poles height 79. degrees, 50. minutes. At a North-west Sun, the lame day, I lent the skiffe the foles neight 79. orgrees, 50. minutes, or a sound orgress, outs, one case usys, a end cas active on Land to dearch the Coalt to the Southwards of Kanta-jasse, where I founded and had recome, foure fathories Foulc-ground, and in the Fayre-way I founded, having their depths, 30.35, 43s The fried and 48. Asthomes all Rocky ground. By the fenenteenth day, I was in the entrance of Cha plice of my to-ing this Voyage at a South Sun, at which time the Skiffe came abourd, and brought a Beares skin, and a Buck, and This vincorns a good quantite of Whales Fins and an Vincornes horne, which was fine foot and down inches long, and in the biggeft part of it, it was fetten inches and a halfe about. The eighteenth day, at a 30 home is the Horne of a fish South Sun, I came into the Road, where I rid all that day, having very much wind and mine that wee could doe nothing. At a North Spine, I fent my Mate, with the Skiffe, and fixe men to feeke for more Fins, ecc. The ninteenth day, at a North San, they came abourd, haning flame ten Beares, three of their skins and fat they brought abourd, and a good quantitie of Fins, and fix paire of teeth. The twentieth day, in the morning, I fent both the Boat and Skiffe to flay the other feven Beares, the wind being at North faire weather. But they were no fooner gone, but itblew very hard at North, which brought abundance of Ice out of the bottome of the Sound, but did the Ship no hurt. Ac a West South West Sunne, the Boats came aboord with the Beares skins, the wind about find set fo much lee out of the found vpon the Ship, that it infarced men fer fayle.

The one and twentieth day, at a North Sun. Estock cowardes Fayer forders, and sen out the

skiffe. The two and twensieth day, at a South-east sunst, they same abourd, with the skiffe laden with Fine, and killed fine Deere. Then I went on Land so fearth wine I could find, and I flew a Beare, and rooke a young one sline, and at three of the clocke in the afternoone I came aboord with the skife ladels with Fine The three & swentieth day at a South eaft fine the Boat came abourd, and brought a good quantitie of Finnes, and a Beares skinne. Then I flood toward Cape-cold, and the fame day, at a South finine, I fent the skiffe on Land to the Northwards of the Cape, where they found fautrene Mohorfes on a rocke, which they flue ; and at a A Beare flaine North-east fun, the foure and twentieth day, they had brought all the teeth and blubbes of them Takeheeds of aboord; at which time the wind came to the North-weft, and blew senie hand ; then I food timardes the for famil to feele what commodities it would yeek! At a North time a way neere Black point, which hath a great many funken Rockes lying on the fourthermost end of is therefore you must come no necres that shours then twentie fine fathomes. The fire and twentieth day, till a South furgir was palitie, and the tyde drove the fain fofatre from the Land

that I could not fend the hout on thouse. The fixe and twentieth day, at a South South-weft Some, I came about , more laden with truciff then commodities, it which time I live a Buck. Then I flood toward les fromt, and at a Point which parteth Maniformal and les found, had thirtie fathomes one. It to us ten appears Rockes, then Fiftyred Bulbalong the shoure, and had between there and income father ter and fands in item farhomes I medium datum the wand at North North med faire weather at a North well fun, at a North fun, I fent the skalle so the theore to fearch for commonwises. In fourn and twentieth day of fourn, at an East Morth-caft fan, they cames house and because of parcel of fine. As fax of who check I fent the Skitle tombe Land against and far layer synth the filey but it being dakine, and for layer synth the filey but it being dakine, and the cide facting the Ship towards a ledge of rocks, made man manufacture.

C. H. A.P. I. Beares and Deere flaine. Young Beares taken. Sea-coale found.

gaine. At a South South-east Sun, they came abourd againe, and brought a good quantitie of fins: ara South Sunne I fent the Skifte towardes the mouth of Ice-found, and in the entrance thereof I 40und a Coue in the which was twentie fathomes, and fo to thirteene, but by reason of the tyde, and edy-winds, I could not get into it; here the Skiffe came aboord and brought a few finnes. Then I fleered to another Sound, in the Southfide of lee-found, where I anchored in twentie tathomes oze, the fame day at a North Sun. The eight and twentieth day I flayed at the place abourfaid, and tried the Beares greate to bring it into oyle, and when we were all bushed, a Beare came (winstning oner the Bay, cowards the ship, which I slew, and split my Peece, the wind be. A Beareslaine, ing at West. The nine and twentieth day, at a South east Sunne, I fent the skiffe to fearch the Coat. to vile Westwards of this Bay, the wind at North-west. The last of lune, the skiffe ABucke. 

... The first of fully being Sunday . I rid as the place about faid , in hope to have more Mo. July the first The first of they being sunsay. I me sected place another in mope to make more more more into an Land, si delirud secre into frontititible place in 78. degrees, 34, mixture, and the w. natures, rar, ristion Welthanis, latengene degrees. Then I fent the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it any more beafts were ... where the shift to fee it and the shift on Land. The wind at Northwest, faire weather. The fecond day, at a North Northon Land. The wind at Northwest-rate meacher. The februs day, and red Morfes, Two Deere and Sunne; they came aboott and brought two Deere. The third, wee flew a few Morfes, flaine. whose teeth and blubber wee brought abourd, at a North awell Soune, at which time I flew a Green burban Pricket; this place I named the Green-banen, Immediately I fent the skiffe to take the teeth, one Deere and fatofferen beafts, which lay thane in another piece. The wind at Weft, thicke foggie wez. flaine.

The wind at Weft, thicke foggie wez. flaine.

The wind at Weft, thicke foggie wez. flaine.

meth halfe' tytle halfe quarter. The fourth day, wee rid ftill at the South-west with fogges and raine, and very much windrat the same time I law great flore of ice in fee found. The fifth day at lee, a North-east Sunne I wayed; the wind at Wast thicke weather; and in standing out wee flew a A Beatestaine. the Beare, and tooke herewo young ones, Indifferent faire weather, we lay becalmed all this day. 1wo yong ones The fixth day, I was off Louisfo (at a South Sunne) the wind theing at East blew fo taken, thard, with raine aid chieffe weather , shad I was enforced to take in all the layles faue a Mayne-courle, which storme continued till eight at night, at which time I fet more fayle, and Rood to the Southwarder, hoping of got four goods that way a Thefenenth day, at moone the

To wind came to the North-east, and then re began to bee bleere weather , at what time I faw the Land of Bel-found, whith it purposed to gue; yet edalitinot by reston of abundance of Ice, which by about three leagues from the Land, which is dold not possibly page. At a North-west and by West fun, I faw abundance of Local slong the Land, to the Southwards of Bet found. The Ice. eight day; at twelve at moone, I flood into the scenin hope so ges to the floare, the wind at North and by West hatie weather, Home from Bearing East North east, nine leagues of, I frood to the landwards till foure of the clocke at which time I found the fee to thack that I was forced to flund to the Southwards to efchewit. I fayled by, and amongst the Ice., till a North North-west Sonne, at which time I was within three leagues of the floure. Then I sounded, and had thirtie fixe fathomes. Then I food to the Wellwards, and finding all this part

40 of the Land fullof Ice, I purposed to stand to the Northwards agains to fearch for commodities that way : the wind being at North-well, Towned to windwards, till the tenelsday, at eight of the clicke before home, at which eine westbind a part of a dead Whale, which Adead Whale Examind to bee made faft to the Ship, determining to get fire [cime Flatbour], there to make the best of it. I could get must Rel-found, at which time I saw all the bottom of the Sound full of Ice, fo ther there was no refuge for the Ship. Then I was faine to turne out with the winde at Westin and beginnis to blow write hard. At a North-west Sonne, it was fayre weather, and I dent my Mate with the skiffe to fearth the Coasts towards Bel-noint. The fourteenth day, at a North-east Sunne, the skiffe came aboord, and brought three Beares, which they had flaine. Immediately I fent the Boat for water and wood and then I Three Beares fined through the Ice, and got through it by a North Sun the fifteenth day, the wind at North-

so west forgie weather. Then I turned to windwards, to double Louneffe, and got cleere of it : at fixe of the chockeat night thicke toggie weather. The fixteenthiday, at five of the clocke in the afternoone, I got to Black point, the wind comming to the South, thickoweather. Then I fent the skiffe to range the Coatt, and to fearch What they might find. The feventeenth day, at ten of the clocke they came abourd, and brought Three Decrees fome Fine and three Deere. Then I frood towards Croffe-road, and ankered there at a North-lun, Bine. the wind and weather as about hid. The eighteenth day, about fine of the clocke in the morning, I fent the skiffe to fee hithey could find any Mortes on Land, on the Rocke, or in Derection

found, and in the meane time, I, with the rest of the company got drift-wood and water readie, A Beare with and about a South funne, a Beare with two young ones ; the Dam I flew, and tooke the young ones taken, ones about a south many, the wind Nostherly, cold, foggie weather. The nine and twenrieth day, in Five Deere the morning, I went to the Eastfide, to fee if any Mohorles were on land; there I slew foure ex- slaine ceeding fat Buckes and a Doe. In which time the skiffe came abourd and brought two Beares Two Beares skins, but found no beafts, and Dere-faste they found Sea-coales, which burnt very well.

Laundeot

The fribest

afre in Marie

The twenteen cary, a ten the same the faint at eight of the clock at night they came about ties, the wind at South close weather with raine; at eight of the clock at night they came about ties, the wind at Souria Clore weather who is a start aboord, which was ready before, purpa-but found nothing; immediately I got wood and water aboord, which was ready before, purpabut found norming a minemaster, a government of the first fact of the force and women's ring to fet fayle the windiand weather aboutfaid, we flux three Deere. The our and woments I wayed, the wind at North faire weather. The two and twentieth day, the wind came to the West, and then I stood to the Northward, at eight of the clocke ball-weather. As twelter of the clocke at noone the wind came to the North , and I food to the South wards by Fager forland The three and twentieth day, at an East north-east Samne, the Boas prought some Whales finnes. and three Buckes, and one Doe: In which time I shought I had feese Land bease Waft from me. I flood to the Westwards, and by a South South-east turne, had sun fifteene lengue. West and by In South, then I perceived it to be fogs. The fours and smentieth day, at fours of the blocks in the afternoone I came into Bel-found and found but little Ice, then I fent the Skiffe to fecke for a Road for the Ship, and also for commodities. The fine and swentieth day, at these of the clocks in the morning, the Skiffe came aboord, having beene in the mouth of the North bale, which I call Low-found, they went into it by Point-partition, but there is no good Channell thirt was for a Ship : neuertheieffe there feemeth to bee an laketor Channell, but it is full of Rockenfrom fide to fide, and the men told mee, that you the Land by fome Mohorfes, which I fent them to bill, At eight of the clocke, the Skiffe came aboord, and broughe the teeth of the layd beafts, and fome blubber. Immediately I fent them into Bel-found, to lecke for a Road for the Ship, the wind at West thicke foggie weather. About an North West Sunne, I anchored in Bel-found, institutes a A Beare flaine. fathomes ozie ground, this Harbour lyeth about two leagues about Paint-partition on the South. A far Bucke, faction of the County and the County of the C The fix and twentieth day in the morning, is blew hard, and I went on Land and flue a Bease, and a Bucke which had three inches and an helfe in thicknesse of fac on the haunches. At the faractic of the of the clocke I feat both the Boats to fesch the fat of those Mohories which twere flains the day before, and likewife to fearch if they could find any more, the swind at alforth with fores As fix of the clocke at might the Boats came about with the far, and brought two Buckes, but found as beafts on Land. The in course, who therefore to highly a course, who there is no Land.

thicke of fat. The feuen and twensieth day, at a South South ead Soune I weighed; the winde being se North and by Weft faire weather, and I flerred out. (betwire an Hand and the point where I 19 North-weft and by Weft, haung thefedepting 10.7.6cg, and 4. fartnines (then I was in the middef between the first points, and a final dwarf, one of the other, the minoert perwaxs the me point, and a montown mentary source and pourou, one or the center, and after keeping the same courfe, I had shefe depoint, it is \$18.90 rows and 23 fathomer, in all the federals I had fand, and after note. At fixe of the clocks the windown to the South-wife their copens are more measurement. As many in the second of the measurement of the South-war with figger, and I turned to the winsh wards, and I turned to the winsh wards, and it to the measurement of the many with figure and I turned to the winsh wards, and it is a fair the measurement of the many many of the measurement of the measu fream is ground with blacke flones, as which time is was calme; and continued to sill the nine and twentieth day at fixe of the closice in the morning, then the wand came to the North with fogges, and I stood to the Southwards, and to see what Commodities Found find that way.

written of the

were two and

three inches

As a most of the clocks I was netwer the fore-franch, where I not with risted here, which per me of from the Land, and I was announced to flavor Sputh, with said by South to thrancic; the windows North-weft which blew hard with fogger. The windstarted of those toward Chevis Bard (if possible I could arrayne it) for fogger and ice. The thirdstarted of those towards Chevis Bard (if possible I could arrayne it) for fogger and ice. The thirdstarted by its force of the locks the morning I faw no less having kept good-round to the morning I faw no less having kept good-round to the morning I faw no less having kept good-round to the country accorded by season of the less which I had part, the winde at North and by Welt, cold foggie weather with raine. From the time shoise faid rill twelto of the clocke at most layed South-sell, and antenness afterene leaguest, the famo wind and weather, as which time I founded it had eighting fathoms grown out libe Kowers dongs I founded as two of the clocke, and at fours of the clock, the first, sightie right, the second, eight tie two fathomes, and fayled fixe leagues, the former course wind and weather. At which time I heard a breach which proued lee, then I fleered West to eschew is, the fogges being so thicke 10 that I could not fee one Cables length, The last of July at noone, I had sayled South and by East halfe a point Southerly sight longues

hening little wind, and founded, and found one hundred and fortie fathomer thicke forgie weather, and in haling vp the Lead, a fish followed it to the top of the water : thin it tryed to take fish but could not. At four of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde came Southerly, and if the Northerne

flood to the Westward, by reason the Ice lay both to the South and East of vs, at a Planth Summer it was cleare weather, and I saw the Ice round about vs, cold weather wick field. The first of August, we beat in the Ice till moone, but could finde no end thereof ; because it was to toggie, and the Loe packed very close; yet after many intricate courses, I got to the Westwards of it at mid-night the same day, the windest South-east, cold weather with raine and fogges. And after I had feene fo much kee that I could not come neere Cherry lland, to profecute Pegges and arter i has seene to muon are than for Englands as God would give melizare. From mid-night the first day, till eight of the clock the focused day before more I layled South-west, and by South fine leagues, the wind at East South-east, thicke forgot with raine. From the fe-

cond day at eight of the clocke, till the third day at twelve of the clock at noone, I fayled West South-west fifteene leagues, the wind at South and by East, wet foggie weather. From noone aboutfaid, till twelue at noone the fourth day, I fayled foure leagues South, the winde variable, and the most part of that time calme, and so continued till eight of the clocke at night at which time the wind came to the South and by East, and blew very hard; from the fourth day at noon till the fift day at noone I fayled South-west Westerly seuen leagues. The fixt day, the winde was at South-east cleere weather, at noone I found the shippe in 73. degrees, the North Cape bearing by my computation, East South-east Easterly. The seventh day at noone, I found the ship in 72. degrees 22. minutes, indifferent faire weather. And from the seuenth day at To noone, till the eight day at noone I fayled foure and twentie leagues, the course South South

west, the wind at South-east and by East, at which time it beganne to be very foggie, and the winde came to the South, but immediatly it was calme, and continued fo till mid-night. Then the wind came to the North, little wind, and at a South Sunne the ninth day, I had fayled South feuen leagues. From the ninth day at noone till the tenth day at that time I fayled South , and ranne seuen leagues South, it being calme most part of the day, with much rayne and fogges. From twelve the tenth day, till noone the eleventh day, I fayled South and by West, and ranne feuenteene leagues, the wind Northerly. And from the eleuenth day at noone, till the twelfth 20 at that time, I layled South and by West eighteene leagues, the winde at North North-west faire weather. From noone the twelfth day , vntill twelve at noone the thirteenth day, I (ayled South and by West fortie eight leagues, the wind betweene the North, and the West North-west gustie weather. From the thirteenth at noone, till the fourteenth at noone, I sayled South and by West fortie fine leagues, the wind betwixt the West North-west, and the West South-west gustie weather , latitude 64. degrees 21. minutes. From the sourceenth day at noone, till the fifteenth day at that time, I fayled South and by West nine and twentie leagues, at which time I observed and found the ship in 62. degrees 53. minutes faire weather, the wind In 61. degrees

at North. At foure of the clocke the same day, I saw Skurfaeffe in Normay feuenteene leagues off, 15. minutes. and bearing South-east, from whence I hold it superfluous to write it, being a place well knowne.

A briefe note what Beafts, Fowlespend Fiftes were feene

The last of August I arrived at Loudon, Bleffed be God for ever and ever. Amen.

BEarts: Buckes, and Does, white Beares and Forces, of colour dunne and grey.

Fowles: white Partridges, a small land Bard, like a Sparrow, parely white, and parely browne, a Fowle with a combe and a tayle like a Cock, a redde Fowle of the bigneffe of a Pidbrowne, a rowne with a comor and a tayer nac a 100kg, weeder rowne or the organic of a trial green; a white Fowle with a green bulk, the top of the bild of it and the eyes were redde, with blacke feet. Wild Geefe, Coluidines, Gulls, Sta-mewes, Willockes, Noddies, Ice-birds, Reeks, as 1 Mailard.

Fishes : great store of Whales, Grampoles, Mohorses, the white fish I spake of the seventh necror of the 40 of June, a small fish like Cuplen, likewife I faw the bones of Cods, or Haddocks; but could colour, and take no fish: I often looked for Shel-fish, but could take none: diuers of my company did see two Beaners.

#### CHAP. IL.

A Commission for I o N A s P o o L E our Servant, appointed Master of a fmall Barke called the Elizabeth, of fiftie tunnes burthen, for Discouerie to the Northward of Greenland, given

Nas much as it bath pleased Almightie God, through the industry of your selfe and

the last day of March 1610.

others, to disconer outo our Nation a Land lying in eightie degrees toward the North- Poole enterpole : We are desirous not only to discouer farther to the Northward along the said tayned by a Land, to find whether the same be an Hand or a Mayne, and which way the same certaine ftidoth trend, either to the Eastward or to the Westward of the Pole, as also whether the pend He was fame be inhabited by any people, or whether there be an open Sea farther Northward then hath beene al- heard, milerareadie disconcred. For accomplishing of all which our desires, we have made choice of you, and to that bly and bailey 60 and have entertayned you into our fernice for certayne yeares upon a finend certayne : not dombting , but muchered besummer of the second point of the second point

No fife.

The three and twentieth day, at an East North-east Sunne, I was within three leagues of Carecold: this day it was faire weather, and I tookethe Sunnes height at twelve of the clocke, and found it to be 32, degrees 30. minutes, the declination being 22, degrees 13 minates, the diffance of the Pole from my Zeneth, was 11 degrees 17 minutes, the com-Fair weather plement thereof being 78. degrees and 43. minutes, the Poles altitude. All this day it was calmental the foremone, warme fundime weather, and whereas I named this place Capecold, if I had i. he with it this day, or the like, I should have given it another name. Here I tried to take

hith, but could perceive none, tiem, there is a point that beareth from Cape-cold North & by West Fig. firland, Which I called Faire-forland; this Forland, and Cope-cold, and Black point, are all one land. Ar which I cancer rare foreaux costs where no the North North-west, then I determined to IO view the ice-found better; but comming neere it, I perceived it packt ful of Ice, fo that I could fee view the recommon necessions common necessary partitions a partition of the recommendation of the recommendati the wind came to the North-east, and by North, then I stood to the Northwards, as before.

The foure and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the wind came to the South-west, faire weather and warme. At a North north-east Sun, I tooke the Meridian Altitude, which was eleuen degrees aboue the Horizon, and by working accordingly, I found the elevation of the Pole al oue the Horizon, to be 78. degrees, 37 minutes. The fine and twentieth day, at an Eaft-fourtheath Sun, I fet the boat to the land, neere Fayer-forland, and it being calme I founded fortie five fathoms, where I proved for fish, but could find none, and within one league of the sheare I had

In Bithis land flue and thirtie, and thirtie fathome streamy ground. At a South-east Sunne, the Boat Came 20 la atms and shortd laten with Wood, and some Whales sins. The men told mee there was great is confluent tiere of Morles in the Sea, about the shoare fide, and about thirtie on Land. Immediately I fent o. Duffewood, my Alate, Nickolus Woodcock with the Boat on Land againe, to fee if they could kill any of the but n are fant Moherles, and also to fearch what other thing they should hap to find that might proue benederall. Moreouer I was cereified, that all the Ponds and Lakes were vnfrozen, they being Fresh-water, which putteth mee in hope of a milde Summer here, after 10 sharpe a keginning as I haue hai, and my opinion is such (and I assure my selfe it is so) that a passage may be assooned liepzofa Po- tayned this way, by the Pole, as any vinknowne way what focuer, by reason the Sun doth give a

great heat in this climate; and the Ice, I meane that that freezeth here, is nothing fo huge as I The fixe and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the Boat came aboord againe, having slaine lut two Mories, at twelue at midnight the wind came to the North, and blew so hard, that I was enforced to try with a Mayne-course, cold frosty weather, with show. The sayd wind and weather continued till a South Sun, the feuen and twentieth day, at eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to the North-west and by West faire weather, then I stood towards the Landagain. And at a South-east fun, the eight & twentieth day, I was within three leagues of Fajer-forland, and standing in Hounded divers times, and had thefe depths, 15, 17, 19, and 18, fathoms, within file, fixe, and feuen myles of the shoare, and when Fayer-forland did beare South and by

Eatl by the Compatte. It being two miles from me, I saw the Land beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off, the which because it was full of knottic Mountaines, I called Knot. 40 tie-point, and betweene Knottie-point, and Fager-forland, I faw a great Bay, which because it was foggy on the fielden, I could not discouer. In the Sea, about the Forland, I saw great store of Mohorfes and Sea-fowle, I founded in the Bay and had nintie fine fathomes rockie ground. I stood to 5e2, and had very foule weather, with fnow, and fogs, and frost, which weather continued till Thiny day of the thirtieth day, at foure of the clocke in the morning, at which time I was within one mile of Fayer-forland in nine fathomes, and then I fayled East North-east about two miles, and had thefe dephs, 18.17.16.14. and 12. fathomes all rockes. Then I steered South with the like depths and grounds, but when I had runne South South-east three miles further, I had fandie ground, then did Faver-forland beare Weit and by North, about three leagues of, the next cast I had tenne fathomes foule ground, and from thence I steered two leagues South and by East, having these 50 depths, 10.9. 8. and 7. fathomes, then I faw the Bay coursed over with Ice. I turned out the

wind at North. This Sound I named Fowle-found, for in this Bay are three Sounds; this I spake lait of, which lyeth in South, and goeth out at Black-point : another lyeth in East South-east. Deer - Cund. which I named Deere-found: another goeth in North, which is called Coffe-cone, and being neere Clofe-Cone. the point betweene Fowle-found and Deere-found, it fell calme, and I fent the Skiffe on Land, and franding after, with a little wind at West, I found the sayd Point very shoale, with a ridge of Rockes, where I had thele depths, 4.5.6.7.9.10.18. and then 30. fathomes. At a South Sun, the Boar came abourd and brought Wood, and some Whale-fins.

The last of May, at an East North-east Sun, I was within three leagues of Knotty-point, at which time I faw Ice all the Sea ouer betwint the West and the Land : then I faw another Point foure 63 leagues distant from Knotty-point, the one bearing of the other North and by East, and South and by West, and it is smooth Land, the which I named the Gurnerds nofe, indifferent warme weather : and finding the Ice to bee so thicke that I could not passe it, and the wind comming to the West I flood to the Southwards againe, determining to fearth the Sounds better for a Road, and

for commodatics, because I saw no good to bee gotten in keeping the Sea amongst the Ice, and at a North Sun, I was in the entrance of Clofe-come, where I had no ground at one hundred & twenty Notes fathomes, and yet I was within two Cables length of a funken ledge of Rockes, that lyeth on the Larboard fide of the Bay a mile from the shoare. The first of lune I found a good Road in Clofe-come, on the South-west fide, where I rid in lune,

feuen fathomes fand mingled with oze, at an Eaft Sun I fent a Skiffe to a low Point, that lyeth on the North fide of the Bay, where they found some Whales fins , and three pieces of Mohorse teeth, and woon a little rockie Iland, they faw neere one hundred Mohorfes, which were there fleeping. In this time I went towards the bottome of the Sound, and flue a white Beare. At a A Beare flainte South-weft Sun, I went towards the rocke, to fee if I could kill any of the Morfes that lay there, and as wee went by the shoare side I espied Deere, three of them I slue, and one of my company one. But when I came to the rocke, the Ice that the beafts lay on was hollow, and the

rocks that was bet wixt the Ice and the fea flood floping toward the Seathe which when I faw, I determined to go about and let them alone, yet afterward I went on the rocke betweet the Ice and the Sea : and so I with the reft of my sompany were killing them, the Ice brake, and Ice and bealts find Into the Sea together, and carryed the of the men with them, to that he escaped out of that danger very hardly; for befides the weight of dead Mohorfes, and Ice that bruiled him, the 20 beafts that were aline strook as him in the water, and bruifed him very foare. I had beene in the fame cafe, if I had not beene the nimbler, and flipt on one fide. I killed three Morfes, whole teeth I tooke off. Then I espied the Beare, which my Mate had hurt before with a shot ; hee

went into the Sea, when hee faw the Boate, where I flue him with a Lance, and brought A Beare flaines

The second day at a North and by East Sunne. At a South Sunne, I went to the South shoare of Deere-found, where I found a good quantitie of Fins, and came aboord, at a North North-west Sunne. The third day, being Sunday, 4 rid full, learning the wind at West South-West much wind. Then upon the side of a Hill, a mile to the Westwards of the Road, I set up a Crosse, with A crosse six up. a writing ponit, lignifying the day of my arrivall first in this Land, by whom I was fet trifle road. out, and the time of my being heere. This Road Italied Cofferend. At a South-east funne for all minds the fourth day, I wayed the windat West South-west, and when I was almost out, the wind inocreased with fogs, which made me purback into the Road, where I anchored the same day at fix

of the clocke, at afternone. The fifth day, at a North east and by Haft finne I wayed, and it fell calme, then I went to the Eaft fide, and killed some Fowle, which I found in great abundance: There is great and when I was readie to go aboord, I law fourteene Deere, at which time I fpent all my powder, flore of Fowle and thor but one that, with the which I flie a fat Buck. The lame day, at a South fur, I went on in this Land Land and flortwo Deere more. And at a South welt fun I went on Land and flue a Dos, and took A Buck flaine the Faune aline, and brought it abourd; But it dyed the next day. The calme continued till the fixth day, at an East North-east funne fand we droue in the Bay, with a little foaking tyde that runneth there.) Then I fem the skiffe to the rocke aforefaid, to fee what flore of Mohories were

there; at three of the clocke they came abourd and told mee there was neere two hundred beafts. Three Decre 40 I tooke both the boat and skiffe, with all my company, and went to the rock, and in going flane. thither I flure Beare: but withen I came to the rocke, the boats began to goe into the fea, then I prefently went on land; with all my company, and the eightic beath, whole test. I Berret flant tooke, and in going aboord the another Beare, and came about the intenth day, and both. Modelite. east finh. Then I faw two white fishes, which at the first fight I supposed to be Beares, they had White fishes. long fnoires like Sturgeons, ewo flat Fins close by then gile, and bodred small towards their tailes,

and a broad taile. The centificay, I went on thouse and fine fine Deere ; with the maich, and there that I fine Fine Deere, before I liant lengthened out my victuals, bleffed be the Coeator of the World, " which hath not " 1fa. 45, 180 made any part thereof ill vaine, but fo that in these parts ( which hath seemed viposible so our Ancestors to bee tratelled voto, by reason of the extreme leads which they supposed to bee to beet

50 here ) I find the agree temperate in the Lands, and nothing thousand in haut found at Chery Hand in flue feuerall Voyages. Moreouer, in this Land I have feenergreat store of Deere, which have neither buff nor tree to thefrer them from the mpping cold of Winter, nor yet amy extraordinarie pasture to retresh them. If these (Istay) hausig northing but the Rockes for a house, and the Starry Canopie for a covering doe live here why may not man which hath all the gifts of God bellowed voon him for his health and faccourse ::

The elementh day in file morning, I fent the shiftern a Beach , sharlyeth Northwards from the Rocke where we flue our beafts, Bile when they same to the Rocke, is beganne to blow hard at North North-west, that they could not proceed any further, vponthe Rocke they 60 found a Beare, and flue him, and cathe aboord. In which time I tooke she beate and went to the EilPlide, and flue two Beares and two Deere.

the matrine, and fine two Beares and two Deere. The twelfth day, at a Worth and the Two Beares.

The twelfth day, at a Worth-east further Twayed, and having wery little wind, I lent the Two Beares. skiffe to goe to the place about fayd, at a North funne, they came about and brought form and two Deere Whales Finnes and a Beare, and told mee that it did blow very much wind at Sea, yet I had

minutes

it all this time calme in the Bay. Yet before I could get out of the Sound, the wind came to the North-west, and blew very hard, which made mee to put roome for Crofe-road, where I rid till the fourteenth day, in which time I caused both the boates to bee trimmed, and the Compaffe vary thirteenth day at noone, I observed on Land, in this place, and found the Poles height 79.degrees. 18.degrees 16. fitteene minutes, and the variation of the Companie 18. degrees, 16. minutes North-west : the fame day I flue a Bucke. The fourteenth day, at a South-east Sunne I wayed, the wind at South-west foggie weather.

at a South-west Sunne, I went on Land and slew a Buck. The fifteenth day, at East Sunne, I got out of the Bay, at which time I faw abundance of Ice to the Sea-wards, but the wind came to the South-east, and I fayled betwire the Ice and the shoare. At a North-west Sunge, I fent 10 the skifle (with feuen men in it) to the Land under Knottie-point, at which time the wind. came to the North-east, and I stood to the North-wardes, where I had these depths, sitzene, Great flore of thirteene, and eleuen fathomes foule-ground. These depths were about a league, and to the Northwards of Knottie-point , I faw great flore of Whales, the like I faw in Derre-found. The fixteenth day, the Skiffe came aboord, and brought a few Finnes, and five Doere, and they told mee that within the Bay, that lyeth betwixt Knottie-point and Gurnerde-nofe is a Hauen, in the entrance whereof is an Iland, and feuen fathomes going in, but within eight, nine, fifteene, and twentie fathomes good ground. This maketh Gurner di-nofe, an Hand, for this Hauen goeth out on the North-weitfide of Gurnerds-nofe, I named this Hauen, the Fagre-bauen; I Fair-Haun.
Abundance of found a great tyde heere, which runneth South South-west, the floud commeth from the 20

Then standing to the Northwards, I saw the Sea couered with Ice, which lay close to

the Land which made me fland to the Southwards again, I observed at Gumerds-nose, and found

the Poles height 79. degrees, 50. minutes. At a North-west Sun, the same day, I tent the skiffe

on Land to fearch the Coaft to the Southwards of Knorin-point, where I founded and had twenty foure fathomes Foule-ground, and in the Fayre-way I founded, having these depths, 30, 35, 45a

South Sun, I came into the Road, where I rid all that day, having very much wind and raine

that wee could doe nothing. At a North Sunne, I fent my Mate, with the Skiffe, and fixe men

to leeke for more Fins, &cc. The ninteenth day, at a North Sun, they came aboord, having flaine

ten Beares, three of their skins and far they brought aboord, and a good quantitie of Fins, and fix

paire of teeth. The twentieth day, in the morning, I fent both the Boat and Skiffe to flav the

other feuen Beares, the wind being at North faire weather. But they were no fooner gone, but it blew very hard at North , which brought abundance of Ice out of the bottome of the Sound

but did the Ship no hure. At a West South West Sunne, the Boats came abourd with the Beares

skins, the wind about faid fet fo much Ice out of the found vpon the Ship, that it inforced men

skiffe. The two and twentieth day, at a South-east funnt, they same abourd, with the skiffe

laden with Fins, and killed fine Deere. Then I went on Land to fearth what I could find, and

fet fayle.

The one and twentieth day, at a North Sun. I flood sowardes Fager-forland, and leng out the

Fiue Deere

79.degrees 50. minutes, the Latitude of The firett and 48, fathomes all Rocky ground. By the letterteenth day, I was in the entrance of Class-complex of the contract of Class-complex place of my De-ing the Voyage at a South Sun, at which time the Skiffe came aboord, and brought a Beares skin, and a Buck, and ing this Volcorns a good quantite of Whales Fins and an Unicornes horne, which was fine foot and sourn inches home is the long, and in the biggeft part of it, it was fetten inches and a halfe about. The eighteenth day, at a 30 Horne of a fish of which fee after in Baffing discourry. Ten Beares

Fine Docre

to fet fayle.

this point.

I flew a Beare, and tooke a young one share, and at three of the clocke in the afternoone I came aboutd with the skiffe lades with Fine The three & twentieth day at a South-eaft fine the Boat came aboord, and brought a good quantitie of Finnes, and a Beares skinne. Then I flood toward Cape-cold, and the same day, at a South funne, I fent the skiffe on Land to the Northwards of the Cape, where they found autoene Moliorfes on a rocke, which they flue ; and at a A Beare flaine North-east fun, the foure and twentieth day, they had brought all the teeth and blubber of them Take heeds of aboord; at which time the wind came to the North-well; and blew veste hard; then I flood towardes the lee-family to feele what commodities it would yeeld. At a North funge A was 10 neere Black point, which hath a great many funken Rockes lying on the fouthermost end of it, therefore you must come no neerer that shoure then twentie five fathomes. The five and twentieth day, till a South fungit was calme, and the tyde droue the faip so farre from the Land, that I could not fend the boat on fhoare,

The fixe and twentieth days, at a South South-west Sunne, I came abourd, more laden with tranell then commodities, at which time I fine a Buck. Then I flood toward lee-faund, and at a Point which parteth Poule found and les found, I had thirtie fathomes oze, & fo to ten fathomes Rockes, then I fleeted Bedralong the shoare, and had betwint thirtie and histeene fathomes oze and fand lift fifteen fathomes I anchosed having the wind at North North well fairs weather at a North well fund a North fund for commodities. The feuen and twentieth day of fune, at an Baft North-east fun, they came abourd, and brought a good parcell of fins. At fix of the clook I fent the Skiffe to the Land againe, and fer Tayle with the thip; but it being calme, and the side fetting the Ship towards a ledge of rocks, made mee to ancisor a-

gaine. At a South South-east Sun, they came aboord againe, and brought a good quantitie of fins at a South Sunne I fent the Skiffe towardes the mouth of fee-found, and in the entrance thereof I tound a Coucin the which was twentie fathomes, and fo to thirteene, but by reason of the tyde. and edy-winds, I could not get into it; here the Skiffe came abourd and brought a few finnes. Then I floered to another Sound , in the Southfide of lee-found, where I anchored in twentie fashomes oze, the same day are North Sun. The eight and twentieth day I stayed at the place abourfaid, and tried the Beares greafe to bring it into oyle, and when we were all bussed, a Beare came (windning outer the Bay, towards the Bay, which I stew, and split my Peece, the wind be. A Bearestains, ing at West. The nine and twentieth day, and South east Sunne, I fent the skiffe to fearch the Confi so the Westwards of this Bay, the wind at Morell-west. The last of lune, the skiffe ABucke. came abbold ridne South-eath Stanner and Groupher afthe Finner, and a Bucke, the wind at North on \$1.42 no not be a sold on the stand the sold of the wind at North on \$1.42 no not be a sold on the sold of the s

The first of July , being Straday / I rid as the Plate abouelaid , in hope to have more Mo. July the first. on Land 14 bblerued hoere ind foundithip place in 78. degrees, 24 mittres, and the va. 78 degrees, 24. on Laure, Weftswards, leinngene degreer. Then I fent the skiffe to fee it any more beafts were 14. W. on Land. The wind as Marthwelt, faire weather. The fecond day, at a North Northon Land. The wind as postfire of the land brought two Deere The third, wee flew a few Morfes, flaine. whose tests and blubber wee brought abourd, aris Northwell Summe, at which time I flew a Greene berban Pricket: this place I named the Green haven, Immediately I fent the skuffe to take the teeth, one Decre and fav of freen beafts, which lay flaine in another place. The wind at Weft, thicke foggie wea- flaine.

an in an observable for on the Change day South, and by Well, and hyeth fixe foot water, and run-neth halfe tyde halfe quarter. The fourth day, wee rid full at the South well with fogges and raine, and very much windest the same time I daw great store ofice in hee found. The fifth day at lee, a North-caft Sunne I wayed; the wind at West thicke weather; and in thinding out wer flew a A Bestellaine. the Bears, and tooke herewo young odes, Indifferent faire weather, we lay becaland all this day. we young one The fixth day, I was off Loung of are south Sunne) the wind doing at East blew to then.

hard, with raine and whicky weather , shad I was enforced to table in all the fayles face a Mayne-courfe, which florme continued till eight at night, at which time I tem most fayle, and flood to the Southwarder, hopings of girl foint goods rids way. The found that, at moon the Mond to the Southwarder, hopings of girl foint goods rids way. The found that, at moon the Monday, at Monday, at

Land of Bel-found, winth- I purpoled to goe, yet eddle not by resion of abundance of Ice, which by about three leagues from the Land, which I could not politisly page. At a North-well and by Well fun, I aw soundaries of Locall siding the Land, to the Southwards of Bet faund. The Lea-eight day; at twelter at moonie; I shood littor the Lea-in hope so get to the shoare, the wind at North and by Waft hatie weather, Home found bearing East North east, time leagues of I flood to the landwards till foure of the clocke, at which time I found she lee to thack that I was forced to fund to the Southwards to eschewit, I sayled by, and amonest the Ice , till a North North-west Sunne, at which time I was within three leagues of the moare. Then I founded, and had thirtie fixe fathomes. Then! flood to the Wellwards, and finding all this part 40 of the Land fullof Ice, I purpoied to fland to the Northwards against to fearch for commodi-

ties that way : the wind being at North-well, Tramed to windwards, till the teach day, at eight of the clicke before noone, at which time well found a part of a dead Whale, which Adead Whales scauled to bee made fast to the Ship, determining to get into Iome Hasbour, there to make the best of it. I could get and Bel-found, at which time I saw all the bottom of the Sound full of Ice, fo that there was no refuge for the Ship. Then I was faine to turne out with the winde at Worky, and begame to blow verie hard. At a North-west Sonne, it was fayre weather, and I fent my Mate with the skiffe to fearch the Coasts towards Bel point. The fourteenth day, at a North-east Sunne, the skifte came aboord, and brought three Beares, which they had flaine. Immediately I fent the Boat for water and wood, and then I Three Beares food through the Ice, and got through it by a North Sun the fifteenth day, the wind at North-

west foggie weather. Then I turned to wind wards, to double Lewnesse, and got cleere of it : at fixe of the chockeat night thicke toggie weather. The fixteenthiday, at fine of the clocke in the afternoone, I got to Black point, the wind com-

ming to the South, thickesweather. Then I fent the skiffe to range the Coatt, and to fearch what they might find. The feuenteenth day, at ten of the clocke they came abourd, and brought Three Dazzes fome Fine, and three Deere. Then I flood towards Croffe-road, and ankered there at a North-fun, Gine. the wind and weather as abouefaid. The eighteenth day, about fine of the clocke in the morning, I fent the skiffe to fee if they could find any Mories on Land, on the Rocke, or in Deerefinal, and in the means time, I, with the reft of the company got drift-wood and water readie. A Beter with final, and in the means time, I, with the reft of the company got drift-wood and water readie. A Beter with two young ones; the Dam I flew, and tooke the young ones taken.

ones abourd the ship, the wind Northerly, cold, foggie weather. The nine and twentieth day, in Five Deare the morning, I went to the Eastfide, to fee if any Mohorfes were on land ; there I flew foure ex- flaine. ceeding fat Buckes and a Doe. In which time the skiffe came aboord and brought two Beares Two Beares skins, but found no beafts, and in Deere-found they found Sea-coales, which burnt very well.

store of Whales in those Seas, wee are at an extraordinary charge this years, of setting out a stip and men for that purpose, which ship is called the Marie Margaret of London , in burthen one hundred and fiftic tunnes or thereabout: Our meaning is, that you dockeepe company with the faid ship, and not to leane ber, till God fend you to the places, where she may make her Voyage: which by your report should be at a rime named by you the last yeare 1610. Whale Bay,

And God sending you to the said place, we would have you to stay there the killing of a Whale, or two And God feeding you to the fund pace, we would name you to may cover our change of an one, or two
of there, for your better experience beaufige to a separate that buffering fifty froming textremines fish. Le you
food abe you from your Discourses. And in the means time while you are fairing about hills of the
Whole you may coule found by my peoples to be facedring in the Coals what their Schooling for the fair former.
Morfes teeth, Ambergreefe, or any other commodules, that may be found upon that Coaff, And Louing 10 thus flaved a connenient time with the faid great ship for the purpose abone specified, were would have you then to proceed on your Discourse for the saistying of our expectations formerly mentioned, which is so Further disco-discours surface to the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land alreadie discoursed doth trend, and whether there be any inhabitants in the faid Land, and whether there be an open Sea to the Northward beyond the faid land. And in this your coasting the land, we doubt not but you will endeauer mits jour Shaleps to gather up all the Whale fumes you can finde , and to kill the Morfes which you can come by on land, and to referm the teeth and blubber to the most advantage that may bee , the bester to beare ont the great charge which you know we are at in the fe Difconeries. And to that end we have laden in you eleven Tumes of empire cashe.

And having sport so much time in this your Discourrie, and in sathering up of such commodities as 20 that Coast will affoord, and as the scason of the yeare will permit yin, then we would have you returne for England and in your way homeward to touch at the place where you left the Mary Margaret , to fee if shee be not gone; and finding ber there, and that the time of the yeere will permit, wee would have you melt your Blubber into Oile before your comming from thence, to aword the great trouble and inconnemett yent timener om en er groen yen ermanne, prom toen, en en met to groen en en meiner op met pour befel mie to be dit perce to 10.6 by bringing the same inther in Blubber. But if the saut stip some bestore your comming stuther, yet we would been on significant of the ground to the good bestore to which end we have appropried stuther, or at Cheric Lland some some stime to melt your Blubber; to which end we have appropried Thomas Edge, Thomas Edge our feruant in that forp to leave a Copper and fuch necessaries as shall serve your surve, for See [12,13] (2. the performing of that businesse, behinde him; and have desincred him thewise advertisement at that place of their proceedings in the voyage, and of their intent; what course they purpose to take, together 30

with their opinions, what cour (e they would have you take. In these matters of Discourries and uncertaine Voyages, the varietie of occurrences and Sea dangers is such, as we cannot directly prescribe a course certaine to be beld: yet we held it fisting to fet downe Our opinious of the needfull : which are, that at your first diparture out of England you keepe counsell together, and agree upon your places of meetings, if by tempait of meether you chance to bee fever and; fill flaping your course derails for Chery Iland, where we would have you stay. And if as your comming thither, you finds the same cheere of Ice, and that there be Morfes on share, then wee would have you to works upon them, as time and opportunitie will permit, alway hasting respect to your intended worses.

And having districted your businesses interplace, was would have you depart in company together for The Whale Bay, as afarefaid, and to follow our infirmitions formerly fet demons to be done in that place, 40

And basing performed what may be done in the parts beyond Cherie Island, and fo returning backs againe for England, we bold it fit you make your Rendez vous agains at the faid Cherie Iland, and there to stay the one for the other, and to be killing of the Beast there is ill be last of August; if neede bec.
And if it happen that one strip doe arrive there before the other, and no Morses come on shoare, then we would have them frend the time in searching for the Lead Ora, or any other Minerall matter that may be like to be of worth upon the faid Land. And thus having stayed at Cheric lland till the last of Au-gust the one for the other, and not meeting together, the staying having made her Voque, wee would have ber to returne directly for England, and to lease a Note in writing of the day of her departure. This is our opinion. Notwithstanding, if upon better grounds you shall among your selves sinds a connenienter course to be held for the good of the Verage, and the benefit of vs the Admenturers, wee lease it to your selves to agree upon, as time and opportunitie shall serve.

And for the anording of an Obiettion beretofore weed, That the want of sufficient victuals bath beene the cause of the overthrow of the Voyages by speedier returns home , then otherwise they would; wee have thought fit to fet downe the quantitie of victuals delinered abourd your foip in this our Commission, to the intent to cleere our selues and our Agent of that imputation, and to lay the blame on your selues, if by default the same be enill husbanded. The particulars are these. Beefe, 22.6 3, quarters, 1811, Bisquit 30.0 Beere 14. Tunnes. Fish, 200. of Huberdin, and halfe an hundred Lings. Cheese 300.0 weight. Butter three Firkins. Oyle three Gallons, Peafe ten Bufels. Ome-meale fine Bufhels. Cardels, fixe dosen. Aquavita, thirtie Gullons. Kinegar one rundlet of swentie Gallons. This proportion of victuals will last you seuen or eight moneibs with good hubandry, together with the bloss of Fish, Fomle, and Beast that are to be had in abundance upon those Coasts. So that we hope to Jon shall have no canse to the contrary, but obsersully to goe forward in your businesse, whereby not onely the small Barke you goe in, but the great Ship may come home fully laden with one commodiate or other, which we donor not but by your deligence and good endenours you may attayne vato.

But if you hall chance by extremitic of les, or otherwife to be put backe from your descentic, or from observations of the property of the control of the co poere will permit you, to finish the rest of your voyage. And if there bee sufficient lading betweene you both to lade the big ger flip, wer would have her to bee dispatched from thence with all speeds, and you to flay abore as long at you may consensently for the good of the Voyage; which the more beneficiall it proueth, the more it will be for your credit, and we will not be unthankefull at your returne.

We would have you at enery place of meeting with the Mary Margaret, to deliner to Thomas Elge to a wome some you at every piece of years the government of early person for the particular Notes of what goodly so beneathen in your life, I had a you foul fill faint place to would have you make a general imapte of the whole Caryoline of goodle laken in your life, and having a fixed above flow, to failed to you and hard the fourset our Agent refines to the South of the same of fixed above flows, to failed to you and hard the fourset our Agent refines to the colon. And if you have seen to make to with the Mary Marquett at or after your light Port of lading, we would have you delease a common to make to with the Mary Marquett at or after your light Port of lading, we would have you delease a Copy of the fail of more than to be me fined an immograe ever reader feeled, and for more takens: fake put up in fome fare place of enftodie.

We belds fu , that you lours Poole Should be as grand Pilot in this veyage to the Northward. And therefore we would have you to accompany the great thep, and to bring her to the places of filling for the Whale; or to any other place, which you out of your experience shall thinke sit to bring her for the good of the Voyage and benefit of the Aduenturers. And our will is, That Scenen Bennet Master of the 20 faid great hip segether with the reft of the company in that ship , doe follow the faid Ionas Po. les dire-

James, as they will an four the contrarte open their perils at their commune bome.

And for that beretofore the Company baue beene abused by level and bad people, who have imbessed part of that which by our great charges and adventures bath beene obtayned : Our monde and will is, That you longs Poole doe make fearch in your owne flop, that none of our Whale finnes, Morfes teeth, Oyle, or any other commodities gathered at our charge, he imbefiled or carried away by any of the Mariners, who will looke to have the vitermost of their wages paid them, and to bee fed with meate and drinke sufficient. And God sending you into England, we would have you suffer none of your people to goe on | beare unfearched : neither would we have you to leave the flop till your comming into the River of Thames, that we gine you order to the contrarie. And if you chance to be winde bound upon the coaft, 30. you may find up one of your people mith your Letter, but not se come your felfe on floore till one farther order, a directful.

The like order we would have Steven Bennet to vie in his frip, by vertue of this our Commission, which we have ordered to Thomas Edge our formant to see performed accordingly.

And in as much as we have agreed here with a Tanner for all the Morses bides which wee kill and Agreement with you, baning alwayes regard to commodities of more value, which are Oyle, Teeth, and Whales finnes, that none of them be left behind; We would have you leave the faid overplus of hides in some conne-40 mient place, till the next yeare, that we fend more flore of shipping.

A Commission for Thomas Edge our seruant, appointed to goe as our Factor in the Ship called the Mary Margaret, of the burthen of one hundred and fiftie Tunnes, for the killing of the Whale and Morfes vpon the coast of Greenland, or any other place in the North Ocean : Giuen the 31. of March, 1611.

50 VOn menos ignorant of our imploying you beresofore in two fenerall Voyages to Cherie Iland. The I first whereof, by reason of one Duppers going thither, together with certains men of Hull, glutting Adventures In prix source; ye respon ye so to expect your seed of the price of the service o verage above fine hundred pounds. We entring into due consideration of the premises, doe not impute the camp of these our losses unto you; but to the accidents then happening contrarie to our expectation: per thefe loffer growing upon us in the times of your imployment, we can doe no leffe then put you in minde an thereof, to the intent to incourage and forre up your minde to doe your vitermoft indenour to further the bufineffe in this your third imployment, that we may recover our felues of the loffes formerly fustained. And for that end we have made choice of you againe to goe as our Factor in the Ship Mary Margaret, of one bundred and fiftie Tunnees, the Master being Steven Bennet, for the killing of the Whale : And to that end, as you well know, have bin at charge of procuring of sixe me tof Saint Iohn de Luz, accusto-

CH AP.3. Greeneland Porge Anno 1611. Ice, Whales, Morfes.

Sixe Biscainers killing of the Whale ( : s I

Conceir. se if all places had kindes, which experience hath fince taught other-

ther light.

Ambergreefe.

med to that function : who fenames are as followeth : videlices luan de Bacoyne, luan de Agerre, Martin de Karre, Marsene de Horisada, Domingo de Sarria, and Adam de Bellocke: which men wee would have to be vield very kindely and friendly during this their voyage, whereby being strangers and leasing their owne Countrie to doe vs fernice, they may have no inst cause of complaint, but rather to be have heard) by incouraged to doe to fernice hereafter, if there be cause. And allbough it be our meaning the should be including the securing of a long or person concentre, a source or among a new meaning to a source or among the source of a month of the source them in Grand Whales from the wor fer, whereby in their firiting they may choose the good, and leave the bad. And to that end we doe fet you downe bere under, the feurall forts of W bales, together with the differences of goodnesse betweene the one and the other, as we have gathered the same by information from men of excellencie in that businesse: who make knowne unto us, that there are eight severall hinder of Whales, all differing the. one from the other in quantitie and qualitie. Which for your better instruction, we have thought good to The first fort of whales, we called the Bearded whale, which is black in colour, with a smooth skinne and I be gift just of your seas, because the weat west your value, when a brack in commence a general secure, and white order the chops; which Whales is the half of all the reft; and the elder it is, the more it date yields. This fort of Whale date yields of welly four bounded, and sometimes fine boundered finnes, and between

one bundred and one bundred and twentie Hogheads of Oyle. The second fort of Whale is called Sarda, one towarea and one ownerea and twente croppedate of Upte. I no second fort of wronte of called Swada,
Secost telenial of the fame colour and fallion as the former, but somewhat less, and the sinner not about one stations long,
of Whiles sup and yeeldesh in Oyle, according to his bignesses, sometimes a bundred Hogsbeads. The 10 or visions sup man section in O sectoraing to our organic, sometimes eightie, sometimes a bundred Hogbrads. The Art is have at third for to swhale is called Trumps, being as long as the first, but not so thicks, of colour Grs., basing compared with the one Trumes in his head, whereas the former base two. He hash in his month teeth of a span long, and 5 one one a rener or use comes, wavereas use prome come every tea course us a monasse use of a span song, and as thicke, as a sense wriff, but no fluxes whole beads in oger them ever being of the two former, and in proposition farre bigger then his body. In the bead of this whale is the Spanment, which you are to keppe in Caske apart from your other Oyle: you may put the Oyle you finde in the bead and the Spermaceti. altoge-Spermacetion ther, and marke it from the other Ople, and at your comming home, we will separate the Ople from the Specimacetty fore, and marks in from toe other Opic, and an join commonly when it is one one of the free freezients the rulgat call Spermecets. The life is to be done with the Opic of this fort of Whale, which is to be kept apart from the Opic of this fort of Whale keing boyled, will be at the Opic of the opic of the control of the Opic of the control of the opic opic. the Ote growner round, and round a summer of the grown of the grown was being cornen, who we as beard and white as Talkow, which to be simpled with the other Oyle being liquid, would make the fame to show as south Oyle, and so consequently spoul both, and so of little value; you are therefore to be ve. 30 yr carefull to keeps the Oyle of this fore of whale apart, as well of the head as of the body, for the reasons before mentioned. In this fore of Whale is likewise found the Amber greefe, lying in the entrals and puts of the same, being of shape and colour like unto Kowes dung. We would have you therefore your selfe to be present at the opening of this sort of Whale, and cause the residue of the laid entrals to be put into small Caske, and bring them with you into England. We would have the Master allo to be by at the front Caste, and oring toom witn you me Engand, or enound case too Master aije to be by at the occurring of this Whate, and to be made prime of the packing of those Barits. And although it be faid, that the Ambergreess is onely in this Whate and in none other, yet we would not have you be absent at that the variance greety a way in the found for a man and a second and the contract of energy what, that you find find from the contract of energy what, that you find find from the contract of energy what, that you find for the contract of the contract of energy what, that you find for the contract of you know, of good worth, and therefore not flightly to be regarded. The Teeth likewife of this fort of 40 Whale we would have you cause to be reserved for a triall; as also any other matter extraordinarie that you so all observe in the same. This Whale is said to yeelde in Oyle fortse Hogsheads, besides the Sperma. ceti. The fourth fort, &c. as fup. 471.472.

And in as much as industrie and diligence are two principall steps to atcheese great enterprifes, and neoligence and idlenesse are enemies to the same; we would have you in this charge committed wino you, to imbrace the one, and to anoide the other: and to show that example of paines taking to the rest of the company of your Ship in your owne person, as well in setting them on works, as in patting your owne hand to the businesse when neede requireth, as that there be no idle time spent, but that enery one be implojed in some businesse or other in helping to kill the Whale, or in searching the Bayes along the coast for Whales. Ambergreese, Morses teeth, or any other brange thing that may be sound upon that coast, or in killing the 50

Amorgraves, temperatures may now, programming may be must upon tout confirm in riting the Montal Confirm or may thing that may make profit to mand our great charges.

Touching directions for your keeping company together with the Elizabeth and of the courfe we thinke fitting for the Master of that Sing to observe, we have set the stare downs at large in our Commission delinered to Ionas Poole, a Copie whereof we deliner you herewith, for your better instructions, to observe what is to be done on both your behalfes for the good of the Voyage: which our Commission, we would have you firstly observe, unless upon some speciall occasion to us unknowne, and by the consent of the principal Officers in both the Ships, you hall fee iust cause to the contrary,

You have with you an order set downe by the Lords of his Maiesties prime Counsell, for the maintai-Therefine not ming of our Charter: which we would have you make knowne to any of our Nation, that you may chance Decreta not may of our quarter. source on second one promote process the stay in the tensor, it can you may consider to necessary to meets without leafner at Cherte I leafn, or you may office coasts. And if any firinger due effery no was to make its leactor due diffusive you in your trade, you may both defined you follow, and manitume your trade to the consisted. uttermest of your powers, or c.

CHAP.

### CHAP. III.

A briefe Declaration of this my Royage of discourry to Greeneland, and sowards the gelecturational unit my napoge of allowers to Glecheland, and total West of it, alfoliowers : being set forth of the right Worshipsuk Sir THONAS SALTH, Governour of the right Worshipsuk Sir

Inipful Company of new Trades of C. write 

The first as Black, you the security of a first with four Shippes in the control of the control

Pumpe, but they whom the half, which must the early we could be seen polyrite to keepe the ManPumpe, but they whom the half, which must the early we could be seen polyrite to keepe the ManPumpe, but they whom the half, which must be early we could be seen polyrite to keepe the ManTee by this threework day if they from to Chercy Linds, and the towercement I make wint to the Amine. The interesting the three the ManTee by this threework by the three three the ManGreenelson. The interesting the three three the ManGreenelson, but in our picks chicken which we have the product of the part of the Conference of the ManGreenelson. The interesting the ManGreenelson, but in our picks chicken we were the manwinder, and we found about 40 interests of the ManWhale although they have dispose of the ManWhale although they have dispose of the ManWhale although they have dispose of the ManMan they will be the product of the Conference of the ManMan they will be the product of the Conference of the ManMan the fame time. I was not considered the conference of the Maninto the Sea about fource-park leagues, where I found a page of the Linkewife in the fame time. I was not to the part of the Conference of the Maninto the Sea about fource-park leagues, where I found a page of the Linke of the Conference of the Man
into the Early to the Conference of the Conference of the Man
tee the Land and the Leafue the Conference of the Man
The whom the Leafue the Conference of the Man
The Man the Land time. I was not to the Man
The Man the Land time. I was not to the Man
The Man the Land time. I was not to the Man
The Man the Land time. I was not to the Man
The Man the Land time. I was not to the Man
The Man the Land time of the Man
The Man the Land time. The Man faid Land, as it is laiddowne, and by my accounts I was to the Southwards of it, neere the lataid Lang, as rese authorouse, must my accounts a was to the notificing of it, neer the la-ting the property of the property of the property of the property of the late all this sore of time (ometimes in, and competimes by the faid for, and founded most commonly each watch, While, but had no ground at 160.140,180, and 200, fathomes.

Then the winde came to the North-west, and I perceiving the Ice to trend still to the Southwards, determined toftand to Greeneland, from whence I came, there to make my Voyage and likewife to try the certaintie concerning the mifplacing of the Land, but the next day, being about the feanenand twentieth of Inne, the windecame to the North, and I flood for Cherie Hand, and came to it the nine and sweptieth of the fame Moneth, where I found that place of my being, when I supposed I should have found Land, did beare from Chern Hand West and by cheric Hand. South, about one hundred twentie fine leagues. When I came to the Iland I faw about three

6c hundred Morfes on land, but a fforme comming they went all into the Sea. nunarea mores on and, one a nones comming car years as into one 3 a.

The twelfth of 1st, we flor about two hundred; and by the three and twentieth day wee Moses. Induction their far filles and Teeth, which with the Victuals we had laded the flip; then Identified to hale up a final op to go to Greeneland, to Gearch if I could finde any Land or I determined to hale up a final op to go to Greeneland, to Gearch if I could finde any Land or I lands, that might proue beneficiall the next yeere, and likewife to fearch for Teeth and Whales

Finner. The foure and twentie, and fine and twentig dayet it was very much wind at North, which caufed the Sea to goe fo high that we could not land. Yet at eight aclocke at night the wind cased, and I went on land where I found certays of the Month of the wind and where I have the wind cased, and I went on land where I found certays of the Month of the wind and where I have the wind cased, and I went on land where I found certays of the Month of the wind cased, and I went on land where I found certays of the Month of the wind cased, and I went on land where I found certays of the Month of the wind cased where I was a supplied to the wind cased with the wind wind crassed, and I went on land where I found certoyne of the American American American Linderflood, that the faid hip was call away, and that American American English for the faid hip was call away, and that American English for the faid hippy is and others to the right number of thirtie perions, were arrived on the South faight the faid hippy; and others to the from two Boats in Greenland with thine hash in them.

on two posts in orremana with name mount around. Immediately Mafter Edge and Mafter Bennet Camb shoard, and I weighed and flood to the Immediately Mafter Edge and Mafter Binnet came stocard; and I weighed and flood to the World ided of the Bland, and anchored there, and put neers one hundred Morie hindes on Joseph and floor to the simplification, and include the particular to the property of the process of the simplification of the simplif

wind at North, I was per waden by disers that had gone that was to go between the last of disease wind at North, I was per waden by disers that had gone that was to go between the last of disease the Mayne, but when I was almost through, and in fight of that place where the last disease when I was almost through, and in fight of the fight of the last old there was enough for the fine, yet I was told there was enough for the fine, yet I was told there was enough nell, which is floads and narrow, for we had at three quarters floud, but dups not waster. The third of Augel I go ours, and shout eight of the clocks at high. I amkned never the many of the control o blessed bee God, no man perished at that so dangerous an accident. We being all got into three Boats, went to the Hull thip, where we found but small comfort; for Duke told vs plainly, wee ficuld not come aboard his ship, and caused Pikes and Launces to bee brought to keepe vs out. Then Master Edge and divers others defired him to let mee come aboard, which hee did, and with much adoe I got aboard, having mine head broke to the skull, and my brow that one might With mutations ago, account, intuing mine that of the control to the sampage my drow that the mine are I had a fore wound, likewife the fibs on my right fide were 50 all broken and fore bruiled, and the collar bone of my left shoulder is broken, besides my backe

was fo fore , that I could not fuffer any man to touch it. was to use; clear to one one any man to constant.

The twisch follows the being further accusation of Matmaduke, is omitted. And I have here added one of his Brother Randolph Poole their returns; omitting the former part of his Relations of the

In this our great distresse, Thomas Marmaduke Master of the shippe of Hull, professed great In this one great ministers you are stated on the state of the state o weigh her, both her Cables burst, and so we left her to all our forrowes, without hope of recouerie. Then we went aboard the ship of Hall, which God had prepared for our succour, where 60 our Merchant agreeing for the fraight, we got the goods aboard; namely, about twentie, or one and twentie tunnes and an halfe of Oyle, and a Barrell of Beares Oyle, about tenne tunnes of Whales Finnes bound up in an hundred and fixe bundels, in every one thirtie Finnes, and in fome more, fine Hogsheads of Morses Teeth, and one and twentie odde pairs. And if our ship had not miscarried, the Voyage had beene much better.

The nineteenth of August, we directed our course for England, the weather being reasona- They returne ble faire, and the wind for the most part betwixt the North and the West: and wee continued homeward. our course homeward all that moneth.

Voon Tuefday the third of September, about two of the clocke in the morning, we were im- September 3.

bayed with land, and were neere the shoare before we were aware. Wee steered backe North and by East: and at twelve of the clocke we found our felves to be on the West side of the Iles of Orkney, and fleered East into a great found, called Pentlow Fryth, where wee beeing entred Orthwyllands there came a Boat from the shoare, which brought vs fresh meat, and one of the men directed vs Pentium Fight. through the Sound. This Sound yeth in the latitude of 58, degrees and 36, minutes, and the course in 58, degrees Io through, is East North-east, and West South-west, it floweth there on the change day, South South-caft and North , North-west halfe a ryde , nine soote high or thereabout. At the entrance in onithe North fide, these is arrhigh red Mountayne, and the Sound there is twelve

miles ouer : but farther in the land is somewhat lower, and the Sound narrower. You may sayle along the North shoare two, miles off the land in fortie or fiftie fathomes; and on the faid shoare about found miles East South-east. From the red Cliffe there is a Bay, into which you may fleere North by West, a sing the West point of the entrancesisto the faid Bay a good birth i for there the water is floatid and fowle ground: but in the middle of the entrance, 30, 20, 18, 13, 10, 6, and

4. fathomes : but wecanchofed in 10. fathomes, fine fandie ground. The fift of September at an East South-east Sunne wee fet fayle, keeping our course about 20 mentioned, leaving five small llands on our larboord fide, and one lland on our starboord side; and fo keeping ah high Cliffe, which lyeth into the Sea on Sestland fide, open of a low Land in the

found on the fame thoure, we fayled out as before is faid.

Voon the .... day at a North Sunne, we anchoted in Humber mouth; there it floweth on the change day West South-west. Vpon the eight day we arrived at Hall, fafely and well in body, but much distressed and impayred in our states, which God at his good pleasure can restore. At our first comming to this Country of Gregoland, the Mountaynes and Valleyes thereof, exceptit were some few places, were all courred with snow but ere we went away, the tops of the high Hills, and the lower Plaines appeared greene with Modey and fine little quantities for graft. This Scioutery, and dikewife the fies is their parts, are fubiedt to manuellous thicke and graft. This Scioutery, and dikewife the fies is their parts, are fubiedt to manuellous thicke and so mittle weather, specially when the funne with his soft forcible hear melter the Ice and flow, and the state of the st whose vapours obscure the light of the summe, making small difference bet weene the day there, and the irkesome night in other places. . . :

We found in this Countrey many fat Deere, which we killed with our Peeces and Dogges at Many fat our pleafure, which was a great refrelling to vs in that vnquoth place many white Beares, Deete, white with white grey, and dumne Foxes. We fraud is for should be for some formula of the white with white, grey, and dumne Foxes. We fraud is for should be for some formula of the white with white, grey, and dumne Foxes. We fraud is for should be for some for some formula of the white white white for some for fea Pidgeons, white land Partridges, wild Geefe, Willockes, and many other Fowles. Among grey, and dun which I noted the nature of one, which we called an Allen, who (like to the great filles, which which I noted the nature of one; which we called an Asses, who (like to the great mine, which Abundance of eare up the (mall, or like to fome great man, which denoure all the labours of the poore) when fundry Fowles. fome smaller Birds have gotten any thing, then he leaveth not beating of them, till they have cast Allen a devousome intakte nine state governary autigation retained not beautig settlement in they haut cater, which he laying hold of disconsist by: and for with little means in ring Fowle, their gogget, and few feathers on their backes, he leavest them to get more; not for themselves

There is great store of fresh water in newly Yalley, which proceedeth most of the melted Montes, show. On eury Beech is great plentic of drift wood, but since a bush nor tree groweth in those quarters, as faire as we haut hitherto discourred. but for him. We found on the shoares many huge Mories.

CHAP. IIII.

A Relation written by Ion As Poore of a Voyage to Greenland, in the yeere 1612. with two Ships, the one called the Whale; the other the Sea-horle, fet out by the Right Worfhipfull the Muscouie Merchants.

> He feuenth of Aprill, 1612. wee fet fayle at Blacke-wall, and went to Granefond. The third of May we came to Cherie Hand, where we found a thip of Holland, Cherylland. in which one Alan Salones an Englishman was Pilot. The fame day about a North funne wearchored on the West fide of the lland.

The fourth, we krimmed a shall op which I left there the last years and Alea Salowes went aboard our Admirall , and Mafter Ruffell fent for Mafter Thomas Edge, Master Arthington, labn Mafon, and my felfe: where wee had some speech about detayning him, and to have brought him inted in land to the the the dee was let goe. At a North funne we lent our shallon to the South-east fide of the Iland to fetch a shallon, which was left there the last yeere : but they could not get thither for Ice, and came aboard agains at an East

North-east Sunne the fift day: at which time we weighed, and stood to the Westward, but im-mediatly we altered our course, and stood toward the lland sgaine among the see; and about a West North-west Sunne wee sent our Skiffe and Shallop to setch the Shallop aforesaid. The winde was at North and by West, stoffie weather with inowe.

The eight, wee flood toward Cherie Hand againe, and were faire by it at a South funne: at which time the winde came to the South-east, and wee faw the Hollander standing with vs. Then we altered our course, and sayled West North-west, determining, if hee followed vs, to flay for him. At ten of the clock at night hee came to vs : and the Admirall fenthis shallon aboord of him to command him to be gone out of our companie; and ar a North form hee ftood away from ve, and fayled North and by Eaft, and we lay by the lee.

The twentieth at a South Sunne we faw our Confort, and spake with them, and they told ve, that they had almost split sheir ship with a piece of Lee, which brake nine of their Timbers, 10

The one and two and twentie dayes, wee plyed to windward, the winde being at North faire weather. And at Blacke Point wee law great flore of Ice drining to the South. At eight of the clocke at night Blacke Point did beare from mee East and by North nine leagues. And the three dayes past we saw great store of Whales within ten or twelve leagues off the Land, Great ftore of Cape Cold.

The three and twentieth we were faire off Cape Cold; where Mafter Edge and Matter off The three and twentnern we were tarrent of the forest of the forest of the fore Whales, thingson went with the Backy in their Shallops for Grafe-rode, in hupe to kill fome Whales,

The fine and twentieth we got into Fonle Sound, all the Sounds being full of Ice; and the Foule Sound. Shallops came aboord and brought some Venison, which was very leane. And at fixed the clock the Backs went with the Shallops to Faire Foreland, to fee if they could kill a Whale 2 and at a North-weit Sunne Mafter Edge went with a Shallop, to fee it Crofferede were open.

The fix and twentieth, the two fhipsabouefaid dame into Fonte Sound : one of them was that Hollander before mentioned; the other was a thip of London, called The Diana, whereof one The Diana of

Them a Bujin dwelling as Weping will, was Marten.

The feuer and twentisth, Aless Schoize came about of our hip, sind reld w; that his Merchant had both is necke down a Cliffer, The fine day the Holinson and the Disass Acod so the Southward. The winde was at North North-weft, and Northwest, which kept the Ice in the 30 Dutch Merchant brake his necke. Sounds. The twentie eight, we fent the long Boat and tur Shallop to Brokemeffe, with a Shall lop of ten Tunnes, there to be fet vp. The winde was at West with inowe and frost. The same day the Backs came aboord, but could kill neuer a Whale. The winde came to the South South-Six Bifcayners: west, with frost and snowe.

The nine and twentieth, the winds was at South with much Inowe. The same day one of our men dyed, named Iohn Batcher , haning layen sickelabout three weeks. The thirtieth , one Michael Perkins dyed abourd The Whale. The last of May; the winde was at South; and wee

flood toward the Foreland in 79. degrees, The famethry somidnight; the Chyrurgeon of The mailte ida v The first of June, we stood into Fonts Sound, where wee few abundance of Ice drive out with

the winde at East. The second day, the winde was at North and by East, told frostie weather, 40 All which day wee lay under faile in the mouth of the Sounds The third day ; wee spake with All wines may very service and the service of the service of the service about, but he answered, that he was not well, and furthis batte Christophe Ninter. The fune say, we flood to the mouth of the Sound, but it was conered with Ice, And Marmaduke flood to the Northward; and as we were afterward informed, discouered as farre as 82. degrees; two degrees beyond Hakluyts Hendland. The fourth, we fert our shallop on shore in Fonte Sound, to see Monatcher grees below a management of the pur our Admirath on ground to flop her leake. The ray harbour were open to ride in , and to put our Admirath on ground to flop her leake. The ray, degrees fame day, our long Boate came to va from Brekeniells. And we turned into the Sound, because we faw the Ice drine out with the winde at South, and blew hard. The fift, we additioned in Foule Sound in feuenteone fathoms water and fandie ground, Where we faw the place Where both the 50 Ships lay which wee loft the last yeere, courred with Ice The fame time wee fent our shallop with our Carpenters, to finish the afreesaid shallon at Brokennesse. The winde continued at South; and the Whale turned into the Sound by vs, and achnored there at a South-west by South Sunne. The nineh, the Admirals Boate and ours went with provision and men to worke whom Whale, which the Backs had killed; and we flood toward the Foreland with the flrips, where the Whale was killed, the winde at South, thicke foggie weather. And by an East North-east Sunne wee anchored in the mouth of Foule Sound in fifteene fachoms, gray fand with some thells. At a Well funne the Boate came abourd for caske and other promision, and told vs, that the But had killed two other Whales.

The feuenteenth, one Bathe muned Chapel, tooke fine of our Enelif men to him , and they 60 trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale: About a West North-west sunnerthey went away, the winde at South. The twentieth, the Biscaine shallow came abourd of vis from the Foreland, and told va that they had itrooken three Whales, which brake away.

CHAP.4. Nicolas Woodcock. Morfes and Whales, Basks and Hollanders. 715

The two and twentieth wee rid still, the winde being at North-west, with snowe and frost. The fine and twentieth, we got the Whale on flote, having flopped her leake. We were no fooner off, but it blew most fiercely, so that the Whales long Boare and our shallop brake from the Whales sterne, and were split in pieces on the Ice, that lay on shoare. The same day about a South funne two men came from Fare Foreland, and told vs that Mafter Edge was come from the South in the Pinnasse, and had spoken with one Nicolas Woodcock an English man , which was my Mate to this Countrey of Greenland in the yeere 1610. The faid Woodcocke was now Woodcock Pilot Pilot o faship of Saint Sebastian in Biscay, and rid in Ice Sound. Moreover, they spake with the of a history ship, men of the Boate of the Diana, and law the Hollanders Boate, but fpake not with their men. The two men aboutfaid told vs likewife, that lohn Chapel our Backe with fine English men had The fourth 10 killed a Whale; and betwixt them and another shallop they had slaine another, and had them and sinh

The feven and twentieth we rid still, and our Carpenter went to worke to mend the knee of our beake-head. And I went to fee what Morfes were on Land, where I found neere one hundred and fiftie. The eight and twentieth, the shallop that had all English men in her saue one Bate, came about for prouision, and told me, that they and lobannes Chapel, had flame a great The fixt whale Whale close by our ship, which towed them off into the Sound, and our long Boate followed killed. them. At the same time we saw sixe Whales close by the ships side as we rode in harbour : and we faw great store in the Sound, and within one houre there were so many about our ships and in the Sound, that we could not count them. About a North-west sunne our long Boate brought 30 the men that strooke the Whale abouelaid, and towed their shallop on land : for the said Whale had funke her with his taile. The fame time our Carpenter went to worke on the broken shal-

lop, and I went to the place where the Morfes lay, where I found about three hundred on land. Three hundred Then I went abourd the Whale to get fome harping Irons : for they had all, but I could get but Morfes. one, because the rest of the Backs had laid them vp, enuying that one Backs, that went with all English men, had done so much , because by their good wills they would not have vs to have any Biscainers en intight into this bufineffe. Moreouer, hee that had the chiefelt command in this voyage, did uic. steatly condemne the going of fo many English men with that one Bake, either for feare they should kill none, and lose all their prouision for the faid vie, or for feare that our men should kill the Whale aswell , and as soone as they ; yet was there none of the other Boates but had lost 30 more then they had loft. And as for killing, there was not one Whale killed with one Boate alone, faue ours, with all English faue the Buke aforefaid, which flue three without the helpe of

any other Boate. This day the Backs flue another Whale at the Foreland. The nine and twentieth, the broken shallop was meaded, and I went to the Foreland, to fee Whale killed. whether the other shallops would come where the ships rode in harbour, where abundance of Whales were fill. The same time the Basts killed another Whale. Then I romaged my ship, The eight and put caske on land. All this day it was calme."

The last of June, one came from the Foreland, and told vs, that the Basks had slaine two great Whales. All this day likewise it was calme : and there lay abundance of huge Whales in the harbour about our thips. One of the whales abouelaid, Iohannes with the fine English men the 40 without any of the others helpe, For they frood on the land flouting, and faying, that it was vapoffible for them to kill him, and would not once lanch their Boates to helpe them : yet hee was one of the greatest that were killed this yeere. All this day the whales lay so thicke about the ship, that some ran against our Cables, some against the Ship, and one against the Rudder. One lay under our beake-head and slept there a long while. At which time our Carpenter had hung a stage close by the water, whereon his tooles lay. And wee durst not molest the faid whale for feare he should have overthrowne the stage and drowned all his tooles. In the end he went away, and carried the thips head round, his taile being foule of the Cable.

The first of July, at a North North-east Sunne, the shallops came to kill whales in the harbour where we rid, and strooke three, which all brake away. The same day, Iobannes strooke a 50 whale, that fmit in the fide of his shallop and split it. Now wee perceined the whales to begin to goe out of the Bayes. The fecond day, the Basks flue three great whales faire by our ships, in The ninth and leffe then foure houres; which were with our long Boate and men towed into harbour, and tenth Whales made fast to our ship. And the Basks event with their shallops to Faire Foreland.

The feuenth day, wee had abundance of Ice about our flips, which with the winde and the The chuenth, twee draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid ftill, and vvere troubled with much Ice, the teach by reason of a storme that blue at South-evelt and by evelt, &c. The rest is omitted as having Whales killed. nothing of note, but ordinarie accidents.

Whales killed.

The feventh



Y the prouidence of Almightie God wee departed from Queenborough the thirteenth day of May with fixe good Ships, viz. The Tigre, Admiralla the Matthew, Vice-admirall; the Sea-borfe, called the Gamalel, the 10 Reare-admirall; the Defire; the Annula; and the Richard and Banard; with the lobs and Francis shortly to follow.

The one and twentieth day, faire weather, the winde Southward, wee ftill making to the Northwards. This morning wee had fight of Land on the Coast of Norway. it lying East and by North off about twelue or fourteene leagues. This day at noone, we were in the latitude of 61. degrees and 30. minutes, the variation of the Compasse at Scottes-ari is eight degrees East, it being about ten or twelue leagues off : wee having made a North way halte East, about thirtie leagues.

The three and twentieth at noone, in the latitude of 65. degrees and 45. minutes, in which place, the Needle of Declination doth dippe vnder the Horizon 63. degrees and 30. minutes by that Instrument which declineth 54. at London.

The thirtieth day , about three of the clocke , wee espied the land of Greenland , being atayned meight bout eight or nine leagues off. The Southwardest part of it bare South-east and by East off it. which shortly wee perceived to bee the Land lying in 76, degrees and 55. minutes, which is called Horne-found. This Land lyeth by our common Compasse North North-west. Within two houres after we had fight of Land, it began to snowe, and was very cold. This evening the Compaffe was varied thirteene degrees Weft.

The one and thirtieth day, variable weather with snowe, and very cold, and the winde also variable : and in the afternoone the winde was at the North-east, In the morning, wee espied variable; and in the attended to the with her, and their Master and Pilot came aboord of vs. And and A flip of Saint wee knew them to be that flip of Saint Jobsu Lare, which had leave of the Companie to fifth them to Lare, And they told vs, that there were eight Jossiand on the Coaft. Alfo, were eight danother flip; Eight Spanied. which we supposed to be a French man, and had one Allan Sallas to their Pilot.

on the coaft. fight with a

The second of Lune, in the morning, about five of the clocke, our Generall fent our shallon to The Generall a small Pinke, that all this night we faw along the shoare, to bid their Master and Pilot come awis Capraine boord vs, which presently they did. The Masters name was Clair Martin of Horne, and hig Beniamin loseph thip was for Dunkerke, and he told vs that he was conforted with another ship that was his Admirall, the Captaines name was Fopp of Dunkerke, and that he was on the Coaft, Wee kept the Mafter and Pilot aboord of vs, and fent some of our men aboord of her, and brought her under our lee : and then, we fent their Mafter aboord againe, charging them to follow vs. This after-40 noone we tooke their thallop with five or fixe men, whereof two were English men, and one Scot, at the Faire fereland.

Dutch iffip. 23. of May.

The fourth day also faire weather. This morning was the first Whale killed. Wee had no night fince the three and twentieth of May. The fift day, faire weather, but very cold, the winde North. Wee fayled along the Hand being about eighteene or twentie leagues in length; lying for the most part by the common Compasse North and by West halfe West ward. About nine of the clocke in the afternoone, we faw our other three thips, viz. the Gamaliel, the Defire, and the Richard and Barnard, which lay there to and fro, because they could not goe into their Harbour by reason of the Ice : and also, because there were foure other ships in a Bay or Coue, called Pooppy Bay, or Nickes Cone : and also other ships on the other side in Greene Harbour. We 50 fayled along the drift Ice vntill about one or two of the clocke in the morning, at which time, we came to an anchor in the entrance of the Sound, because the Ice came driving out so fast.

The fixt day, faire weather, the winde variable, till the afternoone : at which time it came to the Northwards. About three in the afternoone we weighed anchor, and about ten of the clocke we came to the foure ships lying in Poopp Bay: two of them being Hollanders, and one a Rocheller, and the other a ship of Burdeauw. The Masters of the Hollanders came aboord of our thip, to speake with the Generall, both of them being of Amsterdam, and brought a Commission granted by the Graue Maurice, for to fish in this Countrey. But, when they faw our Kings Maiefties Commission granted to the worshipfull Companie, they told our Generall, that they would depart this Coaft : having our Generals Ticket to flew to their Adventurers, that they 62 were there, and had made their Port, and how he would not fuffer them to fifth. We anchored close by the French ship wherein was Allane Sallas, being readie to fight, if they refused to come aboord vs. So, when we fent our shallop, the Master came presently and their Surgeon, who could speake English. At the first, they denyed that Sallas was abourd of them : but, being hardly viged,

CHAP.S. Kings Armes and Croffe fet pp. Th. Bonner Pilot to the Dutch.

they confessed that hee and one Thomas Fifter an English man were abound, who were both prefently fent for. This Salles was their Pilot, and Fifter was their Gunner.

The fewench day faire weather, we road still at an anchor. This day I observed the latitude of the place, and found it in 78, degrees 24. minutes. The variation of the Compaffe is in this Lat. 78. deg. place 15. degrees 21. minutes West. About a North Sunne a small ship of Bifear came into the 24 minut harbour where we roade.

The eight day, for the most part snow; the winde Southward. This day the Master of the Snowe. French thip, being a thip of nine score, or two hundred, called the Lagues of Bardeaux, agreed with our Generall that hee might fish on the coast : out Generall was to have halfe the Whales to he could kill. Alfo, this day, the Mafter of the fhip of Rochel, and the Mafter of the fmall ship

of Bifcay, were agreed to depart from the coaft. The minch day, faire weather. This morning the Gamelel our Reare-Admirall, and the Defire weighed anchor to goe for Greene barbour, where two thips lay, one of Dunkerte, and the Green barbour. other of Saint Sebaffier in Bifeay. The Captaine of the Desterte, called Fopp, had beene with our Generall, and told him that he would depart from this Court. Our Generall gave him leave to take the Pilot of the Small Pinke, and the other Dates men he had taken of his keeping only the English men and the Sours. Allo, the two frips of Holland , with the flip of Bifery , and that of Rochel weighed anchor, and departed from this Harbout. About fix of the clocke in the

afternoone, came the Mafter of the flip of Saint Sobaffian aboord of vs, being brought by one of the Maiters Mates of the Defire (they having taken two of his Shallops) to know our Generals pleature, whether he should have them againe, or no. Our Generall gave them him againe, vpon condition, that he would depart the Coaft. About a North North-west Sunne, we weighed anchor to goe for Horne-Sound, where we heard, that there were divers ships; the wind Northward a small gale.

The tenth day, faire weather, the winde at North, being very close weather. About a North Sunne we came to an anchor in the entrance of Low Sound, where we faw two ships ride at an- Low found, chor. Our Generall fent our shallop to see what ships they were, who found them to bee the two thips of Holland. Alfo our long Boate went on thouse to fet up the Kings Maiefties Armes His Maiefties yoon a low point of land, lying a great way off, calked Low-weffe. We let up a Croffe of wood, Armes and a

and nayled the Armes vpon it.

The thirteenth day, in the morning, it fnowed very faft, being very thicke weather, the at Low meffe. winde variable, we standing off from the land. About feuen of the clock it began to cleere vp, at which time we espied three ships; and making roward them, at length we perceived them to be the three thips which came from the Bay where we road : the winde also was at Eaft and by South, and blew a very ftiffe gale. Then we flood in for the floare, and fpent most of this day in turning vp Horne-Sound. And about a North North-west Sunne, at ten a clock wee espied fix thirs lying at anchor on the South fide of the Sound, in a small Bay: The one of them was Captaine Fop the Dunkerker, who came in before vs, and was appointed by our Generall to come into this harbour, and there to ftay for vs, and to goe to the Foreland, to have his other thip 40 which we kept there. Foure of them were Biscames of Saint Sebaltian; and one of them was in the harbour where we road and found the French thip : The fixt was a thip of Amfterdam,

wherein Thomas Benner was Mafter and Pilot, and about twentie English men more, All the Thomas Ben Biscaines came aboord of vs as soone as we were at an anchor that Thomas Benner refused to come, English ma being fent for by our Generall. Our Generall commanded our Gunner to fnoot at him, he him- Matter and felfe discharging the second Ordnance. Then presently be began to set faile, and cut his cable, thinking to get from vs : but wee having that him through three or foure times, they began to weather vs, fo we fent our shallop and he came abourd. There were fine or fixe more of the Englifb men fetched aboord, and some of our men fent to bring her to an anchor, where shee might ride fafe : for, thee was almost run ashoare. This was about a North sunne, or eleven a clocke. 50 The Bifcaines were charged prefently to depart, fo foone as they had filled tresh water, which,

they faid, they wanted; and to bring what Whale finnes they had found, or had taken, or o-

The fourteenth day, faire weather, the winde at East Morth-east. This morning one of the Biscaines brought a few Whale sinnes aboord of vs, and the skin of a Beare, which they had killed. Then was our Boate-swaine sent aboord of them to search their ships, and to bid them depart. Out Generall kept the Holland thip, wherein was Thomas Bonner, to the vie of the Companie. This day I observed the latitude of this place by a Quadrant of foure foote Semidiameter, and found it to fland in 75, degrees 55, minutes; the Declination of the Needle vinder the Horizon, is 67. degrees 30. minutes, pointing to the Northwards : but pointing to the South-

60 wards, it is 80. degrees. The variation of the Compasse is 12. degrees 14. minutes west from the true Meridian: but from our common fayling Compaffe it is 17. degrees, because the 26.deg.45.mine. Compaffe is touched fine degrees and a halfe to the Eastward, and the variation is to the declination

This day in the afternoone, the foure ships of Bifear departed from this Harbour, which is

67.deg.30.min.

called Horne-Sound: and about a North finane , I, with the Mafter Thomas Sherin went afhoare with other, to fet vp another Croffe with the Kings Maiefties Atmes, caft in Lead, nayled vp. on it. Then I observed the Sunne vpon his North Meridian, by my foresaid Quadrant, and found it elevated about the Horizon 10. degrees and thirtie minutes: but because his heigh as the South Meridian, and his height at the North did not agree, in finding of the Latitude, I did abate fine minutes from each , as the meane betwirt both : for his alcitude at the South Meridian was 36 degrees 40. minutes, the declination 23. degrees and 29. minutes.

The fifteenth day, faire weather, the winde in the morning South, but almost calme. This day about noone we weighed anchor with the ship of Amsterdam, and divers of her men were fetched aboord vs with their Shipper, and some of our men were sent aboord her with one of 19 our Maiters Mates, called Mafter Spencer. All this day it was fo calme , that wee were faine to cowe our ship. Our Carpenter did trim vp two of the Biscaine Shallops which they did leave

behinde rhem, and they did leave divers Hoopes and Caske flaved ashoare. The eighteenth day, faire weather, the winde variable, we flearing away Northward. This

afternoone wee met with another thip of Bifes, being a thip of two or three hundred Tunnes. Our Generall, as he did to the rest, caused her Master and Pilot to come abourd vs, to whom he shewed his Commission, charging them to depart this Countrey. They, seeing no remedie. were content, fo foone as they had filled fresh water. Wee met with them off the Southward part of the lland. Our Generall being to neere Greene Harbour, where the Gamaliel and the Defire road, wee went into the Sound to fee them, with this great ship of Bifen, and the ship of 10 Abundance of Amfterdam. We found that the entrance of Greene Harbour was quite stopped with Ice: and ran our ship into it, thinking to get through, but wee could not. Then wee got her out agame, and came to the Bay where wee roade on the other fide of the Sound in Pooppy Bay, or

The nineteenth day, faire weather, the winde Northward. This day about twelve of the clock we came to an anchor in the forefaid Bay. This afternoone there came another ship of Saint Sebattian into the Bay where wee roade : and about feuen of the clocke, the Captaine came aboord of vs, who told vs that he had lott fix of his men and a shallop vpon the coast of Grome-An Iland in 72 land, vpon an Iland in the latitude of 72. degrees or thereabouts. This was the Mafter which degrees on the had beene here the last yeere, and made a great voyage, Master Woodcocke being their Pilot. His 30 making so great a voyage, was the cause that so many ships were here this yeere.

The twentieth in the morning, we had newes that the Ishn and Francis was come about two daves agoe, and that they had killed one and twentie Whales at the Foreland, and had also twentie whales killed two at Greene harbour. This day it was very close weather with some snowe; the winde North-west. This afternoone the Captaines of the two Bifesy ships were commanded to depart this Coaft.

The one and twentieth, wee perceived another ship standing toward vs. Weelessened our failes and stayed for her to fee what shee was. At length, we perceived her to bee another Bifcame. About a North finne we came to an anchor in Greene barbour, by the Gamaliel, and the Defire, and the ship of Burdeaux : and the Biscaine followed vs. So soone as they were come to an anchor, their Captaine came aboord of vs, to whom our Generall shewed his Commission as 40 he had done to the reft, charging him to depart those Coatts, and told him, that hee would take away fome of their shallops. They earnestly intreated him not to take them away, and they would depart : the Captaine offering his bond to our Generall, that if he flaved either in Greenland, Groineland, or Cherie Iland , he would willingly forfait all he was worth. There was ano-A man flaine. ther Whale killed in Greene-harbour, in the killing whereof there was a man flaine, and a Boate ouerwhelmed, by too much hafte of following him, after the harping Iron was in him.

The three and twentieth day, faire weather, the winde Northward. Thisday, and the last night I objerted the latitude of the place where we roade, and found it by both, to bee in the la-Lariende 78. titude of 78. degrees 7. minutes : the skie at both observations being very cleere, where I finde that there is no fensible error betweene a South observation and a North, the skie being 50 cleare. But if the skie be halie, there will be some difference, as of eight or ten minutes, being observed on sheare by some large Quadrant or other Instrument for the purpose, also a South A South South South-well Moone by the common Compalle, maketh a full Sea in this place.

maketh a full

The ninth of July, faire weather, the winde at North. This day wee flood to the Southward along the Iland : but, toward night it fell calme, and then the winde came to the West. The tenth day, faire weather, but thicke and close, the winde South South-west. All this day we flood for Bell-Sound. Our Generall went on shoare this afternoone, and killed foure Deere, and brought a young Morfe aliue with him aboord,

The eleanenth day faire weather, but calme. This afternoone wee perceived five fhippes in a Bay in Bel-found. The winde was so calme, that we were faine to towe in our shippes, and about 60 a North North-walt funne, we came to an anchor by them, with our three thips, viz. the Tigre Admirall, the Mathew Vice-Admirall, and the Richard and Barnard, having made all things resdie for to fight. These fine shippes which rid here, the one was a great shippe of Biscay of seven

hundred Tunnes, and the two Hollanders, which we found the fixt of Isme in Pooppy-bay, and A Bifcayn this one small Pinke of Amsterdam, and another small shippe of Rochell. This great shippe of Biscay, of 700, uns. which we expected would have fought with vs, fent their Captaine aboord of vs before we came to an anchor, and submitted themselves vnto the Generall. The two ships of Amsterdam, whose Mafters names were thefe, viz. Corneline Calias, William Vermogon, Admirall, and Iohn Iacob Vice-Admiral these two would gladly have stood out with vs, it the Biscaine would have affisted

The twelfth day faire weather. This day the ship of Iohn Iscobe was valaden of such goods as thee had in her; as Oyle, Blubber, and Mories skinnes. The thirteenth day I was fent in a fhal-

10 lop to Greene Harberough. The foureteenth day, thicke close weather, the winde Northward; but toward noone it began to cleare yp, and then it blew more winde. About a West tunne, we came to a small Iland. gan to create vp, and the first with the come where we found featen which we killed, and knocks Manyrecker ed out their teeth, and let them lye. In this place are many of their rockes, where are great multitudes of foule, and they are called Lizett Hands. The Land all along is fo full of Rockes, that Lifett Hands. it is vapodible for any hippe to come neere the Maine, but in the Sands which are very deepe, and good to come in. All this evening and night wee rowed betweene this Iland and Ice-found,

The fitteenth day, about nine or tenne a clocke, we came to the shippes in Greene-barberough where we found, that they had killed eighteene Whales in all. Foure of these ships were French. Eighteen

30 men, which had killed eight Whales for the Companie according to the agreement which the Whales killed. Generall had made wich them : which was, that they should kill eight for vs, and after, what they could kill, should be for themselves. Our English men had killed three in this place, and the Three Whales Bastes in the Defire also three. The Defire had taken in an hundred tunnes of Oyle when wee killed by the came there, and the was to be laden to come as the could.

The feauenteenthoday also faire weather, the winde Northward. This day, toward a West Sunne, the Mafter of the French hippe came from Sea berfe Bay, who went thither to fpeake with our Generall : because Mafter Mofen and Mafter Cooper had flayed his Shallops from going to Sea, in regard they would not observe the orders which the Genegall had appointed them; which were that whose Whales which our Englishmen did chase, they should not follow, nor our menshoold not follow the Whales they chased. For the order of the BiGeness is, that who is doth 30 ftrike the brit Harping Iron into him, it is his Whale, if his Iron hold. This evening, I fay, he returned from Sea-borfe Bay, haning loft ins labour : for the Generall and Mafter Edge were in Bell-

ned from Sea-norse Day, maining four his sapout : for the Street and annual was a well and that Eight & thirty found. We vaderstood by him, that they had killed some eight and that they whales killed there was one hundred and fixtie tunnes of Oyle ready made.

The five and twentieth day in the morning, the Done weighed Anchor to go to the Generall, and the Mafter of the French thip also this morning went from thence to speake with the Ge-

nerall, because of a Whale which was in strife betweenthis Biseaine, and pars : when for pilfering and for some peremptorie speeches, two of the Rochellers were ducked at our Yard arme, the one on the one fide, and the other on the other. This day I also observed the laritude of this place, and found it tobe 77. degrees 40. minutes. Alfo, the variation of the Compaffe is 13. de- Latinde 77. grees II. minutes West. This variation was observed the third of August in the morning : the degrees, 40. height of the lunne about the Horizon was 17 degrees 24 minutes, and the declination was 14 Variation, 13.

degrees 41 minutes. North in the latitude of 77 degrees 40 minutes, and his Magnetical azimuth degwas 63. from South to Eaft. The ninth day wee had light of Mafter Bouners Ship, wherein min was Mafter Marmedule, who had beene to the Northward as farre as Faire-banen ; and now, as he faid, he was bound to the fouthward to discouer beyond Point Looks and hauing his direction from Master Edge, as he faid. Our Generall rold him, that hee had hindered the Voyage more by his ablence, then his discouerie would profit; and that it were best that he went backe Laditude 79. with him to the Fore-land, and that he would give no licence to goe now for Discouerie, because degrees,14. the yeare was farre spent-but bad him, according to his Commission, so to proceede. The twelfth This was Man day I observed, and found the latitude of this place by an exact observation to be in 79. degrees 14. Cudaers thip of

minutes. They in the Pooppy-Bay had feener thip of England off Black-point, and had spoken with Landon, her, who told them that they were come from Kildeens The foureteenth day faire weather, the Winde at North North-east. This day about tenne a clocke in the forenoone, we waied anchor to goe homeward, being fixe thips in company, viz-

the Tiere Admirall, the Gamalel Vice Admirall, the Iohn and Frances, the Annula, the thip of Burdeaux which the Generall agreed with to fifth in Greene-barborough, and the Bifcar flip which filhed in Sir Thomas Smabs Bay. The fifteenth day very faire weather, all the forenoone almost calme, in the asternoone, an

60 eafie gale at North-eaft. This day about twelue a clocke at noone, were were again France Fore. Latitude 79. land, which is in the latitude of 79 degrees 8, minutes. This night was very cleere and taire wea degrees 8, minutes. ther, and also calme, by which meanes I had very good opportunitie to finde the furties refraction on. For beholding it about a North North-east funne, by the common Compaste, at which time Sunnes refrathe funne was at the lowest, it was but one fift part of his body about the Horizon, having about dion.

foure fifth parts below, so neere as I could gelle. His declination for that inflant was 10. degrees 25. minutes North, being at noone in the 2. degree 7, minutes of Vingo, his daily motion was 58. minutes: whose halfebeeing nineteene to bee added to the former, because it was at twelve houres afore noone. I fay his place at that inftant was 2. degrees 26. minutes of Free, whose declination was as before to.degrees 35. minutes : the Latitude of the place was 78.degre: 47.minutes, whose complement was 11.degrees 13.minutes, the declination being subftract d from the complement of the Poles eleuation , leaueth 38. minutes, foure fiue part of which 12, minutes; which being subitracted from 38, leaueth 26, minutes for the Refraction. But, I suppose the Refraction is more or lesse, according as the ayre is thicke or cleare, which leave for better schollers to discusse : but this I thought good to note, for the better helpe of fach IQ.

as doe profesio chis studie. The fixteenth day also very faire weather, and for the most part calme: the winde that was, was ac North-west. This morning, we espied a ship out in the offen, ouer against Cold-cape, which we flood with, and the alfo flood with vs. And when we came to her, wee found her to be the Defire, 2 shippe of Alboroueb. Our Generall sent for the Master and Merchant aboard of vs, who

certified bim that they came from Killedeene, and that they had made but a bad Voyage of file : and they were come to fee, if we could fraight them home. The Merchant was of London, whose name was Matter Cudner : the Matters name was Fletcher, who also brought fixe men which Thomas Bonner had left at Cherie Hand. These fixe men had killed but one Morse all this yeere at the Hand: who also told vs, that William Gourdon was gone, to the Northwards, At noone, the 20 Vanation 1. three and twentieth day, I observed the variation of the Compass, and found it to be one degree

degree semis. 5.minutes Eaft.

M. Cudger of

William Goar-

Landan

The three and twentieth day faire weather, with a fine gale at North and by Eaft. We flearing a way South and by Weft halfe South : being armoone, by supposition, in the latitude of 69. degrees no minutes. Having failed fince yesterday noone; some thirtie leagues South, true.

The foure and twentieth day, very faire weather and cleere, the winde all the fore-noone Northwards, but about noone it came so the South-east. This morning I observed the middle Posturatus pur apout none e came so the open the latitude of 88, degrees 24, minutes fairer in the Great Bearengape, 2 and found it to been the latitude of 88, degrees 24, minutes about two a clocke, at which time that flarre was on the Mendium vader the Pole. Also I observed the starre in the Beares Rumpe about one a clock, and found the like latitude. Also all 30 Asid gno min, this day we had fight of Keff Hands, being about ten er eleuen leagues off vs. Alfoat noone I The variation observed the latitude by the Sun, and found vs to be in the latitude of 68, degrees no minutes, 4 degrees 8. which did agree with the former Observations by the flares. Also the variation of this place is 4. degrees 8. minutes East from the erue Meridian, wee having runne fince yesterday noone some two and twentie leagues South and by Welt. Almost all the afternoon it was almost calme.

The fine and twentieth day also very faire weather , the winde this morning came to the Balt South-east a fine easte gale. Westered away South and by West halfe West ten leagues, being at moone in the latitude of 67, degrees 5, minutes. The variation of this place is 5, degrees 3. minut es East, neere to the set of our Compasse. This Euening the winde came to the South

South-west, which continued about two Watches.

The nine and twentieth day faire weather, with a good gale of winde at North North-eaft. From two this last night to fixe, we stood away South west and by Shuth, and at fixe we steered away South South-west, being at noone by obternation, in 62. degrees no minutes. The land the land about Scontofneffe lyeth in this fort : from fixtie three toward fixtie two, it is ninetpene leagues South South west halfe Westward: from thence tenne leagues South and by West, which is two or three Hands, which see the Weltwardest land in Norms, lying in the latitude of 6g. degrees 44. minutes. But whether these Ilands, or a Point of fand, which lyesh about three or some leagues more to the North, be called Scontefueffe, I know not. The fixt of September we entred the Thomes.

CHAP. VI.

A Voyage of Disconerie to Greenland, &c. Anno 1 61 4. Written by Ro. FoTHERRYE.



He ship Thomasine went downe from Black-wall to Woolwich the fixeenth of Aprill, and from thence to Granefend the three and twentieth, where the remayned whill the eight and twentieth of the fame; and weighing from thence 69 the anchored againe in Tilberie Hope, with ten ships more of good burthen, and two Pinnaffes all of the Greenland Fleet, fet forth alfo at the charge of the faid Company, under the command of Master Beniamin Isfept, Chiefe Captayne and Generall of the faid Fleet.

The att the world

CHAR.6. Troubles by Ice. Hackluyes Head-land in Greenland.

We set sayle out of Tilberie Hope the fourth of May, and came to an anchor the same day in Lee Road, where we stayed till the next morning, then wee fet fayle againe and went forth to We went forth

Sea before night. We proceeded in company of the Fleet, and met with stragling Ice the fine and twentieth of We proceed in company of the latitude of 75, degrees 10, minutes, through which wee passed without danger, hol- 10, minutes ding on our courie all that day, till time of mid-night; then we found the Ice fo close packt together, that we were forced to tacke about, and fland to the Westward, till wee found more open patiage; wee plyed through it without any great danger, till the eight and twentieth day : but then being in fight of Land, we puffed among it very much Ice all the fore-noone, which lav in great abundance on both fides of vs: but a defire (as it feemes) to get through it, drew vs on to be the more intengled with it, for about noone we could neither find a p. flage to goe forward,

mor way to retyre backragmae, but being nine thips and two Pinnaftes (for the Professor and the Defire loft Company through foule weather, the one and twentieth of May, otherwise we had beene thirteene layle) we began very fuddenly to bee inclosed and that vp with Ite. Now every one wropent the best meanes he could for the fafetie of his ship; Our Master in the Tho. Eleven Savies seafore caused a Hauter and a Grapnell cobe carried torth, and laid woon a great Hand of Ice, and fall on the Ice. on we rid as at an Anchor and by the metters wer third from forceable rulning against other M. Ta. Sherwite peeces; afterward we laid forth an anchorfer furer hold; and made fenders of an old Ca. le, which was hung ouer the ships sides to keepe the Ice from piercing of her plankes. Wee rid thus from the right and twentieth of May till the lecond of June, still floating as the wind droue vs

ac with our anchor, holding Hand, which now we accounted as the shoare, and made vie thereof accordingly, for vpon it our Carpenter fealed and trimmed our leffer shallop. On the retord of June we had a great homeming Seathe wind being at North-west, where- June.

by we judged we were not farte from an open Sea to windward of ys; there wee refolued to make tryall what we might doe, so free our felues out of the Ice. In the afternoone about three a clock we got aboard our Anchor, letting fall our fore top-layle, and putting forthour M zen; and fo droug afterne for a while, till the floating Hand game way; then wee filled our top-layle, and rounder the control of the control o as the topic we precupyed and of the west of the second of them they feemed much more perillous then they proued hurtfull, fo wee prayfed God for our fafe deliverance, withing chee the red of the thips which we left in the Ice, were as cleere out of

it as was the Thomafore, material with your one Hauing action not flat open Sea to the Westwards, we proceeded to the Northwards keeping We met with the for full on our flatboard side; and income the for full on our flatboard side; and income the Mary And Savas, that got also free of the the Mary And sides. Ice the fame day that we come that of an wetter company together till the next day, when some being as high as Prince Charles Halth we both flood in for the floore, the Mary An-Sarab going for Bel-found, her affigned Harbour, but we proteeded to the Fore land. where when wee Wecame to

40 came the fixt of lune, where met with two shallops that belonged to the Defire, wherein was the Fore land. Cutbbert Appleard, and refiliant Schomer Harponiers; by whom we widerflood, that the Froferow and the Defire had more definedly prospered, there all whe reft of the Fleet, they eliaped the danger that all the reft fell into, and came to the Fore land the third of lune, finding the

Here was yet no worke begunne, for they had not feene one Whale fince their comming into the Harbour; lo that for we there was no cause of stay to bee helpfull wnto them, and therefore we proceeded to the Northward, hoping to find the (hoate fill as free from Ice, as it was at this We proceeded place, but it fel out contrary to our expectations, for being come as farre as Mandles Sound, in the to the Northplace; but it fel out contrary to our expectations, to being come state from the mayne top we wards latitude of 79. degrees 34, minutes, we met with fome firigling kee, and from the mayne top we Maudlen faw much lee lye betwitz wand Hartings Head-land, which feemed to bee choic to the floare, sound, 50 therefore we fent former men in a find to the Mandles Samuel to fee if it were open, that wer Hartings might harbour our ship there, and fearch for a leake which wee found her subject water in fould Head land.

The Sound was open and we anchored in a good Harbout, but the Ice was not gone cleere in whather from the fhoare, therefore we could not hale our thip aground, but we carined her and fet vp our Biscaine shallop which we carried with we out of England in pieces.

The next day after our comming hither I went forth in a little shallop (the other being then I went forth in wnfer together) to fee how the Ice lay at Hackleyes Head-land, and whether we might paffe with a shallon our ship that way or no. Being come forth of the Harbour, we perceited, that it was very foule 60 weather at Sea, notwithflanding I proceeded into Faire Hauen , where the South Harbour was then open, but much Ice lay then in the Sound vnbroken from shoare to shoare; delict wife wee might have palled that way to Hackleyes Head-land, between the Bland and the mayine Land, we flayed here till the next morning, then the weather beganne to cleere vp, and wee purforth to Sea againe, intending to goe without the llands : but being out of the Harbour wet found the

We anchored

We fet fayle out of Mandlen Sound and followed the

Prince Charles .

Iland in 78.

Wee flood a-

degrees 40.

gaine for thoare,

foule weather to be such, as our little weake shallop was notable to endure, therefore wereturned agains to our thip into Mandlen Sound, where we killed two Female Morfes, and took their Teeth, Hides and Blubber,

On the tenth of June we fet fayle out of Maniden Sound, and coafted along to the Northward, till we were pail Hacklayts Head land, but then we law the Ice lye before vs, extending close to the shoare, so that for vs to passe further that way, it was not possible: therefore wee turned to the Westward, to see if wee could finde passage further from the shoare. Wee fayled as the Ice trended West and West South-west till the thirteenth day, and keeping full alongft it, we found it to trend neerest South and South South-west, we proceeded well thus far, till we came vnder the latitude of Prince (borles his Iland, in 78. degrees 40. minutes, being 10 eight and twentie leagues from shoare, but then we altered our course, and stood in for the Foreland, to goe and be helpfull to the other ships there for the furthering of their Voyage according to our Instructions (as some did vnderstand them) but contrary I am sure to some of our defires, When we came neere the Fore-land, we saw eleven ships of Hollanders under sayle; plying to the Southwards; one of them came roome towards vs, and frucke her top-fayles twice, thips.
We anerored whereby we supposed shey tooke vs for some of their Fleete, which they wanted, but wee held on our course still into Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, where we came to an anchor the fifteenth of June, by the lohn-Anne-Francis, and the Defre, the Mary Margares being then underlyle to go

Here was yet no need of any helps that we could make them, for they had hitherto neyther 20 killed nor feene one Whale fince their first comming in hither; thetefore we thought it best not to flay here, but rather goe to Faire Hause, where wee should bee more readie to proceed on our Discourrie when the Le would give vs leave, and in the meane-time wee might bee helpfull to the two ships thither assigned for the making of their Yoyage, and so much the rather wee ha-sted, because we understood that the Hollanders also set for tha ship on Discourse.

Bay. nen hacke a-

gaine into

We fet fayle

We see tayle the seuenth of June, and met with the Properson, that came from Croft-road, and of Six T.Smain was going into Six Thomas Smain Bay, there so, get some Bricke and Lime to mend their Fornace, as Nicholas Woodcocke the Mafter told vs, then we went forth to Sea, and being about foure leagues from the shoare, the winde began to blow so hard from the North-west, that wee were forced back agains to feek Harbour, and came to an anchor the nineteenth of lune, in Croffe-road, 30 We were dri-Here we stayed two dayes, much wind blowing at the North North-east, till the one and twentieth of Iune, and then in the after-noone the wind came to the East and by South, and the weather was faire, therefore at a North North-west Sunne, we weighed and set sayle againe, and so did the Thomas Bonamenture, that came to an anchor by vs this morning, beeing also bound for out of Croffe-Faire Hauen.

This next day in the afternoone we were thwart of Mandlen Sound, and the weather being faire and calme, we fent a shallop to the Northward, to fac what alteration there was amongst the Ice, and to seeke out some good Harbour for a ship y and also to fet up the Kings Armes at Hacklayes Head-land, or some other convenient place.

The Kings

One fhallop not other thallop into Mandlan Some, there were the where hallop into Mandlan Some, when I was within the Some, I found no Beeches bare for Motles to Manden Sound. come vpon: for kee and fnow lay yet vndiffolied from the shoare side, but I went to the Harbour, and there caused a Croffeto beset vp, and the Kings Armes to bee nayled thereon; vnder which alfo I nayled a piece of fheet Lead, whereon I fet the Mosconie Companies Marke, with the day of the moneth and yeere of our Lord. Then cutting vp a piece of Earth, which afterward I carried aboard our ship, I tooke it into my hand and laid, in the hearing of the men there in Trimitie Har. prefent to this effect.

Itak; this sees of Earth, as a signe of leavilul possession of this Countrey of King Iames his New-land, and of this particular place, which I name I visitive Harbourd, taken on the behalfs of the 50 Company of Merchants, called the Marchants of New Trades and Discouries, for the visof our Sourreigne Lord lames by the grace of God, King of great Brittaine, France, and Ireland, whose to what the Royall Armets are here fer up, to the end that all people who shall here arrive may take notice of his Matesties Right and Title to this Country, and to every part thereof. God fave King lames.

This is a good late harbour, and is under the latitude of 79, degrees 34, minutes, as I have found

parallel of 793

by good observation, and have of Westerly variation 25. degrees. When I had here set up the We came to an Kings armes, I returned to ward our thip, which was come to an anchor at the entrance of Faire benen, Raying till the floud came, because that at the Tide of Ebbe, there runnes a great current. out of the Sound; fo at the next floud, we came into Faire basen and anchored by the Gamaliel and the Thomas Bonamenture, the three and twentieth day of Iune.

Then labu Majon, Mafter of the Gamaliel, came abourd of our ship, and I asked him if he had any worke for our men, for I would cause them to come a shore : he cold me, that hitherto he had were yet come not scene a Whale come in, but his Furnaces and Coppers were already set vp, and therefore as yet he had no neede of helpe, but when occasion ferued he would imploy them. This day about

eleagen a clocke Mafter Baffin returned in the Shallop from the Northwards : he faid that he had beene at Cape Barren, which is the point of an Iland three or foure leagues from Hackluits beadland, but further then that he could not paffe for Ice which lay close to the shore, and he had not the Northfet vp the Kings armes in any place.

On Munday the feuen and twentieth day of Iune, I went forth againe in the Shallop to the Gape Bartas Northward, partly to see what alteration there might be in the Ice, with the Easterly windes which had blowne hard fince the Shallop last returned, but chiefely to fet vp the Kings armes in some place concernent, because there was none set up to the Northwards of Mandlen found,

We rowed to Cape Barren, where formerly Mafter Baffin had bin, and finding the Ice there to gone from the shore, we proceeded further to an Iland which now we call the Saddle, in respect Saddle Hand. of the forme thereof, more then a league distant from Cape Barren. In our way thither it began to snow, and grew to be a great and vehement storme from the West North-west, therefore we hafted and got to the lee fide of the aforefaid Hand, and there made fast our Shallop with a grapnell laid vpon the Icie shore, ving the best meanes we could with our shallops saile to keepe vs from the extremitie of fo cold an harbour : we flaid here eight houres, and the florme continued drining the Ice still Eastward in great abundance and with wonderfull swiftness; when the weather began to cleere, I caused the men to rowe to Leewards to another lland a league diffant, 20 which feemed then to be a Cape of the maine land, purpoling there to fet vp the Kings armes;

but afterwards wee found it to be an Iland, and to the maine wee could not come for bro-This ftormie weather continued from Munday night till Friday morning, during which time we had beene but eleauen leagues at the furtheil from our fhip, yet went we fo farre as we could hauegone, had the weather beene neuer fo faire ; for at foure leagues dutance from Cape Bar-

ren, the Ice lay firme and vnbroken two or three miles from the shore, and close agains to it lay the thattered Ice thronged together with this pretent ftorme, On Friday morning we came backe agains to Hackluits headland, and there I fet the Kings Iulie. armes in the like manner as at Troute Harbour : from thence we rowed towards our ship, and as

we entred into Faire-basen, there came a Whale that accompanied vs into the harbour leaping The Whiles and advancing himselfe almost quite out of the water, falling headlong downe againe with great began now to 30 noile; we halted aboord our ship, and I sent forth both our Silallops to strike this Whale if they come in. could, and told Mafter Major of her comming in, who also went forth in his Shallop: but it

feemes the Whale past under the Ice which lay yet unbroken betwixe the North harbour and the South harbour, for they could not fee her againe.

The next day there came more Whalesin, and Robert Hambleton, our Masters mate strucke Two Whales two, which valuckily eleaped; the first for want of helpe; the Gamaliels Shallop being in chase eleaped, of another Whale, and our owne little Shallop not able to row against a head-sea to affist the other: fo that at length the Whale having towed the Shallop forth to Sea, the harping iron came out : the fecond was also strucken within the found, and ranne under the Ice, which lay yet vnbroken at the East end of the Sound, and drew the Shallop voon it cleare out of the water; by 40 which meanes the Harpingiron came forth. Here we remained till the fixt of lule, our men and

Boates being helpetull at all times to further the Voyage. The fixt of Iulie we fet faile forth of Faire-banen, intending to make triall if wee could to get to Westwards of the Ice, and so proceede to the Northwards, having sent away one of our Shal- We came forth lops the day before, prouided with twentie dayes Bread, to coast along it the shoare, search the of Faire havene Beach for Commodities, and fet up the Kings Armes at places convenient, hoping thereby to preuent the Hollanders, who now rid in the North harbour of Faire-banen, and were ready for the first opportunitie, to discouer and take possession of other harbours, having two Ships to goe forth onely vpon Discouery.

We failed Westwards from Faire-hauen seuen leagues, and then met with a maine banke of Ice which trended North & South, the Sea appeared to the Northwards to be open to far as we could We met with which trended North to South, the Sea appeared to the Porthwards to be open to tar 28 we could be and flood fee, therefore we plied that way, when we had run feuen or eight leagues more, the Ice lay fo thick to the Northon every fide, that we were bard from proceeding any further; then we flood in toward the shore, wards. and being a little to the Northwards of Cape Barren, our Shallop had fight of vs, & came rowing Our Shallop to vs through the broken Ice, Maiter Baffin told vs the shore to the Eastward was much pestered cameto vs. with Ice, and he had fet up the Kings armes at the entrance of a faire Sound, about foure leagues diftant from Cape Barren.

Now the weather being faire and calme, Master Sherwin, Master Baffin and I, went in the Shallop to the place where the Kings Armes were fet up, purpoing (because the ayre was very cleere) to goe vpon some high mountaine, from whence we might see how the Sea was pettered 60 with Ice, and what likelihood there was of further proceeding. According to this our intent, we ascended a very high hill, and from thence we saw the Ice lye vpon the Sea so farre as we could differne, so that the Sea seemed to be wholly toured with Ice, saue onely to the Eastwards : we thought that we faw the water beyond the Ice, which put vs in some hope that we should ere long get paffage with our Shallops along the shore, if we could not passe with our shippe. Being

The thallop re-

We returned

thus fatisfied, we returned abord our ship and plyed towards Faire basen, admising amongst our felues of the best course we could to further the businesse committed vato vs.

Weintended

We refolued to make our diffeoury along the shore with both our Shallops, and to carry with vs our prouision for the Whale-killing, conceining good hopes belides, of profit which the beaches would afford vs; therefore we intended when our ship was brought sate into harbour againe, to goe from her with both our Shallops, and to put in practife this our late resolution. But the weather falling calme, and a fogge succeeding, which continued three dayes, so that our ship I went forthin came not into harbour till the tweleth of July; I went from her the eleventh day, intending to fearch the Beaches, till Master Baffin came to me with the other Shallop, and then we to proceede both together: but before he came, I had gone so farre as that the Ice would not suffer mee to passe a Boates length further, and I had also searched a very faire Beach which was altogether to Matter Baffin came to me at a place appointed the foureteenth day of Iulie, in the other Shal-

Mafter Beffin the other Shal-

lop, and we proceeded both together to the Eastwards againe, and found passage amongst the Ice about a league further then I had lately beene, fo that we came to the firme Ice, that lay almost two miles from the thoare of Red-beach, vnbroken vp this yeare. Here wee haled vp our Shallops out of the water, left the broken Ice which is carried to and fro with the winde, might iplit them or bruse them : then Master Baffin and I with foure men more waiked ouer the firme Ice and went ashore on Red-beach, where we trauelled about the space of three miles by the thore file, but found no commodities as we expected to have done; for here had the Hulmen been 20 Weehailedour in 1612. as we might know by fires that they had made, and gathered the fruites that many yeares before had brought forth. Thus as we could not finde that which wee defired to fee, fo did we behold that which we wished had not beene there to be seene, which was great abundance of Ice, that lay close to the shore and also off at Sea so farre as we could discerne; wherefore being thus fatisfied, and more wearie to know that we could palle no further, then with trauailing fo farre, we returned to our Shallops, and went abourd of our Ship in Faire basen on Sunto our Shallop day the feuenteenth of Iuly, passing the neerest way betwint the llands and the maine Land, for now the Ice was broken betwixt the South-harbor where we rid, and she North harbour, where

The next day we fent our Shallop to the North-east fide of Faire hauen, there to lye for the 10 comming of the Whales over against the Gamabels two Shallops that Iye on the other fide for the fame purpose. The twentieth of July, wee were vnder faile to goe forth of Faire banen with the Gamalul, purpoling to haue taken two Ships that rid at the entrance of Mandlen-Sound, with John Majon,

who first described them, supposed to be the one a Bark, and the other an English man; but the came to an an winde blew right into the Harbour, so that we could not get forth, and therefore we came to an anchor againe where we rid before. On the one and twentieth of July, our Harponiers killed a Whale, which split one of our Shallops and ftrucke the Harponier that was in her ouerboord : but both hee and the reft of the men were relieued and taken into an other Shallop ; then we fent our Carpenter to mend the Shallop 40

Wekilleda

that was split; and on the five and twentieth day they helpt to kill another Whale. On the fixe and twentieth of July, I drew the plat of Faire basen, as it is here projected (but here too coffly to infert.)

the Hollanders vid.

August. We went to

We got to the

When this Scoale of Whales were past, we went out of Faire haven the first of August with both our Shallops, Mafter Baffin in the one, and I in the other, with five men more in each Shallop, thinking that now we should finde the Ice broken and cleere gone from the shore, conceithe North-wards without using some good hope to proceede and make some new discourry, which was the chiefe occasion of our imployment. Wee passed ouer Red cliffe-Sound, which we found cleare of Ice; and from thence we proceeded to Red-beach, where we also found great alteration fince our last being there, not with flanding the Ice was not cleerely voided from the shore; for in some places it was firme and vnbroken off, for the space almost of halfe a mile: so we rowed along st it, till wee came neere 10 the North end of the Beach which lyeth furthest into the Sez, and there we found an open way to the shore with our Shallops, and went on land; but feeing in all places great abundance of Beach with our broken Ice, we lay close to the shoare, and doubting that although perhaps with much adoe, we might get about the point of the Beach, yet should we still be pettered with Ice from proceeding any further, we retolued to walke ouerland, to the other fide of the Beach, where we faw a hill about foure miles diftant; from which we thought we should be satisfied, how much further it was possible for vs to proceede; fo thither we traugiled, where when we came, wee faw a very faire Sound on the East fide of the Beach which was open within, but there lay very much lee at the entrance of it, which although it was extended more then halfe over Sound, yet we doubted not but if we could get our Shallops about the Beach, we should finde either one way or other to 69 passe over the faid Sound, & from the high land on the other fide, we should receive very good fatisfaction, if the weather continued faire and cleare as now it was, therefore we intended to make triall what we might do; but before we returned we went down to the point of the Beach, at the

entrance of the Sound, and there fet up a Croffe, and nailed a fixe pence thereon with the Kings The Kings entrance of the sound, we returned to our Shallops, and according to our late determination, armes are fee we sowed about the point of Red beach, and with many crooked windings amongst the Ice, at your wiches length we got ouer Wiches Sound (for fo it is now named.)

As soone as we were ouer on the other side, about two leagues from Red-beach, Master Baffin Wepassed oues and I clambred vp a very high hill, from whence we faw a point of land bearing East North-east, Wiever Sonad: by the ordinary Compasse eighteene or twentie leagues distant, as I supposed. Wee likewise saw another faire Sound to the Southwards of vs, which was much pettered with Ice, but we could

not fee the end of it. Here vpon the mountaine wee fet vp a Warelocke, and then came downe 80 againe with leffe labour, but more danger then we had in getting vp, by reason of the steepinesse We found thereof: then we walked to the shoare side, and there found many beach Finnes, whereby I con\_ Beach Fins. jectured that Mafter Marmaduter men in his first discouery, made in Anno 1612. had not beene wpon this land to learch the Beaches, for in all other places where we had beene heretofore, we could finde nothing at all. Now therefore we resolved to make further search along it this shoare; and to proceede with our Shallops fo farre as we possibly could : whereupon wee returned to our

men againe whom we left with our Shallops, where we first landed.

Having flayed here a while and observed the latitude which I found to be 79 degrees \$4.minutes, we faw a Shallop come rowing towards the extreamest point of this shoare, therefore we We met with nates, we liw a Stratop control to the who were therein, and found them to be Mafter Marmadukes men, Shallop. lately come from their ship the Hartf-eafe, which they said they left at Sea amongst the Ice, about 20 a league from Red Beach : here they were fetting vp a Croffe, which they faid that they found there fallen downe, and had beene formerly fet vp in the time of Mafter Marmadutes first difco- Note. uery, by one Laurence Prestwood, whose name I law thereon engrauen, with two or three names more, and it had the date of the feuenteenth of August 1612. Vpon this Crosse they nailed the

Kirigs Armes. Fiere we parted from them, and according to our former determination we proceeded, fome in the Shallops amongst the Ice, and others on shoare, till wee went about foure leagues further : in which space we found many more Finnes, and one paire of Morfes teeth, but now we found the Ice fo close packt together, that wee could not proceede any further with our Shallops : owherefore Mafter saffs and I intended to walke ouerland vnrill we should be better fatified how farre this Sound went in, for wee could as yet see no end of it, and it seemed to make a

fepara tion of the land; fo leaving our men here with the Shallops, wee travailed almost a league further; till we came to the point of a fandie beach, that thot into the Sound, which was wonderfully flored with drift Wood in great abundance. From this point we received fuch fatisfaction runy re orea want to the same we faw the end of the Sound which lies South in about ten leagues. It Theend of Sir hath in it a good harbour that is landlockt, and doubtleffeit is a good place for the Whale-killing Thomas Smiths if it be not every yeare as now it is peftered with Ice. Here I faw a more naturall earth and clay Inlet discoue. there any that a name seems in all the Commer, but nothing growing thereins on more then in other places. This Sound is that which formerly had and full retained the name of Sir Thomas 40 Smiths Inlet. then any that I have feene in all the Countr , but nothing growing thereupon more then in o- red.

Being thus fatisfied, we came backe againe to our Shallops, and feeing no way but one, we returned towards our Ship; but before we could get to Red-biash, there arole a very great storme Werenurned from the East North-east, after we had entered amongst the kee in Wichet Sound, so that we were Ships separated the one Shallop from the other, whereby our danger was the greater; for whiles wee Attormobe-

were both in company together, the one might have beene helpefull to the other when neede te- gan when we quired, and more caffe it feemed to faue them both, then being separated to keepe either of them were amongst from wracke; but God (who in his wonted mercie is ever ready to relieve the farthfull diffreffe.) Icc. did not onely so prouide that we met together againe, and indeede were helpefull the one to the other other wife I doubt the one Shallop had miscarried, for the was in great danger) but also deother cother was very hard to fhus, of the Ice, which it was very hard to fhus, of the Ice, 50 and at the length brought vs into an open Sea, where with as feant a faile as we could make, we

paft swiftly before the winde, the Sea comming divers times over the sternes of our Shallops, which wet our skinnes, that had scarse any dry cloathes on before to keepe them warme, by reason of a drizeling Snow which fell with the fforme : then we went abourd our Ship into the We came a-South harbour of Faire banen, the fift of August, with one hundred and fiftie Beach finnes, and one boord our ships paire of Morfes teeth, giuing thanks to God for his bleffing and mercifull deliverance.

ire of Morfes teeth, giving thanks to God for his blening and mercinal defluctance.

The Holland The ninth of August, two ships of the Hollanders, that were appointed for Northerne Discources.

Discources nery, were feene thwart of Faire Hanen, fayling to the Southwards.

The eleventh of August, we let sayle forth of Faire Hanen, the winde at South South-west, Our Ship 6c intending to make tryall, if yet the Ice would admit vs to have peffige to the Northwards or wenforthe the North-eaftwards. We held our courfe from Cape Barren, North-eaft and by Eaft, till feuen Sea. a clocked right, at which time having runne eight leagues from the shoare, wee met with the Kemet with the leagues from the shoare, which time having runne eight leagues from the shoare, when the with the leagues from the shoare, which is the shoare and the sho Lee which lay East and by South, and West and by North, and bore vp along this to the East- leagues from wards, for the winde was now come to the North North-west; then wee tackt about to the the shore,

We plyed off

Westwards, and plyed off and on close by the Ice, till the thirteenth day at mid-night, slill expecting a change of the weather, that we might have made some adventure amongst the shatterd and on the lee, for both on the twelfth and thirteenth day, the winde blew hard at North, and the weather was cold, thicke, and very winter-like with fall of fnow: this winde being focontraite, droue both the Ice and our thip to leswards towards the thoare, to that wee were forced to put into Harbour againe, and came to an Anchor the fourteenth day in the North Harbour of Wee anchored Fare Hauen, where the Fleet of Hollanders lately rid, at which time the Harrfoafe was there at

North Harbor.

Now was the Land both Mountaynes and Plaines wholly coursed with snow; so that almost all mens mindes were possessed with a desire of returning for England. But to prevent a sudden to refolution for a homeward Voyage without further satisfaction, I made motion that once againe we might goe forth with our shallops, to see what alteration there might bee found along it the fhoare. It fell out that I was to goe in one shallop for this purpose, so I tooke with me eight men. and went from our hip the fifteenth day of August.

I went to the Eastwards in a Ice was newly Point Defive.

We rowed to Red-cliffe Sound, where we passed through much Ice that was newly congealed Ice was newly frozen in Red being thicker then an halfe Crowne piece of filter, notwithfunding we broke way through it, and being ouer the Sound, we had a cleere Sea againe; then we proceeded to Red-beach, where finding the shoare cleere of Ice (which at my last being there was wonderfully peftered) I conceiued good hope to finde passage to the furthest Land from thence in sight, bearing East halfea point Southerly, nine, or ten leagues distant; to this end we put off from the shoare of Red beach, 20 and rowed a league and more in an open Sea, and then met with Ice which lay dispersed abroad, and was no hinderance to our proceeding, so that we continued rowing the space of sixe houres, in which time we had gotten more then halfe way ouer: but then we found the Ice to lye very thicke thronged together, fo that it caused vs much to alter our course, sometimes Southward and sometimes Northwards, and even in this time, when we thought wee stood in most need of cleere weather, it pleased God to send vs the contrary, for it beganne to snow very fast, which made the Ayre to thick that we could not fee to make choice of the most likely way for vs to paste, therefore I thought good to stay hereawhile, hoping that ere long the weather would be more agreeable to our purpole; so a Grapnell being laid forth vpon an lland off, to hold fattour shallop, a Tent was made of the shallops sayle to keepe the weather from vs, and we remayned 30 here five houres, but finding no alteration in the conftant weather, I willed the men to take downe the Tent, and with faire tearmes perswaded them, that notwithstanding the wet westher, it were good to be doing fomething, to get ouer to the defired shoare, where we might refresh our selues, and haue fire to dry our wet clothes; they seemed well content with this motion, and so we rowed the space of foure houres more, the Ice still causing vs to hold a South and South South-east course, which carried vs further into Sir Thomas Smiths Inlet, and put vs from

I could not

The thicke snowie weather continued all this time, which was very vncomfortable to vs all, but especially to the men that rowed; and as the snow was noysome to their bodies, so did it alio begin to aftonish their mindes, as I well perceived by their speeches, which proceeded upon 40 this occasion. The fnow having continued thus long, and falling vpon the smooth water, lay in fome places an inch thicke , being alreadie in the nature of an Ice compact, though not congealed, and hindred sometimes our shallops way; this I say caused some of them, not altogether without reason to say, that if it should now freeze as it did that night when we came out Redcliffe Sound, we should be in danger here to be frozen vp. How soener this search might bee a meanes to difcourage the reft, that considered not of such a thing till they had heard it fooken of: yet true it is, that I faw no likelihood, by reason of the Ice, how to attayne my defire at

the place where we wished to be.

this time, and therefore I bade them row toward the shoare of Red-beach againe, where I intended to flay till the weather might happily be more convenient. So holding a West North-west course, so necre as the Ice would fuffer vs, wee came to the East-fide of Red-beach, having beene 50 eighteene houres amongst the Ice, during all which time the snow sell, and as yet cealed not.

Ireturned to- ding as I went to make a more particular Discouerie of Bread-bay, and Red-cliffe Sound, hoping wards our thips that one place or other would afford fome thing worthy of the time and labour. When we were

come to the West side of Red-beach, it began to blow much wind, where withall the Sea growing to be great, all men aduised to passe over Broad-bay, whilst the winde and weather would ferue vs to fayle, for they faid it was like to be very foule weather : fo feeing that it was no conueniont time for coasting, we came ouer the Bay to Point Welcome (which I so named because it 60 is a place, where wee oftentimes refted, when wee went forth in our shallops) it is about foure leagues distant from the North end of Red beach.

When we had been here about an houre it began to cleere vp, and the wind to blow hard at East,

which rather packe the Ice close together in this place then difperfeit, so that I was now out of hope to get any further then I had beene alreadie : wherefore I returned toward our fhip, inten-

At this point the Hollanders had fet vp Prince Maurice his Armes, neere vnto a Croffe which I had caused to bee set vp aboue a moneth before, and had nayled a sixe pence thereon with the Kings Armes, but the men that were with me, went (without any such direction from mee) and pulled downe the faid Princes Armes, whill I was gone vp a Mountayne to looke into the Sea, if I could fee any Ice and when I came downe agains they told me, that the fix pence was taken from the Croffe that I had fet vp, and there was another post set by it, with the Hollander Armes made fast thereon, which they had pulled downe; so, because the fix pence was taken The Kings away, I caufed one to nayle the Kings Armes cast in Lead vpon the Crosse : which being done Armes are let we rowed to the bottome of Red-cliffe Sound, and as we coafted along it the shoare, we searched up agains at two little Beaches, which had fome wood on them, but nothing that we found of batter value. Point Welcome. o little Beaches, which had lome wood on them, but nothing that we want to be to be a within the Sound on the East fide there is an Harbour where hippermay and diffe

ride in good ground Land-lockt, but if other yeeres be like this, I cannot fay that it is an Har. Sound. 10 bour fitriff for thrps; because it is last ere the Sound breake vp; for even now there key much Iceat the bottome of it, infomuch, that I was forch to leave the shallop, because I coold not paffe with her for Ice, and walke two miles over Home Mountaynes, with another man inmy company, to bee farified concerning a point of Land that the into the Sound, whether it were an find of vid, as by all likelihood it feemed cobec bur when I came to the fartheft part of it. "Traw it joyne to the mayne Land, wherefore I called it Powe Deves, because it decei. Pow Deteit, ued mee formuch. From hence wee proceeded toward our shippe, and came aboord of her in the North Harbour of Faire Hauses , on Priday night being the hineteenth of August, where she

rid alone; for Mafter Marmadate was gone forth to Sea that day.

The two and twentieth of Angust, Tohn Major Master of the Gamaliell, came over from AWhale lay the South Harbour for helpe to hayle vp a Whale which had beene famke fourteene dayes, in funken fourone hundred and twentie fachome depth, or elfe to pull the Wurpe and Harping Iron out of her, teenedayes. for now it was time to take her or forfake her. Maiter Showin our Mafter caused our long Boate to bee manined and went with him; when they came where the Whale was funke, they Boate to be mainted and went-winted in the many of the

the shallop from the Eastwards, the weather hash beene commonly warme, and the Mount ther in the end 30 taynes were now more chere of Snow, then they had beene any sime this yeare, notwith of August. flanding there had much knowe fallen know the beginning of this moneth, but it was quite confirmed, and a greater figne of warmth and thaw was now to bee observed thest say time

of the yeere heretofore; namely, by the often falling of the Ice into the Sea from the huge Inowie bankes, making a noyfe like Thunder, fo that the time was very hopefull, but thus wee

made vie of occasion offered

The senen and twentieth of August, it was faire and grarme weather, calme till noone, We sersayle to then had were a gale of winde from the South South-well, wherewithall wer fer tayle on the Enfluence Februard, Februard in the Company of the Enfluence Februard, Februard in the Company of the Enfluence Februard, which when the beene in termer of confortation of the Enfluence Februard in the Company of the English was supported by the English of the Barris which bore from vs South-walkand by South I

Barret, which bore from we South-weithend by South. If the woman is the more warmen of the thorness of the proceeded this to the North-eastward, and on the eight and gwarmen day, in the thorness were had cume about twentie leagues from Cape Barrets in an East North-east way by the ordinary Compally, being open of Sir Thomas Sauth Index, pind of tenns triggies from the shoare; at which time wee were come to the Ice, that trended Eak South eaft) and Weft North-weft, but the Sea being very rough, wet flood off against from the Iee; in the afternoone The Thompson it fell calme, and at night we had a gale of winde at EaR, and the flip was fleered Weft, and then recumes for South-west homewards.

The nine and twentieth day, the winde Easterty an easie gate; at foure a clocky inches to noone Hankley to Hank level bore from we South east by East foure begins diffant; ) the East four

50 was very warme. The thirtiethday, the winde at North-east an easie gale; at four a blocke in the afternol Mundim Point bore East North-east halfe a Point Easterly about the bagges distant Total the Evening it fell calme, the weather not cold.

- The thirtieth day, faire Sunne-Shine weather and calme till noone, and then we had a good gale of winde from the North-eaft, being fue leaguet diffant from the Pore land, which bore South-eaft; now wee altered our course and from to the West-ward: therefore so keepe vs fill in the parallel that now were were in which was 79 degrees 8 nitiaures, Weft Northwest We flood to course was directed, in respect of the Variation, to make good a true West way.

This courie wee held till we had tunne about twentie leagues and then weersame twentie leagues more in a Welf, and by North courie till one a clocke on Friday more more in a welf, and by North courie till one a clocke on Friday more may a see which time it fell calme; and wee heard the Sea make a great noyle, as if wee had beens neere Land. but wee rather judged it to bee Ice, as indeed it proued to bee, for in the morning when it

England.

bore to dierod.

We left the

Ice and came

for England.

was light and cleere, wee faw the Ice about a league from vs, which trended Southerly, having now a gale at East North-east, wee steered away, South and South South-east, but in the afternoone we were embayed with a long banke of Ice, which wee could not weather, Wee mer with therefore wee were faine to tacke about, and the winde having come more Southerly then it was in the morning, wee flood off from the Ice North-east and North-east and by Northand then to the Southwards againe, making fundrie boardes to get forth to wind wards

The third day before moone, wee had fight against of Ice to Westwards of ve, and at moone were winder the parallel of 78. degrees 27. minutes, according to my Observation : then wee flood a way South to keepe cleere of the Ice, for wer had a great homing Sea, although but TO fittle winde; and therefore durft not be to bold to edge too neere it, especially the wind being Easterly as then it was.

On the fourth day our men faw the Ice agains from the mayne top-mast head, and therefore wee still maintayned a Southerly course ; the next day it began to be foggie, and continued close weather and hazie for three dayes, fo that wee had no more fight of the Ice; neyther could wee at this time receive any further fatisfaction concerning the fame : therefroe wee kept a Southerly course so neere as wee could, although wee had but little winde, and the fame very variable till the minth day, but then wee had a good gale of winds at West

On the tenth day beeing Saturday, wee were by my reckoning fiftie leagues diffant from 20 Low-foot, which bore from vs East South-east halfe a Point Southerly; this day the wind shifted to the South-west, and at night came to the South with much raine; then came backe against to the West North-west and began a great storme.

the West North-west and began a great storme.

This night the Master and others law a light vpon the Fore-bonnes, which the Saylers call a A Corpo Santo. Corpo Santo : it appeared like the flame of a Candle, and (as Sea-men observe) it alwayes prela-It is often feen geth an enthing florme; which to verific, this foule weather continued the next day, and grew to be fo wehement on Sunday night, that the Sea oftentimer pure-raked our thip, and wee were faine to lye arry with our fore course onely, and our Mayne top-mast also strucke, which last thing (as Seamen fay) is feldome done at Sea, then about one a clocke we were forced to take in

our fore courie, and to lye a-hull for fine hours.

The fourth day of October, the thippe came to Wapping with the whole number of men that ther carryed forth (my felfe excepted that was come before) being fixe and twenties all to a service of the angle of the angle of the service of the servi

by the CHAP . IVVI By no federal Character

A true report of a Poyage Anno 1 6 1 5. for Riscourge of Seas, Lands, and Hands, to the Northwards ; at it was performed by ROBART FOR HERRIE, IN & Pin. 40 naffe of twentie tunnes called the Richard of London: fet forthat the charge of the Right Werfhipfull Sir Two was Smith, Knight, my very good Mafter, and Mafter RICHARD WICHE, Governours: and the reft of the Worthipe full Company of Merchants, called the Merchants of New Trades and Discourries, trading into Moscouia, and King
I A M I S his New Land.



Y the proudence of Almightie God I went forth of Harmith Harbour in the forefaid Pinnafie, the twellth of May, in the company of eight hippier of the Fleet, for King Lames his New Land, who in foole weather out-layed the in the 50 Latitude 71. degrees, or thereabours. So I proceeded alone rowards King Lamis his New Land; and net with Ice in latitude 73. degrees 30, minutes, it food Northeaftwards for the waft of King Lames his New Land, and had Lindry conflicts with

the Ice in rainie and wet foggie weather, and had fight of Land the eleventh of Inne, and on the nineteenth of the fame I anchored in Faire Haven. Here I flayed till the third of July for the Pinnaffe had received some burt amongst the Ice, which to amend, I was faine to hale her aground, belides divers other things necessary to be done, which detayned mee longer then willingly I would have flayed there.

From hence Mayled Northward, but met with Ice in latitude 79. degrees 40, minutes, being fix leagues from Hacklents. Head land, then I coafted the Iceas it lay in Points and Bayes to the Well wards and South-wellward, and being thirtie leagues from the Land in laritude 19. degrees 10. minutes, I found it to trend Northward and North-westwards, and coasted it to the latitude

of 79. degrees 50. minutes, but then I was embayed with Ice, and was faine to fland out againe and failed aboue ten leagues before I got elecre : when I was out of this Bay, I proceeded South Westerly with the Ice on the starboard to the latitude 78. degrees 30, minutes, where being fortie leagues from the shoare, I was againe embayed with the Ice, and having had faire Perill and Sun-fhine weather all the day , which made mee the bolder to fland fo neere it , the weather escape, on a fudden fell foggie, and the wind beganne to blow hard at South, which put vs to great trouble and no small perill : but the Almightie power who hath mercitully delivered vs heretofore out of as great dangers, preferred vs alto from this : when wee were gotten cleare off the Ice. we had the Sea much growne, and the ftorme increasing, but beeing defirous still to keepe the Sea, I flood close by the wind vader a payre of coarfes, till the Pinnaffe waxt leake with bearing too much fayle, and there was forced to lye acry worder a mayne coarse only : and although shee ftemmed South-east and South-east by South, yet was she hurried violently to the North-eastwards, and by the mercifull prouidence of God we fell right with the Foresland, in latitude 79. degrees, then I flood ouer Sir Thomas Smiths Bay for harbour in Crafe-road, where I anchored the thirteenth of July being Thursday. I flayed here foure dayes, in which time my men mended the Sayles and ships tackling that had received burt by the late storme, and made a new mayne Sayle to ferue in time of need, and on the feuenteenth of July I weighed out of Crofferoad, and (ayling Westwards from thence came to Ice againe in latitude 78. degrees 40.minutes, which I coafted as it lay neerest South-well, or more Westerly, but with many Points & Bayes. 30 wherewith I was sometimes intangled, yet, God be thanked, got cleere againe, either by helpe of Oares or Sayles without any hurt. In this fort I proceeded with good facilifaction, although not with fo good content, till I came to the latitude of 76, degrees, beeing about one hundred leagues from Point Looke-om, but then was croffed with a contrarie forme from the South-well and South South-weft, which drove me to the South-eastward, till I came in the latitude of 74.

and some degrees, and then I made my way Weltward nguine, somere as I could lye, close by the wind-and outer-rance the formerly supported Land of Cirymand, which some hause lynd down in plats Brand and extended to 75, degrees. When I came i must be lattitude of 73, degrees, I shood Wer find Grand. North-west, and fell with Ice agains in latitude 73. degrees 50. minutes, and thought indeed at that time that I was neere Land by abundance of Fowle, which we faw in great flockes : but Fogges fuch thicke forces have continued for three or foure dayes together, that we might fooner heare 3C the Land if anywere, then fee it, and fo did we first find this Ice by hearing the rur, thinking till we faw it that it had beene Land so that we were embayed with it, before we thought that we

had beene neere it; then I flood out agains and coafted the Ice ftill to the Westwards Southerly, but could fee no Land, as I expedied to have done, vatill wee came under the latitude of 71. degrees thirtie minutes, and then we efpyed a fnowie Hill very high in the cloudes, for this day High Hill. was very cleere at Sea, but the fogge was not yet cleered from the Land, fo that we could fee no part of it, but only the top of a mowie Mountayne, which appeared very high although wee were four teens or fifteens leagues diftant from it, bearing off vs South-east and by South.

Then I flood in for the shoare, supposing it had beene part of the Mayne of Groynland: for the fogge lay on each fide of this Mount, as if there had beene a great Continent under it, but it proued otherwise, for as we came neerer to it, the fogge dispersed more and more, and when wee

were fine leagues diffant, the Land appeared in forme like an Iland.
When I came neerer the shore, I could find no Harbor to anchor in Notwithstanding, the weather being faire & calme, I house out my Boat & went alhore with three men more, and fet up the Kings Armes: then we fearched a Sandie Beach, which was abundantly flored with drift wood, Drift wood, but weelded no other fruits, that we could find worth the taking up, fo I returned abourd againe, and fent alhoare my Boat to fetch fome wood. But before the men had laid into her the little quantitie that the was able to carrie, they came aboard againe, for the wind began to blow hard, and the Sea to goe loftie, fo that here was no place for vs to abide any longer, otherwife I was

purposed to have searched further alongst the shoare, but this gale of whale comming Northerly i stood from hence to the Westwards, being defirous to see more Land or finde a more open Sea. And having fayled about fifteene or fixteene leagues I met with Ice again, in fatitude 71 degrees, and coafted it eight or nine leagues further Weftward and South-weftward as it lay, but then the wind came to the South-west, and we stood close by it a white to the Southwards, but finding the gale to increase, and confidering that it was the most contrary while which could blow a: gainst my further proceeding (for the Ice as we found distorted neerest South-west, and besides if there had beene any high Land within twentie leagues of vs, wee might perfectly have made it, the weather was so faire and cleere.) In these respects, and for the Realins following, I cooke ic, the weather was to raire and decree-plantage to propose the penetit of this wind to returne to the North-eathwards againe; being now about two hundred 60 dred leagues from King Lames his New Land in latitude 71. degrees.

First. I purposed to tayle along it the South-east side of the Land that I had discouted, to bee better fatisfied what Harbours there were, and what likelihood of profit to enfire; and from thence to proceed to the place where I first fell with Ice in latitude 72, degrees when I was driuen to the South-eastwards with a Westerly storme, for I am yet verily perfwaded, that being

there we were not farre from Land, although wee could not fee it by reason of thicke foggie weather. Then my aurther intent was, if I found no good occasion to ipend my time there, for to coast the Ice, or try the open Sea to the Northwards, betwirt 73. and 76. degrees, where formerly I had not received defired fatisfaction by reason of a storme that draue me off, and then I purposed, if time might seeme convenient, to proceed to the North Coast of King James his New Land, to have seene what hope was there tobe has for passage Northward, or for compass fing of the Land, which is most like to be an Iland.

I stood away East and by South, and being neere the forefaid Hand, the winde came to the West and blew a very hard gale, where with I passed alongst the South-east side of the Hand vnader a paire of coarses, but without that satisfaction which I expected ; for the winde blowing so Io flormie, and the Sea growne very great, I was forced to stand further from the shoare then willinely I would have done, and besides there was a thicke fogge vpon the Land, whereby I could not be fatisfied what Harbours or Roads were about it, yet might we fee three or foure Capes, or Head-lands, as if there went in Bayes betwixt them. I fayled about it, and then stood to the Northward againe, and being now affured that it was an fland, I named it Sir Thomas Smiths Hand.

Six T. Smiths

Mount Hack-

This Iland is about ten leagues in length, and stretcheth North-east and South-west: it is high Land, and at the North end of it there is a Mountayne of a wonderfull height and bigneffe, all couered with Snow, which I called Mount Hack/wyt; the base or foot of it on the East fide is almost four e leagues long, it hath three such files at the base lying out to the Sea, and from 20 the fourth fide doch the rest of the Hand extend it selfe towards the South-west, which is also. as it were, a place fortified with Castles and Bulwarkes, for or each side there bee three or foure high Rockes which fland out from the Land, appearing like Towies and Forts. It lyes in the parallel of 71. degrees, where the N-edle varieth from the true Meridian Westwards eight degrees. The Land is generally so farre as I have seene, Rockie and very barren, and worse then the Land that I have feene in King lawer his New Land, under eightie degrees, for there is no grafte but mosse, and where I first landed upon low ground, all the stones were like unto a Smiths sinders both in colour and forme, the fand is generally mixed with a corne like Amber; the Beaches are abundantly stored with drift wood and many stones, light like Pumis, which will swimme on the water, I saw many traces of Foxes and the footing of Beares, but not any figne of Deere or other living creatures, and very small store of Fowle.

From hence I flood to the Northward according to my former purpose, but was croffed with a contrarie florme from the North. west which put me off to the Eastward: but as the wind shifted I made my way to the North-westwards all I could, and came againe to the Ice in latitude 75. degrees, from whence I proceeded towards King lames his New Land, and had fight of the Land the eighteenth of August, being in latitude 77. degrees 30. minutes, and having a hard gale of wind then at North-west, I stood close by it under a paire of coarses, but could not weather Prince Charles Iland, and therefore I bore vp, intending to goe into Nicks Come, which is on the North fide of Ice-found, there to attend a faire winde, and in the meane time to get ballaft aboard the Pinnaffe, and all other things necessary. But comming to enter into the Harbour, I 40. thought it not a place convenient, because I could hardly have gotten out agains with a Southerly wind, which would carrie me to the Northwards, and therefore I stood ouer for Green-harbor, where I anchored at one a clocke in the morning, the nineteenth of August,

Here I caused my men to launch a shallop, and to get ballast and water aboard the Pinnasse and before nine a clocke at night I was readie to proceed Northward with the first faire winde, I flayed here fine dayes, during which time it blew hard for the most part at North and Northwest, and on the sourcand twentieth of August, the winde came to the East North-east as wee supposed, till we were out of the Harbour, so I set sayle to proceed Northward, and had the wind Eafterly out of Ice-found, wherewith I stood North-west towards Cape Cold, but being cleere of the high Land, we found the wind to bee at North North-east; therefore I refolued of ano- 50 ther courie, which was this.

Hauring peruted Hudfons Iournall written by his owns hand in that Voyage wherein hee had with hepe que. fight of certayne Land, which he named Hold with hope; I found that by his owne reckoning it floned as be. should not be more then one hundred leagues distant from King James his New Land, and in the latitude of 72. degrees 30. minutes or thereabouts: therefore feeing I could not proceed Northward, I purposed to goe to the South-westwards to have fight of this Land, and discouer it, if wind and weather would permit. So I flood away South-west, and sometimes West Southwest, till I had runne one hundred and thirtie leagues, and was by account in latitude 72. degrees 30, minutes, where having the wind contrarie to proceed further Westward, I stood Eastward till I had runne thirtie leagues, in which course I should have seene this Land, if credit might be 60 given to Hudfour Journall, but I faw not any. And having a hard gale of winde still Northerly, I conceined no course so good to be taken at this time, as to speed homewards; and so stood to the Southwards, directing my courie for England, this beeing the eight and ewentieth of August. After which time the wind continued Northerly till the fixt day of September, and then wee

CHAP. 7. Fotherbyes opinion and aduice. King of Denmarks (hips.

were on the coast of Seotland in latitude 57. degrees, and on the eight day of September had fight of the land of England on the coaft of Torkelbire. Thus by the great mercy of God have we elcaped many dangers, and after a cold Summer have fome tafte of a warme Autumne. All glorie therefore be to God the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghoft. Amen.

B; this briefe Relation, and by the plat wherein I have traced the ships way vpon each fenerall trauerfe it may plainly appeare, how farre the state of this Sea is discourred betwixt 80. and 71. degrees of latitude, making difference of longitude 26 degrees from the Meridian of Hack-

luyes Headland.

Now it any demand my opinion concerning hope of a passage to bee found in those Seas : I To answer, that it is true, that I both hoped and much desired to have passed further then I did , but was hindred with Ice: wherein although I have not attayned my defire, yet for a fruch as it appeares not yet to the contrarie, but that there is a spacious Sea betwint Groinland and King Iames his New land, although much pettered with Ice; I will not feeme to diffwade this worflipfull Companie from the yeerly adventuring of 150. or 200. pounds at the most, fill some further discouerie be made of the faid Seas and Lands adjacent, for which purpose no other Velfell would I aduife vnto, then this Pinnaffe with ten men, which I hold to bee most convenient for that action , although heretofore I conceined otherwife, but now I speake after good experience, having fayled in her out and in aboue two thousand leagues.

Ro. Fothersy.

A Letter of Robert Fotherby to Captaine Enge, written in Croffe-rode, Iuly 15: 1615.

Miler Edge. By the mercy of God I came into Crosse-road on Thursday lait, being drinten

Me from Sea necre phase of pextreme temposs. At the beginning of the storm to me was unwittingly esbed to God it in the storm to the st fes to and againe so long till my Pinnasse was made leake with bearing, I tryed it under a mayne coarse and fem'd South-east and South-east and by South, notwithstanding I was burried to the Northward, and fell right with the Forcland, which by reason of the until florms we could not fee till we were within a largue of it; then I flood oner the Bay and came to an anchor here, where I must be forced to stay till one trague of n; cote 1 processor to any amount of mount of the course of the course of mount of the course of the made, if not a fore config. In Ton 1 propels to go at 10 stages, and to proceed in costing the lees to the Willows d, if a binder me to proceed Northward. I have a decay confied it from Hackluyes Headland to the latitude aforefaid, and intend to beginne agains fo meare as I can at the place where I was put off with the storme. I came from Paire Hauen the fourth of Inly, and then had there beene killed twelme Whales, besides one found dead, and another brought in by 40 Fra. Birkes, which he found at Sea before be came into Faire Hauen.

When I came in buber, here were three Ships and a Pinnasse of the Kong of Denmarks; they rid in Ships of the When I came in buber, here were three Ships of the deep water about a league and a halfa from the Raad, but weighed from themee, and the Admirall came in or Design and the Admiral Came marks. to an auchor close by me, and sent to intreat me to come abourd of him; I went abourd and was contteously entertayned by the Generall, who questioned one of the Country, and asked one by what right the English Merchants dudresort and sish in this place: I told hims, by the King of Englands right, who bal granted a Patent to the Mulcouie Company of Merchants , whereby he authorizeth them, and forbiadeth all others to frequent these places. Then be entreated me to goe with him to Sir Tho, Smiths Bay, to the two Engl in forps there. I told him, it would be loffe of time to me, because I had some businesse here to dae, and the sto goe forth presently to Sea agains to prosecute my Discourry. He faid, that he would 50 hause me goe with him to be witnesse what passed betwirt him and you, for he had matters of importance to acquaint you withall, which concerned our King and theirs, and therefore intreated me to give direction

presently to weigh and set saile, for I must needs goe with him: I replyed againe, that it would be a great losse unto me of time, and I knew not how to answer it; but be told me peremptorily that I must goe with bim. So feeing no remedie. I had the Master be readie: then he presently weighed and kept me aboord him, but afterwards meeting with the two Captaines that came from you, be returned and anchored againe in Croffe-road. I received very courieous entertayment of the Admirall, Vice-admirall, and of Captaine Killingham: but Captaine Killingham being abourd of me, went away as be seemed, discontented, because I would not give him a young Morse I have abourd, which I denyed to doe, because I writ to my Master from Farte Haven, that such a thing I have, and will bring alme into England, if I may. So. When he went off aboord of me, he faid, he would shoot downe my stag: And some after there came a shoe which five ouer vs. out of the Admirall, and I expetted another; but some after there came a man aboord of me out of the Admirall, to fee if any of your men that came in the Shallop, would goe with them into the Bay, and he swore unto me that the shot was made to call their Boat aboord, because they were

ready to weigh. As farre as I can perceine, their purpose is to see what Grant the King of England bath

made vmo the Companie, for they freme to presend that the right of this Lond belongs to the King of Demmatic, and neither to English nor Hollanders. Thus with my heartic commendations to your felly, and Adafter Bredcake, sogither with my product for your profession veryage, I commit you

#### CHAP. VIII.

Diners other Voyages to Greenland, with Letters of those which were there employed, communicated to mee by Master WILLIAM HELEY.

An. 1616. Edges lland was discourred, and a prosperous voyage was made, all the ships being laden, under the command of Captaine Thomas Edge. An. 1617. Witches lland was discourred; and what voyage was made appeareth in the Letter following, written to Master Decree by William Edge.

Laus Deo, in Portnick the 12. of August, 1617.

Worshipfull Sir,

T dutie remembred, May it please you to understand, that through Gods blessing own Foyage is perspressed in all the Harbows in the Countrie this yeare, with a greater outplus them on Joya will carry; a that in some places wee must of force leave good some following to the contribution of the contribution of the wear year. We are all for the may be must year. We are all for the may be must year. We have a feel for the may be must year the second of the second o

whereby one provisions may be left in securitie. We tooke a lips of Fluthing, called the Noalts Arke (Master, John Verlile) in Horne-Gound, busing one of hom two hundred hopfeesd of Blubber, and we so veheles and bally to cat or yet a Copper, and disers other provisions, and four 50 him same halfed with stime. There were two more of them who were gone taken with Blubber, before we could get thin their housing intelligence of our comming, There were self now Dance, who made one boundred and olde tumous of Oile, and laded we log for Coppen haven, the other with bally the Other and Fames for Amalter Cudner, be rid in Portnick, where he killed element balls, and made some function and olde tumous of Oile, which is laden aboved him and his Finnes. In whom, if our ship had the times of Amalter Cudner, be rid in Portnick, where he killed element balls, and made some function and other times. In whom, if our ship had done recyclive thinter at despread, I would have laden spring our silver a stiff to the company and he is such as the stiff of the stiff of the strength of the week of the strength of the strengt

The whole kilds this years in the Country are about one hundred and fiftie in number, and the Opte made will be about one thoughout eight hundred and adde tames, before the blubber left for uses of cade. The lading of this lips a one hundred and eights tames, a by the Bild of Ladin here excepted. Thus having not further observable to acquaint your Worlpy, without praying God to fend all home on fofery with a good plage; I handhof take my learn, and deer visit.

Readie at your Worships command in all dutifull feruice.

WILLIAM HELEY.

WW ITE

20

A Letter of Master ROBERT SALMON to Master SHERWIN.
In Sir THOMAS SMITHES Boy, the
24. of lune, 1618.

Oning freend Mafter Sherwine, I kindly selate you, wishing you as much proficing at state my life, &c. Since our comming into the Bay, we have been much troubled with ice and Northerly winder, fo as we have not beene swo dayes free of lee. We had a forme Northerly which brought in much Ice, fo as we were inclosed withall eight dayes : there went fach a Sea in the Ice that did beate our flips 10 very much for foure and twentie boures, that I did thinks we fronted base fooled our forps: but I sharks God we cannot perceine any burt at all it bath done to us; also we have broken two anchors much the lee; we have killed threeene Waster; but they yould but little, in regard of the Ice which heath much hindred us in the works, for in tendage, we could not doe any works the Baymas fo full of ice : the Bay man full as me are recognized to the second secon fing; and they die man out eighteene Shallops, fo that with theirs and ours here is thirtie Shallops in the pay; and the many for us to make a veyage: there is at the least fifteene bundred tunnes of shipping of the 20 Flemmings; we have reasonable good quarter with them, for we are merry abourd of them, and they of vi; they have good flore of Sacks and are very kinde to vi, profering vi any thing that we want. I am very doubtfull of making a voyage this yeare, yet I hope Croffe-road will helpe us for one fip, the Company must take another course the next yeare : if they meane to make any benefit of this Country, they runsi fend better firps that must beat these knaues out of this Country , but as farre as I can understand by them, they meane to make a trade of continuance of it : they have every one of them Grave Maurices Commission under his Hand and Seale : we will let them rest this yeere, and let who will take care the next yeers, for I hope not to trouble them. I pray remember my dutie to the Captaine, and allo to bonest Master Thornbush , and to Iohn Martin; Master Smith doth remember his lone to you, and to all exafter 1 tottooms, some routh exacting, example, multi-town remember on over to year, and is all the rife of the friends: we are well at this prefere, I thanks God ! I pray let us hear of promy say when you have any companies appeared: I hope were finall got home in companies operation at wee came out. Thus with my laue once againe remembred to yea, beforehing God to fend us all a presiperous veryage, and infailly to 30 meet , I rest.

## A Letter of Master TH. SHERWIN: Bell-Sound this 29. of Iune, 1618.

M. After William Heley, your Letter I received, wherein, I guderfland you have tooky very great that I griefs, which I am our fort for his I am me good hope to come to you my felfe one of the fedgres, that I may comfort you with a good complet Hennes and shotted of Canary wine, but I gran because the good to the state of your felfe and keys you warms, and take break the Nadu doe not pick, out your eyes: hus as for the of Hennings for them all you have the word with the words are to good for them, the time may came you may be recurring to mediat with the Captaine willess they would come all some the time may came you may be recurring on them againe. The captaine willess they would come all some the time may came you may be recurring to the Holland; but you for the word in the come of the words and the control of the words of the time they for the state of them to the comety. Here came in two Flemmings, how we handled them very homefly the first for fearer of father-claps, or had it been the latter part of the years, we would shake handled them between the companies of the state part of the years, we would shake handled them for growing on their heads, as is in that Country. At exacerning our copying, Mattler's Ilmon can certified you show the Horne-Cound, and it now hobbors. Affect would be the the part of the year of the years, and will now home and it was hobbors. Affect because the Causey, how we have pulled downs the Hermith houle, and stought is never more we folk all those the Scawy, how we have pulled downs the Hermith houle, and stought is never more we folk all the base characteristics. Then promy your is 70 ross voyage, with all your good beaths, that we may ge mentry the home tagether.

# A Letter of I AMES BEVERSHAM to Master HELEY. From Faire-haven, the 12. of July, 1618.

Mafier Heley, Ma commendations remembred to your felfe, Master Salmon, Mafier Smith, and Mafier Beymond, as also to Mafier Wilkerton, Mast Headland, Mafier Ground of an abstract of our good freiend with you, willowing all your bealts as my owners. I must you forty to the deriflent of the amonganees by the Flemmings, both with you and other places; a salf of the final buser better is, in watering a worsige this yeter. For our parts we are and bouse beens to perfect with I ce thefethere is, in whaten a worsige this yeter. For our parts we are and bouse beens to perfect with I ce thefethere is, in whaten to be the abstract when the work of the work of the control of the work of the wo

one Whale in all that time, which after sheemas killed turned os to much trouble, by reason of soule westher, and forced us at last to leave her in the Ice, where the Beares made a prey of her, who I feare will sporte her before shee be recoursed. We have killed six teens Whales besides, whereof the Flemmish Biscai-Let folcone, for which they have promised saturation, but they are so shut up with Ice that they are not able to store either Ships or Shallops. All the Sea to the Northward of Hakluyts headland, and both Eastmand and Westward thereof, is packt so full of Ice, that I feare it will overthrow our very age, and preour ship; in much bazard, the Lord release us of that miserie in due time. I neither have no will be sack one from mome vacant, we want a way of the major will not fact, to do do my for discharge of the major will not fact of the major will not fact of the major of the major of the fact of the major of the majo southward, with my commendations to all the rest of our friends; thus for prosent walking your health, 10

I kindly take my lease, and rest your loung friend.

I had thought to have added a large Discourse of occurrents betwire the Dateb and Engish in Greenland this 1618. and had prepared it to the Preffe. But having alreading given fome Relation thereof from Captaine Edge &cc. and feeing the infolencies of fome of the Dutch were intolerable to English ipirits, which then fuffered, or hereafter should reade them; I chose rather to passe them by; adulting my Countrimen not to impute to that Nation what some frothy spirit yothem by; acuting my Constitute in the Computer Country in the from a midth his drinke, but to honor the Hollander's worth, and to acknowledge the glorie of the Confederate Provinces, how soever they also have their finks and slinking sewers (too officious mouthes, fuch as some in this businesse of Greenland, beyond all names of impudence against his Maiestie, and his Leege people, as others cliewhere have demeaned themselues) whose lothion: = 20 nesse is not to be cast as an aspersion to that industrious and illustrious Nation. Every Body hat h its excrements, euery great House its Vault or Iakes, euery Citie some Port exquiline and dunghils, every Campe the baggage; the World it selfe a Hell : and so hath every Nation the retriments, scumme, dregs, rascalitie, intempered, diftempered spirits, which not fearing God nor reverencing Man, spare not to spue out that to the dishonor of both, which faving the honor of both can scarsly be related after them. A difference is to be made of relation and personall faults, of which we have faid enough in the East India quarrels, twixt ours and the Dutes.

#### A Letter of IOHN CHAMBERS to W. HELEY, Bel-found Iune 16. 1619.

Oning and approved good friend, Master William Heley, &c. I am fore's to write in teares unta a you for the loffe of our Men, by the most uncouth accident that ever be fell unto poore men. The thir-Terrible of lune lass we were past assore in the Ice Bay, our Shallops being not abourd : but as some as wee

Terrible Ditbeard of it, we made what haste we could, and haled our shallops upon the Ice, and wens abourd our ship. board of e, we made what taylor we could wan based our fooding vom the loc, and went aboved our flip;
By that time we had been there on boar making what measure we could so get from an, a makes peace of
the Cliffe falling, the frantfall of fight that ever I beheld being then abound, expelling nothing eith but
death, with all the refl that were in her: But God of his great more and promitence delivered up, that
were not then appointed to dp., that were past all boye of flip; for the lex full fibries and for much, that it
were not then appointed to dp., that were past all boye of flip; for the lex full fibries and from the accurate
that five boards a piece of Ordanace our-board from under our halfs Deck; how me were board amongs? the Ice in all the fea, and get I thanke the Lord I was never burt with a piece of Ice, although it pleafed God they were footled and killed close by me. Thus having related unto you the miserie of this our Voyage. sout toy were popies and steastiff or me, a own coming returns own you to migres of this set V 1946, but not opping of your and and affiliared without you find the cut of the Captaine bid me write vate you for a fine into Hafer, which I pray you fare me and a to possible: I beau writ the particular of our wants in my Brother Sherwins Letter, which I pray you be a meanest to further me in. Thus ceasing any further to trouble you, I commit you unto the Lard, outo whom I pray to blesse and profper you in this your prefent Voyage, wish all thereft of your dayes.

> The men that are killed are these: My Mate Money, Nicholas Greene and Allin the Butcher. There be many more hurt which I hope will recouse it by the helpe of God and the meanes of a good Surgeon.

Owing friend Master Heley, I kindely falute you, Oc. Your Letter I receined the fifth of this pre-Lifent: wherein I understand of the backwarduesse of your Voyage, the which I am hartily sorrie for : but you must be content, seeing at is the will of God it shalloe so, and that other harbows take neighbours fare with you : our best hopes of our Uoyage was open you for of our selves we doe little, in regard we are much troubled with see, and have hin so this ten dayes, which hath made us hale assoure sixe or season 60 times for it: we have had the windes at North-east, and East North-east, and at North west, which now keepes in the lee: we have killed ten Whales, whereof eight are made into Oyle, which hath made one bundred and cleanen Tuns of a balfe the other two were killed the fourth of this present, being very large fift,

not doubting but they will make fixe and thirtse or fortie tunnes: we have the bundred tunnes abourd, the no assuming we have the state in, our ogard Maffer Buther, hope is not fitted up, no shall make bor fore-rest Master Barker taketh in, our ogard Masser Buther, hope is not sitted up, no shall make bor fore-wall to form against and all things offe for this Voyage. The fourth of this present, George Winelden came from Horne-found, where they have killed foure Whales, they have him much troubled with windes Easterby, alfo much Ice, there is fo much Ice off of Point Looke out, that George could not get about. Estre 17, my This Lee bath put in young Duke of Hull into Horne-found, his flip being much tome with the leabis Merchantis now about of vs., his name is Medcafe, whom the Captaine dath detains, his Voyage is vs. terly ouerthrowne, for be bath loft one shallop with fixe men, and another shallop broken with the Ice, his Ruther trons being all broken, his Steeme broke a way close to the Woodings, also George did mente with To a Fleming of Fluthing, burthen two bundred tuns, the which be thinkes to cafe away with les, for the lee did beate ber very fore. I understand by M. Catchers Letter, that there is cleanen faile of Flemmings and Danes about them, I doubt not but we final call them to account of how many tunnes of Oyle they have made, as they did call ut the last Voyage to account : my lone is such unto them, that I protest I could wish made, as very one can vive topy or organ in account; improve 1) new me to meet, next a pretent 1 count on the with damp bears that we might got and fee them, and to flowed by the folionis in the rybeing of one or mer very 1, 10 feel of workers worth of Konett Kone, that A irian of Flinking is one of them. I bented by the other Konet, that A irian of Flinking is one of them. I bented by the very very 1, 10 feel of workers were the country of the very very 1, 10 feel of workers with the very very 1, 10 feel of which we will be the country of the very large that the very very 1 feel of which we will be the very large that 77 glad to fee him, that I mught believe the account with him. The Captaine willed meeto write vinto you oncerning the Russe bonse, that if you cannot set it op, that then you should make an English bonse of it, and to place the post of a Deales length, and to be three Deales in length, and so much in breadth, and so to cover it with Deales the next yeare, and so he thinketh that it will make two frames : also hee 20 could was that you would remone the Coppers more up into the Bay. I pray you commend me to my lowing friend Master Sherwine, Master Wilkinson, Master Henderson and Michael Greene; allo my lous press craster out the configuration of the configur

> Bell-found the fifth of Iuly. 1619.

30

CHAP.8.

Your affored friend to command ROBERT SALKON Innier.

A Letter of I. CAT che a to Master Helet from Faire-hauen. Laus Des, this feuenteenth of Tune 1620.

Oning Brober, with my helf loue I faine you, willhalf on better then we at this time, to have good Litore of whales to make for you and vs of ryage, for we time fewer half flore of whales, but have killed more ayes. In the Flemith hardown there is three Flemith gifted; hopes, whereof is one Staterman of Farre, who have for to See eighteene hollogy with these Flemith embeds felling; and ho our hardown who was for See eighteene hollogy with those Flemith embeds felling; and ho our hardown to the Karge of Demmarkee floring, who have for so Shi fement hallow with three slifetimers in energy hallogs the Vollanders have killed one whale, and found time whale of the Lat years talking. I thoughe good to fend to you the fower, because we hope you have good force of which; that you may fend 40 for vi von which for you can you which for you can you which for you can you would not for you can you which for you was now you got a first that you we now you premided to fend for vi, we have a great time to flay in this Countrie on which time, it may so please God, that we may here make a Voyage. For ome felter, now your mess is dead, and one select fiels, to be the hear but we shall be made in which is too little at you know, therefore if you can fiare or three more, they will fland vs in good fload: if our Voyage commestib in, there is to the Northward good store of les which putieth us in good comfort that we fhall baue Whalet : the Danes de report that there is two hipper to come from Denmarke to our barbour, but as yet are not come. I pray you commend vs to Master Wilkinfon, Master Greene, Mafter Hedlam, Mafter Cleyborne, Master Alpho, and all the reft of our good friends. Humfrey Moore is very ficke, fo that we shall want a Harponiere. I know not what to write more to you, for with griefe I write this. Thus kindely taking my lease, befeething God to bieffe so ve , and fend us a good Voyage, with a merry meeting, I reft

Your louing brother to vie IOHN CATCHER.

### A Letter of ROBERT SALMON from Sir THOMAS SMITH'S Bay, Inly 6. 1621.

Oning friend Master Heley mithus loue I salme you over. These were certifie you, that upon the Colfficents of the last, we arrived as Sir Thomas Smiths unsersumate Bay: succe which time we have a precent of the land, which are almost reduced into Oyle, being some seventic tunnes or somewhat more; so within a day or two we may gee sleepe, for I feare we have our portion of Whales in this place : wee have witten a say or two we may gee peeper, in a low we want of the say the best bless for two dates together we feen a Whale this furcteem dayes, and faire weather is as femfe as the Whales for two dates together wellow for the bin formetime Southerly and sometime Northerly: I doe verily per suade my selfe that making but bless, sometime Southerly and sometime Northerly: I doe verily per suade my selfe that 736

Your louing friend to command ROBERT SALMON IM.

Nine Ships were imployed Anne 1622, of which one for Discourie. Their disaftrous successyou may reade before, page 469. The last Fleete Anno 1623. was fet forth by the former Adventurers, valer the command of Captaine William Goodlard, William Heley being Vice-admirall, Of the successe thereof you may read the Letters following,

#### Lans Dee in Faire-Haven, the foure and twentieth of June, 1623.

Meller Heley, sour bestilt wished, as also a happy accomplishment of your presented V yage defi-red. I had written you according to order, of all matters happening since our arrival, had not contrarie winder and weather presented, and therefore have taken the first opportunitie offering a

pryen.
We arrined at our harbonr with both our Ships in (aftis upon the shird of this prefens helifed be God,
finding the year spaft to home become a write hard fadfon, in regard of the great quantities of Somo and Les,
to the stan to very disquise to us in replected our second harbour. Tenching our proceeding upon our Foy-30
age, by the eight of this prefens we had killed thirscens Whates, and then were all our Salanja confirmi. need to great of the paper we commented the fifteenth older, and upon the fifteenth we think the some made by regarding the fifteenth we think the some which the fifteenth we think the some which the fifteenth of the fifteenth older and then fitteenth will be and made past eight Tamers, which is a very final quantitie. The weather continued had till the overtic two, dicto, and upon the three us a very final quastites. The weather continuous and the true experience two, cloco, and upon too times and twentieth we blight here may which by productifits well made never fortie Tumers. And these wes drudt met that by degrees we had accompath one Vigages by the great of God.

At coaching one under for the Hermanings, was went as reterral about them. Supposing that we

Bould have found the Dares there, but they are ust as yet arrived, but wee found there fue failes of Flemmings, the Admirall fue bundred Tunner, the Vice-admirall of the fune burthen, the other three were two bounded each blop hains a small for vice-summate of the same owniters, no enter twee were two bounded each blop hains also fifte or fixing per out among them, having four and twente the Shallogs belonging to their fine Steps, and are building Houfer and Advancate to thembout for they make new and fubilisations, also they told or, they expected one or two Shay some events day; after fame time we had conference concerning the order given vs with the Generall Cornelius Ice, and declared water him are use conjective to fifth speaking lames his New Land was expired, and therespondis that the time granted them to fifth speaking lames his New Land was expired, and theresponds Maistire bath granted to our Principals a Commission under the broad Scale of England for the depres-Acadesive actor granulas our crimiquata a communicar vinue sou transactura y cauquamo, er ten entris-fine of any lacetoper or Hemming wholeheme that we follow more wholeh of your thic Constit yet institution transing it fields are Principals to appoint vit to graceboordatum, and in a fine of moment to inform them berry, Workshifty you will considered vinue and defit filting, you find manifelt; your filtest friends to our Principals; if otherwife, you find considered view to compelled fivery with tools reacher pripale by folice. Vita which be anjured, that he beard in a ficial nation in 1001 land, for it here were, it fould be certified by writing to which we suffered, that Ser Novel Carroon their Agent was an ignorant if it, who straid give information: and fast be, I have a Commission from the Prince of Orange, for the making of my Voyage upon this Coast, which was procured by my Merchants for my defence: and this is that could be gotten by words from bim.

Alfa at on Pirk arriad, here rade two Birkie shippes with the Flemming, but within a day or two
they were and flood for the Sauthward; but inquired of the Flemmings when you they were bound for,
they assured, for the North Cape; but Master Maston is personaded they are at Greene-harbout: to toy da pure a, for the version e.g.; one present many in prepriation were as decent relational, in which purple if warmes to Malier Catchet, that he gives order to his libella face to Bell-bound, to Hood in for the barbour, to give the Capsain true information. And if for prefact it fits, intrasting you to remember me to Malier Silmon and Malier John Hadland; and thus controlling my failes, left she 50 winds of my words carrie me into the Ocean of distante, bere lanchor: retting

NATHANIEL FANNE.

CHAP.8: Peter Goodlard drowned, Difference of Whales.

Mafter CATCHERS Letter the nine and twentieth of June, 1623.

Benter Heley, with my helf lease I falues you, wishing sign bealth with a prosperous Vryage, che. Since on despitiers, we have had much found weighter and troubled with less before we could get use barrows differ we come with the how. We never helf all actions, by ready of the less ill the interaction of the mounts, or which times we telled fixes translated at the Fore-land, which made has eighteene Times and a halfe, to and fince we have killed fixe Whales more, which I hope will make in all upwards of eightie Tunnes. We base fit nine Shallops verie well, and I thanke God not one of our Men faileth, save one that was shot ashave fit time Shalips were well, and a transfe cira not one of our Men faiths, line our that was lost ac-cidentally wish a Mariet. I hope from of juk Shalipse haborisy will papply our mount; of there is any which from three will: our barbour, mount for fill, it is upplifted to make a France, by reason that the Flemmings for a bland law of which play Gedwick who flatter from or. For Faire haten, it doubtes to be the flow of the law of the faire from you of the proceedings; but Malier Shepvin, print, that there is flow the mining of the faire from you of the proceedings; but Malier Shepvin, print, that there is flow the mining of the fair the fair of the print of the Williams which the En-Cape; but I thinke they are in Greene-harbour, or gone to the Eastward; which if they be in Greene-harbour, our Shallop going to Bel-found field touch there to fee, and so certifie the Captaine, and know his will what he would have done in it : I hold it not fit that they found harbour there. There are no Danes in the Countrie as yet, Oc.

#### Captaine WILLIAM GOODLARD's Letter : Bell-found this eight of July, 1623.

Oning Friend Maffer Heley, I kinder falser you willing brails to you with the reft of your computant: praiging the Lord for your good interested to your filing. To cartifue you of our presquaints: we have hilled here in Bel-lound three and invest Winder, and lets main more by trans bracking, you I bagic to see the self-lound three and invest Winder, and lets main more by trans bracking, you I bagic to be a computation of the first three man brackets and invest Winder, and lets main more by trans bracking, you I bagic to be a computation of lease, which makes be adole, and finished to so much in produce, a first perfect day and flate warrish and lease, which makes be adole, and finished to so much in produce of the prefect day our final documents to the self-lound three three is the self-lound three three is the self-lound three three three is the self-lound three three

ried away with the rope (the dearest Whale tome that ever man strucke in this harbour) there mad weven anie loffe, I thinke, went fo neere my beart dec.

Many other Letters I could have added, but doubt I have already wearied you with this vncouth Coast, whereto our English Neptunes are now so wonted, that there they have found not onely Venison, but Pernassiss and Helicon; and have melced a Musam Fountain out of the Green-Land Snowes and Icie Rockes. Whole Elaborate Poems have I feene of Mafter Heley, as also of lames Presson, there composed: but we have harsher Discoueries in hand, to which wee are now shipping you. This I thought good at our parting to advertise thee, that Master Heley Cold and heate hath affirmed to me touching the divertitie of weather in Graeneland; that one day, it bath beene fo ftrangely valcold (the winds blowing out of some quarter) that they could scarfe handle the frozen failes: another day able. cold (to mind evening me v) from your of them were the cold that the cold the cold that the cold tha

diligent viewers thereof in Thanet where it was taken lule 9. 1574 hooting hamfelfe onfhore besides Rammeleate in the Parish of Same Peter, and there dying for Jaken of bis Ocean parent. Hee came on floure about fixe of the clocke at night, and died about fixe the next marning before which time he roared

and was beard more then a mile on the land. The length was two and twentie yards, the nether saw twelse foote in the opening : one of his eyes (which in the Greene-land Whale is veris finall , not much greater force in the opening; con vy one open quinous new through the property of the property of the control of the property of the p foote long: his liner two Cars load: into his nostrils anie man might have creps: the Oyle of his beat

Pestilence and Famine in Russia, Goodnesse truest Greatnesse. L. h. HIII

## CHAP. IX.

The late changes and manifold alterations in Ruffin fince IVAN VASL LOWICH to this present, eathered out of many Lesters and Obser-uations of English Embassadors and other Trauellers in thefe parts.

of the reigne of IVAN, PHEODORE his sonne; and of BORIS.

Gods mercy te England whiles warres haue infefted the reft of the Eader, I here present thee not what I would of Russian affaires, but what I could,
We Englishman whete the government of his Maiestine, have enjoyed their a Sunfine of peace, that four Summers sky to many hath been tections it sty hase
leathed their (Monna, and longed for I know not what Egyption fleft part. For what else are Warres but per let ouer the fire of Anger (how often of Furie, yea of Hell, the Furies or Deurts blowing the coales) and boyling mans step? whole 30

Families, Villages, Townes, Cities, Shires, Pronnees, not only hurried thereby in confinence of State, harried and enflamed with combittions of goods and goodnesse, but the shirth of Women, and Children, but thered and agit were boyled beyond the manifold shapes of Death, vnto the bones, into the Vapors, Froth, Scumme, Chaos, nothing and leffe then nothing of Huwho has comes, into the vapors, from, scumme, Union, nothing and life then nothing of Hamanitel Such is the inhumanite, the immanitei, the immanite of Warres! And fishe Warres have made imperfions into all our Neighbour Countries? (whiles were fit under the Andow of Beast Pacific) have highered on Twies and Bladtet this for High, have been fished Barbaris, have tome the Asia there, and run the Griffs Alpacin Milys, this fishes Deserve with earth-place the straight of the March Preser with earth-qualets, have rayle Belgium Course, Balances Brooks, 1879, I mention not the inundations and exundations of Poland; the Snowes and Milts of Sweden 40 the Danifb Hailes and Frofts. But all these and more then all these Tempests, Turnado's , Tuffons have combined in Ruffie, and there made their Fiel moust contre, there pitching the Tents of D. Am Ation, there erecting the Thrones of Defolation.

Pestilence and Famine had gone two yeeres before as direful Heralds, to denounce these dreadfull warres and mutations of State: the Pefulence possessing the Northerne parts of the World, and dispossessing it of many many thousands: the Famine in Russia wanting necessaries to eate, necessarily denoured all things, not onely Cats, Mice, and impure Creatures, but mens fielh also, and that in neerest necessitude, Parents renoking to their wombes by wnnaturall passage the dearell pledges of Nature, which having even now dyed with hunger, were made prefervatives from like death to those which first had given them life. The Hightier made sale of the Poorer, 50 yea, Fathers and Mothers of their Sonnes and Daughters, and Husbands of their Wives, that price might bee had to buy Corne, which was now beyond all names of whatfoeuer price cre-

dible. But these things must be further searched.

Bloudineffe is a flipperie foundation of Greatneffe, and the Mercifull'haue the promife to finde merg: other wifedome (how ouer feeming politike) is earthy, femfault, smills, yea, rune to the foole-wife Confutors, as appeareth in Phenados working wifely, that is, cruelly to preuent the multiplying I fractive. The greatest of Creatures on Sea and Land, the Elephant and Whale, hive on graffe, weeds, and fimpler diet, not on rapine and flesh or fish-decouring prey : Thunders and all tempertuous fromes trouble not the higher aiery Regions, but the lower and those next the bafer earthy dress, the lediment and finke of the World : nor doth ancient Philosophie rec. 60 kon Comets other then Meteors, or falling Starres to be Starres indeed, but excludes both from the heavenly Sphares. Had Alexander followed this rule, and fought Greatnesse in Goodnesse (like him which is Optimus Maximus, the Great God, the great Good of the World) and in him-

felfe rather then others, in being Master of humselse then Lord of large Territories; he neither had fighed after the conquetts of other Worlds which Foolofopbie had created before he had freme the t.nth part of this; nor had dyed by poylon in a forraine Countrie, forced to content himselfe with postesting, nay, being postested of a few feet of earth: then had he beene in very deed (now but in Title) GREAT Alexander. Great Goodnesse is the true and good Greatness:

I know not how fit a Preface this may feeme to the enfuing Ruffian Relation; this I am fure. that they which write of Inan Vafilewich , the Great Great Mufconne , doe lay heanie afperfions on his Father and Grand-father, but on himfelfe supersuperlatines of crueltie (that I mention not other vices) both for Matter and Forme. These things are delinered particularly in the Hittories of Alexander Gragnissus, Tilmannia Bredenbachim, Paulin Oderbornius, Reinoldus Heidensten and others, in large Tractates written thereof purposety. His merits of the English might procure a filence of his ends (wee of all men being in regard of respect to our Nation vnworthy to fpeake, that which hee , it those Authours have not beene malicious , was worthy to heare) if fo dreadfull effects did not force an Historian (that is, the Register of the execution of Acts of Gods bountie and inflice decreed in the Court of Dunne Proundence) to looke to the direcall Caufe in foregoing funes, that after Ages may heare and feare.

I will touch a few of these which Gwagninu alone relates. His owne brother being accused Al Gwagnin I will couch a tew of three which O wegmans and creates. First write concern being section shows and the state of the stat the cortures mit, an accuracy in the wife any property and the large conference and allowed to the surprise and the surprise

my purgation, was fet in Princely accountrements on a Throne, the Emperour standing bare-hea- addes principal ded before him and bowing to him, but foone after with a knife thrulling him to the heart, the Noblesheee Attendants adding other Furies till his bowels fell out; his body dragged forth, his feruants flaine, three hundred others in his Calile executed; his Boiarens all gathered into one house and blowne vp with poulder; their Wiues and Diughters rauished before his face by his followers. and then cut in pieces, and no liuing thing left in their houses or grounds; the husbandmens

wijnes ftripped naked as they were borne and driven into a Wood, where were Executioners purposely set to gue them their farall entertainment. His Chancellor Dubrenfts sitting at table 30 with his two Sonnes, were allo your acculation without answere cut in pieces, and the third fonne quartered aliue with foure wheeles, each drawne a divers way by fifteene men. Mieffoiedowy febly, supreme Notatie, displeasing him, his wife was taken from him, and after some weeks decayning was with her hand-maid hanged over her husbands doore, and fo continued a fortnight, he being driven to goe in and out by her all that time. Another Notaries wife was rauished and then lent home and hanged ouer her husbands table, whereat he was forced daily to eate. In travelling if he met any woman whose husband he liked not, he caused her to stand with her nakednesse disclosed till all his retinue were passed. Cutting out tongues, cutting off hands and feet of his complaying Subjects, and other discriffed tortures I omit; as also the guarding his father in lawes doores with Beares ty d there, that none might goe in or out, hanging his fer-40 uants at his doores, torturing him for treature; casting hundreds of men at once into the was 700, women

ter under the Ice; two thousand feuen hundred and seventie thus and by other tortures execu- stone time; ted at Nonograd An. 1 169. besides women, and the poorer persons which Famine forced, did 378. prisoners eate the bodies of the flame, and were after flame themselues; the Archbishop also let on a Mare at ano eare the boates or the usine, and wete arrer usine themselves; the Archbuthop allolet on a Mare as solone, with his feet yed vnder the b-lly, and male to play on Bag-pipes thorow the Citiesthe Monks and Virgins flowled and flaine; Theodore Sirveny, the Founder of tweller Monasferies, tortured to shew his of noble bload treasure and then slaine: Mazinsky his Secretarie, by many dayes renewed tortures dying; hee esposadtobe recreating hirafelie with letting Beares look in throngs of people; Ioba Michalemich Winkyman Traufindoy die the Chancellor, his eares, lips, and other members one after another cut off by piece-made Training and the Chancellor, his eares, lips, and other members one after another cut off by piece-made Training and the Michalemic Winkyman and the Winkyman an notwithstanding all protestations of his innocency; about two hundred other Nobles at the therime &c. fame time variously executed, one his Treature, two other Secretaries; the Treatures wife fet \* A Secretaries of the provided search of the secretaries of the secret on a rope and forcibly dragged to and fro thereon (by that torturing her naked fielh, to learne her coming off his

husbands treasures) whereof foone after shee dyed in a Monasterie, into which shee was thruit. Primities he nuonnos centra litetle of that which Gragemen alone hath written. A taffe and took is too which the Emule of blood, and in tuch immanities. He is also faid in a famine to have gathered many people, percur communications and the communication of the communicatio in expectation of almes, on a bridge, and there guarded the bridge being cut to drowne them, as firming tobe the readiest way for cheapnesse of corne, But I lothe such crudities. His last crueltie was on him-done purposethe readiest way for cheapness or come, Due 1 some usen cruairies. Firs sait crueine was on many felfe, dying with griefe, as was thought, for the death of his eldest some Index, whom fally active inflinity there inflinity cufed he struck with a staffe wrought with Iron, whereof he dyed in few dayes after. Hee was a to ease whit man accused for communicating in disposition with his father, and as a joyfull Spectator of his he had us off-

But if any delight to reade the terrible and bloudie Acts of Inan Bafilowich, he may glut, if not drowne himlelte in bloud, in that Hiftorie which Paul Oderborne hath written of his life , and both there and in others take view of other his vinuit Acts. I will not depose for their truth.

though I cannot disproue it : adueriaries perhaps make the worft. For my leffe I lift not to take

finkes against him, and would speake in his defence, if I found not an universall conspiracy of all Historie and Reports against him, I honour his other good parts, his wit, his learning (perhaps better then almost any other Ruffe in his time) his exemplarie severity on vniust Magistrates, his Martiall skill, industrie, fortune, wherby he subdued the Kingdoms of Cafan and Astracan (which also the Turke sending from Constantinople an Armie of three hundred thouland to dispossession of, A. 1569. belides his hopes and helpes from the Tartars, few returned to tell their disafters, and the destructions of their fellowes) besides what hee got in Siberia and from the Pole, Sweden, Profisan, extending his Conquests East, West, North, and South: yea, his memorie is sauourie still to the Russians, which (either of their feruile disposition needing such a bridle and whip; or for his long and proferous reigne, or out of diffatte of later tragedies) hold him in little leffere-

putation (as some have out of their experience instructed me) then a Saint. His love to our Nation is magnified by our Countrimen with all thankfulneffe, whose gainer there begun by him, have made them also in some fort seeme to turne Ruffe (in I know what loves or feares, as if they were still that vp in Ruffia, & to conceale whatfoeuer they know of Rufitan occurrents) that I have fuftayned no small torture with great paines of body, vexation of minde. and triall of potent interceding friends to get but neglect and filence from some, yea almost contempt and fcorne. They alledge their thankfulneffe for benefits received from that Nation, and their feare of the Duteb, readie to take aduantage thereof, and by calumniations from hence to interuert their Trade. This for love to my Nation I have inferted against any Cavillers of our Ruffe Merchants : though I must needs professe that I distaste, and almost detest that (call it 40 what you will) of Merchants to neglect Gods glorie in his prouidence, and the Worlds inftruction from their knowledge; who while they will conceale the Rassans Faulte, will tell nothing of their Facts; and whiles they will be filent in mysteries of State, will reueale nothing of the histories of Fact, and that in so perplexed, divertified chances and changes as seldome the World hath in fo fhort a space seene on one Scene. Whiles therefore they which seeme to know most, will in these Russian Relations helpe me little or nothing (except to labour and frustrated hopes) I haue (befides much conference with eye witnesses) made bold with others in such books as in diners languages I have read, and in such Letters and written Tractates as I could procure of my friends, or found with Mafter Haklays (as in other parts of our storie) not feeking any whit to difgrace that Nation or their Princes, but onely defiring that truth of things done may bee 30 knowne, and such memorable alterations may not passe as a dreame, or bee buried with the Doers. Sir Ierome Horsey shall leade you from Inans Graue to Pheodores Coronation.

Or Theodor Six lerom HorThe most Colemne and magnificent coronation of PHEODOR IVANOVVICE Emperour of Ruffia, &c. the tenth of lune, in the yeare 1584. feene and observed by Master I z R OM HORS BY Gen. tleman, and seruant to ber Maiestie.

The death of Inan Valitorich

Lord Beris adopted as the

WHen the old Emperor Inan Vafilowich died (being about the eighteenth of April, 1584, after our computation) in the Citie of Mafies, haung raigned fiftie four years, there 254, April 18. was some tumult & vprore among some of the Nobilitie and Comminaltie, which notwithstanding was quickly pacified. Immediately the fame night, the Prince Boris Pheodorowich Godonoua, Kn:2. Iuon Pheodorowich, Mesthis Slafiby, Knez Iuan Petrowich Susky, Mehita Romanowich and Bodan I aconlewich Beliker, being all noble men, and chiefest in the Emperours Will, especially the Lord Boris, whom he adopted as his third fon, and was brother to the Empresse, who was a man very well liked of all eftates, as no leffe worthy for his valour and wifedome : all these wereappointed to dispose, and settle his Sonne Pheodor Inanowich, having one sworne another, and all the Nobilitie and Officers whosoeuer. In the morning the dead Emperour was laid into the Church of Michael the Archangell, into a hewen Sepulchte, very richly decked with Veilures fit 10 for fuch a purpose : and present Proclamation was made (Emperour Pheodor Inanowich of all Ruffia, &c.) Throughout all the Citie of Mofee was great watch and ward, with Souldiors, and Gunners, good orders e stablished, and Officers placed to subdue the tumulters, and maintaine quietnesse : to see what speede and policie was in this case vsed, was a thing worth the beholding. This being done in Mosco, great men of birth and accompt were also presently sent to the bordering Townes, as Smolenske, Vobsko, Kafan, Nonoggrad, &c. with fresh garrison, and the old fent vp. As vpon the fourth of May a Parliament was held, wherein were affembled the Metropolitane, Archbishops, Bishops, Priors, and chiefe Clergie men, and all the Nobility whatsoeuer: wheremany matters were determined not pertinent to my purpose, yet all tonded to a new reformation in the gouernement: but especially the terme, and time was agreed upon for the 60 folemnizing of the new Emperours coronation. In the meane time the Empresse, wife to the old Emperour, was with her childe the Emperours fon, Charlewich Demetrie Iuanewich, of one yeares age or there abouts, fent with her Father Pheodor Pheodorowish Nagay, and that kindred, being

fine brothers, to a towne called Onglets, which was given vnto her, and the yong Prince her fonne, with all the Lands belonging to it in the fhire, with officers of all forts appointed, having The day of allowance of apparell, iewels, diet, horfe, &c. in ample manner belonging to the efface of a Prin- Pheoder his coa ceffe. The time of mourning after their viebeing expired, called Sorachyn, or fortie orderly dayes, ronations the day of the folemnizing of this coronation, with great preparations, was come, being woon the centh day of June, 1584, and that day then Sunday, he being of the age of twenty hie years: at which time, Mafter lerom Horsey was orderly lent for, and placed in a fit roome to see all the folemnity. The Emperour comming out of his Pallace, there went before him, the Metropolirane, Archbishops, Bishops, and chierest Monkes, and Clergie men, with very rich Coapes and Priests garments upon them, carrying pictures of our Lady, &c. with the Emperors Angell ban-

ners, cenfers, and many other fuch ceremonious things, tinging all the way. The Emperour with his nobility in order entred the Church named Blaughina or Bleffednes, where prayers and fernice were vied, according to the manner of their Church: that done, they went thence to the Church called Michael the Archangell, and there also vied the like prayers, and feruice : and from thence to our Lady Church, Precbifta, being their Cathedrall Church, In the middeft thereof was a chare of maiestie placed, wherein his Ancestors vied to sit at such extraordinary times: his roabes were then changed, and most rich and vinaluable garments put on him : being placed in this Princely feate, his nobilitiestanding round about them in their degrees, his imperiall Crowne was let vpon his head by the Metropolitane, his Scepter globe in his right hand, his fword of Iustice in his 30 left of great richest his fix crowns alto, by which he holdeth his Kingdomes were fet before him. and the Lor Boris Pheodorowich was placed at his right hand; then the Metropolitan read openly abooke of a small volume, with exhortations to the Emperour to minister true lustice, to injoy with tranquility the Crowne of his ancestours, which God had given him, and vied these

Through the will of the almightse and without beginning God, which was before this world, whom we glorifie in the Trinitie, one onely God, the Father, the Sonne, and the boly Ghoft, maker of all things, wor. ker of all in all eury where suisiler of all things, by which will, and working, he both lust h, and gineth life to man: that our ovely God which enspireth enerse one of us his onely children with his word to discerne Gathroughour Lord lefus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life, now in these perillous times establibedus to be-pethe right Scepier, and suffer us to raigne of our felues to the good profit of the land, to

the subdaing of the people, together with the exemies, and the maintenance of vertue. And so the Metropolitan bleffed and laid his croffe vpon him. After this, he was taken out of his chaire of Maiefty, having vpon him an vpper reabe adorned with precious flones of all forts orient pearles of great quantity, but alwayes augmented in riches: it was in weight two hundred pounds, the traine and parts thereof borne vp by ix Dukes, his chiefe imperiall Crowne vpon his head very precious: his staffe imperiall in his right hand of an Vnicornes horne of three foote and la halfe in length belet with rich ftones, bought of Merchants of Authorge by the old Emperour, in Anna 1.81.and coft him 7000. Markes sterling. This Iewel Master Hersey kept sometimes, before the Emperour had it. His Scepter globe was carried before him by the Prince Boris Pheodorowich his

4C rich cap befet with rich ftones and pearles, was carried before him by a Duke : his fixe Crownes alfo were carried by Demetrius Iuanowich Godonoua, the Emperours vnckle, Mekita Romanowich th- Emperors vnckle, Stephen Vafilimich, Gregorie Vafilimich, Inan Vafilimich brothers of the bloud rovall. Thus at last the Emperour came to the great Churchdoore, and the people cried, God faue our Emperour Pheodor Inanomeb of all Ruffia. His Herse was there ready most richly adorned. with a couering of imbrodered pearle and precious stones, saddle, and all furniture agreeable to it, reported to be worth 300000.markes flerling.

There was a bridge made of a hundred & fiftie fadomes in length, three manner of waies, three foot about ground, and two fadome broad, for him to goe from one Church to the other with his Princes and nobles from the presse of the people, which were in number infinite, and some at that So time pressed to death with the throng. As the Emperor returned out of the Churches, they were fored vader foot with cloth of Gold, the porches of the Churches with red Veluet, the Bridges with Scarlet, & stammelled cloth from one Church to another ; and as soone as the Emperor was passed by, the cloth of gold, veluet and scarlet was cut, & taken of those that could come by it, euery man defirous to haue a piece, to referue it for a monument : filuer and gold coine, then minted of purpose was cast among the people in great quantitie. The Lord Boris Pheodorowich was fumptuoufly and richly attired, with his garments decked with great orient pearle, befet with all forts of precious flones. In like rich manner were apparelled all the family of the Godonouaes in their degrees, with the rest of the Princes and nobilitie, whereof one named Knez Iuan Michalowieb Glynsky, whose roabe, horse and furniture, was in regitter found worth one hundred thou-6c fand markes sterling, being of great antiquitie. The Embresse being in her Pallace, was placed in her chaire of Maietty also before a great open window; most precious, and rich were her robes, and thining to behold, with rich ftones, and orient Pearles befer, her crowne was placed upon her head, accompanied with her Princesses, and Ladies of estate : then cried out the people, God preserue our noble Empresse Irense. After all this, the Emperour came into the Parliament

Ppp 2

house, which was richly decked: there he was placed in his royall seat adorned as before: his fixe crownes were fet before him wpon a Table: the Bason and Ewre royall of gold held by his knight of gard, with his men standing two on each side in white apparell of cloth of sluer, called Kindry with scepters and battle-axes of gold in their hands, the Princes and nobility were all placed according to their degrees all in their rich roabes.

Solemnitie of Pheodors Coronation. Strife for precedence. LIB. IIII.

The Emperour after a short Oration, permitted every man in order to kiffe his hand : which being done, he removed to a princely feate prepared for him at the table : where he was ferued by his Nobles in very princely order. The three out roomes being very great and large were belet with plate of gold and filter round, from the ground vp to the vauts one vpon the other : among which plate were many barrels of filter and gold : this folemnitie and triumph lafted a whole 10 weeke, wherein many royall pastimes were shewed and vied : after which, the chiefest men of the Nobilitie were elected to their places of office and dignitie, as the Prince Beris Pheodoromich was made chiefe Counfellour to the Emperour, Mafter of the Horfe, had the charge of his perion, Lieutenant of the Empire, and warlike engins, Gouernor or Lieutenant of the Empire of Caran, and Astracan, and others: to this dignitie were by Parliament, and gift of the Emperour given him many reuenewes and rich lands, as there was given him, and his for ever to inheritea Prouince called Vaga, of three hundred English miles in length, and two hundred and fiftie in bredth, with many Townes and great Villages populous and wealthy: his yearely Reuenew out of that Prouince, is fine and thirtie thouf and Markes sterling, being not the fifth part of his yeare Reuenue. Further, he and his house be of fuch authoritie and power, that in forty dayes warning they 20 are able to bring into the field a hundred thousand Souldiours well furnished.

The conclusion of the Emperours Coronation was a peale of Ordnance, called a Peale royall. two miles without the Citie, being a hundred and feuenty great pieces of braffe of all forts as faire as any can be made; these pieces were all discharged with shot against bulwarkes made of purpose: twentie thousand hargubusers standing in eight ranks two miles in length, apparelled all in veluet, coloured filke and ftammels, discharged their shot also twife ouer in good order : and so the Emperour accompanied with all his Princes and Nobles, at the leaft fiftie thousand horse, departed through the Citie to his palace. This royall coronation would aske much time, and many leaves of paper to be described particularly as it was performed : it shall suffice, to vinderstand that the like magnificence was never feene in Ruffia.

The Coronation, and other triumphs ended, all the Nobilitie, officers, and Merchants, according

to an accustomed order every one in his place and degree, brought rich prefents vinto the Emperour, withing him long life, and joy in his kingdome.

The same time also Master lerom Horsey aforesaid, remaining as servant in Russia for the Queens most excellent Maiestie, was called for to the Emperour, as he fate in his Imperial feat, and thealso a famous Merchant of Netherland being newly come to Mosco (who gave him felfe out to be the King of Spaines subject) called John de Wale, was in like fort called for. Some of the Nobilitie would have preferred this fubiect of the Spaniard before Mafter Horfer feruant to the Queen of England, whereunto Master Horsey would in no case agree, saying, hee would have his legges cut off by the knees, before hee would yeelde to tuch an indignitie offered to his Soueraigne the Queenes Maieftie of England, to bring the Emperour a present, in course after the King of Spaires 40 subject, or any other whatsoener. The Emperour, and the Prince Boris Pheodorowich percening the controuerfie, fent the Lord Treasurer Peter Inanomich Galaum, and Vafili Shalkan, both of the Counfell, to them, who delivered the Emperour backe Mafter Horfeys speech : whereupon he was first in order (as good reason) admitted and presented the Emperour in the behalfe of the Englift Merchants trading thither, a present, wishing him ioy, and long to raigne in tranquilitie, and so kissed the Emperours hand, he accepting the present with good liking, and auouching, that for his Sifters (ake, Queene Elizabeth of England, he would be a gracious Lord to her Merchants, in as ample manner as ever his Father had beene : and being difmiffed, he had the fame day fent him, seauentie dishes of fundry kinds of meats, with three carts laden with al forts of drinks very bountifully. After him was the foresaid subject of the Spanib King admitted with his present, 50 whom the Emperor willed to be no leffe faithfull &feruiceable vnto him, then the Queen of Englands fubiects were & had been, & then the King of Spains fubiects shold receive favor accordingly.

All these things thus in order performed, prayles were sung in all the Churches. The Emperour and Empresse very denoutly reforted on foote to many principal Churches in the Citie, and Vpon Trinitie Sunday betooke themfelues to a progresse in order of procession, to a famous Monafterie called Sergine and the Trinitie, fixtie miles diffant from the Citie of Mefco, accompanied with a huge armie of Noblemen, Gentlemen, and others, mounted youn goodly Herles with furniture accordingly,

The Empresse of deuotion tooke this journey on foote all the way, accompanyed with her Princeffes and Ladies, no small number : her Guard and Gunners were in number twentie thou- 60 fand : her chiefe Counfellor or Attendant, was a noble man of the bloud Royall her Vncle of great authoritie, called Demetri Inanowich Godonoua. All this progreffe ended, both the Empes rour and Empresse returned to Mosco : shortly after, the Emperour by the direction of the Prince

Boris Pheodorowich, fent a power into the Land of Siberia, where all the rich Sables and Furres are gotten. This power conquered in one yeere and a halfe one thousand miles. In the performance of this warre, there was taken prisoner the Emperour of the Country, called Chare Si- Chare Siberesia berity, and with him many other Dukes and Noble men, which were brought to Mosco, with a Prince of Sibeguard of Souldiers and Gunners, who were received into the Citie in very honourable manner, ris tiken prisoand doe there remaine to this day.

Hereupon the corrupt Officers, Iudges, Iuflices, Captaines and Lieutenants through the whole to Mofice. Kingdome were remooued, and more honest men substituted in their places, with expresse commandement, under seuere punishment to surcease their old bribing and extortion which they had vied in the old Emperours time, and now to execute true infine without respect of persons : and to the end that this might be the better done, their lands and yeerly flipends were augmented: the great taskes, customes, and duties, which were before laid upon the people in the old Emperours time, were now abated, and some wholly remitted, and no punishments commanded to be vied, without fufficient and due proofe, although the crime were capitall, deferuing death : many Dukes and Noble men of great Houfes, that were videt displeasure, and imprisoned twentie yeeres by the old Emperour, were now fet at libertie and reftored to their lands : all prisoners were set at libertie, and their trespasses forginen. In summe, a great alteration vnuerfally in the government followed, and yet all was done quietly, civilly, peaceably, without trouble to the Prince, or offence to the Subsect : and this bred great affurance and ho-30 nour to the Kingdome, and all was accomplished by the wisedome especially of Irenia the Empreffe.

These things being reported and carried to the eares of the Kings and Princes that were borderers vpon Raffia, they grew fo fearfull and terrible to them, that the Monarch of all the Scythians called the Crim Tartar or great Can himselfe, named Saphet Keri Alli, came out of Saphet Keri Alli his owne Countrie to the Emperour of Ruffia, accompanies with a great number of his Nobi- King of the litie well horfed, although to them that were Christians they feemed rude, yet they were Crims arrivall perionable men, and valiant : their comming was gratefull to the Emperour, and their enter. at Mosto, tainment was honourable : the Torter Prince having brought with him his wives also, receiued of the Ruffe Emperour entertainment, and Princely welcome according to their effates.

Not long after, one thousand and two hundred Polifb Gentlemen, valiant Souldiers, and 30 proper men came to Mosco, offering their service to the Emperour, who were all entertayned : and in like fort many Chirkeffes, and people of other Nations came and offered feruice. And as soone as the report of this new created Emperour wasspred ouer other Kingdomes of Europe, there were fent to him fundrie Ambassadors, to wish him toy and prosperitie in his Kingdome ; thither came Ambaffadors from the Turke, from the Perfian, the Bogharian, the Crim, the Georgian, and many other Tarter Princes. There came also Ambassadors from the Emperour of Almaine, the Pole, the Swethen, the Dane, &c. And fince his Coronation no enemie of his hath prevailed in his attempts.

It fell out not long after, that the Emperour was defirous to fend a meffage to the most ex- The new Emcellent Queene of England, for which feruice he thought no man fitter then Mafter Ierome Horpetor Phenders for, supposing that one of the Queenes owne men and subjects would bee the more acceptable to Litters and her. The fumme of which meffage was, That the Emperor defired a continuance of that league, Requests to friendship, amitie and intercourse of traffque which was betweene his Father and the Queenes the Queene, Maiestie and her Subiects, with other private affaires besides, which are not to bee made

Master Horsey having received the Letters and Requests of the Emperour, provided for his Master Horseys iourney ouer Land, and departed from Mofee the fift day of September, thence vnto Otmer, to voyage from Torshook, to great Nemogrod, to Vobike, and thence to Nybonse in Limins, to Wenden, and so to Masse to Eng.
Riga: (where he was beset, and brought forthwith before a Cardinall, called Ragenis, but yet

fuffered to paffe in the end : ) From thence to Mito, to Golden, and Liben in Curland, to Memel, to Koning shargh in Prussia, to Elbing, to Dantzike, to Stetine in Pomerland, to Rostock, to Lubeck to Hamborough, to Breme, to Emden, and by Sea to Landon. Being arrued at her Maielties Royal Court, and having delivered the Emperours Letters with good favour, and gracious acceptance, he was forthwith againe commanded to repatie into Ruffia, with other Letters from her Maieftie to the Emperour, and Prince Boris Pheoderowich, answering the Emperous Letters, and withall requelting the favour and friendship, which his Father had yeelded to the Emplos Merchants : and hereunto was he earnestly also solicited by the Merchanes of London themselves of that Companie, to deale in their behalfe. Being thus dispatched from Landon by Sea, he arrived in Mosco, the twentieth of Aprill, 1,86, and was very honourably welcommed, and for the 6c Merchants behoofe, obtayned all his Requefts, being therein specially fauoured by the Noble Prince Boris Pheodorowich , who alwayes affected Master Horsey with special liking. And hauing obtayined printicedges for the Merchants, he was recommended from the Emperour againe,

to the Que ne of England his Mittreffe , by whom the Prince Boris , in token of his honou-

rable and good op mon of the Queenes Mareftie, fent her Highnessea Royali present of Sables.

Luzarns, cloth of Gold and other rich things. So that the Companie of English Merchants, next to their thankfulnefle to her Maieflie, are to account Mafter Horfess paines their speciall benefit, who obtayned for them those priviledges, which in twentie yeeres before would not

The manner of Master Horseys last dispatch from the Emperour, because it was very honorable, I thought good to record. Hee was freely allowed post-horses for him and his servants, wictuals and all other necessaries for his long journey; at every Towne that he came vnto from Mosco to Vologda, which is by Land fine hundred miles, he received the like free and bountifull allowances, at the Emperours charge. New victuall and prousion were given him vpon the full allowances, at the Emperous cuttge. New Youtube to produce that gives man you the Ruer Dwos at enery Towne by the Kings Officers, being one thousand miles in length. When the Company of the Public New York Adv. 10 he same to the new Caftle, called Archangel, he was received of the Duke Knez. Valid Andres wich I summeyorodiky by the Emperours Commission sixto the Castle, Gunners being set in ranker after their vie, where he was sumptuously feasted: from thence he was disparched with bountifull provision and allowance in the Dukes Boat, with one hundred men to rowe him, and one hundred Gunners in other Boats to conduct him, with a Gentleman Captaine of the Gunners, Domning to the Road where the English Dutch, and French thips rode, the Gunners of the English and the thippes that in like manner fortie fixe pieces of their Ordnance, and so he was brought to his lodging at the English house voon Rose Hand.

And, that which was the full and complete conclusion of the favour of the Emperour and Bo-And that which was the total and compared to the exercise from the form of the property of the body of the property of the pro fion vpon the Sea by a Gentleman and a Captaine, the things following. Sixteene line Oxen, feuentie Sheepe, fix hundred Hens, fine and twentie flitches of Bacon, eightie bushels of Meale. fix hundred loaues of bread, two thousand Egges, ten Geele, two Cranes, two Swannes, fixtie fine gallons of Meade, fortie gallons of Aquavitz, fixtie gallons of Beere, three young Beares, foure Hawkes, store of Onions and Garleeke, ten fresh Salmons, a wilde Boare.

All these things were brought him downe by a Gentleman of the Emperours, and another of Prince Borss Pheodoremich, and were received in order by John Frese servant to Master Horfey, together with an honourable present and reward from the Prince Beris, fent him by Master Francis Cherry an English man: which present was a whole very rich piece of cloth of Gold, and

TVan Vafilowich is reported to have had seauen Wives, and of them to have left three children Tomaing, Todomer or Eventual and Demotring a younging by he laft wife, and a Daughter, the which was the wife of L. Briv aforefaid, whole fifter Phendre had married in his Fathers. life time, who would have caused her divorse for her barrennesse (as he had caused Inan his eldest some diversetimes to doe and his refusing it at last, was the occasion of that angry, last, and fatall blow, before mentioned ) but being protracted by faire excules for a time, the dinorte of foule and body in the Father preuenced that in the marriage bed of the Sonne. Yet by his Testament he ordained, that if within two yeares she proued not fruitfull, hee should marrie amp-Disorce riged ther. The executers viged this after that terms expired but Germin or Irems, fo wrought with her 40 husband, that their counfels were frustrate: wherein she was assisted by the politicke wisdome of her brother Borss, who was now become chiefe Pilot, though not the Master in that Russian thip: and is faid formerly to have been no small doer in those cruel designes of sanhis deceased Matter yet had he cunningly cast the blame on him now dead, and wifely infinuated into the peoples fauour, by mitigating the feueritie of his Decrees. You have read before of his great Revenues and D.Fl. \$5.1.H. Wealth, recorded by eye witnesses. Theorem faith, that three hundred of the Knazers and Boistens, whereof the Senate of the Empire consisted, by admife of the Executors, had subscribed. Beris made the simpler Emperor believe, that it was a conspiracie against him: whereupon they were all committed, ten of which (whom he thought his most dangerous adversaries) were suddainly and primly executed : to the reft, he procured the Emperours pardon and fauour, feeming very 50 forrowfull that this elemency had beene fo much foreslowed : and that the hastie execution had presented his officious indeuors for their deliuerance. And that he might feem ferious, he got their

his coller flood awry in mending it cut bis

goods to be reflored to their heires: fo working himfelfe into the good liking of all degrees. But soone after, yong Demetrius the Emperours brother was slaine, as hee was going to Church betwixt two Boistons, by a mad man (as he feemed) who was thereupon fuddenly flaines but the author which fet him on worke, could not be found : whereupon Boris was suspected to Demetrias flain affect the foueraigntie. Thumms elfewhere telleth, that hee corrupted those which were about Demetriss: and the great Bell being rung as is viuall in cases of fire to bring the people together, Demetrine at that noise running forth, some were set in that tumule to killim, which accordingly was effected, as he was comming downe a Ladder : the rumour whereof, caused the tumultuous 60 people(making no curious fearch for the doers) to kil those of the Family which they met in their furie, to put the fuspition thereof from themselves : which notwithstanding, Boris exercised seuerer cortures and terrible executions vpon them, and as one which hartily executed the fact, burned the fort to expiate the parricide. This place being farre remote from the Court, whi-

## C HAP.O.S.1: Pheodore dieth. Empresse a Nun. Boris saith nay oft, but takes. 745

ther he was thought purposely to haue sent him, could not admit so open evidence of manifold tellimony; but that it gaue occasion of other Tragedies, by another supposed Demetrins, as shall anon appeare. Meane while, Boris could not escape afpersion of the fact pait, and sulpition of amon appeared. The present Prince; and therefore was forced to conture vp his best wits to "Some write worke him into better reputation. He did hereof either take occasion, or make occasion by die that he caused ners fires in "diners Cities of the Kingdome, the Houses being of wood, and easily confumed; diners places in ners fires in divers Cities or the Kingdome, the Houses being of Wood, and comproduced a Alefoto be a-which loffe (made, as fome deliver by his own incendiaries, he feemed much to comprise the comproduced and then red, and then by affected bountie, repaired those ruines out of the publique Treasure : others say, out of his pri- afterwards out by silected bounds, not onely raising io many Phanixes out of those ashes; but making denouring of his owne To fire become fuell to his magnificence, and raking reputation out of the flames and cinders: thence coll repaired erecting a Theatricall feene whereon to acte in popular spectacles, his many parts of care, in-

dultry, alacrity, wifedome, power, bounty, and whatfoeuer might fether his neit in the neoples hearts, hus eatily ftoin and entertained in affection to him, whiles Theodore lived, which was not long : he dying in the yeare 1598. on twelfe day , having bued thirty fixe yeares, and reigned neere foureteene. His impotency of body and minde, you have read before in part. Thus was affin. D. Flet. meth, that Iuan Vafilowich his Father faid, he was fitter to ring Bels in Churches, then to gouerne an Empire; aluding therein to his superexceeding denotion and most denout superstition. His death caused a new aspertion on Beris as procured, in some mens concerts (and reports) by

His dead body was buried with his ancestors, in Saint Michaels Temple in the Castle, and 20 Souldiours were presently sent to the borders, to prohibite ingresse or egresse. Theodores will was read, and therein Gernia (or Irenia) his wife, and the Patriarch, entrufted with the administration of the State. Hereupon a generall State affembly was affembled at Mofes, and their oathes The Empresse giuen to the Emprelle. After this the Emprelle went into a Nunnery, to paffe there the fortie faccoedeth. dayes deftined to publique forrow in which time (whether of her owns or with her brothers accord) making shew of vnspeakable forrow for her deceased Lord, the renounced the world, and Rassanivic of transferred the Imperial government upon the Knazeys and Beiseens, which her Husbandhad forme dives transferred the Imperial government vpon the Knacest and bounded by Whiteh her transferred to her; that they according to their wildome, and house their Countrie, might take an Emperours

30 were fo moued therewith, that they came thronging to the Nunnerie gates, lamentably imploring her care in so perillous a time, whom onely they were bound to serue. And when she bad them goe to the Knazer and Bolaran; they protefted against them, saying, they had swore to her, and would be ordered by L. Barie, her brother. Herenpon Barie Pheadaranich goeth out to appeale their tumult, and voderraketh for the fortie dayes of mourning, together with the Knazers and Boiarens to administer the Empire. In which time, the Empfrelle renounced fe- The Queene cular cares, and professed her force a Nunney changing her name from Germa to Alex. surneth Non-

The time of mourning being past, the people were called into the Castle, and the Chancellour made an Oration, perswading them to sweare obedience to the Knazeys and Boiarens, which 40 they with out-cryes disclaymed, offering todoe is to the Queene and L. Borie. The Coun-

cell fitting to confider hereof, the Chancellor came forth againe, and commanded them to Iweare to the Knazeys and Bolaren; the Queene thining may become a Number Whereupon they all na-med Boris het Brother, as one worthy of the Scate; to whom aboy were readis; to sweater. Hee Bosishis milling med acts not procest; a one worthly a considerable investings he withwellingsfells and envoyed which thinsfle, and bidding them chufe fone other more worthly Apalegoing within into the Church, they laid in manner forceable hands on him; with ideal cryes and tamentations, befreeching him not to forfake them. Whereat he week and fish refused, alleaging his infusiciencie and to kindle greater desire in the people and Nobles, absented and hid himselfe with his Sister in the Nunnerie the space of a moneth. In which space the prople fearing his flight, besieged the place, and 50 with continual clamours viged the Queene, to periwade her Brothet to accept of the Empire which the had refused. Shee againe fends them to the Knazey and Bour ins the mention of

whole names seemed to cast them into a fit of muchine and ledition. Boris then commech forth and tels them, if they were no quieter, he also would take Sack-cloth, and (as his Sitter had done) enter into a Monafferie. They made to much greater stirres, casting out some desperate stirrests of looking to themselves, where the Common wealth was desperately noglected. The Queene then wonne by their importunitie perfwadeth her brother no langer to refit Gods will, which had put this constancie into the peoples mindes, and to accept that which thus God feemed to command, praying for his bletting therein.

Boris after new excuses, at last seeming ouercome by his Sisters intreaties, and to have held out 6c fufficiently to remoue enuie, affenteth to her, and shee signifieth as much to the people, to whom the presents him, praying them to be as loyall to him, as they had beene earnest for him. Boris alio toake vnto them : Forasmuch as it seemeth good to the Dinine Grace and Providence, whereby all Es whis seech things are gonerned, that by common confent and continual Prayers intreated, I take on mee the Prinsipalitie oner you, and all the Proninces of Russia, I will no longer resist, how beamie socner I concerne

care thereof. This was done by her brothers counfill, to try what the people would doe : who death.

ð. I I. Occurrents of principall Note which happened in Russia, in the time while the Honourable Sir THOMAS SMITH remained there Emballador from his Maieftie.

It Thomas Smith Knight, accompanied with Sit T. Challener and Sit W. WY ay Knights, dicers Gendemen and his owne Attendants. recovered to the Community of the June 1604, then lying at Greenwich, where by the Right Honourable the Earle of Salifburie he was brought to His Majestis presence, killed his Hand, &c. The next day

he tooke leave of the Prince, and on the twelfth being furnished with his Commission, he came to Granefend, and next morning went aboord the lobn and Francis Admirall: and the two and twentieth of July anchored within a mile of the Archangell. The fixteenth of September, hee came to Vologda: the five and twentieth to Periflame, and there staid three dayes, and then departed to Troites, (that faire and rich Monasterie) to to Brattesheen and Rostonekin, fine versts from the great Citie of Mufce. The fourth of October , the Prestane came and declared the Emperours pleasure that hee should come into the Mosco that forenoone : presently after came Mafter I. Mericke Agent, with fome twentie Horses to attend his Lordship, which forth-with was performed. Then we did ride, til we came within a little mile of the many thousands of No-

blemen and Gentlemen on both fides the way, attended on hersebacke to receive his Lordship. Where the Embassadour alighted from his Coach, and mounted on his foot-cloth Horse, and so rode on with his Trumpets founding. A quarter of a mile farther, met him a proper and gallant Gentleman a-foot of the Emperours stable, who with Cap in hand, declared to the Embassadour, that the Emperour, the young Prince, and the Mafter of the Horfe, had so farre fauoured him, as to fend him a Iennet, very gorgeously trapped with Gold, Pearle, and Precious Stone: and particularly, a great Chaine of plated Gold about his necke, to ride vpon. Whereupon the Embaffador alighted, imbraced the Gentleman, returned humble thankes to them all, and prefently mounted. Then he declared that they likewife had fent horfes for the Kings Gentlemen, which likewife were very richly adorned, then for all his followers : which Ceremonie or State performed, and all being horfed, he departed, we riding orderly forward, till wee were met by three great Noblemen, feuered from the rest of the multitude, and the Emperours Tolmache or

Interpreter with them. They being within foeech, thus began that Oration they could never well conclude : Which was, That from their Lord and Master the mightie Emperour of Russia, &c. they had a message to deliuer his Lordship. The Embassadour then thinking they would be tedious and troublesome with their viuall Ceremonies; prevented their farther (peech with this (to them a Spell) That # was unfitting for Subjects to hold discourse in that kind of complement, of two such mightie and renow-

med Potentates on borfebacke. They (hereby not only put by their Ceremonious Saddle-fitting, but out of their Paper instructions) allighted suddenly, as men fearing they were halfe valvor-40 fed, and the Embaffadour prefently after them, comming very courteoully all three, faluting the Embassadour and the Kings Gentlemen, taking them by the hands. Thus like a Scholer, too old to learne by rote (the Duke named King Yolladamur Enonywich Manfolker) with his Lesson before him, declared his meffage; which was, that he with the other two Noblemen, were fent from the Great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Boris Phedorowich, felfe-upholder, great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all Russia, Volademer, Moskoe and Nouogrode, King of Calan and Tedious Titles Aftracan, Lord of Vobskoe, great Duke of Smolenskoe, Tuer, Huder, Vghory, Perme, Viatsky, Bolgory, Gr. Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod in the Low Countreyes, of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotskey, Rostoue, Geraslaue, Bealozera, Leisland, Oudorskey, Obdorskey, Condingskey. King

of all Syberia and the North Coasts, Commander of the Countreyes of Inersky, Grysitisky, and Emperour of Kabardiuskey, of Chirkasky, and of the whole Country of Garskey, and of many other 50 Countreyes and Kingdomes Lord and Emperour, to know of his Maiesties health of England, the Queene and Princes. The fecond, being a Captayne of Gunners (the Emperours Guard) named Karrine Danydowich Beabeerchoue, pronouncing the Emperour and Princes Title, faid hee was fent from them to know his Lord hips health and viage, with the Kings Gentlemen. The third, was one of the Secretaries, named Pheodor Boulteene, observing the former order did deliver what he had in command from the Emperor, Prince and Empresse, to informe the Embassador of their much fauour towards him, and the Kings Gentlemen, in prouiding for his Honourable entertayne and case, a faire large house to lodge in : Also that they three were sent from the Emperour, Prince, and Emprelle, to be his Preflames, to supply the Emperours goodnesse toward him, to prouide his necessaries, and deliuer any sute it pleased the Ambassadour to make to the Empe-

rour. To all which the Embaffadour very wifely gaue answere (as they made report vnto the

So we all prefently mounted againe, the Preflaues on either hand of the Ambaffadour his Horse and Foot-cloth being led by his Page, some small distance, his Coach behind that, and

this burrhen to my shoulders, but have determined to undertake your protection with greatest sidelitie, being readic to sway the Russian Scepter and Gonernment, as farre as Gods grace shall enable mee, On the other side bee you faithfull to mee and to my command, at God may you befor. I am you most loyfull acclamations followed, with all protestation of their fidelitie and future obedience.

Tarters.

Ruffian New

746

He entring into the Monasterie, after Prayers, received the first Benediction. The people retur-Born Emperor. ned full of joy, and the Bels (of which are numbred in Mosco, three thousand) resounded the publike Feltinitie. All the Magustrates and Officers, & such as received Salarie of the King, go prefently to the Monasterie and carrie Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, Pearles, Bread, and Salt, (after the folemne custome) with wishes of long life & al happines, and desiring to accept in good worth 16 their Presents. He with thankes rendred, accepts only the Bread and Salt, Lying, these were his; the rest they should take to themselues. Then doth hee bid them to a Reast, and presently His Wife, Son, with Mary his Wife, Theodore his Sonne of ten yeeres old, and Ar fenica his Daughter being fix. teene, he goeth out of the Monasterie with pompeous Procession to the Castle. Like Prefents were offered to his Wife and Children, which accepted only the Bread and Salt, remitting the

reft to the Presenters. When he was comme to the Castle, he chose his Sifters Lodging; for that of the Prince decealed, as offenfine by his death was destroyed, and after new built After Festivall entertaynment of innumerable people, solemne Oath was taken of all the Gouernours; those things being in action till May. Then came newes that the Crim Taylar had

entred the borders thinking to find all things troubled with an interregne; whereupon he afferm 20 bled an Armie of three hundred thouland, and went in person against them. But the Tartars hearing how things went, returned home and fent Emballadors to the Emperours Tents, Hee returned with them to Mofco, where the next September (which is the beginning of the Rufe fiam New yeere, which enters in other places with Ianuary following) hee was publikely bleffed by the Patriaske, sarrying a golden Croffe in his hand, and on the fourteenth of September. Basis crowned, before the Knazers, Boiarens, Bishops and other Orders, had the Crowne seton his head by the

Patriarke, and the Scepter put in his hand, with the Solemnitie in such cases accustomed. Twelue dayes together all Orders were feasted in the Castle, and the Magistrates and Officers had a yeeres pay given them. Merchants also of other Countries had Immunities and Priviledges granted. The Rustickes had their payments to their Boierens reasonably rated, and their 30 perions made more free. Germane Merchants had moneyes lent them to repay seuen yeeres after without Viurie. Widdowes, and Orphans, and poorer persons received much Almes. Phosderes Obsequies were solemnely performed, and the Priests zichly rewarded; and that Empire which seemed dead with the death of the bouse of Beals , now was as it were remined, and receiued a glorious Refurrection.

Thus have we delivered you Thusnas his report touching Born manner of acquiring the Empire without publike emie, and cunning wiping off the afperions of *Phoedere* and *Demetria* their deaths. And as every bodie is nourified by Aliments correspondent to the Principles of the Generation, so did hee seeke by politike wisdome to establish that which by wise Policies he had gotten. Wherein his care was not little to multiply Treasure, and as at first hee had see- 40 med popularly prodigall, so after a small time of his Reigne, hee became providently penurious, the wonted allowances of the Court being much shartened from that which had beene in former times, as I hate received from eye-witneffes. Likewife he was carefull to hold good tearmes with his Neighbouring Princes, and aswell by plots at home, as by forreigne Aliance indeuoured to fettle on his Race this new gotten Empire. He is faid for this end to have fought a Wife for his sonne out of England, and a Husband for his Daughter out of Danna ke. His Wife was

a woman of haughtie spirit, who shought hentoo good for any Hoden (so they call a flaue, and fuch the efteemed all the fubjects) and on fuch tearmes flie is faid to have beene denied to a great man his best Souldier and Commander of his Armie. But while his Sonne shined now in the height of his course, and with brightest and war- 50

mest beames of prosperitie, there arose grosse vapours out of Demetring his grave, which grew quickly into a blacke darke cloud, and not only eclipfed that Imperiall glorie, but soone esgendred a blondie storme, which with a floud swept away that whole Family, and ouer-whelmed also the whole Empire. Contraries set together cause the greater luftre; for which cause I will bring on the stage a Gentleman, which attended Sir Thomas Smith employed in Honourable Embaffage from his Maiestie of Great Brittaine to the then flourishing Emperor Boris and out of much to infult his large Relations deliuer you this which followeth in his owne words (omitting the most part on B ru his \*to our purpose not so pertinent) in the Booke printed, Amer 1605.

\* Where the fremeth too

60

fome fixe thouland Gallants after behind all : who at the Embaffadors riding through the guard. that was made for him, very courteoully bowed himfelfe. Thus was he followed by thoulands. and within the three wals of the Citie, many hundreds of young Noblemen, Gentlemen, and rich Merchants well mounted, begirt the wayes on every fide: divers on foot alfo, even to the gate of the house where the Embassadour was to be lodged, which was some two miles. When ther being come, he was brought into his Bed-chamber by the Noblemen his Prestaues, where with many thankes for their honourable paines; they were difmiff, betaking themselves to their further affaires. The next morning came three other Prestanes with the former, to know of his Lordships health, and how he had rested the night past: withall, that if his Lordship wanted any thing, they all, or any one of them, were as commanded, fo readie to obey therein. These, to with the Interreter and fixe Gentlemen were most within the walls, lodged in a house ouer the gate, besides we had sittle Gunners to attend, and guard vs in our going abroad,

The eight of October being the fourth day after our comming to Mulco, the Preftages came to his Lordship to let him understand, they heard he should goe up the next day : wherefore they desired his speech and Embaffage to the Emperour : and the rather, that the Interpreter might (as they pretended) translate it. To this purpose, very earneftly at seuerall times they made demand. The Embassadour answered, that he was sent from a mightie Prince, to bee his Embaffadour to their Emperour, and being fent to their Mafter, he deemed it, not only a difficnour to him, but a weaknesse in them, to require that at his hands,

His audience. The Leventh of October, his Lordship being fent for by his Prestance there wayting, having 20 excellent lennets for himfelfe, the Kings Gentlemen, and good horses for the reft : as likewife two gallant white Palireis to carrie or draw a rich Chariot, one parcell of the great Present, with his followers and the Emperours guard, carrying the reft; on each fide the fireets standing the Emperours guard with Peeces in their hands well apparelled, to the number of two thouland by esteeme, many Messengers posting betwixt the Court and our Prestages. Thus with much fate, fortly riding, till we came vnto the vtmoft gate of the Court (hazing paffed through the great Caftle before) there his Lordfhip dil mounted. Then met him a great Duke (named Knefe Andriay Metowich Soomedaroue) with certayne Gentlemen, to bring him vp. So in order as we rode, we atcended the staires and a stone Gallerie, whereon each side stood many Nobles and Courtiers, in faire Coates of Perfian Stuffe, Veluet, Damaske, &c. At the entry to the great 30 Chamber, two Counsellors encountred the Embaffadour, to conduct him through that Roome, round about which fat many graue and richly apparrelled Personages. Then we entred the Prefence, whether being come, and making obeyfance, we staid to heare, but not vnderstand, a very gallant Nobleman, named Peter Basmaz, deliver the Emperours Title : Then the particular of the Presents, and some other Ceremonies : which performed, the Embassadour hauing libertie, delinered so much of his Embassage, as the time and occasion then assoorded: After which the Emperous ariting from his Throne, demanded of the King of Englands health, the Princes, and Queenes: then of the Emballadors and the Kings Gentlemen, and how they had beene vied fince they entred within his Dominions : to all which with obeyfance wee answered as was meete. Then the young Prince demanded the very fame.

The Embassador having taken the Kings Letter of his Gentleman Viher, went vp after his obeyfance to deliver it, which the Lord Chancellor would have intercepted. But the Embassadour gaue it to the Emperours owne hands, and his Majestie afterwards deliuered it to the Lord Chancellor: who tooke it, and shewing the superscription to the Emperour and Prince, held it in his hand openly with the Seale towards them. Then the Emperour called the Embassadour to kille his hand, which he did, as like wife the Princes, and with his face towards them returned. Then did hee call for the Kings Gentlemen to kiffe his hand, and the Princes, which they after obeyfance made, did accordingly. Afterwards, his Majestie inuited his Lordship, the Kings-Gentlemen and the rest to dine with him, as likewise Master I. Mericke Agent by name, who gaue his attendance there on the Embaffadour, and was now (as divers times) very graciously v- 50

Emperours

ied of the Emperour and Prince : no stranger (that I euer heard off) like him in all respects. Being entred the Presence, we might behold the excellent Majestie of a mightie Emperour feated in a Chaire of Gold, richly embroydered with Perfian Stuffe : in his right hand hee held a golden Scepter, a Crowne of pure Gold vpon his head, a Coller of rich stones and Pearles about his necke, his outward Garments of Crimson Veluet, embroydered very faire, with Pearles, Precious stones and Gold : On his right fide, (on equall height to his Throne) standing a very faire Globe of beaten Gold, on a Pyramis, with a faire Croffe voon it, vnto which before hee spake, he turned a little and crost himselfe, Nigh that, stood a faire Bason and Ewer, which the Emperour often vieth daily.

Close by him in another Throne fat the Prince, in an outward Garment like his Fathers, but 60 not fo rich, a high blacke Foxe Cap on his head, worth in those Countreyes fine hundred pound, a Golden Staffe like a Friers, with the likenesse of a Croffe at the top, On the right hand of the Emperour, stood two gallant Noblemen in cloth of Siluer Garments, high blacke Foxe Cappes, great and long chaines of Gold hanging to their feet, with Pollaxes on their shoulders of Gold.

And on the left hand of the Prince two other fuch, but with Silver Pollaxes. Round about the benches fat the Councell and Nobilitie, in Golden and Perfian Coats, and high blacke Foxe Caps, to the number of two hundred, the ground being couered with Cloth of Arraffe, or Tapiffrie: Nobilities The Prefents standing all the while in the Roome, within little distance of his Majestie, where he and the Prince often viewed them. Being now by our Prefiance and others come for to Dinner, who led vs through much presse and many Chambers to one very faire and rich Roome. where was infinite store of mailie Plate of all forts; Towards the other end stood the Emperours Vncle, named Stepbean Vafelewich Godonoue, Lord High Steward, being attended with many Place Noblemen and Gentlemen, whom my Lord in his passage faluted, which with an extraordinary 10 countenance of aged Ioy, he received, making one of their honourable Nods. The Embaffador en-

tred the dining Roome, where we againe viewed the Emperour and Prince, feated under two Chaires of State, readie to dine, each having a Scull of Pearle on their bare heads, but the Princes Dining rooms was but a Coronet. Also their Vestments were changed.

The former Duke, that for that day was the Embassadours Prestane, came, as commanded Change of from the Emperor, and placed the Embaffador at a Table, on the bench fide, fome twentie foot from the Emperour. Then the Kings Gentlemen, Maiter Mericke, Maiter Edward Cherrie, and all the reft were placed, to that our eyes were halfe opposite to the Emperour. Ouer against the Embeffadour fat his Prestaues uppermost. Also in this large place fat the Privile Countell, to the Two hundred number of two hundred Nobles at feuerali Tables. In the midft of this Hall might feeme to Nobles gueffs. 20 stand a great Pillar, round about which, a great height flood wonderfull great pieces of Plate, very curroufly wrought with all manner of Beafts, Fishes and Fowles, besides some other ordi-

narie pieces of feruiceable Plate. Being thus fet (fome quarter of an houre as it were, feeding our eyes with that faire Piller of Three bune Plate) we beheld the Emperours Table ferued by two hundred Noblemen, all in Coats of cloth dred noble

of Gold. The Princes Table ferued with one hundred young Dukes and Princes of Caffen, A- Seruitors. Grican, Syberia, Tartaria, Chercaffes and Ruffes, none aboue twentie yeeres old.

Then the Emperour fent from his Table by his Noble Seruitors, to my Lord and the Kings Gentlemen, thirtie Dilhes of meate, and to each a loafe of extraordinary fine bread. Then followed a great number of strange and rare Dishes, some in Silver, but most of massie Gold; with boyled, baked, and rofted, being piled vp on one another by halfe dozens. To make your particular Relation, I should doe the entertaynment wrong, consisting almost of innumerable Dithes: Alfo, I should ouer-charge my memory, as then I did mine eyes and stomacke, little delighting the Reader, because Garlicke and Onions, must befawce many of my words, as then it Garlike and

did the most part of their Dishes. For our Drinkes, they confitted of many excellent kinds of Meades, besides all forts of Wirie Meads,

and Beere. Divers times by name, the Emperor fent vs Diffes : but in the midit of Dinner hee called the Embassadour up to him, and dranke our Kings health, where the Emperour held some discourse of our King and State. But at one time (thriking his hand adustedly on his breft) Ob. faid bee, my deere Sifter Queene Elizabeth, whom I loued as mine owne heart, expressing this his Memory of Q. great affection almost in a weeping passion. The Embassador receiving the Cup from his Prince- Elzabeth.

by hand, returned agains to his owns place, where all of vs standing, dranks the same health out of the same Cup, being of faire Christall, as the Emperour had commanded, the Wine (as sarre as my judgement gaue leaue) being Alligant.

Thus passing some foure houres in banquetting, and refreshing our selues too plentifully; all being taken away, we did arise. The Embassadour and the Kings Gentlemen beeing called by name to receive from his Emperiall hands, a Cup (or rather as they call it a Tendonor) of excellent red Mead; a fauour among them neuer observed before, which Cups for they were great and the Mead very firong, we often fipped at, but without hurting our memories, we could not fay Amen vnto : which the Emperour perceiuing, commanded them to be taken away, faying, Hee was best pleased with what was most for our healths.

Thus after our low courtefies performed, wee departed from his presence, riding home with the same former guard and attendance to our Lodings; where our Pressures for that instant left vs, but shortly after they came againe, to accompany a great and gallant Duke, one of them that held the Emperours golden Pollaxes, named Knes Romana Phedorowich Troya Narone, who was fent from his Majettie to make the Embafladour and the Kings Gentlemen merrie: likewife hauing instructions to drinke their Emperours, our Kings, and both the Princes healths, and divers Princes elie, which hee did himiclfe very freely and some of vs, as many of them as wee could with our owne healths, there being such plentie of Meades and other Drinkes, as might well with our owne hearts, there being non-pennet of an arms in the headed, and well laded especi-haue made tortic Ruffer haue stumbled to sleepe. Thus light-headed, and well laded especiso ally if you take knowledge of the thirtie yards of cloth of Gold, and the two standing Cups

with couers, which the Embaffadour rewarded him withall, before he departed. But vinwelcome newes within foure cayes after our audience so vinhappily came, as not only our Affaires, but any elie, except counfeil against present danger, was not regarded. For this was Newcoof Deheld for currant, that one who named himselfe Demerrie Enanowich Beals, as the Sonne of their mering

late Emperor Inan Vafillowich; hee that in the reigne of Pheodor Enanowich his brother was in his infancie, as was thought, murthered at Ougleets) is now remued againe, and vp in armes for his right and inheritance: whereupon prefently was fent an Armie of two hundred thousand Souldiers, either to take or flay him. But he was fo ftrengthened with Poles, Coffacts, &c. that a number of Ruffes yeekied to his obedience.

Voon the one and twentieth of November, the young Prince of an ancient custome going to a Church within Mofes, the Kings Gentlemen vpon knowledge thereof (the Ambassador being vnwilling to be seene publike, as also for that the Emperor himselfe did not goe as hee was accuflomed) went and attended where his Excellency might feethem, and they fafely behold him, Princes pomps, who rode in a very faire and rich fled, having a gallant Palfrey lead by two Groomes to draw it, Io many hundreds running before to sweepe the snowe away where he should passe, and were said to bee flaues, which I verily beleeue, because certainly they were his Subiects. Then came the Prince richly apparelled with two Tarter Princes standing before on his sled, and two young Dukes behind, with two hundred fleds following him.

The eight of Februarie, the Emperor fent vs fleds to ride abroad, and this day the rather, I ne eigne of reconsure; in ampass said a man and an anomal and the man up the rather, that we might behold a reported victorie, against the reported Rebill Demetrie, &c. So we the Kings Gentlemen did behold three hundred poore Priloners, fauenteene Enignes, and eleuen Drums brought in, with more gloriethen victorie. About this time returned Peter Bafman, one of the Generals, who had performed very honourable fernice, and certainly, he was the man of greatest hope and expectation in the whole Empire, who was brought into the Mofor, with all 20 the Counfell, Nobles, Gentlemen, and Merchants, a grace neuer performed before to any Subiect. But not without suspition of some extraordinarie secret herein, and "des particular fauours, bountifull rewards, and a promife he should never goe againe untill the Emperor himselfe went, he was, being but a young man , made a Privie Counfellor. Forthwith one thing I will you shall observe the Emperors favour, and his then noble Spirit, he making divers times sute(as was thought) because they were in great danger, to goe againe to the warres, once proftrated himfelfe to obtayne his defire, but falling downe too humbly, hee could not eafily rife againe, whereby the Emperor understanding of his many and great wounds, was said to weepe, rifing himfelfe vp to raife and helpe him vp, but extraordinarie Caufes have the like Effects, as hereafter you shall understand.

We were lodged in the same house where the young Prince lobs of Denmarke, brother to that King and our now Queene of England, did lodge, (who would have matried the young Princelle Ouch finia, the Emperors only daughter, but that he valuappily theredied) but not in any of those lodgings: for it is a custome there, that where a Prince dyes (especially a stranger) not of long time after to let any other lodge there.

Now the Ambastador understanding of the connenience of his passage downe by sled-way, also fearing (as wise men had cause) what the issue of these warres would be, knowing the state here wied in any futes, bethought himfelfe aduitedly that it was high time, being the middeft of Februarie, to defire a second audience for his sooner dispatch, which he forthwith requested, and wrote a letter to that purpose vnto the Lord Chancellor.

Second audience.

Out finls the

Princeffe.

Vpon the tench of March, the Ambaffador with the Kings Gentlemen all richly apparelled, and all his followers decently attending, very honourably (as before) and with the like recourse of beholders, and guard of Gunners ( but that they were faid to bee Citizens by reason of their Citizens Soul warres, but in like apparell) was attended to the Court, being received with the former grace, or more, he ascended the Presence : the Emperour and Prince holding their wonted state, onely changing their Vestments with the feafon, but for the riches nothing inferior.

So foone as the Ambassador and the Kings Gentlemen were come opposite to his Throne, hee commanded feates that they might fit downe : then with a Maieffick countenance, repreferring rather constraint then former cheerfulnesse, he declared, that He, his Sonne and Councell, had confidered his Maiesties Letter, the Maiestie of King lames of England, as also on whatforeer 50 elle was defired, and in token of his joyfull received arriftie with the renowmed King of Eng-Land, as with his Predecessor, he had wrote his Princely Letters to that purpose. Herewith the Chancellor from the Emperour deliuered the Ambaffadors his Highnesse Letters to his excellent Maiestie. Withall understanding by the Chancellor hee had some farther matter to intreas of, then in his Briefe to his Maiestie was remembred : therefore hee had appointed foure principall Councellors to confule with him of his Requeits, which was done. After, the Ambaffador yeelding courteous thanks for his Maiesties fauour, his Loruship attended by many Nobles, proceeded to the Councell Chamber, whither pretently after came foure Councellors, and the Emperours Tolmach: who after falutations, we withdrew to the next chamber, where wee palfed away an houre in discourse, among many young Nobles, having the Ambassadors Interpreter, 62 In the end, after three or foure goings and returnes of the Chancellor from the Emperour, wee went againe before him (where after hee had commanded vs to fit downe as before) by the mouth of the Chancellor was openly delinered a Briefe of the whole Embassie (and that dayes particular defire, according to the Ambassadors request, confirmed.) Also in good and pleasing

language, was declared the great defire structhe Emperour had, for the continuance of peace and assists with the removimed Lasses King of England, as with the late Queene Ein. admit; with that induction call accidents well cheedly he would find an honourable Ambafiador for further affaires, as likewife to congratulate wish our Ring of his pappine fe'in fo phinfible comming to his Right and Inheritance. Likewife, a Grane of in new Privaledge for the Companie, which he faid fhould be wider the golden Seale, &c.

the mount of vince and guiden from the Emperor salled for the Ambeliador and the Kings Golden Scale. Gentlemen to kiffe his hand, and the Princes a which does, with the Emperors nod or bowing to vs. as likewife the Princes, deficing the remembrance of his and the Rrinces commendations no to his Maiethie, the Prince, and Querne of England, Welveredifficially, but nor before the Emperor faid he would fend himse to vs. Thus we trooke out last leave of the Emperor's Court, be-count, named Knut Enan Enganomich Courding; was attended with many of the Emperor fer mute within our Gates: following him a dinner; Gentimen the Emperor by fome ewo hundred Great dinner. perfons, confifting of three hundred feuerall dishes of Fifte (for it washew Lent) of fish firance meffe, greatmeffe, and goodneffe (for their number) at it ware not to bee beleeurd by thy report,

nene, greatrigue, and goodstan. Cert ten minor. I are versus on the overce content of year people, but by a manso owner eye-right, with infinite flore of Meadon, and Beete, in maffie plately. Each of the mass owner eye-right, with infinite flore of Meadon, and Beete, in maffie plately. The eight tenth of the mass of the Meadon of the Me at large appeares. The nineteenth, his Maistie font " Ramifor Buldicione, vider. Treaturer; a royall Preient to the Ambaffador of many particulant, also to each of the Kings Gentlemen, being rewarded, he departed.

The twentieth of March, being honourably accompanyed with thein and of Callants of each Ambaffadots fide the ftreets all along as we pafied, the Ambaffador departed freitrebe Otte of Milow, with departure. the whole numbers of horie-men still becking vs, till we conten flore unde on this side the Citie the whole numbers or none-men this occur of the control of the desired property of the control o reade as fleepe.

Thus accompanyed with Matter Islan Miristor, Matter walken Raffel, clometimes Agent for the Dutch, and many other Merchanes, we cally so do that slight to Brisishin chiefe mines from the Moles. The next morrow taking sense of them all, we southing long is owney fifte and first sie weeks a day easily. tie verits a day eafily.

ne venue a cuy camy.

Within few dayes after wee besud owner entailily leftche Emperity fielden and vintimely Emperor And
death which, confidening estimated a Professor (the Covertage), the different had not confidening estimated for the Covertage, the different had not confidening estimated of the confidence of the covertage o 40 Lordhip had it from Matter John Melving by Letter particularly! Ffirdeath was very fudden, and as it was in it felfe, very firange : for within formetwo houses after dimmer; haunng (as her and als was in it refer with any visual in a warm of the property of the prope in his ftomacke : prefently wene into his chamber, had himselfe woon his bed, fent for his Doctors (which alwayes speeded) yet before they came, hee was past, being speechlesse and soone after dying. Before his death (as speedie as it was) hee would bee shorne, and Newschriften new chrifted what the cause was otherwise then the grief, inlikely formow, with diamers and districtions above the warse, and their bad facelle, fearing the spirit on the part, only Gotowes; yet who fo remembers Gods indigensents, or framework policies for flagglosime, with mane imfulnelle, and confidereth the one with the other; may bee fatisfied, if not con-

For the Emperous perion, he was tall and well bodied, resching out of his authoritied- Emperous perbedience, of an excellent presence, black and thin harred, well faced, round and close shared, son. firong limmed. A Prince framed bet weene Thought and Reloution, as being ever in latour, but never till death delivered; never afting (though our plot ting) but in his Chofer of Council Chamber. One rather obeyed then loved; being fearest where hee was not ferued adopt left. vpholding a true Maieftie and government in every pare; but in his owne minde; that it is a question, whether he were more kindere Strangers; or Teuere and full to his Subjects, of Bace-

6C full and terrible to his Enemies. A father and a Prince, whose wordes, counsels, obsernations, Hisrespect to policies, retolutions, and experiments, were but the life of his deare Southe, Heller additing, his some, entertayning, no not praying without him. In all Ambaffies and Negotiations, Wenter birds, birds need name with his owne, louing firm (being louely) for that himselfte would be loned, vir. willing to spare his presence, desirous to have him at all occasions before his eyes. This Proc doe

. 2 ast Because he

amille, to give a tafte of the fruit forum from to flately a Tree. Being by a learned and well travailed Gentleman divers times particularly addited ; to jet the Prince take fome more (then no secreation) by which meanes he might asyell prolong his lift, as infruct his judgement and delight his minde: Oh, would the Emperous aniwere, one-fonne is no fonne : nay ; I am perfuse. ded, three fonnes to me is but helfes some. But had I fixe fonnes, then I might fately fay I had one, how then thould I part with that at any time, I know not to bee mine for any time. This may gine fatisfaction to any violent anding book of his feares and isloufies : his great lone. Anis may gue tatistation to any viposantoung to more than the manufacture of the first tour, and much care. I twas an effect of the first tour you good-train and say, then we the Lord and father of his finite, you wishelf. Then he was not easily his ferman, the his very: Sant.

Two policies of the faid Emperous & Small willingly acquaint you with, for diners reasons, to One was, when hee couled fire to bre kindled in foure parts of the form whitene him settle was noted to be very diligent, with all bis Mobics and Courtiers; and after source quenched a before his bountie to them all, that builded anow sheir houses, and repaid all them doller. And this was but to flop the rumour, then fo common, of his drange gayning the Empire by which dratagem of his, when his people were readie to mutinit, they were deated and we good Subjects; yet did admire his not onely care, but goodnesse towards them all.

A second, was at that time the Land was viited with a mightie famine, and as great a plague ( fomefoure yeeres fince ) whereof a third of the whole Nation is rated to have died; and the murmoring multitude laid the caule was, their eletting of a murderer to the Empire; wherefore God did thus resset them : Whereopon , hee cauled Galleries to bee builded round about the vr. 10. most wail of the great Cirie of Mojes; and there appointed daily to bee guen to the poore, twentie thouland pounds firthing; which was accordingly performed for one moneth, whereupon the common peoples mouthes and bellies were well ftopped.

Here weed adged till the fixe of May , being whated with the inconftancie and ill-come newes of fiying reports, whereupon the time of the year requiring, the Ambaffador relided to paffed owner the Russette Compage, as well that her might the fooner have mewer from England, as happily to bee put of feare of any difaster, the rumours being innumerable and

Demetrius, 19-

After the suspicious death of the old Emperour Beris Pheaderswich, &c. by the appointment of the Prince (then their expected Emperour) and the Counfell , Peter Bafman ( that noble 30 Sparke) was speeduly dispatched and sent as Generallwato their ill succeeding warres, as their last hope (indeed hee prooted so in a contrarie sense) and the onely refuge to the Commons: whither being come, hee with himselfe presented mode of his command, as many as freely would offer themiclues : Vader which were alkahe English, Scots, French, Dutch and Flemmings, what focuer : and with him , or tather before been ( as least fulpected ) Ries Valit Enanch Golesche, the other Generall, a man of great birth, and in the prioritie of place, to bee received before Peter Bafmen, All which, the now week knowne newly opinionated Emperour very graciously received. happily not without four ichouse of many particulars.

Demetring now lent Mellengers with Letters which entied the Suburbs, where the Commons in infinite numbers brought them fife, and the fraction Plaine before the Castle gate; within which, as daily they did vie ... to now were all the Counfellors in consultation; but 40 happily not in a fecret Counfaile ; also wherein was the Emperial Court.

Tumuk of the There thele Beyerens made demand for many of the Countedlors, especially for the Godone wes, to come to heare their right King Demetrine Entermich Speaking wato them by Letters ; Who yet after refutal (and I cannot condemne all) many cames the Commons being refolned, elfe to feach themout. Then, by the Boyerestaloud was read the Emperours Letters, to

That her much wondered at that time, whorein expedition was to be accounted lafest policie, bearing Then her much wondeyd at the times, wherein expedition was to be inconsented [offs ] policie, having flesh many increase and Mediganes to behave, concerning this represent of most her their landful of times, as being the form of Emm V allowich shire less Emperour , and the early brother of Phonote Emmonration [offs-repolated of the horse than the control of the co

All indich narmithlanding, bee (being confident in his owne conficence, of his init Title, made the Principal patience and humilitie from his farmer many great miferies and dangers) had in his Process refigione antichement agene wrone told (one created but all Peac-reporting and Greece 60 Greece 60

Alfo to this end bee had fent men of great birth, viz. Rues Pheodor, Euanowich Methithfosky, and Rues Demetre, Euanowich Suskey; and given them Commission to difflace his Enemier, and Prestaue the Godonnoues, and others, till his further plessing were known, confia-ming tole monstrous blend suckers and Traytors, such returns of the Commons answers thereunts: Likewife to demand bis Meffengers, and they to bee brought before the Commons, whom bee had reafon to beleeue were ill-intreated, if not murthered; withall, that if they did fubmit themselnet nom to him , as to their lawfull Prince and Soueraigne , ( which hee was trucky resolued their consciouces were quiltie of ) that yet they should finde him a gracious and merciful Lord; if otherwise, a sewere and just Renenger of them, and their many muschedes towards bim, as hee that had bis Sword To ener unfreathed to execute his vengeance on them all: and was casily persuaded they were not ignorant of the many Villeriet bee bad obtayned formerly against them, when they would seeme able and willing to fight with his Souldiers : and how afficited and troubled berewith they all were : But that now . be had their chiefe and strongest Heads and Armes in his owne hand, the whole World might not betreth birn they durif ones freshe events grants the an affered that all (excepting a very few, and they of the worl) in beart were be legal Indicate, or a

But before this Letter was halfe read, the Hearts and Hands of the multitude were ftringely combined together, not one freaking, but all confusedly like fettered and chayned Horses stamping; being indeed without any feare, but of not doing mischiefe enough, all (as one) running violently into the Caftle, where (meeting two of the pitifully tormented Meffengers) 20 they pawfed to heare them as sufficiently as their insufficiencie would permit them, deliuer the vilde manner of their torturing, whipping, and roasting, which was in deede a Whip and Spurre to driue them, without wit or humanitie, as if they had beene fired like Gun-powder with the very sparkes of heate : Such barbarous crueltie, beaftly actions, and inhumane spe-Stacles, as without the great Deuill had beene their Generall, no particular could have a-Ged; laying violent hands on all they met : but not killing (the great mercy of God) any

man of account. Thus the whole Citie was in an vproare, all the Counsellors houses, sellers, and studies ransacked, beginning with the Godowower; spoyling, renting, and stealing all they met with; but carrying lettle away but drinke, which they could not carry away.

30 [The Commons (no doubt) would have made this day little inferiour to the maffacre of Pas ris, fo violent and deuillish were their sudden resolutions but that the Nobles (best beloued and obeyed) intreated, where none could command : of hers perfwading, all wishing an end to this most miserable and neuer exampled mischiefe. Butthe multitude did what they would and could; efpecially on the greatest, which certainly were the worst : So as the Empresse flying to a fafer lodging, had her coller of Pearle pluckt from her necke.

Then the Prince, Empresse, and Princesse, were prestaued (a second command being come from the Campe) with the Godsnones, and many others that were suspected most : The Nobles ioyning in one counfell for the prefent ordering of these sudden accidents, and for answere to the Prince Demetrius Engagement, who suddenly was by generall consent concluded

40 (by the particular knowledge of Boden Belikes a great Counsellor, that was primit to his departure, and some others) to bee their right and lawfull Emperour, onely a few excepted. So as the young Prince was by many (but particularly by his mother) counfelled to leave the Kingdome veterly, before it forfooke him; to follow his Fathers example in murdering himfelfe, and herein his mother (that Map of miferies, that Cradle of crueltie) and his onely deare fifter would affociate him.

Letters were deuised, and Meffengers framed to effe & this desperate treacherie on his innocent life; fo as in very few dayes (for Mischiefe hath the wings of Thought and Refolution) they three did confent (an wnhappy coniunction) to deftroy themselues; and rather to lay violent hands upon their hatefull lives , then make an Enemic feeme cruell in executing lu-

flice on them : which \* yet certainly this Emperour neuer dreamt of , but determined the \* Thus besbus SC Prince should be within himselfe, not lesse then Absolute, and in a very great Dukedome, othersascribe The Princely Mother began the health of Death to her noble Sonne, who pledged her with a this murther The Princety Mother began the hearth of Death to her mane south, who preages not to Death as hearthed hearthed draught, therein fo much frength did hee adde to his vile wicked obedience, that her his command, his command, prooued a banquerout prefently, and hand in hand embracing each other, they fell, and died as and dies telfes one , the Mother counfelling and acting , while it the child bethought and fuffered : yet fee Pro- murcher was uidence and Commiseration, Conftancy and Obedience : the Princesse dranke, but like a Vir- presented to nidence and Commiteration, Contrarcy and Obedience: the Princene diamet, so we another and enuy of gin temperately: fo as modefue (the want of which was the death of the Mother) now another of the fact. prooued the life of the Daughter.

Death of Mother & Spane.

60 However it was with Botts for other things, I thought it not amiffe to adde this testimonie of his refrect to the English Nation and Merchants in Primiledges granted them, as followeth,

Emperor Boris his Mofte Patent translated

Ne Almightic God without and before the Beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the Hely Ghost, whom we glorific in the Trinitic, our early God, Creator and Preference of all things encrywhere, by which Will and Working, be lineth and gineth life unto Man; Our onely God which suffireth enery one of us bis Children with his boly Word, through our Lord lefus Christ, the Spirit of Life, now in this latter times, of ability vs to bold the right Scepter, and suffer vs of our sclues to reigne, for the good of the Land, and the happinesse of the People, together with our Enemies, and to the doing of

We the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Boris Pheodorowich of all Russia, fele Commun. ore the great term comprome and great Mangabutte production that of a state of Volodenne, Moice, Nongrot, Emperor of Grant, King of Affraca, Lord of Voloden, and the great Dake of Smolensko, of Twersko, Vhorskoy, Permskoy, Varskey, Bolharskay, and of a thers, Lord and great Duke of Nouagrod in the low Country of Chernego, Rezan, Polotskay, Ro-Rouskoy, Yerallauskoy, Belezerskoy, Leeflanskoy, Owdorskoy, Obdorskoy, Condinskoy, and all Siberia, and the North parts; Lord and Commander of Euerskey Land, and Cabardinskey Country, and of Cherces, and Igarskoy Land, as also of many other: Lord and Commander, with one Sonne Prince Phedar Borisowich of all Russia. We have bestowed on the Merchants of England, viz. Sir Iohn Hart, Knight; Sir William Webb, Knight; Richard Saltansfall, Alderman; Nicolas Mohley, Alderman; Robert Doue, William Garaway, John Harbey, Robert Chamberlin, Henric Anderson, John Audwart, Francis Cheric, John Merick, Anthony Marlar; Wee bouse granted and incenced them to come with their hips into our Dominion the Country of Dwina, with all to manner of Commodities, to trade freely from the Sea side and within our Dominions, to the Citic of our menner of Commonstres, to trace press promo to scan per som streets one Learnman 1, to the Citie of our Empire of Mockoo. Also there made fate verse vis Pos loth Hart, Kangle, and but Composite, to great-fie them to trade to our Citie of Moico, and to our Heritage of great Nowgrod and Vobeko, and to all parts of our Empire, with their Commodities, and to Trade freely without enitome: open which wee the great Lord Emperour and great Date Boris Pheodorowich of all Ruffia, with our Sonne Prince Pheodor Borilowich of all Ruffia, have granted onto the English Merchants, Sir John Hart, Knight, Phenoire Dotthewant of an Annie, some grantes over the tright extrements, or total right, angue, and his follows; for our Sifter field Queene Elizabeth, free piling to come unto our Kingdome of Molco, and into all the risk of our Dompsous, with all manner of Commundative to trade and reflick free for at their ples force. Also we have communded, not to toke any kinds of Conforms for their goods, you are h at their ples fore. Allo we have commanded, not to sake any kinds of Uniform for their goods, nor any other Colfornes what some reverse, viz. for pairing by any place by Land, wor for passing by any place by Place; 30 not for Colforne of their Boats or Headings, on the passing one Project and Perries, nor for any one rive of Wares: at allo all manner of allow Colforness or Danies what sheer were command shall not be taken of them : But they shall not bring passer man; goods into one Dominious, nor skewife recervy our tages of come in the configuration of configurations and the configuration of the Kingdome any other mens goods as their owner, nor to fell or harter for other men. Neither shall come Subjects buy and fell for them or from them: nather shall they keep any of our peoples goods or pawnes by them to come or colour them. Likewife they feall not fend any of our Subjects to any Towns or Citie to buy Commodities. But what Citie they came into them selmes they shall sell their owne Commodities, and buy our Commodities. And when they shall come to our Heritage to great Vobsko and Nouagrod, or to any other Citie within our Dominions with their Commodities, that then our Gentle-None and Concrement, and all after effects had fuffer, and let them paffe according to the art Letter, and to take no manner of Costians of them what fewer for any of their Communics for paffing to, no. 40 for paffing to, no. 40 for paffing to, and the the communication of the comm paffe through with goods not buying of any Commoditie nor falling their own, then in these Cities they fold take of them no manner of Cuitome what sener as after field, and wee home gratified and gueen them lease to trade in all parts of our Dominions with their goods freely without Custome. And likewife when severally the English Merchantes ball bee defired to buy or fell or barter their waves with our Merchants wares for wares, then skall they sell their wares whole sale and not by retaile, Cloth by the pack and by Clothes and by remnants; and Damasks and Velues by the Piece and not by the Tark, or pack and by Clustes and by remnants, one Damman, one remers of the rece and not by the I ard, or aftern, and fack of ammonisties is the feel of smarght, not to fell from the fined marghts, that is to fag, by the Zoloczucka. Alfo they feel fell times by the Proplem of the Hopfbead, but by the Gallon, \$0 Quart or Pas or Charles they feel may be it moreover, they fould buy, fell and exchange their owns Commodities them selves, and the Ruffe Merchants shall not sell or exchange for them or from them their Commodities, neither shall they carry any mans goods to no manner of place under colour of their owne, and which of the English Merchants would at any time fell his Governedities at Colmogro on the Dwina, or at Vologda and at Yeraflauly they may, and of all then Commodities throughout all our Cities and Dominion, our Gentlemen, Conernours, and all other Officers Shall take no manner of Cu-Rome according to this our Imperial Letter of fanour. Also through all our Dominions, Cities, and Townes they hall hire Carriers, Boats, and men to labour or rowe in the faid Boats at their owne cost, Likewife when as the English Merchants shall defire to goe out of our Dominion into any other Kingdome, or into their owne Land, unditakwe thinks is good for themso take mit them from our Treasure 60 any Commodities to fell or exchange them for us , for such Commodities as shall be sitting to our Kingdone, and to deliver them to our Treasurer: and with those their and our goods, our Gentlemen and Gomermours Shall Suffer them to passe through all Cities and Townes within our Dominions without Cu-

stome as before. And when they have ended their Market, and doe desire to goe from the Mosko, then they fall appears in the Chancerie to the Keeper of our Seale, the Secretarie Vaffily Yacolowich Schellcalou. Likewife , if there happen to the English Merchants any extremitie by Sea , or that a flip be broken, and that it be neere any place of our Kingdome, then we command that all those goods thall bee brought out initly, and bee given to the English people that thall at that time bee in our Land, or if they be not here, then to lay them up all together in one place, and when the Englishmen come into our Land, then to delmer those goods to them Also wee bane bestowed on the English Merchants the Honfe of Yourya, in the Mosko by a Church of Saint Maxims neere the Marger, to dwell m it as in farmer time, keeping one House-keeper a Russe, or one of their owne strangers: but no other Russe fulles they shall not keepe any. Likewise these Merchants baue Houses in dimers our Cities as followeth: A Honfe at Yeres, a Honfe at Vologda, a Honfe at Colmogro, and a Honfe at Michael the Archangell, being the firpping place: these saul Houses they shall keepe as in sormer time according to this own imperial Letter of fasour, or gratisted without paying any manner of Rent or anywather duties what foener, either at Mosko, Yereilaue, Vologda, Colmogro, or at the Caffle of the Archangell, weither shall they pay any taxe. Also at those Houses at Yereslaue, Vologda, Colmogro, and at Archangell they shall have House keepers of their owne Countrey-men, or Russes of a means for that are not Merchants, a manor two in a House : to lay up their goods in those Houses , and tomake sale their goods out of those Houses, to whom they will according to this our Imperial Letter of fanour, but their Ruffe House-keepers in their absence Shall not fell any of their Commodities. And the English 3) Merchants shal come with their ship to their Port, as in former times they have done to wilade their goods out of their ship, and likewise to lade them againe with our Russia Commodities, at their owne charges of one of nover/popt, and unempies to save town against with one town to their flores to their thought of Boates and bire of men, and ferrying over the faid goods from thoir flores to their thought at the Callet of Archangell. Likewife our Officers, Custowers, and Sournemen shall take a instruction of all fact goods as they have both of Russia and English Commoduties, and the note to peffe under the Merchants Firma, because it may be knowne what goods passeth of the strangers and of the Russes. But they Shall not look ower their goods, nesther unbind any packs in any place, and when they doe fend their owne Englishmen from Archangell to our Citie of Mosko, or doe fend Russia Commodities into their owne Land, Then all our Officers and Customers shall let them passe without delay, according to this our Let-ter of sauder. And when source the Merchants shall be defiron: to send any of their owne Countreymen to their owne Land, or me any other Knadoma over Land: they had doe it freely with our Imperial
to their owne Land, or me any other Knadoma over Land: they had doe it freely with our Imperial
Maightes order, without carrying any Commodatie suce with them, and they flash base their Letters of
Paffegium them in the Embaffalour Office. And concerning any matters of debate or convowerfe in Merchandize, or insurve, then they shall be indeed by the Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie Vassily Yacolowich Shelcolou, doing right and Institute to both parties with equitie and truth. and what cau-120100 VICL SINCOVICE, and program was soften were not proven the vice of the late of the Officers shall doe true Institute them: and what cannot be sought out by Law shall be sought out by Lor shall be tought out by Lor shire Lor that it taken out shall have right done wnto him as before mentioned, as also they shall not 40 take any custome or dutie of them for any Law matter, not in any place in our Kingdome. Moreover. this our Impersall Letter in all our Realme and Dominion, our Officers, and all manner of our subjects hall not disobey or breake it in any point what somer, but of there bee any that doth disobey this our Imperiall Letter of fauour, that then those people shall bee in our high displeasure, and executed to death. This our Imperial Letter of gratitude, is given at our Imperial Palace and House in our Citie of Mosko, from the yeare of the beginning of the world 7107. in the month of November: being under-

By the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Boris Pheodorowich of all Russia , selfe-upholder ; bis Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie by name Vassily Yacolowich Sheallcaloue.

#### d. III.

One pretending himselfe to be DEMETRIVS, with the Popes and Poles belpes assayneth the Ruffian Empire : his Arts, Acts, Marriage, fauour to the English, and miserable end.

Auing thus prefented you Berich is Tragedie out of that printed Author, and his Grant to the English from a written Cooke in Castlean and Author, and his furely and mature view of this Pretender, against whom Born his defire of secrecie (permitting none guiltie of the murther to furuiue) had vnfurnished him of Arguments. He produced a Parie given him by his Mother; with the Historie of his life after that fending him away and acknowledging another whom the was more willing to act that bloudy

Scene then her own Son: with other particulars which ored firing confidence in fuch as (wears of Boris) were defirous it should be so. But for the death of the youg Emperor, & his mother, it is by most ascribed to Demetrius, who seeing the people of Musco his friends, and the Emperour and his Mother in hold, pretended he could not come thither whiles his enemies lived, wherewpon they in a mutime flue them; to auert the enuie whereof, it is probable that it was made to be their owne act, and their Keepers therefore by him imprisoned. Born his daughter was thrust into a Numerie, and so made dead also to the succession. But as I have before delivered out of that diligent, learned and sincere Historian Thuanna, Boris his attayning the Scepter, Ishall likewife intreat your patience out of him to receive thefe Relations of Demetrins.

Tbs.L. 125.

Thus we writech that after the murther of that (true or falle) Demetring, some yeeres after in the horders of Polonia and Musconia, appeared one which called himselfe Demetrins , and in testimonie thereof, shewed a Warr in his face, and one arme shorter then the other (noted before in the true Demetrisu) a man of sharpe wit, bold courage, liberall mind, gentle behaviour, and of parts composed to a Scepter-worthinesse. First, was he made knowne to the Iesuites of princia feut reacher, or pall note in Poland, to whom he promited if he might receive helpe for the recovery of his just Inheritance, his first care should be to reduce the Ruffians to the Vnion of the Ramish Church, This thing was commended to the Pope as conducing to the enlarging of the holy See, by his ayde, and furtherance with the Polifo King and Nobilitie, to be promoted; which also was done by the seluites themselves, who brought him to George Miscins Palatine of Sendemir a man potent in that Kingdome, with whom he couenanted also to marrie his Daughter if hee succeeded 20 in his Ruffian Enterprize. He had lurked awhile in Liefland, cafting off his Cowle, and had there learned to speake and write the Latine Tongue : and had written to Pope Clement the Eighth, with his owne hand not inelegantly. And being by the faid Palatine, and Vifnonitz this Sonne in Sigifmunds fa- Law, brought before King Sigifmund, he made a pithy and Malculine speech, that he should remember that himfelfe had beene borne in Prifon and Captinitie, whence Gods mercie had deining oned by linered him, to learne him to fuccour others afflicted with like difaffre. Thus by the Kings favour, the Palatines money, the Issuites industrie ( not to mention the

Popes Sanctitie) he procured an Armie of ten thousand Souldiers in Toland well furnished, and

in his Russian March, winneth to his partie the Cossaks a kind of men which follow forreigne

Warres and prey, and leades with him tenne thousands of them. Paffing Borifibenes hee first 30

COT.LS.

Zersiga,

charged upon Zernies,& fummoned them to yeeld to the true heire Demetrine, which was done by Inan Takmeny, who had before conceived diffike against Boris. Coreles commanded the Cof-Patient yel- fate, anotorious Sorcerer. He was the Author of the fiege of Patienta a populous Citie, which Michelowich Sotiekoni held with eight thousand Coffeks, whom also he wrought with, that hee admitted and followed Demetrins. Hereupon Born lends an Army of an hundred thousand men again't him. He alfo fends Ambassadors into Poland, to put them in minde of the league betwixt both Nations, and earnestly desired this counterfeit Demetrine, a Priests Bastard and notable Sorcerer, to bee delivered vnto him alive or dead, adding threats if they periffed, and withall working under-hand with the Nobles to deterre the King from his ayde. But by the Popes and Islantes preuayling power nothing was effected, the King and the Poles refoluing to affift him, 40 as thinking it the bell course to accord both Nations.

Both Armies met at Nouogrod, where Palatine Sendomir the Generall, in the end of Ianuarie

1605, thinking to find a repole in the Ruffian Armie, gave a rash on-set, & was put to slight, and

atter returned to Poland. Demetrine retyred himfelfe to Rilikie Calife (in the borders) with a

few, and forfaken of others, he forfooke not himfelfe. Hee had brought with him two Dinines

Louitzi, which had beene Authors of the Expedition, and now encouraged him by their exhor-

tations and examples of parience. He confident (as hee made flew) in the julice of his caule,

The Pa'atine

ciftercions and of the Ciftercian Order which returned home : two Issuites also, Nicolas Cherraconi and Andrew

confi :cut Prayer.

when he was to begin battell or skirmish, vied to call vpon God, so as he might bee heard of all, with his hands thretched forth, and his eyes lifted up to heaven, in fuch like words. O most infi Indge kill me first with a Thunderbolt, deftroy me first, and spare this Christian blond, if vniustly, if 50 conctoully, if wickedly I goe about this Enterprize which thou seeft. Thou seeft mine innocencie, belpe the inst can'e. To thee O Queene of Heaven I commend my selfe and these my Souldiers. Which if they be truly related, and he not the true Demetrine, he was either an impudent lugler, or exceedingly gulled with fortunes daliance and prosperous successe, which condition in a Tragical period.

Bialogrod;

Part of Bors his Armie was now comme to Riliky, where in a battle betwire the horsemen or both parts, Demetrius got the better, and the lately conquered, and prefently fewer, became V .-Hors; at the first encounter a thousand being flaine, two hundred taken, and the rest put to hight, leauing their footmen to the flaughter, and the baggage to the spoyle. Hereupon fine neighbouring Castles with their seuerall Territories, yeelded to Demetrins, one of which, Bialogrod yecded him a hundred and fiftie Peeces of Ordnance. The Captaynes were delivered into his hands. Soone after Ialeka and Leptina yeelded, in which Hinsko Otiopeius that famous Sorce-Seucia yeelds. rer was taken : after which all Seucria, a large Principalitie, came in, and eight Caffles ; Demetrius vling great modestie in this vnexpected victorie. Boris memewhile tent tome with large

promites to murther him, and the Patriarke excommunicated all which fauoured him. Demetrius writ hereof modeltly to the Patriarke, and to Bons allo, extering faire conditions to his Family, if he would refigne his viurped Empire, which he with indignation rejected. That happened when the Emballadors of Denmarke and Sweden were in his Course to young league with Borndych him against the Pole. In that consultation Born is faid to have beene in such rehate, that hee fell Some say, that downe juddenly, much bloud palling from his mouth, nofthrils and eares; and in the end of A. hec had vo d downe fuddenly, smuch office paring from an inouting poylon which hee drunker; after the had to poylone a form a poylon with Agus the prill hee dyel; fome fay of an Apoplexie, others, of poylon which hee drunker; after the had to poylone. reigned fenen yeeres. His Wife with her Sonne were advanced to the Throne after him, and the thirs. Nobilitie fworne to them. The dead bodie was buried without any, pompe. Conflantine Filler a Nequeenim lex

10 Lieflander of Rie made an elegant Oration in his prayle, whole brother Gaffer terued Borit. influt via eft. ieflunder of Kie made an eiegant Giacom mins preyns, reien ... Hodunins (a neere Kinfmin of H). quam neis at-Prefently Peter Basman was tent away with an Armie. Hodunins (a neere Kinfmin of H). quam neis atris ) besieged Crom, to rayle whom, Demetrius vied this policie. Hee sent a simple man thither, vice sus which being deceined himselfe might deceine others, with Letters that fortie thousand with some fay at comming to ayde the befreged. He being taken (fent by a way which he could not efeape) aird 60000 min. examined with tortures confesseth the fame with his Lesters : which caused a turnult in the Campe; and in the end, the besieged taking advantage of the rumour still increased by some sent purposely with reports that they had feen the new auxiliaries issued with a counterfeit shew of great numbers, and caused the Russians to consult of yeelding Basman also the new General Basman yeels ye lided and cried out with a loud voyce, that Demetrins was the true heire, and therefore all true d.th. 20 hearted Muscouites should follow his example; which the most followed. Hedanius was taken, and refusing to acknowledge Demenius was call in Prilin. In the Tents were huge Ordnance to al. After this Campe-alteration, followed the like in Mofco, the people refounding the

that they poyfoned themselves, some that Demetrius commanded it The Germanes flying out of the Boriffian Campe to Demetrins drew many with them.

From Cromdo. h Demetrius now march towards Mosco, the people all the way flocking to see their new Prince, who in twentie remoues came thither on the 19. of lune, and entred with Demetrins compompous procession of Souldiers & Priests, the Ruffian Priests having Banners with the Pictures meth to Moles, of the bleffed Virgin and their Turclare Saint Nicolas in the end of al the Patriarch, and after him entrance, Demetrius by himfelfe on a white Palfray with a gallant trayne of attendants. Thus hee goeth to the Temple of our Ladie, and after Prayers, from thence to Saint Michaels Church in which his Father lay buried, and hearing that Boris lay there interred, he prefently commanded his body to be taken vp and to be removed to a meaner Chappell without the Citie. Paffing by Boris his peculiar House, he could not endure the fight, but fent workemen prefently to race the same;

name of Demetrins. The En presse and her sonne were committed to ward, where some write

faying, they were infamous with Sorceries, and that an image was faid to be placed under the ground, holding in the hand a burning Lampe, having vnderneath ftore of Guopouder buried; things fo dispoted, that the Ovle failing, and the Lampe breaking, the fire should (had it not heene before spied and removed) blow up that, and the houses adioyning. Thus had Boris impeached him, and he now Borie of Mag call arts, which are vitual acculations in those parts.

Thenche went to the Imperial Pallice, and beganne to gouerne the Empire, more inclining to the Poles and foreuners, then to the Refles which variantly experfing himselfe, hafined his ed. ruine. Seventie nuble Families of Borie his kindred or faction were exiled, that their Goods might be hared among't strangers, and new Colonies of men planted, brought into Russia. His clemency was remarkable to Smith, who being condemned for not onely refusing to acknow- Clemencie to ledge this Emperour, but vetering allo reproachfull speeches of him (as being of bate Parentage, Snike). and one which had conforred with the Poles to ouerthrow the Ruffian Temples, & Nobility) and now his prayers ended, and the fatall stroake on his knees expected, on the feauenth of July, by wnexpected mercy, even then received his pardon. The last which yeelded to him were the Plescouites. Sometell of exceeding Treasures also which hee found laid up for other purposes,

which through his profusenelle soone vanished. The first of September, was designed to his inanguration (being New yeeres day to the Ruffer, as sometimes to the lower) but for other caufes it was haltned, and his Mother was fent for out of a Monasterie (into which Boris had thrust her) far e from the Court. An honorable Conuoy was herein employed, and himfelfe with Refrect to his great shew of Pietie went to meet her, embraced her with teares, and bare-headed, on foot, at- Moihettended her Chariot to the Castle; whence afterwards the removed with her women into a Monafterie where the Noblett Virgins and Widdowes of Ruffia vie to fequetter themselves from the World. His Mother was noted to answere with like affection to him, whether true or diffembled on both parts. At his entrance to the Kingdome, after Ceremonies ended. Nicolas

Chermaconius a Iesuite made him a goodly Oration : the like was done by the Senate. To the Ie- Iesuite. 60 fuits was alotted a faire place of entertaynment not far from the Caffle, wherein to observe the Romille Rices and Holies and even then by their meanes he had declared himfelfe in that point, but for feare of Suiskie hee stayed till fitter oportunitie.

Having thus letled things, his care was to recompence the Poles, to enter league with that Na. Emb. flige w tion, and to confummate the Marriage. For which purpose hee fent three hundred Horfemen Polast.

with Athanasius the Treasurer, who in November came to Crassuia, had audience of King Signmand, where he with all thankfulneffe acknowledged the Kings forwardneffe with his Nobles to recouer his right, whereto God had given answerable successe beyond expectation; that bles to recover many; y where or an angeneration to the property of the deployed the Tuncja including in Harmy and other parts it. vimilitate which, he would willingly joyne with the Pole, and other Christian Princes: meane whiles he was willing to make an cuestafting league with him, and to that end entreated his good leave to take vitto himfelte a Wife out of Poland, namely, Anna Maria, the Daughter of George Miccinfie the Palaine of Sendomir, to whom for money, men, and endangering of his owne life, bee was so much engaged. The eight day after, the Contract was folemnely made by the Cardinall, Bishop of Cregaged. The eight day arter, the contract waston the King, Demetrius had sent her and count, and the Embast dour with her Parents featled by the King, Demetrius had sent her and 10 herFather, Iewels worth 200000. Crownes.

Thus farre have wee followed Thuanus, and hee lacobus Margaretus a French Captayne of Demetrus guard of Partifant, which published a Booke hereof. Now let vs present you alittle English Intelligence touching this Demetrins and his respect to men of our Nation in those parts, and first his Letter to Sir lobn Mericke.

The Copie of a Letter fent from the Emperor DEMETRY EVANOWICH, otherwife called GRISHCO OTREAPY OV: the which Letter was fent to Mafter IOHN MERRICK Agent, out of the Campe, as Mafter MERRICK was ta- 29 king his Iournie to the Sea fide, the eighth of Iune, Anno 1605.

Rom the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia. To the Eng-I lith Marchant John Metrick, wee gine to understand, that by the init indgement of God and bis strong power, we are raised to our Fathers throne of Vladedmer, Mosko, and of all the Empire of Rus-12; as great Duke and fole commander: likewife we calling to memorie the love and amitte of our Father the great Lord Emperour and great Dute Euan Vassily wich of all Russia, and our Brother Theodor Eunowich of all Russia, which was beld, and kept by them and other great Christian Princes, in the GOT ELISTON NEW 9 ARE COURTS PROTES THE WORLD, STORE OF THE COURT OF THE STORE OF THE COURTS AT I FREE FROM THE COURTS OF THE CO and all you bis English Merchants, we will fanour more then before. Further, as soone as this our Letter and ally see us English intercounting or one passes more case wifee a minimum process can our letter do to come to your boad, and all come as you becaused your Markets at the Jopping place of Michael the Archangell, then to come up to Molico to behold our Maissites prefere, Andry row posts Hofe I have commanded shall be given you, and at your comming to Mosco, then to make your appearance in our Chancery, to our Secretarie Ofanasy Vlassou. Written in our Maiesties Campe at Tooly, in the yeare of the world Anno seasen thou fand one bundred and thirteene.

The Copie of the translation of a Passe given to Master I o HN MERRICK, which was given him in the time of his being in the Campe at Molodone with the Emperour DEMETRY EVANOWICH, otherwife called GRISHCO OTREAPYOVE.

Rign the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Demetry Buanowish of all Rusha, from Mosco to our Cities and Cailles, as also to the Casile of Archangell at the Shipping place and haven to our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers, &c.

There did make suite unto us the English Marchant John Merricke and his Company, that we would gratific them to be suffered to passe to the new Castle of Archangell, or to the shipping place or hanen, is regard of irafficke of Merchandise.

Alfo, that if he doe send home any of his fellowes and servants from the shipping place, being of the English, that then they might be suffered to paffe into England. Alfo that to what some Citic of ours the English Marchant John Mericke, and his fellowes, doth or Shall come unto then all yee our Generals, Secretaries, and oil other our Officers, shall suffer them to passe enery where, without all delay. And as for our Customes, as for passing by or for bead mony, our custome of goods, you shall not take any of them nor of sheir servants. Lucaussa, when the English Merchants Ichn Metticke with his follows and servants, Shall come to the Castle of Archangell, then Timophey Matphewich Lazaroue, and our Secretary Rohmaneum Mocaryoue, Voronoue, as the forefaid Caffle of Archangell, hall suffer and permit the English Merchant, John and his companie to trade freely. Moreover, when at the stopping Place they baue ended and finished their Markets, and that then the fasd Iohn Metricke Shall defire 10 60 fend into England any of his fellowes or fernants with goods, then likewife they shall be suffered to passe. But Ruff: people, and other strangers of Molco shall not be suffered to passe surther : that if John Merricke with his fellowes and sermants doe not goe for England : but after their Market is ended doe purpose to come backe againe to Moleo; that then at the Castle of Archangel Timophey Matphewich

Lazaroue, and our Secretarie Rohmaneeu Voronaue; at alfo at all other our Castels and Cities. our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers shall let paffe the English Merchant John Merricke with his fellower and fernants, without all flay or hinderance, and as for custome of them, their goods, or their fermants, there fhall not be any taken.

And after the Rending of this our Letter and Paffe, you Shall keepe the Copie of it by you : but this you hall deliner backe agains to the faid John, and bu companie. Written at our Campe at Molodone, the yeare from the beginning of the World 7113. the eighteenth of Iune.

#### The last of July 1605. at Archangell.

- The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was sent from the Mosks, from the Emperour DEMETRY EVANOWICH, alias GRYSHCA OTREAPYOVE by a Courtier named GAVARYLA SAMOTLOWICH SALMANOVE, who was fent downeto the Castle of Archangell, to Sir THOMAS SMITH, then Lord Embaffadour : as followeth.
- He great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia, hath commanded Gausteela Samoylowich Salmanoue, to got to Vologita, and from Vologita to the new Cassia Archangell, or where some the salmanoue, the English Ambassassor Sir Thomas Smith. Also when be bath outrook; the Ambassadour, then Gauarcele shall find the Ambassadour bis Interpreter Ri-chard Finch, milling him to certifie unto the Ambassadour, that the great Lord Emperour and great Dute Demetry Euanowich, fole commander of Ruffia, bath fent unto him one of his Courtiers, in regard of bis Maissties affaires : and after some two boures respite, Gauarcela himselfe soall ride to the Ambafadour, and deliner vato bim bie Maiesties speeches, as followeth.
- He great Lord Emperour and great Duke Demetry Evanowich of all Russia, and of many King. A domes Lord and commander, Hath commanded thee, Thomas the English Ambasadour, to certific unto lames, King of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, that by the sust indgement of God, certific time I america, a may a sugarating securitative area attendance as you are set in angenties of voil, and the little general way are man and increased into the place of our Father and protections: a stife we are come to the throne of the great and flamous Kingdome of Vlodemer Molto, and to the Empire of Cazan, Altarican and Siberia, and of all the Kingdomes of the Baptive of Rullis, being an Empire belonging to the great Lord, Emperours, and great Dukes of all Rullis. Moreomer, we calling to me. morie ibe fending, lose and amitie betwixt our Father, ibe great Lord and Emperour, and great Duke Evan Vasily wich of all Russia, of famous memorie : as also our Brother, the great Lord and Emperour and great Duke Feoder Euanowich of all Ruffia, fole commander, with their fifter Elizabeth, Queene of England : in the like manner doe we purpose to have sendings, and to be in love with your Lord King
- 40 lames, and more then bath bin in former sime. And in token of our faid lone and amitte, we doe intend to fanour all bis subjects in our Land, and to give onto them freer libertie then they have bad heretofore; and you his Ambasadour, we have commanded to dispatch without all delay or bundrance. Therefore me would have you to make knowne unto your Lord King lames,our Maiesties lone. And as foone as God Shall grant the time of our Coronation to be finished, and that we are crowned with the Emperiall crowne of our predecessours, according to ourmanner and worthinesses, then we the great Lord Emperor, and great Duke Demeetry Euanowich of all Ruffia fole Commander, will fend our meffenger to falute each other. according to the former manner. And concerning those Letters which were fent by you from Bosris Godenoue, we would have you deliner them backe againe to our Comtier Gauarcela, and after the delimerse of our freeches to returne him to the Emperour, under written by the Chancellour Ofanaly Euanowich Vialeou.

The Copie of the Translation of a new Priviledge that was gluen to the Company, by the Emperour DEMEETRY EVANOWICH, otherwise called GAYSHCA OTREAPY OVE, the which Priviledge was sent into England over-land by OLYVER Lys set Marchant, and servant to the foresaid Company.

OD, the Trenitie, before, and without the beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the boly Ghoft, 60 Lestablifo us to hold and keepe our Scepter and Realme for the good of our Land, and the happinesso of our people. Wee the resplendant and manifest, and not the miserable upholder, but sole commander, the great Duke Demetry Eurnowich, by the mercy of God, Cafar and great Duke of Rusha, and of all the Empire of Tartaria, and many other Kinodomes; as also of the great Monarchie of Moico. Lord Emperous and Commander, Have bestowed, and gratified unto the English Merchants, viz. Sir

Thomas Smith, Knight, Sw Iohn Spencer, Knight, Sir Humfrey Wild, Knight, Robert Doue, Robert Chamberline, William Garaway, John Haruey, Richard Stapers, John Merricke, Richard Wryght, Richard Cocks, Thomas Farrington, Richard Wych, George Bowles. Bartholomew Barnes, Richard Bowldra, John Caften, Edward Chery, Thomas, the fonne of Alexander alres Hicks:we bane given them free liberty to come with their lips into our Realme and Dominion, and to the Country of Dwina, or to the Cafile of Archangel, and to Colmogro, with all maner of commodities, and to trade freely, as also to come from the sea side by land or by water to our great dominion and Calats (in of Moico, & great Nouogrod and Vobsko, and all other cities within our dominions, to trade with all manner of commodities, in the same forme and manner, as heretofore was bestomed on the English Merchants, in the time of our father of famous memory, the great Lord and Cafar, and great Duke Euin 10 Vassigwich of all Russia, sole Commander, and as was granted unto them in the time of our Brother the great Duke Theodor Enanowich of all Ruffi fole Commander. And as for cuftome of their goods, or for passing by, as also for the cuttome of their boates, or for Head-money, or for going our brudges or Fer-Tes, or for entrie of goods, As also all manner of Custome what soener, we command shall not bee taken of them: Alfo the English Merchants shall not bring nor fell other mens goods in our Dominion, at their owne : neither shall our Subjects buy, or fell, or traff-pue for. Also our Subjects pawnes they shall not keep by them, nor fend others about the Cities to buy goods : but what Cities they come into themselmes they shall trafficke and sell their owne commodities, and buy R. sic commodities freely: And when they come ento our Dominion of great Nouogrod and Vobsko, or to any other Cities within our Realme to traffiche with their goods, and that after the market is past, they shall bee desirous to passe for Mulco, or for Eng. 19 land, then our Gentlemen and Concroners, and all people shall according to this our Carlats Letter, let them paffe without delay, and at for Customes for them and their goods they shall not take any. And whither some they passe with their goods, without buying any commodities, or selling their owne; Then wonvergreens two page with vere year, a common one of them any manner of Custome what fewer as before therenje in the Custo two fluid page, and not take of them any manner of Custome what fewer as before a fe the English Merchants shall trafficke as submets; They shall baster their manage goods, by the most Salectorh by the Packe, and by the Clothes: Damaske and Veluet not by the piece, but by the are shine and by retaile and retaile weights they hall not barter or fell. Alfo goods, which is foldby meight, by retaile, or by the Zolotnicke they hall libers fe not fell. And Claret wine they hall fell by the piece, but by retaile, as by the Veader stop, or Pot and Charck they Shall not fell. Liberisfe they Shall buy and fell, And barrer their goods themfelmes : but the Russe Merchant shall not fell nor barter their goods for them ; neither 10 Shall they carry other mens goods in colour of their owne, not to any place what sower. Also if the English Merchants beeminded to make side of their commoduties at Colmogro, or on the Dwina, or at Vologda, or at Yerastaue, then they shall doest freely. And for their said goods in all our Cities within our Realme, our Gentlemen and Governors, and all manner of our Officers shall not of them take any Tole or custome, according to this our Cusars Letter of Fanor. And in all our Cities within our dominion, they shall byre Carryers Boats, and men to row them freely as before. And as the order is of the Merchants within our Realme : so likewise if the English Merchants be destrout to goe out of our Realme, into any other Kingdome, or into their owne Country: as also if they bee destrous in our Realme to buy any Staother Angaome, or the steer event commers: no myoty ever over earnesses over Acaims to our any any ste-ple commoditie, and to carry it into their owne Land, then shall they likewife buy and trassick freely at pleasure, and those Staple commodutes which are fitting for our Calars Treasure, they shall likewise bring 43 it to our Treasure freely at pleasure, and for the said Staple commodities in all our Cities, our Officers shall not take any manner of Custome : but they shall suffer them to passe without any slaying of them, Alfo when the English Merchants have ended their market, and shall desire to goe from the Mosco, then they shall appeare in the Embassadours Office, to our Chancellour and Secretarie Euan Cowrbatou Hramoteenop. Moreoner, if that by the providence of God, the English Merchants have any Sipwracke, and that the faul ship bee brought or driven to any place within our Realme, then our Casas commandement to those places where the ship is brought in, that our menin office doe seeke out the English Merchants posted insifty, and a guesterm to the English people then field been at that time in our leave and to English.

Adverbants good insifty, and a guesterm to the English people then field been at that time in our Land.

But if at that time there has more of them in our Realime, then to guider them together, and to far from up in one place : and so when the English Morchants doe come there, by our Castars Order, to deliner 50 those goods to the faul Merchants. And whereas the English Merchants according to their former Letters of Fanor had a house in the Molco by the Church of the holy Maxim by the market, which was granted was them by our predections the great Lord and Calar of Relia, be faid English Merchants [ball dwell in the faid bough as benestative they bene done: Keeping one bough super a Rulle, or me of their owne ftrangers, but any other Russes they shall not keepe. Moreover the faid English Merchants baue bouses in other Cities, a bouse at Yerastaue, a house at Vologia, a house at Colmogro, and a house at the flipping place at the Castle of the Archangell : and those bouses they shall keepe and hold by them, according to our Calars Fanour or Gratitude, as in former time they base done, and for any subsidie, rent dutie, or any custome what somer for the faid houses there shall not be any taken of them: and their cther boufes, as at Yerallaue , Vologda , Colmogro and Archangell, they fhall have boufe-keepers of 60 their owne countrie-men or Ruffes, but the Ruffes Rall bes meane men. a man or two at aboufe: And they shall lay their goods in those houses, and likewise shall make sale of their goods out of their houses, to whom they will, according to this our Calars Letter of Fanour, and their house-keepers being Ruffes shall not buy ar fell any manner of commodities in their absence. Also they shall come with their ships to

the shipping place, as before with their Commodities, and to unlade out of the shippe sheir goods; and to lade their shippe with Russe goods with their owne goods oner in their owne Boats and Veffels, to their owne boufe at the Caffle of Archangell. And what fremer goods they base, our chiefe Customer, and Officert, and Sworne men, Shall take a note of the goods under their owne firme, both of goods they bring in, and alfo of goods they carry out. But they hall not looks over, neither unpacke their packes in any place; as also they shall suffer them to passe me all places, without all flay or deley, according to this our Catlets privilege and Letter of famme. Also whensever the English Merchants shall be destrous to send out of our Realme into their owne Land any of their ferments. enerland, er outo other. Kingdomer, then they final likewije fond their people over land with own Coates or-the freely, thu westbout carying any Commodistics, and their pagle final be given them in the Embalfadores office Funtion concerning any matter of controverfie that any man fall bane to doe with them other in .... bargaining, or in ineury, according to this our Cziars order they foal be indged by our Counfeder and So cretar) Eun Comroatou Hramotecu . Therefore, at before, whereformer they, or any of their farmants. in all our Boulous; in what Civic forner, have any matter of contronerfie in Bargaining, or in Immrie a. gamft any man, or that any man have any matter against any of them, then mall our Cities, our Gentles men, and Godernours, and all abor our Officers, fall indge them, doing inflice betwies either of them with equitie and truth. Therprintedge or letter of fanour was given at our Calars Pallace of Molco. 20 From the world Anno 7813 in the moneth of December.

The Copie of the Translation of a Contract, made by the Emperour DEMERAT EVANOWICH, otherwise called GRYSHCAOTREAFY OVE, and the daughter of the Palatine SENDAMERSKO, chiefe Generall of Poland, in the time of DEMETRY his being in Poland, the which was sent ouer by Master I o H N MERRICE, and translated out of Ruffeinto English for the Kings Maiestic, as fol-

A True Translation of a priting out of Polithimso Russe, given by a Adomte who left his babit, called by the mane of Grythea Orcapyoue, supposed to be the Son of the Emperour Euan Vassiliwich, manuel Democtry Euanowich, who game this after once under his stime, to the Palatine Sendamersko, at alfo bith beene anouched by one Bewicheesko, principal Secretary unio the faid Demetry before all the Nobilitie of Rulsia that this faid writing was written by the Generall his owne hand, as

Wer Demetry Eunnowigh, by the mercy of God, Prince of all Ruffis, of Owgleets Demetry-uskoy, and Lord of all the Super of Molico, and being of the flocks of Prestrone; Calling to memoria our former life, being not in the forms and measurer, as is in other great Mangrechies, as was in the time our jorners let, beam, met in thes transe automaner, as in a stere great secondition, at wal is let time of a few freedingers, and while Carliftian speak. Neutribulify, by the prosidence of first disnightive from whom proceeded to designating and an end, and from whom comments life and death. We have by time friend and made closely true our field, write good high, in the time of per when for it he Kangdome of Pelands, of a Companion, of great and hourseled to this, and of gody education; and it finds a companion, with whom we find if y the more coffeed, line peaceably: whose the refishends and Nobel Lach Marina, daughter to the great Pelantin Scademersko. And open this occasion have saken him for our Father, and baning requested of him to give vuto ve bis Daughter Maryon in mariage, and in regard that wee are not set in our owne Kingdome, therefore doe we purpose hereafter to take or der for her comming sonto us with the Generall Sendamersky. Lakewise, when I doe come to line in my wome Kingdome then shell the Palatine Sendamersko remember bis fatthfull and true promofe with his Daughter, the Lady Mary va ber vow, my felfe remembring my owne vow, and so beth of us to hold it fathfully with lone and effection 30 on, and to shat end doe we binde our felues by our writings. Likewife, first and principally, in the name of

the baly Trinnia, I doe give my faithfull and true princely promife, that I will take in marriage the Lady Maryrra, I fan the contrary, I doe not, then, I wish that I might grue this as a curse upon my selfe: alfo, fo foone as I hall make entrance into our Kingdome, and heritage of Musco, then will I give the Palatine, the Lord her Father, aremard of tenne thousand peeces of Polith gold. And to whell ade Mary na our mife, in confideration of her great and long lourney, as also for the providing and furnish; and states ing of ber felfe, I will give out of my Treasure Veluets wronghe with Silver and Gold. And the Mef- 100 min fengers that shall be four to me from the Lord her Father, or from the Ludy her felfe. I shall not hald or keepe, but shall let them passe, and will reward show with gifts, which shall be a token of som Princely fai-60 Mont ; and thereunto doe we give this our Princely promujo. Secondly at some as we shall come to the sus-periall throne of our Father, then presently will we send our Embassadour to the resplendant King of Po-

of Duning

com neutrick. ers Abarle in

flick with

risua: sare I

land to certific with him, at all to intrease him to take knowledge of this business nom passed becomes v., and withall that he would be pleased to suffer vito conclude and effect this our said businesse, methouse loffe or bindrance, Alfo unto the forenamed Ludy Mary na our wife, we give two Lord bus, viz. Noungrod

the great, and Vobsko, with all the Proninces belonging to the same, with Gouns fellors, Gentlemen, and the great, and v 00020, were not the Frontiers vertically one symme, who versigness, vocationes, and Treeman, and Frields, fitting for a Congregation, to raise and questre freely with full authority in the fame forme and manner, as for raised. And my fift to have no some regions raise on matherite in the faile one Citize of Nowegod and Vobako: and thereunes due I binde my felfe with this writing, and does wholly gine and bestow all on the said Lady Maryna that is contained in this writing, as some as by Gods. below we shall be married together, and thereunto have given this our writing . Sealed with our princes Scale. But if by chance our mife hath not by us any children, then in the fe two Lordhips before specified. free load place men in authornic of her owne, to gonerne and to dee inflice : and also it shall be free for the faid men in authoritie, to give Lands and Inberitance to their more Souldiet; and to trade freely the just meet an answerm, a government, and as though it were as their owne true and leminist domining to Promite of go, and should be designers, and to the system for the state of the stat des Schwiese, pur pro ver joye en arms and remaine unes une common common for except promise de many sa falla de meschefult so he per for her some gold Nomin Kerligen, without all son have mescade as wee our faife by the werey of God are already inclined to the fame, for will was descriptionable entirely as we em fair or no werry of the a menday mechanics to the fame, to only need engroyed made estimate to come, for the fameness to know all the Kingdomes of Molice to the terminder of the Romain Ratificial and to fer up the Church of Rome. Also, if God front dwe grams out our year facility, whereby this to performed within a yeare; then is shall be at the pleasure of our Father to separate mee, and his daughter Maryna. But if it pleafe him to forbeare till another yeare, then doe I paffe this my Bill, with my some hand writing, and thereunto I have sworne my selfe, and given a vow according to the holy order, and all in this Bill to bold and beepe carefully: as also that I shall bring all the Russe people to the Latine Religi. 20

on. Written at Sambore the fine and twentieth of May, in Anno 1604. Finderneath washis firme to all

Ow let va returne with Thusans, into Poland, where with his Historical vies we see this glo-rious Spoule, her Father, Vincle, & trayne of women accompanying the Russian Embalidor

in his returne; whom many Merchanes out of Italia and Germanie followed in hope of gaine. In

of Courtiers and Nobles, attended the Spoule to the Court, where thee was folentiely enter-

Prince Demetry of Owglets.

this lingring journey, they continued from the end of landary to the fixe and twentieth of Aprill, before they entred Mofes. And the feuenth day after, Peter Buffmen with a great troupe

this fore (aid as appeareth:

typind by her Hubband, and thence consuighed to the Monafters where his Mother abode. The 10 fourth day after, all things being prepared, thee was brought into the Palses, and other next day. married to him by the Patriarch after Eurning Prayer Both of them also, folemnely crowned returned with found of Musick and Ordnance into the Castle, and the might passed with great lubilee, Demetrine his mind being filled not withfranding with cares. For a conformer which had beene hatching fixe moneths, now growing to riperiele, terrified firm against which hee had armed himselfe with forreigne aides. At first hee had brought a guard of Germanes out of Peland, which being without example of his Predeceffors, and feeing it dilliked of his fobjects; hee difmiffed, together with all forren Souldiers, They being thus fentaway without pay ; returned with the casheered Polanders to the borders, where they committed many our rages to the greater discontent of the Ruffes. Many of them found grieumoed notwithstanding; in his too 40 much respect to the Poles : and many made questions of his birth. Many weig suspected of conspiracie, and divers tortured, which was but quenching fire with Dyle, the flume growing greater. And now begarme Demotrine torepent of his haftie difmiffing his guards, and began a new Check-roll of Lieflanders and Germanes, to which her added; an hundred Employ Helbers \* I suppose diers and as many Scots (their Captaynes hee calleth Marshias Confirmus and " Albert Lant) this should bee and an hundred French under laques Margiret armed with Partifant; Then also he inlarged his

Gilbert: for one pay, but too late. writ also commentaries o. thefe af-I have much purpole in our Merchants

Alexander Gofenstie Corninus was fent Embaffadour from Poland with rich Prefents and Letten he red of in ters from King Sigifmund to Demering, which because they expressed not the Title of Emperour that place of were not received nor opened. In excuse whereof the Embassiadom reld words vintiferable to feruite, which Ruffian patience, that he should goe and deprive the great Turke of those Tickes." Demotrate diffembled notwithstanding in regard of his past experience, and hoped below from the Pole. The dayes following were spent in pastimes and sloth. Saturday was following were spent in pastimes and sloth. Saturday was following to the Sufficient, a Teast then happening which they preferre before Eafter. The Emperous and Empresse have been made any the first the Pall, and made a great Feaft to their owned to Stangers; in which the Fall Empassion. fought to little dour refused to be prefent, except he might sie at the Princes Table, as the Roffiam Embassadour had beene honoured at Cruconia. The Ruffer denied fiiffety , but Demerius at length yeelded. Many peremptorie and licentious passages happened, the Paler carrying themselves domineeringly to the Ruffer, as Victors to the conquered. Demetrins at first over-bold, now beganne to feare, ty to the Rayer, as recovering and feme for all his guards. On Friday, the Rayer preparing 60 for offence, and the Poles for their defence (for they and not the Prince, feemed to bee then in danger) in the Euening the Nobles command the people to arme against the next day. The Emprese was this while secure, and made ready a magnificent Feast against Sunday. But on Saturday (the fixteenth of the Kalends of June) the Conspirators affemble early, and a great cry is

rayled to kill the Poles and Demerrius. Some greedie of spoyle runne presently to the Poles Lodgings, assault them and embreyle all with slaughters. Others runne to the Castle. Few of the guard were there, delay having bred fecuritie in Demetrins, nor were any of their Captaynes feene. Margaret then lay ficke as he after told me (Thuanus) which difease faued his life. Things were done with fuch furie and celeritie, that many Raffes in Polato attire were flaine before they

Peter Balman came running forth halfe naked, & was killed by one of his own fernants. Swirkie P. Balman flain their Leader, carrying a Sword in one hand, a Crosse in the other, caused the great Bel to be rung in token of fire that Demetrine might be raifed & come forth of his Parlor. He awakned with the

noyfe, now feeing a greater danger then fire, taketh a Turkifb Sword, and fuddenly flips downe out of a window, breaking his legge with the fall, whereby he was eafily taken by the people, Demetrias in and by Smithers command carried into the greater Hall, where Embaffadours have audience. ken and flaine. There some vpbrayding his impostures, he with his sword layd one on the ground : and then defired the Nobilitie to permit him to speake to the people, which was denyed. Some say that he obtayned of Sniskey, that he might be tryed by the teltimonie of Vafilowich his Wife; which being brought out of the Nunnery, affirmed before the Nobles on her oath, that her Sonne Demetring was many yeeres before murthered by Boris his perfidies, which the at first feeing the peoples fauour, and suft revenge on Boris, willingly diffembled, whereupon they ranne vpon him. and with many wounds flue him. Thus writeth Peter Pater fon of Pofal which then was in Consumelious 20 Ruffia. When they had flaine him, they thrust a rope thorow his secret parts, and drew him riage.

thorow the myre into the Market place, where he remayned foure dayes lying all gorie and myrie on a boord, with Peter Basman under it, and an vely Vizar ouer it, a Bag-pipe in his mouth, with other lascinious cruelties exercised on his dead body.

The Palatine Sendomir (or Sandamerske) was blocked up in his House, and other Poles Hou. Poles flaine, fes rifled, many of which died not vareuenged, how foeuer by numbers ouercomne. Viteneskie after much flaughter of the affayling Ruffes, when he faw Ordnance brought, fet forth a white flagge in token of yeelding, bidding his Servants caft abroad his money; which whiles the people were gathering, he and his made way with their Swords with great flanghter, & yeelded to the Boise ous which came from the Caftle. The miferable Bride was not only spoyled of in- The Officene. estimable Treasure, but of all her Apparell, and Iewels, carefult only of her Father and Vncle, and thinking it a happy purchase, if the might saue her hie and recourt her Country. Meanewhile, without her Garment to couer her, without Bed to lye on, without fecuritie of life, shee

white, expected in poore Weeds the iffue of the peoples furie,

Many Merchants endured like fates. Ambrofe Celler, befides the loffe of thirties thousand Merchants Crownes, loft his life. I mier Win was with his own Sword beheaded: Nathen loft one hundred spoyled, and fiftie thousand Florens : Nicolas Limberough fiftie thousand. Two of Ausperg had lent two hundred thouland Crownes to Demetrius, which now was not to pay them. Marcellius loft an Ruffes flaine, hundred thouland Florens. Twelve hundred Poles loft their lives; many were faved by the Boisrens. Foure hundred Ruffes were flayne. At night the tumult ceafed. Scattly would the peop 40 ple giue leaue to bury the bodies after three dayes wallowing in the durt, in the Germané Church-yard.

After this tempelt was calmed, the Boissens affembled in counfell about a new Election, where Smiskey made speech to them, professing himselfe forrowfull for that had passed, in the execution of a just zeale to the Imperiall Family and his Countrey, and in hatred of a cruell Suiden Speech Tyrant: that Inan Vafilowich, how ever injuriously taxed by some, had left Kingdomes annexed to his Inheritance as Monuments of his great fpirit; by whom he had beene fent to Stephen King of Poland to treate of peace, and ever fince had so carried himselfe in the State, that none could juffly blame him : that Iobs being dead, Theodore succeeded, but another ruled, who murthered the yonger brother, and as was thought, after that poyfoned the other; fo attayning the Empire,

which how miferable was it all his time? that Demetrus therefore (whofoeuer he was) found friends, himfelfe amough others, but when their Religion was endangered, Forreiners advanced, Lawes violated, Exotike falhions brought in, liberties suppressed, he with stood with the peril of his life; which it grieued him to have enjoyed, as a Theeues benefit, by his grant which had no right to take it : yet feeing their forwardnesse in a cause so just (would God it had not beene so bloudy) more regarding his Countreyes farety then rumours and reports, hee had beene them Captavne to doe that which God the dispofer of Kingdomes by the successe had appropued, fo that now they were freed from a cruel Tyrant, nor had they any Sorcerer or Importor to mock them : that it remayned now, feeing the Imperiall Family was extinct, they should now feeke one of nobleft bloud, of wifeft experience, of most religious zeale, who might efteeme his peo-

60 ples hearts his strongest Forts, such an one as either is, or is thought to bee the best man to become their Prince. Thus was himfefe chofen Emperour the thirteenth of the Kalends of Iune. He is chofen A writing was published to justifie the killing of Demetrine, a runnagate Fryer called Griffike, or Emperour-Gregorie Strepy, professed in the Monasterie in the Castle (which therefore hee would never enter left hee should bee knowne) with other aspertions of Herefie, Sorcerie, affectation of indu-

The Denill is

cing Popery (the Popes Letters also challenging his promise produced) to give the lefuites Temples, Colledges, and other necessaries; with other over-tures to the Palatine Sanda. merske, for Smolenske, and Nonogrod; his bringing in Poles in Ruffian Roomes, his luxurie, riot, pompe, referring Boris his Daughter in a Numerie with intent of inceffuous luft, having murthered her Mother and Brother; making a filuer Throne with fixe Lions on each fide, and other red: and by therea her Mother and Brother; making a filter Throne with fixe Lions on each fide, and other ill willers, bad pride; abusing Numeries to lust and lascinious fiels, &c. But wee shall give you hereof more auis made worfe, then ticke tellimonie then this of Thurnus in Suiters Imperial Letter to His Majestie. Meane. while touching this Demerrius we will produce a few English Testimonies extracted out of their Letters and Relations : wherein if some circumstantiall discrepance appeare (in things done both fo farre and fo foule in tumultuous furie, where men had rather hide themfelues then be- 10 come witnesses, lest whiles they would bee Spectators, they should bee forced to bee Actors. and have their parts acted in that bloudie Tragedy) it is no maruell. I produce all Witnesses I can. in a cause of so remarkeable consequence, and choose rather to bee proline then negligent, that the Reader out of to much evidence may better weigh and examine the truth.

The former part of this inteligence I found in Mafter Each uges lowing. Occasion of ambition. Beris ill go-

"He late Emperour of Ruffie called by the name of Demetry Enemerich, is now credibly faid (as some of them say) to have beene the Sonne of a Ruffe Gentleman, named Gregorie Pest poloy, and that in his younger yeeres he was shorne a Frier into a Monasterie : from whence her afterwards printly got away, trauelled into Germanie and other Countreyes, but had his most a-Papers, the la. biding in Poland, in which time he attayned to good perfection in Armes and Military know. 20 ter by confe- ledge; with other abilities of infficiencie; Afterwards finding a conceit taken by the Ruffes of a rence, &c. Son fecret conneying away of Demetry Encounich, brother and heire to Phendere Encounced Empeo Gregory Pen-poloy, See Suif- rour; and that some other should be made away in his steed: And finding also the generall distaste keys Letter tol- of the government of Bors then Emperour, who after a faire beginning, did in his latter veeres vphold himfelfe, and his house with oppression and crueltie: And having also many circumstances and oportunities of time and age, and such other likelihoods, to advantage and second his pretence, began first to broach his Title (as before) and by degrees found such a generall acceptation of all forts of people, that it fo daunted Boris, that (as it was then rumoured about) hee first. and afterwards his Wife, and his Sonne succeeding him, made themselves away by Poyson. Demetrial Em- Though now it goeth for certayne, that the poyloning of them was procured by the Pretender, 20 to make the easier way to the Empire, which thereby he obtayned, entring and continuing the

fame with all the State, and greatneffe that fuch a place required : Vntill at length the Ruffer moued rather by other certainties, then by any thing discourred by himselfe, the fixt day after his marriage (which was kept with very great pompe and folemnitie) being the feuenteenth of May last past, taking a time when the Poles stood least on Guard; came to the Court with one confent of Nobilitie and Commons about three of the clocke in the merning, and mastring the Guards, drew the Emperour out of his bed from the Empresse, and charging him that hee was not the true Demetry Eugnowich, but a falfe Pretender, he confessed the Deceit, and was forthwith hewed in pieces by the multitude: Peter Bafman relifting was likewife flaine; and both brought into the Market place, where their bodies lay for a time to bee viewed of every man. The old Queene denied him to bee her Sonne, excuring her former acknowledgement to have 40 proceeded from feare and the generall acceptance which he found amongst the people. As many Poles as made reliftance, were flaine to the number of feuenteene hundred. The new Empreffe

Suiskey Empo-

eight or nine thoutand. And then proceeding to a new Election they choic Emperour Vaffilee Enanowich Shorkey, who not long before was at the Blocke to have been beheaded, for reporting that hee had feene the true Demetry Enauewich after he was dead, and did helpe to burie him. But the Emperour did recall him, and afterwards advanced him to the chiefert place of dignitic about his person. He "This might be rumoured: is the next of bloud " liuing, descended of the Race of the old Emperour Inco Vasilewich, of the Determoured: age of fiftie yeeres or thereabouts, never married, but kept under during Boris time, a Prince of 50 was not of that great wisdome, and a great fauouter of our Nation, as did specially appeare by the care hee had but of very no- to guard the English House from rifling, when the late Demetry was brought in by the Poles.

her Father , his brother with the other Poles were committed to fafe keeping to the number of

ble bloud, See Go in Fletcher Demet in his

The late Precender was o flature low, but well fet, hard fauoured and of no prefence; howfocuer otherwise of a Princely disposition, executing Inflice without partialities And not remitting the infolence even of the Poles; well feene in martiall practiles, and trayning his Noperson describilitie to the Discipline of warre, to make them the readier against the Tartar, not given either to women or drinke, but very liberall and bountifull, which occasioned some grieuous Exactions Some lay that to maintayne the lame. And to conclude, a man in the opinion of fuch as knew him, not vieworhewas not like.

Dometrius and the dame, And to conclude a man in the opinion of fuch as knew him, not vieworhewas not like by the dame, and to conclude a man in the opinion of fuch as knew him, not vieworhewas not like by the dame and the dame that he feemed neffe of his minde, supposing that none of his Subjects durst attempt any such matter against 60 a dozen yeeres his person, when as in the meane time the practice went on with luch a generall Conjuration, elder: but that the Ruffer were summoned by the ringing of a Bell to bee readie to enter the Court. And

perhaps they miliake this for an other after Precender calling himfelfe the fame Demetries, &c. as after thall appeare, a deformed man.

to thake off that Government which would have made them a more noble Nation then formerly they have beene.

IT is reported by fome of Ours, that hee the rather was inclinable to our Nation in the respect he bare to his Majestie, having read that his worthy Worke dedicated to Prince Howis: Hee is faid alfo to have beene a refolute man of his hands, to have delighted in fighting with the Beare; active and strong. I have like wife heard that hee gave the command of his Guard confifting of ftrangers to Captayne Gilbert a Scot; to have made one Buchenskey (a Learned and Reli. Captayne Gilgious Protestant) his Secretarie; and otherwise to have beene so alienated from Ruffilm manners; but manners; but manners; but manners; but manners; so and so well affected to Strangers, that they conspired as aforesaid. The people are said to have entred the Caftle (which was a quadrant, having a high bricke wall of feuen frories, and another of frone, and a Market place) with frones in their pockets (which are rare thereabouts) and fome Stones rare &

Some report from Captayne Gilberts Relation, that lying on his bed not long before his

death (as hee thought; awake) an aged man came to him, which fight caused him to arise and Capraine Gil come to Captayne Gibert, and his guard that watched, but none of them had feene any thing. a Vilion Hereupon he returned to his Bed, but within an houre after he againe troubled with like appa-20 rition called, and fent for Buchinsten: telling him that he had now twice feene an aged man, who at the fecond comming told him, that though for his owne person he was a good Prince, yet the injustice and oppreisions of his inferiour Ministers must bee punished, and his Empire should bee taken from him. In this perplexitie his Secretarie gaue him good and holy counfell, faying till true Religion were there planted, his Officers would bee lewd, the people oppreffed, and God Almightie offended, who perhaps by that Dreame or Vision had admonished him of his dutie. The Emperour feemed much moued, and to intend that good which that Countrey was not fo happy to receive. For a few dayes after (as that Relation auerreth) his Ruffe was not to mappy to receive. For a rew cayes arer (as time electron netteren) pin Knyy.

Scorectaric came to him with a Sword, at which the Emperour felted, and thee findenly after Another man fawrie speeches assumed that the summary other Grander of that Conspiracie, and (like another act of his cay like him, crying Endersh; derive his guards could apprehend the danger; of which some test, were slaine, but the most with Gilder's their Captayne, got to a place called Grang a, which with Galaga.

30 the helps of some Reflect they fortified and held for their defence. "Backinshes the Secretarie was " the help of some angles they continue and deat for their definite. Somewhat the selectarte was taken and imprisoned, the first gers murthered, the English except, who have in all changes been well beloned of the Englisesyss in-leed they defence, having a liway done good ferrice to the Empe-tors, and their interest faced the life of that worthy man Empirity, which they required with

much observance to the succeeding Emperour Saintey, who comes next to be spoken of; and first

d. IIIL

SVISKIT she Successour his Letter to our King, describing the former DEMETRIVS bis Acts and Tragedie.

you fhall have his Letter to our Gracious Souereigne.

The Copie of the Translation of a Letter sent from the new Emperour Valsily Enanowich Shorker to the Kings Maiestie by Master Iohn Mericke.

The love and mercie of God that guideth vs in the wayes of seace, we glorifie with the Trinitie.

I and him called Sheder Suiskey, Zisha, tranflation and

Rome the great Land Emperous and great Date Vafily Eunnowich of all Ruffa, fale Commonder of Voludoner, Manko, Nonogrod, King of Cuzan and Affarcan, of Syberia, Land of Voludoner, and great Date of Smolenko, Twenkoy, Vinhistory, Detrankoy, Vatakoy, Bolharskoy, and of other: Land and great Date of Nonogrodas of the Land Country of Chemego, Rezankoy, Pelotakoy, Rochoukoy, Verthaskoy, Bed. lozerskoy, Leeflanskoy, Owdorskoy, Obdorskoy, Condinskoy, and Commander of all the North parts : alfo Lord of the Land of Ecuerskoy , Cartalinskoy , and over the Empire of the Gotgians of the Land of Cabardinskoy, and Echarskoy Land, libewife of many other Lordings Lord

To our beloned Brother James King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Weegine to winderstand that Sigifmund King of Poland, and great Duke of Letto, on Anno 7109 day fend unto the late Emperour Boris, bu Embassadon named Lewis Sapeago, being Chanceler of the great Duke. dome of Poland, requesting the faid Emperour Boris , that the former league and peace made and concluded upon by the great Lord Emperour and great Dake Theodore Euanowich of all Ruffia, and

him Sigismond King of Poland, might be stedfastly holden and continued till the time of that league were expired. As alfo that the Emperour Botis would inlarge the faid league for thirtie yeeres more, whereupon the Emperour Boris yeelded thus farre unto the request of the King of Poland, that bee would continue the old league till the full time were expired, and affent to a new league for twentie yeares more; and to that effect be tooke an Oath, to hold and keepe all the contents faithfully, montioned in the faid Writing, touching the same league: and instead of the King of Poland, his Embassadour Lewis Sapeagor was sworne in the presence of the Emperour Boris. And after the Polish Embassadour was departed from the Mosko, the Emperour Boris fent unto Sigilmund King of Poland his Emballadour being one of the Prinie Councell, called Michailo Zleabowich Sallcecoue, with some others to and and finish the aforesaid league, to the which league the King of Poland himselfe was sworne in the 10 presence of the Emperours Embassadeur to bold and keepe the Said league faithfully, according to the tenour of their Writing.

But not long after Sigifmund King of Poland, with one Pauarade, entred into fuch a practife, as be therein fallified his Oath, and made way to the shedding of much Christian blond: Pirit, by retayning camil the pre- and upholding one Gryshca Otreapyoue, a Runnagate, a Coniurer, and one that left his profession being a Monke, and ran away out of Rulla into Poland; and being come thither, tooke upon him to be the Son of the great Emperous Euan Vaffila wich of famous memorie, and by name Demetry Euanowich: when as it was well knowne in our Kingdome, that before he was storne a Monke, he was commonly called Yowihoo, Son to one Bowghdan Orreapyoue, dwelling at a place called Galitts : and when bee had committed much villanie, to faue his life be boare himselfe a Frier, and forume from one Monasterie 20

A Frier. Magician,

to another, and lastly, came into a Monasterie called Chowdo, where bee was made one of the Clearkes; being so placed there by the Patriarke of Mosko bimselfe : But be did not leave off his former life; for he continued still in his most Dewillsh attions, as he did before he was shorne, committing villary, for saking God and falling to the studie of the Blacke Arte, and to many such like enils be was inclined. Also there was found by him a Writing which showed how be was faine from God, and the same was made well knowne to the boly Patriarch of Mosko, and of all Ruifa, and to the Metropolitanes, Archbilhops, and Bishops, and to all the holy Cleargie : whereupon the faid Rulers of our true Christian Faith, which is from the

Greeke Church Grecian Law, for these his most ungodly works, consulted to send him to perpetual Prison there to end his life. Whereupon this notorious Instrument of Satan, perceiung this his enerthrow, and that his vide pra-Flight to Letto. Hifes were disconcred, ran away out of the Kingdome of Mosko, beyond the borders, and into Letto to a 30 ctift were allease the framework of the Aregonius of the actions, serious to the west-sam and electrons a place called Keyveve: thus according to the Denth infrarking of him, as one for faken of God, be made this bis doing meanfeltly known to alleapole feature of his Month Habit, and without by the compile and admice of our Enemie the Polith King, and one of his Palatines named Sandamersko Yourya, much

Duke Constantine, and Duke Veshnenetskoy and bis Bretbren with other Polish Lords that were of bis Councell, began to call him the Son of the great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Evan Vallity wich. by name Prince Demetry of Owglitts.

As also by his villanous treacherie and the Denills persuading of him , be made much trouble in our Land, by fending abroad many of his intifing and prouoking Letters, to divers places upon the borders of our Countrey : that is, to a place called Done, and to the Volgoe, to our Coffacks and Souldiers, naming him felfe to be the Prince Demetry of Owglitts. Moreoner, there came to our Kingdome of 40 Mosko many Polish Spies, which brought and differ fed Libel's both in Citie and Townes, and in the high-wayes, practifing to rayle diffention in the Kingdome of Mosko. Alfoit is well knowne, not only to them in the Empire of Mosko, but likewife in other Kingdomes, that the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Euan Vallily wich of famous memory, had a Some called by the name of Prince Demetry, and after his Fathers decease, there was given unto him and his Mother the Cute of Owelitts.

But in the yeere 7095, being in the Reigns of the great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Theodore E-uanowich of all Russa, this foresaid Demetry was murthered by the order and appointment of Boris

Godenoue. And at his Funerall was his Mother now called the Empresse Martha, wabber owne Brethren by name Michaila and Greegory the Sonnes of Theodore Nahouo. Likewise to bis burying. there was fent from the Mosko Metropolitanes , and Archimandreets , and Abbots : and the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Theodore Evanowich fent to bis Funerall many Nobles and Courtiers of the Land which faw him buried in the chiefest and principall (bureb of Owelitts, Moreoner, Martha the Dutches and Empresse his Mother is yet living , and many of ber Brothers and Vachles. which doe at this present time serne ve the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Vallily Enanowich, of all Ruffia fole Commander: Likewife in thefe last yeeres past, as in Anno 7111. and in Anno 7112. and 7112, concerning that forefaid Traytour and Hereticke, the for faken of God Gryfhca Otreapyon ue, many of our Gentlemen, Captagnes and others our Officers did many times write from the North

Buziall.

parts of the borders of our Kingdome into Poland and Letto, and to others their inferiour Cities, to the Rulers and Gouernours of the same; as also our spiritual people: the Patriarke, the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops wrote unto the spiritual people of Poland, declaring unto them what that Heretick 60 and Trayter man, likewife from whence he came and what manner of per fon he was; as also of his demea-neur, and likewife of the occasion why hee runne away to them out of the Land, as also the manner of the making away of the Prince Demetry, and withall requested the Rulers and Spiritual people of Poland, that they knowing what Runnagate this was , would not give credit unto him, nor to make a broach of the late le aque concluded voon.

CHAP.9.S.4. Ruffe flory of Demetrius in Suiskys letter to King Tames. 767

But the Governours of the Dukedome of Poland and Letto, as also the friestnall men, according to the King of Poland bis com nandment, gane no credit unto our writings, but began, more then before to intice and persuade men to uphold the Traiter, and to aide him. Marconer, to make trouble for to state and prime and the tooke this for faken of God, Greellica unto them, and cald him by the and differing in our Land, they tooke this for faken of God, Greellica unto them a chaine of gold, with many Polife sides, name of Prince Demetry of Owglits: likewife the King gaue unto him a chaine of gold, with many Polife sides, thousand pecces of Polish gold, to the defraying of the charges; as also fent in armes to our borders with one of the Lords, the Palatine Sendamersko, and another of his chiefest Lords, with many troopes of Poles. But when the Emperour Boris understood bow that this Gryinca Ocreapyoue was called, by the name of Prince Demetry Evanowich of Owglits, and withall, that they did aide and below him

ogainst the Kingdome of Rustia: he caused his Commell to send a messenger, at fram themselves, to the Succession of Polish Lord Panametrada, which Messenger was named Smeernay Otreapyoue, being Variation the Caid Gryfica Otreopyoue being the Son of one lamateen Otrepayou, onely to declare onto them what this Gryinca was; but that Polith Lord Panameerada would not fuffer him, and his Unchlo to be brought face to face. But be made answer to the faid Meffenger Smeetnay that they did not aide bins, meither didthey stand for bim in any fort.

So after he had feat away the Meffenger Smeeting, the King of Poland, and the Lord Panameerada did aide Grythca Otreapy que with men and treasure liberally then before, purposing to make great strife and trouble, and to feel much bloud in the Kingdome of Mosco. Also at the same time Sisilmund, King of Poland, requested the aide of one of the Princes of Crim in Tartaria, named Cazateers; and to that end be flouid aide Gry thes with his fores; against the Kingdome of Mosko; and crim Tatio.
20 he in consideration, and premise to give unto the foresaid Crim, Prince, what her would demand. Then

the Emperon. Boirs understanding what praitifes were in band, being altogether contrary to the league; thereupon purps fit be fent to Sigitmund King of Poland, another Speciali Messenger, one named Polnicke Agareoue; likewife at the same time, the bast Patriarke of Moko, and all Russia, with the Me-tropolatus, Archiishops, and Bishops, with all the rest of the bast Clergie, sent their Messengers with Another Mcs Letters to the State of Poland, and fo the great Dakedome of Letto, to the Accordiops, and Bishops, lenger, and to all the Spiritualite. Moreover, in the faid Letters, the Emperour Botts with the Patriarke, and all the boly assembly, wrote unto the Lord Panameerada concerning Grynca, making it knows onto them what he was, and wherefore he rame away into Poland, and themselves that the Sonne of the press 20 Lord Emperour, and great Dute Evan Vafiliwich, the Prince Demetry was dead: And to that intent, that the King Sigilmund fould not give credit to the faid Gryfica, and that they fould not

Bill Christian bland nor violate the league. Hereupon Sigilmund King of Poland writ unto the Emperour Boris and further, by word of mouth. both be and Panametrada delivered to the faid messenger in his message; that bee did hold and keepe their League, and morconer, did not violate or brooks his oath no manner of way: and liberise did write, that be did not ande that forefaid Grylhca, neither did gine credit onte him : withall denying that be was with him in his Krugdome: and further he did write that if there were any out of Poland or Letto that did aide or affift bons, that then they found be executed. But after be had diff niched away the messinger of Both, morregarding his oath, full more and more data and bept but Gryth-40 ca Otrcapyoue. Also the Palatine Sendamersko, and Mybala Ratanisko came me the Kingdome of Molco, to a place called the Land of Secuersko, putting the people of that Land in feare, and perfinaling them there, this Grylhea must be true Prince, and that the King of Poland and Pana-

meerada, had found out the certaintie thereof: and therefore they will have Poland and Letto Stand for burn. Also from out of many other Kingdomas they goe to aide and assist burn: likewise atter infe-riour Kingdomes are willing to stand for birn: marconer that Gryshch in the foresaid Land of Securesko. room conguences are summe to passe yet and successful and in other places of our Berthell and in other places of our Berthell, by the measure of this ideality brightles and commentation did notify and tempt them to fall to him. I likewife the people of these forefait places of the Land of Securisko, and on the Berders, himse simple people, and referring soldmen to the Catio of McCoc, and then provide by Gryhica, and the refs of the Courtmant, conditions within the people of them to them, where supon against those Polonians and Luttoes, and other enemies that were already entred the Kinedome of Molco, the Emperous sent his Nobles with a great Armie: but by the appointment of God, the Em-

perour Boris deceased; upon whose death, the chiefest of the Nobles departed the Campe. And after their departure, the Armie hearing of the death of the Emperour, and being drawne thereto by feare and otherwise, at last reelded themselves over unto Gryshca, as the Borderers had done before

Alfo the forefaid Gryflica, by the belpe of the Dinell, and King Sigilmund, and Panameerada, came into the Citie and Kingdome of Molco, to the great difquietnesse and trouble of the whole Land by whom the Religion was corrupted, and by him were many true Christians put to exile, for denying his right and interest to the Kingdome of Molco. And Shortly after be was fetled in the Kingdome, and he tooke to wife the daughter of one Sandamersko, as was appointed by the King of Poland and Pana-6c meerala : the which wife of his was in Mosco with her Father and Brother Schatskoy, and with one Veffinenetskoy, with their Polish and Letto Lords, and other people, by whom Religion was prophaned: as also we were forced and driven to receive many wrongs and insuries, which the people of the King. dome of Mosco couldn't induce. Also, at last thus Greessea, by the counsel of the Palatine Sanciamersko his Father in Law, and by the counsel of Veshneuetskoy, and other Polish and Letto people, Religion.

which he brought in with him, was purposed, by a secret politicke denise to have put to death the Me. tropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops, and all the boly and first wall affembly, with the Nobles, and Courtarr, and duers others which were of the better people and fo to have feet others into Poland and Lector.

Remiji Relig: wubsil to have changed the Religion, and so have of bublifued the Romish Religion, which who who was probably the religion.

The which we the great Lord and great Duke Vafily Eusnowich, of all Ruffia, with the Metropo. litans, Archbiftops, and Biftops, and with all the bols formual affembly, and with the Nobles, Courting ers, and Commons of the Kingdome of Molco, well-emfidering, and percenting what an alteration this or, and a common of the Anagamon of mission, was amountained, and personant word an accretion that model do to one Christian facility, with the overstown and otter undering to our whole kingdome; we then carriefly between and all amounted, and without beautify project to the distributive Trainite over one of Lord God, 10 that is usually beautiff and the Common models to the contract of the Common models. from those vile, cruell, discelluly astempts, and desifes of theirs. Thus defiring the mercy of God, we all returned and flood fledfash to our former unspotted and true Christian faith, ugainst that usurper and counterfeit Grylhen and bis Counfell, with a resolution to stand in the same manfully, and even to the commerciae Crystuce and an outcome to the description of the state of the death hoping and denote hope from the state all popule, and war like from the Southern's and many other soft the Empire of Motico me got come to garber themsolisas regenter, of that they major themsolis percense and for early the state of the of our Religion. The largeness of the Kingdome of Molico cannot be unknowne unto you our lossing Brother, how farre it extendeth it selfe both to the South, and to the Weil, as also to other places, that in balfe a yeares space they could not gather themsclues together. But when as the power and warlike Soul. 20 diours, and all other people were gathered sogether, then through the mercie and famour of God, this enemy of Gods Commonwealth was disconcred to all what he was. And the Empresse Martha, being Mother of the true Prince Demetry Enonowich, ded certific unto us before the Metropolitant, Archthey is not sent to be best to be be best to be be best to be be best to be be be best to be best to be be best to be be best to be be best to be be be best to be be Officers, and men of more who ment impute, was fore account, some our comme the rrace Demetty was more thread Boyand realon, at a place called Owelits, by appointment of Boris Godenoue, and that he dyed in her armses; yet did this Grythes fulfaf, call himselfly by the name of him that was

See before,

Large Empire

museures.
Also we found in the cuttedy of this Grythen, the Copie of a writing, which was the contrall and
agreement that he made betwick hims and the Palacine, before his comming out of Poland; in which 30
was written, that as some as he did come to the Kingdome of Mosleo, that then he would take to wife the daughter of the Palatine, and would give her two Prounces, called great Nouogrod and Volsko. dangoire of toe trainine, and women gree not trained to the training time troops to the most voise, with inferior Cillia and Lands, freely in those forefaid, to build and fer op Mountlewine, and will be the training to the Roman Religion. Lamai, rees on songe yes an a commander of commences and a property of the commences of Polith Gold, where is the same tree Rullia account, three hundred songland Market and to Josa pieces of voim year, worn we give Mallia mercine, sure summers trongism, oranges: and to be wife, so confidences on the they comme, be promised to give cells of Gold, and cloth of Sther, and of all the left timing that was in the Freshiris of the Kingdome of Molco. Lektrolly, that her the find Gryllica, as the commising to Molco, would take order to brong they are to help with all distance, whereby he much than all the Dominion of Molco from our true Greens Religion, and so to beautre. motive per magne draw acree Lemmono of account propose of the Charles of the Char before faid; that he according to his owne hand writing; would bold all the faid concennts with all diorganical consecutions and the Empire of Motion rate Roman Rilgion. The which commons an un-ligence, at these first the single state of the single but the single but the single commons and agraements the Generall Sandamersko himselfe but confessed to one Maritie, and Nobles, that the agreements and covernants betwire him and the fare faid Geyffica mere trine, and how that they trafted one to another : moreoner, the Palatine did certifie unto our Nobles, bow Gryshea fent him a Letter under his owne hand and Scale, in which he promifed to give him Smolensko, with all the Proninces belonging thereto, and another place called Securrow, as also grate him liberty to fet up Monastee 50

ries, and the Religion of the Church of Rome. Further, there was found by him Letters which were fem to him from the Pope of Rome, and the Cardinals, and Priest, to that effect, that he should vemember and withall be mindefull to take in hand speedity bose matters and businesse upon which he had ginen to Sigismund, and the Cardinals his troth and vow, the which was, as before faid, to be himselfe of the Romish Religion, as also to bring all the people of the Ringdome of Russia into the same Romish Rethe KOMINIA resigned, as also so oring an son proper of two Annyames of Annia mis interface KOMINIA Ar-figure, not easily them that of them falses were willing therets, but also others by compulsion, and so put them to death that fought to contrary the same. And not easily them of the Kingdom of Russia, but sidemife other godly people of Jenerall Religions and that doe forms in the Kee dome of Moleo, as the Ca-tholicky, and the Calaimsh, them them to be found feeks to bring into the Romilli Religion with all perfundions. Moreoner, Gryshca bim felfe, before vs. and our Nobles, and Constiers, and before our Com- 60 mons, did acknowledge as much, and thereupon yeelded himselfe to be in fault: as also that be did all with butpe of the Distell, bearing for faken God. For which these but vite alterns, this Gryshca, according to the true instince received an end to his life,

and was by abundance of people slain in the Mosco, where be lay three dayes in the midst of the Citiz, to the

view of all such like vsurpers, and disturbers. And because his body was leathsome vato vs, we caused Slaine & burne a to be carried out of the Cute, and there to be burnt.

This Enemie thus baning ended his life, then the Kings formes of diners Countries, now dwelling within our King dome, with the Patriarhe, Metropolitanes, Archhilhops, and Bilhops, with the Nobles, Courters, and the Commons, made entreaty unto us Vaill Euanowich , to raigne and gonerne over Election of them and oner all the Kingdome of Mosco, as their Lord, Emperour, and great Duke of all Russia. Ac. Smuly. cording to which entreatie made unto usby the faid Kings sons of diners Countries as likewise by our Nobles, Courtiers, Merchants, and all the rest of the Commons of all the Kingdome of Molco, Wee are come to the great Kingdomes of Volodemar, Mosco, Nouogrod, and as also of the Kingdomes of Ca-

2210, Afracan, and Siberia, and ouer all the Provinces of the Empire of Molco: as also wee the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all Russia, are crowned with our Imperial Crown: and for the fail Kings sonues of diners Religions, and our Nobles, Courtiers, and Souldiers, and all manner of People, doe ferne our imperial Maissfy with defire and good liking voluntarily, and not by delusions and contertations, as the Poles and Lettoes were bewitched by Grishca. But we the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Vasili Eunowich, with great care flayed and refused our People from the spool of the Poles and the Lettoes, defeading them from death; and withall have commanded to let see my of them into Polanil and Letto: but the chiefest of them that were of the Councess, and that practifed to bring trouble and diffention in the Kingdome of Mosco, are now taken. And we to doe an honour unto the dead body of the true Demetrie, have (upon conference with our Metropolitanes, Archbilhops, 20 and Bishops, and all the holy Assembly, our Nobles and Courtiers, and all the Kingdome of Mosco) sent

to the Citie of Owglets a Metropolitan, named Filareta, of Rossoue and Yeralliue, who was called before he was made Metropolitan, Theodor Neckete, which being one of the Nobles in times past, and with him the Archbishops of Astracan, called Feodosia, and our Nobles the Duke Eurn Michalowich Vorotinskoy, with the rest of his fellowes, commanding them to bring up with them the body of the Prince Demetric Eusnowich, who was muribered by the appointment of Boris Godonous, and to bring it up to our Citie of Mosco with great bonous, which body shall be buried in the principal Church of Mosco. called Michael the Archangel, neare to his father the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Evan Vasslowich of famous memorie, and by Gods power his body skall not be touched or abused any manner Vantowich of Jamous memorse, and of Goal power on some not be touched or assiged any manner of way. Likewife will we, by the fauour of Goal, bonour the Funerall of Demetric Euanowich with the ciall folementie, which body performeth many cures, and worketh miraculously vuto them, that came to Mirackt.
him with Faith to be cured of their diseases.

And now most loning and deare brother, wee calling well to minde the great amitte and friendship that was betwirt the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Euan Valily wich, and his Sonne Theodor that was occasion of the above the competent of the compe land after the bearing of the se great and strange dangers past, to reiouse with vs., that he hath delimend from such a vile enemy, and that he, our merciful God, hath dimided and scattered that wicked comfell, and that he hath turned their cruelty upon their owne head, to their shame and confusion. And concerning your Merchants that were in our Kingdome, John Mercicke with his fellower, we have graced to the his fellower, we have graced Sir toby Merchants and the fellower with the single state of the singl

corming your derivation, him to wree over the Companies votal to the Control of Tables, no these Faced it the Merc them with our Emperial professes; as also been given write to fail them kiro Mercicke, and his follower; the same primitides, and Letters of James, by which the James from iros or Krighmes, and so traffice New Patters with all manners; of goals freely, which we provide the James to James the James of the New Patters with all manners; of goals freely, which we provide any fail to the Control which all the Contr ted in former time, and this fanour we have given them to manifolt unto you our loung Brother, our Brotherly lone. And the reason that we have not sent to you, louing brother, our Embassadour, is, because we bad not isme, in regard of many our Emperial affaires, but hereafter doe purpose to send, to visue you in your Kingdome. Written at our Emperial palace and Citie of Molco, from the beginning of the World Anno 7114 the fourth day of lune.

1606.

une file

Thus is Demetring painted out by his Enemies, which perhaps were not altogether led with fimplicitie of truth, but in many things made him worle, that they might make their owne caule (bad enough) to appeare better. They tell also of great outrages committed by the Poles, Politin olen-(like those sometimes here in England by the Danes) their proud infulting over the men, squish- cies ments of women, fetching them out of their houses and husbands bosomes to serue their lusts: neither did Demetrine, as they fay, punish them; one onely being sentenced, and hee violently refcued from execution by the Poles. They fay also that Demetrine his body was plucked out of the grame and burnt, the albest hrowne into the aire, the feeds, as the fequele feemed to fliew, of many Demetrijafter. Smikey is allo by some reported to have beene chosen by lot in this manner. The Nobles cast

(O lots foure times to receiue a Succeffor, as it were, by divine sentence in lot-oracle : in euery of Choosing by which times the lot fell vpon Switter (tor as some fay, there were three or source neerer then hee) lot, he modefly refuling and enforced by constancy of the various lor to accept that Scopeer; whereof others thinke him as ambitious, as was modest Boris before him. However, he hath left his name and memorie written in as blacke inke as either Bors or Demetrine, if Reports bee true.

which fay that he proued a wicked Prince, partly by poison, partly by the Tarters, making away Suit groices. all, whose bloud might by Nobilitie threaten a probabilitie of their prousing his Corrinals. Yea, he is faid to have fent for Witches and Sorcerers, Laps, Sameeds, Tantars, or whatfoeuer other Nation yeelded fuch Hell-hags, incarnate Fiends, the Deuils blacke guard, to confult about his Empire and fucceffion ; and (the Deuill is a murtherer) to have fealed their predictions with bloud. Thus being told that one Michalowich should succeed, he is faid presently to have plot-The like is told ted the death of three Grander of that name, his best Teruants : yet the appersitious people obof K. Edward ferue (after much chopping and changing) that in little time the State was fettled on one of that the fourth that Name, which still swaieth the Scepter; Who then being a youth of no State-terror, was his attendant in Court, and bare an Axe (after their custome) before him.

One of his first Acts, was to fend into Poland an Embassage, which could not bee admitted audience till Ianuarie. Hee thereby complayned of Sandomerskes artes which obtruded that with G, he put Changeling on Ruffle, whereby aboue two hundred of principall Nobilitie had loft their lines: demanding reflicusion of the moneys which that Impostor had caused to bee transported into Duke of Clas-rence his bro-Poland, and restitution of goods; otherwise hee would with Charles of Sweden Duke of Suderather, and yet man, enter Poland with an Armie to bee reuenged for the league (which they had fworne) broken, &c. Sigs smand answered modeftly, with excuse of their helping the right Heire in their conceits, and that his defire was that peace should continue (being loth in times then tumultuous Aprinted book 1614, relis of a at home, to prouoke a forreine enemie, foncere in dwelling, foremote in affection) Sandemers be gress man, na. ftill remay ned prifoner in Ruffia. But things being better feeled in Poland, and growing worfe in 20 reuiued Demetrius (yea many pretending that Name and Title did after arife, as out of his dia speried ashes) within Ruffie; and from the Poles without, willing both to affift him vnder colour of Reuenge, and with hope of Conquett alfo, to inuade and his for themselues in troubled As for that Demetriss new rifen from the dead (not to mention the others of inferiour note)

and to preuent Suiter flabbed Cap. Gilbert,

I shall relate Captaine Gilberts reports which knew him and was by him entertayned, as I receiued them of a judicious friend of mine, which had them from his owne mouth. Hee being at Coluga (as before is faid) received a Letter from this new Demerius \*, fo written that it appeared to bee of the former Demetritu his owne hand : and thus also he vied to doe to others being 30 able to counterfeit his writing, and to relate such other particulars as seemed impossible to any but Demetrius to doe. Hereupon Captaine Gilbert went with his Guard of Souldiers to meete the maffacre him and the Polake Generall which came with him. And whiles he was yet a good diffance off. the master.

Ab (this Demetrina called to him) my true fermans, where were you and my Guard, when the villwas occide

was occide

Limes have me? but if I had fillowed the counful which you game me fuch a time in fact a place (readd statistical.

lating the particulars) I bad presented them. This circumstance had moved him to believe this to be the former Demetrins, had not he differed from this in person, as night from day. Thus also A ftrange log- he faid he affirmed to the Pole Generall, asking him how he liked this Demetring, that This and That were as like as Night and Day (for the former was of goodly personage, and this a very deformed wretch.) The Pole replyed, It is no matter, Captaine, this Demetrins shall serve our 40 turne to bee reuenged of the perfidious and bloudie Ruffe. And this Demetrine acted the other fo neerly, and could in cunningly and confidently relate particular passages of past occurrents, that the Lady of Demetrine was by him bedded. Thus was miserable Russia ground betwix these two Mill-stones, the pretending Demetrine and the super-intending Pole. Smisker is helped not a little by the English, which brought him strangely and adventurously powder and munition to his Castle to Moseo, which yet at last by revolt of the Citizens delivers up it selfe and him to the Poles. And as for that pretending Demetrius, he was afterwards murthered in his Campe by

a Tartar. But it is meet to take hereof larger view.

Sigismund King of Poland layeth claime to Sweden, as sonne to King John (who is faid to hane vniustly deprived Ericas of his life and Kingdome) whose yonger brother Duke Charles first re- 50 ceiued his Nephew King Sigifmund (then also elected and still continuing King of Poland) but vpon warres which after arose betwixt them, the iffue was, that the Pole holds the Title : but Charles obtayned both Regall Title and Power, wherein his Sonne hath succeeded. Snickey takes hold of this difference, and Charles affifts him with an Armie fent under the command of Pontas de la Gird a French Coronell, confifting of Englifs, French, and Seess. These march to Moses, which the new Demetriss and Poles held besieged, and put Demetriss into such seare, that not trufting the Pole, and fearing his Adverfaries on both fides, he stole away by night with a small Formine aides retinue : and the Poles obtayned Articles of composition and departed. But milerable were the diffresses by famine, fire, sword, rapes, and other outrages in other parts of Russia, caused by other Poles; and yet these but as a beginning and prelude to other following. For the King of 60 Poland entred with a huge Armie (some say of an hundred thousand men) inuaded the Muscomire, and especially laid siege to Smolensko. He is reported thence to have sent twentie thousand

Smiles had fent to King Charles for more aide, which he procured out of England, and other

Countries, of which I had rather let you heare an eye-witnesse fpeake of this, as elsewhere other English men have related their owne voyages. This indeed descrueth relation, as a tragedie of meaner persons with manifold vicilitudes of miseries (attending voluntarie Souldiers) as before you have feene tragedies of Princes and Grandes. And first you may reade King Charles his compack and promifed stipend to such voluntaries, which for the more violerstanding Readers de-light I have here inserted.

No: Carolus Nouse, Dei gratie Succorum, Gothorum, Wandalorum, Finnonum, Corelio-rum, Lapporum, Conanorum, Esthonumq; m Liuonia, dre. Rex. Notum facinus quod il-10 luftrem & generofum nobis syncere dilettum Dominum lacobum Spentzium, Beronem Wolmerschopium in munistror non nostrorum numerum clementer receptum, annium qui nostris unne militant, ant in posterum militaturs sant auspicys. Anglorum, Scotorumq; ducem & prafectum constituumiu, ea condstione vt in nostrum, Regniq, nostri vsum, pedites mille, & equites quingemes, spettate virtuis milites conferibut, addutlofg, sentinte vere ad 1.5 scilices Mais sequentie. Ami 1000, in Reguo ssilat. Lu nos ad distra milites tam solligendos quam in regimum traducendos, in pedies quidem unuem, in equites vero quatu.т thalerorum imperialism millia & quengsntos assignouimen. Cum autem in regnum prasatus militum numerus appulerit, illis si equos & arma subministrancrimus, ea peditum quidem singulorum dimidy equitum vero duerum de cuanfg, fispendio monstruo toalererum singulis monssous donce pro ar-mis & equis nobis satisfiat, detractions solumniar. Ipse duci primario. Peditum vero singulis cobortibus 20 (quarum quaeus ducentis Capitauso caterifi, officiarys una comprehensis consteha) mille septimentos thuleros in mensem dadumus. Equidam ausem cohors qualibet centum equites cominehis. Quod si pauciores fuerent, quot per sona in prima lustratione desecrint, totidem thalero menstruo Capitaneorum, E. quicamá, Magistroram stependio derrabensao : la sequensibus vero lustrasonibus qua suquisi mensibus semel sustinuadoens, si qui sorse enteraa ex bac visa decesserane, ans also quocaná, modo, milistum numerus fuerit ita diminutus, ut pedites cuius q, cobortis ducentis penciores fint (non tamen in eam pancitatem THI JUNET I IM MOMENTA, O THANHAMING, WELLIAMS MODE MILEARY POLITIES AMPARES INMENIANTED (APAANOO Tedallus VI ad Umendums integrums ad Jex menses persoluctor, quod si postea desaltum noos supplement, ipse mindomenus stipendums integrum ad sex menses persoluctor, quod si postea desaltum noos supplement, ipse officio Capitanti carebit & pedites pfins per cateras cobortes, adearum supplementum distribuentur. Eagnies von coherts comis, f. Centum passeros ingrin, Calegories quanti von coherts comis, f. Centum passeros ingrin, Calegories quantum subjemmes deuen em-gen fraggarie meier facts speech imm unegrum consequent, 149, ad fex monfes dont exce. His antem 30 m fraggarie meier facts speech imm unegrum consequent, 149, ad fex monfes dont exce. His antem exactis, nifi profitutum, centum equitum numerum inspleneru, espe munere suo primabitur. G equites per caterus cobortes distribuentur. Magistro equitum contum. Vicario sen socum tenenti quadre queta, Signifero triginta, Decurioni viginti, fingulis ductoribus viginti, cuid, buccinatori fex, Equitibus veto singulis duodecem thalers, in singulas menses munerahuntur. Delto autematus generals, vi seguentes ossenios sibis admongeres elementer vermissimus. Vicarium generalem, cus quadringintos, prajectum vigiliarum, cui nonaginta, Secretarium cui ottoginta, Pratorem cui fexaginta, Prefettum annona cui fexaginta, Pattorem cui fexaginta, Chrurgum cui quadraginta, Archicustodem cui quadraginta, Infectorem armerum cus quadraginta, Tympanistam cus sedecim florenos in singulos menses promissemus. Primus autem stipendy mensis intra decimum quintum diem à militum en regnum aduentu in-40 choabitur. Liberam quoq, habebit prafatus dux Primarius plenama, inituia exercenda potestatem in omnes suo imperio subrettos, ida, in omni criminis genere excepto crimine lasa Maiestatis; Peditum cuique subsidis loco thalerum voum; Capitaness autem & reliquat officiaris strpendis singules designats dim dium, Magistro militum duodecius, Eins V stario cito, fignifero fex, cuia, Decirioni quatuor fingulis ex tribus ordinum ductoribus tres , Buccinatori vnum cum dimidio, fingulis vero equitibus duor in feptimenem thaleres dabimus ; Semestri quelibet exacto babitag, decerras suppositione, quod de menstruo stipendie religium est, cis persolucsur, habita samen ratione numeri quem in suguits delectibus sen mista jugenium prijaminu Capitani equitumi, Manistri exhibitarini. Quad fi date subitishis fasi fresedum aliquad prilima fectri, asi acem vrbeme, diquam vi expanyament, esife die quo ideonificiri priva-finio nosus mosti imbostimi. Libertum quid, ett Dichola fingali, quoticarede eti accidentima finio nosus mosti imbostimi. SC Jupplementum adducendum aliquem unitere qui dum absens eris sependisun feum sivilomensus conseque-tur, pro singulis autem qui in supplementum addustis suerint daccon thalers numerabsentur. Qued si in pralys, velitationibus, excubiye ant alio quouis casu quenquam ducum, aut milisum in hostium potestatem ventre contigerit, ida, non frontanca deditione aut alia ratione subdola & fraudulenta accidife compertum fuerit, u alius jua conditionis statufg, captini permutatione liberabitur. Hostium vero aliquia si captimus ad nos nostrine exercitus Ducem à quoquam corum perdutins fuerit, qued pro sui liberatione captimus pratuems fooponderis, id ei, qui captunum duxeris, numerafestur. Quod si squisquam borum mi-litum pila ictus tormentaria, aut alio quonis modo mutilus, aut mancus cuadat, eta vi 1956 se alcre vi-

Etung, quarere nequeat, illi à nobis pro vi civius q, requirit status & conditio, honcistum struendum per omnem vitam suppeditabitur : su vero diuttus in hoc Regno nostro commenari un lucrit, tum vinus mensa

'auctorabuntur, fingules officiaries & militibus menfis vnius numerabitur flipendium. Si aut prefatus primarius aut alius inferiorum Ducum vel Officiariorum à S. R. M. Britannie accerfetur, perfoiseto qued

60 accepto fipendia integrum ei era, qua libuerit commigrare. Com cabartes, fiue fimul, fine feperation ex-

tune forte restabit stipendio, spsog, duce remunerato, libera dabitur discedandi facultat. In quorumi ut-

dentiorem fidero manus propria subscriptione Regia aj, moitri sigula esperasione prasentes municionas. Ex Regia nostira Stocholmensi dee 7. Ostobris, Anno Millessoni foxentessimo ottemi.

Subscript. CAROLYS.

1200.Souldiers fhipped from

Bout a fortnight before Midlimmer, which was A. 1609.4 companie of Voluntaries, to the A Bout a fortnight before Midlimmer, which was A. 169.4 companie of Voluntaries, to the number of a thouland and two hundred Souldiers, were at feuerall times (hipped from England to passe into Sweden, to side the King of that Countrie in his warres against the King of Pe. land. To which aide divers other Nations did likewife refore, as French, high Dusch, &c. Of the English Companies that went thither, the first was commanded by one Calmine a Seet; who to by appointment was made Lieutenant Colonell, and chiefe of the other Captaines out the

Colonel Cal-

After the first Companie was gone, a second number of three hundred men of which I the Relator of this, was one) were put into one ship belonging to Sweden, and came from thence for vs. We were assaulted with a great tempest, and were tossed so long, that all our victuals were almost spent : the miserie of which, threw vs into more desperate feares : now were wee affaulted by double deaths (Famine and Shipwrack) what course to take for our reliefe no man prefently knew. Continue without foode it was impossible, and as impossible was it for vs to recouer the Land in any short time, without the affured destruction of vs all. At this season, our

A tempeft.

Commanders were thefe; Lieutenant Benfon, Lieutenant Walton, who was Prouoft Martiall of 10 the field; and an Ancient of the Colonels companie. The common Souldiers vowed and refol-Another tem. ued to compell the Mariners (feeing the prefent mileries, and no hopes promiting better) to fet peft of the mu. vs all on shoare vpon the first Land that could be discovered. Our Commanders did what they pensor returns. could by diffwafion to alter this generall resolution, because they feared it would bee the loss of the greatest part of our Companies, if they came once to bee scattered : and besides, they knew that it would redound to their dishonour and shame, if they should not discharge the trust impofed upon them by our Captaines, which trust was to conduct vs and land vs before, whilest our few you them by our capeanes, when the state of the state vs aboord our ship, but every man swore if the Master of the ship would not set vs on the shoare, 30 the failes should be taken into our owne hands, and what was resolved upon (touching present landing) (hould in despite of danger be effected. Vpon this the Mafter of the ship and the Mariners told vs, that if we put to land in that place, we should all either perish for want of victuals, which were not to bee had in that Countrie, or effe should have our throats cut by the people Wee refolued rather to trie our bad fortunes on the land, and to famish there ( if that kind of death must needes attend upon vs) then to perish on the Seas, which we knew could affoord vs no fuch mercy : and en shoare wee wene, as fast as possibly we could. When our Officers saw, that there was no remedie, nor force to detayne vs aboord, they then disheartned vs no longer, but to our great comforts told it, that the Mafter of the fittp (which thing hee himfelfe likewife openly confessed) knew both the Land and Gonernour thereof (as indeed we proued afterwards he did : ) and therefore defired they all our companies not to miffe-behaue themfelues toward 40 the people, for that it was an Iland called Inthland, under the Dominion of the King of Denmarke, but subject to the command of a Lord, who vinder the King (as his Substitute) was the

And that we might be the better drawne to a civil behaviour towards the Inhabitants, our Officers further told vs, that they would repaire to the Lord Governour of the Countrie, and acquaint him with the cause of our vnexpected landing there; vpon which we all promised to offer no violence to the people; neither was that promite violated, because we found the Inhabitants tractable, and as quiet towards vs, as we to them : yet the greater numbers of them ran away with feare, at the first fight of vs, because (as afterward they reported) it could not bee remembred by any of them, that they ever either beheld themfelves, or ever heard any of theiran- 50 memorary and the state of the s by reason of the dangerous Sands,

Our Officers (o foone as they were at land, went to the Gouernour of the Iland, whileft the Souldiers (who ftayed behind them) ran to the houses of the Handers, of purpose to talke with the people, and at their hands to buy victuals for a present reliefe: but when wee came among them, they could neither understand vs nor we them; so that the Market was spoiled, and wee could get nothing for our money, yet by fuch fignes as wee could make, they understood out wants pitied them, and bestowed vpon ws, freely, a little of such things as they had. In the end, a happy meanes of our reliefe was found out by a Souldier among ft vs who was a Dane by birth, 60

but his education having beene in England, no man knew him tobe other then an Englanman. This Dane made vie of the owne natine language, to the good both of himfelfe and vs , certi-

fying the people (who the rather beleeued him because he spake in their knowne tongue) of the cause that compelled vs to land vpon their Coast, and that we intended no mischiefe, violence, or money : to which report of his they giving credit, flood in leffe feare of vs then before, and thereupon furnished vs with all such necessaries, as the Countrie affoorded to sustaine our wants. The foode which wee bought of them was onely fish, and a kinde of course bread, exceeding cheape. Of which foode there was fuch plentie, that for the value of three pence wee had as Fift cheaper much fish as twentie men could eate at a meale, and yet none of the worst forts of fish, but even of the very best and daintieft, as Mackrels and Lobsters, and such like. In which our trading

with the poore simple people, we found them so ignorant, that many, yea most of them regarne ded not whether you gave them a Counter, or a Shilling for the bigger the piece was, the more Ignorant fish they would give for it : but besides fish wee could get no other sustenance from them, or at Bores, leaft, could not vinderstand that they had any other. But observe what happened in the meane time that we were thus in traffique with the Handers for victuals, our Officers (as before is faid) being gone to the Lord Gouernour, who lay about twelve English miles from the Sea fide, the Mafter of our ship on a sudden hoysed up sailes, and away he went, leaving one of his owne men

at fhoare, who accompanied our Officers as their guide, through the Iland. The cause of the ships departure, did fo much the more amaze vs, by realon it was fo vnexpected, and the reason the reof vnknowne to vs : But wee imagined the Matter of the ship and Mariners feared to receive vs into the Vessell againe, because some of our men at their being at Sea, threatned the Saylers, and 30 offered them abuses before they could be brought to fet vs on land,

On the next day following, the Lord Gouernour of the Iland came to vs, bringing our Officers along with him, yet not being so confident of vs, but that (for anoyding of any dangers that might happen) he came strongly guarded with a troupe of Horse-men well armed. And (vpon his first approca) demanding where our ship was, it was told him in what strange manner it stole away and forfooke vs : he then asked what we intended to doe, to which we all answered, that we would be ruled by our Officers: hereupon hee inquired of them , what they would have him to doe in their behalfes: they requested nothing else at his hands, but onely his fauourable Passe through the Countrie, and a thip to carry vs forward into Sweden: to which request hee made answere, that he could grant no such licence vntill he had made the King of Denmarke acquain-20 ted with our being there, for the Hand belonged to the King, he faid, and he was no more but

an Officer or Substitute winder him. Yet in confideration that our flip had so left vs in a strange Land, he promifed to doe all that lay in his power to effect our good : but withall told vs, that the people had inward feares, and were poffeft with suspicions, that our intents of landing vpon tuch a Coait, were not, as we our felues affirmed, only to get foode, but rather to make i poile of the poore Inhabitants. And therefore, to remoone all fuch feares and realouses out of the peoples hearts, he held it most convenient for the generall fafeties of both parties, to separate our numbers, and to spreade vs abroad in the Countrie, one and one in a house, where it was agreed that we should receive both a lodging, and meate, and drinke, vntill hee had sent to the King of Denmarke some of his owne men with our Officers , to vaderstand his Maieslies pleasure, and

40 what should become of vs.

To this we all agreed, and accordingly for that purpose, were by the Lord Gouernour, safely by these armed hotse-men which were his guard, conducted to his owne house. To that place were al the people of the Hand fummoned together, they came at the appointed day to the number of fine or fix hundred, circling vs round with Bils, Holbards, two-hand Swords, and diners other weapons: And at the first fight of vs grew into such rage, that presently they would have cut all our throats, and he wed vs to pieces, but that the authoritie of the Gouernor kept them from offering violence, yet was hee faine to vie the fairest meanes of perswasion to allay their furie. For they would not beleeve but that our arrivall there was to destroy them. Yet the Governour the wed vnto them all our number, which was but three hundred men, and those all vnweaponed, and so consequently, neither likely nor able to undertake any mischiese against them:

50 Charging the vnruly multitude, vpon paine of death, not to touch the least finger of vs, but to divide vs equally into severall Villages, as it should seeme best vnto them, and so bestow kinde and louing entertainment upon vs till they heard further from him, which command of his they

accordingly performed.

Immediately upon this fetling of them and vs in quietnesse, one of our Officers with two of the Gouernours men, were fent away to the King of Demmarke, to vuderstand his Highnesse pleasure, which Messengers were no sooner dispatched about the businesse, but the Ilanders grow- Icalousse of the ing more and more suspitious, came againe to the Gouernous, and neuer would cease or give ouer people. troubling him, vntill they had gotten him to make Proclamation (in hearing of vs all.) That if 60 any of vs would freely discover the true cause of our landing woon that Coast, and reueale the

plots of any dangerous enterprise intended against them, he should not onely be rewarded with great store of money, and have new apparell to his backe, but also should without tortures, imprisonment, or death be set free, and tent backe againe into his owne Countrie. This Proclamation strucke vs all with feare and assonishment, because albeit we to our selves were not guiltie of Griffin a bafe

A wife Gouer-

any plot, or villany intended to the place or people, yet wee knew this might be ameanes to endanger all our lives, how innocent foeuer. Our suspicion of danger fell out according to our feares: for one Thomas Griffyn a Welch man, one of our owne company, went and kneeled before the Gouernour, and with a face counterfeiting a guiltinesse and fearefull destruction, told him that we came thither onely, and for no other purpose, then to surprise the Hand, kill the Inhabitants, make spoile of their wines and goods, and hating set fire of their Townes and Villages, to flye to Sea againe. Yet for all this would not the Gouernour beleeue him, telling him itself. a matter very vnlikely, that fo imall a number, fo diftreffed for want of foode, fo weather-beaten and so disarmed, should venture vpon an enterprise so full of dangerous events; but the villaine replyed, that all those complaints of want, were but songs to beguile the people, for that vpon to the least Allarum given, other ships that lay houering at Sea, and surnished both with men and armour, would on the sudaine, and that very shortly land for the same defire of spoyle, as these their fellowes had done, and therefore counselled the Gouernour to preuent such imminent mis-

The Gouernour being thus farre veged, presently called before him Lieutenant Walton, whose lodging was appointed in his house, and having related to him all that Griffis had discovered, and withall, demanding of Lieutenant Walton what he could fay to this matter of treason and con-Spiracie : the Lieutenant at the first stood amazed, and veterly denied any such intended villany, protefling by the faith of a Souldiour, that this report of the Welch-man proceeded from the rancour of a vile traitors heart, and therefore on his knees intreated the Gouernour, not to give 20 credit to so base a villaine, who for the greedinesse of a little money, went about to sell all their lines, and to make all the inhabitants of the Hand become murderers. The rest lay scattered about and knew nothing of the matter. Now soone after, just as the traitor had told the Governour, that more ships were not farre off, but were ready to second vs vpon our arrivall, it chanced that in the very heat of this bufineffe, and their feares of danger where none was, two other thippes full of armed Souldiers came to the fame place of the Hand where our thippe put in : These two fhips had brought Souldiours out of the low Countries (a ceffation of warres being there ) and were going into Swethland, as we were, but by croffe windes and fowle weather, lay fo long at Sea, that wanting victuals, they were driven in hither for fuccour. Whose sudaine approach and ariuall being fignified to the Lord Governor, the Welch-mans words were then thought true; all 30 arman temp against to the the lland was prefernly up in Armes to refift the firength and furie of a most dangerous supposed enemy : and so secretly did the Inhabitants put on Armes, that we who were kept like priso-

ners amongst them, knew not of these vproares. But night approaching, the Generall gaue speciall charge that fecret watch should be fet and kept ouer every Souldior that lodged in any mans house: which by the common people was as narrowly performed, for they did not onely watch vs as the Gouernor commanded, but among it themselves a secret conspiracie was made, that in the dead of night, when wee should be fast asleepe, they should come and take vs in our beds, and there to binde vs with cords: it being an easie thing to doe so, when our company were di-uided one from another ouer the whole lland. At the houre agreed vpon, the plot was put in force, for they entred our Chambers, and bound enery Souldier as he lay, making them all rea- 40 dy like so many sheepe marked out for the slaughter. For mine owne part, I had sue men and three women to binde me, who fo cunningly tyed me fast with cords, whill I flept, and felt nothing, nor deampt of any such matter, that with a twitch onely I was plucked starke naked out of my bed, and laid voon the cold earth vnderneath a Table, with my armes bound behinde me. fo extreamely hard, as foure men could draw them together, my feete tyed to the foote of the Table, and my necke bound to the vpper part or bord of the Table. In these miserable tortures lay I, and all the rest ( in severall houses) all that night, and the

most part of the next day, our armes and legges being pinched and wrung together in fach pittileffe manner, that the very bloud gushed out at the singers ends of many. The enduring of which torments was fo much the more grieuous, because none knew what we had done that could in- 50 cense them to this so strange and spitefull cruelty, neither could we, albeit we inquired, learne

of our tormenters the cause, because we understood not their language.

Whilest thus the whole Iland was full of the cries of wretched men, and that enery house seemed a shambles, ready to have Innocents there butchered the next day, and that every Hander had the office of a common cut-throate or executioner; Gods wonderfull working turned the ftreame of all their cruelty: For the two ships that came out of the low Countries, and whose arrivall draue fo many milerable foules almost vpon the rocks of destruction, having in that dolefull and ruinous night, gotten some prouision aboord, weighed Anchor, and departed towards Swetbland. Which happy newes being serued up at breakfast to the Lord Gouernour betimes in the morning, and that the Shippes had offerd no violence to the Countrey, but had paid for 60 what they tooke: About eleauen of the clocke the very fame day at noone, wee were all like vnto so many dead men cut downe, and bidden to stand vpon our legges, although very few had fearce legges that could frand.

Of one accident more that befell, I thinke it not amife to take note, which began merrily, but

ended tragically, and in blond; and that was this: Foure of our company being lodged in one Village, and they being bound to the peace, as you may percente the reit were; it happened that an Hoalf, where one of thermlay, had typied hard, and gotten a Hories difease, called the Stag ! Effects of gers : In comes he stumbling, to the roome where the poore Englishmen was bound to the Table drunkestieffer band and foote : which thing the drunken Sorbeholding, drew his Harchet, which he wore at his.gird'e, according to the fathion of the Country, and because hee would be fure his prisoner thould not of cape with his Hatchestie cleft his bead. And thinking in that drunken murderous humour, he had done a glosious act, away he reeles out of his owner house to that house where the other three Souldiones lay bound, where beating at the decresand windowes, and the Hoaft

In asking what he meant to make fuch a damnable ney ie; he told him fo well as he could flammer icout, that she Luril Conernous had sent him thither to put the three Emplify men to death. Vp. on this, the divell and be (hand inhand) were let in, the one flanding to clote at the others elbow. shat be mener lest him till herhadicleft two of their heads, thatlay bound i and being then weary (in should seeme) with playing the butcher, he neuer ceased five aring and shring. Brill floid rithing with his bloudy Axe about their heads, till the people of the house had hung the third man your abeane in the roome. But they having left curring in the Hang-mans trade, then will to practite it, eyed not the maker to fast about his moke, as to frangle him: To that after hee had hung an houre, hee was cut ddwine, renined againe, was well, and afceswards was flaine

Fo This bloudy feathbeing thusended, and all stormes as we well hoped, being now blowne oner to our freedome, and fitting at liberty from our tormerstors; on the necke of their former miferies fell a mifulicte more dangerous to vs then all the roll ; for tidings were brought to the Covernous, that our Auncient, while transited with the Gollemours two men to the King , had tray teroully murdered those his guides, and then ranne away hamfelfer upon this rumour, nothing but thundring and lightning flew from the common peoples infanthes : there was no way now with vs but one, and that one was, to have all our throats cut, or our heads cleft with their Axes. Cruell cowaf-Butthe Gouernor pittying our misfortunes, laboured both by his authority, & by faire speeches, jealoufer to keepe that many-headed dogge (the mulcitude) from barking. And in the end, when he faw

nothing but the bloud of vs poore Engliftmen would fatisfie their thirft; because they fill held 30 vs in suspicion and seare; he most nobly, and like a vertuous Magistrate, pawned to the inhumane Rascals (to my knowledge) hishonous all that ever he was worth; yes, his very life vnto them, that within three dayes the meflengers fent to the King, thould returne home, and that during those three dayes we should be of good behadious to the Handers; and besides that, if they did not returne in fuch a time, that then he would deliver ve vp into their hands. Our Auncient with the Governours two men, came home upon the third day, to the Governours house, King of Detand brought from the King of Demmerte his licence, to carry ve not onely through the Country, but commanding that we should be allowed shipping also at concerning place, to carry vs to Sweneland, whither we were to goe: And according to this Licence the Gouernour caused vs to be called all together the very next day; at which time, Thomas Griffinthe Welch Indus, who had

40 all this while lyen feating in the house of the Lord Gouernour, began to tremble and repent him of his villanie, begging most bale forgiuenesse on his knees, both from the Governour, and vs his Countrimen and follow Souldiours, protesting that what he did, came out of his feare to faue his owne life. But our Officers (vpon hearing him speake thus) had much adde to keepe the companies from pulling downe the houle where Griffin lay, because they would in that rage have hewed the villaine in peeces.

But leaving him and all fuch betrayers of mens bloud to the hell of their owne confciences, let vs fet forward out of this infortunate Iland, and not flay in any place elfe, till in small Boates wee come by water to Elzmore in Denmarke, where wee loyfully got aboard once more; Elzinne. and are howfing up failes for Sweneland. Yet even in this fun-finne day a ftorme fals upon vs

50 too : for our Officers not having tofficient money to furnish vs with victuals, wee were enforced to pawne our Auncient and Lieutenant Walton , for the fafe returne of the Shippe , with condition, that they should not be released vittill a sufficient summe of money was fent to defray all charges. So that we left our Officers behinde vs; but the King of Sweveland did afterwards release them, and then they came to vs. But before their comming, wee having a good winde, landed at a place called Newless in Swene: and from thence were carried to Srock boline (the Stockboline, Kings leate ) and there was the King at the same time; betweene which two places, it was a daies march on hortebacke.

Voon this our arrivall at Stockholme, wee met with the rest that had gone before vs, and with divers others of our Countrimen, that came out of the Low-countries, as before is re-60 lated. In this place we lay fo long, and had fuch poore meanes, that wanting money to buy foode, wee wanted toode to maintaine life, and fo a number of vs were readie to flarue: till in the end, our mileries making vs desperate, we fell together by the eares with the Burgers of the Towne : in which scambling confusion and mutinie, every man got one thing or Milery after other, of which he made present money to relieue his body withall : yet lay wee at the misery,

walles of the Citie, crying out continuelly for money, money, till our throates grew hoarfe with bauling, but the stones of the walles gave more comfort to vs, then the Inhabitants. One day (aboue all the reft ; wee heard, that the King was to ride a Hunting; and wee imagining that all the abules, wrongs, and mileries, which wee endured proceeded from some vinder-hand hard d aling, and packing of our Capraines and Off. cess, resolved to gather about the King at his comming forth, and to cry out for money; but the King being angry (as wee supposed) cameriding amongst vs, drawing his Pistoll from the Sadule-bow, as if hee purposed to have shot some of vs : but seeing none of vs to thrinke from him, nor to be difmayed, hee rode backe againe, wee following him, and defiring, hee would either gue vs money, or elfe to kill va our right; one amongst the self to ( whole name was William Attane) spake to the King aloud; thus: I hold at honour to deeby the bands of a King, but basely to starne to death, I will mener suffer it. V pon thele our clamour. the King looking better vpon our necessities, fent money the next day, and immediate, ly after gaue vs a moneths meanes in money, and two moneths meanes in chath, to make

Captaines COZEDAVE.

Of the cloath wee received some part, but the money being payed, was by our Captaines fent into England to their wives; no part of it ever comming to the poore common Souldiours hands for prefently upon this, wee were commanded aboord the Ships, with promife that when wer were aboord, wee should have our money. But being in the Shippes vader hatches, away were wee carried with prouision onely of one moneths victuals; when by rea- 20 fon of the weather, wee were forced to lye eight weekes at Sea : in all which time, wee had nothing but pickelled Herrings, and falt Strewlings, with some small quantitie of hard dryed meates : by which ill dyet, many of our men fell ficke, and dyed. In the Shippe wherein I was, wee lined foureteene dayes without bread, all our best foode being falt Herrings, which were were glad to eate raw; the best of vs all having no better for

At the last, it pleased God to send vs to a place called Virasound in Fynland, where wee landed, (Finland being libited to the King of Swassland.) From Pfrafound wee were to got to Wesherough, a chiefe Towne in the Countrie of Finland: where wee no sooner arrived, but our Souldiers runnt some one way, and some another, so long that the Captaines were left alone 30 with the Shippes : This running away of them, being done onely to feeke foode, fo great was

Dispersing.

By this careleffe dispersing themselves, they lost the command of the whole Countrey, which they might early have had, if they had beene vnited together; and not onely were deprined of that benefit, but of Horfes also, which were allowed by the King for them to ride upon. So that , what by the reason of the tedious lourney (which wee were to trauell, being fourescore leagues) and what by reason of the extreame cold, being a moneth before Christmas, at which time the Snow fell, and neuer went off the ground vntill Whitfontide tollowing; but all the Raine, and all the Snow that fell, freezing continually, divers of our men were it arued to death with the Frost. Some lost their fingers, some their toes, some 40 their notes, many their lines : infomuch, that when wee all met at Weyborough, wee could make no more but one thousand and foure hundred able men; and yet when we were landed at Vfrafound, were were two thousand strong; the extremity of the cold Countrey having killed so many of our Souldiours in fo little time.

Diffreffe by

At our landing at Werberough wee had good hopes to receive better comforts, both of money and victuals: for the Inhabitants told vs, the King had allowed it vs, and in that report they foake truth ; yet contrary to our expectation, wee lay there about four eteene dayes, and had nothing but a little Rice, of which we made bread, and a little butter, which was our best reliefe. Drinke had we none, nor money : our Captaines gauevs certaine letherne pelches, onely made of Sheeps skins to keepe vs from the cold-

Their miferah'emuch into

At this place we received armes to defend vs against the enemy, and six Companies that were 50 allowed by the King for Horsemen, received Horses there. From thence wee were to march into Ruffia, where our enemies continued. But the journey was long and vncomfortable: for wee marched from Newyeares day vntill Whitfontide, continually in Snow, having no reft, but onely a little in the nights. So that the miferies and misfortunes which wee endured woon the borders of Fynland, were almost infufferable, by reason the number of them seemed infinite. For all the people had for faken their houses long before wee came, because they were evermore oppreffed by Souldiours : by which meanes we could get neither meate nor drinke, but were glad to hunt Cats, and to kill them, or any beafts wee could lay hold on, and this wee baked and made them ferue for daily fuftenance. The greatest calamitie of all was, wee could Wantof meate get no Water to drinke, it had beene so long frozen vp, and the Snow so deepe, that 60 and of Water. it was hard to fay, whether wee marched ouer Water, or vpon Land. So that wee were compelled to digge up Snow, and with stones redde hot, to melt in tubbes, and then

This affection continued about twelve or foursteene dayes, till we same into Ruffis. Vpon our very first entrance into which Kingdome, we marched our an arme of the Sea, that was eight leagues ouer, many of vs staruing to death in that passage, by the cold freezing windes that blew the lame day. In which frolly journey, I law to much bread as a man might buy for twelve pence, fold away in little bits, for the value of fortie fullings. But this mifery ended the next day, at our ferring footinto Ruffis, where we found plenty both of come and cattle; onely the people of the Countrey rames away, leauing all their goods behinde them, but so cunningly hidden, that the best policie of ours could hardly finde them out. By this meanes of the peoples running away, we were glad to play the Millen, and to grinde all our corne our felues,

CE AP.9.S.4. Enhalt provided by their flebing twentien Cruel Poles.

to bake our bread, and to dreffe our owne victuals. Then marched wee up to Nonerod (a Nonerod chiefe Citie in Ruffia) where wee were to receive all our meanes that refted behinde vnpayed: but our Captaines beguiled vs, and kept it for themselves : yet to stoppe our mouthes, they told vs wee should goe into Muscony, and there all reckonings should be

made euen. Wee had scarce marched about three dayes towards Muscony, but that newes came, how a

certaine number of our enemies lay in a sconce by the way; the strength of them was not perfectly knowne, but it was thought they were not about feuen hundred, and that we must Polate entivie some stratagem to expell them from thence : vpon which relation, our Captaines drew this forth to the number of three hundred English horfemen', and two hundred French horfemen : fo that in all we were about fine hundred that were appointed to fet vpon the supposed fenen hundred Polanders, (our enemies) that fo lay infeonied v pon whom we weat. Our chiefe Commander in that fengice was Monfier to Veile, a French man, who so valiantly led vs or, that They fled. the enemy hearing of our comming, fled ouer a water that was by the sconce; yet not with fuch speede, but that wee flue to the number of foure hundred of their fide, and lost onely three men of our owne : but we tooke the fconce. About the fconce ftoods faire Towne called .rions, with a river called the Poles, running through the middle, but no bridge over it; onely a with floor of

few Boates and Sloates (made and cut out of trees) were there, to carry the people ouer from Armess the one halfe of the Towne to the other, This sconce familiaed vs not onely with great store of riches, but also with a number of Polish Horses , and as many armes as served to arme five hundred men; our want of that commoditie being as much as of any thing befides: for of those five bundred men that went vpon the service, there were not three hundred fixed armes; yet through the hand of him that deales victories, or ouerthrows, as it pleafeth him best, the

Quer this river Volga the enemies were never driven before, either by the Emperor of Ruffia, or by the King of Swethland: for which cause (as afterward wee heard) the next day when they departed from the other fide of the River, they burnt that halfe of the Towne on which fide they were themselves, and in most bloudy, barbarous, and cruell manner, made haucke both of men, women and children, albeit (not aboue halfe a yeare before ) the Inhabitants on Ples civelfies that fide had revolted from their owne Emperour, and turned to them, In which tyrannicall moft execuably

that the had reduced from their owner. A necessar, at utract core cleam. In winner by yranical, we yrone, plays callyment was, in fall a loudy full of georphs, and giften (the dopres being locked yron being what maps might high forth) the house, was faced about, their extent, and often times, were young children being by the house by the plays and the plays the tracking of the human cyrannia being graphful of the most by the Paley, that weiging to movies, but, seen by that. Raifer, that weiging the plays the tracking to the plays and the plays the plays and the plays th whose cruelty farre exceeded the Polish.

The Townsheing thus burns to the earth, all the fixe thousand (which as I faid before, fled oust the Bings, day of the france, and were by as supposed to be that seven hundred temp downs in full battelion to the Suggy fide wish such serveness, as if presently, they and their buries would have from ouer, to fell with vs. which being percented, our poore oue, bundled flood so ready to refift them. Bus whether they feared our numbers to be greater then they region and that wee had fome other troret forces. I know not : but swax they marched, the left lame day in which they came downe in that brauety, not doing any thing, of which, wee for our parts, were not much logy; because if the patrailes had loyned, were knew jour, felics farre viable to withitend them. And this was the fertice of the mail nears what we

Two or three other I conces and Townes we tooke from our enemies, they not once daring Cavelle Cane

to resist vs. because they know nothing of our numbers and force. But the difficult dealings Gayrift of our Captaines, made the whole Armie discontents; informath, that our Spuldiors would of taines tentimes deny to goe forth upon fernice, because they had beene almost a yeare in the Land. 60 and had seepingd no more but one Raddom (amounting to the value of eep fullings Eaglib.) So that you the full of the control of the seep of the control o fire of a new confpiracie was likewile kindling, but it was perceived, and quenched with the blow of the confpirators, of which, the thirds were hanged. On the parties we went; when

# 798 Fuerhom the Finlander, P. le Guard Generall of English. Go. LIB. IIII.

## Hondivs bu Map of Mulcouia



we'came within fortie leagues of Mulcoute, newes was broughe, that the enemy had beleaguard feuen thousand Ruffer that were our triends, and that valefic wee forced the fiedge to break vp, the feuen thousand Ruffes would enery man be flatted where they lay. This fad report, (albeit we had re olued neuer to goe voon any more fernice, whill wee had our pay I to wrought in our hearts, that wee much pirtied the miferies of beheis, becking wee our felues had tafted

Our Generall (whole name was Emerhorne) was a Fynlander, and with a company of Fynland blades (as they tearme them) well appointed on Horlebacke, was by the King of Surveitand,

Pantiale Guard fent affect vs., as our Connoy, wntill wee should come to Pontiale Guard, who was chiefe Generall over the whole armie of strangers that came into the Land : fo that according as he was fent and charged by the King, hee our tooke vs before we came to Arisms. By the intreatie therefore of this Fyshender, and the flattering promifes of our owne Captaines, we were contented to goe vpon this fervice, and to deliver the Ruffer, or to dye our felues in the action. Yet with childition, that (as they promifed to vs) we should by the way meete our chiefe Generall, Ponton le Guard, who with certaine numbers of English, French and Dutch (which the yeare before were come into the Land) was vpon a march out of Mulcony, not onely to meete vs. but to toyne with vs , and pay vs all our money which remained good to vs ; prouided likewise, that so soone as ever wee should release the femen thousand Ruffes, our money should be payed downe. On these conditions (I say) were yeelded to goe upon the

At leagth porter le Guard met vs (according to the promife) and with him was money brought to pay vs, and his word guich that prefently wee should receive it. But the lamentable effate, in which the poore befledged Ruffer were (within the fconce) being as the point of death for want of foode, required rather speedy execution, then deliberation's fo that the necessities of their hard fortunes crawing liaste, on wee went, having about nurreene or twenty

#### C. H. A.P.O. S. 4. Ruffe flight; French fight & flight: English bonor & coposition. 779

thousand Ruffes, that were people of the same Countrey, joyned to our Armic, to aide them in this enterprize. But as we all were vpon a march, the enemy having received intelligence of our approaching, let forward, to the number of eight thouland Lanciers and more, to intercept ys by the way : and being within one dayes march of the place to which wer were likewife going, they fet fire vpon three or foure Villages hard by the place where we lay at Graffe with our Horfes, for a token that they were comming. And this was done upon Midlummer day laft in 40-1610. the morning, by breake of day. Then came they thundring wich shours and cries to fer voon vs: but no fooner was the Alarum given, when the greatest part of those nineteene or twenty Bale Russe thousand Ruffer, that were soyned to vs as our side, fled most basely before any blow was gi- flig

To uen. This tudden cowardize of theirs somewhat amazed vs : but the houre being now come. wherein we were not to talke of dangers, but to goe meete them, with our fixe companies of English harfe, we brauely relifted the Polanders, and with great hurt to them, but with little loffe vpon our part, charged them three (euerali times.

At last Ponton le Guard (our chiefe Generall) tooke his heeles and fied too, leaning vs vtterly P. to Guard destitute of all direction : which much altonished vs, as not well voderstanding what to doe; fleeth, for our greatest strength (being by their flight) taken from vs, none but wee strangers were left in the field, and of vs there was not in all, about two chouland, and of that number there were aboue fix hundred French horiemen, who feeing both the Generall gone, and the Ruffes fled, French flee. turned their backs upon vs, and ranne away too most valiantly, yet not out of the field, but to

Then were wee not about twelue or foureteene hundred at the most left to resist eight thoufand at the least : voon whom notwithstanding, our fix companies of English horsemen, charged three feuerall times, without any great lote, but with much honor : And at the fourth time, for Eiglibhonout. want of powers to lecond them (which the French should have done) all our fix companies were feattered and overthrowne with the loffe of few of our colours. The Captaines over thefe fixe Companies of Horse, were these :

Captaine (rale, of whole company I was. Captaine Rendricke, Captaine Benfon, Captaine Carre, Captaine Colbron, Captaine Creyton.

Which ix Capraines had not in all their companies about five hundred men. In this battaile, 20 Captaine Creyron was flaine in the field; Captaine Crale was fhot in the knee, and within a fhort time after dyed of that wound; not about twelve of his companie escaping. Captaine Kendrick was wounded in diners places of the head, and dyed. Captaine Benfon was flot in the hand, and wounded in the head, and yet escaped, and lived : onely Captaine Corre and his Cornet escaped, but all his companie feattered and loft. Diners other Officers were flaine, whose names I can-

Thus were all our English horse-men dispersed and ouerthrowne, to the number of fine hundred and yowards. Our Generall Enerborne with his companies of Finland, or Finland blades. were also put to retrait : so that there was not left in the field aboue fixe or seven hundred, which were foot-men. And of these, one halte was English, one halte Dutch, who kept onely a cer-40 taine place by a wood fide, barricadoed about with wagons, having with them foure field vieces. wich which they did great spoile to the Enemie. But their number being but few, neither durst they venture on the Enemie, nor durit the Enemie enter vpon them , but kepr them field (as it were belieged) in that place onely, because they could no wayes escape. The inconvenience of which cooping up in so narrow a roome, being looked into, and the dangers on every side well considered, it was held fittest for lafetie, to summon the Enemie to a parley. In which parley, the Enemie offered, that if they would yeeld, and fall to their fides, they should have good quarter kept. And if any man had defire to goe for his owne Countrie, hee should have libertie to goe with a Pasport from the King of Poland. Or if any would ferue the King of Poland, hee should have the allowance of very good meanes duly paid him. Vpon these compositions they

so all yeelded, and went to the Enemie; onely Captaine Torks and his Officers, with some few of their Souldiers, went backe into the Countrie, and came not to the Enemie, as the rest had done : who from thence marched vp to the Polifb Leaguer, being ten miles distant from the place, and there they continued. But fuch as defired to travell to their owne Countries, were fent to the King of Polands Leaguer, which lay at that time at a place called Smolensko, and there accordingly had their Passe, to the number of one hundred, of which number I my selfe was one. What became of the reft I know not : but I with fine more held together in tranell, vntill we came to Dantzicke, a great Towne in Pruffia, being diffiant from Smolenike one hun-

To make an end of this Storie of the Foxe and the Beare, the pretending Demetrius and contending Suisker; it is reported, that Demetrius feeing these perplexities of Suisker, rayled a great Armie of fuch Ruffes as voluntarily \*fell to him (the Pole having now rejected him, except fome . Some fay i.e. Voluntaries) and againe laid fiege to Moses; Zolkiewsky for Sigismund, beleaged another part had recover thereof with fortie thouland men, whereof one thouland and fine hundred were English Scottish, which is foully and French. Smiker feeing no hope to withitand them, his Empire renouncing him, hee would credible.

feeme to renounce the Empire first, betaking himselse to a Monasterie. But not the fanctitie of Moscoycelded. the place, nor facred name of an Emperour might protect or secure him. The Musiconites ved ded up their Citie and his Person to the Pole, and the Caftle was manned for Syrifumoud. All ioyne against Demetrius, who betaketh him to his heeles, and by a Tariar (as before is faid) was flaine in his campe. Charles King of Sweden dyed Octob. 30. 1611. and Gustamar his sonne speceeded. Sigifmund obtay neth Smolensko also after two yeares siege and more : in which time the Defendants had held out fo resolutely, that the Polish Peeres and States (which in that Kingdom beare great iway) had called the King to their Parliament, the rather in regard of the King of Denmarks warring upon Sweden (in which warre divers thousands of our English voluntaries Noder the affitted the Dane) but he first defining to trie his fortune, carried the Citie with two banders to Lord willings pieces of Ordnance and other rich spoile. Many were slaine, and divers great persons taken, of which was the Archbishop. Many were blowne up (as was thought) by their owne voluntaries act, by fire cast into the store-house, in which is faid to have beene (if our Author mistake me) fifteene thousand veffels of poulder; whereupon feemed to returne the very Chaos, or in flead quindecies m. Re thereof a Hell into the World. It is accounted one of the strongest Forts in Christendome, the

John Poole Scc.

herrie.

by Ta tars.

a Generall of

the torces of

Suitey in the

Epiftles.

Euan Vafilo

Suiter now

The e of the

Citie nely.

€ Lieft maers that inhabit

Demetring, which was

Pone after

flame by a

quantum mass unservor arress motors would as a second breach. It was taken the weelfth of Italy, 16 to.

Souther was carried into Palend and there imprifoned in Warningtoning Calle, and sfort the Suakrys impei- Is see of libertie and his Empire, exposed to scorne and manifold miseries, hee dyed in a forraine countrie. But before that Tragedie, the Poles are faid to haue more then acted others. For when they held him prisoner before his departure from Mesconia, they sent for many Grander in Sail. 20 keys name, as it he had much defired to feethem before his fatall farewell, to take a friendly and Poilh cruekie. honourable leaue of them. They come, are entertayned, and in a private place knocked on the head and throwne into the River; and thus was most of the chiefe remayning Nobilitie destroyed. The Poles fortified two of the Forts at Mofes, and burnt two others, as not able to man Their reward, them. But the Muscouste also there held them belieged till famine forced them to yeeld the Russians finding there fixtie barrels of pouldred mans field ( it seemeth of such as had dyed, or Exters of mans were flaine, that their death might give life to the Survivers) a just, but miferable and tragicall Ach forced to spectacle. We shall conclude this Discourse with giving you two Letters, the one taken out of a Letter written from Colmogro Sept. 7. (the yeere is not dated) amidft thefe broiles; the other from Captaine Margaret before mentioned by Thuanne: and after them, for further illustra- 30 tion and profitable vie of this storie, is added part of a Letter of Doctor Halls.

The Polish

The Po who now had men gallant men, are almost flarmed in prifon. Sandomirsky is centred the borders with a new supply Souldiers, the which Demetric bis fonne in Law hath long fince expetted. recovered li-The Crim Tartar is returned from thence into bis some Country, bath taken more then twentie thou- 40 Russia poyled

fand prisoners captimes out of Refan and thereabouts: Knez Scopin \* is two nimeties from Yeraslaue, he meanes to march from thence to Mosco, but by Georges speeches be makes no great bafte. Bouginsky that was Secretarie to Demetrie, is fill ander prestane with an Officer, was almost flarued with hunger , but Master Brewfter doth daily releeue him to bis great comfort,

George Brighouse came Poste by Volodemer; the Princesse, wife to Buan Evanowich, that was A Dane borne eldest some to the a old Emperour (free to whom you game the good intertainment to) in there at his going up and crimming backs, made very much of him; he direct in her Presence: after domer seat him. fee Doct. Halls a great Present of many dishes and dronkes for your sake, and often remembred you and your great kind-

a great trejent of many supre, and a crosses you you, you.

A confect bor and bors; fill removeming T. L. against the property of the confect Mulcountes fland with him, and very few of the Nobilitie. Daily there iffreth one by force or fleath dissers of the Gentrie, most of the Dutch c, feeially the Women are gone out of the Moloo to the Tartar. It is supposed that the Emperour cannot long hold out , and Demetrie Euanowich is reported to bee a very wife Prince. there. The fecond

> Captaine MARGARETS Letter to Master MERICE from Hamborough, lan. 29. \* 1612.

R Ight worshopfull Sir , I could not omit this commoditie without commonding my sernice to your 60 Worshop, and also briefly to advertise you of the State of Molco, which is not as I could wish. Also Mosto effected I lest Master Brewitter in good bealth at my departure; but three dayes after the Tomme within the by the Roffis. red wall was burnt with certaine fire Bals flot in by the Ruffis, fo that there is but three bonfes left whole,

the English bonse also being burnt. Mafter Brewster is constrained to base his dwelling in a Seller un- English bouse der the Palace, without great friends except Misslofsqui. The Generall Cotqueuilfh is arrived there, butat and left a sufficient number of men to keepe the Caftle, and the red Wall, bee himselfe with his Armie is gone towards Relan, and be bath fent with much to doe, and upon certaine conditions, to the River of Sana towards the Volga, to bring vill nals to maintagne them that are in the Caffle befreged of the Muscountes. The King of Poland is altogether refolaed to goe there in perfon this fummer, and if the Ruffies have no fornaine beloe, as there is no appearance, no question it will come to passe as I writ last to your Warfoip, that they will be forced to yeeld. I write briefly to your Worfoip, because I hope to take my voyage to France through England, and there to meet with your Worfhip; intreating your Worfhip to ac-10 sept thefe few ienes as a tellimony of the fermice I have vowed to your Worthip, etc. and fo I end in hafte;

Thus have we finished source Acts of this Tragedie: the first, ending with the end of Beales family; the second, with the raine of that of Boris; the third, with that (what sever) Demotrius : the fourth, with this Smikey, attended with that fladow or ghoft of another Demetrius, Now as I have feene fometimes the Spectators of Tragedies whiled with discourse of a Cherus, or (as in our vulgar) entertayned with moticke, to remit for a time those bloudie impressions fixe ed in attentine mindes ; fo have we represented Pheedires Coronation added to the first : Boris his Charter to the English to conclude the fecond; that of Demerring to the third, and for this fourth I have here made bold with a Letter of my worthy friend (fo am I bold to call that good Man, zealous Protestant, elegant Writer, industrious Preacher, learned Doctor, and Reuerend Deane Doctor Hall, a Hall adorned with fo rich Arras, and with all the ground, light, life, the All of thefe, Christian humilitie) which may fetue as a Letter of commendation to my intent, as it was intended to another worke, which had it beene publike, might have prevented the greatest part of this : A worke of Matter Samuel Sombeby, in Sir Tb. Smith: Voyage mentioned, Master Sa. touching thole Ruffian occurrents which he in part iaw. As a Traueller he deferueth place here, Southeby. And howfoeuer I have neither beene fo happy to fee the Worke nor the Workman, yet this Epiftle tells what we have loft, and my worke eafily proclaimes the defect of fuch a Wardrobe, being (as you fee) like a Beggars cloke, all of divertifyed patches; fo much more labour to mee, in both getting and stitching them, though so much less instastation to thee. Once, as I have ge placed this long sufficient torie in the midth of Marine Discouries, to refresh the Reader a while on Land : fo amidft thefe tragicall, harfh Relations, T'thus feeke to recreate thy wearie forits with this char of mine, and after these Monda gates, mibre really, with this Letter so vietall to the present subject, so pleasing in the stile. The whole, and the next following to Bachinski, the Reader may finde in his so oft published Decades of Epistles.

Rauell perfitath wifedome ; and observation gives perfection to travell; without which, a man may please his eyes, not seede his braine ; and after minob earth measswed, shall returns with a weary body, and an empty minde. Home is more [afe, wore pleasans, but lefte frustfull of experience : Bus , to a minde not working and descursive, all beauens, all caretie are dike. And, as the end of trauell is observed 40 tion; fo, the end of obfernation is the informing of others: for, what is our knowledge if smothered in our felnes, so as it is not knowne to more? Such secret delight can content name but an ennione nature. To be the desired many and cold aires, gone faire, seen much, beard more, beforwed all. The serve yeares you have spen in musician of Nabuchadrazzars seven; consuming with such recutives. A Paul sought with at Ephclus. Alas! what a face, yea what a backe of a (burch base you seene i what manners: what perior Amongs in boom, squerous Superstand strings with close Attentione, Treachery with Cruelty, one Denill wash another; while Truth and Fernus does not so much as you any challenge of ref-flance. Resurving once to our England after this experience, I imagine you doubted whether you were states. Actuaring over 15 was suggested up to the property of 50 be a gratefull labour, to vs, to Posteritie. I am decemed, if the fickleneffe of the Ruffian State, bane not

yeelded ware memorable matter of Historie then any other in our Age, or perhaps many Centuries of our Producessers. How shall I thinke, but that God sent you thather before these broules, to be the winnesse, the Register of so famous mutations? He loues to have those tust ends which bee doth in one part of the World, knowne to the abole, and those enils, which men doe in the night of their secretie, brought forth into the Thater of the Weed ; that the cull of more since one were use my compared with the easil of his parallement, may initifie but proceedings, and condemne theres. I now worke fault thus bowner him the charges your (condemner) former, and the brenefit of the Church. For while; you difcourfe of the open Tyra-nic of that Rullian Nero, Iohn Basilius; the more secret, no leffe blond, plots of Boris; the ill successe of a stolne Crowne, though let upon the head of an harmelesse Sonne; the hold attemps and miserable end of a false, yet aspiring & challenge; the perfidionsnesse of a servile people, unworthy of better Governours; the misse-carriage of wicked Concruours, vieworthy of better Subjects; the uninit usurpations of men, init (though late) renenges of God; crueltie rewarded was bloud, wrong claimes with overthrow, treachery with bondage; the Reader, with some secret borror, Shall draw-in delight, and with delight instruction : Neuher know I amy Relation whence hee skall take out a more casis Lesson of Instice, of Loyaltie, of Thanke-

Tattar. 1611. in Em-

Ruffian Embassage to the King of Poland, doth lay open that and other passages of the Ruffian

#### Pactainter Primarium Ducem Exercituum Regni Polonia, & inter Heroes Moscouia.

C Erenissimi Potentissimiq, Imperatoris Sigismundi terty Dei gratia Regis Poloniz, Magnid, Ducu DLichuama, Ruifa, Pruffia, Samogitia, Kieuia, Volinonia, Podolia, Podlachia, Suecorum, 10 Ocitonorum, alioruma, nec non bereduary Regie Succorum, Gottorum, Vandalorum, Finlandizque Principie. Palacinus Kijenieniis, Primerius Dux Exercit:mm Regni Polonia Capitaneus Rohatiueniis, Camænaceniis, Kainicieniis. Ego Stanislaus Stanislaides Zolkiewsky de Zolkwia, Manifeltum facto prasente su patiu, & confirmatie meu literis: Qued Ommpocentie in Trinitate advando Dei gratia, & voluntate, sum & beneuellisme voner dulle Hermogenie, Moscountarium, toimide Russi e Patrarchie, Metrapolisarum, Archiepiscaperum, Episcaperum, Archieminderstarum, Itunano-rum tetinssi, ventrabilis (levi. Et post patra omnimum Hernom) Comitum, Capitaneerum, Frimariorum Daviferorum, Aulicorum, Tenntariorum, Aulicorum welbus Prafectorum, & Decurionum Sclopetariorum, necnon quorummis Molcouiz beredum, Heroumg, liberorum, Aduenarum, Mercatw am exercentium, laculatorum, velitum Fabrerum tormentarioxium, & reliquorum incolarum magni 'mpe-20 ry Molcourtarum. Heroes, uspoie Comes Atbertus Inandoiz Miciflawskij, Dax Vencellaus Ven-

cefluides Gali. Z.j., Albertus Iuanouiz Seremetij, Dux Venceslaus Mieliechij, & Primari Depusati Veneclaus Telepnieuij, & Thomas Lugowskij, & whiterfitotim Molcouix Primates, Egesan veneraan terpungan and an negervang, or mang seine actionic ermeter, Est-rust delbertuurung, meens, de eligend Imperatore, in Wholeign, islenien venterfang, Moccourt run Imperum er terdebreute und fann endprindition seildition, obligationem & farefaultum eins-ficien baptisma ser Regia Maistratie exofendati sont und timism Frontry Commes, sed etiam Haroes, incolentes Aulici, Capitanit, Primarij Dapifers, Anliet, Cubiculary, Structores, Tenutary, &

roes, incidentes Aulies, Capitainh Primariy Daylfers, Aulies, Cubriculard, Stratitures, Tematari, O Decurrants Stepararismo, invitaing spiritures lacinitaries, lacinitaries, cultures Robert Temataries, carries, fatus fermilies, or bibert bounded impery Molicultures, Huse devinadams. Ones veneralistic Herming-new Moliculture, O bear bounded impery Molicultures, Huse devinadams. Ones veneralistic Herming-new Moliculture, O bear bounded in the Capitanes, Frinancia Daylers, Arlien, Arbeitanes, Stratheris, O Decariomes Subject circums, Tematory, trained Petersonia, Adams. bounius Mercanteram cerestrais; facultures of October, F. britishida big Homes forth Friends. Securification of Capitaries, Marie and Moliculture, and the Capitaries, facultures (and facultures) and the Capitaries of Capitaries (Arbeitanes). Securification Signification (Arbeitanes) and Capitaries (Arbeitanes) and Capitaries (Arbeitanes). Securification Signification (Arbeitanes) and Capitaries (Arbeitanes). Securification (Arbeitanes) and Capitaries (Arbeitanes). Securification (Ladel Circultures) and Capitaries (Arbeitanes). Securification (Ladel Circultures). Sec worden in Hermogenes total Melecules Pairiarcha, Milyopaika, Arbibajiopa I. pijejoj, Arbibi-worden is Hermogenes total Melecules Pairiarcha, Milyopaika, Arbibajiopa I. pijejoj, Arbibi-worden is Humann, total demig vonerabilis Clerus, Demo ter pijimum maximum rogat, & Imperatorem Serenifimum Vladiflaum Sigilmundi filium facre Regia Maieftatis Imperio totius Molcourz

40 cor stitui leto exoptant animo. Omnes etsam Heroes, Aulici Imperatorij. Capitanei, Primarij Dapiferi, Egintes Cubiculary, Sirultores, Decuriones' Selopetariorum, Tematary, in arcibus Prafelli, Di-Benfatores, liberi Heroung, Admena, Mercatar am exercentes, lacidatores, velnes, Fabri tormentary, ne. If, conditionis feruiles, delibers incola Imperij Molicouie, Serențiilmi împeratoris, îbi Serențiilmi, Reçu Ponar Vladilis Segrifium thousiz, de defentiatus (fi quă iffine fatura) exofeulat funt facro-faultum vusificum baptifinia, bac figno madeientes, fe câm upl Impératori, tâm ombi aficus posteritus a ternis temporibus feruitures, omanad, prosperima exoptanies, in omnibus non secus et superioribus here-ditaris magnin superatoribus, & Cxsarinus, Magnis item Ducibus entiers superis superioribus hereausstrumente umperiori de profesio de la confesio del la confesio de la confesio del la confesio de la confesio del la confesio de la confesio del la confes

50 tiombus in Imperatorem Molcouitte. Imperij eum sont suscepturi, but de re Heroes Dux Albertus I-tianouis Mikilluwskij eum Collegis sine tradidere mibri obligatorium paslum. Ego verò Primarius dux Regni Polonia, post patismi find in (criptis radoi tradition, de minibus pariles cum Herolou certant conclusionem confituimus, & approbationis. Harung, conditionus approbandarum gratia tradidi Heroibus Duci Alberto Itanobiz com Collegis ches bligationem & confirman mea mand subscriptione, & feilli appositione, & facrofanteum britificum Baposima exofculatus fum ego Primarius Duce exercitum Regni Polonia & omnes Prumpits. Centuriones fofe obligando, pro Magno Imperatore moftro Serenifimo Sigifmundo Rege Polonia; apinefane filso Serenifimo Vladelto, Sigmuntouiz;

pro magnis imperis, oniuer seg, magno Regno Poloniz, Magnod, Ducasu Lithuaniz, & pro nobif-60 mainst, rotag exercitis, qui il pones secrossociam Region Maiestatem. , & penes me Primarium. faure, Euro in modum. Quad beneditione cateffine Deipara, & Santhrimm, qua magni miracita ma Molocus prefetter, vipiar santi Peter Mexit & Antioni; ammunit, Santhrimm, Streinsfinus Sigifmundu Rex noster Polonia miserebina Imperiy Molochitici, & creabit Imperatorem Wildy in-Senlem, maning, magnorum imperiorum, sotius Mulcoviz filimi facra yaz Rene Maieffaris V Edil-

But about all, let the World fee and commisserate the lined estate of that worthy and noble Secretarie, Buchinsky, Poere Gentleman bis diftreffer recalls over to my thoughts Alopa Storke, taken mongst the Buchinsky, I were testimmen, we work you can be displacing of a foreigne Prince; As more thank or dear rance, and hands meet be found in dear rance, and hands meet. He foreign and ill Master; but, mith on boust benet, with cleane hands. The Masters trimfice doch no more infatt a good Seruant, than the trub of the Seruant can infafte but if Master. A bad Worke man may use a good instrument: and oft-times a cleane. Naphin respetts a fonte deafier. A pour rover may may view grown and the more beld friendly on Heaven, so more to some them to mouth. It was meyer to thinke, this his piete, as it were beld friendly on Heaven, so more towards have friends in this our other World: Lo, even from our Iland was pelled deliverance takes a long signs, and friends in this our more voice: La, con y you bleaden, by us. That God; whom bearforms, will be belified him beyond hope; year raber, from Headen, by us. That God; whom bearforms, will be knowne to those rade and scarce humans Christians, for a presenter of managere, a sammer of truth, a la geomet is voyed that and years immune varieties of the presence of the presence of trails, a revarder of piece. The many of our gracious Kirg, the compelfior of an homeroid. Complether the lane of a true friend, and (which wrough all, and for all on works) the great of fine good God, fallium life those board, and fine a flad accione to be thereigh, and a malle force! to be diffred. It is no differed. It is no differed to be a second to the second worthy of your Records, than your love to this frend is worthy of mine. For neither could this large See worthy of your accords town your come to won passed overly by more. Let nestore come some targe Soil drownes or questlo, mor time and defrect (which are most to breed a longing companying of finally) about the breat of that affection, which has kindnessed or religious monthly did. But a reasoft, and worth final commond this true lose; which to fay true) hath beam now long out of fallow. Never times yet. ded more love; but, not more subtle. For every man loves himselfe in another, loves the citate in the per son: Hope of aduantage is the Load-itone that drawes the yron hearts of men; not vertue, not le desc. No Age affoorded more Parasites, sewer friends: The most are friendly in sight. Serviceable in expectation, hollow in love, truftleffe in experience. Tet now, Buchinsky, see and confesse thou best found one friend, which bath made thee many, Go,

Of the miserable estate of Ruffia after Swiskers deportation, their election of the King of Polands Sonne, their Interregnum and popular estate, and chusing at last of the present Emperour, with Some remarkabe accidents in his time.

Hus haue we leene the Russian sinnes veterly rooting vp so many Russian Imperial Families and persons : the whole Family, of Inan extirpate, that of Boris succeeding, annihilate; two pretending Demarry and Smiskie extinct: and yet have wee greater abhominations to shew you. No Tyrant, no Serpent, no Dragon is so exorbitant and prodigious as that which hath many heads and therefore in dinine Visions Monarchies (how euer excessiue and tyrannical) haue beene resembled by simpler and more vniforme beasts, but the 40 Dan. 16 7.68 Devill in a great red Dragon with feuen heads and ten bornes, and the Beast likewise to which hee Anis, 6.13 gene bu power and bis fest and great ausborsse, which opened his meast is black braine against Godge.

14.04 17.1. On which fat the great Whore, the Antichritian Babsion. There was no King in Israel, is both Ind. 17.6.6 18. Alpha and Omega, Preface and Conclusion, Diume Writ to fome mifery in Ifrael; as if all Kings and no King, were the Circumference of all the lines proceeding from Mischiefes Centre. And

now was Russia a Monster of many heads, that is, a bodie fallen into many pieces. One man possessed of the Wife of that double Demetrius, got to Aftracan, there feating himselfe to fet vp an vsurped shop of Rule; the Southerne parts choic Prince Vladylam, Son of K. Sigismund of Poland, chose of the North thought of other Princes; and at last when neither the Fig-trees sweetneffe nor Olines fatnesse, nor cheering Wine from the Vine could take place in their inconstancie, the 50 Brambles conceived a fire which deseared the Ceders of Liberau: a popular government happened, or if you will, a Confusion of the multitude bare sway, which killed and murthered enery Great Man, whom any Rascall would accuse to be a friend to the Poles, or to any of the dead Emperours, whom those popular injudicious Judges fancied not. And now Ruffia blushed with impudencie, that is with shamelesse fight of the daily effusion and profusion of her best bloud; now euery man was an Actor : and oh had they beene but Actors! too really did they present (not represent) bloudie Tragedies, of which their whole Countrey was becomne the Theatre; the Deuill the Choragus (a Murtherer from the beginning) and the whole World Spectator, stupid with admiration, quaking with horrour of fo vincouth a light!

Now for the ouertures betwixt the Muscouites, and Scanislam Stanislamich Zolkiewskie, Ge-60 nerall of the Polakes, touching their Election of Vladiflaus Sonne of King Sig fmund, and the Articles propounded : also the answere of Prince Vladiflaus to the same Articles , Anno 1612. I have here expressed in Latine as I found them fearing I should be over-tedious to translate them, especially seeing the businesse came not to esfect : and the English Articles following of the

Popular go-Ruffia.

laum Sigmuntouiz. Cum vero iam Serenissimu Vladislaus Sigmuntou z filmu Serenissimi Regis Poloniz adueners: ad Arcem Sedis Imperatoria Molcouitic 2, Ium coronabitor in Imperatorem Woodij. mitieniem, omnumą, totius Molcouiæ Imperiorum, ipsió Imperatoria Corona, & Diadema impone. tur à venerabils Hermogene Patriarcha toine Moscouiz, & ab unimerso venerabils Clero Graca Religionis, secundum pristinum morem o dignisatem. Faltus verò Serenissimus S.R. Maiestatis filius Vladiflaus Sigmuntouiz Imperator Molcouiz, Templa Dei in Molcouia per omnes Arces, Vices, vo neuersuma, Imperium Moscouix repurgabit, & augebit in omnibus ad pristinam consuetudinem & ab omni incommodo intabitur, tum Sauttis Dei, & Dinorum imaginibus, & castissima Despara, omomni processorana internati, man sanora Dece, O Dominio imaginiosa, o Ingliana companiosa, mo mibas offibus Santarum, que megna prodigia in Moscovia fectura, elebium cultum flexie gentra practare, illad, adviere tembure, Et Polucia, nec non Sprituali viriufé, sexue Civiliani ato. 10 omnibusq, vere Christianis, ve sint vere Christiana legis Graca Religionu non probibebis. Ro manne Religionis diaremi, dimer farem Setterom Belgiunis Templa, am Synagoga, in Moiconis ci Imperij Archin, & pagu, milibi adificars dabu si sikilaminus su Arce Molconis prefan, imme-Romanum Templum effe poffis, propter bamines Polonos, & Lithuangs, qui penes Imperatorem filume Serenissim R. Polo, sunt futuri , ca de re cum sacra R. Maiefiate , & venerabile Hermogene Parriarcha Molcouiz, omnibus frirenalibus, tum Heroibus, & Capitaneis collato infituenda,

Religio autem favo (antie Greca unile in punito violenda, aus persorbanda, vol alsa quespom inc. fiata introducenda est, in ida, danda spera, ve favila, vera, Christiana Greca Religio, Jaam integriatem & cultum retinent, inxta morem autiquum, nec Imperium Moscounticum, einsg, incola vers Chris firm, a Graca Religione ad Romanam, aut aliam quampiam, vi, fen vobore, & fernitute, alis/4, bir fi- 30

Iuliei in uniuersum Moscouiæ Imperium causa Mercatura, ant alterius cuius piam vei proficisi m permitsanter. Venerabilia & offa Sanitorum, ab imperatore file Serenffimi R. Pol. Vladillao Sigmuntouiz fanita cum veneratione debent venerari. Et venerabilem Hermogenem Patriarcham, Millionie from a time vortessera acque e vortes.

Millionie from a time vortessera acque vortes.

Millionie from a time vortessera acque e vortes e vortes acque e vortes e fortes from a time e vortes e fortes fortes e f the remarks annua core. The manuse a company and the first part of the first parts, legiment, famuse of qui admired antiquement temper arrangement Molecular, vipote factation parts, legiment, famuse presentates, O bis de varige reduction finales; but presentate Ecclefic distant, O manuses Impresentates, 2000. antiquerum Molcouix, nec Herorum ant alierum bennium devationes fiques Templis ant Monasteoningue un associate que estretam que que monomento antestante, aquest, l emple que (Amelle-riy) Del dicarerunt, una dicarery lora, adaptere debe, mulle, frendem, estretam meren confissas via-lando. Spritandes (A Reguleres flaties malle mode mis ingundo y Dimenfore) como pería firstando. O Reguleria, polibus cartigamia adaptem per fisio indipenden e mode estretam perio fostamentas en el mente en perio de la periodición de la confissa del la confissa de la confissa del la confissa de la confissa Aulei. (api anei, Primary Dapferi, Culepulary, & cuiufui generis Irantaey, in countru negaty, in countru Imperialisme, Cutrensisme, & terrestrome, censie, in Archem Palatini, Capitaeri, suc Tenstarij & Telonarij , aut alij eminsmodi Prafelki , & emmis conditionis hamines , vi antiqua retineant Privilegia prout constitutum est in Molcouitico Imperio, ab antiquis magnis Imperatoribus, in id Serenissimus Imperator incumbes serio.

Poloni vero & Lichuani, in Molcouia mellis in terrestribus , forensibus negotiys , ant Arcibus Palatinorum, Capitanoorumme offo debent, nec successiones Profesture, aut digmitatie in Arcibiu illie

Quia autem Poloni, & Lithuani ex verog, Imperio videtur confutem, ve praficiantur confinibus Arcibiu ad absolutum lenamen buisu Impery, ca de te Serenissimas Imperator cum Heroibus collainnem instituet suo tempore.

Iam vero uninerfa Respublica supplex Serenissimum Imperatorum precatur, me ad executionem perducat hanc conditionem, antequam fuerit hac in parte viring, deliberatum

Qui verò Poloni & Lithuani pener Serenissimum Imperatorem Vladislaum Sigmuntoniz fant futuri, cos non solum honoraturi, sed etiam contentaturi pecuniali numer atique, & promoturi secundum. uninschinsch generita summe.

Molcovitici Impery Heroes, Aulicos, Imperatorios, Capitances, Primaries Dapiferos, Cubienlavios, Prefettes, Struttores, Tenneavios, Arcium Prefettes Sclopetarierum, omnessa ad Aulam Imperatorium pertinentes bomines, & liberos Heroum, Adnesas, Mercateres, laculatatas, velites, Fabros termentarios, & commis conditiones bellicofos homines, abelig, haredes Impery Molcovitici, Serenissimme Imperator debet bakere in dignitate, bonore, gratia, & amere, ve fuit antiquitus apud primos magnos Moscoviz Imperatores; Nec autiques mures & fletus qui erant in imperio Moscoviz immutare, vel Moscoviz Ducaus, Heronaud, viduas Aduenis is patria, vel Tavusia elecare, ant deprimere.

Tributa pecunialia , sipendia raddore, & bareditates quas aliquis postidebat ad bas visa, tempara, is 60 etiamenum. O in posterum possidere debet.

Hareduaria bona a nemme abalienare, sed semper omnibus bominibus Moscovitici Impery prani ders propendindo frentita comune, posta diquida de Espablica martina eff.
Adminis munichus qui vocasis fuerant an variji Nationibus, à paquie, Imperatoribus Molcovim,

necessarys prouedere, prout antea folisum fuit: nec stipendea, Tenutae, & possessiones corum ab is

Herosbus, Aulicie, Cubicularijs, Dapiferie , & liberis Heronm, omnibufg. Aula Imperatoria inforuienti'nt, Imperatoriam bewenolentiam commonstrare, & falaria debita, fecundum antiquum moyem reddere, Serenissimus Imperator tenebitur.

Quod si vero alicus sularia multiplicabuntur, possessiones que tenuta, supra eins dignitatem, val contra alicus minuentur, praier culpamipfius, ca de re Seremsfrous Imperator conferre, & confultare debet cum Heroibus Primarijs : & prout vnanimes decreuerint , ida, fecundum equitatem , sta fit

10 Qui vero Aulici, aut libers Heroum summent beneficio Imperatorio, ex Arcibus omnibus stopendiaris, quibus beneficia tempore prateritorum Magnorum Imperatorum Moscoviz ob merita pforumdabantur , illis queq iam & flipendia pecunialia , & alimentaria , ex Mandato Imperatoris

In Arce decta Moscowia, aliffa Arcibus, Indicia exequi debent, & obsernari ve solitium, secundum flatuta Moscovitics Impery. Qued fi vere aliqua effent corrigenda, ad corroborationem Indiciorum conceditur Serenissimo Imperators, sed cum consensu omnimo Heroum Vumersituese Moscovia, itatamen, ut respondeant aquitati.

Magnus autem Imperator Serenifimus Rex Poloniz, Magnus Dux Lithuaniz, eniefá, totius Regni Poloni e, Imperia, necuon Magnus Ducatus Lithuaniz, cum Magno Imperitore filio Regis Po-20 lon & Vla liflao, Sigmuntoviz, cum emnibus Imperiys Moscoviz, in amicitia, socktate, amore, eternic temporibus inniolabiliter, nes contra se innicem exercitus colligere, & bella concitare nullic

Quoi si autem aliquis bostium tentarit impetus facere in Imperium Molcoviz, siue etiam in Regnum Polonia, & Magnum Ducatum Lithuania: contra istinsmodi ommes bostes iunitiu viribus infurgere vtrum g, Imperium tenebitur.

Caterum, in Tartatorum finibus quod fineceffum fuerit fernare verinfa, Imperi milites, cum iam. coronatus fuerit filius Sereniffimi Regis Polonia, Imperator Imperiy Molcovitarum : bac de re collatio cum Heroibus instituenda, & cum magno imperatore Serenismo Sigismundo Rege Polonia; ida de-center, animo sincero, absa villa machinatione dammi alicuius, ant Tyrannidie illationis in bomines Mos-2C COurtice Imperig : bonorem, vicam, aut alind quippiam ifinfmodi nemins adimendo, cuinfcung, cenditio-

nis ille fuerit : Aut fi in Poloniam , vel Lithuaniam, alsag, Imperia Mosconitici Imperiy homines transmittendo, aut ex Lithuania in locum corum alicums alterius generis bomines supponendo: Uxeres, ant liberos alicuius dolose corrumpendo, vel sobolis procreanda gratia sumendo, & ad exteras Nationes parentes cum liberis transmittendo.

Oui ausem ex quocund, Imperio istiusmodi facinoris reus. & pæna dignus inveniretus: Is in Impera-soris & terrestribus indicibus prous meruis, puniendus ost: & decressus per Imperatoreus aut Heroes, vel Capitaneos de illo ferendum.

l'xores autem corum & liberi, fratres, & qui istud facinus nec perpetrarnat, nec ipsis fuit cognitum., aut illud perpetrandum consentière. Illi wedum puniendi , sed secundum aquitatem Privilegiorum suo-40 rum, patrimonia, tenutas, vitam, aulas, retinere debent,

Sin usrò rens non possit explorari, nemo tum Indicio Imperatoris, at Heroum indicari, puniri, proferibi, vel mearcerari, aut ad alienos transmitti debet : sed vnusquisq in suis Tonutis & Aults confernari.

Steriles autem, quiaex hac decefferint vita, bona ab illis relicta, vel confanguineis ipforum, fine cuieung, ipsi legaucrint, tradenda : id tamen non absg. mutua collatione,& consilio esse debet.

Perro quoniam tempere prasentis seditionis multi perire, & multos ex Molcovitis proferatos constat à Polonis, & Lithuanis, & contra Polonos & Lithuanos à Moscovitis : iftud fallum, & nune, & imposterum, nec commemorandum, nec vila vindicta utriný, pensandum esse debet.

Qui autem Poloni, & Lithuani Primipoli, Centuriones, alijá, dinerfe fortis bomines duxère capti-50 uitatem in Imperio Moscoviz, quorum aliqui adhuc in vinentis tenentur,illi ex Moscoviz Imperioreddendi, fine vila pecunials liberatione. Tum quoque vice verfa Aulici, liberi Heroum, laculatores, Ve-lites, Fabri sormentari, ommefá, feruiles & liberi homines, Aulicorum liberi, laculatorum, Fabrorum. tormentariorum, Sclopetariorum, & horum similium. Item Matres, Vxores, Libers, & bis similes, ex Imperio Moscovitarum, virilis aut muliebris fexus, in prasentem seruitutem prasente primo Moscovitarum, virilis aut muliebris fexus, in prafentem ferustutem prafente primo Molcouitarum Imperasore Vencellao accepti in Poloniam vel Lithuaniam, illi ab Imperatore Serenifime Rege Polonia, refittaendi à minimis ad maximos v [q, ab [q, pecuniali redemptione. Pronentus Imperatorios ex Aroibus, alij [q, possessions, tum ex tenutus & arendis census, omnes q, reditus, debet Serenissimus Imperator exigere, ot antea fecere Primi Imperatores, & prioris Magistratus mores, & statuta absa, consensu in

Arces, aut Civitates, que bello vastata, ad cas mittere debet Serenissimus Imperator, & pracipere, ut conscribantur Registra corum, qua per vastationem periere : ut vicissim sumptis pronentibus alimnde, fecundum conferipta registra poffint refarciri.

Quorum verò Hereditates, Possessiones, vel Tenute spoliata, ijs lanamen dandum, sed non absa

Demetrius

Supposititius fecundus.

BSHL er.

4. 45.

sink : 1

-ma-1 s

second a

consensus Heroum. Et qua recens vastata Aces, illas quamprimum restaurare, consilos cuiso eum He-

Mercatores Moscoutici Impery omnium (untatum, in Polonia & Lithuania, sic Poloni, Lithua ni, in Molcaura, Polonis, Lichumna, merces coemere debent more vituato, va antea : Ifrad tamen ca. mendam, ne inuicem sibi facessent negotia Mercatores, & aly Christiani in Lithuaniam ex Russia & ex Lithusnia se Ruiliam, sese transportando cum mercibus Heroes, & Assicionnes, mancipia debest us

In Volta Dona, & Tekter Arcibus, velites, fi illis opus fuerit, servari debent : de quibus Serenis. summs Imperator conferre debet cum Heroibus, & Nobilibus, post quam coronabitur.

Arces Molcourtici Imperiy, ad Imperatorem persineutes, cum ille, que m tenuta Polonis, & Li-19 thuanis, radita funt, vel quas tam Vor prefatus fub prestatem fuem fubrectt : Ego Primarius Duc exercituum Regni Polonia, confitus cum Herochus Molcouia, quod Serenssonus Rex Polonie, Filio Jacra Jua Regia Maiestatis Serenissimo Vladislao Sigmuntouiz, bas arces, cum omnibus qua fors vaffate, Molccuitico Imperio reitituere debet. Illustres vero Legati Molcouientes, boc in myesio trastaturi suns cum sacra Regia Maiestate de sumpsibus, & expansis sacra Regia Maiestats in milites expesites, & de perfoluendie Polonis, & Lithuanis, sune queque consultearmi, quemodo

Vot antem prefatus, qui sese Cesaridem Moscouttici Impery, Demetrium Euanouiz appellat : de illo, mbi Primo Duci Regni Poloniz constitum meundum, & omona cura habenda, vi capi, vel penitus

Qui postquam capsus, vel occifus fuerit, Ego Primarius Dux Exercisuum Regni Polonia, cum exercitu sacre Maiestatu a primaria Aree, sedis Imperatorie, Moscoura prasata discedere ad Arcen decerting acres consequent aper, post collationem cum Heronbus inflitutem, birg, Legates Molconia, 6 mandatum facra Regia Maiestatis, prasselari tenebor. Qued si nubilomiums Vot prasatus contra lim peratoriam arcem Moscoulam fic dictam tentauerit infidiari, aut fedatumes aliquas excitare; Ego Primarini Dux Regni Polonia, illum profligare, & armie perfequi tenebor.

Dominum vero Sapicza, qui fe Vot p'afato adimoxii, ab the & exercitum Polonicum, & Lithusnicum abducere; Quod fi sdem Vor prefatus, ex Moscouia cum Ruthenis discosserit, militum austro nicum acuseres; treus prumer voi propuntes acuserous acuserous properte, muticum aucum Polonorum, p. d. Lithianorum quofdam apad fe deimnera; Espe Primarius Dan Regu Polonie, cum exercius facre Regu Maisfaus, yna cum Hersibus Moleoune, ne fangueistum mopoliterum ex- 30 ordiatne, sed Imperium pace publica assesuratum stabiliatur, dabimus aperam.

ordiatie, fed imperium pace puovica agievraimo jiaviunim, ianimus operium.

Multer viro, qua cum codem Vor prefato per Molcouiticum Imperium, emi exercitis passim heperior. Pala- grassiant, Imperatricem Molcouiz ses ventilando; ili proinbendum, ne candem se imposterum comominare, vel quippiam sfiinsmedi, ant aliquas difficultates, contra Imperium Molcouiticum moltri audeat : sed, quamprusum in Poloniam reducenda est. Imperator vero Seronofimoto, silins Regue Polomie Vlauslaus Sigmuntouiz in omnibus antiquitus, inta fancita, & patta Magnorum Legatorum Molcouix, cum Serenissimo Sigi smundo Rege Polonix, & confirmata primilegia unitari debet. Cinutatem & Arcem smolinsk prefaum quod atimet; Ego Dux Primarius exercituum regni Poloniz (upplicabo apud S. R. Maieflatem, vi probibeat, ne militei in Conitate tanta bomicidia exer-

De Bapti'mo

De ba tifmate verò, vt illud Imperator Vladiflaus Sigmuntoniz, filius facre Regia Maiestatis suscipeat, & baptezetur in illorum Sacrosan italegis Graca religione, in illag, perseuret, ve & de alis Justinas, O comprisento no sucremo comprisente como recugeme, no mang perjeneres, ve O de aigi moname contratti altis, de condicioniban, de relagui cercumfiscanj, antiquitas so Imperis Molecutico, ad prefenem vifig expedicionem bellicam observatis: Inter Serensssimos imperatores de Imperis omas projectes typ experiences of the state of contuls cum Herosbus, quid splis responsi sum daturus: sed primium cum sacra Regia Maisstate boc in negotio, ium etiam cum Serenissimo Imperatore Vladislao Sigmuntoniz filio sacra Regia Maiestatit,

Injuper, Ego Primarius Dux exercituum regni Polonia, m Arcem Moscoulam presutam, Po-50 Ionos, Lithuanos, Germanos, & omnis generis bellicofos, qui funt mecum, & cum Domino Sapieza, absg, permissu Heroum, vel spla necessitate, intromittere non debeo. In Arcem Moscouiam presatam, Mercatorum Polonorum, & Lithuanorum, mercium coemendarum gratia, ex omnibus Pronincijs regni Polon z, cum meis Imperialibus testimomialibus literis, non vitra viginti, vel paulo plures sunt intromistends: ab/q, literis a me datis testimonsalibus, in Arcem Moscoulam presatam, aut alibi, nemo

Ob mains verò robur, & co-firmationem Pallorum istorum, Ego Primarius reeni Polonia Dux exercitumus, Stanislaus Stanislaides, Zolkiewsky de Zolkwia figilium meum apposii, & manum properam subscrips. Sic etiam Domini Primipols & Centurianes exercitus, qui tum temporis mibi aderant, ad hac mea scripta nomina sua subscripsere. Datum in Castris, apud Arcem sedis imperatoria 60 Moscouitici Imperatoris. Anno 1610. Augusti 27. die.

Respon-

Reponlum ad Pada inter Primarium Ducens Exercituum Regni Palanie, & Heroes Mosconia, Serenissimi Regis Polonia, & Serenissimi V Manta ... o DISLAI SIGMUNTOVIZ Filij Sacræ

Regiz Majestatis.

Magna Dei gratia Imperator Viscillano genuntonit. Fishus Sereniffun Kegir Poloniz, Social Ciz, Ge. Amphifium Molcoutarum Imperi minerio venerabili Clero, Ministri De vis Agent Des grand imperator, entangementale minerale volumentale Gera, Ministra Des vides allen films. He situate, Gestianere, Leberts, Recomo, Admestia, velicum, legestarette, of festipue, of the films of the control of the control

mi lapor elevibus vestriscofficio vistra. O prinophinalment annul conferiadus; admentung, optirum us Imperium Moleculicum, com ganda en paca expeliabiti. Dis vers mata de nobis apinopis, questimacia, o fedicition vos prinopis, questimacia, o fedicition vos prinopis, questimacia, o destinato prinopis, questimacia destinato productiva de la compania del compania de la compania del compania de la compania del compania del compania de la compania de la compania de la compania del compan quibus multam copiam sanguinis Christiaui frustra esfunda passi saint. & sotum Imperium dinistrunt, & bac pertinacia, asque malasta sua, Dei ser Opt. Max. castissmad, Deipara voluntati, necesso Serenissimi Sigismundi Des gratia Regis Poloniz misericordia, & ipius beneuolo erga fe animo aduer-

rentssin Sigifuund Dei geath Regiv Poloniz misserieris. O vijus beneinde eig s saimbe dauer fann. Notify Serveisson spergarer inzumenne excellatione vinis sel kaptimati praktime vision. Onere pursone vision sind kaptimati praktime vision. Onere pursone vision sind kaptimati praktime vision. Onere pursone vision sind proprietare Deni Oministana, intella sindente, activitation sindente, activitation sindente, activitation sindente, activitation sindente sinden

Sacrofanttain quof, Retribiten vestram Legis Grace pergnitismus, carumé, secundum constituciones Patrium Sanctorum, inclinitat, in nullo panel o violandam, & immutandam. Et unuersam venerabi-Parrum Santèreum, inchbaigh, in multe philt evolchandem. Et innuntandem. Et onuner fum vene ab-lume Parriya, Munifrendin Die Confession worderveime Codoum, dobtie in hower famile historiuri. 'Herer, Alaies, & chassfould, fortis alen diliperi, promouble, patretum plassionem secunitaem, aleman-que comorin posalitorum, de mostre abellemant, i est amount consequent estimator posalitorum, aleman-que comorin posalitorum, de vinque mestra imperatoria proinspone, contemporary posalitorum, alemantica de la mention posalitorum estimatoria. Con commencata fun perfecuerare vin est collaboration. De min Ops. Macs. Se assistation estimatica de commencata sur persecuerar vin est collaboration. Deum Ops. Macs. Se assistation esta Conservation, frististica illas gladas partituros certe scientes. nostrum Imperatorium beneuolum animum, in iram , & vindictam untatum experientur. Non vult emim Deus Omnipotens, vt. ob malitiam, & contumaciam Rebellium, innocentium viterius fanguis affundatur, Templa Dei folientur, & gloria fantii Nominis eius, magis, ac magis deprimatur. Vas omnes, apud animum vestrum diligenius perpendite, & his , qui adhue nobis terginersantur renunciate, vi animo mutato , ad versiali agnitionem redeant , & seditosos , & pacis publica diremptores re-

Iam vero, ad quas Arces, & Cinitates, he litera nostra peruenerint , Mandamus, vt corum Capitanei, & Tenntari, omnia ad viltum neceffatia, & pecuniam colligant, in paratifá, habeaut, ad noftrum aduentum. Interea Exercitas sacra Regia Maiestais, Domini Parentis nostri, nostrig, proprij, ne vllum detrimentum patiantur, fed una in fraterno amore, quoad venerimus, vimatis . Et donec Opt. Mair.

ex mere gratia sua, vostras, Imperatorium cura, & diligentia, tate Impera Moscovictico fe-mato, Goreffameno, aubit peter concesser. Dabiantos Vattonici, Anno Dombai 1612. o. de Marie.

# The points of the Embassage of the Ruthan Messenger sent to his sacred Maristic, briefly collected.

By what manner their natural Lords ruled out them, they alleged, to wit, beginning from 10 Lord and Language of the blood of a Angulus (see Emperous of Rose, such you the late Lord and Language Periods Emanusch, in whom their Race crade).

This keris Godonous abiding with Proche Emanusch, was created (by the owner force and power) Emperous or Lord vious after a little time, the pleature of God to working, being timed out of the Imperial feate, departed this life flamefully, and by vision Seath, together with his

Gregorii Eutro-Demetry Eus-Primares,

That Conflighers Orrepay the Referee, being of bale defent, ruder the Name which he did beart of Emperour, otherwise Demery Emansporte Ilains as Ongett, did fraudiently and by de-cit (wherewith he decrined the common people, and others the belonged them) obtains the Imperiall Seate by force, without the confent of the Spiritualtie, and all the chiefe Bishops and Lords, and great men of the Kingdome, who durft not withfland the fame, feging the Commons to yeeld thereunto.

Lord Palatis of How the excellent Lord Palatis of Spandware, gave his daughter in marriage to the Rofrigs,
Sandware.
and himfelfe (many Gentlemen both of the Kingdomet Palatis, and press Ducky of Lieu, to

and hundrife (many dentifiered both of the Augustome of Friend, and great Ducky or Lien, accompanying him came into Mofessia.

The that Unfile Emmersich Sauker, with his brethern, and many others associated to this attempt, and firring wy other great men of the Land, did kill the Safrings, with many Gende
men of Friends, and the great Ducky of Liens, and pure the red input disert Calles. And himselfe
was made Emperour, although he were not elected by all the Sagres. Whereupon many of our Valili Eugnoweb Suntey.

The Wor.

was made Emperour, a temperour were now to the control of the cont vnto him, because of the murtherers. How others called Wors, did name and call themselves somes of the Saine Emperour, as Inc.

Other Wers, or precenders , 1. Peter, Pheodor , and by many and divers other names ; and under the same names , did consume Phesder.

the State, and thead much bloud. How the Kings facred Maiestie, comming to Smolenike lent his Messengers the Lord of Pre-The King of miffase, and other noble men, who comming vnto the Campe, the forenamed 18'er, fied away: but divers of the Reffer came vnto his Maieftie. And taking counfell with the Betaries, at that 40 The Lord of time remayning with Saukey in the chiefe Citie, we fent our Mellengers to his Majeffie at that

Poland Michael Salti-

The Articles are before

time, being at Smolenske, viz, Michael Salticone, and others, requesting that his Maicstie would grant vs his Sonne to be our Lord, How they were dispatched away, and what answere they brought from his Malettie, with conditions engroffed, and figned with his hand and feale,

How that after the depoint of Smiker, the noble Lord Generall of the Kingdome, comming into Moscoma, concluded all the faid bufineffes and treaties; and confirmed them with the oath of himselfe, and his fellow Souldiers. And that they after that outh , likewife made their outh for the same. Then, that for the greater defence of the said principall Citie from the Wors, they fent Souldiers into the Citie, and fent also their Meffengers from the whole Countrie Fiderets, 50 Valle Galicies. the Metropolitan and Vafili Galichin, with others, vnto the Kings Maieffie, and required an oath in his Maietties behalfe, of all the feuerall Provinces.

How that his Maiesties Souldiers dwelled and behaved themselves in this capitall Citie of Mosco, before the troubles began, without injuring any man, punishing the cuill according to

How the Boiarins handled other Gentlemen, and principall persons of the Ruffe Religion, although more inclined wato them : but especially the Officers and Servants of the Wors, as also

It followeth, how they often fent word vnto the Citie of Smolenke, and willed them to deliver up the Citie unto his Maiestie, to bee under his prosperous government and power. As for 60 the fecret plots of their Meffengers, Galechin and others, they faid, they were ignorant, as also of some vnknowne practises, handled with the Wor called Halusin. But they faid, that they had written very often to the Citie of Smolenske, and commanded them to doe what souer stood with his Maiesties pleasure, and liked him, without further effusion of bloud.

How also it befell in the chiefe Citie to Lepun, and Sa. why, and the other Robels, when they Lepun violated their fidelitie.

That they certified his Maiesties Souldiers thereof, and that they, with them, did rise against the Rebels, and that even to this present, they doe keepe, and will keepe their oath once made, and their due obedience vnto their Lord.

And, in that Lepin was punished of God for his treacherie, and departed this life with so shamefull a death, wee thinke it to bee for the good example of others, to reduce them into their former estate, to reuoke others vnto their fidelitie, and for keeping their oath alrea-

Therefore, after many circumstances, they inferred, that they would presently send their Messengers to the generall Parliament : but mooued with the perswasion of the honorable Lord Generall, to wit, that his Maieffie would bee contented with their fidelitie once made, and performed under eath, and with their griefe for the fame cause, and will cheerefully forgive them : and doth not refule to give his Sonne to raigne over them. Adding withall, that many Kingdomes, to wit, the Kingdome of Hingerie, the Kingdome of Bobernie, and a great part of Ruffe, doe earneily request, that he would receive them under the happy government of his Marefre : that they might entor the printledges of Poland , and Liton , to which , none in the whole world can be compared.

But , because his Excellent Maieftie , as a Christian Lord , reichting all other Kingdomes, and Dominions, will graciously receive vader his Rule and government the faid Dominions, and that he is forry for their destruction : he therefore now admonsheth them, if they will bee under his prosperous Rule, and enter into an union together with the Kingdome of Poland, and the great Duchy of Lnow, and live friendly with them ; if they will performe, and confent therevnto , His Excellent Maiestie promiseth to remit their offence, and to receive them vnder his The King as happy gouernment and authorifie, and refuseth, and by no meanes will alter or change their taith seams and confeience, or places dedicated vnto Ged, or builded for deuotion: neither will impose on them any other Religion, or after their ancient Manners, or Customes, but will bestow on them prulledges and offices: and that the Rights and Prulledges, which the Pair, with the great Duchy of Litem doe enjoy, shall be conferred on them: and that they shall be equalled with the 30 Kingdome and great Duchy of Litem, &c. which illustications and prulledges, in former times,

their Predecesfors wanted. For this perswallon therefore of the honourable Lord Generall, which he had in charge from his Maiellie to make, they yeeld all thankes : but notwithflanding they propound, and plainly adde, that their oath shall be so, that his Maiesties sonneshall succeed in their gouernment, with certaine additions, to wit, that they will have none other over them but onely his Maieffies fonne, and that the whole Land dorh make it knowne , and propound their in gement and fentence, by way of denunciation, that by no meanes, but by offering his Maieffies sonne, these troubles of Mosconia can be extinguished. Adding withall, that at that time, in the first troubles, when the honourable Lord Generall came into the Country of Mofconia, and required the 40 oath for the Kings Maiesties sonne : if his Maiestie had made any mention thereof, it is certaine,

that the Commons and all the Nobilitie, would not have confented thereunto by any meanes, and that greater effusion of bloud had rifen thereupon : And that they had taken for their Prince Klutzimity, called the Wor, to whom all were not affembled, who also at that time had a great Klussimity a power of men, as well of Poles, as Ruffes and Litowes. They therefore feeing the great discord West or Pretenamong if the people, taking couniell, did freely choose for their Lord and Emperour his Excelder, acknowlent Maiesties sonne, vnto whom they had a great affection, and who had a long time before ledged Emgelayen in their hearts : affuring themselves also, that by this election of his Maiesties sonne, many troubles and diffentions would be pacified, and fo reiected the aforesaid Wor Klutzinsky: As alfo they received into their chiefe Citie the chiefe Generall. But, when it was heard that his Exso cellent Maiestie, would by no meanes give vnto them his sonne for their Lord, and to rule over

them, they fell into such effusion of bloud and insurrections, As also the same time, the whole Country of Mosconia looked and expected nothing else then his Maiesties sonne. Calling to memorie, for their better aduice, that it was to be feared, least whilest his Maiestie came too late with his fonne, divers parts of the Land should choose vnto themselves severall Lords. As to the Southward the Castles Strachen and others, to the King of Persia; part of Pomerland and Si- Afracan. heria, to the Kings of Denmarke and England; Nonogrod, Plefco, Inanogrod, and others, to the Lapland King of Sweden and that the other Cities would choose to themselves other Lords separate from the rest. In the meane season, they defire his Excellent Maiestie, to make a speedy end of these warres, according to his Obligation and promife ratified by the oath of the honorable Lord Ge-

6c nerall, and the whole Armie : and that his Maiestie himselfe, with his sonne, would come into Moscouia. They request also, that his Excellent Maiestie would recayne with himselfe and his Sonne, Counfellors, and Messengers of their Commonwealth, for the ordayning and concluding of perpetual Conditions. They request also, that his Maiestie, in the name of his Sonne, would fend vnto all the Inhabitants of the Townes, and write vnto the feuerall Cities, fignifying his

How

comming into their Dominions, and willing, that out of the feuerall Prouinces, all forts of men send their Messengers, to treate and conclude of the affaires of all sorts of People, and of perpetuall tranquillitie. Promising after the said Charge and Letters to all people in generall. and notifying from their faid Lord, that (by Gods grace) there may bee throughout the whole Land of Moscoma, tranquillitie, peace, and securitie.

To conclude, they pray heartaly vnto the Lord God, to grant vnto his Maieslie in this busneffe begun, a prosperous and speedy end.

Thus have wee scene diffolute resolutions, or resolute diffolutenesse, men onely constant in inconstancy, resoluted wpon irresolution. As we often see sicke persons turning every way, and mountancy, resource por mountaincy, resource p the Ruffian fickneffe, they would and they would not, and yet would againe, and againe would not, they scarsly knew what or why; fluctuating in an inward storme of diversifyed hopes, feares, delires, diffracted affections, no lefle then in that out ward broile of State. For it was not long that they looked toward Poland, whether for breach of conditions of that part, or out of inueterate hate to the Pole, or their Na ionall icalousic and diffrust of Strangers, or a natural inconstancy; they fell off from that Prince : and their Chancellor (Father to the now raigning Emperour) employed there with others in Embaffage) were detayned thereupon prifoners. It is also reported that they made fecret overtures to His Maieftie of Great Britaine, and that Sir Iobu Merick and Sir Willam Ruffel were therein employed : but the firong consulfions and sharpe agues and agonies of that State could not, or would not endure the linguing of such 20 remote p lincke; the wheele of Things being whirled about before fuch a Treatie might admit a passage of Messengers to and fro. Once that Russian Head grew so heady and giddy, that Many-headed at laft it bred innumerable Heads, yea the whole Body became Heads in the worlt of tyrannies, a popular (gouernment shall I say ! or) confusion. Neither were Hydras heads (monftroully multiplying two for each cut off) like this: for besides so many wor's after the sirfe and second Demetrins (which might make up that comparison) each limbe, nay almost each haire of this Hydra (not the Nobles alone, but the baleft which had nothing but themselves, and were nothing but Numbers) became so many prodigious Heads; they also like Pharach leane time demonring the fat, and upon light pretences beheading themselves in cutting off the heads and nobler Persons amongs them.

When they had thus made away almost all the Grandes, and left the South parts to the spoile of the Poles, which once agains were drawing neere to Mosca to beliege it; the Poles allo fuffered some disaster, their Souldiers mutinying for want of pay, and banding themselues to returne into Poland, there inuaded the Mints and Custome-houses, and some governments, detayning them for their pay; sending also threatning Letters to divers Cities and Townes, forced divers Nobles and Plebeians to composition. The Turkes and Turkers brake likewise into Walachia, Moldania, and Polonia, fo that Zolkiewsky or Sulcosky the Generall was forced to goe against them, of whom he made so great a slaughter, that the Great Tarke committed the Pelate Embaffadour at Conftantinople to Ward, and threatned the Poles with invasion. Thefe mutinous Souldiers continued meane while that and the next yeere to spoile Poland, doing much 40 damage to the King and the Bishops, challenging many millions due, as they faid, for pay. Yea they passed further into Prussia, and made sporte in every place, on the eight of November 1612. passing with a great prey to Thorn, being parted into three Bands, the Sapians, the Shorouians, and Smolenskians. Another companie of them terrified Silesia. The Tartars likewise made impression and committed great spoile in Podolia.

Perarsip cho-

Thus an Armie divided could not conquer, nor lo etterly exterminate Ruffie as otherwise opdence permits portunity was offered : the Pole Souldiers being herem like angry Elephants which formetime recoyle vpon their owne troupes and doe more spoyle then the enemy could either have effected or expected. But whiles the Inuaders were thus inuaded, the Ruffer were forward to worke those executions on themselves, which their enemies could have wished to them; till at last awakened with the horrour of their owneeurls, some began to thinke of a better course. In the 50 Strange altera- North about the Dwina, a bold fellow, a Butcher, rayling at the Nobilities basenesse, and the orrange aircras. tion of affaires. Officers corruptions, faid, if they would choose a good Treasurer and pay Souldiers well, they by a Burcher. might have those which would fight and expell the Poles their Enemies : provided, that they would first choose a worthy Generall, for which place he recommended to them a poore maymed Gentleman, called Powarsky, who had done good feruice, but being neglected, now had retyred himselfe not farre off. The multitude approved the Butchers counsell, and chose Persistence and a Butcher ky for their Leader, and that Butcher for a Treasurer, delivering into his hands what money they had, which he so faithfully disburfed , Pozersky also discharging so well the trust reposed, that a great Army was gathered, and the fiege of Mufco thereby rayfed. And joyning with Knes Demetry Mastroukswich (a kind of Tartar which commanded an Army of Coffaks in fer- 60 uice of the Ruffe) they tell in confultation with Boris Liein, the third Great Souldier of that Countrey, vpon choice of an Emperour. Their mindes herein difagreeing (some naming one, some another) some named Mastronkswich himielse, other for further securitie against the Poles,

and to recompence the fufferings and imprisonment of the Russian Chancellor in Poland, named and to recompense the inferings and imprinoisment of the hading a good Councell appointed) they Micalimich is young Sonne Micalimich, under whose Empire (haung a good Councell appointed) they Son to the might huc happily. This was first approved by the Coffake, and then by the other Armies, the Chancellor But her allo was taken to become a Counfellor, and those three Leaders aforesaid were made choics, Militarie Commanders for the prefent Emperour against the Poles. Embaffadours also were sent to divers Princes to mediate betwitt them and the Fole, and betwitt them and the Sweden: and by his Majethe of Great Brittaine (w.iom God long preserve to reigne over vs) his countenance and intercession, there hath beene lome agreement, and the young Emperour hath settled Our Kings me his Dommions in peace, making at laft a truce for fourteene yeeres with the Poles, obtaying His Fathers 10 also in that Treate his Father the Chancellour his libertie and returne out of Poland, who fince returne and is confectated Patnarke of Russia.

His Embaffadour to the Emperour came to Line in December 1613, and thence was conneighen by the Emperours Officers to the Court, where hee had folemne audience, where after rich presents of Furres and his Letters, he delivered his speech, that Michael Phedorowich was langue. now by vnanimous confent advanced to the Russian Empire, and willing to entertayne and continue the ancient confederacie betwixt both Empires : defiring the Imperial Majeftie to dehort the Pole from his vinuit attempts, to deliver the Ruffe Captines, and not agains to infest the reco-

an Embaffadour to his Court, &c. This mediation Cafar promifed, and gaue the Embaffadour 20 liberall entertamment, and gentle dispatch.

Not long after in May 1614. the Ruffian Embaffadour had audience with the States of the Voiced Prouinces at Hages and before that in England. I was prelent both at his arrivall at Granefend, and his honourable entertaynment into London, and faw him also prefently after the running at Tile at White-hall, the foure and twencieth of March, admitted to his Maieflies presence, performing that Russian Rite of bowing with his face downe to or neere the ground, &c.

uered Mufco, but to enter into prace, and abstayine from Christian bloudshed. Likewise to fend

Anno 1615. The Turkish Embassador treated with the Cafarens Majestie about the mediation betwixt the Pole and the Mulcounte, who employed to that purpole Erafmu Heidel and the Baron of Dobs. The Pole no: withit and ing tent an Army in his Sonnes challenge (who was 30 fhortly to follow to Smolenshe) into Mufconia; Pontus Tellagard the Sweden Commander infefling allo the Ruffan at the same time. But the next yeere 1616. Sir John Merike Knight, negotiston, a nan of great experience in those Northerne parts, was employed his Majesties Embassadour to Sir Dadey Dies negotiate betwirt those two Great Princes, the Moscouite and the Sweden, the Articles of whose was also sent composition I obtayned by the mediation of Sir Thomas Smith (my ancient Benefactor in this Embassador in kind) and haue here communicated to thee, but in another Chapiter as being now past our Tra- a croublesome gicke Thunders: as also the following Russe-Change Newes, that you may see not only the face of time, when he Ruffig washed from her bloudy pollutions, but her hands further then euer extended (fortunate in fafetie paffe vp treaty of Commerce) as far as China : likewife the Rufe Patent to the Englift. Sweet is the name to Mojco for of Peace, and the thing it lelfe a Heaven vpon Earth. BLESSED ARE THE PEACEMA- the enemie, in

KERS (His Maiefties word elfe-where, here his deed) for they fhall be called (faid the only begot - the fift times ten Son) the Children of God; even the God of peace will make them his heires of Heaven, which (models of Deity) feeke to establish the peace of God vpon Earth, And let it not feeme tedious here to prefent thefe His Maj:fties Trauels, amongst our other Trauellers, but in a more glorious manner (I ker to God vomeneable which moueth all things) who hath not only been our Sunne, and with lightfome heate and influence filled our Brittifb Hemisphere, but hath dispersed his bright rayes of Light, and warmed with I weet quickning beames of heat, those remoter frozen Chimates of Sweden and Ruffia, (not to mention, or but to mention the quarrels of Demmarke and Sweden) and after their long froftie Night (fuch is the nature, fuch was the state of those States) to reduce the faire day-light of Peace, the warmth whereof hath thawed the Icie hardned hearts 50 of Enmity, and filled all things with tweets, and cheere of a returning Spring. Nulla falm bella, pacem te poscimus omnes.

	Ttt 3	Сна
	1113	CHA

#### CHAP. X.

A briefe Copie of the points of the Contracts betweene the Emperours Maiestie, and the Kings Maiestie of Sweden: at Stolbona the seuen and twentieth of February, 1616.

plan King of

Chliainn of former quarters of the after of the plant all matters be fet afide, forgation, pacified, and revous. In the contribution of the contri Nprimis, and especially that all matters be fet aside, forgotten, pacified, and renown-10 noved and beloued Father, especially their high mighty Lord King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden, his Kingly Maiesty and the (roome of Sweden: As also both the Princes their Dominions, Lands, Cities, and people, chance or hap of the Subjects, which happened or was done by robbery, burning, killing, or other enmittee what soener might bee, or by whom it was done, that all those griefes and troubles in all mat ters shall be set aside, and bereaster not be remenged or remembred of neither party, for ever and by this prefent firong conclusion of peace between our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaelo 20 Pheodorowich of all Rulla, Sam. and betwins there great mighte Lord, King Gultavus Adolphus of Sweden, Ge. and of other Deminions, Lands, Cafiles, afwell those of old, as those which by this conclusion of peace are given and reclaed up, and between all the Subjects and people to bee renewed, estabilibed, confirmed and held unremoneable in the manner of a peace for ener and ener; and sure friend-ship perpetually: Also that the Emperours Maiesty, and the Kings Maiesty shall define one anothers best in all matters, and neyther sceke a bester friend, but so deale faithfully and truly in all matters reciprocally. 2. Item, is given unto our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaelo Pheodorowich of all

Ruffia, Sam. bis beires, successors and hereafter comming great Lords, Emperors, and great Dukes of all Ruffia, and the Empire thereof, by their great Lord King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden , for him- 30 Killing, and the compute survey, you may be a first of several ment of the whole Crowne of Sweetin, dash definer and elere by the power of this conclusion of peace, the fe Casilles of the Empire on Rullin wish the Townes and Suborbs which were taken in the fayerest, namely, great Novogrod, Stararoulle, Porcove, Lodiga, Odo, with their Territories, Somerskey, Voloft, with the Villages belonging to the Emperors Houshold, to Metropolie, Monasteries, Gentlemens Lands, Inhernances, Farmes, with all their profits and renenues according to former Borders and Limits, except those Casties which the Emperous Maise fire dath yeeld by power of this Contract of peace, as bereafter more certainly shall be express,

Charches retheir goods,

ned to the

3. Item , The Kings Maieflie of Sweden doth gine ome the Emperones Maieflie, with the aforefaid Castles and Townes, all manner of Church ornaments which are in the Church of Sophia, The Sapience of God, and wishin all Churches and Monafteries in Nouogrod, and in other Cafiles and 40 Townes which the Kings Maiefly hath ginen to the Emperour's Maiefly without earrying any thing away. Alfo the Kings Maiefly doth gime the Metropolite and all the Spiritualtie, with all their goods, as also all manner of Russe people what calling some they be, which are in those Townes, Castles, and Territories, dwelling now or planting themselmes there with their Wines, Children, and all their goods whatsoener any bath. As also she Kongs Maiesty shall give all manner of Writings and Bookes, which are in those Caftles and Townes to be found in Rosetades sudgement houses, or elsewhere with all Russe Ordtoyle anes and towns two joins a Automatica Integerines conget, reciprocer with all father transfer and former, and transfers, and Fromish there belowing, and the Bell's in thefe afterfath Caffles and Towns, in Jack manner as they were the two visits of Noumber left paff, according to agreement made with the Kings most excellent Maiesty of Great Britaines. Ambassadaner Sir John Merick, except these Bells which the people of Nouograd themselines did sell after that agreement, for the payment of Souldiers, and 50 were carried away from Nouogrod, but those Bells which the Kings sernants and people did take perforce without buying, shall be in right manner sought out and brought backs agains to Nouogrod and refored there. Also which Bells the Kings Mausties people bought at Noungrod, it hall bee free for the Nouogrod men to redeeme them backe againe at the same price they fold them for , and the Kings people bereafter hall not buy any more Bells of the people of Nouogrod by no meanes what foener.

Libertisof

4. Item, the Kings Maiesties people of Sweden, at their departure out of the Emperours Maiesties Castles and Towns aforesaid, namely, great Nouogrod, Stararouse, Porcoue, Lodaga, Somersko, Voloico, coc. shall use no violence to the Emperors Maiesties people by burning, robbing, or killing, neyther earry any Ruffe people with them to the Kings Maiesties side, neither men, nor women, nor children, nor any of their goods: and if any goods remajne of the Swethilh people, at their going out of the aforeful 60 Towns, which at that time they cannot take all with them, such goods shall be kept in safetse by those with whom they are left till such time as every one of them shall come thither for his owne goods, or fend some bodie for them, and these people shall have free libertie to goe without all molestation or let, to come for their goods, and to returne againe at their owns convenious time.

5. Irem, the Kings Misesties Gonernours and Officers Ball deliner onto the Emperours Maiefies Voyauodes and Commanders the about named Towner and Castles, to say great Nouogrod, Stararoule, Porcoue, mich sheir Territories, and Somerskey, Volott in presence of the great Lords, James King, Ore. bis Maiefties great Ambaffadour Sir Iohn Merike Knight, Ore. or the faid Kings Maiefter Gentlemen, the which the above fard great Ambasfadour shall fend to that end elensing and Time of dellgining ouer the faid Califes and Townes, two weeker after this contract is confirmed betweene vs both, ucite, great Commissionors by Writings, Hand, Scale, and Kissing of the Crosse of our side, and on their part. by outh upon the holy Enangelists.

6. And after that the Caffle of Loding and Territories, shall bee delinered to the Emperours Ma. ieffier Meffengers by the Kings Maiefties Gonernour, three weekes after the confirmation of this contralt, in presence of the abonesaid great Lords, lames King, &c. bis Gentlemen, which to that purpose the great Ambassadow shall send, then the faid Castle and Pronince to be redeemed and ginen vy, with all the Ruffe Ordinance, people thereto belonging, none to be carried away , nor no violence to bee offered them by robbing, or otherwise sposing of them; nor no Rulle Ordnance to bee carried away. But the Caffe of Odow, and Promince, and people is to remayne on the Kings Maiesty Guitavus Adolphus of Odow to to Sweden, for a time, till this contract of peace be confirmed by both the Potentates, by their Writings, by mayne candid the Emperours Maiesty with the Seale of the Empire, and by the King: Masest is hand and Seale of nary. the Kingdome of Sweden, as also by the Emperouse Maisfire thing of the Croft, and the Net of Maisfire Oath open the boly Enarycliffs emformed, and the borders divided and medium of the Primers find finds to that off the having been with both the Primers fail finds to that off the having been with both the Primers of the Croft of the Primers of the P

hall returne agains to the borders, baning well concluded the busines, in then two weeks after that time the Emperors Masesties Voyavodes and Commanders, which his Maiestie shall send for the receiving of the (and Cafile and Pronince of Olow from Vlafquo Shall receive the faul from the Kings Maiefiles Governones, with all the Russe people and Ordnance with all their goods, and what they have, and as long at the Cafile of Odow is on the Kings Maiefies fide, all the people of Odow and the Pronince thereof Shall gine unto the Kings Missity their former Corne , and dee fernice as before for the mayntagning of those Souldiers that remayne there, the Kings Massfies people in the means time shall do to those people of Odow no violence nor robberg negther carry any Ruffic people, or Ordnance from thence, wer cause any to be conneighed away.

7. Item the Kings Maieflie G. A. &c. best beliebed brother Prince Charles Phillip, Prince beredit aris charles Phillip of S.Arc. fall bereafter lay no claims or challenge to shell Castles and Townes, namely great Nouve tod, Prince of Swee Porcoue, Statatoule, Somerskey, Voloft, Odow, La logo, and indepen compiner, burders and Pronin. den not to lay car; nor come upon them onto he manner of Warre; to finde to think them; nor remember any more clayme, that oath which formerly the people of those places made to the Prince C. Ph. Also the Kings Maieflie G.A. Shall promife not to rine any aide of men or money to bis abone faid Brother C.Ph. against the aforefaid Castles and Townes in no wife.

8. And against or in liew of the abone faid our great Lord Emperor, and great D.M.F. of all Russia, Sam. 6.c. for immiglify, bis faces forms, and hereafter being great Lords, Ears, and great Daicy stall. 2st or creet, it Russis, dream for the whole Emperor of all Russis, occasionably for the dominion of Novogrodules great, that be given and precided varies their high mighty Lord Kong G.A. of S. 6.c., from the dominion of Novogrodules.

haste filmen and presided water beem toght majors. Lord King U.A. of S. O'c., From the dominion of Notice.

good, from hanfelfe and the bolde Empire of Rullis. operadily in reprobe of fine and fivendifying the Car. Places wellfiles, Fort, and Land, following which berestofore did advance to the Dominions of Noticepton, a namely d. day the
Runneggod Vann. Coportes, Oricleke, with all waves blum advancy for the indirect and Promotice. Blummine to
with all Transes, and Fileges in the Conserve to them belonging, and dises was them, according to their
former, intl., and amenican boundary, with the people that dord, and plane themplesses there, with the Swelses
profile, reservers, and painments, with the flowers of Rulers, with Likes, we thing exception, the Empire

18 the Conservation of the Amenican Swelse and income to the Transes.

18 the Conservation and the Conservation of Rulers, with Likes, we thing excepted, the Empire

18 the Conservation of the Conservation of Rulers. The Markets of A Section 18 the Conservation of the Cons yours Maiestie hath reelded, and gimen to their Kings Maiestie, G.A. of Sweden ere, as proper and ewas to him and has Maisflies faccoffeurs, and hereafter being Kings of Sweden, and to the Crome of Sweden for an exercisting propertie for them to hald, without castillation or any contradiction, by the Engreeous Mastlie, or his Maisflies (see Copiess, or hereafter hering Engreeous, and great Diskes of all Rulls, as alfo by the whole Empire of Rulls, a said from the Dominion of Nowagood, for ener-Lafting times, in all points, as former great Lords, and great Dukes of all Ruffia, beld and kept the fame;

namely the late, of bieffed memory, great Lord Emperour, and great Date Evan Valiliwich, of all Ruffia, Sam, and the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke, Pheodor Enmowich of all Ruffia, Sam. and she foiritually, as Monkes, and all others in those Castles and Townes, as well Gentlemen, as other inhabitants of the faid places, two weekes after the conclusion of this contract, when it shall be renealed una to them, they (hall have free libertie, all such as define to goe to the Emperiors Maieffier fide, with their wines, children, families, all goods and charrels, which way former they will into the Emperours Maie-Sties Lands and Townes. And that all Ruffe people, in the faid Castles, Ports, and Townes, might know 60 the same: at is here agreed and concluded that as some as the conclusion of this peace shall be offested and

confirmed betwire us both, the great Potentates great Commissioners shall fend their Posts and Messengers into all the aforenamed Townes and Cafeles, which they in presence of the Lord King James bis ereat Ambassadours, Messengers, Shall openly remeate and proclaime, that all sprittalty, with their goods, Courtiers, Gentlimen, Burgeffer, and Townefman, which are defirous to goe from thence within

Money to be giuen to the Sweden.

9. As also from the Emperours Maiestie, great Lord and great Duke M. F. of all Russia, Sam, Go. the Kings Maisfre, Go. Challbane 20000. rubbles, in ready good current unchangeable Silver depnings, and those monies immediately as soune as this contract of speace shall be concluded and confirmed betweene vs Shall be given to the Kings Maiefire of Sweden great Commissioners. by the great Embassadour of the Kings most excellent Maiestie of great Brittaine bis great Ambasandour Sir Iohn Merricke, Knight.

Ordnance and Munitionto remaine.

10. And as for the Russ. Ordnance in these Castles which shall be given to our Lord Emperour, and great Dule & C. from the Kings Maiefte G. A. &c. which Ordnance Shallremaine there, Shall be ginen to bu Maiestres Officers, and what munition of Artillerie, as provision for Warres, and Bels, and other to bus natispies Opices, and non-time bash taken in the Land of Rulla out of those Casiles, before the 20 contract which the Kings Maiesties great Commissioners, and the great Lord King James &c, great Ambassadour Sir Ioon Metricke, Knight, did erect, as the twentieth of November, such Ordnance and proussions hall remaine to the Kings Maiesties wse, and Crowns of Sweden, wishout all contradiction

11. And because the late great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Vailly Eusnowich of all Russia. Sam, did give and construct by writing, two observings, sumply, late Lord, King Charles the minth of The court of Veter Coeffin Safe c. and to the Crowne of Sweden the Castle Corela, and the Promine thereof, for that faithfull and and the Terri. good willing aide which was done unto him, against the Polith people: in like manner doth confirme, torus, consis and establish the same by this contract of our great Lord Emperour, and great Duke M.F. &c. the same med to Swedin yielding and donation of the great Lord Zare, and great Dake Vailly Euanowich, &c. for himselfe, 30 present the surface of the surface of the surface of all Rulia, and for the whole Empire of all Rulia, that the faul Callenge, Corolla, with all profest, renewest, and rents, by Lond and by Water, according to their former assuctent, and now being borderers, nothing exempted in all, accorof Paters according to the proper former and paters and paters and the paters and paters and paters and paters and another in factor in food and better in food and paters after it shall remaine to their Kings Massesses, GaA.of S.co.c. and to but Massister Saccossors, and bereafter following Kings of Sweden, and the Crown of Sweden, without all casillation or contradiction for enertasting times. 12. And that bereafter there be no more difficulty or variance concerning the borderers of the Land,

Commissioners or both fides to meeta

it is concluded and agreed upon that in this yeare 7 125, upon the first of lane, our great Lord Emperour, and great Duke M.F. Go. and their high, mighty King G. A.Go. shall send on both sides, speciall good Courtiers, and Notaries, to meete between Louiga and Orcieke, at the mouth of the River Laus, whence is doth fall into the Lake of Lodiga, so that they shall meete upon the said River, on the midst of the Bridge, which of both sides their people shall make upon that Risser, and when there the one shall have showed the other their ample Commissions, and shall appeare that they are worthy to measure out the bordersthereby, betweene the Emperours Maiestie, and the Kings Maiesties Lands: so that from the borders of Nouograd, Lodiga and Odow, with their Provinces, and also from Somerskey, Voloit, be douided from the anucient and former precinits, and borders of Orelecke, Copora, Yam and Euritogorod, in suff manner as it ought to be, at the Jame time next enfaing the first day of tune, then the faid Courtiers and Notaries, through presence in the faid manner on both sides, shall meete tagether open the borders of Nouogrod, betweene the Pronince of Olimets and Corela at Salomensky Towne, by the Lake of Lodigi,; which Constiers also hall view the same Pronunces according to the former borders, and as the former are express, bow they have bin, and confirme the same, and if they so chance, that they cannot bappen upon the former austient borders, then fall they, by suft inquificion, make new borders and Land-markes, in such manner, that bereafter there be no further controversie concerning those borders, and those Courtiers or Gentlemen shall not part asunder of neither side, till they have sufficiently and friendly ended that bufineffe in all manner, and what those Courtiers shall finish and effect in this manner. the same according as befitteth there shall expresse by writing upon parchisent on both sides, and confirme the fame by their subscription, Seales, killing of the Croffe, and oath interchangeable : and as concerning the deviding of borders, and the Gentlemen shall doe it; as namely of Novogrod, Lodigs, Odo, Somer key Vololt, of one part, and also betweene Orefeke, Copora, Yam, and Euanogorod, on the other fide, and also betweene the borders of Nouogrod and Corela, that be fet downe and written, the 50 fame had be wremonerable and fall for enertlafting times, by our great Lord Emperour, and creat Disc Michall Fedorowich of all Russiacoc, and the Kongs Maufile Gultanus Adolphus, See, and the successioners, and bereafter being an both fides, for enertasting times, according to this contract of an ener-

lasting peace: and for more firme confirmation of the same, that is shall be held and kept; it shall be deelared further in the Letters of contract, which hall be bereafter ginen betweene both Princes, from the Emperours Minisfie, by kissing the Crosse, and confirmation of bu said Letters by his great Scale, and by the Kings Maiesties oath upon the bely Enangelists.

13. As alfo the former, of bleffed and most famous memory, great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Fedor Euanowich of all Ruilia, Sam. our great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Michail Fedorowich, of all Russia, Sam, &c. Vnchle m conclusion of peace made at Tavim, in the yeare 7103. did reelde and gine oner all bu pretention and claime to the Country of Leifland, at alfo the great Lord Emprover, and great Dake Vasily Euanowich, of all Russia, Sam. in a conclusion of peace made at Emprover, and great Dake Vasily Euanowich, of all Russia, Sam. in a conclusion of peace made at The title of Wyburgh, in the peace 7117, did renounce the same; for a work burnel of the title of the same of the same of the title of the same of the same of the title of the same of

great Lord Emperour, and great Duke M.F. &c. and bis successours, and bereafter being Emperours Leistandresivand great Duker, shall at no time for ever challenge unto themselves any right, or pretance to the Counticoby V. E at trey of Leifland; neither fhall our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Mi.F. of all Rutha, Sam. morbie Willers, And rey of Leinand; sensor you war great Low Lungerme was team Long rule of ma Commentation of morely marks, thus facelflours, great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes of all Rollin hereafter white vales their great found, 7197, how can Kang Galtunas Adolphus, now has facesflows bereafter, being Kangs of Sweeden, nor to the Greanse of timed, Sweeden, with the title of Leitand, or those Cattles which the Emperours Maisfite hash now renown. ced to the Kings Maiestie for eurs, neither by Lessers of confirmation to write themselvines, or name eltern-selves in them, nor juster his O granodes, Servants and Commenders, to write themselves with the sitle of Leifland, or the Townes aforefaid, neither in writing non speeches, to name themselmes. As also our

great Lord Emperour, and great Dite M. F. of all Ruffia, Sam. bis successioner, and bereafter being great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all Rusha, in their writings and speeches ; Shall give to their Kings Maiefie, and bereafter being Kings of Sweden, their accustomed title of Leifland, and Corella. Item, on both fides, the great Commissioners have agreed, fince at this Treatie we could not accord upon the full title of both the great Posentates , As to instile the Emperoure Muiefie, and of many other Dominions, Lord and Conquerour, and the Kings Maiefile, with the title of Ingermanland, woo bane of both fides great Commissioners, referred the same to both great Potentates liking therein; and if that either Potentate will be pleafed to write the other with the full title, at to the Emperours Maiestre, the Title to be Kings Maiefite doth write the full title with the word Conquerour; and that the Emperours Maiefite allo dos write to the Kings Maiestie bu full title with Ingermanland, then both the Potentages are to Cend those tules by their Ambassadours, and nominate the same full title in one of their Letters of confir-

mation, and the other, Letter to be written according to this our prefent agreement : and if in both the Letters, the titles be written to the full at the Emperours Maiester sull title, with Conquerous; and the Kings Maieste with Ingermanland, then both sides Ambassadours shall shem one the other the said Letters, and basing shewen them, shall goe to each Prince with the same; if then on either side the Potentate shall not like thereof, and shall send the said Letters of construction with the short title, according to this our present agreement : the Ambassadours of both sides shall in like manner make knowne the same one to the other, and fo proceede therewith to both Potentates.

14. Alfoit is agreed and concluded, that there fall be free commerce of Trade betweene both the great Kingdomes, the Empire of Russia, and the Kingdome of Sweehen, and both Kingdomes Subietts: to that all the subjects of our great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Michael Fedorowich, of all Ruisia, Trade.

Sam, Merchants of the Dominions of Ruisia, from Nouogrod, Plesco, and other Cities and Townes, paying their due custome, shall have free liberty without let to trafficke at Stockholme, Wibritgh, Reuell, Narue, and other Townes in the Countries of Swethland, Fynland, and Leifland, and they that dwell and plant themselves at Iuangrod, Yam, Copora, Nettingburgh, and Coreilla, what Nation focuer, either Ruffe or other people, (hall have free liberty without let to traffiche, and to trade, paying sheir due custome, in the right Custome houses, at Moico, Nouogrod, Plesco, Lodiga, and other Townes of Russia, with the Emperours Maiesties subjects, and also have libertie to travell through the Dominions of our great Lord Emperor, and great Duke M.F. &c. for their trade of Merchandize within the

13. And by reason heretofore our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michall Phedorowich, of 50 all Russia & c. his Maiefires subjects Merchants, had their free bouse of merchandize at Revell, also now by contract of Taulin and Wiburgh, it is concluded they flowed have a good place for a house, and Merchants of pointed them in Reuell, as also in other the Kings Maiesties Townes, as at Stockholme, and Wyburgh, to house house house house they have house the state of the sta they shall have house and Dimme Service, according to their Religion, in the faid bonses, without let or and Churches binderance, but at Revell in their Church, as formerly they have done; yet to fet up no Church, accor- in each others ding to their Religion. And as heretofore their Kings Masesties bis Subjects, base had a free house of Countries trade at Nouogrod, now also according to the contract of Taulina, and Wyburgh, they are to have a goodplace for aboute, prepared thom at Nouogood, and the Emperours Maesses other Cities, at Molco and Plesco, bonds for the said people, and of their Dinine Service according to their Religion, in the bonds; that a build no Charches for that up of any where.

For breutie, I have omitted the following Articles to the 29 the lubstance whereof is as followeth. The 16. determineth what debts shall be recourable. The 17. Free passage of Subjects thorow each others Territories. 18. Freedome of Prisoners, on both fides, 19. Liberty of Inhabitants to flay in the places furrendred. 20. Fugitiues to be redeliuered. 21. Borderers

tobe reitrained from robberies. 22. For ending of quarrels, if any happen. 23. 24. Confirtobe relitatines from routeres. 22. For enough quantity in suppers, 23. 24. Contraction of former contracts, of Taspha and Wibange. 25. No printe or publisk practice to be made against each other, 26. Shewing of Letters of confirmation at the meeting of Ambassia. dours of both fides. 27. Honorable convoy for Ambaffadours on either part. 28. And allo for

29. Item, It is agreed and concluded, that if by the permission and pleasure of God, there bappen an New Ambilla- Alteration of government in Severien or Rullia, then that Prince which hall newly come to bis govern-New Ambulla-dors in case of ment first, shall reneale by bis Ambasadur to the other Prince from himselfe, and after that the other new necessors. Shall visit bim by his Ambassadour.

load vije time by his Ambaij adonr.
30. Item, if it so fall suc as any time; thus of both sides the Princes, as one great Lord, Ge. G their great I alord King Guitavus. Adolphus shall find one to the other their great, Ambailladonrs, to confer of good masters then those faid great Ambassadour's pon the borders ball meet without all controverse or first, Place of Am-either hatmeene Odow and Eusingotod for hetweine Lodiga and Oreleke, where they shall blinke mill Pieces am enter converse Union ma cum grant process the distribution of the best process and process a good matter in friends and louing fore orther by the Princes Commission or other commandement, as

31. Item, If it happen that the Emperours Mainsties Subjetts and Merchants, their Boates, Lodies, and Merchants Dessets shall go to Rewell, Wybourgh, or other Townes and Cassies of Swetnen, Fynland or Liefland, or forps and other Coffels, whereupon the Emperours Maiestics Ambassadours Fyiland or Lienand, wryong non over System, more topic to the Pop, into England, or any other King, 20

and Melignoger, into the gening to the Emperors so a service to the Pape, into England, or any other King, it does, by the Kingdome of Sweether, or comming backe agains beer edd away and brought to the Sweethill Sweether, and the service of the Colory of the Sweether of the Sweethill Sweethill Sweether of the Sweethill Merchants Vifes mic Commodence, or user for each constitute, Oc. constitute, and Merchants Boats, and Merchants Vifes mic Commodence, or user for the control of the theory of the Commodence of the forest for the Commodence of th

how neps them to Jame to some rooms.

3.2. Item, It is concluded and agreed on sheat our greek Lord, &c., ball not ayde or affilt against the 30 Kings Maiesty of Sweetin Gultavas Adolyhus, and the Crowne of Sweetinard, the Kingdome of Neither party Poland and Lettow, ner his Some Ladislaus and the Course of Poland, and the Dukedome of Lettow, nor all the Dominious of Poland and Lettow, nor hall befor him with men or treasure, nor hand tow, nor, as the Dominion of Polished month. Ective, nor pala ocipe committee men or trainer, nor fland for him as one himselfe; nor any other Princefor himself had no practife or feeks any thing against the King of Sweeden. Those Lands and Cassless which belongeth to the Kingdoma of Sweeden of old, or those which now the Emperours Maiesty hash yeelded to the Kings Maiesty by this conclusion of peace, be sold not seeke to get them under him, or have possession of them. In like manner the Kings Maiesty of Sweden shall not stand against the Emperour's Maiesty &c.so assist the King of Poland and Lettow, and all the Dominsons of Poland and Lettow, neyther with men nor treasure, and not to be with him as one Neyther shall the Kings Maietty by himselfo or other Princes and Governours seeke any practise against the 40 Emperouse Ad aiefie and bu Lands and Caftles which belong to the Emperous of Ruffia, bee shall by no Emperiors and antifer man on seasons man supers where neutrops is the emperiors of them, over join by no menter; locks to get under how no polifie the frame, it is all of agreed and concluded between vs. that they Ambolf advance which the Emperouse Massify shall find to the Knye Maisty, and the Knye Maisty. to the Emperour: Maiesty for the confirmation of this conclusion of peace, Shall have full authority to conferre betweene the Emperours Maiely and the Kings Maiesty of Swethland for a union and ingra assistance against Sigilmond King of Poland, and the Crowne of Poland, and the great Dukedome of Lettow in such manner as shall be thought fit and requisite by both the Princes. 33. And for more certaine and firme affurance, that all this here hath hin concluded, and agreed on

Confirmation, betweene vishe abone faid Emperours Maiestie, and Kings Maiesties great, ample, and powerful between v1 to a down; an unprovers Vinneyse, man song vinneyse; year, ampse, ana penerjus 30
Ambaffladorr, by the mediation and intercelling of the great tend King Tames bis Matellitus great 50
Ambaffladorr, in bis prefence, this conclusion is made, clabilited, and finished, and playled, on play by one great Lord, and great Duke M.F. of all Rulsia, Sam. and by his successions, and bereafter being great Lords, Lord, and great Lord, one will be a properly to the properly and the lord of t erc. bi bis commandment, wee his great Commissioners, Ocholuech and Namestincke of Sulvall Names of the Knefe Dannyll Euanowich Mezetskey. I the Emperours Maissties Dwarenni and Nametlincke Comifficaers of Shatskey Olexfey Euanowich Zuzen. Ithe Emperours Maiesties Duke, Michcola, Mekctein Nouokleno. I she Emperours Maiefies Duke, Dobrenia Semenou, hane confirmed this conten NOUOKieno. 1 ros empresons annual sense production of the configuration of the configuration with behiging of the froje, and thereast fit out board and State: 1 die the Kingi Musilies of great Brittaines great Ambajjadom, Sor John Merricke Knyth, Comisson of the Mac 63 Materies of great Directions great Amongments. Or south entities compost, venteness of out Advisions splitter prince Chamber, for the some situating of the fame, that this is also emcladed here between vs., but friend with his owne hand and Scale, both these objections, and a conformal, which were the Emperours Mausties ample Ambassadours, have given to the Kings Maissies great Commissioners; and against that we have taken the like writing of confirmation, from the King: Maiefies great Ambassadourt. Written at Scalbo, in the years from the creation of the World 7225, the feater indirect noth day of February.

Aning here prefented the fruits of his Maie fines mediation herevize the Maylowin and Souther a thought good site to adde this other testimonic of Beast Resistes, in the peaceable fruits of his endeavours between the faid King of Sweden, and the King of Domestic affice blousy warres between them, in which the English volumenties were to great a part; of sethem (if I waters between the member of the Boss, water the command of the right beneath if it mitike mot four thousand formed the Boss, water the command of the right beneath if it look stillengths. The Articles of agreement between them are their fax, concluded January 16. 1013, transfixed out of the Bosse Copie, Printed at Coposing on this, and after at Elements; 19.

I. That the King of Sweden fall have againe she Citie of Calman, with all that belongeth unto it, excepting Artikery, which hall be reffered to the King of Denmanke, or

to be fold for bis profit. 2. That the King of Denmarke hall have Elsborch and Orland, with all the forces and frength of Arenshorch, in pamme, for the frace of swelme yearer enfaine, for the fam of fifteene Ton of Gold; the which fam of money the King of Sweden hall pay was the King of Denmark mithin the forefaid twelneyearen at certaine times, in consideration of an his charges during the faid warres.

3. That the Nanigation and passeges by Seas and Land to Norway Shall be wied free without any binderance of those of Sweden.

4. That Lapland field be free mithous giving of any contribution.
5. That the King of Denmarke hallhome Group land free writhous paying of any comtribution pute the King of Sweden.

6. That the King of Denmarke fall have the three Crowner mit how any gaine foring or contradiction of the King of Swightni (which was the first and principal same of these aforefuld bloudy and vanity blourly marries, and continued irruptions.) Both Kings sub-.Visit in the bulb is grade.
The St. in about the direction of the bulb in the Bulb. 10 scribing hereto.

#### the state of the water and V . we the state THE CHAN WILL

A relation of two Ruffe Coffache remailes, but of Siborial to Caray, and other Countries adjuntage thereshie. Alfo a Copie of the laft Patent from the Mulcouite, A Copie of a Letter written to the Emperour from bu Generneurs out of Siberia.

Our Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaile Federwick of all Roffie, your Ma-infties Vafals, Ency Karrakis, and Ency Kappalitie, dee Enocke their heads, &cc. Our Lote Emperous an Treat Our Feeder of the Water State of the Control of the Co

gis with preferes, the which we dispatche to your Maichie, with Barnath Nitonese, the first of luly and before them wee dispatche to your Maichie English Petrin and Passy Kizall, by whom 50 we fent ynto your Maieftie a Letter from Tamber, King of Carber and a Copie of the King Alis-Mer Letter translated, with a Card and description of the places, which way English Palin, & An- Rose able to drupble Madigene, passed from the Castle of Tomas, into the Dominions of Cases, as also in what crimbine the other Dominions they were. The Letter it selfe which came from Altine Char, Labathar from dother than

catrie to your Maieftie but as for the Letter out of Catey, there is none in Tobalito to stanfate it.

#### The Copie of the Altine Chars, or golden Kings Letter to the Empereur of Ruffia.

O the Lord Emperour and great Duke; The golden King received your Letter. In former times (Lord) it came to my hearing, that your Princely good Ambassadours, did seeke a way or passage to come to me, fince which time it is now thirteeneyeeres, but then the peo-

799

Such are the

Tartars dwel-

ter Nations.

ste ablet inge, Tudent of Marina, & blick Colmate did not fuffer your Princely good Ambe fladors. to come to me, but did rob and spoile them. Now since ten of your Maiesties people arecometo: me, and I have fent to you Ichemen Kichenga, to do obeyfance vato your Maiefty, and fee your Printely eyes, whom your Majethe wouth ated to bloe their obeyfarine and fee your Printely eyes. And some you fait it your Grace chier Cups of Sluer, a Bow, a Sword, two Complete and two Desirent Chosics, all which yous Princely fluiders I have received, and whee fluid her behousedhird you with sichy from hence, bestell frenith you with allow As alfo I am to request wour littates in refped the Amballadours doo palic bes de cereires vante milerably, and poose by dea fors the le tare vious a paie finall warred becomes is stand this blacker Kristact I, amilicia Imathintered Tobelhe Caffle, and in sim Caffle and Tomie, Date, Ind from the Barbon people. Now if fo be your Majestie will fauour me, and defend me with these people from Karakulajand 16 will the planted to promise on warre on your owne dist wand Hommine, that planted will be don't personne ve and all good factors, continue her tripe; v. a. And to by your Princet's income.

Ambadaors may continually pair between vs. Insa Turbas Farchies and Ambadaors may continually pair between vs. Insa Turbas Farchies and Ambadaors may continually pair between vs. Insa Turbas Farchies and Ambadaors may continue to the pair of your Majedies commandement, and upy are returned to me again cour of Catag." Allo (Lond) there is color entitled even the color of London, and I bank from vindy you writh my Fredenic the first Through a color of London the first Through The color of London the Catagory in the first Through The color of London the Catagory in the color of London the Catagory in the their Letter is written that there is feste viito your Majolitic three Leopards with their clawes. an Irbish with his clawes, three Lizernes with their clawes, exed and a yellow Damaske vpos agold ground, a precent Kelner; and an ambling House. And Lam humbly to request your 20 Migitie, if it becyour Majetties favour to grace mee for your own honour with a garment of Majette, it it bot your majettes about to grace may no your your manual writing garment of cloth of Gold, and of disergefuer, but Garments of fine Chotha historietice, a flur of Male, a Syverd, a Bow, twentic Gunne, a Fliggin of Gold, a Rettle of Silber, and their forts of Precious Stones, a cachione, a Termet, a Dwarfe, and Workmen to make Guns and Powder, and two thousand pence. Your Maiesties name is growne renowmed and famous every where, therefore, Edoc relience voto volumn jette, beenlichtany Kinge of many Cochireyes hatel speedabood she to the elipout Mipatine ham eventy dechard, and I refer to the a thin belief our may speed the paife benvicktive, and now that bostour Majeflues favour aldelite you to dispatch these my Amaffadours with speed to me backe againe.

Relation of two Ruffe tra-

Sirgos.

Three Leo-

pards, &c. for

Anno 7128, the three and twentieth of September in the Emperours Dominions at Solding, a Caracter of Siberia, called English Priviles, did report, beeing examined of his Trauels. The last yeere past 7127. hee said that the Boiaren and Voyanod Knez Enan Simonowich Koorockin, For him from the Lattie or 1 mm, months are the Kingdomes of Cater. They went from the Lattie or Tomo, about the kingdomes of Cater. They went from the Lattie or Tomo, about the kingdomes of Cater. They went from the Lattie of Tomo, about the kingdomes of Cater. They went from the Lattie of Tomo, about the kingdomes of Cater. They went from the Lattie of the Market of the Marke fent him from the Castle of Tomo, and ha follows Andre De, to conduct the Kings Alunes Ana them thence: so they passed through his kind into wellers or the Control of Steremongal, where raisened a Queen called Manageria, who caused to have promision and post gueen them. In this great a Queen called Manageria, who caused to have promise into the Pointhing of Control of the Control very few at once. Thus their whole trailed from Tomo Caffle to this gate, was twelte weeken befides forme dayes that they flood fell, and from the gate to the great Empire of Catal tenne 90 daves, and came to the Citie or Caffle of Cats about the beginning of September, and were lodged in the great Embaffadors houfe and having beene there in Caray Foure dayes, there vied Relations in to come vnto them a Secretary with two hundred men upon Affes very well apparelled, and did entertayne and feaft them with Sacke and other Drinkes made of Grapes, and told them that the Emperour, or King Tambur had fent him to aske them wherefore they were come into the Dominions of Catay. Whereupon they answered that our great Lord and Emperour had fent them to discouer the Dominions of Catay, and see the King thereof; but hee answered them againe, that without prefents they could not lee the King, and withalf gaile them a Letter, which Letter they brought with them to Talboike, and from thence is fent to the Emperours Maiestie by them. Out of Catay they went about the twelfth of October, and came to the Castle 60 at Taboleke about Whitfontyde the fame yeere 1619. Lungar militarys

23/157

A Description of the Empires of Catay and Labin , and other Dominions aswell inhabited, as places of Pasture \* called Vlusses and Hords, and of the great River Ob , And other Riners and Land passages.

lings or flec-Rom Kngs to the River Bakanna is fixe dayes travell, and from Bakanna to Kinebike, is nine with their tings, rather I'dayes trauell, from Kinchike to the great Lake, (in which Lake Rubies or Saphires grow) beafts. is three dayes trauell, and the compaffe of that Lake is twelve dayes travell on horsebacke, There Their Journal, To fallethalfo into the faid Lake foure Rivers, to wit from the East, South, Welf and North, yet the or daily jourwater doth not increase in the Lake, nor decrease. There falleth yet another River into the faid place to place Lake, which commeth from betweene the East and the North, and is called Kitta, vpon which Huge Lake, we went fifteen dayes to the head of it, where we found the King Alime in progreffe; the way is very stony. And from the King Aline to an Pluffes fine dayes travell; the Pluffes is called King Aline. Algunas, and the Duke in it is called Tormofhine; from him to another Ulaffer five dayes, the V. Miller, or Tar. luffer is called Chikursha, and the Duke in it is called Carakula; from thence to an Viuses five dayes called Sulduffa, wherein is a King called Chaksara, from him to an Vinfes called Refue, five dayes, the Dukes name is Chichin; from him to an Vluffes called Iglethin, fine dayes, the Duke is . . .... Talebils Cherekta, from him to an Vluffes called Beskuta, five dayes, the Duke is called Cherkar,

him to an Vinfes called If the five dayes, the Duke of it is called Checken. From him to at Vinfes called Tulent Vnient foure dayes, the Duke is called Tayku, Katim. From him to the Vluffes Togerfin three dayes, there is a King called Bakfouta. From thence to an Viuffes of the yellow Man. Yellow Mugali, galls called Mugolehin, wherein is a Dutcheff- called Manchika, with her Sonne Ouchai Taichie, it is within two dayes journey of the Land of Mugalla, a very dangerous passage through Mugalla, or the cliffes of the Rockes, which being pait they came into the Land of Mugalla, wherein are Ta tavia Orien. two Caftles or Cities built of stone, they are called with them Balbins, in one of them is a Duke talk ipm Balbins. called Talay Taifben; and in the other the Duke is called Egiden Taifben; there is also a third Citie in it called Lobin, wherein doth gouerne a woman called Dutcheffe Manchika with ber Sonne, 30 the faid Dutcheffe doth command all the Cities of Mugalla, and her command extendeth into Catay. If any man be to travell over the borders, and into Catay, he must have a Passe vader her

Seale: which if they have not , they may not palle through Catay. The Land of Magalleis great and large from Bugbar to the Sea; all the Cattles are built with flone foure fquare; at the corners, Towers, the ground or foundation is layd of rough, grey frome, and are covered with Their built les, the gates with counterwards as our Raffe gates are, and vpon the gates alarum Bels or dings W. ceh-bels of twentie poode weight of metall, the Towers are covered with glazed Tiles ; the houses are built with stone foure cornerd high, within their Courts they have low Yaults, also of stone, the feelings whereof, and of their houses are cunningly painted with all forts of colours, and very well fet forth with flowres for flew. In the faid Countrey of Mugalla are two 40 Churches of Friers, or Lobaes, built of iquare flone, and fland betweene the Baft and the South

wpon the tops of them are made beafts of stone, and within the Church just against the doore are fet three great Idels or Images, in the forme of women of two and an halfe fathorne long, Friers. gilt all ouer from the heads to the feet, and fit a fathome high from the ground whom beafts made of ftone, which beafts are painted with all manner of braue colours. Those kook have each in their hand a Veffell, and there burne before them three tallow Candles, on the right fide of them Candles are erected eight Idols more in the forme of men, and on the left fide eight Idols more in the forme of men, and on the left fide eight Idols more in the forme of Maydens, gilt all ouer from the head to the foote, their armes fireadhed care after the manner as the Mugall people, or Religious men vie to pray. And alittle way from their Idols fland two Idols more made naked as a man is in all parts, not to be differned, even as abough he 50 were aliue, having before them Candles burning, as small as a straw, and hume without a stame Candlebur-

only in an Ember or Coralf. Their fernice or finging in these Churches is thus, They have two Trumpets of a greatile mith, flame. about two fathomes and an halfe long, and when they found on their Trumpets, anabeate up. good on Drummes, the people fall downe vpon their knees and clap their hands againe, cathing their armes alunder, they fall to the ground and lye fo halfe an houre. They Churches are concred with glazed Tiles. As for bread in the Land of Mugalla there growe hall manufered (grinne, as Profie, or Roffe Rice, Wheate, Oates, Barley, and all forts of other Grains of abbulbancy and their Wheate bread is as white as Snow. As for Fruit in Magale they happet all britis oderhol. Come. their where the same of the property of the same of th the Capes of their Garments both of the men and women long downers when the characteristics. They arrive diffill Aquinitie out of all forts of Graine, without Hops. As for Pessions Stores and Gold

they have none, but for Sluer they have great flore out of Casay. Their Boots they weare of their Diffilled wine

20 from him to an Vinfer called Girne, foure daies without water, the Duke is called Checkenge, From

owne fashion, They have no Horses, only Mules & Asses in abundance; they till and plough their ground with great and small Ploughes, as we doe in Siberia at Tebolske. Their Castaffs are in our Language Patriarkes, and both in Mugalla and Catay are but two Cuttuffs; the one was about Cutuffs, or Patwentie, and the other thirtie yeeres of age. Within the Churches are made for them high places with feats whereupon they fit : the King doth honour them with bowing downe before Lobas or Friers them. Their Lobas are in our Language Friers, which are shorne about twentie yeeres of age, Continually energy day, and shaue both Beards and Mustachoes: their Garments are of Damaske of all sorts and colours, and their Hoods yellow, they say that their Religion and ours are all one, only the Roffe Monkes are

Beyond the Land of Magalla are three other Countreyes or Dominions, Aretching towards Three King. Buebar, the one called Orsm, the Kings name there is Enaker, the Citie is offtone, and the Kingdomes. Ortus.

The other is called Dominions of Talguth, the Kings name is Sanelanche, his Cities are also of Talguth. stone, and his Kingdome rich.

The third Countrey where the chiefe Citie is, is called Shar, and the King thereof is called Zellezmey, or Iron King, his Kingdome is rich, and not farre from Bugbar. From this Iron King come Diamonds, and all these three Kingdomes are under the South, and on the other side of the Blacke Mugall, blacke Mugalls are the yellow Mugalls, stretching all alongst the Sea, aswel Townes as walking people, with their Families and Herds.

From the Countrey of Mugalla, where the Dutcheffe Manchika dwelleth, to the Citie of Easts.
Walisof Cates. Shrokelye in [ dass, is two dayes travell on horsebacke: and the bordering or frontier wals stand
Walisof Cates. Shrokelye in [ dass, is two dayes travell on horsebacke: and the bordering or frontier wals stand under the South towards Bughar, two moneths travell, all made of Bricke of fifteene fathome high, whereupon they told about a hundred Towres in fight, on both fides of them, but towards Bughar, and towards the Sea, the Towres are not to bee numbered, and every Towre standeth from another about a flight fhot diffant. The faid well went the downe towards the Sea foure moneths travell. The people of Catay lay, that this wall itretcheth alongst from Bugbar to the Tower-becons Sea, and the Towres vpon it fland very thicke; it was made, as they fay, to be a border betweene

Mugalla and Caray. The Towres vpon it are to the end, that when any enemy appeareth, to kindle fires ypon them, to giue the people warning to come to their places where they are ap-30 pointed ypon the wall. At the entring without the wall dwell the blacke Mugali; and within is the Countrey and Cities of Catay. In the wall to Catay are fine gates, both low, and straight Cara Catas. or narrow, a man cannot ride into them vpright on horse-backe, and except these five gates But fine care there is no more in all the wall; there all manner of people paffe into the Citie of Sbrokalgae in the wall.

Within the borders or wall is a Citie or Caffle of Catay, called Shirokales, built of ftone, the Gouernour thereof is called Duke Shubin, who is fent thither for a time from Tambur King of Catay, the Caftle is very high walled and artificially built; the Towres are high after the manner of Moseo Castle, in the Loope-holes or Windowes are Ordnance planted, as also vpon the Gates or Towres; their Ordnance is but short, they have also great store of small shot, and the Watchmen euery-where vpon the Gates, Towres, and Wals, well appointed; and assoone as 46 they perceive the Sunne going downe, the Watch dischargeth their Peeces of Ordnance thrice, as also at the breake of day in the morning, they shoot out of their Pieces thrice, and doe not open the Castle Gates till the fixthoure of the day. Within the Castle are thops built of stone, and painted cumningly with divers colours, wherein they have all manner of Merchandizes, as Veluets, Damaskes, Dorogoes, Taffataes, Cloth of Gold, and Tiffue of diners colours, fundry forts of Sugars, Cloues, &c. in the Gouernours houle is a frong Watch of Partifers and Halberds, and their Drummes made like great Barrels. When the Governour goeth abroad, they carry a Cano-

pie ouer him, and make way before him with Rods, as before our Emperour in Melco. And from Shirotalga to the Citie Tora is three dayes travell:this Citie is large, built of flone, and the circuit of it is two dayes trauell, with many Towres, and foure Gates to come in at, the 50 Markets in the Citie are well and richly accommodated, with lewels, Merchandizes, Grocerie, or Spices, the Citie well inhabited having no place void or waste in it. The houses and shops are built with stone, with streets betweene; the Gouernours here are called Duke Byw and Duke Inchate, freere they have Post Stages as wee , their Markets have a very odoriferous smell

And from this Citie, to a Citie called Tayib, is three dayes journey, it is built of Rone, large, and high walled, & is in compaffe two daies travel about, at the first comming to it are five gates barred and botted with Iron, very thicke and close, fastned with Nailes; the houses and shops, or Ware-houses are all built of stone, wherein are all manner of Merchandizes, Spices, or Grocerie, and precious things more abundant then in the aforefaid Cities, they have Tauernes or Drine 60 king bould-iflored with all manner of Drinkes, as Aquania, Meade, and Wines from beyond Seas in abundance, there they have also their Watch, Ordnance, and Munition in great store; the Governouses of this place are one Duke Tuga, and the other Duke Zumia, there wee faw Sinamon, Annifeeds, Apples, Arbuzes, Melons, Cucumbers, Onions, Garlicke, Radilli, Carrets,

Parlenips, Turnops, Cabbage, Limons, Poppifeeds, Nutmegs, Rice, Almonds, Pepper, Rubarbe, & many other Fruits, which we know not so that they want nothing whatsoener groweth in the World; the shops are within the Citie, stored of all manner of Commoditie as 18 faid, as also vi-Equalling and drinking Houses, stored with all manner of Drinkes, where they have also Dicers and Whores, as with vs. Their Prifons in the Citie are of stone, for theft they hang the theeuts, and for Robberie or Murther they stake the Murtherers, or elfe head them.

And from Shirokales to a Citie of Catay, called Shirooan is a dayes journey : this Citie is built Shirooan of stone high walled, and large in compasse, it is a dayes trauell, it hath twelue Towres; whereupon, as also on the Citie Gates is planted Ordnance and small shot great store, with a continu-10 all Watch or Guard, night and day at the first comming are fine Gates well surnished with Ordnance and Warlike Munition; and from one Gate to the other through the Citie is halfe a daves going. The Gouernour of this place is called Duke Sanchit. For Victuals and Merchandizes,

here is more then in the Cities mentioned, all their shops very full, and the Citie so populous, that one can hardly passe the streets for the throng of people. The Ambassadors Houses are also faire built of stone, their Wels couered with Braffe, so that this Citie is adorned more with precious things then the former mentioned, and much more populous.

Now from the Citie of Tayeh, to a Citie called White Cattle, is two dayes trauell: this Citie is built of white stone, and thereof hath his name, it is high walled and large, being in compasse or circuit three dayes trauell, athe first entry it hath three Gates under one Towre, the Gates are high and wide with strong fron barres: and the Gates fastened with Iron Nayles whited with Tinne, it hath great Ordnance in the Gates and Towres: some Peeces carrying shot of two Poole waight, the shops within the Citie reach from Gate to Gate, and betweene them are ffreets paued with stone, all their shops and houses are built of stone before their shops. They haue grates painted cunningly, with all manner of colours, flowres and fuch like, and vpon the shops are the houles painted cunningly with Pictures and flowres in divers colours, and the painting within is voon Pastboord adorned with Damaske and Veluets; heere is more abundance of Riches and Commodities then in any of the Cities afore mentioned. The Gouernours names

From this white Citie, or Caffle, to the greatest Citie of all Cataya, called Catay, is two dayes iourney, where the King himselfe dwellerh, it is a very great Citie, built of white stone foure Citie of Catas. 30 fquare, and in compafie it is foure dayes lourney, vpon every corner thereof are very great M'Calay be the Towers high built, and white, and along it the wall are very faire and high Towers, likewife fame with chiwhite and intermingled with Blue or Azure, vpon the Gates, Wall, and Towres, the Loop-holes na(as before in or Windowes are well furnished with Ordnance, and a strong Watch. In the midth of this white Gers and the Citie standeth a Castle built of Magnet, or Load-stone, wherin the King himselfe dwelleth, called ferued) many Tambur; this Castle standeth so in the midst of this Cirie, that every way you have halfe a dayes difficulties a. going to it from the Gates, through the ffreets which hath from thoppes on both fides with all rife, But this manner of Merchandizes; vpon their shops they have their houses built of stone, cunningly pain- Russian Relatited more then the former Cities. The Caffle of Magnet is curiously tet forth with all manner of Cheet Memes

here were Duke Toynan, and Duke Sulan.

40 artificiall and precious deuices, in the middeft whereof standeth the Kings Palace, the top where- feeme to agree of is all gilt ouer with Gold. And they would not admit vs to come before their King without to place some Prefents, faying, it was not the manner of Catay, to come before their King without fome Catas, North Present, and though (said they) your white Emperour had but sent with his first Ambastadours to our King some thing of no great value, our King would have sent him many speake of the precious things, and dissified you his Ambassadours honourably, and haue fent his Am-wall The Tar-bassadours with you: but now hee only endeth his Letter to your Emperour. The Citie to names so of Catay, where the King dwelleth, is built upon an euen plaine ground, and is incompaffed round about with a River called Tonga, which falleth into the blacke Sea, which is from Prinzglis that the Citie Catay feuen dayes trauell, to that there come no thips neerer the Citie Catay, then fe- it is hard to re-50 uen dayes trauell off, but all things are transported in small Vessels and ship-boats. The Mer-concile them-

chandizes the Kine doth fend into all parts of his Dominions of Cates, and from thence are car- And the letuits ried ouer the borders, into the Land of Magalla, to the King Alime, to the black Kollmaker, make foure moneits to the Iron King, into Bagbar and other Dominions, their Patriarkes and Friers, trauell with the well from the Commodities, as Veluets, Sattens, Damaskes, Silver, Leopard Skinnes, Turkeffes, and blacke wall to Peque, Zenders, for which they buy Horfes, and bring them into Catay, for in Catay are but few hor- which is here fes, only Mules and Affes, and Cloth they have none, their Horfes and Silver goeth into ftrange but a few Gountreyes, or as they say, Nems sy, the Silver is made in Brickes, which they call Kriss, wa- we say the side. lued each Kriefy at firtie two Rubles, their Apparell they weare with long broad hanging fleeues, fer entred the like the Gentlewomens Summer-coats or Letimes in Ruffia, the people are very faire but not wallarthe warlike, timorous & most their endenour is in great and rich traffick, They cold vs that not long North East 60 before our comming, the people of Magalla had taken two Castles from them by deceit, also part of it.

thornesse of their journey admits not. Perhaps this chiefe Citie was but the chiefe of that Prouince where the Vice-roy resided, and they were willing to make the most of their tranells Ruffice fide Yerthe necrenctic of the Sea, there also cause th scruple. I sup-pose rather that these Ruffer entred China but a little way, and received the Vice-royes Letter only (there observed with Regall Rites) and had much by Relation, of that little which they tell. How ener I have here offered this to thy view at more legiste to vie thy more indgement, Vuu 2

Shirocalga.

Short Ord.

they told we that their King hath a frone which lighteth as the Sunne both day and night, called in their Language Sarya, and in our Tongue lachant, or Rubie; another flone they fay hee hath. which driueth away water from it, it is also called a Rubie. There come to them Strangers, or Nemtsig enery yeere, with all manner of Merchandizes, and barter for Deere Skinnes, and Los shids, Sables, Beuers, Veluets, Taffataes, and Zendews, or Calicosthese strangers, they say, come to them out of the blacke Sea, from the East and the South, also, they say, there is a River called Kortalla Riner. Kartalla : which falleth into the great River Ob; but they know neyther the head, nor the fall of it, they imagine it commeth out of the blacke Sea, and falleth into it againe, vpon this River dwell many people with walking Herds.

> For a triple testimony of Sir Ishu Merikes honourable courtefie, I have added this succeeding Patent, which howfocuer in some things it concurre with the former of Beris and Demorran; Yet those being obscurely translated or written, this may illustrate them; and it also preferteth both larger Priviledges, the Patriarkes name ioyned with the Emperours, and the Gol-

VV E the great Lord Emperour and great Ding Michaell Pheodorowich of all Ruffia, fole Commander of Volodemer, Moico, and Nouogrod, Emperour of Cazan, Emperour of V Commonator of Visionia, Londof Picico, and great Dake of Suplement, Twensky, Vgort-ky, Piermesky, Vatsky, Bolgorsky, and athers; Lond and great Dake of Nousgrod, on the lower, 10 Countreyes, Cheringosky, Rahansky, Rostouskey, Yaraslausky, Belozersky, Vdorskey, Obdorfky, Condinsky, and of all the Northerne parts Commander, and Lord over the Country of lucrasky, and Ry, Continues on the second of the Duckesmess of Igorskey, and of many other Knodeness, Lord and Conquerons. Together with the great Lord Philleres Nelectich, the body Tarroir and Head of the Reserved Clerge of the Imperial Critic of Moico, and of all Ruffa by the field on manual Fathers. and by the power of the Holy Ghoft our Spiritual Paster and Ghoftly Father.

Whereas there was lost unto us the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Michaell Pheodorowich of all Russia, and to our Pather, the great Lord, the boly Patriarke of Mosco, and of all Russia From our louing Brober lames, by the grace of God, King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland; and of many others his Maieflist Ambaffedow Sir John Merike, Kingto and Centisman of 30 bis Masefiles Prinie Chamber, upon both our Princely Affaires.

The faid is Iohn Merite, in the names of our faid laming Brother King James requested our Im-perial Maistie, and our Eather the great Lord, the body Patrianks, to be pladfed graciously to fauous the English Merchants, to grant them leave to come with their stippes unto our Port and Hauons of Archangell, with all kind of Commodition, and freely to traffique from the Sea fide, to our Imperial Citie of Molco, and to our Patrimonio of great Nouogrod and Pleico, and vnio all other our Criter, Townes, and Countreyes of our Empire, with all forts of Commodities, without paying of Custome in as ample manner as formerly bath beene granted to the English Merchants, and that our Imperial Matestie, together with our deere Father the boly Patriarke, would be pleafed to grant a new our gracious Primiledges under our Princely Scale, according as our Prodecessors Emperours, and great Dukes of all 40 Russia, bane beretofore granted unto them.

We therefore the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Michaell Pheodorowich of all Ruffia, fele Commander; together with our degre Father the buly Patriarke of Molco, and of all Russia; for the lone commance; register more leaving Brother the great Lord King lames, with whom mee are willing and defirous ener to remayne in the firongest bonds of brotherly lone and friendship, have gracionsty granted to his Kingly Masefties Subjects the English Merchants , Sir Thomas Smith Knight , Sir John Merike Knight, Sir Richard Smith Knight, Sir Willum Ruffell Knight, Sir George Bowles Knight, Hugh Hamerfley Alderman, Ralph Freeman, Richard Wytch, Morris Abbot, Robert Bateman, William Stone, Rowland Healing, Iob Hanby, Richard Ironfide, Edward Iames, Iohn Caffen, Beniamin Deicrow, Fabyan Smith, and their fellowes free laane to come with their floppes into our King- 50 domes, into our Countreyes of Dweena, onto the Port of Archangell, and from thence to our Imperial Citie of Mosco, and of Nouogrod the Great, and vuto Plesco, and into all other the Cities of our Empire, to trade and traffique with all kind of Merchandinas, free of all Customes, as well the great Cuflomes as Tole: unlading of Vessels or Boats, passages through any place by water or Landentries, Head-money, Bridge-money, Ferryings, or any manner of Customes, or Duties what sener can

The English Merchants being thus licensed to trade in our Kingdomes, free of all customes for their owne commodities, Shall neither colour nor fell strangers mares, as their owne; neither shall our people fell for them any of their goods, nor yet shall they keepe any of our people under their protection: and into what Cuies the English Merchants themselves, or their Factors, or Sermants shall come with their goods, 60 it shall be lawfull for them freely to trafficke and sell their owne commodities, in barter, or otherwise against Commodities of our Countrey.

And when somer the faid Merchants shall come into our Patrimony of great Neuogrod and Pletto, or into any other the Cities of our Empire; wee straightly command our Nobles in general, and all other our authorized people, that according to this our Imperial letter of principles, should fer the fores faid Merchants to pafe without all manner of hindrance or lets, & without taking any manner of custome of them for themfelues, or for their goods; and into whee plays forest then Pall come; in haft with then Merchandire, and leading define to long nor fell mith our people; these and mustor condemnate family verly les them, passe michone, caking any mounter of sufferness, according to this, our legenerally recipien

promoting.

And reflect from the English Adarchemes finds beginn to first on day of clear animonial transmits
our Construction and the forest and full them in this course bould by giving follow readings an easily to This doch clear
linest may be an easily, as to give yord, second animonator, that is a first follow Course by ministrationals. This doch clear
linest may be an easily, as to give yord, second animonator, that is a first follow Course by ministrationals. In the doctried
and Larke, December the animonator follows for follows for the control of the course of th

fored many firms at least at Paris. A many control to the fore many Companied in the affect of the first t

April 1006.

And I feel and English Adare have lightly affective that May of the newmonthines of the National States of the National Stat Telmes cap agree.

Allawhen the Euglish Aderchaus; therefolkes, so any of their Factors, doe travell one of soil Bo-minions with their owns, or other for rasgna Kingdomes, and then wee had be pleased to deliner them of our Treasure, they ball take it was them, and fell, and berrer is for suchrommodities as wee hall thinke on training, toggenized in the town, want, was an experience, and all them also Officers in Misses Critical Bill and needings for our Office and the Grant and the Common that the Common that

museur, and that any mathematic paper visit them by followandly man any of our former or exactly made and the second of the seco at that time in our Kingdomer; and if there (half be as that time none of the English Merchants, or people in our Kingdomer, the faid goods shall be taken and laid up in suffers, and delianced mitbeut delay to the English Aderebants when they shall could intend on Commercy, and shall challenge

Further, of our gracious goodnesse, we gave free leave to the English Merchants, and Company, to keepe the houfe in Malco by Saint Maximo behinds the Market place, and fall remains after their to compress and the confidence of the Confidence at Yereslave, Vologda , Collin. and at Saint Michaelle drobingell, they fall horpe and wie at their pleasure, according to our former gracious favour, without paying any duetie, rent, taxe, or any manner of custome what somer : neither shall the people of the faid Townes take any thing of them, or theirs. for any dustic what some belonging to their haufes : and the said English Merchants shall entry their said bouses peaceably to them selves, without the annoyance of they Stronger or other to lodge in them, who ther in time of their being there, or in their absence.

And in their bouses at Yeretlane, Vologed, Collmogro, and Archangell, they Chall likewise have a housekeeper of their owne people, or of our Subietts, a man or two of the meaner fort; but fo, that those our people be no merchants.

Their Honsekeeper being a Russe shall not undertake to meddle or sell any of their wares with-out themselnes be present, and they the English Merchants, by vertue of this our gracious Letters of printledge, (hall lay their wares and commodities in their owne bonfes, and fell them to whom

And it Shall be lawfull for the Said Morebants, when they Shall arrine at our Sea Port, to lade and unlade their Merchandines, as in times past, at their pleasures: and when they lade or unlade their Shippes, it hall be lawfull for them to hire any of our Subjects to helpe them; and shall have leade to carry their goods to and fro with their owne Veffels, and howfe them in their owne Ware-houses : onely ther fall give a note under their hand to our Governours, Customers, or swerne men, what goods they bring in, and Shippe out; Whereby it may be knowne what goods commeth in, and goeth out of our King-60 domes : but in no wife our Officers shall open or unpache any of their Wares or Merchandine in any place

Also when the English Merchants Shall Shippe or transport any of their Countrie Commodities from Saint Michaell Archangell, to our royall Citie of Molco, or Ruffe Commodities into their owne Countrie : our authorised Officers and Customers, by vertue of this our Imperial Letters of priviledge

50

hall suffer them so spalls with chair goods in and out, without doing them any marrier of his-

And when former sory of the fard English Merchants or Faltors from bane occasion to find ourtains out of our Dumpisson, why of their fresh the Statements, into their sense Countries and the Statement of the Statements of the Statement of th

Embelfic.

And indepenses in any of our Little., field bears any models against the Excitiff. Metrochials of any of sourcessing, was commonded that more of any Concertainty, are about of any interesting the models of English Concertainty, there receives you prope to entitle final they found Officer? For these except Wall Little of murches or these, and then also not to be done, and the more than the trivials of the Bellish the second of the secon chans, there exists we may person your and the state of principles, before our Chancelborn in this Office of Endelling, and the state of the state of principles, before our Chancelborn in this Office of Endelling, and in so when place in Twines, and he we have their confer, and to join taken. cording to equiese and right and where the truth caunet be found out by Date, it find be referred to eath and lot and on whom fremer the let fals, to been float the right be altimated.

And if any of the English Merchants, in any of our Citie; within our Kingdomes, des complaines Analy any of the Longian create cours, many of our visits within our Kingtones, she complained on way words of these drows the significant for Go-nermones, and all alors our models of deposits, about they professly models true inflice to these. And for any wivey on other mattered convenients to be been all the convenients of the convenients of the second of the convenients of the convenients. Subjects, our Gonernoises and other our authorifed people open their complaint for all controverses 60 Sometry, we converged final gue our Subsetts for effending upon farries, fering them time to appear at Moleco, to anywere the fame with the English Merchants, face to face, before our Chamistics or the first the English Merchants, face to face, before our Chamistics or the face of the convergence at tectures, in major test test tested matters was Chancelbour field treach examine the businesse, and what tree tested matters are Chancelbour field treach examine the businesse, and are instituted to the confirmation cannot be found, shall be enforced, as before, to eath with the tested tested to the confirmation of the co Indges and inflices shrongh our Dominions shall sake no kinds of duetie of the English Merchants for

their matter of Law.
We will understand phota the few Imperials granous Letters of printledge, he firstly hifterned in all
points, in all parts of our Dominisms, and by all our Subville, Comernents, Secretaries, and when Officer,
without disfersing in any thing.
And who fower final not obey this sun Friends and gracious Letters of printledge, but this offer wrong 30

to the English Merchants, these our Subjects shall be with us in our bigh difficulture.

Those our gracions Letters of primited yes, ove fealed with our Imperial Scale of Gold in our Princely Pallace of our Imperiall. Chu of Moico, in the years from the Worlds treation 7129, in the month of May, the elements day.

Subscribed by our Imperial Maiofline Chambellour of our Office of Embaffy, and our prince Chancellous Euan Corbatouelin Gramotin.

B<sup>(r)</sup> it is now high time so learn Ruffin and all that Barbarom finars of Sanotces and Tartarionely don, will berry halps of fame Barbarom; to loope us those to Sea. And although Finch, Gourdon, and abore have in the former Books infected for pass layer to feeting Adults hath bath enter- 40 tained where going the same for the same and the same of the same for the same and the same for the sa

### CHAP. XII.

Notes concerning the discourry of the River of Ob, takenest of a Roll, written in the Ruffian tongue, which was attempted by the meanes of Antonie MARSH, achiefe Factor for the Moscouie Company of England, 1584. with other notes of the North-caft.

> Irst he wrote a Letter from the Citie of Mosco, in the yeare 7092. after the Rufe accompt, which after our accompt was in the yeare 1584. Vnto foure Ruffer that vied to trade from Commero to Pechera, and other parts Eastward : whose an-By writings received from thee, as also by reports, wee understand thou

How to finde

Scaled with

wouldest have ve seeke our the mouth of the River Ob; which we are content to doe; and thou must give therefore fiftie rubbles! It is requifite to goe to fecke it out with two Cochimaes, or companies; and each Cochima muft have ten men and wee muft goe by the River 60 Peches vpwards in the Spring, by the fide of the Ice, as the Ice swimmeth in the River, which will aske a fortnights time; and then we must fall into Onfo River, and fall downe with the fireame before we come to 06, a day and a night in the fpring. Then it will hold vs eight dayes to swimme idowne the River Ob, before we come to the mouth; therefore fend vs aman that

CHAP. 11. Anthonic Marshes intelligences of Ob & Ruffian icloudie.

can write; and afture thy felfe the mouth of Ob is deepe. On the Ruffe fide of Ob foiourne Samoeds, colled Ugarskai & Sibierskie, Samoeds; and on the other fide dwel another kinde of Samoeds. called Monganet, or Mongafeisky, Samoods. We must passe by five Castles that fland on the River Vetribit and of Ob. The name of the nrit is Tefuer Gorodok, which standeth vpon the mouth of the River Padon. The fecond small Castle is Noforo-gorodock, and it standeth hard upon the side of Ob. The third is called Necheiour-geskey. The fourth is Charedmada, The fit is Nadefreda, that is to fay. The Caftle of comfors, or traft; and it standeth vpon the River Ob, lowermost of all the former Caftles toward the Sea.

Heretofore your people haue bin at the faid River of Obs mouth with a Ship, and there was Ashipwracke Io made shipwracke, and your people were slaipe by the Samerds, which though that they came the mouth torob and subdue them. The Treesthat grow by the River are Firres, and a kinde of white, for and light Firre, which we call Tell. The bankes on both fides are very high, and the water not fwift, but fall and deeps. Fift there are in it as Sturgeons, and Cheri, and Pidle, and Nelma, a dain-Ty fill like white Salmons, and Moucoun, and Sign, and Scerlidi: but Salmons there are none, An Illand neets
Not first distant from the maine at the mouth of Ob, there is an Illand, whereon refort many the mouth of wilde beafts, 25 white Betres, and the Murfes, and fuch like. And the Samed tell vs, that in the Ob. winter feafon, they oftentimes finde thete Morfer teeth. If you would have ve travell to feeke winter featon, they of text interest more there except extent 1 you and Nova Zembla, and by the but the motif of 0 by 5 ea, we must go by the filtes of Vegats, and Nova Zembla, and by the Land of Maphieme; that is, by Matthews Land. And affaire thy feller that from Vegats, to the Matthews

20 mouth of De, by Sea, is but a finall matter to fiyle. Written at Pechera, the yeare 7092. the Matthews land twenty one of February.

> Master M A K S M also learned these distances of places and Ports, from Cattinos so Ob by Sea.

Rom Corners to the Bay of Medemske (which is fornewhat to the East of the River Perbota) cannot, if seven dayes sayling. The Bay of Medemsky is over a day and a halfe sayling. From Me-30 demote Samuel to Courses, is fixe dayes faying. From Courte Bay to the fartheft fide of the Medomite. River Ob, is nine dayer fayling. The Bay of Carete is from fide to fide, a day and a nights Caratea,

He learned another way by None Zembla and Manhofeban Tar to Ob, more North-eastward. Brom Canines to the Hand of Colgoiene, is a day & a nights fayling From Colgoiene to Nena Zem. Canines. ble are two dayes fayling. There is a great Ofers or Lake voon None Zemble, where wonderfull Coign ftore of Geefe and Swannes doe breede, and in moulting time caft their feathers, which is about Saint Porereday : and the Rufes of Columpro repaire thither yearely, and our English men venter thither with them fenerall shares in money ethey bring home great quantitie of Doune-Feathers, dried Swammes, and Geele, Beares skinnes, and Fish, Sec. From Naromske Reca or River Naromste.

40 to Matinifhan Tar, is fixe dayes fayling. From Matinfebun Tar to the Peronologis Templa, that Matinichan Tal is to fay, To the warme passage ouer-land, compassing or sayling round about the Sands, is thirtrene dayes fayling : And there is voon the Sands at a full Sea, leven fathomes water, and two The Sands. fathomes at a low water. The occasion of this highing of the water, is the falling into the Sea fathomes at a low water. The content of the two Seas, to wit, The North Sea, and The East Sea, that is, the which make both high water and great Sands. And you must beware that you come not with Northandibe your Shippe neere vnto the Hand by the River Ob. From Mattufeban Tar to this Hand, is five Eaft Sea, dayes fayling. Mattuban Tar is in some parts fortie Versts ouer, and in some parts not pattix The bignes of

The aforesaid Anthonie Marsh sent one Bodan his man, a Ruffe borne, with the aforesaid foure Ruffer, and a yong youth, a Samoed, which was hkewife his Seruant, whom the discovery of the Anthonie Marie River of Ob, by Land, through the Countrie of the Sameeds, with good store of commodities to fenerwo of his trafficke with the people. And these his Seruants made a rich Voyage of it, and had bartered men voon the with the people about the River of Ob, for the valew of a thouland rubles in lables, and other discourse of Ob with the people about the Kauer or Os, for the valew of a recultant motes in lanes, and other by land with fine Furres. But the Emperour hauing intelligence of this Discourry, and of the way that Bo four Ruffer. des returned home by, by one of his chiefe Officers lay in waite for him, apprehended him, and Bedan Mafter cooke from him the aforefaid thousand Markes worth of Sables, and other Merchandifes, and de- Mark his man linered them into the Emperours Treafurit, being fealed up, and brought the poorefellow Boden brought to on the Citie of Mofor, where he was committed to prifon, and whipped, and there detained a Mofor. long while after, but in the end releafed. Moreouer, the Emperours Officers asked Anthonie

so Marth, how he durft prefume to deale in any fuch enterprise ! To whom he answered, that by the priviledges granted to the English Nation, no part of the Emperours Dominions were ex- Ruffien icalouempted from the English to trade and trafficke in : with which answere, they were not fo fatis- fie of discounty fied, but that they gave him a great checke, and forfeited all the aforefaid thousand Markes worth of goods, charging him not to proceeds any further in that action: whereby it fremeth

they are very lealous that any Christian should grow acquainted with their Neighbours that border to the North-east of their Dominions, for that there is some great sectet that way, which they would referue to themselves onely. Thus much I vaderstood by Master Christopher Holmes.

The report of Mafter FRANCIS CHERRY & Moscouic Merchant, and CMasser Team U.S. Catalant a warme Sea to the

CMasser TH to MAS LY NO BE stouching a warme Sea to the

South-east of the River Ob, and a Note of

FRANCIS GAYLLE.

M After Francis Cherry, one of the chiefe Merchants of the Melcuny Companing, which year the Emperour Inco Ballimich his Interpreter, and hash transited, in period property of the Emperour Inco Ballimich his Interpreter, and hash transited, in period property of the Emperour Inco Property of the Emperour farre to the East in Ruffia, laith, That he hath eaten of the Sturgeon that came out of the River of Ob. And that in those parts it is a common received speech of the Ruffer that are great travai-A warme Sea , lers, that beyond Ob to the South-east there is a warme Sea. Which they expresse in these words in the Ruffe tongue; Za Obyreca moria Teupla, that is to lay . Bejond the Riner Ob is a warme Mit r Thomas Sea. Furthermore, Mafter Thomas Lynde an honeft and discreet English Merchant, which hath likewise lived many yeeres in those parts of Moscony, faith, That this Sea beyond Of, is by the 20 report of the Ruffes, that are travailers, fo warme, that all kinde of Sea fowles live there as well in the Winter as in the Summer, which report argueth, that this Sea pierfeth farre into the South parts of Alia. . \_ \_

See of thefe

Third Volume Raneis Gaulle that paffed the Ocean betweene lapan and Nona Hillania, in the Latitude of of Englifevoy- 1 37. degrees and a halfe, writeth thus. Prouing a great Sea to come from the North-east parts ages, pag 446. ot Tartarie; running thus East and East and by North about three hundred leagues from Japan, we found a very hollow water, with the streame running out of the North and North-west, with full and very broad Sea, without any trouble or hinderance in the way that we past. And what winde foeuer blue, the Sea continued all in one fore with the fame hollow water and threame, vn- 30 till we had passed seven hundred leagues. About two hundred leagues from the Coast of New Spaine we began to lofe the faid hollow Sea, whereby I perswade my selfe that there you shall finde a Channell or strait passage betweene the firme Land of New Spame and the Countrie of Asia and Tartaria. We found all this way Whales, Tunnies, Bonicos, which are fishes that ke. pe in Channels, Straits, and running Waters, there to difperfe their feede, which further confirmeth me in that opinion.

But feeing thus we are lopped from Rulla, and base againe taken Soufe has which bee permitted not to See piern Burrough, Pet and lackman, nor others, English and Durch, which have attempted that North east paffage; and that which Mafter Batho faid to me, that if he might have imployment, he would adventure to discover from the Coast of China and Iapan on the Worth of Alia buberward; all 40 thus shall be suddenly permiosus to our froster and unstayable thoughts, to set us in a new discassery by Danish and English assistance for a North-west passage Jo ofrew, not so fortunately assimpted, as by Rea-son it seemeth probable and almost certains, especially that way where Sir Th. Bueton and Nelson left. But we will discouer these Descoueries more methodically and bistorically to you, that you may see the English ancient right, at I may fay, to those parts of the new World.

#### O CHAP. XIII.

Discoueries made by English-men to the North-west : Voyages of Sir SEBAS- 50 TIAN CABOT, Mafter THORNE, and other Aucients: and of Master WEYMOVTH.



Voyages. The defire of Riches in fome, of Knowledge in others, hath long wheter ted mens industries, to finde out a more commended. a shorter cut then the vsuall passage, which in going to the places of principall

Trade there, and the returning thence by enforced compassings, is made no lefte a Voyage for time, cost, danger and labour, then the immediate compating of the whole Globe, 60 as in Master Candafter circumnauigation (not to mention others) is suident. But if either by the North-eaft, or North-west, or North, a passage be open, the sight of the Globe (the Image of the fite of the World) easily sheweth with how much ease, in how little time and expense the same might be effected, the large Lines or Meridians under the Line contayning fixe hundred miles,

contracting themselves proportionably as they grow neerer the Pole, where that wast Line and Circumference it selfe becomes (as the whole Earth to Heauen, and all earthly things to heauenly) no Line any more, but a Point, but Nothing, but Vanitie. Hence fuch laborious fearches from Columbus his first discourse (that also occasioned by a concert of finding the East by the West, whereupon he named Hispaniola Ophir, thinking he had then arrived at the East Indies) especially the English, seated commodiously for that discouerie, and to reigne ouer the Northerne and Westerne Ocean, haue herein beene more then industrious.

Doctor Powell in his historie of Wales faith, that Madoe foune of Owen Guyneth left the Land in contention betwirt his brethren, and prepared certaine ship; with men and munition, and sought ad-10 mentures by Sea, fayling West, and leaving the Coast of Ireland fo farre North, that hee came unto a Land whomme, where he faw many frange things. There hee left many of his people As. 1170. and returned for more of his owne Nation and Friends to inhabite that large Countrie, going the fecond time thither with ten failes. This westerne Land is like to be some part of the West In- Some thinks des, though the volueriall fauagenes of those parts make it questionable where. But he which seeth that the Mexic how fome of our Englis in small time have growne wilde in Ireland, and become in language and least limit they apply to a small the small time have growne wilde in Ireland, and become in language and least limit they apply the small the small through through the s and found) will not wonder that in fo many Ages the halfe civilized Wells, amongst Barbarians, gets) were without fuccession of Priests and entercourse of these parts, might wholly put on fertile. Meredith bence derived, 20 ap Rife a Welfh Poet, which lived before Columbia had begun his discoverie, hath these verses.

> Madoc wyf, myedic wedd, Iawn Genau, Owyn Guynedd No finness dir, fy enaid oedd Na da Mawr, and y moroedd. that is.

Madoe I am the ionne of Owen Gwynedd, With stature large and comely grace adorned, No lands at home nor store of wealth me please, My mind was whole to search the Ocean seas.

Columbus also tent his brother Bartholomen to King Heurie the feuenth, to make offer of his feruice in the New-Worlds discouerie, which fell by the way into the hands of Pirats, whereupon pouertie affaulted him with fickneffe in a forraine Countrie, fo that hee was forced to get fome. D.F. Leton de vipouertie anauteu min with manifer a consumer and the more ancient then elegant in- ta pairis Christon what about him by making of Maps : one whereof had this more ancient then elegant in- ta pairis Christon what about him by making of Maps : one whereof had this more ancient then elegant in-

I anna cui patria est, nomen cui Bartholomana Columbus de Terra Rubra, opus edidit iftud Londoniys An. Donisis 1480.atq insuper anno Ollawo decimaq, die cum tertia mensis February. Laudes (bristo cantentur abunde.

Whose Countrie Gennais, whose name Bartholomen Colon de Terra Rubra, this worke fet forth new At London, A thousand foure hundred eightic Februarie thirteenth, fing praise to Christ on height

One of these Maps hee presented to King Herrie with the said offer, who cheerfully accepted the fame, and fent to call his brother into England, who before he could effect it, was imployed 40 by the Kings of Castile.

Columbus his fortunes awakned others industrie, amongst the rest lobn Cabeta a Venetian, and his three formes Lewis, Sebastian, and Sancias, who obtayned a Patent of King Hourse the seventh for discouerie with fine ships with English Masters, Mariners, and Colours also, the iame to erect in whatfoeuer Lands vnknowne before to Christians , to hold the fame to them and their Heires See Hat tem 3. as Vaffals and Lieutenants to the Crowne of England, paying the fifth part of their gaine at Polis

In the yeare 1497, Iohn Cabot a Venetian, and Sebastian bis some (these are the wordes of the great Map in his Maiesties privile Gallerie, of which Sebastian Cabot is often therein called the Authour, and his Picture is therein drawne, with this Title, Effizier Sebash. Caboti Angli, shij le. Ca.
50 Venetiani, Miluie Awati, &c.) discovered that Land which no man before had attempted lan. 24. This Map,

about fine in the morning. This Land be called Prima vilta (primum vilam, or first teene) became fome say, was that was first descried from Sea. That I land which lyeth out before the land, he called Saint lohns I taken out of that was just described from Sea. I have summed system one before the same, be cause Sans tolline be-land, because on that seast day it was disconcred. The Inhabitants weare beasts skins and as much e-May by Clem, May by Clean Bern and Singer. The first is been under the first been as we do garment melt precusus. In their underse, they vife Bower, Arymer, Piler May 1549, Darts, Clubs of wood and Singer. The first is been us found pileces and yeelful brittle fruit, but is it filled of white Beers and Stage of vomified greatenines. It advantables with Fyler and hot great, as Seales and Salmons; Soles also an elle long. Effecially there is great flere of those fiftee which they call commonly Bacallaos. There breede also Hawkes as blacke as Rauens, Partridges and blacke

Thus wee fee New-found Land discovered by English Ships , Mariners and iurisdiction. Six Sebaltian Cabot, for his English breeding, conditions, affection and advancement, termed an En- Ramus Tom. 1. glifb man, thus reported of this voyage; That vpon occasion of the admiration of Columbus his voyage into the East, where Spices grew, by the West, so rife then in the Court of King Henrie See Hat. Tom. 1. the seventh, there arose in his heart a great desire to attempt some notable thing. And wnder. pag-74

standing by the Sphere (faith he) that if I should faile by the North-west, I should by a shorter Tract come into India; I thereupon caused the King to be advertised of my deuise; who immediately commanded two Caruels to bee furnished with all things appertaying to the Voyage which was, as farre as I remember, in the yeere 1496, in the beginning of Summer. I beganne therefore to faile toward the North-west, not thinking to find any other Land then that of Cato Floridadic thay, and from thence to turne toward India. But after certaine dayes I found that the Land concred by the turned toward the North, which was to me a great displeasure. Neuerthelesse, sayling along by the Coast to see if I could finde any Gulfe that turned, I found the Land still continent to the 56. degree under our Pole. And feeing that there the Coast turned toward the East, despaying as he writ to Francisco Representation of the Coast of that Land toward 10 the Equinoctiall (ever with intent to finde the faid passage to India) and came to that part of this firme land, which is now called Florids; where my victuals fayling I returned towards England; was cause of the tumules and preparations of warres against Sectland caused that then no more consideration was had to this voyage. Whereupon I went into Spaine, &c. By the King and Queene there he was fet forth and discouered the River of Plate, and fayled into it more then fixe score leagues After this he made many other voyages, &c. Sir Seb. Cabor was after by King Edward the fixt See [40], La, I, constituted grand Pilot of England with the annual stipend of one hundred and fixtie fix pounds thirteene shilling: and soure pence, and was Author of the Russian and North-easterne discourses. Fabian in his Chronicle A. R. Hon. 7. 14. hath this testimonie. This yeere also were brought vato the King three men taken in the New-found Land, in Williams Prochas time being Major, 10 These were clothed in beasts skins, ai d did eate raw fleth, and spake such speech that none could wheeffand them, and in their demeanour like to brint beaffs, whom the King kept a long time after. Two yeeres after I saw two of them at Westminster, apparelled like English, &c.

Mafter Robert Thorne writes, that his Father and Mafter Hugh Elior a Merchant of Briffell fift finders of were the first discouerers of New-found Land; and if the Manners would have been emiled and followed their Pilots minde, the West Indies had beene ours : so that it seemeth this Discoverie was before that of Columbia. Master Haklust hath published the particulars of these things more fully, as also divers Treatiles touching the North-west of Sir Humphrey Gilbert and others: to which I referre the Reader ; and no lelle for the Voyages made by divers English into thole parts: three by Sir Marton Frobifher, in the yeeres 1,76, 77, and 78. Two of Captaine lobn 30 Danies, in 86, and 87. that of Mafter Hore , An. 1536. that of Sir Humpbrey Gilbert, 1583. that of Master Charles Leigh to Ramea, An. 1597. and before in 1593. that of George Drake; with those of laques Carsier, and divers others. My purpose is not to steale Master Haklers labours out of the World , by culling and fleecing them for our purpose, but by this Index to in-Aruct men where they may have festivall store in this kinde. I had rather give you new things. Such are to the World, these that you had before in Hudsons voyages set together, as also those of Greenland: and fuch are those of Waymonth, Knight, Hall, Baffin, Ge. And first, as Foreman of our Qieft, we will give you Sir Humphrey Gilberts Letter, written with his owne hand from New-found Land, whereof he tooke formall possession to the Crowne of England, and was as a Martyr of thole Discoueries. It was written to S.r George Pechbam (a great Aduenturer in that 49 voyage, and a greater in one of longer lite, his written Treatife of Westerne planting, extant in Mafter Haklayts third Tome) and I have here inferted, it being hitherto vnprinced, as a memorial of both their worths; and after it (though in time before) wee will recreate you with a plaine Mariners Letter endorsed in homely phrase, To the Honorable Kings Grace of England, here (as I thinke) given you from the Originall, I have also another written to Cardinall Wolfer touching the lame voyage in Latin , by Albertu de Prato ; for the antiquitie, rather then any remarkable raritie, worthy here to be mentioned.

> C Ir George, I departed from Plymouth on the elementh of Inne with fine failes, and on the thirteenth 50 She Barke Rawley ran from me in faire and cleare weather, basing a large winde. I pray you felicite my brother Rawley to make them an example of all Knaues. On the third of August wee arrived at a Port called Saint lohns, and will put to the Seas from thence (God willing) fo foone as our flips will be ready. Of the New-found Land I will fay nothing, until my next Letters. Be of good cheere, for if there were no better experation, it were a very rich demaynes the Country being very good and full of all forts of villual, as fish both of the fresh water and Sea-fish, Deere, Pheasants, Partridges, Swanner, and ainers Fowles elfe. I am in haste, you shall by enery Messenger heare more at large. On the fifth of August, I entred here in the right of the Crowne of England; and have engraven the Armes of E. and, divers Spaniards, Portugals, and other frangers, witnessing the same. I can stay no longer; fare you well with my goo! Lady and be of good cheare, for I have comforted my felfs, answerable to all my bopes. From Samt lohns in the New-found Land, the 8. of August, 1, 183.

> > Yours wholly to command, no man more,

HVM. GILBART. I men-

I mentioned before Master Thornes fathers finding New-found Land, with Master Eliot. Thele animated King Henrie the eight to let forth two thips for discourrie, one of which perished in the North parts of New-found Land. The Mafter of the other, John Rut , writ this Letter to King Henrie, in bad English and worse Writing. Ouer it was this superscription.

Master Grubes two ships departed from Plymouth the 10. day of June, and arrived in the New-found Land in a good Harbour, called Cape de Bas, the 21. day of Iuly : and after we had left the light of Selle, we had neuer fight of any Land, till we had fight of Cape de Bas.

Deafing your Honorable Grace to beare of your fermant John Rut, with all his Company here. in good health, thanks be to God, and your Graces ship. The Mary of Gilford, with all ber thanks be to God: And if it please your bonorable Grace, we ranne in cur course to the

Northward, till we came into 53, degrees, and there we found many great lands of lee and despe meter, we found no founding, and then we dough no so no forther to the Northward for fear of more lee, and then we did about to the Santhamand or founding and then we dough no so no fourther to the Northward for fear of more lee, and thom we did about to the Santhamand, and until in fear adjust after the adon to hundred and fixed fathom and them were came into 52, degrees and fell with the mayne Land, and within ten leagues of the mayne Land we met with a great Iland of Ice, and came bard by ber, for it was standing in deepe water, and so went in with Capede Bas, a good Harbor, and meany found Hands, and a great frejb River going op farre 20 into the mayne Land, and the mayne Land all wildernesse and mountaines and woods, and no natural ground but all mosse, and no inhabitation nor no people in these parts: and in the woods wee found footing of diners orest bealts, but we faw none not in ten leagues. And please your Grace, the Samion and wee kept company all the way till within two dayes before wee met with all the llands of lee, that was the first day of last a night, sad there rofe a great and a marualtons great strene, and much finite weather; I truit is Aimighte Isla to hear good near of her. And place your Great, we were conflaining and a writing of all our ander, how we would always and what comfo ever would day and when Gold doe fend foule weather, that with the Cape de Spet free should goe, and he that came first should tarry the space of fixe weeks one for another, and watered at Cape de Bas ten dayes ordering of your Graces ship and fish-ing, and so departed toward the Southward to seeke our fellow: the third day of August we entered into 30 a good Hauen, called Samt John, and there we found eleven faile of Normans, and one Brittaine, and two Portugali Barkes, and all a fishing, and so we are readie to depart toward Cape de Bas, and that is swo to the dealers, and the man symmy, and the second the confliction of the leagues, as flority as we have filled, and for each the confliction where the second for the dealers the confliction of the second for the of God, as we were commanded at our departing: And thus left Jape, and keepe your bonorable Grace, and all your honourable Reser, in the Hassen of Saint John, the third day of August, written in

> By your fernant lobe Rue, to his vetermost of his power.

I have by me also Albert de Prate's original Letter, in Latin Rile, almost as harsh as the former English , and bearing the lame date , and was indorfed , Renerved, in Christo Patri Domino Domino Cardinali & Domino Legato Anglia : and began , Reuerendissime in Christo Pater Salutem. Renerendissime Pater, placeat Renerendissima paternitati vestra, scire, Deo fanente post quam eximinue à Plemut que fuit x. Iunij &c. (the substance is the same with the former, and therefore omitted) Datum apud le Baya Saint Ioban in Terris Nouis , die x. Augusti, 1927. Rener. Patr. vest. humilis ferum, Albertin de Prato. (the name written in the lowest corner of the sheet.)

bafte. 1527.

#### The voyage of Captaine GEORGE WEYMOVTH, intended for the discouerie of the North-west Passage toward China, with two flye Boates.

N Sunday the fecond day of May, 1602. in the afternoone, I weighed anchor and fet faile from Redeliffe with two Fly-boates, the one called the Difeoury, of feuentic Tunnes; and the other called the God freed, of fixtie Tunnes, to discouer the North-west passage, having in my thips fine and thirtie men and boyes, throughly viotualled and abundantly furnished with all neceffaries for a yeere and an halfe, by the right Worthipfull Merchants of the Mofomie and Turkie Companies : who for the better successe of the yoyage prouided mee of a great trauailer and nie 60 learned Minister one Master laba Cartwright. The Master under mee in the Dilcouerie was one Master cart-William Cobreth, a skilfull man in his profession; and in the God freed, one lown Drewe, and Mate wright had bin in the faid thip one Iohn Lane.

The first of Iune, we descried Buquhammes in the Latitude of 57. degrees. The second day former Tome, we faw she Point of Buquhammer North-well from vs, being a very smooth land; and the land Buquhammer

and I agreed with one of the fifther men to carry me betweene the Isles of Orkney, because I was

not acquainted with the coast. The fourth day, at ten of the clocke, wee descried the Isles of

Orkney. Some of those Southerne Hands are prettielingh land; but the Northerne Hand, which

is called the Start, is very low land. There is no danger, giving the shore a good birth, whise is

be by the Norther point of the Start : there doth a ledge of Rockes lye a mile from the floare.

Orkner.

The Statt. 59.degrees 30. At noone I found my selfe to be in the latitude of 59. degrees and 30.minutes, the point of the Fairelle.

Two fmail I-

Stars bearing West: and at one of the clocke in the afternoone, we saw a faire Ile, which bare North-eaft and by North from vs : and at eight of the clocke at night, wee were North of the Start: Then I directed my course West and by North. The fifth day about ten of the clocke in the morning, we ranne fome tenne leagues, and then we faw two small Hands, some two leagues off: and at eight and nine of the clocke we faw foure or fine Boats of Fisher-men, and spake with one of them, and they were Scottifb-men. The fixt, in the morning fell much raine, and lafted till nine of the clocke: and at ten of the clocke it cleared up, and became very faire weather, and very temperate and warme, and our course was West. The seauenth, the winde was at East and

by North, faire weather, and our course West. The eight, at noone I observed the Sunne, and found vs to be in 59. degrees and fortie feuen minutes, and we ran West South-west. The tweifth day we held our course West, the winde at East North-east, with sogge in the The twenten day we may be some, and found my felfe in 57, degrees, and 55, minutes, 36

and the winde at East North-east, and our course West and by North. The fifteenth much raine

all the forenoone, our course West, the winde at East and by North. The sixteenth, the winde

was at North North-east, with much raine, winde and fogge. In the forenoone, being very cold,

and at noone, I observed the Sun, and found vs to be in \$7.degrees and 35.minutes; we found the

variation to be eleuen degrees Westward; and by that meane I found my selfe to be one degree

more to the Southward, then we should have bin by our course; for we could not see the Sunne

twelfth day, we could not finde any variation at all. Then we flood close by a winde to the

Westward, the winde being at North North-east. The seauenteenth wee ranne North and by

West, the winde at North North east, faire weather. This day we saw many gray Gulles, and

fome Pigions. The eighteenth at noone I observed the Sunne, and found our selves to be in the

lay North from vs, as farre as we could ken ie from the head of our maine topmast : and about

two of the clocke in the afternoone, we law the South part of Groneland, North from vs forme

ten leagues. As we coasted this Ice to the Northward, we found it to be a maine banke of Ice :

for we law the other end of it to beare West North-west from vs; the winde being at South South-west, little winde : Then we ranne West South-west, to cleere vs of the Ice, The nine- 40

teenth, the winde was at East South-east, with some small raine. The twentieth, our course was

againe. Seeing this change of water, to often to be thick, and cleare againe fo fuddenly, we imagined it had beene shallow water: then we founded, and could fetch no ground in one hundred and twenty fathomes : and the Sea was to smooth, that we could discerne no current at all. At this

time I reckoned the Cape of desolation to beare North North-east twentie foure leagues from vs.

The one and twentieth, the winde was variable. The two and twentieth, we were in the lati-

in 96 houres before this day at noone, and at our last observation before this, which was the 30

the variation here was nothing at all. The thirteenth at noone, our course was West and by North, the winde at North-east, with fogge some three or soure houres, and then cleare again: the ayre very warme, as in England in the moneth of May. The foureteenth was faire weather,

Variation ele-Weftward.

ons, 53,deg.51,min. latitude of 59.degrees, and 51.mimutes. And then we first descried a great lland of Ice, which Grantland.

Blackwiter as Welt North-west, the winde being at North and by East, little winde. This day sometimes we thick as suddle came into blacke water as thickeas puddle, and in failing a little space the water would be cleare

The Cape of 60, deg.37-mine tuile of 60, degrees and 37, minutes : the winde being at West, were ranne North and

Americade (cri-

by Weft. The season and twentieth, the winde was at West South-west : then our course was 50 North-west and by North, the weather faire and warme, as in England, in the moneth of Store of Guls, May. This day we faw great flore of Gulles, which followed our Ship fundry dayes. The eight and twentieth, the winde being at North and by West, wee directed our course to the Westward; and about twelve of the clocke the same night, we descried the land of Ausrica, in the latitude of 62. degrees and 30 minutes; which we made to be Warnick; foreland. This Headland rose like an Iland. And when we came neere the Foreland, we saw source small Hands to the Northwards, and three small Hands to the Southward of the same Foreland. The Foreland was high land: all the cope of the hols were conered with Snow. The three small llands to the Southward were also where, that we could not differne them from Ilands of Ice : also there was great store of drift Ice vpon the Eastside of this Foreland : but the Sea was altogether 60 voide of Ice : the Land did lye North and by East, and South and by West, being fix leagues

The nine and twentieth, at fixe of the clocke in the morning, were were within three leagues of this Foreland : then the winde came up at North-east and by East, a good stiffe gale with

fogge: and wee wereforced to fland to the Southward, because wee could not wether the land to the Northward: and as wee flood to the Southward along by Warniels Foreland, we hand supposed could discerne none otherwise, but that it was an Iland. Which if it fall out to be so, then to be an Iland. Louders Inlet, and the next Southerly fifter, where the great Current fetteth to the Weft, The greateft must of nevertitie be one Sea; which will be the greatest hope of the passage that way. The hope of the mun or necessary to the state of the state o

coast of America.

The first day of Isly, the white was at West, with forger and Snow; the syre being very cold. Under the state of the syre being very cold. The day were came into imany Ouerfalts; which seemed to summ a great current; but green which way it did fet, were could not well discreme. The greatest skelshood was, that A current sies is should force to the West. But haning contrary symbols bodie factored or currenteste dayer, we I you fut to the always slay its trausers among the courterfalts; but could better finde any great current by our W. ft. courtes: twee founded former many slays to ground in one hundred and twents; the

thomes. The second day, we deferred a maine Bank of Te in the latitude of so, degrees 'che winds' A make bank. The second day, we deferred a maine Bank of the was at North North-with, and very tariet weather. We wanting fifth was ended high close offer in o das cother Land of te, and high close to not no Bank and high day the review with I ce, which made "s green with I land of te, and high close to not no Bank and high day to review with I ce, which made "s green with I land of the control in the North Research and the second s very good fresh water. Whitin twenty leagues of the coast of "America", wee should oftentwenty good fresh water. Whitin twenty leagues of the coast of America", wee should oftento times come into many great outstals. Which doth manifestly show, that all the coast of America (seemed to

The third, the winds was at South-west, very foggie: and as wee stood toward the coast of America, wee met with another maine Banke of Ice. The fogge was fo thicke, that we were hard by the Ice, before wee could fee it. But it pleased God that the winde was faire to put vs cleare from this Ice againe; and prefently it began to cleare up, fo that wee could fee two or three lesgues off; but we could fee no end of the Ice. Wee judged this Ice to be some tenne leagues from the coast of America. We found the water to be very blackish and thicke, like pud- Blacke outdie

The eight, the winde was at North North well, very faire weather; wee flanding to the 20 Westwards met with a mighty maine Banke of Ice, which was a great length and breadth, and it did reft close to the floare. And at elemen of the clocke in the forenoone, wee descried agains the Land of America, in the latitude of 63 degrees and 33 minutes, being very high Land : and America against te did rife as llands, the toppes being covered with Snow, This Land was South-west and by difered in 62.

West, some fine leagues off vs: we could come no nearer is for the great quantitie of Ice, which refted by the shoare side,

The ninth, the winds being at North-east and by East, blew to extreamely, that we were forced to fland to the Southward, both to cleare our felues of the Land, and of the Ice: for the day before we passed a great banke of Ice, which was some foureteene leagues to the Eastward of vs, when the storme began; but thankes be to God, we cleared our selues both of the Land and of the Ice. This day in the afternoone the ftorme grew to extreame, that we were forced to stand along with our forecourse to the Southward.

The functional water of some analysis.

The function was expressed was expressed to the afternoone, weetaw foure great flands of fee, of a functional profile; and about foure of the clocke we came among fome final feattered Ice, and lippeded our felds to be neare fome great Banke. The fogge was very thicks, but the winde large to fland back the fame way week came in: or elfe it would have indangered our lives very much. And at nine of the clocke at night we heard a great noyle, as though it had bin the breach of fome thours. Being defirous to fee what The lozeblome it was, we flood with it, and found it to be the noyle of a great quantity of Ice, which was noyle of Ice, very loathfome to be heard. Then wee flood North North-well, and the fogge contiso nued fo thicke, that wee could not feetwo Shippes length from vs : whereupon we thought good to take in some of our layles; and when our men came to hand them, they found our fayles, ropes, and tacklings, to hard frozen, that it did feeme very ftrange vnto vs, being in the Sayles, when

chiefest sime of Summer. The eighteenth day, the winde was at North-east and by North, the avre being very cleere and extreame cold, with an exceeding great frost; and our course was North-west. This day in the forenoone, when we did fet our fayles, we found our ropes and tacklings harder frozen then they were the day before : which frost did annoy vs. so much in the vsing of our ropes and fayles, that wee were enforced to breake off the Ice from our ropes, that they might sunne tayles, that we will be the blockes, And at two of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde began to blow verthrough the blockes, And at two of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde began to blow verthrough the blockes, And at two of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde began to blow verthrough the blockes. Thick troops and tackling, the company of the blockes and the blockes and the blockes and the blockes and the blockes are the blockes. Thick troops and tackling, the blockes are the blockes and the blockes are the blockes. Thick troops and tackling the blockes are the blockes are the blockes are the blockes. The blockes are the blockes are the blockes are the blockes are the blockes. The blockes are the blockes are the blockes are the blockes are the blockes. The blockes are the b

that we could not almost hoyse or strike our sayles, to have any vie of them. This extreame frost and long continuance thereof, was a maine barre to our proceeding to the Northward, and the difcouraging of all our men.

The nineteenth day, the winde was at North and by East, and our course to the Eastwards.



Mutinie.

The same night following, all our men conspired secretly together, to beare up the helme for England, while I was affeepe in my Cabin, and there to have kept mee by force, vntill I had Legistra, while I was a users in my count, and there exists them for fo doing. And indeede they had drawn in writing, the causes of their bearing up of the helme, and thereunte fee their hands, and would have left them in my Cabin : but by good chance I understood their pretence, and

The twentieth day, I called the chiefest of my Company into my Cabin, before Master Lobe. Corneright our Preacher, and our Mafter, william Cobreth, to heare what reasons they could alleadge for the bearing vp of the Helme, which might be an ouerthrow to the Voyage, feeing the Merchants had bin at fo great a charge with it. After much conference, they delinered mer to

Concluding, that although it were granted, that we might winter betweene 60 and 70. degrees of latitude, with latetie of our lines and Veffels, yet it will be May next before wee one difmore them, to lanch out into the Sea. And therefore if the Merchants should have purpole to proceede on the discouerie of these North-west parts of America; the next yeare.

pole to proceed on the discourse of state evolution the parts of otherway the next year, you may be in the aforefail distinder for England, by the first of May, and so for furnished better with men and victuals, to pesse and proceeds in the aforefail action.

Seeing then that you cannot assure vs of a fast harbour to the Northward, wee purpose to beare up the Helmefor England; yet with this limitation, that if in your wiscome, you shall thinke good to make any discourty, either in 60.0r 57 degrees, with this faire Northerly winde, 20 we yeelde our lines with your felfe, to encounter any danger. Thus much we thought needsfull to fignifie, as a matter builded vpon reason, and not proceeding vpon feare or cow-

Then, wee being in the latitude of 68. degrees and 53. minutes : the next following, about 68.deg.53.min Intel, wer brung in the locke, they bare vp the Helme, being all fo bent, that there was no meanes to periwade them to the contrary. At last understanding of it, I came forth of my Cabin, and demanded of them, who bare up the Helme. They answered me, One and All. So they hoysed up all They returns ded of them, who oare up the retimes a new aniwered me. One and to the fayle they could, and directed their course South and by West.

The two and eventieth, Hent for the chiefest of those, which were the cause of the bearing up of the Helme, and punished them seuerly, that this punishment might be a warning 30 to them afterward for falling into the like mutinie. In the end, vpon the intreatie of Mafter Carturiebt our Preacher, and the Mafter, William Cobreato, vpon their submiffion, I remitted some part of their punishment. At twelue of the clocke at noone, wee came hard by a great lland of Ice : the Sea being very smooth and almost calme, were hoysed out the Boates of both our Shippes: being in want of fresh water, and went to this Iland to per some Ice A great Iland to make vs fresh water. And as wee were breaking off some of this Ice (which was verie a great time of fee cracked painefull for vs to doe; for it was almost as hard as a Rocke:) the great lland of Ice gaue a mightiecracke two or three times, as though it had bin a thunder-clappe; and prefently the mignetactive to continuous, which was like to have funke both our Boates, it were had not made good hafte from it. But thankes be to God, we efcaped this danger very lappily, and came to aboord with both our Boates, the one halfe laden with Ice, There was great store of Sea Foule The fine and twentieth and fix and twentieth, the winde being at East, did blow a hard

The feuen and twentieth, the winde was at South South-east, and blew very hard, our course

came vpin a showre by the West North-west, blowing so hard, that wee were forced to put a 50

was West. The eight and twentieth and nine and twentieth, our course was West and by South,

the winde blowing very hard at East South-cast, with sogge and raine. The thirtieth, the winde

Shippes sicke, wee thought it good to returne with great hope of this Inlet, to bee a

passage of more pessibilitie, then through the Straight of Danie : because I found it not much peffered with Ice, and to be a straight of fortie leagues broad. Also I sayled an hundred leagues West and by South, within this Inlet; and there I found the variation to be

35, degrees to the Westward, and the needle to decline, or rather incline 83, degrees and

like a thunder-Great flore of Sea Foule vp. on the Ice.

An Inletin 61. gale, and our course was West and by South, with fogge. This day in the afternoone I did reckon degrees & 40. my felfe to be in the entering of an Inlet, which standeth in the latitude of 61. degrees and 40.

minutes.

The return out fore the Sea. Now because the time of the yeare was farre spent, and many of our men in both

Thevariation 35. degrees Westward.

The fifth of August (the winde all that while Westerly) wee were cleare of this Inlet agains. The fixth the winde was at East South-east with fogge. The seauenth, eight, and ninth, we paifed by many great Ilands of Ice. The minth day at night, we descried the land of America, in the coast of 4. the latitude of 55 degrees, and 30 minutes. This Land was an Iland, being but low land and very smooth : then the night approaching, and the weather being something foggie and deg. & 30.min. darke, we were forced to stand to the Northward againe. This might we passed by some great Ilands of Ice, and some bigge peeces which did breake from the great Ilanis: and we were like

to strike some of them two or three times : which if we had done, it might have endangered our Shipperand lines. Our confort, the Godfpeede, ftrooke's little piece of Ice, which they The Godfpeede thought had foundred their Shippe; but thankes be to God they received no great hurt, for piece of lee;

CHAP. 12.

our Shippes were very firong. The tenth day, the winde was at North-east and by North, with fogge and raine; and our course was so the South-eastward: for we could by no meanes put with the shoare, by reason of the thicknesse of the fogge, and that the winde blew right vpon the shoare, so that we were forced to beare faile to keepe our felues from the land, vntill it pleafed God to fend vs a cleare; which God knoweth we long wanted. As fixe of the clocke in the afternoone, it was calme 10 and then I judged my felfe, by mine account, to be neerethe Land; fo I founded, and had ground in 160, fathomes, and fine grey Olie Sand : and there was a great Hand of Ice, a ground within a league of vs, where we founded, and within one houre it pleafed God to fend vs a cleare. Then www.c. we law the land fome foure leagues South-west and by South from vs. This land lyeth East and by South, and West and by North, being good high land, but all Hands, as farre as wee could dil. Many Hands. cerne. This calme convinced vatill foure of the clocke in the afternoone of the elebenth day; the weather being very cleere, we could not differne any Current to goe at all by this Land. This day the Sea did fet vs in about a league neerer the Land, fo that wee judged our felues three leagues off. Here we founded againe, and had but eightie fathoms.

The variation of the Compasse we found to be 22. degrees and 10. minutes Westward. At The variation 20 fine of the clocke there sprung vp a fine gale of winde, at Eaft South-east, and being so neere 31 degrees to night, wee flood to the Southward, thinking the next day to feeke some harbour. But it pleafed God, thenexe day, being the twelfth, to fend vsa ftorme of foule weather, the winde being A Storme, at East and by South, with togge : so that we could by no meanes get the shoare. Thus wee were forced to beate up and downe at Sea, untill it should please God to fend vs better weather. The foureteenth, I thought good to stand to the Westward to fearth in Inlet; in the latitude

of to degrees. I have good hope of a passage that way, by many great and probable seasons. The fifteenth the winds continued at the South ; with exceeding faire weather, and out course was West. We were this day at noone in the latitude of sy degrees and 31. minimum and 30 I found the variation to be 17 degrees and 19 minutes 918 the Westward. And about seven of Variation the clocke at might, we described the Land against being tenne tragues to the Eastward of this deer same. Indee, This Land did beare from as Southa well when he had been seen in the They differe clocke the lame night, the winde cometo the West's which blew right against vs for our en- the land against 

The fixteenth, the winde was at Walt North well , and was very faire weather , and our course South-west : about mine of the clocke in the forenbone, we carrie by a great Iland of Ice; and by this Hand we found fome preces of Ice broken off from the faid Hand : And Being in? great want of fresh water, wee soyled out our Boates of both Thippes, and loaded them twice with Ice, which made vs very good fresh water. This day at moonly wee found our selves to be 46) in the latitude of 55 degrees and twentie minutes : when we had taken in our Ice and Boates, the 55 deg. 20, min. weather being very faire and cleare, and the winde at Well North-well, we bent our course for the Land, and about three of the clocke in the attenuous; we write within three ferroles of a pletant bothe (hours. As is a very pletaint low Land; but all Hands; and goods from do going between Land, sour all Hands; and goods from do going between Land, source them, toward the South-word. This Land doth fland in the relativistic of 5% degrees; and Lands found the variation to be so the Well 18, degrees and 12, whintees. This don't is voide of force you. The variation to be so the Well 18, degrees and 12, whintees. This don't is voide of force you. The variation to be so the Well 18, degrees and 12, whintees. leffe it be some great Hands of Ice, that come from the North, and so by windes may be direct 18 deg, and 12. woon this chaft. Also we did finde the ayre in this place to be very temperate. Truely there is min. Westwards in three fenerall places great hope of a passage, betweene die latitude of ou and and enteres if the Temperate forget doe not hinder it, which is all the feare I have. At fixe of the clocks, wee being becalmed Grein bose of So by the liberethere appeared vnto vs a great ledge of rookes, berweene var and the thouse, as a pallage hunt though the Sea did five quarit with a greatheight. As we all beheld it within one libite; when three places. though me section by outsite with a feature give. A we at note the word of the property of the feature of the fall of the feature of the feat

But the leventeenth in the morning, the winde being at the South, it began to blow to exce -committee treamely that we durk not they by the floure, for it was like to be a great florme ? then our courfe was East North-east, to get vi Sea roome. This filtime ftill increasing, our five boates diff 60 receins in much water; for they wanted a Sparre-decke, which wer found very dangerous for A Which inde the Sea. About twelve of the clocke at noone, this day there role vp a great flowre mille Well, taking vp the and prefently the windexame out of this doarter with a whirle, and taking up the See into Sea, the ayre, and blew to extreamely, that we were forced always to runne before the Still Rowlo-

in 16.degrees.

They returned

ener the winde did blow. And within, swelue houres after this florme beganne, the Sea was so much growen, that we thought our sye Boates would not have beene able to have en-

The eighteenth, the winde was at North-west, and the storme increased more extreame, and lafted vntill eight of the clocke in the morning of the nineteenth day, fo furious, that to my remembrance, I neuer felta greater: yet when we were in our greatest extremities, the Lord They were en. deliuered we his vinworthy feruante. And if the winde, with fo great a fforme, had bin either tred 30 leagues Northerly, or Southerly, or Eafterly but one day, we had all perified against the Rocks, or the Ice: for wee were entred thirty leagues within a Head-land of an Inlet, in the latitude of co. degrees. But it pleased Good to fend vs the winde so faire, as we could defire, both to cleare our to They returned feluce of the Land and ite. Which opportunitie caused we for this time to take our leaves of the This Book was coast of America, and to frape our coast for England.

The fourth, in the morning, wee deforted the Hand of Silly North-east and by East, some by w. Colvell. foure leagues off vs. Then were directed our course East and by North, and tenne of the clocke in the forenoone, wee descried the Lands end, and next day were forced to put into

CHAP. XIV.

IAMES HALL his Voyage forth of Denmarke for she discovery of Greeneland, in the yeare 1605. abbreniated.

N the name of God Amen, we let layle from Copensan-bauen in Denmarke, the fecondday of May, in the yeare of our redemption 1605, with two Shippes and a Pinnace : The Admirall, called the Fresh, a shippe of the burthen of thirty or for-

Finner: 1 De Ammiral, called the Favil, a lippe of the burnen or there or tricially wherein was Capitaine, and chief commander of the whole Fleet, Captaine I also Comming to an a Secretal Grantenman Centum vance the Kinge Maichle of the Granten vance the Kinge Maichle of the forefaild burthen, wherein ways Captaine, so one Selfout Landange, a Danillo Grantenma, and Steereman of the fame, one Paint Mille of Comming the humb. The Pinnace, a Barke of the burthen of twelve Lafts, or thereabouts; wherein was Sectionan or commander, one lobs Knight, my Ishn Rnight of Countrie-man. So fetting fayle from Copennen-hauen, with a faire gale of winde Easterly, wee came vato Elfonere, where we anchored, to take in our mater.

The third day we toake in our water, at which time, the Captaines, my felfe, with the Lieutenants, and the other Steeremen, did thinke it consenience to fee downe cretaine Articles, for the hetter keeping of company one with another, so which theticles or commants wee were all fenerally fworne, fetting thereunto our hands.

The fixt we came to Flacerie, into which harbour, by Gods helpe, we came at two aclocke 40 in the afternoone. The fearenth day we supplied out wants of wood and water. The eight day, about two a clocke in the afternoons, we let fayle for ib of the harbour of Fine in about fix a clock it fell calme, tillabout eight, about which time, the Naloof Normakby the Delib mencalled Lyndy, safe, bate next hand North-west of vs , fixe leagues off; at which time I disected my courfe West North-west, finding the compasse varied 7. degrees rominures, to the Eastwards of

The thisteenth, we had light of the Hand of Fore Ile, and allowf the South-head of Shotland; called Sminsborne bead, which are high Lamis : at noone, the Hand of Faire Ile bearing West halfe a point Northerly a foure leagues off /I made observation, and found vs in the latitude of 59. degrees so, minutes. This night about fever a clocke, were came about an English league to the Northwards of the North-west and of Euro IIa, were met with a great record a tyde, as 50 Erace what the chough it had been the rage of Portland, inferring North North-well. Being out of the faid race, I directed my course West and by North, having the winde North-east and by Norththis evening Faire Ile bearing East South-east four leagues: Swimberry head, North-east and by North-eight leagues: the Hand of Fose, North-east and by East, see a leagues. I found by east observation, the compasse so be varied to the East ward of the true North 601 degrees

The fourteenth in the morning, the winds came to the East Southerast, wer steering West and by North away; this morning the lland of Faire ble did thew in my light to bee about ten leaguas off at which times would deferie swa of the Westermost Bands of Orkney, which did ov good .. bear South west and by South stor or the ve

The eightneach, the mindeat Month-well and by Well , wee laid is away South well and by West, and Smerimes South-west. Thirdly so mone werevers in the Laurence of \$3. degrees

40. minutes. The nineteenthday, the winde at South-west and South-west and by West. wee lying as the night before, being at noone in the Latitude of 59. degrees and a halfe. The foure and ewentieth day, the winde at North-east and by East, we steering still with a fresh gale West South-well, this evening we looked to have feene Buffe Hand, but I doe verily suppose the same Buffe Hand to be placed in a wrong Latitude in the Marine Charts. The fixe and twentieth at noone, wee wrong placed were in the latitude of 57. degrees 45, minutes. The thirtieth day in the morning betweene feuen and eight, the weather began to cleere, and the Sea and winde to waxe leffe, wee looking for the Lion and the Pinnaffe, could have no fight of them, we supposing them to bee afterne off vs. we standing still vnder our courses. This day the winde came to the North-east and by East,

10 being very cold, weather, we lying North North-well away. Making my observation at noone, I found vs in the latitude of 50 degrees 15, minutes, our way North North-west fortie leagues. This afternoon between one and two a clock we deferied Land, it bearing North North-east off vs about ten leagues off North-east & by North off vs about ten leagues, it being a very high rag- First fight of ged land, lying in the latitude of 19. degrees 50. minutes, lying along & South-east and by South. Graniere. and North-west and by North.

This Head-land wee named after the Kings Maiesties of Denmarke, because it was the first Cape christian.

part of Greenland, which we did fee. This afternoone about one a clock, bearing in for the shoare we faw an Iland of Ice, which bore West South-west of ve three leagues off, so having the wind at East South-east, we bore in for the shoare, where wee found so much Ice that it was impossible 20 either for vs or any other ship to come into the shoare without great danger : yet wee put our felues into the Ice as wee thought convenient, being incumbred and compaffed about with the The sheare full same in such fort, as the Captaine, my selfe, the Boatswaine with another of our companie, were of Ice. forced to goe cuerboord vpon an Hand of Ice, to defend it from the ship, at which time I thought it convenient to stand off into the Sea againe, and so being cleere of the Ice, to double Cape Defe- Cape Defel-Lation, to the North-westwards of which I doubted not but to find a cleer coast, so standing away the all this night West South-west, to cleere vs of the Ice, which lay farre from the shoare, being very thicke towards the Land with great Hands of Ice that it is wonderfull. This evening, the Cape Christian bearing North-east and by East fine leagues, I found the Compasse varied 12, de- Compasse vagrees 15. minutes to the North-westwards. Moreouer, standing to Seaward from the foresaid ried. 30 Cape, we came in blacks water, as thicke as though it had beene puddle water, we fayling in the Black water.

fame for the space of three houres. The one and thirtieth in the morning faire weather, with the winde fomewhat variable, wee ffeering away North-west and by West, betweene foure and fine in the morning we had light of the Lion againe, but not of the Pinnaffe. They being a Sea-boord off and having efpied way, they Sicht of the flood with vs, at which time the Captaine, Lieutenant, and Steereman came abourd vs, earnestly Lieu. intreating mee to bestow a Sea Chart of the Steerman , and to give him directions if by tempeftuous weather they should lose vs, they protesting and swearing that they would never leave vs as long as winde and weather would permit them to keepe companie with vs. By whole speechees I being perswaded did give them a Sea Chart for those Coasts, telling them that if they

40 would follow me, that by Gods affiftance I would bring them to a part of the Land void with. out pefter of Ice, and also harbour the ships in good Harbour, by Gods helpe; they swearing and protesting, that they would follow mee so long as possibly they could, with which oathes and faire speeches I rested satisfied, thinking they had thought as they had sworne, but it fell out otherwise. So having made an end with vs about noone, they went abourd againe, wee being this day in the latitude of 59. degrees 45. minutes, having flood all the night before, and this forenoone alfo, fo nigh the shoare as wee could for Ice, the Cape (briftian South South-east and North North-west, and from the Cape to Cape Defelation , the Land lyeth East and by South, and West and by North about fiftie leagues. This day betweene one and two a clocke, the Viceadmirals Boat, being newly gone aboord, it fell very halfe and thicke, fo that wee could not fee 50 one another by reason of the fog, therefore our Captaine cansed to shoote off certaine Muskets with a great peece of Ordnance, to the intent the Lion might beare vs , which heard of them they presently flood with vs, at which time the fogge began somewhat to cleere, were having

fight one of another and to flood along it the shoare, as night as we could for Ice. The first of Iune, wee had a fresh gale of winde at South-west, wee steering North-east and Iune 1605. by North into the shoare, about three in the morning there fell a mightie fogge, so that we were forced to lye by the lee, for the Lion playing upon our D rum to the intent for them to heare vs, and to keepe companie with vs, they answering vs againe with the shooting of a Musket, wee trimming our failes, did the like to them, and to flood away North-east and by East : larboard Hands of Ice. tackt aboord halfe a glaffe, when we were hard incumbred among ft mightie Hands of Ice, being Mightie in-60 very high like huge Mountaines, to I caused to cast about and stand to the Westwards North- cumbrance of west and by West. About twelve of the clocke this night it being still calme, wee found our Ice. west and by West. About twelue of the clocke this night it being rini caune, wee round our A mightie curselues suddenly compast round about with great Ilands of Ice, which made such a hideous noyse rent testing

as was most wonderfull, so that by no meanes wee could double the fame to the Westward: North North

Wherefore were were forced to fland it away to the Southwards, South South-West, stem- weit.

ming the Current, for by the same Current wee were violently brought into this Ice, so being incumbred and much to doe to keepe cleere of the mightie Ilands of Ice, there being as both and others did plainly fee vpon one of them a huge rocke ftone, of the weight of three hundred pounds or thereabouts, as weedid suppose. Thus being troubled in the Ice for the space of two or three houres, it pleased God that we got thorow the same.

The second day in the morning about three a clocke, I came forth of my Cabin, where I found that the Shipper whose name was Arnold had altered my course which I had set, going contrarie to my directions North North-west away, whereupon hee and I grew to some speeches. both for at this time and other times hee had done the like. The Captaine likewife feeing his bad dealing with we, did likewise roundly speake his minde to him, for at this instant wee were to nigh vnto a greatbanke of Ice, which wee might have doubled if my course had not been altered, fo that we were forced to cast about to the Southwards, South and by East and South South east, with the winde at South-west and by South or South-west till ten a clocke, when we stood againe to the Westwards, lying West North-west and North-west and by West, being at noone in the latitude of 60. degrees 18. minutes, Cape Defalation is, I did suppose, bearing North and by West three or source leagues off, the weather being so thicke and hasie that wee could never fee the Land.

The fourth day betweene one and two a clocke in the morning, it began to blow a fresh gale Eafterly, we steering away North and North and by West, webeing at noone in the latitude of 50. degrees 50. minutes, having made a West and by North way four and twentie leagues. This 20 euening about feuen a clocke we had very thicke water, and continued to about halfe an houre: about nine a clocke we did see a very high Hand of Ice to the windward of vs, and about halfe an houre after with some drift Ice, they in the Lion thorow the fearefulnesse of their Commanders prefently cast about standing away larboord tackt, till they did perceine that I flood fill away as I did before, without impediment of the Ice, they caft about againe and followed vs.

The fift in the morning, being very faire weather with the winde at East South-east, our course North North-west, some of our people supposed they had seene the Land : our Captaine and I went aboord the Pinnasse, when after an houre of our being there wee did see the supposed Land to be an hasie fogge, which came on vs to fast that wee could scarce see one another. But 30 the Lion being very nigh vnto vs, and it being very calme, weel aid the Pinnasse aboord of her. and fo the Captaine and I went abourd of them,

The pinth day about foure a clocke, it began to blow an easie gale at South-east and by South. I directing my course still North North-west, when some of our people would not be persuaded but they did fee Land, and therefore I stood in North and by East and North North-east, till about three a clocke in the afternoone, when wee met with a huge and high lland of Ice, wee Reering hard to board the same, and being shot a little to Northwards of it, there fell from the top thereof some quantitie of Ice, which in the fall did make such a noyse as though it had beene the report of five Cannons. This evening wee came amongst much drift Ice, being both windwards and to leewards of vs, yet by Gods helpe we got very well through the same, when 40 being cleare I directed my course againe North North-weit.

The tenth day the winde at South-west and by West, I steering still North-west and by

Our people repurne backe

A huge high

Hand of Ice.

816

North: This forenoone also wee met with great Ilands of Ice, it being very hase and thicke weather, the which did drive them in the Lion into great feare, and calling to vs very fearfully periwaded me to alter my course and to returne homeward, saying that it was impossible for vs by any working, and course keeping to sease vpon the Land, which did drive all our companie into fuch a feare, that they were determined, whether I would or not, to have returned home, had not the Captaine as an honest and resolute Gentleman stood by mee, protesting to stand by me fo long as his blood was warme, for the good of the Kings Maiestie, who had set vs forth, and also to the performing of the Voyage. Which resolution of his did mitigate the stubborne- 50 neffe of the people : yet nothing would perswade those fearfull persons in the Lien, especially the Sceerman, who had rather long before this time have returned home, then to have proceeded on the action, as before the faid Steerman had done when he was imployed eight yeeres before in the faid action or discouerie. Therefore our Captaine and my telfe feeing their backwardnesse now, as before we had done, went our selves the same evening into the Pinnasse, having a mightie banke of Ice of our larboord fide, and spake to them very friendly, giving order both to our owne thip and to them, that they should keepe a Seaboord of vs (for I did suppose this banke of Ice to lye in the narrowell of the Streight, betweene America and Groenland, as indeed by experience I found the same to be) therefore I determined to coast the Ice alongst till I found it to bee driven and fall away, by realon of the fwift current that fetteth very forcibly through the faid 60 Strait, and then by the grace of God to let ouer for a cleere part of the coaft of Groenland, fo all this night we coasted the Ice as close aboord as we could East North-east and North-east and by East, till about midnight, when we found the faid banke to fall away.

The cleuenth day, being cleere of the Ice, I flood away North North-east till fixe a clocke,

when we met with another great banks of Ice, at which time the Commanders of the Lion being now againe very fearfull as before, came vp to our ship, perswading the Shipper and Com. Another banke panie to leaue vs, and to ftand to Seaboord with them. But the Shipper who was also Lieftenant of Ice. of the ship, being more honestly minded, said, that he would follow vs so long as he could : with which answere they departed, ving many ipitefull wordes, both of the Captaine and mee, faying we were determined to betray the Kings thips, at which time they shot off a peece of Ord- The Lims denance, and so stood away from vs. I seeing their peruerse dealing let them goe, wee coasting parting from along it the Ice North North-east with a fresh gale, it being extreme cold with snow and hayle, the Sea also going very high by reason of a mightie current, the which I found to set very force. A mightie cur-Io ably through this Strait, which being nigh vinto America fide, fetteth to the Northwards, and rena on the other fide to the contrarie, as by proofe I found. So coasting alongst this mayne banke of Ice, which seemed as it had beene a firme Continent till about eleuen a clocke, when weeespyed the Ice to ftretch to windward, on our weather bow wee tetting our ftarboord takes aboord, ftood away East and by South with the winde at South and by East, till wee had doubled a Scaboord the Ice, at which time I directed my course directly ouer for the cleere coast of Graineland, East and by North, which course I directed all the Frost to goe, we ftanding away our course all this night, it being very much fnow and fleete.

The twelfth day in the morning about foure a clocke, we espyed the Land of Groenland, be- Sight of Land, ing a very high ragged Land, the tops of the Mountaines being all coursed with snow, yet wee go found all this coaft veterly without Ice, wee flanding into the Land efpyed a certaine Mountaboue all the reft, which Mount is the best marke on all this Coast, the which I named Mount Mount Cun-Cunning ham after the name of my Captaine. We comming into the shoare betweene two Capes ningham or Head-lands, the Land lying betweene them North and by East, and South and by West, the Southmost of which Forelands I named Queene Annes Cape, after the name of the Queenes Ma- Queene dants Southmost of Which Porchands I mained Capeta Southmost of the two I called Queene Sophias Cape, after the name Cape. of the Queene Mother. So standing into the Land, we came amongst certaine Hands, where sayling in still amongst phias Gape.

the same vnto the Southermost foot of the forelaid Mount, wee came into a goodly Bay, which wee did luppose to be a River, being on both sides of the same very high and steepe Mountaines, 30 wee named the fame King Christianus Foord, after the name of the Kings Maie fie of Denmarke. chrifians Foord, So fayling vp this Bay, which wee supposed to bee a River, the space of fixe or seven Enelish leagues, finding in all that space no anchoring, being manuellous deepe water, till at the length we had fayled up the Bay the forefaid diffance, at length I brought the Ship and Pinnaffe to an anchor in fixteene fathom shelly ground, at which time our Captaine and I went aland, giving Our anchothankes vnto God for his vnipeakable benefits, who had thus dealt with vs as to bring vs to ting. this defired Land into to good an Harbour; which done, the Captaine and I walked vp the Our first lan-Hills, to fee if wee could fee any of the people, having our Boat to row along it with vs. Having ding in Greingone along the River side vpon the tops of the Hills the space of three or toure English miles, land, at length looking towards our Boat , wee faw vpon the River fide foure of the people standing Our first fight 40 by their Houses or rather Tents, couered ouer with Seale-skins. Wee comming downe the of the people,

Hills towards them (they having espyed vs) three of them ranne away vpon the Land, and the other tooke his Boat and rowed away leaving their Tents. Wee being come downe the Boat of Scale Hills called to our men in the Boat, and entring into her rowed towards the Sauage who was sking in his Boat made of Seale-skins. Hee holding vp his hands towards the Sunne, cryed Tota; wee doing the like, and shewing to him a knife, hee presently came vnto vs and tooke the fame of the Captaine. When hee had presently rowed away from vs, wee rowed a little after him, and leeing it was but in vaine wee rowed aland againe and went into their Tents, Our entring which wee found conered (as is aforefaid) with Seale-skins. Wee finding by the houles two into their Dogs being very rough and fat, like in thape to a Foxe, with very great abundance of Seale fift,

50 lying round about their Tentsa drying, with innumerable quantities of a little fifth like vnto a Smelt (which fifth are commonly called Sardeenes) of which fifth in all the Rivers are wonderfull skuls, their fishes also lay a drying round about their Tents in the Sunne in great heapes, with other fundrie kindes. Then entring into their Tents, wee found certaine Seale skins and Foxe sking very well dreft; also certaine Coates of Seale skins and Fowle skins with the feather side inward : also certaine Vessels boyling vpon a little Lampe, the Vessell being made after the manner of a little Pan, the bottome whereof is made of itone, and the fides of Whales finnes; in which Veffell was some little quantitie of Seale fish boyling in Seale oyle; and fearthing further, wee did finde in another of their Veffels a Dogs head boyled, fo that I perswaded my Exters of felfe that they eate Dogs flesh. Moreover, by their houles there did lye two great Boates, be- Dogs-

60 ing couered under with Scales skins, but aloft open after the forme of our Boates, being about twentie foote in length, having in each of them eight or ten tofts or feates for men to fit on, which Boates, as afterwards I did perceive, is for the transporting of their Tents and baggage from place to place, and for a faile they have the guts of some beast, which they dresse very fine and thin, which they fow together.

Of the other fort of Boars. There is one of their Boats in Sir T.Smiths The manner of killing of

Their comming to our

Alfo the other forts of their Boats are fuch as Captaine Frobifber, and Mafter Iohn Danis brought into England, which is but for one man, being cleane couered ouer with Seale skins artificially dressed except one place to sit in, being within set out with certaine little ribs of Timber, wherin they vie to row with one Oare more swiftly, then our men can doe with ten, in which Boates they fish being disguised in their Coates of Seale skinnes, whereby they deceive the Seales, who take them rather for Seales then men ; which Seales or other fish they kill in this manner. They shoot at the Seales or other great fish with their Darts, vnto which they vie to tye a bladder. their great fift which doth boy up the fift in fuch manner that by the faid means they catch them. So comming aboord our ships having left certaine trifles behind vs in their Tents, and taking nothing away with vs, within halfe an houre after our comming aboord, the Sauage to whom wee had given 16 the Knite with three others, which we did suppose to be them which we saw first, came rowing to our ships in their Boats, holding wp their hands to the Sunne, and striking of their brests. crying Tota. We doing the like, they came to our shippe or Captaine : giving them bread and Wine, which, as it did teeme, they made little account of, yet they gave vs some of their dryed fishes, at which time there came foure more, who with the other bartered their Coats, and some Scale skinnes, with our folke for old Iron Nailes, and other trifles as Pinnes and Needles, with which they feemed to be wonderfully pleased, and having so done, holding their hands towards the Sunne they departed,

The thirteenth, there came fourteene of them to our ship, bringing with them Seale skinner, Whale Finnes, with certayne of their Darts and Weapons, which they bartered with our people, as before. This day I made observation of the latitude, and found this Roadsted in the laof the latitude, ritude of 65, degrees 25, minutes, and the mouth of this Bay or Sound, lyeth in the latitude of 66, degrees 30. minutes. Also here I made observation of the tydes, and found an East and West Moone to make a full Sea, vpon the Full and Change, more it floweth, three fathome and an halfe water, right vp and downe.

The fourteenth and fifteenth dayes we rode still, the people comming to vs , and bartering with vs for pieces of old Iron, or Nailes, Whale Finnes, Seales Skinnes, Morfe Teeth, and a kind of Horne which we doe suppose to be Vnicornes Horne, at which time the Captaine went with our Boat, to the place where we had feene their Tents, but found them removed; and the other fith and the Seale fifth lying still a drying : the Captaine taking a quantitie of the Sea fifth into the 30 Boat, caused some of the Mariners to boyle it ashoare, the Sauages helping our men to doe the fame, the Captaine ving them very friendly, they having made about a barrell and an halfe of Oyle, leaving it aland all night, thinking to bring the same aboord in the morning. But the Sauages the same night let the same forth. Yet notwithstanding, the Captaine shewed no manner of discontent towards them.

The fixteenth day, I went into the Pinnaffe, to discouer certaine Harbours to the Northwards, the wind being at East South-east, I loosed and set faile, but instantly it fell calme, and so Our departing continued about an houre. When the wind came opposite at the West North-west a stiffe gale, in the Pinnaffe we spending the tide till the floud being come, I put roome againe, and came to an Anchor a from the flip. little from the Frost in twelve fathomes fandie ground. About one in the afternoone, the Frost 40 departed from vs further vp the Bay, which we did suppose to be a River, promising to abide our returne two and twentie daves.

The feuenteenth day, the wind continuing at the West North-west blowing very hard, wee rode full, the people comming and bartering with vs. The eighteenth day, the winde and weather as before, wee riding still. This forenoone there

The Sauages begin to fling

came to the number of thirtie of them, and bartered with vs as they had done before, which done, they went alhoare at a certaine point about a flight-shot off vs, and there vpon a sudden began to throw stones with certaine Slings which they had without any iniury offered at all; yea, they did fling so fiercely, that we could scarce stand on the hatches. I seeing their brutish dealing, caused the Gunner to shoot a Falcon at them, which lighted a little over them, at which time they went to their Boates, and rowed away. About one a clocke in the afternoone, they came againe to vs crying in their accustomed manner, Thiese, they being fixtie three in number, the flripper inquired of me whether they should come to vs or not. I willed him to have all things in a readinesse, they comming in the meane time nighto the Pinnasse, I did perceive certaine of them to have great bagges full of stones, they whispering one with another began to fling stones wnto vs. I presently shot off a little Pistol which I had for the Gunner, and the rest of the tolke to certainly tell, but they rowed all away making a howling and hideous noise : going to the same point, whereas in the forenoone they had beene, being no fooner come on Land, but from the Hils they did so affaile vs with stones, with their slings, that it is incredible to report, in such fort that no man could fland upon the Hatches, till fuch time as I commanded for to lose failes 60 and bonnets two mens height, to fhield vs from the force of the stones, and also did hide vs from their fight; fo that we did ply our Muskets and other Peeces fuch as wee had at them : but their subtilitie was such, that as soone as they did see fire given to the Peeces, they would suddenly

frones agained discharge, which indeed they did, but whether they did hurt or kill any of them or not, I cannot

ducke downe behind the Gliffes, and when they were discharged; then fling their flores hercely at ye againe. Thus listing continued there till foure a clocke, they departed away. The ameteenth day in the morning, about foure a checke it beeing calme; I departed from this Roadified, fo caming our men to row along it the shoure, till the tide of the ebbe weighting it

which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by West, we turning downe till about two a clocke, when the tide of floud being come : when I came to att Anchor hast excellent Hauen, on the South fide of Country hans Mount, Which for the goodnesse thereof I ha med Denmarkes Hanen. The twentieth day , in the morning the weather being very same with a field sire to fwind, I looked and curied to row forth of the forested Hatboar, and comming forth between

the llands and the maine, the people being is it formed looking for we third wi miking a hithe libral amonthe mainst, the people being as it issued tooking for vy spried vy limiting a hij. The people is a down notify at which time at an inflant ower gethered topedwis blood relearned three Bard wife ones against men rowing to vs. I feeting chem, though sighed to precede the worth pedraft we will led bond in the property of the people is the people is the people is the people in the content to be britter with their for to inflant people is an an inflant people is the people in the people in the people is the people in the people is the people in the people in the people is the people in the people in the people in the people is the people in t gue to anchor among it loss out from the Bands : but I presenting their deuter, made certaine Skonces with our failes, to defend virtom their Scones, Arrowes and Darts. They feeling this, with cer-20 taine of them from vs sowing to certaine llands, to which they did thinke wee would come: The fabilities tamen on the final state of the same and Basers above vs. who rowed stongth the finale of an ofthe Samesa bour with vs. making figure of six addition to the same of the same certains thele and trifles snoothe Boat, making fignes and tokens to fetch them, the which my Boy called William Huntries did. He being in the Boat, they preferrely that him through both the buttockes with a Dare at which time they rowed from vs, they multering upon the Hands to the number of these hundred perform, keeping themselnes farresmough from our dinger. A bout fixe a clocker this Eneming it began to have strain guly Enterty; we getting of the See Reco

A Topographical Description of the Land of this all and have

p, wheeler . I. freded that to Frift . . . there co

all this night North and by East along it the band.

Ow having proceeded for the discource of the Coast and Harboom to farre, and lo long time as the time limited to me, therefore I thinke it committees, so make a brette descrip-

I wine as the time limited to me, therefore I thinke it conditions, so makes benth calcular, to the dark according suby my librer represented I tough dis simus to be.

The Land of Grownland is any by my librer represented I tough dis simus to be.

The Land of Grownland is a very beigh, riegised and mountainous Country, being all along it be.

Coult broken, I lands, making very goodly Sounds and Harbons, busing all on the Land very no of the land of the land very not of the land of

from the field of the first three first and the first three first beents, which we do in propose to the control of th great aconsance. As concerning the County is storing to its very good and raise Labor, fadingly of the fasted, very faire fined dailing of the faire for being fined the glass of the faire, found truey flaging on continuous transfers, from the fair fair faired in the faire for the faired of the f

one place, and having flayed in triat piece a certagine tune, in guarant and a bagagage to apport they. They are men of a restorable flatting from browns of colour, very like to the people of the part and the people of the part and they are an extensible flatting from browns of colour, very like to the people of the part and the people of the part and they are the people of the

inntia i jir

They eartheir meat most part O: their apparell. Of their wespons.

perhoyled eather with blend, Oyle, or a little water, which they doe drinke. They apparell themselves in the skinnes of inch beafts as they kill, but especially with Seales skins and lowle skins, dreffing the skins very for and fmooth, with the haire and feathers on, wearing in Winter the haut and teacher fides inwards, and in Summer outwards. Their Weapons are Slings, Darts Arrowes, haning their Bowes fast tyed together with finewes; their Arrowes have but two feathers, the head of the same being for the most part of bone, made in manner and forme of a Harring Iron. As concerning their Darrs, they are of fundry forts and fashions. What knowledge they have of God I cannot certainly fay, but I suppose them to bee Idolaters, worhipping the Summer. The Country (Sast safetaid) fetterthe to be very fertile, yet could per-ceine of the no wood to grow thereon, 'Wee met all alongit thus Coath much Duffe-wood, but whence is commeth I know not. For coasting all this Coast along it from the latitude of 66.de-Drift-Woods I grees and an halfe, vntill the latitude of 60 degrees, Lfound many goodly Sounds; Bayes, and Rivers : guing names unto divers of them, and purposing to proceed further, the folke in the Pinnaffe with me did earnefily intreate me to returne to the ship againe, alleaging this, that if Figure 15 years in the cattering means agreed in the flap would mutine fand to terme home be-we campled in contenient time, the people in the flap would mutine fand to terme home fore we game: the which indeed had fallen forth, if the Captaine as an home! Gentleman had not by Jeuere meanes withfrood theirattempts, who, would needes contrarie to their promites haue beene gone home within eight dayes after my departure from them. But the Captaine respecting his promise to mee, would by no meanes consent, but withstood them both by faire meanes, and other wayes. So that vpon the feuenth day of July, I returned again into the Kings 20 Foord, which they in cheship had found so be a Bay and comming so the place where wee had left the first hoping to have found them there, I faw upon a certaine point a Warlocke of Hones, whereby I did perceme that they were gone downe the Ford. So the tide of ebbe being come, it being come we rowed downe the Foord, finding in the mouth of the fame amongst the Hands,

July 1605.

Froft Iland.

Our meeting againe with the ship. people takena

The tenth day of July the wind being at North North-west, I beeing in a certaine Sound aingong true lands, inching high water I weighed, flood Welf forth of the Found going to Set on the adult lands, inching high water I weighed, flood welf forth of the Found going to Set on the adult, lands between a land high lands which lland at our first comming, we called right fluid, after the name of the hip; we triped on the South fides certaine Warlockes level, whereupon I dispected that the Fraft might be there, commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the commanded the Cummer to floor off 130 per the cummer the cummer to floor off 130 per the cummer the cummer the cummer the cummer the cummer thave the cummer the cummer the cummer the cummer the cummer the cu Peece of Ordnance, they prefently answered va againe with two other. We seeing the smooth (but heard no repore) bore in to them, comming to ap. Anchor in a yery good Sound by them, and found them all in health 'the Captaine being very glad of our comming, for smuch ashee had very much trouble with the company for the caute aforefaid. Alfo in the time of our abfence the people did very much villanie to them in the ship, so that the Captaine tooke three of them; other of them allo he flew, but the three which he tooks he veed with all kindoule, gi-uing them Mandillions and Breeches of very good clock, allo Hole, Shore and Shitts off his own backe. This afternoone, I with my Boy came againe about the thip, taking in this Euening all our prouition of water.

all our probation of water.

The element day, the wind being at North North-zil, we fet faile for the of the Saund which 40 we named First Saund, but before our comming forth of the lame our Captaine commanded a young main whose name was 10 to the Saund out of the Saund which 40 young main whose name was 10 to the Training and 10 to the Saund of the Saun course South South-west till fixe aclocke when wee were among it much Drift Ice, being to leeward two points vpon our lee-bow, fothat I was forft to lie off Well North-west till we were 50 cleere of the same, at which time I directed my course South-west and by South, wee Lyling so

many good Sounds and Harbours.

all the night following.

The twelfth day, the wind at North North-east, were went away South-west and by South I ne twetten day, the wind at North North-eat, wee went away south-weit and by some till ten a clock, when we were amonged more Drift kie, wee buying again to lie We feld North-weit, to get cleere of the fame, which we ill a bout nione, we having this day and the Eurning before a mightie hollow Sea, which I thought to be a correct, the which letter thorow Prime, ron feiting, to Dank to the Southwards, as by experience I proud; first making obfiguration this day at notine, the southwards of 66. Address of the southwards were so that the southwards of the southwards we come to define of 66. degrees 10. in mores, launing made by account south and by Well way about ten leagues. This afternoon I directed my court south south with the wind as before, we frected full South and by Well, being a noone in

the latitude of 60. degree 17, minutes, going at the lame time away South and by East. This foreist current I did find to let along if the Coaft of Governed South and by East. The fourteenth day, close weather, being an easie gale we fitering South-east and by East. The hiterenth day,

fill close weather til noone, we steering as before, being in the latitude of 59. degrees. This day at noone I went away East South-east; this afternoone it was halle and still weather, when we had fight of some Drift Ice. The 16. day, close weather with the wind at North-west and by West, Drift Ice our course East South-east til about ten aclock, when we met with a mightie bank of Re to wind- A mighty bank our court e art Sourt-ear chaoous cut account on the whole what a might beauth of sec to wind a might base ward of vs, being by supposition feven or eight leagues long, were flering South South-eaft to of fice. South South-eaft to a first cleer of the fame. We met all along fit his loes might is full of Whales. Moreover, we A great cut effect with a great cutrent, which as night as we could suppose, feet West North-west over for A-Whales. merica. This day at noone, the weather being very thicke, I could have no observation, this Eucning by reason of the Ice, wee were forced to Iye South and by West, and South South-

To west, to get cleere of the same, amongst which we came by divers hoge Ilands of Ice. The feuenteenth day, being cleere of the Ice, about foure in the morning, I directed my A great cucourfe South-east by South till noone, at which time I went away East and by South, the weather being very hayse and thicke: about midnight it fell calme, the wind comming vp Easterly. The eighteenth day, the wind still Easterly, welving East South-east, away vinder a couple of courses larboord tackt. This day in the forenoone, we faw certayne llands of Ice. The nine-

teenth day, the wind full Eafterly with the weather very hafie.

The first day of August also is was very thicke weather, with a faire gale at South-west and by West. This forencome wee met with a scull of Herrings, fo that I knew wee were not farre from the Iles of Orkney, to having a thrinke at noone, I found ve in the latitude of 58, degrees 40 40. minutes, at which time I founded with the deepest Lead, finding 42. fathomes redde sandie ground, with some blacke dents. This Euening betweene fine and sixe a clocke wee founded againe, when we had no more but twentie fathomes dent ground, whereby I knew that we were faire by the shoare, when some of our men looking forth presently, espied one of the Ilands of Wefell with Orkeney, it being very thicke, wee cast about , and stood with a small sayle to Seaboord againe. Orkeney. welving West North-west off all this night.

The tenth day, about five in the moning, we came thwart of the Caffle of Elfonore, where we discharged certaine of our Ordnance, and comming to an Anchor in the Road, the Capetain with my false went assumed as he aring of his Rajesties being at Copumer-Hauer, were presently went about against, and set sayle comming thirther about two a clocke. The Pinnasse also 30 which he had loft at Sea, in which my Countreyman Ishn Knight was Commander, came also the same night about foure a clocke, both they and we being all in good health, praifed bee Almightie God. Amen.

CHAP. XV.

The fecond Voyage of Mafter I AMES HALL, forth of Denmarke into Groenland, in the yeere 1 606. contracted.



E departed from Copeman-Hanen, the fenen and twentieth of May, in the yeere of our Redemption 1606, with foure ships and a Pinnafe. The Frost beeing Admirall, wherein went for principall Captaine of the Fleet Captaine Godske Line Godske Lindens, deno a Danifb Gentleman with my felte, being under God Pilot Maior of the Fleet. In the Lyon which was Vice-Admirall, went for Captaine and Comman-

mander, Captaine Iohn Cunningham a Scottill Gentleman, who was with me the yeere before. Captaine Can-In the Tewers went Hans Brown, a Gentleman of Normay. In the final thin called The Gilleflowre, ningh went one Caftine Ricker fon a Dane. In the Pinnaffe called the Car , went one flipper of Andre Ham Blowne a 50 Noll, of Bergen in Normey. So by the prouidence of God, were weighed and fee faile about fixe Normey. a clocke in the Euening, with a faire gale at South South-west, comming to an Anchor in Elfo- Richarlena moure Road to take in our water.

The nine and twentieth in the morning, we shot off a Peece of Ordnance, for all the Cap- Andres Not of taines and Commanders to come aboord of vs, who being come, our Captaine commanded the Bergen. Kings Orders to bee read, which done, they returned aboord, at which time wee weighed with a faire gale at East North-east, standing away North and by West till I had brought the Cole North-east and by East off, when I steered away North North-west, and North-west and by North. This Euening about five a clocke I fet the Annold it bearing West halfe Northerly, three leagues and an halfe. All this Edening wee stood away North-west and by North.

The thirtieth day, the wind at East South-east, wee steering as before, this morning about fixe 60 a clocke, the Lefeld bore West and by North of vs sixe leagues off. At fine this Evening, the Seaw bearing West South-west fine leagues , I directed my course West North-west, with the wind at North-east and by East,

The one and thirtieth in the morning, very halie weather with a stiffe galeat East North-

morning, haung a fresh gale at East North-east. About eleuen at noone, I fet the Nafe of Nermay, it bearing North North-well fours Jeagues off. The fourth day in the morning about two a clock, we were raire by the high Land of the Teddee, I caufing to cast about stood to the Southwards, Well and by South and fometimes Wells. This day at noone, I found my felfe in the late. tude of 57 degrees 45. minutes , the Nate of Normay bearing East North-east two and twente leagues off. This day at noone also I cathabout and stood to the Northwards, lying North with 10 the stemme, having the winde at North North-west. This afternoone died one of our Grein-One of our landers called Oxo. All time quening, and the night following, the windens before, we lying al-

io North with little winde. The fift and fixt moftwhat

The fewenth day, the winde at South-weft and by South and South South weft , we fleering West and West and by North. This day at noone we were in the latitude of 92. degrees 40. minutes. The tenth day about foure in the morning, it began to blow a fresh gale at Kast and by South, at which time we flood along it the Land to the Southward, till I had brought the South Head of Shotland, called Swinborne Head, North-west and by North about three leagues off: and Faire He next hand South-west and by South eight leagues off, at which time I directed my course away West with a fresh gale at East South-east about halfe an houre to three. I fet the 20 South head of Shotland it bearing North-east eight leagues off, Faire Hetiext hand South-east feuen leagues off, foule next hand North foure leagues, wee still steering away West with a fresh gale at East South-east. All this afternoons and the night following it was very thicke and ravnie weather, the winde continuing as before. This night at midnight dyed the Groenlander which we had aboord vs, named Omeg.

der dyed.

Shor'and.

The fourteenth day, the winde as the night before a faire gale, we steering as we did before, with hayfie weather haning a fhrinke, at noone I found ws in the latitude of 58. degrees 40. minutes, having made a West and by South way Southerly two and thirtie leagues, differing to the Westward from the Meridian of the Nase 19. degrees 45, minutes. This atternoone we had a faire gale at South-east with thicke weather, we steering away West.

The fifteenth day, the winde as before, we steering away West, being by my imagination in the latitude of 58. degrees 40. minutes. The three and twentieth day, the winde at the Northeast a faire gale, we steering betweene the West North-west, and the West and by North, being at noone in the latitude of 56. degrees 10. minutes, having by reason of a Northerly current contrarie to my expectation, made a West way Southerly two and twentie leagues. The Compasse also as I doe suppose, being varied more then a Point to the westwards.

The first of July wee saw Land being eight leagues off, with a great banke of ice lying off South-west, wee setting our tacks abourd haid befreat and by South and East South-east, to double the fame, about two a clocke having doubled the fame, were went away West and by South all this evening and night following. This Land I did suppose to be Buffe Iland; it lying 40 more to the Westwards then it is placed in the Marine Charts.

The second day thicke weather with the winde at North-West, we steering West and by North. This afternoone we were in a great Currenz fetting South South-west. The which I did suppose to set betweene Buffe Hand and Freseland over wath America; wee steering West North-west with a faire gale at North. This night about nine a clocke, the Pinnasse came soule came foule of of the Vice-admirall, where with her anchor thee tore out about a foot of a planke a little about water, and broke downe the beakes head.

the Lion. Variation ob.

The fixth making observation, I found vs in the latitude of 58. degrees 50. minutes, contrarie to my expectation, whereby I did fee the Southerly Current to bee the principall cause. The feuenth day, the winde at North and by East, we lying West North-west, being at noone in the latitude of 59 degrees 40. minutes, our way North-west two and twentie leagues. This ene-50 ning I found the North Point of the Compaffe to be varied 12. degrees 5. minutes, to the Wellward of the true North.

The eight day, the winde came vp more Southerly betweene the South-west, and the Southwest and by West with an easie gale, we steering away North-west and by West; being at noone in the latitude of 50. degrees 30. minutes, having by reaton of the Current and Variation made a Weil way Southerly about ten leagues.

A current fetting South-Sight of Ame-

The ninth day clote weather, it being calme all the forenoone, wee perceining by our ships which lay becalmed, a violent Current tetting South-west. This day at noone, we were in the latitude of 59, degrees 40, minutes. The tenth about foure in the morning, the winde came up to 60 the North North-weit. I cathing about flood to the Weitwards, lying Weit with the itemme, being in the latitude of 60, degrees 16, minutes. We saw the coast of America about nine leagues off, at which time I made obleruation of the variation, and found the Needle varie 24. degrees go es and 300 to the Westwards of the true North.

CHAP. 15. Obsernations of Currents and Variations in Groen poyage.

The Hillrops were covered with flow and the house to the Northwards full with Ice. but to the Southwards it feemed cleere; Here I found a great Current to fet West into the shoare. A Current which about midnight did bring vs to one incumbred with very many llands of Ice, having much to die toget cleere off the lame withour danger : but by Gods helpe it being faire weather with a freshigale at South-west, wenger cleere off the same, standing East South-east and South eait anuby Eaft.

The four cetath in the morning being cleere of the Ice. I went away East North-east and North-east and by East till eight a clocke, when I directed my course North-east and by North , being an noone in the latitude of 19 degrees, the Cape or Head land which wee faw that night bearing West South with increene leagues off. All this afternoone and night following it was tou chemost pare will weather : chis evening I found the variation 23, degrees 55, Variation the

The inteendheaire weather with a fresh gale at East South-east, our course as before, being in the latitude of 60, degree, 201 minutes, the ships way North and by East northerly twentic leagues. This afternoon eaudithe night rollowing the wind as before, we fleering fall. Northeaft and by North.

The eighteenstrallo thicke steather, being forcel to stand away North North-west to double a great hanke with great Mountaines of Iceanmost incredible to be reported, yet by the helpe of God wee ralleuthe fame, Jayling allthis day by great and huge mountainous Ilands of Ice,

20 With the whate at South-weef and by South; being at noone in the latitude of 63. degrees 45. minutes. Wee and fee our Isloes befet round about with mightie bankes of Ice, being forced to Compaffed make-more taile; and to lye to and againe all this night to keepe vs cleere of great and small about with see. Hands of ive, where many times we were in fuch danger, that we did looke for no other thing then present dwath, if God mad not beenemercifull vnto ws and fent vacleere weather, where by his artiftance we kept our felues very hardly and with great difficultie cleere of the Ice. The nineteenth day in the morning cleere weather with a fresh gale at South-weft, wee

plying amongst the Ice to fee if wee could get a gut to get cleere of the same, at which time wee law the Land of America about the latitude of 64, degrees, it lying next hand South and Land of America North, being high ragged Land couered with fnow, the shoare being all befet with Ice. So vice. are lying off and on a nongit me Ice in great pegal till about noone, when God of his goodnesse

fent vs to elpie a little gut where wee went through, and flood South South-east away, comming fill by many Ilanis of fee. Heere I did finde both by my course and reckoning ( the variation also of the Compasse respected ) that wee were carried with a mightie Current to the Amighie cur-Westwards, as both now and atterwards wee did probably prooue and see the same. For I set rent setting to ting my course from the coast of America in the latitude of 58. degrees and a halfe for the coast the westward, of Groenland North North-east with a compaffe, whose wyers were placed more then two third parts of a Point to the Eastwards of the North, the variation being 23. degrees: 30. minutes Northwesting and 24. degrees, as by observation I found betweene the latitude of 58. Note, and a halft and 54 degrees, yet I did finde my felfe contrarie either to mine owne, or to any of 40 their expectations which was in the Fleet with mee, carried almost foure Points with the Cur-

rent to the wellwards over our indgements. The twentieth, wee still layled to the Eastwards by many great Bankes and Hands of Ice, Here I did give The twentieth, wee still tayled to the Eastwards by many great saints and times direction to being still compassed in , wee being forced to stand to the Southwards to get cleere, where the other steers being sometimes becalmed, wee did plainly see and perceive our selves carried into the Ice to manto direct the westward very violently. This Current setteth West North-west. The twentieth in the their course

evening I found the Compasse varied 23. degrees. The one and twentieth day in the morning faire weather, wee efpyed a gut through the Variation obkee, it feeming cleere to the fouthwards of the fame, where bearing into the fame about noone, wee were cleere of all the Ice by the mercifull prouidence of God. Here I observed the latitude, it being 63. degrees 33. minutes. Now having the one and twentieth day at afternoone

caused the Admirall to call the other Captaines and Steermen aboord, with whom wee might conferre, and having shewed briefly my reckoning with the other events, which contrarie to my expectation had happened, the cause whereof at that instant they did plainly see and perceiue: They confessing, the Current as they did now plainly see, to bee the cause of the same. The Current, So having done; I gaue to the other Steermen directions, that being cleere of the Ice they should goe betweene the East and the East and by North over for the coatt of Greenland and not to the Northwards of the East and by North, because of the former events. And now at this instant, by Godshelpe, being cleere I called to them, giving the fame directions. This afternoone and the night following it was calme. This evening I found the Compaffe varied 23. degrees 25. Variation ob-

The two and twentieth day at noone I found vs.in the latitude of 63. degrees so. minutes. The three and twentieth faire weather, the ayre very cold, as with vs in the moneth of Iamuarie, the winde variable betweene the East North-east, and the South-east and by East, being at noone in the latitude of 63, degrees, having made a South-east and by South way

eleuen leagues. This day at noone I cast about to the Westwards, the other ships doing the like; lying North-east and by North with the stemme, finding this evening the Needle varied to the Variation ob-Weltwards 23. degrees 30. minutes.

The foure and twentieth, the winde variable betweene the South-east and the Southeaft and by South with raine and fogge. This day about eleuen a clocke wee did fee much lee to Iceward, wherefore I cast about to the Southwards, the winde comming to the East Northeaft, were lying South-eaft with the flemme, supposing the stip to have made a North and by West way hale Northerly two and twentie leagues. This aftermoone, by reason of the forget we lost fight of the Lise and the Gilliftowre, wee looking earnefily forth for them, and shooting both we and the Uris divers pieces of Ordnance, but wee could neither fee nor heave them . as 10. which time the winde came up Southerly, we standing away our course betweene ahe East and East and by North.

The fine and twentieth , wee had light of Greenland , being about ten leagues to the Southward of Queene Ames Cape. Wee flanding away Eaft South-east in with the Land with the winde at South. All this night it did blow very much, wee thering North by West and North North-west. The seven and twentieth day in the morning was reasonable cleere weather with a fresh sale

at South South-west. This morning betweene foure and fue of the clocke, I espyed Queene Annes Cape to beare East by South next hand of mee, and King Christians Foord South Southeaft of me , being thwart of Romels Foord , Queene Sophian Cape bearing North halfe westerly , 20 about fine leagues off. Therefore I thought it concenience to put into Campanghama: Foord where the filter was, both in regard that I had fwome to his Maieflie as concerning the fame; and also because were experificly commanded to being home of the same. So having a saire gale at West South-west, were came into the ascressid Biner, anchoring in a very good Sound, hard by the Vrs in fixteene fathoms , at the mouth of Camminghame Foord , about five of the clocke. There came pretently foure of the Countrie people vato vs after their old accustomed manner. This evening about time of the clocke the Vriss anchored by vs. This night the Admirall, my felfe, and Captaine Browne went on Land to fee the Myne of files : where it was decreed, that we should take in as much thereof as we could.

On Sunday the third of August, the Sauages feeing our curtefie toward them , bartered Seales 30

Barter for and Whales

The filmer

The place of

skinnes and Whales finnes with vo : which being done, wee went to our Boat, and rowing away, three of them taking their Boats, rowed with vs vp the Foord, calling to other of the people, telling them and making figures to ve , of our dealing towards them. Then they also came to we and bartered with we for old Iron and Knines, for Seales skinnes and coates made of Sealer skinnes, and Whales finnes, and rowed fill all with vs. In the end, having sowed fine or fixe leagues up the Foord, and feeing it to bee but a Bay, were returned alongst many greene and pleasant llands, where wee found good anchoring: the people still followed vs to the number of fine and twentie persons till about fixe of the clocke; when it fell thicks with fome raine, and the winde being Southerly, wer rowed in among the Sounds, at which time they went from vs : wee rowing our Boat to one of the Bands went to supper. And having 40 Another foord, supped, wee rowed some three leagues up an other Foord, where we found very shallow water. in which place we stayed with our Boat all that night.

The fourth day in the morning about three of the clocke, wee returned to our thio assine with a gale of winde Southerly, being fomewhat thicke and raynie weather, fayling by the Seeine Land among the Hands, till we came three leagues to the Northwards of Queene Sophia Cape, when going without the llands, wee met with a very high Sea, fo that wee had much to doe, but by the prouidence of Almightie God , the Boat was preferred from being (wallowed vp of the Sea. In the end, wee got againe among the Ilands, and to about noone wee came to our thins. The fift day, fome of our men went on Land among the Mountaines, where they did

The fixt day, I casting about, stood into the shoare South-east, till wee had brought Ramels Foord Eaft and by North off vs , bearing roome for the fame Foord. There goeth a very hollow Sea betweene the Hands of the Kings Foord and Ramels Foord. The winde being somewhat still, wee towed on head with our Boats till wee came thwart of a Bay, in which I was in the Vrius Boat, which I named Fos Bay, after the name of Philip de Fos , Pilot of the Urine But the Admirals wilfulnesse was such, that I could by no meanes counsaile him therein though night were at hand, but hee would goe up the Foord, till wee came on the starboard side of the Foord to fixe and twentie fathomes fandie ground. The Frm let fall anchor by vs , but the winde comming off the Land (our Captaine and Companie being to obflinate and willfull, that I could by no meanes get them to worke after my will ) the thip draue into the mid- 60 in the middest foord, where wee could have no ground at an hundred fathoms, till the Tyde of flood came, when the flood fet the ship to the shoare : but I laying out a Cage-anchor got the ship off; and fetting our forefaile, flood for another roade up the River.

The eight day about fourein the morning, wee came to an anchor in eventie fathomes fandie

ve le flowerh in this River South-east and North-weits sand at Randoth in the latitude of 65. For River in logrees and 25, minutes. \ \250 bin \ mass 1 and 1 and \ minutes \ \ Affine \ Affine \ Mass 2 and \ Mass 3 an Boates up the River, where they did come to lee they winter house it which were builded teachings to with Whales bones, the balkes being of Whales ribber, and the tops were course neith the River. easth, and they had certaine Variet or Sellers vender the sarth fourt fquare, about two yards

deepe in the ground. Their houses were in pumber about fome fortie. They found also certaine Graves made up of fremes over the dead bodies of their people, the cartalles being wrap-

pp ped in Seales skins, and the flores laid in manner of a Coffe user Meteorization. It is a state of the manner of a Coffe user Meteorization and the flore we first amanon dassel, which laid Experience Coffered by The days in the first amanon dassel, which laid Experience Coffered by Coffered to Manner of the Meteories and Coffered by Coffered to Coff noons our men same shootd againe; and after Dimer formof the geople came was a wayof, whom Fine of the wee caught the with their Boars and flowed them in our flaint, to bring chaption Deput he pedale to enforme our selves better by their meanes of the state of their Countrie of Greineland Special agains. to enforme our interspectage charged Security and my that agreement the Land they have a great freehald calking, which is satisful upon ineas foodlasses of the conjugation of the conjugation of the conjugation is the conjugation of th came forth of Rombes Foord, but being come forth to Sea among it the lands, she woode came m up to the South-weft and by South, the Set going roundings high, we lying. Weft and Weft and by Northice Sea, doubling certaine Hande and Rocke. Where the See going to wonderfull, high had fee we woon the Rocks . where we had all dyed, shed out his mersyes that instant, when

wee faw nothing before puneyes but present death, had not feat vs a great gale of winde at South South-west, whereby wee lay West North-west away with a flavore shear; wee doubling of the llands and Rooks, mere formed to good etwerne containe little llands, which lye off Querne Sophiat Capafoured gues into the fire. The which illands I named the years before, Raigher thands, after thousane of labs Reigher. So having special the callands not without great Knight Hands, danger, were found he weene them many thinds Rookal and being clarge in the Sea. The thirteenth at noone, we were in the latitudept 66 degrees so minutes, heing off Cape Selbe Well

go and by North-half-investerile shoots function lengths. A more of the fact, fleering South and by The saighteenth shout-fours in this morning, the grackets off the fact, fleering South and by Week away, it being you shicknessed by the contact and half-sheet shout-four by the fact of the fact law the shoare rising like Hands, being very shigh and Atorrhing South and by East, and North and by West about source and awentic leagues a the sheare being befor all full with Let to stat do continue in that place it is impossible for any thip to come into the shore. Althout the Southender of of orbital thefe two Capes, lay fuch a great banke of like flutching into the Sean significance were forced to South and by Weft about eight lea ue . Thefe strat set seldenche or draod yelden by West

All this afremoone a wer were almost sample with Louis we bearing reading fance the winde to in in the S comming up to the East South salt, we should be South for the were faced to look of one 49 Hand, and so beare roome for another till about foure and looke, when by Gods helpedweet par

cleere off the fame, the winde comming up to the South-east and by South , whe lay South theat The two mites, weeded see the frees, had be two seed. Northein sit the Bookspoor of the Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops and the free Anapel troops are the free Anapel troops clocke we faw a faile West and by South offer, we flanding on him, for it was our Vice ador Wemer against mall the Low, who had beene greatly troubled with the Low, who being glad to meete que and with the Lion.

The eight and twentieth about four in shomorning sothe floring ceased s the winte Tomming up to the Walt South-west. About spice a clocke weeter our failes standing South-east away. But bing wader falls, me fipped great bankes and Hands of her to saward of we Alaba afford the So. East and by South, which les tedid indge so broadf Cape Deficience about sight leagues of matthe

The nine and twentieth about fixe in the morning, the winde came up to the North-cast and by North, we making faile went South South-east away till noone with a stiffe gale, wee feeing in the morning pieces of drift-lee so, wiedward of vs. having at noone hibrarke of the fame I found vs in the latitude of so degrees 46, minutes, having from moone to noone made a Southeast and by South way eight leagues.

The one and thirtieth, the winde continuing, wee holding Oil out course with the winde Bill at North North-west ; with faire and electe weathenin blowing very much i forthat wee shood away under a couple of couries low fer, the Sea very much grownel, being in the literarde 60 of 59. degrees to minutes, buting made an East South east way forme what Easterly four and

thirtie leagues. This afternoone after my observation, wellaw some Lands of the Wellacome drift Ice, I fomothing maruelling of the same, knowing both by my account aircles y steeds of fernation, that we were that contage from my part of Grenland, that was beforbed inches his-

ground, having very faire floatding within ye. About moone the Urm came and anchored by

rine Chart. For the fouthermost part described therein is not in the latitude of 60. degrees, and we being now in the latitude of ,9 degrees ten minutes , Cape Defolation bearing West Northwe now flow in the statement of youngers can immure; Super stating was the mark when we will half no Northerly about fixine from lengues, and Cape (Infilian which was then ext known part of Orandad North-well and by Well welferly eight and thirty lengues, for holding our course fast Nouth-call away, about fourse clock we half eight of Land, being very high Land, it lying along th Eaft South-eaft about fixteene leagues othe westermost part seemed either to fall away East North-east, and the fouthermost point bearing East northerly, fell away East and by North. This Land is very high, having the Hills coursed with flow, the sheare being very thicke with Ice : this place because I knew not whether it was of the Mayne or an Hand I mad

med Froft Hand, after the name of the thip.

The first of September, at noone, I made observation, and found we in the latitude of 58. degrees, having made a South-east and by South way foutherly fixe and ewentie leagues. This day at noone I direfted my counte Battanid by South, This afternoone about fixe a crock it fell calme! and fo continued all the night following. This enthing I found the variation to degrees so mile mutes Northwesting

nutes Northwesting. The fourth day the winde at Etilizand by South; welying South and by East, thaing a farming

of the finne about noone, I did suppose vs in the latitude of 57 degrees 20. minutes, having made a South-east and by South will you thenly about ten leagues; all this day and the night fol-The eight day faire weather, the winde as before, at being almost calme, wee going away as an

before, being at moone in the latitude of 58. degrees 36. minutes, haning made an East Northieast way northerly twentie leagues 1 by teason of the great southerly Sea. All this afternoone and the night following it was for the most part calme. This evening I found the Compasse val ried about two degrees 45. minutes northwesting.

The ninth day also faire weather, the winde foutherly a frefin gale, our course still East being at noone in the latitude of 48 degrees 40 minutes, our way East and by North caffeely twelue leagues. This afternoone the winde came up to the South or South and by Eaft with raine. This night about midnight thicks weather with raine, the winde comming to the Southeast, we lying East North-east and North-east and by East with the stemme.

The tenth day about two in the morning, the winde came up to the South South-weft, wee so fleering our course East, being at noone in the latitude of 19. degrees 10. minutes; having made an Eaft and by North way taftedy fourt and fortis leagues, wer having a fren gale wefterly.

This day wee faw one of the Fowlis the which are on the Hand of Bas in Sections, called Bas

A Bat Goofe:

Geefa This suching I found the variation's degree 4, minutes northeafung.

The eighteenth, this forenoons about nine a clocke wee effored land, rifing forewhat rag. ged , the Eastermost point of the fame beating South-east and by South , and the Wettermost per South and by West about eight leagues. These llands by my-account and observation; it bounds on the last of the south of the last of the south of the last of

end, it being about five a clocke, Ball South-east of the three leagues off. This night about ten 40 a clocke it fell calme.

lands of Ferre. 10 2 od 10

Tures.

The twentieth , wee did fee the streams had fet vs to the Northwards. This streams fetteth vader the Hands of Farre next hand Baft and Weft. So cathing about wee flood to the weft-wards, fring Weft South-weft and fornetimes Weft and by South, and fomerimes South-weft, it being very raynic weather, about midnight it fell calme and 30 continued all night voto the

The first of October in the asternoone about fourte of the clocke, we had sight of The Holmes. The fecond day, wee fleered away South-east and by South and South-cast for The Col. And about eight of the clocke this night wee came into Two. where wee rode all the day following. The third day at night the winde came to the North-east; so wee weighed and came into Elfener Road. The fourth day, by the proudence of God, we arrived in our defined Port of

The severall burthens and numbers of men employed in the shipsof the Fleet aforesaid, were as followeth.

THO Trust being Admirall, was of fixtie tunnes, had eight and fortie men. The Lion Vice-admirall, was of feuentie tunnes, had eight and fortie men? The Vrm or Eagle Reare-admirall, of one hundred comnes, had fiftie men. The Gillifloure was of fortie tunnes, had fixteene men. The Pinnaffe called the Cat, was of twentie tunnes , had twelve men. Brederanfies Foord 60 is most Northerly. Communghame Foord is next in fixtie feuen degrees and odde minutes. The Found wherein they law the Towns ten leagues up the fame, is two leagues to the South of Commingletter Foord. The Kings Foord is in fixtie fixe degrees and an halfe.

CHAP. 16. Pentle frith: Si Margarites Hope, in Orkney Their pourty.

William Huntris of Semborow in Torke-fhire, is Mafter Hall his man , and is allowed thirtie pound by the yeere of the King of Denmarke, for his skill in Nauigation.

I hamp alfo Matter Halls Voyage of the next yeers 1607, to Groenland from Denmarke, written, I mam my enterior of Land-fights curiously delineated by losias Hubert of Hall, but the Dane curious probaga that the far of the Discoury while the attributed to the English Polas) after the Land faluted mynimed, and in fine forced the ship to resurse for Illand. For which cause I have here omated the whole.

# San II as the con Chap. XVI. sensal con SA on B

The Voyage of Master I O HN K NIGHT, (which had beene as Groenland once before toos, Captaine of a Prinnesse of the king of Denmarke)
for the Discourt of the North-well Passage, begun the eighteenth of April 1606.



Set fayle from Granefend in a Barke of fortie tunnes, called the Hopewell , well April 18, 1606. victualled and manned at the coff of the Worshipfull Companies of Mescoute. and the East Indie Merchants, for the Discouerie of the North-west Passage the eighteenth of Aprill 1606, and arrived the fixe and twentieth of the fame moneth in the Ile of Orener, in a Sound called Pentlefrith. Heere wee were flayed Pentlefrith in with contrary winds at West and North-west, and with much storme and soule Origin.

. Tarks or or any support of

weather aboue a fortnight. In which means space, I entertained two men of this Countrey, which are both luftie fellowes at Sea and Land, and are well acquainted with all the Harbours of their North parts of Sculland. Their men brought vs into a very good Harbour, called Saint Sain Marga-their North parts of Sculland. Their men brought vs into a very good Harbour, called Saint Sain Marga-VAmagnite Harp, where we had the Sea open to vs for all winds that are good for vs to proceed miss Saund. 30 anour Voyage. In this Countrey we found little worthy of Relation. For it is poore, and hath no wood growing voon it. Their Corne is Barley and Oares, their fire is Turffe, their houses are low and unfeemely without, and as homely within.

are low and vnfeemely withour, and as homely writin.

Vpon Munday the twelfthor May, I fee flay from Saint Margarites Sound or Hope in Orkmy, at nine of the clocks in the morning, our courfe being Wellfani by South: and at eight of
my, at nine of the clocks in the morning, our courfe being Wellfani by South: and at eight of
the clock at night, the Hill called Moyes, did bear Welf Southerly election or vector leagues
and the Stack South and by East Easterly three leagues and an halfe, the winde beeing at East
and the Stack South and by East Easterly three leagues and an halfe, the

This day was for the most part calme, and sometimes wee had a fresh gale of winde : our course was West and by South, halte a point Southerly. This day I passed by two small Hands. Two small 40 The one of them is called, the Clete, and the other the Res. They are diffant foure leagues the one Hands. from the other. The course betweene them is South-west and North-east. The Southermost is called the Clete, and is the leffer of the twaine : it is diffant from the North-east part of Lewis, called the Bing-head, feuen leagues : and the course betwixt them is North-west and South-east. The Bing-head Alio this Bling-bead is distant from the Farro Head, of the Hieland of Scotland West and by the Northest North halfe a point Westerly, and is distant seuenteene leagues. Also the course betweene Bling- parto: Lenis. bead and the North- west part of Lewis, is West and by South halfe a point Westerly, and faire low Land without Wood. There is good riding all along the thoare, the winde beeing off the Land, and in some places are very good Harbours for all winds. From eight to twelve at night, we ran fixe leagues West South-west.

This morning we had a fresh gale of wind at East North-east ; our course was South-west and by West two houres fine leagues. From two to ten South-west, and by South 20. leagues. From ten to twelue West South-west fixe leagues. The latitude at noone was 58. degrees 27. minutes. Fifty eight de-

From Wednesday at noone till Thursday at noone, was for the most part raine and fogge, the grees 27.min. wind at North-east and by East : our course was West halfe a point Southerly : our latitude at noone being Thursday, 58. degrees 23. minutes. From Thursday at noone till Friday at noone, being the fixteenth, our way was West Southerly about twentie leagues : the latitude at noone was 18. degrees 19. minutes. This night the wind was fometimes variable betweene the South and by Well and South-east, with faire weather, the Magneticall Declination 18. degrees : the height of the Pole was 98, degrees 10, minutes. Also in the morning the Sunne beeing tenne Eighteene de-60 degrees about the Horizon, was diffant from the Eaft to the North-wards of the Eaft twen-

From Friday at noone vntill midnight was little wind Southerly, and fometimes calme, and from midnight till twelve at noone the next day a fliffe gale of wir dat East North-east. This four and twentie houres I judged our way to be made good West, something Southerly thirrie



leagues. The latitude at noone was 38, degrees 10. minutes. Also the summe did rise fiftie degrees to the Northward of the East.

From Saturday at noone being the fewenteenth, till Sunday at noone being the eighteenth, our course was West and by South a shifte gale of wind sistic leagues, being close weather, we made

From Sunday at moone till Munday at moone I fteered away West and West and by South, ha uing a ftorme at East and by North: our courfe was West and Southerly fiftie least From Munday at noone till midnight, our course was West and Southerly and from that

time till noone West and by North and West among. I judged wee sayled fortie leagues these 10 foure and twentie houres, being for the most part foggie. The latitude at moone was 57. degrees

From Tuesday at noone till noone on Wednesday, our course was West and by North fortie A current to the Narihward fine leagues, being foggie weather without observation. Here wee had a current, which I indoe fetteth to the Northwards.

From Wednesday at noone till Thursday at noone, being the two and twentieth, our course was West and by North fiftie leagues with much fogge and close weather; and much, winde at North-east and by East.

From Thursday at noone till midnight, our course was West and by North. Then the winde came to the North : wee tooke in our mayne course, and I spooned away with our fore-faile till Friday , the winde being at North North-east , I judged our way West South-west , the 10 twelue houres that I spooned about fifteene leagues, the other twelue houres West Northerly fine and twentie leagues. This three and twentieth day, wee faw many Gulles and much

Many Gulle: Rock-weed. A current to

From Friday at noone till Saturday at noone, I judged our way to bee made South-west and by West, but it proued West and by South, rather Westerly, twentieleagues by reason of a current, that I judge setteth to the North-eastward. The latitude at noone was 57. degrees 53. minutes. The variation of the Compaffe was about a point to the Westward. This forenoone and all night the wind was at Northa very hard gale; wee spooned with our fore-sayle. Also this forenoone, we law much Sea Tange and Rock-weed.

An Owle.

From Saturday at moone till Sunday at noone, our course was Southward about twente 30 leagues, the wind being Northelly. This day we saw much Rock-weed and Drift-wood. The latitude was fiftie feuen degrees. The variation was to the Westward thirteene degrees or thereabout. The funne being five degrees high in the morning, was twentie foure degrees to the Northward of the East.

From Sunday at noone till two of the clocke the next day in the morning, beeing Munday, our course was West North-west, we made our way West and by North twentie leagues, hauing a tresh gale at South-east and by East : it fell calme till foure of the clocker then it blew an ease gale at West South-west, wee stemming North-west, &c. betweene that and North Northeast the wind being variable. The wind freshed toward noone, This morning we saw an Owle,

The latitude at noone the eight and twentieth, was 57. degrees 57. minutes. The variation 40 of the Compafe was fourteene degrees and an halfe to the West. This day wee had blacke water, The variation and many ouer-falls, streame leeches, and fets of currents, as it seemed to the Northward, and 14 degrees and fome to the Westward.

an halfe to the The thirtieth, we found our latitude to be fiftie eight degrees. Heere it seemed that we were Fiftie eight de. in a tyde gate, which I judged to fet North and South, or that it was the Eddie of the currents, which we saw the other day. Also wee saw white Fowles, which cheeped like Spar-hawkes. grees of lati-Also we saw driving many dead Cowes. White fowles, Dead Cowes.

The one and thirtieth, the funne being fiftie degrees about the Horizon, I found it to bee twentie seuen degrees to the Eastward of the South : againe in the afternoone, the sunne beeing fiftie degrees high, it was distant from the South to the Westward fiftie one degrees : at noone 50 it was 55. degrees 6. minutes, the height of the Pole was 58. degrees 3. minutes. The variation of the Compasse was twentie foure degrees toward the North-west, Our way made these twentie foure houres was not aboue fixe leagues Weft, being little wind for the most part.

From Saturday at noone till two of the clocke it was calme: then it began to blow an easie gale at North. At night I observed the sunne setting, and found it to set twentie one degrees to the Westward of the North, the winde continuing variable betweene the North and the West North-west till noone, being the first of June. Then I found my selfe by observation to be in the latitude of 57. degrees 35. minutes. I judged our way from noone to noone West and by South or thereabout thirteene leagues.

From Sunday at noone till ten of the clocke the fame Euening, it was calme. Then it began 60 to blow a stiffe gale of wind at South South-east. Our course was West till noone, the next day being Munday, twentie three leagues. This day wee faw many blacke Fowles like Willockes flying in flockes together.

The fourth my latitude at noone, was 36. degrees 40. minutes. The latitude next day at

noone was faftie fixe degrees. The variation of the Compaffe by the Scale was twentie degrees, Latinde co. and by my osher Inflrument twentie foure degrees to the West. The sume was twentie two degrees. degrees and an halfe high, and to the North of the West that ie degrees by the Inflorment, and Variation 2 twentie fixe degrees by the Scale,

Our lasteude at noone she sherenth, was fiftie eight degrebs. And at night the funne did fet wird. fourteene degrees to the Weftward of the North, and did sife fiftie degrees to the Entward of Finy digit des

The chirocenta, the Ice feemed to be disperfed thinner with the wind, of lome other actident: then I fet fayle with our two courses, but was forced to take them in agains, and moored to another ther great Hand of Ice, about mide so the Weftward of the ories Here ferrett foriet mal oursus A fmall curto the South-berftward. For the great flakerof fee that webe fornewhat despidratero the South reproche ward, and the other finall Low bich was florie drain with the wind, which was variable betwine South-well. the North-weft and the North. Here we were in fight of Land, which bore Weft Southwood Sight of Land

from vs. lixwing in fonce particular llands. Our learneds at moons was vy. degrees 491 infinities. Her thanks.

From Friday at moons call eight of the chocke as night; ower learnings of moored call the degree. faid Ice : then it fell calme; and I knowed and sowed so the West ward with our Oares, hepine to get thorough, till twelve of the clocke, then the lorgery very thicks. I moored against till foure of the clocke the next morning. Then we sowed and fayle bwith an eafle gale of wind till eight of the clocke the next morning being Saturday. Then it began to blow a fresh gale Eatherly, and 20 we cunned the ship among the ace with our Oares till noone. Our latitude was fiftie eight de-

grees. From Saturday at noone till midnight wee guided our shippe to the Westward amone the Ice with our Oares, hoping to get though; but wee were fuddenly compiled about with many great liands of Ice, and continued so diffreded with a fore forme of wind at Southeasth, beauny great liands of Ice, and continued so diffreded with a fore forme of wind at Southeasth, beauny great liands of Ice, and continued so diffreded with a fore forme of wind at Southeasth, beauny great liands of Ice, and continued so diffreded with a fore forme of wind at Southeasth, beauty and the southeasth of Ice, and continued so diffreded with a fore forme of wind at Southeasth, beauty at the southeasth of Ice, and continued so diffreded with a fore forme of wind at Southeasth. ing foggie and thicke weather twe were fo bruifed betweene mightie great Hands of lee, that we were in danger enery minute to be crushed in pieces with force of the heaving and fetting of the faid Ice with the great Sea that the wind made, had not God of his mercie prounded for var for our owne endenours did little auxile to our helpe, though wee employed all our industries to the vitermost of our powres. The nineteenth, we described the Land of America, which rifeth like eight Hands athe Nor- The Land of

thermost part of it did beare North and by West about fifteene leagues from vs. I observed the America def-30 latitude, and found my leffe to be in 56, degrees and 48, minutes. The variation of the Compaffe cryed in 56, latitude, and found my leffe to be in 56, degrees 42, was twentie fine degrees to the Westward. All this Coaft the weeth like broken Land or Illands; minutes. and the tyde of floud commeth from the Northward.

Tuesday the foure and twentieth all the morning, there blew a frome Northerly, and such a sheweth like fuffe of the Sea, and fo much Ice came in, that our fafts brake that were faft on floare, and our broken lization Rudder was driven from our sterne with the force of mightie Hands of lee; to that we were forced to hale close into the bottome of the Coue to faue our clothes , furniture and victuals : wee did our best, but before we had done, our ship was halfe full of water : the night comming vpon vs being wearie, we tooke a little reft.

On Wednesday, we went hard to worke when the thip was on ground, to get the water out of her, and to ftop io many of her leakes as we could come by, and to faue fo much of our bread as we could; and some went to building our shallop. Also I caused our Boate to be lanched our the Hand; and fent my Mate Edward Gorrell, with three others, to feeke for a better place where Edward Gorrell to bring our ship on ground, if it were possible, to mend her againe. But they returned without the Masters any certaintie by reason of the abundance of Ice, which choked every place. They found wood Marc.

growing on the shoare. Thuriday being faire weather.] Here Mafter Iohn Knight ended writing in this Iomrnall. On this Thursday the fixe and twentieth of Inne in the morning, our Master caused some of our men to goe aboord our ship, to said what things they could. And hee and Edward Gorrell his M. Iohn Knight Mate, and his brother, and three more of our Company tooke the Boate, carrying with them with flux more foure Piltols, three Muskets, fine Swords, and two halfe Pikes for to goe oner to a great Hand, a great Hand, which was not about a mile from our ship, to looke if they could find any Harbour or any Coue, where he and to get our (hip into for to mend her. Also he carried an Equinoctial! Diall with him, and pa- three of his per to make a Draught of the Land. When they were paffed ouer to the other fide, our Mafter, his company feem

per to make a Draught of the Land. When they were paged ouer to the other inde, our matter, mis to have bin ins. Mate, and his brother, and one more went on shoare, leaving two of vs in the Boate with one recrepted by Musket, one Sword, and an halfe Pike to keepe it : which two flayed in the Boate from ten of she Sauages. the clocke in the morning, untill eleven of the clocke at night, but could heare no newes of them after their departure vp into the top of the Hill. Then did the Trumpettor found two or three Their Trumtimes, and the other did discharge his Musket two or three times, and so they came away to the Pettor. 60 other fide to the West of the Company, where the ship was : where they were watching for our comming; who seeing vs two comming and no more, they maruelled where the rest of the company were. When wee came on shoare, they enquired for our Master and the rest of our

company. But we could tell them no newes of them after their departure out of the Buat, but

that we did fee them goe vp to the top of the Iland. Which report did firike all our men into a

The variation of the Compalfe 24.degrees North-

great feare to thinke in what extremitie we were, because we did want our Matter and three of our best men, and our Ship lay funkey and we had nothing to trust to but our Shallojs, which was not at that time halfe finished. This night lying carshoare in our Tent; which was betweene two Rocks, we kept very good watch, for feare of any peoples fudden affaulting wives or if our not paffe is the Mafter and his company had travailed fo farre, that they could not come againe that night, and would shoote a Musket, that wee might beare them. But they came nor at alla-

The next day being Friday, and the feuen and twentieth of Iune, wee confulted to goe ouer fenen of va with our Boate; to try if we could fee or leanie any news of our Matter, or any of our 10 men; forwe were afraid that they were either furprifed by the Smages of the Countrie, or elfe denoured by the wilde Beafts. So we tooke with referen Munkets, and Swords, and Targets, and fuch prouision as we had in the Ship, and went downe to the Sea fide, but wee could not get on tuer for Ice: At length wereturned, with much adoe to get on shoare, land went to our Ship, to

fage what things we could all that day. !-

On Saturday, the eight and twentieth, we did likewise saue what things we could, and gatall our thingsout of our Ship, and made her cleane in hold, having faire weather, keping in God to faue her, and to mend all things, as well as we could; for the lay woon hard rocks: wherefore to save ner, and to make the could, for heating and bruifing of her hult. That night about nine of 20 the clocke, it began to raine very fore, and so continued all night; and about one of the clocke. at night, our Boate-Swaine and our Steward being at watch, and their watch almost out, the Steward went aboord the Ship to pumpe, leaving the Boate-Swame at watch fome Musket fhot The Sauages of length from our Tent; while he was in pumping, there came ouer the rocks a great fort of the Countrey people toward the place where the Boate-Swaine was: who when they faw him. they shot their arrowes at him, running toward him as fast as they could. Whereupon hee difclocke arnight, charged his Musket at them, and fled to our Tent as fait as hee could, thinking they had befet vs, they were so many of them in light. The Steward hearing his Musket goe off, came out of the Ship, and as he was comming, faw the Sauages running to our Shallop, and cryed out to vs that were afleepe in our Tent, to come to rescue the Boate-Swaine, and the Shallop. We made what hafte we could; when we came towards them, and faw fo many of them in our Shallop, we were afraid we were betraid. At this time it rained very fore ; yet calling our wits together, we fent two of our men backe vnto our Tent, the rest of vs made toward them, and shot at them fome three or foure Muskets : who when they faw vs shoote, they stood in our Shallop, and held up their hands untous, calling one to another. Then thought we with our felues, that we were better to dye in our defence in pursuing of them, then they vs, being but eight Men and a great Dogge. When they faw vs marching toward them fo fiercely, our Dogge being formoft, they ranne away : but we durfenot purfue them any further, for it was in the night, and they were in fight abone fiftie men. Thus we recovered our Shallop. Then we fent fome more of our men to our Tent to keepe it; and the rest followed toward the place whither they fled. But 40 before we could ouertake them, they were gotten into their Boates, and were rowing away through the Ice; which was fo thicke, that they could not passe away, but stucke fast; for their Boates were very great : wee feeing them flicke fast in the Ice, fome fetting with Oares, and fome rowing, came fo neere them, as we could, and thot at them some dozen shot, before they could get cleere: which that caused them to cry out very fore one to another; for their Boates The description were full of men As farre as we could indge, they be very little people, tawnie coloured, thin or of the Sauages no beards, and flat no fed, and Man-eaters.

Very great

Aboue fiftie Sanagesin

· On Sunday, the nine and twentieth, all day long we gat fuch things as we could abourd our Shippe, for feare they should come ouer with more men, and befet vs, our Ship lying betweene two great Rocks, and all without so full of Ice, that we could not passe any way to Sea, no not with a Boate. That day, two of our men kept watch vpon the Rocks, to give vs warning, if they did come over with Boats. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could with our Shallop, and did tench her in some places, but neither calked her, nor pitched her. Then did wee take her, and bring her downe close to the Shippe, and there shee did stand all

On Munday, the thirtieth day in the morning we went to worke to cut the Ice with Axes and Pick-axes, to get our Shippe; for all about the lland was nothing but Ice, and no place to ride free neither with Shippe nor Boate. That night it pleafed God, that wee got her out, and came away rowing with our Oares; but she was exceeding leake, and our Shallop too; and, which was worfe, we had neuer a Rudder to stirre our Ship withall. Wee rowed allthat night among

The first and second dayes of July, we continued also rowing up and downe among the floring and driving Ice, with little hope of recovering our Countrey.

A great Cur-

The third of July, we had a gale of winde at North, and a great current fetting to the Southward: Then made we fast our Ship to an Iland of Ice, and went to worke, and to stow her things within boord, to make her stiffe; for wee had neuer a whit of balast in her. Then did our Carpenter make what thift he could, to hang our Rudder, having nothing consenient in our

Ship to make Gudgins, nor Pintels. Then were we forced to breake open our Maiters Cheft, and Ship to make Glogins, nor Pinters. Then were we to take all the Iron bands off it, to make fast two Pick-axes, for two Pinters, and to binde our final Iron pins Rudder withall. So, as it pleased God, that night we hanged our Rudder, hauing but two Pin-made faft to tels and a Cable through the middle of it, to keepe it to with two tacks. Then were we in good the Rudder. hope to get cleare of the Ice, because wee had some steerage, though it was but bad : for before, and bung the we durft beare but little fayle, our Ship being fo leake, and her stemme to fore beaten with the Rudder to the rocks and Ice, and having no feerage, but were forced to rowe with our Oares, till wee were all Stern-post, &c. fore and weary.

The next day about tenne of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the West North-The next cay about terms of the there are a state and by North, to get vs out of the Bay:

So west, and was faire weather . So we steered away East and by North, to get vs out of the Bay:

They get out And at noone, the watch being out, which was the third watch that we had after we came out of the of the Countrey (for before, continually we did watch all, to keepe our Shippe cleare of the Ice, where they as there as we could) we begin to Pumpe our Shippe, but could not make her fucke in a thou-rode find strokes, if the had frood but one half shoure vapumped. Then were wee forced to various age our Ship, to fee if we could finde our leakes. We foom found a great many of leakes, but not that which caused ws to Pumpe so fore. At the last, we found it close abaft our foresoot, whereher keele was fplintred in two or three places, where the Sea came running in fo fail, that it was not Our Shippes possible to keepe her free with both our Pumps, and wee could not come to it to stop it; for it Keelewas foliase possible to keepe ner rece with portiour rumps, and wee could not control to the other to the did we take our maine Bonnet, and basted it with Occom, and three places. are put it out to merboord, right against our leake, which eased vs some foure or fine hundred stroakes in an They consist houre. Then vpon confultation had among our felues, wee refolued to shape our course towards to touch at New Newfound Land, to fee if we could get any place to mend our Ship, hoping there to meete with found Land. fome Englib or French men. At this time we had one of our men very licke, and another had his hand very fore splitted; and most of veall were so fore with rowing and pumping, that we were

frarce able to ftirre, but that we must perforce. The fift of Iulie, wee shaped our course for New found Land, with the winde at West

The one and twentieth, the winde was at South South-west; and we fell with the Land, be- Broken Hands ing nothing but broken llands. Then we flood to the Westward, being in the latitude of 49.de. in 40.degrees 30 grees and an halfe.

The two and twentieth was faire weather, and the winde very variable; and about fixe of the clocke at night, the winde came to the West North-west. Then we steered in among the I- Many broken la lands, to feelf we could finde any harbour to mend our Shippe; for the was very leake. When hadd which we were come in among them, we found nothing but broken llands, and a great current, which were the file. did fer from Hand to Hand, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms. That night we were ve- de Fogary fore intangled with funken Rocks, and in great danger of casting away our Ship, haning very Sunken Rocks, thicke weather : wherefore we kept to and fro all that night. The foureand twentieth of Iuly, in the morning, we spied some dozen Shallops, which were Twelue Shal-

filling fome two leagues from vs. Then wee made what way wee could toward them, &c. lops of Filher-40 We remained in this Bay of Foge, in repairing our Shippe, and refreshing of our selues, vittill men.

the two and twentieth of August. Then taking our leases of our kinde and loung friends, with guing them most hearise thanker for their goodnesses over the property of the season of their goodnesses over the property of the season of their goodnesses over the property of the season and fent word to London vinto our owners, of the loffe of our Mafter and his three companions, and of the dolefull faccesse of our Voyage, the soure and twentieth day of September, 1606. The rest of this Iournall, from the death of Master John Knight, was written by Oliner Browne one of the Company.

CHAP. XVII.

The fourth Voyage of IAMES HALL to Groeneland, wherein he was fet forth by English Aduenturers, Anno 1612. and flaine by a Greenelander. Written by WILLIAM BARRIN.



CHAP. 17.

Ednefday, the eight of July, 1612, in the morning I perceived the Sunne and the Moone, both very taire aboue the horizon, as I had done divers times before. At which time I purposed to finde out the longitude of that place, by the Moones comming to the Meridian. Most part of this day I spent about finding of the Meridian line; which I did vpon an Iland neere the Sea, hanging at the extreames of my Meridian line two threeds with Plummets at them, instead of an index and fights.

Thursday, the ninth day very early in the morning I went on shoare the Iland, being a faire

rence of longi-Graculand.

merning, and observed till the Moone came inst vpon the Meridian. At which very instant. I observed the Sunnes height, and found it 8. degrees, 53. minutes, North : in the elevation of the Pole 64, degrees 20 minutes. By the which, working by the doctrine of sphericall trians gles, having the three fides given, to wit, the complement of the Poles elevation; the complex ment of the Almecanter; and the complement of the Sunnes declination, to finde out the outre ment of the range at the Pole : I Isy, by this working, I found it to be foure of the clocks, 17 oil-nutes, and 24, feconds. Which when I had done, I found by mine Ephemerics, that the Moone nuces, and 24 records.

came to the Meridian at London that morning at foure of the clocke, 25 minutes, 24 records: which 17.minutes, 24.feconds, substracted from 25.34 leaueth 8.10.0f time, for the difference of longitude betwixt the Meridian of Landon (for which the Ephemerides was made) and the Meridian passing by this place in Groenland. Now the Moones motion that day, was 12 degrees 7. minutes : which converted into minutes of time, were 48. minutes, 29 feronds : which working by the rule of proportion, the worke is thus : if 48 minutes, 20 (econds; the time that the Moone comment to the Meridian fooner that day, then the did the day before, give 360, the whole circumference of the earth, what shall 8 minutes to feconds give, to wit, 60. degrees 30. minutes, or neere there abuut : which is the difference of longitude besweene, the Meridian of London, and this place in Groenland, called Cockins Sound, lying to the Westward of This finding of the longitude, I confesse is somewhat difficult and troublesome, and there may

Objection.

be some imali errour. But if it be carefully looked vnto, and exactly wrought, there will be no. 20 great errour, if your Ephemerides be true. But some will lay, that this kinde of working is nor. for Marriners; because they are not acquainted to worke propositions by the table of fignes, and an instrument is not precise enough to finde out the houre, minute, and second. For the hole of one minute of time, is the loffe of 7 degrees of longitude. I answere, that although the molt, part are not vied to this worke, yet I know iome of the better fort, which are able to worke this and the like propositions exactly. And those which yet cannot, and are desirous to learne. may in short space attains to such knowledge as shall be sufficient for such things. And how no ceffary it is, that the longitude of places should be knowne, I leave to the judgement of all skilfull Marriners, and others that are learned in the Mathematicks.

This afternoone it was agreed by the chiefe of our Company, that our Master, Lames Hall, 30 should goe in the smaller Ship, farther to the Northward.

Variation 23. deg. 58 min.

The forelaid Thursday in the evening, he departed out of the Patience into the Harrf-sale, to Cochim Ford in get forth of the Harbor, which our Mafter called Cockim-ford, in remembrance of Alderman Cockim 65, deg. to min one of the Aduenturers: which place, is in the latitude of 65 degrees, 20 minutes. And the variation of the compaffe is 23 degrees, \$8. minutes, to the Westward. That entening was very calme, and we towed our Shippe forth with the Shallops and Ships Boat. But within an houre. or two after we were got into the Offin; the winde being at North, it blew a great floring, which continued all that night.

The foureteenth, our Master turned the Ship vp to the River againe, foward the River where The foureteenth, our matter turned the support to the Australians, provide the Australian the fluor bed, But the type wasto farre (pent) that was outed not get poles, but, 40 were conftrained to Anker in a roade at the South fide of the Riber, force there leaves, from the Patience, in which place are many good Rode, freely to be flower, from the superior grounds, Thursday, the fixteenth day, the winde was a Night, welf, and they of little a provide the support of the superior force of the support could not get to Sea that day. That night, eighteene of vs went into the Handa to looke for

Great footing. forme Deere, but found none. But we perceived the foote-freps of forme great Breat, which wee tome treet, our manners are the treet was as bigge as any Q at long and the treet are true that the treet are the treet are the treet are treet are the treet are tree any meanes get to the Riner, where the supposed Myne should bee. Wherefore our Master bare roome for Ramelsford, being a River Southward of another, called Cunninghams ford, some twelue leagues. And we came to an Anchorat the entrance on the Southfide of the Ford, about

feuen of the clocke.

Wednessay, the two and twentieth day, about nine orten of the clocke, the Sauages came to barter with vs, being about fortie of them, and continued about an houre and an halfe: At which time our Mafter lames Hall, being in the Boate, a Sauage with his Daro frooke him a deadly wound voon the right fide, which our Surgean did thinke did pierce this liner. We all mufed deadly woun-) that he should strike him, and offer no harme to any of the rest: whiesie it were, that they knew him fince he was there with the Danes; for out of that Ruer they carried away five of the people, whereof neuer any returned againe : and in the nexp River, they killed a great munber And it should feeme that he which killed him, was either brother, or some neere kinfman to Ibme of them that were carried away ; for he did it very resolutely, and came within source yards of him. And, for ought we could fee, the people are very kinde one to another, and ready to revenge any 60 wrong offred to them. All that day he law very fore pained, looking for death every hours, and refigned all his charge to Matter Andrew Barker, Matter of the Harts-eafe, willing him to place another in his roome Mafter of the imall Ship.

Thursday, the three and twentieth, about eight of the clocke in the morning he dyed, being The death of tery penicent for all his former offences. And after we had throwded him, wee carned him in lamer Hall. the Shallop, to burie him in some out Hand, according to his owne request while he was liming. After we had burned him, we went in the Shallop to leeke for the mine, which we had expected Queene Sont folong. All that day we rowed along soward the North, patting by a Cape called, Queene Sophia a Cape. Cape. That night we flaied at an Iland, some three leagues short of the River.

Friday, the foure and twentieth, in the morning, wee rowed along, and came to the place, which is on the South-fide of the entrance of Commagnature River: And we found diversplaces, Commingnant where the Down had digged; it was a lande of fishing flone, which when our Goldfmith, River. to lames Carlele, had tried, it was found of no value, and had no mettall at all in it : but was like The supposed unto Malcome limbile, and of a glistening colour. That day after we had dyned, weo rowed up Mine found to unto Majorani liadida, and o'r zjakeranig coletiu. I has day arter we had oynem, wee rewen vp Mini bound to the Bisseriane fourse leagues, where duars to our company went ty into the Mountaines, and be folso relate. Hannak Valley mewr phesiants, then they had feene in the Commey. That customing we returned, a pleting videous to the comment of the comments of the c and came to the place where the Danse had digged their supported Mine, and tooks forme of it in our Boats to carry with vs, and returned toward our Ship. That night we rowed and failed, and

the next morning about nine of the clocke, we came to our Ship.

Samuday, the fire and twentieth, being Saint Lemer his day, in the foremone, we came to our Shippe, lying on the South fide of the River, called Ramels River. And as foons as our Mafter found, that the people came no more to trade with vs, he determined to depart with the Shippe Many of their An into the Kings Ford to the Passence: and rowing about the harbour, where we lay to finde fome winter houses neerer way out to the Sea, we found among the flands, where many of their winter houses had in Ramel River bin, and fome of their Tents were but lately carried away. In which place wee also found one The triftion of bin, and tome of their rems were one many carried away. and their greater of cheir long Boates, made of wood, and bound together for the most part, with flauers of Boates, Whales fins, and coursed with Seales skinnes, being some two and thirtie foote in length, and fome five foote broad, having tenne thoughts or feates in it. That day about twelve of the clocke Rameli Ford in tome mue foote mean, manufe entire tongers of reacts and to the latitude of 67, degrees, the latitude of we weighed anchor, and departed ont of Remels Ford, which little in the latitude of 67, degrees, of 7, degrees, and the variation of the compafia is an degrees 16, minutes, being a very faire River, and one of 67, degrees. the most principall, which wer law in that Country, stretching in East and Bast and by South is 2, degrees This night, about one of the clocke, we came to the Patience, lying in the Kings Ford. Sunday, the fixe and twentieth, Mafter Andrew Banker, and our Merchant, Mafter Williston.

with other of the Company, were in conference about returning home, because that fince our Mafor was flaine, none of the Sausges would trade with vs, as they were wont.

Wednesday, the nine and twensieth, we were likewise occupied about taking in of ballaft; for our Shippe was very light: and that euening it was agreed, that \*\*Audres Barker, Master of the Hartf-eig, should goe Matter of the Patience, which was fore against the minds of William Goer William Harting day and Hallow Garrendy, one of Matter of the Harts-eige, and love Garrendy, one of Matter of the Harts-eige, and love Garrendy, one of Matter of the Harts-eige, and love Garrendy. the quarter Malters of the Powerer, was Makers mate of the Harsinesfe.

Tuefday, the fourth of August, in the morning the winde being Northerly, a very small gale we They come out got to Sea, where the winde came to the Southward, and we tacked sometime on the one board, of larbour.

40 and foractime on the other, making fmall way on our course. Munday the tenth, was raine and foule weather, as it had continued every day fince wee came Thick and fogfrom harbour, fauing the feuenth day, which was fomewhat faire : For commonly while the gis weather, winde is South, it is very thick and foule weather. We tacked sometimes on one boord, and some the winde be-

times on the other, making a South by West way, at noone fixe leagues. Wednesday, the twelfth, it waxed calme, we being somewhat Southward of a Cape, called Burnils Cape: and about three or foure of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde came to the North and by West, an easie gale, with faire weather.

The eighteenth, at noone we were in 58.deg. 50.min. The fenenceenth day, I tooke the varia- Variation 13. tion of the compaffe, finding it to be 13. degrees 22. minutes, contrary to the observations of o- degr. 24. min. so therein this place. And if any doe doubt of the truth thereof, they may with a little paines proue

it. The eighteenth of August, the declination of the Sunne was 9 degrees & minutes, for the Meridian of Landon. But we being almost foure houses of time to the Westward thereof, there are three minutes to be abated from the reft : and fo the declination was g. degrees cominutes; and his height about the horizon was 24 degrees 40 minutes in the latitude of 59 degrees 0 min. and his distance from the South to the Westward, by the compasse, was 81. degrees. And for truth of the first observation, I tooke another shortly after, finding them not to differ above

Wednesday the nineteenth, the winde fill continued with thicke and hafie weather, we being at moone in the latitude of 58, degrees 30. minutes, or thereabout, making a South South-east 60 way, about ten leagues.

Thursday the twentieth, was faire weather, the winde at East North-east, wee steered away South-east and South-east and by East, making at noone a South-east and by South way, about thirtieleagues, being at noone in the latitude of 57. degrees 20. minutes. This day in the after- Variation 11. noone I tooke the variation of the compasse, and found it about 1 1. degrees 10.minutes.

Variation 7. degrees 24.

Variation 7.

deorees 20.

minutes.

minutes.

Friday the one and twentieth, faire weather, with the winde at North and North by East. and we made an East South-east way, halfe Southerly twentie foure leagues, being at noone by observation, in the latitude of 56. degrees 50. minutes.

Saturday the two and twentieth, faire weather, the wind at North and Nith by East, wee made an Eaft way halfe Southerly, some twentie two leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 6. degrees 47. minutes.

Sunday the three and twentieth, faire weather, the wind at West North-west, we making an East and East by North way about twentie four leagues. This day I tooke the variation of the Compasse, and found it to be 7. degrees 23, minutes , being at moone in the latitude of 57, de-10

Munday the foure and twentieth, being S. Bartbolomenes day, faire weather with an North North-west, wee making an East North-east way, halte Northerly about twentie seven lengues and were at noone by observation in the latitude of \$8. degrees 4. minutes. This day I observed and found the Compaffe to be varied 7. degrees 20, minutes.

Tuesday the fine and twentieth, faire weather and calme: the winde at North, wee madea North-east and by East way seventeene leagues, being at noone in the latitude of \$8.degrees 30. The true variminutes. This day I found the common Compafe to be varied one point, and the true variation ation 6. deg. to oee 6. degrees 4. minutes. 4- minutes.

We brief lay the lixe and twentieth faire weather also, with the wind North North-west, we made a North-east and by East way halfe about twentietwo leagues, being in the height of 59, 20

Thursday the feuen and twentieth indifferent faire weather, with a ftiffe gale of wind at the North North-west, we making a North-east way about thirtie one leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 60, degrees 10. minutes.

Friday the eight and twentiete, the wind at South-east with a stiffe gale, wee made good abont noone a North-east and by East way about twentie nine leagues. This day in the aftermoone it bleav to great a ftorme, that wee were in great diffrese, the windeat East South-east. But about eleven of the clocke it came to the North-west, and North-west by Lyuch, And we ranne some twentie leagues.

Saturday the nine and twentieth, it blew fo ftiffe, that wee could beare none but our fore- 30 faile, norking an East and by South way halfe Southerly, about thirtie leagues.

Sunday the thirtieth, all the forenoone it blew a very stiffe gale, and about noone the winde came Southerly, and it blew a very great fforme, which continued all that day and that night in fach fort, that we could not faile at all, but all that night lay at hull.

- Manday the one and thirtieth in the morning about foure of the clocke, the winde came to the South-west a very stiffe gale. At which time we set our fore-faile. The wind continued all this day and night, we steered away East and by South , making at moone an East North-east way about thirtie foure leagues.

Tuefday the first of September, the wind still continued at South-west, blowing a very siffe gale, we steered away East and by South, making an East way about fiftie leagues. This day at 40 moone we were in the latitude of 60. degrees 45. minutes.

:Wednesday the second faire weather with the wind at South-west, wee made an East and by South way halfe a point Southerly about fortie two leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 60. degrees 10. minutes. This day I observed, and found the Compasse to be varied three degrees to

Thuriday the third day faire weather, the wind at South-west : wee made an East by North way at noone about twentie leagues. This day in the after-noone, the winde being at North North-west, it blew a very stiffe gale for two Watches; and toward seven or eight of the clocke the storme so increased, that our shippe was not able to beare any faile. And all that night wee

Friday the fourth, the storme still continued, and we could beare no faile all that day till about foure of the clocke in the afternoone, at which time we fet our fore course, and our maine course. The night before in the storme, we lost The Hartf-eafe. This day wee made some twelve leagues East and by North. And we fell to lee-ward lying at hull fome fine leagues South by West.

Saturday the fift calme weather, but very thicke and close all the forenoone : the wind continued still at North North-west, we making from the time wee set our courses the day before, about twentie leagues East halfe Southerly; beeing at noone in the latitude of 50 degrees

Sunday the fixt, faire weather, the wind at North North-west, we steering away East Northeast, and East and by North, made an East by North way, halfe Northerly some 29. leagues, 60 being at moone in 60; degrees 10. minutes. This day the Compafe was varied to the East fixe Groundfound, degrees. This afternoone it was almost calme : and wee founded, and found ground at fixtie eight fathomes. This Evening about ten of the clocke the wind came to the South-east.

Munday the feuenth, very faire weather, the wind South-east and South-east by East, wee

tacked in the morning to the North-ward, and ranne East North-east and East by North vntill fewen or eight in the afternoone : at which time we tacked up to the Southward, and went away South-weil till toward twelue a clocke that night twentie leagues.

Tuesday the eight, in our morning Watch I found our selves to be in 59. degrees 20. minutes And about fine of the clocke I espied Land, which we supposed to bee the lies of Orkney, as The Iles of afterward we found them to be the fame. And toward three of the clocke, we came to an Anchor in a Channell running betweene the llands; where the people came to vs, and brought vs Hennes, Geefe, and Sheepe, and fold them to vs for old clothes and shooes, deliring rather them then money. There are about eighteene of their Ilands, which are called by the name of the

Wednesday the ninth, it was thicke weather, and the winde so Easterly that wee could not

Thursday the tenth, faire weather, and the wind came to the North-west, and about noone we weighed Anchor; and toward fine of the clocke we were cleere off the Iles. The Channell for the most part lyeth North-west and South-east. All that tright we stood away South-east. Friday the eleuenth, faire weather, with the wind at North North-west. And about nine of in order, the clocke in the morning, we steered away South South-east. At which time wee had fight of Buquham-neffe: And about two of the clocke we were thwart of it. The fewenteenth, we came Buquhem neff. to an Anchor in Hull Road, for which the Lord bee prayfed.

30 Here I thinke it not amiffe briefly to relate the flate and manners of the people of Groenland, Hall. for a much as I could learne : As also what likelihood there is of a passe into the Sea, which lyeth ypon Tartarie and China.

The North-west part of Grenland is an exceeding high Land to the Seaward, and almost nothing but Mountaynes; which are wonderfull high all within the Land, as farre as wee could perceiue: and they are all of stone, some of one colour, and some of another, and all glistering, as though they were of rich value; but indeed they are not worth any thing. For our Gold-fmith Lames Carille tryed very much of the Vre, and found it to bee nothing No profitable worth, If there bee any Mertall, it lyeth fo low in the Mountaynes, that it cannot bee well Vie come by. There are some Rocks in these Mountaynes, which are exceeding pure Stone, finer, 30 and whiter then Alabafter. The tides of these Mountaynes continually are coursed with Snow for

the most part, and especially the North sides, and the North sides of the Valleyes, having a kind of Mosse, and in some places Grasse with a little branch running all along the ground, bearing a Community little blacke Berrie, it runneth along the ground like Three-leased Grasse heere in England. Snow. littleblacke Berrie, it runneth along the ground dike Three-leafed Graffe here in England. South Three are few or no I rees growing, as farre as wee could pheticipe, but in one place forme forcit No Trees, miles within the Land, in a Rjuer, which wee called Bake Riuer. There I saw on the South-Bake Riuer. fide of an high Mountayne, which we went up, and found (as it were) a yong Groue of small A Groue of Wood, some of it fixe or seven foot high like a Coppice in England, that had beene some two small wood. or three yeeres cut. And this was the most Wood that wee faw growing in this Countrey; being some of it a kind of Willow, Juniper, and such like.

We found in many places much Augelica. We suppose the people eate the Roots thereof, for some curies. For we have seen them have many of them in their Boats.

There are great store of Foxes in the Hands, and in the Mayne, of fundry colours : And there Foxes. are a kind of Hares as white as Snow, with their furre or haire very long.

Alfo there be Deere, but they are most commonly vp within the Mayne very farre; because the people doe so much hunt them , that come neere the Sea. I faw at one time seuen of them together, which were all that wee did fee in the Countrey : But our men haue bought divers Coates of the people made of Deeres skinnes, and have bought of their Hornes alfo. Thee feems Befides, we have divers times feene the footsteps of some beast, whose foote was bigger then to be Elkes, or the foot of a great Oxe. Furthermore, the Inhabitants have a kinde of Dogges, which they Lossbes. 50 keepe at their Houses, and Tents, which Dogges are almost like vnto Wolues, living by fifth, as Dogges, like the Foxes doe. But one thing is very strange, as I thought : for the Pizzels of both Dogges and Wollies,

The people all the Summer time vie nothing but filling, drying their fift, and Seales fielh Porceare wpon the Rockes for their Winter Prouision. Euery one both man and woman haue each of them bone: fo allo a Boate made with long small pieces of Firre-wood, conered with Seales skinnes very well the Markes dreft, and fewed fo well with finewes or gurs, that no water can pierce them through, beeing piezle, of fome of them aboue twentie foot long, and not past two foot, or two foot and an halfe broad, in by me one forme of a Weavers shittle, and so light, that a man may carrie many of them at once for the gone. weight. In these Boates they will row fo swiftly, that it is almost incredible: for no ship in the The great 60 World is able to keepe way with them, although thee haue neuer fo good a gale of wind; and swifmede of world is able to keepe way with them, atthough thee haue neuer to good a gard of which a life their Bosts, yet they vie but one Oare, who fitting in the midle of their Boate, and holding their Oare in Their Oares the middle, being broad at each end like our Oares, will at an instant goe backward and forward, broad at both

Hartftafe.

as they pleafe.

Salmons and Angles and

836

In these Boares they catch the most part of their food, being Seales and Salmons, Morfer, and other kinds of fiftes. Some they kill with their Darts, and other fome with Angles, having a Line made of small shivers of Whales Finnes, and an Hooke of some fishes bones : with which Line and Hookes, we also have caught very much fifth.

Their great

Alfo they have another kinde of Boate, which is very long. For wee have feene one of them thirtie two foot in length, open in the toppe like our Boates; hauing tenne feates in it. In which when they remoone their Dwellings , they carrie their Goods or House-hold-stuffe; for they remoone their Dwellings very often , as their fishing doth serue, limng in the Summer time, in Tents made of Seales skinnes, and in Winter in Houses some-what in the ground.

Wee could not particularly learne their Rites or Ceremonies : but generally they wer-They worthip fhip the Sunne, as chiefe Authour of their Felicitie. At their first approach unto vs they vied with their hands to point up to the Sunne, and to firike their hands upon their brefts, crying lyom; as who would tay, I meane no harme : which they will doe very often, and will not come necte you, vntill you doe the like; and then they will come without any feare at all.

Their burials.

They burie their dead in the Out-Ilands neere the Scafide. Their manner of Buriall is this. Vpon the tops of the Hils they gather a company of stones together, and make thereof an hollow Caue or Graue, of the length and breadth of the bedie, which they intend to burie, laying the stones somewhat clote like a wall, that neyther Foxes, nor other such beasts 20 may denoure the bodies, covering them with broad ftones, shewing afarre off like a pile of stones. And neere vnto this Graue where the bodie lyeth, is another, wherein they burie his Bow and Arrowes, with his Darts and all his other Provision, which hee vied while hee was liuing. Hee is buried in all his Apparell : and the coldnesse of the Climate doth keepe the bodie from smelling and stunking, although it lye aboue the Ground.

and all other Furniture of the dead.

They eate all their Food raw, and vie no fire to dreffe their Victuals, as farre as wee could perceine. Also wee haue seene them drinke the Salt-water at our shippes side : But whether it bee viuallor no, I cannot tell. Although they dreffe not their meate with fire , yet they vie fire for other things, as to warme them, &c.

They are not

Diners of our men were of opinion, that they were Man-eaters, and would have deuou- 30 red vs, if they could have caught vs. But I doe not thinke they would. For if they had bin so minded, they might at one time have caught our Cooke, and two other with him, as they were filling of water at an Hand, a great way from our ship. These three I say were in the ships Boate without eyther Musket, or any other Weapon, when as a great company of the Sauages came rowing vnto them with their Darts , and other Furniture , which they neuer goe without, and frood looking into the Boate for Nayles, or any old Iron, which they so greatly defire, while our men were in such a feare, that they knew not what to doe. At length our Cooke remembred that hee had some old Iron in his pocket, and gaue each of them some, as farre as it would goe, with his Key of his Chest. And presently they all departed without offering any harme anall. But this I speake not, that I would have men to trust 40 them, or to goe among them unprouded of Wespons.

Nailes & old Sauages,

#### CHAP. XVIII.

A true Relation of such things as happened in the fourth Vijage for the Discouerie of the North-west Passage, performed in the yeare 1615. Written by WILLIAM

Fter three fundry Voyages towards the North-west, to the great charge of the Aduenturers : the last being under the command of Captaine Gibbins (in which was little or nothing performed.) Yet the Right Worthipfull Sir Dudley Digger Knight, Mafter Woffenbolme Elquire, Mafter Alderman Imes, with others being not there with discouraged, This yeere 1615. againe fet forth the Discoury, a ship of fiftie fine tunnes or thereabouts, which thip had beene the three former Voy-

ages on the action. The Master was Robert Bileth, a man well acquainted that way : having beene employed in the three former Voyages: my felfe being his Mate and Affociate, with fourteene others and two Boyes.

The fixreenth, we weighed Anchor at Saint Katharines, and that tyde came to Blackwall, the 60 windebeing at South South-west. The seventeenth, wee went downe to Granefend, and the eighteenth to Lee, where we anchored that night.

Vpon the fixt of May, we faw Land on the Coast of Groenland, on the East fide of Cape Fare. Groenland. mell; and that night we had a great frome : lo wee kept a Southerly course to get about the Ice Cape Fatemet which lay on that shoare, and then kept our course vntill the seuenteenth day of May, all which which may be layled by many great Hands of Ice, fome of which were aboue two hundred foot High Icie high about water (as I proued by one shortly after) which I found to be two hundred and fortie liands. foot high, and if report of some men be true, which affirme, that there is but one seventh part of the Ice aboue water, then the height of that piece of Ice, which I observed was one hundred and fortie fathomes, or one thouland tixe hundred and eightie foote from the toppe to the bottome : this proportion I know doth hold in much Ice, but whether it doe fo in all, I know not.

This feuenteenth of May, about noone we were come to the firme Ice, as one would suppose, being in the latitude of 61. degrees 26. minutes or thereabout, being the latitude of the South part of the Ile of Refolution: we comming to this Ice, our Marter asked my opinion concerning the putting into the Ice. My judgement was it would be best for vs to fland, and ply it vp to the Northwards. Hee answered, we were on the North fide of the South Channell, and much lee we must passe through, and if that we could get some two or three leagues within the Ice, it would euery tide open, and we should get some thing onward of our way, having all the Channell to the South-wards of vs. So with this resolution we put within the Ice, the wind being at East North-east: this first entrance I liked not very well, scarce finding any place to put in our ships head, and being neere thirtie leagues from the shoare, towards Euening wee were fastamonest

20 the Ice. But fometimes each day the Ice would a little open, we making what way we could towards the North-west in for the shoare till the two and twentieth day, having had the wind all Southerly. Yet we plainly faw that we fet to the Southwards, for all that wee could doe.

The two and twentieth day, the wind came vp at North North-west : then our Master determined to fland forth againe. For if the wind should have come to the North-east, it would be vnpossible for vs to fetch any part of the Channell, feeing wee droug fo fast to the Southwards, with Southerly winds, and having fo farre into the shoare, not having seene the Land.

Our Master was also determined to spend some twentie, or sourcand twentie dayes in Frea tum Danis, to fee what hopes would be that wayes, supposing there would be little good to be 30 done in Hudfons Streights for this time limited : then we plying to get to Sea-ward, and to by eight a clock at night, the three and twentieth day, we were cleere of the thick Ice : againe, the Lord make vs thankfull, the wind at North-west and by North faire weather : but no sooner were we forth of the Ice, but that our Mafter changed his opinion: and beeing cleere of this thicke Ice wee flood to the Northward as much as the Ice and winde would give va leane, running some thirteene leagues true North-east by North, being in the latitude of 61. degrees 500 minutes. The foure and twentieth day faire weather : the fine and twentieth day, also taire weath ther, the wind at North and by West, till sixe a clocke, we having made a North-east by North way about twelue leagues and an halfe, our latitude at noone 62. degrees 20, minutes, at fixe 2 clocke the wind was at the North North-east. The fixe and twentieth day, all the forenoone

40 faire weather and cold: but in the afternoone it blew very hard, being close hasie weather, that about two a clocke this afternoone wee tooke in our failes and hulled with our ship till the next morning at foure a clocke, all the time that we fayled this day we past through many ledges of Ice having great quantitie to the Northward of vs, and having runne about twentie one leagues true vpon a West course. And note where I put this word true, I meane the true course, the variation of the Compaffe, and other accidents allowed.

The fenen and twentieth day close foggy weather with much fnow freezing on our shrowds and tackling : the like we had not all this yeare before: but towards foure a clocke in the afternoone it began to cleere vp, and about fine a clocke we faw Land, being the Hand of Refolation, and bearing West from vs about thirteene or fourteene leagues. This morning we set sayle, and stood so to and fro as the Ice would fuffer vs, and at ten at night, wee moored our ship to a piece of Ice, the wind being at West.

The eight and twentieth day being Whitfunday, it was faire weather, but the winde was at the West, and West by North: al this day we were fast to the piece of Ice. Yet we plainly perceiued that we fet a great deale more into the Streights with the floud. Then we fet forth with the ebbe the nine and twentieth day, the wind was variable, and faire weather: about eleuen a clock we fet faile and tacked to and fro along by the Hand. And about two a clocke the next morning, the wind came to the South South-east, but we had so much Ice that we could doe but little good with a faire wind, the wind continued all this day and night a fliffe gale : this night (or No night, rather Euening, because it was not darke at all) we were set within the point of the Iland : so 60 that now we were within the Streights.

The one & thirtieth day also faire weather, the wind for the most part at North North-west, the afternoone being cleere wee faw the point of the South shoare, called Buttons Iles, to beare from vs due South by the Compaffe, which is indeed South South-east, somewhat Eastward, be- Variation 14 cause here the Compasse is varied to the Westwards twentie foure degrees.

Z z z 2

Dogges.

Situation.

The first of Iune, wee had some snow in the forenoone, but very faire weather in the afternoone, the wind at West North-west. We perceiuing the Ice to be more open close about the floare, made the best way we could to get in, and to come to Anchor, if the place were connenient; and by feuen a clocke we were in a good Harbour, on the North-west side of the Hand of Resolution, where an East South-east Moone maketh full Sea, or halfe an houre past seuen on the change day, as Sea-men account the water doth rife and fall, neere foure fathomes; the Compasse doth vary to the West 24. degrees 6. minutes, and is in longitude West from London 66. degrees 35, minutes. The breadth of the South Channell, or the diffance betweene the Iland and the South shoare, is fixteene leagues, and the North Channell is eight miles wide in the

Vpon this Iland we went on shoare, but found no certaine figne of Inhabitants, but the track of Beares and Foxes, Rockes and stonie ground, hardly any thing growing thereon: it is indifferent high Land to the Northward, haung one high Hill or Hummocke on the North-east fide.

but to the Southward it falleth away very low.

The second of Iune in the morning the wind came vp at East South-east, with much snow and fowle weather; about noone wee weighed Anchor, and flood vp along by the Iland, io well as the Ice would give vs leave to get to the North shoare. Wee continuing our courses so neere the North shoare, as conveniently we could, with much variable weather and windes, but stedfait in continuance among Ice, till the eight day, having the wind full contrary to vs, and being formewhat neere a point of Land, or rather a company of Ilands, which after wee called Sauge 20

Iles, hauing a great Sound or In-draught, betweene the North shoare and them. At fixe a clocke we came to Anchor neere one of them, being the Eastermost fauing one. But whiles weewere furling our failes, we heard and faw a great company of Dogges running vp and downe, with fuch howling and barking, that it feemed very itrange. Shortly after we had moored our ship, we fent our Boat somewhat neerer the shoare, to see if they could perceine any people; who returning, told vs that there were Tents and Boats, or Canowes, with a great many Dogges, but people they faw none. After Prayer, when our men had fupt, wee fitted our Boate and our felnes with things convenient : then my felfe with feuen others landed , and went to their Tents, where finding no people, we marched up to the top of a Hill (being about a flight fhot off) where

we saw one great Canow or Boat, which had about fourteene men in it, being on the furthest, 30 with 14 men. or North-west point of the Iland, and from vs somewhat more then a Musket shot, Then Icalled vnto them, wing some words of Greenlandile speech, making signes of friendship. They did the like to vs; but seeing them so searchall of vs, and we not willing to trust them, I made another figne to them, shewing them a Knife and other Trifles, which I left on the top of the Hill. and returned downe to their Tents againe. There wee found some Whale Finnes to the number of fortie or fiftie, with a few Seale skinnes which I tooke aboord, leaving Knives, Beades, Bagge of Ima and Counters instead thereof; and amongst their houses I found a little bagge, in which was a

company of little Images of men; one the Image of a woman with a child at her backe, all the which I brought away.

Among these Tents being fine in number, all courred with Seales skinnes, were running vp 40 and downe, about thirtie fine or fortie Dogges; most of them muzled. They were of our mungrell Mastiffes, being of a brinded blacke colour, looking almost like Wolues. These Dogges they vie in stead of Horses, or rather as the Lappians doe their Deere, to draw their sleds from place to place ouer the Ice : their fleds are fled or lined with great bones of fifnes to keepe them from wearing, and their Dogges have Collars and Furniture very fitting.

These people haue their Apparell, Boots, Tents, and other necessaries much like to the Inha-The people described. bitants in Groineland, fauing that they are not so neate and artificiall, seeming to bee more rude and vacuill, ranging vp and downe as their filling is in feafon. For in most places wherewee came ashoare, we law where people had beene, although not this yeere; but where their I hitation or their abode in Winter is, I cannot well conjecture.

This Iland lyeth in the latitude of 62. degrees 30, minutes, and in longitude West from Lon. 50 don, 72. degrees or neere thereabouts, being fixtie leagues from the entrance of the Streights: here the Compasse doth varie 27. degrees 30. minutes, and a South-east Moone foure degrees
East maketh a full Sea: it doth ebbe and flow almost as much water, as it doth at the Residuion, and here the floud commeth from the Eastward, although our Master was of opinion to the

The tenth day in the morning, at fixe a clocke we fet fayle, the winde at North, which continued not, but was very variable till noone, and then it came to North-west, we having sayled along by the shoare, about some nine leagues and an halfe North North-west, the Icelying so thicke in the offen, that wee could not well get out of it: then perceiving a good Harbour betweene two small Ilands and the Mayne, wee went in with our ship, where wee moored her, 60 and flayed till the twelfth day at Evening.

In this place it is high water on the change day, at nine of the clocke, or a South-east Moone maketh a full Sea : the latitude of this place is 62 degrees 40 minutes ; and the floud doth come

from the Eastward, although our Master was perswaded otherwise, as well in this place, as at Salusge Hands: for being among Hands, every point hath his feuerall fet and eddie. But I going to the cop of the Hand, plainely perceived the Ice to come from the South-east, and from the North-west on the ebbe. In this place is no figne of people, as we could perceive.

The fixteenth day, lying fill in the Ice, the weather being very close and hafey, as it hath beene these fix dayes: and being neere a great company of Hands, in the atternoone, the winde being at West North-west, were stood in amongst these Hands, and in the evening we moared our Shippe to one of them in a small coue, the better to defend her from the Ice. In this place wee flaved all the feuenteenth day; and vpo, the eighteenth, being Sunday, about eleuen a clocke

10 we tet fayle, being almost calme, making the best way wee could to get forth. Here are a great Many Ilands company of Hands, each both his feuerall fee and eddy, that the Ice doth fo runne to and fro, and and feuerall with Juch violence, that our Shippe was in more fafetie further off then in this place : the lati- tyde Sets. tude of the Ile we rode by is 63. degrees 26. minutes , and longitude West from London, neere 72, degrees 25. minutes : the Compaffe hath variation 27. degrees 46. minutes; and at a quarter of an houre after nine on the Change day, doth make a full Sea. This Evening, and the next morning, wee had a faire fitering gite of winde at South-east, wee standing along by the Land, it beeing all small broken ilands; to a point of Land about twelue leagues in diffance from the lie wee put last from e which Point, I called Broken Point, it being indeede Brok n Point.

a point of broken Iles. On the nineteenth day, by twelve a clocke at moone, wee were about foure miles from the Point before named, fait inclosed with Ice, very faire weather ; and well we might have called this Point Fairenesse or Faire Point, for from this day till the thirtieth day, the weather was fo taire, and almost, or altogether calme, that in few places elsewhere, finer weather could not be a and till the feuen and twentieth at night, wee were fo fast inclosed vp with Ice, that at some times one could not well dippe a paile of water by the Ship fides : while wee were thus faft in the Ice, vpon the one and twentieth day, I faw both the Sonne and Moone at one time, as indeede it is vivall in faire weather.

This one and twentieth, being faire weather, as afore is faid, and I feeing both the Sunne and Observations Moone fo faire: I thought it a fit time to make an oblemation for the longitude.

30 But the two and twentieth day being very faire and clease, and also calme, being almost as fleedy as on floare : it was no neede to bid me fit my Infrument of variation to take the time of the Moones consming to the Meridian, having allo my quadrant ready to take the Sunnes almi-canter, it being indifferent large, as of foure foote femideamites: have taken the variation of my needle as precifely as posible I could, which was \$8. degrees 20. minutes West, and if any be defirous to worke the fame, they may, but my worke was as followeth.

The Sunnes almicanter, at the inflant when the Moone was on the Meridian, was 26. degrees 40, minutes and the Sumnes declination for that time 23 degrees 6, minutes. By which three things given, I found the houre to be five a clocke 4. minutes 52. feconds, E. third 4. fourths, or 76. degrees, 12, minutes, 16. feconds, of the equinoctiall afternoone : and according to Seatles Ephe-

40 merides, the Moone came to the Meridian at London at foure a clocke 54 minutes, 30. feconds: and after Origanue the Moone came to the Meridian at foure a clocke 52 minutes, 5. feconds, at Wittenberge the fame day. Now having this knowne, it is no hard matter to finde the longitude of this place fought. For according to the Moones meane motion, which is 12.degrees a day, that is in time 48. minutes: and to this account, if the be on the Meridian at twelue a clock this day, to morrow it will be 48.min.past 12.So I having the time found by observation at this place, viz. q. houres, 4. minutes, 52. feconds, 1. third 4. fourths : but in this I neede not come fo precife: and at London, at 4. houres , 54. minutes, 30, seconds : which substracted from the former, leaveth 10, minutes, 22. feconds, 1. third, 4. fourths, now the Moones motion that foure and twentie houres, was 21.degrees, 38.minutes: which converted into time, is 50. minutes 25. feconds 20. thirds: then the proportion flanderh thus; If 50.minutes, 25. feconds, 20. thirds; give 360. degrees, what

50 shall 10. minutes, 22. seconds, 1. third, 4. fourths give? the fourth proportionall, will be 74. degrees 5. minutes, which is West of Landon; because the Moone came later by 10. minutes, 22. seconds, and by the fame working by Origanus Ephemerides, the diffrance is 91. degrees, 35. minutes, West of Welt, But whether be the truer, I leave to others to judge : in these workings may some errour be committed, if it be not carefully looked vnto : as in the observation, and also in finding what time the Moone commeth to the Meridian, at the place where the Ephemerides is supputated for, and perchance in the Ephemerides themselves: in all which, the best judicious may ene: yet if observations of this kinde, or some other, at places farre remote, as at the Cape Bonasperanze, Bansam, Japan, Nona Albion, and Magellan Straits, I suppose wee should have a truer

60 Geography then we have. And feeing I am entred to speake of celestiall observations, I will note another which I made the twenty fixt of April, being outward bound at Sea, by the Moones comming in a right line, with two fixed Starres; the one was the Lyons bears, a Starre of the first magnitude; the other a Starre in the Lyons rumpe, of the second magnitude, as followeth: The circumference or outward edge of the Moone, being in a right or ftraight line, with those

two Starres before named : at the instant I tooke the altitude of the South ballance, which was 3. degrees 38.minutes, because I would have the time : but in this it is good to waite a fit time, as to have her in a right line, with two Stars not farre diffant, and those not to be much different in longitude, because the Moon will soone alter the angle or position, and such a time would be taken when the Moone is in the nintieth degree of the eclipticke about the horizon, for then there no paralell of longitude, but onely in latitude : but who to is painefull in these businesses, shall foone fee what is needefull, and what is not : my observations were as followeth:

Right affention 46.deg.28.min, 30.dec. TRight affention 63.deg.23.min.eo.de.
Declination 1. 3 deg.27, mi. 30.dec. Tright affention 63.deg.23.min.eo.de.
Declination 2. 2.deg.23.min.go.dec. Tright affention 63.deg.23.min.go.dec.
Latrude 2. 2.deg.23.min.go.dec. Tright affention 63.deg.23.min.go.dec.
Latrude 2. 2.deg.23.min.go.dec. Latrude 2. 2.deg.23.min.go.dec.
Almiemer: 3.deg.24.min.go.dec. 2.deg.25.min.go.dec.

Moones Latitude 03.deg. 20. min. 46.fec. North. Almicanter - 37, deg. 00. min. 00.fec. Latitude of the place - 56.deg. 43.min.

These notes I have set downe, that if any other be desirous to trie, they may spenda little time therein; my felfe haue spent some therein, and more I would have spent, if leisure would have permitted : but finding it not to my minde, I have not here fet downe my particular worke : MasterRudson, the working of this observation I received from Master Rudston.

But if it had pleased God, we had performed the action we were bound for, I would not feare but to have brought fo good contentment to the Aduenturers, concerning the true feituation of notable places, that small doubt should have beene thereof: but feeing so small hopes are in this place, I have not fet downe so many observations as otherwise I would

We lying here inclosed with the Ice with faire &calme weather (as before is faid ) till the feuen and twentieth day at evening, at which time we fet fayle; the winde at South-eaft, an eafie gales all the eight and twentieth and nine and twentieth dayes, we made the best way through the Ice we could, but the nine and twentieth day, the Ice was more open then it had been these ten dayes before, and at noone we saw Salisbury lland, it bearing due West from vs.

The first of July close foggie weather, with much raine, the winde at South South-east : by 30 noone this day we were some three leagues from the Land: but having much Ice by the shoare, we frood along the Hand to the Northward : and the next morning wee were faire by another fmall Ile, or rather a company of fmall Ilands, which after we called Mill Iland, by reason of grinding the Ice, as this night we made proofe thereof: at noone, being close to this Ile, wee took the latitude thereof, which is neere 64 degrees. Here driving to and fro with the Ice all this day, till feuen or eight a clocke, at what time the Ice began to open and feperate; The Ice, as is faid, beginning to open : we had not stood along by the Ile, on the East fide thereof, an houre ; but the Ice came driving with the tide of floud from the South-east, with such swiftnesse, that it ouer went our Shippe having all our fayles abroad with a reasonable gale of winde, and put her out of the streame, into the eduy of these Iles.

This Hand or Hes, lying in the middle of the channell, having many founds running through them, with many points or headlands, encountering the force of the tide, caused such a rebound of water & Ice (which ran one way, and the ffreame another) our ship having met the Ice with the first of the floud, which put her so neere the shoare, that she was in the partition betweene the Ice, which the eddy cauted to runne one way, and the streame the other, where shee endured great distresse; but God, which is still stronger then either Ice or streame, preserved vs and our Shippe from any harme at all. This continued till towards a high water, which was about one a clocke; then with no small trouble we got into the channell, and stood away to the Northwest ward. After we had past some distance from this Iland, wee had the Sea more open then it was fince we put first into the Straits; and failed all the next day through an indifferent cleare 50 Sea, with the winde at South-west: but towards eight a clocke at night, wee were come againe into much Ice; this Ice being more thicker and bigger then any wee had beene among : this place where we began to be inclosed againe, is fixe and twenty leagues diffant from the fmall Hand we were at last : and our true course North-west by West : after wee were fast in the Ice, we made but small way, yet we perceited a great tyde to fet to and fro. The next day, wee founded, and had ground at one hundred & twentie fathoms, foft Ofey ground: flanding more Northerly: the next morning we had ground at eightie fathoms, then the winde came to the North, and we fetting fomewhat Southward, had ground at a hundred and ten fathoms. Thus feeing this great abundance of Ice in this place, and the more we got to the North-west ward, the shoalder it was, the Ice also being foule and durtie, as not bred farre from shoare: our Master determined to 60 stand to the Eastward, to be certainely informed of the tide.

The fixt day in the morning, we brake in a planke and two timbers in our Ships bow, which after we had mended, we proceeded for to get to the East fide, which we called the North shoare, because it is the Land stretching from the Refelation, on the North fide of the S. raits.

The fewenth day we faw the land, it being but low land, and the Sea is should, in respect of of ther places, having ten or twelve fathom about a league off from shoare, some thirty fathoms sue or fix leagues off thore, but further off tome twenty or eighteene leagues, there is a hundred or a hundred and five fathoms; having very good channell ground, as small stones & shels, some twelve or foureteene leagues from hoare, but the further off the more Ofey- and also here is a very great tide runner h to the Northward, which this evening we found to be the tyde of ebbe for comming with our Shippe neere the shoare, about seuen a clocke, we hoysed out our Boate, then I with five other went on shoare, and found it to ebbe : we staied on shoare about an houre and a halfer in which time the water fell about three foote and a halte, and a South-fouth East Moone maketh a full Sea, or lalite an houre past tenne, as Sea men account: we faw no figure of people to be here this yeare, but in yeares heretofore they have beene, as we might well fee by divers places; where their tents had stood and perchance their time of fifting was not yet come, therebeing fuch great abundance of Ice as yet. The eight day the winde was at West, and the ninth almost calme: wee reeking neere to this

floare the tenth day, our Mafter determined to fland for Notting games Hand to make triall of Nothingsame the tide there; yet the winde was at South-west, so that we were forced to surae, but towards land, night it came to the North North-west, so that then we stood away to the West wards, leaving the fearch of Notting games Ile, having a great swelling Sea, come out of the West with the winder which had blowne, which put ws in some hope : the eleventh day in the morning, we saw Land 20 West from vs, but had no ground at one hundred & thirty fathoms 10 standing along by the Land which here lay about North-west by North, the next morne we were thwart of a Bay : then flanding ouer to the Northwards towards a faire Cape or head land which we law, in the afternoone it was almost calme, and being about a league from shoare, we hoysed out our Boat, and sent fome of our men in her, to see what tide it was by the shoare, and from whence it came; they went from the Ship at five a clock, and came aboord agains at eight, who brought vs word, that it was falling water, and that it had eb'd while they were on shoare somewhat aboue two foot: also was failing wasti, and flood came from the Northward in this place, the which we also perceited affirmed, that the flood came from the Northward in this place, ued by the fetting of our Ship, the fetting a pace to the Northward, although no whit of winder alfo we might fee by the rocks, that the water was nowfalne : this put vs in great comfort and 30 hope of a passage in this place.

Then our Matter called this Cape or head land, Cape Comfort, for the reasons beforesaid; also Cape Confort, we had one hun ired and fortie fathoms in depth, not a league from the shoare : and here a South by East Moone maketh a full Sea: the latitude of this Cape is 65 degrees 00. min, and 85 degrees 20, minutes Welt from London. But this our sudaine comfort was as soone quailed, for the next day having coubled the Cape, and proceeded not past ten or twelve leagues, but we faw the land trending from the Cape to the Westward, till it bare from vs North-east by East, and very thicke peftered with Ice, and the further we proceeded, the more Ice, and the more Northerly, the flouider water and small shew of any tide. At six a clocke this afternoone, we founded, & had ground in o :e hundred and thirty fathoms, foft Ofey, having had at noone one hundred & fiftie fathoms.

This was the fartheft of our Voyage, being in the latitude of 65, degrees 26. minutes, and longitude Welt from London 86. degrees 10. minutes: for seeing the land North-east by East, from va about nine or ten leagues off, and the Ice fo thicke : our Master was fully perswaded, that this was nought elfebut a Bay, and so tacked and turned the Shippes head homewards, without any far-

The fourteenth day, the winde was for the most part at South-east, that we could make but fmall way backe againe: and the next morning very foule weather, we comming to an Anchor in a small Inlet, neere the Cape Comfort, on the North-west fide thereof; here wee found, as on the other fide, a South by East Moone, to make a full Sea; but from whence the floud came, we could not well ice, it being to foule weather at Sea : in the afternoone the winde came to North 50 by West then we waied, and flood along to the Southwards by the shoare, with a shiffe gale of winde, and very hasey. By the fixteenth day at noone we met with a great quantitie of Ice,lying some few leagues within the point of the Land: among this Ice we law a great number of Sea Morfe, not iteing any more in all the Straits but here, and thefe very fearefull, not fuffering a Ship or Boat to come neere them: by eight a clock we were come to this Southern point, which sea Harle plant I called Sea Horfe point, where we came to anchor open in the Sea, the better to try the tide !

here most apparently we found to all our companies fight, that in this place the tide of floud doth come from the South-east, and the ebbe from the Northwest. We weighed, and stood ouer with a stiffe gale of winde, which continued all this day, and toward night very foule weather & a fore florme: by tenne a clocke we were come to Anchor on the North-west fide of Nottingbams Ile, 60 where are two or three smal Iles, lyeth off from the greater, which make very good Sounds &Harbors: about this He we had store of Ice, but nothing as we had heretofore in other places. We staied about this Hand "il the feuen and twentieth day, having much foule weather, many stormes, often fogs, and uncertaine windes, many times we weighed anchor to goe to that fide of the Ile, where this Ship road when Captaine Button was in her; finding in other places of this He the tyde of

Digges lie.

Salusges.

floud to come from the South-east ward, and the time of high water on the change day, to be at halfe an houre past ten, and not at halfe an houre past seuen, as they supposed. In these cen dayes we staied about this He, we fitted our Ship with ballast, and other necessaries, as we had neede of

Then proceeded as followeth the fixe and twentieth day, being indifferent faire weather, we Salisbarie lle. paffed betweene Salisbaries Ile and Natingbans Ile at the South Point thereof I meane of Note. singhams He, where are many small low Hes, without the which had beene a fit place for vs to have anchored to have found out the true let of the Tyde. But our Mafter being defirous to come to the same place where they had rode before, stood along by this lie to the Westward, and came to an anchor in the eddy of these broken grounds, where the ship rode at no certaintie of Tyde.

The feuen and twentieth, the next morning the weather proued very foule with much raine 10 and winde, to that our Reger anchor would not hold the ship at eightie fathoms scope, but was driven into deepe water , that wee were forced to fet faile, the winde being at East, and then come to the East North-east and about noone at North-east, still foule weather, being voder faile, westood away towards Sea berfe Point : our Master (as I suppose) was perswaded that there might bee some passage betweene that Point of Land and that Land which they called Swan Hand: to this afternoone we faw both Sea berfe Point and Notting bass Hand, the distance betweene them is not past fifteene or fixteen leagues, bearing the one from the other North-west

The eight and twentieth day in the morning, wee were neers to Sea borfe Point, the Land trending away West South-west so farre as wee saw, and very much pestred with Ice. At seven 20 a clocke our Master caused vs to tacke about, and stood away South-east and by South

The nine and twentieth the next day at eleuen a clocke, we came to anchor at Digges lle, hauing very foule weather. At this place where we rode it lyeth open to the West, having two of the greatest lies, breake off the force of the Flood, till the Tyde be well bent; for after the water were rifen an houre and a halfe by the shoare, then would the ship ride truly on the Tyde of Flood all the Tyde after. Now the time of high water on the change day, is halfe an houre past ten or neere thereabout.

The thirtieth day, being faire weather, wee weighed and flood along close by Digger Ile. where we prefently perceined the Salunges to bee close on the top of the Rocks: but when they faw we had efpyed them, divers of them came running downe to the water fide, calling to vsto 30 come to anchor, which we would have done if conveniently we could. But in this place the water is so deepe, that it is hard to finde a place to ride in, which we seeing lay to and fro with our thip, while fome of our men in the Boat killed about fome seventie fowles, for in this place is the greatest number of fowles (whom we call Willacks) that in few places else the like are not seene, for if neede were we might have killed many thousands, almost incredible to those which have not seene it, Here also as we lay to and fro with our ship, wee had sufficient proofe of the set of the Tyde: but when our men were come aboord againe, we fet all our failes for homewards, making the best expedition we could; but on the third of August, wee were forced to come to are chor about thirtie leagues within the Resolution Ile on the North shoare. The next day wee weighed anchor: And the fifth day in the forename, we past by the Refolution Hand, but saw it 40 not: Thus continuing our courses (as in the briefe lournall may be seeme) with much contrarie windes and foule weather.

Wee had fight of Cape Clores in Ireland the fixt of September: the next morning by day light, we were faire by Seely, and that night at two a clocke the next morne, we came to anchor in Plymonth Sound with all our men living, having onely three or foure ficke, which foone

The next yeere being agains employed in discenerie, amongst other infrustions they received this. For your counts you must make all possible halfs to the Cape Delolation, and from thence, you William Bassin as Plats, keepe along the Confid of Gronoland and yo Frecture Daise, varied you come toward the 50 beight of eightst degrees, if the Land will give you letter. Then for force of indeping, by keeping to. Myertherly a counts [hope your comp fired] and Somborty, for force as you find thinks at conserners, 11 you come to the latitude of fixtie degrees; then divers your counts to the latitude of fixtie degrees; then divers your counts to the latitude of Vedera down that beight, leaning your farther fayling Southward to your owne discretion, according as the time of the that origon, seeming, non-passes, spring. Someone is you can any serious, according as occurred, in yourse and window will give you leave, although on drifter its, of your cryage prove for properous that you may been the year lefter you, that you go a fare Southerly as then you may truck the North part of lapan, from whomever of your Color, of you can be rememble is without danger, we would been you is bring home one of the men of the Country, and fo God biffing you with all expedition to make your returns

CHAP.

#### CHAP. XIX.

To the Right Worshipfull Master Ioни Wostenholme Esquire, one of the chiefe Aduenturers for the discouerie of a passage to the North-west.



Orthy Sir; there neede no filling a Iournall or short Discourse with preamble, complement, or circumstance, and therefore I will onely tell you, I am proud of any Remembrance, when I expose your Worth to my Conceit, and glad of any good fortmie; when I can anoid the imputation of ingratifule, by acknowledging your many fusions: and feeing us is not unknowne (to your Worship) in what estate the businesse concerning the

North-west bath beene beretofore, and how the onely hope was in searching of Fretum Dates, which if your felfe had not beene the more forward, the action had well nigh beene left off : Now it remanneth r your Worlbip to know, what bath beene performed this years; wherefore I entreat you to admit of my outlome, and pardon me if I take the plaine highway in relating the particulars, without vising any refined phrases and eloquent speeches.

Therefore briefly, and as it were in the furefront, I intend to show you the whole proceeding of the vorage in a namely, there is no passege, nor bope of passege in the North of Dauis Streephs, we busing constel all or neere all the Circumstrence thereof, and finde is to be no other then a great Bay, as the Maphere placed doth truly show: wherefore I cannot but much admire the works of the Almightie, Howsoner the when I consider how vaine the best and chiefest hopes of man are in things uncertaine. And to speake of no pallage this when I consider how vame too belt and consign copies of man are an assong voncer amount of prongery no penage in other matter, then of the hopefull polyceto the North-oneff; Hom many of the belt for of men home, et way as arm their whole medianours to prouse a polyce than wayes, and use such in Conference, but also in Printing and Synchyte than their whole medianours to prouse a polyce than wayes, and use such in Conference, but also in Printing and Synchyte than the way to the conference of t their whole indensors to prove a pallage to me ways, some now very so ways care, our age in orthing and formed dies, publishing to the World, year when great famoure of money has been from the abit that altims, as your weigh of Six Worldon has cally experience off. Neither would the vaine glorious Spaniard have feathered abroad to The Matter Worldon has been feathered abroad to The Matter Worlph bash coity experience off. Nettoter woman see varies generally passed until passed memoral of ten, active month fall Mays and lowered, it has bad passed complexes of a palinge shis may, that of had placing (then by him many falle Mays and lower found, they might have cellifed the worthy praife of the Admentiores and true (kept kected for God, a paffage that dream passed the control praife of the Admentiores and true (kept kected for God, a paffage that was part, we will have all have believed the control praife with missed the control praife which is board.

Difference 11, and for my counce part, I would have all have believed the control praife with the control Discource , and you make the house found, fill taking occasion of bope on enery little likelihood, till such more probable time as we had almost coasted the Circumference of this great Bay, Neither was Master Dauis to be and to themost blamed in his report and great hopes, if he had anchored about Hope Sanderlon, to have taken notice of indicions more blamed in his report and great hopes, if he was anthored about Hope Sanderholl, to make taken notice of theaprobable; the Tydes: for to that place which is in 72. degrees 12. minutes the Sea is open, of an unfearchable depth, and that by and that by and of a good colour, enely the Tydes keepe no certaine course, nor rise but a small height, at eight or nine that Tyde are foote, and the flood commeth from the Southward, and in all the Bay beyond that place the Tyde is fo small, gument from and not much to be regarded, yet by reason of from melting on the Land, the Ebbe is stronger then the the West, asin and not much to be regarded, yet by reason of some metting on the care of the yetre, the great less of Master Brigg.

Flood, by meanes whereof, and the windes holding Northerly the fore-part of the yetre, the great less of his Map and tion, of meanes were en, and one into Fretum Hudion, and others towards New found Land, for in nousseppea-An all the Channel where the Seass open are great quantities of them driving up and downe, and till this reth.

yeere not well knowne where they were bred. Now that the worlt is knowne (concerning the passage) it is necessarile and requisite, your Worship Bould understand what probabilitie or bope of pross might bere be made bereafter, if the very este at sempted by sitting men. And suff for the killing of Whales, curtaine it is that in this Bay are great numbers of them, which the Bilcainers call the Grand Baye Whales, of the Same kinde which are killed as Greenland, and as it seemeth to me easie to be strooke, because they are not vsed to bee chassed or bea-ten, for we being but one day in Whale Sound (so called for the number of Whales thus wee saw there) Store of Grand Store of Grand lying aloft on the water, not fearing our flip or ought elfe, that if wee had beene fitted with En Whales, men and things necessarie, it had beene no hard matter to have strooke more then would have made three one name using many many that it is of that fore of Whale there is no feare. I being upife at Greenland, Enfer unice at 50 each flavor that it is of that fore of whale there is no feare. I being upife at Greenland, Enfer unice at 50 each fulfilleriest notice to know them against the fighted a dead Whale wee found at Sea, basing all her firmes Greenland.

(or rather all the rough of her mouth) of which with much labour, we got one hundred and fixtie the same enening we found her; and if that foule weather, and a storme the next day had not followed, wee had no doubt, but to have had all or the most part of them, but the winde and Sea arising shee broke from vs , and we were forced to leave her. Neither are they onely to be looked for in Whale Sound, but also in Sir Tho. Smiths Sound, Wostenholme Sound, and diners other places.

For the killing of Sea Morfe, I can give no certaintie, but onely this , that our Boat being but once ahor toe giung of sea transfer, this Bay, which was in the entrance of Alderman Iones Sound, at the re-Sea Vnicotne turne, our men told us, they saw many Morses along by the shoare on the see; but our ship being under Sha Uniconce is saile, and the winds comming saire, they presently came aboord without surface search, besides the people still kept in the 60 inhabiting about 74. degrees, told us by diners signes, that toward the North were many of those beasts, Robes at Wind-

baning two long teeth, and shewed us diners pieces of the same. As for the Sea Unicorne, it being a great fish, having a long borne or bone, growing forth of bis fore-nectes seven bead or nostrill (such as Sir Martin Frobisher in bis second voyage found one) in diners places we saw of footlong and them, which if the horne be of any good value, no doubt but many of them may be killed.

creffed, &c.

And concerning what the Shoare will yeeld, as Beach finnes, Morfe teeth, and fuch like, I can little

fas, because we came not on loars in any of the places where boye was of finding them.

But there some may obticl and uske, why we sought that to dail no better. It is this I anssert, that while
we were there along it to weather was a fexceeding shall were could not, for light were anchored in Welchen
holme Sound, where presents one shop drone with two anchors a bead, then were we forced to fland some with a low faile. The next day in Whale Sound, we lost an Anchor and Cable, and could fetch the place no more; then we came to anchor neere a small lland, lying between Sir Tho. Smiths Sound, and Whale Sound, but the winde came more outward, that we were forced to weigh againe: nevertheleffe if wee bad beene in a good harbour, haming but our Ships Boat, we durit not fend her farre from the ling , having fo fem men (as senenteenem all) and some of them very weake; but the chiese cause wee spent so little time 10 to ficke a Harbour, was our great defire to performe the Disconcrie, basing the Sea open in all that part, and fill likelihood of a passing: that boye of and fill likelihood of a passing: that boye of passage was none, then the seere was too farre front, and many of our men very weake, and withall me baumg some beliefe that soits the next yeare would be sent for the killing of Whales, which might better doe

And seeing I have briefly set downe, what hope there is of making a profitable voyage, it is not unfit Jour Worship should know what let or binderance might be to the same. The chiefest and greatest cause is, that some yeere it may happen by reason of the Ice, lying betweene 72 degrees and a halfe, and 76. degrees no minutes, that the Ships cannot come into those places, till toward the middest of July, so that want of time to stay in the Country may bee some let: yet they may well tarry till the lust of August, in which space much businesse may be done, and good store of Oile made: neverthelesse if store of W bales come in (as no feare to the contrarie) what cannot bee made in Oile may bee brought home in Blubber, and the Finnes will arife to good profit. Another hinderance may bee, because the bottome of the Sounds will not be so some cleere as would be wished, by meanes thereof now and then a Whale may be lost (the same case sometime chanceth in Greenland) yet I am perswaded those Sounds before named, will all be cleere before the twentieth of Iuly: for we this yeare were in Whale Sound the fourth day among many Whales, and might have strooke them without let of Ice. Furthermore, there is little wood to bee expected, either for fire or other necessaries, therefore Coles and other such things must bee provided at home, they will bee so much the readier there.

Thus much I thought good to certific your Worship, wherein I trust you will conceive, that much time 10 bath not beene frent in vaine, or the businesse ouer carelessy negletted, and although wee have not performed what we defired (that is, to have found the paffage) yet what wee promised (as to bring certaintie

and a true description) truthwill make manifest, that I have not much erred.

And I dare holdly say (without boasting) that more good discourrie hath not in shorter time (to my remembrance) being done, faces the altem mas attempted, confidering from much leave beause policil, and the inflicialist of Japing for serve the Polic (spop a transfer) and about all, the variation of the Compil, the bollow moderal operation is fine in this May, inventing and descretafy; for findings and furth, being an about the moderate of the serventing and furth, some and the serventing Some part (as in Wostenholme Sound, and in Sir Tho. Smiths Sound) varied above fine Points or 56. degrees, a thing almost incredible and matchlesse in all the world beside, so that without great care, and good observations, a true description could not have beene bad. In fine, what sever my labours are or shall be, I est come them too listle, to expresse my thankefull minde for your many supers. wherem I shall be c-40 mer studious, to supply my other wants by my best endenours, and ener rest at

Your Worships command,

WILLIAM BAFFIN.

A briefe and true Relation or Journall, contagning such accidents as happened in the fift voyage, for the discouerie of a passage to the North-west, set forth at the charges of the right Worlhipfull Sir Tho. Smith Knight, Sir Dudly Digges Knight, Master Iohn Wostenholme Esquire, Master Alderman Iones, with others, in the good ship called the Discouerie of London; Robert Bileth Master, and my felfe Pilot, performed in the yeere of our Lord 1616.

TN the Name of God, Amen. The forenamed thip being in full readmette upon the twentie lixe of March, we fet faile at Granefend, being in number leuenteene persons, having very faire 63 weather, which continued till the second of April: by that time we were off Portland, then the winde comming Westward with soule weather, we kept Sea till the fourth day, then being not able to fetch Plimonth, bore roome for Dartmouth , where wee flayed eleuen dayes , in which time was much foule weather and westerly windes.

The fifteenth day of Aprill, being cleere of Darsmouth, we were forced the next day to put into Plimenth. The nineteenth day we fet faile from thence, and the twentieth in the morning we past betweene the Lands end and Silly with a faire winde. Continuing our course, as in the briefe Table or Journall is let downe, with every particular from noone to noone, that here I need not make a tedious repetition, nothing worthy of note happing, but that we had a good passage, and the first Land we faw was in Freum Danis, on the coast of Groinland in the latitude of 65. Grinden degrees 20. minutes. On the fourteenth of May in the forenoone, then fixe of the people being a fifting came to vs, to whom we gate small pieces of Iron, they keeping vs companie being very ioyfull, supposing wee had intended to come to anchor: but when they faw vs stand off from

to shoare they followed vs a while, and then went away discontented, to our feeming. We profecuting our Voyage, were loth to come to anchor as yet, although the winde was contraine, but faill plyed to the Northward, vntill we came into 70. degrees 20. minutes: then wee came to anchor in a faire Sound (neere the place Mafter Danis called London Coaft,) The twentieth of May at enening, the people efpying vs fled away in their Boates, getting on Rocks wondring and gafing at vs, but after this night we faw them no more , leaving many Dogs run- Men and dogs ning to and fro on the Hand.

At this place we flayed two dayes, in which time wee tooke in fresh water and other necessaries ; here we had some dislike of the passage, because the Tydes are so small as not arising about eight or nine foot, and keepe no certaine courle, but the neerest time of high water on the change 20 day is at a quarter of an houre past nine, and the Flood commeth from the South.

The two and twentieth day at a North Sunne, wee fet faile and plyed full Northward, the winde being right against vs as we stood off and on. Vpon the fixe and twentieth day in the afternoone, we found a dead Whale, about fixe and twentie leagues from thoure, having all her Dead Whale, finnes. Then making our ship fast, wee vied the best meanes wee could to get them, and with much toile got a hundred and lixtie that evening. The next morning the Sea went very high and non-noting on a numerous and notice that occurring a true next morrough time Set went very right and the winde arthing, the Whale broke from vs, and we were forced to leave her and fer faile, and having not flood past three or foure leagues North-westward, came to the Ice, then wee tacked and stood to the shoars-ward, a fore storme ensued.

By the thirtieth day in the afternoone, wee came faire by Hope Sander fon , the fartheft Land Hope Sander fons 30 Mafter Danie was at, lying betweene 72, and 73. degrees; and that evening by a North Sunne

we came to much Ice, which we put into, plying all the next day to get through it.

The first of Iune, we were cleere of the Ice before named, and not farre from shoare, the winde blowing very hard at North North-east, then we put in among divers llands, the people see- Tents, Men ing ve fled away in all hafte leaving their Tente behinde, and upon a finall Rocke they hid two and Womens young Maides or Women. Our flip riding not farre off, we elpyed them , to whom our Mafter with fome other of our companie went in the Boate, they making agoes to be carried to the Hand where their Tents were close adjoying. When they came thither, they found two old women more, the one very old, to our efteemation little leffe then fourescore, the other not so old. The next time we went on shoare, there was another Woman with a child at her back, who had hid 40 her felfe among the Rocks, till the other had told her how well wee had vied them, in giving

them pieces of Iron and fuch like, which they highly effective, in change thereof they give vs Seales skinnes, other riches they had none, faue dead Seales, and fat of Seales, some of which fat or blubber afterward we carried aboord, the poore women were very diligent to carry it to the water fide to put into our caske, making flew that the men were ouer at the Mayne, and at an other small Hand something more Eastward. Then making fignes to them that wee would shew them our ship and set them where the men were : the foure youngest came into our Boate; when they were aboord they much wondred to see our ship and surniture : we gaue them of our meat, which they cafting would not eate. Then two of them wee let on the Iland, where they suppofed the men to be; the other two were carried to their Tents againe. Those that went to feeke the men could not finde them , but came as neere the flip as they could , and at evening wee fet 50 them over to the other.

This place wee called Womens Hands; it lyeth in the latitude of 71. degrees 45, minutes : Womens Handsi here the Flood commeth from the Southward, at nep Tydes the water arifeth but fixe or feuen foote, and a South South-east Moone maketh a full Sea. The Inhabitants very poore, living chiefly on the fielh of Scales, dryed, which they cate raw, with the skinnes they cloathe themselves, and The people de also make coverings for their Tents and Boats which they dreffe very well. The Women in their scribes apparell are dafferent from the men , and are marked in the face with diners blacke flrokes or Women. lines, the skin being rafed with fome tharpe inftrument when they are young, and blacke colour put therein, that by no meanes it will be gotten forth.

Concerning their Religion, I can little fay: onely they hade a kinde of worthip or adoration. Religion. to the Sunne, which continually they will point vnto and firike their hand on their breaft, crying Ilyans; their dead they burie on the fide of the Hils, where they live ( which is commonly on fmall Ilands) making a pile of flones over them, yet not fo close but that wee might fee the dead body, the aire being fo pierfing that is keepeth them from much flinking fanour. So likewife and Dode

I have seene their Dogs buried in the same manner.

Vpon ti e fourth day we fet fayle from thence, having very faire weather, although the winde were contrary, and piyed to and fro betweene the Ice and the Land, being as it were a channell of feuen or eight leagues broad : then on the ninth day, being in the latitude of 74. degree 4.minutes, and much pettered with Ice, neere vote three small llands, lying eight miles fromth thore, we came to anchor neere one of them.

The fe llands are vied to be frequented with people in the latter part of the years, as it feemed by the houses and places where the tentshad stood but this years as yet they were not come: here the tides are very imall, especially the floud, which ariseth not about fine or fix foot, yet the ebbe runneth with an indifferent ftreame, the cause thereof (in mine opinion) is the great abundance of Snow, melting on the Land all this part of the yeare.

The tenth day wee let layle from thence, and flood through much Ice to the Westward to try if that further from the shoare, wee might proceede; but this attempt was soone quailed. for the more Ice we went through, the thicker it was, till wee could fee no place to put in the Seeing, that as yet we could not proceede, we determined to fland in for the shoare, there to

abide some few dayes, till such time as the Ice were more wasted and gone (for we plainely faw that it confumed very faft) with this refolution we flood in, and came to anchor among many Ilands, in the latitude of 73. degrees 45. minutes. On the twelfth day at night here wee continued two dayes without flew or figue of any people, till on the fifteenth day in the morning. 42 Inhabitants about one a clocke, then came two and fortie of the Inhabitants in their Boaresor Canoas, and 20 gaue vs Seale skinnes, and many peeces of the bone or horne of the Sea Vnicorne, and shewed vs

divers peeces of Sea Mors teeth; making fignes that to the Northward were many of them; in Vnicornes exchange thereof, we gaue them small peeces of Iron, Glasse Beads, and such like : at four feuerall times the people came to vs, and at each time brought vs of the aforesaid commodities, by reason thereof we called this place Horne Sound. Here we stayed fix dayes, and on the eighteenth day at night, we set sayle, having very little winde; and being at Sea, made the best way we could to the Northward, although the winde

had beene contrary for the molt part this moneth, but it was strange to see the Ice so much consumed in fo little space, for now we might come to the three Ilands before named, and stand off to the Westward almost twenty leagues, without let of Ice, vntill we were more North (as to 74. 30 degrees 20. minutes) then we put among much feattered Ice, and plyed to and fro all this month, fill in the fight of shoare, and many times fast in the Ice, yet every day we got something on our way, nothing worthy of note happening, but that at divers times we law of the fifthes with They feemany long hornes, many and often, which we call the Sea Vnicorne : and here to write particularly Sca Vnicornes, of the weather, it would be superfluous or needelesse, because it was so variable, sew dayes without Snow, and often freezing, in to much, that on Midfummer day, our shrowds roapes and failes

Sharp froft on were fo frozen, that we could fearie handle them; yet the cold is not fo extreame, but it may Midiummer well be endured. The first of July we were come into an open Sea, in the latitude of 75, degrees 40, minutes

which a new reuned our hope of a passage, and because the winde was contrary, wee stood off 40 twenty leagues from the shoare, before we met the Ice : then standing in againe; when we were neers the Land, we let fall an anchor to fee what tyde went, but in that we found small comfort. Shortly after the winde came to the South-east, and blew very hard, with foule weather, thicke, and foggie : then we fet fayle, and ran along by the Land : this was on the fecond day at night. The next morning we patt by a faire Cape, or head land, which wee called Sir Dudley Digges Cape, it is in the latitude of 76.degrees 35.minutes, and hath a small Iland close adioyning to it, the winde still increasing, we past by a faire Sound twelve leagues distant from the former Cape, having an Iland in the midit, which maketh two entrances. Vinder this Iland we came to anchor; and had not rid past two houres, but our Ship drove, although we had two anchors at the ground, then were we forced to fet fayle, and fland forth : this Sound wee called Wosfenbelme Sound : 50 hach many Inlets or smaller Sounds in it, and is a fit place for the killing of Whales.

The fourth day at one a clocke in the morning, the storme began againe at West and by South, so vehement, that it blew away our forecourse, and being not able to beare any Lyle, wee lay a drift till about eight a clocke, then it cleared vp a little, and we faw our felues imbayed in a great Sound : then we let fayle and flood ouer to the South-east fide, where in a little Coue or Bay we let fall an anchor, which we loft with cable and all, the winde blowing fo extreamely from the tops of the hils, that we could get no place to anchor in, but were forced to fland to and fro in the Sound, the bottome being all frozen over; toward two a clocke it began to be leffe winde, then we flood forth.

In this Sound we faw great numbers of Whales, therefore we called it Whale Sound, and doubtleffe if we had beene prouided for killing of them, we might have strooke very many. It lyeth in the latitude of 77, degrees 30, minutes. All the fift day it was very faire weather, and wee kept along by the Land till eight a clock in the cuening, by which time we were come to a great banke of Ice, it being backed with Land, which we feeing, determined to fland backe some eight

leagues, to an Hand we called Hacklans Ile, it lyeth betweene two great Sounds, the one Whale Sound, and the other Sit Thomas Smiths Sound : this last runneth to the North of feuenty eight Sir Thomas degrees, and is admirable in one respect, because in it is the greatest variation of the Compasse of Smiths Sound any part of the World known: for by divers, good Observations I found it to be about five points in 78, deg. or fifty fix degrees varied to the Westward, so that a North-east and by East, is true North, and to Variation of of the reft. Also this Sound seemeth to bee good for the killing of Whales, it being the greatest the compasse and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if 56.degrees to we could find any finnes or fuch like on the fhore, and so indeed this night wee came to anchor, the West. but with fuch foule weather, that our Boat could not lind. The next day were were forced to let Which may to fayle, the Sca was growne to high, and the wind came more outward. Two dayes were freme nable D.G.I. and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eight day it cleered up, and wee feeing w bettrule. Tom. t company of Ilands lye off from the shoare twelve or thirrowne Leagues, were minded to goe zor 1.2. c.1. that them, to fee if there we could Anchor. When we were fomething neere, the winder tooke vs where more floort; and being loth to fpend more time, we cooke opportunitie of the windered left the fear-arts dison of attraction of

. doth truly describe. Solve frood to the Westward in an open Sea, with a stiffe gale of wind, all the next day and variation to till the tenth day at one or two a clocke in the morning, at which time it fell calme and very the known con fogeie, and wee neere the Land in the entrance of a faire Sound, which wee called Alderman tinenes of Alia 20 Jones Sound, This afternoone being faire and cleere, we lent our Boat to the shoare, the ship be- &c.must be vaing under fayle, and affoone as they were on shoare, the wind began to blow; then they returned speakably more againe, declaring that they faw many Sea Morfes by the shoare among the Ice, and as farre as then here there againe, declaring that they law many sea Mories by the House among the fee, and as the can be, and yet they were, they law no figure of people, nor any good place to anchor in along the shoare. Then here is more having an eafie gale of wind at East North-east, we same along by the shoare, which now trend variation then deth much South, and beginneth to shew like a Bay.

On the twelfth day we were open of another great Sound, lying in the Latitude of 74 degrees Brafil, Pern, &c. 20. minutes, and we called it Sir Lames Lankasters Sound: here our hope of passage began to be This Map of leffe every day then other, for from this Sound to the Southward, wee had a ledge of Ice be- the author for tweene the shoare and vs, but cleare to the Sea ward, we kept close by this ledge of Ice till the this and the to foureteenth day in the afternoone, by which time wee were in the latitude of 71. degrees 16. formerVoyage fourcetent day in the presentation of which makes were in the statutes of interest of the work of the last of the Southward of 70 degrees 30 minutes, then were shaking for much lee round before the Last of the Southward of more Estimated, Juppeding to have been as of ship insurall having for much lee round beyon to the off face of the Lee, virial whard come into 70-degrees, then were forewhere the come of the state of to have flood in againe. But this proved quite contrary to our expectation: for wee were for- woublefome ced to runne aboue threefcore leagues through very much Ice, and many times fo fail, that wee and too coffly ced to runne about mercutor leagues through very most and many many many could go no wayes, although we kept our courfe due Eaft; and when wee had gotten into the 'o infers. open Sea, wee kept fo neere the Ice, that many times we had much adoe to get cleare, yet could Sound. not come neere the Land, till we came about 68. degrees, where indeede we law the shoare, but Sir lames Loncould not come to it by eight or nine leagues, for the great abundance of Ice. This was on the safter Sound. 400 four and eventieth day of luly: then ipens we three dayes more to fee if comeniently we They fee Land could come to anchor, to make trial for the cides, but the fee led's into the latitude of 6, de. and and them gree 400 minutes. Then we left of feeding to the Welf thours, because were were me felture embiding to the Welf thours, because we were me felture embiding indirate of Combeniesate Iles, and should know no certaintie, and hope of passing could like.

Now feeing that we had made an end of our discovery, and the years being too farre spent to goe for the bottome of the Bay, to fearch for dreft Finnes; therefore wee determined to goe for the Coast of Gromeland, to see if we could get some refreshing for our men: Master Hnbert and two more, having kept their Cabins about eight dayes (besides our Cooke. Richard Waymen, which died the day before, being the twenty fix of July) and divers more of our company fo weake, that they could doe but little labour. So the winde fauouring vs, we came to anchor in

50 the latitude of 65, degrees 45, minutes, at fix a clocke in the evening, the eight and twentieth day, in a place called Cankin Sound. The next day going on thoare, on a little Iland we found great abundance of the herbe called

Scuruie Graffe, which we boyled in Beere, and so dranke thereof, vsing it also in Sallets, with Sorrell and Orpen, which here groweth in abundance; by meanes hereof, and the bleffing of Scuruy Graffe. God all our men within eight or nine dayes space were in perfect health, and so continued till our arrivall in England.

Wee rode in this place three dayes before any of the people came to vs; then on the first of August, fix of the Inhabitants in their Canous, brought vs Salmon Peale, and such like, which 60 was a great refreshment to our men : the next day following, the same fix came againe, but after that we faw them no more vntill the fixt day, when we had wayed anchor, and were almost cleere of the harbour; then the same six and one more, brought vs of the like commodities, for which we gave them Glaffe Beads, Counters and small peeces of Iron, which they doe as much esterme, as we Christians doe Gold and Silver.

ching of these llands, which wee called Careyer llands, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map the compession

2d

In this Sound we faw fuch great Scales of Salmon (wimming to and fro, that it is much to be admired: here it floweth about eighteene foote water, and is at the highest on the change day. at feuen a clocke: it is a very good harbour, and eafie to be knowne, having three high round hils like Piramides close adioyning to the mouth of it, and that in the middest is lowest, and an long all this coast are many good harbours to be found, by reason that so many Hands lye off from the maine.

The fixt of August, by three a clocke in the afternoone, wee were cleere of this place, having a North North North-west winde, and faire weather, and the Lord sent vs a speedy and good paffage homeward as could be withed : for in nineteene dayes after, wee faw Land on the Id coaft of Ireland, it being on the five and twentieth day : the feuen and twentieth at noone we were two leagues from Sally, and the thirtieth day, in the morning wee anchored at Dower in the roade, for the which and all other his bleffings the Lord make vs thankfull.

#### CHAP. XX.

A briefe Discourse of the probabilitie of a passage to the Westerne or South Sea, illustrated with testimonies: and a briefe Treatife and Mappe by Master



Thought good to adde somewhat to this Relation of Master Baffin, that learned-vulearned Mariner and Mathematician; who wanting art of words, fo really employed himselfe to those industries, whereof here you see so euis dent fruits. His Mappes and Tables would have much illustrated his Voyages, if trouble, and cost, and his owne despaire of passage that way, had not made vs willing to content our felues with that Mappe following of that thrice lear-

ned (and in this argument three times thrice industrious) Mathematician, Master Brigges, 30 famous for his readings in both Vniuerfities, and this honourable Citie, that I make no further Voyage of Discouery to finde and follow the remote Passage and extent of his name. Mafter Baffin told mee, that they supposed the tyde from the North-west, about Digges Iland was milreported, by miltaking the houre, eight for eleuen : and that hee would, if hee might get employment, fearch the passage from Impan, by the coast of Afia, or (qua dataporta) any way hee could. But in the Indies he dyed, in the late Ormus businesse, flaine in fight with a shot, as hee was trying his Mathematicall projects and con-

Now for that discourry of Sir Thomas Button, I have solicited him for his Noates, and receiued of him gentle entertainment and kinde promifes; but being then forced to flay in the Citie 40 vpon necessary and vrgent affaires, he would at his returne home, feeke and impart them. Since I heare that weightie occasions have detained him out of England, and I cannot communicate that which I could not receive : which if I doe receive, I purpose rather to give thee out of due place, then not at all. Once he was very confident in conference with me of a paffage that way. and faid that he had therein fatisfied his Maiestie, who from his discourse in private, inferred the necessitie thereof. And the maine argument was the course of the tyde: for wintering in Port Nelfon (see the following Mappe) hee found the tyde rising every twelve houres fifteene foote (whereas in the bottome of Hudfons Bay it was but two foote, and in the bottome of Fretum Danis discouered by Baffin, but one) yea and a West winde equalled the nep tydes to the spring tydes; plainely arguing the neighbourhood of the Sea, which is on the Welt fide of America. The 70 Summer following he found about the latitude of 60 degrees a strong race of a tide, running sometimes Eastward, sometimes Westward; whereupon losses Hubbard in his plat, called that place Hubbarts Hope, as in the Map appeareth. Now if any make scruple, because this discouery was not purfued by Sir Thomas Button, let him confider, that being Prince Henries Servant, and partly by him employed (whence I thinke he named the Country New Wales) the votimely death of that Prince put all out of ioint; nor was hee so open, that others should have the glory of his dis-

And if any man thinke that the passage is so farre, as the Maps vie to expresse America, runming out into the West : it is easily answered, that either of negligence, or over-buse diligence, Maps by Portugals in the East, and Spaniards in the West, have beene falfely projected. Hence 60 that fabulous tirait of Anian, as before by Francis Gaules testimonie and nauigation is euident: And hence the Portugals to bring in the Moluccas, to that moity of the world agreed vpon betwirt the Spaniards and them, are thought to have much curtalled Afia, and the longitude of those Hands, giving fewer degrees to them then in inft longitude is requisite. So the older Maps

of America make the Land from the Magelaw Straits to the South Sea, runne much West, when as they rather are contracted somewhat Easterly from the North. The like is justly supposed of their falle placing, Quimra, and I know not (nor they neither) what Countries they make in America, to run fo farre North-weitward, which Sie Francis Drakes Voyage in that Sea (his No-"Albien, being little further Weltward then Aquainles) plainely cuince to be otherwise. This cafily Yea the late Map of California found to be an Iland, the Saunges diffourfes in all the Countries appeared in Northwards and Westwards from Freguine: fame whereof filled my friend Master Dermer with obtaining his to much confidence, that hearing of firange Ships which came thither for a kinde of Vre or earth, Vouse, Roome the men wing forkes in their diet, with Caldrons to dreft; their meate, &c. things nothing fur-10 table to any parts of America, hee supposed them to come from the East, neere to China or la therenith. pan, and therefore he made a Voyage purpolely to discover: but croffed with divers dislaters, hee returned to Highwa, frustrate of accomplishment that yeare, but fuller of confidence, as in a Let-

ser from Verginia he fignified to me, where death ended that his defigne foone after. But how often are the vitall Charts rejected by experience in thefe Nanigations, in this worke recorded ?

Painters and Poets are not alwayes the best Oracles. For further proofes of a passage about the se parts into the West Sea (or South, as it is called

from the first discourry thereof to the South, from the parts of New Spaine, whence it was nitt descried by the Spaniards) there is mention of a Portagall (and taken in a Carricke in Queene Elizabeths dayes, of glorious memory) confirming this opinion; Sir Martin Frebifher allo from 20 2 Persugall in Gumie, received incelligence of fuch a passage, he saying he had past it. The Pilots of Lubeneare fail generally to acknowledge fuch a thing; and the Admirall of D. Garcia Geoffrey Lass a of Cite-Real, in the time of Charles the fifth, is reported by the Coaft of Baccalass and Las brader, to have gone to the Moluccas. Vafco de Caronado writ to the Emperour, that at Cibela he was one hundred and iffere leagues from the South Sea, and a little more from the North. Antonie de Herera, the Kings Cerenifta Maier (part of whose workefolloweth) maketh with vs also, in the distances of places by him described. But to produce some authority more full, I have here prefented Thomas Conter a Marriner, and Maiter Michael Locky Merchant, and after them, a little Treatife aloribed to Mafter Brigger, together with his Map. And if any thinke that the Spamiard or Portugal would foone have discoursed such a pullage : these will answere, that it was Some of one 30 not for their profit to expose their East or Welt Indies to English , Dutch , or others , whom Merchants are not for their profit to expole their half or west restires by so neere a passage. First, Thomas Combes for Miling for

Thomas Cowles of Bedmefter, in the Cometie of Somerlet, Marriner, doe acknowledge, that fire yeares paft, at my being at Lisbon, in the Kingdome of Portugall, I did beare one Martin Chacke, a A news page, at my sensy at Liston, a tree Knyamne of Vortugall, side hours one Martin Chacke, as Portugal of Lisbon, reade a Body of his own em miding, which had had fee as the graves before the his time, in Print, in the Portugal to sensor, sinclering that the fadd Martin Chacke had found, twelves paret now paff, a way from the Portugal Indice, through a gaile of the New found Land, which he shought to be in September of the since the since the sing of the fadd indice, with former other Shipper of great had now, and he humidity in a fund Shippe of fourtform tommer, was alread from the mean the same than the since the same than the same was more compare of the store from Shapes, who have leaving from the store from the store from the store from the store from Shapes and the store from the s name is an invariant control of the control of the

to my band and marke, the minth of Aprill. Anno 1579.

auerreth thus much.

A Note made by me MICHAEL LOK the elder, touching the Strait of Sea, commonly called Fretum Anian, in the South Sea, through the North-west passage of Metaincognita.

Hen I was at Power, in Aprill 1596, happily arrived there an old man, about threefcore yeares of age, called commonly Inan de Fuen but named properly Apostoles Valerianes, of Nation a Greeke, borne in the Hand Cefalonia, of profession a Mariner , and an ancient Pilot 6c of Shippes. This man being come lately out of Spaine, arrived first at Ligarno, and went thence to Florence in Italie, where he found one Iohn Donglas, an Englishmen, a famous Mariner, ready comming for Venice, to be Pilot of a Veneties Ship, named Ragafena for England, in whose g pany they came both together to Venice. And lohn Denglas being well acquainted with m fore, he gaue me knowledge of this Greeks Pilot, and brought him to my speech : and in long

talke and conference betweene vs, in prefence of lobs Douglas: this Greeke Pilot declared in the Italian and Spanish languages, thus much in effect as followeth. First he faid, that he had bin in the West Indies of Spaine by the space of fortie yeares, and

had failed to and from many places thereof, as Mariner and Pilot, in the femice of the Spaniarde Alfo he faid, that he was in the Spanife Shippe, which in returning from the Hands, Philippia Oaptaine Can nas and China, towards Nona Spania, was sobbed and taken at the Cape California, by Captaine Candish Englishman, whereby he loft fixtie thouland Duckets, of his owne goods.

Also he laid, that he was Pilot of three small Ships which the Vizeroy of Mexico sent from Mexico, armed with one hundred men, Souldiers, vnder a Captain, Spaniards, to discourt the Straits to of Anian, along the coalt of the South-Sea, and to fortifie in that Strait, to refut the paffage and proceedings of the English Nation, which were feared to passe through those Straits into the South Sea. And that by reason of a mutinie which happened among the Souldiers, for the Sodomie of their Captaine, that Voyage was overthrowne; and the Ships returned backe from Ca-Informacoult to Nova Spania, without any effect of thing done in that Voyage. And that after

their returne, the Captaine was at Mexico punished by instice,
Alio he faid, that shortly after the faid Voyage was so ill ended, the faid Viceroy of Mexico. fent him out againe Anno 1 592. with a finall Caranela, and a Pinnace, armed with Mariners one-

ly, to follow the find Voyage, for discouery of the same Straits of Anian, and the passage thereof, into the Sea which they call the North Sea, which is our North-west Sea. And that he followed his course in that Voyage West and North-west in the South Sea, all along it the coast of No-11.1 Spania, and California, and the Indies, now called North America (all which Voyage hee fig. Land trending miffed to me in a great Map, and a Sea-card of mine owne; which I laied before him) virtill hee in 47- degrees, came to the Latitude of forthe feuen degrees, and that there finding that the Land trended North and North-east, with a broad lister of Sea, betweene 47, and 48 degrees of Latitude : hee entred thereinto, fayling therein more then twentie dayes, and found that Land trending still fometime North-west and North-east, and North, and also East and South-eastward, and very much broader Sea then was at the faid entrance, and that hee paffed by druers llands in that favling. And that at the entrance of this faid Strait, there is on the North-west coast thereof, a great Hedland or Iland, with an exceeding high Pinacle, or spired Rocke, likea piller 30

> Also he said, that he went on Land in divers places, and that he saw some people on Land, clad in Beafts skins : and that the Land is very fruitfull, and rich of gold, Siluer, Pearle, and other

things, like Nona Spania.

And also he faid, that he being entred thus farre into the faid Strait, and being come into the The mouth of North Sea already, and finding the Sea wide enough every where, and to be about thirtie of forme leagues wide in the mouth of the Straits, where hee entred; hee thought he had now well discharged his office, and done the thing which he was sent to doe : and that hee not being armed to relift the force of the Saluage people that might happen, hee therefore let sayle and returned homewards againe towards None Spania, where hee arrived at Acapitles Anno 40 1502. hoping to be rewarded greatly of the Viceroy, for this femice done in this faid

> Also he said, that after his comming to Mexico, hee was greatly welcommed by the Viceroy, and had great promites of great reward, but that having fued there two yeares time, and obtained nothing to his content, the Viceroy told him, that he should be rewarded in Spaine of the King him felfe very greatly, and willed him therefore to goe into Spaine, which Voyage hee did performe.

Also he faid that when he was come into Spaine, he was greatly welcommed there at the Kings Court, in wordes after the Spanish manner, but after long time of fuite there also, hee could not get any reward there neither to his content. And that therefore at the length he ftole away out of Spaine, and came into Halle, to goe home againe and line among his owne Kindred and Countrimen, he being very old.

Also he faid, that hee thought the cause of his ill reward had of the Spaniards, to bee for that they did vindershand very well, that the English Nation had now given order all their voyages for discourrie of the North-west passage, wherefore they need not feare them any more to come that way into the South Sea, and therefore they needed not his feruice therein any more.

Also he faid, that in regard of this ill reward had of the Spaniards, and understanding of the noble minde of the Queene of England, and of her warres maintayned to valiantly against the Spaniarde, and boping that her Maiestie would doe him justice for his goods lost by Captaine Greath, he would bee content to goe into England, and ferue her Maietie in that veyage for the disjouerie perfectly of the North-west passage into the South Sea, and would put his life into her 60 The fit aight to Maightes hands to performe, the fame, if thee would furnish him with onely one thip of fortie tunes burden and a Pinnaffe, and that he would performe it in thirsie dayes time, from one end to the other of the Streights. And he willed me to to write into England.

Iuan de Fucas Letters and Relation of a passage.

And upon this conference had twife with the faid Greeke Pilot, I did write thereof according ly into England vnto the right honourable the old Lord Treasurer Cecill, and to Sir Walter Raleigh, and to Malter Richard Hakluys that famous Colmographer, certifying them hereof by my Letters. And in the behalfe of the laid Greeke Pilot, I prayed them to disburse one hundred nounds of money, to bring him into England with my felfe, for that my owne purfe would not itretch io wide at that time. And I had answere hereof by Letters of friends, that this action was very well liked, and greatly defired in England to bee effected; but the money was not readie and therefore this action dyed at that time, though the faid Greeke Pilot perchance liveth fill this day at home in his owne Countrie in Cefalonia, towards the which place he went from me within a forenight after this conference had at Uenice.

And in the meane time, while I followed my owne basinesse in Umice, being in Law suit asainst the Companie of Merchants of Turkie, and Sir John Spencer their Governour in London , to recouer my pention due for my office of being their Confull at Aleppo in Turkie , withich they held from me wrongfully. And when I was (as I thought) in a readmeffe to returns home into England, for that it pleased the Lords of her Maietties honourable Prime Counsell in England, to looke into this Caufe of my Law fint for my reliefe ; I thought that I should be able of my owner pur fe to take with me into England the faid Greeke Pilot. And therefore I wrote vinto him from

Venice a Letter, dated in July 1596. which is copied here-vnder.

Al Mageo. Sigor. Capitan Iv AN DE Frea Piloto de Indias, amigo mio charme en Zefalonia.

M 17 hoursalo Sennor, sendo 70 para huchierme en Inglatierra dentre de pocas mecet, y accuerdandeme de lo trattado entre un 71 % M. en Venesa, sobre el viagio de las Indias, me ha purisida bien de sermir esta certa a V. M. puraque si tensa, anima de andac com ingo, paedas esterbirano pesto, en que maniera quereis conferência. I puedadi enhacimo vueltra carr , c'm esta nao ingles que sta al Zante (sino ballais otra coientura meier) con el sobrescritto que diga, en casa del Sennor Eleazat Hyc-30 man Mercader Ingles, al tragetto de San Thomas en Venifia. T Dios guarde la persona de U. M. Fecha en Venefia al primer dia de Iulio, 1 596: amos.

Amigo de V. M. Michael Lok Ingles.

And I fent the faid Letter from Venice to Zance, in the thip (berubin. And thortly after I fent a copie thereof in the ship Mynyon. And also a third copie thereof by Manea Orlando Patron de Name Venetian. And voto my faid Letters he wrote mee answere to Vence by one Letter which came not to my hands. And also by another Letter which came to my hands, which is copied here-vnder.

Al Illmo. Sigor. MICHAL LOCH Ingles, in casadel Sigor. LASARO Merca. der Ingles, al tragetto de San THOMAS en Venesia.

· Vy lllustre Seger. la carta de U. M. receni à 20, dias del Mese di Settembre, por loqual veo M Loche V. M. me manda, io tengho animo de complir Loche tengo promettido à V. M. y no solo 30, mai tengo vinte hombres para lieuar con migo, por che son hombres vagientes; y asse sessioned son hombres vagientes; y asse se son de complex vagientes; y asse se son de complex va de co por etra caria che anife à U. M. parache me embiais les dimieres che tengo escritio à V. M. Perche bien sauc V. M. como io vine poner, porche me gliene Capitan Candis mas de sessant mille ducados, So come V. M. bien sane : embiandome lo dicho, ire à sernir à V. M. con todos mis compagneros. I no spero otra cossa mas de la voluntad è carta de V. M. I con tanto nostro Sigur. Dios guarda la Illustre per-Sona de U. M. muchos annos. De Ceffaloma à 24 de Settombre del 1596.

Amigo & servitor de V.M.

And the faid Letter came to my hands in Venice, the 16. day of November, 1596. but my Law fuite with the Companie of Turkie was not yet ended , by reason of Sir Iohn Spencers suite made in England at the Queenes Court to the contrarie, feeking onely to have his money difcharged which I had attached in Vence for my faid pension , and thereby my owne purse was 60 not ver readie for the Greeke Pilot.

And nevertheletie, hoping that my faid fuite would have shortly a good end; I wrote another Letter to this Greeke Pilot from Venice, dated the 20, of November, 1 596, which came not to his hands. And also another Letter, dated the 24. of Ianuarie, 1596. which came to his hands. And thereof he wrote me answere, dated the 28, of May, 1597, which I received the first of August

1597. by Thomas Norden an English Merchant yet liuing in Lordon, wherein he promised flilled goe with me unto England, to performe the faid voyage fordiscource of the North-week passage into the Souch Sea, it I would lied him money for his charges according to his former writing, without the which money, he faid he could not goe, for that he faid he was vindone veterly, when The Ship Santa he was in the flip Santa About, which came from Chima, and was robbed at Chilipmini. "And yet, dates."

Assat.

The Stip Series he was in the litip Series shound, which came from Chima, and was robbed at California; 'had yet, stone.

and a signed afterward I wrote him another Letter from Proises, whereauto he wrote me antiwere, by a Letter written in his Greeke language, dated the 20. of October, 1998, the which I have full by me; wherein he promiteth full to go with the into England, and performer the fail of veryes of discoverized the North-weft passage mot the South Sea by the fail threights, which he callect he fail of North-weft passage mot the South Sea by the fail threights, which he callect he of North-weft passage in the first play, if I will lead to of North-weft passage which the callect her fail the work of the Mark Spania, which he faith is but thirtie daies voyage in the streights, if I will lead to of North-weft passage which he called the three high called the yet fend him.

thirtie dayes for that I had not yet recoursed my pension owing mee by the Companie of Turke aforesaid.

Sension with him in this matter,

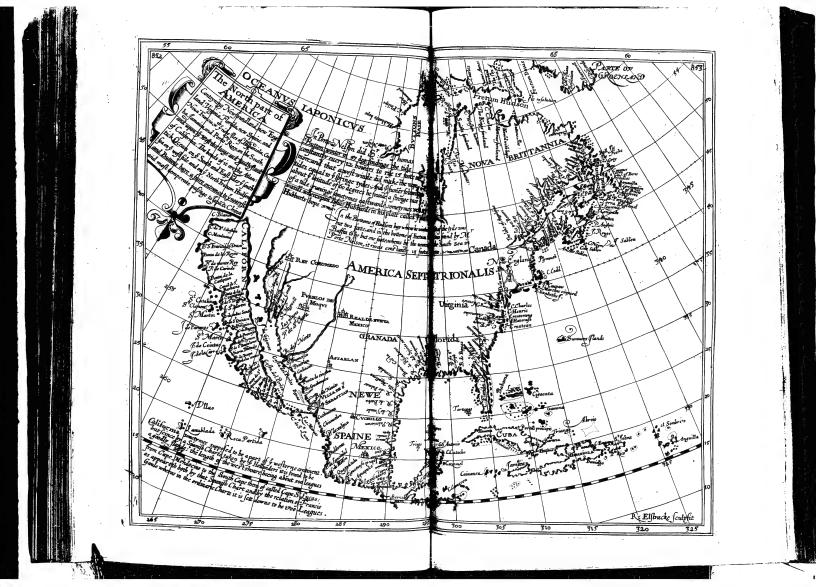
And yet hafty, when I'my felle was at Zante, in the moneth of lune 1602, minding to paffe from thence for England by Sea, for that I had then recovered a little money from the Companie of Tarke, by an order of the Lords of the Prime Countill of England, I wrote nother Letter to this Greek Pilot to Cofalonia, and required him to come to me to Zante, and goe with mee into this Greek Pilot to Cofalonia, and required him to come to me to Zante, and goe with mee into the Analysis of the Analysis of the Sea from Sante to Venice, and from thence I went by land through France into England, which is a facility of a Correct of the Company of Tarket boliness, which least not the respective time; with great viriables had for the Company of Tarket boliness, which hath cost me a great fumme of money, for the which I am not yet fastingth of them.

## A Treatise of the North-well passage to the South Sea, through the Consinent of Virginia, and by Fretum Hudson.

The noble plantation of Virginia hash fome very excellent prerogatives above many other 30 famous Kingdomes, namely, the temperature of the aire, the fruitfulness of the toile, and the commodious fuel of fluitunion.

The aire is healthfull and free both from immoderate heate, and from extreme cold; for that both the Iniabitants and their Castell doe proping exceedingly in fature and fitength, and all Plants brought from any other remote climate, doe there grow and fruefite in agood or better manner, then in the folk from where they easpe. Which though it doe manifelly proous the fruitfulfuefice of the folk; yeelding all kindes of Graine or Plants committed vators, with a rich and plentifull increase; yet cannot the famelie of the earth alone produce such excellent effects, validite the temperature of the are be likewise for fauousle, that those tender fiprous which the earth doth abundantly bring forth, may be ethersselfled with moderate heate and seasonable moi-40 strue, and treed both from icorching drought, and nipring fresh.

These bleffings are so much the more to be esteemed, because they are bestowed upon a place fituated to conveniently, and at fo good a distance both from Europe, and the West Indies . that for the mutuall commerce betwixt these great and most rich parts of the habitable world, there cannot bee deutled any place more convenient for the faccour and refreshing of those that trade from hence thither : whether they be of our owne Nation, or of our Neighbours and Friends, the multitude of great and nauigable Rivers, and of fate and spacious Harbours, as it were inviting all Nations to entertaine mutual! friendship, and to participate of those blessings which God out of the abundance of his rich Treasures , hach so graciously bestowed some vpon these parts of Esrope, and others no lesse defired vpon those poore people: which might still have remayned in 50 their old barbarous ignorance, without knowledge of their owne miferie, or of Gods infinite goodnesse and mercy; if it had not pleased God thus graciously both to draw vs thither with defire of fuch wealth as those fruitfull Countries afford, and also to grant vs so easie, certaine, and fafe a meanes to goe vnto them : which paffage is in mue opinion made much more fecure and easie by the commodious Harbours and refreshing which Virginia doth reach out voto vs. The coasts of Florida to the West, being not so harberous; and of New England to the East, somewhat more out of the way, amongst so many Flats and small Ilands not to safe: Neither is the commodiousnesse of Virginia's situation onely in respect of this West Atlantiche Ocean, but also in respect of the Indian Ocean, which we commonly call the South Sea, which lyeth on the West and North-west fale of Virginia, on the other fale of the Mountaines beyond our Fails, and openeth a free and faire paffage, not onely to China, lapan , and the Moluccaes; but also to New 60 Spaine, Para, Chili, and thole rich Countries of Terra Auftralis, not as yet fully discouered. For the Sea wherein Master Hadfon did winter, which was first discovered by him, and is therefore now called Freeum Hadfon, doth thretch to farre towards the West, that it lyeth as farre West-



ward as the Cape of Florida: So that from the Falls aboue Henrico Citie, if we shape our journey towards the North-west, following the Rivers towards the head, wee shall undoubtedly come to the Mountaines, which as they fend divers great Rivers Southward into our Bay of Chefer sock, fo likewile doe they fend others from their further fide North-westward into that Bay where Hudfon did winter. For fo wee fee in our owne Countrie, from the ridge of Mountaines continued from Derbifbire into Scotland, doe iffue many great Rivers on both fides into the East Germore Ocean, and into the Westerne Irish Seas : in like fort from the Alpes of Switzerland and the Grizons, doe runne the Danubie Eastward into Pontsus Euzense, the Rhone into the North Germane Ocean, the Rhofne West into the Mediterrane Sea, and the Po South into the Adriatice 10 Sea. This Bay where Hudfon did winter, ftretcheth it felfe Southward into 49, degrees, and

cannot be in probabilitie fo farre diffant from the Falls as two hundred leagues; part of the way lying by the Rivers fide towards the Mountaines from whence it fpringeth; and the other part on the other fide cannot want Rivers likewife, which will conduct vs all the way, and I hope carry vs and our promisions a good part of it. Besides that Bay, it is not wnlikely that the Weflerne Sea in some other Creeke or River commeth much neerer then that place : For the place where Sir Thomas Buston did winter, lying more Westerly then Master Hudsons Bay by one hundred and ninetic leagues in the fame Sea, doth extend it felte very neere as farre towards the west as the Cape of California, which is now found to bee an Iland stretching it selfe from 22. degrees to 42, and lying almost directly North and South; as may appeare in a Map of that Iland which 20 I have feene here in London , brought out of Holland ; where the Sea vpon the North-west part may very probably come much neerer then some doe imagine : who giving too much credit to our vivall Globes and Maps, doe dreame of a large Continent extending it felfe farre Westward to the imagined Streight of Anian, where are feated (as they fable) the large Kingdomes of Cobola and Quinira, having great and populous Cities of civill people; whose houses are said to bee fine flories high, and to have some pillars of Turqueffes. Which relations are cunningly set downe by some vpon set purpose to put vs out of the right way, and to discourage such as otherwise might be defirous to fearch a paffage by the way atorelaid into those Seas.

Gerardus Mercator, a very industrious and excellent Geographer, was abused by a Map fent vnto him, of foure Euripi meeting about the North Pole; which now are found to bee all tur-20 ned into a mayne Icie Sea. One demonstration of the craftie falshood of these viual Maps is this, that Cape Mendocino is fet in them Well North-well, distant from the South Cape of California, about seventeene hundred leagues, whereas Francis Gaule that was imployed in those discoueries by the Vice-roy of New Spaine, doth in Hugo Linfebotten his booke fet downe their di-

stance to be onely fine hundred leagues. Befides this, in the place where Sir Thomas Button did winter in 57. degrees of latitude, the constant great Tydes every twelve houres, and the increase of those Tydes whensoever any ftrong Westerne winde did blow, doe strongly perswade vs that the mayne Westerne Ocean is not farre from thence; which was much confirmed vnto them the Summer following; when fayling directly North from that place where they wintered, about the latitude of 60, degrees, 40 they were croffed by a ftrong Current running fometimes Eastward, fometimes Westward: So that if we finde either Hudfons Bay, or any Sea more neere vnto the West, wee may affure our ielues that from thence we may with great eale paffe to any part of the East Indies : And that as the World is very much beholding to that famous Columbia for that hee first discoursed vnto vs the West Indies; and to the Portugal for the finding out the ordinarie and as yet the best way that is knowne to the East Indies, by Cape Bona Speranza: So may they and all the world be in this beholding to vs in opening a new and large paffage, both much neerer, fafer, and farre more wholesome and temperate through the Continent of Virginia, and by Fretum Hudson, to all those rich Countries bordering vpon the South Sea, in the East and West Indies. And this hope that the South Sea may eafily from Virginia be discourred over Land, is much confirmed by the confrant report of the Sauages, not onely of Virginia, but also of Florida and Canada: which dwel-50 ling fo remote one from another, and all agreeing in the report of a large Sea to the Westwards, where they describe great ships not valike to ours, with other circumstances, doe give vs very great probabilitie (if not full affurance) that our endeuours this way shall by Gods bleiling have a prosperous and happy successe, to the encrease of his Kingdome and Glorie amongst these poore ignorant Heather people, the publique good of all the Christian world, the neuer-dying honour of our most gracious Soueraigne, the mestimable benefit of our Nation, and the admirable and fpeedie increase and advancement of that most noble and hopefull Plantation of Virginia; for the good fucceffe whereof all good men with mee, I doubt not, will powre out their prayers to H. B.



# VOYAGES AND TRA-VELS TO AND IN THE NEW WORLD, CALLED

AMERICA: RELATIONS OF THEIR

PAGAN ANTIQUITIES AND OF THE

REGIONS AND PLANTATIONS

IN THE NORTH AND SOVIH

parts thereof, and of the Seas and

Hands adjacent.

# THE FIFTH BOOKE.

GARRES BASES A Description of the West Indies, by ANTONIO DE HER-RERA bis Maiestice Chiefe Chronisler of the Indies, and his Chronisler of Castille.

To the Licentiate P a v & of Engana, Prefident of the Royall and Supreme Councell of the Indics.

He Licensiate Iohn of Obardol, Predecifor of your Levilop (in vion medicine) whose comments of the Chronic for the Index via difference inc. I blue to ted, for writing with greater authoritie, Jonadaimo, and trath, which synthes Att of the Califliam in the New 1986, index for the difference on the Originals. that which the other Chroniclers Should write (for I finde that and com absoft to all that is written no credit could be guen, for over much it allo with the factories, wherevish contil then is was done) her view great difference in the continuing case. conver, where we want to mit to eas a was done ) the volar grad and reduce on which great with the properties of the pro

rude, obfure and is very many places verely fenceleife. But hasing new convince for more hunting-clarec hasid, I rather choo to a mend duised. I could, then no repulsate it arew. Linux fence it also in French. The Issue it recognised failer in form commons, a suppose for roop, during mere, despited in none for their flase which reads that and have per the profile places are controlled with a few flash reads that and have the profile places or controlled with a few flash reads and the profile places for the profile places for the profile places for the profile places flashing. Colonier, Thomas Office van del Obsermants spiritual and I temporal him to find, This families that has the hardest and the profile places for the profile places from the profile places from the find. This families that the hardest the submittant was the profile places from the places f sight December of the Stameh Acts set the West rapies, which game great light to those parts, but would be too long for this Works.

are more curlous to fet hane there of the beafts. planes, Earth. Heauen, &c. in the tadiet . for which hee there com-

thips, Rememniard feakes

The degrees of longitude, which are those that are reckoned by the a Equinoctiall, which 60 affow the de goeth from Bailt to Weft, through the middeft of the Orbe, and Globe of the Earth, have not gres of long! beene able to bee taken well, because there is no fixed figne in the Heaten. Degrees of altitude
are those which are taken, and reckoned from the Pole which fall out certayne, because it is a

of memorie should no longer be buried, and that they should be written by a Royall Chronicles (seeing so much from is gotton of Historie, that is exceeded to much the Pitture, at the foule, the bodie, against the opinion of a moderne Writer.) Providing all the meanes necessaries with liberalists and difference have beene the moere and onely Inftrument; following the opinion of S. Augustine, that this Hifterie, and the ricably taxed: for he doth but Description that followeth hath come to the present effate. And because it hath not beene of least imperblane the fol-tance to bosone the Author, assumating him to got forward with for great a labour, assuming young young to family felly with the universal followings the use that is due to the machings, and labours of the Friedrich and the universal followings of the Universal fo folly with the vasture full openion of the muses tran is and to tree matering, and theories of the principle, on any this Office of Chaple Chromicals in these posses and vegatation these to shot hem Exercife deferreds, on the most favoure men of the tree that the most favoure men of the tree that have indeed it, and it is obtained and taking of among all Nationals to they mere for horizontal post of the principle in 10 which is presented the making mentioned finisher Tatherit, and Productifors with their Names, and it is publicly in presented the making mentioned finisher Tatherit, and Productifors with their Names, and Country, all that hath before 10 fifther, against the best between and most trends of this Baytifia.

Ramusifo, in his Promes in the third Falume of the Namigations, where he faith to be been a value than the country of the trends of the Namigations. though but to- and ridiculous, that the Spanish Authors should take paines in writing the names and Country of the bellions, then which ferned in the matters of the Indies. Wherein be heweth the venime of the onnie concessed of the glerious deeds of these Catholike Kings, and of the Castillian Nation, feeing the Chronicles dee forme to honour the good, and to reproch the enill, for an example of those to come; which could not be obtained with the opinion of this Ramulius, whom the faying of Cato against the Grecians doth fit, But the with the operation of the abstract of the state of the st bee reknowledged of it eternally. God keepe your Lordship, from Vallyadolycede the fifteenth of Odober 1601.

He compatic of the Earth is 260 degrees, which being reduced to leagues of Cafile are 6200. and by the compare of the Earth is vinderstood the Sea together with it, which two Elements make the Globe; whose vpper face in part is Earth, and in part is Sea : The Ancients diuided the Earth in three parts, and gaue to every one his name. The first they called Emps, more celebrated then any of the other. The second Affa, which is greater then the rest, and contayneth the great Kingdome of China. The third. Africa And men being in a supposition that contayment ungreat anguouse or comments in the contrayment and man being manaportion that the World contaymed no more there was reflectefed, not contenting themselves with it, entred 30 in the Art of Naugazing, and in the inneutrion of libra of high being for the them in fach order that they might abole the force of the wanes of the Sea, do this Art the Spanisard have 1 The Speciards furpaffed all the Nations of the World. For whiles there reigned Ferdinand in Cafile and in have surpassed Lyon, the famous Kings Catholike Ferdinando the Fift, and Ifabella a most wise, prudent, and most pursant Queene; and Don John the Second , called the Pellican , raigned in Portugal, (hee that ever will be worthy of memory) Don Christopher Colon, first Admirall of the Indies, having lived many yeeres married in Spaine; with the counfell of Martin of Bobensia, a Portugall borne in the lland of Farall, a famous Aftrologian , and especially a Judiciarie, and of others ber that a Spa- with whom he communicated it, gaue a beginning so the Difcourry of that which at this day is counted the fourth part of the World, and the greatest of them all, and taking his course toward the Sunne fetting, going from Paller a Village of the Earle of Miranda, in the Coast of Anda-40 luzis, he fayled fo much by the Ocean, that hee found this great Land, which the Equino diall Line cutteth in the middelt, and it goeth so farre toward the South, that it reacheth to fiftie two degrees and an halfe, and goeth so high to the North, that it hides it selfer under the Pole Articke, without m knowing any end.

The greatnesse of this fourth part hath set the people in great samiration, whose description shall here be handled, winder the name of Hands, and firme Land of the Ocean Sea, because they are compaffed with this Sea, and placed to the West, and are commandy called, the West Indies, and the New World, and comprehended within the limits of the Kings of Caffule and of Lym. and the New York and national comparison of the World, of 180. degrees, beginning to reckon from Meridian Circle, which paffets by thirtie nine, or by fortie degrees of knogfrinde, Ocidental 10 from the Meridian of Toleia, brough the mouth of the Ruer Collegness, and to the Orientall, through the Citie of Mallace, in fort, that at twentie leagues laying for a degree, thefe bounds have from the one part to the other 3000. Capitaliae leagues, early loss of 3000, paces, of fine foot of a Caffiller yard, which mentay are fixtie Italian miles, from the Orient to the Occident, which the Sea-men doe call East and West. And this account of twentie leagues to a degree, is according to Peolomie, and to the opinion of many curious men. It hath feemed to others that the miles of enery degree are feuentie, and that they make no more then feuenteene leagues and an halfe of Caffile, which is held for the trueft account.

## CHAP. 1. How farre America hath bin discouered. Nature of the Loadstone.

fixed point, which is the marke that is taken, by the which it shall be shewed in this description. There is discourred, and naugated from the North to the South, from 60. degrees of Septentri. What is discoanal altitude, voto fiftie three Austral, which are 1977, leagues of ground, which hath in breadth, ucred and na-

onal attitude, vinto nittle times Autura, without a property of the broadest 1 300, and thence downewards winto eighteene, which is the narowest by Nemat the broaden 1300, and the local whereby Nature divided this Land, leating almost the discoursed far balle of it to the North, and the rest to the South, which are the two parts of these bounds. The more: From third, is the llands and firme land, that lye to the East of Mallaca, where through passed the 81. in Green third, is the llands and free land, this system to the basis remains a system to be which although land, and from Lincot the partition, between the two Growness of Castle and Personals 1 we which although land, and from they are part of the Eath Indea, they are named of the Westin respect to Castles, as shall bee

to feene in the generall Map that followeth. And because the Discouerie of all these Regions, from whence so great Riches have beene Amaruellous brought to steels Kingdomes, is due voto the Load-stone, I will set downe heere a wonderfull ef- Amaruellous fect of his, difeouered by Don Antonio Offerio, a Gentleman of Valladolid, and it is, that it doth effect of the communicate to the Iron, more attractive vertue then naturally it hath of it felfe; feeing that Loadine. communicate to the 100n, more attractive vertor tier in total ny to make the view of the 100n datasite applying an ilron to the sart of the front that hath most force, much more weight will bee ray. Den datasite applying an ilron to the sart of the front that hath of the communication of the communicat applying an iron to the part of the flone it selfe; fo it bee loyned with it, in fort that to a Load urreit a great ftone, that weighesh no more then two pound one quarter, and hath no naturall vertue for to keret of the lift more then fixe ounces weight, it made the Iron in my prefence to lift fourteene pound of I Lozdinane ron, and this vertue bath not the Load-stone of Spaine, a thing that causeth the Philosophers to

20 mule much vport.

The Author had here inferred a Table or Generall Map of America; the defell of which wee have Supplied with this farre more complete of Hondius.

#### HONDIVS.bis Map of AMBRICA.



Chap. 2. Of the Naui-

How many

THe Ocean that is toward the East, as caused us vorted on a Hipponia and Para: that washesh West, Mar del Sur, or the Somb Sea: this washesh Nona Hipponia and Para: that washesh west, Mar del Sur, or the Somb Sea: this washesh toward the Magellas Streight: "He Ocean that is toward the East, is called the North Sea, and that which falleth to the thole Regions which are lituated on the South coaft of Brafile toward the Magellan Streight : and especially the North coast from Brafile toward Caffile , and other Septemerical parts. These two vait Seas are duided into other leffer Seas and Gulfes, and are fayled by foure principall Nauigations. The first and most ancient, from Cashile to Terra firme, and to None Hispania. The second, from Caftile to the River of Plate, and the Streight of Magellan. The third, from the coast of Nona Hispania to Guatimala, and Panama, to Peru, Chile, and the Streight. And the last. and newest, from Nona Hispania to the Blands of the West, and trafficke of China, as it is seenein 10 the Table preceding.

The first Nauigation, because it is most vied, called Carrera de las Indias , The course of the Indies, is divided in two, one to the port of Saint lobe of Ulas in None Hift aris , whitherto from Simil is fayled about one thousand and seven hundred leagues in two moneths and an halfe; and another to Nombre de Dies , and now to Porte belle , which is in the Kingdome which they call Terra firme; of one chouland and foure hundred leagues, in two moneths large, and both goe by one course, till they come to the Hands of the North Sea from Saint Locar of Barrameda, whence vee cannot take Sea without a Pilot skilfull in the Channell, a fit winde and spring Tydes, and light of the day, or lights, for to fee the markes of the Barre.

going out of the Barre of Saint I acat.

The Times for to begin these Nauigations, are divers. For Nona Hispania, the winter being 20 paft, from the beginning of April vnto the end of May, and not after, that they may not come tions are to be to the Hands of the North Sea after August, when the North winder begin to reigne, and the Vrecanes doe begin, which are stormes and great gusts arising of contrarie windes. And to Terra firme, the Nauigation is before the entring of the Winter, in all August and September, that they may come to Porte bello from Nonember forward, when by the beginning of the North winder that Coast is alreadie least diseased, and more healthfeil.

The voyage of the Fleers till the place wher they goe.

From Saint Lucar they goe to the Canaries, whither there is about two hundred and fiftie leagues of Nauigation, of eight or ten dayes, through the Gulfe de las Topus; which in winter is very dangerous for flormes : and in the Port of Congris they caft anker when they thinks it good, or elfe in the Port of Comera, which is the best of those Ilands. From the Conserse they 30 faile to Deffeada, which flands in 15. degrees and little more; and to Dominica, whicher they make seuen hundred leagues, through the great Ocean, and they stay sue and twentie dayes, whereby they cannot returne, because the Brises are ordinarie, and contrarie at their returne. The Brifes are windes which comprehend all the Easterne windes with all their quarters and are fo ordinarie and firme, because the swift motion of the First Moener, doth carry after him the Element of the Aire, as the other fiperior Orbes: and so the Aire followeth alwaies the motion of the Day, going from East to West, never varying, and the effectual motion of the Aire carrieth after him also the vapours and exhalations that doe arise from the Sea, and therefore the Brile winde which runneth from the East, is so continuall in those parts. This voyage from the Canaries to Dominica, Peter Aries of Anila , which was called Gentill and the Initer , made the 40 first, the yeere of 1514. When hee went with an Armie for Governour and Captaine generall of the Kingdome of Golden Castele, now called Terrasirme, fince which the Nauigation hath beene ordered, that vntill then went out of order.

Because it is now ordered that fresh water and wood be not taken in the Hand of Desteads.

and in Dominica, the Fleet of Nona Espanna goe hence to Occoa, a Port of the Iland Hispan-yola, to take refreshing, and they stay long because the stormes from (what doe overtake it. And they They take was that goe for Nona Espanna, doe water in the Hand of Gnadalupe, and there they divide the courter alreadie in fes. The fleet of Nona Espanna goeth in demand of the Cape of Saint Antonie, which is in the the He of Gua- furtheft part and most Occidentall of the Hand of Cuba, to which place they faile about five hundred leagues in twentie dayes ordinarily, in fight of Saint John of Porto Rico and of Espannols, two 50 leagues off the Port of Saint Domingo, running along the coast by the Point of Nizao, and betweene the Hands of Cuba and Iamayon, they goe with great heede of the shoales, which are cal-led the Iardines, neere to the middest of the coast of Cuba where many ships have beene lost, pasfing afterward in fight of the Hand of Pines and Cape Correntes twelve leagues fhort of the Cape of Saint Antonie. From whence there are two courses to the Port of Venacruz, both of tenor twelve daves a one which they call Wahin Land, of two hundred and fiftie leagues, for the Summer time from May to September, when there bee no North windes which are croffe windes on the coast of Tucatan, whereby they passe; and another which they call Without, for the time of Winter, of about two hundred and eightie leagues somewhat higher in altitude: and the best Namigation, for to goe to the Port of Saint Iohn de Viua, is to leane to the coal of Florida, and the Playnes of Almeria, that no contrarie wind stay him from seasonable attayning the Port of Saint

Cape of S. An. John de Vlus.

delape, where the Courfes

The fleets that went from Dominica, and now goe from Guadalupe to Terra firme (whither is about foure hundred leagues voyage of fifteene dayes) they goe in demand of Carragena, farre off the coast of Torra firms, where the Brifes are almost perpetuall, and contrarie to the returne, and the Southerne windes continuall in Summer, and the Northerne in Winter; which are eroffe windes. They doe reknowledge by the way the Cape de Pella between Santa Martha and a Pe- a Officie netalla, and the Cape ball Again neere Carragena, where they valade the merchandife that are Penier. to goe to New Kinfilome; and those which are to patie to Peru, are carried to Porce belle, whit b Or of the thereo from Carageme are ninetie leagues, foure or fixe dayes layling, reknowledging the Point Needle. of Gaptina, and fromtile Comaries to Cartagena is fine and thirtie dayes fayling.

Fhole that goot of Hunduratand Guatemala, goe in companie with them of Nona Efforma, The royage of who Cape Tiburen, the vimost Westerne part of Espannels, from whence running along by Hunduras and In the Hand of Landyes on the North fide, wnto the Point of the " Negrale, the vttermoft of it, c Or little they put to Stalin demand of the Cape of the Cameron, the beginning of the Gulfe and Prounce black Mooits. of Hawkerse ; from whence they goe to anker to Traville fifteene leagues to the West from the Cape, where the merchandize secondaden that are to remains there, and the rest doe passe to the Port of Canalles, and to Golfe Duice, along the toult by the Guite of Hunduras, to transport them

W. 18 to Guatemala. "He returne from the Indies to Spaine, cannot be made by the course which they take in go- Chep. 3. Ting chither; and therefore they must come to a greater height, going out of the Tropicks Whereinhee ing chither; and therefore they must come to a greater height, going out of the Tropicks Whereinhee to feeke fresh windes which doe blow from towards the North; all the Fleetes doe meete in the profecuent to lette trein winders which does now trom towards the average at the elected one meet in the positions of Port of Hanson, about the models of line, to come to Spaine before Whitner; for the East the Naugard Port of Hanson, about the models of line, to come to Spaine before Whitner; for the East the Naugard Port of Hanson, and the Southalfo is trautrie in the Coaff Indian. from the Cape Saint Vincent to Saint Lucar. The fleet of Terra firme, departeth from May for- The Fleets doe ward from Porte bille, when the North windes doe alreadie ceafe; and returneth to Carsagena to returne to Catake the freight of Silver and Gold from thonew Kingdom of Granada and allo for to avoid the file by another Coast of Veragera, and the streame of Nicaragera, whence they can hardly get out if they inguise When thesteen themselues by reason of the Brises, and contrarie and dangerous Currents that are in the way. oughtio depart From Cartagens they goe for Cape Saint Antonie, the further West of Cuba about two hun- to come for dred leagues, voyage of ten dayes, with care of the fhoales that are in the way of Serroma and Caffile.

Saint Antonie. The fleetes of None Espanna doe depart in the beginning of May , while the North windes d Or take adoe last, which doe ferue for the returne to the Anna, ascending a little in altitude vnto the way sleepe, Sound, which they call les Tortuges, vnto which place they faile about three hundred leagues in The thips of fifteene dayes.

The thips of Santa Marsha and Venezuela, to come to Castile , came out betweene Cuba and Hillaniela, to reknowledge the Cape of Saint Nicholas in the Western part of it, from whence Animie Hispaniela, to reknowledge the Cape of Saint National in the Weltern part of it, from whether through the middeft of the lies of the Lucayes, they goe take the course of the sheets, and when the Elects of News they come in fighe of the Cape of Saint Antonie, they goe to the Anana for feare of Pirates.

From the Anana to Castile, having past the Channell of Bahama (which the Pilot Antonie of Alaminos tayled first of all, the yeere 1519.) they doe faile through the Gulfe which is called of The voyage of the North, or of the Sagarzo, about mine hundred or a thousand leagues or more (a fayling of fine them of Sansa the North, or of the Sagarze, about mine hundred or a thouland leagues or more (a laying of the Martha and and twentie or thirtie dayes with ordinane windes) by two wayes, one for Summer, in a greater Venevalle. height, till they come to thirtie eight or thirtie nine degrees, in the which fland the Ilands of Nanigation Awerer; and another for Winter, by a leffer height, because of the stormes and showres which from the date doe come alwayes neere vnto it, whereby they goe vnto thirtie nine degrees no more, where- ne to Cafala.

in flandeth the lland of Santa Maria, one of the lles of Azares, and they aftend one degree more Namagation. for to touch in the Tercera, where the fleets doe alwayes come to take refreshing, without per- of Agercianto mitting any one to goe ashoare. And from the llands of Azora, vnto Saint Lucar of Barraneda, Saint Lucar.

50 the Mariners make three hundred leagues of Nauigation in fifteene dayes, others in thirtie for

the many Briles that doe reigne in this Gulfe of the Azores, whereby they faile till they come. wpon the Coaft of Portugal, and the doubling of the Cape Saint Vincent; and after in fight of the Coaft vnto the Port of Saint Lucar.

The Natigation from Caffele to the River of Plata (whitherto there is one thousand and fixe Natigation to hundred leagues, and to the Streight of Magelanes neere two thousand) hath beene much lon- the River of ger in the time then in the diffance of the way, because being necessarie to come to those Prounces in their Summer, which is from September forward, they cannot depart from Caffile at fuch time as not to paffe the Equinoctiall by June or August, when in it the Calmes are many and very great, and therefore they flay fine moneths in the Voyage, which might bee made in two or three, if from Simil they did depart by August or before : and touching in the Canaries they goe 60 North and South, to eight or mire degrees on the other fide of the Equinoctiall, from whence fome doe faile East and West, to reknowledge the Cape of Saint Augustine in Brafile, and after-

ward in fight of the Land vnto the River of Place and the Streight. Others from the eight de. grees have gone straight through the South Sea to the Streight, although few have come to passe

Serranille, and 4 Distafueno, and from the Cape of Saint Antonie to the Anena, are neere fitte Fleiste degos 30 leagues; and the thips that come from Handaries, doe come allo to reknowledge the Cape of from tening.

The Nauigation of the South Sea bath alwayes beene along the Coast, and because the the South Sea. South windes are very continuall, and the Current of the Streight ordinarie to the North; The Namigation of Natigation of Panama to the Citie of The Kings, is wont to continue two moneths, and the returne leffe then thirtie dayes, and the fame from the Kings to Chile, from whence to Pana. me are fayled nine hundred leagues in leffe then two moneths, eight being needfull for the going , which is alreadie shorter then it was ; for putting to the Seathey finde better windea to

The Nauigation to the Westerne Hands , Malucas and Philippines , from Cafille to the 10 Streight of Magellane paffeth foure thousand leagues, and so for being so long as for the difficultie of passing the Streight of Magellanes , it is held for difficult to vie it , and from None E. frame through the Westerne Gulie, which is in the South Sea. This Nauigation was made, please arrough the restriction of the Medical in the Coast for None Element 2. It has true is a season of the Partials in the Coast for None Element 2. It has true is a season from the Port of Acquiler, from whence to the Medicae and Philippina, they doe make a voyage of none thoutand fix hundred, or a thouland and feuen bundred leagues, which is fylled in two moneths, or two and a halfe, departing in November which is the time most free from calmes. And the returne to Nous Espanns is longer, because not being able to returne the way they went, it is necessarie to alcend to 39, degrees, and depart in May and lune, when the Brises bee leffe, and they stay foure moneths in fayling two thousand leagues that may bee in the 20

of the North. Hereway inferbath in be former booke Which bee the was called Wer

Ature having divided these western Indies in two parts, by the Ishmos or narrownesse from
Perte belle to Panama, placed the one to the North, and the other to the South; wherefore wee will call them the Indies of the North, and of the South. The Kings of Caffele and Lion, with the aduice of the supreme Councell of the Indees, have ordayned, that in each place there the North par's bee a Vice-roy, Courts, and Gouernments, and Bishopricks, as hereafter shall bee shewed. of America, But And first shall be entreated of the Northerne Indies, which commonly they call None Hispanie, because the first discouerers (which were lobe Grijalne and his Companions) having not seene in the Hands houses of stone, nor other things as in Spaine, which here they found with people 20 apparelled, and more civill; They named it New Spaine: which exceedeth the other part of the Indies in pastures, and therefore they have innumerable Cattle of all forts : and it exceedeth ter, to which I also in husbandrie and fruits: it hath no wine, because generally the grapes doe not ripen with perfection, the raines of July and August not suffering them to ripen. The " upper llands have also great Pastures, and a pleasant prospect : for all the yeere they are greene and flourshing, with great pleafantnesse, and great Arcabuces, which are very thick Groues and Inclosures, and in the Playnes are great Lakes and Quagmires. Neither Bread nor Wine grow in them; for the great ranknesse of the ground doth not suffer it to ripen nor eare : the Rivers for the most part haue gold. Florida, Nicaragna, and Guatimala are almost in this manner, as of all more particularly wee will rehearse in their place, and in the Table following shall the bounds of these Northern 40 Great passures Indies bee seene.

in New Spaine, " The weathermoft or

"He Court of the Iland Hispaniela, which in time and place is the first, being neerest vnto Cafile, it hath of bounds East and West five hundred and fiftie leagues, and North and South more then three hundred, wherein are included the llands and Governments of Hispaniala, Caba, Saint lobe, lamayca, Margarina, and the fishing of the Pearle : the Prouince and Goperment of Venezuella , and for neernesse the Prounces of new Andaluzia, Guayana, and Florida, with all the llands of the North Sea, which doe passe a hundred which are named, and are aboue fixe hundred great and small: and those which doe leane toward the Coast of Terra firms, the Mariners doe call of the Lemand, and the other to the Weatherward. The temperature of 50 them all is commonly moift and exceeding hot, and although they be plentifull in Paftures and Trees, they are not to of the Seedes of Caftile, not of Wheat, Barly, Vines, nor Olives : but there is great flore of great Cattell and small, as Kine, Mares, Swine, and Sheepe, and therefore their principall trafficke is Hides and Sugar, for there is great store; and although in the most of them there is gold; it is not fought for.

Cazebi bread. Towner.

The Countrie-men called the Iland of Hifpanials, Apri and Quifqueys, which fignifieth Raughneffe, and a great Countrie. The figure of it is like a Chefnut leafe: it flands in nineteene degrees and a halfe of eleuation of the Pole, it compaffeth about foure hundred leagues and somewhat more, and bath in length East and West an hundreth and fiftie, and North and South from thirtie to fixtie where it is broadeft, it is very plentifull of Sugar, and Cattell, and of Taca, the roote whereof maketh the Cazabi, the bread of the Countrimen. They have no Millet nor Wheat, although they begin to reape fome in the inward parts and coldeft. It is rich of Copper mynes and other metals, and some veine of Gold though but little is gotten, for want of workemen : it hath ten Spanish Townes.

CHAP.1. Spanish plantations in Hispaniola, S. Domingo, Sugar planted. 861

Hondivs bis Map of Hispaniola, Cuba, cc.



The Citic of Saint Dominick or Dominion neite the Coast of the South, on the Riutr of Os.4- The Chie of ma, stands in the faid 19, degrees and a halfe, and 60, of Occidentall longitude from the Mercidian Saint Domings of Totals, from whence vato it there may bee by direct line one thousand two hundred fortie feuen leagues, it hath aboue fixe hundred houfholds. There is refident in it the Audience or Councell, the Officers of the Goods and Royall Treasure; a Mint house, and the Cathedrall Church. And the Archbishoprick hath for Suffraganes the Bishopricks of the Conception de la Voga (which is writed with that of Saint Dominicte) those of Saint lobu, Cuba, Venezuele, and the Abbothip is vinical with tractor datas. Demonstrate from the complete property resistance, and the resolution of lampers; and in the Citicare Monaferies of Dominicans, Promissions, Merusawaris, and other two of Nunes, Grammar Schoole, with Swerthousand \* Pefes of Rent, and an Hofpitall with \* Pefe issue. twentie thousand. The Hauen which is great, and capable of many thips, is in the mouth of the childing zeto Riuer Ozama, and hath the Citic on the West, which the Deputie Don Barbolomer Colon did 25th.

build the yeere 1494. On the Ealkide, better and wholfomer in fituation, and the chiefe Knight Of Alcanters, Nicholas of Onanda being Gouernour of Hilpaniols, An. 1402. remoued it where now it is , from the other fide the River to the Batt, vpon occasion that the Citie had fallen by a great Earthquake. The Village of Saluations of Tguery, eight and twentie leagues from Saint Do- Saluation of miniche to the East, of the Archbishoprick; the Captaine, John of Efquinel, did people it. The Trug. Willage of the Zerbo, twentic leagues from Saint Dominicke to the East, toward the lland of The Village of Saona: the Captaine also planted it in the time of Nicholas of Onando. The Village of Carny, Zopia. fixteene leagues from Saint Dominicke to the North and very close in his circuit, Roderick Mexic El Cary of Trillo, founded it. The Village of Assas in Composition in the country four and Assas of twentie leagues from Saint Dominick to the West, in his borders are many fugar Mills; it was

peopled by the Prefident James Vellas ques, it was called Compostella by a Gallesian Knight, Who carried which held an Heritage in that fituation , and Acoms is the name of the place which the Indians to the Indian had there. The first that carried sugar Canes to the Indies, and began to make triall of them the sugar and there, I me mit that can cannot be a supported by the supported by the

Santa Marie of the Port, feated on the Westerne coast of the Hand, is fiftie or sixtie leagues from Saint Dominicke, as betweene the North and the West; the chiefe Knight Nicholas of Onunde The Citie of the Conception of the Valley, is in the Kingdome of Guarineen, which the first Ad-

mirall Don Christopher Collon built, neere to the which he obtayned the victorie in the great battaile of the Valley Royall: it is twentie leagues from Saint Dominicke to the North-eaft, where is a Cathedrall Church (although there is no Prelate, for it is wnited to the Church of Saint Donni nicke) it hath one Monasterie of religious Franciscans, where is the wood of the Crosse which the Indians could not burne, cut, nor overthrows, which hath done many miracles.

the Valley.

Saint lago de los Canalleros is ten leagues from the Citie de la Vege directly to the North-eaftit was first a Fortresse which the first Admirall made in the Countries of the Cacique Guaracount for the fecuritie of the Valley, and the Fort Magdalene which was four leagues off.

The chiefe Knight of Aleanana, Niebolas of Onanda, As. 1502 did people the Port of Place

in the North coafts, five and thirtie or about fortie leagues from Saint Dominicke, because the things of Caffile might more commodicully trafficke, and because it was no more then ten leagues from the great Valley, where in other ten leagues flood the Village of Saint lames, and the Conceptua within fixteen, and within twelue the Mynes of Cibas, and it was of the Bishoprick of the Valley, the Port of Plate stands in little more then twentie degrees. The Village of Monte-Christe, is in the coast of the North fourteene leagues, so the West of Port of Plate, and fortie from Saint Dominicke, is of the Bishoprick of the Valley; it hath a good Hauen, and certaine salt Pits in it; 30

Nicholas of Ouando did build it. La Verapaz,

There was in old times in this lland the Citie of Ifabella, now difinhabited, which the fifth Admirall built the yeere 1493. the Village of Verapaz in Xaragua, which James Velazques built in the yeere 1503. and the fame yeere peopled also Saluatierra of the Zabana, which fignifieth Playnes and Pastures, in the Indian language: and that Province is plaine and faire. Hee also peopled (betweene the two mightie Rivers Nepba and Taqui) the Village of Saint lobu of the Maguana, in the middeft of the Iland, where the Church continueth yet; and heere reigned The Magnana Coanabo, who tooke Alfonso de Oseda. Hee also planted Villamena de Taquime vpon the Haven, where Oseda call himselie to swim, being prisoner in a ship, with two paire of fetters; and it flands in the South coast, which the Admirall did call the Coast and Hanen of Brasile. The Vil- 30 lage of Bonao is necrevnto Cotty, which the first Admiral also built, where hee made a Fort for the securitie of the Mynes, which were the first that were found in this Iland, The Village This land flourished to much, that there were in thousenet chousand a Castillane, many of

El Bando,

La Ruenauen

14000 . Spatim's there were them Noble people, and the Plantations of other parts which happened afterward, caused it to

in the Hispanis be difinhabited; for from it, and from the lland of Cuba, went all the substance for the new Coun-

treyes that were found.

Wherethey the first time

The Ports, Roades, Capes, and Points most famous, and the Ilands pertayning to the Coast of this Iland, are in the South Coaft, the Point of Nizae, ten leagues from Saint Dominiche to the 40 West. The Port of Ocoa, eighteene, which is a Bay where the Fleets which goe for Nona Epania doe anchor and take refreshing, when they doe not anchor in the nooke of Zepezepin, Parto Hermofe. Which is neere vnto it, or in another which they call the Faire Hanen, two leagues before they come to Ocea. Azma a Port and Towne twentie foure leagues beyond Ocea la Calongia, a large Point thirtie leagues, right against the Hands of Boara and Altobelo, fine leagues from the Coast, and the Beatados. Tagaimo about thirtie foure more to the Weit, and Abaque, an Iland neere the Cape of Tiburon, the furthest West of Hispaniola: la Nabata ten leagues to the Sea East and West from the Cape, and Cape Rojo twelue leagues from it to the North : the Rookes, or Hermones Trees, lile Oscillos neere the Coast that turneth to the East: Caprosito another little Hand betweene thefe, and Gmanabo another Hand of eight leagues in length, in the nooke of Tagnana. The Port 50 and Cape of Saint Nichelas, the furthest West on the North fiele of the Hand, A little further the Port of " Mofquitos, in the North Coaft, and twentie lesgues forward the Port of Valparayfe, or of the Conception, North and South, with the Torings an Iland neere the Coast of hie leagues in length : Port Royall twelue leagues to the Welt from Monte-Christe, which is as much, or a little more before Ifabela, and this from the Port of Plate, other twelve leagues: Cabo Frances, and Cabo del Cabron, in the turning, which the Coast maketh to the East, before the Gulfe of Samana, which entreth fine or fixe leagues the Land inward, vnto the place where the Towne of Santa Cruz flood. And in the River of Samana, was the first time that Armes were taken against the men of the Indies; because they would have done violence to the first Admirall. The Cape of Deceis, (Cabo del Enganno) is the furthert West of the lland where the Coast returneth 60 by the South to the West, at the beginning of the which stands the Saona, an Iland which the fleets doe reknowledge, when they goe, and somewhat more towards Saint Dominiate is another little Hand, which is called Saint Katherine; and all the names rehearfed were given by the

The Hand of Cuba which first was called luana, or loane, by the Father Don Iuan, and after Cuba. it was commanded to be called Fernandma by his Father. The Captaine Sebastran of Ocamoo, made an end of compating the yeere of our Lord 1508. by order of Nicholas of Onando: for untill then it was not wholly believed that it was Land, and the yeere 1511, the President Iames Velacques went over with three hundred Spaniards, by order of the second Admirall to paeifie it. It hath two hundred and thirty leagues from the Cape of Saint Antonie, vnto the Point of Mayzi, going by Land, although by the Sunne, and by water there are not fo many. It hath in breadth from the Cape of Croffes, to the Port of Manati, fortie fine leagues, and then it beginneth to ftreighten, and goeth to the last Cape, or Occidentall Point, where it is narrow, of 10 twelte leagues, little more or leffe, from Maramano to the Anana. Her fination is within the

CHAP.I. Herreras description of Cuba: ber Ports and Plantations.

Tropicke of Cancer, from twentie to twentie one degrees, the Countrey is almost all plaine. with many Forrests, and thicke Woods : from the Easterne Point of Mayer, for thirtie leagues it hath most high Mountaynes, and likewise in the middest it hath some, and there runne from them to the North, and to the South, very pleasant Ruers, with great flore of fish. On the South fide it hath the little Ilands, which the firft Admirall called the Queenes Garden, and the other on the North fide, which James Velazquez called the Kings Garden, the trees are of many differences, and wild Vines as bigge as a man : they gather no. Wheate nor other Seeles of Spaine, but great abundance of Cattle : it hath great Copper Mynes, and of Gold, and is it found in the

Rivers, though it be base in the touch.

20 Immer Velazquez peopled first the Citie of Saint lamer in the South Coast, fortie leagues from S. Ingo. the Cape of Tiburen, which is in Hifpaniele; and two leagues from the Sea, neere to a Port, one of the best in the World, for securitie and greatnesse. The Citie came to have two thousand Inhabitants; now it hath few with a Gouernours Deputie: the Cathedrall Suffragane to Saint Damingo, is refident in it, and a Monastery of Franciscas Priers, The Village of Baracoa, is a Towne Baracoa. furtheit East of the Hand of Cube, at the beginning of the North Coast 60 leagues from the Citie of S. James toward the East North-east, which was also an inhabiting of the President James Velarques. The Village of Bayame, which Immer Velarquer alfo built, is 20. leagues from S. James to Bayan the North-weft, it is the foundeft Town of the Hand, of a more open foyle, and of a good disposition, The Village and Port of the Prince, in the Coast of the North, is about fortie leagues from Puers dil Print tion, the village and roll on the Films in the Count is the stories about first engages from sense train.

30 Saint Lause to the North-west. The Village of Saint's primes, is a Port on the South fide, becipt.

tweenet the Trainfall, and the (spe de Bajos Percalle, of Figurese, about fiftie leagues from Saint Saidt Sprim.

Lames, a Colonie of Lames Velazquez. The Village and Port of Saint Christopher of the Abena, is in the North Coast, almost oppolite to Florida, in twentie two degrees and an halfe in height, of more then fixe hundred Houholds; where the Gourmour refides and the Officers Royall. The Port is mar- El alhems, or uellous in greatnesse and securitie, especially since that King Philip the Second, the product, fent the Campe-master Islam of Texads, and Baptista Amenalia, to fortifie it in real the Fleetes of the Indies doe meete for to come for Spaine in company. It was first called the the secretary and I done; Falazques built this Village, and all the relief of the land, with Parts de Ca-Port of Garanas: and I done the Saltes Baralome de las Cafes, which afterward became a Dominisky Frier, remain

and Bishop of Chiapa.

The Ports and Capes, and point of the Coast of Cabe, and the Hands belonging to it besides those which are rehearfed are in the South Coast, the Port of the Citie of Saint James in twentie degrees, and twentie five leagues to the West: the Port of Santh Spiriton, Cape of the Croffe twelve leagues forward, and the Queenes Gardens, which is a great shelfe of Ilands and shoales : the Port of Trimitie in twentie one degrees, about thirtie leagues from the Cape of the Croffe, and ten more to the West, the Gulfa of Zagus, a great defence with some llands, in the middek, and forward the Two Sifters, two Hands at the beginning of the great shelfe, and Hands, and shoales, which they call Camarco, betweene the Coast and the Ilands, which is of ten leagues in length,

50 and feuen in breadth twelue leagues from the Cape of Correntes, which is as many from the Cape of Saint Antonie, the furthelt. West of this Hand. In the North Coast standeth the Port of A- Wherefore it bana, and thirtie leagues to the East is the Port of Slangbers where was a Towne, and was call was called the ledde Matanças, of the Slanguers, because the Indians killed certaine Spaniards, which they car . Slanguers, ried in their (anose vnder (ccuritie to the other fide, only one escaping, and two women whom they kept sometime with them. From the " Maranças to the Port of Tacanaca, are fiftie " Or Slaughleagues to the Kings Garden, which is a great shelte of little Illets and shoales, and at the end of ters. the Iland Obabassa, eight leagues before the Port of the Prince, foure or fix from the Port of Fermando Alanfe, and fix to the East of this, Cubana which is a point. The Port of Varocea is about twentie leagues before the point of Mazi, the fartheft Welt of Cuba, and the hidden Port and Gulfe neere to Cape f Rois, in the South-coaft, about twentie leagues from the Port of Piege- f Or Red. 60 ent, which is about ten leagues from the Port of Saint lames.

The

Chap. 7. Of the Ilands of Iamayca,5. lobs, the Lu-

THe lland of *Iamagea* was so abundant of victuals, and breedings, that it gaue great pro-uition of Cotton, Hories, Swine, and *Cazabi*, for the new Discoueries, and the first Admi. sall called it Saint Iames, when hee discoursed it; and the first that passed to inhabit it, was the Captayne lohn E (quinell, the yeere 1 509. by order of the second Admirall Don Diego Colon, It ftands in seuenteene degrees and an halfe of altitude in the middest of it, and twentie leagues from Caba to the South, and as many from Hift aniela, direct to the West. It hath in compasse one hundred and liftie leagues, it hath East and West fiftie, and twentie in breadth. There are in Sinil, Melilla, it three Villages, Simil in which is the Seat of the Colledge, toward the North Coaft formewhat & Oriflon, inha Westerly; Iohn Squinell a Gentleman of Smil peopled it : Melilla, which stands in the 10 North Coaft, fourteene leagues from Smill to the East : Orifica in the South Coast towards the West fourteene leagues from Simil, and are Plantations of the President Francisco de Garage. which governed in it. But of the Towne de la Fega, whence the Admirals Lords of this !land tooke the Title of Dukes, nor of other two Plantations painted in some Maps, there is

Cape of Mo-

There is in the Coast of this Hand, the Point of Morante the vttermost West of it, by the North Coaft ten leagues to the Weft, the Port of Iama, and tenne leagues forward the Port of The first civill Melilla, where they say the first Admirall arrived, and called it Santa Gloria, when hee returned warre among loft from Veragua; and heere happened to him the mutiny of the Porras of Simil and it was the the Spaniards, first Civill Warre of the Indies. Other ten leagues thence standeth the Port of Simil, before the 20 was in lamagea. Point Negrillo, from whence the Coast windeth, vnto the Cabo de Falcon, fleere to Oriftan, and goeth by the South to the Port of Guayane. And fiveleagues from this Coast, are the Harmingas, a dangerous shoale, and seven leagues further las Vineras, small Ilands compassed with thoales, and to the South of them the Serrana, and a little Hand compaffed with shoales, with other foure or five neere vnto it, and to the North-west of it, the Serranille, and to the West of it the Roncador, another Rocke, and to the South-west of it, Saint Andrewes, an Hand compassion fed with shoales North and South, with Nombre de Dies, about fortie leagues from it, and neere from thence another called Saulta Catilina; the . Commers directly Well from lawares, twen Or Negrillo, tie fine leagues from the little . Blackmoore, which are two little Ilands fixe leagues the one from the other, and the great Common another Hand of feuen leagues in length, fifteene leagues to p Or open the from the Commanes to the Welt, and to the North Coaft, betweene Caba and Hiffaniela another Shoale which is called ? Abre-oio.

S. luan de puer- The Hand of Saint Ishn of Port Rice, which the Indians called Barriquen, lyoth betwixt

twelve and fifteene leagues from Hispaniele, to the East, of fortie five leagues in length . East and West; and from North to South, betwixt twentie and thirtie, very plentifull of all that Hispaniols bath, and of Millet, Yuca, and of Mynes of Gold. The temperature is good, and almost one all the yeere, except in December and January. There is in it three Spanish Townes with a Gonernment, and a Bishoppricke : the Prefident lober Power of Lion passed to discouer this Iland the yeers 1 508. being Gouernour in the Province of Tyney, for Nicholas of Onando in Hifpaniala, and returned the yeere 1510, by order of the King to people it. The Citie of Saint 40 lobn, is in the beginning of the North Coast, on the East side in eighteene degrees of height, and they call it of Port Rico, for the excellencie of the Hauen. The Bishop and the Gouernour are refident in it, and the Officers of the Kings Revenues : and it is Suffragane to Saint Domingo. Arrecibe flands thirtie leagues to the West from Port Rice: the Towne of Guadianilla or Saint German the New, in the Westerne Coast three and thirtie leagues from Port Rice to the South-west.

There was in old time in this Iland another Towne which was called Guanica, in the South Coast, at the end of it where now is the Port of Maguitte, which is very good, from whence it was removed to another fituation of the Westerne Coast, which they call Agnada, or the Waterme, with name of Soco-Mayor: there is in this Hand a row of Mountaynes, that divide it in 50 the middeft East and West vato the Ses, and Borders of Saint Gomman, and heere is found the Tree called Tabernacula, which yieldeth white Rozen, like Gumme. Anime, and it serveth for Pitch for the ships, and for fire or light, and it is medicinable to take out the colde or num-

There are few Ports in this Iland, for all the Coast of the North is very foule with shoules, and Rockes : those that are, are to the East from the Port of Saine John. The River of Luria, The hauens of and that which they call Causha, and la Cabeca; the fartheft East point of the Hand, neere on this Hand.

the Hill of the Logarillo, and in it a Bort which they call Saint Laure; three leagues further is another called Tabucas, and three leagues from the Coast, on this fide of the passage, is a little Illet, and at the beginning of the South passage, another which they call Boygui, and forward 60 the Hand of Saint Anne, Gueyama a Port, and afterward the Rivers Neabon, and Xania, fix leagues before the Port of Guadianilla, two leagues to the East of the River of Mofquites, in whole mouth is the River called Guerica, and fix leagues from it, the Cape Rois, the furtheff West of the South Coast : and to the West of it, toward Hispaniela is the Iland of Mona, and to the North of it

C. H. A. P. I. Ginger Strong Current Canibals or Men-eaters Friers dangerous food , 865

the Manice, and Zeches, other two little Hands : the Port of Pines, and the Port of Mayagnez. and the Bay of Saint German the old, and the mouth of the Ruser Guanabo, or the Watering, and that of Guebataca more forward, and afterward in the North Coaft, that of Camey, and of Cafines, and Tea, necre to Port Ries, and in the middeft of the Coaft of the South Sea, leaning water it the Haberianas, foure or fine little llands. There is also much Ginger gathered in this Who carried Iland, which is a Root like vnto Madder, or Saifron, which the Portugals brought from the East, the Ginger to to this Hand of Barlinents.

The Hands which are to the North of Saint Ishn, Hispaniola, and Cuba, of which none is Thellands of inhabited with Spaniards, are called the Lucayer. One the most Septentrionall , is about twen-IO tie feuen degrees of altitude, which is called Emergeneque, or Tweapeneque, which bath almost to the West Bahamaanother Hand in twentie fixe degrees and an halfe, of thirteene leagues in

length, and eighe in breadth, from whence the Channell of Bahama betweene Florida and the Wherethe finales Deles Minutes talieth the name, whereby the Currents of the Sea doe goe for witten Chantellof the North , that although the wind be prosperous the ships cannot enter it, and although they Zabana is. be contrary they goe with the Currents.

contrary they goe with a contrary of an Iland in the middeft of them, of fine leagues in length, Banel & Birmini which the first Admirall gave the same the first time became to (she, and it is that which fobs Paul of Lyon didagree to inhabit. Abacon, isanother in the middeft of the faid fhelfe of twelve leagues in length : Cigateo of twentie fine. Cigateo, another fmall lland in twentie fixe de.

20 grees: and Guanasa fireene leagues of length, and sen in breadth, and neere vnto it Guanabani, Guanabani the the first Land of the Indies, which the first Admirall discoursed, which he called Saint Santon; first Land that Transa of tweatre leagues, and eight in breadth, in twentie foure degrees and an halfe, which was discovered the Admirall named fabelle, in honour of the famous Queene Donna labelle his particular Pro. in the India. tectreffe, and that gaue him this Discouerie. Immete in twentie three degrees and an halfe, fifteene leagues in length, to the North of Hispaniola. Samana feuen leagues over, betweene Inmete and Guanima, three square of eight leagues in length, in twentie foure degrees, Tabaque of ten leagues, in twentie two degrees and an halfe. Mina-par-vos, are three little llands in triangle, compassed with shelues, so the South of Immete. Managuana, twentie leagues in length and terrin breadth, is twentie three degrees. Trague of ten leagues, in twentie degrees and an 30 halfe. The Carear, an Hand of five leagues, in twentie one degrees, and to the North of it is an-

other, called Hamana, and another Concina. Magarey stands in twentie degrees compassed with shelines. Abresis a great shelfe of fifteene leagues, the middest of it in twentie degrees, and among these Hands are many little ones without name. The Handsthat are from the Hand of Saint lobs of Porte-Rice, to the East of it, toward the

The Handsthat are from the Hand of Saint some of Forie-Rice, to the East of it, toward the coast of Forie-Frame, were called the Combide, by the many Carrier, exters of humaine fifth that were in them: and in their language, Carrier, it to far Falane sizes, for they were held for foot amilian. Of the other Indians. All their lands are dangerous for their, and the incarrel to Saint Islam, are Whan a capture of the coast of the Carrier for the Santis Craz, to the South-weft from it, in 16 degrees, and a halfe of fixteene leagues, and Sa ball fignification ba las Virgines, two little illets compaffed with shelses, and other eight or ten Hands, the greatest

of ten leagues: Virgen gords, and the Blances or White Hands, Westward from Virgen gords, La Ane gada, of feuen leagues in length, in 18. degrees and a halfe compassed with (helues, as Sambrero is, a little Iland neere vnto it : and these Ilands which are called the Weather Ilands or Men humers. Barlowento, the first Admirall discovered: and in particular, the men of Sabile Cruz, and others, had a custome to goe and hunt for men to the lland of Saint John, for to east, and at this day they of Dominuca doe it. They dideate no women, but kept them for flaues. Now they fay, that within this little while, they of Dominics did cate a Fryer, and that all they which did cate his field, Frier von his had fuch a fluxe, that fome dyed, and that therefore they have left eating humane field : and it fome food. may be, because instead of men, with lesse danger, they steale Kine and Mares, for the great quantite there is of them, and with this they fatisfie their raging appetite.

Adjulie lath ten leagues of length, it flandeth in 18 degrees: Saint Merits in 17 degrees and

a halte, it is of fixeene leagues, compatied with little Illess: and neers vnto it Saint Bur flace, Saint Burbolesure, and Saint Christopher, enery one of senine leagues. The Burbala in 17, degrees and a halfe, compassed with thehies, neere to the Redonds and the Snewer or Nieuer, and of Monferrate, of five leagues every one, in 15 degrees and a halfe. The Antigna, Guadaluje, and Tedas Santes, from 14. to 15, degrees. The Deffende to the East of Gandeling, about fixe leagues, the first which the Admirah Den Christopher discoursed, in the second Voyage that he made to the Indies, in 14 degrees and a halfe, for which the fleete goe al wayes from the Camaries. Marigalante, the name of the Shippe the Admirall had , fine leagues to the South-weft from the Defired, and from the Dominica, in 13 degrees, twelve leagues in length, where the

60 Fleetes take in water and wood, for it hath good roades, although with danger of the Cambais. Meere vnto Deminica to the South, flands Marinino, Saulta Lucie, and the Barbudos, the which because they fall on the left hand of the Fleetes, when they goe, they call them already of the Hands of the Leeward (de Sozanemes) which appertaine to the coaft of Terrafirmes: and of them thegreatest, the first, and the most Orientall is the Trimidad, neere two hundred leagues from

A 4 248

Historiola, North and South with the Dominica, about fixtie leagues from it. It hath fiftie The di courry leagues in leangth East and West, and almost thirry in breadth. The Admirall discourred it the of the lland of yeare 1498, the third Voyage that he made to the Indies, and called it the Trinite, because hathe Trinite, using great trouble in the Voyage, he had promifed to God to give fuch a name to the first Land that he should finde, and presently the Mariner that was in the top, saw three points of Land, whereby the name fitted enery way to his vowe: then hee discouered also the mouthes of the Dragon, and of the Serpont, the gulfe of Paria, and all the firme Land vnto Camana, which in-Arrogancie of unfilty American Vespuise claimes to himselfe, whose name vinworthily is given to the port american unit. which they call Peninsula Anstrales or Indies of the South. This Iland of Trinsidad is knowne that it is no good Countrie, though it hath many ladien; it hath thirtie fine leagues of longitude. and others fay more, and twentie fine of latitude, it flands in 8, degrees : the most orientall part of it, is a point on the North fide, which is called de la Galera : and to the North of it a small Iland, compassed with little Iles, which they call Tabago : and in the South coast a Cape which they call the Round Point: at the East, the point of Anguilla, at the West in the guife of Paria, which is that that is from the Iland to Terra forme, which may be eight leagues of distance, because the firme Land maketh an oblique semicircle, as a Diadem; and in the entrance of the East is the distance recited; in the entrance of the West, the straightnes is much, and with great depth.

and two little Ilands at the end of the North coaft; by the West, which is called the Dragge month : and to the North S. Vincent, and Granada, other two little Hands. The Iland of Margarita, io named by Christopher Colon, the first Admirall (as also all the reft. a most sufficient proofe of the Finder, to the confusion of those which deprined him of the glory of the discourse of the firme Land, attributing it to themselves, although changing the times) it is twentie leagues from Trinidad Westward, and one hundred and senenty from Hispaniola; it

hath fixteen leagues in length East and West, and yet some say twenty, and the halfe in breadthe it hath no flore of water, although it is very plentifull of Paffures for Cattle. There is in it two Townes, one neare the Sea, which reacheth to a fortreffe where the Gouernour is refident, and another two leagues within the Land, which is called the Valley of Santia Lucie : there is in his coast a 200d port, and a nooke, and many beds of Pearles, whither the fishing of them is remoued, which before was in Cubagua, and they fay it went away from thence, for the rumour 30 Wherforemen of the ordnance of the many Shippes that reforted to this Hand, to the trafficke of the Pearles,

do fay that the Which was very great. Cubagua stands one league from Margarina to the East, there is no water fifthing of the in it, and yet the new Cadie was built there, and they carried their water feuen leagues, from Pearles passed the River of Camana. To the Kast of Cabagua are source little Illets, close by the shoare. which the first Admirali called Los \* Frayles : and to the East betweene them and Granade, other foure of Cabequato the first Admiralicated Los Frajles; and to the East betweene them and Granada, other foure the Material or five, which he called (Los Testigos) the Wisnesses, and to the West after Cubagua, another lit-Hand of Cuba - ele Hand which he named (Tortuga) the Tortogle, neere to the point of Araya: and from hence the discouery being made from below Paria, he went to Hiffaniola, with a purpose to finish the discouery being mane troin bottom the discouery of Terra street; and as here after shall be seene, hee went after to discouer, and the discouery of Terra street; and as here after shall be seene, hee went after to discouer, and the street shall be seene. found the Hands of the Guanaies, and from before Veragua, vntill he passed Nombre de Dier. The 40

He Government of Venezuela parteth the bounds in the coast of Terra firme, to the East.

vaines of Gold of more then two and twentie carracts and a halfe : it is plentifull of Wheate,

because there is two harusests in the yeare, and most abundance of all kinds of Cattle, great and

Cotten-linnen : and in the port of Guerra, in the Province of Caracas, are laden many Cowe-

Hides, and Sarfaparilla. There is in it eight Spanis Townes : and the name Venezuela was given

it, because when the Belzares , Almaines, went to gouerne in this Province the yeare 1528. by

a couenant which they made with the Emperour, they thought to inhabit in a Rocke and hils

that are in the mouth of the Lake of Maracaybo, where it falleth in the Sea, a Towne which

they named Venezuela. It stands in 8 degrees, a little more, and from hence the Cournment

tooke the name. His first Towne is the Citie of Core, which the Indians call Corians, which com-

monly they call now Venezuele, it stands in TI. degrees of altitude, and 79 degrees one third part

from the Meridian of Toledo, one thousand and five hundred leagues from it : here the Governor

I with the new Andaluzia, from whence to the River of Hacha, and Government of Santia

Officers and Royall treasure are in Margarita: and it, and the Hand of Cabagua, are in eleven degrees, a little more.

Chap.8. Of Venezuela, Mariba, with which it joyneth by the Weft, is an hundred and thirty leagues, and within the river of Hacha, newFlorida, and Land about eightie, wato the bounds of the new-Kingdome of Granada. In this Countrie are Gulfe of Nexa is the reft that small. There goeth from this Promuce great store of Meale, Bisket, Cheese, Bacon, and much so remainerh of the limits of this Counfell.

Wherefore in was called Ve. nezuela,or lit-

The Citie of

from Core eightie leagues, and with a bad Hauen : Den Prancifee Faiarde built it the yeare 1560.

is wont to be resident, and there is the Cathedrall Church suffragane to the Archbishop of S. Dominicle. Lobu of Ampair built first this Citie, and then those that went for the Belware made 60 their abode in it, the first was Ambrose Alfinger: it is so healthfull, and of so good an ayre, that there is no neede of Physitians. The second place is our Lady of Carnalleda, in the Province of Carness, necreto the Sea, East

CHAP, I. Herreras Description of the Spanish Indies. Venezuelas Gonernment. 867

which went for that purpose from the Margarita. S. I ames of Lyon in the same Province, seuen leagues within the Land, and three from Carnalleda to the South, and fixtic from fore, S.lego de Leen, where at this time the Gouernour is most residence. The new Valencia fixtie leagues from Core,

and twentie five from S. lames of Lyon, seven from the port of Burburata, The Captaine Villacinda peopled it. The new Xerez about rifteene leagues, almost South from the new Valencia, and Xerez, twentie from the new Segonia, and fixtie from Core to the South-east, a new Towne. The new Segonias, in the Prouince of Bariquizimite, twentie leagues from Xerez to the South , and tenne Tucine. from Tuenjo, and eightie from Core to the South-east, where the Officers royall, the Gouernour, and the Lieuetenant are refident at times: Ishu of Villegus peopled it in the yeare 1552. The Citie

10 of Tweeye is famous, because in it they slew the tytant Lope of Againte, it stands tenine leagues from Segonia, to the South-west, eightie fine from Care; it is the habitation of the Captaine Carnajal. Truxillo, on our Ladie of Prace, in the Prouince of Cayes, about eightie Traille, leagues almost to the South, direct from Core, somewhat to the East, and twenter five from Ta-

enyo, directly to the West. The Auditor Valley discoursed this the years 1 249; the Bacheller Tollefa being Gouernour in it : and the yeare 1559, the Captaine fames Garete of Pareder inhabited Traxillo : and there may be in this Gouernment more then 100000d. Indies tributaries, and in them are not comprehended from eighteene vnder, nor abour fiftie yeares, because the supreme Counsell of the Indies hath prouided, that in no place of this Orbe, these doe pay tribute : and because daily 20 they increase and diminish in number, it cannot be said precisely and perfectly how many

The Lake of Maracaybe, which the Castilaner call of our Lady, is of fresh water, it entreth The Lake Me fortie leagues within the Land, from the Sea, and hath more then tenne in breadth, and eighty racque, in compaffe, with many Townes voon his Borders in the end of it entreth a River that deicendeth from the new Kingdome of Granada, by the which, and the Lake, Marchandile are transported which came to the new Kingdome of Castule, and to other places; fome of the men of

this Lake doe line in Boates, their houfes being made in the Trees within the water, and at the Border, whence it tooke allo at the first, the name of Venezuela; fayling by some parts of this Lake, ye can fee no Land : there enter into it other great Raiers, it runneth to the Sea, it hath

about halfe a league of mouth, and in it the shoale and rocks abouefaid. The Ports, Capes, and Points of the coast of this Gouernment, and those annexed vnto it, are The ports and to the Well, Marcapana, the Vrebila, an Iland against the River Oynare, neere to another called points of the to the West, Magragama, one resua, an illusa agains the store symers, necreto anomer cauce pointed the Rock of the Ises, and afterward the Cape of the Codera, and Patrier Bickerds, and the hance of Gourtmers. Swimus or Pickers: and opposite the He of Anex or Birds, before Burbarata, a maruellous hauen, which the Bachiler Tolofa peopled, and is a Scale or Port for the new Kingdome (Nueno Reme) & Prouinces of Pern, and after that is Gulfo trifle, and to the North of the Bonagre, an Iland of ten leagues in length, and eight in breadth, and afterward Punta feca, and right against it Caracae, and a little forward Coracaste, toureteene leagues in length, right against the Cape of S. Roman to the South of the Hand of Araba, S. Roman entreth twentie leagues into the Sea, it 40 Standeth twelue from Coro, the Indians doe call to Paraguana, it lacketh a little to be an Iland : it may have in compaffe twenty five leagues and more of plaine ground, with a Mountaine almost in the middeft : it is discourred a great way into the Sea. There is at the beginning of the Gulfe of Penezuela, the entrance and channell of the Lake of Maracapho, and at the entrance of it the River Muare, and to the West the Montes, three little Hets close by the Point and Cape of Coamibocoa, where onely in all the Indies was found waight and touch for the Gold, and afterwards

the deepe Baye (Balna Honda) and the Portete, the Cape de Vela, which the Captaine Alfonfus of Oieds named, when Americo Vefpneio went with him the first time, much after that the Admirall discovered this coast, which stands in 12 degrees, somewhat more, And there is from the Cape de Vela, to the River of Hache eighteene leagues, without any stone in them, nor water, 50 but raine water. This Gouernment remained destroyed, fince the time of the Almame, because they would not inhabit, onely feeke to make flaues, and to wafte the Countrie.

They called first the River of Hache, our Ladie of the Snowes, and after of the Remedies, neere wnto the Sea, betweene Venezuela, and Santia Marta, to the Eaft, thirtie leagues from it, and fixtie from Core to the Well, North and South with the Care de Vela, with eight leagues of bounds betweene Venezuela and Santia Marta, without howes of Gold. It is governed by Alcaldes immediate to the Counfell of Hifpaniola, and the Spiritualtie is of the Bulhopricke of Santia Marta. The Towne is 1000.paces from the Sea, on a little hill ; the Hauen hath the North for trauers, it is a most fercile Coun rie, and yeeldeth whatsoeuer is in Cafile : there are many Tigers, Beares, Ants, and Lizards in the Rivers, much Gold, and Stones of divers vertues, for the Spleene. 90 the Kidneys, for the Milt, and Flix, and they have good Salt-pits. Nicolas Federman for the Belzeres, was he that began to inhabit this Towne. The gouernment of Serpen, which they call the new Andaluxia, and in the indian Language Guayana, extends the limits From the lland

of Margarita vinto the river Mar aujon, three hundred leagues to the Eaft, and as many North and South within the Land , wherein the Indians Quagues are included , and the Omyga.

with the Prouinces of Dorodo, to the fouth of this Government , wherein falleth by the Coaft the Prouince of Maracapana, in the bounds of Veneculela, where the mouths of Santta Fe were inhabited, in whole Borders is the knob of Unave, and neere voto it a great Lake with great flore of fish and falt, and the Indians which are called of Perso, twentie leagues within the Land and the Indians Palenques, so called for the Poles where with they fortified themselves , and the Prouince of Cumana, Morth and fouth with the Margarita, where is a Towne of Spaniards, which is called new Gordona, which the Captayne Gongalo of Ocempo built, when he went to chaftife the Indians of Cumana, for the destruction of the Monastery of the Religious Franciscans, And to the East or the lland of Trinidad, and the River of Saint John of the Amazones, is the Protince of the Indiana Armaen, part of the Caniballs, and all Warlike, that neuer are quiet or no

After the point of Paris, which flands in fenen degrees, and the Dragons Month neere water Trinidad flands the point Del Galle, or Anegada, to the South of the Trinitie, and the River of Paria, or Orinico, which tome call Tuyapari, and others will have that thefe two, and the Riner of Saint Iobu, and of Orellana be all one thing, and also the Maranyon; but in this they are deceiued. There be other Rivers in the Province of the Arnaca that are well knowne , the River of Saint lobn, or of Orellana ipringeth in the Ander of Pera, right against Cases, from whence it runneth fifteene hundred leagues, or more, winding vnder the Equinoctiall, by Countreyes well inhabited, though not well discouered, till it came to run into the North Sea, whose mouth hath in breadth fiftie leagues; and in the first five hundred from the mouth vpward, many Hands inhabited; and eightie or a hundred leagues more to the West, stands the River of Moranton ale most in the bounds whereby passeth the Line of the Diusson betweene Castile and Porrugal, and is great and terrible, having ifteene leagues of mouth, and the streame commeth from the paris of the South, and the Provinces of Brafil, and they fay that the fpring is vnder Poparas, and the bounds of the new Kingdome of Granads,

Cubagua,

Cadiz, which was difinhabited because the fishing for Pearles fayled: this Iland had no water that could be drunke, nor trees, nor beafts; for all is brackin, except those Hogges that have Strange Hogs the Nauell in their backe-bone, and some small Conies, and having so great inhabiting, they went feuen leagues to the river of Commons for water, although there was an opinion that it bred webbes in the eyes. In this River and coast, happed in the yeare 1530. the first of September. 30 Terra fitme, the the haven being cleare, the Sea did rife foure fadomes from his ordinary courfe, and entring into yeare 1530. vo. the earth it began to shake, and the fortresse which the Captaine Jacome of Castellon had built ry admirable by order of the Counfell of Hifteniela, fell, and the earth did open in many places, whereout fprang much falt water as blacke as inke, and did ftinke of brimftone, and the mountaine of the gulfe of Cariaco remained open with a great rife: many houses fell, many people died drows ned, and with feare, and taken with the earth quake. Margarita one league from Cubagua a more pleasant lland, the Bachiller Marcelo of Villalobes did people it.

Seuen leagues from Cumana stands the Hand of Cubaqua, where stood as was faid, the new

Margarit, Florida.

The Province and Government of Florids, bordering on the Counfell of Hispaniola, according to the Government of Peter Melendez, is all that which lyeth from the River of Palmes, which doth confine with the Government of Panaco in new Spaine, limits of the Counfell of Mexico. 40 which is neere the tropicke in 22 degrees, vnto the point of Bacallass, which falleth in 48. degrees, and a halfe, in the which are 1258.leagues of Coatt, and from thence to 73. degrees of altitude to the North by the Coast, and within the Land all that which hee discouereth. Of this hath beene coasted and discovered, from the River of Palmes vnto the Point of Santia Helena, and the River Iorden, which are about 600. leagues, it is a firme Land of a good climate, plentifull, and well inhabited in many places, as those that went through it with Hernando of Soto did know it, the yeare 1536, and 1537. John Pards borne in Cuenca, went by Land from Florida to new Spane, in leffe then two yeares, and it is the neerest Europe of any part of the Indies, & from the Bay of S. Isleph, which is eightie leagues from Ponuco. There is also discouered vnto New found Land, but that which is particularly taken for Florida, is the point that goeth into the Sea North 50 and South, with the lland of Cabe, of a hundred leagues in length, and twentie five in breadth East and West, and (when it is most) thirtie. John Ponce of Lyon discourred it Anno 1 512. on Eafter day, and for this cause he called it Florids: and afterward returned the yeere 1 = 21, and retired wounded to Caba, where he dyed, leaving a report that he fought the Fountaine or River which the Indians faid that old men washing themselves therin, became yong. This Province is according to the temperature of Callile, and many fruits were found there like the fruits of Spain, and it feemeth fit for Cattle and Corne. There is no Gould, neither feemeth that the Indians did know it, nor Siluer ; for it hath beene feene that they have found the Chefts with bars of it and money in ther Gold, Sil. their coafts and made no account of it: yet Hernando de Soto, within the inward parts of the 62

uer, nor Monie. great River, found great abundance of Pearles. There are but two Fortreffes in this Prouince with men in Garison, both in the Coast that looketh to the East : the one is called Saint Make, in the point of Saint Helena, about one hundred leagues from the Henens, and another of Saint Augustin, which is the principall, because HONDIVS bis Map of Florida.



40 the hauen is good, and is neere the channell of Ballama. It flands about fiftie leagues from les me namen se good, and is neere the channels of barries, which are neare the point of Florida, whereby it ioyneth most with the Hand of Case, a league and a halfe, and lest, the one from the other, and Points with a ranke of thelues with mouthes, in twe naie three or ewentie four leagues, which thefe Florida. Martyreshaue in length; whose beginning on the West side, is called the Point of the Martyres, andto the Eaft, the Head of the Martyres; and there is an Iland of foureteene leagues in length, and very narrow, the Point of it is the first of Torra firms to the East, in 24 degrees and a halfe, where a Towne of Spaniards was built, which continued not, and to the North, almost direct the River Ars, and more Northward in 28 degrees, the Point of the Caues, and forward the River of "Gnats, before the River of Matanca, which is so called by that which Peter Melendez did to the "Or Molavitte Captaine Ribas, and his Frenchmen; and the Point of S. Augustin in 29 degrees three quarters, and Shugher of 50 ten leagues from thence the River of S. Maiben , from whence the Coaft turneth to the North the French in

ten leagues from thence the Kiner of S. Nations, from whence the Coart United Staint Hellen, Florida, See
North-east, all with the Bands and Bays leaning vnto it vnto the Cape, or Point of Saint Hellen,
Halt. to 2. which stands in 22 degrees and a halfe, which was discourred by chance the yeare 1520. In all the rest of the Coast that is between the point of Santa Helena, by New found Land and the Bacallast, which the Land of Labrador, which reacheth and palleth the height of England, the North water there is no Towne nor Government of Spaniards, although by divers times and Nations, it bath the Baccallan. beene discourred and Nauigated, and it is knowne there is about one thousand leagues journey of Land without gold, and the more in height the worfe, and leffe habitable. There be many Riuers, and Ports, that because they are not well knowne nor frequented, there is no mention made

60 but of the River of the Stagger, by another name of Saulta Marie, which is a very great and Or Las Games. maine River, almost in the midst of the Coast betweene the Baccallass, from whence the great The great Ri-River Ochelage entreth within the Land toward the West, which divers times the strangers ver of S-Marie have navigated, beleeving to have found that way passage to new Spaine. And in the Coast of Florida, which looketh to the Weft, are the "Tortoffer, feuen or eight Hands together: and to "Las Tortugas.

Pence did feeke that renued the

the North of the point of les Manjani, the Maghe in 1879 firey, Sind thirteene leagues to the
North, the Bay of Charles, by another name of toon Ponce of Lion, and as much more forward,
the Bay of Tampa, thirtie three leagues from the Bay of Tampa, by another name, of the Hay Ghoff, or de Mersele, in twentie nine degrees and an halfe of height , where beginnet the which properly is called Florida. Many have thought, that by this fide of Florida, toward the land of Labrador, there might a firet be found to communicate the North-& che South Seas together, faying that as it had beene found to the South, there should be one so the North-but experience doth shew, that the South passage is no streight, at the least jour alreadie in doubt, and by the North vistill now, though it hath beene much fought for it hath not beene found, and hee that

#### HONDIVS bu Map of New Spaine.



40 The Councell is Refident in Mexico, and the Vice-roy governeth in it, and three-judges, the Officers of the Reuenue and Royall Treasure, a Founding House, and a Mint House, and the Suffrience of Archiepifcopall Metropolitane, that hath for Suffraganes the Bishoprickes of Tlascale, Guaracea, the Archbisho-ACCINEDICOPAL METROPOLITIES, THAT RAIT DOT NUTRIGATES HE EMPOPERATE OF A CAPACITATION OF THE STATE OF METROPOLITIES, CLASSIC, CLA of the state of th Bilhop of Mexico was Frier John de Zumarraga of the Order of Saint Francis , of great ver. in From the tue and example, borne in Durango, in the Lordship of Biskeye, which also was the first World.

There are in Mexico Monasteries of Dominican, Franciscan, and Austine Friers, the company of de destrine. I lefiu, El Carmen, la Merced, the Bare-foot, and Trinitane Priers; ten Monafteries of Nunnes, one thinke he met-Influe, El Carsonn, la Merced, the Bare-foot, and Trimtane Perres; ten monasternes or Numers, one measurement Colledge of Indiane children, and another of Arrapentidae, the Engenments is an a Recoglidae, influence of Representation of Representat Colledges and Holpitals. And the Spaniards which inhabit the bordering Townes of the Indiand, and Granges, are about three thousand, and there are reckoned about two hundred and fittle Indian had Townes of Indian, in which the chiefe places of Doctrine are one hundred and fine; and in them their peculiar and thereabouts are fix thousand Granges, more then five hundred thousand tributarie Indians, and Pri its and and energoods are the monature of the Monatteries of Franciscan, Dominican, and Austine Friers. And priests to cook the Deliriner (or Schooles) of Priefts and Friers, to teach the Faith Catholike to the Indiana, are them reli ich 6c Without number, belides the Fathers of the Company, and Mercenarie Friers: there is also Re- After in 19.5

fident in Mexico, the holy Office of the Inquitition, whereof we will intreat hereafter. dent in Mexico, the holy Office of the Inquintion, whereof we will intreat necessiter.

In the Coast bounding on this Archbishopricke towards the South Sea, and the Province of dos, Econocce Acapales, is the good Port of Acapales, in feventeene degrees height, fixe leagues from the River with Cure. Topes, whereby the Archbishopricke is joyned with the Bishopricke of Tlafcala. And other Periorages.

noun Effenia.

The Channell

went neerell to it was the Prefident Peter Melenden, by fome conjectures, All the Coaft on the West fide, vnto the Gouernment of Paumes, which is aboue 300. leagues, is called The Gulfe of New Spaine, wherein is no Towne of Spaniards, thought was given for gonernment to Pamphile of Namenez, and to Hernando of Sete, and first to Francisco de Garan and of his people in pareicular. The Country is very poore of victuals, and the people miferable, and although in it are many Rivers and Ports, no mention is made of them, because they are not well knowne. This Gulfe hath two entrances : by the one the currents doe enter furiously, betwicene Tucatan and Cuba, and goe out with a greater force betweene the fame Hand of Cuba, and the point of Florida and running doe-make the channell of Babama, which taketh his name of the

of Granada go dent of S De-

The fecond Audience which was fetled in the Indies, is that of New Spaine, and Numpods Guzonau Canallero de Guadalaiara was the furth President, till a Gouernour wete prouided, and because he gave no satisfaction, there was another new Councell quickly fent, and for Prefident of it Don Sebastian Ramirez of Fuenteal, which of a Judge of the Chancerie of Grandle. went for Prefident of the Councell of Saint Dominicke, and Buhop of the Citie of the Concepti-Ramirez ludge on of the Valley , a person of great Learning, Vertue, and Valour. Hee had the charge of the Gouernment, Iustice, and disposition of the goods Royall, the Warre remayning at the charge of the Marquelle of the Valley, with order to communicate with the Prefident, that which appertayned thereto; and betweene them was alwayes great conformitie. The bounds of this Coun-Great confor- cell, on the one fide doth not comprehend that which commonly is called New Spaine, and on 30 mity betweene the other it comprehendeth more, because the new Gallicia, which is a Councell by it selfe, is part of New Spaine. The Province of Tucatan, falleth within the bounds of it, which as now it is, may have in

length about foure hundred leagues, from the furthest East of Tucatan, vnto where it parteth bounds with the Councell of new Gallozia, and North and South, about two hundred from the end of the Government of Panaco vnto the South Sea, his bounds remayning open on the North fide, whose principall Prouinces are the Archbishopricke of Mexico, the Bishoprickes of Mechoacan, and that of los Angelos, or Tlascala, and of Guaxaca, and of Chiapa, and the Gouernments of Panneo and Tucatan, with that of Tobosco, and for circuit or commerce, the Ilands Phillipinas, and the dispatch of the Nauigation of China.

New Spanne is one of the best Prouinces of the new World, and the most habitable in a good temper, having abundance and plentie of Come, Miller, and Cattle, and all other necessaries for humane life, except Oyle and Wine, and although in many places of it there is Gold, Silver is most generall, whereof there are many good Mynes.

The Archbishopricke of Mexico, falleth betweene the Bishopricke of los Angelos, and that of Mechoacan, it hath in length North and South, one hundred and thirtie leagues, and in breadth eighteene, which it hath by the Coast of the South Sea, vnto sixtie within the Land, wherein are included the Prouinces of Mexico, and to the North-east of it Lateotlalpa, Mexiclan, Xilotepeque, and Panuco the most diffant : and to the West, Matalzingo neere to Mexico, and Cultepeque the furthest off : and to the East, Tezenco neere to Mexico : and to the South-east, Chalco, to neere to that of Mexico: and to the South of it Suchmileo, the first, and after Tlalue, and betweene South and South-west Copaca, and Acapulco, the furthest to the South. There are no more in all but foure Townes of Spaniards, although in the Prouince of Mexico are many Spaniards dwelling in the Townes of the Indians. They called Mexico in old time, Tenoxistlan it flands in nineteene degrees and an halfe of altitude, and one hundred and three degrees of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, from whence it may be diffant by a direct Line, one thousand seven hundred and fortie leagues, which are eight houres of 1 Sunne : it flands in the middeft of two great Lakes that doe compaffe it, the one of falt water, because his bottome is Salt-petrish; the other fresh having fish, and voydeth into the Salt one; each is of five leagues in breadth, and eight in length, and both doe compaffe thirtie three leagues. They goe into the Citie by three caufies of halfe a league in length, and there are in it foure thouland Spaniards, and thirrie thouland 60 Houles of Indians or more. In the foure ancient streets wherein the Citie was divided, in the time of their Paganisme, which at this day is called of Saint John, Saint Mary the Round, Saint Paul, and Saint Sebastian; and the Tlatelulco is the principall firet which they call Saint lames.

Tenavtitlan. Mexico deferi-Totedo 1740.

do then at Me xice: which

S. lage de los

The Bithop

d Valtation

Tintala.

La Veracrus San luan de

eight more to the West, the River of Cicle, and ester foure, the River of Ania. In the Couf of the North, it hath that which falleth in the Godernment of Tanaca. In the limits of this Councell are the Mynes of Puchuca, fourteene leagues from Mexico, and the Mynes of Tafcet wentie ewe, those of Thougash, which are of Lead, ewenter we; the Mynes of Thouses twenter four. In Mynes of Thouse twenter the Mynes of Thouse the Mynes and Saint Lower of the Peace, and in them all there may bee about foure thomand Speniarde west had ith industrie and labour doe attend these Mynes, all of Silier except one, which as bath beene kild, is of Lead, and procuring that the Indians taking example of them, may lise polis to tickly land the first that with maruellous cunning and wisdome, brought in the breedings of case. tell and tillages, which have beent the mightieft meanes for the prefernation of the Mynes, was the about faid Prefident Don Seligian Ramirez of Fuenteal, originall and the foundation of all the good of those Realmes.

The Protince of Panace to the North of Mexico, Nume of Guessan had in government; is breesing and hath fiftie leagues in breadth, and in length, and after it was incorporate with the limits of the Councell or Audience of Mexico. The Countrey that looketh toward New Spaine is the befl. plentifull of victuals and hath fome Gold. That which runneth toward Florida is milerable, from whence till yee come to his bounds, are more then five hundred leagues. This government hath three Spanish Townes, Panico, in somewhat more then twentie three degrees, and by anothername the Village of Saint Stephen of the Hauen, which Gençale of Sandonallbuilt, by order of the Marquelle Don Formando Carter, when they went to refift Prancifeo Garay, and to pacifie the Indians of Chila, the yeere 1 120, and it standeth fixtie five leagues from Mexico to the North North-east, eight leagues from the Sea, neere to a River whose entry is a Hauen ; it is a chiefe Alcaldia, or lufticethip, prouided by the Vice-roy of New Spaine. The Village of Saint Lames of the Valleyes, twentie five leagues from Pannes to the West. The Village of Saint Lane de Tampico, eight leagues from Pannes to the North-east, neere to the Sea : and although in the Coaft of this government are many Rivers, & fome rode vnto the River of Palmer, they are not knowne in the Gulfe of New Spain, but the River of Pannes, & his hanen, which is not very good.

The Bishopricke of Tlascala, which by another name is called de los Angeles, betweene 30 the Archbishopricke of Mexico, and the Bishopricke of Guaraca, is of 100. leagues, and more in length, from the Coast of the South to that of the North, and betweet the confines of the Arche bishopricke, and of Guaxaca 80, and as many in breadth, by the Coast of the North Sea . and no more then 18. or 20. by that of the South. There is not in it all more then three Spanift Towns. which is the City or Towne of the Angels 22. leagues from Mexico to the East, fomewhat in-clining to the South, of 1500. housholds in foure streets: it is a Chiefe Instice-ship where the Cathedral Suffragane to the Archbilhoprick of Mexico is Relident, with Monasteries of Dominicks Franciscan, and Austine Friers, one of Nuns, & one Colledge of more then coo. Indian children, to be instructed, with 10000, Pezos rent, which the Bishop Don Sebastian Ramirez built, which fent the Batchelor Salmeron Auditor of the Coungell to build this City, and although he had de. 40 termined to have made it in Tlafcala, he left is because he would not endamage the Indians, nor touch their Lands; for he had a great regard in generall to the good of the Indians, and in particus lar for those of T lafeela, being to well deferring of the Crowne Royall.

The Citie was built in the bounds of Cholala, from whence went 25000. men to warre, and it was feated in a Plaine called Cuetlaxcoapa, neere to a Valley called Atlifeo, on the border of a fmall River that commeth out of the & Oulcan, where they gather Wheate, Wine, and all the Fruits of Cafele, Sugar and Flaxe, and all manner of Herbs. For it is a temperate Country, more betweene the Citie of the Angels and Cholula, it goeth very great and without fifth, it passets through the Prouinces of Mechancan, and entreth into the South Sea by Zucania, and there bee in it fo many Carmanes, or Crocodiles, that they have dispeopled some places,

In Tlafeala to the North of the Angels, which stands in more then twenty degrees in height, where the Cathedrall Church was till the yeere 1550, when it was removed to the Citie ; the first Bishop was Frier Inlian Garces, the Valley of Atlesco, which may have in breadth about ane vancy or one league and an halfe, where the Corne is neuer blafted, and there is gathered in it about 100000. Haneges, and there are more then 2000. Spaniards that do traffick in it, and 7. leagues from the Citie to the East, is the Valley of Ocumba: and in the Prounce of Tepeaca, the Marqueffe of the Valley built a Spanifb Towne, which he called Segura : and in the Valley of S. Paul, may be other 1200. housholds of Spaniards, in Farmes and Grangeries of cattle, that multiply lo much, that there were men that with two shag-haird sheepe came to have about 40000.

The Citie of Veracruz, one way stands fixtie leagues from Mexico, and by another fixtie fine, it flands one quarter of a league from the Sea, it is of more then two hundred Spanife hou hholds. There is in it Treasurie Royall, and House of Contractation. The Port is called Saint John of VL

ma. a name which the Captayne Iobs Gryalma, which discourred it the yeere 1518, and the frame of the Key that it hath, the Viccoroy Don Antonie of Mendoca began. It is fue leagues from the mouth of the River of Veracruz, between the Coals and the little Hand, which is about one league in compaffe, compaffed with shelues, and so low that the tydes doe couer it right against the mouth of the River of Saint low of Flus. They goe into this Hauen by two Channels the most frequented is that of the Flat, the other is called the Gallifun Channell, which is very deepe, and there the ships doe fasten themselves to a great wall of more then source hundred foot with Rings of Iron and Braffe, and when the North winds are very strong, they are not very fure. The Vergeruz stands in eighteene degrees, somewhat more, and there was wont to be to the valoading of the Fleets, and they flayed foure or fine monethes in valoading , because it stands five leagues from Saint Iman of Vina , therefore it is now made in the Port of Buytren, which is from the Port of Saint loke of Vine about eight hunded paces, and it is finished in one moneth and an halfe, and it is called Baytron, by a House that was there of one called Baytron. and they begin to make a Towne there in that fituation,

There are in this Bishopricke two hundred chiefe Townes of the Indians, and one thousand There are in this Billiophiac two hundred fiftie fine thouland Tributarie Indians, in thirtie fix Akinde of charges of Doctrine of Priests, and thirtie Monasteries of Dominicke, Franciscan, and An-Parish or Gine Friers: and in the Coast of this Bishopricke on the North Sea, is the River of Aluarado, Schoole diviwhere the bounds of the Bishopticke of Guanaca, and the River of Almeria doe joyne neere to fion, Spe parti-20 the River of Saint John of Vlua, where the Towne of Medellin was built by Andrew of Tapia, the des de dellinae yeere 1522, when the Marquelle Don Fernando Cortes fent the faid Andrew of Tapia, and Gongalo of Sandenall, to conferre with Christopher of Tapia, which had Warrants to take away the Government of New Spaine from the Marquefle, and the Factor Salazar, and the Ouer-feer Peralmindez dispeopled. The River of Almeria springeth in the long Rome, in the Provinces of Totomaques, and Micantle, and betweene Mountaynes it goeth into the North Sea, and against this River is the Iland of Sacrifiers, which the Captayne Grisales gave the name vnto , and the River of Zemponia to the North from Venerus, and voward the River of Saint Peter and Saint Paul, which ipringeth in the fame Rome , and the River of the Carones , Topa , and Tamiagua,

neere the Gouernment of Pannes.

He Bishopricke of Guaraga (so called by the Province wherein it is, and Antequera by the Chap. to. Citie where the Cathedrall is resident betweene the Bishopricke of the Angels, and the Of the Bisho-Bishoprickes of the Councell of Gustamala) is of one hundred and twentie leagues, from the prickes of Gustamala) is of one hundred and twentie leagues, from the prickes of Gustamala one Sea to the other, by the Confines of the Bishopricke of Tlafeala, and fixtie by the Confines and Austama. of Chiaps, and one hundred in breadth by the Coaft of the South Sea, and fiftie by the North & of the Pro-Sea, wherein are included the Prouinces of la Miffees, high and low; the high fortie leagues uince of Tabaffrom Antequera to the Welt, Se the low more to the South Sea John Nannez Sedenno, and Fernan ce, which is the de of Badaioz inhabited first the Citie of Antequera ; and after the first Councell of Mexico inha . 10ft of the bited it againe; the only Judges therein were Batchelour lobn Ortiz of Matienzo, and Delgadillo, Scribed. 40 which was the first, that as a man of Granade, began to breed Silke in Mexico. The President

and Gouernour, the Bishop Don Sebattian Rammer, began the Cathedrall Church, the beginning of the good of those Kingdomes: the Church hath all the Pillers of Marble of one piece, very great and bigge, and the Citie hath about foure hundred Spanib Housholds.

This Valley of Guarage, from whence the Marquelle of the Valley taketh his Title, begin- Guarage Title neth from the Mountayne of Cocole, in the bound of Guarolotician. In it is gathered much Silke, of the Mar-Corne, and Millet; it hath the Zapoteca Tongue. There hath beene in it good Mynes of Gold. queffe of the The fituation of the Citie of Antequera (which as hath beene fait) they call Guaraca, was inha- Valley. bited with people of Mexico, which lay in Garrison by order of the fecond Morezuma, and the many Garrisons that the Kings of Mexico had through their Empire made general in it the Mozican Tongue. The River of this Citie doth finke under the ground, against Cimatian, and ra-

50 feth two leagues off, at the Mountaynes of Canlan, other two from Guaraca; and at a halfe a league from the Citie right against a Hill that stands to the North, is a point of a little Hill, and there goeth a glade of a Valley altoplaine, for the space of eight leagues, which is the aboutlaid faire Valley of Guartea, plealant, and remperate, and of a most healthfull Ayre, where plentia Stinking Rinte fully are gathered all kind of things, and especially fruits of Caffets, most pleasant. To the Souths west stands the Prouince of Tutepeque, which hath many Townes by the Sea-coast, and is of Tutepeque, more then fixtie leagues ; and that of the River of Alwards , betweene the North and Northeaft : and that of the Zaporecas to the North east from Antequera, and Guazacoaloco in the Con-

fines of Tabasco, all rough Countrey, & notwithstanding the rich Mynes of Gold, little is gotten 60 because of the roughnesse. There are foure Spanish Townes. The faid Citie of Autequera is eightie leagues from Mexico, tonhe South-east in the high way of Chiana, and Guaremala; and the first that entred to pacific this Province, was lobn Nunnez of Mercado, the yeere \$421. by Commiffion of Don Fernands Cortes, and from thence were men of Was lent to ferue the King Quantity simoc, in the defence of Mexico, when Don Fernando Cortes Subdued it.

S. Alifanfoof

The Treasurer Alfonso of Estrada, when he did governe in Mexico, inhabited the Village of Saint Alifonso de los Sagneces, twentie leagues from Antequera, toward the North-east. They live in it by Gold, Cotton-wooll, and Millet, there are about thirtie thousand Indians tributaries. It stands betweene most high Hils. Saint lago de Nexapa is in the Valley of Nexapa,twentie leagues from Antequera to the East, in the way of Chiapa, and Guatemala. The Village of the Nexapa. tie leagues from Antequera to the East, in the way or Chiapa, and Guatemata. The Village of the El Edwird See- Holy Ghoft in the Prounce of Guataccoalco, at the Coaft of the North Sea, in the Confiner of Tabasco, is ninetie leagues from Ansquera. Gonçalo of Sandonali inhabited it in the yerre 1522. It hath about liftie Townes of Indians; it flands on the border of the River, on the fide of Chiapa : this River fpringeth in the Mountaynes of the Mixes, and Chomales, neere to Tecountepeque, and with the waters of the Neighbour Prouinces of Chapa, and the Chomales, it in goeth into the North Sea, there enter into it thips of one hundred tun.

In all this Bulhopricke there is no River that doth not yeeld Gold, and the Indians doe line without want if they will worke, for they lacke nothing for backe nor belly : and they have the Cacao, a Fruit like Almonds, which feruerh for Money, and they make Wine of it, and it is eaten tofled, and is held for a great fuftenance. They are wholfome Countreyes , and please fant. The Silke was before nourished by the Castillans, with the Mulberie Trees of the Countrey, wherewith the Indians ferued themselues, for to make Paper of the second barke: and the Spaniards have planted to many of Castile, that they grow infinitely : and if the Indians did The Indians pay tithe of it, and of other things, five Bilhoprickes might be made; but none doe pay tithe Tithes.

This Bishopricke hath three hundred and fiftie Head-townes of Indians, and in them, and in

three hundred Granges of more then an hundred & fifty thouland tributary Indians, & one hun-

dred and twentie Monafteries of Dominicke Friers, and the rest Schooles of Priefts for Doctrine.

Guatules in obedience, and the Port of Tecomstepeque is neere, which also is reasonable; and the

Towne is great, and there is in it a great fifting for Shrimps, and other fift which they carrieto

Guaxaca, and in the high way of Cuyxtata is a Myne of Christall-borill. Tecoantepeque is fortie

fine leagues from Antequera, they paffe by the Mountaynes of the Chentales, Nixapa, and Me-

xalpeque, whitherto this Bishopricke extendeth, and bath many Townes subject by the Coast

The Bishopricke of Mechacan (which is a Prouince between the Archbishopricke of Me-

rice, and the new Galicia) hath in breadth by the Coast of the South Sea, about eightic leagues, 40

and fixtie within the Land, with open bounds, by the Septen rionall parts : in it are included

the Provinces of Zacatula, and of Colima, both in the Coast of the South Sea. The Citie of Mechanean, or Pazenaro, in little more then nineteene degrees, and fortie feuen leagues from

Mexico, of plaine way. In Guayang areo called Vallodolid, is Refident the Cathedrall Suffragane

to Mexico, with two Monasteries of Franciscans , and Anfine Friers. The Master of the held

Christopher of Olid built Mechanan, the Cathedrall was first Resident in Zinzonza, voto the

yeere 1544, that he removed it to Pazenaro. The Bishop was Don Basco de Quiroga; and it hath

one Monafterie of Franciscan, another of Anfine Friers, and it itands tenen leagues from Me-

ward the Zacatecas, wherein there are about fixe hundred Caffilians, in two Campes " which

they have with their chiefe Aleade or Commissioner, and the seate and dwelling of those that

follow the Mynes is a Reall or Campe. The Village of Saint Michaell, in the Province of Me-

chescen, is thirtie five leagues from Pazenere, to the North-east, in a rough Countrey. And the

Village of the Conception of Salaya, which was built by commandement of the Vice-roy. Don Martin Euroquez, the yeere 1 570. for to affure the way of the Chichimecas. The Village of

The Mynes of Guamaxnate, are twentie eight leagues from Mecheacan, to the North, to- 50

River of Alua. The Coaft of the North Sea of this B thopricke, beginneth in the River of Aluaredo, that com-

meth from the Mountaynes of the Zapotecas, and betweene many other it goeth to the Prouince of Chimantla, and croffing overthwart the Mountaynes whence it fprung, goeth out into the North Sea, betweene the River of Guazacoalco, and Saint lohn of Ulna, and there is also the River called Agualules, whole mouth may terue for a Haven; and the divided Rocke, a point of the Land that commeth from the Mountaynes of Saint Martine, named by thips that have bin loft voon a shoale full of Rockes under water, which lye along the Coast right against them in to the Coast of the South Sea. This Bishoprick hath the Hauen of Guarales in fifteene degrees and an halfe, great, good, and frequented. The Prefident Don Peter of Aluarado fer this Province of

Village of S. The Concep-

The Village of Saint Philip fiftie leagues off Mechacan, toward the North, and fixtie two from Mexico to

the North-well, with one Monasterie of Antime Friers, in a barren foyle and cold; it was built for the fecuritie of the way of the Zacatecas. The Province and Village of Zacatula, in the Coaft of the South Sea, flands in more then 18.de- 60 grees, and fortie leagues from Machoncan, to the South-west, neere the Sea: Iohn Rodriguez, of Vilmorte, and Simon at Chenea, built it the yeare 1523, it flands minetie leagues from Mexico, and the Prouince and Village of Casma, in Little more then 18, degrees, in the Couft of the South Sea, and in the confines of new Gaticle, fiftie leagues from Mecheacar, to the South-west, with a

CHAP.I.No Crosses in America till the Spaniards came. A Man 200, yeares old. 875

chiefe Commissioner, in a hot foyle, and plentifull of Cacao, and Cassia Fistola, with Gould, and well conditioned people. Gençale of Sandonal built it in the yeare 1522. All the Countrie of Mechagean is most plentifull of Wheate, Miller, and all kinde of Spanish Fruites, and Cattle, stored of Fish: it hath Graine, Cochinilla, and Cotten wooll, and the people is industrious, and given to labour.

There are in this Bilhopricke one hundred and thirtie Townes, the nintie four head Townes with Schooles of Doctrine : this Bishopricke reacheth no Coast of the Sea of the North, in the South Sea are many Rivers, and in the furtheft West of the Province, almost in the border of the new Galicia, is the port of Nauidad, in the height of 19 degrees, good and frequented, from the new comment, as the past of a same man, in the length of 19 degrees, good and requenced, from whence the Natigation is made to the Philipinas; and more to the East, never the Port of Saint More are now and Concess Mines; and all the past of the Port of Saint More are now and Concess Mines; and all the past of the lames: there are very good Copper Mines in these bounds, of the which the Indians make very curious Veffels, for it is pleafant, and other fo hard that they digge the ground with it inflead of

Iron, which they could neuer doe till the Spaniards taught it.

The Prosince and Government of Tuestan (which tooke this name when the Captaine Francifcus Fernandez, discouered it, and our Ladie of the Remedies, when Iohn of Grigalia discouered Tucture. Consent) was at the first held for an Hand, because it was almost compassed with Sea, in fort that it may be called Peninfula, and it compaffeth more then two hundred and fiftie leagues : it is in length where it extends it selfe East and West, about one hundred leagues, and as many North and South, from the Coast that looketh to the North, vnto the part that doth confine with the 20 Provinces of Guaremala, whereby it hath our rwhart about flue and twentie leagues. The tem-

Protinces of Guatemala, whereby it natu ourtemart about nite and seventee reagues, a for term-or of the perature is not, and very motif, and though there he no Ritter, nor running water in it all, the war-fail the Conf. Sea and the prince of many their of Sea-fifth where the Hones, that this, and the rear is to near for Wels, and they finde to many their of Sea-fifth where the Hones, that this, and the Coast being so low, hath guen occasion to suspect that it hath beene Sea in other times: it is of Lattenin much compassed with Wood: they gather no Corne, nor seedes of Cafille, there is no Gould, nor Yucatan, whereany other kindeof Mettall, whence is knowne the invention (or deceit) of those which faid as there never any other kinde of Mettall, whence is knowne the mountain to decerty of those which that there were found in this Prouince, when the Spaniard entred in it, Croffes of Latten, which the Indiribewas never found in any Province of the Indies: it is very plentiful of game, especially wilde forethe Speniorethe Boares and Deere, they breede up in it greatstore of Poultrie: they gather much Cotten wooll, ards. and Azure, the people multiplieth and luseth long; a man there was which attained to three hun- A Man of 300; dred yeares: it hath all the kinde of Cattle of Spaine, and good Horses;

There are in this Companyant without the first property of the companyant without the first property of the companyant without the companyant with the comp There are in this Government without that of Tabafco, which goeth loyntly with it, foure

Spanifb Townes, and one Bishopricke : and the Townes are buildings of the first Gouernour, the Prefident Don Francisco of Monteio. The Citie of Merida is intwentie degrees height, almost Merida. in the middeft of the Province, neerer to the coaft of the North Sea, twelve leagues within the Land. In it are resident the Gouernour, the Officers of Reuenues, and treasure Royall, and the Cathedrall Suftragane to Mexico, with a Monasterie of Franciscane Frees, they called it Merida, for the great and auncient buildings that it hath like Maride in Caffile, and it caufeth admiration, that having no kinde of Mettall in this Province, fogreat Scones could be wrought, in the which were found engrauen naked men, with eare-rings, whereof is inferred that they were Temples, AO and that it was a very famous Countrie. The Village of Oalladolid is thirtie one leagues from Me. Valladolid.

rida, toward the South-east with a most sumptuous Monasterie of Franciscan Fryers, and 1,000. tributane Indians in the limits. The Village and port of Saint Franciscus of Campeche, in 20. de- Campeche grees, in the Coalt that looketh to new Spaine, about fiftie leagues from Merida to the West, declining to the South, it hath a reasonable Hauen, though little depth for being a Bay Don Franrifers of Monteio gaue it the name. The Village of Salamanca the Prefident called fo by his Salamanca owne Countrie. In the Provinces of Bacalar, and Chetemal, seventie leagues from Merida, North and South, leaning to the West, and other seventie from Valladolid, neere to the Coast of the gulfe of Honduras : there are in this Prouince Monasteries of Franciscanes, and fix Schooles of

Prietts for Doctrine.

The Coast of all this Promince is so shallow, that in few parts ye can ride at anker at leffe then thing. foure or fue leagues from the Land, and to there is no Port but for small Shippes, and it floweth Tides. and ebbeth more in this Coalt then in any other place of these Provinces of new Spaine. The The Ports and Ports that are, be thele: Cicle, and Telichaque, Cical and Cauquil: the River with two mouthes, points of this Campeebe in the Coalt that looketh to new Spaine, and in it the small Cape from whence the Goutenment. Coaft beginneth to winde to the East, and neere to the Point a little Iland which is called la Desconocida or the Vnthankefull, compassed with shelves: and to the West from this, about eighteene leagues, another which they call the Zarza, and the Triangle, which are three fmall Hands, close by another little Hand compassed with shelues, other fixteene leagues from & Cabo a Or Sharpe, Delgado, Hands de Arenas (of Sandes) and the Redde (la Bermeia) and another Hand thirtie leagues

90 from the faid Cape to the North, and los Negrillos, three little llets compafied with shelies, to the East from the B. Redde, about thirtie fine leagues, and the & Scorpiones twentie leagues of the b Or Berneia. coast North and South, with Merida, and the Cape of Contoche, the Point most to the East of c Or Aleccents. Tucatan, from whence goe foure little Hands, which are called de Mugeres of Women, leaning to the Coast in the which is the Hand of Commel, named by the famous Idoll Place in it, whither

thipping place

876

all the people of the Pronince went in Pilgrimage; it flands four leagues to the Sea, at the beginning of the Gulfe of Himdorm, almost North and South with Valladdid, more inward to the
Gulfe, other three little llets with shelpes, almost over against the Lake of Bacalal, which is with in the Land thirtieleagues from the Lake of Chetemall, in the Coast that goeth painted with I-Ortake away lands vnto Salamanea, which is the first Pantoia, neere one thelfe called "Quitasnenno, and another Zaratan, and another Lamanay, and the last Ylbob.

The Province of Tabasco, which goeth with the Government of Yucatan, and falleth youn the Coast of the North Sea in the gulfe of new Spaine , bath in length East and West , about force leagues, from the confines of Tucatan, vnto the confines of Goazacealco, wherewith it ioyneth to on the East, and as much North and South from the North Sea, vnto the confines of Chiana. It is all plaine ground of Marshes, Lakes and Quigmires, and so they goe ouer it in Boates, and Canoes; it is very moift, and hot, and therefore very plentifull of Paltures for Kine, and of Miller and Cacao, which is the greatest stocke or substance of this Prouince, wherein is onely one Town, which is Tabasco, and by another name, the Village of our Lady of the Victorie, so called for the Victory that Don Hernands Cortez had there of the Indians, when hee went to new Spaine , the yeare 1519. The tribute which the Indians doe pay in this Prouince, is two thousand Xi. quipiles of Caca, and enery Xiquipill are eight thousand Almonds, and one load maketh three X:quipiles or Terces. In the Coast of this Prouince besides other Rivers and Marishes, is found Rivers of this the Lake of Xucalango, or Port Royall, great and capable, with two little Ilands at the mouth, and it was the Captaine Lewis Martin, that by order of Don Fernando Cortes, made an end of pa- 20 cifying this Prouince.

Lake of Xica-

(bap.11. of the Counfel

He bounds of the Counfell of new Gallicia or of Xalifeo (which Numo of Guzman faid hee A had discouered, and Don Fernando Cortes, that the Captaine Goncale of Sandonall, did it in his name, when hee fent him to pacific the Columns ) it parteth bounds with of Guadaluara, the Countell of new Spaine, neere by the Port of the Nativitie, and the Lake of Chiana la, going toward the North-east, whereby (and by the North, and somewhat of the West, for it is not all discouered) it hath the bounds open, for the rest to the West is all Sea: that which is inhabited on the one fide, and the other, may come to one hundred leagues, wherein are comprehended the Prouinces of Guadalaiara, Xalifco, the Zacatecas, Chiametla, Culi- 30 acan, the new Birkey, and Cinolos; and for Circuit the discouerie of the Prouinces of Cibola and of Quibira.
The temperature of the Province, and borders of Guadalaira, is good, and the Countrie plen-

tifull of Corne, and Miller, and other Seedes of Spaine, and many Vaines of Silver : there are in it Spanish Townes. Numo of Guzman peopled the Citie of Guadalasara, the head of this Kingdome, the yeare 1531. and gaue it the name of his Countrie: it stands in 106 degrees and a halfe of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, 1780, leagues by a direct Voyage, & in 20, degrees one third part in height, eightie feuen leagues from Mexico, betweene the North and the West, more toward the West: in it is resident the Counsell, the Officers of the reuenues, & Royall treafurie, and the Cathedrall fuffragan to Mexico, fince the yeare 1570, forbefore it was commanded 40 to be built in Compostella: it hath one Monasterie of Franciscan, another of Austine Friers. Nunne Smills Meric of of Guzman built also the Village of the Holy Ghost in Topque: and the Village of Santia Marie of the Lakes, stands thirtie leagues from Guadalaiara to the South-east, with the chiefe Commissioner. It was built for to be sure of the Chichimecan Indies, that are in Countries between the North and the East, a barbarous people, which live scattered in the field, without any taste of humanitie or policie, liuing in Canes, &in the Groues like fauage beafts; they live upon wilde chair and fruits, they know no riches, nor pleafure; they goe naked, and fome couered with Beafts skins; their weapons are Bowes and Arrowes, they are well bodied, great eaters, they make wine of certaine rootes wherewith they drinke themfelues drunke.

the Lakes,

The Chichime-

In the Prouince of Xalifco, which is plentiful of Millet, more then of Sheepe, or Horfes, there 50 is onely the Citie of Compostella neere the Sea, three and thirtie leagues from Guadalaxara, to the West, where the Counsell was at the first, and commanded to build the Cathedrall, vntill the yeare 1 560, that they removed to Guadalaiara to be more in the borders: there is in it a Monatterie of Franciscan Friers; and it was also inhabited by Nunno Guzman, the yeare 1531. which trauelled two yeares in these Countries, which they called the greater Spaine, in emulation of Don Fernando Cartes, in all that time nothing being knowne of him in Mexico. The Village of the Purification, to the South-well, from Guadalaiara, and thirtie leagues from it, neere the port of the Nationie, in the confines of the bounds of this Counfell, and of that of Mexico. in a very hot and fickly Countrie : and vnto the end of the years 1531. Numme of Guzman discovered one hundred and fiftie leagues of Land by the Coast of Xalifeo, which stand 60 in somewhat more then 22. degrees.

In the Prouince of the Zacatecas, are rich mines of Silver, and want of Water, Corne and Millet: there are three Townes of Spaniards, and foure Camps appointed of mines: thole whith they call of the Zacasecas are the principall, fortie leagues from Guadalas are to the North, and

eightie from Mexics, wherein are ordinarie more then fine hundred Spaniard, fine hundred Slaves, one thousand Horses and Mules, and one Monasterie of Franciscame Fryers; and there is relident alwayes one of the Officers Royall of Guadalaires. In this Prouince also are the Mines of Assens, in the confines of the Zacatecas, and those of Saint Martin seven and twentie leagues from the Zacatecas, to the North-west, wherein are wont to be about four hundred Spaniards, and Xerez of the Frontier, thirtie leagues from Guadelaxara, to the North, and tenne from the mines of the Zacarecas, in the way to them. There are belides these other Resles or Campes, mines of the Erena, & the Mines The Erena, & the Mines The Erena, Called of the little "Hat, are fine and twenty leagues from Zacatecas to the North-west, neere to "Or Seminated 10 to the Language Company of the Co eight leagues from the Citie of Guadalaiara, and tenne from the Mines of Saint Martin to the Gad. North, with a Monasterie of Franciscan Friers, aboundant in Corne, and Millet, and good Mines in his Borders, The Village of Durange, in the Borders of the Mines of Saint Martin, and the Valley of Saint Saluador, eight leagues from Nombre de Dios, a wholefome Countrie, & many Rivers, with whole watering they gathered great flore of Corne, and Millet, and of other Prouisons, and in the Borders are the Mines of Saint Late, and a very good Salt-pit. And the Indians of this Kingdome in many places were in armes, and the Chiebimecas, and Gnachachiles did great burt in the way of Guadalaura to the Zacatecas, and this warre was very colly, and tedious, and was

ended, the Marquelle of Villamanrique being Viceroy. The Indians are divided in this precinct in

20 one hundred and foure partitions or tribes. The Prouince of new Bizkie, is North-west ward from the Zacateens siftie leagues from them; Musea Victoria. a Countrie of Prouifions, and much Cattell, and of good Siluer Mines, the Mines of Hindebe are in it, of SantiaBarbola, and of Saint John, and in it is the Prouince of Topis; and in this discourry, and inhabiting, Franciscus Tharra did many services. The Province of Chiametla, twenty leagues broad Chiametla, and long, in the Coast of the South Sea, about fortie leagues from Xalifee, hath Mines of Silver, and in it stands Saint Sebastian, a Village of Spaniards, which was first of the Counsell of Mexico, and it flands in more then 22.degrees. Culiacan is a government in the South Sea, more to the East, and West from Chametla; it is a plentifull Countrie of Victuals, and showes of Silver Mines. and west tion Commons, it is a presentate Countrie of victors, and mowes or Since Mines, whereof there is a Campe peopled, which they callof the Figure. The Village of Sinte Mi. S. Michael, charl, eightic leagues from Composella, and one hundred and three from Guadalaira, Numee of

Guzman inhabited it the yeare 1531. The Promince of Covaloa, the lait, and most Septentrionall of the new Kingdome of Galicia, Ciudia, two and fortie leagues from Culinean, one hundred and fiftie from Guadalaiara, to the North, was a Towne built in it that was called Saint lobu of Cinalon, of Spaniards, and could not be kept. This Prounce was discoursed, Don Antonie of Mendoca being Viceroy in new Spaine, and they faid there was a Citie feene wrought with stone, which they called Granada, and that those Indiene were warriers, and that in the Countrie was great flore of Victuals. Quibira, flands in Quibira. forcie degrees, of a temperate and fruitfull foyle. Cibola, stands thirtie leagues from Culiacau, Cibola. toward the North, and Quibira two hundred from Cubola to the East; it is all of poore peo-40 ple; for that they have no Cotten , they weare Deere skinnes, and of the Countrie Kine, which have a lumpe on the ridge of the backe, and long haire in the fore parts, the hornes

leffer then ours; and in them confifteth the greatest part of the sustenance of the people, for of the skinnethey cloathe, and make Shooes, and Cords; they eate the fielh, and make tooles of the bones : they have fundry languages in this Prouince, because they communicate little the one with the other.

California is a great point of the Land that putterh out to the Sea in the vttermost West of California new Spaine in two and twentie degrees height, from whence it extendeth to the North-west, nesre about two hundred leagues, although of it there is no certaine notice, nor of the Ports, and Ilands of the Gulfe California, which is made betweene the faid point, and Gulfe of new 50 Spaine, which goeth along that way, as to the North-west; in the which alchough there be many Rivers, Capes, and Points, and landing-places, there is no particular notice lud of them, because they are not much frequented. At the beginning, and entrance of this Guile are very long and narrow Hands along the Coast, and very close with it, which is called the Guay anall, that reacheth from the River of our Ladie, or of Sebastian of Bora, vnto the River of Christman in Cultuces. The River of the Village of Saint Michael is called Cignation; and neerer co new Spaine is the River of Pastla, and against it the Defar Hand, and afterward the River of the Hos Ghoft, and the port of Xalife, and to the South of the point of California, is Annublada or the Cloudie Iland, and the Iland of Saint Thomas, and the Hand of Flores, and another which is called

Las Monias. T was first called the Counsell of Guatemala of the confines, because it was commanded first to Of the Bounds be built in the confines of the Prounces of Nicaragua, and Guatemala, without affiguing any of the Bounds certaine Towne, It hath in length East and West two hundred and fortie leagues, and from the of S. James of Meridian from 84. to 98. of longitude, and North and South, in breadth one hundred and eigh. Guatemale.

a Or tiue b Or Rich coaft.

tie, from 9.to 10.degrees of height, vnto eighteene or ninereene, in the which are comprehelded the Provinces of Guatemala, Soconusco, Chiapa, Suchnepeque, the Verapaz Honduras and Cacos, Saint Saniour, and Saint Michael, Nicaragua, Chiduteca, Taguzgaha, and b Costarica; and in enery one of these Proninces they alter in speech : and according to the opinion of Religious men, it was the worke of the Diuell, for to plant diffentions and discord betweene their Nations which were bloody and reuengefull. The Gouernment and Prounce of Guatemala on the Guerema's. South Sea coast, in length of it may be about feuentie leagues, and in breadth North and South thirtie : it is a Countrie of a good temperature, plentifull of Millet, Cotten wooll, Corne and other fruits, though they preserue not the Seede of one yeare for the other : the waters are few, to but when it raineth they are very violent from Aprill to October, the windes are North and South, and the North laiteth but fifteene or twentie dayes, and it is very cold, and furious. There are in it fine Spanif Townes, buildings of the President Don Pedro of Aluarado, in the yeare

1524. and 25. The Citie of Saint Lames of Guatemala, whose situation was called Cachequill. which fignifieth an Eagle, because the Generall of this Nation, when hee went to warre, did beare an Eagle for his Plume : it is the head of the Gouernment, where the Counfell is refident. in 24 degrees and a halfe of height, and 93 degr. from the Meridian of Toledo, from whence it may bee diffant by a greater circle of one thousand fixe hundred and fixtue leagues, and it is twelve from the Sea, and a towne of fixe hundred Spanish housholds: the Officers of the goods and Rove all Treasure, are resident there, the melting house, and the Cathedrall Suffragane to Mexico, with one Monasterie of Dominicans, and another of Mercenarie Friars, and one Hospitall, and 20 in the bounds fine and twentie thousand tributarie Indians. This Citie is feated in a very plea-

fant Valley, with fruits of divers forts, and all kinde of provision and dainties.

Saint Saluator. The Citie of Saint Saniour, which in the Indian language is called Cuzcatlan, is fortic leagues from Saint Iames to the South-east, with one Monasterie of Dominicans. The Village of the Trinitie, which in the Indian tongue was called Conzonate, fixe and twentie leagues from Saint Lames to the South-west, foure leagues from the Port of Axacula. It is a chiefe Commissionership with title of his Maiestie, with one Monasterie of Dominicans, in a plentifull foile of Cacao, and the Indians of it are of the innification of Saint Iames, it is a place of great trafficke , and the Ports Saint Michael, touch for the fhips of Pers, and of New Spaine. The Village of Saint Michael fixtie two leagues from Saint James, and two and twentie from Saint Saniour to the South-west, two leagues from 10 the Sea and Bay of Fonfeca, which scrueth it for Hauen, and in the bounds are eightie Townes of

Indians. The Village of Xerex of the frontier, in the Indian speech called Chalateca, in the confines

Zerez,

of Guatemala and Nicaragua, eightie leagues from Saint lames, and twentie from Saint Michael to the South-east, both plentifull of Cotton wooll and Millet, Neere the Citie of Saint James is that \* Volcan fo famous of Guatemala, and in all the Indies are many of these Volcanes (butthe mouthes like most famous are those of Guatemala, which hath burst out divers times, casting fire, stones, and ashes, with great hurt of the Countrie.) That of Arequipa, of Tlascala, Quito, and others, In this Countrie are many fprings of water, hot, and of fundrie properties and colours; there is much and good Balme , which the Spaniards knew without learning it of the Indians , against the

which some Author speaketh, and also liquid Amber, Gumme-anime, Copall, and Suchicopall, 40 and other Gummes, and Liquoris most perfect, and beasts that breed the Bezar stone, they gather Cacao deferi- great store of Cacao, which is great riches; it is a meane Tree, the leaves like a Chefnut though bigger, it giveth flower and fruit every Moone, and the same doe in that Countrie the Orange trees. The Cacao is a tree that loueth moifture better ehen the Summe , and therefore they plant neere him another tree to shadow him.

The Ports of this Gouernment in the South Sea, beside the rehearsed, are the Bay of Fonfeca Ports of this neere to Saint Michael, in twelve degrees and a halfe of height, Gil Gonçales of Anila gave it the Gouernment. name in the yeere 1522. for the Bilhop John Rodrigues of Fonfeca, Prelident of the Councell of the Indies. And within the Bay is an Hand which he named Petronilla, by a Neece of the Bishop. The Port of Acazenta, neere to the Trimite, in twelve degrees height, is the best of this Govern- 10 ment for New Spaine and Peru, and the Bay of Guatemala twelve leagues from it . and the River of Xicalapa feuen leagues from the Bay to the West. On the North fide this Province hath no coast, for it commeth not to the Sea by fortie leagues, vnto a landing place which they call the Port of the fresh Gulfe, from whence the merchandiz: that goe from Spaine, are conveighed by the Gulfe of Honduras, into the Land with carriages vnto Guatemala, Saint Sautour, and the Trinitie, and twelve leagues before Guatemalu, in the high way of Mexico, is the great Lake of Auslan, of ten leagues in compasse, and soure in breadth, without bottom.

Bottomleffe Lake.

The Province and Government of Soconnico is the furthest West from Gnatemala upon the coast of the South Sea, of length and breadth about foure and thirtie leagues, plentifull of Cacao (the greatest trafficke of it, and of all that in it is fowne except Wheat) there is no more then one 60 Spanish towne, which is called Gueneslan, founded by Don Pedro de Aluarado, where the Gouernour is resident; her coast which is in the South Sea, beginneth seuen leagues from the River of Ayutla to the West, and prefently the Rivers Coatlan, Capanercalte, Colati, Hazzatlan, Amutuc, and Quizatatlan.

The Prounce and Bilhoprick of Chiapa is Mediterranean, betweene Seconnico by the South, Chiapa and the vecermoit of New Spains by the West, and by the North and the East, betweene Tabas coant " Verapez, in length East and West about fortie leagues , and some lesse in breadth , some " Or mue left fertile of Wheat and Millet, and other Seedes, and of Cattell, except Sheepe that are not peace. many. It hath one Towne of Cashlisse, which is called Case Royall, fewentie leagues from Saint Issues of Gastemala toward the North-east, which by a particular priviledge is governed by ordinarie Luttices. The Cachedrall is refident here with one Monasterie of Dominice Friars, and onarre nutrices and the limits (Chiaps is the principalled Towne of them, from whence the many Indian Townes in her limits (Chiaps is the principalled Towne of them, from whence the room to cooke the name. The Countrie-men have skill in breeding of Horfes, that those of this Promise rooke the name. The Countrie-men have skill in breeding of Horfes, that those of this IO Countrie become the best that are in New Spaine : they are Mulicians and Painters, and learne any Trade that doth confilt in arte: they were in old time of Nicaragua, and the Captaine lames of Mazarieges, the yeare 1531. built this Citie in a Valley where now it flands, round, of a marnellous firuation in 18. degrees and a halfe, fixtie leagues from the North Sea , and as many from

The Province of Verapes (4 name which the Dominicto Priars gaue it, because they pacified Verapes. je with preaching) is also Mediterranean betweene the bounds of Seconifes, Chiape, Tacatan, Handard , and Guntemala, of chirece leagues over , and as many from Saint lames of Guntemala a most Countrie, and therefore the better for the Millet that in it is gathered twice a yeere, and for Wheat. There is Cotton wooll, and some Cacao, and much Fowle of those that give the co- Picture fea-20 loured feathers for the pictures which the Industry doe make, which is a merchandize of this Pro-thers. uince, and the Kings of Mexico carried them from this Pronince, which was the most esteemed thing they had, and it was sudged for a great finne to kill these Fowles, but to plucke them and to

let them flie. There is in this Countrie but one Monasterie of Dominicke Friars, with one Indian Towns of feventeene Indian children that are there, by order of the religious men for to inftruct them the better; for before they lived fearered and like faunges, and now they live like Christi-

ans, and in comporall things politikely.

In this Prouince there is no Governour, but a chiefe Iustice, prouided by the Councell. The River of Zacatula divideth this Pronince from the Province of Guatemala, from the which it extendeth vnto the fresh Gulfe, whither all the Rivers of it doe runne, whereby and by the many 30 falls of waters that defeend from most high Hills, the Countrie was to moift, that the Millet rotted; but it is bettered in the temperature, fince the cutting downe of the Woods: it likeh many Lions, Tigres, and Buffes, whose fielh the Youlans doe care although it be lustious and foft; it is called the Fresh Gulfe, for the multitude of the Rivers which on that fide doe enter into the Sea. Gulfe date. The water is treft, and there are exceeding great Fishes, and specially the Manati, which is the atomic a fifth Sea calte, which swimmerh to delicately, that being very great he maketh no noyse; when hee described. Seeth he goeth to the Deepe, and waxeth angrie and fierce against them that feeke him , and giueth great strokes; his fielh is very fat like vnto fat beefe.

THe Province and Government of Hondaras hath in length East and West, by the coast of the Chap. 13. 40 North Sea, more then one hundred and fiftie leagues, and in bredth from the Sea with the Of Housens, bounds of Costa Rica and Guatemala, in parts eightie : is hath many Hills, and is plentiful of Nicasau, and bounds of Colfa Rica and Charlemata, in parts eignite: 18 inth many fruit, and is perfection of Colla Rica, or Millet, Wheat, and all forts of Cattell, and fome Hynesof gold and fifther there is in it has Spanish Rich Rich Conf. mit Townes in one Bishopricke, and the first Bishop was Friar lokes of Talanera, Prior of Prado, Handera. of the Order of Saint Ierome of Spaine.

or the Under or Junt Lemons of James.

The Citic of Valladaid, in the Indian language, is called Comergana, in more then fixteene degrees, flands fixts leagues from Saint Lames of Guatemala to the Eaft, and about fortis from the North Sea: in it is the Governour resident, and the Cathedrall, since the yeare 1758, when it went from Tracillo, whereat first it was; and one Monasterie de la Merced. The Captaine Aland of Cacever pacified this Countrie, by order of Don Peter of Alwarade; it flands in the mid- Or of our 30 deft of the two Seas, and from the one to the other are three and fiftie leagues, from the Port de Lady of the Canalles or of Herfes in the North Sea, wato the Bay of Fonfeca in the South Sea, and the Inginer Vilitation of Basiffa Autones visited this way, by order from the King ; because many thought that by it the trafficke of the North Sea was more eafie to the South Sea, and hee found that it had many in- Basific Antone

The Citie of \* Gracies à Dies, is thirtie leagues from Falladeled almost to the West; the the Porter ca-The Citie of " Gracius a Dior, is thattie leagues from ransagens almost to the west, the salies of Husfet, Captaine Gabriel of Rojas peopled it 1530, for the benefit of the Mynes of gold that were there-to the Bay of expraine Commer or rayse property is 250-100 to become or the stylene or goust the white the tobe Bay of shorts, and had great encounters with the Indians, which fall further him many time in a Fort that Faugles. The had, But the Gouernorro if Hondaries and Nieuragues, nor furcouring him by realising Figure. Thanks been vers betweene them , hee was forced to forfake it. And in the yeere 1536. Captaing Gonçale of to God. Se Allagrade, inhabited this Citie againe. The Village of Saint Perro is thirtie leagues from Co- Saint Perro managers to the North, somewhat aside to the West, and eleven from the Port of Canallas, where the Officers Royall are refident, because the Port of Canallos is fickly, whither the difpatches of the thips doe come. The Prefident Don Peter Aluarado built it 1536.

The Village of Saint John of the Port de Canallar is in 15, degrees of altitude, eliven leagues Saint John.

from Saint Peter, foure from Comayagua, it is inhabited with Factors of the Merchants, and with Black-moores, because it is an vnwholsome Port; for although it be a Bay, it is a good one, it was called the Port of The Horses, because some were cast in the Sea by aftorme. The Citie of Truxillo is fixtic leagues from Comayagua to the North-east, and fortic from the Port of Horfes to the East, and one from the North Sea: the Cathedrall was here, the Hanen is called Saint Git, it is good, though it be a Bay dead and sheltered, where the ships that goe for Guatemala doe touch first, Francisco de Las Casas, began to inhabit this Citie 1524. and because they were all people of Estremadura, he called it Truzillo, and Don Hernando Corres ended the inhabiting of it when he went to the Theeras. The Village of Saint George of Olancho, is fortie leagues from Comanagua to the Bast, of fortie housholds, and in her borders fixteene thousand tributarie Indians, and to much gold, chiefly in the River of Guayape, ten leagues from this Towne. This Valley of Olenche is very pleasant and profitable, and in it was much gold gotten, and the Governours of Honduras and Nicaragua, had in other times great differences: for every one would have it in his inrildiction , and therefore here it was where Gil Gonçales Danila tooke one hundred and twentie thousand Pefes of gold of Hernando of Soto, and ditmified the people which Pedrarias Danila had

for his defence; and here Cabriel of Rojas defended the entrance of Gonçalo of Sandonal, for

Don Hervando Cortes did fend him from Traxillo, and here the Indians killed Iohn Grigalus, a very

Points and

famous Captaine, and others.

The coast of this Pronince is all in the North Sea, in the Gulfe which they call de Hondaras. which is all the Sea coast betweene this Province and Tucatus, to the place where it ioyneth 20 with it by Verapaz, where it was called the Gulfe of Guanajas, the first Point is of the Thurses to called, because they first found many pompions on the Sea, which they call Thurras in the language of Hispaniola; it flands in fixteene degrees of height, Necre to the Fresh Oulfe a Port for Guatemala, where Saint Gil of Bouaufta was built, neere to the Cape of Three Points to the East from the Fresh Gulfe, and Gul Gonçales Danila peopled it 1524. And more to the East is the River Piche, and Rio Baxo, and the River of Ulna, by another name Balabama before the Port of Horfes, which stands in fifteene degrees. And afterward the River and Point de la Sal, and Trisampho de la Cruz, a Cape of three points, where the yeare 1524: the Mafter of the field (briffe. pher of Olid planted; and the River Hulms or of Xagus, and to the North of his mouth the Iland of Vila; and to the North-east, Guayana, Helen, and Guanaja, and Saint Francise North 20 and South with the Point of Truville, which are the Hands of the Guanajes. The faid Point is called by another name, Cabo Delgado, the Small Cape, or of Honduras, from whence to the Cape Or Stringe of & Camaron, in fearch whereof they goe from Jamenea, are thirteene Rivers, and at the Pointol the Cape a plazell or great shelfe of more then twentie leagues into the Sea, and in the middest of it neere to the Coast a great Hand, which is called the Hand de los Bases (of the shelves) and another to the North, neere the shelfe called Saint Miller, and having passed the shelfe, the Bay of Cartago, and the Deepe Bay, before the Cape of thanks be to God, which stands in fourteen degrees Cabe de Gracias one third part, and to the North of it three Hands, which they call the Viciofas, and Quita fuenno or Take away fleepe, and Roncader, the Suorter, two dangerous fielues, and having pasted the Cape, the Gulfe of Nicuefa, where hee was loft in the yeere 1 5 to. and the River of Twe in thirteene 40 degrees, where the Governments of Honduras and Nicaragua are jowned.

The Hands of the Guanajes, which are the rehearded, the first Admiral Don Christopher Colon discovered 1502, in the last voyage he made to the Indies, when he discovered Torra firms in the coast of Veragua, where his ill lucke appeared; for if as he went to Veragua, hee had gone to the other fide, he had discouered New Spaine.

The Province and Government of Nicaragna, which the Governour Iames Lovez of Salzede, called the New Kingdome of Lion, on the West ioy neth with Guatemala, and on the North with Hondurgs, and on the South with " Coffa Rica. It is of one hundred and fiftie leagues East and West, and eightie North and South, a plentifull Countrie of Miller, Cacao, Cotton wooll, store of Cattell, without Corne or Sheepe, it hath fine Spanift Townes. Lion of Nicaragua is one hutte 50 dred and foure leagues from Saint lames of Guatemala about the South-east, and twelve from the South Sea, neere to the great Lake of Nicaragua, where the Governour is resident, the Royall Officers, and the Cathedrall, and James Alwarez Office was the first Bishop. It hath five Monasteries of Mercenaries, and in her bounds one hundred and twentie thouland tributarie Indians. The Citie of Granada is fixteene leagues from Lion , which and Lion were built by the Captaine Franciscus Hernandez. 1523, and Granada stands by the border of the great Lake, and sourcand twentie leagues from the Port of Realeis, betides the great Lake, stands the Lake of Lindiri, and Lake of Nice, the famous Vulcan or Fierie month of Mallayaten. The great Lake ebbeth and floweth, it hath vegas, many Hands, is runneth into the North Sea, by the River which is called El Deseguadere, or The Venture, it hash great flore of Fish and many Lizards. At two leagues from it, and leven from Grande is the great florie mouth of Membacho, very high with many Groves of divers fruits, of Go which much refresh the Countrie. A Friar perswading himselfe, that that maffe of fire that in To many yeeres burned without confuming within the mouth of Maffaya was gold, having made by a certaine arte certaine Cauldrons with their chaines to draw ir, they fearcely came at the fire, when the Cauldron and the Chaine were melted like Lead.

## CHAP. I. Harrer To deferipe ide of foodbres America Andrew Sierras of Priv. 881

The new Segonification was the beginning of Rear Arrachis planeation, by thirtte leagues Segonia from Liou to the North, and as many from Grandia, formewhat Northward allo, in which limits much gold is gotten. And laen a Citie is thirtie leagues from the North Sea, in the end of the laen great Lake, whereby the River which they call the Fording, and the merchandize which are carried from Nombre de Dies, and now from Porte bello , are convayed in it. The Village of Realeje one league from the Port of the Poffesson, which commonly is called of the Realeso, flands in a Real leven degrees and a halfe, and is one of the best Ports and furest in all that Coast, wherein are made good ships by reason of the good prouision of Timber there.

There are in this Gouernment many Townes of Indians, and in them flore of tributaries, and 10 in the Confines of this Gouernment , and of Cofia Rica , and of Niceya eight and fortie leagues from Granida, in the South coalt, is a Corregidorship; in which, and in the Hand of Chyra, which is of the jurisdiction thereof eight leagues to the Sea, are many tributarie Indiaga of the Crowne Royall subject in other times to the Councell of Panama , vato the yeere 1572, at which time it was incorporated in Coffa Rica; whose Gouernour placeth a Depurie, and the Bishop of Nfcaragua & Vicat. There is in it a regionable Port, in the coaft of this Province on the North Sea. After this is the River Two that divideth it from that of Hondards, the River of Tarepa, before Port and Rithe Ruser and Port of Saint febr, which is called the Voying or Difugadors, with a great linds weight at the Ruser and Port of Saint febr, which is called the Voying of Difugadors, with a great lind weight at the mouth, and after, fome other Rivers common to fig. Ress. In the South Set, it hash becomes fides the Realeis, the Port of Saint James, before the Chira, and the Port of Pareright against 20 Nicoya, in the Gulfe called of the Sale pirs , before the Point of Saint Lacarne , and the Cape of \* De Salman. Borrica, at the East fide whereof are the Hands of Saint Marie, Saint Martha, Cobaya, and Se-

baco, neere to the bounds of Veragna, common to Costa Rica. In the Coalt of Nusragua, on the South fide, the Village of Brazzilles was peopled 1529, and Brazzilles. Innes Lopes of Salcedo diffinhabited it , because they had received in it Pedro de los Ries , Gover-

nour of Castilla del Ore, which went to take the Gouernment of Nicaragua, where Salcedo had thrust himselfe, and had gone from Honduras his owne Gouernment vnto it. Captaine Franciscas Hernandez planted it 1524, in the doubtfull Streight, in the feate of Vrisina, and on the one fide it had the Ses, on the other the Playnes, and on the third fide the Mountaine of the Mynes, and in all this Orbe there are no Indians more expert in the Caffellan tongue then those of Ni-

The Province and Gouernment of Costa Rica , the furtheft East of the Northerne Indies, and ColaRica Councell of Gustemale, hath in length East and West ninetic leagues from the Confines of Verasma vnto those of Nicaragna, with which it iowneth by the North, and by the West In it are two Townes, it is a good Countrie, with many showes of Gold, and some of Siluer. The one Towne is the Village of Armines fine leagues from Chames Indianes, a Towne of the in- dranjue, ridiction of Nicoya. The Citie of Cartage, fortie leagues from Nicoya, and twentie from the Cartage, Sea almost in the middeft of the Province, hath a Port and landing place in the Coast of the common to this Government, and the Bayes of Saint Ierosso and of Caribaco, neere the limits of Urragua.

He part of the Indies of the South is vanishing called admorate, it is all that is discoursed Chap. 14.

I from Numbre de Dies and Passense to the South, wherein is included Torsa firms, the Orthe unter Kingdomes of Pirm, the Pirm Chile, which the Indiana call Chille; The Provinces of the othe South Streight, the River of Plate and Brafile, where are fine Councils of Passama, new Kingdome of Granada , Saint Francisc of Quito , Lima , the Charen , and the cleuen Gouernments : part of their Coast toucheth in the North Sea, and part in the South : in the which for the most part reigneth the South and the South-west, which contrarie to his nature is there plealant,

and doth mitigate the great heate, whereby that Countrie may bee inhabited, although it ne-50 mer rayneth nor hayleth in it, but in a very little diffance. And the two rowes of Mountaines Agreat diffethat runne equally through all these Indies, have a great difference, though they are in one al- rence of t manual rence of the state o trac runne equative incongram enter a small agree outstreamen, though they are in it, and perature in the titude of the Pole: for the one is well replenished with Trees and it alwayes rayneth in it, and reso towes of it is hot: the other is all bare, and cold in Summer and Winter. These rowes are called Ander, Pine. and Sierra or the Mountagne; they have most high Hils, and goe in fight the one of the other one thouland leagues, almost equally. In the Hill are bred fundrie beafts, and in the parts where The two rowes they open they make Valleys, which is excellent dwelling, as that of Xonxa, and Gueyles, and doc runne al-Tucay. In the Ander also are bred fundrie beatts, and past the Citie of Cuzes, these rowes doe most 1000. diude themsclues, leaving in the middelf a great champaine Countrie, which is the Prouince of Colles, where are infinite Rivers, Lakes, and Paltures, without Trees or Wood, for Quilities of

the difference of the Countrie, though wholesome and much inhabited. There follows the Proplace 60 eth after it the Prounce of the (barea, hot and of great plentie, with very rough Hills of of college great riches of Mynes : and the figure of thefe ludies is freme in the Table before going.



"He limits of the Counfell of Panama, which was first called Castilla del Ore, and afterwards Terra Firme, are very small, for the Counsell is principally resident there, for the dispatch of the Pleetes, and Merchants , which goe and come to Pirm: it hath in length East and West. about nintie leagues, from the confines of the government of Cartagena, and Poparan, vnto Quantities of the Caitle of Veragus, and in breadth from the South Sea to the North fixtie leagues, and thence downeward vnto eighteene by Nombre de Dies, or Porto bello to Panama: it is a ground generally very rough with Mountaines, full of quagmires, the ayre close withvapours, mostly, hot, and for this cause very fickly from May vnto Nouember, a barren soyle, and destitute of many things: for there groweth nothing but Millet, and very little, though there be good Pastures for Kine, and breeding of Cattle. The gouernment of Ueragua Randsin the bounds of this Counfell, and in it, and in that of Panama these Townes following.

The Citie of Panama is in the coaft of the South Sea, neere vnto it, in 9, degrees of latitude, and 82.of longitude from the Meridian of Tolodo, from whence it is diffant by direct way one thoufand fine hundred and fixtie leagues. It is a Towne of fix hundred housholds, the most are Merchants and dealers. And with the Counfell are resident the Kings Officers, and Royall treasurie, which doe goe already to Portobello, when there is any Fleete to the dispatching of it, and likewife the Cathedrall fuffragan to the Archbishopricke of the Kings (delos res) is here resident with three Monasteries, of Dominiche, Franciscane and Merced Friers. The Port of this Citie is reasonable, although at low water the Ships remaine dry, and therefore in Summer they ride in the 60 ftrand, and in winter in the hauen of Perice, two leagues from the citie. Pedrarias Danila peopled it, being Gouernour of Cafillo, del Oro, or of the Gold, against the will of the dwellers of Sancia Marie, the auncient of Darson, the yeare 1519. and a little after the Cathedrall Church was removed thither; and it might have had a better feate, and more wholesome, and to the

## CHAP.I. Porto bello, Strange case of a Lizard. River of Snakes."

purpole for the trafficke of the South Sea, not going very fatre from whence the Citie

The Citie of Nombre de Dios, was by Iames of Nucuesa first planted 1510. and afterward by Lones of Albnez, by order of Pedrarias, and he was the first Admirall that discoursed her ports Les removed to Porsobelo, for the first Admirall discovered it, and gave the name, because it was portebelle. more wholesoner, and fitter for the loading and valoading of the Fleetes, and for their fecuritie. and of the new Citie of Saint Phillip, which is built there : the Inginer Baptifia Antonelli, bath made a Castle, and appointed another on the other side the hauen, for to keepe the entrie. The Merchandize are carried from Portabelo to Panama by two wayes, one by Land with carriage, to which is eighteene leagues of leffe difficultie then by the way of Nombre de Dios : the other by

Sea, and the River of Chagre, whose mouth is eighteene leagues from Portobelo, to the West, whereby the Merchandize goe vp when the water reacheth to the vent of the Croffes, and from thence they go in carriages hue leagues to Panama.

The Village of Nata stands thirtie leagues from Paname to the West, in the Coast of the Saint Lames of South Sea, Captaine Franciscus Companion peopled it, by order of Peter Arias , for the warre Nata with the Casique Urraca. The inhibiting of Acla, and Captaine Gabriel of Rosas finished by commandement of Peter Aries in the Coast of the North Sea, and entrance of the Gulie of Vraba, Alla, right against the Hand of Pisor, whereof at this present there is no more memory then that there was the death of that famous Captaine, whose memory will last eternally, the President Bases 20 Numez of Balnsa, and of his company. In the breach of Almagro, and in the head of the River

Chupo, there is Gold, and in times past was much gotten. In all these Rivers are many Lizards or Crockadiles, and very great, which put the first discouerers and pacifiers to great trouble, and dil denoure somemen. It happened that a man being in a Boate neere to the Kings A ftrange case Houle in Panama, a Lizard came and matched him from the Steame of the Boate, and carried of a Lizard. him a way to eate him on certaine Rockes, and having begunne to teare him in pieces, they flot at him with a Cahuer and killed the Lizard, fo that he before his death received the Sacraments of the Church.

. The Prouince of Veragua, which stands in somewhat more then tenne degrees, doth confine Veragua, with Coffarica, on the West isie: it hath in length East and West fiftieleagues, and in breadth 30 fine and twentie : aMountainous Countrie, full of bushes, without Pastures or Cattle, Wheate, Barley, little Millet or little Pulse; but full of Gold with many vaines of it, and rich Mines in the Rivers, and breaches, and those Indians that are, are in warre : it hath the Citie of the Conception fortie leagues from Numbre de Diss, to the West, where the Gouernour and the Officers ( which they of Panams at this prefent doe prouide) are reft- The Conception. dent. The Village of Trimitie flands fix leagues to the East of the Conception by Sea (for The Trimitie. yee cannot goe by Lani) neere to the Ruer of Berbleem , at three leagues from the Sca. The Citie of Sanita Fe stands twelve leagues from the Conception to the South, with mel- "Hoh Faith, ting houses , and Deputie Officers. The Citie of Charles , in the coast of the South Sea , Charles

neere to the Sea, fiftie leagues from the Citie of Sanita Fe, to the East : all the Indians of this 40 gouern ment are in warre. There is no Port of name in the two Coasts South, and North, of this government, and is all The Ports the bounds of the Counfell, are the Rivers, Ports, and points following. The Bay of Carabaco, or of Saint Hierome, in the coaft of the North Sea, and the confines of Veragua, and to the Ealt of it, and of the River of the Trintie, of the Conception, and of Bethlebem (where was the first inhabiting that the first Admirall made in Terra firme, of all that Orbe, in the yeare 1503. which continued not : and right against the Shield, an Hand, and the River of Chagre, and more to the Eleftude. East a league the Portete, to the place where the Admirall came discouring the same yeere, and the Ports of 2 Langostas twelve leagues from Nombre de Dies, to the Weit, and the Port de a Or Lands. Gallinas or of Henras nine degrees, and the Port of Bonauenture ix, Portobelo fiue, and right against

it the Hands of the b Lookings, and those of the Proxissions or Bastimentos : and having Nombre de blas Miras. 50 Dies two leagues, the River of & Sardinilla, and the Hand of & Sardina, foure; and the River of Cor Little Pil-Millet or Mayz, and the River of Snakes, or Culebras, eight; and at the entry of the Gulfe of shead. Vraba, where in the yeare 1509, the Bachiller Everso built the Citie of Santia Marie of Davien, d'Or Pichard. This Bachiller Encife was he that published that in the Prouince which was called Castilla del Ore, there were places where the gold was fished with nets, which encouraged many people to goe to the Indies, which passed in the yeare 1514. With Peter Arias Danila: and the President Bases Nunnez of Balboa, went 1513. from the Darien in demand of the South Sea, and discoursed it. The Point of the Iland of Capsina, itands right against the Mountaines of Saint Blas, and the Iland of Comagre, and the Iland of Pines, more within the Gulfe of Uraba, and in the

60 inward Port of it, the Port of Niless, neere to the mouth of the River of Darien, which diuideth the bounds of this Counfell, and those of the Gouernement of Cartagena, and there is Culata de Uraba, where in the yeare 1510. Alonso of Oieda inhabited Saint Sebastian of Vraba. This Gulfe stands in 8. degrees, it hath foureteene leagues of longitule into the Lands, and in the entrie ie hath fix in breadth, and a little forward fiftie,

and at the end foure, and fine leagues within was the Citie of Santa Marie, the aunciene

In the South Sea stands the Cape of Santia Maru, and point (de Guerra) of Warre, and toward Panama, the Gulfe of Parita, or Paris where stands Nata, the point of Chiame, the Countrie of that Cazique Chiapes, the friend of Basco Nunnez of Balboa, which holpe him in his discourte: and passed the Port of Panama, the River of Chepo, and the Balfa, or of Congos in the inner part of the Gulfe of Saint Michael, North and South from the Hand of Pearles, and the Point or Port of Pinyas, at the entrie of the Gulfe on the South fide, which is fitte leagues from Panama, and twentie ouerthwart to the Gulfe of Vraba, and Puerto Quemado, or Burnt Hauen, necre to the Cape of Corrientes, in q.degrees of altitude Septentrionall.

Bogota : which

Chap. 16. THe bounds of the Counfel of the New Kingdome hath in length East and West, three hundred leagues, and as many North and South, wherein are comprehended the Prounces of the New Kingdome, the gouernments of Santia Martha, and Cartagena, and part of that of Popagan; & for borders the Prouinces of the Darade, or new Stremadura : the Prouince of New Kingdome, which is that which the Counfell gouerneth it hath in length from East to West toureteen leagues, and Kingdome of eightie in breadth North and South of plaine ground, for the most part with Valleys and hils and good Pastures for all fort of Cattle, which are in abundance, and in many places, Wheate, Miller, and the fruits of Castile, and generally much Gold and very fine, and Mines of Copper & Steele: and the Countrie men for the most part are able men, great traffickers, and doe weare Cotten 20 cloath. And the Townes that be in the Kingdome of Spaniards, are the Citie of "Santa Feof Elouin, Album I was buik at the foot of Bogon, to called by the Cazigne which was called Bogon, which the Prefident Gonçals Ximenex of Quefade built, and gaue the name to the Cities and to the Kingdome, because he was of Granada, though in the discouery the President Belalcazar, and Nicholas Federman had part : it flands 72 degrees and a halfe of longitude from the Meridian of Taledo, which by a greater circle may be one thousand foure hundred and fortie leagues, and 4. degrees on this fide of the Equino chal, it hath more then fix hundred housholds, in it is resident the Counsell, the Kings Officers and Royall treasurie, and Melting house, the Cathedrall Metropolitane, whole fuffragans are, Popayan, Cartagena and Santia Marta, with a Monafterie of Dominicke and another of Franciscane Friers, and in her borders more then fiftie thousand tributarie Indiane 30 and the Lake of Gnatanita, which was a worth pping place of the Indians, where it is reported

was built for trafficke with the Pauche Indians, because being of a hot Countrie it did them burt to goe to Santia Fe, which is cold. The Citie of Tocapma fifteene leagues from Santia Fe, to the West, somewhat inclined to the North, with a Monasterie of Dominicke Friers, was inhabited the yeare 1 545, by the Captaine Hernando Vanegas, in the border of the maine River Pais, which runneth into the River Magdalene. It hath no gold, and is most hot, and by night there falleth no Deaw in it. In all the Kingdome there is no generall tongue, that which is most vinderstood, is that of the Panches. In the Province of the Mujor, and Columns, which by another name 40 are called Canapeir, fine and twentie leagues in length, to the North-welt of Bogota, a rough Countrie, found, plentifull of Pastures, Gold, and Emeralds : there are two Townes; the Citie of the Trinitie twentieleagues from Sancta Fe, to the North-welt, which the Captaine Lanchers inhabited the yeere 1582, when hee went to warre with the Indians " Molcas, a quicke and fearefull Nation : and in these bounds stands the rich Mine of the Emeralds, with

many Indians which yet are peaceable, and in the Province of Chiagnachi, which tignifieth

Fe to the North-weft, the Captaine Don Gutierre of Onalle built it 1972, in the Prounce of Tunia, which tooke the name of the Cazique, almost to the North, direct to that of Bogota, and 50

in all like vnto it : The Citie of Tania stands two and twentie leagues from Santta Fe, to the

North-east, on a high hill, a strong scituation, for the warre with the Indians. There goe out

of this Citie aboue two hundred Horse-men, and it is the most aboundant of Victuals of all

the Borders, and there is the greatest Market in all the Realme : it hathone Monasterie of Do-

minicke, another of Franciscane Friers. The Captaine Gençale Xuarez Rondon built it, for the Pre-

fident Gonzalo Ximenez of Pulfada. The Citie of Pamplona feuenty leagues frum Santta Fe to the

North-east, hath one Monasterie of Dominick Friers; much Gold is gotten in it, it hath abundance

of Catele: the Bachiller Miebael Diaz of Armendaria peopled it. The Village of Saint Christa-

pher is thirteene leagues from Pamplona to the North, the Captaine Franciscus of Caceres built it

The Village of Palma in the Colimas, of a temper hotter then cold, fifteene leagues from Saulta

The Village of Saint Michael in the bounds of Sanda Fe, twelve leagues from it to the North,

that they did cast great summes of Gold in offring to the Idols.

The Trimitie, Or Flitz.

Snailes, for there be many.

Tunia.

Pamplona,

"Or Ceping.

Merida.

neere the Prouince of " Grita, so called because the Indians came out of the high wayes to shoute and crie after the Spanuards, and to kill them : little Gold is gotten in it, and it hath commoditie, 60 The Citie of Merida, in the bounds of the government of Venequela, and the New Kingdome, fortie leagues from Pamplona to the North-east : it is a plentitual Countrie of Mines of

CHAP. I. Thunder bolts. R. Grande or Magdalen. Sancta Martha ber Provinces. 885

Gould, and of Wheate. The Citie of Belez thirtie leagues from Santha Fe to the North, and fiftrene from Tama, hath one Monasterie of Franciscane Fryers : the Captaine Goncalo Ximenez Rondon inhabited it. It is a Countrie where many thunderboults fell, and there fall not fo ma- Thunderboks ny fince the holy Sacrament of the Altar is there abiding; it hath one fierie mouth that caffeth many itones. The Citie of Mariquita of Thague, by another name Saint Sebastian of the Gould, Mariquita, is fortie leagues from Sautta Fe to the North-Welt, the Captaine Pedroso peopled it 1551. in certaine Meadowes, leaning to the hill, the temper is very hot. The Citie of Thaque is three han. Thaque dred leagues from Santa Fe, almost to the West : it is the first Towne of the New Realme, that doth confine with Popayan , the Captaine Andrew Lopez of Galarza peopled it 1551. by commission of the Counfell, for to eschew the harmes these Indians did with those of Tocarma. and Carrago, and for to open the way to the government of Panyan, it hath a Monasterie of

Dominicke Friers. The Citie of the Viltorie of the Remedies, fittie leagues from Santia Fe, to the North-well, Villoria delas is very rich of Mines. The Citie of Saint lobn of the Plaines, fiftie leagues from Santia Fe to Remedet. the South, is a Countrie of much Gould. The Citie of Tudela which the Captaine Peter of Vring built , by order of the Bachiller Don Michael Dinz of Armendariz was difinhabited, becaule the Indians \* Moxeas received hurt by it. And there are of the limits of the Coun- \*Or Fhee. tell of the new Realme, feuen Townes of the government of Papayan, Santia Fe of Antiochia, Caramanta, Arma, Anzerma, Cartago, Saint Sebattian of the Silver, and Saint Uncent

20 de las Pazes.

The Merchandize enters this Kingdome, by the great River of Magdaleus, from the Barenea \*Or Water-of Malemba, of the juridiction of Cartagena, and the first that sent to discover this River, was comple. Garcia of Lerma, Gouernour of Sanita Martha 1531. It encreth into the Sea fo broad and firong, Ris Grande on that at the passing, the Ships are wont to be in danger, if they goe not somewhat distant, for the Megalian River, combat of the current, and working of the Sea. It hath an Iland in the mouth, it is nauigated more then one hundred and fiftie leagues, and in more then three hundred it is not waded: it commeth from about Popayan from two Fountaines that are fortic leagues distant, by which inyning the River is made: it was called of Magdalene, because on that day was the mouth discovered, in 22. degrees of height, and fix and twenty leagues from Cartagena.

The Province and Government of Santia Martha in the coast of Terra firms is seventie leagues Santia Martha 30 in breadth and length, between: Carthagena and the River of Hache: it is a plentifull Countrie of Millet, and Potators, much Gordl, and Copper, and fome Emeralds, and other Stones: in it are fine Spanish Townes; and though there be many of the Countrie-men, the most are in warre. The Prefident Baftidas peopled the Citie of Santia Mariba 1 524. neere to the Sea, in 10. degrees of latitude, and 74. of longitude, one thouland foure hundred and twentie leagues from Toledo, where is resident the Gouetnour, and Officers Royall, and the Cathedrall fuffragan to the New Kingdome. The Port is reasonable. This Government hath soure Provinces, Pezignay, Betona, Chimica, and Tayrona, which fignifieth a Forge, and with great reafon, becaute in that Countrie are an infinite quantitie of discritie of Mettals, and Stones of great 40 esteeme and value.

Tenerife stands by the border of Rie Grands or the great River (which is that of Magdelene) Tenerife fortie leagues from Sanda Marha to the South-well, part by the Sea, and part by Land : Franeiscus Euriques did people it, by order of Gençale Perez which governed in Saulta Martha, by Tamaameque, Commission of the President Luge. Tamalameque, or Village of the Palmes is fixtie five leagues from Santia Martha to the South, and twentie from Tenerife, two leagues from the Great Riner ; the Captaine Barrholomew Dalma peopled it 1561. The Citie of los Reyes in the Valley of Vpari, The Kings. is plentifull of Millet, Prouision, and Cattle, and of much Copper, to the South-east of Santia Martha, fiftie leagues from it, and thirtie from the River of Hache : the Captaine Sault Anne peopled it, by commandement of the Bachellor Miebael Dinz., . La Ramada was built be- asanda Randda

50 fore, called first new Salamanca, fortie leignes from Santia Mariba to the East, and eight from the River of Plate, at the overflowings of the Snowie Mountaine, It stands in the Valley of Vpani, where there is as much Copper as Stone. The Merchandize of this Government goeth vp to the New Kingdome by the marth of this Citie, which is eight leagues from it by the Sea, and afterward twelue vnto the Barranca of Malambo, in the great River. Ocama is also in this Go- Ocama. uernment, which the Captaine Franciscus Hernandez inhabited 1572. and was first called Sante Anne. There is in the Coaft of this Gouernment the River of Bubia, necre Rama- bor Tong Pida, and the River of Piras, and that of b Palomine, where a Captaine of this name was drow- gen. da, and the River of Piras, and that of Palames, where a Captalle of the Agnia neere Santia of the River of Don Lames, the c Ancones of Burnaca, and the Cape of a Agnia neere Santia of the Needle. Martha, right against the hill of Bonda, and the River of Gayra, to the West.

The Province and Government of Cartagena, in the Coast of Terra firme, and the North Sea, hath in length East and West, from the River of the Magdalene, voto the River of Darien, eightie leagues North and South, and as many vnto the confines of the New Kingdome, though then fay it is more in Voyage. The Countrie is Mountainous of Hils and Valleys, of high Trees, rainie and moift : the feedes of Caftile beare no feede, there is no Wheate, nor Gould, but in fome places.

The Citie of Carthagena trands neare the Sea, two leagues from the Point of Canon, to the West, in tenne degrees of latitude, and feuentie fix of longitude, one thousand foure hundred and fixtie leagues from Toledo, of more then five hundred houtholds, among them about two thousand women. In it is resident the Gouernour, the Kings Officers, & treasurie Royall, and the Cathedrall Suffragan to the New Realme, with Monasteries of Dominick and Franciscan Friers. The scituation is plain, and almost like an Hand, the Sea compasseth is on the North fide, & it is a rough coast, and very shallow; and on the land side it hath an arme of the Sea which reacheth to a Marish, which is 10 the Lake of Canapote, which ebbeth & floweth after the order of the Sea, & at the fame hours, and they passe from the Citie to Terra sirme, by a Bridge and a manner of a Causie, which hath above two hundred and fiftie paces. The Citie is built on Sand, & within two fathoms they finde fresh water though sometimes it is vnwholesome, not so much as the coast of Nombre de Diers for the ayres in respect of the Marish are wont to cause diseases, but for the most part it is wholsome. The Hauen is one of the least of the Indies, though the great Ships doe ride farre from the Citie It hath at the entrie an Iland like that of Escombrera in Cartagena of Castile, whereby they called it Carta gena, and the Hand was called Codego, now they call it Cares, it hath two leagues in length, & little more then halfe a league in bredth: it was wont to be inhabited with Indian Fishers, & it hath no water. The first that law Carehagena, in the year 1502. was Roderick Bustidas, & the year 1504. 20 Inan de la Cofa or John of the Thing went a shore, and found Lewes Guerra, and they were the first that began the warre with the Indians, which were proud and bould, and both men and women fought, with venomed arrows. Afterward returned Alonfoof Oieda with lobn of the Thing for Pilot Maior, & Americo Ve foucio for Mariner, & some years after Gregorie of Obiedo took you him to inhabit Cartagena, & performed it not. The year 1 32, went Dan Pedro of Eredie born in Madrid, and inhabited it, and pacified a great part of the Countrie, though with labour and cunning, because the people were very warlike, and there was a woman that before they could take her, being about eighteene yeeres old, flew with her Bow eight Spaniards. The Village of Saint lames of Tolu, is fix leagues from the Sea to the South-west of Cartagena

two leagues from it, part by Sea (for by Land it cannot be gone) and part by the Marishes and 30

Mountaines. It is a found Countrie, of great breedings, and tillage, and fruits of Caffile: the Prefi-

to the South, is also the inhabiting of Don Peter of Heredia, in the yeare 1534. The Village of

" Sanita (ruz of Mopox is fewentie leagues from Cartagena by the Sea and River of Magdalme,

neere whose border it stands, & whereby they goe about, more then halfe the way, it is not found being among Quagmires. A Captaine of Don Pater of Heredia peopled it 1333. The yeare of 1503.

Alonfo of Heredia inhabited Saint Sebastian againe, for the Prefident his Brother, in certaine little 40

bils, almost halfe a league from the Sea. And in the yeare 1527, the Bachiller Iobn of Vadello went out of Saint Sebastian with a good number of Souldious, and pating many troubles, & most rough

Amazmian

The Village of dent Don Peter of Heredia peopled it. The Village of Marie thirtie two leagues from Cartagena.

" Hon Croffe.

the Bachiller Engine (as hath been faith/inlabited, 1945 4 Many, the ausmeint of the Dates, which is striples, in this Government for lain which light of the striples of Bone villa, which the fame Capaine Along de Oteds had inhabited, in the further place of Trade : & afterward the Capaine.

Mountains, & thick woods, came to the Citie of Antioquia, of the government of Popayam, & there was a Souldior that from thece came to the Citie of the Plate, in the Charca, which is 200, leag.

The Barranca of Malambo, which is a Custome house of the jurisdiction of Cartagena, thirtie leagues from it, on the border of the great River, and twenty from Santia Martha, & lix from the Sea, where the Merchandize that are carried by Land to the New Realme are valoaden. & from the Barranca are carried up by the River in Canaces. Lower then Nopox entreth the River of Canca into the River of Magdalene, which also (pringeth about Popayan : & more toward Cartagena and to the West, standers the Knobbe, and the point of Zamba, and Batrio del gate or Arbelera, and the 50 ieuen Cottages, and the point of the Canome, two leagues from Cartagena, and the point of Touces at the entrie of the port, right against the Hand of Carex, and the point of the Ship in Terra firme; at the other leffer entrie of the port, and almost to the North, is a little Hand which is called Sardina, and in the coast of Talu the Hands of Barn, which are fix, and at the entrie of the Gulfe of Vraba the fix, which are called of Saint Bernard, right against the River Zenn: and more within the Gulfe, the firong Hand, and the Tortoyfe. The port of Zenn stands five and twenty leagues from Carragena, it is a great Bay that hath his entrance by the East, it is secure : here they make store of

In the Provinces of the Darade, or new Estremadura, which circuit pertaines to the bounds of the Counsell of the New Realme) many Captains have entired by Sea, and by fundry parts of the 60 Land, and have never found the riches, which the same promifeth. They fall on the other side of the River of Saint Iohn of Amazones, by another name Orellana (which some erroniously wil have to be the Merangen) and here is the Qrinico, and other great Rivers, and the Gulfe of Paris which maketh the firme land, with the Land of the Trimitie, & the mouthes of the Serpent, & the Dragon,

Salt, and it tooke the name of the Towne Zens, which standeth on the River.

which the first Admirall named, where he saw himselte in great danger, for the conflict which the fresh waters make there with the falt, whereof he had yet no notice, and here beginneth the Great Tydes, flowing of the Sea to be very great, vnto the streight of Magellan, and goeth continuing through all the coast of Pira, and New Spaine.

The Prouinces of Pirm (whole name bath extended it felfe more than it was at the beginning) Pirm, or Pure, include all the Empire of the Ingas, or more; for when it was won it was divided in two goperments, that of Don Franciscas Pigarro, called the New Caffile, from the Quite vnto the Cuzco. fixtic leagues below the Chincha: and that of Don lames of Almagro, called the New Toledo, two hundred leagues toward the Streight from Chunche; which governments were distinct votil

to the Councell de los Royes was established, and a Vice-roy prouided for the Kingdomes of Prim, in whose government are included, the Councell of Saint Francis of the Quito, that of Lame (or de les Reges of the Kings) that of the Charces, the government of Chile, & countries of the Streights, the Hands of Salomen to the West, and for borders the Provinces of the River of Plate, and that which determinately is comprehended under the government of the Vice-roy. It hath in length North and South from two thousand leagues vpward, and East and West, that which is discouered from the South Sea thehe North Sea. The two Romes that have beene spoken of , doe paffe The two Romes red from the South Sea to the Peris North and South, that of the Ander from Popayan, and yet ma- of the Indies of the South. ny will haue, that from Terra firme and New Spaine, till it ends in the " Streight , and the other " Of Marillan. leffe, from the Quies vnto Chile, along the coaff, twelve leagues diftant, little more or leffe.

The two wayes passed betweene these two Mountaines, the one which they called of the In- The two great gas, by the Ander from Parts vato Chule , which hath nine hundred leagues in length , and fine wayes of Fine and twentie foote of Cawfie, and every foure leagues very fumptuous houles, which they call Tamber, where was prouison of victuals and apparell; and enery halfe league men that were in poites for to carry metages, and orders from hand to hand. The other way went through the Pofice. middeft of the Playnes, along the coaft of fine and twencie foote broad, betweene two walls of a mans height, from Piere vnto Chile, where both the swayes met. And it is to be noted, that all the Indies of the South are not to be waderstood by Pires, for as hath beene faid, it is not but Pire is not all that which beginneth from Saint Francis of Quite, which is under the EquinoCitall Line, and the Indies of runneth along, vnoc Chier, gaing out af the Tropicke; which may be tire hundred largers, the South.

30 and fiftie in breadth, though toward the Charlespape there is more, and it is duided in three

parts: The Players, which have ten leagues in breachir, and in parts leffe, they are the coalt Let Least.
of the Sea: The Hills, which have about twentie, and is all Hills and fome Valleys: and the Lea Steras. Ander other twentie, which are most thicke Groues and Woods, and in so little space as fiftie leagues equally diffant from the Line and Pole: there is fo great districte, that in the one place Districted almost it rayneth alwayes, and in the other almost neper; which is the Coast, and in the saure thir I which is the Mountaines that fall in the middelt of their extremes, fometime it raynith, and fometime not, for it hath his Summer and Winter as in Calible: and the causes of not rayning in the Coast, and rayne in the Andre, are spoken of in the beginning of

He bounds of the Councell refident in Quite, and confining Northward with that of Pana- Chap. 17. 1 ma, in the Port of Bonamentura, and on the North-east with the Now Realme, and on the Of the Coun-South wigh tias of Longs hath in length by the South coaft, which is the place where it leng. cell of Samt then smoll, about two hundred leagues from the Port of Bonanentane, which is in the Gulfe of Francis of the Panama, or of Saint Michael, the Port of Payta in the coast of Pirm, and from thence cruste to the vetermost of Popayan, more then other two hundred and fiftie, the Limits remayning open on the East fide: in it is included three Gouernments, besides those of the Councell , which are Papayan, Quixes, la Canela, and that of Inan de Salinas, of the Pacamoroc, and Gualfango, divided in " Or Critatwo Bishopricks.

The Protunce and Gonernment of Quesa, which the Councell government, hach in length eightic El Quita leagues , from neere the Equinoctiall to the other fide , and must their Townes of Spaniards following. The beauen and earth thereof, although it flands under the Equinoctiall, is like to that of Capitale, cleere and faire, rather cold then hot, and in parts where the flow continueth all the yeere, it rayneth from October to March, which they call the winter; and in the other mo- Aire and fesmeths they cut their Graffe, which though it be not long in to fit for the Cattell of Caftile, where fore. of there is great store; and of Wheat and Barley, and gold in some places : and in this Region they live pleasantly, for there is nothing more pleasant for burnane life, then to enjoy a wholetome and cleere skie, for they have no Winter to trouble them with cold, nor Summer to molest with heat. The Townes are, the Citie of Saint Franciscus of Ques , where Athanalpa Emperous of Pira A

was borne, it stands in halfe a degree of height from the Equinociall, and eightic two from the Meridian of Toledo, by a greater circle one thouland fixe hundred eightie fixe leagues from it, and fixthe from the South Sea ; it is of fine hundred housholds : In it is resident the Countell for matters of lattice, for shole of the Government are at the Vice-toy his chatge. There are also in this Citie the Officers of the Kings Rents and treasurie Royall, and the Cathedrall of this Bi-Dadd 2

shepricke, Suffragane to the Archbishop of The Kings (los Reyes) there are three Monastonies of . Friars dela Dommicke, Franciscan, and Mercenarie "Friars : and in her inridiction eightie seuen Townes.or mores, or our parcialities of Indians. In the fituation where this Citie was built, were certaine great lodgings which the King Topaynga built, and his sonne Guaynacapa beautified, and were called Into from whence the Citie tooke the mame; the Prefident Sebaftion of Belalcapar, a fouldier of Don Francifew Picarro built it, a loyall man to the King, by order of the Prefident Don Iames of Almaero, which left him for Governour of the Province when hee went vnto it, having ended the agree. ment with the Prefident Don Peter of Almarade.

Riner Bamba. Raine a wonder. Payta. Admirable bigh-way. LIB. V.

The River Bamba in the Province of the Parases, is a Countrie to Caffile in the temperature. of herbes, flowres, and other things: it is a towne of thepheards, it flands fine and twentie leagues 10 to the South-west of Saint Francisco of Quito, the way to the Kings, wherein are fortiethoufand head of cattell, the greatest part sheepe. Here the Tagas had certaine Royall houses, and here the President Belalcazar had a redious battaile with the Indians, and ouercame them, and in this place was the agreement rehearled of Don lames of Almagro and Don Peter of Almarado and in it was the Citie of Quite firit built. The citie of (wenca (weight the Marques of Canyete commanded to be built, being Vice-roy of

Pirm, which by another name is called Bamba, one and fritie leagues from Quito to the South) is a Corregidership provided of the Vice-roy, with one Monasterie of Dominicke, another of Fran-

cifean Friers. In her jurisdiction are rich mynes of gold, tome of filter, and rich mynes of quickfilter, copper, Iron, and Brienttone. The citie of Loxa, otherwise called la Zarca, eightit leagues 20 from the citie of Quito toward the South, and thirtie from Cuenca, is a Gouernourship provided by the Vice-roy; it hath Monasteries of Saint Dominicke and of Saint Francis, it stands in the way from Cuzco to Quito, from whence it is eightie leagues, in the faire Valley of Cuzibamba. betweene two Rivers. Captaine Antonie of Mercadillo built it in the yeere 1 46. for to pacifie the countrimen which were somewhat difordered. The citie of Zamera, which is called of the Alcaydes, is ninetic leagues from Quito South-eastward, bauing passed the Rome of the Andez: it is a Gouernment prouided by the Vice-roy: it bath a Monasteric of Franciscans; they reape no Wheat because the countrie is very raymer it hath nich Mynes of gold, wherin they find graines of foure pound waight and more : the Captaine Mercadollo peopled it the yeere 1 549. by a couenant with Captaine Bonamente : It stands ewentie lengues from Laze, hauing past the Rowe 30 which divideth the bankles of the South Seatrom the North, the Indian did call it Zamara : that part of the countrie is called Persauca , which fignifieth Indians of warre : much gold is gotten there, and there hath beene graines brought to his Maiettie of twelve pound waight, and there are Salt-pits of falt-water.

to the South H wthe tiners

taine lames Palemine bent it 1549, in the Prouinces of Chaquimaye, in that of Chaceprea. The citie of Saint Michael of Pinra is in the Prouince of Chila; one hundred and twenter leagues from Quite South-eastward, and fine and twentie from the Port of Payes, where the bounds of this Councell doth end, It is a Government at the providing of the Vice-roy; it hath one Monafterie of Mercenaries. Though in this countrie rayne is holden for a wonder, there are good wa- 40 tered grounds, that beare good Wheat and Miller, and the feedes and fruits of Castile. The port of Payes stands in the inristition of this Citie, in fine Southerne degrees, which is good, great, and secure, where the ships that goesfrom Guatemala to Pine doe touch. The Marques Doe Franciscae Picarro built it in the yeard 1931, the first of these Kingdomes, and where the first Temple was erected in the honour of God, and the holy Mother Church of Rome. All the Prouince and borders of the Valleys of Tumbez are drie, and the high-way of the Ingas passeth High-way ad- through these Valleys of Piera, betweene trees and pleasant shadowes, and betweene the principall Valley are joyined two or three Rivers : the Cities was built at the first in Tangarala, from whence it was remooued because it was a sickly situation, and now it stands betweene two Valleys, and yet is somewhat fickly, especially for the eyes, for the great windes and dusts of the Summer, and great moiftures of the Winter. The Citie of Saint lames of Guayaquibby another name las Culata, fixtie leagues from Duise, and fifteene from the Sea to the South-well; it is a Gouernment prouded by the Vice-roy: the

The citre of Jam is fine and fiftie leagues from Zoxa, and thirtie from the Chachapoyas; Cap-

President Belalcazar peopled it, and many of the indiane having rebelled, and slaine many Spamiards, the Captaine Franciscus of Orellana peopled it againe 1537. it is a most plentifull and pleafant Countrie, and hath great flore of hony in the hollow places of trees : The waters of this River which runne almost under the Equinoctiall, are thought healthfull for the French difeate, trace etothe and other sich like. Many people west tothe River to recover health, for the multitude of the reetes of Zarcaparrille that are in the River: it is not very great, nor those that run to the South choic dare de Sea are fo bigge as those that runne inta the North Sea, because they runne but a little way; but notwith thatiding they are flrorg and with tudden flouds, because they fall from the Mountaine. 60 The Indians doe vie many faires for to paffe them; they have in some places a rope over it, and a basket on it , and the pallenger being put into it , they pull him from the other fide. In other Rivers the Index goeth riding on a truffe of firaw, and carneth the paffenger behinde him in other places they have a great Net of gourds; your the which they lay the cloathes and the per-fons, and the *Instant* fattened with certaine courder goe fwimming and pulling as coach-hories; and a thouland other arees they vie for to paffe the Rivers. The Port of this Citie stands neere write it, for the River is very broad, whereby they bring vo the merchandife from the Sea, and they goe by land to Quite. The yeere 1 168. Captaine Contero planted the citie of Caltre, in the Cafre. Valley of Volt, the Licentiate Lope Garcier of Castro being Governour. Vis thin the Provinces of Ville Buniq ando, Imdiuono, and Gnalapa, which they call the Pronince of the Emeralde, and he went about it trom Guayaquil, and discovered all these Provinces from Passa vnto the River of Saint

John, which entreth into the South Sea. 10 The Citie of Puerte Pieje is about eightie leaguer from Saint Francis of Quite to the Welt, Oc old Ports though not of open way, and other fifte from Saint lames of Guayaquil, whereby yet goe from Quee: in her borders flands the Poffes, which is the first Port of the countrie of Pow, and from it, and from the River of Saint James, began the government of the Marques Don Francisco Escarsee and because this countries to neighbour to the Equinoctiall line, that it stands in one degree; some beleeue it is vnwholfome, but in other parts as neere the Line men line with much health, plentie and abundance of all things for the furtenance of man, against the opinion of the ancients and so it is that the Indians of this countrie doe not like long, and in many of them there breede certaine red warrs in the foreheads and nofes, and other parts, which beside the disease being grieuous, it disfigureth them very much, and it is beleeved that it proceedeth of rating fome fills. 30 In these bounds stands the towns of Masta, whither great riches have been hrought from wath- & said, in the Land; and it is held for certaine, that here is a Myne of Emeralds, which are tile best of How the Emein the Land; and they grow in a flone like Cribilli, and they making like a yening, and by little and rath do grow, the Indies, and they are the method and rath do grow, little congesting and refining them klues, and of halfe white and halfe greene, they goe tripening

and recourring their perfection. The Captaine Franciscus Pacheco peopled this citie 1535. by order of Don James de Almagro sit hath many Indians in waire : there is in it a Monatteric of Mercenerie Friars, they gather no Wheat for it rayneth the eight moneths in the yeere from O-

Stober forward, and there are many good flower of gold.

Robert forward, and there are many good moves of gold.

In the coalt of this Government are the Ports, Impdig and Points following. The \* Amon of Ports & Point In the coalt of this Government are the Point of Manylar the coalt of a Sar dand, before the Bay of Saint Famels, which is fifteen leagues from the Point of Manylar this government of the Point of Manylar this gold of the Point of Manylar this gold of the Coalt of the Point of Manylar this land the Point of the Saint Famels; and mention of the Point of the Point of the Saint Famels; and mention of the Point of the Saint Famels; and mention of the Point of the Saint Famels; and the Saint Famels; pail it Questionies, toure Knuers before Pieress, where the blacke Mayer that Lined themlelies of cornection as hip that was call away, joyned with the linking, inch that makiful cowns; the Paffers, a Point of Orders when the property the Deprincipal file pierker, where the Mountaine of Quesque, and the Bay of Certs which is before old Poir, old Region the Engineetical file of the South, and the Bay of Certs which is before old Poir, old Region the Engineetical for the South, and the leagues from theme ether Caple of Saint Linking, and never from their the Lind of Plate, and forward the Ports of Calle, and Calongo, before the Point of Saint Holen, in two degrees highe; the River of Tambas in four degrees, and the Iland of the Pass neere vato it, and the Iland of Santa Clara fomewhat more to the Sea, and Cabablance fifteeing leagues from Tambas and Cababl bes to the South , and then the Point of Parisa, and to the South the Hand of & Laber , foure e Or white 40 leagues from the Port of Pages abouelaid, and is Sills, before the Point del Aguis, and the Port of Or wooket

The men of this countrie fay, that in old time there tame by See in Balfas (which are many, the Giants of pieces of timber fathened one vpon mother) men so bigge this had as much from the kneer down-ward, as an ordinate man in all his body, and that they intide certaine Wells most deepe in a same takes. quicke Rocke, which at this day are feene very trell and cold in the Point of Saint Helen, and that because that they wied most abominable sinnes, fire fell from heaven and consumed them all, and now are found in that fituation exceeding great bones of men, and pieces of teeth of fourteene

ounces weight, and in New Spaine in the bounds of Tlafcala, are bones found of the like bignelle. There are in this Point of Saint Helen, eyes and veine of Tarre, so perfect that they might calke 50 with it, and it commeth out very hot.

He government of Pepayan one hundred and twentile leagues North and South, firm the Chan The confines of the Province of Onite, under the Equinoctial vano the confines of Caraginal by of Physics the North, and another one hundred from the confines of new Realme by the East vnto the South Quive Con the North, and amother one number of the new Spanish townes, part of the Councell of Quito, and part of the new Gualding Realme. The countrie is commonly rough and very raynie, and therefore they have little Millet, which are ite and lefte Wheat, and no store of Cattell, but it is rich of Mynes of gold, and the Townes are these rest of the

The citie of Popagan stands in two degrees and a halfe to the Septentrionall part of the Equi-The citie of Popayan stands in two degrees and a name to the Septentional part of the Sun octall, and 78. and a halfe of longitude, one thouland flue hundred and eightic leagues from To-The Circ of The Cit of in it is refident a Lieftenant Gournour, the Cathedrall, and one Monafterie of Mercenerie Popum. Friars. The President Sebaffian of Belalcattar peopled this citie 1537, the people of thele Pro. uinces are farre different from that of Pris, for thefe are of greater vader standing, and lived in more policie : the men of this government lived as in liberties. It was called Popayan, of the name of

the Cazague Lord of it: it hath part in the coast of the South Sea, and high Mountaines that goe

Eastward: and on another fide the Row of the Ander, and on both fides foring many Rivers, and

the River of the Magdalene is one, which runneth into the North Sea : in this government are

many coole and wholesome townes, and others hot and fickly. The Citie of Cale stands in foure degrees , and two and twentie leagues from Ropagas , and eight and twentie from the South Sea, it was inhabited 1537, by the Captaine Michael Musice, and Sebaftian of Belaleanar made it first in the townes which are called the Gorrous ; it bath the feate in a plaine Valley, leaning to the foot of a Hill, the temper is hot, the Gouernour, the Officers, and the Kings treasure are resident in it; a melting house, a Monasterie of Mercenning, another of Augustine Friars. The Port of Benauenture falleth in his juristiction in three degrees 10 and a halfe of altitude: in it are fome housholds retident for to receive the merchandize. The Is. dians of Cals are of a good condition, and good Christians, their old Lord, was called Ligagete The village of Saint Fe of Antiochia, is more then an hundred leagues from Pepparto the norther east, in the borders of the River Canca, of the bounds of the Councell of the New Realment Bithopricke of Popagar, rich in Mynes of gold, neere to the Hill of Baritaca famous for the much gold that was in it; it is feated in certaine Plaines. The countrie people are good folkes, well made and white, and the temperature is fuch that they goe to fleepe on the houses, without any offence of the deaw; they breede much Cattell, many truits, and the in the Ruers and Plathes: the Captaine Gaspar of Rhodes inhabited it by commission of the President Belalcazar, the

The Village of Caramanta is fixtic or feuentic leagues from Papayan to the North-east, necre to the great River Canca, of the bounds of the New Kealme, government and B shopricke of Pea payan, plentifull of Miller and other feedes, without Wheat, and with little Cartell, though they haue many Swine, they goe by the River in fine or fixe houres to Antiochia, though it bee fiftie leagues; for it runneth very swift; it is the plantation of the President Belalearar. The village of Saint lames of Arma, which hath many Mynes of gold, is fittie leagues from Popayan to the North-east, declining to the East, it is of the Council of the new Realme, the government and Diocese of Popayan; without Wheat or feedes of Caffile, but plentifull of the countrie feedes. The President Belalcarar inhabited this village, and here hee beheaded the Marshall George Ro. hed. It fains fixteen leagues from faceques, the people of the countrie are so busherly that 30 the quicke are the spulche of the dead, for it hath becar seen the suspend or care the wife, the brother or lifer, the some the father, and having fatned any captine, the day that they are to eate him, they bring him forth with many fongs, and the Lord commandeth that an they are they doe goe cutting off every member, age to alive they goe eating him, and after the inhabiting of Arms they have eaten more then eight thoughout Indiana, and tome Spaniard have also

fuffered this martyrdome.

The village of Saint Anne of Ancerma is fiftie leagues from Popayan to the North-east, in the border of Cauca, of the Councell of the new Kingdome, government and Bishopricke of Popagan; without Cattell or Wheat, very much annoyed wath thunder bolts : the Captaine George Rebledo built it by order of Laurence of Aldana. Likewise the men of this comitrie are eaters of 40 humane fiesh; they goe naked, they have no Idols, nor any thing to worship : there are in this iurisdiction good Mynes of gold; the climate is hot a and many thunder-bolts die fall. The citie of Carrago, fine and twentie leagues from Popayan about the North-east, is of the Councell of the New Realme, Gouernment and Bilhoprick of Popsyan, without Wheat or any feedes of Ga-file: it is a temperate and whole some countrie, of little gold, it rayneth much, they brede no other cattell but Kine, and Mates: they have many Mountaines, in the which breede many Lions, Tigres, Beares, and Dantas, and wilde Boares : they have a Monasterie of Franciscan Friers: Or Buffes. the Captaine George Robledo inhabited it, and it was called Cartaga, because all the inhabiters were of Cartagena. The village of Timana is fortie leagues from Papayan to the South-east, and fixtie from Santa Fe of Bogota, and thirtie from the Provinces of Dorado; here is a Lieftenant of 50 the Gouernour, which also hath at his charge Saint Sebaffian de la Plata: the Indians of their borders doe decay, for they are so inhumane that in many places they have publike shambles of men which they take captine. They have their feate in the beginning of the Valley of Nepus, the

Indian Paszes are neere, and the Pixaos, which also are " Caribes,

The Citie of Guadalaiara of Buga, is lifteene leagues from Popayan to the North-east, is of the bounds of the Councell of Onite, and Diocesse of Popayan. The Citie of Saint Sebastian of the humane flesh. Plate, in the confines of this Gouernment is thirtie fine leagues from Popayan, and thirtie to the South-west from Santa Fe, Diocesse of Popayan, where are many Mynes of filter, and in her bor-Southsweet from sans re, Dioceson e pagas, rente an inter, saying and interpretations; it is three leagues from the Port of Onda, in the great River of 69 Magdalen, where those that come vp from Cariagena doe landsit is built in a Plaine, neere to the

temper is most hot : in their bounds is a Mountaine where they digge the Load-stone, and the

Ruse Guster are many Enthquakes, and in Winter it is more hot then cold. The Countryc Or canish. raten goe to decay; because the \* Caribes which they call tel Rincardo eate them and have publike flambles of them, without any remedie for it : and the Prefident Belaleusar built this Citie. The Citie of Almaguer is twentie leagues from Popayan to the South-east; it is plentiful of Almaguer. Wheate and Millet, and other feeds, and cattle, and it hath Gold : the Captaine Alonfo of Fuommajor, by order of the Licentiate Brizenjo Guuernour, and d Indge of Accounts, of Popazan d Hip ludge of peopled it, heing feated in a Hill of Zahana, and the climate is fresh, and the people dbe weate Restantia

S. lobe of Truxille, and by another name Ticance is there leagues from Popayan to the South. Truille. eath. The Citie of Madrigall, or Chapanchica, thirtie fine from Popayan about the South, a rough Countrey, where they neither reape Wheate, nor breed cattell, though they gather Millet twice a yestein their jurisdiction : and for the roughnesse of the Countrey, the men are built to to pacific, and in this Citie, and in the Citie of Agreda, and Almagner, are Mynes of Gold. Agreda, Agreda

CHAP.I. Vulcans described. Government of Pacamoros and Gualfango.

and by amother name Maiga, stands forcie five leagues from Popayan to the South-west. The Citie of Saint lobn of the Pasture, focalled because it is a Countrey of many Pattures, it flands Sint lobu de fiftie leagues from Popayan, about the South-well, and as many from Quito about the North-east, Posts. and in the degree from the Equinoctiall Dioceffe of Quite, in a good toyle, of a good climite, and plentifull of Millet, and other prouisions, with Mynes of Gold; In her borders are 24000, bace. Indians of fee, which are not Caniballs, but of evill vifages, filthy, and fimple : they had no Idols Religional in the time of their Paginifme, they beleeved that after death they should goe to five in more joyfull places. The Riner which they call Whoate, is betweene Pasta, and Popayan, itis of a very delicate water, and pasted this River is the Mountayne whither Gorçalo Picarro did follow 20 the Vice-roy Blasco Numez Vela, and vnto the River Angasmaye, which is in this Province came

the King Guaynacapa. Beyond the River Caliente or hor River in a Mountayne, is a firie month, that casteth store of fmoake, and it brake forth in ancient times, as the Countreymen doe fay. The Philosophers being willing to declare what these firse mouthes or Atmaes are, doe fay, that as in the Earth are What the esplaces that have vertue to attract a vaporie substance, and to convert it into water, whereof the need are, and continual forings are made t there are also places that doe attract to themselves dry and hote exhalations, which are converted into fire and imoake, and with the force of them they cast also another groffe fubitance which is diffolued into aftes, or into stones, and these are the fierie mourhes, Saint lohn de Paffe hath Monasteries of Dominicke, Prancifcan, and Mercenarit Friers: 20 it is a cold Countrey, with abundance of victuals, it hath Sugar Mills, and many Fruites of the Countray and of Caftile : when the Capteine Lawrence of Aldona built it, het called it . Villa e Griberanie

viciol's de Pafto, it francis fortie leagues from the South Sea, towards the Hand Gorgodia. There hath beene difinhabited , or diminished irrehis Province, the Citie of Antiochia, the inere man better until the state of North, tentile factor from Tenseas, and it was through the North rigon of the Indian Paces, and Paces, and for the Manhos, in the Villey of Saldanda, and the Citie of Saint Vincent of the Passes, fixtie leagues from Saint lobe of the Plaines , in the confirms Saint Vincent of Popurar, which Dominger Lozane built, and the Citie of los Angeles, twentie two leagues The Arigels. from Tacapus, and nine from Neywa. There is in the Coaff which this government extendeth River Gapes. on the South Sea, from the Capref Corrientes, that stands in fine degrees Septentrionall from the and Rojbtso

40 Line, the River of Solinas, betweene the Cape of Corremes and the Hand of the Palmes in four the Good of degrees one chird pare, and in the Coaft that lyeth vnto Girgenia, the River of Saint 76m arriong thingonecemany other which make the Countrey boggie, and right against the mouth, the Iland of Gorge ment. ma two leagues compafe, where Don Prantifens Picarro was forfaken of all his men, with his threeene companions. The River of Same Lucar, and the River of Meards, before the River of f Zedrer, in two degrees front the Line, in which flands the He del Galle, and after the Port of the f Or Cedars. Croffe, and the point of Manglares, where beginneth the Coaft of Quite.

Of the gouernment of the Onices, and Canela, there is no more notice, but that it falls to the East of the Promince of Quito, and parcof the South, toward the government of John of Salow; there are in it three Spanish Townes, with a Gouernour which the Vice-roy of Pira pro-The Citie of nideth, and in Spirituali respect it is of the Brihopricke of Quito : the Countrey is rough and 30 Mountayrous, without Wheate, and little Miller, with certayne Trees which feement Cina-

mon. The full Towne is Barga, eighteene leagues from Bahit Francis of Tairo, toward the South east, where the Gonemon Reident : the Citie of Archidona's twentie leagues beyond Bases. the Citie of Anila Stands to the North of Archidons.

The government and Province of Pacameros and Gualfange or of lobs of Salina willoft found and ilmits are one hundred leagues, which were affigued that to the Eaff. from twintie flagues of the control of the Eaff. before the Cirie of Zamora, in the Rome of the Ander, and as many more North and South. It - core m is a good Countrey in temper and disposition for Wheat', feeds, and cattle, of rich Mynes of war distributed Gold where they have pieces of great bigheffe : there are in it foure Townes of the Billiopricke and and a

60 of Quito, for the Captaine lobe of Salinas did build theirs. The Citie of Valladolld is in falen degrees height, twentie leagues from Love to the Southeast, launing full the Robs of Frish the Citie of Loyala, or Cumbrusinia is fixteene flagues to the EMF thin Fallachtal the Oftis, of Saint Lames of the Mountaynes, fittie leagues from Lorola, roward the East, and in her Borders much gold, and very high in touch, and as touching the gold we need not intreat of his excellencies,

of the Indians of the borders of Arma.

Ancerna

Carraco

of these In-Where the Load flone is

ther places.

being holden for the Supreame power in the World. It is gotten in these Mynes in three manners: The first is in Pippens, which are whole pieces without mixture of any other Metall, that need not to be purified by fire, and these graines commonly are like a Pompeon Seed, and sometimes bigger : of this gold is found but litle, in respect of the rest. The second fort is in flowe, which is avaine that groweth in the flone it felfe, and thefe flones are found in the government of loke of Salinas very great, all passed through with gold, and some which are halfe Gold, the which is found in Pits and Mynes, and it is hard to worke. The third, is gotten in powder, and is the great test quantitie, and this is found in Rivers, or in places where some streame of water hath passed. ter quantitie, since these lader have many, especially in the Kingdoms of Chile, Onite, New Reduce to of Granada, and in the beginning of the Discoueries, there were many in the & Weather I. lands. The highest in touch is that of Carabaya in the Pirm, and that of Valdinia in Chile, for it reacheth to twentie three Charracts and an halfe, and yet it paffeth.

Hat which is called Prin, is proper and particularly the bounds of the Councell of los Repos.

and is comprehended North and South, from fixe vnto feuen Southerne degrees of altitude, of the Counces which are two hundred and twentie leagues, though in Voyage they put three hundred from the or Audience of point del Agnia, beyond Payta, whereby it toyneth with the Councell of Quito, till paffing the The Kings, or Citie and Port of Areguipa, where beginneth the Councell of the Charcas, East and West. The inhabited part of this Councell hath about one hundred leagues from the Coaft of the South Sea toward the East, whereby her bounds remayne open vnto the Prouinces of the River of Plate, and 26 of Brafill, that which is from the Rowe, where, as hath beene faid, it rayneth continually, vnto the Sea, they call the Plaines of Pirm, in the which is neither rayneth nor thundreth, became cause that it rayneth not in the great height of the Mountain doth shelter the Plaines in such fort, that it permitteth no wind from the Earth to blow, whereby the Sea wind reigneth, which having no contrary doth not represse the vapours that doe arise to make raine, in fore that the shelter of the Hill hindereth the thickning of the vapours : and this want of matter caufeth that in that Coaft the vapoursare for thinne, that they make no more then a moy ft or dankish mist, which is profitable for their fowh Some are of ings, which have not without the h mift fo much vertue, be they never fo much watered. The epinion that Countrey is all fandie grounds, except the Valleyes which are made by courses of the Rivers, epinon that allplants and that descend from the Mountayne, where much Corne is gathered by the waterings, Wine, 10 Oyle, Sugar, and the other Seeds, and Fruits, of Castile, and of the Countrey. In the skirts and rithed by va-pours, yearhar hils tides of the Mountayne, are great Pastures and breedings of cattell, and the temper variable. pourty jest that in and as would be defired; for the height is sold, and the low hot, and the middlemoft partakers of the bloud nouthe extreames, as they are more or leffe neers them. The government of this Councel], and or Quito, and of the Charcas, is in the charge of the Vice-roy, and there are the Townes following Gen. 2 mift in the circuit of this Councell.

The Citie of the Kings (or of Lima, because the Valley is so called, which was the name of

the Cazique, and it is the greatest and broadest Valley, of all those that are from Tumber vnto

it) flands neere the South Sea, in twelue degrees of Southerne altitude, and eightie two from the

greater circle: it hath aboue three thousand housholds: the Marques Don Franciscus Picarro

built it, in the beginning of the yeere 1533. because suspecting that the President Den Peter of

Aluarado would come downe to the Sea coast, when her wene with an Host from Gnatemale

meanewhile that Don lames of Almarado went to refult him to the Proninces of Quite, hee went

to intercept him the passages of the Sea. Neere this citie, on the East fide, passeth a River from

whence all the houses doctake water, and their gardens, wherein are excellent fruits of Caffile

and of the Countrie, and it is one of the best Climates of the World, seeing there is neither fa-

mine nor peffilence; nor doth it rayne or thunder, nor fall there any thunder-bolts or light-

Meridian of Toledo, diffant from it about one thousand eight hundred and twentie leagues by a 40

Creatures, So.

Paradife,&c. The Sunne as Head of the World, the Harr as Sunn in the Body, caufeth nourithment by

The Citie of

nings, but the Heauen is alwayes cleere and very faire. In this Citie is refulent the Vice-roy, the Royall Councell, an affembly of chiefe Inflices, the so Officers of the Kings Rents, and treaturie Royall, the Tribunall of the holy and generall Inquifition, which was founded when the Inquilition of New Spains was. The Inquition general in their Kingdomes was then the Cardinall Don lames of Elpinofa Balhop of Signers, it having proceeded with mature deliberation, for the augmenting of our holy Catholike Faith, and Chriitian Religion, There is also in this Citie an Vniuersitie, where very learnedly the Sciences are Such hollantile read, and Schooles of divers languages of the Indians, in the which the Fathers of the Companie of Islus are very diligent, to reape fruit in the preaching of the Gospell. In this Citie is the Archfizhlish in force episcopall resident, whose Suffraganes are the Bishops of Chile, Charcas, Cuzco, Quito, Panama, guing has an Microsqua, and the Ruer of Plate. There are three Parishes, and fine Monasteries of the foure Lettic toge. Orders, and of the Companie of Icsus, and two of Nunnes. Cales which is her Port, is two 60 complyment. In the Companie of Icsus, and two of Nunnes. Cales which is her Port, is two 60 complyment. Valuerfitie and House, one Church, and one Monastene of Dominice Friars: here hath beene seeene the Wine and the Water fet to coole in the Sea in flaggons, whence it is inferred that the Ocean hath the vertue to temper and refresh the ouer-much heate. Many doe affirme that in this Citie are

twelve thousand Women of all Nations, and twensie thousand blacke-Moores. The Village of Armedo in the Valley of Chancas, is ten leagues from The Kings, and halfe a Negros. I ague from the Sea, with a Monafterie of Domenicke Friars, rich of Vines : the Earle of Numa built it. The Village of the \* Parrilla, or Santa, is by the Valley where it stands, fiftie fine leagues \* Or Gridinal from The Kings, and fifteene from Truxillo neere the Sea, neere to a great and faire River, with a good Hauen, in nine degrees, where the ships that faile by the coast of Pira doe touch. The Citie of Truxillo is in the Valley of Chimo, which Don lames of Almagro plotted fult, and after- Truxillo ward the Marques Don Franciscus Pigarro built it in the yeere 1533. It hath many Vines and fruits of Castile, and Wheat : it is all watered ground, and a wholelome Countrie, and there bee To great Orchards of Oranges, and breeding of Poultrie, It stands in seven degrees and a halfe, eightie leagues from Lime neere the Sea, with Monasteries of Saint Dominiche, Saint Francis, and Saint Angustine, and another of the Mercemaries, and Officers Royall, provided by the Vice-roy: and in her bounds about fiftie thousand tributarie Indians, in two and fortie repartitions. The and an active leagues off in an open Bay, early, and of little fecuritie. The Village of Miraflores is Miraflores

in the Valley of Zana, ninetic fine leagues from the Citie of The Kings to the North fide, and neere to the Sea. The Citie of Chachaperas, or Saint leber of the Frontier, is about one hundred chacharter and twentie leagues from the Citie of The Kings to the North-east, it hath one Monasterie of the Mercenaries, and another of the Franciscans: in her bounds are Wheat, Millet, and Flaxe, many Mynes of gold, and more then twentie thouland tributarie Indians, which held out valorously 20 a long time against the Ingu, but in the end they were ouer-come, and for greater quietnesse of the Countrie they carried many of them vnto (1200, and they inhabited in a Hill which is cal-

led Carmenga. These are the whitest and best fauoured Indians of all the Indies, and the Women Faire Indians, very faire. The Marshall Alfon of Alumando, entred in this Prouince the yeere 1536. by order of the Marques Don Francisco Picarro, and pacified it, and built the faid Citie in a throng lituation called Lenanto, and afterward he paffed to the Prouince of the Guancas. The Cirie of Saint Lames of the Valleys, or Moyobamba, more then one hundred leagues from Saint Lames of

The King: North-eastward, and five and twentie from Saint Iobs of the Frontier, stands in a ve- the Valleys. ry rayme foile, and plentifull of Cattell. The Citie of Liou of the Guaraco, fiftie leagues from Lion of Guathe Citie of The Kings to the North, neere the high-way of the Ingas, formwhat diftant towards men 30 the Eath, hath Monafteries of Dominicans, Franciscans, and Mercenaries, and in her bounds thirtie

thousand tributarie Indians, Anno 1539, for the warre that the Tyrant Thotops made to this Prouince, the Marques Don Franciscus Picarro sent Captaine Gomez of Alaarado which builcit, and afterward it was difinhabited, and Peter Borrofo reedified it, and after the battell of Chapas the Licentiate Vaca de Caftro, fent Captaine Pedro de Puelles to make an end of the plantation. It flands in a good and wholesome situation, abundant of victuals and Cattell: it hath Mynes of filuer, and the people is of good capacitie. They reape much Wheat, for the Indians have learned to be good husbandmen: for as before in thele Indies there was no Wheat, nor Barley, nor Millet, nor Panick, nor any feede of the bread of Caffile of Europe, and they knew other kindes of Graine and Rootes, only of the which May 20 Millet was the principall, being found in all of Graine and Rootes, only of the which May 20 Millet was the principall, being found in all the Index; the Countrimen have fine places where it is gathered , because the Mayz is not fo frong nor of so much substance as the the Millet, Wheat: it is fatter, and hot, and engendreth bloud, it groweth in Canes, and beareth one or two

bunches, and fome Spaniards doe eate it where they have no other fhift, The Citie of Guamanga, or Saint Iuan of the Victorie, fixtie leagues from Lima to the South- Guamanga eaft, in the way of the Ingas, Bishoprick of Cuzco, hath Monasteries of Dominicans , Franciscans, and Mercenaries, and one of Nunnes, and in her bounds more then thirtie thousand tributarie Indians : it is plentifull of Wheate and Wine , and rich of filter Mynes. The Marques Don Francifem Picarro built this Citie 1539, and placed it the first time in a towne of Indians called Guamanga, necre to the great Row of the Andes, and left for his Lieftenant the Captaine Francisco de

50 Cardenses. Afterward it was removed to the Playne where now it is, neere to certaine small Hills on the South fide, and nigh to a Brooke of good water. In this Citie are the best houses in Pirs. of stone and bricke; the seate is healthfull, without offence of the Sunne, the Aire, the Deaw, or the Moilture, or the Heate. There are found in her borders certaine great buildings Great boff-(which the Indians lay certaine white men with beards, which came thither before the Inga, dings, did build) much differing from the building of the Inga : the most of the Countrimen of this Countrie are Mitmaes, which is to fay, Transplanted, for the Ingas did vie for the greater fecu- Transplanting ritie of the Empire, to take from one Prounce the people they did not truft, and fend them to as of Egyptians liue in another.

Guamanga is fixtie leagues from Cuzco, and in the way are the Hills and Playne of Chapas, Ifinities, 2 Reg. where Vaca de Cafro, and Don lames de Almagro the yonger did fight; and forward are the buil Bab. &c. 60 dings of Vilcaf, in the high way in Andahaylas, eleven leagues from Gnamanga, which was the centre of the Ingus; and here was the great Temple of the Sunne. The Prounce of the Anda Temple of the baylar is long and hath much tame Cattell, and victualls; from thence they come to the River of Sunner Abancay, nine leagues neerer Cazco, where the Prefident Don lames of Almagro the elder over-

threw and apprehended Alfonso of Aluarado, Generall of the Marques Don Francisco Picarro. There followeth the River of Aparima, eight leagues from Paffado, or the Paffage, which is very great; and then the Hill of Vilcaconga, where the faid Prefident Almagro ouer-came a great battell of the Indians, before he won Cuzco, and the Valley of Xaquixaguana is neere betweene two rowes of Hills, not broad nor long, where the President Pedro la Gasca, by the vertue of those valiant and faithfull Captaines Trojofa, Peter of Valdibia, Gabriel of Rojas, Alfonfus of Aluarado. and others (of the which in their place shall be made mention parcicularly) did ouer-throw Gongalo Pigarro, and tooke him : and from this Valley to the Citie of Cazco are fine leagues : and in this Valley they gather great store of Wheat, and have great store of Cattell.

remayneth of of the Kings.

I Ight or ten leagues from the Citie of Guamanga, fomewhat North-westward, are the Mynes ct Guancabelica, which they call El Assento de Oropesa, where ordinarily are refident more then three hundred Spaniards. The Indians did worke in them to take out the red Oaker, to paint themselves when in the time of their Paganilime they went to warre, which is the Vermillion : and the Licenciate Lope Garcia of Caftro, governing in Pirs in the yeere 1566, a Ports. gall called Henrie Garces, confidering that of the Vermillion the quick-filuer is gotten, went to make a triall, and found it to be fo. This metall the Romanes carried from Caftile in Stone, and out of it they got quick-filter, and held it for great riches. The Indians knew it not, nor minded any more then the vermilion. The greatest profit it yeeldeth, is to purifie the filter from the earth. Profit of quick Lead, and Copper, wherewith it groweth : it eateth all the other metals, and pierceth them as 30 the Tin, Iron, and Lead, and therefore they carry it in leather, or veilels of earth. Quick-filuer

Spring turning k lling.

Bashes.

Salt ipring.

In this teat of Guavia Velica is a spring , that as it springeth it congealeth in a soft stone: of into flone, and the which they make their houles , and the Men or Beafts that doe drinke it, die : for within the body it converteth into a stone. In the Bathes that are called of Inga neere the Cuzco, are Hot and cold two spouts of water the one neere the other, the first is hot, and the second cold, that it seemeth God did place them there for to temper themselves. In the same bounds is a Spring, that as it springeth it becomes good and white falt : in this place the two great Rowes doe begin to feparate themselves, and make in the middest a great Champaine ground, which is called the rowes dinided. Province of Collao, where are very many Rivers, and there is the great Lake of Titicaca, and 30 great pasture grounds. Though it be a plaine Countrie, it hath the same height and distemperature of the Hills ; it hath no Trees, nor Wood; the bread that is eaten are rootes that are called Papas, which grow also in all Pirm; it is a healthfull Countrie, and much inhabited, and multiplieth enery day; it hath flore of Cattell of all forts.

feruethalio for other effects, and medicinall matters.

The Lake of Titicaca compaffeth eightie leagues, and in some places it hath eightie fathom deepe, and in this, and in the waves are rayled when there is any winde, so that it seemeth as a Bay of the Sea, from which it stands about fixtie leagues, twelue or thirteene Rivers enterinto it, and many Brookes, and from it goeth a River into another Lake, which they call the Anlagas, which hath no voyding place, though because some Eyes of water have beene seene that winder ground goe into the Sea, it is judged that it might bee the water of 40 these Lakes did goe, opening a way through the entrailes of the Earth vnto the Sea. Round about the great Lake are many Townes, and in it great Ilands, with great Tillage in them , and there were the Indians wont to keepe their most precious things for greater

The great Citie of Cuzco, Seate Royall of the Ingas, and Head of their Empire (and now of the Kingdomes of Pirm, by a Title which it hath of it from the Kings of Caffile and Lion) ftands in thirteene degrees and a halfe height, feuentie eight of longitude, one hundred and fine and twentie leagues from the Citie of The Kings to the South-east, of more then one thoufand Spanifb housholde; the Marques Don Franciscue Picarro founded it. It hath eight Parishes, and foure Monasteries of the foure Orders, of Saint Dominicke, Saint Francis, Saint Augustine, 50 the Mercenaries, and the Companie of Ielus, and one of Nunnes. Heere is refident the Cathedrall. Suffragane to the Archbishopricke of The Kings. There goe from this Citie since the time of the Inga from the Market place foure high wayes towards the foure parts of the world; one called Chinchafayo to the North , toward the Playnes and Province of Quito : another Condefugo , to the West toward the Sea : the third called Collaosuyo , to the South and Chile: and the fourth to the East, which they call Andefuye, which goeth to the Andes and skirts of the Mountaine. It thanks in a foile of a good temper, moderately fresh and healthfull, irre Novementour from all venemous wormes, and plentifull of all things, with a thousand kindes of fruits of Castile, and imelling herbes and flowres at all times which are of great delight. In her writdiction is the Valley of Toyma: there is great trafficke of Coca, and showes of Gold, Silver, 60 and Quick-filuer; and there may bee in her borders about an hundred thousand tributarie Indians. It all the parts of these Indies the Indians have a great delight in carrying ordinarily in the mouth Rootes, Boughes, or Herbes, and that which they most vie in all Pra, is the Coca, for as they fay, they facle little hunger, and finde themfelues with great vigour

Foure high wayes most admired.

CHAP. I. Earthquaket, from Whence they proceed. Fertiliete without raine.

chewing it alwaies, though it rather feemeth a custome inherited, or a vice, This is planted, and groweth to small trees, which are cultinated and obershed, and yeeld a leafe like myrtle, and dried they carry it in baskets to fell, and much mony is gotten by it. In the Valley of Valcabamba, Stands Saint Francis of the victorie in Andefujo, between the Row Saint Francis

of the Ander, about twentie leagues from Cuzer to the East fide, with a Governour provided by the Vice-roy: it is of the Bilhapricke of Cases, in a rough ground, and of great Mountaines,

The village of Saint Island Toro, is in the Province of Carabaya eightic leagues from Caraba to Saint Islands the East South-east, and thirtie to the East from the Lake of Colles, and it is called del Oro, of the the Gold. Gold, for the great store that win her borders. The Citie of Arequipe is in fixteen degrees some- Arequipe to what more, one hundred and thirtie leagues from the Citie of The Kings , almost to the South-

eaft as the Coast runnetts, and fixtie from the Citie of Careto, of the Bilhopricke of Careto : it hath Monafteries of Danissiches, Prantificate, and Moreinaries; it hath fiftie thouland tributaries mainst, and is of most pleasant compensates to line in of all places in Pirs. They gather in her borders great flore of Wine, and Wheat The Port is at the entrie of the River Chile, which calfeth neereshe Citie where the merchandine is valaden.

Arequipe Bands in the Valley of Quiles, fourteene leegues from the Sea. In her jurifdiction is the Promuce of Condes me, the Townselof the Hubina, Gollagua, Chequiquanta, and Quimiflaca; the Marques Don Francisco Picarro built it 1934. it is very tubitet to earth-quakes as all thefe Indies, especially the Sea coasts. In the yeere 1582, there was an earth-quake that almost Earth-quaket ao minated this Citie, and fince there hath beene another, and a breaking out of a fierie month, in the limite

whereof they tell firange things, in the yeare 1 586. There was another in the Citie of the Kings very terrible the ninth of July, which ran one hundred and feuentie leagues in length by the Sea fide, and fittle and trange. within the Land; it spoyled the Cirre, indangered few people, because they went out into the fields, and a little after the earth-quake was path, the Sea went out of her bounds, and entred a great way within the Land fourteene fathom deepe. Such another earth-quake was in Quito the next yeere, in the Citie of la Paz in the yeere 1981, a great high Rocke fell which tooke vnder it a great many Indian witch trees, and the earth which fell did run one league and a halfe. In Chile was another great earth-quake that oner-threw Mountaines and Valleys, stopped the Current of the Riners, brought the Sea out of her limits the space of some leagues, cast downe whole rem or use allow many men. The Philosophern fay that the earth-quake proceedeth from the From whence 10 Towner, and illust many men. The Philosophern fay that the earth-quake proceedeth from the From whence heate of the Sunne, and of other celeficial Bodies, which not onely doe draw the exhibition to the earth-

themselves, and the vapour of the superficies of the earth, but that also which is in the bowels of quakes doe it, which comming out engendreth winker and rayner; and if it happen that the earth is fo close proceeds. that the exhalation cannot come out my way, then it moueth from one part to another through the pores of the earth, with great violence breaking forth, as the powder in a Myne', tearing with such a furious rage , that impendeth the cases where it is , and openeth it selfer way with great furie, and fo much more furious in it, how mach more the exhalation inclosed is greater. The Village of Saint Michaelide la Rebera is fixe leagues from the Sea , in the Valley of Cas Saint Michael

maya, one hundred and thirteene leagues from The Kings, two and ewentie from Arequips to the of the Riber. 40 part of the Equinochiall, of the Bishopticite of Cases. The Village of Valverde in the Valley of Valverde. Toa, fine and thirtie leagues from the Citie of The Kingis, ten from the Port of Sangallis, is of the inrillitition of The Kings, and of the Archbilhopricke; herborders are plentifull of Wheat, Millet, and Fruits, and of much Wine.

The Village of Campete, or of Guarce, by the Valley where it familes is diffant from The Kings Guard. fine and twentie leagues to the South, one league and a mafe from the Sea her bounds are plentifull of bread the best of this Kingdome, whence is carried great quantitie of meale to Terra firme. Before the comming to this Valley, are the Valleys of Chiles, and Male; in the first it neuer rayneth, neither, paffeth any Fourtaine nor Brooke through it; and they drinke of the Wells, and it is full of arable grounds, and fraits, which grow onely by electeese of the Heauen. Fertilite with 50 They catch many Pilcherds in the Sea, and with every graine of artible they not into the hole outraine.

where it is fowen one or two of the heads; and with that moy flure is groweth well. In the Pikhards, Valley of Mala , Don lames of Almagra, and Don Franciscon Picarre being in quartel, the father Bonadilla of the Merced or Merconarie Order , as an Arbitrator reiolued their differences ; through this Valley paffeth a great River, which doet them great pleafure. Fine leagues forward is the River of Guarco in a Valley most plentifull in all things, where the Countrimen maintayned the warre foure yeeres against the Ingar, and to preferue in they caused to build a Citie, and called it Cueco, and erected for the triumphos the victorie a great Forreste on a Hill, that the waves of the Sea doe beate upon the flayres, Sixe leagues from Gaard is the Valley of Chineba, famous, pleatant, and very plentifull; where a Monatteris of Dominite Frairs was 60 built in flead of the Temple of the Sunne which the Indanio had , with the Monasterie of the

Virgins. Then followeth the Valley of Tea, which is no leffe, nor leffe plentifull ; going out of the Valleys, and Rivers of the Nafea, and the principall is called Canamales, where excellent Wines are made. They goe from the le Valleys to that of Hacari, where thands Ocame; famania. Oca and Quilce, which is the Port of the Citie of Arequipe, and forward are the Valleys of Chattand

of The Kings.

dung for their grounds, wherewith of a barren, they make a plentiful ground. There are in the coast of this Councel from the Point del Agua, of the Needle, where's invrieth with that of Queto, in fixe degrees of Southerne altitude, the Handa and Ports following two Hands which they call de Labor in feuen degrees, the one foure leagues from the Couff, and the other more to the Sea; and forward another called of Saint Rente to the South eaft; niere to Parcamajo, and forward Puerto de Mai Abrigo, con leagues beforeshe Port of Tranilei, in feuen degrees and a halte, and feuen leagues from the Port of Gnampes and of Santhe in mine des grees, and five leagues from this to the South, Porte Formel; and fixe from it that of Commes and afterward eight leagues the Port of Guarmey at the mouth of a Rintr ; and the Bernisca twentis leagues to the South; and the Port of Game where is a very great Sale pit; and after this the Hand of Line, at the entrie of the Port of Coller; and swenter langues; to the South the Point of Guarco, and one Hand de Lobes Marines, or Seale Bibes merrettris, and the Point of Chica in fittene degrees, and neere to the Nafes; and forward the Point of Saint Lawrence, in the Valley of Quilca, and meere the River of Arequipa and the Crevke of Challen; and after-ward the River of Numbre de Diss, where the limits doe nowie by the Coaft of the Counfels of The Kings, and of Charcas.

Tambopalla, and the Deylo, and them of Tarapaca, Rivers and plentifulls: with good Mynes of filner, and neere the Sea : the Indians of the Hands of The Seales doc carry great flore of Fowler

Chap. 21. The bounds of the Counfell of Charcas (which parteth limits with that of The Kings, stands of the Bounds in twentie degrees and a halfe of Southerne altitude, by the Ruser of Nombre de Dies, and the beginning of the Lake of (ollas ) hath in length three hundred loagues vnto the Valley of the Plate, or of Copiago, beginning of the Province of Chile in eight and twentie degrees of height . though in voyage they are reckoned neere foure hundred leagues East and Well, that which is betweene of the South Sea vnto the North Sea, or South which answereth to the Provinces of the River of Place, which though it is not altogether discourred, it is understood that by placing all the Comtrie of this Counfell in much altitude, it is more cold then hot.

The Government of this Counfell, is at the charge of the Vice-roy of Pirs, as that of the Countell of Quao, and of The Kings: there are two Gouernours, and two Bishopricks, that of Charces and Tacumer. The Prouince of the Charces ( which commonly is named that which is to from the bounds of the Counfell of The Kings ; all show passe Perof ) bath in length North and South about one hundred and fiftie leagues, and as many East and West; a Countrie not very plentifull, though abundant of Cattell, especially in Calles, that is from the Lake of Taicons ynto Charcas, where the Winter and Summer are constant to Europe: it is a plentiful Countrie of all Cattell, especially of theepe, which are many, and of a very fine woolk

In this Prouince are foure Townes of Specialist of one Bishopricke, which are the Cirie of the Plate, which the Captaine Peraneures inhabited, in the yeemog \$3. by order of the Marques Des Franciscus Picarro. It stands in seventie two degrees of longitude from the Meridian of Tolelo, from whence it may be diffant by a greater circle one choufandifenen hundred and eightie leagues, and in mineteene degrees of latitude, one hundred feventie find leagues from Cazes to the South, or 40 Antartick Pole within the Tropicks, in the ettermost of the Torrid Zone. There are in the ber ders of this Citie in Change (which are manured grounds) eight hundred Spanish housholds. It is a Countrie extreme cold, whereas it should be temperate or bot, according to the height of the Pole it flands in : the Counfell and the Cathedrall is refident in this Citie; and there are Monafteries of Dominicky, Franciscan, Angufines, and Mercenarie Friers, and in her inrifdiction fixtie thousand tributarie Indians, divided in nine and twentie repartitions, and the feedes of Caftile doe grow well, and there are many rich mynes of fauen. The Citie of our Lady of the Peace, by another name the New Towns, and Chuquiabe, in the

Our Lady of

middeft of the Collas, one hundred leagues from Cares, and eightig from the Plass, hath Monafluries of Franciscame, Augustines, and Adercenaries, with flore of Wines and Cattell. Captaint 40 Alfonfau of, Mendeça built it 1949, when was Prefident the Governour of Pira, the Licenciate Pedro de la Gafea, atterward Bilhop of Signança. The Promince of Chicaite in Collas, formewhat North-east from the Pronince of Plata, more then an hundred leagues from it, inhabited by Indians, with a Spanish Gonernour, of the Bithopricke of Charcas, and one Monalterie of Dominicks.

Chicuita Orașefa,

> Place: their husbandrie is crops of Wheat, Millet, and Cattell. The Imperial Towns of Patofi is in mineteene degrees of altitude, eighteene leagues from the Citie of the Plate, and about eight from the Lake of the Anlager to the East, in the skirt of the Hill of Posafi, that looketh to che North-east ; it hath five hundred housholds of Spaniards 60

hath raugh Carrell, and it flands at the builder of Thioses. Oropefas, is a plantation of the Vice-roy, Dan Francisco de Toleda, in the Valley of Cachabamba, twentie leagues from the Citie of le

which doesetend the mystes, and of Merchants, and about 10000, ladiant of ordinarie goess and comment to the trafficke of the filter. And though it be a Towne of it felfe, it hath no Ruler, but State of the citie de la Place. There refide the Officers, and Royall treasurie of this Protince, for the mynes of the Hill of Patel, which a Castillan discounted 3 445 called Fillared, by meaning of cer-

taine Indians; and it is called Posofi, because the Indians doe to call Hills and high places; and the filter was fo much that they got at the beginning in the yeere 1549, every Saturday, that when they cast it, there came to the Kings fifts from fine and twentie to thirtie thouland Pefos. The Hill is flat and bare, their habitation drie and cold , vnpleafant , and altogether barren. It bringeth forth no fruit, graine or herbe, and because of the filter it is the greatest inhabiting of the Indies, which hath about two leagues in circuit, and where all kinde of dainties are found. and plentie, though brought thither by carriages. The colour of the ground of the Hill draweth towards red, darke. The forme is like a Sugar loafe, that ouer-peareth all the other Hills that are neere it: the going vp is rough, and yet they goe vp on horie-backe; it extended to a league, and from his top to the foote is about a quarter of a league. It hath on all sides rich veines of fibury from the top to the foote, and the Port of Arica whereby the merchan. dries

dize come, and the filter of this Hill is carried, is from it about ninetic leagues, almost West. Sixe leagues from the aforefaid Hill in the way of the Port of Arica, is the Hill of Porce, an Porce ancient feate of Mynes of filuer: whence it is affirmed the Ingas got the greatest part of the filuer that was in the Temple of the Sunne of Curionebe, whence yet is and will much filter be gotten.

Sauta Craz de la Sierra ftands one hundred leagues from the Charcas to the Eaft, in the way The holycroffe whereby they goe from the Charcas to the Affumption; in the Prouinces of the River of Plate, of the Hill. whicherto they make three hundred leagues sourney, with a Gouernour prouided by the Viceroy , of the Dioceffe of the Charens , and one Monafterie of Mercenaries , in a Countrie fcarce

of water, though plentifull of Wheat, Wine, and Millet. This Province hath neighbourhood with many Nations of Infidell Indiant, and many of them are alreadie baptized, and the first that Brooke a denotion in the Countrimen , was a Spanish Souldier, "that was among them, " This Apostle fied for faults; which for a great anguish they were in for water made them a great Croffe, after his miraand perswaded them to worship with great denotion that same Crosse, and to aske water; cles, many was and God for his mercy heard them, and fent them much raine in the yeere 1960. The Cap- for wickedner taine Nuflo of Chaues went out of the Citie of the Afention in the River of Plate, to difco uni Set Active mer, and comming to Santis Cross of the Hill, having made great discourries, the people came east, which him, and feeming to him that hee was never to Pirm, went to the Cirie of The Kings; where the Marques of Campete was Vice-roy, and with his order, and for Lieftenant of his 30 fonne Don Garcia of Mendoga, the Captaine Nufle of Chanes went againe to inhabit this Citie.

though he came out of the River of Plate, with purpose to discover the Provinces of the Dorade In the Coast of this Councell, which beginneth in seventeene degrees and a halfe in the Ri. Ports & Points uer of Nombre de Dies , or Tambopalle ; is the Port of Hilo neere to a River, in eighteene de. ofthis Coungrees and a halfe, and more to the South, El Morro de les Diables, and the Port of Arica in nineteene degrees one third part, and that of Tacame in one and twentie, and the Point of Tarepers to the South, and more forward the River of Pies, and that de la Hois, or of the Leafe, and of Montele, the Port of Medilinar; and more to the South the Point of the Beacones, or La Farallenes, Morte Morene, before the Bay Mid River of Sanda Clara, and more to the South the Breach, and the White point , and the Doepe breach , and the River of Santa Clara ; about thirtie Panta Blenca. 40 leagues from the River of Copiago, where the Coaft of Chile beginneth, and the Coaft of the Quebrada House Charess endeth. The Province and Government of Tuchanan, is all Mediterrane; her bound Province of

begins from the Countrie of the Chichas, which are of she surifdiction of the Imperial Village of Tacamer. Potof: it flands in the same Line of the Citie of the Affamption of the River of Plate, about an hundred leagues from the South Sea couft; it doth confine with the Province of Chile; it is a Countrie of a good temper, reasonably plentifull, and wntill now without Mynes of filter. or gold. There is in it some Spanis Townes in one Bishopricke, which are of the Citie of Saint Lago del Estero, which at the beginning they named del Varco, or of the Boate, in eight and Saint Lames of twentie degrees of altitude, one hundred eightie fine leagues from Potofi to the South, declining the Marth. formewhat to the East: the Gouernour and the Officers of the goods, and treature Royall, and the Bishop, and the Cathedrali are resident here.

The Citie of Saint Merie of Talaura, is fine and fortie leagues from Saint James to the North, Saint Michael. and fortie from Potof in fixe and twentie degrees. The Citie of Saint Michael of Tucuman New Landon eight and twentie leagues from Saint lames to the Welt, in the way of the Charcas in feuen and h Hiff. Nueva twentie degrees. There were inhabited in this Gouernment in the time of Don Garcia of Mens Cudana. doga, his father the Marques of Campete being Vice-roy, the New London, and Calebaque, Thifle that which they called a New wifedome, in the Province of the lawiss, and Draguita, which after growth energy ward were dishabited within a few yeeres. The people of this Countrie goeth clothed in wool- dempie four len, and in wrought leather, made by arte like the guilt or wrought leather of Spaine: they breed inches fluitre; much Cartell of the Countrie, by reason of the profit of their wooll they have the Towner ve and we high at a mon holds.

60 ry neere the one to the other, and the Towners are small, because there is but one kindred in eue-back, and the Towners are small, because there is but one kindred in eue-back, and the towners are small, because there is but one kindred in eue-back, and the towners are small the towners are small the towners are small the towners.

ry one, they are compassed round about with I Cardones, and thornic trees for the warres that keth much they had among themselves. They are great husbandmen, and it is a people that is not drunke, ground, has for they are not given to drinke, as other Nations of the Indies. There are in the Province feven there grow mayne Rivers, and more then eightie Brookes of good waters, and great pastures ! the Winter many our of

Chap. 22. Don Diego de Almagro was prouided the yeere 1 5 34. in Toledo for Gouernour of two hun-Of the bounds Don Francisco Picarro, toof the King-ward the Streight of Magellan, intituling this part, The new government of Toledo. Hee went to pacifie this Countrie, and because he fortooke it, it was given in charge to the Marques Dow Franerfeo Picarro 1537, and he commended it 1540, to the Captaine Peter of Valdinia; who were thither with one hundred and fiftie Spaniards. All the Countries of this Kingdome lye to the to South of the Equinoctiall, in a more Southerne altitude then the Kingdome of Pirm, and her Prouinces within the Torride, from the Equinoctiall vinto the Tropicke of Capricone, which peffech a Defare, which they call of Atacama, which is from twentie three to twentie fixe degrees, and then beginneth the Kingdome of Chile, which the Indians call Chille, and before the inhabited Countrie is the River of The Salt, in three and twentie degrees and three quarters, which from the East fide of the Row of Mountaines, runneth to the West into the Sea, through a very deepe Valley, and though it hath the water very cleere; all that the Horses are wet with it when they drinke, is congealed with the heate of the Sunne; and it is so meere falt that it cannot bee drunke, and in the borders it is congealed : the River is before the entring in the first Province of Chile two and twentie leagues where the Xagueyes are, which are Wells of water, for there is 20 no other in the two and twentie leagues, and all the Kingdome stands within the Zone, which the ancient men called Deferte, which is inhabited with white Indians, and it is situated on the borders of the South Sea, which is Mare Magnum, which is included betweene her Coaft and

de Heredia; they discouered on this fide the River of Plate vnto the Fortreffe of Gabas.

This Government taken largely unto the Streight, bath in length North and South, from the Valley of Copuspo where it beginnethan feuen and twentie degrees, fine hundred leagues, and in breadth East and West, from the South Sea to the North Sea, from foure hundred to fine hundred of ground to be pacified, which does ftraighten it felfe, till it remayneth by the Streight in ninetie or in an hundred leagues. That which is inhabited of this Gouernment, may bee three hundred along the North Sea coaft, and the breadth of it twentie leagues and leffe, vnto the Rose 30 of the Andes, which doe end neere the Streight, and it passeth through this Kingdome very high, and almost couered at all times with snow. All the Countrie is plaine, at the least there is mo great roughnesse, except where the Rome of Pira doth reach, and doth end within two or three leagues of the Coast.

The temper and qualitie of it (though it bee not without some difference for the varieties of the heights it standeth in altogether) is of the best, and most inhabitable that is in the ladies, in temperature like vnto Castile, in whose opposite altitude in thirth almost all, and in abundance and goodnesse of victuals, and plentie of all things, riches of Mynes and Metals, and force and vi gour of the Countrimen, which for being to great warriors have alwayes beene enill to pacific, and there bee many out in the Mountaines, and Breaches of the end of the Rowe, the Prouinces of 40 Arauco, Tucapel, and the Valley of Paren, the bounds and borders betweene the Citic of the Conception, and los Confines, and la Imperial.

In this Government are eleven Spanis Townes, with a Governour placed in the matters of the Government to the Vice-roy, and Councell of Pira, after the Councell that was in the Countrie was taken away; and theroisin it two Bishopricks Suffraganes to the Archbishoprick of the Kings. In the Bishopricke of Saint James are foure Towness. The Citie of Saint James in the time of the first inhabiting of Chile, founded by Captaine Peter of Valdinia, it stands in thirtie foure degrees and a quarter of alcitude, feuentie feuen of longitude, one thousand nine hundred and eightie leagues from Toledo by a direct Line, fifteene from the Sea, and ten beyond the Valley of Chile, which they named at the first New Extreame. In it is the Cathedrall resident 50 with Monasteries of Dominicke, Franciscan, and Mercenarie Friars, in a plentiful foile of wheat, Wine, and other things, and of very rich Mynes of gold, and in her inridiction more then eightie thousand Indians in fixe and twentie repartitions. This Citie is ferued of the Port of Valarayle at the mouth of the River Topocalma, which paffeth neere vnto it.

Captaine Valdinia peopled also la Serena in the yeare 2544. neere to a good Hanen; it is the first Towne of Spaniards, at the entire of Chile lixtie leagues from the Citie of Saint Lames, somewhat North-weit neere to the Sea in the Valley of Coquimbo, with Monasteries of Franciscan . and Mercenarie Friars. It raymeth in it but three or foure times a yeere, and in the Countries before it were rayneth. The Port which they call of Coquimbed, flands in two and thirtie degrees, it is a good Nooke where the fluips of Pirm doe make a stay. In the Prouince of Chucuto, 60 which is on the other fide of the Rome of the Andre, in a cold and barren Countrie, doe fland the Cress of Mendoga, and of Saint lobusofthe Frontier; for Don Garcia of Mendoga peopled them both. The Citie of Menders is of the fame height with Saint Lamer, about tortie leagues from it of a difficult way, for the inow that is in the Andre. The Citie of Saint lobe of the Frontier fands to the South of the Citie of Mendesa

In the Bishopricke of the Imperial are leven Spanife Townes, which are the Citie of the and the Summer are at such times as in Spaine; it is a healthfull Countrie and of a good temper. Conception in feuen and thirtie degrees of height, feuentie leagues to the South of the Citie of and the first that entred in it, were the Captaines Diego de Rojus , Philip Gutierres , and Nicolas Saint lames, neere to the Sea, Peter Valdinia inhabited it in the yeere 1550. The Gouernours arrecident in it; fingeshe Commit (this was these from the yerrs 1977, 1910 1132, two taken away. There are Manulesses of Demission, Interface, and Messonse Ricog. The Port of this Citie fands in a mooke as the finger of art land. 'Age Cities' fine new willage of As Forton the Charles of the Company Don Varies of Mendage peopled in and the Cournous Calagore Norvillagued commanded it to be faciled as for Confined. It hand there are legales from the Configure content of the Configure to the the Manual Course of the Configure to the the Manual Course of the Configure to the Configure to the Course of 10 along the Coatt. It hath one Mounterie of Dominicous, another of Principan Prince. The war-like Indian come to the bounds of this Citie, and the mayne River Bishio by those, and others which doe enter into it, and the River Ninequinten.

Peer of Paldinia pecifical site Critico of the Imperial 3507, which is in nine and thirtie de. The Imperial 1507 which is in nine and thirtie de. The Imperial 1507 which is in nine and thirtie degree from the Consequence toward the Strieghts fider direct leagues from the Sea, where the Cathedrallia servicion with one Mondattie of Pressicion, and the of Mercennia Prints 13 ml in her bounds are more then eightie thousand Industry, with many other that in her bounds are in armes. The River Cauten paffeth neere it , which is nauigable to the Sea, though the Hauen bee not good not fecure. Expraine Paldrye geopled allo the \* Rich Village, fixteene leagues from Imperiall, about the South-eastwarth, and \* Big villa 20 about foure and force from the Conception, neere to the Snowy Rom 4, with one Monafte- res. rie of Franciscaus, another of Mercenaries, in a Countrey cold and barren of Bread and d Cordifera

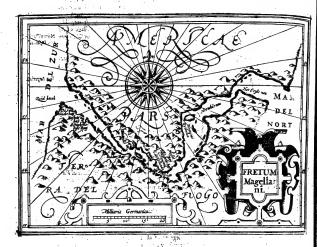
The Citie of Uddans a two leagues off the Sea, and fiftie from the Concepton to the Valdinia, Streight ward : peopled alto by Captaine Ualdinia, with Monafteries of Dominicans, Franeifcans, and Mercenaries, in's plentifull Countrie of Wheat, and Seedes, and in places of good pastures for Cattell, and without Vines. The merchandize comes vp by the River of Valdais, which passeth mere it, and the Fort stands in the mouth of it in fortic degrees of Official hight. The Citie of Office; Don Garia of Mendiga peopled, first league or more from the Goodpreas to the port of the Streight, seem leagues from the Sci. It hath one Monasteric 30 of Dominicans, another of Franciscans, with another of Nunnes, in a cold Countrie, scarce of victuals, but of much gold, and in her bounds two hundred thouland Indians of repartition. The Citie of Castro, which was inhabited by the Licenciate Lope Garcia de Castro, being Go- Castro uernour of the Kingdomes of Pirm, the which is called in the Indian tongue Chilae, which is the last of the inhabited in Chile, in an Hand of those that are in the Lake of Ancud, or Chiles, and the Archipelagus stands in three and fortie degrees of altitude, one and fortie leagues to the South of Oferno, with a Monasterie of Franciscans, with twelve thousand Indians of repartition in her bounds, for it is an Iland of fiftie leagues in length, and from two vntill nine in breadth, which the Sea made with other great ones, tearing the Land vnto the Row of the Andes. It is a mountaynous Countrey, and close, plentifull of Wheate, and 40 of Millet, and Mynes of flying & Gold, on the Strand a thing fewe times, or fel- g Ore bulador.

The Governour Villagram tooke away the name of the Citic which was Canyete, that Don Pormand Ri-Garcia of Mendoca inhabited, and commanded to call it Tucapel, and afterward difinhabited versof this goit. There are in this Government which beginneth in two and twentie degrees, the Port and vernates. River of Copeapo, and to the South of it, the Port of Guafsoin another River, and the River of Coquimbe in two and thirtie degrees ; and past this the Port of the Cigus in the River, and the Port of Quinters at the mouth of the River of Concagua, before the Port of Saint lames, or Valparay [o, and the Port of Topocalma in the River of Maypa: and past the River of Maule the Port of the . Herradura, at the mouth of the River liata, before the Port of the Conception e Or Horis 50 in the great River of Biobio to the North , the Hand of Saint Marie right against the State of shoot. Arance, and the Port of Campete, and the Hand of Mecha more to the South, and the Port of Causen, which is that of the Imperial, and to the South the landing place and the River of Tolten before the Port of Valdinia, and past this the Point of the Galley, and more to the South the great Bay or Port of Oforno in the River de las Canoas , and to the South of it about thirtie leagues to the Lake de les Coronades the broadest River of this Realme, and at the end of this

Realme the Lake of Ancud.

En doe call the Streight of Magellanes, that which is past the River of Place by the South Chap. 24. MEn doe can the Streight of Programmers, that we hundred leagues before it, from two Of the Programmers of t and fortie or three and fortie degrees of altitude, vato two and fiftie and more, for although ces of the 60 men haue fayled through both the Seas divers times, and feene people in them vnto the Streight Streight. it felfe, it hath not beene pacified, nor made inhabiting, but that which the fleete that Diego Flores de Valdes carried to the Streight left in the mouth of the Streight on the North fide, in the yeere 1582, which was called the Citie of Saint Philip, which for being in fo much altitude could

HONDIVS bis Map of the MAGELLAN Streight.



not be preferred for the great cold, and therefore that natigation is difficult and dangerous for the continual tempelis, and great stormes of windes that are at all times.

The Ports, Capes, and Points of the Coast of the one and the other Sea vnto the Streight, although they be many, and some are not pointed in the Cardes of Nauigation, it appeareth not wholly, neither is there any certaine relation of all. And the most knowne of the Coast from Chile vnto the Streight, which runneth from Valdonia about an hundred leagues to the West South-west are, the Cape of Saint Andrew in seuen and fortie degrees, from whence the Coast turneth directly to the South vnto the Streight, by the Cape of Saint Roman in eight and fortie degrees, and neere vnto it the Iland of Saint Catalina, neere to the great Bay which they call B Harrichoked, and within it the Bay of our Lady, and the Hand of Santa Barbara, and more forward the Ports of Hernan Gallego in eight and fortie degrees two third parts, and the Bay of The Kings eighteene leagues from the Port of Hernan Gallego, and the Bay of Saint lobs in hitie do fi grees one third part, the Cape of Saint Francisco in one and fiftie, whereby some Channels doe enter into the Land, and the Iland de la Campana, or of the Bell, eleven leagues from Saint Franes: also with some Channels which have not beene navigated within the Land, and the Bay of Saint Lazarse in two and fiftie degrees, with Channels on the fides, which enter very broad and long to the one and the other parts, which have not beene navigated, and a great Sea of le lands which alwayes was faid to bee at the South fide neere to the mouth of the Streight, the which Sir Richard Hawkins denyeth; for hee faith, That at this mouth of the Streight on the South fide, he found no more then foure imall Ilands, and one in the middeft like a Sugar loofe, and that at the least they are distant from the mouth of the Streight fixe leagues, and the great Sea is on the one fide, and he holdeth for certaine it is that which they fay is the firme Land of & the South fide of the Streight, and that there is no firme land. The Streight though they have past it from the South to the North fide, by order of the Vice-roy Don Prancifcus of Toledo, Per ter Sarmiemo , and Antonie Pablo Corfo , and it is knowne it stands from 52. to 53. degrees of altitude, where it draweth most to the South, and that in length it hath one hundred and ten

CHAP. I. Herreras description of the Magillane Straits, and the River of Plate. 901

.eagues, or one hundred and fifteene, little more or leffe, and in breadth from one to tenne: it hath never beene nauigated to an end from the South Sea to the North Sea, nor the Pyrats that This is not have past it from the North to the South, are vaderstood to have returned by it. The above faid true: for Caphave past it from the worth to the South, are videntitied to the Straight, and affirmeth that all the caine Water & Sir Richard Hawkins faith, that he failed many dayes by the Straight, and affirmeth that all the others have Countrie on the South fide is no firme Land, but many Hands which reach to 56 degrees; the done it which which he might know, because he sayled to the same 36. degrees through the middest of those howoeuer he Ilands, and feeing he found nothing but Sea, hee followed his course againe through by the cals Prints, yet Straight, and that this cannot be fo tarre, the differences of Seas, which the many entrings doe they have ber-Straight, and that the habiting of them is of people on the North fide, ter descoured these straights which doe passe to those llands to sustaine themselves of fishings, and in their seasons returne to then the Straights their Countries; and that he comprehended this of many things especially of not having seene ad. any feated inhabitating, but some Cabbins which the Indians doe make for a time. The same said Sir Prancis Drate, that it hapned him when he passed the Straight, the yeare 1 579. who after his comming out into the South Sea, he ran along with temperts compating this Sea, vnto the mouth of the North Sea, and by the fame way he had runne, he made fure his nauigation to the

The parts most famous of the Straight at the entring of the South are the Cape Desseado, or Defired, in 53. degrees, and the Channell of all Saints, two and twentie leagues from the mouth. very broad, and large, and pattit the port of the Treasim, and afterward another great large Channell which runneth to the North-west, and Rowlands Bell, a great Rocke in the middest at the beginning of a Channell. They gaue it this name of one of Magellanes fellowes called Rowland. who went to reacknowledge it, which was a Gumner: the point of possession which is foure leagues from the Cape of Virgenes, at the entring of the North Sea in 52. degrees and a halfe of leagues from the Cape of 1 1500 and Antonie Pable Corfe by order which they had to reknow- "Or VineTwigi ledge the Straight, for it had beene commanded long before for to fee if it were amore eafie nauigation to the South Sea, then that of Panama . they viewed the two narrow places, that at the entrie of the North, and it feemed to Peter Sarmiente that the one was fo narrow , that with Artillerie it might be kept, and so much he persweded it, that although the Duke of Alna Ocordinanes. affirmed it was impossible, the Armie which James Flower carried vastruitfully was lent about it. and in the end was knownethat that naugation is dangerous, and the flowing of two Seas which come to meete in the middeft of the Straight, doe withdraw themselves with such furie, ebbing in some places more then fixtie fathoms, that when the Shippes did carry nothing but Cables to preserve themselves from looking that which they had sayled, they would goe full

In foure hundred leagues, there is of Coast from the mouth of the Straight, vnto the River of Plate, which runneth altogether North-east and South-west, there is the River of Saint Ilefon su ruse, which manuscript the Virgense, the a Galletian Ruor, and the Bay of Saint Lones, \*nifp. in Galletine Ruor is a compared to the Ruor of Santia Craz, in 20. degrees, and at the mouth an Iland called go. of the Lyons, and the Port of Saint Intimin 49:degrees, and the River of Iohn Serrana to the South 40 of the Hands of Ducker, in 47, degrees, the River of Cananor in 45, degrees, the Cape of Saint Dominicke, before the Cape of three Points, and the Land de les Humes or of the Smoakes, in 38.degrees, the Point of Santa Hellem, and of Saint Apallonia, in 37.degrees before the White

Cape, at the entrie of the River of Plate on the South fide.

Ohn Dias de Solie discouered the River of Plate 1515, and Sebastian Gaboe an English-man, going ces of the Riwith an Armie by order of the Emperour, in purluit of the Fleete which Frier Garcia de Lo-uer of Plate & ay a Commander, had carried to the Hands of the Malness, and conceiuing hee could not ouer of Brafile. take them, he thought good to buse himselfe in something that might be profitable; and entred Schaffing Gabethe yeare 29. discovering the River of Plate, where he was almost three yeares; and being not the River of 50 feconded, with relation of that which he had found, returned to Castile, having gone many Solis, which is leagues vp the River, he found Plate or Silveramong the Indians of those Countries, for in the called of the warres which these Indians had with those of the Kingdomes of Pirm they tooke it, and from Plate He was warres which these Indians had with those of the Kingdomes of Time they occur to the Provinces by breeding.

These Provinces by breeding. nence it is called the King.

see joyned with those of Brafil: by the line of the markes they have no determined bounds, but bornes Tener by the Coast of the Sea that falleth to the North, and entrance of the River of Plate, of the which tien, but spenthe Countrie hath taken the name, and the mouth of this River may Rand fixteene hundred dingmost part leagues from the Bay of Saint Lucar of Barrameda.

igues from the Bay of Saint Lucar of Darrameda.

All these Prounces are very plentifull of Wheate, Wine, and Sugar, and all other seedes and English imploy fruites of Castile doe grow well : they have great Pastures for all forts of Cartle, which have ments. 60 multiplied infinitely, especially the Horses, and though they have beene many yeares without See the former thinking there were any Minesof Gold, or of Silver, they have already found a showe of them, Booke. and of Copper, and Iron, and one of very perfect Amathifts, All these Provinces are of one Gouernment, with title Royall, subordained for nearenesse to the Vice-roy of Pira, with one Bi-Shopricke wherein are three Spanish Townes, and a great multitude of the Countrie men, of big net of Plate.

bodies, and well conditioned. And the Townes are; the Citie of our Lady of the Affumption, the The Affamp: first inhabiting, and the head of this Prounce, it stands in 25 degrees and a halfe of altitude the Captaine lohn of Salazar built it by order of the Gouernour Don Peter Anndoga, The territory thereof was first called Gurambare : it hath Brafil at the right hand two hundred and eightie leagues, and in this compasse it hath the Citie Royall at eightie leagues, which the Indians call Guayra. And on the fide of Pirm, which is East and Well, it hath at foure hundred and eightie Him leagues, the Citie of la Plata, and at two hundred and eightie, the Citie of Santa Cruzde la Sierra or of the Hell, which Nufle of Chanes built. To the South fide which is toward the Straight of Magelane, it hath very great and rich Countries, and this Citie flands three hundred leagues from the mouth of the River of Plate, built neere to the River Paraguage, on the East like 1 with foure hundred Spanife Housholds, and more then three thousand children of those than were bonne to them in the Countrie (which they call Method) in it are refident the Governour, and Officers Royall, and the Cathedrall which is called the Bifbopricke of the Plate, luffre. gan to the Archbishoprick of the Kings, and in her jurisdiction more then 400000. Indians, which

Cirdad real.

Citte Royall was called by another name Omineros, built by Ruidias de Melgareio; it stands eightie leagues from the Affamption North-east, toward the Land of Brafil, neere to the River Parana; it stands in a good soyle of Victuals, and Vines, and much good Copper, and great number of Indians , which also doe much increase. In this River Parana , neere the Citie Fallor Cata- Royall, there is a great fall, that no man dare come neere it by Land within two hundred ract very terri- paces, for the great noyle, and mift of the water, and by the River no Canoe, nor Boatedare come neere by a league; for the furie of the water doth carry it to the fall, which is about two hundred fadomes off a fteep Rock, and it is to narrow, and the water goeth to close, that it feemes

ye may throw ouer it with a dart.

\* Buenos agres is a Towne which in old time was difinhabited neere the place where now it is built againe, in the Province of the Morocotes, in the borders of the River of Plate, in a plentifull foyle, where all things of Castile doe grow very well; the Gouernor Don Peter of Mendaça buile it 15 35, which caufed all that which Gabote forfooke to be discouered. All this Countrie is commonly plaine: for except the Cordilleras or Romes (which are on the Sea coast, and may be twentie leagues toward Brafil, afterwards compassing all the Countrie toward the River Marange and 30 the Rowes of the Kingdomes of Pres, all is plaine, except some small hils.

There are knowne in the Coast of these Provinces from the Land of Brafil, vnto the River of Plate five or fix reasonable Ports; the Port of Saint Vincent, in 33.degrees height, right against Buenabrigo, an Iland where the line of the repartition paffeth; and fix leagues to the South the Riuer Vbay, and the Port, and the Hand de la Cananes in 35. degrees; and forward the River de la Barca, before the Port of Babia or River of Saint Francis, and the Hand of Santta Catalina by another name the Port of Yers, or Port of the Duckes (de Peres) and the Port of Don Rederigo, twen-Hill-Premiers tie leagues to the South from South Caralina, an Hand 29 degrees and more to the South fine rate hispatian, leagues of lofe Hauen, and fifteene the b Inhabited River, and as much the Deepe-Boy from this, and the River Traqueri, in 32 degrees and a halfe, before the Cape of Saint Marie, which is in 35. 40 degrees at the entrie of the River of Plate.

This River is called in the Indian language Paranaguage, and commonly Parana, hath his entrie and mouth in the South Sea, from thirtie fine voto thirtie fix degrees of altitude, between the Capes of Saint Marie, and Cape Blanke, which is from the one to the other about thirtie leagues of mouth, and from thence inward other tenne leagues in breadth, with many Ilands in the middeft, and many very great maine Riuers, which enter into it by the East and West side, vnto the Port of the Kings, which is a great Lake called of the Xarages, little leffe then three hundred leagues from the River of Plate, where enter many Rivers that come from the skirts of the Andes and they may be of those Rivers that proceede in the Provinces of the Charens and Cuzes, which runne toward the North, whereby entreth another maine arme into the faid Lake, which hath guen occasion to thinke that this River doth communicate with the River of Saint 166s of the Amazones; others fay that it commeth from the Lake of the Dorado, which is fifteene iournies from the Lake of the Xarayes, though there be opinions that there is no Darado.

The chance of the Captaine the yeare 1545. a Spaniard being in his bed and his wife by him on the out fide, in the night

there came a Tigre and gaue the man a blow that he killed him, and carried him away, and betweene certaine Caues he did denoure him: in the morning the Captaine Salazar went forth with fiftie Souldiours to feeke the Tigre, and going through a wood, hee went alone by a path, and as foone as hee discoursed the Tigre, hee being slefth fee vpon him, and at the time hee lifted up the pawe for to ftrike him, the Captaine let flee the Shaft out of his Croffebowe, and itrooke him to the heart, and it fell downe dead: an exploit of great courage, 60 heede and dexteritie.

The Captaine Salatar governing in these Provinces by the death of Don Peter Mendoga,in

He Provinces and Countrie of Brasil in the Coast of the North Sea, and Terra firme, is called

Chap.25.

All that which falleth to the East from the line of the repartition, from twentie nine degrees of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, vnto thirtie nine, which are two hundred ces and Counleagues from East to West, and soure hundred and liftie North and South, from two degrees of trie of Brasil. Southerne altitude, by the Cape de Humos or of Smeakes, wnto hue and twenty, by the lland of Ruenabrigo or Good barbour. And from the first inhabiting, vnto the last of Brafil, there are Pinzon borne three hundred and fiftie leagues. Vincent Tanes Pinzon discouered first this Countrie by comman- in the Village dement of the Kings Catholike, and presently after him lames of Lepe, in the yeare 1500, and of Palos difco-10 fix moneths after Poraluarez Cabral, going with a Portugall armie to India, which to avoide veredithe Brafil the Coast of Guinea did put so much to the Sea that he found this Countrie, and called it Santia de Lepe. Cres, becaute on that day he discouered it. All of it is very hot in Winter and Summer, and very rainie, and compafied with Woods and Milts, whicalthfull, and full of venemous Wormes, plentifull in Pastures for Cattle, and not for Wheate, nor Millet; there are in it great thowes of Silver and Gold, but as the Portugals, have no stocke to make any profit of the Mines, they leave

The principall foode of this Countrie is the Cazabi which they make of the Tuca, and the greatest trafficke is Sugar, and Cotten Bumbast, and Brasil Wood, which was at that gaue it the name. There are in all the Prouince nine Gouernments, which are called Captainthips, and 23 in them seuenteene Portugal Townes: init may be about three and thirtie hundred housholds. and great multitude of warlike Indians, which have not fuffered the Portugals to build but on the Coaft, in which are many Rivers, Landings, and many Ports, and very fate, where any Ships may

come in, be they never to bigge. The Colonie of the first Captainship, and the most auncient is Tamaraca, the second Pernam- Inhabitings of buco, fine leagues from Tamaraca to the South, in eight degrees of altitude, and there is a house the Coastol of the Fathers of the Companie of Lefis : the other is, that of all Saints, one hundred leagues Braft, from Pernambuce in thirteene degrees, and there the Gourmour, the Bilhop, and the Auditour generall of all the Coasts are resident, and it bath a Colledge of the Company: the fourth Captain- Many Iestates thip of the Hands is thirtie leagues from the Bry of All Saints, in foureteen degrees & two shird Colledges.

30 parts, it hath a House of the Fathers of the Companie. In this Captainship is tound a Tree where out they take a precious Balme. The Captainship of the Sure-banen is thirtie leagues from the I. Punte fegino. lands in fixteene degrees and a halfe: it hath three Inhabitings, and a House of the Fathers of the Companie. The Captaineship of the Holy-Ghoft fiftie leagues from Puerto feguro , in twentie degrees, where they gasher much Brafil, and there is one house of the Company. The Captainthip of the River of Genero is fixtic leagues from the Haly-Ghoft, in twentie three degrees and one third part, with a house of the Fathers of the Company, and they cut in their intifdiction much Brafil Wood; the River is very faire, with fine and profitable borders. The last Captaineship is Saint Vincent, fixtie leagues from the River of Genero, in foure and twerme degrees, it hath a fortreffe in an Hand for a defence against the Indians and Pirates, and a house of the faid Fathers,

40 which have done great profit in the inhabiting of this Countrie, and convertion of the Indians, and their libertie. The Cattle that are in the le Promite safe many and great breeding of Swine. and Hens, they gather much Amber which the Sea cafted up with Hormes at the foring tides, Ambarand many persons have inriched themselves with it, Then Summer is from September to February, and the Winter from March vnto August; the doges are almost as long as the nights, they increase and diminish onely an houre, in the winter the winders alwaies at South and Southeaff,in Summer North-east and East North-east.

There are in this Coast eight or tenne Pores more principali then the rest, which are the River The principalof Saint Dominicke and de las Unrudes to the North-east of Pernambuce, and Tamaraca, which this Cooft. is an Iland, and as it is faid, the first Plantation, and before the Cape of Saint Aufline, which stands in nine degrees, the River of Saint Francis in ten degrees and a halfe, which is great and 50 mightie : the Bay of All Saints three leagues broad, and thirteene into the Land vato Sarit' Saminer, the River and Port Trenado, where the Ships doe couch that goe this Voyage, and the River of Canaman in chirteene degrees and a valte, the River of obe Beader or of Saint Auftine is foureteen degrees and a halfe; and the River of the Virgenes in fixteene. Porteficine in feventeen degrees: the River of Parayua in twentie degrees, neere to Santh forman: the Bilact of Gos Cabo Frie. nere necre to Saint Seballien , and Gold Cape in three and twentie degrees beyond Saint

Notice of the West, are all the Hands and firme Land comprehended within the marker of the Of the fewhich
Crowne of Cafile and of Lyon, a the Occidentall end of the faid bounds; whole line as is Indian of the faid palleth on the other side the world, through the Citie of Malaca from whence toward well, waich are the East, and New Spaine, is a great Gulle of infinite Hands great and small, and marry pieces of the Lands Phi Goalts, and firme Land, which are disadell into the Ilands of the Spicerie, or of the Malnos, I. lippmas, coult of lands Philipmas, the Coast of China, Hands of the Legund and Lapones, Coast of themew Garnes, the Leguns.

Ilands of Salomon, and of Ladrones or the Theenes: the temper of all these Ilands and Lands in generall is moitt, and temperately hot, plentifull of Victuals, and Beafts, with some Gold, but base no Silver, flore of Wax, and the people of fundry colours, and the ordinary colour like Indian, and iome white among them, and iome cole-blacke.

The Ilands of the Spicerie (which properly are called so, because all the Pepper, Cloues, Sing. mon , Ginger, Nutmegs, and Masticke that is spent in Europe , is brought from them) are ma. ny, though the molt famous of that Gulfeare fine fmall Hands vnder the Equinochiall in one hundred nintie foure degrees from the Meridian of Toledo, included in the morgage which the Emperor Charles the fit made of them to the King of Poringall for three hundred and fiftie thous Of these tee L fand Duckets, which are Terrenate of eight ornine leagues compasse, with a Port called Tales. In Orthete ree i. ac., and other game, and in it raigned Corala, which yeelded himfelte for subject to the King of Castile, when English winges the Shippes that remained of Magelanes fleete found their llands. The Iland of Tadore flands one league from Terrenate to the South, it hath tenne leagues compaffe. The Hand of Mail, or Musier is of foure leagues compasse, and is vnder the Equinoctiall, and Magnin three leagues to the South, of feuen in compaffe, and tenne leagues to the South. Batan or Bagnian is twent tie leagues in compelle. In the lland of Tidore raigned Almanzor, which also gave himselfe for Certaine Tree subsect of the King of Castile, the which, and Carala did write and Iohn Sebastian of the Cana. bearing a kind borne in the Village of Guitarea, in the Province of Guipuzcea brought their Letters; the which departing from Tidore in the yeare 1522 touched in the Hand of Zamatia, and going vp toalmost fortie two degrees toward the Antarticke Pole, he arrived at the Iland of Saint level of 20 the Greene Cape or Cabo Verde, and from thence to Simil with the Shippe called the Vittorie. having spent leven moneths time little lesse in comming from the lland of Tidore. Patien is the fift Iland like the other; Moores inhabited in it, and Gentiles also, which knew not the immortalitie of the foule. And when the Shippe of the fleete of Fryer Garcia of Loay fa came. Re. iameraigned in Tidore of thirteene yeares of age, and againe acknowledged the King of Callile. and also the King of Gilolo called Sultan Abderta meniani, and confirmed it with an oath. Gilolo is an lland under the line foure leagues diffant from thole rehearfed; it is of two hundred leagues compafie, without Spicerie: the Iland of Ambon in three degrees and a halfe to the South, from the Hand of Gilolo without Spicerie. The Hands of Bandan are in foure degrees of Southernealtitule, where the Nutmegge is gathered, and Mace; and the Burro, which is to the Weftof Ambon, and Timor, another Hand to the South-west from Bandan, almost one hundred leagues,

a fortreffe im Terrenate, and other in the Citie of Malaca at the entrie of the Arthipelarus. The Hands Philippinas are a Sea of thirtie or fortie great Hands, befides many other small ones which are together in leffe then two hundred leagues in length North and South, and one hundred in breadth betweene New Spaine, and the Gulfe of Bugala, and they are about seventeene for hundred leagues from the Port of the Nationie in New Spaine, from fix to fifteene or fixteene degrees of Septentrional altitude, of a reasonable temperature; and plentiful of victuals, specially Cinamon and of Rice, and some base Gold in some places, and in some Hands are Cinamon trees, and long long Pepper. The Countriemen are of a good shape, and in some Ilands they are blacke, and those which line in the center of the Countrie are whiter then those that line in the Sea coasts. There are good Ports, and Timber for Shipping, the names of the principalleit Ilands are Mondaw, which is the greatest, and most Southward, of a hundred leagues in length, and three hundred in compatte, a rough Countrie, but plentifull of Millet, Waxe, Rice, Ginger, and some Cinamon, and Mirres of Gold, with good Hauens, and Rodes : the Hand of Good tokens, and Saint lohn leaning to Mundanas, on the East fide; of twenty leagues in length North and South; Bebol, ten leagues more 10 to Mindanes on the North fide, nineteene leagues in length.

without Spicery, but richtof Sandale, Zeinda, fiftie leagues from Timor, to the North-well of forty

leagues compasse, plentiful of Pepper, and the Iland of Celebes, which is very great, & Borney great

ter, neere the straight of Malaca, which is made in the firme Land; & Zamatia, which in old cime they called Taprobana. There be other manie great Hands, and small, which remaine to the South

fide, neere lana Maior & Miner and to the North toward the coaft of Chyna: the Portneals have

The lland of Buglas or of Negros, by reason of those that are in it, is in the middest of that Sea to the West, of forcie leagues in length North and South, and foureteen in breadth, and in her coaft are some Pearles: the Hand of Zubs in the middest of all, of thirtie leagues in length North and South, and in it a Spanish Towne, called the Village of Iefes, on the East fide, with one good Hauen, beides other that are in the Iland, the Captaine Perdinando Magellanes disconered this !land, in the yeare 1520, the King yeelded then himselfe for subject to the Crowne of Castile, and before hediscouered the Hands, which he called de las Velas Latinas, because they failed in In Mater it was their Shippes with fayles of Mats made of Palme tree leaves after the Latine fashion; and from where others. Zubn Magellanes went with the King, to warre against the King of Maran, in a little Hand close 60 to that of Zubu on the South fide, where being too valiant and confident he was flaine; and the Spawiards following their Voyage in demaild of the Hands of the Spicerie, they discovered Quepinds, Pulsan, and Burney, which is a great, rich, and plenefull Hand of Rice, Sugar; Goates, Swme, Cammels : it wants Wheate, Affeajand Sheepe; it hath Ginger, Camphire, Mirabolane,

and other Diugges. Aluaro of Saanedra discouered also the Philippines , and tooke possession of them in the years 1527, for the Crowne of Cafale, which by order of the Marqueffe of the Val- Alamoof Same ler went from the Port of Civillaneio in New Spaine, in demand of the Ilands of the Sprierie, and fellion of the particularly he was in Mindanao : and this digrettion hath not bin out of purpose.

CHAP.I. Ilands of the Spicerie. Tandayala, Masbat, Mindoro, Manila.

Returning to the order of the Phillippines, there followeth the about faid Abino, or Babay thirtie the Crowne of leagues in length North and South, and tenne in breadth, in which are good Mines, and Pearles, Calite, in the in her coult : Tandayala most famous of all, which for being first discouered, is called Phillipine, Yeare 1527. of which all take the name, in memory of the inuincible King Don Philip the fecond, the Pracdent, It hath fortie leagues on the North fide, and of the East North North-east, and South South-

west, and twelue leagues in breadth where most, waste good Hauens and Roades : Marhat 2 meane Hand to the West of Tandaya, of seventeene leagues in length, and fifteene in breadth, with one Hauen : Mindoro of frue and twentie beagues in length North and South, and halfein breadth; there is Pepper in it, and Mines of Gold the Iland of Luzan, called the New Coffte, as great or greater then Mindanao, the most Septentrionall of the Phillipmes, in the which is built Manila, a The Citiest Citie of Spaniards, with title of Famous, where the Governour, Officers of the goods, and cheft Manille Royall, and the Cathedrall are refident; it is a plentifull foyle of Victuals, with many Mines of Gold: the Hauen of this Citie is bad, and for all that there is great trafficke with the Chynas, which bring Porcelane Veilell, Tinfels, coloured filkes, and other Merchandize : Lucon hath in

length two hundred leagues, and it is very narrow. In all these Hands are many Mahometanes, wither they came by the East India, and could ea-20 fily plant their falshood among it those blinde Gentiles. Captaine Magellanes as aboue faid discouered their Ilands, the yeare 1,20. going with an Armie of the Crowne of Caftile, in fearch of the Hands of the Malucoes, and tooke possession of them, and afterward Michael Lopez of Legazai made an end of discouering them, the yeare 1564. with an Armie which hee tooke from hause before.

New Spaces, by order of the Vice-roy, Don Lewis of Velasco: it is judged that those Ilands 11000.llands. doe amount to eleauen thousand great and small. There are pacified about fortie of them, and converted more then a Million of men vnto the Catholike Faith, with fo many expences of the Growne Royall, not having had vntill now any profit from those Countries: for every Religious man of thore that are fent thither, doth coft to fet there one thousand Duckets. Those which hitherto havelaboured in that Vineyard, with most great fruite of the soules, are

30 the Religious Dominicans, Pranciscans, Barefooted, and Austine Fryers, and the Company of lefus; and from these ilands hath beene begun to bridle the Mahometanis, which from the Coast of After went by little and little extending through these, and other Hands, and also to the (bi. Since, the Holmas and lapones, and the Portugals had already loft the flands of the Malacos, if the Spaniards landers have of the Prominces of the Philippines had not holpen and fluctoured them divers times and ma- portueals.

There is already a plainer notice had of the Chymas; by the commerce of the Philippines, and China: fee our their riches and plenty is knowne: it is of the richest and mightiest Kingdomes of the World, former Relaand from Manila may be to the coast of China three hundred leagues, of eight dayes fayling, and tion,

40 the coast of that Countrie goeth running as to the North-east, more then feuen hundred leagues. from twentie one to twenty two degrees of Septentrional latitude, and vpward, and it is known that crosse over the Countrie inward is a Voyage of fine or fixe moneths, to the confines of Tara turis; being a Countrie of great Cities, with many Townes, and the people politicke, and prepared for their defence, but not warlike, and the Coast much inhabited with maine Riuers, and good Hauens : it extends from feuenteene vnto fiftie degrees North and South , and East and West it occupieth two and twentie: the Citie of Pagnin, where the King bath his Court, stands in fortie eight degrees of our Pole, it is diuded in fifteent Prounces, fixe Maritime, and nine Moditerranejand the one are desided from the other with certains Mountaines like the Pirineis, and there are but two passages whereby they doe communicate.

Thomas Perez Ambaffadour of the King of Portugal, was from Cantan to Nanghi four The Proninces Moneths, travelling alwayes to the North : and to the largenesse of this Kingdome is joyned the and Kingdom plentie of the Countrie, which is great; for the which the multitude of the nauigable Ribers of theme. that do water it, are a help, where with it feemes a pleasant Forrest or Girden, and the abundance is doubled by many wayes, for the Kings spare no cost to make the Countrie watered in every place, outling great hile) and making great Valleys plaine; and the heate not wanting in any place, for all the Countrie simple is contained in the bounds of the temperare Zone, nor the moiflore by the clemencie of tracure, and by the industrie of men it is incredibly all multiplied, and all being compelled to bush themselues in Genething, there is not one foote of ground left vn-profitable. In Comma among other notable things they say there are a great number of blinde

men that doelabout in formerhing, every one as he is able, and being forbidden the going out of the Kingdome without literice, the which't never granted, but for a limited time it is necessary that the propagation increasing continued, the number of the people be without end, elpecially that they hold for a certaine, that for flue persons that doe dye, there are seuen bidrate, and the purenelle of the ayre is so much, that they doe not remember, there hath beene any vni-

See Martimes

verfall plague, and with all these good things they have their troubles also, for there are earth. quakes that destroy whole Cities, disinhabit the Countrie, and suppresse the auncient Rivers and raise others, and doe make great Mountaines plaine, with a miserable misfortune of

The yeare 1555, there burst out of the intrailes of the earth such abundance of water, that is ouer-flowed the ipace of fixtie leagues, and deftroyed feuen Cities with their iurifdictions. And this as touching the continent of Chma. There is through all the Coast a multitude of !landathe greater part are vnto vs vnknowne. Not farre from Nanqui, is the Cape of Lampo, the lland of Auesiga, Abarda, Sumbar, Lanqui, and the Iland of Horfes, of the which no particular notice is had. Passing the Citie of Chunches, stands Lannes, and a great number of Ilands are sent about Cantan, and these are the most celebrated, Lantao, Macao, Veniaga, where is the Port of Tamo Lampacao, Sancoan, in all the which the King of China hath Garrifons on Sea and Land except in Lampacao which is not inhabited.

In Macao, by another name Macan, the Portugals have a Towne, and the Chinas knowing the valour of the Portugals, and the fauour they have of the Castillans of the Phillipines , fuffer it with an euill will, but the Portugals feeke to preferue themfelues, for their profitable commerce in China. Sancon is thirtie leagues from Cantan, where fornetimes the Portugali have touched, and no Iland of China is of greater importance then Anian in the mouth of the Gulfe of Canchine, five leagues from the Firme Land, and one hundred and eightie from the Philli-Or Terra firme pines, and it is so bigge, that they affirme it to have thirtie Fortreffes; in it is a fishing 20 for imail Pearles. It is aboundant of Victuals, and of many Fruits : vnder the Government of Cantan, the principall Port of China, and the Countrie men are stole and

I apan is many Hands divided with small armes of the Sea, in three and thirtie Kingdomes whole head is the Citie of Meace, distant variable from China; and they count from the fland of Goto in Iapon to Liampo in China fixtie leagues, which is the neerest. The lapones doe greatly moleft the Chinas, more with piracies, and thefts, then with just war, because lapar being divided in fundry Ilands, and divers Princes, they can make no warre against the China, but with weake forces. They are more warlike and valiant then the Chinas: it is a temperate Countrie, plenti-30 full of Seedes, Cattle and Fowle of Europe, it hath Mines of Iron and Steele : the Countrie men are firong, valuant, and for much labout : those Hands stand in thirtie five degrees of the Pole, little more or leffe, according to the diffance of enery Hand. The Impones doe not understand the Chiwas but by writing, because of the Characters, or Letters being one for them all, and though they fignifie the fame, they have not the fame name, for they are to declare things, and not words, a Characters as

> understand it, that it signifieth 9. but every one doe name it after their owne fashion. By another fide the Lapones doe confine with the Phillippines, from whence there is commerce with them, and a great incouragement is given to the Fathers of the Company, for to labour in the concertion of the people of those Kingdomes, where notable fruite thath beene getten, for to the which these Ilands are much celebrated in the world, and by the comming of the Ambasiadours of the new Christendome to the Pope, and to the King Philip the Jecond, the Prudent: and foas nature placed them in a scituation separated from the rest of the Land, the men of that Region are differing in customes from other people. In the yeare 1592. Nobunanga which caufed himselfe to be called Emperour of Impen, interprised with eightie Vessels, and 20000, men, certaine Provinces tributarie vnto China, and wan it.

the figures of Anthmeticke, that if a 9, be fet, the Prench, the Castillan, and the English man doe

From the lland of Simo, which is among them of Impan the greatest, is extended a row of small flands, called the Leguiss, and doe prolong themselves toward the Coast of China; the two greater, which is every one of fifteene or twentie leagues, neere the Coaft of lahan, are called the greater Leguna, and other two also great, though not so much, which are at the and of the Rowe, they call Legue the leffer : fome are inhabited of well shaper people, white, politicke, well apparel. 50 led, warlike, and of good reason, they abound in Gold more then others of that Sea, and not leffe in Victuals, Fruits, and good Waters. Neere vnto the lefter Lequio flands. Hermo fa,or the beautiful Hand, which hath the fame qualitie, and fay it is as big as Sieilie.

Chap. 27. He Coast of new Guiena beginneth one hundred leagues to the Bast of the Iland of Gilolo, in Of the new Guinea, Uands I little more then one degree altitude, on the other fide of the Equinoctiall, from whence it is of Salamon, and prolonged toward the East three hundred leagues, till it come to fue or fix degrees. It hathbeene doubted vntill now, whether it be an lland or firme Land, because et doth enlarge it felte in fo great a Voyage from being able to loyne with the Countries of the Ilands of Salamon, or Provinwhich hey cal Crs of the Straight of Mingellanes by the South fide; but this doubt is refolled with that which thole do affirme that failed on the South fide of the Straight of Magelanes, that that is not a fontinent, but Hands, and that prefently followeth a spacious Sea, and smong those that decastismest: Sit & Haven, is Sit Richard Hawkins, an English Knight, which was fine and fortic dayes, among the there is a summer of the second

From the Sea the Land of this coult of Guines feemeth good, and the men that have been feene are cole black, and in the coast are many flands with good roads, and ports whereof is no particu- flands and lar notice; for having failed it few times, whose which are found in some cards are Aguada or the watering to the East thirty fine leagues from the first Landwish one degree of Southern altitude; and eighteene forward the port of Saint lames, and the Hand of the Crespos of fixteene leagues long neere the coaft, right against the Port of Saint Modrow, and neere to it the River of Saint long figure the coat, in the Port of Saint kerom, and a final Hand heere the shruft ont Point, a Or could, 40. leagues from S. Anstm, which they call of Good perce, and more forward from it, theb Shelter, bille Puntifeand Enill people, two little Hands, and the Bay of Saint Nicholms, fiftie leagues from Prostafalida, lida, and among other I lands one of white men, and the Mother of God before Good Baye, and of the Burna per Natinitie of our Lady, the last of come which is disconcred, and as to the North from it the Care

mana, an Hand without in the Sea among others which have no name. The Meridionall coaft is not yet known, the first that discovered the new Guine was Aluaro of Samedra being loft with many fromes from his course, returning to new Spain, when in the year 1527 the Marques of the Valley tent him that on that fide he frould feek the llands of the Spicerie. The Hands of Salomon are eight hundred leagues from Pre, & the opinion that is field of their Hands of Sale riches, gaue them this name, the which properly are called of the West, because they fal to the West from the Proninces of Pire, from the place that Almere of Mendoga made discourry of them by order of the Licentiata Lope Garcia de Caftro his Vnckle, Gouernor of the Kingdomes of Pira, in the

20 years 1567, the first that saw the Land of these Hands was a young man, called Treso, in the top of a Ship : they are from feuen degrees of altitude on the other side of the Equinoctiall about 1 500. leagues from the Citie of the Kings, they are many in quantity & greatnes, and eighteen the most famous, some of 300. leagues in compasse, and two of 200 and of 100 and of 50 and thence downward, befides many which are not yet made an end of coaffing, and they fay that they might beacontinent with the coast of the new Guiney, and the Countries to be discoursed toward the West of the Braight: the Countrie of these Hands feemeth of a good temper, and habitable, plentifull of victuals, and Cattell there were found in them fome fruits like those of Caltile, Swine & Hens in great number: the Countrie men tome of a brown colour like Indians, others white & ruddie, and fome cole blacke, which is an assument of continuance with the Countries of the new Guinie. whereby there may fo many differences of people be mingled of those which refort to the Hands of the Spicery.

The greatest and most renowned are Santha Tfabel, from eight to nine degrees of altitude, of more then I co. leagues in length, and eighteene in breadth, and one good port called of the Star : Saint George or Borbi to the South of S. I abel one league and a halfe, of thirty leagues compalle, Saint Marcos or Saint Nicholas of one hundred leagues compatie to the South-east of Saint Habel; Ide Arrentes the Mand of the Shelnes as great as the former to the South of Saint I abel and Saint I erome to the West of 100 leagues compasse; and Guadaleanell to the South-west greater then all : and to the East of Saint If abel, the Hand of Buenauifta, and Saint Dimas , and the Hand of Florida of twenty d Or Good Films. leagues circuit every one; and to the East of it, the Hand of . Romer of 200. leagues compasse, and e Qr Boughes. 40 necre to it Malayta, and f Atreguada of thirty, and the three Maries, certaine little Hands, & the for Francice. Hand of Saint lohn of twelve leagues compafie between the Arreguada and the Hand of S. lames to the South. Malata of 100. leagues circuit, and to the South-east of 1t, the Hand of Saint Christopher as bigge as it : and Saint Anne, and Saint Catherine, two small Hands fall by it: the Name of God a small Iland diffant from the other fiftie leagues, in fewen degrees of altitude, and in the same

Rumbe to the North of Saint Habel, the Shelmes, which they call of & Candeloria. There is in the voiage that is made from Pow to the Hands of Salomon, an Hand called of S. Paul, B. Or Gandh. in fifreen degrees of altitude, 700. leagues from Pow, nineteen degrees, 200. leagues of Land, others which may be those that they called of Salomon, and they say also that they might be others which this little while have beene discovered in the same Rombe of Chite.

The llands of the Theenes are a row of 16. smal Hands together which runne North and South, with the middelt of the coast of Guiney, from twelve degrees of alritude vitto fenenteene Septentrionall or more, not farre from the Phillippines to the East. They are all barren ground, and miferable, without Carcle, or Mercals, fcarce of Victuals, inhabited with poore people, well shapen, naked, and much inclined to steale, essen to the nayles of the Shippes that came there, pen, nacco, since and them of the Thomas, in the years 1 120. when he came to them go-ing in demand of the Spicerie. Their names are, the English, the most North, and aries it Oral Ladoust the M.10, Chemechoa Gregua, Agan, or Pagan, Oramagan, Gugnum, Chareguan, Natan, Sachan, Bo- La Inviere. ta. Uolia. There are among their llands Phillipmes, other eightreene or twenty, called of the The Kner. Kings, Archipelagus, or Hands of the Corral, and the Gardens, another quantity of little Hands, Hands of Corral and Pialogo, Saint Vilan, another little Hand, the Gardens, and the Hand of the Matalores, and that The Gardon. of the Shelues, and of Saint lown, or of Palmes, weere the Malaces, and on the North file of the hor Enill bane Theenes, fine or fix little Hands together, called the h Volcanes, where is store of Cochittilla; and "A Tree so I Malpelo another small Iland, where are "Cinaloes very fine, and on the East fide of the Theories, colled. the two Sifters, two little Hands in ten degrees, and Saint Bartholomen in foureteene and more Two steel.

wherewith en-

to ward

toward new Spaine, the Sheines, Look bow shon goeft, Take away fleep, or See show fleep not; & neure to them the Hand of Martine, and Saint Paul, another small Hand with shelues, and the inhabited the Maria. Item the training and toward new Spaine, Almare of Saanedra was also in the Hand of the Theener, in the yeare 1527 returning from the Hand of Spicerie to new Spaine.

Chap. 28. Of the uprem the fpirituall and Ecclefiafti-Counfell of

"He Catholike King of Castile, and of Lyon continuing in their auncient, and Christian piete. pretently after these new Countries were discourred, and joyned with this faire Monarchie Of the uprem
Counfel of the procured to plant, and fettle the Catholike Religion in them, and temporall pollicie, with 10 mach procures commenced to prainty and writest men of these Kingdomes. For as the discoveries did increase the care and aduce of the witer measor times an appearance and Councellours, that buffing is buffiness, they formed a particular Councell with Prefident and Councellours, that buffing is themicles in no other thing, with more diligence they might refore to that which so much pa and Ecclefication call Royall Pa. tained to the feroice of our Lord God, and government of that Orbe. And because hereafter mention shall be made of the persons which from the beginning have laboured, and served in the lupreame Countel of the Indies, which hath carried to great a waight vinto this prefent hour, first shall be spoken of the spiritual and temporal government, and the rest worth the knowing that the order of that Monarchie may be understood, with all bremitie.

The first thing clear these godly Kings did charge and command the first Discouerer, and from The matterning was to man commanded the other Discouerers and Gouernours of that new World with very fraight orders, was, that they should procure that the people which they carried, with the Chris flian life, and with their good customes, should give such example to the Indians, that they might a be glad to imitate them, and should binde them voto it, entring first according to the Econgelicall Law, the religious men preaching it, that fo rather with the iweetness of it, then with the force and noy se of Armes it should be admitted, and that instice should be administred with sixth equalitie to all men, that it might be much respected & esteemed All went forward, the towns went augmenting in such manner, that with the zeale of the service of God, and good of the men's hath come to fuch a point, that at this day there are found built and effablished in all that Ore of this Crowne posteffed, as before hathbeene feene, fine Archifhoprick, swentie fenen Bifoprick two famous Vinnerfices, where with great learning and doctrine al the Sciences are read more than force bundred Monasteries of religious Dominicks, Franciscans, Augustines, Mercenaries, and the fore commerce aromateries as engineer community, a aneignous, angujumes, reservances, and we Companie of Islus, with some Admosferies of Numees, and Colledges, infinite Hespasi, and France, incurrentle force of beneficed Cures, which are called Dollrines, for to teach those new Converts, and Heremites, and Chappels in the bigh-way erected on pillars, bearing Crucifixes in them, without number. All the which was begun at the charge of the Crowne, and at this day it goeth forward where there is no maintenance for it. In effe &, this Catholike pietie by the clemency of God goeth from good to better, augmenting with to much reverence and honour of God, that in no place of Christendome it is done with more order or care, by the care of the supreme translator had, Councell of the Indee. Of the which is inferred, that the Concession of the Apostolike Roman Set String in the made to the Crowne of Cafile, and of Lion, of the Patronage Ecclesiaficall of that new World was a very great remedie, in the which our Lord God (as Hee which onely is Hee that feeth, and presentethall things to come) did a thing worthy of His greatnesse, (seing Hee hathshewed the 40 experience that if this had beene gouerned otherwise, it had beene impedible to have proceeded with the harmonie, and even concent as it hath, of Religion, Justice, and Government, with so

How the Ec-

much obedience and quietneffe.

How many

Archb:fho>=

ricks, Bifhop.

ricks, Mona-

fteries, and

Schooles of

Doctrine are

in the Indies.

So Humillade.

granflator had.

The Eccletiasticall Patronage is governed in the same manner that in the Kingdome of Graneda, the Kings Cath. like prefenting to the chiefe Bishop onely the Archbishops, and Bishops, that from his holy hand they may receive these Prelacies, and may dispatch their Bulls, procuring alway that they be persons of a religious life, and great learning. All the other Dignities and Bonefices are prouided by the King, and confultation of the supreme Councell of the Indees, and they go not to Rome for Buls : and their reats confift in tuthes and first fruits which arise of the Spans inhabiters. For in the most places of thefe Indies the Countrie men paie not, and where the tithe 10 are wanting, it is supplied out of the goods royall: and touching the tithes and first fruits that are to be paied, many ordinances and rates are made according to the stile of these Kingdomes, that the men of each Colony, it is infl it fould follow her cuftomes. And though the Kings of Callila and of Lyon, are Lords of the tithes by Apoltolike concession, & might take them so himfelfe, supplying where it wanteth with that which in other places doth exceede, he leaueth them to the Prelates & Chusches, promiding of his own goods Royall with the liberality of to Catholik Prine ces, to all the necessities of the poore Churches, giving to every one that is built anew the greatest part of that which is fpent in the building, with a Chaliz, a Bell, and a painted Table.

or Pictures

That the distribution of that which proceedeth of the titles, and of that which is bestower out of the goods Royall in maintenance of the Prelates, Dignities, and Canons of the Cathedrall 62 Churches and Benefices, Cures, and persons that are occupied in the divine Service, and instructing of the Indian, may be fruitfully imploied according to the holy intention of the Kings; the fupreme Counfell hath made good ordinances. First, that all the faid persons be of an approved life and cultomes, & especially those that doe medite in the Dostrines, being first examined touching

CHAF. 1. Ecclefissticall Government and spirituall provisions in and for the Indies. 900

learning, and after in the language of the Indians; for it would little anaile, that the Ditciples should not vinderstand the Mariter : and that these do continually reside : and that no Curate, or Teacher may have two Benefices; and that those which shall from these parts passe to the Indies be more appround, it is commanded that no Priest doe passe without licence of his Prelate and of the King, and that if any be there found without it, prefently they should send him to Spaine,

And that the manner how the Royall Fatronage is gouerned may better be understood, feeing He con interth it appertaineth to this Crowne, because that it hath discovered and acquired that New World; and the governehath also built and endowed, out of the goods Royall, so many Churches, & Monasteries, as by the Apostolike concession, that for no cause the said patronage, nor any part of it, either by custome, or Patronage, to prescription, or other title may be separated from itsit is ordained what care the Vice-roies Coun-

isls, Gouernors, & Rulers, are to have in it, and what penalties the transgressors should incur. First, that no Cathedrall or Parish Church, Monasterie, Hospitall, nor votine Church, should be founded without confent of the King. That when in the Cathedrall Churches there are not foure "Bene- "Or Pentissent ficed men refident, prouided by royall presentation, & canonicall provision of the Prelate, because the other Prebends be voide, or absent for more then eight moneths (though for a lawfull cause.) The Gid Prelate, till fuch time as the King doth prefent, may chuse to the accomplishing of the foure Clarks (befides those that are prouided and resident) of the most sufficient of those that shall offer themselves, without that the faid provision be in Titulo (to be removeable at pleasure) & that they have no feate in the Q ire, not voice in Countell. That no Prelate may make canonicall inthitution, nor give possession of any Prebend, or Benefice, without presentation Royall. & in such a

case that without delay they make the prouision, and command to refort with the fruits. That in all the dignities, & Prebends, the learned be preferred before the vulcarned, and those which have ferued in the Cathedral Churches of Cafile, and have more exercise of the feruice of the Quire, before them that have not ferued in them. That at the least there be prefented for every Cathedrall Church a graduate Lawyer, & a Dinine for the Pulpet, with the obligation that in the feKingdoms the doctoral Canons, & Magistrates haue; & another learned Dinine to read the facred Scripture and another Lawyer or Dinne for the Cannonship of Pennance, according to the facred Counsell of Trent. That all the other Benefices, Cures, and timples, secular, and regulars, and the Ecclesiaticall Offices that shall be voide, or prouided anew. That they may be made with leffe delay, and the an Royall patronage may be preferred, it is commanded that they be made in the forme following.

That any of the about aid Benefices, or Offices being voide, the Prelate shall command to make edicts with a competent tearme, and of those that shall offer themselves having examined them, and being informed of their behaulor, shall name of the best; and the Vice-roy or Gouernor of the Province, that chuse one and remit the election to the Prelate, that he make the provision, Collation on, and Cannonicall inflitution by way of recommendation, and not in a perpetuall title, so that when the King doth make the presentation, and in it shal be expressed that the collation be made in a perpetual citle, the Canonicall inflitution shall be in title, and not in recommendation a and the presented by the King be alwayes preferred before the presented by his Ministers.

That in the repartitions, and Towns of the Indians, and other places where they have no bene- Provision of 40 fice to elect, or means to place one to administer the Sacraments, the Prelates shall procure there the Prebends be one to teach the Doctrine, making an edict, and having informed himselfe of his sufficiency and and Benefices goodnes, he shall lend the nomination to the Ministers Royal, that they do present him one of the two nominated, and if there be but one, that, and in the vertue of such a presentation the Prelate shall make the proussion, giving him the instruction how he is to teach, and commanding him to give notice of the fruits. That in the presentations of all the dignities, offices, and benefices, the best descruing, and that most exercised in the conversion of the Indians, and the administration of the Sacraments shall be prouided; which, & those that best speak the language of the Indians, shall be preferred before the other. That he which shall come or fend to request his Maiestie to prefent him to fome dignitie, office, or benefice, shall appeare before the Ministers of the Protince, and de-50 claring his petition, he shall give information of his kindred, learning, customes & sufficiency, and the Minister diall make another of his office, and with his opinion to send it, and that the pretendant do bring also an approbation from his Prelate; for without these diligences those that come shall not be admitted. That none may obtaine two Benefices, or dignities in one, or in fundry

Belides that which is rehearfed, it is prouided that they doe not permit any Prebendary in the of Medice o the Benefices of the Indians be Cures, and not timples, and that in the new discoueries, and plan- married; and 60 tations that shall be made, there be presently an Hospitall built for the poore, and sicke persons, of the boy of ficknesses that are not contagious, which shall be placed neere the Temple, and for a Cloyster fact of the holy of the same; that for the sicke of contagious diseases, the Hospitall shall be set that no hurtfull winde passing by it doe strike in the other inhabiting, and if it be built on a high place it will builting of an be better. And because the King being informed that goods of the descassed in those parts do not Hospital.

the Prelate, it shall be voide, and they may not make him a Cannonicall institution,

Churches. That the prefented not appearing before the time contained in the prefentation before Chap. 29. Of the Spring all Gouerne-

come fo wholly as they might, nor to foone to the hands of the heyres, by will of the faid Jeces fed, for many causes, whereby the heires received great damage, and the testaments were not per Orders for the formed: for a femedy, it was prouided, that what foeuer Spaniard shall come to any Vallage, of Towns of shole parts, he shall present himselfe before the Chrke of the Countell, where he shall Register the name, and furname of fuch a one, with the place of his aboad or birth, that his death happening, it may be knowne where those that are to be his heires may be found. That the ordinate nary fustice, with the most auncient Ruler, and the Clark of the Counfell shall take charge of the goods of the persons that shall dye, and shall set them in an Inventorie, before a Scrivener and Wit. neffes and the debts that he did owe, and were owing him, and that which is in Gold & Silver. finall Peafle, and other things shall be fold, and put in a Choft of three Locks, whose Keyes the three perfons about aid thall keepe. That the goods be fold in a publike out-cry, with the Teffmony of a Scriuener : that if neede be an Acturney shall be constituted. That the faid Justices do take occompt of all those that have charge of dead mens goods, and recover all that they are be hinde hand without any appeale, and doe put it in the Cheft of the three Keyes. That having any Will of the deceased where he dyeth, and the Heires or Executors, the luftice final not medile any thing, neither take the goods, taking only notice who be the Heires of the faid deceased That the faid Institutes, Rulers, and Scriveners doe fend also to the Contratation-house of Sewill, all that which they shall recover of the goods of the deceased, declaring the name, surname, and about of of every one deceased, with the Copy of the Inventory of his goods, that they may be given to his Herres, by the order that touching the same is given. That when they take accomps of those that haue had goods of men deceased, it shall be sent to the supreme Counsell of the Indies, with a very particular relation, and reason of all. That the suffices doe with care enforme themselves carefully of those which have in possession the goods of men deceased, whether they have done any fraude and prejudice to the goods they have had in possession, & fend to the Counsel notice thereof, that they may give accompt with paiment to the Iultices about faid. That accompt be given energy yeere and the memoriall of the dead that have beene that yeere shall be shewed to the Governor of the Country, & of the goods they had, that they may be fent to Senil, & be given to his heires, and the Testaments be fulfilled, with good accompt and reason that is behoovefull. For in every Counfell, one of the Justices is Judge of the goods of the deceafed, the one fucceeding another, from the yongest to the eldest, by their turne, which doth send his Commissaries through the bounds to take accompt of the houlders, and there be any careleffeheffe, the Iustices are charged therewith in the vilitations which are made of them, and before when there are any Plaintifes.

ried men.

Those Catholike Kings being informed that in the Indies were many married Spaniards, which hued separated from their wives, of the which, besides the offence that was done to our Lord God, there followed agreat inconnenience to the Plantation of those Countries, for that such not litine feated in them, were not continued, neither did they attend to build, plant, breed, nor fowing, nor doing other things, which the good inhabiters are wont to doe, whereby the Townes doe not increase, as is behoofefull, and as they would do if there came inhabitors with their wines & chifdremas true Townsmen; being willing to remedy the abouefaid, commanded that all and every person or persons that should be found to be married, or betrothed in these Kingdomes, should to come vnto them for their wives, and not returne to the Indies without them, or with fufficient proof that they are dead. And the fame order was given for all the Kingdomes, of that new world, and fundry times hath beene reiterated, and commanded to be executed voon grieuous penaltus.

The holy Of-

Proceeding from the yeare 1492, when the discovery of this Orbe was begun, in directing and feeling the spirituall gouernment, as hath beene seene, for greater perfection, and enduring of it; The Catholike King Don Phillip the second, called the Prodont, confidering that among the great benefits that the Indians have received, their illumination to receive the Evangelicall Doctrin was the greatest, which hath extended it selfe, and considering also the singular grace which God for his mercy hath vied with them, in gining them knowledge of our holy Catholike Faith; that it was necessary to have a speciall vigilancy in the conserving of the deuotion, and reputation of the so inhabitors, and Caftillane pacifiers, which with fo many labours procured the augmenting of the Religion, and exalting of the Catholike Faith (as in those parts like faithful & Catholik Christians, and good naturall and true Castillers they have done) & feeing that those which are out of the holy Catholike & Apostolike Rossaw Church, obstinate, and stubborne in their errors, and heresies, do alwayes procure to peruere the faithful Christians, labouring to draw them to their falle opinions, scattering certain damned Books, wherof hath followed great hart to our sacred Religion; and beuing fo certain experience that the best meanes to preuent these euils, confisteth in the separating the communication of heretical persons, punishing their errors, according to the disposition of the facred Canons & laws of these Kingdoms (which by this holy means, by the dinine elemency have beene preserved from this wicked contagion, and is hoped they will be preserved hereafter) to the end that the Orbe doe not receive so much hurt, where the inhabiters of these Kingdomes have given to good example of Christianity, & the Country-born have not percerted themselves with erronious doctrines of the hereticks: It feemed good to his Mare file, with the aduice of the Cardinal D. James of Espinosa, Bushop of Signer ca, Inquisitor generall in these Kingdoms, a man of great

prudence, and of many rare parts and vertues, for the which he hade election of his person, to help him to beare the burden of io many Kingdomes, and Lordinips, and of the Counsels of the holy. and generall Inquisition, and of the supreame Counsell of the Indies (for it behoued to place one Counfell of the holy Office in Mexico; for the Kingdomes of New Spaine, and the reft of the Indies of the North, and another in the Citie of the Kings, for the Kingdomes of Pirm, and the adherents, which are called the Indies of the South) which the authority that the Councels of thefe Kingdomes have, to that as yet they should not meddle with the cases of the Indians, but onely of the Castillares, & other Nations that should be found in the Indies, and so that the appeals should come to the supreame Counsell that is relident in this Court, as it is done in Spaine, and in the accomplithing thereof, in the yeare 1570, the King Don Phillip the fecond, called the Prindent, gaue a generall power to the Towne of Madrid, the 16.0f August, that the Apostolike Inquisitours that

should be named for the present, and for hereafter against the hereticall peruersnesse, & Apostacie : and the Officers and Ministers necessary for this holy Office, which was commanded to be feated in the Cities of Mexico, and of the Kings, should exercise & vie their Offices, and royall warrants, that Don Martin Euriques, and Don Franciscus of Toledo, Viceroyes, and Captains generall in the Kingdomes of New Spaine, and Pirm, and the Counfels, and Inflices, Gouernours, and other persons should give all aidetand fauctur to the holy Offices, and the inquisitors, and Officers were nominated; as in their owne place shall be spoken more at large.

Hale Catholike Kings, most wifely constituted the Supreme Counfell of the Indies, that they Chap. 20. might helpe them to beare to great a hurden, as is already the government of that Orbe, and Of the form the Counfell conflitted in one Profident, and eight or more Counfell conflitted in one Profident, and eight or more Counfell conflitted in one the government of the government of the government of the counfell conflitted in one Profident, and eight or more Counfeller, as necessaries and of the government of the counfell conflitted in one profident and the counfell conflitted in one profit conflitted one Atturner, Secretaries, Clerkes of the Chamber, Relators, and other Officers, and an Office of Ac- ment of the fuone Attentey, over the state of all the goods Royall of those parts. And that proceeding might fell of the inbe according to rule and order, they declared first that the Counsell should meet three hours eue- dies, and of the ry day in the morning, and two in the afternoone, three dayes in the weeke that bee no holy Infliction of dayes, and that they should firme the Warrants that should be delinered for these Kingdoms; but the Countels, that those that were for the duller, should have the feale Royall : and that in those parts it should and Chanceries have supreme jurisdiction, and might make Lawes, and Decroes, to see and examine whatsoetter parts. 20 Statutes, Conflictutions of Prelates, Senates, Chapters, and Consents of the Religious, and of the Vice-royes, Courts, and Counfels; and that in the Indies, and in these Kingdoms, in matter de-

pendant of them it should becobeyed: that the government of the Indies should bee like this of these Kingdomes, and that more in particular the Counsell doe occupie it selfe in the matters of government. That in Susten remitted those of the Conneel Royall shall come to give their voyces Appealen to that of the Indies, and that two voyces thall make a Sentence infinites of 500. 4 Pefos, or vnder. That there be a fecond Supplication in weafe of 10000. Pelos : that they deale not in the reparti- dWhich is 1000 That there be a tecono supplication in a value of receiving well perufed in the Courts according to a pound English, tions of the Indians in those parts, but the Processes well perufed in the Courts according to a taking two Ry Law, called of Malinas (for there it was made) they shall come to the Supreme Counfell: touch- als for one shill. ing order to be held in matters of feruices, that the Counfell doe fee them all ; and in matters of ling. 40 rewards, that which the greatest part doth determine, shall be done, and that in these there be a

Supplication, and that no expedient fuite be feene the third time : and that in the matters they doe resolute with breuitie, that the charges be given to the best deserving, and that they be not giuen to the allied and kinfmen of them of the Counfell ; neither may fuch bee Solicitors, nor Atturneys; in the prouidings of the Offices no price shall be admitted: nor that they of the Counturneys; fell have any Indians of repartition, and they shall assist in their houses, that the Suiters may find them there, when they goe not to Counsel: and that due fettery be kept in all things, and about eWhich as we all that the Council haue a particular care of the Connersion and good Instruction of the Indians, accompt 441: and of the spiritual government; and that of . 600000. Marinediz voward the appeale shall come pound 3 shdto the Counsell; that they may appeale from the Sentences in the fine Cases of naturall death, or lings and one so mayming of a member, or other bodily punithment, publike shame, or racking, and the appeales third penning of a member, or other bodily punithment, publike shame, or racking, and the appeales

shall come to the Countell, with many other laudable orders, which are omitted for breuities fake. That the President being a learned man, shall have a voice in matters of Government, gratuities, He continued and fauouirs, relitations, and accompts, and not in fuits, because he may be the more free for the the order of government of the Counfell; and being valearmed he shall have no voice, but in matters of grace, the suprement of the Counfell; and being valearmed he shall have no voice, but in matters of grace, the suprement of the Counfell; and have a Counfell in his name house, and have a gouernment, and fauour, and that he may affemble the Counfell in his owne house, and have a poate of the businesses, and that the Counsellours doe not accompany with the Suitors. And because it seemed a necessary thing that one Fiscal or Atturney should affift in Counsell, it was commanded he should have the fame stipend that the Counsellours, and that they deliver him the dis-60 Patches of the Office, that he have a care to know how that is accomplished which is prouided for the Indies; that necessary Papers be given him for his Office, that he doe fee the visitations

before Counfell: that he have a book to register all the capitulations that are taken with the King. another wherein he may fet down the Atturneys Pleas : that he delay not the fults: that his demands or those that are against him be admitted, if the Counsel think it good: that he keep a book of that which is concluded for the cafes; that he have a care to know the Officers that doe omie to tend a relation enery yeere to the Counfell. Ffff 3

Ir flicution of the Courts royall of the

Hauing ordained all that which appertaineth to the Counfell, which is the head of this Gouernment, with many other orders which are not rehearfed for breuitie; they proceeded in officring all the Provinces of the Indies, in the matters of inflice, as neede required; and there Catholike Kings defiring the common good of that new world, that their subjects that should possesse it, hauing a zeale to the fernice of our Lord God, good, profit, & eafe of the faid Subjects, & to the Peace and quietnesse of the Towns, as the King is bound vnto God, and to them, for to accomplish with the Office that he hath in earth, hee thought good to command to place the Cours and Royall Chanceries, that (as hath beene faid) are in the Indies, with the Statutes, and orders that hath beene giuen them, that the Ministers may doe their office, and intircebe well administred, and the Townes obtained the benefit pretended.

The Court of Inflice, oc. The Court of

Mexico.

The first Court that was established, was in the Citie of Saint Dominicke in the Bland Hilliams. la, with one Prefiden: a learned man, though now because of the warre he is a Souldiour, Wiehti-\* Or Ordinary the of Captaine Generall, and foure suffices that beare rods, like an \* Alcalde, and deale in cities and criminall matters, in a degree of apeale, and in the inftance in matter of Court, and the fire uernment is onely commended to the President (which now is Iri Don Antonio Offore) and the limits thereof. The fecond Court was established in the Citie of Mexico, in New Spaine: the first President which was Numyo of Guzman, had no authoritie, for he was placed butfor she fon: with the fecond Court, the Bilhop D. Sebaltian Ramirez (for he was fo in the Cource of His pinyola) he had the Gouernment of the Kingdomes, and the supreame authoritie, and hee left that, effablished that which belonged vito it, and vito inflice, as at this prefent it is. The Pres- 20 dent of clis Court is the Vice-roy (which now is the Earle of Momerney) there are eight lethics. which doe in gein civil matters, and in the appeale of the cases of government which the Vice. roy ettablishers. There are three lust ces of criminal cases, which bearerods, and deale in criminal cales, and two Atturnies, one of civill; another of triminal causes, and hee providerh the Rolers charges that are not referred to the King, and the other Officers, and helpes of coft in release, and vacacions in the limits of this Court of Mexico, and in that Countell of new Galicia, The third Court was that of Panama in Terra firmetforehis name was given to it, because it was

wherewith the Kings commanded it should be called: and when the affaires of Pers grew grea-

ter, in the yeare 1542. It was thought good that this Court should be removed to the Citie of

The Kongs, where the Vice-roy (which now is Dor Louis of Velageo) hath at his charge thego-

of the Kings eight luthces, three luftices of Court, and twee Atturneys; in the fame order as in

The Court of Panama. ..

the first place where from the Ilands the Castillanes went to inhabit, and as their common speech Wherefore it was to lay that they went and came from the Firme Land, though other Proninces were found was called Tere in the firme land of that Orbe) this Prouince continued this name, loofing that of Caffilla del Ore. " ya firme.

Court of the uernment of their limits, and that of the Courts of their hures and Queto. There is in this Court Cirie of the

The Court of

The Court of

The Court of

Mexico: and the Vice-roy is resident in the Citie of the Kings, and is the President of this Court, and shall be in the other two, when he is prefent in them; and doth disside all the reparcitions of Indians that are voide in the bounds of them. The fourth Court was established in the Province of the Confines; and feeming it was needlesse it was difficued, and the years 1 570. it was established againe in the Citie of Saint lames, of 4 the Kingdome of Guatemala: init is one President which is the Doctor Creato of Castile: foure Iuftices with rods, and one Attorney. They fit on civill and criminal cales; in appeales, and in the first instance : in matters of Court the President onely hath the Government, and assigneth the Indians, proudeth the Rulerships, and other Offices temporall. The fift Court was established in the Citie of Santia Fe de Bogatu, arelienew. Kingdome of Granada, with one Prefident (which now is the Doctor Francisco de Sande) foure Inflices with rods, and one Actorney, with the same the new King authority that the former. The fixt was established in the Citie of Guadalaura, of the new Kingdome of Gallicia, with one Regent, three chiefe Iuftices, which dispatched a great while withthe new King- out Seale, and the matters increasing, the Seale was given, and a Register, and a President was pladome of Galicia ced, which now is Doctor Sandrage de Kera; and three Inflices with rods, one Accorney, and the Viceroy of New Spain hath the Government. The federath Court, was placed in the Citie of Sail The Court of Francis of Quite, of the Province of Pine, where there was alfo a Regent, chiefe Iustices without Seale, and afterward the Court was established with a President (which now is the Licentist · Miguel de Vuarar) with three luitices with rods, &cone Atturny with the fame faculty of Guadalaiare, the government, & the reft remaining to the Vice-roy of Pirm, as about aid. The eight Court was in the Citie of the Plate, in the Province of the Chareas, with a Regent and chiefe Inflices:after there was placed a Prefident, foure Inflices with rods, Atturney, Seale, and Register, and nowis Precident the Licentiat Cepeda, with refernation of the promiding the charges, and the reft to the Sea Soldiour. Vice-roy of Prim. The ninth Court, is that which was elablished againe in the Citie of Panama. The Controf with a President of Sword and Cloake, became of the matters of warre, which is now Don Alons & the Phillipme. de Setomayer, with the title of Captaine Generall of Terra firme : there are three Iustices with roddes, which doe deale in Appeales of civill and criminall cases, and at first instance in matters of Court, and it hath onely the Gouernment. In the Citie of Saint Lawes, of the Prouince of Chile, was placed the tenth Court, and because it seemed needeleste, it was disolned, and a Governour was: provided, which dependent on the Vicesoyof Birn. In the Citie. of the Philippinas, called Manila, was a Court, and it was ulfiblioed, because it beemed needelettle: a few yeares fince it was established againet, with a Captaine. Generall which is Don Peter of Acres which is President, and Source luffices, and one Acturney, with the fame authorseis that the other Courts. For the Catholike Kings of Caffile, wasts the adulte of the Supreme Councell of the Indies, doe alwayes proudle with a fincere and just minde; that which is commented for the preferencion and augmenting of the spirituall and temporall things of thole. parts, without any spare of expendes, or labor and every Court hath according to the wie of their Kingdomes, Secretaries, Relators, Sergeauts, Porters, and the Officers which are necessaries.

The hardingite in Lagreement of this great Monarchier in the hate, o every a minister hash. Chop. 27. The hardisplie and agreement of this great Monarchie yis a uson quarto acceptance finding. Of the things the been given the authoritie that as well by readon of whate, as for the reputation of indine. Of the things the property of the pro hath feemed tobe conneniene, referning to the fupreme Maiefte that which hath brene indged that are provito be necessarie to his authoritie. For to the Vice-roges and Presidence, that they may have to preme Counreward the well-deferuing, and they be more respected, there are Offices affigned which they cell of the Inmay proude, and matters wherein they may gratine, under the prouding of the Perfou Royall die with rod have remayned, with confidention of the furreme Counsell of the linder the offices following.

For the Kingdome of Chilea Gouern our and a learned Luttice; with hacaline to incommend or Kingson ... authorifexhe Indians, another for Tuenman, with the fame facultie : another for the Provinces of The Coulenauthoritiente, matant, another authoritient and another and Frague, with their Gouernour ment which in every one with the same power. In the Provinces or Nicaragua, and the Rich Coaft, one: in und Mirria the lland of Cabe one Gouernour, and Captaine which is relident in the Citie of Saint Christe- ladies. pher of the Autre : there are bendesthe Gouernours of the Hand of Saint John of Porte-rico, Venezuela, Soconusco, Tucatan, Cozumed, and Tabusco, which is all one government with authoritie to commend the Indians. His Maieftie promiderh alto the governments of Hondaras, the Margarite, Florida , new Bifquie, Dorado, those of the new Realme of Lion, and that of Pacamoras, Tonale (ango, which are for terme of life, and thefame in the Proninces of Choco; Quixos, the Conamon, Hands of Salomon, Sandia Cruz of the Hill, and the last is that of the new Andalufia. Likewale there are prouided by his Marethe the Rulerships following. The Cuzco, the Citie ThoRulerships

30 of the Plate, and the feate of the mynes of Poses, and the pronince of Chicuito, the Ander of Curco, the citie of Truvilla, Arrequipa, Saint lames of Guayaquil, Guamanga, the citie of the Peace, flie doth pro-Chiquialio, Saint John of the Frontier, Lion of Guanuco, Old Hauen, Zamora, the inhabiting of the uide, mynes of the Zacatecas in new Galista, Cuenca, Loxa, Tunja, the citie of Mexico, the citie of the -Kings, the province of Nicoya. Chiefe Inflicelhips, are thost of the village of Saint Saniour of the prouince of Gnatemain, the inward parc of Hift anialis, Nombre de Dios, the village of Chulutera, prounce of the Chiana, Zapotlican, the village of Nata, Santia Marie of the victorie in Tabafca. of God. And the chiefe Bayliwickes are, in the citie of Sains Dominicke in Mexico, in Guadalajara, Saint lame: of Guatemala, Panama, holy Faith of Bogota, Saint Francis of Quito, the citie of the Kings, the Plata, In the Cities recited in every one is a chiefe Bayliefe, which hath a voice in Councell 40 as a R. ler, and Deputies named, for the vicof his Office, and in every Court is another chiefe

Bay liefe with facultie to name other two Deputies. For the government of the goods Royall are provided by his Maieflie; with the opinion of the fupreme Councell of the Indies, many Officers, Factors, Treasurers, Tellers, and Ouer-feers, which all doe give affurance in Caffile and in the Indies, of good and faithfull administration : and because this new Commonwealth doth augment so much; it seemed behoofefull to the service of God, and of the King, to ennoble and authorize it more, with placing two Vice-royes, one in New Spaine, another in the Kingdomes of Pira, that in the Kings name they should governe and provide the things belonging to the feruice of God, and of the King, and to the convertion and infitraction of the Indians, fultayning, continuing, inhabiting, and ennobling of the faid Kingdomes, which experience hath thewell charit hath beene convenient : to the which Vice-royes anitractions are given very particular of that which is recited, and that they may have in prote-Stion the holy office of the Laquistion, and with their strong arme to defend and protect it, that this conformitie as a fast knot, may be the pure and true preservation of the spirituall and temporall Estate, which is the best and truest estate, and most according to the Evangelical estate.

The Vice-royes are commanded also, and likewise the Judges, not to have houses proper, nor That whichis to trafficke, nor contract, nor be ferued of the Indians, neither have any "Grangeries, nor meddle forbidden the in Armies, nor Discoueries; that they receive no guifts nor presents of any person; nor borrow Vice roges, in Armies, nor Discoueries; that they receive no guites nor pretents of any period; and sudges, mony, nor any thing to eate; nor pleade, nor receive arbitrements. That no Lawyer may plead "Whereherds where his father, father in law, brother in law, coufin, or fonne is Judge. That no Vice-roy, of Cattellare 60 President, Iulice, Judge of the criminall Cases, Solicitor, nor their children may marry in the In- bred. dies. That no Gouernours, Rulers, nor their Deputies , may buy Lands , nor build Houses , nor trafficke in their iurisdiction. That they may not farme the Bayliwickes, nor Iaylorships, nor

other offices. That no Gouernour, Ruler, nor chiefe Bayliefe, during the time of his office, may

marry in the bounds of his jurisdiction. That no Judge be prouided for a Ruler, neithershall the

faid ludges, or Bayliefs, baue any charge in which they are to make any abtence from their caees: neither shall any office of justice be given to the sonnes, sonne in law, brothers in law, no fathers in law of Presidents, Iustices, nor Solicitors, nor to the Officers of the Courts, and of the goods Royal, neither to servants nor allied of theirs: and the same is commanded the Vice-roye; goods Anyas, according to the about faid Minusters, doe accept warrant for recoveries nor other things. nor ferue themselves of the Indians without paying them. That no Advocate, Scrivener nor Relator, doe dwell in the house of Judge, nor Bayliefe, nor the Suiters serve the Judges. That the ludges of Panema, doesnot accompanie themselues with the Dealers, nor give leave to their wings to accompanie them. And that no luftices of all the Courts, shall have much communication with the Suiters, Aduocates, nor Atturneys: neither in body of a Court to goe to Marriages, Fuwith the succes, the except it be a very weighty matter: neither wifite any Neighbour for any caufe. That they doe not meddle in matters of the Commonwealth, nor any luffice, nor other minister of the Court, may have two offices in it. And besides these many other Ordinances, and good Lawes, which are all concerning administration of inflice.

Chap. 32, Wherein bee continueth the matter of the good gotterament of the Indies.

No because these Catholike Kings have left nothing which most wifely they have not pro-A mided for according to their dutie, the first thing they command the Vice-royes; endall the Ministers in generall and particular is, the good viage of the Indians, and their preference, and the accomplishing of the Orders which are made as touching this; for to punish the Offenders the accomplishing or the Grows who as cannot be Caffillas policie, and can complaine, and grant grour; and as the Judeou doe learne the Caffillas policie, and can complaine, and grant groups and grant groups and grant groups and grant groups and grant groups. know in what things they receive wrong, for their greater cale it is provided, that they give no place that the ordinarie writings be made in the fuites betweene, or with the Indiany, mether make any delayes, as it is wont to happen, by the malice of some Adoocates, and Attorneys, but mane any delayer, and the manned, keeping their vies and customes, not bring manifelly in-Interpreters, iuft, and that by all meanes possible, they doe prouide the good and shore dispatch of them. And having notice that in the interpretation of the Indian; languages, there were some fraudes; forto present all, it was ordayned, that every interpretation be made by two Interpreters, which shall not confer both together about that which is controuerted by the futies and that before they be received to the vie of the office, they shall take their oath to administer it faithfully, and that they receive no guifts of the Indians fuirers, nor of others. That they doe affift at the Agree. 10 ments, Courts, and visitations of the Prifons. That in their housesthey heare not the Indiana but to carry them to the Court. That the Interpreters be not Solicitoss, not Atturneys of the Indians. That they aske them nothing. And for their greater good, it is prouded, that the Atturney of the supreme Councell of the Indies, bee Protector of the Indiens, and defend them in their fuites, and aske in the Councell all the necessarie things for his instruction, preservation, and politike life : and now there are appointed Protectors in the Kingdomes of Pinn, and Nim Spaine, with new orders for their better vizge.

It is also commanded, to fee up Schooles of the Caffilians tongue, that the Indian may learne it, and may doe it from their childhood; and that so vagabond Spaniard doe dwell or remaying in the Townes of the Indians, nor among them, but that the Vice-royes and the Courts, doe put & learne the Spe- all diligence in driving fuch out of the Land, thipping them for Ceffule: and the "Countrie borne afterongue.

So of the Ca
So of th Ss. of the Ca-fillener, and the Courts, Gouernours, and Rulers, and other what focuer Ruffices, is ordivined, and particular care is had they doe accomplish it, that they doe prouide how the offences that were done to God may cease, in the Indiana marrying whiles they are children, without having respect of age: the Caziques marrying with more then one woman, though he be an Infidell: in hindering that when some Cazique did die they should kill another to bee buried with him , and other like abominuble vies. That it be permitted to the Indians that they may dispose of themselves what they lift, as free men, and exempted from all manner labour, though it shall bee procured that they doe labour and not be idle, and may have libertie to difpose of their goods, the Lands being set to fale by out-cry thirty dayes, and the moueable nine, the luftice being prefent. That the Lands remayning of any Indian deceasing without a Will, shall remayne in the Townes where they dwele. That they make the Markets freely, and fell in them their merchandize. That their good vies and ancient customes be approued. That they may fend to these Kingdomes Indian Attur-Or accounts neys for three yeeres. That the 'Refidencies be published in the Indian Townes, to fee if any will demand inflice. That in enery Towne of the Indians there bee an Hospitall with the things

or luftices, That they be

In this matter of the Indian flaues, there were in the beginning of the Discoueries divers opinions, and orders, governing them selves as the time required and the state of the things : but after the Bishop Don Sebastian Ramirez came for Preident of New Spaine, this vie was absolutely 60 abolished, not with standing the ancient one which the Indians had to make themselves slaves one to another : neither might they buy of them , nor receive them , neither that any person may bring to these Kingdomes any Indian in title of a slave, though he be taken in Lawfull warre : and for this are so straight orders given that they are effectually kept, and so in no place of the Indies

are Indian flaves, though they be out of the bounds of Castile and Lion. And to cichew this inconvenience the more, the bringing Indians to thele parts for whatfoeuer title it bee, is

And the quietnesse for the Commonwealth being about all very necessarie, ficultie is given to About viquiet the Vice-royes, Prefidents, Gouernours, and other Inflices, that they may drive away, and ba- persons. nish from the Indies all vinquiet persons, and fend them to their Kingdonies, Judging it fo to bee convenient for the quietnetie of thole, but that it bee not for hatrad or patient it nor for an

And that it may be some bridle to the Superiors, they are commanded, that they himberlind man the writing to the King, to his Councell, and to other persons, what they will'! heither of pen, nor take any papers, or letters, vnder great penalties, and that they permit to paffe and repaile through the Council them that will, prouiding wayes and beidges in the places where they are wanting.

As touching the matters of Warre, it is also prouided with great deliberation, for the Vatel Maners of roves greater authoritie, facultie is given them to haue a Guard on foot, and on Horfe backe to warre. make a casting place for Ordnance and Bullets, and a building for munitions, to leuv men, aime thips, and make fortifications, and prouide all the reflectionnent for the defence of those Kingdomes, and how the excelles of the Souldiers may be eschewed, as well by Land as by Sea; and to them that goe in the fleeres, committing the punishing of them to whom it belongeth, for to

excule competencies of jurisdiction. It hath clready beene faid how all the Government of this Orbe, depends of the furreme and The house of Royall Councell of the Indies, that are neere the Perfor Royall But as it is necessarie that the exe- contrations cutions of those parts have correspondence in these and here also there be they that may brounde of Sund. in effecting that is behoofefull for the matters there : it was necessarie to place in Sinil, where all the trafficke of the Indies doth come, a house Royall of contrataction of it, that medich not but in the dispatching of those businesses, and dependants of them , without any person nor Instice doe intermeddle in any thing belonging to the Indian affaires : and it is in substante, a Tribunal of great authoritie, in the which is a President, which now is Don Bernardino Delgaditto of Anellaneda, a Teller, a Tresturer, one Factor, timee learnet hitiges , one Solkiror, one Relator , one

30 Sergeant, Scriueners, Porter, Isylor, and other Officers. In the llaids of Tenerife and Palma, are placed two learned ludges, called Officers Royall, or Judges of the Registers . to cause Orders to be kept that are ginen for the lading and Registers of those Blands, and Nauigation of that voy age. The house of the Contrataction hath her instruction and ordinances, how her furiful tion is to be governed and exercised, and the learned sudges have it also for their vie and exercise, keeping in the leeing of the plea, betweene parties, the order that is held in the Court's of Valladaid, and Granada: and because the particular care of the officers of this House, is the disparch of the Fleetes and Armies, that they may depart in due times, they employ themselves in it with great diligence, and in receiving them that come, and feeting in fafeguard the Gold, Silver, Tewels, and other things that doe come, with a diffinction of the waight and carracts, charging themselnes

40 with all, that there may be more account and reason, and for to make the proussons of the Fleetes and Armies. There are fo good orders given, that neither the Ministers doe exceed, nor the Subiects receive wrong, for all passeth very conformable to the intention of these Godly and Catholike Kings, by meanes of the great diligence of the fupreme Councell of the Indies.

And because the businesses of the Indies have increased so much', that the supreme Councel Instruction of could not dispatch them with the brentie convenient to the good government of that Orbe, and the benefit of the Suiters, with the aduice of the Prefident and supreme Councell; the King Don of Housbold Philip the third our Lord, in imitation of his Catholike and Godly Predecessors, for the greater good of his subjects, hath instituted a Prime Connecll, where all the businesses of spiritual and temporall warrants, favours and rewards may bee conferred and dispatched : and besides this, there

10 are two Halls inflituted, where on dayes appointed they may intreat of matters of Warre, with the Prefident and three Counfellors of the Indies, and two or three of the Counfell of warre, and other dayes, of the matters of the goods, by the Prefident and Counfellors of Indies, and two of the Counfell of the goods, Atturney, and Secretarie of the Counfell of the Indies, the Prefident naming those that he first thinke best for it.

And as these Catholike Kings doe alwayes looke to the benefit of the people of that Orbe, That the sailer confidering that the propagation of the holy Gospell in no part of it could goe more prosperously shall not bee by any other hands then his, nor bee attended for his prefernation, and to have the Conquerous alienated. and Inhabiters of those parts more fatisfied, feeing all were his Subjects, and borne in these Kingdomes, declared by their Royall warrants, dated the yeere 1 420. in Valladolid, and in the yeere

60 1523. in Pamplona, that their Maiesties , nor any of their Heires , in no time shall alienate from the Crowne Royall of Caffile and Lion, the Hands and Prouinces of the Indies, Towne, or any part of them, and so they promised it and gaue their Royall word.

The Presidents, Counsellors, Secretaries, and Atturneys, which unto this present day bane ferned, and doe ferne in the Supreme Councell of the Indies, from their first Discouerie.

PRESIDENTS.

I Obu Rodriguez of Fonsecs, brother to the Lord of Coca and Alacjos, Archbishop of Refane, and Buhop of Burges, being Deane of Simil, governed that which appertayned to the dispatching of the Fleets and Armies of the /#dies, till the Catholike King Don Fernando V. called him, to the end that in his Court hee might take charge of the Indian affaires, and he did it till the Emperor came to reigne, which commanded that the Doctor Mercurino Gatiwere his great Chancellor, should be Superintendent of all the Councels, and all the dispatches paffed through his hands, and intermedled in all the Atlembles that were made.

Friar Garcia of Loay fa Generall of the Order of Saint Dommicke, the Emperours Confeffor, B.shop of Ofma, which was Archbishop of Singland Cardinall.

Don Garcia Maurique, Earle of Oforno, which being Affiltant of Sinil, did gonerne till the Cardinall came from Rome.

Don Lewis Hurtade of Mendoça, Marques of Mondeier, which after was Prefident of the Royall and supreme Councell of Castile.

The Licensiate Den Franciscus Telle of Sandonal, which having beene of the Councell of the Indies, went for President of the Royall. Chancerie of Granada, and from thence came to governe in the Councell of Indies.

The Licenciate Don Iohn Sarmiento was alfo of the Councell of the Indees, and after went to governe in the Royal Chancerie of Granada. from whence he returned to be Prefident of the Royall and supreme Councell of the Indies.

Lewis Quixada, Lord of Villagarcia, and of the Councell of Warre.

The Licenciate Iohn of Obando, of the fupreme Councell of the holy Inquisition, did prefide in the Councell of the Indies, and of the goods Royall.

The Licenciate Don Ansonio de Padella, of the Royal and supreme Counsell of Castale, pasfed to be Prefident of the Councell of the Orders, and after to the supreme Councell of the

The Licenciate Hernando of Vega and Fonfees, of the supreme Councell of the holy and generall Inquisition, passed to the Councell of the goods Royall, and from it to the Royall and supreme Councell of the Indies.

The Licenciate Don Pedro de Mova of Contreras, the first Inquisitor that went to Mexico for to frate the holy Office in that Citie. Hee was Archbishop of that Citie, and President of the supreme Councell of the Indies.

The Licenciate Paul of Laguna, of the Royall and supreme Councell of Castile, and of the in the Councell of the goods Royall and Tribunals of it, and was after Prefident of the fapreme Councell of the Indes : and in his time began the Royall Councell of the House-hold

COVNSELLORS. TErnands of Vega, Lord of Grajal, which was chiefe Knight of Lion, and Prefident of the Councell of Orders. Licenciate Lenie Zapata, Licenciate Moxica, Doctor S.lames, Doctor Palacies Penbios. Doctor Gençale Mala donade, which was Bishop of the citie Redrige. Matter Lewis Vaca, Bishop of Canarie. Dector Agante. Doctor Mota, Bishop of Badajoz. Doctor Sofa. De Ctor Peter Martyr of Angle- 20 ria, Abbot of lamayea. Mofiner of Lafae, of the Emperours Chamber, and of the Councell of Estate, Licenciate Garcia of Padella, of the habit of Calatrana. Doctor Beltran. Doctor Galindez of Carnajal. Doctor Bernal. Licen. ciate Poter Manuel. Licenciate Redrick of the Court, Licenciate Montoya. Licenciate Mercado. Licenciate Antonie of Aguilera. Licen-ciare Dou Hernando of Salas. Licensiate lobu Thomas. Dockor Villafanye. Licenciate Bottel. 30 be Maldenade: Licenciate Otalora. Licenciate Tames Gafea of Salazar. Licenciate Gambon. Doctor Gemez of Santillana. Licenciate Effadere. Licenciate Den lames of Zunnege. Licene ciate Lopez of Sarria: Licenciate Engo. Do-Ctor Lope of Bayllo. Licenciate Gedeon of Tree iofa, of the habit of Saint lames. Licenciate Villafanne. Doctor Antamie Gonçalez. Licenciate Franciscus Balcazar. Licenciate Medina of Saranz. Licenciate Don Lewis of Mercado, 40 Doctor Peter Gutierrez Flores. Licenciate Peter Dayes of Tudança: Licenciate Benitte Rodriguez Valtodano. Licenciate Austine Almeren of Tolodo, and of the Chamber. D. Ctor De Rederick Zapata, Licenciate P. r Brane of Setomayor, Licenciate Melina of Medrano, of the habit of Saint lames, & of the Chamber, Commultioner of this Historie. Licenciate James of Armenteres. Licenciate Alonfo Perez of Salazar. Licenciate Gonçalo of Aponte, and of the ga Chamber. Licenciate Don John of Ocon, of the habit of Calairana, Licenciate Hernands of Samedra, Licenciate Don Thomas Ximenez Ore tiz. Licenciate Engenius of Salazar. Licenciate Don Franciscou Arias Maldonado. Licenciate Andrew of Ayala. Licenciate Benaueme of Benauides. Licenciate Roocks of Fillagutierre Chumazero.

SECRETARIES. Oban Colona. Michael Perez of Almazan. Gaspar of Gricio. The Knight Lope of Conschilos. Franciscan of the Cobes, chiefe Comholy and generall Inquisition, passed to governe mander of Lom. John of Samano. The Comfo. The Commander lobs of Therra.

ATTYRNEYS or SOLLICITORS. THE Licenciate Franciscui of Vargas. Li-cenciate Prado. Licenciate Marin Ruju of Arreda. Doctor Franciscus Hernandez of

mander Franciscus of Erafo. Antonie of Eras | Liebana. Licenciate lerome of Vilos, Licenciate Gambea. Licenciate Lopez of Sarria, Lipenciate Scipion Antolmez. Licenciate Negron. Doctor Valenquela. Doctor Marem Care. Licenciate Bennet Rodriguez of Valsodano. Licenciate Alonfo Perez of Salazar. Licenciate Roocks of Villagerierre Chimacero.

The Governours, and Vice-royes, which have governed until this time, the Kingdomes of New Spaine, and of Piru.

In New Spaine.

On Fernando Cortes Marques of the Val-ley. Governour, chiefe Lultice, and Captaine generall.

The Licenciate Lewis Pance, of the House of the Duke of Arces, Judge of \* Residencie, with facultie to take the government, and by his death the Licenciate Marens of Aguiler, matu-

20 rall of the Citie of Exis, was subrogated his Deputie, and because of his death succeeded within two moneths; hee substituted his authorities in the Treasurer Alonso of Eftrada, borne in Citie Royall : and the death of Lewis Pance being knowne in Castile, it was prouided that Marcus of Aguilar should gouerne, and in defect of him, Alongo of Estrada, till the first Court came , with order that Name of Guaman , Knight of Guadalajara , Gouernour 30 of Panaco, a Prefident did come : and because it was contienent to take away thole ludges, o-

thers were fent in their places, and for Prefi dent in the government vniverfall of New Spaine, Don Schastian Ramiret, of Fuenleal, Bishop of Saint Dominicke, and of the Conception, late Prefident of the Court of Saint Dominicke, a man of great learning, and that after many dignities died in Castile Bishop of Castes, and 40 then the charge of Captaine generall was giuen anew to the Marques Don Hernando Cor-

ter, that he might governe the matters of warre, with the adule of Don Sobafian Ramirez. The first that had title of Vice-roy and Captaine generall of New Spaine, was Don Antonia of Mendeca, brother of the Marques of Mon-

Don Lewis of Velafes , a Gentleman of the House of the high Conflable of Caffile. Don Gafton of Peralta, Marques of Falces.

Don Martine Euriquez of Almanfa, brother of the Marques of Alcanninas, the Kings Ste-

Don Laurence Xuarez of Mendoça, Earle of Corunga, which deceased being prouided for Pirm, and by his death Don Peter Moya of Contreras, Archbishop of Mexico, governed in the

Den Alnaro Maurique of Zunniga, Marques 60 of Villamannque, brother of the Duke of Bojar. Den Lewis of Velafco, fonne to the aboutlaid Don Lewis of Velafco, which paffed to governe | Don lobn Pacheco, Duke of Efcalonas

the Kingdomes of Pirm, where at this prefent

Don Galbar of Zunnies and Fonfecs Earle of Monterrey, which gouerneth at this day,

In the Kingdomes of Piru.

Dr of the On Franciscus Pigarre, Marques of the examination Charcas, Gouernour, chiefe luffice, and of a ludge or Captaine generall.

The Licericiate Vaca of Cafro, of the habit after their time of Saint Lames, of the tupreme Councell of Ca- is espired, so

Blofco Nunnez Vola, a Gentleman of Anila, was the first that carried the Title of Vice-roy done so has in and Captaine generall of the Kingdomes of that time, and

The Licenciate lames de la Gafca, of the mage lo fuftet. Councell of the holy and general! Inquisition, need be carried the Title of Prefident of the new Court that was fent to the Citie of The King, and of Gouernour generall, with facultie to give the government of Armes to whom hee thought beft. He died Bishop of Signenga, and his Funerall and Trophees are seene in Magdalene Church in Valladelid, and in his absence the goperpment remayned to the Court of the Citie

The second that carried Title of Vice-roy and Captaine generall , was Don Antonio of Mendogs, that governed the Kingdoms of New

Don Andrew Hartalo of Mondoga, Marques

of Campete. Don lames of Zangea and Velafco , Earle of

The Licenciate Love Garcia of Caffre, of the Royall and fupreme Councell of the Indies, caried title of Prefident and Governor general. Don Franciscius of Toledo, brother to the

Earle of Oropefa, Steward to the King.

Don Marin Enriquez, from the charge of New Spains, paffed to governe the Kingdomes of Para.

Den Garcia of Mendoga, Marques of Canyete. Don Lewis of Velafes, from the charge of New Spaine, paffed to the Kingdomes of Perm. where now he is, and at the instant of the impression of this Worke, is prouided for Viceroy and Captaine generall of those Kingdomes,

Printed at Madrid by Inan Flamence. Au. 1601.

Observations gashered out of the First, Second, Third, and Fourth bookes of TO FER HYS A COSTA a learned Tefuite, touching the natural hi Force of the Heavens, Ayre, Water and Earth at the well Indies. Alfo of sheir Beafts, Fifbes, Fowles, Plants, and other remarkable rarities of Nature.

of the faffion and forme of Heanen, at the new-faund World, and of the Ayre and Windes.

Lib.t. cap.s.

Any in Europe demand, of what forme and falhion Heaven is in the Southern parts for that there is no certaintie found in ancient Books, who although the grant there is a Lieuven of this other part of the World, yet come they not on any knowledge of the forme of hereof, although in much they make mention of a goodly great Statute Logies in Hospic garts, which shey call Graspus. Those which of Jacc Layes, have fayed into these parts, have accustomed to write strange

things of this Heauen; that it is very bright, having many goodly Starres : and in effect, things which come fure, are commonly described with encrease. But it seemes contrarie vinto me, holding i for certains, sign in our Region of the North, there is a greater number and higger than indiging that the state of The ignosant impose this crosse to hat the Southerne Pole, for that they see the Naugators take their heigh shareby, as were are accustomed to doe by the Northstarre. But they are deceived, to their high finerty, as wer are accurations to one of our newspanners. Our cuty are continue, and displacing, why wayles done in in this fort, is for that in the South parts after is no fined flarre that markes the Pole, as the Nighth flarre done to our Pole. And therefore they take their height by the flarre at the foote of the Croffle, dishare from the true and fixed Pole Antarticle height by the flarre at the foote of the Croffle, dishare from the true and fixed Pole Antarticle height great, at the North flarre is dishare from the Pole Antarticle three degrees or luttle more And for its more difficult to take the height in those parts, for share the faid flarres the foote of the first more difficult to take the height in those parts, for share the faid flarres the foote of the Croff mult be right, the which chanceth but in one houre of the night; which is in duers Teafons of the yeere in divers hours, and oftentimes it appeareth not in the whole night, fo as it is very difficult to take the height. And therefore the most expert Ellots regard not the Cross, taking the height of the Sunne by the Astrolabe, by which they know in what height they are: wherein commonly the Peringali are more expert, as a Nation that hath more shiftourie in the to Arte of Natigation then any other. There are all on the flares in chele Southerne parts, which in tome fort relemble those of the North. That which they call the Millen way, is larger and more resplendent in the South parts , appearing therein those admirable blacke spots , whereof we have made mention.

canfeth greateft quantitie of waters when it is fartheft off; and con-

Via lettea:

Confidering with my felte oftentimes, what thould caufe the Equinocial to bee fo moift, as reason why the I have faid; to refute the opinion of the Anciente, I finde no other reason, but the great force of Sunne without the Sunrie in those parts , whereby it drawes vinto it a great abundance of vapours from out of the Ocean, which in those parts is very great and spacious: and having drawne vnto it this great abundance of vapours, doth suddenly dissolute them into raine, and it is approved by many tried experiences, that the raine and great flormes from Heaven proceed from the violent heate to of the Sunne: first (as we have faid before) it raines in those Countries, when as the Sunne casts his beames directly wpon the earth, at which time he hath most force : but when the Sunne retires, the heate is moderate, and then there falls no raine : whereby wee may conclude, that the force and heate of the Sunne is the cause of raine in those Countries. Moreover we observe both when it is need in Perm, new Spaine, and in all the burning Zone, that the raine doth vitally fal in the afternoone, reft, La. chep. 7. when as the Sunne beames are in their greatest force, being ftrange to fee it raine in the morning." And therefore Trauellers forefeeing it, begin their iourneys early, that they may end and reft before noone, for they hold that commonly it raines after noone. Such as haue trequented and trainfied those Countries, can sufficiently speake thereof. And there are, that (having made some about there are, that the greatest abundance of raine is, when the Moone is at the full; 60 but to fay the truth, I could never make fusicient proofe thereof , although I have observed it. Moreouer, the dayes, the years, and the moueths, the w the truth hereof , that the violent heave of the Sunne caufeth the raine in the burning Zone: experience teacheth vs the like in artificiall things, as in a Limbecke, wherein they draw waters from herbs and flowers; for the vehe-

mency of the fre forceth and driueth vp an abundance of vapours, which being preffed, and finding no iffue, are converted into liquor and water. The like wee fee in gold and filter, which we refine with quick! filter, the fire being small and flow, we draw out almost nothing of the quickfilter, but if it be quick and violent, it doth greatly emporate the quick-filter, which encountring the head aboue, doth prefently turne into liquer, and begins to drop downe : Even to the violent heate of the Sunne produceth thefe two effects, when it findes matter dif poled, that is, to draw wp the vapours on high, and to distolute them prefently, and turne them into raine, when there up the vapours or sign, and the season of the season of the season of the season of the season is any obtacle to confume them. And although their chings feeme constraint; that one Season is within the burning Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre off should within the burning Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre off should within the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre off should within the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre off should within the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre off should be sufficiently as the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre of should be sufficiently as the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre of should be sufficiently as the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre of should be sufficiently as the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre off should be sufficiently as the summing Zone, being neere, should esuferaine, and without the Zone starre of should be sufficiently as the summing Zone. breed the like effect; fo it is, that all well confidered, there is no contrarictie. A thousand ef-

feels in naturall causes proceed of contrarie things by divers meanes: we drie linnen by the fire, and in the aire, and yet the one heats and the other cooles; Passures are dried and hardened by the Somne and with the Frost; moderate exercise prouokes sleepe, being too violent, it hinderetha if you lay no wood on the fire, it dyeth ; if gon lay on too much, it likewife quencheth; for the onely proportion entercaines and makes it to continue. To well discerne a thing, it must not be too neere the eye, nor too farre off, but in a reasonable distance proportionable; being too farre off from any thing we lofe the fight, and too neere likewife we cannot fee it. If the Sunne beams be weake, they draw up no fogge from the Rivers, if they be violent, having drawne up the vapours, they prefently dissolue and confume them; but if the heat be moderate, it drawes up and 20 preferres it : for this reason the vapours rise not commonly in the night, nor at noone, but in the

morning, when as the Sunne begins to enter into his force. There are a thousand examples of naturall causes vpon this lubicet, which wee see doe often grow from contrarie things: whereby we must not wonder, if the Sunne being neere, engenders raine, and being farre off, works the like effect : but being of a moderate and proportionable distance, causeth none at all. Yet there remaines one doubt, why the neernesse of the Sonne caufeth the raine under the burning Zone, and without when it is farthest off. In my opinion the reason is, that in Winter without the Tropicks, the Sunne hath not force & ficient to continue the vapours which rife from the Land and Sea; for these vapours grow in great abundance in the cold Region of the aire, where they are congealed and thickned by the extremitie of the cold; and after being prefled, they diffolio 30 and turne into water. Therefore in Winter when the Sunne is fartheft off, the dayes thort, and

the nights long, his heat hath (mall force: but when the Sunne approcheth, which is in the Summer time, his force is such as it drawes up the vapoors, and suddenly consumes and disperfeth them; for the heat and the length of the dayes grow through the neernelle of the Sunne-But within the Tropicks vnder the burning Zone, the farre diffance of the Sunne workes the fame effects that the neerneffe doth without the Tropicks ; by reason whereof, it raines no more under the burning Zone when the Sunne is farre off, then without the Tropicks when it is neereft, for that in this approching and retyring, the Sunne remayns alwayes in one diffance whence proceedes this effect of cleerneffe. But when the Sunne is in the period of his force in the burning Zone, and that he cast his beames directly upon the Inhabitants heads, there is neither cle er-40 nefie nor dryneffe, as it feemes there should be, but rather great and strange showers : for that by

this violent heat, he drawes up fuddenly a great abundance of vapours from the Earth and Ocean, which are so thicke, as the winde, not able easily to disperse them, they melt into water, which breedeth the cold raine in fo great abundance; for the excessive heat may soone draw vp many vapours, the which are not fo toone diffolued ; and being gathered together through their great abundance, they melt and dissolve into water. The which wee may easily discerne by this familiar example : roaft a piece of Porke, Mutton, or Veale, if the fire be violent, and the meate neere, wee see the fat melts suddenly and drops away, the reason is, that the violent heat drawes forth the humour and fat from the meat, and being in great abundance cannot diffolue it, and fo it diffils more away : But when the fire is moderate, and the meat in an equall distance, wee fee

50 that it roafts handfomly, and the fat drops not too fiddenly, for that the moderate heat drawes out the moifineffe which it confumes fuddenly. And therefore Cookes make a moderate fire, and lay not their meate too neere nor too farre off, lest it melt away. The like may bee seene in anoother experience in candles of tallow or waxe, if the wike bee great, it melts the tallow or the waxe, for that the heat cannot confume the moultnesse which rifeth, but if the flame bee proportionable, the wax melts nor drops not, for that the flame doth waste it by little and little

But this is not to hinder the exceptions which Nature bath given to this Rule, making some Exceptions to Regions of the burning Zone extremely drie. The which is reported of Ethiopia, and wee have general rules. feene it in a great part of Pern, where all that Land or Coaft , which they call Playnes , wants 60 raine, yea, land waters, except some Vallies where Rivers fall from the Mountaines; the reft is a fandie and barren foile, where you shall hardly finde any Springs, but some deepe Wells. But

with the helpe of God, we will shew the reason why it rayneth not in these Playnes (the which many demand;) for now I onely pretend to shew, that there are many exceptions to naturall Rules, whereby it may happen, that in tome part of the burning Zone it raines not when the

Sunne is neerest, but being farthest off, although winto this day I have neither seene nor heard of it : but if it be fo, we must attribute it to the particular qualitie of the Earth aand alfo, if sometimes the contrarie doth chance, we must have regard that in naturall things there happens many contrarieties and lets, whereby they change and diffolue one another. For example, it may be the Sunne will canfe raine, and that the winder will hinder it; or else cause more abundance then liath beene viuill.

When I paffed to the Indies, I will tell what chanced vato mee: having read what Poets and Philosophers write of the borning Zone, I perswaded my selfe, that comming to the Equino-Stiall, I should not indure the violent heate, but ie fell out otherwife ; for when I paffed, which was when the Sunne was there for Zenith, being effered into Aria, in the moneth of March, I 10 felt to great cold, as I was forced to goe into the Simhe to warme me what could I elfedoe then, but laugh at Ariffoiles Meteors and his philosophie, sceing that in that place, and at that season, when as all should be scortched with heat, according to his rules, I, and all my companions were a cold : In truth there is no Region in the world more pleasant and temperate then under the Equinochiall, although it be not in all parts of an equal temperature, but have great diversities. The burning Zone in fome parts is very temperate, as in Quitto, and on the playnes of Perm; in fome parts very cold, as at Potozi, and in some very hot, as in Ethiopia, Brefil, and the Molucquet. tempers of the This diversitie being knowne and certaine vnto vs, wee must of force seeke out another cause of cold and hear then the Sunne beames, seeing that in one season of the yeere, and in places of one height and diftance from the Pole and Equinoctiall we finde fo great divertitie, that some are in- 20 uironed with heat, fome with cold, and others tempered with a moderate heat.

Confidering this matter generally, I finde two generall causes, which maketh this Region

temperate : the one is that before mentioned, for that this Region is very moist and subject to

vnder the Line raine, and there is no doubt but the raine doth refresh it , for that the water is by nature cold; and within the and although by the force of the fire it be made hot, yet doth it temper this heat proceeding one-

ly from the Sunne beames. The which wee fee by experience in the inner Arabia, the which is burnt with the Sunne, having no showres to temper the violence thereof. The cloudes and milts are the cause that the Sunne offends not so much, and the showres that fall from them . refresh both the Aire and the Earth, and moisten likewise how hot soener it be. They drinke raine water, and it quencheth the thirst, as our men have well tried, having no other to drinke. So as 20 realon and experience doth teach vs, that raine of it felfe doth temper the heat; and having by this meanes shewed, that the burning Zone's much subject vato rame, it appeares that there is Second caufe, matter in it, to temper the violence of the heat: To this I will adde an other reason, which deferues to be knowne, not onely for this matter, but for many others; for although the Sunne be very hot and burning under the Equinoctiall, yet is it not long, fo as the heat of the day being there shorter and of lesse continuance; it causeth not so violent a heate; the which it behooses to specific more particularly. Such as are practifed in the knowledge of the Spheare teach very well, that the more the Zodiake is oblique and traueting our Hemisphere, the more vnequall are the dayes and nights; and contrariwife, where the Spheare is ftraight, and the fignes mount directly, there the dayes and nights are equall. And therefore in all that Region 40 which is betweene the two Tropicks, there is leffe inequalitie then without them, and the more wee approch the Line the leffe inequalitie we finde, the which wee haue tried in those parts. Those of Quitto, for that they are vnder the Line, have not throughout the whole yeere the dayes and nights more short at one season then at an other, but are continually equall. Those of Lima being distant almost twelve degrees, finde some difference betwixt the dayes and the nights, but very little, for that in Decomber and Ianuarie the dayes increase an houre or little leffe. Those of Porozi finde much more difference both in Winter and in Summer, being almost under the Tropicke. But those that line without the Tropicks finde the dayes in Winter shorter and in Summer longer : the more remote they are from the Equinoctiall and come neere the Pole, as wee lee in Germanie and in England, the dayes are longer in Sum- 50 mer then in Italie and in Spaine. It is a thing which the Spheare doch teach , and experience doth plainly shew vs. Wee must adde an other Proposition, which is likewise true and very considerable for all the effects of Nature to understand the persenerance and continuation of the efficient cause to worke and mooue. This presupposed, it any one demand of me, why winder the Equinoctiall Line the heat is not so violent in Summer, as in some other Regions (as in Ande-That there bee loufis in the moneths of July and August ) I will aniwere, that in Andeloufis the dayes are lonother reasons per and the nights shorter; and as the day being hot, inflames and causeth heat; so the nights being cold and moift, give a refreshing. According to the which , at Pers, there is no such great heat, for that the dayes in Summer are not long, nor the nights short; so as the heat of the

ned, which burning Zone

shew, that the day is much tempered by the freshnesse of the night. Being a thing concluded, that the two fore-named properties are common and universall to all the Region of the burning Zone : and yet in the same there are found some places very hot, longst the O. and other exceeding cold : Alio, that the temperature is not there equall in all places, but vnder gean, chep. 11. one climate, one part is hot, another cold, and the third temperate, all at one feafon; wee are

forced to feeke out other reafons, whence this great directive thould proceede in the burning Zone. Discoursing therefore upon this question, I dot finde three apparant and certaine causes. and a fourth more obscure and darke. The apparane and servaine causes bee : The first, is the Ocean : the second, the firmation of the Land and the third, the nature and propertie of many and fundrie windes. Befides there three which I hold for manifest, I believe there is a fourth hidden and leffe apparant, which is the propertie of the fame Land inhabited, and the particular influence of the Heasens. Among the special causes and reasons, I have first placed the Sea , for without doubt, the neernelle thereof doth helpe to remper and coole the heat : for although the Water be falt, yer is it alwayes water, whose nature is cold.

But it wee thall yet fearth more particularly; wee thall not finde in all this Land an equall In temperature of heare, although it bed in equali diffance from the Sea , and in the fame degree, feeing thapin forme parest there is great beine; and in forme very little. Doubtleffe , the cause thereof is, that the one is lower, and therether higher | Which canfeth that the one is hot, and the other colde Le is most icertaine, that the tops of the Mountaines are colder then in the bottome of the Vallice, the which processies; not onely for that the Stittne beames have greater reperculions voon lower places, alchooghe be a great reason; yer there is another, which is, that the Region of the aire is colder when it is farthest from the ground. The cause why the middle Region of the aire is more cold, buth beone shewed before : for that the Region of the aire next to the fierie exhalation, the which (according to Ariffele ) is vpon the Spheare of the aire, repells and thruits backe all thoughd, the which retires it felfe into the middle Region of the aire, by Antiporitafis, as the Philosophers speaker Now, if any one should question with

me in this manner; If it be fa that the sire is hot and moilt , as Arifotle holds, and as we commonly fav; whence then proceedes the rold which is congealed in the middle Region of the aire, feeing it cannot come from the fierie Spheare ! Porif it come from the Water, or the Earth , by wift to this reason the lower Region of the aire should be colder then the middle.

To answere truly what I shinke, I will confess, that this Argument and Objection is so difficult, as I am almost readie to follow the opinion of fuels as reproue the qualities , agreements and difagreements, which a Authorie ginds visto the Elements, laying, they are but imaginations, who for this occasion hold the aire to bee dold by nature. And to this end they vie many arguments and reasons, whereas we will proposed one very familiar and well knowne, leaving the 30 reft apart. In the Canicular dayes we are accultomed to beartiche aire with a fan , and wee hinde

that it dotto refresh ve; so as ahese Authors, affirme, that heave is no private propertie of any other Element, but of fire onely, which is differed and mingled with all things (as the great Do- Dien), ers, de doth teach vs.) But whether it be fo, crotherwife (for I will not contradict Aristotle, but in eathers); that which is most certaine) in the end they signee all, that the middle Region of the aire is colder then the lowest next to the Earth, as experience doth snew vs; seeing that in this middle Region are congealed, Snow, Haile, Frosts, and other signes of extreme cold. The middle Region then which they call the burning Zone, having on the one fide the Sea, and on the other the

Mountaines, we must hold them for sufficient causes to temper and coole the heate.

The temperature of this Region ought chiefly to be attributed to the propertie of the winde Thus she cold that blowes in that Country; the which is pleasane and fresh. The providence of the great God winder bee the Creator of all things hath beene fuch, as he hath ordayned fresh and coole windes in that Region to make the where the Sunne makes his course ( which seemes should be burnt up ) that by their coolenesse burning Zone the excessive heate of the Sunne might be qualified. Wee see in one climate, some Regions and temperate. Cities hotter then others, onely for that they feele leffe winde to refresh them. The like is in Chap.13. other Countries where no winde blowes, the which are all on fire like vato a furnace. If we thall le is dotted by neerly looke into the confideration of the winde, whereof we have spoken, we may refelire many doubts which fome object, and which feeme strange and wonderfull : wherefore the Sunne winds fames at casting his beames upon the burning Zone; and particularly at Pers, and that more violently times near then in Spaine in the Canicular dayes, yearhey defend the heat with a light covering, fo as with Balfore and Orthen in Spage in the Cantoniar payer, yes they determ the heat with a fight courting, in as with "mis will a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting of mats or itraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spage was "mis will be a flender courting the mis will be a fl

der a roote of wood, or a vault of stone. Moreouer, why are not the nights in Summer at Perm mens b as hot and troublesome as in Spaine? Wherefore on the highest cops of Mountaines, even amongst and sude the heapes of inowe, you hall formetimes facle great and insupportable heat ? Wherefore in all kinden, Lathe Prounce of Coles, when yee come into the hade, now little focuer, you feele cold i Bue febier oblem the Promince of Color, when yee come into the hade, now little localer, you receive the at Garthe wind comming into the Sunne beames, you prefently finde the heate excellent. Enery morning the to blow median winde from the Sea doth ceale, and the Sunne begins to east his beames; and for this region they bours from feele the greatest heat in the morning, vntill the returns of the same winder, which otherwise the Sei, and they call the tyde or winde of the Sea, which makes them first to feele cold. Wee home crieffall other twelve 6c this , whileft wee were at the Ilands of Birlanante , where in the mornings weed id sweat for confiant heat, and at noone we felta fresh aire ; for that then, a North Easterly winde which is fresh and

coole, doth commonly blow. Considering with my felfe, the pleasing temperature of many Countries at the Indet, where Temper of the they know not what Winter is , which by his cold doth freeze them , not Summer which Joth Indies

trouble them with hear, but that with a Mat they presente themselves from the interies of all weather, and where they fearce have any neede to change their garments throughout the veere-I say, that often confidering of this, I find that if men at this day would vanquill their passions. and free themselves from the saires of couetousnesse, leaving many truitlesse and permitions deand the remainer from the survey. It is at the fulles very pleatant and happily for that whichous on the rocts fing of the Elifam fields & of the funous Tomps, or that which Pimperports or frigure of his Atlantic lland; mentiould finde in the Elifam, if with a generous fpirit they would choose rather to command their filter and their defires, then to remayine to it flaues as they are.

Causes of babitablevesse swixe she Tropicks, Vulcans, Winder LIRY

ces properties,

rap.z. \* We haue ab. brenisted and off a great part that the opinitableneffe beswixt the Tropicks is falle: for the daily raines when neereft, the long nights & therein great great Lakes & Riners, beight of Hills, &c. parts not onely habitable, but and on this

fide the Tro-

pat cult out

derstanding the nameall historic of

those parts; for other things refer-

Haung discoursed in the two former Bookes of that which converses the Heauths, and the habitation of the Indies 'in generall, it behoopes we now to treat of the three elements, Aire, and ces properties and sentence and cause in Water, and Land, and their compounds, which be metals, plants and beafts; for, as for the fire, generall dist. I fee no special matter at the Indies which is not in other Regions; whies se forms will dist, that the manner to firike fire in rubbing two ftones one against another, as fome Indian ele, orto boile any thing in gourds, cafting a burning stone into it, se other such like things, are remarkable, to present te- whereof I have written what might bee spoken. But of those which are in the Pulsant and diousnesse cur Mouthes of fire at the Indies, worthy doubtlesse to be observed, I will speake in their order, trestine of the discritte of grounds, whereas they finde thefe fires or Valeans. Therefore to begin with the windes, I fay, that with good reaford, Salomer in the great indgement which God had fronting in with the winder, 1393, start with good reasons, more a to be a seen suggested winder and has the two former given him, offeness much the knowledge of the winder; and their properties being very admit bootes, sales rable; for that some are moift, others die; some yawholkome, others sound; some hot, others and uing handled cold; fome calme and pleafant, others rough and tempefluous; some barren, and others fertile with infinite other differences. There are some windes which blow in certaine Regions, and are Pilgrimage L8. as it were, Lords thereof, not admitting any entrie or communication of their contraries. In thewedwhence fome parts they blow in that fort, as fometimes they are Conquerors, fomtimes conquered; ofmen and beatls ten there are divers and contrarie windes, which doe minne together at one instant, dividing the way betwire them, fomtimes one blowing about of one fort, and another below of an other forts fomtimes they incounter violently one with another, which puts them at Sea in great danger; there are fome windes which helpe to the generation of Creatures, and others that hinder and on of the worlds value opposite. There is a certaine winde, of such a qualitie, as when it blowes in some Countrie. it cauleth it to raine Fleas, and in fo great abundance, as they trouble and darken the sire, and co. 39 uer all the Sea-shoare : and in other places it raines Frogs. These diversities and others which are fufficiently knowne, are commonly attributed to the place by the which thefe winder paffe. For they fav, that from these places they take their qualities to be cold, boe, drie, or meift, fickly or found, and fo of the rest, the which is parely true, and cannot be denyed; for that in a small distance you shall see in one winde many diversities. For example, the Selange or Easterne winde is commonly hot and troublefome in Spann; and in Marrie it is the cooleft and healthfulleft that is, for that it passeth by the Orchards, and that large charapaine which wee fee very fresh. In Carbagew which is not farre from thence, the same winde is troublesome and viewholsome. The first course of Meridionall (which they of the Ocean call South , and those of the Mediterranean Sea , Meze giorno) commonly is raynie and boy flerous, and in the fame Citie whereof I fpeake, it is whole, 40 iome and pleasant. Plane reports that in Africke it raines with a Northerne winde, and that the Southerne winde is cleere. He then that thall well confider what I have fooken of thefe windes. he may conceine, that in a small diffance of Land or Sea, one winds hash many and divers qualiries, yea fometimes quite contrarie; whereby wee may inferre, this hee draweth his propertie from the place where it passeth, the which is in such fort true (although we may not fay infallibly) as it is the onely and principall cause of the discritise of the winder. It is a thing we eafily find there and forcer that in a River contaying fiftie leagues in circuit (I put it thus for an example) that the winder for many life: which blowes of the one part, is hot and moift; and that which blowes on the other, is cold and drie. Notwithstanding this describin is not found in places by which it paffeth, the which makes me rather to fay, that the windes bring these qualities with them, whereby they give vnto them the names of their qualities. For example, we attribute to the Northerne winds otherwile called Cierce, the propertie to be cold and drie, and to diffolue mifes; to the Southerne winde his contrarie, called Lenefebe, we attribute the contrarie qualitie, which is moift and hot, and ingenders milks. But it is needfull to feeke further, to know the true and originall cause of these so trange differences which we fee in the windes. I cannot conceine any other, but that the fime efficient cause which bringeth forth and maketh the winds to grow, doth withell gine them this original qualitie : for in truth, the matter whereon the winds are made, which is no other thing (accombing to Arifotle) but the exhibition of the interior Elements, may well clinie in effect a (accompany) of the district, and the many party group, more limited, more drie, and more most, But yet this is no pertinent reason, seeing that we see in one driggion, where the vapours and exhalations so are of me fort and qualitie, that there nile windes and effects quite contrarie. We must therefore

der co the Authour himfelfe, Occasionally our notestipall clusistate those things also, which are in the Test omitted. \* Paleira sea of the See full fluorence carrie whose for its clusion of the See full fluorence carrie whose for its clusion. us earth whence fire iffueth. Generall winder. Montons. Windes receive their qualities from the

referre the cause to the higher and celestiall Efficient, which must be the Sunne, and to the motion and influence of the Heauens, the which by their contrarie motions, giue and cause diuers influences. But the beginnings of these motions and influences are so obscure and hidden from men, and on the other part, fo mightie and of fo great force, as the holy Prophet Desid in his propheticall Spirit, and the Prophet Ieremie aunthring the greatnesse of the Lord, speake thus, Qui profert ventor de thefauru fait. Hee that drawes the windes out of his Treatures. In truth Pfalme 134. there principles and beginnings are rich and hidden treasures: for the Author of all things holds leaves to. them in his hand, and in his power; and when it pleaseth him, sendeth them forth for the good or chastistement of men, and tends forth such windes as he pleateth : not as that Eolus whom the to Poets doe foolishly feigne to have charge of the windes, keeping them in a Caue like vnto wilde beads. We see not the beginning of these windes, neither doe we know how long they shall con-

tinue, or whither they shall goe. But wee see and know well the discrete effects and operations they have, even as the supreme Truth, the Author of all things bath taught vs , saying , Sprine whi walt first, & vocem cim andis, & nefeis unde vent, ant que vadet.

It is true, that the Northerne winde is not viually cold and cleere there as here. In some parts of Pers., as at Lima, and on the Playnes, they finde the Northerne windes troublefome and vnwhollome, and all along the Coast which runnes about fine hundred leagues, they hold the Southerne windes for healthfull and coole, and (which is more) most cleere and pleasant; yea it nener raines, contrarie to that wee fee in Europe, and of this file the Line. Yet that which chan-20 ceth voon the coaft of Pers is no generall rule, but rather an exception, and a wonder of Nature, the wed the neuer to raine vpon that coaft, and euer to haue one winde, without gluing place to his contra-

rie, whereof we will hereafter speake our minde. It is no generall rule there, that the Northerne me, whether we make there, as the South winde is on this fide; but contrariwife, it winds connines when as the South winde blowes there, as wee fee in all the Sierre or mountaine of Pers. flacey and in Chile, and in the Countrie of Cange, which is on the other fide of the Line, and farre advanced raines ranises into the Sea. And in Potozi likewite, the winde which they call Tomahani (which is our North) if my memorie faile me not, is extremely cold, drie, and unpleafant, as it is here with vs. Yet doth not the Northerne winde difperfe the cloudes viually there, as it doth here : but contrariwife, if I be not deceived, it doth often cause raine. There is no doubt, but the windes doe bor-30 row this great disertitie of contrarie effects, from the places by which they paffe, and the neere Regions where they are bred, as wee fee by daily experience in a thouland places. But speaking

in generall of the qualitie of the windes, we must rather looke to the coasts or parts of the World from whence they proceede, then to observe, whether they be on this side or beyond the Line, as is feemes the Philosopher held opinion. These capitall windes, which be the East and West, have no fuch valuerfall qualities, nor fo common in this Continent, nor in the other, as the two former. The Solumes or Easterne winds, is commonly here troublefome and vnwholfome, and the Westerne or Zephirm, 1s more milde and healthfull. At the Indies, and in all the burning Zone. the Easterne winde which they call Brife , is contratiwise very healthfull and pleasant. Of the West. I cannot speake any thing certaine or generall, for that it blowes not at all, or very seldom West, 1 cames speak any state and the natigation betwixt the two Tropicks, the Easterne winde is rainethbe-

ordinarie. And for that it is one of the admirable workes of Nature, it shall bee good to under-twist the Tro-The wayes at Sea are not as at Land, to returne the same way they passe. It is all one way That the bar-

fland the cause and the beginning thereof.

(faith the Philosopher) from Athens to Thebes, and from Thebes to Athens; but it is not foat ning Zone, the Sea, for wee goe one way and returne by another. The first which discoursed the East and West flerly windes, Indees, laboured much with great difficultie to finde out their courfe, wntill that Experience (the docominual Mittrelle of these fecrets) had taught them, that to faile through the Ocean , is not like the pal- ly blow, and fage in Isabe, through the Mediterranean Sea, where in their returne, they observe the lame Ports without the fage in Italia, through the Mediterranean Sea, where in their returns, they conclude the latter Police Zone the Weather and Capes they had fight of in their paffage, attending full the benefit of the winde, which chan-flerne, and that 30 geth instantly, and when that failes, they have recourie to their Oares; and to the Gallies goe the Easterly and come daily, osafting along the shoare. In some parts of the Ocean, they may not looke for areordinarie any other winde then that which blowes, for that commonly it continues long. To conclude, alwayes there. that which is good to goe by, is not fit to returne with : for in the Sea beyond the Tropicke, and within the burning Zone, the Eafterly windes raine continually, not suffering their contraries. in Decade 1. In the which Region there are two strange things, the one is, that in that Zone (being the great lib. 4. cap. 6. teft of the Fue, into the which the World is disided) the Easterly windes ( which they call Bri- They goe one (as) doe reigne, not fuffering the Westerne or Southerne (which they call lower winds) to have way to the Intheir course at any season of the yeere : The other wonder is , that these Easterly windes neuer dies and return cease to blow, and most commonly in places neerest to the Line ( where it seemes that Calmes 60 should be more frequent, being a part of the World, most subject to the heat of the Sunne, but

it is contrarie, for you shall hardly finde any Calmes there, and the winde is cold and continues longer, which hath beene found true in all the Nauigations of the Indies. This is the reason, why the voyage they make from Spaine to the West Indies is shorter, more case, and more affured then the returne to Spaine.

The Fleetes parting from Simil, have more difficultie to passe the Canaries, for that the guile of Tegues or of Mares, is variable, being beaten with divers windes, but having passed the Canaries, they faile with a Westerne winds vntill they come to the burning Zone, where presently they finde an Easterly winde, and so they faile on with full windes, so as they have scant any need to touch their failes in the whole voyage : for this reason they called this great guife, the gulfe of Dames, for the calmnesse and pleasantnesse thereof. Then following their course, they come to the llands of Guadelupe Dominique, Defired, Marigualante, and the rek, which in that place, be as it were, the Suburbs of the Indies. There the Fleetes separate and duide themselves. whereof fome (which goe to new Spame) take to the right hand towards Hifpaniola; and hauing discourred Cape Saint Anthony, they passe vnto Saint lobn Delna, alwayes vling the same 10 Easterly windes. Those for the mayne Land, take the left hand, discouering the high mountaine of Tayrone, then having touched at Carrbagene, they paffe vnto Nombre de Dies, from whence they goe by Land to Panama, and from thence, by the South Sea to Pers. But when the fleetes returne to Spaine, they make their voyage in this fort : The fleete of Pern discouers Cape Saint Anthony, then they enter into the Hamana, which is a goodly Port in the Iland of Cuba. The fleet of new Spaine doth likewise touch at the Hanana, being parted from Vera Craz, or from the Iland of Saint Iohn Delna, the which is not without difficultie, for that commonly Easterly windes blow there, which is a contrarie winde to goe to the Hanana. These fleetes being joyned together for Spaine, they feeke their height without the Tropicks, where prefently they finde Westerly windes, which serue them vitill they come in view of the Acres, or Terceres, and 20 from thence to Simil. So as their voyage in going, is of a small height, not about twentie degrees from the Line, which is within the Tropicks. But the returne is without the Tropicks, in eight and twentie or thirtie degrees of height at the leaft, for that within the Tropicks, the Easterne windes continually blow, the which are fitteft to goe from Spaine to the West Indies, for that their course is from East to West; and without the Tropicks (which is in three and twentie degrees of height) they finde Westerly windes, the which are the more certaine and ordinarie, the farther you are from the Line, and more fit to returne from the ladies; for that they are windes blowing from the South and West, which serve to runne into the East and North.

The like discourse is of the Nauigation made into the South Sea , going from new Spaine or Pers, to the Philippines or China, and returning from the Philippines or China to new Spaine, the 30 which is easie, for that they faile alwayes from East to West, neere the Line, where they finde the Easterly windes to blow in their Poope. In the yeere 1984, there went a thip from Callon in Lima to the Philippines, which fayled two thousand and seven hundred leagues without fight of Land, and the first it discourred, was the Hand of Laffen, where they tooke Port, having performed their voyage in two moneths, without want of winde or any torment, and their course was almost continually vnder the Line; for that from Lina (which is twelve degrees to the South) he came to Manilla, which is as much to the North. The like good fortune had Aluaro de Mandana, when as he went to discouer the Hands of Selomon, for that he had alwayes a full gale, vntill he came within view of these Ilands, the which must bee distant from that place of Pers, from whence hee parted, about a thousand leagues, having runne their course alwayes in one 40 height to the South. The returne is like wnto the voyage from the Indies vnto Spaine : for those which returns from the Philippines or China to Mexico, to the end they may recouse the western windes, they mount a great height, vntill they come right against the Hands of Lapon, and discouering the Caliphornes, they returne by the couft of new Spaine to the Port of Acapuice, from whence they parted. So as it is proued likewise by this Nauigation, that they faile easily from East to Welt, within the Tropicks for that their Bafferly windes doe raine : but returning from West to East, they must seeke the Westerne windes without the Tropicks, in the height of seuen and twentie degrees. The Portuguis proue the like in their Nauigations to the East Indies, although it be in a contrarie courfe.

Cause of the

Let vs now speake of that which toucheth the Question propounded, what should be the rea- 50 fon why under the burning Zone was faile eafily from East to West, and not contrarie : wherein we must presuppose two certaine grounds. The one is, that the motion of the first Moouer, which they call Dimmall, not onely drawes and mooues with him the celeftiall Spheares, which are inferiour vifto him , as wee fee daily in the Sunne, the Moone , and the Starres ; but also the Elements doe participate of this motion, insomuch as they are not hindered. The Earth is not mooned, by reason of her heavinesse, which makes it immoveable, being farre from this first mozor. The Element of water mooues not likewise with this Diurnall motion, for that it is united to the Earth and make one fpheare, so as the Earth keeps it from all circular motion, But the other two Elements of Fire and Aire, are more subtill and neerer the heavenly Regions, so as they participate of their motion, and are driven about eircularly, as the fame celeftial bodies. As for the Fire, without doubt it hath his fpheare (as Aristotle and other Philosophers have held) but for the Aire (which is no point of our fubiect) it is most certaine that it moones with a motion Diernall, which is from East to Welt, which wee see plainly in Comets that moone from the East vnto the West, mounting, descending, and finally turning in the hemispheare in the

fame fort as the Starres move in the firmament; for otherwise these Comets being in the region and sphere of the ayre, whereas they ingender, appeares consum'd. It should be impossible for them to moue circularly, as they doe, if the element of the aire doth not moue with the fame motion that the first motor doth. For these elements being of a burning substance, by reason they thould be fixt, without mouing circularly, if the fphere where they are did not moue; if it be not as we faine, that fome Angell or intellectual Spirit doth walke with the Comet, guiding it cir-lo colarly. In the yeare 1577, appeared that wonderfull Comet (in forme like vnto a feather) from The Comet

the horizon almost to the middest of heaven, and continued from the first of November, vntill 1577. seene the eight of December: I say from the first of November, for although in Spaine it was noated eight dayer but the ninth of November (according to the testimonie of Writers of that time) yet at Pers, fooner in Pers where I was then, I remember well, we did fee it, and obierue it eight dayes before, and all the time after. Touching the cause of this discritie, some may delate vpon it particularly: I will onely thew, that during those fortie dayes which it continued, wee all observed (both such as were in Spaine, and we that lived then at the Indies) that it moved daily with an vniverfall motion, from Eaft to Weft, as the Moone and other Planets, whereby it appeares that the Sphere of the aire, being its Region, the element it felfe muft of necessitie moue after the same fort. We noted alfo, that besides this vinueriall motion, it had another particular, by which it moved with the planets from West to East, for euery night it turned more Eastward, like vitto the Moone, Sunne, and Planets of Venus. We did also observe a third particular motion, whereby it moved 20 from the Zodiacke towards the North; for after some nights it was found never vote the Septentrionall lignes. And it may be this was the reason why the great Comet was somer feene by

thole that were Southerly, as at Fern, and later discoursed by them of Emple: for by this third motion (as I haue faid) it approached neerer the Northerne Regions. Yet every one may well obferue the differences of this motion, to as we may well perceive, that many and fundry celeftiall bodies, give their impressions to the sphere of the ayre. In like fort it is most certaine, that the avre moues with the circular motion of the heaven, from East to West, which is the first ground before mentioned. The second is no lesse certaine, which is, that the motion of the syre in those 20 parts that are vader the Line, or neere vato it, is very swift and light, the more it approacheth

to the Equinoctiall; but the farther off it is from the Line, approaching neers the Poles, the more flow and heavis this motion is. The reason hereof is manifest, for that the mount of the celeftiall bodies, being the efficient cause of the mouing of the ayre, it must of necessitie be mote quicke and light, where the celeficall bodies have their swiftest motion.

Alon (o Sanches was of opinion that this motion of the ayre was not a winde, but the ayre moned by the Sunne. This is learnedly spoken, yet can wee not deny it to be a winde, seeing The Brize for there are vapours and exhalations of the Sea; and that we sometimes see the Brise, or Easterly motion of the windes thronger, fometimes more weake, and placed in that fort, as fometimes they can hardly air with the carry all their tayles. We must then know (and it is true) that the agre moved, draweth vnto it heavens) is a the vapours it findes, for that the force is great, and findes no refiftance, by reafon whereof the winde. Easterne and Westerne windes are continual, and in a manner alwayes alike, in those parts which 40 are neere the Line, and almost vader all the burning Zone, which is the course the Sun followes

betwixt the two circles of Cancer and Capricorne. Who so would neerely looke into what hath bin spoken, may likewife whiterstand, that going the Zone, is a from the West to the East, in altitude beyond the Tropikes, we shall finde Westerne windes, for that the motion of the Equinoctiall being fo fwift, it is a cause that the ayre moueth wnder it tude me finde according to this motion, which is from the East to West, drawing after it the vapours and alexander exhalations that rife of either fide the Equinoctiall or burning Zone, in countring the course and first winders motion of the Zone, are forced by the repercussion to returne almost to the contrary, whence grow the South-west windes so ordinary in those parts. Euen as we see in the course of waters, the which if they be incountred by others of more force) returne in a manner backe: So it feemes 50 to be like in vapours and exhalations, whereby it growes that the windes doe turne and fepa-

rate themselues from one part to another. These Westerly windes doe commonly raine in a meane altitude, which is from twenty and leuen to thirty and feuen degrees, though they be not fo certaine nor foregular as the Brifes that are in a left altitude. The reason is, for that the South-west winds are no causes of this proper and equal motion of the heaven, as the Brifer are, being neere to the Line. But (as I have faid) they are more ordinary, and often more furious and tempestuous. But passing into a greater altitude, as of fortie degrees, there is as small assurance of Ofthe excepwindes at Sea as at Land; for sometimes the East or North winde blowes, and sometimes the tions to the South, or West: whereby it happeneth their nauigations are more vacertaine, and more foresaid Rules

That which we have spoken of windes, which blow ordinarily within and without the Zone, both at Land must be understood of the maine Sea; and in the great gulphes; for at land it is otherwise, where and at Sea. we finde all forts of windes, by reason of the inequalitie which is betwixt the Mountaines and Chap. 8. the vallies; the great number of Rivers and Lakes, and the divers feituations of Countries, Caufe of the whence the groffe and thick vapours arife, which are moved from the one part or the other, ac winders

cording to the diversitie of their beginnings, which cause these divers windes the motion of the

ayre, caused by the heaten, hatting not power enough to draw and moue them with it. And

this varietie of winder is not onely found at land, but also you the Sea coast, which is under the burning Zone, for that there be forraine or land windes which come from the land, and many which blow from the Sea; the which windes from the Sea, are commonly more wholefome and more pleasant then those of the land, which are contrariwise troublesome and vn wholesome. although it be the difference of the coast that causeth this diversitie : commonly the land windes blow from mid-night to the Sunne rifing, and the Sea windes vntill Sunne fetting. The reason perhaps may be, that the earth, as a groffe fubitance, fumes more when as the Sunne thines not vpon it , euen as greene wood, or fearfe dry, imoakes most when the slame is quenched. But 10 the Sea, which is compounded of more fubtile parts, engenders no fumes, but when it is hot. euen as straw or haie, being moist and in small quantitie, breedes smoake when it is burnt, and when the flame failes, the fume fuddenly cealeth. Whatfoeuer it be, it is certaine that the Land winde blowes by night, and that of the Sea by day. So that even as there are often contrary, violent, and tempe fluous windes vpon the Sea coaft, fo doe we fee very great calmes. Some men of great experience report, that having failed many great passages at Sea under the Line, wet did they never fee any calmes, but that they alwayes make way little or much, the ayre being moued by the celestiall motion, which is sufficient to guide a Shippe, blowing in poope, as it doth. I have already said, that a Shippe of Lima going to Marilla, sailed two thousand seven hundred leagues, alwayes under the Line, or not about twelve degrees from it, and that in the moneths of February and March, when as the Sunne is there for Zenith, and in all this space they 20 found no calmes, but alwayes a fresh gale, so as in two moneths they performed this great voyage. But in the burning Zone and without it, you shall viually see great calmes upon the coasts. where the vapours come from the Ilands, or maine land. And therefore stormes and tempests, and the fudden motions of the ayre, are more certaine and ordinary upon the coasts, whereas the vapours come from the Land, then in full Sea, I meane vnder the burning Zone, for without it and at Sea, there are both calmes and whirlewindes. Notwithstanding, sometimes betwixt the two Tropickes, yea, vnder the Line, you shall have great raine and sudden showers, weafarre into the Sea; for the working whereof, the vapours and exhalations of the Sea, are fufficient, which moving fometimeshaftily in the ayre, cause thunder and whirlewindes, but 30 this is more ordinary neere to the Land and vpon the Land. When I failed from Pers to new Spaine, I observed, that all the time we were voon the coast of Pers, our voyage was (as it was ordinary) very calme and easie, by reason of the Southerne winde that blowes, having alwayes a fore winde, returning from Spaine and new Spaine. As we passed the gulph, lanching farther into the Sea, almost wader the Line, wee found the seaion coole, quiet, and pleasant, with a full winde, but comming neere to Nicaragna, and to all that coast, wee had contrary windes, with great store of raine and fogges. All this Nauigation was vnder the burning Zone: for from twelue degrees to the South, which is Lima, we failed to the seuenteenth, which is Gautulce, a port of new Spaine and I believe, that fuch as have observed their navigations, made under the burning Zone, shall finde what I have said, which may suffice for the windes which raigne 40 at Sea, under the burning Zone.

uellous effects of the winder, which are in killed wich South-weft windes. Iotz 4. Ofte 13. Dan.3. The like Linf. ueth in the

Sea fickneffe

It were a very difficult matter, to report particularly the admirable effects which fome windes capfe in diners regions of the world, and to give a reason thereof. There are windes, which naturally trouble the water of the Sea, and makes it greene and blacke, others cleere as Christall, fome comfort and make glad, others trouble and breede heauinesse. Such as nourish Silke-wormes, have great care to flut their windowes, when as the South-west windes doe blow, and to open them to the contrary : having found by certaine experience, that their wormes diminish and dve with the one, and fatten and become better with the other : and who so will neerely obferue it, thall finde in himfelfe, that the divertities of windes, cause notable impressions and changes in the body, principally in ficke parts and ill disposed, when they are most tender and 50 Exaction 14. weake. The holy Scripture calleth one aburning winde, another, a winde full of dewe and fweetneffe. And it is no wonder if we lee luch norable effects of the winde, in Plants, Beafts, and Men, feeing that we fee it visibly in Iron, which is the hardest of all mettals. I have seene Grates of Iron in some parts of the Indies, so rusted and consumed, that pressing it betwixt your fingers, it dissoluted into powder, as if it had beene hay or parched straw, the which proceedes onely from the winde which doth corrupt it, having no meanes to withstand it. But leauing apart many other great and notable effects, I will onely make mention of two. The one, although it causeth pangs greater then death it felfe, yet doth it not breede any further inconuenience. The other takes away life without feeling of it. The ficknesse of the Sea, wherewith fuch are troubled as first begin to goe to Sea, is a matter very ordinary; and yet if the nature 60 thereof were vnknowne to men, we should take it for the pangs of death, seeing how it afflicts and tormenes while it doth last, by the casting of the stomacke, paine of the head, and other Agitation and troublefone accidents. But in truth this ficknesse for common and ordinary happens vinto men by the change of the ayre and Sea. For although it be true that the motion of the Ship helpes much,

in that it mones more or left: and likewife the infections and ill fauous of things in the Ship; yet the proper and naturall cause, is the agree and the vapours of the Sea, the which doth to weaken and trouble she body and the florache, which are not accultomed thereunto, that they are wonand trasses are accountable, which are not accommon to require the year won-derfully anoued and changed: for the syre is the Element, by which we line hid breath, draw-ing a into our entrailer, she which we bathe therewithall. And therefore there is nothing that foliadenly, and with fo great force doth alter vs, as the change of the ayre we breathe, as we for in those which dygor sie plague. It is approved by many experiences, that the ayer of the Sea, is the chiefe cante of this strange indisposition; the one is, that when there blower from the Sea asthman breath, we fee them so the Land as it were Sea-ficke, as I my felfe hade often 30 found. Anather is, the farther wee goe into the Sea, and fetyre from Land, the said wee at southed and dezeled with this fickness. Another is, that coafting 'abidy any Iland', had after notions are the mains, we thail there finds the aye more thanking into the mains, we thail there finds the aye more frong. Tee will I not dirty, but the suction and against on any case this fiducation from that we fee form my taken there with plaffing motion and against on any case this fiducation. motion immagination may came tune manners term can we set to one are caren the rewning painting.

Riners in Barkes: others in like fort going in Couche and Carotches, according to the diores complexious of the Scenarius: as contrarrante, there are found how boilthroun and troubletone focuer the Seabe, doe never reele it. Wherefore it is a matter certaine, and tried, that the ayre of the Sea, doth commonly cause this effect in such as newly goe to Sen. I thought good to speake this, to haw a ftrange effect, which happens in fome parts of the falle, where the syre and the wande that raigns makes men dazle, not leffe, but more then at Sea. Some hold is for a fable, o-

wante time and addition feet my part I will speake what I have tried.

20 there say it is an addition feet my part I will speake what I have tried.

There is no Parts, a high mountains which they call Parkages, soil having heard speake of the Strangepall. alteration othered, I were as well prepared as I could, according to the instructions which was on at Parisage siteration to real, 1 white as were prepared as a count, according to the introduces which was a straight ginerime, by fuch as they call Veguiness, or expert men; but not withflanding all my pround-there on, when I came to mount whe degrees, as they called cheft, which is the top of this mountaine, Iwas furdienly furnized with to mortalf and to firange a pang, that I was ready to fall from the

I was fuddenly furgrized with 10 mortall and 10 ftrange a parg, that I was ready to fall from the top to the ground: and alchough we were many in company, yet eastly one made halfer (without only tarrying for his companion), to first disnifely specially from this ill palage, Being then alone any tarrying for his companion, to first disnifely specially from this ill palage, Being then alone any though a sixty of the second of the sec until rates energy in innergonation. A course of the condition and determine against one carry, off-ing our for the rage and greefe which this passage of Paristant had cannot have considered both not important harms-settly this, paine and croubletone diffacts while it endures? And not

doch no important harmo, onety cuts, panne and tromenous currate winner it manufacture; and only the passing of Particular hath this propertie, but also did this ridge of the Monthaile, which only the passing of Particular hath this propertie, but also did this ridge of the Monthaile, which of Quantes those for the passing the passing of the passing th ming, and alwayes in this passage I have felt this alteration, although in no place to strongly, as at the half in Fariacaca, which hath beene tried by all fuch as have passed it. And no doubt but the winde is the caule of this intemperature and firange alteration, or the ayre that raignes there. wince is the cause of an all they findly is of topper their softs, their earts, and that mounter, for the belt remedy (and all they findly is of topper their softs, their earts, and that mounter, as much's may be, and to couer chemistuse with doubtes, especially the stomacke, for that the avre is fubrile and piercing, going mee the entraites and not ondy man feele this alteration, but

ayre is motification purcease, gaing most one extractional one only measurements actions accreation, our go also bearts that fometimes thay there, to as there is no figure can gaske them go for years. Exc any part I told this place to be send the highest parts of land in the world for we mount a wonder. Height of Earliest I told this place to the most of the parts of land in the world for we mount a wonder. Height of Earliest I told the place of the parts of land of the parts of th Halle, are as ordinary horifes, in regard of hie Towers: I cherefore periwade my felfe, that the manuschieff element of the ayre is there to subtile and delicate, as it is not proportionable with the breat for men beelement of the ayer is there to subtile and delicate, as it is not proportionable with, the brea- for sales we fee thing of mant, which requires a more geoffe and temperate ayer, and I believe it is the cause dark of the mean that other we have the contraction of mant, which requires a more geoffe and temperate agreement that other much attent the formacke, and rough a first order to the formacke, and other of Europe, which I have feith's although the lyre be cold [Lipite 4, and therefore to doth frow men to weare more cloather, yet this colde doth not citize away the appeting from make is more meate, not constrained it is prouder; neither doth it ranks any cathing of the flouncies, burging meate, not constrained it is prouder; neither doth it ranks any cathing of the flouncies, burging mode and meate, where constrained is prouder; neither doth it ranks any constraint of the sales when the flouncies and cathing of the sales when the flouncies and cathing and the cathing which makes the sales when the flouncies are sales and the cathing which makes the sales and the sales are sales and the sales and the sales are sales and the sales which and the sales are sales are sales and the sales are sales are sales and the sales are sales and the sales are sales and the sales are sales are sales are sales and the sales are sales and the sales are sales are sales are sales and the sales are sales are sales are sales are sales and the

me imagine, that the griefe wee feele comes from the qualitie of the ayre which wee breathe : Therefore that is most fubtile and delicate, whose cold is not fo sensible, as pieroing. All this

ridge of mountaines is, for the most part, defart, without any Villages or habitations for men, so as you shall caree finde any small Corrages to lodge such as doe putto by night: there are no Beaffs, good or bad, but fome Vicames, which are their Countrie Muctons; and haue a ftrange and wonderfull property, as I thall thew in his place. The Graffe is often burnt, and all blacke with Great Defirte the ayre, and this Defart runs fine and twenty or thirty leagues ouerthwart, and in length about fine hundred leagues.

Punas ayre killing.

There are other Defarts or places inhabited, which at Pers they call Perse (Speaking of the fecond point we promifed) where the qualitie of the ayre cutteth off mans life without feeling. In former time the Spaniards went from Pern, to the Realme of Chille by this Mountaine. but at this day, they doe passe commonly by Seasand sometimes alongst the side of it. And though so the way be abortous and troublefome, yet is there, not so great tanger as by the Mountaine, where there are Plaines, on the which many men have periffied and dyrad, and formstimes have scaped by great hap, whereof some haue remained lame, There runs a small breath, which is not very fitting por violent, but proceeds in fuch fore, that men full downe dead, in a mainter with-our feeling, or at the leaft, they toofe their feete and bands; the which may feeme fabulous, yet Strange Story, is it most true. I have knowne and frequented long the Generall Iwome Coffile, the aurocent peoplet of ("see, who had lost ti ree or four e toes, which fell off in passing the Defart of Chile, being persisted with this ayee, and when he came to looke on them, they were dead, and fell off without any paine, euen as a rotten Apple falleth from the tree. This Captaine reported, that of a good armie which he had conducted by that place, is, the former yeares, fince the difcourry of this Kingdome by Almegre, a greet part of the men semained dead there, whose bodies he found lying in the Delart, without any thinke or corruption; adding thereunto one thing very strange, that they found a yong Boye alue, and being examined how hee had fined in that place, the fail, that he lay indee in a large grain, whence her came to cur the fell of a dead Horie with a little Knife, and thus had be nounthed himselfe a long time, with I know not how Hoffe with a little Knife, and thus had be nounthed himselfee a long zines, with I know not how many companions that liqued in that for him one they some all these, one dying this day, & another properties of the properties of the control of the

way by night, was sorted to delend hundelin against that steadly wissed which blower there human on other prepared but to gather tegethers agree number of should dead bodies that lay there, and made their of, as it warm, a importe and aboliter for his head; in less manner did her soil we have it quenched; the vitall heave, conting off paintingnes; and being so exceeding onder, we doch not complete the vitall heave, conting off paintingnes; and being so exceeding onder, yet doch not complete the vitall heave, conting off paintingnes; and being so exceeding onder, yet doch not complete the vitall heave, conting off paintingnes; and being so exceeding onder, yet doch not complete the vital heave, conting off paintingnes; and continued the vital heave of the continued of the vital heave of the continued of the vital heave vs at the Maggelan Seraire.

of the Ocean that innirens the Indies, and of the North and South Seas, their chief of the South Seas, the chief of the So

Interpretation of the contest property of the contest of the conte

advantage production and bester

at leads is Hi

mong all waters the Ocean is the principall, by which the lader have beene discous-ted, and are injureded therewith, for either they be Hands of the Ocean Segar maine Land, the which whereforem it ends, is bounded with this Ocean. To this day they Haue not discourred at the Indias any Mediterranean Sea, as in Europe, Afia, and Affrica, into the which there enters forecarme of this great Sea, and makes diffunct Seas , taking their names from the Proginces they wash : and almost all the Mediterranean Seas continue and toyon together, and with the Ocsan it lefts, by the firnight of Gibratian, which the Ancients called, the Pillery of Firmatical although the Ancients called the Pillery of Firmatical although the Pillery of Pille the lader we finde not any other Sea then this Ocean, which they divide into two, the one de they call the North Sea, and the other the South; for that the Indies which were first discovered by the Ocean, and reacheth voto Spaine, lies all to the North, and by that Land thereafter discoursed a Sea on the other lide, the which they called the South Sea , for that they decline vntill they have passed the Line; and having lost the North, or Pole-articke, they called it South.

#### CHAP. 2. S. 2. Supposed Streights to the South Sea Ebbing and flowing of the Sea. 929

For this cause they have called all that Ocean tile South Sea, which lyeth on the other lide of the East Indies, although a great part of it be feated to the North, as all the coast of new Spaine. Magrarna, Guatemala and Panama. They fay, that he that first discoursed this Sez, was called Blalcomunes of Bilbe , the which hedid by that part which we now call Maine Land, where it Terra firms. growes narrow; and the two Seas approach to neere the one to the other, that there is but fepen leagues of distance : for alchough they make the way eighteene from Nombre de Dir to Pa. Straightofland men leagues of distance florancough they make the way eighteen thom 2 wing a direct line the but cight league one Sea thall not be found more diffant from the other. Some have discoursed and propounded & South Seas.

to all through this paffage of fluin leagues, and to iny ne one Sea to the other, to make the pal-10 fage from Person more commodious and cafe, for that these eighteene leagues of Land betwint 1852 from testa mil Pasista, in more painetill und chargeable then 2 300: by Sea, whereupon fome would fay, it were a meanes to drowne the Land, one Sea being lower then another. As Handston. in times past we finde it written, that for the fame confideration, they gave ouer the enterprize to winne the red Sea into Nik, in the time of King Seffirk, and fince, in the Empire of the O. shousers. But for my pare, I hold fuch discouries and proportions for vaine, although this moon-lesses, uninence should not happen, the which I will not hold for affured. I believe there is no huminative nowerable to beate, and breake downe those fitting and impenetrable Mountaines, which God hath placed betwixt the two Seas, and hath made them most hard Rockes, to withfland the furie of two Seas. And although it were possible to men, yet in my opinion they should feare 20 punishment from heaven, in feeking to correct the workes, which the Creator by his great pro-

uidence hath ordained and disposed in the framing of this vinuerfall world.

Leauing this discourse of opening the Land, and joyning both Seas together, there is yet another less sain, but very difficult and dangerous to search out. Whether these two great gulfes doe iowne in any other part of the world, which was the enterprize of Fernando Magellan a Portugall Gentleman, whole great courage and constancie in the refearch of this subject, and happy fuccesse in the finding thereof, gaue the name of eternall memory to this straight, which fully they call by the name of the discourer Magellan, of which straight we will intreate a little, asof one of the greatest wonders of the world. Some have believed, that this Straight which Magellan had discoursed in the South Sea, was none, or that it was straightned, as Don

20 Alonfo d'Arfile writes in his Amacane: and at this day there are some that fay, there is no such Experience for Straight, but that they are Hands betwirt the Sea and Land, for that the maine Land ends Draige and there, at the end whereof are all flands, beyond the which the one Sea toynes fully with the Base found other, or to speake better, it is all one Sea. But in truth it is most certaine, there is a straight them no; and a long and ftretched out Land on either fide, although it hath not yet beene knowne how fraights but farre it ftretcheth of the one fide of the ftraight towards the South. After Magellan, a Shippe of broken lland the Bishop of Plaisance passed the Straight, Don Guitteres Carnaial (whose Maste they say is yet to the South, at Lima, at the entrie of the Pallace) they went afterwards coasting along the South, to disconer the Straight, by the commandement of Don Garcia of Mendoca, then Gouernor of Chille, here. according to that which Captaine Ladrillers found it and passed it. I have read the discourse and 40 report he made, where he faieth, that he did not hazard himselse to land in the Straight, but

haning discourred the North Sea, he returned backe, for the roughnesse of the time, winter being now come, which caused the waves comming from the North, to grow great and swelling, Secos this Sir and the Sea continually forming with rage. In our time, Francis Drake an Englishman , passed Francis Drakes this Straight. After him, Captaine Sarmiento paffed it on the South fide. And laftly, in the yeere Voyage.to.1.12 1587. other Englishmen paffed it, by the instruction of Drake, which at this time run along all I have omitthe coaft of Peru.

Euen as Magellan found out this Straight vpon the South, fo some haue pretended to disco- The supposed uer another Straight, which they say is in the North, and suppose it to be in Florida, whose coast Straight in runnes in such fort, as they know no end thereof. Peter Melendez, the Adelantade, a man very Florida.

runnes in tuan tota, a diety and the there is a Straight, and that the King had commande expert a sea, a firment for certaine, that there is a Straight, and that the King had commanded to the seasons to prote his and flowing of ded him to discouer it, where in he shewed a great defire; he propounded his reasons to prote his and flowing of opinion, faying, that they have feene fome remainders of Ships in the North Sea, like vnto those the Indian O. the which the Chinois vie, which had beene impossible, if there were no passage from one Sea cean. Chap. 14. vnto another. Moreouer, hee reported, that in a certaine great Bay in Florida (the which runs The Philoso-300. leagues within the Land) they see Whales in some season of the yeare, which come from Phers in Search the other Sea.

One of the most admirable secrets of Nature is the ebbing and slowing of the Sca, not onely for slowing haue this strange property of rising and falling, but much more for the difference there is thereof in easily erred, this strange property of rinng and rating, our mountmore to the difference Seas that have no daily following the divers Seas, yea in divers coasts of one and the same Sea. There are some Seas that have no daily following the 60 flowing nor ebbing, as we fee in the inner Mediterranean, which is the Thyrene Sea, and yet it flowers and obbes enery day in the upper Mediterranean Sea, which is that of Venice, and inftly knew nor the giueth cause of admiration, that these two Seas being Mediterranean, and that of Venice being Ocean, and no greater then the other, yet hath it his ebbing and flowing as the Ocean, and that other Sea could not therof Italie none at all. There are some Mediterranean Seas, that apparantly rise and fall enery fore know the

931

moneth, and others that neither rife in the day, nor in the moneth. There are other Seas, as the Spanift Ocean, that have their flux and reflux every day; and besides that, they have it mos nethly, which commeth twice, that is to fay, at the change, and at the full of enery Moone. which they call Spring-tides. To fay that any Sea hath this daily ebbing and flowing, and not monethly, I know not any. It is strange, the difference we finde of this subject at the Indian; for there are some places whereas the Sea doth daily rise and fall two leagues, as at Parama and at a high water it rifeth much more. There are other places where it doth rife and fallufo little, that hardly can you finde the difference. It is ordinary in the Ocean Sea to have a daily flowing and ebbing, and that was twice in a naturall day, and ever it fals three quarters of an houre fooner one day then another, according to the course of the Moone : fo as the tide fals not 10 alwaies in one houre of the day. Some would fay, that this flux and reflux proceeded from the locall motion of the water of the Sea; to as the water that rifeth on the one lide, fals on the other that is opposite vnto it : so that it is full Sea on the one side when it is a low water on the oppolite, as we see in a Kettle full of water, when we mooue it, when it leanes to the one side the water increaseth, and on the other it diminisheth. Others affirme, that the Sea riseth in all parts at one time, and decreaseth at one instant; as the boyling of a Pot, comming out of the centre it extendeth it felie on all parts, and when it ceaseth, it fals likewise on This fecond opinion is true, and in my judgement, certains and tried, not fo much for the

make. For to fatisfie my telfe vpon this point and question, I demanded particularly of the 20 had gone to

"Hernando A. fard Pilot, how he found the tides in the straight, and if the tides of the South Sea did fall long which when as those of the North did rife. And contrariwise (this question being true) why the inwith Sarmiente crease of the Sea in one place, is the decrease thereof in another, as the first opinion holdeth. He answered that it was not so, but they might see plainely, that the tides of the North and South Seas rife at one instant, fo as the waves of one Sea incountred with the other, and at one instant likewise they began to retire, every one into his Sea, saying, that the rising and falling was daily feene, and that the incounter of the tides (as I have faid) was at threefcore and tenne At the Downes leagues to the North Sea, and thirtie to the South. Whereby we may plainely gather, that the on our coaft ebbing and flowing of the Ocean is no pure locall motion, but rather an alteration t whereby all 30 waters really rife and increase at one instant, and in others, they diminish, as the boyling of a Pot, whereof I have spoken. It were impossible to comprehend this point by experience, if it were not in the Straight, where all the Ocean, both on th'one fide, and on th'other iownes together: other from the for none but Angels can see it, and judge of the opposite parts: for that man hath not so long a fight, nor so nimble and swift footing as were needefull, to transport his eyes from one part to another, in so short a time, as a tide will give him respite, which are onely fix houres.

reasons which the Philosophers give in their Meteors, as for the certaint experience wee may

much varietie. Of fundry F:thers, and of fifbing at the

Nor:h, which

The Manatia frange fift. The Whales alfobring

There are in the Indian Ocean, an infinite number of fishes, the kindes and properties whereof the Creator onely can declare. There are many fuch as we have in the Sea of Europe, as Shads, and Aloles which come from the Sea into the Rivers; Dorads, Pilchards, and many other, There 40 are others, the like I doe not thinke to have feene in these parts, as those which they doe call Cabrillas, which doe somewhat resemble the Trowt, and in new Spaine they call them Bobos, they mount from the Sea into the Rivers. I have not feene any Befuguer there, nor Trowts, although fome fay there are in Chille. There are Tonins in some parts upon the coast of Peru, but they are rare, and some are of opinion, that at a certaine time they doe cast their spawne in the Straight of Magellan, as they doe in Spaine at the Straight of Gibratar, and for this reason they inde more upon the coast of Chile, although those I have seene there, are not like to them in Spaine. At the Hands (which they call Barlomente) which are Cuba, Saint Dominiche, Port rique, and Iamaique, they finde a fish which they call Manati, a strange kinde of fish, if we may call it fift, a creature which ingenders her yong ones aline, and hath teates, and doth nouriff so them with milke, freding of graffe in the fields, but in effect it lines continually in the water, yong alue, and and therefore they eate it as fish; yet when I did eate of it at Saint Dominique on a friday, I assurish them had some scruple, not for that which is spoken, but for that in colour and taste it was like vnto incredible rauening of the Tiburous, or sharkes, when as I did fee drawne from one (that was taken in the Port) out of his gullet, a Butchers great Knife, a great Iron hooke, and a piece of a Cowes head with one whole horne, neither doe I know if both were there, or no. I did fee in a creeke made with that Sea, a quareer of a horse for pleasure hanging woon a stake, whicher presently came a company of these Tiberens, at the smell thereof: and for the more plealure, this Horfe-flesh was hung in the ayre, I know not how many hand breadth from the wa-60 women. Their ter; this company of fift flocke about it, leaping vp, and with a strange nimble nesse cut of both foode is also fleth and bone off the Horse legge, as if it had beenethe stalke of a lettuce; their teeth being as far words. sharpe as a rasour. There are certaine small fishes they call Rambos, which cleaue to these Tiber ross, neither can they drive them away, and they are fed with that which falles from the

There are other small fishes, which they call flying fishes, the which are found within They have the tropickes, and in no other place, as I thinke: they are purfued by the Dacader, and to escape rough heads them they leape out of the Sea, and goe a good way in the ayre, and for this reason they are called whereby they fixing Fifter: they have wings as it were of linner cloath, or of parchment, which doe support cleave and flying Filter: they have wings as it were of finite relocation to the Ship wherein I went, the which the Shirke. I did fee, and observe the falhion of his wings.

In the Indian Hiltories there is often mention made of Lexards or Caymans (as they call them) which thus are and they are the very fame which Plane and the Auncients call Crocodiles, they finde them on them with their the Sea fide, and in hot Rivers, for in cold Rivers there are none to be found. And therefore they fwift motion 10 finde none vpon all the coalts of Pers vnto Persa, but forward they are commonly feene in the of whole of all finde none vpon all the coaits of rem vice 1 47%, but to the and heavie. Hee goes hunting and also they line. Rivers. It is a most fierce and cruell beast, although it be flow and heavie. Hee goes hunting and Crocodiles. feekes his prey on the Land, and what he takes aline, he drownes it in the water, yet dothle not \*Yet fo as cuer eate it, but out of the water, \* for that his throate is of fuch a falhion, as if there entred any wa- and anon hee ter, he should easily be drowned. It is a wonderfull thing to see a combat betwixt a Caymant dipsit in the and a Tigre, whereof there are most cruell at the Indies. A religious man of our company told water his and a Tigre, whereof there are most cruest at the transfer. As rengious man of our company one to the had feene these beafts fight most cruelly one against the other; when the Sea shoare the tongue being to short, that Caymant with his taile gaue great blowes wnto the Tygre, striuing with his great force to carry o harvise he him into the water : and the Tigre with his pawer relited the Caymant, drawing him to Land. could not water In the end the Tigre vanquished, and opened the Lezard, it seemes by the belly, the which is most low it. 20 tender and penetrable, for in every other part he is so hard, that no Lance, and scarce a harquebuze Tigre hils a can pierce it. The victory which an Indian had of a Caymant was yet more rare : the Caymant Crocodile. had carried away his yong childe, and fodainely plunged into the Sea, the Indian moved with choller, cast himselfe after him, with a knife in his hand , and as they are excellent (wimmers choller, calt numeric area min, where any and divers, and the Caymant swimmeth alwayes on the toppe of the water, hee hurt him in mians explor and citiers, and the Caymant feeling himselfe wounded, went to the shoare, lead on a Crocodile uing the little infant dead. But the combat which the Indians have with Whales is yet more admirable, wherein appeares

the power and greatnesse of the Creator, to give so base a Nation (as be the Indiana) the industrie

and courage to incounter the most fierce and deformed beast in the world, and not onely to fight

30 with him, but also to vanquish him, and not to triumph our him. Considering this, I have often with min, our and to a define a foresting of the While, Drawife quem formalli ad illuden-remember date place of the Plalmes, speaking of the While, Drawife quem formalli ad illuden-dam cass: What greater mockerie can there be, then to fee in Indian leade a Whale as bigge as a Whale killed Mountaine, vanquished with a cord . The manner the Tabalan of Flivida vie (as some expert men by the Sausges have told me) to take these Whales (whereof there is great flore) is, they put themselues into a Canoe, which is like a barke of a tree, and in fwimming approach neere the Whales fide, "then with great dexteritie they leape to his necke, and there they ride as on horfe-back expeding his time, then he thrufts a sharpe and stong stake (which he carries with him) into the Whales nofirill, for fo they call the hole or vent by which they breathe, prefently he beates it in with another stake as forcibly as he can; in the meane space the Whale doth furiously beate the Sea, and 40 raifeth Mountaines of water, running into the deepe with great violence, and sprefently rifeth againe, not knowing what to doe for paine: the Indian full firs firme, and to give him full parmene for this trouble, hee beates another flake into the other vent or nofthrill, foas he stoppeth him quite, and takes away his breathing, then he betakes him to his Canoe, which he holds tied with a cord to the Whales fide, and goes to Land, having first tied his cord to the Whale, the which he lets run with the Whale, who leapes from place to place, whileft he finds water enough: being troubled with paine, in the end he comes neere the Land, and remaines on ground by the hugenesse of his body, viable any more to moue; then a great number of Indians come vinto the Conquerour, to gather his spoiles, they kill him, and cut his flesh in peeces, the which is bad enough : this doe they dry and beate into powder, wing it for meate, it doth last them long : owherein is fulfilled, that which is spoken in another Plalme of the Whale, Dedifti eum efcam pos pulis Ethiopum, Peter Mendez the Adelantade did often speake of this kinde of fifting. Where-

of Monardes makes mention in his Booke. There is another filling which the Indians doe commonly vie in the Sea, the which, although it beleffe, yet is it worthy the report. They make as it were faggots of bul-rulhes or dry fedges well bound together, which they call Balfat: having carried them vpon their shoulders to the Sea, they call them in, and presently leape upon them: being so set, they lanch out into the deepe, rowing vp and downe with small reedes of either side : they goe a league or two into the Seato fish, carrying with them their cords and nets upon these faggots, and beare themselves thereon. They call our their nets, and doethere semaine filhing the greatest part of the day 60 and night, vntill they have filled up their measure, with the which they returne well fatisfied. Truely it was delightfull to fee them fish at Callas of Lima, for that they were many in number, and every one fet on horie-backe, cutting the waves of the S:a, which in their place of filhing are great and furious, resembling the Tritons or Neptunes, which they paint vpon the water, and being come to Land, they draw their barke out of the water v pon their backes, the which they

presently vndoe, and lay abroad on the shoare to drie. There were other Indian; of the Vallies of Tea, which were accustomed to goe to fish in leather, or skins of Sea-wolues, blowne vp with winde, and from time to time they did blow them like bals of winde, left they flould finke. In the vale of Canete, which in old time they called Guaron, there were a great number of Indian fifthers; but because they relisted the Ingua, when he came to conquer that Land, hee made shew or peace with them, and therefore to reast him, they appointed a solemne fishing of many thoufam. Indians, which went to Sea in their veffels of reeds : at whose returne, the lugua (who had laid many Souldiers in ambush) made a cruell butcherie of them, so as afterward this Land remained vnpeopled, although it be aboundant and fertile. I did fee another manner of fishing, whereunto Don Francis of Toledo the Viceroy did leade me, yet was it not in the Sea, but in a River to which they call great in the Prouince of Charcas, where the Indians Chiragnanas plunged into the water, and iwimming with an admirable swiftnesse, followed the fish , where with darts and hookes (which they vie to carry in their right hand, onely fwimming with the left) they wound the fifth, and fo hurt they brought them forth, feeming in this more like vnto filles then men of the Land. But now that we have left the Sea, let vs come to other kinde of waters that remaine to be spoken of. In place of the Mediterranean Sea, which is in the old world, the Creator hath furnished this

at the Indies. Chap. 16.

new with many Lakes, whereof there are some so great, as they may be properly called Seas, feeing the Scripture calleth that of Palefina fo, which is not fo great as some of these. The most famous is that of Titicaca, which is at Pern, in the Province of Callao, the which as I have faid in 20 the former booke, containes neere fourescore leagues in compasse, into the which there runs ten or twelve great Rivers. A while tince, they began to faile in it with Barkes and Ships, wherein they proceeded foill, that the first Ship was split with a tempest that did rife in the Lake. The water is not altogether fower nor falt, as that of the Sea, but it is fo thicke, as it cannot be

drunke. There are two kindes of fishes breede in this Lake in great abundance, the one they call Suches, which is great and fluorous, but phlegmaticke and vn wholefores : and the other Bogos, which is more healthfull, although it be ! He and fuller of bones : there are great numbers of wilde-ducks and Wigens. When as the Indiana will feast it, or shew delight to any one that paffeth along the two bankes, which they call Churuyso and Omajugo, they affemble a great number of Canoes, making a circle and incuroning the fowle, vntill they take with their hands what 30 they please; and they call this manner of filling Choce. On the one and the oster banke of this Lake, arothe best habitations of Pers. From the issue thereof there growes a lefter Lake, although it be great, which they call Paris, woon, the bankes whereof, there are great numbers of

cattell, especially Swine, which grow exceeding far with the graffe vpon those bankes. There are many other Lakes in the high Mountaines, whence proceede Brookes and Rivers, which after become great flouds. Vpon the way from Arequippa to Callas, there are two Lakes, vpon the Mountaines of the one and other fide the way, from the one flowes a brooke, which growes to a floud, and fals into the South Sea; from the other, they fay the famous River of Aporima takes her beginning from the which some hold that the renowned River of Amazons, other wise called Maragness proceedes, with fo great an affembly and abundance of waters, which isyne in these 40 Mountaines. It is a question may be often asked, why there is to many Lakes in the tops of these Mountaines, into the which no river enters, but contrariwile, many great freames illue forth, and yet doe we scarce see these Lakes to diminish any thing at any season of the yeare. To imagine that thefe Lakes grow by the Snow that melts, or raine from heaven, that doth not wholly fatisfie me : for there are many that have not this abundance of Snow, nor raine, and yet wee fee no descrate in them, which makes me to beleeve they are Springs which rife there naturally, al-

though it be not against reason, to thinke that the Snow and raine helpe somewhat in some seafons. These Lakes are so common in the highest tops of the Mountaines, that you shall hardly finde any famous river that takes not his beginning from one of them. Their water is very pleere Great ft rivers and breedes little ftore of fift, and that little is very small, by reason of the cold which is there so flow from

Notwithstanding, some of these Lakes be very hot, which is another wonder. At the end of Hot Lake, and the Vallie of Tarapaya neere to Potozi, there is a Lake in forme round, which feemes to have many wonders beene made by compaffe, whose water is extreamely hot, and yet the Land is very cold : they are accustomed to bathe themselves neere the banke, for elle they cannot endure the heate being farther in. In the midit of this Lake, there is a boiling of above twentie foote square, which is the very Spring, and yet (notwithstanding the greatnesse of this Spring) is is never feene to increase in any fort : it seemes that it exhals of it felse, or that it hath some hidden and wnknowne iffue, neither doe they fee it decrease; which is another wonder, although they have drawne from it a great ftreame, to make certaine engines grinde for mettall, confidering the great 60 quantitie of water that iffueth forth, by reason whereof, it should decrease.

Likes of Mex-

But leaving Porn , and patting to new Spaine, the Lakes there, are no leffe tobe observed; especially that most famous of Mexico, where we finde two forts of waters, one salt Lakelike to that of the Sea, and the other cleere and sweete, by reason of the Rivers that enter into it.

In the midft of this Lake, is a rocke very delightfull and pleafant, where there are bathes of hoe water that iffue forth, the which they greatly elterme for their health. There are Gardens in the middett of this Lake, framed and fleeting wpon the water, where you may fee plots full of a thouland forts of hearbes and flowers, & they are in fuch fort as a man cannot well conceiue them without fight. The Citie of Mexico is leated in the fame Lake, although the Spaniards have filled up the place of the scituation with earth, leaning onely some currents of water, great and fmall, which enter into the Citie, to carrie fuch things as they have neede of, aswood, hearbs, ftone, fruites of the Countrie, and all other things. When Cortez conquered Mexico, hee caufed Brigandins to bemade, yet afterwards he thought it more fafe not to vie them : therefore they vie Caneer, whereof there is great flore. There is great flore of fifth in this Lake, yet have I not feene any of price: notwithstanding, they say the revenue of this Lake, is worth threehundred thousand Duckets a yeere. There are many other Lakes, not farre from this, whence they bring much fift to Mexico. The Prouince of Mechonaces is fo called, for that it aboundeth Reh Lakes greatly with fish. There are goodly and great Lakes, in the which there is much fish, and this Promince is coole and healthfull. There are many other Lakes, whereof it is not possible to make mention, nor to know them in particular, onely wee may note by that which hath beene discoursed in the former Booke, that under the burning Zone there is greater abundance of Lakes.

then in any other part of the world;

There is at the Indies as in other parts of the world, great diversitie of Springs, Fountaines, Ofmany and 30 and Risers, and some have strange properties. In Guancasilles of Pers (where the Mines of Quick-filuer be,) there is a Fountaine that easts forth hot water, and in running, the water Chapter enick-more or,) croce in a common case data outsines water, and in tunning, the water chapty, turnes to rocks, of which rocks or flows, they build in a manner all the houles of the Village, turnes to rocks, of which rocks or flows, they cut it as eafly with Iron as if it were wood, it mentions that the rocks of the is light and lafting. If men or beafts drinke thereof, they dye, for that it congeales in the Scone. very entrailes, and turnes into ftone, and for that cause some Horses have died, As this water turnes into stone, the which flowes, stoppes the passage to the rest; so as of neceffitie it changeth the course, and for this reason it runnes in divers places, as the rocke increaseth, At the point of Cape Saint Helaine, there is a Spring or Fountaine of Pitch, which Fountaine of at Pers, they call Copper. This should be like to that which the Scripture speakes of the faunge Pitch. Valley, where they did finde pits of Pitch. The Marriners vie thefe Fountaines of Pitch or Valley, where they do made pass or rects. I want a ferrues them as Pitch and Tarre in Spaine, 500 ppg 7, to pitch their ropes and tackling, for that it ferrues them as Pitch and Tarre in Spaine, When I failed into new Spaine by the coalt of Pros. the Polic thewed me an Iland, which they When I failed into new Spaine by the coalt of Pros. the Polic thewed me an Iland, which they when I failed into new Spaine by the coalt of Pros. the Polic thewed me an Iland, which they when I failed into new Spaine by the coalt of Pros. the Polic thewed me an Iland, which they were the prosecular to the property of the property of the Pros.

call the Ile of Wolses, where there is another Fountaine or Pit of Coppey or Pitch, with the which they anoint their tackling. There are other Fountaines and Springs of Goultranrozen, which the Pilot (an excellene man in his charge) told me he had feene, and that fometimes failing that wates, being to farre into the Sea, as he had loft the fight of Land, yet did he know by the smell of the Coppey, where he was, as well as if he had knowne the Land; fuch is the fauour that iffues continually from that Fountaine.

At the Bathes, which they call the Bathes of Ingua, there is a course of water, which Cold and hot 40 comes forth all hot and boiling; and ioyning vato it, there is another whose water is as cold Springs togeas Ice. The Ingua was accustomed to temper the one with the other; and it is a wonderfull then thing to fee Springs of fo contrarie qualities, fo neere one to the other. There are an infinite number of other hot Springs, specially in the Province of Charca, in the water whereof, you cannot indute to hold your hand the space of an Ane Maria, as I have seene tried by wager. In a Farme neere to Cufes, springs a Fountaine of Salt, which as it runnes turnes Salt Spring into Salt, very white and exceeding good, the which (if it were in another Countrie) were which yeeldes no fmall riches, yet they make very small account thereof, for the store they have there. The Sal, without waters which runne in Guayaquel, which is in Peru, almost vnder the Equinoctiall Line, are boiling. held to be healthfull for the French difease, and other fuch like, so as they come from many So places fatre off to be cured. And they fay the cause thereof is, for that in that Countrie there

is great aboundance of rootes, which they call Salepareille, the vertue and operation whereof is Pocke pringe To knowne, that it communicates her propertie to the waters wherein it is put to cure this difeafe. Bilcanota is a Mountaine the which (according to common opinion) is in the highest part of Pers, the top whereof is all couered with Snow, and in some places is blacke like coale. There flueth forth of it, two Springs in contrary places, which prefently grow to be very great brooks, and so by little and little become great flouds, the one goes to Calloa, into the great Lake Tucaca; the other goes to the Lands, and is that which they call Tucay, which toyning with another runnes into the North Sea, with a violent and furious courfe. This Spring, when it comes out of Smoak Springs the rocke Bilcanota, as I haue faid, is of the colour of lie, having an affine colour, and cafts a fame as a 60 thing burnt, the which runs far in this fort, vntil the multitude of waters that run into it, quench Inke, &c.

this smoak and fire which it drawes from the Spring. In new Spain I have feene a Spring as it were Ink, somewhat blew, in Perwanother, of color red like blood, where vpon they cal it the redRiver. Of Rivers. Among ft all Rivers, not onely at the Indies, but generally through the world, the River Ma- thep. 18. rageon, or of Amazon, is the chiefe, whereof we have fooken in the former Booke. The Spa. Margine c. H h h h 2

miards have often failed it, pretending to discouer the Lands, which by report are very rich. especially those they call Dorado and Payini, Ican de Salnies, the Adelantade, made a memorable entrie, though of small effect. There is a passage which they call Passe, one of the most dange. rous in all the world; for the River being there straightned, and forced betwixt two high steepe Rocks : the water fals directly downe with fo great a violence, that comming steepe downe, it caufeth fuch a boyling, as it feemeth impossible to passe it without drowning : yet the courage of men durit attempt to passe it, for the desire of this renowmed Dorado : they sipe downe from the top to the bottome, thrust on with the violence and current of the floud, holding themselves fast in their Canoes or barkes : and although in falling they were turned topfie turnie, and both they and their Canoes plunged into the deepe, yet by their care and industrie they recoursed 10 themselues againe; and in this fort the whole armie escaped, except some few that were drow-Galdenthirft, ned. And that which is more admirable, they carried themselves so cunningly, that they neither loft their Powder nor Munition. In their returne (hauing fuffered many croubles and dangers) they were forced, in the end, to passe backe that same way) mounting by one of those high Rocks.

flicking their Ponyards in the Rocke,

Captaine Peter d'Orfus made another entrie by the fame River, who being dead in the fame Voyage, and the Souldiers mutinied; other Captaines followed the enterprise, by an arme that comes into the North Sea. A religious man of our company told vs , that being then a fecular man, he was prefent in a manner at all that enterprise, and that the tides did flow almost a hundred leagues up the River, and whereas it enters into the Sez (the which is under the Line, or 20 very neare) it hath feuenty leagues breadth at the mouth of it, a matter incredible; and which exceeds the breadth of the Mediterranean Sea, though there be some others, who in their descriptions give it but twenty five or thirty leagues breadth at the mouth,

River of Plata. Next to this River that of Plata, or of Silver holds the fecond place, which is otherwife called increasing as Paraguay, which runs from the Mountains of Perm, into the Sea, in thirty fine degrees of altitude to the South : it rifeth (as they fay) like to the Riner of Nile, but much more without companion, and makes the fields it overflowes like vnto a Sea, for the space of three moneths, and after returneth agains to his course, in the which Shippes doe faile many leagues against the streame. There are many other Rivers that are not of that greatnesse, and yet are equall: yea they surpasse the greatest of Europe, as that of Magdalaine, netre to Saint Maribe, called the great River, and 30 that of Alwarado in new Spaine, and an infinite number of others. Of the South fide, on the Mountaines of Perm, the Rivers are not vivally fo great, for that their current is not long, and that many waters cannot ioyne together, but they are very fwift, descending from the Mountaines, and have sodaine fals, by reason whereof they are very dangerous, and many men have perished there. They increase and overflow most in the time of heate. I have gone over twenty and seuen Riuers vpon that coast, yet did I neuer passe any one by a foord, How they passe The Indians vie a thousand densies to passe their Rivers. In some places they have a long cord

that runnes from one fide to th'other, and thereon hangs a basket, into the which he puts him felfe

that meanes to paffe; and then they draw it from the banke with another cord, so as he paffeth in this basket. In other places the Indian paffeth, as it were on Horfe-backe, vpon a bottle of 40 straw, and behinde him he that defires to palle; and so rowing with a peece of a boord, carries him ouer. In other places they make a floate of gourds or pompions, upon which they fet men with their fluffe to carry ouer, and the Indians having cords fastned to them, goe swimming before, and draw this floate of pompions after them, as Horfes doe a Coach; others goe behinde thrusting it forward. Hauing paffed, they take their barke of pompions upon their backe, and returne Swimming : this they doe in the River of Saint at Pern, We passed that of Almarado in new Spain wpon a table, which the Indians carried wpon their shoulders, and when they lost their footing, they swamme. These denises, with a thousand other wherewith they vie to passe their Rivers, breede a terrour in the beholders, helping themselves' with such weake and vissure meanes; and Haire and Straw Bridges, yet they are very confident. They doe vie no other bridges but of haire or of ftraw. There are co now youn some Rivers bridges of Stone, built by the diligence of some Governours, but many fewer then were needefull in fuch a Countrie, where so many men are drowned by default thereof, and the which yeeldes to much Silver, as not onely Spaine, but also other strange Countries make fumptuous buildings therewith. The Indians doe draw from these flouds that runne from the Mountaines to the Vallies and Plaines, many and great Brookes to water their Land, which they vivally doe with fuch industrie, as there are no better in Murcia, nor at Millan it telfe, the which is also the greatest and onely wealth of the Plaines of Pern, and of many

other parts of the Indies.

of the qualitie of the Land at the Indies in generall. Properties of Peru, and of new Spaine, and other parts : Of Vulcanes and Earthquakes.

CHAP.1.S.3. Indians masted. Pastures and mines in bils. Coast-commerce and wine, 925

E may know the qualitie of the Land at the Indies, for the greatest part (seeing it is 1.3.0.19) the fall of the three Elements, whereof we have propounded to treate in this Booke) by the discourse we have made in the former Booke of the burning Zone, seeing that the greatest part of the Indies doth lye under it. But to make it knowne the more particularly, I have observed three kindes of Lands, as I have passed through those Regions: whereof there is one very low, another very high, and the third which holds the middle of these two extreames. The lower is that which lyeth by the Sea coasts, whereof there is in all parts of the Indees, and it is commonly very hot and moift, fo as it is not fo healthfull; and at this day we see it lesse peopled, although in former times it hath beene greatly inhabited with Indians, as it appeareth by the hittories of new Spane and Pers, and where they kept and lived, for that the folle was naturall vnto them being bred there. They lived of fishing at Sea, and of feeds, drawing brooks from the Rivers, which they vied for want of raine, for that it raines little there, and in some places not at all. This low Countrie hath many places vnhabitable, as well by 20 realon of the Sands which are dangerous (for there are whole Mountaines of these Sands) as also for the Marithes which grow by reason of the waters that fall from the Mountaines, which finding no slice in these flat and low Lands, drowne them, and make them vnprofitable.

And in truth the greatest part of all the Indian Sea coast is of this fort, chiefly upon the South Decay of pres-Sea : the habitation of which coasts is at this present so wasted and contemned, that of thirty pleinthe india sea: the indication of which the parts of the people that inhabited it, there wants twenty nine; and it is likely the reft of the by the Spanis parts of the people that inhabited it, there wants twenty nine; and it is likely the reft of the by the Spanis parts of the property of the people that inhabited with the parts of the people that inhabited it. this to divers causes: some to the great labour which hath beene imposed upon these Indians; o-

thers, vnto the change and varietie of meates and drinkes they vie, fince their commerce with the Spaniards: others, to their great excesse and drinking, and to other vices they have : for my 30 part. I hold this diforder to be the greatest cause of their decay, whereof it is not now time to difcourse any more. In this low Countrie (which I say generally is vnhealthfull, and vnfit for mans habitation) there is exception in some places which are temperate and fertile, as the greatest part of the Plaines of Pers, where there are coole vallies and very fertile. The greatest part of the habitation of the coast encertains all the traffike of Spain by Sea: whereon all the estate of the Indier dependeth. Vpon this coast there are some Towns well peopled, as Lines and Truxillo in Peru, Panama and Carthagena vpon the maine Land, and in the Hands Saint Dominique, Port Ricco, and Hanana, with many other Towns which are leffe then thefe, as the True Croffe in new Spain,

Tos, Arigus and others in Pers: the Ports are commonly inhabited, although but flenderly. The 40 fecond fort of Land is contrary, very high, and by confequent, cold and dry, as all the Mountainer are commonly. This Land is neither fertile nor pleasant, but very healthfull, which makes it to be peopled and inhabited. There are Pastures and great store of Cattle, the which, for the most part, entertaines life, and by their Cattell, they supply the want they have of Corne and Graine, by trucking and exchange. But that which makes these Lands more inhabited and peopled, is the riches of the Mines that are found there, for that all obeys to Gold and Silver, By reason of the Mines there are some dwellings of Spaniards and Indians, which are increased and multiplied, as Potozs and Gancanelicqua in Peru, and Cacatecas in new Spaine. There are also through all these Mountaines great dwellings of the Indians, which to this day are maintained; yea some will say they increase, but that the labour of the Mines doth consume many, 50 and some generall diseates haue destroyed a great part, as the Cocoliste in new Spaine : yet they

finde no great diminution. In this extremitie of high ground they finde two commodities, as I have faid, of Paffures and Mines, which doe well countervaile the two other that are in the lower grounds alongft the Sea coast, that is, the commerce of the Sea, and the abundance of Wine which groweth not but in the hot Lands. Betwixt thefe two extreames there is ground Corngregad of a meane height, the which, although it be in some parts higher or lower one then other, yet doth it not approach neither to the heate of the Sea coaft, nor the intemperature of the Mountaines. In this fort of foyle there groweth many kindes of Graine, as Wheate, Barley, and Mays, which growes not at all in the high Countries, but well in the lower; there is likewife for e of Patture, Cattell, Fruits, and greene Forrefts. This part is the best habitation of the three, 66 for health and recreation; and therefore it is best peopled of any part of the Indies, the which I

haue curioully observed in many Voyages that I haue undertaken, and have alwayes found it true, that the Province best peopled at the Indies be in this scituation. Let vs looke neerely into new Spaine (the which without doubt is the best Province the Sunne doth circle) by what part Soeuer you doe enter, you mount vp; and when you have mounted a good height, you begin to

d. III.

descend, yet very little : and that Land is alwayes much higher then that along the Sea

All the Land about Mexico is of this nature and scituation; and that which is about the Val can, which is the best foile of the Indies, as also in Pern, Arequipa, Guamangua and Cusco, although more in one then in the other. But in the end, all is high ground, although they descend into deepe Vallies, and clime vp to high Mountaines: the like is spoken of Quitte, Saint For, and of the best of the New Kingdome. To conclude, I doe beleeue that the wifedome and promience of the Creator would have it so, that the greatest part of this Countrie of the Indies should be hillie, that it might be of a better temperature : for being low, it had beene very hot vinder the burning Zone, especially being farre from the Sea. Also all the Land I have seene at the Indies, 16 is neere to the Mountaines on the one fide or the other, and sometimes of all parts : So as I have oftentimes faid there, that I would gladly fee any place, from whence the horizon did fashion it felfe and end by the heaven, and a Countrie ffretched out and even, as we fee in Spaine in a thousand champaine fields; yet doe I not remember that I have ever scene such fights at the Indies, were it in the Ilands, or vponthe maine Land, although I have travelled above feven hundred leagues in length. But as I haue faid, the neereneffe of the Mountaines is very commodious in this region, to temper the heate of the Sunne. To conclude, the best inhabited parts of the Indies are as I have faid: and generally, all that Countrie abounds in Graffe, Pastures, and Forrefts, contrary vnto that which Ariffotle and the ancients did hold. So as when we go out of Enrens, contrary via exceptions, and chiefly in the Land of Pers, which is of a strange nature among stall others. whereof we will now proceede to fpeake.

We meane by Pers, not that great part of the world which they call America, feeing that

of Quitto, which is vnder the Line, and runs in length to the Realme of Chille, the which is

without the Tropickes, which were fix hundred leagues in length, and in breadth it containes no more then the Mountaines, which is fiftie common leagues, although in fome places, as at Churbapayas, it be broader. This part of the world which wee call Pers, is very remarkeable, and containes in it strange properties, which serueth as an exception to the general rule of the 30

full of all others, yet in this Region it is maruellous pleafing, healthfull, and agreeable : fo as

we may attribute the habitation of that part thereunto, without the which it would be trou-

blesome and inhabitable, by reason of the heate, if it were not refreshed with the winde. The third propertiess, that it never raines, thunders, snowes, nor hailes in all this coast, which is

a matter worthy of admiration. Fourthly, that a little diffance from the coast it raines & fnowes

terribly. Fiftly, that there are two ridges of Mountaines which runne the one as the other and

part of the yeare, being very hot; and the other is all naked and bare, and very cold: fo as win-

ter and fummer are divided on those two Mountaines, and raine, and cleereneffe it selfe. For the

better understanding hereof, we must consider that Perwis divided as it were into three parts, long and narrow, which they call Lanos, Surras, and Ander; the Lanos runs along fi the Sea coast; the

Sierras be all hils, with some vallies; and the Ander be steepe and craggie Mountaines. The La-

more. The Sterra containes some twenty leagues in breadth : and the Ander as much sometimes

more. sometimes lesse. They run in length from North to South, and in breadth from East to

West. It is a strange thing, that in so small a distance as fiftie leagues, equally distant from the

place, and neuer in the other. It neuer raines vpon the coast or Lanes, although there fals some-

times a small dew, which they call Guarna, and in Castill Molling, the which sometimes thick-

ens, and fals in certaine drops of water, yet is it not trouble ome, nor fuch as they neede any co-

uering. Their couerings are of mats with a little earth vpon them which is fufficient, Vpon the Ander it raines in a manner continually, although it be formetimes more cleere then other.

In the Sierra which lies betwixt both the extreames, it raineth in the fame feafon as it doth in

Line and Pole, there should be fo great a contrarietie, as to raine almost continually in one so

in one altitude, notwithstanding on the one there are great Forrests, and it raines the greatest 40

ties of the land therein is contained Brefil, the Kingdome of Chille, and that of Grenade, and yet none of thefe of Peru. Chap. 20 Kingdomes is Peru, but onely that part which lies to the South, beginning at the Kingdome

936

Indies. The first is, that vpon all the coast it blowes continually with one onely winde, which is South and South-west, contrary to that which doth viually blow under the burning Zone, The second is, that this winde being by nature the most violent, tempestuous, and vnhealth-

the Ander. See nos or Sea coast, have some ten leagues in breadth, in some parts leffe, and in some parts a little

Raine almost

Spaine. which is from September voto Aprill, but in the other feating, the time is more cleere, which is when the Sunne is fartheft off, and the contrary when it is neerest. That which they call Andes, and Sierra, are two ridges of most high Mountaines, which runne about a thoufand leagues, the one in view of the other, and almost equally. There are an infinite number 60 of Vicagues, which breede in the Sierres, and are properly like vnto wilde Goates, very nim-Diners Beafts. ble and swift. There are also of those beafts which they call Guanacos and Pacos, which are sheepe, which we may well tearme the Alles of that Countrie; whereof we shall speake in their place. And vpon the Ander they finde Apes, very gentle and delightfull, and Parrots in great

CH AP.2. &2. Fruitfull Vallies. Indian bread. Caufe of raine. Peru wine. numbers. There also they finde the herbe or tree which they call Cocs, that is so greatly effecmed by the Indians, and the trafficke they make of it, is worth much monv.

That which they call Sierre, caufeth Vallies, where as it opens, which are the best dwellings of Perm, as is the Valley of Xanca of Andagnaples, and Thesy. In these Valles there growes Wheat, Mays, and other forts of fruits, but less in one then in the other. Beyond the Citie of Cufco (the ancient Court of the Lords of those Realmes) the two ridges of Mountaines feparate themselues one from the other, and in the midst leave a Playne and large Champaigne, which they call the Province of Calles , where there are many Rivers and great store of fertile Pattures: there is also that great Lake of Titicaca. And although it bee a full foile, and in the to fame height and intemperature, that the Sierre, having no more Trees nor Forreits, yet the

want they have of bread is counterwailed with the rootes they fow, the which they call Papar, and they grow in the earth. This roote is the Indians foode; for drying it and making it cleane, Their bread they make that which they call Chappe, which is the bread and nourilhment of thole Prosinces. There are other rootes and small herbes which they eate. It is a healthfull sole, best peopled, and the richeft of all the Indies, for the abundance of Cattell they feede, as well of those that are in Europe , as Sheepe, Neat, and Goates, as of those of the Country, which they call Guanacos and Paces , and there are Rore of Partridges. Next to the Prouince of Callas, is that of Charcas, where there are hot Vallies very fertile, and very high Rocks; the which are very rich in mynes, so as in no part of the World thall you finde better nor fairer.

30 For that it is rare and extraordinarie to fee a Country where it neuer raines nor thunders; The reason men defire naturally to know the cause of this strangenesse. The reason which some give that why irraines haue nearly looked into it, is, that vpon that Coalt there sile no vapours, sufficient to engen-along the Section 1. der raine for want of matter; but onely that there bee small and light vapours, which cannot coaff, thepate breede any other then mifts and deawes, as wee fee in Emope, oftentimes vapours doe rife in the morning, which are not turned into raine, but into milts onely; the which growes from the substance, which is not groffe and sufficient enough to turne to raine. They say, the reafon why that which happens but fome times in Europe, falls out continually vpon the Coaft of Pers, is, for that this Region is very drie, and yeekle no geoffe vapours. The drinefe is knowne by the great abundance of Sands, having neither Wells nor Fountaines, but of fifteene Stades 30 deepe ( which is the height of a man or more ) and that is neere wnto Rivers, the water where-

of, piercing into the Land, gives them meants to make Wells. So as it hath beene found by experience, that the course of Riners being turned, the Wells have beene dried up, writill they returned to their ordinarie courfe; and they gaie this reason for a materiall cause of this effect, but they have another efficient; which is no teffe confidenable, and that is the great height of the Sierre, which comming along the Coalt, thatlowes the Limes; fo as it fuffers no winde to blow from the Land, but aboue the tops of their Mountaines. By meanes whereof, there reignes no winde, but that from the Sea, which finding no opposite, doth not press nor straine forth the vapours which rife so engender raine; fo as the shadow of the Mountaines keepes the vapours from thickning, and converts them all into miffs. There are some experiences agree

40 with this difcourfe; for that it raines vpon some small Hills along the Coast, which are least shadowed, as the Rocks of Asice and Arequips. It hath rained in some yeeres when as the Northerne or Easterly windes have blowne : yea, all the time they have continued, as it happened in feuentic eight, vpon the Laws of Tragillo, where it rained abundantly, the which they had not feene in many ages before. Moreover, it raines vpon the fame Coast in places, where as the Bafterly or Northerne windes be ordinarie, as in Gueyaquit, and in places where as the Land rifeth much, and turnes from the shadow of the Mountaines, as in those that are beyond Ariqua, Some discourse in this manner, but let every one thinke as he please. It is most certaine, that comming from the Mountaines to the Vallies, they doe viually fee as it were two Heauens, one cleere and bright aboue, and the other oblicure, and as it were a gray vaile spread So vnderneath, which couers all the Coaft : and although it raine not, yet this mift is wonderfulk

profitable to bring forth graffe, and to raife vp and nourith the feed : for although they have plentie of water, which they draw from the Pooles and Lakes, yet this moisture from Heauen hath fuch a vertue, that ceasing to fall upon the Earth, it breedes a great discommoditie and defect of graine and seedes. And that which is more worthy of admiration, the drie and barren Sands are by this deaw so beautified with grasse and slowers, as it is a pleasing and agreeable sight, and very profitable for the feeding of Cattell, as we fee in the Mountaine called Sandie, neere to the Ci-

New Spaine paffeth all other Prouinces in paftur's, which breedes infinite troopes of Horfe, Of the proper-Kine, Sheepe, and other Cattell. It abounds in fruit and all kinde of graine. To conclude, it is a tie of new Segme, of the 60 Country the best furnished and most accomplished at the Indies. Yet Peru doth surpasse it in one Spaine, of the thing, which is Wine, for that there growes store and good; and they daily multiply and in- other Lands. crease, the which doth grow in very hot Vallies, where there are waterings, And although there chep.22. be Vines in new Spaine, yet the grape comes not to his maturitie, fit to make Wine. The reason Peru wine. is, for that it raines there in July and August, when as the grape ripens: and therefore it comes

not to his perfection. And if any one through curiofitie would take the paines to make wine, it should be like to that of Genna and Lombardie, which is very small and sharpe, having a taste like vnto Verjuyce. The Ilands which they call Barlouente, which bee Hift aniela, Cuba, Port Ricco. and others thereabouts, are beautified with many greene pattures, and abound in Cattell, as Neat,
Sugar workes and Swine, which are become wilde. The wealth of these llands, bee their Sugar-works and Hides. There is much Caffia fistula and Ginger. It is a thing incredible, to fee the multitude of these merchandizes brought in one fleete, being in a manner impossible that all Europe should waste so much. They likewise bring wood of an excellent qualitie and colour, as Ebone, and on thers, which ferue for buildings and loyners. There is much of that wood which they call Lignum fanctum or Guage, fit to cure the pox. All these Ilands and others thereabouts, which are many, have a goodly and pleafant aspect, for that throughout the yeere, they are beautified with graffe and greene trees, fo as they cannot difcerne when it is Autumne or Summer , by reason of continuall moisture ioyned to the heat of the burning Zone. And although this Land bee of a great circuit, yet are there few dwellings, for that of it felfe it engenders great Arcabnos, as they call them, which be Groues or very thicke Coppiles : and on the Playnes there are many man rifites and bogs. They give yet another notable reason, why they are so smally peopled, for that
Indians wasted, there have remayined few naturall Indians, through the inconsideratinesse and diforder of the first Conquerors that peopled it : and therefore, for the most part, they vie Negros, but they cost deare, being very fit to till the Land. There growes neither bread nor wine in thefe llands, for that the too great fertilitie and the vice of the foile, fuffers them not to feede, but cafts all forth in graffe, very vnequally. There are no Oliue trees, at the leaft, they beare no Oliues, but many greene leaves pleafant to the view , which beare no fruit. The bread they vie is of Cagane, whereof we thall hereafter speake. There is gold in the Rivers of these Ilands, which some draw forth, but in small quantitie. I was little leffe then a yeere in these Ilands, and as it hath beene told me of the mayne Land of the Indies, where I have not beene, as in Florida, Nicaraona, Guatimals, and others, it is in a manner of this temper, as I have described : yet have I not let downe every particular of Nature in these Provinces of the firme Land , having no perfect knowledge thereof. The Country which doth most resemble Spaine and the Regions of Europe, in all the West Indies, is the Realme of Chille, which is without the generall rule of these other Provinces, being feated without the burning Zone, and the Tropicke of Capitorne. This Land of it felfe is 40 coole and fertile, and brings forth all kindes of fruits that bee in Spaine; it yeelds great abundance of bread and wine, and abounds in Pastures and Cattell. The aire is wholsome and cleere, temperate betwixt heat and cold, Winter and Summer are very diffinet, and there they finde great ftore of very fine gold. Yet this Land is poore and fmally peopled, by reason of their continuall warre with the Amicanes, and their Affociates, being a rough people and friends

Of the ma West.Chap-23.

There are great coniectures, that in the temperate Zone at the Amarike Pole, there are great and fertile Lands : but to this day they are not discovered, neither doe they know any other Land and the diner in this Zone, but that of Chille, and some part of that Land which runnes from Ethiopia to the stice of a whole Cape of Good Hope, as hath beene said in the first Booke; neither is it knowne if there becamy 40 habitations in the other two Zones of the Poles, and whether the Land continues and firetcheth to that which is towards the Amarike or South Pole. Neither doe we know the Land that lyes beyond the Straight of Magellan, for that the greatest height yet discovered, is in fifthe fixe degrees, as hath beene formerly faid; and toward the Artike or Northerne Pole, it is not known how farre the Land extends, which runnes beyond the Cape of Mendogin and the Calipbornes, nor the bounds and end of Florida, neither yet how farre it extends to the Welt. Of late they have discovered a new Land, which they call New Mexico, wherethey say is much people that speake the Mexican tongue. The Philippine; and the following Ilands, as some report that know it by experience, ranne aboue nine hundred leagues. But to intreat of China, Cochinchina, Siam, and other Regions which are of the East Indies, were contrarie to my purpose, which is onely to discourse of the West : nay , they are ignorant of the greatest part of America , which lyes betwixt Pers and Brefil, although the bounds be knowne of all fides, wherein there is diverfitic of opinions; some fay it is a drowned Land, full of Lakes and waterie places; others affirme there are great and flourishing Kingdomes, imagining there be the Paysin, the Dorado, and the Calas, where they fay are wonderfull things. I have heard one of our companie fay , a man worthy of credit, that he had feene great dwellings there, and the wayes as much beaten as those betwixt Salamanca and Villadillis, the which he did fee, when as Peter d'Orfua, and after, those that incceeded him, made their entrie and discourrie by the great River of Amazons, who beleeving that the Dorado which they fought, was farther off, cared not to inhabit there, and after went both without the Dorade, which they could not finde, and this great Province which they left. 60 To speake the truth, the babitations of America are to this day vnknowne, except the extremities, which are Peru, Brefil, and that part where the Land begins to straighten, which is the Riuer of Silner, then Tuennan, which makes the round to Chille and Charcas. Of late we have vnderstood by Letters from some of ours which goe to Saint Croix in the Sierre, that they goe dif-

couring of great Provinces and dwellings, betwixt Brefil and Pers. Time will reneile them, for as at this day the care and courage of men is great , to compasse the World from one part to another; fo we may believe, that as they have difcourred that which is now knowne, they may likewise lay open that which remaynes, to the end the Gospell may bee preached to the whole World, seeing the two Crownes of Portugal and Castile have met by the Bast and West, joyning their discoveries together, which in truth is a matter to be observed, that the one is come to Chime and lapan by the East, and the other to the Philippines, which are neighbours, and almost ioyning vnto (bina, by the West: for from the llands of Luffen, which is the chiefe of the Philippia nes, in the which is the Citie of Marille, vnto Macco, which is in the lle of Canton, are but foure

to force or a hundred leagues, and yet we finde it strange, that notwithstanding this small distance from the one to the other, yet according to their account, there is a dayes difference betwine them; fo as it is Sunday at Macao, when as it is but Saturday at Manille, and fo of the reft. Those of Macas and of China have one day advanced before the Philippines. It happened to father Alonge Sanches, of whom mention is made before, that parting from the Philippines , hee arrived at Macas the second day of May, according to their computation, and going to lay the Mafie of Saint Athenafim, he found they did celebrate the feaft of the Invention of the boly Croffe, for that they did then reckon the third of May. The like happened wnto him in another voyage

Some haue found this alteration and divertitie strange, supposing that the fault proceedes from 20 the one or the other, the which is not fo: but it is a true and well observed computation, for according to the difference of wayes where they have beene, we must necessarily fay, that when they meet, there must be difference of a day; the reason is, for that layling from West to East, they alwayes gaine of the day, finding the Sunne rifing fooner : and contrariwife, thole that faile from East to West, doe alwayes lose of the day, for that the Sunne riseth later vnto them; and as they approach neerer the East or the West, they have the day longer or shorter. In Pers, which is Westward in respect of Spains, they are about fixe hours behinde; so as when it is noone in Spaine , it is morning at Perm; and when it is morning here , it is mid-night there. I haue made certaine proofe thereof, by the computation of Eclipses of the Sunne and Moone. Now that the Portugals have made their navigations from West to East, and the Castillans from 30 East to West, when they came to loyne and meet at the Philippines and Macao, the one have gayned twelve houres, and the other hath loft as much ; fo as at one inftant, and in one time , they

finde the difference of foure and twentie hours, which is a whole day.

Although we finde vents of fire in other places, as Mount Atms and Veficino, which now Of the votices they call Mount Some, yet is that motable which is found at the Indies. Ordinarily thefe Poleans or Ventson be Rocks or Pikes of most high Mountaines , which raise themselves about the tops of all other fire. Chep. 24 Mountaines; vpon their tops they have a Playne, and in the midft thereof a pit or great mouth, which descends even vnto the foote thereof; a thing very terrible to behold. Out of these mouthes there issues smoake, and sometimes fire : some cast little smoake, and have in a manner no force of Volcans, as that of Arequips, which is of an vnmeasurable height, and almost all fand.

40 It cannot be mounted up in leffe then two dayes, yet they have not found any flow of fire, but onely the reliques of fome facrifices which the Indians made while they were Gentiles, and fometimes it doth cause a little smoake. The Volcan of Mexico which is neere to the Village of Angels, is likewise of an admirable height, whereas they mount thirtie leagues in turning : from this Volcan issueth not continually, but sometimes, almost every day, a great exhalation or whirle-winde of smoake; which ascends directly up like to the shot of a Crosse-bow, and growes after like to a great plume of feathers, vntill it ceafeth quite, and is prefently converted into an obfeure and darke cloude. Most commonly it riseth in the morning after the Sunne rising, and at night when it fetteth , although I have feene it breake out at other times. Sometimes it doth cast forth great store of ashes after this smoake. They have not yet seene any fire come from it; 50 yet they feare it will iffue forth and burne all the Land round about, which is the best of all the

Kingdome : And they hold it for certaine, that there is some correspondencie betwixt this Unla can and the Sierre of Tlaxcala, which is neere vnto it, that caufeth the great thunders and lightnings they doe commonly heare and fee in those parts.

Some Spaniards have mounted up to this Volcan, and given notice of the myne of fulphur to make powlder thereof. Corres reports the care he had to discouer what was in this Volcan. The Volcans of Guatimals are more renowmed, as well for their greatnesse and height : which those that faile in the South Sea discouer afarre off, as for the violence and terrour of the fire it casts. The three and twentieth day of December, in the yeere 1986, almost all the Citie of Gnatimala Terrible earthfell with an Earthquake, and some people slaine. This Volcan had then sixe moneths together, quate at Gua-

60 day and night cast out from the top, and vomited as it were, a floud of fire, the substance falling timele. vpon the fides of the Volcan, was turned into aftes like vnto burnt earth (a thing paffing mans judgement, to conceive how it could cast so much matter from its centre during fixe moneths, being accustomed to cast smoake alone, and that sometimes with small stashes.) This was written vnto me being at Mexico, by a Secretarie of the Audience of Guatimala, a man worthy of

Pricft.

credit, and at that time it had not cealed to cast out fire. This yeere past, being in Quitte in the Citie of Kings, the Volcan which is neere thereunto, cast such abundance of ashes, that in many leagues compasse thereabout it dar kned the light of the day : and there fell such flore in Quitte. as they were not able to goe in the ftreets. There have beene other Volcans feene which caft nesther imoake, flame, nor yet aftes, but in the bottome they are feene to burne with a quicke fire without dying : fuch a one was that which in our time a couetous and greedie Prieft feeing, perfwaded himfelfe that they were heapes of gold he did fee burning, imagining it could be no other matter or substance, which had burnt to many yeeres, and not consumed. And in this conceit he made certaine kertles with chaines, and an inftrument, to gather and draw up the gold out of this Pit or Volcan: but the fire scorned him , for no sooner did his Iron chaine and Caldron ap 10 proach neere the fire, but fuddenly they were broken in pieces. Yet fome told me, that this man was still obstinate, seeking other inventions for to draw out this gold as he imagined,

Some have held opinion, that these Volcous confirms the inner substance they have of Nature and for this reason they believe, that naturally they shall end, when as they have consumed the fuell (as a man may fay) that is within them. According to which opinion wee fee at this day, some Mountaines and Rocks, from whence they draw a burnt stone which is light, but yery hard, and is excellent to build with, as that which is carried to Mexico. And in effect there are some shewes of that which hath beene spoken, that these Mountaines or Rocks had somtimes a natural fire, which hath died after the matter was confumed; and fo these stones have remayned burnt and pierced with the fire as wee fee. For my part, I will not contradict it, that in those places there hath not beene fire sometimes, or Volcans. But there is some difficultie to be- 20 leeue it should be so in all Volcans, considering the matter they cast out is almost infinite; and that being gathered together, it could not bee contayned in the same concavitie from whence it goes. Moreouer, there are some Volcans, that in hundreds, yea thousands of yeeres are alwayes of one fashion, casting out continually smoake, fire, and ashes. Plinie the historiographer of naturall things (as the other Plinie his nephew reports) fearthing out the fecret how this should paffe : and approaching too neere the exhalation of fire of one of these Volcans, died; and thinking by his diligence to find an end thereof, had an end of his life. For my part, vpon this confideration I thinke, that as there are places in the earth, whose vertue is to draw vaporous matter. and to connert it into water, which bee the Fountaines that alwayes runne, and have alwayes a matter to make them runne, for that they draw vnto them the substance of water. In like fort there are places that have the propertie to draw vnto them hot exhalations, and to convert them into fire and smoake which by their force and violence cast out other thicke matter which diffolues into alhes, into pumice ftone, or fuch like fubftance: and for a fufficient argument to prote it to be fo in these Volcans, they fometimes cast smoake, and not alwayes, and sometimes fire, and not alwayes, which is according to that it can draw vnto it, and digeft, as the Fountaines which in Winter abound, and in Summer decrease; yea some are quite dried up, according to the force and vigour they have, and the matter that is presented ; even so it is of these Volcans, which cast fire more or leffe at certaine seasons. Others fay, that it is Hell fire, which issueth there, to ferue as a warning, thereby to confider what is in the other life : but if Hell (as Diuines 40 hold) bee in the centre of the Earth, the which containes in diameter aboue two thousand Bafil.Pfd. 18. b leagues, we cannot judge that this fire is from the centre; for that Hell fire (as Saint Bafil and others teach) is very different from this which wee fee, for that it is without light, and burneth without comparison much more then ours.

Some have held, that from these Volcans which are at the Indies, the Earthquakes proceede, quakes, Capas, being very common there : but for that they ordinarily chance in places farre from thois Volcans, it cannot be the totall cause. It is true they have a certaine simpathy one with another, for that the hot exhalations which engender in the inner concauities of the Earth, feeme to be the materiall substance of fire in the Volcans, whereby there kindleth another more groffe matter, and makes these shewes of slame and smoake that come forth. And these exhalations (finding no ea- 10 sie issue in the Earth) moue it, to issue forth with great violence, whereby wee heare that horrible noise under the Earth, and likewise the shaking of the Earth, being stirred with this burning exhalation; Euen as Gun-powlder in mynes, hauing fire put to it breaks Rocks and Walls: and as the Chefnut laid into the fire, leapes and breakes with a noise, when as it casts forth the aire (which is contayned within the huske) by the force of the fire : Euen fo these Earthquakes doe most commonly happen in places neere the water or Sea. As wee see in Europe , and at the Indies , that Townes and Cities fartheft from the Sea and waters are leaft afflicted therewith; and contrariwife, those that are seated vpon Ports of the Sea, vpon Riners, the Sea coast, and places neere vnto them , feele most this calamitie. There hath happened in Pers ( the which is wonderfull, and worthy to be noted) Earthquakes which have runne from Chille vnto Quitto, 60 and that is aboue a hundred leagues, I fay the greatest that euer I heard speake of, for lesser be more common there. Vpon the coaft of Chille (I remember not well in what yeere) there was so terrible an Earthquake, as it ouer-turned whole Mountaines, and thereby itopped the courie of Rivers which it converted into Lakes, it beat downe Townes, and flue a great number of people.

Great careb.

canfing the Sea to leave her place fome leagues, fo as the ships remayned on drie ground;, farre from the ordinate Reade, with many other heatie and horrible things. And as I well remember, they fay this trouble and motion, caused by the Earthquake, ranne three hundred leagues a. longft the Coaft. Soone after, which was in the yeere eightie two, happened that earthquake of Arequipa, which in a manner over-threw the whole Citie. Since in the yeere eightie face, the ninth of luly, fell another earthquake in the Citie of Kings, the which as the Vice-roy did write, had runne one hundred threefcore and ten leagues alongst the Coast, and ouerthwart in the Sierre liftie leagues. The mercy of the Lord was great in this Earthquake, to forewarne the Noyle before people by a great noile which they heard a little before the Earthquake, who taught by former the carchquake, 10 experiences, prefently put themselves in fafetie, leaving their Houses, Streets, and Gardens, to goe into the helds; fo as although it ruined a great part of the Citie, and of the chiefeft buils dings, yet theredied not about fifteene or twentie persons of all the Inhabitants. It caused the like trouble and motion at Sea; as it had done at Chille, which happened prefently after the

Earthquake, fo athey might for the Sea furioufly to flie out of her bounds, and to runnt neere two leagues into the Land, rifing aboue fourteene fathom : it courred all that Playne, fo as the Ditches and pieces of wood that were there; fwam in the water. There was yet another earthquake in the Realmeand Citie of Quare ; and it feemes all these notable Earthquakes vpon that Coaft, have fucceeded one another by order, as in truth it is fubicet to the feinconueniences. And therefore although woon the coast of Pers, there be no torments from Heaten, as thunder and so lightning, yet are they not without feare vpon the Land; and so every one hath before his eyes. the Heralds of dinine luftice, to mooue him to feare God. For as the Scripture faith, Petit has ve time arm. Returning then to our purpole, I fay the Sea coast is most subject to these earthquakes, Why the Sea the reason is , in my judgement , for that the water doctoftop the conduits and passages of the coast is subject earth, by which the her exhalations thould paffe, which are engendered there. And also the humiditig thickning the superficies of the earth, doth could the fumes and herex halations to goe elofe together and encounter violently in the bowels of the earth, which doe afterwards breake

Some haue obferned; that fuch Barthquakes haue vitality hapned, when as a raytheleason falls after fomedirle verres. Whiteupon they fay, that the Barthquakes are most rare; where are 30 most Wells, the which is appround by experience. Those of the Citie of Marco hold bonnion. that the Lake whereon it is leated, is the cause of the Earthquakes that happen shere? atthough they be not very violent : and it is most certaine, that the Townes and Promites . fairs within they be not very violent; and it is more cortaine, that the 1900 was an of rounces, have virous the Land, and farthest from the Sea, receive forestimes great loss by these Rachequakes, as who contributed the Land, and farthest from the same and in Land that of Ferrare, admissionly open this should. It Earthquake at Chine of Cabengaya at the Indian, and in Lade that of Ferrare, admissionly Sea, though with the Earthquake at Chine of the Cabengaya at the Landse, and in Lade that of the Cabengaya at the Cabengaya cilled Angelogo (White many Indiant dwelt that were Sorceters and Idolaters) fell fuddenly to in segunge. ruine; fo as a great part thereof was rayled up and carried away , and many of the fudicion fino- : :: 40 thered, and that which feemes incredible (yet testified by men of credit) the earth this was ruinet and to beaten downe, did runne and flide vpon the Land for the fpate of a league and a halfe with a asit had beene water or wate holten, foas it fropt and filled up a Lake and remayard to foread with his

ouer the whole Countrie.

è. I I I I. Of Metals in the Indies and especially of the Gold and Silver, and Quick silver.

Ecal are (as Plants) hidden and buried in the bowels of the Earth, which hatte fome Metals grow as conformitie in themselues, in the forme and manner of their production; for that we plants, tee and diffeouer euen in them, branches, and as it were a bodie, from whence they grow and proceede, which are the greater veines and the leffe, fo as they have a knitting in themselves ; and it seemes properly that these Minerals grow like ynto Plants, not that they have any inward pregratified life, being onely proper to Plants; but they are engendered in the have any inward pregratified life, being onely proper to Plants; but they are engendered in the bowles of the drawing, by the eventua and torce of the Sunne and other Plants, and in long continuance of time, they increase and multiply after the manner of Plants. And even as metals bee plants hidden in the earth, to wee may lay, that plants bet living Creatures fixed in one place. 60 whose life is maintayned by the nourithment which Nature furnisheth from their first beginning. But lining Creatwes surpalle Plants, in that they have a more perfect being; and therefore Animala. haue neede of a more perfect foode and nouriffiment; for the fearth whereof, Nature hath given them a mooning and teeling to discouer and discerne it. So as the rough and barren earth is as a subflance and nutriment for metals; and that which is fertile and better featoned a nourishment

Ecclef. 10.

for Plants. The same plants serve as a nourishment for living creatures, and the plants and living creatures together as a nourishment for men, the inferiour nature alwayes ferning for the mainer nance and fuffentation of the superiour, and the lesse perfect yeelding vnto the more perfect; whereby wee may fee how much it wants, that gold and filuer and other things which men fo much efteeme by their couetouinesse, should bee the happinesse of man, whereunto hee should tend, seeing they bee so many degrees in qualitie inferior to man, who hath beene created and made onely to be a lubiect to ferue the univerfall Creator of all things, as his proper end and perfeet reft; and to which man, all other things in this world, were not propounded or left, but to gaine this last end.

The disertitie of metals, which the Creator hath that up in the closets and concasities of the earth, is fuch, and fo great, that man drawes profit and commoditie from every one of them. Some serue for curing of diseases, others for armes and for defence against the enemies, some are for ornament and beautifying of our persons and houses, and others are fit to make vessels and Lron-workes, with divers faffinons of infiruments, which the industrie of man hath found out and put in practice. But about all the wies of metals, which be simple and natural, the commumication and commerce of men hath found out one, which is the vie of money, the which (as the Philosopher (aith) is the measure of all things. And although naturally, and of it selfe, it beebut one onely thing, yet in value and estimation we may (ay, that is is all shings. Money is vnto vs as it were, meate, clothing, house, horse, and generally whatsoever man hath need of. By this meanesall obeyes to money, and as the Wiseman faith, to finde an invention that one thing to should be all. Men guided or thrust forward by a naturall instinct, choose the thing most durable and most maniable, which is metall, and amongst metals, gave them the preheminence in this invention of money, which of their nature were most durable and incorruptible, which is filter and gold. A Wileman faid, that what a father doth to marry his daughter well, is to give hera great portion in marriage; the like hath God done for this Land fo rough and labourfome, gie uing it great riches in mynes, that by this meanes it might be the more fought after. At the west Indies then there are great store of mynes of all forts of metals, as Copper, Iron, Lead, Tinne, Quick-faluer, Siluer, and Gold: and among ft all the Regions and Parts of the Indies, the Realmes or Permabound most in these metals, especially with Gold , Silver, Quick-silver, or Mercurie, whereof they have found great flore, and daily discouer new mynes. And without doubt, ac. 30 cording to the qualitie of the earth, those which are to discover, are without comparison, farre more in number then those which are vet discovered ; yea, it seemes that all the Land is fowed with these metals, more then any other in the world that is yet known vnto vs, or that ancient

The reason why there is so great abundance of metals at the Indies (especially at the west of

writes, faying, that gold, filuer, and metals, grow naturally in land that is most barren and vn-

fruitfull. And wee fee, that in Lands of good temperature, the which are fertile with graffe and

fruits, there are feldome found any mynes; for that Nature is contented to give them vigour to 40

Of the onalitie and nance of Pers, as I have faid) is the will of the Creator, who hath imparted his gifts, as it pleafed him, the earth wher But comming to a naturall and philosophicall reason, it is very true, which Philosophical and philosophical reason, it is very true, which Philosophical and philosophical reason, it is very true, which Philosophical reason, it is very true, which Philosophical reason, and the property of ployed at the bring forth fruits more necessaries for the preservation and maintenance of the life of beatts and fed them, L4. ртарат снапу.

Writers have made mention of.

men. And contrariwile to lands that are very rough, drie, and barren (as in the highest Mountaines and inacceffible Rocks of a rough temper) they finde mynes of filtuer, of quick-filter, and of gold, and all those riches (which are come into Spaine fince the West Indies were discovered) have beene drawne out of such places which are rough and full, bare and fruitlesse : yet the taste of this money, makes these places pleasing and agreeable, yea, well inhabited with numbers of people. And although there be, as I have faid, many mynes of all kindes of metals as at the Indies, yet they vie none but those of gold and filter, and as much quick-filter as is necessarie to refine their gold and filuer. They carry Iron thither from Spaine and China. As for Copper, the Indians have drawne of it, and yied it for their armes, the which were not viually of Iron, but so of Copper. Since the Spaniards possessed the Indies, they have drawne very little, neither doe they take the paines to feeke out these mynes, although there bee many busying themselves in the fearch of richer and more precious metals, wherein they fpend their time and labour. They vie no other metals, as Copper, and Iron, but onely that which is fent them from Spaine, or that which remaines of the refining of gold and filter. Wee finde not that the Indians in former times vied gold, filuer, or any other metall for money, and for the price of things, but onely for ornament, as bath beene faid, whereof there was great quantitie in their Temples, Palaces, and Tombes, with a thouland kindes of veffels of gold and filter, which they had. They vied no gold nor filter to trafficke or buy withall, but did change and trucke one thing for another, as Plin. lib. 32.63. Homer and Plinie report of the Ancients. They had some other things of greater effeeme, which 60

went current among it them for price, and in stead of coine : and vnto this day this custome con-

tinues amongst the Indians, as in the Provinces of Mexico, in stead of money they vie Cacas,

(which is a small fruit) and there with buy what they will. In Pers they vie Coca, to the same end (the which is a leafe the Indians efterme much) as in Paraguay, they have stamps of Iron for

60 Now we will flew how they discouer the mynes of Silver, their veines, rootes ; and begin- Of the Silver ning: whereof lob speakes. And first I will fay, that the reason why they give silver she second at the Indian place among all other metals, is, for that it approcheth never to gold then any other, being more Chap.5. durable and leffe indamaged by the fire, and more mallable then any other: yea it patieth gold in brightnesse, beautie, and found, the which is cleere, and agreeable, for the colour is more confor-

coine, and cotton women in Saint Grace of the Sierre. Finally, the manner of the Indiane trafficke, and their buying and telling, was to exchange, and give things for things; and although there were great Martesand famous Faires, yet had they no neede of money, nor of Brokers, for that every one had learned what he was to give in exchange for every kinde of merchandife. Since the Spaniards entred, the Iudians have vied gold and filter to buy withall and in the beginning there was no coine; but filuer by weight was their price and money; as they report of the ancient Romans. Since, for a greater benefit, they have forged colores Mexico and Pers, yet Plin, lib. 33.5.4. vito this day they have not in the West lastes coyned any money of Copper or other metali but onely of filter and gold : for the richnesse of that Countrie bath not admitted nos received to fuch money as they call builtion, not other kindes of alloy, which they wie in Italie, and in other Prouinces of Europe; Although in fome llands of the Indies, as Saint Dominique, and Pere Ricce.

CH AF. 2. S.4. Lother coine Gold why the best mettall how drawne Silver.

they vie coine of leather, which is fquare, the which are current onely in those Hands phaning Coine of leather, little filuer or gold. I fay little, although there be much, for that no man digges it and refines it. there. But for that the riches of the Indies, and their manner to labour in the mynes, confifts of gold, fituer, and quick filter, I will speake something of thele three metals, leating the reft for the time. Gold amongst other metals bath beene alwayes held the most excellent; and wish reason, Of gold which being the most durable and moorruptible of all others; for fire which confluines and dismissible they siggs and her reft, amends it, and lungs it to perfection. Gold which hath often passed through the sire, refuse as the keepes his colour, and is most fine and pure; which peoperly is called (as Plinie faith ) Obrife, an whereof the Scripture makes to often mention and vie, which confumeth all other metals ( as

the fame Plane faith) doth not any thing walte gold, nor yet huit it neither is it eaten nor grow- Plan lib 33.6.30 ethold. And although his subfrance and body bee firme and folid; yet doth it yeeld and bow wonderfully; the Beaters and Drawers of gold know well the force it hath tobee drawne one without breaking. All which things well confidered, with other excellent properties, will give men of indgement to vaderstand, wherefore the holy Scripture doth compare Charitie to gold, To conclude, there is little neede to relate the excellencies thereof to make it more definable, For Cant. 3. the greatest excellencie it hath, is to be knowne (as it is) among & men, for the supreme power Pfel. 67. and greatnesse of the World. Comming therefore to our fubiedt; at the takes there is great a. 1. Reg. 6. bundance of this metall, and it is well knowne by appeaued Histories, that the highest of Pers did an not content themselves with great and small vessels of gold, as Pots; Cups, Gobiers, and Flagons; yea with Kowles or great Veffels; but they had Chaires also, and Litters of maffie gold ;

and in their Temples they had let vp mayne Images of sure gold, whereof they finde tome yet at Mexico, but not such those as when the first Conq serous came into the operand the other King-dome, who found great treasure, and without doubt a britis was march more hidden in the earth by the Indians. It would feeme ridiculous to repore thise they have made their horseshoots of filter for want of Iron, and that they have paintained bundled troubles for a bottle of same; and other ftrange things; and yet in truth this hathrome to pafe, yea and greater matteris. They See before in draw gold in those parts after three fores : or at the least; I have feene all three viodo fore in 1, des Sentes. related to disclony view and in He ther they finde gold in graines, in powlder, or in stone.

40 The most famous gold is that of Caranaga in Pers, and of Valdinia in Chille, for that is reflect with his alloy and perfection, which is twentie three Carnats and a halfe, and fometimes more. They make account likewife of the gold of Verague to bee very fine. They bring much gold to Mexico from the Philippines; and China, but commonly it is weake and of bale alloy. Gold is commonly found mixt with Silver or with Copper; but that which is mixed with filver is commonly of fewer Carrats then that which is mixed with copper. If there be a fift part of fil-uer, Plane faith, it is then properly called Electrum, which hath the propertie to fhine more at Planting the light of the fire, then fine gold or fine filter. That which is incorporate with copper its commonly of a higher value. They refine powldred gold in basons, washing it in many waters, vne till the Sand falls from it, and the gold as most heavie remayneth in the bottome. They refine it 50 likewife with quick-filter and ftrong water, for that the allum whereof they make this water

hath the vertue to teparate gold from droffe, or from other metals. After it is purified and mobten, they make Bricks or small Barres to carry it vnto Spaine; for being in powlder, they cannot transport it from the Indies, for they can neither custome it, marke it, nor take fay, wntill it bee molten. In the fleet where I came, which was in the yeare 1,85, the declaration of the firme Land was of twelue Caffons or Chells of gold, every Caffon at the leaft weighted foure Arobes, that is a hundred weight; and a thouland fiftie and fixe Mates from new Spaine, which was for

the King onely, belides that which came for Merchants and private men being regulared; and much that came varegiftred. This may fuffice touching the gold of the Indies, and now were will

mable and relembling the light, and the found more piercing, more lively, and more delicate. The mynesof fakuer are commonly found in Mountaines and high Rocks very defare, although they have fometimes beene found in Playnes and Champaines. There are two different kindes, the one they call firaging, the other fixed and feeled. The firaging, are pieces of metali found in certaine places, the which drawne away, there is no more found. But the fixed veines, are those which have a continuance in depth and length, like to great branches and armes of Trees; and when they finde any one of them, they commonly finde many in the same place. The manner to purge and refine filter which the Indian have vied, was by melting, in diffolining this made of metall by fire, which casts the earthly drosse apart, and by his force separates Silver from Lead, Tin from Copper, and other metals mixt. To this end they did build small Furnaces in places where as the winde did commonly blow, and with Wood and Cole made their refining, the which Furnaces in Peru they call Guerra . Since the Spaniards entred befides this manner of refining which they vie to this day, they likewife refine filuer with quick-filuer, and draw more by this meanes then in refining it by fire. For there is some kind of filter metall found which can by no meanes be purged and refined by fire, but onely with quick-filter. But this kinde of metall is commonly poore and weake, the which viually they finde in greatest abundance. They call that poore which yeelds leaft filmer, and great quantitie of other metall, and that rich which yeelds most file uer. It is ftrange to foe, not onely the difference betwirt the refining of metall by fire, and without it by quick-filuer, but also that some of these merals, which are refined by the fire, cannot welk be molten with any artificiall winde, as with bellowes; but when it is kindled and blowne with the naturall aire, or naturall winde. The metall of the mynes of Porce is eafily refined with bellowes, and that of the mynes of Posses cannot bee molten with bellowes, but onely by the breath of their Guerras , which are finall Furnaces upon the fides of the Mountaines , built exprefly where the winde lies, within the which they mele this metall; and though it be hard to yeeld a reason for this difference, yet is it most certaine and approved by long experience : so as the greedie defire of this metall to much valued amongst men, hath made them seeke out a thoufand gentle inventions and devices, whereof we will hereafter make mention. The chiefe places of the Indies from whence they draw filter, are new Spaine and Peru; but the mynes of Peru

farre furnifie the reft; and among it all others of the World, those of Posses.

Different effects of artificiall and natural winds Potoris described. Lany

Of the Mountaine or Hill of Potoza for famous, is fituate in the Province of Chareas, in the King-

tained Hill of dome of Pers, diffant from the Equinochill towards the South, or Pole Antartike, one and Potent, and the gwentie degrees and two thirds : to as it falls under the Tropicke, bordering upon the burning thereof Change Zone, and yet this Region is extremely cold, yea, more then old Caffile in the Kingdome of Spaine, and more then Flanders it selfe, although by reason it should be hot or temperate, in regard of the beight and elemation of the Pole where it is feated. The reason of this so cold a temperature, is the height of the Mountaine, whereis cold and intemperate winds continually blow, especially that which they call Thomekani, which is boistrous and most cold. It raines most commonly in lune, July, and August. The ground and soile of this Mountaine is drie, cold, and very vnpleafant, yea altogether barren, which neither engenders nor brings forth any fruit, graffe, por eraine ; it is naturally unhabitable, for the intemperature of the Heaven, and the barrenness of the Earth. But the force of filter, which drawes voto it the defire of all things, bath peopled this Mountaine more then any other place in all these Kingdomes, making it so fruitfull of all kindes of meaces, as there wants nothing that can be defired, yea, in great abundance; and although there be nothing but what is brought by carriage, yet every place abounds fo with Fruit, Conternet, exquifite Wines, Silkes, and all other delicates, as it is not inferiour to any other part. This Mountaine is of colour darke red, and is in forme pleating at the first fight, refembling perfeetly the fashion of a Panilion, or of a Sugar-loafe. It exceeds all other Hills and Mountaines about it in height. The way whereby they afcend, is very rough and vneuen, and yet they goe vp on horse-back. It is round at the top, and at the foot it bath a league in circuit. It containes from the ton to the bottom 1680.common yards, the which reduced to the measure of Spando leagues, 50 makes a quarter of a league. At the foot of this Mountaine there is another small Hill that rifeth out of it, in the which there hath beene somtimes mynes of metall dispersed, which were found as it were in purfes, and not in fixed or continued veines; yet were they very rich, though few in number. This small Rock was called by the Indians, Guayna Parazi, which is yong Parazi; at the foot wherof begins the dwellings of the Spaniards and Indians, which are come to the riches and worke of Porezi, which dwelling may containe fome two leagues in circuit, and the greatest traffick and comerce of all Perm is in this place. The mynes of this Mountaine were not digged nor discovered in the time of their Ingus, which were the Lords of Peru, before the Spaniards entred, although they had digged and opened the mynes of Porco, neer to Potoxi, diffant only fix leagues.

An Indian called Gualpa, of the Nation of Chumbibilea, which is a Province of Cufco, going 60

one day cohunt for Venison, passing towards the West whither the beast was fled, hee began to runne vp against the Rocke, which at that time was covered and planted with certaine Trees they call Quienes, and with thicke bushes, and as he strived to get vp a way which was somewhat rough and vneafie, hee was forced to lay hold upon a branch, which issued from a veine of a

filter myne ( which fince they have called Rich) which hee pulled vp , perceiving in the hole or roote thereof, metall, the which he knew to be very good, by the experience hee had of the mynes of Porce; and after finding upon the ground certaine pieces of metall, which lay broken and dispersed meete to this verne, being scarse well able to sudge thereof, for that the colour was spoyled and changed by the Sunne and raine; he carried it to Porce to trie by the Guerras (which is the triall of metall by fire ) and having thereby found the great riches and his happy fortune, he fecretly digged and drew metall out of this weine, not imparting it to any man, vitall that an Indian called Guarca, of the Valley of Xaura, which is voon the borders of the Citie of Kings. who remayning at Porce neere vinco Gualpa of Chambibiles ; perceived one day that hee made a 10 refining, and that his Wedges and Bricks were greater then fuch as were vivally made in choic

places : and alfo increating in his expense of apparell, having till then lined but bafely. For this region, and for that the metall his Neighbour refined was different from that of Parca, hee thought to different this feeret; and wrought fo, that although the other kept it as incretas hee could, yet through importunitie hee was forced to carry him who the Rocke of Posse, having enjoyed this rich treature full two moneths, And then Gualpa the Indian willed Guarca for his part to take a verile, which he had discourred neere to the rich veine; which at this day is called the veine of Diego Contento, that was not leffe rich, but more hard to digge and to draw forth; and fo by agreement they divided betweene them the richest Rocke in the world. It chanced after , the Indian Guinea finding fome difficultie to digge and draw forth his metall

20 being most hard, and the other Gualps refusing to impart any of his myne wato him , they fell at debate; fo as Guanca of Xaura grieued therewith, and with fome other discontents, difcovered this fecret vnto his Mafter called Villared a Spaniard, who then remayned at Porco. This Villared defirous to vinderstand the truth , went to Poteza, and finding the riches his Tanacona or fernant had discourred vnto him, caused the Indian Guanca to be inrolled, vndertaking with him the faid veine, which was called Gentene, they call it Vndertaking, that is as much as to note and marke the myne, and so much ground in circuit for him, which the Law graunts vnto thole that discouer any myne, or vnto thole that digge them : by meanes whereof, having discovered them to the Iustice, they remayned Lords of the myne, todigge and draw forth the filter, as being their owne, paying onely their duties wanto the King; which is 30 a fife part. So as the first discounte and inregistring of the mynes of Passes, was the one and

twentieth of Aprill, in the yeere of our Lord 1545. in the Territorie of Porce, by the faid Fal larged a Spaniard, and Guanca an Indian. Prefently after they discovered another veine, which they called the Veine of Tome, the which is very rich , although it be rough and very painfull to worke in, the metall being as hard as flint. Since the thirtie day of August in the lame yeere 1545, the veine called Mendiese was inrolled, and these are the soure principall veines of Potoza. They fay of the rich veine, the first that was discourred, that the metall lawaboue the ground the height of a Lance, like vnto Rocks, rayling the superficies of the Earth, like vnto a crest of three nundred foot long , and thirteene foot broad , and that this remayned bare and vncouered by the deluge, this veine having refifted the violence and force of the water, as 40 the hardest part. The metall was sorich as it was halfe filter, and this veine continued in his

bountie fiftie or threescore Stades ( which is the height of a man ) and then it fayled. Bresently after that the discouerie of Petozi was knowne in Pero; many Spiniarde, and the most pare of the Bourgeois of the Silver Citie, which is eighteene leagues from Potoza, came thither to take mynes : yea, there came many Indians from diners Provinces, especially the Guayzadores of Porce, fo as within a shore space it was the best peopled habitation of all the Kingdome. When as the Licenciate Pollo gouerned that Province, the which was many yeeres after the discouerie of this Mountaine, they did enery Saturday enter a hundred and fiftie and two hun-

dred thousand pieces, whereof the Kings fift amounted to thirtie and fortie thousand pieces; and for every yeere a million and a halfe, or little leffe. So as according to that computation they did draw every day from this myne thirtie thouland pieces, whereof there came to the King for Every piece 50 his fift, fixe thousand pieces a day.

There is yet another thing to bee spoken of, to shew the riches of Potozi, that the account tenn Rials which hath beene made, was onely of filter that was marked and customed. And it is well knowne in Pers, that they have long vied filter in these Realmes, which they call Currant, which was neither marked nor customed. And they hold it for certaine which know their mynes, that in these dayes, the greatest part of filuer drawne at Potoni, was not customed, and this had course amongst the Indians, and much amongst the Spaniards, as I have seene continued to my time; fo as it may appeare, the third part of the riches of Potozi, yea the one halfe came not to light, neither was it customed. There is yet a more notable consideration, in that which 60 Plinie faith, they had digged a fifteene hundred pales in the myne of Bebelle; and that continu- Flin. 116, 23: 6,6,

ally they found water, which is the greatest hinderance they have to draw forth their metall. But in this of Potozs, although they have digged two hundred stades or heights of a man in depth; yet did they neuer finde any water, which is the greatest happinesse of this Mountaine. But the mynes of Porce, whose metall is good and very rich , are at this day left for the discom-

moditie of water, which they have found in their worke; for they are two insupportable lasbours in fearthing of the metall; first, to digge and breake the Rocks, and then to draw out the water all together. The first of them, that is, to cut through the Rocks, is paine enough; yes very hard and excessue. Finally, at this day the King receives for his fift yeerly, from the mynes of Poresi, a million of filner, befides the wealth that growes by quick-filner, and other Royall prerogetues, which is a great treasure, Some men of judgement having cast up the accounts, fay, that what hath beene brought into the custome House of Porezi, voto the years of our Lord 1586, amounteth who a bundred thousand millions of pieces of Estay, whereof every piece is worth thirteene Rials and a fourth part, not reckoning the filter which hath beene carried a way without custome, or that hath beene entred in other Royall custome houses, or the filter that Io hath beene wrought in the Countrie, which is not entred, the which is innumerable, although the first Registers of Entries are not so exactly kept as at this day; for that in the beginning and first discourries, they made their receit by Romans, so great was their abundance,

But by the instructions and remembrances of Don Francisco de Toledo the Vice-roy , in the yeere of our Saniour Christ 1574, they finde seventie and fixe millions to that yeere : and from that yeste to eightie five inclusive, it appeares by the Royall Registers, there were thirtie five Huge fummes millions more entred. They fent this accompt to the Vice-ray from Peret, in the years I have mentioned, being then in Perm; and fince the wealth that hath come from Perm by thip, hach amounted to much more. In that fleet where I came in the yeere 1, 87, there were eletien millions transported in the two fleetes of Peru and Mexico, whereof two thirds were in that 20

of Pers, and almost the one halfe for the King.

This Rocke of Potezs, containes as I have faid, foure principall veines, that is, the Rub veine, that of Concere, that of Time, and that of Mendicia, All these veines are of the East part of the Mountaine, as looking to the Sunne rifing, for on the West part there is not any. The foresaid veines runne from North to South, which is from Pole to Pole. In the largest place they have fixe foot, and in the narrowest a span breadth. There are others of diners fashions that runne out of the faid veines; like as out of the great armes of Trees, there commonly iprout forth leffe. Euery veine hath divers mynes which are parts and portions of the same , distinct and divided betwire diners Masters, by whose names they are commonly called. The great myne containes founcore yards, neither may it be more by the Law, and the least containes 30 foure. All these mynes are at this day very deepe. In the Rich myne they reckon seventic eight mynes, which are eightic yards deepe, or a hundred stades or height of a man, and in some places two hundred. In the veine of Contene are source and twentie mynes, whereof some are seuentie or eightie stades deepe, and so of the other veines of this Mountaine. For a remedie to this great profunditie, they have invented mynes, which they call Secabones, which are cause or vents made at the foote of the Mountaine, the which goe croffing till they incounter with the veines : for we must vadentand, that although the veines runne North to South, as hath beene faid, yet is it in declining from the top to the foote of the Mountaine, which may be as they believe by conjecture, aboue twelve hundred stades. And by this account, although the mynes extend in fuch a profunditie, yet there remaines fixe times as much frace vnto the bottome of roote, the which they fay, are most rich and aboundant, as the body and spring of all veines. Although wnto this day we have seene the contrarie by experience, for the higher the weine is to the superficies of the earth, the more rich they finde it : and the deeper it goes, the poorer it is, and of the baser aloy. They then invented the Socrabons, by which they enter to worke in the mynes very eafily, with leffe charge, paine, and danger. They have eight foot in breadth, and a stade in height, the which they shut with doores. By them they drawe forth their metall very easily, paying to the proprietatie of the Secreben, the fift part of all Preinsa poins the metall they draw forth. There are nine alreadie made, and others are begun. They were nine and twentie yeeres in making of one Soccabon, as they call it, of the venome that flowes from the rich veine. It was begun in the yeere 1550, the eleventh yeere of the discoverie, and se was ended in the yeere 1585, the eleuenth of August. This Soccabon croffed the rich veine thirtie fine flades from the roote or fpring, and from thence where it met to the mouth of the myne, were a hundred thirtie fine stades. So as they must descend all this depth to labour in the myne. This Soccation containes from his mouth vnto the veine of Crufero as they call it , two hundred and fiftie yards, in which worke were fpent nine and twentie yeeres, whereby wee may fee what great paines men take to draw filter out of the bowels of the earth. They labour in their mynes in continuall darknesse and obscuritie, without knowledge of day or night. And foraimuch as those places are neuer visited with the Sunne; there is not only continuall darknesse, but alto an extreme cold, with fo groffe an aire contrarie to the disposition of man, so as, such as newly enter, are ficke as they at Sea. The which happened to me in one of their mynes, where 60 I felt a paine at the heart, and beating of the stomacke. Those that labour therein, vie candles to light them, dividing their worke in tuch fort, as they that worke in the day, rest by the night, and to they change. The metall is commonly hard, and therefore they breake it with hammers, splitting and hewing it by force, as if they were flints. After they carry up this metall

paines and darkneffe in the Mynes. and if in the Mindes farte more intolerable remay-

ypon their shoulders, by Ladders of three branches, made of Neats leather twisted like pieces of wood, which are croffed with staues of wood; so as by euery one of these Ladders they mount and descend together. They are ten stades long a piece : and at the end of one beginnes another of the same length, every Ladder beginning and ending at plat-formes of wood, where there are feates to reft them, like vnto galleries, for that there are many of thefe Ladders to mount by one at the end of another. A man carries ordinarily the weight of two Arrobes of Euery Arebe is metall vpon his shoulders, tied together in a cloth in manner of a skip, and so mount they three 25, pound, and three. He that goes before carries a candle tied to his thumbe : for (as it is faid) they have no light from Heauen, and so goe they up the Ladder holding it with both their hands, to nount fo great a height, which commonly is about a hundred and fiftie flades : a fearfull thing, and which breedes an amazement to thinke vpon it, fo great is the defire of Siluer, that for the game thereof, men endure any paines. And truly, it is not without reason, that Plinie treating of this fubiect, exclaimes and fayes thus, Wee enter even into the bowels of the Earth, Plin. in troom and goe busting after riches, even to the place of the dammed. And after in the same Booke hee 160,33,000. haith : Those ibat seeks for metals , performe worker more then Giants , making holes and caues in the darie of the Earth, parteing Mountagnes so deepe by the light of Candles, whereas the day and the night are able, and an many moments they see no day. So as often the malls of their myses fall, smothering many of them that labour therein. And afterwards hee addes, They pierce the hard Rocke with barmers of the medicine one hundred and fiftie panels, and draw out the metall upon them
with barmers of the medicine on branched and fiftie panels, and draw out the metall upon them
you foundars, the barriers day and subst, one elements but charge to another, and all in darksoff, onely to
all fees the light: with Wedget and Hummers they breaks the Fluit, how hard and firing feeser, for the burger of gold is yet were there and from the view of the transfer of the same of the The Chafe, whereof the one is commonly as hard as flint, and the other foft and eafie to breake. fine the metall This metall is not always equall, and of the tame bountie, for you shall find in one and the same of the tame to write, one for of metall very rich, which they call Caeille, or Tacesse, from which they draw Chep-

much filter; and another is poore, from whence they draw little. The most rich metall of this Mountaine, is of the colour of Amber, and the next is that which inclines to blacke. There is other fomewhat red, and other of the colour of albes; finally, of divers and fundrie colours, which 30 feeme to fuch as know them not, to bee finnesof novalue. But the mynera doe prefently know his qualitie and perfection, by certaine fignes and small raining they finde in them. They carry all this metall they draw out of these myses, Pyon Indian sheeps, which serve them as Asses are carry it to the Mills; the reithest metall is refused by melting in these small Furnaces, which they call Guerras, for that is most leadie, by reason whereof, it is most subject to melt, and for the better melting thereof, the Ludian caft in a matter, they sall Soroche, which is a metall full of Lead. The metall being in these Furnaces, the filth and satthie droffe, through the force of the fire, remaines in the bottome, and the Silner and Lead mele; to as the Silner farinment upon the Lead, vatillit bee purifici; then after they refine the filter many times after this manner of melting. They have visally drawne out of one Quintall of metall, thirtie, fortie, and fiftie pieces 40 of filter, and yet I have feene fome most excellent that have beene shewne me, where they have drawne in the melting two hundred, yea two hundred and fiftin pleees of filter of a Quincall of

metall; a rare wealth, and almost incredible, if we had not seene the trail thereof by see, but fuch metals are very rare. The poorest metall is that which yeelds two, there, fine, or like pieces, or little more. This metall hath commonly little Lead , box is drie , and therefore they cannot refine it with fire. And for this reason in Press, there was great ftose of shele poore metals, whereof they made no great account, but were rejected like firm, and suche skum of the good metall, vntill they found meanes to refine it by quick-filter; whereby the skum they called Omine be was of great profit, for the quick-filter by a frange and wonderfull propertie, purifies the tiluer, and is apt for these metals which are drie and poore, wherein they consume less quick-fil-So uer then in the richer : for the richer they are, the more need of quick-filter they have. At this

day the most vivall manner of refining in Posses, is by quick-filter, as also in the myner of Cacatecus, and others of new Spains. There were in old time upon the fides and tops of Passes, about fixe thouland Gaegree, which are small Furnaces where they melt their metall, the which were nee mounts oney in which are the bold by night; cating a light after of like a fame of placed like lights (a pleafant fight to behold by night) cating a light after of like a fame of fee. But a think say there are no about two thouland, for that (as I hair faid) they will limit fee. melting, but refine it by quick-filter, the which is the greatest profit. And for that the properties of quick-filuer are admirable; and that this manner of refining of filuer is remarkable, I will discourse of Quick-silver, of the Mynes and Worke, and what is requisite for that subject.

Quek-filter, to called by the Lainer, for that it runnes and flides finddenly from place to place; 60 among it all other metals hath great and wonderfull vertues. The first is, although it bee a true metall, yet is it not hard, neither hath it any terraine forme nor subfiftance like to other metals. but is liquid, not like vntogold and filter molten, but of his owne proper nature; and although it be a liquor, yet is it more heavie then any other metall : and therefore all others favim about and finke not to the bottome, being more light. I have feene two pounds of Iron put into a Iiii 2

Sympathic

barrell of quick-filter, the which did fwimme about like vnto Wood or Corke vpon the Wa-Pin. 1.33.66. ter. Plinie gives an exception bereunto, faying, That gold alone doth finke and not fwimme aboue it. I haue not feene the experience; but it may bee this growes, by reason that quickfilter by nature doth inuiron gold, and couers it, which is one of the most important properties it hath; for it joynes with gold in a ftrange manner, it feekes it where it lyes, and innirons it in fuch fort, as it doth diffinguish and separate it from any other body or metall wherewith it is mixt: for this reason such take gold as will preserve themselves from the dangers and discommodities of quick-filter. They have vsed a remedie to those (in whose cares they had put quick filuer, to cause them to die secretly) to put little plates of gold into their eares (for put quick-filter, to cause them to use section; you promise a grow that one that the vertice to draw out Mercurie) and after they drew out these plates all white that Gold bath the vertice to draw out Mercuries. Being made use of Mercuries. I went to fair to 10. with the quick-filter, it did flicke vnto them, Being one day at Madril, I went to fee the with the quiese which Leases do Trees (a rare works man of Miller) made for Saint Lear-exquitite works which Leases do Trees (a rare works man of Miller) made for Saint Lear-rence the Royal, it was my hap to be there one day, when as they gilded certains pieces of a countertable of braffe ; which is done with quick-filter; and for that the fume of Mercurie is mortall, he told me that the worke-men preferred themselves from this venome, by swallowing a double Duckat of gold rolled vp; the which being in the ftomacke, drawes vnto it all the quick-filter that enters in fume by the Eares, Eyes, Nostrils, and Mouth, and by this meanes freed themselves from the danger of quick-silver, which the gold gathered in the stomacke, and after call out by the excrements: a thing truly worthy of admiration. After the marke, and are that of the state of the stat separated from the gold his friend by the heate of the fire, the which purifies it from all quick-Plin.1.33. c.6, filuer. Plinie fayes, that by a certaine arte and invention they did separate gold from quickfilter. It feemes to me the Ancients had no knowledge to refine filter by quick-filter, which at this day is the greatest vie, and chiefe profit of quick-filier; for that he sayes plainly, that quick-filter toynes with no other metall bue with gold; and when hee makes mention of refining of filuer, hee speakes onely but of the manner of melting; whereby wee may interre that the Ancients had no knowledge of this fecret. In truth, though there be a league and fimpathy betwixt gold and quick-filuer, yet where as the Mercurie findes no gold, it ioynes with fil uer , though not in the like manner as with gold; but in the end , it doth clenle and purge it ter, accept to the terms and Lead, among free which the filter grower, without any needs of fireto melt it; yet muit they wis fire to sparate it from the filter, as I will flew hereafter. Quick-filuer holds no account of other metals, but of Gold and Silver; but contrariwife, it doth corrupt them, force and confume them, and flyeth from them as much as may bee. The which is likewife admirable, and for this carfe they put it in earthen veffels, or in beafts skins, For if it bee put in veffels of Copper, of Iron, or other metall, it prefently pierceth and corrupts them. And therefore Plinie callethic the poyfon of all things, for that it confumes and spoiles all. Wee finde quick-silver in the graves of dead men, which after it hath consumed the bodies, comes forth pure and whole. There hath beene likewise found in the bones and mar-Dones, comes force pure must write.

The word Men and Bearts; who that high referred it in films by the mouth and notifile, congeales washing them and piercech euro write be Bones! Therefore it is a different ching to frequent 6 40 perilloss got mortals creature. I that Nanother propertie, which is, to runne and make a hundred thou and final drops, whereof Notonor is full, bee they never to little, but they return energy way no their Juston. It is almost incorreptable, having nothing in a manner that may

Of the place filuer, and how red thefe rich mynes in Gu-

Quick-filter is found in a kinde of stone, which doth likewise yeeld Vermillion, which the Ancients called Museum, and at this day they call the Images of crystall Miniades, which are painted with quick-filuer. The Ancients made great account of this Minimus or Vermillion, holding ichor a facred colour, as Plinie reports, faying, That the Romans were accustomed to paint the face of Inputer, and the bodies of shofe that triumphed in Erbiopia: yes, their Idols and their Gouernours likewife had their faces coloured with this Minimum. And this Vermillion was 62 so esteemed at Rome (which they brought onely from Spaine, where they had many pits and mynes of quick-filuer, which continue there to this day) that the Romans fuffered it not to be refined in Space; left they should steale some of it, but they carried it to Rome, sealed up in a masse as they drew it out of the myne, and after refined it. They did yearly bring from Spains, especially

confume it. And therefore Plinis calls it the eternall fiweat. It hath yet another propertie, that

althougher doch leparate Gold from Copper, and rif other metals, yet they that will gild Cop-per, Braile, or Silver, wir quick aliverate the meanes of this vinion; for with the helpe thereof

they gildmetals. Amongst all the wonders of this firinge liquor that feemes to mee most wor-

thy obligation, than although it bes the weightieft thing in the world, yet is it converted in-

to the lightest of the world, which is imoske, and suddenly the same smooke which is so light

comming into a cold Ragion, fuddenty it thickens and is converted into quick-filter; and if you

fer him once againe to the fire, he doth likewife returne into fmozke, to be refolked againe m-

a thing, turnes againe into to heavie a fubftance, so is the proper liquide of quick-filter, where into it is distoluted; for this smoute encountring the metall on high, being a folid body, or

from Andalufie, about cen thouland pound weight, which the Romans valued as an infinite treasure, I have reported all this out of that Author, to the end that those which doe see what passeth at this day in Pera, may have the content to know what chanced in former ages, among the mighrieft Lords of the world. I speake for the Inguas Kings of Pern, and for the natural Indians thereof, which have laboured and digged long in these Mines of Quick-filter, not knowing what Quick-tiluer was, forking onely for Cinabrium or Vermillion, which they call Limps, the which they efteeme much, for that same effect that Plinie reports of the Romans and Ethiopians, that is, topaint the face and bodies of themselves and their Idols ; the like hath beene much practifed by the Indians, especially when they went to the warres, and wife it at this day in their feafts and dancing, which they call subbering, supposing that their faces and visages so subbered, did much terrifie, and at this day they field it for an ornament and beautifying; for this cause there were strange workes of Mines in the Mountaines of Guancauites, which are in Peru, neere to the Citie of Gamangua, out of the which they drew this Mettall it is of such a manner, that Labinith

if at this day they enter by the caues or Soccabones, which the Indians made in those dayes, they looie themielues, finding no passage out : but they regarded not Quick-Gluer, which naturally is in the same substance or mettall of Vermillion, neither had they knowledge of any űich matter.

The Indians were not alone for fo long a time without the knowledge of this treasure, but likewife the Spaniards, Who vntill the yeare 1566, and 1567. (at fuch time as the licentiate Ca-Stro gouerned in Perse discouered not the Mines of Quick-filter, which happened in this manner. 20 A man of judgement called Henrique Guarces, a Portugal borne, having a piece of this coloured Metrall, as I have faid, which the Indiani call Limpi, with which they paint their faces, as he found

beheld it well, found it to be the fame which they call Vermillion in Cafile : and for that hee knew well that Vermillion was drawne out of the fame mettall that Quick-filuer was, he con-

jectured thele Mines to be of Quick-filuer, went to the place whence they drew this Mettall, to make triall thereof. The which he found true, and in this fort the Mines of Palcas. in the territorie of Guamangua, being discouered, great numbers of men went thicker to draw out Quick-filter, and to to carry it to Mexico, where they sefine Silver by the meanes of Quick-filuer, wherewith many are inriched. This Countrie of Mines which they call Guarcaniles, was then peopled with Spaniards and Indians that came thirther, and come ftill to worke in thefe 30 Mines of Q ick-filuer, which are in great numbers, and very plentifull : but of, all thele Mines, that which they call a Manufor de Cubrera, or of Saints, is goodly and notable. It is a Rocked most hard Stone, interfaced all with Q isk-filter, and of that greatnesse, that it extends about fourescore Vares or yards in length, and fortie in breadth : in which Mine they have many pits, and ditches, of threefcore and tenne stades deepe, to as three hundred men may well worke together : fuch is the capacitie thereof. This Mine war discoursed by an Indian of Amader of Ca brera, called Nameropa of the Village of Acoria, the which Amador of Cabrera cauled to by registred in his name. He was in suite sgainst the Procurer ficall, but the viustrate was adjude ed to him by fentence as the diffouerert Since he fold his interest to another, for two hundred 40 and first chousand Decares, and afterwards chinking the had bindescened in the late. In spenimenced an action against the buyer, being worth at they lay, about find incaded thousand buyers, yea, lone holds to be worth a Million of Gold, a fact thing to be a Mine of

When as Don Francisco of Toledo gouerned in Pern, there was one which had bin in Mexica and observed how they refined Silver with Mercury, called Pero Fernandes de Valefco, who offred to refine Silver at Perezi, with Mercury : and having made triall thereof in the yeare 1.571.performed it with credit; then began they to refine Silver at Potozi with Quick-filger, which they transported from Guancanelicqua, which was a goodly helpe for the Mines; for by, the meanes of Quick-faluer they drew an infinite quantitie of mettall from thele Mines, whereof they made

so no accompt, the which they called Scrapings. For as it hath beene faid, the Quick, filmer purifies the Silver, although it be drie, poore, and of bale alloy, which cannot be done by melting in the fire. The Catholike King drawes from it Quick-filger mines, without any charge or hazard, almost foure hundred thousand pieces of a Mine, the which are foureteene rials a peece, or little leffe, befides the rights that rife in Potozi, where it is imployed, the which is a great riches. They doe yearely one with another draw from these Mines of Guancauilea, eight thousand quintals of Quick-filuer, yea and more.

Let vs now speake how they draw out Quick-filter, and how they refine Silver therewith. The manner They take the flone or mettall where they finde the Quick-filter, the which they put into the how to draw fire in porsof earth well luted, being well beaten, so as this mertall or stone comming to melt user, and so by the heate of the fire, the Quick-sider separates it selfe, and goes forth in exhibitation, and they chan the common than the c fometimes even with the smoake of the fire, vntill it incounters some body where it stairs and sin r. congeales, and if it paffe up higher, without meeting of any hard fubftance, it mounts up with Chap.12. it be cold, and then congeated, it tals downe againe. When the melting, is fullified, they visflop the pots and draw forth the mettall, sometimes staying vntill it be very cold, for it there

working.

remained any fume or vapour, which should incounter them that should vistop the pots, they were in danger of death, or to be benummed of their limbes, or at the least to loofe their teeth. And for that they Thend an infinitie quantitie of wood, in the melting of these mettals, a Miller called Rodrigo de Tores found out a profitable invention, which was, to gather certaine firaw which growes throughout all those Mountaines of Pera, the which they call Tebo, it is like vnto a hard reede wherewith they make their fire. It is a strange thing to see the force which this ftraw hath to melt and diffolue these mettals, the which fals out, as Plinie fales, that there is gold which melts more eafily with the flame of firaw, then with hot burning coales. They put the Onick-filuer thus molten into skinnes, for that it keepesbeft in leather, and in this fort they lav it into the King's flore-house, foom whence they carrie it by Sea to Arigns, and so to Potezi to by Land vpon their sheepe. There is yeerely spent in Potoze for the refining of Mettals, about fix or feuen thousand quintals of Queck-filter, besides that they draw from the Plates (which is Force of Straw the earth or droffe of the first walkings of these Mettals, which are made in caldrons.) The which plates they burne in their furnaces, to draw out the Quick-filter which remaines in them and there are ahoue fiftie of these Furnaces in the Citie of Potoxi, and in Tarpaya. The quantitie of mettals which they refine, (as some men of experience haue made the account) doth amount yearely to aboue three hundred thousand quintals; from the earth and droffe whereof being molt and refined, they may draw yearely about two thousand quintals of Quick-filuer, We must voderstand there are divers forts of mettals, for some yeelde much Silver, and waste little Quick-filuer : others confume much Quick-filuer, and yeelde little Siluer : aud there are others which confume much Quick-filuer, and yeeldes much Siluer; and others that confume little 20 Quick-filuer, and also yeelde little Siluer: and as men incounter in these mettals, so they grow rich or poore in their trafficke. Although tommonly the rich mettall yeeldes much Silver, and confumes much Quick-filuer; and likewise that which is poore, yeeldes little Siluer, and confumes as little Mercurie. They first beate and grinde the mettall very small, with hammers and other infruments, which beate this Stone like vnto canne Mils, and being well beaten, they fearce it in a copper fearce, making the poulder as small and fine, as if it were horse haire : these fearces being well fitted, doe lift thirtie quintals in a day and a night; then they put the poulder of the mettall into the veffels woon furnaces, whereas they anoint it and mortifie it with brine. putting to every fifthe quintals of poulder, fine quintals of Salt. And this they doe for that the 30 Salt seperates the earth and filth, to the end the Quick-filuer may the more easily draw the Silner vnto it. After they put Quick-filuer into a peece of Holland and preffe it out vpon the mettall, which goes forth like a dewe, alwaits turning and fluring the mettall, to the end it may

be well incorporate. Before the invention of these furnaces of fire, they did often mingle their mettall with Quick-Tiluer, in great troughes, letting it fettle fome daies, and did then mixe it, and ftir it againe, vir till they thought all the Quick-filter were well incorporate with the Silter, the which contimued twentie daies and more, and at the leaft mine daies. Since they discouered (as the defire to get is diligent;) that to shorten the time fire did much helpe; to incorporate Siluer the sooner with Quick-filter, they invented thefe furnaces, whereon they fet veffels to put in their mettall, 40 with Salt and Quick-filuer, and underneath they put fire by little and little, in furnaces made for the nonce vinderneath; fo as in fine or fix daies the Quick-filter is incorporate with the Siltier. And when they finde that the Mercurie hath done his part, and affembled all the Silver, leauing nothing behinde, but is well imbrued as a Spunge doth-water, diurding it from the Earth, Lead and Copper, with the which it is engendered. Then after they seperate it likewise from the Quick-filger, she which they doe in this lore; they put the Mettall in Galdrons, and veffels full of water, where with certains wheeles they turns the mettall round about, as if they should make Multard, and so the earth and drosse goes from the Mettall with the water that runnes away : The Silver and Quick-filver as most ponderous remaining in the bottome; the Mettall which remaines, is like vato Sand : then they take it out and wash it agains in great platters of 50 wood, or keelers full of water, still drawing the earth from it, untill they leave the Silver and Quick-filtier well clenfed. There flippes away also some small portion of Siluer and Quick-filter with the earth and drosse, which they call masters, the which they after wash againe and draw out the remainder. When the Silver and Quick-filver are clenfed and begin to fine, and that there remaines no earth, they put all the Mettall into a cloth, which they ftraine out very forcibly, fors all the Quick-filter paffeth out, being not incorporate with the Silver, and the reft remaines as a loafe of Siluer, like to a marke of Almonds prefled to draw oyle. And being thus preffed, the remainder containes but the fixt part in Silver, and five in Mercurie. So as if there remaines a marke of threefcore pounds, ten are of Siluer, and fiftie of Mercurie. Of these markes they make pinnes (as they call them) like pine apples, or fugar loanes, hollow within, the which 60 they commonly make of a hundred pound weight; then to separate the Silver from the Quickfillet, they put it into a violent fire, which they couer with an earthen veffell, like to the mold of a Sugar-loafe, or vnto a capuchon or bood, the which they couer with coales, and fet fire vntoit; whereby the Quick-filuer exhals in smoake, the which striking against the capuchon of

earth, it thickens and diffils, like vnto the smoake of a pot couered; and by a pipe like vnto a limbecke, they receive the Quick-filter which diffils, the Silver remaining without changing the forme, but in weight it is diminished five parts of that it was, and is spungious, the which is worthy the observation. Of two of these loanes they make one barre of Silver, in weight fixtie five or fixtie fix markes: and in this fort they carrie it to the touch, cuftome, and marke. Silver drawne with Mercurie, is so fine, that it neuer abates of two thousand three hundred and foure- Fine Silver for force of alloy, and this lo excellent, that the worke-men are enforced to alayit, putting fome worke must be mixture to it, as they doe like wife in their Mints, whereas their monie is ftampt. Siluer indures alloyed, all thefe martyrdomes (if we may to call it) to be refined, the which if we confider well, it is a to body framed where they grinde, fift; kneade, lay she leuen, and bake the Silver : befide, all this,

they wash it and wash it againe; they bake it and bake it againe, induring the petitis, sines, troughes, furnaces, caldrons, peedes : and finally, by the water and fire. I speake this, for that Mat 4. trongers, unitaces, care, I did confeder what the Scripture [peakes of the jult, Colobit ent is per Eccles. gabit quafi argentum: And that which they fpeake in another part. Sieut argentum pargatum Filit. terra, purganno feptuplum. So as to purific Silver, to refine and clenfe it from the earth and flone where it engenders, they purge and purifie it fluentimes; for in effect it passeth their hands feuen times, yea oftner, untill it remaines pure and fine; fo is it in the word of God, where the

foules must be purified, that stall inioy the heauenly perfection. To conclude this subject of Silner and of Mettals, there remaines yet two things to speake of To conclude this subject of squeer and or AMELERS, there remaines yet two tamings of operate or, gins to grade the one is of their Engins and Mils, the other of their elky or triall : I have faid before, how the Merail. they grinde their Mettall: for the receiuing of the Quick-filter, which is done with divers in- and of their fruments and Engins, fome with Hories like vnto hand-mile, others like Water-mile; of which triallof Silvers two forts there are great numbers. But for that the water they doe vie commonly, is but of Chap. 13. raine, whereof they have not sufficient but three months in the yeare, December, January, and Rebruary: for this reason they have made Lakes and standing Pooles, which contains in circuite about a thousand and fix hundred rods, and in depth three stades; there are seven with their fluces : fo as when they have neede of any water, they raife vp a fluce, from whence sunnes a little ftreame of water, the which they ftop voon holy dayes. And when the Lakes and Pooles doe fill, and that the yeare abounds with raine, their grinding doth then continue fix or feuen 30 moneths; fo as euen for Silver fake mendefire a good yeare of raine in Perezi, as they doe in other places for bread. There are some other Engine in Tarapaya, which is a valley three or foure leagues diffant from Potozi, whereas there runnes a Rineras in other parts. The difference of thefe Engins is, that some goe with fix pettels, some with twelve, and others with sourceene. They grinde and beate the Mettall in Morters, labouring day and night; and from thence they carry it to be firted, vpon the bankes of the brooke of Potoza. There are fortie eight Watermils, of eight, ten, and twelue peffels, and foure on the other fide, which they call Tanassonumns; in the Citie of Tarapaya, there are two and twentie Engine all vpon the water; besides there

are thirtie goe with Horfes in Potozi, and many others in diners parts, fo great the defire of man is to get Siluer, which is tried by deputies appointed by the King. To give the alloy to everie piece, they carrie the bars of Silver vnto the Affay Master, who give to every one his number, for that they carrie many at once, hee cuts a small peece of everie one, the which he weighs juffly, and puts them into a Crofes, which is a small vessell made of burnt bones beaten; after he placeth euery crufible in his order in the furnace, giuing them a violent fire, then the Mettall melteth, and that which is lead, goes into smoake, and the copper and tinne diffolues, the Siluer remaining most fine, of the colour of fire. It is a strange thing, that being thus refined, although it be liquid and molten, yet it neuer fpils, were the mouth of the crufible turned downewards; but it remaineth fixed, without the loffe of a droppe. The Affay Mafter knoweth by the colour and other figues, when it is refined, then doth he draw the crufibles from the fire, and weighes every peece curiously, observing what every one wants of 50 his weight; for that which is of high alloy, wastes but little, and that which is baser, diminisheth much; and according to the waste, he sees what alloy he beares, according to the which

he markes every bar punctually. Their ballance and weights are so delicate, and their graines so fmall, as they cannot take them vp with the hand, but with a small paire of pincers : and this triall they make by candle-light, that no ayre might moone the ballance. For of this little the price of the whole barre dependeth. In trueth it is a very delicate thing, and requires a great

Of Emeralds, Pearles, Indian Bread, Trees, Fruites, Flowers raturall, and carried thisher from Spaine.

Pli Ub.37. ca. 3.

T shall not be from the purpose, to speake something of Emeralds, both for that it is a precious thing, as Gold and Silver, as also that they take their beginning from Mines and Mettals, as Plinie reports. The Emerald hath bin in old time in great effectine, as the same Author writes, giving it the third place amongst all Iewels and precious to

Rones, that is , next to the Diamond and Pearle. At this day they doe not fo much effeeme the Emerald, nor the Pearle, for the great abundance brought of these two sorts from the Indiesonely the Diamond holds the principalitie, the which cannot be taken from it. Next, the Rubies come in price and other Stones, which they hold more precious then the Emerald. Men are fo delirous of fingularities and rare things, that what they fee to be common, they doe not effeeme. They report of a Spaniard, who being in Italie when the Indies were first discouered, shewed an

A pretty florie Emerald to a Lapidary, who asking him the value thereof, after he had well viewed it, being of an excellent luftre and forme, he prized it at a hundred Duckets: he then shewed him another greater then it, which he valued at three hundred Duckats. The Spaniard drunke with this difcourfe, carried him to his lodging, shewing him a Casket full. The Isalian feeing fo great a num- 20 ber of Emeralds, faid vnto him, Sir, thefe are well worth a crowne a peece. The Kings of Mexic co did much efteeme them; fome did vie to pierce their nostrils, and hang therein an excellent Emerald : they hang them on the vifages of their Idols. The greatest store is found in the new

Kingdome of Grenado, and Peru, neere vnto Manta and Port Vieil. There is towards that place How Emeralds a foile which they call, the Land of Emeralds, for the knowledge that they have of abundance to be there : and yet vnto this day they have not conquered that Land. The Emeralds grow in stones like vnto Christall; I have seene them in the same stone, fashioned like a veine, and they feeme by little and little to thicken and refine. I have feene fome that were halfe white, and halfe greene; others all white, and some greene and very perfit. I have seene some of the bignesse of a Nut, and there have bin some greater found : but I have not knowne that in our time an they have found any of the forme and bigaeffe of the plat or Iewell they have at Genes, the which they esteeme (and with reason) to be a lewell of great price, and no relique; yet with-

out comparison, the Emerald which Theophrasisus speakes of, which the King of Babylon presented to the King of Agypt, surpasseth that of Genes; it was foure cubits long, and three broad, and they fay, that in Impiters Temple, there was a needle or pyramide, made of foure Emeralds fromes of fortie cubits long, and in some places foure broad, and in others two: and that in his time there was in Torss in Hercules Temple, a Pillar of an Emerald. It may be (as Plinie faieth) it was of some greene stone, somewhat like the Emerald, and they called it a false Emerald. Church of cor. As some will say, that in the Cathedrall Church of Cordone there are certaine Pillars of Eme-

rakls which remaine fince it was a Mefquite for the Kings Miramamolins Moores, which reig- 40 ned there. In the fleete, the yeare one thousand fine hundred eightie and feuen, in the which I came from the Indies, they brought two chefts of Emeralds, every one weighing at the least foure Arabes, whereby we may fee the abundance they have.

Now that we intreate of the great riches that comes from the Indies, it were no reason to forget the Pearle, which the Ancients called Magnettes, and at the first were in so great estimation, as none but royall persons were suffered to weare them : but at this day there is such abundance as the Negres themselves doe weare chaines thereof; they grow in thels or Oysters, in eating whereof I have found Pearles in the middeft of them. Thele Oysters within are of the colour of heaven, very lively. In some places they make Spoones, the which they call Mother of Pearle. The Pearles doe differ much in forme, in bigneffe, figure, colour and polithing ; fo co likewise in their price they differ much. Some they call Aue Mariaes, being like the small grains of beades: others are Pater noffers, being bigger. Seldome fliall you finde two of one greatneffe, Plin, lib. 3, ea. 35. forme, and colour. For this reason the Komaus (as Plinie writeth) called them Unions. When as they doe finde two that are alike in all points, they raise the price much, especially for eare-rings.

I have feene some paires valued at thousands of Ducars, although they were not like to Cleonatraes two Pearles, whereof Plane reports, either of them being worth a hundred thousand Ducates, with the which this foolish Queene wonne a wager she had made against Marc Anton, to spend in one Supper aboue an hundred thousand Ducates, so at the lait course sheedisfolued one of these Pearles in strong Vinegar, and dranke it vp. They say the other Pearle was cut in two, and placed in the Pantheon at Rome, at theares of the Image 60

They fish for Pearles in divers parts of the Indies, the greatest abundance is in the South Seas, Pearle filhings. neere vnto Panama, where the Ilands of Pearles be, as they call them. But at this day they finde greatest store, and the best, in the North Seas, the which is neere to the River of Hache.

C. HAR. 2. S. 5. Parkle-divers long-breathed Mays described, divers wees thereof. 953

rid fee them make their filling, the which is done with great charge and labour of the poore flaues, which dine fix, nine, yea twelne fadomest into the Sea, to feeke for Oyfters, the which commonly are faftened to the rockes and gravell in the Sea: they pull them vp, and bring them Manner the about the water to their canoes, where they open them, drawing forth the treasure they have of. within thems. The water of the Sea in this part is very cold, but yet the labour and toile is greatelt in holding of their bretth, fometimes a quarter, yea halfe an houre together, being under Long winded she water at their fishing: And to the end these poore stues may the better continue and hold flanes, their breachs, they feede them with drie meates, and that in small quantitie, so as concrousnesses makes them abitaine and fast thus against their wils. They imploy their Pearles to diners works, and they pierce them to make chaines whereof there is great flore in enery place. In the yeare of 10 our Lord 1 (81: I did fee the note of what came from the Indies for the King : there were eigh-

teene Maces of Pearle, beides three caskers, and for particulars, there were twelve hundred threefore and foure Marks, and befales them, foren caskers not pierced, which heretofore we would haue effeemed and held for a lye.

They have (as we have here) a proper name, whereby they note and fignific bread; which at Pers, they call Tests, and in other places by another name. But the qualitie and fubflance of Man.they.16. the bread the Indians vie, differs much from ours; for we finde nor they had any kinde of Wheat or Barley, nor any other kinde of graine which they vie in Emope to make Bread withall : in-Read whereof they vied other kindes of graines and rooses, among the which May holds the We tall it alie first place, and with reason, in Castile they call it Indian Wheat; and in Italie they call it Turkey Vogalanheat

20 grains. And even as W heate is the most common graine for the vie of man, in the regions of the oldworld, which are Europe, Afia, and Affrica : So in the new found world, the most common graine is Mays, the which is found almost in all the Kingdomes of the West Indies, as at Pern, new Spaine, in the new Kingdome of Granais, in Gaminalla, in Chille, and woon the maine Land, I doe not finde that in old time, in the Hands of Barlowente, 20 Cuba, Saint Deminique, Iamaique, and Saint lean, that they vied Mays : at this day they vie much Tues and Cacami, whereof we will presently intreate. I doe not thinke that this Mays is any thing inferiour to our Wheate, in frength nor fubstance, but it is more bot and groffe, and engenders more bloud, whereupon they that have not beene accultomed thereunto, if they extetoo much, they fwell and become fcab- Howit growed bed. It growes vpon Canes or Reedes; enerie one beares one or two branches, to the which the 30 graine is faltened, and although the graine be bigge, yet finde they great flore thereof , fo as in

forme clusters I have told feuen hundred graines. They must plant it with the hand one by one, and not verie thicke; it defires a hot and a moift ground, and growes in great abundance in ma- I have had it ny places of the Indies. It is not drange in choic Countries to gather three hundred Faingnes, or tipen reasons measures for one sowen. There is difference of Mayl'as there is of Wheate, one is great and b very nourithing, another fmall and drie; which they call Morecht; the greene leanes and canes den in affer, of May, is a good foode for their Males and Horfes, and it forces them for flraw when it is dried; the graine is of more nourifhment for Horles then Barley; and therefore in those Countries, they vic to water their Hories before they eate, for if they flould drinke after, they would Swell as when they eate Wheate. Mays is the Indians bread, the which they commonly eate 40 boiled in the graine hot, and they call it More, as the Chinois and Ispanois eare their Rice fod-

den with the hot water : fometimes they eate it baked. There is fome Mays round and bigge, as that of Lucina, which the Spaniards cate rofted as a delicate meat, and bath a better tafte then Buarbenfer, or rofted peafon. There is another kinde of eating it more pleafant, which is, to grinde the Mays, and to make small cakes of the flower, the which they put in the fire, and then bring them hot to the Table. In some places they call them Areps. They make also round bowles of this paste, and so trimme them that they continue long, eating it as a daintie dish. They have invented at the Indies (for friandise and pleasure) a certaine kinde of paste, they

doe make of this flower mixt with Sugar, which they call Bifcuits and mellinders. This Man ferues the Indians, not onely for bread, but also for wine : for they doe make their drinke there-50 of, wherewith they are sooner drunke then with wine of Grapes. They make this wine of Mage in divers forts and manners, calling it in Peru, Acua, and by the most common name of the Indies, Chiche. And the ftrongest is made like vnto Beere, steeping the graine vntill it breaks. Mak & strong After they boile it in such fore, that it growes so strong, as a little ouerthrowes a man. In Perm drinke made of they call this Sore, it is defended by the Law, for the great inconveniences that grow thereby, it, making men drunke. Bas this Law is ill observed, for that they vie it still; yez they spend whole daies and nights in drinking carowles.

There is another mauner of making this Acesa or Chieha, which is to champe the Mays, and make a leuen thereof, and then boile it : yea the Indians hold opinion, that to make good leuen, 60 it must be champed by old withered women, which makes a man ficke to heare, and yet they doe drinke it. The clerdiest manner, the most wholesome, and that which least harmeth, is to rouit the Mays, which the most civill Indians doe vie, and some Spaniards, yea for physicke: Chica good a For in effect they finde is a very whole tome drinke for the reines, to as you shall hardly finde gainst the any one at the Indies complaine of paine in the backe, for that they doe drinke of this Chicha. Stone.

Of the Indical

The Spaniands and Indians cate this Mays boyled and realted for daintiness, when it is tender in the grape like milke, they put it into the pot, and make fauces that are good to eate. The buds of Mays are very fat, and ferue inflead of Butter and oyle : for as this Mays at the lades ferues both for men and beafts, for bread, wine, and oyle. Of Yucas, cofa- In some parts of the Indies they vie a kinde of Bread they call Capani, which is made of a cor-

un Papa, Chunes taine roote they call Tuca. This Tuca is a great and groffe roote, which they cut in small morand Ru. Chap. 17. fels, they grate or scrape it, and then par it in a presse to straine, making a thinne and broad cake thereof, almost like vnto a Moores Target or Buckler; then doe they drie it : and this is the Bread they eate. It hath no taffe, but is healthfull and of good nourishment. For this reason we faid, being at Saint Dominieke, that it was the proper foodefor great eaters, for that they 10 might eate much, without any feare of furfetting. They must of necessitie water this Cacase before they eate it; it is flarpe, and eafely watered with water or broath, wherein it is very good, for that it (wels much, and so they make Capirotades, but it is hardly steeped in Milke. Hony of Canes, or in Wine, for that their liquors cannot pierce it, as it doch Bread made of Wheate. Of this Cagani there is one kinde more delicate then any other, which is that they make of the flower called Xauxau, which they doe much efteeme in those parts. For my Inice of Corani part, I efteeme more a morfell of Bread, how hard and blacke focuer. It is a ftrange thing that the muce or water that commeth from this roote when they firaine it, which makes the Carani, is a deadly poifon; and kils any that drinkes thereof : but the substance that remaineth, is a very

wholesome Bread and nourishment, as we have said. There is another kinde of Tuca, which they call Sweet, and hath not this poifor in the juyce:

those parts,

this is eaten in the roote boiled or roafted, and is good meate. Cagani will keepe long, and therefore they carrie it to Sea instead of Biscuit. The place where they vie most of this Bread, is at Wheat, why it the Handstof Barlonente, which are Saint Dominicke, Cuba, Port Ricco, lamaique, and fome ogroweth not in there thereabouts; for that the foile of thefe Ilands will neither beare Wheate, nor Mans; for when as they fowe Wheate, it comes up well, and is prefently greene, but so viegually as they cannot gather it; for of the feede fowen, at one inftant fome is ipindled, fome is in the eare, and some doth but bud, one is great and another little, one is in the graffe and another in the graine: and although they have carried labourers thither, to fee if there were any tillage or Art to be vfed, yet could they finde no remedy for the qualitie of the earth. They carry Meale from new 30 Spaine or the Canaries, which is fo moift, that hardly can they make any profitable Bread, or of good take. The Wafer-cakes wherewith they fay Maffe, did bend like to wet paper, by reafon of the extreame humiditie and heate which are joyntly in that Countrie. There is another extreame contrarie to this, which hinders the growing of Mays or Wheate in some parts of the Indies, as on the height of the Sierre of Pers, and the Provinces which they call of Colas. which is the greatest part of this Realme, where the climate is so cold and dry, as it will not fuffer any of thefe feedes to grow : inflead thereof the Indians vie another kinde of roote, which they call Papas : these rootes are like to ground Nuts, they are small rootes, which castout many leaues. They gather this Papas, and dry it well in the Sunne, then beating it, they make that which they call Chano, which keepes many daies, and ferues for bread. In this Realme 40 there is great trafficke of Chame, the which they carry to the Mines of Potoni: they likewise eate of their Paper boiled or roalted : there is one fweete of their kindes, which growes in hot places, whereof they doe make certaine fawces and minced meare, which they call Locro. To conclude, these rootes are the bread of that Land; so as when the years is good, they reloyce. much, for that oftentimes they freeze in the earth, fo great is the cold of that Region : they carrie Mays from the Valley or Sea-coast, and the Spaniards which are daintie, carrie likewise from the fame places Wheate-meale, whereof they doe make good Bread, because that the Land

Belides Papas, which is the principall, there is Ocas, Tanococas, Camotes, Vatas, Xiquimas, Tuca, Cochneba, Cami, Totora, Mani, and an infinite number of other kindes, as the Patatres, which 50 grow arthe in they cate as a delicate and toothsome meate. They have likewise carried fruites to the Indies from these parts, the which prosper better there, then the Indian Plants doe, brought into Europe, There are other rootes that ferue them for dainties, as the Cochucho: it is a finall fweete roote, which some proude for more delight. There are other rootes fit to coole, as the Piquima, which is the qualitie very cold and moift, and in Summer it refresheth and quencheth the thirit; but the Papas and Ocas, be the chiefe for nourishment and substance. The Indians efterme Garlike

bres.Pines.or

Of divers forus about all the rootes of Europe, and hold it for a fruite of great force. Seeing we have begunne with the leffer Plants, I might in few words, touch that which conand Pulles, and cernes Flowers and Pot-hearbes, and that which the Latines call Arbaita, without any mention of Trees. There are some kindes of these shrubbes at the Indies, which are of verie 60 good tafte. The first Spaniards named many things at the Indies with fuch Spanish names, as they did most refemble, as Pines, Concombrer, and Primes, although they be very different fruites to imall fruits of those which are so called in Spaine. The Pines, or Pine-aples, are of the same fashion and forme ontwardly to those of Castile, but within they wholly differ, for that they have neither Apples,

nor scales, but are all one siesh, which may be eaten when the skin is off. It is a fruite that hath an excellent smell, and is very pleasant and delightfull in taste, it is full of myce, and of a sweete Pines, and flarpe tafte, they eate it being cut in moriels, and fleeped a while in water and falt. They grow one by one like a cane or stalke, which rifeth among it many leaues, like to the Lillie, but fomewhat bigger. The Apple is on the top of euerie cane, it growes in her and moift grounds. and the best are those of the Ilands of Barlomente. I have seene in new Spaine, conference of these Pines, which was very good. Those which they call Concombres, are no trees, but shrubbes, continuing but one yeare. They give it this name, for that fome of this fruite, and the most part, is in length, and roundneffe like to the Concembres of Spaine: but for the reft they differ 10 much, for they are not greene, but violet, yellow, or white, neither are they thornie or rough, but pollished and euen, having a verie different tafte, and farre better then that of Spaine, for they have a sharpe sweete talte, very pleasant when it is ripe, yet is it not so sharpe as the Pine. They are very coole, full of liquor and of easie digestion, and in time of heate fit to refresh. They take away the rinde which is white, and all that remaines is meate. They grow in a temperate foile, and require watering. And although for the refemblance they call them Concombres, yet are there many of them round, and others of a different fathion : fo as they have not the figure of Concombres. I doe not remember to have feene this kinde of fruite in new Spaine, nor at the lands, but vpon the Lanes of Pers. That which they call the little fruite of (bille, is of the same fort, verie pleasant to eate, and comes neere the safte of Cherries, 20 but in all other things it differs much; for that it is no tree, but an hearbe, which growes little and spreads upon the earth, casting forth this little fruite, the which in colour and graines, resembles almost the Mulberie, when it is white and notripe, yet is it more rough and bigger then the Mulberie. They say this little fruite is naturally found in the fields of Chile, where I have seene of them. They let it vpon Plants and branches, and it growes like any other shrub. Those which they call Praises, are verily the fruits of trees, and have more refemblance then the reft to our Plumbs, But to returne to Pot-hearbs, I finde not that the Indians had any Gardens of divers Hearbes and Plants, but did onely till the Land in some parts for pulles, which they vie, as those which they call Frifoles and Palares, which serue them as our Lentils, Beanes, or Tares: neither haue I knowne that these Pulles, or any other kindes that be in Earspe, were there be-

30 fore the Spaniards entred, who carried Plants and Pulles from Spaine thither, where they now grow and increase wonderfully, and in some places exceeds greatly the fertilitie of these parts. As if we speak of Mellons which grow in the Vallie of There, in Peru, whose roote becomes a stalk Palics, Melons As it we speak or menons which grow in the values a manufacture root source becomes a and Pompens that continues many yeares carrying Mellons yearely, and they trimme it like vnto a tree; a carried out of thing which I doe not know to be in any part of Spaine. But that is more monftrous of the Ca- Emore and libules or Indian Pompions, and the greatnesse they have as they grow, especially those which their are proper to the Countrie, which they call Capalles, the which they ease most commonly in these. Lent, boiled and trimmed with some other sawce. There are a thouland kinder of Cathaf- These cathafes for, some are so deformed in their bignesse, that of the zinde out in the middest and clean- seemeth. Gainfed, they make as it were baskets to put in all their meate for their dinner. Of the my Gurras care to leffer they make Veffels to eate and drinke in, and doe trimme them handsomely for ma-

They have not found at the West Indies anie kinde of Spices, proper or peculiar to them, as Pepper, Clours, Cinamon, Nutmegs or Ginger, although one of our companie, who had trarepper, clours, chamon, reasons, sold vs , that in the Defarts of the Hand of Iamaigne he had chance found trees where Pepper grew. But they are not yet affured thereof, neither is there anic trade of these spices at the Indus. The Ginger was carried from the Indus to Hispaniala, and it hath multiplied fo, as at this day they know not what to doe with the great abundance they have. In the fleete the, yeare 1587, they brought 22053, quintals of Ginger to Senille: but the naturall spice that God hath given to the West Indies, is that we in Castill call Indian Pepper, and at so the ludies, Axi, as a genetall word taken from the first Land of the Ilands, which they conquered, In the language of Cufes, it is called Vobs, and in that of Mexico, Chili. This plant in well knowne, and therefore I will speake a little, onely we must winderstand, that in old time it was much eftermed amongst the Indians: that they carried into places where it grew not, as a Marchandise of consequence. It growes not upon cold grounds, as on the Sierre of Peru, but in hot Vallies, where it is often watered. There is of this Axi of diners colours, some is greene, some red, fome yellow, and fome of a burning colour, which they call Caribe, the which is extreamely tharpe and biting; there is another fort not fo tharpe, but is fo tweete, as they may eate it alone as any other fruit. There is some of st verie small and pleasing in the mouth, almost like to the fmell of Muske, and is verie good. That which is sharpe and biting in this Axi, be the veines

60 and the grain onely; the rest is not : for that they eate it greene & dry, whole and beaten, in the pot, and in fawces, being the chiefe fawce, & all the fpice they have at the Indies. When this And is taken moderately, it helps and comforts the stomack for digestion: but if they take too much, it hath bad effects, for of it felfe it is verie hor, fuming, & pierceth greatly, fo as the of thereof is presudiciall to the health of yong folkes, thisfely to the foule, for that it prouokes to luft, They

vie Salt to temper this Axi, having great force to correct it, and fo they moderate one with the other by the contrarietie that is in them. They vie also Tomates; which are cold and very wholesome. It is a kinde of graine great and full of inyce, the which gines a good tafte to sawce, and they are good to eate. They have generally throughout the Indian of this Indian Pepper, at the Hands, new Spaine, Porm, and all the rest that is discourred. And as Mays is the generall graine for Bread, so Axi is the most common spice for sawces.

tree,Chap.21.

956

The thing wherein was most resemblance, in my opinion, betwixt the Planes at the Indies. and those which the Ancients did celebrate, is the greatnesse of the leaves, for that these have them very great and coole. But in truth there is no more comparison nor relemblance of the one with the other, then there is (as the Prouerbe faith) betwixt an Egge and a Chefnut. For first, the ancient plane carries no fruite, at the leaft, they made no account thereof, but the chiefest reason why they efteemed it, was, for the shadow, for that there was no more Sunne vader a Plane than under a roofe. And contrariwife, the reason why they should regard it at the Indies, yea make great accompt thereof, is by reason of this fruite, which is very good; for they have little shade. Moreover, the ancient Plane had the body so bigge, and the boughs so spread, that Plinie Plin. lib. 2. 409.1: reporteth of one Licinius a Romane Captaine, who with eighteene of his companions dined at ease in th'hollow of one of these Planes; and of the Emperour Caine Caligula, who with eleven of his ghests feasted upon the top of another Plane, where he made them a sumptuous banquet. The Indian Planes have neither fo great nor hollow bodies, not fo broad boughs.

Pilibar eard. The leaves of the Indian Plane, are of a wonderfull bigneffe, and are, in a manner, fufficient to couer a man from the foote to the head. It is a Plant that makes a ftocke within the earth, out 10 of the which springs many and fundry siens and sprigges, divided, and not joyned together. These fprigges grow bigge, euery one making a small tree apart, and in growing they cast forth these leaues, which are of a fine, greene, smooth, and great as I have faid. When it is growne to the height of a stade and a halfe, or two, it puts forth one onely bough of fruite, whereon sometimes there are great numbers of this fruite, and sometimes lesse. I have told upon some of these boughs three hundred, whereof every one was a spanne long more or lesse, and two or three fingers bigge; yet is there much difference herein, betwixt some and others, they take away the rinde, and all the rest is a firme kernell and tender, good to eate, and nourishing. This fruite inclines more to cold then heate. They are accustomed to gather the boughes or clusters, as I have said, so being greene, and put them into vessels, where they ripen, being well couered, especially when there is a certaine hearbe mingled wish it, which ferues for this effect. If they fuffer them to ripen on the tree, they have a better tafte, and a very good fmell, like to Cambiffes or fweete Apples. They last almost all the yeare, for that there are atwaies your ones that grow out of this flocke; fo as when one ends, another beginnes to yeelde his fruite, the one is halfe ripe, and the other begins to bud answ, fo as one morgedes another, and the fruite continues the whole years. In gathering the cluster, they cut the forigge or stalke, for that it beares but one; and never but once that as I have said, the stalke remaines, and cash forth new stenes or stalkes, ontill it growes old and dies. This Plane continues many yeares, and requires much monfture, and a very hot ground. They put after at the foote of it, for the better entertaining thereof, and they make 10 imall groues and very thicke: the leafe is as broad as a sheete of Paper, or little lesse, and foure

Of Cacal and

Although the Plane be the most profitable, yet that Cacao is most esteemed at Mexico, and the Coes in Pers, in which two trees they have great superstition. The Caese is a fruite little lesse then Almonds, yet more fat, the which being roasted hath no ill laste. It is so much esteemed amongfithe Indian (yes and among the Spaniards) that it is one of the richeft and the greatest traffickes of new Spaine: for being a drie fruite, and that keepes long without cortuption, they carrie whole Ships loaden from the Bronince of Grantingalla: The laft years an Engall Pirat did burne in the Port of Guatules in news Spains, about a hundred thousand charges of Cacao. They vieit inflead of money, for with fine Cacaos they buy one thing, with thirtie another, and with 50 a hundred another, without any contradiction; and they wie to give it to the poore that beg for almes. The chiefe vierof this Caoso, is an adrinke which they call Chocholate, whereof they make great accompt in that Country, foolibly, and without realon; for it is loathfome to fuch as are not acquainted with it, having a skum or froth that is very upplealant to tafte, if they be not very well conceited thereof. Yet it is a drinke very much effeemed among the Indians, wherewith they feath Noble men as they paffe through their Countrie. The tree whereon this fruite prower, is of reasonable bigueffe, and well fashioned, it is so tender, that to keepe it from the burning of the Sunnit, they plant neere vnto it, a great tree, which feroes onely to shadow it, and they call it the mather of Cacao. There are places where they are like to the Vines and Oliuc trees of Spaine. The Promince where there is greatest abundance for the trafficke of Marchandis, 63 is Gustimalia. There growes none in Pers, but Coca, wherein they hold another great inperfittion which feemes to be fabulous. It is a kinde of Marchandife, by the which all their Markets and Faires are shade with great expedition. This Cocs whereof they make fuch account; is a small greene leafe, which groweth vpon I mall trees about a fadome high, and in hot and mostly grounds;

earry foure moneths it caffs forth this leafe, which they call Trefinites or Tremey; it requires great care in planting, being very tender, and much more to keepe it, when it is gathered. They lay it is order in long and narrow baskets, and fo lade their sheepe of the Gountry, which goe in troopes, with one, two, or three thousand baskets of this marchandise.

They bring it commonly from the Ander and vallies, where there is an extreame heate, and where it raines continually the most part of the yeare : wherein the Indians endure much labour and paine to entertaine it, and often many die; for that they goe from the Sterre and cold Of Maring The places to till and gather them in the Ander. Their vie is to carry it in their mouthes, chaw- nel carbenille. ing it, and facking out the juice, but they fivallow it not. They fay it gives them great cou- Ann, and co-20 rege, and is very pleasing ento them. They willingly imploy their money therein, and vie it as ton chep. 13.

Magney is a tree of wonders, whereof the Notaries or Chapetons (as the Indians call them) are Mayur. wont to write miracles, in that it yeeldeth Water, Wine, Oyle, Vinegar, Honie, Sirripe, Thred, Needles, and a thouland other things. It is a tree which the Indians' effectie much in new Spains, and have commonly in their dwellings fome one of them for the maintenance of life; it growes in the fields, and hath great and large leaves, at the end whereof is a strong and sharpe point, which ferues to faften little pins, or to few as a needle : and they draw out of this leafe as it were a kinde of thred which they vie. They cut the body which is bigge, when it is tender, wherein Manifold comis a great hollownesse, by which the subflance mounts from the roote, and is a liquor which they modifies of the

20 drinke like water, being fweeteand fresh. This liquor being fodden, turnes like Wine, which Magach growes to Vinegar, fuffring it to foure, and boiling it more, it becomes as home, and boiling it becames as frome; and boiling it halfs; it fermes as firrope: which is healthfull enough, and of good tafte; in my sudgement it is better then the firrope of Railons. Thus do they boile this liquor, and whe it in divers forts, whereof they draw a good quantitie, for that in some season they draw daily some pots of this liquor. There are also of these trees in Peru, but they are not so profitable as in new Spaine. The wood of this tree is hollow and foft, and ferues to keepe fire, like to the match of a harquebuze, and preferues it long : I have feene the Indians vie it to that end. The Tunall is another famous tree in new Spaine: if wee may call a tree a heape of leaves ga- Tunall tree.

thered together one vpon another, it is the ftrangelt falhiond tree of all other: for fift there 30 growes one leafe out of the ground, then another vpon it, and so one vpon one, till it commeth to his perfection; but as the leaves grow vp, and on the fides, those underneath doe become great, and loole in a manner the forme of leaves, making a body and branches, which are tharpe, pricking, and deformed, to as in some places they doe call it a Thiftle. There are Thiftles or wilde Tanalls, the which doe carrie no fruite, or elfe it is very pricking without any profit. There are likewife planted Tanalit which yeelde fraite mudi afteenied amongst the Indians, the which they call Tanas, and they are much greater then Plombes, and long. They open the shell which is far, and within it is meare and small graines, like to those of figgs; which be very sweetinely have a good taste, especially the white, which have a pleasing small, but the red are not visually to ood. There is another fort of Tanalls, which they esteeme much more, although it yeeldes no 40 fruit, yet it beares another commoditie and profit, which is of the graine, for that certaine small wormes breede in the leaves of this tree, when it is well husbanded, and are thereunto faffined, concred with a certaine small fine web, which doth compaffethem in daintily; and this is that Indian Cachenille, to famous, and wherewith they die in graine. They let it drie, and being dried, carrie it into Spane, which is a great and rich marchandife. The arobe of this Cochemile or graine is worth many ducats. In the fleete, the yeare 1587, they did bring fine thousand fix hundred fe-

and fiftie peeces, and commonly there comes every yeare as great a wealth. These Tweals grow in temperate grounds inclining to cold. In Pers there growes none to this day. I have feene some Plants in Spaine, but they deserve not estimation, I will speake some. I thinke hee 50 thing likewife of the Asir, although it comes not from a tree, but from an hearbe, for that it or Indico of ferueth for the dying of cloth, and is a marchandife which agrees with the graine; it groweth which fee To I, in great abundance in new Spains, from whence there came in the fleete I mentioned 5263.aro- 14 in Fiebel bes, or there abouts, which amounted to fo many peeces. Cotten likewife growes vpon fmall lournal. shrubs, and great trees like to little apples, which doe open and yeelde forth this webbe, which coun. being gathered, they ipinne to make stuffes : and the yeare that I spake of, there came 64000. arobes.

uentie feuen arobes, which amounted to two hundred fourescore three thousand feuen hundred

These Plants we have spoken of, are the most profitable of the Indies, and the most necessarie of Maneys.

for the life of man : yet there are many other that are good to eate, among the which the Ma- Guerram, and mers are esteemed, being in fashion like to great Peaches, and bigger, they have one or two stones Pattor. Chap. 240 60 within them, and their meate is somewhat hard. There are some sweete, and others some what fowre, and haue the rinde hard. They make conferues of the meate of this fruite. which is like to Marmelade. The vie of this fruite is reasonable good, but the conferues they make thereof, are better. They grow in Ilands. I have not feene any in Pers. It is a great tree, well falhianed, and a reasonable faire leafe. The Guanyanos be other trees which commonly

carrie an ill truite, full of fowre kernels, and are like to tittle Apples. It is a tree little effermed upon the firme Land and at the llands, for they tay it finels like to the Pannifer. The taffe and fauour of this fruite is verie groffe, and the substance vaholesome. In Saint Dominique and other llands, there are whole Mountaines full of these Gunyanor, and they fay, there was no functional kindes of trees before the Spaniards came there, but that they brought them they know not from whence. This tree hath multiplied infinitely, for that there is no Beaft that will ease the kernels or the graine, fo as being thus feattered on the earth, being het and moift, it multiplies in this fort. In Peru, the Guayaner differs from others, for that the fruite is not red, but white nelther bath at any ill fmell, but is of a very good take; and of what fore of Gueranes focuer it be. the fruite is as good as the best of Spaine, especially of those which they call Granamos de Mass, and of other little white Guagnilles. It is a fruite reasonably holesome, and agrees with the fin mack, being of a strong digestion, and cold. The Paliss commonly are hore and delicare. The Palis is a great tree, and carries a faire leafe, which hath a fruit like to great Peares : within it hath a great flone, and all the rest is soft meate, so as when they are full ripe, they are as it were Butter, and hane a delicate tafte. In Perm the Palias are great, and hane a verie hard skale, which may be taken off whole. This fruite is most vivall in Mexico, having a thinne skinne, which may be pulled like an Apple : they hold it for a very holelome meate, and as I have faid, it declines a little from heate. These Mamayer, Guayanos, and Palios, be the Indians Peaches, Apples, and Peares; and yet would I rather choole them of Europe.

The Marmalad is that which they call Capeter, or Chicocapotes, which have a sweete taste, and neere vnto the colour of Marmalade. Some Crollos (for fo they called the Spaniards borne at the Indees ) Cay that this fruite paffeth all the fruites of Spaine in excellencie : yet am I not of that opinion. Those Chicocapetes or Capetes, wherein there is little difference, grow in the hotest parts of new Spaine, neither haue I knowledge of any such fruite in the firme Land of Pern. As for the Blanckemanger, it is that Annona or Guananana, which growes in the firme Land, which is falhioned like vnto a Peace, a little sharpe and opened, within it is white, tender and soft like Butter, iweete and of a pleasing taste : It is no white meate , though they call it Blanche.

There are some grosse Fruites, as those which they call Lucumes (of which fruite they speake Of many forts in a Prougebe, that it is a counterfet price.) The Guenes, Pacayes, Hubes, and the Nuts which they call Imprismed: which fruites feeme to many, to be the fame kinde of Nuts we have in Spaine, I doe not thinke it good to passe away under filence the Cocos or Indian Palmes, by reason of a verie Ander, and Al- notable propertie it hath. I call them Palmes, not properly, or that it beares Dates, but that they are trees like to other Palmes. They are high and drong, and the higher they grow, the broader they firetch out their branches, These Coon yorld a fruite which they likewise call Cocos, whereof they commonly make veffels to drinke in and fome they fay have a vertue against poilon, and to cure the paine in the fide. The nutte and meate being dried, is good to eate, and comes neere in take to greene Chefnuts. When the Coco is tender vpon the tree, the fubflance within it, is as it were Milke, which they drinke for daintinesse, and to refresh them in time of heate. I have seene of these trees in Saint Ican de Port Risco, and other parts of the Indies, and they report a wonder-40 full thing, that every moneth or Moone, this tree casts forth a new branch of this Coces; fo as it yeeldes fruite twelue times in the yeare, as it is written in the Apocalips: and in truth this feemes like vato it, for that all the branches are of different ages, some beginning, others being ripe, and fome halfe ripe. These Cocos are commonly of the forme and bignesse of a small Melon. There is of another kinde, which they call Coquilles, the which is a better fruite, whereof there be fome in Chile. They are somewhat leffe then Nuts, but more round. There is another kinde of Cocos, which have not the kernell fo cylie, but within they have a great number of fmall fruits like Almonds. like voto the graines of a Pomgranat.

These Almonds are thrice as bigge as those of Castillo, and relemble them in taste, though they be more sharpe, and likewise moist and oylie. It is a good meate, they vie it also in feating, for yo lacke of Almonds to make Marchpanes, and such other things. They call them Almonds of the Andes, for that these Cocos grow abundantly vpon the Andes of Pern; they are so fireng and hard, as to open them, they must beate them with a great stone, when they fall from the tree. If they chance to hit any one on the head, he hath no more neede of any Surgeon. It is an incredible thing, that within the hollow of these Cocos, which are no bigger than the rest, or little more, there are fuch a multitude of these Almonds. But as touching Almonds and other fruits, all trees must veelde to the Almonds of Chachapeyas, which I cannot otherwise call. It is the most plea-Of many and fing, delicate and wholesome fruite of all that I have feene at the Indies.

diver- flowers, The Indians are great louers of flowers, and in new Spains more then in any other part of the world, and therefore they are accustomed to make many kindes of Nofegaies, which there they 60 yeelde onely a call Suebiller, with fuch prettie varietie and art, as nothing can be more pleasing. They have a cuflower, & how ftome among & them, that the chiefest man offer their Suebises or notegaves in honour to Nothe ladient doe blemen, and to their ghests; and they presented vs with such abundance as wee passed richem.ch.17. through that Countrey, as wee know not what to doe wish them; and at this day they vie

the principall flowers of Castile, to that end, for that they grow better there than here, as Gilliflowers, Roses, Islanins, Violets, Orange flowers, and other forts which they have transported out of Spaine. The Role tree groweth too fast in Tome places, fo as they beare no Roles. It chanced one day that a Role tree was burned, and the fermy which proved one, prefently but a submitted as under the fermy should prove the control of the flags of the fermy should be controlled the control of the flags flags have used are should be controlled the controlled t ches, fo as at this day they yeelde reasonable store of Roles; But besides these kindes of flowers, which have beene transported from hence, there are many others, whose names I doe not know. whereof fome are red, blew, yellow, violet and white, with a thousand different colours, which the Indians did vie to carry on their heads, as feathers for ornament. True it is, that may of their to flowers are onely pleasing to the fight, having no good lauour, either they are groffe, or elfe they have none at all; and yet there be some of an excellent fent. As those which grow voon a tree tearmed by them Floripondis or carry flower, which beares no frinte, but onely thele flowers, which are greater than the Lillie, and are like to little Bels, all white, which have within them fmall threds, as we fee in the Liffie; it leanes not all the yeare to beare thele flowers, whose smell is wonderfull sweete and agreeable, especially in the coole of the morning. The Whose times in womentum weeter and agreeaute, superanty in the cools of the impringer like Victory Don Francisco de Tulcalo fent of the letters with King Philip, as a thing worthy to be planted in royall Gardens. In new Spaine the Indians' effectine much of a flower, which they call Dubsachal, which fignifiest flower of the heart, for that it bears the forme of a heart, and a not much leffe. The flower of Granadille is held for anadmitable thing, and they fay, it hath in it the markes of the Passion, and that therein they note the nailes, the piller, the whips, and crowne of thornes, and the wounds, wherein they are not altogether without realon, and yet to find out and observe these things, it requires some pietie to cause beleefe : but it is very exquisite and

faire to the eye, although it have no imell, &c. The balme which comes from the West Indies, is not of the same kinde of right Balme which Of Balme, they bring from Alexandria or Caire, and in old time was in Indea, which Indea (25 Plinie Writeth) did of all the world possesse this greatnesse, vatisli the Emperour Vepasian brought it to pinelista.c.15, Rome and into Italie. At the Indies I have seene the Tree from whence they draw the Balme, chap.18. which is as big as a Pomgranae tree, and something neere the fashion ; and if my memorie failes me not, it hath nothing common with the Vine, although that Strabe writes, that the ancient Strab. 16.16. 20 tree of Balme, was of the bignefic of a Pomgranae tree. But in their accidents & operations, their Geograp.

liquors are alike, as likewise they be in their admirable smels, & in the cure and healing of wounds in colour and fubftance, feeing they report of other Balmes that there is some white, vermillion, greene and blacke, the which is likewife feene in that of the Indies. And as they drew forth the ancient in cutting and making incisions in the barke, to cause the liquor to distill out, so doe they with that at the Indies, although it diffils in greater abundance. And as in the ancient there is one kinde which is pure, the which they call Opobalfamum, which be the verie teares that distill, fo as there is another fort which is not fo exquitite, the which they draw from the barke and leaves ftrained and boiled on the fire, the which they call Xilobal Jamum. The like is also in the Indian Balmes; there is one pure that diftils from the tree, and others that the Indians draw out 40 by ftraining and boiling the leaues and wood. The Apostolike Sea hath given libertie to give Creame of Balme at the Indies, and that they should vie it in Confirmation and other ceremonies

Next to Balme, Amber holds the second place : it is another liquor which is likewise sweet Of Amber and and medicinall, but more thicke, and turnes into a paste of a hot complexion, and a good per-other Oyles, fume. This Amber comes from new Spaine, which hath that advantage aboue other Provinces Gummes, and in Gummes, Liquors, and juyce of Trees, whereby they have fuch abundance of matter, for per- Drugs, which in Giammes, Enquois, and juye of trees, whereof there comes great flore, [pad or substepad, which they bring from the Indies is another kinde, Stores and Internse, which have excellent operations, and have a very good smell charge.

fit for fumigations, Likewife the Tacamabaea and Carama, which are also very medicinall. They

bring likewife from this Prouince oile of Africke, which the Physicians and Painters vie much, the one for plainters, the other no vernish their pictures. They bring also for the Physicians (A) fis fistula, the which growes plentifully in Saint Dominique. It is a great Tree, which carries their caffifula Canes as his fruit, They brought in the fleet wherein I came from Saint Dominique fortie eight Sakeparille. Quintals of Calfia fiftula. Salcepareille is not leffe knowne, for a thouland remedies wherein it is yied. There came in the fame fleet fiftie Quintals from the fame Iland. There is much of this Salcepareille at Peru, and most excellent in the Province of Guayaquil, which is vnder the Line. Many goe to be cured into this Prounce, and it is the opinion of fome, that the pure water onely which they drinke, gives them health, for that it passeth by rootes as I have said, from whence it drawes this vertue, to as there needes no great couering or garments to make a man sweat in

60 that Countrie. The wood of Guayac, which they call Lignum faultum, or Indian wood, growes Lignum vita; abundantly in the same Ilands, and is as heavie as Iron, so as it presently finkes in the water; hereof they brought in the same fleet three hundred and fifcie Quintals, and they might have brought twentre, yea, a hundred thousand of this wood, if there were vie for it. There came in the same fleet, and from the fame Hand, one hundred and thirtie Quintals of Brefil wood, the which is Kkkk 2

fiery red, lo wall knowne, and much vied in dying and other things. There are at the Indies infinite numbers of other aromaticall Woods, Gummes, Oiles, and Drugs, fo as it is not possible to name them all, neither doth it now much import. I fay onely, that in the time of the Kings In-Auncient Phys. gwas of Cufes, and the Mexicane Kings, there were many great personages expert in curing of diteales with timples, and aid goodly cures, having the knowledge of the many vertues and areperties of Herbs, Rootes, Woods, and Plants, which grow there, and whereof the Ancients of Europe have had no knowledge. There are a thousand of these simples fit to purge, &c. Woods are formany and great, that it hath beene needfull ( passing through some parts of the

Indies, elpecially where they newly entred ) to make their way , in cutting downe Trees, and pulling vp Bulhes, fo that (as some religious men haue written that haue tried it) they could not fomerimes have passed about a league in a day. One of our brothers ( a man worthy of credit) reported vnto vs, that being frayed in the Mountaines, not knowing which way hee Strange trank. Should pale, he fell among such thicke Bulhes, that hee was forced to goe vpon them, without fetting foot to the ground by the space of fifteen whole dayes : and to see the Sunne, or to make some way in this thicke Forest full of wood, hee was forced to climbe to the top of the highest Trees to discouer. He that shall reade the discourse of his travell , how often he was loft , and the wayes hee paffed, with the ftrange adventures that happened vnto him, the which I have written briefly, being to worthy the knowledge, and having my telfe travelled a little over the Mountaines at the Indies, were it but the eighteene leagues betwirt Nombre de Dios and Pana-Mountaines at the langer, water foreffs there are. So as having no winter in those parts, to nip them with cold, and the humiditie of the Heanens and Earth being fo great, as the Mountaines bring forth infinite Forests , and the Playnes which they call Samanas , great plentie of graffe: there is no want of Pasture for feeding of Timber for building nor of Wood for fuell. It is imposfible to fet downe the differences and formes of fo many wilde Trees, for that the names of the

greatest parç are vnknowne. Cedars in old time fo much efteemed, are there very common, both for buildings and ships, and

they are of divers forts, fome white, and fome red, very odoriferant. There are great store of Bay trees, very pleatant to behold upon the Andes of Perm, upon the Mountaines, in the Hands of Nicaragua, and in new Spaine. There are also infinite numbers of Palmes and Ceiuas , whereof the Indians make their Canoes, which are Boates made of one piece. They bring into Spains 30 from the Hanana, excellent timber, In the lland of Cuba, there are infinite numbers of like trees, as Ebene. Caouana, Grenadille, Cedars, and other kindes which I doe not know. There are great Pine trees in new Spaine, though they be not fo strong as those in Spaine; they beare no pignous or kernels, but emptie apples. The Oakes as they call them of Guayaquil, is an excellent wood and fweet, when they cut it; yea there are Canes or most high Reeds, of whose boughs or small reedes they doe make Bottles and Pitchers to carry water, and doe likewife vie them in their buildings. There is likewise the wood of Mausle or Fire, whereof they make masts for their thips, and they hold them as ftrong as Iron. Malle is a tree of many vertues, which caffeth forth fmall boughes, whereof the Indians make wine. In Mexico they call it the tree of Peru, for that it came from thence : but it grows also in new Spaine, and better then those in Pers. There are 40 a thousand other Trees, which were a superfluous labour to intreat of, whereof some are of an exceeding greatnesse, I will speake onely of one which is in Tlaco Changa, three leagues from Guaraca in new Spaine: this tree being measured within, being hollow, was found to have nine fadome, and without, neere to the roote, fixteene, and fomewhat higher, twelve. This tree was frooke with lightning from the toppe to the bottome, through the heart, the which caufed this hollownesse: they say that before the thunder fell vpon it, it was able to shaddow a thousand men, and therefore they did affemble there for their dances and superfittions: yet to this day there doth remaine fome boughes and verdure, but not much. They know not what kinde of tree it is, but they fay it is a kinde of Cadar. Such as shall finde this strange, let them Plin. lib.iz. e.r. reade what Pliniereporteth of the Plaine of Lidia, the hollow whereof contained fourescore foot 50 and one, and feemed rather a Cabbin or a Houle, then the hollow of a tree, his boughes like a whole wood, the shaddow whereof couered a great part of the field. By that which is written

deformed, even as did the auncient Gentiles, as some Writers of our time doe report, The Indians have received more profit, and have bin better recompensed in Plants that have ber that have beene carried from Spaine to the Indies, prosper well and multiply greatly : I know not whether I shall attribute it to the bountie of the Plants that goe from hence, or to the

of this Tree, we have no great cause to wonder at the Weaver, who had his dwelling and Loome

in the hollow of a Chefnut tree and of another Chefnut tree, if it were not the very fame, into

the hollow whereof there entered eighteene men on Horfebacke, and paffed out without diffur-

bing one another. The Indians did commonly vie their Idolatries in these Trees, so strange and

fruites which bin brought from Spaine, then in any other Merchandife, for that those few which are carried have bin ciri- from the Indies into Spaine, grow little there, and multiply not, and con trariwise the great num- 60 goodnesse of the soyle that is there. Finally, there is at the Indies any good thing that Spaine brings forth i in some places it is better, in some worse, as Wheate, Barley, Hearbes, and all

CHAP.3. S.4. Spanish-Indian berbs and fruits. Strange fig. tree, Wines. Sugars: 961

kinds of Pulses, also Lettuce, Coleworts, Radilhes, Onions, Garlike, Parlley, Turneps, Parlepeps, Becengenes, or Apples of loue, Siccorie, Beetes, Spinage, Peale, Beanes, Fetches : and finally, whatforeer groweth here of any profit, to as all that have woyaged thither, have beene curious to carry Seeder of all forts, and all have growne, although diversly, fome more, fome leffe. As for thole trees that have most abundantly fructified, be Orenge-trees, Limons, Citrons, and other of that fort. In some parts there are at this day, as it were whole Woods and Forrests of Orange trees: tha which feeming strange vnto me, I asked who had planted the fields with fo many Orange trees : they made me arriwer, that it did come by chance, for that Oranges being fallen to Natures had the ground, and rotten, their feedes did ipring, and of those which the water had carried away bandrie into divers parts, thefe Woods grew fo thicke: which feemed to mee a very good reason. I have faid that this fruite hath generally increased most at the lades, for that I have not beene in any place but I finde Orange trees, for that all their foile is hot and moift, which this tree most depiace out 1 mass Grange seems to that an utility of the state and the state and the state of the feene any where: Peaches, Preffes, and Apricockes have greatly multiplied, especially in new Spaine. At Pern there growes few of these kindes of fruites, except Peaches, and much leffe in the Ilands. There growes Apples and Peares, yet but fearcely : there are but few Plumbs, but aboundance of Figges, chiefly in Pers. They finde Quinces in all the Countrie of the Indies, and in new Spaine, in such aboundance, as they game ve fittie choice ones for halfe a rull. There is 20 great flore of Pomegranats, but they are all fweete, for the sharpe are not there efterned. There are very good Melons in some parts of Pers. Cherries both wildeand tame haue not prospered well at the Indies, the which I doe not impute to want of temperature, for that there is of all

fores, but to careleineffe, or that they have not well observed the temperature. To conclude, I doe not finde that in those parts there wants any daintie france; As for groffe fruites, they have no Beilletter nor Chefnuts, neither doe I finde that any baue growne there to this day. Almonda grow there, but rarely. They carry from Spaine, for fuch as are daintie mouthed, both Almonds, Muts, and Filberds: but I have not knowns they had any Medlers or Seruices, which im-

orts little.
There growes no Wine nor Grapes in the Ilands, nor firme Land, but in new Spaine, there Of Grapes, are fome Vines which beart Grapes, and yet make no. Wines: The cause is, for that the Grape ri- Vines, Oliuesa pens not well, by reafon of the raine that tale in the Mondalis of Iuly and August, which him. Muberies, ders their ripening, to as they serve onely to cates. They carry Wine out of Spaine, and from and Canes of the Conaries, to all parts of the Indies, except Perwand the Realme of Chille. There are fome Sugar Chap. 14. places where the Vinesare not watered, neither from heaven nor earth, and yet they increase an great abundance, as in the Valley of Tea, and in the disches that they call Villaceres, in which places they finde ditches, or th'earth funke downs among the dead Sands, which are thorowout the yeare of a wonderfull cooleneile, and yet is raines not shere at any time, neither is there any manner of meanes to water it artificially: the reason is, because the soile is spongious, and fucks up the water of the rivers that fall from the Mountaine, which mouthen these Sands, or tucks vp to evactor to the inclusion that the partial state, which motites the sands, or go did it it is the motificate of the Sea, as others hypofe, which pating out or this Sand, is the cute why it is not barren nor vaprofitable, as the Philosopher teaches. The Vines have so increased there, as for this cause onely the tithes of the Ghurches are multiplied fine or fix times double

within thefe twentie yeares. And it is strange, that in the Citie of Cases you shall finde ripe Grapes all the Grapes all the yeare long : the reason is (as they say) for that those Vallies bring forth fruits in years. divers moneths of the yeare, either for that they cut their Vines in divers feafons, or that this rarietie proceedes from the qualitie of the foile : but whatfoeuer it be, it is most certaine, there are some Vallies which carrie fruite all the yeare. If any one wonder at this, it may be he will wonder much more at that which I shall fay, and perchance not beleeve it. There are Trees in Pers, whereof the one part yeeldes fruite one fixe moneths of the yeare, and the other halfe part Strangefruely To yeeldes fruite the other fix moneths. In Malla which is thirteene leagues from the Citic of fying.

Kings, there is a Figge tree, whereof the one halfe which is towards the South, is greene, and veeldeth his fruite one feafon of the yeare, that is, when it is summer vpon the Sierre, and the other moitie towards the Laws or Sea coast, is greene, and yeeldes his fruite in the other contrarie season, when it is summer vpon the Laner, which groweth from the diners temperature, and the ayre which commeth from the one part, and the other. The revenue of Wine there is not finall, but it goeth not out of the Countrie, But the Silke that is made in new Spaine is transported into other Countries, as to Perm. There were no Mulberrie trees in the Indies, but fuch as were brought from Spaine, and they grow well, especially in the Prouince which they call

Miffreque, where there are Silke-wormes, and they put to worke the Silke they garher, white-60 of they make verie good Taffataes : yet to this day they have made neither Damaske, Sattin, nor Veluet. The Sugar yet is a greater reuenue, for they not onely ipend it at the Indies, but allo they earrie much into Spaine, for the Canes, grow exceeding well in manie parts of the Indies. They have built their engins in the Hands, in Mexico, in Peru, and in other parts, which yeeldeth them a very great reuenue.

Olines but

It was told me, that the engine for Sugar in Nafea, was worth yearly about thirtie thousand pieces of reuenue. That of Chicama toyning to Trucalle, was likewife of great reuenue, and shofe of new Spaine are of no leffe; and it is a strange thing to see what store they consume at the Indies. They brought from the Bland of Saint Dominique, in the fleet wherein I came eight hundred minetie eight shefts of Sugar, which being (as I did fee) shipped at Port Ricco (every cheft (in my opinion) weighed eight Arobes, every Arobe weighing five and twentie pounds , which are two hundred weight of Sugar) is the chiefe reuenue of theie Hands, fo much are men given to the defire of fweet chings. There are likewife Olives and Olivetrees at the Indies, Lay in Mexic co and in Pers, yet bath there not beene to this day any Mill for Oile, for that they cate all their Olines, and dreffe them well : they finde the charge is greater to make Oile then the profit, and to therefore they carry all the Oile they doe fpend from Spaine. And here we will end with plants.

### ð. VI. Of Beafts and Fowles in the Indics.

and will paffe to fuch beafts as be at the Indies.

of Kine, Cap. 33. O

Of beafts beat Finde there are three kindes of beafts at the Indies, whereof fome have beene sarried from Spense; others are of the same kinde we have in Europe, and yet not carried by 20 the Spaniards; and others are proper to the Indies, whereof there are none in Spaine, Of the first kinde are Sheepe, Kine, Goats, Swine, Horses, Asles, Dogs, Cats, and on ther such beasts, for there are of all these kindes at the Indies. The smaller Cattell have greatly

multiplyed, and if they could make profit of their woolls by fending them into Europe, it were one of the greatest riches the Indies had, for there the flocks of sheepe have great pastuers, where Store of theep, as their feeding failes not. In Pers there is fuch flore of pattures and feedings, as no man hath any proper to himfelfe, but every man feedes his troups where he pleafeth. For this reason there is commonly great store of flesh, and very good cheape, and all other things that come from sheepe, as Milke, and Cheese. For a time they loft their woolls, vitill that some began to hulhereby, a satisfy and cheek, and couring a why of their woods, yithit that one negation in bashit, and to make cloth and courrings, which hash been a great help end to the poorie fort of 30 the Countrie, for that the cloth of cloth late is very dear there. There are many Clothiers in From, but more in new Spalen, yet the Cloth late counts from Spalen is fare better, whether the wooll but more in new Spalen, yet the Wooll. bee more fine, or the workmen more expert. In former times there were men that did possesse three score and ten, yea a hundred thousand sheepe, and at this day they have not many lesse. If this were in Europe, it were a very great fubiliance, but in that Countrie it is but a meane wealth. In many parts of the Indies , and I thinke in the greatest part, small Cattell doe not increase and profit well, by reason that the graffe is high, and the foile so vicious, that they cannot feede so well as great Cattell.

And therefore there is an infinite number of Kine, whereof there are two kindes. Some are

tame and goe in troups, as in the land of Charca, and other Provinces of Pera, as also in all new 40

Spaine: from these tame Kine they draw such profit as they doe in Spaine, that is, the Flesh, But-

ported at once, How rich might Virginia become, if 1

Horfes.

ter, Calues, and Oxen to till the ground. The other kinde is wilde, which live in the Mountains and Forests, and therefore they tame them not, neither have they any master to whom they are proper, both for the roughnesse and thicknesse of the Forest, as also for the great multitude there is, and he that first kills them is the master, as of any wilde beast. These wilde Kine have so multiplyed in Saint Dominique, and thereabouts, that they troupe together in the fields and woods by thousands, having no master to whom they appertaine. They hunt these beasts onely for their hales, they goe to the field on horfe-backe with their weapons to hough them, courling the Kine: and when they have ftrucken any and flayed them, they are their owne, they flay them and car-Killed only for ry the hides home, leaving the fiefh, which every one neglects for the abundance there is, fo as 40 fome have testified in this Iland, that in some places the aire hath beene corrupted with the abundance of these flinking carkasses. The hides they bring into Spaine, is one of the best revenues of the Hands, and of new Spaine. In the fleet the yeere 1587, there came from Saint Dominique 35444. hides, and from new Spaine 64350. which they value at 96532. pieces, fo as when they discharge one of these fleets . it is admirable to behold the River of Senile . and in the Arcenall (where they valade) so many hides, and so much merchandize. There are also great numbers of Goats, whose chiefe profit is their tallow, besides their Kid-milke and other commodities, for that both rich and poore vie this tallow for lights. For as 'ere is a great quantitie, fo doe they make very good account of it; yea, more then of oile, but all the tallow they vie is enery of the Males. They vie their skins for shooes, yet I hold them not so good, as those which are carried from Castile.

Horses have multiplyed there, and are very excellent in many places; yea in many parts there are Races found as good as the best in Spaine, as well for passing of a Carrier, and for pompe, as also for trauell : and therefore they vie Horses most commonly, although there bee no want of CHAPIZ, S.6. Dogs wild Indian banting & game European beafts bow known, 052

Moyles, whereof there are many . especially where they make their carriages by land. There is no great numbers of A fles, having no great vie for them, neither for tranell nor ferutee. There are Affes. tome few Cameis 4 I have teene fome in Perw, that were brought from the Camerer; and have Cameis nome to want there a lattle. In Saint Dominique, Dogs have so multiplyed in number and bigness, blyed no multiplyed there a lattle. In Saint Dominique, Dogs multiplyed no said this day it is the scoupe and affliction of that Illand : for they exist the Sheepe, and goe in comness. troupes through the fields. Such that kill them are rewarded like to them that kill Wolues in Spaine. At the fielt there were no Dogs at the Indies but some beafts like vnto little Dogs, the which the Indiana call Ales, and therefore they call all Dogs that goe from Spaine, by the fame name, by reason of the referablance that is betwire them. The Indiana doe so loue these little Indiana Dogs. go Dogs, that they will spare their meat to feed them, so as when they trauell in the Country, they carry them with them power their shoulders, or in their bostoms, and when they are licke, they

cary turns with them, without shy vie burnely for companie.

It is certaine that they have carried from Spains all their beath whereof I have fooken, of Offencebedies which kinder there were showed act he fadar 5 which kinder there were showed act he fadar 5 which thinder there were showed as the fadar 5 when they were fifth discoursed about a hundred of samps. which kinder there were contest the Industry Wint they were first undertoot and industree of Lawrence years (ince; for behinds that it may be well approved by winterflet at this day liming; It is also a which in distinct argument to for chief the Industrie in their roughly, have my proper worder to flynife they found to the Contest of the Industries of thing, they tooke the word common to those places from whence they came. I have found this how they a good rule, to different what things the Indians had before the Spanishs came there, and what should passe 30 they had not for they gave names to those they had and knew before, and have given new names thinker, Cap 34. to their that are newly come vnto them which commonly are the same Spanifo names, although Note. they pronounce them after their manner, as for a Horse, Wine, and Wheat. They found of some forts of beatts that are in Europe, and were not carried thither by the Spaniards. There are Lions, Tigres, Beares, Boares, Foxes, and other fierce and wilde beafts, whereby we have treated in the first Booke, to as it was not likely they should passe to the Indus by Sea, being impossible to swim the Ocean ; and it were a folly to imagine that men had imbarked them with them. It followes therefore that this world toynes with " the new in some part; by which these beafts might paste, " But where? and so by little and little multiplyed this world. The Lions which I have seen, are not red, nel- our Nasigati. ther have they such haireas they visitly paint them with. They are grey, and not so furious as ons beyond to they seeme in pictures. The stations affectable in troupes to dunt the Lion; and make as it were a so, have been also they seeme in pictures. The stations affectable in troupes to dunt the Lion; and make as it were a so, have been also they seeme an experience of the seemes and the seemes and the seemes are seemed as the seemes and the seemes are seemed as the seemes and the seemes are seemed as the seemes are seemes as the seemes are seemed as the seemes ar circle, which they doe call Chare, wherewith they interion them , and after they kill them with wide Seas beftones, states, and other weapons. These Lions wie to elimbe trees, where being mounted, the twint. Indians kill them with Lances and Croffe-bowes, but more easily with Harquebuzes. The Tigres Lions. are more fierce and crueit, and are more dangerous to meet, because they breake forth and affaile Circles are v. are more treates in cases, and are more sungerous to mere, occupie two present optimal and are fed in bind men in treation: They are aported as the hilltoning righten definible them. I have heard force re- by Peffini, port that the fe Tigres were very first against the Indians, yet would they not advanture as all Tanas, &c vpon the Spaniards, or very little; and that they would choole an Indians in the middleft of ma- Tigres.

ny Spaniards, and carry him away. The Beares which in Cujoo they call Orsioners, be of the fame kinde that ours are; and keepe Beares, an in the ground. There are tew (warmes of Bees, for that their hony-combs are found in Trees, or Beta under the ground, and not in Hines as in Castile. The hony-combs which I have feene in the Prouince of Charem, which they call Chiguana, are of a grey colour, having little juyce, and are more like vnto iweet flraw, then to hony combs. They fay the Bees are little, like vnto Flies; and that they swarme under the earth. The hony is sharpe and blacke, yet in some places these is better, and the combs better fashioned, as in the Pronince of Tacaman in Chille, and in Carthagene. I have not feene not heard fpeake of wilde Boares, but of Foxes and other wilde bearls that Foxes and eate their Cattell and Fowle, there are more then their Shepherds would willingly haue. Be- beats of fides these beasts that are furious and hurtfull, there are others that are profitable, and have not spoile. beene transported by the Spaniards, as Stags and Deere, whereof there is great abundance in all 50 the Forefts. But the greatest part is a kinde of Deere without hornes, at the least, I have never Deere with-

feene nor heard speake of other, and all are without hornes like vnto Corear. It seemes not hard out hornes. to believe, but is almost certaine, that all these beasts for their lightnesse, and being naturally wilde, have passed from one World to another, by some parts where they toyne, seeing that in the great Hands farre from the mayne land I have not heard that there are any, though I have

We may more easily believe the fame of birds, and that there are of the fame kindes that wee of powers haue, as Partri ges, Turtles, Pidgeons, Stock-doues, Qualles, and many forts of Falcons, which which are they fend from new Spaine and Pern, to the Noblemen of Spaine, for they make great account of intre and are them. There are also Herons and Engles of divers kindes; and there is no doubt but these birds at the Indies, 60 and fuch like, have fooner passed thit her then Lions, Tigres, and Stags. There are likewife at the could passe Indies great numbers of Parrots, especially vpon the Andes of Pern, and in the llands of Pors thinker, Cap. 35: Ricco, and Saint Dominique, where they fire by flocks, as Pidgeons doe here. To conclude, birds with their wings may goe where they will; and truly, many kindes might well paffe the Gulfe, feeing it is certaine, as Plinie affirmeth, that there are many that paffe the Sea, and goe into Plinib. 10.6 x3.

ftrange Regions, although I have not read that any Fowle hath paffed by flight fo great a Gulfe.

as is the Indian Ocean, yet hold I it not altogether impolible, feeing the common opinion of

Mariners, that you shall finde them two hundred leagues and more from the Land. And as Aria

forle doth teach, that birds endure the water easily, having little respiration, as wee fee in Sea fowle, which dise and remayne long vinder the water. Even fo wee may fay, that the Fowle which be at this prefent wpon the mayne land, and in the Ilands at the Indies , might passe the Sea, reiting themselues in iome small Hands, or upon some land which they discoursed by a na-Pind 10.6.25. turall inflinct (as Plane reporteth of some) or peraduenture falling into the water, when they were wearie of flying, and after began their flight anew when they had a little refted. As for the Fowles which weefee in the Ilands, where there are no beafts, I believe certainly that they pal- le fed by one of the forefield meanes. But for other birds which we finde upon the mayne land, especially those whose flight is short, it is more credible that they came thither as the beafts did. which are of the same kindes that we have in Europe. For at the Indies there are great birds very heavie, as Eftridges, whereof there are many in Pera; which doe vie fometimes to terrifie the Indian theepe as they doe goe with their burthens.

But leading these birds that governe themselves without the care of man, but onely for hawking, let vs now speake of tame Fowle. I wondred at Hennes, seeing there were some at the Indies before the Spaniards came there, the which is well approued, for they have a proper name of the Countrie, and they call a Hen Gualpa, and the Egge Ponto, and they vie the fame prouerbe we doe, to call a Coward, a Hen. Those that were at the discouerie of the Hands of Seloman, doe 20 report that they have feene Hennes there like vnto ours: wee may conceine that the Hen being fo tame a Fowle, and to profitable, men might carry them with them when they paffed from one place to another, as we fee at this day the Indians in their travell carry their Hen with them, or chicken upon the burthen they have on their thoulders; and likewife they carry them eafily in their Cages of reedes or wood. Finally, there be at the Indies many kindes of beafts and birds, fuch as wee haue in Europe, as I have specified, and other forts which I leave to others to difcourse of It were a matter more difficult, to shew, and proue, what beginning many and fundrie forts of

be possible that beafts had, which are found at the Indies, of whose kindes we have none in this Continent. For if the Creator hath made them there, we may not then alleadge nor flie to Noahs Arke . neither 30 be any forts of was it then necessarie to saue all forts of birds and beafts, if others were to bee created anew. beafts, whereof Moreoner, we could not affirme, that the creation of the World was made and finished in fixe the lize are no dayes, if there were yet other new kindes to make, and specially perfit beafts, and no leffe excellent then those that are knowne vnto ws : If we say then that all these kindes of Creatures were preserved in the Arke by Nonb, it followes, that those beasts, of whose kindes wee finde not any but at the Indies, have pasted thither from this Continent , as wee have faid of other beafts that are knowne vnto vs. This supposed, I demand how it is possible that none of their kinde should remayne here? and how they are found there, being as it were Trauellers and Strangers? Truly

beafts and fowles from all their native diverlifted relidencies there who hat ir carried them shither ? or how came they all the world to the Arket (which no neural linking it such anging, there 3, feeing there 25, no thew nor remaynder of this and at once, could do and kept them fair in the Arket did 166 ethem to their defigned abotic state. For I had it workfitting the them to be a feet of the state of the with Metators to Dry, Americana not dround a with the Flond, And in the fame forugh to might be made for bedaff, Action other parts the support the Arts, or of the place where the Attended, not agree in gaussially to the Zebes, Eliphant, Riuerbolf, Coccollis, and Pares and Gamerica may be failed of a thought different parts and the support of the Arts of the fail ing neutrany to me sone, neispann, nucetonies, vroconies, and Paeve and Gamesei may be fail of a thouland diffe-many other hours recentres of discipant to neisburg neculiar cres-ture of many when Regions. In things about nature (as is both the hiftoir and my fairs of the Arie) we must flee necessity or assper, have neuer beens known, neither in shape nor name; neurall cause, For except we would imagine the mess part of the and whereof there is no mention made, neither a- 50 natural came, rot except we would make the many that are mong the Latines, not Greekes, nor any other Nations the colded Parks sha that that is from 57, South bittinds, to about of the world. We must then fay, that though all states is income, and royages may in this world diluted which exchants a publishic of first passages that the states came out of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit world diluted which exchants a publishic of first passages that the states came out of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit of the states are not considered to the state of the states are not of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit of the states are not of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit of the states are not considered to the state of the states are not of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit of the states are not states are not of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit of the states are not states are not of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit of the states are not states are not of the "Arks, yet by a natural limit of the states are not sta especially such as cannot endure cold, as our Author imagineth. For flint, and the providence of Heaven, divers kinds especially such as cannot ensure cook, as our number magnitude of the control of to England! And the Destro poer house from Name Zemblato Name;

to the State of the Destro poer house from Name Zemblato Name;

further and longer distances them is needland from Island to Islands to

the State of Confidence and Onen Gayands voyages, and other calcular tempers, as we doe see it chance in many things. For if wee
See in which by fishing, theremen might live long at Sea with their shall looke precisely into it, we shall finde that it is

60 witers and be carn; dby a higher consenting our runting grounders on proper and peculiar alone to the *ladier*, but generally to make the contract of the cont boands of their babitation, Ad. 17.20.

The first proit is a question that hath long held me in suspense. I say for example, if the sheepe of Pers, and
uldence which
those which they call Paces and Guanaces, are not found in any other Regions of the world, 40
those which they call Paces and Guanaces, are not found in any other Regions of the world, 40 certaine kindes of Creatures, that are not found in

other Regions, at the leaft if they be any where elfe, they are knowne to be carried from thence. Seeing then these Creatures came out of the Arke, as for example, the Elephant which wee finde onely in the East Indies, and from thence have beene imported to other Regions, wee may say as much of theie Creatures of Pers, and of others of the Inder, which are not found in any other

We may likewise consider well vpon this subject, whether these beasts differ in kinde, and essentially from all others, or if this difference be accidentall, which might grow by divers accidents, as wee fee in the linages of men , some are white , others blacke , some Giants , others Dwarfes : and in Apes, fome have no taile, others have : and in Sheepe, some are bare, others have fleeces; fome great and strong with a long necke, as those of Pon; others weake and little. having a short necke, as those of Castile. But to speake directly, who so would by this Discourse, thewing onely these accidentall differences, presente the propagation of beasts at the Indies, and reduce them to those of Europe, hee shall valertake a charge hee will hardly discharge with his honour. For if wee shall judge the kindes of beafts by their properties, those of the ladies are fo divers, as it is to call an Egge a Chefinut, to feeke to reduce them to the knowne kindes

#### Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and Venison.

20 THere are many kindes of notable Fowles at the Indies, either of the same fort that ours be, of of different. They bring certaine birds from China, that have no feete, and all their bodies See 106/101 are almost feathers. They sit not upon the ground, but hang upon boughs, by strings or feathers Tom. I. l.g. of which they have, and forest themselves like Flies or ayrie things. In Perm there are birds which such in Guinne they call Tommeior, to small, that often times I have doubted feeing them file, whether they Tommeior were Bees or Butter-flies; but in truth they are birth. Contrariwife, those which they call Condores, be of an exceeding greatnesse, and of such a force, that not only they will open a sheep Condores and eate it, but alfo a whole calfe. Those which they call Auras, and others Poullacier (which in my opinion are of the kinde of Runns) are of a strange lightnesse, and have a very quicke sight, Runns, being very sit to clense Cities, for that they leave no Carrion nor dead thing. They passe the discussions 30 night on Trees or vponRocks, and in the morning they come to the Cities and Towners, fifting 22 1134 on the tops of the highest buildings, where they attend their prey. Their yong hane white fea-

thers, as they report of Rauens, and to change into blacke. The Guacamague be birds bigger then Parrets, and relemble them fomething; they are effec-med for the varietie of their feathers, which be very faire and pleafing. In new Spains there are abundance of birds with excellent feathers, foas there bee not any found in Earste that comes neere them, as wee may fee by the Images of feathers they bring from thence, file which are (with great reason) much valued and effectmed, gruing cause of admiration, that with the feat Feather plant thers of birds, they fhould make fo excellent a worke, and fo perfectly equal , as they feeing cures, properly to be the true colours of a Painter, and haut fo lively and pleating a regard, as the Paint. 40 ter cannot exceede it with his pencill and colours. Some Indians which are good and experi

workmen in this Art, will represent perfectly in feathers, whatfocuer they fee drawne with the pencill, to as the Painters of Spaine, have in this point, no advantage over them. Dow Philip the Prince of Spains his Schoole-mafter, die gine vnto him three figures or portraitures made of feathers, as it were to put in a Bremarie. His Highneffe did fhew them to King Philly his father, the which his Maiestie beholding attentioely, laid, that he had never seene in so small a worke, a thing of so great excellency and perfection. One day as they prefented to Pope Sixtim Quinthe , another iquare bigger then it, wherein was the figure of Saint France, and that they had told him it was made of feathers by the Indians, he defired to make triall thereof, touching the table with his fingers, to fee if it were of feathers; for that it feemed firange, to fee them to properly 50 fitted, that the eye could not judge not differne whether they were naturall colours of feathers,

or artificiall done with the pencill. It is a goodly thing to fee the luftre which a greene, an orange tawnie like gold, and other fine colours doe cast, and beholding them another way they feeme dead colours. They make the best and goodliest figures of feathers in the Province of Ma chouse and in the village of Palearo: The manner is with fmall delicate Pinfors they pull the feathers from the dead fowles, and with a fine pattertiey cunningly loyne them together. They take the small and delicate feathers of those birds, which in Pera they call Tomingor, or others like vinto them, which have the most perfect colours in their feathers. The Indians (befiles thele Images) did vie feathers in many other most excellene workes, especially for the ornament of

50 Kings and Noblemen, their Temples and Idols. There are also other great birds, which have excellent and fine feathers, whereof they make plumes of fundriecolours, especially when they goe to warre, inriching them with gold and filuer very artificially, which was a matter of great price. They have the fame birds ftill, but they are not fo curious, neither doe they make fo many gentill deuices as they were wont. There are other birds at the Indies, contrarie to these of forich feathers, the which (besides that they are

app-0.33%

ill-fauoured) ferue to no other vie but for dung, and yet perchance they are of no leffe profit. I haue considered this, wondering at the prouidence of the Creator, who hath so appointed that all Creatures should serue Man. In some llands or Phares, which are inyning to the coast of Pro-The like is in rw, we see the tops of the Mountaines all white, and to fight, you would take it for Snow, or for the East Indies. forme white Land, but they are heapers of dung of Sea fowle which goe continually thither; and there is fo great abundance, as it rifeth many Elles, yea, many Lances in height, which feemes but a fable. They goe with boates to these Ilands, onely for the dung, for there is no other profit in them. And this dung is fo commodious and profitable, as it makes the earth yeald great a. bundance of fruit. They call this dung Gnane, whereof the Valley hath taken the name, which they call Limagnana, in the valleys of Pern, where they vie this dung, and it is the most ferrile 10 of all that Country. The Quinces, Pomegranets, and other fruits there, exceed all other in bountie and greatnesse; and they say, the reason is, for that the water where with they water it, pale feth by a Land compafied with this dung.

Of beafts for

Besides the Beasts of Chase, whereof wee have spoken, There are beasts called Saines, made like small Hogs, which have this fingular to themselves, to have their Nauil vpon the ridge of their backs : these goe by troupes through the Woods, they are cruell and nothing searfull, but contrariwise they assaile, and have their tallents sharpe as Rasors, wherewith they make dangerous wounds and incisions, if such as hunt them put not themselves in safetie. Such as hunt them (for the more fafer killing of them) climbe vp into Trees, whither the Saines or Hogs come prefently in troupes, biting the Tree when they cannot hure the man, and then with their Lances they kill what they will. They are very good to eate, but they must of necessitie ent off the round piece where the Naull growes vpon the backe ; for otherwife, within a day they corrupt. There is another kinde of little beaft like to fucking Pigges, and they call them Guadatinaiss. I am in doubt whether there were any Swine at the Indies, before the Spaniards came thither, like to these in Spaine, for that in the discouerie of the Hands of Soloman, it is \* These might said, they found " Hennes and Swine of Spatte. But how socuer it be, it is most certaine, that come from the this Cattell hath greatly multiplyed at the Indies. They eate the fielh fresh, and hold it to bee East parts this as wholesome and as good, as it it were of Mutton; as in Carthagene in some parts, they are of those llands become wilde and cruell, the which they hunt like wilde Boares, as wee fee in Saint Domiof those llands which you see mique, and other llands where the bearts line in the Forests. In some places they feede them 30

with the graine of Mays, and they grow wonderfully fat, to have the greafe, which they vie for want of Oile; infome places they make Gamons, as in Tollness of new Spaine, and in Paris at Pers. Returning then to such beasts as are peculiar there , even as the Saines are like vnto Swine, though somewhat leffe; even so the Dantes resemble small Kine, but more vnto Mules, having no hornes. The Hides of these beasts are much esteemed for jerkins and other couerings, they are so hard as they resist any blow whatsoeuer. And as the Dantes be defended by the hardnesse of their Hides , so those which they call Armadilles are by the multitude of their

feales, which open and thut as they please like to a Curaffe. There bee little beafts which goe through the Woods, called Armadulos, by reason of the defence they base hiding themselses within their scaler, and opening when they list: I have eaten of them, and doe not hold it 40 for a meate of any great worth; but the fielh of the Tomana is a better meate, but more horrible to the eye : for they are like to the very Linardes of Spaine, although they bee of a doubtfull kinde, for that they goe to the Water, and comming to Land they climbe the Trees wpon the bankes; and as they cast themselves from the Trees into the water, the Boates watch underneath to receive them. The Chinchiller is an other kinde of small beafts, like Squirrels, they have a wonderfull smoothe and fofe skin, which they weare as a healthfull thing to comfort the flomacke, and those parts that have neede of a moderate heate; they make Coverings and Russ of the haire of these (binebilles, which are found on the Sierre of Pern, where there is likewise a small beast very common, which they call (sier, and which the Indians hold for a very good

meate, and they are accustomed often to offer these Cayes in their facrifices. They are like small 50 Conies, and have their borrowes in the ground, and in some places they have undermined all the Land : fome are grey, fome white, and fome speckled. There are other small Animals which they call Viscachas, and are like to Hares, although they bee bigger, they hunt them and eate the fielh. Of common Hares there are great flore in some parts. There are also Conies in the Realme of Onitto , but the good are come from Spane. There is another france beaft, the which for his great heavinesse, and slownesse in mooning, they call Perso-ligere, or the little light Dogge, hee hath three nailes to enery hand, and moones both hand and feete, as it were by compaffe and very heavily : it is in face like to a Monkey, and hath a shrill crie; it climeth Trees,

Of Mices or

Throughout all the Mountaines, either of these llands of the firme Land, or of the Ander, 63 there are infinize numbers of Mices or Monkeys, which are a kinde of Apes, but very different, in that they have a taile, yea a very long one. And amongst them there are some kindes which are thrice, yea foure times bigger then the ordinarie; some are all blacke, some bay, fome grey, and some spotted. Their agilitie and manner of doing is admirable, for that they

CHAP.2.S.6. Rarities of Monkeys, Vicugnes, and Tarugues. Indians hunting, 057

feeme to have reason and discourse to goe voon Trees, wherein they feeme to imitate Birds. Going from Nombre de Dies to Panama, I did fee in Capira, one of thefe Monkeys leane from one Tree to an other, which was on the other fide of a Riner, making me much to wonder. Luftie leaper They leave where they lift, winding their tailes about a branch to flake it : and when they Strange fight will leape further then they can at once, they vie a pretie detice, tying themselves by the tailes one of another, and by this meanes make as it were a chaine of many : then doe they lanch themselves forth, and the first holpen by the force of the rest, takes hold where he list, and fo hangs to a bough, and helpes all the reft, till they be gotten up. It were long to report the fooleries, tricks, traueries, and pleafant sports they make when they are taught, which seeme

not to come from bruit beafts, but from a manlike understanding. I faw one in Caribagene in Monkey lastthe Gouernours house, so taught, as the things he did seemed incredible : they fent him to the ned Tauerne for wine, putting the pot in one hand, and the money in the other; and they could not possibly get the money out of his hand, before he had his pot full of wine. If any children met him in the fiseet, and threw any ftones at him, hee would fet his pot downe on the one fide, and caft from against the children till hee had affured his way, then would hee returne to carry home his pot. And which is more, although he were a good Bibber of wine (as I have oftentimes feene him drinke, when his Mafter hath given it him) yet would hee never touch it vntill leane was given him. They told me moreover, that if he faw any women painted, he Zealous.

would fall youn them, pull off their attire, and would fecke to bite them. 30 Among ft the most remarkable things at the Indies of Peru; be the Vicugnes, and sheepe of Or vicugnes the Countrie, as they call them, which are tractable beatls and of great profit; the Viengues and Tangaer of are wilde, and the Sheepe are tame. Some thinke that the Viengenes are those which Arifforle, Pera Chap 40. Plinie , and other Authors call Copress , which are wilde Goats , and in truth they have some drifter ib 3, de Plinie, and other Authors call Copress, which are write Goats, and is that they have some partit, animal refemblance, for the lightnesse they have in the Woods and Mountaines, but yet they are no fastibile 1678 Goates, for the Viengues have no hornes, as those have, whereof Ariffele makes mentione neither are they the Goates of the East Indies, from whom they draw the Bezar stone; for if they be of that kinde, it were a diverte one, as in the race of Dogs, the Maftife is diverte from the Grey-hound. The Vicugnes of Perm are not shofe beafts which carry the Bear Rone, in

the Pronince of new Spame, which there they call Bestare, for that they are a kinde of Stags 30 and Venifon ; yet doe I not know in any part of the World there the any of thefe beafts. but in Pern, and in Chille, which are Countries toy fling one Wandthet. These Viengues are greater then Goates, and lesse then Calues. Their halle is of the colour of dried Roses, somewhat clearer: they have no bornes like Stags and Goates. They feede voon the highest tops of the Mountaines, which they call Pagnes. The Snow nor Frost doth not offend them, but contrariwise they seeme to delight in it. They goe in troupes; and runne most lightly; when they meete with any Transliers or Beafts, they flie away, Teeming very fearefull, and in Bying they drive their young ones before them. They doe not finde that they multiply much t and therefore the Kings Ingues did defend the hunting of Viengues; if it were not for their feasts, or by their commandement. Some complaine, that fince the Speciards entred there, effer haut

so given too much libertie to hunt the Viengeer, and by this meanes they are much diminished. The manner the Indians wie in their hunting, they affemble many men together, to the num- Indian hunber of a thousand or two thousand, yes more, and invironing a great circuit of wood, they ting. hunt their game vntill they have compafied it in on all parts, and by this meanes they commonly take three or foure hundred, and so choosing what they lift; they let goe the reft, especially the Females for breede. They are accustomed to theere these beafts, and of their sleece to make Courrings and Rugges of great value, for that this wooll is like to white filke, which lasts long: and as the colour is naturall and not dyed, so is it perpetuall. The stuffes that are made of this wooll, are very fresh and good in Summer, and they hold them profitable for the inflammation of the reines, and other parts, tempering the excessive heate. This wooll hath

so the like versue when it is made in Quite, and therefore fome wie it to that end, for the triall they have made thereof. They lay moreover, that this woolf or conerings made thereof, is physicall for other indifpositions, as for the gowe : yet doe I not know that they have made any certaine triall thereof. The fiesh of these Victioner is not good, although the Indians earest; and drie it. For the effects of phylicke, I will tay what I have feene vpon the Sterre of Pera, come ming one night into a Tambe or Inne, being much afflicted with paine in mine eyes, thinking they would fall out (the which doth commonly happen in those parts) for that they palle Experiment through places covered with fnow, which is the cause of this accident. Being croubled with this for the eyes. paine, and out of patience, there came an Indian woman which faid to me, Father, lay this to thine eyes, and then fhalt bee cured. It was a piece of the fieth of Victories newly killed and all

60 bloudie. I vied this medicine, and prefently the paine ceafed, and foone after went quite awa. Beildes thele Chaces which is the most common manner of hunting at the Fidies , they have ve fed another more private to take them, which is, that comming neere, they doe cast certains lines with plummets of lead, which intangle their legges, fo as they cannot runne, and by this meanes they take the Viengne. The chiefe reason why this beaft is esteemed; is, by reason of

the Bexars stone they finde in them, whereof wee will intreate hereafter. There is another kinde of beafts, which they call Taragues, which likewife are wilde, and more nimble then the Viengenes. They are greater of body, and more hot. They have foft cares and hanging : they goe not in troupes as the Vicuoues. I have not feene them but alone, and most commonly in high places. They also draw Bezars stones from these Taxagues, which are greater, and have more on There is nothing at Pers of greater riches and profit then the Cattell of the Country , which

our men call Indian Sheepe, and the Indians in their generall language call them Leans. For all

things well confidered, it is a beaft of the greatest profit and least charge of any that I know : from

them they draw meate and clothing, as from the theepe of Spaine. Moreover, they have the be- to nefit to carry all things they have need of, ving them to beare their burthens and they have no need either of thooes or faddles, nor yet of cates, but he ferueth his Mafter for nought, feeding on the graffe he findes in the fields; foas God hath furnished them of Sheepe and Mares, and all in one beaft. And as it is a poore Nation, fo would hee in this point free them from charge, for that there is much pasture you the Sierre: and this kinde of Cattell bath no need of any other charge. There are two kindes of these Sheepe or Lamas, the one they call Pages, or theepe bear ring wooll, and the others are bare, and have little wooll, fo are they better for burthen; they are bigger then great Sheepe, and leffe then Calues, they have a very long secke, like to a Camel. whereof they have good need; for being high of flature, they have need of a long necke, else should they be deformed. They are of divers colours, some all white, others all blacks, some grey 20. and fome spotted, which they call Moromore. The Indians had great superstitions in choosing the beafts for facrifices, of what colour they thould bee, according to the disertitie of Seasons and Sacrifices. Their fielh is good, although it be hard, but that of their Lambs is the better. and the most delicate that can be eaten ; yet they eate not many , for that the chiefe fruit and profit they yeeld, is their wooll, to make clothes, and their feruice to carry burdens. The Indians make fluffes of this wooll wherewith they clothe themselves : the one is groffe and commen , which they call Hannes , and the other fine and delicate , which they call Combs , they make Carpets and Couerings, and other exquisite workes, which last long, and have a very faire luftre, like halfe filke : and that which is most rare, is their manner of wearing their workes, being both fides alike, fo as you shall not finde any end in a whole piece. The Ingue 30 King of Pera had many chiefe workmen, to make this worke of Cambo: and the which, for the most part, were refident in the Prosince of Capachica, loyning to the great Lake of Titeata.

They die this wooll into diners fine colours, with fundric kindes of herbs, whereof shey make many forts of workes both course and fine. All the Indians, both men and women, worke in the Sierre, and have their Loomes in their houles, having no need to buy any stoffes for their necef-farie vies. Of the fielh of their sheepe they make Cujchergui, or dayed fielh, the which will last very long, whereof they make great account. They are accustomed to drive thouses of these sheepe with burthens, and to goe in bands, three hundred, fine hundred, yes a thousand in a companie, with Wine, Mays, Coca, Chuno, Quick-faluer, and all other kindes of merchandise and of Silver, which is the best of all. They carry barres of Silver from Perent to Arigno, which 40 is three score and ten leagues. I have often wondered to fee these troupes of sheepe laden with a thouland or two thousand barres of Silver, and much more, which is above three hundred thoufand dugats, without any other guard or refore then fome Indians, which fears onely to guide thele theepe, and to lade and volade them, or at the most, some few Spaniards: and they steepe all night in the middeft of the fields, without other guard : and yet in fo long a way and to weake a guard, they never finde want or loss of any thing in so great a treasure of Silver, so safe in the way in Pers. The burthen which one of the safe sheepe doth commonly carry, is of four eor safe Sixe Arobes is Arrobes : when their woyage is long they goe nor about two, three, or four leagues at the most a hundred and on a day. Those that guide those troupes, have their ordinarie lodgings, where they are affirmed to have water and pasture, and there they valade and set up their Tents, making fire, and dref- co fing their meates, which is not painfull, although it be a flegmatike and flow manner of travell. When there is but one dayes iourney, one of these sheepe will beare eight Arrobes in weight, or more, and beares this burthen eight or ten leagues in a day, as the poore Souldiers were wont to doe, when they marched through Perm. This kinds of Cattell delights most in a cold aire, and for this cause they line vpon the Sierre, and die in the Lanes, by reason of the heave. Sometimes these sheepe are all courred with Ice and frost, and yet they continue found and wells The bare (heepe are pleafant to behold, for they will flay vponthe way, rayfing vp their necks, and will, looke vpen any one very willly, and so they remaine a long time, without mooning or any thew of feare, which gmeth occasion of laughter, freing them thus to fland. And yet

foractimes they doe grow amazed fodeinly, and runne away with their burthers, enen to the 60

highelf Rocks, to as not being able to come vnto them, they are confirmyned to kill them with an Harquebuze, left they should lote their barres of Silver, which they sometimes carry. The Pacor

will grow reaftie under their burthens, lying down, and will endure to be cut in a thouland pieces before they will rife when this humor takes them; wherof the prouerb growes in Perm, to fay that

is reaftie, to fignifie, he is obitinate; for that when any of these bealts is moodie, it is with exceffe : the remedie they have is, to stay and sit downe by the Pace, making much on him, vntill the fit be past, and that he rife : and sometimes they are forced to stay two or three houres. They haue a difeafe like to fcabs, which they call Carachs, whereof they commonly die. The Ancients had a remedie, to burie them quicke that had the Carache, left they should infect the rest, being a very contagious disease, and goes from one to another. An Indian that hath one or two of these sheepe, is not reputed poore, for one of them is worth fixe or seven pieces of allay, and more, according to the time and places.

The Bezauer from is found in all these beasts before mentioned, which are proper to Pers, Of the Bezaur 10 whereof fome Authors of our time have written whole bookes, which they may reade that de- flone, Chep. 42 fre to have a more particular knowledge. For the prefent subject it shall be sufficient to say, that

this stone which they call Bezaser, is found in the stomacke and belly of this beast, sometimes one alone, sometimes two, three, and fourt. They are very different in forme, greatnesse and colour, for that some are small like Filberds, and lesse; others like Walnuts; some like Pidgeons egges, and others as bigge as a Hens egge : and I have feene some as bigge as an Orange; in forme fome are round, others in fashion like to Lentils, and many other formes. For their colour, some are blacke, some white, some grey, darke greene, and others, as if they had beene gilded. It is no certaine rule to judge the best and most fine by the colour or forme. All these stones are made and fashioned of divers films and skins one vpon another. In the Province of Xaura and 20 other Prouinces of Peru, they finde these stones in divers kindes of beafts, both wilde and tame. as in the Guaracos, Pacos, Vicugues, and Tarugues, some adde an other kinde, which they say are wilde Goates, which the Indians call Cypris. These other kindes of beasts are very well known in Pern, whereof we have alreadie discoursed. The Guaraces or Countrie sheepe, or Paces, have commonly the leffer flones, and blacke, neither are they fo much approved for the vie of phyficke. They draw the greatest Bezas stones from the Viengues, and they are grey, or white, or of a darke greene, which are held for the better. They efteeme those of the Tarngues for the most excellent, whereof there are some reasonable bigge : they are commonly white, inclining

to grey; and they have the filmes commonly bigger and thicker then the reft. They finde the Bezaar stone equally both in Male and Female. All beafts that ingender it. 30 chaw the cuid, and commonly feede vpon the Snow and Rocks. The Indians report and teach by tradition from their Fathers and Ancients, that in the Prouince of Xaura, and in other Prounces of Pers, there are many herbs and venemous beafts, which poison the water and the paflures where they eate and drinke, and where they breathe : amiddeft which venemous herbs there is one very well knowne of the Vicepne, by a natural inflined, and of other beafts that ingender the Bease flone, which eate this herbe, and by meanes thereof they preferue themfeloes from the postoned waters and pastures: and they say, that of this herbe the flone is compoundant. ded in the stomacke, whence it drawes all the vertue against poison, and other wonderfull effects. This is the opinion and tradition of the Indians, discovered by men of great experience in the Kingdome of Pern, which agrees with reason, and with that which Plinte reports of the Plin, L 10, 1,714

40 Mountaines Goats, which are nourished and fed upon poison without suffering any harme. The Indians being demanded, why the Sheepe, Kine, Goats, and Calues, fuch as are in Caffile, haue not the Bezaer stone, seeing that they feede on the same Rocks: their answere is, That they believe not, that those beatts of Caffile eace of that herbe, or that they have found the Bezaste stone in Stags and fallow Deere. This seemes to agree with our knowledge, for that in new Spaine they finde the Bezaar stone, although there be no Viengnes, Pacos, Taringues, not Guaraces, but onely Stags, in some of which they finde these stones.

One thing is worthy admiration, that they grow and are fashioned vpon very strange things, as voon the tagge of a Point, vpon a Pin, or a piece of Wood, which they finde in the centre of this stone, and yet doe they not hold it falle, for that the beast might swallow 50 it, and the flone thicken woon it, and growes one woon another, and fo it increaseth, I did fee in Pern, two stones fathioned upon Pignons of Castile, which made us to wonder much, for that in all Pern, wee had not feene any Pines or Pignons of Castile, if they were not brought from Spaine, which feemes to mee very extraordinarie. This little may fuffice touching the Bezaars frome. They bring other physicall fromes from the Indies, as the stone of Hyinda, or of Rate, the bloud ftone, the ftones of Milke, and of the Sea. Those which they call Corneria was, for the Heart, whereof there is no neede to speake, having nothing common with the subject of beasts, whereof wee have intreated : which gives vs to understand how the great Master and Author of all, hath imparted his benefits and wonderfull secrets, to all parts of the World; for the which he is to be glorified for euer.

R Eader, I have here added this works, for the better and over particular knowledge of the Naturalli Historic of the Wast Indies. Thu Authors Gonzalo Fertimando de Ouicdo did first sortie a Summarie to Charles the fifth (out of which the most part of this is taken) An. 1925, and after that
Lill 2

writ his Generall Historie, enlarging what he had written before this Summarie ; and in the dimiding it was store Parts: the first of which contenting principally the Spanish alls and N is aware 16 among a tell land, in twenthe Bodgs; we have in Ramulios that I may of Fonges: the feemd (in which have write of the Continent of New Spanne, and the third of Pen and the Southern America, with about four elundred pictures of the Plants, Beafts, and other Creatures of those parts, were never published; to the great lesse of natural knowledge of those parts. As for the Spanish acts we have them sufficience. ly written by others. But Acofta and Outedo have bett deserved of the studious of Nature, that is, of the knowledge of God in his workes. In which respect I have added many things omitted by Master E. den, and Master Willes in the former publication, both examining this, and translating the rest from

#### CHAP. III.

Extracts of Gonzalo Ferdinando De Oviedo his Summarie and Generall Historie of the Indies.

#### Of the mynes of gold, and the manner of working in them.

His particular of the mynes of Gold, is a thing greatly to be noted, and I may much better speake hereof then any other man, forasmuch as there are now twelve 20 yeeres past fince I ferued in the place of the Surueyor of the melting shops, pertayning to the gold mynes of the firme Land, and was the Gouernor of the mynes of the Gatholike King Dow Ferdinando, after whole departure from this life, I fee ued long in the same roome in the Name of your Maiestie. The myne or veine

recompenced with gaynes. The greatest part of the wrought gold which the Indians have, is base, and holdeth iomewhat of Copper: of this they make Bracelets and Chaines, and in the fame they close their Iewels which their Women are accustomed to weare, and esteemed more then all the riches of the World. The manner how gold is gathered, is this, either of fuch as is 30 found in Zanana, that is to fay; in the Plaines and Rivers of the Champaine country being without Trees, whether the Earth be with graffe or without, or of fuch as is fometimes found on the Land without the Rivers in places where Trees grow, fo that to come by the same, it shall be requifite to cut downe many and great Trees. But after which focuer of these two manners it be found, either in the Rivers or Breaches of waters, or else in the earth, I will shew how it is found in both these places, and how it is separate and purged. Therefore when the myne or veine is discourred, this chanceth by fearthing and prouing in such places as by certaine signes and to-

kens doe appeare to skilfull men apt for the generation of gold, and to hold gold : and when they

haue found it, they follow the myne, and labour it, whether it be in the River, or in the Playne

as I have faid. And if it be found on the Playne, first they make the place very cleane where they 40

intend to digge, then they digge eight or ten foot in length, and as much in breadth : but they

goe no deeper then a span or two, or more, as shall feeme best to the Master of the myne, digging

equally, then they washall the earth which they have taken out of the said space, and if herein

they finde any gold they follow it, and if not, they digge a span deeper, and wash the earth as

they did before : and if then also they finde nothing, they continue in digging and washing the

earth as before, untill they come to the hard rocke or ftone; and if in fine they finde no gold there, they follow no further to feeke gold in that place, but goe to another part. And it is to be

vnderstood, that when they have found the myne, they follow it in digging, in the same mea-

fure in levell and depth, vntill they have made an end of all the myne which that place contay-

which ought to be followed, ought to be in a place which may fland to faue much of the charges

of the Labourers, and for the administration of other necessarie things, that the charges may bee

Manner of Searching for

Gold in

viage of

neth, if it appeare to be rich. This myne ought to confift of certaine feet or pales in length or 10 breadth, according to certaine orders determined, and within that compasse of earth, it is not lawfull for any other to digge for gold: And where as endeth the myne of him that first found the gold, immediatly it is lawfull for any other man that will, with a flaffe to affigne himfelfe a place by the fide of the same, inclosing it with stakes or pales as his owne. These mynes of Zamone (that is, fuch as are found in the Playnes) ought euer to bee fought neere to some River of Brooke, or Spring of water, or Dike, or standing Poole, to the end that the gold may be washed, for the which purpose they vie the labour of certaine Indians, as they doe other in digging of the myne. And when they have digged out the myne, they fill certaine Trayes with that earth, which other Indians have the charge immediatly to receive at their hands, and to carry those Trayes of earth to the water, where it may be washed : Yet doe not they that bring it wash it, 60 but deliver it to other, putting it out of their owne Trayes into theirs, which they have readie in their hands to receive it. These Washers for the most part are the Indian women, because this worke is of leffe pame and trauell then any other. These women when they wash, are accustomed to fit by the water fide, with their legges in the water even up to the knees, or leffe, as the

place serueth their purpose : and thus holding the Trayes with earth in their hands by the handles thereof, and putting the fame into the water, they moone them round about after the manner of fifting, with a certaine aptnelle, in fuch fort that there entreth no more water into the Traves then ferueth their turne, and with the felfe fame apt moting of their Traves in the Water, they ever avoid the foule water with the earth out of the one fide of the Veffell, and receine in cleane water on the other lide thereof, fo that by this means by little and little, the water walheth the earth as the lighter fabitance of the Trayes, and the Gold as the heavier matter refleth in the bottome of the same, being round and hollow in the middest like vnto a Barbars Bafen. And when all the earth is avoided, and the Gold gathered together in the bottome of the to Tray, they put it a part, and returne to take more earth, which they wash continually as before.

Furthermore it is to be noted, that for every two Indians that walh, it is require that two o, Other Labouther ferue them to bring earth from the Mine, and other two to breake the fame Thall, and fill rers. their Trayes therewith. Also beside these Labourers, it is necessarie that there be other people in the place where they worke and reft in the nighte: these are such as make their bread, and pronide for victuals, and other necessaries. So that to conclude, there are in all, fine persons ordinarily affigued to every Tray of walhers.

There is another manner of working the Mirres, in Rivers or Brookes of running waters: and this is, that in anoyding the water of his courfe, after that the beds of the Rivers are dry and vtterly emptied, they find Gold among the breaches, clifts, and ifts of stones, and among all that 20 is in the bottome of the Channell, and where naturally the Rouer runners of greatest force 150 Gold in Rivers that it chanceth fometime, that when the bed of the River is good and rich, they find in it great or poulder, quantitie of Gold. And therefore your Maiestie ought to understand for a generall rule, as it appeareth in fact, that all Gold is ingendred in the tops and highest places of the Mountaines; and Goldenge in continuance of time 15 by little and little brought downe to the Vales and Plaines by thowers dred on hill of raine, and the fals of Springs, Rivers, and Brookes, having their originall in the Mountaines, tops. and descending from the same, notwithstanding it is oftentimes found inthe Plaines farre from the Mountains. But when it chanceth to be found in great quantity, it is for the most past among the Mountaines, and in the Ruers, or their branches, more then in any other part of the Plaines and in these two manners it is commonly found most abundantly. And for the better proofe

30 that Gold is ingendred on high; and is brought downe into the low places, I have one great toten de constant de la breaking a Mine in the earth, where it had beene broken before, and having now digged one or two or three Poles in measure, the Miners found certaine coler of wood under the same level! where they found Gold, and this I fay in the earth which was taken for a Virgin , that is to fay, fuch as had not before beene opened for any Mine : the which coles could not naturally bee ingendred there, or enter in by any meanes, but when the superficiall part of the earth was equall with the leuell where the coles were found, it is like that the coles were left there by fome occa-

40 fion of fire, and that they faftened there in time, and that afterward in long continuance of time, they were by listle and little couered with the earth, which the often thowres of raine walned from the Mountaines, fo that by the course of yeeres the earth overgrew the coles vinto the faid levell and measure, which had before time beene the superficiall part of the earth, where the Some man coles and Gold were found together: whereby it may appeare that the Gold was no more in- thinks the gendred there then were the coles, but brought thither from the Mountaynes by the falls of wa- coles, theis # ters as we have faid, forafmuch as the Mountaines are the Matrices and Bowels of all rich Metals. other lucibid Further and beside this, I say that in how much more the Gold is gone faire from the naturall salue, natural place of his generation to the place where it is found, it is so much the more purified and fined, there. and of a better caract, and the neerer that it is found to his proper Mine or veine where it is in-50 Bendred, it is fo much the bafer, fouler, and more crude, and of a bafer alay and caract, and doth

walte fo much the more in melting, and remayneth more Brickle.

Sometimes there are found graines of Gold of great quantitie, and of great weight about Gold in the earth, and flometimes allo voder the earth: And the greatest of all other that was found to graines this day in the Indies, was that which was lost in the Sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed one had a sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed one had a sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed one had a sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed one had a sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed one had a sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed one had a sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed one had a sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed the sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which weighed the sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the Hand Bease, which we will be sea about the sea a three thouland and two hundred of Cafellans of God, which are in value foure thouland a hundred thirtie and eight Ducats of Gold, which weigh one Arrowa and leven pound, or thirtie and two pound, after twelve ounces to the pound, which make threefcore and foure Markesof A' Marke is a Gold. And I faw in the years 15. in the hands of Michel Paffamonie Treaturer to your Mas pound of 8. ieitie, two graines, of the witich one weighed feuen pounds, which are fourteene Markes, and ounces flumma, 60 are in value about three foore and fine Ducats of Gold enery Marke : the other was of ten Marks, 16, pound weight cith

which are fine pounds of like value, and of very good Gold of two and twentie caracts, and bet ounces, and ter : There are also found many other great graines, although not equal vinto thele in bignefle. 12. ouncests And for a function of Gold, I have thought good to declare former has how the In. the pound, of dismount very excellently gild fach Veffels of Copper and base Gold as they make for they can indian claims.

give them to faire and flourishing a colour, that all the maffe which they gilt, appeareth as though it were Gold of two and twentie caracts, and better. This colour they give with a certaine hearbe, as though it were wrought by the art of any Gold-Imith of Spaine or Italie, and would of them be effeemed as a thing of great riches and a fecret manner of gilding. For the define that our men haue to Gold, they nothing efteeme the Copper, although there might great commoditie and profit be had thereby, and also by other Metals, which they nothing regard, except Silver, which is found abundantly in that part of the firme Land which is called New Spaine,

Of the manner of fishing for Pearles.

He Indians exercise this kind of fishing for the most part in the Coasts of the North in Ly 10 bagua and Cumana, and many of them which dwell in the Houles of certaine particular Lords in the Hands of San Dominico and Santi Isbannis, refort to the Hand of Cubagua, for this purpole. Their cultome is to goe fine, fixe, or feuen, or more in one of their Canoas or Barkes, earely in the morning to some place in the Sea thereabout, where it appeareth vnto them than there should be great plentie of those shell fishes (which some call Muscles, and some Oysters) wherein Pearles are ingendred, and there they plunge themselves under the water, even vito the bottome, fauing one that remayneth in the Canoa or Boat, which hee keepeth still in one place as neere as he can, looking for their returne out of the water : And when one of them hath beenea good while vader the water, he rifeth vp, and commeth swimming to the Bost, entring into the same, and leaving thereall the Oysters which he hath taken and brought with him (for an in these are the Pearles found) and when he hath there rested himselfe a while, and eaten pare of the Oysters, he returneth agains to the water, where hee remayneth as long as hee can endure, and then rifeth againe, and swimmeth to the Boat with his prey, where hee resteth him as before, and thus continueth course by course, as doe all the other in like manner, being all most expert Swimmers and Divers : and when the night draweth neere, they returne to the Iland to their houses, and prefent all the Oysters to the Matter or Steward of the house of their Lord, who hath the charge of the faid Indians, and when he hath given them fomewhat to eate. he layeth vp the Oysters in fafe custodie, untill he haue a great quantitie thereof, then he causeth the fame Fishermen to open them, and they find in every of them Pearles, other great or small, 30 two, or three, or foure, and fometimes fine or fixe, and many small graines, according to theliberalitie of nature. They faue the Pearles both small and great which they have found, and either eate the Oysters if they will, or cast them away, having so great a quantitie thereof, that they in manner abhorre them. These Oytters are of hard flesh, and not so pleasant in eating as are ours of Spaine. This Iland of Cubagua, where this manner of fifting is exercifed, is in the North Coast, and is no bigger then the Iland of Zeland. Oftentimes the Sea increased greatly, and much more then the Fishers for Pearles would, because whereas the place is very deepe, a man cannot naturally reft at the bottom, by geafon of the abundance of airie fubftance which is in him, as I have oftentimes proped. For although he may by violence and force descend to the bottome, yet are his feet lifted whegaine, forthat hee can continue no time there : and therefore where the Sea is very deepe, thele Indian Filhers whe to tye two great stones about them with a coard, on 40 each fide one, by the weight whereof they descend to the bottome, and remayne there vntill them lifteth to rife againe, at which time they valofe the flones ; and rife var at their pleasure. But this their apt neffe and agilicie in fivinming, is not the thing that caufett men most to mar-Men continue uell ; but rather to copfider how many of them can fland in the bottome of the water for the space of one whole hours, and some more or leffe, according as one is more ape hereunto then an other. An other thing there is which feemeth to me very stranger and this is, that whereas! have oftentimes demanded of some of these Lords of the Indian; if the place where they are at customed to fish for Pearles, being but little and narrow, will not in short time be veterly within out Oysters, if they confume them to fast: They all answered mee, that although they be confumed in one part, yet if they goe a filhing in an other part, or an other Coast of the Iland, or aren 50 other contrary wind, and continue fifthing therealfo votill the Oviters bee like wife confumed; and then returns agains to the first place, or any other place where they fished before, and emptied the same in like manner, they find them agains as full of Oyflers as though they had never ther, as doe other fifthes, or elfe that they are ingendred and increase in certaine ordinarie places. This Iland of Cumara and Cubagua, where they fish for these Pearles, is in the twelfth degreeof

beene filhed. Whereby we may judge, that thele Oysters either remove from one place to an ob the part of the faid Coast which inclineth toward the North. Likewife Pearles are found and gathered in the South Sea, called Mare del Sar, and the Pearles of this Sea are very bigge, yet not fo bigge as they of the lland of Pearles, called de las Perlas, or Margarita, which the Indiani call Terarequi, lying in the Gulfe of Saint Michael, where greater Pearles are found, and of 60 greater price, then in any other Coast of the North Sea, in Camana, or any other part. I speake this as a true testimonic of fight, having beene long in that South Sea, and making curious inquifition to be certainly informed of all that percayneth to the fifting of Pearles. From this Iland of Huge Pearle. Terarequi, there was brought a Pearle of the fallaion of a Peare weighing thirtie and one

Caracts, which Petrus Arias had among a thouland and fo many pounds weight of other Pearles, By the compuwhich he had when Captaine Galpar Morales (before Petrus Arias) possed to the taid Iland in ration of the the yeare 1315, which Pearle was of great price. From the faid Iland also, came a great and ve-nice, four ry round Pearle, which I brought out of the Sea, this was as bigge as a small pellet of a Stone- graines make bow, and of the weight of twentie and fixe Caracts : I bought it in the Citie of Panama, in the a Caract, Sea of Ser, and paid for it fixehundred and fiftie times the weight thereof of good Gold , and and it three yeeres in my custodie, and after my returne into Spaine, fold it to the Earle of Nanfor Marquefie of Zeneta great Chamberlaine to your Maieftie, who gave it to the Marquefie his Wife, the Ladie Memia of Mendoza. I thinke verily that this Pearle was the greatest, fairest, and roundeft that hath beene feene in those parts. For your Maiettie ought to vinderstand, that in the Coast of the Sea of Sir, there are found a hundred great Pearles round after the fashion of Peare pearles a Peare, to one that is perfectly round and great.

Of the familiaritie which certagne of the Indians bane with the Deuill, and how they receive answere of him of things to come, and other Superstitions.

Hen the Indians beginne their batraile, or goe to any combate, or attempt any other great mater, they have certaine elect men, whom they reverently efteeme, and call them Teguma, which in their tongue is as much to lay as Mafters: not with standing that they call enery man, that is cunning in any Science, by the fame name, as Fishers, Fowlers, Hunters, or makers of Nots. Their Tequinas therefore, they call the Mafters of their Answeres, because they speake with Tayra, that is, the Denill, and bring them answere what he faith, either as touching fuch things as they have to doe, or shall chance to them the day following, or many dayes sture. to come, For the Deuill, being fo ancient an Aftronomer, knoweth the times of things, and feeth how they are naturally directed and inclined, and maketh them believe that they come so to palle by his ordinance, as though he were the Lord and mooner of all that is and shall be and that he giveth the day light, and raine, cauleth ten pelt, and ruleth the stations of times, guang life, or taking away life, at his pleasure: By reason whereof, the Indians being deceived of him, and feeing alfo such effects to come certainly to passe as he hath told them before, believe him in all other things, and honour him in many places with Sacrifices of the bloud and lives of men, and adoriferous Spices : And when God difposeth the contrary to that which the Deuil hath spoken in Oracle, whereby he is prooued a Lyer, bee caufeth the Toquinas to perswade the people that he bath changed his mind and fentence for some of their sing, or denileth some such lye as liketh him best, being a skilfull Master in such subtill and crastic desices, to deceive the simple and ignorant people, which hath small defence against to mighrie, and craftis an Aduersarie. And as they call the Deutli Tayra, fo doe they in many places call the Christians by the same name, thinking that they greatly honour them thereby, as indeed it is a name very fix and agreeable to many of them, having laid apart all honeftie and vertue, huing more like Dragons then men,

among thele fimple poole,

Before the Inhabitants of the Iland of Historical had received the Christian Faith, there was among them a School non, which lived folicarily in the Defarts and Woods, and led their life in Silence and Abstinence more streightly then ever did the Philosophers of Pythagoras S. Ct, Pythagoras in Stitute in Stitute manner has the eating of all things that live by bloud, contented onely with Places, fuch Fruites, Herbes, and Kates, as the Deferts and Woods ministred voto them to eate: The Professor of this Seet were cand Piaces. They gave themselves to the knowledge of naturall things, and vied certaine feees a gicall Operations and Superfitions, whereby they had familiaritie with Spirits, which they dured into their owne bodies, at such times as they would take whon them to tell of things to o me, which they did in manner as followeth. When any of the Kings had occasion b call any of them out of the Defarts for this purpose, their custome was to fend them a portion their fine Bread of Casabi or Mais , and with humble request and fuite to defire them toell them of fuch things as they would demand. After the request granted, and the place at day appointed, the Piaces commeth with two of his Differeles wayting on him, where the one bringeth with him a Veffell of a fecret Water, and the other a little Silver Bell. When hee commeth to the place, hee fitteth downe on a round feate

other on the other, euen the presence of the King and certaine of his Nobles (for the common rings or conpeople are not admitted thele Mysteries) and turning his face toward the Delart, he bee sultations. gameth his Inchantmet, and calleth the Spirit with loude voyce by certaine names, which no man underndeth but hee and his Disciples. After hee hath done thus a while, if the Spirit yet dere his comming, hee drinketh of the faid Water, and therewith waxeth hot and furisand inverteth and turneth his Inchantment, and letteth himfelfe bloud with a thorne, maruvally turmoiling himfelfe, as we read of the furious Sybils, not ceafing

made for him of purposewhere having his Disciples the one standing on the one hand, and the lading entitled

untill the spirit be come : who at his comming entreth into him, and ouerthroweth him. as it were a Greyhound should ouerturne a Squerell, then for a space, he seemeth to lye as though be were in great paine, or in a rapte, wonderfully tormenting himfelfe, during which agonie, the other Disciple shaketh the Silver Bell continually. Thus when the agonic is past; and he lyeth quietly (yet without any fence or feeling) the King, or some other in his stead, demandeth of him what he defired to know : and the forrit answered him by the mouth of the rapte Piaces, with a direct and perfect answere to all points: Infomuch that on a time certaine Spaniards being prefent at these mysteries with one of the Kings, and in the Spenish tongue demanding the Piaces of their Ships which they looked for out Spains, the spirit answered in the Indian tongue, and told them what day and houre the Ships departed from Spaine, how many they were, and what In they brought, without failing in any point. If he be also demanded of the eclipse of the Sunne Prognoficati- or Moone (which they greatly feare and abhorre) he giveth a perfect answer, and the like of tem pests, famine, plencie, warre or peace, and such other things. When all the demands are finished, his Disciples call him aloud, ringing the Silver Bell at his eare, and blowing a certaine powder into his nostrils, whereby he is raised as it were from a dead sleepe, being yet somewhat heavy headed and faint a good while after. Thus being againe rewarded of the King with more bread, he departeth againe to the defarts with his Disciples. But fince the Christian faith hath

beene dispersed throughout the Hand, these discellish practifes have ceased, and they of the members of the Discell, are made the members of Christ by Baptisme, forsaking the Discell and his works, with the vaine curiofity of defire of knowledge of things to come, whereof for the most an Reafon why men kill themfelues to feru

part it is better to be ignorant, then with vexation to know that which cannot be avoided. Furthermore, in manie places of the firme Land, when any of the Kings dye, all his houshold feruants, as well women as men, which have continually served him, kill themselves, beleeving as they are taught by the Diuell Tayra, that they that kill themselves when the King dyeth, goe with him to heaven, and ferue him in the same place and office as they did before on the earth while he hued : aud that all that refuie fo to doe, when after they dye by their naturall death or otherwife, their foules to die with their bodies, and to be diffolged into ayre, and become nothing, as doe the foules of Hogges, Birds, Fishes, or other bruite beafts: and that onely the other may enjoy the primiledge of immortalitie for euer, to serue the King in heaven. And of this falle opinion commeth it, that they which lowe come, or fer rootes for the Kings bread, 20 and gather the same, are accustomed to kill themselves, that they may enjoy this priviledge in heaven, and for the same purpose, cause a portion of the graine of Maiz, and abundle of larca (whereof their bread is made) to be buried with them in their graues, that the fame may ferue them in heaven, if perhaps there should lacke feedes to sowe, and therefore they take this with them, to begin withall, vntill Tayes (who maketh them all these faire promises) prouide them of greater quantitie. This have I my leffe feene in the top of the Mountaines of Guaturo, where having in prilon the King of that Province (who rebelled from the obedience of your Maieffie) and demanding of him to whom percained those Sepultures or graves which I faw in his house: he answered, that they were of certaine Indians which flew themselves at the Jeath of his Father. And because they are oftentimes accustomed to bury great quantities of wrought gold 40 with them, I canfed two graves to be opened, wherein was nothing found but a veilell full of the grains of Maiz, and a bundle of Incea, as I have faid. And demanding the cause hereof, of the King and the other Indians : they answered, that they that were bried there, were the labourers of the ground, and men skilfull in fowing of feedes, and makis of bread, and fernants to the Kings father, and to the end that their fortes should not dye with their bodies, they flue themsellers at the death of the King their Matter, to line with fining hearen, and to the intent that they might ferre him there in the same office, they referre that Matte, and Incea, to sowe it in heaven. Whereunto I answered them in this manner, Bold how your Tayra deceiueth you, and how all that he teacheth you is falle. You fee how a follong a time fince they are dead, they have not yet taken away this Mair and Incomwhich is now purified and worth nothing, so and not like to be fowen in heaven. To this the King replied, faying In that they have not taken it away, nor fowen it in heaten, the caufe is, that they chanced a finde enough there, by reason whereof they had no neede of this. To this errour many thingwere faid, which seemed officiel force to remoue him from his falle opinion, and especially anyuch as at that age are oc-cupied of the Diuell, whom they paint of the felfe fame fornite and cohe, as he appeared vino them in divers shapes and formes. They make also Images of Gold, Capter, and Wood, to the fame smilitudes, in terrible shapes, and so variable, as the Painters are austomed to paint them at the feete of Saint Miebael the Archangell, or many other place, whe they paint them of moltzorrible portrature. Likewise when the diuell greatly intendeth thate them, he threatneth to fend them great tempelts, which they call Furacanas, or Hanrabnas, and are foveltemene, that they ouerthrow many houses, and great trees. And I have seen Mountaines, still of 60

many and great trees, that for the space of three quarters of a league the luntaine bath Beens Suburrted, and the tree ouerthrowne, and plucked out of the earth with thootes.

The gulfe of Vraba, is diftant from the EquinoStiall line, from an hundrand twentie, to 2

hundred and thirty leagues, and three quarters of a league, after that accompt of leuenteen leagues and a halte for eutrie degree from Pole to Pole; & thus for a little more or left, goeth all the coaft. By realon wherof, in the Citie of Santa Maria, Antique, in Dariene, and in all that course of the forefail gulfe of Fraba, at all times of the yeere the daies and nights are in manner of equal length; and if there be any difference betweene them by reason of this small distance from the Enunoctiall, it is so little, that in foure and twentie houres, making a naturall day, it cannot be perceived but by the inigement of speculative men, and such as understand the sphere. From hence the North Starre is feene verie low.

Of diners particular things, as Wormes, Serpents, Beafts, Foules, Trees, orc.

T Will first speake of certaine little and troublesome Beasts, which may seeme to be engendred of nature to molest and vexe men, to shew them and give them to vinderstand, how small and vile a thing may offend & disquiet them, to the end that they may remember the principall end for the which they were created, that is, to know their maker. In manie parts of the firme, Land, by the which as wel the Christians as the Indians do trauaile, there are such marishes & waters in Small Wormes the way, that they are faine to go without breeches among the hearbes & weeds, by reason wher woshlesome, ene way, that enery are tained by withhold envenues among the netwern weeding by realon where of, certain small bealts or wormers (which they call Gerepater) much like with Ticks, cleaue fast to their legs. These worms are as little as the pouder of beaten Salt, & cleaue so fast, that they can by 20 no meanes be taken away, except the place be nointed with oyle; & after that the legs be nointed a while with oyle, or the other parts where these little Tickes are fastened, they scrape the place with a Knife, & to take them away. But the Indians which have no oyle, smoake them, and burne them with fire, and abide great paines in taking them away by this means. Of other little

Beafts which trouble men, and are engendred in their heads or other parts of their bodies, I fay that the Christian men which trauaile into these parts, have them but seldome times, and that not past one or two, and this also very seldome: For passing by the line of the Diameter where the compaffe maketh difference of failing by the winde called Greeo (that is, North-eaft) and Magistral (that is, South-west) which is in the course of the llands of Azors, they faile but a little way following our voiage by the West, but that all the Lice which the Christians carrie 30 with them, or are engendred in their heads, or other places of their bodies, die and vtterly conwhich them, or are enganated in them heads, or other places of their books, or and wherely con-fume by little and little, and are not engendred in Issue, except in the heads of little children Lies forlike in those parts, as well among the children of the Christians which are borne there, as also among them,

the natural Indians, who have them commonly in their heads, and fometimes in other parts of their bodies, and especially they of the Prounce of Cuena, which is a region containing more then a hundred leagues in length, and embraleth the one and the other coaft of the North Sea, and of the East. When these Indians are intected with this filthinesse, they dresse and cleanse one another: And they that exercise this, are for the most part women, who eate all that they take, and have herein such dexterity by reason of their exercise, that our men cannot lightly take, and naue never num descently by thing greatly to be confidered : and this is, how the Lice finde 40 Christian men, being there cleane from this filthineffe of India, as well in their heads as the reft them against

of their bodies, yet when they returne to come agains into Europe, and begin to arrive in that place of the OceanSea where we faid before that thefe Lice died and for fooke them, fodainely in their repairing by the fame clime (as though these Lice had tarried for them in that place) they can by no meanes avoide them for the space of certaine daies, although they change their Shirts two or three times in a day. These Lice are at the first as little as Nits, and grow by little and little, vntill they be of the bigneffe that they are in Spaine. This haue I oftentimes proued, having now foure times passed the Ocean Sea by this voiage. Beside these wormes and vermin wherof we have fpoken, there is another little mischieuousworm, which we may number among where we have specifience the Indians call Nigua, and is much leffe then a Flea; it pear- Nigua, 50 ceth the flesh of a man, and so lancheth or cutteth the same (while in the meane time it can

neither be feene nor taken) that from some it hath cut off their hands, and from other their feete, vntill the remedy was found to annoint the place with Oyle and scrape it with a Raior. In the firme Land in golden Castile or Beragua, there are many Vipers like vnto them of Spaine? they that are bitten of them, dye in fhort space, for few line to the fourth day, except present remedy. Of these some are of lesse kinde then other, and have their taile somewhat round, and leape in the aire to affaile men; and for this cause, some call this kinde of Vipers Tyrestheir biting is most venomoust, and for the most part incurable. One of them chanced to bite an Indian Maide which ferued me in my houfe, to whom I caufed the Surgians to minister their ordinary

60 low water, lo that the dad the third day for lacke of remedie, as the like hath chanced to dinner. others. This Maide was of the age of foureteene yeares, and loake the Spanish tongue as if the had beene borne in Caffide the faid that the Viper which bit her, on the foot, was two spans long, or little leffe : and that to bite her, the leapt in the aire for the spaces more then fix paces, as I have heard the like of other credible persons. Ihaue

Addets.

979

I have also seene in the firme Land a kinde of Adders, very small, and of seven or eight food long; these are so red, that in the night they appeare like burning coles, and in the day seeme as red as blood, these are also venemous, but not so much as the Vipers. There are other much lesse and shorter, and blacker a these come out of the Rivers, and wander sometimes farre on the Land and are likewise venemous. There are also other Adders of a russet colour : these are somewhat bigger then the Viper, and are hurtfull and venemous. There are likewise another fort of mae ny colours, and very long : of thefel iaw one in the years of Christ 1515 in the lland of Hills. mola, neere vnto the Sea coafts, at the foote of the Monntaines called Pedernales. When this Adder was flain I measured her, & found her to be more then twenty foot long, and somewhat more then a mans fift in bignesse: and although she had three or four deadly wounds with a Sword, 13 yet dyed fhe not, nor flunke the fame day, in so much that her blood continued warme all that time. There are also in the Marilhes and defarts of the firme Land many other kindes of Lylarts.

Spiders huge.

Dragons, and diners other kindes of Serpents, whereof I intend not here to speak much, because I haue more particularly entreated of these things in my generall historie of the West Indies. There are tho Spiders of marueilous bignesse, and I have seene some with bodie and legges bigger then a mans hand extended every way, and I once faw one of fuch bigneffe, that onely her body was as bigge as a Sparrow, and tull of that Laune whereof they make their webbes : this was of a darke ruffet colour, with eyes greater then the eyes of a Sparrow, they are venemous, and of terrible (hape to behold. There are also Scorpions, and divers other such venomous wormes. Furthermore in the firme Land, there are many Toades, being verie noious and hurtfull by reason an of their great multitude, they are not venemous, they are feene in great abundance in Darcena where they are so big that when they die in the time of drought, the bones of tome of them (and especially the ribs) are of such greatnesse, that they appeare to be the bones of Cats, or of some o-

Toades.

Their renging, ther beafts of the same bignesse. But as the waters diminish, &the moisture consumeth in the time of drought (as I have faid) they also consume therewith, vntill the yeare next following when the raine and moisture encrease, at which time they are seene againe. Neuerthelesse, at this prefent there is no fuch quantitie of them, as was wont to be, by reason that as the Land is better cultured by the Christians, as well by the felling of Woods and Shrubs, as also by the Pasture of Kine, Horses, and other beasts, so is it apparant that this poison diminisheth daily, whereby Singing. that region becommeth more holesome and pleasant. These Toades sing after three or source 30 fort, for some of them sing pleasantly, other like ours of Spaine, some also whistle, and other some make another manner of notic: they are likewife of divers colours, as some greene, some ruflet or gray, and some almost blacke, but of all forts they are great and filthie, and noious by reason of

their great multitude, yet are they not venemous as I have faid. There are also a strange kinde of Crabbes, which come forth of certaine holes of the earth, ther Torroifes, that they themselves make : the head and bodie of these make one round thing, much like to the hood of a Faulcon, having foure feete comming out of the one fide, and as manie out of the other: they have also two mouthes, like vnto a paire of small Pincers, the one bigger then the other, wherewith they bite, but doe no great hurt, because they are not venemous : their skin and bodie is smooth, and thinne, as is the rkinne of a man, fauing that it is somewhat harder; their 40 colour is ruffet, or white, or blew, and walke fidelong, they are verie good to be eaten, in so much that the Christians trauailing by the firme Land, have beene greatly nourished by them, because they are found in manner euerie where : in shape and forme they are much like vnto the Crabbe which we paint for the figne Cancer, and like vnto those which are found in Spaine in Andalufia in the River Guadalchiber, where it entreth into the Sea, and in the Sea coalts there about, fauing that thefe are of the water, and the other of the land: they are sometimes hurtfull. so that they that care of them dye, but this chanceth onely when they have eaten any venomous thing, or of the venemous apples wherewith the Caniball archers poilon their arrowes, whereof I will ipeake hereafter, and for this cause the Christians take heede how they eate of these Crabbes, if they finde them neere vnto the faid apple trees. Furthermore in thefe Indies, as well 50 in the firme land, as in the llands, there is found a kinde of Serpents, which they call Tuanat, which some call Inamas, these are terrible and searefull to fight, and yet not hurtfull, they are verie delicate to be eaten, and it is not yet knowne whether they be beafts of the land, or fishes, because they live in the water, and wander in the woods, and on the land : they have foure feet, and are commonly bigger then Connies, and in some places bigger then Orters, with tailes like Lylarts or Eutes : their skinne is spotted, and of the same kinde of smoothnesse or barenesse, although of divers colours : vpon the ridge of their backes, they have manie long prickes, their teeth are very sharpe, and especially their fangs or dogge teeth, their throates are I ng and large, reaching from their beards to their brefts, of the like skinne to the refidue of their bodies: they are dumbe, and haue no voice, or make any noite, or crie, although they be kept tied to the foote of a cheft, or any other thing, for the space of twentie or fine and twentie daies, without sny thing to exte or drinke, except they give them now and then a little of the bread of Cazabi, or

fome fuch other thing : they have foure feete, and their fore-feete as long as a mans finger, with clawes like the clawes of a bird, but weaker, and tuch as cannot grafple or take hold of any

thing : they are much better to be eaten then to behold, for few that fee them, will have define tung; they have by reason of their horrible shape, except such as have been a could need to the beats of their, by reason of their horrible shape, except such as have been a could need to the beats of their regions, which are more horrible and fearefull, as this is not, but onely in apparent rence : their fielh is of much better tafte then the fielh of Counies, and more holefome, for it Nete. harter's none but onely fuch as have had the Frencis poxe, in fo much, that if they have beene couched of that infirmitie, although they have beenewhole of long time, neuertheleffe they feeleburt, and complaine of the eating of these Imamas, as hath beene oftentimes proued by

CHAP.3. Wonders of the Tomineios Asmadillos, Beares Antes &c.

There are found in the firme land certaine birds, so little, that the whole bodie of one of them Small Birds.

to is no bigger then the top of the bigger finger of a mans hand, and yet is the bare body without Transition the feathers not halfe to bigge: This Bird, befide her littleneffe, is of fach velofice and swiftneffe in flying, that who fo feath her flying in the aire, cannot fee her flap or beate her wing safter amy other fore then doe the Dorres, or humble Bees, or Beetels : for that there is no man that feeth herstye, that would thinke her to be any other then a Dorre: they make their ness according to the proportion of their biguesse, and I have feene that one of these Birds with her neft par in a paire of gold weights altogether, hath waide no more then 2. Tomin, which are in nest put in a pair or good weights acceptance, make want no more such 2.2 somes, which are in polic 24 graines, with the feathers, without the which the should have waited formewhat leffer And doubtlesse, when I consider the finenesse of the thaws and force of their Birds, I know not whereunto I may better liken them, then to the little birds which the lymners of bookes are 20 accurlomed to paint on the margent of Church Bookes, and other Bookes of Dinine Seruice.

Their Feathers are of manie faire colours, as golden, yellow, and greene, befide other variable colours: their beake is verie long for the proportion of their bodies, and as fine and interior as a fowing needle: they are verie hardy, so that when they fee a man clime the tree where they have their nefts, they flye at his face, and firthe him in the eyes, comming, going, and returning with fuch fwiftness, that no man would lightly belease it, that hath not seene it: and certainly thefe birds are fo little, that I durit not have made mention hereof, if it were not that divers others which have seene them as well as I, can beare witnesse of my saying: they make their orners within these region, whereof there is great pleated in these regions, and ferrects well for their purpose. But as specing the Baila, Foslers, and Beasts of sheet Judges, because they are 30 innumerable, both little and great, I intend not to fprake much here, because I haus spoken more

largely hereof in my generall Historie of the Indies. There is another hinde of Bratte feene in the firme Land, which feemeth very firange and manifolds to the Christian men to behold, and much differing from all other Brasts which have beene inother parts of the World : shell Beafis are called Bardeti, and are found footed, having sherr tails and all the reft of their bodies too Bardeti or dit urred onely with a skin like the coperture of a barbed horse, or the checkered skid of a Lifart of maddles; a Crocodile of colour between white and rufat; inclining immercial since to white; This Beaft kind of Most is of forms and flaps much like took barbed seeds, with his birdes and flankers is all points, and from under that which is the barbe and coperture, the taile commeth forth, and the feere in their place, the necke alfo and the eares in their parts, and in fine all things in like fore as in a barbed

40 courfer: they are of the bignefic of one of these common Dogges, they are not herifull, they are filthie, and have their habitation in certaine hillockes of the earth, where digging with their feete, they make their dens verie deepe, and the holes thereof, is him manner as doe Connies: they are very excellent to be eater, and are taken with ness, and fokus also killed with Croft bowes : they are likewise taken of tasteimes when the Husbandmen burse the flusble in fowing time, or to renew the herbage for Kine and other Bearts. I have oftentimes eaten of their field which feemeth to me of better tafte then Kidder field, and holefome to be eaten. And if there Beafts had ener beene feene in thefe parts of the world, where the first barbed Horfes had theif originall, no man would isage but that the forme and fathion of the copertuse of Horses formitted ed for the warres, was first denifed by the fight of these Bearles,

There is also in the firme Land another beath, called Orfe Pornigues, that is, the Ante bear & Bearta I nere is among the action is a mark like on the Beath of Spating stands in minner of the fame making, face that he shade a much longer flower, and in of emithing to they are often only with flaues, without any other we apon, and are not insertible, they are blife taken with Dogges, because they are not naturally arresel, although they bits for ewhat, they are found for the molt part about and more to the hillockes where are green shouldance of shrees. For the the Regions is ingrediced a certains kind of Anton, were kerde and blacked; in the Fields sight Anton the Region of the strength of the Region of the strength of the Region of Plaines whereas grows no Trees, where by the inflinet of Neture blade Antis separate themfelues to ingender harse from the Woods for fease of thefe Bearest the which became they are fearefull, vile, and wasened (as I have faid) they harps ener in places foll of Trees, writh vely,

60 famine and necessitie, or the great delite that they have to feede out these Amas, tanse the Bell come out of the Woods to hunt for them : thefe Antes make a hillsthe of earth of the Reigh of a man, or fomewhat more or leffe, and as bigge as a great Cheft, and sometimes as bigge as a Big or a Hoghead, and as hard as a ftone, to that they seeme as though shey were cones, fee with the limit the ends and confines of certaine Lands. Within these hillockes, made of most hard earth,

are innumerable and infinite little Ants, the which may be gathered by bushels when the hillock is broken : the which when it is sometimes moy fled by raine, and then dried againe by the hear of the Sunne, it breaketh, and hath certaine small rifts, as little and subtill as the edge of a Knife, and it feemeth that Nature hath given fense to these Antes to find such a matter of earth, where-Johnstonenions with they may make the faid hillocke of fuch hardness, that it may seeme a strong patterness legistratementions what the lime and ftone; and whereas I have produced and caused fome of them to be broken, I haue found them of such hardnesse, as if I had not seene, I could not have beleeved, informach that they could scarsly be broken with Pikes of Iron, so strong Fortresses doe these hittle beafts make for their fafegard against their aductiarie the Beare, who is chiefly nourished by them, and make for their surgariangums them assurement and Protective which faith, Nove advance perform and given them as an enemie, according to the common Protective which faith, Nove advance perform to fibera, a chunanchi il fue Bargelle, that is, There is no man fo free, that hath not his Perfection Grentwonders or prime Enemie. And here when I confider the maruellous providence which Nature harh gi uen to the selittle bodies, I call to remembrance the wittie Sentence of Plinie, where speaking of tion to the electropouses, a case of temperature and water bounds as a more peaking of inch lettle beats, he faith that, 80% do we mercall at the Town-heaving flowders of inflormation and readow where Nature bath placed for many finite and fine inadpry in fine better bodes? Where in the third water is the bodes? Where is the control of the third water of the control of the third water in the control of the c beast can line or mone, in tonje jo insie omnes, morro j jone in vijo jonni som totir monte omnes can fearly bee seene of our opes: What shall we then say of the parts of the same? Tes even among these there are many of such so gacitie and industry, as the like is not seene in beasts of greater quantitie, no

But to returne to the Historie. This Enemy which nature hath given to these little Beasts, wieth this manner to affaile them : When he resorteth to the Hillocke where the Antes lychid as in their fortreffe, he putteth his tongue to one of the rifts whereof we have spoken, beeing as subtill as the edge of a Sword, and therewith continuall licking, maketh the place most, the foame and froth of his mouth being of such propertie, that by continual licking the place, it inlargeth the rift in such fort by little and little, that at the length he easily putteth in his rongue, which he hath very long and thinne, and much disproportionate to his bodie, and when he hath thus made free passage for his tongue in the hillocke, to put it easily in and out at his pleasure, then he thrusteth it into the hole as farre as he can reach, and so letteth it rest a good space, vntill agreat quantitie of the Antes (whose nature reioyceth in heat and movifure) have laden his 30 tongue, and as many as he can containe in the hollownesse thereof, at which time hee suddenly draweth it into his mouth , and exteth them, and returneth agains to the same practice in mediarly, vatill hee haue cater as many as him litteth, or as long as hee can reach any with his tongue. The fielh of this Beaft, is fifthy and unfanourie, but by reason of the extreame shifts and necessitie that the Christian men were put to at their first comming into these parts , they were inforced to prooue all things, and fo fell to the earing of these Beafts : but when they had found more delicate meates, they fell into hatred with this. These Antes have the appearance of the place of their entrance into the hillocke; under the ground, and this at folittle a hole. that it could hardly bee found, if certains of them were not feens to passe in and out : but by this way the Beares could have no fach power to hurt them as aboue at the faid rifes; as I 400

. There is anoother strange beast, which by a name of contrary effect, the Spaniards call Cagmole loggiere, that is, The Light Dogge, whereas it is one of the floweft beatts in the World. and fo heatie and dull in mooning, that it can fearfly goe fiftie pafes in a wholeday : thefe beafts are in the firma Land, and are very strange to behold for the disproportion that they have to all other beafts: they are about two fpans in length when they are growne to their full bigneffe, but when they are very young, they are iomewhat more groffe then long : they have foure fubrill feet, and in energy of them four clawes like vnto Birds, and loyned together, yet are neither their clawes or their feet able to fufteine their bodies from the ground, by reason whereof, and by the heatine fe of their bodies, they draw their bellies on the ground their neckes are high and 50 fixeight, and all equall like the petite of a Morter, which is altogether equal even vnto the top, without making any proportion or fimilitude of a head, or any difference except in the moddle. and in the topa of their neckes : they have very round faces much like voro Owles, and have a marke of their owne haire after the manner of a Circle, which maketh their faces feeme fome-What more long then large: they have finall eyes and round, & noffrils like wnto Monkeyes: they haue little mouthes, and mooue their neckes from one fide to another, as though they were aftemilhed : their chiefe defire and delight is to cleave and tricke fast vnto Trees, or some other thing whereby they may climbe alofs and therefore for the most part, these beafts are found voon Trees, whereuneo cleauing saft shey mount up by little and little, staying themselves by their long claves, the colour of their stairs is betweene ruffet and white, and of the proper colour of 60 hairpof & Wefell ; they hatteno tayles, and their voice is much differing from other beafts, The dies tag analy in the night, and that consinually from time to time , finging over fixe notes can higher themenather, to saling with the fame, that the first note is the highest, and the other an abeler tune, wif a man thould fay, La, fot, fa, mi,re, set, to this beatt faith, Ha,habs,ba,ba,ba,ba

And doubtleffe, it feemeth to me, that as I have faid in the Chapter of the beaft called Bardais. that those bealts might be the onginall and document to imbarbe Horses: even fo, the first inuention of Musické might seeme by the hearing of this beast, to have the first principles of that Science, rather then by any other thing in the World, But now to returne to the Hiltone. I say that in a short space after this Beast hath sing, and hath pauled a while, thee returneth agains to the felfe-fame Song, and doth this onely in the night, and not in the day: By reason whereof, and also because of her euill sight, I thinke her to be a night Beast, and the friend of darknesse. Sometimes the Christian men find these Beafts, and bring them home to their houses, where also they creepe all about with their naturall slownesse, insomuch that neither for threatning or to pricking they will moone any faster then their naturall and accustomed pace. And if they finde any Trees, they creepe thither immediately, and mount to the top of the highest branch thereof, where they remayne continually for the space of eight, or ten, or twentie dayes, without eating of any thing, as farre as any man can judge. And whereas I my felfe haue kept them in my houte, I could never perceive other but that they live onely of Aires and of the same opinion, are in manner all men of those Regions, because they have never seene them eate any thing, but ever turne their beads and mouthes toward that part where the wind bloweth most, whereby may be confidered that they take most pleasure in the Ayre. They bite not, nor yet can bite, having very little mouthes : they are not venemous or noyous any way, but altogether brutifh, and vevery unprofitable, and without commoditie yet knowne to men, fauing onely to moone their 30 minds to contemplate the infinite power of God, who delighteth in the varietie of creatures. whereby appeareth the power of his incomprehensible wildome and maiestie, so farre to exceed

the capacitie of mans understanding. ne capacitie of mans vincental likewife found certaine Fowlesor Birds, which the Indians call Foules and Alearrat : there are much bigger then Geele, the greatest part of their feathers are of ruffic too- Birds. lour, and in some parts yellow, their bils or beakes are of two spannes in length, and very large Aleanar, neere to the head, and growing small toward the point, they have great and large throates, and are much like to a Fowle which I faw in Flanders, in Bruffels in your Maiefties Palace, which the are much that And I remember that when your Maiestie dined one day in your great Hall, there was brought to your Marefties presence a Caldron of water with certaine fishes a-30 line, which the faid fowle did eat vp whole, and I think verily that that fowle was a fowle of the Sca, because she had feet like fowles of the water, as have also these Alcatrazi, which are like wife fowles of the Sea, and of such greatnesse, that I have seen a whole coate of a man put into the throats of one of them in Panama, in the yeare 1921. And for a fmuch as in that Coast of Pama, there paffeth and flyeth a great multitude of their Alestrani, being a thing very notable, I Passans will declare the manner hereof, as not onely I, but also divers other now present in your Maie-Ries Court have oftentimes feene. Your Maiestie shall therefore understand, that in this place (as I have faid before) the Sea of Sur rifeth and falleth two leagues and more from fixe houres to fixe houre : fo that when it increafeth, the water of the Sea arriveth fo neere to the houses of Panama, as doth our Sca (called Mare Mediterraneum) in Barzalona, or in Naples: and when 40 the faid increasing of the Sea commeth, there commeth also therewith such a multitude of small fiftes called Sardines, that it is fo maruellous a thing to behold, that no man would beleeve it that Pilchards

hath not feene it. Infomuch that the Cacique (that is) the King of that Land, at fuch time as I dwelt there, was bound daily, as he was commanded by your Maiefties Gouernour, to bring ordinarily three Canoas or Barkes full of the faid Sardines, and to valade the same in the Market place, which were afterward by the Ruler of the Citie divided among the Christian men, without any coft or charge to any of them : Infomuch that if the people had beene a much greater multitude then they were, and as many as are at this prefent in Toledo, or more, and had none o. ther thing to live by, they might have beene sufficiently susteined by these Sardines, beside the overplus which should have remayned. But to returne to the fowles, whereof wee have spo-50 ken. As the Sea commeth , and the Sardmer with the fame , euen foglikewise come the said Alcatrazzi therewith, and flye continually over it in fuch a multitule, that they appeare to couer the vpper part or floore of the water, and thus continue in mounting and falling from the ayre to the water, and from the water to the ayre, during all the time of their fishing and af-Some as they have taken any of these Sardines, they flye about the waters, and eate them incontinently, and fuldenly returns against to the water for more, continuing thus course by course

without ceafing : in like manner when the Sea falleth , they follow their fishing as I have faid. Theregoeth allo in the company of these fowles another kind of fowles, called Coda inforcata. (that is) the forked tayle, whereof I have made mention before, and assome as the Alestrate moun-60 teth from the water with her prey of the Sandnes, findently this Code inforcase given her fo many strokes, and so periccuteth her, that shee causeth her to let fall the Sardnes which shee hath in her mouth: the which affoone as they are fallen, and before they yet touch the water. the Coda inforcata catcheth them even in the fall, in fuch fort, that it is a great pleasure to behold the combat betweene them all the day long. The number of thefe Alcatrazza is fich, that the Christian men are accustomed to lend to certaine Hands and Rockes which are neere about Pa-

cannot flie, and kill as many of them with staues as they will, votill they have therewith laden their Barkes or Canoas : thefe young ones are fo fat and well fed, that they cannot bee eaten, and are taken for none other intent, but onely to make Grease for Candles to burne in the night, for the which purpose it serueth very well, and gineth a cleere light, and burnetheastly. After this manner, and for this purpole, innumerable of them are killed : and yet it feemeth that the number of them that fish for Sardines doe daily increase. There are other fowles called Paffere sempie, that is, simple Sparowes : these are somewhat less then Seamewes, and have their feet like voto great Malards, and stand in the water fometimes, and when the ships saile fiftie or a hundred leagues about the Ilands, thefe fowles beholding the thips comming toward them, to

nama, with their Boates or Barkes to take thele Alcatrazzi, while they are yet young, and

uier then bo.

breake their flight, and fall downe vpon the Saile yards, Masts, and Cables thereof, and are fo simple and foolish, that they carrie vntill they may easily bee taken with mens hands, and were therefore called of the Mariners simple Sparrowes : they are blacke, and vpon their blacke. have their head and shoulders of feathers of a darke russet colour : they are not good to bee eacen. although the Mariners have sometimes beene inforced to eate them. There is another kind Picuti, Birds of Birds in the firme Land, which the Christians call Picuti, because they have very great beakes. in respect of the littlenesse of their bodies, for their beakes are very heavie, and weigh more then their whole bodies beside : these Birds are no bigger then Quailes , but haue a much greater bulhment of feathers infomuch that their feathers are more then their bodies: their feathers are very faire, and of many variable colours; their beakes are a quar- 30 ter of a yard in length or more, and bending downe toward the Earth, and three fingers broad necre vnto the head : their tongues are very quils, wherewith they make a great hiffing: they make holes in Trees with their beakes, in the which they make their Nefts. And furely these Birds are maruellous to behold, for the great difference which they have from all other Birds that I have seene, aswell for their tongues (which are quils as I have faid) as also for the strangenesse of their fight and disproportion of their great beakes, in respect of the rest of their bodies. There are no Birds found that provide better for the fafegard of their young in the time of their breeding, to be without danger of wilde Cats, that they enter not into their Nests to defroy their Egges or young, and this aswell by the strange manner of building their Nests, as also by their owne defence : and therefore when they perceine that the Cats approach toward 30 them, they enter into their Nests, and holding their beakes toward the entrance of the same, stand at their defence, and so vexe the Cats, that they cause them to leave their enterprize.

Foolish Spaprouident.

There are also other Birds or Sparrowes, which the Christmans by contrary effect call Matti, that is Fooles: Whereas neuerthelessethere is no Bird that sheweth more wit and crast in defending her young from perill. These Birds are little, and in manner blacke, and somewhat bigger then our Thrushes; they have certaine white feathers in their neckes, and the like fagacitie or sharpnesse of sense as have the Birds or Pyes called Gazzanle: they seldome times light woon the earth: they make their Nests in Trees separated from other, because the Monkeyes are accultomed to leape from Tree to Tree, not descending to the ground for feare of other beafts, except when they are enforced by thirft to come downe to drinke, at fuch times as they are fure 40 not to be moleited, and for this cause doe not these Birds make their Nests but in Trees farre diuided from other, they make them of a Cubit in length, or more, after the manner of bagges or little fackes, large at the bottome, and growing narrower and narrower toward the mouth, whereby they are fastened, having the hole whereat they enter into the facke, of such bignesse as may onely suffice to receive them. And to the end that the Monkeyes may not devoure their young, if they chance to mount vpon the Trees where they have their Nests, they vie another craft, which is, to make their Neits in thicke branches of Trees, and to defend the same with sharpe and strong thornes, implicate and set in such order, that no man is able to make the like, fo that the Monkeyes can by no meanes put their legges into the hole of the Neit to take out the young Birds, aswell for the tharpnesse of the thornes, as also for the depth of the Nests in the to bottome whereof, the young Birds reft without danger of their enemie : for some of their Nests being three or foure spans in length, the leg of the Monkey cannot reach to the bottome thereof. They vie also another policie, which is, to make many of their Nests in one Tree, the which they doe for one of these two causes: that is, that either of their owne naturall disposition they are accustomed to goe in great multitudes, and reioyce in the company of their owne generation, as doe the Birds which we call Stares, or elfe to the intent that if it should so chance that the Monkeyes should climbe the Trees where they make their Nests, they might bee a greater company to relift and molest the Monkeyes, at whose approach they make a fearefull and terrible cry, whereby the Monkeyes are put to flight. Furthermore, in the firme Land, and in the llands, there are certaine Birds called Piche, or Gazzuole, iomewhat like wato those which we call Wood-wals, or Wood-peckes, being lesse then ours of Spaine : these are altogether blacke, and goe hopping and leaping, their beakes are also blacke, and of the fame falhion as are the Popingiayes beakes, they have long tayles, and are somewhat bigger

There are other Birds called Pintadelli, which are like vnto certaine greene Birds, which the Pintadelli. Itelians call Fringuelli, and are of feuen colours: these Birds for feare of the Monkeyes, are ever wont to make their Nests ouer the bankes of Rivers, or the Sea, where the branches of Trees so reach ouer the water, that with a little weight they may bow downe to the water : their Nofts are made fo neere the tops of the branches, that when the Monkeyes come thereon, the branches bend roward the water, and the Monkeyes turne backe againe for feare of falling: For although no beaft in the World be more malicious then this, yet whereas the most part of beasts are naturally inclined to fwimme, this Monkey hath no manner of aptnesse thereunto, and is therefore foone drowned or strangled in the water, and by a prime fense of Nature feareth the danger to which he cannot escape. These Birds make their Nests in such fort, that although they bee wet and filled with water, yet doe they so suddenly rife up againe, that the young Birds are not thereby hurt or drowned. There are also many Nightingales, and other Birds which fing maruellous ly with great melodie and difference in finging; these Birds are of maruellous divers colours the one from the other, some are altogether yellow, and some other of so excellent, delectable, and high a colour, asit were a Rubie, other are also of divers and variable colours, some of few cos lours, and other some all of one colour, being all so faire and beautifull, that in brightnesse and thining they excell all that are in Spaine, or Italie; or other Provinces of Europe. Many of these are taken with Nets, lime-twigs, and Springes of divers forts. Divers other forts of great fewles. like vnto Eagles, and fuch other as live of prey, are found in the firme Land, of fuch divertitie.

20 that it is in manner impossible to describe them all particularly : and for a much as I have more largely intreated hereof in my generall Historie of the Indies, I thinke it not requifite heere to make any further mention of the same.

#### Of Trees, Fruits, and Plants.

"Here is both in the firme Land and the Ilands a certaine Tree called Coco, being a kind of coco. Here is both in the firme Land and the frames of the felfelame greatnesse, as have the Date Trees which beare Dates, but differ much in their growing, for the leaves of this Coco grow out of the trunkes of the Tree, as doe the fingers out of the hand, wreathing themselves one within ano-30 ther, and fo foreading abroad : their Trees are high, and are found in great plentie in the Coast of the Sea of Sur, in the Prouince of Cacique Chiman, These Date Trees bring forth a Fruit after this fort : being altogether write as it groweth on the Tree , it is of greater circumference then the head of a man, and from the superficial part to the middelf, which is the fruit, it is involved and couered with many Webs much like vnto those Hirds of Towe which they vie in Andalusia. Of this Towe or Web, the East Indians make a certaine kind of Cloth, of three or foure forts, and Cordes for the Sayles of Ships : but in thefe Indies of your Maieftie, they paffe not for shele Coards, or this Cloth that may be made of the Fruit of Coco, by reason of the great plentie that they have of the Bombage or Cotton of Gossampine Trees, The Fruit which is in the middeft of the faid Tow, is (as I have faid) as bigge as a mans fift, and fometimes twice as bigge, and more : 40 It in forme like voto a Walnut tome other round thing, fomewhat more long then large, and very hard, the rinde or burke hereof, is as thicke as the circle of Letters of a Rull of Plate, and within, there cleaueth fast to the rinde of the Nut a carnolitie or substance of coornell, of the

thicknesse of halfe a finger, or of the least finger of the hand, and is very white, like vnto a faire Almond, and of better tafte and more pleasank. When this Fruit is chewed, there remayne certaine crummes, as doe the like of Almonds : Yet if it be swallowed downe, it is not unpleasant. For although that after the juyce or moyfture be gone downe the throat before the faid crummes be swallowed, the rest which is eaten, seeme somewhat sharpe or sowre, yet doth it not so greatly offend the tafte, as to be caft away. While this Cocas is yet fresh and newly taken from the Tree, they vie not to eate of the faid carnofitie and Fruit, but first beating it very much, and then 50 strayning it, they draw a Mikethereof, much better and sweeter then is the Milke of Beasts.

and of much substance, the which the Christian men of those Regions put in the Tartes or Cakes which they make of the grain of Maix whereof they make their Bread, or in other Bread I Ihaue Gene Cakes which they make of the grain or MAILE WHETEOT they make their bread, or in other bread one of thefe as we put Bread in Pottage: fo that by reason of the said Milke of Coem, the Tartes are more exas we pure the state of the sta atwell farished as thought it had ocene designed with many designed by the forest possible of the further, your Maieltie shall viderstand, that is in the place of the stone or cornell, there is in the whole if it further, your Maieltie shall viderstand the stone of lent water, in such quantitie as may fill a great Egge shell, or more, or lesse, according to the big- hardshogge nesse of the Cocos, the which water surely, is the most substantiall, excellent and precious to bee therein as it 60 drunke, that may be found in the World; infomuch that in the moment when it passeth the pa. were in a Bot-

late of the mouth, and beginneth to goe downe the throate, it feemeth that from the fole of the tle, but in time foot, to the crowne of the head, there is no part of the bodie but that feeleth great comfort was partly thereby : as it is doubtlesse one of the most excellent things that may bee tasted upon the earth, congcaled into and fuch as I am not able by writing or tongue to expresse. And to proceed yet further, I say that a fix substance Mmmm 2

when the meate of this fruit is taken from the Vessell thereof, the vessell remayneth as faire and neate as though it were polished, and is without of colour inclining toward black, and thineth or glistereth very faire, and is within of no lesse delicatenesse. Such as haue accustomed to drinke in from Collicks these Vessels, and have beene troubled with the Disease called the fretting of the guts, say that they have by experience found it a marvellous remedie against that Disease, and that it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine. This fruit was called Coca, for this cause, that when it is taken from the place where it cleaueth failt to the Tree, there are feene two holes, and aboue them two other naturall holes, which altogether doe represent the griture and figure of the Cattes called Mammon, that is, Monkeyes, when they cry, which cry the Indians call Coca, but in very deed, this Tree is a kind of Date Tree, and hath the same effect to heale fretting of the guts, that Plinis describeth all kinde of Date trees to have. There are furthermore in the firms Land, Trees of such bignesse that I dare not speake thereof, but in place where I have so many witnesses which have seene the same as well as I. I say therefore, that a league from Darieng or the Gitie of Santa Maria Antiqua, there passetha River very large and deepe, which is called Cut, ouer the which the Indians laid a great Tree, fo traverling the same, that it was in the flead of a bridge, the which I my felfe with divers other that are at this prefent in your Majeflies

Court, have oftentimes paffed over. And forafmuch as the faid Tree had Iyen long there, and by

the great weight thereof was so shrunke downeward, and partly coursed with water, that none

could paffe ouer it, but were wet to the knee, I being then in the yeere 1522, the officiall or lu-

place, which in like manner trauerled the Riuer, and reached more then fiftie foote oner the

further fide : This Tree was exceeding great, and rested about the water more then two Cubits,

in the fall, it cast downe all such other Trees as were within the reach thereof, and discourred certaine bynes, which were fo laden with blacke Grapes of pleafant tafte, that they fatisfied

more then fiftie persons which are their fill thereof. This Tree, in the thickest part thereof, was

more then fixteene spannes thicke, and was neuertheleffe but little in respect of many other trees

flice in that Citie at your Maiesties appointment, caused another great Tree to bee laid in that ap

which are found in this Prouince. For the Indians of the Coast and Prouince of Cartagenia, make Barkes or Boates thereof (which they call Canous) of fuch bigneffe, beeing all one whole

Great Canoas Tree, that some contains a hundred men, some a hundred and thirtie, and some more, having neuertheleffe fuch void space within the same, that there is left sufficient roome to passe to and fro to throughout all the Canous. Some of these are so large, beside the length, that they conteine more then tenne or twelve spannes in breadth, and faile with two failes, as with the Master faile and the trincket, which they make of very good Cotton. The greatest Trees that I have seene in these parts, or in any other Regions, was in the Prouince of Gnature, the King whereof rebelling from the obedience of your Maiestie, was purfued by me, and taken Prisoner: at which time I with my company, passed ouer a very high Mountaine, full of great Trees, in the top whereof, we found one Tree, which had three roots, or rather divisions of the roote above the Earth, in forme of a Triangle, or Treuet, fo that betweene every foot of this Triangle or three feet, there was a space of twentie foot betweene every foot, and this of such height above the Earth, that a laden Cart of those wherewith they are accustomed to bring home Corne in time of Haruest in 46 the Kingdome of Toledo in Spaine, might early have passed through emery of those partitions or windoores which were betweene the three feet of the faid Tree. From the Earth vpward to the trunke of the Tree, the open places of the divisions betweene these three feete, were of such height from the ground, that a Footman with a lauelin was not able to reach the place where the faid feet joyned together in the trunke or bodie of the Tree, which grew of great height in one piece, and one whole bodie, or euer it spread in branches, which it did not before it exceeded in height the Towre of Saint Romane in the Citie of Toledo: from which height and vpward, it spread very great and strong branches. Among certaine Spaniards which climbed this Tree, I my felfe was one, and when I was afcended to the place where it begunne to ipread the branches, it was maruellous thing to behold a great Countrey of fuch Trees toward the Pro- 50 uince of Abrarme. This Tree was easie to climbe, by reason of certaine Besuchi, (whereof I haue spoken before) which grew wreathed about the Tree, in such fort that they seemed to make a scaling Ladder. Every of the foresaid three feet which bore the bodie of the Tree, was twentie spannes in thicknesse, and where they joyned altogether about the Trunke or bodie of the Tree, the principall Trunke was more then fortie and fine spannes in circuite. I named the Mountaine where thefe Trees grow, the Mountaine of three footed Trees. And this which I have now declared, was seene of all the company that was there with mee when (as I have faid before) I took King Guaturo Prifoner in the yeere 1 ; 22. Many things more might here be ipoken as touching this matter, as also how there are many other excellent Trees found of divers forts and difference, as sweet Cedar Trees, blacke Date Trees, and many other, of the which some are 60 so heavie that they cannot float about the water, but finke immediately to the bottome, and other againe as light as a Corke. As touching all which things I have written more largely in my generall Historie of the Indies. And for as much as at this prefent I have entred to entreate of Trees, before I passe any fur-

ther to other things, I will declare the manner how the Indians kindle fire, onely with Wood Kindling of and without fire, the manner whereof is this. They take a peece of wood, of two fpannes in fire without length, as biggers the least finger of a mans hand, or as an arrow well pullished, and of a strong fire, kinde of wood which they keepe onely for this purpole; and where they intend to kindle any fire, they take two other peeces of wood, of the drieft and lightest that they can finde, and binde them fail together one with another, asclose as two fingers loyned : in the middelt or between there, they put the point of the first little staffe made of hard and strong wood, which they hold in their hands by the top thereof, and turne or rubbe it round about continually in one place betweene the two peeces of wood which lye bound together vpon the earth, which by that vn-

10 ceffant rubbing and chafing, are in fhort space kindled, and take fire. I have also thought good Purified word here to speake somewhat of such things as come to my remembrance of certaine Trees which nicht. are found in this Land, and sometime also the like have beene seene in Spaine. These are certaine putrified trunkes, which have lien fo long rotting on the earth, that they are very white, and shine in the night like burning firebrands, and when the Spaniards finde any of this wood, and intend privily in the night to make warre and invade any Province, when case so requireth that it shall be necessarie to goe in the night, in such places where they know not the way, the formost Christian man which guideth the way, affociate with an Indian to direct him therein, taketh a little starre of the faid wood, which he putteth in his cap, hanging behinde on his shoulders, by the light whereof he that followeth next to him, directeth his journey, who also 20 in like manner beareth another starre behinde him, by the shining whereof the third followeth the same way, and in like manner doe all the rest, so that by this meanes none are lost or stragle

out of the way. And for as much as this light is not feene very farre, it is the better policie for the Christians, because they are not thereby disclosed before they inuade their enemies, Furthermore, as touching the natures of Trees, one particular thing feemeth worthy to be noted, where- Plinter of Plinie maketh mention in his naturall Historie, where he faith that there are certaine Trees which continue euer greene and neuer loofe their leaues, as the Bay-tree, the Cedar, the Orangetree, and the Olive-tree, with such other, of the which in altogether he nameth not past five or fix. To this purpose, I say, that in the Hands of these Indies, and also in the firme land, it is a Almost Illiathing of much difficultie to finde two Trees that lofe or cast their leaves at any time for although 30 I have diligently fearched to know the truth hereof, yet have I not feene any that lofe their greene. leaves, either of them which we have brought out of Spaine into these regions, as Orange-trees,

Limons, Cedars, Palmes, or Date-trees, and Pomegranate-trees, or of any other in these regi- Caffic. ons, except onely Caffie, which lofeth his leaves, and hath a greater thing appropriate to it Erth hot loss felle onely; which is, that whereas all other Trees and Plants of India spread their rootes no er then a fadeeper in the earth then the depth of a mans height, or formewhat more, not descending any dome. further into the ground, by reason of the great heare which is found beneath that depth, yet Raicell most doth Cassia pearle further into the ground, vntill it finde water: which by the Philosophers of the case pinion flould be the cause of a thinne and watery radicall molfture to such things as draw their nourithment thereof, as fat and vnetuous grounds with temperate heate, yeelde a fast and firme 40 moisture to such things as grow in them, which is the cause that such Trees lose not their leages, as the faid thinne and waterish moisture is cause of the contrarie, as appeareth by the faid effect which is teene onely in Caffia, and none other Tree or Plant in all these

Of Reedes or Canes.

IN the firme land there are many forts of Reedes, fothat in many places they make their houles thereof, couering them with the tops of the same, and making their wals of them in like manner, as I have faid before ; and among these kindes of Reedes, there is one so great, that the Canes thereof are as bigge as a mans legge in the knee, and three spans in length from loynt to 50 inynt, or more, in fo much that enery of them is of capacitie to containe a little bucket of water. In this kinde, there are found some greater, and some lesse, of the which some they wie to make quivers for arrowes. There is found another kinde, which furely is marueilous, being lite Reed-springs tlebigger then a lanelin, the Canes whereof are longer then two fpannes : these Reedes grow or fountaints one faire from another, as iometimes twenty or thirty pices, and fometimes allo two or three of water-leagues: they grow in manner in all Prounces in the Indust, and grow neere to very high Trees, whereunto they leane, and creepe up to the top of their branches, which they imbrace, and descend againe downe to the earth. Their Canes are full of most cleare water, without any manner of taffe or fauour, either of the Canes, or of any other thing, and fuch as if it were taken out of the freshest Spring in the world, nor yet is it knowne that ever it hurt any that 60 drunke thereof. For it hath oftentimes fo chanced, that as the Christian men haue transited in thefe regions in defolate waies, where for lacke of water they have beene in great danger to dye with thirst, they have escaped that perill by reason that they found the sand Reedes, of the water of whole Canes they have drunke a great quantity, without any hurt thereof enfung. Therefore when they finde thele in any place, they make water veffels of the Canes thereof, and carry

as many of them full of swater as may fuffice for one dayes journey; and fometime they carrie fo many, that they take for every man two or three quarts of water, which may ferue them for many duies, because it doth not corrupt, but remainer's still fresh and good,

Playani, or

Figges.

There are also certaine Plants, which the Christians call Platani. They are as high as trees. and become as bigge in the trunke as the knee of a man, or more. From the foote to the top, they beare certaine long and large leaves, being more then three spans in largenesse, and about ten or twelue in length : the which when they are broken of the winde, the stalke remainerh whole in the middett. In the middett of this Plant, in the highest part thereof, there groweth a cluster with fortie or fiftie Plantans about it, every of them being a span and a halfe in length. and as bigge as a mans arme in the imall, or more, or leffe, according to the goodnesse of the foile to where they grow: they have a rinde not very thicke, and easie to be broken, being within altogether full of a substance like vinto the marie of the bone of an Oxe, as it appeareth when the rinde or barke is taken from the fame. This cluster ought to be taken from the Plant, when any one of the Plantans begin to appeare yellow, at which time they take it, and hang it in their houses, where all the cluster waxeth ripe, with all his Plantans. This cluster is a very good fruite, and when it is opened, and the rinde taken off, there are found within it many good drie Figges, which being rofted, or flewed in an Ouen, in a close pot, or some such other thing, are or pleafant tafte, much like to the conferue of Hony : they putrifie not on the Sea fo foone as some other fruites doe, but continue fifteene daies and more, if they be gathered somewhat greene : they feeme more delicate on the Sea then on the Land, not for that they any thing encrease in goodnes on the Sea, but because that wheras on the Sea other things are lacking, whereof is plencie on the Land, those meates seeme of best tatte, which satisfie present necessitie. This trunke or fprig which bringeth forth the faid cluster, is a whole yeare in growing and bringing forth fruite, in which time it hath put forth round about in ten or twelue fprigges, as bigge as the first or principal, and multiplieth no life then the principall in bringing forth of clusters, with fruits likewife at their time, and also in bringing forth other and many sprigges, as is said before. From the which iprigges or trunkes, as foone as the cluster of the fruite is taken away. the Plant beginneth to drie and wither, which then they take out of the ground, because it doth none other then occupie it in vaine, and without profit. They are so many, and doe so marueiloufly encrease and multiplie, that it is a thing in manner incredible. They are excee. 30 ding moult, in so much that when they are plucked up from the place where they grow, there iffueth forth a great quantity of water, as well out of the Plane, as out of the place where it grew, in such fort, that all the moisture of the earth farre about, might seeme to be gathered together about the trunke or blocke of the faid Plant, with the truites whereot, the Antes are fo farre in loue, that they are feene in great multitudes in the branches of the Plants : fo that for the multitude thereof, it fometime fo chanceth, that men are entorced to take away the Plants from their possession : these fruites are found at all times of the yeere. There is also another kinde of wilde Plants that groweth in the fickles, which I have not feene but in the Iland of Hilpamela, although they be found in other Ilands of the Indies: these they call Tunas. They grow of a Thiftle full of thornes, and bring forth a fruite much 40 like vnto great Figges, which have a crowne like Medlers, and are within of a high colour, with graines and the rinde like vnto a Figge; they are of good tafte, and grobe abundantly in the fields in many places : They worke a strange effect in such as eate them, for if a man eate two, or three, or more, they cause his wrine to be of the very colour of bloud, whith thing chanced once to my felfe. For on a time as I made water, and faw the colour of my Vrine, I entred into a great suspition of my life, being so assomished for feare, that I thought the same had chansed to me vpon some other cause, in so much that surely my imagination might have done me hurt, but that they which were with me did comfort me immediately, declaring the cause thereof, as they knew by experience, being auncient inhabitours in those regions. There groweth also another Plant, which the people of the co Countrie call Bibsor: this putteth forth certaine ftraight branches, and very broade leaves, which the Indians vie for divers purpofes; for in some places they cover their houses with the leaves thereof, couched and laid after the manner of thatch, whereunto it serueth very well : Sometimes also when it raineth, they cast these ouer their heads, to defend them from the water. They make also certaine chefts, which they call Hanas, we aued after a strange fort, and intermixt with the leaves of this Bibass. These Chests are wrought in fuch fort, that although it raine vpon them, or they chance to fall into the water, yet are not fuch things wet as are within them : they are made of the branches of the faid Bihass, with the leaves weared together therewith. In these they keepe falt, and other subtile things. They vie them also for another purpole, which is this : that finding them in the fields at such time as 60 they have scarfenesse of victuals, they digge up the rootes of these Plants while they are yet yong, or eate the Plant it selfe, in that part where it is most tender, which is from a foote vnder the ground, where it is as tender and white as a Reede or Bulrush. And for as much as we are now come to the end of this narration, it commeth to my remembrance to make mention

of another thing, which is not farre from my purpole; and this is, how the Indians doe staine or dye cloath of bombage cotton, or any other thing which they intend to dye, of divers colours, Dying of 25 Blacke, Tawny, Greene, Blew, Yellow, and Red, which they doe with the Barkes, or Rindes, and Leaues of certaine Trees, which they know by experience to be good for this practice t and by this are they make colours in such perfection and excellency, that no better can be de- A firange wied. But this feemeth a ftrange thing, that they doe all this in one felfe fame Veffell : fo that things when they have caused the faid Rindes and Leanes to boile together, they make in the same Vessell without any change (as I have fail) as many colours as them lifteth. Which thing I suppose to come to passe, by the disposition of the colour which they have first guen to the to thing that they intend to dye or colour, whether it be Thred, Web, or Cloth, or any thing that they intend to colour.

# Of venemous Apples, wherewith they poylon their Arrows.

He Apples wherewith the Indian Cambals invenome their arrowes, grow on certaine Trees courred with many Branches and Leaues, being very greene, and growing thicke. They are laden with abundance of these cuill fruites, and have their Leaves like the Leaves of a Peare-tree, but that they are leffe and rounder ; the fruite is much like the mulcadell Peares 20 of the lland of Sicilie or Naples in forme and bigneffe, and are in some parts stained with red spots, and of very sweet sauour : these trees for the most part, grow ever by the Sea Coasts, and neere vnto the water, and are so faire and of pleasant sanour, that there is no man that feeth them, but will defire to eate thereof, infomuch that if it may bee fooken of any fruit yet growing on the earth, I would say that this was the wnhappy fruit whereof our first payes give Adam and Ene tafted, whereby they both loft their whicitie, and procured death to . It was not a them and their posteritie. Of these truits, and of the great Ants whole byting cauteth venemousiace fwelling (whereof I have spoken elsewhere ) and of the Emes, or Lyfarts, and Vipers, ofthe frumbat fwelling (whereof I have footen ellewhere 1 and or the Emis, or Lojarri, and v pers, or consideration and fuch other venomous things, the Canished which are the chiefe Archers among the Indie Bedience in st., are accustomed to poylon their Arrowes, wherewith they kill all that they wound: earing containing the containin These venomes they mingle together, and make thereof ablacke Maste or composition, which it to Gods. appeareth like vnto very blacke Pitch. Of this poyfon I canled a great quantitie to ber turn; commin ein Santa Maria Antique, in a place two leagues and more within the Land, with a great mul. ment, which titude of their intenced Airowes and other manitaons with also the house wherein they populated were referred : This was in the yeere 1 5 1 4 at fuch time at the Armie arrived there withinnegh with Captaine Pedrarias de Uilla, at the commandement of the Catholike King Dass wages whereaf with Captaine course of the fillionie. The Apples (as I have Sayle ) grow neers in dath in our one for a tree Christian which ferue your Majerie in the fe patries, suppose that there considering must be considered. write the Seatthe Curiftians which ierus year manurus in muce patters, suppore time causte nomether is no remedie fo profitable for fuch as are wounded with their Arrowse; as is die wa- Arrows. ter of the Sea, if the wound bee much waited therewith , by which meanes forms have pririe dries. 40 escaped, although but few : yet to say the truth, albeit the water of the Sea, haue a certaine caustike qualitie against poyson, it is not sufficient remedie in this case, nor yet The water of

to this day have the Christians perceived that of fiftee that have beene wounded, three the Sea, have recourred. But that your Maiestie may the better consider the force of the venome of these trees, you shall further understand, that if a man doe but repose himselfe to sleepe a little while under the shadow of the same, he hath his headand eyes so swoke when he resett, that the eye lids are joyned with the cheekes, and if it change one drop or more of the deaw of the faid tree to fall into the eye, it viterly destroyeth the fight. The pestilene nature of this tree is fuch, that it cannot be declared in few words. Of thefe, there groweth great plentie in the gulfe of Praba, toward the North coath, on the Wighand Eaft fide. The wood of these trees when it The gulfa of 50 burneth, maketh fo great a flinke, that no man is able to abide it, by reason it causeth fo great a Prass.

paine in the head. Among other trees which are in thefe Indier, as well in the Hands, as in the firme land, there is another kind which they call Xagua, whereof there is great plentie: they are very high , and Xagua ftreight, and faire to behold. Of these they wie to make Rikes, and I agelins of divers lengths and bignefic: they are of a faire colour, betweene ruffet and white : this tree bringeth forth a great fruit as big as Papamer or Poppis, and much like thereunto, Strickery good to be eaten when it is ripe. Out of this they get a very cleare water, where with they wash, their legs, and sometimes all their bodies, when they feele their fiesh weary, faint; or loofe : the which water, befile that it hath a binding qualitie, it hath all of this propertie, that whatfour it 60 toucheth, it thineth it blackeby little and little, vntill it beas blacke as fire, which colour Blackefisines,

cannot bee taken away in left space then tenne or twelve dayes : And if the nayle bee but touched therewith, it is fo stained, that it can by no meanes be taken away, wreill it either fall of, or growout, and be clipped away by little and little, as I my felfe have ofteneimes feene by experience...

Som: thinke

There is another kinde of Trees which they call Hobis: these are very great and faire, and cause wholesome aire where they grow, and a pleasant shadow, and are found in great abundance; their fruit is very good, and of good taite and fauour, and much like vnto certaine Damfons of their fruit is very good, among good suite and salous, and among the properties and pulled and yellow, but their flone is very geret, by reason whereof they have but little meare: their Barke or Rinde boyled in water, maketh a wholefome Bathe for the legges, because it bindeth and stayeth the looienesse of the fiesh, fo sensibly that it is a married to come der. It is furely a wholetome and excellent Bathe against fuch fainenesse, and is the best Tree that may be found in those parts to sleepe under: For it canseth no heavinesse of the head, as doe divers other Trees, which thing I speake, because the Christians are much accustomed in those Regions to lie in the fields. It is therefore a common practice among them, that wherefoeuer in they finde these Trees, there they spreade their Mattrelles and Beds wherein they sleepe,

The Inhabi-Sea of Sur.

There are also a kinde of high Date trees, and full of thornes: the wood of these is most excellent, being very blacke and thining, and to heavie that no part thereof can fwim about the water, but finketh immediatly to the bottom. Of this wood they make their Arrowes and Darte. alio Iauelins, Speares, and Pikes: and I fay Pikes, because that in the coasts of the Sea of Sur, beyond Esquegue and Uracha, the Indians vie great and long Pikes, made of the wood of these Date trees. Of the same likewise they make Clubs, and Swords, and divers other weapons Also vessels and houshold stuffe of divers forts, very faire and commodious. Furthermore of this wood the Christians vie to make divers musicall instruments, as Claricymbals, Lutes, Gitterns, and such other, the which beside their faire shining colour like vnto jeat, are also of a good found, and very durable, by reason of the hardnesse of the wood.

An herbe that cordes.

After that I have faid thus much of Trees and Plants, I have thought good also to speake somewhat of Herbs. You shall therefore understand, that in these Indies there is an herbe much like vnto a yellow Lilly, about whose leaves there grow and creepe certaine Cordes or Laces, as the like is partly feene in the herbe which we call Laced favory, but thefe of the Indies are much bigger, and longer, and so ftrong that they tie their hanging beds thereby, which they cell Hame-Cabaisand He- cas, whereof we have spoken elsewhere : these Cordes they call Cabais, and Henequen, which are all one thing, fauing that Henequen is lefte and of a finer substance, as it were Line, and the other is groffer, like the wike or twift of Hempe, and is imperfect in comparison to the other: they are of colour betweene white and yellow, like vnto abarne, and some also white. With Henequen, which is the most subcile and fine threed, the Indises faw in funder Fetters, Chaines, or barres of Iron, in this manner: They moone the threed of Henequen vpon the Iron which they intend to faw or cut, drawing the one hand after the other as doe they that faw , putting our now and then a portion of fine Sand spon the threed, or on the place or part of the Iron, where they continue rubbing the faid threed, to that if the threed be worne, they take another, and continue in their worke as before, vntill they have cut in funder the Iron, although it bee never fo

bigge, and cut it as if it were a tender thing, and eafie to be fawen.

A ftrange

Leaues.

These trees are to full of thornes, that there is no tree or plant that seemeth more wilde and de- 40 formed: fo that I cannot well determine whether they bee Trees or Plants : they have certaine branches full of large and deformed leaves, which branches were first leaves like vnto the other. As the branches made of these leaves grow forth in length, there commeth other leaves of them: fo that in fine it is a difficult thing to describe the forme of their trees, except the fame should be done by a Painter, whereby the Eye might conceine that wherein the Tongue faileth in this be-Aleafcofgrest halfe, The leanes of this tree are of fuch vertue, that being well beaten and fpred vpon a cloth, after the manner of a plaister, and so laid to a legge or arme that is broken in many pieces, it healeth it in fifteene dayes, and maketh it as whole as chough it had neuer beene broken: During the time of this operation, it cleaveth to fast to the sells, that it cannot without much difficultie be taken away, but afficone as it hath healed the fore, and wrought his operation, it loofeth it felfe to from the place where it was laid, as I my felfe, and diners other which have proued it, know by experience.

And forasmuchas the leaves of Trees may be counted among Herbs, I will here speake some-

what of the qualitie of the leanes of certaine Trees which are found in the Iland of Hispaniela.

### Of Fishes, and of the manner of fishing.

IN the Sea coasts of the firme Land, there are diners and fundrie kindes of fishes, much diffe-I ring in shape and forme. And although it be impossible to speake of all, yet will I make mention of some. And first to begin at Sardines, you shall understand that there is found a kinde of thele fishes very large and with red tailes, being a very delicate fish. The best kindes of other fishes are these, Mozarre, Diabace, Brettes, Dabaos , Thornbacks , and Salmons : All these , and 60 diversorher which I doe not now remember, are taken in great quantitie in Rivers. There are likewife taken very good Cremibes. There are also found in the Sea, certaine other fishes, as Soles, Macherels, Turbuts, Palamite, Lauze, Polpi, Chieppe, Xaibas , Locusts , Oisters , exceeding great Tortoifes, and Tiburons of maruellous bigneffe : alfo Manates, and Marene, and many other filhes,

## CHAP. 2. Torsoifes and Sbarkes bow taken. Defeription of them and the Manate. 087

which have no names in our language, and thefe of such diversitie and quantitie, as cannot bee expressed without large writing and long time. But to let passe to intreate particularly of the multitude of fishes, I intend to ipeake chiefly, and somewhat largely, of three fores of most notable fifthes : whereof the first is, the great Torsoifes, the second is called Tiburon, and the third Great Torsoifes Menate. And to begin at the firit, I fay that in the lland of Gube, are found great Torresfer fet. (which are certaine shell fishes) of such bignesie that ten or fifteene men are scarsly able to life one of them out of the water, as I have beene informed of credible persons dwelling in the same Hand. But of that which I my felfe have forne, I can teftifie, that in the firme Land , in the village of Aela, there are of this fore some taken and killed of such bignesse, that sixe men with 10 much difficultie could fearly draw them out of the water , and commonly the leaft fort of them are as much as two men may carry at a burden : that which i w lifted up by fixe men, had hef shell a yard and a quarter in length , and in breadth more then hue yards. The manner of taking them, is this : It fometimes chanceth that in their great nets (which they call shoote nets) there are found certaine Tertailes of the common fort, in great quantities, and when they come out of the Sea, and bring forth their egges, and goe together by companies from the Sea, to feede on the Land, the Christians or Indians tollow their steps which they finde in the Sand , and some overtake them, because they are very heatie and flow in going, although they make all the hafte they can to returne to the Sea, affoone as they efpy any body. When they that purfue them have ouertaken them, they put a stake or staffe under their legs, and ouerturne them on their backs as 20 they are yet running, to that they can goe no further, nor yet rife agains or turne, and thus they fuffer them to lye ftill while they follow after the polt, which they ouerturne in like manner: and by this meanes take very many, at fuch times as they come forth of the Sea, as I haue faid: This

fish is very excellent and wholesome to be eaten, and of good tafte. The fector of the three fifthes whereof lhaue fooken, in the Theorem: this is a very great fifth, 7 thomas of and very quick and fwift in the water, and a cruell Decourer: these are oftentimes taken, stwell Sharles, when the ships are under faile in the Ocean, as also when they lye at anker, or at any other time, and especially the least kinde of these fishes, When the ships are under saile, the biggest fore are taken after this manner. When the Thurs feetn the ship fayling, hee followeth it swimming behind, the which things the Mariners leeing, caft forth all the filth of the ship into the Sea for 20 the fift to eate, who neverthelefic followeth them with equall pase, although they make never fuch hafte with full winde and failes , and wallo weth on every fide and about the thip , and thus followeth it sometime for the space of a hundred and fiftie leagues, and more, and when the Mariners are disposed to take them, they cast downe by the steme of the ship a hooke of Iton, as bigge as the biggeft finger of a mans hand, of three spans in length, and crooked like a fifth-hooke, with beards according to the bigueffethereof, and fattned to an Iron chaine of five or fixe linkes neere vnto the end, and from thence tyed with a great rope; faitning also on the hooke for a bait, a piece of some fish, or hogs fieth, or tome other fieth, or the bowels and intrals of another Tibus ron which they have taken before, which may rafily bedone, for I have feene nine taken in one day, and if they would have taken more, they might alfo. Thus when the Tohuron hath pleafants 40 ly followed the thip a long voyage, at the length he fwalloweth the bait with the hooke, and aswell by his thriting to flee or escape, as also by the swift passage of the ship, the hooke over-

thwarteth and catcheth hold of his chaps: the which fift when it is taken, it is of fuch huge bigneffe, that twelve or fifteene men are carry able to draw it out of the water, and lift it into the ship, where one of the Mariners gueth it many knocks on the head with a club or beetle, wittill he haue flaine it: they are fometimes found of ten or twelue foote long, and of five, fixe, or feuen spans in breadth, where they are broadest : they have very great and wide mouthes, to the proportion of the reft of their bodies, and have two rowes of teeth, the one somewhat separate from the other, of cruell shape, and shanding very thicke. When they have slaine this fish, they cut the body thereof in small pieces, and put it to drie, hanging it three or foure dayes at the 50 Cordes of the saile clothes to drie in the winde, and then eate it: It is doubtlesse a good fift, and of great commoditie to ferue the ships for victualls for many dayes : the least of these fishes are most wholesome and tender, it hath a skin much like to the skin of a Sole whereunto the faid Ti- Plinice burrow is like in flape : Which I fay , because Plunie hath made mention of none of these three fifthes, among the number of them whereof he writeth in his Naturall historie. Thele Tiburous some forth of the Sea, and enter into the Rivers, where they are no leffe perillous then great Lin

zards or Crocodiles, whereof I have spoken largely betore : For they deutere Men, Kine, and Hor- crostiles Ses, even as doe the Crasodiles: they are very dangerous in certaine walking places or Pooles by the Rivers fides, and where they have denoured at other times. Divers other fiftes both great and fmall, of fundrie forts and kindes, are accustomed to follow the ships going under faile, of the which I will speake somewhat when I have written of Manue, which is the third of the three Manuer whereof I have promifed to entreat. Manute therefore, is a fish of the Sea, of the biggert fort, and much greater then the Tiberon in length and breadth, and is very brutish and vile, so that it appeareth in forme like vnto one of those great vestels made of Goats skins, wherein they vie to sarry new wine in Medina de Campo, or in Arenalo: the head of this beaft is like the head of an

Oxe, with also like eyes, and hath in the place of armes, two great stumps wher with he swimmeth : It is a very gentle and tame beaft, and commeth oftentimes out of the water to the next thoure, where if he finde any herbes or graffe, he feedeth thereof. Our men are accustomed to kill many of thele, and divers other good files, with their Croffe-bowes, purfuing them in Barkes on Canoas, because they swim in manner about the water : the which thing when they see, the draw them with a hooke tyed at a small corde, but somewhat strong: As the fish fleeth away, the Archer letteth goe, and prolongeth the corde by little and little, vntill he have let it goe many fathoms: at the end of the corde, there is tyed a corke, or a piece of light wood, and when the fifth is gone a little way, and hath coloured the water with his bloud, and feeleth himfelfe to faint and draw toward the end of his life, he reforteth to the shoare, and the Archer followeth, gathe- to ring up his corde, whereof while there yet remaine fixe or eight fathoms, or somewhat more or leffe, he draweth it toward the Land, and draweth the fift therewith by little and little, as the waves of the Sea helpe him to doe it the more easily : then, with the helpe of the reft of his companie, he lifteth this great beaft out of the Water to the Land , being of fach bigneffe, that to conney it from thence to the Cities it shall be requifite to have a Cart with a good yoke of Oxen. and sometimes more, according as these fishes are of bignesse, some being much greater themother some in the same kinde, as is seene of other beasts: Sometimes they lite these nithes into the Canoa or Barke, without drawing them to the Land as before, for as foone as they are flaine, they flote about the water: And I believe verily that this fifth is one of the best in the world to the tafte, and the likest vnto fieth, especially so like vnto beefe, that who so hath not feene it whole 20 can judge it to be none other when hee feeth it in pieces then very Beefe or Veale, and is certainly to like vinco flesh, that all the men in the world may herein be deceived: the taste likewise, is like vnto thetaste of very good Veale, and lasteth long, if it be powdred : so that in fine, the Beefe of these parts, is by no meanes like vnto this. This Manate hath a certaine stone, or rather bone in his head within the braine, which is of qualitie greatly appropriate against the difeale of the stone, if it be burnt and ground into small powder, and taken fasting in the morning when the paine is felt, in such quantitie as may lye vpon a peny, with a draught of good while wine : For being thus taken three or foure mornings, it acquieteth the griefe, as divers have told me which have proved it true, and I my felfe by testimonie of fight, doe witnesse that I have feen 30 this stone sought of divers for this effect.

The Sword

The fill Ma-

A remedie a-

Tarbut.

The Sea fome-

There are also divers other fishes as bigge as this Manate, among the which there is one called Vibrella. This fifth beareth in the top of his head a fword, being on every fide full of many tharp teeth; this (word is naturally very hard and strong, of foure or fine spans in length, and of proportion according to the same bignesse: and for this cause is this fish called Spada, that is, the Sword fifb. Of this kinde fome are found as little as Sardines, and other fo great, that two yokes of Oxen are fearly able to draw them on a Cart. But whereas before I have promifed to speake of other filhes, which are taken in these Seas while the ships are under faile, I will not forget to speake of the Tunny, which is a great and good fish, and is oftentimes taken and kild with Trout speares, and hookes, cast in the water; when they play and swim about the ships. In like manner also are taken many Turbuss, which are very good fishes as are lightly in all the Sea. And here is 40 to be noted, that in the great Ocean Sea, there is a strange thing to be considered, which all that have beene in the Indies affirme to bee true : And thisis, that like as on the Land there are fome Provinces fertile and fruitfull, and some barren, even se doch the tike chance in the Sea : So that at some windes the thips faile fiftie, or a hundred, or two hundred leagues and more; without raking or feeing of one fish : and againe, in the felfe same Ocean in some places, all the water is feen tremble by the mooning of the fifthes, where they are taken abundantly. It commeth further to my remembrance to speake somewhat of the flying of fishes, which is doubtlesse a strange thing to behold, and is after this manner. When the thips faile by the great Ocean, following their viage, there rifeth fometimes on the one fide or on the other, many companies of certaine little filhes, of the which the biggelt is no greater then a Sardine , and so diminish leffe and leffe from @ that quantitie, that some of them are very little : these are called Volatori, that is , flying filbes : they rife by great companies and flocks, in such multitudes that it is an aftonishment to behold them : Sometimes they rife but little from the water, and (as it chanceth) continue one flight for the frace of an hundred paces, and fometimes more, or leffe, before they fall against into the Sea, fometimes also they fall into the thips. And I remember, that on an evening when all the companie in the ship were on their knees, singing Salue Regina, in the highest part of the Castle of the poope, and failed with a full winde, there passed by vs a flocke of these flying fishes, and came for neere vs, that many of them fell into the ship, among the which, two or three fell hard by mee, which I tooke aline in my hand, so that I might well percomment they were as biggers Sardines, and of the lame quantitie, having two wings or quils growing out of their finnes, like vnto thole 60 wherewith all fithes fwim in Rivers; these wings are as long as the fithes themselves. As long as their wings are moift, they beare them up in the aire, but alsone as they are drie, they can contimue their flight no further then as I have faid before, but fall immediatly into the Sca, and fo rite againe, and the as before from place to place. In the yeere 1515, when I came first to enforme

your Majestie of the state of the things in India, and was the yeere following in Flanders in the time of your most fortunate successe in these your Kingdomes of Arragon and Castile, whereas at that voyage I fayled about the Hand Bermuda, otherwise called Garza, being the furthest of all The Hand of the llands that are found at this day in the world, and arriving there at the depth of eight yards Bermuda. of water, and distant from the Land as farre as the thot of a piece of Ordinance, I determined to fend some of the thip to Land, as well to make fearch of such things as were there, as also to leave in the lland certaine Hogs for increase. But the time not seruing my parpose by reason of contrarie winde, I could bring my ship no neerer the Iland, being twelve leagues in length, and sixe in breadth, and about thirtie in circuit, lying in the three and thirtieth degree of the North fide, 10 While I remay ned here, I faw a ftrife and compat betweene thefe flying fifnes and the fifnes mamed Gilt heads, and the fowles called Sea-meines, and Cormorants, which furely feemed vnto me a thing of as great pleasure and solace as could be deuised, while the Gilt beads swam on the brim of the water, and sometimes lifted their shoulders about the same, to raise the flying fishes out of the water to drive them to flight, and follow them I wimming to the place where they fall, to take and eate them suddenly. Againe on the other fide, the Sea-mewer and Cormorants, take many of these flying fishes, so that by this meanes they are neither fafe in the Aire, nor in the Wa- Notwo bie ny of these stying sines, so that by this meanes they are neither and in the Atte, and in the felle sine perill and danger doe men line in this mortall life, wherein is no certaine Nortoo low fecuritie, neither in high effate, nor in lowe. Which thing furely ought to put vs in remembrance of that bleffed and fafe refting place which God hath prepared for fuch as love him, who 20 finall acquiet and finish the trausiles of this troublesome world, wherein are so many dangers, and

bring them to that eternall life where they shall finde eternall securitie and rest.

# Of the increase and decrease (that is) rising and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Sea of Sur.

Will now speake of certaine things which are seene in the Prouince, or at the least in the Citie of Golden Castile, otherwise called Beragua, and in the coasts of the North Sea, and of the Beragua. South Sea, called the Sea of Ser, not omitting to note one singular and maruellois thing which I have considered of the Ocean Sea, whereof hitherto no Cosmographer, Pilot, or Mariner, or any 20 other, haue satisfied me. I say therefore, as it is well knowne to your Maiestie, and all such as have knowledge of the Ocean Sea, that this great Ocean casteth from it selfe the Sea Mediterraneum by the mouth of the Straight of Gibralterra, in the which the water, from the end and The West furthell part of that Sea, even voto the mouth of the faid Straight, either in the East toward the Ocean. coast commonly called Lenante, or in any other part of the said Sea Mediterraneum, the Sea doth The Sea Medit. not so fall nor increase, as reason would judge for so great a Sea, but increaseth very little, and a torraneum. small space : Neuerthelesse, without the mouth of the Straight in the mayne Ocean, it increaseth and falleth very much, and a great space of ground, from fixe houres to fixe boures, as in all the coasts of Spaine, Britaine, Flanders, Germanie, and England. The selfe same Ocean Sea in the firme Land newly found, in the coasts of the same lying toward the North, doth neither rise nor fall, 40 nor likewife in the Hands of Hift aniels and Cabs, and all the other Hands of the famelying to. Hifteniels. ward the North, for the space of three thousand leagues, but onely in like manner as doth the Cocan without Sat Meliterraneous in Italie, which is in manner today, a declare refrect to that increase and decrease obbing and which the faid Ocean with nathin intensities of Spains at Flanders. But this is yet a greater thing, sowing that all the felfer fame Ocean into coafts of the fair furne Land lying toward the South, in the Citie of Panama, and also in the coast of that Land which lyeth toward the East and West from The ebbe at that Citie, as in the Iland of Pearles or Margarita, which the Indians call Tarrarequi, and also in Panama falleth Taboga and Otoque, and in all other Ilands of the South Sea of Sur, the water rifeth and falleth fixe miles so much, that when it falleth, it goeth in manner out of fight, which thing I my selfe haue seene

oftentimes. And here your Maieftie may note another thing, that from the North Sea to the The South South Sea, being of fuch difference the one from the other in rifing and falling, yet is the Land Sea.

in the infinite power and wisedome of God is seene to be such, as may allure all good Natures to reverence and love to divine a Majettie. Of the straight or narrow passage of the Land lying betweene the North and South Sea, by the which Spices may much somer and easilier be brought from the Ilands of Molucca into Spaine by the West Ocean, then by that way whereby the Portugals faile into the East India.

50 that divideth them not past eighteene or twentie leagues in breadth from Coast to Coast : So

that both the faid Seas, being all one Ocean, this strange effect is a thing worthy greatly to bee

confidered of all fuch as have inclination and defire to know the fecret workes of Nature, where-

THe firme Land in some parts thereof is so straight and narrow, that the Indians say, that from the Mountaines of the Province of Esquegua or Viraca ( which are between the one Esquegua and Sea and the other) if a man afcend to the top of the Mountaines, and looke to ward the North, Virain.

trarie way, may on the other fide (towards the South) fee the Sea of Ser, and the Peouine

ces which confine with it, as doe the Territories of the two Lords or Kings of the faid Prouin-

ces of Vrraca and Efquequa. Some measure this way in this part, to bee from Sea to Sea eigh. teene leagues, which I suppose to bee rather twentie, not for that it is any more by meature.

but because it is rough and difficult, as I have faid, and as I have found it by experience; has

uing now twile passed that way by foote, counting from the Port and Village of Nombre the

teene leagues from the faid Port, endeth the roughnesse of the way : then from hence to the maruellous Bridge are two leagues, and beyond that, other two, vnto the Port of Panama:

So that all together, in my judgement, make twentie leagues. It is a maruellous facilitie to bring

Spices by this way which I will now declare. From Panama to the River of Chapte, are foure

leagues of good and faire way, by the which Carts may paffe at pleasure; by reason that the

Mountaines are but few and little, and that the greatest part of these foure leagues is a plaine ground void of Trees : and when the Carts are come to the faid River, the Spices may be carried

in Barkes and Pinales. For this River entreth into the North Sea five or fixe leagues lower then The Hand Ba- the Port of Nomen Dei, and emptieth it felfe in the Sea neere vnto an Hand called Ballimente,

where is a very good and fafe Port. Your Maiestie may now therefore consider, how great a

Chagre, having his original onely two leagues from the South Sea, continueth his course, and

emptieth it felte into the other North Sea. This River runneth faft, and is very great, and io

commodious for this purpose as may bee thought or defired : the maruellow Bridge made by the

worke of Nature, being two leagues beyond the faid River, and other two leagues on this fide

the Port of Panama, so lying in the mid way betweene them both, as framed naturally in

fuch fort, that none which palle by this voyage doth fee any fuch Bridge, or thinke that there

thing, and what commoditie it may be to convey Spices this way, foralmuch as the River of 20

Diss, vnto the Dominion of the Cacique of Inanaga, otherwise called Capira, eight leagues.

The River of and from thence to the River of Chapra, other eight leagues. So that at this River, being fix-

bee not of fuch lightnesse and swiftnesse, as are they whereof Plinie and other authors speake. Plinie. describing it to bee one of the swiftest beafts of the Land, and that the River of Tygris for the

Swift course thereof was called by that name. The first Spaniards, which saw this Tyger in the The Tiere.

and fanges, which we call Dog-teeth : they are to fierce, that in my judgement; no reall Lyon of the biggeft fort is fo strong or fierce. Of these, there are many found in the firme Land, which denoure many of the Indians, and doe much hurt otherwise : but fince the comming of the (brifti-

He manners and customes of these Indians, are diners in diners Proninces. Some of them

Nobilitie aswel men as women, repute it infamous to loyne with any of base Parentage or Stran- The Indian gers, except Christians, whom they count Noblemen, by reason of their valiantnesse; although women-they put a difference betweene the common fort and the other to whom they shew obedience,

with childe, they take an Hearbe wherewith they deftroy that is conceined : for they fay that Vanaturall about

only well aged women should beare children, and that they will not forbeare their pleasures, Large breasts

without much difficultie satisfie their appetite : They also which neuer had children, are euer as

as low as to their knees and hammes, wherewith they couer their priny parts, and are naked all their bodie beside. The principall men beare their Prinities in a hollow Pipe of Gold,

And when after this they have a few dayes absteined from the company of men, they become so ftreight, as they fay which have had carnal familiaritie with them, that fuch as vie them, cannot Virgins. In some parts they weare certaine little Aprons round about them before and behind,

30 and deforme their bodies with bearing of children, whereby their Teates become loofe and Child-birth. hanging, which thing they greatly diffraise. When they are delivered of their children, they soe to the River and wash them, which done, their bloud and purgation ceaffeth immediately :

one, many haue beene killed with Creffe-bowes after this manner. Affoone as the Archer hath The hunding knowledge of the haunt of any of these Tygers, hee goeth searching their trace, with his Crosse- of Tigres bow, and with a little Hound or Begle, & not with a grey-hound; because this Beast would foon kill any Dogge that would venter on him : When the Hound hath found the Tigre, he runneth about him baying continually, and approacheth to neere him, fnapping and grinning, with to quicke flying and returning, that he hereby fo molesteth this fierce Beatt, that hee driueth him 20 to take the next Tree, at the foot whereof he remayneth ftill baying, and the Tigre grinning and the wing his teeth, while in the meane time the Archer commeth neere, and twelve or fourteene paces off, ftriketh him with the querell of his Croffe-brow in the breft, and flyeth incontinent, leaving the Tigre in his travell for life and death, byting the Tree and eating earth for fierceneffe : then within the space of two or three hours, or the day following , the Archer returneth thither, and with his Dogge findeth the place where hee lyeth dead. The Indians (and especially they of the firme Land in the Prouince which the Catholike King Don Ferdinando commanded to bee called Golden Callele) call this Beaft Ochi. This thing is frange that chanced of late : that whereas the Tigre whereof we have made mention before, would have killed A Tigre made his keeper that then kept him in a Cage, was in few daies after made fo tame, that he led her eyed tame 30 only with a small coard, and plaid with her fo familiarly, that I manuelled greatly to see it, yet not without certaine beliefe that this friendship will not last long, without danger of life to the Keeper, forasmuch as surely these Beasts are not meet to be among men, for their sercenesse and

Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the Firme Land, and of their women.

40 without confent of both parties, which chanceth especially when they have no children. The

counting it for a great matter and an honorable thing, if they bee beloued of any of them; info-

much that if they know any Christian man carnally , they keepe their faith to him, fo that hee

be not long absent farre from them, for their intent is not to be Widdowes, or to line chafte like

religious women. Many of them have this custome; that when they perceive that they are

but the common fort have them inclosed in the shells of certaine great Welker, and are be-fide veterly naked: For they thinke it no more shame to have their Cods seene, then any other

which name is not greatly disagreeable to many both of their women and of ours.

part of their bodies : and in many Provinces both the men and women goe veterly naked, with-

out any fuch conerture at all. In the Province of Cuesa they call a man Chay, and a woman Ira.

Thele Indians give great honor and reverence to their Caciques (that is) their Kings and Ru-

Nnnn

take as many Wines as them lift, and other line with one Wife, whom they fortake not

cruell nature that cannot be tamed.

firme land, did fo name it. Of the kind of thefe, was that which Don Diego Columbo, the Admiral

fent your Maiety out of New Spains to Toledo. Their heads are like to the heads of Lions or Lio-

neffes but greater: the reft of all their bodies, and their legs, are full of black fpots one neere vnto another, & divided with a circumference, or fringe of red colour, flewing (as it were) a faire work

and correspondent picture, about their croopes or hinder parts, they have these spots biggest and

leffe & leffe coward their bellies, legs, & heads. I have teen some of three spans in height, and more then fine in length. They are beaits of great force, with strong legs, and well armed with navles

is any fuch building in that place, vntill they be in the top thereof, in the way toward Panama: But affoone as they are on the Bridge, looking toward the right hand, they fee a little Riuer under them, which hath his Channell distant from the feete of them that walke outrit, the space of two speares length or more. The water of this River is very shallow, not passing the 30 depth of a mans legge to the knee, and is in breadth betweene thirtie and fortie paces, and falleth into the Riner of Chagre. Toward the right hand, standing on this Bridge, there is nolength thereof about threefcore or fourfcore paces : The Arch is fo made of most hard stone, that

Naturall flone thing feene but great Trees. The largenesse of the Bridge contayneth fifteene paces, and the no man can behold it without admiration, being made by the High and Omnipotent Creator

> How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to the mature of the place where they are engendred or grow, and of the beafts called Tigres.

IN the firme Land are found many terrible beafts, which some thinke to be Tigres. Which I thing neuerthelesse I dare not affirme, confidering what Authors doe write of the lightnesse and agilitie of the Tigre, whereas this beaft, being otherwise in shape very like vnto a Tigre, is notwithstanding very slow. Yet true it is, that according to the marualles of the World, and differences which naturall things have in divers Regions under Heaven, and divers constellations of the same, under the which they are created, wee see that some such Plants and Herbes as are hurtfull in one Countrie, are harmelesse and wholesome in other Regions. And Birds which in one Prouince are of good taile, are in other fo vnfauourie that they may not bee eaten. Men likewise which in some Countries are blacke, are in other places white : and yet are both 50 these and they, men. Euen so may it be, that Tigres are light in some Region, as they write, and may nevertheleffe be flow and heavie in thefe Indies of your Maiestie, whereof wee speake. The Sheepe of Arabis draw their tailes long and bigge on the ground, and the Bulls of Egypt haue their haire growing toward their heads: yet are those Sheepe, and these Bulls. Men in fome Countries are hardie and of good courage, and in other naturally fearfull and bruitish. All these things, and many more, which may be said to this purpose, are easie to bee prooued, and worthy to bee beleeved, of such as have read of the like in Authors, or travelled the World, whereby their owne fight may teach them the experience of these things whereof I speake, It is also manifest that Iucca, whereof they make their bread in the Iland of Hispaniela, is deadly poison if it be eaten greene with the juyce : and yet hath it no such propertie in the firme Land, 60 where I have eaten it many times, and found it to be a good fruit. The Bats of Spaine, although they bite, yet are they not venemous : but in the firme Land, many die that are bitten of chem-And in this forme may fo many things be faid, that time thall not fuffice to write, whereas my

intent is onely to produe that this beaft may be a Tigre, or of the kinde of Tigres, although it

Birds.

Plants and

Tigres,

Bats.

The Kingis lers. The principal Cacique, bath twelve of his most strong Indians appointed to beare him, when boine on mens he remove to to any place, or goeth abroad for his pleasure. Two of them carrie him fitting vpon a long peece of wood, which is naturally as light as they candinde, the other ten follow next with him as footemen; they keepe continually a trotting pale with him on their shoulders. When the two that carrie him are wearie, other two come in their places, without any disturbance or flavi And thus if the way be plaine, they carry him in this manner for the space of fifteene or twenty leagues in one day. The Indians that are affigned to this office, are for the most part flates or Na.

Letting of bloud.

borns, that is, such as are bound to continual fernice. I have also noted that when the Indians perceme themselves to be troubled with too much bloud, they let themiel es bloud in the cafe of their legges, and brawnes of their armes : this doe they with a very tharpe stone, and sometimes with the small cooth of a Viper, or with a sharpe reede or thorne. All the Indians are commonly without Beards, in so much that it is in They have no a manner a maruell to fee any of them either men or women to have any downe or hairs on

their faces, or other parts of their bodies: Albeit I faw the Cacique of the Province of Cataraps, who had haire on his face and other parts of his body, as had also his wife in fuch places as women are accustomed to have. This Cacique had a great part of his body painted with a blacke colour, which neuer fadeth, and is much like vnto that wherewith the Moores paint themselves in Barbarie in token of Nobilitie. But the Moores are painted specially on their vilage and throate, and certaine other parts. Likewise the principall Indians vie these paintings on their armes and breafts, but not on their vifiges, because among them the slaues are to formarked. When the sadient of certaine Prouinces goe to the battaile (especially the Canibal 10 The Canibals Archers) they carrie certaine shels of great welkes of the Sea, which they blow, and make therewith great found, much like the noise of Hornes: they carrie also certaine Timbrels.

which they bore full of holes on both fides, fo that the Rings hang vpon their lippes. Some

of these Indians are poulde and rounded; albeit commonly both the Men and Women take it for a decent thing to weare long haire, which the women weare to the middest of their

shoulders, and cut it equally, especially about their browes : this doe they with certaine hard

well wrought, and of fuch bigneffe that some of them weigh more then two hundred Caste-

lans or Ducades of Gold: these barres have holes at both the ends , whereat they tye two

fmall cords made of Cotton at every end of the barres : one of these cords goeth over the

shoulder, and the other vinder the arme holes, where they tye both together, so that by this

meanes the barre beareth vp their teates. Some of these chiefe Women goe to the battaile with

their Husbands, or when they themselves are regents in any Prouinces, in the which they have

Scones, which they keepe for the fame purpole. The principall Women, when their teates fall, 60 or become loofe, beare them wp with barres of Gold, of the length of a spanne and a halfe,

which they vie in the stead of Drummes: also very faire Plumes of Feathers', and certains A:mor of gold, armour of gold, especially great and round peeces on their breasts, and splints on their armes. Likewife other peeces, which they put on their heads and other parts of their bodies : For

Their gallants they efferme nothing to much as to appeare gallant in the warres, and to goe in most comely

order that they can deuile, gliftering with precious Stones, lewels, Gold, and Feathers. Of the least of these welkes or perewincles, they make certaine little Beades, of divers forts and colours: they make alfo little Bracelets, which they mingle with gandes of Gold, theft they roule about their arms from the elbow to the wreft of the hand. The like also doe they on their legges from the kness to the foles of their feete, in token of Nobilitie, especially their Noble Women in divers Provinces are accostomed to weare such Iewels, and have their neckes in manner laden therewith: these Beades and Iewels, and such other trinkets, they call Caguiras. Beside these also, they weare certaine Rings of Gold at their eares and nostrels.

How the women beare vo zheir toares with bars of

The Iland ot

all things at commandement, and execute the office of generall Captaines, and cause themselves to be carried on mens backs, in like manner as doe the Cariques, of whom I have spoken before. The flaure & lands they are for the more Land are much of the fame flature and colour as are they of the lands they are for the most part of the colour of an Oliue : if there be any other difference, it 10 is more in bignefle then otherwise, and especially they that are called Coronati, are fronger and biggert hen any other that I have feene in thefe parts, except those of the Iland of Giants, aus mazon called Corenais. Which are on the South fide of the Iland of Hifpaniola, neere vnto the coasts of the firme Land. and likewife certain other which they call Incates, which are on the North fide. All which chiefly, although they be no Giants, yet are they doubtlesse the biggest of the Indiansthat are known to this day, and commonly bigger then the Flemings; and especially many of them, as well women as men, are of very high stature, and are all archers both men and women. These Coronate inhabit thirtie leagues in length by these coasts, from the point of Canaa to the great river which they call Guadalchiber, neere vnto Sanita Maria de gratia. As I traversed by those coasts, I filled 2 60 butt of fresh water of that river, fix leagues in the Sea from the mouth thereof where it falleth into the Sea. They are called Coronati (that is Crowned) because their haire is cut round by their cares, and poulde lower a great compaffe about the Crowne, much like the Friers of Saint Angustines Order. And because I have spoken of their manner of wearing

wheir haire , here comments o my remembrance a thing which I have often imes noted in thefe Indians and this is, than they have the bones of the foods of their heads foure times thicker, and The foods of much ftronger then ours, for that in comming to handfroakes with them, it shall be require not Indian heads. to ftrike them on the heads with fwords, for fo have many fwords beene broken on their heads, with little burt done.

of the chiefe Ilands, Hispaniola and Cuba.

He Indians which at this prefent inhabit the Hand of Hispaniola, are but few in number. In and the Christians not to many as they ought to be, for as much as many of them that were in this Iland, are gone to other Ilands, and to the firme Land. For being for the most Men are defepart yong men vimarried, and delirous daily to fee new things, wherein mans nature delight- roug of new eth, they were not willing to continue long in one place, cipecially feeing daily other new things. Lands disputed, where they thought they might former fill their Purfer, by being prefent at the first spoile: Wherein neaertheiesse their hope deceined many of them, and especially such as had houses and habitations in this Iland : For I certainely believe, confirming my selfe herein with the judgement of many other, that if any one Frince had no more feignories then onely The commo this Iland, it flould in hort time be fuch, as not to give place cither to Sicilie or England, dives of Higher whereas even at this present there is nothing wherefore it would malice their prosperity, not be mide her and 20 ing inferiour to them in any felicity, that in manner the lieauens can grant to any Land : being

furthermore such as may inrich many Prouinces and Kingdomes, by reason of many rich Gold Gold Mines Mines that are in it, of the best Gold that is found to this day in the world, and in greatest quantitie, In this lland, nature of her felfe bringeth forth fuch abundance of Cotton, that if it Cotton were wrought and maintained, there should be more and better then in any part of the world. There is fo great plentie of excellent Caffia, that a great quantitie is brought from thence into Caffia Spaine, from whencee it is carried to divers parts of the world, &c.

In this lland furthermore are many Sheepe, and a great mumber of Hogges, of the which (as Sheepe and allo of the Kine) many are become wilde, and like wife many Dogges and Cats, of those which Hogs. were brought out of Spaine: These (and especially the Dogs) doe much burt among the Cartell, Dogs and Care 30 by reason of the negligence of the Eldard-men. There are also many Horses, Mares, and Mules, broome wilde. and such other Beatts as serue the vie of men in Spaine, and are much greater then they of the

first broade brought thicker out of Spaine. Saint Daminge was built by line and rule: the Houses of Stone very faire, There is also a Ca- A Cathedrall thedrall Church builded of late, where as well the Billiop according to his dignity, as also the Church and Canons are well endowed. This Church is well builded of Stone and Lime, and of good work-in Hispanish manhip. There are furthermore three Monafteries bearing the frame of S. Dominisky, S. Francis, and S. Marie of Mercedes, the which are all well builded, although not to curiouslyss they of Spain. There is also a very good Hospital for the aid & succor of poore people, which was found by Mi- An Hospitall chael Paffement treatures to your Maiestie. The people of this Hand are commonly of somewhat 40 leffe staure then arethe Spaniards, & of a shining or cleare brown color: they have Wines of their The people own, and abstaine from their Daughters, Sifters & Mothers: they have large foreheads, long black haire, and no beards or haire in any other parts of their bodies, as well Men as Women, except ve-

ry few, as perhaps scarsly one among a thousand. They goe as naked as they were borne, except that on the parts which may not with honestie be feene, they weare a certaine leafe as broad triat on the parts which nevertheleffe is not kept close with such diligence, but that sometimes a man may fee that they thinke sufficiently hid. In this Iland are certaine Glowormes, that of Glowormes fhine in the night as doe ours, but are much bigger, and give a greater light: In fo much that when the men of the lland goe any journies in the night, they beare some of these wormes made fast about their feete and head, in such for that he that should fee them a farre, and ignorant of 50 the thing, would be greatly aftonished thereat. By the light of these also, the women worke in their houses in the night. These wormes they call Cunas. Their light lasteth for the space of three dayes, and diminisheth as they begin to drie vp. There is also a kinde of Crowes, Crowessinhwhose breath flinkethin the morning, and is sweete in the afternoone : the excrement which ing and week they auoide, is a living worme.

In Cuba, is a certaine kinde of Partridges, being very little, with their feathers much of the partridges, colour of Turtle Doues, but are of much better taile to be eaten: they are taken in great. number, and being brought wikle into the houses, they become as tame within the space of three or foure dayes as though they had beene hatched there : they become exceeding fat in short space, and are doubtleffe the most delicate and pleasant meate that euer I have eaten. But 60 to let passe many other things that might be here said, and to speake of two marueilous

things which are in this Hand of Caba: whereof the one is, that a Valley containing two rnings which are in length betweene two Mountaines, is full of a kinde of very hard Stones, Bullets for of fuch period roundnelle, and like vnto Pellers of Gunnes, that no art can make bet. Guns wrought ter or more exactly polithed. Of thele, fome are as small as Pellers for Handgunnes, and by naure. Nnnn 2

Artillerie, although they be of big nelle to receive one or two or more Quintales of powder. Their Pellets are found thoughout all the Valley within the earth, as in a Mint, which they digge, and take our fach as they need of all force. The other manuelloin thing of this Iland is this: That farre from the Sea, there iffueth out of a Mountaine a certaine liquor, much like the Clay of Babylon, called Bitmer, or like voto Pitch, in great quantitie, and fach as is very commodious for the calking of Shippes : this falleth continually from the Rocke. and runneth into Sea, in such abundance that it is seene floting about the water on every fide and runnects into Sea, in that a support of the Sea thereabout, as it is driven from place to place by the winde, or course of the water. Quintus Currius Quintus Currius writeth in his Historie, that great Alexander came to the Citie of Memi, where is a great Caue or Denne, in the which is a Spring or Fountaine that continually auri-

other fo encreasing bigger and bigger from that quantitie, that they may serue for all fores of

Bitumen of Ba- deth a great quantitie of Bramen, in fuch fort, that it is an easie thing to beleeue that the stones of the walso Babylon might be laid therewith, according as the faid Author writeth. I have feene this Mine of Bitumen, not onely in the lland of Cuba, but also such another in new Spaine, in

I bus farre I have ginen you from Master Eden his Edition; wherein bacause many things necessary to the natural History of the Indias are in the Ambers Summarie, and in his 20. Books of a larger Historie. I have added hither (such thenes as I thought fitteft. The Visus are like great Rats, and the Cories like Cories, of which the people in Hispaniole 20

bunt with-

eate, as also of the Tuends. Chemi and Mohni are lived creatures also in that Iland : which and their little mute Dogges were all the foure footed Beafts they had, faue that of Rats there is some question. The Indians of Iamaica and Cuba vie to catch fish with the fish Rours 6, as ftrange filt to Huntimen or Falconers vie Hounds or Hankes in their game. The Indians take it formetimes in their Nets, of which I have eaten : and when they will bring up one of them they feede it in the Sea and carrie it tied to their Canar by a strong line, which when they fee a fish fit for pray, they loofen and vie words to excite courage and valour in this fift; which prefently flies like an arrow at that fifth and faftens thereon, and the Indian lets the line runne out at length (being oiled, of many fadomes, and having a peece of wood at the end to buoy it,) till the fifth be weati-Rauge's is the direction of the little fifth (little aboue a panne long, vnfightly to looke on) ftill holding fatt, till the sociates to the frequent of the factors of the Sharke and is tion and words of encouragement to this chafe-fish, perswading him to let goe his hold, which by him carried otherwise should sooner by violence breake in peeces this Huntiman, then force him to vinfain all his Cha- sten. Thus will he fasten on the belly of a Tortule so great that two Indians and sometimes fes, feeding on fixe have enough to doe to carrie the fame to their houses. This fish Roserfo hath scalles Staire fashioned or like the roofe of a mans mouth, and on them certain prickles very sharpe and strong, whereby he fastens himselfe to what fish him pleaseth : and their prickly scales he hath on the most pars of his body.

They have likewife a cunning wild-goofe-chale, in a great Lake cashing in certaine great emptie Pompons in the feafon when Geefe refort thither, wherewith they being accustomed 40 grow out of feate and will see on them to bee carried. Being thus acquainted, the Indian puts one of these emptie Pompons on his head, and with much dexteritie of swimming enters amongst the Geese, and when one hath made him his Porter, no part of his body being seene, he swimmes from the rest, and then with his hand pulls her in, and hangs her thus strangled at

his girdle, and begins a fresh game. When their Caciques are dead they lay them on a piece of wood or stone, and make a firea-

bout the same which may not burne them, but by degrees draw forth all the moy sture in fweat, leaving onely the skin and bones, and then in a place separate repose the same with the Anceftors which before had beene so dealt with; this being their best Booke of Heraldrie to recount the Names and feuerall Descents in that Pedegree, If any die in battell, or fo that they cannot to recover his body, they compose Songs which the Children learne touching him, and the manner of his death, to supply that memoriall. These Songs they call Areyter. As for Letters they were fo ignorant, that feeing the intercourse of Spaniards by Letters, they thought that Letters could fpeake, and were very cautelous in their carriage of them, left the Letters might accuse them of ill demeanor by the way. When they will disport themselves, the Men and Women meet and take each other by the hand, and one goeth before which is called Tegnine or their Mafter, with certaine paces measured to his singing in a low voice what commeth in his minde, and after him all the multitude answereth in a higher voice with like measures proportioned to the tune, and fo continue they three or foure houres, with Chiebs or Mayz-wine among; fometimes also changing the Tequina and taking another with a new tune and long. Their Houses are com- 60 monly round like a Tent, and fometimes with a double water passage ( which they call Bubis) of good Timber, thatched with Straw or long Graffe, the Walls of Reed pitched into the ground In the Prouince of Abrayne in Golden Caftile and thereabouts, there are many Villages of Indi-

ans which dwell on the tops of Trees in Houses or Roomes there made, to which they ascend

Houles of

by certaine staires of Beface, which growes about " Trees, and is vied to binde their Walls and " Beface scemes by certains that houses before mentioned. Beneath, the ground is femny and concerd with war.

Timbers in their houses before mentioned. Beneath, the ground is femny and concerd with war,
be as third,

the standard mentioned beneath the standard mentioned beneath the standard mention of the sta Land to low their Mays and Ineca, Battatas and Aies. In those houses they are secured from wild but stronger Beafts, Enemies and Fire. They are not Archers, and vie Clubs. In the Gulfe of Vraba where and more Rise Grands enters the Sea, are many Palme trees in the middest of the River growing neere together, on the tops whereof are houses made as the former and much bigger, in which many Inhabitants dwell together, and haue their beds tyed to the lower parts of the faid Palme trees: There beds they call Hamaca, being couerlets of Cotten of good threed and well wouten, of 10 two or three braces long, but narrower, with cordes at the ends. The cordes are of Cotton, or of Henequen or Cabuya, this the courser threed, that the finer and able to cut Iron; made of the leafe of a certaine herbe. These Indians fight also with Clubs, and did much harme to Captaine

Vasco Nunes di Balboa his men, which returned with loss not able to ouer-come them. I have allo obterued that thefe Indians have the bones of their skulls foure times as thicke as those of the Christians, fo that to strike them with a Sword must be warily done, the Swords being thereby Besides the Tigre and other beasts besore mentioned, in the firme Land are the Beeri (the The beastion

CHAP.3. Hard-headed Indians, Beafts and fowles of America.

Christians call them Dants, not that they are such, but for some resemblance, as is also said of the those paris. Tiere ) of the bignesse of a meane Mule, without hornes, ash-coloured : they know not to dresse 20 and tanne their hides. They take them with Dogs, but if they take water, they are fierce and cruell. The Gatto Cermiero is as bigge as the Tigre and very fierce, more dreadfull to the Christi- Gatt termini.

ans, the (wiftest beaft yet found in those parts. The Lions are a little leffe then those of Barbarie and not fo full of courage, but fearfull and fugitiue, and hure none but fuch as affault them. The Leopards are like those of Barbarie, and are swift and fierce, but neither these nor the Leons have Leopards. vet done Christians any harme, nordor they eate the Indians as the Tigres doe. The Foxes are Foxes like those of Spaine, but in colour blacker then blacke veluet, and somewhat less then of Spaine. The Red Deere are as those of Spaine, but not so twift. Their Fallow Deere are like those of Spaine, Red and falbut both Red and Fallow exceed the Spacifib in tafte. Their Conies or Harres are somewhat like low Deere; ours, but liker Hares then Conies, yet leffe then the Conses of Spaine. The Marterns are like to Matterns. 30 those of Spaine in bignesse, biting and otherwise: some of them are kept tame and are as full of

foort and leffe filthy then the Monteys. The Monteys are of innumerable forts and fhapes: Monteys. fome of them fo futtle as they imitate the actions of men , as breaking of Pine-apples and Almonds with stones : tome will throw stones at passengers, or breake boughs to fall on them as they palle by to breake their heads, and retort the arrowes shot at them, and doe other things incredible. Some are as little or leffer then a mans hand, and some as great as a meane Mastiffe. The Indian Dogs are little and barks not, some hayrie and some bare, but wagge the taile and leape on Dogs. those which feede them, and are not so tameas ours. The Churchie is as bigge as a small Conie, churchie tawnie, (harpe-snowted, dog-toothed, long-tayled and eared like a Ret. They doe great harme to their Hennes, killing sometimes twentie or more at once to sucke their bloud : And if they

40 then haueyoung, thee carrieth them with her in a bagge of skin vnder her belly, tunning along ft the famelike a Sarchell, which shee opens and shuts at pleasure to let them in and out : and if any come with light when the Damme and young are at their Hen-bloud dainties, thee receives them into this bagge, and runneth away with them : and if thee finde the way stopped, thee climbeth vp about the Hen-rooft, and is sometimes taken aliue or dead in this manner, as I have feene. Her Teats are within her bagge. It is a ftinking creature.

Of Fowles, they have Eagles, Hamber, Buzzands, Ranens, &c. as in Spaine. Other differing Fowles. forts they have so many that they need rather a Painter then Relator to describe them. Of Par. Parent rots I carried ten or twelve forts at once to King Ferdinand. They flie by couples, a Male and Female together: and doe much harme to their Corne grounds. There are Night-fharrowes which Night-fharrows

of flie by night onely, and strike at the Bass, holding a pleasant puriote after them. They are bigger and swifter then Swallowes, having a row of white feathers overthwart the wing, The Bats Bats, draw much bloud by their bitings; and if they bite one man amongst an hundred persons, the Graw much mode by the mights following till fingle the fame perfor. They franch the blood with hot albes, or water as hot as may be endured, and fo I have been cured. There are Peaceet, fome hot albes, or water as hot as may be endured, and fo I have been cured. There are Peaceet, fome yellow, some blacke, with tailes like those of Spaine: they are better meat: some are wilde, and fome tame, which are brought home young. Other Peacocks they have, of which the Hens are Peacocks and ill shaped, the Males have not so great a taile as ours : their necke also is bare of feathers, but Turien. coursed with a skin which they change after their phantafie into diuers colours. They have a horne as it were on their front, and haires on the breast (she last forme Turkeys.)

The Sea-Crowes are so many which on the coast of Panama follow the Pilchards or Sardines Sea crows; (as is before faid of the Alcarrazzi) that lighting or houring on the Sex, they feeme to couer the same with a blacke carpet of cloth or veluer, going and comming with the Sea. There are Wilde Hour as great as Peacocks, blacke, the head part of the necke gray skins, and not feathe. Wilde Homes. red : they eate Carrion and are of vnfaqoorie tafte to be eaten; fmell like muske whiles they are

feather arrowes. They are defirous to line about places inhabited to feede on Carrion. The Par-Parmiches. triebes are gray, as fauourie as those of Spaine, and as great as the Spains Hens: they have their brawnes or fielh double, one ouer the other. Their egges are as bigge as Hens egges, but rounder. and coloured like a fine Turkesse flone. The Indians making a found like theirs, draw them to theirs nets. There are alfo a leffe kinde. The Pheafants are not in feathers like those of Spaine.

nor so goodly, but very sauourie meate like the great Partriches, but are not so great; they are gray, have long legs and railes, make a loud whittling noife, and are eafily floc.

Flies and Wiffs, Flies are not there fo many as in these parts of Europe. Their Waspes are greater and fling Fire, and William Bees, Aste, See more dangeroully. Their Bees are almost as small as slies, and sting not. They have great Hives and Combes which hold foure times as much Honie as ours : their Honie is white, Anti are great, many, and doe much damage to the Trees, Sugars, and other provisions. There are of many torts, some little and black (of which and the Ant-heare is spoken before)some called Conixon halfe Ant, halfe Worme, very hurtfull; they carry earth on their heads, and therewith on trees. walls, or where they pleate build their nefts, three or foure ipans large, and are as burtfull to houses as Moths to clothes. There are others greater of divers lorts, some as bigge as Bees with vs, so poysonfull that herewith the Indian; infect their arrowes so remedilese, that not foure of an hundred which are wounded escape : and if this Ant bite a Man he presently falls into a grienous feauer, and the place swelleth much. There are others red, yellow, and some winged. Of

Mill G. l. t f. c.t. Hornets or Horfe-flies (Tafani) are many forts, tedious to expresse. There are also Scorpions in 10 the firme Land. An. 1519, and two yeeres after the Ants destroyed in Hispaniola their Canna-Historia Gen. fistola, Oranges, and fruit Trees, neither in their houses could they keepe victualls for their mul-42,034. titudes, dettroying all like the African Graffe-hoppers, in fo much that Saint Domingo was nigh difpeopled by them.

Lib.3.6.6.

They laugh in India to heare the discase called French by the Italians, and Nespolitan by the French, which may indeed be called Indian, where the best remedie Lignum Sanctum, and Gnaiacan grow; God to in judgement remembring mercy, that where our finnes produce a punishment, he also tends a remedie. I had acquaintance with divers which went in the first and second voyages of Columbia : of which was Peter Margarite Commendator in the second voyage, of most respect with the King and Queene, who complay ned of those paines. Soone after, in the yeere 30 1496. began the difease to arrest some Courtiers; but in those beginnings, it was onely amongst bater persons of small authoritie : and it was thought that they got it with having to doe with common women. But afterwards it extended to principall Persons, and the Physicians could not tell what to thinke of it, so that many dyed. When after this Gonz ale Fernandes de Cordona was fent with a great Armie by the Catholike Kings, in behalfe of Fordinand the fecond King of Naples , against Charles the French King, some diseased persons went with that Armie , and by dealing with the women, and by conserting, foread the disease to the Italians and French-men, which thence got the names aforesaid, but indeed came from Hispanials: where it is ordinarie, and the remedie allo. Our Author 1. 17. c.4. and Ramufio in his Preface to his third Tome fay , That the Souldiers of Pamfilo de Nauaz baning the fmall pocks infelled the Indians, which never before 40 bad beard of that disease: in so much that of 1600000. Soules in that Iland there are so few left, as by and by you shall beare. The Niguas also, creatures leffe then Fleas , which eate in the fielh very dangerously, are rife in that Iland. The people of that Iland when first they were divided a-

mongst the Spanish Planters, were deemed a Million or more ( some fay 1600000. of which and of their posteritie in the yeare 1535, were not aboue fine hundred left, little and great, the rest which then were there being Slaues brought thither from other parts. The couetoulnesse of the Myne-workers, neglect of Diet, change of Gouernours growing worfe and worfe, canfed them to poyfon, kill, and hang themselves, besides those which were consumed by insections \* Thosebefore or pestilentiall pocks \* and other diseases : Their owne vices, also Sodomitrie, Idolatrie, &c. mantioned out prouoked dinine Inflice against them. No provision could hinder their consumption. The King 50 fent Religious men of divers Orders , but this I know that the Dominicans and Franciscans contradicted each other, and what one approved the other difallowed, although after the other had

left that opinion, the Contradictors would embrace it, still agreeing in difagreeing : which caufed much danger not onely to new Conuerts, but also to old Christians: whiles one Order would nor absolue them except they franchised the Indians, and the other absolued them neverthelesse. Much diffrutation hath beene about the Indians feruice amongst the Thomists, Canonills, and famous Lawyers and Diuines, but their differences have done little good to the Indians or the plantation; and in a short time both this Iland and the three adiopning, Saint John, Jamaica, and Cuba, remayned defolate, being by the Friars meanes (which I thinke, meant well) disperied

thorow the Iland, to leffen their labours, which the Gentlemen imposed on them. I am of opinion that if a Christian Prince had this Iland of Hispaniala onely, hee might make it as good as either England or Sicily: fuch is the store of Gold, the prosperous successe of things carried from Spaine, the Beeues (which I knew first carried thither from Spaine) being alreadie so multiplyed that they kill them for the Hides, leaving the field in the fields of five hundred at once :

C H A P.2. Strange Huracans, Spont, Monfter, Hawk. Great burts by least Dermin. 997

and Roderigo di Bastidas Bishop of Venesuela hath therein 16000. Beeues, and the Treasurer Pasamonte as many; others 8000, or more, likewise in other Beatts, Seeds, Oranges, Limons, Figs, Pomegranets, &c.

Of their Zemes, Idols, Sepulchres, and other things concerning their Religion, the Reader may fee Outedos file enough in the minth Booke and fourteenth Chapter of my Pilgrimage; and of the Spanish first wojages Booke is of this ber in the beginning of this worke, which Quiedo bandleth in his former Bookes.

Their Huracans (to they call tempetts of winde and raine together) are very excelline. An. 1508, on the third of August, all the thatched houses in Saint Domingo were throwne to the Lib.6.63. ground, and some also of stone; all the houses also in the Towne Bonanentura, which might to thence be named Malauentura: in the Hauen were funke twentie Ships and Caruels, a North-

wind first and after a South-wind playing their furious prizes, one carrying out the Vessels in despight of all prouisions to Sea, and the other as terribly forcing them agains to the Hauen (it the losse of ships and men may permit that name) yea on Land many men were carried in the streets and fields divers bow-shots before they could stay themselves. Hell seemed to have Superstances beene opened, and the Deuils to have carried things to and fro. Yet in July following was a conceitof the worse, which now are allayed and not for violent fince the Bleffed Sacrament hath beene placed in Churches. I have seene the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground coursed in Churches. I have seene the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground coursed against a contract of the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground coursed in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground coursed in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground coursed in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground coursed in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground course in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground course in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground course in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground course in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground course in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground course in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground course in the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two and the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two with Trees plucked up by the Windes from the Rootes , and ours have sometime by dangers of the Hardaness the way beene forced to climbe from tree to tree outr fuch a passage, with rents and perills of the confei-20 enough.

The Cocks in Spaine crow at mid-night and towards day: but herein the shutting in of the e- Lib.7. c.10. pening, or two houres within night, and two houres before day, and not at all at mid-night : Cocar & Cars some crow in the first watch and not else all night. Their Cats also vie their lusts all the yeare differing from and without walling noise, which in Spaine, France, Sicily, and other places in Europe and the Spains and without waiting noise, which is open, and wherein our Afrike which I have seen goe on Catter-walling onely about Februarie. In the Ile of Nanaza shift doe Weltward from Hiftaniola in the way thence to lamaca, the Rocks are feene under the water: much agree and among it them a fathome and five foote under the falt water there ariseth a spring of good with the ladies fresh water vpon the Sea, spowting vp bigger then a mans arme, higher then the salt water Strangewater that it may eatily be taken in. I have not feene it, but Stephen Rocca a person of credit testifieth pour,

30 this of his owne fight and tafte. But I have feene in the Iland Domnics at the River Acquata, twentie paces wide, and not deeper then the arme pits, there is a hot spring, that if one take vp the Sands they feeme like embers in his fift, and to is the water a foan deepe about the Sands, which on the top is fresh and like other water.

Outedos 8.9.10. and 11. Bookes are of Plants and Trees in those parts. The 12. of Creatures Lib.13. c.s. before mentioned: the 13. of Fishes, in which he tellets that An. 1529. going from the Gulfe of Orotigus to Panama two hundred leagues Eastward , neere the mouth of the Gulfe , wee faw a Filhor great Water-monfter, which at times lifted it felfe right vp aboue the Water fo farre Sea Monfter that the head and both the armes might bee feene, which feemed higher then our Carauell and flupendious all her Mafts. Thus did fhee rife and fall divers times beating the water strongly, not casting

40 any water one of the mouth. A younger or lesse of the same kinde did likewise, swimme a little distant from the greater. Some judged it to bee a Whale with her young one, which others denyed, faying, a Whale had no armes. To my judgement each arme might be five and twentie foote long, and as bigge as a Butt or Pipe: the head fourteene or fifteene foote high and much more in breadth; and the rest of the body larger. That of her which appeared about water, was about fue times the height of a meane man, which make fue and twentie paces." Loren- "15, 10ff, 20 Marsimo Canon of the Church of Golden Caffile, Sancio di Indola, &c. were with me: and we which found were all afraid when thee came neere our finall Caruell. Shee feemed to difport her felfe at a temperature pelf approching, which fuddenly arofe much to our purpofe, from the Weit, and brought vs in

few daves to Panama. In Hispaniola and the neighbouring Hands is a strange bird of prey, as bigge as a great " Gania Lib.14-2-7. and much like it : fhee preyeth on the Land on birds , &cc, and on fifth in the Water, fhee is An Italian footed like water-fowles and goeth like a Goofe, but hath talons like Hawkes, and fastens fowle. there with on the fifthes which thee eates ( fo taken ) either in the Water or on the Rocks , or Water hawkes, as thee flyeth in the Aire holding it betweene her feete. The Christians call them Afters

What feath the Ants did in Hispaniola, is before mentioned, in the yeere 1519. and the next L.tf.c.t. following, and the Citic of Saint Domingo, was almost dishabited by this great Armic of little Greatshame creatures, as in Spaine a Citic was dispeopled by Conie; and which lately happened to the Ile by leaft creatures. Saint jumped (which almost tell out to the English Colonie in Bernauda) to another unces. 60 Citie by Rats, to the Atarita by Frogges, to the Minnimes by Fleas, to Amuele in Italie by

Serpents, and to another part thereof by Sparrowes; to divers places of Africa often by Locusts: fo can the Great God arme the least creatures to the destruction of proud vaing lorious men. And this miferie fo perplexed the Spaniards, that they fought as strange a remedie as was the difease,

Gal.4.

Rem-4

Ep. . 4. Ram. 8.

Ich-14-

Col.1.

Col.z.

Col.3. Heb.13.

Epb.s.

1.106.4-

Mat.11. Num-11.

Zer.2.13.

Mat.25.

1.Tim.4.

Vocertainty of which was to chuse some Saint for their Patron against the Antes. Alexander Giraldine, the Bi-Superfluon. Superfluon. Superfluon flop having sung a solemne and Pontificall Masse, after the Consecration and Elevation of the Sacrament, and demout Prayers made by him and the people, opened a Booke in which was a Catalogue of the Saints, by lot to chuse some he or the Saint, whom God should please to appoint their Aduocate against that Calamitie, And the Lot fell vpon Saint Saturnine whose Feath is on the nine and twentieth of November : after which the Ant-damage became more toleran ble and by little and little diminished, by Gods mercie and intercession of that Saint : I note it the rather, because the Bishop and that Saint were both Romanes, and as that Martyr had made mute the Idols in Toledo, (as is written in the Hillorie of his Martyrdome) fo now was Idolatry (and I pray what was this?) destroyed in Hispaniela? Hee might have faid exchanged ! a pitie 10 full case that when God bath Sont his owne Sonne made of a woman, made under the Law, Go, Who hath dyed for our (yea, that Martyrs) finnes, rifen for our Instification, ascended on high to give gifts to men; and is there, and therefore, fet downe at Gods right hand to make intercoffion for vs finners, to take possession for vs mortals, to accomplish as our Amen, all the promises of this life, and that which is to come, whether against Ants or Deuils; and in him it hath pleased the Father that all falnelle Should dwell; yea (beyond and it pleased) in him dwelleth the fulnesse of the Godbead bodily, and we are compleate in him, and he is all in all, yesterday, to day, the same for ever; which bath loved vs, and gin men bimfelfe for us, which is lone, which hath inuited vs, Come to me all ye that labour, which hath incited vs by all attractives : that after all this, men, Christian men should goe cast Lots for an Interceffor, and neglecting Christ, dreame of Romane carnall phancies, or runne mad with Romale 20 fuperstitious phrenfies; wherein if the bodie be deliuered , as happened to the lufting I fraelites. with their Quaile-flore, the burthen is made double to the foule, when God heareth in his anger. Such Cifternes doe they digge which forfake the Fountaine of lining waters, enen broken Cifternes which can bold no waters: the best of Saints like the wife Virgins, having no more Oslethen will fuffice their owne Lampes, and that also received out of anothers fulnesse, of whose fulnesse wee all have received grace for grace; faid a principall Saint,

There are Caterpillers, which shine in the night fiftie or a hundred paces off, only from that part of the bodie whence the legges iffue: others only have their head shining. I have seene iome a spanne long very fearefull, but for any thing I have heard, harmelesse. Flies are lesse, but more hurtfull then in Spaine : but thefe in kindes and colours are fo divertified that it is impoffi- 20. ble to write them : and fo may be faid of other small creatures in those parts.

Lawyers dan-

In his fixteenth Booke he declareth the Conquest of the Ile Borichen, or Saint John and the quarrels betwixt the Spaniards, the learning of fome breeding fuch diffentions, that not without cause (faith our Author) in Golden Castile and in other parts, the King forbad Law-learned gérous in the Spanifo Indies. men and Proctors should passe thither, as men infectious by sowing strife where they ought not. In this Ile, the people and other things are at before is faid of Hifpaniola; there are more Birds in Saint lobe, rich Mineralls of Gold, certaine Battes which the people eate; and Lignum Santtum groweth there , more excellent then the Guaiacan for the French Difease and others.

Filthy Mar-

In his feventeenth Booke he writeth of Cuba. The people and other things are much like to 40 Hift aniola, Intheir Mariages, all the guelts of the Bridegroomes ranke (as Caciques, if hee bee a Cacique or Principall, or Plebeians as he is) lye with the Spoule before he himfelfe may doe it: after which she with her fift bent comes crying with a loud voyce, Manuato, Manuato, that is forced and full of force, as glorying in her thame. They are in vices like those of Hopaviola, and will be no better Christians then other Indians, whatforuer Peter Martyr writeth from Encifes Relations. For I have feene more Indians then they both, and by experience of those Nations know, that none or very few of them are Christians of their owne will and accord : and when any are baptized being of age, he doth it more for some by-purpose then for zeale of the faith: for there remaines to him nothing but the name, which also soone after he forgets. Perhaps there are some faithfull, but I believe they are very rare.

Oniedas reflimony of Indian Christianury. He thinkes it a Fahle that is cold of Croffes found in I wea-

The Creatures and Plants of Spaine profper well there, as doe the natural which are the fame which are in Hifpaniola. The people were exhaufted when they first went into New Spaine, and with the second Armie of Grigialus, and with the third of Cortese, and with the fourth of Pamphilo di Narbaez, all by order of Lieutenant Velafeo: whereby (uba was in manner difpeopled, and by the former causes mentioned of Hispaniela, and by the contagion of the small Pockes which was vniuerfall in all these Ilands : So that the Great God hath in manner wholly extinguished them for their (not without others) sinnes. They have much Gold and Brasse: vie to fifth much with the Roser fo before mentioned, as also that Wild-goode chase. There are innumerable Cranes, fuch as are in Spaine; the Boyes take infinite Egges and young ones. There ges of Fowles, are Turtles greater then in Spaine. Euery yeare there passe from the end of Cuba infinite numbers 60 of divers forts of Birds, which come from the North of the firme Land, and croffe over the Alacrain Hands and Cuba, and flye ouer the Gulfe Southwards. I have feene them paffe ouer Darien and Nombre de dies and Panama in divers yeeres, in the Firme Land; fo many that they coper the Skie : and this paffage or march continueth a moneth or more about the moneth of March. I thinke they flie sound about the World; for they never are feene to returne toward Lives 5. the West or North : and we see them not every yeers one after another; from morning to night the aire is courred, and fome flie fo high that they cannot bee feene, others lower yet higher then the Mountaines tops. They come from the North-west and North to the Southwards, and then turne South-west, occupying in length more then the eye can disceme, and a great space in breadth. The lowest are Eaglets and Eagles, and all seeme Birds of prey of many kinds and plumes : The higher cannot bee discerned in their plumes, but in manner of flying and quantitie appeare of divers forts.

10 There have beene Serpenes killed in Caba, as bigge as a mans thigh , and five and twentie, or thirtie foot long and more. They are tame, and the ladious cate them, and find fomttimes it their bellies fixe or feuen creatures bigger then Conies, which they swallow whole.

I am loth to lead you with this Author along with Grigialia, in his long Expedition from Lizate hence to Incatan and other parts. Neere to Parts de termini, he found two Trees feeming let by hand, standing alone, and sitteene paces off discres Idole of Chalke. They faw two Images made of the wood Copes, in manner of Sodomitical villenies together; and another of Chalke deue Lus, with his circumcifed member betwixt his hands.

Lamaics was in people, vices, creatures and other things like the former : they were the In. Lis.c.s. uentors of the reserfe-fishing and Goose-catching with Gourds or Pompions aforefaid, which

20 fometimes they practifed allo with leaves and greene boughes on their heads, and vied that Garland, as is before faid of the Pompions. Of Cubagua the Pearle Hand and of the Pearle-filling L 19.64. is spoken before. In Cubague is a bituminous Fountayne, hauing otherwise no water to drinke, Pi ch Found nor Hearbes, nor Trees but a few of Gasiscan, nor any liming creatures; though at first comming tains. of the Christians there were a few Conies. At the East point is the Fountayne running into the Sea with an Oily substance floating on it, profitable fee Medicine there called Desils Dang. They that live there, fetch their water feuen lesgues off from Commans , on the firme Land, and wood from Margarita. The Kings fifth of the Pearle-filling hath yeelded 1,000. Duckets yeerly : a thing not knowne that fo many Pearles have beene taken from fo fmall a space , the illand of Cubagua not compating about three leagues. In the Guife of Oresigna, and the Illands 4.9.
30 therein in the Prouince of Nicaragua on the South Seaware many shel-fishes of a long forme, Twoshel-fishes fome a Cubit long, fome leffe, created, growing broader and broader to the end when they are o- which yield pened they have a fishie substance within them and thine within as the Pearle-oysters doe, Pearles

halfe their length, thence by degrees looking that thining toward the broader end. The Pearles within them are not fo fine as the other. The Indian vio the their to digge their look ground, faitning the shell to a handle of wood, binding it fast and making a kind of Spade thereof taiting the incit to a mande of wood, opining it has an assume a said of speak selected.

In the yeare 1517. An Englishman " videt colour, of Ducousy, came with a great thip toto the Win
wards Braillon the Firm Land, and thence transfed to Hispaniola, and came neere the Hauen India, A.1517. of Saint Dominge, and fent his Boat full of people on fhoter, and defined Trade. But the Cap-Lay. Little taine of the Fort that from the Caftle at the Boate, because thee came directly to the Port; and "Hecals bind

an thereupon they returned to their fining. The Englis feeing this entertainment, tooke their a Parate, tur courfe towards the lland of Saint Iohn, and entred the Port of Saint German, and there demann resson of their resons of the courfe towards the lland of Saint Iohn, and entred the Port of Saint German, and there deman resson of their resons of their courfe towards the lland of Saint Iohn, and entred the Port of Saint German, and there deman resson of their courfe towards the lland of Saint Iohn, and entred the Port of Saint German, and there deman resson of the saint Iohn of their courfe towards the lland of Saint Iohn, and entred the Port of Saint German, and there deman resson of the saint Iohn of ded victuals and provisions for their ship, complaining of the wrong done them at Saint Domingo, comming thither for Trade, to buy with their Mony, and to barter Commodities. There they Pentet. got some victuals for which they paid in wrought pieces of Pewter and other things: and so returned towards Europe, where it is likely they came not; for there was never any more heard

The next yeare a French Pirat guided by a Spanish Pilot, came to trade in the Hand of Pearles L.20, and a Portugall Carauell which he had taken on the Coaft of Brafil, and would have landed his Boats full or men,but was relifted, and a Battel betwixt both parts followed, in which thirteene to Frenchmen were flaine, and two of ours. Three or foure Naturrois and Biskainers fled from them and faid the French were Theeues and came to take the Iland: whereupon they went with all their frength, and tooke her Boat, and the fhip fled out of fight, &c.

Oniedes twentieth Booke is of thipwrackes and difaduentures which have happened to the Spenierds in those parts. One which happened 1914, is admirable, the thip finking and five and twentie persons escaping in the Boat, hast forbidding prouision of Card, Compasse or vi-Quall, to faue their lines. Thus lived they twelve dayes at Sea ; neither had they any thing to eate or drinke : only a young man had faued two pounds of Bisket, which beeing divided amonest them, he which had most had not aboue an ounce and halfe. Vrine, or the Sea was their drinke. In this case they made Vowes to our Ladie of Antica in Sinul: and on the twelfth day

60 having made a Saile of their shirts, they came to Silver-port in Hispaniola. Their Pilot Auto Caluo told me the Storie. The same yeare in the Pleet of Pedrarias de Anilla a Portugal youth, being scoffed at, and flouted by the Spaniards, leaped into the Sea in a fresh gale, and not without the wonder of all men was taken vp by another ship aline, whom after I saw vaunting of this folly, and faying that no Cathlian durit have done it ; which I easily believe, as having more wit then this

## CHAP, S.I. Ottomies, Six Linages of Naustalcas, New Mexico.

Ouledo writ Land, which

Foole. Yet will I imitate alittle this foolish Portugall, and leape out of Oniedos Spanifo thin (for who will not feare such dreadfull ship wrackes as this Booke, the last which hath come to other hands, is full of?) and fwim alhoare, or feeke other passage with edeste, in a new or rather an old Voyage for Discourre of the Mexican Antiquities.

### CHAP. IIII.

## Mexican Antiquities gathered out of the Writings of Ios E-PHYS ACOSTA a learned lesuite.



Very Historie well written is profitable to the Reader: For at the Wifeman faith, That which hath beene, is, and that which shall bee, is that which hath beene : Hawhich hard notene, is, and that which hall bee, is that which hard heene: Hamane thing them much of submisses in termfilms, and fome grow mift it has been to be
happened to others. There is no Nation, born barbarous forms, that have not some
thoug in them, good, and worthy of commendation; and commenweale fould nedver, than has hos sessions that have now they are the secontrolled. If therefore there
were no atter finit in the Historic and Narvaism of the Deed and Geft of the Indians, but this com-

mon utilitie, to be a Relation or Historie of things, the which in the effect of truth bane happened, it 20 described to be received as a profitable thing, neither ought it to bee rejected, for that it concernes the Indians. As wee fee that those Authors that treate of naturall things, write not onely of generous Beasts, notable and rare Plants , and of Precious Stones , but alfo of wilde Beasts , common rous Beatt, notable and ever a times, many a comment of the property of many or properties worthy offer. Hearbs, and also and world so Stenes, for that there is always in them fome properties worthy offer nation, If therefore there were unbing elfe in this Diffeourfe, but that it is Aliffore, and so false nor fillians, it were no vinworthy Subiest to be written, or read. There is yet another more particular reason, which is, that we ought berein to esteeme that which is worthy of memorie, both for that it is realon, which us, that we anger acreem to present cons more to sworing of memoria, noth for that it is.

Nations little determed, and also Subsict different from that of our Europe, a thefe Nations bee,
wherein mee should take most pleasure and content, to conderstand the ground of their beginning, then 30
memory of life, with their bappin and workspie Admentates. And this subsett is not only pleasant and
agreeable, boat also profitshes, especially 30 subset boats the beauge termle and governe them; if or the
knowledge of their Astinianies vs to gink credit, and darb partly teach how they ought to be intreased. yea, it takes away much of that common and foolifb contempt wherein they of Europe hold them, fup. yea, it is less earny much of that common and foolife cintemps there in they of Europe hold a time, fig., poling that those Nations have his feeling of roofen. For in truth we cannot cleare this errors better, than by the true report of the Alix mid deed of this people. I wall therefore as briefly at I can, instruct of the beginning, proceedings and notable death of the Mexicanes, whereby nee may know the time and the displication that the high Gat would choose, be find votes these Rations that the high Gat would choose, be find votes these Rations that the thing they fine Caspelled Lefin Christ the Law of Same our Eard, whoma I before to second our small labour, that it may been the glorie of his Dinine greatnesse, and some prosit to these people, to whom he hath imparted the Law 40 of his boly Gaftell.

Of the ancient Inhabitants of New Spaine, and of the fixe Linages of the Nauatlacas, Of the Mexican Exodus, and Adventures by the way : the foundation of Mexico, their first King and Tribute.

He ancient and first Inhabitants of those Prouinces, which wee call New Spaine were men very barbarous and fauage, which lived onely by hunting, for this reason they were called Chichimecas. They did neither fow nor till the ground, neither hued they together; for all their exercise was to hunt, wherein they were very expert. They Their fanage together; for all their exercise was to nunt, wherein they were very expert. They could of life, lived in theroughest parts of the Monntaynes beast-like, without any policie, and they went all

naked. They hunted wilde Beafts, Hares, Conies, Weezels, Mowles, wild Cats, and Birds, yea vncleane beafts, as Snakes, Lizards, Locusts and Wormes, whereon they fed, with some hearbs and roots. They slept in the Mountaynes, in caues and in bushes, and the wives likewise went a hunting with their husbands, leaning their young children in a little panier of Reeds, tyed to the boughes of a Tree, which defired not to fucke vntill they were returned from hunting. They 60 had no Superiours, nor did acknowledge or worthip any gods, neither had any manner of Cere-

There is yet to this day in New Spaine of this kind of people, which line by their Bowes and Arrowes, the which are very hurtfull, for that they gather together in troopes to doe mil-

whiefe, and to rob : neither can the Spaniards by force or cunning reduce them to any policie or obediende: for having no Townes nor places of residence, to fight with them, were properly to hunt after lauage beatts, which scatter and hide themselves in the most rough and covered places of the Mountaynes. Such is their manner of living even to this day, in many Provinces of the Judies. Tholein New Spaine, which they call Ottomies, were of this fort, being commonly Ottomies poore Indians, inhabiting a rough and barren Land, and yet they are in good numbers, and line speecher with some order, and such as doe know them, find them no lesse apt and capeable of matters of Christian Religion, then others which are held to be more rich and better gouerned. Comming therefore to our libiech, the Chichimeca and Ottomies which were the first Inhabito rants of New Spaine, for that they did neither till nor fowe the Land, left the best and most fertile of the Countrey unpeopled, which, Nations that came from farre did possess, whom they called Nanatalcas, for that it was a more civill and politicke Nation; this word fignifies a people the footer well, in refpet of other barbarous Nations without reason. These second peoplers Namatalene, came from other farre Countreyes, which live toward the North, where now they have discouered a Kingdome they call New Mexico.

unte unconcrete a surgest of the Country, the one called dulas, which is to say a place of dulas.

There are two Proutines in this Country, the one called dulas, which is to say a place of dulas.

There are the other Tacubasaca, which signifies a Land of fuch, whife Grandfathers were duine. Taulasses The Inhabitants of these Provinces have their houses, their Lands tilled, Gods, Customes, and Ceremonies, with like order and government to the Namataleas, and are divided into Jemen Tribes 30 or Nations rand for that they have a custome in this Protince, that every one of these Linages hath his place and private Territorie, the Nanataleas paint their beginning and first Territorie in figure of a Caue, and fay that they came forth of fener Canes to come and people the Land of Mexico, whereof they make mention in their Hiftoric, where they paint feuen Caues and men

comming forth of them. By the supputation of their Bookes , it is aboue eight bundred yeares Their beginfince thele Naustaless came forth of their Country, reducing which to our accompt, was a nings 900. bout the yeere of our Lord 720. When they left their Countrey to come to Mexico, they haved yerre ages, fourescore yeares voon the way; and the cause of this their long stay in their Voyage, was, that their Gods (which without doubt were Deuils, and spake visibly vnto them) had perswaded them to feeke new Lands that had certaine fignes. And therefore they came discouring the 30 whole Land, to fearch for these tokens which their Idols had given them; and in places where wrote Land, to teach the teach of the teach

better country extra the state of the state tred the Land of Mexico, in the yeere 902, after our computation. These seven Linages I have spoken of, came not forth altogether : the first were the Sachimel. How the fix

cos, which fignifie a Nation of the feeds of flowers. Those peopled the bankes of the great Lake of Linages of Ha est, which nighted a values of the press of powers a time proposed the countries of the great hate of Mexics towards the South, and did binida Citie of their name, and many Villages. Long time special special proposed from the proposed of the countries of the fector and the proposed of the countries of the coun were the Topanecans, which fignifies people of the bridge : they did inhabite upon the banke of Submillers the Lake towards the Weft, and they increased so, as they called the chiefe and Metropolitane of Chairbean their Prouince, Accapanales, which is to fay, an Arts Noft, and they continued long time Accapanales, mightie. After them came those that peopled Tefenco, which be those of Culbua, which is to say, Tefenco a crooked people : for that in their Countrey there was a Mountaine much bending. And in this Culbus. fort this Lake was enuironed with these foure Nations, these inhabiting on the East, and the Tepanecas on the North. These of Tescaco, were held for great Courtiers, for their tongue and pronunciation is very (weet and pleafant. Then arrived the Tlalluicans, which fignifies men of 50 the Sierre or Mountaine. Those were the most rude and groffe of all the rest, who finding all The interest

the Plaines about the Lake possessed even vnto the Sierre, they passed to the other side of the Mountaine, where they found a very fertile, spacious and warme Countrey, where they built many great Villages, calling the Metropolisane of their Pronince Quahunachua, which is as Quahunathua much to fay, as a place that founds the voice of an Eagle, which our common people call by corruption, Omeranaca, and at this day they call this Prouince, the Marquifate. Those of the fixt Generation, which are the Tlascattecous, which is to say, Men of bread, passed the Moun- Tuscattecous, taine towards the East, croffing all the Sierre, or Mountaine of Menade, where that famous Tulem is betwixt Mexico and the Citie of Angels, where they did find a good Countrey, making many buildings. They built many Townes and Cities, whereof the Metropolitane was called

60 by their name Tlafcala. This is the Nation which fauoured the Spaniards at their entrie, by whose helpe they did winne this Countrey, and therefore to this day they pay no Tribute, but enioy a generall exemption. When all these Nations peopled these Countreyes, the Chuchimecans being the ancient Inhabitants, made no refiftance, but fled, and as people amazed, they hid themselves in the most obscure of the Rockes. But those that inhabited on the other side of the

Mountaine where the Tlascaliecans had planted themselves, did not suffer them in quiet, as the Mountaine where the taiseanceau has plants and the first of the Chelemeras in define to preferre their Country, and being Gunts as the Histories report, they lought to expell the last Commers, but they were vanquisht by the policy of the Tlascaliesans, who counterfeiting a peace with them, inuited them to a great banquet, and when they were buileft in their drunkennesse, there were some laid in ambush, who secretly stole away their weapons, which were great Clubs, Fargets, Swords of wood, and other fuch armes. Then did they fuddenly fet vpon them, and the Chichimecons fee. king to defend themselves, they did want their armes, so as they fled to the Mountaines and Forefts adjoyning, where they pulled downe Trees, as if they had beene figlikes of Lettuces. But in the end, the Tiascaliecans being armed, and marching in order, they defeated all the Giants, not is leauing one aline. We must not hold this of the Giants to be strange, or a fable; for at this day we finde dead mens bones of an incredible bigneffe,

When I was in Mexico, in the yeere 1586, they found one of those Giants buried in open our Farmes, which we call lefus du Mont, of whom they brought a tooth to bee feene, which (without augmenting) was as bigge as the fift of a man, and according to this, all the reft was proportionable, which I faw and admired at his deformed greatnesse. The Tlasaltecans by this victorie remay ned peaceable, and so did the rest of the Linages. These fixe Linages did always entertaine amitie together, marrying their children one with another, and diuding their limits quietly : then they studied with an emulation to encrease and beautifie their Commonwelle, The barbarous Chichimecans, seeing what passed, began to vie some government, and to apparell to Beginnings of themselues, being ashamed of what had passed : for till then they had no shame. And having a bandoned feare by their communication with these other people, they began to learne many things of them, building small Cottages, having some policy and government. They did also choose Lords, whom they did acknowledge for their Superiors, by meanes whereof they did in a manner quite abandon this bruitish life, yet did they al wayes continue in the Mountaines dist-

Three hundred and two yeeres after the former two Linages had left their Country, to inha-

Of the Mexi-

case departure, bite New Spaine, the Country being now well peopled, and reduced to some forme of governof their jours ment, Those of the feuenth Caue or Line arrived, which is the Mexicane Nation, the which like vnto the reft, left the Prouince of Azslan, and Tenenibnacan, a politike, courtlike, and war- to ping the Pro-nince of Me. like Nation. They did worthip the Idoll Vizzliputzle, the Deuill that was in this Idoll spake, chouses that, and gouerned this Nation easily. This Idoll commanded them to leave their Country, proming to make them Princes and Lords over all the Provinces which the other fixe Nations did pol-Deuilis emula, feffe, that he would give them a Land abounding with gold, filter, precious ftones, feathers, and rich mantels : whereupon they went forth, carrying their Idoll with them in a Coffer of Reedes, supported by foure of their principall Priests, with whom he did talke and reueale vnto them in fecree, the successe of their way and voyage, aduiting them of what should happen. He likewise gaue them Lawes, and taught them the customes, ceremonies, and facrifices they should observe. They did not advance nor mooue without commandement from this Idoll. He gave them notice when to march, and when to flay in any place, wherein they wholly obeyed him. The first thing to they did wherefoeuer they came, was to build a House or Tabernacle for their false god, which they fet alwayes in the middest of their Campe, and there placed the Arke vpon an Altar, in the fame manner as they have vied in the holy Christian Church. This done, they fowed their land for bread and pulles, which they vied : and they were so addicted to the obedience of their god, that if he commanded them to gather, they gathered, but if he commanded them to raise their Campe, all was left there for the nourishment of the aged, ficke, and wearie, which they left urposely from place to place, that they might people it, pretending by this meanes, that all the

worke of God in bringing Egypt, and pasthe defert to Tabernacle.

of customes more superstitious, nor sacrifices more cruell and inhumane, then those which hee to taught them. To conclude, they were invented by the enemie of mankinde. The Chiefe and Captaine whom they followed, was called Mexi, whence came the name of Mexico, and of the Mexican Nation. This people marching thus at leifure, as the other fixe Nations had done, peopling and tilling the Land in divers parts, whereof there is yet fome shewes and ruines; and after they had endured many trauels and dangers, in the end they came to the Province of Mechonacan, which is as much to fay, as a land of fish, for there is great abundance in goodly great Lakes, where contenting themselves with the situation and temperature of the ground, they refolued to flay there. Yet having confulted with their Idoll voon this point, and finding him vnwilling, they demanded license to leave some of their men to people to good a Land, the which he granted, teaching them the meanes how to doe it, which was, that when the Men and Wo-62 men should be entred into a goodly Lake called Pafenare, to bathe themselves, those which remayned on Land, should steale away all their clothes, and then secretly raise their Campe, and depart without any bruit, the which was effected, and the rest which dreams not of this deceit (for the pleafure they tooke in bathing) comming forth and finding themselves spoyled of their

We may well indge what this Vuzlipuzli was, for that there was never seene nor heard speake

Land should remaine inhabited by their Nation.

garments, and thus mocked and left by their Companions, they remayned diffeontented and vexed therewith : fo as to make shew of the hatred they had conceined against them , they say that they changed their manner of life and their language. At the leaft it is most certaine, that the Mechanicans have beene alwayes enemies to the Mexicans, and therefore they came to congratulate the Marqueffe De Valle, after his victorie obtayned when he had conquered Mexico.

From Mechonacan to Maxico, are aboue fittie leagues, and vpon the way is Malinalco, where Of that which it happened, that complaying to their Idoll of a woman that was a notable witch, which came happened in in their company carrying the name of their fifter to their god, for that with her wicked artes Mainaice Tale, thee did them much harme, pretending by certaine meanes to bee worthipped of them as their tener. Chap. 5. to goddeffe : the Idoll spake in a dreame to one of those old men that carried the Aske, commanding

him to comfort the people, making them new and great promises, and that they should leave this his fifter with her family, being cruell and bad, rayling their Campe at mid-night in great fi-lence, leauing no flew what way they paffed, So they did, and the Witch remayning alone with Witch for the her family in this fort, peopled a Towne which they call Malmales, the Inhabitants whereof, ken, are held for great Sorcerers, being issued from such a mother. The Mexicans for that they were greatly dimunished by these divisions, and by the number of sicke and wearied persons, which they had left behinde, meant to repayre themselves, and to stay in a place called Tale, which fignifies a place of Reedes. There their Idoll commanded them to ftop a great River, that it might couer a great Playne, and by the meanes he taught them, they did inuiron a little Hill called 20 Costepes, making a great Lake, the which they did plant round about with Willowes, Elmes,

Sapines, and other Trees. There began to breede much fish, and many birds came thither : fo as it became a very pleasant place. The fittuation of this place, seeming pleasant vnto them, and being wearied with trauell, many talked of peopling there, and to passe no farther: where with the Deuill was much displeased, threatning the Priests with death, commanding them to returne the River to her course, faying, that hee would that night chastile those which had beene Deui's proud turnethe Ruer to her counte, 12/mg, that new would use high the state of the under the duline causianon is lighted each often fuffer fuch to be deliuered into the hands of fuch a Tormentor, that choose punishing difficult of the high the state of the delivered into the hands of fuch a Tormentor, that choose punishing difficult is stated in the state of the delivered into the hands of fuch a Tormentor, that choose punishing difficult is stated in the state of the delivered into the hands of the state of the Campe, and in the morning going thither, they found those dead that had talked of staying therous facti-20 there. The manner of their death, was, that their fromacks were opened, and their hearts pul- fices.

there. I he manner out out a vest which was a man their tomass were opened, and then said pol-led out. And by that meanes, this good god eagle their poor e miserable Creatures; the kinder of factifices that pleaked him, which was, in opening the flowards, to pull out the barn's, as they have time practified in their horrible factifices. Seeing this punishment, and that the Playne was dryed, the Lake being emptied, they asked counfell of their god what to doe, who commanded them to paffe on, the which they did by little and little, vntill they came to Chapatespee, a league Chapatespee; from Mexice, famous for the pleafantneffe thereof. They did fortifie themselves in these Mountaines, fearing the Nations which inhabited that Country, the which were opposite vnto them, especially for that one named Copil, sonne to this Sorcereffe, left in Malinales, had blamed and spoken ill of the Mexicans : for this Copil by the commandement of his mother, awhile after 40 followed the Mexican course, labouring to incense the Tapanecas, and other neighbours against

them, even vnto the Chalcus: so as they came with a strong Armie to destroy the Mexicans. Capil in the meane space stood vpon a little Hill in the middest of a Lake, called Acopiles, attending the destruction of his Enemies, and they by the aduice of their Idoll, went against him, tooke him fuddenly, and flue him, carrying his heart to their god, who commanded them to caft Metamorphod it into the Lake, fayning that thereof did grow a plant called Tanal, where fince Mexico was fite built. They came to fight with the Chalcas, and other Nations, having chofen for their Captaine, a valiant man, called Vitzilonilti, who in an encounter, was taken and flaine by the Enemies. But for all this, they were not discouraged, but fought valiantly; and in despight of their Enemies they brake the fquadrons, and carrying their Aged, their Women, and young Children in

the midft of their battaile, they passed on to Allaconyanaya, a Towne of the Culbuans, whom they Atlanguage found solemnising of a Feast, in which place they fortified. The Chalcar, nor the other Nations did not follow them, but grieved to be defeated by fo small a number of men; they being in so great multitudes retyred to their Townes.

The Mexicans, by the aduice of their Idoll, fent their Meffengers to the Lord of Culbracan, Of the warres to demand a place to dwell in, who after her had imparted it to his people, granted them the Mexicons place of Tocaspon, which fignifies white maters, to the end they should all perish there, being full that against of Vipers, Snakes, and other venemous beafts which bred in a Hill neere adioyning. But being buscen. Cheese perswaded and taught by their Deuill, they accepted willingly what was offered, and by their Treasen. deuillisharte, tamed these beasts, so as they did them no harme; yea, they vied them as meate, 60 eating them with delight and appetite. The which the Lord of Culhuacan feeing, and that they

had tilled and fowed the Land, he refolued to receive them into the Citie, and to contract amitie with them. But the god whom the Mexicans did worship (as he is accustomed to do no good. but ill) faid vnto his Priests, that this was not the place where hee would have them stay, and that they must go forth making warres. Therefore they must seeke forth a Woman, and name her

Dicord made his daughter to be Queene of the Mexicans, and mother to their god, who received this amballage be the King or willingly, lending his daughter prefently gorgeoutly arrived and well accompanied. The fame night thee arrived, by order of the murtherer whom they worthipped , they killed her chiefly and having flayed her artificially as they could doe, they did clothe a young man with her sking. and thereupon her apparell, placing him neere their Idoll, dedicating him for a Goddeffe and the mother of their god, and ever after did worthip it, making an Idoll which they called Tocer, which is to fay, our grand mother. Not content with this crueltie, they did maliciously innite the Kine of Culbuacan, the father of the young Maid, to come and worthip his danghter, who wis now of Culturatan, the father of the young with great Prefents, and well accompanied with his preple, he was led into a very darke Chappell where their Idoll was, that he might offer facrifice to his daughter that was in that place. But it chanced that the Incense that was woon the harth, according to their cuftome, kindled in such fort, as he might diferre his daughters fraire, and hauing by this meanes discouered the crueltie and deceit, he went forth crying aloud, and with all his men he fell voon the Mexicans, forcing them to retyre to the Lake, foas they were almost drowned. The Mexicans defended themselves, casting certaine little darts; which they vied in the warres, wherewith they much galled their enemies. But in the end they got Land, and leauing that place, they coafted along the Lake, very weary and wet; the Women and little Children crying and making great exclamations against them and their god that had brought them into this distresse. They were inforced to passe a River that could not bee waded thorow, and 30 therefore they aduited to make small Boates of their Targets and of Reedes, wherein they paffed. Then afterwards, baning left Culbuacan, they arrived at Izzacalco, and finally to the place where the Hermitage of Saint Anthony now is, at the entrie of Mexico, and to that quarter which they

now call Saint Paul. During which time their Idoll did comfort them in their travels , and in-

couraged them, promiting great matters. The time being now come, that the Father of lyes should accomplish his promise made to his dation of Mex- people, who could no longer fuffer fo many turnings, trauels, and dangers, it happened that fome old Priefls or Sorcerers, being entred into a place full of water-lillies, they met with a very faire and cleere current of water, which feemed to be filter, and looking about, they found the Trees, Meadowes, Fifh, and all that they beheld to be very white: wondering hereat, they remembred 30 a prophese of their god, whereby he had given them that for a token of their place of rest, and to make them Lords of other Nations. Then weeping for ioy, they returned to the people with these good newes. The night following, Unaliquiali appeared in a dreame to an ancient Priest, faving, that they should feeke out a Timal in the Lake, which grew out of a stone (which as hee told them, was the same place where by his commandement they had cast the heart of Copil, fonne to the Sorcereffe their enemie) and voon this Timal they should see a goodly Eagle, which fed on certaine small birds. When they should fee this, they should believe it was the place where their Citie should be built, the which should surmount all others, and be famous throughout the World. Morning being come, the old man affembled the whole people, from the greatest to the least, making a long speech vnto them, how much they were bound vnto their god; 40 and of the reuelation, which (although vnworthy) he had received that night, concluding that all must feeke out that happy place which was promifed them; which bred fuch denotion and ioy in them all, that prefently they undertooke the enterprife, and dividing themselves into Bands, they began to learch, following the fignes of the reuelation of the defired place. Amiddeit the thickest of these water-lillies in the Lake, they met with the same course of water they had seene the day before, but much differing, being not white, but red, like bloud, the which diuided it felfe into two streames, whereof the one was of a very objeure azure, the which bredadmiration in them, noting some great mysterie, as they fail. After much search here and there, the Tunal appeared growing on a stone, whereon was a Royall Eagle, with the wings display-Eagleglorious ed towards the Sunne, receiving his heat. About this Eagle were many rich feathers, white, red, sa yellow, blue, and greene, of the same fort as they make their Images, which Eagle held in his tallants a goodly bird. Those which saw it and knew it to bee the place foretold by the Oracle, fell on their knees, doing great worthip to the Eagle, which bowed the head looking on every fide. Then was there great cryes, demonstrations, and thankes unto the Creator, and to their great god Vitzliputzli, who was their father, and had alwayes told them truth. For this realon they called the Citie which they founded where, Tenexistran, which fignifies Tunal on a flone, and to this day they carry in their Armes, an Eagle vpon a Tunal, with a bird in his tallant, and flanding with the other vpon the Tanal. The day following, by common confent they made an Hermitage adiopning to the Tunal of the Eagle, that the Arke of their god might reit there, till they might have meanes to build him a fumptuous Temple : and io they made this Hermi- 60 tage of Flagges and Turfes couered with straw. Then having confelted with their god, they refolued to buy of their Neighbours, Stone, Timber, Lime, in exchange of Fish, Frogs, and young Kids, and for Ducks, Water-hens, Courlieus, and divers other kindes of Sea fowles. All which things they did fifth and hunt for in this Lake, whereof there is great abundance. They went

Tabernacle for their Deuils Arke.

with these things to the Markets of the Townes and Cities of the Tapanecaus, and of them of Telemes their neighbours , and with policy they gathered together by little and little; what was necessarie for the building of their Citie: so as they built a better Chappell for their Idoll of lime Stone Chapand itone, and laboured to fill up a great part of the Lake with rubbish. This done, the Idoll pell. spake one night to one of his Priests, in these termes; Say unto the Mexicans, that the Noble- Oracle men divide themselves every one with their Kinsfelks and Friends, and that they divide themselves into foure principall quarters, about the bouse which you have built for my rest, and let every quarter build in his quarter at his pleasure. The which was put in execution : and those be the foure principall quarters of Mexico, which are called at this day Saint Iean , Saint Mary the round , Srint Paul, to and Saint Sebaftian. After this, the Mexicans being thus divided into these four quarters, their god commanded them to duide amongst them the gods he should name to them, and that they should give notice to every quarter, principall of the other foure particall quarters, where their gods should bee worshipped. So as under every one of these foure principall quarters, there yvere many leffe comprehended, according to the number of the Idols which their god commanded them to worship, which they called Calpalterco, which is as much to fay as God of the quariers. In this manner the Citie of Mistice Tenoxillian was founded, and God of the

grew great. This diuftion being made as aforefaid, fome old Men and Ancients held opinion, that in Of the fedicion the divition, they had not respected them as they deserved : for this cause, they and their of those of Tilathe duntion, they mad not respected than as they determed not this cauch, they and their reliates and of the first kines. And as they went through the Lake, they found a small piece of Ground or Terrasse, which they call Tlotelos , where they the Mexicos inhabited, calling it Tlatellules, which fignifies Place of a Terrafe. This was the third division did choose. of the Mexicans, fince they left their Country. That of Mechonacan being the first, and that chass. of Malinalco the fecond. Those which separated themselves and wene to Tlatellulco, were tamous men, but of bad disposition : and therefore they practifed against the Mexicans their neighbours, all the ill neighbourhood they could. They had alwayes quarrels against them and to this day continues their hatred and old leagues. They of Tenoxiltan, feeing them of Thatellules thus opposite vntothem, and that they multiplyed, feared that in time they might

furnount them : hereupon they affembled in countell , where they thought it good to thoose a 30 King, whom they should obey, and strike terrour into their Enemies, that by this meanes they should bee more writed and stronger among themselves, and their Enemies not prefume too much against them. Being thus resolued to choose a King, they tooke another aduce very proficable and affured, to choose none among themselves, for the auoyding of differtions, and to gayne (by their new King) fome other neighbour Nations, by whom they were inuitoned, being destitute of all iuccours. All well considered, both to pacifie the King of Culbuscan, whom they had greatly offended, having flaine and flayed the daughter of his predecessor, and done him fo great a fcorne, as also to have a King of the Mexican bloud, of which generation there were many in Culbnacan, which continued there fance the time they lived in peace amongst them; they resolved to choose for their King, a young man called Acamapizell, Acamapizell 40 some to a great Maxican Prince, and of a Lady; daughter to the King of Calbinata. Pre- int King of

fently they fent Ambaifadors with a great Prefent to demand this man, who delittered their Ambastage in these termes; Great Lord, wee your Vassats — Servants, placed and shut up its the Weeder and Reeder of the Lake, alone, and abandoned of this the Nations of the World, led oncly and guided by our god to the place where wee are, which falls in the imifaction of your limits of Ascaputalco, and of Tescuco: Aliboned you have suffered us to line and remayne there, jet will weens, mether is it reason to line without a Head and Lord to command, correct, and gowerne us, instructing us in the course of our life, and defending us from our Enemies: Therefore wee come to your humming that in your Court and House, there are Children of our generation, linchs and allied with yours iffied from one entrailes, and yours, of our blond and yours, among the whith we blue 50 knowledge of a Grand-child of yours and ours, called Acamapixth. Wee befaceb you therefore, to gime bim vs for Lord, wee will esteeme bim as bee defernes , feeing bee is of the Linage of the Lords of

Mexico, and the Kings of Culhuacan.

The King having confedred upon this point, and finding it nothing inconvenient to be allied to the Mexicans, who were valiant men, made them answere. That they should ake his grand-child in good time, adding thereunto, that if he had beene a woman, hee would not have given her, noting the foule fact before fpoken of , ending his discourse with these wordes , Lee guen nes, noung en cours sou octor sportion, sanua in monotife wird talet worses, Let my grand-child gosto forme your god, and be bit Lieutenant, to rule and gostere the Texturent photom we line, who it the Lord of Night, Day, and Winder: Let him goe and be Lord of the Water and Land, and possesses the Mexican Nation, take him in good time, and of him at my some and grand-60 child. The Maxicans gave him thankes, all loyntly deliring him to marry him with his owne hand, to as hee gaue him to wife, one of the nobleft Ladies among ft them. They conducted the new King and Queene with all honor possible, and made him a solemne reception; going all in generall forth to fee the King, whom they led into Palaces which were then but meane;

and having seated them in Royall Thrones, presently one of the Ancients and an Orator

Ocon a

much eftremed among ft them, did rife vp, speaking in this manner, My some, our Lord and King, thou art welcome to this poore House and Citie, among it the seweds and mud, where thy poore sa. thers, Grand-fathers, and Kinsfolks, endure what it pleaset's the Lord of things created. Remember Lord thou commest bilber to be the defence and support of the Mexican Nation, and to be the resemblance of our god Vitzliputzh, whereupon the charge and government is given thee. Thou knowest wee are not in our Country, seeing the Landwe possife at this day is anothers, neither know we what shall be come of us to morrow, or another day : Confider therefore that thou commest not to reft or recreate the selfe, but rather to indure a new charge under so beany a burden: wherein thou must continually labour, being flame to this multisude, which is fallen to thy lot, and to all this neighbour people, whom then must firme to gratific, and give them contentment, seeing thou knowest we live upon their Lands, and within 10 their limits. And ending, he repeated these wordes; Thou art welcome, Thou and the Queene our How Orations Miftris, to this your Realme. This was the speech of the old man, which with other Orations (which the Mexican Hiltories doe celebrate) the Children did vie to learne by heart, and so they

were kept by Tradition, some of them deserve well to bee reported in their proper termes. The King answering, thanked them, and offered them his care and diligence in their defence and aide in all he could. After they gaue him the Oath, and after their manner fet the Royall Crowne vpon his head, the which is like to the Crowne of the Dukes of Venice: the name of Acamapixeli their first King, tignifies a handfull of Reedes, and therefore they carry in their Armouries a hand holding many arrowes of Reedes,

Of the strange tricure the Mex. cans payed to hem of Azcapuzalca.

coronation.

The Mexicans hapned to well in the election of their new King, that in thort time they grew 20 to have fome forme of a Commonweale, and to bee famous among strangers; whereupon their neighbours mooued with feare, practifed to fubdue them, especially the Tapanecans, who had Aze capuzalco for their Metropolitane Citie, to whom the Mexicans payed tribute, as ftrangers dwelling in their Land. For the King of Azcapuzalco fearing their power which increased, fought to

oppresse the Mexicans, and having consulted with his subjects, he sent to tell King Acamapixili, that the ordinarie tribute they payed was too little, and that from thenceforth they should bring Firre trees, Sapines, and Willowes for the building of the Citie; and moreover, they should make Garden in the him a Garden in the water, planted with divers kindes of Herbes and Pulies, which they should bring onto him yeerly by water, dreffed in this manner, without fayling; which if they did not. he declared them his enemies, and would roote them out. The Mexicans were much troubled at this commandement, holding it impossible : and that this demand was to no other end, but to feeke occasion to ruine them. But their god Vitzliputzli comforted them, appearing that night to an old man, comanding him to say to the King his sonne in his name, that he should make no dif-ficultie to accept of this tribute, he would helpe them and make the meanes ease, which after happened : for the time of tribute being come, the Mexicans carried the Trees that were required, and moreover, a Garden made and floating in the water, and in it much Mays (which is their Corne) alreadie grayned and in the eare : there was also Indian Pepper, Beetes, Tomates, which is a great fappy and fauourie graine, French Peafe, Figs, Gourds, and many other things, all ripe, and in their featon. Such as have not ieene the Gardens in the Lake of Mexico, in the middeft of the water, will not beleeue it, but will say it is an inchantment of the Deuill whom they wor- 40 ship: But in tryth it is a matter to bee done, and there hath beene of the seene of these Gardens floating in the water; for they cast earth upon Reeds and Grasse, in such fort as it neuer wastes in the water; they fow and plant this ground, to as the graine growes and ripens very well, and then they remoue it from place to place. But it is true, that to make this great Garden eafily, and

to have the fruits grow well, is a thing that makes men judge there was the worke of Vizzliputz-

li, whom otherwise they call Patellas, specially having never made nor seene the like. The King

of Azcapuzalco wondred much when he faw that accomplished which he held impossible, saying vnto his fubicets, that this people had a great god that made all case vnto them, and he faid vn-

to the Mexicans, that feeing their god gaue them all things perfect, he would the yeere follow-

fayling of a minute, vpon paine of his indignation. The Mexicans were much troubled and hea-

uie with this proud and strict command: but their god, as he was accustomed, comforted them

in the night, by one of his Priests, saying, that he would take all that charge voon him, willing

them not to feare, but beleeve that the day would come, when as the Azcapuzalcos should pay

with their lives this define of new Tributes. The time being come, as the Mexicans carried all

New Phareming, at the time of tribute, they should bring in their Garden a milde Ducke, and a Heron, string so safe unce.

on their egges, in such sort, that they should hatch their young ones as they should arrive, without

that was demanded of their Gardens, among the Reedes and Weedes of the Garden, they found a Ducke and a Heron hatching their egges, and at the fame inflant when they arrived at Azes-puzates their young ones were difclosed. Whereat the King of Azeapuzates wondring beyond measure, hee faid againe to his people, that these were more then humane things, and that the 60 Mexicans began as if they would make themselves Lords over all those Provinces. Yet did hee not diminish the order of this tribute, and the Mexicans finding not themselves mightie enough, endured this subjection and flauerie the space of fiftie yeeres. In this time the King Acamapanis died, having beautified the Citie of Moune with many goodly buildings, fireets, Conduits of

wrater, and great abundance of munition. He raigned in peace and rest fortie yeeres, having beene alwayes zealous for the good and increase of the Commonweale.

As he drew neere his end, he did one memorable thing, that having lawfull children to whom he might leave the fuccession of the Realme, yet would be not doe it, but contrariwise hee spake freely to the Common-weale, that as they had made a free Election of him, fo they should choose him that should seeme sittest for their good Government , adming them therein to have a care to the good of the Common-weale, and feeming grieved that he left them not freed treen Tribute and lubicition, he dyed, having recommended his wife and children water them, he left all his people forrowfull for his death.

ò. II.

Of the second King VITZILOVITLI; and of his Successours and their Ads untill the Reigne of M Q T E Z V M A

He Obsequies of the dead King performed, the Ancients, the chiefe of the Realme, and some part of the people assembled together, to choose a King, where the propounded the necessitie wherein the chiefe of the Realme, and tome part or tree proper ancimere ungerner, ou never a mark has tir me modeful to choose for propounded the necessities wherein they were, and the he it me a modeful to choose for chost of their Citie, a most that had site of age, of Widdown, and Orphans, and no be a Factor of the Common meale: for in vary dead they should be the students of his wings, the syndrowes of his eyes, and the beard of his face, that is was necessary lice were valiant, being needfull shortly to of out eyes, and not ordered out just, to the sound of the reduction in the end was to choose a form to vie their forces, as their God had prophisfied. Their reduction in the end was to choose a form to the Predection, ving the like good office in accepting has forme for Successor, as hee had done to

the Common-weale, relying thereon. This young man was called Fitzslowith, which lignifieth a rich feather. They fet the Royal virginish of Growne vpon his head, and anointed him, as they have beene accustomed to do to all their Kings, lecked King. 30 with an Ointment they call Disame, being the fame vocation wherewith they did anoint their

Idoll. Prefently an Orator made an eloquent speech, extraving him to arme benefit with com-gage, and free them from the transle, flauris and mifrire they, suffered, being apprefied by the Anna-tory, which done, all did hum homage. This King was not married, and his Counsell held pundless: which done, all did hum homage. This King was not married, and his Counsell held opinion, that it was good to marry him with the Daughter of the King of Acceptacity, to have him a friend by this alliance, and to obtain from diminution of their heavie burthen of Tributes imposed upon them, and yet they feared left he should distaine to give them his Daughter, by reason they were his Vasals 1 yet the King of Azemusahe yeelded thereunto, hauing humbly required him, who with courteous words gave them his Daughter, called Anachystal, whom they led with great pompe and toy to Meries, and performed the Ceremonie and Solematic of Marriage, which was to tie a corner of the mann Clouke to a part of the womans Veile, in figure of the band of Marriage. This Queene brought forth a sonne, of whose name they demanded Marriage to

advice of the King of Azeapszales, and cafting Lots as they had accustomed (being greatly given re to Southfayings, especially upon the names of their children) here would have his Grandachilde Lots and to southery may, open any time as the many finely. The Queten his Daughter feeing the Southering contentment to King of Acapazate had of his Grand-childe, tooke occasion to intreate him to relieue the Markens, of the heatie burtheri of their Tributes, feeing hee had now a Grandchilde Mexican, the which the King willingly yeelded vnto, by the aduice of his Counfell, granting (for the Tribute which they paid) to bring yeerely a couple of Duckes and some fifth, in ligne of subjection, and that they dwelt in his Land. The Mexicans by this meanes remained

o much eated and concent, but it lafted little, For the Queene their Protectrix died foone after: and the yeere following like wife Versilemiti the King of Mexico died ; leaning his fonne Cht. Kings death malpopeca tenne yeeres old; he reigned shirteene yeeres, and died thirtie yeeres old, or little more. He was held for a good King, and carefull in the feruice of his Gods, whofe Images hee held Kings to be; and that the honour done to their God , was done to the King who was his !mage. For this cause the Kings haue been so affectionate to the service of their Gods. This King was carefull to winge the love of his neighbours, and to trafficke with them, whereby hee augmented his Citie, exercifing his men in Warrelike actions in the Lake, disposing them to that

which he pretended, as you shall see presently. The Meaneant for fucceffor to their deceded King did choole his fonne Chimalpopoea, by com-60 mon confent, although he were a child of ten yerres old, being of opinion that it was alwayes King, and his necessary to keepe the fauour of the King of Azenpurales, making his Grand-childe King, crucildesh,& They then let him in his Throne, giving him the Enlignes of warre, with a Bow and Arrower in the occasion one hand, and a Swerd with Rafers (which they commonly vie) in the right, figuifying thereby in Marie which 0000 3

(as they doe fay) that they precended by Armes to fed them felucrat libertie. The Mexican bad great want of water, that of the Lake being very thicke and anuildie, and therefore ill to drinke, so as they caused their infaint King to define of his Grand of a the King of Azennades, the water of the Mountaine of Chapalteper, which is from Maxico a league, as is faid before, which they bafely obtained, and by their indultris made an Aquaduct of faggoes, weeds and flaggest by

the which they brought water to their Citie. But because the City was built within the Lake. and the Aquaduct did croffe it, it did breake forth in many places, to as they could not enjoy the water, as they defired, and had great fearcitie: whorsupon, whether they did exprelly feeke it toquarrel with the Tapanecans, or that they were moved vpon small occasion, in the end they fent a resource Ambassage to the King Azeapuzalco, saying they could not vie the water which he had grac soully granted them, and therefore they required him to provide them, wood, lime, and stone, and to lend his Workmen, that by their meanes they might make a Pipe of stone and lime that should not breake. This message nothing pleased the King, and much lesse his subir as feeming to be too prefumptuous a message, and purposely insolent, for Vasials to their Lord. The chiefe of the Countell distayning thereat, said it was too bold, that not contest with permission to line in anothers Land, andro have waver given them, but they would have them you to ferne them; what a matter was that? And whereon prefumed this flightime Nation, shut up in the mud? They would

let them know, bow fit they were to worke, and to abate their pride, in taking from them their Land

In these tearnes and choller they left the King, whom they did somewhat suspect, by reason to of his Grand-childe, and confulted agains anew, what they were to doe, where they retolned to make a generali Proclamation, that no Tapanenar should have any commerce or traffique with any Mexican, that they should not goe to their Citie, nor receive any into theirs, vpon paine of death. Whereby we may understand that the King did not absolutely command over his pegple, and that hee gourned more like a Confull, or a Duke, then a King; although fince with their power, the command of Kings increased, growing absolute Tyrants, as you shall fee in the last Kings.

The King of Acceptuales feeing the refolution of his fubicats, which was to kill the Mexicans, intreated them first to steale away the young King his Grand-childe, and afterwards doe what they pleafed to the Mexicans. All in a manner yeelded hereunto, to give the King con- 10 tentment, and for pittie they had of the childe; but two of the chiefest were much opposite, inferring, that it was bad counfell, for that Chimapapaca, although hee were of their bloud, yet was it but by the Mothers fide, and that the Fathers was to be preferred, and therefore they concluded that the fift they must kill was Chimbalopoee King of Maxico, protesting fo to doe. The King of Azeaparales was fo troubled with this contradiction, and the resolution they had taken, shut loone after for very griefe he fell ficke, and dyed. By whose death the Tapanecanti. nifling their confultation, committed a notable Treason: for one night the young King of Maxi-King murbes see fleeping without guard, or feare of any thing, they of Acceptuates entred his Palace, and the hum findelntly, returning yorkeen. The morning being come, when the Nobles went to falore the King, as they were accultomed, they found him flane with graze and crede the wounds; then go they cryed out and filled all their Citie with teares : and transported with choller, they prefence ly fell to Armes, with an intent to revenge their Kings death. As they ranne up and downe full of farie and diforder, one of their chiefelt Kinghts flept forth, labouring to appeale them, with a grass admonition: Whither gow yee (fail he) O yee Maxicans! quiet your felture, comfair that things done without confidentation are out well qualified are come to good and it fapperly many regist, comfair that the control of the confidentation are out well qualified are come to good and it fapperly many regist, comfairing that although your King be dead, the Noble blond of the Mexicans is not extinct in him. We mering than automyte your Ang se team, to exonecomment on secrement and existing in distinct the secrement of the secrement o farther, but flayed to make the Obsequer of their King, whereunto they immed the Lords of Telemon, and Culbracon, exporting vnto them this foule and cruell fact, which the Tapanerans had committed, moouling them to have pittig on them, and incerding them against their enemies, concluding that their refolution was to die, or to bee revenged of fo great an indignitie, intreating them not to favour so vajusta fact of their enemies; and that for their part, they defired not sheir aide of armes or men, but onely to be lookers on of what should passe, and that for their maintenance, they would not ftop nor hinder the commerce, as the Tapanecans had done. At therespeeches they of Tescene and Culbuacan made them great shewes of good will, and that they were well latisfied, offering them their Cities, and all the Commerce they defired, that they defired, that they defired, that they might prouide victuall and Munition at their pleasure, both by land and water. After this, the Mexicon intreated them to flay with them, and affift at the election of

their King; the which they likewife granted, to give them contentment.

## CHAP. S. Inauguration of Mexican Kings. Threadless middome et valour. 1011

. The Electors being affembled, an old man that was held for a great Orator , role up, who (as Of the furth the Histories report) frake in this manner, The light of your eyes, O Mexicain, is ther kened, but not King calcol of your hearts: for although you house tof this that was the light and guide of the Mexican Common - Income, and of reade, yet that of the bear termines: to conflict; that albumpt they have flative man, yet there are the wre-seders that may supply with administry, the same we have of him: the hierarch Nobelian's set extin-gain the latguilhed thereby, nor the blend Ropall decoyed. Turne year yes and looke about you, you shall fee the chapite Nobilesis of blexico fee in order, not one or two but many and excellent Princes, Sons to Acamapixili, our tree and lawfull King and Lord. Here you may choose at your pleasure, saying, I will thu man, and not than I from have lost a Pather, heave you may find both Father and Mother: make occann O

here can, but to Same is cusped and advensed for a time, and will returne findings, If Mexico bath been during and to the cusped sound advensed for a time, and the cusped cusped greater King, the Same wall found flow, in thousing another King. Lodg to boss, and open whom you find call you reys, and tourist whom you beat as inclined that is to be more just of the cusped to be the cusped to the cusped greater than the cusped greater tha to the latisfaction of all men. In the end, by the confert of this Counfell, Izcoalt was chosen King, which figuities a Snake of Rafors, who was Sonne to the first King Jeamspixth, by a flave of his: and although he were not legitimate, yet they made choice of him, for that hee exceeded the rest in beliausour, valour, and magnanimitie of courage. All seemed very well fatisfied, and about all, thefe of Tefence, for their King was married to a lifter of Afrents. After the King had beene crowned and fee in this Royall Seat, another Orator flept up, diffourfing how the 20 King was bound to his Commonweale, and of the courage he ought to thew in travell, speaking thus, Behold that day we depend on thee, it may be then wilt let fall the burthen that liet upon thy Soul-

control and laffer the old man med opinion, the Orphin and the middle to perfect Tide patte of the Indian the general part of the Indian to the general part of the Indian their second part of Indian their second part of Indian their second part of Indian the Indian the Indian the Indian the Indian to Indian the Indian the Indian to Indian the Indian the Indian the Indian to Indian the Indian to Indian the Indian th presto Jores my cleaner, my Leran, we come regat request of your my producers, women over the power and the comments people, subs the affired of inder the fluidate of thy broad? and of the fluidate of the context woods whom this (therefor the which, (all have faith they learne by heart, for the exercise of their chalchem, and after did teach them as a Leffon to those that began to hearns the facultie

In the meane time , the Tapanicans were refolme to deftroy the Mexicans, and to this end 20 they had made great preparations. And therefore the new King tooke counfell for the proclaming of Warre, and to fight with those that had so much wronged them. But the common people, feeing their Aductionies to exceed their farre in numbers and munition for the water, they came amazed to their King, prefing him not to vudertake fo dangerous a warre, which would define their poors Citie and Nation: whereupon being demanded what admice were fit. teft to take, they usude antweet; that the King of Ascapusator was very pittifull; that they should demand peace, and offer to ferce him; diswing these forth those Marting, and flist hee flould give them heates and lands among his fabjects, that by this meanes they might depend all voos one Lord. And for the obtaining fiereof, they frould carrie their God in his Little for an Intercessor. The price of the people were of (sich force that ing fome Nobles that appropried an intercount. As a recovering polyther than the property of the principal p mong tree people, who were a resource construction of marketing visit them, reason states that it yes Executing and presented it has been been as well as the construction of the states of the states

man was called Tilearder, Nephew to the King, he was the most valiant Captaine and greatest Counsellor that ever she Maxicans had, as you shall see hereafter. Izcoals encouraged by that his Nephew had (a wifely spoken) retained the people, saying they should first fuffer him torry another better meaner. Then turning towards his Nobilitie, he faid water them, Tou are all beers my Kinfinen, and the best of Mexico, be that birth the courage to carrie a meffage to the Tapanecans, In him rife up. They looked one voon another , but no man flired nor offered himselfe to the word. Then this young man Tlacaellee rifing, offered himselfe to goe, saying, that feeling hee multidie, it did import little whether it were to day or to morrow : for what reason should hee fo carefully preferue himfolfe? he was therefore readie, let him command what he pleafed. And although all held this for a rafh attempt, yet the Ring refound to french him, that he might there on walerthan the will and disportion of the Ring of Assignitudes and of his people; holding it better to halten his Nephewel death; then to hazard the honour of his Common-weale. The

60 caellec being readie, tooke his way, and being come to the Guards, who had commandement to kill any Mericans that came towards them, by cumning or otherwise : hee perswaded them to fuffer him to paffe to the King, who wondred to fee him, and hearing his Ambaffage, which was to demand peace of him under honest conditions, answered, that he would impart it to his subjects, willing him to returne the next day for his answere. Then Threaellee demanded a

pasport, yet could be not obtaine any, but that he should wie his best skill : with this he returned to Mexico, giving his words to the guards to returne, And although the King of capazaleo defired peace, being of a milde disposition, yet his Subjects did so incense him, as his answer was open warre. The which being heard by the Messenger, he did all his King commanded him, declaring by this ceremony, to give armes, and annointing the King with the vnction of the dead, that in his Kings behalfe he did defiehim. Hauing ended all, the King of Azeapuzalco luftering himfelfe to be anointed and crowned with Feathers, giving goodly armes in recompence to the Meffenger, wishing him not to returne by the Pallace gate, whereas meny attended to cut him in peeces, but to goe out fecretly by a little false Potterne that wasto. pen in one of the Courts of the Pallace. This yong man did fo, and turning by secret waies, got to away in fafetie in fight of the Guards, and there defied them, faying, Tapanecans and Azcapu. Zalcans, you doe your office ill, vuderfland you fhall all dye, and not one Tapanecan fhall remains aline. In the meane time the Guards fell voon him, where he behaued himielfe fo valiantly, that he flew fome of them : and feeing many more of them come running, he retired himfelte gallant. ly to the Citie, where he brought newes, that warre was proclaimed with the Tapmerans, and that he had defied their King.

gaue to the Chap.13.

The defie being knowne to the Commons of Mexico, they came to the King, according to their accustomed cowardife, demanding leave to depart the Citie, holding their ruine certaine. The King did comfort and incourage them, promiting to give them libertie if they vanquished The king did constort and incourage them, promiting to gue them libertie if they vanquified their enemies, willing them not to fear. The people replied, a draid was to amoughed, what find 100 mee doe? I five to concrow, (antwered the King,) no will be bound professly to peake our folus into your boards to fight a death, eater fight is you and place and the removed of v. It flash be for them (iny they) if you loafe the villavie, and if you obtained the villavier, we does prefently offer our falses to be your Tribusaries, to labous in your banks of your growth out our carries your sense and hopegage when you got to be source for each, was and nor defendant; after vs. These accords made between the Donle and the Middle is which they will a for the Workshop of the State of the S the People and the Nobilitie (which they did after fully performe, either willingly or by conftraint, as they had promifed) the King named for his Captaine Generall Tlasseller: the whole Campe was put in order, and into fquadrons, giving the places of Captaines to the most valiant of his kinsfolkes and friends: then did he make them a goodly peech, whereby he did greatly is incourage them, being now well prepared; clusteding all men to obey the commandement of the Generall whom he had appointed; he dissided his men into two parts, commanding the most valiant and hardie, to give the first charge with him, and that all the rest should remaine with the King Izcoalt, untill they should fee the first affaile their enemies. Marching then in order, they were discovered by them of Azcapuzalco, who presently came furlously forth the Citie, carrying great riches of Gold, Silver, and Armes of great value, as those which had the Empire of all that Countrie. Izcools gave the figuall to battaile, with a little Drumme he carried on his shoulders, and presently they raised a generall showt, crying, Mexico, Mexico, they charged the Toponecon, and although they were farre more in number, yet did they descate them, and force them to retire into their Citie, then advanced they which remained behinde, or ying Tiscaellec Villarie, Villarie, all fodainly entred the Citie, where (by the Kings commande. ment) they pardoned not any map, no not old men, women, nor children, for they flew them all and spouled the Citie being very rich. And not content herewith they followed them that fled, and were retired into the craggie rockes of the Sierres or neers Mountaines, striking and making a great flaughter of them. The Tapareeaus heing retired to a Mountaine east downe their Armes, demanding their lines, and offering to ferue the Mexicane, to give them Lands and Gardens, Stone, Lime and Timber, and to hold them alwayes for their Lords. Voon this condition Tlasaelles retired his men and ceased the battaile, granting them their lives voon the former conditions, which they did folemnely (weare. Then they returned to Azesputaleo, and fo with their rich and victorious spoiles to the Citie of Mexico. The day following the King affembled the Nobilitie and the People, to whom hee laid open the accord the Commons had to made, demanding of them, if they were content to perfift therein : the Commons made answer, that they had promiled, and they had well deferred it, and therefore they were content to ferue them perpetually. Whereupon they tooke an oath, which fince they have kept without

This done, Izeals returned to Azeapuzales (by the aduite of his Counfell) he divided all the Lands and Goods of the conquered among the conquerours, the chiefest pert fell to the King, then to Tlacaellee, and after to the reft of the Nobles, as they best deserved in the Battaile. They also gave Land to some Plebeans, having behaved them selves valiantly; to others they distributed the Pillage, making small account of them as of cowards. They appointed Lands in common for the quarters of Mexico, to every one his part, for the Service and Sacrifices of their 60 Gods. This was the order which afterwards they alwayes kept, in the division of the Lands and spoiles of those they had vanquished and subdued. By this meanes they of Azcapuzalco remained fo poore, as they had no Lands left them to labour, and (which was worfe) they tooks their King from them, and all power to choose any other then him of Mexico.

Although

Although the chiefe Citie of the Tapanecanes, was that of Azcapuzalco, yet had they others with their private Lords, as Tuenda and Cupacan. These seeing the storme passed, would Of the warre gladly that they of Azespuzalco had renewed the watre against the Mexicans, and seeing Mexicons had them danted, as a Nation wholly broken and defeated, they of Cuyoacan refolued to make against the Ciwarre by them selues; to the which they laboured to draw the other neighbour Nations, who tie of capeacan would not ftirre nor quarrell with the Mexicans. In the meane time the hatred and malice in- Chaptacreating, they of Cayoacan began to ill intreate the women that went to their Markets, mocking at them, and doing the like to the men ouer whom they had power: for which cause the

King of Mexico defended, that none of his should goe to Capacan, and that they should receive 10 none of them into Mexico, the which made them of Coyoacon retolue wholly to warre : but first they would prouoke them by some shamefull scorne, which was, that having inuited them to one of their tolemne Feasts, after they had made them a goodly Banquet, and feasted them with a great daunce after their manner, they fent them for their fruite, womens apparell, forcing them to put it on, and fo to returne home like women to their Citie, reproaching them, that they were cowards and effeminate, and that they durft not take armes being fufficiently prouoked. Those of Mexico say, that for revenge they did vnto them a foule scome, laying at the gates of their Citie of Capacan certaine things which smoaked, by meanes whereof many women were delinered before their time, and many fell ficke. In the end, all came to open war, and there was a battaile fought, wherein they imploied all their forces, in the which Tlacaelice,

20 by his courage and policie in warre, obtained the victorie. For having left King Izcoals in fight with them of Cuyoacan, he put himselfe in ambush with some of the most valiant Souldiers, and so turning about, charged them behinde, and forced them to retire into their Citie. But Temple, feeing their intent was to flie into a Temple which was very itrong, he with three other valiant Soul liors, pursued them eagarly, and got before them, seising on the Temple and firing it, fo as he forced them to flie to the fields, where he made a great flaughter of the vanquished, purfuing them two leagues into the Countrie, vnto a little hill, where the vanquished casting away their weapons, and their armes a croffe, yeel ded to the Mexicans, and with many teares craued pardon of their ouerweening folly, in ving them like women, offering to be their flaues : fo as in the end the Mexicanes did pardon them. Of this victory the Mexicans did carry away 30 very rich spoiles of Garments, Armes, Gold, Silver, Jewels, and rich feathers, with a great number of Captines. In this Battaile there were three of the principals of Culbuscan that came to

aide the Mexicans, to win honour, the which were remarkeable about all. And fince being knowne to Tlacaellec, and having made proofe of their fidelity, he gave them Mexican deuiles, and had them alwayes by his side, where they fought in all places very valiantly. It was apparant that the whole victory was due to the Generall, and to these three; for among so many captiues taken, two third parts were wonne by these foure, which was casily knowne by a policie they yied : for taking a Captine, they prefently cut off a little of his haire, and game it to others, so as it appeared that those which had their haire cut, amonnted to that number, whereby they wonne great reputation and fame of valiant men. They were honoured as Con-40 querours, giving them good portions of the spoiles and Lands, as the Mexicans have alwaies vied

to doe, which gaue occasion to those that did fight to become famous, and to win reputation

The Nation of the Tapanecans being subdued, the Mexicans had occasion to doe the like to Of the wase the Suchimileos, who (asie hath beene faid) were the first of the seuen Caues or linages that and victory peopled this Land. The Mexicans fought not the occasion, although they might prefume as which the Mexicans Conquerours to extend their limits, but the Suchmileos did moue them, to their owne ruine, as icess had a Conquerours to extend their limits, but the Suchimiles did moue them, to their owner ruine, as gainst the Suit happens to men of small sudgement that have no forelight, who not preventing the mischief chimiles 60,15. they imagined, fall into it. The Suchimiles held opinion, that the Mexicans, by reason of their victories past, should attempt to subdue them, and consulted hereon among themselues. Some

50 among them thought it good to acknowledge them for superiours, and to applaud their good fortune, but the contrary was allowed, and they went out to give them battaile : which Izcoalt the King of Mexico understanding, he sent his Generall Tlacaellec against them, with his armie: the battaile was fought in the same field that divides their limits, which two Armies were equall in men and armes, but very divers in their order and manner of fighting; for that the Suchimileos charged all together on a heape confutedly, and Tlacaellee divided his men into fquadrons with a goodly order, fo as he presently brake his enemies, forcing them to retire into their Citie, into the which they entred , following them to the Temple whither they fled, which they fired, and forcing them to flye to the Mountaines: in the end they brought them to this point, that they yeelded with their arme acrosse. The Generall Tlacaellec returning in Temple siked 60 great triumph, the Priests went forth to receive him, with their musicke of Flutes, and giving

incense. The chiefe Captaines vied other Ceremonies and shewes of ioy, as they had beene accustomed to doe, and the King with all the troupe went to the Temple to give thankes to their

The day following, the King I zonalt went vnto the Citie of Suchimiles, causing himselfe to

# 1014 Tlacaellecs Distory by Children. Immane cruelty in humane Sacrifices. LIB. V.

be fworne King of the Sachimileos: and for their comfort he promifed to doe them good. In to. ken whereof he commanded them to make a great Cawley stretching from Mexico to Suchi. Caufrymade. miles, which is foure leagues, to the end there might be more commerce, and trafficke among them. Which the Suchimiles, performed, and in thort time the Mexican government feeded fo good vnto them, as they held themselues happy to have changed their King and Common weale. Some neighbours pricked forward by enuie, or feare, to their ruines, were not yet made wife by others mileries.

Cuillanaea was a Citie within the Laket which though the name and dwelling be changed continueth yet. They were softine to fwim in the Lake, and therefore they thought they might much indomage and annoy the Mexicans by water, which the King understanding, hereiol. 10 ued to fend his Armie presently to fight against them. But Tlacaelles little esteeming this ware, holding it dishonorable to lead an Armie against them, made offer to conquer them with the children onely; which he performed in this manner; he went vnto the Temple and drew out of the Couent such children as he thought fittelt for the action, from tenne to eighteene yeares of age, who knew how to guide their Boates, or Canoes, teaching them certaine pollicies. The order they held in this warre, was, that he went to Cuitlanaca with his children, where by his pollicie he preffed the enemy in fuch fort, that he made them to flye; and as he followed

them, the Lord of Cuitlanaca met him and yeelded vnto him, himfelfe, his Citie, and his people, and by this meanes he stayed the pursuite. The children returned with much spoyle, and many Captines for their Sacrifices, being folemnely received with a great Procession, Musicke 20 and Perfumes, and they went to worthip their gods, in taking of the earth which they did eate, and drawing bloud from the forepart of their legs with the Priests Lancets, with other superfittions which they were accultomed to vie in the like folemnities. The children were much honored and encouraged, and the King imbraced and kiffed them, and his kinfmen and allies accompanied them. The brute of this victory ranne throughout all the Countrie, how that Tlacsellee had subdued the Citie of Cuitlanaca with children: the news and consideration whereof opened the eyes of those of Tescace, a chiefe and very cunning Nation for their manner of life: So as the King of Tesenco was first of opinion, that they should subject themselves to the King of Mexico, and inuite him thereunto with his Citie. Therefore by the adulte of his Counfell, they fent Ambassadours good Orators with honorable presents, to offer themselves vnto 30 the Mexicans, as their Subjects, defiring peace and amity, which was graciously accepted; but by the aduise of Tlacastlee he vied a Ceremony for the effecting thereof, which was, that thole of Tescue should come forth armed against the Mexicans, where they should fight, and presently yeelde, which was an act and ceremony of warre, without any effusion of bloud on either fide. Thus the King of Mexico became foueraigne Lord of Tefenco, but he tooke not their King from them, but made him of his Privie Counfell; fo as they have alwaies maintained themselves in this manner vntill the time of Mosecuma the second, during whose raigne the Spaniards entred. Having subdued the Land and Citie of Teseuco, Mexico remained Lady and Multris of all the Lands and Cities about the Lake, where it is built. Izcoals having Results death, enloyed this prosperitie, and raigned twelve yeares, dyed, leaving the Realme which had 40

beene given him, much augmented by the valour and counfell of his Nephew Theselee. For almuch as the election of the new King, belonged to foure chiefe Electors, and to the of Mexico, cal. King of Toseneo, and the King of Tacubu, by especiall priviledge: Tlacaellee assembled these led Mategame, fix perfonages, as he that had the fourraigne authority, and having propounded the matter view the fift of that to them, they made choise of Moreguena, the first of that name, Nephew to the same Theories. same. Chap. 6. His election was very pleasing vnto them all, by teason whereof, they made most kelemne featls, and more flately then the former. Prefently after his election they consticted him to the Temple with a great traine, where before the dinine barth (as they call it) where there is continual tie, they let him in his royall throane, putting voon him his royall ornaments. Being there, the King drew blood from his eares and legs with a Giffons talons, which was the Sacrifice where- 52 in the distill delighted to be honoured. The Priests, Ancients, and Captaines, made their Ora-

Griffons ta.

tions, all congratuling his election. They were accustomed in their elections to make great Feaths and Dances, where they wasted many lights. In this Kings time the custome was brought

Bloody and die in, that the King should goe in perion to make warre in some Province, and bring Captines to utlish aufture folemnize the feath of his Coronation, and for the folemne Sacrifices of that day. For this caste King Motecuma went into the Province of Chalco, who had declared themselves his enemies: from whence (hauing fought valiantly) he brought a great number of Captines, whereof he did make a notable Sacrifice the day of his Coronation, although at that time he did not fubdue all the Prouince of Chales, being a verie warlike Nation. Manie came to this Coronation from diuers Prounces, as wal neere as faire off, to fee the feeft, at the which all commers were verie go bountifully entertained and clad, especially the poore, to whom they gaue new garments. For this cante they crought that day into the Citie, the Kings tributes, with a goodly order, which confifed a Souries to make Garments of all forts, in Cacao, Gold Silver, rich Fearings great burthens or Cotton, Carumbers, fun irie forts of Paites, many kindes or Sea uffr, and of the errih

CHAP.4.S.2. Wilde fortisude. Tlascalla, Tlacaellecs great spiris. Deuils Temple, 1015

warer, great flore of Fruits, and Venison without number, not reckoning an infinite number of Prelenes, which other Kings and Lords fent to the new King. All this Tribute marched in order according to the Provinces, and before them the Stewards and receivers, with divers markes and Enlignes, in very goodly order: fo as it was one of the goodlieft things of the feaft, to fee the entrie or the Pribate. The King being crowned, he implosed himfelfe in the conquelt of mamy Prountices, and for that he was both valiant and vertuous, he still increased more and niore, ving in all his affaires the counfell and industrie of his Generall Tlacaellee, whom he did al water loge and effeeme very much, as he had good reation. The warre wherein he was most troubled and of greatest difficultie, was that of the Province of Chalco, wherein there happened great matters, whereof one was very remarkeable; which was, that they of Chalcas, had taken a brother 10 of Morecumaes in the warres, whom they relolued to choole for their King, asking him verie curteoutly, if he would accept of this charge. He answered (after much importunitie, still perfifting therein) that of they ment plunely to choose him for their King , they should plant in the Market-place, a Tree or very high stake, on the top whereof, they should make a little scaffold, and meanes to mount voco it. The Chaleas supposing it had beene some ceremonie to

make himtelfe more apparant, presently effected it : then affembling all his Mexicans about the flake, he went to the top with a garland of flowers in his hand, speaking to his men in this mannet, O vallant Mexicans, thefe men will choose me for their King, but the gods will not permit, Horrible conthat to be a King I should commit any treason against my Countrie, but contrarinise, I will that you rage.

20 learne by me, that is beboneth ve rather to indure death, then to aide our enemies Saying these words, he cast himselse downe, and was broken in a thousand peeces, at which spectacle, the Chalcas had so great horror and despite, that presently they fell upon the Mexican and slew them all with their Lances, as men whom they held too proud and inexorable, flying, they had discribing hearts. It changed the night following, they heard two Owles making a mournfull cry, which they did interpret as an unfortunate figne, and a prefage of their neere destruction, as it succeeded : for King Moregams went against them in person with all his power, where he vanquished them, and ruined all their kingdome : and passing beyond the Mountaine Menade; the conquered Will even vnto the North Sea. Then returning towards the South Sea, he subdired many Provinces; fivas he became a mighty King: all by the helpe and counfell of Tlacaellee, who 10 in a mainer conquered all the Mexican Nation. Fer he held an opinion (the which was con-

firmed) that it was not beliconeful to 'conquer the Promince of Tinfanta, that the Markens Tinfanta a might have a frontier chemy, to keepe the youth of Mekkes in exercise and allarme : and that Mekes, as care they might hand numbers of Capetures to Sacrifice to their Idols, wherein they did wafte (as fight thate to Rome. beene (and) infinite numbers of men, which should be raken by force in the wars. The honor must be giuen to Moteguna, or to fpeak truly, to Tlacaller his Generall, for the good order and pollicy fetled in the Realme of Mexico as alfo for the Colinels and goodly enterprises, which they did execute: and likewise for the mimber of Judges and Magistrates, being as well ordered there, as in any Common-weale; yea, were it in the most flourishing of Europe. This King did also greater ly increase the Kings house, guing it great authoritie, and appointing many and fundry Offito cers, which served him with great pompe and ceremony. He was no less remarkable touching the denotion and fernice of his Idols, increasing the number of his Ministers, and inflituting new

ceremonies, whereunto he carried a great respect:

Hebuilt that great Temple dedicated to their god Paziliputili, whereof is fpoken in the o- Great Temple ther Booke. He did Sacrince at the dedication of this Temple, a great number of men, taken in built. fundry victories: finally, inioying his Empire in great prosperitie, he fell sicke, and died, having Deuillish deraigned twentie eight yeares, volike to his ficceffor Ticocco, who did not refemble him neither in valour, nor in good fortune.

The foure Deputies affembled in counfell, with the Lords of Tefonco and Tacuba, where Tla: How Ilucariles The foure Deputies attempted in countries, with the Lords of Petute and Account where the refused to be caelled was Prefidence in the election, where by all their voices Tlacaelled was chosen, as defer-King, and of to uing chischarge betrerthen any other. Yet herefifed it, perfwading them by pertinent rea the election fons, that they thould choose another, faying, that it was better, and more expedient to have and deedes of

another King, and he to be his infirmment and affiliant, as he had beene till then , and not Tiescis, Chapar to lay the whole burthen v pon him; for that he held himfelfe no leffe bound for the Common. weale, then if he wire King; feeming to him, though he were not King, yet in a manner, that he commended Kings fuffering him to carry cereaine markes, as a Tiers or ornament for the head, which belonged briefy to the milelues: as m'a Comedie he deferues most commendation that represents the personage that imports most. In recompence of his modesty, and for the reipect which the Mexican Electors bare him, they demanded of Tlacaellee ( that feeing he would not raigne) whom hee thought most he: Whereupon he gaue his voyce to a Sonne

60 of the decealed King, who was then very young, called Ticocio : but they replied, that his (houlders were very weake to beare to heatite a burthen. Tlacaellee answered that his was there to helpe lum to beare the burelien, as he had done to the deceafed : by meanes whereof, they tooke their resolution, and Treacte was chosen, to whom were done all the accultomed ceremonies.

No@hrils pier-

They pierced his nofthrils, and for an ornament put an Emerald therein: and for this reason. in the Mexican Bookes, this King is noted by his nofthrils pierced. Hee differed much from his Father and Predecessor, being noted for a coward, and not valiant. He went to make warrefor his Coronation, in a Prouince that had rebelled, where hee loft more of his owne men then hee tooke captines; yet he returned faying, that he brought the number of captines required for the Kingpoyloned Sacrifice of his Coronation, and to hee was crowned with great folemnitie. But the Mexicans discontented to haue a King so little disposed to warre, practifed to hasten his death by poison. For this cause he continued not about four eyeres in the Kingdome. But this losse was well tepaired by a Brother of the deceafed, who was also sonnerto great Mosseuma, called Azona ca, who was likewise chosen by the aduice of Tlacaellee, wherein hee happened better to

Of the death the deeds of feuench King

razed.

Now was Tlacaeller very old, who by reason of his age, was carried in a chaire vpon mens shoulders, to affift in counsell when businesse required. In the end he fell ficke, when as the King (who was not yet crowned) did visit him often, shedding many teares, seeming to loose in him his Father, and the Father of his Countrey. Tlacaellee did most affectionately recommend his children vnto him, especially the eldest, who had shewed himselfe valiant in the former warres. The King promifed to have regard vnto him, and the more to comfort the old man, in his prefence hee gaue him the charge and enfignes of Captaine Generall, with all the preheminences of his Father; wherewith the old man remained so well satisfied, as with this content he ended

The Mexicans made his Funerall as the Founder of that Empire, more sumptuous and state. 20 ly, then they had done to any of their former Kings. And presently after Axanca (to appeale the forrow which all the people of Mexico flewed for the death of their Captaine ) refolued to make the voyage necessary for his Coronation. He therefore led his Armie with great expedition into the Province of Tequantepes, two hundred leagues from Mexico, where he gave battell to a mighty Army, and an infinite number of men affembled together, as well out of that Prouince, as from their Neighbours, to oppose themselues against the Mexicans. The first of his Campe that advanced himselfe, to the combate was the King himselfe, defying his enemies, from whom he made show to flye when they charged him, vntill hee had drawne them into an Ambuscadoe, where many Souldiers lay hidden under straw, who suddenly issued forth, and they an which fled, turned head : fo as they of Tiquantepee remayned in the midft of them, whom they charged furiously, making a great slaughter of them : and following their victorie, they razed their Citie and Temple, punishing all their Neighbours rigorously. Then went they on farther, and without any flay, conquered to Guatales, the which is a Port at this day well knowns in the South Sea. Axagaca returned to Mezico with great and rich spoiles, where he was honourably crowned, with fumptuous and stately preparation of Sacrifices, Tributes, and other things, whither many came to see his Coronation. The Kings of Mexico received the Crowne from the hands of the King of Tefence, who had the preheminence. Hee made many other Enterprises, where he obtained great victories, being alwayes the first to leade the Armie, and to charge the enemie; by the which he purchased the name of a most valiant Captaine; and not content to 40 subsets that the fibble strangers, he also suppressed his Subjects which had rebelled, which never any of his Pre-

which they called Tlatelulco, whereas now Saint laques is. These being revolted, held a faction apart, and encreased and multiplyed much, refusing to acknowledge the Kings of Mexico, nor to yeeld them obedience. The King Axeyaca fent to aduise them, not to live divided, but being of one bloud, and one people, to joyne together, and acknowledge the King of Mexico: wherupon the Lord of Tlatelulco made an answer ful of fride and difdaine, defying the King of Mexico, to fingle combate with himfelfe : and prefently muftred his men, commanding some of them to hide themselves in the weeds of the Lake; and the 50 better to deceive the Mexicans, he commanded them to take the shapes of Ravens, Geele, and other Beafts, as Frogges , and fuch like , supposing by this meanes to surprize the Mexicans as they should passe by the wayes and cawfies of the Lake. Hauing knowledge of this defie, and of his Adversaries policie, he divided his Armie, giving a part to his Generall, the sonne of Thesaellee, commanding him to charge this Ambulcadoe, in the Lake; and hee with the reft of his people, by an unfrequented way, went and incamped before Tlatelules. Prefently he called him who had defied him, to performe his promife, and as the two Lords of Mexico, and Tlatelulco advanced, they commanded their Subjects not to mooue, vntill they had feene who should bee Conquerour, which was done, and prefently the two Lords encountred valuantly, where having fought long, in the end the Lord of Tlatelules was forced to turne his backe, being vnable to indure the furious charge of the King of Mexico. Those of Tlatelulco feeing their Captaine flye, fainted, and fled likewife, but the Mexicans following them at the heeles, charged them furiously; yet the Lord of Tlatelulco elcaped not the hands of Axapaca; for thinking to faue himselfe, hee fied to the top of the Temple, but Argaca followed him fo neere, as hee feized on him with

decessors euer could doe, or durst attempt. Wee have alreadie shewed how some seditions of

Mexico had divided themselves from that Common-weare, and built a Citie neere vnto them,

C H A P. 4. S. 2. Tlatelulco Frogs. Autzols conqueffs. Cuyoncon cunning Sorcerer. 1017

great force, and threw him from the top to the bottome, and after fet fire on the Temple, and

Whileft this paffed at Tratelules, the Mexican Generall was very hote in the revenee of those Thickies that pretended to defeat him by policie, and after hee had forced them to yeeld, and to cre for fired. mercy, the General faid he would not pardon them, vntill they had first performed the Offices of those figures they represented, and therefore hee would have them cry like Frogges and Rauens, every one according to the figure which he had undertaken, elfe they had no composition : which thing he did to mocke them with their owne policie. Feare and Necessitie bee perfect Teachers, fo as they did fing and cry with all the differences of voices that were commanded 10 them, to faue their lines, although they were much grieued at the sport their enemies made at them. They fay that voto this day, the Mexidans vie to jealt at the Tlatelulcans, which they beare impatiently, when they put them in minde of this finging and crying of bealts. King Acases tooke pleasure at this toone and this grace, and prefently after they returned to Mexico with great joy. This King was effectived for one of the best that find commanded in Mexico. Hee

Among the foure Electors that had power exchange whom they pleafed to be King, there was Of the deeds one endued with many pertections, named Aurad. This man was chosen by the reft, and this of Aurad the one endued with many pertections, named Assess. I his man was cnoten by the rett, and this cight king of election was very pleating to all the people to checkles that he was valuet, all held him coursists as a second space of the control of the c teous and affable to every man, which is one of the chiefe qualities required in them that com- The Picture

20 mand, to purchase love and respect. To celebrate the Feath of his Coronation , hee refolived to flory cals him make a Voyage, and to punth the pride of those of Quaralation, a very rich and plentifull Pro- Tifectuarti. nince; and at this day the chiefe of New Spame: They had robbed his Officers and Stewards, that Quexulation carried the Tribate to Mexica, and therewithall were rebelled. There was great difficultie to reduce this Nation trobedience, lying in such fort, as an arms of the Sea Ropt the Mexicans malfate : copalie the which Augol (with a ftrange device and industry) caused an Hand to be made in the water, of fagots, earth, and other matter; by meanes whereof, both hee and his men might paffe to the enemie; where giving them battell, he conquered them, and pumified them at his pleasure. Then returned he vato Chexico in triumph, and with great riches, to bee crowned Ring, according to their custome: Autod extended the limits of his Kingdome farre, by many

30 Conquests, enemants Guatimatas, which is three hundred teagues from Metrico. Hee was no lass liberall their value faid came in great abundance, heavenisforth of his Palace, gathering conether all the people into one place, then commanded he coming all the Tributes, which he dissides much first had head. To the poore he gaus Stuffestomake chem apparell, and moste, and whatbeare stuy had need of in great abundance, and shirigs of value, as Gold, Silner, lewels, and Reathers, were divided among the the Captaines, Sousilers, and Servants of his House according to every mans merit. This Matzel was likewise a great Politician, hee pulled downe the houses ill bulle, and built others very

It feemed voto him that the Citie of Morno had too little water, and that the Lake was 40 very muddle, and therefore hee refolued to let in a great course of water, which they of Cupeacan vied. For this cause hee called the chiefe man of the Citie vinto him, beeing a famous Sorcerer, having propounded his meaning vnto him: the Sorcerer withed him to bee well advised what he did, being a matter of great difficultie, and that he understood, if hee drew the River out of her ordinary courte, making it paffe to Mexico, hee would drowne the Citie. The King supposed these excuses were but to frustrate the effect of his Designe, being therefore in choler. he difmiffed him home, and a few dayes after he fent a Pronoft to Capacion, to take this Sorceper's who having understanding for what incent the Kings Officers came, he caused them to enter his house, and then he presented himselfe vnto them in the forme of a terrible Eagle, wherewith Famous Sor the Prouost and his companions being terrified, they returned without taking him. Auzal in-

censed herewith fent others, to whom he presented himselfe in forme of a furious Tigre, so as they durft not touch him. The third came, and they found him in the forme of a horrible Sergent, whereat they were much afraid. The King mooued the more with these doings, fent to tell them of Cayoacan, that if they brought not the Sorcerer bound voto him, hee would raze their Citie, For feare whereof, or whether it were of his owne free will, or being forced by the people, he fuffered himfelfe to be led to the King, who preferrly caused him to bee strangled, and then then did he put his resolution in practice, forcing a channell whereby the water mighe paffe to Mexico, whereby he brought a great current of water into the Lake, which they brought with great Ceremonies and Superfittions, having Priefts casting Incense along the bankes . others facrificed Quiles, and with the bloud of them sprinkled the channel bankes, others soun-

60 ding of Cornets, accompanied the water with their Musicke. One of the chiefe went attired in a habit like to their Goddeffe of the water, and all faluted her, faying, that the was welcome. All which things are painted in the Annalls of Maxico: which Booke is now at Rome Mexicos And in the holy Library, or Vatican, where a Father of our Company, that was come from Mexico, nalls in the did fee it, and other Histories, the which he did expound to the Keeper of his Holineffe Library, Varican,

bappie Landata whom the Creater hashysing a Prince see from Eider to support shee, which seed to be proposed to the proposed to the seed t new man new prima and manage is and them negreth will be up, that he which is, since pair has night years and conveyage in manage is and them negreth will be up, that he which is, since pair has night is, prove house to provide them, will not now deep these heigerature gifts; leving he bette given that for greater shoring a which I suffiches to a motor memory persons. King Advances we was extract that the likewate which he has a state of the contract to the likewate which he had not the contract to the likewate which he had not the contract to the likewate which he will have a state of the contract to the likewate which he will have a state of the likewate which he will be a state of the contract to the likewate which he was for including a state of the likewate which he was for including a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been also been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which had not been a state of the likewate which ha being enges, they tay see wan increasing one encountries untract artweet some, nee could not looke, being questoone with teater, which joy and concert doe retailly cante, as igneed great humility. In the smill-ping come to himself, is he fanke briefly. I man too blank, good King of Sancom Teleuco, of I dad not know, that most those half fings, water me, presented of meers farome, a pleasing natione.

CHAP. 4 S. 3. Oration to Motocuma His doneflical political polemical behaviour 1019

ACCURACY I can see a symmetry was recognificant, with the processing state of five was a fairly about the five was fairly about the five was fairly about the five was fairly fairly fairly fairly fairly fairly for grant impair chairs of the leaft fulficiant; and in truth I flad my fairly fairly for somewhat of scherge of fer great impaired and the see and the second of the fairly fairl

He that in his election made fuch frewe of humility and mildnesse, feeing himselfe King; bes How Merge can prefently to discouer his aspiring thoughts. The first was, her commanded that no plebeian ma ordered gan presently to the dot in the printing starting and presently to the starting the fertile of thould ferue in his house, nor beare any Royal Office, as his Predependers had wheel til them; blaming the fertile of his house, and them that would be fecuted by men of bale condition, commanding threall the noble and most famous men of his Realme should line within his Palace, and exercise the Offices of his Court, and made for his Houfe, Whereunto an old man of great suctionate (who had formine this his Schoolernafer for constion, poled himfelfe, adming him, to be exceed swhethe did, and not to thrush himfelfe sate the danger ches. 1. of a great inconcenience, an iterataine himself e from the longer and common people, for since Price before 30 food of our clooke, him in the face, item gatemble we foresteed by himself and were the talk it was his refolution, and that he would not allow the Piebeians thus to goe mingled among the Salaka and the since the salaka and t Nobles, as they had done, laying, that the libraire the wild, was according to their condition; to as the Kings got no reputation, and thus he continued friend in his refolution. Her prefently

commanded his Counsell to difmile all the Plate and from which charges and offices as well those of his Houshold as of his Court, and to promide Khigher, the which was done. After hee went in perion to an entreprise necessary for his Coronacion. At these time a Prouince lying farre off towards the North Ocean, was atualted from the Crowing whither heled the flower of his peop ple, well appointed. There he watred with such valour and dexteritie, that in the end hee libdued all the Prouince, and punished the Rebels feverely, returning with a great number of 40 Capsines for the Sacrifices, and many beher fpoyles. All the Cities made him folernine receptions at his setume, and the Lords thereof gase him water to walk, performing the biffices of lea-uants, a king now the day any of his Paedecelors. Social was the feare said refiged they bare him. In Maries, they made the Featle of his Cornotton with great preparations of Danes, Comedia, Banquets, Lighes, and other inventions for many dayes: And there eams fo great a wealth of

Tributes from all his Countreyes, that firingers vinknowne came to Mexico, and their very e-

nemies reforted in great numbers difguifed to fee thefe Feafts, as those of Tlafcalla, and Mechena-

can: the which Motoguna having discourred, he commanded shey should be lodged and gently intreated, and honoured as his owne person. He also made them goodly Galleries like vnto his owne, where they might fee and behold the Feafts. So they entred by night to those Feafts, as So the King himfelfe, making their Sports and Maskes. And for that I have made mention of thefe Proninces, it shall not be from the purpose to understand, that the inhabitants of Mechanican, Tlafcalla, and Tapeaca, would never yeekl to the Mexicans, but did alwayes fight valiantly against them; yea, sometimes the Mechevacans did vanquish the Mexicans, as also those of Taneaca did. In which place, the Marquelle Don Ferrand Cores, after that hee and the Spaniards were expelled Mexico, precended to build their first Citie, the which hee called (as I well remember) Segmedela Frontiere: But this peopling continued little: for having afterwards reconmember) Segure dela Frontiere: But this peopling contraued little; for naung afterwards recon-quered Mexico, all the Spaniards went to inhabite there. To quelude, those of Tapasea, Tlafealla, Frontiere. and Mechanican, have been alwayes enemies to the Mexicant; although Motecume faid vito Corres, that heedid purpotely forbears to subdue them; to have occasion to exercise his men of Of the bebe

so warre, and to take numbers of captines. . . warre, and to take numbers of capturer.

This King laboured to be erefected, year, to be worthipped as a God. No Plebeian might looke greatestiff of him in the face; if he did, he was pussified with death; he did never lie his foot on the ground, but determine the history of the did not be was alwayes carried on the shoulders of Noblemen; and if he lighted, they laid rich Tapistrie His proud whereon hee did goe, When hee made any Voyage, hee and the Moblemen went as it were flate.

and greatest Successor of all the Mexicans.

taking great delight to understand this Booke, which before hee could never comprehend. Finally, the water was brought to Mexico, but it came in fuch abundance, that it had welneere drowned the Citie, as was foretold : and in effect it did ruine a great part thereof, but is was presently presented by the industry of Ameel, who caused an after to bee made to draw forth the water : by meanes whereof hee repayred the buildings that were fallen , with an exquifite works, being before but poore Cottages. Thus he left the Citie invironed with water, like another Venice, and very well built : he reigned eleuen yeeres, and ended with the last

of the Election of great M Q T 2 Z V M A , the last King of Mexico : bis pampe and manner of government, produgious fore-mannings, of his raine, and the Spanish Il with marine a Conquett, og beit telt en Beild som beit pnom A

182 Hen the Speniards entred New Spains deing in the posteros our Lord 1529. Mileon. mes focund of that name, was the laft King of the Mexiconty Lulay the laft, although they of Mexico, after his death, choic another King, yea, in the his of the fine at 40 forume, whom they declared an enemy to his Countrey, as who shall fee horeafter. But he that succeeded him, and he that fell into the hands of the Marquess delta, had but the names and titles of Kings, for than the Kingdoms was in a manner all yeelded to the Spaniards fo as with reason we account Moregame for ebelaft King, and so her bame to the penod of the Mexican power and greatueffe, which is adminable became happened among Barbariane. For this cause, and for that this was the season, that God had chosen por curale visto them the showledge of his Gospell, and the Kingdome of leas Christ, I will selate more as large the Acht of Motecuma then of the reft.

Before he came to be King, hen was by disposition, very gramand stayed, and spake little fo as when he gauchis opinion imake pring. Countell, whereas he utilifed, him speccies and dif. 30 courses made energy one coadmine bits, for as exemption he as an fear educal sespected. The revived himfelfe visually success Chappells, apposinged for him in the Temple of principutals, where they faid their Idoll finder which hims, sandow this cauda her was held wary in ligitum and decease; the their perfections, then, being most noble and an great courage this is. Stion was floor and each; is a man vpon whom; all mens eyes were fixed, as worthy, of fuch a charge? Hanne intelligence of this election, he hid himselfe in this Chappelliof the Temple, we too hoe it were by judgement (apprehending to beauty and hard a burthen) as to gondruetuch a people, or rather, as I beleeue, through hypocrifie, to flew that hee defired not Empery : In the end they found him. leading him to the place of Councell, whither shey accompanied him with all possible joy he matched with fuch a grantey, as they all faid the name of Margume. agreed very well with 40 his nature, which is as much college as an angry Lord. The Electrica dial him great reserved; giting him notice, that her was cholen King : from thence her was led before the hearth of their Gods, to give Incense, where he offered Secretices in drawing blood from his exres, and the caloes of his legs, according to their custome. They attyred him with the Royall ornaments, and pierced the griffle of his nofthrils, changing thereat a rich Emerald, a barbacour and croublous cuflome : but the delire of rule, made all pome light and cafe. Being feated in his Throne, here me audience to the Orations and Speeches that were made unto him, which according vato their custome were eloquent and artificiall.

The first was pronounced by the King of Tescae, which being presented, for thet it was King of Tokes

lately delinered, and very worthy to bee heard, I will fet it downe word by word, and thus hee 30 co Oration and : The convergence and within of supers upon the pickines is a Afficient intrinsace (male state) young many of the happengle the Regime land receives, as well deferming to be commanded by thee, as Mexican gran. Also for the general application plants all day from some means thereof, Whereve they have great vagion, edit.

The convergence of the chief of the general application of the Empire of Mexican debt dereads fo favor extends to fells, that to general appendix as the day. to beare so beanic a burthen, it requires no lesse dexteritie and conrage, then that which is resident in thy Their opinions. It was not became a diversion, it requires no sign exciterius quae converge, soom reas written is in 19 cost opinions. Firme and valuant bears, now of sife wislame and indepeneets them there. If see and how plants, there of Good and, firme and clearly this (rise, fessing shee bash gaven vinder limiting to a choose what was fit. For who will not believe that a Frince, who before his Reigne had purposed the wine Vaults of Homen, found not there is now obtaine to be prince; how to the control to the control of the single months of the single months with t The manufact within two man stanges consumers y payments more to y serve them, y comes are y me y to the manufact of greatest need? Whe will not performe bombe the Mexican Empire u come to the height of their Sonereignite, feeing the Lord of things created bath imported to great greetyme to thee a that with thy looks outly thou breadeft admiration in them that beheld thee? Reject then, O

in a Parketin compassed in for the nonce, and the rest of the people went without the Parket ensironing it in on cuery fide, hee neuer pitt on's garment ewice, nor did eate or drinke in one wellest or dish about once alternat be new gaining to his accordance that which had once found

His crnelrie a true effect of

the Doude

foretellings.

mento bring

eredir, by his

euident) in

God fore-

warneth

His liberalide. him : lowesommonly they were rich add famptuons. Her was very exercial to have his haves this him stored without without the from any warrs, thee fained fonetimes to glocald take this pleasure, shen would be difguise himselfe, to see if his people (supposing hee were ablem) would omit any thing of the feaft or reception : If there were any excelled defect, fice theridid ponath it rigoroutly. And also to differ he how his Ministers did execute their Offices, het offen possifi is processory. Annual to uncertainty to the fideling promoting them to detri-juitice, with guideling either, offering grifts and preferred to the fideling, promoting them to detri-juitice, with guideling of the processor profession with the processor of they Noblemen, or his Kimimen; year his owne Brethren. Hee was livele connerfamewith his people, and feldome feene, very ring himfelfe most commonly to care for the government of his Realme. Besides that, he was a great lufticier and very Noble, he was very valuant and happy, by meanes whereof, her obtayined great victories, and came to this greathedle, as is written in the Spande Listories, whereon it feemes needleffe to write more. I will onely have a care bereafter to write what the Books and Hiftories of the Autier make mention of the which the San wift Writers have not objected, having not fufficiently understood the fecrets of this Countries. the which are things very worthy to be knowne, as we shall see hereafter.

the which are things very worten, to obtain the same and the profession of the same and the pure very in the chanced they deferent uning retigned many yeers in great profession, and the pure very in his connects as the confiss himselfe to be ferred and feared, year to be worthingped as a Good, that the Almighty Lord began to chaftice him, and also to admonish him, suffering even the very Devils whom helworthipped, to tell him there heavy tydings of the rune of his Kingdome, and to tor-ment him by Vifions, which had neuer beene seene; wherewith hee remayned to melancholy

and troubled, as he was void of judgement.

Querrassall, " The Idolkof those of Cholole, which they called Querrassalt, declared, that a firange peoplecame to posselle his Kingdomes. The King of Tefenes (who was agreat Magitian, and had conference with the Deuill) came one day at an extraordinary houre to vifit Morecuma, affusing him that his Gods had toldbim, that there were great loffes preparing for him, and for his whole Resime : many Witches and Sorgerers went and declered as much, amongst which there was one, did very particulary foretel them what should happen and as hee was with him hee told him that the pulles of his feete anti hands failed him. Metepuna troubled with their 30 newes, commanded all those Sorgerers to be apprehended : but they wimifhed prefently in the Prion, wherewith he graw into such a rage, that he might not kill them; as her put their wites and children to death, define ying their kilden and Eamlies. Seeing himselfe importuned and troubled with thefe advertilements, hee lought to appeale the anger of his Gods : and for that taule hee laboured to bring a huge flone, thereon to make great Sacrifices : For the effecting whereof hee lent a great number of people with Engiris and Infiroments to bring it : which they could by no meanes moone, although (being oblimate) they had broken many Infiroments. them to repen. But as they strong still to raise it, they heard a voyce joyning to the stone, which faid they laboutance: the De ted in vaine, and that they should not raise it, for that the Lord of things created would no more 40 uille fill them infer those stages to be dope there. More summer winder standing this; commanded the Secrifice perfidious and to be performed in that place, and they lay the voyce spake againe; Hame I not told you, that it is cruell realou. not the pleasure of the Lord of things created, that it should bee done? and that you may well know fies, supertious that it is fo, I will suffer my felfe to becreausported a little; then after jon fhall nat moone mee. fhits, and to Which happened fo indeed, for prefently they carried it a small distance with great facilitie; then after wards they could not moone it, till that after many Prayers, it suffered it felfe to bee dinining, fee. transported to the entry of the Citie of Mexico, where fuddenly it fell into the Lake, where feeking for it, they could not find it, but it was afterwards found in the fame place from whence king to prooue his dininity(al they had remooned it, wherewith they remayned amazed and confounded.

At the same time there appeared in the Element a great flame of fire, very bright, in the forme of a Pyramide, which begame to appeare at midnight, and went ftill mounting writh the Sonne riling in the morning, where it flayed at the South, and then vanished away. It shewed it lets him know felfe in this fort the space of a whole yeere, and euer as it appeared the people cast forth great he will do to cryes as they were accustomed, beleeuing it was a prefage of great misfortune. It happened also that fire tooke the Temple, when as no body was within it, nor neere vinto it, neyther did there fall any lightning or thunders whereupon the Guards crying out, a number of people ranne Product of fall any lightning orthunder; whereupone are constrained; and they lay the fire feemed Dushin Ma. with water, but nothing could helps, for an it was all confirmed; and they lay the fire feemed Dushin Ma. with water has the cafe toon it. to come forth of pieces of timber, which kindled more by the water that was call upon it, There was a Comet seene in the day time, minning from the West to the East, casting an infinite number of sparkles , and they say the forme was like to a long tayle , having 60

The great Lake betwixt Maxion and Tesenco, without any minde, earthquake, or any other apparant figur, began fulsinly to swell, and the wants great in such fore as all the buildings necre vato it fell downe tothe ground. They fay at that time they heard many voices, as of a

woman in paine, which faid fometimes, O my children, the time of your destruction in come: and mber whiles it laid, O my chicaren, whither foal I carry you that you perift me peterly? There appeared likewife many Monfters with two heads, which being carried before the King, fudainly Monfters. vanished. There were two that exceeded all other Montkers, being very strange; the one was, the Fithers of the Lake tooke a Bird as bigge as a Crane; and of the same colour, but of a ftrange and volcene forme. They carried it to Minejamia, who at that time was in the pallace of reares and mourning, which was all hanged with blacke; for as he had many Pallaces for his recreation to had he also others for times of affliction, where with he was then heavily charged and tormented, by reason of the threatnings his gods had given him by these forrowfull adveron tifements. The Fithers came about noorid tetting this Bird before him, which had on the top

of his head a thing bright and transparent, in forme of a Looking-glaffe, wherein he did behold a warhke Nation comming from the Balt, armed, figheing, and killing. He called his Diumes and Aftronomers (whereof there was a great number) who having feene thefe things, and not able to yeelde any reason of what was demanded of them, the Bird wanished away, to as in was never more force : whereupon Motopums remained very heavy and forrowfull. The other which happened, was a Laborer, who had the report of a very honesteman; he came write him; telling him, that being the day before at his worke, a great Eagle flew towards him; and cooks him vp in his talents, without horeing him; carrying him atto a certaine Caue, where it lefe him; The Eagle pronouncing these words, Mask mights Lind; I have brought him whom then 30 haft commanded me : This Indian Laborer looked abone on every fide, to whom he fpike, but he faw no man. Then he heard a voyer which faid water him ; Dooft then not know this man. whom thou feet lying you the ground and looking therson, herperceized a mai to lye very heavy affeepe, with royall entignes, flowers in his hand, and a flaffe of perfumes burning, as

great King Moteçuma, and answered presently : Great Land, this refembles our King Motezuma. The voice laid againe, Thou sepest true, behold what he it, and how hee lies afterpe, carelesse of the great miseries and afficitions prepared for him. Is is now time that he pay the great number of offinces lbalt then finde him without feeling. The poore laborer dust rest approach neers him , not doe as

they are accustomed to vie in that Country : whom the Labourer behalding, knew it was the

jout tom joue one suscess freing. I so poole second uses one approach terrer at in, section in the was commanded, for the great fears that yill had of ellipseling. But the voice fail , Place so four for I am miltout comparifor greater than the King Mone drifting ham, and defined being and they what I command then. Wheneyou the Lichouse touchet the fall of a performed out of the King. hand, and put it burning to his note, but he mound thought the westerny feeling. This done the voice faid voto him, that feeing he had found the King for Sleepierthe should goe awake him, and tell him what he had feene. Then the Eagle by the fame commandement, tooke the man in hs talents, and fet him in the same place where he found him , and for accomplishment of that which he had fooken, he came to advertise him. They fay, that Motograms looking on his face. 40 found that he was burnt, the which he had not felt till then; wherewith he continued excee-

ding heavie and troubled.

In the foureteenth years of the raigne of Motegame, which was in the years of our Lord Of the news 1517. there appeared in the North Seas, Shippes, and men landing, whereat the Subjects of Mosesumare-Motecume wondred much, and desirous to learne, and to be better facisfied what they were, Spaniards artithey went abourd in their Canoes, carrying many refreshings of meases and stuffes to make ualinhis Coun apparrell, vpon colour to fell them. The Spaniards received them into their Shippes, and in ex- try, and of the change of their victuals and fluffes, which were acceptable vnto them , they gave them chaines Ambassage he of falle Stones, red, blew, greene, and yellow, which the Indians imagined to be precious stones. fint them, The Spaniard, informing themfelues, who was their King, and of his great power, difmifed to them, willing them to carry those Stones anto their Lord, saying, that for that time they could not goe to him, but they would prefently returne and vifite him. Those of the coast went pre-

fently to Mexico with this melfage, carrying the representation of what they had seene, pain- Relation of ted on a cloath, both of the Shippes, Men, and Stones which they had given them. King Mote- writingby Pie came remained very penfine with this medage, commanding them not to reveale it to any one. Autes. The day following, he affembled his Counfell, and having thewed them the painted cloathes and the Chaines, he confulted what was to be done; where it was refolued to let good watches voonall the Sea coafts, to give prefent addertifement to the King of what they should discover, The yeare following, which was in the beginning of the yeare 1518. they discovered a Flecte at Sea, in the which was the Marquise of Valle Don Fernande Cortes, with his companions,

newes which much troubled Motecuma, and conferring with his Counsell, they all faid that without doubt, their great and auncient Lord Queztzaleoult was come, who had faid, that he Effects of full would returne from the East, whither he was gone. The Indians held opinion, that a great perfluious le Prince had in times past left them, and promifed to returne. Of the beginning and ground of gends, which opinion shall be spoken in another place. They therefore sent five principali Amhasadors

then Christian held the Country in his name as his Lieutenant, that he knew well it was the Toulein which had beene promifed them many yeares fince, who should return againe voto them. And therethese begin-

with rich presents, to congratulate his comming, saying, they knew well that their great Lord Queetxascoals was come, and that his servant Mosecomes sent to visite him for so he accounted himselfe. The Spaniards understood this message by the meanes of Marina, an Indian woman whom they brought with them which understood the Mexican tongue. Fernande de Cartes findivine worthip ding this a good occasion for his entry, commanded to decke his Chamber richly, and being fee. agreeing more in great state and pompe, he caused the Ambassadors to enter; who omitted no shewes of lumiliatie, but to worthip him as their god. They delivered their charge, faying, that his fernant Motecuma fent to visit him, and that he

> fore they brought him fuch Garments as he was wont to weare, when he did converse among ft them, befeeching him to accept willingly of them, offering him many prefents of great value. Corres receiving the prefents, answered, that he was the same they spake of, wherewith they were greatly farisfied, freing themselves to be curteously received and intreated by him. To conchude, the day after this Ambassage, all the Captaines and Commanders of the Fleete, came vnto the Admirall, where understanding the matter, and that this Realme of Motecume was mighty. and rich ; it feemed fit to gaine the reputation of braue and valiant men among this people, and that by this meanes (although they were few) they should be feared and received into Mexica. To this end they dicharged all their Artillery from their Shippes, which being a thing the Indian's had neuer heard, they were amazed, as if heaven had fallen upon them. Then the Span as mards beganne to defiethem to fight with them : but the Indians not daring to hazard themfelues, they did beate them and intreate them ill, shewing their Swords, Lances, Pertuisans, and other armes, wherewith they did terrifie them much. The poore Indians were by reason here-

of fo fearefull and amazed, as they changed their opinion, faving, that their Lord Topilein came. not in this troupe, but they were fome gods (their enemies) came to destroy them. When as the Ambaffadors returned to Mexico, Moreguma was in the house of audience; but before he would heare them, this miferable mancommanded a great number of men to be facrificed in his presence, and with their bloud to sprinkle the Ambassadors (supposing by this ceremony) which they were accustomed to doe in solemne Ambassages) to receive a good answer. But understanding the report and information of the manner of their Ships, Men, and Armes, he ftood per- 30 plexed and confounded : then taking counfell thereon, he found no better meanes, then to labor to flop the entry of these strangers, by Conjurations and Magicke Arts. They had accustomed often to vie this meanes, having great conference with the Deuill, by whose helpe they some-times obtained strange effects. They therefore assembled together all the Sorcerers, Magicians, and Inchanters, who being persweated by Morneums, they tooke it in charge to force this peo-Procean failts, ple to returne vnto their Country, For this confideration, they went to a certaine place which they thought fit for the inuocation of their Douils, and practifing their Arts (a thing worthy of confideration ) They wrought all they could; but feeing nothing could prevaile against the Chri-Stiess, they went to the King, telling him that they were more then men, for that nothing might hart them, notwithstanding, all their Conjurations and Inchantments. Then Moteca- 40 me aduled him of another policie, that faining to be very well contented with their comming, he commanded all his Countries to serve these calestiall gods that were come into his Land. The whole people was in great heatineffe and amazement, and often newes came that the Spaniards inquired for the King, of his manner of life, of his house and meanes. He was exceedingly vexed herewith : some of the people and other Negromanciers admised him to hide himselfe, offering to place him whereas no creature should ever finde him. This feemed base vnto him, and therefore he resolved to attend them, although it were dying. In the end he left his Houses and royali Prilaces to lodge in others, leaving them for these gods

I pretend not to intreate of the acts and deedes of the Spaniards, who conquered New Spaine, 50 nor the strange adventures which happened vnto them, nor of the courage and invincible valour of their Captaine Don Fernando Cortes : for that there are many Histories and Relations thereof, as those which Fernande Corses himselfe did write to the Emperour Charles the fift, although they be in a plaine stile, and farre from arrogancy, the which doe gine a sufficient testimony of what did passe, wherein he was worthy of eternall memory, but onely to accomplish my intention: Tam to relate what the Indians report of this action, the which hath not to this day beene written in our vulgar tongue. Moteçuma therefore, having notice of this Captains victories, that he advanced for his conquest, that he was confederate and loyned with them of Tlafcalls, his capitall enemies, and that he had feuerely punished them of Cholola his friends, he studied how to deceine him, or elfe to try him in fending a principall man vnto him, attyred with the lake ornaments and royall entignes, the which should take voon him to be Motecuma, which fiction being discourred to the Marquise by them of Tlascalla (who did accompany him) he tent him backe, after a milde and genule reprehension, in feeking so to deceive him: whereupon Motograme was to confounded, that for the feare thereof he returned to his first imaginations

## CHAP.4.S.3. Cortes entertained at Mexico. Spaniards perfidiently cruell; 1023

and practiles, to force the Christians to retire, by the innocation of Conjurers and Witches. And therfore he affembled a greater number then before, threatning them, that if they returned with out effecting what he had given them in charge, not any one should escape, whereanto they all promised to obey. And for this cause, all the Deulis officers went to the way of Charles, by the Trecalignes a which the Spaniards (hould passe, when mounting to the top of a hill, Tozcalipaca, one of their Denill god. principall gods, appeared vinto them, as comming from the Speniards campe, in the habit of Chalcas, who had his paps bound about eight fold with a cord of reedes, he came like a man befide himfelfe, out of his wits, and drunke with rage and furie. Being come to this troupe of Witches and Conjurers, he ftayed, and fpake to them in great choller, Why come you bither? what dorb Mo-

10 tecuma pretend to doe by your meaner? He had admifed himfelfe too late for it is now determined, that his Kingdome and humon [hall be taken from him, with all that he polififeth, for purobaneire of the pred tyramines he hash committed against his Subieths, having governed not like a Lord, but this a traition and syrant. The Inchanters and Conjurers hearing there words, knew it was their idolf, and humbling themselues before him, they presently built him an Altar of Stone in the same place, conering it with flowers which they gathered thereabouts, but he contrariwife, making no account of these things, began againe to chide them, faying ! White come jim bither to doe, O je traitom; ! Resurve presently and behold Mexico, that you may understand what shall become thereof. And they fay, that returning towards Mexico to behold it, they did fee it flaming on fire. Then the Des nill vanished away, and they not daring to passe any farther, game notice thereof to Motez.na

20 m4, whereat he remained long without speaking, looking heanily on the ground; then he faid, What shall we doe if god, and our friends it ease we, and contrarriss so, they being and faister our occurse?

I am now results, and we cought at 10 results in this point, that happen what may, we must not style
user bide our select. On some any segre of courses sight. I easely partie to appeal and informs, who bean entitle secret bands to defend themselects. Having spoken this, he held his peace, being transported into an extaite. In the end, the Marquelle approaching to Mexico, Moterama refolued to make of necessity a vertue, going three or foure leagues out of the Chie to receipe him with a great maiesty, carried upon the shoulders of foure Noblemen, under a rich Canapy of Gold and Feathers. When they met, Motezams descended, and they fainted one another very curteously. Don Fernando Cortes faid vinco him, that he should not care for any thing, and that he came not

20 to take away his Realme, nor to diminish his authority. Motezame lodged Corter, and his companions in his royall Pallace, the which was very fately, and he himselfe lodged in other priuate houses. This night the Souldiers for ioy discharged their Artillery, wherewith the Indians were much troubled, being vnaccuttomed to heare fuch Musicke. The day following, Corres caused Motezama and all the Nobles of his Court to affemble in a great Hall, where being set in a high Chaire, he laid vnto them, that he was seruant to a great Prince, who had fent them into these Countries to doe good workes, and that having found them of Tlafalle to be his friends (who complained of wrongs and greenances done wrote them daily by them of Mexico)he would Good fibing vnderstand which of them was in the blame, and reconcile them, that hereafter they might no in troub more afflict and warre one against another; and in the meane time, he and his breehren (which

40 Were the Spaniards) would remaine still there without hurting them : bur contrariwise, they would helpe them all they could. He laboured to make them all understand this discourse, whing his Interpreters and truchmen. The which being understood by the King and the other Mexican Lords, they were wonderfully well facisfied, and shewed great signes of lone to Cortes and his company, So it 15, that by some occasions, many complaints, griefes, and lealousies grew on either file. The which Cortes finding, & that the Indians mindes began to be diffracted from them, he thought it necessary to assure himselfe, in laying hand voon King Motecume, who was seized on, and his legges fettered. Truely this act was ftrange vnto all men, and like vnto that other of his, to have burnt his Shippes, and thut himfelfe in the midft of his enemies, there to vanquish frange ator to dye. The mischiefe was, that by reason of the vnexpected arrivall of Pamphilo Naruaes tempts. at the true croffe, drawing the Country into mutiny, Correr was forced to absent himselfe from

Mexico, and to leave poore Mateguma in the hands of his companions, who wanted different nor had not moderation like vnto him : fo as they grew to that diffention, as there was no meanes to pacifie it.

When as Cortes was absent from Mexico, he that remayned his Lieutenant, resolved to pu- Of the death nish the Mexicans severely, causing a great number of the Nobilitie to be staine at a maske, which of Mercuna, they made in the Palace, the which did so farre exceed, as all the people mutined , and in a fue and the Spanithey made in the Palace, the which did to tarre exceed, as all the people intuitied, and the partial rious rage, tooke Armes to be reuenged and to kill the Spaniards. They therefore belieged them out of Mexica, in the Palace, prelling them fo neere, that all the burt the Spaniards could doe them with their chap.a6. Artillerie and Crosse-bowes, might not terrifie them, not force them to retyre from their enter-60 prife, where they continued many dayes, flopping their victuals, not fuffering any one to enter

or issue forth. They did fight with stones, and cast Darts after their manner, with a kind of Lances like vnto Arrowes, in the which there are foure or fixe very sharpe Rasors, the which are fuch (as the Hiltories report) that in these warres, an Indian with one blow of these Ralors, almost cut off the necke of a Horse, and as they did one day fight with this resolution and furie,

the Spaniarde to make them ceale, shewed forth Mategume, with an other of the chiefe Lords of Mexico, vpon the top of a plat-forme of the house, coursed with the Targets of two Sculdiers that were with them. The Mexicans feeing their Lord Moreguna, flayed with great alence, Then Macouna cauled the Lord to adulic them to pacific themselves, and not to warte against the Spaniards, feeing that (he being a prifoner) it could little profit him. The which being vaderithood by a yong man, called Queen tempe, whom they now refolged to make their King, her spake with a loudwoyce to Moteguma, willing him to retyre like a Villaine, that seeing he had beene such a Coward, as to fuller himfelfe to bee taken , they were no more bound to obey him, but rather should punula him as he descrued, calling him Woman for the more reproach, and then he began to draw his Bowe and to shoot at him, and the people began to cast stones at him, and 10 to continue their combate. Many fay that Motecuma was then burt with a flone, whereof her dyed. The Indians of Mexico affirme the contrarie, and that hee dyed as I will thew hereafter. Alsaro, and the reft of the Spaniards feeing themselves thus preffed, game intelligence to Captaine Corres, of the great danger they were in : who having with an admirable dexteritie and valour, given order to Narvaer affaires, and affembled the greatest part of his men, heeretumed with all speed to succour them of Mexico, where observing the time the Indians reft (for it was their cultonie in warre, to reff enery fourth day) Hee one day advanced with great policy and courage, fo as both he and his men entred the Palace, where as the Spaniar de had fortified themfelues : they then thewed great fignes of loy , in discharging their Artillerie. But as the Mexicans fury increased (being out of hope to defend themselves) Cortes resolved to passe away se. 20 cretly in the night without bruit. Having therefore made Bridges to palle two great and dangerous passages, about mid-night they issued forth as secretly as they could, the greatest part of his

people having passed the first bridge, they were discovered by an Indian woman before they

could palle the second, who cryed out their enemies fled, at the which voyce all the people ranne together with a horrible furie : fo as in passing the second bridge, they were so charged and purfied, as there remay ned aboue three hundred men flaine and hurt in one place; where at this day

there is a small Hermitage, which they viproperly call of Mariyrs. Many Spaniards ( to pre-

ferue the gold and jewels which they had gotten) perished, and others staying to carry it away,

were taken by the Mexicans, and cruelly facrificed to their Idols. The Mexicans found King

Motecome dead, and wounded as they fay with Poniards, and they hold opinion that that to night the Spaniards flue him with other Noblemen. The Marqueffe in his Relation sent to the Emperor, writes the contrary, and that the Mexicans killed him that night with a fonne of Me-

reft in warre.

Succession of fuperstition. Royall cou-

hearts. Quid. non mortalis. pectora cont

tecuma, which he led with him among it other Noblemen, faying, that all the treasure of gold, flones, and filmes, fell into the Lake and was never more feene. But how foener, Mstecume dyed miserably, and payed his deserts to the sust indgement of our Lord of Heaten for his pride and tyrannie; his body falling into the stades; power, they would make him no Obsequies of a King, no not of an ordinarie person, but cast it away in great disdaine and rage. A seruant of his having pitie of this Kings miferie (who before had beene feared and worshipped as a God) made a fire thereof, and put the alhes in a contemptible place. Returning to the Spaniards that escaped, they were greatly tyred and turmoyled, the Indians following them two or three dayes very refo- 40 lutely, giving them no time of reft, being so distressed for victuals, as a few graines of Mays were divided amongst them for their meate. The Relations both of the Spaniards and Indians agree, that God delivered them here miraculously, the Virgin Mary defending them on a little Hill, You here hear whereat this day three leagues from Mexico, there is a Church built in remembrance thereof. a Issuit. Gold called our Lady of succour. They retyred to their ancient friends of Tlafcalla, whence (by their aide, and the valour and policy of Cortes) they returned afterwards to make war against Mexico, by Water and Land, with an invention of Brigantines, which they put into the Lake, where after many compats, and about threefcore dangerous battailes, they conquered Mexico, on Saint Huppolines day, the 13. of August, 1521. The last King of the Mexicans (hauing obstinately maintayned the warres) was in the end taken in a great Canoe, whereinto hee fled, who being 50 brought with some other of the chiefest Noblemen before Fernando Cortes, this petie King with mes that for the strange close the strange course to the strange course to the strange course, that perce king with the strange colorist and courage, of awaing his algert, came never to Cortes, and faid write him, wrought mits. Further himself, the strange course from t eles in all the but to give thee this dagger tokill me therewith. Cortes ani wered, that he would not kill him, nei-Spanish indies, ther was it his intention to hurt them: but their obstinate folly was guitte of all the milerie and and full doth afflictions they had fuffered, neither were they ignorant how often he had required peace and aar Samts amicrons they had infered, neither were they ignorant new often he had required peace and a-firing, and in mitte at their hands. Hee then commanded them to be intreated curteously. Many strange and European pil. admirable things chanced in this Conquest of Mexico : for I neither hold it for an vitruth, nor gr miges, and an addition, which many write, that God favoured the Spaniards by many miracles. Purgatorie vi- It is most certaine by the Relations of many, and by the Histories which are written, that in 60

Great is (cryed divers battailes which the Spaniards had, as well in New Spane, as in Perathe Indians their enethe farine mae mice did feera Horieman in the ayre, mounted on a white horse, with a Sword in his hand, fighkers) D. ana of ting for the Spaniards, whence comes the great reverence they beare at the Indies to the glorious ste specifing. Apolle Saint lames. Otherwhiles they del fee in fome battailes, the Image of our Lady, from CHAP. 4. \$12. Spanish Indian policy & force Nim, & Alongraferred to P. P. 102 5

whom the Christians have received in those parts incomparable favours and benefit, Set, And therefore we ought not to condemne all these things of the first Conquerors of the building is time religious and searned men time done, doubtleffe with a good zeale, but too much affected . For although for the most part they were controus men, cruell; and very ignorable in the course that was cobe softened was to be soft nie, but on their part there was much malite against God and our Men, Which forced the give the America (a) rigour and obsititement. ing our and offsittlement.

Euery one may vederfrand by the Relation and Discourse I have written in these Books. 22 continuelld

well at Perm as in New Spanne, when as the Christians first fet footing, that these Kingdomes (Hillians) in-10 and Monarchies were come to the height and period of their power. The Inquise of Pers, posses digras out face. fing from the Realme of Chille beyond Quieto, which are a thouland leagues, being most abuit restamen dant in gold, filuer, fumpenous feruices, and other things : as also in Mexico , Margania commanded from the North Ocean Sa, vnot the South, being feared and worthingoed not as a man, but rather as a god. Then was it, that the northingoed horses a man, but rather as a god. Then was it, that the northing hord had determined that thirthing to Bande, which dolloued the Realment and Kingdomics of the Word, finded also diddle fiblic of what, this new World. And as the Law of Christ came when is the Robbe Monarchie was at her come? greatnesse: fo did it happen at the West Inder, wherein wee see the full prodidence of our Lord! Words greatness solded it happen at the west smart wheter we see the said productive of the hely Swords, twist For being then in the World, I meane in Emisse, but one head and temporal Lord, if the hely Swords and Apolles and Doctors doe note, whereby the Gospell might more talify bee imparted to so many People and greedic Soul-20 Nations: Euen fo hath it happened at the Indies, where having given the knowledged Chirit diers? The to the Monarche of fo many Kingdomes, it was a meaney that afterwards the knowledge of the Princeofpeace to the Monateris of to many Eurogounes, it was a meaning and activates a monated and little people; yea, there is herein a 'pecial ching' to be oblegated, char to killbut to be as the Lordrof Curies and Mexics conquered new Lands, for they brought in their owner large little, december to the conditions of the conditi guage: for although there were (as at this day) great discription of tongues, yet the Courtly speech to bee a fisme of Cufes, did and doth at this day runneaboue a thousand leagues, and that of Mexico day not Lamb, that the extend farre leffe, which hath not beene of finall importance, but hath much profited in making World might the preaching easie, at such a time, when as the Preachers had not the gift of many tongues, as in slay a World old rimes. He that would know what a helpe it hath beene for the competition of this people in that binefield in the binefiel many other places, where they have not preuzyled to much by their preaching in first years, fauer and con-as they have done in Pers and new Spaine in leffe their fire. If they will in pure the castle to the or Alexander riches of the Country : I will not altogether denie it. Ter were it im possible to hape to great had been fitter wealth, and to be able to preferre it, if there had not beene a Monarchie. This is also a worke of Preachers in God in this age, when as the Preachers of the Gospell are to cold and without zeale, and Mer- this kinde ther chants with the heat of constroutinesse and define of command, fearth and distour new poole Pers and Past whither we passe with our commo littles; for at Saint Angallow saith, the prophete of the campaigness whither we passe with our commo littles; for at Saint Angallow saith, the prophete of the saint and the saint saint

This is well knowne in Porn that the division between the two prothers Mahaalsa and Gual, the Swordhen on, the great King Guanacapa their father being newly dead, game entrie to the Marquelle Don the Word, as Francis Pixarre, and to the Spaniards, for that either of them defired his alliance being builed in bookes de ven warre one against the other. The like experience hath beene in new Spaine, that the side of those cwands ind. of the Prounce of Tlafcalla, by reason of their continual hatred against the Mexicans , gave the fall bath shewvictorie and fiegniorie of Mexico, to the M regielle Fernando Cortes and his men, and without ed, as is themthem it had beene impossible to have wome it, yea, to have maintayned themselves within the Country the Country

They are much deceived that fo livtle effective the Indians, and indge that (by the advantage days) ub. a. de the Spaniards haue over them in their Persons, Hories, and Armes, both offensue and defensive) som mang c,36. they might eafily con quer any Land or Nation of the Indies.

Chille Hands yet, or to lay better, Aranco and Tuecapel, which are two Cities, where our greatest helpe of the Semile Spaniards could not yet win one toot of ground, although they have made warre there about couquent indifine and twentie yeeres, without sparing of any cost. For this barbarous Nation , having once on quartels loft the apprehension of hoese and thot; and knowing that the Spaniards fall as well as other made that eamen, with the blow of a ftone or of a dart, they hazard themselves desperately entring the Pikes sie which their vpon any enterprife. How many yeeres haue they leuted men in new Spaine, to fend against the gold made de-60 Chrebymeques, which are a small number of naked Indians, armed only with bowes and arrowest Discres Nactyet to this day they could not be varquified, but contrarisvile, from day to day they grow more on which the desperate and resolute. But what shall we say of the Chicos, of the Chicagnamas, of the Piscoco-Spaniards wes, and all the other people of the Andes? Hath not all the flower of Pers beene there, bringing could never with them to great proution of Armes and Merias we have feene ! What did they ! With what this day.

fulfilled, in that the Church of Christ is excended, not onely to the right hand, but allo to the did certes and left : which is (as hee declareth) by humane and earth! y meanes, which they feeke those com- Prarro follows and monly then Islus Christ. It was also a great pronidence of our Lord, that when as the first Span and the Christian in the mands arrived there, they found aide from the Indians themselves, by reason of their partialities those parts

victories returned they Surely, they returned very happy in faving of their lines, having loft their baggage and almost all their hortes. Let no man thinke (speaking of the Indians) that they are men of nothing; but if they thinke fo, let them goe and make triall. Wee must thenatting bute the glorie to whom it appertaynes, that is, principally to God, and to his admirable difpolition : for if Moreguma in Mexico, and the lugua in Peru, had beene relogite to relift the Spaniards, and to ftop their entrie, Corter and Pizarre had prevayled little in their landing, atthough they were excellent Captaines. It hath also beene a great helpe to induce the Indiana to receive the Law of Chrift, the subjection they were in to their Kings and Lorde, and also the feruitude and flauerie they were held in by the Deuls tyrannies and insupportable voke. This was an excellent difpolition of the dinine Wiledome, the which drawes profit from ill to a good end, and receives his good from an others ill, which is hath not fowen. It is most certaine that le no people of the West Indies have beene more apt to receive the Gospell, then those which were most subject to their Lords, and which have beene charged with the heaviest burthens, as well of Tributes and Services, as of Cultomes and bloudie Practifes. All that which the Mexicon Kings and those of Para did possess, is at this day most planted with Christian Religion, and where there is leaft difficultie in the Gouernment and Ecclesia steal Discipline. The Indiana were so wearied with the heavy and insupportable yoke of Satans lawes, his facrifices and ceremonies. whereof wee have formerly fooken, that they consulted among themselves, to seeke out a new Law, and an other God to serue. And therefore the Law of Christ seemed vinto them, and doth at this day feeme inft, fweet, cleane, good, and full of harpineffe.

And that which is difficult in our Law, to believe so high and soveraigne Mysteries, hath been easie among them, fur that the Deuill had made them comprehend things of greater difficultie. and the lefte-fame things which hee had stolen from our Euangelical! Law, as their manner of Communion and Confession, their adoration of Three in One, and such other like, the which against the will of the Enemie, have holpen for the easie receiving of the Truth by those who before had embraced Lyes. God is wife and admirable in all his workes, vanquishing the Adversarie euen with his owne weapon, hee takes him in his owne snare, and kills him with his owne fword. Finally, our God (who had created this People, and who feemed to have thus long forgot them), when the houre was come, hee would have the same Deuils, enemies to mankinde, whom they fally held for gods; should give a testimonie against their will, of the true Law, 30 the power of Christ, and the triumph of the Crosse, as it plainly appeares by the presages, prophelies, fignes, and prodigies, here before mentioned, with many others happened in duers parts, and that the fame ministers of Satan, Sorcerers, Magicians, and other Indians have confessed it. And wee cannot denie it (being most euident and knowne to all the World) that the Denill dareth not hisse, and that the Practices, Oracles, Answers, and visible Apparitions, which were to ordinarie throughout all this Infidelitie, have ceased, whereas the Croffe of Christ hath beene planted, where there are Churches, and where the Name of Christ hath beene confessed. And if there be at this day any curfed minister of his, that doth participate thereof, it is in Caues. and on the tops of Mountaines, and in fecret places, faire from the name and communion of Christians. The Soueraigne Lord be blessed for his great mercies, and for the glorie of his holy 40 Name: And in truth, if they did gouerne this people temporally and spiritually, in such fort as the Law of Iesus Christ hath set it downe, with a milde yoke and light burthen, and that they would impose no more upon them then they can well beare, as the Letters Patents of the good Emperour of happy memorie doe command, and that they would imploy halfe the care they haue to make profit of these poore mens sweats and labours, for the health of their soules, it were the most peaceable and happy Christian part of all the World, &c.

#### CHAP. V.

Of the ancient superstitions of the Mexicans and Indians of America, gathered out of the fifth Booke of Iosermys ACOSTA.

Irft, although the darknesse of Insidelitie holdeth these Nations in blindnesse, yet in many things the light of Truth and Reason workes somewhat in them. And they commonly acknowledge a supreme Lord and Author of all things, which they of Peru called Vnachocha, and gave him names of great excellence, as Pachacamae, or Pachayachachie, which is, the Creater of Heaven and Earth : and U- 60

fape, which is, admirable, and other like names. Him they did worthip, as the chiefest of all, whom they did honor inbeholding the Heanen. The like wee see amongst them of Mexico, and China, and all other Infidels. Which accordeth well with that which is faid of Saint Paul, in the Alls of the Apostles, where he did see the Inscription of an Altar; Ignoto Dee:

to the onlymme God. Whereupon the Apolito tooke occasion to preach wate them, faying , Hee when you worth is mithent knowing, him dae I prace wate pan 3th like fort, thefe which as this day Affilia dee preacht the Godpell to the Bidisar, finde no great difficultie to perferable them; that there is a High God and Lord over ally and that this is the Christians God, and the true God, And yet it bath caused great admirationlypance, sharal shough they had this knowledge, yet had they no proper Name for God, if weethall feeke into the finding tongue for a word to an weet to this No proper Name of God, as in Latin, Dear; in Greeke, Theor, in Habrew; H/; in Arabike, Alla; but we minister thall not finde ampin the Cuffeen or Mericantonques. Some flich as preach or write to the Indiman, vic our Speilleaume Dies, fitting to trate acent to presintention of the Vaden tingues, the which differ intellegenders appeares the small knowledge they had of God, foring they cannot formuch as named him, if in the check to our kets a very an erach they had forms little known ledge, and closectors in Norm this frince thint; such Fermile; sedich they called Pachacoment which was the principal Candy and odding Resime . And as is flict become faid, this wood of Pachaco was the principal canegament command upon the state of the interest and interest and interest as much to fay, as the Creator, yet in this Temple they yet de their Idolates interesting to the Deuill and Figures. They likewife made Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which held the Chiefe placetimengebbe working in which the Kaing's frynar made! Handel they falled the Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which held the resident placetiment of the Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which held the resident placetiment to the Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which held the contribute of the Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which held the Chiefe of the Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which had been supported to the Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which had been supported to the Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebe, which held the Sacrifices and Offerings the com, to would they offer a rifeeth water there; as vanis guidan and as the Acherists, of A. Ma-no lite ( which is ablant ) living that the Vipht and nor here also keep called him Good ?

Name to Mexicola, or their lipidena Golf, then unlikely of commonly they have said dae. Of the first adore amongst the Infidels, is the Same a and after, their chime unlikely. adore amongst the Infidels, is the Source; and after, those things which are most somarke kinde of Idoable in the celeficial or elementarie names, as the Monte, Searces, Sea, and Land. The Graces. or Oratorns; which the lagrant Lords of Phone had in greatest renerence, next to Vincotche and the Sumue, wratthe Thunder, which they called by three digits comiet, Chaputle .: Gainelle, and things cho . Instillage, supporting at to be a mass in heaven, swith a Sling and a Mace, and that in is in his power. Some their fe Institute, Upporting a 17 to Munder, and all the re il that appearance to the Riegiotraf the Aire, where cond God: and to caule Raine, plants, Thursder, and all the refer the colors the Colors expender. Je was a Grince (for inchery called their Oranories) general soi all the fisherenty Bo-30 these of Pers, off-ring vato himimany far ribres and in Gifes, which is the Cours and Masto-polican Citie disputed farifica children whose him, as to the Course. They did weather these, order.

Miracoche, the Sunse, and Thunder, after amother manner then all the reft, so Palla swrites , who had made thigh those of, they did pue as it were a Gamtlet de Glove vpondheir hande, when they Thouse their died life them IP 20 worthip thems. They died wrothip the Sarth ; which they celled Parhenems, Injustry falunt at the Ancients did the gedieth: Talan: and The first tike writ; which they call Administration in the Humans fa-Ancients worthippert Theries or Nepsane. Moreover, they did worthip the Laine Lower, which were the Armes and Blazons of the legua, in ith two Saakes Streeched out on either fide. A. Earth, Sea mongh the Scarres they all did commonly weethin that which they called Colen , and wer here monght the Starres they are minuted the starres to divers Starres, and those which had neede of their this ped. 40 fauour did worfing them, as the Shepherd did facrifice to a Scarre, which they called Freibilles which they hold to be a Sheepe of diners colours, signing the same to preferne their Cattell; and they imagine it is that which the Aftronomers call Lynn. Thele Shopherds worthin two other Starres, which walke neere voto them, they call them Camebillay, and Forachillay; and they favne them to be an Ewe and a Lambe. Others worthipped a Starre which they called Matheeney, to which they attribute the charge and power ouer Serpents, and Snakes; to keepe them from burring of them. They afcribe power to another Starre, which they called Cha chay (which is as much as Tigre) over Tigres, Beares, and Lions, and they have general ned, that of all the beafts of the earth, there is one slone in beanen like vinto them, the which bath care of their procreation and increase. And so they did obserue and worthin divers Scarres, as those 50 which they called Chasens, Topatarca, Manuseus, Meres, Magis quiesy, and many other, So as it feemed they approached forms hat neere the perspectitions of Phenes Idees. The Mexicans almost in the fame manner after the fupcome God, worthipped the Same : And therefore they called Metions Hornande Cortez (as he hath written in a Letter lent vatorhe Emperor Charles the fifth) Some flip the Single of the Sanne, for his care and courage to compalie the Earth. But they made their greatest adoration to an Idoll, called Vitzliputzis, the which in all this Region they called the most puttine, Distinutation and Lord of all things: for this cause the Missions built him a Temple, the greatest, the fairest, Temple, the highest, and the most sumptuous of all other. The stuation and beautie thereof, may well be conjectured by the raines which yet remains in the midft of the Citie of Mexico. But here the

Mexicans Idolatrie hath beene more pernicious and hurofull then that of the laguas, as wee shall

Idols, and not conacurall things, although they did actribute naturall effects to these Idolet, as Raine, multiplication of Cattell, Warre, and Generation, even as the Greekes and Latines have for-

ged Idols of Phebus, Mercurie, Impirer, Minerua, and of Mars. To conclude, who fo thall

neerly looke into it , shall finde this manner which the Deuill hoth weed to deceine the Indians,

60 fee playner hereafter, for that the greatest part of their adoration and Idolatrie, was imployed to

Idalattifing rice the fame so all their I+ different. Lares : as Poof intercession. \* Adoration h dihen me of ad and as a k fling the hand with bowing of the body,&c. See Min.Fal.

206 3I. Of the Idolas try the Indians vícd o parti-

to be the same where with he hath deceined the Greekes and Romans, and other ancient Greek tiles , giving them to vaderstand that these notable creatures, the Source, Monte, Seaver, and En lements, had power and authority to doe good or harms to men. Their manner to pray to Virginia dolwithwords seebs, to the Sunne, the Starres, and the reft of their Idols, was to open their hands and to make a certaine found with their mouthes thike people that killed) and to aske that which every one defired in offering his Sacrifices; yet was there great difference betwist the words they wied in speaking to the great Tremmercules, to whom they did attribute the chiefe power and commandement over all things; and those they virid to others, the which every one did worthippe prinately in his house, as Gods or particus. for Lords, faying, that they were their Interceffors to this great Tecomorecooks. This manner to oof worthip, opening the hands, and as it were "kiffing, hath formething like to that which lob had in horrour, as fit for Idolaters, faying, If have kiffed my heads such my mouth, bebolding the Summe when it frinet, or the Moone when it is light, the which is a great mignite, and to done the most great God.

> He Deuill hath not beene contented to make thefe blinde Indianato worthippe the Sunne. Moone, Starrer, Earth, and Sea, and many other generall chings in nature, but he hash pale. fed on turcher, gining them for God, and making them subject to base and shiect things, and for the most part, fithy and infamous: for they wouthipped Rivers, Fourtaines, the monthes of Rivers, entries of Mountaines, Rocket or great Stones, Hils and the tops of Mountaines, which they 20 call Apachnus, and they hold them for matters of great denotion. To conclude, they did worthin all things in nature, which feemed to them remarkable and different from the reft, as acknowledge. ing some particular deitico.

Theie thewed me in Caxamales of Nafea a little hill or great mount of Sand, which was the chiefe Idoll or Guace of the Ancients, I demaunded of them what diminity they found in it; They answered, that they did worship it for the wonder, being a very high mount of Sand, in the midft of very thicke Mountaines of Stone. We had neede in the Citie of Kings, of great ftore of great wood; for the melting of a Bell, and therefore they cut downe a great deformed Tree, which for the greatnesse and antiquity thereof had beene a long time the Oratone and Guaca of the Indians. And they believed there was a certaine Diminity in any thing that was to extraordinary and firange in his kinde, attributing the like vnto fmall Stones and Mettals; yea vnto rootes and fruites of the earth, as the rootes they call Paper. There is a firange kinde which they call Lallabuas, which they killed and worshipped. They did likewise worship Beates, Lyons, Tygres and Snakes; to thend they should not hurt them ; and such as their gods be, such are the things they offer vnto them in their worship. They have vsed as they goe by the way, to east, in the cross wayes, on the hils, and toppes of Mountaines, which they call Apachittat olds floors, Feathers, and Coca chemed, being an hearbe they vie much. And when they have nothing left, they call a Stone as an offring, that they might paffe freely, and have greater force, the which they fay increaseth by this meanes, as it is reported in a provinciall Counfell of Pe-. And therefore they finde in the hie-waies great heapes of Stones offred, and fuch other 40 things. They vied another offring no lesse pleasant and ridiculous, pulling the haire from the eyebrowes to offer it to the Sunne, Hils, Apachittas, to the Windes, or to any other thing they feare. Such is the mileries that many Indians have lived in, and doe to this day, whom the Demill doth abuse like very Babes, with any foolish illusion what soener.

They report of one of the Kings Ingmis, a man of a fubtile spirit, who (seeing that all his predeceffours had worshipped the Sunne) faid, that he did not take the Sunne to be God, neither could it be, for that God was a great Lord, who with great quiet and leafure performed his workes, and that the Strine doth never cease his course, faying, that the thing which laboured fo much could not feeme to be God.

They came to the height of Idolatry by, the fame meanes the Scripture maketh mention of : 50 first they had a care to keepe the bodies of their Kings and Noblemen whole, from any ill scent or corruption about two hundred yeeres. In this fort were their Kings Ingmas in Cufco, every one in his Chappell and Oratory, foas the Marqueffe of Canerse beeing Viceroy, to root out Idolatry, caused three or foure of their Gods to be drawne out and carried to the Citie of Kings. which bred a great admiration, to fee thefe bodies (dead fo many yeeres before) remayne to faire and also whole. Every one of these Kings Ingues left all his Treature and Revenues, to entertayne the place of worthip where his body was laid, and there were many Ministers with all his Family dedicated to his feruice : for no King Successor did viurge the Treasures and Place of his Peedeceffor, but he did gather all new for himfelfe, and his Palace. They were not content with this Idolatry to dead bodies, but also they made their figures and representations: and euery King in his life time caused a figure to be made wherein he was represented, which they called Gnasigni, which fignifieth Brother, for that they should doe to this Image, during his life and death, as much honour and reuerence as to himfelfe. They carried this Image to the warres, and so procession for raine or faire weather, making fundry Feasts and Sacrifices vinto them. There have

CHAP, S. Wily Portugall escapes Indian cruelty. Their Purgatory and Funerals. 1029

heene many of these Idols in Cusco, and in that Territory, but now they say that this Superfition of worshipping of stones hath altogether cealed, or for the most part, after they had beene discouered by the diligence of the Licentiate Pollo, and the first was that of the Ingine Roche, chiefe of the faction or race of Hanam Cafes. And we find that among other Nations they had in great estimation and reuerence the bodies of their Predecessors, and did likewise worthip their Images.

"He Indians of Permbeleeued commonly that the Soules lived after this life, and that the Of Superflitte He Indians of Perm Beteened commonly that the Land in 10 these Articles. But they are not yet come to the knowledge of that point, that the bodies should to the dead, rife with the Soules. And therefore they did vie a wonderfull care, as it is faid, to presente the Immorality of bodies which they honoured after death: to this end their Successors gaue them Garments, and soules become made Sacrifices vnto them, especially the Kings Inguar, being accompanied at their Funerals, ued but not rea with a great number of feruance and women for his feruise in the other life : and therefore on the furredion of ; day of his decease, they did put to death the woman he had loued best, his Servants and Officers, the bodies: that they might ferue him in the other life.

When as the Guesacapa dyed (who was father to Aingualpa, at what time the Spaniards entred) they put to death about a thouland persons of all ages and conditions, for his seruice to actual one

company him in the other life, after many fongs and drunkennesse they slew them; and these deadman, 20 that were appointed to death, held themselves happy. They did facrifice many things vnto them, especially yong children, and with the bloud they made a stroake on the dead mans face, from one care to the other. This superstition and inhumanity, to kill both men and women, to accompany and ferue the dead in the other life, hath beene followed by others, and is at this day yfed among it some other barbarous Nations. And as Pollo waites, it hath beetle in a manner generall throughout all the ludies. The reuerent Beda reports, that before the Englobmen were Superflino conserted to the Goipell, they had the same custome, to kill men to accompany and ferne of the old hadthe dead. It is written of a Portugall, who being captive among the Barbarians, hallbeine of hurt with a dark, so as he loft one eye, and as they would have sacrificed him to accompany a Paringit wile. Nobleman that was dead, he faid vuto them; that those that were in the other life, would 30 make (mall account of the dead, if they gave him a blinde man for a companion; and that it were better to give him an attendant that had both his eyes. This reason being found good by the Barbarians, they let him goe. Besides this superfittion of Sicrificing men to the dead, being wied but to great Personages, there is another fatre more generall and common in all the Indies, which is, to fet meate and drinke upon the graue of the dead, imagining they did feede thereon: the which hath likewife beene an errour amongst the American, as Saint Austine writes, and therefore they gave them meate and drinke. At this day many Indian Infidelado fecretly draw their dead out of the Churchyard, and bury them on hils, or upon passages of Mountaines, or else in their owne houses. They have also wied to put Guld and Silver in their mouth, hands, and bosome, and to apparell them with new Garments durable, and well lined under the herfe. They believe that the foules of the dead wandred up and downe and indure cold, cies as in Po-

meate and drinke.

chirft hunger and travel, and for this cause they make their anniuersaries, carrying them cloathes, pith legends.

Hauing reported what many Nations of Post have done with their dead, it shall not be from Ofthe manner the purpose, to make particular mention of the Mexicans in this point, whose mortuaries of burying the were much folemnifed, and full of notable follies. It was the office of the Priefts and religious dead among were much lotermined, and min or notable rollies. It was the once of the Priess and rengious the Sterices of Mexico (who lined there with a strange observance, as shall be said hereafter) to interre the and sindy of dead, and doe their obsequies. The places where they buried them, was in their Gardens, and ther Nations. in the Courts of their owne houses : others carried them to the places of facrifices which were chap. 8. to done in the Mountaines : others burnt them, and after buried the afhes in their Temples ; and Places of but they buried them all, with whitefocuer they had, of dipparell, Stones and lewels. They did riall put the after of fuch as were burnt into pots, and with them, the Lewels, Stones, and Earerings of the dead, how rich and precious foeder. They did fing the Funerall offices, like to ant weres, and did often lift up the dead bodies, doing matry ceremonies. At these mortuaries they did eate and drinke; and if it were a person of quality, they gave apparell to all such as came to the interment. When any one dyed, they kild him open in a chamber, wntill that all his kinffolks and friends were come, who brought prefents with othe dead, and faluted him as if he were lining. And if he were a King or Lord of fome towns, they offered him flanes to be put to death with him, to the end they might ferue him in the other world. They likewife put to death his

60 Prieft, or Chaplaine (for every Mobleman had a Pereft which administred these ceremonies with in his house) and then they kalled him, that he might execute his office with the dead. They other Officers likewife killed his Cook, his Burler, his Dwarfes, and deformed men, by whom he was most fer-killed. ued:neither did they spare the very brothers, of the dead, who had most served them; for it was a greatnesse amongst she Noblemen, to be served by their brethren and the rest. Finally, they

put to death all of his traine, for the entertaining of his house is, the other world; and left pouerty should oppresse them, they buried with them much wealth, as Gold, Silver, Stones, Curtins of exquifite worke, Bracelets of Gold, and other rich peeces. And if they burned the dead, they vied the like with all his Servants, and ornaments they gave him for the other world. Then tooke they all the ashes they buried with very great solemnity. The obsequies continued tenne dayes with fongs of plaints and lamentations, and the Priests carried away the dead with so many ceremonies, and in fo great number, as they could scarce accompt them. To the Captaines and Noblemen they game trophees and markes of honour, according to their enterprifes and valor imployed in the wars and governments; for this effect they had armes and particular blafons. They carried these markes or blazons to the place where he desired to be buried or burnt, marching before the body and accompanying it, as it were in procession, where the Priests and officers of the 10 Temple went with divers furnitures and ornaments, fome casting incense, others finging, and fome founding of mournfull Flutes and Drums, which did much increase the forrow of his kinffolkes and fubices. The Priest who did the office was decked with the markes of the Idoll which the Nobleman had represented; for all Noblemen did represent Idols, and carried the name of Come one; and for this occasion they were esteemed and honoured. The order of Knighthood did commonly carry these foresaid markes. He that should be burnt, being brought to the place appointed, they inuironed him with wood of Pine trees, and all his baggage, then fet they fire ynto it increasing it faill with goomie wood, vntill that all were connerted into after, then came these forth a Priest attired like a Deuil, having mouthes upon every joynt of him, and many eyes an of glasse, holding a great staffe, with the which he did mingle all the ashes very boldly, and with so terrible a gesture, as he terrified all the assistants. Sometimes this Mimister had other difference habits according to the quality of the dead.

dols.Chap.g. fourth kinde of Indian Ido.

The fourth & There hath beene great curiotity at the Indies in making of Idols and Pictures of divers formes and matters, which they worshipped for Gods, and in Perw they called them Guacas, being commonly of foule and deformed beafts, at the leaft, fuch as I have feene, were fo. beleque verily that the Deutl, in whose honour they made these Idols, was pleased to especially the belegue verily that the Deuils, in whole honour they made these Idols, was pleased to Mexicantol cause himselfe to be worthipped in these deformities, and in truth it was found so, that mages and I- the Deuill spake and answered many of these Gnaces or Idols, and his Priests and Ministers came to these Oracles of the father of lies, and such as he is, such were his Counsels and Prophe 30 fies. In the Prouinces of New Spains, Mexico, Tescue, Tlascalla, Cholula, and in the neighbour Countries to this Realme, this kinds of Idolatry bath beene more practifed than in any other Realine of the world. And it is a prodigious thing to heare the fuperfittions rehearfed that they have vied in that points of the which is shall not be unpleasant to speake something. The chiefest ldoll of Maries was, as I have faid # neibparth, It was an image of wood like to a man, let vpon a floole of the color of azure, in a beankerd of litter, at every corner was a piece of wood in forms of a Serpentschead. The stoole signified that he was set in heaven : this Idoll had all the forehead Azure, and had a band of Azure vider the nose from one eare to another : vpon his head he had a rich plume of Feathers, like to the beake of a small Bird, the which was coursed on the top with Gold burnished very browne : be had in his left hand a white Target, with the figures 40 of fine pine A pples, made of white Feathers, feein a croffe: and from aboue iffued forth a creft of gold, and at his fides he had fouredarts, which (the Mexicans fay) had beene (ent from heapen to doe those acts and prowesses which shall be spoken of : In his right hand he had an Azured staffe, cut in fashion of a waining snake, All these ornaments with the rest he had, carried this sence as the Mexicans doe thew the name of Vitziliput2li fignifies the left hand of a frining Feather.

I will speake hereafter of the proud Temple, the Sacrifices, Feafts and Ceremonies of this great Idoll, being very notable things. But at this prefene we will onely frew, share this Idolf-clus richly apparelled and deckt, was fet vpon an high Altar, in a small peepe groboxe, well covered with linnen cloathes; lewels, Feathers, and ornaments of Gold, with many randles of Feathers, the faireft and most exquisites that could be found : he had alwaies a curtaine before him for the greater veneration. Lowning to the chamber or chappell of this idell, there was a peece of leffe worke, and not fo well beautified, where there was another Idoll the wealled Malee. Thefe two Idols were alwaies together, for that they held them as companions, and of equal power. There The Deuils was another Idoll in Mexico much effeemed, which was the god of repentance, and of Inbilies and pardons for their finnes. They called this Idoll Texeallipses, he was made of a blacke finning from like to layel, being attired wish some Gentile deuises after their manner; it had earerings of gold and filter, and through the nether lip a small canon of Christall, in length halfea foote : in the which they fometimes put a greene feather, and fometimes an azured, which made it refemble fometimes an Emerald, and fometimes a Turquois : it had the haire broided and bound vp with a haire-lace of gold burnished, at the end whereof did hang anielee of gold, with two firebrands 60 of smoake painted therein, which did signifie the praiers of the lafflicted and sinners that he heard, when they recommended themselves voto him. Berwixt the two eares hanged anumber of small herons. He had a Iewell hanging at his necke, so great that it covered all his stomacke : vpon his armes bracelets of Gold; at his nauill a rich greene ftone; and in his left hand a

CHAP.S. Indian Nemelis, Indulgences, Mercury, Adonis, Goddeffer, Feafts. 1031

Raine of precious Feathers, of Greene, Azure, and Yellow, which came forth of a Lackingglaffe of Gold, faming and well burnished, and that signified, that within this Looking elaste he faw whatfoeuer was done in the world. They called this Glaffe or Chafton of gold in the same which fignifies his Glaffe for to looke in. In his right hand he held foure darts, which fignified the chaftelement he gaue to the wicked for their funes. And therefore they feared this Idolk molt, least he should discouer their faults and offences. At his feast they had pardon of their mon, realt ne mount ameters were yeares, as shall be declared hereafter. They held this I- Their Newsons doll Tefcatiques for the god of drought, of famine, barrenneffe and petitience : And therefore they painted him in another forme, being fet in great maietly vpon a ftoole compafied in with a red

To Curtin, painted and wrought with the heads and bones of dead men. In the left hand it liad a Target with fine Pines, like vnto pine Apples of Cotton: and in the right a little dart with a Personakes threatning countenance, and she arme firetche out, as if he would caft it; and from the Target this difference came foure dares. It had the councenance of an angry man, and in choller, the body all painted bereist R. licame foure darts: It had the connectance or an angry man, and it country, the constant of blacks, and the head full of Quilles feathers. They vide great fuperfittion to this ideal, for the gions and space that the head full of Quilles feathers. They vide great fuperfittion to this ideal, for the gions and space of the constant of th Idell which was the god of Marshandife, being to this day greatly given to trafficke. They cal-

led it Quetzaeleoalt. This Idoll was in a great place in a Temple very high : it had about it, Gold, Silver, Iewels, we before very rich Feathers, and habits of diuers colours. It had the forme of a man, but the vilige of a lit-

no tle Bird, with a red bill; and aboue a combe full of warts, having rankes of teeth, and the tongue hanging out. It carried upon the head, a pointed myter of painted paper, a fithe in the hand, and many toyes of gold on the legges; with a thouland other foolish inventions, whereof all had their fignifications, and they worthing it, for that he enriched whom he pleased, as Memnon and Plutos. In truth this name which the Chomanos gaue to their god, was very fit, although they vnderstood it not : they called it Quetrastooale, fignifying colour of a rich Feather, for fuch is the denill of conetoufnesse. These barbarous people contented not themselues to have gods onely, but they had goddeffes also, as the Fables of Poets have brought in, and the blinde gentility of the Greekes and Romans worthipt them. The chiefe goddeffe they worthipt was called Toxe, which Goddeffes, is to fay, our Grandmother, who as the Histories of Mexico report, was daughter to the King of 30 Culbuscan, who was the first they stayed by the commandement of Prizippuzili, whom they facri- See former ficed in this fort, being his fifter; and then they began to flay men in their facrifices, and to clothe Chape

the liuing with the skins of the facrificed, having learned that their gods were pleafed therwithas also to pul the hearts out of them they facrificed, which they learned of their god, who pulled out the hearts of fuch as he punished in Tule, as shall be said in his place. One of these goddestes they worship thad a son, who was a great hunter, whom they of Tulesalls afterwards tooke for a god and thoic were enemies to the Mexicans, by whole side the Spaniards won Mexico. The Projunce of Tlafealla is very fit for hunting, and the people are much given therunto. They there fore made a great feast vnto this idoll, whom they painted of such a forme, as it is not now needfull to loofe any time in the description thereof. The feast they made was pleasant, and in this 40 fort : They founded a Trumpet at the breake of day, at the found whereof they all affembled with their Bowes, Arrows, Nets, and other infiruments for hunting : then they went in procefsion with their Idoll, being followed by a great number of people to a high Montazine, your the top whereof they had made a bower of leases, and in the middeft thereof an Altar richly deckt, where-vpon they placed the Idoll. They marched with a great bruit of Trumpets, Cornets, Fluces & Drums, and being come vnto the place, they inuironed this Mountain on all fides, putting fire to it on all parts: by meanes whereof many beafts flew forth, as Stage, Conies, Hares, Foxes, and Woolnes, which went to the top flying from the fire. These hunters followed after with great cries and noise of diners instruments, hunting them to the top before the Idoll, whither fled fuch a number of beafts, in fo great a preffe, that they leaped one vpon another, vpon 50 the people, and woon the Altar, wherein they tooks great delight. Then tooks they a great nume

ber of these beatts, and facrificed them before the Idoll, as Stagges and other great beatts, pulling out their hearts, as they vie in the facrifice of men, and with the like ceremony: which done, they tooke all then prey upon their shoulders, and retired with their Idoll in the same manner as they came, and entered the City laden with all these things, very joyfull, with great store of mulick, Trumpets, and Drums, vntill they came to the Temple, where they placed their Idoll with great reuerence and folemnity. They presently went to prepare their venison, wherewith they made a banquet to all the people; and after dinner they made their playes, reprefentations, and dances a banquet to all the people; and after dinner they made their playes, reprefentations, and dances a before the Idoll. They had a great number of other Idols, of gods and goddelies; but the chiefe to eate and were of the Mexican Nation, and the neighbour people as is faid.

S we have faid that the Kings Inguas of Peru caused Images to be made to their likenesse, Of a firange Awhich they called their Guaces or brothers, causing them for to be honored like themselues: manner of idoeven to the Mexicans have done of their gods, which was in this fort. They tooke a captive, fuch larry profiled even to the reserve and factore they did facrifice vnto him their Idols; they gave him the name of Mexica, (6,10

They far down drinke and rofeup to play.

1032

the Idoll, to whom he should be sacrificed, and apparelled him with the same ornaments like their Idoll, faying, that he did represent the same Ivoll. And during the time shat this reprefentation lasted, which was for a yeare in some Feasts, in others fix moneths, and in others lesse. they reverenced and worthipped him in the fame manner, as the proper Idoll; and in the meane time he did eate, drinke, and was merry. When he went through the streetes, the people came forth to worship him, and enery one brought him an almes, with children and ficke tolkes, that he might cure them, and bleffe them, fuffering him to doe all things at his pleasure, onely he was accompanied with ten or twelue men left he should flye. And he (to the end he might be reuerenced as he passed sometimes sounded vpon a small Flute, that the people might prepare to worship him. The feast being come, and he grownesat, they killed him, opened him, and eate 10 him, making a folemne facrifice of him. It followes that we treate of their Religion, or rather Superfitition, which they wie in their Sacrifices, Temples, Ceremonies, and the reft.

That which God by his wifedome hath decreed for his honour and feruice, and for the good How the Deuil and health of man, the Deuill striues to imitate and to peruert, to be honored, and to cause man hath bloomed to be damned; for as we see the great God hath Sacrifices, Priests, Sacraments, Religious Proto make hour phets, and Ministers, dedicated to his divine Service and holy ceremonies: fo the Deuill hath his to God, and to Sacrifices, Priefls, his kindes of Sacraments, his Ministers appointed, his secluded and fained holi-

imitate him in neffe, with a thousand forts of false Prophets.

Sa raments. Chap. II. Of the Tem-

Religion and

 $\mathbf{B}^{\text{Eginning}}$  then with their Temples, even as the great God would have a house dedicated, 20 where his holy name might be honoured, and that it should be particularly vowed to his feruice; euen fo the Deuill, by his wicked practifes, perfwaded Infidels to build him proud Temples, and particular Oratories and Sanctuaries. In enery Prounce of Pers, there was one principall Guica, or house of adoration; and besides it, there was one Generall throughout all India, Chapate, the Kingdome of the Inguas; among the which there hath beene two famous and notable, the one which they called Pachamana, is foure leagues from Lima, where at this day they fee the raines of a most auncient and great building, out of the which Francis Pizarre and his people drew infinite treasure, of vessels and pots of Gold and Siluer, which they brought when they tooke the Ingna Aliagnalpa. There are certaine memories and discourses which fay, that in this Temple the Deuill did speake visibly, and gaue answers by his Oracle, and that sometimes 30 they did fee a spotted Snake; and it was a thing very common and approued at the Indies, that the Deuill spake and answered in these sales Sanctuaries deceiuing this miserable people. But where the Gospell is entred, and the Crosse of Christ planted, the father of lyes becomes mute, Flu lib. de traft, as Platarch writes of his time, Cur cuffauerit Pithias fandere or acula : and Infine Martyr treates Inflin apolito amply of the filence which Christimposed to Denils, which spake by Idols, as it had been before much prophefied of in the holy Scripture. The manner which the Infidell Ministers and Inchanters had to confult with their gods, was as the Deuill had taught them. It was commonly in the night, they entred backward to their Idoll, and to went bending their bodies and head, after an vgly manner, and so they consulted with him. The answere he made, was commonly like vnto a fearefull hiffing, or to a gnashing which did terrifie them; and all that he did aduer- 40 tife or command them, was but the way to their perdition and rume. There are few of these Oracles found now, through the mercy of God, and great power of Jefus Chrift. There hath beene in Pers another Temple and Oratory, most effeemed, which was in the Citie of Cusco, where atthis day is the Monastery of Saint Dominice. We may fee it hath beene a goodly and a stately worke, by the panement and stones of the building, which remaine to this day. This Temple was like to the Pantheon of the Romans, for that it was the house and dwelling of all the gods; for the Kings Inguas did there behold the gods of all the Nations and Provinces they had conquered, enery Idoll having his private place, whither they of that Province came to worthip it with an excelline charge of things which they brought for his femice. And thereby they supposed to keepe fafely in obedience, those Provinces which they had conquered, holding 50 their gods, as it were in holtage. In this same house was the Pinchao, which was an Idollof the Sunne, of most fine Gold, wrought with great riches of Stones, the which was placed to the East, with so great Art, as the Sunne at his rising did cast his beames thereon : and as it was of most fine mettall, his beames did reflect with fuch a brightnesse, that it feemed another Sunne. The Inemas did worship this for their god, and the Pachayacha, which signifies the Creator of Heanen. They say, that at the spoile of this so rich a Temple, a Souldier had for his part this goodly plate of gold of the Sunne. And as play was then in request, he lost it all in one night at play, whence came the prouerbe they have in Peru for great gamefters, faying, that they play the Sunne before it rifeth.

He Superflitions of the Mexicans, have without comparison beene greater then the rest, as well in their ceremonies, as in the greatnesse of their Temples, the which in old time the Spaniards called by this word Ca, which word might by taken from the Ilanders of Saint Do-Lieuco, Cha. 13. minique, or of Cuba, as many other words that are in vie, the which are neigher from Spaine,

nor from any other language now viuall among the Indians, as is Mays, Chico, Vaquiano, Chapston, and other like. There was in Mexico, this Cu, the famous Temple of Vitzliputali, it had a very great circuit, and within a faire Court. It was built of great itones, in falhion of Snakes tyed one to another, and the circuit was called Contepantle, which is, a circuit of Snakes : vpon the top of every Chamber and Oratotie where the Idols were, was a fine Pillar wrought with fmall itones, blacke as jeat, fet in goodly order, the ground rayfed up with white and red, which below gaues great light. Vpon the top of the Pillar were battlements very artificially made. wrought like Snailes, supported by two Indians of stone, sitting, holding Candle-sticks in their hands, the which were like Croifants garnished and enriched at the ends, with yellow and greene 10 feathers and long fringes of the fame. Within the circuit of this Court, there were many Cham-

bers of religious men, and others that were appointed for the feruice of the Priefts and Popes, for Mexical fo they call the fourraigne Priefts which serve the Idoll. This Court is so great and spacious, as Popes. eight or ten thousand persons did dance easily in round, holding hands, the which was an vitall

custome in that Realme, although it seeme to many incredible.

There were foure Gates or Entries, at the East, West, North, and South; at every one of these Gates began a faire Cawfey of two or three leagues long. There was in the midft of the Lake where the Citie of Mexico is built, foure large Cawfeys in croffe , which did much beautifie it; vpon enery Portall or Entrie, was a God or Idoll, having the vifage turned to the Cawfey, right against the Temple gate of Visaliguezdi. There were thirtie fteps of thirtie fathome long, and

20 they divided from the circuit of the Court by a ffreet that went betwixt them; vpon the top of their fteps there was a walke of thirtie foot broad, all play ftered with chalke, in the midft of which walke was a Pallisado artificially made of very high Trees, planted in order a fathome one from another. These Trees were very bigge, and all pierced with small holes from the foote to the top, and there were rods did run from one Tree to another, to the which were chayned of tyed many dead mens heads. Vpon outry rod were twentie Sculls, and these rankes of Sculls continue from the foot to the top of the Tree. This Pallifado was full of dead mens Sculls from one end to the other, the which was a wonderfull mournfull fight and full of horror. These were the heads of fuch as had beene facrificed; for after they were dead, and had eaten the fielh, the head was delinered to she Manisters of the Temple, which tyed them in this fort vntill they

30 fell off by morfels; and then had they a care to fee 8thers in their places. Vpon the top of the Temple were two Stones or Chappels; and in them were the two Idols, which I have fooken of. Vizzilipmezis, and his companion Tlate. These Olimpels were carried and graven very artificially, and so high, that to ascend up to it, there was a staire of stone of six score steps. Before these Chambers or Chappels there was a Coure of fortig bod Topare in the midft whereof, was a high flone of fine hand breadth, pointed in falhior of a Pyramide, it was placed there for the facrificing of men; for being laid on their backs, it made their bodies to bend, and fo they did open them and pull out their hearts , as I shall shew hereafter. There were in the Citie of Mexico, eight or nine other Temples, the which were joyned one to another within one great circuit, and had their private Stayres, their Courts, their Chambers, and their Dortoires. The entries of

40 fome were to the East, some to the West, others to the South, and some to the North. All these Temples were curiously wrought, and compelled in with divers forts of Battlements and Pichures, with many figures of thones, being accompanyed and fortified with great and Lirge Spurres or Plat-former. They were didicated to divers gods : but next to the Temple of Vizzalipurali, was that of Tescalipuca, which was the god of Penance and of Punishments, very high and well built.

There were four steps to ascende on the top was a Flat or Table of six score foot broad, and ioy. ning vnto it was a Hall hanged with Tapiffrie and Curtins of diners colours and workes. The Doore thereof being low and large, was alwayes couered with a vaile, and none but the Priests might entering. All this Temple was beautified with divers Images and Pictures most curiously; so for that thefe twed Temples were as the Cathedrall Churches ; and the reft in respect of them as

Parifles and Herminges : they were fo spacious, and had so many Chambers, that there were in them places for the Ministerie, Colleges, Schooles, and Houses for Priests, whereof wee will intreat hereafter.

The Deuil counterfaiting the vie of the Church of God, hath placed in the order of his Priefts, Of the Priefts fome greater or imperiors, and fome leffe, the one as Acolites, the other as Leantes, and that which and their bath made me most to wonder, was, that the Deuill would viurpe to himselfe the service of The Deuil God ; yea, and wie the same name : for the Mexicans in them ancient tongue called their high had his Popes Priests Papes, as they should say Someraigne Bisbops, as it appeares now by their Histories. The or Vicars at Priefts of Vitalipanile fucceeded by Linages of certaine quarters of the Citie, deputed for that Mexico for the 60 purpole, and those of other Iduls came by election, or being offered to the Temple in their infan- new World, as cie. The daily exercise of the Priests was to east Incense on the Idols, which was done foure old and now times in the space of a naturall day. The first at breake of day, the second at noone, the third at for both

Sunne fetting, and the fourth at mid-night. At mid-night all the chiefe officers of the Temple Mid-night did rife, and in flead of Bells, they founded a long time upon Trumpets, Cornets, and Flutes Martins

1035

very heavily, which being ended, he that did the office that weeke, ftept forth, attyred in a white Robe after the Dalmatike manner, with a Cenfor in his hand full of coales, which bee tooke from the harth burning continually before the Altar; in the other hand he had a Purfeful of Incense, which he cast into the Censor, and as he entred the place where the Idoll was, he incenfed it with great reserence, then tooke he a cloth, with the which he wiped the Altar and the Curtins. This done, they went all into a Chappell, and there did a certaine kinde of rigorous and auftere penance, bearing themselues, and drawing of bloud, as I shall shew in the Treatise of Penance, which the Deuill hath taught to his Creatures; and hereof they neuer fayled at these Mattins at mid-night. None other but the Priests might entermeddle with their facrifices, and enery one did imploy himselfe according to his dignitie and degree. They did likewife preach to the people at some feasts, as I will shew when wee treat thereof. They had Reuenues, and great Offerings were made vnto them. I will speake hereafter of their Vnction in consecrating their Priefts. In Peru the Priefts were entertayned of the Reuenues and Inheritance of their god, which they called Chacaras, which were many, and also very rich.

Of the Mona. fteric of VIIgins which the Douill back inuented for histerurce. Chap.15.

There were in Peru many Monasteries of Virgins (for there are no other admitted) at the least one in euery Prouince. In these Monasteries there were two forts of women, one ancient, which they called Mamacomas, for the instruction of the young; and the other was of young Maidens. placed there for a certaine time, and after they were urawne forth, either for their gods or for place there is a state of the state of Monasterie Aclagmagi, which is to Gry, the Honfe of the Cholen. Eurry Monasteric had his Vicar or Governour called Appopulace, who had inhertice and 20 power to choose whom he pleased, of what qualitie soeuer, being vinder eight yeeres of age, if they feemed to be of a good stature and constitution.

Theil Virgins thus thut up into theie Monasteries, were instructed by the Monacoma, in digins, or Nunns uers things needfull for the life of man, and in the customes and ceremonies of their gods; and afterwards they tooke them from thence, being aboue fourteene, fending them to the Court with fure guards, whereof fome were appointed to ferue the Guacas and Sanchuaries, keeping their Virginities for euer : fome others were for the ordinarie facrifices that were made of Maidens, and other extraordinarie facrifices, they made for the health, death, or warres of the Ingua; and the reft ferred for Wines and Concubines to the Ingua, and vnto other his Kinsfolks and Captains, 30 vnto whom hee gaue them, which was a great and honorable recompence: This diffribution was vied energy yeere. These Monasteries possessed Rents and Renenues for the maintenance of these Virgins, which were in great numbers. It was not lawfull for any father to refule his daughters when the Appropriate required them for the service of these Monatteries. Yes, many fathers did willingly citer their haughters, suppoing it was a great merit to be facificed for the Ingua. If any of these Momacomias of Aclias were found to have trespassed against their honor, it was an ineutable chaftifement to burge them alue, or to put them to death by some other kind

The Deuil hach euen in Mexico had some kinde of religious women, although their possesfion was but for one yeere, and it was in this fort : Within this great circuit whereof wee hale 40 spoken, which was in the principall Temple, there were two Houses like Claffers, the one oppolite to the other, one of Men, the other of Women: In that of women, they were Virgins onely, of twelve or thirteene yeeres of age, which they called the Maides of Penance. They were as many as the men, and lived chastely and regularly, as Virgins dedicated to the service of their god. Their charge was, to sweep and make cleane the Temple, and every morning to prepare meat for the Idoll and his Ministers, of the Almes the religious gathered. The foode they propared for the Idoll were small loaues in the forme of hands and feet, as of March-pane; and with this bread they prepared certaine fawces which they cast daily before the Idoll, and his Priests did eate it, as those of Baal, that Daniel speaketh of. These Virgins had their haire cut, and their they let them grow for a certaine time: they rofe at mid-night to the Idolls Mattins, which they daily celebrated, performing the fame exercifes the Religious did. They had their Abbiffes 50 who imployed them to make cloth of divers fashions for the ornament of their Idolls and Temples. Their ordinarie habit was all white, without any worke or colour. They did their penance at mid-night, facrificing and wounding themselves, and piercing the top of their eares, they laid the bloud which issued forth vpon their cheekes : and after (to wash off the bloud) they bathed themselves in a Poole which was within their Monasterie. They lived very honestly and difcreetly; and if any were found to haue offended, although but lightly, preiently they were put to death without remission, saying, she had polluted the House of their god. They held it for an augure and advertisement, that some one of the Religious, Man, or Woman, had committed a fault, when they faw a Rat or a Mowfe paffe, or a Bat in the Chappell of their Idoll, or that they had gnawed any of the vales, for that they fay , a Rat or a Bat would not adventure pcommit 60 fuch an indignitie, if some offence had not gone before, and then they began to make search of the fact, and haung discouered the Offendor or Offendors, of what qualitie source they pre-

None were received into this Monasterie, but the daughters of one of the fixe quarters, named

for that purpose : and this profession continued, as I have faid, the space of one whole yeere : during the which time, their fathers, and they themselves had made a vow to serve the Idoll in this

manner, and from thence they went to be married. I doe not know that in Pers there is any proper houses for men, but for the Priests and Sorce- Of the M-narers, whereof there is an infinite number. But it feemeth, that in Mexico the Deuill hath fet fleriks of relinets, whereof there is an infinite number. But a terminal had a cherration for within the circuit of the great Temple there were two Monafterias, as be. Sous men, but fore hath beene faid, one of Virgins, whereof I have fooken, the other of young men feeladed of eighteen or twentie yeeres of age, which they called religious. They were fluided crowness as the function of the control of the cont Friars in these parts, their haire a little longer, which tell to the middelt of their eare, except the Chip.16. hander part of the head, which they let grow the breadth of foure fingers down to their shoulders Indian shauen and which they tyed vp in treffer. Thete young men that ferued in the Temple of Vischpatch library, & their and which they tyed vp in treffer. There young men that ferued in the Temple of Vischpatch library, & their down of flooding of poor and chaffly, and did the Office of Leutes, ministring to the Prieffs and chiefe of the own of flooding of the prieffs and chiefe of the chief, who was the prieff of the chiefe of th Temple, their Incenie, Lights, & garments; they swept and made cleane the holy places, bringing ty, hafter, &c. Wood for a continuall fire to the harth of their god, which was like a lampe that full burnt before the Altar of their Idoll. Besides these young men, there were other little boyes, as novices, that ferued for manuall vies, as to deck the Temple with boughs, rofes, & reeds, give the Priests water to wash with, give them their rasors to facrifice, and goe with such as begged almes to carry it. All these had their superiors, who had the government over them, they lived so honeftly, as when they came in publike, where there were any women, they carried their heads very low, with 20 their eyes to the ground, not daring to behold them: they had linnen garments, and it was lawfull for them to goe into the Citie foure or fixe together, to aske Almes in all quarters : and when they gaue them none, it was lawfull to goe into the Corne fields, and gather the eares of Corne, or clufters of Mays, which they most needed, the Master not daring to speake, nor hinder them. They had this libertie, because they lived poorely, and had no other revenues, but Almes. There might not be about fiftie line in penance, rifing at midnight to found the Cornets and Trumpets to awake the people. Every one watched the Idoll in his turne, left the fire before the Altar should die : they gaue the Cenfor, with the which the Priest at midnight incenfed the Idoll, and also in the morning at noone, & at night. They were very subject and obedient to their superiors. and passed not any one point that was commaunded them. And at midnight after the Priest had ao ended his centing, they retired themselves into a fecret place, apart, facrificing, and drawing blood from the calres of their legs with sharpe bodkins : with this bloud they rubbed their temples, and vader their eares : and this facrifice finished, they presently washt themselves in a little poole appointed to that end. These young men did not annoint their heads and bodies with any Perum as the Priests did their garments were of courle white linnen cloth they doe make there. There exercifes and strict nesse of penance continued a whole yeere, during which time they lived with great aufteritie and folitarineffe.

It hath beene faid that the Priests and religious of Mexico, rose at midnight, and having cast Of Pessance & It man occur and the ability retired themishes into a large place, where they were many the attended in Incentice force the labil, they retired themishes into a large place, where they were many the attended Light; and fitting downer, curry one tooks a point of Mangang, which is like vato an awle or he lability to the property of the public of the pu 40 sharpe bodkin, with the which, or with some other kindes of Launcets or Rasors, they pierced the the Deuils per calfes of their legs neere to the bone, drawing forth much bloud, with the which they anointed (wasion, Ch. 17. their temples, and dipt these bookins or lancets in the rest of the bloud, then set they them vpon the battlements of the Court, flickt in gloabes or bowles of ftraw, that all might fee and know the penance they did for the people : they doe wash off the bloud in a lake appointed for

that purpose, which they call Ezapangue, which is to say, water of bloud. There were in the Temple a great number of bodkins or lancets, for that they might not vie one twice. Moreover, their Priefts and Religious men, vied great Fastings, of fine or ten dayes Their scuere together, before any of their great Feafts, and they were vnto them as our foure Ember weekes : Fafts, they were fo firset in continence, that some of them ( not to fall into any sensualitie) slit their

50 members in the midit, and did a thousand things to make themselues vinable, lest they should Monsters of oftend their gadsa They drunke no Wine, and flept little, for that the greatest part of their exer- Wil-worthipe cifes were by night, committing great cruelties and martyring themselues for the Deuill, and all to bee reputed great fatters and penitents. They did vie to discipline themselves with cords full of knots, and not they onely, but the people also vied this punishment and whipping, in the procession and feast they made to the Idoll Textalipnes, the which (as I have faid before) is the god of penance; for then they all carried in their hands new cordes of the threed of Manguer a fadome long, with a knot at the end, and wherewish they whipped themselves, giving great lathes over their thoulders. The Priefts did fait fine dayes before this Feath, eating but once a day. and they hard apart from their wines, not going out of the Temple during those fine dayes, they fodid whip themselves sigorously in the manuer atorelaid.

In Perm to folenmize the feath of the Tta, which was great, all the people fasted two dayes: during the which, they did not accompanie with their Wives , neither did they eate any meate with Saltor Garleeke, nor dranke Chica. They did much vie this kinde of fasting for some fine, and did penance, whipping themselues with sharpe stinging Nettles, and often they strooke

themselues over the shoulders with certayne stones. This blind Nation, by the perswasion of the Deuill, did transport themselves into craggie Mountaynes, where sometimes they sacrificed themselves, casting themselves downe from some high Rocke.

Of the Sacrifices the Indiave made to the Deuill, & whereof. Chap. 18.

Wee may draw all the Sacrifices the Infidels vie into three kindes, one of infentible things : another of beafts, and the third of men. They did vie in Pers to facrifice Co. ca. which is an hearbe they efterme much, of Mays, which is their Wheate, of coloured feathers, and of Chaquira, which otherwise they call Mollo, of shelsor Oysters, and sometime Gold and Silver, being in figures of little beafts. Also of the fine stuffe of Combi, of carved and fweet wood, and most commonly Tallow burnt. They made these Offerings or Sacrifices for a prosperous winde, and faire weather, or for their health, and to be deliuered from some dangers to and mishaps. Of the second kind, their ordinary Sacrifice was of Cayes, which are small beads like Rabbets, the which the Indians eate commonly. And in matters of importance, or when they were rich men, they did offer Pacos, or Indian freepe, bare, or with Wooll, observing the rioutly the numbers, colours, and times. The manner of killing their Sacrifices, great or imall. which the Indians did vie according to their ancient Ceremonies, is the same the Moores vie as this day, the which they call Algulble, hanging the beaft by the right fore-legge, turning his eves towards the Sunne, speaking certayne words, according to the qualitie of the Sacrifice they flue : for if it were of colour, their words were directed to ( buquille , and to the Thunder , that they might want no water: if it were white and I moothe, they did offer it to the Sume with certaine words. if it had a fleece, they did likewise offer it him with some others, that he might 20 thine vpon them, and fauour their generation : It it were a Gamaco, which is gray, they dire-Ged their facrifice to Viracocha. In Cufco they did every yeare kill and facrifice with this Ceremony, a shorne sheepe to the Sunne, and did burne it, clad in a red Waste-coate, and when they did burne it, they call certayne small baskets of Coca into the fire, which they call Vilcaronce: for which Sacrifice, they have both men and beafts appointed which ferue to no other yfe, They did likewife facrifice fmall Birds, although it were not fo visuall in Pers as in Mexico, where the

facrificing of Quailes was very ordinary. Those of Pern did facrifice the Birds of Puna, (for

fo they call the Defart when they should goe to the Warres, for to weaken the forces of their

aduerlaries Guacas.) They called these Sacrifices Cuzconicca, or Contenicca, or Huallanicca, or

and gathered a great deale of a thorny wood, which they call Taulli, the which beeing kindled,

Playne, with certayne Ceremonies, cauting fome kinde of men to eate this flesh, the which Sa-

Sophanicea, and they did it in this manner: they tooke many kinds of imall Birds of the Defart, 10

they gathered together these small Birds. This affembly they called Quice, then did they cast them into the fire, about the which the Officers of the Sacrifice went with certayne round flones carued, whereon were painted many Snakes, Lions, Toades, and Tygres, vetering this word F. fachum, which fignifies, Let the victorie be ginen onto us, with other words, whereby they fayd Blacke theepe, the forces of their enemies Guacas were confounded. And they drew forth certayne blacke sheepe, which had beene kept close some dayes without meate, the which they called Pres, and in killing them they spake these words; As the hearts of these beafts bee weakened, so let our enemies be weakned. And if they found in these sheepe that a certay ne piece of siesh behind the hear were not confumed by falling and close keeping, they then held it for an ill Augure. They 40 brought certayne blacke Dogges, which they call Apparor, and flue them, cafting them into a

fire appeared, crifices they did, left the Ingua should bee hurt by poyfon : and for this cause they fasted from

morning vntill the starres were vp, and then they did glat and defile themselves like to the Morres. This Sacrifice was most fit for them to withfland their enemies Gods : and although at this day a great part of these customes have ceased, the warres being ended, yet remaynes there some Relikes, by reason of the private or generall quarrels of the Indians, or the Caciques, or in Shel-offerings, their Cities. They did likewise offer and facrifice shels of the Sea, which they call Molle, and they offered them to the Fountaynes and Springs, faying, that these shels were daughters of the Sea, the mother of all waters. They gave vnto their thels fundry names, according to the colour, and also they wie them to diversends. They wied them in a manner in all kinde of Sacrifices, and yet to this day they put bearen fhets in their Chica, for a superfiction. Finally, they thought it convenient to offer Sacrifices of every thing they did fow or raise vp. There were Indians appointed to doe these Sacrifices to the Fountayne, Springs, and Rivers which passed through the Townes, or by the their Charcas, which are their Farmes, which they did after Seed time, that they might not cease running, but alwayes water their grounds. The Sorcerers did conjure, to know what time the Sacrifices should be made, which beeing ended, they did gather of the contribution of the people, what should be facrificed, and delinered them to such as had the charge of these Sacrifices. They made them in the beginning of Winter, at such time as the Fountaynes, Springs, and Rivers, did increase by the mouthures of the weather, which they did 60 attribute to their Sacrifices. They did not facrifice to the Fountaynes and Springs of the Defarts. To this day continues the respect they had to Fountaynes, Springs, Pooles, Brookes, or Reners, which paffe by their Cities or Chareau, even vnto the Fountaynes and Rivers of the Detaces. They have a speciall regard and reverence to the meeting of two Rivers, and there

they wash themselves for their health, annoynting themselves first with the slower of Mays, or some other things, adding thereunto divers Ceremonies, the which they doe likewife in their Bathes.

The most pittifull disafter of this poore people, is their slavery vato the Deuill, sacrificing Of the Sacrific men vnto him, which are the Images of God. In many Nations they had vsed to kill (to of men, the 15, and 16, a accompany the dead, as hath beene declared) fuch persons as had beene agreeable vnto him, and whom they imagined might best ferue him in the other World. Besides this, they vied in Park, to factifice young children of foure or fixe yeeres olde vito ten : and the greatest part of to these Sacrifices were for the affaires that did import the Ingua, as in ficknelle for his health : and when he went to the warres for victory, or when they gave the wreathe to their new Ingua, which is the mark of a King, as here the Scepter and the Crowne be. In this Solemnitie they facrificed the number of two hundred children, from foure to ten yeeres of age, which was a cruell and inhumane spectacle. The manner of the Sacrifice was to drowne them and bury them with certayne representations and ceremonies : sometimes they cut off their heads annoynting them- ficed.

felues with the bloud from one eare to another. They did likewise sacrifice Virgins, some of them that were brought to the Ingua from the Monalteries, as hath beene faid. In this cafe there was a very great and generall abufe : If any Indean qualified, or of the common fort, were ficke, and that the Divine told him confidently 20 that he should dye, they did then facrifice his some some to the Sunne, or to Vracheca, defiring Patricide. them to be fatisfied with him, and that they would not deprine the father of life. This crueltie is like to that the holy Scripture speaks of which the King of Most vied in facrificing his first-born

Sonne you the wall, in the light of all Ifrael, to whom this act feemed fo mournfull, as they would not prefie him any further, but returned to their houses. Lthough they of Pers have furp-fled the Mexicans in the flaughter and Sacrifice of their Of the horri-

A Children (for I haue not read nor vnderstood that the Mexicans vsed any such Sacrifices) of men which vet they of Mexico have exceeded them, yea all the Nations of the World, in the great num- the Mexican

ber of men which they had facrificed, and in the horrible manner thereof. And to the end wee vied. Chap. 20. 20 may feethe great milery wherein the Denill holds this blind Nation, I will relate particularly the custome and inhumane manner which they have observed : First the men they did facrifice were taken in the warres, neyther did they wie thefe folemne Sacrifices but of Captiues: fo as it Captiues only feemes therein they have followed the custome of the Ancients. For as some Authors fay, they facrifized. called the Sacrifice Victima, for this reason, because it was of a conquered thing : they also called Victima & it Hostia quasi ab boste, for that it was an Offering made of their enemies, although they have applyed this word to all kinds of Sacrifices. In truth the Mexicians did not facrifice any to their Idols, but Captiues, and the ordinary warrestlery made, was onely to have Captiues for their Sacrifices; and therefore when they did fight, they laboured to take their enemies aline, and not to kill them, to enjoy their Sacrifices. And this was the reason which Moreguma gaue to the 40 Marquife du Val, when he asked of him, why being so mightie, and having conquered so many Kingdomes. he had not subdued the Prouince of Tlascalla, which was to neere! Motecu-

ma answered him, that for two reasons he had not conquered that Prouince, although it had bin easie, if he would have undertaken it : the one was for the exercise of the youth of Mexico, lest they should fall into idlenesse and delight : the other and the chiefe cause why hee had referred this Prouince, was, to have Captines for the Sacrifices of their Gods. The manner they yied in Manner of his these Sacrifices, was, they affembled within the Palistadoe of dead mens Sculles (as hath beene mane (insmanc) facrification of the sacrifices and the sacrification of the sacri faid) such as should be sacrificed, vsing a certayne Ceremony at the foot of the Palisladoe, placing cing. a great guard about them. Prefently there stept forth a Priest, attyred with a short Surplice full of taffels beneath, who came from the top of the Temple with an Idoll made of Parle of Wheate and Mays mingled with Honey, which had the eyes made of the graines of greene glaffe, and the teeth of the graines of Mays, he descended the steps of the Temple with all the speed he could, and mounted on a great stone planted upon a high Terraffe in the midst of the Court. This stone was called Quancicalli, which is to fay, the flone of Eagle, whereon he mounted by a little Ladder, which was in the fore-part of the Terraffe, and descended by another staire on the other file. full imbracing his Idoll. Then did he mount to the place where those were that should be facti-

went in procession voto the place where they should bee facrificed, where they found the Minifters ready for that Office. The ordinary manner of facrificing was, to open the ftomake of him Bloudic Rices, 60 that was facrificed, and having pulled out his heart halfe aline, they tumbled the man downe the staires of the Temple, which were all imbrewed and defiled with bloud : And to make it the more plaine, fixe Sacrificers being appointed to this dispitie, came into the place of Sacrifice. foure to hold the hands and feet of him that should be facrificed, the fift to hold his head, and the fixt to open his stomake, and to pull out the heart of the facrificed. They called them Cha-

ficed, thewing this Idoll to every one in particular, faying vnto them; this is your God. And ha-

uing ended his she w, he descended by the other side of the staires, and all such as should dye,

chalmus, which in our Tongue is as much, as the Ministers of boly things. It was a high dignitie. and much efteemed among it them, wherein they did inherit and fucceed as in a Fee-fimple. The Minister who had the Office to kill, which was the fixt among ft them, was esteemed and honoured as the Sourreigne Priest and Bifop, whose name was different, according to the difference of times and Solemnities. Their habits were likewise divers when they came forth to the Sacrifice, according to the diversitie of times. The name of their chiefe dignitie was Papa and Topolo zin, their Habite and Robe was a red Curtayne after the Dalmarike fashion, with talkels below a Crowne of rich Feathers, greene, white, and yellow vpon his head, and at his eares like pendants of Gold, wherein were fet greene stones, and vnder the lip vpon the middest of the beard

he had a Peecelike vnto a small Canon of an azured stone. These Sacrificers came with their fa-The other fine ces and hands coloured with a shining blacke. The other fine had their haire much curled, and tyed vp with Laces of Leather, bound about the middest of the head : vpon their forehead they carried small Roundelets of Paper painted with divers colours, and they were attyred in a Dalmatike Robe of white, wrought with blacke. With this attyre they represented the very figure of the Deuill, fo as it did strike feare and terrour into all the people, to see them come forth with fo horrible a reprefentation. The Souereigne Priest carried a great Knife in his hand, of a large and sharpe flint : another Priest carried a coller of wood wrought in forme of a Snake : All fix put themselues in order, ioyning to this Pyramidall stone, wheref I have spoken, being directly against the doore of the Chappell of their Idoll. This stone was so pointed, as the man which was to be facrificed, being lad thereon, vpon his backe, did bend in such fort, as letting 20 the Knife but fall vpon his stomack it opened very easily in the middest. When the Sacrificers were thus in order, they drew forth such as had beene taken in warre, which were to bee facrificed at that Feaft, and being accompanied with a guard of men all naked, they caufed them to mount up these large staires in ranke, to the place where the Ministers were prepared : and aseuery one of them came in their order, the fix Sacrificers tooke the Prifoner, one by one foote. another by the other, and one by one hand, another by the other, calting on his backe upon this Deuillish dex. pointed stone, where the fift of these Ministers put the coller of wood about his necke, and the High Priest opened his stomack with the Knife, with a strange dexteritie and nimblenesse, polling out his heart with his hands, the which hee shewed smoking vnto the Sunne, to whom hee did offer this heate and fume of the heart, and prefently he turned towards the Idoll and did caft to the heart at his face, then did they cast away the body of the facrificed, tumbling it downethe staires of the Temple, the stone being fet so neere the staires, as there were not two foote space betwixt the stone and the first step, so as with one spurne with their foote, they cast the bodie

from the top to the bottome. In this fort one after one they did facrifice all those that were ap-

pointed. Being thus flaine, and their bodies cast downe, their Masters, or such as had taken them,

went to take them vp, and carried them away : then having divided them amongst them, they

did eate them, celebrating their Feast and Solemnitie. There were ever fortie or fiftie at the

least thus facrificed, for that they had men very expert in taking them. The neighbour Nati-

ons did the like, imitating the Mexicans in the Cuitomes and Ceremonies of the Service of

their Gods.

Of other kinds Here was another kind of Sacrifice which they made in divers feafts, which they call Reca-A ripe Velio ali, which is as much as the flaying of men. They call it fo, for that in some Feasts the Mexicans they tooke one or more flaues, as they pleated, and after they had flayed him, they with that vied. Chapas. skinne apparelled a man appointed to that end. This man went dancing and leaping thorow all Flaying Sacri- the houses and Market places of the Citie, every one being forced to offer formething vnto him: and if any one fayled, he would firike him over the face with a corner of the skin, defiling him with the congealed bloud. This invention continued vntill the skinne did ftinke; during which time, fuch as went, gathered together much almes, which they employed in necessary things for the Service of their Gods. In many of thefe Feafts they made a Challenge, betwirt him to that did facrifice, and him that should bee facrificed thus: they tyed the slaue by one foote to Challenge fa cuficet. a Wheele of ftone, giuing him a Sword and Target in his hands to defend himfelfe : then cuficet. presently stept forth hee that sacrificed him; armed with another Sword and Target: if hee that should bee facrificed defends himselfe valiantly against the other, and relisted him, hee then remayned freed from the Sacrifice, winning the name of a famous Captayne, and fo was reputed : but if hee were vanquished, they then sacrificed him on the stone whereunto hee was was tyed. It was another kinde of Secrifice, when as they appointed any flaue to bee therepresentation of the Idoll, saying that it was his Picture: They every yeere gave one slave to the Priests, that they might neuer want the lively Image of their Idoll. At his first entry into the Office, after he had beene well washed, they attyred him with all the ornaments of the Idoll, 60 giving him the same name. Hee was that whole yeere reverenced and honoured as the Idoll it felfe, and had alwayes with him twelue men for his Guard, left hee should flye, with which Guard they suffered him to goe freely and where he would : and if by chance he fled, the chiefe of the Guard was put in his place to represent the Idoll, and after to bee factificed. This Indian

had the most honourable lodging in all the Temple, where hee did eate and drinke, and whither all the chiefe Ministers came to ferue and honour him, carrying him meate after the manner of great Perionages. When her went through the streets of the Citie, hee was well accompanied with Noblemen, hee carried a l'atle Flute in his hand, which fometimes hee founded, to give them knowledge when he passed: then presently the women came forth with their little children in their armes, which they presented voto him, saluting him as God. All the rest of the people did the like; at night they put him in a strong Prison or Cage, left he should flye; and when the Feast came, they facrificed him, as hath beene faid.

By these and many other meanes hath the Deuill abused and entertayned these poore wret-numbers sacrito ches, and fuch was the multitude of those that had beene facrificed by this infernal crueltie, as ficed. it feemes a matter incredible, for they affirme there were some dayes fine thousand or more, and that there were aboue twentie thousand sacrificed in diners places. The Deuill to entertaine this murther of men, vied a pleasant and strange invention, which was, when it pleased the Priests of Satan they went to their Kings, telling them how their Gods dyed for hunger, and Deuill hunger that they should remember them. Presently they prepared themselves, and advertised one a- formans fluth nother, that their Gods required meate, and therefore they should command their people to bee readie to goe to the Warres; and thus the people affembled, and the companies appointed went to field, where they mustred their forces; and all their quarrell and fight was to take one another for facrifice, ftriuing on either fide to take what Captines they could, fo as in thele battels they 20 laboured more to take, then to kill, for that all their intention was to take men aliue, to give

them to their Idols to eate, for after that manner brought they their Sacrifice voto their Gods. And wee must viderstand, that never King was crowned vitill he had subdued some Province. from the which he brought a great number of Captines for the Sacrifices of their Gods, fo as it was an infinite thing to fee what bloud was spilt in the honour of the Deuill.

Many of these Barbarians were now wearied and tyred with such an excession crueltie, in How the IsaMachine so much bloud, and with so tedious a Tribute, to bee alwayes troubled to get diams grew. Captines, for the feeding of their Gods, feeming vnto them a matter insupportable; yet left they weary, and Captines, for the feeding of their Gods, feeming white them a matter initiapportately yet left they could not en-not to follow and execute their rigorous Lawes, for the great awe the Ministers of these Idols dure the cruckso kept them in, and the cunning wherewith they abuled this poore people. But inwardly they tie of Satas, defired to be freed from so heavie a yoke. And it was a great providence of God; that the first Chapaza. which gaue them knowledge of the Law of Christ, found them in this disposition : for without doubt it feemed to them a good Law, and a good God, to bee ferued in this fort. Heereupon

a grave religious man in New Spaine told me, that when he was in that Countrey he had demanded of an ancient Indian, a man of qualitie, for what reason the Indians had so some received the Law of Iefus Christ, and left their owne, without making any other proofe, tryall, or dispute thereon, for it feemed they had changed their Religion, without any fufficient reason to moous them. The Indian aniwered him, Beleene not Father, that we have embraced the Law of Chrift fo rashly as they say for I will tell you, that we were alreadiewearie and discontented with such things 40 as the Idols commanded vs, and were determined to leave it, and to take another Law. But when as wee found that the Religion that you preached had no cruelties in it, and that it was fit for us, and but his t and good, we understood and beleened that it was the true Law, and so we received it willingly. Which answere of this Indian agrees well with that we reade in the first Discourse, that Fernand Cortes

fent to the Emperour Charles the fift, wherein hee reports, that after he had conquered the Citie of Mexico, being in Cuyoacan, there came Ambassadours to him from the Province and Common-wealth of Mechacan requiring him to fend them his Law, and that hee would teach them to understand it, because they intended to leave their owne, which seemed not good ento them, which Cortes granted, and at this day they are the best Indians, and the trueft Christians that are in New Spaine. The Spaniards that faw thefe cruell Sacrifices, refol-50 used with all their power to abolish so detestable and cursed a butchering of men, and the ra-

sher, for that in one night before their eyes they faw threefcore or threefcore and tenne Spamarde factificed, which had beene taken in a battaile given at the Conquest of Mexico: and ficed another time sher found written with a Coale in a Chamber in Tezenfeo thele wordes; Heere such a miserable man was Prisoner with his Companions whom they of Tezcusco did facrifice.

there happened a very strange thing vpon this subject, and yet true, beeing reported by men worthy of credit, which was that the Spaniards beholding these Sacrifices. lianing opened and drawne out the heartlot the lutte young man , and cast him from the rop of the stayres (as their custome was) when hee came at the bottome, hee faid to the Aman feeaker Spaniards in his Language, Knights, they have flaine mee, the which did greatly moone our arterhis heart men to horrour and pitie. It is no incredible thing, that having his heart pulled out, hee might is out. speake, seeing that Galen reports that it hath often chanced in the Sacrifice of beasts, after the Galen librates heart hath beene drawne out, and cast vpon the Altar, the beasts have breathed, year they did HE & Plate,

bray and cry out aloude, and sometimes did runne.

How the Dea will harh la-Indian Com-

In the first moneth, which in Peru they called Rayme, and answereth to our December, they made a most solemne feast, called Capacrayme, wherein they made many facrifices and ceremoboated to imi- nies, which continued many dayes : during the which, no stranger was suffered to becat the bolicus o fam. Court which was in Cufco. These dayes being past, they then gaue libertie to strangers to enter. terfair the Sat that they might be partakers of the feafts and facrifices, ministring to them in this manner. The erametes of the Manuscomes of the Sunne, which were a kinde of Nunnes of the Sunne, made little loaues of the flower of Mays, dyed and mingled with the bloud of white Sheepe, which they did facrifice that day; then presently they commanded that all strangers should enter, who set themselves that day; then pretently they commanded that an inaugus mount enter; who let themselves in order, and the Priests which were of a certaine Linge, defending from Lingappagain; gave to entry one a moriell of their imall loues, faying vnto them, that they gave thele pieces, to the end they flouid be control and confiderate with the lingua, and that they admitd them not to fixed nor O thinke any ill against the Ingua, but alwayes to beare him good affection, for that this piece should bee a witnesse of their intentions and will, and if they did not as they ought, bee would discouer them and bee aeainst them. They carried these small loaues, in great Platters of gold and silver appointed for that vie, and all did receive and eate these pieces, thanking the Sunne infinitely for so great a fauour which hee had done them, speaking wordes and making signes of great contentment and denotion: protefling that during their liues, they would neither doe nor thinke any thing against the Sunne nor the Ingua: and with this condition they received this foods of the Sunne, the which should remaine in their bodies for a witnesse of their fidelitie which they observed to the Sunne and to the Ingua their King. This manner of deuillish communicating they likewife vsed in the tenth moneth, called Cogaragms, which was September, in the folemne feaft which they called Citua, doing the like ceremonies. And befides this Communion (if it be lawfull to vie this word in so deuillish a matter) which they imparted to all strangers that came, they did likewise send of these loaves to all their Guacas, Sanctuaries, or Idols of the whole Realme, and at one instant they found people of all files, which came expressy to receive them, to whom they said (in delivering them) that the Sunne bad fent them that, in signe that bee would have them all to worship and boner bim, and likewise did send them in boner of the Caciques. Some perhaps will hold this for a fable and a fiction : yet is it most true, that since the Ingua Tupange (the which is heethat hath made most Lawes, Customes, and Ceremonies, as Nama did in Rome) this manner of Comnatur mase most navers, Sections, and Section of the Section of th tissic himselse more amply, let him reade the Relation which the Licenciate Polle did write,

ment vied in the Popish Church.

TI is a thing more worthy admiration, to heare speake of the Beast and solemnitie of the Comn.r. the Devill I munion which the Deuill himselfe, the Prince of Pride, ordained in Mexice, the which (alhath laboured though it be somewhat long) yet shall it not be from the purpose to relate as it is written by men of credite. The Mexicanes in the moneth of May, made their principall Feaft to their god Vitacounterrait the realf of the ziliputz.li, and two dayes before this Feaff, the Virgins whereof I have spoken (the which were flut vp and secluded in the same Temple, and were as it were Religione women) did mingle a quantitie of the feede of Beetes with roaffed Mays, and then they did mould it with honey, ma- 40 king an Idoll of that pafte, in bigneffe like to that of wood, putting in ftead of tyes, graines of greene glaffe, of blue, or white; and for teeth, graines of Mays, tet forth with all the ornament and furniture that I haue faid. This being finished, all the Noblemen came and brought it an exquilite and rich garment, like vnto that of the Idoll , wherewith they did attyre it. Being thus clad and deckt, they did fet it in an azured Chaire, and in a Litter to carry it on their shoulders. The morning of this feast being come, an houre before day, all the Maidens came forth attyred in white, with new ornaments, the which that day were called the fifters of their god Vitaliputali, they came crowned with Garlands of Mays reafted and parched, being like vinto Azahar or the flower of Orange, and about their necks they had great chaines of the same, which went bauldrickwise under their left arme. Their cheekes were dyed with Vermillion, their armes 50 from the elbow to the wrist, were coursed with red Parrots feathers. And thus attyred, they tooke the Idoll on their shoulders, carrying it into the Court, where all the young men were attyred in garments of an artificial red , crowned after the fame manner , like vnto the women. When as the Maidens came forth with the Idoll, the young men drew neere with much reuesence, taking the Litter wherein the Idoll was, voon their shoulders, carrying it to the foote of the staires of the Temple, where all the people did humble themselves, laying earth upon their heads, which was an ordinarie ceremonie which they did observe at the chiefe feast of their gods. This ceremonic being ended, all the people went in Procession with all the diligence and speede they could, going to a Mountayne which was a league from the Citie of Mexico, called Chapultoper, and there they made facrifices. Prefently they went from thence with like diligence, to 60 goe to a place neere vnto it, which they called Atlacnyanaya, where they made their fecond ftation : and from thence they went to another Burgh or Village a league beyond Curoacen, from whence they parted, returning to the Citie of Mexico, not making any other flation. They Went in this fort aboue foure leagues in three or foure houres, calling this Procession Tpsyna Vitza

## CHAP.S. Indian Transubstantiation, Communication, Confession, &c.

Louisie. Being come to the foot of the flaires, they fee downe the Brancard or Litter with the Idoll, tying great Cordes to the armes of the Brancard, then with great obferuance and reperence. they did draw up the Litter with the Idoll in it to the top of the Temple, fome drawing about. and others helping below, in the meane time there was a great noyfe of Flutes, Trumpets, Cornets, and Drummes. They did mount it in this manner, for that the stayres of the Temple were very steepe and narrow, to as they could not carry up the Litter upon their shoulders, white The Devill Hthey mounted up the Idolt, all the people flood in the Court with much reverence and feare, king that vn-Being mounted to the top , and that they had placed it in a little Lodge of Roses, which they then then tichnifian held readie, presently came the young men, which strewed many flowers of fundrie kindes, prodigious o 10 wherewith they filled the Temple both within and without. This done, all the Virgins came pinion of tranout of their Couent; bringing pieces of paste compounded of Beetes, and roasted Mays, subflantiation, which was of the same paste whereof their Idoll was made and compounded, and they were and the confeof the fathion of great bones. They deliuered them to the young men, who carried them vp tion adoration and laid them up, and laid them at the Idols feece, wherewith they filled the whole place, on telematithat it could receive no more. They talled these morsels of paste, the fielh and bones of Fire-on corpus this liquid. Having laid abroad these bones, presently came all the Ancients of the Temple, Priess, simuloiem-Leuites, and all the reft of the Ministers, according to their Dignities and Antiquities, for herein there was a strict order among it them, one after another, with their valles of divers ceffont with colours and workes, every one according to his Dignitie and Office, having Garlands woon rites beyond 20 their heads, and Chaines of flowers about their necks : after them came their gods and goddeffes any former whom they worshipt, of divers figures, attyred in the same liveries then putting themselves Paganisme, in in order about those motiels and pieces of paste, they vied certaine ceremonies with singing discace of the and dancing. By meanes whereof they were bleffed and confectated for the fielh and bones of ment, fallly This ceremonie and bleffing (whereby they were taken for the flesh and bones of the Idoll) be their Idoll and

ing ended, they honored those pieces in the same fort as their god. Then came forth the Sacrificers, who began the sacrifice of men, in the manner as hath beene spoken, and that day they cell so many did facrifice a greater number then at any other time, for that it was the most folemne feast thousand they observed. The facrifices being ended, all the young Men and Maides came out of the Tem- their bloud in

30 pleattyred as before, and being placed in order and ranke one directly against another, they fire and other-danced by Drummes the which founded in praise of the Feast, and of the Idoll which they did nistance. celebrate. To which fong all the most ancient and greatest noble-men did answere, dancing a disputing of bout them, making a great circle as their vse is, the young Men and Maides remayning alwayes. Christ nation the middelt. All the Citie came to this goodly spectacle, and there was a commandement versal body and ry friedly observed throughout all the Land, that the day of the feast of the Idoll Piradiputals, despiting and they should care no other meate, but this paste with hony, whereof the Idoll was made. And supplies the should be care at the point of day, and they should do no water not any other thing till syphash could be a should be sh after noone : they held it for an ill figne, yea for facrilege, to doe the contrarie: but after the nothing finer ceremonies ended, it was la wfull for them to eate any thing. During the time of this ceremonie, to transport 40 they hid the water from their little children, admonishing all such as had the vie of reason, not nothing more

to drinke any water; which if they did, the anger of God would come vpon them, and they contrarie to should die, which they did obserue very carrfully and Brielly. The ceremonies, dancing, and sense, reason, facrifice ended, they went to ynclothe themselves, and the Priefts and Superiors of the Temple religion, hutooke the Idoll of pafte, which they spoyled of all the ornaments it had, and made many pieces, manitie, or wherein more as well of the Idoll it felfe as of the Tronchons which were confectated, and then they gave to immuncho. them to the Communion, beginning with the greater, and continuing voto the rest, both Men, uer mankinder Women, and little Children; who received it with fuch teares, feare, and reverence, as it was an in all thefe, admirable thing, faving, that they did one the flesh and bones of God; wherewith they were grie- then this braued. Such as had any licke folkes demanded thereof for them, and carried it with great reue- and blondie So rence and veneration.

All fuch as did communicate, were bound to give the tenth of this feede, whereof the Idoll heredeferiwas made. The folemnitie of the Idolf being ended, an old man of great authoritie flept wp into bed. a high place, and with a loud voice preached their Law and Ceremonies.

THe father of Iyes would likewise counterfait the (Romish) Surrament of Confession, and in Of Confessions.

Of Confessions this Idolatries seeke to be honored with ceremonies very like to the manner of Christians. and Confessions. In Peru they held opinion, that all difeates and advertities came for the finnes which they had from which the committed : for remedie whereof they vied facrifices : moreouer, they confessed themselves ver- indistrivied. bally, almost in all Provinces, and had Confesors appointed by their Superiors to that end, there Reserved ea 60 were some sinnes reserved for the Superiors. They received penance, yea sometimes very sharply, see as in Papall especially when the Offendor was a poore man, and had nothing to give his Confesior. This of penance. fice of Confessor was likewise exercised by Women. The manner of these Confessor Sorceters whom they call Tchuri or Tchuri, bath beene most generall in the Provinces of Collassie. They hold opinion, that it is a haynous sinne to conceale any thing in confession. The Yeburs or Con-

olemnitie.

fessors discourred by lots, or by the view of some beast Hides, if any thing were concealed, and punished them with many blowes with a stone vpon the shoulders, vntill they had renealed all. chem after they gaue him penance, and did facrifice. They doe likewife rule this confession, when their children, wives, busbands, or their Caeques be icke, or in any great exploit. And when their Ingua was licke, all the Prounces confelled them jelues, chiefly those of the Prounce of Collas. The Contellors were bound to hold their Confethons fecret, but in certaine cafes limited. The finnes that they chiefly confest d, was first to kill one another out of warre, then to steale. to take another mans wife, to give poylon or forcerie to doe any harmer and they held it to be a gricuous finne, to be forgetfull in the reverence of their Gueca, or Oratories, not to observe the Fealts, or to I peake ill of the Ingua, and to disobey him. They accused not themselves of any se- 10 cret acts and linnes. But according to the report of iome Priefls, after the Christians came into that Country, they accused themselues of their thoughts. The Ingua confessed himselfe to no man, but onely to the Sunne, that hee might tell them to Wiracheca, and that hee might forgive them. After the /ngua had beene confessed, he made a certaine bath to cleanse himselfe in a running River, faying thele wordes : I have told my finnes to the Sunne, receive them, O thou River, and carry them to the Sea, where they may never appeare more. Others that confessed, vsed likewise these baths, with certaine ceremonies very like to those the Moores vie at this day, which they call Guadoy, and the Indians call them Opacuna. When it chanced that any mans children dyed, hee was held for a great linner, faying, that it was for his finnes that the fonne dyed before the father. And therefore those to whom this had chanced, after they were confessed, were bathed an in this bath called Opacuna, as is faid before. Then some detormed Indian, crooke-backt, and counterfait by nature, came to whip them with certaine Nettles. If the Sorcerers or Inchanters by their lots and distinations, affirmed that any ticke body should die, the sicke man makes no difficultie to kill his owne fonne, though he had no other, hoping by that meanes to escape death. faying, that in bis place be offered his sonne in sacrefice. And this crueltie hath beene practifed in of deuillish dis fome places, even ince the Christians came into that Country. In truthit is strange, that this custome of confesting their fecret sinnes, hath continued to long amongst them, and to doeso first penances, as, to fast, to give apparell, gold and silver, to remaine in the Mountagnes, and to receine many stripes upon the floulders. Our men fay, that in the Province of Chiquite, even at this day they meet with this plague of Confesors or Teburis, where as many ficke persons repaire vn- 30 to them : but now, by the grace of God, this people begins to fee cleerly the effect and great benefit of our Confession, whereunto they come with great deuction.

Penances.

I will report the manner of a ftrange confe ffion the Deuill hath invented at Ispon , as appeares by a Letter that came from thence, which is th thus : There are in Ocaca very great and high and fleepe Rocks, which have pricks or points on them, above two hundred fathorn high. A. mongst these Rocks there is one of these pikes or points to terribly high, that when the Xamabu. fis (which be Pilgrimes ) doe but looke vp vnto it, they tremble, and their baire stares, fo fearfull and horrible is the place. Vpon the top of this point there is a great rod of Iron of three fathom long, placed there by a strange denice, at the end of this rod is a billance eyed, whereof the scries are to bigge, as a man may fit in one of them : and the Goquis (which be Deuils in humane shape) 40 command these Pilgrimes to enter therein one after another, not leaving one of them : then with an engine or instrument which mooueth, by meanes of a wheele, they make this rod of Iron whereon the ballance is hanged, to hang in the aire, one of thele Kamabufir being fet in one of the feales of the ballance. And as that wherein the man is fet hath no counterposte on the other fide, it prefently hangeth downe, and the other rifeth vntill it meets with and toucheth the rod: then the Goques telleth them from the Rocke, that they must contesse themselves ot all the sinnes they have committed, to their remembrance, and that with a loud voyce, to the end that all the rest may heare him. Then prefently her beginneth to confesse, whilest some of the standers by doe laugh at the finnes they doe heare; and others figh, and at every finne they confesse, the other scale of the ballance falls a little, vntill that having told all his sinnes, it remaines equall with the 50 other, wherein the forrowfull penitent fits : then the Gogais turnes the wheele, and drawes the rol and baliance vnto him, and the Pilgrime comes forth; then enters another, vntill all have paffed. A laponous reported this after he was christned, saying, that her had beene in this pilgrimage, and entred the ballance feuen times, where he had confesfed himselfe publikely. Hee said moreouer, that if any one did conceale any finne, the emptie scale yeelded not : and if hee grew obitinate after inflance made to confesse himselfe, refusing to open all his sinnes, the Gognis cast him downe from the top, where in an instant he is broken into a thousand pieces. Yet this Chrinable Vocaion Itian, who was called Iohn, told vs, that commonly the feare and terror of this place is so great to all fuch as en er therein, and the danger they fee with their eyes, to fall out of the ballance, and to be broken in pieces, that feldom there is any one but discouers all his finnes. This place is called by another name Sangenotocore, that is to lay, the place of Confession.

The Priests of the Idols in Mexico were anointed in this lore; they anointed the body from the foote to the head , and all the haite likewise, which hung like treffes , or a Horie era techinate, for that they applyed this Voction wet and moit. Their haire grew to, as in time it

hung downe so their hammes, so heavily, that it was troublesome for them to beare it, for they Haire-Superdid neuer cut it, vntill they dyed, or that they were dispensed with for their great age, or being flicen. employed in governments or fome honorable charge in the Commonwealth. They carried their haire in treffes, of fixe fingers breadth, which they dyed blacke with the fume of Sapine of Pirre trees, or Roin; for in all Antiquitie it hath beene an offering they made vinto their Idols, and for this cause it was much esteemed and reverenced. They were alwayes dyed with this tincture from the foot to the head, fo as they were like vnto finning Negroes, and that was their ordinary Viction : yet when as they went to facrifice and give Incense in the Mountaines, or on the tops thereof, or in any darke and obfcure Caues, where their Idols were, they yied an other kinds of

vnction very different, doing certaine ceremonies to take away feare, and to give them courage. This vnction was made with divers little venemous beafts, as Spiders, Scorpions, Palmers, Salamanders and Vipers, the which the Boyes in the Colledges tooke and gathered together, wherein they were fo expert, as they were alwayes furnished when the Priet's called for them. The chiefe care of these Boyes was, to hunt after these beafts; if they went any other way, and by chance met with any of these beaits, they stayed to take them, with as great paine, as if their lives depended thereon. By the reason whereof the Indians commonly feared not these venemous beafts, making no more account then if they were not fo, having beene all bred in this exercife. To make an ointment of their beafts, they tooke them all together, and burnt them voon the harth of the Temple, which was before the Altar, untill they were confumed to affect then and did they put them in Morcers with much Tobacco or Petum (being an herbe that Nation vieth

much, to benum the fielh, that they may not feele their trauell) with the which they mingle the aftes, making them lofe their force; they did likewife mingle with thefe aftes, Scorpions, Spiders, and Palmers aliue, mingling all together, then did they put to it a certaine feede being grownd, which they call Ololuchqui, whereof the Indiant make a drinke to fee vitions, for that Vision ointe the vertue of this herbe is to deprive man of fenfe. They did likewife grinde with thefe afhes ment. blacke and havrie wormes, whole haire onely is venemous, all which they mingled together with blacke, or the fume of Rolin, putting it in small pots, which they set before their god, saying it was his meat. And therefore they called it a dinine meat. By meanes of this ointment Like lips, like they became Witches, and did fee and speake with the Devill. The Priefts being shibbered with Lettuce.

30 this ointment, loft all feare, putting on a Spirit of crueltie. By reason whereof they did very boldly kill men in their facrifices, going all alone in the night to the Mountaines, and into obfoure Caues, contemning all wilde beafts, and holding it for certaine and approped, that both Lions, Tigres, Serpents, and other furious beafts which breed in the Mountaines, and Foreits. fled from them, by the vertue of this Perum of their god.

And in truth, though this Petum had no power to make them flie, yet was the Deuils picture fufficient whereinto they were transformed. This Perum did also ferme to cure the ficke, and for children : and therefore all called it the duine Phylicke : and so they came from all parts to the Superiors and Priefts, as to their Saujours, that they might apply this dinine phyficke, wherewith they anointed those parts that were grieued. They faid that they felt hereby a notable ease,

40 which might be, for that Tobacco and Ololuchqui haue this propertie of themselves, to benum Benuming the fielh, being applyed in manner of an emplay fter, which must bee by a stronger reason being mingled with poyfons, and for that it did appeale and benum the paine, they held it for an effect of health, and a dinine vertue. And therefore ran they to these Priests as to hely men, who kept the blinde and ignorant in this error, perswading them what they pleased, and making them runne after their inuentions and deuillish ceremonies, their authoritie being such, as their wordes were fufficient to induce beliefe as an article of their Faith. And thus made they a thousand fuperfections among the vulgar people, in their manner of offering Incense, in cutting their haire. tving small flowers about their necks, and strings with small bones of Snakes, commanding them to bathe at a certaine time; and that they should watch all night at the harth, left the fire should

50 die, that they should eate no other bread but that which had beene offered to their gods, that they should upon any occasion repayre unto their Witches, who with certaine graines told for- Dissarious. tunes, and divined, looking into Keelers and Pailes full of water. The Sorcerers and Ministers of the Deuill vsed much to betmeare themselves. There were an infinite number of these Witches. Diginers, Enchanters, and other falle prophets. There remaynes yet at this day of this infection. although they bee fecret, not daring publikely to exercise their facrileges, deuillish ceremonies and superskitions, but their abuses and wickednesse are discovered more at large and particularly in the confessions made by the Prelates of Peru.

There is a kinde of Sorcerers among it the Indians allowed by the Kings Inguas , which are as Strange Sore it were Sooth-layers, they take vpon them what forme and figure they please, flying far through cores. 60 the aire in a short time, beholding all that was done. They talke with the Deuill, who answereth them in certaine stones or other things which they reuerence much. They serue as Conjurers, to tell what hath palled in the farthest parts, before any newes can come. As it hath chanced fince the Spaniards arrived there, that in the diffance of two or three hundred leagues, they have knowne the Mutinies, Battailes, Rebellions, and Deaths, both of Tyrants, and of

Of the abomiwhich the

those of the Kings partie, and of private men, the which have beene knowne the same day they chanced, or the day after, a thing impossible by the course of nature. To worke this distination, they that themselves into a house, and became drunke vntill they lost their senses, a day after they answered to that which was demanded. Some affirme they vie certaine Victions. The Indians fay, that the old women doe commonly vie this office of witchcraft, and specially those of one Province, which they call Coaillo, and of another Towne called Manchey, and of the Prouince of Guarochiri. They likewise shew what is become of things stollen and lost. There are of these kindes of Sorcerers in all parts, to whom commonly doe come the Anaconas, and Cine. which serve the Spaniards, and when they have lost any thing of their Masters, or when they defire to know the fuccesse of things past or to come, as when they goe to the Spaniards Cities for their private affaires, or for the publike, they demand if their voyage shall bee prosperous . if they shall be sick, if they shall die, or returne sate, if they shall obtaine that which they pretend: and the Witches or Corj rersanswer, Yea, or No, having first spoken with the Deuill, in an obfoure place : fo as these Anaconas do well heare the found of the voyce, but they fee not to whom these Conjurers speake, neither doe they understand what they say. They make a thousand ceremonies and facrifices to this effect, with the which they mocke the Deuill and grow exceeding drunke, for the doing whereof, they particularly vie an herb called Villen, the juyce whereof they mingle with their Chica, or take it in some other fort.

"He Indians had an infinite number of other ceremonies and customes, which refembled to 10

the ancient Law of Mefes, and some to those which the Moores vie, and some approched

necre to the Law of the Golpell, as their Bathes or Opacuna, as they call them : they did walh

Of other Ceremoni sa d Customes of th : Indians. which are like vnto curs. Chap. 27-Mexican Bap-

themselves in water, to clente them from their finnes. The Mexicans had also amongst them a kinde of Baptifme, the which they did with ceremonie, cutting the eares and members of young children new borne, counterfaiting in fome fort the Circumcifion of the Jewes. This ceremonie was done principally to the formes of Kings and Noblemen : prefently upon their birth the Priefts did wash them, and did put a little Sword in the right hand, and in the left a Target, And to the Children of the vulgar fort, they put the markes of their offices, and to their Daughters inftruments to fpin, knit, and labour. This ceremonic continued four dayes, being made before Marriage co fome Idoll. They contracted marriage after their manner, whereof the Licenciate Pollo hathe in written a whole Treatife, and I will speake somewhat thereon hereafter. In other things their cultomes and ceremonies have fome thew of reason. The Mexicans were married by the hands of their Priests in this fort, The Bridegroome and the Bride stood together before the Priest, who tooke them by the hands, asking them if they would marry ; then having understood their wills, he tooke a corner of the vaile wherewith the woman had her head couered, and a corner of the mans gowne the which he tyed together on a knot, and foled them thus tyed to the Bridegroomes house, where there was a harth kindled, and then he caused the wife to goe seven times about the harth, and to the married couple fate downe together, and thus was the marriage contracked. The Mexicans were very jealous of the integritie of their wives : fo as if they found they were not as they ought to bee (the which they knew either by fignes or dishonest wordes) they 40 prefently gave notice thereof to their fathers and kinsfolks of their wives, to their great shame and dishonor, for that they had not kept good guard over them. When they went to the house they made an Inventorie of all the man and wife brought together, of prouisions for the house, of land, of jewels and ornaments, which Inventories every father kept, for if it chanced they made any divorce (as it was common among it them when they agree not) they divided their goods according to the portion that every one brought, every one having libertie in fuch a case, to marry whom they pleased : and they gave the Daughters to the Wife, and the Sonnes to the Husband. It was defended upon pame of death, not to marry againe together, the which they observed yesy strictly. And although it seeme that many of their ceremonies agree with ours, yet differ they much for the great abomination they mingle therewithall. It is common and generall to 50 have vivally one of these three things, either Crueltie, Filthinesse, or Slouth : for all their ceremonies were cru: Il and hurefull, as to kill men and to spill bloud; or filthy and beastly, as to eate and drinke to the name of their Idols, and also to pille in the honour of them, carrying them vpon their shoulders, to anoint and befmeare themselves filthily, and to doe a thousand fores of villanies, which were at the leaft, vaine, ridiculous, and idle, and more like the actions of children. then of men. Whereas the temporall power was greatest, there superstition bath most increafed, as we fee in the Realmes of Mexico and Cufeo, where it is incredible to fee the number of Idols they had : for within the Citie of Mexico there were about three hundred. Mango Ingus Tupa gui, among it the Kings of Cufco, was he that most augmented the service of their Idols, inuenting a thousand kindes of sacrifices, feasts, and ceremonies. The like did King Iscoals in 60 Mexico, who was the fourth King. There was also a great number of superstitions and facrifices in other Nations of the Indians, as in the Province of Guatimala, at the Hands in the new Kingdome, in the Prounce of Chille, and others that were like Commonwealths and Comminalties. But it was nothing in respect of Mexico and Cufco, where Satan was as in Rome, or in his

Manges man-

The Inquas Lords of Peru, had two kindes of Feaths. Some were ordinarie, which fell our Feeth cerebras in certayne moneths of the yeere : and others extraordinarie , which were for certayne toddy themes caules of importance, as when they did crowne a new King, when they begame callo unin. fome warre of importance, when they had any great need of water or drought, or or the Duili ther like things. For the ordinary Feafls, wee mult vnderfland, that enery moneth of the the myftryof yeere they made Feafts, and divers Sacrifices, and although all of them had this alike, that the holy Frinte they offered a hundred sheepe: yet in colour, and in forme they are very diners. In the first rive charges moneth which they call Rayme, which is the moneth of December, they made their first Feast. Report teath. which was the principall of all others, and for that cause they called it Capacrayme, which is to 10 fay, A rich and principall Feast. In this Feast they offered a great number of sheepe and Lambes

in Sacrifice, and they burnt them with fweet wood, then they caused Gold and Silver to bee brought vpon certayne theepe, fetting vpon them three Images of the Sanne, and three of the Thunder, the Father, the Sonne, and the Brother. In their Fealls they dedicated the Inguas children, putting Guaras, or Enfignes vpon them, and they pierced their eares : then fome old man did whip them with flings, and annoynted their faces with bloud, all in figure that they should be true Knights to the Ingua. No ftranger might remayne in Cufco during this moneth, and this Feath, but at the end thereof they entred, and they gave vnto them pieces of the palte of Mays with the bloud of the Sacrifice, which they did eate in figne of confederation with the Inguit, as hath beene faid before. It is strange that the Deuill after his manner hath brought a Tribritie

20 into Idolatry, for the three Images of the Sunne called Apomti, Churunti, and Intiquaoqui which Indian Trining. fignifieth Father and Lord Sunne, the Sonne Sunne, and the Brother Sunne. In the like manner. they named the three Images of Chuquilla, which is the God that rules in the Region of the Ayre, where it Thunders, Raines and Snowes. I remember, that beeing in Cuguifaca, an honourable Priest shewed me an information, which I had long in my hands, whereit was prooued that there was a certayne Guaca or Oratory, whereas the Indians did worthin an Idoll called Tangatanga, which they faid was one in three, and three in one. Comming then to the Feaft of the fecond moneth, which they called Camey, betides the Sacrifices which they made, they Camp feath did cast the ashes into the River, following five or fixe leagues after, praying it to carry them into the Sea, for that the Verochoca should there receive this present. In the third, fourth and

30 fift moneth, they offered a hundred blacke sheepe, speckled, and grey, with many other things, which I omit for being too tedious. The fixt moneth is called Hauncuzqui Aymorey, which answereth to May, in the which they facrificed a hundred sheepe more, of all colours : in this Moone and moneth, which is when they bring May from the fields into the house, they made a Feast, which is yet very vivall among the Indians, and they doe call it Armores.

This reaft is made comming from the Chara or Farme vnto the house, saying certaine Songs, and praying that the Mays may long continue, the which they call Manacora. They take a certayne portion of the most fruitfull of the Maysthat growes in their Farmes , the which they put in a certayne Granier which they doe call Pirna, with certayne Ceremonies, watching three nights: they put this Mays in the richeft garments they have, and being thus wrapped and dref-40 fed, they worthip this Pirua, and hold it in great veneration, faying it is the Mother of the Mays of their Inheritances, and that by this meanes the Mays augments and is preferred. In this moneth they make a particular Sacrifice, and the Witches demand of this Pirna, if it hath ftrength fufficient to continue vntill the next yeere : and if it antiweres No. then they carry this Mays to the Farme to burne, whence they brought it, according to enery mans power; then make they another Pirus, with the same Ceremonies, saying, that they renew it, to the end the Seed of Mays may not perilh, and if it answers that it hath force sufficient to last longer, they leave it vntill the next yeere. This foolish vanitie continueth to this day, and it is very common amongft the Indians to have these Piruss , and to make the Feast of Amorey. The seventh moneth answereth to June, and is called Ancaycuzqui Intiraymi, in it they made the Feath that is called Intiraymi, in the which they facrificed a hundred sheepe called Guanacos, and faid it was the Feast of the Sunne. In this moneth they made many Images of Quinna wood carued, all Imirapai feast attired with rich garments, and they made their dancings which they doe call Caye. At this

Feath they call flowers in the high wayes, and thither the Indians came painted, and their No-

blemen had small plates of Gold upon their beards, and all did ting; we must understand that this Feast falleth almost at the same time, when as the Christians observe the Solemnitie of the boly Corpus Christians Sacrament, which doth refemble it in tome fort, as in dancing, finging and reprefentations. And day recemble for this cause there hath beene, and is yet among the Indians (which celebrated a Feaft formewhat like to outs of the holy Sacrament) many Superfittions in celebrating this ancient Peaft of Intiraymi. The eight moneth is called Chabua Huarqui, in the which they did burne a hundred theep 60 more, all grey, of the colour of Viscacha, according to the former order, which moneth doth anfwere to our Iuly. The ninth moneth was called Tapagnis, in which they burne an hundred sheepe more, or a Chefnut colour; and they doe likewife kill and burne a thouland Cuyes, to the end that neither the Froft, the Ayre, the water, nor the Sunne should hart their Farmes; and

## 1046 Peruan Drunken Feast Situa; Itu-fast and procession Mexican Inbilee. LIRV

they burnt a hundred white sheepe that had sleeces. In this moneth which answereth to Sena tember, they made the Feast called Situa, in this manner. They aftembled together the first day of the Moone before the rifing thereof; and infeeing it they cryed aloude, carrying Torches in their hands, and faying, Let all harme goe away, striking one another with their Torches. They that did this, were called Panconcos: which being done, they went to the common Bath, to the Rivers and Fountaines, and every one to his owne Bath, fetting themselves to drinke foure dayes together. In this moneth the Mamacomas of the Sunne made a great number of small Loaues with the bloud of the Sacrifices, and gaue a piece to enery firanger; yea, they fent to enery Gnaca throughout the Realme, and to many Curacus, in figne of confederation and loyaltie to the Sun and the Ingua, as hath beene faid.

The Bathes, crunkennefle and some Relickes of this Feast Suna, remayne even unto this day. 10 in some places, with the Ceremonies a little different, but yet very secretly, for that these chife and principall Feasts have ceased. The eleventh moneth Homaraymi Punchaiguis, wherein they factficed a hundred theepe more. And if they wanted water, to procure raine, they fet a blacke theepe tyed in the middeft of a Plaine, powring much Chica about it, and giving it nothing to eate vntill it rayned, which is practited at this day in many places, in the time of our October. The twelfth and last moneth was called Aymara, wherein they did likewise facrifice a hundred sheepe, and made the Feast called Raymicantara Raquis. In this moneth which answered to our November, they prepared what was necessary for the Children that should bee made Novices, the moneth following, the Children with the old men made a certayne shew, with rounds 20 . and turnings: and this Feaft was called Ituragmi, which commonly they make when it raines too much, or too little, or when there is a plague.

Among the extraordinary Feafts which were very many, the most famous was that which they called Tim. This Feast Tim hath no prefixed time nor leafon, but in time of necessities To prepare themselves thereunto, all the peopletasted two dayes, during the which they did neither company with their wines , nor eate any meate with Sale or Garlicke , nor drinke any Chica. All did affemble together in one place, where no ftranger was admitted, nor any bealt : they had Garments and Ornaments, which ferued onely for this Feaft. They marched very quietly in Procession , their heads conered with their Veiles, sounding of Drummes, without speaking one to another. This continued a day and a night; then the day 30 following they danced and made good cheere for two dayes and two nights together, faying, that their Prayer was accepted. And although that this Feaff is not vied at this day, with all this ancient Ceremony, yet commonly they make another which is very like, which they call Ayma, with Garments that serue onely to that end, and they make this kinde of Procession with their Drummes, having fasted before, then after they make good cheere, which they vfually doe in their vrgent necessities. And although the Indians forbeare to sacrifice bealts, orother things publikely, which cannot be hidden from the Spaniards, yet doe they still vie many Ceremonies that have their beginnings from these Featts and ancient Superstitions : for at this day they doe couertly make this Featt of Yin, at the dances of the Featt of the Sacrament, in making the dances of Lyamallama, and of Guacon, and of others, according to their ancient Ce- 40

Of the feaft of He Mexicans have beene no leffe curious in their Feafts and Solemnities, which were of I fmall charge, but of great effusion of mans bloud. We have before spoken of the principall Feast of Untaliputali, after the which the Feast of Tezcalipuca was most folemnized. This Feast fell in May, and in their Kalender they called it Tozcolr: it fell enery four evere with the feaft of Penance, where there was given full indulgence and remission of finnes. In this day they did facrifice a Captine which refembled the Holl Texcalipses, it was the nineteenth day of May: vpon the Euen of this Feaft, the Noblemen came to the Temple, bringing a new Garment like vnto that of the Idell, the which the Priest pnt vpon him , having first taken off his other Ger- so ments, which they kept with as much, or more reuerence then wee doe our Ornaments. There were in the Coffers of the Idoll many Ornaments, Iewels, Earerings, and other Riches, as Bracelets, and precious Feathers which ferued to no other vie, but to be there, and was worshipped as their God it felfe. Belides the Garment wherewith they worthinged the Idoll that day, they put upon him certayne enfignes of Feathers, with fannes, shadowes and other things, being thus attired and furnished, they drew the Curtayn or Veile from before the doore, to the end he might be seene of all men ; then came forth one of the chiefe of the Temple, attyred like to the Idoll, carrying flowres in his hand, and a Flute of earth, having a very flarge found, and turning towards the East, he founded it, and then looking to the West, North and South he did the like. And after he had thus founded towards the foure parts of the World (flewing that both they that were prefent and absent did heare him) he put his finger into the Ai, e, and then gathered vp earth, which hee put in his mouth, and did eate it in figne of adoration. The like did all they that were present, and weeping, they fell flat to the ground, inuocating the dark reffe of the night, and the winds, intreating them not to leave them, nor to forget the n, or elfe to take away

## CHAP. 5. Rogations for rain. Tezcalipuas Litter-procession. Manguey whippings. 1047

their lines, and free them from the labours they endured therein. Theenes, Adulterers, and Murcherers, and all other offenders had great feare and heavineffe, whilest this Flute sounded; to as some could not dissemble nor hide their offences. By this meanes they all demanded no other thing of their God, but to have their offences concealed, powring forth many teares, with great repentance and forrow, offering great flore of Incense to appeale their Gods. The couragious and valiant men, and all the old Souldiers, that followed the art of Warre, hearing this Flute, demanded with great denotion of God the Creator, of the Lord for whom we line, of the Sun, and of other their Gods, that they would give them victory against their enemies, & strength to take many Captines, there with to honour their Sacrifices. This Ceremony was done ten dayes beto fore the Feast : During which ten dayes the Priest dil found this Flate, to the end that all might doe this worship in eating of earth, and demand of their Idoll what they pleased; they every day made their Prayers, with their eyes lift up to Heauen, and with fighs and groanings, as men that were grieved for their finnes and offences. Although this contrition was onely for teare of the corporall punishment that was given them, and not for any feare of the eternall, for they certainly beleeved there was no such severe punishment in the other life. And therefore they Nofeare but of offered themselves voluntarily to death, holding opinion that it is to all men an affured rest. The first day of the Feath of this Idoll Texcalpuca beeing come, all they of the Citie affem-

bled together in a Court, to celebrate likewise the Feast of the Kalender, whereof we have already spoken, which was called Toxcoalth, which signifies Admithing: which Feast was not 20 made to any other end, but to demand raine, in the fame manner that wee folemnize the Rogations: and this Feaft was alwayes in May, which is the time that they have most need of rame in those Countreyes. They beganne to celebrate it the ninth of May, ending the nineteenth. The lait day of the Featt the Prieits drew forth a Litter well furnished with Curtaynes and Pendants of divers falhions. This Litter had to many armes to hold by as there were Ministers to carrie it, All which came forth besmeered with blacke and long haire, halfe in treffes with white ftrings, and attyred in the livery of the Idoll. Vpon this Litter they fet the personage of the Idoll, appointed for this Feaft, Which they called the refemblance of their God Te zealipuca, and taking it voon their shoulders, they brought it openly to the foot of the staires: then came forth the young menand Maydens of the Temple, carrying a great coard wreathed of chaines 30 of reafted Mays, with the which they environed the Litter, and putting a chaine of the fame about the Idols necke, and a Garland vpon his head. They called the coard Toxcalt, fignifying the drought and barrennesse of the time. The young men came wrapped in red Curtaines, with Garlands and chaines of roafted Mays. The Maydes were clothed in new Garments, wearing chaines about theirs neckes of roafted Mays; and voon their heads Mytres made of rods coursed with this Mays, they had their feet couered with feathers, and their armes and cheekes painted. They brought much of this roafted Mays, and the chiefe men put it vpon their heads, and about their neckes, taking flowres in their hands. The Idoll being placed in his Litter, they ftrewed round about a great quantitie of the boughes of Manguey, the leaves whereof are large and

pricking.

This Litter being set vpon the religious mens shoulders, they carried it in Procession within the circuit of the Court, two Priests marching before with Cenfors, giving often Incente to the Idoll; and every time they gave Incense, they lifted up their armes as high as they could to the Idoll, and to the Sunne, faying, that they lifted up their Prayers to Heaven, even as the smoke afcended on high. Then all the people in the Court turned round to the place whither the Idoll went, every one carrying in his hand new coards of the threed of the Manguey. , a fadome long, with a knot at the end, and with them they whipped themselues vpon the shoulders; even as they doe here vpon holy Thursday. All the wals of the Court and Battlements were full of boughes and flowres, fo fresh and pleasant, asit did give a great contentment. This Procession being ended, they brought the Idoll to his viuil place of abode. Then came a great multitude of 50 people with flowres, dreffed in divers forts, wherewith they filled the Temple and all the Court,

To as it feemed the ornament of an Oratory. All this was put in order by the Priests, the young men administring these things vnto them from without. The Chappell or Chamber where the

Idoll remay ned was all this day open without any Veile.

This done, enery one came and offered Curtines, and pendants of Sandally , precious Stones, Iewels, Incence, sweet wood, Grapes, or eares of Mays, Quailes : and finally, all they were accuftomed to offer in fuch folemnities. When as they offered Quailes (which was the poore mans offering) they yeld this ceremonie, they defluered them to the Priests, who taking them, pulled off their heads, and cast them at the foote of the Altar, where they lost their bloud, and to they did of all other things which were offered. Euery one did offer meate and fruite accor-60 ding to their power, the which was laid at the foote of the Altar, and the Ministers gathered

them up, and carried them to their Chambers. This folemne offering done, the people went to dinner, euery one to his village or house, leaving the feaft suspended vntill after dinner. In the meane time, the yong Men and Maidens of the Temple, with their ornaments, were builed to ferue the Idoll, with all that was appointed for him to eate : which meate was prepared by

CHAP.S. Sower fauce to sweet meat. Temple and Drum-bels. Comedies & Masks. 1040

other women, who had made a vow that day to ferue the Holl. And therefore fuch as had made this vow, came by the point of day, offering themselves to the Deputies of the Temple, than they might command them what they would have done, the which they did carefully performe. They did prepare such variety of meates, as it was admirable. This meate being ready, and the houre of dinner come, all these Virgins went out of the Temple in procession, energone carrying a little basket of bread in her hand, and in the other, a dish of these meates; before them marched an old man, like to a steward, with a pleasant habit, he was cloathed in a white Surples downe to the calues of his legges, vpona doublet without fleenes of red leather, like to a tacket, he carried wings instead of fleeues, from the which hung broad ribbands, at the which did hang a small Calibase or pumpion, which was coursed with flowers, by little holes that were made in it, and within it were many superstitious things. This old man thus attyred, marched very humbly and heavily before the preparation, with his head declining: and comming neere the foote of the flares, he made a great obeifance and reuerence. Then going on the one fide, the Virgins drew neere with the meate, presenting it in order one after another, with great reuerence. This service presented, the old man returned as before, leading the Virgins into their conuent. This done, the yong men and ministers of the Temple, came forth and gathered vp this meane, the which they carried to the Chambers of the chiefe Priests of the Temple, who had failed fine dayes, eating onely once a day, and they had also abitained from their wines, not once going out of the Temple in thefefine dayes. During the which they did whip themfelues once going our or the rempts in the people for for they called it) what they could, a rigoroully with cords; they did eate of this dinine meate (for fo they called it) what they could, a rigoroully with cords; they did eater of All the people begins direct they did believe they could, a contract they could they could they could they contract they could they contract they could they could they could they contract they could they was it lawfull for any other to eate thereof. All the people having dined, they affembled againe in the court to fee the end of the feath, whither they brought a captine, which by the space of a whole yeare, had represented the Idoll, being artired, decked, and honoured, as the Idollie felfe, and doing all reuerence vinto him, they deliuered him into the hands of the fact ficers, who at that instant presented themselves, taking him by the feete and hands. The Pope did open his flomacke, and pull out his heart, then did he lift vp his hand as high as he could, flowing it to the Sunne, and to the Idoll, as hath beene faid. Having thus facrificed him that represented the the summer and to the summer and the fung with Drummes and other instruments, on the which the chiefe Priests did play and found. 30 Then came all the Noblemen with enfignes and ornaments like to the yong men, who danced round about them. They did no: vfually kill any other men that day, but him that was facrificed, yet every fourth years they had others with him, which was in the years of Jubile and full pardons. After Sunne set, euery one being satisfied with sounding, eating, and drinking, the Virgins went all to their convent, they tooke great diffes of earth full of bread mixt with hony, couered with small panniers, wrought and fashioned with dead mens heads and bones, and they carried the collation to the Holl, mounting up to the Court, which was before the doors of the Oratorie: and having fet them downe, they retired in the same order as they came, the steward going still before. Presently came forth all the yong men in order, with canes or reedes in their lands, who began to runne as fall as they could to the top of the faires of the Temple, 40 who should come first to the dishes of the collation. The Elders or chiefe Priests obscued him that came first, second, third, and fourth, without regarding the rest. This collation was likewife all carried away by the yong men, as great Relicks. This done, the foure that arrived first were placed in the midit of the Ancients of the Temple, bringing them to their chambers with much honour, praising them, and giving them ornaments; and from thence forth they were respected and renerenced as men of marke. The taking of this collation being ended, and the feast celebrated with much joy and noife, they dismiffed all the yong men and maides which had ferued the Idoll; by meanes whereof they went one after another, as they came forth. All the fmall children of the Colledges and Schooles, were at the gate of the court, with bottomes of rushes and hearbs in their hands, which they cast at them, mocking and laughing, as of them that 50 came from the feruice of the Idoll: they had liberty then to dispose of themselves at their pleafure, and thus the Feast ended.

Lthough I have fooken fufficiently of the service the Mexicans did vato their gols; yet A Lithough I haue fooken tufficiently or the seruse our Constant, which was the god of riches, will I speake something of the feast they called Queracoust, which was the god of riches, will I speake something of the far they called Queracoust, which was the god of riches, and they will be a server of the Marchanes bought a slave which those of the which was folemnifed in this manner. Fortie dayes before the Marchants bought a flaue celebrate.ch.30 well proportioned, without any fault or blemish, either of sicknesse or of hurt, which they did attire with the ornaments of the Idoll, that he might represent it forty dayes. Before his cloathing they did clenfehim, washing him twice in a lake, which they called the lake of the god; and being purified, they attired him like the Idoll. During these forty dayes, he was much respected for his sake whom he represented. By night they did imprison him (as hath beene faid) left he should flye, and in the morning they tooke him out of prison, setting him vpon an eminent place, where they ferued him, giuing him exquitite meates to cate. After he had eaten, they put a chaine of flowers about his necke, and many nolegates in his hand. He

had a well appointed guard, with much people to accompany him. When he went through the Citie, he went dancing and finging through all the ffreetes, that he might be knowne for the rejemblance of their god, and when he beganne to fing, the women and little children came forth of their houles to falute him, and to offer vnto him as to their god. Two old men of the Ancients of the Temple, came vnto him nine dayes before the feast, and humbling themselves before him, they faid with a low and submiffe voyce, Sir, you must understand that nine dayes bence the exercise of dancing and singing doth end, and thou must then dye; and then he must anfwer, In a good houre. They call this ceremony, Neyola Maxiltleath, which is to fay, the adwertisement : and when they did thus aduertise him, they tooke very carefull heede whither he 10 were faid, or if he danced as joyfully as he was accultomed, the which if he did not as cheere-

fully as they defired, they made a foolish superstition in this manner. They presently tooke the fact:ficing rafors, the which they washed and clented from the bloud of men, which remained of the former facrifices. Of this washing they made a drinke mingled with another liquor made of Cacao giving it him to drinke; they faid that this would make him forget what had beene faid ynto him, and would make him in a manner insensible, returning to his former dancing and mirth. They faid moreouer, that he would offer himselfe cheerefully to death, being inchanted wich this drinke. The cause why they fought to take from him this heaninesse, was, for that they held it for an ill augure, and a fore-telling of some great harme. The day of the Feast being come, after they had done him much honour, fung, and given him incense, the facrificers tooke

30 him about midnight and did facrifice him, as hath beene faid, offering his heart vn10 the Moone. the which they did afterwards cast against the Idoll, letting the body fall to the bottome of the staires of the Temple, where such as had offered him tooke him vp, which were the Marchants, whose feath it was. Then having carried him into the chiefest mans house amongst them, the body was dreft with divers fawces, to celebrate (at the breake of day) the banquet and dinner of the feast, having first bid the Idoll good morrow, with a small dance, which they made whilst the day did breake, and that they prepared the facrifice. Then did all the Marchants affemble at this banket, especially those which made it a trafficke to buy and fell slaues, who were bound every yeare to offer one, for the refemblance of their god. This Idoll was one of the most hono- Stately Temred in all the Land : and therefore the Temple where he was, was of a great authoritie. There ple,

30 were threescore staires to ascend up unto it, and on the top was a Court of an indifferent largeneffe, very finely dreft and plastered, in the middt whereof, was a great round thing like nto an Ouen, having the entrie low and narrow : so as they must stoope very low that she enter moit. This Temple had Chambers and Chappels as the rest, where there were congents of Priells, yong Men, Maides, and Children, as hath beene faid: and there was one Priest alone refident continually, the which they changed weekely : For although there were in every one of thele Temples, three or foure Curates or Ancients, yet did every one ferue his weeke without parting, His charge that weeke (after he had instructed the children) was to strike vp a Drum Drums vied in every day at the Sunne fetting, to the same end that we are accustomed to ring to Euensong, stead of Bels, This Drum was fuch as they might heare the house found thereof throughout all the parts of the

ao Citie, then every man shut wp his merchandise, and retired vuto his house, and there was so great a filence, as there feemed to be no living creature in the Towne. In the morning when as the day began to breake, they began to found the Drum, which was afigne of the day beginning, fo as trauellers and firangers attended this fignall to begin their journies, for till that time it was not lawfull to goe out of the Citie.

There was in this Temple a Court of reasonable greatnesse, in the which they made great dances, and pastimes, with games or comedies the day of the Idols feast; for which purpose there was in the middeft of this court a Theatre of thirty foote fquare very finely decked and trimmed, the which they decked with flowers that day, with all the art and invention that might be, being inuironed round with Arches of dives flowers and feathers, and in some places there 50 were tied many small Birds, Conies, and other tame beafts. After dinner all the people asembled in this place, and the Players presented themselves, and plaied Comedies, fome counterfeit Comedies the deafe, and the rheumatike, others the lame, fome the blinde, and without hands, which came to seeke for cure of the Idoll, the deafe answered confusedly, the rheumaticke did cough, the lame halted, telling their miseries and griefes, wherewith they made the people to laugh; others come forth in the forme of little bealts, some were attired like Snailes, others like Toades, and fome like Lizards : then meeting together, they told their offices, and enery one retyring to his place, they founded on small flutes, which was pleasant to heare. They likewise counterfeited Butterflies and small Birds of divers colours, and the children of the Temple represented these formes, then they went into a little Forrest planted there for the nonce, where the Priests 60 of the Temple drew them forth with inftruments of mulicke. In the meane time they vied ma-

ny pleasant speeches, some in propounding, others in defending, wherewith the assistants were pleatantly intertained. This done, they made a Maske or Mummerie with all thefe perionages, and so the Featt ended : the which were vsually done in their princirall Featls.

CHAP.

Of the Feaft

#### CHAP. VI.

Civill Customes and Arts of the INDIANS taken out of Acost As 6. Boooke.

Of the suppuration of times and the Kalende h Mevi cans vied.cha.z.

Mexican yeare

Will first shew in what fort the Mexicans counted and divided their yeers, their moneths, their Kalender, their computations, their worlds and ages. They diuiled the yeare into eighteene moneths, to which they gaue twentie dayes, wherein the three hundred and threefcore dayes are accomplished, not compre. to hending in any of these Moneths the fine daies that remaine, and make the yeare perfect. But they did reckon them apart, and called them the dayes of sothing; Reis. moneths, during the which, the people did not any thing, neither went they to their Temples, but oc-

Their Kalen-

cupied themseliues onely in visiting one another, and so spent the time: the facrificers of the Temple did likewise cease their facifices. These fine dayes being past, they began the computation of the yeare, whereof the first moneth and beginning was in March, when the leaves began to grow greene, although they tooke three dayes of the moneth of February; for the first day of their yeare was, as it were, the fix and twentieth day of February, as appeareth by their Kalender, within the which ours is likewise comprehended and contained with a very ingenious Art, which was made by the ancient Indians that knew the first Spaniards. I have leene 20 this Kalender, and haue it yet in my custodie, which well deserve the fight, to understand the discourse and industrie the Mexican Indians had. Euerie one of these eighteene moneths had his proper name, and his proper picture, the which was commonly taken of the principall Feast that was made in that moneth, or from the diversitie of times, which the yeare caused in that moneth. They had in this Kalender certaine daies marked and diffinguished for their feafls, And they accounted their weekes by thirteene dayes, marking the daies with a Zero or cipher, which they multiplied vnto thirteene, and then began to count, one, two, &cc. They did like See this in the wife marke the yeares of these wheeles, with foure fignes or figures, attributing to everie yeare

MevicarChro- a peculiar figne, whereof one was of a House, another of a Conie, the third of a Reede, and the nicle in their fourch of a Flint. They painted them in this fort, noting by those figures the yeare that did to owne figures. runne, saying of fo many Houses, of somany Floris, of such a trbeele, happened such a thing. For we must understand that their wheele, which was an age, contained source weekes of yeares, eueric weeke containing thirtcene yeares, which in all made fiftie two yeares. In the midft of this wheele they painted a Sun, from the which went foure beames or lines in crosse to the circumference of the wheele, and they made their course, euen as the circumference was divided into four equall parts, everie one with his line, having a diffinct colour from the rest, and the source colours

which had all their fignes or particular figures, of a House, a Conie, a Reede, or a Flint, noting by enery figne a yeare, and upon the head of this figne they painted what had happened that yeare. And therefore I did fee in the Kalender mentioned the yeare when the Spaniards entered 40 Mexico, marked by the picture of a manclad in red, after our manner, for such was the habit of the first Spaniard, whom Fernando Cortes sent, at the end of the two and fiftie yeares, which finished the wheele. They vsed a pleasant ceremonie, which was, the last night they did breake all their veffels and stuffe, and put out their fire, and all the lights, faying, that the world should end at the finishing of one of these wheeles, and it might be at that time: for (laid they) seeing the world must then end, what neede is there to proude meare to eate, and therefore they had no further neede of Veffels nor fire. Vpon this conceit they paffed the night in great feare, laying, it might happen there would be no more day, and they watched verie catefully for the day; when they faw the day begin to breake, they prefently beat many Drums, and founded Cornets, Flutes, and other inflruments of ioy and gladnesse, saying, that God did yet prolong the so time with another age, which were fifthe two yeares. And then began another wheele. The first day and beginning of this age they tooke new fire, and bought new Vellels to drelle their meate, and all went to the high Priest for this new fire, having first made a solemne Sacrifice, and given

were, Greene, Blew, Red, and Yellow: every portion of these foure had thirteene separations

Lthough this supputation of times practifed amongst the Mexicans, be ingenious enough Ingua account Aand certaine, for men that had no learning; yet in my opinion they wanted discourse and confideration, having not grounded their computation according wnto the course of the Moone, nor distributed their months accordingly, wherein those of Pers have farre surpassed them: for 60 they divided their yeare into as manie daies, perfectly accomplished as we doe here, and into eation of times. Ewelue moneths or Moones, in the which they imploied and confumed the eleuen daies that remaind of the Moone, as Polo writes. To make the computation of their yeare fure and certaine, they yfed this industrie; vpon the Mountaines which are about the Citie of Cufce (where the

thanks for the comming of the day, and prolongation of another age. This was their manner of

accounting their yeares, moneths, weekes, and ages.

CHAS & Suns 12. Pillars Writing by letters, characters, palares Images fooles books Toxi

Kings Inguas held their Court, being the greatest functuatie of those Realms, and as we should say another Rome) there were twelue Pillars fet in order ; and in fuch thiffance the one from the other, as sucrie moneth one of chiefe Pillars did note the tifing and ferting of the Sunne. They 12 Pillars of called them Succanga, by meanes whereof they taught and showed, the Feasts, and the seasons the Sonne, fit to fowe and reape, and to doe other things. They did certaine facrifices to thete Pillars of the Sunne. Euery moneth had his proper name; and peculiar Feaths. They began the yeare by lanurie as we doe. But fince, a King Ingua called Pachacato, which fignifies a reformer of the Tomple, began their yeare by December, by realon (as I confecture) that then the Sunne feturneth from thelast point of Capricome, which is the tropike neerest vnto them. I know not wheno ther the one or the other have obtered any Bifexte, although fome hold the contrarie. The weekes which the Mexicans did reckon, were not properly weekes, being not of leugh daies : the Ingutelikewile made no mention thereof which is no wonder, feeing the count of the weeke is not grounded upon the course of the Sunne, as that of the yeare, nor of the Moone, as that of the moneth; but among the Hebrewer it is grounded vpon the creation of the world; as Morfes reporteth ; and among it the Grockes and Latins upon the number of the feuen Planets,

Etters were inuented to fignifie properly the words we doe pronounce, euen as words (according to the Philosopher) are the fignes and demonstrations of mans thoughts and con- That no Naticeptions. And both the one and the other (Hay the letters and words) were ordained to make on of the Indies things knowne. The voice or fuch as are prefent, and letters for the ablent, and fuch as are to found to have come. Signes and markes which are not properly to fignific words, but things, cannot be called, had the vicol neither in truth are they letters, although they be written, for we cannot fay that the picture of Letters they the Sunne is a writing of the Sunne, but onely a picture; and the like may be faid of other fignes and characters, which have no refemblance to the thing, but ferue onely for memorie: for he that invented them, did not ordaine them to fignific words, but onely to noate the thing : neither doe they call those characters, letters, or writings, at indeede they are not, but rather ciphers, 50 or remembrances as thought which the Spheritts of Attronomers doe vie to fightife divers fignes or planets of Mars, Venus, lupiter. Go.

of whole names the daies of the weeke have taken their denomination; yet was it much for

those ladiens, being men without bookes and learning to have a yeare, scalons, and feaths, so well

appointed as I have laid.

Such characters are ciphers, and no letters : for what name focuer Mart may have in Italian, France, or Spanish, this character doth alwaits figrifie in the which is not found in letters: tot I here wayes although they fignishe the thing, yet is it by meants of words. So as they which know norther trance to pothing, understand them not : as for example, the Oreckes nor the Hebrews, cannot conceive what flerity letters. this word Sol doth lignifie, although they fee it written; for that they understand not the La- as we have; pie tine word : fo as writing and letters are onely practifed by them , which fignifie words there. the er, as the with. For if they lignifie things mediately, they are no more letters not writings, bit ciphers red to, as in and pictures : whereby we may observe two notable things. The one, that the memorie of Hi- China. 40 Rories and Antiquities may be preserved by one of these three meanes, either by letters and wri- Such fool s did tings, as hath beene vied among it the Latines, Greekes, Hebrewes, and manie other Nations; or that wife counby painting, as hath beene wied almost throughout all the world, for it is faid in the fecond Nie chritischerth cene Countell, Painting is a Booke for fooles which cannot reade : or by ciphers and characters, as the inderceind! cipher fignifies the number of a hundred, a thouland and others, without noting the word of a mages not outhundred, or a thousand. The other thing we may observe thereby, is that which is pro- ly to be bookes pounded in this Chapter, which is, that no Nation of the Indies discouered in our time, for such a canhath had the vie of letters and writings, but of the other two forts, Images, and figures objects of wor The which I observe, not onely of the Indies of Pern, and New Spaine, but also of Iap- this to kaned

pon, and China. It is difficulate vaderitand how the Chinese can write proper names in their tongue, especially of strangers, being things they have never seene, and not able to invent figures proper vnto them. I have made triall thereof being in Mexico with the Chinois, willing them to write this proposition in their language, lofeph Acosta is come from Perm, and such like: whereupon the Chinese was long pentiue, but in the end hee did write it, the which other Chinese did after reade, although they did vary a little in the pronuntiation of the proper name, For they vie this deutle to write a proper name : they feeke out some thing in their tongue, that hath refemblance to that name, and let downe the figure of this thing. And as it is difficult among fo many proper names, to finde things to refemble them in the prolation, to is it very difficult and troublelome to write fuch names. Vpon this purpose, Father Allons Sanchez told vs. that when her

Cowas in China, being led into divers Tribunal Seates, from Manderin to Manderin, they were long in putting his name in writing in their Caphas, yet in the end they did write it after their manner, and for idiculoutly, that they scarce came neere to the name : and this is the fashion of Letters and Writings which the Chinois vied. That of the Lapponous approached very neere, although they affirme that the Noblemen of Jappon that came into Europe , did write all things

very eafily in their Language, were they of our proper names : yea, I have had some of their Writing shewed me, whereby it seemes they should have some kinde of Letters; although the greatest part of their Writings, bee by the Characters and figures, as hath beene said of the

An Indian of Peru or Mexico, that hath learned to read & write, knowes more then the wifel Mandarm that is among ft them : for that the Indian with foure and twentie Letters which hee hath learned, will write all the words in the World ; and a Mandarin with his hundred thousand Letters, will be troubled to write some proper name, as of Martin, or Alonso, and with greater reason he shall be eleste able to write the names of things hee knowes not. So as the writing in China, is no other thing but a manner of painting or ciphering. VV.E find among the Nations of New Spains a great knowledge and memorie of antiqui-titie; and therefore fearching by what meanes the Indians had preferred their Hillo-

ries, and fo many particularities, Hearned, that although they were not fo fubrill and curious as

Of the fashion of Letters and writings which the Mexicant vied. Char.7.

the Chinois, and those of Lappon, yethad they some kind of Letters and Bookes among st them, whereby they preserved (atter their manner) the deeds of their Predecessors. In the Provinceos Tucatan, where the Bishopricke is, which they call de Hondaras , there were Bookes of the leaves of Trees, folded and squared, after their manner, in the which the wife Indians contained the diffribution of their times, the knowledge of the Planets, of beafts and other naturall things. Bookes of the distribution heere fallum that all this was an Inchantment and Magicke Arte, who did obstinately maintayne, that they flort, or codex, from the rinde ought to be burnt, foas they were committed to the fire. Which fince not onely the Indian

in which the found to be ill done, but also the curious Spaniards, who defired to know the secrets of the Coun-Ancients with trey. The like hath happened in other things: for our men thinking that all was but Superflition, have loft many memorials of ancient and holy things, which might have profited much This proceedeth of a foolish and ignorant zeale, who not knowing, nor seeking to know what concerned the Indians, fay preindicately, that they are all but Witch-crafts, and that all the Indians are but Drunkards, incapable to know or learne any thing. For fuch as would be curiously informed of them, have found many things worthy of consideration. One of our company of Issuits, a man very wittie and well experienced, did affemble in the Province of Mexico, the 30 Ancients of Tescuco, of Talla, and of Mexico, conferring at large with them, who shewed vnto him their Bookes, Histories and Kalenders, things very worthy the fight, because they had their figures and Hierogliphicks, whereby they represented things in this manner : Such as had forme or figure, were represented by their proper Images, and such as had not any, were represented by Characters that fignified them, and by this meanes they figured and writ what they would. And to observe the time when any thing did happen, they had those painted Wheeles, for every one of them contayned an Age, which was two and fiftie yeeres, as hath beene faid; and of the fide of those Wheeles, they did paint with figures and Characters right against the years, the memo-Table things that happened therein. As they noted the yeere when as the Spaniards entred their Countrey, they painted a man with a Hat and a red lerkin, vpon the figne of a Reed, which did 40 rule then, and fo of other accidents. But for that their Writings and Characters were not suffi cient as our Letters and Writings be, they could not so plainly expresse the words, but onely the Substance of their conceptions. And for a much as they were accustomed to rehearle Discourses and Dialogues by heart, compounded by their Oratours and ancient Rhethoricians, and many Caphas made by their Poets (which were impossible to learne by their Hierogliphickes and Characters) the Mexicans were very curious to have their Children learne those Dialogues and compositions by heart. For the which cause they had Schooles, and as it were, Colledges or Seminaries, where the Ancients taught Children thefe Orations, and many other things, which they preserved amongst them by tradition from one to another, as perfectly, as if they had beene written ; elpecially the most famous Nations had a care to have their chikiren (which had any in- 50 clination to be Rhetoritians, and to practife the Office of Orators) to learne these Orations by

Contession by Pater noster, Anie Maria, and Symboll, or generall Contession of our Faith, written in this

manner by the Indians. And in truth whosoener shall see them, will wonder thereat. For , to signific these words, I 60 a Somer doe confesse my felfe, they painted an Indian upon his knees, at a religious mans feet, 28 one that confesseth himselte : and for this, To God most mightie, they painted three faces with their Crownes, like to the Trinitie, and To the glorious Virgin Marie, they painted the face of

heart : So as when the Spaniards came into their Country, and had taught them to reade and write our Letters, many of the Indians then wrote these Orations, as some graue men doe wit-

neffe that had read them. Which I say, for that some which shall happily reade these long and e-

loquent Discourses in the Mexican History, will easily believe they have beene invented by the Spaniards, and not really taken and reported from the Indians. But having knowne the certains

truth, they will give credit (as reason is) to their Histories. They did also write these Discourses after their manner, by Characters and Images : and I have feene for my better fatisfaction, the

our Lady, and halfe the bodie of a lettle childe : and for Saint Peter and Saint Paul, heads with crownes, and a Key with a Sword : and whereas Images failed, they did fee Characters , as Wherem I have finned, Gre. whereby we may conceine the quicknesse of spirit of these Indians. feeing this manner of, writing of our Prayers and matters of Paith hath not beene taught them by the Spaniards, neither could they have done it, if they had not had an excellent conception of that was taught them. And I have feene in Pers, a confession of sinnes brought by an Indian. written in the same fort with Pictures and Characters, painting euery one of the tenne Commandements, after a certayne mainer , where there were certayne markes like Ciphers. which were the finnes hee had committed against the Commandements. I nothing doubt but if 10 any of the most sufficient Spaniards were imployed to make memorials of the like things by

by their Images and markes , they would not atrayne vnto it in a whole yeere, no not

Before the Spaniards came to the Indies, they of Perm had no kind of writing, either Let. Of Registers ters, Characters, Ciphers, or Figures, like to those of China and Mexico: yet preferred and the manthey the memory of their Antiquities , and mayntaine an order in all their affaires, of Peace, nor of re known and the state of the sta Warre, and Policie, for that they were carefull observers of Traditions from one to mother, and indian of Peru the young ones learned, and carefully kept, as a holy thing, what their Superiors had told them, vied, Chars. and taught it with the like care to their Posteritie. Besides this diligence, they supplied the

20 want of Letters and Writings, partly by painting, as those of Moxico, (although they of Peru were very groffe and blockish) and partly, and most commonly by Quippor. These Quippos are Quippos. Memorials or Registers, made of Bowes, in the which there are divers knots and colours, which doe fignifie divers things, and it is firange to fee what they have expressed and represented by this meanes : for their Quippos serve them insteed of Bookes of Histories , of Lames, Ceremonies , and accounts of their affaires. There were Officers appointed to keepe thele Quippos, the which at this day they call Outpocamajos, the which were bound to give an account of every thing, as Notaries and Registers noe heere. Therefore they fully beleeved them in all things, for according to the varietie of bulinelle, as Warres, Policies, Tributes, Ceremonies and Lands, there were fundry Quippos or branches, in every one of the which there were fo many knots little and great,

20 and ftrings tyed vnto them, fome Red, fome Greene, fome Blue, fome White; and finally, fuch divertitie, that even as wee derive an infinite number of words from the foure and twentie Letters. applying them in divers forts, so doe they draw innumerable words from their knots, and diversitie of colours. Which thing they doe in such a manner, that if at this day in Peru, any Commiffary come at the end of two or three yeeres, to take information vpon the life of any Officer, the Indians come with their small reckonings verified, saying, that in such a Village they given him to many Egges which he hath not payed for, in fuch a house a Henne, in another, two burthens of graffe for his Horse, and that he hath payed but so much mony, and remaineth debtor so much. The proofs being presently made with these numbers of knots and handfuls of coards, it remaynes for a certaine testimonie and register. I did see a handfull of these strings,

40 wherein an Indian woman carried written a generall confeision of all her life, and thereby confeffed her felfe, as well as I could have done it in written Paper. I asked her what those ftrings meant that differed from the reft : the answered me, they were certaine circumstances which the Writing with finnerequired to be fully confessed. Beside these Onippes of threed, they have another, as it forall stones. were a kind of writing with small stones, by meanes whereof, they learne punctually the words they defire to know by heart. It is a pleafant thing to fee the old and the imposent (with a Wheelemade of small stones) learne the Paser nofter, with another the Aue Maria, with another the Creed; and to remember what stone signifies, Which was conceived by the Holy Ghost, and which, Suffered under Pontsus Pilate,

It is a pleasant thing to see them correct themselves when they doe erre; for all their correction consisteth onely in beholding of their small stones. One of these Wheeles were sufficient to make me forget all that I doe know by heart. There are a great number of these Wheeles in the Church-yards for this purpole. But it feemes a kind of Witch-craft, to fee another kinde of Quippos, which they make of graines of Mays, for to cast vp a hard account, wherein a good Arithmetician would bee troubled with his Penne to make a distifion : to fee how much every Accounts by one must contribute: they doe draw so many graines from one side, and adde so many to ano-graines of ther, with a thousand other inventions. These Indians will take their graines, and place five Mays. of one fide, three of another, and eight of another, and will change one graine of one fide, and three of another: So as they finish a certaine account, without erring in any point: and they sooner submit themselves to reason by these Quippos, what every one ought to pay, 60 then wee can doe with the Penne. Heereby wee may judge if they have any vnderstanding, or bee brutish : for my part, I thinke they passe vs in those things, whereunto they doe apply

ners of wri-

TT shall be good to adde hereunto what we have observed, touching the Indians Writings : for their manner was not to write with a continued line, but from the top to the bottome, or in circle-wife, The Latines and Greekes doe write from the left hand vnto the right, which is the vulgar and common manner wee doe vie. The Hebrewes contrariwife beganne at the right to the left, and therefore their Bookes began where ours did end. The Chinois write neither like the Greekes nor like the Hebrewes, but from the top to the bottome, for as they bee no Letters but whole words, and that every figure and Character fignifieth a thing, they have no neede to affemble the parts one with another, and therefore they may well write from the toppe to the bottome. Those of Mexico, for the same cause did not write in line, from one side to another. but contrary to the Chinese, beginning below, they mounted vpward. They yield this manner of 10 writing, in the account of their dayes, and other things which they observed: Yet when they did write in their Wheeles or Signes, they began from the middeft where the Sunne was figured, and so mounted by their yeeres vnto the round and circumference of the Wheele,

By words, Pictures, and these Memorialls, the Kings were often aduertised of that which passed. For this cause there were men of great agilitie, which ferued as Curriers, to goe and come, whom they did nourish in this exercise of Running from their youth, labouring to have them well breathed, that they might runne to the top of a high Hill without wearineffe. And therefore in Mexico they gave the Prize to three or foure that first mounted up the stayres of the Temple, as hath beene faid in the former Booke. And in Cufco, when they made their Solemne Feaft of Capacrayme, the Nouices did runne who could fafteft up the Rocke of Tracauri. And the exercise of running is generall; much vied among the Indians. When as there chanced any matter of importance, they fent vnto the Lords of Mexico, the thing painted, whereof they would adjustife them, as they did when the first Spanish ships appeared to their fight, and when they tooke Topanchan. In Pern they were very curious of Footmen, and the Inquestad them in all parts of the Realme, as ordinary Posts called Chasquis, whereof shall bee spoken in his place.

Diuers formes

Many Nations of the Indies have not indured any Kings, or absolute and sourceigne Lords. but line in Comminalties, creating and appointing Captaynes and Princes, for certayne occafions onely, to whom they obey during the time of their charge; then after they returne to their former estates. The greatest part of this New World (where there are no setled King- to domes, nor established Common-weales, neither Princes nor succeeding Kings) they governe themselues in this manner, although there bee some Lords and principall men raised about the common fort. In this fort the whole Countrey of (bile is governed, where the Anracanes, those of Toucapell and others, have so many yeeres refisted the Spaniards. And in like fort all the new Kingdome of Granado, that of Gnatimalia, the Hands, all Florida, Brefil, Lufon, and other Countreyes of great circuit : but that in tome places they are yet more barbarous, scarcely acknowledging any head, but all command and gouerne in common, having no other thing, but will, violence, industry and diforder, so as hee that most may most commands,

They have onely found two Kingdomes or fetled Empires, that of the Mexicans in New Spaine, and of the Inguas in Perm. It is not easie to be faid, which of the two was the mightieff 40 Kingdome, for that Mosecums, exceeded them of Perm, in Buildings, and in the greatnesse of his Mexican or Pe- Court : but the Inguar, did likewife exceed the Mexicans, in treature, riches, and great neffe of Prouinces. In regard of Antiquitie, the Monarchie of the Inguas, hath the advantage, although it be not much, and in my opinion, they have beene equall in feats of Armes and Victories, It is most certaine, that these two Kingdomes have much exceeded all the Indian Provinces, dilcouered in this New World, as well in good order and government, as in power and wealth, and much more in Superfittion and Service of their Idols, having many things like one to another But in one thing they differed much, for among the Mexicans, the facceffion of the Kingdome, wasby election, as the Empire of the Romanes, and that of Pern, was hereditary, and they fucceeded in bloud, as the Kingdomes of France and Spaine.

Ment of the guas of Peru. Chap. Th.

Of the gouern- He Inqua which ruled in Porn, being dead, his lawfull Sonne fucceeded him, and so they held him that was borne of his chiefe Wife, whom they called Core. The which they have alwayes observed fince the time of an Ingua, called Tupangui, who married his fifter: for these Kings held it an honour to marrie their Sifters. And although they had other Wives and Concubines, yet the fuccession of the Kingdome appertay ned to the Sonne of Coya. It is true, that when the King had a legitimate Brother, he succeeded before the Sonne, and after him his Nephew, and Sonne to the first. The Caracas, and Noblemen, held the fame order of fucceffion in their goods and Offices. And after their manner they made excessive Ceremonies, and obsequies for the dead Being dead, they prefently held him for a God, making Sacrifices vnto him, Images and 60 fuch like, By this meanes, there was infinite Treasure in Pers : for every one of the Inguist, had laboured to haue his Oratorie and Treasure surpasse that of his Predecessors. The marke or entigne, whereby they tooke poffession of the Realme, was a red roll of Wooli, more then fine filke, the which hung in the middett of his forchead; and none but the Ingua alone might

CHAP.6. Peruan holies for their Inga, Iustice, Polity Tribute Provinces.

weare it, for that it was as a Crowne and Royall Diademe : yet they might lawfully weare a Roll hanging on the one fide, neere vnto the care; as fome Noblemen did, but onely the Ingua might carrie it in the middeft of his forehead. At fuch time as they tooke this Roll or Wieathe. they made tolemne Feafts, and many Sacrifices, with a great quantitie of veffell of Gold. and Silver, a great number of imall formes or Images of sheepe, made of Gold and Silver, great abandance of the stuffes of Cumb, well wrought, both fine and courser, many shels of the Sea of all forts, many feathers, and a thonfand theepe, which must bee of divers colours. Then the chiefe Priest tooke a young Childe in his hands, of the age of fixe or eight yeeres, pronouncing thele words with the other Ministers speaking to the Image of Urracocha, Lord we offer this vn 30 to thee, that thou majest majntagne vs in quiet, and beloe vs in our warres, majntaine our Lord the Ingua in his greatnesse and estate, that hee may alwayes increase, giving him much knowledge to so-

There were present at this Ceremonie and Oath, men of all parts of the Realme, and of all

Guaras and Sanctuaries. And without doubt, the affection and reuerence which this people bare to their Kings Ingues, was very great, for it is never found that any one of his subjects committed Treaton against him, for that they proceeded in their governments, not only with an abice lute power, but also with good order and Justice, sufering no man to bee oppressed: The Ingua placed Gouernours in diners Proninces, among it the which, fome were Superiours, and did ac- Exact luftice! knowledge none but himfelfe, others were of leffe command, and others more particular, with 20 fo goodly an order, and fuch granitie, as no man durft be drunke, nor take an eare of Mays from his Neighbour. Thefe Inguas held it for a Maxime, that it was necessary to keepe the Indians alwayes in action : and therefore we fee it to this day, long cawfies and workes of great labour. No idlenesse the which they lay were made to exercise the Indians, left they should remayne idle. When hee permitted. conquered any new Prouince, hee was accustomed presently to fend the greatest part, and the chiere of that Countrey into other Prouinces, or elle to his Court, and they call them at this day Transmigrain Pers, Mitimas, and in their places he fent others of the Nation of Cufco, especially the O. tion. reiones, which were as Knights of an ancient house. They punished faults rigoroully. And therefore fuch as have any understanding hereof, hold opinion, that there can be no better government

O relate more particularly what I have spoken before, you must understand, that the die Of the distri-A ftribution which the Inguas made of their valials, was fo exact and diffinct, as bee might burion the a itribution which the suppus made of their vanato, was not act and dittinct, as nee might laguar made of gouerne them all with great facilitie, although his Realme were a thousand leagues long; for their Vasials. having conquered a Province, he presently reduced the Indians into Townes and Comminatties, Chap. 12. the which he divided into bands, he appointed one to have the charge over every ten Indians, o- Governourse per every hundred another, over every thousand another, and over ten thousand another, whom they called Humo, the which was one of the greatest charges. Yet about all in enery Province. there was a Gouernour of the house of the Ingues, whom all the rest obeyed, giving vnto him enery yeere particular account of what had palled, that is, of fuch as were borne, of those that 40 were dead and of their troupes and graine. The Gouernours went energy yeere out of Cufco, where Tribute yeers

for the Indians, nor more affured, then that of the Inguas.

they remayned, and returned to the great Feast of Rayme, at the which, they brought the tribute ly paid at Casica. of the whole Realme to the Court; neither might they enter but with this condition. All the Kingdome was divided into foure parts, which they called Tabuantinfayo, that is, Chinebasuyo, Fourefold Collasuro, And Suro, and Condesuro, according to the foure wayes which went from Cusco, provincial where the Court was refident, and where the generall affemblies of the Realme were made. These waies and Prouinces being answerable vnto them, were towards the foure quarters of the world, Collafuro to the South, Chinchafuro to the North , Condefuro to the West , and Andefuro to the East. In every Towns and Village, there were two forts of people, which were of Hananfaya, and Vrinfare, which is as much to fay, as those above, and those below. When they commanded any 50 worke to be done, or to furnish any thing to the Ingua, the Officers knew presently how much every Province, Towne, and Family, ought to furnish : to as the division was not made by equall portions, but by Cottization, according to the qualities and wealth of the Countrey. Soas for example, if they were to gather a hundred thousand Fanegues of Meys, they knew presently how much enery Prounce was to contribute, were it a tenth, a seuenth, or a fift

or a burthen of wood, and in a moment they did fee by divers Registers what every one ought to pay. The Elifices and Buildings which the Inguas made in Temples, Fortreffes, wayes, Countrey Of the Edifices houses, and such like, were many in number, and of an excessive labour, as doth appeare at and manner of houles, and incline, were many this day by their ruines and remaynders, both in Cusco, Tyaguanaco, Tambo, and other places, ligan. Chap. 14, where there are stones of an vinmeaturable greatnesse; as men cannot conceine how they were

part. The like was of Townes and Villages, Aillos, or Linages. The Quipocamagos,

which were the Officers and Intendants , kept the account of all with their ftrings and

knottes, without fayling, fetting downe what every one had payed, even to a Henne,

## 1056 Indian skill and stoneworkes, Strawbridges, Tributes. Lands sacred. LIB.V

cur, brought and fet in their places. There came great numbers of people from all Proninces. to worke in thefe Buildings and Fortreffes, which the Ingua caufed to bee made in Cufeo, or other parts of the Realme. As these Workes were strange, and to amaze the beholders, wherein they wied no Morter nor Ciment, neither any Iron, or Steele, to cut, and fet the stones in worke. loyning huge They had no Engines or other Instruments to carrie them, and yet were they so artificially wrought, that in many places they could not fee the joynts; and many of these stones are jo bigge, that it were an incredible thing, if one should not see them. At Tragnanace, I did measure aftone of thirtie eight foot long, of eighteene broad, and fixe thicke. And in the wall of the Force fle of Cufco, which is of Moallon, there are stones of a greater bignesse. And that which is most strange, these slowes being not cut nor squared to joyne, but contrariwise, very vnequal to one with another in forme and greatnesse, yet did they toyne them together without Ciment, after an incredible manner. All this wasdone by the force of men, who endured their labour with an muincible patience. For to loyne one ftone with another, they were forced to handle and trie many of them often, being vneuen. The Ingua appointed enery yeere what numbers of and trie many of them orten, Detty vineters, and again appears to the vineter numbers of people fhould bloom in their thousas and buildings, and the tudians made a distingn amongst them, as of other things, so as no man was opportfled. Although their Buildings were great, yet were they commonly ill appointed and vnfit, almost like to the Mosquites or Buildings of the Barbarians, They could make no Arches in their Edifices, nor Morter or Ciment to build them with all:

Arches.

Bridges

when they faw Arches of wood built vpon the River of Xaura, the Bridge being finished, and 20 the wood broken downe, they all began to runne away, supposing that the Bridge which was of stone should presently fallibut when they found it to stand firme, and that the Spaniards went on it, the Cacique faid to his companions; It is reason we should ferue these men, who in truth seeme to be the children of the Sunne. The Bridges they made were of Reedes pleited, which they tyed the bankes with great stakes, for that they could not make any Bridges of stone or wood. The Bridge which is at this day vpon the current of the great Lake Chiquitto in Collas is admirable: for the course of that water is so deepe, as they cannot fettle any foundation, and so broad, that it is impossible to make an Arch to passe it vas altogether impossible to make a Bridge Straw Bridge, either of wood or ftone. But the wit and industry of the Indians invented a meanes to make a firme and affured Bridge being only of flraw, which feemeth fabulous, yet is it very true : For as 30 we have faid before, they did binde together certaine bundles of Reeds, and Weeds, which doe grow in the Lake that they call Torors, and being a light matter that finkes not in the water, they cast it vpon a great quantitie of Reeds, then having tyed those bundles of Weedes to either side of the River, both men and beasts goe over it with ease : passing over this Bridge I have wondred, that of so common and easie a thing, they had made a Bridge, better, and more affured then the Bridge of Boates from Sewille to Triane. I have measured the length of this Bridge, and as I remember, it was about three hundred foote; and they say that the depth of this Current is very great: and it feemes aboue, that the water hath no motion, yet they fay, that at the bottome it hath a violent and very furious course. And this shall suffice for

Of the Inguas Tributes they imposed vpon the Indians.

He Inguas riches was incomparable, for although no King did inherit the riches and treafure of his Predecessor, yet had he at command, all the riches of his Realmes, aswell Siluer and Gold, as the stuffe of Cumb, and cattell, wherein they abounded, and their greatest riches of all, was their innumerable number of vaffals, which were all imployed as it pleased the King. They brought out of every Province what he had chosen for tribute. The Chicas fent him iweet and rich woods; the Lucanas tent Brancars to carry his Litrer; The Chumbilbicas, Dincers; and so the other Provinces sent him what they had of abundance, besides their generall Tribute, whereunto every one contributed. The Indians that were noted to that end, laboured in the Mynes of Gold and Silver, which did abound in Pern, whom the Ingua entertained with all 50 they needed for their expences: and what soener they drew of Gold and Silver, was for him. By this meanes there were to great treasures in this Kingdome, as it is the opinion of many, that what fell in the hands of the Spamards, (although it were very much, as wee know) was not the tenth part of that which they hid and buried in the ground, the which they could never discover, notwithstanding all the learch covetousnesse had taught them. But the greatest wealth of thele barbarous people, was, that their valials were all flaues, whose labour they vied at their All flaues and pleasure : and that which is admirable, they employed them in such fore, as it was no feruitude vinto them, but rather a pleafing life. But to vinder fland the order of Tributes which the Indians payed unto their Lord, you must know, that when the Ingua conquered any Cities, he divided all the Land into three parts, the first was, for Religion and Ceremonies, so as the Pachayachaqui, 60 which is the Creater, and the Sume; the Chuquilla, which is the Thunder, the Pachamana, and Lands facted, the dead , and other Guacas and Sanctuaries , had every one their proper Lands , the frants whereof were spoyled and confumed in Sacrifices , and in the nourilling of Alinisters and Priests; for there were Indians appointed for every Guaca, and Sanctuarie, and

CHAP.6. Common Lands. Negligence punished. All Peruans were of all Trades, 1057

the greatest part of this revenue was spent in Cufco, where was the uninerfall and general! fanituarie, and the rest in that Citie, where it was gathered; for that after the imitation of Cusco, there were in every Citie, Guacus, and Oratories of the same order, and with the same functi. Order in their ons, which were formed after the fame manner and ceremonies to that of Cufco, which is an ad- Religion. mirable thing, and they have found it by proofe in aboue a hundred Townes, fome of them distant about two hundred leagues from Cufeo.

That which they fowed or reapt youn their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or flore-

houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the Indians paied. I cannot lay how much this part amounted voto, for that it was greater in some parts then in o-10 ther, and in some places it was in a manner all : and this part was the first they put to profit. The fecond part of these Lands and inheritances was for the Ingua, wherewith he and his hous- Royall des hold were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garrisons and Souldiers. And there- mesnes. fore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the reuenues of the Guacas. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to Cufce, or vinto fuch places where it was needefull for the Souldiers, and when there was store, they kept it ten or twelue yeares, vntill a time of necessitie. The Indians tilled and put to profit the Inguas Lands, next to those of the Guacas; during which

time they lived and were nounfhed at the charges of the Ingua, of the Sunne, or of the Guacas, 20 according to the Land they laboured. But the old men, women, and ficke folkes were referred and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatfoener they gathered upon those Lands were for the Ingua, the Sunne, or the Guacas, yet the propertie appertained vnto the Indians and their fuccessours. The third part of these Lands were given by the Ingua for the Comminaltie and they have not yet discouered, whither this portion were greater, or leffe, then that of the Ingua or Guacas. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourishment of the people. No particular man pofferfied any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion, neither did the Indians euer possesse any, if it were not by speciall grace from the Ingua: No proprietie and yet might it not be engaged nor divided amongst his heires. They everic yeare divided these of Lands. Lands of the comminaltie, in giving to every one, that which was needefull for the nourish-30 ment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished, so did they encrease or decrease his portion, for there were measures appointed for everie person. The Indians paied no tribute of that which was apportioned vnto them : For all their tribute was to till Their Tribute and keepe in good order the Lands of the Ingua, and the Guacas, and to lay the fruits thereof in what. their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gave of these fruits thus reserved to the needie, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The Ingua did likewise make destribution Carrelldistre of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and divide them; then to appoint the paflures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the Guacas, and to the Ingus, and to everie Town :

and therefore one portion of their reuenues was for religion, another for the Ingua, and the third for the Indians themselves. The like order was observed among the hunters, being forbidden to 40 take or kill any females. The troupes of the Ingues and Guaces, were in great numbers and ve- Hunter lawes rie fruitfull, for this cause they called them Kapaellama, but those of the common and publike, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them Baschallama. The Inqua tooke great care for the preferuation of Cattell, for that it hath beene, and is yet, all the wealth of the Countrie, and as it is faid, they did neither facrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did Provisions for they take them when they hunted. If the mangie or the fouruie which they call Carache take anie beaft, they were prefently commanded to burie it quicke, lest it should infect others. They did sheare their cattell in their scason, and distributed to euerie one to spinne and weave Stuffes for the service of his Family. They had fearchers to examine if they did employ themselves in Neeligener these workes, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffes of the wooll of the Inguas cattell, punished. 50 for him and for his family, one fort very fine, which they called Cambi, and another groffer,

which they likewise called Abasca. There was no certaine number of these Stuffes and garment, appointed, but what was deliuered to every one. The wooll that remained was put into the storehouses, whereof the Spaniards found them full, and with all other things necessary for the life of man. There are few men of judgement but doe admire at fo excellent & well fetled a government, feeing the Indians (being neither religious, nor Christians) maintained after their manner, this perfection, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necellities, entertaining with fuch abudance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord,

60 The Indians of Pern had one perfection, which was, to teach their children all arts and octor and cupations necessary for the life of man; for that there were no particular Tradef-men, as offices which amone it vs, Taylers, Shoomakers, Weauers, and the rest, but every one learned what was neede- the indians did full for their persons and houses, and provided for themsclues. All could weave and make their excisis, th. 16. garments, and therefore the Ingua furnishing them with wooll, gaue them cloathes. Every man All menotall could till the ground, and put it to profit, without layring of any labourers. All built their own trades Sfif 3

Husbands carefully. Other Arts and Trades which were not ordinary and common for the life of man, had their proper Companies and workemen, as Goldsmiths, Painters, Potters, Watermen, and players of Instruments. There were also Weauers and workementor exquisite workes. which the Noblemen wied: but the common people, as bath beene faid, had in their houses all things necessary, having no neede to buy. This continues to this day, so as they have no neede one of another for things necessary; touching his person and family, as shooes and garments, and for their houle, to fowe and reape, and to make Iron workes, and necessarie instruments, it is worthy observation, although the Indians be simple in their manner and habits, yet doe we see great diverficie amongst the Provinces, especially in the attire of their head, for in some places to they carried a long prece of cloath, which went often about, in some places a large peece of

cloath, which went but once about, in some pares asit were little morters or hats, in some on thers as it were high and round Bonets, and some like the bottome of sacks, with a thousand Vaiformity of other differences. They had a straight and inviolable law, that no man might change the fashion of the garments of his Prouince, although he went to line in another. This the Ingua held to be of great importance for the order and good government of his Realme, and they doe observe it to this day, though not with fo great a care as they were accustomed.

Of the Posts

There were many Posts and couriers which the *Ingus* maintained throughout his Realme, whom they called *Chasquis*, and they carried commandements to the Gouernours, and re-10 the Inaums did turned their aduifes and aduertifements to the Court. Thefe: Chafquis were placed at energy courie, which was a league and a halfe one from another in two small houles, where were four Indians of enery Country, and they were changed monthly. Having received the packet or meffage, they ranne with all their force vntill they had deliuered it to the other Chalquis, such as were ao runne, being ready and watchfull. They ran fiftie leagnes in a day and night, although the greatest part of that Countrie be very rough. They served also to carry such things as the Inous desired to have with speede. Therefore they had alwaies Sea-fish in Cusco, of two daies old or little more, although it were aboue a hundred leagues off. Since the Spaniards entred, they have vied of thele Chafquis, in time of feditions, whereof there was great neede. Don Marin the Viceroy appointed ordinary Posts at every foure leagues, to carry and recarry dispatches, which an were very necessary in this Realme, though they run not so swiftly as the ancients did, neither are there to many, yet they are well paied, and ferue as the ordinaries of Spaine, to whom they giue Letters which they carry foure or fine leagues.

Te Ven as such as had done any good service in warre, or in the government of the Common-

Lawes and pun:fh nents which the In-

Adultery.

Marringe fo-

Eweale were honoured and recompensed with publike charges, with Lands given them in proper, with armes and titles of honour, and in marrying wines of the Inguas linage: Euenio they gaue seuere punishments to such as were disobedient and offenders. They punished murbuffes, and of ther, theft, and adultery, with death, and fuch as committed incest with ascendants or descentheir mariages dants in direct line, were likewise punished with death. But they held it no adultery to have so many wines or concubines, neither were the women subiect to the punishment of death, being found with any other, but onely the that was the true and lawfull wife, with whom they contracted marriage; for they had but one whom they did wedde and receive with a particular folemnitie and ceremonie, which was in this manner: The Bridegroome went to the Brides house, and led her from thence with him, having first put an Ottoyavpon her foote. They call the shooe which they vie in those parts Ottoya, being open like the Franciscan Friars. If the Bride were a maide, her Ottoya was of Wooll, but if the were not, it was of Reedes. All his other wives and concubines did honour and ferue this as the lawfull wife, who alone after the decease of her husband carried a mourning weede of blacke, for the space of a yeare; neither did she marry vntill that time were paft; and commonly the was yonger then her husband. The Ingua 50 himselfe with his owne hand gaue this woman to his Gouernours and Captaines: and the Gouernours or Caciques, assembled all the yong menand maides, in one place of the Citie, where they gaue to currie one his wife with the aforefaid ceremonie, in putting on the Ottoye, and in this manner they contracted their marriages. If this woman were found with any other then her husband, the was punished with death, and the adulterer likewise : and although the husband pardoned them, yet were they punished, although dispensed withall from death. They inflicted the like punishment on him that did commit incest with his Mother, Grandmother, Daughter, or Grandchilde : for it was not prohibited for them to marrie together, or to have of their other kinsfolke for concubines; onely the first degree was defended, neither did they allow the brother to haue the company of his fifter, wherein they of Pers were very much de- 60 ceiued, beleeuing that their Inguas and Noblemen might lawfully controlt marriage with their filters, yea by father and mother : for in truth it hath beene alwaies held vulawfull among the Indians, and defended to contract in the first degree; which continued vntill the time of Topa Ingua Tupangui father to Guaynacapa, and grandfather to Atahualpa, at such time as the Spaniards

entred Perm; for that Topa Ingua Tupangui, was the first that brake this custome, marrying with Mamasello, his fifter by the fathers tide, decreeing that the Inguas might matrie with their fifters by the fathurs fide, and no other. This he did, and by that marriage he had Guaynacapa, and a daughter called Cora Cuffillimar:

finding himfelfe at the point of death, he commanded his children by father and mother to marrie together, and gaue permillion to the Noblemen of his Countrie, to marrie with their fin flers by the fathers lide. And for that this marriage was vulawfull, and against the law of nature. God would bring to an end this Kingdome of the Inguas, during the raigne of Guafear Ingua, and Atabualpa Ingua, which was the fruite that iprang from this marriage. Who 10 fo will more exactly videritand the mannar of marriages among the Indians in Pers, let him reade the Treatife Polo hath written at the request of Don lesonimo Losifa Archbishop of

Kings: which Polo made a very curious fearch, as he hath done of divers other things at the Indies.

BY the commandement of Don Phillip the Catholike King, they have made the most diligent Of the Original Lexact learnth to could be, of the beginning, customes, and principles of the Inguan, goad Lordon the which was not for perfectly done as was defined: for that the Industry law owitten Res. Pennyshitchir. cords: yet the haus recoursed that which I shall write, by meanes of their Quippos and Regi- Conquests iters. First there was not in Perwin old time, any King or Lord to whom all obeyed, but they and Victoriese were Comminalties, as at this day there is in the Realme of Chille, and in a manner, in all Chap.19. 20 the Provinces which the Spaniards have conquered in those Westerne Indies, except the Realme

of Mexico. You must therefore understand, that they have found three manner of Gouernements at the Indies. The first and best, was a Monarchie, as that of the Inguas, and of Morecame, although for the most part they were tyrannous. The fecond was of Comminalties . where they were gouerned by the aduste and authority of many, which are as it were Counsellors. Thele in time of warre, made choise of a Captaine, to whom a whole Nation or Proprince did obey, and in time of peace, every Towne or Comminalty did rule and governe themselves. having tome chiefe men whom the vulgar did respect, and sometime (though not often) some of them affemble together about matters of importance, to confult what they should thinke neceffary. The third kinde of Gouernment, is altogether barbarous, composed of Indians with-

20 out Law, without King, and without any certaine place of abode, but goe in troopes like fauage bealts. As farre as I can conceine, the first Inhabitants of the Indies, were of this kinde, as at this day a great part of the Brefillians, Chiraguanas, Chunchos, Meycingas, Pileocones. and the greatest part of the Floridians, and all the Chichimaquas in new Spainss Of this kinde the other fort of government by Comminalties was framed, by the industry and wisdome of some amongif them, in which there is some more order, holding a more staied place, as at this day those of Auracano, and of Tencapell in Chille, and in the new Kingdome of Grenado, the Moscas, and the Ottomittes in new Spaine : and in all thefe there is leffe fierceneffe and incivilitie, & much more quiet then in the reft, Of this kinde, by the valor & knowledg of some excellent men, grew the other government more mighty and potent, which did institute a Kingdome and Monarchy.

40 Is appeared by their Registers, that their Gouernment hath continued about three hundred Communication yeares, but not fully foure, although their Seigniorie for a long time, was not about fine or of their Mo fix leagues compaffe about the Citie of Cufeo : their originall and beginning was in the valley of narchy. Cuico: where by little and little they conquered the Lands which we call Peru, paffing beyond Onitto, vnto the river of Pafes towards the North, stretching even vnto Chille, towards the South, which is almost a thousand leagues in length. It extended in breadth vnto the South Sea towards the West, and vnto the great champains which are on the other side of the Ander, where at this day is to be seene the Castell which is called the Pucara of the Ingua, the which is a fortreffe built for the defence of the frontire towards the East. The Inguas advanced no farther on that fide, for the abundance of water, Marshes, Lakes, and Rivers, which runne in those parts.

50 These Inguas passed all other Nations of America, in pollicie and gouernment, and much more Strife twize in valour and armes, although the Canaries which were their mortall enemies, and fauoured the Inques and Spaniards, would never confesse it, nor yeelde them this advantage : so as even at this day, if they contribe. fall into any discourse or comparisons, and that they be a little chased and incensed, they kill one another by thousands upon this quarrell, which are the most valiant, as it hath happened in Culco. The practife and meanes which the luguas had to make themselves Lords of all this Countrie, was in faining that fince the generall deluge ( whereof all the Indians have knowledge) the world had beene preferued, reftored, and peopled by these Inqua, and that feyen of them came forth of the Caue of Pacaricambo, by reason whereof, all other men ought them tribute and vaffalage, as their progenitors. Belides they faid and affirmed. 60 that they alone held the true religion, and knew how God should be served and honoured : and for this cause they should instruct all men. It is a strange thing, the ground they give to their

customes and ceremonies. There were in Cusco about foure bundred Oratories , as in a holy 400, Oratories

land, and all places were filled with their mifteries. As they continued in the conquests of Pro- in Calca. unces, fo they brought in the like ceremonies and customes. In all this Realme the chiefe Idols

they did worthip, were Firacocha, Pachayachachic, which fignifies the Creator of the World and after him, the Sunne. And therefore they faid, that the Sunne received his vertue and being from the Creator, as the other Idols doe, and that they were interceffors to him.

Of the first Inqua, and his Succeffors. Chap.20.

T He first man which the *Indians* report to be the beginning and first of the *Inguas*, was Man, gecaps, whom they imagine, after the deluge, to have issued forth of the Caue of Tambo, which is from Cufee about five or fixe leagues. They fay that hee gaue beginning to two principals pall Races or Families of the Inguas , the one was called Hanancufco , and the other Orincufco: of the first came the Lords which subdued and gouerned this Prounce, and the first whom they make the Head and Stemme of this Familie, was called Ingaroca, who founded a Familie or 10 Aillo, as they call them, named Vicaquiquirao. This although he were no great Lord, was ferred notwithfla ding in veffell of gold and filter. And dying he appointed that all his treaffire fhould be imployed for the feruice of his Body, and for the feeding of his Familie. His Succeffor did the like : and this grow to a generall custome, as I have faid, that no Ingua might inherit the goods and house or his Predecessor, but did build a new Palace. In the time of this Inguaroca, the Indians had Images of gold; and to him fucceeded Tagnar guaque, a very old man: they fay, he was called by this name, which fignifies teares of blond, for that being once valing if hed and taken by his Enemies, for griefe and fortow hee wept bloud. Hee was buried in a Village called Paulo, which is voon the way to Omajugo: he founded a Familie called Accuillyanaca, To him fucceeded his fonne Viracocha Ingua, who was very rich, and made much veffell of gold and filuer : he founded the Linege or Familie of Cocopanaca. Gonçales Pigarre fought out his body, for the report of the great treasure buried with him , who after hee had cruelly tormented many Indians, in the end he found it in Xaquixaquana, whereas they faid Picarre was afterwards vanquished , taken , and executed by the President Guasea. Gonçales Picarre caused the body of Viracocha Ingua to be burnt; the Indians did afterwards take the ashes, the which they preierued in a small vesse'l, making great facrifices thereunto, vittil Pollo did reforme it, and other Idolatties which they committed upon the bodies of their other Ingua, the which hee suppressed with an admirable diligence and dexteritie, drawing these bodies out of their hands, being whole, and much imbalmed, whereby hee extinguished a great number of Idolatries which they committed. The Indians tooke it ill, that the Ingua did intitle himfelfe Viracocha, which is the name of their God : and he to excuse himselie, gaue them to vinderstand, that the same Vinaceobs appeared to him in his dreame, commanding him to take this name. To him succeeded Pschacuti Ingua Tupangui, who raigned feuentie yeeres, and conquered many Countries. The beginning or his conquests, was by meanes of his eldest brother, who having held the government in his fathers time, and made warre by his confent, was over-throwne in a battaile against the Changuas, a Nation which inhabites the Valley of Andaguayllas, thirtie or fortie leagues from Cufco, vpon the way to Lima. This elder brother thus defeated, retyred himselfe with tew men-The which Ingua Tupangui, his younger brother feeing, deufed and gaue forth, that being one day alone and melancholy, Vraceche the Creator spake to him, complaying, that though bee were universall Lord and Creator of all things, and that he had made the Heanen, the Sunne, the world, 40 and Men, and that all was under his command, yet did they not yeeld him the obedience they ought, but contrariwise did equally honour and worship the Sunne, Thunder, Earth, and other things, which had no vertue but what he imparted vinto them : giving him to vinderthand, that in heaven where hee was, they called him Viracocha Pachayachachic, which fignifieth minerfall Creator; and to the end the Indians might beleeue it to be true, he doubted not although hee were alone, to raife men vnder this title, which should give him victorie against the (hangus, although they were then victorious, and in great numbers; and make himselfe Lord of those Realmes, for that hee would send him men to his aide innifibly, whereby he precayled in fuch fert, that under this colour and conceit, he began to affemble a great number of people, whereof he made a mightie Armie, with the which he obtayined the victorie, making himfelfe Lord of the whole Realme, taking the 30-50 neriment from his father and brother. Then afterwards he conquered and ouer-threw the Changnas, and from that time commanded that Unacocha should be held for universall Lord, and that the Images of the Sunne and Thunder, should doe him reverence and honor : And from that time they began to fet the Image of Viracocha aboue that of the Sunne and Thunder, and the reft of the Guaras. And although this Ingua Tupangui had given Farmes, Lands, and Cattell to the Sunne, Thunder, and other Gnacas, yet did ne not dedicate any thing to Viracocha, Lying, that he had no neede, being vinuerfall Lord and Creator of all things. Hee informed his Souldiers after this absolute victorie of the Changuas, that it was not they alone that had conquered them, but certaine bearded men, whom Viracocha had fent him, and that no man might fee them but himfelfe, which were fince converted into itones; it was therefore necessarie to feeke them out, 6whom he would know well. By this meanes he gathered together a multitude of thones in the Mountaines, whereof he made choice, placing them for Guacas, or Idols, they worthipped and factificed vnto; they called them Pururaucas, and carried them to the warre with great desotion, beleating for certaine, that they had gotten the victorie by their helpe. The imagination

## CHAP.6. Ingas worshipped. Guanacapas 300 founes Spaniards esteeme coc. 1061

and fiction of this Ingua was of fuch force, that by the meanes thereof fiee obtained goodly victories : He founded the Familie called Tnacapanaca, and made a great Image of gold, which hee called Indillapa, which he placed in a Brancard of gold, very rich, and of great price, of the which gold the Indians tooke great store to carry to Xaxamalca, for the libertie and ransome of Atabalpa, when the Marquisse Francis Pigarre held him prisoner. The Licenciate Pole found in his house in Cusco, his servants and Mamacomas, which did service to his memorie, and found that the body had beene transported from Patallalia to Twocache, where the Spaniards have fince founded the Parish of Saint Blaife. This body was so whole and preferred with a certaine Rolin, that it feemed aline, he had his eyes made of a fine cloth of gold, to artificially fet, as they feemed very 10 naturall eyes, he had a blow with a stone on the head, which he had received in the warres , hee was all grey and hayrie, having loft no more haire then if he had dyed but the fame day, although it were leventie and eight yeeres fince his decease. The foresaid Polo sent this body with some others of the Inguas, to the Citie of Lima, by the Vice-royes command which was the Marquelle of Canerte, and the which was very necessarie to roote out the Idolatrie of Cufco. Many Spania ards have seene this body with others in the Hospitall of Saint Andrew, which the Marquesse built, but they were much decayed. Don Philip Caritopa, who was grand-child or great grandchild to this Inque, affirmed that the treature hee left to his Familie was great, which should bee in the power of the Tanaconas , Amaro, Toto; and others. To this Inqua succeeded Topaingua Tupangui, to whom his sonne of the same name succeeded, who founded the Familie 20 called Capac Aillo.

TO this latter Ingua succeeded Guaynacapa, which is to say, A young man, rich and valiant, Of the greatest and to was he in truth, more then any of his Predecessors, or Successors. He was very wife, and most faplanting good orders throughout his whole Realme, he was a bold and refolute man, valiant, and called Goadvery happy in warre. He therefore obtayned great victories, and extended his Dominions much arrays, char, farther then all his Predeceffors had done before him; he dyed in the Realme of Chitte, the which he had conquered, foure hundred leagues diffant from his Court. The Indians opened him after his decease, leaving his heart and entrailes in Quinto, the body was carried to Colleo, the

which was placed in the renowmed Temple of the Same. Wee fee yet to this day fitariy Caw-30 feys, Buildings, Fortreffes , and notable workes of this King thee founded the Familie of Teme Bamba. This Guaynacapa was worthipped of his subjects for a god, being yet aline, as the old Guaynace men affirme, which was not done to any of his Predeceffors. When hee dyed , they flue a thou- worthippedice fand persons of his houshold, to serve him in the other hie; all which dyed willingly for his fer- 2 god. uice, infomuch that many of them offered themfelues to death, befides fuch as were appointed ; his riches and treasure was admirable. And Forasmuch as the Spannerds entited frome after his death, the Indians laboured much to conceale all; although a great part thereof was carried to Xaxamalca, for the ranfome of Atabulpa his fonne. Some worthy of credit, affirme that he had His 300, fonnes aboue three hundred formes and grand-children in Cufco. His mother called Managella was &c.

much esteemed amongst them. Polo fent her body with that of Guaynacapa very well imbal-40 med to Lima, rooting out infinite Idolatries. To Guaynacapa succeeded in Casco a sonne of his called Titocuffigualpa, who fince was called Guafpar Ingua, his body was burned by the Captaines of Atabualpa, who was likewise sonne to Guaynacapa, and rebelled in Queto against his brother, marching against him with a mightie Armie. It happened that Quifquets and Chillenchi, Captaines to Atabualpa, tooke Guafpar Ingua in the Citie of Cufee, being received for Lord and King (for that he was the lawfull successor) which caused great forrow throughout all his Kingdome, especially in his Court. And as alwayes in their necessities they had recourse to factifices, finding themselues vnable to set their Lord at libertie, aswell for the great powerthe Captaines had that tooke him, as also, for the great Armie that came with Atahuaspa, they resolved (some fay by the commandement of this Ingua) to make a great and folemne facrifice to Vascocha Pachayachachic, which fignifieth vniner fall Creator, defiring him, that fince they could not deliver

50 their Lord, he would fend men from Heaven to deliver him from prifon. And as they were in this great hope, vpon their facrifice, newes came to them, that a certaine people come by Sea, was landed, and had taken Atahualpa prifoner. Hereupon they called the Spaniards Visacochas, beleeuing they were men sent from God, as well for the small number they were to take Ata- Spaniards shualpa in Xaxamalea, as alfo, for that is chanced after their factifice done to Viracocha, aftd there- fixemed men by they began to call the Spaniards Viracochiu, as they doe at this day. And in truth, if we had fent from God, given them good example, and such as we ought, the Indians had well applyed it, in faying they were men fent from God. It is a thing very well worthy of confideration, how the greatnesse and proudence of God, disposed of their rie of our men at Pers, which had been impossible, Pers could not

60 were not the differtion of the two Brethren and their Partifans, and the great opinion they had been conquered of Christians, as of mentent from Hearin, bound (by the taking of the Indians Country) to labour to win foules vinto Almightie God.

Of the laft Inguas. Chop. 22.

THE rest of this subject is handled at large by the Spanish Writers in the Histories of the In-deer, and for that it is not my purpose, I will speake onely of the succession of the Inguist. Atabualpa being dead in Xaxamalca, and Guascar in Cusco, and Francis Picarre with his people having feifed on the Realme, Mangocapa fonne to Guannacapa belieged them in Cufco very ftraightly : but in the end he abandoned the whole Country, and retyred himlelfe to Vilca Benne ba, where he kept himfelfe in the Mountaines , by reason of the rough and difficult accesse , and there the Successors Inquas remayined, vitill Amaro, who was taken and executed in the market place of Cufeo, to the Indians incredible griefe and forrow, feeing inflice done upon him publiquely whom they held for their Lord. After which time, they imprisoned others of the Linage of these Inguas. I have knowne Don Charles, grand-child to Guaynacapa, and sonne to Polo. 10 who was baptized, and alwayes fauoured the Spaniards against Mangocapa his brother, when the Marquelle of Canette governed in this Country Sarraopamena, went from Vilcabamba, and came vpon affurance to the Citie of Kings, where there was given to him the Valley of Tucay, and other things, to whom lucceeded a daughter of his. Behold the succession which is knowne at this day of that great and rich Familie of the Inguas , whose raigne continued about three hundred yeeres, wherein they reckon eleuen Succeffors, vntill it was wholly extinguished. In the other Linage of Vrincusco, which (as we have faid before) had his beginning likewise from the first Mangocapa, they reckon eight Succeffors in this fort : To Mangocapa succeeded Cina choraca, to him Capac Yupangui, to him Lluqui Yupangui, to him Mayraca paeft Tarcogumam, vnto whom succeeded his some, whom they name not, to this some succeeded Doulean 20 Tambo, Maytapanaça. This fufficeth for the originall and fuccession of the Inguas, that governed the Land of Pers, with that that I have spoken of their Lawes, Government, and man-

Of the manner of the Meximenweale, 4 hap.24.

A Lthough you may fee by the Historie written of the Kingdome, succession, and beginning of the Mexicans, their manner of Commonweale and Gouernment, yet will I locate briefly what I shall thinke fit in generall to bee most observed : whereof I will discourse more amply in the Historie. The first point whereby wee may judge the Mexican government to bee very politike, is the order they had and kept inniolable in the election of their King : for fince their first, called Acamapach , vnto their last , which was Moteguma, the second of that name, 30 there came none to the Crowne by right of succession, but by a lawfull Nomination and Election on. This election in the beginning was by the voice of the Commons, although the chiefe men managed it. Since in the time of Isealt the fourth King , by the adulfe and order of a wife and valiant man, called Tlacael, there were toure certaine Electors appointed, which (with two Lords or Kings subject to the Mexican, the one of Tescace, and the other of Tucuba) had power to make this election. They did commonly choose young men for their Kings because they went alwayes to the warres, and this was in a manner the chiefe cause why they defired them to, They had a speciall regard that they should bee fit for the warres , and take delight and glorie therein. Atter the election they made two kindes of feafts, the one in taking possession of the Royall E-Harth, called Dume, where there was a continual! fire before the Altar of the Idoll, and after fome Rhetoricians practifed therein, made many Orations and Speeches. The other feast, and the most folemne, was at his Coronation, for the which hee must first overcome in battell, and bring a certaine number of Captines, which they must facrifice to their gods; hee entred in triumph with great pompe, making him a folemne reception, aswell they of the Temple, who went all in procession, founding on fundrie forts of instruments, guing Incense, and singing like fecular men , as also the Courtiers , who came forth with their denites to receine the victorious King. The Crowne or royall Entigne was before like a Myter, and behinde it was cut, fo as it was not round, for the forepart was higher, and did nie like a point. The King of Teleuco had and weake, the Kings were very moderate in their expenses and in their Court , but as they increased in power, they increased likewise in pompe and state, vitill they came to the greatnesse of Motegama, who if he had had no other thing but his house of Beasts and Birds, it had beene a proud thing, the like whereof hath not beene feene : for there was in this house all fores of hill, birds of Xacamamas, and beatts, as in an other Noabs Arke; for Sea fish, there were Pooles of faltwater; and for River fish , Lakes of fresh-water; birds that doe prey were fed, and likewise wilde beaffs in great abundance : there were very many Indians imployed for the keeping of there bearly; and when he found an impossibilitie to nourill any fort of fish fowle, or wilde bearly he caused the Image or likenesse to be made, richly cut in precious stones, silver, or gold, in marble, pleafure, others of forrow and mourning, and others to treat of the affaires of the Realme. There was in this Palace many Chambers, according to the qualitie of the Noble men that ferued him,

Royall Diapicture ftorie.

House of liting Crea.

flate, for the which they went to the Temple, making great ceremonies and facrifices upon the the privilege to crown the King of Mexico. In the beginning when the Mexicans were but poore 50 or in flone : and for all forts of entertainments, he had his feuerall Houses and Palaces, fome of 60 with a strange order and distinction.

He Mexicans have beenevery curious, to divide the degrees and dignities among it the noble Of the Titles men and Lords, that they might diftinguish them to whom they were to give the greatest and Dignities honor. The dignitic of these foure Electors was the greatest, and most honorable, next to the the Indians v. King, and they were chosen presently after the Kings election. They were commonly brothers, fed. Chap. 25. or very neere Kinimen to the King, and were called Tlacobecalcals, which tignifies Proce of dars, Cors. the which they cast, being a kinde of armes they vie much. The next dignitie to this, were those they doe call Tlucatecati, which is to fay, Circumcifers or Cutters of men. The third dignitie Men-cutters. were of those which they called Eznabnacalt, which lignifies; A Shedder of blond. All the which Bloud fled-Titles and Dignities were exercised by men of warre. There was another, a fourth intituled, ders.

10 Thlancalque, which is as much to fay, as, Lord of the blacke bonfe, or of darkneffe, by reason of cer- Lord of darketame Inke wherewith the Priefts anointed themselves, and did ferue in their Idolatries. All these nesses foure Dignities were of the great Counfell, without whose adule the King might not doe any thing of importance; and the King being dead, they were to choose another in his place out of one of those foure Dignities. Besides these, there were other Counsels and Audiences, and some Other Offifay there were as many as in Spaine; and that there were divers Seates and Iurifdictions, with their cers. Counfellors and Judges of the Court, and others that were under them, as Corrigidors, chiefe Seethe pi Ludges, Captaines of Luftice, Lieutenants, and others , which were yet inferior to thefe , with a dure historie; very goodly order. All which depended on the foure first Princes that affished the King. These foure onely had authoritie and power to condemne to death, and the reft ient them inftructions

20 of the Seutences they had given. By meanes whereof they gave the King to vindentand what had paffed in his Realme.

There was a good order and fettled policie for the Renenues of the Crowne, for there were Officers draided throughout all the Prouinces, as Receivers and Treasurers, which received the Tributes and Royall Reuenues. And they carried the Tribute to the Court, at the least every moneth; which Tribute was of all things that doe grow or ingender on the Land, or in the water, aswell of Iewels and Apparell, as of Meat. They were very carefull for the well ordering of that which concerned their Religion, Superstition, and Liolatries : and for this occasion there were a great number of Ministers, to whom charge was given to teach the people the custome Priests and and ceremonies of their Law. Hereupon one day a christian Priest made his complaint that the Teachers of 30 Indians were no good Christians, and did not profit in the Law of God; an old Indian answered the Law.

him very well to the purpose, in these termes: Let the Priest (faid he) imploy as much care and dilisence tomake the Indians Christians, as the Ministers of Idols did to teach them their ceremonies; for with halfe that care they will make us the best Christians in the world for that the Law of lesus Christ is much better : but the Indians learne it not, for want of men to infirmat them. Wherein he lpake the

very truth, to our great shame and confusion.

He Mexicans gave the first place of honour to the profession of Armes, and therefore the How the Mexi-THe Mexicans gaue the first place or nonour to the production of the state of the s reputation gotten in warres, came to Dignities and Honors, so as they were held for Noble-men. and of the Ore 40 They gave goodly recompences to fuch as had done valuently, who injoyed priviledges that none hood, Chapade

else might haue, the which did much incourage them. Their Armes were of Rasors of sharpe cutting flints, which they fet on either fide of a staffe, which was fo furious a weapon, as they affir - Their Atmess med that with one blow, they would cut off the necke of a Horfe. They had strange and heavy Clubs, Lances, falhioned like Pikes, and other manner of Darts to caft, wherein they were very expert; but the greatest part of their combate was performed with stones. For defensive armes they had little Rondaches or Targats, and some kinde of Morions or Head-pieces incironed with feathers. They were clad in the skinnes of Tigres, Lions, and other fauage beafts. They came presently to hands with the Enemie, and were greatly practised to runne and wrefile, for thir chiefe manner of combate, was not fo much to kill, as to take Captines, the which they vied in

50 their facrifices, as bath beene faid. Morecuma fet Knight-hood in his highest splendor, ordayning certaine militarie orders, as Commanders, with certaine markes and enfignes. The most honorable among ft the Knights, were those that carried the crowne of their haire tied with a Eagle-order little red Ribband, having a neh plume of feathers, from the which, did hang branches of feathers upon their shoulders, and rolls of the same. They carried so many of their rolls, as they had done worthy deeds in warre. The King himfelfe was of this order, as may be feene in Chap altepec, where Morecuma and his fonnes were attyred with those kindes of feathers, cut in the Rocke, the which is worthy the light. There was another order of Knight-hood, which they called the Lions and the Tigres, the which were commonly the most valiant and most noted in Order of Li-

warre, they went alwayes with their Markes and Armories. There were other Knights, as the one and Ti-60 Grey Knights, the which were not formuch respected as the rest: they had their haire our round gres, about the care. They went to the warre with markes like to the other Knights, yet they were Gray Knights. not armed, but to the girdle, and the most honorable were armed all ouer. All Knights might carry gold and filter, and weare rich Cotton, vie painted and gilt veffell, and carry shooes after their manner : but the common people might vie none but earthen veffell , neither might they Knights prise-

Princes todging, the tecond of Eagles, the third of Lyons and Tigers, and the fourth of the gree Knights. The other common officers, were lodged vinderneath in meaner lodgings : if any one

lodged out of his place, he fuffred death.

Of the great

ftory. Colledges.

There is nothing that gives me more cause to admire, nor that I finde more worthy of commendations and memory, then the order and care the Mexicans had to nourish their youth: generals Mex for they knew well, that all the good hope of a Common-weale, conflitted in the norture and ingeneralized to in- fittition of youth, whereof Plate treates amply in his bookes De Legibus: and for this reason in they laboured and tooke paines to fequester their children from delights and liberties (which are the two plagues of this age) imploying them in honeft and profitable exercises. For this causes See the picture there was in their Temples, a private house for children, as Schooles, or Colledges, which was feperate from that of the yong men and maides of the Temple, whereof we have discoursed as large. There were in these Schooles a great number of children, whom their fathers did willing. ly bring thither, and which had teachers and mafters to inftruct them in all commendable exerciles, to be of good behaulour, to respect their superiours, to serve and obey them, giving them. to this end, certaine precepts and inffructions. And to the end they might be pleating to No. blemen, they taught them to fing and dance, and did practife them in the exercise of warrer fome to fhoote an Arrow, to cast a dart or a staffe burnr at the end, and to handle well a Target 20 and a Sword. They fuffered them not to fleepe much, to the end they might accustome themfelues to labour in their youth, and not be men given to delights. Besides the ordinary number of these children, there were in the same Colledges, other children of Lords and Noblemen, the which were instructed more privately. They brought them their meate and ordinary from their Their employ- houles, and were recommended to ancients and old men to have care over them, who continually ments and ri- did aduise them to be vertuous and to live chastely; to be sober in their diet, to fast, and to march gravely, and with measure. They were accustomed to exercise them to travell, and in laborious exercises: and when they see them instructed in all these things, they did carefully looke into their inclination : if they found any one addicted unto warre, being of fufficient yeares, they

fought all occasions to make triall of them, sending them to the warre, vnder colour to carrie 30 victuals and munition to the Souldiers, to the end they might there fee what paffed, and the la-

bour they suffered. And that they might abandon all feare, they were laden with heavie bur-

thens, that shewing their courage therein, they might more easily be admitted into the com-

pany of Souldiers . By this meanes it happened, that many went laden to the Armie, and returned Captaines with markes of honour. Some of them were so desirous to be noted, as they were either taken, or flaine : and they held it leffe honourable to remaine a prifoner. And there-

fore they fought rather to be cut in peeces, then to fall captiues into their enemies hands. See

how Noblemens children that were inclined to the warres were imployed. The others that had

their inclination to matters of the Temple; and to speake after our manner, to be Ecclesiafts-

call wen, having attained to sufficient yeares, they were drawne out of the colledge, and pla- 40

ced in the Temple, in the lodging appointed for religious men, and then they gave them the order of Ecclesiasticall men. There had they Prelates and Masters, to teach them that which concerned their profession, where they should remaine being destined thereunto. These Mexicans tooke great care to bring vp their children : if at this day they would follow this order, in building of houses & colledges for the instruction of youth, without doubt Christianstie should expectation of flourish much amongst the Indians. Some godly persons have begunne, and the King with his Counfell have favoured it: but for that it is a matter of no profit, they advance little, and proexternall gain.

Plaies and Military

Mulicke,

We have not discovered any Nation at the Indians, that live in comminalties, which have not their recreations, in plates, dances, and exercises of pleasure. At Pers I have seene plates in man- 50 ner of combats, where the men of both fides were fometimes fo chafed, that often their Paella (which was the name of this exercise) fell out dangerous. I have also seene divers forts of dances, wherein they did counterfait and reprefent certaine trades and offices, as shepheards, labourers, fifthers, and hunters, and commonly they made all those dances, with a very grave found and pale : there were other dances and maskes, which they called Guacenes, whose actions were pure representations of the deuill. There were also men that dance on the shoulders one of another, as they doe in Portugall, the which they call Paellas. The greatest pars of these dances, Exo.32. athing were superflictions, and kindes of Idolatries: for that they honoured their Idols and Guacas in that manner. For this reason the Prelates have laboured to take from them these dances, all they Comedies, &c. could : but yet they fuffer them, for that part of them are but sports of recreation : for alwayes 63 they dance after their manner. In these dances, they vie fundry forts of instruments, whereof, fome are like Flutes, or little Canons, others like Drums, and others like Cornets: but commonly they fing all with the voyce, and first one or two fing the fong, then all the rest answer them. Some of these fongs were very wittily composed, containing Hustones, and others were full of

CHAP.6. Indian Rope-dancers and agility. Picture fory how gotten.

fuperflittions, and fome were meere follies. Our men that have converfed among them, have laboured to reduce matters of our holy faith to their tunes, the which hath profited well : for that they employ whole dayes to rehearfe and fing them, for the great pleafure and content they take in their tunes. They have likewife put our compositions of Musicke into their Language, as Octaves, Songs, and Rondels, the which they have very aptly turned, and in truth it is a goodly and very necessary meanes to instruct the people. In Perm, they commonly call Dances Tagui, in other Prouinces, Areittos, and in Mexico, Mittottes. There hath not beene in any other place any fuch curiofitie of Playes and Dances, as in New Spaine, where at this day we see Indians fo excellent Dancers, as it is admirable. Some dance vpon a Cord, fome vpon a long and streight Curious Date

10 flake, in a thouland fundry forts; others with the foles of their feet and their hammes, do handle, cers. cast up and receme againe a very heavy blocke, which teemes incredible but in feeing it. They doe make many other showes of their great agilitie, in leaping, vaulting, and tumbling, sometimes bearing a great and heavy burthen , fometimes enduring blowes able to breake a barre of Iron. Great spiller, But the most vivall exercise of recreation among the Mexicon is the following Mittotte, and that is a kind of dance they held to braue and to honourable, that the King himfelfe danced, but not ordinarily, as the King Don Pedro of Arrason with the Barber of Valencia. This Dance or Mittatte, was commonly made in the Courts of the Temple, and in those of the Kings houses, which were more spacious. They did place in the midit of the Court two Instruments, one like

to a Drumme, and the other like a Barrell made of one piece, and hollow within, which they 20 fet voon the forme of a man, a beaft, or voon a Pillar.

Their two Inftruments were fo well accorded together, that they made a good harmony and with the'e Instruments they made many kinds of Ayres and Songs. They did all fing and dance to the found and measure of these Instruments, with so goodly an order and accord, both of their feet and voyces, as it was a pleasant thing to behold. In these Dances they made two Circles or Wheeles, the one was in the middeft neere to the Instruments, wherein the Ancients and Noblemen did fing and dance with a fort and flow motion; and the other was of the reft of the people round about them, but a good diffance from the first, wherein they danced two and two more lightly, making divers kinds of paces, with certayne leaps to the measure. All which together made a very great Circle. They attyred themselves for these Dances with their most pre-30 cious apparell and Iewels, enery one according to his abilitie, holding it for a very honourable thing : for this caule they learned thele Dances from their infancie. And although the greatest part of them were done in honour of their Idols, yet was it not to inflituted, as hath beene faid, hut only as a recreation and pattime for the people. Therefore it is not conucnient to take them quite from the Indians, but they must take good heed they mingle not their superflictions among it them, I have feene this Mutotte, in the Court of the Church of Topetzotlan, a Village feuen leagues from Mexico: and in my opinion, it was a good thing to buffe the Indians upon Festiuall dayes, feeing they have need of some recreation : and because it is publike, and without the prejudice of any other, there is leffe inconvenience, then in others which may be done privately by themiclues, if they tooke away there,

To the Reader.

R Eader, I here present out o the che choife, t of my levels. My travelling saucis bath innied man my Readers to many my labours in ftrange births already. Or z regio in terris nothri non plena las borist Iaponian and China rarities fo remote from our world, are neere to our worke, and their chara-Elers communicated here to the Reader; not their arts alone, Thou haft here also Industran, Arabike, Perfian Turkish, add other Letters, and not onely the transcript from their languages. At for translations and collections, thou haft them here also out of the Hebrew, Auncient and Moderne Greeke, Abaffine, Tartarian, Rustian, Polonian, Egyptian, and innumerable other Nations Christian, lewish, Mahumetan, Ethnike, Civill, Barbarian and Swage; winumerable wayer dinerfified. Tet all thefe in letters. or charafters. In hieroglyphical mysticall pictures the ancient Egyptians and Behingians, bane by may of Emblemes obscurely and darkly delinered their obscure mysteries, uncertaine, waxenly, pliant concontstathe world; some of which our Pilgrimage balb mentioned. But a Historie, yea a Politiche Ethike, Ecclefiaftike, Occonomike History, with tust distinctions of times, places, acts and arts, we hade netther seene of theirs, war of any other Nation, but of this which our light and flight apprehensions seeme not barbarous alone, but wilde and faunge. Such an one we here prefent, a prefent thought fit for him whom the fenders esteemed the greatest of Princes, and yet now presented to thy hands before it could are rine in bis presence. For the Spanish Governour baning with some difficultie ( as the Spanish Presace imports) obtained the Booke of the Indians, with Mexican interpretations of the Pictures (but ten dates 60 before the departure of the Ships ) committed the fame to one skelfull in the Mexican Linguage to be interpreted; who in a very plaine file and verbatim performed the faint, viling alfo fome Motifico words, at Altaquiand Mezquitas (for Prieft and Temples) import. This Historie ibus written, fent to Charles the fifth Emperour, was together with the Shippe that carried it taken by Frenchmen of war, from whom Andrew Theuet she French Kings Geographer, obtained the Same : after whose death;

Master Hakluyt (then Chaplaine to the English Embassadour in France) bought the same for 20. Frencherownes, and procured Master Michael Locke in Sir Walter Raleighs name to translatest. It seemes that none were willing to be at the cost of cutting the Piltures, and sort remained among sibir papers till his death, whereby (according to his last will in that kinde) I became possessiour thereof, and paper till ma deato, morrey (account, avon in the soft for the Preffe. The rather was I easy to be because the more than the soft for the Preffe. The rather was I easy to become the real act of the more than the soft for the Preffe. The rather was I easy to be more therein, as being a thing difficed by that most industries and Antiquest, indicates Scholler, Religions. Gentleman, our Ecclestastite Secular, the Churches champion, Sir Henry Spelman, Knight; whom for honors sake I name, that his name may honour our ruder lines; a name so sitting to the Man, as one which Ban, in regard of his wife spell and science in divine & humane learning, and is ready, with maine conrage ban, in regard of bit wife types any time to the character of the control of the control of the control of the character of t man can ipell, out of Spel-man. The commending from such a friend (les the Muses imperate pardon for so bold a name) was a commanding unto me, which here I againe commend to Him

one were it is divided into three parts; the first being the Annales and Mexican Chronicle: the second, their Exchequer or the Accounts of their senerall Tributes paid them from the Nasons and peoples their Excheques of the Accounts of users femana attention pains users from the accounts and peoples tributary, whereby may be seen the Naturall riches of tools parts peculiarly seried; the tools the Mexican Occonomic and Policie in warre and peace, religious and secular, there were and policie with the print series of the winds of the grame. Observe places I have explained the vites from the grame of the winds, to the winds of the grame. Observe places I have explained bly rites from the grame of the momoe, to now momoe of nor grame. Oriente paners and explained (besides what before in Acotta thou hash read comparing the translation with the originall, adding many of mine owne: and perhaps there is not any one History of this kinds who the world comparable to this, 10 so fully expressing so much without Letters; hardly gotten, and easily lost, that thou maist bers

### CHAP. VII.

The History of the Mexican Nation, described in pictures by the Mexican Author explained in the Mexican language; which exposition translated into Spanish, and thence into English , together with the faid Picture-bistorie are bere presented,

# The Mexican Chronicle.



Ere beginneth the Historie and foundation of the Citie of Mexico, founded and inhabited by the Mexicans, who at that time were called Megiti; whose origi-40 nall beginning of being Lords, and their acts and lines are declared briefely in this Historie, according as it is fignified and fet out successively by the pictures and paintings following,

In the yeare 1324, after the comming of our Lord and Saujour Iefus Christ, the Mexican people first arrived at the place of the Citie of Mexico, and because they liked well the greatnesse and the scituation of that place, afterthat they had transiled in their Iournies, and wandered many yeares from Country to Countrey, & in some of them had made their abode, for some yeares, being come from far Countries in following their Iournies, and not being contented with the other places where they had made their abode, they came and fetled themselves in the place of Mexico. The which place at that time was all drowned with water, and wascourred with great bogs and bankes of moorish shegs and bulrushes, which they call Tail, and it had Carrizales, and great plats of dry ground couered with shrubbes, bushes, and briars like woods. And through all the space of that place there went a speing & streame of fair cleere water which was free from all segges and bushes, which water streams went through it crossewise, in manner of Saint Andrewes croffe, as it is shewed in the picture : and about the middle of that place of that water-fireame, the Megiti found a great rocke of flone, and growing thereon a great Tree or bush called Tunal, wherein a great Eagle Candal had her baune and abode for her foode, fo as all about that place was scattered full of bones and feathers of divers Birds and Foules of divers colours. And they having gone stroughout all that place and Countrie theireabout, and finding it very fruitfull and full of wilde beatls, wilde Foules, Birds, and Fiftes, and things of the water, wherewith to fuffaine themselves and to profit themselves in their businesse in dealing with the l'owner thereabouts, and finding the water-courfes of that place to commodious, and that their Neighbours could not trouble nor hurt them, and for other things and causes to their good liking they determined to passe no further on their journeyes in trauelling, but to fettle

themselves and dwell still. And according to their determination, they did settle themselves there effectually. And made themselves a throng Citie of defence with bankes and walles about the waters, and on the plats of ground among the Segges and Bushes of Tulis and Carrialts. And for a beginning of that their feate and habitation, it was determined by them, to gue name and title to that place, calling it Tenulitilan. By reafon and cause of the Tunal glowing but of the Rocke (for Tenuchtitlan interpreted in our Castilian Spanish Tongue is Tunal growing apon

Necestary of the Merken people had with them of their Governous try petions named, October Queyes, Assetti, Manacid, Tapak, Tapak, Tapak, Kacadi, Kacadi, Bullet and the Confession Queyes, Assetti, Manacid, Tapak, Tapak, Marie Sale and Subject of the first part of the Confession of chiefe Gouernour and Lord to governe them, see perion especially choion thereto and fit for it, having in him all parts and abilities o exercise Lordinip. And they appointed the other chiefe Governours, that they should be Agents and Captaynes, Governours vnder him.

And after some yeeres were pass, door their dwelling in that prace, and the people multipixed, the Citie likewise was named Mexico, so named and derived of the Maribane, calling it the

plac of fetting of the Mark an veople.

And when the people were one what multipleed like following wallie people they took beginning of couragious minderian percurving over their Weightons, and is newed themselves in force of arms, whereby they tubuce and market that or, them two Townes next ad-20 joyning to Mexico, named Colhuacan , and Tenamon; as likewife is fet forth in the pictures: Tenubrition, the which doings passed in the si ne of the goustnment of the chiefe Lord Tonich, which was Mexican Lords the frace of fiftie one yeares, at the end whereof he died.

Concerning the Pictures of blew in the margents of this Hilborie, it is to be understood that heaven every several space or partition doth signific one years, and they bee the numbring of years to coloured and it is to be understood that every federall space or partition signific the one severall years, and so Tenancas intothey accounted & numbred energy years fenerally, proceeding by the number of rundles or pricks they accounted to principle of the control of the c 30 the partitions or spaces severally there be durers severall figures, yet the principall accompt of numbering is that accompt of the pictures or randles therein contained. And although the names of the yeares that they give to every partition from the number of the first point till the thirteenth be to some purpose, yet for to advertise the Reader thereof; here is made by at selfe a declaration of the names, with their interpretations,

In the order and rule of the partitions which are numbred for yeares, that partition where there is a branch with a foote like a flower, it doth fignific a bitter and vnfortunate years' which the Mexicans had, and did feare, faying that their predecessours time out of minde did give them warning that fich yeares which befell every two and fiftieth yeare, were dangerous, and vnfortunate, and bitter yeares, because that in such yeares there were floods generally, and like-40 wife darkenesse of the eclips of the Sunne, and universall earthquakes. And likewise in such yeares they made great facrifice and ceremonies to their gods, and gaue themselues to repentance, and did abstaine from all vices against the very day and houre of frich a yeare. In the which day generally they put out all their lights and fires till that day were past; and being pas-

fed they kindled new lights being had out of a Mountaine by a Prieff.

chiefe Lord.

This is a weeke of yeares after the Mexican computation (all coloured blew , the Mexican names written over in red) the first of which they call Setuchtli, that is, one Conie: the second Omeacalt, or two Canes: the third Yeytecpath, three Flints: the fourth Macuilitychtli, which signifieth foure howfes: the fifth Criquacenacatl, that is fine Conies: the fixth, fixe Canes: the fenenth, fenen Flints: the eight, eight Houses : the ninth, nine Conies : the tenth, ten Canes : the elementh, elemen Elmes : the twelfth, welne Honfes : the thirteenth, thirteene Conies.

TIII 2

This Pilling prefers the marker of 51 years: that is, the time of Teach reigns: in this wheele or square (which, as ill the ble present on in the original pilling a shared bley 1 to prefer to spring spring or to the original pilling a shared bley 1 to prefer to spring spring to the teach or General 1 below a masses are included in the original pilling, which he can want be below a marked of included in the original pilling, which he can want be below a marked of included pilling by the A-dequille, B Quapea, C Origina, D Agental, E Itentoch, F Itenach, C Arminist, H Xee 90.1 X similar of the pilling by the A-dequille, B Quapea, C Origina, D Agental, E Itenach, F Itenach, C Xeminist, H Xee 90.1 X similar or the pilling by the pilling

CHAP.7. S.I. Mexican bistorie in pictures. Chronicle without pariting.

caqui. K. Atal. L. Tenechinian, reprefenting the armse which they of edin the conquel of that place a which they is instituted u. M. the Tanal (quinted green) proming out of a Roch. N. the Tangle. O their (etting or binistation. P. the passive of Collisia. con Q. Tenagheurs; both which Nations. R. Tenuche consecuting for seef from a superarch S. their failesthan or bringing variet. I is the blue fluore and stant Andrewa crofts. The former relation duth more fails by open toleg things.



In this figure is represented the vaigne of their second Lord or King Acamapich. A is the time of his reigne 21. yeares. B Acamapiebeli the successor. C His target and arrowes infirmments of marre, by force whereof he subdued the se feure towns to peoples signed D. Onean nabnac. G. Mizquic. H. Caitlabnac. I. Xo-chimilco. E. is the same Acamapichts as a commerce. It is not ame Meanagewitt as a conqueror. It by foure faces and enfigues flowing the men of those foure Townes (to each of which is added like enfigue) fubdued. This pitther therefore dorb in signores signific, that which we might be there show.

N libe yeere 1377, in the field Goutenment and Lorddisp increeded damagnishii. And during his Lorddisp increeded damagnishii. And during his Lorddisp his blodfed and conquered by force of a men the foure Towner contayned and named in the pilluras here before, which are their: \$\frac{1}{2}\text{Lorddisp} \text{...} \text{adjust} \text{...} \text{...}

war to have many wises, the which were daughters of all the principal men of Attack, by whom he had many foots which were the beginning, and interact of many casisars, and Captaines, and war like people, by meanes of whom the Citic of Mexic was enlarged and augmented in great might, as is figuited hereafter in the discourse by the pitch of the Citic of Mexics was enlarged and augmented in great might, as is figuited hereafter in the discourse by the pitch of the Citic of Mexics was enlarged and augmented in great might, as is figuited hereafter in the discourse by the pitch of the citic of Mexics was enlarged and augmented in great might, as is figuited hereafter in the discourse of the citic of Mexics.

chies, with thrir declarations. The two pickness with their tiles & names of Atamopich be 000 since thing to distort effect, see the first flower his beginning and succession of the full Lording, and the fectoud showeth the years of the first flower his beginning and succession to conquer and shide the fast flower flowers. And in the did Lording how the first flower flower and wently species, at the end whereof the fast Atamopich dyed and departed this presentation, the which his departure was not be preserved as the preserved of the fast Atamopich dyed and departed this preserved.

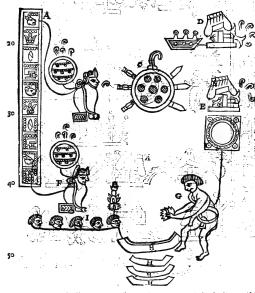


A 21. perces. B Towns and People of Tolisilan. C Quauxiilan. D (balco. H Tulaucinco. I Xaltocan. K Otunpa. L Acolma. M Texcuco. E The Cutter both fee letter to dinery figures

CHAP.7. S.I. Mexican biftorie in pictures. Chronicle without writing.

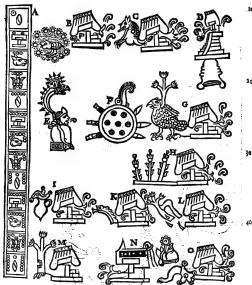
whereof I can give no interpretation: and such is this, except perhaps it significal that in his seventh geere he began his conquests. For I doe here interpret duvers in which the Spanish is silent, if the conie-Eture feeme easier. F is King Huiçilibuitl. G the infruments of warre.

IN the yeere 1396. in the faid Lordship succeeded Huicilibuit sonne of Acamapich, and during the time of his reigne in his Lordship, he conquered by force of armes eight Townes, which are contayned in the pictures here before, with the names of the same Townes intituled, the which were made tributarie to the Mexican Lordship acknowledging seruitude. The said Huicithbuit! was valiant in warres, and inclined to haue many wines by whom he had many sons, 10 wherewith the power of the Mexicase was augmented. The time of the Lording and life of the faid Histifibiait chertin was 1, yearth; as the edd whereof he dyed and departed this pre-fent hife, according as by the produces of blue are outpleted.



A tonse yeeres. B Chimalpopuea. C Targer and Darts, to intimite his forcible enough of D Toquesqueac and E Choleo, F formals his death. C the Tomos of Choleo in robelien, H the-four Carnas and 1 the fine new absorption? Officeres, which the Robel full. Tom for the kind and every other both King and Tomos diffinguithed by faciall Armse an Statebours, with other part-60 tienders, which here and and it bretil I have second Readers were adultirs and formth.

In the yeare 1470, after the death of Hincilibria! succeeded Chimalpapines in the faid Lordship. of Mexico, some of the said Hincilibrial, and during his time hee subdued by force of armes the Townes of Tequinquiae, and Chalco, which Chalco is a great Towne and acknowledging feruitude: they paid tribute to the Lordship of Mexico, according as the pictures doe shew. And hauing the faid Towness thus in subiction, at the end of certaine yeeres the said Towne of Chatco, being mighte; rebelled against the Mexicons, and in the rebellion there grew danger to the Checcens, insometh that they sue site of them, and brake them soure Canoas, according as here is signified by the pictures. The time of the life and Lordship of the said Chimashpusca was ten yeeres, at the end whereof hee dyed, according as is numbred by the blue pictures in the margent. And likewise the said Chimashpusca, in the time of his life had many wives and sons for it was accounted a matter of reputation.

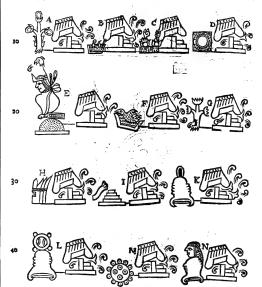


The explanation of the first Table A 13, years. Yeccatci. F by force of Armes (fignifiedby 50 this Tayet and Darts) findbased the Towner, and Territories of B Accapicalco, C Covicent. D'Teccalburgacan. G Guernagon, H Tlacepion I Alexiburgaca. K Mixeone, L Quanximalpon, M Quanburlan, N Topan, O Acobbascan.

IN the yeers 1,477, in the faid Dominion of Mesico, after the death of Chimalpopuca, succeeded Tectories, Sonne of Assampich, which had been Lord of Mesico, and during his time her conquered by force of Armes foure & twentie Townes which are here pektured, which Townes he made subject to the Lordhips of Mesico, at one insusion which he made; for he was as valunt and warlike in Armes as the faid Assampich, and was a man of good indegenent, and write in me-67 my matters, and by his good industries he fubblised the faid Townes which gaue him tribute, and did acknowledge fentuated. The faid Townes is had many Concluines, by whom he had fourn Sonnes and Daughters and he reigned in the faid Lordhip thirteene yeeres at the end whereof the faid Townes' dyed and departed this present life.

CHAP.7.S.I. Conquered Townes. Gueguemotecumas reigne and life.

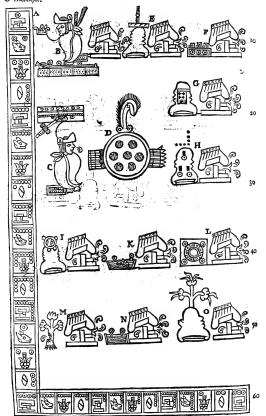
In the other Table (in the crisimal being another Page) follow A Micapic B Cuitlabous. C Xockimalepus, D Chalco, E Quambilatoa the Lord of Tlatifulco; the Torme also added, F Huicitapen. G Quambrahamae. H Caccalan, I Caqualpus, K Intepec L Xubtepec. M Youlan, N Tepequacutico,



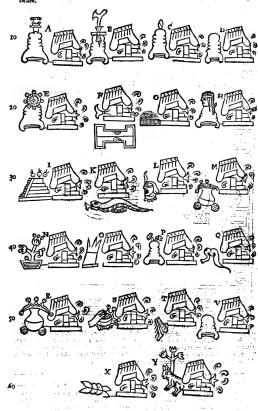
The he yeers 1440, after the death of Transary increeded Gusquemorepuma in the Lordhip of Mexico, the Sonne of Guiphibaut which had beene Lord of Mexico and during his time, beconquered by force of Armes three and thirtie Townesscording as they are pickured in that 50 compalle where the Pickure of Goognemorepuma flandeth. And haung fubdued them to the faid Lordhip of Mexico, they payed him those, acknowledging their fubretion.

This Gnegoemotics was a very feuere and graue Lord, and giuen to vertue, and was a man of a good incure and vnderflanding, and an ciemte oall euill vices: and beeing of a good inclination, feet downer Orders and Lawes in his Common-wealth, and to all his Scruants how they ought to line, and allo ordayned gneuous penalties for the breach of them: which penalties wrete executed without any remition you hole that brake the Lawes. He was not credil; but rather gentle, and defirous of the welfareof his Subieclis, not vicious in women; hee had two Sonnes, hee was very temperate in drinking, for in all his life time hee was not receive to bee drunke as the naturall /ndown which are extremely inclined to drunkenness, but rather he come of manded him to be corrected and punished that committed fuch a fact. And by his feueritie and Inditic and good example of life, he was steared and returned of all his subiectles, all his life time, which was the fpace of nine and twentie yeeres. At the end whereof he dyed, and passed out of this pretient life.

A nine and twentie yeeres, C. Husbaennstectuma, D by force of Armes fubdaed. B. Lord Atoual and bie Towne Conyxtlabuscan, E. Mamulbasztepee, F. Tenauco, G. Tetrochepee, H. Chiemystambeo, I. Xiubtepee, K. Tosolapon, L. Chalco, M. Quaubnahnae, N. Atlatlanbea. O. Husztepee



In the second Table, A Taubrepee, B Tepurelan, C Teparecines, D Tacapabilan, E Toaltea pre: K Tlackee, G Tlaleceashuston, H Tepequaesiles, I Quiyanteepur, K (bonalecealan, L. Ricipuchian, M Astronice, N Ascepton, O Tiden, P Xisteppe, Q Teginneinsinglice, R Astronice, S Tlapaceyan, T Chapolixink, V Tlalashguirepee, X Cuestaritor, Y Quant-



## 1076 Mexican historie in pictures. Chronicle without writing, Axayacaçi. LIB.V.

IN the yeere 1479, after the death of Gueguemotezuma, succeeded in the Lordship of Mexico Axayacacs ionne of Tecocomoetliquieto, which was the lonne of Tecoals Lord of Mexico, And during the time that the laid Axaracaci was Lord, he conquered and won by force of armes 6uen and thirtie Townes, as hereafter are pictured and named. Amongst which Townes hee fub. dued under his Lordship by force of armes the Towne of Tlatilalco, a thing of great importance. Mogniture was Lord of Tlandulco at that time, who being a mightie person of great strength and of a proud nature, began to give occasion of diffention and warres to the Lords of Mexico. having heretofore held them for friends : by occasion whereof hee had great incounters and battailes, wherein the faid Moquibuix Lord of Tlatitules dyed in throwing himselfe downe from a Cu (or a high Mezeita, or Temple) for he feeing himfelfe so hard befet in the battaile, being ale moit ouercome, entred into a Mizena to faue himielfe, because hee would not be taken prisoner. And an Alfaqui (or Prieft) which was in the Mezquito , or Temple , reprouing him for it and imputing cowardife vnto him, he threw himfelfe downe as aforelaid. At which time the Merk gans had the victorie. And thenceforth the Towne of Tlavilales was subject to the Lord of Mexic co, paying tribute and acknowledging fubication. Axayacaci was very valiant and warlike in armes, and was viciously given to women, having had many wives and fonnes: he was also proud and warlike, whereby all his subjects feared him extremely; hee did maintaine and hold for good all the Lawes and Ordinances that his predecessor Gueguemore and had made, according as hath beene mentioned in his Historie; and hee continued the space of twelve yeeres in the said Lordthip of Mexico, at the end whereof he dyed and departed out of this prefent life,

A. Weine years. B. Angueut. C by a med force subdued this Towns following (and a bifor experient politics). Idealacto, Atlaphiles, Xalailanbis, Theotopes, Melogie, Tajinina, Originia, Quandyanous, Xeebiaan, Tecenanci, Calimayan, Cuncanney, Tuccan, Yengipi, Tenerico, Teoropea, Termaloyan, Oncompa, Xeevillan, Ocalen, Ocatoriçae, Matalan, Cuncomathau, Tecedoc, Sectionalian, Parcanbilan, Alexillan, Parcanbilan, Algunia, Tengan, Tandon, Tandon, Alexillan, Cuncolorico, Tetrapoidan, Majunian, Tamun, T

Tichellacatecatl that is, 670st Captaine.

See the florie

Tlatilu'ce Sub-

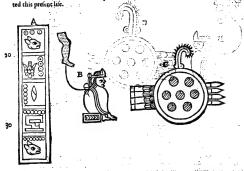
as Acofta taith

were fubicate

to them,

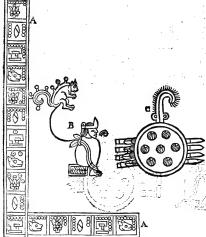
IN the yeers 1481 after the end and death of Ansageaci, fucgood in the Lordhip of Maries, 60 Troprients font Softheliad Margaesi, and during the timest his rigne he conquered and got by force of arms a fourcement Towns. The hist Troprients was very valiant and warlike in arms, and before that he fucceeded in the Lordhip of Maries, he had done dangerous feates of walland the function in the warres, whereby here obstryand the neith of Theateach,

which they efteemed for a Title of great honour and eftare: and it was a degree whereny that the Lordfilap of Mexce being vacuus, he which had the fame degree and trite lucceeded in the place of the lame Domminon of Mexce, which title in like manner his Fredectfors, Brothers, and Father, and Grand-father had, whereby they came to be Lords of Mexce. Allo the faid Toescientar's by the effate and authoritie of the faid Lordfilap of Marcie, had many Wi use and Sonnes which hee had by them, and he was a grave and lucre man in commanding and was feared and rescreted of his Subjicts, hee was lakewise enclined to good and vertuous things, and was good for his Commonwealth. He commanded the Lawes and Statuts so bee keep rand approaced for good, that his Predectfors had amplified and kept fince the time of Genome than the state of the subjects committeed. And for the Mexcess Commonwealth was well ordered and gourned the time of the life. The subjects sommitteed. And to the Mexcess Commonwealth was well ordered and gourned the time of the life, which was the figure of fine yeares, at the mid whereof he dyed and general



F A Fineyerre: B Tecchestri C by armes fubduced thefe Townes, Tonchymogiacayan, Tavite, Eastrpee, Zilan, Tecare, Tulnea, Tanvinlan, Thams, Airzedmacan, Maxatlan, Xechi, Jesla, Tamapacko, Eustymapacko, Miguetlan.

N the yeere 1485, after the death of Tizizacatzi, succeeded Abaizatin, brother to his Predes 1 ceffor Transicurai, in the Signorie of Mexico. And during the time of his Lordfhip, he conquered by force of armes fine and fortie Townes, according as hereafter are pictured and named. The faid Abuzozin was like to his Predecesfor and Brother Tizizoenzi in valiantnesse and feates of warre, whereby he got the title of Tlacatecall, which fignifieth a great Captains, and from the fame title he came to be Lord of Mexico. The faid Abuizonin was by nature of a good inclination, and given to all vertue, and likewise in the course of his life hee had his Commonwealth ruto led and gouerned well, and he fulfilled and kept the Lawes and Statutes that his Predecessors had maintayned fince the time of Gueguemotezuma. And as the flate of the Lordfhip of Mexico was brought to great Majestie, and had the greatest part of this New Spaine subitet, acknowledging their feruice, and by the great and rich tributes which they gave the faid Mexican Lordinip, came to much renowme and mightinesse. And he like a mightie and great minded Prince, gaue great things and preferments to his feruants, and he was temperate of condition and mercifull, whereby his feruants loued him exceedingly, and yeelded him great renorence. And likewife hee had many wives, and children by them, because it was a thing adioyned to the Lordship, and a point of great estate. He was of a morrie condition, whereby his seruants did feast him continually in his life time with great and divers kindes of feafts, and mulick, and fongs, and inftriments, as 60 well in the night as in the day : for in his place the Municians and Singers neger ceased with many Instruments of musicke. The course of his life in that Signiorie was fixteene yeeres; at the end whereof he dyed and paffed out of this prefent life.



A fixteene yeeres. B A. buisezin. E conquered by armes the townes following, Tziccoac, Tlappan, Molanco, Amaxtlan, Zapotlan, Xaltepec, Chiapan, Totore-pec, Xochilan, Xolochsubylan, 13 Cozaquantenanco, Coco. buipilecan, Coynacac, Acatepec, Huexolotlan, Acapulco, Xiubhuacan , Apancalecan, Tecpatepec, Tepechiap. co Xicochimalco Xinhtecza. catlan, Tequantepec, Coyo-lapan, Tatalilalocan, Teocuitlatlan , Hnehaeslan Quanhxayacasıılan, Yzbu. 14 atlan, Comitlan, Nantzine tlan, Huspilan, Cabualan. Titatlan, Huiztlan, Xolot. lan, Quanhnacazilan, Maeatlan, Ayanbtochmitlatla Quantitlan, Cuecalcuitlapi. la, Mapachtepec, Quanhoi. lolan, Tlacoropec, Mizqui-

tie : and he by his granitie and feueritie enlarged exceedingly the State and Dominion of Mexico, yea a great deale more then his Predeceffors. Morezzenma was the fonne of Anagagagi, which had beene Lord of Mexico, and before hee came to the faid Lordship hee had the delerts of a worthy Captaine and a valiant man in warres, whereby her had the title of Tlacatecail, 48 and soluce succeeded in the Lordship of Mexico, as is before rehearled, and being in the faid His weale and Lordship he did greatly increase the Mexican Empire, bearing the rule ouer all the Townes in this New Spaine, infomuch that they gave and payed him great cributes of much riches and

Maicftie.

Blottzuma,

Conquefts.

Lawes.

butes, as hereafter by their pictures and declarations is made manifeft. Moregume was by nature wife, and an Affrologor, and a Philosopher, fubtile and skilled generally in all artes as well of warres as all other matters temporall. And for his granitie and estate he had of his Lordship the beginning of an Empire, according as his feruants did reverence him with great honor and power, that in comparison of him, not one of his predecessors came to halte fo much eftate and Majeftie.

N the yeere 1502, after the end and death of Abuiçoçin, succeeded in the Lordhip of Mexi-

co, Motez,uma. Mexico was now growne into great Majestie, Renowme, and Authori-

yal e: He was feared vary much of all his feruants, and like wife of his Captaines and Principals,

intomuch that not one when they had any businesse with him, for the great renerence they had

him in durif for feare looke him to that face, but that they held downe their eyes and their head

low and enclined to the ground a sad many other extraordinarie sofpects and catemonies they

did unto him for the Maiestie he represented wate them, not mentioned here for supyding of tedioutnelle. After Meterame had forceeded in the faid Lordfhip , hee conquered foure and fortie

Townes hereafter named; and bee subdued them ynder his Lordinip and Empire, and in their 50

acknowledging of fernitude all the continuance of his life, they payed him many and great tri-

The Statutes and Lawes of his Predecessors, since the time of Guegnemotecuma untill his time, he commanded to bee kept and wholly fulfilled with great zeale. And because hee was a man to wife, by his good nature he orday ned and made other Statutes and Lawes which he thought de- 60 feetine for the execution of the former, not abrogating any, all which were for the welfare and good government of his Commonwealth and Subjects. Hee was inclined to kerpomany houles

Many women, and women, which were daughters of the Lords his Subjects and Confederates; and by them he had many children; and to have fo many wives was for to fet forth his Majette the more, for they hold it for a point of great estare. Among which the daughters of the Lerds of great au-

### CHAP. T. S.I. Mexican bistorie in pictures. Chronicle without writing.

thoritie he held for lawfull wines, according to their rights and ceremonies, and them hee kept within his Palaces and dwelling houses; and the children that came of shem were had in reputation as more lawfull children then the others which here had by the other women. It were a See before in large historie to tell the order he had in keeping of them, and conversation with them. And be- scalla, and afcause this present historie is but briefe, it is left vnrehearsed,

The quantitie, value, and number of the tributes and kindes of things that his subjects did pay ha ions of Ma. for tribute vnto him, shall be seene and vnderstood hereafter, as by the pictures and declarations testing, in a is fignified. And he made a ftraight order that the tributes which they payed him, should be ful- wilde kinde of filled according as they were louised by him; for the fulfilling whereof he had in all his fulfiedt. flare and mahilled according as they were service by min; not not turning written by a containing and the containing and commandement, but that they were kept and wholly fulfilled because he punished and corrected executing the rebels without remission.

And in the fixteenth yeere of the reigne of Motezuma, the Mexicans had knowledge of of the elder certaine Spaniards, which were discourrers of this New Spains, that at the end of twelue Fuff notice of moneths there should come a fleet of Spaniards to ouercome and conquer this Country ; and the Spaniards the Mexicans kept account thereof, and they found it to bee true, for at the end of the faid twelve moneths was the arrivall of the faid fleet at a Hauen of this New Spaine, in the which fleet came Don Ferdinando Cortes, Marques del Valle, which was the feuenteenth yeere of the reign

20 of Motezama; and in the eighteenth yeere he made an end of the continuance of his Lordship and Raigne: in the which yeere he dyed and departed this prefent life. At the time when Mo- Muteruna texama came to his government, he was five and thirtie yeeres old little more or leffe, fo that at death, his decease he was three and fiftie yeeres of age. And straightway in the yeere after his death, this Citie of Mexico, and other Townes adjoyning, were our come and pacified by the faid Marques del Valle, and his Confederates. And to this New Spaine was conquered and pacified. ----

A The number of 19. yeares (18. yeeres of his raigne, and that other which followed in his Succellor, wherin Mexico was 20 conquered, as you may fee in the next chapter ) B the fourth yeere of his raigne in which bee began his conquest. G Mote-cuma. D the instruments of warre by which bee conquered Actuallan, Zozolan, Nochez. tlan, Tecutepec, Zulan, Tlanza tlan , Huilotepec , Tepatepec, Tesactlalocan, Chieb: bualtata

cala, Tecaxis, Tlackmolticpac, Xoconochco, Zinacantlan, Huiztlan, Piaztlan, Molanco, Zaquantepec, Pspsyoltepec, Hu. eyapan, Tecpatian , Amatian. Caltepec, Pantepec, Tecazineo, Tecozanhila, Teochiapan Zacatepec, Tlachquiyanbeo, Ma-linaltepec, Quimichtepec, Tzquintepec, Zenzontepec, Quet.

50 zaltepec, Cuezcomayattabuacan, Huexolotian, Kalapan, Xaltiachnizco, Tolexonernila, Atepec , Millan , Yztitlan, Tliltepec, Comaltepec.

Their townes were gouerned by the Cafiques & Principals of Mexico, appointed hy the Lords of Merico, for the good defence and go-



uernment of the naturall people, and for the fecuritie of the flownes, that they should not rebell, as also for the charge they had to gather, and command to be gathered the Rents and Tributes, that they were bound to give and pay to the Dominion of Mexico.

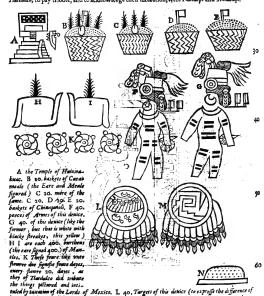
Citialispec, Quantitocheo, Mixcoatl, Tlacatettis a Governous, Zonpaneo, Xultocan , Tlacatettis a

Gouernour, Acalbaccan, Taccehvelles Gouernour, Fluanze, Tetpecan, Casislan, Huinachvillan, Tleastelle a Gouernour, Taccehvella a Gouernour, Taccehvella a Gouernour, Achaelan, expansion, Tetacolor, Chelestarro, Taccehvilla, a Gouernour, Taccatecal a Gouernour, Ostora, Alexana, Allan, Omegunb, Texancascal a Gouernour, Texancascal a Gouernour, Democratical and Company and Compan

# o. I I. The second part of this Booke contaying the particular Tributes which energy Towns subdued paid vinto the Lords of Mexico.

Fire follow pictured and intituled the kinds of things, that they of Thailules (which a at this day is called by the Spaniards, Sint Lance) did pay in tribute to the Lords of the Lords of

They were charged for tribute, alwayes to repaire the Church called Histonehme. Item, fortie great Baskets (of the biguefic of halfe a Bufhell) of Casas ground, with the Meale of Maiz (which they called Chisappined) and curry Basket had fixteene hundred Almonds of Caso. Item, other fortie Baskets of Chisappined. Item, eight hundred butthens of great Mantels, Item, eighte pieces of Armoun, of flight Feathers, and as many Targets of the fame Feathers, of the deuties & colours as they are pictured. All the which tribute, except the faid armes and targets they gaue curry 24, dayes, and the faid armes and targets they gaue four thinter but once in the whole yever. The faid tribute had his beginning fince the time of Quantification and Magai. Davis, which were Lords of Tatifales. The Lords of Maxico, which first entoyened to thole of Tatifales, to pay throuse, and canknowledge their subsection, were Taxoning and Anisons.



colours in each particular were too tedious.) N Hattlulos. The names of Quashilates and Moquibure Lords of Hattlulos are added, becaufin their times it began; as also of Fernexittien, Lecoaci and Apparent on tentants that the left two Lords of Moxics or Tenuntitian Jadducchum. The Pilitures of them (as of many Tomes before) were omitted: being but Juch descriptions of men and Townes as you have tene attradite.

The Townes pickured in the two Pieces following, and immned heere be twentie three Lords of Mexico, called Perlacalcast, although neuerchelette, euery Towne had his Caspingue, 10 which is at it were a Steward or Bayliffe, whose charge was to gather the Reins Stributes that the fail Townes sidd tribute to the Domnion of Mexico, and all the fails Stewards came to the fail Perlacalcast as their Gouernor, and the things and kinds that the fail townes did tribute, are telled which follow, 44,00, burthens of great Mantels of twitted Yarne. Eight hundred burthens of little Mantles, nich attyre, of the colcurs as they are pictured, Foure hundred burthens of Massifac, which ferned for little clothes. Foure hundred burthens of Huiples and Nagans, all the which they gase for those course for months.

Item , They gave five pieces of Armour, of rich Feathers, and as many Targets of the

colours and deuices as they are pictured.

100 may Target of the colours and deuices as whey are pictured.

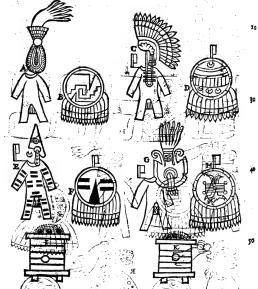
20 many Target of the colours and deuices as whey are pictured.

Item, "They tributed one Yeares of Frifales, and another Traze of China, and another Traze of Mayz, and another of Ganalie, which is the feed of Bletler. All the which things of the list Armour and Targets, and Traves of Phylles, and the other feeds the faid Townes did pay for tribute once query yeers.



Petlacalent a Gonerouse (the pillures of men and towns; are beere and in the following amined, bring no other then as you have alreadie feeine) The semies are Xazalpan, Topeo, Tepetlacades, Texica-pan, Tepethan, Tequement, Haquis Pethos, Cohnacines, Centian, Teppedam, Oldac, dispan, Cuitahme, Texacoa, Mezquis, edochpance, Texperialan, Xico, Tepa; Tecnico, Theorember, New.

A 400. burthen of Maxilae of thu worke, which he luttle clothes. B 400. burthens of Nagua, and Hunfels of thu worke. C 400. burthens of great Mastels. D 400. burthens of great Mastels. E 400. burthens of great Mastels. E 400. burthens of lutte (Amatels, of worke each dualities of fear-rail colours. Red. Blue, Yellow, Greeve. G 400. burthens of lutte (Mastels, of the worke, E 400. burthens) and the Mastels. E 400. burthens of great Mastels. E 400. burthens of great Mastels. E 400. burthens of great Mastels. A 400. burthens of first deather species. Of the deather species of first feathers of this deather. P Aprece of Armous of the feathers of this deather. R Aprece of Armous of the feathers, of this deather species. A 400. S 410. S 41



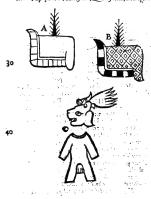
A A force of Arming of rich fashers of this deniet percey. B A Target of rich fashers of this desice. C 30 macs of Armon of this denice years, they were of red fashers. D. to Target of fashers of this deniet, the 30 macs of Armon of this denice, first, of this denies, percent for 50 to Target of 50 fashed. It 30 pieces of Armon of this denice, here, of this fashers pairly. H 30. Target of fashers of the denice. I M Target of this denies, and the denies. The third of the denies of the denies. I M Target of the denies of the denies. A Trees of Friend and Chan, he of the denies and an armony of the other than K A Trees of Mar, and another of Grantle, public prof of Ballet.

### CHAP.7. S.L. Mexican historie in pictures. Tributes pand to Mexico.

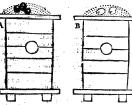
These Townes pictured and named, ensuing and sommed herre, are sixe and twentie townes, a wherein from the time of their conquests by the Lords of Mexico, they had let Calpagues, as it were Baylifes in every of them, and in the principal Towne a Gouernour bare rule about all the rest, occasion the should mayneaine them in peace and suffice, and make them performe their tributes, and that they should not rebell. The tributes that all the faid townes hereafter contarged, did not rocetter, are these which follow.

Two thousand burthers of great Mantels to wifed. Item, 1200. but thensof Cmahmae, which be rich Mantels, wherewith the Lords and Cafiques were clothed of the colours as they are piccured. Item, 400, but thens of Mantels, which be livel clothes. Item, 400, but then of Hair. In piles and Nagasa, all the which they paid for tribute twice a yeers. Item, they gaue more tribute three pieces of Armoung armified with eight each of teathers and as many Tragets of the colours and deutes as they are pictured, the which they gaue in the space of one yeers. Item, one huntred pieces of Armoung armified with feathers of triall value, and as many Tragets of the deduces and colours as they are hereafter pictured, the which they tributed once a yeers. Item, foure great Traves of wood, full, the one of Frisles, and another to Chan, and another of Maiz, and another of Gmanth, which is the feed of Belebox, Easty Traves might contayns foure or fine thousand Hampers, the which they tributed once a yeers.

Acolomiculi, Calpuxque. Acolouscan, Huicitan, Tololfinco, Tlachydonalco, Topechpa, Azaquemeca, Teaceloo, Tonantia, Zoppodan, Topellapaño, Achadopec, Tiçatep, Contlan, Txquenecan, Q. Maixor, Teneazcalap in, Tyzanican, Topellapan, Calabaudeo, Tecoyncan, Ilaquilpan, Quaubquemecan, Epacumcan, Amerika, Quanhyocan, Erustepac.



A 400. bustbens of Mantels of this coalous (red) and worke (edged Blue-Greene, Red, and Tellow) B 400. building Mantels of this worke (Blacke and While) C Twente pieces of Armes of rich feathers of this worke.



A. Fallowing two Trones of Frifoles and Chim. Beno Traze, the one of Muse, the abort of Humanii (shewrome.) Theretic americadin Patrare, being refembled as the former, and for the Historie on base in before.

The towness thured and named, and tumbred here are fixteene townes, the which towness I did pay for tribute to the Lords of Marke, the things pictured and intituted. And because they floudil the with ruled and gootmend, the Clouds of Mexico had fet Capitagues in energy town, and about all them for Gouernour, a principall than of Markes; the Capitagues allow eggs since of Markes: which was done by the faul Lords for the fectivitie of the townes, that they floudd not rebell, and also because they floudd minister lostice, and the in policies. And the faid Tributes that the faid towness gaue as appeareth by the faid Pictures, and fummed heere, are those which follows.

Fril. Free did quibute twelue hundred burthens of great, Mantels of twifted Yarne.

\*\*Frie. Free did quibute twelue hundred burthens of great, Mantels, of the apparell which they did weare.

\*\*Item, Twelue hundred burthens of small white Mantels, richly wrought, which is apparell that the Lords and Cafigues did weare.

Item, Foure hundred burthens of Maxilaille, which are small clothes that they weare.

· ....

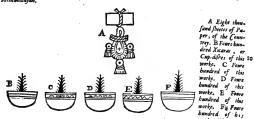
Item. Fourehundred burthens of Huiples and Naguas, which is apparell for women, all the which they tribute twice a yeere; to that they gave tribute every fixe moneths.

Item, They did tribute eight pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers of divers colours as they are pictured, the which they paid for tribute once a yeere,

Isem, Foure great Troxes of wood, full of Maiz and Frifoles, and Chian, and Huantli, which is the feed of Bleshos, every Troxe might contayne 5000. Hanegas or Bushels, the which they did tribute once a yeare.

Item, Eight Reames of Paper, of the Countrey, which they tributed twice a yeare; fo that in all it was every yeere fixteene thousand sheets of Paper.

Item, In every tribute 2000. Xicharas, or drinking Cups, which they gave twice a yeere. The Townes were Quaubnahuac, Teocalcinco, Chimalco, Huiccilapan, Acatlicpac, Xochitepic, 10 Miacatla, Molotla, Coatlan, Xinbtepec, Xoxontla, Amacoztitlan, Tztlan, Ocpayncan, Tztepec, Atlichologyan.



hundred of this worke. D Foure bundred of this worke. E Foure hundred of this worke. Fir Foure bundred of bis

A Eight thous

worke. The colours are Yellow and Red. The rest need no presenting in Picture, beeing but as formerly in seene,

The townes following, and numbred here are fix and twentie, which did pay tribute of the things pictured and entituled to the Lords of Mexico and likewife there was refident a Gouernour, and Mexican Calipixque, as in the other townes afore mentioned, which were ordained by the Lords of Mexico. And the tributes that they payed, appearing by the Pictures are these which follow. First, they did tribute 400. burthens of Maxidelite, which are little clothes. Item, 400. burthens of Nagnas & Huptler, apparell for women, Item, 2460. burthens of great Mantles, of twifted yarne. Item, 800. burthers of rich Mantles, that the Lords and Principals of Mexico were clothed with , of the colours as they are pictured. Item, 2006. Xicaragyamilhed, of the colours as they be pictured. Item, 8000. Reames of Paper of the Countrey, all the which they 40 gaue in every tribute, which was every fix moneths. Item, They tributed 40 pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with hight feathers died of divers colours, as appeareth by the Pictures, Item, Six pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with high feathers of the deuices and colours as they be pictured. Item, Foure great Traxes of wood like those aforefaid, ful of Maiz and Frifoles, and Chian, and Guausti, all the which they tributed obce a yeere,

The townes names are Huartepic, Northmic acinco Quantitan, Activebuscopen, Anenequiles, O-imtepec, Quantitalyxco, Zonpanco, Huardapan, Talincapan, Coacalco, Teamaintal Tepozilan, Yantiepec, Tacappichtla, Tlayacapan, Xalontes, Tecpanino, Nepopoalco, Atlatlanca, Totolapan, Amiliance,





F Eight thousand 60 Pactures of the reft

CHAP. 7. S. 2. Mexican bistorie in pittures. Tributes phid to Mexico.

He Townes pictured and named here are feuen, which paid tribute to the Lords of Mexico, as in the other parts aforelaid have beene mentioned, and the things they tributed are

First, Foure hundred burdens of Mantels of rich workes and foure hundred burdens of plaine Mantels, of the color as they be pictured. Item, Foure thousand Petates, which are Mats, and other foure hundred backes with their feates made of Segs and other Herbs, the which they did tribute every fix moneths. Item, Two peeces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich Feathers of the deuices and colours as they be pictured. Irem, Fortie peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with sleight Feathers. Item, Foure great Troxes of wood of the bigno nelle of those aforesaid, full of Maiz, Frifeles, Chan and Guanty, which they gave for tribute

The Townes are Quaubticlan, Tehniloyeean, Ahnexoyeean, Xalapan, Tepoxaco, Cuerdomo hua... can, Xiloçinco.

A Foure ban dred burthens of Mantles of this 20 worke ( coloured with Red, Yellow . erc.) B Fours bundred burthens of Mantles of this worke (Blacke and White.) C Foure hundred burthens of this worke ( all White. ) D Foure 30 thousand Mats & foure thousand Backes : the number is intimated by the figures following, somewhat like eares of Corne, cachef which from field feare lound eat.

THe Townes pictured and marined are tenne, which did paie tribute to the Lords of Mexico, as afore faid, and the thinks that they did tribute doe follow.

First, eight hundred burdens of rich Mantles, and wrought as ap-40 peareth by the titles and pictures. Item, Foure hundred burdens of white Mantles, with their border of blacke and white. Item, Eight hundred burdens of white Mantles. Tem, Foure hundred burdens of Naguas and Hustler. Item, Foure hundred great Pots of thicke Honie of Magues; all the which they tributed enery fixe moneths. Item, They did tribute two peeces of Armour, garnifhed with rich Feathers, and as many Targets of rich Feathers, of the denices as they be pictured and intituled. Item, Fortie peeces of Armour, garnished with slight Feathers, and as many Targets, of the denices as they are pictured. Item, Foure great Troxes of wood, of 50 the bigneffe of those that are fignified in the parts before, the one of Mais, and the other of Frifoles, another of Chian , and another of Guantis feede of Biedes. All the which they tributed once a yeare. The Townes are Axocopan; Atenco, Tetepanco, XachichucageTemo-

buayan, Tezcatepec, Myzquianbuala, Tzperquilpan, Thadin

A Four bundred Pats of thicke Honie of Magues : this is for the now not, being at the former in their forme.

He number of the Towner enfuing, are foun, and they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico. after the order declared in the parts aforelaid; and the things which they did tribute are those which follow.

First, Foure hundred burdens of Mantels of sich worker, which was apparell that the Lords and Cariques did pur on. Items, Foure hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their borders of



white and black. Inm, Eight hundred burdens of great Manteli of evailed Yarne. Ism, Foure hundred burdens of Chalk; all the which they did ribute usery fix monters. Ism, they did thiute two precess of Armour garmfhed withhich Feathers, and two Targets, as permet by the deutiers and pittures. Ism, Foure great Post of word, and as many Targets garmined with high Feathers, as appeared two precessed of the pictures, deutees and titles. Ism, Foure great Traves of wood, of the bignetic of those before, the one full of Mats., another of Frysles, another of Clain, and another of Grantin; all of the which they did tribute once a yeare. The Towness are Automics, Gaugal. The Carlot, Otto Clain, and as the Chalk of the Clain and the Claim and the

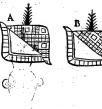
A 400 burthens of Chalke or Lime: the marke on the top significate 400. the signer is the forme of their burthen. Other signers needs not be presented.

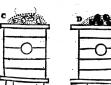
The number of the Townes following, are nine, according as they be prictured and named. and they paid tribute as followeth.

First, foure hundred burdens of Mantels of rich workes, which to the Lords and Jassace Hill put on. Item Foure hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their edge of white and blacke. Hen, eight hundred burdens of white Mantels of Enequen. Item, Foure hundred Bots of thicke Home of Magness. All the which they tributed energy fix moneths. Item, Two pecces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnified swith 10th reatherts, of the colours and doubless they be pictured depictualed. Item, three force pecces of Armor, and as many Targets, garnified with high Freatherts, of the colours and deutiless at they be engined and pictured. Item, Foure gera Trees of wood, of the big Difference fail full, the one of May, and another to of Frijoda, nother of Consulty. All the which they tributed one picture. The Townes are Harspuchta, Xalae,

they tributed used Species. The Townes are Huespuchila, Xalae.

Tominemae, Teslaganishyan, Xicalbancom, Xominemae, Lagocan, Tercatopetonco, Asecpan,
A 400. Poss of Idonis of Magneto, pad enery fix months.





THe number of the Townes following be fix: and they paid tribute as followeth,

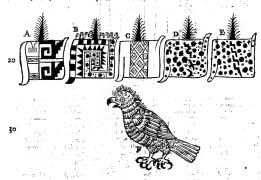
First, Eight hundred burdens of rich 40 Mantels apparel that the Lords of Mexiso did cloath themselves with, as appeareth in the faid fide by the pictures and titles. Icem, One thouland fix hundred burdens of white Mantels of Enequen; all the which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico every fix moneths. Item, Foure peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich Feathers of the colours and deuifes as they are pi- 10 Chured and invituled. Item, Foure great Trexes of wood, of the bignesse of the other , full of Maiz, Prifeles, Chian, and Guantly. All the which they did tribute once a yeare. The Townes are Arms. nilco, Acaxochiela, Xnachquecaloyan, Hueyapan, Iszibuinquilocan, Tulancingo.

A Foure hundred burthens of rich Man.,

A terms bundred burthens of rish Mann. Its of this works. B Fune bundred burthens that of this works. C 63 Two traces, and of Manuals of this works. C 63 Two traces, and of May sthe other of Chann. D Two traces, the one of Frifoles, the when of Guamiti Other pictures are omitted, being like the former.

The number of the Townes are fusen: and they paid tribute as followeth. First, 400, burthers of rich Mantels, Lords appaell. It was a sparell for women. Item, 400, burthers of rich Mantels, Lords appaell. Item, 400, burthers of Rogen wrought. Item, 500, burthers of rich Mantels, Item, 400, burthers of rich finall Mantels. Item, 400, burthers of Mantels drawn telisrogh the middle with red 1 all the which they tribuded euery fixe moneths.

Atom, A luting Eagle, two, three, or more, according as they could finde them. Item, two pieces of Armour and two Targets, garnifhed with rich feathers, of the deute and colour as they are pictured. Item, Foure great Trans of wood, full of Maie, Frifder, Chima, and Gassatis all the 10 which they tributed once a yeere. The towness names are Xilatopee, Tickon, Tingmailguilpa, Mirchaelly Treptillan, Microscopilla, Terenabulan, 1



A 400 burthess of very rich Naguas and Haiplits, B 400 burthessed rich Manuels of this work, D. 400 burthess of Naguas of this works. D. 400 burthess of frield Manuels of this works. E 400 burthess of rich Manuels of this works. F. A line English that they brought in enery pribute, fometimes three, other times four on a life.

He number of the Townes following are thirteene. And they payed tribute as followeth.

First, Soo, burthers of rich finall Mantles of this worke, as they be pictured. Item, 800,

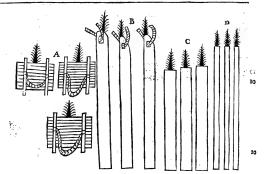
burthens of fmall, of Engagen: all the which they did tribute enery like moneths.

Items, A piece of Armour and a Target garnished with rich feathers. Items, Fortie pieces of 50 Armour and as many Targets garnished with slight feathers: the which Armour they tributed once a very

Item, Foure great Troxes of wood of the bignesse aforesaid, full of Maiz, Frisles, Chian, and Guanty, which likewise they tributed once a yeere.

Item, 1200. burthers of wood, which they tubked early four dayes. Item 1200. grat Beames of Tunber, which they tribused may four dayes. Item 1200. grat Boards of Planks, which they tributed userly four dayes. The Townesser, Cambridge Teps, Chephologou, Tlatatanev, Taiwebir, Aberdes, Octope, This guiden, Costope, Omenhouse, Tlatatenev, Taiwebir, Aberdes, Octope, This guiden, Costope, Omenhouse, Tlatate, Chephologou, Tlatate, This registration.

1088

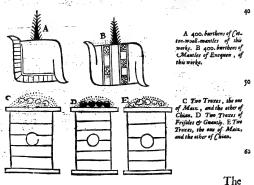


A 400, burthers of word, A 400, burthers of word, A 400, burthers of word, B 400 great bears's, or siteriof limber B 400, preat bears B 400, great bears C 400, great placets of limber, C 400, great placets of limber, D 400, quarters of limbers, D 400, quarters of li

He comber of the townes pictured are twelve. And they tributed as followeth. First, 400. burthens of Cotton-wooll, Mantles white with an edge of Greene, Yellow, Red, and Olive colour. Item, 400, butthens of Mantles of Enequen, wrought and spotted, with Red, 10 White and Blacke, Item, 1200, burthens of white Mantles of Enequen : all the which they tribu ed enery fix moneths. Item, two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers of the colours and deuces as they are pictured. Item, twentie pieces of Armour, with as many Targets, garnished with slight feathers of the colours and denices as they are pictured.

Item, six great Troxes of wood of the bignesse aforesaid, full of Frifeles, Maix, Chian, and Guantly: All the which they tributed once a yeere.

The townes names are Tuluta, Calizelabnacan, Xicaltepec, Tepetl micron, Mytepec, Capulteo. Pan, Metepec, Cacalomaca, Calymajan, Tootenance, Zepemanalco, Zoquitz,inco.



CHAP.7. S.2. Mexican historie in pittures. Tributes paid to Mexico. The number of the townes incitaled and pictured, are fixe. And they paid tribute as followeth.

First, they did tribute 800, burthens of rich Mantels of Enequen, of the workes as they be pi-

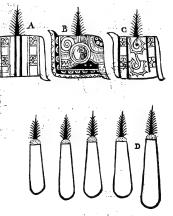
Ctured A. Item, 400, burthens of Corron-wooll Mantles

rich, of the worke as they be pictured. B. Item, 400. rich Mantles of Enequen, of this

worke pictured. C. Item 2000, Loanes of fine white Salt refined &c

made in long moulds, as letter D each of which 10 fignifie 400. (as the Eare aboue declares.) It was fpent only for the Lords of Mexico, all the which they tributed every fixe moneths.

Item, a piece of Armor. with a Target of rich feathers, of the colours and deuices as they be pictu-30 red. Item, Twentie pieces of Armour , and as many Targets garnished with flight feathersof the denices and colours as they are pictured. Item, Foure great Traxes of wood, of the bigniff of



those before full of Maiz, Frifeles, Chian, and Guantly. All the which they tributed once a yeere? The Townes, Oculan, Tenantinco, Tequaloyan, Tenatinbo, Contepes, Zincozear.

The number of the townes pictured are three. And they paid tribute as tolloweth. First, 1200 burthens of great white Mantles of Enequen, A B C.

Isem, 400. burthens of 50 wrought Mantles of Ene. quen, all the which they tributed every fixe moneths.



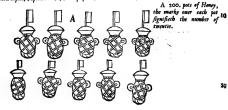
Item, They tributed once a yeere eight great Troxes of wood, of the bigneffe aforesaid, two of Maiz, two of Frifoles, two of Chian, and two of Guantly. The towner were Malynalco, Zonpahnacan, Xocositlan.

60 THe number of the Townes following are ten, of a hot Countrey, and they paid tribute as

First, 400 burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wooll, of the worke as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of Naguas and Huipiles. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of fmooth and fate Enequen. All the which they did tribute every fix moneths.

liem, 200. pots of Bees Honey. Item, 1200. Xicaras varnished Yellow. Item, 400. Baskets of white Copale to perfumes. Item, 8000. lumpes of variefined Copale, wrapt in the leasues of a Palme tree. All the which they tributed eutry 400. days. Item, Yuo pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers, of the deutic and colour as they are pictured. Item, Two great Trease of wood of the bignessed those aforesaid, full, the one of Maic, and the other of Chaza. All the which they doe tribute once a yeere.

The Townes are, Tlasbeo, Acamplixilabuacan, Chontalcoatlon, Teticpac, Nochtepec, Teotlixioa can, Tlamacazapon, Tepexabnaleo, Tzicapuçaleo, Tetenanco.



в

B 400. Baskets of Co.

30



C 8000, humps of Copall wrespeed, wraspeed in the keases of a Date Tree: the upper Figure figuites the Copall, the later (the a Purse with three Insellets or Targets amounted) is the Character of eight thousand, as before in the fixet; 40 of Paper is seen.

The number of the Townes of the hot Countrey pictured, are fourteene Townes. And they

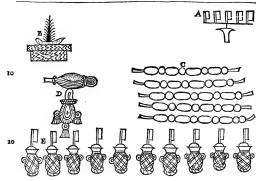
First, 400, burthens of quitted Mantles, Item, 400, burthens of Mantles striped with blacks and white. Item, 400, burthens of rich Mantles. Item, 400, burthens of Nagues and Hemita. Item, 400, burthens of white Mantles. Item, 1600, burthens of great Mantles. All the which they did tithe energy fixe moneths.

Item, They tribured 100, Hatchets of Copper. Item, 1200, Xicard of yellow varnish. Item, 200, pots of Bees Honey. Item, 200, little baskets of white Condition Perfumes. Item, 8000. Imps of Copad varefined, which was spent likewise for Perfumes. All the which they tributed energy four dayes.

Item, Two pieces of Armour, with their Targets garnished with rich feathers of this deuice, as they be pictured. Item, Twentie pieces of Armour with their Targets, garnished with slight feathers.

teathers. Item, Fine firings of rich Bead-ftones, which they call [balchibnit]. Isem, Foure great Troxes of wood, of the bigneffe of those before full of Maic, Frifeles, Chian, and Guantly, all the

which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes names are Tepequachileo, Chilapan, Ohnapan, Hustacco, Tlachimalacae, Toellan, 60 Cocolan, Atenanco, (bilacachapan, Telograpan, Octoma, Tebeliscopan, Alabniztlan, Cueçalan.



A The Hatchets, the forme below, the number about each lightlying 20. B 400 little Eathets of white Copall, C Fine grings of stones. D 8000 lumps of Copall warefined, E 200, Posts of Honey.

The number of the Townes of the hot Countreies pictured, and incituled in the next diuision, are tweluc. And they paid tribute as follow-

First, fixteene hundered burthens of great Mantles, litted with Orangetawnie, as is feene in the letters A B C D each marked

50 400. Item, 1400 burdens of great Mantles of twifled yarne. Item, 490. burthens of Cacao, of brown colour, as in letter E. Item., 400. packes of Cocton-woell,

F. Item, 400. Conshar, which are red fiels of the Sea, (mar-

the Sea, (marked of H. each 400.) after the falhion of Voneras, all the which they tributed enery fixe months.

XXXX 2





The townes are Cibnatlan, Colima, Panotlan, Nochcoc, Yztapan, Petlatlan, Xihnacan, Apancalecan, Cocobripilecan, Coyncac, Zacatulan, Xolochuthyan.

A	р
В	
C	
С	
С	

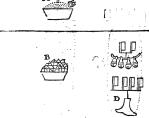
1092

THe number of the Townes, of the hot Countreyes pictured following are 14. and they payed tribute as followeth. First, 400. burthens of Naguar and Huipiles. Item, 400. burthens of Mantles 10 ftriped with red. Item, 800. burthens of great Mantles. Item, 800. Xicaras, which they call Tecomates of the best, wherein they drinke Cacao, all the which they tributed every fixe moneths. Item, Two pieces of Armour, with their Targets garnished with rich feathers of the deuice and colour as they are pictured.

Item, Twenty Xicaras full of Gold in powder, and every Xicara might con-20 tayne two handfuls, with both hands let-

Item, tenne Plates of Gold of foure fingers broad, and three quarters of a yard long, and as thicke as Parchment figured heere, A B C, all the which they tributed once a yeere.

The townes names Tlapan, Xocatlan, Tebeasepecpan, Amaxac, Abuacasia, Acocozpan, Yoalan, Ocoapan, Huitzamela, Acuitlapan, Malynaltepes, Totomixtlabuacan. 30 Tetenanco, Chipetlan.



The towne named, is called Thalcocauhenlan, a hotte towne with the other feuen townes in the first partition, did 40 pay tribute as followeth.

First, 400. burthens of great Mandes.

Item, 100. pots of Bees hony. Item, Twentie pannes of Tecoçabuit!, which is a yellow varnish wherewith they painted themselues (here figured, Letter A) which they tributed every fix moneths.

Item, A piece of Armour with a Target garnished with rich feathers, which they tributed once

The Townesare, Tlalcocanhtitlan, Tolymany, Quanhtecoma, Tebeatlan, Tepozitilan, Achnaçiçinco, Mitzinco, Cacatla.

THe Townes pictured and intituled in the second partition, are fixe, and they being of a hot Countrey, tributed as followeth.

Firit, 400 burthens of great Mantles. Item, Fortie great Belles of Copper. Item, Foure Copper Haichets : both represented in the Picture, C Beis D Hatchets.

CHAP.7. \$ 2. Mexican historie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

Item, One hundred Pots of Bees Honie; all the which they tributed enery fix moneths. Izem, A peece of Armour with a Target of rich Feathers. Yeem, A little Panneful! of small Turkess Scones: figured letter B. All the which they tributed once a yeare. The Townes names are Quantespan, Olynalan, Quantecomatla, Qualac, Yeleatla,

Turkey flones.

THE Townes pictured and intituled in the third partition, are fix Townes of the hot Countrie; and they did tribute as followeth.

First, 400. Lundens of great Manels: 1tem, 100. Post of Bees Honie, which they tributed eury fixe moneths. 1tem, A peece of Armour with his Target gamished with rich Festers, of the deunce and colours as it is pickfeet. 1tem, Forter Plates of Gold, of the bigness of Gold of a Cake, and a finger thicke, figured letter. E. Each Cake with his vane intimating twenty. ty. Item, Tenne halfe faces of rich blew Turkey Scones.

Item, A great Truffe full of the faid Tarkey Scones; figured letter F. All the which they tributer once a yeare.

aapan, Patlanalan , Txicayan , Tchcaas The fixe Townes are Toutepec, Xbuacaleo , Tallet

He number of the Townes following are fix, and they paid tribute as followeth. First, \$ 800. burdens of great Mantels, which they tributed entry fix moneths. Item, they tributed two peeces of Armour with their Targets garnified with rich Feathers of the colours as 40 they are pictured. Item, Eight great Troxes, of the bigneffe of those before, full of Maiz, Frizoles, Chan, and Guantly. Item, Foure great Troxes of wood, of the faid bignesse, tull of Maiz, All the which they tributed once a yeare. The Townes are Chalco, Tecmileo, Tepuzalan, Xocoy altepec, Malynaltepec, Quanximulco.

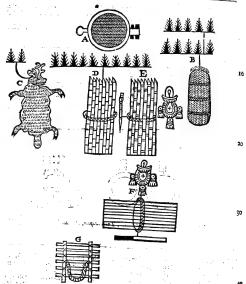
He number of the Townes of the hot Countries pictured in the next partition are two and 1 twenty : and in every Towne there was placed Mexican calpinques, and the fame order, rule, and gouernment as in the other Townes and Prouinces heretofore declared. And so is it to 50 be understood was the state and government of all the other Townes hereafter named, though for breuities fake it is not rehearled any more. And the things which thefe Townes did pay for

tribute to the Lords of Mexico, are these following.

First, They tributed 4000. burdens of Lime. Item, 4000. burdens of Massic Cane Staues, which they called Otlatl. Item, 8000, burdens of Canes, whereof the Mexicans made Darts for the wars. Item, 800, Deere Skins. Item, 8000, burdens of Acayatl, which are Perfumes which the Indians vie for the mouth. Item, 200. Cacaxtles, which are frames like to Pannels, where with the Indians carry burdens on their backes; all the which they tributed every foure dayes. Items, Foure great Transs of wood of the measures and greatnesse of those before declared,

full, two with Maix and two with Frifales, the which they tributed once a yeare. 60 The Townes names are Tepeacan, Questione, Tecunanchales, Acatzines, Treales, Tecebinanes, Questionechas, Christian, Questionechas, Christian, Questionechas, Christian, Questionechas, Tepeacan, Questionechas, Tepeacan, Questionechas, Teoreman, Temperatura, Temper Huechuetlan, Tetenanco, Coas-Teopanilan, zanco, Xpatlan, Nacochilan, Chilteopuntlan, Ozeotlapechco, Asczeahnacan.

Xxxx3



A M Target and Club which they safed for a Sword, garnished with Rasors points. B 4000. burthens of Lime. C 800. Deere skinnes. D 4000 burthens of Cane Stanes. E 8000. burthens of Canes to make Darts. F Sooo. burthens of Acayetl. G 200. Cacaxtles.

The number of the Townes of the warme and temperate Countries pictured and intituled in the next figures are eleuen and that which they did tribute followeth.

First, 400 burdens of quilted Mantels of rich worke. Item, 400 burdens of Mantels striped 50 red and white. Item, 400. br Jens of Mantels ftriped red and blacke.

Item, 400, burdens of Maxtlattl, which ferued the Indians for little cloathes, or

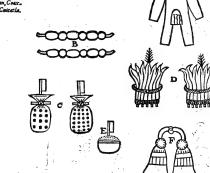
liem, 400. burdens of Guipiles, and Naguas. All the which they tributed to the Lords of Mexica every fix moneths.

Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich Feathers, of the colours and deuifes as they are pictured; letter ...

Item, Two firings of the Bead-stones of Chalchibmitl; rich Stones, greene: letter B. Item, 800. hands full of large and rich greene Feathers, which they call Quecaly, letter D. Item, A peece of Tlalpilony of rich Feathers, which ferued for a royall Banner, of the fallion pictured : 60 letter F.

Item, Fortie facks of Graine, which they call the Graine of Cochmilla: Letter C. Item, Twenty Xuaras of Gold in duft, of the finest : letter E. All the which they tributed once CHAP.7. S.2. Mexican bistorie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

The Townes names are Conyx tlakuacan,Texopan , Tamaçoladan Zanenitlan, Tepuccululan . Nochiztlan Zaltepec, Tamacolan Millan, Coax. 10 omalo, Cuicarla.



The number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countries, pictured and entituled in the next dinision, are eleven Townes : And they tributed as followeth.

First, They did tribute 400. burchen of quilted Maneels of nch worke. Item, 800. burchens of great Mantels, the which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico enery fix monethe. Item

They tributed foure great Troxes of wood, of the bignesse of those aforesaid, full, two of them with Maiz, another with Frifeles, and another with Chian. Item, Twenty plates of fine Gold, of Gold. the bigneffe of a middle dith, and an inch thicke : letter . Item . Twenty fackes of Graine of Cochinilla : letter Cochinilla. B. All the which they did tribite once a yeare, The Townes are Corolan. Etlan, Quanxilogitlan, Guanxacac, Ca. motlan, Tescuntitulan, Quantzomepec, Oct lan Tericpac, Tlulcuechahnayan, Machilxochic.

T Lachquiarico, Achietlan, and Capet-Councies. And the things which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico, are thofe that fullow. First, 4. burdes of great Mantels, which they did tribute every fix moneths. Item, They tributed a pince of Armor with a Target, garnished with rich Peathers of the cofours protured.

Item, Twenty Xicarat full of the Gold Gold. in powder : letttr . Item, Fine Sacks of Graine of Cochinilla : letter D. cochinilla. Irem, 400. hand fuls of rich greene Feathers, which they call Quegaly : letter C



Cochinilla.

Emerald

Amber. Criftall. THe number of the Townes of warmeand temperate Countries, pictured and intituled in the next figure, are two and twentie, And the things which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexics, are thefe that follow.

Firth, 16ty did tribute 1600, hurthens of rich Mantels, apparell which the Lords and Cafiquer did weare. Item, 800, burthens of Mantels little with red, white, and greene. Item, 400, burthens of Najusa and Hunglet: all the which they tributed usery fixe moneths. Item, They tributed user a piece of Armour with a Target garnified with rich feathers, with this deutice of a Bird and colours's are pictured ketter A. Item, a Target of gold, letter B. Item, a deutice for Armour like a wing of rich yelldy feathers, letter O. Item, a Diadem of gold of the failions as in pictured letter D. Item, a better of gold for the head of a hand breadth, and of thickneffe as parch-ment, letter E. Item, eventually a series of the forms of Chalabbinit II. It. Item, there fittings of touch beades and from sor Chalabbinit. L. M. N. Item, from green thing a series of the series of th

which they tributed once a yeste. The Townes are Tochique, Xoyaco, Otlahilan, Coçamaloapan, 20 Mixtlan, Michapan, April intege, Michilan, Teorilan, Oxilan, Teynacanossee, Teorispee, (bimanlan, Apogruppee, Chiecemanilan, Patlan, Tochique, Translation, Apollan, Tocilan,

He number of the Townes of the warme Countries, pictured and intituled in the next partition are eight. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these

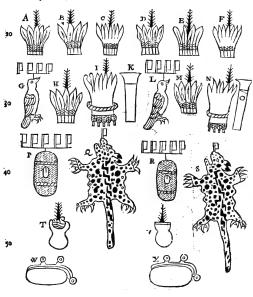
First, two great strings of Chalchibuist rich stones. Item, 1400. handfuls of rich seubers blue, red, greene, turketed, red and greene, as they are pictured in its handfuls, A B C D E F, Item, Foure whole skinnes of birds of rich turketed feathers, with murry breasts, of the colours as they are pictured G. Item, other sours whole skinnes of the said birds L. Item, 800. handfuls of rich vellow feathers H M.

Item, 8co. hands full of large rich greene feathers, which they call Queçalş I N., Item, Two

Begetes of cleere Amber garnished with gold K.O., Item, 200. burthers of Cacao P.R.

Items, Fortie Tigres skinnes Q. S., Items, 800. rich Tecomates wherein they drinke Cacao T. V.
Items, Two great pieces of cleere Amber of the bignesse of a bricke W. X. All which they Ambers
ribured every fixe moneths.

The Townes names are Xoconochoo, Oyotlan, Coyoacan, Mapachtopec, Macatlan, Huizatlan, Acapetlatlan, Huchnetlan.



66 THE number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countryes in the next picture, are feuen. And the things that they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these that

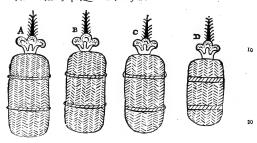
follow.

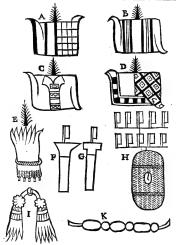
First, 400, burthers of great Mantels, which they tributed every fixe moneths. Item,

Twentic burthens of Cacao.

Item.

Item, 1600. Packs of Cotton wooll (represented A B C D. each marked foure hundre) all the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are Quanhtocheo, Tempolizapollan, Tototlan, Tuchconco, Abnilyzapan, Quanhtetelco, Ytzteyocan.





The number of the towns of warme & temperate Countries are fixe, in the next figure. And the things which they tributed to the 30 Lords of Mexico, are thefe that follow.

First, 400. burthens of

Guipiles & Naguas, which is womens apparell A. I. tem, 400. burthens of Mantels halfe quilted C. Item, 400 burthens of litle Mantels, with a white & black edge B. Item, 400. bur- 40 thens of Mantels of foure Bracas euery Mantell, halfe litted with black & white, and halfe after the fathion of net vvorke of blacke and white D. Item. 400. burthens of great white Man. tels, of foure Bracas every Mantell, Item, 160, butthens of very rich Mantels wrought, apparell for the So Lords & Casiques. I tem, 1003 burthens of Mantels lifted more with white then with blacke : all the which they tributed enery fixe moneths. Item, Two rich pieces of Armor with their targets garni'hed with rich

feathers, according as they are pictured. Item, A ftring of Chilchibmil rich ftones K. Item, 400. handfull of rich large greene feathers, which they call Queçaly E. Irom, Twentie Eccores of Se. 60 riles or Criffall shadowed blue, and set in gold F. Item, Twentie Begotes or cleere Amber garmithed with gold G. Item, 200. burthens of Cacao H. Item, a Quezalclaspions of rich greene feathers of Quezaly, winch ferued to the Lords of Mevice for a Royall Enfigne, of the making as it is pictured I. All the which they tributed once a year..

CHAP.7. S.2. Mexican bifterie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

The Townes are Cuetlantlan, Mictianquantila, Tlapanicytlan, Oxichan, Acoz. pan , Teoniscan.

He number of the Townes, contayned, pictured, and intituled in the next division. are feuen Townes. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are thefe that follow.

First, 400, burthers of Mantels litted blacke and white A. Item, Soo, burthers of great white Mantels, the which they tributed every fixe moneths,-

10 Item, They tributed once a yeere two pieces of Armour with their Targets; garnished with rich feathers of the denice and forts as they are pictured. B. Armour C Shield The Townes are Tlapacoyan , Xolomochitlan , Xochiquanheitlan , Tuchtlan , Coapan , Azena-

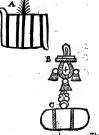


The number of the Townes pictured next are e-leuen. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these that follow.

First, 1600, burthens of Mantels listed blacke and white A. Item, 8000, loaues or lumps of liquid Amber for perfumes , which they call Xochiococott ( B is 8000. C the lump of Amber) all which they tributed enery fixe moneths.

Item , They tributed two pieces of Armour with their Shields, garnished with rich feathers, of the fashion as they are pictured , which they tributed once a veere.

The Townes are Tlatlanhquitepec, Atanco, Tezni. tlan, Ayntucheo, Tayanquitlalpa, Xonolila, Teotlalpan, 60 Textepec, Txcoyamec, Taenahuac, Caltepec,



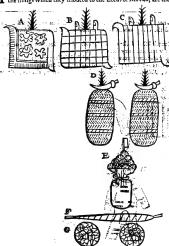
Criftall, Amber.

Pepper.

Precious

Stenes

THe number of the Lownes pictured and entiruled in the next fide are fewer, Townes, And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these which follow.



First, 400. burdens of Mantels like nets of black mancers have neets or disc.

and where, B: Item, acc.

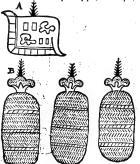
burdens of rich Mantel

wrought, red and whirs,

Lords apparell A. Item,

400, burdens of Wanthattle, which feruel for to imall cloathes. Item, 400. burdens of great where Mantels of foure bracas a peece. Item, 800.burdens of Mantels of eight bracas a pecce, listed orange tawme and white. Item, 400. Mantels, of eight bracas a Mantell. Item, 400.bur- 20 dens of Mancels Lifted. with greene, yellow, and red, letter C. Item, 400, burdens of Nagnas & Gui. piles. Item, 240. burdens of rich Mantels wrought with red, white & blacke; very curious, wherewith the Lords and Cafiques were cloathed, all the to which apparell they tributed every fix moneths. Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour, with their Tatgets, garnished with rich Feathers of the fashion as they are pictu-

red, Item, 800. burdensof dry Are; or West Indian Pepper. D. Item, 2016.kee of Imal white Feathers wherewith they trimmed Mantels. E. Item, Two strings of Chalchimil rich Stones. Item, One fiting of Beades of find Turkey Stones. F. Item, Two pieces like Plat- 40 ters decked or garnished with rich Turkey stones. G. All the which they tributed once a yeare. The towns names art reliep, Training and Chalchimatepan, Papania, Opelaneye, Madeimanaj, Malisia,



A Tion and Temperature talk 'pp
Aboxt distingn, which they did go
tribute to the Loris of Marion First,
Soo, burdens of the Marion First,
Soo, burdens of the Marion First,
Ago, burdens of Mariall, Irem,
Irem,
They tributed curryix months, Irem,
Irem, They tributed once a years
Irem, Park of Cotten Wollleting.

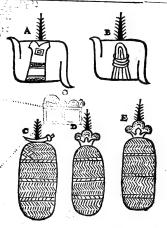
The

THe Towne of Oxilipan, did trile bute to the Lords of Mexico. First, 2000 Journels of great Mantels of First, 2000 Journels of great Mantels, 160m, 800, 100 burdans of great Mantels, 1616d witch yellow, blow, red, and greene, of fourbneas Mantell. All the which oppared they tributed opo. burdens of Mantella, which is their Report A. I. son, A line Engle, and fomesimes two or three, as they could cartch them. B. All the which they tributed once



Coccaecation, Tebraation and Veoceacation, Tebraation and Veoceacation, Tebradefect tributes to the Lords of Mexice. Firth, 400. burdens of white Mannets with their edge of yeed, blew, green and yellow, 1800, 400. burdens of Maxitality, which are left effect on the S. Hens, 800. burdens of great white Manuels of three braces every Manuel Mexico.

Mantels of three britest eutry Mantell Item, 400-burdens of Nagwa and Hupples which is woman apparell, A. All the which they tributed euery fix moneths. Heavy flow tributed two pieces of Art 50 mour with their Shiells decked with rich Feathers of the fashion that they are pictured. Hem, 800- packs of Cotten, D. E. All the which they tributed once a yeare. Hem, 400 burdens of Art direct (A. Art



Yyyy

1102

The third part of this Booke containeth the private behaviour in Mariages, education of Children, and Trades; with the Martiall, Ecclesiastike, and Civill policie of the MEXICAN people.

Relation of the manner and sufforms that the natural Mexicans had when either a Boy or Girle was borne vacorhem. The vie and ceremonies in giuing names to their boy or Grie was borne vatornem. The vie and ceremonies in giuing names to their children, and afterwards to dedicate and offer them either to the Church, or elle to the 10

warres, according as by the motures is figuified, and briefly declared.

The Woman being delidered, they laid the childe in a Cradle, according as is pictured, & foure dayes after the birth of the shilde the Midwife tooke it in her armes naked, & brought it forth to the yard of the childe wives hoult and in the yard were prepared Bultushes or Sedges, which A kinde of Baptime with they call Tule, and they let vpon them a little pan of water, wherein the faid Midwife washed Baptime with the laid childe: acres it is walked three, Boyes, which are fee by the laid Bulrushes, eating to fied their children. Maiz, mingled with folden Frisler; which they would Triene foode, the which foode made

50

A. The woman that is delinered. B. The seferous Roses signific four edges wherein the Midwiss brought forth the childs that was lastly borne to make. C. The tradle with the childs. D. The Midwiss.

1. The significant forth superior and the bond (Saind and Dart) F. G. H. the three Enerwhith for name the childe. I The Buiruhes with the pan of mater. K The Broome. L The Spindell and the Distaffe. M The Basket. N The high Priest. O The childe in his cradle which his Parents offer in the Temple. P The Master or Teacher of boyes and young men. Q The childes Father. R The childes Mether.

ready, was set in a little pan before the said Boyes, that they might eate it. And after the said bathing or washing, the said Midwife aduertised the said Boyes, that they should with a loud voice give a new name vnto the childe that she had so washed, and the name that they gave it was that which the Midwife would impose,

When the childe was brought forth to wash, if it be a man childe they bring him forth with his figne in his hand, and the figne is the Instrument wherewith his Father did exercise himselfe, as well in the Military art, as other arts, as of a Goldsmith, a Grauer, or any other office what soe uer: And after they had done all the aforefaid, the Midwife brings the childe to his Mother. And if it be a woman-childe, the figne wherewith they bring her to wash, is a Distaffe, a Spindel, 10 a Basket, and a handfull of Broome; which are the things wherewith the thould exercise her

And the bond of the Manchilde with a Shield and Darts for a figne which he brings with him when they bring him for to walk; they offer it to that part and place where are likely to happen warres with his enemies, where they burie it under ground. And fo likewise of the Womanchilde, her bond they buried under the Mesate, which is a stone to grinde Cakes upon.

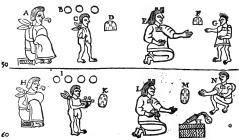
And after the aforefaid, at the end of twenty dayes, the childes Parents went with the childe Prefentation to the Temple or Mixquita, which they called Calmecae, and in the presence of the Priests in the Temple they presented the childe with his offering of Mantels, and Mastelles and some meate: And after the childe being brought up by his Parents, and being of age, they committed the childe to 20 the high Priest of the said Temple, because there he might be taught that hereafter he might be

And if the childes Parents were determined that he (being of age) should serve in warlike affaires, then fraight way they offered him to the Matter thereof, making him a promite of him (the Mafter of Boyes and yong men they called Teacheanch or Telpachilate) which offering was made with his present of meate and other things for the celebrating thereof. And the childe being of age, they committed him to the faid Mafter.

THe declaration of the pictures contained in the deuision following, wherein is declared at what age, and in what manner the naturall Parents did give countell to their children, how they ought to line, as successively is pictured in soure partitions, and so the soure partitions of this fide are declared in order which are thefe that follow.

I The first partition, wherein is declared how that the Parents corrected, their children, in gining them good counfell when they were three years of age; and the portion of meate that they gaue them enery meale was halfe a cake of bread;

2 The second partition wherein is pictured in what things the Parents did instruct their children when they were of the age of four yeares, and how they began to exercise them to ferue in small things. And the portion of meate which they gaue them at a meale, was a 40 whole Cake.



A The Eoghic Father. B Three yearst of age. C The Boy. D Halfe a Cale. E The Gulder Methor. F Halfe a Cale. G GA Girle of three yearst of age. H The Father of the Boy. I ABoy of fower costs of age. K A Cake. L The Mather of the Girl. M. A Cake. N. Grie of fower years of age. A Spindell mith a lacke of cotten world jing on a Mat.

3 The third partition, wherein is shewed that the Parents did exercise their children in bodily labour at fine yeares of age, in loding their Sonnes with Wood and other things in finall burdens, of small weight, and to carry packes of small weight to the Tyangues, or Market place. And they exercised their Daughters of that age, in shewing them how they should handle the Spindell and Diftaffe for to ipin. And their allowance of meate was a whole Cake of Bread,

4 The tourth partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents instructed their children of fix yeares old, and exercised and occupied them in bodily service, that they might profit their Parents in fome thing, as in the Tyangues, which are Market-places that they might gather from the ground, the cornes of Maix and Freseles that were spilt there by him, and other small things that the buyers and others had left and ipilt there. And this was the Boies worke. But the Girles were put to ipinne and to doe other profitable feruices, because in time to come, by meanes of the faid feruices and occupations, they should not spend their time idelly, and should avoide cuill v-ces that are wont to grow through idlenesse. And the allowance of meate that they gave to their children was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.



O The Father of the Boyes. P Two Boyes of flar yearse of age. Q A Cate. R. A Cate. S The Mather of the Grit holding the Sprade and Rocks. T A Cate. V A Sixth of from years old. W The Father of the two Boyes. Two Boyes of fix yearse ald. X A Cate and a budge. X The mother of the Girle. Z A Care and a halfe. A Girle of fix yeares old forming Cotton wooll

Declaration of the figure following, wherein is thewed, at what age and in what things A the naturall people of Mexico did instruct their children, and in what manner they corrected them, that they should avoide all idlenesse, and alwayes should be exercised in some profitable things, assucceffinely is pictured in foure partitions.

I The first partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents vie their children of feuen yeares old that is the men children they applyed them in giving them their fishing Nets. And the Mothers did exercise their Daughters in spinning and in giving them good counsell that they should alwayes apply and occupie their time in doing fome thing for to avoide idlenesse. And the allowance of meate that they gaue to their children at enery meale was a Cake and a halfe of



A The Father of the Boyes. B Thefe fenen spots of blew signific fenen yearer. C F A Cuke and a 60 balfs. D A Boy of seven yeares old, whose Father showeth him bow he should fish with the net be hath in his hand. E The mother of the children. G A Gule offenen yeares old, whose mother is teaching

3. The feeond partition : Wherein is pictured, howethe Parents did chaften their children of the age of stalk y ecres, in kying before them with repostant feases the absence of Magazia, that in being negligious and dishedednet to their Parents they had been shaltened with the shall prome, and, be partyry feasethey were 1, sky the pedians of this pastion is figured. And their allowance for a meate, which they gape, them by mealine, was a Clake and a halfe.

3. The third partition, Wherein is pictured, how the parents punished shakeshiken of nine yeeres of age, because they were disobedient and rebellions to their factors, they did that this them with the faid thorous of Magnes, binding them takes hand and stop, they fitted the faid, thorough the faid, thorough the waste and hands of the

16 Stella wiele, the faul thorses, as in the fail gartision is produced. And shrit allows of course mede was a Categoria is high of tread with a month of the winter with the course of the course years of age, that is heavy resultions when this challiful them in brating them with a migell and threatning them on heavy agency began the same of the challowance which they had given them at a meale, was a Cake and a halfe.



H The father of the children contaqued in this vow. 1 Thefe eight fort signific eight yearer. K N a cake and a halfe. L a Boy of eight perces old, whole father is threatning him that he be not embappy, a cong and a onige. A poly of the system on A poly page passes a torcament of the mother of the children to the children of the children contemped in this row. 10 Thomas of Maguez, P a Girls of eight, serves all a bom ber mother 50, showatesh bor much thereof of Maguez, the line for not substance. 10 Thomas of Maguez, P a Girls of eight, serves all a bom ber mother 50, showatesh bor much thereof of Maguez, that line for not substance 10. The first of the children concepted in this like. R W Galez and a built. S Those time first from the may serves. T a Boy of nina yerres old, because be is incorrectible, his father thrustes thornes of Maguez into his body. V The mother of the children contagned in this row. X a Girle of nine yeeres old, that for her negligence and identife, her mother did chaffife ber in pricings the shault with between 9 Magues.
Y Torfe tensfield semmenter, X The father of the chaldeness that with the server of Magues. and abulfe. An The mother of the children contagned in this row. & a Boy of ten yeeres old, whom his father is chaffing unto a culfeel faffe. C. a Gorla of ten yeers, & a Boy of ten yeers old, whom his father is chaffing unto a culfeel faffe. C. a Gorla of ten yeers, whom her mother is chaffing in heating her mit he dunged faffer.

Declaration of the first partition of the picture following. The Boy or Girle of eleuen A Declaration of the first partition of the picture blowing.

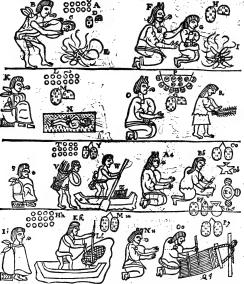
Veeres old, which would not bee reformed with wordes nor stripes, their parents did chastife, giving them into the Nose the smoke of Axi, which was a grieuous and cruell torment, to the intent they should be reformed and not be vicious persons and vagabonds, but should employ and fpend their time in profitable things. And to the children of that age they gaue bread, which are cakes, by measure, only a cake & a halfe at a meale, because they should not be gluttons. Тууу з

a In the fectood partition; The Boy or Girle of the age of twelve yeere; which would not receive quiety countil not correction at their Fathers hands; the Father tooke that Boy and tyed him hand and foot naked, and firetched him on the ground in a divirie wer place, where he lay of a whole day, because he floudil be chastified and feared thereby. And the Girle of that age, his Mother made her frens, 60 that in the night be force it were day fine floudil of wise; all the base and the firete, and that alwayes she emight be occupied in bodily fension. And to likewise that partition are them meat by measure a Cake and a halfe curry meale.

3 In the third partition, the Boy or Girle of thirteene yeare old, their Fathers employed.

3 In the third partition, the Boy or Girle of thirteenic yeerest old, their Fathers employed in bringing wood from the Mountaine, and with a Cance-bear to bring bough raind obtain height for the feruise of the houle. An

4 In the fourth partition; The Boy or Gild of fourteene were old, their Parents did imploy in fifting in Lakes and Rivers with his Canea, And the Gilfe was fet to weave yame of whatforest fort for apparell. And they gave them to ease two Cakes by mediure.



A Diek einem festerf blue festelle beun petert. B The fabor of the children. C a Boy of themis peters ald, which fabor is challing this implicity has an he kell with the Article A. De a clear and a build. E a former petule of his in Proper, which the Curret hash not to well experted. F The master of the children. G a Girk of beam perseal, which the Curret hash not to well experted. F The master of the children. L a perfuse of their is. K The fabor of the children. L reduce sever. M a Calcy and a shift. N a Boy is motor years old, yet hand and feet and laid rebuild as the wort and mad from the Construction. F The fabor of piction the regist. On a Calcy and a build. N a Boy is motor years old, yet hand and feet and laid rebuild as the wort and mad from the construction. F The fabor of piction the regist. On a close and a build.

The fabor of the construction of the constructi

Hat which is pictured in the first parention, doth signific that the Father having two some young men, of yeters able to serve, brought them to the two houses that are pictured, either to the Matthe shoule that did teach and infinitely ryong men, cell for to the Tample, according as the youths were inclined, and so committeed their either to the high Priest, or cile to the Matthew of Boyes to the end they might be taught a phy souths being sittlener yeters of age.

a. An the Second partition is picknied, the manner and law they half and large in their Marager that they made I am 1000 fill. The calculation therefore was, that an \$\tilde{\alpha}\$ such that the Brokes) carried the Bride on her backe at the beginning of the ringle, and there were worth them foure women with Torches of Pine-tree rotines butting; where with they half the her. And the beginning that the production of the Bridegroome cane cut to the Court of the house to the Bridegroome cane cut to the Court of the house to resent her, and they tarried her most Hall of foine place where the Bridegroome carried for her. And the betroched folkes were fifteen a Hall of foine place where the Bridegroome tarried for her. And the betroched folkes were fifteen a Hall with their feats noters pan of fire, and they tyed the onivo the other with a corrier of their apparell, and made a petition of Copulation they tyed the onivo the other work of the startied folke diened, and afterwards the old folkes. And when dinner was done; the old men and women leganated the married folke by themclears, gaingly them good counted how they should behave themselves and line, and how they should behave themselves, the they find the place and calking they had taken upon them, that they might his swift equients.



A The four-offer responds. Be apossed of filters recreated commissed to an inject Affanti or Priss. C Termitary Cognis, which may find the priss of the commissed to an inject Affanti or Priss. C Termitary Cognis, which was the priss of the commissed to the filters prissed to the filters and the filters are commissed to the filters and the commissed to the filters are commissed to the commissed



the Temple.

I. WHen they entred to hee Priedlyn, the elder Briefly occupied them distributes in health frames for their Temples, that African and the distributes and lill when they were closely founds to have a problem of the work of the control of the state of t

Nowice that floud the after them. Their Kyntts are all sourced on a file seed on the Citte men many other or at Rept.

2. In the ficting has a provent of the state of the first or a very district of the control of th

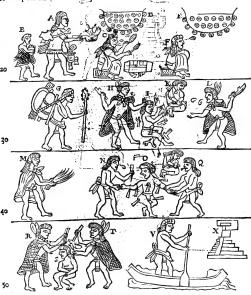
soitelk die handt wards the old folke. And w. in denner we come, the med hope women to get and the married folke by them there, gives a married and the file between the file of the married folkes at the graph and the file of the graph and the graph A Tlama-blood yest, word listan ... tice Priest that is charged to sweep. B A nonice Priest that cometh the wood lade with boughes for to dreffe the Temple. C A nonice Priest laden with thornes of Maguez, for to draw bloud with all to offer facrifice to the dewill. D A nossice Priest mbich is laden with green cane for the Temple for to make States and Toe.E A youth which is laden with a great log to keepe fire in the Temple. Touthes which are laden with logs of wood for to keepe fire in

G A youth laden wubboughes for to drift the Temple. H This chiefe Priest to quantiting the nonice Priest because be was negli-gert in his office. I The nonice Priest. K The chiefe Priest. L The nonice Friest M Another clair Priest Then. are pumlling this notice Priest, priching him with therms of Magnet throughout his body, because he was arbeil and disclotects and sogiare in these to was commanded to doe. N. This twelf pringing their phase the winder Philips does not have long to these when days every himflers, dis close pittlered and declared. O. Teoping and public a washers For-riour. P The parts? O. This father of the youth that offerethes to Boundary therefore the surface of the youth that offerethes the Boundary For-riour. warlike affairet, and to carrie him to the warret. R. The jonth who is publish formant to the vullant more that goath to the warre with him, carrying his baggage on his backe with his owne Armony. S. Tequina . A William months goeth armed to the warres.

I Ereis declared how the chiefe Priefts did exercife and occupie them felius in the night terms, wherein flowe occupied themselus in going to the Montaynes, to offer income to their Gols, others in Mortage, and others were obscribed into by he Starres of the Erement, and others in other things of their Temples.

2 In the second partition is declared the punishment they did vie to the young men, according as the Pictures doe reprefent. The which was executed according to the Lawes and Statutes of the Lords of Mexico.

The punishment that the Beadles Telpuchstatos did vie to the vicious young men, which went about like Vagabonds according to their Lawes, and the rest pictured and declared in the to fame partition.



A chiefe "rich which goeth in then ghe with his fire burning to a Mountaine to doe penance. And hee carrieto in his hand a parle of Capaly, which is Perfume to offer Sacrifice to the Devill. And at his backe Ponjon in a veffell for the fime Sacrifice, and he carrieth his b-superto befet the place of Sacrifice. And hath after him a nowice Priest, which carrieth other things for the Sacrifice. B A nowice Priest. C A chiefe Viest, which is playing on the Teponazely, which is an instrument of the the Sating. B. A Maure 1994. C. A congri ving, make a paging at one exponency, mind a mainty amone a ma-fele, and be exception buildiferent may be traph. D. The Rule without about family the night, in The Piller with ope and Equific the night. I. A charle Fright mids a looking cas the farms of the Elements buths, so be what beared it in the night, which which charge and office. O. A poung man that goed to wave, lader with fight and attracest of Amone. H. Telpachistic 178 panels. R. Is becomen L. Reproduction the new I capacitation, so fignife scatter to res'routh, that when any you'd did fall in lone with any woman, they challifed the young man, throwing burning fire brainds at him, and parted their iout. M. Achiete Press whose office is to sweepe the Temples, or command them to be sweet. N. A chiefe Priss. O The monice Prieft. P The warran. Q Achiefe Prieft. The declaration of the pictures of thefe two shiefe Priefts is, that if O Themome Print. P The rememb. Q deshift Freigh. The designation of the plant of their two which Freights, that if the native Freight managingers to the adecific to any remember of this law, the chefit Freight following there is of Print remember and bishoody. R Teipuchthro, a Eachle, 5 The young man. T Teach subjude Beddle, 3) the Filterest male title print in the light man were about the Arganous the man Beddle and Ford him in pooling and Ford and in the first print of the first pr his bead with fire. V A young man that is occupied in carefing france with his Canoa to repaire the Temfle. X The Temple.

T. Here

20

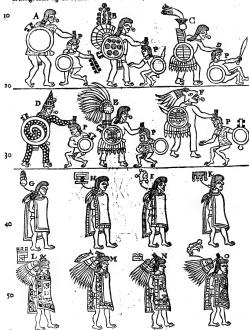
This Picture expression the Priests employments. A A monice Priest occupied in corrying of Somes in his Cause, for the resention of the Temple. B The Temple called systemath, C A monice Priest that goals to the more with a chieft Priest Contract in acceptance of the Contract of the Con

Their Armes, which figures of Armes were made of more authoritie from degree to degree, according as the worthineffe of the man of warre was knowne, and the number of the Captines that they tooke. As is shewed fofficiently in the Pictures with their fignes and Armes, and fathions of attie, and the degrees whereby they came to be valiant men in Warres. The first degree.

E Tecutyas, Conflable and Inflice of the Lords of Mexico. F An Officer that followed the Tecuty, as his Sergent,

E. I CUUYAS, CHIMAN dan aspace of the serial packages. F. An Officer that follows the I CCUUY, a thin Sergent, Of A Temple called Shanneccally. If the high map of the with a bringle of pool, I at young man, who if he toked one Prilimen in the Wartes, they gave him for record at Maxie of the follows, of the gauded on with his followers, in clase of his vocations of the X-the same full test, in the Ethinary longifice, that he is excepted in response to freeze and in diges that got to the Complete of the same full test, and the Temple I. A Captine, M. This values man all in red, because he trule tree estimate, they rewarded some with the fastion of Armon't be hath on, and more (N) the fquare Mantle of Orange townie with a red mift, in token of bis vohename (fr. O A Captine, P Thu valuant Champion with a reward of the exerce he hathou, and this (Q) Montle of rich we for a token that he teake three enemies in the Waves. R A Priferer, S I his valuant Champion with the deutse here 60. hato ex, and the square Mantle. Tof two colours thathe and Grange, townies with a tift, in token that kee had taken sweet exemies in the Wars. V. A Captine. W. This values man with the desire of Armew that he hath and hu second name Econocome is in the MATE. V. A Captille. W. Let wait in many time a citizen of manus are to some one of the most and in the source of the source of the most and the source of the most and the source of the most are the source of the most and the source of the Applies. A case was an exacted Canage cas must be account of Attenue rous or action of portraing two was a survey of the War and Out of the Spiles that is not the War and Out of the Spiles that is not the War and Out of the Spiles that is not the War and Out of the Spiles that is not the War and Out of the Spiles that was a survey of the War and Out of the Spiles that was a survey of the War and Out of the Spiles that was a survey of the War and Spiles that was a survey of the War and Spiles that was a survey of the Spiles that was a su

1 THe chiefe Priests did exercise warlike affaires, & according as they proued in valiant acts. and as the number of the Captines were that they tooke, fo the Lords of Mexico gaue them titles of honour, and Blasons of Armes with devices of their valiantnesse, as is shewed by the Pictures, and by the Armor they have on. In the third partition are the titles of honour, which they obtayed by the exercise of war, whereby they came to a higher degree, the Lord of Mexics making them Captains and Generals of the Souldiers. And those of the one side seried for Mesfingers and Executioners of that which the Lords of Mexico determined and commanded, afwel in things touching the Common-wealth of Mexico, as also in other townes of their dominions.



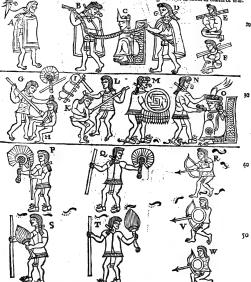
A A Priest that captived one enemie in the warres. B The same Priest oforefaid, because he tooke two enemies in the warres, he is removed to with the deduce of Armous be lathen on. C. The of reliad Prifs, because through his valuam-ness he topse three enoming, he is rewarded with the deduce of Armous be had on. P. P. Captines. D. The same Prieft about faid, because he toke four cenemics in the vourse, for a token of his valuant offs, he is rewarded with the de-nice of Armour he hatron, blacke and white. E The same Priest because he tooke five of his enemies in warres, for 60 a token of his valiantnelle, be is rewarded with the deutee of Armour he hath on, all red. F The fave Price for that a tage on an indicatorie, on intermena with the educate of Armen to eath on, all red. F. Del 1977 (1974) is that be taking five one is to the interest, for a single of the stage of the first and ulsary, by Landy (Mexico) remarked Low why the demice of Arm a 'ie had on. It has first reflere, feather group, integer red, group, yellow, G. Quadi-reddit, an Officer which put must instead that is excention. It Hillandship, another feat. The Armanicael, a side for. R. Eguspacil, sportly fart. This four in this rewested flower for surfaces and to receive on it that which the Landy of Mexico alternation and did atomicael. L. Thackerstead L. M. Tecchicaelle. M. Tecchicaelle. M. Tecchicaelle. quiltecarl. These foure on this rowe are valiant men in warre, and Captaines of the Armies of the Mexicans and perfour which executed the charge of Generals over the Mexicans Armies

1112

The Cafique (that is, a Lord of a Towne) because hee rebelled against the Lordship of Mexico by the Executioners afore contayined, had a rope cast about his necke where with for his rebellion, he was condemned by the Lords of Mexico to die, and his wife and children to be taken and brought prisoners to the Court of Mexico. And for the accomplishing of the condemnation the officers are executing the penalties wherein he was condemned, as is fignified by the pictures,

2 He together with his feruants and towne are condemned to be deftroyed. And fo the Exce cutioners, by the commandement of the Lords of Mexico, are giving him to understand of the faid condemnation, in token whereof they marke him with the lignes that ney fer on his head; and the Target that they prefent him with, because he should not be ignorant of h. . . . function. And the pictures of men with mortal wounds, doe fignific that they were Merchants and Occupiers of Mexico, which came with things to the Countrie and Towne of the faid Caffque; and the feruants of the Cafique affaulted them on the high-way, killing them and taking away the merchandife they carried, which was the occasion of the destruction of the Towne.

2 In the third partition : The foure Officers or Ambaffadors of the Lords of Mexico, doe fignific that they have warned the faid Cafque contayned in the fecond partition before this, as is abouefaid, at the returning of the Executioners towards Mexico, there came out to the high-way certaine feruants of the laid Cafique to mife-vfe them, thooting arrowes at them in token of war.



A Huzmahuatlan, officer and executioner as a Sergeant. B Executioner. C Cafique. D Executioner, E The wife of the Casique imprisoned, with a yoke of Iron about bernecke. F The some of the Casique taken prisoner with a yoke of Iron. G The sermant of the Casique. H The merchant. I a bundell 60 of merchandise. K The merchant. L The sermant of the Casique. M Executioner. N Executioner. O Casique. P An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of Mexico. Q An Executioner or Ambaffador of the Lord of Mexico. R a feruant of the Cafique. S An Executioner or Ambaffador of the Lord of Mexico. T An Executioner or Ambaffador of the Lord of Mexico. V a fermant of the Casique. Wa sermant of the Casique which shoeteth at the Ambassadors of the Lords of Mexico, for more occasion of warre.

1 He Tequichna fignifieth Spies, fent to the Towne of the Cafique by the Lord of Mexico, that in the night time they might goe and walke it fecretly vnknowne to their enemies, to aduerrife and guie warning vnto the Souldiers, where they should enter with the battaile. And fo the Teanichna soe round about the Towne, Houtes, Market place, and Church , at the time that they of the Towne are affeepe and at reft, for to finde a place where they may give the onfet with the leffe trouble and reliftance.

2 A der ation of the pictures in the fecond partition. The Mexican that is pictured and at his shou I sa Target and Darts, doth fignifie the Mexicans being mooued to destroy a certaine Towne by watres, because they had rebelled against the Lordship of Mexico. And the other three that are pictured and fet ouer against the Mexicans are feruants of the Cafique, which doe fignifie that the whole Towns of the Cafique being afraid of the warres and definition that the Mexicans would bring upon them , they come to Mexico to entreat a peace, tubmitting themselues for servants of Mexico, and protesting to acknowledge the Lordship, by meanes whereof they receive them in friendship and for their fervants, laying and that which was determined by their counsell.

The foure valiant men pictured and intituled, with their Speares in their hands, and made readie for the warres, and the deuices of Armour that they have on, doe fignific that they are Captaines of the Mexicans armies.



B Tequibra. C Tranguas, a Minguet place. Dieanibra F.E.

boules . Flequibra.. G a Temple. H Teguina.

I Tequitna. K Tignibna. L Tequirna. Thurst 1tion(.1 Net)

is the rowne of the Cafigue ator -contayned. M'N O thefe three are forwarss of the Caligue.

P. Mexicans. Q & Target and Datts. R Captavie Tlaserecaste SICAPLANO

HARRING

V Captaine Treocyabna-

HE that is fet and at his backe a woman fpinning, fignifieth that it is his wife new married, and because he had taken the state of marrimonie vpon him, having heen a Messenger with the rest that are pictured before him, which are fine, named Tetpuchtly, which are Mellengers likewife. The married man giueth them a reason why hee leaueth the charge of a Mellenger by reason of his marriage, and that hee will rest and leave off his fernice patt. And to please them more, and that they should grant his request, hee maketh them a banquet in giuing them well to eate and drinke, and moreover the prefent that bee giveth them is a handfull of perfumes, a copper Hatchet and two Mantels, as by the pictures of these things are intituled. And by this folemnitie the married man is free from the faid Office.

2 In the second partition : Hee that is set downe and intituled, doth fignifie the Lord of Mexico, that when any Meffenger Telpuchtly pictured in the partition before this had given a good account of his office, and having taken upon them the flate of marriage, the Lords of Mexico from that they were but Meffengers did promote them to a be ter title and degree, in so much that he made them Tegnibus, which is signified by the pictures and titles of Tequibna, with their Speares and Fannes, giving them authoritie to bee his Ambaffadors and Officers in the warres, which they held for an office of great honour.

The Alcaldes doe lignific Iustices , appointed by the Lords of Mexico , that they should heare matters aswell Civill as Criminall. And the pictures of men and women which are before them, are Pleaders and Suitors which doe aske juftice. And the foure pictures that are intituled Teetly, shat are behinde the Alcalas . are principall young men that ionne with the Alealdes in their audience, to learne and infruct themselves in matters of in igement, and afterwards to succeede in the Offices of the Alcaldes. From these Alcaldes, there was an appellation before the counsell Chamber of Motegama, as hereafter is pictured.

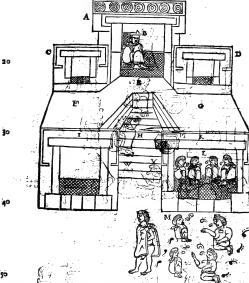


Mexico.

CHAP.J. S. a. Mexican Palace, Councell chambers and Royall magnificence.

He fashion of the Counsell Chambers of the Lord or King of Mexico, and of his Royall The fashion of the Councill Chambers or the Lora or sang a state of More. Houses and Courts, and the steps where they entered in, and the Throne and Scate of More. Houses and Courts, and the steps and invitable what they forming, and to in this pames, and in the spaces of every thing is declared and intituled what they signifie, and so in this declaration it is not repeated. But that in one Counsell Chamber, when that by way of offence they were agricued, and having a just cause not being sentenced and determined by the Alcaldes, then by degree of appellation they appealed from the Alcaldes before the Counfell. And if it were a matter of importance they appealed from the Counsell Chamber before Moreguma the King himfelfe, where the matter was concluded.

In the Chamber, that is intituled, The Counfell Chamber of warre, were prouided Captaines IO and Armies for the warres, as was appointed by Mosecoma.



A The Throws and Maistie of Meseguma where he fait on Come-dayer, and on indoment. B Mose seguma. & aboute where the Lords of Tanayera, Chiemanhela, and Colbuscum, were lodged that were tegemma. On about or the Lords of Jennyson, Chienametta, and Colhunacan, were lodged how were friends and employerance of Moveman. Da a long where the two life Lords of Teccopy in the work lodged that were Motegemma has friends. E. F. G. The Course of the people bonger of Advancemen. I H. K. Thefe laws to hap we prome are the fight to the Course of the regulat longite of Motegemma. I The semified humber of warre, K. The counself thember of Motegemma. L. Thefe four site at Andrion of the Compile of Motegemma, right men. S. W. Pladerr and Susters that is, the people and application from the Alkalder, due prefent themselvints and appeare before the Andrions of the compiled by Motegemma.

He father and the some that sit against each other face to face, signific that the father electh his fonne good counfell, that he be not vicious , laying before him for example , that those which come to vertue come afterwards in credit with the Lords and Cafiques; In that they give

them honeft offices, and doe vie them to be their Messengers, and they doe admit Musicians and Singers vnto their feasts and weddings for the credit they beare.

2 The pictured in the house, where they meane to talke and prouide for publike affaires, and the Sceward that intent therein, doth fignife that there are before him weeping, because it hat hippened vato them to be occupied in bodily labour, that the Cass and Gusacie doe represent. And the Steward is guing them good counsell, and exhorting them to fice idlenesse, is the cause that they come to be Theeues and players at the Ball, and players at Patol, after the manner of Dice, from which Games doe fpring there for to fattsife and hillill fluch vices.

3 The Carpenter, Lapidane, Painter, Gold-fmith, and garnifler of frathers, fignifie that this Artificen teach their formes their occupation from their childhood, that when they are to men they migh follow their Trade, and fpend their time in things of vertue, giving them counfeil that of idleneif commeth suil vices, and so cuill tongues, tale-bearing, drunkennesse, and the currie, and many other cuill vices.



A a Missseyer. B CD The father compiler bis some so apph himselfe to all verree. E On basing a best, entertainth à Musican. F Cl. a bons where they must for public affaire. E Cl. Descending the second of the public of a second of the public of a second of the public of a second of the public of the second of the public of the second of the public of the second of

CHAP.7.S.3.Punishments of Drunkennesse, Adultery, Theft. Pravileges of Age. 1117





A Thefe two Pictures signific that the young men that were drawle with Whoe, dyed for that accurding to the Law. B. A young must that was drawle, C. A young woman of thee were drawle
with Wienwas kiled here according to the Lawses of Mexico. D. A Thirty, they found him to death
according to the Lawse of the Lords of Mexico. E. Thefe two Pictures layed and toward with
clother, do a first that if you man had carrall dealing with a married woman, they fined
them both to death, according to the Laws of the Lords of Mexico. R. And in an off
Solversfore analtenue years; buth licences towns Wiena and to be drawle gived publicly at feretty because he is food, and hath Somet and Nephrues, at which yeries Wine and drawlessing
was not forbidar them. G. An old woman, wife to the old man about pritured; had primledges to be drawle as well as her Husband, because fine had children and children children
and to all these of the bits eagle drawlessing the uses to forbidant term.

€0

Zzzz 3

HAD

### CHAP. VIII.

Conquest of Mexico and New Spaine by HERNAN-

a Gemarahis the Conquest of the West Indies eranflated into English by T. Nicolas.

and Cortes his



Ernando a Cortes was borne at Medellin in Andulozia, a Prouince of Spaine, Anno 1485. When he was nineteene yeeres old, he fayled to the Hand of Saint Do. mingo, where Ouando the Gouernour kindly entertayned him. He went to the conquest of Cuba in the years 1511. as Clerke to the Treasurer, vnder the conduct of lames Vela [ques, who gave voto him the Indians of Manicorao, where hee was the first that brought up Kine, Sheepe and Mares, and had heards and

flockes of them ; and with his Indians he gathered great quantitie of Gold, so that in short time he was able to put in two thousand Castlins for his stocke, with Andres de Duero, a Merchant. At this time Christopher Morante had fent (Anno 1517.) Francis Hernandes de Cordona, who first discouered Xucatan, whence he brought nothing (except the relation of the Country) but ftripes : whereupon lames Velafques in the yeere 1518. fent his Kinfman Iohn de Grijalna, with b Of this voy. two hundred Spaniards in foure thips: he traded in the River of Tanafco, and for trifles reage. Reade P. turned much Gold, and curious workes of feathers, Idols of Gold, a whole harnesse or furniture Martyrs fourth for an armed man of Gold thin beaten, Eagles, Lions, and other pourtratures found in Gold, &cc. 20 But while Grinalua deferred his returne, Velasques agreed with Cortes to bee his partner in the Discouery, which he gladly accepted, and procured licence from the Gouernours in Domineo. and prepared for the Voyage.

Velalques afterward vied all meanes to breake off, in fo much that Cortes was forced to engage this Chapter. all his owne stocke, and credit, with his friends in the Expedition, and with five hundred and fiftie Spaniards in eleuen thips, fet faile the tenth of February 1519. and arrived at the Iland of Acufamil. The Inhabitants at first fled, but by the kind entertainment of fome that were taken, they returned, and received him and his with all kind offices.

They told him of certayne bearded men in Tucatan, whither Cortes fent; and one of them, Geronimo de Aquilar came vnto him, who told him, that by shipwracke at Immeica, their Caruell 30 being loft, twentie of them wandred in the Boat without fayle, water or bread, thirteene or fourteene dayes, in which space the violence of the current had cast them on shoare in a Prouince called (Maye, where, as they trauelled, seven dyed with famine; and their Captayne Valdmia and other foure were facrificed to be Idols by the Cacite, or Lord of the Conn.rey, and eaten in a folemne Banquet, and he with fixe other were put into a Coope or Cage, to bee fatned for another Sacrifice. But breaking Prifon, they escaped to another Cacite, enemy to the former, where all the reft dyed, but himfelfe, and Gonfalo Guerrer a Mariner. Hee had transformed himfelfe into the Indian cut, boring his role full of holes, his eares jagged, his face and hands painted; married a Wife, and became a Captaine of name amongst the Indians, and would not returne with this Aguilar.

Cortes with this new Interpreter palled vp the River Tanafco, called of the former Discouerer, Gryalias; where the Towne that stood thereon, retusing to victual him, was taken and facked. The Indians herewith inraged, affembled an Armie of forcie thouland, but Cortes by his Horse and Ordnance preuayled; the Indians thinking the Horse and Rider had beene but one creature, whole gaping and fwiftnesse was terrible vnto them, whereupon they submitted themselues. When they heard the Horses ney, they had thought the Horses could speake, and demanded what they faid : the Spaniards answered . These Horses are fore offended with you, for fighting with them, and would have you corrected : the simple Indians presented Roles and Hens to the beaffs, defiring them to eate, and to pardon them.

Carter purpoled to discouer further Westward , because hee heard that there were Mines of co Gold, having first received their Vassallage to the King his Master, to whom (he said) the Monarchie of the Vniuerfall did appertayne. These were the first Vassals the Emperour had in New Spaine. They named the towne, where these things were done, Villorie, before called Potonchan, contayning neere fine and twentie thousand houses, which are great, made of Lime, Potamber cal- and Stone, and Bricke, and some of mud-wals and rafters, couered with straw; their dwelling and village. is in the vpper part of the house, for the moylinefie of the foyle. They did eate mans fleth

The Spaniards favled Westward, and came to Saint John de Vibna, where Tendille the Gouernour of the Countrey, came to him with foure thousand Indians. Hee did his reuerence to the Captayne, burning Frankincense (after their custome) and little strawes, touched in the bloud of his owne bodie : and then prefented vnto him victuals and lewels of Gold, and other curious 60 workes of feathers; which Cortes requited with a Collar of Glasse, and other things of small value. A woman-slaue, given him at Potonchan, understood their language, and shee with Agui-Lar, were his Interpreters. Corres profesied himfelfe the fernant of a great Emperour, which had

fent him thither, whose power he so highly extolled, that Tendilli maruelled, thinking there had beene no such Prince in the World, as his Master and Soueraigne, the King of Mexico, whose Vaffall he was, named, Matezuma. To him he fent the reprefentations of these bearded men, and their Horses, Apparell, Weapons, Ordnance, and other Rarities, painted in Cotton-clothes, their ships and numbers. These painted Cottons he sent by Posts, which deliuered them from one to another with such celeritie, that in a day and night the message came to Mexico, which was two hundred and ten miles diffant. Cortes had demanded, whether Mutezuma had Gold! Tendills affirmed, and Cortes replyed, That he and his fellowes had a difease of the heart, whereunto ble ficknesses Gold was the best remedie.

Mutezama fent him many Cotton-clothes of divers colours, many tuffes of Feathers, two Wheeles, the one of Silver, with the figne of the Moone, and the other of Gold, made like the Sunne :- which they hold for Gods, and give vnto them the colours of the Metals most like them. Each Wheele was two yards and a halfe broad. These with other parts of the Present were effeemed worth twentie thouland Duckets. Matezama also professed toy, to heare of so great a Prince, & fo strange people, & promised prouision of all necessaries, but was very vinwilling that Cortes fhould come to tee him, as he pretended. Yet Cortes perfifted in that his defire of feeing Mutezuma, that he might further acquaint himfelfe with the knowledge of those parts. The filly Indians having neuer feene fuch ftrange fights, came daily to the Campe to fee them

and when they heard the Ordnance discharged, they fell downe flat, thinking the Heauens had falne : the ships they thought were the God of the Ayre, called Quezalconols, which came with 29 the Temples on his backe, for they daily looked for him. Among it the reft, or rather aloofe off from the reft, were certayne Indians of differing habit, higher then the other, and had the grittles of their Nofes flit, hanging ouer their mouthes, and Rings of Iet and Amber hanging thereat: their neather lips also bored, and in the holes, Rings of Gold and Turkeffe-stones, which weighed fo much, that their lips hung ouer their chinnes, leauing their teeth bare. This vglineffe they accounted gallantry, and fuch viscouth deformitte to be the only brauery. And thou Gallant, that on-mongers readeft and derideft this madneffe of Fashian, if thine eyes were not dazeled with lightneffe (light I cannot call it) of felfe-reflect-d Vanicie, mighteft fee as Monster-like fashions at home, and a more fashionly Monster of thy felfe; thy clothes and oathes, thy gestures and vestures, make thy maked Deformicie worfe then their thus deformed nakedneffe; both in deed feeme to haue re-30 celued fome hellish Character (if there may bee bodily representation) of that olde Serpent in

these new fashions, striuing who shall shape himselfe, neerest to that misse-shapen vglinesse, wherein the Indian-jugges himselfe out of humane lineaments, the other swaggers himselfe further out of all Civili and Christian ornaments. But thefe Fashion-mongers have made mee almost out of my fashion, and to forget my felfe, in remembring their forgetfulnesse.

These Indians of this New-cut, Cortes caused to come to him , and learned that they were of Zempoallan, a Citie distant thence a dayes journey, whom their Lord had sent to see what Gods were come in those Tencallie; that is Temples (fo, it feemeth, they called the ships:) which held no conversation with the other Indians, as being not subject to Matezama, but onely as they were holden in by force. He gaue them certaine toyes, and was glad to hearethat the Indians

49 of Zemposilen, and other their Neighbours were not well affected to Matezama, but readie, as farre as they durft, to entertayne all occasions of warre with him. Hee fayled from thence to Pa. Panica. muce, and passed the River farther, till he came to a little Towne, where was a Temple, with a little Towre, and a Chappell on the top afcended by twenty fteps, in which they found fome Idols, many bloudy Papers, and much mans bloud, of those which had beene facrificed, the blocke also whereon they cut open those Sacrifices, and the Razors made of flint, wherewith they opened their brefts, which strucke the Spaniards with some horrour and feare. They passed a little further, and there having taken poffession, in the Emperours name, of the whole Countrey, they founded the Towne De la vera Crux, Cortes retigning his authoritie, and Officers being elected; Vera Crux. and laftly, all with generall confent appointing Cortes their Captaine.

Cortes went forward to Zempoallan, where hee was folemnely receited and lodged in a great 50 Cortes went forward to Zemponaus, whited with playster, that shined in the Sunne, as if it had beene Silver; house of lime and stone, whited with playster, that shined in the Sunne, as if it had beene Silver; fo did the Silver-conceits of the Spaniarde imagine, the defire of that Merall having made fuch an impression in their imagination, that they told Cortes before hee came at it, they had feene a house with wals of Silver. Here, and at Chiamizelan, Cortes incited them to rebell against Mnzezuma, and to become feruants to the Spaniards, which they did and he voder-hand to wrought, that Mutezuma tooke him for his friend.

All his intent was to fish in troubled waters, and to fee them both by the eares, that hee might watch oportunitie to benefit himielfe. His owne people rebelled, some of whom he chaflied with the halter and the whip for example to the reft : and after caused all his ships to bee 60 funke cloiely, that they should not minde any returne. He left 150, man for the guard of the new Towne, under Pedro de Henrico, and with 400. Spaniards, fifteene Horigs, and fixe Peeces of Artillery, and 1300 Indians, they went from Zempoallan, and same to Zeadoten, the Lord whereof was Olimler the fubj-ct of Mutezama, who to teftifie his joy, and to bonour Cories, commanded fifty men to be facrificed, whose bloud they faw, new and fresh.

Tlaxtallan 2

They carried the Spaniards on their shoulders, fitting on Beeres, such as whereon they vie to carry dead men. He bragged as much of the power of Mutezuma, as their Spaniards of their Em-Blandy Sacri- perour. He faid he had thirty Vaffals, each of which was able to bring into the field an hundred thouland men of Warre, and facrificed 20000. men yearely to the gods : in this he fomewhat exceeded; the other was true, although some yeares, the Sacrifices also were thought to amount to 50000. This Towne was great, and had thirteene Temples, in each of which were many Idols of itone, of divers fashions, before whom they facrificed Men, Doues, Quailes, & other things with great perfumes and veneration. Here Mniezuma had 5000 Souldiers in Garrison. Cortes passed from thence to Mexico by the Frontiers of Tlaxcallon, which were enemies to Misezue ma, whom he might eafily have overcome, but referred, partly for the exercise of his Subiects to the Warre, par ly for the Sacrifices to his gods.

These joyned an hundred and fifty thousand men against Cortes, taking him for Mutezuma's friend : and yet euery day fent him Guinney-cockes and Bread, partly to espie his strength, and partly in a brauery, left their glory should be obscured in the conquest of men already started. But when in many skirmishes and highes they could not preuaile against that handfull of Speniards. they thought they were preserved from harme by inchantments: and sent him three presents with this message; That if he were that rigorous god which eateth mans slesh, he should eate those fine flaves which they brought him, and they would bring him more: if he were the meeke and gentle god, behold Frankinsence, and Feathers: if he were a mortall man, take here Fowle. and gentie god, benow Frankinson and peace with him, and submitted their City to him. Their and submitted their City to him. City Tlax callen was great, planted by a Rivers fide, which iffued into the South-Sea. It had foure Streetes, each of which had their Captaine in the time of Warre. The gouernment was an Aria flocraty, hating Monarchy no leffe then tyranny. It had eight and twenty Villages, and in them an hundred and fifty thousand Housholds, very poore, but good warriors. They had one Marketplace fo i pacious, that thirty thouland perions in a day came thither to buy and fell by exchange:

for money they had none.

should be imposed; onely he would not have him come to Mexico. And now he fent agains, that he should not trust that new friendship with the beggerly Nation of Tlaxcaller; and they againe counselled him not to aduenture himselse to Muczama. Corres held his determination 30 for Mexico, and being accompanied with many of the Tlaxcantlexas, he went to Chololla, a little from whence Muse ame had prepared an Army to intrap him in the way jbut he finding the trechery, it redounded woon the Cholollois, the same day they had thought to have executed the fame upon him. For this end they had facrificed ten children, fine males, and as many females, three yearesold, to Quezalconail their god, which was their custome when they began their Wars. He out-going them in their owne art of fubtilty, intrapped their Captains in Counfell. and fent his Army to spoile the City, where were slaine thousands. There were twenty Gentlemen, and many Priests which ascended up to the high towre of their Temple, which had an hundred and twenty steps, where they were burned, together with their gods and Sanctuary.

This Citie had twenty thousand Housholds within the Wals, and as many in the Suburbs. It 40

yeare, and every one had his Towre. The Spaniards counted foure hundred Towers. It was the

Citie of most deuotion in all India, whither they travelled from many places farre distant in Pile

Mutezuma had fent before to Cortes, and promifed tribute to the Emperour, whatfoeper

ples and deuge shewed outward very faire and full of Towres, for there were as many Temples as dayes in the

grimage. Their Cathedrall Temple was the best and highest in all New-Spaine, with an hundred and twenty steps up to it. Their chiefe god was Quezalcounts, god of the Ayre, who was (they fay) founder of their Citie being a Virgin, of holy life and great penance. He inflituted failting, and drawing of bloud out of their eares and tongues, and left precepts of Sacrifices. Hee neuer ware but one garment of Cotten, white, narrow, and long, and voon that a Mantle, befet with certaine red croffes. They have certaine greene stones which were his, and are kept for great relikes : one of them is like an Apes head. Eight leagues from Chololla is the hill Popoca- 50 tepec, or smoake-hill, which the Earth seemeth to have erected as a Fort to encounter and affault the Ayre: now with fmoky mifts endeuouring to choake his purer breath, another while with violent flames, and naturall fire-workes threatning to joyne league with his elder and fuperiour brother to difinherit him: fometimes with showers of ashes and embers, as it were, putting out the eyes, and fometimes with terrible and dreadfull thunders, rending the eares of that Airy Element; alwayes (fuch is the event of warre) hurting and wasting it selfe, to indamage the enemy. The Indians thought it a place of Purgatory, whereby tyrannicall and wicked Officers were punished after their death, and after that purgation passed into glory. The Spaniards aduentured to fee it, but two lonely held on their journey, and had there beene confumed, had they not by a Rocke bin shadowed from the violent eruption of the fire which then hapned. It 60 chanced that the Earth, weary it seemeth of the warre, as having spent her store and munition, agreed on a truce which continued ten yeares : but in the yeare 1540, it brake forth into more violent hostility then before, quaking and renting it selfe with vibridled passion: and whereas the Ayre had alwaies a snowie Garrison about her high tops and frontiers, to coole and

CHAP.8. Corteles entertainment. Mutezumas Religion Oration death.

quench her fiery showers, yet these did but kindle a greater flame, the ashes whereof came to Huexozinco, Quelaxcopon, Tepiacac, Chololla and Tlazcallan, and other places, ten, or as some say, iffceene leagues diftant, and burned their hearbs in their Gardens, their fields of Corne, Trees and cloathes that they laid a drying. The Unican, Crater, or mouth whence the fire iffued, is about halte a league in compasse. The Indians killed their garments (an honour done vnto their gods) which had aducate ared themselves to this dreadfull spectacle.

men nad aquentated the Mexico, Muteruma feared, faying, Thefe are the people which our Muterumas tegods faid should come and inherit this Land. He went to his Oratory, and there shut vp him-ligion. telie alone, abiding eight daies in praier and falling, with facrifice of many men, to allake the To fary of his offended detties. The Deuill bids him not to feare, and that he should continue those bloudy Rites, affuring him that he should bauethe gods Vizzilipuzzli and Tefcaslipuca to preferue him, faying, That Quezalconatt permitted the destruction at Chololla, for want of that bloudy facrifice. Corres passed a Hill fix miles in height, where, by the difficulty of the passage, and of the cold (being alway couered with Snow) the Mexicans might easily have presented his passing

further. Hence he espied the Lake, whereon Mexico and many other great Townes did Rand, Ixtacpallapan a Towne of 10000 houtholds, Coracan of fix thouland, Vizilopuchtis of fue thoufand. Their Towns are adorned with many Temples and Towres, that beautifie the Lake. From Izzacpalapan to Mexico is two Leagues, all on a face cauley, with many draw-bridges, thorow which the water paffeth. Matezama received Cortes with all folemnity on the eight of November 1519. into this great

Citie, exculing himselfe of former vakindaes the best he could. Of his houle, and Maieffie, and the divine sonceit the people had of him, we shall speake after more fully, as also of the Temples, Priests, Sacrifices and other remarkeable things of Mexico.

Museums prouided all things necessary for the Spaniards and Indians that attended them:
euen beds of flowers were made, in place of litter for their Horles. But Cores disquieted with thole thoughts which commonly attend Ambition (discontent in the present, hopes and feares of the future) vied the matter fo, that he tooke Muezama peiloner, and detained him in the place appointed for the Spaniards lodging, with a Spanish Guard about him, permitting him otherwise to deale in all private or publike affaires, as before. Hereupon Cacama, Lord of Texcu-

30 co, Nephew to Materima, rebelled, but by treachery of his owne people was prefented prilo- a The like ner to Muterana. He, after this fummond a Parliament , where hee made an Oration vnto his speech he had Subiects, faying, That He and his Prodeceflours were not Naturals of the Country, but his made at feft to Fore-fathers came from a farre Country; and their King returned againe; and faid, he would fend, Gits, who ca-Fore-rather scame from And he hath now fent their Spannards, faith he.Hereupon he counfelled on that adumthem to yeelde themselves Vasials to the Emperour, which they did at his command, though tage applying with many teares on his part and theirs, at this farewell of their liberty. Materamae prefently this Trackion with many teares on me part and the same of tribute, a great quantity of Gold and other lewels, which amounted to fixteene hundred thousand Castlins of Gold, besides Silver, Sec. 25. Cortes had hitherto a continuall victory in Mexico without any fight: but news was brought

40 him of Pamphilo de Naruaes, who was fent with eighty Horse, and some bundreths of Spaniards. by Velasques, to interrupt the proceedings of Cortes: who leaving two hundred men in Mexico, with two hundred and fifty other came fuddenly in the night, and tooke Narnass priloner, and returned to Mexico with Naruaes his Company, now his followers: allo, where he found his men exceedingly diffrested by the Cirizens for a murther committed in the great Temple at a folemne Feaft, wherein a religious dance they were flaine, for the rich garments and lewels they ware, by the Spannerds. Cortes came in good cime for the relief of his men: and Materiana Reservance caused the Mexican to bridle cheir rage, which preferrly was renewed; and when Material death, was againe by his Guardians, the Spannerds, caused to fpeake to the people, a blow of a from on his Temples wounded him, whereof three daies after he died.

Cortes had some thousands of the Tlaxeliegas to helpe him, but was driven so flye from Mexico with all his Spaniards and Indians, which he did closely in the night, but yet an alarme was raifed, and the Bridges being broken, much flaughter of his people was made by the Mexicans, and all his treasure in manner loft. They pursued after him also, and had two hundred thousand in the field : when it was Cortes his good hap to flay the Sandardbearer, whereupon the Indians forfooke the field. This battell was fonghe at Ocumpan.

At Tlazcallan, he and his were kindely entertained; they had prepared before 50000. men to goe to Mexico for hishelpe, and now they promifed him all offices of loyalty and feruice. With their helpe he fubdued Tepeasac; and built certaine Brigandines, or Frigats, which were carried 60 many leagues on the backes of thole Indians, and there failined and finished, without which he

could neuer haue won Mexico.

In Texture certaine Spaniards had beene taken, facrificed and eaten, which Cortes now revenged on them. Eight thousand men had carried the loofe preces and timber of this Nauie, guarded with twenty thousand Tlaxeallans, and a thousand Tamemer, or Porters (which carried victuals) attending. They calked them with Towe, and for want of Tallow and Oyle, they vied

City was wont to be ferued.

Mans Greate, of fuch as had beene flaine in the Warres. For forthe Indians vied, to take out the Greafe of their Sacrifices. Cortes had here nine hundred Spaniards, of which fourescore and fix were Horse-men, three cast peeces of Iron, sifteene small peeces of Bralle and a chousand weight of Powder, and 1,00000. Indian Souldiers on his fide. He made a fluce or trench about twelve

foot broad, and two fathome deepe, halfe a league long, in which 40000. men wrought fifty rous production and the Canoas of the Lake, of which were

reckoned in all fine thousand. The Spaniards brake the Conduits of sweet water, wherewith the

Larger Relations of things most remarkeable observed by the Spaniards at their first comming: Cholollas holies; Popocatepecs ashes. Mutezumas multiforme magnificence and maiestie. Mexican Citie and Temple, with other antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis

lished by The. Niebels, I haue Lopez \* de Gomara. bere in divers places améded

Hololla is a Citie as Tlaxeallan, and hath but one person who is Governour and it by the Itagenerall Captaine, choten by the confent of all the Citizens. It is a Citie of first ranslation twenty thousand housholds within the wals, and in the suburbs as much more. Crausite : for It she weth outwards very beautifull, and full of Towers, for there are as many the Spanish ori-Temples as dayes in the yeare, and every Temple hath his Tower. Our men ginall have counted foure hundred Towers. The men and women are of good disposition, not,

well favoured and very wittie. The women are Goldsmiths and also Caruers, the men are wara riers, and light fellowes, and good Maisters for any purpose : they goe better apparelled then any other Indians yet feene. They weare for their vpper garment, cloakes like vnto Morifcos, but 20 after another fort. All the Countrey round about them is fruitfull and errable ground, well watered, and so full of people, that there is no waste ground, in respect whereot, there are some poore which begge from doore to doore. The Spaniar de had not feene any beggers in that Coun-

trey before they came thither. Chololla is a Citie of most devotion and religion in all India, it is called the Sanctuary, or holy place among the Indians, and thither they translled from many places farre distant in Pilgrimage, and for this cante there were fo many Temples. Their Cathedrall Temple was the best and higheft of all the New Spaine, with a hundred and twenty steps up vnto it, The greatest I-doll of all their gods was called Quexalconately, God of the Aire, who was (lay they) the founder of their Citie, being a Virgin or holy life, and great penance. He instituted fasting, and 30 drawing of bloud out of their cares and tongues, and left a precept, that they should facrifice but onely Quiles, Doues, and other foule. He neuer ware but one garment of Cotten, which was white, narrow, and long, and voon that a mantle befet with certaine red crosses. They have certaine greene Stones which were his, and those they keepe for relickes. One of them is like an Apes head. Here they abode twenty dayes, and in this meane while there came fo many to buy

and fell, that it was a wonder to fee. And one of the things that was to be feene in those faires, The bill called Popocatence.

was the earthen veiled, which was exceeding curious and fine.

40 Here is a hill eight leagues from Chololla, called Popocatepes, which is to fay, a hill of fmoake, for many times it cafteth out smoake and fire. Cortes fent thither ten Speniards, with many Indians, to carry their victuall, and to guide them in the way. The afcending vp was very troublesome, and full of craggie rocks, They approached so nigh the top, that they heard such a terrible noise which proceeded from thence, that they durk not goe voto it, for the ground did tremble and fliake, and great quantity of after which diffurbed the way : but yet two of them who feemed to be most hardie, and defirous to fee strange things, went vp to the top, because they would not returne with a sleeuelesse answer, and that they might not be accounted cowards, leaving their fellowes behinde them, proceeding forwards. The Indians faid, what meane thelemen ? for as yet neuer mortall man tooke fuch a journey in hand.

Theies wo valiant fellowes passed through the Defart of Ashes, and at length came under a great smoake very thicke, and flanding there a while, the darkenesse vanished partly away, and then appeared the vulcan and concaunty, which was about halfe a league in compafe, out of the which the ayre came abounding, with a great notie, very thrill, and whiftling, in such fort that the whole hill did tremble. It was to be compared vnto an Ouen where Glaffe is made. The fmoake and heate was so great, that they could not abide it, and of force were constrained to returne by the way that they had accended : but they were not gone farre, when the vulcan began to lath out flames of fire, albes, and imbers, yea and at the last, stones of burning fire : and if they had not chanfed to finde a Rocke, where under they shadowed themselves, undoubtedly they had there beene burned. When with good tokens they were returned where they left 60 their fellowes, the other Indians kiffed their garments as an honour due vinto gods. They prefen-

ted vnto them such things as they had, and wondred much at their fact. The fimple Indians thought, that that place was an internal place, where all fuch as govern pur prays ned not well, or year evrannie in their offices, were punished when they died, and also believed, that after their purgation, they passed into glory. This Vulcan is like vnto the Vulcan of Sicilia,

CHAP. IX.

Onabusimoe, now the new King of Mexico, receiving incouragement from the Deuillish O. racle, caufed to breake downe the Bridges, and to exercise what to cuer wit or strength could doe 10 racie, caused to ocean course to make the state of the state of the state of warrel conquered. Cortes had in Texasso ordained a new King, a Christian Indian, of the royall bload, who quered. Lorses nau in accome. The Spaniards being Lords of the Lake, and of the Cauleyes, by helpe of their Galliots and Ordinance, they fired a great part of the Citie. One day the Mexinerpe or their Gamos and a your grant thereupon celebrated a Feaft of Victory. The Priefts went vp into the Towers of Tlatelules, their chiefe Temple, and made there perfumes of fweet Gums, in token or vicory, and attribute toky brinkling their bloud in the Ayre; their fellowes looking breits and putseting out their means, sp. white many Indians, & foure Spaniards of Albarada; on, and not able to reuenge it. They flew likewife many Indians, & foure Spaniards of Albarada; company, whom they are in the open light of the Army. The Morkans danced, drankthem felues 26 drunke, made bonefires, strucke vp their Drums, and made all solemne expressings of toy. Dread. Distaine, and all the Furies that Passion or Compassion could conjure vp. had now filled the Operniards hearts and their Indian partakers: and Cortes, that histherto had hoped to referre fome part of the Citie, now did the vtmost that Rage aed Reuenge could effect, helped no lesse with in with Famine and Peftilence, then with Sword and Fire without. At left Mexico is rezed the

Earth and Water sharing betwixt them what the Fire had left, and all which had sometime challenged a lofty inheritance in the Ayre. Their King also was taken; all that mightic State fubuerted. And as the Mexicans before had prophefied, That the Tlaxantleea's should again build the Citie, if conquered, for them; if conquerors, for the Spaniards - It was re-builded with a hundred thousand houses, fairer and stronger then before. The Siege lasted three Moneths, and 30 had therein two hundred thousand Indians, nine hundred Spaniards, tourescore Horses, seventeene Peeces of Ordinance, thirteene Galliots, and fixe thouland Canoas. Fiftie Spaniards were flaine, and fixe Horses: of the Mexicans, a hundred thousand, besides those which died of Hun-

This was effected Anno 1 5 21, on the thirteenth day of August, which for that cause is kept festivall every yeare. For the Description of the Country wherein Mexico is situate. Correi in his fecond Narration to the Emperour faith, it is entirened with hils: (He tellech of fome hils allo in his journey, wherein divers of his people died with cold) in the middeft is a plaine of 70, leagues compaffe, and therein two Lakes which extend the circuit of 30.leagues; the one falt, which ebbeth and floweth (an argument for Parrison lis opinion, that faltneffe is a chiefe caufe 40 of that viciflitude of ebbing and flowing, in the Ocean) the other fresh : When the water of the Salt Lake increaseth, it runneth I'ke a, violent fireame into the fresh Lake, which when it decreafeth, is repaired againe by the like iffue of this into the former.

b N. di Guf.

Numo di Guiman hath written his expedition into Mechoacen and other Countries of New-Spaine 1530. Subduing and taking possession for the Emperour: He found some of them Sodomites, others Sacrificers of mens flesh, and some closly practising this butchery after they had profeffed themfelues Christians : none of them which durft looke a Horfe in the face, but were ae Lit.P. Alua. fraid that that Beaft would ease them. The feneral peoples by him reckoned, would here be tedious to name; which we may say of the like made by Godoy and Aluarado . Of the Customes Godin op, Ram. of the Auntient Mexicans, one of Corses his Gentlemen hath written a Treatife 4 extant in Ra- 50 mustiss, wherein are described their Citie, Temples, Rites of Sacrifice, and the like; as after followeth out of him and others.

CHAP.

it is high and round, and neuer wanteth from about it, and is feene afarre off in the night, it lathe sings and round and the state of the sta nighest. In tenne yeeres space this strange hill of working did expell no vapour or smoke; but in the yeere 1 (40. it began againe to burne, and with the horrible noyfe thereof, the Neighbours that dwelt four leagues from thence were terrified, for the especial flrange smoakes that then were seene, the like to their Predecessors had not beene seene. The ashes that proceeded from thence came to Huexozinco, Quelaxcopan, Tepiacae, Quaubquecholla, Chololla, and Tlaxcallan, which flandeth ten leagues from thence, yea fome fay, it extended fifteene leagues diffant, and burned their hearbes in their Gardens, their Fieldes of Corne, Trees, and cloathes that lay a drying.

He left the way that the Mexicans had perswaded him to come, for it was both euill and dangerous, as the Spaniard which went to the Vulcan had feene , he went another plainer way, and neerer. He afcended up a Hill coursed with inow, which was fixe miles of height, where if the 30000. Souldiers had waited for them, they might easily have taken them, by reason of the great cold : and from the top of that Hill, they discovered the Land of Mexico, and the great Lake, with his Villages round about, which is an exceeding goodly fight. But when Cortes faw that beautifull thing, his joy was without comparison.

There came twelue Lords from Mexico, among whom was Cacama, Nephew to Mutezuma who was Lord of Tezence, a young man of fine and twentie yeeres of age, whom the Indians did much honour; he was carried vpon their shoulders, and when they fet him downe, one went before with a Broome to sweepe the dust out of his way. In this order hee came to Iztacpalapan. Euery two houres came meffengers betwixt Cartes and Musezuma: then came Cuestenac Lord of that Towne, with the Lord Culhuacan his Kinfman to receive him, who prefented vnto him flaues, garments, and feathers, and to the value of foure thousand Duckets in Gold. Cuetnalace received all the Spaniards into his owne house, which hath very faire Lodgings all of stone, and Carpenters worke, exceeding well wrought, with high and low roomes, with all kind of fernice: The chambers were hanged with cloth of Cotton very rich, after their manner. There were faire Gardens replenished with many sweet flowres, and sweet trees garnished with Networke, made of Canes, and couered with Roses and other fine hearbes, with fundry ponds of fweet water. There was another Garden very beautiful of all fores of fruits and hearbes, with 30 a great pond walled with lime and stone, and was foure hundred paces square, made with faire steps to descend voto the bottomean many places, and was full of diners kinds of fishes, and many kind of water Birds, which forestimes covered the pond, as Guls, and Mewes, and fuch like, Iztaenallanan is a Towne of 10000. housholds, and is planted in a Lake of Sale-water, the one halfe of the Towne built on the water, and the other on the Land.

From Iztacpallapan to Mexico is two leagues all voon a faire Calley, woon the which eight pompe where. Horsemen may passe on ranke, and so directly straight as though it had beene made by line. And with Cortes was wholoever hath good eye-fight might differne the gates of Mexico from thence. Covercan is a Towns of fixe thousand dwellers, Vizilopuchtli is of fine thousand. These Townes are planted in the Lake, and are adorned with many Temples, which have many faire Towers, that doe 40 beautific exceedingly the Lake. There is great contractation of Salt, which is made there, and from thence is carried abroad to Faires and Markets, which thing was a great rent to Minternma. Vpon this Calley are many drawne Bridges built vpon faire arches, that the water paffeth

Cortes passed this Calley with 400. Spaniards; and 6000. Indians his friends : their passage was with much adoe, by reason of the great multitude of dudiant, which came to see him, and comming neere the Citie, there adjoyned another Calley with a broader palage; where frandeth a strong Bulwarke of itone, of the heigth of two fathome with two Towres on each fide, and two gates very firong. Here at this Fort came three thouland Courtiers and Citizens to receive him, and every of them touched the ground with his right hand and killed it, and passed forwards in 50 the order as they came. These salutations endured an houre and more. From the Bulwarke the Calfey lyeth directly, and before the entrance into the fireet there is another draw Bridge made of timber ten paces broad, under the which the water passet too and from Ar this Bridge came Matezama to receive Cortes under a Canopie of greene feathers and gold, with much Argentery hanging thereat, which Canopie foure Noble-men did carrie. And the two Princes (netlanao and Cacama his Nephewes, did leade him by each arme; all three were rich apparelled and all of one fathion, except Musezume, which had a paire of thooes of gold beter with precious Stones, and the foles were tyed to the upper part with latcheds, as is plented of the Antikes. His Gentlemen went by two and two, laying downe and taking up Mantlestand Couerlets upon the ground, because his feet should not touch the same : then tollowed him asin Procession, 200. 60 Noblemen bare-footed, with garments of a richer Livery then the first three thouland. Mutezama came in the middeft of the firest, and the others came behind him as nigh the wall as they might, their faces towards the ground, for it was a great offence to looke him in the face. Corres alighted from his Horfe, and according to our vie went to embrace him, but the Princes who led

him by the armes, would not fuffer him to come fo nigh, for they held it for finne to touch hims but yet faluted each one the other.

Certes put about Musezama his necke a coller of Margarites, Diamonds, and other stones all of glaffe. Mutezuma received it thankfully, and went before with one of the Princes his Nephewes, and commanded the other to leade Cortes by the hand, next after him in the midft of the street : and proceeding forward in this order, then came the Gentlemen in the richest Liuery to welcome him, one by one, touching the ground with their hands, and after returned to their standing. And if the Citizens had come as they requested, all that day would not have ferued for falutations. The coller of glaffe pleafed well Mutezama, and because hee would not

10 take without guing a better thing, as a great Prince, hee commanded to be brought two collers somiral side of reid Prawnes, which are there much efteemed, and at every one of them hanged eight Shrimp's gandy glaffe of gold, of excellent workmanship, and of a finger length enery one, he put these collers with for gold and his owne hands about Cortechismecke, the which was effected a most great fatiour, yea and the glory. Indians maruelled at it. At this time they were come to the street end, which was almosta mile long, broad, fireight, and very faire, and full of houses on each fide, in whose doores, windowes and tops, was such a multitude of Indians to behold the strangers, that I know not who wondred moit, our men to fee fuch a number of them, or elfe they to fee our men, their Ordnance and Horles, a thing to strange vnto them. They were brought vnto a great Court or house of P. dols, which was the Lodging Axainen, at the doore whereof, Mutezuma tooke Cortes by the 20 hand, and brought him into a faire hall, and placed him vpon a rich Carpet, faying vnto him, Sir, now are you in your owne house, cate and take your rest and pleasure, for I will shortly come and

visit you againe. Such (as you heare) was the receiving of Hernande Cortes by Mutezuma a most mightie King, into his great and famous Citie of Mexere, the eight day of November, 1519. The house where the Spaniards were lodged was great and large, with many faire chambers The Oration fufficient for them all: it was neate, cleane matted, and hanged with Cloth of Cotton, and or Muleculaid Feathers of many colours, pleafant to behold. When Mairzama was departed from Cortes, nimit, hee breamne to fet his houle in order and placed the Ordnance at his doore, and having affins

things in good fort, he went to a sumptuous Dinner that was prepared for him. Affoone as Mutexama had made an end of his Dinner, hearing that the Strangers were rifen from the Table, 30 and reposed a while, then came hee to Corter; faluting him, and fate downe by him. He gate vato him divers Iewels of Gold Plate, Feathers, and many Garments of Cotton, both rich, well wouen, and wrought of strange colours, a thing comely, that did manifest his greatneffe, and also confirme their imagination. This gift was delivered honourably, and then beganne his talke as followeth : Lords and Gentlemen , I doe much reiogee to have in my house such Valiant men as yee are, for to vife you with courtefie, and intreale you with bonour, according to your defert and my estate. And inhere heretefore I defired that you should not come bither, the evely cause was, my people had a great feare to see you, for your gesture and grimme beards did terrissie ibem, yea, they reported that yee had such beasts as swallowed men, and that your comming was from Heauen, bringing with you Lightning; Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith 40 you made the Earth to tremble and to Chake, and that yee flue therewith whom yee plaafed. But

now I doe fee and know that you are mortall men, and that yee are quiet and burt no man : alfo I have forme your Horfes, which are but your Sermants, and your Gunnes like unto Shooting Trunkes. I dee now bold all for Fables and Lyes which have beene reported of you, and I doe alfo accept you for my meere Kinsman. My Father told mee that hee had heard his ferefathers say, of whom I doe difcend, that they held opinion bow they were not Naturals of this Land, but come hither by chance, in companie of a mightie Lord, who after a while that hee had abode here, they returned to their natural! Afternee core forte: After many gerres expired, they came agains for those whom they had left heere behind them., nions but they would not goe with them, because they had here inhabited, and had Wines and (hildren, and

our tay would set got an even of the control of the for this consideration, wee have alwayes superited and beleeved, that such a people should come to rule and gonerne us, and considering from whence you come , I doe thinke that you are they whom, wee looked for , and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for us, who hath now fent you buther. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well affored, that wee will obey you, if there beeno femed or decentual matter in your dealings, and will also divide with you and yours all that we have. And although this which I have faid were not onely for your verine, fame, and deeds of valiant Gentlemen, I would yet doest for your worthinesse in the battasles of Tauaico, Teocazinco, and Chollolla. being fo few, to ouercome fo many.

Now seame, if yee imagine that I am a God, and the walls and rooffes of my boules, and all my velfell of fermice, to be of pure Gold, as the men of Zempoallan, Tlaxcallan, and Huexozinco, bane informed you, it is not fo. and I indge you to bee forwife, that you give no credit to finch Fables. Tou half alfonote, that through your comming in ther, many of my subtests have rebelled, and are become my

mortallenemus, but yet I purpose to breake their wings. Come seele you my bodie, I am of stell and bone, a mortall man as other are, and no God, although as a King I doe esteeme my selfe, of greater dianstic and prehemmence then others. My houses you doe also see, which are of timber and earth, and the prescipallest of Masone works, therefore now you doe both know and see what odious hers those Tale bearers were. But troth it is , that Gold Plate, Feathers, Armour, lewels, and other Riches . I have in the Treasury of my Forefathers a long time preserved, as the wife of Kings is, all the which you and your s shall entry at all times. And now it may please you to take your ress, for therep which you are weary of your iourney. Coates with infull countenance humbled himfelfe, seeing some teares full from Mutezuma bis eyes, faying unto him, upon the trust I base had in your clemencie. I enlisted to come both to see, and talke with your Highnesse, and now I know that all are the which to hatb been cold mee. The like your Highnesse hatb beard reported of vs, assure your saffe, that the Emperous King of Spainess your natural Lord, whom yes have expected, bee is the onely being from whence your Linage doth proceed, and as touching the offer of your Highnesse treasure, I do most beartily thanks you.

After all this communication, Mutezuma demanded whether the bearded men which came with him; were either his valids, or his flaues, because hee would enterrayne each one according to his estate. Cortes answered, that they were all his brethren, friends, and fellowes, except some that were his feruants.

Then he departed, and went home to his Palace, and there informed himselfe particularly who were Gentlamen, and who were not, and according thereunto, fent every one particular to gift or prefent. To the Gentlemen he fent his reward by his Comptroller , and to the Mariners and other. Servitors, by a Page of his houshold.

Mitezama was a man of a small stature, and leane, his colour tawnie as all the Indiana Mutequas des are. Hee had long baire on his head, fixe little haires voon him, as though they had beene put in with a Bodkin. His thinne beard was blacke. Hee was a man of a faire condition, and a Joer of Iustice, well spoken, grave and wife, beloved and feared among his subjects. My. tezume Joth fignifie Sadnelle. To the proper names of Kings and Lords, they doe adde this fyllable Cin, which is for courte-

fie and dignitie, as we vie Lord. The Turke vieth Zultan. The Moore or Barbarian calleth his Lord Mulley, and to the Indians fay Mutezumazin, His people had him in fuch reverence, 30 that hee permitted none to fit in his fight , noryet in his pretence to weare shooes, nor looke him in the face, except very few Princes. Hee was glad of the convertation of the Spaniards , and would not fuffer them to stand on foote, for the great estimation bee had of them, and if hee liked any of the Spaniar de garments, hee would exchange his apparell for theirs. He changed his owne apparell foure times every day, and bee never clothed himfelfe againe with the Garments which hee had once worne, but all tuch were kept in his Guardrebe, for to give in Prefents to his Sequents and Ambastadours , and vnto valiant Souldiers which had taken any enemy Prifoner, and that was efteemed a great reward, and a title of priniledge. The coftly Maniles whereof had beene divers fent to Cortes, were of the His Wardrobe, fame Guardrobe.

Change of

Minezama went al wayes very neate and fine in his attyre. Hee bathed him in his Hot-house foure times every day. Hee went seldome out of his Chamber , but when hee went to his meate. Hee eate alwayes alone, but iolemnely, and with great abundance. His Table was a Pillow, or elfe a couple of coloured Skinnes. His Chaire was a foure-footed stoole made of one piece, and hollow in the middeft, well wrought and painted. His Table-clothes, Napkins, and Towels, were made of Cotton-wooll, very white and new , for hee was never ferued but once with that Naperie. Foure hundred Pages brought in his meare, all fonnes of great Lords, and Magrificent placed it vpon a Table in his great Hall. The meate being brought in , then came Matez ama to behold the Diffres, and appointed those Diffres that liked him best, and Chafing-diffres were prepared to keepe that meate warme, and feldome would be cate of any other Difh, except the 50

Lord Steward or Comptroller should highly commend any other Dish. Before hee sate downe, came twentie of his Wines of the fairest and best esteemed, or else those that served weekly by turne, brought in the Bason and Ewre, with great humblenesse. This done, hee fate him downe, and then came the Lord Steward, and drew a woodden Nette before him , because none should come nigh his Table. And this Noble man alone placed the Dishes , and also tooke them away , for the Pages who brought in the meate , came not neere the Table , nor yet spake any worde , nor no

Bare-footfer-

man elle. While the Lord Mutezuma was at his meate, except fome leafter, they all ferued him bare-footed. There affifted alwayes fomewhat a farre off, fixe ancient and Noblemen, voto 60 whom he vied to give of the Dish that best liked him , who received the same at his hand with great reuerence, and eate it incontinent, without looking in his face, which was the grea-

Mulicke.

test humilitie that they could vie before him. Hee had muficke of Fiddle, Flure, and of a

Snaile-shell, and a Cauldron coursed with a skinne, and fuch other strange Instruments. They had very cuill voyces to fing. Alwayes at dinner time he had Dwarfes, crooke-backes, and other deformed counterfeits, all for maieifie and to laugh at , who had their meate in the Hall among the lefters and Idiots, which were fed with part of the meate that came from Materama his lefters. table, all the rest of the meate was given to three thousand of the guard, who attended ordinarily in the yard or Court, and therefore they fay that there was brought for his Table three thousand dishes, and as many pots of wine, such as they vie, and that continually the Buttrey and Pantrey stood open, which was a wonder to see what was in them. The platters dishes and cups, were all of earth, whereof the King was ferued but once, and fo from meale to meale new. to He had likewise his sernice of Gold and Piate very rich, but hee vied not to bee serued with it

(they fay) because hee would not bee ferued twice therewith, the which hee thought a base Plate. Some affirme, that young children were flaine and dreffed in divers kinde of diffies for Matezuma his table, but it was not io, onely of mans flesh facrificed he fed now and then. The table

being taken vp, then came againe the Gentlewomen to bring water for his hands, with the like reperence as they yied at the first, and then went they to dinner with the other wines . fo that

then the Gentlemen and Pages waited as their course fell. When his table was taken up, and his Seruitors gone to meate, Muterama fate ftill : then came in the fuiters that had any affaires to deale with him, bare-footed, for all the persons did 20 yfe that reverence, except fome Princes his Kinfmen, as the Lords of Tefenco, and Tlacopan and a few others : and beeing cold weather, they vied to weare olde ragged clothes upon their rich State ceremogarments. All furters vied to make three or foure courtefies, not looking toward his face, and mes. ipeaking vinto him their heads dowwards, and in that order retyred backe againe. Mutexame

answered his futters very grauely, with low voyce, and in few words, and not to all suiters, for others his Secretaries or Counceliers that stood by, answered for him, and having their answere, they returned backwards, not turning their tailes to the Prince. After these bufineffes done, he vied fome recreation, hearing letters or Songs, wherein he delighted much, or elie to looke voon lefters and the Players, who play with their feet, as we doe with our hands. Thele haue a cudgell like vn. Players. to a Paillers rowler, which they tolle high and low as it were a ball in the Ayre, ftrange to be-30 hold. They vie other Playes to paffe the time, in fuel an order, that it feemed manuellous to the Gimes.

lookers on. Cortes brought into Spaine lome of thefe Phyers. Also they vie Matachine s, in such fort they doe play, that there frand each woon other shoulders, and hee that standeth highest, the weth many feates. Sometime Muezama did behold the Players, who played at a game called Paceliziti, which is much like our Fables, and they play with beanes, squared like Dice, which they call Patelli, and throw them out of both their hands upon a matte, or else upon the ground, where are made certain strikes, voon which they fet downe the chance that is throwne: and at this game they play all that they have, and many times they value their owne bodies, and play that into captiuitie, and to remayne a flaue, I meane, luch as are common Gamesters of

îmall effate. 40 Sometimes Mutezuma went to the Tennis Court. Their ball is celled Villamalizati, and is The Tennis

made of the gumme which commeth from a tree called UB. This tree groweth in a hot Coun- play in Mexico. trey. The gumme being kneaded together, and fo made round, is as blacke as pitch, and fomewhat heavie, and very hard for the hand but yet good and light to rebound, and better then our wind-bals. They play not at Chafes, but at Bandy, or at Check, that is, if the ball touch the wall it loofeth. They may strike the ball with any part of their body, but there is alwayes a penaltie if they onely firike not with the buttocke or fide, which is the fineft play : whereof they yfe a skinne vpon each buttocke. They play fo many to fo many for a packe of Mantles, or according to the abilitie of the Players. Also they play for gold and feathers, and fometime for their owne bodies, as they vie at Patolli, which is there permitted and lawfull. The Tennis Court is called Tlackee, and is a Hall long and narrow, but wider vpwards, then downewards,

and higher on the fides then at the ends, which is an industry for their play. The house is alwayes white and import in the fide walles they have certaine flones like voto Milftones, with a little hole in the middelf that paffe; h through the flone, the hole is fo fmall, that scarcely the ball may paffe through, but he that chanceth to ilrike the ball into the hole, which feldometh happenerh, winnerh the game, and by an ancient Law and cultome among Tennis Players, he ought to haue the Cloakes of all those that stand and behold the play, on that side that the ball went in, and in fome Tennis Courts, the halfe of the garments of them that fland looking on. The Winner is then bound to make certaine Sacrifice to the God of the Tennis play, and to the flone where the ball entred. The beholders of the play would fay, that fuch a Winner should be a Thiefe and

an Adulterer, or elle that he should die quickly.

They vied in the Temple of the Tennis play, two Images of the God of the Ball, which food God of the Ball, which food vpon the two lower walles. The Sacrifice was celebrated at mid-night, with many Ceremonies and Witch-crafts, and Songs for that purpole. Then came a Prieft from the Cathedrall Church, with other Religious persons to bleffe the Sacrifice, saying certain denillish Prayers, and throw-

ing the ball foure times in the Tennis Court. In this order was the Tennis play confecrated and after this confectation it was lawfull to play, or elie not, for this diligence was first to bee done when any Tennis Court or play was newly built. The owner of the Tennis Court also would neuer fuffer any to play, vntill he had first offered something to the Idoll, their Superstition was

His Palace.

Twentie

Mutezuma had many houses as well in Mexico as without, for his recreation and pleasure, as also for his ordinary dwelling. To write of all it should be tedious, but where his continual abiding was, he named Topac, that is to fay, Palace. And that Palace had twentie doores or gates which had their out-comming into the common freets. It hath three Courts, and in the one Three Courts. flandeth a faire Fountaine, many Hals, and a hundred Chambers of twentie three, and thirtie foot long, an hundred Bathes and Hot-houses : and although the building was without nayles, yet very good workmanship. The walles were made of Masons worke, and wrought of Marble, Jafpe, and other blacke stone, with veines of red, like vnto Rubies and other Stones, which glistered very faire: the roofes were wrought of Timber, and curiously carued: the Timber was

Cedar, Cypresse, and Pine-tree: the Chambers were painted and hung with Cloth of Cotton, and Cloth made of Conies haire and feathers. The beds were poore and of no value, for they were nothing but Mantles laid vpon Mats, or vpon Hay, or else Mats alone : few men lay with

Multitude of

There were a thousand women, and some affirme that there were three thousand, accounting Gentlewomen, Setuants and Slaves : the most were Noblemens Daughters, Materama tooke of 20 them for his selfe, those that liked him best, and the others he gaue in mariage to Gentlemen his Seruants. The faying was, that hee had at one time a hundred and fiftie women his wines with childe, who through the perswasion of the Deuill, tooke Medicines to cast their creatures, because they knew that they should not inherit the State : these his wives, had many old women for their Guard, for no man was permitted to looke vpon them.

His Armes hee

The shield of Armes that is set in his Palace, and likewise carried to the Warres, is an Eagle Conie was his foaring vpon a Tigre his tallons, bent as taking prey. Some thinke it is a Gryffon and not an armes, but this Eagle. The Griffons in time past, fay they, did cause the Vale of Anacatlan to bee dispeopled, Eagle was ge- for they were great denourers of men, and that their abiding was in the Mountaines of Teorem: neralito all the they approue that these Mountaines were called Contlachtepels, of Contlachti, which is a Gryffon, 30 Mexican Kings they approve that there mountaines were called Cuntachtepet, of Cutlachtli, which is a Gryffon, Gryffon-tale, bigger then a Lion: but the Spaniards did neuer see any of them. The Indians by their old Pictures doe paint those Gryffons to hauea kind of haire and no feathers, and also affirme, that with their fallons and teeth they breake mens bones. They have the courage of a Lion, and the countenance of an Eagle : they paint him with foure feet, and teeth, with a kinde of downe, more like wooll then feathers, with his beake, tallons, and wings. There are also other Lords that give the Gry ffon in their Armes, flying with a heart in his tallons.

Altoufe of

Mutezama had another house, with very good lodgings and faire galleries, built vpon Pillars of Iaspe which extendeth toward a goodly Garden, in the which there are ten ponds or moe, some of salt-water for Sea-fowle, and other some of fresh water for River-sowle, and Lakefowle, which ponds are deuiled with finces to emptie and to fill at their pleafure, for the clean- 40 nesse of the feathers. There is such a number of Fowle that scarcely the ponds may hold them, and of fuch divers kindes both in feathers and making, as fure it was an admiration for the Spamiards to behold, for the most of them they knew not, nor yet had at any time seene the like. And to enery kind of Fowle they gave fuch bayte as they were wont to feede of in the Fields or Rivers. There did belong to that house three hundred persons of service some were to clense the ponds : other some did fish for baite : other some served them with meate : other did loofe them and trimme their feathers : others had care to looke to their Egges : others to fet them abrood: others cured them when they were ficke : and the principallest Office was to plucke the Feathers : for of them was made rich Mantles , Tapiffary , Targets, tuffes of Feathers, and many other things wrought with Gold and Silver: a most per- 40

their feathers, fit worke.

There is another House with large quarters and lodgings, which is called a House for fowle for haw- Fowle , not because there are more then in the other , but because they bee bigger and king and other to hawke with all, and are Fowle of rapine, wherefore they are eiteemed as more nobler

There are in this House many high Hals, in the which are kept men, women and children: in some of them are kept such as are borne white of colour : which doth very seldome happen : in other some are Dwarfes, Crooked-backes, Burstenmen, Counterfeites, and monitrous Perfons, in great number : they fay, that they vied to deforme them when they were Children , to fet forth the Kings greatneffe : euery of thefe persons were in seuerall Hailes by 60 themiclues.

Wildbeafts.

In the lower Halles were great Cages made of timber: in some of them were Lions, in other Tigres, in other Ounces, in others Wolues: in conclusion, there was no foure-footed beak that wanted there, onely to the effect that the mightie Mutezume might fay that hee had fuch things in his house. They were fed with their ordinary, as Ginea cockes, Deere, Dogges, and

There was also in other Hals great earthen vessels, some with earth, and some with water, wherein were Snakes, as groffe as a mans thigh, Vipers, Crocodiles, which they call Cay- Snakes, &c. manes, or Lizares of twenty foote long, with fuch Scales and head as a Dragon hath ! Alfo or her little Lizarts, and other venemous Beafts and Serpents as well of the water as of the land, a terrible fight for the lookers on .

There were also other Cages for foule of rapine of all forts, as Hawkes, Kites, Boyters, and at Foules of prey the least nine or ten kinde of Haukes. This house of foule had of daily allowance fine hundred 10 Gynea cockes, and three hundred men of feruice, besides the Falconers and Hunters, which are infinite. There were many other forts of Foules that our men knew not, which feemed by their

beake and talents good to Hauke withall .

To the Snakes and other venemous Beafts they gave the bloud of men facrificed, to feede them, and fome fay, they gade voto them mans fiesh, which the great Lizarts doe eate very well. The Spaniards taw the floore couered with bloud like a iellie in a Slaughter-house, it stunke horribly. It was frange to see the Officers in this House, how every one was occupied. Our men tooke great pleasure in beholding such strange things, but they could not away with the rearing of the Lyons, the fearefull haffing of the Snakes and Adders. the dolefull howling and barking of the Wolnes, the forrowfull yelling of the Ownzes

20 and Tigres, when they would have meate. Most certaine, in the night feason it feemed a Dingeon of Hell, and a dwelling place of the Deuill, and euen in re was indeede, for neare at hand was a Hall of a hundred and fiftie foote long, and thirty foote broad, where was a Chappell with the Roofe of Siluer and Gold in leafe Wainefcotted . and decked with great store of Pearle and Stone, as Agattes, Cornerines, Emeralds, Rubies, and diversother forts, and this was the Oratory where Matezama prayed in the night feafon, and in that Chappell the Deuill did appeare vnto him, and gaue him answere according to

He had other houses like vnto Barnes, onely for the feathers of foules, and for mantels which Store-houses proceeded of his rents and tributes, a thing much to be feene : vpon the doores was fet his armes, 30 which was a Conie. Here dwelled the chiefe Officers of his house, as Treasurer, Controller, Receiners and other officers appertaining to the Kings retienews. Muteruma had no house wherein Officers

was not an Oratorie for the Deuill, whom they worthipped for the Iewels there. And therefore those houses were great and large.

Mutezuma had forme houses of Armor, vpon the doores wherof stood a Bowe and Arrows. In these houses was great store of all kinde of Munition which they wie in their wars : as Bowes, of Mutetoma Arrowes, Slings, Launces, Darts, Clubbes, Swords and Bucklers, and gallant Targets more trim then strong, Skuls and Splints, but not manie, and all made of wood, gilt or couered with leather. The wood whereof they make their Armour and Targets, is verie hard and strong, for Armese they vie to toaff it at the fire, and at their Arrow ends they enclose a little peece of Flint stone, 40 or a peece of a Fish bone called Labifa, and that is venemous, for if any be hurt therewith and the

head remaine in the wound, it so festereth, that it is almost incurable. Their Swords are of wood, and the edge thereof is of fline stone, enclosed or loyned into a Wodden

staffe, with a certaine kinde of glew which is made of a roote called Zacolt, and Tenzalli, which Swoids with is a kinde of ftrong fand, whereof they make a mixture, and after kneade it with bloud of Bats flone edges. or Rearemice, and other Foule, which doth glew raruellous ftrong, and lightly neuer vncleaueth : of this stuffe, they make nailes, pearcers, and augers, wherewith they bore Timber and Hone : with their Swords they cut Speares, yea and a Horse necke at a blow, and made dents into Iron, which feemed a thing vnpoffible and incredible. In the Citie no man may weare weapon, but onely in warres, lunting, and among the Kings Guard.

Befales the forefaid houses, he had manie others for his onely recreation and passime, with ex- The Gardens cellent faire Gardens of medicinall Hearbes, sweete Flowers, and Trees of delectable sauour. of Mateguma. In that Garden were a thousand personages, made and wrought artificially of leaves and flowers. Mutezams would not permit that in this Garden should be any kinde of pot Hearbes, or Note of a things to be fold, faying, that it did not appertaine to Kings to have things of profit, among magnificent their delights and pleasures, for such things (laid he) did appertaine to Merchants. Yet not minde. withstanding he had Orchards with manie and fundrie fruites, but they stood farre from the Citie, and whither feldome times he went : he had likewise out of Mexico pleasant houses in fure. Woods and Forrests, of great compasse, enuironed with water, in the which he had Fountaines, Rivers, Ponds with fish, Warrens of Conies, Rockes and covert where were Harts, Bucks, Hares,

60 Foxes, Wolues, and fuch like, with wildernesse for everie fort. To these places the Lords of Mexico vied to goe and sport themselves, such and so many were the houses of Mutez uma. wherein few Kings were equall with him.

He had daily attending upon him in his private Guard, fixe hundred Noblemen and Gentle-Aaaaa a

The Court and men, and each of them three or foure feruants, and fome had twentie feruants or moe, according Guard of Mar- to his estate: and in this manner he had three thousand men attendant in his Court, and some affirme more, all the which were fed in his house of the meate that came from his table. The feruing men alwaies abode below in the Court all the day, and went not from thence till after It is to be thought that his Guard was the greater, because the strangers were there, although

Great Vaffals.

in effect of truth it is most certaine, that all the Lords that are under the Mexical Empire (as they say) are thirtie persons of high estate, who are able to make each of them a hundred thoufand men. There are three thouland Lords of Townes, who have many vastals. These Noble-State-caution, men did abide in Mexico certaine times of the yeare, in the Court of Matezama, and could to not depart from thence without especiall licence of the Emperour, leaving each of them a found or brother behinde them for tecuritie of rebellion, and for this cause they had generally houses in the Citie; fuch and to great was the Court of Mutezuma.

Tribures and fub:ection of the Indians to

There is not in all the Dominions of Materame any fubiect that paieth not tribute voto him The Noblemen pay their tribute in personall service. The Husbandmen called Maceualtin with body and goods. In this fort they are either Tenants, or elfe henes to their poffessions, Those which are berrer, doe pay one third part of all their fruite and commoditie that they doe reape or bring vp, as Dogges, Hennes, Foule, Contes, Gold, Silver, Stones, Salt, Waxe, Hone, Mantels, Feathers, Cotten, and a certaine fruite called Cacas, that ferneth for money, and alio to eate. Alio all kinde of Graine, and Garden Hearbes, and Fruites, whereof they doe main- 20 taine themselves.

The Tenants doe pay monethly, or yearely, as they can agree, and because their tribute is great, they are called flaues, for when they may have licence to eate Egges, they thinke it a great fauour. It was reported that they were taxed what they should eate, and all the residue was taken from them. They went verie poorely cloathed, yea and the most of their treasure was an earthen Pot, wherein they boiled their Hearbes, a couple of Milftones to grinde their Corne. and a Mat tolye vpon. They did not onely pase this Rent, and Tribute, but also ferued with their bodies at all times when the great King (hould command. They were in fuch great fubis Rion to their Prince, that they durft not speake one word although their daughters should be taken from them to bevied at pleafure, All the aforefaid rents they brought to Mexico vpon their to backes, and in Boates, I meane fo much as was necessarie for the provision of the House and Court of Mutezuma, all the reft was spent among Souldiers, and bartred for Gold, Plate, Precious stones, and other rich Iewels, esteemed of Princes, all the which was brought to the Treasurie. In Mexico was large and great Barnes and Houles to receive and keepe the Corne for prouis Secompidare fion of the Citie, with Officers, and underofficers, who did receive the fame, and kept account thereof in Bookes of painted figures.

And in every Towne was a Receiver, who bare in his hand a rod or a bush of Feathers, and thole gave up their accounts in Mexico. If any fuch had beene taken with deceit and fallhood, death was his reward, yea and his kinred punished with penalties, as of a linage of a traitour to his Prince. The Husbandmen, if they paid not well their Tribute, were apprehended for the 40 fame, and if they were found to be poore through sicknesse and infirmitie, then they were borne withall, but if they were found to be lazie and floathfull, they should be vied accordingly : but in conclusion, if they paied it not at a day appointed, then they should be fold for slaues to pay their debt, or elfe be facrificed.

There were many other Provinces, which paid a certaine portion, and reknowledged feroice, but this Tribute was more of honour then profit, In this fort Mutez ume had more then fiffitient to prouide his house and wars, and to heape up great store in his Treasury. Moreover, he spent nothing in the building of his houses, for of long time he had certaine Townes that paid no other Tribute, but onely to worke and repaire continually his Houses at their owne proper cost, and paid all kinde of workemen carrying vpon their backes, or drawing in fleds, Stone, Lime, 50 Timber, Water, and all other necessaries for the worke. Likewife they were bound to prouide all the firewood that should be spent in the Court , which was a great thing , and did amount to two hundred and thirty weight a day, which was fine hundred mens burdens, and fome dayes in the winter much more. And for the Kings Chimneys they brought the barke of Oake trees, which wes belt esteemed for the light thereof, for they were great Sorcerers. Mutezuma had one hundred Cities with their Prouinces, of whom he received Rents, Tributes, and Vaffalage, where he maintained Garrison of Souldiers, and had Treasurers in each

His dominion did extend from the North fea to the South fea, and fix hundred miles in longitude within the maine Land, although in very deede there were some Townes, as Tlazeal 63 lon, Mechnacan, Panuco, and Teocantepec, which were his enemies, and paid him neither Tribute nor Seruice : but yet the Ranfome was much, when any of them was taken Al'o there were other Kings and Noblemen, as of Texento, and Tlacopan, which were not in jubic ction vnto him, but onely in homage and obedience, for they were of his owne linage, vnto whom Matexama married his Daughters.

Description of Mexico as it flourished in those times.

Exico at the time when Cortes entred, was a Citie of fixtie thouland houles. The Kings Mhoul , and o her Noblemens houses were great, large, and beautifull, the other were small and meane, without either doores or windowes; and although they were small, yet there dwelleth in some of them, two, three, yea and ten persons, by reason whereof, the Citie was wonder-

10 fully replenished with people.

This Citie is built whom the water, even in the fame order as Venuce is: All the body of the Three forts of Citie standeth in a great large Lake of water. There are three for is of streetes very broad and Streetes faire, the one forcare onely water, with many Bridges : another fort of onely earth; and the third of earth and water ; that is to fay, the one halfe earth to walke upon, and the other halfe for Boates to bring prouition of all forts. These streetes are kept alwayes cleane, and the most part of the houses have two doores, the one towards the Cawley, and the other towards the water, at the which they take Boate to goe where they lift. And although this Citie is founded vpon water, yet the same water is not good to drinke, whereof there is brought by conduit water from a place called Caputapee, three miles diffant from the Citie, which fpringeth out of a

20 little hill, at the foote whereof standeth two Statues or conered Images wrought in stone, with their Targets and Lances, the one is of Mutezuma, and the other of Axaiaca his Father. The water is brought from thence in two Pipes or Canals in great quantity, and when the one is foule, then all the water is conucied into the other, till the first be made cleane. From this Fountaine all the whole Citie is prouided, so that they goe selling the same water from streete toffreete in little Boates, and doe pay a certaine tribute for the same.

This Citie is divided into two threetes, the one was called Timelulco, that is to fay, a little Iland, and the other Mexico, where Mutexuma his dwelling and Court was, and is to be interpreted a Spring. This streete is the fairest and most principall, and because of the Kings Pallace there, the Citie was named Mexico, although the old and first name of the Citie was Tenuch-

30 sitlan, which doth fignifie Fruite out of stone, for the name is compounded of Tetl, which is, Stone, and Nuchels, which is a Fruite in Cuba and Hispanible, called Timat; the Tree (or to freake properly, the Thiftle) that beareth this fruite, is named Nopal, and is nothing almost but leaves It growth alof a footebroad and round, and three inches thicke, fome more, and fome leffe, according to the to in Birmiddi growth, full of thornes which are venemous : the leafe is greene, and the thorne or pricke ruffer. After that is planted, it encreaseth, growing leafe voto leafe, and the foote thereof commeth to be as the body of a tree, and one leafe doth onely produce another at the point, but at thefides of the fame leaves proceede other leaves. In fome Provinces where water is feant, they wie to drinke the juice of these leaves. The fruite thereof called Nuchtli, is like wnto Figges, and euen fo hath his little kernels or graines within, but they are fomewhat larger, and crowned

40 like vnto a Medler. There are of them of fundry colours, fome are greene without, and Carnationlike within, which have a good tafte. Others are yellow, and others white, and fome speckled; the best fore are the white : it is a fruite that will last long. Some of them have the tafte of Peares, and othersome of Grapes: it is a cold and a fresh fruite, and best esteemed in the heate of Summer. The Spanards doe more efteeme them then the Indians. The more the ground is laboured where they grow, the fruite is fo much the better. There is yet another kinde of this fruite red, and that is nothing effeemed, although his tafte is not cuill, but because it doth colour and dye the eaters mouth, lippes, and apparell, yea, and maketh his vrine looke like pure bloud. Many Spaniards at their first comming into India, and eating this Fruite, were in a maze, and at their wits end, thinking that all the blood in their bodies came out in vrine ; yea and 50 many Philitions at their first comming were of the same beliefe; for it hath happened, when

they have bin fent for vnto fuch as have eaten this fruite, they not knowing the cause, and beholding the wrine, by and by they ministred medicine to stanch the bloud: a thing ridiculous. en fee the Philitians fo deceiued, Of this fruite Nuchili and Tell, which is a Stone, is compounded Tenuchtletan. When this City was begun to be founded, it was placed neere vinto a great Stone that stood in the middest of the Lake, at the foote whereof grew one of these Nopal crees, and therefore Mexico giveth for armes and deurse the foot of a Nopaltree springing from a stone, according to the Cities name.

Mexico is as much to lay, as a Spring or Fountaine, according to the property of the vowell The name of and freech. Others doe affirme, that Mexico hath his name of a more ancient time, whole first Mexico.

60 Founders were called Mexits, for voto this day the Indian dwellers in one ftreete of this City are called of Mexico. The Mexiti tooke name of thir principallelt Idoll called Mexitli, who was in as great veneration as Vitzilopuchtli, god of the warre. Mexico is environed with I weet water. and bath three wayes to come vnto it by cawfie, the one is from the West, and that cawfie is a mile and a halfe long. Another from the North, and containeth three miles in length. Eastward

Two Lakes, one filt the other treft, El bing and winde. Some (25 Partius) hance moued. desine the cause of the Scar flowing from the falt-Cause of the faltneffe.

the Citie hath no entrie. But Southward the Cawfey is fixe miles long, which was the way that Cortez entred into the Citie. The Lake that Mexico is planted in, although it fremteh one, yet it is two, for the one is of water faltish, bitter, and pestiferous, and no kinde of fish liueth in it. And the other water is wholefome, good, and fweet, and bringeth forth small fish. The falt water ebbeth and floweth, according to the winde that bloweth. The fweet water standeth higher, flowing by the fo that the good water falleth into the cuill, and reverteth not backward, as some hold opinion. The falt Lake contayneth fitteene miles in breadth, and fitteene in length, and more then five and fortie in circuit , and the Lake of fweet water contayneth euen as much, in fuch fort, that the whole Lake contayneth more then thirtie leagues, and hath about fiftie townes fituated the whole Lake contaying in the townes doe contaying fire thouland housholds, and some ten thou to fand, yea and one towne called Texeuco, is as bigge as Mexico. All this Lake of water springeth out of a Mountaine that standeth within fight of Mexico. The cause that the one part of the Lake is brackish or lateish, is, that the bottome or ground is all sale, and of that water great quantitie of falt is daily made.

200000, C2-

In this great Lake are about two hundred thousand little boates, which the Indians call Acalles, and the Spaniards call them Canons, according to the speech of Cuba and Santo Domingo, wrought like a kneading trough : lome are bigger then other some, according to the greatnesse of the body of the tree whereof they are made. And where I number two hundred thousand of these boats, I speake of the least, for Mexico alone hath aboue fiftie thousand ordinarily to carry and bring voto the Citie victuall, prouision, and passengers, so that on the market day all the threets of water are full of them.

The Market is called in the Indian tongue Tlanquizzls: every Parish hath his Market place to place of Mexi. buy and fell in ; but Mexico, and Tlatelulco onely, which are the chiefest Cities, have great Faires and places fit for the same, and especially Mexico hath one place where most dayes in the yeere is buying and felling, but every fourth day is the great Market ordinarily : and the like cuftome is vied throughout the Dominions of Muteruma. This place is wide and large, compassed round about with doores, and is logreat, that a hundred thousand persons come thither to chop and change, as a Citie most principall in all that Region. Wherefore the refort is from farre parts Order of Sel. vnto that place. Euery occupation and kinde of merchandile hath his proper place appointed. which no other may by any meanes occupie or diffurbe. Likewife pefterous wares haue their 30

place accordingly (that is to fay) stone, timber, lime, bricke, and all kinde of stuffe vnwrought, being necessarie to build withall. Also Mass both fine and course of fundrie workmanship, also Coales, Wood, and all forts of earthen veffell, glafed and painted very curiously : Deere skinnes both raw and tanned in haircand without haire, of many colours, for Shoomakers, Bucklers, Targets, Jerkins, and lining of woodden Corfelets: also skinnes of other beafts and fowle infeathere readie dreffed of all forts, the colours and strangenesse thereof was a thing to behold. The richest merchandise was Salt, and Mantels of cotton wooll of divers colours, both great and smal, fome for beds, others for garmen's and clothing, other for tapiffarie to hang houses, other cotten cloth for lining breeches, thirts, table clothes, towels, napkins, and fuch like things. There were alfo Mantels made of the leaves of the tree called Metl , and of Palme tree , and 40

Cony haire, which are well effeemed, being very warme, but the Couerlets made of feathers are the best : they fell threed made of Cony haire, pieces of linnen cloth made of cotton wooll, also skaines of threed of all colours : also it is strange to see the great store of fowle, some wilde, fome tame, some water fowle, and other some of rapine. All the brauerie of the Market, is the place where gold and feathers toyntly wrought is fold, for any thing that is in request is there lively wrought in gold and feathers, and gallant colours. The Indians are fo expert and perfect in this science, that they will worke or make a Butter-flie, any wild Beast, Trees, Roses, Flowers, Herbs, Rootes, or any other thing, fo lively, that it is a thing maruellous to behold. It hapneth many times that one of these workmen in a whole day will eate nothing, onely to place one feather in his due perfection, turning and toffing the feather to the light of the Sunne, into the shade or darke place, to see where is his most natural perfection, and till his worke be finished he will neither eate nor drinke. There are few Nations of so much patience. The Art or Science of Gold-finiths, among them is the most curious, and very good workmanship engrauen with tooles made of flint, or in mold. They will cast a platter in mold with eight corners, and every corner of feuerall metall, that is to fay, the one of gold, and the other of filuer, without any kind of folder: they will also found or cast a little caldson with loose handles hanging thereat, as wee vie to cast a hell : they will also cast in mold a fish of metall with one scale of silver on his backe, and another of gold : they will make a Parret or Popinjay of metall, that his tongue shall shake, and his head moone, and his wings flutter: they will caft an Ape in mold, that both liands and feet shall stirre, and hold a spindle in his hand seeming to spin, yea and an Apple in his hand, as though he would eate it. Our Spaniards were not a little amazed at the fight of these things. For our Gold-Imiths are not to be compared vnto them. They have skill also of Amell worke, and to fet any precious stone. But now as touching the Market, there is to fell Gold, Silver, Copper, Leade, Latton, and Tin, although there is but little of the three last metals mentioned. There are

pearles, precious stones, divers and fundrie forts of shells, and bones, spunges and other Pedlers ware, which certainly are many and ftrange forts, yea, and a thing to laugh at their Haberdash toyes and triffles. There are also many kinde of Hearbs, Roots, and Seedes, as well to bee caten, as for medicine, for both men, women, and children, have great knowledge in hearbs, for through pouertie and necessitie, they seeke them for their sustenance and helpe of their infirmities and diseafes. They spend little among Physicians, although there are some of that Art, and many Apothecaries, who doe bring into the market Ointments, Sirrops, Waters, and other drugs, fit for ficke persons: they cure all diseases almost, with hearbs; yea, as much as for to kill Lice, they

haue a proper hearbe for the purpole. The feuerall kindes of meates to bee fold are without number, as Snakes without head and taile, little Dogs gelt, Molls, Rats, long Wormes, Lice, yea and a kinde of earth, for at one fea- Victuall of did fon in the yeere they have Nets of maile, with the which they rake up a certaine dust that is uers forts. bred voon the water of the Lake of Mexico, and that is kneaded together like vnto Oas of the Sea : they gather much of this victuall, and keepe it in heapes, and make thereof Cakes like vnto brick-bats : they fell not onely this ware in the Market , but also fend it abroad to other Faires and Markets afarre off : they eate this meate with as good flomacks as wee eate cheefe, yea and they hold opinion that this skum or farnesse of the water, is the cause that such great number of fowle commeth to the Lake, which in the winter fealon is infinite. All the Sellers pay a certaine fumme for their shops or standings to the King, as a custome, and they to bee preferred and de-20 fended from theeues; and for that cause there goe certaine Sergeants or Officers vp and downe the Market to espie out malesactors. In the middest of the Market standeth a house which may bee

feene throughout the Faire , and there fitteth twelue ancient men for Iudges to dispatch Law matters: their buying and felling is to change one ware for another, as thus, one gineth a Hen for Bartetian a bundell of Maiz, other give Mantels for Salt, or money which is Cacao, and this is their order to chop and change : they have measure and strike for all kinde of Corne, and other earthen meafures for Hony and Wine, and if any Measure bee fallified, they punish the offenders, and breake The Temple is called Tencalli, that is to fay, Gods Honfe; Tentl, fignifieth God; and Calli is The great

a Hone, a name very fit, if that house had beene of the true God. The Spaniards that understand Temple of 30 not the language, doe pronounce and call those Tomples Cars, and the God Vitzidopuchili, Vchi. Mexico. lobes. There are in Mexico many Churches with Towres for their Parithes and Streets, wherein are Chappels and Altars where the Images and Idols doe fland, and those Chappels doe serve for buriall places of their Founders; for others are buried in the ground about them or Churchyards. All their Temples are of one fathion, therefore it shall bee now fufficient to speake of the principall Church. This Temple is square, and doth contayne every way as much ground as a Crosse-bow canreach levell : it is made of stone, with foure doores that abutteth vpon the three Cawfeys, and voon another part of the Citie, that hath no Cawfey but a faire ftreet. In the middelt of this Quiderne standeth a mount of earth and stone, square likewise, and fiftie fathom Chiefe Temple long every way, built vpwardlike vnto a Pyramide of Egypt, faving the top is not flarpe, but described. 

beautifull thing. It was a strangesight to behold the Priests, some going vp, and some downs with ceremonies, or with men to be facrificed. Vpon the top of this Temple are two great Al. Two Akarw tars, a good space distant the one from the other, and so night he edge or brim of the wall, that fearly a man may goe behinde them at pleasure. The one Altar standeth on the right hand, and the other on the lett : they were but of fine foot high, each of them had the backe part made of ftone, painted with monitrous and foule figures, the Chappell was faire and well wrought of Masons worke and timber, euery Chappell had three lofts, one aboue another, suffayned vpon pillars, and with the height thereof it shewed like vnto a faire Towre, and beautified the Citie 50 afarre off : from thence a man may fee all the Citie and Townes round about the Lake, which was vndoubtedly a goodly prospect. And because Correr and his companie should see the beautie

thereof; Mutezame brought him thither, and shewed him all the order of the Temple, even from the foot to the top. There was a certaine plot or space for the Idoll Priests to celebrate their feruice without disturbance of any. Their generall prayers were made toward the rifing of the Sunne, Vpon each Altar ftandeth a great Idoll. Beside this Towre that standeth vpon the Pysumme, planes and the state of nor Westward, but other wayes, because there should be a difference betwitte the great Temple Scuerall Tem-60 and them. Some of their Temples were bigger then others; and entry one of a secural God, ples to fue-

among the which there was one round Temple, dedicated to the God of the aire, called Queeal\_ rall gods. count, for even as the aire goeth round about the Heavens, even for that confideration they made A firange his Temple round. The entrance of that Temple had a doore, made like vnto the mouth of a doore. Serpent, and was painted with foule and denillift geftores, with great teeth and gums wrought, which was a thing to feare those that should enter in thereat, and especially the Christians

vnto whom it represented very Hell, with that vgly face and monstrous teeth-

There were other Tencalles in the Citie, that had the alcending vp by steps in three places: all their Temples had houses by themsclues with all service, and Priests and particular Gods, Ag Temple-halls, every doore or the great Temple standeth a large Hall and goodly Lodgings, both high and low round about, which houses were common Armories for the Citie, for the force and strength of enery Towne is the Temple, and therefore they have there placed their flore-house of munition, They had other darke houses full of Idols, great and small, wrought of fundrie metals, they are all bathed and washed with bloud, and doe shew very blacke through their daily sprinkling and

Deuillifh Paicfin

anointing them with the fame, when any man is facrificed : yea, and the walls are an inch thicke with bloud, and the ground is a foot thick of bloud, fo that there is a deuillish shinsh. The Priests to or Ministers goe daily into those Oratories, and suffer none others but great personages to enter in. Yea, and when any such goeth in, they are bound to offer some man to bee sacrificed, that those bloudie Hangmen and Ministers of the Deutil may wash their hands in bloud of those so facrificed, and to fprinkle their house therewith. For their feruice in the Kitchin they have a Pond of water that is filled once a yeere, which is

foot. refi-

brought by conduit from the principall Fountaine. All the residue of the foresaid circuit serueth for places to breede fowle, with Gardens of herbs and fweet trees, with Roles and flowers for the Altars. Such, fo great and strange was this Temple of Mexico, for the service of the Deuil who had deceived those timple Indians. There doth reside in the same Temple continually five who nad decement thousands they are lodged and have their living there, for that Temple is marvellous rich, and hath divers Townes onely for their maintenance and reparation, and are bound to fustaine the same alwayes on foot. They doe fowe Corne, and maintayne all those fine thoufand persons with bread, fruit, flesh, fish, and fire-wood, as much as they neede, for they spend more fire-wood then is spent in the Kings Court : these persons doe line at their hearts ease, as feruants and vallals vnto the Gods. The Gods of Mexico were two thousand in number, as the Indians reported, the chiefest

The Idols of

were Vitzilopuchtli, and Texcatlipuca, whole Images flood highest in the Temple vpon the Altars: they were made of stone in full proportion as bigge as a Giant. They were coursed with a lawne, called Nacar. Their Images were befer with pearles, precious Rones, and pieces of gold, wrought like birds, beafts, fillies, and flowres, adorned with Emeralds, Turquies, Calce- 20 dons, and other little fine stones, fo that when the lawne Nacar was taken away, the Images feemed very beautifull to behold. The Image had for a girdle great Snakes of gold, and for Collars and Chaines about their necks, ten hearts of men made of gold, and each of those Idols had a counterfait vilard with eyes of glaffe, and in their necks death painted : each of these things had their confiderations and meanings. These two Gods were brethren, for Tezeatipuca was the God of Prouidence, and Viszilopuchti God of the Warres, who was worthipped and feared more

There was another God, who had a great Image placed woon the top of the Chappell of Idols. and he was esteemed for a speciall and singular God about all the rest. This God was made of all kinde of feedes that groweth in that Country, and being ground, they made a certaine pafte, 40 tempered with Childrens bloud, and Virgins facrificed, who were opened with their Rafors in the breaks, and their hearts taken out, to offer as first fruits vnto the Idoll. The Priests and Minifters doe confecrate this Idoll with great pompe and many ceremonies. All the Comarcans and Citizens are prefent at the confectation, with great triumph and incredible deuotion. After the confectation, many denout perfons came and flicked in the dowie Image precious stones, wedges of gold, and other jewels. After all this pompe ended, no fecular man may touch that holy Image, no nor yet come into his Chappell, nay learly religious persons, except they were Tlamscazeti, who are Priests of order. They doe renew this Image many times with new dough , taking away the old, but then bleffed is he that can get one piece of the old raggs for teliques, and chiefly for Souldiers, who thought themselves fure therewith in the warres. Also at the confe- 50 cration of this Idoll, a certaine vessell of water was blessed with many wordes and ceremonies, and that water was preferred very religiously at the foot of the Altar, for to confecrate the King when he should be crowned, and also to blesse any Captaine generall, when he should be elected for the warres, with onely giving him a draught of that water.

Without the Temple, and ouer against the principall doore thereof, a stones cast distant, stanboule, or place deth the Charnell house onely of dead mens heads, prisoners in warres, and sacrificed with the knife. This monument was made like vnto a Theater, more larger then broad, wrought of lime and stone, with accending steps, in the walls whereof was grafted betwixt stone and stone a Scull, with the teethoutwards. At the foot and head of this Theater, were two Towres, made onely or lime and foulle, the teeth outward, and this wall having no other fluffe, feemed a 60 firange fight. At and voon the top of the Theater, were feventie Poles, flanding the one from the other toute or fine toot diffant, and each of them was full of stanes from the toot to the top-Each of their states had others made fast vnto them, so that every of them had five souls broched how the Temple. Andrew de Tapie did certifie me, that he and Gonçalo de Vimbria did rec-

kon them in one day, and found a hundred thirtie and fixe thousand sculls on the poles, staues, and steps. The other Towres were replemified out of number, a most cruell custome, being onely mens heads fixine in facrifice, although it hath a flew of humanitie for the remembrance there placed of death. There are also men appointed, that when one scull falleth, to set vp another in his place, to that the number may never want.

### Other Mexican Antiquities , Letters , Numbers , Teeres , Dayes, Weekes , &c.

Here bath not beene found Letters at any time in the West India, onely in new Spaine were vied certaine figures which ferned for letters, with the which they kept in memorie and preferned their Antiquities. The figures that the Mexicans ofed for letters are great, by reason whereof they accupie great Volumes: they engrave them in stone or timber, and paint them upon walls, and also upon a paper made of coston wooll, and leases of the tree Metl. Their bookes are great and folded up like unto our broad cloathes, and written upon both fides. There are some bookes rolled up like a piece of flannell. Ther pronounce not v, g, r, f, y, therefore they ofe much p, c, l, x. This is the Mexican freech, and Nahual. which is the best, playnest, and the most eloquent, in all new Spaine. There are some in Mexico that doe understand each other by whistling, which is ordinarily used among Lowers, and Theenes, a speech sruly 20 to wonder at, and none of our men could come to the knowledge thereof.

### Their reckoning by numbers was in this fort.

Ome, Two, E1, Three, Nam. Foure.	Chicome, Seuen, Chicoes, Eight Chiconaus, Nine,	Matlaciliome, Twelue, Matlaciliomei, Thirteene, Matlacilimani, Fourteene,	Matlattlichicuei, Eight Matlattlichiconaui, Nure	teene, teene,
Macuil, Fine,	Matlac, Ten,	Mailacthracui, Fifteene,	Cempoalls, Twe	

Eury number is simple untill you come to fixe, and then they count, fixe and one, fixe and two, fixe and three. Ten is a number by himselfe, then you must count ten and one, ten and two, ten and three, ten and foure, ten and fine. Then you count, ten, fine, and one; ten, fine, and two; ten, fine, and three. Twentie goesb by himfelfe, and all the greater numbers.

The Mexican years is three hundreth and fixin dayes, for they have in their years eighteene moneths. and enery moneth contayneth twentie dayer. They base other fine odde dayes, which goeth by themselnes. in the which they veed to celebrate great feath; of cruell and blondy facrifice, with much denotion. And reckoning after this fort they could not choose but erre, for they could not make equal the punctual course of the Sunne. Yea the Christian yeere is not perfect, although wee have learned Aftronomers. But yet these simple Indians went neere the marke.

The names of the moneths, Tiacaxipeualiztli, Tozcutzli, Huei Tozeuztli, Toxcalt, Ecalcoalizth, Tocuilhuicineli, Hucitecuilhuitl, Miccailhuicintli, Veymiccailhuitl, Vehpaniztli, Pachtli, Huei Pachtli, Quecholli, Panquecaliztli, Hatemuztli, Tititlh, Izcalli, Coa Vitleuac.

The names of Dayes, were Cipacili, A Spade; Hecatl, Aire or Winde; Call, A House; Cues Pali, A Lizzirt; Conalt, A Snake; Mizquintli, Death; Macatl, A wilde Hart; Toshili, A Cony; Atl, Water; Izcujnti, A Dogge; Osumatli, An Ape; Malinalli, A Broome; Acath, A Caue; Oceloti, A Tigre; Coanti, An Eagle; Cozcaquahuti, A Buzzard; Olin, A Temple; Tepatlb, A Knife; Quianitl, Raine; Xuchul, A Rofe.

Although the se twentie names serve for the whole years, and are but the dayes of every moneth, yet therefore enery moneth beginneth not with Cipa ali, which is the first name, but as they follow in order, 50 and the fine odde dayes is the canfe thereof. And also because their weeke is of thirteene dayes, which changeth the names, as by example, Cecipactii can goe no further then unto Matlactiomeiacatl, which is thirteene, and then beginneth mother weeke : and we doe not fay Mathaellman Oceloth, which is the fourteenth day, but wee fay Coocelotl, which is one, and then reckon the other fixe names onto twentie. And when all the twentie dayes are ended, begin againe to reck on from the first name of the twentie, but not from one, but from eight. And because yee may better understand the matter, here is the example.

Cecipactli, Omehecatl, E. Calli, Naui Cuezpali, Macuilcouatl, Chicoacen Mizquineh, Chicome Macatl, Chicuci Tochtli, Chiconauiatl, Marlaciz Cuintli, Mailactlioce Ocumatli, Matlactiome Malinalli, Matlactiomei Acatih. The next weeke following doth begin his dayes from one. And that one is the fourteenth name of the moneth and of the dayes, and fasth : Ceotelotl, Omecoaut-

60 li, Ercozca quahutli, Navi Olui, Macuil Tecpatl, Chicoacen Quantil, Chicome Xuchiel, Chicoei Cipaelli. In this second weeke, Cipaelli came to fall on the eight day , being m the first weeke the first day, Cemacatl, Ometochtli, Eiatl, Naui Izcuintli, Macuil Ocumatli. And fo proceeds on to the third weeks, in the which this name Cipactli entreth not, but Macatl, which was the fementh day in the first weeke, and had no place in the second, and is the first in the third. The reckoning is no darker then ours, which we have in a, b, c, d, e, f, g. For they also change with time, and run in such fort, that a. which was the first letter of this moneth, commeth to be the fift day of the next moneth, and the third me neth be counteth to be the third day, and so orderly doth the other sixe letters.

These Mexicans had another order to reckon their yeares, which exceeded not abone four e in number. the account as they lift. Those foure figures or names, are, Tochtli, Acatlh, Tecpath, Calli, and doe fignific a Cony, a Cane, a Kmfe, and a Honfe, faying : Ce Totchti, One yeere; Ome Acatith, Two yeeres: Ei Tecpatlb, Three yeeres; Nam Calli, Foure yeeres; Macmil Tochtli, Fine yeeres; Chioacen A. Es l'espatio, intre yeures, au montant yeures; (bienes Calb, Eight yeures; (bicomani Tocht. ii. Nine yeeres : Mailatli Acath, Ten yeeres ; Matlatlioce Tecpath, Eleuen yeeres ; Mattattliome Calli, Twelue yeeres; Matlattliomei Tocheli, Thirteene yeeres. So that the rectoning paffeth not abone thirteene, which is one weeks of the yeers, and endeth where he began.

The second weeke. Ce Acasth, one yeere; Ome Thepath, two yeeres; Es Calli, three yeeres; Nani Tochili, foure yeeres; Macuil Acath, five yeeres; Chicacen Techath, fixe yeeres; Chicame Calli, feuen yeeres; Chicaei Tochili, eight yeeres; Chiconaus Acailh, nine yeeres; Matlada li Tecpailb, ten yeeres; Matlatilioce Calle, eleuen yeeres; Matlatiliome Tocbili, twelue yeeres; Matlatiliomes Acall, thirteene yeeres. The third weeke of yeeres. Co Tespailb, one yeere : Ome Calls, two yeeres; Es Tochtis, three yeeres; Nans Acasth, foure yeeres; Macust Tecpath, fine veeres; Chicaem Calli, tixe yeeres; Chicame Tochili, leuen yeeres; Chicaei Acatib, eight yeeres; Chiconaus Tespath, nine yeeres; Matlattis Calls, ten yeeres; Matlattisome Tochtis, eleuen yeeres;

Matlatilione Acath, twelve yeeres; Matlatiliomes Tecpath, thirteene veeres.

The fourth weeke. Ce Calls, one yeere, Ome Tochili, two yeares; Es Acath, three yeares; Na. mi Tecparily, foure yeares; Macmil Calli, five yeares; Chicacen Tochtle, fix yeares; Chicane Acatch. feuen yeares; Chienes Tecpatib, eight yeares; Chiconani Calli, nine yeares; Matlatili Tochtli, ten Yeares ; Matlattlioce Acath, eleven yeares ; Matlattiome Tecpatib, twelve yeares ; Matlattiemes Calli, thirteene yeares. Each of these weekes, which our men call Indition, doth contains thirteene yeares, fo that all the foure weekes make two and fiftie yeares, which is a perfect number in their rechening, and is called the yeare of grace, for from fiftie two yeares, to fiftie two yeares, they vied to make folemme feasts, with strange, Ceremonies, as hereafter Shall be declared. And when fiftie two yeares are 20 ended, then they begin againe, by the same order before declared, untill they come to as many moe, beginning at Ce Tochtls, and fo forward. But alwayes they begin at the Conie figure. So that in the forme of reckoning they keepe and have in memory, things of eight hundred and fiftie yeares: and by this Chronicle they know in what yeare every thing hapned, and how long every Kueg reigned: how many children they bad, and all things elfe that importet b to the effate of the gonernment of the Land.

The Indians belowed that paft, which they called

The Indians of Culhua did beleene that the Gods had made the World, but they knew not how, yet they believed that fince the creation of the world foure Sunnes were past, and that the fift and last is the Sunne that now giveth light to the World, They beld opinion that the first Sunne periffed by mater, and five ages were at the same time all liming creatures perifted likewise. The second Suome (say they) fell from the heamens, with whose fall all living creatures were flaine, and then (faid they ) were many Giants in that Coun- AD trey, and certaine monstrous Bones, which our men found in opening of granes, by proportion whereof Some bould seeme to be men of twenty spans high. The third Sunne was consumed by fire, which burned day and night, so that then all living creatures were burned. The fourth Sunne finished by tempost of Agre or Winde, which blow downe Honfes, Trees, yea and the Mountaines and Rockes were blowen a Sunder, but the linage of Mankinde perished not fasting that they were conserted into Apes. And touching the fift Sunue, which now raigneth, they know not how it shall consume. But they fay, that when the fourth Sunne perished, all the world fell into darkenesse, and so remained for the space of fine and twenty yeares consmually, and at the fifteenth yeare of that fearefull darkenesse, the Gods did forme one man and woman, who brought forth children, and at the end of the other ten yeares, appeared the Sunne which was newly borne upon the figure of the Conic day, and therefore they begin their account en of yeares at that day, and reckening from the yeare of our Lord 1552 their age or Sunne is 858. so that it appearreth that they have vied many yeares their writing in figures: and they had not onely this vie from Cetocili, which is the beginning of their yeare, moneth, and way, of their fifth Sunne, but also they had the same order and vie in the other foure Sunnes which were past : but they let many things slip out of memory, saying that with the new Sunne, all other things should be likewise new. They held also opinion, that three dayes after this last Sun appeared, all the godt did dye, and that in processe of time, the oods which now they bane, and worship were borne.

The Corona-

Although one brother was betre to another among the Mexicans, and after their decease, did inherit the Soune of the eldest Brother yet they tooke no possession of the state or name of King, until they were an-Kings of Mex- nointed and crowned openly.

As foone as any King of Mexico deceased, and his Funerals ended, then were called to Parliament 60 the Lord of Tezcuco and the Lord of Tlacopan, who were the chiefest estates, and then in order all other Noblemen, who owed any fermice to the Mexican Empire. And being come together; if any doubt of the in-

heritance of the Crome bappened, then the matter was decided with all hafte: then the new Kong being knowne, he was ftripped farke naked, except a cloath to comer his primie parts, and in this fort was carried among them to the great Temple of Vitzilopuchtli with great filence, and without any soy or plea-(ure: Two Gentlemen of the (tie, whole office it was led him up the staires of the Temple by the armes. and before him went the Princes of Tezcuco and Tiacopin, who that day didweare their raches of Coronation, whereupon was painted their armes and title. Veriefew of the Laitie went up into the Chappels, but onely those that were appointed to attive the new King, and to serve in other Ceremonies, for all the relidue freed upon the steps and below, to behold the Coronation. These Magistrates being above in the Chappell, came with great bumility and renerence, kneeling downe upon their knees before the Idoll 10 of Vitzilopucheli, and touched the earth with one finger and then kiffed the same. Then came the bieb

Priest cloubed in his pontificall vestments, with many others in his company, who did weare Surplices: and without speaking any word, they painted or coloured the Kings person, with Inke made for the perpofe, as blacke as any coale. After this Ceremonie done, they bleffed the amointed King, and fprinkled The cintments bum four etimes with a certaine boly water, that was made at the time of confecration of the God, made of done or pake, with a fprinkle made of bower of Cane leanes, Cedar, and Willow leanes. Then they put voon his head, sloth painted with the bones and fenls of dead men, and next they cloathed him with a blacke garment, or upon that another blew, and both were painted with the figures of dead mens sculs and bones. Then they put about his necke certaine laces, whereat did hang the armes of the Crowne. And behinde his back they did hang certain listle bottels full of powders, by vertue wherof he was delinered from peftilence and difeafes , according to their opinion : yea, and thereby Witches, nor Witcherafts could not bure him. nor ret enill men deceine him. In fine, with those relicks he was sure from all perill and danger. Upon his

left arme they bound a little bagge of Incense, and then brought unto him a chaffing dish of mibers made of the parke of an Oke tree. Then the King grofe, and with his owne hand threw of the fame Incente. into the chaffing -dish, and with great reverence brought the same to the god Vitzilopuchili, and after be bad (monked him therewith, he fat him draine, then came the high Priest and tooke his oath to maintaine the religion of the gods, to keepe alfo all the lawes and customes of his predecessours, to maintaine instice and not to an granate any of his vasfals or subjects, and that he should be valiant in the warres, that be should cause the Sunne to give his light, the clouds to yeelde raine, the riners to runne, and the earth to bring forth all kinds of grains, fruites, and other needlfull hearbs and trees. Thefe and many o-30 ther impossible things the new King did sweare to performe and then be game thankes to the high Priest,

and commended himselfe to the gods, and to the lookers on, and they who brought him up in the same order, earrieth him downe againe. Then all the people cried, the God's preferue the new King, and that he may raigne many yeares in health with all his people. But then some began to dance, other to play on their instruments; Shewing outwardly their inwardinger of beart. And before the King came to the foote of the steps, all the Noblemen came to reelde their obedience, and in token of louing and faithfull subjects, they professed onto him Feathers, frings of Smaile shels, Callers, and other lewels of Gold and Silver, alfo Mantels painted with death, and bare bine company unto a great hall within the compasse of the Temple, and there left him. The King sitteth downe under his cleath of estate, called Tlacatecco, and in foure dayes departeth not out of the circuit of the Temple, the which hee fpends in 40 prayers, facrifice, and penance; he eates then but once a day, and enery day be bathes himselfe, and a-

gaine in the night in a great pond of water, and then lets himfelfe blond in his cares, and fenfeth therewith the god of water, called Tlaloc : be likewife fenfeth the other Idols, unto whom he offereth Bread, Flowers, Papers, and little Canes, died in the bloud of his owne tongue, nofe; hands, and other parts of his body. After the foure dayes expired, then come all the Noblemen to beare him company to his Pallace with great triumph and pleasure of all the Catie, but after his consecration few or none dare looke

And now with the declaration of the Alls and Ceremonies that the Mexican Kings are crowned, I shall not needs to rebearse of other Kings, for generally they all doe use the same order, saving that other Princes goe not up to the top of the Temple, but abide at the foote of the fleps to be crowned, and 30 after their Coronation they come to Mexico for their confirmation , and then at their returne to their Country, they made many drunken feasts and banquets.

The Mexicans did beleeve that the Soule was immortal, and that they received either ioy or paine of the Mexiaccording to their deferts and lining in this world, unto which opinion all their religion did attaine, and consconers chiefly appeare at their burials. They held for an affured faith, that there were nine places appointed ning the Soule for foules, and the chiefest place of glory to be neere unto the Sunne, where the foules of those which Nine places were good men flaine in the warres, and those which were facrificed were placed, and that all other forts for Soules. of entil per fons their foules abode on the earth, and were denided after this fort, children that were dead bornement to one place, those which died of age or other disease went to another, those which died of sudden death to another, those which died of wounds or contagions difeases went to another place, those which

60 were drowned went to another, those which were put to death for offence by order of Instice, a for robbery and adultery to another: Those which flew their Fathers, Mothers; Wines or Children, to another place by themselves: also those who slew their Masters or any religious person went to another place. The common fort of people were buried, but Lords and rich men had their bodies burned, and their ashes birried. In their forondes they had a great difference, for many dead bodies were buried bester apparel-

led then when they were on line. Women were shrowded after another fort. And hee that suffered death for adultery, was stronded like unto the God of lecherie, called Tlazoulteutl; he that was drowned like unto the god of water, named Tlacoc; and he that died with drunk enneffe was forowded like unto the god of wine, called Ometochtli. But the Souldier had an honorable shronde like vito the attire of Vizilopuch: li, and the like order in all other forts of deaths.

When any King of Mexico happened to fall sicke, they wsed forthmith to put a visor wpon the face of Tezestinosca, or Vitzilopuchti, or some other Idoll, which Visor was not taken away, untill they saw whether the King did amend, or elfe dye: But if be chanced to dye, then word was fent throughout all his Dominions to bemaile his death, and also other postes were fent to call the Noblemen that were his nighest kinsmen, and to warne them within foure daies to come unto his bursall.

The dead body was laid upon a faire Mat, and was watched four enights, with great lamentation and mourning: then the body was washed, and a locke of haire cut from the crowne of his head, which was preserved as a great relicke, saying that therein remained the remembrance of his soule. This done, a fine Emerald was put in his month, and his body strowded in seventeene rich Mantels, of colours, both rich and coftly wronght. Vpon the upper Mantle was fet the denife or armes of Vitzilopuchtli or Tezcalipuca, or some other Idoll, in whom the King had great considence in his life time, and in his Temple (hould the body be buried. Upon his face they put a visor, painted with fonle and Denilish ieflures, befet with many lewels, Precious stones, and Pearles, Then they killed his fline, whose office was to light the Lampes, and make fire unto the gods of his Pallace. Thefe things done, they carried the dead body unto the Temple : some followed bem with dolefull tune, others fung the death of the King by note for so was 20

The Noblemen and Gentlemen of his houshold carried Targets, Arrowes, Males, and Enfiones to throw into the fire where the body should be buried in the Temple. The high Priest and all the Clergie received him at the Temple gate, with a forrowfull fong, and after he had faid certaine words, the body was throne into a great fire made for the purp fe, with all the lewels that he had about him, and all the other things which was brought to honour the buriall: also a Dogge newly strangled with an Arrow, which was to quide him his way. In the meane while that the King and Dogge were burning the Priests facrificed two hundred persons, howbest in his Ceremonie there was no ordinary taxe, for sometimes they sacreficed many moe : they were opened with a Rasor of flint in the breasts, and their hearts taken out and throwne into the fire where the Kings body was. These miserable persons being sacrificed, and 30 their bodies throwne into a bole; they beleened affuredly that those should serve for his slaves in another world : some of them were Dwarffes , monstrous and deformed persons , with some women. They placed about the dead body of the King before his buriall, Ruses, Flowers, and sundrie diffes of meate and drinke, and no creature durft touch the same, but onely the Priests, for it seemed to be an offering.

The next day following, all the after were gathered together, and the teeth with the Emerald that was in his moush, the which things were put into a Cheft, painted on the infide with horrible figures of demils, and the locke of haire which was cut from his crowne, and another locke of haire which was preferued from the time of his birth. Then the Cheft was lockt, and an Image of wood made and cleathed like unto the Kings person, which was set on the top of the Chest. The obsequies endured source dayes, in 40 the which the wines and daughters of the King offered great offerings at the place where his body was buried, and before the Chest and his Image.

On the fourth day after the bursall, fifteene flaues were facrificed for his foule; and on the twentieth day, other fine persons were also sacrificed; likewise on the fixtie three and four escore, which was like vinto

The Kingdome of Michuacan is almost as great as the Empire of Mexico, and when any King of that Countrey happened to be vifited with fickneffe, and brought to fuch extremitie, that hope of life were past, according to the opinion of Philitions, then would be name and appoint which of his Sonnes (bould inherite the estate; and being knowne, the new King or heire, incontinent sent for all the Gouernours, Captaines, and valuant Souldiors, who had any office or charge to come unto the buri- 50 all of hu Father, and he that came not, from thenceforth was held for a Traitour, and so punished. When the death of the old King was certaine, then came all degrees of Estates and brought presents to the new King , for the approbation of his Kiegdome , but if the King were not throughly dead , but at the point of death, then the gates were fout in , and none permitted to enter ; and when his life was departed, then began a generall cry and mourning, and they were permitted to come where their dead King lay, and to touch him with their hands : this being done, the carkaffe was welled with sweete waters, and then a fine thirt put upon him, and a paire of spooes made of a Decre skinne put on his feete, and about his anciles were tied certaine Bels of Gold, about his wristes of his hands were put Manillias of Turkies, and other Bracelets of Gold, likewife about his neckether hung other collers of precious stones, and gold, and rings in his eares, with a great Turkise in his neather lippe. 60 Then his body was laid upon a large beere, whereon was placed a good bed under him: on his one file lay a Bowe with a quiner of Arrowes, and on his other sidelay an Image made of fine Mantels of his owne stature or bighnesse, with a great tusse of sine seathers, shoots voon his seet, with Bracelets, and a coller of gold. While his worke was a doing, others were bused in majoing the men and we

men which should be staine for to accompany him into Hell: these wretched folke that should be staine were banqueted and filled with drinke, because they should receive their death with lesse paine. The new King did appoint these who should die for to serve the King bis Father, but yet many of them had rether have beene without bis fernice, notwithit anding some simple soules esteemed that odious death for a thing of immortall glory. First, seven Gentlewomen of noble parentage were appointed to die, the one to have the office of keeper of his lemels which he was wons to weare, another for the office of Cup-beaver, another to give him water with a Bason and Ewer, another to give him alwayes the Vrinall, another tobe his Cooke, and another to serve for Laundresse. They see also many woman-slanes, and free maiding, for to attend upon the Centlewomen, and moreover, one of every occupation muthin the

10 Citie. When all thefe that were appointed to die were malked, and their bellies full with meate and drinke, then they parnted their faces yellow, and put garlands of sweete flowers upon each of their beads. Then they went in order of procession before the beere whereon the dead King was carried, some mens playing on Instruments made of Snatles (hels, others played upon bones and shels of Sea-iurtils, others went whistling, and the most part weeping: the Sonnes of the dead King and other Noblemen carried upon their boulders the Beere where the Course lay, and proceeded with an easie pace toward the Temple of the god Curicaueri: his tenfinen went round about the Beere, finging a forroufull long. The officers and houshold servants of the Court with other Magistrates and Kulers of ma flice bare the Standarts and disers other armes.

About midnight they departed in the order aforefaid, out of the Kings pallace, with great light of 20 fire brands, and with a beame noise of Trumpets and Drummes. The Citizens which dwell where the Corfe passed, attended to make cleane the freete. And when they were come to the Temple, they went force times round about a great fire mide of the wood of Pine tree, which was prepared to himse the dead body: then the Beere was laid upon the fire, and in the meane while that the body was burning, ther mawled with a club isofe which had the Garlands, and afterward buried them by foure and foure,

The next day in the morning, the alber, bones and lewels, was gathered and laid open a rich Mantle, the which was carried to the Temple gate, where the Priests attended to blesse those denetish relickes, whereof they made a dough or palle, and thereof an Image which was apparelled like a man, with a visor on his face, and allother forts of levels that the dear King was wont to weare, fo that it feemed a gal-

30 lant Idol. As the force of the Temple flaves they opened a grane ready made, which was fquare, large, and two fadous deepe it was also hanged with new Mass round about, and a faire bed therein, in the which arelytions man placed the Idol made of a hes with his eyes toward the East part, and hing round about the male, Targets of Gold and Stlarr, with Bowe and Arrowes, and many gallant tuffes of Feathers, with earthen vessels, as Pots, Dishes, and Platters, so that the grave was filled up with boushold flusse. Chest's concred with Leather, Apparell, Ieweis, Meace Drinke, and Armor. This done, the grane was fout vp, and made fure with be ames, boords, and flored with earth on the top.

All those Gentlemen which had serned or conched any thing in the buriall, washed themselves, and went to dinner in the Court or yard of the Kingt house without any table, and having dired, they wiped their bands upon certaine locks of Cotten woll, banging downe their heads, and not speaking any word, ex-& cept it were to aske for dricks. This Ceremonie endured fine dayes, and in all that time no fire was permutted to be kindled in the Citie, except in the Kings boule and Temples, nor yet any Corne was ground, or Market kept, nor none durit goe out of their bouses, soewing all the fortow that might be possible for

In Mexico were twelve ludges, who were all Noblemen, grave, and well learned in the Mexican ludgess Lawes. These men lined onely by the rents that properly appertaine to the maintenance of Instice, and in any cause undeed by them, it was lansfull for the parties to appeale unto other twelve ludges, who were of the Princes bloud, and alwayes abode in the Court, and were maintained at the Kings owne coff and charges. The inferiour ludges came ordinarily once enery moneth to confult with the by her. And and consect. Lo conference in neget with visuality who every moments we compute with one on yet. And it entery four-flowed days came the ladges of enery Province within the Mexican Empire, to confull multi-the ladges of Mexico, but all doubtfull carfes were referred to the King, and so pelfe by his

order and determination. The Painters ferned for notaries, to paint all the cafes which were to be refol. Painters. ned, hat no su te passed abone sourescore dayes without finall end and determination. There were in that Citie twelue Sergeams, whose office was to arrest, and to call parties before the ludges. Their gar - Sergeams. ments were painted Mentels, whereby they were knowned a farre off. The Prisons were under ground, Prisons, moss and darke, the cause whereof, was to put the people in sear to offend. If any mitnesse were called to take an oath, the order was, that he floudd touch the ground with one of his fingers, and then to Witnesses and touch is soone with the same, which servited that he had sworne and promised to seade the treek much cathes. his toughe, taking witnesse thereof, of the earth which did maintaine him. But some doe interprete the outh that if the partie for the not true, that then be might come to fuch extremitie, as to eate earth. Some-

tine they name and call upon the God of the crime, whose canse the matter touched, ne the name evacuar you are wany on.

The large to at about bridge or gets, is forthurate put out of the office, which was accounted a most Bibery, tile and brownial reproseds. The Indian dud affirms that Necessitymeint did hang a Inige in Teawe am order of a range senerate, be bunglife become the contrary. The Montherer is executed Murther.

Disguise of sexe, private Duells, wilfull abortion, coc, Capitall. LIB.V.

1140 Theft. Difquife of

Ducls capitall.

without exception. The woman with childe that wilfully casteth her creature, suffereth death for the fame. The Theefe for the first offence, was made a stane, and hanged for the second. The Traitor to the King and Common weale, was put to death with extreame torments. The Woman taken in Mans apparell died for the same, and likewise the Man taken in Womans attire. Euery one that challengeth another to fight, except in the warres, was condemned to dye. In Textuco the sume of Soudomie

nonince to jugo: except in one warres, was consummed a varye, in a ECULOO to ejume of Soide mas passified with death, and that Law was infiltrated by Necaslajinizinti, and Necasual Coio who were ladged, which abborred that filty finne, and therefore they deferred great praise, for in other Promines that abborninable deferred great praise, for in other Promines that abborninable finne was not punished, although they bane in

those places common Stewes, as in Panuco.

The end of the fift Booke.

ENG.





## AN ALPHABETICALL TABLE OF THE PRIN-CIPALL THINGS CONTAI

NED IN THE FIVE BOOKES

of the third Part of PVRCHAS

his Pilgrims.

The first Number notes the Pages, the second Number directs you to the number noted in the back-margent of the Pages, Right against which or betwirt that and the next number, the note is to bee found. Observe, that whereas many words may bee well written with I. or with Y. the Reader is to looke to both. Observe also, that Name of Saints or Knights, are not set under S. but in the cilphabet of their proper Names.



accu,is the Caspian Sea, 69.60. The largenesse of it,

bafeia, or Habafe fia, a Ind:a media, 106.50. in Marg. Richer 252.60

Abedalcuria. Abortion confed by an Herbe ,991. Acapulco, the Pronince and Port in the West Indies ; the Latitude,

Acias or Akas : fo the Tartars call the Alanian Christians, 10. 10. Enemies to the Tartars, 12.40 Achbaluch Mangi, which in Tartars Language is , the White Cstie of the Mangi, Acornes as big as Apples, \$20 50

Accents the Chinois bane fine fene-384.20 Accounts cast by graines of Corne,

Accord betweene Poles and Ruffes, about chusing their Emperour, 788.789

Acquaintance the Ceremony of be-Acacron the Armenian Prophet,

Acon the Citie; Arabicke and Syriack underflood there, 13.50 Adams Sepulcher in Zeilan, 106. 1. More of that Fable, Adams-Apples grow in Perlia, 71.

Adders of India, their fenerall forts and natures. Adem, the Soldan of it difcomficed,

Admirals Iland, 474.40. Sea berfestbere, Adoration, the manner of it in

Mexico, 1027. 30. & 1028.1. **€** 1046.60 Adoption practifed in Ruffia, 740.

Adulterie panished with Death in 1058.40 Adultreffes Dowries ginen to poore Girles, 276-10 Adulterie & Witaldrie, the punish-

Adulterers bow punished in Chi-Edger the King, his mighte Namie,619.40. Emperour of the O.

Egeland and Halgeland discone-

Equinoctiall, under it moyst and raynie, and why, 918. 40. Nos fo bo: as the Antients held it: very sold in March, saufes of Aingharan the Region,

the temperature though the Summe bee very bate ; the dayer and nights equall, 920. No Calmes under the Line, 923. 60. 926. The Are wider or neerest fwifter then the Ayre about the Poles, and why, 929. 30. Es-fterne and Westerne winder continuall under the Lina, 925.40. See Torride Zone.

Agrinoctiall, whisher healthfull lining under it; Æthiopian Patriarch, Affirmtie in a different Sirname binders not Matrimonie to China,

Age, forbe Saracens file the Mccca

Age, much honoured in China, 293. 1.0 369.20. Olde Age begins Age of three bundred yeres attained

to in the West Indies, 875.20 Ages of the world, the Mexicans represent by so many Sunner, 1125. 40. Their odde opinions. thereabout,

Agilitie of the Mexicans, excel-Ague, a Soueraigno Ayre for the Cure of st. A jax or Grazzo, the Hauen, where.

abouts,

Uldil' & DEGISE AL TESTERIT & COURSE 50. stoff in the Sea, found a-40. Of Gothland, Finland Amacao m China, mbat, 219. 20 Acias or Akas, they are Chri-Kuenland, Anchorites in China, 6337.40 Stress of the Greeke Church. The Portugals build a Cure Ants of India, their admin 199 Ancon an Iland dispeopled, 308. They vie Greeke Bookes. They there; it is made a Bishops Sea, tifring themfelust again pray for the Dead. A simple ibid. How situated, Beares. pe ple, 10.10.20 Aman a Citie in Sytia taken for Andabaylas the Province in Peru. Ants of West India, took Albama the Countrey, where, 16. the Christians, the Temple of the Sunne in it, feme are porfes, 996. 104 Amathitis a Mine of them, where, bart they decabled, Sc 95 7 Albeafe or Albeas, one of the King-Andanico and Azzaio Mmeralis. 901.50 Spaniards cheefe a Sam Amazones, where antiently, 55.1 domes of Georgia. Albis a Riwhere. tren against them, Andes the Mountaines of India. wer of Illand, Amber store of it in Bratill; bow 656.I Apes as Peru, on the Mount Albert or Albior the Mountaine, the dinersitie of their tempera-903.49 Apes perfumed in Bottes, aus 110.30 Amber great store and great ture, length, Beasts, Soyle, &c. Alcatraz, an Indian Cormorant depreces, whose, 615. 60. A 831. 50. 887. 20. 30. Conered for Pigmeyes, 103.40. H scribed. Frogge inclosed in a peece of it, with Snow, where : their March, bigge as men, Alchim e much findred in Chini, Apoitles Pilleres marged Amber caten by the King of China, i 369.30. And doted upon, 396. Angaman, where Men have Dogges to sustaine life. Apparell of the Chiecis, 186.50 beads. Amber liquid, where, 878.40 Ale of Rie, 616.50 Angle lines of it bale finnes, Ane Gownes . Apparell of Tartars, Alehouses in Russia pay tribute. Ambergreece taken in the Whale, gle hookes of Fish bones in 429.30. The wicked abuses there-Apparell of the Ruffiams, M place where it lies, and the co-Groenland, 710.30 \$ 471.50 Anian Streights, fome fabulomre-Women. 2:00ec, 431.40 Aleppo monne by the Taitars, Ambaffadours bom entersawed by pores of them; 848. 60. 6 853. Apparell the verference of the Crim Tartars, 639.40.50 20. A note of them by Mafter Pera. Alhacen bis Storie of Tamerlane, Ambaffadours diners resident in the Apparell of Fife Amis Lo ke, 849.50. Discouered by Tartarian Court: a Greeke Pilos for the Spini-140.40 Appeales may so the Enge Amballadours anme feit menifet Allaying of Silver the cursofice, ards : bopes of the North-west Ruffia. with Death by the Tarrars, 8. to 951.40 Paffage that way, the asscription Apples of India poplance Allen, the Fowle in Greenland, the Their libertie of fresch in Tartaand wideneffe of them, rower purfamed wash show nature of it; 713.40 Anian Iland by China, the many feits thoje that flore im Almanaches m China, . 246.10 Ambailadours bow bonoured and Forts and Pearle-fishings there, Almesfor the Dead in China, 274. Tree. primiledged in China, 189, 10 Apram, or a drinks of Charm 1.20.30 Ambassadours bow entertained in Anill or Indico , bow it groves, Almes the Chinois will gme none, in Tartarie. Aqua-vitz, a Role Wate, Amhaliadour, when first fent hither 175.20 Annoynting, the King of Not-Arabacha she Tarentan, i Almonds of Coco Nats, Marchfrom Rutha, ... Way annoyted at his Coronation, follow of Cherth, Amballages counterfeu to China, pane made of them. 958.50 Arabian Letters ofed in Cl Allome in Turkie, forestalled by the Annointing of the Mexican Kings 314-30 Italians, America Disconcred, in 61,62, & \$1.30 Arabicke Letters in Turq Allome feperates Gold from Draffe, 63. Degrees, the Coast and Sea-Answere a firange one of a Mahufous there deferibed 811. In 64. Aracci she Plane. Alphabet of Gotish Letters, 6,8 Antarticlee Starre the Indians faile Degrees, 823.20. Frost there in Ararat is not all Artren Alphabet the Chinois bane none. Iuly, 811.60. Aw. Hand there by, and not by the Compasse, 139. 384.40. ner Syllabies, st 55. Degrees 20. Monutes, 812. Ararat Mountaines, aim 196 Altaithe Mountaine, where all the Antereda the Ile, 123.30 red with Seem. Tartar Princes are burged, 78. America first discourred by the Anthonie March, bis diligence for Araxis the River, 49. 17. English before Columbus, 808. the Discouring to the River and Cu ,49.20. The bo Altarsin the Ruffian Courch, 450. Ob. 804.805 S. Anthonies, the West of Cuba, America described by Herrara, Arbor Secon, whee, 68.: Aitars and Altar Chathes on Cinbons much of it under the Spani-858. The best way the ice to ards, 8.6. How farre disconethe Port of Saint Iohn de Vlua, Archbishop of Natrofia Altars in China rewerensed, red, by the Spaniards, and by the S.S.60 English, 857. 1. and in margent, Antigur liands, 260.43 Archbithops of Ruffia 4 Altar mu Fort the Nestorians bad. Antients or Enfignes, of Silkers The Seas of 11, the Spanish No to the two Metropol tal 37.40 aigations, Course and Customes they to the Patracet, 44 Altar of Leather. ibid. in them 3 . 8. Named by a wrone Antioch wenne from the Christians

## Difguife of fexe, private Duells, wilfull abortion, ere. Capitall. LIB.V.

Theft.

without exception. The momens with childs that wilfully calletels her creature, fuffereth death for the fame. The Theofe for the first of since, was made a flowe, and housed for the fecond. The Trains to the King and Commons-weed; we age to death who extremen terments, Their manaches in Managarel diad for the fame, and thereing to Man taken in Womans attire. Eury one that challenged apparel diad for the fame, and thereing to Man taken in Womans attire. Eury one that challenged autocher to fight, except in the warrer, was condemned to she, it Texacoo the fines of Sodomie was been also also the death of the their control of the she was a made in the state.

Ducls capitall.

malcoio, who were ludget, which abborred that filthy finne, and therefore they malection are praif, for in other Prossuces that abborrenable finne was not paroifled, although they have in

finne was not punished, although toey band shofe places common Stewes, as in Panuco.

The end of the fift Booke.

ENG.





# AN ALPHABETICALL TABLE OF THE PRINCIPALL THINGS CONTAI

NED IN THE FIVE BOOKES

of the third Part of PVRCHAS

his Pilgrims.

The first Number notes the Pages, the second Number directs you to the number noted in the back-margent of the Pages, Right against which or betwire that and the next number, the note is to be found. Observe, that whereas many words may be ewell written with 1. or with Y. the Reader uso looks to both. Observe also, that Name of Saints or Knights, are not set under S. bat in the Alphabet of their proper Names.



Baccu, is the Caspian Sea, 69.60. The targenesse of u,

Abassia, or Habassia, or Habass

Abortion canfed by an Herbe, 991.

40
Acapalco, the Promines and Port in
the West Indies; the Latitude,

Acias or Aleas; fo the Tartats call the Alanian Corritaris, 10.10. Enemies to the Tartat, 10.10. Achbaluch Mangi, which in Tartars Lenguage is, the White Cotie of the Mangi, Acomes in the samples, 200,00 Acomes in the samples, 200,00 Acomes for Chimois have for fewer-

rall, 384.20
Accounts east by graines of Corne,
1053.50
Accord betweene Poles and Russes,

about chufing their Emperous, 788.789
Acquaintance the Ceremony of beginning it, 374

gaming it, 374 Acacron she Armenian Prophet, 49.50

Acon the Citia : Arabicke and Syriack undarflood there, 13-50 Adams Sepulcher in Zeilan, 106. n. More of that Fabte, ibid. Adams Apples grow in Perlia, 71.

Adders of India, their fenerall forts and unteres, 976.1 Adem, the Soldan of it discomined,

Admirals Iland, 474.40. Sea berfassbere, 522 Admirals Iland, 474.40. Sea berfassbere, 522

Mexico, 1027. 30. & 1028.1. & 1046.60 Adoption practifed in Russia, 740.

Adulterie punifical with Death in Peru, 1058,40 House 1058,40 Adultreffes Dowries ginen to poore Gitles, 276 To Adulterie & Wasaldrie, the punification wast, 182,40 Adulterers bow punifical in Chi-

na, 204.10
Adgar the King, his unightie Naunie,619.40. Europerous of the Ocoas.

Egeland and Halgeland discour-

Equinoctiall, under it mosts and raynie, and why, 918. 40. Wes fo be: as the Assistants beld it: very cold in March, canfes of

the temperature, though the Swam bee very hote; the dayse and night: equal, 9.0. No Calanks wader the Line, 9.33, 6b. 9.05. The Aye under or nearest: furfier then the Ayer about the Poles, and why, 9.23, 3.04. Enferre and Wifferne winder contimual wader the Line, 92.5, 40. Set Torside Zuer.

Ecpinoctiall, whisher healthfull liung under it; 889.10 Echiopian Partiereb, 3 27.30 Affiritie in a different Sirname binders not Matrimonie tu China,

Age, fo the Saracens file the Mecca Pilgrims, 311 Age, much honoured in China, 393. 1.6: 369.20. Olde Age begins

at fiftie,
Age of three hundred yere attended
to, in the West Indies, 875.20
Ages of the world, the Mexicans
represent by so many Sunnes,
1136.40. Their odde opinions,

thereabout, ibid.
Agilitic of the Mexicans, excellent, 1865, 10
Ague, a Soueraigns Ayre for the

Cure of st, 73.60
Aijax or Giazzo, the Hauen, mberes
abouts, 51.40
Aingharan the Region, 312.10

•••

Aini, the Citte in Armenia, 50. Altine Kingdome, 797. 50. Called Amida, the Isponians God, 326.40 Artafi wher, or Chinefe, 319. 50. CT 300.40 Alami a people of Turturi ; called Acias or Akas, they are Chri-Strass of the Greeke Church. They vie Greeke Bookes. They pray for the Dead, A simple people, 10,10,20 Albania the Countrey, where, 16. Albeafe or Albeas, one of the Kingdomes of Georgia. Albis a Riser of fland. 656.1 Alberisor Albier the Mountaine. Alcatraz, an Indian Cormorant deforibed, Alcirim e much findred in China. 369.30. And deted upon, 296. 616.50 Ale of Ric. Alchouses in Ruffia pay tribute, 429.30. The wicked abuses there-Aleppo moune by she Taitars, Alhacen bis Storie of Tamerlane. 140.40 Allaying of Silmen she careficie, 951.40 Allen the Fowle in Greenland the nature of ## 713.40 Almenuches m China, 346.10 Almeofor the Dead in China, 274. . ... . . . . . 1.20.30 Almes the Chinois will gme none, 175-20 Almonds of Coco Nats , March. nate made of them, 958.50 Allome in Turkie, forefialled by the Italians, er.20 Allome feperates Gold from Draffe, Alphabet of Gotilh Leners, 658 Alphabet the Chinois bane none, . 384.40. nor Syllables, ibid. Altai the Mountaine, where all the Tartar Princes are burged\_78. Altarsin the Ruffian Church, 450. 20452 Alters and Alter Chathes in Chi-296,30 Altars in China remerenced, 65 --262.1 Altarin B Fort the Neftorians bad.

Altar of Leather, bid,

Alteene Ruffian Come woorth fine

peuce,416.1. See alfo page,552.

the galden King, Spic. His Late Amu the Pronnec, much Gald bere, mandraped. Has Country or by Amacao in China, what, 319.30 The Portugals build a Cite there; it is made a Bishops Sea, ibid. How fitnated. Aman a Citie in Syria taken for the Christians. 123.60 7 Amathilts a Mine of them, where, 901.50 Amazones, where unthently, 55.1 Amber fore of it in Brafill; bow gatten, Amber great flore and great peter, where, 613. 60.7 A Frogge suclosed in a peece of it, Amber eaten by the King of China, to Instaine life, 186.50 Amber liquid, where, 878,40 Ambergreece taken in the Whale. place where it lyes, and the co. lenr, 710.30 5 471.48 Ambaffilours bom entertainen iby the Crim Tartars, 639.40.76 Ambaffadours divers resident in the Tartarian Courte 5 49140 Amhalladours minter feie mit ibe with Death by the Tarrares 8. to Their libertie of freich in Place Tie, " and Ambassadours bow beneared and printedged se China, 1850 ro Ambaffadours bow emercained in Ruffis, 747 Amhaliadour, when first fene buber fromRutha ... 272 Amballages counterfoit to China, \$14-70 America Difconered, in 61,62, & 62. Degrees, the Coast and Seafons there de feribed, 85 t. 40 60. Degrees 823.20, Frost there in Inty. 8 11.60. As Hand there m 54. Degrees 20. Monutes \$12. America first discourred by the English sefere Columbes, 808. America defented by Hereiva, bow much of it under the Spaniards. 896. How farre sifeene red, by the Spaniards, and by the English, 857.1. and in margens,

. The Seas of is; the Spanish Na

aigations, Course and Cultimes

inchem, 854 Maned by a wrong

America, weds flowered within land.

866.1

918.60

Antiquities; the Chinois Androns

395.1

Antiquities

Father,

20 Ì

Anchors Waed for a flogt, 241. Antiquities forms of Norway : 646. gaine, Kuenland, Anchorites in China, 6337-40 Ants of India, their admirable for-Ancon an Iland dispeopled, 308. Beares, Andabaylas the Pronince in Peru. the Temple of the Sunne in it, 893.60 Andanico and Azzaio Mmeralls. mber a Andes the Mountaines of India. Apes in Peru, on the Mennesines the denerfitie of their temperature, length, Beasts, Soyle, &c. 881. 50. 887. 20. 30. Conered with Snow, where : their March, bigge as men, Angaman, where Men have Dogges beads. Angle lines of 11 bale finnes .- Ace gle bookes of Filb bones m Groenland. Aman Streights, fome fabulous repores of chem; 848. 60. 6 8et. 20. At more of them by Maker Pero. Locke, 849.50. Discouered by a Greeke Pilos for the Spiniards : bopes of the North-well Paffare that way, the asfermion and wideneffe of them, 850 Anian Hand by China, the many . Forts and Pearle-filbings there, Tree, Amill or Indico , bow it groves, in Tartarie, Annoynting, the King of Nor-way annoyted at his Commation, foffen of Christ, Annointing of the Mexican Kings YOCO. 10 Antwese a frange one of a Mahu-Aracci she Plaine, Antarcielle Biarre ibe Indians fayle by, and not by the Compaffe, 139. Antereda the Ile. 123.10 Anthonie March, bis diligence for red with Snow, the Discouring to the River Ob, 804.805
S. Anchomies, the West of Cubs, 878. The best way thence to the Port of Saint Iohir de Vlaz, 8 8.60 Antique Hands. Antients or Enfigner, of Silke in China, Antioch wente from the Christians Their renewers. the occasion.

Antiquities of the Indians, foolifbly burnt by the Spaniards, 105220 40, Of Gothland, Finland, and 659.660 tifying themfelues against the 978 Ants of West India, their forts: fame are perfen, 996.10. The burt they decibid, & 997 The Spaniarda cheefe a Saint-Patron againit chem, and am 1998 Apes perfumed in Baxes, and fauld for Pigmeyes, 103.40. Where at 106.10 Apoltics Pilimes imitated in Chi-Apparell of the Chinois, like long Gownes, 36 Apparell of Tartars, 6.20 Apparell of she Ruftians, Men and .... 13410 Apparell the uniformitie of it. in : 1058.10 Apparell of Fifb skimmes, 692. Appeales enely to the Emperous in Apples of India poylonous: Ar-rowes payloned with them: : in-felts those that flespe wader the Apram, or a drinks of Charmonilke. Aqua-vita, & Ruffe Wire, 459.1 Arabacha the Tarcarian, his Con-1. 39.60 Arabian Letters ofed in Chalden 110.50 Arabicke Letters in Turqueffan Ararat is not all Armenia, 55-. 16 Ararat Mountaines, alwares cone-Araxis the River, 49. 10. Meeter with Cut 49.20. The bead of it. Arbor Secco, where, 68.30. & 70. 50, & 72.20 Archbishop of Nidrosia . Nor-Archbishops of Ruffia 4. Inferiour to the two Metropolitans : as they to the Patriarch, 446. 301 Church. 147.10 Arches in building, the manner in Armenia; Haithon the King ga- Conquests,

Arches triumphally common in Chia Ba Sweets, 200.8c 370.300.1/n one Street, Archmandrites of Ruffis , 760. Architect reverded was leffe of Eyes. Ardoc . River, 236. 20. & 237. Arequa or Arequiera, fore Tree, to China. Acequipa Citie in Peru, the Laniatinde, diffance from other places, Inhabitants , natine Commedities, (ubiell to Earthanakes,etc. 800.10 Arethmeticke in China, an odde way for it, 234.2. Europazis Arethmeticke first eaught them, Arethmeticke of the Mexicans; ... 1135.20 Argiron, a Citie in Armenia, 69. Argon & King of India, 68.4 Sends for a Wife ince Cathaya, ibid. Hee dyes before fhee came, 68.20 Arima the Kingdome, 322.30 Arious a Towns in Bastin, through which the Voles runner, the mouner of Boates there, 777 Ariftocracie, the old Government Illand, Arithotles errour about the Torride Zone, 929.10. Some of bis Rules descuffed, 921,20.&c. Armadillos, a West Indian Beast Armes of the Ruffians, Horfe and Armes of the Prenince of Aucheo. 201.1 Armenof the King renerenced, 392. Armes or Enfigues of the Kings of Peru, 1027-30 Armer or Enfigues of Mexico, 1004.50.0 1006.10 Armenia the Greater, called Araxat of the River Araxis,49.10. Two Kings 19. Verfes, 45. & 37. Expounded. Armenia the Leffer is Cilicia, 52. Armenia the Leffe, described, 69. ibid. throwne there. 282 2

eebto make a League with Mans gu Cliati, 114. 1. His fores Propofisions to the Tartars, ibid, Their Antwers, ibid. Her becomes a Monke, 118.50 Armenia the bounds, 130.50. They ofeme foreseft Leners ibid. Armenian Monkes change their ortere Carriers to the Chamme Armenan Monty bir danger Min gu Chana Come, 39 think 73: 90. 40. & 33. & 34. Hu Manichman Brofberine mbent ibb Creation of Man, ..... 184.I Appropriate Printible mucharitable. reffe to Ionas the damy Printt, 28. 10.40. Hee confulred with Southfavers, State 1 ..... Armenian B. foops, are all Monkes: Armenian Christians in Taur.ca. e. engrion : // / / / Armenians cate as Fift in Line Ss. La La Congress Armemans Fast of fine dayes, 31.1 Armenians pus not off their Gupts 1787 1787 O Armenians via Frankinchiff Holy water, 40. 20, Their bes ment to the Croffe, ibid. Their Churches the chofe to France. ibid. There chiefe Complete. where they exercife their Religi-Armeniani kaom per perpanti dus Bion, wer Confession, 1028120 Armeniana their two chiefe Prophoto, 49. 50. Their Propheties of a Mation of Archet which floate Conquer the Ballorne World, ibid, 82 co.1. Which is as firmely believed as the Gofbell, Armenians Loffe in a retreate from the Holy Land, Armories or Enfignes of honour in Mexico, 3.7717.2 Arngrim long, bis Hiftery of Moland, 64 Arquico. 253.2 Arie of the World, where, 644. 30. Arlengan the Citte is Armenia, The great Earthquake there; 3%. Arlerom the Citie, where, 40.40 Art of memory first taught in China. Armenia barraffedby the Saracensi Art learned by Accident, 949.1 12930. The Saragens over- PArtacke a Bouit in Tarturie, 6. Arch-Deacons in the Ruffian Armenia Popled by the Saracens, Arthur Pethis Voyage, 462.40 118.30 Arthur the Kung , bis Northerne 610

Artilleris

Arcilerie none in China. ... . 200. I Acres in Laplands 223:40. & Arzuiga, the chiefe Citie in Armemathe greater 1 10 H. . 69.50 Alvelines the Frian four frem the Rope to she Tuesara Ag.a. His Moffage and the Fastars Au-. Mart & Letters to the Pope, ibid. Affine remedia lactan 1. (1. 226.20 Alia dinidedone smaparas. 107.60. Alia she graner can be affanted but by three passages, and of Alia Affansier Lauden 7 ..... 19.1 Affaifini a people, 16.1 After excellent, . . . . . . . . . . . . 70.50 Allower Alaph in Crim-Tartarie, Affungation Citie by the River of Plate, the Latitude. 902.1 Agumption point the Latitude, 558.30 Adracan, wome by the Ruffe, 439. 20. Furthest part Southward of ther Deminions, : : :442:50 Aftracam pend Cafan Ganquered by Buffer services of Tope.I Altracanabe listin the forebad, 233. African, open Volga, the Latitude of the Sain or granging, The variat. Altrologers confulled michal 90.20 Aftalogie in China, 346. 10. A Mountaine where it is fludyed, ibit. Their Colledge, ibid. Altennorate of the Chinois, 384. co.&cc. Their Aftrologers, 385. Andrew Contracted A-tele, a Sea terme, what, 482. Marg. Afher a Cetie, 311.40 Atlifoo the famous Valley in the West Indies. 872.50 Ancheo the Citie, 300. & 301.40. Unwholfome, and fabrait to inundesions, 202.1. How farre from Cinobeo. 305.30 Auguries by Birds in China, Auricular Confession in Ruffia.452. Auricular Confession twitated by the Denil in his Idell-Covernonies. . 1941.40. Some cales referned for Superiour Priests : Women Configures : needing to beecom. esaled, ibid. When moftly vied, and for what fames : the King confossi bimselfe onely to the

CMANCE after Confessions : 112042 | - 1257.501 Hee flights on fost in the Autria attempted by the Tastures ALLAZO Their King drawned in o Denubius, Analla minkin a league betwiet the Greeke Emperour and Tamerlane, agamiliebe.Turkes,: ir q zá. :40, He raines the Turkes, 160. -1. Is made Governour of Quin! fay. Axe, sequired by the Tastars for. o tribute, 1 (34/20) Ane. Colomnoly varryed about on but decarmes,in liland, 668aro Axes, she Juitlanders meare at ohen girdles, 274.1 Aver Reld no Element in China. one of the Chart gagago. Ayer under an nester to the Equithen that neere the Poles, 925 Ayer fundants changed, the affects afit,927. 1.10. Ayer may be too fubile for mem badges, and orbers. at to fo, 927-40.50 Ayer of Chile the Potter off the Toes, mi bills Paffengereifer. ne ederide odfreite ar

Avenam or Hainam the Iland, 254. The fortune ofit, . aggit Azonos llai thin Lariande Sugat Thomas and different throngs S. Lucar in Sprine, ' s sibid. Azon, menne by the Turke, 441.36 8 spon the Enzine or blacks Sea, abediate the second of thirds Asture gotten in the West Indies, 37 tire . \$7 120 Azure-flower the bellin the warth. Total person were to be some. B of standard A minico, for Creation Of Chille.

B Seldome v fed by the Chinois, not pronounce it, 18,60
Babes irm birms hardred with C.SHIP, .:::**377** Babes enioqued to house Faffingdares in Ruffia. Baccafaray, the Court of the Chan of the Crim Tartars, 634.50. Described bid. Bacchu, the Medomes, . 49:20 Bachu the Port deferebed, 245.40 Badascian Tengi, what, 312.30 W. B. ffins Death at Ormus, \$48.

Bahama the Ilanik and Chinell in New Spaine, Syolio ple to fight with Tamerlane. 197:1. He encampes were bim, Saune , the Ceremony of that Pebid. The manner of bis Murch.

meddeft of bie lanizaries, 148. Hin farce, she charges, is wounded and taken dine by Azalla, 198 30.40 50. Hu font anfwere to Tamerlaine, 195.20. Hu rage after bermar prifmer. Ufed for Tamerianes footfloote ibid. Car. red in Chaines into Tartary 160.40 Bachanna ariner in Tartania,791-1 Baked means eaten first and brothe

Balgams Science; well the Learning money the Arabians blue; 140 Balades us, procione flore, where 15 feets - 04-207 (54 84) 73-40 Balancum in Perfia, 75 40. Their Kings idefounded from Alexanderibid. They are called Zulensnen, ibid. Dulentnem (pechance) that is, two-borned : for This Alexander the Great called of his Supposed Father God Ame

o much, who was worshipped in the. neffe of a Romme. Balayes sare precious flones found in Balaris Trot Belchia & Walachia, Baldwing the Emperone's Compact of Constantinople,65,50. 2 in - A. 1 180 clare Baldachyyb. 10:Clarby Ochioc. There and Their Califa takenby she Tartars, 7020 Balke ar Bulgh, the tropilon, 241.00 Balme and Balme-trees of the Welt Indies : the linder, colors and manner of getting : Creams

Balface and the month Dates Maning there, Banquetting-house w harrion out 151 29470 Banquets of the Chinois, a Sindifcourfe to fell as them; 791.40 The red was complements at them, 392.10,20.0% Banquetting in China: their b.yding it, 374.40. Istakes up balfe ellour simes, Baptisme imitated by the Devill in

Mexico, the manner of it, 1044 20.0 1102 Bapailme, the mener in Ruffia, 229 20. Godfathers promife for the Child, to for (ake, the Denill, ore. and to bing it up in Religion, as were Church doth, 229,30,40 Baptilme she, order in Ruffig a 50 60. Within eight dages of the buth, ibid Dapodin a Tub 2 is Boad of a Fourt. The Demikexprivated any of the mater bid Godfactor s excorned den The srue forme in the name of the Trmity keps. Oyle and Sals added after mbich the ( bild is admitted onto the Church, and prefented : and Some of the barre dipt and lending.

Barbaring with flores in the West Indiesel 30 Promines in Weit Iffind Sement and Spicery to the Kings of Mexico, 1126.60

1117/20 Birges of China described 264.813 Bargus Tartagian Prosince 2: 70 Barlouente Hands of the West Indies which they be. 929.40
Barlouente Hands, their Matine
Commodities, 938. What will not Barley as where as Rice, 544.20 Barmake Fills, Rocker or the Lale pian Sed Barcholomes marin at an artistic

Barret of Commodities section me-my, selective littles and the Balcon the Produce, where A. 14.1 Their Inchamments and levels, Bafil mortugadas Schaffe . 69.40 Bafilus an Englishmains Songfand in Taraby, 20.30 Bafiluspich mbat, an Rustial, 322 marg.

Balons beaten before ereat men 13 2.
Baltards ements Suiter a part of the Debry, in Illand, \$45.50
Baths medicable in Ormus, 72.1 Baths bot in Ifland, 597.50. And

cold. Baths on Green and boile flelh and babebrend and bow 610.10. They beere the Hauen from freezing, and draw wildfowle thither,

Baths bet & medicinable in Groneland, Baths bot and cold in Peru, 894.20 Bath-ftones in Ruffia pay Tribme, 429.30. Ufed infeed of all Phyfiche, 459.10 Batampina the Riner, what it fignifies, 265.1. Runnes through the midft of China. Bategaria or Latton Veffels made in

177.20

Same man, how their bring is en- | . Englifte so 3 Enpondred are onzed, Their fight mith the Spatrones, 995-50 Bangbinata the Land Banthata the Hand Buy of Soint Micholas, 218,00. 222.50 Bay of Saint Nightles first creded wate by the English , 462.50. 463 40. When the Mountain des for made thickers 464.20 Bay of Nauquin, 260.30. The

Bry of Baxpaleny, won to de Of Calindana and a de a Bay of Saint Iohn in Newfound Land . not saffanza 48 Baia de Sibabas. 284.60 Bearls of Pearla ufed by the King of Malabar, 1111404 40150 Beads and the per in China, 408.

Beads wfed in the Ruffe Church. Beala the firmame of the Ruffian Emperours, in whom it expired, 746 304 Truce token 12 940 Bet Bears barrings on Built sheming 755 657-30. Hole marwha me reparded with being made drunk, hill a. The matering wale Billie

Materialisman of a militide.
Beauty Well Louis described 977 Bennes R mis T. freit hyskango Bennes trom og alle frei freihers all test Poller handel i standso Bennes fand, ar Chense Hands 464 .. 300 The Sammer of the form Reale there : 2 har 2 200 miles to the out of face of their telephones of the control of the con Large for Oale most re Sponed Stories Bearque feafrempige

A750 &cc. vique ad 504. &cc. Libert Densin thaties populated They enter Brickes and Spaniel Beares inter venimons, 506.30. They see into the Secretar Marie Les 30 mules 100 to 100 They see ancient

Beares Summingin the Sens 1208 Beares at Sea 27. leagues from There: they line upon See filling the
40. Affault cowards, 561. Ease
dead to bales, 734. 1. A Story of

Bats of Welt India, fill bice the Beares, pendred and waten by theil 1 the Chartelogore, bick The com-

... belefates, \$70.50; Beares will Bestes foel further shen they fer 486 30 Mone in Illand; 1897.30 Beands ober Contracts bean ment, 992 10 . 10 . 20-11. Cat on Beard fine free tong bloffed, 250,10 Beatles ger m blicans , 129 y 1 Of Boules of the West Indies their Substant supplier supplier 18, 20. Hallen the first remember the first remember the first supplier. - come when shooking promitting Bests frange when in Lapland 12 Beatls famed with fifth, \$27,20 Brails confulted mith for Oracles.

tosage er jured by the i truts Beatle drowned in the Snew, grea della sorma sen mer ti niggin de Beause the best where, 416.20 Beause in Charles in Charles and the state of the Beause was the state of the s Bedest the Walt Broken 507 10 Bees of the West Landles eller face meet of theretoeth lattice that happy of the committing and Honey. 962 and Backen and Ba

oswilland, 666.20. They wire is be Beheading is the most absoluted by the behavior of the behavior of the behavior of the behavior of the beneal of the bend of the beneal of the beneal of the beneal of the beneal of the Bel-formal grand man Hollens Belanding weedle New Medic

Belsenviriment yearth, onc 138.00 Byla board seeded promit styre 198100 Belevist de Chings word and 120 Bels much meladin Classica in Chi. Sile VO 00.01 CC 2883.00 For course Defart, 74.30 Belleving or great wind, 243.20 Belgian the Mountains 291 30 The Tountries about it soi walled

The meaning of the property of the state of

pourers , ibid. Affanted by | Bit a faith in Syria. Theenes, 311.213. His rediens bourney , 31 2.30. Comes to the King of Catentat 24 Ges to the King of Quotany his Godle forred on which Rafufar to smoke Mahomet, 31 3.20-30. Sets on to Cathay , 343.yo. Daneib ibid, Comes to Cad to, & definers .. 23 de 19,20. Harres of his fellow Lefujes, ibid Boldlyprofoffes tim. Selfe & Clerifian, 16td. Istoff in she night, and how found agains 1 42 AS-R. Grower tich by trainell cabid. Sende, Lattets podie fellower, att fest for by them, 315.50. Is difreffed, ibil. Dier. 316.1. No Prieft: bis Ats. Bengala the Kingdomes the Commodities of it, Bengala conquered by she Tartars Bentamin Woods goo foins in China. Ben Lofeph bu Venege, 466.50

Benloo a Lieutenant leader three bendred English Wer Sweden .. 77.220 Ha and then danger is oi land. Beign the Topmes by Worway, 518 Burger Stranger Mare of North Way the Language altered there, Bermida Hand called Garas : the Intibest land set found; in the World, 989 Bellarabia; what Country, 633-1.

ellede in Island, the refidence of Betre, Befele, Betel, Tembul or Acces, an berbackgelless for the teefb. Beartie preferred before Nobeleit Bezar ftone, what heafts bowe is and where 967 and \$ 968.7. Paradons in their feneral bear selfen, coloure, and vortus, the bell time knowne, have bred in this

beaft; an admirable thing of their Bialogrodin Moldenia rates of re Bigaypotim, the Chinois Pather 269.20 Bihand stree of Indie, the vie, 984.

Bildit in Media. 249. Veriation of the Compafe there, 245.20
Bil of Exchange, to bear excised in Heann, .... 270 6 277.1 Blacians or Hitims an elde profit.

124.50 Bitchieres; a Wine made of at, 231. Birch tree onely propes in Illand; of ofragrant fent; 649:30 Bird with a Looking glaffe on his 1021.10 Birds of the Well Indies 979. Oc. 2000

Birds without feet, bow they fit ; othere at final at Bees, 965.20 Birds breeding in the frezen Cliffes. 113.10. Morafraid of wen, their mer of Nests and laying, ibid. Birde that dispeopled a Countrey, Burds and fifbes bong bt to let 20;271

Birth-day of their Prince, the Tatrass yearely observe, 84.30. The folemente of it, 84. 30. His Subsects fend Profents to bim , 84.

Birth-dayes Fellmall in China. 802.10. # 394.1.180.60.274

Biscayners file at Greenland, forof Parks to 718.719 Bilhops in Rullia, fametidies vilifere one of the Webilitie, 789/20.0 Bishops of Partie be fit their liber

The Course Will There Showing their Chapter of Prices, for out of Monafteries, onmarried and frome, thid. They preach bas twice a yeare : their Semilon.

ibidi Bishops of flishd, 645:30 Bishops of Island, under the Arch-fulton of Nidrosia in Norway,

651:30 Bishop of Ordineland. Bringer, the great offerf the King Bittocle in afhip, what, 582.marg. Bittor a Sas Johnne, what, 505.

Bitumen is de Myne of Caba : fbip ealked , and boufes built with it Blacke fleeps preferred by the Tar-441.50 Blacke Foxe , the chiefe Farre of

Ruffe, 748.00. Blacke Point Blacke Carpet , at the Coronation of the Great Chan, 111.30

where 18:60. Whence defeended Bleffe, the Greeke Bykopi dor, buth somo fingers, Bleffed berthe Lord God of litad. ofed in the Ruffian Service, 450

Blinghead in Orkney, 827.40 Bloud dranke as a peace-making, Bloud rained. 198.20

Bloud-letting in India, the manner, Bloudetting for the Demis fermer :# Mexico, 1014. 01035.30 Blubber se the fat of Whales, 470, Boars of fill stein and benes, execl. lent. I

Boats of Scale stins, 817.60 Boats on Kulla of bollow trees, 777 Boats of Groneland fwifter then fings, \$23. Sewed with finewes or

Bocara, or Boghar in Bactria, 66. 10. in marge Boohir a Citie in Bactria, 239, 10 Perlian tongue foken there, bid. The Frest deposes the King, bid. Ring not abone three yeares, 239 go. The Copper money there, bid. The commodities fold at Boghar, 246.20. The Citie hefieged, 241

Boghar or Burgania, Bogha or Hispania, the River in Podolia, 632.10 Rans inte Borifte. nes, Bohemia entred by the Tartars,

61.1 Bothol the Hand, 285.30 Bondage for debe: the manner of it 284.20 217.10 Voluntary for pure med.

Bones feafing one mother each New Moone, 275.20. Peoples Oblations to these banes, ibid. Bonzi of China , their detages,

Bonzi are inferiour to the Mandarines, 347. Held the bafest people of China, 359.20 Bonzi, she Iaponian Priests, 222

monse of that.

co. Military order of thoma Bookes made of the leaves of trees. in New Spaine, 1052.10 Boots an Enfigue of Magistrates in

China , and the Ceremony about them. Boots: the Bryde in Ruffia pulls off the Brydoereomes and the Cere-

> 320.10 Boots

Boots and Shoes embroydered in China, 176.60, Shees of Stram. Borichen the 10 by Hispaniola, 998

Boris Pheodoro wich, bis great Of-10. Hu Prefent to Queene Eli-

fices , Tenenuss in Rutin, 742 zabeth, 743.60. His power, 744 40. And policie to become popu-lar, 745. Made Emperour, ibid. Modeftly rejujes the Empire. Accests it 745. His Wife, Son. and Daughter, Coronaugn Ex-pedition against the Grim Tartats. Hu policies. The beginning of his disafters, Seekes a Wafe for bie Some out of England , 746 Defires a league wish King lames. Dierfaddenly, Would bee new (briftned before bis death. 751. His care of bis Sonne : polices . 60.752. His Wife and San personing themselnes, the Daughter lines, 75 1.50. Hu Patent to chants,754. Reports of his death Bor fthenes, the course of it, 633

Bornaholm configned to the Lubechers, Botta affrange head ive of the Tartat fan women . 6.60. 6 7.1 Bougiusky fometimes Secretary to Demetrius of Ruffia, almoft flas wed shere. Relieved by she Eng. glift, 780.40 Escapes into Eng-littly, and is resulted. 780.10 Boy of Clay wrestling, and playing. tricker mub a Liv ng Boy 140.40 Boyes of Mckico; then bald buyung of Serpents, 1942. 10 Boyes put betimes to carne their li-

Boyling Fountaines in Groneland. Boyling meates in Gourds, by cafring in a burning flone to the li-Boxe of curious art wronget in Iadon. Bralapilacon, a Hanen, 353.20

Bramble-berrieseure the laofemelle, Brames the people Lords of P. gu, Co. Rich m Gold and Rubies.

169.40 Bramenes, most true Merchants, 105.50. They line a bunded and Bridges, fee Toll. fifty yeares, ibid. Their Difcipline,

probabilities of the North-west Bramenes are Witches. The names Paffage, of their Gods which they worfore, Brimitione enery where digged to a choice of it, thid. None buryon

166.20, 40. Themselves yet a. line are norshipped for Gods, 166 to Their authority, ibid, Their degrees of Religious men : 167.1 Branding of Theenes in China, 395.20

Branding for Theft in Illand, 651 10 Brafile, would not grow at Venice,

Brafile Pronince, the latitude, difco. mery, temperature foyle, chiefe Beyche goes crying to Church in Traffique, Plantations by Portus 1. Rull:2, 239 Och Led by two maked 22ts, and then Latiendes, their o: ween, 230.10. Shee is called a Parts, Riners, co. And pheir Lat by Dincheffe, Il air ibid. Bratlaro in Podolia.

Bread, the Tartassmacke ve for en | Breephalus breed, Bread, the Chinois cate not common. 1.365.40. Rice Sedden, instead of st, ibid. Bread of Wheate. without crust, bow made, 365.50 Bread of Straw in China, 230.50 Bread very hitter in Ormuz, 72.1

Bread of Roots and barke, 416.1 Bread made of fift fod and dryed, 537-40 Bread of the West Indies, 953,954. Bread fedden in the rocke of water,

Bread Louis in Oze dung. er m Horfedang, 34-30 Bread & Corne unknowne in Island

Bread and drinke mone, where, 223, Chan, meurung, 252.40 Billers fer Guns wronght by maure, Brash belden halfo en hauratoge sher. 953.1

Brewing was Hebimater in Ruf-Bribery in courfe of Luffice, how presented in China, 186.10 Brickes preferred before flone m Chine, 34.20

Bildge, an admirable oue, 299.30. # 299.50. # 89.1. # 190.20 Bridge made with men purpofely

Bridge of natural flone, 990.30 Bridges of Straw, Bridges of Haire and Stram where.

Bridges, 12000. In one City, 98 M. Briggs bis Treatife about the

648-10.0 649.20 Briles, fee East winds, 858.20. A Puniof phicall reason for them , ibid . Most ofwell in the Terra Firma, Brittaines fifting at Iffand eight - bundred yeares finee, 69740 Bries the River where Gold is

104.1 | Brother preferred before the Sunn Peresso 1 - togaço lia, 632.19 ch Her gifts, portion and apparell, Brazen Serpens, and the Millery of 10 , 287 250000 bid.

1bid reprefered we China Bartlegroomerafied Duke in Rul

Buckerenum, 20.60 in marg. Buffaloes youte on the Plouph, 200 60. How they gonerne and reed

them, Buildings , foure admirable in Poquin, Buildings be light in China, 382 Buildings of Ruffia, the manner.

Buliano the Port, bow farre from. China. Bulgaria the greater , are moft earnest Saracens. Balgaria moune by the Tartate, 114

646.20 Bulgaichiefe Secretary to Mangu--A15,00 20 Bulangazi , the Taetarian Officer Breaking the Soutcheons , or day of the for last change. .... . 86. 1

Bungo the Kingdome, 328130. Speaker the Isponian Tamene.

Buquhannes, che Latinde, anddefeription of the Coast, 809.810 Burnera she / md Burning Mountaines or Volcanes mabe Indies .. 878.30. One of them melted the Copper and Iron of a Caldrop broughousers a. 880

60. The saufe of the burning Bot Burnils Cape in Greenland: siebe Latitude and Variation there.

Buryall, in new Shees, 270.40. In a Coffin, with a Teffemental, bid. The manner in Ruffia, 230 Buryall places of the Chemois; \$68 852 40. Their Sorcers about the

un their Cities. Buryall of the Japonians, 327.10 Buryall of the Chinois, 393.30. See Funerals and Mourning. Buryall of Tartars without their Ci-Buryall of the Gronelanders, 825 1. 6 826.10 Buryals the Chinois Superstitions Buryals of the Mordwit Tartar. 442.40 Buryals of the Mamoles of Cur-628.20 Buryals of the Mexicans, 1029.40 Buryals of the West Indians, 994. Buffe Iland discovered, 582.70 Bolle Hand falfe placed on the Cares; 815.1. # 822.40 Buffarmans what, 238.40 Buskins worne in Ruffia, inflead of Stockens, .: 459.0 460 A Butcher in Ruffia , chefen Lord Treasurer, Author of bis Countries liberty,

Abul, a Mart Towne, 211.50 Cacabe, a Caftle in Syria, 123

\$37.60

Butter-weeke in Ruffia, 217,60

Butter made in Tartaria Philofo.

phically, 5.60. Kept in Rammes

Buttons Iles . The Variation there.

. skins,

Cacao a West Indian fruit described; vied instead of money, and tomake drmbe of, the tree and 956.40,50 Cacao Nuts, of which is made mowey . wine and meate for the Indians, 874.10. The tree deferi-Gieices, the Priefts of Calcar, 313 Catar, the title first affemed by the Emperons of Ruffia, 760. 20 for the lefasts instigation) & 78%. 40.0 787.10 Caffa wonne by the Turke from the Crim Tartar,44.20. Upon the

Euxine Sea. Changle, or Kangitta, a people, 18. 40. A great Countrey, 19.10 Caim the great City, 96.30 Caindu the Pronince, Calacia, where Chambless are made, 80.10 Calamba wood for beedes, whence,

and the price;

THE TABLE ibid. | Catempluy, an Iland, 260.30 Califa of the Saracens residing at Baldach 70.10. Hee is taken by the Tartars, ibid. How he proved the Christians by remooning a Mountagne, 70.20 Caliph of Baldach, bis inst panish. ment. California Promince in the West Indies, the Latitude, not much discovered, the Rivers and Hands of 11,877.40,50. See alfo, pag. Callao Pronince the richest of the West Indies. 927.10 Calles of Horfe-baire in China, 366.60 Callinos or Candinaes, 53 T. 10. Inbabited by the Spaniards, 543,20 Calueritts fome in L turnia 628.50 Cam the Rimer bis courfe, 525.30 Cama the River, Camath. a City, where Euphrates benderb to the South, sowards Halapia, Camaron the Cape, by Hunduras on the Indies. 849.10 Cambalu w Pequin w China, 314 Cambaluin Catha: rbe Etymon, 342. 40. Signifies The Great Tartar of the North, The Great Chams Court, 82.10. Pin Palace there, ibid. His Arfenall, or Amujunition Honfe there, 83.20 Cambalu fignifies, the Citie of the Lard, 83.40. Remooned over the Riner, ibid. Called Taidu, ibid. Camboia the Kingdome , 252.70 Subsect to Siam, 166, 20. The King a Bramene, ibid. Allbis Subjects besides the Priests , are Slanes , 167.10. Hee feazeth dead mens goods, ibid. The King drinen out by the Mogores, 254 Cambrickes and Launer where Camelion, fee Light Mogge. Camfire trees, 101.30. Sold weight for weight with Gold, 104.10 Campion, the chiefe Citie of Tanguth. Can, why the Tartarian Princes are fo called. Canaanites expelled by Joluah, whither they went, 661. 6 662 Canaries, the diffance from Spaine. 858.20

Candle-light many monthes toge-

Candles in the Greek Church, 228

647.30

416.40

20. 6 217

ther.

410.30

Calcia, the people deferibed, 312.10 | Candles of Birch,

Candles burning without flame, in a Corall Stone, Candlemas day, fomthing like w, in China, 194.10 Candinaes, the East point of the White Sea , 485. 60. 0 515.0 Cangigu, the Pronince : and manners of the people, 94-10 Canibals or Man-caters, where, Caniball Iles in the West Indiese their fenerall names, and Latin under, inhabited by Man-eaters. Caniball fignifies a valuant man, why they left eating of men. Their diffances from Saint Domingo, Canopie an Enfigne, of dignitie in China, Confangui Cafcio, what, 313.1 Canton the Citie described, 319.40 Cantan the Citie deferibed, 170 50. 0 171. Oc. The Me giftrates Honfer described , 171 30. Their primate Honfes dels-Canton, the true name of u, 321 Canutus the King , his greatneffe Cape Cod , the Latitude, \$88.10 The Soundings by it, 587. 0 Cape Bapo. 474-30 Cape Swetinos. Cape Comfort the latitude , and longitude from London, 841.39 No hope of the North-west Pafe fage that way, Cape Cant by Noua Zembla, she latitude. Cape de Bas in New-found-land. Cape Naffaw, 475.40. The Latin Cape Trust. Cape Deffeado, or Defired in the Magellane Streights , the latie Cape Christian in Groneland, 815

Cape Desolation, the latitude, 816

10. Of Queene Anne et Queene

Sophia in Groenland, 817.20

Capes of King lames, Queen Anne,

Capes: Kegor, 223,20. Swetinots,

Capha or Theodofia in Taurica,

Caphars, fo the Tartars call Chri-

ftians, 235. 10. # 238.50. #

bid. Grace,

and of Prince Henry, 599.20

327,10

229.40

Capherstante & Citie : the Sara- | Carambis the Promontory, 636. cens mult not enter st, 211 Cap an Imperial Ornament of Rui-431.10 Cap assumed in China at Mans estate, 394. 10. The fashion of this Cap or Camle, 394-30 Caps of their Learned, fquare, and ıbid. Cap of the Learned in China, Cap of China Schollers the falbion. 339.1 Cap, an Enfigue of dignitie in China, 184,20. 6 200.20. Green to the Graduates. 185.10 Caps of the Louteas deferthed, 292 Carthage the goodly rumes of it, Caps, Girdles and Boots of the China Officers, Capon , a Philosophical conclusion with him, Cappadocia, is on the Weft of A :menia the Greater, divided from et by the Euphrates, 52.60 Capthac, the Tartarian name for Carazanthe Country and Citie, 91 she Comanians, 11.1 Cantines clad. in the Ornaments of Indian Idols and fo wor-1022.1.10. O 1028.60. The Captives why the Mexicans de. fired totake, then to kill, 2017 Cara in Tartarian fignifieth blacke, 540.0 14.50 Cara-Cathay , 314. 1. 404.40. Beginning of the Tartats great-Caracarum a mightie Citie , 77 Carcharon described. Caracarum the Citie of Mangu-Chan, 35.40. His Progreffes thuber , ibid. His Palacethere. deferibed, 36. 1. A Nestomerall Nations of Christians.

Caracarum , two monethes and ten dayes iourney from the Volga,47 Baracas, the Province in the West Indies, 866.60. The chiefe Townes and their diftances, difconered, tributary Indies, Ports. Capes , Points , Lakes, Gulfes , Rivers, Soyle, Beaft s, medicinable Stones, Gonernments, erc. 867.868 Caracolus cleere Kenes Milke, 27

10 Caramotam the Riner. 80 Caran the people. 280.40 Caraunas a mungrill people; 71.20 their Inchantments, Carbuncle or Rubie , imitating the Same? Card-play frequent in China, 395

Cardandan the Prinner, Carianfu the Cuie; the Commodi. ties thereabouts. Cartagena in the Well Indies, the Scite, Soyle, Rozen, Gummer Balmes, &c. Lastinde of the Co tie, and defeription of it, 886.1

611.20 Carts with forty wheeles, drawne by fine bundred Horfes, 169.90 Carualleda, in the West Indies: she diffance from Venezula when built. Carawood, what in Tartarian, 243

50. Gold found in the Rivers and Catale, now called Afon, 54.40. in margine. Cafan conquered by the Ruffe. 740.1 Cafehar she Prosince. Cafchar the Kingdome, 312:50

Catibin in Persia. Calitan , the Herfe-guards to the Tartarian Princes, 84.10 Caskar a Citie. 240.40 Cafpian Sea, or the Hyrcanian, and why? \$ 2.90. Whence fo cal-Calpian Sea is a Lake, the extent of it, 109.60. Hath fenerall Gulfer,

216.20. The bound of it, 16:10 No Bay, Calpion Sea, well described, 242.1 How farre from the Euxine ibid. The water both froft and Sale ibid. See alfo pag. 245. Frozen, 247.60

Caffaria or Cafaria, a Proumce of the Sea of Ponting & So. Inhabit sed by Greckes, ibid The Mershandife of thefe parts, 2.10. Is the Taurica Cherfonelus, 53.30 Caffia Fiftula se the West Indies, 875.1

Caffia the tree, bis rootes fearches downeward for water, 982. 20. Where and bon is erowes.

Caftle built of Straw 628,1 Caltles, fine on the Banker of Cattro Citie in Chile she lattende. Cataneus the lefuite in China, 409 6 ape. Cataya she blacke or Kara Ca-

taya, farre remote from the other Cataya, Cathay, the mightineffe of the Kingdome , 168, 40. They thinks the rest of the World blinde , ibid. In vinvarrethe people, ibid. The bounds,

Cathav & China. 82.40 Catay the greatest Citie of Catay. whether it bee Pequin in Cina, 801.30. in marg the Merchan difes there, Cathanans deferibed , 23 311.1. Their Apparell, 1840

Cathaians write mub Penfite, and in Characters, Catechilme of China, Caten in the Tartatian tongne is

Lady. Lady, 30.30 Catchpowles in Ohina their Lin merie. Citimparu, a Towne, 253.40

Catouga the River rounethout of the Samoted's Country into Ca-Cat a maunt ajne, entes men, 628

Cats of Hispaniola, their trowfing,

Cattle fed with fifb; Cauchin- China the Kingdam, 281 50. Where, 168.20. Their man. ners the fame with the Cinors, but their language is afferent,

Cauchin China, tributari to Chi-114 419. The Kings tribute pend in wood, ibid. The people deferio

Caulaius the Mountaine, 20,10 Called Cocal, 100,40 Caucary, where and how made, 417

Cavillations to get Money, 431.

Cauleves admirable ones , 271.30 Cayo, China Wood. Cazan the Citte deferibed, 282.E. Wonne by the Rolle. Ceracina, drinke of Rice, 27.40. 0

Gercaffian Christians in Taurica, 639.640. Their Duke Sipendary tothe Tartar. Cedars common in the West Indies,

Cemainum , fignifies eight, in Armenian , 50. 10. A Citte fo named, neere which Noahs Arke rested, Certificate for Merchants, 190

Chagre Riner betwirt the South & North Seas, bu bead, courfe & Chaldas, the bounds.

110.50 Chamis what, in Iapon, 324.60 Chamlets where made, Chamul the Cuie and Proumce, where, 76.10. Their abominable kinds entertainment of Gueste, They are most kinde Cuckelds,

Charicell none enters but the Priest in Rullia,450.20. Not the Dea-

Changle, anolde people; where, 16,10. Descended from the Romanes. Changle the manner of Diet and

tranell ibere, 19.20.30.00 Chaplaine to the Emperour of Molcoma, fits at table with the No. bilitie, in the prefence, 457 Chaplens of Noblemen in Mexico.

Chappels in Chinas 340-20 Chappell layed with Silners, 265

Characters , the Chinois hene for ty thenfand fenerall, as many as morde,384370.20 & ten thore fand in daily ofe, ibid. They are not A.B.C. or any way like

Characters of the Chinois and I2. pan are the fame : they figuifie the things , and not have names,

Chargas Pronince make West Indics, the latitude, limits, larifdithen, two Government and Bi-Joops: the fourechiefe townes of Spaniards, and then latitude . temperatures, forlas, Mynes, &c. Clips: the Ports, Points, Capes,

Chare Sibersky Prince of Siberia. brought prifener to Molco,743.1) Charles lackman bie Voyage, 462

bus King of Sweden, 793, Lager downe bis claimse to part of Russia,

Charles King of Sweden ardes the Rulle againft the Pole. 770.50 His Commission and premise of

His tiele, which His death, 780.1 | Chiai Catai, an Herbe excellen for Charles Wayne not feene in Sama-Chautubo an Iland, 307.50 . A

Commonwealth. Cheapneffe of all shings in China.

Chequian Proxince in China, 408 Cheremiffen Tartars , their Com-

trey, 442. Two forts of shem. Peace with them bought by the Russe, a infl dealing people, 442

Cheremizzi, a land of Tartars, Cheremizer, che pospie baife Gen.

Cherry Iland, or Beare Iland, 464 30. Muitisude of Wholes and Sea-berfes, ibid. The larnade. 465.40. Her fare from Eng.

Cherry Hand, Store of fowles there, 557. And Foxes like Dogger, the latitude, ibid. Mories and Morfes seet , ibid. Hill Mes med for 558, Part of the lie in 74. degrees and 5 5.minutes 559 Beares there 460. 461. How bet in lune, 560.40. Proft and Snew where in Inne, 562. 50 Possession taken of it for the Eng-life Muscottin Company, 963130 Lond Mynes found there, 343.66 564. And Seaceles, 594. They make their heft Voyages on the North fide of the Iland, 466. 1 The West fide laskes like Hip-

cockes . cockes, Cherfona she City weere she Euxine Sea, built, wonne, & refored 622 Chefmur she Promince, where, " 1. They are the greatest in-chanters and Idolators in the

World, ibid. Their Heremites and cuffenges, Cheffe-play or China, the manner 395/20 Cheffe-play in Bed, in Ifland, 647.

Chetera Bougarisian Ilandar44 Chetfird a Ruffen Meafare what Chiarles Phillip, brother to Gusta- Chia the Herba vfed in all enter tainments, 3 26.60. # 37 1.30 Chin, bom wfed in Drinker, 382 Chiacato , Lond Protettor of Ax-

China a maña, 816.20 , 20n is India , bie Golden Ta-China a perilon Coaft , 258.30 bles ginen se Paulus Vanetus, When flife ! Juyling there, ibid. Thoughto bu ferreigne aidet,771 | Ge. 2 301 c 68.40 China, what part of it the

the Goat &c Chiamonay or Cunebetee, a Lake,

Chiana Pronince in the Well Indies , the Scite , Commedities Ares of the Inhabiting Indians: launde of the Citie, 879.1 Chiantailo baptifed, Chica drinke good for the Stone,

Chichimecas , Savages of the Waft Indies, then Falkions

Chierman the Kin dome , where, 71.1. The Commodities there.

Ciule Kingdome in the Weftin. dies, the bounds; more Sone sherf towards the Equino Stall then Peru : the true Soite. Extent of the Gonernment; bem much mhabited, temper, warthenesse of the people; the several Spamilis Colonies , in is ; then lati-tudes and diffances from other places, 898. Bifbopricket, Memafteries , other townes and their lattender, and first phopling ! the name taken from Caltto, which was could Chillie ! she Later, I.

landi, Mynet, Ports, St. and those laterades, 899 The different of Naming atton between it and Pa-titutia. Chile Kingdome, neere the teme

porarie of Spaine, a rich foile of a poore people, 938.30 Chille Kingdome, for Chile. Child of Cathaya, who offirmed the transmigration of Soules, 42-10

Children dedicated to Denils on their birth-day. Chritdren exposed, bow provided for. Children fall cheape ile China, 367

Children fold or kild in China, 396 Childrens desposition gheffed at The three Children in the Ouen,the memory celebrated in Ruffiz, and

when, Children bow baptifed named & dedicated to the Church or wars in Mexico, 1703, How corrected & infruited, ibid. How exercised at fonerall Ages, 1104 Gc. Chimia, Limia and Simia, three Sciences, what and where profef-

China.

Tartars beld, 140: 10. The Chinois badresonered or beld it forty yeares, China, admirable for all proutsions,

China the way to it by land through Ruffia,

China calls it felfe Tame or Tamin, and the people l'angis , T52.60 Described.

China knowne by that name to their Neighbours, 167.20. They call themselnes Tangin , and their Countres Tame, China a part of Scythia, 167.40

Their Dommion of olde, wild. Ther are no Tranellers, 168 6 190.20. Hash store of Shapping, 173.30. The Camois Preserbe of that, ibid. The natural riches, 173.50. Their manner of Seafights, 174.1. Their Owes or Lioflios , 174-10. Bancones Lianteas, or [mail ships and Gallies, 174.10. They dwell on their thips , ibid. Poore ment line well there, ibid. Their forps of gward for Merchants, 175.1,10 Chinois are delicate liners, and yet industrious people, 175.10 They have lettenesse, and their Priests for being fo, 175.30.The tribute they pay , ibid. Their Countrey well bufbanded, ibid. Their mast artificial Ploughes, and Pumps for their [hippes, 176 To. Their Puppet playes , ibid. Their promision for impotent perfons, ibid. Trades, 176.50.00. Rub men carried in Charrer, 177 10. Renemnes of the King, 177 40. Measures ibid. &c. The lone Porke exceedingly , 178.30

China most excellently full of Romers andwaters, China fubiect to yearely tempelts of -wind, 197.90. Haththirteene dehires, 199.1. The Kingdome is - Time momether poft over , 199.10 Street; large and firaite, 200.1 The Government by Officers, 183 & 200. Opinions of the Soules departed, and of Remardafter death. 201. 50. Their Lawes, 202.10. Execution of Inflice, 203.30. Curious of Newes and Nonelises,

They have two or three Harnests

of Rice in a years, ibid. Their

Victualing bonfes , 178.50. &

Infinitely peopled 266.60. # 267 10. Hath diners Silner Mynes,

how such a world of people is maintagned, 270.10. Teslas two or three Harnests in a yeare, 270 40.0 364. Reafon of the great trading, 271.20. The admirableft place in the World, 271.40 The distance of the Townes, 294. 60. Wonderfully tilled, ibid. The Hieb wayes broad there, 295.20 Caftles none in China, 295.40 Then Houses but low, and why, ibid. Earthquakes frequent, ibid. The cheapaffe in China, 302.60 How for from the Philippinaes, 208.40. It # Cat 12y, 342.314 40. They differ onely in name, 314 50.215.0. Tis great Catay, 404 He that stayes there wine yeares, may not returne to bis Countrey, 315.10. The least mother Citie in China, bigger then Lisbone, 319 40. The Proninces bane pecultar Languages, 320.20. They mourne three yeares for their dead, 327.40. Their kich wayes much travelled, 330 60. Their tranel by Litters on mens shoulders, very cheape, 330. And fo for Boat bire. 331.39. Commeditie of their Rivers , 336.20 Heate and sold much there, 341 30 Greatnes of one of the 1 c. Pro-

China foure fquare, 260.50. The true fituation and quantity, ibid. The exact description of it, ibid. 361 de. 380.50. The two errours of our Maps of China, 361.50 All one of with Catayr, 351.50 @ 362.20. Why the Neighbour Kings cannot innade China, 362 40. How divided from Mogor, 361.40. The division : and Chorographicall Bookes, ibid. The great reffe of their Cates and Villages, 362. 362. The stanell there is most by water, 363.50. The cause of the plenty, 363.40. The cheapneffe of their commods-

winces , 342. 30. Their North

parts best.

China needs no forreigne traffique, 364.1. Europæan Commodities deare there, 367.1.374.30. The gonernment, 372.1,10 Halfe the time there frent in complements. 374.50. The ancient names of China. 280.20. The King changeth is at pleasure, ibid. The greatest Kingdome of the World. 280. 40. Tis under the temperate Zone, ibid. # 381.20. The number of Cities and people, 281 1,10. Execedingly fortified by nature, bid. The naturall commodities of it, ibid. Their munmerable Sipping, ibid. is by the Counirey w fo cold, 28 2.1. Their Metals, Gloffe, Paper, Spices, &c. 182, Their Artizans not comparable to ours, ibid. @ 382 10 Their writing, and Learning, Oc. 384. The Language Subutt to Aquinocations, ibid. Meft confuled, ibid, Sewerall Languages Spoken in China, 402.30. Extreame difficulty of their Lana guage, 403. 90. Particular deferiotions of places and things in China, fee page, 402 40, Oc. The Authours suspetion of a Kingdome to the North of China, 404. Christians not Suffered in le in their Cities a nights, 411 1

China King. He writes upon plates of Gold 226

60 Kmgs of China where lund 260.30.0 275.20. Hofpstali for Pilgrems that come to vilis their tomber, 261.50. Henderful wall about their burial place, 262.1 360. Hermitages in it, bid. The babit of the Hermites there, and bis admirable az meres to Parias ibid. Aliars there , much renerenced, 263.1. Refled by Faria the Portugall, 262 6 262. Fatia drowned, 263.50. His Palace described, 742 His closeneffe, 397 King of Chinaes Armes, 266.10 Ø 275.10.6 296.1. Ø 219.50 6 392.20. 6 392.40. Beginning of the Kingdome of Climas 267. cc. The King is fwering to refide at Pequin, 275.1. His venennes bow beflowed, 276.20 364.30. Hu bonfe of entertainment in every Citie, 292.30. Hea holds bimfelfe Lord of ibe v. orld. 309.50. This pride retorted by the Spaniards, 210.20 He cares not to enlarge his Dominion, 390 20.215.1. Hu nobleneffe, 315 20. Hee is gulled by counterfest Ambaffages, ibid. o hina waited into a Monarchie when, 376.20. The renenue and expenses of the King, 376.50. He

cares not to encreale his D.minion ihid. His brothers and Comfins, of little authoritie, 379.20 Hu tributary Kuredomes, 181 10. His Pensions to Souldiers. Officers, &c. ibid. His intle, 387 5 . Does nothing but by his Officers directions, 288 10. His Kesiennes he cannot lawish as he pleafer, ibid. Net focken vito bne

by his Eunuches, or by Petition, 202.40. His Armes or Enfignes remerenced, ibid. 6 405. They that (peake to him , coner their monibes, 392.50.0 405. He feldome gines prelence, 101d. He is yellow, and none elfe may be, ibid. His Robe and Palace Ibid. They rackon by bis Reigne, 393. 1 Wby be comes not abroad,396.30. He China words. 397.10 se the High Priest, Hiam-xan, a Mayor, 327-30 Anfam, the (ame that Hiam-xin. Hien a Citie, and Ci-hien Gonernour of a Citie. 327 Ci-hien a Gouernour of a Citie, 3 27 Aitao, the Admirall, 327.50. He is Gouernour ouer all Strangers: See Strangers. Chaen, the Pronincial Vifuer, 327 Ciai,-yuen, the fame that Chaen, O 389 60 Ci, a Gouernour. So Ci-hien, the Gonernour of the City, 327.30 & Ci-fu, the Gouernour of Sciau-328.I Thien Chu, the Lord of Heanen 328.30 Lin-ci-tan , & Gonernour of three Prominces. 329,60 Tutan a Viceroy, or Lord Deputy, 330.20 Sancei, three Warters. 333.60 Ci-lau, or Scilau, the Indge of the Countrey of Warre: 336.10 Naughan, The Southerne Inn. 336 30 Sciepathau, Eighteene Streamer, 336.50 Yamfu, the Sonne of the Sea, 337.40 La Pu, the Councell of Magistrates, 339.60.388 Chian, the greatest River, 340.39 Cho, a Riner, 340.39 Horses, a swifter fort of Ships, 341 Lu,the Tartars, Pa, or Pe, the North parts, 342.40 Szin boly or Saint. 345.10 Scingin; a Saint : the greateft title ginen to fome learned in China, 344.19. & in marg. L, vfed for N, in some Dialects. 228.10 B, seldome vsed by them, 342.40 Holy Pao, God. Scin mu, holy Mother, 345.10 Mi, a Mother, 345-10 Nian a Queene, Cheu, a great Citie. 345-10 Van van Siu, Athonfand thoufand Hien, atowne, 381.1. # 389.40

347.10 | Mui, Sea-coale. Tantu , the Priests of the learned, Cafila, a Caranan or company of Merchanes, 362.1.6.364.40 Condures, a Coine worth fenen far-Colai, the Conneellof State, 372.40 in marg. & 386. 50. 6 388 Zinzin, an Intersection of Vebanity, Pu. a Tribanall or Court , 388.30 They wave B.D.R. 403.50. They end no word in any Confonunt but M and N. Ciam Ciu , a Prefident of a Court, 388.50 Cilam , an Affiftant in Judgement, Choli, Magistrates extraordinary, 388.60 Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary. 388.60 Qin, the Court of the King .: and the Nanquin fignifies the Sontherne Court, and Pequin the Notherne Court, 389.30 Nan; Sauth ar Southerne, 189.30 Pucinfu, and Naganzafu ; Magifrates. Tauli, an order of Magistrates ibid. Yuce, Iaipar of Catais or Caicar. 290.16 Totoqui, the Law, 397-59 Ofciami, a Seit of Priests, 398.10 Ciaicum, Fasters, 398.30 Lauzu, the old Philosopher, 398.40 Hoei, Sects of Strange Religious, 400 Fu, ashire in a Promince, 403.40 Sciandai, on the Sea. Xi; Fiat, 407. 40. (fo the King fignes.) 407.60 A China-proverbe Englished, fee 409-1 Foe, Gods, 409.10 Zo ye : Cringing, 373-30 Paytre, a paper of Visitations, 373 380.30 Than, exceeding large, Yu, Rest. 380.30 Hia, great, Sciam, Adorned. Cheu, Perfect. Han, the mike way in Heauen. Min, Splandour. Ta-min, the Kingdome of great Splendour. 380.30 Chiumboa, a Garden, 380.30 Fu, a Prosunce,

Quohoa, the Court Language, 384 Tihio, The Examiner or Pofer, 38e Siducai, the degree of Bachelour of Kingin, Mafter of Ares: Quiaijuen , the Sentor Brother at Commencements. Cin-lu, Dotterfbip, 386.40 Hoamsi, Supreame Monarch, 187 Lauye, or Laufie, Eard or Father. Chinois or people of Ohina, their Perfons and Habos deferibed, 179. 40. 50. &c. : Cm infires in then Hayre ibid. How they Sa-Inte : and their common Coursefie of muiting men to Victualing boufes, 180. 10. Their entert ainments of Guests, and manner of Feasting, ibid. 30. By night, 1814 1. They weare no Weapons, ibid. to. Their Funerals and Monr. ming, ibid. 50. 0 182. 1. Their Womens customen, and Apparell, Painting and retirednesse, ibid. 20. Buying and felling of Men, ibid. 90.8ic. Magifrates mit their Creation , Prinsledges and maintenauce, 183.20. Infliees, Prifone, and Schooler, 184. and 203. Manner of administring Inflice, 186.10: Admirable di-Ligence in their Sermants, ibid. & 187. Pompe of their Magifrates in the Streetes, 200.187.07 193. Their babite, ibid. Their manner of examination of wienes es, 188. 200. Their Briberie, 186.90.80. The Religion of China, 195. 50. &c. They have Temples for them, and Oratories in their Ships, 196. I , Slight offerme of their Gods, 196.10. & 197.1. Hard to bee made Christians, and why, 197. Ø 207. Chinois, the efterme of their King 258.40. # 260. 20. Their on pinen of the Remardafter donb. 262: 4 263.2. And of the burming of the World, 266. 30 Sil-262.10. Their Hofitals, 264. They give their goods to Idals, and to have their foules praned fer. 464.40. 6 270.1. 6 277.1. Religious Orders amongst them, 264.60. 6 32. Severall Sells, 265.50. 6 272.40. Their Gods of fire, Tempest, Sea, &c. 266.

Their opinion of Hell, 267. 1.

Some Christians in Sampitay, 267.20. Chronicles and Legends of China, 267 50. Their prayers to their Gods , 267. 10. And vowes, 269.30. They beate their Idels, 319.60. Their Priests formen, 319.50 Chicos sometimes Lords of India, 269.marg. Their infinite varie. tie of Trades : no mean must meddle with anothers Trade , 270. 271. They ence Snakes, Smales. or any thing, 270. 30. Their ex treame Superstitions, 271. Then workes of Pietse, 271.30. Their Hately Trebunnte, 272.11 Their Sepulchers, ibid. 20. 0 274.20. Sacrifices of wilde Birds and Beafts, ibid. Their foure chiefe Sects, 272.60. Then inkling of the Resurrection, 274.20. Their Gods, ibid. 40. They Marry and get Starres, ibid. Their knowledge of the Flood of Noah, 275. 40. Skerne to be taught, 327.60. Their owne people beld wife for Gonernours, 276. Their Women bee white, ibid. They hold the transmigration of Soules, 277.1. They are but meane Mariners. 291.1. Their Compafe, & want of the Card, ibid. 10. They werfbip Saints Images, ibid. 20. Their Customes in comming a Shoare, 292.10. Their Benauets deferibed, 202. 30, 292. 40. 6 298.30. What Mulishe ther vfe, ibid of 302. 30. They are excellent Porters, 294.50. They weare no Weapons, 299. 20. Their State Ceremontes, upon the knee, 296. 40. 0 298. 20, 0 100. The inferiour layes afide bis frate before bis Superious 207.1. Ceremonies to the Sunne, before their Feasts, 202. Their Mefters, Attinitie, and Martiall descipline, 205.10. They inwoake the Denill in a tempest . 208. 60.0 318.10. They thinks it barbarous to bee called by their owne name, 220.40. Much addifled to Alchimie, 332. 60. 0 334.1bid. Their manner of shankesgining, 333.50. They are apt to Learning, 335.1. How men Suffected, are miede to finde out the parties off ending, ib.d. 10. the abstinence of their Idolaters, ibid 20.their teftimonie of bidding aman welcome, 339.40. Riding on Hersebacke not magnificent enough for them, 342.20. Their

Language confists most of Mo-

nofillables, 342.60. Their Lear. ning not fo admirable, 343.50. what : their Arethmeticke with Limnen instruments and Beades, 235.1. Some formes of Locucion vied by them, 244. 10. and in marg. They bowe their foreheads to the ground in fainting their Superiours, 344. 1. 30. Their chiefe Authors, ibid, 20, The prinacie of their Women, 260.1. & 344.60. They weare not fo much as Knines, ibid. 40. Their babite, ibid. Ther diftiplining of shemfelnes, ibid. 50. Their Carecbifme, 343. 1. Their knowledge of enertafting pame or reward, ibid. Taught to worfbip Samts, &c. 245. 10. Ther opin mionaf Eclipfes, ibid. 40. Their fine Elements and squorance in Philosophy, ibid. go. Then No. bilize, 346.50. Their Learning restanted up, 348.20. Their wans of Logicke, ibid, Their Philofo. phers bold them felnes equall with the Creater, 248, 20, 20, They are greedy of precious Stones, 353.10. Their Southfaying abont their Buriali, 357.10. They call their Kingdome the World and are amoved at an universall Mappe, 358.50. The hopes and binderances of their Connersion. 359. They may follow what Religuon they please, ibid. 20. Their good Capacities, ibid. Their incredulary of things after this life, 359.30. They keepe as many Wines as they are able ibid. Defiroms of Learning, 360. 30. Their Building: and other things all alike, 363,40. Their Shipping of two forts, 364.10. Their Dyat and feeding they are great Sallet-eaters, 305. 50. They eate Herfes, Mules, &c. ibid. 60. They know not bow to dreffe their Silker, 266 40. Il Diers, ibid. Their Apparelling, ibid. Their lang Hayre, ibid . Their Hats and Caps, ibid. of 376.1. Their perfons and Complexions, ibid. 10. Their trades, ibid. None rich, nor idle, ibid. 30. They have no Nobility by descent, ibid. Therr Marriages, ibid. Their Fanerals, ibid. 60. 6 268. 8c. Ther Idolstrie, 369.1. They are Sorcerers, 369.10. Then two great follies, 369.20. Most can write

there.

Chinois biebly conceiled of their

the Papacie, 375.20. Closenelle of their women, 375.50. Their apparell, ibid. Their prenention of rebellions , 3 76.30. Then lour. ness but flow and fmall, 409. mare : How and who their women make their fare bitle. A 10.60. Line long and bealthink, and why,391 sor Their haire worne bofs , till they bee twenty, 394 Their perfons defembed exactly. 394.20. Their Boyes and Girles babits, ibid. The apparell of men end wemen ibid. The change of their names often , 394.50.60. Their Games at Cards & Dice. Crc. 395.20. Their Superficions, Oc. 295.40.0 396. Their cruel tie to their owne (hildren, 196.10 and felues, ibid Their Setts , ibid. The lefuites hope many of them. were faued. Chinchintales the Proninces, 76 Chincilles an Indian benft, whose baire makes cloth. 966.40 Chingis Chan bis Vision to conquer all the World, 111.20. Ghod fen Emperent, ibid. His Limet. 111.50. His fecond Vifion, 112 40. Hu death, 111.20 Chingis the great King of Taxtary, was a Smith. Chingis fignificth the found of Iron, Cingis-chan, bis villories, 7740. Hee confutteth with bir South fayers, 77.60. The manner of it. with s Reed, 78.1. Slame and bur rued, 78. 10. His Successors all buried by him, 78.20. The Tarrars going to buriether Prince, kill all they meete. Cingis Chan, Ancester to the Crim Chiutaifo, a Chinois much furthers the lefustes in China, 335. 10. &c. His Letter to bis Mafter Ricius, Chircailes Tartars, neere Lituama. more Ciush and comely then the other Tartars, sime acknowledge the King of Polonia, and are Christened, hololla, a Citse gone to in Pilgrimegebythe Indians, the deferip-

tion, 1120. & 1123.20 Clamifin Silkeworme, 442:50 Christians which Croffes Inke upon their bands Christians in China, 359.60. But desayed, 400.1.10. Called Terzzi in Pertit, 400.20. Some nem own learning, 375. They applande made in China. 406 Christians

Chrittians in China, the fumme of | Cities of Ruffia the chiefe, 418.30 their Religion, 267. 30. & 169. 10. A Cirultian Martyred in Coins, 269.50 Christiens m Cathay & Rebat, 311 1. Their babites, Blacke and Red. ibid. All thefe are fabrilow reports. Christians many in Cauchinchina, Christians, what manner of ones the West Indians are. 998.40 Christian Chappell, & Croffe, found in Tartarie, 26,30. An Armemian Monke met .. Christians of the East will vie no Belle, and why. 21.4 Consistians of Saint Thomas, but in one Citie, 110.1 Christianitie decared in Taucica. Christianitie by what meanes aduanced by the lefutes in China, 401.1.10. The way to Preach # # Chara. Christianitie receined in Island, Christianitie, why she West India ansembraced it fo foone, 1039. Christall of the Rocke, where had, Christall-boryll, Mines of it in she Weit Indies, 874-30 Christmaff: day, December 25. sn Ruffia. C ronicles of China, bow written, and by whom, 389.10.20 Chroniclers for the Indies in Spain, Chronologie of the Mexicans, 1050 1052. And of the Peruui-Cialis the Kingdome, 313.10. The vimost bounds towards China, 314-50 Ciangalu the Citie. 94.60 Ciarcan the Pronince, where. It bath diners precions Stones, 75. Cilicia how it came to bee called Armenia. Ciment not vied in the Stone-works of the Indians. Cimbria, the Etimon of it, Cimmerian darkeneffe, 110,40 6 Cin a Tetle of the Mexicani, 1126. Cinamon tree described. 138.40 Cities, wonderfull, 12000. m China.99.60. wub Garrifons, ibid. Citie moneable, on the Water, 270.

THE TABLE. S.Claraes Hands, Clergie of Rutha their efteeme, 422, 10. Mocks in their Parliaments. 423.10.10. Called ta their Parleaments in Ruffia, Clergie of Rossia vulcarned, they Preach but swise a yeare, the Substance of their Sermon, ibid. They purposely keeps out Lear-Clerke of the Councell in Ruffia, Clete Iland, and of the Orkneyes, 827.30 Cleux, the chiefe Cuie of the Ruthenians. Cliffe falling, kils fome English, 734 Cloath deare in China, 367.1 Cloath made of Barkes, 94-40. Of Gold and Silver, ibid.co Cloath mede in the West Indies, Cloath made of the Coca Nut in the East Indies, 981.30 Cloath of Conies baire & Feathers, II 28. 10. Of Feathers alone ibid. Cloath made of Earth, which endures the Fire, 76.40 Cloues flore, 91.10 Clockes & Larums in China, their manner. Clockes unknowne to the Chinois, 356.40. They learne to keepe them, ibid. And the hearners aduanced. 357-30 Coach wub one it beele in China, 343-10 Coapeswerne by the Greeke Cler-Co.pes of the Ruffian Clergie, 227. Cobinam a great Citie in Perin, Coca Tree described, continually sheweaby the Indians of Peru, the vertues. Coca Trees and fruit described, 981. 30. Medicinable for what, why called Coca, 982,10 Coca, a leafe of Peru, the efterme. they chew it continually, & vie it for money. Coco trees of the West Indies, ake to a Palme-tree, the excellency of the Nut, and medicinablenelle of the Shell, the Nuts bane Al. monds in them. The Tree beares twelne times a yeere, 958. 20.0€. Cockes of Hispaniola, when they

60.8 270.1 Coia Acem, the Pirat, bie Story, Coiat, the Tartarian word for their Master of the Ceremonies, 12.60 Coiganzan the Cuie, 96.20 Coilac, a Citie of Merchants in Ca-Counce of Ruffia with a Horfeman and but Whip, the occasion of it, Colla in Lapland, Colan, the Tartarian mame for an Affe. Colchis, the extent, Wooddy and Monntainous, called the Petigoren Prouince, 626. Idelaters, their Customes, Cold extreame, in the vetermelt of the Torride Zone, where it fould be hote or temperate, 896.40 Cold under some places of the Torride Zone, 920 60. In the middie Region the caufe, 921.20 Cold meere the North Pole, not fo vehement as in 73 degrees, 703. Cold extreame in Tartarie, 27.1 Cold thickning the breath, 415.1. And freezing men dead, and cutting off their Nofes, Toes, &c. Coldraifes blifters on mens faces. Cold immincible, where, 497.60. When it began to relent in Nous Zembla 499. And increases aibid. # 503.50 Cold of Rullia, the experiments of Cold Bronger then Fire, 496,20. 498. It remedies ft:flings, ibid. Cold freezing the Cleathes on mens backes, Cold flopping the breath, 221.2 Cold prefernes from Putrifaction, Cockins found in Groenland, the | Cold in Nova Zembla, maker the

diftance betwier London and it.

832.10. The Latitude and Va-

riation there, ibid. & 847.50

Cochinel flore where, 907. 60. It

Coda Inforcata an Indian Fools.

Coffins for burtall, the Chinois cu-

Coffin of Campbere, preserves the

Cohilouzas a Citie in China oner-

throwne with an Earthquake, for

Martyring a Christian, 269.50.

um m Armenia,

riofitie about them, 368,30.40

Corpes, 181. Cogno, a Iconi-

69.40

bis fighting for Pelchards, 979.

growes of Wormes, how.

Beares and Foxes and Deere, | Commodities experted out of Chi-Snow-white. Colgoiene Hand, the latitude, 522 so. Deferibed Colima the Pronince and Village in the West Indies, the Lattende, and distance from the Choacan, 874, 60. The Commodities, faitung after it, Collars worne in flead of Bands, Comolen Hands. Colledge in China, 386.1. 0 389 20. O 398. The credite of the Doctors therein, Collins Cape in Greenland, 571. Colmacke, she Countrey, 235.20 40. See Variation. Colmans Point, \$92.30 Colmogro in Rullia, 214.10. 6 222.40 Colours aboundance in Iapon and China. Coola the Towne, 517.50 And Ri-966.40 Portugali. Colti, what. Concha in China, 103-10 Columbus bie Proposition to our forts and conditions. Henry the fewenth, 807.20.00 c. Comanians, are the Cumani, 53. 49. Whence they have their 114-30 Comanians, where entiently feeted, 310. 6 12.50. Ouerrune by she Tarcars, ibid. & 114. 20. Called Valanos and their Coun-trey Valania by the Dutch, Combats for tryall, fill in Mulconie, 216.60. The Combatants (weare upon the Crucifixe, 722 Combustions about the Succession in Ruffia. 420.30 Comedies of the Mexicans, 1049. 40. Birds, Flyes, Toades, &c. Perforated in them, 1049.50 Comedies in China. Comet feene by Day in Mexico, 1020.60 Cornet feen in Iapon, Anne,1 505. Comet 1577. feene fenen dayes foomer in Peru then in Spaine, and wby. 025.10. Its motion. Combay & Port. 246.40 Commencements in China, 200. China, 285.40.50. Their Commencement Henfe, 386.1. The manner of their Examination, ibid. Common, all is among & Tartars,

Common-wealth first to bee refe e-

Commodities of Pechora, Siberia,

the Tinguifies,

Permia, Ougoria, and among

Communion, received but once a yeere in the Ruffian Church, 452.1. Confession before it, the Order, first to gine both in a Spoone, and then both kindes fenerally, 452.10. Their murth and 259.20 Comoron beautifull Women, 242. Compalle made to got falle by Iron Compaffe, the vie of it, 241.50 Compafie varies not in Shotland Hes, 967. Nor in Lofoote, 581. Complements # China, 391. 20. Complement in Ethiopia, 253. Composition betwixt Spaine and 330.10 199,10 Concombres as Indian fruit, the Concubines freely kept in Poland, 629 Confession bow exterted in Tarta-Confession Sacramentall, not known to the Neftorians or Armenians Confession awienlar, imitated by the Douill in his Idell Ciremo. nies, 1941. 50. See Auricular Confession alomed vied in lapon, a borrible Story of that, 1042.30 Confutius, the Prince of the Loarned in Chino, 347.40. Honoured with a Holiday Sacrefices, Temple and Musicke, wird, & 397.30, Hu Age, worker and Authoritie, 384.50.0 285 med in China, 306.40. The faperflitions ofed then, ibid. c. 20 Conquerones are to promoke the Enemy to fight fuddanly, but the Defendant is to prostact time. 148.60 Constellations 24. immered in Contagion in Summer, occupioned by milda Winters, .... 637-1 Contomanni, a people in Cataye, Contractic sanfes producing the the effects: 919:10 Concroversies ended by hiffing the Confe-934-10. The Orders when , or allid. both (weare,

Spaniards, 1024, 1024, 20; 18 Connicted by Law, are fined to the Emperour of Rolling 429,300 How much 434 25. How afterwards weed. Cookerie in Cathava Copies of Patents keje in China, Copper Mines were hard in the Work Inches \$75.10 Copper worker, Copperated by the Indians for to make their Arioner of 941. 90. defefed now. Copper ment with Sold in the Mine, Coquimbo River in Chile, the Lasame. Corai the Kingdome, 324.20, En-tred in befile manner by the Iaponians, 325.30. They wanted Arrillerie, Corafnie the Citie and Kinedome. 109. 20. Walton Learning or Ratigion, Corchu the I land . Catdage of Reedes, Cordage of a Woods, very frong, is fares from in preces 986.30. 6 Gordage of Wooll and Horfe-bairs in Tartarie, 6.40 Cosdi che Mountainens people, et fewerall Religions, Cores, where the Chinais 209. 60. 277.10. Innaded by she faponians ibid. Roloited by the Chinois again & lapon, ibid, Quatedby the China King, Corela in Rullia, granted to the Sweden, 799 50. Corcliarbe Courtrey Commente Fifter 161.60.0 415.30. The Fiftermen pay a tribute for it. Cormorant Fifting in China, 179. Corne flung on the new Married. the meaning, Allert Comowow grower in the cold parts of Ruffia. Corne burged with the Indiana to fore in the sent World, 1974-30 Corne and Went, who work he Nous Hapania, Ming har 85.20 Corne or the ground, the Indian Comminter for the geoming of it, Coronation of the Emperour of Ruffia, the forme that & 741. The excidency State of it, Coversions of the Indian by the | Coronation of the Kings of Ment-

co, 10:6.10. His Charge, ibid. @ 1009.20. His Oath, fashion of bu Growne, and Enfigues, 1006. 10. His Amojning, 1009: 30. His Throne and Enfigues of Warre then ginen bim. ibid.60. Oration; made to bim. of his Charge, 1006.1.1089.20. 1011.20. Foure chiefe Elettors, 1014.40: He is led to the Tem. ple to the continual Fire before bis Coronation, bid. The Feaft and other Ceremonies, ibid. They must goe to Warre before their Coronacion sofetch in Profeners to facrifice to their God, at the Imanguration, 1006,1009,1017 20. The King offers Incenfe and drawes Blood of bimsfelfe with a Griffons talon. 1014. & 1018. 40. His Robes, and Emerald bung in hu Noffrils, ibid. & 1016.1. Masker, de. at their Coronation, 1019.40 Coronation of the Inguas of Peru, the Cerements, 1055.1.10 Corpo Santo when oft feene at Sea, 718.20 Corpus Christi Feast of she Papolls, mutated by the Mexicans. 1040 40. 50. And in Peru, Indies, the diftance fromthe ..

Corriences the Cope in the West Indies, the distance from the West Indies, the distance from the extending the strong at the str

Cofackes of Russia, 766, 304 779, 40. They are Barkemen in Rusia, 243, 20. Of the Law of Mahumet, 240, 40. Their Guall Warres, 633, 10. Fights with she Tartars, iibid. Cofin Gaman; maryadin Norway,

mben, 656.40 Colmon and Caracolmon, a drinke of Mares milke, bow prepared by Tarcars, 5.30. A tribute of Mares milke for their Princes, 5.50. The effects of Colmon drinke by A Stranger, 9.10 Cofmon webstefore for a bunger-

farmed man, 40.30 Colmos fail powred out to their I. dols by the Tartan, before themfelmendrinks of it, 4.30.40.5c.

Foliace drinks of is, 4, 30, 40, 60.

Softmas of physics Mares, so Subsect in the Hol Cranes of fine Cranes of fine Sarrification with it, on the 28, of Artificial with it, on the 28, of Craftingare, bid.

Cosnos, the Christians of the Greeke Church, hold themfelius Excimentation of this drinks is 9, 50. 80 to 10, 25. And things themfelius dammed for at 0. They hold that and Carrien about the same of the same of

Coins the River, \$13-40 Cotam the Pressure, 74.60 Cotam the Knigdome, 311. 50. Where, 74.60 Cotayan Maphe or Logher, deere fold in China, 505.20 Cofta Rica, the farthoff part of the Wetl Indies towards the North, the extent of its Invifation, the Section of States (Section 2018).

Cotting Sarch, is Nous Zembla, 579-40.marg.
Cotton Tree described, 206.20
Cotton great stere of, 70.10
Cetton Weell growns like Apple.
977-50
Cotton infinite stere in China, 381.

Coulam, 106. Christians & Iewes mixt there. The Commedities, ibid, 16
Councell of Warre in Tattarie, 68,

Councellours of State, emblished in Ruffia,43,11. Some vfed meily for State, and not for Councel, 427.50. Their Names in Delive Fletchers time, ibid. Their Office, Stating dayer, and boures, 428.10

Countries betwire Ruffig and Catay, 799 Court of the Tantarian Princes, 16.

Court of the China Kings varied
toute, 393.
Courtiers the vis of them, 233.1
Courtier required. 88.60
Courtier required. 219.1
Courtier required. 391.10
Cow es with lumpes on their backet,
877.30

Cowes fauge to, at milking, 47,40
Cow-bayre Garments in Ruffin,
460,20
Cowes togle for a Prefent, 242,20
Cate, a Forreife of the Templers
in the Hold Land, 29,11 aim marg.
Cranes of fine feneral force, 80,30
Crane Feathers warne, for killing of
Tartars, 62,0

Creatures of the fame kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to their natural places, 950.40 Creation not beard of in Chins,

Creeples bow fee to works in China, 276.1 Crimme the Land, and Crimme

Crimme the Land, and Crimme Tartars, they bee Mahumetans, 232.60 Crim Tattars their Countrey, 414.

1.0 439.30 Crim Tartars inbabite the Taurica Cherionelus, 632. Called Pcrecop Tartars, ibid. They inhabite the Conneries of Moldatin, Podolla, de. Amengit the Turkes and other Natines, 633. Their Cottages, Forts of shalls, oc. ibid. They enerthrow the Nagayan Tartars. Diners of their chiefe Townes, ibid. The chiefe Palace of their Chan, 634.40. Their Seguichers, ibid. Their Country and the Commodities, their Cain Crimum (whence their name of Crims,) 635. Their Mint there, ibid. They are the old Ianolgena ces. How and when they came in-40 Taurica, 637,30. Defcended from Cingis Chan : their Noble litie, Princes, and other nates of Policie, and their (ubiettion to the Turke, ibid. Election of their Chans, 638. 10. The Princes jounger Sonnes, are called Sola dans,ibid. His Printe Councell, 637 40.0 638.20. They learne Arabicke, the education of their Children, Ge. ibid. Their Relagion, Lawes without Lawyers, no delayes of c. ibid. No wranglers. mer excessine ,629. 1. Till mot their Ground : their Diet, Lining, Sermants, Merchants, Tribute, Ama baffadours or .. ibid. The Princes composition with bis Neighbears, ibid. 40. And with the Turke, 640.1. Then Warres, and what belongs to that, ibid. & 641. Their flore of Horsemen, their

Crim Tattats, their Warres unite Ruffin, 439. 20. The caufe of their quarrel, brid. His Horfe cases Oates out of the Ruffan Emperoirs Cap, 400.1. The times of his manding the Ruffe, third. 10 Their Fights, Armes, and Appaell they the Turke, ibid. Hos they poffe a Rimer: their bardin-

Armes redemption of Prifances,

Stratagems, &c.642. Defendine.

Enfignes, Miluarse rewards,

neffe, subtilities, ibid. A Storie of their deceining the Hungaria 2ns mub their owne Scale, 440. 30. Their Seiges, Stratagems, and contempt of Death, ibid. Defire of Captines, their promiton to carry them. Ther Religi. on, Idols, remerence to their Prinses Image. Sercerie, Marriages, Nobilitie, Dyet , and dwellings, 441. They let their Horfe blood and druke it, ibid. Their bords or wandring Cities,442.1. Their Frontiers, Complexions, Persons, Speech, Songs , Archerie, &c. ibid. The fenerall forts, Tribes, and appellations of Tartars, ibid. 20. They naturally bate the Ruffe, 451.30. And that binders their Connersion,

Crimum, a Citie of the Crim Tartars, 635. The Storie of it, abid. Criminall matters bow proceeded in, in Russia, 434

crimfon colour, the derination of the word, 442 50 Crying of Commodities about the firestes in China, 209 Crit or Merkie, Nestorian Christia

Crocodiles, see Lezards. The sine medy whose Rusers: low Creatwes, there manuser of feeding. their bastels with the Types: Storie of an Indiana killing a Crocodile, 931,10,20 Crocodiles dispeopling the Coun-

trey, 872.50
Crotter Staffe carryed before the Bifloops of Ruilia, 447.1
Croffe much vsed in the Greeke

ans in Catav.

Charch, 455, 10, They figure themfelses with it. biol. Which is their ordinary Thank efferaints for Sleepe, Meast, Sc. They arme themfelses with it. and account it the chief figure of a true Chritilian, bid. They sweare by it in Contrant for the chief.

Crosses of Chalke made oner their ten,
Doores on Twelfth-day, 455. Crusado P.
Crosse wied at the Ordination of the Emm.

Priests in the Greeke Church,
447.50
Crosse the signe vsed at the Bishops
benediction at a Coronation, 421.

Croffe, the Mulcouite Priests bleffe withall, 227. Ved in Baptisme,

219.30 Crosse carryed to Assemblies for Indicature, 667.40 Crosse kissed to end Controversies, 434-10. Il here this Ceremony is personned, ibid. This is their Corporall or booke Oath, ibid. See Crucifixe.

Croste made by the Nestorians and Armenians without Christ open is, 13-50.0 32-10 Croste, Rubarbe, and Holy-water, bow they cured a Tattarian Lady

Croffe advanced for an Enfigue by a
Tittle Prince: The lewes derides, by Cublia Chan defruit
it,
Sanao
Croffe, the Chinois experife by the
Charalter of Ten,400.1. Renerenced by them,
269.50
Croffes of Laten on the Wetl In-

Croftes of Laten on the Well Indies, before the Spaniards come the ther, South and the South Crofte a Confederation feem in the Indies, Latitude takes by it, but fabrell is errow: the different from the South Fale, 918, 20 Croftes Hand deferbed, 475, 30. 531.1. Crofte Hand, 22,50

Crofte Road in Greenland, the
Latitude. 704. 1. And variation of the Compafe, ibid. &

Crofting after the Iaponian manner, 22:30

ner, 335:30 Crowes, whose dang is landing Wormes, 993 Grownes sixe of the Russian Emperour, 741:30 Crowne of the Kings of Peru, 1055:11. Of those of Mexico,

Crowne of the King of Mexico, the that of the Duke of Venice, 1005,10 Crucifixe fuorme upon, 217, 1.10.

See Croile.
Crucifixe, a Chinois sufficients
Indgement upon 11,355-40. The
report that were abroad of it,
bild.

Crucible made of burnt boues beaten, 951.40 Crulado Preacht against the Tartars, 61.1.663.10. Against the Emperour by the Pope, 62.30

to comparent by the Pope. 62.20
Cuba Iland, the first Names, first
Difcoursed, the length and
breadth, Latitude, Defertytion,
Monotantes, Rusers, Ides, Trees,
CMinns, first peopling, Villages,
Ports, Capes, distance of places, Ore.
Chapter, Iland, but these, 1663.

Cubagua Iland, but three Leagues compasse, 999. 20. The Pearle-fishing removed thence to Mar-

garita. The Ites by it, 866. 36. The Latitude, ibid. See alfo 868.

Coblai Chan, the chiefe of all the Tartarian Princes, 66.10. Nicolo and Milto their learney of a year long, to his Court, phu! Their entertainment. His queflionite them about the Cuntilia ans, 68.30. Sends to the Pape for Prachers, ibid. His Death;

Cublai Chan, signifies Lord of Lords, 81.40. A most mightie Prince, ibid. His descent, Age, Wiscome, &c. ibid. His Dea scription, 82.40. His Children

Cublai Chan, 114.10. A Christia an, ibid; Cublai Chan, kuses the Gospels selemnels, 82.20. How her rewards his Souldars, 82.30.

Cuchimiocos what in Chinese,

Cumania or Comania she Kingdome described, 109.40 Cumberlands lles, the Lastinde, &47.40 Cunchetee she Lake, 281.40

Cunninghams Mount in Grones land, 817.20 Cunninghams Foord, a Silver Mine there, 824.20. The Latin

tude, Section 1 be Latitude, Cups of China, like Nat-fells, 391.40 Cups of Caco Nat-fhells, their ver-

Cur or Cyrus the Riser, which gives name to the Curg, or GAorgians, 49, 10. Falls min Ataxes, ibid, 20.

Curcum a Hauen of Cilicia, whereabouts, 51-30. cf in marg. Curdiffan in Perin, 70.50 Curds dryed as hard as Iron in Tartaria 5.60. How kpp, and ca-

Cure of a Tartarian Lady by est Armenian Chanke, 32.40 Curtee Bell in Cambaly, 33.50 Curla Muris, 25.60 Curland, the people Idelators, 6-6 628. Called Curonns, 54.1 Curonn is Curland, 77.10.6

Customes payed by Merchants me China, and Cockets taken one, 190.30. How estimated 194.1. How gotten by the Officers, 206.

Cuftomes

D, the Chinois want it, 328. Dacia is not Denmarke, 60. 20. in margine. It comprehended Tranfiluania, Walachia, and Molda-Dai: i or the Vo in Iapon, the Of-

fice, 324.10. Tunlar Kings, ibid. Ø 226.1 Daman the Iland, 168, 20. Hath the Damasks, the Chinois learne

to make them. Damaicus wenne by the Tartars for the Christians, 1 22.50. Betrayed againe by Caifach to the Saracens, 123. 10. Besieged a. gaine, but in vaine,

Dampes and darkeneffe of the Sil. ner Mines. 946.50 Dancing curious in Mexico, on the Rope, 1065-10-20 Danes Fishing in Greenland, 731

Danes came out of Scandia 620.10. When first : their bumaine Sacrifices and Dusinations, ibid, The extent of the word Danes, and their fenerall innations of England, ibid, &c. Their fonlings of England. Their Maffaere, and renenge,621. More of their Storie.

Danegelt, 621.10 Danieloue Stolbe, on the Coast of Darkeneffe in the day time where,

494 50. How long it beld, 499. Darziz a Citie in Armenia, 69.50 Date-Wine medicinable for the Phislicke, Droplie & Spleene, 103.

Dates the best, where. 70.10 Daughters disbouestie, a shame to the Parents, 1044-40 Danis, bis three Voyages, 463.50 Day of time ftrangely lost within a very Short flace, 939. 10. The Philosophicallrea fon for it, ibid. Day and Night of many Moneths 107.10 Day light, three Moneths together, 617:40 Day long time together, 574. 575. Day ten weekes long, 580.50

Dayes good or bad, obserned in China. Dayes many Moneths long in licland, 647.30 Dayes names of the Mexicans,

1135.40 Dayes, the fine odde ones lost enery geere at Mexico, 1050,10 Dayes and Nights made longer or fhorter, by the Obliquenes or rightnesse of the Zodiacke, why longer in England then in Italy or Spaine : Difcourfes about this Proposition, 920. 40. 50.

Day, see Night. Dayntic meanes neglected by the Tartare, Deacon, one under enery Parish Priest in the Greeke Church, 448.30. His Office, ibid. Ma. ny in their Cathedrals, ibid. Deacons of the Rutenian Christians married.

Dead not foyled by the Tartars, Dead bodies and their figures wor-(bipped by the Indians, 1028.50 Dead eaten in the Indies, where, 800.20

Deformed people kept by the Mexican Kings, Dead, the Tartars abomination of them, 26.60, And thefe that Dead the Chinois burne Incenfete.

268.10. How carried to the buriall, their Superstitions about their Coffins, Dead, their Housholdstuffe purged with Fire in Tartaria, 44.1 Dead bow conferned whole by the

West Indians, a Philosophicall Dead best unbarred all Winter in Russia, Prayers faid oner their

Dead worlhipped by the West Indians, and their Figures alfo, 2028. 50. Children Sacrificed tothem. 1029.20. People killed to ferme them in the next World : their opinion of the State of the Dead. Gold and Garments burned with them, and meates brought to their Graves, ibid. Their buryall of the Dead, Deanes m the Russian Church,447.

Dearth, the Tartars premifion against it, 87. 50. Fatherly Roy-Dearth provided against, 276.20 Debters cruelly vied, 434.30. En-

forced to fell Wines and Children.

and to bee their Creditors Bond. Debters , a Circle drawne about them, which they passe not, till they bane pased all, 105.10 Debters bow vfed in China, 204.10 Deepes Cape, 599 40 Deere all without Hornes in the Well Indies, 962 Deere lamed, and why, 270.40 Deere in Greenland. Deere white, in Nous Zembla, 577.

Degrees of Learned men, three in China, 385. 30. Ther babne, how distributed into the Proninces and Cities, ibid. 2 386.60 Degree, is 20. Spanish leagues, 856 Dely and Chytor, the Kingdome,

Demetrius, diners others Impofters of that name after bim. The Storie of the fecond Demetrius. 770. 20.30. Counterfeits the band-writing of the former. His freech to the Scottish Captains of his Guard, Uphalden by the Poles, ibid. Forfaten by the King of Poland, befieges Moso with an Armie of Ruffians, 779. 60. The Poles and Ruffes inning against bim, bee is murtue-red by a Tartar, 780.1. His true name was Vot, 786. 10. The Poles promife to kill him, ibid. Hee marries the Wife of the former Demetrius, and fhee leades an Armie of Ruffes and Poles, ibid, Other presenders of that name, 788.20

Demetrius the Greeke, bis Tranels 211.6 c. Stayes at Cabul, 212. Comes on to Hiarchan, 313. In danger there, ibid. Threatned to be flaine, Derbent, or the Porta Ferrea, 12, 50. Neere Perfin, 16.20 Derbent is Miralis, 110.10 Derbent in Media, a Garrison of Turkes. The English Merchants trade thisber, 245 & 246. Variation of the Compasse there, 247.10. The Wall described, ibid. Derbent at the foot of Caucafus, 113 30. Deftroyed by the Tartars, ibid.

Demerrius Prince of Ruffa marthered, 744.50. Boris Sufpetted for it, 745.1. Hee or an Impoftor in bis name, claimes the Empire in Boris bis time, 750.1. A falle Victorie oner bim bruited at Mosco, His Letters to the Nobilitie at Mosco, after the death of Boris, 752. His Meffengers tortured, 753. 20. Acknowled- | Diall in China, ged for the true D metrius by A Prime Counfellour, 1bid. 40. His pretences, 755. 60. His Ayde from the Pope and Poland, 756. Makes bemfelfe knowne first, to the lefustes in Poland, 576 to. The Conditions of Affiftance. Is asded by Poland : his first fortunes. A Priests bastard, bis prayer before any Battell, is defeated, and defeates. Some places yeeld to bm,757. Hu proffer to Boris refused, bee and Boris impeach one another of Magicke, ibid.30. Gers the Empere, bu first Atts in fanour of the Poles and lefuites, 575. Senas for a Wife into Poland, offers a League against the Turkes. His Letter to the English Agent, and palle to bim. Faueurs the Englith. 7 . 8. His true name, ibid. 20.40. Sends to certific the King of England of all. Commands the Emperour Boris bis Letters to King lames, from Sir Thomas Smith, Grants a new Commission to our Merchants, 759.0 760. His Articles. of Contract with bie Wife, 76 1. 30. ere. Her loynture. His promife to bring in Poperie : both Crowned, a Confiracie against him, bis Guards of forreyners, quarrels betweet the Polish Ambaf-Sadour and bim, 762. Proued an Impostor by his owne witnesse. Is staine in a Conspiracie, bis Carcasse consumetionsly vsed: bis Wife or the Poles ill vled. 762 His vices ript up, his Parentage and Education. His person, and manners,764. His intention for change of Religion, bee trufts Strangers, his Ussions before his Death, which is reported another way, 765. His Acts and death described by his Successour, which begins, Page, 765

at, by the Tartars, 126.50 Defolation, false layd downe in the Cart, 596. An Iland in the West of Groneland, 597.60 Desolation or Groineland, 463.60 Defire promoketh : the Land, 596.

Derbent, new Fortifications built by

Deffeada, the Latitude, 858.30 blacke, where, Diadem of the Kings of Peru, 1054.60. What and bow worne. 1055. 1. Of the Mexicans, Divels carrying away Men, 75.20. Degs bow drest and eaten in Chi-1062.50

Diamonds fore in Shar by Bactria

Diamonds found. 100.10 Diamonds where, and how found, 105.40 Dice-play frequent in China, 395.

Dieges Iland, the Latitude, 609. 60. The South-Sen open to

Dinie a Fruit, eaten fer Drinke, 236.40 Diraford in Island. 597.40 Discoveries of Spaine and Portugall by East and West, meete at China and the Philippinaes,

Narth Sea red by Indian Gold, 1111.1

Displing vied by the Maxicans in

betwiet Spaine and the Indies, 858.859

Island, 643. Into Groneland, 651. Almost killed with the Mountaine Hecla, 635. Paffes into Portugall,

Diucil could doe nothing, when a Christian was by,

Diveli innoaked in a Tempest, 308. 60. Answers to the Chinois. The West Indians familiaritie with him, his Imposture, and Sacrifices: bee bash bis Consulters. and Pythagorean Monkes, the 973.974. Images of his, his threatning of Tempests, &c.974. For what end bee foresells things to ceme, 1020. 20, in margine. Hungry for Mans flelb, 1039.10

Dingo a Ruffian Coya worth a Pen-

Discourrie of a Passage in 47. De-grees, from the South Sea to the Dilease of the Spaniards hearts, cu-

Disputation of Frier William with the Idelaters & Neitorians, 41. 50.0 42.10.00

their Lents, 1035.50.60 Diftances of the chiefe Harbours

Dithmar Blefkins, bis Tranels to Diue-doppers ftrange ones in Ife-

309.1.10. Worshipped, 283.10. 196.30. And wby, 201.50. manner of their Coniurations. Drg. Filb, barkes. Diuels carrying away men in Ca-

Diuell painted white, and their Idols 105.40 Diuels consulted with in China, 395.60

346.30 | Diuell how worthspeed a Shipboord by the Chinois, 318.20. 30.40. His power in illand,

646.10 Divine Apothegme of the King of France, Diuinitie thought by the Indians, to be in any thing that was rare in its kinde. Dimnacions of the West Indians. 1043.50. Their trickes, 1044.1

Diuitiers, are the Tattarian Priefts 8.30. Called Can, 14.50 Dimnation wfed in China, 369. Dinorce for barrennesse vrged in

Ruffia, Divorce in Mexico, and the Conditions. Diueltes insupportable. 1026.10 Dieiners are the Tartars Prieits. 22.20. Like boufbold Chaplames. ibid. Their Offices, ibid.40

Diminations by lifting of Dust, 38. Divination in Tartarie, by ibe Shoulder bones of Rammes, 31.

Diuell imitates Christian Ceremon Dials going with water, firangely,

Dialling first brought into China, 329.60.0 339.20 Diet of the Chinos, Dying of Colours in the West Indies a strange way, 985.2 Dyes of China, naught, Dyuers for Pearles, bow long they bold their breath. 957.1

Dyuing an boure together, 972.

Doctors title, before their deeres in China, 370. They are the Noblest people, 371.10. Their refo-Inten to doe inftly. ıbıd. Dectorship, a great Dignitie in China, Doffrehall Mountaine in N I way 661.20 Dogs eaten in China. 381.40

650.30

Dogs anny vied, to expell Porfon, Dogs of Groneland described. vfed to draw like Horfes, 828.40 Dogs dearer then Children m Ifeland. Dogs drawing in Sleds, their (wift-, nesse, Dogges, the Indians companions,

Ø 79.50 na,

D leoi Iland, upon the River of Pechora, c 3 2. Ses alfo pag. 5 38. 50. Two of that name, 1bid, 20 Domingo Citie in Hilpaniola, deforibed, the distance from Spaine, Latitude , Villages about it, and their (enerall diffances, first peoplings, Commedities, erc. 861.

St. Domingo Citie in Hispaniola, described. Dommes Haff, a Bay, 223.20 'Dono, a title of Hovenr in Iapon, Dor a Cathayan King, and bu fore

Court, 89, 20, Hu Penance, Dofhnikes or Boates in Ruffia, 243

Downies great in Ruffia, 454.1 Dragon, the Armes of the King of China, Dragous in the West Indies, 976

Dragons, the Chinois Superstition about them, 395.60 Drago 18,91.50. How taken, 92.1. Their Gall medicinable, ibid.

Drie Sea, by the River Pechora, Drinke made of Rice, Mill and Honey, 4.50. And of Mares milke, 5.30. And of Comes Charnel milke,

Drinke bot in China. 366 I Drinke-Offerings in China, 392.1 Drinking games, Drinke of Rice, excellent, 25.50. Like white Wine. Drinke of the Mexicans to pro-

cure ioyfulacfie before Death. Drinkes hote in China, good for the Stomacke and the Stone, 291.

Drinking Feails of the Tartars, 4. 20.40.00. Mufiche at them,

Drinking Feafts of the Islanders,

Drinking away ones felfe & Chil-Dioina Riner in Ruffia Namigable

one thousand miles, 744.10 Dronden in Norway is Nidrofia. An Archbifbons Sea, 651.30

Drugs of the West Indies the kindes, and vfes, 959.40.50. 960.1 418.1

Drums buge ones, Drums, to make their Horfes goe, Drunkards are for the Emperours fernice in Ruffia, 43 1.40. Why

they increase,
Drunkennede not punisht in Tatta-Duckes going and returning, at found of Drumme, Duckes bow fedde in China, 174. 40. Artificially bred

Sir Dudley D gges bu Cape, the Latitude. Duina the Riner, 213.60. & 223. ço. Duina the Riner, 415.40 Duina she Riner, where it falls into

the white Sea. Dake of Brabants Stile, to the yeare 1241.

Dukesm Ruffia of the fourth deores of Nobilitie: their descent from younger Brothers, 425.30. They bane no inberitance, glad to bee Serning-men. Ding a good Commeditie in Chi-

189 40 Dung, Breadbaked in it, 34.20 Dung bonghe by found of Taber, Dung of Birds a ftrange report of it

Dutch defterbe the English at Greenland 466. See, Netherlandets. And agame, 467. 1. 6 ibid.20. The English take fome of their Fan from them. bid. At difference with the English there, ibid.60. They Fish per. force, branes and threatens the English, and is surprized, 468. 1.10. They returne to Greenland to drine away the Enelish. ibid.40. They affault the Eng. lish, ibid. Beate and rifle them, and onerthrow their Voyage, \$69.1.10. So doe they the next two or three yeares after, they foyled the Greenland Desconeries 472.60. Some Discoueries of theirs, towards Nous Zembla. 473. Oc. Their bard Voyages thither, ibid. 474. Oc. They are forced to Winter and build a Honfe thereabouts , 490. 6. Their often and dangerous Fights with the Beares, ibid. The Elenation under which they Winted. 497.10. They line upon Foxes, 495.0c. They get to Sea a. gaine, 508.1. Their dangerous

Voyage into Ruffis, 509. Their admirable returne into Holland, 518

digge Gold and make Armour Dutch Knights, their Alls in Pruf-626.627

Dutch Fift at Greenland . 716.30. Forbidden, ibid. Wubstand the English. Durch men pull downe our Kings Armes in Greenland, 727.1. Their intollerable infolencies,

Dwellings all underground in lieland,

E Agle found by the Mexicans by Oracle, and worshipped : the Storie of it, 1004-40. Strange florse of another Eagle there, Earthquakes in Island,

Earth in China fbining like Gold, 265. Marg. Earth thought to be fquere, 329.40 Earth why it mones not about with she Primum Mobile, 924-50 Earthquake in China,

Earthquakes, a Philosophicall delcom fe of them, 940.00. Affini. tie betwie: burning Mountames and them : they bappen nearest to the Sea, and why some raune a bundred leagues, ibid. Their offects, noyfe they make before, when they mostly happen, 941 Earthquakes in China, 198. 10.

Earthquakes frequent in Peru, whence they proceed, 895.20 Earthquake a prodigions one in the West Indies, 868,20 Earings generally worne by the

Ruse Women, Eatl winderaignes within the burning Zone, 923. 50. Healthfull, called the Brife, ibid. Caufe of the

Eafter the Ruffes bane a Festimall greater then it, 762.50. This is about the fourteenth or fixteenth of May. Conferre the places

page 762. with page, 764. Eafter in Rullia how kept, 227. 60. They falute and kiffe one another, 228.1. On the Ene they fleepe in the Church. Eafterne people generally bane little

Eyes, Eating neere, a Tartarian Honour,

Eating of Men facrificed in Mexico.

226.1 Dutch men in Tartatie, fet to Ebbe and flome muchor little, what

THE TABLE

Seas doe, and what do not, 989.30 Ebbing and flowing of Sourral Seas. A great fecret,9 29.9;0. Opmi-

ons of st. Ebone wood whence brought , 938

Eclipies the Chinois opinion of Ecliples the Chinois opinion of them, 385-10. Bels beaten then,

Elges Hand disconered, 732.10 Edenborow in Scotland more Northerly then Mosco, and yet not fo cold; and why, 472.40 Edeffa the Citte, or Robais, 110.50 Eddie winds. Egges at Eafter ginen to the Priefts. 227.50. Diedred or gilded, and carried in the hand, then, ibid. Exchanging them with their 228.1 friends. Egregaia the Pronince, 80.10 Elements worfbipped by the Mexi cans. Elements fine in China, 345.50 Elephants carrying woodden Ca-

ries that way. Elkes or Loshes, men ride upon Elbing, the English trade for Flaxe ther places, 617 there.

Elfenore in Denmarke, bom bigge, Emanuel Sina bis mifebance, 318

Ember-weekes of the Heathen Mexicans, Embaffie of the Ruffian Lords to the King of Poland : the points

Emeralds'a Myne of them where, 884. 40. 6 885.30. How they 889.20

Emeralds have the third place amongst Precious Scones; bis va-Inc now. A prestic flory of them. where in the Indies is the greatest flore, and bow wied by the indians: the Myees and manner of growing : greatnesse of some moderne and ancient,

Enchanted fleepe, 45. 10. Sleepe mchanted, of three dayes long, 45 Enchantments of the Iflanders : how they hinder ships from far-

646.20 Engines of battery. Engines of wood to two fbips, 341.1 Enol ih aydes fent into Sweden,

772.1. The conditions of their

fire fe at Sea, and landed in luitland, ibid. Reliened by a Dane : the Ship that brought them failes away. They are billetted in fene. rall Houses, in danger of the people, 773. Faifly accused by Gritfin a Welchman, 774.1. Bound in their beds, pr. bound, 774.40. & c. Foure of them flaine, all in danger againe, released by the King of Denmarke , enforced to pawne their Liemenant, arrive in Sweden, 774. Fall foule with the Burgers of Stockholme for mene, ibid. Relieved by the King, flipt into Finland , and distreit there at Sea, dye of cold in Finland. Their miferable march into Ruffia, 776. They defeat fixe then fana Poles, 777. They meete the Ruffian Army, being engaged upon an Enemy, their owne Army and Generall for fakes them, their valour, their Horse defeated, the foot receive quarter,

English right to the North west puffages, \$65.40. Their Discone English conquests in Sweden, 6:1

40. And Norway, 623. Two 0-English finde America before Columbus his Voyage thicker, 808

English flagge admanced in the Calpian Sea, English bonfesin Ruffis, 755.10 English Merchants flaine in a tn. mult at Mosco, An English man bis strange Ad-

mentures amongst the Tariars, 62 40. Hu relation of them, ibid. Sent as the Tartars Meffenger and Interpreter to Hungarie, 64 10. His tranels, 64.10,20.0c. English Voyages to the Rimer Obi,

English Voyage to the West In-English Ships on the Coast of C ina,

309.40. Sufpetted by the Chinois, ibid. The Spaniards would purish them as Enemies, 310.40 English fuffer fhipwracke in Media, 246.40

Enfigne of the Tartars, Entertainments in China : the fa-Shion, 373.20. A particular garment for it, Entertainments in Cina, 392.1

Epethites of the feneral Europæan Nations, 63.1 Erareckoned by in Iapon, 323 40 Ergibulibe Kingdome in Tangut, Efforiland the Ite : Latine fpoken there, 610. Their Language, Mynes of Gold, trade & c.611.1 Estruges in Peru terrific the ficepe,

Ethicks the Philosophy of Chine, Ethicks and Politicks are the lear-

ming of China 343 Ethicks the learning of China, 384

Etilia or Volga dinidet it felfe, and where, 48.10. Frezen oner 48. Etilia or Edel is Volga,

Etiliau the Riner Volga, 12:40 Euerlafting punifiments, not beitened by the Indian, 1047.10 Eunuclies on China, and why, 183 Eunuches great men in China, 346

& fæpt. Eunuches are bed-chamber men to the Tartarian Emperours, 310

Eunuches ferne the Kings of China bow made, oc. Their name bers and choice, Eunuches their authority in China. 349.20.0 348.40. Their bafe-

neffe,353.20. And conetonfueffe, Euphrates the bead of it, 49.40 Euphrates bends Southward at Ca-

mash. Europe when first peopled, 661.50 And where, Europe parted from Alia, by the Don. Examination in Russia, is all by tor-

ture,434. The eruelties, ibid. Examinations bow taken in China, 188.20. 0 192.50. 0 203.50 Excelle in luxury, dyes and apparelle unknowne to the Tartars, 639. 1 Execution done by freezing to death.

Exorcifme in Baptifme vfed in the Ruff an Church. Exorcifing of Deuls in China: the manuer. Extreme-vnction , a Ruffian Sa-

Executions of death in Riffia,

crament. Extreme-vnction , not knowne to she Neitorians or Armenians,

Eye-falue a prefent one, 967.40 entereainment, 771.1,10. In dia Epitcopia a Monastery in Cyptus, Eyes all the Chinois hane blacke,

367. 10. Their opinion of grey Ezinathe Citie, where,

Aces famore, Factio ism Ruffia rayfed by the Emperiur, 424.1. The wicked vie be made of it, and bu reason Falanks what, in Chinese, 319 20 Filco's the best in the World, 71 1

Fall of a River very terrible, where,

Famine a mighty one in Rullia,752

Fanfor, a Kingdome of Taua, 104 Fans vfed in Cinna, 283.50. Hew made, ibid. The ordinary prefent,

Faria bis Alnentures, 252, to 263 Wracked and relieved by a Kyte, 256. Escaves admirably. Faft of the Neitorians three weekes

before Lent 21.1. When beganne and ended, ibid. They ease flesh on Frydayes, ibid. O.ber of their Rives.

Fatt of the Armenians, fine dayes before Lent, for Saint Sorkis,

Falting from flest not obsernedin M igaila, Soo. T Faiting in China from flesh, fish, Faiting before visitation of Sepul-

Fasting broken by necessitie, 19.20 Faitings of the Mexicans in honour of their Gods : the extreame ftrictneffe,

Faits in time of drought in China, 406.10 Fate, all affayled to it in China.

396.1 Faxiba Cicugendono, vimps all m Iapon: his doings, and intended conquest of China, 324.20. His Letters to the Spanish Viceroy, ibid. Vnites the Iaponian Dominions, ibid. He forbids the lefuits to preach, 325.1. Calls himfelfe Taicoloma, 325.30. Mufters bis men for China, ibid His crneitie to his Nephew ibid Defeats the Coraians by his Lientenant Augustine, ibil. Sends 200000. Isponians to inhabit Corai, ibid. And is yet faine to gine it oner, 32 4.60. Receines the China Ambaffidours with ftate, 226. Builds moft buge Palaces, ibid. His policie to keepe the Ia-

ponian Lords about bim, 326.50 | Fish lined upon, His buildings onerthrowne with Earthquakes, 326. Receines a Crown (ent by the Chinois, ibid. Refuses to restore the Kingdome of Corai, 327.1. Dies,327.1 Would be made a God: His Image and Temple ibid. His posteritie reoted out. Faire-foreland in Greenland, the latitude, 719. Sunnes refraction there, ibid. Ø 720-1 Fayre-hauen , and Whale-fifting there. Fayers, begun in the New Moone,

Feasts, the order of the Tartar Princes at them . 84.10.20,30 Serned on the knee, ibid. Mulicke whileft be drinkes , ibid. They feaft enery New Moone, 84.40 The Tartarian Princes gine shange of Rayments when they

Feath their fashion in China, 180 30,60 Feafts in China; vid. Barquets. Feats of Attinitie, 349-40

Feathers, the trade for them in Rui-Feather pictures, fee Pictures. Feathers rich ones as the Weft In-

Feather works of the Indians, 1132

Feauers gotten by the byting of an Aut, 995.10 Fret bow warmed in Groneland. 651.30

Feet, a great beautie for women to bane them little in China, and wby, 276.1. How the Chinois make them little. Felons goods confiscate, 429.40 Felt much vfed in Tartaria, 3.40 O 4.20. O 6.40. Images of it,

4.30. How made. 6.40 Ferdinandus the lefuite, recouers Goez his goods , by eating of Porke, 316.20 Fertilitie without raine, 895.40

Festivall dayes in Peru, the occasions of them. The Sacrifices offered. 1045. And in Mexico, 1046 1047.00. Fidelity of an Infidell, 238.50 Fight of the Indian fowles for fift,

Finmack Coaft described , 223.1 Firre-tree, moft vfefull for Ruffia,

419.30 Fishes and fishing of the West Indies, 986.987. The varietie,

Fish vfed for Bisket , and Beaftsmeate. 106.60 Fish farned with Oxe dung in China, 205.60. Pondredwith Pep-Fish for feeding of Cattle, 649.40

Fish that give fucke, ibid, & in Fiftes that flye, Fishes frange ones, 260.60. How

bred. Fishes charmed for denouring of Pearle-fishers,

Fishes delight in the light, 647. 0 The abundance in Illand, with the manner of preferning them, ibid. Fishing with a fift in India, 994.20 Fishing with a fish of time in Island,

647.30 Fishing for the Whale in India, the Strange manner, other festions of Indian Fishings, 931.50.932.1

Fish skins for coners of bonfes, they gine a lustre, 617.20 marg. Fifty Cuffes , the Chinois end their quarrels withall. 181.40 Frunga the Kmgdome, 322.30 Flaying of men, and putting others in their skins , wfed in Mexico,

1031.30.0 1038.40 Flushingers Lead, where, 488-20 Flutes of earth in Mexico, 104.50 It made malefactors confesse shere Floco disconers Island by Ranens,

Flokawogur, a Hauen in Shelt-654.40

Flood knowne to the Chincis, 376 Florida disconered first by the Eng-

glish, Florida the extent of the concernment of st: the altitude disconered and peopled. A firme Land next to Europe of all the Indies, yeares warney by Land thence into Spaine : occasion of the name ; fable of a Spring in it shat reftores jouth, the Aire, Soyle, Pearles, no Gold, Forts, &c. 868. 40. Cc. The Hanens, Ports distance from Los Martyres and Cuba : altitudes of places, the places where neither Gold nor People is : the Riners and Iles of it,869. Beginning of that Country properly called Florida. No passage that way out of the North into the Scuth Seas,

Flowers the plenty in China, 281 Howers Flowers much esteemed in the West Indies. Flowers of Europe thrine better there, the varietie there,

959. 1,10 Flyes infinite fore, come to the fift,

Flyes, Waspes, &c. Of the West 996.10 Flying fifbes deferibed, 988. 50. prety battle betwint them of the Guilt-beads and Cormorants

Flying in the Aire, the Mexican Sorcerers believe they doe, 104;

Fogge proceeding from Ice, \$21.10 Fogges at Sea looking like the land,

Fogo Ilands the latitude, 831.30 Foolish Sparrowes of India deforsbed, their admirable Nests to keepe off the Monkeyes, 980

Foot-posts of the Indians , 1054

For-doers of themselues, how buried in China. 189.1 Forfeitures extreme mes, 282.50 Portifications in China, the man-301.50 ₫€. Fortune-telling in China, 395.50

Fos Bay in Groneland, 824.50 Fount of Baptifine, the bleffing, Fount of Baptifine, wherein the Empercurs ofe to be christned, kiffed & fwerne upon in Ruffia, 783.20

783.40,50 Fowles a flory of strange flights of theire. 998.60.60 Fowles carefully kept by the Mexi-Can Kings, and why, 1128.40 Fowles of the West Indies, their

kındı, Fowles proper to the West Indies

Foxenose beadland, 222-40 Foxes white: good mente, 494.10 The times of their roming abroad, Foxes black in Groneland, 819.40 Frankes, why the Westerne Christraus are all called fo, 319.20.in

Franke tongue floken in Turkey, & what it is, 140.50. Why fo called, ibid.in marg. Fredericke the fecond Emperour, married our Henry the thirds

Free-Schooles in China, 276.1 French Poxe the first beginning of French Difease and cure common su

Island, Frenoima in Iapon, Fresh fish pressly earried about in China, 179.20.0 205.50 Fretum Hudson, the extent of # Westwards, 852.60. And Seuth-

wards, Fretum Dauis descomered, 464.1 Fretum Dauis, a great Bay: no bope of a Northwest paffage that way, 843.20. Store of Whales there, ibid, The lattinde, 845.1

Freezing violent and incredible, Frifland the Ile, Frobishers Streights disconcrea, 462.20. Sir Martin Frobishers three Voyages,

Frogges in engendring time eaten by the Englith at Sea. Frogges, men ouercome made to per-Sonate them: a prety flory of it.

Frost in 63. degrees in America, in Iuly, 611.60 Froft at Midfummer in Grone-·land. 846.30 Frost Iland and Sound in Grone.

land, 820.0 826.1 Frozen liquors lofe their firength, where that firength lies, 493.10 Fruits of China, 281.20 Fruits of West India, there forts and qualities, 995. Thofe of Europe thrine better there, ibid, See. 9 c8

Fryer Andrew in Tartary, and when. 16.10. # 25.10 Freet Iohn de Plano Carpini su Tartary , 17.1. Meffage and Precepts to the Tartars, 60.1.10 His iourney into Tartary, Cyprus and Perfia,

Fryer Matthew in China, 314.30 C 315.30 Fryer Nicolo Davicenza, and Fryer Guilmo de Tripolisent for as Preachers into Tartary, with Papall authoritic, 67.20 They dare not proceed, 67.30 Fryer Martine de Herrada, goes into China. 290

Fryer unbelfome meat to the Canihale 865.49 Fryers of Mugalla, frome and chaft. 800.1

Fryers quarrels in the West Indics, undid the Country, 996.50 Fryers of the Papacie, imitated by the Heathen Mexicans, 1035 Fryers fent into China , 290.40 Furniture of the China Honfes, Their names and company, ibid.

na, 291.60. 6 292. Their allowauce of Diet, 293.1. They are carried on mens |houlders, 293 60. They receive Prefents of Silke, 203. 20. 6 294.50. Made to kneele before the Governours of China, 296.40. & 298.20. @ 300. They chide with Omascon about it, 201.30. Certificates banged at their deores, 301.40 Carried in Chaires suffered to view the Citties , 302.50. Re-Strained, 303.10. Nos permitted to fee the Vice-roy , ibid. Not Suffered to buy Bookes of China, 303.50. Suspetted for Spies, 304.1. Discouraged, ibid. A Councell called concerning them. ibid. Commanded to returne to fetchthe Parat Limahon, 305. I

recouer tos Manilla in the Philippinaes, Fryers in Ruffia their numbers, nand admitted but be that brings them Some maintenance, 448.40. The manner of their muesting , they vow to absteine from marriage of flesh, their riches and exercise of Merchandese, 448.50.60.Their ignerance,

Ships prepared for their depar-

ture, 305.50. They depart, 206

20. Pronisions for their Voyage,

ibid. & 307.20. A ftorme takes

them at Sea, 308.309. They

Fryday much obserned in Ruffia. 422.60 Frydayes fasted by them . 21 . 1 Except the weeke after Lents,

Fucaes Discourries of a Passage, 850. Ill rewarded in Spaine, Funerals of the Chinois, 393.30 See Burial and Monraines, 99

Funerals and mournings of China. 367 60. @ 368.20. @ 181.50 Funerals of the Norwegians, 617 Funerall Feafts of the old Islanders.

Funerall Rites in Tanguth, 75.50 Funerals of the Mexicans, 1029.50 continued ten dayes. Their Fune. rall Scutcheons, Musicke, &c.

1030. 1.10 Furlongs in China, their proportion,

Their kind v sage in the (hip, 291 Futtes great store, 107.1. Where 20. And at their landing in Chi-each best, 416.10 Forres

Furres of Ruffia, 213.60. Paidto the Emperour of Russia, 430.20 Farres in Groneland, 521.10 Furres and Beaser in New-tounds land, Furres, blacke Foxe is beft, 459.40 Fyrdatylce a Dukedom in Norman, Fyre , where it is not fo bright or bote, as in other places, 74.30 Fyre wor hipped in Terzy , 242.50 Kindled by rubbing of sticks 983 Fyre perpetual in the Mexican Temples. Evre put out enery fifty two yeares at Mexico, 1050.40. 0 1067.40 Fyres in the Earth in Island, the reason. 643 Fyres fcene after a ftorme at Sea, 728.20 Fyre-blower of Hell. Fyre-brands frozen, 120.60

G Ame of the Prince, the Tas-Tars forbidden to destroy, Ganges the Citie, where, 49.20 Gardens floating on the waters, Garlike much vfed mibe Ruffian Cookerse, Gardarsholme, a name of Island, 644.40 Gates are the firength of the China Cities, Gain a people, the posteritie of those that flew Saint Thomas the A. pofile they cannot come, or be carrud neere bis Tombe, 105.1 Gauil-kind in Ruffia, Geele perfeit red, where, 484.50 Thought to be Barnacles, ibid. Geefe pretily catche by the Indians, Gehennon, the place of Molochs Sacrifices described, Geirhildawarta, whence fo named. Gelding of Beggars in Itland, 666

Gelding of themfelnes in Fafting, where fed, 1035.50 G n-lis, 2.6. Naturally expounded, \$92.20. & in marg. See alfo, p. 895.40.0 937.50 Genoesi mbabit Taurica Cherlo. 635.0 636 Gene als in China their pompe, 293

G nerals in Rufia, purpofely chofen Giants described.

der Officers, Masshals, Colonels, and Captaines, Generals of the field, enablized in Ruffia, their children wrue themfelmes Generals, 425.30. Their precedencie, Gentiles where. 323-1.20 Gentlemen their Effates in Ruffia. Gentlemen in Ruffia none but Souldiers.

Gentry of Norway deferibed, 621

Georgians, their name is Curgi, 49 Saint George is the Duke of Mulcouies Seale. Saint Georges Armes is the Hel lespont.

George Barkley, bis tranels, 625 50. His going ime Denmarke, ibid. Into Pruffia, the Eafterlings and Ruffia, 628. Into Poland, 629. Into Bohemia, Silefia, Pruffia, and backe into England, Norway, &c. 630. His other trancis,63 1. Dyes at Ban-

Georgia called Zorzania, 69.50 The King is alwayes called Dauid Melicz, ibid. The Inhabitants described, Georgians enercome by the Tar-

113.40 Georgia dinided into two kingdoms, 110.30.Whence called Alania, or Albania, ibid. The Cimmerian darkneffe in Georgia. ibid. Geologers in China, 396.I Germanes forbidden to winter in Ifland, 650.40 Germany when first peopled, 662

Geta the Riner on the Frontiers of Cataia, the way thinber, out of 530-10,20 Ghospel expounded as dinner time. 218.10 Giants bones found in Peru, 889

Giants , the Iland of themwhere,

Gianes of old in Mexico, 1002.1 Giants first Inhabitans of the North , 661. Their originall from Canaan, Some in Norway, Denmarke, Succia, Joitland, Island, &c. ibid. Adiscourse whence and when they came, one lately found fificene Cubits long,

261.20 vimartial men, and why, 426.20 | Giazzo, the Hanen where, 51.40 How that remedied, ibid. His pa- | Giazza in Armenia, 66.60. The

Merchandise there, Gilhfidi in Ruffia monne from the Tartars. 518 Gilan the Fronince. Gilding Gold fairer with an berbe.

Gilbert a Scottifh Captaine, bie Alls in Ruffia, 764 & 770 Ginger where it growes, 284-50 Ginger cheape, 101.10 Ginger, a Root when firft planted in the Indies. Ginocoginana, the great God of

Girdles of the Loutears deferibed. Girdle is an Enfigne of dignetie in China, 184.1, 10

Girdles made by the Monkes of Barfam. Glatie of Mulcouia, bem gotten,417 Globes firft brought into China, 329

Globocke in Ruffia , the altitude 545.20. Variation of the Compaffe there, \$54.50 Glowornes that women worke by their light, 993.40 Glue of fand and Bats blond, 1129

Goat facrificed in China, 307.1 God effeemed the Anima mundi, God punishes not with both hands, 225.20

God bolden to bee the Anima mun-Godfathers in the Ruffian (burch, Gods of the Mexicans, were 2000.

The description of their two chiefe Idols, 1134. The Sacrifices to them, oc. Goddeffes of the Mexicans, 1031

Godonoe, the potent Family in Ruffia 424.4. Their advancement Gocan the Hand, the Commodities 284.50. The people goe naked.

Gog and Magog shut up within Derhene Gog and Magog their Countrey, 80 20. They call themfelues Vng C Mongul. (Moal perchance after the Easterne pronunciation of the Hebrew 9 gnain.)

Gog-Cham the Tartarian, 58 50 Forme of bes Election, Gold exchanged for twice the Gold effeemed by the Spaniards for the Supreame Power in the World, 892. 1 . Senerall wayes how st lyes on the Mynes, and manner

of getting it. Gold, other descriptions of the finding of the Mynes, working m them, wasting the Metall, &c. See pag. 970. All Gold groves in the Mountagnes, and bow it comes into the Rivers, further from the Myne the finer , de. Gold Myne rich,

Gold in the Philippinaes, 285 Gold why not ordayned to bee the bappine fe of mean, 942. 1. Why chofen, ibid. How ofed by the indians,

Gold much to bee bought in China, 266.20. Not vied for Money,

Gold, the chiefe of Metals, and why, the Indians badgreat Veffels, Chares Luters and Images maffie Gold, Gold found of three forts, where

the best and the worst Gold is found: the manner of refining and the quantity that came yearly into Spaine from the Indies,

Golden Tablet of the Tartarian Emperours. Golden Bull of the Tartars, 66.50 The Authorny of at, bid, or 68

Gold-fmiths enrious ones in Me. Rico, 1132. They cast all kind of Creatures in Metall, which mone like the life : they enamell and fet ftones, they excell ours, ibid. Gomera, the best of the Canary,

Ilands. Goncalidan Mountaynes, 280,30 Goofe-bribe, a Story of st, 4:0

Good-Fryday bow kept in Ruffia, 227.50. They let loofe a Prifoner then, Gothes , fome in Tartaria, 3.10

They freike Datch, Gothe. Language remaynes pure in Island, Gotins & Getæ their Etymon, 661

Goto Ilands , 257.10. Submit 10 China, Gouza, the City in Cathay, 89

Gouernours receive no Presents.

Gouernments, the fenerall formes in the West Indies, 1054.30

Gownes of Dogges skins in Tarta-Graine of Gold worth 4138. Duckets.

Graines of Gold found, weighing twelve pound and more, where, 888.30 Granada the New Kingdome in the

West Indies , the limits of the Iurisdiction, the extent, naturall Commodities, Mynes, the distance from the Equinottiall and Spaine, the chiefe City and num. ber of Spaniards on it to C. Villa. ges about it, tributary Indians,

forle of the Country, 884.885 Granadille an Indian flower, which bath the markes of our Saniours Paffion. Acottaes Indgement up-

Grapes ripen not kindly in the Weit Indies, and why, 961 20. Ripe all the yeare long, Grapes of China not good, 381

Graffe odoriferous and battening in Ifland. Greeke Christians & Taurica flames to the Tarcars, but few,

Greeke Church unniftly blamed for mufunderfranding Saint Paul 447.60

Greeke Christians in Coralme, 109.40 Greeke Christians in Ingermenum,633.50. In most Townes of Taurica Cherionelus, 637 Greekes put mos off their Caps, 34

Greenland, the elemation, on part of it, 571 Hot there. Greenland w Willoughbies land,

Greenland firft diffeonered, 462.20 The other names of it , 463.10 First named (o. Greenland, fome I lands to the Eaft of it disconcred, 466 60. The Danes first comming to Greenland, 467.1. They demand toll of the English for the fishing, ibid. More Disconeries East. ward, ibid. Deferibed.

Greenland nothing greene, 472 10.485.1. Deere line there, but no people. The latitude and cold, The darknes and creatures there, ibid. How farre discourred : the Ceneral Harbours : the Map of Greenland, Greenland, names of some places

along the Coast, 701. The Ma-

vidian altitude and declination of the Sunne thereabouts, 701.50 & 702.1. Sowndings along the Coaft, ibid. &c. More temperate then Cherry Iland, 703.50 Wholes, Sea-horse, 704. Other, Creatures ibere, 707. © 713 40. Names of places, 714 tte:

Greenland attained in eighteene dages , 716. 20. Our Kings Armes fer up in diners places, ibere, 723.724.725. &c. Au-guft weather there, 727.30. Sudden alteration of beate and cold there. Greene beaded Tartars or leicil-737-50

has. Griffin aWelchman fallty betrages the English in Initland, 774.1 His villary almost confirmed, Disconered, bu baseneffe, 775.

Griffons painted; and reported to by aline abone Mexico, 1128.30 Griffons talent, 1014.50 Groineland called Defolation 462

Groneland not focold as Norway of Island, the natural Commodithes there , \$20.40. & 321.1. Admice for Travellers thinber,

Groneland, a description of the Cousts and Courses, Homens, Crocks, &c. At large, 518.6c. Christianitic and Bishops there; Groneland and Gronelanders.

Groneland nothing greene, 651.30 Their Buildings, burning Mountaynes, boyling Fountaynes, Fancies of Pigmias and Vnicornes. ibid. Miflaid in Sea Charts. 729.30. The appearing of the Land. The Habit, Tents, Dies and Boats of the Gronelanders, 817. Their pretty way to catch Scale-fift, 818.1. A Tropographicall description of Groneland, the beafts, and fishes there. The peoples complexion, 819. Therr Dyet, Apparell, Weapons and Religion, 820. Their boufes and graues, 836. The true name of Groneland, their report of their King. They intercept fome Eng. hish on Shoare, 829. And attempt the English Shallop, their perfonages,830. The Northwest part of it described, 835. The fashion and fwiftneffe of their Boates, ibid. Their Images , 828.30. They will not eate our meate : their

women marked on the face, 845

Groves and trees , venerated in Curland, Ground not to be thawed, 491.60

Gry-ur,or Tartarian Curde, 6.1 Guadalaiana, m the West Indies, the bounds of its lurifdi-Elion: the latitude and diffances of longuade from Toledo. The City of that name, Villages about

it oc. Guamange the City in Peru, deferibed, 893.40. Good temperasure, ere. Guard to the Emperour of Ruffia,

458.50 Gramboy, a Port, 254.50 Guatulo the Hauen and Pronince in the West Indies, ithe latitude.

874.30 Guatemala in the Indies , the Spaniards way thither , 859.

Guatemala Pronince in the Weit Indies, the Inridition of the Counfell, 377.60. The latitude, Proninces and Languages under it, Commodities, great Raines, Winds, Spanish Townes and their latitudes, chiefe Citie, and diftances of other Cities from it. Ports of it, latitudes of fome of

Guanauto Mines in the Weit Indies , the Villages of Spaniat is about them, Guarco the Village and Riner in Peru: the fruitfull Valleyes and

places about it, 895.40
Guaxaca the Bishopricke and Pro-mince in the West Indies, the extent, the beginning of the bounds : the Language, Silke, Gold , feituation of the City, Ayre, Townes, oc.873.30.00. Other Townes and Rivers yeilding Gold. Indian Townes tribu.

tary to st. Guavauos and Guayuilles , fruits of India. 9 . 8. 1 Gudderi, are the Muske-cats, 90

Gueos, the Nation, 280.20 Gueft placed in the chiefe place, 373 Guefts bene the chiefe place , 391

Guiana or El Dorado in the West Indice, the great Rivers, 886.60 Great Tydes there, and bow farre they fet, 887.1 Guiana or El Dorado, the admira-

ble and desperate passage of the

Spaniards to find it , 934.1. | Hamceum China, where, 409.10

Guinea the New, where it beginnoth . it is all Hands : the extent and latitude, 906.60. Colours of the people, the Iles , Ports, Rivers, de. Of Guinea Coaft.

907.10 Guintoo an Ile. 256.50 Guilders of Metals, bow they prefarme them felues from the fumes of Quickefilner,

Gulica valt one, Gulfe of New Spaine, by Florida a miferable Countrey : the two entrances of the Gulfe, with the Currents and the Channell, 870

Gummes of the West Indies, 959

Gumme of Tabernacul, where at growes, the vie of it, 864.50.0ther Gummes, Gunnes of China, at long at Pifiels, but unsermiceable, 403

Gunnes of China but a fan long. Gunnes of wood, 180.60 Gun-powder much in Ching, 382

Gurnerda Nofe in Greenland. 16 latunde. Gustavus succeedes bie Father King Charles of Sweden, 780 His warres and accord with the Guts of beasts fowed together for a Sayle to Boats in Groneland, 817.60

н

He Shit of the China-Indges, Habits and fashions of Europe, ridiculous to the Chinois, 406.1 Habitations how anciently chosen, Hacfall a Sea-monfter, the manner of taking, Hackluyes Head-land, 714.40.0 721.50.722 Hackluyts Headland 464 40

Hackluyts River. 531.30 20.374.10 | Haffeneford Hammin Island, 643 40. Secalfo. 655.1 Halappi, or Aleppo, 116,60,erc. Halongienfian Prenince in Nor-Way.

Halufin the Ruffe, an Impostor , 788 Hamerfound is Shorland , 699

A moft buge Cuy, ibid. Aue. nice. The delicate feituation. ibid. Whither at bee Quinfay or Hamfem, the darke Countrey, 110

Hand and Eye for a Gonernon Ensigne,

Hands claft together in falatations. Hands ioned in Marriage by the Rutles, Hanlin Colledge to China, 389

Hanse Townes upon the Balticke Sea, 462.30. Their Confederacie to keep in the Northerne Nations , their Priniledoes there-

Haos, a Chinese word, 186.60 Harlots, bane a Corporation at Cambalu, 84.1. Their order.

Harte or Raine Deere their fwiftmeffe in drawing the Sleds, 480 Harnests two or three a years in

China, Haleffines, or a Nation of Aletimates or Mursberers in Cathay.

Hat, the Mogores and Saraceus Hanticke River runnerh from Roffia-ward mto Cathay, 545.20 Christians dwell there, 551.

Hawkes flore in Ruffia, Hawkes (now-white in Ruffia, 522

Hawkes whistled to the fift, Hawkes the plenty, and the manner of Hawking in Tartary, 6.

Hawking at the Horfe's 227.20 Hawking at the Bucke and Hare,

Hayre died rellow. 296.60 Hayre bow the Indiana weare it. 09240

Havre how the Priests of Mexico meare and anoint it, 1042/1043

Hayre, let grow in R sia, by thefe in disfauour with the Emperour, Hayres rained in Iapon , 326-

Haython the Armenian, howprocured to write bis Story . 107.50 His Story beginnes, pag. 108. He was present in the Warres which

be writes off, 122, 30. Hee surnes Monke, 125.50. The eredu of bis Story, 125.60.

Heate beyond 80. degrees North, Heate in Tartury, extreme in Sam-

mer time. 11.30 Heate under the Line , compared with the cold under the North Pole, 474.1 Heates under the Torrid Zone,

bow allayed, Hearts of men to be facrificed plucks out by the Mexicans, 1031.30 The manner, 1033-30. & 1037

60.1038.1 Heart of a Man beeing plucks ent , bee fpeakes after it 1039

Heaven and Earth facrificed unto in China, Heauens feuenteene, and thirteene Hells, by the Bramenes account, 167.1

Heavens two feene at once in Peru, and the marner, 937-50 Hebrew Pentateuch 600. yeares

Hecla Mountaine castetb out fire against fowle weather, 507.40 Hecla the burning Mountains in Island, the fabulous reports about it, 648. Dangerous to bee approached, the Philosophicall reason of the burning. Strange Story about it, ibid. Ite floting abeut it , &c. 649. The Sulphyrione flames prooned unbole-

653.10 Heights fureft taken by the Sunne in the West Indies, and wby, 918

222.50 Hell described in China, 408.1,10 Hell, thought to bee in Mount He-

Heilicke Ilands.

Hell, the capacity Geometrical of it,

Hellespont, called Saint Georges Arme. Hempe and Flaxe in Russa Rores why the Trading is decayed, 417

Hens without feathers and bairie the Cats, 101.20 Hennes that (mell like Muske, but dying loofe their fcent, 995

Hennes in the West Indies, the Indians eners where carry with 964.20 Henry Greene a Villaine : 14ken into the Shippe by Henrie Hudson , betrages bim., 605. Slaine by Sanages, 607

Henrie Hudfon bie Verage to the East Indies by the Pole, 467. He fets out, ibid. Findes no passage betweene 78, degrees and an halfe, & 82.572. 6 573 10. Hie fecond Veyage by the North-east, \$74.10. Finder no paffage by Noua Zembla, 577 30. His third Voyage , 581 His Voyage for the North west Paffage, 596. Sayles a bundred leagues further then an Englishman before bim , 598.20. His bard wintring and dyet at Sea, 602. Bound in bis owne Ship, ted,

604. 30. Turned one by hu onne men into the Shallop, 605. 1 Just the canfe of the first muteny, Heraldry of the West Indians, 994

Herbes, which eaten by beafts, make them saft their boofes, 76.60

Hermites in Ruffia, their bardineffe boldneffe, and opinion of bolineffe 449.30. Canonized for Saints, and counterfeit Maracle-mongers, ibid. A beldueffe of one of them to the Emperour, tooks well,450.1. Sometimes fecratly murthered,

Hexali what, in Chinese, 319.50 Heires at Commen Law to any mans Inheritance, were to mayutaine bim, if bee fellinte cafuall beggery, in Itland, 667.20,30 Harchan the chiefe City of Cafchar, 3 1 2. The way from thence to

Cathay, Hiberi , a people in Tartary, 1020 Hieras, the River Prut, in Molda-633.2

Hietlandia, mifnamed Schetland, Hinimilau, a Chinele Pyrat, why

he turned from Christianity, 255 40. His Story. Hirace the Prosumee,

Hispaniola an excellent Iland, and the Commodities of it, 993. The bounds. Jurildettion native commoduses, latitude, &c. Thenasmall name, figure, and mynes, 860.40. The Villages mit, ibid. & 862. The Ports, ibid. The chiefe places where the Spaniards touch there, in their Indian Naweations. 8 4 9.10 Hitheries of China for 4000.

376.10

Histories recorded three wayer 1051.40. How in Peru, 1053

Historie of the Mexicans in Pa-Eures, beginnes at Page, 1067. And contimies to Page, 1117 Hydes of Ruffia, Hydes of Kowes abundance brought from the West Indies se Spaine,

962.50 Hyperborean Sea. 6 1.60 Hyrcania, where, 49.20 Hosquan, an idell with three eyes The God of Eye-fight in China,

Hocata-Chan the Tartar, 113

Hocktyde, when and why inflitu-621.20 Hogge faerificed in China, 307.11

Hoggeswith their nauels en their backes, their description, fierces neffe, and manner of thinking them, 966.10,20. & 868. 20 Hohi an Indian Tree, the excel-

lent nature of it, . . . . 986. 1 Hola, the Bifton: Sea of North Illand. Hold with bope, the Land, where;

or whither any such, 730.50 & 596. The Listitude, 568. Hollanders denied entranet into

China, 406, 20. They take the lefuites Shippe of Lapone

Holoen , a Charatter weed in Armenia, divers from the Armenian Character, 110-20 Holy-dayes in Tartary 600 kept , 29.50. Christian Priefts then blofe the Princes Cup.

Holy Ghoit, the Greekes Herelia about him,

Holy Land , the Tartars often attempt the Reconery for the Christians. See Pages . 116 117. 118, 119. The Defiene ginen oner , voon the Chan Tartars turning Saracen, 120 10. The Christmans much affin Bed by this alteration, ibid. The Defigne fet on foot againe, 122 20. Or. An Expedition this ther gium ouer, 1 23-20.30. And another.

Holy water wfed in Ruffe, 455 40. Sent tathe Emperom farre and weere. Holy water , the Armeniatts ofe

Frankincenfe in fload of it, 50

Honey bred in a mans skull, 627,60 Honey made of the fap of a tree,

957.20 Hondaras, the extent of its larsfdi-Wion Commodities Mynes, Lasunds of the chiefe City, and of the other Townes, 879.40. Guife and Coast of it, Ports, Bayes, all in the North Sea, &c. Honors wearing out in China, 387

60.CFC. Hope Iland disconered, Hope Sanderion in the Northwell, the latitude, 843. 20. 6 845.20 Horda, in Tartarian fignifies the middest, 16.40. Why the Cans Court is called fo, Hordassadia pronince in Norway, 65

Horne of a Seafilh, miftaken for an Unicornes, 650.40 Horn-neffe the East part of Island,

518,50 Horne-Sownd in Greenland, the latitude & variation of the Com. pafe, 717.50. Altunde of the Sun there, Jun. 14.718. See alfo 846.20 Horne-Sownd , and Whale-fifting

there, Horie consulted mithall in Tartary,

Horse of China unserniceable in Horfe-flosh wby eaten by the Tartars, 441. 50. They let their Hor(eblond and drinke st, ibid. Horie floes of filner , for want of I. ros in the Indies, Hories for the warres, the Tartars

bring two, one to cate, 441.40 How to carrie their Horfe legges, Hories most excellently boofed, 73

Horfes of the Spaniards; the Indians shought they could freake

Sir Ierome Horfeyes Ruffian Sto-11. 740. An honourable Act of his,742.3c ic. Sent Ambaffadone by the Emperour to Queene Elizabeth, 743. Returnes, ibid. Hu fanour in the Ruffian Court, 743.50.60. Returnes benourably againe sute England. The fa-Company. The Emperours fa-

wours towards how. Holanna fung ou Palme Sunday in Ruffia, Hospitals and Free-Schooles for Children their faftien, 205.40 In China, 276.1. Par to trades, ibid, & 99.50 Hofpitals for lame Souldiers, 272

Hoftia, the Etymon of a, 1037.30 Hot-houses, the Russian Physicke,

House-glasses going with water or Houses of Tartars described, 3.30. Their largeneffe, 3.40. Carried upon Carts drawne by two and twenty Oxen, 3.49. Their order of placing foure, ton and nine feuer all quarters of men and women 4.30 Houses of the Indians of Cuba, 994

60. Dwelling on the tops of trees. where, ibid. & Houses concred with Elkes skinnes,

Hoyce Hill in Orkney, 827.30 Hubbards Hope, the latitude, 848 Hudson bis Difconery,

Hall men trade to Greenland, 467 50. How they first came thither 455.30. They bring backe the Zelanders to moleft the Londoners fishing, 468.1. Their Voyage to the River Obi, 530. To Cherry iland 562. Other Dif. comeries, . umane Secrifices of the Mexi-1014-1015-30 Sir Humphrey Gilbarts Voyage to Newfoundland. 808.50 Humvu, a valient Chinois wheen pelled the Tartars, 387.40. The Kingdome continues in his

Hunduras in the Indies, the Spaniards way thither, 859.10. The chiefe places along the Coaft, ibid. Hungary overrume by the Tartars. 61.40. When they departed from it,63.50. They returne, 114.40 Hungaria the Eftate se Rubruquis his time. Hungarians bow furprifed by the Tartars,the Story of it, 440.30.

Hunnes whence descended, 18.50 Hunting vied by the great C am, described, 85.30. And bis bare-Hunting in Lithuaniz, the manner,

nours hee did for the Muscouie | Hunting of the Mexicans, the manner of it.

Husbands difloking their Wines, turne Pryere in Ruffia, 455.1 Husbands felling their Wines for want of meaner. Husbandmen exempt from the Warres, Husbandry of Nature, 961.10 Huuph, a China word, 187.20 Huzamguee, the chiefe City of Cauchin.

Aci the Citie. Iacobite berefie in Africa, 317 Iacolit the Easterne Patriarch, and his larifdicton,

Iacolfu a Rimer in Island, the courfe, Iagac, a mighty River, where and whence it rifeth. laic or lagac, the Riner, where, 18

Iamayca the Ilandon the North of Hispaniola, Iamayca Iland in the West Indies, when first desconered, altitude, distance from Cuba and Hifpa-niola, Villages, Plantations, Ports, different of places in style. 864 Iamboli or Balachei, the Cay, 634

Iames Hall flaine by a Gronelan-Sir lames Lancasters Sownd, the latitude langi, in the Courts of Tartary, 28 60. C 24.40

langumur or Ciangamur in the Tartarian, is white Lake, 80.30 langui the mobile City, 96.50 Izon, is three leagues, 254.10 Izpan is fundry les, they contains thirtie three Kingdomes ; their Piracies vpen China, distance from China and the Philippinaes, valour of the people, 906

Iapon, how and when discourred, 218.10. Diffance betweet that and Malaca, 218.20. The Seas troublesome, 318.40 Iaponian Ambassage to the Pope,

322.10. What Hands goe under that name, 322.50. The babit of there Amballadors, Their entertarument at Rome, 323.10.Quabacondono, syrannifes ouer al the Princes shere , 323.40. Meaco the chiefe City , 324. The three chiefe men there, 324.20. Their change of titles, ib. Their Pope, ib. The Lords of Tenia command all there thid, Is containeth about

#### THE TABLE

fixtie Iurifdictions, 324. 40. Their Theologie, ibid. 60. 6 325.1. Their manner of fending ther L ers, ibid. 10. And then curious workemanship, itsed. The number of Ichuites there, ibid. Parted from China by Corai, ibid. Earthquake:, Comets, and prodicione Rainer there, 326. They burne their Dead, 327.10 They are former Connerted to Christianitie, then the Chinois. 332.20. Tangbe to paint bid. A poore Countrey, 344-30. Their Alphabet, 384. But foure and wenter boures fayle from China,

408.50 Laruflane Citie, the fituation, 419.

Inscot of Gold, worth ten Markes in Tartarie, 21.50.0 34.10 Iafdi, a great Citie of Trade in Pet-

Iaspar, deare fold in China, 362.20 Lasti the chiefe Towne in Walachia, Taux maior , the greatest land of the World, 103.10. Gold there,

ibid. The description and Commodstes. Lauolgenies, ancefters to the Crim Tartars. : 627 Ice paffed ouer in Sleds, 107.10

Ice with Ponds of fwest water in them at Sea. 598.40 Ice one hundred and fortie fathome deepe,

Ice at Sea, the originall canfe of it, Ice 1680. foote thicke, 837. The

English tranellower it, . 248.10 Ice fine and fiftic fathome thicke, 487.10. Makes a thunder as it breakes, ibid Lifts up Ships, 488.

Ice as bigge as Townes, Ice breaking like a Thunder ctap. 812. It makes a leathforne 811.40 Ice, a Market open it, 229. 30.

Condemned per sons thrust under, Ice preserved in China, and why,

Icoxos what, in Iaponian, 323.60 Idifa in Tartary, Idleneffe not permitted in Peru, 1044.20 Idlenesse inneighed against, 666.40

Idleneffe bated := China, 175.30 Idolaters, all are between the Moun-Idolaters in Catay, Idolaters in Colchis,

Idolaters diners in the Perfian Pro- | Ilands of Men alone, and of Wo-628.10 Idolaters in Tanguth, their Cere-77.10.2 Idols, are the Oldeft men in the boufe, where, 92.30 Idols frene two dayes lourney off,

Idols of the Mexicans, their beaft. ly floapes, 1030.20. And deck-Idels then Temples & Sacrifices of old so Illand, 664.40. Altars, or c.

Idols bellies filled with lewels, 408. 20. How the Chinois maintaine

their Idolatra Idol-Sacrifices of China, 369.1. In

filthy stinking bouses, ibid. Idols one bundred and eleuen in one Chappell. Idols buge ones, 77-1 Idols, men kill themfelues in benour

of theme. Idots of the Groenlanders, 838.30 Idols in Myters & wheeles, 263.20 Idols of the Mont Tartars,799.40 Idols made to peake by Magicke,

Idols, why ofed in China, 334.30 legur a frange Corne, 236.40 lenifce, a mighey Riner, 527.30. O. nerflowes like Nilus, ibid. Two Rivers of that name, 530.10. The Lourney thinber out of Ruffin, ibid, See Yemifce. Ieraslaue in Russia,

lefuites m China, 314. 30. In lapan, 216. Their Conner fions dif-

lefuice whips to death in China, 406.40 Iesuites change their Names, 339.

Issuite fet on the Pillorie in Chi-Iefuites Colledges in Brafill, 903.20 Ieluites make Conneres in China, 320. 40. Their first Station

there. 321.50 lefuires, the Abetters of an Impofor in Ruffia, 756 10.40 5 768. 1. Iciuites m China themproceedings : See in Ruggierus, & in Ricius.

Iewels of the Mexicans burned with them. 1020 taines of Caucasus, &c. 24. 1 levice kept within inclosuret, 49. 10 20.60 Igla the fland, 285.50 636.30 Hacians or Blacians.

men alone. Idolaters in Curland, and Pruffia, Ilands 12700. in the Indian Sea,

Hands of Hispaniola, 862.40.50 Hand Santa Maria one of the Azo-Ites, the Latitude, 859 40 to Denmarke, not Inhabited, 614. 20. The Laterade, ibid. in marg.

Fine miles from Ruftene,619.20 llands of Therues or Ladrones in the West Indies, then Latitude, number, ponertie,neereneffe to the Philippinaes, the People, wamer. Diners other Hands there abouts. and their Latitudes, 907.30 llands of Farre, on the South east

part of Island, Hands of Moluccas, their fenerall name and Latundes. Ilands of Matflow and Delgoy.

He of Refolution, the Latunde, 837.10. The variation, and longitude from London, 838.x He of Merchants, He of Saint John of Porto Rico, in the Welt Indies, the firft name, differes from Hispaniols, des Commodities, temperature of the Ayre, Towner, first Diconerie, Ports, Rivers, &c. 864.865

lles of Gods Mercus, 596.50 Iles of Farre, their Latitude, 574, 1. Mifplaced in the Care, 183.1 Illiricum when first peopled, 662.

Illocos the Ilands, lefuites lined twenty yeares in Chi- Images of Christ, aur Lady, and the Apofiles, miffator by a low, or morfhipped, 400.40 Images with three Heads in China, 303.1. And with eight Armes. and other Monsters,

Image in China like that of our Lady, Image of Christ, most foleranely honeured m China,

Images of their Kings worthipped by the Indians, T028 co Images Painted and not Carned bonowed . 217.30. Christened . ibid. Images offered in Temples of Chie

Image Point, Images of the Tartars, made of Felt, 4.30. Many in one house, ibid. The Tartare Lar , or boufhold Images great flore in Ruifig prazed unte, 228, Very rich, bid. 20.0

229.1. Chilaren committed to Images

Images wor hipped with draine benour ,4 5 2. Painted, not carned, in the Greeke Church, ibid, Called M:racle-workers, 453.1 Image made without bands, 456.1 In agination the ftrength of it, 395. Imperiall Infignes of the Ruffe, 741.20.30 Incense where it growes, 959.40 Incense vied by the Mexicans, in gining of Welcomes, and in Saerifices, 1004.10.1013.60.00. Incestious Marriages of the Kings of Peru, 1054. 50. 6 1058.60. The Successe, India the bounds of it. Indians white and faire, where, 893. Indies of the West, are not the West Indies, the Countries which they containe properly, 903.60.in margine. Their temper, colours of the Indians, &c. Indian delayes for advantage, 285. Indians 60000,to Guard the paff sfres er Pertia. 68.30 Indians of the West, their Stature and Complexions, 992.50 Indies why they goe to them one way, and returne another, 927.40.50. 65. The going thinber forter then the returne. The Spaniards Debuttes in Nauigation thuber. mes, ibid. "The Seafons of the Towerall Floors Hirling of the South described, 887, Their extent, Proninces, Gouern-Indian Sew hand diners Kingdoms. Inuitations the Ceremony in Chifeepage, 168, 10.20.30.40 Indico or Anill, bow it erower, Inuitations to a Feast, the forme, Industan the Kingdome, the old Iob, 31. Verte 26 expounded, 1028. Names 31 Inferiour, lages afide bis State on logowr the people. profence of his Superiour. 207.1 Sir John Hawkins, bis Indrement Interiour natures made for the fernice of them hext Superiour, 942.T Iohn Knight flaine by the Grone-Infants confulted as Oracles, 395. landers. Innas Poole bis Voyage, 464.60 Information of all, monethly ginen Ionas Poole bu Voyage to Greeneto the King of China, 189.30. His Spies, Ingermanland the Title of Sweden defeuit: Ingermenum in the Crim Tartars. built by the Greekes, 633. 50. Iohn Prince of Denmarke, aur lababited by Greeke Christin ani. ibid-

Inger-Sound

223.10

Inguas , the Kmes of Peru. See Peru. | Ioyncers none required in Ruffig. Their Diadem, Greatneffe, Riches. Honours after death. &c. 1054. Their Coronation ceremonies, exact Influce, Policy. Co. 1055. Their publicke buildings, renernes, cre 10x6. They bane the third part of the Land, 1957. Their Originall, Conquests and Storie, 1059 &c. Enery Ingua builds a new Palace, & c. 1060. 10. Their Succession for 3. bundred yeares together, 1062.10. Their Attire Diet, &c. 1126.40. See pag. 1130 Ingulius of Notway, his fortunes. 656.657. Peoples Itland first, 657. The Story, Inheritance the mauner of it in China. Inheritances in Peru went to the Brother and not to the Sonne, 1054.50 Inke-making, a liberall Art, 383.50 Innes in China. 185.50 Innes or Lodging in Tartarie wone, Innes in Tartarie, the premifion for them, 87, 10. 20. Crc. Senerall Stages Inquition Spanish in the West Indies, where exercifed and bow. 910.911.871,50 Inquificion Spanish, gotten into the West Indies, 871.50 Inquifition for Religion none in Ruffia, 453-50 Inflruments firings in China, made all of Silke, 383.20 Intelligence given by Birds, & how, 1 26.60

374.30

289.50

of the Magellane Straights, 900.

land,699. Hom farre bee difco.

wered bid. His Commission for a second Voyage, 707. Hee fets

foorsb. 711. Hu shird Voyage,

Queene Annes Brother goes &

wooing mto Ruifia, dies there,

Irenia Empreffe of Ruffia, her Wifedame, 743. She refuses the Empire, and turnes Nume, 745-30 Irilhmen were at the first peopling of Illand, 657. 30.50. Build a Church there, Iron greatly defired by the Gronelanders. Iron frozen in pieces, 493-20 Iron mouldered to dust by the wind. Iron famue a funder with a Weed, 986.0 995.10 Iron touched with the Loadstone, will lift more weight then the flone et selfe can. 857-10 Ifa, fo the Saracens call lefus, 313. 30. And Christians Tiquites. Maac the Armenian, bie Travels, shid . unto page, 316. Relates bie owne Story, Ifaurica m Cilicia, Island and Islanders, The forme. greatneffe, & lee of Island, 643. Duder the Article Circle, ibid. Original of the Nation, ibid. The Norwegians comming first shirber, 644. 50. Their freeb, ibid. Their Religion , Bifbops, firft: Comerfion, Lutheranime, Printing, Seditions about Religion, subrettion to the Dane, 645? The distinction and degrees of people, luftices, firength of body, indiffinction of Apparell, Witchcraft, Learning, long lines, Fi-Shings, Diet, Drinkings, Commo. dities, Wheres, &c. 646. Their Complements, want of Linnen, lowfic Lone, lodging, games, long N gbrs, Bathes and other wonderfull) aters, 647. And Moun-taines, 648. No Fields nor Gardens there, nor Corne, Fruit nor Cities. Their dwellings underground, no trees but Birch, treus bled with Windes . Flore-wood; the fatnesse and sweetnesse of their Graffe : their Harfe, Kime, Dogs. and other Creatures, and riches. 649. Some Sea-monfters , their Termes for Law-Innes, 6 co. Sentence of luftice, 651. Their Bi-Shops, are under the Archbishop of Nidrofia in Norway, 651.30 Iffand bow is lies, 651, 20, The Simution, Difconery, Plantation , Names and Language, 694.8c. Called fo of the Ice, 655.10. It is not Thule, ibid. The greatneffe and bounds, ibid.

The shape like a Man, the Circu. a, dinefions, first Plantations, 656. It bath no Beares, 657.20. Their Language, an Alphabet of their old letters, 6 . 8. Thes ancies Manners, Cuftomes, Fewell, Buildings, Turffe, 662. Their large Honfes, Stones, aftenement of Lands, Husbandry, Beafts, Powles Fifb, mease, and drinke, 663. Their Banquets, Money, anciens Religion, Founders, and Policie, 664. Their old Esbaike rites, bamane Sacrifices, and Christiania tie, 669. Magiftrates Courts, pronifions for the Poore, distifions of the Proninces Hundreds, ty things, &c.666. & 667. The duties of their Nobilitie and lufti-Island fome of the Coafts deferibed, 418. The Course from thence to Groneland, 520 60 Ifland, the Northeast fide full of damtie Wild-fowle. 609.10 liraclites difperfions, feme into China, 400.40 Inan Vantowich bie Crueltie, 422. Iuan Vatilowich of Ruffia, a Regifter of bis abominable Cruelties, 739. His good parts and balour,740.1. His fanours to the Englith. Held a Saint almost by the Ruffians, And Death, ibid. Had feven Wines, and Iuanogrod the onely Citie in Rutlia build of Stone, 628.50 Juangorod the River. 439,10 Iubilee in China, 275.60 lubilee of the Mexicans, 103 1. The time and manner, 1046,1047 Judas Thaddaus where Martyred, Indges corrupt punished with death Mexico, 1010.10 Indges their corruption in Ruffia, 434.40 Indges Spiritual accounted Saints. fudicatures and confulsations in the Churchin Itland, and why, 668, 1 lugures, an Idolatrosa people, 21.1 Their Ceremonies , 21.20.00. They bane images, Mitars and Ingures their Temples, &c. defcribed, 21.40. Their Language and Writing downwards as the Chinois,22.10. Their belufe of one God. 22.20. Their Imagestore. present their dead Friends, 22. 20. Their Country, 22.60. They

Initland, named fo of the Grants, luitland under the King of Det .marke , Fish good cheape there. The peoples spnorance of monie.. An Iland, the number of the men there, 773. They weare axes at their Girdles, 775. 1. The Gomernours Wisdome and Noble. weffe to the English distreffed there, luory Table . worne oner the King of China, bis Crowne, 392.50 They that feake to him, jut one before their mouthes. Juftices Itimerant in China, 184.30 Their fate in the Circuit, 187 Inflice oner-awed in Russia, 422 Iustice and Mercy, a pretty Embleme of them. Inflice to bee done but towards our owne, the Tartatian Maxime,

440.50 Iuftice the manner in Island, 650 Inflices twelve yearely in Ifland, 646.1 Inflice exact se Peru. 1055.10 luftification , she Ruffes errour abone it,

Ait Caftle. 237.40 Kalendar of the Mexicans, the prety meanner of it, 1050. Of the Perunians, Kangietæ er Changle, a people, 18

Kartalla Riner in Catay, falleth into Ob. Ken-Cham of Tartary flaine, 25 Renchat, a Tartarian Towne, 19

Kerkis the people, 33.40 Kerlis the Country, 6.30. Christi. 12.40 Kersoua the chiefe City in Cassa. Kettlewike Iland.

Kildwin in Lapland , 516.40. 0 Kill themfelnes , why the Indian Sernants doe, when their Mafter dyes. Kine wild and tame in the West In-

dies, the wild kild onely for their bides. King of Armenia palled through bane the original of the Turkith | Tartary , 47.20. Reliene Ru-

23.10 | bruquis companions, King of Mexico bis charge, 1006 Kings carried on mens fooulders, Kings of Peru made Gods after Kings, a Tartar people, Kirgis a Dukedome in Siberia, fubted to the Ruffe, 798.30. The way thence into Catay , through

the Moall Tartars Country, 799 Kiffe, the Patriarch of Mulcoura keffes the Emperour, Killing at entertainments in Illand, Killing ofed in the Greek Church.

Klutzinsky the Ruffe Impofter, acknowledged Emperour, 789.40 Rewited, Kneeling to great Officers in Chia

1054.60

240 40

Kneeling on one knee, more sue to menyand on both, to God, 17.10 Knife fent by the Crim Tartar to the Rulle Emperonr to kill bim-Knights fee in Muscouie, 216.1 Knights Itands as Groneland, 814

Knighthood to Mexico carried the marke or Armes of Some Idels, 1030.10. And fe in Peru, 1049

Knighthood the fenerall Orders in Mexico, 1063.50 Kuenland the Country, 659.50

V fed for N, by Some Chinois, Laches Father of the Polanders, Lakes of two bundred miles long in Ruffia Lake without a bottome where, \$78 Lake a huge one, where Rubies and Saphirei grow, Lakes of Titicaca and Aulagas in Peru. Lake that hills Birds flying oner it, 648 I

Lake admirable one. Lakes their originals from Snowes and Springs, Riners flow out of them, why they breed lutle fift, a wonder they fould be fo hote, who they neither increase nor decrease. Varieties of their tempers and tafts. 932.50 Lambri, a Kingdome of Iaua, 104 1

is long together about the Horizen ihere. Lands fet apart for facred vies m Peru, 1055,60 Lands in P ru, how the profits are

distributed, according to each manereceffity, Linga and Solanga , a Tartarian people, 23.20. Their babits, ibid. Langenes in Noua Zembla, 474 20.0 513,1

Land-lords, Indges over them Te-Mante Language of China discoursed up.

Language and writing, the fame through all China, 101.50 Language of Island, is the pure old Gorish or N rwegian, 658.1 Languages forty fenerall ones , foken in fo many Castles in Keston

Languages diners in Perfian Pro-Language of Rullia, different from

the Polith. Laos Siones Maons a great King. dome where, 168. 20. Hath Murke and Gold, ibid. Their complexion and babit ibid. . A mighty River amongst them: &

a wonder of that, 169.1,19 Lapland, the length and breadth. 443.50. It bath two forts of peo. ple, ibi i. To whom Subject . Their poore lining, fome are wild, and the great oft witches in the world, 444. Excellent Bowmen and Gunners, their Commodities and Faires, 444.1,10.223.20 Laplanders their miserable li-

ming , 516. 1. Their forfineffe, Laque a Perfume in China, 196.1 Latitudes which the Spanish Fleets observe in going and comming to the West Indies, 924. See Cour-

fes and Nanigations. Laua Riner in Ruffia bie mouth and fall into the Lake Lodiga , 794

Laulo the Iland, 207.50 Lautimey in China fired by the Tartars. 278.40 Law of Nature : the lefuits hope, that the Chinois were faued by

Lent, the Armenians and Nefforians, eate so fift in Lent, 35 296.60 Law altogether findied in Chi-

185.20 ! Lawes made by Kings in China, 387.40

Law-futes in China, moft about their Bariall places, 368.50 Lawes of Island fome rebearfed, 666.667.0c.

Lawes in Ruffia, 435.20. None written, but all freaking Lawes, ibid. 216.0 217 Lawes of the Tartars, 443.1

Lawyer, none may plead in the West Indies, where his Kinfman is ludge, 913 Lawyers bribes taken, and given to

boneft men, Lawyers forbidden to goe to the Spanish Indies, and mby, 908.20

Lawing of the Ruffes , the order, 433.40. Their fenerall Courts ibid. Lawing, unknowne to the Tartars,

Saint Lawrence in Canada difeenered. Saint Lawrence Ber,477.20, The

luinde. Lauzu, a China Selt, 398.40. Their Legends and Fooleries, their Pa-

Lay-Commissaries so Bishops in Ruffia, appointed by the Emperour, 446 40. They over rule the Clergie,

Lead Myne in Cherry Iland, 558 50.0 564 Leafe in India, that heales a broken Arme profestly, . 986.40

Learning only gines Wealth, Ho-nour, and Nobility in China,

Learning feared by Tyrants, 447 Leave-rites as Curland, 628-10 Lechias, a rare Fran in China, 178

Left-hand most benourable, where, Left-hand nos vied to touch their

measewith it, where, 105.1 Legends and Prophefies, the effects of them. 1031 Legend of Huiunfuns, killing the Dragon, and flying into Heamen,

337.20 Legend of Leus, Legges, Armes, beads, etc. Offer red by ficke Mento sheer Idols,

Lent-time to the people of the Eaft,

Lents foure in a yeare, 217.60. of

227. They begin on Munday, the endings of all foure, 218.1. No flefb ner White-meste i caten in Lents foure in Russia, and when and hov, ...

Leopards efed like Hounds, 80.50 Leprous people are Toll-gatherer, in Tartary,

Lequios Hands by Iapan and China , richm Gold , & c .. 906.50 See Lucaios.

Leigi , a Tartarian people , 12.50 Their border, 16 10 Letany of the Tartan for their Proce. 85.10 Letters of she Islanders 646.30

Letters of Demetrius of Ruffia, to the Nobility , 752. Of him to the English edgene, 758.20 Letters of Mexico, their manner,

Letters of Almeida to Rais Sand. 330.40. Of Longobard and Tailo, 343.40.344. Of Pantois to Luys de Guzman, 350

etters of the Vifitor of Concheom China, to the Gonernour of the Philippinaes, 309. The arfwere to them, 310. Of Lerome Xame-Letters of the Russian Emperour,

Letter of the Dake of Brabant, concerning the Tartars, 60.00 And of the Emperour to the King

of England, 1 61.20 Letters of the Tartarians to the French King , 45.50. To the Pope, 59. 20. Of one Tartarian Prince to. another , 59.50 Letters, the West Indians senes rance of them , they thought the Spaniards Packets of Letters

could freake, 994.50 etters about bufineffe of Greenland fifting 731.732.733.734.

1.735-736-737 Letters unknowne to the West In-. 1051.40

Letter of Sir Humphrey Gilbert from New-found-land, 808.50 Of lohn Rut a Mariner to King Henry the Eighth, 809. Of Albert de Prato to Cardinall Wolfey, 800 Of William Baffin to Mafter Wostenholme, 842 Letters of Mafter Locke to a Greeke Pilet, and their aufwert,

Letters of Suiskey Emperour of Ruffia, to our King lames, 765 Of English Merchants concerTHE TABLE

ning Ruffian troubles, 780. Of Dottor Hall. Letters of Xauier the Lefaite, 318. 10. Of the King of Bungo to the Pope, 322.30. Of the King of Arima to the Pope, 222,20, Of the Iaponian Tyrant, to the Spanish Voceroy,

Lettow, & Lithuania, 624-50 Leuca Iland, where, 623.10 Leuconia, where, 53-40 Lewfoot /lands, 213. 10. 6 222.

Lewis in Orkney, 827-40 Lezards are Crocodiles. Lampeo, where, 190.40 Liampoo a Portugall Towns in

China, raced by the Chinois. 259.50 Libanus inhabited by Christians,

Lice fold for meate in Mexico. 1133.10 Lice eating men to the bones, 614.

Lice for fake Saylers, and finde them againe comming to the fame place Licence written on a board.202.20.

Liconice where; deferibed, 233.1 Liefland bow denided between the Ruffe, the Sweden, and the Pole

Light-Dogge of the Indies, bu strange beauinesse, described, 966.50. Sings mufically, 978.

Ligram Aloes where it prowes. 102.60.0 102.10 Lignum Guacum, or Sanctum, the vie, and where it growes, 938.10 Lignum Sanctum, better for the French Poxe then Guyacum,

998.20 Lignum vitæ er Guayac, whence bronght,959.60. See Guacum. Life, much Staded in China, 369.

Lying in China is prudence, 339. Lima Citie in Peru. See Los Reyes.

Limahon a Chinese Pirate, 286. 50. His Storie, 287. A mughty Electe made out against bim, ibid. How bee came to the Philippinges, ibid, Goes to fur. prife the Spaniards there, ibid. Comes before Manilla, 288.1 Burnes the Citie, ibid. Seates bimfelfe on the River Pangalinan, anderetts a Fort, ibid.40

The Spaniards toyne against

him, ihi. They fet upon bim at two fenerall places; 289. Hee flees to bis Fort, they befrege bim, sbree Moneths, ibid. His fine Stratagem to & Scape, 289. 30. 6 308.30. Omoncon the Chinese comes with Commissifion to take

bine, Lime and Stone built withall in China, 292.10 Lincin in China, 352.60 Linns or the Frat of Linne, bu Story. Linnen and maperie of the Cotton-01131 113240

Lions caught to Hunt like Housels 85. 20. And Liopards and Wolnes, ibid. The maner of it, ibid. Lions bow flune, 94 40.50

Lions of West India nat fo fierce as ours, ordinarily bunced by men, Liquos the people, where, 168.1

Lucts Ilands on Greenland, 749. Literate Sell of China, chen fine Detrines.

Lithuanu, their Marriages, Reli gion, fewnoffe of Charebes, work hip of Snakes, Housing, &c. 629 Lituania, what Towner the Ruffe bane in it . 428 60. The Natmes deftroyed, and Ruffes placed there

Liturgie or Sermice of the Ruffiand 450. Read at the Altar, ibid. Liuonia, List to the Pole by the 438.60

Lizard or Crocodile, a ftrange cafe of one of them, 887.20 Loafe divided in the Ruffians Marriage, the Ceremone and mea-Loadftone found in the Indies, \$ 90.

Loadstone, a Paleer Suit of it. Loadstone comprinettes more frength to Iron tonched with it. then the Stone it felfe bath, 857.

Lobsters in New found Land, Lodigs Lake and Tomes on Ruils Lofoot on the Coaff of Finmarke,

561.10.481.40 Logicke, the Chinosswanen, 348. Lomsbay described 474.40

London Coast, by Fretum Dauis, the Latitude,

bereckened 8 46.60. An oncera taine reckoning, Longitude of Places, how to bee found by Art and Infruments;

Longi ule, the Degrees are longer or forten as they are farre or nead rer to the Poles, Lop, a great ( the where, The Dea fart of Lopingero. Spirits duell if id. Lor in Perlia.

Loras Prayer in the beginning of the Ruffian Sermed. Lords Spirituall named before the Lords Temporall in Ruffi , 709.

20.0 7841.0 783.0 787 Letetto in Italy, the Towne, Tema ple and Idolatry there, deferiord,

Los Reyes, the Inrestition and Lemits, the Soyle morflened with vapours, the native Committee ties: Latitude of the chiefe "ity. distance from Toledo, menber of Housbolds, excellency of the Glimute, the Unenerfite Monafleries, &c. 802. Number of Women and Negroes, Villages in the Country, with their Litte sades, and differences of Commondities, Mines, Complexions of people, coc. 893. Vermitton and Quickefilner, Springs, Bather, admirable bigh wayer, via vente mous Wormes, &c.894. F.ustfull Vellages under n , Earthquekes, de. 895. The Iladi, Peres, Points, Capes, &c. 896.1.

10. Vide Perti. Los Frayles, the lles in the Wes Indies. Los Tettigos the Ites in the Well

Indies, Los Angelos or Thafcala, the Bi-Shoprecke in the West Indies, ile extent, the Commodities of the Soyle, and Townes thereabouts : the numbers of Spaniards in them 872. 70. 40.40 The Ri

ners, and Townes in 11, 873.10 Los Martyres, the Iles by Clorida, Loft things, an Officer for them,

Lots efed by the Chinois, 200. 1. 6 318 20.40. If the Lots bee unluckie, they beare their Ideis.

Lots, the Emperour of Ruffig elelled 845. 16 by them, 769. The manner, ibid. Longitude, bow the Degrees are to 1 Lots in China, 196. The maner, it.

Lots determiners of Controversies, 434.20 Lot-Law in Ruffia, Lot-law in Russia, 755.30 Loutea, what Office, and how Greased in China, 184. 20. 6 200.

Lowneffe in Greenland, aur Kings Armes fet up there, 717.30 Lowlie Lone in Illand, 647.1 Lubeckers pay no Cuffome to Denmarke, wby, Lucavos Iles of the West In-

dies, where then Names, Alsitudes, Diftances, 865.10. See Lequios.

Lumleys Inlet in America, the Latitude. Lufus the Chinefe, bis Legend, 334.1. Hee put Lice into bis flest againe, ibid. His Strine, Lutheranisme m Island, 645. 10.

Luxitay an Iland. 256.60 Luzon the Kingdome, 209,30. The Chineles Claus there by the Spaibid & 310

MAcao in China, how farre Maces and Rods borne before the China Officers, 187.10 Magaitas the great Iland , 106.

Magdalene, the River in the West Indies, the head, Current mouth, length, and Latitude, 885.20. Called Rio Grande, ibid. His Head,

Magellane Straights, the Spanish Indian Prosinces in them, where the Straight begins, the Alts-sude, 899.60. The Ports, Caper, Bayes, Ilands , and their Latitudes: What degrees of Lati-tude this Straight is betwint: Sir John Hawkins Indgement of these Straights, 900. Whence they had the Name of Magellanes ; why the Nanigation through it is dangerom, the Rimers, Points, Capes, Hands, and their Latundes by it. Magellane Straights. 282.10 Magellanus Martyred, ibid. &

285.50 Magellane Straights, the diffances and Scafons of Nanngation from Caftile thisber, 859.50. Defficule

Magi chet came to Chrift. See

Tarfa. Magicall Image in Russia, 757.

Magicians knaueries. Magistrates called Lords or Fathers 388. 10. Their immediate addreffe to the King, ibid. Magnifrates bow bonowed in China, 393.10. Being deposed, shey loose use all Honour. They base Temples , Alters, and I.

Magistrates of China, the fixe Chiefe, 288.20. Their marner of proceedings, ibid. Then babites and Enfigues, 390.10 Magritra es of China Sacrifice like Prusts.

mages cretted to them. , 393.

Magnificat, at Eneming prayer in the Ruffun Church, 450.

Maguey , the wonder Tree of Welt India described : it reolds Water , Wine , Oyle , Vineger, Honey, Sirrop, Threed and Needles ; and bow they get all shefe out of it, 957.10.20 Mahumetanuime the extent, 317.

Mahumetanes in she Moluccas and the Philippinses, 905.20. How they gate thither and further, ibid. ze

Mahumetanes many in China, 399.50. But ignerant and contowned, ibid. When they gate in,

Mahumetanes wifising of Tombes, 234-20. Conneed holy shere-32 C.TO Mahametane diffinitions for liberty to dranke Way. Maifters much bonaured in China.

Mailter of the Coromonies in Chi-300-10-288.40 Maifter of the Horfe in Ruffia bie

Greatneffe and reservence, 425. Malabar, called India the Greater, 104.30. Fours Kingdomes in it.

104.30 Malaca, bow farre from Macao, Malucaes Hands : the Warres there betwier the Spaniards and the

Portugals, 282.20 Maluccas, the Nanigation thither from Spaine; 860.10. The di-Bance and Seafons, ibid. Mameys an Indian frais deferibed, Mamoles, the old people of Curland : Idolaters, barbarous, de. Their Rites, Marriages, Eurin als, Habites, Hofbitalitie, de.

Manare a West Indian Fish deseria bed, bow taken : bee bath a Stone good against the Stone

Manati a Fish that gines fucke,930. 40. Their description. Mancherule, the chiefe Citie of the

old Tartare, 15.30. Where they fiell elett their Great Chan

Mandarines, their honour in China, 370.30. Sets up Flags bea fore bis Honfe, and Arches triumphall, ibid. Some examples of then Nobleneffe, 371. Diffofed in all Cities, 372. There be fixe of them chiefe. 373.30 Mangat or Marcopia the Cuie.

634.30 Mangi what part of China, 404.

Mangi accounted barbarons by the Chinois, Mangi buth nine Vice-royes under the Great Tartar. Mangi or China, 95.30. The feenritie of it fometimes , bid, Innaded by the Tartars, 95 60. And taken, 96.10. The name of Mangi difcuffed, 96, 10, in mareine. And fee efpecially page 102.

the nine Southerly Proninces of China. Mangu Chan be meffage to the King of Franckes, 29.30. His golden Bull, and the authoritie of Mangu chofen Cham of Tartarie, 25.10. Kill Siremen, 25.20. His conference with Frier Wil. liam, 27. 20. His defeription, ibid. Hu Court and Firing,

Mangi; the Kingdome, 89.10. It is

Mangu Chan bis Proclamation concerning a Diffutation of Reli-gion beld before bino, 41.50. His last discourse with Frier William,42. Hu letters to the French King, 45.50

ibid. 30. His proud Answere,

Mangu or Mango-Chan, 114.10. Baptized, 115.60. Dyeth, 117.

Mangani, what, Mangu-Chans Instice done upon 957 | bu nune IFife, 44.50.0 45.1 Mangustane, a Port, 235.30. The people described. Minila she lland, 286.10. A Bi-Shops Seatheres Minna-hota the Riner in Virgi-

Manfe and Taute, llanders of Carhava 34.10 Mansflesh eaten in the Siege of

Mofco, 780.20 Map-makers and Globe-makers, create Lands and Ilands at plea-

Map of China, the best with notes. Mappes of China their Errows,

Maps purposely made faile by the Spaniards. 882 20 853.30 Maragnon, or the River of Amazo. nes in the West Indies, the chiefest of the World,933.60. Sementy leagues broad at the mouth.

Marble a kind of it much eftermed in China, 315. 312.1. Like to Infar, ibid. Gotten out of the Rivers, and forced with Fire.

Marchpane in China, 292. 50.0 Marcopia or Mangat the Citie,634

Marcus Paulus Venerus, made one of Cublas Chans Clerkes, 67-40. He learnes foure Languages, ibid. Sent Ambaffadour by him to Caranan, ibid. co. Writes 4 Iournall of his travels, ibid. Continues a long time with the Great Chan, ibid, Goes to Atgon m India,68.30. To Trebefonde, Constantinople, Negroponte, and to Venice againe, ibid.40. Where no body knew bim, ibid. 50. 60. Taken Prifoner by the Genowayes, might not be redeemed.60. 1. He writes his transiles, ibid. Marcus Paulus Venetus bie Booke, 65.40 Mares tayle, the Tartars Enfigne,

Mares white, all Confecrated m Tartarie, when, and bow, 44.10. Much like to the Papists falbion (aub Rubruquis,

Magarita Iland in the West Indies : the distance from Hifpaniola and Trinidad, the Villages in it. Pearle-fishing there the Latitude.

Margarites Sound in Orkney, 827.

Marienberg by Danske, she Lu-

theran and Romane Religions exercifed there,626.20. Built by whom. Market-wares of Mexico, 1132.

Mermalades of West Indian fruit. 957 60.958.20 Marriages of the Chinois, 367.50. One Wife, and many Concubmes, which they buy and fell agains : their Children inherite ibid. They Marry not any of their owne name.

Marriages, publicke Vtenfiles for them in China, 99.10 Marriages of the Mamoles of Curland, 628. Of the Lithuani-

628.60 Marriages in China. 182.30 Marriages of the Chinois, 393.60.

See Weddings. Marriages of the Mexicans, 1009.

Marriages of the Samoieds, 555.

Marriages the third or fourth, not well allowed in the Greeke Church, 435. 36. The manner of Solemization in Rullia, 453. Held valawfull without confent of Parents, 454.1. Large Dom. ries and no loyaters, ibid.10. They goe on Horfebacke to Church, ibid. The Ceremonies at Church like ours, ibid. Performed at the Altar, with Ring and toyning of bands, thee knockes ber Head woon his Shooe, and he throwes the lappe of his Garment oner ber, ibid. The Cermony of the Leafe, and Meade, and Corne flung upon them, and the Brides filence, ibid. The Marriage Feast, and the Bridegroome and Bride called Dake and Dacheffe, Marriages of the Crim Tartars. what degrees are forbidden them, their Dowries.

Marriages of the West Indians. 991.40. \$ 993.40. \$ 998.40. Ofthe Mexicans, Of the Mexicans,
Marriages incestnow of the King of Peru. 1054.5 Marriage Solemnities. 1058 Marriage Rites of Mexico, 1107.

Martauan in Pegu, 281.40 Santa Martha Proxince in the Weit Indies, the Extent. Site, natine Commodities, Mines, precions Stones, Latstude. Martyrs of the Dinels making, 70.

eec 2

Maskes de. at the Corenation of the Kings of Mexico, 1019.40 Masking in China. Maffis, the Mountaine where Noalis Arkerested 50.20 Mafuaga the Iland. 285.20

Mathematickes first taught in China, 329.60. 6 339,20,30 The meannelle of their former skill that way, 344.20. Their In-Aruments. 346.20 Mattiga the Csty, where.

Matrimony, the forme in Ruffia, 229.50.0 220.1 Matepheone or Mathewes Land,

Mattufchan Yar in Ruffia the way thence to Ob, 805.30 Maudlen Sound in Greenland, the @ Latitude. Maundy Thursday , the Russian

Emperour receives the Sacrament vpen, May-featts and May Flowers brought by the Indians, to their bonfes, 1045-30 May-pole of fnow,

Mays or Indian Wheate, makes men scabbie, bow it growes : differences of the graine, bow dreft and eaten, malted for Beere, 953 It fernes for Butter, Bread, Wines and Oyle, and for man & beatt,

Meani, are Temples in China, 201. Meades of Senerall Sorts, 231.1

Meates, Some holyer then others in Ruffia, 453a. Their Superstinione abstinence, Meates prepared for Idols in Mexi-Meate-forker of Gold.

Mechoacan, the Bifbepricke & Prouince in the West Indies, the Extent, Altunde of the Citie, other Townes under st, 874-40. &

Mechouacans for faken by their kulmen of Mexico, how, 1002. 60. They bate the Mexicans there-1002.1 Mecriti, or Meditæ, a Tartarian people of Bargu,

Media, now called Shernan, 245.40. Conquered by the Turkes, ibid. Poffeffed by the Turkes , 244.

Mediator, the Ruffes errour about him. Meditæ er Mecriti, in Tartaria,

Mediterranean Sea, none of note in 50 all America 926.50 Megna

Conferrated.

they overthrow them too, ibid,

And other neighbours, 1013.

And others, 1014. And others,

408.10

Methodius the Armenian Pro- Mexico as mell an ordered King-

M goa in China, foyled by fiftie Iaponians, Malons of West India described, 955.30 Men with tayles. Men, beafts , and fowle , bow they came into America; a discourse of it. M-n-eaters, 101.20. 6 103. 50. eating their owne kindred, 103. Mendez, his defigne and performance. 278.20 Merchants poore in Ruffia, 432.50 Merchants Feast of Mexico, the manner of u, 1048. Gc. They eate the Man which they had Sacrificed. 1049-20 Merclas, fo the Tartars call the Merdui. M.rdui a people, in Tartarie, ibid. Mergates Straights, Merida Citie in the West Indies, the Latstude, 875. 30. The de-Meridin the Prosince, where, 69. Sir Io'n Mericke Agent in Ruffia 748. 749. Seut Ambaffadour thither, 791, Makes the Peace berwine Rufia & Sweden, 792. Merites onely adnance in China, Merkit or Crit, Neftorian Chrifts mesin Catay, 15.10 Mermayd feene and deferibed Melopotamia the bounds, 110.50 Mettizos, or Children gotten by Span mards upon Indian women, 3.thoufand in one Prounce, 902.10 Meta incognica desconered by Sur Martin Frobifher, 462.30 Metall, held by the Chinou for au Element, Metals grow like Plants, a Philofo. phical descourse of their produ-Etion, 941.942. Their dinerfitus and vier, of the qualitie of the earth where they grow : in barren places, the finest Metals on the top of the Mine, 946.40. All Metals but Gold (wimmes in Quickefilner, 948.1 Metemplycholis, or the transmisgration of Soules in China, 368. Metempfycholis , the opinion of it, causes Mothers to kill their Children 396.20 Metemplychofis, the Indge for st.

dome, as any in Europe, ibid. O. Metropolitan of Mulcouia, hu ther victories of the M xicans. 1016. Other Conquesti, 1017. State, bee fits while the Empe-They force a River to their Cities rour stands, 226.50. The Em-Berour leades bis Horfe, 227.30. ibid. Which being almost drow-The people fpreads their garments ned by it , the King rebush like under bim. Hee bleffeth them, another Venice, 1018. 1. The ibid. The Emperour dines greatneffe of their Empire, ib.d. with him on Palme-funday, 227. 60. The Stately Seruice of their 40. All matters of Religion Kings, 1019.30. # 1126. 1130. the Emacrour referres to him. Strange prodigies foretelling the ruine of their Empire, 1020. The Metropolitan of Mosco, made a Spaniards arrive there , whom Platriarch, 445.40.50. The mathey superstationsly believe to bea ner, ibid. His imagined Inrifdi. their old King, 1021. Their an-Elion ouer the whole Grecke cient Religion, 1026. 1027.00. Church. 446.20 Their Idels, flapes, or aments, Metropolitans of Noungrod and Sacrifices and Peftinals, 10:0. Roftoue, under the Patriarch of 1031. Ce. They mutated Gods ( burch berein, 103 3.50. Their Mexicom the West Indies, the lin Superflitions trickes, 1041.40. mites of the Councell, the Arch-Their Sorceries, ibid. Conquebultopricke and its Invitation: red by Cortes the Spaniard. the Indian Names of Mexico. 1118. The Cuic destroyed by the Longitude and Latitude, dibow, 1122,20. And rebuilded, flance from Toledo : boures of ibid. Description of M. XI.O at it flourished at the Spaniards Sun-rife : fisuation and defeription of the Citie, 870. Suffracommung thaber, 1131.1132. gane Bifbens to the Archbifhon: erc. Their Markets and Wares, Monafteries and the Univerfiibid. 1133. Their Temple, ibid. ty there and the Spanish Inqui-40. Other Antiquities of their Letters, Numbers, Times, Oc. Mexico the new, where, 1001.10 1135. Ov. Their Chronologie. Mexico, bow and when first peo-Mexicans, their Marriage, Cerepled ibid. Their lenerall lournezes, Plantations, & Accidents :

monies, 1044. 30. Their Feftiledde by the Dwell : their Conwall dayes, 1046. & 1048. &c. Their civill Customes, Arts, Kan quests, they tame the Suaker. 1002. Their Idell Tocci. bow lendar, Oc. 1050. Their Bookes, Writing, Schooles , &c. 1052 A:xico Coie founded by an Ora-Their Foot-pofts, 1054. Their cle : the odde Story of that, 1004. Kings chosen by Election, how, The four quarters of the Citie divided by Oracle : their other ty. Officers, Priefts, Kniebibood. Gods. A new Colonie goes ent: Warfare, Oc. 1063. Education they chuse a King, 1005. His of their Youth, Playes, & c. 1064. recessing, Coronation, & charge, Their Rope-dancing and agilitie, beautifies M xico. 1006, 60. 1065. Their Story in Pictures, Their focond King : they are gibegins at Page 1067. and contin nen to South faying, 1009 unes to page, 1117. The tributes Mexico Citie built in a Lake, they of their Kings, 1080 de. Their quarrell with their Naghbonrs, primate bebaniones, 1102.00. von which their King is war-How they doe with their new thered: their League with their borne Children , 1102. 1103. other neighbours to revenge it, Their Marriage rites, 1107.076. 1010. They proclaims Warre 4-The Kings Armes , 1128. 20. gainst the Murtherers of their Their Policy & Common-wealth King, 1011. Their villery, 2012. 1119 1110 Pronoked by other Neighbours, Mezen in Ruffia, 528. The way

to Cathay, 520 of \$40.50. From

thence to Cancinos, &c. to Pe-

chora, \$28. Furres trading for

Michalowich, foretold to be Emperour of Ruffia. Mienthe Kingdome and Citie , 93 20,50. Conquered by the Tartars. Miles long ones in Podolia, 632.20 Miles of Norway, 656.20 Military benours among st the Tar-642.10 Military degrees how given in Chi-387.10 Milicary rewards. 387.60 Milke formed up by Snakes licks up by men, 629.40 Millet, achiefe Diet of the Tar-640.40 Millet Mayz or Indian wheate, the qualities of it, 893.40. Growes in Canes. Mindoo the Citie: the Commedia Mines of Silver in Xolor, 281.40 Mines of New Spaine, the names of them. Their distance from Mexico, 872.10 Mines in China flopt up, selltbe King bad need of money, 348 40 Miniaires what Images they are, 948.50 Miracles believed to bee wrong he by the dead in Ruffia. Miracles, believed foolifbly by the Spaniards in their Conquest of Mexico. 1024.00 Miracle-worker in the Indie bangea afterwards, by his some Spa-897-10-to marg. Miracles of the Denill on Mexico. Miralis, & Porta ferrea, or Der-Mirobulans grow in Cauchin Chi-Mitts make the Earth more fruit. full then the raine, 937.50 Miters in China, 263.20. 6 274 50. Mitre of the Patriarch of Molco with a Ball on the top, and why, Moal , the name of the Tartarian Nation, 14.40. Whence derined, Moal Tartars where and who, 799 20. See Tartars of the East. Moan the Plaine, where, 49 10 Moldauia, some places init, 633 Moluccas, or the Hands of Spicery, which fine of them bee the chiefe: they are under the Aquinodiall, thence so Pechora, Obi, and Yeniffe Rivers, and through Siberia

Emperours Sacreledge. land. Begging, oc. Moldausa, gomfey, tayne the Emperour, Monkish Re(ne)lation, ting all places, feats and features. the water. then bignoffes, &c. Names and tary, latitudes of the rest, pawned to the Portugals.

362.40 Mogores their ancient bounds, 280 Monarchie, a great affiftant to plantation of Religion, 1025.10. 1026.1.10 Monafteries in Ruffia, the Nobilitie thruft into them, 424.30,50 Suffered to bee made rich for the by weight uncorned, Monafteries are Sandwaries in Ruifia, 448.40. The greatneffe and in the Indies. wealth of some of them, 449.1 Monaiteries on Island and Grone-651.20 Monaftery of S. Bennet of Holm, m England and Norway, 624 1. Story of it, ibid. Monatteries of Peru for women their Orders and Renemnes, 1034.10.For men, 1035.1. Then Habit Sha-& 92. Of Paper, ming, Offices, Orders, Penance. Money of Corall. Moncastrum, or Bialogrod in 633.1 Monfarts Relation of China, 410 Monganet, Samoeds on the Ob. in China, 805.1 Monginoco the Empire, 281.40 Mongozey in Ruffia, the Trade thither,537.30. See alfo pag. 538 @ 539. Or. What it is, 540.1 Monfters of Bralle. Furres there , ibid. See Mol-Monftrous Statues, Monfone 551. Í Mongozey , written Molgomfey, Monful the Country Monkes of Ruffia, bow provided for 228.10. More of them, fee, ibid. Merchants, ibid. They enterdayes, Monkes m China, 196.50. Seaslars , ibid. Their Babit, 274.40 Monkesin China bad Coneubines, and were high-way Thieues, 334 ber the 24.where, 26.40 Monkish Order of Saint Francis not Catholicke or unmerfally fit-Fire-workes, Monkeyes of India, their kinds. 966. Strange rarsties of them.: one taught to buy Wine & to bite painted women. How they paffe Rivers admirably ,967.1. Their Monkeyes buns for Birds Nefts 980.40. & 981.1, They feare. Money of Paper, or Barke in Tar-Indies , the head , courfe, and mouth. Money of Paper in Cathaia, 34-Mordwit Tartars , most barba-10. How made, ibid. Of ported ross, 442.40. Her worfhips and Mogor bow divided from China, Sweares by , for bis God , that

Moneyes of the Crim Tartars, 640 Money of Paper, Barke, or Porcellane, where the Gola growes, fee Pag. 91. 92. 94. 96. 98 Money not of Gold where Gold growes : 942. Of Fruits leanes. Coca; Iron, ibid. Of Leather, Cotton, de. 943.956. Of Silner Money not of Gold but of Fruits. Money answeres to all things, 942 Money of Silver barres in China. 366.30. Of Braffe, Money of Silner Rods weighed, 164. 60.0 166.1 Money of twigs of Gold, 91.30. Of Salt, ibid. Of Porceline, 91.50 108.00 Money of Porcellane, 94.30 90.00 Money neglected, the advantage made of it, by the Tartar, 442 Money makes the Issuits prenaile Monster of the Sea, a stippendious Monftero feene in Mexico, 1021 266.20 267.I 307-10 105.40 Months of the Mexicans, 1135 Month of the Mexicans of twenty 1000.10 Months of Peru, which of sheirs answere to which of ours, 1045 Moone seene continually after Octo-Moone : the Chinese keepe the Change folemme, 392.40 Moone, accounted Heaven, 277.1 Moone, at the Full, welcommed with Moone, the yeare reckened by it, in Tanguth, 77.10. In Iapon, 323. 20.40./n China, 199.10.344. 30. The Tartarsreckon by 11, 28.50 Moores fome in China, 207-10 Slaves trade into China, 362.1 Moores given to conzenage, 285 Morauyon, the Riner in the West

868 10

which he meets first in the morning, ibid. Kils his best Horse when bis Friend dyes, & why, ib . M riouits, the Country, receives Christianity, Mories, or Sea-borfe-filbing, 465 20. His description, and manner of killing bens, Mories roare and make a noyle, 557 10. They caft their teeth , ibid. Their manner of fighting, 558 30. They come not on land while any Ice is neere the Sheare, \$59 One brought aline into Engla d, decible. 560.50 Morfes teeth where taken, 214.1 The vie of them, 41749 Mortar vuknowne to the Indians, 1046.10 Mortar made of Pumice-Stones. Motezuma King of Mexico, bu granitic feemes to refufe the Kingdome, 1018. Is elected, bu valour and extreme pride, 1019 His produgality femerity, and po-

granite semes to resuste the control of the Kingdome, 1018. Is election, but willow mad extreme pride, 1019. His productivity featurity, and positive, must be see well-poped as a Gold in frest old of this trine, but frient and Product, 1000. Taken by the Spaniards, 1025, 1037

Chinz, 394
Moscothe City and Country, 214
20.Deferibed, 225
Mosco the City, the way from thence to Vologda, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 221

Moleo the City, the beginning and description of it. Settented in the edge of Europe and Alia, 418 40. Burnt by the Tartar, ibid. Greater then London, ibid. The environment of the Europe and Alia with the burning, 430.50. Claymed by the Tartar.

Mosco greater then London, 214 20. Stands in 55. degrees 10

minutes, 415
Mosco City the gonernment, 427, 20. Taken in by 100 less. Loss againe, 780.1. The way by land from theuce to Emden, 743.50. The distance from Vologda,

Moscothe River, losses his name in the Occa, 231.30. The River bullowed and the manner, 455.40 Ginen to ficke folker, lbid.

Molcoby the people, 280,30
Molcumbia a Lake, 261.1
Moles four the Booker, next to the notes four the Rustian Church; and why, 473.30
Moful the Promince, where, 69,50
Moful the Carp, now Seleucia, 110
50
Mourners are a trade in Ormuz,711

Moful the City, new Seleucia, 110
Mourners are a trade in Ormuz, 71
60
Mourners beare no Office in China, 327,40
Mourning the time of ferry dessis in Ruffa, 741
Mourning Religion in China, 345
Mourning in China, with courfe Woolken next the skyn, 182,10

Mo rning in white, 268. I. It holds

for three yeares in China, ibid.

And why, 393.20. The manner

of it. They change their Habits,
Utenfils, Paper, and names, ibid,
See, pag.
Mourning Garment in Spaine is
blacke Bayes, in China mbite limen,
168.1
Mount Hackluyt, 730.10. The
Latitude and Veriation, ibid,
Mountaugne the highest in the most

Mountayne remented by a Shoomaker: A Holyday in memory of it, 70.40 Mountaynes wonderfull in Illand, 648.10. In the middle Region, or

burning.
Mountaynes under the Torride
Zone, make it more temperate &
babitable,
936.1
Moxel, a Tartarian people, 12-30.
Nothing isalous,
bid.
Moxel or Motel, the feneral peo-

Moxul or Molul, the feneral people mis. Their Silkes, 70x1 Muc a people of Catay, 23,40 Their manners, ibid, Mules v/edse packes in China, 295 Mules for the Streets in China,

Mulibet or Hassilines in Cathaya,
39.20
Mulitude their inconflancy and
folly, 790.10,50.07.
Hummeries of the Mexicans,
1049
Munday the Russe begin Law up-

Munition Honft of the Kings of Mexico, 1129 Murfill or Monful, the Country,

River Murili or Monful, the Countre 55.40 hid. Murthers ordinary in Russia. Murders of the poore, not accounted for by the Nobility in Rullia, 435

Morfe is a Prince in Tartarian, 133
Mus, or Meridin, the Nation, 70

Musauires, a Name of the Leves, String, Musicke in China, and their fewer all Instruments, 181, 10, Crano,

Musicke of China, she manner, 383.2 Musicke of the Chinois, meetine, 371

Mulicke of the Mexicans, 1065.1 Mulicke to comfort the dead, 277

Mushet Assantayeu, 16.1.
Mushet Assantayeu, 16.2.
Mushet Assantayeu, 16

Mulcouie Merchanis their losses Sea, 709.6712 Mulcouia Merchanis, and East India Company terme in a Verges, 468.30. The Mulcouia Company losse by it, ibid. They dif-

shem by los. Defterbers of them

to be privilbed, 755. Secalfo, 758

folne, and deliner oner the trade, 469.30 Muscouia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperour, 852.60c. Denied to trade for Parres,

805.50 Muscouian Emperour bis stile ordimary, 215.10. At large, 221.10 His Letters to King Edward, 221. He is Heire generall to the Laity, 216,10. And Abbots. 218. Sits ordinarily in luftice. 228.1. Medletb not with Religion ibid. His treasure, ibid. His broad Scale is the George, 221 40. His Court on bigh dayes, furnished with Merchants clad like Nobles, 249.50. His buge place, ibid. His Prefence Chamber and Dining Roome. All mon there in white, and conered, 214 His Service all in Gold .: He fends

bread to enery quest in particular,

He changes bis Imperial Crowne sbrice : n a meale , 215.10. See alfo in pag. 224.40. 0 225. Scrued by Dukes, 225, Hus forces all Horsemen, no Husbandmen ner Merchants. Their Armes, undescipline, their bardy bodies, and their bardy Horses, thid. Gmes no pay, 216.1. Thereafon of that, 225.60. Their Law and Suites, 216.40 Without Lawyers, ibid. Triall by Combat, 216.60 In case of debs, 217. They hang none for the sirst offence, 217.20 Very decentual, and entreame poore, wild. Their Religion and Superstuien, 217.30. 6 :19. Most Superstitions in their Grecian Rues, ibid. Their fashions in the Church. Their ignorance in the Lords Prayer, Creede and Commandements, ibid, Calles baife Christians, ibid. Their Prayers, As bods pomele, ibid. & 229.10. They wfe the Sacrament inboth kinds, ibid. & 229 Their Oblations of Candles and Money, ibid. They bane a Te-Stimonial to Saint Peter, laid in their Coffin, 218. Their foure chiefe Saints, 218.1. Their fruit. neffe in Lents , 218.10. Their Sermice at burch thrice a day. 218.10. Then Nationall vices,

m, 1000.

Mulcouites babit, 215,30, d 226

1. Abilimence in Lent, 227.1

Their yearone of (Monies, 218

10. And of Religion, 230,10 or (Minese of Coffe, 22)

They who their Vivines once a Verde, 236,20. Pearned, bid. Ride affinde, jibid, Many famed, 230,30. Monmerful of Minese once a very complete their properties of the monies of the complete of t

218.10,20. 7 225. Wamen kepi

Muscouia & Muscouites, see Rusfia & Russes.

Muske, whence the Chinois base it, 168,40. What it is, ibid. Muske, how gotten, 362,30. The best mibe World, where, 79,50 The Muske Cat described thid.

Muske Cat as bigge as a Hound, 242-50 Muske-melons in Tartary or Car-

bule, 236 Muffers in Russa, their manner, 437.1.10

and the Ceremony and flate of it. He changes his Impersal Crowne thruso in a meale, 215.10. See Mucalla, the Dominious, where, 798 all on 120.

Mulpman a Pore; 253,20. Silver brought shither, and whence, ibid. And other Wares, ibid. Mynes of Quoangiparu; 260,30

Of Conxinaciu, 163.50
Mynes of the Welk Indies of what
metal, 942. The help metal on
the top, 946.40, The huse paines
in working a Silver Myne, the
darknesse & dampt of the Myne,

Mynes, where they are, thetrees to he all blasted, 595.1,30. In Virginia, ibid.

N

NAcapirau, the mather of the Starres, 274.30. Her Statme, 275.1

Nagayan Tartars, their Country,

414,1

Nagayan Tartars border upon the

Crims,638.1- They are the beft

Souldiers of all the Tartar Nations, but the cruckeft, 442.30 By Religion they are Mainometans, 232. All defroyed, bid of 233.20,40

Naium the Tartar bis Rebellon, 81.50 Ouerthrowne, 82.10. He is a faile Christian. His Eusente mes the Cr. st. bid. Many Chris stans stance with bism, ibid.

Nakednesse of the Indians, 991.60
993.40
Nakednesse in Rustene,
617.30
Names changed at entring of Monafteres, 745.30. The Armeni-

an Montes change them, 118.

Names, the Chinois adds and take
often, 394,50. The women haue
no name, ibid.

Names of strangers bard to write in the Chincle Language, 1051 50 Names, the mainer of imposing

shem used in Mexico, 1102
Nancian in China: an Uninerstise,
338.60, Princes of the blond flu-

desbere, ibid.
Nangalak in Ispon, 325.20
Nanquin the City described, 265
The Commodities. 96

Nai quin or Quinfav in China deferibed, 263.1. The length of the fireess, and passing, ibic. Foure times as populous as Rome or Lisbone, ibid. Called the (ity of Heanen, ibid. The building is nothing faire, ibid. How ferned with prosifion, 364. TO. 10000. [bips belong to it, ibid.

Improblemg to it,

Nanquin or Oninfay, what it fignifies, when the Court was remined thince to Pequin, 389.30

Sin Quintay.

Napery not ofedin China, 292.40 Naramite Sea, 546,20.0 551.1 Narfarawike Hauen in Island, 654

Name the River in Liefland, 628 40. First traded onto, 250.40 The Roffes errow there, 439 Nascof Norway, or Lyndis Nose.

The Variation of the Compasse there, 814.40 Natiades, or Russian Boates descrebed, 224.10, Built without Iron.

ibid. Nafficke #Tuttarian Capet, 30

Natigai, the Tartars God of Earthly things, 88.50 Natuaties caff in China, 395.50 Natuatal cas the first peoplers of Me-

Naturalcus the first peoples of Mckico, their first Linages, 1001 is hence the name of Mckico comes, 1002-50 Natidad Port in the West Indies, the lastitude, 375.1 Natigation the benefits of it, 473

20
Nauigations from Spaine to the
Indies, four fenerall, 838.1,10
The times and comfes, itsid. The
way backe againe by other Courfes, and why.
\$59.20

Nauigation from the Avana to Cafile, from the Azores to Saine Lucar. To the River of Plate, 859-90,50, &c. From Panama to Los Reyes, and to Chila 860 Naxnan the Cafile, where, 49,40 Sometimes the head of Amenia,

Nayles of Iron well fold. 184.50 Nayman, a Christian people in Taxtary, 14.50 Needles and thred of silvbones and

finewes, 522.50
Needles melination, 89 degrees and an halfe, in 75. degrees and 22.

Needles inclination in 89; degrees and an balfe, 576.6 in 74.degrees 35, minutes, 576,50. And about the North Cape, 575.2 And in 61.degrees 11, minutes, 567.30. In 65, degrees 45, mimutes, 716. In 76. degrees 55. minnies, 7, 17, 50. In 77, degrees 40. miontes, 7, 19, 40. In 61, degrees 40 montes, 81, 240. In 8, 8 degrees 10. montes, 81, 240. In 8, 186, 20 N. pletacuce m fermans feneraly panishes. N. per, is the Burithenes, 633 Nederich an Iland in the Ruser Vifula, 636, 10. Ecompaful with a Wall a bigh an plut

Receive and standard are Reservit.

Rula, 636-10. Excompassion

with a Wall on high at Paulin

Nichter the River in Moldania, the

Comes and Pass, 632-1. Called

Tyras and Monoprolemus, bird.

Nethor an Herefie, the executes, 317

40. Disprigation sungles all India,

Nethorian Prinsis in Tartary,

138-40

Nethorian Prinsis in Tartary,

14.60. Some in Co.

Great Lears, 14,60. Some in Co.

Great Lears, 14,60. Some in Co.

char, 74.40. And in Carchan, 74.50 Nestorians in Tanguth, 75.40. In Chirchintals, 76.30. In Successif, 76.50. In Campion, 77.1 Nestorians were Malabar, under the Biften of Successification of Successificati

Great Enchanter, ibid.
Nettorians gime way to the Tartarians Soveries, 33.20
Nettorians, Stracens, and Idelaters
dwell regether in Tartary. 21.17

dwellsegether in Tartary, 2111 Nestorians in Erginul, 79, 50. In Exregaia, 80, 10, 20. In China, 97, 40. & 100, 40. In Chaldza, 110, 50. In Carianfu, 89, 40. In lact, 91,40.

In laci, 91-40 Nestorian Christians many in Cathay, 24.1. Their rites, 24.10.07

Nestorians drunke at Church, 31.1.
Their fast of three weeks before
Lens called the Fast of Ionas, 31
They case no fish in Lens, 35

Nestorians baptize at Easter, and ballow the Fount folemnes, 30.

Nestorians how they make and confecrate the bread for the Sacrament, 37.10. Their manner offeining the bread, ibid. They haptife upon Easter Eene, 37.10 Their Patriarch residents at Baldach, 27.40

dach, 37.40
Nettorians fing Masters steer Selemusis: at Church, in Tartary,
20. 30. 40 50. The Tartarian
Emperour and Ledies come to
there Services, 30.40. Gr. CV/e
Beads, and fing their Prayers, 15

40. Kew net Extreme-onditum, our Confossion, 28.0. Nethorian Parriamels gines Orders each to Infents, 58.00 Nethorian Communics souther Paffins of Christ, 41.70 Nethorianders, when they first traded onto Mulcouit, 46,410 Febridates by those rome Suncreigne to interrupt the English theore, thick Their increcious, 1 bid. dy 466. 20. Febridates by the English, bud. See Durch.

Neuftat bossessed by the Tattars, 63 Newleas in Sweden; how for from Stockholme, 775 New edge of the Mexicans, 1050 See also, pag. 1067 40 New Bizkie in the Weft Indies, the Silient Mynes in it, the lati-

the Silver Mynesin is, the latitude, \$77.30 New-found-land discovered, \$68 20. Taken possession of for England; hind. New-found-land, the Banke, \$84 20. The Verriation of the Com-

men, bid, Codi and Herring, there, Sq., The hospit, bid. The propie report of Gold and Sulmer Adjusts to be then, bid, Fine lands by it, bid. Lidfers there, 356:10. And Farris and Beauthouse by the French, blue. We without claim, be better the County of the Company of the County of the Count

paffe there, ibid. Fifte by French-

584.585.586.587.588
New-land is Greenland, 463
20
New Moones keps Festinall in Tar-

tary, 84.40
New Moones Festivall in China,

New Moone simplers in Chin2,305
10. Held good to begin bufinesse Topon,
305.50
New Moone. brings tempost.

New Moone, brings tempeft, su China, 256.50. Best sayling there, at the Full and Change, 258.30 New Moone, malcommed with fire-

New Moone, melcommed with fireworker, 345, 30. How nelcommed in Peru, 1046.1. Bells rung on it, 275, 30 New-yeares feafing (like 10 our

Chrismasse) lasts sificene dayes, 374.60 New-yeares gists, 343.30 New-yeares gists in China, 202

Emperour and Ladies come to their Service, 30 30,40. Ge. U/e Beads, and sing their Prayers, 15 Indies, the Iuristition, Commodities, Tribusary Indians, Lake of that name, Cries, Rivers, &c. 880 Niceneffe, ridiculous, 375-20 Nidrotta, ir Dronten in Norway

Nidrotta, in Dronten in Norway, 651.30. A Promine it is,660.x Saint Nicholas, the Ruffes great Saint: but three hundred Angel, Saint Nicholas day, bow teps in Ruffa, \$23.40

Saint Nicholas the town in Rulia, in 63 degrees 50, monates, 415 Nicolo and Martio, 56 50, 56 fees Ambelfiedense from Cubia Chan es the Partary, 55 50, 56 fees Ambelfiedense from Cubia Chan es the Partary, 5740. They see into India, 68.30. Night more at all, where, 318,60. Night more at all, where, 318,60.

483-10.06 374.0c.
Night none in Greenland, fonz.
May the three and twentierh, 10
lune the fourth, 716.40
Night none in ten weeker together,
50.50

Night one and twenty boures long, 613.20. For three months together, 617.40 Nights long in Island, 647.20

When and when no night at all, hid.
Night shall be as cleere as the day,
fay the Chinois, 275.50

Night, see day.
Nighting ales sweetest in Russia, 415
10
Night-Sparrowes, fight with the

Bass in the Wett Indies, 995

Nigua a final Indian Vermina, bites
off mens fees, &c. 975

Nilus in Norway, 620.60

Nine a unmber of esteeme in Taxtary, 84.60. The reason, 112.50 113.20 Nyle-Nonogrod in Russia, 231 Nixiamcoo in China, taken by the

Tartars, 278.30
Noahs Arke where it refled, 50.10
The City Comainum, or Eighs,
built in memory of it, ibid. Armenian Fables of those Hilles

ib id Noble Families decayed, relieved by the Prince in Tartary, 28

Nobles of Ruffia oppresse the people, 421 60. They exercise absolute authority, 422-40. The primiledge lust, bid.

loft, ibid.
Nobility of Ruffia, their four e forts,
423.40. The ancient Honfes enforced to write them clues the

Emperours Villaines, ibidem.
How fill kept under, and male aurs, 424. The Names of the chiefe Fassilies, 424.50. The fecond degree of Niebei, 425.1.
The third and fourth degrees,
425.30
Chilitie of Buffis, as 67.

Nobilitie of Russia, are sometimes made Bissop. They change their names them 769.20, Slaine; 770 Or 780.20 Nobilitie and power not suffered to meete m Russia. 436.40 Nobilities of the City Teres.

meete m Rulia, 436.40 Nobilitie of the Ceim Tartars, their Service in the Emperours Warres with two Horfes, 444 Nobilitie of China, 346.50 Nocuerains Saunge lland of Spees, TOA10

Nomire de Dios first peopled and discouered, distance from Porto bello, 883.1 Noone (scrificed unto in Mexico.

Noone facrificed unto in Mexico, 1049.20 North not alwayes the coldest, and uby, 472-30. & 474-10

North parts of Europe, tast peopled,
661:50
North-starre from about the Equinottial Line, is seene very low,

North-starre not feene in lana
Maior, 103.30. Where feene againe,
North wind canfee Raine in Afri-

North wind causes Raine in Aftica, 922. Where, mist and vubolesome, 923,10.6c. North winds at certaine Monthes, 307,50.6 308.40 N

North Scawbich 858.t. The funrall courtes of Naugarison iniibil.600.the init. 860.50 North and South Scar of the Well Indies Swa logic Laques difficut: why not let one into amother. Where each brigin. 939. The Tydas of both rife, executor, and raire at the fame: ine. 930.20 Northerne Sexa and Paffages, why

foliang consecuted: 10 to escapion of disconering that way, 452.40 North Cape, 223.10. The latitude, 6699.60.marg. North Cape, the variation there, 774

60. The latitude, 58.20
Northerne Paffage beyond 80. degrees, the probabilistic of it, 15 hat fine convenientes to discouer it, 731.10. Vegages and Observations towards the North Pole, 699

North-east Passages ginen oner, 463.20 North-east parts, the right was to

disconer them, 529.40 North-west Passages attempted, 463.20. The commodity of it,

Norway, Some of the Coasts described, 18. Barren, Norway, fometimes fubielt to England,621.50. Senerall Expeditions of the English Kings thuber 623. The King of Norway in\_ mades England, 623.20. Trafficke betweet England & Norway, 627. Matthew Paris bis Voyage thither ibid. Norwegians Expedition to the Holy Land abid. Monaftical Honfes and Orders destroyed there . and reformed, 624. Peopled by King Arthur out of Brittaine, 624.40 Norwegian Iles peopled by Brite

taines, 619.30. The people feeled bere, ibid. Norwegian Antiquities, forme 656 40. 661.20 Norwegians their first breaking ont, and their exploits, 644-50 Notegayes a great present in India,

958.60 Nofegay of Silver, given for a Reward, 293.30 Nova Albion of Sir Fran, Drake, 849.1

Noua Hispania, first descoured, or why so wamed, it is the North Indics, the Native Commodutes of it, Noua Hispania called the best Coun-

trey is the World, a bigh Land, 935-60. Rich impsilures, 937.60
The temperature, Graine, Silure Mynes, & S.70.40, The cu-flowers of the people. 100
Noua Zembla discovered, 463.20
The Sea frezen there, 473.50
Neihing green in it, 474.11. How
farre from the Low Coursein.

Nothing green in it, 474.1. How farre from the Low Countries, 474.20. Why so cold, 527.50. And why that way vopelfable, 528.1. No passage that way to the East Indies, 577.30. See al-

In 178.40-05 579-50-77b Hcllanders mighlese u, u iber Aleps, 179-40. Called Colling Sarch-bull-thoce abe I ee comer thuber, 579-50. The Elemainn and Declusation of the Sun there, 474-50 Ce. Ice there in luly and hugult, 477-10. Island by and hugult, 477-10. Island by the Alegary of the Ingle of 11,498 60. The difference in longitude from Verinic, 500-30. The longitude of Nova Zenvilayivd. The distance from Ruffa, 514-50 Day and Night for many Monuths together there, 494-65 505

point of the Coast to another exactly fet downe, and so forth to gog Nouda in China taken by Portugals, 258. The rich spote, 259 Noueltie, China will admit noue;

The firetch of the Land from one

Nonogrode, or Grataneur, 214

Nouograd in Rusia, as bigge as London, 418.60. The visus pung Slanos defeated bere by the Whop, 419.10

Noyfes berrible in Itland, whynce, 649.1 Nunez the lefuite bis landing in China, 319.40. His repertes of China.

China, 1814.

Nunnes of the Gentile Indians, 1034-10. They were either farrifixed or made Concubuses, ibid.

And in McXico, and ther Office, ibid. By what the yeople, get, ibid. By what the yeople, ghelfed that the Nanne bad ben diffenelf, 1814.

Nunnes of the Chinois, 274.

Numeries in the Greeke Church, 449-20 Noble women thrust into them.

0

Come let us worship, &c. The
Psalme said before the
Psalmes for the Day, in the
Russian Service-booke; as we do,

Oates like silves finnes, 354.20
Oathes of severall Nations, 202
Oath of olde Island, the manuer,

Oati

20, 40. Upon Wheate Eares, 264.30 Oathes taken in Temples , 397

Ob the River in the Samoieds Countrey, 522. 6 523.50. The Rulles first paffe it, ibid. The france creatures there, ibid. They fuffer the Ruffes to build

Caffles upon st, 524.40. Boats drawne upon it, 526.40. Nanigable, two bundred leagues up, goodly Countreyes uninhabited upon it, ibid. The conseniencie of paffing by it through the Samoieds Countrey, 529.30. See alfo pag. 539.60. A Summers day fayling ouer,

Ob, the way and charges of discourring it from the Riner Pechota in Russia by Land, 804.60 The Inhabitants on each banke of it, and the fine Castles; the wood on it , fift in it , wild beafts frequenting it, the way to disconer is from Pechora by Sea, Sos. The way thuber from Caninos by Sea, ibid. A warme Sea be-

rond it. 806.10 Obedience to Parents, 344.60 Obedience of the Tartars to their Prince and Spiritual Indges,

Obligations the forme in Ruffia, 434.40. No interest mentes wed till the forfeiture , ibid. Speedy Instice upon Bonds, bid. Occa the River, 231.30. Falls into the Volga,

Ocerra the Citte. Ocha, a China word. 196.1 Octhers Voyage. 619.30 Oculus Tauri bis Elenation and Declination in Nous Zembla,

499.10 Oczacouia in Podolia, the olde names of st. 622.10 Offenders fewed up in raw Hides,

102.40 Offerings of Paper, 196.40 Offices none Hereditary in Ruffia,

Officers of the Houshald to the Emperour of Ruffia, 458.30 Officers the foure chiefe in Ruffia. 426. 1. Their Inrifdictions and Pensions, ibid. Their Commissions and Under-Officers, ibid. They put none to death, They are of no authority, and

are often changed, ibid. Suffered | to spoyle, that may bee spoyled, 430. They come to the Wbp,

Officers Names keps upon Record,

Officers continue but three yeares, 390.30. The Crimes for which they are condemned , ibidem. None is Indge in bis own Conntrey, ibid. Their Children and Sernants prevented from taking

of bribes, Officers of Mexicans killed to forme their Lords in the next World 1029.60 Ogatha Shama, feizes the Somereigntie of Iapon.

Olaus the King and Saint of Norway where buried , 618. 10. Honoured, ibid. His Sto-621.50 Old Testament undernalned, by

the Ruffes, Olimets Pronince in Ruffa by Nouogrod,

Ololuchqui, a feed of Mexico, the benumming quality of it: v fed in their Denshift Oyntment, 1043

Omittoffois, the Gods of China, 196.1. Their Offerings , ibid. They raile on them. Omithofon, Idels, 201.60 Omoncon first carries the Spanish Fryers to preach in China. 290. 20. Hee falles out with Sinfay, 304. 20. They are made Loytias, 307.40. Returnes to the Philippinaes, 308

Omur the Prince of it, comes to the Pope. Onam Kerule, the Court of Chingis-chan , 25. 40. The proper Country of the Tartars, ibid. &

One God acknowledged by the Me. Xicans. Onecko the Ruffe , bis Storie . 522. His Trading with the Samoieds for Furres; and his growing rich, ibid. Builds

Churches , 523. Difconers the Secret to the Emperour, is bonoured in Court , 423. 10. The encrease of his Hominrs , 424. 30. Their Lard. flops in the Citte Ofaili, &c.

Opobaliamum what properly, 959 Opprefficn publike in Ruffa, 427

Oppressors punished, and the op. preffed not relieved. Oracles of the Denill to the Mexicans, 1005.1. Of Peru, 1032 30. The posture sa which bis Priests came to confult with him : the manner of the An.

fwere, ibid. See alfo, pag. 1043 Orange Hands, the latstade there.

Oranges great flore in China,331 Oranges Lampions and Pome-ti-

treus in China. Oranges flore in the West Indies, how they first graw, 961

Orangei, a people in Tartary, 32 Orations made by Indians to their Kings , 1005. 40. 1006 1. 1010.49.1011-20.40.1018

Oration of Free William to Mangu-chan, Oration of the King of Mexico, te Hernando Cortes the Spani-Orca the Fift , kills the whale,

Orchardes infinite in China Orders of Knighthood in Mexico, their Degrees, Ensignes, and Priwiledges,

Ordnance bad in China, 301.60 & 305. marg. Short ones in Ca-Orellana, the Riner in the West Indies , the bead , comfe, and bugb mouth , 868.19. & 886.

Orefeke Towns in Ruffia, by Lodi-Organs blowne with the moust, 347

Organam , a Countrey in Catay, 20. 20. 60. The Neftorians there flill called Organa, for their skill on the Organs, ibid. Ormus, the Country and Iland, Their Commodities , 71. 30, 40. Ormus the Citie, is bead of Chermain, ibid. The descrip-

Ornaments of the Mexican Idels, T020.T02T Orphans prouided for in China,

Ortus the Kingdome between Mugalla and Bactria. Offouen Tartars, 627.20 40 Oftachies the people, where, \$ 27.10 Ottova.

THE TABLE

Olaman of the Mountagne, bis Paradece, 72.30,40.00. Fooles Paradice , 72. 40. Destroyed, 72.60. The vie made of it, 72

Old men that never accused any, much bonoured in China, 333 Oule Riner in Ruffia, 553.40. The Riners that fall mie it, ibid. And, 534. It falls me

Ottoya, or the Bride floor in

Peru, the Ceremony of st, 1058

Oueak a City,

so Pechora, and meere, 954 Outon the Riner, by Ob , 804

Ouft-Zilma in Ruffia : Farres there, 537.40. 0 544.10. De-544.30 Owles vied for Hawkes in Tarta-86.20 Owles-feathers, why the Tartais

O wles of Ruffia ftrange ones, 418 Oxe facrificed in China, 307.1 Oxen ftrange ones, which draw

the Tartars benfes, 23.1.71.20 79.50 Oxus the Riner , bath changed bis 236.20

Oyle in Baptifme. 229.30 Oyle in Baptisme in the Ruse Church. Oyle of Olines most preciously

accounted of , 108. 50. For this reason perchance a Tartarian Prince was the more defirom to have of the Oyle of the Lampe at lerufalem. Oyle of Balugos in Ruffe, The

manner of fishing for them, 549 Oyle of Afpick whence brought, &

Oyle made of the fap of a tree, 957

Oyle from Apples in China, 382 Oyle of Seales or Trans-oyle, 416 50. Hen made, 417.10. Sepe

Oyle of the Lampe before Christs Sepulciore , Defired by the Tartar Prince, 56. 40. Hee of them. receives it renevently, 67.

Ovntment of the Mexicanwhich make them fee the Papas Roots, are the bread of Pe-Denill : made of Poyfon and Tobacco. It made them Paper made of the fecond barke

feare no wilde Beaftes, 1043

DAatebenam, a Riner, 261 Pacamoros and Gualfango, the Promince in the West Indies. the extent of its Invifdiction, the naturall Commodities, Mynes Townes and their Latitudes.

891,60 Pacauca, Pacauca, Pacauca, are the King of Malabars Prayers, Pachin, what in Chinese, 199

Padou, a Riner by the Ob, 805 Pagodes, the Temples in China.

Palace of the King of Mangi deferibed, 100. 10. His Conen ibid. Palinguindoens, or Tartarian Trumpets.

278.10 Palmes the Iland in the Wett Indies , the distance from the . E . quinoctiall. 891.40 Palace Penfile, or builted upon Pil-

Lars, Palme-funday Proceffion in Ruffia. 227.20

Pamer, the Plante, Pamphilia m Cilicia, 💛 5 2.60 Pan, a Kingdome, 255.50 Panama in the West Indies, the City and Pronince , the Inrifde-Etion of the Counfell , the ex-

sent of it ; the Soyle , Ayre, Latitude and Longitude from Toledo, when first peopled, 882 Townes in it, 823.1,10 Panama the Nanigation too and a-

game to the City De los Reyes, and Chile. Pancakes at Shronetide in Ruffia; Panghin the City, 96.30

Pannonia when firft peopled, 662 Panouras or China Shippes, 260

Pantogia bis being in China, 407 Panuco Pronince in the West Indies; the extent, the difference of Soyle, the Townes and Lassindes 872.10,20 Papa, the Samoits Priefts, 443 40. And the Ruffians , 447

894.30

of the Mulbery Trees , 874;

Paper of diners matters made in China, Papers or notes fent before in Valitar

tions and fending of Prefents, Paper-facrifice of China, 369.1 Paper of Iapon. 324.10 Papey or East illand, whence fo cale Papions skins v fed for closhing in

Tartary, Pappa and Pappas, what, 657 Paps, bow the Indian wines beara them up,

Paquin deferibed, 272.20. Bejieged by Tar.ars, 280.10 Paradice, the Chinois would go vn-Pardoner an Officer in China, 339

Parents bonoured in China, 393

Parents much respetted in China. Parents felling or eating their owne

Children, Pariacaca Mountaine in the Well Indies, the ftrange fubileneffe of the Airethere, and the admirable effetts. One of the highest Lands in the World, 926.20,20

Parishes onequally divided, the inconneniencie, 447.60 Parity a Peace breaker, 277.30 Parliaments their order in Ruffia, 422.50. Begun commonly on Friday, ibid. The meeting firting and confulting, Parrots breed on the Mountaines of

Peru, Parrots fill fige by comples, 994 Parchenium the Promontory, 634

Parthia is now called Sachetava Zagetai or Sochtay, 141.10 Partridges of the West Indies, deferibed, bow taken, Partridges white and plenty in Ruffia, sheir Feathers fold, \$36

Partridges flying into a Ship , 247 Paruam, the bounds of the Mogores Dominion towards Catay, 314

Percatir, fpeake the Hungarian tongue, 18 50. Their trades and borders, ibid . The Hunnes came



Pafcatir, that is . Hungaria the greater, Palcha, a Christian Woman of Mentz, found in Tartary, 28

Palius the lesuite bie tranels, 321 His fortunes and death, 322-1 Pasport to Hell. Paffage by the Pole, the bopes, 702

Paffage probable between New Spaine, and Alia or Tartaria, Paffaur a City. 311.40 Palle for Trancllers, the forme vfed

in Ruffia. Patanes the people and Kingdome, 169.50

Patching of clothes, one of Tartarian Commandements , the rea-Patient bearing in Indges, 202.1

Patriarch of Conftantinople necotiates a league againft the Turk, 445. Aleagne betwixt Spaine and Moscouia: That bow broken off, ibid, He colourably resigneth bis Patriarchate , to the Metropolisan of Molco, ibid. Goes away enriched. Patriarch of Moico, the Emperours

Father chofen to be, 791.10 Parriarch of Molco, figues Patents with the Empereur, Oc.802.20

Patriarch of Russia made to play on a Bagpipe, 739.40. Crownes the Emperour, Patriarch of Molco, when first made,445. His Inrifaction ouer the Roffian Metropolitanes. Archbishops, orc. 446.30. His renenue: 445.60. His babit, 447 I. The Emperour holds bis borfe bridle. 456.10

Pauing with Pitch, 199.40 Paynting upon Paft-board in Ca-Paynting in China, without Sha-

dowing, 371.1 Paynting in China, 357.1,10,20 Paynting of their bodies, wfed by the Indians,

Paynting vfed by the Ruffe women. they have allowance from their Husbands to buy their Colours.

Paynted women. 230.30 Peacockes of the West Indies deferibed.

Peace mediated betwint the Rufles and Poles, and the Rulles and Sweden, and by whom, 791 Peace betwint the Ruffe and Swe-

den, 792. The conditions of the accord as followeth. Forgetfulnelle of inimries, 2. The Sweden yesids up the Caftles before taken, 3.Sweden was to reftore Church Ornaments & Bells , 4. Perfons and goods to bee freed on both fides, s. The time for Swedens delinery of the Townes, fet downe, 6. Lodia Callle to bee rendred. and Odoro to remayne Cautiomary to S reden, 7. Sweden not to ayde bis brother in bis clayme to Nouograd, &c. 8. What places the Ruffe wilds to Sweden. e. And what money, 10. Sweden to keepe the Ordnance which bee bad taken. 11. Sweden to rataine the Signiory of Corelia, 12. Where the Commissioners on both fides are are to meete . determine of the bounds, and confirme the Articles, 13. The Ruffe to gine omer bis title to Liefland, the titles of both Princes to be agreed upon, 1 4. Commerce of trade to continne, 15. Merchante on both fides to bane free exercise of Religion, 16. Perfonall wrongs , &c. And Amhaffages , bow to bee ordered : From the 16, to the 29. Article, 30. Ambaffages where 20 meete, 31 Wrecks by Sea not to be taken of each, athers Subjects, 22. Neyther partie to ayde the Pole, but to treat of a tornt league againft bin, 33. The Confirmation , and names of the Commiffioners. All which is acknowledged to be effected by the media-

tion of our King lames. Peace betwint Denmarke and Sweden : and the Conditions,

Peaches weighing two pounds Peares weighing ten pounds apiece,

Pearle-fishing largely described, 972. The Opster they are found in, manghe. Whither they grow where they ere found or remoone thither; where the best Pearles are found , ibid. Mention of great and round Pearles: most are fashioned like a Peare, 972

Pearles, found in fhels, two feldoms of one bigueffe : Stories of fome Pearles. Where in the Indies are the most and beft , 952.50,60. The manner of diving for them,

Pearle-fishing in Margar ta, 866

20. And in Florida 868, 60 Pearles found in two fenerall Shelfiftes, and which is best, 999

Pearles great flore, Pearles whence they come, 76.20 Pearle-fifthing, 254.50. Shops of Strangers burne, that come then,

Peatles the fifting for them, and the manner , 104.40. Vfedike Beads to pray upon, Pechincow Monafery, Pechingo in Lapland, 558.10 Pechoca, the trade for Furres there, 146. The way thence over land to Ob, 551.60. And the bead and course of the Riner, 552.1 The Rivers that fall into it, 553 544. The way thence to Tumen m. Tartary, 556.20 Pechora, 530. It bath 22. menther,

532.1. The Rufles that trade thisher, 534.20. The Commedities there to be bad, 535.30. Com meniencie of transportation, ibid. The Inhabitans feare to trails with Strangers , ibid. The way from thence to Mongozey, 530

Pechora the Towne described, and bow they line there, 536. Froft there in August, 542.30. Saune at Christmaffe fcarce feene. Pechora wonne by the Ruffe, 430

20. Their Language diners from the Ruffe. Pechora the Riner, disconered, 463

Peibus the Lake in Liefland , 628

Peim, their adulterous liberty and custome, Penance of the Mexicans, 1035

Pencils of baires, baire for writing,

People decayed in the Indies by the Spaniards, 935.0 938.10 Pentions taken away from unferniceable men. 216,10 Pentle-frith Sound in Orkney. 827.20

Pentlow-frich in Orkney Ilands, the latitude, 713. The course and tydes there, Pepper sufinite flore of, 101.

Pepper the daily expense in one Ci-Pepper Tree deferibed, 138.50 Pepper of West India, the fenerall forts, qualities and vies,995.50. 60. Sals corrects the ill quality

of it, 956. 1. The common Spice and force of India, Pequin m China, & Cambalu, 314.

Pequin, other names of it, 301.50.

Pequin in China, is in a barren Joyle, 341. Very bete, ibid. In 40. Degrees, 341. 50. The way from theuce to Nanquin and Canton, ibid, Well described and compared with Quinfay, 342. supaned and dirty, bid. All men ride the fireetes w Veyles, ibid. They burne See caste : their Beds made with Bricke, lika States, ibid. The people dufter beere,

Pequin & Cambalu, the Etymon of #,342. 0 361.60. le u fixe bundred leagues from Macao, 362.50. When, why and by whom the Cours was removed thisber from Nanquin, Pe-quin, ie the Northerne Cours, ibid. The King fuorue to refide

there. Pericopia, inbabited by the Crim Tartags, 633. The olde Names,

Perfumes burst in the Sacrifices to the Dead in China, 36450 Permia some by the Ruffe, 439.20

Of Tartarian Orginal, 443.10 Perlia containes eight Kingdomes. The names of them, 70.50. The Commodities, Perfia wonne by the Tartars, 116.1

Perfia, first traded into by English, 250.20 Perfian Artificer s good, 70.60 Perfians weare redde Turbants.

Persian Queen ouertbrem the Turks

Perfian trade into Syria and the Leuant, 242. Why the trade is fmall, ibid. English Cleath there,

Pero, the strange properties of the Land, one Winde onely there, and the nature of it : no Tempefts meere the Coaft, but terrible ones by the Hills, and it Raines coutsnually on the Mountaines, 926. Reason of the Raines, 937.20. H me in Peru, wby, ibid. The safte,

938.1 Peru, the beate kept off there with thinne Mats : the Nights not fo betetbere as in Spaine, 921.50. It never Raines there: It bath alwayes the fame Wonde, 923.

Peru, the fourefuld partition of it, and the tribute which each part pages, 1055.40. Lands in Commen there, 10 57.20. Enery men there is of all Trades ibid. Their Laves, rewards for mailibe Sermice, oc. Marriage folemnities, erc, 1058. Conquared by the Spaniards when they had Cinell wars,

Pen in the West Indies, the extent dissifion of the Inviduction Vaion againe, Difconery, Proninces underit, Mountaines, two grans High-wayes, Pofts for Letters wer them.

Peru camprebends not all the Indies of the South, begins at the A-quesattiall, the Contage, Dimifion into three parts, 887.10. The Woper hounds of Peru, \$92.10. See Los Reyes

Perualocic a Towne, the figuificati-Pettilence in the Narth of the Warld,

Peter Balman a Ruffian Dake, 748.30. A brang General, 750. 20. Sent the fecond time ug ajust Demetrius, be remelteth, 752. 757.30. Vibers the new Empreffe to Court 762.20. Slaine. Petigorens in Taurica, are Christi-

639.30

Petigoren Pronince, or Colchie. 626.20 Petition in China, a forme of one, 407.10. How the King figues

Petition not answered, is granted for denyed, 354-1-0 358.30 Petiora River, the bead and fall,

Petum, fee Tobaccho. Pharaohs Rats, their farre, 107.1 Pheafants as bigge as Pageoches, and three a Groat, Pheafants exceeding great. Phealants three agrest, 89.40

Pheodore Iuanowich, Emperour of Ruffia, 740.40. His promife of famour to the English, 742.40. His good beginning, 743.10. His neighbour Princes defire a league with him, and he with the Ducen of England, 743. His fimplicity and Death.

Philippinaes, the Nanigation this ther from Spaine, 860.10. The distance, and feafour, Philippinzes Hands. 282. First defconered by Magellane, ibid. The fecond Voyage thither, ibid. The third Voyage thither , 282.30.

Civill warras in the Ilands, ibidi Conquered and named by King Philip ibid. They receive Bartifme, 282.60 or 283.40. They wer bipt the Sunne and Moone. 282-In The Franciscans gos shis ther, or alfo the Dominicks of les luices, 282, to. Their Priests were Women Wyche , ibid. They wanid not goe to beauch, becaufe the Spaniards ment this ber, 284. 1. The richer of the lee, ibid, to \$285.1. The first Levidition there, ibid. They underfland the Malayan Tagme, 285.60. The differen from China, 298.10 And from Mexico, mbid. Philippinaes called the Kingdome of Luzon, by the Chinois, 309. 20,30. 0 \$10. Sometimestria butary to China, hilippinas, the course thence from Lima in Peru, is fell under

the Line. Philippinas Ilands, the latitude et diffance from Spaine. Deferipeion and Native Commodities of fome of them, 904. There bed I 1000, of them : many Christin. ftians there and Mahometans.

Philosophy little knowne in China, 343,60. 245.50. 346. 2 Philosophical Difcourfes of beate and sald, 919.920.921.04. Of the Winds, 983.923

Philosophers facrificed unte, 347 Phylicians of Mexico care all must Hearbes,

Physicians in the West Indies, 960 1 Physicke little wied in Ifland, 646. Physicke not much esteemed in Chi-

na, 385.20. Degrees taken in the Art Phyticke dinine (or dinelifb) of the

Mexicans. Piaces, or Indian Magicians, their Lafe and Art, 973. 40. Their

direct and true answeres to the Spaniards. Plantu the Citie, 80.20 Pictures of frange Creatures ens in precious flone or Gold, in Mexi-

Pictures of Execution of Inflice to terrific Prisoners, 271.60 Pictures the King of China afraid of, 356. He thought them aline,

Pictures of Feathers the Art of making them, and their curiofity, Pafcatir, that is, Hungaria the Palcha, a Christian Woman of Mentz, found in Tartary, 28

Palius the lefuite bie tranels, 321 His fortunes and death, 322-1 Pasport to Hell. Paffage by the Pole, the bopes, 702

Passage probable between New Spaine, and Afia or Tartaria, 806.30 Paffaur a City, Paffe for Trancilers, the forme vied

in Ruffia, 758.40 Patanes the people and Kingdome. 169.40 Patching of clothes, one of Tarta-

rian Commandements, the rea-Patient bearing in Indges, 203.1 Patriarch of Constantinople negotiates a league against the Turk, 445. Aleagne berwixt Spaine and Moscouia: That bow broken off, ibid. He colourably resigneth bis Patriarchate, to the Metropolisan of Molco, ibid. Goes away enriched,

Patriarch of Moico, the Emperours Father chofen to be. 791.10 Patriarch of Moico, figues Patents with the Empereur, orc.802.20

Patriarch of Russia made to play on a Bagpipe, 739.49. Crownes the Emperour. Patriarch of Molco, when first made, 445. His Inrifaction ouer the Ruffian Metropolitanes, A: chbs/hops, &c. 446.30. His renenue: 445.60. His babit, 447 I. The Emperour holds bis borfe bridle, Pauing with Pitch, 199.40

Paynting upon Paft-board in Ca-Paynting in China, without Shadowing, Paynting in China, 357.1, 10,20 Paynting of their bodies, wfed by the Indians, Paynting vfed by the Ruffe women.

they have allowance from their Hulbands to buy their Colours,

Paynted women. feribed,

230.30 Peacockes of the West Indies de-Peace mediated betwint the Ruffes and Poles, and the Rulles and Sweden, and by whom, Peace betwixt the Ruffe and Swe-

den. 702. The conditions of the accord as followeth. Forgetfulnelle of iniuries, 2. The Sweden yesids up the Caftles before taken, 3.Sweden was to reftore Church Ornaments & Bells , 4. Persons and goods to bee freed on both lides, q. The time for Swedens delinery of the Townes, fet downe, 6. Lodia Castle to beerendred, and Odoro to remayne Cantiomary to S reden, 7. Sweden not to ande bie brother in bie clayme to Nouograd, &c. 8. What places the Ruffe jeilds to Sweden, 9. And what money, 10. Sweden to keepe the Ordnance which bee bad taken, 11. Sweden to retaine the Signiory of Corelia, 12. Where the Commissioners on both sides are are to meete, determine of the bounds, and confirme the Articles, 12. The Ruffe to sime ower bis zitle to Liefland, the titles of both Princes to be agreed upon. 1 4. Commerce of trade to continne, 15. Merchants on both sides to bane free exercise of Religion, 16. Personall wrongs , &c. And Amhasages, bow to bee ordered : From the 16, to the 29.

Article. 20. Ambaffaces where so meete, 21 Wrecks by Sea not to be taken of each, sepers Subjects, 22. Neyther partie to ayde the Pole, but to treat of a soynt league against bim, 22. The Confirma-

tion , and names of the Commiffioners. All which is acknow. ledged to be effected by the mediation of our King lames. Peace betwint Denmarke and

Sweden : and the Conditions.

Peaches weighing two pounds a Peares weighing ten pounds epiece,

Pearle-fishing largely described, 072. The Oyster they are found in, manght, Whither they grow where they are found or remoone thither; where the best Pearles are found , ibid. Mention of great and round Pearles: most are fastioned like a Peare, 973

Pearles, found in shals, two seldame of one bigueffe : Stories of fome Pearles. Where in the Indies are the most and best , 952.50,60. The marner of diving for them,

Pearle-fishing in Margar ta, 866

20. And in Florida 868.60 Pearles found in two fenerall Shelfiftes, and which is best, 999

Pearles great flore, 91.1 Pearles whence they come, 70.20 Pearle-fifting, 254.50. Sheps of Strangers barne, that come then,

Pearles the fifting for them, and the manner , 104.40. Vfedike Beads to pray vpon. Pechincow Monaftery, 222.20 Pechingo in Lapland, 558.10 Pechora, the trade for Farres there, \$46. The way thence ener-land. 10 Ob, 551.60. And the bead and course of the Riner, 552.1 The Rivers that fall into it, 553 554. The way thence to Tumon

in Tartary, Pechora, 530. It bath 22. monthes, 533.1. The Rufles that trade thither, 534.20. The Commedities there to be bad, 53 5.30. Com mensencie of transportation, ibid. The Inhabitans feare to trails with Strangers , ibid. The way from thence to Mongozey, 519

Pechora she Towne described and bowthey line there, 536. Froft there in August, 542.30. Summe at Christmaffe fcarce feene.

Pechora wonne by the Ruffe, 430 20. Their Language diners from the Ruffe. Pechora the River, discovered, 463

Peibus the Lake in Liefland, 628

Peim, their adulterous liberty and custome. Penance of the Mexicans, 1035

Pencils of baires, baire for writing.

People decayed in the Indies by the Spaniards. 935.0 928.10 Penlions taken away from unferniceable men. 216.10 Pentle-frith Sound in Orkney.

827.20 Pentlow-frith in Orkney Ilands. the latitude, 712. The course and tydes there, Pepper infinite flore of , 101.

Pepper the daily expence in one Ci-Pepper Tree deferibed, 138.50 Pepper of West India, the fenerall forts, qualities and vies,955.50. 60. Sals corrects the all quality

of it, 956. 1. The common Spice and fance of India. Pequin m Chinz, & Cambalu, 3 14.

Pequin, other names of it, 301.50. Pequin in China, is in a barren

Joyle, 341. Very bote, ibid. In 40. Degrees, 341.50. The way from thence to Nanquin and Canton, ibid. Well de [cribed and compared with Quinfay, 342. supaned and drey, ibid. All men ride the freetes su Vegles, ibid. They burne See-coale : their Beds made with Bricks, like States. ibid. The people duffer beere,

Pequin & Cambalu, the Etymon of #, 142. 0 361.60. It as fixe bundred leagues from Macao, 363.50. W ben, why and by whom the Court was remaned thisber from Nanquin, 389.30

Pe-quin, ie ibe Northerne Court, ibid. The King Sworns to refide

Pericopia, inhabited by the Crim Tartars, 633. The olde Names,

Perfumes burst in the Sacrifices to the Dead in China, 364.50 Permia some by the Ruffe, 439.20 Of Tartarian Original, 443.10 Perlia containes eight Kingdomes,

The names of them, 70.50. The Commodities. Perfia monne by the Tartars, 116.1

Perfia, first traded into by English, Perfian Artificers good, Persians weare redde Turbants,

Perfian Queen ouert brew the Turks

Persian trade into Syria and the Leuant, 242. Why the trade is fmall, ibid. English Cleath there,

Pero, the firange properties of the Land, one Winde onely there, and the nature of it : no Tempelts meere the Coaft, but terrible ones by the Hills, and it Raines couttnuelly on the Mountaines, 936. Reafon of the Rames, 937.20. B me in Peru, wby, ibid. The tafte,

Peru, the beate kept off there with thinne Mats : the Nights not fo bote there as in Spaine, 921.50. Is mener Raines there: It bath alwayes the fame Wonde, 923.

Petu, the fourefold partition of it. and the tribute which each part pages, 1055.40. Lands in Commen there, 10 . 7.20. Enery man there is of all Trades abid. Their Laves, rewards for malike Sermice, c. Marriage folemnities, dre. 1058. Conquered by the Spaniards when they bad Cinul wars.

Pem in the West Indies, the extent dissifion of the Invifdition, Vaica againe, Disconery, Proninces wn. derit, Mountaines, two grant High-wayes, Pofts for Letters went them. Peru comprehends not all the Indies

of the South, begins at the Aquinattiall, she Content, Dinifion sate three parts. 887. 10. The Woper hounds of Peru, \$92.10. See Los Reves Pernalocie a Tomne, the figuificatiwin Ruffe,

Pattilence in the North of the Warld, Peter Balman a Ruffian Dake, 748.30. A brang General, 740. 20. Sent the second time ug ainst Demetrius, Le remelteth, 7 72. # 757.30. Vibers the new Empreffe to Court 762.20. Slaine. Petigorena in Taurica, are Christi-

Petigoren Promince, or Colchie. Petition in China, a ferme of one,

407.10. How the King figues Petition not answered, is granted for

denyed, 354-1-0 358.30 Petiora River, the head and fall, Petum, fee Tobaceho. Pharaohs Rats, their farre, 107.1 Pheafants at bigge at Peacockes, and

three a Groat, Phnafants exceeding great, Phealants three agrest, \$9.40 Pheodore Iuanowich, Emperour of

Ruffia, 740.40. His promife of famour to the English, 742.40. His good beginning, 743.10. His neighbour Princes defire a league with him, and he with the Queen of England, 743. His fimplicity and Death. Philippinaes, the Nanigation this

ther from Spaine, 860.10. The distance, and feafous, Philippinaes Hands. 282. First defconcred by Magellane, ibid, The fecond Voyage thither, ibid. The third Voyage thither , 282.20.

Civill warres in the Ilands, ibid. Conquered and named by King Philip ibid. They receing Baytifme, 282.60.0 282.40. They wer bipt the Sunne and Moone, 282-La The Franciscane one ship thez, of alfo the Dominicks of ica luites, 282, 10. Their Priests were Women Wyebe , ibid. They wanta not goe to beauch, because the Spaningde mem this ber. 284. 1. The richar of the Her wind, 10

& 285.1. The first Plantation there, ibid. They understand the Malayan Tengen, 28 5.60. The different from China . 201.10 And from Mexico. Philippinaes called the Kingdome of Luzon, by the Chinois, 200.

20,30. # \$10. Semetimes tributary to China. Philippinas, the course thence from Lima in Peru, is flott puder the Line ...

Philippinas Ilands, the latitude et diffance from Spaine, Deferinte on and Natine Commodities of forme of them, 904. There bed I 1000. of them; many Christi-Stians there and Mahometans.

Philosophy little knowne in China,343,60.0 345.50.0 346.1 Philosophical Difcourfes of beate and cold, 919.920.921.04. Of the Winds, Philosophers facrifieed vate, 347

40.359.40 Phylicians of Mexico sure all wath Heerbes, Phyficians in the West Indies, 960.1 Physicke little vied in Island, 646.

Physicke not much effected in China, 284.20. Degrees taken in Phyticke dinine (or dinelift) of the

Mexicans, Piaces, or Indian Magicians, their Life and Art, 973. 40. Their direct and true answeres to the Spaniards.

Piantu the Cure. 89.20 Pictures of frange Creatures ent in precious fione or Gold, in Mexi-Pictures of Execution of Inflice to

terrifie Prisoners. Pictures the King of China affaid of, 356. He ibonobi them aline.

Pictures of Feathers the Art of making them, and their curiofity. Pallar of the Canagnites expelled by Iofuah in Mauritania fingi a-661.10 Pillars of the Sunne in P. ru, which shewed the Sun-rising and fetting de. Piltars onely of Wood in China. 341

Pallorie Comes, 191.60.0 203.20 Pillow ofed by the Kings of Mexico for a Table. 1126.40 Pine-tree, Cities built withall,259. Pine Apples of the West Indies.

the manner of growing and qua-955.1 Pinego River, 223,60 Pintadelli, Indian Birde, their admirable promisions against the Monkeyes Pintados Ilands. 288.50 Pintos bis bard adventures, 253 Piracies in Cauchin-China, 254.

Piru, fee Peru. Pifida the River, where, 5 28 20.the description of the people dwelling en it, of other things : the Rufles gine oner the Disconery, ibid. Thought to touch upon China, 529.1. Tolling of Bels beard. and Mountaines casting out fire,

Poling at Table is great civilitie in Island, 647.1. They wash in Pille, and why, Pitch fringing out of the Earth, 933.30 Pits obbing and flowing like the Sea,

THE TABLE Pizzles of Dogs and Foxes of bone, m Groneland, 835.50: Of Seaborfes of Stone, abid: in marg. Plaice Fish fixe foot long, 616.50 Plane tree of West India described: the mightinesse of the Leanes, goodnesse of the Fruits or Nut, pressly ripened, 956.10.20 Plantations of the West Indies by the Spaniards. 861.862 Plantan Tree of West India, and bie Fruit described, it beares Politic and Officers of China, 182. Fieres. Plantius a furtherer of Difconeries, 478.30 Plate of the Ruffan Emperatrs. 742.1.749.1.20 Plate Riner, when discoursed, the courfe, whence fo called , the Pronunce of Place, the plentiful. neffe of it, 62.901. 40. 66. The Townes in it and their Latitudes. Distances, Soyles, Commodities, the Ports Points, Iles, Capes, &c. Wub their Latitudes, the Indian name of thu River, but month, Latitude, de. 7002 Plate Cuie in West India, the Latitude. Place Riner, encreafes like Nilus : the breadsh and Latunde, 934. Pleafures in China, all end with ca

Plowing with Buffalos in China, Plutoes Image in China described. 408.1 Poalts their manner in China, 189. Podolia, some places in it deserbed. Poetie of China, 370,60,00. Point Truft by Nous Zembla, the

Polackes the natural Etymon of shew, Poland King, written great Dinke 255,OF. of Letto, 765.50.0 783.50.0 King of Sweden, Poland foyled by its owne Souldi.

· elenation.

Poland ouerrm by the Tartars, 62.1 Policies of Boris to winneshe pea-745.0 752.10 Policie maintayned beit, by Policy,

746.40 Poles entreat a League with Ruffin, and breake it, 766. 1. 10,20. Their outrages in the Citie of Mosco, 769.50.6 777.40 Poles what Towner they have in Pruffia,627. And in Liuonia,

Poles, abet an Impostor of Russia: and belpe bien to uttaine the Empire,756. Promie the Tartare to ayde him. 767. 10. Compelled to eate Mans fleft, 780,20 Policie of the Portugals to keepe one the Spaniards from the Philips pinaes, 285.40 Polygamie litigious, Politiques findied in China, 343. 375-40

Oc: The perfons of great Offi-cers free : they may commit any offending them, to Prifon. They band Penfions from the State, 184. They take their eafe in age, with Dignity, and their former Penfions, Pom pions of Weft India then bugeneffer 955. Whence they came ibid. to. Marg. Ponchafi what, in Chinefe, 913.

Pongo frange water falli, 934 r Sir John Pooles Vejage to Denmarke, 780.10 Poore drowned in a Famine, to fane Corne, 739 50 Poore, the promisions for them in Ilen land, 666.20 6 867.1.10.20 Fopayan Pronince in the West Indies; the extent, under the A. quinoctiall, Soyle, Mines of Gold, Townes and their distances from the Aquinoctiall, the people wifor then thofe of Peru, 880.co. 60. Christians in et, temper of the Ayre, Mines, babites and Religion of some people, Beaits, distances of Townes, Cambals, 890. Other Townes People, Soyles, Riners, burning Moun-taines, Townes disinhabited, Iles, Capes Points Oc. 801

Pope of lapon. Pope receines the Iaponia Ambaf-Sadours, 32 2.10. His answere to Pope of Mexico, 1023.10.50. His

babite; 1078, He cuts the Men to be Savificed. 1048.20 Pope of the Tartars, 281.20. His chiefe Sea. ibid Pope, the Tarters believed bun to

be five bundred yeares old,

Popes affiftance of an Impoftor in Rullia to attains the Crowne, 755. 60.768.50. The Pope diffurbes the Emperour protects bis Rebels, whilf the Tartain breaks into Christendom, 62.30. The Emperour willing to pacific bim, to expel them, ibid. The Pope prinately

rewards and conferres with the Tartars, 62.20 Porcelane, the forts and manner of making. 177.40 Porcelane. 382.10 Porcelane where and how made 101.40 Porke the Dainties of China, 197. Ø 207.20 Porcupines where. Porta Ferrea, or Derbent, budt br Alexander, 12.50. Paffage that way out of Perlia, and Turk ie to Bulgaria, Porta Ferrea built by Alexander throwne downe by an Earthquake 55.50. Built with most wonder-full Lime, ibid, 50. Gog and Magog font vpinit, 56.1. Bro-ken by the Hunnes, 56.40 Porta Ferrea deferibed, 48.50.6 Ports of Hispaniola, their diffence from Same Domingo, 862.40 Porters of Hell, ... 374.50 Portugale their Trade in China. 190. For Silkes and Muske,

ibid. Intromble, 191.00 Portugals in China, refide at Ama-CAO, 319-30-315-10. Account. ted natural subjects, but permitted their Religion, ibid. And at Sancian, 218,60. The Chinois sealons of them, 319.20 Portugals brought upon the Stage in China, 406.1. Made ediene for their babites, ibid, Perfecu. ted voon a Watches aufwer, ibid. A tumule among St them . . Shid. Poafts in Tarrarie, their exceeding Swiftueffe, 87. 30. Their Printledges, 84.40. Foot Poalts, ibid. Their great speed, 31141 Poalts-falling, an omen of habitatson there to be made, 697-30. ( As

ours of the Staffe-falling) The custome of Norway. Poait Horfes in Tartarie the prouifion for them. 87. 10. 20. 6. Lamb in the Tartarian figmfies

Poalt-borfeso Potozi more of the Mountaine and the Mines, the [cuerall vernes and the great riches, and the manner of the Discourse, 944.945. 946. How they digge, and refine the Silmer.

Potofi, the Citie and Mountaine of Silver mines in the Well Indies, the Lautude, Inhabitants. 896.60. Signification of the Name, richnesse of the Mines : the Hill otter ly barren, the forme and colour of the Earth, big-

ne∏e, cre. Pot in Ruffia, the Ceremony of trea. drug on it, Powder of Gold found in Rivers. 892.1. Where most in quantitie, Praying towards the East, vied by the Mexicans, 1133.50 Prayers at a Coronation the formes Prayers faid by the Priest, more bely then uttered by the Latte, 448.10 Praying, their posture in Mugalla, Precious Stone good against Thun-47.10

Precious Stones plenty in Zeilan. 1 104.20 Precious Stones much worne in Ruf-459.460 Prechan, the King of Cauchine China, Priest of Mahometans his bloody

357 Priests bow refpetted, 27.20 Priefts garments, 196.40.50 Priefts two forts in China, 196.50 Priests of Mexico, bew educated, taught, exercifed, corrected, ce. 1108.00

Priefts in China Shanen, bead and beard. 319.50 Prietts of the Mexicans, their Degrees, Succeffion, Offices, Canont call boures, Oc. 1033.50. Veft. ments, Incenfe, Preachings, Ramennes, Confectation, & c. 1934. Their babate, 1038.1. 1041.10. Their two Vactions, Priefts in Ruffia sheir Ordination.

447.40. Shorne, not Shauen, an. nomiced with Oyle, and cleathed with the Surplesse and Cresse, their Office and mumbers, they may Marry once, 447.50. Their maintenance, & benefit by Prayers for prenate occasions, 448, 10 Their Offerings and other perquifites on the By ibid. Habite abroad and at Church, Priefts, women Witchet, 283.20 Priefts Wines their great reputation

in Ruffia. Priefts of the Tartars, are South-Sagers 43.50. Their description, ibid. They bene one chiefe Priett. ibid. His boufe at Court, and Office ibid. Their maintenance, ibid. Their Musiche su an Ecclafe, like to the Corybantes, 44. 1. Their fee for parefying, ibid.

Pricits of the Ruffians, Marry once. 225.40. & 229.1. And bene Children, 227.40. Differ, onely in their Night-caps from the fecular babue, 229. 1. Crownes Shauen , and their bairs long;

Priests burne for Sacrifice in Curland. Preients guan by the lefuttes, to the King of China, 352.20 Prefents fone by the Ruffe Empirour , to the King of Altine, Prefents demanded by the Altine of she Ruffe,

Presents fent to the Spaniards from China, 306.0 307.20 Presents in Barkete carrieda Goffipping, Prefence the fashion of fouding them, Prefter Iohn of Afia,

Presbiter Iolins Countrey in Can thay the black or Kara-Cathaya \$6.50. But falfely; and as little true at those tales of bim in E. thiopia, ibid.in mary. Prefter Iohn of Tartary, or Vm chan, Presbyter Ioha in Tartarie, 14.

60.23.50 Prefter John of Tartarie, tribatearie tathe Succeffeurs of Chingis Chan, 80.20. His fucceffeurs mame is George, be is a Christian Priest Primum Mobile, a Phylosophical

discourse ofit 924-50.00 Prince Charles bis Iland, the Batitoude. Princes of the Blood, bow vied a China, 391. 1. Then anyter de. Princes of the Blood, roftrained in

China 208. They onely are flyled Lords Psince dying, no man lyes in bis Loda gings a long whole after in Ruffin.

Prince of Ruffin bis State and bebute. 748.60.0 750.1 Princes venerated as Gods by the Tartars, Printing in China, Printing, the fashion to China, - 370.40.50. Printing white Let-Reinting brought into Ruffin, 447. 40. The Printing bonfe buent,

10. Their practices, 45. 10. Printing first carried into Histor.
20. How the Denill deludes 645016

Proper name for a man to fpeake in, is the lowest complement in Chi-Prophecying legends, their effects, 1021.60 Prophets not read in the Ruffian

Church. Prucheni a people, Pruffin, bow divided betwier the Pole Sthe Dutch Knights, 627.00c. Prut or Hieras, a Riner of Molda-

Pruteni, Curlandi Liuonii, Effonij, Semigalli, & Leuconij, all Pagans. Protein Techina, a Fort of the Turkes in Walachia, 639.1 Pinyeba to 416.1 Puddings of Herfe-fleft caten by Tartars. 5.10 Pulisangan, a Riner in Tartary,

89.1 Pullo Quirien, Pallo Hinhor, Pulla Cambim & Riner, where, 253 Bullo Champeiloo an Iland, 254

Pumice-ftones bails wieball, 651

Puraps for Ships, shat goe with the 176.10 Punas Mountayne in the West Indies , the Ayre of st kils Paffen-016.10

Punnus inbabits Island , and gines them Lawes, Purfe, not iniustice quarrelled againit.

Purgatory Mountaine, of the West Indians, 1120.50. The deferip-1123.40 Purgatory, arefemblance of it in Puftozera, the way from thence to Colmogro by Sea, 545.546. By Puftoreza the Towne, whom the Riwer of Pechora in Ruffia, 533 20. Necre Ruffia but wet in it, 543.60. The alsitude, Pyramides conered with Gold, 93

Pyramide of fire feene at Mexico,

Q Vabacondono, éssurpes in Iapon, 323.50. 11 bat his name figmfies, 324.20.325.30. Made to cut out bis owne born-325-40 Quangeparua City, 255.30 Quanty saken by the Tartars Quaon the Isponian God, 323.60 Christian Festivals vsed to bim.,

Quarrels in China, 370. 20. Soone ended on China. Q 10ff. drinke in Muscouia, 218.10 & 228. How made, Quayles (acrificed in Mexico, 1047

Queene of France Rirres ber Sonne againft the Tartare, Queene of Heanen in China, 274 Cheenzanfu the City, the Commo-Stries there.

Quetzalcoals, the Mexicans God of Pithes , bonoured by the Merchants, 1048. His Festinall Cere-Quianthe great Riner, 90.10 Quickiluer Mines , the manner of them. How it growes and is getten, &c. 894. 10, 20. Where,

properties of it, Places where it is

found, 948. Found in Vermilion.

948. How the Money were first

disconvered: Richnesse of one

ting it, meltedwith Straw, kept

Quickfiluer refines that Metall, which fier cannot 944.10. \$ 947 40. A Philasobicall Discourse of Quickfilier, 947.648. All Metals but Gold frimme in it: its sympathy with Gold; refining with it unknowne to the Ancients: it is the porfon of all Metals but Gold and Silmer : ftrange

R. the Chinois cannot protars Tatos, 170,20,0 219.20 Racke, the Indian word for drinke of Rice, 27.50.in marg. Mine, bow it is drawne ont of the Rambos a Fift that cleanes to the Myne, 949. The danger in mel-Sharkes their description, 930. boft in Leather: mauner of refining | Ramels Foord in Groneland : the

with it, bow after refining it is separated from Silver, Quinquagetima Sunday is the fecond Lent time, to all the people of

the East, Quintay called Nanquin, described 338. Not comparable to the European buildings, the chiefe of China, bow foresfied, ibid. Two dayes iourney about, Quintay described, 162.20. The King why bee comes thither but once in ten yeares 162.60 Quintay a discussion whither it bee Hamceu, or no, 409.50. The tri-

bate it payer, Quinfay is the City of Heanen, 97 40. Deferibed, 98.1,10,20 de. The Carzens deferibed, 98.60. Their riches and white, 99 1, 20. The gonerement of it, 99. 40, 50. It bath a Garrison of 20000 Quippos or Registers of Peru, made of knots. 1057.20 Quitalol , what in Chinele, 306

Quitiruan the Kingdome , 253.30 Quito in she West Indies , the Inresidention and extent . Genera. ments under it , under the E. quinoctiall; the Ayre, Seafons, and Townes, 887.40, 50. Townes wader is , Heards of Cattle, Ruine wondred at, Ports of their latiende , high wayes admirable. Rivers and bow the Indians pafe them. 888. Emeralds, Ports, Hes , Points, Tales of Giants,

Quinira false placed in the Maps 849.1 Quixos and Canela, Pronince in

the West Indies, the Spanish Townes in it, the foyle, de. 891 Quoaman, where, 256.40. Silver

Quoo, is Yes, in Chinese, 187.1 Quocum, the Nobility of China,

THE TABLE

Lesisude, and variation there, | Rebellion how presented in China, | Ramufius taxed and defended, 856 Rapes (var word of Politie) the Etymon, 664.30.0 666.10.50. C+ 662 Rafors flung upon Darts by the

Mexicans, the danger of the weapon, 1023.60. Vied by them in Sacrifices Rauens (4 ant of Nonha Arke) fent out of a Ship to diffener Land, 654. 50. Illand salled

Rafnafloke of those Rauens, Raw Fift the Gronelander food, Rawe meate formed in, in China, 298.40

Raine, the Chinois fable of 11, 274. 30. It is Gods Aimes, Raine where feldeme, or nener, 898. Raine, the tricke in Peru zo keepe tt

off, or to procure it, 1045.6. ... 1046. 19.20. Rogasions for st. Raine nor Hayle, where it never does . , 88 1. Occasioned by the Maun. ... taines, 892. 30. And where it does continually, Raine very Scalling bete, 198.40 Raines, the reason of much or little under the Equinotical, Torride Zone, within or without the Tropickes, 918. 40. Why under the Torride Zone in the Afternoones, and at the full Moone : Some Phylosophicall discourses a

bout thefe, 918.40.50.60.60. Raine when most beate under the Torride Zone, 919. 40. They allas beate under the Torride Zone. 921.1 Raining of Fleas, Frogges, &c. the .: reason, 912.30. Where caused by Northerne winder, ibid. And by Westerly, 925.50

Raines ever and never, where, 936. The reason, Rainebow with both ends opwards,

Rainebow the fable of st, 275.40 Raine-Deere backayed out, 527.20. They feed upon white Miffe, 548 10. The chiefe riches of the Samoteds. Regions of a Northwest Paffage, 848 849

311.1

Rebaptization ofed by the Ruffe, 451.0 786. 40. Their Catechifing and other Ceremonies,

Reductibe Kingdome,

Records of the Perunians, kept by bnots. 1053.20 Red, the King of Chinaes Colour,

208,20 Red Painting forbidden to primate Houses in China, 407.60. The peculiar Colour wherein Vesitors come to the Kings throne, 40%.

Red Sea, or the Straight of Mecca, Redemption of wilde Creatures, 398.70 Reedes exceeding bard and great,

382.20 Reedes or Canes of the Well Indies, Houses and Quiners made of them: their knots full of pure 983.50

Refining of Gold, wherewithall 943 10. Of Silver, 944. 1.10. 0 947 The manner. Region of Darkenesse, where the

Sunne appeares not in Winter . 107.10.0 110.40 Religion in Mufcoun, 217 6 218. Ø 227. Ø 238.217.30 Religion of Musconia, 444-445.

. de. According to the Greeke Church. Religion of Mugalla, like the Ruf-

Religion of the Crim Tartars,441 10. Their opinions of Christ, ibid. Their Idols. Religion of the Mexicans, 1026.

Religion in Peru the uniformitie of st enery where. Remiffion of fentence, is Almesdeedes. 272.10 Rendacalem the Citie. 281.30 Renkanes Promontory in East Ite-

land, 654.60 Reobarte the Countrey, 71.20 Refurrection, an inching of it in China, 274.20. And after that, all shall remaine in the Moone,

Reidarfiall Mountaine, in Island, Reidarfiard Bay.in Island, 654-30 Reuelation not read in the Ruffian Church.

Reward after Death, the Chinois opsuion of st, Rherorike, the Fauorite-fludy of China, Rhinocerotes, where, called Badas,

their Horne good against the Psles, 169.10. Ufed to CarriaRhuharb, 362.40. Where it growes, 76.50. In China,

Rhubarb described, 164. 40. The price of it there, ibid. Called Rouen Cini, Rialarnes Province in Ifland, 665

Ribbes of the Examined broken, orpincht. Rica or Rie in Liefland, 627.10.Or

Rigaco, Rice the King of Chinaes tribute

payed in, 364. The chiefe food of China, Rice growes in Marifles, 178.0 Rice Breads Richard Relie a debauebed Eng-Lishman, rebaptized by the Ruffe,

Richest Pronince in the World is Malabar,

Ricius the Isfuit, fent for into China, 220.50. Carries a fine Watch with him. Is made Governour of the Colledge in Amacao, 321.40. Disappointed of bis purpose, and returnes to Amacao, ibid. Returnes inte China, 327-30. He and Ruggierus fens to the Aitao. ibid. Commanded away by bim. ibid. Gets leane to build, 318. 40.50. Their Bookes admired, 329. 1. How boucared, ibid. Standered and confirred avainst, and freed, ibid. 20. Hee prints a Mappe in the China Characters, ibid. Metes Spheares, Globes, and Dyals, reades upon them, and is admired, ibid. of propofitten for an Embaffie from Spaine to China, croffed, 330. 10. He is troubled in Sciauchin. falues all web bribes, 333.30. But is after banifhed, ibid. Bailde another Station or house at Xauceum, 334-50. Teaches Mathematicket, 335. 1. His bonfo abused, and the Offenders punifhed, ibid. to. A Confpiracy d. gainst bim , ibid. Taken for a Bonzi, and infamons; whereupen be alters his babite, 336.1. Goes funcher into China, 337-1.10. Cc. Arriner at Nanquin, 338. 10. Is skared thence, and goes to Nancinn : has vession, ibid. 50. He hatb the Art of memory, 339.10. Gets into great eredite, writes a Booke of friendsbip, ibid. Goes to Nanquin againe, but not fuffered to flay, 340. I. TO. His lowener to Pequin, the Cuie Royall, 34% Pofferthe fireets unknower, 342 40. Makes a China Diffionary, and Grammar, 342.5 42. Re.

turnes againe to Nanquin, 343 Rictus benoured againe at Nanquin, 245.20. Teaches Mathemas sickes, bid. & 346. Boloened to bane lined forme Ages, 347-39. Diffutes with the famous Chinois, and is admired, 348. His Prefents to the King, and the loffe of their Ship, ibid. 50. 6 252. His China name is Sithai, 349. 1. In danger of an Emnuch, ibid.

1. Is befriended and feasted by that great Ennuch, ibid. & 353. 10.20. Hu lourney to Court, abid. His Petition unanswered 354-1:40.50. Pilleged by an En. nuch, and petitioned against, 255. 20.30.40. Ge. Is feut for by the King, 356. 20. Exceeding welcome, bid. Vrged to be made a Mandarine, 357.40. Is font up Some Moneths, and petitioned against, 358. 10. Hath leave to bire e Honfe, and bath allowance of the Kings purfe, and bonoured againe, ibid. 359. Hu Booke of the description of China begins page, 380. The lewes offer to make bim Ruler of their Synagogne,400.60. Hath liberty to Ray at Peq in, and maintenance. 405.40. One writes against bim, falls sicke and dyes, 407.1 Ring vfedm Marriage by the Ruf-Rings, the Chinois meere in their Eures, but not on their Fingers, 349.30. Worne in the Nofthrils 67 the Indians, 992.30 Ripering of greene Nuts in a Vef-fell, a Philosophical way, 956.20 Riphzan Mountamos, where, 53.30 The fables of them, 320.46 Rifalandia a Pronince in Norway, the Etymon. 661.30 River made by band in China, 97. River changing bis Courfe, 236.20. Ardmby, River leit in the Earth, ibid. 20. & River finking underground, andri-873.50 forg againe, Rivers youlding Gold, 874.10 River Quian en China, the greateft in the World, 97.10. Much traded upon. Rivers of Rullia, the chiefe, 419.30 River of Mola ballowed, 225. 10. # 226. And the Volg2, 244.10 River of Plate, the Voyage, distance and feefons of Nanigation from Spaine thither, 859.50 859.50 River of Sale in Chile, the Lati. Rubie that drines mater from u,802

898 | Rubble, a Ruffian fumme, a Marke. Rivers an China all frozen in Win-Rubruquis the Frier his Iournall to 343.I Rivers frozen for fine moneths en the East parts of the World T. His meffage to the Tartarian 414.50 Rivers of Podolia. Praces, Sattach, 13.20. &c. And 622.20 to Baatu, 17. 10. 20. de. His Rivers of Siberia, 525 526.00. lourney to Mangu Chan, 18.1. Rivers of Saint Lucar, Nicardo and Zedros, in the West Indies, their Shaned himfelfe in Tartarie, 27. 10. His Oration to Mangu distance from the Aquinottiall, 891.40 Chan, 27.50. His refolution to Rivers, Mountaines, &c. worfbipped keepe company with Sercerers, 36 in India, 1028.20. Their Sacri-40. Examined at Caracarum, Rubriquis bis learned Discourse Robes most exceeding rich in Rullin, with the Saracens, and his Con-Robais or Edeffe the Citie, 110.50 ference with the Courtiers of Rocke artificiall one, 346.60.00. Mangu Chan, 40,50,60. His anfwer to Mangu Chan, concerning Rocke of Diamonds. 253.40 Rogations imitated by the Dinell in bis comming into his Countrey, 1047.2000. 41.10. His diffette with the Ne-Mexico. Regalandia Pronince in Norway. ftorians, 48.30. Ce. Not (affered to flay in Tartarie,43.40. He de-654.40 parterb from Mangu Chan, 43. Roman forsitude of a Mexican 50. His way from Volga mes Captime, Romilh rates found in China, 297. Perfia.48.20. Returnes to Bann 60. As fingle Life, Singing, Sertues Court, 47.50. He gets bis Bookes againe, 48,20. His way nice, long Robes, Purgatory, and from Euphrates to Tripolis, et. Abjulation upon money given to 10.cfc. His admice to his King the Priest, but |banny Mankery, concerning the Tartars, 41.50 398.1.10 and befo ofcome, Romish Palgrimages, beld a prote-Ruck the Bird, which carries away an Elephant, 106.40 Ruffes or Bands not worne by the Bion for tyrannous Warpation, Rootes whereof the Indians make Ruffes. Ruggierus, learnes the China tongue Bread or Meate. 954-955 Rope-sumblers in China, 349.40 320.20. In famour with the Ge-Rope-walking admirably in the West Indies, 1065.10 nerneur, 320. 40. Catechifes at Amacao ibid. Sent tothe Vice roy about feeling at Amacao, 328 Role Hand in Ruffia by Archangell Fals ficke, ibid . Obtaines a Char-Castle, an English boufe there, 744.10. The way thence to Mosco. ter for the letuites, ibid, Returnes into China, 2 27.30. Petitions the Governour, but is commanded Reliomakka, a ftrange Beast deferibacke to Amacao, 227,60. As Roft Hands, where, 212.10.0 222. Edict fet up against him, 328.1.
Procures a Charter of continu-Rofting the Examined on a Spit, ance in China, shid. so, Returnes for supplies to Amacao, 329. 10. Rouerlo a Fifth, wfed to catch other Baptifes fome, 2 20. Sent to fetch Fishes described, where innented. Feathers for the King, ibid. Goes with the Governour into Sciau-Roxani and Roxolani in Scrabo, chin,ibid. Gets a Honfe there, 222.1. Much beneared there, are the Ruffians. Roxellani, are not the Ruffes, 413. ibid. Makes forty Christians. ibid.20. Goes to Mount Vo-tan, ibid.40.Wronged by a falfe Con-Rubith wfed in a lugling cure by an wert, ibid. & 333.10. Returnet Armenian Monke, 32. 40. 6

Rubics where they grow moftly, 104.

20.160.40. One as bigge as a

mans arme, and valued at the

worth of a Cuie, ibid. # 110.10

Rule to know natine Commodities

and Creatures the Indians had,

before the Spaniards comming

Run Hand, one of the Orkneys, 827

thitber.

Ruffia of old called Sarmatia, 412. 40. Whence called Rullia, wid. The bounds, and Shires, 414.1. The length and breadth of it, ibid. 20. A pleafant Countrey in Summer, 415. 10. Hotter then England, ibid. Natine Commodities, ibid. 60.00. 6 416.10. Is bath no Mines but Iron 41.7. 60. The ftrange Creatures of st. ibid. @ 418. The chiefe Citias. 418.30. The Townes of Brength 419.10. The fours Francer Townes, 427. 10. Their wooddenbuilang-419.30. The foure great Inviductions, and the gonornemous of the Praninces, 406. 2.10. The tribute payed by the Proninces, 429.1. The Townes of chiefe trade, ibid. The neigh-J. The Church Gouernement, 444. . to c. They depended topon the Pa? trearch of Consentenople or 1 S10, ... Rushing the late alterations there force ; the Raigne of Iuan Valilowich. Informing and Swand there, 738. . The buge langualle of the Em-. pire, 768. 20 An later-ragnun and popular Gourrement shere. 782.50 In danger to bee thui-Rent's cir Press. Emperour of Ruffia: His Dominions naturall and by . Conquest, 414. His Customes up . on Salt 417.40. One of she Fr - Bines, 418.30. His tytle chan-.god from Duke to King :, mifliked and why, itsid and His Syrname, 426.10. Hee denines himfelfe from the Hangarinas, 1419-40. G. Their first gesting the Dukedent Wola dender 420 : 18 that first antituling them falues Empo--11 wome, bid. Green Dake of Mof-1 10.420-10. Manner of but mauguration ibid. His Stile repeated at his Garmation, \$21. 30m His Gengrowsent, ibid. & 1. 42m His ab Colune Someraienty, ibed. Hes deflemes all offices, deale in Inflication Bed Home be . 13 Mahned the Nobilitie, 4221 50. His Connell of Soute, 427, 40. 438. 30. The Receivers of thein, bid His Frees 429. 24 His - Gerdasses out secise Hu repeately presented 420, to. Their metances to impofe Taxations, . ibid. go. His ardinary Sacrilades

and robbing of the Monasteries, 430.60.0 431. A wretched pohey of his to get money, 431.1. Hu tyrunnscall engroffing of com. medities, ibid. Their ungodly cawillations, 43 1. 50.60. His lealoufie of Strangers, 433.20. Hu expences to his Souldsery, 435. He bab Socoo Horf ener swareadeneffe, 436. 10. And of Foot twelse thenfind, ibid. Of Strangers 4300 bu mami ayning of his Conquests by Colomes 438. His eld bomage to the Tattar, denyed, 440-1. Helds the Patriarchi Horfe brodle, and bath a Ponfion forst 456.10. An earely rifer. bis Morning donations, 456. 60. His falutations to bis Empreffe. going to Charch, and grains pre-Sence to bis Nubility 457.10.20. dic. Nenber enter nordyes with his Empresse, but when think His Seruice at the table ibid. His af. ter-wasneverreasions, which His ben fold and great Officers, 428. 30. Emperour of Rulla, bis Fanarals, Manimings, and Caronas Hu Tule, 747:40. Ho gong & Seete, 748. 30.40 (0) His wicommande ou great Dages, citiele 749. His title of Scirp appellder, 755.601-0f Carlan 760 10 His tate, 765.802. Eleibres of ben by Lot, 769. See Mutcoulan Ruffin somme is the original Selze manuan, 433. The Character is ebe Generadifferred, "433:30 Ruffians, they care not to benerany thing beforehand diging a Ferfranctimes at 8,60. White formi The four at of the or of de Despice 427 go. They bellevale amboth mushin of without 429.30. Great Drunkardi A 31.40 . The Com mons dare not looke on a Gentle. mar, 472 Toir Thin Andlastic Semmon Or wafenche bord . When . maft wratabed condition, lugge at Some at in an Enemus Countrey, which Encellaried up before all Tandent & La Mapl Frem Ling ... Se Paller no Spirither on convenienters, minohigher, ibid. Is it whingerous seemed strongwall of her ibid. Their luftice and proceedings in Law, 423. Them Shellerrafer. CURTHAN TOO TO BUILDING

wards & backwards, ibid. Better to keepe a Cafite, then mithe field. 438.40. Their desettedneffe being taken Prifoners, 441.1. Counted double dealers, by the Tartars, 442.460. They bene preferred no Antiquities 444.40. When Conneved so Christmanity, shid & s. And Connerted by the Greekes, 445.30. Their errows in Dotirme.452.30. Their Scriptures m, the Polonian tougue, 453. Aber bold other Christians no beiten iben Turken, & mby, 455. 30. They visually Geoperation din-#87.497. 50.6 499.1. Their perfons described, 458.60.00. Dyet, 45 9: Wby the Women are fo tame my, thid to: Their bushands allowauce for Painting, ibid. The mens parisucciof beate and cold, ibid. Their Apparellfer toen & women ibit 460. Their were and capacities, ambfearness learne 460,00 They are all syrants so they Inferoure shid . Their beggery & deflerate begoing ibid. Their def-Sambling & incredelity; ibid. Ruffans, they dereiter Letterd from the your of the world, 135. 40.00758.90. Their Language differentifren the Politin 961.20 They account the Rough Religion Oon sepringe & prophage; 767.500 60. 6 768.30. They Petition the King of Poland to make his ... Souther Emperor, 784.10. And that they may emisy the printledge of his other Subiottrolair miferaale inconfigure, your les Toop fall franche Pole, franche for their section Ring of England, "White 10120. They lett their Chantellours Son Emperous, who Stande, 79 1. Their carious obfer-21. Stegrof Enfling dayes, ...... 316 Rottene the Hand by Norway, also Lande 6 14 10 marg. Defert bed 516.30. The propte are good Christians, barrender, small , imple not Conetom, and consented soid, of Sign Their Money & Stock fift, their Drinke & Bread, and Apparell,626. They bear avaled Robbens anor Fornication, 617. Ther Forenal s, and Bather, ibid. Suomes there from February to mid May, 617. 90. mlay. Their methid mare. Renewites Schoonian, 14. Comment, appropriate Sapplementer | conference of all continues of the Sapplementer of or see Their Money .... 34.10

C Aboath in China enery fort-Sight, Sabboatus of the Chinois, 397.1, Subboath of the Mexicans enery fourth day in the Warres, 1024

Sables the best where, 416.20 Sables, the Farre of the beast Ron-416.20 des. Sacanufco Province in the West Indies, the extent of the Inrif-

. diction, bounds and Rivers, 878 Sacotora. 252,60 Sacraments three in the Ruffian

Church. Sacrament in Ruffia, in both binds, 217. The Bread fopt, and given with a Spoome.

Sacramens of the Communion Desullibly imitated by the Mexi-CABS, 1040:10. & 1041.40 & Sacrament in both kinde, 217.40 Sacrameneath Bread , bow made by the Nefterians, 27.10. They par

Fat it it in fload of Leaven ibid. The bigueffe of their Hoeft, Sacrifices of old Illand, 664.1. Of

Men Tod? Secrifices of the Mexicani, 102 1. 30. 10. 1033. 1. The mainer, Torrigh The three kinder of things Secrificed, 1036. Manmer of belling the Beatt and Bards, ibid Morne and reasons Sacriticion : show offerion of Bhels to the Rivers, O'c. 1016 Humoune Sacrifices, and the mainer. 1027.1028. Fine thenfand men

Sacrificedieneday, 1999.10 1 1044 Sacrifices of Peru. Sacrifedge ordinary of the Buffian Sacriledge panifit by Death, enen among f. Tartars. \$ 10 Sac's the propte it Curland; 628. 1 10

Sachion the Citie, whome, in 94.40 Saddles of Wood & Smooth \$26.1 Saggi, a Tartania piece of Gold, 82. mile 0, 40

Salamander, no where, 76.40 Salamanders venetions 1043 10 Saying a Granuscal ste, of a Ruffint Emperour, 470.20 Sayles made of Mas; of Pulmo-... Bree leanes 904.40 Saylers not admitted to be witneffer,

where. Saints in Ruffia, for every day in the weeke, Salceperilla, where flore and good w : the Cures it does, 959.50 Salmons, pence a piece, 537.1. A great trade for them.

Salmons forem Ruffia, 213.50 Salmon and Salmon Peale in Groneland. Salemone Ilands in the West Inc dies, discourred, their Latitude,

distance from Peru, many and great, eftermed rich. Colours of the people, the chiefest of them mamed, their greatneffe, diftanees.cre. Salomensky Town in Ruffa, where.

Salt, naturally made by the Sea, 417 Sale bow made in Ciangalu, 95.1 Salt made of water without boyling,

Salt hanging open Herfer that deinke of the River of Salt, 898. Salt-Lakes in Taurica, 636.50

Sal fournes Mettall from Droffe, 950.30. Ufed in Refining s, ibid. Corrects Paper; 956.1 Saluncile, a cause of the obbing and flowing of the Sea, 1122.40 Sal pits exceeding rich mes in Tarenrie. Salamoletaines 73.10 Salt the best in the world, sibid. 20 Salistations the fabien in China. 180.10 Samag or Samagi, a great Citie,

Samara che Kingdome, 103.50 Samer the Reser. Samarchan, the great Citie, where, Semercand to Parthiz where Tameriane was borne, the fitnation,

.... 142.40 Pet 142.40 Semeron a Catie of Tewes, where, French King Sandani, mbare they germ, 138.40 Sand seguedas Ispon, ... 326.30 Sanguis Draconis mbere getten,

Frier bis Butifage to bim, 13.1 the memphasine; 12:20.00. Samuels, their Aparell, mainers, Saverdayes, the Ruffes care flefb Tomas Themels .: Rober .: Wines. " vpon . 2 18 1 That before Baffer. Marriages, Religiourand Fane-They freque in the Church , 227

Outline Perfore, Dinington, Prinferand the bardineffe of their Samge Iles in Groneland, 848.20 Their Latinde and Longitude 556 from Langitude; with the Biria-Samuirdirele propie, .... \$ 40.30 tian of the Compaffe and Thies, Samide rheir trade imp Rullia with 828150

Farren their manuer of life, 422. Sprage Hands ; where men bene

& 546.30. The Ruffe E mperent beads like Dogges fends to discover them, \$23. Some of them fubmit to bim, and pay a Scacati, a Tartarian Lord, 5.20 tribute of Sables, ibid. 50. They Seanza, & Scandia. admire the Rullian falbions, and Scarletsm request in China, 333 fubmit themfelnes voluntarily. Scallem the City in Perfia, 73.30 524.20.30. Their Country made Schetlandia mifnamed for Hietthe finke of bafe people, ibid. It is called Siberia, ibid. The deferip. landia, tion of the wayes and Rivers out

of Ruffia thuber, 525. Their & Countrey wmilled, ibid. 60. The Ruffes build Towner there, Ibid. 926. Ge. Pewter dilbes deare fold to them, 535.50.522. Their sente of Skinnes - pitche by their Wen men, 548.20. They carry their

Families was them, ibid. Their Language and Religion different from the Ruffe, 522.00c. Their Apparell, transis, and (uporfistion ou.crc. Samoieds their Habitation, Lau-

guage,apparell, personages, King, manners, &c. 480.30. Their L. mages, and Sacrifices of Hans,

Samoits, the people, fubioli so the Ruffe,443. They eate raw Carrien : Ancient, ibid. They were thip not the Golden bagge : but the Sunne, &c. Their Securies. apparell, and fanageneffe, gonerned by their Priest,

Sapurgan, a Citie m Perfia, 73.10. Pompions the best in the World.

Saracens in the Holy-land ouerthrowne by the Tartars, and pur-122.10 Saracens as Equius in Catay freaking Perfian,

Saraija new Towne upon the Volga. Sarmatia the white and the blacks. 413.40. Their old tomits, ibid. The name not derined of Alat-" mathes.

Sarrath, the Tartare prefent to the E rost. Sartach a Tarterian Prince, his Comt, 12.60. Rubruquig she bonefit of it at Soa. 847.50 Scythian Cherfonelus, which, 633

> Scythia extends from Danubius, suen to the East, \$8.20. It comprehende Tartary, ibis. Sea Gulfe, aneat Swimmer, bis pro--perties: 879.30 Sea-coale in Cathay, 88.10.6 m

104-10 | Sca cooles, bote waters, 892.60 | Sebaftian de Guetaria bie Voyage, Sauran fields and Rimer, 632.20 Sea-Water [weetned by the froft, 598

620,10 Sea freeen. Sleds.

614.40 Schollers more martial then Souldeers in China. The King more admifes mith them, 390,20. They

beate and correct the Captaines

Schooles of China the manner Schollers in China ger whole books

by bears, 339.10 Schollers, bow encouraged or pani-Steder Chiua, 184.50. 7 185.1 The great Officers and Gomernours shofen out of them, 184.60

A: the Kings charge, Sianhai se Chi a deferibed, 406 50. The iribate at payes the King,

Scin mbat, in Iapon, 324.60 Scintaciman, Solati the people came ant of Sarmatia, 433. Why they called them-

Schwaz for Salary Services Fame or Glory, the Signification innerted by the Italians ibide Schauomawhen first peopled, 662

Sclauopian sengue of Rutia, different from that of Poland, 761 Schaupman tougue comes from the

Ruffian Scolds fined to maintains the dambe .... 276.10 Sco land Ptolomeys errour in the

Lovende. 643.50 Scots filb at Ifland, 800. yeares fuere, Scrippures, to bee interpreted by the G. reke Church folely, the Rulles

with luke, ibid. Cat in fenerall matters. Scurvey-graffe caresthe fearing, Seales of China Magifirates, 395.1 and the Surmey, \$14.10 Kep: as wardy as our Lord Kee-Scurucy-graffe in Groneland, the

Scale fifb how bunted for, 416.60 Their naturall policy to breake the lea Seale, the Muscourtes is the

George , 251.40. Parden to . their Patents. Sealons of the returns of the Spinnish Fleets from the Indies, 859

20.30 20.30 Seates of women knowne from the marg. Sea-coale vapour fiftes, 496.40 | . mens,

Ds/concries.

: leffez

land.

Parts, etc.

fian Empereurs,

White-ball, bis attempt to difcon

ner, 807. His courfe at Seam

English Ships; the occasion why

King therry the Senanth neelec-

ted she fecond. Defeonery, Hee is

fet forth agains by the King of

Spaine ; disconers the River of

Plate. Made Grand Pilot of

Eugland bie Penfien. 808

Sebatton or Schaffe, the Renal Ci-

Secanunga, the true name of Grone-

Secretaries of Townes in Ruffia,

Segin a City of Cathav. and a Ne-

Segouia the New in the West In-

dies, its lurifaction, Villages,

425.50. Their Amberity, 426.

Jean Arimenia the leffe 69.20

249.20

Sebastian Cabota, Genernour for 47.É0 Sea frozen, and passed over web Sebattian Cabot, bis Mappe as Sea-kytes, reliening of Portugals, 256.20 Seas blacke , blue and greene, 470.

Starlickneffe whence caufed, 926 Sea fomewhere barren, and jumewhere fertile, as the Land, 988

Sen-horfes andanger as Adams bie, Schatte the City, in Armenia the 703.20. Their Hades tanned in England. 700

Sea the mearweffe of it to the fice? ride Zone; sempers the boate,

Sea-monsters in Liland, 649.600 650. Somerall descriptions of them.

Sea of Sand by China, 404.40 See of Sand 765.40 Sea of Pontue, called the great Sea, 1.50. The length of st, ibid. Two Proninces of Sync polis and Cale

faria de de Selie-vabolder, a Tytle of the Rufibid. Sea the morrenesse to it, desolves Soon and superathe winter, 724 30. Frozen in what Laurende

Seleucia she City, non Medid, 110 Selizure a Cattle. Seawater good against poplon,985 Sentence of haffice gimes by the King of China, the farme at large

Sea borfe or Morfe deferibed, 476 193.0.194.00. . 10,40. Then acre of their young, Sentence the winall one in China. is whipping, and courage to tenenge ber felfe. Their teeth as good as Inery , i-Septuagelima Sunday is the Eafter had. 512.60 to the Armenians,

31.10 Sea coale in Greenland, 705.60 Sepulchies of the China Rings vi-Seale-filhes the chiafe inflorance & Sepulchres of the Chinois, 393 benefie of Generaland, 817cats 50. Fishermen clad in Scaleskinner to descine the Felber.

Seres the people of Cataya she great ter, whose come the Serieum or 8 i 8. 1 Seales in China, she fashion, 383 Silke, 40. Not imprinted in Waxe, but Sergeants as Armes in China, 300

> Sericum or Silke, whence derined. Servents delicate meate where, 976

Serpents demonring whole Stagges, 410.40. of tale of one of them,

Serpents noneifhed in the Mexican Kinga Court, 1129.1. Fed with mans flefb. Serpence why the Mexicans fore them mit. 1042-10

Servants sheape in China, and why. 195. I Serunts in Ruffig billed . and not

answored for. 435 Seruice in the Mother tongue, 217 40. 0 229.10 Service in the Mother tongue, 217 40. Before day light in Ruffia, 218.10 Scueria a Ruffian Promince, 756 Severity ton much of it breeding. lett of authorus, 186.20 Sexes undistinguished by Apparell, 646.10 Seylersch, ftrange Birds that gine Intelligence of the Emmissi upproseto. 126,60 Seynam Iland. 212.20 Shalcan Tartars, bi ibr. Cafpian' Sea, 442. Necrete Aitracand Media, 442.50 Shallownes, a fure token of Land 391.10 Shambles of mans flefb, where, 890 Shar , the Kingdome of the Iron King , 800. 10. Reb m. Diamonds, where, ibid. Sharke filbas denoura trong bornes. anything, freell from for to land, and one on land for their pres. Their quicknes 910. 50.60. How spended with she litarates. Sharke filhes described, bom taken, then are good meste, 987-40,50 Should met bead thefe, wfed by the Ruffiane Shacpe of India their profitablenes . 968 so. Delarer min refer for comages, vlages afreland, ib m conditions Sanday brillians Sheepe on the Indies of fel for bealt, of antiego, 1: 990.10.957.6 Sicencef Gold and Silver on Peru. 1 321 Po 2.1 80 ee:3 Sheepe facrificed m P-ru, 1045 Shoope wiking a waffer, 71.10 Shanpmatters that been 100000. . Sharpe in the West Indies, and yes Poere. \* 1. 062.20 Sheepe weighing 80. pounds, 237

Shipping of India described, 102.1 Ships fewed with Ofiers, 628.40 Stup a glorsom one, 349.30.0 354 Ships ftrangely made in Ormuz, 71 Ships with one fayle, Stips of Leather of Ofiers , 692 Ships sulked with Mans greafe by - she Spaniarde we the Indies, . A . . . I725.1 Ships of the Spaniards accounted Gade of the Agre web Tomples on them backers by the Indians. Ships, people dwelling in them, 264 10. As wany as on the Land, Ships in Tartary with four e makes. and nine Sayles apiece, 68,20 Shiroan Citiem Catay, 801.1.De-Scribed. . Shirokalga City in Catay; 800.20 Sheets she Chinois weare net, 394 and the standard and the Shoes of Silke in Ching 367. 1 Shoes of Suke embroydered, 394,40 A Shoumaker a Chriftian plubbe southe metrys Thing. Hat the whath of Menaster, Abid. Shoes of Rugge and Felt, 503.60 Skooting, the principer it, 201140 Shorne why Monkes are, 448.60 Shotland Her, their Alistude sas . Warration of the Compaffe there, 367.30. Buffe fet downe in the Semeard 1.1 " 4 6 96 Shoulder bones of Sheepe & dimined coly, 238.10. Found true, bid. Shugano, a Rivery 243220 States the Kingdome, called Sorriau, Sam the King walled the Sornau of Siantu, three yeares befieged by the Tartars, 96.60. Taken, ... 297.1 siberia, si the Samoreds Commer, \$24.50. See Samoieds : wen-Sheepe with most mightie hornes, quered by the Ruffe, 439.20.6 74.30 Sheromogula the Countrey, where, Sibierskie, Samoeds on the Ob, 798.40 'w red f.r . . in 805.1 Shifts of the Indians to paffe Ri-Sicke new in Tartary charmed, mers, 888.60. & 934 40,50 and a strange tale of their 44 Shin-beating for deban 1434130 to a rate of March - 30 Ships a thoufand in one Riner, 295 Sioke with firmgled upon cuffome mand eaten, Shipping of China, for pag. 173. Seed miditropulbythe Tarennit 27 of il Ferry offender wite . 5 174 Cc. Shippingon the freshmarer, as me | Siequia the China Sett : the opiniwy in China, at m all the World 33 ams, 397. 50. Stree likelihood 281.50 | with the Romifh Rites, ibich Dif- | miles afmadet, 33.30

graced, 39° . 1. Their Colledges. Sigifmund the third King of Po. land , breakes bis league with Ruia, an affits an impofter to get the Crowne , 766.767, But denies it, ibid. Affists another Demetrius, 770. His claime & tatle to Sweden, 770.50. Entere Ruifia wich a bage Army, ibide Reintte Demetrius, 779. Takes te Moteo and Sinolensko, 780 Silke she absendance of it in China. 380. 20. They bane flore and good , yet camer dreffe it well. Silke much growes in the West Indies. 873.874 Silke-wormes, their ordering in China, 411,20. What winde is good or bad for them in the Indies, 5 26.40. Remned by banging under (bildrens armes, 442 50 Siluer mbere, 255.20,30. 0 256 Silver Myne in Groneland, 824 20. 6 520. 40. Nothing worth, Silver mide in Brickes, 801.50 - The Chinais findse to make st, Silver Images franding abroad, onseemebe 411.1 Silver, why the fecond of Metali, 943. Pomain Montrainei, m O:pieces or vemes. Manner of refinings, with Aire , Bellower, or Quickefilmer : the chiefe Silner Mynes of the Indies, 944. Hem the richaeffe of the Use is difeerned by the colour, 947.20. Manner of refinely it, and working is into barres, the trial and allay : the Etermes to doest, 951 Sindinfu the Countrey and Fitte.00 Sindicin, the City. Singhan the Mother City of Sciani-Singui , is the City of the Earth, the bur eneffe of it, 97.50 Sio, or Chio, the Patriarebate of Conflentinople remouned thisther, 444.40. And from Sio to Mokhe. 444.70 Siras in Perlia, Sirtope very fiveet; made of the fap of a wee; . . 1 -010 957.20 Synopolis a Promince in the San of Ponting 1.60, Under the Turks, ibid. The distance from Con-Astronople, de di lacione Synopolis and Soldaia, are 300.

Syrian tongue vied by the Neftorians in Cathaya, Syrnames few in China, de. 394 Syrnames, not abone 200. in all China, 367. 40. All of oue fil. lable, shid. None marries any of bis owne Syrname, 367.50 Skerlengers dispeople Gronelani, Skialfands, a Bay in North I fland, Skins of three men come off , by eating the Liner of a Beare , 506 Skula of the Indians extreme shicke and hard, 993.1. 994.10 Skuls fold in Chins, and why, 271 Skumme of the water eaten for meate in Mexico, 3233.10 Skutineffe in Norway, 707.20 The Latitude, Variation and Declination there,716.10,200 How the land yest about it, dre. 720 Slaves to the Tartare, cheir miferie, 641. The Tartars earnestnesse to redeeme trie owne fabretts, 642 Slaves of Scythia rebelling servified with the fight of their Mafters Whips, 419.10 Slaues the Indians are melonger to the Spaniards. Slaves of Peru , pleafed with their owne fernitudes, 1056.50 Slauery in Ruffia to Creditors, 434 Slavery in China, bow it comes, 182 50. Thoje that are taken in Warre weare red Caps, 183.10 Sleds much vied in Ruffia, 219.50 They carry Corne 1000, miles, 214.10. They go post, 220. Their freed, 226.10. Their furniture, ibid. Not vied in Summer, 230 30. Called Telegas, 242.50 Sleds in Ruffia, a great honour to be taken up into a Noblemans. \$23.20. Some drawne by Dogs, Sleda, an easie and commodious tra-751.20 Slobatia a Towne in Mezen, 547 40. The elenation, ibid. The trade there, 548.30 Sliding upon the Ice with bones like Sorceries of the West Indians, Sources. 33.50 Sluttery a Fast-breaker, \$16.20

Smiths Bay,

465.10

Poles, 780, 10, Burnt to the

Smolensko in Russia saken su bythe | Soucerer of Mexico turne shimfelfe

ground. Snakes worlbipped in Lithuania, a flory of that, Smæfelsneffe Promontory in Eaft-Iffand, Snælandia, a name of Illand, 654 Snow extreme, Snow higher then the Houfe, 498 Snowes fall in the end of Aprill; in Tartary. Snow in August in Greenland, 727.30.0 250.30 Snow haftens the Spring, 415.10 Snow prefernes from patref Etion, Snorting in their fleepes offenfine to the Tartars, Sodome in Ruffia. Sogomamber Can, the God of the Idol founder. Soger a beaft in Tartary, Some the River, Solanga, a Tartarian people, 23 Soldala the Citie, where, 2. Greeke Soldan of Egypt mersbrowne by Soldan of Turkey bis Countrey,50 Soldini, Christians in Coralme of Solinas the Riner in the West Innoitialt. Soma a measure in China, 98.50 Soncara in Perfia. Sonne of the Sun, the King of Chinate file, 254.50. & 256.1 Sonne faerificed for the Fathers Soothlayers in Tartary sheir Ma-Some of traine Orle, Sorcery of foure Swords in Tarta-- Tia, 1 1 1 th 1 10

1043.60. Things done fore off,

renealed by them , ibid. And

things lost, and to come, 1044

into ftrange Shapes : the Story of

629.46 an Saint, 20 647.30 82.60 Tartarian Idelig8 2.20. The first 106.1 6.10 525.40 Aukentbere,9.50. Is is Chriften, pinson of st, Scale of the World. Christians and Tartars, 119 the Greeke Chareb, 109.40 dies, the distance from the Equi-Spaan in Perfia, 891.40 to the Chinois. nacs. beaub, 1037.20. 0 1042.20 gicalltrickes, 81. 1. Their Maneating and Sacrifices to their I. dols, \$1.10, Their Monafteries. Shauings, Abstinence, Habits. chas, and other Cuffonet, 81.10,20, Sorcery of the lewes , aftery of u,

bim, 1017.40. And fo in Peru, Saint Sorkis the greatest Armeni-Sortaffus, a Tartarlan Village, 033 Spuldiers all Gentlemen in Ruffia. 435.20. Wad their Children alfo, ibitl. Limbr allerted fbein. The inconnenience of That, ibid. How kept from Rebellion, 426.1 Souldiers tricle refeetted so China. 369,40 Souldiers of Mexico their Prayer; 1047.1 South Pole, but bno fixed Starre to markett, as the North bath, 918 South Sea which 858. 1. The Jene rall courfes of Nanigation in it, ibid. How to bee manigated, 860.1 South Sea , the ebbing and flowing there; the destance from the North Soule the Chinois opinion of it, 201 co. The Tartars opinion of it, 88 Soules immortality the Chinois o-Soules immertality acknowledged by the Indiant 1029.10 Soules immertality and transmigra-Soyles of the West Indies, the veraties 1935. Where the bell are. Spaniards kell 30000 Chinois, 309 40. And makes Galley-flanes of the rest , ibid. They offer a league 310.40 Spaniards based in the Philippi-Spaniards bragger , and their falfe Sea Cards, 843. 20.848 Spaniards in Peru effeemed as men fout from God : called Viraco-Spaniards perfidiently cruell in Mexico, 1023. They are admitted into the City , they fetfe on the King, are befreged by the Indians su the Cafele, 1023. Drimen out, and flame, 1024. Their foolish be-tufe of being affisted by Me. racles, ibid. Their dealings with the Indians, 1024. 1. Their belpes and binderances in winning and cornersing the Indians, 1024

& 1036.10. Diuers of them (a-

ersficed in Mexico, 1039.50. Of

310.20 Spinish hopes trading to Greeneland, forbidden by the English,

Spanish plantistiche better in India , and the Lodian, worfe in Spaine, 960.961 Spanith Chroniclers curious rather

to fet depose the Names of their opine Nation Almenturers in the Indies, then of the Beafts, Birds, Ge, of the Country, 856 Spanish reports of a Vifion, 282

Spiwnes of Fishes taken, and bred in Cutternes in China, 179.10 Speake a man did, after bis beart 1029.60 Spelling by Strings, Knots, and Colour on Peru, as we do by Letters,

1 1053.30 Sperma Ceti, 710.20 Sperma Cati,or Permafitie, where

garen, 47 1. le lyes inche it bales ibid. Sphere in China, 346-20 Spices of China. 382.40

Spice the fores and flore in the Mo luccas and Philippina's, 902 904.905. OG. The belt way to bring them from the Molucus inte Spaine,

900,10 Spidges of higge at a Sparrow, full of their Cobneb Lapre, 976, 10 Spirits fet oner diners things in China,

Spitsbergen, & Greenland, 463 Spodio and Tutia, where and how

72.10 Spoone, the Ruffian Nebulay weare at their Girdle. 459.40 Spots blacke feene aushe via lact ...

Spring of water, which converts tt Selfointa a ftone, bile shofe that dring of tt, 894.30. Anather

Spring converted into white Salt, Spring of frelle water in the fea,997 30. On the top of a bot Spring,

Springs of fenerall vertues, 923.20 ca. Some congealing its owne water into flone. Others fending forth Puch. Others becomming good Sale. Some good for the French Paxe, and phy, Another furning aut smake, some of the Spring-tyles wha., 930.1 Ruffia,

their conquest of Mexico, fee | Spring why it comes on a suddon in very cold Comperses, 1415.10 Squirrel, that fire, 1.8141 Stadin Norway, 5 18. The Langele,

Staffe falling , this way or that way. Why of old accounted a direction,

Stanfew kerbour where, 212-10 Starres begotten of the Gods, 274 30. They dye when Starres fall, ibid. Senerall Stars mershipped by the Mexicans:their eddesonceis of them, 1027.40. More and greater in our Mostherne Heavens, then in the Ludies, 918

Starres continually foene in the day time, where and when, 496,50 Start Iland one of the Orkneyes 810.10.The latitude.

States Hand, 478.11. 0.481.30 Many Hares there, ibij. The Sea frozen there, 482:10 Stealing one of the eight Commandements among the Tartars,443

Spealing how punified amongst Lberw. 11:79020 Streic-glaffes, where made, 72 Scephanoueria, ar Liffi, the chiefe Towns of Walachia, ... 633.1 Sticks, inflead of meate-forkes, 180 · his C + 30, 52 Swek-fish inflead of Money, 616

Stone in Groneland, to make pott, which the fire cannot burt, 520.1

Scones mighty ones in a Bridge 294 Stones round and bollow, and fowles . banged in them. Stone-worke, of the Indians, 1056

1.10 Stones caft out of burning Mountames in Groneland, 610.40 They make Lome and walls indiffoluble. Stone, a defeafe meluowne in China,

Stone (Difeafa) a remedy for it, 988.20. Chana good for is, 953

Stones medicinable for the Spleene, Milt, Kidneyes and Flixe, where, 867.50

Storax where it grower, 959.40 Scoues in Itland, the manner, 663.1 And a Groneland, 651.40 Strangers made Slaves in Tartary, Colours of Inke or Bloud, 933 Strangers not willingly inferred in Strangets provided against in Chi. na, 197.20, Wby Nor admitted inte China, 268.10. The caftome of China, concerning them, 11.0.5 11 - 10a . 31

Strangers in China Bine a Goner. nour, 509.50. Why fofuffeded there Strangers of what forti are att. webyed China, 399. Being ouge in must not gee out againe

Stratageme a fine overof difficille Tarcare, 102.40. Smother of theirs to finde the way in the dake Stratageme of the Tartais against the Soldan, 1 122.00 Strategemes of the Crim Tartars upon sebe Hungarians, and in Of Demetrius she Rillin to rayfo a fiege, 757120. Of the Spadarke, unfeene to their Enemies, . 983.20. Of the Mexicans, 1016 50. of prety fory boon that.

1017.1 Streams of Rivers, fill above, and Swift at the bottome, 1056.30 Serconspigued, and not paned, are

Streight of land but eight leagues betweene the North and Somb Seas, Streights Magellane are net Strengbes but broken Hands. Streights of Florida, but imagia nation:

Streight of Mecca or the Red Sea. 252.50. in marg. Stromo one of the Handrof Fatre, Students free from tribute, 381

Sturgeons flore and cheape in Rui-231.10.0 233.1,30 Style of she Ruffian Emperour, bis and his Subjects pride in it. Quarrels for not repeating it all,

421,40,50 Scyle ridiculous of the great Chans Letters; 45.50.000.0046 Style of the King of China, 254 40 # 256.1. # 258.40. # 260

So, in Tartarian is water. Subothe Hand, 285.50. Christian

Sucana Riner, Succuir the City deferibed, 164.30 Suceu in China, anather Venice, 343-10. Described. 433-10 Sucheo in Chipa, the incredible

#### THE TABLE

trading there, and tribute it | Sunne feene both night and day in 363.20 Suem & Hiberi , the people m Tare taria, not fubiell to the Tartars, Sugar cheape in China, 365.10. O 2.20 great ftere; 411.20 Sugar-hout sin China, 270,20 Sugar bowrefined. 101.30 Sugar-canes first carried to the Weit Indies. 860.60 Suiskoy the Rule, sakes pare against Demettus the Impofter, it taken and pardenedby bim, 757.40

Conspirar neunt Demetrius, & kils bine, 763.10. His Oration to the Lards, be a thofen Emperour of Rullia,763.50 764.40. His care of the English, ibi ! His letsers to King lames, defershing his Pradeceffours Acts, 765. Other metings of bitma me ibid in mar. gine. Inmighes againft the Kine of Paland , ibid. & 766.767. Cals bimfolfe Vauls Evanowich, 76g. re. Crowned, ibid. Chofen by lot, and the manner of it .769.60. Makes away the No. bilay, and confults with Witches. Sonds an Embaffage into Poland to complaine, and threaten. Atded by the English and Sweden. 770. 6 771. A (econd Impostor De netrius fet up agamft bim. 770. Forfaken, be remounces the Empire, a given into the hands of the Pole, who imprifous bim in Poland, where he dyes, 780

· Sumerkent, a Aftracan, the Village von Volga, in 46. degrees of latitude 48. marg. Sumhepadan a Rmer, Summer and winter when they be. gime and end, in Brafill, 903

Sumbrero'es wfed in Chena, 394.

Summer and Autumne not differnable in the Hands of Barlowente and why. Sanne and Moone vifed for Engfignes by the Tattars, 82.1.40 Sunne is the Chinois shiefe D:uy,

148, 20. The King files bimfelfe Lord of she World, and Child of the Sanne, 1 , 2. , o. The Ceremen mies performed to it by the Chinois before their Feafts, 302.20 Sunne worskroped in Groneland, 820.10. Adored by the Maxie canse 1027. 10. Pressly demed by an Indian, 1028. 40, His Image,

Noua Zemola, where it beginnes to doe fo, anne fine Degrees, 35. Minutes high, at midnight, 574. & femen degrees high, in what heigth of

the Pole, 575.20. & 576.40. Sunne going downe North, andrifing North North-saft , where and when, 596.30 Sunne bestutte abone the Horizon in Winter, where and when, 494 20.30. Where u refeth and fettetb there, ibid. w ben it appeared no more there, ibid. The Moone after that feene continually ibid. When the Sunne began to appeare againe, 499 60. A Philosophicall

discour le upon it, Sunties three & foure Raine-bowe. at once. Suoliffan in Perfia. 70.50 Supererrogation, beleeved in ( h -

Superstitions Religion best igrees with tyrannical gonernment, 422

Surgout Towns open the River Obr what Nations trade this ther, 552. 10. The Ruffian Emperours Customes of Merchants there for one yeare, ibi-Surpleffe, the Priefte in Ruffia,

conefted with it at their Ordination , 447. 50. And worne in Service time at Church , 448 Swallowes found in the bottome of the Sea, which resined at the fire, 626.1

Swelen Villanage; 631.10. They Sellsbeir Tenants Daughters for Swiftnelle admirable in some Tartars,

33.50 Swords of wood with edges of fline. 1129. 40. Their firength and making, Sword-hih described, 988.30

Abab amightie River, 526 Tabasco Pronince in the West Indies, the tribute of Cacao paid by the Indians there to the Spaniards : places there , 876

Tabetnaculo , the tree yeelding Gumme : the vife of that

864.50 Tabin Point in Tartaria tomaraes Catha , 478. 1. The diftance from Nous Z mbls. Tables of things to be fold hung out. ex China.

Tables in China the fashion, 392.1 vid. Banquets : midit the chiefelt place. Tables of bonour in China, 329

Table of Gold, renerenced, 205 Tadde Bond bis doings in Island, Taes Riner falles into Obi, 546 Taicofoms what in Iaponian, 325

Taidu, the new Name of the Citie Cambalu in Tartary. The bigneffe, 83.40. The description of it, and the twelne Suburbs, ibid; Tainfu the Kingdome, \$9.10 Taking of leane, the fashion in Chi-Talas,or Chincitalas a City in Tar-

Tale of a Pronince in Cathava. where men ener continue at the Tales of the Tartarian Sercerers,

44.20,50.0 €. Talguth Kingdome, betwie Mugalla and Bactria. Talleyes where vied, Tallow flore transported out of Ruffia, and the Reafon, 416

Tam, a Tartarian Phylicke for the bead. Tambur , King of Cathay, 797 Tame, the naturall Name of Chi-

Tamen, why China was fo called, Tamegines (or Chinois) the Ety-

Tamerlane an excellent Scholler. 140.50. Hu White, Red, and Blacke Tents , a Fable, 141.1. His Father Og borne su Sichetay or Parthia, his person de-Scribed. He was lame; she figmission of his Name, 141.10 20,70. Cc. His firft Battle againft the Mulcourtes; the order of it, ibidem. His wound receined in it, and the Villory, 142. 1 10. His Marriage with the Great Chans Dangbier, 142.

40. He was of all Religions, ibid.

Granes, takes Calix Perfoner.

Tametlanes Villery, 145.1

Tametlane pardons Cathaya, 145

10. Gets the spinnon of Chemcaoy, will. Hee is failured Emparow by his Soulders, billerm. 6
146. 20. His Oration to but
Army, and returne towards:
C ina, 146. 20. His Charch
and comming to his Revd causes.
ibod. Hee games a Lord Macher of China to bis party, 146

To That Lords Oration rune
Tametlane, Hee offers to lead

fifty thou and Tarrars into Cin-

na, belides the wall, 147.10,20.

ere. Calibes adnice up n ibe

Enterprize,

Tameclane keepes his owne reformation ferres, 147.60. Hee delimers fifty thousand Men is the Prince of Thannis and the Chimois Lord, to puffe the Minntaynes, whiles himself and him Army makes show of all adulting the mall, 148. 10. The Chimois overthrownes, and the mall women at over, 148. 30. The Chimois affrightment, and now Army.

Tamerlane rewardes the Chinois
Lord, and beats downe the wall,
ibid. Makes Axalla Generall
of the Foote, 140.1. Olmar
great March of fixty miles a day,

Tamerlane advancetb with bis Armie further up the Countrey, ibid. Beleagers the Cuie Paguinfou, 149.10. The Countrey thereabouts renolts to him, ibid. Axalla winnes a Suburb of Paguinfou, the forte of the Towne, ibid. Battered, the wall wonne and lodged upon by the Tartars, 150.1. The Gonernour flame. The Towne yeelding, bath faire quarter given it, 150. 10. Axalla refuses the Gonernment, the Prince of Thanais accepts st, with the Title of Vice-Roy , ibidem. The Chinois Armie aduances the Golden Magnificenee of it.

His Armie against China, 143. Tamerlane chasses the place of hat-130. Calix his Conspiracie aganss him in his absence, 143. 40 And 144. 10. His Ar-151.20, The sebs.

Tamerlanes Vauntquard ouerthrowne. Odmar re-enforces the fight, 141.40. Axalla and Tamerlane preffe upon the King of Chinois Guards, wound him and take him Prisoner. The Victory, 152. 1,10. The King of Chinon Brother rallees (ome Horfe together. Hee takes in Pannibu. The Modesty of Tamerlane, and the proude Speech of the King of China to Tameiline , 152. 40. The Chinois fortifies Quantouru, 18c.1. Which Tamerlane befieges. The Chinois thinkes to reliene it by a Bridge of Boates . which the Tartars burne with Weld Fore, and kill fiftie thousand Enemies , 153. 20, 30. The Towne is reelded, ibid. A Peace treated and concluded betweene Tameriane and the Chinois, the conditions, 154.1. 10, 20, 30 0 c. The bounds of Tamerlanes Conquests, Hee commands one God to becaper-Supred. He returnes home, 154. 50. Hee boneurs and remardes Axalla, and is welcommed bome by the Great Chan, at Camba-155.10.20 Tamerlane admifes Buazet the Great Turke, to forbeare medling with Greece, 155. His notable Saying, and Dreame, bis preparations against the Turke, 1 . 6. 1. 10. His March by Molcoure so Trepilond and

Georgia, Tameriane fill beginnes with Prayers , ibid. His Martiall Discipline , ibid. Hee mufters 200000. Horfe and 500000. Poste, 156, 50, 60. Hu Rendeznous at Granich, 157.1. His Stratagem to delude Baiazet, ibid. What Tamerlane vfed toreade before a Battle, 157.40 The Armies meete , bu directions for the fight, shid. Hee ener expects the charge, 148.30. The Victory gotten by bu owne Wifdome, ibid. 60. The number of the flame, 159.1. He gets Baiazeta Children, 159.20. Sends Baiazets Sword to the Great Chan , 160.10. His Modesty and demeanour after Victorie, Heeretsimes to Simarcand, 160 30. Hu Vow to God. Hu fludu to encrease the place of his. Birth, 160.50. Remardes his Soulders, 161.1. Gives new Conditions of Peace to the Chinois, Buries the Great Chan,

Tamerlane made Chiefe Emperour of the Tartars, 161, 48 Would have his Same goe barabeaded and why, 162,30 Hibeaded and why, 162,30 Himotable Sapings: emerging his Sacceflem, and his owne Recreations, 162,40,50. He publikely fit in hallice thrue a Works, 163,50. Sthiume chamged his Sermants, whitem. His death, 164,11

Tanais the Riner, dimideth Aira from Europe, 711.400. Breath of it, 11.600. It is the limit of the East part of Russia, 12. 1. The bead of it, bid. The length of it, 16 fall sate the Euxina Sea, ibid. Rushuquis Errow concerning it, 1241. In margire.

Tanais bead in the Riplen.
Adminispres, 5430
Anaise Don, garts Euros, 47,40
Paling talls one Micross, 47,40
Paling by it to Conftantinople,
Gre.
Tanais called the Don, 233,10

Falls into the Euxine, ibidem, Whereabouts, 2.10. & 12.1 Tanauquit a Riner, 255.1. Portugals fight with the Pirats there,

Taniampura in Iaus, 253.40 Tandoia, the Ile, 285. 10. And Cetie.

Tangarruan she lland, 308.40.
Tanguth she Prounce, where, 22.
60.75.40
Tanning with Milke sheeked and
falted, in Tartary. 7.40

Tapers borne by condemned perfone, 435. I Taprobane the Iland, now called Zeilan or Celan, 110.10 Tarremade of the Fir-tree, 417.40

Tatia the Kungdome, whence the brea Kings or is ignore came to mership one Sausope, 109. Hence the Taxass presend to usuada Christiante to facto huma those three Kings from Culten. There Race are not labolater is not Cirfians, ibid. Taxas Emprover married a Daughter of theirs, 10.50, 61:17-40

### THE TABLE

Tartaria, the Carriages vied there, 2. 50. And 10. 40. None cames to their Prince without a Present, 2. 60. 69.

Tattats their true and naturall place
of beginning.

1) beginning, 15:10
Tartars, the valear Errour concerning their Originals, 60:40, &
in margine, 69:61, 93. They
inused Poland, Bolienia and
Hingarits, and bein, 40:60 practic
fil. 10. The Crulido practic
gastif them., 61:1. Falling,
Frogrand Almoftgade dama
falling them,
fil. Tartara mindsis Scythia, 3:30

Confine upon Perlia, 74. 6 75 fape.
Tartars Dominions in Perlia, 78

679. On both fides the Danubius, 2-20-53-30 Tattars of the East, the sames of their Countries 798.1, in marg.

sherr Countries, 798.2. in marg.
Between Ruffin and Cachay.
Their Countries and Joseph Dukes.
Dukes.
Trains, the beginning of their
Reigns, the their fourse Brothern.

Tartars beyond the Riner Villula, their Intendes upon Boland, 629 50. Their Customer, Maliome-

Tartan bold showleducal and of the World, 59,50. of 64, 20. They command the Pape to deap performal bemage to thorn, 59,40. They find Expedition, and the mirraplem, may left throw by the Scal 122,60. They find three of mirraplem, and the mirraplem, may left throw by the Scal 121,20. They find three of mirraplem, and the second three of mirraplem, and three of mirraplem, 113,40. Modulette Turkes, 314,41. And India the Left; 114,40. And Partin; 116. And Paldiach, 116. inc. And Aleppo, 117,11

Tartars their Originalls, 77-30
Their Princes defenses, 78-10
Their first Habitations, 111.10
Why they will be called Moal,
and not Tartars, 97-20

Tartars, their marfare, 79.10. The Officers of their Armes, obeir prompans, numbers, and borfes,

Tattars their Bowes, 61.40. Stromger in the owner them others, 7. bid. Excellent Archora, 62.10. C. 64.50. Their flay given twade in Comania, and of the Ruthenians and Hungarians, 61.405,50. The Hungarians require side against them, 61.60. They denide their Army suto three parts, 62.1 Their persons described, 62.10.0 64,40. Their dispositions, 64.30

artars paffe Rivers upon Skuners fund together, and blowne fulling wind, 62.10. How they lives in the warres, 63.10. Their Special Confidentations, 62.30. The Pape sufficient of a 3.0. The Emperous, 63.30. The Emperous,

soem, the Cimil marres betware them, 117.40. They and the Christians full out in the Holy Land, 117.50. Beaten out of the Holy Land, 117.50. Beaten out of the Holy Land by the Saraceus, 117.60. The Soldan of Egypt foweth discord amongst the lar-

tars, 118.20
fartars base fmall flore of Armann: 48.40. Mean thay bec. 48

Fartare Bulling

Tartara Enfigueti are the Same and Moone, 8211,40. And Gerfalcon, 82.40 Tartara onenthranne, 60.20

180 Leville ancestromus, 260:20
180 Leville, van, 181d. 1.
18 Tare (angustis an Europe, 50
180 Leville from the Cristian
Army, 64:1. There Founder,
thoy all Gal, 64:20. And
Sanuse of Gal, 59:50. The
Jundle on them, 56:30. The
Jundle on them, 56:30. The
Jundle on them of 56:30. The
Jundle on them of 56:30. The
Jundle on them of 56:30. The
Jundle on the origination, 181d.
Them parameter to immedia Chris
Jundle on the Sanus of Chris
Jung des Sloces, 314:30:40.
Takess them Administ and Ceremany them Administration of Cere-

maries of Drinking and Faelis,
4-30-40, 50. On. And 35:00.
Triffy in Faelis,
4-30-40, 50. On. And 35:00.
Triffy in Faelis,
4-30-40, 4-40, 4-40, 4-40, 4-40,
And Man-cata, 119-10. Their
feeling upon Carrison, 5-10. And
windarpied [light], ishidi.
Their
Long Type Shones' will done with
public water, 5-10. On. Their meast
Apparel, 6-00. Their meast
Apparel, 6-00. On. Their
water was general at mare, 6-30
Their waters of Apparel, 6-60. Or
Two Their waters of
parel, 7-10. Hen they cut their of
parel, 7-10. Hen they cut their of

Fattars (bane their opporting, and warra with the Pertians, for not doing (a , 239-40. Institute in one of them., 240.

Tartate true onet, 107,1. Their mpudent begging of Strangers, 8, 40. 6 9, 30. Their ingratiseds, 9, 1. They hold themselves Lords of all Men, 9, 1. They are bold thesses; 10, 40. Their bealtings, 11

Tattats dealing with Transchip, 25, 40. I her Pride, 261, 15mp bliefed the Bare fund Fryne; as they had been Collection, 16, 20. This leadings of Strangers, 27, 30. Ther Apartle, Armier, 27, 40 her, Obediene; and Relayan, 78 50. Ce. Their Houfer, direction of the Collection of the

Tartars stible a forreigne 3.66 00. And 170. 1. Annoyn; themselves with blood and mby, ivid. Their Habit, 170. 30. Their manner of bant mg. 6.

Tartars confesse nothing by terture, 63. 10. Their Chiming, ibld. Their Publics where they canquer, 61.30.

Terrainin edge is ill. I thin Golden and nacepted. And Them Refrigion deposited. 188. And Them Refrigion deposited. 188. And Them Refrigion deposited. 188. And Them Refrigion (Marriager, Workers Hafpathy, 6. D. freibid. 132, 1, 10. D. freibid. 132, 1, 10. D. freibid. 132, 1, 10. Defended. 132, 1, 10. Defended. 132, 1, 10. Defended. 132, 1, 10. Defended. 132, 10. Defended. 134, 10. Defended.

Treas images of Feb. are to represent their dead Priender, and not God 22, 30. Their Mariages, and the Degrees of Conferential they deep . 7. 40. Their Wilddiese down the Mariages, and down the Mariages, and

wby, 7.40. The Bridgroome forces bis wife, Tartarian wines moft faithfull, 75 20. Obedient and industrions, 78 30,40. Their Marriages, 78. 20,30. They marry their dead children that die unmarried, 79.1 . Their women fat and flat no fed beld faireft, 7.20. They greafe their faces , toid. And annount them with blacke Orntment 9.40. They lye not se, after Child-birth, ibid. They ride astride , ibid. Their workes and Duties to milke Kowes, as the mens is, to milke the Mares and to churne Colmos,7.20,30. Their flattishnes, 7.20,30

Tartarian Ladies Shanen to the skull. 30.40 Tattats their generall Rules,443 1. Their Lames and Instice, 7. 60. What effences punifbe with

Tartars bow they choose their Em-Palace at Ciangamur, 80.

Tartarian Courts their Order, and then langi, 28.60.5.20. Three fenerall Princes of them, are fubielt to their Great Chan, 126, 10. His Residence in Cathay, at long, or lons. The power of thefe Presces, 126.20. Tartarian Princes fit upon bods, 27

Tartarian Princes kespe correspondencie,

Tartars renerence to their Princes Court , 40. 1. They get their victories under colour of peace, 40,20

Tartarians meete their Princes mef femers with Bread and Drinke, as Metchiledecke did Abraham, or at the Germanos des Ambefore them . 20.40. Subsetts treade not on the Princes threfbed. 17.1. 6 31430. Rubruquis companion kept Prefaner for flumbling at the 31.40. If

Tartarian Princes Fleete of fifteene thenfand Sayle, where Tarears Fuftian letters to the Pope.

58.30 Taxtars, twelse &Mafters of Re-84-40 Tartars, the renenues of the rich, fribed,

for drinke, 5.50. Oc. And for Bread . 6.1. Their trucking with Rammer and skins, 6.1. & with apparell, Tarcaes trade for Furres into Si-126.10 beria, 84.30 the first.

Tarrats yeare beginnes February, Tartarian daves post, is three foore and foure miles English, 53.40 & in margine.

Tararians questions about : Popifb Images. 30,50 Tartars admirable fentence up-

on the negligent Califa , 70. Tartars.

The colour of their Enfigues, 478

1. Manner of embattelling, ibid. Scaling Ladders, and warlike Engines. Tartarian Complements , 278.50 & 279.1. State of their Campe

Royall, 279.1. Their Kings State, and Tributary Kings, 279.30. His Habit Royal, ibid. His wondring at the bigneffe of the World , ibid. They retire out of China, 280.10. Then Monkes and Nummes Chaffitie, 281.10. Their Opinion of the

Referrection, ibid. Their Kings Burial place , .281.20. Their sheeneries in the Borders, 314 60. Their Cuftame to ceafe upon the Goods of Strangers doncafed, 313. & 316. 10. When They conquered China ; bow

long they beld it, and how expelled. See, 376.20 Tartars, vide Crim Tartars. Nagayan Tartan , Mordwit Tar-

tars, Chicafee Tarears & Cheremife Tartarts, &c. Tatami, ere Iaponian Mats, 326

Taurica Chersonelus, now Cafferia, Saurica Cherfonelus deferibed, from pag. 632. Unto 643. The length of the banke, 636.1. The forle, 616150. The Sessions, Soyle, Bounds, Originall, Princes, de. 639. Part belongs to the Turke, and part to the Tar-

tars. Taurinum she Citie , where, 49 95,20 | Tauris in Perfia, the Merchandife of it, Tauce and Manfe, Handers of Ca-34.10 thaya, . . Tayth Cayin Catay, 800.50. De-

Tebeth the Pronince, now a Wilderseffe, 90.20. How Trawellers paffe st , foid, They defire Strangers to take their Daughters Mayden-beads . 90 40. They are great Negromancers , 90. 60. And 91

Tebet, à Fartarian people, that for pitty eate their Dead Parents, 23. 1. They make Cups of their Scales , 23. 10, 30. They bane much Gold , 23.

Teeth concred with Gold , 92 Teeth , the fame of Quick-filner

makes them fall out. Telegas, or Wag gons in the Ruffian, Temple of the Sun in the Indies,

893.60. Connerted mto a Monaftery. 895.60 Temple and Status eretted to a Go-

Temple, a most hage one, 281 1. With gulded Steeples, 265.6 267.10 Temples of Peru . 1023. Of Me-

zico described, 1033. & 1133 Temples of Mexico described, 113 3430. Their Municon kept

in them, 1134-E Temples of the Mexicans base Clossters and Conents, 1049

Tempelts yearely in China, and frenge enes, 198.1.39.60 Tempetts cruell ems, in the Mountagnes of Cathay, 36.20 Layed, Tempelts extreme ones in Hilpa-

Tempelis vinal at the new Moone. Tempests rayfed by the Denil, 974

Tenduch the Promince of the Tartarian Presbyter John , 710. Tax Piter with Tenerife in the West Indies, the

fine and diffance from Santa Martia, Fillages about it, Mynes, 6 6: 88 . 40. Rindrs Tennis play of the Mexicans . she fashion of it , 1127. 40.

Tenfa, the Lords of A command all in Papon, 324.20. They are as Hetres apparent, 325.40 Tenth of the Spoples, due to the Primee of the Crim Tarcars,641 Tenths THE TABLE

Tenths of Book, the great Cham bath, 88,22 Tents, the buge number and rich. neffe of the Tartarian Princes. Tenure in Capite in Ruffia, 424.

Tephelic or Tiflis, the Georgians chiefe Citie. Termefor Law fuites in Illand,

640.50 Terzas, the Armenian Christians in Perlia, Tetumoniall in the Ruffes Coffin,

Tezcalipuca, the Mexican Idell. bis great Festimall the cause and

Thacan or Thracian the Caftle, 73.20 Thebeth, Chefmir, Senfim, and

Bachti, orders of Southfayers su Tartarie. 81.1.20 Theeucs, their Thumbes cut off, 264.

Theenes how punished in China.

Theoues all the way between the Dominion of the Mogores and Cathay. 311.312.0 €. Theeuerie, sguominions to Pofteri.

335.40 Their defpenfed withall upon Confeffion before the Sacrament, 37

20.50 Theodofia or Capha the Citte in Taurica, 636. 20. Chriftiantie de ayed there, ibid. How farre from Conftantinople, Theologie of the Chinois, Theodulus of Acon bis foolift mef.

fage to Mangu-Chan, 29. 10. Thittles with Stalkes fours inches Square, in the Indies, 897.60 Tholoman the Pronince, Gold plentsfull there.

94-30 Thomas Edge bis Voyage, 464.60. Hu returne, 466.1. And fecond Voyage, ibid. His fecond Voyage and Commission, 709. His third Voyage, 467.10. His Iland, ibid. Hu fourth Voyage, ibid. Another Voyage, 468.30. Another, 469.

Thomas Perez Ambaffadour to China, bow vfed, 267.20 Sir Thomas Button, confident to finde the Northwest Passage,848.

Sir Thomas Smith Embaffadous into Ruffia 747. His flately interramment pats the Ruffes out of

their Complement, ibid. Denies | Tifis the Metropolitan Citiz of the to gine the Copie of bu Embaffage beforebana,748.10. His Andieuce, ibid. His entertainement, 749. His fecond andience, 750. 40. Takes bis leave, and resurnes for England. 751. 20. A meffage fent to bim from Demetrius

Sir Thomas Smiths Iland, 730.10. Abarren place. ibid. Ser Thomas Smiths Inlet, difconered to the furthest end, 725.

Sir Thomas Smiths Sound, she Latitude. Saint Thomas buryed in Malepur,

1 38.40 Saint Thomas his Tombe, ft. a ge things concerning it, 105. 1.40.

Thornsting Pronince in West Island Thorro King of Go land, Oc.

Made and a God, 659.50 Thred made of Indian Nats, and bew. 71.50 Thred of Conies baire. 1132-40 Tire gotten out of a Leafe 357.10 Threshold she Tarrars touch not,

- 84.20 Throne a most flarely one, 279.30 Throne of the King renerenced in his absence, 792.40 Thule, whether it bee Island, 643.

Thule w not Illand, 655. 10. But one of the British Hes, or Scandia, or Tylemarke in Norway, 655.50.marg.

Thunder in 70. Degrees, 42 minutes North. Thunder worshipped by the Mexicans, their odde opinion one,

1027-20 Thunderboles frequent in the West Indies,where, 885.1.890.40 Thunderbolt, one Banft killed with it, exempts the Hoard from tri-87.50

Thursday the Etymon, 664.50 Fibaldo de Vesconti di Piacenza, the Popes Legate at Acon, 67.1. Chofen Pope, and called Gregorie the tenthe 67. 10. Senderb Preachers into Tartarie, ibid. iburon the Cape, an the West of Hispaniola, 859.10 Tickes of the water troublefome in

Tien tantec, what, in Chinefe, 201. Titubul the Citie,

Georgians, Tiget denoures a man, .. ftory of it,

Tigres their battels with the Croco-Tigres of the West Indies, can di-

flinguish an Indian from a Spaniard. Tigres of India described, bom billed a Tigre tamed, OOI Tigris the bead of it. 49.20

Timber bow Island is supplyed wash. Timochaim in Perfia, 70. 50. 6

Tingoefi the people described, \$27. 30.551.40. Speake like Turkie-Cockes, ibid. Nations beyond them, 528. 10. Their dexterny to take Fowle, Fifh, and Venifon, ibid. Secalfo, 530. 20. Neere te Coina, \$43.60.0 546 Tingui the Citte. 96.40

Tinguigui the Cate, Drunkenneffe well overtaken there, Tinna the chiefe Citte of the Ruffes in the Samoieds Countrey, 526.

Tinlau a Riner. 2 \$7-30 Tipany in Lapland, 560.20 Tides in the Sea, where none, 518.

Tides a difcourfe of them, 930.1. Tids their Course come from the North,

Tides the chiefe Argument of the Northwest passage, \$48.40. Tylemarke in Norway is Thule. 655.marg.

Time of the day finely declared, 409 Tyras, the Riner Nefter in Molda-

mis. Tithes payed in Groneland, 520.1 Tithes payed in the West Indies,

Titicaca Lake, the greatneffe, thickneffe of the water, forts of the Fin (bes, and Fowles, and the taking of them, Title of the King of Sweden, 771. Of the Emperour of Ruffia, See Ruffian Emperour, or Emperour of Ruffia, of the King of Poland,

Titles the Chinois Ambition of them, the West Indies, ther cure, 975. Titles a great Merchandize in lan

224.10 291.30 40 Tlacaellec, a valians Mexican Ge-

nerall, his Acts, 1011. 1012. a mans first, 1002-10 1012 Oc. Winnes a battell one-Forchillus the Iflander, bis last ly with Children, 1014.10. Re-665.50 fuses the Kingdome, 1015. His Tortoifes of India, which take fifgreat Honour, Death, and Funeteene men to draw them out of the water, the manner of taking 1016.10 Toade found aline in the Timber of a them : they lay Egges and feede on Shore. 626.10 Toades as bigge as Cats, not vene-Tortoifes of the West Indies, demous, their finging, and noifes, feribed : when good Meate, and when Porson, 976.40 Tobaccho the bennmming qualitie, Tortuga Ile in the West Indies, of it, vied by the Mexicans in 866.30 their Dinellish unttion, and Phy-Tofa an Iland, 253.20 Towers wonderfull ones in China, 1043.40 Tobacco lighted by the Sunne at 204,60 mid-night in Greeneland, 737. Tower of ton Stories bigh, 328.30 Trades ginen oner in Ruffia, and Tobacco Pipes of Earth and Copper, 587.50. Cape Cod, ibid. 30 Trades, none bound unte in China. Grapes and Rofes and Tobacco 367.20 Tradefmen in Tartarie, worke one grow neere it, ibid. Disconered. day in the Weeke for the Prince, 588.10 Tobalsko Caftle in Siberia, neere to the Dominions of the King of Trading in Muscouie granted to the English, 221 Traditions made equall with Scrip-Alteene, 798. 1. How farre thence, through Alteene to Chim. ibid. 60. The Commodities and Trading there, \$44.50. The way from Pechora thither, ibid. Traditions in China. 196.40 Traditions learned by beart in Mexico, 1052. And in Peru. See 5.52 Tocoatican the Iland, Tocci she Mexicans Idell, a Tonne-Tramile, the difficulties of it in the man war bipped in a Womans skin. North and North-Eastern parts, 1004.1.0 1031.30 Tococ what, in Chinefe, 306.10 Transiling fifteene dayes together Tocra she Riner, nanigable after a upon Bulbes. Transiting by the Compaffe in He-Thave. Toes with two Narles. land. 394.20 649.50 Tolle and Cuffomer payed at Brid-Travellors out of Ruffia punisht wab ges in China, 330 Toll taken at Bridges in Russia, loffe of Life and Goods, and why, Trauellors in Ruffia what they muft Tombe a ftrange one, 265, 6 266. Inferiptions upon them in China, Franfubftantiation imitated by the Denill in bis Idoll-Ceremonies, ibid.go Tome Maftangue as Armenian, 1041.10.0 marg. Trapefunda the Citie, his admentares. Tomineios, an Indian Bird at [mall Traytors punishment in China, as a Bee or Fly, 964.20.977.10 406.40 Tomo Cafile in Siberia, bow farre Treason ferfens all Primitedees. from the Dominions of Altine and Cathaya, Treason valuard of in Peru, 1055. 798.0 527 Tongue of a Bird like a Quil, 980. Treasurer of the bones of the Dead, Tooles made of Cowes bones, where, Treatic of a League betwin Ruffia, Tooles that cut Stone, made of a Denmarke and Sweden , againft Comous of fand and blood, 1129. the Pole, 40. And of Flint for Gold-finiths and Graners, 1132.50 Tree borne in Procession, 227-20 Tree of the Sunne, where, 72.20 Tree, who fo pith is Meale for Bread Tooma the new Citie, where, 527.1 Tooth of a Giant found, as big ge as 104. The wood finkes in the wa-

Tree of Silver, a most Artificiall one in Tartarie, 35.50. Deferibed. Trees that have Iyen since Noaha Flood. 222.60 Trees none in the frozen Countryes of Nous Zembla, Lapland, &c. Trees in Peru, balfe of which reelds fruits for one fixe Moneths, and the other fide, another, 961.50 Trees taken up by the rootes, & carried by Elephants, to the Great Chams Gardens, 82.20 Trees of the West Indies, loofe not their Leanes, 98 3.30. Not deepe rooted, Trees and Thickets of the West Indies,960.10. Huge Trees, ibid. Trees, Fruites and Plants of West India. Trees bollow that will bold a bundred 982.20 Tribunals flately ones, Tributes payed to the King of Mexico, fee page, 1080. de. Some preise Story about that, 1006.20 Tribute of the Ruffe, payed in Commodities. Trigantins, his difcourse of China. Trimecati, aftrange Sett, 277.1 Trinidad Iland , difconered , the Bape, oc. 866,1.10 Trinity Harbour in Greenland. our Kings Armes fet up there. 722.40. And possession taken for bim, ibid. The Latitude and Variation. Trinitic fome mention of it, 397. Trinitie imitated by the Denill in Peru, Trondon the Towne in Norway, 618. 20. The King of Dena markes feate, ibid. Saint Olaus the King burged there, ibid. Tropickes, the eauses of tempera-ture and babitablenesse betwint sbem. 021.922. Conflant Brifes betwise the Tropickes. 024. Weflerne winder without them alwater and why. 925.40 Tropickes, when most rayue within or without them, and the reason, 918.50.in margin. & 919. 20. 30. Canfes of temperature there, 920.0c. Truth mell remarded. 194.30 Trumpa the kinds of Whale that yeelds the Sperma Cati, & Am-Trumpets

ter, Lances made of it, de, ibid.

of Weelkes, Tiaritzna the Iland, bondry, Rivers, Oc. Great trading there, Tumblers in China, Ruffia, Tumen s Tartarian money worth ten Markes, Tumultuous multitude, an example of them in Ruffiz, 753-20 Tunall Tree of India, the firange Tanall Tree, agame deferibed, with bis fruit. Tunas a West Indian fruit, makes Tundi or Bifbops in Ispon, 324. Turffes in flead of Morter in Island ter of Turffer Turkes their manner of lining 69. Turkes trade into China, 362,10. Their Commodities and guffing the China King, with a ferned Turkie maffed by the Tartars, 119. 1. The Kingdome of it refused b) the Armenian, 119. 20. The weake Eftate of st, in Rubruquis bis time, 51.60 6 52.1.10 Turkemannia the Countrey, 237. 1. Their manner of living and feeding, ibid. Turkemannia, inhabited by Turkes, Grecians, and Armenians, 69. 40. All under the Tartars, ibid, Turkin Armie enerthrowne by the

Trumpets of the Cannibals of Ihels Tucaman Pronince in the West Indies, bounds of its lurifdittion, Townes in it and their Latitudes, Mines, Wooll, Gilt-leather, Huf-Tudintu, a noble Kingdome \$5.10. Tufaune, a Tempeft vja ill in Cina 197.40.263.50 Tuinians, a people of Cathay, 24. Tuinians opinion, that the Soule of enery thing, is the God of it, 41. 40. They will not bane the fecrets of their Keligion fearched into 41.60. They are Manichees, Tumen in Tarcarie, the trade there, the way thither from Pechora in growing of it, which beares fruit. and Cochinell, 957. 30. One in Mexico, growing out of a Mans beart, the Strange Storie of it, 1003.40.0 1004.40.50. 1131.30 the trine like Blood, 984.40 662. Two forts of Turffes, innen.

992-20 24:460 897.40

Turkie Carpets. Turkiffes where found Turlock Hauenm Illand, 647.50 Turquestan the Kingdome, 109. 20. Wonne by the Tarrars, 114. Tufce, what in Chinefe, 312.60 Tutelare Gods refpetted in China; Tutia and Spedie, where made and Tu:ia good for the Eyes, Twelte-dayes fulamenties, 498,60, Kept lanuary the fourth in Russia 23 7

Achen the Country, Gen. tiles, aigats Straubts and Hand Difconcred, 463. 20. Inhabited by the Somneds, ibid. Impaffible for Ice, 463.40. It ss an Hand, 250. Vaigates Straightes whence fo full of Ice and floring Wood, \$27.50.

Sometimes open from the lee, \$26.40. The Riners and Inlets about it,545.1. The way thence to the River Obi, 550.60 Vaigats or Weygates, 477.60. A great Sea beyond it, ibid. An I. land South of it, 478.10, The Rocker by 11, 479.1. The clenatien, and Creatures there, shid, 20. Neere to the Tartarian Sed, ibid. The Courfe of Weygates, 480. 1. The Samoeds there freaks the Ruffian, Valaniand Valania, the people and Country of the Comarians, 11.

1. Where feated, and the extent of w,ibid. Called Alania by Ifi-Vandals Beake the Sclauonian or Bohemia Tongue, Valignanus the lefuite, goes inte India and China, 320.1. Hu Books of China; bid. Goes to Iapon, ibid. Sends for Ricius, 320.40. Influmes Teluites at Amacao. Carries Princes to Rome, Vilour of the West Indians, 1025 Vapours nourifb Plants, bow, 892,

. 20.6 in marg. Varella the Riner, 253.60. The beade 254.10 Vari arcolini, Beatls, that beare Farres, 107.1 Variation of the Compafe, in 57. Degrees 35. Minutes, 810.20. 740

In 61. Degrees 40. Mm. 812. 50. In 55. Deg. 30. Min. 813. 20. in 55. Deg. 31. Mm. shid. 30.la \$5. Deg. o. Min.ibid.40. At the Nafe of Norway, 814. 40. By Farre Ile, ibid ogo. Is 59. Dee. 50. Mm. 815.20. In 56. Deg. 10. Min. 822.30. In 59. Deg. 40. Min. ibid-40. In 58.Drg.30. deinibid.60 ln 59 Degrees o. Min.823.10. In 58. Degr. 30. Min. ibid. 30. Vn 63. Deg. 33. Minutes ibil 40. 40 63 Deg. 20. Min. 824. In 98. Deg. 36. Min. 826.20, In 59 Deg. 10. ibid. 30. In 57. D. ornes 53. Min.828.20. In 57. Deg. 57. Min.ibid 49. In \$8. Deg. 3.min. ibid. 50c for 56. Deg.o. Minute. 829.1. In 56.Deg. 48 min. 829. 30. In 65.deg-25.min.832.30. In 67.deg. Q.min. 833.20. In 18. deg.50.min.ibid. 40. In 57 deg. 20.min.ibid.60. In 59 digr. 26. mun,834: In 98.deg 4.mm bid. 10.18 58.deg.30.min. hid.10.18 60,depr. 10,mir. ibid.40. dr 60. deg. 10 min ibid. 60. In Buttons Iles, in about 62 Deg. 837.60 In 61 deg. 30. mm. 838.1. In 62. deg.24 min,839,10. Admirable france and sudden Variation neers the North-post Ruffage, 844.30. Where the greatest Variation in the world it. 827-1 In 37: Degrees, 25. Minutes, 18 37: 4 187 va., 33: 589. 10. In 37 deg. 45 minutes, ibid. 1. In 38 degr. 13 minutes; 588.60. In 39 deg. 11 minutes; 548.60. ibid 50. In 42 deg. 56.mm. 586. 60. In 43. degrees, 56. minutes, ibid. 40. 1 44 degroes 27, min. \$85.10. In 44. degrees, 10. minutes, 584. 40. In 43. degrees 41.min.ibid.30. In 43. deg. 16. Min. ibid. 10. In 44 degra 98. mm. 183.40. In 91.deg. 14. min. ibid. I. About the North Cape, 574.60. In 61 deg.14.mmenter 567. In 74.deg. 15.min. 700.20 In 76 degr. 50 minutes, 701-1. In 79 degrees, 15 minute, 904.1. In 78. degr. 24 minutes, 705 Ju 61.deg.30.mu.716.10. In 76. deg. 55.min.ibid. 20. In 78. deg 1 24.mm.717.1./# 76.degreez 95. 719.40. In 69. degr. 0. min. 720. 20. In 68, degr. O.mm. 720.30. In 67. degrees, 5 minutes, bid. 30 In 79. degrees, 34. min. 722. 90. In 79. degr. 8. minmes, 727:50.

In 71 degrees, 0.mm. 750,20' Variation

Variation of the Compaffe , fee Campatie. Variath excellent in China, 354. . 20-40. Whence st is . 282.40 Varnish bitumenous and Shining, 374.20 Valco Caluo his Fortunes, 277.40

Valeb da Gama; first Difconerer ofebe Indice 3 4 252.50 Vultaces, Meffengers, 26.60 Valene in Sweden, subjett to 26.50 Danmarke. 618 Vaime glory in a Chinois Captayne

191.40 de. Veheog what, in Russian, 244 30 Viders of Cowes and Mares, placed in the Tartar boufes, 4.30 Venemons Wormes none about Cozon DoPeru, Venemous Apples of India, 985.

Venezhela, in the Woll Indies, the differice from Granada the new. the Mines in it; the Harnefts in a yeare, Commodifier which it lands foorth, Towner first winabising, occasion of the Name, Sittender, excellent Ayre, 866.

2720 33 .0 Versoruz, a Citie to the West Indies, the Samarten the Latitude,

Vernous be she West Indies, the Luturade and Extent , Gold Misses, Soyles, Townes, Warres oferte Indians, Ports, Riners. Barrt Points, and their Latendes 983.884

Verspaz Promince in the Well In-. dies the Ste, Extent; Comme-Sainten Pillures of Feathers, Beatts, Felt, Rmers, de. 879.

Vermillion found in Silver Mines, . 802.10. Quichefilner gotten out of at ibid. This Quickefilner makes a poyfonous colour in Pain-

Vermilion, feepage, 948.949 Veritagebe meafure in Ruffiz, 223. 60. 0 224. 30. About a mile

Verft of Ruffia, is three quarters of av Englift mile, 414-30 Vessels of Whale finnes, to boyle 817.50 mente in, Veyles, was ride in them in Pe-342.20

Veyles worne at Church in Nor-Veolita, a Coast Towne upon the Riner Ob or Oby in Tartaria,

Vgorskai, Samoeds on the Ob, 805.1 Via Lactea called, The Hall of Heaven. Via Lactea, more briobs in the South parts; blacke fots feene in Vihuella, the Sword-fifb deferibed;

988.20 Victima, the Etymen of it, 1037. Victuals the price in China, 199. Victuals of the Mexicans, 1134.

Vicugnes a West Indian Beast deferibed bow Hansed : Cloath measemable made of their Haire. bu Fiefb (overaigne for the Eyes, 967 20 cc. Vigils bow obformed in Raina, 436.

30, Their great Vigill, ibid. The Empereur the enter and tres wub bu Empreffe; \$37. Villa Lohos, bis Voyage to the Phi-Apphases, earl Viliges forfalen in Ruffix, and

Vilna in Lituatia, Culnentime there, Vincentus Beluscenfis bis Relation of the Tartars, 38.40 Vineger made of the Sappo of a Tree, Viners of West India, leape up to bite, the dendineffe of their Poy-

for, 975.50 Virginia, the excellency of the Ayre and Soyle, 852.30 The commodical welle of the Situatian. A Paffage that way to the South Sea or Indian Ocean, &c.

Vision of a Labouring men in Mexico. 1021 Visions of the Denill in Mexico, bow precured, 1043.20.30 Vilitations performed by fending Papers beforehand, 391.30. Then tedsonfacffe, Vification of the Sicke, not refed in Tartarie, Vificors of Colledges, and other Of-

ficers in China, 184. 30. 40. Virzliputzli, the Denill-Idoll of the Mexicans, bis Storie, 1002.

1003. His borrible Sacrifices. ibida 30. His Image, 10,0.20. His Festimaliday, 1040 Vladislaus Prince of Poland, ele-Sted Emperour of R. Mia, 782.

40. 50. The Articles betweet bim and the Rull's, 783.784. 785.786. Not to alter their Religion, to have one Romane Church in the Moscho, to juffer the lewes full in Ruifia, not to Boyle the Churchmen, or Tempe rathe, His Poles, not to bee Indges in Courts, not to alter private men's conditions, 784. To contiune the former Penfions to Strangers, and Officers, to continue the League with Poland. Ininries to bee forgotten, Captines releafed, demolifhed Cities to bea Yepahed, 784. Merchants 'to bane free trade, Garrifon Towner to bee continued, or reflored to Ruffie. Vor, or Demetrius the Impostor to bee flaine. Hu Wife tobe taken off Viadillaus to bee Rebaptized in the R. H. Religion. Not to fend forreine Souldin

788.40. And afferted vate by

the King hu Father, 789. 20. Rejected agains by the Ruffes,

His great defigne viterly diner-

ted by other Warres, 790. His

Father fends another Armie in

behalfe of him, an Accord made,

20.00 c. Senerall names of them.

ections or Annayntings of the

Mexican Priests ; with Porfon

and Tobacco, a bideom Storie of

for the Great Chans Concubines.

82. 50. The manner of their

Vnicornes er Rhinocerotes, 93.

Vnicornes, their description, 103.

Vnicornes borne, for the Ruffian

Emperour's Staffe, 741.30. Coft

fenen thoufand Markes, ibid.

Vngut, faire Women in Tartarie,

Chaife and vlage,

1043.10

40.0 104.1

791.30 Viuffes, a Tartarian bord, 799.10.

ers mo Molco, 786. Hu An-(were to the former Demands of the Ruffinit, 787. Promifes to come in Per fon onto Rullia. The high Style of his Letters, Perfrom Tanais, Volgathe River, called Rha or Biel. Clergies : sbreatens Rebels,ibid. The Articles confirmed in bie Name brethe Polifh Generall.

242.10. Fine weekes tranell on the banke of at, 18. It bath fementie monthes. Volga, the Countrey about it conanexed. 231.60

modities, the Houses described, 224.20. The met from thence to Mafco, ibid. Hew farre from the Mosco,

it falls into the Cafpia Sea, 41 5/ Vor the Ruffe Impoffer, the treu.

Vowes vifually made at Fests, in Norway, 656.40 Vowes of Women for fruitfulneffe.

Voyces beard in Mexico before the Rune of their Empire, 1020 40: 60:0 1021 Vraha the Gulfe, how farre from the

Equinottiall : the Morth Starre from thence is feene very lowe.

THE TABLE

Vnicornes ( or Sea-fifbes ) borne, |

Voicornes, are but Fifter, 651.40. Vnicorne is a Fift, fore of them wbereabouts, 843. 60. & 846.

Vniuerfities in China , in what manner, 3 38.60. 6. 344.40. In enery Mother Care, ibid. 345.

Vnigerfitie in Tartary, 280.60 Vanuerfitje of Mexico or the Indies, 871.50. Of Los Reyes, or

Vobsko in Ruffia, belieged by the Pote, the Enemy reguled by Sury koy 424.5C. Suskoy thruit into a Monaftery and killed, ibid, Vochan the Pronince.

Vozel Hooke, where, 569.40 Voiauod fronties a General, 436,30
Volcaus, or burning Mountaines;
many in the Well Indies, 870.
30. One melted a Caldron, 880. 60,891.20. Dwers wamed and deforibed, 933. Philosophical difcourfe of them, 940. Though

to caufe the Earthquakes, ibid. Volga amighty Rust, 12.40. The Courfe of st, ibid. The deftance

523.30. fals into the Caffian fea, ibid. The head and breadth of it, 16.1. Two thousand milet long,

Vologda m Ruffia, 214. The Com.

Vologda Riner in Rullianthe bead.

bles raifed by bim. See Demetrius. Diners of that name preten-

Armes, Marchings, Pronifions

Vrgence, a Chie; Vrnes of the dead Mexicans, their Lewels buried with the Afbes,

1029.50 Violci, is Gold beaten into powder, 325.20. Curious enamelling with it, ibid. And Painting, 326,10 Viting Cuie, 224-1.0 343

VV Alachia, fome places in it. Walking Captains in Ruffia, bis Walking Caftle in Ruffia, 438.10

Wall of China against Tamerlanes inmafions, 142.60.0 146. 740. Impreguable, 147. 20. Ibe Guards. Wall of China deferibed, the beight.

Materials, Towers, Beacons, the length, manker of Gates, 800.20. Wall of China, the building, defire-

bed 268 Called Chanfancau. Soid Interriered by Bile and Rivers, ibid The Fertifications of that Wall on both fides, iBid. Manuelby Slaves or Condemshey are fust heps, 173.20. They

A The number there, 373:30. Wall of China, the length, de. 315. TI. O'm margi Aparicular Gowermour it bath. · ibid. Wall three bundred miles long , 268

Walls of mighty bredib; 342.W Walls of Townes have a Surneyer in China, 170.40 Walls of Thifties in the Indies, 897.

Wardhouse, the grougest Hold in Finmarke, 21 2. Deferibed, 223.

Warpe, a Sea tearme, what 565. Wartes of the Mexicans, mofth, to Sabe Prifoners for their Sacrifices :1039:20. The Ceremonies of dewanteng it in Mexico, 1018.1 Weatfere of the Crim Tartars, 640. Werfare the manner in Ruffia, 4:6. 437 Gc. Their Officers Mufters

fer the Fuld Discriptine, Enfigues, Chargings, Ambushes, Engines, Ordnance, Remerds, orc. 438 Wattare of the West Indiane, 99 2.

Warts growing on ment faces under the Equinoctiall, occasioned by cating of Fift, Warwickes Forel and in America, the Latitude, and the fenen I. lands by it. How the Land beares and appeares, 810. 50. The In-

lets and ferring of the Currents about it. Water, why it is not mooned about wieh the Primum Mobile, 924.

Water of the Sea, good against Poy-Water Burfling foorth of the Earth, that defined a Country, 500.1

Waters wonderfull ones in Ifland, that turne Wood into Iron and Stante, cure the French Difeafe, and other Marmailes, 647.648 Waters Wike Weft Indies, of fensrall properties,

Water frezing as it fall; 414.1 Water warme mixed with the Wine. in the Sacrament in Rollia, and

Water clarified with Allome, 364.2 Water alone, not drunke by the Tartars,

Water procuring loofbueff, 72:1 Water compling probbes in the Eyes, 868:30. Beleened to referre Tomb, 868:yo Nater fall a fear of all one, the defte-

rate attempt of fome Spaniards to Water-Hawkes in Hispaniola, 997.

Watches, admired in China, 321.

Watch and ward, the manner in Cately, " Watch and Ward duely in China, 395.20. A prette Order for a.

Watching all night at Charth, 436.

Watnsfiordur Hanen in Hand, Waxe boyling out of a Pountaine, Waxe Canales in China, 292.40 647.60 Way from Calcar to Catayof 142,

Wayer fours admirable met if the Way-Markes in Tartatie, 37

Weapons not worne by the Taktate 639. Y. Nor by the Chillies Weaters of the West Indies, 968.

Me all mone and and the ten Warlouis on the Riner Villula, 629 Weavers in China, ...... Thail

Marriages. Wedneflayes faited by the Ruffians, 218.1. But upon a falferea-Wednesday the Etymon of u, 664.

We praise thee O God, wfed on the Ruifian Seruice. 450.40 Weeding of Ruce by Duckes in China, 174.40 Weekes of the Mexicans of therteene dayes, 1010.28 Weekes of yeares in Mexico, 1136.

Weight, all things fold by in China. 199.40 Welchmens ancient fayling to the

Weft Indies, a difcourfe of that 807.10 Wendouers Rolations of the Tartars. 60.20 Wennes in mens throates, by drinking bad water,

Well, the Mahumetans surve towards in Prayer, & wby, 31 3.30. West Indies divided into two parts, 860.20. Vice-rey in each Dimifion, bid. How much of them va. der the Spanih Dominion; 8 46. 39. They are not loyned to our World, 963. 20, in marg. How Men, Beasts, and Famles, come first thinber, in Acoftaes Indge-963.964

West Indies, the Supreame Coun-Sell, Profident, Oc. The number of the Archbishops, Bishops, Monafteries, and Vnigerfities, bow the Clergie is maintained there. 908. Church genernment, prem fiens for Prebends , and other Church bufineffe 909. Names of all the Officers, 916: Orders for the goods of the Deceased, for Admired men, Spanish Inquistion or c.910. Orders for the Supreme Counfell, 911. Indian Courts diners, 912. Officers, 912 Other Orders for Gonerement,

914. Laves, 915.05. Welt Indians diminified by the Spaniaris 996. 40 Troubled in their Religion, Westmen, who in the Norwegian A geals. 657.30 Wexages fee Valents ....

Whalea flore, neare the North-west Paffage, 844.40. Difficulties of Whale monftrous one, taken in the

a Cart loade, bis Liner two Cart loade, ere. 737. O.F. Whale endangers a Ship, 571.20 Whale bu bigneffe, thickneffe, Finnes, &c. Disconered by bie owns flowting of water, the manner of Hunting and hilling him. How be renonges binefelfe. He footes blood. How they take bis fat 470. The making of bis Oyle, 471.20. His Finnes bow taken, bid. Eight fenerall forts of Whales, 471.40. What fores yeeld Oyle, Whale-bone, Sperma Catt, and Amber-greece, and what, nothing , ibid. And which is good west, 472.10. The manver of taking him described in a

Mappe, Whales eight forts of them, 710.20 Their (exerall quatities of Orlo.) Whales wer afraid of Ships, 715.40 Whales buge, 233. 1. Cry in ingendring,

Whales gine Suche to their young, Whale built within Illand, 649.60. The dwellers in them dreams of Shippracke. 650

Whale-fifting bugue in Greenland, 469.10 While-fishing an odminable moner, Whale-fishing in Groneland, 519. Sec. Of Add

Whale killing taughs wa by Biskay-Whale Sound the Entitude 846.60 Whale Bay. Whay the Illanders drinke, 662.60

Wheat cheape in Russia, 416.1.10 Wheat where in the Indies it will net growe, andwby ,954.20. See Baruolents. Wheele of the Mexicans contage

ning fifty two years, the Art of 1050.30 Whips and 14 hipping, the manner in

China, 188.40. Werfe then banibid. # 203.40 Whipping with Canes, the manner, 319.50.0 396.30 Whips of Singwes, or Whit-leather.

Whirle-poole of Malestrand, 222. Whirl-pooles bunder fayling, where

Whiftling Arrower in Tartatie. Whilling Language, men under-

fland one another is it in Mexico, 1135.10 He of Thanet described. His Eye | Whootes in China are all blinde,

176.50. And all Slanes, 182. 40. An Officer fet oner ibem,

ibid. Whoredomes unpunished in Ruffig.

Whoredome for a morfell of Bread. 646.40. Scarce punifhed in ile-

White, the Tartars bold for a figne of good inche, 84.50 White the Festinal Colour of the Muscouites, 214. The mourning colour in China, 368. 1. 165.

White Creatures in cold Countries, 649.50 White people wader the Torisdo Zone, 858.20 White mon rarely borne in Mexico

1128.40 White Caftle, a Citie in Catay, de-Gribed. 801.10 White Sea; \$14,40. The breadth. is is open Lapland, ibid. See 531.

Wiccings, are Piracies, Wichida in Ruffa made babu able, 432.50. The protetters of it ry-

Wichida she Riner, the Samoieds trade by it inte Ruffiz, \$12. 20. The bead. Widowes in Tartarie Marry not, and why,

Widowes continuing fo, rewarded in China, 344.50. And bonenred

William Baffin bis Voyage co Greenland, William Helye bis Allions in Greenland, 468.469.60 c. William Barents his fust Voyage, 474. 20. Returnes into Holland, 478.10. Sets out againe, ibid. Returnes, 482.30. His

third Voyage, 483.1. Dies by Nous Zembla, 508 William Bouchier a French Gold-

funtb found in Tartary . 28.40. His curious Workmanship, 35.50 O 37. 40. How hee came this sber,

Williams Hand , the beight of the Suone there. Willoughbies Voyage to Denmark.

Willoughbie Land, 162,60, And 212.90./s is Greene-land, 979 Windowes first made in the Rostes of boufes.

Winter nine Monethes long in Groneland, 691.30.0 609 Winter not knowne in fome places of the Indies, 921.60, 11 bere, THE TABLE

little or none is. 126.66 I Winter foort and milde in Taurica. 637-1 Winter and Summer, where contrary to cars in Europe, 896.

Wilers the River bis bead & comfe. Witch of Malinalco, ber Store,

Witches of Peru, their Arts, 1043 Witches Sound in Greenland, res Latitude, .... Wyle of a Portugall, to fame bis

Vild beafts of Chine, 381-60 Wild beafts more acceptable in Sa. crifice, then tame, 272.60 Winde en Winter, none m Tartary.

and why. 27.1 Winde extreme hate in Ormuz : it It flad at adamy 71.50 Winds preferes from serrepron.

Win les fold to Son-faring men in Winde , fold to Merceners by

the vitches of Lapland's Fable Windes temper the Torrid Zone. 921.40 Their differences , pro

perses and Canfes in generall, c: of #, Windes which the Spaniards are to observe in their Nanipations to the West Indies, and bow

farre each carries theme 924. & fe. to god from the Paulippines. ihid, at Rhingopicast Differente of Winds, from the gigs 2010 pag. 928 Stronge offering Windes, Wine of Description 1936

599. Of Indian Nuts, ibid. Andi : " - !! ->

Wine of Peru, thetafte, 938.1 Wine of Palme-tree, 284.20 Wine made of the fapofatree, 947

Wine drinking beld a finne, 109.10: Wine-drinkers not admitted to bee Witneffes, Wives the Chinois keepe as many as they are able, 359.60. They are bought and fold. 367.40 Wives fis at table, and Concubines

waite, 394. They bring no portions,

Wives and fernants flaine to waite on their Master in the next World, 1929.20 Woden, in our Saxon Stories, is Odines.

664.40 Women the fairest in the World, Women in China bane no names, - 294.90. They are feldome feene.

They all the works within derres to China, Women, Gold fonths and Carners wihe Weft indies, 1123:10 Women Warraurs in the Indies,

886.20.0 992.40 Women brought to bed, the Men lye in. " Women fall in Sweden, 637-10 Womens Hands in Groneland, the lastende, Sami Wonders of Hand, 647.648

Wood beld by the Chinois for an Eo loment. Wood in Orman which will not en Wood making, 71.50

Wood fleating in the See, \$31. - Whence a senset, \$27,50 Wood fhining in the night, 98 3.20 Wooing-prelents m Ruffia, 454 Wooll on China and welet mide

1.28 French Later Wor. for Vor. Workes of Piety in China, 271, 36 World, the Mexicans behefe of the ond of u, Wormes troublefome ones in the

Indies, to hard Worme breeding to mens legs, 230 Of an SElling ben got star ibid. Writing with Penfils and in Chara-Office 34.46. 3 375.30. Fine the 1909 humard the left, ibid. Vinnand, bid. Denominata, ibid. Wating of China , from the right band to the left , and the lines drawe downsward, 384. Faire writing bery dears there, 340

Writing by Pictures in Mexico. 1.1052.60. Addin Peru, 1053 20 Writing and reading in Peru by knots upon coards : and by small flones apor a Wheleh Own. Wis-

LONBON

Wines, she fully should for the

Well Indies, the Counsell, and bounds of it \$76.20. The Bilbon: Sea remoned thence to Guadalainta : when first disconcred , a fickly country, the lattende, 876,50 Samabulis, Pilgrimes of Japon : their Confessions a fearefull Story of that.

1042.20 Ancheum in China deferibed 334 Xandu the Citie, Xatar and Xambaluafor Catay and Cambalu.

Canerius the lefaite , called the Indian e Spottle , 317,30. Canemend as Rome, 316.60. Beafts to bune connerted 300000. foules 317.30. Hu tranels, 218.1. Gees to Cangoxima in Iapon, or there publifbes the Decalogue, 318 40 Oppeled by the Iaponian Priefts. ibid Returnes to India to fetch an

Ambasadour, gets bimselfe made the Popes Nuntio opposed by Alurus, who falls into a Beprofie, Kauiers xeale and behaviour to-

wardi bim,319.1; Gets himfelfe carried into China, where be is forfaken and dies, auxan, a flower that makes bread wrie Indies, 254-10 Kylobaliamum what property 259

Minuleygrab, the Signiery, 281.30

¥ 2 ....... cate tipe ( to. YAik a Riner, 241.90 Yamfuthe Riner, the rourfe of 11,340.401 Raines by shesme fal monfeft Cuter in Chica, ibid.

Yara Cuyin Catay, Beston, De Yaskentye Cirie; 10 10 248.40 Yehoxi, the Mexican Priests that beard Confessiones to TOAT 64 Teare of the Tartars beginnes in Febrannist to The wished [4 laurel day both They fact the mmber germente Ba go. Their New yeares gifts, ibid. They rec-

bon their yeares by Twelnes, and Yeare in Ruffia begins with September, 447.20 And the September before ours , 746.28. &

care when it begins in China, 392 Glemmzed 394.1. Their Teare

begins in March, 196.co 10. How they make bread of it i Yeare began in the middle of Janua-Zere, the Iland, the luice is poy for and the fubry in Norway of old, 659.50 Yeare of the Samoieds is but halfe Stance bread, where tois bread is meil vfed, 954.10 a Teare. Yucatan Pronince in the West In-·\ \$56 Yeares of the Mexicam, 1135.30 Zikia the Citie, dies under the Godernment of 1136.1. Their mamer of recko-Mexico, its bounds, &c. 870.20 ning them, 1050. The beginning, A Peninfuls, the extent, tempes Years of the Peruians, 1051.1 rature, no River in 4 per metall, China, long bued people Townes & their Yeare in Peru begins in December. latitudes, oc. 87.19.20.00. Yed20 land : the latitude, 842.50 Yun loebe China Kang. 389.30 Xuo de Nirbona his Leurr and Diference about the Tarrars, 63 Yellding the Caremany of it, in Mexco. Yellow Mugali, 1013.20,50 Yellow Mingels, 799.20 Yellow Riner in China, the comfe, 340 Serviced pres, ibid. 10000 litin it. Promerbe of it, ibid. Acatecas, the Promince in the West Indice the me Silver Mywes; three Townes of Spanis Yellow, the King of Chinors colour, ards in it : diftance from Guada. which none elfe may boof 392.50 laista 876. And from Mexico, Yellow hats a great boner, 201.20 Other Mynes there Villages, och Yem, the River, 235 20 Yempsa Yowne, 224.1 Zacauna the Parmires and Fillage con the West Indicasthe latitude, Yeniflest leniffe Riner, falletbanto the Sea Naromzie, 546, 20. Net ferre from Chipa, bid. guanas, a franço Well Indian ferre i bat but furgues and chimbertress, their bango 66,40 diffrance from Mexico. Zamachie in Media, a Steple for Silk: 44 2 you. The Ruffe trades the Enga matiz an Aland of the Moluccas! Taprobana, 900530 Young Capes Zilan Coati ene of the Rutin Emperours Tules, 793-30 Zauofat in Ruffia, the latitude, 547 Yopes the Riner in the Well Indies Youga Riner in Catay, falls into Zenan the best Hand of the World the Blacke Sea 800.40 Topan land, 2237 Copan on the Coast of Financie, Youth how educated in Mexico, ...... N & 1064 Zeni, two Brethram their Fermans, Yes, a goiner Veuft in Porte the folem-Luanago West Indian Serpent de-2 mg Cherfoncius, where, 632-20 Zenn the I reversement that his the Well Indian, then the first the Celluscens Sale made there, 820 feribed, delicate meate, 976,50 Danghe for the Princit Poxe, Vacaste chiefe feel of Brante, 90; Zubu the Iland. ti. 1 Obbina to the left , mit the lines Setaile Teare of the Lat : beginnes : Te-Persite with of the Content of the Reality may be the struce given him que the hearton the Lecture & In This population with the transfer of the Market has a manufacture before the transfer of the Market has a manufacture before the Market has a manufacture before the market be New years, frond. They re-Wine-utritiginst admi en to bee Witter and reading in Derin tonthem years by melant. and the same countries and by form! how how for the begins with the form of the form of the form of the form with the form of the Vives ( Cinois keere e ... er astory or alle, 200.60. They rentier before cars , 746.28. & Viles for the and Commerce 757.50

Zichman Prince of Friffand bis Sto. Zielenfa Hands, 543.30.InRuffia. Zipangu the golden Iland, 102.20 Taken by the Tartars, ibid. The Handers call Mangi, Chin, or 102.50 Zodiake , as it is more freight , or more oblique makes the dates we mights, of diners lengths, 920,40 Zona Torrida, why in some places under its the rane fitt falls in the afternome, 918.50. Wby fo much under it, when the Sunne is bot-108,919.20, 30,40. Why in forme places onder a there falls no raine, nor are any frings, co. 919 60. Temperate in many places, in others bote, cold de. Aktibe camfes, 920, 10, 20, 30 OT. Reafans of the deserfises of tempers. 921. The beat bongb violent ; yet frare : the greatest beate mibe morning, and wby, 921.50. We. Berne mind plowes feldome there, 913.40. Tris the greateft of the fine Zones Data Why men falle under it from Eaft to West, and not backe up time , 924.50. See Agumentiell. The land binds cools it by myle, and the Sea winds by day, 926.10. Calmes. often vuder it, bid. Many Lakes under fame part of H, 933.10. Maft the West Indies be onder it, 999 1 to The Countries buder it, are all billy of wby, 936.1 Torride Zone, weff indabited of all the West Indies; and by white Aden, and they most warlike? it is of the comperature of Spaine few .. V. 0. 898,10,10,30 Zorzania, & Georgia, 69.50

LONDON, LONDON,

Sunct by William Standy III Hands Faster fone; and

are to be sold at his Shop in Pauls Church ward at the ligne of the Role, 1625.